



## THE MINDE OF THE FRONT.

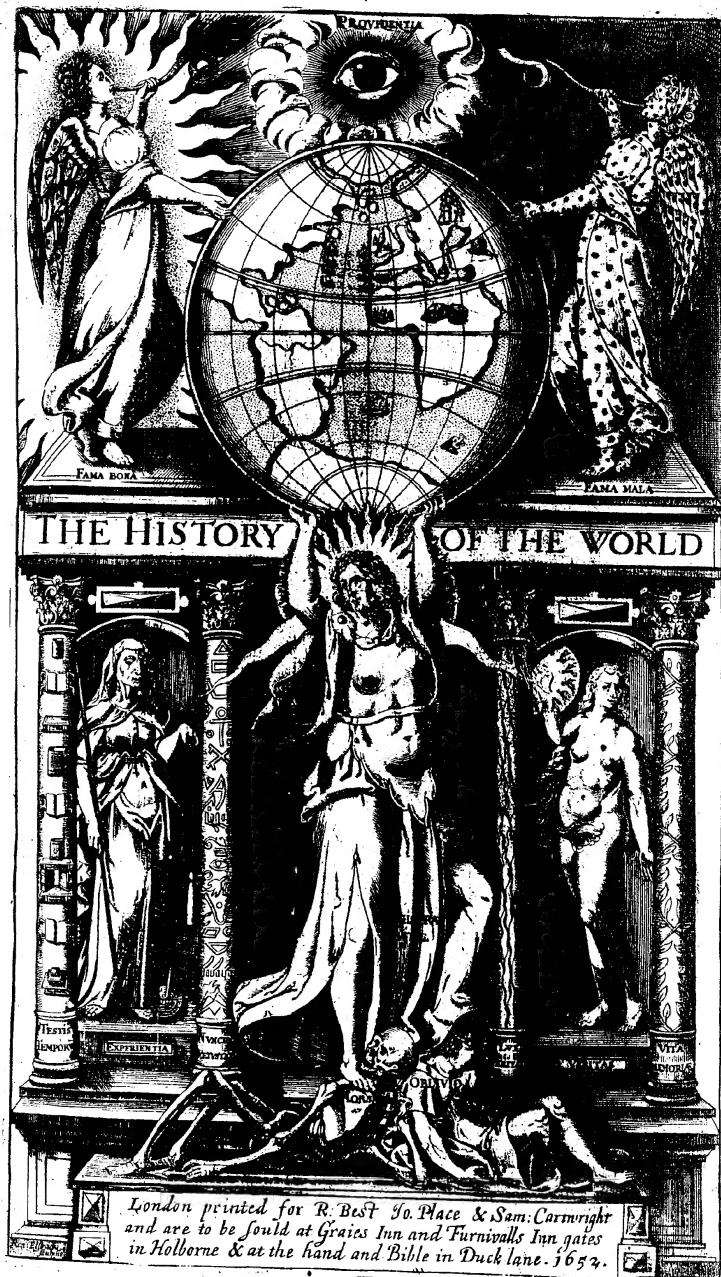
**F**rom Death and darke Oblivion (neer the same)  
The Mistresse of Mans life, grave HISTORIE,  
Raising the VVorld to good, or evill FAME,  
Doth vindicate it to ETERNITIE.

High PROVIDENCE would so: that nor the Good  
Might be defrauded, nor the Great secur'd,  
But both might know their wayes are understood,  
And the reward and punishment assur'd.

This makes, that lighted by the beemie hand  
Of TRUTH, which searcheth the most hidden springs,  
And guided by EXPERIENCE; whose straight VVand  
Doth mete, whose Line doth sound the depth of things;

Shee cheerfully supporteth what shee reares:  
Assisted by no strengths, but are her owne.  
Some note of which each varied Pillar beares,  
By which, as proper Titles, shee is knowne,

Times Witnesse, Herald of Antiquitie,  
The Light of Truth, & Life of Memory.



# THE HISTORIE OF THE WORLD.

IN FIVE BOOKES.

- 1 **T**reating of the Beginning and first Ages of the same, from the Creation unto Abraham.
- 2 Of the Times from the Birth of Abraham to the destruction of the Temple of Salomon.
- 3 From the destruction of Jerusalem, to the time of Philip of Macedon.
- 4 From the Raigne of Philip of Macedon, to the establishing of that Kingdome in the Race of Antigonus.
- 5 From the settled rule of Alexanders Successors in the East, untill the Romans (prevailing over all) made Conquest of Asia and Macedon.

By Sir WALTER RALEGH, Knight.



The true and  
of the honourable  
S<sup>r</sup> Walter  
lively portraiture  
and learned Knight  
Raleigh.





**H**OW unfit and how unworthy a choice I have made of my self, to undertake a work of this mixture ; mine own reason, though exceeding weak, hath sufficiently resolv'd me. For had it been gotten then with my first dawn of day, when the light of common knowledge began to open it self to my younger yeers, and before any wound received, either from Fortune or Time : I might yet well have doubted that the darknesse of Age and Death would have covered over both It and mee, long before the performance. For, beginning with the Creation, I have proceeded with the History of the World ; and lastly purposed ( some few fallies excepted ) to confine my Discourse, with this our renowned Island of Great Britain. I confesse that it had better sorted with my disability, the better part of whose times are run out in other travells, to have set together ( as I could ) the unjoynted and scattered frame of our English affaires, than of the universall : in whom, there have been too other defects ( who am all defect ) than the time of the day, it were enough ; the day of a tempestuous life, drawn on to the very evening ere I began. But those most and soule-piercing wounds, which are ever aking while uncured : with the desire to satisfie those few friends, which I have tried by the fire of Adversity ; the former enforcing, the later perswading ; have caused me to make my thoughts legible, and my self the subject of every opinion ; wise or weak.

Danmørg.  
13.c.1.  
Eccles.11.7.

## The Preface.

with fame : be it never so ill, it is to be despised, so we deserve well.

For my self, if I have in any thing served my Countrey, and prized it before my private : the generall acception can yeld me no other profit at this time, than doth a fair sun-shine day to a Sea-man after shipwrack; and the contrary no other harm, than an outrageous tempest after the Port attained. I know that I lost the love of many, for my fidelity towards Her, whom I must still honour in the dust; though further than the defence of her excellent person, I never persecuted any man. Of those that did it, and by what device they did it, He that is the Supreme Judge of all the world, hath taken the account : so as for this kinde of suffering, I must say with Seneca, Mala opinio, bene parata, delectat.

As for other men; if there be any that have made themselves Fathers of that fame, which hath been begotten for them: I can neither envie at such their purchased glory, nor much lament mine own mishap in that kinde; but content my self to say with Virgil, Sic vos non vobis, in many particulars. To labour other satisfaction, were an effect of phrenzie, not of hope, seeing it is not Truth, but Opinion, that can travell the World without a pass-port. For were it otherwise; and were there not as many internall forms of the minde, as there are externall figures of men; there were then some possibility to perswade by the mouth of one Advocate, even Equity alone.

But such is the multiplying and extensive vertue of dead Earth, and of that breath-giving life which God hath cast upon slime and dust, as that among those that were, of whom we read and hear; and among those that are, whom we see and converse with; every one hath received a severall picture of face, and every one a divers picture of minde; every one a form apart, every one a fancy and cogitation differing: there being nothing wherein Nature so much triumpheth as in dissimilitude. From whence it cometh that there is found so great diversity of opinions; so strong a contrariety of inclinations; so many naturall and unnaturall; wise, foolish, manly, and childish affections and passions in mortall men. For it is not the visible fashion and shape of plants, and of reasonable Creatures, that makes the difference of working in the one, and of condition in the other; but the form internall.

And though it hath pleased God to reserve the Art of reading mens thoughts to himself: yet, as the fruit tells the name of the Tree; so do the outward works of men (so far as their cogitations are acted) give us whereof to ghesse at the rest. Nay, it were not hard to expresse the one by the other, very neer the life, did not craft in many, fear in the most, and the Worlds love in all, teach every capacity, according to the compasse it hath, to qualifie and maske over their inward deformities for a time. Though it be also true, Nemo potest diu personam ferre fidam: cito in naturam suam residunt, quibus veritas non subest: No man can long continue masked in a counterfeit behaviour: the things that are forced for pretences, having no ground of truth, cannot long dissemble their own natures. Neither can any man (saith Plutarch) so change himself, but that his heart may be sometimes seen at his tongues end.

In this great discord and dissimilitude of reasonable Creatures, if we direct our selves to the Multitude; Omnis honestæ rei malus iudex est vulgus: The common people are evill Judges of honest things, and whose Wildome (saith Ecclesiastes) is to be despised: if to the better sort; every understanding

bath

## The Preface.

bath a peculiar judgement, by which it both censureth other men, and valueth it self. And therefore unto me it will not seem strange, though I finde these my worthlesse papers torn with Rats: seeing the slobbish Censurers of all ages have not spared to taxe the Reverend Fathers of the Church, with Ambition, the severest men to themselves, with Hypocrisie; the greatest lovers of Justice, with Popularity; and those of the truest Valour and Fortitude, with Vain-glory. But of these natures which lie in wait to finde fault, and to turn good into evill, seeing Solomon complained long since: and that the very age of the world renders it every day after other more malicious; I must leave the professors to their easie wayes of reprehension, than which there is nothing of more facility.

To me it belongs in the first part of this Preface, following the common and approved custome of those, who have left the memories of time past to after-ages; to give, as neer as I can, the same right to History which they have done. Yet seeing therein I should but borrow other mens words; I will not trouble the Reader with the repetition. True it is that among many other benefits, for which it hath been honoured; in this one it triumpheth over all humane knowledge, That it hath given us life in our understanding, since the world it self had life and beginning, even to this day: yea; it hath triumphed over time, which besides it nothing but eternity hath triumphed over: for it hath carried our knowledge over the vast and devouring space of many thousands of years, and given so fair and piercing eyes to our mind; that we plainly behold living now (as if we had lived then) that great world, Magni Dei sapiens opus, The wise work (saith Hermes) of a great God, as it was then, when but new to it self. By it (I say) it is, that we live in the very time when it was created: we behold how it was governed: how it was covered with waters, and again re-peopled: How Kings and Kingdoms have flourished and fallen, and for what vertue and piety God made prosperous; and for what vice and deformity he made wretched, both the one and the other. And it is not the least debt which we owe unto History, that it hath made us acquainted with our dead Ancestors; and out of the depth and darknesse of the earth, delivered us their memory and fame. In a word, we may gather out of History a policy no lesse wise than eternall; by the comparison and application of other mens fore-passed miseries with our own like errors and ill deservings. But it is neither of Examples the most lively instruction, nor the words of the wisest men, nor the terror of future torments, that hath yet so wrought in our blinde and stupified mindes, as to make us remember, That the infinite eye and wisdom of God doth pierce thorow all our pretences, as to make us remember, That the justice of God doth require none other accuser, than our own consciences: which neither the false beauty of our apparent actions, nor all the formality, which (to pacifie the opinions of men) we put on; can in any, or the least kinde, cover from his knowledge. And so much did that heathen wisdomesse confesse, no way as yet qualified by the knowledge of a true God. If any (saith Euripides) having in his life committed wickednesse, think he can hide it from the everlasting gods, he thinks now well.

To repeat GODS judgements in particular, upon those of all degrees, which have played with his mercies; would require a volume apart: for the Sea of examples hath no bottome. The marks, set on private men, are with their bodies cast into the earth; and their fortunes, written only in the memories of those that lived with them: so as they who succeed, and have not seen the fall of others,

## The Preface.

doe not fear their own faults. *GODS* judgements upon the greater and greatest have been left to posterity; first, by those happy hands which the holy Ghost hath guided; and secondly, by their vertue, who have gathered the acts and ends of men mighty and remarkable in the world. Now to point far off, and to speak of the conversion of Angels into Devils, for Ambition: Or of the greatest and most glorious Kings, who have gnawn the grasse of the earth with beasts for pride and ingratitude towards *GOD*: Or of that wise working of Pharaoh, when he slew the Infants of Israel, ere they had recovered their Cradles: Or of the policy of Jezebel, in covering the murder of Naboth by a triall of the Elders, according to the law, with many thousands of the like: what were it other, than to make an hopelesse prooffe, that far-off examples would not be left to the same far-off respects, as heretofore? For who hath not observed, what labour, practice, perill, bloodshed, and cruelty, the Kings and Princes of the world have undergone, exercised, taken on them, and committed; to make themselves and their issues masters of the world? And yet hath Babylon, Persia, Egypt, Syria, Macedon, Carthage, Rome, and the rest, no fruit, no flower, grasse, nor leaf, springing upon the face of the earth, of these seeds: No, their very roots and ruines doe hardly remain. *Omnia quæ manu hominum facta sunt, vel manu hominum evetuntur, vel stando & durando deficient*: All that the hand of man can make, is either overturned by the hand of man, or at length by standing and continuing consumed. The reasons of whose ruines, are diversly given by those that ground their opinions on second causes. All Kingdomes and States have fallen (say the Politicians) by outward and forraign force, or by inward negligence and dissention, or by a third cause arising from both. Others observe, That the greatest have sunk down under their own weight: of which Livie hath a touch: *eo crevit, ut magnitudine laboraret sua*: Others, That the divine Providence (which Cratippus objected to Pompey) hath set down the date and period of every Estate, before their first foundation and erection. But hereof I will give my self a day over to resolve.

For seeing the first books of the following story, have undertaken the discourse of the first Kings and Kingdomes: and that it is impossible for the short life of a Preface to travell after, and over-take far-off Antiquity, and to judge of it; I will, for the present, examine what profit hath been gathered by our own Kings, and their Neighbour Princes: who having beheld, both in divine and humane letters, the success of infidelity, injustice, and cruelty; have (notwithstanding) planted after the same pattern.

True it is, that the judgements of all men are not agreeable; nor (which is more strange) the affection of any one was stirred up alike with examples of like nature: But every one is touched most with that which most weerly seemeth to touch his own private; Or otherwise best suited with his apprehension. But the judgements of *GOD* are for ever unchangeable; neither is he wearied by the long proceffe of time, and won't give his blessing in one age, to that which he hath cursed in another. Wherefore those that are wise, or whose wisdom of it be not great, yet is true and well grounded; will be able to discern the bitter fruits of irreligious policy, as well among those examples that are found in ages removed far from the present, as in those of later times. And that it may no lesse

appear

## The Preface.

appear by evident prooffe, than by asseveration, That ill doing hath alwayes been attended with ill success; I will here, by way of Preface, run over some examples, which the work ensuing hath not reached.

Among our Kings of the Norman race, we have no sooner passed over the violence of the Norman Conquest, than we encounter with a singular and most remarkable example of Gods Justice, upon the children of Henry the first. For that King, when both by force, craft and cruelty, he had dispossest, over-reacht, and lastly made blinde and destroyed his elder brother Robert Duke of Normandy, to make his own sons Lords of this Land: *GOD* cast them all, Male and Female, Nephews and Nieces (Maud excepted) into the bottome of the Sea, with above a hundred and fifty others that attended them; whereof a great many were Noble, and of the King dearly beloved.

To passe over the rest, till we come to Edward the second; it is certain, that after the murder of that King, the issue of blood then made, though it had some times of stay and stopping, did again break out, and that so often and in such abundance, as all our Princes of the Masculine race (very few excepted) died of the same disease. And although the young yeers of Edward the third, made his knowledge of that horrible fact no more than suspitious: yet in that he afterwards caused his own Uncle the Earle of Kent to die, for no other offence than the desire of his brothers redemption, whom the Earle as then supposed to be living; the King making that to be treason in his Uncle, which was indeed treason in himself, (had his Uncles intelligence been true) this I say made it manifest, that he was not ignorant of what had past, nor greatly desirous to have had it otherwise; though he caused Mortimer to die for the same.

This cruelty the secret and unsearchable judgement of *GOD* revenged on the Grand-child of Edward the third: and so it fell out, even to the last of that line, that in the second or third descent they were all buried under the ruines of those buildings, of which the Mortar had been tempered with innocent blood. For Richard the second, who saw both his Treasurers, his Chancellour, and his Steward, with divers others of his Counsellors, some of them slaughtered by the people, others in his absence executed by his enemies; yet he always took himself for over-wise, to be taught by examples. The Earles of Huntingdon and Kent, Montagu and Spencer, who thought themselves as great Politicians in those dayes, as others have done in these: hoping to please the King, and to secure themselves by the murder of Gloucester; died soon after, with many other their adherents, by the like violent hands; and far more shamefully than did than Duke. And as for the King himself (who in regard of many deeds, unworthy of his Greatnesse, cannot be excused, as the disavowing himself by breach of Faith, Charters, Pardons and Patents:) He was in the prime of his youth deposed, and murdered by his Cousin-Germane and Vassall, Henry of Lancaster, afterwards Henry the fourth.

This King, whose Title was weak, and his obtaining the Crown traiterous: who brake faith with the Lords at his Landing, protesting to intend onely the recovery of his proper inheritance, brake faith with Richard himself; and brake faith with all the Kingdome in Parliament, to whom he swore that the deposed King should live. After that he had enjoyed this Realme some few yeers, and in that time had been set upon on all sides by his Subjects, and never free from

## The Preface.

conspiracies and rebellions : he saw (if souls immortall see and discern any things after the bodies death) his Grand-child Henry the sixth, and his son the Prince, suddenly and without mercy, murdered; the possession of the Crown (for which he had caused so much blood to be poured out) transferred from his race, and by the Issues of his enemies worn and enjoy'd: enemies, whom by his own practice he supposed that he had left no lesse powerlesse, than the succession of the Kingdome questionlesse, by entailing the same upon his own Issues by Parliament. And out of doubt, humane reason could have judged no otherwise, but that these cautious provisions of the father, seconded by the valour and signall victories of his son Henry the fifth, had buried the hopes of every Competitor, under the despaire of all reconquest and recovery. I say, that humane reason might so have judged, were not this passage of Causabon also true; Dies, hora, momentum, evertendis dominationibus sufficit, quæ Adamantinis credebantur radicibus esse fundatæ; A day, an hour, a moment is enough to overturn the things that seemed to have been founded and rooted in Adamant.

Now for Henry the sixth, upon whom the great storm of his Grand-fathers grievous faults fell, as it formerly had done upon Richard the Grand-child of Edward: although he was generally esteemed for a gentle and innocent Prince, yet as he refused the daughter of Armagnac, of the House of Navarre, the greatest of the Princes of France, to whom he was affianced (by which match he might have defended his inheritance in France) and married the daughter of Anjou, (by which he lost all that he had in France) so in condescending to the unworthy death of his Uncle of Gloucester, the main and strong Pillar of the House of Lancaster; He drew on himself and his Kingdome the greatest joynt-loss and dishonour, that ever it sustained since the Norman Conquest. Of whom it may truly be said, *unus confessor his own spæ of Henry the third of France, Qu'il estoit une fort gentile Prince; mais son reigne est advenu en une fort mauvais temps*: That he was a very gentle Prince; but his reign happened in a very- unfortunate season.

It is true that Buckingham and Suffolk were the practisers and contrivers of the Dukes death: Buckingham and Suffolk, because the Duke gave instructions to their authority, which otherwise under the Queen had been absolute; the Queen in respect of her personall wound, *ipsetæque injuria formæ*, because Gloucester dissuaded her marriage. But the fruit was answerable to the seed; the success to the counsell. For after the cutting down of Gloucester, York grew up so fast, as he dared to dispute his right both by arguments and arms; in which quarrell, Suffolk and Buckingham, with the greatest number of their adherents, were dissolved. And although for his breach of Oath by Sacrament, it pleased God to strike down York: yet his son the Earle of March, following the plain path which his father had troden out, deposed Henry the father, and Edward the son, both of their lives and Kingdome. And what was the end now of that politick Lady the Queen, other than this, That she lived to behold the wretched ends of all her partakers: that she lived to look on, while her husband the King, and her only son the Prince, were hewn in sunder; while the Crown was set on his head that did it & She lived to see her self deposed of her estate, and of her moveables: and lastly, her father, by rendering up to the Crown of France, the Earldome of Provence, and other places for the payment of 50000, crowns for her Ransome, to become a stark

Beggar.

## The Preface.

Beggar. And this was the end of that subtlety, which Siracides calleth fine; but unrighteous: for other fruit hath it never yielded since the world was.

And now it came to Edward the fourths turn (though after many difficulties) to triumph. For all the plants of Lancaster were rooted up, one onely Earl of Richmond excepted: whom also he had once bought of the Duke of Britain, but could not hold him. And yet was not this of Edward such a Plantation, as could any way promise it self stability. For this Edward the King (to omit more than many of his other cruelties) beheld and allowed the slaughter which Gloucester, Dorset, Hastings, and others, made of Edward the Prince in his own presence: of which tragick Actions, there was not one that escaped the judgement of GOD in the same kinde. And he, which (besides the execution of his brother Clarence, for none other offence than he himself had formed in his own imagination) instructed Gloucester to kill Henry the sixth, his Predecessor; taught him also by the same art to kill his own sons and successors, Edward and Richard. For those Kings which have sold the blood of others at a low rate; have but made the market for their own enemies, to buy of theirs at the same price.

To Edward the fourth succeeded Richard the third, the greatest Master in mischief of all that fore-went him: who although, for the necessity of his Tragedy, he had more parts to play, and more to perform in his own person, than all the rest; yet he so well fitted every affection that plaid with him, as if each of them had but acted his own interest. For he wrought so cunningly upon the affections of Hastings and Buckingham, enemies to the Queen, and to all her kindred, as he easily allured them to condescend, that Rivers and Grey, the Kings Maternall Uncle and half-brother, should (for the first) be severed from him: secondly, he wrought their consent to have them imprisoned: and lastly (for the avoiding of future inconvenience) to have their heads severed from their bodies. And having now brought those his chief instruments to exercise that common precept which the Devil hath written upon every post, namely, To depreesse those whom they had grieved, and to destroy those whom they had deprested; He urged that argument so far and so forcibly; as nothing but the death of the young King himself, and of his brother, could fashion the conclusion. For he caused it to be hammered into Buckinghams head, That, whensoever the King or his Brother, should have able yeers to exercise their power, they would take a most severe revenge of that curelesse wrong offered to their Uncle and Brother, Rivers and Grey.

But this was not his manner of reasoning with Hastings, whose fidelity to his Masters Sons was without suspect: and yet the Devil, who never dissuades by impossibility, taught him to try him. And so he did. But when he found by Catesby, who founded him, that he was not fordable, he first resolved to kill him sitting in counsell: wherein having failed with his sword, he set the Hangman upon him, with a weapon of more weight. And because nothing else could move his appetite, he caused his head to be stricken off, before he eat his dinner. A greater judgement of God, than this upon Hastings, I have never observed in any story. For the self same day that the Earle Rivers, Grey, and others, were (without trial of law, or offence given) by Hastings advice executed at Pomfret: I say Hastings himself in the same day, and (as I take it) in the same hour, in the same lawlesse manner had his head stricken off in the Tower of London. But Buckingham lived a while longer; and with an eloquent oration persuaded

the

*Secula fecerit  
ribus tuenda.  
Sen. de clon.*

## The Preface.

the Londoners to elect Richard for their King. And having received the Earldome of Hereford for reward, besides the high hope of marrying his daughter to the Kings onely son; after many grievous vexations of minde, and unfortunate attempts, being in the end betrayed and delivered up by his trustiest servant; he had his head severed from his body at Salisbury, without the trouble of any of his Peers. And what successe had Richard himself after all these mischieves and murders, policies, and counter-policies to Christian Religion: and after such time as with a most mercilesse hand he had pressed out the breath of his Nephew and Naturall Lords, other than the prosperity of so short a life, as it took end, ere himself could well look over and discern it? the great out-cry of innocent blood, obtained at GODS hands the effusion of his; who became a spectacle of shame and dishonour, both to his friends and enemies.

This cruell King, Henry the seventh cut off; and was therein (no doubt) the immediate instrument of Gods Justice. A polick Prince he was, if ever there were any, who by the engine of his wisdom, beat down and overturned as many strong oppositions both before and after he wore the Crown, as ever King of England did: I say by his wisdom, because as he ever left the reins of his affections in the hands of his profit, so he alwayes weighed his undertakings by his abilities, leaving nothing more to hazard than so much as cannot be denied it in all humane actions. He had well observed the proceedings of Loys the eleventh, whom he followed in all that was royall or royall-like; but he was far more just; and begun not their processes whom he hated or feared by the execution, as Loys did.

He could never endure any mediation in rewarding his servants, and therein exceeding wise; for whatsoever himself gave, he himself received back the thanks and the love, knowing it well that the affections of men (purchased by nothing so readily as by benefits) were trains that better became great Kings, than great subjects. On the contrary, in whatsoever he grieved his subjects, he wisely put it off on those, that he found fit ministers for such actions. Howsoever the taking off of Stanlies head, who set the Crown on his, and the death of the young Earl of Warwick, son to George Duke of Clarence, shews, as the successe also did, that he held somewhat of the errors of his Ancestors; for his possession in the first line ended in his grand-children, as that of Edward the third, and Henry the fourth had done.

Now for King Henry the eighth, if all the pictures & patterns of a mercilesse Prince were lost in the World, they might all again be painted to the life, out of the story of this King. For how many servants did he advance in haste (but for what vertue no man could suspect) and with the change of his fancy ruined again; no man knowing for what offence? To how many others of more desert gave he abundant flowers from whence to gather bony, and in the end of harvest burnt them in the fire? How many wives did he cut off, and cast off, as his fancy and affection changed? How many Princes of the blood (whereof some of them for age could hardly crawl towards the block) with a world of others of all degrees (of whom our common Chronicles have kept the account) did he execute? yea, in his very death-bed, and when he was at the point to have given his account to GOD for the abundance of blood already spilt: He imprisoned the Duke of Norfolk the father; and executed the Earle of Surry the son; the one, whose desertings he knew not how to value, having never omitted any thing that concerned his own hon-

nour,

## The Preface.

nour, and the Kings service; the other never having committed any thing worthy of his least displeasure: the one exceeding valiant and advised; the other no lesse valiant than learned, & of excellent hope. But besides the sorrows which he heaped upon the Fatherlesse and Widows at home: and besides the vain enterprises abroad, wherein it is thought that he consumed more treasure, than all our victorious Kings did in their severall Conquests: what causelesse and cruell wars did he make upon his own Nephew King James the sixth? What Laws and Wills did he devise to establish this Kingdom in his own Issues? using his sharpest weapons to cut off, and cut down those branches, which sprang from the same root that himself did. And in the end (notwithstanding these his so many irreligious provisions) it pleased God to take away all his own, without increase; though, for themselves in their severall kindes, all Princes of eminent vertue. For these words of Samuel to Agag King of the Amalekites, have been verified upon many others: As thy sword hath made other women childlesse, so shall thy mother be childlesse among other women. And that blood which the same King Henry affirmed, that the cold aire of Scotland had frozen up in the North, God hath diffused by the sun-shine of his grace: from whence His Majesty now living, and long to live, is descended. Of whom I may say it truly; That if all the malice of the world were infused into one eye: yet could it not discern in his life, even to this day, any one of those foul spots, by which the consciences of all the fore-named Princes (in effect) have been defiled; nor any drop of that innocent blood on the sword of his justice, with which the most that for-went him have stained both their hands and fame. And for this Crown of England, it may truly be avowed: That he hath received it even from the hand of God, & hath staied the time of putting it on, howsoever he were provoked to hasten it: That he never took revenge of any man, that sought to put him beside it: That he refused the assistance of Her enemies, that wore it long, with as great glory as ever Princesse did: That His Majesty entered not by a breach, nor by blood; but by the Ordinary gate, which his own right set open; and into which, by a generall love and obedience, He was received. And howsoever His Majesties proceeding title to this Kingdom, was preferred by many Princes (witness the Treaty at Cambray in the year 1559.) yet he never pleased to dispute it, during the life of that renowned Lady his Predecessor; no, notwithstanding the injury of not being declared Heir, in all the time of Her long reign.

Neither ought we to forget, or neglect our thankfulness to GOD for the uniting of the Northern parts of Britany to the South, to wit, of Scotland to England, which though they were severed but by small brooks and banks, yet by reason of the long continued war, and the cruelties exercised upon each other, in the affection of the Nations, they were infinitely severed. This, I say, is not the least of Gods blessings which His Majesty hath brought with him unto this Land: No, put all our petty grievances together, and heap them up to their height, they will appear but as a Mole-hill, compared with the Mountain of this concord. And if all the Historians since then have acknowledged the uniting of the Red-Rose and the White, for the greatest happiness (Christian Religion excepted) that ever this Kingdom received from GOD, certainly the peace between the two Lions of gold and gules, and the making them one, doth by many degrees exceed the former; for by it, besides the sparing of our British blood, heretofore & during the difference, so often and abundantly shed, the state of England is more assured, the Kingdome more enabled



## The Preface.

enabled to recover her ancient honour and rights, and by it made more invincible, than by all our former alliances, practices, policies, and conquests. It is true, that hereof we do not yet find the effect. But had the Duke of Parma in the year 1588. joynd the Army which he commanded, with that of Spain, and landed it on the South coast; and had His Majesty at the same time declared himself against us in the North, it is easie to divine what had become of the liberty of England: certainly, we would then without murmure have brought this union a far greater praise than it hath since cost us. It is true, that there was never any Common-weal or Kingdome in the world, wherein no man had cause to lament. Kings live in the world, and not above it. They are not infinite to examine every mans cause, or to relieve every mans wants. And yet in the later, (though to his own prejudice) His Majesty hath had more compassion of other mens necessities, than of his own Coffers. Of whom it may be said, as of Solomon, Dedit Deus Solomoni latitudinem cordis: Which if other men do not understand with Pineda, to be meant by Liberality, but by Latitude of knowledge; yet may it be better spoken of His Majesty, than of any King that ever England had; who as well in divine, as humane understanding hath exceeded all that fore-went him, by many degrees.

Fin. comment. in  
Sal. 1. K. 4.

I could say much more of the Kings Majesty, without flattery: did I not fear the imputation of presumption, and withall suspect, that it might befall these papers of mine, (though the losse were little) as it did the Pictures of Queen Elizabeth, made by unskilfull and common Painters, which by her own commandment were knockt in pieces, and cast into the fire. For ill Artists, in setting out the beauty of the externall; and weak writers, in describing the vertues of the internall; do often leave to posterity, of well formed faces a deformed memory; and of the most Perfect and Princely mindes, a most defective representation. It may suffice, and there needs no other discourse; if the honest Reader but compare the cruell and turbulent passages of our former Kings, and of other their Neighbour-Princes (of whom for that purpose I have inserted this brief discourse) with His Majesties temperate, revengelesse, and liberall disposition: I say, that if the honest Reader weigh them justly, and with an even hand: and withall but bestow every deformed childe on his true Parent; He shall finde, that there is no man that hath so just cause to complain, as the King himself hath. Now as we have told the successe of the trumperies and cruelties of our own Kings, & other great Personages: so we find, that GOD is every-where the same God. And as it pleased him to punish the usurpation and unnaturall cruelty of Henry the first, and of our third Edward, in their Children for many generations; so dealt he with the sons of Loys Debonaire, the son of Charles the Great, or Charlemaine. For after such time as Debonaire of France, had torn out the eyes of Bernard his Nephew, the son of Pepin the eldest son of Charlemaine, and Heire of the Empire, and then caused him to die in prison, as did our Henry to Robert his eldest brother: there followed nothing but murders upon murders, poisoning, imprisonments, and civill war; till the whole race of that famous Emperour was extinguished. And though Debonaire, after he had rid himself of his Nephew by a violent death; and of his bastard brothers by a civill death (having inclosed them with sure guard all the dayes of their lives, within a Monastery) held himself secure from all opposition: Yet God raised up against him (which he suspected not) his own sons, to vex him, to invade him, to take him prisoner, and to depose him; his own sons, with whom

(to

## The Preface.

(to satisfie their ambition) he had shared his estate, and given them Crowns to wear, and Kingdoms to govern, during his own life. Yea, his eldest son Lothaire (for he had four, three by his first wife, and one by his second; to wit, Lothaire, Pepin, Loys, and Charles) made it the cause of his deposition, That he had used violence towards his brothers and kinsmen; and that he had suffered his Nephew (whom he might have delivered) to be slain. *Et quod, scilicet the Text, fratribus, & propinquis violentiam intulerit, & nepotem suum, quem ipse liberare poterat, interfici permiserit*; Because he used violence to his brothers and kinsmen, and suffered his nephew to be slain, whom he might have delivered.

Sup. P. 1. u. re  
recher. l. 3. u. 1.

Yet did he that which few Kings doe; namely, repent him of his cruelty. For, among many other things which he performed in the Generall Assembly of the States, it follows: *Post hac autem palam se errasse confessus, & imitatus Imperatoris Theodosii exemplum, poenitentiam spontaneam suscepit*, tam de his, quam quæ in Bernardum proprium nepotem gesserat: After this he did openly confesse himself to have erred, and following the example of the Emperour Theodosius, he underwent voluntary penance, as well for his other offences, as for that which he had done against Bernard his own Nephew.

Pag. Bilem.

This he did, and it was praise-worthy. But the blood that is unjustly spilt, is not again gathered up from the ground by repentance. These Medicines, ministred to the dead, have but dead rewards.

This King, as I have said, had foure sons. To Lothaire his eldest he gave the Kingdom of Italy, as Charlemaine his father had done to Pepin the father of Bernard, who was to succeed him in the Empire. To Pepin the second son he gave the Kingdome of Aquitaine: to Loys, the Kingdome of Bavier: and to Charles, whom he had by a second wife, called Judith, the remainder of the Kingdome of France. But this second wife, being a mother-in-law to the rest, perswaded Debonaire to cast his son Pepin out of Aquitain; thereby to greater Charles, which, after the death of his son Pepin, he prosecuted to effect against his Grand-childe bearing the same name. In the mean while, being invaded by his son Loys of Bavier, he dies for grief.

Debonaire dead, Loys of Bavier, and Charles afterwards called the bald, and their Nephew Pepin of Aquitaine, joyne in league against the Emperour Lothaire their eldest brother. They fight neer to Auxerre the most bloody battell that ever was stricken in France: in which, the marvellous losse of Nobility, and men of war, gave courage to the Saracens to invade Italy; to the Hunnes to fall upon Almaine; and the Danes to enter upon Normandy. Charles the bald by treason seizeth upon his Nephew Pepin, kills him in a Cloyster: Carloman rebels against his father Charles the bald, the father burns out the eyes of his son Carloman; Bavier invades the Emperour Lothaire his brother, Lothaire quits the Empire, He is assailed and wounded to the heart by his own conscience, for his Rebellion against his father, and for his other cruelties, and dies in a Monastery. Charles the bald the Uncle oppresseth his Nephews the Sons of Lothaire, he usurpeth the Empire to the prejudice of Loys of Bavier his elder brother; Baviars Armies and his son Carloman are beaten, he dies of grief, and the Usurper Charles is poisoned by Zedechias a Jew, his Physician, his son Loys le Beque dies of the same drink. Beque had Charles the simple,

and



## The Preface.

and two Bastards, Loys and Carloman; they rebell against their Brother, but the eldest breaks his neck, the younger is slain by a wilde Bore; the son of Bavier had the same ill destiny, and brake his neck by a fall out of a window in sporting with his companions. Charles the grosse becomes Lord of all that the sons of Debonaire held in Germany; where with not contented, he invades Charles the simple: but being forsaken of his Nobility, of his wife, and of his understanding, he dies a distressed Beggar. Charles the simple is held in Wardship by Eudes Maior of the Pallace, then by Robert the brother of Eudes: and lastly, being taken by the Earle of Vermandois, he is forced to dye in the prison of Peron. Loys the son of Charles the simple breaks his neck in chasing a Wolfe, and of the two sons of this Loys, the one dies of poyson; the other dies in the prison of Orleans; after whom Hugh Capet, of another race, and a stranger to the French, makes himself King.

These miserable ends had the issues of Debonaire; who after he had once apperrelled in justice with authority, his sons and successours took up the fashion, and wore that Garment so long without other provision, as when the same was torn from their shoulders, every man despised them as miserable and naked Beggars. The wretched successfe they had, (saith a learned French-man) shewes, que en ceste mort il y avoit plus du fait des hommes que de Dieu, ou de la justice: That in the death of that Prince; to wit, of Bernard the son of Pepin, the true heir of Charlemaine, men had more meddling than either God, or Justice had.

But to come neerer home; it is certain that Francis the first, one of the worthiest Kings (except for that fact) that ever the French-men had, did never enjoy himself, after he had commended the destruction of the Protestants of Mirandol and Cabrieres, to the Parliament of Provence, which poor people were thereupon burnt and murdered; men, women, and children. It is true that the said King Francis repented himself of the fact, and gave charge to Henry his son, to doe justice upon the Murderers, threatening his son with GODS judgements, if he neglected it. But this unseasonable care of his, GOD was not pleased to accept for payment. For after Henry himself was slain in sport by Montgomery, we all may remember what became of his four sons, Francis, Charles, Henry, and Hercules. Of which, although three of them became Kings, and were married to beautiful and vertuous Ladies: yet were they, one after another, cast out of the world, without stock or seed. And notwithstanding their subtlety, and breach of faith; with all their Massacres upon those of the religion, and great effusion of blood, the Crown was set on his head, whom they all laboured to dissolve; the Protestants remain more in number than ever they were, and hold to this day more strong Cities than ever they had.

Let us now see if God be not the same God in Spain, as in England and France. Towards whom we will look no further back than to Don Pedro of Castile: in respect of which Prince, all the Tyrants of Sicily, our Richard the third, and the great Evan Vasilowick of Moscovia, were but petty ones: this Castilian, of all Christian and Heathen Kings; having been the most mercilesse. For, besides those of his own Blood and Nobility, which he caused to be slain in his own Court and Chamber, as Sancho Ruis, the great Master of Calatrava, Ruis Gonfale, Alphonso Tello, and Don John of Arragon, whom he cut in pieces, and cast into the street; denying him Christian buriall: I say, besides these, and the slaughter

of

## The Preface.

of Gomes Mauriques, Diego Peres, Alphonso Gomes, and the great Commander of Castile; he made away the two Infants of Arragon his Cousin-germans, his brother Don Frederick, Don John de la Cerde, Albuquerque, Nuges de Guzman, Cornel, Cabrera, Tenorio, Mendes de Toledo, Guttierre his great Treasurer, and all his kindred; and a world of others. Neither did he spare his two youngest brothers, innocent Princes: whom after he had kept in close prison from their Cradles, till one of them had lived sixteen yeers, and the other fourteen; he murdered them there. Nay, he spared not his Mother, nor his Wife the Lady Blanch of Bourbon. Lastly, as he caused the Archbishop of Toledo, and the Dean to be killed of purpose to enjoy their treasures; so did he put to death Mahomet Aben Alhamar King of Barbary, with 37. of his Nobility, that came unto him for succour, with a great summe of money, to leviz (by his favour) some companies of souldiers to return withall. Yea, he would needs assist the Hangman with his own hand, in the execution of the old King; inasmuch as Pope Urban declared him an enemy both to God & Man. But what was his end? Having been formerly beaten out of his Kingdome, and re-established by the valour of the English Nation, led by the famous Duke of Lancaster: He was stabbed to death by his younger brother the Earle of Astramara, who dispossessed all his Children of their inheritance; which, but for the Fathers injustice and cruelty, had never been in danger of any such thing.

Hist. of Spain.

If we can parallel any man with this King, it must be Duke John of Burgoign, who, after his traiterous murder of the Duke of Orleans, caused the Constable of Armagnac, the Chancellor of France, the Bishops of Constance, Bayeux, Eureux, Senlis, Saintes, and other religious and reverend Church-men, the Earle of gran Pre, Hector of Chartres, and (in effect) all the Officers of justice of the Chamber of Accomps, Treasury, and Requests, (with sixteen hundred others to accompany them) to be suddenly and violently slain. Hereby, while he hoped to govern, and to have mastered France: He was soon after stricken with an axe in the face, in the presence of the Dauphin; and, without any leisure to repent his misdeeds, presently slain. These were the Lovers of other mens miseries: and misery found them out.

French history in anno 1418

Now for the Kings of Spain, which lived both with Henry the seventh, Henry the eighth, Queen Mary, and Queen Elizabeth; Ferdinand of Arragon was the first: and the first that laid the foundation of the present Austrian greatness. For this King did not content himself to hold Arragon by the usurpation of his Ancestor; and to fasten thereunto the Kingdome of Castile and Leon; which Isabel his wife held by strong hand, and his assistance, from her own Neece the Daughter of the last Henry: but most cruelly and craftily, without all colour or pretence of right; he also cast his own Neece out of the Kingdome of Navarre: and, contrary to faith, and the promise that he made to restore it, fortified the best places, and so wasted the rest, as there was no means left for any Army to invade it. This King, I say, that betrayed also Ferdinand and Frederick Kings of Naples, Princes of his own blood, and by double alliance tied unto him; sold them to the French: and with the same Army, sent for their succour under Gonfale, cast them out; and shared their Kingdome with the French, whom afterwards he most shamefully betrayed.

This wise and politick King, who sold Heaven and his own Honour, to make

B

his

## The Preface.

his son the Prince of Spain, the gratest Monarch of the world : saw him die in the flower of his years; and his wife great with childe, with her untimely birth, at once and together buried. His eldest daughter married unto Don Alphonso, Prince of Portugal; beheld her first husband break his neck in her presence; and being with childe by her second, died with it. A just judgement of God upon the race of John, father to Alphonso, now wholly extinguished : who had not onely left many disconsolate Mothers in Portugal; by the slaughter of their children; but had formerly slain with his own hand, the son and onely comfort of his Aunt the Lady Beatrix, Dutcheffe of Viseo. The second daughter of Ferdinand, married to the Arch-Duke Philip; turned fool, and died mad and deprived. His third daughter, bestowed on King Henry the eighth, he saw cast off by the King: the mother of many troubles in England; and the mother of a daughter, that in her unhappy zeal soed a world of innocent blood; lost Calice to the French; and died heart-broken without increase. To conclude; all those Kingdoms of Ferdinand have masters of a new name; and by a strange family are governed and possest.

Charles the fifth, son to the Arch-Duke Philip, in whose wain enterprises upon the French, upon the Almans, and other Princes and States; so many multitudes of Christian Souldiers, and renowned Captains were consumed : who gave the while a most perillous entrance to the Turks, and suffered Rhodes, the Key of Christendom, to be taken; was in conclusion chased out of France, and in a fort out of Germany; and left to the French, Mentz, Toule, and Verdun, places belonging to the Empire, stole away from Insprug; and scaled the Alpes by torch-light, pursued by Duke Maurice; having hoped to smallow up all those Dominions, wherein he conceived nothing save his own disgraces. And having, after the slaughter of so many Millions of men, no one foot of ground in either: He crept into a Cloister, and made himself a Pensioner of an hundred thousand Duckets by the yeer, to his son Philip, from whom he very slowly received his mean and ordinary maintenance.

His son again King Philip the second, not satisfied to hold Holland & Zeland, (wrested by his ancestors from Jaqueline their lawfull Princeesse) and to possest in peace many other Provinces of the Netherlands : persuaded by that mischievous Cardinall of Granvile, and other Romish Tyrants; not onely forgot the most remarkable services, done to his Father the Emperour, by the Nobility of those Countries, but cruelly forgot the Present made him upon his entry, of fourty Millions of Florens, called the Novaille aide; nor onely forgot that he had twice most solemnly sworn to the Generall States, to maintain & preserve their ancient rights, priviledges, and customes; which they had enjoyed under their thirty and five Earles before him, Conditionall Princes of those Provinces : but beginning first to constrain them, and enthrall them by the Spanish Inquisition, and then to impoverish them by many new devised and intollerable impositions; he lastly, by strong hand and main force, attempted to make himself not onely an absolute Monarch over them, like unto the Kings and Soveraignes of England and France; but Turk-like, to tread under his feet all their Naturall and Fundamentall Lawes, Priviledges, and ancient Rights. To effect which, after he had easily obtained from the Pope a Dispensation of his former Oaths (which Dispensation was the true cause of the War and Bloodshed since then;) and after he had tried what he could perform, by dividing of their own Nobility, under the govern-

Nether. hist. l. 7.  
p. 313.

Hist. of the Netherlands.

## The Preface.

ment of his base sister, Margaret of Austria, and the Cardinall Granvile; He employed that most merciless Spaniard, Don Ferdinand Alvarez of Toledo, Duke of Alva, followed with a powerfull Army of strange Nations; by whom he first slaughtered that renowned Captain the Earl of Egmont, Prince of Gavare; and Philip Montmorency Earl of Horn: made away Montigue, and the Marquesse of Bergues, and cut off in those six years (that Alva governed) of Gentlemen and others, eighteen thousand and six hundred, by the bands of the Haugman, besides all his other barbarous murders and massacres. By whose ministry when he could not yet bring his affairs to their wished ends, having it in his hope to work that by subtilty, which he had failed to perform by force: He sent for Governour his bastard brother Don John of Austria; a Prince of great hope, and very gracious to those people. But he, using the same Papall advantage that his Predecessors had done, made no scruple to take Oath upon the holy Evangelists, to observe the Treaty made with the Generall States; and to discharge the Low-Countries of all Spaniards, & other strangers therein garrison'd. Towards whose Pay & Passport, the Netherlands strained themselves to make payment of 600000 pounds. Which monies received, he suddenly surprised the Citadels of Antwerp and Nemures: not doubting (being unsuspected by the States) to have possest himself of all the mastering places of those Provinces. For whatsover he overtly pretended, he held in secret a contrary counsell with the Secretary Escovedo, Rhodus, Barlemon, and others, Ministers of the Spanish tyranny formerly practised, and now again intended. But let us now see the effect and end of this perjury, and of all other the Dukes cruelties. First, for himself; after he had murdered so many of the Nobility; executed (as aforesaid) eighteen thousand and six hundred in six years, and most cruelly slain Man, Woman, and Childe in Mecklin, Zurphen, Naerden, and other places; and after he had consumed fix and thirty millions of treasure in six years: notwithstanding his Spanish want, That he would suffocate the Hollanders in their own Butter-barrels, and Milk-tubs: He departed the Country no otherwise accompanied, than with the curse and detestation of the whole Nation; leaving his Masters affaires in a tenfold worse estate, than he found them at his first arrival. For Don John, whose haughty conceit of himself overcame the greatest difficulties; though his judgment were over-weak to manage the least: what wonders did his fearfull breach of faith bring forth, other than the King his brothers jealousie & distrust, with the untimely death what seized him, even in the flower of his youth? And for Escovedo his sharp-witted Secretary, who in his own imagination had conquered for his Master both England and the Netherlands; being sent into Spain upon some new project, he was at the first arrivall, and before any access to the King, by certain Russians appointed by Anthony Peres (though by better warrant than his) rudely murdered in his own lodging. Lastly, if we consider the King of Spains carriage, his counsell and success in this businesse, there is nothing left to the memory of man more remarkable. For he hath paid above an hundred Millions, and the lives of above four hundred thousand Christians, for the losse of all those Counties, which, for beauty, gave place to none; and for revenue, did equal his West-Indies: for the losse of a Nation which most willingly obeyed him; and who at this day, after forty yeers war, are in despaynt of all his forces become a free Estate, and far more rich and powerfull than they were, when he first began to impoverish and oppress them.

## The Preface.

Off by what plots; by what forswearings, betrayings, oppressions, imprisonments, tortures, poisonings, and under what reasons of State, and politick subtilty, have those fore-named Kings, both Strangers, and of our own Nation, pulled the vengeance of GOD upon themselves, upon theirs, and upon their prudent ministers! and in the end have brought those things to passe for their enemies, and seen an effect directly contrary to all their own counsels and cruelties; as the one could never have hoped for themselves; and the other never have succeeded; if no such opposition had ever been made. GOD hath said it, and performed it ever: Perdam sapientiam sapientum; I will destroy the wisdom of the wise.

But what of all this? and to what end do we lay before the eyes of the living, the fall and fortunes of the dead: seeing the world is the same that it hath been; and the children of the present time, will still obey their parents? It is in the present time, that all the wits of the world are exercised. To hold the times we have, we hold all things lawfull: and either we hope to hold them for ever; or at least we hope, that there is nothing after them to be hoped for. For as we are content to forget our own experience, and to counterfeit the ignorance of our own knowledge, in all things that concern our selves; or perswade our selves, that GOD hath given us letters patents to pursue all our irreligious affections, with a non obstante: so we neither look behinde us what hath been, nor before us what shall be. It is true, that the quantity which we have, is of the body: we are by it joyued to the earth: we are compounded of earth; and we inhabit it. The Heavens are high, far off, and unsearchable: we have sense and feeling of corporall things; and of eternall grace, but by revelation. No marvell then that our thoughts are also earthly: and it is lesse to be wondred at, that the words of worlesse men cannot cleanse them: seeing their doctrine and instruction, whose understanding the Holy Ghost vouchsafed to inhabit, have not performed it. For as the Prophet Elay cried out long agoe, Lord, who hath beleevd our reports? And out of doubt, as Elay complained then for himself and others: so are they lesse beleevd, every day after other. For although Religion, and the truth thereof be in every mans mouth, yea, in the discourse of every woman, who for the greatest number are but Idols of vanity: what is it other than an universall dissimulation? We professe that we know GOD: but by works we deny him. For Beatitude doth not consist in the knowledge of divine things, but in a divine life: for the Devils know them better than men. Beatitude non est divinum cognitio, sed vita divina. And certainly there is nothing more to be admired, and more to be lamented, than the private contention, the passionate dispute, the personall hatred, and the perpetuall war, massacres, and murders, for Religion among Christians: the discourse whereof hath so occupied the World, as it hath well neer driven the practice thereof out of the World. Who would not soon resolve, that took knowledge but of the religious disputations among men, and not of their lives which dispute, that there were no other thing in their desires, than the purchase of Heaven; and that the World it self were but used as it ought, and as an Inne, or place wherein to repose our selves, passing on towards our celestially habitation? when on the contrary, besides the discourse and outward profession, the soule hath nothing but hypocrisie. We are all (in effect) become Comedians in Religion: and while we act in gesture and voice, divine vertues, in all the course of our lives we renounce our Persons, and the parts we play. For Charity, Justice, and Truth,

Final to Titus,  
ch. 1. v. 10.

## The Preface.

have but their being in terms, like the Philosophers Materia prima.

Neither is it that wisdom, which Solomon defineth to be the School-Mistresse of the knowledge of God, that hath valuation in the world: it is enough that we give it our good word: but the same which is altogether exercised in the service of the World, as the gathering of riches chiefly, by which we purchase and obtaine honour, with the many respects which attend it. These indeed be the marks, which (when we have bent our consciences to the biggest) we all shoot at. For the obtaining whereof it is true, that the care is our own; the care our own in this life, the perill our own in the future: and yet when we have gathered the greatest abundance, we our selves enjoy no more thereof, than so much as belongs to one man. For the rest, He that had the greatest wisdom, and the greatest ability that ever man had, hath told us, that this is the use: When goods increace (saith Solomon) they also increace that eat them; and what good cometh to the Owners, but the beholding thereof with their eyes? As for those that devour the rest, and follow us in faire weather: they again forsake us in the first tempest of misfortune, and steere away before the Sea and Winde; leaving us to the malice of our destinies. Of these, among a thousand examples, I will take but one out of Master Danner, and use his own words: Whilest the Emperour Charles the fifth, after the resignation of his estates, stayed at Uloshing for winde, to carry him his last journey into Spain; He conferred on a time with Seldins, his brother Ferdinands Embassadour, till the deep of the night. And when Seldins should depart: the Emperour calling for some of his servants, and no body answering him, (for those that attended upon him, were some gone to their lodgings, and all the rest asleep) the Emperour took up the candle himself, and went before Seldins to light him down the staires; and so did, notwithstanding all the resistance that Seldins could make. And when he was come to the staires foot, he said thus unto him: Seldins, remember this of Charles the Emperour, when he shall be dead and gone, That Him, whom thou hast known in thy time environed with so many mighty Armies and Guards of Souldiers, thou hast also seen alone, abandoned, and forsaken, yea even of his own domestically servants, &c. I acknowledge this change of Fortune to proceed from the mighty hand of GOD, which I will by no means go about to withstand.

Eccl. 5. 10.

But you will say, that there are some things else, and of greater regard than the former. The first is the reverend respect that is held of great men, and the Honour done unto them by all sorts of people. And it is true indeed: provided, that an inward love for their justice and piety, accompany the outward worship given to their places and power; without which what is the applause of the Multitude, but as the out-cry of an Herd of Animals, who without the knowledge of any true cause, please themselves with the noise they make? For seeing it is a thing exceeding rare to distinguish Vertue and Fortune: the most impious (if prosperous) have ever been applauded; the most vermonous (if unprosperous) have ever been despised. For as Fortunes man rides the Horse, so Fortune her self rides the Man. Who, when he is descended and on foot: the Man taken from his Beast, and Fortune from the Man; a base groom beats the one, and a bitter contempt spurnes at the other, with equall liberty.

## The Preface.

L. H. de f. 1. 1.  
157. l. 3. c. 29.

S. Aug. de civi-  
tate dei.

J. b. 14. 21.

Plal. 39.

Eccle. 5. 5.  
1. 2.

Efay 63. 16.

The second is the greatning of our posterity, and the contemplation of their glory whom we leave behinde us. Certainly of those which conceive that their souls departed take any comfort therein, it may truly be said of them, which Lactantius spake of certain Heathen Philosophers, quod sapientes sunt in re sua. For when our spirits immortall shall be once separate from our mortall bodies, and disposed by GOD: there remaineth in them no other joy of their posterity which succeed, than there doth of pride in that stone, which sleepeth in the Wall of a Kings Palace, nor any other sorrow for their poverty, than there doth of shame in that, which beareth up a Beggars cottage. Nesciunt mortui, etiam sancti, quid agunt vivi, etiam eorum filii, quia animæ mortuorum rebus viventium non interfunt: The dead, though holy, know nothing of the living, no, not of their own children: for the souls of those departed, are not conversant with their affaires that remain. And if we doubt of Saint Augustine, we cannot of Job: who tells us, That we know not if our sons shall be honourable: neither shall we understand concerning them, whether they shall be of low degree. Which Ecclesiastes also confirmeth: Man walketh in a shadow, and disquieteth himself in vain: he heapeth up riches, and cannot tell who shall gather them. The living (saith he) know that they shall die, but the dead know nothing at all: for who can shew unto man what shall be after him under the Sunne? He therefore accounteth it among the rest of worldly vanities, to labour and travell in the world; not knowing after death, whether a foole or a wise man should enjoy the fruits thereof: which made me (saith he) endeavour even to abhorre mine own labour. And what can other men hope, whose blessed or sorrowfull estates after death God hath reserved? many knowledgely lying but in his hope, seeing the Prophet Elay confesseth of the Elect, That Abraham is ignorant of us, and Israel knows us not. But hereof we are assured, that the long and dark night of death, (of whose following day we shall never behold the dawn till his return that hath triumphed over it) shall cover us over till the world be no more. After which, and when we shall again receive Organs glorified and incorruptible, the seats of Angelicall affections: in so great admiration shall the soules of the blessed be exercised, as they cannot admit the mixture of any second or lesse joy; nor any return of forgone and mortall affection towards friends, kinsred, or children. Of whom whether we shall retain any particular knowledge, or in any sort distinguish them, no man can assure us; and the wisest men doubt. But on the contrary; if a divine life retain any of those faculties, which the soule exercised in a mortall body; we shall not at that time so divide the joyes of Heaven, as to cast any part thereof on the memory of their felicities which remaine in the World. No, be their estates greater than ever the World gave, we shall (by the difference known unto us) even detest their consideration. And whatsoever comfort shall remain of all forepast, the same will consist in the charity, which we exercised living: and in that Piety, Justice, and firm Faith, for which it pleased the infinite mercy of God to accept of us, and receive us. Shall we therefore value honour and riches at nothing? and neglect them, as unnecessary and vain? Certainly no. For that infinite wisdom of God, which hath distinguished his Angels by degrees: which hath given greater and lesse light and beauty to heavenly bodies: which hath made differences between beasts and birds: created the Eagle

and

## The Preface.

and the Flie, the Cedar and the Shrub: and among stones, given the fairest tincture to the Ruby, and the quickest light to the Diamond; hath also ordained Kings, Dukes, or Leaders of the people, Magistrates, Judges, and other degrees among men. And as honour is left to posterity, for a mark and ensigne of the verine and understanding of their Ancestors; so (seeing Siracides preferreth Death before Beggary: and that titles, without proportionable estates, fall under the miserable succour of other mens pity,) I account it foolishnesse to condemn such a care: Provided, that worldly goods be well gotten; and that we raise not our own buildings out of other mens ruinas. For, as Plato doth first preferre the perfection of bodily health; secondly, the forme and beauty, and thirdly, Divitiæ nulla fraude quasitas: so Jeremy cries, Woe unto them that erect their houses by unrighteousnesse, and their chambers without equity: And Esay the same, Woe to those that spoile, and were not spoiled. And it was out of the true wisdom of Solomon, that he commandeth us, not to drink the wine of violence; not to lie in wait for blood; and not to swallow them up alive, whose riches we covet: for such are the wayes (saith he) of every one that is greedy of gain.

And if we could afford our selves but so much leisure as to consider, That he which hath most in the world, hath, in respect of the world, nothing in it: and that he which hath the longest time lent him to live in it; hath yet no proportion at all therein, setting it either by that which is past, when we were not, or by that time which is to come, in which we shall abide for ever: I say, if both, to wit, our proportion in the world, and our time in the world, differ not much from that which is nothing, it is not out of any excellency of understanding, that we so much prize the one, which hath (in effect) no being: and so much neglect the other, which hath no ending: coveting those mortall things of the world, as if our soules were therein immortall, and neglecting those things which are immortall, as if our selves after the world were but mortall.

But let every man value his own wisdom, as he pleaseth. Let the Rich man think all fools, that cannot equall his abundance; the Revenger esteem all negligent, that have not trodden down their opposites; the Politician all gross, that cannot merchandize their faith: Yet when we once come in sight of the Port of death, to which all winds drive us, & when by letting fall that fatal Anchor, which can never be weighed again, the navigation of this life takes end: Then it is, I say, that our own cogitations (those sad & severe cogitations, formerly beaten from us by our Health & Felicity) return again, & pay us to the uttermost for all the pleasing passages of our lives past. It is then that we cry out to God for mercy; then, when our selves can no longer exercise cruelty to others: and it is only then, that we are stricken through the soul with this terrible sentence, That God will not be mock't. For if according to S. Peter, The righteous scarcely be saved: and that God spared not his Angels: where shall those appear, who, having served their appetites all their lives, presume to think, that the severe Commandments of the All-powerfull God were given but in sport; & that the short breath, which we draw when death presseth us, if we can but fashion it to the sound of Mercy (without any kind of satisfaction or amends) is sufficient? O quam multi, saith a reverend Father, cum hac spe ad aternos labores & bella descendant! I confesse that it is a great comfort to our friends, to have it said, that we ended well; for we all desire

## The Preface.

desire (as Balaam did) to die the death of the righteous. But what shall we call a dis-esteeming, an opposing, or (indeed) a mocking of God: if those men do not oppose him, dis-esteem him, and mock him, that think it enough for God, to ask him forgiveness at leisure, with the remainder & last drawing of a malicious breathe? For what do they otherwise, that die this kind of well-dying, but say unto God as followeth? We beseech thee, O God, that all the falsehoods, forswearings, and treacheries of our lives past; may be pleasing unto thee; that thou wilt for our sakes (that have had no leisure to do any thing for thine) change thy nature (though impossible) and forget to be a just God; that thou wilt love injuries and oppressions, call ambition wisdom, and charity foolishness. For I shall prejudice my son, (which I am resolved not to do) if I make restitution; and confesse my self to have been unjust, (which I am too proud to do) if I deliver the oppressed. Certainly, these wise worldlings have either found out a new God, or made One; and in all likelihood such a Leaden One, as Lewis the eleventh wore in his Cap; which when he had caused any that he feared or hated, to be killed, he would take it from his head and kisse it: beseeching it to pardon him this one evil act more, and it should be the last; which (as at other times) he did, when by the practice of a Cardinall and a falsified Sacrament, he caused the Earl of Armagnac to be stabbed to death: mockeries indeed fit to be used towards a Leaden, but not towards the Everliving God. But of this composition are all devout lovers of the World, that they fear all that is duress and ridiculous: they fear the plots and practices of their opposites, and their very whisperings: they fear the opinions of men, which beat but upon shadows: they flatter and forsake the prosperous and unprosperous, be they friends or Kings: yea, they dive under water, like Ducks, at every pebble stone, that is but thrown towards them by a powerfull hand: and on the contrary, they shew an obstinate and Giant-like valour, against the terrible judgements of the All-powerfull God: yea, they shew themselves gods against God, and slaves to wards men; towards men whose bodies and consciences are alike rotten.

Now for the rest: If we truly examine the difference of both conditions; to wit, of the rich and mighty, whom we call fortunate; and of the poor & oppressed, whom we account wretched: we shall finde the happiness of the one, and the miserable estate of the other, so tied by God to the very instant, and both so subject to interchange (witness the sudden downfall of the greatest Princes, and the speedy uprising of the meanest persons) as the one hath nothing so certain, whereof to boast; nor the other so uncertain, whereof to bewail it self. For there is no man so assured of his honour, of his riches, health, or life; but that he may be deprived of either, or all, the very next houre or day to come. Quid vespere vehat, incertum est; What the evening will bring with it, it is uncertaine. And yet ye cannot tell (saith S. James) what shall be to morrow. To day he is set up, and to morrow he shall not be found; for he is turned into dust, and his purpose perisheth. And although the aire which compasseth adversity, be very obscure: yet therein we better discern God, than in that shining light which environeth worldly glory, through which, for the cleanness thereof, there is no vanity which escapeth our sight. And let adversity seem what it will; to happy men ridiculous, who make themselves merry at other mens misfortunes; and to those under the crosse, grievous: yet this is true, That for all that is past, to the very instant, the portions remaining are equal to either. For be it that we

have

## The Preface.

have lived many yeers, and (according to Solomon) in them all we have joyced; or be it that we have measured the same length of dayes, and therein have evermore sorrowed: yet looking back from our present being, we finde both the one and the other, to wit, the joy and the woe, sailed out of sight; and death, which doth pursue us, and hold us in chace, from our infancy, hath gathered it. Quicquid ætatis retro est, mors tenet: Whatsoever of our age is past, death holds it. So as whosoever he be, to whom Fortune hath been a friend; and the Time a friend: let him but take the account of his memory (for we have no other keeper of our pleasures past) and truly examine what it hath reserved either of beauty and youth, or fore-gone delights; what it hath saved, that it might last, of his dearest affections, or of whatever else the amorous Spring-time gave his thoughts of contentment, then unvaluable; and he shall finde that all the Art which his elder yeers have, can draw no other vapour out of these dissolutions, than heavie, secret, and sad sighes. He shall finde nothing remaining, but those sorrows, which grow up after our fast-springing youth, over-take it, when it is at a stand; and over-top it utterly, when it begins to wither: in so much as looking back from the very instant time, and from our now being, the poor, diseased, and captive creature, hath as little sense of all his former miseries and pains, as he, that is most blest in common opinion, hath of his fore-passed pleasure and delights. For whatsoever is cast behind us, is just nothing: and what is to come, deceitfull hope hath it: Omnia quæ eventura sunt, in incerto jacent. Only those few black Swans I must except: who having had the grace to value worldly vanities at no more than their own price; do, by retaining the comfortable memory of a well-acted life, behold death without dread, and the grave without fear; and embrace both, as necessary guides to endless glory.

For my self, this is my consolation, and all that I can offer to others, that the sorrows of this life are but of two sorts: whereof the one hath respect to GOD; the other to the World. In the first we complain to GOD against our selves, for our offences against him; and confesse, Et tu justus es in omnibus quæ venerunt super nos; And thou, O Lord, art just in all that hath befallen us. In the second we complain to our selves against GOD: as if he had done us wrong, either in not giving us worldly goods and honours, answering our appetites: or for taking them again from us having had them; forgetting that humble and just acknowledgement of Job, The Lord hath given, and the Lord hath taken. To the first of which S. Paul hath promised blessednesse; to the second, death. And out of doubt he is either a fool, or ungratefull to GOD, or both, that doth not acknowledge, how mean soever his estate be, that the same is yet far greater, than that which God oweth him: or doth not acknowledge, how sharp soever his afflictions be, that the same are yet far lesse, than those which are due unto him. And if an Heathen wise man call the adversities of the world but tributa vivendi; the tributes of living: a wise Christian man ought to know them, and bear them but as the tributes of offending. He ought to bear them man-like, and resolvedly, and not as those whining Souldiers do, qui gementes sequuntur Imperatorem.

For seeing God, who is the Author of all our tragedies, hath written out for us, and appointed us all the parts we are to play: and hath not, in their distribution, been partiall to the most mighty Princes of the World; That gave unto Darius the part of the greatest Emperour, and the part of the most miserable beggar,

a beggar



## The Preface.

a beggar begging water of an Enemy, to quench the great drought of death; That appointed Bajazet to play the Grand Signior of the Turks in the morning, & in the same day the Footstool of Tamerlane (both which parts Valerian had also played being taken by Saporess) that made Bellisarius play the most victorious Captain, and lastly the part of a blind beggar, of which examples many thousands may be produced: why should other men, who are but as the least worms, complain of wrongs? Certainly there is no other account to be made of this ridiculous world, than to resolve, That the change of fortune on the great Theater, is but as the change of garments on the lesse. For when on the one and the other, every man wears but his own skin, the Players are all alike. Now if any man out of weakness prize the passages of this world otherwise (for saith Petrarch, Magni ingenii est revocare mentem a sensibus) it is by reason of that unhappy fantasie of ours, which forgets in the brains of Man all the miseries (the corporall excepted) whereunto he is subject. Therein it is, that Misfortune and Adversity work all that they work. For seeing Death, in the end of the Play, takes from all, whatsoever Fortune or Force takes from any one; it were a foolish madnesse in the shipwreck of worldly things, where all sink but the Sorrow, to save it. That were, as Seneca saith, *Fortuna succumbere, quod tristius est omni fato: To fall under Fortune, of all other the most miserable destinie.*

But it is now time to sound a retreat, and to desire to be excused of this long pursuit: and withall, that the good intent, which hath moved me to draw the picture of time past (which we call History) in so large a Table, may also be accepted in place of a better reason.

The examples of divine Providence, every where found (the first divine Histories being nothing els but a continuation of such examples) have perswaded me to fetch my beginning from the beginning of all things; to wit, Creation. For though these two glorious actions of the Almighty be so neer, and (as it were) linked together, that the one necessarily implieth the other: Creation inferring Providence (for what father forsaketh the child that he hath begotten?) & Providence presupposing Creation: Yet many of those that have seemed to excell in worldly wisdom, have gone about to dis-joyne this coherence; the Epicure denying both Creation and Providence, but granting that the World had a Beginning; the Aristotelian granting Providence, but denying both the Creation and the Beginning.

Now although this doctrine of Faith, touching the Creation in time (for by faith we understand, that the world was made by the word of God) be too weighty a work for Aristotles rotten ground to bear up, upon which he hath (notwithstanding) founded the Defences and Fortresses of all his Verball Doctrine: Yet that the necessity of infinite power, and the Worlds beginning, and the impossibility of the contrary, even in the judgement of Naturall reason, wherein he believed, had not better informed him; it is greatly to be marvelled at. And it is no lesse strange, that those men which are desirous of knowledge (seeing Aristotle hath failed in this main point; and taught little other than terms in the rest) have so refresheth their minds from the following and overtaking of truth; and so absolutely subjected themselves to the law of those Philosophicall principles; as all contrary kinde of teaching, in the search of causes, they have condemned either for phantasticall, or curious. But doth it follow, that the Positions of Heathen Philosophers are undoubted grounds and principles indeed

## The Preface.

indeed, because so called? Or that ipsi dixerunt, doth make them to be such? Certainly no. But this is true, That where naturall reason hath built any thing so strong against it self, as the same reason can hardly assail it, much lesse batter it down: the same in every question of Nature, and infinite power, may be approved for a fundamentall law of humane knowledge. For saith Charron in his *Charrem de Sa- Book of Wisdome*, Tout proposition humaine a autant d'autorite quel' autre, si la raison n' on fait la difference; Every humane proposition hath equall authority, if reason make not a difference; the rest being but the fables of principles. But hereof how shall the upright and unpartiall judgement of man give a sentence, where opposition and examination are not admitted to give in evidence? And to this purpose it was well said of Lactantius, *Sapientiam sibi adimunt, qui sine ullo iudicio inventa majorum probant, & ab aliis pecundum more ducuntur*: They neglect their owne wildome, who without any judgement approve the invention of those that fore-went them; and suffer themselves, after the manner of beasts, to be led by them. By the advantage of which sloth and dulnesse, ignorance is now become so powerfull a Tyrant, as it hath set true Philosophy, Physick, and Divinity in a Pillory; and written over the first, *Contra negantem Principia*; over the second, *Virtus specifica*; and over the third, *Ecclesia Romana*.

But for my self, I shall never be perswaded, that God hath shut up all light of Learning within the lamborn of Aristotles brains: or that it was ever said unto him, as unto Esdras, *Accendam in Corde tuo Lucernam intellectus*: that God hath given invention but to the Heathen, and that they onely invaded Nature, and found the strength and bottome thereof; the same Nature having consumed all her store, and left nothing of price to after-ages. That these and these be the causes of these and these effects, Time hath taught us; and not reason: and so hath experience without Art. The Cheese-wife knoweth it as well as the Philosopher, that sower Remmet doth coagulate her milk into a curd. But if we aske a reason of this cause, why the sowernesse doth it & whereby it doth it? and the manner how? I think that there is nothing to be found in vulgar Philosophy, to satisfy this and many other like vulgar questions. But man to cover his ignorance in the least things, who cannot give a true reason for the Grasse under his feet, why it should be green rather than red, or of any other colour; that could never yet discover the way and reason of Natures working, in those which are far lesse noble creatures than himself; who is far more noble than the Heavens themselves: Man (saith Solomon) that can hardly discern: the things that are upon the Earth; and with great labour finde out the things that are before us; that hath so short a time in the world, as he no sooner begins to learn, than to die; that hath in his memory but borrowed knowledge; in his understanding nothing truly; that is ignorant of the Essence of his own soul, and which the wisest of the Naturalists (if Aristotle be he) could never so much as define, but by the Action and Effect, telling us what it worketh (which all men know as well as he) but not what it is, which neither he, nor any else doth know, but G O D that created it; (For though I were perfect, yet I know not my soule, saith Job.) Man, I say, that is but an idiot in the next cause of his own life, and in the cause of all actions of his life: will (notwithstanding) examine the Art of G O D in creating the World; of G O D, who (saith Job) is so excellent as we know him not; and



## The Preface.

and examine the beginning of the worke, which had end before Mankinde had a beginning of being. He will disable Gods power to make a world, without matter to make it of. He will rather give the motives of the Aire for a cause; cast the work on necessity or chance; bestow the honour thereof on Nature; make two powers, the one to be the Author of the Matter, the other of the Forme; and lastly, for want of a work-man, have it Eternall: which latter opinion Aristotle, to make himself the Author of a new Doctrine, brought into the World: and his Sectatours have maintained it; parati ac conjurati, quos sequuntur Philosophorum animis invidiis opiniones tueri. For Hermes, who lived at once with, or soon after Moses, Zoroaster, Musæus, Orpheus, Linus, Anaximenes, Anaxagoras, Empedocles, Melissus, Pherecydes, Thales, Cleanthes, Pythagoras, Plato, and many others (whose opinions are exquisitely gathered by Steuchius Eugubinus) found in the necessity of invincible reason, One eternall and infinite Being, to be the Parent of the universall. Horum omnium sententia quamvis sit incerta, eodem tamen spectat, ut Providentiam unam esse consentiant: five enim Natura, five Æther, five Ratio, five Mens, five fatalis Necessitas, five divina Lex, idem est quod a nobis dicitur Deus: All these mens opinions, (saith Lactantius) though uncertain, come to this; That they agree upon one Providence, whether the same be Nature, or Light, or Reason, or Understanding, or Destinie, or divine Ordinance, that it is the same, which we call G O D. Certainly, as all the Rivers in the world, though they have divers risings, and divers runnings; though they sometimes hide themselves for a while under ground, and seem to be lost in Sea-like Lakes; do at last issue, and fall into the great Ocean: so after all the searches that humane capacity hath; and after all Philosophicall contemplation and curiosity, in the necessity of this infinite power, all the reason of man ends and dissolves it self.

Lat. 5.

As for others; and first touching those which conceive the matter of the World to have been eternall, and that God did not create the World ex nihilo, but ex materia præexistente; the Supposition is so weak, as is hardly worth the answering. For (saith Eusebius) Mihi videntur qui hoc dicunt, fortunam quoque Deo annexere; They seem unto me, which affirm this, to give part of the work to God, and part to Fortune: insomuch as if God had not found this first matter by chance, He had neither been Author, nor Father, nor Creatour, nor Lord of the Universall. For were the Matter or Chaos eternall: it then follows, That either this supposed Matter did fit it self to God; or God accommodate himself to the matter. For the first; it is impossible; that things without sense could proportion themselves to the Work-mans will. For the second; it were horrible to conceive of God; That as an Artificer he applied himself, according to the proportion of matter which he lighted upon.

Euseb. de prep. Evang. l. 7. c. 8.

But let it be supposed, That this matter hath been made by any Power, not Omnipotent, & infinitely wise: I would gladly learn how it came to passe, that the same was proportionable to his intention, that was Omnipotent & infinitely wise; and more, nor no lesse, than served to receive the form of the Universall. For had it wanted any thing of what was sufficient; then must it be granted, That God created out of nothing so much of new matter, as served to finish the work of the World: Or had there been more of this matter than sufficed, then God did dissolve and annihilate whatsoever remained and was superfluous. And this must every rea-

sonable

## The Preface.

sonable soul confesse, That it is the same work of God alone, to create any thing out of nothing, And by the same art and power, and by none other, can those things, or any part of that eternall matter, be again changed into Nothing; by which those things, that once were nothing, obtained a beginning of being.

Again, to say that this matter was the cause of it self; this, of all other, were the greatest Idiotism. For, if it were the cause of it self at any time; then there was also a time when it self was not; at which time of not being, it is easie enough to conceive, that it could neither procure it self, nor any thing else. For to be, and not to be, at once, is impossible. Nihil autem seipsum præcedit, neque seipsum componit corpus: There is nothing that doth precede it self, neither do bodies compound themselves.

For the rest, Those that feign this matter to be eternall, must of necessity confesse, that Infinite cannot be separate from Eternity. And then had infinite matter left no place for infinite form; but that the first matter was finite, the form which it received proves it. For conclusion of this part, whosoever will make choice, rather to beleve in eternall deformity, or in eternall dead matter, than in eternall light and eternall life; let eternall death be his reward. For it is a madnesse of that kind, as wanteth terms to expresse it. For what reason of man (whom the curse of presumption hath not stupified) hath doubted; That infinite power (of which we can comprehend but a kind of shadow, quia comprehensio est intra terminos, qui infinito repugnant) hath any thing wanting in it self, either for matter or form; yea for as many worlds (if such had been Gods will) as the Sea hath sands? For where the power is without limitation, the work hath no other limitation, than the workmans will. Yea, Reason it self finds it more easie for infinite power, to deliver from it self a finite world, without the help of matter prepared; than for a finite man, a fool and dust, to change the form of matter made to his hands. They are Dionysius his words, Deus in una existentia omnia præhabet: and again, Esse omnium est ipsa Divinitas, omne quod vides, & quod non vides; to wit, causaliter, or in better terms, non tanquam forma, sed tanquam causa universalis. Neither hath the World universall closed up all of G O D: For the most part of his works (saith Siracides) are hid. Neither can the depth of his wisdom be opened by the glorious work of the World: which never brought to knowledge all it can; for then were his infinite power bounded, and made finite. And hereof it comes, That we seldom entitle G O D the all-shewing, or the all-willing; but the Almighty, that is, infinitely able.

But now for those, who from that ground, That out of nothing, nothing is made, inferre the Worlds eternity; and yet not so salvage therein, as those are, which give an eternall being to dead matter: It is true, if the word [Nothing] be taken in the affirmative; and the making, imposed upon Naturall Agents and finite power; That out of nothing, nothing is made. But seeing their great Doctor Aristotle himself confesseth, quod omnes Antiqui decreverunt quasi quoddam rerum principium, ipsumque infinitum: That all the Ancient decree a kind of beginning, and the same to be infinite: and a little after, more largely and plainly, Principium ejus est nullum, sed ipsum omnium cernitur esse principium, ac omnia complecti ac regere: it is strange, that this Philosopher, with his followers, should rather make choice out of falshood, to conclude falsly; than out of truth, to resolve truly. For if we compare the World Universall, and all the unmeasur-

Stat. Epist. 3. c. 11. p. 322.

C

ble

## The Preface.

ble Orbs of Heaven, and those marvellous bodies of the Sun, Moon, and Stars, with ipsum Infinitum: it may truly be said of them all, which himself affirms of his imaginary Materia prima, That they are neither quid, quale, nor quantum; and therefore to bring finite (which hath no proportion with infinite) out of infinite (qui destruit omnem proportionem) is no wonder in Gods power. And therefore Anaximander, Melissus, and Empedocles, call the world universall, but particulam Universitatis & infinitatis; a parcell of that which is the universality and the infinity it self: And Plato, but a shadow of God. But the other to prove the worlds eternity, urgeth this Maxime, That, A sufficient and effectuell cause being granted, an answerable effect thereof is also granted. Inferring, that God being for ever a sufficient and effectuell cause of the world, the effect of the cause should also have been for ever; to wit, the world universall. But what a strange mockery is this in so great a Master, to confesse a sufficient and effectuell cause of the world (to wit, an almighty God) in his Antecedent; and the same God to be a God restrained in his Conclusion; to make God free in power, and bound in will; able to effect, unable to determine; able to make all things, and yet unable to make choice of the time when? For this were impiously to resolve of God, as of naturall necessity; which hath neither choice, nor will, nor understanding; which cannot but work matter being present: as fire, to burn things combustible. Again he thus disputeth, That every Agent which can work, and doth not work, if it afterward work, it is either thereto moved by it self, or by somewhat else: & so it passeth from power to act: But God (saith he) is immovable, and is neither moved by himself, nor by any other: but being alwayes the same, doth alwayes work. Whence he concludeth, If the world were caused by God, that he was for ever the cause thereof: and therefore eternall. The answer to this is very easie, For that Gods performing in due time that, which he ever determined at length to perform, doth not argue any alteration or change, but rather constancy in him. For the same action of his will, which made the world for ever, did also with-hold the effect to the time ordained. To this answer, in it self sufficient, others adde further, that the Pattern or Image of the world may be said to be eternall: which the Platonicks call, spiritualem mundum; and do in this sort distinguish the Idea and Creation in time. Spiritus ille mundus, mundi huius exemplar, primumque Dei opus, vita aequali est Architecto, fuit semper cum illo, eritque semper. Mundus autem corporalis, quod secundum opus est Dei, decedit jam ab opifice ex parte una, quia non fuit semper: retinet alteram, quia sit semper futurus: That representative, or the intentionall word (say they) the sampler of this visible world, the first work of GOD, was equally ancient with the Architect; for it was for ever with him, and ever shall be. This materiall world, the second work or creature of GOD, doth differ from the worker in this, That it was not from everlasting, and in this it doth agree, that it shall be for ever to come, The first point, That it was not for ever, all Christians confesse: The other they understand no otherwise, than that after the consummation of this world, there shall be a new Heaven and a new Earth, without any new creation of matter. But of these things we need not here stand to argue: though such opinions be not unworthy the propounding, in this consideration, of an eternall and unchangeable cause, producing a changeable and temporall effect, Touching which point Proclus the Platonist disputeth, That the compounded essence of the World (and because compounded,

Met. Eten. de  
immort. Animæ  
l. 10. c. 1.

## The Preface.

pounded, therefore dissippable) is continued, & knit to the Divine Being, by an individual & inseparable power, flowing from Divine unity; and that the Worlds naturall appetite of God sheweth, that the same proceedeth from a good & understanding divine; and that this vertue, by which the World is continued and knit together, must be infinite; that it may infinitely and everlastingly continue & preserve the same. Which infinite Vertue, the finite World (saith he) is not capable of, but receiveth it from the divine infinite, according to the temporall Nature it hath, successively every moment by little and little; even as the whole materiall World is not altogether: but the abolished parts are departed by small degrees, and the parts yet to come; do by the same small degrees succeed, as the shadow of a tree in a River, seemeth to have continued the same a long time in the water, but it is perpetually renewed, in the continuall ebbing and flowing thereof.

But to return to them, which denying that ever the World had any beginning, withall deny that ever it shall have any end, & to this purpose affirm, That it was never heard, never read, never seen, no not by any reason perceived, that the Heavens have ever suffered corruption; or that they appear any way the older by continuance; or in any sort otherwise than they were; which had they been subject to finall corruption, some change would have been discerned in so long a time. To this it is answered, That the little change as yet perceived, doth rather prove their newnesse, & that they have not continued so long, than that they will continue for ever as they are. And if conjecturall arguments may receive answer by conjectures: it then seemeth that some alteration may be found. For either Aristotle, Plinie, Strabo, Beda, Aquinas, and others, were grossly mistaken: or else those parts of the World, lying within the burnt Zone, were not in elder times habitable, by reason of the Suns heat, neither were the Seas under the Equinoctiall navigable. But we know by experience, that those Regions so situate, are filled with people, and exceeding temperate; and the Sea, over which we navigate, passable enough. We reade also many Histories of Deluges: and how that in the time of Phaeton, divers places in the World were burnt up, by the Suns violent heat.

But in a word, this observation is exceeding feeble. For we know it for certain, That stone-walls, of matter moldring and friable, have stood two or three thousand yeers: that many things have been digged up out of the earth, of that depth, as supposed to have been buried by the generall Flood; without any alteration either of substance or figure: yea, it is believed, and it is very probable, that the gold which is daily found in Mines, and Rocks, under ground, was created together with the Earth.

And if bodies elementary, and compounded, the eldest times have not invaded and corrupted: what great alteration should we look for in celestiall and quintessentia bodies? And yet we have reason to think, that the Sun, by whose help all creatures are generate, doth not in these later Ages assist Nature, as heretofore. We have neither Giants, such as the eldest world had, nor mighty men, such as the elder world had; but all things in generall are reputed of lesse vertue which from the Heavens receive vertue. Whence, if the nature of a Preface would permit a larger discourse, we might easily fetch store of prooffe; as that this world shall at length have end, as that once it had beginning.

And I see no good answer that can be made to this objection: if the World were eternall; why not all things in the World eternall? If there were no first,

## The Preface.

*no cause, no Father, no Creator, no incomprehensible wisdom, but that every Nature had been alike eternall; and Man more rationally than every other Nature: Why had not the eternall reason of Man, provided for his eternall being in the World? For if all were equal, why not equal conditions to all? why should heavenly bodies live for ever, and the bodies of Men rot and die?*

*Again, who was it that appointed the Earth to keep the centre, and gave order that it should hang in the Air: that the Sun should travell between the Tropicks; and never exceed those bounds; nor fail to perform that Progreffe once in every year: the Moon to live by borrowed light: the fixed Stars (according to common opinion) to be fastned like nails in a Cart-wheel; and the Planets to wander at their pleasure? Or if none of these had power over other: was it out of Charity and Love, that the Sun by his perpetuall travell within those two Circles, hath visited, given light unto, and relieved all parts of the Earth; and the Creatures therein, by turns and times? Out of doubt, if the Sun have of his own accord kept this course in all eternity: He may justly be called eternall Charity, and everlasting Love. The same may be said of all the Stars: who being all of them most large and cleer fountains of vertue and operation, may also be called eternall Vertues: the Earth may be called eternall Patience, the Moon, an eternall Borrower and Beggar; and Man of all other the most miserable, eternally Mortall. And what were this, but to believe again in the old Play of the gods? Yea, in more gods by millions, than ever Hesiodus dream'd of. But in stead of this mad folly, we see it well enough, with our feeble and mortall eyes; and the eyes of our reason discern it better; That the Sun, Moon, Stars, and the Earth, are limited, bounded, and constrained: themselves they have not constrained, nor could. Omne determinatum causam habet aliquam efficientem, quæ illud determinaverit: Every thing bounded hath some efficient cause, by which it is bounded.*

*Now for Nature; As by the ambiguity of this name, the school of Aristotle hath both commended many errors unto us, and sought also thereby to obscure the glory of the high Moderatour of all things, shining in the Creation, and in the governing of the World: so if the best definition be taken out of the second of Aristotles Physicks, or primo de Cælo, or out of the fifth of his Metaphysicks, I say that the best is but nominall, and serving onely to difference the beginning of Naturall motion from Artificiall: which yet the Academicks open better, when they call it, A Seminary strength, infused into matter by the Soule of the World: who give the first place to Providence, the second to Fate, and but the third to Nature. Providentia (by which they understand G O D) dux & caput; Fatum, medium ex providentia prodiens; Natura postremum. But be it what he will, or be it any of these (God excepted) or participating of all: yet that it hath choice or understanding (both which are necessary in the cause of all things) no man hath avowed. For this is unanswerable of Lactantius, Is autem facit aliquid, qui aut voluntatem faciendi habet, aut scientiam: He onely can be said to be the doer of a thing, that hath either will or knowledge in the doing it.*

*But the will and science of Nature, are in these words truly exprest by Ficinus: Potest ubique Natura, vel per diversa media, vel ex diversis materiis, diversa facere: sublata vero mediorum materialiumque diversitate, vel unicum, vel similitimum operatur, neque potest quando adest materia non operari: It is the*

power

## The Preface.

*power of Nature by diversity of meanes, or out of diversity of matter, to produce divers things: but taking away the diversity of meanes, and the diversity of matter, it then works but one or the like work; neither can it but work, matter being present. Now if Nature made choice of diversity of matter, to work all these variable works of Heaven and Earth, it had then both understanding and will; it had counsell to begin; reason to dispose; vertue and knowledge to finish, and power to govern: without which all things had been but one and the same: all of the matter of Heaven; or all of the matter of Earth. And if we grant Nature this will, and this understanding, this counsell, reason, and power: Cur Natura potius quam Deus nominetur? Why should we then call such a cause rather Nature, than God? God, of whom all men have notion, and give the first and highest place to Divine power: Omnes homines notionem deorum habent, omneque summum locum divino cuidam numini assignant. And this I say in short, that it is a true effect of true reason in man (were there no authority more binding than reason) to acknowledge and adore the first and most sublime power. Vera Philosophia, est ascensus ab his quæ fluunt, & oriuntur, & occidunt, ad ea quæ vere sunt, & semper eadem: True Philosophy is an ascending from the things which flow, and arise, and fall, to the things that are for ever the same.*

*For the rest; I do also account it not the meanest, but an impiety monstrous, to confound God and Nature: be it but in terms. For it is God, that onely disposeth of all things according to his own will, and maketh of one Earth, Vessels of honour and dishonour. It is Nature that can dispose of nothing, but according to the will of the matter wherein it worketh. It is God that commandeth all: it is Nature that is obedient to all. It is God that doth good unto all, knowing and loving the good he doth. It is Nature, that secondarily doth also good, but it neither knoweth nor loveth the good it doth. It is God, that hath all things in himself: Nature, nothing in it self. It is God, which is the Father, and hath begotten all things: It is Nature, which is begotten by all things, in which it liveth and laboureth, for by it selfe it existeth not. For shall we say, that it is out of affection to the Earth, that heavie things fall towards it? Shall we call it Reason, which doth conduct every River into the salt Sea? Shall we term it knowledge in fire, that makes it to consume combustible matter? If it be Affection, Reason, and Knowledge in these: by the same Affection, Reason, and Knowledge it is, that Nature worketh. And therefore seeing all things work as they do, (call it by Form, or Nature, or by what you please) yet because they work by an impulsion, which they cannot resist; or by a faculty, infused by the supremest power: we are neither to wonder at, nor to worship, the faculty that worketh, nor the Creature wherein it worketh. But herein lies the wonder: and to him is the worship due, who hath created such a Nature in things, and such a faculty, as neither knowing it selfe, the matter, wherein it worketh, nor the vertue and power which it hath; do yet work all things to their last and uttermost perfection. And therefore every reasonable man, taking to himself for a ground that which is granted by all Antiquity, and by all men truly learned that ever the World had, to wit; That there is a power infinite, and eternall (which also necessity doth prove unto us, without the help of Faith, and Reason; without the force of Authority) all things do as easily follow which have been delivered by divine letters, as the waters of a running River do suc-*

cessively

## The Preface.

cessively pursue each other from the first fountaines.

*L.H.I.A.C.A. de vera sapientia.*  
*L'asc. de defn.*  
*Quod est infinitum, & non finitum, secundum naturam terminatum non creditur à scientia Arist. pag. 1.*

Thus much I say it is, that Reason it self hath taught us: and this is the beginning of knowledge. Sapientia præcedit, Religio sequitur: quia prius est Deum scire, consequens colere; Sapience goes before, Religion follows: because it is first to know God, and then to worship him. This Sapience Plato calleth absoluti boni scientiam, The science of the absolute good: And another, Scientiam rerum primarum, sempiternarum, perpetuarum. For Faith (saith Isidore) is not extorted by violence; but by reason and examples perswaded: Fides nequaquam vi extorquetur, sed ratione & exemplis suadetur. I confesse it, That to enquire further, as of the Essence of God, of his power, of his Art, and by what mean he created the world: Or of his secret judgement, and the causes, is not an affect of Reason: Sed cum ratione insaniunt; but they grow mad with reason, that enquire after it: For as it is no shame nor dishonour (saith a French Author) de faire arrest au but qu'on n'auceu surpasser; For a man to rest himself there, where he findes it impossible to passe on further: so whatsoever is beyond, and out of the reach of true reason, it acknowledgeth it to be so; as understanding it self not to be infinite, but according to the Name and Nature it hath, to be a Teacher, that best knows the end of his own Art. For seeing both Reason and Necessity teach us (Reason, which is pars divini spiritus in corpus humanum meriti) that the world was made by a power infinite; and yet how it was made, it cannot teach us: and seeing the same Reason and Necessity make us know, that the same infinite power is every where in the world; and yet how every where, it cannot inform us: our belief hereof is not weakened, but greatly strengthened by our ignorance, because it is the same Reason that tells us, That such a Nature cannot be said to be God, that can be in all conceived by man.

I have been already over-long to make any large discourse either of the parts of the following Story, or in mine own excuse: especially in the excuse of this or that passage; seeing the whole is exceeding weak and defective. Among the grossest, the unsutable division of the books, I could not know how to excuse, had I not been directed to enlarge the building after the foundation was laid, and the first part finished. All men know that there is no great Art in the dividing evenly of those things, which are subject to number and measure. For the rest, it sutes well enough with a great many Books of this Age, which speak too much, and yet say little; Ipsi nobis turto subducimur; We are stolen away from our selves, setting a high price on all that is our own. But hereof, though a late good Writer make complaint, yet shall it not lay hold on me, because I beleeve as he doth; That who so thinks himself the wisest man, is but a poor and miserable ignorant. Those that are the best men of war, against all the vanities and fooleries of the World, do alwayes keep the strongest guards against themselves, to defend them from themselves; from self love, self estimation, and self opinion.

Generally concerning the order of the Worke, I have onely taken counsell from the Argument. For of the Assyrians, which after the down-fall of Babel take up the first part, and were the first great Kings of the World, there came little to the view of posterity: some few enterprises, greater in fame than faith, of Nimus and Semiramis, excepted.

It was the story of the Hebrews, of all before the Olympiads, that overcame the consuming disease of time, and preserved it self from the very cradle and beginning

## The Preface.

inning to this day: and yet not so entire, but that the large discourses thereof (to which in many Scriptures we are referred) are no where found. The Fragments of other Stories, with the actions of those Kings and Princes which shot up here and there in the same time, I am driven to relate by way of digression: of which we may say with Virgil:

Apparent rari nantes in gurgite vasto;

They appear here and there floating in the great gulf of time.

To the same first Ages do belong the report of many Inventions therein found, and from them derived to us; though most of the Authors Names have perished in so long a Navigation. For those Ages had their Laws; they had diversity of Government; they had Kingly rule; Nobility; Policy in war; Navigation, and all, or the most of needfull Trades. To speak therefore of these (seeing in a general History we should have left a great deal of Nakedness, by their omission) it cannot properly be called a digression. True it is, that I have made also many others: which if they shall be laid to my charge, I must cast the fault into the great heap of humane error. For seeing we digresse in all the waies of our lives: yea, seeing the life of man is nothing else but digression; I may the better be excused, in writing their lives and actions. I am not altogether ignorant in the Laws of History, and of the Kindes.

The same hath been taught by many, but by no man better, and with greater brevity, than by that excellent learned Gentleman Sir Francis Bacon. Christian laws are also taught us by the Prophets and Apostles; and every day preach't unto us. But we still make large digressions: yea, the Teachers themselves do not (in all) keep the path which they point out to others.

For the rest, after such time as the Persians had wrested the Empire from the Chaldeans, & had raised a great Monarchy, producing actions of more importance than were elsewhere to be found: it was agreeable to the Order of Story, to attend this Empire; whilst it so flourished, that the affairs of the Nations adjoining had reference thereunto. The like observance was to be used towards the fortunes of Greece, when they again began to get ground upon the Persians; as also towards the affairs of Rome, when the Romans grew more mighty than the Greeks.

As for the Medes, the Macedonians, the Sicilians, the Carthaginians, and other Nations who resisted the beginnings of the former Empires, and afterwards became but parts of their composition and enlargement: it seemed best to remember what was known of them from their severall beginnings, in such times and places as they in their flourishing estates opposed those Monarchies, which in the end swallowed them up. And herein I have followed the best Geographers: who seldome give names to those small brooks, whereof many, joyned together, make great Rivers; till such time as they become united, and run in main stream to the Ocean Sea. If the Phrase be weak, and the stile not every-where like it self; the first shews their legitimation and true Parent; the second will excuse it self upon the Variety of Matter. For Virgil, who wrote his Eclogues, gracili avena, used stronger pipes, when he sounded the wars of Aeneas. It may also be laid to my charge, that I use divers Hebrew words in my first book, and elsewhere, in which language others may think; and I my self acknowledge it; that I am altogether ignorant: but it is true, that some of them I finde in Montanus, others in Latine Character in S. Senensis; & of the rest I have borrowed the interpretation of some of my friends. But say I had been beholding to neither, yet were it not to be wondred at, having had

an

## The Preface.

an eleven yeers leasure, to attain the knowledge of that, or of any other tongue ; Howsoever, I know that it will be said by many, That I might have been more pleasing to the Reader, if I had written the Story of mine own times, having been permitted to draw water as neer the Well-head as another. To this I answer, that who soever in writing a modern History, shall follow truth too neer the heels, it may haply strike out his teeth. There is no Mistrresse or Guide, that hath led her followers and servants into greater miseries. He that goes after her too far off, loseth her sight, and loseth himself : and he that walks after her at a middle distance ; I know not whether I should call that kinde of course, Temper, or Baseness. It is true, that I never travelled after mens opinions, when I might have made the best use of them : and I have now too few dayes remaining, to imitate those, that either out of extreme ambition, or extreme cowardise, or both, do yet (when death hath them on his shoulders) flatter the world, between the bed and the grave. It is enough for me (being in that state I am) to write of the eldest times : wherein also why may it not be said, that in speaking of the past, I point at the present, and taxe the vices of those that are yet living, in their persons that are long since dead ; and have it laid to my charge ? But this I cannot help, though innocent. And certainly if there be any, that finding themselves spotted like the Tigers of old time, shall finde fault with me for painting them over anew, they shall therein accuse themselves justly, and me falsely.

For I protest before the Majesty of God, That I malice no man under the Sun. Impossible I know it is to please all : seeing few or none are so pleased with themselves, or so assured of themselves, by reason of their subjection to their private passions, but that they seem divers persons in one and the same day. Seneca hath said it, and so do I : Unus mihi pro populo erat : and to the same effect Epicurus, Hoc ego non multis, sed tibi ; (or as it hath since lamentably fallen out) I may borrow the resolution of an ancient Philosopher, Satis est unus, Satis est nullus. For it was for the service of that inestimable Prince Henry ; the successive hope, and one of the greatest of the Christian World, that I undertook this Work. It pleased him to peruse some part thereof, and to pardon what was amiss. It is now left to the World without a Master : from which all that is presented, hath received both blows and thanks : Eadem probamus, eadem reprehendimus, hic exitus est omnis judicii, in quo his secundum plures datur. But these discourses are idle. I know that as the charitable will judge charitably, so against those, qui gloriantur in malitia, my present adversity hath disarmed me. I am on the ground already, and therefore have not far to fall : and for rising again, as in the Naturall privation, there is no recession to habit ; so it is seldom seen in the privation politick. I do therefore forbear to stile my Readers Gentle, Courteous, and Friendly, thereby to beg their good opinions, or to promise a second and third volume (which I also intend) if the first receive grace and good acceptance. For that which is already done, may be thought enough, and too much : and it is certain, let us claw the Reader with never so many courteous phrases, yet shall we evermore be thought fools that write foolishly. For conclusion, all the hope I have lies in this, That I have already found more ungentle and incourteous Readers of my Love towards them, and well-deserving of them, than ever I shall do again. For had it been otherwise ; I should hardly have had this leisure to have made my self a fool in print.



## The Contents of the Chapters, Paragraphs, and Sections, of the First Book of the First Part of the History of the World.

### CHAP. I. Of the Creation and Preservation of the WORLD.

§. I.  
That the Invisible God is seen in his  
Creatures.

§. II.  
That the wisest of the Heathen, whose Authority is not to be despised, have acknowledged the World to have been created by God.

§. III.  
Of the meaning of In Principio, Genes. I. ver. I.

§. IV.  
Of the meaning of the words [Heaven and Earth] Gen. I. I.

§. V.  
That the substance of the Waters, as mixt in the body of the Earth, is by Moses understood in the word [Earth :] and that the Earth, by the Attributes of Unformed and Void, is described as the Chaos of the ancient Heathen.

§. VI.  
How it is to be understood, that the Spirit of God moved upon the Waters: and that this is not to be searched curiously.

§. VII.  
Of the Light created, as the materiall substance of the Sun ; and of the nature of it, and difficulty of knowledge of it : and of the excellency and use of it : and of motion, and heat annexed unto it.

§. VIII.  
Of the Firmament, and of the Waters above

the Firmament: and whether there be any Crystalline Heaven, or any Primum Mobile.

§. IX.  
A conclusion, repeating the summe of the works in the Creation, which are reduced to three heads: The creation of matters, The forming of it ; The finishing of it.

§. X.  
That nature is no Principium per se ; nor Forme, the giver of being : and of our ignorance, how second causes should have any proportion with their effects.

§. XI.  
Of Fate, and that the Stars have great influence : and that their operation may diversely be prevented or furthered.

§. XII.  
Of Prescience.

§. XIII.  
Of Providence.

§. XIV.  
Of Predestination.

§. XV.  
Of Fortune : and of the reason of some things that seem to be by Fortune, and against Reason and Providence.

CHAP.

## The Contents

### CHAP. II.

*Of Mans estate in his first Creation,  
and of Gods rest.*

§. I.  
**O**F the Image of God, according to which Man was first created.

§. II.  
Of the intellectuall minde of Man, in which there is much of the Image of God: and that this Image is much deformed by sinne.

§. III.  
Of our base and fraile bodies: and that the care thereof should yeeld to the immortall soule.

§. IV.  
Of the Spirit of life, which God breathed into man in his Creation.

§. V.  
That Man is (as it were) a little World: with a digression touching our mortality.

§. VI.  
Of the free power which Man had in his first Creation to dispose of himself.

§. VII.  
Of Gods reason to create any more: and of the cause thereof, because the universall created was exceeding good.

### CHAP. III.

*Of the place of Paradise.*

§. I.  
**T**hat the seat of Paradise is greatly mistaken, and that it is no marvell that men should erre.

§. II.  
A recitall of strange opinions touching Paradise.

§. III.  
That there was a true locall Paradise Eastward, in the Country of Eden.

§. IV.  
Why it should be needfull to intreat diligently of the place of Paradise.

§. V.  
That the Flood hath not utterly defaced the marks of Paradise, nor caused Hills in the Earth.

§. VI.  
That Paradise was not the whole Earth, as some have thought, making the Ocean to be the Fountain of those foure Rivers.

### §. VII.

Of their opinion which make Paradise as high as the Moon: and of others which make it higher than the middle Region of the aire.

§. VIII.  
Of their opinion that seat Paradise under the Equinoctiall: and of the pleasant habitation under those Climates.

§. IX.  
Of the change of the names of places: and that besides that Eden in Coelolyria, there is a Country in Babylon once of this name, as is proved out of Esay 37. and Ezech. 27.

§. X.  
Of divers other testimonies of the Land of Eden: And that this is the Eden of Paradise.

§. XI.  
Of the difficulty in the Text, which seemeth to make the foure Rivers to rise from one stream.

§. XII.  
Of the strange fertility and happinesse of the Babylonian soile, as it is certain that Eden was such.

§. XIII.  
Of the river Gehon, and the land of Cush: and of the ill translating of Ethiopia for Cush, 2 Chron. 21. 16.

§. XIV.  
A conclusion, by way of repetition of some things spoken of before.

### CHAP. IV.

*Of the two chief Trees in the Garden of Paradise.*

§. I.  
**T**hat the Tree of Life was a materiall tree: and in what sense it is to be taken, that Man by his eating the forbidden fruit, is made subject to death.

§. II.  
Of Becanus his opinion, that the tree of Knowledge was Ficus Indica.

§. III.  
Of Becanus his not unwittily allegorizing of the story of his Ficus Indica.

§. IV.  
Of the name of the Tree of Knowledge of good and evil: with some other notes touching the story of Adams sin.

### CHAP.

## Of the second Book.

### CHAP. V.

*Of divers Memorable things between the fall of Adam, and the Flood of Noah.*

§. I.  
**O**F the cause and revenge of Cains sin: and of his going out from God.

§. II.  
Of Cains dwelling in the Land of Nod: and of his City Enoch.

§. III.  
Of Moses his omitting sundry things concerning Cains generation.

§. IV.  
Of the diversities in the Age of the Patriarchs, when they begat their children.

§. V.  
Of the long lives of the Patriarchs: and some of late memory.

§. VI.  
Of the Patriarchs delivering their knowledge by Tradition: and that Enoch writ before the Flood.

§. VII.  
Of the men of War before the Flood.

§. VIII.  
That the Giants, by Moses so called, were indeed men of huge bodies: as also divers in later times.

### CHAP. VI.

*Of Idolatrous corruptions; quickly rising, and hardly at length vanquishing in the world: and of the Reliques of Truth touching these ancient times, obscurely appearing in Fables and old Legends.*

§. I.  
**T**hat in old corruptions we may finde some signes of more ancient truth.

§. II.  
That the corruptions themselves were very ancient: as in the Family of Noah, and in the old Egyptians.

§. III.  
That in proceffe of time these lesser errors grew on greater, as appeareth in the grosse superstitions of the Egyptians.

§. IV.  
That from the Reliques of ancient Records among the Egyptians & others, the first Idols

and Fables were invented: and that the first Jupiter was Cain, Vulcan, Tubalcain, &c.

§. V.  
Of the three chiefeſt Jupiters, and also the strange story of the third.

§. VI.  
Of Cham, and other wicked ones, whereof some gat, some affected the name of gods.

§. VII.  
That the wiser of the ancient Heathen had far better opinions of God.

§. VIII.  
That Heathenism, and Judaism, after many wounds, were at length about the same time under Julian miraculously confounded.

§. IX.  
Of the last refuges of the Devil, to maintain his Kingdom.

### CHAP. VII.

*Of Noahs Flood.*

§. I.  
**O**F Gods fore-warning: and some humane testimonies: and some doubting touching the truth of Noahs Flood.

§. II.  
Of the flood in the time of Ogyges: and that this was not Noahs Flood.

§. III.  
Of Deucalians flood: and that this was not Noahs Flood; nor the Umbri in Italy a remnant of any universall Flood.

§. IV.  
Of some other Records testifying the universall Flood: and of two ancient Deluges in Egypt: and of some elsewhere.

§. V.  
That the Flood of Noah was supernaturall, though some say it might have been fore-seen by the Stars.

§. VI.  
That there was no need of any new Creation of matter to make the universall Flood: and what are Cataractæ Cœli, Gen. 7. 11.

§. VII.  
Of some remainder of the memory of Noah among the Heathen.

§. VIII.  
Of sundry particulars touching the Ark: as the place where it was made, the matter, fashion, and name.

§. IX.  
That the Ark was of sufficient capacity.

§. X.  
That the Ark was of sufficient capacity.  
a 2 Taurus



Taurus (or Caucasus) between the East Indies and Scythia.

||. I.

**A** Pretention of some questions less material: with a note of the use of this question, to finde out the Metropolis of Nations.

||. II.

A proposall of the common opinion, That the Ark rested upon some of the Hills of Armenia.

||. III.

The first Argument against the common opinion: They that came to build Babel, would have come sooner, had they come from so neer a place as Armenia.

||. IV.

The second Argument, That the Eastern people were more ancient in populosity, and in all humane glory.

||. V.

The third Argument; From the wonderfull resistance which Semiramis found in the East-Indies.

||. VI.

The fourth Argument; From divers considerations in the person of Noah.

||. VII.

Of the senseless opinion of Annianus, the Commenter upon Berosus, That the Ark rested upon Montes Caspii in Armenia; and yet upon Gordiaz, which are three hundred miles distant also in Armenia, and yet in Scythia.

||. VIII.

The fifth Argument; The Vine must grow naturally neer the place where the Ark rested.

||. IX.

An answer to an objection out of the words of the Text, The Lord scattered them from thence upon the face of the whole Earth.

||. X.

An answer to the objection from the name of Ararat taken for Armenia; and the height of the Hills there.

||. XI.

Of Caucasus, and divers far higher Hills than the Armenian.

||. XII.

Of divers incongruities, if in this Story we should take Ararat for Armenia.

||. XIII.

Of the contrary situation of Armenia unto the place noted in the Text: and that it is no marvell, that the same ledge of Hills running from Armenia to India, should keep the same name all a-long, and even in India be called Ararat.

||. XIV.

Of the best Vine naturally growing on the South side of the Mountains Caucazi, and toward the East-Indies, and of other excellencies of the soile.

||. XV.

The conclusion, with a brief repeating of divers chief points.

# CHAP. VIII.

Of the first planting of Nations after the Flood: and of the Sons of Noah; Shem, Ham, and Japhet, by whom the Earth was re-peopled.

§. I.

**W** Hether Shem and Ham were elder than Japhet.

§. II.

Of divers things that in all reason are to be presumed, touching the first planting of the World; as that all Histories must yeeld to Moses: that the World was not planted all at once, nor without great diction: and, that the known great Lords of the first Ages were of the issue of Ham.

§. III.

Of the issue of the Gentiles in Japhets portion: of Berosus his too speedy seating Gomer the son of Japhet in Italy; and another of Japhets sons Tubal, in Spain: and also of the antiquity of Longinque Navigation.

§. IV.

Of Gog and Magog, Tubal, and Mesech, seated first about Asia the lesse, out of Ezech. 38.39.

§. V.

Against the fabulous Berosus his Fiction, That the Italian Janus was Noah.

§. VI.

That Gomer also, and his son Togorma, of the posterity of Japhet, were first seated about Asia the lesse: and that from thence they spread West-ward into Europe; and North-ward into Samaria.

§. VII.

Of Javan the fourth son of Japhet; and of Mesech of Aram, and Mesech of Japhet.

§. VIII.

Of Alcanez and Riphath, the two elder sons of Gomer.

§. IX.

Of the four sons of Javan: and of the double signification of Tharhis, either for a proper name, or for the Sea.

§. X.

§. X.

That the seat of Chush, the eldest son of Ham, was in Arabia, not in Ethiopia: and of strange Fables, and ill translations of Scripture, grounded upon the mistaking of this point.

||. I.

**O** F Josephus his Tale of an Ethiopesse, wife to Moses; grounded on the mistaking of the seat of Chush.

||. II.

A dispute against the Tale of Josephus.

||. III.

Chush ill expounded for Ethiopia. Ezechiel 29.10.

||. IV.

Another place of Ezechiel, chap. 30. vers. 9. in like manner mistaken.

||. V.

A place, Esay 18. v. 1. in like manner corrupted, by taking Chush for Ethiopia.

||. VI.

That upon the like mistaking, both Terhaka, the Story of Sennacherib, and Zera in the Story of Asa, are unwisely made Ethiopians.

||. VII.

A farther exposition of the place, Esay 18.11.

§. XI.

Of the Plantation and Antiquities of Egypt.

||. I.

**T** hat Mizraim the chief Planter of Egypt, and the rest of the sons of Ham, were seated in order one by another.

||. II.

Of the time, about which the name of Egypt began to be known: and of the Egyptians Lunar years, which made their Antiquities seem the more fabulous.

||. III.

Of certain vain assertions of the Antiquity of the Egyptians.

||. IV.

Against Pererius, That it is not unlikely, but that Egypt was peopled within two hundred years after the Creation: at least, that both it, and the most parts of the world were peopled before the Flood.

||. V.

Of some other reasons against the opinion of Pererius.

||. VI.

Of the words of Moses, Genes. 10. ver. ult. whereupon Pererius grounded his opinion.

||. VII.

A conclusion, resolving of that which is

most likely, touching the Egyptian Antiquities: with somewhat of Phut, another son of Ham, which peopled Lybia.

§. XII.

Of the eleven sons of Canaan, the fourth son of Ham.

||. I.

**O** f the bounds of the Land of Canaan; with the names of his eleven sons.

||. II.

Of the portions of Zidon and Heth.

||. III.

Of the Jebusites and Amorites.

||. IV.

Of the Gergesites, Hevites, and Harkites.

||. V.

Of Sini and Arvadi.

||. VI.

Of Zemari.

||. VII.

Of Hamathi.

§. XIII.

Of the sons of Chush, excepting Nimrod, of whom hereafter.

||. I.

**T** hat the most of the sons of Chush were seated in Arabia the happy: and of the Sabaeans that robbed Job: and of the Queen that came to Solomon.

||. II.

Josephus his opinion of Dedan, one of the issue of Chush, to have been seated in the West Ethiopia, disproved out of Ezechiel and Hieremie.

§. XIV.

Of the issue of Mizraim: and of the place of Hieremie, ch. 9. v. 7.

§. XV.

Of the issue of Sem.

||. I.

**O** f Elam, Aslur, Arphaxad, and Lud.

||. II.

Of Aram, and his sons.

||. III.

Of the division of the earth in the time of Phaleg, one of the sons of Heber, &c.

||. IV.

Of the sons of Joctan, the other son of Heber.

||. V.

Of Ophir, one of Joctans sons, and of Peru: and of that voyage of Solomon.

||. VI.

Of Havilah the son of Joctan, who also passed into the East Indies: and of Melha, and Sepher, named in the bordering of the Families of Joctan; with a conclusion of this Discourse, touching the Plantation of the World.

## The Contents

### CHAP. IX.

*Of the beginning and establishing of Government.*

#### §. I.

**O**F the proceeding from the first Government under the eldest of families to Regall, and from Regall absolute to Regall tempered with Law.

#### §. II.

Of the three commendable sorts of Government, with their opposites : and of the degrees of humane Societic.

#### §. III.

Of the good Government of the first Kings.

#### §. IV.

Of the beginning of Nobility : and of the vaine vaunt thereof without vertue.

### CHAP. X.

*Of Nimrod, Belus, and Ninus : and of memorable things about those times.*

#### §. I.

**T**HAT Nimrod was the first after the Flood that reigned like Sovereigne Lord : and that his beginning seemeth to have been of just authority.

#### §. II.

That Nimrod, Belus, and Ninus, were three distinct persons.

#### §. III.

That Nimrod, not Assur, built Ninive : and that it is probable out of Elay 23.13. that Assur built Ur of the Chaldees.

#### §. IV.

Of the acts of Nimrod and Belus, as far as now they are known.

#### §. V.

That wee are not to marvel how so many Kingdomes could be erected about these times : and of Vexoris of Egypt : and of Tanais of Scythia.

#### §. VI.

Of the Name of Belus, and other Names ascribed unto it.

#### §. VII.

Of the worshipping of Images, begun from Belus in Babel.

#### §. VIII.

Of the Wars of Ninus : and lastly, of his War against Zoroaster.

### CHAP. XI.

*Of Zoroaster, supposed to have been the chief Author of Magick Arts ; and of divers kinds of Magick.*

#### §. I.

**T**HAT Zoroaster was not Cham, nor the first Inventor of Astrologie, or of Magick : and that there were divers great Magicians of this name.

#### §. II.

Of the Name of Magia : and that it was anciently far divers from Conjuring and Witchcraft.

#### §. III.

That the good knowledge in the ancient Magick is not to be condemned ; though the Devil here, as in other kindes, hath sought to obtrude evil things under the name and colour of good things.

#### §. IV.

That Daniels mistaking Nabuchodonosors condemning of the Magicians, doth not justify all their practices.

#### §. V.

The abuse of things, which may be found in all kindes, is not to condemn the right use of them.

#### §. VI.

Of the divers kindes of unlawfull Magick.

#### §. VII.

Of divers waies by which the Devil seemeth to worke his wonders.

#### §. VIII.

That none was ever raised from the dead, by the power of the devill : and that it was not the true Samuel which appeared to Saul.

### CHAP. XII.

*Of the memorable buildings of Ninus : and of his wife Semiramis : and of other her acts*

#### §. I.

**O**F the magnificent building of Ninive by Ninus : and of Babylon by Semiramis.

#### §. II.

Of the end of Ninus : and beginning of Semiramis reigne.

#### §. III.

Of Semiramis Parentage, and education : and Metamorphosis of her Mother.

#### §. IV

## Of the second Book.

### §. I.V.

Of her Expedition into India, and death after discomfiture : with a note of the improbability of her voices.

### §. V.

Of the Temple of Belus, built by Semiramis : and of the Pyramides of Egypt.

## The Contents of the Chapters, Paragraphs, and Sections, in the second Book of the first Part of the History of the World.

### CHAP. I.

*Of the time of the birth of Abraham : and of the use of this question, for the ordering of the story of the Assyrian Empire.*

#### §. I.

**O**F some of the successours of Semiramis : with a brief transition to the question, about the time of the Birth of Abraham.

#### §. II.

A proposall of reasons or arguments, that are brought to prove Abraham was born in the year 292. after the Flood, and not in the year 352.

#### §. III.

The answer to one of the Objections proposed, shewing that Abraham made but one journey out of Mesopotamia into Canaan, and it, after his fathers death.

#### §. IV.

The answer to another of the Objections proposed, shewing that it was not unlikely, that Terah should beget Abraham in his hundred and thirtieth year.

#### §. V.

The answer to two more of the Objections, shewing that we may have certainty of Abrahams age from the Scripture, though we make not Abraham the eldest son : and that there was great cause, why in the story of Abraham his two brethren should be respected.

#### §. VI.

That the naming of Abraham first of the three Brethren, Gen. 11.v.26. doth not prove that he was the eldest : together with divers

reasons, proving that Abraham was not the eldest son of Terah.

#### §. VII.

A conclusion of this dispute, noting the Authors on both sides : with an admonition, that they which shorten the times, make all ancient stories the more improbable.

#### §. VIII.

A computation of the times of the Assyrians and others, grounded upon the times noted in the story of Abraham.

#### §. IX.

That Amraphel, one of the four Kings whom Abraham overthrew, Gen. 14. may probably be thought to have been Ninias the son of Ninus.

#### §. X.

Of Arioch another of the four Kings : and that Ellas, whereof he is said to have been King, lies between Cœlofytia, and Arabia Petrea.

#### §. XI.

Of Tidal, another of the four Kings.

#### §. XII.

That Chedorlaomer, the chief of the four Kings, was not of Assyria, but of Persia : and that the Assyrian Empire at this time was much impaired.

#### §. XIII.

That it is not improbable, that the four Kings had no Dominion in the Countries named, but that they had elsewhere with their Colonies planted themselves, and so retained the names of the Countries whence they came : which if it be so, we need not to say that Amraphel was Ninias, nor trouble our selves with many other difficulties.

### CHAP.

## The Contents

### CHAP. II.

*Of the Kings of Egypt, from the first peopling of it after the Flood, to the time of the delivery of the Israelites from thence.*

#### §. I.

**A** Brief of the Names and Times of the first Kings of Egypt: with a note of the causes of difficulty in resolving of the truth in these points.

#### §. II.

That by the account of the Egyptian Dynasties, and otherwise, it appears that Chams reign in Egypt began in the year after the Flood 191.

#### §. III.

That these Dynasties were not divers Families of Kings, but rather successions of Regents oft-times many under one King.

#### §. IV.

Of Cham, and his son Mizraim, or Ofris.

#### §. V.

Of the time when Ofris reign ended: and that Jacob came into Egypt in the time of Orus the son of Ofris.

#### §. VI.

Of Typhon, Hercules Ægyptus, Orus, and the two Sefostres, successively reigning after Mizraim: and of divers errors about the former Sefostres.

#### §. VII.

Of Busris, the first oppressor of the Israelites: and of his successor Queen Thermutis, that took up Moses out of the water.

#### §. VIII.

Of the two brethren of Queen Thermutis: and what King it was under whom Moses was born: and who it was that perished in the Red Sea.

### CHAP. III.

*Of the delivery of Israel out of Egypt.*

#### §. I.

**O**F the time of Moses birth: and how long the Israelites were oppressed in Egypt.

#### §. II.

Of divers Cities and places in Egypt, mentioned in this story, or elsewhere in the Scripture.

#### §. III.

Of the cruelty against the Israelites young children in Egypt: and of Moses his preservation and education.

#### §. IV.

Of Moses his flying out of Egypt; and the opinions of certain ancient Historians: of his War in Æthiopia, and of his marriage there: Philo his judgement of his Pastoral life: and that of Paterius of the Books of Genesis and Job.

#### §. V.

Of Pharaohs pursuit of the Israelites: and of their passage towards the Red Sea, so far as Succoth.

#### §. VI.

Of the Solary and Lunary years: and how they are reconciled: with the form of the Hebrew year, and their manner of intercalation.

#### §. VII.

Of the passage of Israel from Succoth, towards the Red Sea: and of the divers ways leading out of Egypt.

#### §. VIII.

Of their passage over the Red Sea: and of the Red Sea it self.

#### §. IX.

That the passage through the Red Sea was miraculous, and not at low ebb.

### CHAP. IV.

*Of the journeying of the Israelites from the Red Sea, to the place where the Law was given them: with a Discourse of Laws.*

#### §. I.

**A** Transition, by way of recapitulation of some things touching Chronologie, with a continuation of the story, until the Amalekites met with the Israelites.

#### §. II.

Of the Amalekites, Madianites, and Kenites, upon occasion of the battell with the Amalekites, and Jethro's coming, who being a Kenite, was Priest of Madian.

#### §. III.

Of the time when the Law was given: with divers commendations of the invention of Laws.

#### §. IV.

Of the name and meaning of the words Law, and Right.

#### §. V.

## Of the second Book.

#### §. V.

Of the definition of Law, and of the Law eternal.

#### §. VI.

Of the Law of Nature.

#### §. VII.

Of the written Law of God.

#### §. VIII.

Of the unwritten Law of God, given to the Patriarchs by Tradition.

#### §. IX.

Of the Morall, Judiciall, and Ceremoniall Law: with a Note prefixed, How the Scripture speaketh not alway in one sense, when it nameth the Law of Moses.

#### §. X.

A proposall of nine other points to be considered; with a touch of the five first.

#### §. XI.

Of the sixth point, to wit, of the difference and agreement of the Old and New Testament.

#### §. XII.

Of the rest of the points propos'd.

#### §. XIII.

Of the severall Commandments of the Decalogue: and that the difficultie is not in respect of the Commandments, but by our default.

#### §. XIII.

If there were not any Religion, nor Judgement to come, yet the Decalogue were most necessary to be observed.

#### §. XV.

Of humane Law, written, and unwritten.

#### §. XVI.

That onely the Prince is exempt from humane Laws, and in what sort.

### CHAP. V.

*The Story of the Israelites, from the receiving of the Law, to the death of Moses.*

#### §. I.

**O**F the numbering and disposing of the host of Israel, for their marches through the Wilderness: with a Note of the reverence given to the worship of God, in this ordering of their Troupes.

#### §. II.

The Offerings of the twelve Princes: The Passover of the second year: The departing of Jethro.

#### §. III.

The voyage from Horeb to Kades: the mutinies by the way: and the cause of their turning back to the Red Sea.

#### §. IV.

Of their unwillingnesse to returne: with the punishment thereof: and of divers accidents in the returne.

#### §. V.

Of Moses arrivall at Zin Kades: and the accidents while they abode there.

#### §. VI.

Of their compassing Idumæa, and travelling to Arnon the border of Moab.

#### §. VII.

Of the Book of the Battells of the Lord, mentioned in this Story, and of other Books mentioned in Scripture, which are lost.

#### §. VIII.

Of Moses his sparing the issue of Lot, and of the Giants in those parts: and of Sehon and Og.

#### §. IX.

Of the troubles about the Madianites, and of Moses his death.

#### §. X.

Observations out of the Story of Moses, How God disposeth both the smallest occasions, and the greatest resistances, to the effecting of his purpose.

### CHAP. VI.

*Of the Nations with whom the Israelites had dealing after their coming out of Egypt: And of the men of Renown in other Nations, about the times of Moses and Josua: with the sum of the History of Josua.*

#### §. I.

**O**N the Nations with whom the Israelites were to have warre, were divers waies (as it were) prepared to be their Enemies.

#### §. II.

Of the Kings of the Canaanites and Madianites, mentioned in the Ancient wars of the Israelites.

#### §. III.

Of the Amalekites and Ismaelites.

#### §. IV.

## The Contents

§. IV.  
Of the *inflation of civilis in Europe* about these times; and of *Prometheus* and *Atlas*.

§. V.  
Of *Ducalion* and *Phaeton*.

§. VI.  
Of *Hermes* and *Trismagist*.

§. VII.  
Of *Jannes* and *Jambres*, and some others that lived about these times.

§. VIII.  
A brief of the *History of Josua*: and of the space between him and *Othniel*: and of the remainders of the *Canaanites*; with a Note of some Contemporaries to *Josua*: and of the breach of *Faith*.

CHAP. VII.  
Of the Tribes of *Israel* that were planted in the borders of *Phœnicia*: with sundry Stories depending on those places.

§. I.  
The Poem to the description of the whole Land of *Canaan*; with an exposition of the name of *Syria*.

§. II.  
Of the bounds of the Land of *Canaan*, and of the promises touching this land.

§. III.  
Of the Tribe of *Asher*.

§. I.  
The bounds of the Tribe of *Asher*.

§. II.  
Of *Zidon*.

§. III.  
Of *Sarepta*, with a brief History of *Tyre* in the same Coast.

§. IV.  
Of *Ptolomais*, or *Acon*.

§. V.  
Of the Castle of *S. George*.

§. VI.  
Of *Acziba*, *Sandalium*, and others.

§. VII.  
Of *Thoron*, *Giccala*, and some other places.

§. VIII.  
Of the Rivers and Mountains of *Asher*.

§. IV.  
Of the Tribe of *Nephthalim*.

§. I.  
Of the bounds of *Nephthalim*: and of *Heliopolis* and *Abilla*.

§. II.  
Of *Hazor*.

§. III.  
Of *Cæsarea Philippi*.

§. IV.  
Of *Capernaum*, and the Cities of *Decapolis*.

§. V.  
Of *Hamath*.

§. VI.  
Of *Reblatha*, and *Rama*, and divers other Towns.

§. V.  
The Tribe of *Zabulon*.

§. VI.  
The Tribe of *Issacher*.

§. VII.  
The half of the Tribe of *Manasse*.

§. I.  
Of the bounds of this half Tribe: and of *Scythopolis*, *Salem*, *Thersa*, and others.

§. II.  
Of *Cæsarea Palestinæ*, and some other Towns.

CHAP. VIII.  
Of the Kingdom of *Phœnicia*.

§. I.  
The bounds and chief Cities and Founders, and name of this Kingdom: and of the invention of Letters ascribed to them.

§. II.  
Of the King of *Tyre*.

§. III.  
Of *Bozius* his conceit, that the *Edumxans*, inhabiting along the *Red Sea*, were the Progenitors of the *Tyrians*: and that the *Tyrians* from them received and brought into *Phœnicia* the Knowledge of the most true *G. O. D.*

CHAP. IX.  
Of the Tribe of *Ephraim*: and of the Kings of the Ten Tribes, whose Head was *Ephraim*.

§. I.  
Of the memorable places in the Tribe of *Ephraim*.

§. II.

## Of the second Book.

§. II.  
Of the Kings of the ten Tribes, from *Jeroboam* to *Achab*.

§. III.  
Of *Achab* and his successours: with the Captivity of the ten Tribes.

CHAP. X.  
Of the memorable places of *Dan*, *Simeon*, *Juda*, *Reuben*, *Gad* and the other half of *Manasse*.

§. I.  
Of *Dan*: where of *Joppe*, *Gath*, *Accaron*, *Azotus*, and other towns.

§. II.  
The Tribe of *Simeon*.

§. III.  
The Tribe of *Juda*.

§. IV.  
The Tribe of *Reuben*, and his borders.

§. I.  
The seats and bounds of *Midian*, *Moab*, and *Ammon*; part whereof, the *Reubenites* war from *Sehon King of Hefbon*.

§. II.  
Of the memorable places of the *Reubenites*.

§. III.  
Of divers places bordering *Reuben*, belonging to *Midian*, *Moab*, or *Edom*.

§. IIII.  
Of the *Dead Sea*.

§. V.  
Of the Kings of *Moab*, much of whose Country within *Amor*, *Reuben* passeth.

§. V.  
Of the memorable places of the *Gadites*, and the bordering places of *Ammon*.

§. VI.  
Of the *Ammonites*, part of whose Territories the *Gadites* war from *Og the King of Bafan*.

§. VII.  
Of the other half of *Manasse*.

## CHAP. XI.

The History of the *Syrians*, the chief Borderers of the *Israelites*, that dwelt on the East of *Jordan*.

§. I.  
Of the City of *Damascus*, and overthrow of their power.

§. II.  
Of the first Kings of *Damascus*, and of the growing up of their power.

§. III.  
Of the latter Kings, and decay, and the divers fortunes thereof.

§. IV.  
Of other lesser Kingdoms of the *Syrians*, which being brought under the *Assyrians*, never recovered themselves again.

## CHAP. XII.

Of the Tribe of *Benjamin*; and of *Jerusalem*.

§. I.  
Of divers memorable Places in the Tribe of *Benjamin*, where, of *Hiericho*, *Gilgal*, *Mitpa*, *Bethel*, *Rama*, *Gobah*, and *Gibba*.

§. II.  
Of divers memorable things concerning *Jerusalem*.

§. III.  
Of the destruction of *Jerusalem* by the *Romans*.

§. IV.  
Of the vain and malicious reports of Heathen Writers, touching the Ancient *Jews*.

## CHAP. XIII.

Of the memorable things that hapned in the world, from the death of *Josua* to the War of *Troy*: which was about the time of *Jephtha*.

§. I.  
Of the Inter-regnum after *Josua*'s death: and of *Othniel*.

§. II.

## The Contents

### §. II.

*Of the memorable things in this Age in other Nations : and of the difficulty in the computation of times.*

### §. III.

*Of Ehuds time ; and of Proserpina. Ori-thya, Tereus, Tanralus, Tityus, Admetus, and others that lived about these times.*

### §. IIII.

*Of Debora, and her contemporaries.*

### §. V.

*Of Gideon, and of Dedalus, Sphinx, Minos, and others that lived in this Age.*

### §. VI.

*Of the expedition of the Argonauts.*

### §. VII.

*Of Abimelech, Tholah, and Jair : and of the Lapithæ, and of Theseus, Hyppolitus, &c. and of the war of Thebes which was in this Age.*

### §. VIII.

*Of Jephtah : and how the three hundred years which he speaketh of Judges 11. vers. 28. are to be reconciled with the places, Acts 13. 20. 1 Reg. 6. 1. together with some other things touching Chronologie about these times.*

## CHAP. XIII.

### Of the War of Troy.

#### §. I.

*Of the Genealogie of the Kings of Troy : with a Note, touching the ancient Poets, how they have observed Historicall truth*

#### §. II.

*Of the Rape of Helen : and of the strength of both sides for the war.*

#### §. III.

*Of the Grecians journey and Embassage to Troy : and of Helena ; being detained in Egypt : and of the sacrificing of Iphigenia.*

#### §. IV.

*Of the AEs of the Grecians at the siege.*

#### §. V.

*Of the taking of Troy : the wooden Horse : the Book of Dares and Dyctis : the Colonies of the reliques of Troy.*

#### §. VI.

*Of the distresses and dispersons of the Greeks, returning from Troy.*

## CHAP. XV.

### Of Sampson, Eli, and Samuel.

#### §. I.

*Of Sampson.*

#### §. II.

*Of Eli : and of the Arke taken : and of Da-gons fall : and the sending back of the Arke.*

#### §. III.

*Of Samuel, and of his government.*

## CHAP. XVI.

### Of Saul.

#### §. I.

*Of the deliberation to change the govern-ment into a kingdom.*

#### §. II.

*Of the election of Saul.*

#### §. III.

*Of the establishing of Saul by his first Victo-ries*

#### §. IV.

*Of Sauls disobedience in his proceedings in the wars with the Philistims and Amalekites, which caused his final rejection.*

#### §. V.

*Of the occurrents between the rejection of Saul and his death.*

#### §. VI.

*Of such as lived with Samuel and Saul ; of Hellen and Hercules, and also of their Issues, upon occasion of the Dores, with the Hera-clidæ, entering Peloponnesius about this time.*

#### §. VII.

*Of Homer and Hesiod, and many changes in the world that hapned about this Age.*

## CHAP. XVII.

### Of David.

#### §. I.

*Of Davidsestate in the time of Saul.*

#### §. II.

*Of the beginning of Davids reign : and the War made by Abner for Ithobeth.*

#### §. III.

*Of the death of Abner slain by Joab : and of Ithobeth, by Rechab and Baanah.*

of

## Of the second Book.

### §. IIII.

*Of the flourishing time of Davids King-dome : the taking of Jerusalem : with two o-verthrows given to the Philistims : and the conduction of the Ark to the City of David.*

### §. V.

*The overthrow of the Philistims and Moa-bites.*

### §. VI.

*The war which David made upon the Sy-rians.*

### §. VII.

*Of Davids troubles in his reign : and of his forces.*

### §. VIII.

*Of the last acts of David : Adoniah's Faction : the revenge upon Joab and Shimci.*

### §. IX.

*Of the Treasures of David and Solomon.*

### §. X.

*Of the Philistims, whom David absolutely mastered : and of sundry other Contemporaries with David.*

## CHAP. XVIII.

### Of Solomon.

#### §. I.

*Of the establishing of Solomon : of birth-right : and of the cause of Adoniah's death : and of Solomon's wisdom.*

#### §. II.

*Of Solomon's buildings and glory.*

#### §. III.

*Of Solomon's sending to Ophir : and of some seeming contradictions about Solomon's Ri-ches : and of Pineda's conceit of two strange passages about Africk.*

#### §. IIII.

*Of the fall of Solomon, and how long he lived.*

#### §. V.

*Of Solomon's Writings.*

#### §. VI.

*Of the Contemporaries of Solomon.*

## CHAP. XIX.

*Of Solomons Successors untill the end of Jeholaphat.*

### §. I.

*Of Rehoboam his beginnings : the defe-ction of the ten Tribes : of Jeroboam's Idolatry.*

### §. II.

*Of Rehoboam his impiety, for which he was punished by Sefac : of his end and Contem-poraries.*

### §. III.

*Of the great battell between Jeroboam and Abia ; with a Colorarie of the examples of Gods judgements.*

### §. IV.

*Of Afa, and his Contemporaries.*

### §. V.

*Of the great alteration falling out in the ten Tribes, during the reign of Afa.*

### §. VI.

*A conjecture of the causes, hindering the re-union of Israel with Juda, which might have been effected by these troubles.*

### §. VII.

*Of Jeholaphat and his Contemporaries.*

## CHAP. XX.

*Of Jehoram, the son of Jeholaphat ; and Ahazia.*

### §. I.

*That Jehoram was made King sundry times.*

### §. II.

*Probable conjectures of the motives inducing the old King Jeholaphat to change his purpose often, in making his son Jehoram King.*

### §. III.

*The doings of Jehoram when he reigned a-lone ; and the rebellion of Edom and Libna.*

### §. IV.

*Of the miseries falling upon Jehoram : and of his death.*

### §. V.

*Of the reign of Ahazia : and his busynesse with the King of Israel.*

### §. VI.

*How Ahazia perished with the house of A-hab : and how that Family was destroyed by Jehu.*

## CHAP. XXI.

*Of Athalia, and whose son he was that succeeded unto her.*

### §. I.

*Of Athalia her usurping the Kingdom : and what pretences she might forge.*

### §. II.

*How Jehu spent his time in Israel, so that*

b

he

## The Contents

he could not molest Athalia.

§. III.

Of Athalia's Government.

§. IIII.

Of the preservation of Joas.

§. V.

Whose son Joas was.

†. I.

**W**Hether Joas may be thought likely to have been the son of Ahazia.

†. II.

That Joas did not descend from Nathan.

†. III.

That Joas may probably be thought to have been the son of Jehoram.

†. IIII.

Upon what reasons Athalia might seek to destroy Joas, if he were her own Grandchild.

§. VI.

A digression, wherein is maintained the liberty of using conjecture in Histories.

§. VII.

The conspiracy against Athalia.

§. VIII.

The death of Athalia, with a comparison of her and Jezabel.

### CHAP. XXII.

Of Joas and Amasia : with their Contemporaries ; where somewhat of the building of Carthage.

§. I.

**O**F Joas his doings whilest Jehojada the Priest lived.

§. II.

The death of Jehojada, and Apostacy of Joas.

§. III.

The causes and times of the Syrians invading Juda in the dayes of Joas.

§. IIII.

How Zachariah was murdered by Joas.

§. V.

How Joas was shamefully beaten by the Amramites : and of his death.

§. VI.

Of the Princes living in the time of Joas : of the time when Carthage was built : and of Dido.

§. VII.

The beginning of Amazia his reigne. And of Joas King of Israel, and Eliſha the Prophet.

§. VIII.

Of Amazia his war against Edom : his Apostacy : and overthrow by Joas.

§. IX.

A discourse of the reasons hindering Joas from uniting Juda to the Crown of Israel, when he had won Hierusalem, and held Amazia prisoner. The end of Joas his reigne.

§. X.

The end of Amazia his reigne and life.

§. XI.

Of the Inter-regnum that was in the kingdom of Juda, after the death of Amazia.

§. XII.

Of Princes contemporary with Amazia : and more particularly of Sardanapalus.

### CHAP. XXIII.

Of Uzzia.

§. I.

**T**he prosperity of Uzzia, and of Jeroboam the second, who reigned with him in Israel, &c.

§. II.

The end of Uzzia, his reigne and life.

§. III.

Of the Prophets which lived in the time of Uzzia, &c.

§. IIII.

Of the Assyrian Kings descending from Phul, &c.

§. V.

Of the Olympiads, and the time when they began.

§. VI.

Of Jotham, and his Contemporaries.

§. VII.

Of Achaz, and his Contemporaries.

### CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Antiquities of Italy ; and foundation of Rome in the time of Ahaz.

§. I.

**O**F the old Inhabitants ; and of the name of Italy.

§. II.

Of the Aborigines, and other Inhabitants of Latium : and of the reason of the names of Latini and Latium.

§. III.

## Of the second Book.

§. III.

Of the ancient Kings of the Latines, until Aeneas his coming.

§. IV.

Of Aeneas, and of the Kings and Governments of Alba.

§. V.

Of the beginning of Rome : and of Romulus birth and death.

Scattering in sundry Authors, their times being not recorded, &c.

§. VI.

Of Chemmis, Cheops, Cephrenes, and other Kings recited by Herodotus and Diodorus Siculus, which reigned between the times of Rehoboam and Ezekia.

§. VII.

Of Sethon, who reigned with Ezekia, and sided with him against Senacherib.

### CHAP. XXV.

Of Ezechia and his Contemporaries.

**O**F the beginning of Ezekias : and of the agreeing of Ptolomies Nabonassar, Nabopolassar, and Mardocempadus, with the history of the Bible.

§. II.

Of the danger and deliverance of Judaa from Senacherib.

§. III.

Of Ezekias his sickness and recovery, and of the Babylonian King that congratulated him.

§. IV.

The Kings that were in Media during the reign of Ezekia, &c.

### CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Kings that reigned in Egypt ; between the deliverance of Israel from thence, and the reign of Ezekia in Juda, when Egypt and Juda made a League against the Assyrians.

§. I.

**T**hat many names of Egyptian Kings found in History, are like to have belonged only to Vice-Royes : An example, proving this, out of William of Tyre, his History of the holy War.

§. II.

Of Acherres ; whether he were Uchoreus that was the eighth from Ofymandyas : of Ofymandyas, and his Tomb.

§. III.

Of Cherres, Armeus, Rameſſes, and Amenophis : of Myris, and the Lake that bears his name.

§. IV.

Of the Kings that reigned in the Dynastie of the Larthes.

§. V.

Of Egyptian Kings, whose names are found

### CHAP. XXVII.

Of Manasse, and his Contemporaries.

§. I.

**T**he wickedness of Manasses : His Imprisonment, repentance, and death.

§. II.

Of Troubles in Egypt following the death of Sethon : The reign of Phlammiticus.

§. III.

What reference these Egyptian matters might have to the imprisonment and enlargement of Manasses, &c.

§. IV.

Of the first and second Messenian Wars : which were in the reigns of Ezekia and Manasses, Kings of Juda.

§. V.

Of the Kings that were in Lydia and Media : whether Deioeces were that King Arphaxad, mentioned in the history of Judith.

§. VI.

Of other princes and actions that were in those times.

### CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the times from the death of Manasses to the destruction of Jerusalem.

§. I.

**O**F Ammon and Josias.

§. II.

Of Pharo Neco, that fought with Josias : of Jehoahaz, and Jehoakim, Kings of Juda.

§. III.

Of the Kings of Babylon and Media : How it came to passe that the Kings of Babel could not give attendance on their business in Syria : which caused them to lose that Province.

§. IV.

The great expedition of the Scythians, who



reigned in Affria eight years.

§. I.

**T**he time of this Expedition:  
What Nations they met, and the manner  
of the war; with the cause of their journey.

§. II.

Of the Cimærians war in Lydia.

# The Contents of the Chapters, Paragraphs, and Sections, in the third Book of the first Part of the History of the World.

## CHAP. I.

Of the time passing between the De-  
struction of Jerusalem and the  
fall of the Assyrian  
Empire.

§. I.

**O**F the connexion of sacred and pro-  
phane History.

§. II.

A brief rehearsal of two opinions, touching  
the beginning of the Captivity: with an an-  
swer to the cavills of Porphyrie; inveighing  
against S. Matthew and Daniel, on whom the  
later of these opinions is founded.

§. III.

That the 70. years of Captivity are to be  
numbered from the destruction of Jerusalem:  
not from the migration of Jeconia.

§. IIII.

Sundry opinions of the Kings which reigned  
in Babylon, during the 70. years.

§. V.

A more particular examination of one opi-  
nion touching the number, persons, and reigns of  
the Babylonian Kings.

§. VI.

What may be held as probable of the Persons  
and Times of Nabuchodonosor for his Suc-  
cessors.

§. VII.

Of the victories which Nabuchodonosor  
obtained, between the destruction of Jerusalem  
and conquest of Egypt.

§. VIII.

That Egypt was conquered, and the King

§. IV.

The War of the Scythians in the higher  
Asia.

§. V.

Of Princes living in divers Countries in  
these Ages.

§. VI.

The oppression of Judæa, and destruction of  
Jerusalem by the Chaldeans.

therein reigning, slain by Nebuchodonosor,  
contrary to the opinion of most Authors: Who  
following Herodotus and Diodorus, relate it  
otherwise.

§. IX.

How Egypt was subdued, and holden by Na-  
buchadnezzar.

§. X.

Of the sundry accounts drawn from sundry  
authors of Nabuchadnezzar: and of the destruc-  
tion of Ninive by him: the time of which action  
is uncertain.

§. XI.

Of the later time of Nabuchadnezzar, his  
buildings, madness, and death.

§. XII.

Of Evilmerodach.

§. XIII.

A private conjecture of the Author: ser-  
ving to make good those things which are ci-  
ted out of Berotus, concerning the successors of  
Evilmerodach, without wrong unto the truth:  
the quality and death of Balthazar.

## CHAP. II.

Of the Originall and first greatnesse  
of the Persians.

§. I.

**T**hat the Medes were chief Actors in the  
subversion of the Babylonian Empire.

§. II.

By what means the Empire was translated  
from the Medes to the Persians.

§. III.

Xenophons relation of the War which the  
Medes

Medes and Persians made with joynr Forces  
upon the Assyrians and others.

§. IIII.

The estate of the Medes and Persians, in  
times fore-going this great war.

## CHAP. III.

Of Cyrus.

§. I.

**O**F Cyrus his name, and first actions.

§. II.

Of Croesus the King of Lydia, who made  
war upon Cyrus.

§. III.

Croesus his Expedition against Cyrus.

§. IIII.

The conquest of Lydia by Cyrus.

§. V.

How Cyrus won Babylon.

§. VI.

The end of Cyrus.

§. VII.

Of Cyrus his decree for building the Tem-  
ple of God in Jerusalem.

§. VIII.

Of Cyrus his issue: and whether Atossa  
was his daughter, or (as some think) were the  
same with Queen Hester.

## CHAP. IIII.

The estate of things from the death  
of Cyrus to the reigne of  
Darius.

§. I.

**O**F the number and names of the Persian  
Kings.

§. II.

Of Cambyfes; and the conquering of E-  
gypt by him.

§. III.

The rest of Cambyfes his acts.

§. IIII.

Of the Inter-regnum between Cambyfes  
and Darius.

## CHAP. V.

Of Darius the son of Hytaspes.

§. I.

**O**F Darius his Linage.

§. II.

Of Darius his Government: and suppress-

ing the Rebellion of Babylon.

§. III.

Of Darius his favour to the Jews in build-  
ing the Temple.

§. IIII.

Of Darius his Scythian war.

§. V.

Some actions of the Persians in Europe, af-  
ter the Scythian war.

§. VI.

The first occasion of the War which Da-  
rius made upon Greece; with a rehearsal of  
the Government in Athens, whence the quar-  
rell grew.

§. VII.

Of the Ionian Rebellion, which was the  
principall cause of the wars ensuing between  
Greece and Persia.

§. VIII.

The war which Darius made on Greece:  
with the battell of Marathon; and Darius his  
death.

## CHAP. VI.

Of Xerxes.

§. I.

**T**he preparation of Xerxes against Greece

§. II.

Xerxes Army entertained by Pythius: his  
cutting off Mount Athos from the Continent:  
his bridge of Boats over the Hellespont: and  
the discourse between him and Artabanus, up-  
on the view of his Army.

§. III.

Of the fight at Thermopylae, and Artemi-  
sium.

§. IV.

The attempt of Xerxes upon Apollo's Tem-  
ple, and his taking of Athens.

§. V.

How Themistocles the Athenian drew the  
Greeks to fight at Salamis.

§. VI.

How the Persians consulted about giving  
battell: and how Themistocles by policy held  
the Greeks to their resolution; with the victory  
at Salamis thereupon ensuing.

§. VII.

Of things following after the battell of Sala-  
mis: and of the flight of Xerxes.

§. VIII.

The negotiations between Mardonius and  
the Athenians; as also between the Atheni-  
ans and Lacedæmonians; after the flight of  
Xerxes.

## The Contents

### §. IX.

*The great battell of Palatææ.*

### §. X.

*The battell of Mycale: with a strange accident that fell out in the beginning of it: and examples of the like.*

### §. XI.

*Of the barbarous quality of Xerxes: with a transition from the Persian affaires to matters of Greece, which from this time grew more worthy of regard.*

## CHAP. VII.

*Of things that passed in Greece from the end of the Persian War, to the beginning of the Peloponnesian.*

### §. I.

**H**ow Athens was re-built and fortified.

### §. II.

*The beginning of the Athenian greatness, and prosperous wars made by that State upon the Persian.*

### §. III.

*The death of Xerxes, by the treason of Artabanus.*

### §. IIII.

*The banishment of Themistocles; his flight to Artaxerxes newly reigning in Persia, and his death.*

### §. V.

*How the Athenians, breaking the Peace, which to their great honour they had made with the Persian, were shamefully beaten in Egypt.*

### §. VI.

*Of other Wars made by the Athenians (for the most part) with good successe about the time.*

### §. VII.

*Of Artaxerxes Longimanus, that he was Ahalhueroth, the Husband of Queen Hester.*

### §. VIII.

*Of the troubles in Greece, fore-going the Peloponnesian War.*

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the Peloponnesian War.*

### §. I.

**U**pon what terms the two principall Cities of Greece, Athens, and Sparta,

*stood at the beginning of the Peloponnesian War.*

### §. II.

*How Sparta and Athens entred into war.*

### §. III.

*The beginning of the Peloponnesian War.*

### §. IV.

*Of the great losse which the Spartans received at Pylus.*

### §. V.

*How the Lacedæmonians hardly, and to their great disadvantage, obtained a peace, that was not well kept.*

### §. VI.

*Of the negotiations and praëtices held between many States of Greece, by occasion of the peace that was concluded.*

### §. VII.

*How the peace between Athens and Sparta was ill kept, though not openly broken.*

### §. VIII.

*The Athenians sending two Fleets to sack Syracuse, are put to flight, and utterly discomfited.*

### §. IX.

*Of the troubles whereinto the State of Athens fell, after the great losse of the Fleet and Army in Sicilia.*

### §. X.

*How Alcibiades was many important Victories for the Athenians; was re-called from exile; made their Generall: and again deposed.*

### §. XI.

*The battell at Arginæ: and condemnation of the victorious Athenian Captains by the people.*

### §. XII.

*The battell at Ægos Potamos, wherein the whole State of Athens was ruined; with the end of the Peloponnesian War.*

## CHAP. IX.

*Of the matters concurring with the Peloponnesian War, or shortly following it.*

### §. I.

**H**ow the affaires of Persia stood in these times.

### §. II.

*How the thirty Tyrants got their Dominion in Athens.*

### §. III.

*The conspiracy against the thirty Tyrants: and their deposition.*

## CHAP.

## Of the third Book.

## CHAP. X.

*Of the expedition of Cyrus the Younger.*

### §. I.

**T**he grounds of Cyrus his attempt against his brother.

### §. II.

*The preparations of Cyrus, and his first entry into the war.*

### §. III.

*How Cyrus took his journey into the higher Asia, and came up close to his brother.*

### §. IIII.

*The battell between Cyrus and Artaxerxes.*

### §. V.

*The hard estate of the Greeks after the fight: and how Artaxerxes in vain sought to have made them yeeld unto him.*

### §. VI.

*How the Greeks began to return homewards.*

### §. VII.

*How Tissaphernes, under colour of peace, betrayed all the Captains of the Greeks.*

### §. VIII.

*How Xenophon heartened the Greeks, and in despite of Tissaphernes, went off safely.*

### §. IX.

*The difficulties which the Greek Army found, in passing through the Land of the Carduchi.*

### §. X.

*How Teribazus Governour of Armenia, seeking to entrap the Greeks with terms of feigned peace, was disappointed, and shamefully beaten.*

### §. XI.

*The passage of the Army to Trabizonde, through the Country, bordering upon the river of Phasis, and other obscure Nations.*

### §. XII.

*How the Army began at Trabizonde to provide a Fleet, wherewith to return home by Sea.*

### §. XIII.

*Of disension which arose in the Army, and how it was embargued.*

### §. XIV.

*Another great disension and destruction of the Army. How the Mutiniers were beaten by the Barbarians, and rescued by Xenophon.*

### §. XV.

*Of divers pieces of service done by Xeno-*

*phon; and how the Army returned into Greece. The occasion of the War between the Lacedæmonians and the Persian.*

## CHAP. XI.

*Of the affairs of Greece, whilest they were managed by the Lacedæmonians.*

### §. I.

**H**ow the Lacedæmonians took courage by example of Xenophons Army, to make war upon Artaxerxes.

### §. II.

*The prosperous beginnings of the War in Asia.*

### §. III.

*How the Lacedæmonians took revenge upon the Eleans for old displeasure. The discontents of the Corinthians and Thebans, conceived against the State of Sparta.*

### §. IV.

*The passage of Agefilas into Asia: His War with Tissaphernes. How Tissaphernes was put to death; and the War diverted into another Province, through persuasion and gifts of Tithraustes his successeur. How carelesse the Persian Lieutenants were of the Kings good.*

### §. V.

*The War and Treaty between Agefilas and Pharnabazus.*

### §. VI.

*The great commotions raised in Greece by the Thebans and others, that were hired with gold from the Persian.*

### §. VII.

*How Agefilas was called out of Asia to help his Country. A victory of the Spartans. Conon the Athenian, assisted by Pharnabazus, overcomes the Lacedæmonian Fleet: recovers the mastery of the Seas: and re-builds the walls of Athens.*

### §. VIII.

*Of sundry small victories gotten on each part. The Lacedæmonians lose all in Asia. The Athenians recover some part of their old Dominion.*

### §. IX.

*The base conditions offered unto the Persian by the Lacedæmonians. Of sundry fights, and other passages in the war. The peace of Antalcidas.*

### §. X.

*The War which the Lacedæmonians made*

## The Contents

upon Olynthus. They take Thebes by treason, and Olynthus by famine.

### §. XI.

How the Thebans recovered their liberty, driving out the Lacedæmonian Garrison.

## CHAP. XII.

Of the flourishing estate of Thebes, from the Battell of Leuctra, to the Battell of Mantinea.

### §. I.

How Thebes and Athens joyned together against Sparta. How the Athenians make peace for themselves and others: out of which the Thebans were excluded. The battell of Leuctra, and beginning of the Theban greatness.

### §. II.

How the Athenians took upon them to maintain the peace of Greece. New troubles hence arising. Epaminondas invades and wasteth the Territory of Lacedæmon.

### §. III.

The composition between Athens and Spar-

ta, for command in war against the Thebans; who again invade and spoile Peloponnesus. The unfortunate presumption of the Arcadians.

### §. IV.

The great growth of the Theban Estate. Embassages of the Greeks to the Persians with the reasons why he most favoured the Thebans. Troubles in the Persian Empire. The fruitlesse issue of the Embassages.

### §. V.

How all Greece was divided between the Athenians and Lacedæmonians, on the one side, and Thebans on the other. Of the great tumults arising in Arcadia.

### §. VI.

A terrible invasion of Peloponnesus by Epaminondas.

### §. VII.

The great battell of Mantinea. The honorable death of Epaminondas, with his commendation.

### §. VIII.

Of the peace concluded in Greece after the battell of Mantinea. The voyage of Agellus into Egypt. His death, and qualities: with an examination of the comparison made between him and Pompey the Roman.

## The Contents of the Chapters, Paragraphs, and Sections, in the fourth Book of the first Part of the History of the World.

## CHAP. I.

Of Philip, the Father of Alexander the Great, King of Macedon.

### §. I.

What Kings reigned in Macedon before Philip.

### §. II.

The beginning of Philips reign; and how he delivered Macedon from the troubles in which he found it entangled.

### §. III.

The good success which Philip had in many enterprises.

### §. IIII.

Of the Phocian war, which first drew

Philip into Greece.

### §. V.

Of the Olynthian War. The ambitious practices of Philip.

### §. VI.

How Philip ended the Phocian War.

### §. VII.

How Philip with ill success attempted on Perinthus, Bizantium, and the Scythians.

### §. VIII.

How Philip, overthrowing the Greeks in the battell of Cheronæa, was chosen Captain General of Greece. The death of Philip.

### §. IX.

What good foundations of Alexanders greatness were laid by Philip. Of his laudable qualities and issue.

## CHAP.

## Of the fourth Book.

## CHAP. II.

Of Alexander the Great.

### §. I.

A brief rehearsal of Alexanders doings, before he invaded Asia.

### §. II.

How Alexander passing into Asia, fought with the Persians upon the River of Granicus.

### §. III.

A digression concerning the defence of hard passages. Of things following the battell of Granick.

### §. IIII.

Of the unwelcome Army levied by Darius against Alexander. The unadvised courses which Darius took in this Expedition. He is vanquished at Issus, where his Mother, Wife, and Children, are made Prisoners. Of some things following the battell of Issus.

### §. V.

How Alexander besieged, and won the City of Tyre.

### §. VI.

How Darius offered conditions of peace to Alexander. Alexander wins Gaza, and deals graciously with the Jews.

### §. VII.

Alexander wins Egypt: and makes a journey to the Temple of Hammon.

### §. VIII.

How Alexander, marching against Darius, was opposed very unskilfully by the Enemy.

### §. IX.

The new provisions of Darius. Accidents fore-going the battell of Arbela.

### §. X.

The battell of Arbela: and that it could not be so strongly fought as report hath made it.

### §. XI.

Of things following the battell of Arbela. The yielding of Babylon and Susa.

### §. XII.

How Alexander came to Persepolis, and burnt it.

### §. XIII.

The treason of Bessus against Darius. Darius his death.

### §. XIIIII.

How Alexander pursued Bessus, and took into his grace Darius his Captains.

### §. XV.

Of Thalestris, Queen of the Amazons,

where, by way of digression, it is shewed, that such Amazons have been, and are.

### §. XVI.

How Alexander fell into the Persians Luxury: and how he pursued Bessus.

### §. XVII.

A conspiracy against Alexander. The death of Philotas and Parmenio.

### §. XVIII.

How Alexander subdued the Bactrians, Sogdians, and other people. How Bessus was delivered into his hands. How he fought with the Scythians.

### §. XIX.

How Alexander slew his own friends.

### §. XX.

Of Alexanders journey into India. The battell between him and Porus.

### §. XXI.

How Alexander finished his Expedition: and returned out of India.

### §. XXII.

Of Alexanders riot, cruelty, and death.

### §. XXIII.

Of Alexanders person and qualities.

## CHAP. III.

The Reigne of Aridæus.

### §. I.

Of the question about succession to Alexander.

### §. II.

The election of Aridæus, with the troubles thereabout arising: the first division of the Empire.

### §. III.

The beginning of the Lamian War.

### §. IIII.

How Perdiccas employed his Army.

### §. V.

The proceß of the Lamian War.

### §. VI.

Of the peace granted to Athens by Antipater. Of Demolthenes his death.

### §. VII.

How Graterus and Antipater were drawn from their Ætolian Wars into Asia. The grounds of the first Civil War between the Macedonian Lords.

### §. VIII.

# The Contents

## §. VIII.

Perdiccas his voyage into Egypt, and his death.

## §. IX.

Victories of Eumenes in the lower Asia.

## §. X.

Quarrels between Eurydice the Queen, and Python the Protector. Python resigns his office; into which Antipater is chosen.

## §. XI.

Antigonus, Lieutenant of Asia, wins a battell of Eumenes, and besiegeth him in Nora. He vanquisheth other followers of Perdiccas.

## §. XII.

Ptolomy wins Syria and Phoenicia. The death of Antipater.

## §. XIII.

Of Polyperchon, who succeeded unto Antipater in the Protectorship. The insurrection of Cassander against him.

## §. XIV.

The unworthy courses held by Polyperchon, for the keeping down of Cassander.

## §. XV.

Of the great commotions raised in Athens by Polyperchons decree. The death of Phocion.

## §. XVI.

Of Polyperchon his vain Expedition against Cassander.

## §. XVII.

Antigonus seeks to make himself an absolute Lord: and thereupon treats with Eumenes, who disappointeth him. Phrygia and Lydia won by Antigonus.

## §. XVIII.

Antigonus pursues Eumenes. Eumenes having Authority from the Court, raiseth great War against Antigonus, in defence of the Royall house.

## §. XIX.

How the Princes of Macedon stood affected mutually. Olympias takes Aridæus and Eurydice, whom she cruelly puts to death.

## §. XX.

How Cassander was revenged upon Olympias.

## †. I.

The great Expedition of Cassander. Olympias shuts her self into Pydna, where Cassander besiegeth her. Acides King of Epirus, coming to succour Olympias, is forsaken, and banished by his own Subjects.

## †. II.

A continuation of Olympias her story. Polyperchon defeated. Extreme famine in

Pydna. Olympias yeelds to Cassander.

## †. III.

The death of Olympias, and her condition.

## †. IV.

Cassander celebrates the Funerall of Aridæus and Eurydice: and seeks to make himself King of Macedon.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the great Lordship which ANTIGONUS got in ASIA.

### §. I.

The journey of Eumenes into Persia. His wife dealing with those that joyned with him.

### §. II.

How Antigonus coming to set upon Eumenes, was driven off with losse.

### §. III.

Of Eumenes his cunning. A battell between him and Antigonus.

### §. IV.

Of divers stratagems practised by Antigonus and Eumenes, one against the other.

### §. V.

The conspiracy of Peucestes and others against Eumenes his life.

### §. VI.

The last Battell between Antigonus and Eumenes.

### §. VII.

How Eumenes was betrayed to Antigonus, and slain.

### §. VIII.

How Antigonus sue Python, and occupied Media. How he removed Governours of Provinces, and made himself Lord of Persia, carrying away Peucestes.

### §. IX.

How Seleucus was chased out of Babylon by Antigonus. The great riches of Antigonus.

## CHAP.

## Of the third Book.

## CHAP. V.

Of the great Civill War between Alexanders Captains: and how they assumed the name and state of Kings.

### §. I.

The combination of Ptolomy, Cassander and others, against Antigonus. Their demands, and his answer.

### §. II.

The preparations and beginnings of the Wars.

### §. III.

How each part sought to win the assistance of Greece. Antigonus his declaration against Cassander, &c.

### §. IV.

The Ætolians rise against Cassander, in favour of Antigonus, and are beaten, &c.

### §. V.

How Lyfimachus and Cassander vanquished some Enemies, raised against them by Antigonus. The good success of Antigonus in Asia and Greece: with the rebellion of many Cities against Cassander.

### §. VI.

Victories of Ptolomy by Sea. A great battell at Gaza, which Ptolomy and Seleucus won against Demetrius the son of Antigonus.

### §. VII.

How Seleucus recovered Babylon, and made himself Lord of many Countreies in the higher Asia. The Æra of the Kingdom of the Greeks: which began with this Dominion of Seleucus.

### §. VIII.

How Ptolomy lost all that he had won in Syria. What the causes were of the quiet obedience performed unto the Macedonians, by those that had been subject unto the Persian Empire. Of divers petty enterprizes, taken in hand by Antigonus and Demetrius, with ill success.

### §. IX.

A generall peace made and broken. How all the house of Alexander was destroyed.

### §. X.

How Demetrius, the son of Antigonus, gave liberty to Athens, expelling the Garrisons of Cassander out of those parts, &c.

### §. XI.

The great victory of Demetrius against Ptolomy in Cyprus. How Antigonus and Demetrius took on them the stile of Kings.

## CHAP. VI.

Of the Wars between the Kings of Egypt, Asia, Macedon, Thrace, and others, untill all Alexanders Princes were consumed.

### §. I.

The expedition of Antigonus against Egypt, with ill success.

### §. II.

How the City of Rhodes was besieged by Demetrius.

### §. III.

How Demetrius prevailed in Greece. Cassander desires peace of Antigonus, and cannot obtain it. Great preparations of War against Antigonus.

### §. IV.

How Antigonus was slain in a great battell at Iplius, near unto Ephesus; wherein his whole estate was lost.

### §. V.

How Demetrius, forsaken by the Athenians, after his overthrow, was reconciled to Seleucus and Ptolomie: beginning a new Fortune, and shortly entering into new quarrels.

### §. VI.

How Demetrius won the City of Athens; and prevailed in Greece, but lost in Asia. Of troubles in Macedon, following the death of Cassander.

### §. VII.

Of Pyrrhus, and his doings in Macedon. The death of Cassander's children. Demetrius gets the Kingdom of Macedon, prevails in war against the Greeks; loseth reputation in his war against Pyrrhus, and in his civill Government; and prepares to win Asia. How all conspire against Demetrius. Pyrrhus and Lyfimachus invade him; his Army yeelds to Pyrrhus: who shares the Kingdom of Macedon with Lyfimachus.

### §. VIII.

How Demetrius, gathering forces, enterprised many things with ill success, in Greece and Asia. How he was driven upon Seleucus, and compelled to yeeld himself. His imprisonment and death.

### §. IX.

The death of Ptolomie, of Lyfimachus, and of Seleucus, that was the last of Alexanders Captains; with other occurrences.

## CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of divers actions passing between the first and second Punick Wars.

§. I.

OF the cruell War begun between the Carthaginians and their Mercenaries.

§. II.

Divers observations upon this War with the Mercenaries.

†. I.

OF tyrannie : and how tyrants are driven to use help of Mercenaries.

†. II.

That the tyrannie of a City over her Subjects, is worse than the tyrannie of one man : and that a tyrannicall City must likewise use mercenary Souldiers.

†. III.

The dangers growing from the use of mercenary souldiers, and foreign auxiliaries.

†. IV.

That the moderate government of the Romans, gave them assurance to use the service of their own subjects in the wars, &c.

§. III.

How the war against the Mercenaries, was diversly managed by Hanno and Amilcar, with variable success. The bloody counsels of the Mercenaries, and their final destruction.

§. IV.

How the Mercenaries of the Carthaginians, that were in Sardinia, rebelled : and were afterwards driven out by the Islanders. The faithlesse dealing of the Romans with the Carthaginians, in taking from them Sardinia, contrary to the peace.

§. V.

How the affairs of Carthage went, between the African rebellion, and the second Punick War.

§. VI.

The estate of Greece from the death of Pyrrhus, to the reign of Philip the son of Demetrius in Macedon.

§. VII.

How the Illyrians infested the Coast of Greece : and how they were subdued by the Romans.

§. VIII.

Of the War between the Romans and Gauls, somewhat before the coming of Hannibal into Italy.

CHAP. III.

Of the second Punick War.

§. I.

THE Wars of Hannibal in Spain. Quarrels between the Romans and Carthaginians. Hannibal besiegeth and taketh Saguntum, whilst the Romans are busied with the Illyrians, &c.

§. II.

Hannibal takes order for the defence of Spain and Africk. His journey into Italy.

§. III.

How the Romans in vain solicited the Spaniards and Gauls to take their part. The rebellion of the Cisalpine Gauls against the Romans.

§. IV.

Scipio the Roman Consul, overcome by Hannibal at Ticinum. Both of the Roman Consuls beaten by Hannibal in a great battell at Trebia.

§. V.

The departure of Hannibal from the Cisalpine Gauls into Hetruria. Flaminius the Roman Consul slain : and his Army destroyed by the Carthaginians, at the Lake of Trasymene.

§. VI.

How Q. Fabius the Roman Dictator, sought to consume the force of Hannibal, by lingering war, &c.

§. VII.

The Roman people, desirous to finish the War quickly, choose a rash and unworthy Consul. Great forces levied against Hannibal. Hannibal taketh the Romans provisions in the Castle of Cannæ, &c.

§. VIII.

Dissention between the two Roman Consuls. Whether it be likely, that Hannibal was upon point of flying out of Italie, when the Romans pressed him to fight. The great battell at Cannæ.

§. IX.

Of things following the Battell of Cannæ.

§. X.

Of the great supply that was decreed at Carthage, to be sent to Hannibal in Italy. How by the malice of Hanno, and sloth or parsimony of the Carthaginians, the supply was too long deferred. That the riches of the Carthaginians grew faster than of the Romans. Of Fabius and other old Roman Historians, how partiall they were in their writings.

§. XI.

§. XI.

Strange reports of the Roman victories in Spain, before Aldrubal the son of Amilcar followed thence his brother Hannibal into Italy.

§. XII.

The great troubles that Hannibal raised in all quarters, to the City of Rome. Posthumus the Roman General, with his whole Army, is slain by the Gauls, &c.

§. XIII.

How the Romans began to recover their strength by degrees. The noble affection of the Romans, in relieving the publick necessities of their Common-wealth.

§. XIV.

The Romans win some Towns back from Hannibal. Hannibal wins Tarentum. The siege of Capua. Two Victories of Hannibal. The journey of Hannibal to the gates of Rome. Capua taken by the Romans.

§. XV.

How the Carthaginians, making a party in Sardinia and Sicily, held war against the Romans in those Islands : and were overcome.

§. XVI.

How the war passed between the Romans and Hannibal in Italy, from the taking of Capua to the great victory at Metaurus.

§. XVII.

How P. Cornelius Scipio, the Roman, made entire conquest of Spain.

†. I.

How the Carthaginians were driven by Scipio, from the Continent into the Isle of Gades.

†. II.

Funerall games held by Scipio. A Duel between two Spanish Princes. A digression concerning Duels.

†. III.

The last acts of Scipio in Spain. His return to Rome : where he is chosen Consul.

§. XVIII.

Scipio obtains leave to make war in Africk : His preparations : Of Masaniissa who joyned with Scipio.

§. XIX.

The Carthaginians desire truce : and do break it.

§. XX.

In what sort Hannibal spent the time, after the battell of Metaurus. The doings of Mago in Italy, &c.

§. XXI.

Hannibal in Africk prepares to fight with Scipio : treats with him about peace in vain : loseth a battell at Nadagara, &c.

CHAP. IV.

Of Philip the Father of Perseus King of Macedon, his first acts and war with the Romans, by whom he was subdued.

§. I.

How the Romans grew acquainted in the East Countreies, and desirous of war there. The beginning of many Princes : with great Wars, at one time, &c.

§. II.

How Philip was misadvised by ill Counsellors : who afterwards wrought Treason against him, and were justly punished. He invadeth the Aetolians a second time : and forceth them to sue for peace : which is granted unto them.

§. III.

Philip, at the persuasion of Demetrius Pharius, enters into league with Hannibal against the Romans. The tenour of the League between Hannibal and Philip.

§. IV.

How Philip yielded to his naturall vices, being therunto soothed by Demetrius Pharius, &c.

§. V.

Of Philopœmen, General of the Achæans, and Machanidas Tyrant of Lacedæmon. A battell between them, wherein Machanidas is slain.

§. VI.

Philip having peace with Rome, and with all Greece, prepares against Asia. Of the Kings of Pergamus, Cappadocia, Pontus, Paphlagonia, Bythinia ; and their Linages. Of the Galatians.

§. VII.

The town of Cios taken by Philip ; at the instance of Prusias King of Bythinia, and cruelly destroyed, &c.

§. VIII.

The Romans, after their Carthaginian War, seek matter of quarrell against Philip. The Athenians, upon slight cause, proclaim war against Philip : moved thereto by Attalus, whom they flatter. Philip wins divers Towns, &c.

§. IX.

The Romans decree war against Philip, and send one of their Consuls into Greece, as it were in defence of the Athenians their confederates. How poor the Athenians were at this time, both in quality and estate.

§. X. The

§. X.

The Town of *Chalcis* in *Eubœa*, taken and sackt by the *Romans* and their Associates, that lay in *Greece* at *Athen*. Philip attempteth to take *Albany* by surprise, resisteth by *Countrie* about, and makes a journey into *Peloponnesus*. Of *Nabis* the Tyrant of *Lacedæmon*, and his wife. Philip offers to make war against *Nabis* for the *Acheans*. He returneth home through *Attica*, which he spoileth again: and provides against the enemies. Some exploits of the *Romans*. Divers Princes joyn with them. Great labouring to draw the *Ætoli*ans into the war.

§. XI.

The meeting of Philip with the *Romans*, and skirmishing with them on his borders, &c.

§. XII.

Villius the Roman Consul makes a year to no effect: War of the *Gauls* in *Italy*. An Embassy of the *Romans* to *Carthage*, *Maſaniſſa* and *Vermina*, &c.

§. XIII.

The *Romans* begin to make war by Negotiation. T. Quintius wins a passage against Philip. Theſely waſted by Philip, the *Romans*, and *Ætoli*ans: the *Acheans* forſaking the *Macedonian*, take part with the *Romans*. A treaty of peace, that was vain. Philip delivers *Argos* to *Nabis* the Tyrant, who presently enters into league with the *Romans*.

§. XIII.

The battell at *Cynoccephala*, wherein Philip was vanquiſhed by T. Quintius.

§. XV.

T. Quintius falls out with the *Ætoli*ans, and grants truce unto Philip, with conditions, upon which the peace is ratified, &c.

CHAP. V.

The Wars of the *Romans* with *Antiochus* the Great, and his Adherents.

§. I.

What kings of the races of *Seleucus* and *Ptolomy* reigned in *Asia* and *Egypt*, before *Antiochus* the Great.

§. II.

The beginning of the great *Antiochus* his reign. Of *Ptolomy Evergetes*, and *Philopator*, Kings of *Egypt*. War between *Antiochus* and *Philopator*, &c.

§. III.

The lewd reign of *Ptolomy Philopator* in *Egypt*: with the tragick end of his Favorites, when he was dead. *Antiochus* pre-

pares to war on the young child *Ptolomy* *Epiphanes*, the son of *Philopator*. His resolution in preparing for divers wars at once: his voyage towards the *Helleſpont*. He ſeeks to hold amity with the *Romans*, who make friendly ſhew to him, &c.

§. IV.

The *Romans* hold friendly correspondence with *Antiochus*, during their war with Philip: after which they quarrell with him. The doings of *Hannibal* at *Carthage*: whence he is chased by his enemies, and by the *Romans*: His flight unto the King *Antiochus*: the *Ætoli*ans move against the *Romans* in *Greece*, &c.

§. V.

Of the long wars which the *Romans* had with the *Gauls*, *Liguri*ans, and *Spaniards*. Of M. Porcius *Cato*. Injuries done by *Maſaniſſa* to the *Carthaginians*; that ſue unto the *Romans* for juſtice in vain.

§. VI.

The *Ætoli*ans labour to provoke *Antiochus*, Philip, and *Nabis* to war upon the *Romans*; by whom they hold themſelves wronged & diſgraced. *Nabis* beſiegeth *Cyrene*, & waſteth ſome part of *Acha*. The exact ſkill of *Philopœmen* in his advantage of ground; where he utterly vanquiſhed *Nabis*, &c.

§. VII.

*Antiochus* perſwaded by *Thoas* the *Ætolian*, comes over into *Greece*, ill attended. Sundry paſſages between him, the *Ætoli*ans, *Chalcidians*, and others. He wins *Chalcis*, & thereby the whole Iſle of *Eubœa*. The vanity of the Kings Embaſſadors, and the *Ætoli*ans: with the civil anſwer of *Titus* to their diſcourſe, before the *Acheans*. That it concerned the *Greeks* to have deſired peace between the *Romans* and *Antiochus*: as the beſt aſſurance of their owne liberty, &c.

§. VIII.

*Lucius Scipio*, having with him *Publius* the *African* his elder brother, for his Lieutenant, is ſent into *Greece*. He grants long truce to the *Ætoli*ans, that ſo he might at leiſure paſſe into *Asia*. Much troubleſome buſineſſe by Sea, and divers fights. An invaſion upon *Eumenes* his Kingdome: with the ſiege of *Pergamus*, raiſed by an handful of the *Acheans*. L. Scipio the Conſull comes into *Asia*, where *Antiochus* moſt earneſtly deſires peace, and is denied it. The battell of *Magneſia*: wherein *Antiochus* being vanquiſhed, yeeldeth to the *Romans* good pleaſure. The conditions of the peace. In what ſort the *Romans* uſed their victory. L. Cornelius *Scipio*, after a moſt ſumptuous triumph over *Antiochus*, is ſurnamed The *Aſiatique*, as his brother was ſtiled, The *African*.

§. I X.

The *Ætoli*ans and the *Gallo-Greeks*, vanquiſhed by the Roman Conſuls *Fulvius* and *Manlius*, &c.

CHAP. VI.

The ſecond *Macedon* War.

§. I.

The condition wherein thoſe Princes and Eſtates remained, which were associates of the *Romans*, when the war with *Antiochus* was finiſhed. The *Romans* quarrell with Philip, &c.

§. II.

The death of *Philopœmen*, *Hannibal*, and *Scipio*, &c.

§. III.

Philip making proviſion for war againſt the *Romans*, deals hardly with many of his own ſubjects. His Negotiation with the *Baſtarnæ*. His cruelty. He ſuſpected his ſon *Demetrius*. *Demetrius* accuſed by his Brother *Perſeus*: and ſhortly after ſlain by his Fathers appointment, &c.

§. IV.

How the *Baſtarnæ* ſell upon *Dardania*. The behaviour of *Perſeus* in the beginning of his reign. Some wars of the *Romans*: and how they ſuffered *Maſaniſſa* cruelly to oppreſſe the *Carthaginians*. The quarrell with *Perſeus*, &c.

§. V.

How *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus* was buſied with *Pharnaces*, the *Rhodian*, and others. His hatred to the *Macedonian*: whom he accuſeth to the Roman Senate, &c.

§. VI.

The *Romans* ſolicite the *Greeks* to joine with them in the war againſt *Perſeus*. How the *Greeks* ſtood affected in that war. The timo-

rousneſſe of *Perſeus*. *Martius* a Roman Embaſſador deludes him with the hope of peace. His forces. He takes the field, and wins part of *Theſſaly*. The forces of *Licinius* the Roman Conſul: and what aſſiſtants the *Romans* had in this war, &c.

§. VII.

Q. *Martius* the Roman Conſul, with extreme difficulty and danger, enters into *Tempe*. The cowardize of *Perſeus* in abandoning *Tempe*. The Town of *Dium* quitted by *Martius*, repaired and fortified by the King. The *Romans* attempt many places, with ill ſucceſſe. *Martius* a cunning and a bad man.

§. VIII.

Of L. *Æmylius Paulus*, the Conſul. His journey. He forceth *Perſeus* to diſcamp. He will not hazard battell with any diſadvantage. Of an Eclipse of the Moon. *Æmylius* his ſuperſtition. The battell of *Pydna*. *Perſeus* his flight. He forſakes his Kingdome; which buſtly yeelds to *Æmylius*. *Perſeus* at *Samothrace*. He yeelds himſelf to the Roman Admirall: and is ſent priſoner to *Æmylius*.

§. IX.

*Gentius* King of the *Illyrians*, taken by the *Romans*.

§. X.

How the *Romans* behaved themſelves in *Greece* and *Macedon*, after their victory over *Perſeus*.

§. XI.

The war of *Antiochus* upon *Egypt* brought to end by the Roman Embaſſadors.

§. XII.

How the *Romans* were dreadful unto all Kings. Their demeanour towards *Eumenes*, *Pruiſas*, *Maſaniſſa*, and *Cotys*. The end of *Perſeus* and his children. The inſtability of Kingly Eſtates. The triumphs of *Paulus*, *Anicius*, and *Oſtavius*: With the concluſion of the Work.

FINIS.





10 THE FIRST PART OF THE  
HISTORY OF THE WORLD:  
INTREATING OF THE BEGINNING AND  
first Ages of the same, from the Cre-  
ation unto ABRAHAM.  
THE FIRST BOOK.

20

## CHAP. I.

Of the Creation, and Preservation of the World.

## § I.

That the Invisible God is seen in his Creatures.

30



40 GOD, whom the wisest men acknowledge to be a Power un-  
effable, and Vertue infinite, a Light by abundant claritie in-  
visible; and Understanding which it self can onely compre-  
hend, an Essence eternall and spirituall, of absolute purenesse  
and simplicitie; was, and is pleased to make himself known by  
the work of the World: in the wonderfull magnitude wher-  
of, (all which he imbraceth, filleth and sustaineth) we behold  
the Image of that glory which cannot be measured, and  
withall that one, and yet universall Nature, which cannot be  
defined. In the glorious Lights of Heaven, we perceive a sha-  
dow of his divine Countenance; in his mercifull provision for all that live, his manifold  
goodnes; and lastly, in creating and making existent the World universall, by the ab-  
solute Art of his own Word, his Power and Almightynes; which Power, Light, Vertue,  
Wisedome, and Goodnes, being all but Attributes of one simple Essence, and one God,  
we in all admire, and in part discern *per speculum creaturarum*, that is, in the disposition,  
order, and variety of Celestiall and Terrestriall bodies: Terrestriall, in their strange  
and manifold diversities; Celestiall, in their beauty and magnitude; which in their con-  
tinuall and contrary motions, are neither repugnant, intermixt, nor confounded. By  
these potent effects, we approach to the knowledge of the omnipotent cause, and by  
these motions, their Almighty Maker.

50 In these more than wonderfull works, God (saith \*Hugo speaketh unto man, and it  
is true, that these be those discourses of God, whose effects, those that live, witness in  
themselves; the sensible, in their sensible natures; the reasonable, in their reasonable  
souls: for according to S. \*Gregory; *Omnis homo eo ipso quod rationalis conditus est, ex ipso*  
*ratione, illum qui se condidit, Deum esse colligere debet;* Every man, in that he is reasonable,  
out of the same reason may know, that he which made him, is God. This God all men  
behold (saith Job) which is according to the Fathers, *Dominacionem illius conspiciere in*  
*Creaturis, To discern him in his providence by his creatures;* That God hath been other-  
wise seen, to wit, with corporal eyes, exceedeth the small proportion of my understand-  
ing,

A

ding,

\* Hugo super  
Ecclij. Homil. 8  
\* Greg. in Mor.  
Herm. ad fil.  
Tert. l. 5. Omnis  
e. v. ingenuus,  
et non apparet  
et in manifestis  
sua omnia as-  
tem man. secula  
ret. Et in omni-  
bus. A parentia  
solum generat-  
tum est nihil ge-  
neratio.

Joh. 5. 3.  
1 Tim. 5. 16.  
Orig. l. 2. m.  
p. 420. c. 22.  
Cyril. de Chris.  
in Joh. Rom. 14.  
Greg. N. l. 1.  
Theolog. Hieron.  
Elicam. Aug. l. 2.  
de Trin. c. 12. c. 13.  
Greg. Mag. l. 18. Mor. Evar.  
c. 38. l. 1. Decret.  
Alcin. l. 2. de  
Trin. c. 16. D. de  
top. cap. 4. C. de  
Hieron. Thom. 2.  
q. 12. art. 11.  
C. alibi. Deus  
qui natura in-  
visibilis est, ut  
a visibilibus  
pacti sciri, quia  
sciri quod Chri-  
stem sui visibilis  
fieri manifestat,  
ut per con-  
tinuum incertum  
sciriatur, & illi  
Deus omnium  
est creator.  
Amb. in e. i. h.  
ad Rom. c. 1.  
Cusan. de gen.  
theol. c. 20.  
A Ment. Nat.  
Hist. fol. 7.

ding, grounded on these places of S. John and S. Paul, Ie have not heard his voice at any time, neither have ye seen his shape. And again, *Whom never man saw, nor can see.* And this I am sure agreeeth with the nature of Gods simplicity, of which S. Augustine, *ip[s]a enim natura, vel substantia, vel quolibet alio nomine appellandum est, id ipsum quod Deus est, corporaliter videri non potest;* That nature, or that substance, or by whatsoever name that is to be called which is God, whatsoever that be, the same cannot be corporally perceived. And of this opinion were Origen, Cyril, Chrysostome, Gregory Nazianzenus, Hierome, Augustine, Gregory the great, Evaristus, Alcinus, Dionysius Areopagita, Aquinas, and all others of authority. But by his own Word, and by this visible World, is God perceived of men; which is also the understood language of the Almighty, vouchsafed to all his Creatures, whose Hieroglyphicall Characters are the unnumbered Stars, the Sun and Moon; written on these large Volumes of the Firmament: written also on the Earth and the Seas; by the letters of all those living creatures, and plants, which inhabit and reside therein. Therefore said that learned Cusanus, *Mundus universus nihil aliud est, quin Deus explicatus;* The World universall is nothing else but God exprest. And the invisible things of God (saith S. Paul) are seen by creation of the World, being considered in his creatures: Of all which, there was no other cause preceding, than his own Will, no other matter than his own Power, no other Workman than his own Word, no other consideration than his own infinite goodness. The example and pattern of these his Creatures, as he beheld the same in all eternity in the abundance of his own love, so was it at length in the most wise order, by his unchanged Will moved, by his high Wisdom disposed, and by his Almighty Power perfected, and made visible. And therefore (saith *Mirandula*) we ought to love God, *& ex effectibus,* (that is) both persuaded by his Word, and by the effects of the Worlds Creation: *Neg; enim qui causa caret, ex causa & origine sciri, cognoscique potest, sed vel ex rerum, quae factae sunt, quaeque sunt & gubernantur observatione & collatione, vel ex ipsius Dei verbo:* For he of whom there is no higher cause, cannot be known by any knowledge of cause or beginning (saith *Montanus*) but either by the observing and conferring of things, which he hath, or doth create and govern, or else by the word of God himself.

## §. II.

That the wisest of the Heathen, whose authority is not to be despised, have acknowledged the World to have been created by God.

This work and creation of the World, did most of the ancient and learned Philosophers acknowledge, though by divers terms, and in a different manner exprest, I mean all those who are intitled by S. Augustine, *Summi Philosophi*, Philosophers of the highest judgement and understanding. *Mercurius Trismegistus* calleth God, *Principium universi formae;* The original of the universall: to whom hee giveth also the attributes of *Mens, Natura, Atoms, Necessitas, Finitis, & Renovatio.* And wherein hee triveth with S. Paul, casteth upon God all power; confessing also, that the World was made by Gods Almighty Word, and not by bands: *Verbo, non manibus fabricatus est mundus.* Zoroaster (whom Harocrates followed in opinion) took the word Fire, to exprest God by (as in Deuteronomy, and in S. Paul it is used) *Omnia ex uno igne genita sunt;* all things (saith he) are caused or produced out of one fire.

So did Orpheus plainly teach, that the World had beginning in time, from the Will of the most High Gods; whose remarkable words are thus converted: *Cum ab condidisset omnia Jupiter Iunius, deinde in lumen gratum emisit, ex sacro corde operans cogitata & mirabilia:* Of which I conceive this sense, *When great Jupiter had bidden all things in himself, working out of the love of his sacred heart, besent thence, or brought forth into grateful light, the admirable works which he had fore-thought.*

Pindarus the Poet, and one of the wisest, acknowledged also one God, the most High, to be the Father and Creator of all things; *Omni Deus, Pater, Creator Iunius.* PLATO calleth God the cause and original, the nature and reason of the universall; *Totius rerum natura, causa, & origo Deus.* But hereof more at large hereafter.

Now, although the curiosity of some men have found it superfluous, to remember the opinions of Philosophers in matters of Divinity: (it being true, that the Scripture hath

hath not want of any forrain testimony) yet as the Fathers, with others excellently learned are my examples herein; so S. Paul himself did not despoise, but thought it lawful and profitable, to remember whatsoever he found agreeable to the word of God among the Heathen, that he might thereby take from them all escape, by way of ignorance, God rendering vengeance to them that know him not: as in the Epistle to Titus he cryeth *Epimenides* against the *Cretians*, and to the *Corinthians*, *Menander*; and in the seventeenth of the *Acts*, *Aratus &c.* For Truth (saith S. Ambrose) by whomsoever uttered is of the holy Ghost; *Veritas a quocunque dicatur, & Spiritu sancto est:* and lastly, let those kind of men learne this rule; *Quae sacris serviunt, prophana non sunt;* Nothing is prophane that serveth to the use of holy things.

## §. III.

Of the meaning of In Principio, Genes. 1. 1.

This visible world of which *Moses* writeth, God created in the beginning, or, first of all: in which (saith *Tertullian*) things began to be. This word *Beginning* (in which the Hebrews seeke some hidden myserie, and which in the *Jeser Targum* is converted by the word *Sapientia*) cannot be referred to succession of time, nor to order, as some men have conceived, both which are subsequent: but only to Creation then. For before that Beginning, there was neither primarie matter to be informed, nor forme to inform, nor any being, but the Eternal. Nature was not, nor the next Parent of Time begotten, Time properly and naturally taken: for if God had but disposed of Matter already in being, then as the word *Beginning* could not be referred to all things, so must it follow, that the institution of Matter proceeded from a greater power, than that of God. And by what name shall wee then call such an One (saith *Lactantius*) as exceedeth God in potency; for it is an act of more excellencie to make, than to dispose of things made? whereupon it may be concluded, that Matter could not be before this Beginning: except wee find a double creation, or allow of two powers, and both infinite, the impossibility whereof scorneth defence. *Nam impossibile plura esse infinita: quoniam Cusan de Mente alternat esse in altro finitum;* There cannot be more infinites than one: for one of them would limit the other.

## §. IV.

Of the meaning of the words Heaven and Earth, Genes. 2. 1.

The Universall matter of the world (which *Moses* comprehendeth under the names of Heaven and Earth) is by divers diversly understood: for there are that conceive, that by those words was meant the first matter, as the Peripatetickes understand it; to which S. Augustine and *Isidore* seeme to adhere. *Fecisti mundum* (saith S. Augustine) *de materia informi, quam fecisti de nulla re, penè nullam rem:* that is, *Thou hast made the world of a matter without forme; which matter thou madest of nothing, and being made, it was little other than nothing.*

But this potentiall and imaginarie *materia prima*, cannot exist without forme. *Peter Lombard*, the Schoolemen, *Beda*, *Lyrannus*, *Comestor*, *Tostatus*, and others affirme that it pleased God first of all to create the Emphyrean Heaven: which at the succeeding instant (saith *Beda* and *Strabo*) he filled with Angels. This Emphyrean Heaven *Stenchius* *Engubynus* *Beda* *Hex. Strabo* *super Gen.* calleth *Divine* clarity, and *uncreated*: an error, for which he is sharply charged by *Parerius*, though (as I conceive) he rather failed in the subsequent, when he made it to be a place, and the seat of Angels and just soules, than in the former affirmation: for of the first, That God liveth in eternal Light, it is written; *My soule, praise thou the Lord* *Psal. 104. 12. 71* *Claritas divina* that covereth himselfe with light: and in the Revelation; *and the City hath no need of the Sun, neither of the Moon to shine in it: for the glory of God did light it.* And herein also *John Mercer* upon Genesis, differeth not in opinion from *Engubynus*: for as by Heaven *ita dei, non creatas, sed natus,* created, so in his judgement, because it was in all eternitie the glorious seat of God himselfe, it was not necessary to be created; *Quem mundum super caelestem meo iudicio creari* (saith *Mercer*) *non e-* *cap. 7. 4. 7.*

But as *Moses*, forbore to speake of Angels, and of things invisible and incorporate, for

the weakness of their capacities, whom he then cared to informe of those things which were more manifest, (to wit) that God did not only by a strong hand deliver them from the bondage of Egypt, according to his promise made to their forefathers; but also that he created, and was the sole cause of this aspeable, and perceivable Universal: so on the other side I dare not thinke, that any supercelestial Heaven, or whatsoever else (not himselfe) was increate and eternal: and as for the place of God before the world created, the finite wisdom of mortal men hath no perception of it, neither can it limit the feat of infinite power, no more than infinite power it self can be limited: for his place is in himselfe, whom no magnitude else can containe: *How great is the house of God (saith Baruch) how large is the place of his possessions, it is great, and hath no end, it is high and unmeasurable.*

Bar. 3. 24. 25.

Calvin, in Comment. pend. fol. 224. Operis.

Calvin in Gen.

But leaving multiplicity of opinion, it is more probable and allowed, that by the words Heaven and Earth, was meant the solid matter and substance, as well of all the Heavens, and Orbs supernal, as of the Globe of the Earth and Waters, which covered it over, (to wit) that very matter of all things, *materia, Chaos, possibilitas, five posse fieri.* Which matter (saith Calvin) was so called, *quod totius mundi semen fuerit; Because it was the seed of the Universal: an opinion of ancient Philosophers long before.*

## §. V.

That the substance of the waters, as mixt in the body of the earth, is by Moses understood in the word Earth: and that the Earth, by the attributes of unformed and void, is described as the Chaos of the ancient Heavens.

Moses first nameth Heaven and Earth (putting waters but in the third place) as comprehending waters in the word Earth; but afterwards he nameth them apart, when God by his Spirit began to distinguish the confused Masse, and (as Basil saith) *preparare naturam aque ad secunditatem vitalem; to prepare the nature of water to a vital fruitfulnesse.*

For under the word Heaven, was the matter of all heavenly bodies, & natures express: and by the name of Earth and Waters, all was meant, whatsoever is under the Moon and Subject to alteration. Corrupt feeds bring forth corrupt plants; to which the pure heavens are not subject, though subject to perishing. *They shall perish (saith David) and the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, saith Ely. Neither were the waters the matter of Earth: for it is written, Let the waters under the heavens be gathered into one place, and let the dry land appear: which proveth, that the dry land was mixt and covered with the waters and not yet distinguished; but no way, that the waters were the matter or seed of the Earth, much lesse of the Universal. Initio in Domine terram fundisti, Thou, O Lord, in the beginning hast founded the Earth: and againe, The Earth was covered with the Deep) meaning with waters) as with a garment; saith David. And if by natural arguments it may be proved, that water by condensation may become earth, the same reason teacheth us also, that earth rarified may become water: water, aire, fire; and so on the contrary. Denique substantiam per aërem in aquam convertit, God turneth the substance of fire by aire into water. For the Heavens and the Earth remained in the same state, in which they were created, as touching their substance, though there was afterwards added multiplicitie of perfection, in respect of beauty and ornament. Cælum verò & terra in suis creationis remanserunt quantum ad substantiam, licet multiplex perfectio decoris & ornamentis postmodum superaddita esset. And the word which the Hebrews call *Maim*, is not to be understood according to the Latine translation simply, and as specificall water; but the same more properly signifieth liquor. For (according to Montanus) *Est autem Maim liquor geminus, & hoc nomen propter verborum penuriam, Latina lingua plurali numero aquos fecit. For Maim (saith he) is a double liquor (that is of divers natures) and this name or word the Latines, wanting a voyce to expresse it, call it in the Plural, Aquas, Waters.**

Fol. 103. 26.

Ely 51.

Gen. 1. v. 9.

Fol. 104. 6.

Zeno.

Gal. Paris. 600.

A Mont. de nat.

Gen. 1. 2.

2.

This Masse, or indigested matter, or Chaos created in the beginning, was without forme, that is, without the proper forme, which it afterwards acquired, when the Spirit of God had separated the Earth, and digested it from the waters. And the Earth was void: that is, not producing any creatures, or adorned with any planets, fruits, or flowers. But after the Spirit of God had moved upon the waters, and wrought this indigested matter into that form, which it now retaineth, then did the earth bud forth the herbs, which seedeth seed, and the fruitful tree according to his kinde, and God saw that it was good; which attribute

attribute was not given to the Earth, while it was confused; nor to the Heavens, before they had motion, and adornment. *God saw that it was good; that is, made perfect: for perfection is that to which nothing is wanting. Et perfecti Dei perfecti sunt operas, The works of the perfect God, are perfect.*

From this lump of imperfect Matter had the ancient Poets their invention of Demogorgon: Hesiodus and Anaxagoras the knowledge of that Chaos: of which Ovid;

*Ante Mare, & Terras, & (quod tegit omnia) Cælum,  
Unus erat toto nature vultus in Orbe,  
Quem dicere Chaos, rudis indigestaque moles.*

Ovid in Meta. lib. 1.

Before the Sea and Land was made, and Heaven, that all doth hide,  
In all the World one onely face of Nature did abide:  
Which Chaos hight, a huge rude heap.

10

## §. VI.

How it is to be understood, that the Spirit of God moved upon the waters, and that this is not to be searched curiously.

After the Creation of Heaven and Earth, then void and without form, the Spirit of God moved upon the Waters. The Seventy Interpreters use the word *superferebatur*, moved upon or over: *incubabat*, or *fovebat* (saith Hierome) *of Basil* and *Basil* out of a Syrian Doctor; *Equidem non meam tibi, sed viri cuiusdam Syri sententiam recensebo* (saith Basil Hexam. Basil:) which words *incubare* or *fovere*, importing warmth, hatching, or quickning, have a special likeness. *Verbum translatum est ab avibus pultrici sue incubantibus, quantum spirituali, & plantis inerrabili, non autem corporali modo; The word is taken of birds hatching their young, not corporally, but in a spiritual and unexpressible manner.*

Some of the Hebrews convert it to this effect, *Spiritus Dei volabat; The Spirit of God did flutter: the Chaldaean Paraphrast in this sense. Ventus a conspectu Dei suscitatus: or as other understand the Chaldaean, Flabat, pellebat, removebat: The wind from the face of God did blow under, drive, or remove, or did blow upon; according to the 147 Psalm, Psal. 147. 18. He caused his winds to blow, and the waters increase: but there was yet no winde nor exhalation. Arias Montanus in these words, Et Spiritus Elobim Merachbet, id est, efficaciter motans, consovens, ac agitans super facies genim liquoris; The Spirit of God effectually and often moving, keeping warm, and cherishing, quickning and stirring upon the face of this double liquor. For he maketh four originals, whercof three are agents, and the last passive and material, to wit, *Causa*, which is the divine goodness: *sehi*, which is, *fiat, five erit*, Let it be, or it shall be. *Que vox verbo Dei prima prolata fuit: Which voice (saith he) was the first that was uttered by the Word of God. The third, Spiritus Elobim, the Spirit of God, id est, vis quedam divina, agilis ac presens, per omnia pertingens; omnia complens; that is, A certain divine power, or strength everywhere, active and extending, and stretching through all, filling and finishing all things. The fourth he calleth *Maim*, id est, materies ad omnem rem conficiendam habilis; Matter apt to become every thing. For my self, I am resolved (Cùm Deus sit superrationalis omni ratione; Seeing God is in all reason above reason) that although the effects which follow his wonderful waies of working, may in a measure be perceived by mans understanding, yet the manner and first operation of his divine power, cannot be conceived by any minde, or spirit, compassed with a mortal body. *Animalis homo que Dei sunt, non percipit: For my thoughts (saith the Lord in Ely) are not your thoughts, neither are your waies my waies. And as the world hath not known God himself: so are his waies (according to S. Paul) past finding out. O righteous Father, the world hath not known thee, saith Christ. And therefore, whether that motion, vitality and operation, were by incubation or how else, the manner is only known to God. Quomodo in omnibus sit rebus vel per essentiam, vel per potentiam, intellectus noster non capit; Aug. Tract. 100. For, how God (saith S. Augustine, speaking of his Ubiquity) is in all things, either by essence, presence, or power, our understanding cannot comprehend. Nihil inter Deum hominemque distaret, si consilia, & dispositiones illius Majestatis eterne, cogitatio assequeretur humana: There would be no difference between God and man, if mans understanding could conceive the counsels and disposing of that eternal Majesty; and therefore to be over-curious in searching how the all-powerful Word of God wrought in the Creation of the World, or his all-piercing and operative spirit distinguishing, gave form to the Matter***

30

40

50

of the Universal, is a labour and search like unto his, who not contented with a known and safe Foord, will presume to pass over the greatest River in all parts, where he is ignorant of their depths: for so doth the one lose his life, and the other his understanding. We behold the Sun, and enjoy his light, as long as we look towards it, but tenderly, and circumpectly: we warm our selves safely, while we stand near the fire; but if we seek to out-face the one, to enter into the other, we forthwith become blind or burnt.

But to eschew curiosity: this is true, that the English word (*moved*) is most proper and significant: for motion proceedeth all production, and all whatsoever is effected. And this omnipotent Spirit of God, which may indeed be truly called, *Principium motus*, and with *Admiranda Vir cause efficiens*, The force of the efficient cause; *S. Augustine* sometimes taketh for the holy Ghost; sometimes for a wind or breath, *Sub nomine Spiritus*, under the name of a Spirit, which is sometimes so taken: or for *virtualis creatura*, For a created virtuality: *Tertullian* and *Theodore* call it also a breath or wind: *Mercurius* nameth it, *Spiritum tenuem intelligibilem*, A pure or thin intelligible Spirit: *Anaxagoras*, *Mentem*: *Tostatus*, *Voluntatem & mentem Dei*; The will and minde of God; which *mens*, *Plato* in *Timæo*, maketh *Animam mundi*, The soule of the world: and in his sixth Book de *Republica*, he calleth it the Law of Heaven; in his Epistles, The Leader of things to come, and the presence of things past. But as *Cyprian* wrote of the incarnation of Christ our Saviour, *Mens deficit, vox silet, & non mea tantum, sed etiam Angelorum*; My minde faileth, my voice is silent, and not mine only, but even the voice of Angels: so may all men else say in the understanding and utterance of the waies and works of the Creation; for to him (saith *Nazianzenus*) there is not one substance by which he is, and another, by which he can, *Sed consubstantiale illi est, quicquid ejus est, & quicquid est; Whatsoever attribute of him there is, and whatsoever he is, it is the very same substance that himself is*.

But the Spirit of God which moved upon the waters, cannot be taken for a breath or wind, nor for any other creature, separate from the infinite active power of God, which then formed and distinguished, and which now sustaineth, and giveth continuance to the Universal. For the Spirit of the Lord filleth all the worlds, and the same is it which maintaineth all things, saith *Solomon*. If thou send forth thy Spirit (saith *David*) they are created: And *Gregory*, *Deus suo presentiale esse, dat omnibus rebus esse, ita quod si se rebus subtraheret, sicut de nihilo facta sunt omnia, sic in nihilum desisterent universa*; God giveth being to all things, by being present with all things, so as if he should withdraw himself from them, then as of nothing the world was made, it would again fall away and vanish into nothing. And this working of Gods Spirit in all things, *Virgil* hath exprest excellently:

*Virg. Æneid.*  
*lib. 8. v. 24.*

*Principio Cælum ac Terras, campisque liquentes,  
Lucentemq; globum Lunæ, Titaniæq; astræ,  
Spiritus intus alit: totamq; insula per artus,  
Mens agit at molem, & magno se corpore miscet.*

The Heaven, and Earth, and all the liquid Mayn,  
The Moons bright Globe, and Stars Titanian,  
A Spirit within maintains: and their whole mass,  
A mind, which through each part infused doth pass,  
Fashions, and works, and wholly doth transpire  
All this great Body of the Universe.

And this was the same Spirit, which moved in the Universal, and thereby both distinguished and adorned it. The Spirit hath garnished the Heavens, saith *Job*. So then the Spirit of God moved upon the waters, and created in them their spirituality, and natural motion; motion brought forth heat; and heat rarification, and subtilty of parts. By this Spirit (which gave heat and motion, and thereby, operation to every nature, while it moved upon the waters, which were in one indigested lump, and Chaos, disposed to all forms alike) was begotten Aire: an element superiour, as lighter than the waters, through whose vast, open, subtille, Diaphanick, or transparent body, the light afterwards created, might easily transpire: Light for the excellency thereof being the first creature which God called good, whose creation immediately followed. This Spirit *Chrysostome* calleth a vital Operation. *Apud d. Deo instam, ex qua aque non solum motiorem, sed & vim procreandi animalia habuerint*. He calleth it, A vital Operation given by God unto the waters, whereby the waters had not only motion, but also power to procreate or bring forth living Creatures.

§. VII.

§. VII.

of the light created, as the material substance of the Sun, and of the nature of it, and diffu-  
sion of knowledge of it: and of the excellency and use of it: and of motion, and heat an-  
nexed unto it.

These waters were afterwards congregated, and called the Sea: and this Light afterwards (in the fourth day) gathered and united, and called the Sun, the Organ and Instrument of created light. For this first and dispersed light did not (as I conceive) distinguish the night from the day, but with a reference to the Suns creation, and the uniting of the dispersed light therein. This is proved by these words, *Let there be lights in the Firmament, to separate the day from the night*: which lights in the Firmament of Heaven, were also made for signes, and for seasons, and for daies, and for years, implying a motion instantly to follow, by which, daies and years are distinguished; after which succeeded time, or together with which, that Time (which was the measure of motion) began. For that space of the first three daies which preceded the Suns creation, or formal perfection, when as yet there was not any motion to be measured, and the day named in the fifth Verse; was but such a space, as afterwards by the Suns motion made a civil or natural day. And as Waters were the matter of Aire, of the firmament, and of the lower and upper waters, and of the Seas, and Creatures therein: Earth, the matter of Beasts, Plants, Minerals, and Mans body: so may Light (for expression sake) be called the Chaos, or material substance of the Sun, and other lights of heaven: Howbeit, neither the Sun, nor any thing sensible, is that light it self, *Quæ causa est lucidorum, quibus est the cause that things are lightsome* (though it make it self and all things else visible): but a body most illightned, which illuminateth the Moon, by whom the neighbouring Region (which the Greeke call *Aether*, the place of the supposed Element of fire) is affected and qualified, and by it all bodies living in this our aire. For this light *Arcencena* calleth *ovchiculum & fomentum omnium celestium virtutum, & impressionum*: The conductor, or preserver, or nourisher of all celestial virtues and impressions, nothing descending of heavenly influences, but by the medium, or means of light. *Aristotle* calleth light a quality, inherent, or cleaving to a Diaphanous body, *Lumen est qualitas inherens Diaphano*: but this may be better avouched of the heat; which it transporteth and bringeth with it, or conducteth: which heat (say the Platonicks) *Ab æthere lumine residet in subæthere*, The light being departed, doth reside in the subæther: as warmth in the air, though the same be deprived of light. This light *Plotinus* and all the Academicks make incorporal, and so doth *Montanus*, *Cui nec duritia resistit, nec spissitudo*; Which neither hardness resisteth, nor space leaveth.

*Aristotle* findeth corporality in the beams of light: but it is but by way of repetition of other mens opinions, saith *Picolomineus*, *Democritus*, *Leucippus*, and *Epicurus*, give materiality to light it self, but improperly: for it passeth at an instant from the Heavens to the Earth, nor is it resisted by any hardness, because it pierceth through the solid body of glass, or other Crystalline matter; and whereas it is withstood by unclean and unpure earthy substances, less hard, and more ease to invade then the former, the same is, *Quod obsaculum naturæ terræum atq; sordidum, non capit candidum humis puritate*: Because an obstacle by nature earthy and foule, doth not receive the pure clearness of light: alluding to that most divine Light, which only shineth on those minds, which are purged from all worldly dross, and humane uncleannets.

But of this created light, there is no agreement in opinion; neither do I marvel at it, for it cannot be found either in the Fathers, Philosophers, or School-men, or other ancient or later Writers, that any of them understood either it or themselves therein: all men (to cast off ignorance) have disputed thereof, but there is no man that hath been taught thereby. *Thomas Aquinas* (not inferior to any in wit) as he hath shewed little strength of argument in refuting the opinions of *Seda*, *Hugo*, *Lombard*, *Eranus*, and others: so is his own judgement herein, as weak as any mans; and most of the School-men were rather curious in the nature of terms, and more subtille in distinguishing upon the parts of doctrine already laid down, than discoverers of any thing hidden, either in Philosophy or Divinity: of whom it may be truly said, *Nihil sapientie odiosius acutius nimis*; Nothing is more odious to true wisdom, than too acute sharpness. Neither hath the length of time, and the search of many learned men, (which the same time hath brought

*Lux dicitur, quæ se, & omnia visibilia facit. Cujus in Comment. cap. 7. & exercit. lib. 5.*

*Æthin. lib. 1. c. 11.*

*Pici de fœi.*

*Plotin.*

brought forth and devoured) resolved us, whether this light be substantial, corporal, or incorporeal: Corporal they say it cannot be, because then it could neither pierce the aire, nor those hard, solid, and Diaphanous bodies; which it doth, and yet every day we see the aire illighted: incorporeal it cannot be, because it sometime affecteth the sight of the eye with offence, and therefore by most of the Fathers so esteemed. Others say (as *Patricius*) that it cannot be matter, because no form so excellent as it self to inform it: neither can it be any accident, which is not separable without the destruction of the subject: for light being taken from the Sun, the Sun is no more the Sun in existence. Secondly, if light were proceeding from matter and forme, then either, or both must be one of these, lucide or bright, darke or opaque, Diaphanous or transparent; but darknesse cannot be parent of light; and things Diaphanous (being neither light, nor darknesse, but capable of either) cannot be the cause of either, and therefore must the matter, or form, or both, be lucide and shining. Lucide and shining obtaine their so being of the light; and therefore, if we derive this being of light from a former, then would the progresse goe on infinitely and against nature; and therefore he concludeth that light in the Sun hath his being primarily, and immediately of it selfe, and is therefore the Suns form, and the form of all lucide and shining bodies: but what is taught hereby, let others judge.

But in my understanding, *Lumen* (which may be Englished by the word *Shine*) is an intentional Species of that, which may be Englished by Light, and so, this shining which proceedeth from the Sun, or other lights of Heaven, or from any other light, is an Image, or intentional Species thereof; and an intentional Species may be understood by example of a red, or green colour, occasioned by the shining of the Sun through red or green glasse: for then we perceive the same colour cast upon any thing opposite; which redness or other colour, we call the *intentional Species* of the colour in that glasse. And again, as this light, touching his simple nature, is no way yet understood: so it is disputed, whether this light first created, be the same which the Sun inholdeth and casteth forth, or whether it had continuance any longer than til the Suns creation.

But by the most wise and unchanged order, which God observed in the works of the World, I gather, that the Light, in the first day created, was the substance of the Sun: for *Moses* repeateth twice the maine parts of the Universal: first, as they were created in matter; secondly, as they were adorned with forme: first, naming the Heavens, the Earth, the Waters, all confused; and afterward, the Waters congregated, the Earth made drie Land, and the Heavens distinguished from both, and beautified. And therefore the Earth, as it was earth, before it was uncovered, and before it was called *Arida*, or drie Land; and the Waters were waters, before they were congregated and called the Sea, though neither of them perfect, or enriched with their vrtual formes: So the Sun although it had not his formal perfection, his circle, beauty and bounded magnitude, till the fourth day, yet was the substance thereof in the first day (under the name of Light) created; and this Light formerly dispersed, was in the same fourth day united, and set in the Firmament of Heaven: for, to Light created in the first day God gave no proper place or fixation; and therefore the effects named by *Anticipation*, (which was to separate day from night) were precisely performed, after this Light was congregated and had obtained life and motion. Neither did the wisdom of God finde cause why it should move (by which motion, days and nights are distinguished) till then: because there was not yet any Creature produced, to which, by moving, the Sun might give light, heate and operation.

But after the Earth (distinguished from Waters) began to bud forth the bud of the herbe, &c. God caused the Sun to move, and (by enterchange of time) to visite every part of the inferior world; by his heate to stir up the fire of generation, and to give activity to the seeds of all natures: For, as a King, which commandeth some goodly building to be erected, doth accommodate the same to that use and end, to which it was ordained; so it pleased God (saith *Procopius*) to command the Light to be; which by his all-powerful Word he approved, and approving it, disposed thereof, to the use and comfort of his future Creatures.

But in that it pleased God to aske of *Job*, *By what way is the light parted, and where is the way where light dwelleth?* we thereby know, that the nature thereof falleth not under man's understanding; and therefore let it suffice, that by God's grace we enjoy the effects

fects thereof. For this light is of the treasure of God (saith *Esdras*) And those which inhabit the Heavens, do only know the Essence thereof. *Nihil ignotum in celo, nihil notum in terra*: Nothing unknowne in Heaven, nothing perfectly knowne on earth. *Res vere sunt in mundo invisibiles; in mundo visibiles umbræ rerum*: Things themselves are in the invisible world; in the world visible, but their shadows. Surely, if this Light be not spirituall, yet it approacheth nearest unto spirituality; and it it have any corporality, then of all other the most subtle and purest; howsoever, it is of all things seen, the most beautifull, and of the swiftest motion, of all other the most necessary and beneficiall. For it minisheth to men and other creatures all celestial influences; it dissipateth those sad thoughts and sorrowes, which the darknesse both begetteth and maintaineth; it discovereth unto us the glorious works of God, and carrieth up with an Angelical swiftness, our eyes unto Heaven, that by the sight thereof, our minds being informed of his visible marvels, may continually travail to surmount these perceived Heavens, and to finde out their omnipotent Cause and Creator. *Cognitio non quiescit in rebus creatis*: Our knowledge doth not Eish. quiet it selfe in things created. *Et ipsa lux facit, ut cetera mundi membra digna sim laudibus, cum suam bonitatem & decorem omnibus communicet*: It is the Light (saith Saint Ambrose) that maketh the other parts of the world so worthy of praise, seeing that it selfe communicateth its goodness and beauty unto all. Of which *Ovid* out of *Orpheus*:

*Ille ego sum, qui longum metior annum,  
Omnia qui video, per quem videt omnia mundus,  
Mundi oculus.*

*Ovid. Met. lib. 1.*

The World discerns it self, while I the World behold,  
By me the longest years, and other times are told,  
I the worlds eye.

Lastly, if we may behold in any creature, any one sparke of that eternall fire, or any far-off dawning of Gods glorious brightness, the same in the beauty, motion, and virtue of this Light, may be perceived. Therefore was God called *Lux ipsa*, and the Light, by *Hermes* named *Lux sancta*, and *Christ* our Saviour said to be that Light which lighteth every man that cometh into the world. Yet in respect of Gods incomprehensible sublimity, and puritie, that God is neither a minde, nor a Spirit of the nature of other spirits; nor a light, such as can be discerned. *Deus profecto non mens est, at verum sit mens causa est; nec spiritus, sed causa quâ spiritus extat; nec lumen, sed causa quâ lumen existit*: God (saith *Hermes* in *Pœmandro*) certainly is not a minde, but the cause that the minde hath his being; nor spirit, but the cause by which every spirit is; nor light, but the cause by which the light existeth.

So then the *Mas* and *Chao* being first created, void, dark, and unformed, was by the operative Spirit of God, pierced and quickned; and the Waters, having now received Spirit and motion, resolved their thinner parts into Aire, which God illighted: the Earth also by being contiguous, and mixt with waters (participating the same divine virtue) brought forth the bud of the hearb that feedeth seed &c. and for a mean and organ, by which this operative virtue might be continued, God appointed the Light to be united, and gave it also motion and heat, which heat caused a continuance of those severall species, which the Earth (being made fruitfull by the Spirit) produced, and with motion began the time and times succeeding.

### §. VIII.

Of the Firmament, and of the waters above the Firmament: and whether there be any Crystalline Heavens, or any Primum mobile.

After that the Spirit of God had moved upon the waters, and light was created, God said, *Let there be a Firmament in the middlest of the waters, and let it separate the waters from the waters*: that is, those waters which by rarification and evaporation were ascended, and those of the Earth and Sea.

But these waters separate above this extension, which the Latine Translation calleth *firmamentum*, or *expansum* (for so *Vatablus*, *Pagrinus*, and *Jamus* turne it) are not the Crystalline Heavens created in the imaginations of men; which opinion *Basilus Magnus* calleth a childish supposition, making in the same place many learned arguments against

*Lucida corpora sunt plena sua luce, alienis tenebris impervia. Opaca sunt plena suis tenebris aliena lumine. Transparens seu Diaphanus caret suis et lumine et tenebris: et lucida et opaca et tenebris permixta sunt. Scal. lib. ex. 71.*

*Quædam dicitur esse aliquid, quod præcipue in Gen. 1.*

*Job 38. 24.*

*Job 1. 9. & 14. 46.*

*Gen. 1. 10.*

effects

against this infancie. For the waters above the firmament, are the waters in the ayre above us, where the same is more solid and condense, which God separated from the neather waters by a firmament, that is, by an extended distance and vast space: the words *Tagna*, which *Montanus* writeth *Ruckag*, and *Shamajim*, being indifferently taken for the heaven and for ayre, and more properly for the ayre and *Ather*, than for the heavens, as the best Hebricians understand them, *Quo supra ac temia ab inferis cras: didicit a interfecta; distans*, for that whereby the supreme and thin bodies were placed in distance, being severed and cut off from low and grosse matters: and the waters above the firmament, exprest in the word *Majim*, are in that tongue taken properly for the waters above the ayre, or in the uppermost region of the same.

And that the word Heaven is used for the Ayre, the Scriptures every where witness: as in the blessings of *Joseph*, and in the 104 Psalm: \* *By these Springs shal the fowle of the Heaven dwell; and upon Sodom and Gomorrah it rained brimstone and fire out of the Heaven; and in Isaacs blessing to Jacob; God give thee therefore of the dew of Heaven: and in Dentonomy the 11. But the land whither you go to possess it, is a land that drinketh water of the raine of Heaven; and in Job, It hath ingendred the frosts of Heaven; and in S. Matthew, Behold the Fowles of Heaven, for they sow nor.* So as in all the Scriptures of the Old Testament throughout, is the word Heaven very often used for Ayre, and taken also hyperbolically for any great height, as, *Let us build us a Tower, whose top may reach to Heaven &c.* And in this very place *Basl* avoucheth, that this appellation of Heaven for the Firmament, is but by way of similitude: his owne words be these; *Et vocavit Deus firmamentum celum. Hec appellatio alii quidem proprie accommodatur, huic autem nunc ad similitudinem; And God called the firmament Heaven: This appellation (saith Basl) is properly applied to another (that is to the Starrie Heaven) but to this (that is, to the Firmament dividing the waters) it is imposed by similitude.* And if there were no other proofe, that by the firmament was meant the Ayre, and not the Heaven, the words of *Moses* in the eighth verse, conferred with the same word *Firmament* in the twentieth verse, make it manifest: for in the eighth verse it is written, that God called the Firmament, which divided waters from waters, Heaven; and in the twentieth verse he calleth the Firmament of Heaven, Ayre in these words: *And let the Fowle flye upon the earth in the open firmament of Heaven.* And what use there should be of this ycie or crystalline, or waterie Heaven, I conceive not, except it be to moderate and temper the heate, which the *primum mobile* would otherwise gather and increale: though in very truth, instead of this help, it would add an unmeasurable greatnes of circle, whereby the swiftnesse of that first Moveable would exceed all possibilitie of belief. *Sed nemo tenetur ad impossibilia; but no man ought to be held to impossibilities:* and faith it self (which surmounteth the height of all humane reason) hath for a forcible conducer, the Word of Truth, which also may be called *lumen omnis rationis & intellectus; the light of all reason and understanding.* Now that this supposed first Moveable, turneth it selfe to many hundred thousand miles in an instant (seeing the Scriptures teach it not) let those that can beleve mens imagination, apprehend it, for I cannot. But of these many Heavens, let the Reader that desireth satisfaction, search *Orontius*, and of this waterie Heaven, *Basilius Magnus*, in his *Hexam. fol. 40. 41 &c.* and *Matth. Beroaldus*, his second Book and sixt chapter: For my selfe, I am perfwaded, that the waters called, The waters above the Heavens, are but the clouds and waters engendred in the uppermost ayre.

## §. IX.

A conclusion, repeating the summe of the workes in the Creation, which are reduced to three heads: The creation of matter, The forming of it, The finishing of it.

TO conclude, it may be gathered out of the first Chapter of *Genesis*, that this was the order of the most wise God in the beginning, and when there was no other nature, or being, but Gods incomprehensible eternitie. First, hee created the matter of all things; and in the first three dayes he distinguished and gave to every nature his proper forme; of the forme of levitie to that which ascended; to that which descended, the forme of gravitie: for he separated light from darkenesse, divided waters from waters, and gathered the waters under the firmament into one place. In the last three

three dayes, God adorned, beautified, and replenished the World: he set in the Firmament of Heaven, the Sun, Moone, and Stars; filled the Earth with Beasts, the Aire with Fowle, and the Sea with Fish, giving to all that have life a power generative, thereby to continue their Species and kindes; to Creatures vegetative and growing, their seeds in themselves; for he created all things, that they might have their being: and the generat-  
ons of the world are preserved.

## §. X.

That Nature is no Principium per se; nor Forme the giver of being: and of our ignorance how second causes should have any proportion with their effects.

AND for this working power, which we call Nature, the beginning of motion and rest, according to *Aristotle*, the same is nothing else, but the strength and faculty, which God hath infused into every creature, having no other selfe-ability, than a Clocke, after it is wounde up by a mans hand, hath. These therefore that attribute unto this faculty, any first or sole power, have therein no other understanding, than such a one hath, who looking into the Stern of a Ship, and finding it guided by the Helme and Rudder, doth ascribe some absolute vertue to the peece of wood, without all consideration of the hand that guides it, or of the judgement, which also directeth and commandeth that hand: forgetting in this and in all else, that by the vertue of the first act, all Agents worke whatsoever they worke: *Virtute primi actus agunt agentia omnia quicquid agunt*: for as the minde of man seeth by the Organ of the eye, heareth by the eares, and maketh choyce by the will: and therefore we attribute sight to the eye, and hearing to the eares, &c. and yet it is the minde only, that giveth ability, life, and motion to all these his instruments and Organs: so God worketh by Angels, by the Sun, by the Starres, by Nature, or infused properties, and by men as by severall Organs, severall effects; all second causes whatsoever, being but instruments, conduites, and pipes, which carry and disperse what they have received from the head and fountaine of the Univerfall. For as it is Gods infinite power, and everie where-  
presence (compassing, embracing; and piercing all things) that giveth to the Sun power to draw up vapours, to vapours to be made clouds, cloudes to containe rain, and raine to fall: so all second and instrumentall causes, together with Nature it selfe, without that operative faculty which God gave them, would become altogether silent, vertueless, and dead: of which excellently *ORPHEUS; Per te virescunt omnia, All things by thee spring forth in youthfull Greene.* I enforce not these things, thereby to annihilate those variable vertues which God hath given to his creatures, animate and inanimate, to heavenly and earthly bodies, &c. for all his workes in their vertues prayse him: but of the manner how God worketh in them, or they in, or with each other, which the Heathen Philosophers, and those that follow them have taken on them to teach: I say, there is not any one among them, nor any one among us, that could ever yet conceive it, or expresse it, ever enrich his owne understanding with any certaine truth, or ever edifie others (not foolish by selfe-flattery) therein. For (saith *Laetantius*, speaking of the wisdom of the Philosophers) *Si facultas inveniente veritatis hic studio subsaceret, aliquando esset inventa; cum vero per temporibus; tot ingenia in ejus inquisitione contritis, non sit comprehensa, apparet nullam ibi esse sapientiam; if in this studie (saith he.) were meanes to find out the truth, it had ere this bin found out: but seeing it is not yet comprehended, after that so much time, and so many taits have beene spent on the inquiry of it, it appeareth, that there is no wisdom there to be had. Nam si de una re precise scientia haberetur, omnium rerum scientia necessario haberetur: If the precise knowledge of any one thing were to be had, it should necessarily follow, that the knowledge of all things were to be had.* And as the Philosophers were ignorant in Nature, and the waies of her working: so were they more curious, than knowing, in their first matter and Physical form. For if their first matter had any being, it were not then the first matter: for as it is the first matter, it hath onely a power of being, which it altogether leaveth, when it doth subsist. And seeing it is neither a substance perfect, nor a substance inchoate, or in the way of perfection, how any other substance should thence take consence, it hath not been taught, neither are these formes (saith a learned Author) any thing, *se ex ea exprimitur potentia, que nihil est.* Again; how this first matter should be sub-

Wisd. Sal. c. 1.  
14.

Natura enim remota providentia & prestat divina, prout nihil est. Last. de fals. sapientia. l. 3. c. 29

Cypr. de mente

1-2

jectum



*jectum formarum*, and passive, which is understood to precede the forme, it is hard to conceive for to make form, which is the cause, to be subsequence to the thing caused (to wit, to the first matter) is contrary to all reason, divine and humane: only it may be said, that originally there is no other difference between matter and forme, than between heate and fire, of which the one cannot subsist without the other, but in a kinde of rational consideration. Leaving therefore these Riddles to their Lovers, who by certaine scholasticall distinctions wrest and pervert the truth of all things, and by which *Aristotle* hath laboured to prove a false eternitie of the World, I thinke it farre safer to affirme with *Saint AUGUSTINE*, That all species and kinder are from God, from whom, whatsoever is naturall proceedeth, of what kinde or estimation soever, from whence are the seedes of all formes, and the formes of all seedes and their motions; *A quo est omnis species, à quo est quicquid naturaliter est, cuiuscunque generis est, cuiuscunque estimationis est, à quo sunt semina formarum, formæ seminum, motus seminum atq; formarum.* And thus much *Auerroës* is forced to confesse. For all forms (saith he) are in primo motore; which is also the opinion of *Aristotle* in the twelfth of his *Metaph.* and of *Albertus* upon *Dionysius*.

12. Metaph.

## §. XI.

Of Fate, and that the Starres have great influence: and that their operations may diversly be prevented or furthered.

And, as of Nature, such is the dispute and contention concerning Fate or Destinie, of which the opinions of those learned men that have written thereof, may be safely received, had they not thereunto annexed and fastened an inevitable necessity, and made it more general, and universally powerfull than it is, by giving it Dominion over the mind of man, and over his will, of which *Ovid* and *Juvenal*:

*Ratio fatum vincere nulla valet.  
Servis regna dabunt, captivis Fata triumphos.  
Gainst Fate no counsell can prevail.  
Kingdomes to Slaves by Destinie,  
To Captives triumphs given be.*

Joven. Sat. 7.  
201.Basil. Ess. 4.  
Aug. de brev.  
70. c. 35.  
Tou. cont. Gent.  
3. cap. 8. 3.  
Petr. in 12. d.  
lib.  
Cic. de fat.

An error of the Chaldaëans, and after them of the Stoicks, the Pharisees, Priscillianists, the Bardisaniists, and others, as *Basil*, *Augustine*, and *Thomas* have observed: but that Fate is an obedience of second causes to the first, was well conceived of *Hermes*, and *Apuleius* the Platonist. *Plotinus* out of the Astronomers calleth it a disposition from the acts of celestia Orbis, unchangeably working in inferior bodies, the same being also true enough, in respect of all those things which a rational minde doth not order nor direct. *Plotinus*, *Seneca*, *Democritus*, *Epicurus*, *Chrysippus*, *Empedocles*, and the Stoicks, some of them more largely, others more strictly, ascribe to Fate a binding and inevitable necessity; and that it is the same which is spoken and determined by God (*quod de unoquoque nostrum fatus est Deus*) and the definite lot of all living. And certainly it cannot be doubted, but the Stars are instruments of far greater use, than to give an obscure light, and for men to gaze on after Sun-set: it being manifest, that the diversity of seasons, the Winters, and Summers, more hot and cold, are not so uncertained by the Sun and Moon alone, who alway keep one and the same course, but that the Stars have also their working therein.

And if we cannot deny, but that God hath given vertues to Springs and Fountains, to cold earth, to plants and stones, Minerals, and to the excrementall parts of the basest living creatures, why should we robbe the beautiful Starres of their working powers? for seeing they are many in number, and of eminent beauty and magnitude, we may not thinke, that in the treasury of his wisdom, who is infinite, there can be wanting (even for every Starre) a peculiar vertue and operation; as every herbe, plant, fruit, and flower adorning the face of the Earth, hath the like. For as these were not created to beautifie the earth alone, and to cover and shadow her dustie face, but otherwise for the use of man and beast, to feed them and cure them; so were not those uncountable glorious bodies set in the Firmament, to no other end, than to adorne it, but for instruments and Organs of his divine providence, so farre as it hath pleased his just will

20

30

40

to determine. *Origen* upon this place of *Genesis*, Let there be light in the Firmament, &c. af. Gen. 1. 15. firmeth, that the Stars are not causes (meaning per chance binding causes; but are as open Books, wherein are contained and set down all things whatsoever to come; but not to be read by the eyes of humane wisdom: which latter part I beleve well, and this saying of *Syracides* withall. That there are hid yet greater things than these be, and we have seen but a few of his workes. And though, for the capacity of men, we know somewhat, yet in the true and uttermost vertues of heards and plants, which our selves sow and set, and which grow under our feet, we are in effect ignorant; much more in the powers and working of celestia bodies. For hardly (saith *Solomon*) can we discern the things that are upon the Earth, and with great labour finde we out those things that are before us: who can then investigate the things that are in Heaven? *Multum est de rebus celestibus aliquid cognoscere*: It is much to know a little of heavenly things. But in this question of Fate, the middle course is to be followed, that as with the Heathen wee doe not binde God to his creatures, in this supposed necessity of destiny; so on the contrary, we do not rob those beautiful creatures of their powers and Offices. For had any of these second causes despoyled God of his prerogative, or had God himselfe constrained the minde and will of man to impious acts by any celestia inforcements, then sure the impious excuse of some, were justifiable; of whom *S. Augustine*: *Impii pervertite in malis* Aug. 20. super factis relictis reprehendendis ingerunt accusandum potius autorem iudicium, quam commisso forem scelorum. Where we reprehend them of evil deeds, they againe with wicked perversesse urge, that rather the Author and Creator of the Stars, than the doer of the evil, is to be accused.

But that the Stars and other celestia bodies incline the will by mediation of the sensitive appetite, which is also stirred by the constitution and complexion, it cannot be doubted. *Corpora celestia* (saith *DAMASCENE*) *constituunt in nobis habitus, complexionis, & dispositiones.* The heavenly bodies (saith he) make in us habitus, complexionis, and dispositiones: for the body (though *Galen* enforce it further) hath undoubtedly a kinde of drawing after it the affections of the minde, especially bodies strong in humour, and weak in vertues: for those of cholericke complexions are subject to anger, and the furious effects thereof; by which they suffer themselves to be transported, where the mind hath not reason to remember, that passions ought to be her Vassals, not her Masters. And that they wholly direct the reasonlesse minde, I am resolved: For all those which were created mortall, as birds, beasts, and the like, are left to their natural appetites; over all which, celestia bodies (as instruments and executioners of Gods providence) have absolute dominion. What we should judge of men, who little differ from beasts, I cannot tell: for as he that contendeth against those inforcements, may easily master or resist them; so whosoever shall neglect the remedies by vertue and piety prepared, putteth himself altogether under the power of his sensuall appetite; *Vincitur si resistas, vincit si contempseris*: Fate will be overcome, if thou resist it; if thou neglect it, it conquereth.

But that either the Stars or the Sun have any power over the mindes of men immediately, it is absurd to thinke, other than as aforesaid, as the same by the bodies temper may be effected. *Lumen solis ad generationem sensibilibus corporum confert, & ad vitam ipsam movet, & nutrit, & auget, & perficit*: The light of the Sun (saith *S. AUGUSTINE*) helpeth the generation of sensible bodies, moveth them to life, and nourisheth, augmenteth and perfecteth them: yet still as a Minister, not as a Master: *Bonus quidem est Sol, in ministerio, non imperio*; The Sun is good to serve, not to sway (saith *S. Ambrose*). And *Saint AUGUSTINE*: *Deus regit inferiora corpora per superiora*; God ruleth the bodies below by those above; but heavoucheth not, that superiour bodies have rule over mens minds, which are incorporall.

But howsoever we are by the Stars inclined at our birth, yet there are many things both in Nature and Art, that encounter the same, and weaken their operations; and *Aristotle* himselfe confesseth, that the Heavens do not alwaies worke their effects in inferior bodies no more than the signes of raine and winde do, alwayes come to passe. And it is divers times seene, that paternall vertue and vice hath his counter-working to these inclinations. *Est in juvenis patrum virtus, in the young off-spring the Fathers vertus*, and so the contrary, *patrum vitia*: and herein also there is often found an interchange; the Sons of vertuous men, by an ill constellation become inclinable to vice, and of vicious men, to vertue.

B

Egregia

Her. lib. 4. Od.  
30.

*Egregia est soboles scelerato nata parente :*

Aworthy son is borne of a wicked father.

But there is nothing (after Gods reserved power) that so much setteth this art of influence out of square and rule, as education doth: for there are none in the World so wickedly inclined, but that a religious instruction and bringing up may fashion anew and reforme them; nor any so well disposed, whom (the reins being let loose) the continuall fellowship and familiarity, and the examples of dissolute men may not corrupt and deforme. Vessels will ever retain a favour of their first liquor: it being equally difficult either to cleanse the minde once corrupted, or to extinguish the sweet favour of vertue first received, when the minde was yet tender, open, and easily seasoned; but where a favourable constellation (allowing that the Stars incline the will) and a virtuous education doe happily arrive, or the contrary in both, thereby it is that men are found so exceeding virtuous or vicious. Heaven and Earth (as it were) running together and agreeing in one: for as the seeds of vertue may by the art and husbandry of Christian counsaile produce better and more beautiful fruit, than the strength of self-nature and Kind could have yielded them; so the plants apt to grow wilde, and to change themselves into weeds, by being set in a soyle sutable, and like themselves, are made more unfavoury and filled with poyson. It was therefore truly affirmed, *Sapientis adiuvabit opus astrorum, quemadmodum agricola terre naturam;* A wise man assisteth the work of the Stars as the Husbandman helpeth the nature of the soyle. And Ptolemie himselfe confessest thus much, *Sapientis, & omnia sapientis medici dominabuntur astris;* A wise man, and the ominous art of a wise Physician shall prevails against the Stars. Lastly, we ought all to know, that God created the Stars, as he did the rest of the Universal, whose influences may be called his reserved and unwritten Lawes. But let us consider how they bind: even as the Lawes of men doe; for although the Kings and Princes of the World have by their Lawes decreed, that a Thiefe and a Murderer shall suffer death; and though their Ordinances are daily by Judges and Magistrates (the Stars of Kings) executed accordingly; yet these Lawes doe not deprive Kings of their naturall or religious compassion, or binde them without prerogative, to such a severe execution, as that there should be nothing left of liberty to judgment, power, or conscience: the Law in his owne nature, being no other than a deafe Tyrant. But seeing that it is otherwise, and that Princes (who ought to imitate God in all they can) doe sometimes for causes to themselves knowne, and by mediation, pardon offences both against others and themselves, it were then impious to take that power and liberty from God himselfe, which his Substitutes enjoy; God being mercy, goodnesse, and charity it selfe. Otherwise that example of Prayer by our Saviour taught; *And let us not be led into temptation, but deliver us from evill,* had been no other but an expence of words and time; but that God (which only knoweth the operation of his owne creatures truly) hath assured us, that there is no inclination or temptation so forcible, which our humble Prayers and Desires may not make frustrate and breake asunder: for were it (as the Stoicks conceive) that Fate or Destiny, though depending upon eternall power, yet being once ordered and disposed, had such a connexion and immutable dependency, that God himself should in a kinde have shut up himselfe therein: *How miserable then were the condition of men* (saith S. Augustine) *left altogether without hope.*

Mat. 6. 13.

John 17. 4.

And if this strength of the Stars were so transferred, as that God had quitted unto them all dominion over his creatures; be he Pagan or Christian that so beleeveth, the only true God of the one, and the imaginary gods of the other, would thereby be despoyed of all worship, reverence, or respect.

And certainly, God which hath promised us the reward of well-doing, which Christ himself claimed at the hands of the Father, *(I have finished the work which thou gavest me to doe:)* and the same God, who hath threatned unto us the sorrow and torment of offences, could not, contrary to his mercifull nature, be so unjust, as to bind us inevitably to the Destinies or influences of the Stars, or subject our soules to any imposed necessity. But it was well said of Plotinus, that the Stars were significant, but not efficient, giving them yet something lesse than their due: and therefore as I doe not consent with them, who would make those glorious creatures of God vertuelesse: so I thinke that wee derogate from his eternall and absolute power and providence, to ascribe to them

them the same dominion over our immortal soules, which they have over all bodily substances, and perishable natures: for the soules of men, loving and fearing God, receive influence from that divine light it self, whereof the Suns clarity, and that of the Stars, is by Plato called but a shadow. *Lumen est umbra Dei, Deus est lumen luminis;* Light is the shadow of Gods brightnesse, who is the light of light: But to end this question, because this Destiny, together with Providence, Precedence, and Predetermination, are often confounded, I think it not impertinent to touch the difference in a word or two; for every man hath not observed it, though all learned men have.

Plat. pel. 6.  
Ficin. lib. 7. p. 40.

## §. XII.

### Of Precedence.

Precedence, or fore-knowledge (which the Greeks call *Prognosis*, the Latines *præcognitio*, or *præscientia*) considered in order and nature (if we may speak of God after the manner of men) goeth before Providence: for God fore-knew all things, before he had created them, or before they had being to be cared for; and Precedence is no other than an infallible fore-knowledge. For whatsoever our selves fore-know, except the same be to succeed accordingly, it cannot be true that we fore-know it. But this Precedence of God (as it is Precedence onely) is not the cause of any thing surely succeeding: neither doth Gods fore-knowledge impose any necessity, or binde. For in that we fore-know that the Sun will rise, and set; that all men born in the World shall die again; that after Winter, the Spring shall come; after the Spring, Sommer and Harvest; and that according to the several seeds that we sow, we shall reap several sorts of grain; yet is not our fore-knowledge the cause of this, or any of these: neither doth the knowledge in us binde or constrain the Sun to rise and set, or men to die; for the causes (as men perswade themselves) are otherwise manifest and known to all. The eye of man (saith Boetius) beholdeth those things subject to sense, as they are; the eye seeth that such a beast is an horse, it seeth men, trees, and houses, &c. but our seeing of them (as they are) is not the cause of their so being, for such they be in their own natures. And againe out of the same Author; *Divina providentia rebus generandis non imponit necessitatem, quia spontanea eventum ex necessitate, premia honorum, & pena malorum periret.* Divine Providence (saith he) imposeth no necessity upon things that are to exist; for if all come to pass of necessity, there should neither be reward of good, nor punishment of evil.

## §. XIII.

### Of Providence.

Now Providence (which the Greeks call *Pronoia*) is an intellectual knowledge, both fore-seeing, caring for, and ordering all things, and doth not onely behold all past, all present, and all to come, but is the cause of their so being, which Precedence (simply taken) is not: and therefore Providence by the Philosophers (saith S. Augustine) is divided into Memory, Knowledge, and Care: Memory of the past; Knowledge of the present, and Care of the future: and we our selves account such a man for provident, as, remembering things past, and observing things present, can by judgement, and comparing the one with the other, provide for the future, and times succeeding. That such a thing there is as Providence, the Scriptures, every where teach us; Moses in many places, the Prophets in their Predictions, Christ himself and his Apostles assure us hereof: and besides the Scriptures, Hermet, Orpheus, Empirides, Pythagoras, Plato, Plotinus, and (in effect) all learned men acknowledge the Providence of God: yea the Turks themselves are so confident therein, as they refuse not to accompany, and visit each other in the most pestilent diseases, nor shun any peril whatsoever, though death therein do manifestly present it self.

The places of Scripture proving providence, are so many, both in general and particular, as I shall need to repeat but a few of them in this place: *Sing into God* (saith David), *which covereth the Heavens with clouds, and prepareth rain for the earth, and maketh the grass to grow upon the Mountains, which giveth the beasts their food, and feedeth the young Raven that cries: All these wait upon thee; that thou mayest give them food in due season: And thou shalt drink of the River Cheareth* (saith, God, to Eliah) *and I com-*

Psal. 147. 8.  
Psal. 104. 27. 9.

com-

1 Reg. 17. 4.  
Math. 6. 26.  
Luke 12. 6. 7.

1 Ps. 5. 7.  
Psalm 35. 6.

Jer. 23. 24.

Ezay 42. 8.

Job. 41. 1. 2.  
Gen. 8.  
God is love.

commanded the Ravens to feed thee there. Behold, the Fowles of the Ayre, they sow not, nor reap, and yet your Heavenly Father feedeth them: Again, are not two Sparrowes sold for a farthing? and one of them shall not fall on the ground without your Father: yea all the hayes of your head are numbered: And S. Peter, Cast all your care on him, for he careth for you: And his judgments are written, saith David.

God therefore, who is every where present, who filleth the Heavens and the Earth, whose eyes are upon the Righteous, and his countenance against them that do evil, was therefore by Orpheus called *oculus infinitus*, an infinite eye, beholding all things; and cannot therefore be esteemed as an idle looker on, as if he had transferred his power to any other: for it is contrary to his own word: *Gloriam meam alteri non dabo*: I will not give my glory to another. No man commandeth in the Kings presence, but by the Kings direction; but God is every-where present, and King of kings. The example of Gods universall Providence is seen in his creatures. The Father provideth for his children: beasts and birds, and all livings for their young ones. If Providence be found in second Fathers, much more in the first and Universal: and if there be a naturall loving care in men, and beasts, much more in God, who hath formed this nature, and whose Divine love was the beginning, and is the bond of the Universal: *Amor divinus verum omnium est principium*, & vinculum universi (saith Plato) *Amor Dei est nodus perpetuus, mundi copula, partiumque ejus immobile sustentaculum, ac universe machine fundamentum*: The love of God is the perpetuall knot, and link or chain of the world, and the immovable pillar of every part thereof, and the Basis and foundation of the universall. God therefore who could only be the cause of all, can only provide for all, and sustain all; so as to absolute power; to every-where presence; to perfect goodness; to pure and divine love; this attribute transcendent hability of Providence is onely proper and belonging.

#### §. XIV.

##### Of Predestination.

Rom. 8. & 9.

Lomb. 1. 1. diff. 32.

Thom. part. 1. diff. 23.

Bern. de Probl. 4. d. 1.

Aug. 1. 15. c. 1.

de Civit. Dei. c. 1. 15. c. 1.

Cal. in cap. 9. ad Rom. v. 11.

Bea. in magn. enser. in cap. 9. ad Rom. v. 11.

Damas. 1. 3. de Solut. Gregor. Magn. Job. 9.

Aug. ad Polin. 9. 59.

Now for Predestination, we can difference it no otherwise, from Providence and Prefcience, than in this, that Prefcience onely fore-seeth; Providence fore-seeth and careth for; and hath respect to all creatures, even from the brightest Angels of Heaven, to the unworthiest Worms of the Earth: and Predestination (as it is used specially by Divines) is onely of men, and yet not of all to men belonging, but of their salvation properly, in the common use of Divines, or perdition, as some have used it. Yet Peter Lombard, Thomas, Bernardus Theologus, and others, take the word Predestination more strictly, and for a preparation to felicity: divers of the Fathers take it more largely sometimes; among whom Saint Augustine speaking of two Cities, and two Societies, useth these words, *Quoniam est una, que predestinata est in eternum regnare cum Deo, altera eternum supplicium subire cum Diabolo*: Wherof one is it, which is predestinated to reign for ever with God, but the other is to undergo everlastig torment with the Devil: for according to Nominus Marcellus, *destinare, est preparare*; and of the same opinion are many Protestant Writers, as Calvin, Beza, Buchanan, Darnus, and such like: and as for the manifold questions hereof arising, leave them to the Divines; and why it hath pleased God to create some vessels of honour, and some of dishonour, I will answer with Gregor, who saith, *Qui in statu Dei rationem non videt in similitudinem suam considerans, cum vult videri rationem videri*: He that seeth not reason in the actions of God, by consideration of his own infirmity, perceiveth the reason of his blindness. And again with S. Augustine, *Oratio esse compotest, injusta esse non potest*; Et idem the cause of his Predestination may be, just it cannot be.

#### §. XV.

Of Fortune: and of the reason of some things that seem to be by fortune, and against Reason and Providence.

Firstly, seeing Destiny or Necessity is subsequent to Gods Providence, and seeing that the Stars have no other dominion, than is before spoken, and that Nature is nothing, but as Plato calleth it, *Dei artem, vel artificisum Dei organum*: The art, or artificiall Organ of God: and Cusanus, *Divini precepti instrumentum*: The

The art, or artificiall Organ of God: and Cusanus, *Divini precepti instrumentum*: The instrument of the divine precept: we may then with better reason reject that kind of Idolatry, or God of fools, called Fortune or Chance: a Goddess, the most revered, and the most revered of all other, but not ancient; for Homer maketh her the Daughter of Oceanus, as Pausanias witnesseth in his *Mythology*. The Greeks call her *Tyche*, signifying a relative being, or betiding, so as before Homers time this great Lady was scarce heard of; and Hesiodus, who hath taught the birth and beginning of all these counterfeit gods, hath not a word of Fortune: yet afterward she grew so great and omnipotent, as from Kings and Kingdoms, to Beggars and Cottages, she ordered all things, resisting the wisdom of the wisest, by making the Possessor thereof miserable: valuing the folly of the most foolish, by making the success prosperous; inasmuch as the actions of men were said to be but the sports of Fortune, and the variable accidents happening in mens lives, but her pastimes: of which Palladius, *Vita hominum ludus fortune est*: The life of man is the play of Fortune: and because it often falleth out, that enterprises guided by ill counsels, have equal success to those by the best judgment conducted, therefore had Fortune the same external figure with Sapience, wherof Athenæus, *Longissime à Sapientia Fors distat*.

Longissime à Sapientia Fors distat.  
Sed multa perficit tamen similitudo.  
From Wisdome Fortune differs far,  
And yet in works most like they are.

But I will forbear to be curious in that, which (as it is commonly understood) is nothing else but a power imaginary, to which the success of humane actions and endeavours were for their variety ascribed; for when a manifest cause could not be given, then was it attributed to fortune, as if there were no cause of those things, of which most men are ignorant; contrary to this true ground of Plato: *Nihil est orum sub Sole, cujus causa legitima non precesserit*: Nothing ever came to pass under the Sun, of which there was not a just preceding cause. But Aquinas hath herein answered in one distinction, whatsoever may be objected; for many things there are (saith he) which happen, besides the intention of the inferior, but not besides the intention of the Superior; *Præter intentionem Inferioris, sed non præter intentionem Superioris*, (to wit, the ordinance of God; and) therefore (saith Melancthon) *Quod Poete fortunamus, Deum appellamus*; whom the Poets call Fortune, we know to be God. And that this is true, the Scripture in many places teacheth us; as in the Law of Murder, *He that smiteth a man, and he dye, shall dye the death*; and if a man hath not laid wait, but God hath offered him into his hands, then I will appoint thee a place whither he shall flee. Now, where the Scripture hath these words, *God hath offered him into his hands*, we say, If he hurt him by Chance; and in Deuteronomy the nineteenth, where the slipping of an Axe from the helve, whereby another is slain, was the work of God himself, we in our phrase attribute this accident to Chance or Fortune: and in the Proverbs the sixteenth, *The lot is cast into the lap, but the whole disposition thereof is of the Lord*: so as that which seemeth most casual and subject to Fortune, is yet disposed by the ordinance of God, as all things else; and herof the wiser fort, and the best learned of the Philosophers were not ignorant, as Cicero witnesseth for them, gathering the opinion of Aristotle and his Sectators, with those of Plato, and the Academics, to this effect, That the same power which they called *animam mundi*; The soul of the World, was no other then that incomprehensible wisdom, which we express by the name of God, governing every being as well in heaven as in earth; to which wisdom and power they sometime gave the title of Necessity or Fate, because it bindeth by inevitable ordinance: sometime the style of Fortune, because of many effects there upon unto us no certain causes: To this effect speaketh S. Augustine in his questions upon Genesis the first Book: the same hath Seneca in his fourth of Benefits; which was also the doctrine of the Stoicks, of which Sect he was: For whosoever (saith he) thou callest God, be it Nature, Fate, or Fortune, all are but one and the same, differenced by divers termes, according as he useth, and exerciseth his power diversly.

But it may be objected, That if Fortune and Chance were not sometimes the causes of good and evil in men, but an idle voice, whereby we express success; how comes it then, that so many worthy and wise men depended upon so many unworthy and empty-headed fools; that riches and honour are given to external men, and without ker-

nell : and so many learned, vertuous, and valiant men weare out their lives in poore and dejected estates. In a word, there is no other inferiour, or apparent cause, beside the partiality of mans affection, but the fashioning and not fashioning of our selves according to the nature of the time wherein we live : for whosoever is most able, and best sufficient to discern, and hath withal an honest and open heart and loving truth ; if Princes, or those that governe, endure no other discourse than their owne flatteries, then I say such an one, whose vertue and courage forbiddeth him to be bafe and a dissembler, shall evermore hang under the wheele ; which kinde of deserving well and receiving ill, we alwayes fallly charge Fortune withal. For whosoever shall tell any great Man or Magistrate, that he is not just ; the General of an Army, that he is not valiant, and great Ladies that they are not faire ; shall never be made a Counsellor, a Capitaine, or a Courtier. Neither is it sufficient to be wife with a wife Prince, valiant with a valiant, and just with him that is just, for such a one hath no estate in his prosperity ; but he must also change with the successor, if he be of contrary qualities ; faile with the ryde of the time, and alter forme and condition, as the Estate or the Estates Master changeth : Otherwise how were it possible, that the most bafe men, and separate from all imitable qualities, could so often attaine to honour and riches, but by such an ob-servant slavish course ? These men having nothing else to value themselves by, but a counterfeite kinde of wondring at other men, and by making them believe that all their vices are vertues, and all their dusty actions crystalline, have yet in all ages prospered equally with the most vertuous, if not exceeded them. For according to Menander, *Omnis insipiens arrogantia & planctibus capitur* ; Every foole is wonne with his owne pride, and others flattering applause : so as whosoever will live altogether out of himselfe, and study other mens humours, and observe them, shall never be unfortunate ; and on the contrary, that man which prizeth truth and vertue (except the season wherein he liveth be of all these, and of all sorts of goodnesse fruitful) shall never prosper by the possession or profession thereof. It is also a token of a worldly wise man, not to warre or contend in vaine against the nature of things wherein he liveth : for such a one is often the author of his owne misery ; but best it were to follow the advice, which the Pope gave the Bishops of that age, out of *Ovid*, while the Arian Heresie raged :

*Ovid. Metam.  
lib. 1.*

*Dum furor in cursu est, currenti cede furori.*

While fury gallops on the way,  
Let no man furies gallop stay.

And if *Cicero* (than whom that world begat not a man of more reputed Judgement had followed the counsell of his brother *Quintus*, *Potuisse* (saith *Petrarch* in *lectulo suo mori, potuisse integro condovero sepeliri* ; He might then have died the death of nature, and bene with an untorne and undiscovered body buried ; for as *Petrarch* in the same place noteth : *Quid stultius quam desperantem presertim de effectu libris perperis implicari ?* What more foolish than for him that despaireth (especially of the effect) to be intangled with endlesse contentions ; Whosoever therefore will set before him *Machiavels two markers as shoot* as (to wit) Riches, and Glory, must set on and take off a back of yron to a weak wooden Bow, that it may fit both the strong and the feeble ; for as he that first devised to adde sayls to rowing vessels, did either so proportion them as being fastened aloft, and towards the head of his Mast, he might abide all windes and stormes, or else he sometime or other perished by his owne invention : so that man which prizeth vertue for it selfe, and cannot endure to hoise and strike his sailes, as the divers natures of calmes and stormes require, must cut his sailes and his cloth of meane length and breadth, and content himselfe with a slow and sure navigation, (to wit) a meane and free estate. But of this dispute of Fortune, and the rest, or of whatsoever Lords or Gods, imaginary powers, or causes, the wit (or rather foolishnesse) of man hath found out : let us resolve with *S. Paul*, who hath taught us, that there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him ; and one Lord *Jesus Christ*, by whom are all things, and we by him ; there are diversities of operations, but God is the same which worketh all in all.

*1 Chr. c. 8. v. 6.  
Cap. 12. v. 6.*

CHAP.

## CHAP. II.

Of man's estate in his first Creation, and of God's rest.

### §. 1.

Of the Image of God, according to which man was first created.

**T**He creation of all other creatures being finished, the heavens adorned, and the earth replenished, God said, *Let us make man in our owne Image, according to our* *Gen. 1. 26.*

Man is the last and most admirable of Gods works to us known : *ingenitum miraculum hominis*. *Trif. Ael. 2. & mo. Man is the greatest wonder* (saith *Plato* out of *Adecrinus* : ) *Nature ardens sine arte*. *Trif. Ael. 2. & mo. The artificial work of the most ardent or fire-like nature* (as saith *Zoroaster* ) though the same be meant, not for any excellency externall, but in respect of his internall forme ; both in the nature, qualities, and other attributes thereof : in nature, because it hath an essence, immortal, and spiritual ; in qualities, because the same was by God created holy and righteous in truth ; in other attributes, because Man was made Lord of this world, and of the creatures therein.

*Santissimus his animal mentisq; capacius alio*  
*Deest at ad hoc : & quod dominari in ceteris possit,*  
*Natur homo est.*

More holy than the rest, and understanding more,  
A living creature wants, to rule all made before :  
So man began to be.

*Santissimus, quid*  
*paris potest im-*  
*mortalis anima,*  
*quis in mortali.*  
*In locum Ovid.*  
*Met. lib. 1. 76.*

Of this Image and Similitude of God, there is much dispute among the Fathers, Schoole-men, and late Writers : Some of the Fathers conceive, that man was made after the Image of God, in respect chiefly of Empire and Dominion, as *S. Chrysostome*, *Ambrose*, and some others : which *S. Ambrose* denieth to the woman in these words, *Utrum Deus unus, ab eo fieret homo unus, & quomodo ex Deo uno omnia, ita ex uno homine omne genus esset super faciem totius terre : unus igitur, unus facit, qui unitatem esse habere* *imaginem ;* That as God is one, one man might be made by him, and that in what manner all things are of one God, likewise of one man the whole kinde should be upon the face of the whole earth : Therefore he being one, made one, that should have the Image of his unity. But whereas it is gathered out of the following words of the same Verse ; that man was after the Image of God in respect of rule and power, it is written *Dominumini* in the plurall number, and let them rule over the fish in the Sea, &c. and therefore cannot the woman be excluded. Others conceive, that man is said to be after the Image of God in respect of his immortal soule onely, because as God is invisible, so the soule of man is invisible ; as God is immortal and incorporeall, so is the soule of man immortal and incorporeall ; as there is but one God which governeth the world ; so but one soul which governeth the body of man ; and as God is wholly in every part of the world, so is the soule of man wholly in every part of the body : *Anima est tota in toto, & tota in qualibet parte ;* The soule is wholly in the whole body, and wholly in every part thereof, according to *Aristotle*, though *Chalcidius*, and other learned men deny that doctrine, which that it is otherwise than potentially true, all the Aristotelians in the world shall never prove. These and the like arguments do the Jewes make (saith *Tostatus*) and these resemblances, between the infinite God, and the finite Man.

The Schoole-men resemble the Minde or Soule of Man to God, in this respect especially ; because that as in the Minde there are three distinct powers, or faculties (to wit) Memory, Understanding and Will ; and yet all these, being of real differences, are but one minde : so in God there are three distinct persons, the Father, Son, the holy Ghost, and yet but one God. They also make the Image and Similitude divers ; and againe, they distinguish between *Imaginem Dei*, and *ad Imaginem Dei*, and spinne into small threads with subtile distinctions, many times the plainenesse and sincerity of the Scriptures : their wits being like that strong water, that eateth thowrow and dissolveth the purest gold. *Viciorum* also maketh the Image of God to be substantiall, but not the

the similitude; *sed in substantia nomen qualitatis declaratio*; A word, declaring quality in the substance. Out of which words, and that which followeth, it is inferred; that as the image and similitude do greatly differ, so the sinful soule doth not therefore leave to be the image of God; but it hath not his similitude, except it be holy and righteous. S. Augustine also against *Adimantus* the Manichee affirmeth, that by faine, the perfection of this image is lost in man; and in his Retractions maintaineth the same opinion, and also affirmeth that the similitude is more largely taken, than the Image.

But howsoever the Schoolmen and others distinguish, or whatsoever the Fathers conceive, sure I am that S. Paul maketh the same sense of the Image, which *Victorinus* doth of the similitude, who saith: *As we have borne the image of the earthly, so shall we bear the image of the heavenly*; and it cannot be gathered out of the Scriptures; that the words *Image* and *Similitude* were used but in one sense, and in this place the better to express each other; whatsoever *Lombard* hath said to the contrary: For God knows, what a multitude of meanings the wit of man imagineth to himself in the Scriptures, which neither *Moses*, the *Prophets*, or *Apostles*, ever conceived. Now as S. Paul useth the word (Image) for both: so Saint *James* useth the word (Similitude) for both in these words: *Therewith blest we God even the Father, and therewith curse we Men; which are made after the similitude of God*. Howsoever therefore S. Augustine seemeth, out of a kind of elegancy in writing, to make some difference: as where he writeth, *Conferantur imaginem in eternitate, similitudinem in moribus inveniri*; we confesse that this image is found in eternitie, but his similitude in manner, that is, in the spiriual dispositions and qualities of the minde; yet thus he elsewhere speaketh plainly: *Quasi vero possit esse imago aliqua, in qua similitudo non sit: si enim omnino similis non est, procul dubio nec imago est*; As if (saith he) there could be any image, where the similitude is not: no, out of doubt, where there is no likeness, there is no image. The very words of the Text make this most manifest, as Let us make man in our image, according to our likeness: which is, Let us make man in our image, that he may be like us: and in the next Verse following, God himselfe maketh plain; for there he useth the word (Image) only as thus: *God created the man in his image, in the image of God created he him*. And to take away all dispute or ambiguity, in the first Verse of the fifth Chapter, the word (Similitude) is used againe by it selfe, as, *In the day that God created Adam, in the likeness of God made he him*.

And this similitude S. Paul *Colos.* the third, calleth the Image. Put on (saith he) the new man which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him. And in *Syracides* it is written, *He made them according to his image*. Now if we may belevee Saint Paul before *Peter Lombard* and other Schoolemen, then it is as manifest as words can make it, that the image and similitude is but the same; for S. Paul useth both the words directly in one sense. For they turned the glory of the incorruptible God, to the similitude of the image of a corruptible man.

*Lanchius* laboureth to prove, that man was formed after the image of God, both in body and minde. *Nulla pars in homine que non fuerit huiusce imaginis particeps*; No part in a man (saith he) which was not partaking Gods image: for God said, *Let us make man according to our owne image*. But the soule alone is not man, but the Hypostasis or whole Man compounded of body and soule. The body of man (saith he) is the image of the world, and called therefore *Microcosmus*; but the Idea and exemplar of the world was first in God, so that man, according to his body, must needs be the image of God. Against which opinion of this learned man, his owne objection seemeth to me sufficient, where he allegeth that it may be said, that *Moses* spake by the figure *Synecdoche*; as when a man is called a mortall man, yet is not the whole man mortall, but the body only: so when God said, *Let us make man after our image*, he meant the soule of man, and not the body of earth and dust: *Maledictus qui Deitatem ad hominis lineamenta refert* (saith Saint Augustine): Cursed is he that referreth the Deity of God to the lineaments of man; body: *Deus enim non est humane forme particeps, neque corpus humanum divine* (saith *Philo*); God is not partaker of humane form, nor humane body of the forme divine. The Hebrew word for image, is *Tselem*, which signifieth a shadow or obscure resemblance: *In imagine permanet homo; Man passeth away in a shadow*: Let us then know and consider, that God, who is eternall and infinite, hath not any bodily shape or composition; for it is both against his Nature and his Word; an error of the *Anthropomorphite*, against the very essence and Majesty of God.

Surely

Surely *Cicero*, who was but a Heathen, had yet a more divine understanding than these grose Hereticks: *Ad similitudinem Dei propriis accedebat humana virtus, quam figura*; The vertue which is in man (saith he) came nearer the similitude of God, than the figure. For God is a spirituall substance, invisable, and most simple; God is a just God: God is Mercifull: God is Charity it self, and (in a word) Goodness it self, and none else simply good. And thus much it hath pleased God himselfe to teach us, and to make us know of himself. What then can be the shadow of such a substance, the image of such a nature, or wherein can man be said to resemble his unexcogitable power and perfectness; certainly not in Dominion alone: for the Devil is said to be the Prince of this World, *Eph. 5. 12.* and the Kingdom of Christ was not thereof, who was the true and perfect image of his Father; neither because man hath an immortall soul, and therein the faculties of Memory, Understanding, and Will; for the Devils are also immortall, and participate those faculties, being called *Demon*, because *scientes* of Knowledge, and subtilty; neither because we are reasonable creatures, by which we are distinguished from beasts: for who have rebelled against God? who have made gods of the vilest beasts, of Serpents, of Cats, of Owles, yea, even of shamefull parts, of lusts and pleasures, but reasonable men? yet do I not condemn the opinion of Saint *Crisostome* and *Ambrose*, as *Officiis de Just.* touching dominion, but that, in respect thereof, man was in some sort after the image of God, if we take Dominion, such as it ought to be, that is, accompanied with Justice and Piety: for God did not onely make man a Ruler and Governour over the Fishes of the Sea, the Fowles of Heaven (or of the aire) and over the Beasts of the Field; But God gave unto man a dominion over men, he appointed Kings to govern them; and Judges to judge them in equity. Neither do I exclude Reason, as it is the ability of Understanding. For I do not conceive, that *Irenaeus* did therefore call man, the image of God, because he was animal rationale onely; but that he understood it better, with *Sybill*: *Imago mea est homo, rectam rationem habens*: Man that is endued with right reason is said to resemble God, (that is) by right reason to know and confesse God his Creatour, and the same God to serve, love, and obey: and therefore said S. Augustine (who herein came nearer the Truth) *Fecit Deus hominem ad imaginem & similitudinem suam in moribus*, *God made man in respect of the intellectu after his own Image and similitude*; and *Reynierius* *Homo, quid habet mentem, factus est ad imaginem Dei*; Man was made after the Image of God, in minde, or in that he had a minde.

## §. II.

Of the intellectuall minde of man, in which there is much of the Image of God: and that this Image is much deformed by sin.

**B**UT *Mens* is not taken here for *anima physica*, according to *Aristotle*, which is forme, *vel natura hominis*: The form or nature of man; but this faculty or gift of God, called *Mens*, is taken for *prima vis animi*, the principall strength of the minde, or soul, *cujus usus est perpetua veritatis contemplatio*; whose use, exercise, or office, is the perpetuall contemplation of truth; and therefore it is also called *intellectus divinus*, *intellectus contemplativus*, & *anima contemplationis*. A divine understanding, and an intellectuall minde contemplative. *Est autem mens uestra* (saith *Cusanus*) *vis comprehendendi*, & *totum virtuale ex omnibus comprehendendi virtutibus compositum*: Our intellectuall minde (saith he) is a power of comprehending; even the whole, that is in this kinde powerfull, compounded of all the powers of comprehension; unto which *Mercurius* attributeth so much (if his meaning accompany his words) that he esteemeth it to be the very essence of God (which was also the error of the Manichees, and others) and no otherwise separate from God (saith he) than the light from the Sun: for this *Mens* or understanding (saith *Mercurius*) *est Deus in hominibus*: Is God in men; or rather (and which I take to be his meaning) is the image of God in man. For, as the Sun is not of the same essence or nature with the divine light, but a body illightned, and an illumination created; so is this *Mens* or understanding in men, not of the essence of Gods infinite understanding, but a power and faculty of four soules the purest; or the *humana anime rationalis*, by the true and eternall light illightned. And this *Mens*, others call *anima anime*, *The soul of the soul*, or with Saint Augustine, the eye of the soul, or receptacle of sapience and divine knowledge, *que amore sapientie tanquam ducent sequitur*; which followeth after



the similitude: *sed in substantia nomen qualitatis declarativum* / A word, declaring quality in the substance. Out of which words, and that which followeth, it is inferred, that as the image and similitude doo greatly differ, for the similitude doth not therefore leave to be the image of God; but it hath not his similitude, except it be holy and righteous. *S. Augustinus* also against *Adimantum* the *Manicheæ* affirmeth, that by fine, the perfection of this image is lost in man; and in his *Retractions*, maintaineth the same opinion, and also affirmeth that the similitude is more largely taken, than the Image.

But howsoever the Schoolmen and others distinguishing, or whatsoever the Fathers conceive, sure I am that *S. Paul* maketh the fame figure of the Image, which *Videtur* doth of the similitude, whb saith : *As we have borne the image of the earthly, so shall we bear the image of the heavenly* ; and it cannot be gathered out of the Scriptures ! that the words Image and Similitude were used but in one sense, and in this place the better to express each other ; whosoever *Lambard* hath said to the contrary : For God knows, what multitude of meanings the word of man imagineth to himself in the Scriptures, which neither *Moses*, the *Prophets*, or *Apostles*, ever conceived. Now as *S. Paul* useth the word (Image) for both : so *Saint James* useth the word (Similitude) for both in these

words: *Therewith bleſſes me God even the Father, and therewith curſe we deny;* which are made after the ſimilitude of God. Howſoever therefore S. Auguſtine ſeemeth, out of a kind of elegancy in writing, to make ſome difference: as where he writteth, *Conſiderant imaginem in æternitate, ſimilitudinem in moribus inveniri;* we conſeſſe that this image is found in eternitie, but his ſimilitude in manners, that is, in the ſpiritual diſpoſitions and qualities of the minde; yet thus he ſelfewhere ſpeaketh plainly: *Quæſt vero poſſit nec imago aliqua in qua ſimilitudo non fit: ſi enim omnino ſimilis non eſt, procul dubio nec imago eſt:* As if (ſaith he) there could be any image, where the ſimilitude is not: no, out of doubt, where there is no likenesse, there is no image. The very words of the Text make this moſt manifeſt, as Let us make man in our image, according to our likeneſſe: which is, Let us make man in our image, that he may be like us: and in the next Verſe following, God himſelf maketh it plaine; for there he uſeth the word (Image) only as thus: God created the man in his image, in the image of God created he him. And to take away all diſpoſe or ambiguity, in the firſt Verſe of the fifth Chapter, the word (Similitude) is uſed againe; by it ſelfe, as, In the day that God created Adam, in the likeneſſe of God made he him. And this ſimilitude S. Paul Coloſ. the third, calleth the Image. Put on (ſaith he) the new man which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him. And in Synacides it is written, He made them according to his image. Now if we may believe Saint Paul before Peter Lombard and other Schoolemen, then it is as manifeſt as words can make it, that the image and ſimilitude is but the ſame; for S. Paul uſeth both the words directly in one ſenſe. For they turned the glory of the incorruptible God, to the ſimilitude of the image of a corruptible man.

Surely

Surely *Cicero*, who was but a *Heathen*, had yet a more divine understanding than these  
 grofs Hereticks : *Ad similitudinem Dei propriis accedebat humana virtus, quoniam figura* 'The  
 virtue which is in man (faith he) came neerer the similitude of God, than the figure. For God  
 is a spirituall substance, invisible, and most simple; God is a iust God: God is Merciful:  
 full: God is Charity it self, and (in a word) Goodness it self, and none else simply  
 good. And thus much it hath pleased God himself to teach us, and to make us know  
 of himself. What then can be the shadow of such a substance, the image of such a na-  
 ture, or wherein can man be said to resemble his unexcogitable power and perfectness?  
 certainly not in Dominion alone: for the Devil is said to be the Prince of this World, Eph. 6.12.  
 and the Kingdom of Christ was not thereof, who was the true and perfect image of his Job. 38.35.  
 Father; neither because man hath an immortal soul, and therein the faculties of Me-  
 mory, Understanding, and Will; for the Devils are also immortal, and participate  
 those faculties, being called *Dæmones*, because *scientes* of Knowledge, and subtilty; nei-  
 ther because we are reasonable creatures, by which we are distinguished from beasts:  
 for who have rebelled against God? who have made gods of the vilest beasts, of Ser-  
 pents, of Cats, of Owles, yea, even of shamefull parts, of lusts and pleasures, but reason-  
 able men? yet do I not condemn the opinion of *Saint Chrysostome* and *Ambrase*, as *Oppians* de *Jui*;  
 touching dominion, but that, in respect thereof, man was in some sort after the image lib. 5.  
 of God, if we take Dominion, such as it ought to be, that is, accompanied with Justice  
 and Piety: for God did not onely make man a Ruler and Governour over the Fishes  
 of the Sea, the Fowles of Heaven (or of the aire) and over the Beasts of the Field; But  
 God gave unto man a dominion over men, he appointed Kings to govern them; and  
 Judges to judge them in equity. Neither do I exclude Reason, as it is the ability of  
 Understanding, For I do not conceive, that *Ireneus* did therefore call man, the image  
 of God, because he was *animal rationale* onely; but that he understood it better, with  
*Sybilla*: *Imago mea est homo, gratiam rationem habens*: Man that is endued with right reason  
 is said to resemble God, (that is) by right reason to know and confess Gods Creator,  
 and the same God to serve, love, and obey: and therefore said *S. Augustine* (who herein  
 came neerer the Truth) *Fecit Deus hominem ad imaginem & similitudinem suam in mentes*  
 God made man, in respect of the intellect, after his own Image and similitude; and *Reynierius*,  
*Homo, quod habet mentem, factus est ad imaginem Dei*; Man was made after the Image of  
 God, in minde, or in that he had a minde. Reyn. de meni.

## §. II.

Of the intellectuall minde of man, in which there is much of the Image of God: and that this Image is much deformed by Sin.

**M**en's is not taken here for *anima physica*, according to Aristotle, which is *forma*,  
*naturalis hominis*: The form or nature of man; but this faculty or gift of God, called  
 40 *Mens*, is taken for *prima vis animi*; the principal strength of the minde, or soul, *cujus*  
*actus est perpetua veritatis contemplatio*; whose act, exercise, or office, is the perpetual con-  
 templation of truth; and therefore it is also called *intellectus divinus*, *intellectus contem-*  
*plativus*, & *anima contemplativa*. A divine understanding, and an intellect or minde contem-  
 plative. *Eft enim mens nostra* (saith Cusanus) *vix comprehendit*, & totum virtuale  
 omnino comprehendit virtutibus compositum: Our intellectuall minde (saith he) vix is De mente.  
 Idem. l. 3. the power of comprehending; even the whole, that is in this kinde powerful, compounded of all the  
 powers of comprehension: unto which Mercurius attributeth so much (if his meaning ac-  
 company his words) that he esteemeth it to be the very essece of God (which was  
 also the error of the Manichee, and others) and no otherwise separate from God  
 80 (saith he) than the light from the Sun: for this *Mens* or understanding (saith *Mey-*  
*erius*) *est Deus in hominibus*: Is God in men; or rather (and which I take to be his  
 meaning) is the image of God in man. For, as the Sun is not of the same essence, Sen. ep. 65. f. &  
 31. f.  
 nature with the divine light, but a body illightened, and an illumination created; so  
 is this *Mens* or understanding in men, not of the essence of Gods infinite understand-  
 ing, but a power and faculty of our foules the purest; or the *lumen anime rationalis*,  
 by the true and eternall light illightened. And this *Mens*, others call *animam anime*:  
 The soul of the soul, or with Saint Augustine, the eye of the soul, or receptacle of Sapience  
 and divine knowledge, *que amore sapientie tanquam ducem sequitur*, which followeth  
 after



after the love of sapience as her guide (saith Philo) between which and reason, between which and the mind, called *anima*, between which and that power which the Latines call *animus*, there is this difference. Reason is that faculty by which we judge and discourse; *Anima*, by which we live. Hereof it is said, *Anima corpus animat, id est, vivificat; et the soul is that which doth animate the body, that is, giveth it life*: for death is the separation of body and soul; and the same strength (saith Philo) which God the great Director hath in the World, the same hath this *Anima*, or mind, or soul in man. *Animus*, is that, by which we will and make election; and to this Basil agreeth, which called this *Mens*, or divine understanding, *perceptive anima partem, the perceiving part of the mind*, or the light by which the soul discerneth: *dormientium mens, non anima, sopitur, & in sleep mens extinguuntur, anima manet*: In men that sleep it is this *mens* or understanding, and not the mind or soul, which resteth, during which time it is but habitual in wise men, and in mad men this *Mens* is extinguished, and not the soul: for mad men do live, though distracted.

Therefore this word being often used for the foule giving life, is attributed abusively to mad men, when we say that they are of a distracted minde, in stead of a broken understanding: which word (Minde) we use also for opinion, as, I am of this minde, or that minde: and sometimes for mens conditions or virtues, as, He is of an honest minde, or a man of a just minde: sometimes for affection, as, I do this for my mind's sake; and Aristotle sometimes useth this word (*Mens*) for the phantasie, which is the strength of the imagination: sometimes for the knowledge of principles, which we have without discourse: oftentimes for Spirits, Angels and Intelligences: but as it is used in the proper signification, including both the understanding agent and possible, it is described to be a pure, simple, substantial act, not depending upon matter, but having relation to that which is intelligible, as to his first object: or more at large thus; A part or particle of the Soul, whereby it doth understand, not depending upon matter, nor needing any organ, free from passion coming from without, and apt to be disordered, as, eternal from that which is mortal. Hereof excellently Mercurius: *Anima est imago mentis, mens imago Dei. Deus menti preest, mens animus, anima corpori*; The Soul (meaning that which giveth life) is the Image of his understanding, or *Mens*, and this (*Mens*) or understanding is the Image of God. God is President or Ruler over this understanding, this understanding over the Soule, and this Soule over the body. This division and distinction out of the Platonicks and Peripateticks, I leave to the reader to judge of. That, *Mens humana* hath no need of any organ, Marcellus Ficinus in his ninth Book of the Soul's immortality, laboureth to prove. Zanchius doth not differ from Ficinus in words: for (saith he) *Ad facultatem intelligentem exercendam non eget Mens organo*; tanquam medio, per quod intelligat: quamquam eget objecto in quod intuetur, & ex quo intellectionem concipiat: hoc autem objectum sunt phantasmata, seu rerum à sensibus perceptarum simulachra ad phantasiam prolata: To exercise the faculty of understanding, the minde of man (saith he) needeth no instrument, as a meane, by which it may understand: but it needeth an object, whereon to look, and whereto to conceive the act of understanding. This object are the phantasmes, or the resemblances of things received from the senses, and carried to the phantasie. But in effect, his conclusion seemeth to carry a contrary sense, when he maketh the Phantasie, in representing the object to the understanding, to be a corporal Organum; neither can it be understood to be an Organum of any thing, but of the understanding. And he addeth, that the resemblance of things in mans imagination, are to his understanding and minde, as colours are to the sight: whence it fo followeth, that the imagination or phantasie it self is to the

Lib. 9. cap. 5.  
Zanch. de geog.  
Dei, part. 3. c. 1.  
cap. 2.

Fac. 185. & sequens.  
Ad imaginem.  
Dei creavit illum, id est, intelligentiam, virtutem, ac benedictionem, qui se intuetur Creatorem, agnoscit suum, acquiescit, triplex agnitionis, pietas, cultus, ratio, sibi concessa. Exat.

faculty of understanding, as the eye is to the faculty of seeing; and as this is an organum, so that. Of this question, How the mind in all her actions maketh use of the body, and hath communion with the body, I refer the Reader to a most grave and learned Discourse in the last Reply of M.D. Bilson, late Bishop of Winchester, unto Henry Jacob. However the Truth be determined, we must conclude, that it is neither in respect of reason alone, by which we discourse, nor in respect of the minde it self, by which we live, nor in respect of our souls simply, by which we are immortal, that we are made after the Image of God. But most safely may we resemble our selves to God in *mente*, and in respect of that pure faculty, which is never separate from the contemplation and love of God. Yet this is not all; for Saint Bernard maketh a true difference between the nature and faculties of the Minde or Soule, and between the infusion of qualities, endowments and gifts of grace, wherewith it is adorned and enriched, which

being

being added to the nature, essence, and faculties, maketh it altogether to be after the Image of God, whose words are these: *Non propterea imago Dei est, quia sui meminit Mens, sed quia potest intelligit & diligit* (which also was the opinion of Saint AUGUSTINE) *sed quia potest meminisse, intelligere ac diligere cum à quo facta est*, (that is) The Minde (or Mens) was not therefore the Image of God, because it remembereth, understandeth, and loveth it self; but because it can remember, understand, and love God, who created it. And that this Image may be deformed and made unprofitable, hear BASIL: *Homo ad imaginem & similitudinem Dei factus est, peccatum vero imaginis huius pulchritudinem deformavit, & inutilem reddidit, dum animam corruptis concupiscentiæ affectibus immergit*: Man was made after the Image and similitude of GOD, but sin hath deformed the beauty of this Image, and made it unprofitable, by drawing our minds into corrupt concupiscentie.

It is not therefore (as aforesaid) by reason of Immortality, nor in Reason, nor in Dominion, nor in any one of these by it self, nor in all these joynd, by any of which, or by all which we resemble, or may be called the shadow of God, though by reason and understanding, with the other faculties of the Soule, we are made capable of this prints; but chiefly, in respect of the habit of Original righteousness, most perfectly infused by God into the Mind and Soule of man in his first Creation. For it is not by nature, nor by her liberality, that we were printed with the seale of Gods Image (though Reason may be said to be of her gift, which joynd to the soul, is a part of the Essential Constitution of our proper species) but from the bountiful grace of the Lord of all goodnes, who breathed life into Earth, and contrived within the Trunk of Dust and Clay, the inimitable hability of his own Piety and righteousness.

So long therefore (for that resemblance which Dominion hath) do those that are powerful retain the Image of God, as according to his Commandments they exercise the Office or Magistracy to which they are called, and sincerely walk in the ways of God, which in the Scriptures is called, *walking with God*; and all other men so long retain this Image, as they feare, love and serve God truly, that is, for the love of God alone, and do not bruise and deface his Seale by the weight of manifold and voluntary offences, and obstinate sins. For the unjust minde cannot be after the Image of God, seeing God is Justice it self; The blood-thirsty hath it not; for God is Charity, and Mercy it self; Falshood, cunning practice, and ambition, are properties of Satan; and therefore cannot dwell in one soul, together with God: and to be short, there is no likelihood between pure light and black darkness, between beauty and deformity, or between righteousness and reprobation. And though Nature, according to common understanding, have made us capable by the power of reason, and apt enough to receive this Image of Gods goodness, which the sensual souls of Beasts cannot perceive; yet were that aptitude natural more inclinable to follow and embrace the false and durtles pleasures of this Stage-play World, than to become the shadow of God by walking after him, had not the exceeding workmanship of God's Wifedom, and the liberality of his Mercy, formed eyes to our souls, as to our bodies, which, piercing through the impurity of our flesh, behold the highest Heavens, and thence bring Knowledge and Object to the Minde and Soule, to contemplate the ever-during Glory, and termless Joy, prepared for those which retain the Image and similitude of their Creator, preserving undefiled and unrent the garment of the new man, which, after the Image of God, is created in Righteousness, and Holiness, as saith Saint Paul. Now whereas it is thought by some of the Fathers, as by S. Augustine, with whom S. Ambrose S. Ambrose joyneth, that by sin, the perfection of the Image is lost, and not the Image it self; both opinions by this distinction may be well reconciled (to wit) that the Image of God, in man, may be taken two wayes; for either it is considered, according to natural gifts, and consisteth therein: namely, to have a reasonable and understanding nature, &c. and in this sense, the Image of God is more lost by sin, than the very reasonable or understanding nature &c. is lost, (or sin doth not abolish and take away these natural gifts); or the Image of God is considered, according to supernatural gifts, namely, of Divine grace and heavenly Glory, which is indeed the perfection and accomplishment of the natural Image; and this manner of similitude and Image of God is wholly blotted out and destroyed by sin.



*dum in brevi magnam, atq; exiguu totum in terris statuit; God therefore placed in the Earth the man whom he had made, as it were another World; the great and large World in the small and little World: for out of the Earth and Dust was formed the flesh of man, and therefore heaue and lumpish: the bones of his body we may compare to the hard Rocks and Stones, and therefore strong and durable; of which OVID:*

Ovid. Met. l. 1.

*Inde gemis durum sumus, experiensq; laborum,  
Et documenta damus qua sumus origine nati:*

From thence our Kind hard-hearted is, enduring pain and care,  
Approving, that our bodies of a stony nature are.

His blood, which disperseth it self by the branches of veines through all the body, may be resembled to those waters, which are carried by Brooks and Rivers over all the Earth; his breath to the Aire, his naturall heat to the inclosed warmth which the Earth hath in it self, which, stirred up by the heat of the Sun, assisteth Nature in the speedier procreation of those varieties, which the Earth bringeth forth; Our radicall moisture, Oyl, or Balsamum (whereon the naturall heat feedeth and is maintained) is resembled to the fat and fertility of the Earth; the hairs of mans body, which adorne or over-shadows it, to the grafs, which covereth the upper face and skin of the Earth; our generative power, to Nature, which produceth all things; our determinations, to the light, wandering and unstable clouds, carried every where with uncertain winds; our eyes, to the light of the Sun and Moon; and the beauty of our youth, to the flowers of the Spring, which, either in a very short time, or with the Suns heat, dry up and wither away, or the fierce puffs of wind blow them from the stalkes; the thoughts of our mind, to the motion of Angels; and our pure understanding (formerly called *Mens*, and that which alwayes looketh upwards) to those intellectuall natures, which are alwayes present with God; and lastly our immortall soules (while they are righteous) are by God himself beautified with the title of his own Image and similitude. And although, in respect of God, there is no man just, or good, or righteous: for *in Angeli deprehenſa est ſulitia, Behold, he found folly in his Angels* (saith *Job*) yet with such a kind of difference, as there is between the substance and the shadow, there may be found a goodness in man: which God being pleased to accept, hath therefore called man, the image and similitude of his own righteousness. In this also is the little World of man compared, and made more like the universall (man being the measure of all things; *Homo est mensura omnium rerum*, saith *Aristotle* and *Pythagoras*) that the four Complexions resemble the four Elements, and the seven Ages of man the seven Planets: Whereof our infancie is compared to the *Moon*, in which we seem onely to live and grow, as Plants; the second Age to *Mercurie*, wherein we are taught and instructed; our third Age to *Venus*, the dayes of Love, Desire, and Vanitie; the fourth to the *Sun*, the strong, flourishing, and beautifull age of mans life; the fifth to *Mars*, in which we seek honour and victory, and in which our thoughts travail to ambitious ends; the sixth Age is ascribed to *Jupiter*, in which we begin to take account of our times, judge of our selves, and grow to the perfection of our understanding; the last and seventh to *Saturn*, wherein our dayes are sad and over-cast, and in which we find by dear and lamentable experience, and by the loss which can never be repaired, that of all our vain passions and affections past, the sorrow onely abideth: Our attendants are sicknesses, and variable infirmities, and by how much the more we are accompanied with plenty, by so much the more greedily is our end desired, whom when *Time* hath made unfociable to others, we become a burthen to our selves: being of no other use, than to hold the riches we have from our Successors. In this time it is, when (as afore said) we, for the most part, and never before, prepare for our eternall habitation, which we passe on unto with many sighes, groanes, and sad thoughts, and in the end, by the workmanship of death, finish the sorrowfull business of a wretched life: towards which we alwayes travell both sleeping and waking: neither have those beloved companions of honour and riches any power at all to hold us any one day, by the glorious promise of entertainments; but by what crooked path soever we walk, the same leadeth on directly to the house of death, whose doors lye open at all hours, and to all persons. For this tyde of mans life, after it once turneth and declineth, ever runneth with a perpetuall Ebbe and falling Stream, but never floweth again: our Leaf once fallen, springeth no more,

neither

neither doth the Sun or the Summer adorne us again, with the garments of new Leaves and Flowers.

*Redditur arboribus flores; reuiventibus ætas,  
Ergo non homini, quod fuit, ante, redit.*

To which I give this sense.

The Plants and Trees made poor and old But never man repair'd again  
By Winter envious, His youth and beauty lost,  
The Spring-time bounteous Though Art, and care, and cost,  
Covers again from shame and cold: Doe promise Natures help in vain.

And of which,

CATULLUS EPIGRAM. 53.  
*Soles occidere & redire possunt:*

The Sun may set and rise:  
But we contrariwise

*Nobis cum semel occidit brevis lux,  
Nō est perpetua una dormienda.  
Sleep after our short light  
One everlasting night.*

For if there were any baiting place, or rest, in the course or race of mans life, then according to the doctrine of the *Academicke*, the same might also perpetually be maintained; but as there is a continuance of motion in naturall living things, and as the sap and iuyce, wherein the life of Plants is preserved, doth evermore ascend or descend; so is it with the life of man, which is alwayes either increasing towards ripeness and perfection, or declining and decreasing towards rottenness and dissolution.

## §. VI.

Of the free power, which man had in his first Creation, to dispose of himself.

THESE be the miseries which our first Parents brought on all Mankind, unto whom God in his creation gave a free and unconstrained will, and on whom he bestowed the liberall choice of all things, with one onely prohibition, to try his gratitude and obedience. God set before him, a mortall and immortall Life, a nature celestia and terrene, and (indeed) God gave man to himself, to be his own Guide, his own Workman, and his own Painter, that he might frame or describe unto himself what he pleased, and make election of his own form. *God made man in the beginning* (saith *SIRACIDES*) *and left him in the hands of his own counsel*. Such was the liberality of God, and mans felicity: whereas beasts, and all other creatures reasonless, brought with them into the World (saith *Lucilius*) and that even when they first fell from the bodies of their Dams, the nature, which they could not change; and the supernall Spirits or Angels were from the beginning, or soon after, of that condition, in which they remain in perpetuall eternitie. But (as afore said) God gave unto man all kind of Seeds and Grafs of life (to wit) the vegative life of Plants, the sensuall of Beasts, the rational of Man, and the intellectuall of Angels; whereof which soever he took pleasure to plant and culcive, the same should surely grow in him, and bring forth fruit, agreeable to his own choice and plantation. This freedom of the first man *Adam*, and our first Father, was enigamatically described by *Aſclepius Atheniensis* (saith *Mirandula*) in the person and Fable of *Proteus*, who was said, as often as he pleased, to change his shape. To the same end were all those celebrated *Metamorphoses* among the *Pythagorians*, and ancient Poets, wherein it was fained, that men were transformed into diuers shapes of beasts, thereby to shew the change of mens conditions, from Reason to Brutality, from Vertue to Vice, from Meekness to Cruelty, and from Justice to Oppression. For by the lively Image of other creatures did those *Ancients* represent the variable passions, and affections of mortall men; as by Serpents were signified Deceivers; by Lyons, Oppressors, and cruell men; by Swine, Men given over to lust and sensuality; by Wolves, ravening, and greedy men; which also Saint *Matthew* resembleth to false Prophets; which come, to you in sheepes clothing, but inwardly they are ravening Wolves: by the images of stones, and rocks, foolish and ignorant Men; by Vipers, ungratefull Men: of which St. *JOHN BAPTIST* so ye generation of Vipers, &c.

Math. 7. 15.

Math. 3. 7.

## §. VII.

Of Gods ceasing to create any more: and of the cause thereof, because the Univerſall created was exceeding good.

Jhns. 17.

Gen. 1. 28. 29. 24.

IN this work of Man, God finished the Creation; not that God laboured as a man, and therefore rested: for God commanded, and it was finished. *Cui voluisse est fecisse; With whom, to will is to make, saith Beda.* Neither did God so rest, that he left the World made, and the Creatures therein to themselves: for my Father worketh to this day (saith Christ) and I work; but God rested (that is) he created no new species or kinds of creatures, but (as aforeſaid) gave unto man a power generative, and so to the rest of living creatures, and to Plants and Flowers their seeds in themselves; and commanded man to multiply and fill the Earth, and the Earth and Sea to bring forth creatures according to their severall kinds: all which being finished, God saw that his workes were good; not that he foreknew not, and comprehended not the beginning and end before they were; for God made every Plant of the field before it was in the Earth; but he gave to all things which he had created the name of good, thereby to teach men, that from so good a God there was nothing made, but that which was perfect good, and from whose simple purity and from so excellent a cause there could proceed no impure or imperfect effect. For man having a free will and liberall choice, purchased by disobedience his own death and mortality, and for the cruelty of mans heart, was the Earth afterward cursed, and all creatures of the first Age destroyed, but the righteous man Noah and his Family, with those creatures which the Ark contained, reserved by God to replenish the Earth.



## CHAP. III.

Of the place of Paradise.

## §. I.

That the seat of Paradise is greatly mistaken: and that it is no marvell that men should erre.

Concerning the first Habitation of man, we read, that the Lord God planted a Garden Eastward in Eden, and there he put the man whom he made. GEN. 2. 6. Of this seat and place of Paradise, all Ages have held dispute; and the opinions and judgments have been in effect, as divers, among those that have written upon this part of Genesis, as upon any one place therein, seeming most obscure: some there are, that have conceived the being of the terrestriall Paradise, without all regard of the Worlds Geographic, and without any respect of the East and West, or any consideration of the place where Moses wrote, and from whence he directed (by the quarters of the Heavens) the way how to find out and judge, in what Region of the World this Garden was by God planted, wherein he was exceeding respective and precise. Others, by being themselves ignorant in the Hebrew, followed the first Interpretation, or trusting to their own judgments, understood one place for another; and one Error is so fruitfull, as it begetteth a thousand Children, if the licentiousness thereof be not timely restrained. And thirdly, those Writers which gave themselves to follow and imitate others, were in all things so abservant Sectators of those Masters, whom they admired and beleaved in, as they thought it safer to condemn their own understanding, than to examine theirs. For (saith Radianus in his Epistle of Paradise) *Magnum errorem, magnorum virorum autoritate perſuaſum transiimus; We paſſe over many groſſe errors, by the authority of great men led and and perſwaded.* And it is true, that many of the Fathers were far wide from the understanding of this place. I ſpeak it not, that I my ſelf dare preſume to cenſure them, for I reverence both their Learning and their Pietie, and yet not bound to follow them any further, then they are guided by truth: for they were men; *Et homines eſt errare.* And to the end that no man should be proud of himself, God hath distributed unto men such a proportion of Knowledge, as the wisest may behold in themselves their own weakeneſſe:

Nulli

Nulli unquam dedit omnia Deus; God never gave the knowledge of all things to any one. Saint Paul confest that he knew not, whether he were taken up into the third Heaven in the flesh, or out of the flesh; and Christ himself acknowledged thus much, that neither Men, nor Angels knew of the latter day; and therefore, seeing knowledge is infinite, it is God (according to S. Jude) who is only wise. *Sapientia ubi invenitur, (saith Job) but where is wisdom found? and where is the place of understanding? man knoweth not the price thereof, for it is not found in the Land of the living.* And therefore seeing God found folly in his Angels, mens judgements (which inhabit in houses of Clay) cannot be without their mistakings; and so the Fathers, and other learned men, excusable in particulars, especially in those whereupon our salvation dependeth not.

## §. II.

A recitall of strange opinions touching Paradise.

NOW touching Paradise, first it is to be enquired, whether there were a Paradise, or no? or whether Moses description were altogether myſtical, and allegorical? as Origen, Philo, Fran. Georgius, with others have affirmed; and that under the names of those four Rivers, Pijon, Gehon, Hiddekel, and Perath, the Tree of Life, and the Tree of Knowledge, there were delivered unto us other myteries and significations; as, that by the four Rivers were meant the four Cardinal virtues, Justice, Temperance, Fortitude, and Prudence; or (by other) Oyl, Wine, Milke and Honey. This Allegorical understanding of Paradise by Origen divulged, was again by Franciscus Georgius received (saith Sixtus Senensis) whose frivolous imaginations Sixtus himself doth fully and learnedly answer, in the 34. Annotation of his first Book, fol. 328. the last Edition.

S. Ambrose also leaned wholly to the Allegorical construction, and set Paradise in the third Heaven, and in the virtues of the mind, *in nostro principali*, which is, as I conceive it, in mente, or in our soules: to the particulars whereof he alludeth in this sort. By the place or garden of Paradise, was meant the soul or mind; by Adam, Mens, or Understanding; by Eve, the Sense; by the Serpent, Delectation; by the Tree of good and evil, Sapience; & by the rest of the Trees, the virtues of the mind, or in the mind planted, or from thence springing. Notwithstanding all which, upon the first of the Corin. c. 6. he in direct words alloweth both of a celeſtiall and terrestriall Paradise; the one into which S. Paul was wrapt, the other, into which Adam was put by God. Aug. Chrysostomus was of opinion, that a Paradise had been, but that there was not now any mark thereof on the earth: the same being not only defaced, but withall the places now not so much as existing. To which Luther seemeth to adhere.

The Manichees also understood, that by Paradise was meant the whole Earth; to which opinion, Radianus inclineth, as I conceive his words, in two severall places. First, upon this: Fill the earth, GEN. 10. Of which he gives this judgment. *Hoc ipſo etiam quod dixit, Replete terram, dominamini univerſis animantibus, ſubjicite terram, clariſſime docet, totam terram extantem, & omnigenis (ut tum erat) fructibus conſtam, ſedem & hortum illius Ade, & poſteritati ſue futuræ fuiſſe; Theſe words (saith he) in which God ſaid, Bring forth fruit and multiply, fill the earth, and ſubdue it, and rule over every creature, do clearly ſhew, that the Univerſall earth ſet or filled with all ſorts of fruits (as then it was) was the garden and ſeat of ADAM, and of his future poſterity. And afterward he acknowledgeth the place, out of the Acts Cap. 17. Apoſtolus ex uno ſanguine omne genus humanum ideo factum docet, ut habitarent ſuper univerſam faciem terre: tota igitur terra Paradisus ille erat; The Apoſtle (saith he) teacheth, that God hath made of one blood all mankind, to dwell over all the face of the earth: and therefore all the earth (saith he) was that Paradise. Which conjectures I will answer in order. Gropius Becanus differeth not much from this opinion, but yet he acknowledgeth that Adam was first planted by God in one certain place; and peculiar Garden; which place Gropius findeth neer the River of Acelines, in the confines of India.*

Teriullian, Bonaventure, and Durandus, make Paradise under the Equinoſtiall, and Poſtellus, quite contrary, under the North pole: the Chaldeans also for the most part, and all their Sectators, followed the opinion of Origen, or rather Origen theirs, who would either make Paradise a figure, or Sacrament only, or else would have it seated out of this sensible world, or raised into some high and remote Region of the Ayr. Strabus, and

C 3

Radanus

Bed. in Gen.  
Bed. and Peter Comestor,  
Fol. Cantab. 111.  
C. 2.  
Moses Barce. de  
Par.

*Rabanus*, were both sick of this vanity, with *Origen*, and *Philo*: so was our venerable *Bede*, and *Peter Comestor*, and *Moses Barcephas* the Syrian, translated by *Masius*. But as *Hopkins* sayes of *Philo* *Judeus*, that he wondered, *Quo malo genio afflatus*; By what evil Angel he was blown up into this error: so can I not but greatly marvel at the learned men, who so grossely and blindly wandered; seeing *Moses*, and after him the Prophets, do so plainly describe this place, by the Region in which it was planted, by the Kingdoms and Provinces bordering it, by the Rivers which watered it, and by the points of the Compass upon which it lay, in respect of *Judea*, or *Canaan*.

*Noviomagus* also upon *Bede*, *De naturæ rerum*, beleeveth that all the Earth was taken for *Paradise*, and not any one place. For the whole Earth (saith he) hath the same beauty ascribed to *Paradise*. He addeth, that the Ocean was that Fountain, from whence the four Rivers, *Pison*, *Gehon*, *Tigris*, and *Euphrates*, had their beginning: for he could not think it possible, that these Rivers of *Canges*, *Nilus*, *Tigris*, and *Euphrates* (whereof the one ran through *India*, the other through *Egypt*, and the other through *Mesopotamia*, and *Armenia*) could rise out of one Fountain, were it not out of the Fountain of the Ocean.

## §. III.

That there was a true local *Paradise* Eastward, in the Countrey of *Eden*.

Gen. 1. 2.

TO the first therefore, that such a place there was upon the earth, the words of *Moses* make it manifest, where it is written, *And the Lord God planted a Garden Eastward int Eden, and there he put the man whom he had made*: and howsoever the vulgar translation, called *Jeromes* translation, hath converted this place thus, *Plantaverat Dominus Deus Paradisum voluptatis à principio*; he *Lord God* planted a *Paradise* of pleasure from the beginning, putting the word (pleasure) for *Eden*, and (from the beginning) for *Eastward*: it is manifest, that in this place *Eden* is the proper name of a Region. For what sense hath this translation (saith our *Hopkins*, in his Treatise of *Paradise*) that he planted a Garden in pleasure, or that a River went out of pleasure to water the Garden? But the seventy Interpreters call it *Paradisum Edenis*, the *Paradise* of *Eden*, and so doth the *Chaldaean* Paraphrast truly take it for the proper name of a place, and for a Nounne appellative; which Region, in respect of the fertility of the soyle, of the many beautiful Rivers & goodly Woods, and that the Trees (as in the *Indies*) do alwayes keep their leaves, was called *Eden*, which signifieth in the *Hebrew*, pleasantness, or delicacy, as the *Spaniards* call the Countrey, opposite to the Isle of *Cuba*, *Florida*: and this is the mistaking, which may end the dispute, as touching the double sense of the word, that as *Florida* was a Countrey, so called for the flourishing beauty thereof; so was *Eden* a Region called pleasure, or delicacy, for its pleasure, or delicacy: and as *Florida* signifieth flourishings; so *Eden* signifieth pleasure: and yet both are the proper names of Countries; for *Eden* being the proper name of a Region, (called pleasure in the *Hebrew*) and *Paradise* being the choise seat of all that Region, *Paradise* was truly the Garden of *Eden*, and truly the Garden of pleasure.

Now, for *Eastward*, to translate it, from the beginning, it is also contrary to the translation of the Seventy; to the ancient Greeke Fathers, as *Basil*, *Chrysostome*, *Theodore*, *Gregorie*; and to the *Rabines*, as *Ramban*, *R. Abraham*, and *Chimchi*; and of the Latines, *Soverinus*, *Damasceus*, &c. who plainly take *Eden* for the proper name of a Region, and set the word (*Eastward*) for *ab initio*: for *Damasceus* own words are these, *Paradisus est locus Dei manibus in Eden ad Orientem mirabiliter confusus*; *Paradise* is a place, marvellously planted by the hands of God, in *Eden*, toward the East.

And after all these Fathers, *Guilhelmus Parisiensis*, a great learned man, and *Sixtus Senensis*, of latter times, do both understand these words of *Eden* and of the East, contrary to the vulgar Translation; *Parisensis*, as indifferent to both, and *Sixtus Senensis*, directly against the vulgar: of which these are their own words: After this I will begin to speak of *Paradise* terrestrial, which God planted from the beginning, or Eastward, &c. Post hæc incipiam loqui de *Paradiso* terrestri: quæ plantasse Deum ab initio vel ad Orientem &c. And then *Senensis*; *Moses enim clarissime prodit, Paradisum à Deo constum in regione terre Orientalis, quæ dicitur Eden: Eden autem esse proprium nomen apparet ex quo in capite Gen. ubi legimus CHAM habitasse ad Orientalem plagam Eden*; For *Moses* (saith

(saith he) doth shew most clearly, that *Paradise* was planted of God in a Region of the East Countrey, which is called *Heden*: but that *Heden* is a proper name, it appeareth by the fourth Chapter of *Genesis*, where we read, that *CHAM* dwelt on the East border of *Heden*. *PERERUS* endeavourerth to qualifie this Translation; for this particle (saith he) *ab initio*, is referred to all the time of the Creation, and not to the very first day; alledging this place of *Christ*, that although the Devil was said to be a Man-slayer from the beginning, yet that was meant but after the sixth day. But surely, as I think (referring my self to better judgement) the Devil was from the instant of his fall a Man-slayer in disposition, though he had not whereon to practise till mans Creation. And for conclusion, *S. Hieronime* (if that be his translation) adviseth himself better in the end of the third Chapter of *Genesis*, converting the word (*Eden*) by (*antè*) and not (*à principio*) as, *God did set a Cherubin before the Garden of Eden*; Collocavit Deus ante Paradisum voluntatis Cherubin; and *Pererius* himself acknowledgeth, that this is the true sense of this place, precisely taken, according to the *Hebrew*. Posuit à parte orientali horti Eden, Cherubin; He set on the East-side of the Garden of Eden, a Cherubin. *BECANUS* affirmeth, that the *Hebrew* word (*Be*) signifieth (with) as well as (in) and so the Text beareth this sense; That God planted a Garden with pleasure (that is to say) full of pleasure. But *Becanus* followeth this construction, onely to the end, to find *Paradise* upon the River of *Afscius*: for there he hath heard of the *Indian* Fig-tree in great abundance, which he supposeth to be the Tree of knowledge, of good and evil, and would therefore draw *Paradise* to the Fig-Tree: which conceit of his I will answer hereafter.

Now, because *Paradise* was seated by *Moses* toward the East, thence came the custom of praying toward the East, and not by imitation of the *Chaldeans*: and therefore all our Churches are built East and West, as to the point where the Sun riseth in *March*, which is directly over *Paradise* (saith *Damasceus*;) affirming, that we alwayes pray towards the East, as looking towards *Paradise*, whence we were cast out; and yet the Temple of *Solomon* had their Priests and Sacrifices, which turned themselves in their service and divine ceremonies, alwayes towards the West, thereby to avoid the superstition of the *Egyptians* and *Chaldeans*.

But because East and West are but in respect of places; (for although *Paradise* were East from *Judea*, yet it was West from *Persia*) and the serving of God is every where in the world; the matter is not great which way we turn our faces, for our hearts stand right, other than this, that we who dwell West from *Paradise*, and pray turning our selves towards the East, may remember thereby to beseech God, that as by *Adams* fall we have lost the *Paradise* on earth; so by *Christs* death and passion we may be made partakers of the *Paradise* celestial, & the Kingdom of Heaven. To conclude, I conceive, that there was no other mystery in adding the word (*East*) to *Eden* by *Moses*, than to shew, that the Region of *Eden*, in which *Paradise* was, lay Eastward from *Judea* and *Canaan*: for the Scriptures alwayes called the people of those Nations, the Sons of the East, which inhabited *Arabia*, *Mesopotamia*, *Chaldea*, and *Persia*: of which *Ovid*,

*Eurus ad Auroram, Nabateaq; regna rececit,*

*Prisdæq; & radiis juga subdita matutinis*

The East wind with *Aurora* hath building  
Among the *Arabians* and the *Persian* Hills,  
Whom *Phæbus* first salutes at his first rising.

And if it be objected, that *Hieremy* the Prophet, threatening the destruction of *Hierusalem*, doth often make mention of *Northern* Nations, it is to be noted, that the *North* is there named, in respect of those Nations that followed *Nabuchodonosor*, and of whom the greatest part of his Army was compounded; not that *Babylon* it self stood North from *Hierusalem*, though inclining from the East towards the North.

Now to the difference of this Translation, *Peter Comestor* giveth best satisfaction: for so he useth the word, *From the beginning, that is, from the first part of the World*, (*à principio*) id est, (saith he) *à prima orbis parte*; and afterward he affirmeth, that *à principio*, and *ad Orientem*, have the same signification: *From the beginning and Eastward is all one; à principio idem est quod ad Orientem*.

But to return to the proof of this place, and that this story of Mankind was not Allegorical, it followeth in the Text of the 2. Chap. & 9. Verse, in these words: For out of the ground made the Lord God to grow every Tree pleasant to the sight; and good for meat &c. so as first it appeared that God created *Adam* else-where as in the World at large, and then put him into the Garden: and the end why, is express; that he might dress it, and

Repe



Ves. 18.

keep it; *Paradise* being a Garden or Orchard filled with Plants, and Trees, of the most excellent kinds, pleasant to behold, and (withal) good for meat: which proveth that *Paradise* was a terrestrial Garden, garnished with Fruits, delighting both the eye and taste. And to make it more plain, and to take away all opinion of Allegorical construction, he affirmeth that it was watered and beautified with a River; expressing also the Region, out of which this River sprang, which he calleth *Heden*; and that *Heden* is also a Country neer unto *Charon* in *Mesopotamia*, *Ezekiel* witnesseth.

Ver. 10.  
Ezek. 2. 23.

But to all these Cabalists, which draw the Truth and Story of the Scriptures into Allegories, *Epiphanius* answereth in these words: *Si Paradisus non est sensibilis, non est etiam fons, si non est fons, non est flumen, si non est flumen, non sunt quatuor principia, non Pison, non Gehon, non Tigris, nec Euphrates, non est fons, non solia, non comedit Ev. a de arbore, non est ADAM, non sunt homines, sed veritas jam fabula est, & omnia ad Allegorias revocantur; If Paradise be not sensible, then there was no fountain, and then no river; if no river, then no such four heads or branches, and then not any such river, as Pison, or Gehon, Tigris, or Euphrates, no such fig-tree, or fruit, or leaves; Eve then did not eat of the fruit, neither was there any ADAM, or any man, the truth was but a fable, and all things esteemed are called back into Allegories. Words to the same effect hath S. Hierome upon DANIEL: Contiteant eorum deliramenta, qui umbras & imagines in veritate sequentes, ipsam conantur evertere veritatem, ut Paradisum & flumina, & arbores putant Allegoriae Legibus se debere subire: Let the dotage of them be silent, who following shadows and images in the truth, endeavour to subvert the truth it self, and think that they ought to bring Paradise, and the Rivers, & the Trees under the Rules of Allegory.*

Ezek. 31. 5.

Furthermore, by the continuation and order of the Story, is the place made more manifest. For, God gave *Adam* free liberty to eat of every Tree of the Garden, (the Tree of knowledge excepted) which Trees *Moses* in the ninth verse saith that they were good to eat; meaning the fruit which they bare. Besides, God left all beasts to *ADAM* to be named, which he had formerly made; and these beasts were neither in the third heaven, nor neer the circle of the Moon, nor beasts in imagination: for if all these things were Enigmatical or mytical, the same might also be said of the creation of all things. And *Ezekiel*, speaking of the glory of the Assyrian Kings, useth this speech: *All the Trees of Eden, which were in the Garden of God, envied him*; which proveth both *Eden*, and *Paradise* therein seated, to be terrestrial: for the Prophets made no imaginary comparisons. But *Moses* wrote plainly, and in a simple stile, fit for the capacities of ignorant men, and he was more large and precise in the description of *Paradise*, than in any other place of Scripture; of purpose to take away all scruple from the incredulity of future ages, whom he knew (out of the gift of Prophecy) to be apt to fabulous inventions, and that if he had not described both the Region and the Rivers, and how it stood from *Canaan*, many of the unbelieving Israelites, and others after them, would have misconstrued this Story of Mankind. And is it likely, there would have been so often mention made of *Paradise* in the Scriptures, if the same had been an *Utopia*? For we finde that the Valley, wherein *Sodom* and *Gomorrah* stood, (sometimes called *Pentapolis*, of the five principal Cities therein) was before the destruction (which their unnatural sin purchased) compared to the *Paradise* of the Lord, and like to the Land of Egypt toward Zoar: In like manner was Israel resembled to the *Paradise* of God, before the Babylonians wasted it: which proveth plainly, that *Paradise* it self exceeded in beauty and fertility, and that these places had but a resemblance thereof: being compared to a seat and soyle of far exceeding excellency.

Gen. 13. 10.

Besides, whence had *Hom*er his invention of *Aleionous* Gardens, as *Justin Martyr* noteth, but out of *Moses* his description of *Paradise*? *Gen. 2.* and whence are their praises of the Elizian fields, but out of the story of *Paradise*? to which also appertain those Verses of the Golden Age in *Ovid*:

Ovid. Metam. 1. 2.

*Ver erat aeternum, placidique repentibus antris  
Molcebant Zephyri nati sine semine flores.*

The joyful Spring did ever last, | Sweet flowers by his gentle blast,  
And Zephyrus did breed | Without the help of Seed.

And it is manifest, that *Orpheus*, *Linus*, *Pindarus*, *Hesiodus*, and *Hom*er, and after him, *Ovid*, one out of another, and all these together with *Pythagoras* and *Plato*, and their

Secta.

Sectatours, did greatly enrich their inventions, by venting the stolne Treasures of Divine Letters, altered by prophane additions, and disguised by poetical conversions, as if they had bin conceived out of their owne speculations and contemplations.

But besides all these testimonies, if wee finde what Region *Heden* or *Eden* was; if we prove the River that ran out of it, and that the same afterwards was divided into foure Branches; together with the kingdomes of *Havila* and *Cush*, and that all these are Eastward from *Canaan*, or the Desarts of the *Amorites*, where *Moses* wrote; I then conceive that there is no man that will doubt, but that such a place there was. And yet I doe not exclude the Allegorical sense of the Scripture; for as well in this there were many figures of Christ, as in all the old Testament throughout: the Storie being directly true notwithstanding. And to this purpose (saith Saint *Augustine*) *Tres sunt de Paradiso generalis sententiae: una est eorum, qui tantummodo corporaliter Paradisum intelligi volunt: alia eorum, qui spiritualiter tantum (id est) Ecclesiam: tertia eorum, qui utroque modo Paradisum accipiunt.* (that is) There are three opinions of *Paradise*: the one of those men, which will have it altogether corporal: a second of those, which conceive it altogether spiritual, and to be a figure of the Church: the third of those which take it in both senses; which third opinion S. *Augustine* approveth, and of which *Suidas* giveth this allowable judgement: *Quemadmodum homo sensibilis, & intelligibilis simul conditus erat: sic & huius sanctissimum Suidas in verbo nomen sensibile simul & intelligibile, & duplici specie est praeclatum; (that is) As man was created at one time both sensible and intelligible, so was this holy Grove or Garden to be taken both wayes, and endured with a double forme.*

## §. IV.

Why it should be needful to intreat diligently of the place of *Paradise*.

BUT it may be objected, that it is needlesse, and a kind of curiositie to enquire so diligently after this place of *Paradise*, and that the knowledge thereof is of little or no use. To which I answer, that there is nothing written in the Scripture, but for our instruction; and if the truth of the Storie be necessary, then by the place proved, the same is also made more apparent. For if we should conceive that *Paradise* were not on the Earth, but lifted up as high as the Moone; or that it were beyond all the Ocean, and in no part of the known World, from whence *Adam* was said to wade through the Sea, and thence to have come into *Judea*, (out of doubt) there would be few men in the World, that would give any credit unto it. For what could seeme more ridiculous than the report of such a place? and besides, what maketh this seat of *Paradise* so much disputed and doubted of, but the conceit that *Pison* should be *Ganges*, which watereth the East *India*, and *Gehon*, *Nilus*, which enricheth *Egypt* and these two Rivers so farre distant, as (except all the World were *Paradise*) these streames can no way be comprised therein?

Secondly, if the birth and works, and death of our Saviour, were said to have beene in some such Country, of which no man ever heard tell, and that his Miracles had bin performed in the Ayre, or no place certainly knowne: I assure my selfe, that the Christian Religion would have taken but a slender root in the minds of men: for times and places are approved witnessers of worldly actions.

Thirdly, if we should rely, or give place to the judgement of some Writers upon this place of *Gensis* (though otherwise for their doctrine in general, they are worthy of honour and reverence) I say that there is no fable among the *Grecians* or *Egyptians* more ridiculous: for who would beleeve that there were a piece of the World so set by it selfe and separated as to hang in the Ayre under the circle of the Moone? or who so bold as to conceive, that from thence the foure Rivers of *Ganges*, *Nilus*, *Euphrates*, and *Tigris*, should fall down, and run under all the Ocean, and rise up againe in this our habitable world, and in those places where they are now found? Which lest any man think that I enforce or strain to the world, these are *Peter Comestor*'s own words, *Est autem locus amenissimus, longo terre & maris tractu a nostra habitabili Zona secretus addo elevatur, ut usque ad lunarem globum attingat, &c.* (that is) It is a most pleasant place, covered from our habitable Zone by a long tract of Land and Sea, elevated so that it reacheth to the globe of the Moone.

And *Moses Barcephas* upon this place writeth in this manner: *Deinde hoc quoque responsum Barce. convert. ed by Majors.*



volumus, Paradisum multo sublimiore positum esse regione, atq; hac aestra exister terra, eaq; sit-  
crunt illinc per precipitum delabantur iuvit tanto cum impetu, quantum verbis exprime non  
possis; eaq; impetu impulsu pressis; sub Oceani vado rapiuntur, unde rursus proflantibus ebulliant;  
in hoc nobis culto orbe: which have this sense: Furthermore (saith he) we give this for an  
answer, that Paradise is set in a Region farre raised above this part which wee inhabit; where-  
by it comes to passe, that from thence these rivers fall downe with such a headlong violence, as  
records cannot expresse; and with that force so impulsed and prest, they are carried under the  
deep Ocean, and do again rise and boyle up in this our habitable World: and to this he  
addeth the opinion of Ephram, which is this. Ephram dicit Paradisum ambire terram, atq;  
utitur Oceanum ita positum esse, ut totum terrarum orbem ab omni circumdet regione, non alter  
atq; Luna orbis Lunam cingit; (which is) that Paradise doth compass or embrace the whole  
Earth, and is so set beyond the Ocean Sea, as it environeth the whole Orbe of the Earth on  
every side, as the Orbe of the Moon doth embrace the Moone. To the end therefore that these  
ridiculous expositions and opinions doe not bring question unto Truth it selfe, or  
make the same subject to doubts or disputes, it is necessary to discover the true place  
of Paradise, which God in his wisdom appointed in the very Navell of this our World,  
and (as Melancthon saies) in parte Terrae meliore, in the best part thereof, that from thence,  
as from a Center, the Universall might be filled with people and planted; and by  
knowing this place, we shall the better judge of the beginning of Nations, and of the  
worlds inhabitation: for neere unto this did the Sons of Noah also disperse themselves  
after the flood into all other remote regions and countries. And if it be a generous de-  
sire in men, to know from whence their owne forefathers have come, and out of what  
regions and Nations, it cannot be displeasing to understand the place of our first An-  
cestor, from whence all the streames and branches of Mankind have followed and bin  
deduced. If then it doe appeare by the former, that such a place there was as Paradise,  
and that the knowledge of this place cannot be unprofitable, it followeth in order to  
examine several opinions before remembered, by the Truth it selfe; and to see how they  
agree with the sense of the Scripture, and with common reason, and afterward to prove  
directly, and to delineate the Region in which God first planted this delightful Garden.

## §. V.

That the Flood hath not utterly defaced the marks of Paradise, nor caused Hills in the Earth.

And first, whereas it is supposed by Aug. Chrysostomus, that the Flood hath altered,  
deformed, or rather annihilated this place, in such sort, as no man can find any  
marke or memorie thereof: (of which opinion there were others also, ascribing to the  
Flood the cause of those high Mountaines, which are found on all the Earth over, with  
many other strange effects) for mine own opinion, I think neither the one nor the other  
to be true. For although I cannot deny, but that the face of Paradise was after the Flood  
withered, and grown old, in respect of the first beautie: (for both the ages of men,  
and the nature of all things Time hath changed) yet if there had beene no signe of  
any such place, or if the soile and feate had not remained, then would not Moses,  
who wrote of Paradise about 850. years after the Flood, have described it so par-  
ticularly, and the Prophets long after Moses would not have made so often mention  
thereof. And though the very Garden it selfe were not then to be found, but that  
the Flood, and other accidents of time made it one common field and pasture with  
the Land of Eden, yet the place is still the same, and the Rivers still remaine the  
same Rivers. By two of which (never doubted of) to wit Tygris and Euphrates, we are  
sure to finde in what longitude Paradise lay; and learning out one of these Rivers,  
which afterward doth divide it selfe into foure branches, we are sure that the parti-  
tion is at the very border of the Garden it selfe. For it is written, that out of Eden went  
a River to water the Garden, and from thence it was divided and became into foure  
heads; Now whether the word in the Latine Translation (*Inde*) from thence, be refer-  
red to Eden it selfe, or to Paradise, yet the division and branching of those rivers must  
be in the North or South side of the very Garden (if the rivers run as they doe, North  
and South) & therefore these rivers yet remaining, & Eden manifestly known, there could  
be no such defacing by the Flood, as is supposed. Furthermore, as there is no likelihood,  
that

Gen. 2.10.

that the place could be so altered as future ages knew it not, so is there no probability  
that either these Rivers were turned out of their courses, or new rivers created by the  
Flood which were not, or that the Flood (as aforesaid) by a violent motion, when it  
began to decrease, was the cause of high Hills or deep Valleys. For what descent of wa-  
ters could there be in a Spherical and round body, wherein there is nor high nor low?  
seeing that all violent force of waters is either by the strength of winde, by descent  
from a higher to a lower, or by the ebb or flood of the Sea. But that there was any wind  
(whereby the Seas are most enraged) it appeareth not, rather the contrary is probable:  
for it is written, Therefore God made a winde to pass upon the Earth, and the waters ceased. Gen. 8.1.  
So as it appeareth not, that, until the waters sank, there was any winde at all, but that  
God afterward, out of his goodness, caused the winde to blow, to dry up the abundant  
slime and mud of the Earth, and make the Land more firm, and to cleanse the Aire of  
thick vapours, and unwholsome mists: and this we know by experience, that all down-  
right rains do evermore disperse the violence of outrageous winds, and beat down, and  
level the swelling and mountainous billow of the Sea: for any ebbs and floods there  
could be none, when the waters were equal and of one height over all the face of the  
Earth, and when there were no Indraraohs, Bays, or Gulfs to receive a Flood, or any  
descent, or violent falling of waters in the round form of the Earth and Waters, as  
aforesaid: and therefore it seemeth most agreeable to reason, that the waters rather  
stood in a quiet calm, than that they moved with any raging or overbearing violence.  
And for a more direct proofe that the Flood made no such destroying alteration, Jo-  
sephus avoweth that one of those pillars erected by Seth, the third from Adam, was to be  
seen in his daies; which pillars were set up above 1426. years before the Flood, count-  
ing Seth to be an hundred years old at the erection of them; and Joseph himselfe to have  
lived some forty or fifty years after Christ: of whom although there be no cause to be-  
lieve all that he wrote, yet that which he avouched of his own time, cannot (without  
great derogation) be called in question. And therefore it may be possible, that some  
foundation or ruine thereof might then be seen. Now that such pillars were raised by  
Seth, all Antiquity hath avowed. It is also written in Berose (to whom although I give  
little credit, yet I cannot condemn him in all) that the city of Enoch, built by Cain  
about the mountains of Libanus, was not defaced by length of time: yea the ruines  
thereof Amnius (who commented upon that invented fragment) saith, were to be seen  
in his daies, who lived in the reign of Ferdinand and Isabella of Castile. And if these  
his words be not true, then was he exceeding impudent: for, speaking of this City of  
Enoch, he concludeth in this sort: *Cujus maxima & ingentis molis fundamenta visuntur,*  
*& vocatur ab incolis regionis, Civitas Cain, ut nostri mercatores, & peregrini referunt;* The  
foundation of which huge Mass is now to be seen, and the place is called by the people of that Re-  
gion, the City of Cain, as both our strangers and Merchants report. It is also avowed by Pon-  
ponius Mela (to whom I give more credit in these things) that the City of Joppa was  
built before the Flood, over which Cepha was King: whose name, with his brother Phi-  
neus, together with the grounds and principles of their Religion, was found graven up-  
on certain altars of stone. And it is not impossible, that the ruines of this other Citie,  
called Enoch by Amnius, might be seen, though founded in the first Age: but it could  
not be of the first City of the World, built by Cain, the place rather than the time de-  
nying it.

And to prove directly that the Flood was not the cause of mountaines, but that there  
were mountaines from the Creation, it is written, that the waters of the Flood overflowed by Gen. 4.17.  
fifteen Cubits the highest Mountaines. And Masius Damascenus, speaking of the flood, writ-  
teth in this manner: *Est supra Minyadam excelsus mons in Armenia (qui Baris appellatur) in*  
*quo confugientes multos sermo est diluvii tempore liberatos. And upon Minyada there is an high*  
*Mountain in Armenia (called Baris) unto which (as it is said) that many fled in the time of the*  
*Deluge, and that they saved themselves thereon.* Now although it is contrary to Gods  
Word, that any more were saved than eight persons (which Masius doth not avouch,  
but by report) yet it is a testimony, that such Mountaines were before the Flood, which  
were afterwards, and ever since, knowne by the same names; and on which Moun-  
tains it is generally received that the Arke rested: but truly, as I shall prove here-  
after. And again it appeareth, that the Mount Sion (though by another name) was  
known before the Flood; on which the Thalmudists report, that many Giants saved them-  
them

themselves also; but, as *Annius* saith, without all authority, either divine or humane. Lastly, it appeareth that the Flood did not so turn upside down the face of the Earth, as thereby it was made past knowledge, after the waters were decreased, by this, that when *NOAH* sent out the Dove the second time, she returned with an Olive leaf in her mouth, which he had plucked, and which (until the Trees were discovered) he found not; for otherwise he might have found them floating on the water; a manifest proof, that the Trees were not torn up by the roots, nor swam upon the waters, for it is written: *folium Olive, raptum or decerpum, a leaf pluckt*, (which is) to take from a Tree, or to tear off. By this it is apparent, (there being nothing written to the contrary) that the Flood made no such alteration, as was supposed, but that the place of Paradise might be seen to succeeding Ages, especially unto *Moses*, by whom it pleased God to teach the truth of the Worlds Creation, and unto the Prophets which succeeded him: both which I take for my warrant, and to guide me in this Discovery.

## §. VI.

That Paradise was not the whole Earth, as some have thought: making the Ocean to be the fountain of those four Rivers.

THIS conceit of *Aug. Chysamenis* being answered, who onely giveth his opinion for reason, I will in a few words examine that of the Manichees, of *Noviomagus*, *Vadianus*, *Coropius*, *Becanus*, and all those that understood, that by Paradise was meant the whole Earth. But in this I shall not trouble the Reader with many words, because by those places of Scripture formerly remembred, this Universality will appear altogether improper. The places which *Vadianus* alledgeth, *Bring forth fruit and multiply, fill the Earth and subdue it, rule over every Creature, &c.* with this of the *Acts*, and hath made of one blood all Mankind, to dwell on all the face of the Earth, do no way prove such a generality: for the World was made for man, of which he was Lord and Governour, and all things therein were ordained of God for his use. Now although all men were of one and the same fountain of blood originally; and *Adam's* posterity inhabited in process of time over all the face of the earth; yet it disproveth in nothing the particular Garden, assigned to *Adam*, to dress and cultivate, in which he lived in so blessed an estate before his transgression. For if there had been no other choyce, but that *Adam* had bin left to the Universal; *Moses* would not then have said, *Eastward in Eden*, seeing the World hath not East nor West but respectively. And to what end had the Angel of God been set to keep the East-side, and entrance into Paradise after *Adam's* expulsion, if the Universal had been Paradise? for then must *Adam* have been chased also out of the World. For if all the earth were Paradise, that place can receive no better construction than this, That *Adam* was driven out of the World into the World, and out of Paradise into Paradise, except we should believe with *Metrodorus*, that there were infinite Worlds. Which to deny, he thinks all one, as to affirm, *That in so large a field, as the Universal, there should grow but one Thistle*. *NOVIOMAGUS* upon *Beda*, seemeth to be led by this, that it was impossible for those three Rivers, *Ganges*, *Nilus*, and *Euphrates* (which water three portions of the World so far distant) to rise out of one Fountaine, except the Ocean be taken for the Well, and the World for the Garden.

And it is true, that those four Rivers, being so understood, there could be no conjecture more probable; but it shall plainly appear, that *Pison* was fallily taken for *Ganges*, and *Gehon* fallily for *Nilus*, although *Ganges* be a River by *Havilah* in *India*, and *Nilus* run through *Ethiopia*. The *Seventy* write *Chus* for *Ethiopia*, and thereby the errors of the Manichees, and the mistakings of *Noviomagus*, *Coropius*, and *Vadianus*, with others, are made manifest. Yet was their conjecture far more probable, than that of *Ephrem*, *Cyrillus*, and *Athanasius*: That Paradise was seated far beyond the Ocean Sea, and that *Adam* waded through it, and at last came toward the Country in which he was created, and was buried at Mount Calvary in Hierusalem. And certainly, though all those of the first Age were of great stature, and so continued many years after the Flood, yet *Adam's* thin-bones must have contained a thousand sadome, and much more, if he had forded the Ocean; but this opinion is so ridiculous, as it needs no argument to disprove it.

## §. VII.

## §. VII.

of their opinion which make Paradise as high as the Moon: and of others, which make it higher than the Middle Region of the Ayre.

THIRDLY, whereas *Beda* saith, and as the Schoolemen affirme, Paradise to be a Place altogether removed from the knowledge of men, (*locus a cognitione hominum remotissimus*) and *Barcephas* conceived, that Paradise was far in the East, but mounted above the Ocean, and all the Earth, and neer the Orbe of the Moone (which opinion, though the Schoolemen charge *Beda* withall, yet *Pererius* layes it off from *Beda* upon *Strabur*, and his Master *Rabanus*;) and whereas *Rupertus*, in his Geographie of Paradise, doth not much differ from the rest, but findes it seated next or neerest heaven; It may seeme, that all these borrowed this doctrine out of *Plato*, and *Plato* out of *Socrates*: but neither of them (as I conceive) well understood; who (undoubtedly) tooke this place for Heaven it selfe, into which the Soules of the blessed were carried after death.

True it is, that these Philosophers durst not for feare of the *Areopagites* (in this and many other divine apprehensions) set downe what they beleaved in plain termes, especially *Plato*: though *Socrates* in the end suffered death for acknowledging one onely powerful God; and therefore did the Devil himselfe doe him that right, as by an Oracle, to pronounce him the wisest man. *Justine Martyr* affirmeth, that *Plato* had read the Scriptures; and *S. Augustine* gave this judgement of him, as his opinion, that (few things changed) he might be counted a Christian. And it seemeth to me, that both *Terullian* and *Ensebius* conceive, that *Socrates*, by that place aforesaid, meant the celestiall Paradise, and not this of *Eden*. *Solimus*, I grant, reporteth, that there is a place exceeding delightfull, and healthfull upon the top of Mount *Atho* (called *Acrothonos*) which being above all Clouds of Raine, or other inconvenience, the people (by reason of their so many yeeres) are called *Macrobiei* (that is) *Long-lived*. A further Argument is used, for proove of the height of this place, because therein was *Enoch* preserved from the violence of the Flood: approved by *Isidore*, and *Peter Lombard*: in which place also *Terullian* conceived, that the blessed Soules were preserved till the last judgement; which *Irenaeus* and *Justine Martyr* also beleaved. But this opinion was of all *Catholicque Divines* reproved, and in the *Florentine Councell* damned; of which *Saint Augustine* more modestly gave this judgment: *Sicut certum est, ENOCH and ELIAS nunc vivere: ita ubi nunc sunt: an in Paradiso an alibi, incertum est*; (that is) *As it is certaine that ENOCH and ELIAS doe now live, so where they live, in Paradiso or elsewhere it is uncertaine*. But *Barcephas* gives a third cause, though of all other the weakest. For (saith he) it was necessary that Paradise should be set at such a distance and height, because the foure Rivers (had they not fallen so precipitate) could not have had sufficient force to have thrust themselves under the great Ocean, and afterward have forced their passage through the earth, and have risen again in the farre distant Regions of *India*, *Egypt*, and *Armenia*.

These strange fancies and dreams have been answered by divers learned men long since, and lately by *Hopkins*, and *Pererius*, writing upon this subject; of whose arguments I will repeat these few: for to use long discourse against those things, which are both against Scripture and Reason, might rightly be judged a vanity in the Answerer, not much inferior to that of the Inveniter.

It is first therefore alledged, that such a place cannot be commodious to live in: for being set so neere the Moone, it had bene too neer the Sun, and other heavenly bodies. Secondly, because it must have been too joynct a Neighbour to the Element of fire. Thirdly, because the ayre in that Region is so violently moved, and carried about with such swiftness, as nothing in that place can consist or have abiding. Fourthly, because the place between the Earth and the Moon (according to *Ptolomie* and *Alfraganus*) is seventeen times the Diameter of the Earth, which makes in a gross account about one hundred and twenty thousand miles. Hereupon it must follow, that Paradise, being raised to this height, must have the compasse of the whole earth for a Basis and foundation. But had it bene so raised, it could hardly be hidden from the knowledge, or eyes of men: seeing it would deprive us of the Suns light, all the fore-part

Cicero Summ. Scip.

of the day, being seated in the East, as they suppose. Now, to fortifie the former opinions, *Tostatus* addeth this, that those people which dwell neer those fairs of waters, are deaf from their infancy, like those that dwell neer the *Catadupa*, or over-falls of Nilus. But this I hold as feigned. For I have seen in the Indies, far greater water-falls, than those of Nilus, and yet the people dwelling neer them are not deaf at all. *Tostatus* (the better to strengthen himself) citeth *Basili* and *Ambrose* together: to which *Perrine*, *Agrippa* hee *quod Basilius & Ambrosius in eorum scriptis, quae nunc extant, nusquam malege memini*; But I do not remember (saith he) that I ever read those things either in *Basili* or *Ambrose*.

1 Cor. 15. 56. 51

1 Pet. 3. 20.

Gen. 7. 19.

Ezech. 14. 21.

But for the bodies of *Enoch* and *Elias*; God hath disposed of them according to his wisdom. Their taking up might be into the celestial *Paradise*, for ought we know. For although flesh and blood, subject to corruption, cannot inherit the Kingdom of heaven, and the seed must rot in the ground before it grow, yet we shall not all die (saith Saint *Paul*) but all shall be changed: which change in *Enoch* and *Elias*, was easie to him that is Almighty. But for the rest, the Scriptures are manifest, that by the Flood all perished on the earth, saving 8 persons; and therefore in the terrestrial *Paradise* they could not be. For *Tostatus* his own opinion, who soared not altogether so high as the rest, but believed that *Paradise* was raised above the middle Region of the Aire, and twenty cubits above all Mountains, that the Flood did not therefore reach it: (which *Scotus* and other latter School-men also believed; for, say they, there were no sinners in *Paradise*, and therefore no cause to overwhelm it;) this is also contrary to the expresse letter of the Scripture, which directly, and without admitting of any distinction, teacheth us, that the waters over-flooded all the mountains under heaven. And were it otherwise, then might we aswell give credit to *Masius*, *Damasceus*, and the *Thalmudists*, who affirme, that there were of the Giants that saved themselves on the Mountain *Baris*, and on *Sion*. But to help this, *Scotus*, being (as the rest of the Schoolmen are) full of distinction, saith; That the waters stood at *Paradise*, as they did in the Red Sea, and at *Jordan*; and as the Flood was not natural, so was *Paradise* saved by miracle. And *Thomas Aquinas* qualifyeth this high conceit with this supposition, That it was not believed, that *Paradise* was so seated, as *Beda* and others seem to affirme in words, but by *Hyperbole* and comparatively, for the delicacy and beauty so resembled. But this I dare avow of all those School-men, that though they were exceeding witty, yet they better teach all their Followers to flit, than to resolve by their distinctions. Wherefore not to stay long in answering this opinion of *Tostatus*, I confesse that it is written, that the Mountains of *Olympus*, *Atho*, and *Atlas*, over-reach and surmount all windes and clouds, and that (notwithstanding) there is found on the heads of the Hills both springs and fruits; and the Pagan Priests, sacrificing on these mountain tops, do not find the aethers (remaining of their sacrifices) blown thence, nor thence waite off by rains, when they returne: yet experience hath resolved us, that these reports are fabulous; and *Pliny* himself (who was not sparing in the report of wonders) avoweth the contrary. But were it granted, yet the height of these Mountains is far under the supposed place of *Paradise*; and on these self Hills the aire is so thin (saith *S. Augustine*, whom herein I mistrust) that it is not sufficient to bear up the body of a bird, having therein no feeling of her wings, or any sensible resistance of aire to mount her self by.

## §. VIII.

Of their opinion that seat *Paradise* under the *Equinoctial*: and of the pleasant habitation under those Climats.

Those which come neerer unto Reason, finde *Paradise* under the *Equinoctial* line, as *Tertullian*, *Bonaventure*, and *Durandus*: judging, that thereunder might be found most pleasure, and the greatest fertility of soile: but against it *Thomas Aquinas* objecteth the distemperate heat, which he supposeth to be in all places so directly under the Sunne; but this is (*non causa pro causa*), for although *Paradise* could not be under the Line, because *Eden* is far from it, in which *Paradise* was; and because there is no part of *Euphrates*, *Tygris*, or *Ganges* under it, (*Ganges* being one of the foure rivers, as they suppose) yet this conceit of distemper, (being but an old opinion) is found to be very untrue, though for the conjecture not to be condemned, considering the age when those Fathers wrote, grounded chiefly on this: that whereas

it

it appeared, that every Country, as it lay by degrees neerer the Tropick, and so toward the *Equinoctial*, did so much the more exceed in heat; it was therefore a reasonable conjecture, that those Countries which were situated directly under it, were of a distemper uninhabitable: but it seemeth that *Tertullian* conceived better, and so did *Avicenne*, for they both thought them habitable enough; and though (perchance) in those daies it might be thought a fantastical opinion (as all are which go against the vulgar) yet we now finde, that if there be any place upon the earth of that nature, beauty, and delight that *Paradise* had, the same must be found within that supposed uninhabitable burnt Zone, or within the Tropicks, and neerer to the line it self. For here, 10 of Experience hath informed Reason, and Time hath made those things apparent, which were hidden and could not by any contemplation be discovered. Indeed it hath to pleased God to provide for all living creatures, wherewith he hath filled the world, that such inconveniences which we contemplate a far off, are found by trial and the witness of men's travails, to be so qualified, as there is no portion of the earth made in vain, or as a fruitless lump to fashion out the rest. For God himself (saith *Isa. 45. 18*) that he formed the earth and made it, he that prepared it, he created it not in vain, he formed it to be inhabited. Now we finde that these hottest Regions of the world, seated under the *Equinoctial* line, or neer it, are so refreshed with a daily gale of Easterly winde (which the Spaniards call the *Brize*) that doth evermore blow strongest in the heat of the day, 20 as the down-right beams of the Sun cannot so much master it, that there is any inconvenience or distemperate heat found thereby. Secondly, the nights are so cold, fresh, and equal, by reason of the entire interposition of the earth, as (for those places which my self have seen, neer the Line and under it) I know no other part of the World of better, or equal temper: Only there are some tracts, which by accident of high Mountains are barred from this ayre and fresh winde, and some few sandy parts without trees, which are not therefore so well inhabited as the rest; and such difference of soils we finde all over all other parts of the world. But (for the greatest part) those Regions have so many goodly Rivers, Fountains, and little Brookes, abundance of high Cedars, and other stately trees, casting shade, so many sorts of delicate fruits, ever bearing, and at all times beautified with blossom and fruit both green and ripe, as it may of all other parts be best compared to the *Paradise* of *Eden*: the boughs and branches are never unclad and left naked, their sap creepeth not under ground into the root, fearing the injury of the frost: neither doth *Romana* any time despoil her withered Husband *Vernumus*, in his winter-quarters and old age. Therefore are these Countries called *Terre viciose*, *Viciose Countries*: for Nature being liberal to all without labour, necessity imposing no industry or travel, idleness bringeth forth no other fruits than vain thoughts, and licentious pleasures. So that to conclude this part, *Tertullian* and those of his opinion, were not deceived in the nature of the place: but *Aquinas*, who misliked this opinion, and followed a worse. And (to say the truth) all the Schoolmen 40 were gross in this particular.

Of the change of the names of places: and that besides that *Eden* in *Calogryia*, there is a Country in *Babylon*, once of this name, as is proved out of *Esa. 37. 37* and *Ezek. 47.*

These opinions answered, and the region of *Eden* not found in any of those imaginary worlds, nor under *Torrida Zona* yet followeth what now we discover and find out the seat thereof, for in it was *Paradise* by God planned: The difficulty of which search resteth chiefly in this, That as all Nations have often changed names with their Masters; so are most of these places, by *Moses* remembred, forgotten by those names of all Historians and Geographers, as well ancient as modern. Besides, we finde that the *Assyrians*, *Babylonians*, *Arabs*, and *Perians* (Cyren only and a few other excepted) sought to extinguish the Hebrews: The *Circians* had both their Nation and their Religion; and the *Romans* despised once to remember them in any of their Stories. And as those three Monarchies destroyed each other: so did they transform the names of all these principal Places and Cities in the East: and after them, the *Turks* hath sought (what he could) to extinguish all things, the ancient memory of those people; which he hath subjected and enrolled.

D 2

Now

Now besides those notable marks, *Euphrates* and *Tygris*, the better to finde the way which leadeth to the Country of *Eden*, we are to take for guides these two considerations (to wit) That it lay Eastward from *Canaan* and *Judea*; and that it was of all other the most beautiful and fertile. First then in respect of situation, the next Country to *Judea* Eastward was *Arabia Petraea*; but in this Region was *Moses* himself when he wrote: and the next unto it Eastward also was *Arabia* the *Desart*, both which in respect of the infertility could not be *Eden*; neither have any of the *Arabians* any such Rivers, as are exprest to run out of it: So as it followeth of necessity, that *Eden* must be Eastward, and beyond both *Arabia Petraea*, and *Deserta*. But because *Eden* is by *Moses* named by it self, and by the fertility, and the rivers onely described, we must seek it in other Scriptures, and where it is by the additions of the neighbour Nations better described. In the Prophet *Isay* I find it coupled and accompanied with other adjacent Countries; in these words; spoken in the person of *Senacherib* by *RABSAKEH*: Have the gods of the Nations delivered them, which my Father hath destroyed, as *GOSAN*, and *HARAN*, and *RESEPH*, and the children of *EDEN*, which were at *Telaasar* and in *Ezechieh*, where he prophesieth against the *Tyrians*: They of *Haran*, and *Canneh*, and *Eden*, the merchants of *Sheba*, *Affur*, and *Chilmad*, were thy merchants, &c.

But to avoid confusion, we must understand that there were two *Edens*, one of which the Prophet *Amos* remembereth, where he divideth *Syria* into three Provinces, whereof the first he maketh *Syria Damasene*, or *Decapolitan*: the second part is that Valley called *Avenic*, otherwise *Conualth*, or the tract of *Chamath*, where *Affyria* is joyned to *Arabia* the *Desart*, and where *Ptolomie* placeth the City of *Averia*: and the third is knowne by the name of *Domus Edens*, or *Coslofrya*, otherwise *Vallis caua*, or the hollow Valley, because the mountains of *Libanus* and *Antilibanus*, take all the length of it on both sides, and border it: for *Cosleim* Greek is *Cava* in *Latine*. But this is not that *Eden*, which we seek: neither doth this Province lie East from *Canaan*, but North, and so joyneth unto it, as it could not be unknown to the *Hebrews*. Yet, because there is a little City therein called *Paradise*, the *Hebrews* believed this *Coslofrya* to be the same which *Moses* describeth. For the same cause doth *Hophing* in his Treatise of *Paradise* reprehend *Beroldus*, in that he confoundeth this *Eden*, with the other *Eden* of *Paradise*, though, to give *Beroldus* his right, I conceive that he led the way to *Hophing*, and to all other later Writers, saying: That he failed in distinguishing these two Regions, both called *Eden*: and that he altogether mis-understood two of the four Rivers (to wit) *Pison* and *Gihon*, as shall appear hereafter. Now to finde out *Eden*, which (as *Moses* teacheth us) lay Eastward from the *Desarts*, where he wrote, after he had passed the Red Sea; we must consider where those other Countries are found, which the Prophet *Isay* and *Ezechieh* joyneth with it. For (saith *Esaias*) *Gosun*, *Haran*, and *Reseph*, and the children of *Eden*, which were at *Telaasar*. Also *Ezechieh* joyneth *Haran* with *Eden*, who together with those of *Sheba*, *Affur*, and *Chilmad*, were the Merchants that traded with the City of *Tyre*, which was then (saith *Ezechieh*) *The Mart of the people for many isles*. And it hath ever been the custome, that the *Persians* conveyed their Merchandise to *Babylon*, and to those Cities upon *Euphrates*, and *Tygris*, and from thence transported them into *Syria*, now *Soria*, and to the Port of the *Mediterranean Sea*: as in ancient times to the City of *Tyre*, afterward to *Tripoly*, and now to *Aleppo*, from whence they imbarque them at the Port of *Alexandretta*, in the Bay of *Assyria*, now *Euphrates*. *Ezechieh* in the description of the magnificence of *Tyre*, and of the exceeding trade that it had with all the Nations of the East, as the onely Mart-towne of that part of the World, reciteth both the people, with whom they had commerce, and also what commodities every Countrey yielded; and having counted the several People and Countries, he addeth the particular trade, which each of them exercised: They were thy merchants (saith the Prophet) in all sorts of things, in payments of blue filke, and of dyed redd shawls, and of *linnen*, corals, and pearls: and afterwards speaking of the Merchants of *Sheba* and *Raamah*, and what kinds they traded, he hath these words: The merchants of *Sheba*, and *Raamah* were thy merchants, they occupied in thy Fair, with the chief of all Spices, and with all precious stones, and gold. Now these be indeed the riches which *Parfa* & *Arabia Felix* yielded, and because *Sheba* and *Raamah* are those parts of *Arabia*, which border the Sea, called the *Persian Gulf*, therefore did those Nations both vent such Spice, sweet Gummes, and Pearls, as their owne Countries yielded: and

Ves. 24.

Strabo.

Ezech. 27. vs. 23.

Cap. 1. vers. 1.

Isa. 27. vs. 12.

Cap. 27. vs. 10. 23.

and (withal) having trade with their Neighbours of *India*, had from them also all sorts of spices, and plenty of gold. The better to convey these commodities to that great Mart of *Tyre*, the *Shebans* or *Arabians* entred by the mouth of *Tygris*, and from that City of *Terredon* (built or enlarged by *Nebuchodonosor*, now called *Balsara*) thence sent up all these rich merchandises by boat to *Babylon*, from whence by the body of *Euphrates*, as far as it bended Westward, and afterward by a branch thereof, which reacheth within three daies journey of *Alleppo*, and then over Land they past to *Tyre*, as they did afterward to *Tripoly*, (formerly *Hieropolis*) and thence to *Alexandretta*, as aforesaid. Now the Merchants of *Canneh*, which *Ezechieh* joyneth with *Eden*, inhabited far up the River, and received this trade from *Arabia* and *India*, besides those proper commodities which themselves had, and which they received out of *Persia*, which bordered them. Saint *Hierome* understandeth by *Canneh*, *Seleucia*, which is seated upon *Euphrates*, where it breaketh into four heads, and which took that name from *Seleucus*, who made thereof a magnificent City. *Hierosolymitanus* thinks it to be *Ctesiphon*, but *Ctesiphon* is seated down low upon *Tygris*, and *Canneh* cannot be on that side. I mean on the East-side of *Tygris*; for then were it out of the Valley of *Shinar*, *Plinie* placeth the *Schenite* upon *Euphrates*, where the same beginneth to be foordable, which is toward the border of *Syria*, after it leaveth to be the bound of *Arabia* the *Desart*, and where the River of *Euphrates* reflecteth from the *Desart* of *Palmirena*: for these people of *Canneh* (afterward *Schenite*) inhabited both borders of *Euphrates*, stretching themselves from their own City of *Canneh* in *Shinar* Westward along the banks of *Euphrates*, as farre as the City of *Thapacus*, where *Ptolomy* appointed the *Foords* of *Euphrates*: which also agreeth with the description of the *Schenite* by *Strabo*, whose words are these: *Mercatoribus ex Syria Seleuciam & Babyloniam euntibus, iter est per Schenitas; The Merchants which travail from Syria to Seleucia and Babylon, take their way by the Schenites*. Therefore those which take *Canneh* for *Charran*, do much mis-take it. For *Charran*, to which *Abraham* came from *Ur* in *Chaldea* (called by God) standeth also in *Mesopotamia*; not upon *Euphrates* it self, but upon the River of *Chaboras*, which falleth into *Euphrates*: and the Merchants of *Charran* are distinctly named with those of *Canneh* in *Ezechieh* (as) *They of Haran, and Canneh, and Eden, the Merchants of Sheba, Affur, and Chilmad were thy merchants*. Wherefore *Charran*, which is sometime called *Charre*, and *Haran*, and *Aran*, is but the same *Charran* of *Mesopotamia*; and when it is written *Aran*, then it is taken for the region of *Mesopotamia*: or *Aran suuorum*, the Greek word (*Mesopotamia*) importing, a country between rivers: for *Mesos* in Greek, is *Medius* in *Latine*, and *Potamos*, *fluvius*; and when it is written *Haran* or *Aran*, it is then taken for the City it self, to which *Abraham* came from *Ur* (as aforesaid.) For *Strabo* in the description of *Arabia*, giveth that tract of land from the borders of *Coslofrya*, to the edge of *Mesopotamia*, to the *Schenite*, who also inhabited on both sides of *Euphrates*, and were in after-ages accounted of these *Arabians* which inhabit *Batanea*, and the North part of the *Desarts*, stretching themselves toward the uninhabited solitude of *Palmirena*, which lieth between *Syria*, and *Arabia* the *Desart*. So as these of *Canneh* lay in the very high-way from *Babylon* to *Tyre*, and were neighbours (indifferent) to *Charran* and to *Eden*: and therefore they are by the Prophet *Ezechieh* coupled together. *They of Haran, and Canneh, and Eden, &c.* But Saint *Hierome* made a good interpretation of *Canneh*, or *Chalne*, for *Seleucia* was anciently called *Chalanne* (witness *Appian*) and so *Rabanus Maurus* calleth it in his Commentaries upon *Genesis*; the name by time and mixture of languages being changed from *Chalne* or *Canneh*, to *Chalanne*: of which name there are two other Cities, standing in *Triangle* with *Seleucia*, and almost the next unto it, (as) *Thelbe-canne*, and *Mann-canne*, the one a little to the West of *Seleucia*, and the other opposite unto it; where these rivers of *Tygris* and *Euphrates* are ready to joine. Therefore, which of these the ancient *Canne* was, (being all three within the bound of the Valley *Shinar*) it is uncertain: but it is a note as well of the importance of the place, as of the certain feat thereof, that so many other cities did retain a part of the name in so many ages after. Neither is it unlikely, that these additions of *Thelbe* and *Man* to the word *Canne*, were but to make difference between the East and the West, or the greater and the less *Canne*, or between *Canne* the old and the new: which additions to distinguish cities by, are ordinary in all the Regions of the World.

D 3

Now

Jud. 1. Now of the other city joyned with Eden, as Haran or Charran, S. Hierome on the Judges speaketh thereof in these words: *Cumq; reverterentur, pervenerunt ad Charran, que est in medio itinere contra Nineve, undecimo die; When they returned, they came to Charran (which is the mid-way against Nineve) the eleventh day.*

Alti. 7. 1. This city is by the Martyr Stephen named Charran (speaking to the high Priest:) *Tee Men, Brethren, and Fathers, hearken: The God of glory appeared to our Father ABRAHAM, while he was in Mesopotamia, before he dwelt in Charran.* But the seat of this city is not doubted of: for it is not only remembered in many Scriptures, but, withal, exceeding famous for the death and overthrow of *Crausus* the Romaine, who for his unsatiable greediness was called *Gorgus avaritia*; the Culf of avarice. Whereof *Lucan*:

Lucan. 1. 1. 105. *Affr'us Latio maculavit sanguine Carras.*

With Roman blood the Assyrian Carre he defil'd.

Gen. 10. 10. But this city Canne or Chalne is made manifest by *Moses* himself, where it is written of NIMROD: *And the beginning of his Kingdom was Babel, and Erech, and Acad, and Chah, in the land of Sinaar or Shinar*: where *Moses* sheweth the first composition of the Babylonian Empire, and what cities and people were subject unto *Nimrod*, all which lay in the said Valley of Shinar, or near it; and this Valley of Shinar is that Tract afterwards called Babylonia and Chaldaea, into which also Eden stretcheth it self. *Chaldaea, Babylonia, Sinaar, idem sunt* (saith COMESTOR.) *Three names of one Country*: which Region of Babylonia took name of the Tower Babel; and the Tower of the confusion of tongues. And that Shinar was Babylonia, it is proved in the eleventh chapter of *Genesis*, in these words: *And as they went from the East, they found a Plain in the Land of Shinar, and there they abode*: in which Plain Babylon was built (as aforesaid.)

Now Shinar being Babylonia, and Canneh, in the first beginning of *Nimrod's* greatness, and before he had subdued any strange, or far-off Nations, being one part of his Dominion, and also named by *Moses* to be in Shinar, it proveth that Canneh joyneth to Babylonia; which also *Ezechiel* completh with Eden, and (further) affirmeth that those of Eden were also the Merchants which traded with the Tyrians: and *Ezay* in the threats of *Senacherib* against Jerusalem (with other Nations that *Senacherib* vaunted that his Fathers had destroyed) nameth the children of Eden which were at Telassar. But before I conclude where Eden it self lieth, it is necessary to describe those other Countries, which *Ezechiel* joyneth therewith, in the places before remembered, as, those of Sheba and Raamah. It is written in *Genesis* the tenth: *Moreover the sons of HAM were Cush, &c. And the sons of Cush were SEBA, and HAVILAH, and SABA, and RAAMAH, &c. And the sons of RAAMAH were SHERA, &c. and anon after; Cush begat NIMROD*: so as *Seba* was the grand-child of *Cush*, and *Nimrod* the son of *Cush*, whose elder brother was *Sebah*: though some there are that conceive to the contrary, that *Nimrod* was the elder in valour, and understanding, though not in time and precedence of birth; who inhabited that part of Shinar, where Babel was built, afterwards Babylonia. His brother *Raamah* or *Rezma* took that part adjoining to Shinar, toward the Sea side and Persian gulf (called afterwards *Raama* and *Sheba*, by the Father and his Sons, which possessed it.) For (saith *Ezechiel*) *the merchants of Raamah and Sheba were they merchants, they occupied in by Fairs with the chief of all spices, and all precious stones, and gold.* So as *Seba* was that Tract of Country, which parteth Arabia Deserta from Arabia Felix, and which joyneth to the Sea where Tygris and Euphrates fall out, and render themselves to the Ocean. This part, and the confining Country, *Strabo* calleth *Catabria*, where the best Myrrhe and Frankincense is gathered; which people have an interchangd or trade with *Elana*, lying on the East side of the Persian gulf. By this it appeareth who were the Shebeans, spoken of by *Ezechiel*, and said to have been the Merchants of Tyre, for gold, spices, and precious stones: of which they had not only plenty of their own, but were also furnished from that part of India (called *Elana*, according to *Strabo*) for exchange of their Aromatiques, and other proper commodities. For as *Strabo* reporteth out of *ERATOSTHENES*: *In Persice ora initio Indus est, in qua nudi & pretiosi vinum gignuntur: in alia vero, clare & pernici: lapilli: ERATOSTHENES* (saith *Strabo*) affirmeth, that in the beginning of the Persian gulf, there is an Island, in which there are many precious pearls bred: and in other, very clear and shining stones. Now, the difference between *Seba*, the son of *Raamah*, and *Seba* the son of *Cush*, is in this, That *Seba* is written with the Hebrew (*Seba*;) and *Sebah* with (*Sebin*;) but

but whatsoever the difference may be in the Hebrew Orthography; their Countries and Habitations are divers. For *Seba* is that which bordereth the Persian Sea, and *Saba* (whence the Queen of Saba) neighboured the Red Sea; and so that place of the 72 Psalm expounded *Reges Arabum & Sabe*, hath in the Hebrew this sense: *Reges Sheba & Saba.*

The Shebans, *Ezechiel* nameth together with the Edenites, because they inhabited upon the Out-let of the same River upon which the Edenites were seated: and so those of *Seba*, towards the Sea-coast, and upon it past up the Country, by Tygris and Euphrates, being joyned in one maine streame, and so through the Region of Eden, which Tygris boundeth, thereby the better to convey their merchandise toward Tyre. And as the Cities of Charran, and Channeh, border Eden on the West and North-west: so doth *Seba* on the South, and Chilmad on the North-east: Chilmad being a Region of the higher Media, as appeareth in the Chaldaean Paraphrast; which Country by the Geographers is called *Comitena*, (L) placed by exchange for (R.) which change the Hebrews also often use.

Thus much of those Countries which border Eden, and who altogether traded with the Tyrians: of which, the chief were the Edenites, inhabiting Telassar: for these *Senacherib* vaunted, that his Fathers had destroyed; and this place of Telassar lay most convenient, both to receive the Trade from *Seba* & Arabia, and also to convey it over into Syria, and to Tyrus. Now to make these things the more plain, we must remember, that before the death of *Senacherib*, many parts of the Babylonian Empire fell from his obedience, and after his death these Monarchies were utterly dissolved.

For it appeareth both in *Ezay* the 37. and in the second of *Kings*, by the threats of *Rabsake*, the while the Army of Assyria lay before Jerusalem, that the Cities of Golan, Haran, Reseph, and the Edenites at Telassar, had reft the Assyrians: though by them (in a sort) maltreated and recovered. *Have the gods of the Nations delivered them whom my Fathers have destroyed at Golan, and Haran, Reseph, & the children of Eden, which were at Telassar?* But it appeared manifestly after *Senacherib's* death, that these Nations formerly contending, were then freed from the others subjection: for *Ezar-Haddon* held Assyria, and *Merodach-Baladan*, Babylonia. And after that the Army of *Senacherib*, commanded by *Rabsake*, which lay before Jerusalem (*Ezechias* then reigning) while *Senacherib* was in Egypt, was by the Angel of God destroyed; the King of Babel sent to *Ezechias*, both to congratulate the recovery of his health, and his victory obtained over the Assyrians. After which overthrow, *Senacherib* himselfe was slain by his own sonnes in the Temple of his Idols, *Ezar-Haddon* succeeding him in Assyria: To the Babylonian Ambassadors sent by *Merodach*, *Ezechias* shewed all his treasures, as well proper as consecrate, which invited the Kings of Babylon afterward to undertake their conquest and subversion. So as, the suspicion of warre encreasing between Babylon and Assyria, the Edenites which inhabited the borders of Shinar, towards the North, and towards Assyria, were employed to beat off the incursions of the Assyrians; and their Garrison-place was at Telassar: and the very word *Telassar* saith *Juvius*, signifying as much as a bulwark against the Assyrians: This place *Hieronymus* takes for *Relem*, others for *Seleucia*: but this *Telassar* is the same, which *Strabo* calleth *Thiludia* in the History of *Julius* (whom he followed in the enterprise of Parthia) calleth *Thiludia* in the History of *Telassar*, who describeth the exceeding strength thereof in his 24. Booke: it is seated in an Island of Euphrates upon a steep and unscaleable Rocke, in so much as the Emperour *Tiberius* durst not attempt it; and therefore it was a convenient place for a Garrison against the Assyrians, being also a passage out of Mesopotamia into Babylonia, and in which the Edenites of the Country adjoining were lodged to defend the same. This place *Herodotus* calleth *Thiludia*, having Reseph which he calleth *Relepis* on the left hand, and Canneh which he calleth *Thiludia* on the right hand; not far from whence is also found the City of *Mabuchine* upon Tygris; and all these seated together, as *Ezay* and *Ezechiel* have forced them. But the understanding of these places is the more difficult, because Assyria (which the Chaldeans call *Aturia*) and *Mesopotamia*, were so often confounded; the one taken for the other by interchanges of *Comitena* Assyria & *Mesopotamia* in Babylonia, as *Herodotus* saith, *Niger, Assyria* and *Mesopotamia* took the name of *Babylonia*. Lastly, it appeareth by those adjacent Regions by the Prophets named, in what part of the World Eden is seated



seated, as, by *Charran* or *Haran* in Mesopotamia: also by *Cannab* and *Reseph*, according to the opinion of *Vatablus*, who in these words translateth this place: *Plantaverat autem JEHOVAH dens hortum in Eden, ab Oriente*; The Lord God planted a Garden in Eden, Eastward: that is (saith he in his Annotations) *Jusserat nasci arbores in Eden, Regione Orientali, in sinibus Arabia & Mesopotamia*; He commanded Trees to grow in Eden, an Easterne Region in the borders of Arabia and Mesopotamia.

## §. X.

Of divers other testimonies of the Land of Eden; and that this is the Eden of Paradise.

And for a more particular pointing out of this Eden, it seemes by the two Epistles of the Nestorian Christians, that inhabit Mesopotamia: which Epistles in the year 1552, they sent to the Pope about the confirming of their Patriarch, & *Andreas Masius* hath published them, translated out of Syriac into Latine. By these Epistles (I say) it seemes we may have some farther light for the proofe of that, which we have said about the Region of Eden in those parts. For in them both there is mention of the Island of Eden in the River Tigris, or at least, Tigris in both these Epistles is called the River of Eden. This Island, as *Masius* in his Preface to these Epistles saith, is commonly called *Gozaria* (as it were, the Island, by an eminency.) It hath (saith he) ten miles in circuit, and was sometimes walled round about, which name of the Island Eden may (doublelesse) remaine to this day; though in the rest of the Region so called, this name be swallowed up with the fame of those flourishing kingdomes of Mesopotamia, Assyria, Babylonia, and Chaldaea. This Island of Eden hath up the River, and not far beyond it, the City of *Hafan-Cepha*, otherwise *Fortis Petra*: below it, it hath *Mofal* or *Mosel*, from which (as in that which followeth it shall appear out of *Masius*) it is not above twelve miles distant. Neither is it to trouble us, that *Mofal* or *Mosel*, by *Marinus Niger* is remembered among the Cities higher up Tigris, in these words, *Juxta antiquam Tigrim, Civitates sunt Dorbeta prope Taurum montem, que nunc Mosel dicitur; magna sunt, &c.* (that is) By Tigris are these Cities, Dorbeta near unto mount Taurus (which is now called Mosel) which is a great one, &c. This opinion of *Niger*, displacing *Mosel*, and making it to be Dorbeta (I say) needs not here to trouble us: seeing for this matter, the testimony of *Masius*, informed by the Christians that dwell there (the Seat of whose Patriarch it is) ought to be of credit, avowing that this *Mofal* (or *Mozal*) is in the Confines of Mesopotamia and Assyria, seated upon Tigris, and in the neighbour-hood of Nineve; and that it is the famous *Seleucia Parthorum*. The Nestorian Christians in their former Epistle, call it *Artur*, in these words: *Ex omnibus Civitatibus & pagis que sunt circum Civitatem Mosal (hoc est) Artur in vicinia Nineves*; Of all the Cities and Townes which are about the City of *Mozal* (that is) *Artur* in the neighbour-hood of Nineve. As also *Niger* acknowledgeth *Ctesiphon*, a City thereabout to be called *Asfur*, (which is the famous *Artur*, after the Dialect of those Nations, which change *sh* into *t*.) Neither is it much that he should mistake *Ctesiphon*, (which is not farre off *Seleucia*) for *Seleucia*, to be *Asfur*. By this then we may come somewhat neerer the end of our purpose. For the Ile of Eden, which lieth in the brest of Tigris, is but twelve miles from *Mofal*, & that ancient City, which *Pholomy* and *Tacitus* call *Ninus*, and the Scriptures *Nineve*; *Philoftratus*, and *Simon Sethi*, *Mofula*, and *John Lean*, *Mofal*, others *Mosse*, (though it be not the same with *Mofal*) is yet but a little higher upon the same River of Tigris, neerer *Mofal*: so that we are like to finde this Ile of Eden hereabout. For the same *Andreas Masius*, which placeth it above *Mofal*, makes it to be below *Hafan-cepha*, which is upon the same River of Tigris.

The only difficulty is this, that some perhaps may thinke, that the words of the Nestorians in both their Epistles, speak not of any Ile in Tigris, called the Ile of Eden, but of an Ile in Tigris, a River of Eden. But this sense of their words in my opinion seemeth the more unprobable. And yet if this were the meaning here, we have a testimonie from the Learned of those parts, that not only *Euphrates*, but also *Tigris* was a River of Eden, and that the name of Eden in those parts is not yet quite worn out, though the Region hath been subject to the same change, that all other Kingdoms of the world have bene, and hath by conquest and corruption of other Languages, received new and differing names. For the South part of Eden, which stretcheth over *Euphrates*, was

after the flood called *Shiner*; and then of the Tower of *Babel*, *Babylonia*; and the North part of Eden is that Tract of *Mesopotamia*, *Assyria* and *Armenia*, which imbraceeth both the banks of Tigris betweene Mount *Taurus*, and *Seleucia*. And of this Region of Eden that ancient *Athicus* maketh mention; (not that latter *Athicus*, Disciple of *Gallienus*, otherwise by *Plutarch* and *Athenens* called *Isthi*, who liveth in Egypt in the Reigne of *Philadelphus*; but another of a farre higher and remote time) the same being made Latine out of the Greeke by Saint *Hierome*. And though by corruption of the ancient Copie it be written in *Aethiens*, *Adonis* for *Edenis*; yet *Adonis* being a River of *Phenicia*, cannot be understood to be the Region named by *Athicus*. For *Athicus* makes it a Countrey, and not a River, and joyneth it with *Mesopotamia* and *Ethiopia*, calling the land of *Chus Aethiopia*; after the Vulgar, an Septuagint. And lastly, the River which wateareth the Regions; (saith *Aethicus*) falleth into the Gulfe of *Perse*: which River he called *Armodus*, for *Tigris*; *Tigris* being but a name imposed for the swiftnesse thereof. And out of *Armenia* both *Tigris* and *Euphrates* have their original: for out of Eden came a River, or Rivers, to water the Garden, both which Rivers (to wit *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, come out of *Armenia*, and both of them traverse *Mesopotamia*; Regions first of all knowne by the name of Eden for their beautie and fertilitye. And so is very probable, that Eden contained also some part of *Armenia*; and the excellent fertilitye thereof in divers places, is not unworthy the name of Eden. For in some part thereof (saith *Strabo*) the leaves are alway green, & therefore therein a perpetual Spring. Also *Stephanus de urbibus*, mentioneth the Citie of *Adonis* upon *Euphrates*; and the name of Eden was in use in *Amor* time, though he speak not of *Eden* in the East, but of *Eden* in *Callosyria*. But to the end I may not burden the Readers patience with too long a Discourse, it may suffice to know, that *Euphrates* and *Tigris* (once joyned together; and afterward separate) are two of those foure heads, into which these Rivers which are said to water the Garden of Paradise, were divided: whose courses being knowne, Eden (out of which they are said to come) cannot be unknowne. Now that *Hiddekel* and *Perath* were *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, it is agreed by all: for the Seventie and all others convert *Perath* by *Euphrates*; & *Hiddekel* *Tigrim* omnes exponunt: and all men understand *Hiddekel* by *Tigris* (saith *Vatablus*). And because that which I have said of the Ile of Eden shall not be subject to the censure of self-invention; I have here under set downe the words out of the two general Epistles of the Nestorians, as *Masius* (ad verbum) hath converted them into Latine: The occasion of those Letters and Supplications to the Pope, were, that the Nestorian Christians, which inhabit *Mesopotamia*, *Assyria*, *Perse*, *Babylonia*, and have to this day (at least in Queen *Maries* time they had fifteen Churches in one Citie called *Seleucia Parthorum*; or *Mosel* upon the River of Tigris, having no sufficient authority to choose themselves a Patriarch (which cannot be done without four or three Metropolitan Bishops at least) sent to the Bishop of *Rome*, in the year of Christ 1552, (as afore-said) a Petition to obtain allowance unto such an Election as themselves had made: having three hundred years before that upon the like defect, sent one *Marinus* thither, to be confirmed; and in this negotiation they made knowne to the Bishop of *Rome* the state of the Christian Church in those parts; for upon the death of their Patriarch (who of a covetous desire to enrich himselfe, had refused to institute Metropolitan Bishops, when the places fell void) they all assembled themselves together to consult of the Church government: And because all the Bishops for an hundred yeares had been of one House and Family; of the judgement of the Church, and that there yet remained one Bishop of the same Stocke and Kindred, who aspired to the same dignitie which his Predecessors had held; the rest of the Prelates refused to allow him, Upon which occasion, and for the choice of a Governour more sufficient, the Teachers in all the Churches assembled themselves: The words of the general Epistle to the Pope are these, about the middle of the said Epistle: *Venerabili nos non accepimus, neque prochanusimus in suis* (yet subinde dicitur: nos accepimus hoc Orientalibus, & ex omnibus Civitatibus & pagis que sunt circum Civitatem Mosal (hoc est) Artur, in vicinia Nineves, ex Babylonia; ex Chus; ex Arabiis, ex Assyria; ex mediis ygris, fluminis Eden, ex Tauris Perse; ex Nisibi, &c. which is) But we had neither accept of this man, neither pronounced him; but suddenly we assembled ourselves out of all parts of the East, and out of all the Cities and Villages which are about Mosel (for Artur) near Nineve, & out of Babylon, Carbis, Arbella, and out of the Island which lieth in the middle of Tigris.



gris, a River of Eden, or rather, out of the Isle of Eden, which lyeth in the River Tygris. And in a second Epistle at the same time sent, they use these words: *Neg; super sunt apud nos Metropolitae, quorum est ordinare Catholicum, sed soli pauci, Episcopi, Episcopus Arbela, Episcopus Salmasi, Episcopus Adurbegansen & vestigio convenimus in Insulam, quae est intra Tigrim flumen, Eden, scilicet; compactum inter nos, &c.* (which is) Neither are there remaining among us any Metropolitan Bishops, to whom it belongs to ordaine a Patriarch, but only a few Bishops, as the Bishop of Arbela, the Bishop of Salmasus, and the Bishop of Adurbegans: but lo, we assembled speedily in the Island Eden, which is in Tygris, and agreed betweene our selves, &c.

Now this Island of Eden Masius describeth with other places; which being well conceived, the Nestorian Epistles, and the state of the Church may be in those parts (saith he) the better understood. And after he hath distinguished the foure sorts of Christians in those parts of the World, and in the South part of Africa, which he calleth Nestorians Jacobites, Maronites, and Coptites he goeth on in these words: *Mox audita illius morte, concurrisse aiebant tumultuario in illam quam modo dixi Tygris Insulam, quae duodecim circiter passuum millibus supra Mosai posita, decem fere milia passuum suo ambitu continet, muris undiq; cincta, & a paucis aliis quam Christianis hominibus habitata*: which is, Now hearing of the death of the Patriarch, (as those that came to Rome reported) they ran tumultuously together into that Island of Tygris or Eden before spoken of, which Island is situated about twelve miles above Mosai, containing very near ten miles in compass, and every where environed with a wall, inhabited by few other men than Christians. And afterward he maketh a recapitulation of the Christian Churches; among the rest he addeth the Isle of Eden by the name of Geserta, Insula Tygris: sive Geserta. Furthermore, describing the City of Hefan-cepba, or Fortis Petra, he placeth it *supra predictum Tygris, Insulam rupi asperae impositam*; Above the aforesaid Island of Tygris, being seated on a steepe Rocke. Of this Island of Geserta, Andrew Thevet maketh mention in his tenth Booke of his generall Cosmographie in these words: *Geserta ou Gesire est au milieu de la Riviere du Tygre, & pense que c'est une terre des plus fertiles de toute l'Afie*; Geserta or Gesire is in the middle of Tygris, the Joyle the most fertile of all Asia.

By this we see that the ancient name of Eden liveth, and of that Eden which lyeth Eastward from Arabia Petrea, and the Desert where Moses wrote, and that Eden which bordereth Charran according to Eszechiel, and that Eden which is seated according to the assertion of the said Prophet, and joyned with those Nations of Raseph, Canneh and Charran, and the rest which traded with the Tyrians, and is found at this day in the parting of the two Regions of Assyria, and Babylonia, where the Edenes in Thelassar were garriioned to resist the Assyrians, whose displantation Senacherib vaunted of (as above written); and lastly, the same Eden, which embraceth Tygris, and looketh on Euphrates, two of the knowne Rivers of those four, which are by all men ascribed to Paradise.

## §. XI.

Of the difficultie in the Text, which seemeth to make the foure Rivers to rise from one streame.

But it may be objected, that it is written in the Text. *That a River went out of Eden, and not Rivers in the plural*; which scruple Matthew Beroaldus hath thus answered in his Chronologie: The Latine Translation, saith hee, hath these words: *Et fluvius egrediebatur de loco voluptatis ad irrigandum Paradisum, qui inde dividebatur in quatuor capita: Quae verba melius consentiunt omnivis narratione, & ejusdem explicatione, si ita reddantur. Et fluvius erat egrediens ex Edene, (hoc est) fluvius procedebat ex Edene regione ad regendum pontarium; & inde dividebatur, & erat in quatuor capita*: which is, And a River went out of the place of pleasure to water Paradise, and thence was divided into foure heads: Which words (saith Beroaldus) do better agree with the narration and explication of the place, if they be thus translated: And a River was going forth of Eden (that is) Rivers went forth, and ran out of the Region of Eden to water the Orchard; and from thence it was divided, and they became foure heads: The Tygrinus differs from the Vulgar Latine; for it converts it thus *Et fluvius egrediebatur de deliciis*; And a River went out of pleasure, instead of Eden; and the Latine addeth the word locus, or place, *Et fluvius egrediebatur de loco voluptatis*; And a River went out of the place

of pleasure: and so the word (place) may rightly be referred to Eden, which was (of all other) a Region most delightful and fertile; and so also the word (inde) and thence, was divided, hath reference to the Countrey of Eden, and not to the Garden it self.

And for the word (River) for Rivers, it is usual among the Hebrews: for it is written: *Let the Earth bud forth the bird of the Hebe, that seedeth Sages, the fruitful Trees, &c.* Gen. I. II. Here the Hebrew useth the Singular for the Plural, Hebe and Tree, for Hebes and Trees; and againe, *We ate of the fruit of the Tree, in stead of (Trees.)* And thirdly, *The man and his wife hid themselves from the presence of God, in medio ligni Paradisi, in the middle of the tree of the Garden, for (Trees.)* And of this opinion is David Kimchi, and Patabla, who upon this place of Genesis say, that the Hebrewes doe often put the Singular for the Plural, as *illud*, for *unumquodq;* *illorum*, and he giveth an instance in this question it selfe, as, *A River (for Rivers) went out of Eden*.

And this answer out of divers of the Learned, may, not without good reason, be given to the objection, That Moses speaketh but of one River, from which the heads should divide themselves. Howbeit I deny not, but with as good (and perhaps better) reason, we may expound the foure heads, to be foure notable passages into famous Countreies. And so we may take the word (River) Verse the tenth for one River, (to wit) Euphrates, as this name comprehendeth all the branches thereof. For this River, (after he is past the place, where we suppose Paradise to have beene), divides it selfe, and ere long yeeldeth foure notable passages into several Countreies, though not all the way down streame, (for this is no where in the Text) where it is noted, that following the River downward, there is conveyance into the Countreies named in the Text, though part of the way to one of the Countreies (to wit, to Assyria) were up Tygris.

To this end the Text speaking of Hiddekel, as it riseth from the River of Eden, doth not say it compasseth or walleth the whole Region of Assyria, (as it had used this phrase of Pison and Gehon) but that it runneth toward Assyria. The first branch Pison, is Nahar-malcha, (by interpretation) *Basilius, or flumen regium*, which runneth into Tygris under Apamia; whence ariseth the name of *Pasi-tygris*, as it were *Piso-tygris*. This leadeth to the Land of Havila or Sufiana. The second branch Geben, is that which 30 in Historians is Nabarsares or Narragaz; for Nabar-ragas; both which names signify *flumen derivatum* (a River derived,) also *Acracanus, quasi Ranosus*, by reason of the froggie Fens which it maketh: this Gehon leadeth to the first seat of Chus, about the borders of Chaldea and Arabia, and it is lost at length in the Lakes of Chaldaea. The third branch Hiddekel, may be expounded the upper streame of Pison, or Basilius which runneth into Hiddekel, properly so called (that is, into Tygris) above Seleucia, where it leweth a passage up Tygris into Assyria: where, because at length it is called Hiddekel or Tygris, having before no knowne proper name, the Text in this place calleth it Hiddekel from the beginning. The fourth Perath or Euphrates, so called *per excellentiam*, being the body of the River Euphrates, which runneth through Babylon 40 and Otrris. But, be it a River or Rivers, that come out of Eden, seeing that Tygris and Euphrates are noted in the Text, there can be no doubt, but that Paradise was not farre from these Rivers: for that Perath in Arabic is Euphrates, there can be no question; and (indeed) as plaine it is that Hiddekel is Tygris. For Hiddekel goeth (saith Moses) Eastward towards Assur, as we find, that Tygris is the River of Assyria *proprie dicta*, whose chiefe City was Nineve, as in Genesis the tenth it is written: That out of that Land (to wit) Babylonia, Nimrod went into Assur, and builded Nineve, which was the chiefe City of Assyria.

And as for the kind of speech here used in the Text, speaking of *foure heads*; though the heads of Rivers be (properly) their Fountains, yet here are they to be understood, 50 to be spoken of the beginning of their division from the first streame. Called *aque* (saith Ulpianus) *illud est, unde aqua nascitur, si ex fonte nascatur, fons; si ex flumine, vel ex lacu, prima initia, &c.* If the beginning of the water be out of a fountain, then is the Fountain taken for the head: if out of a Lake, then the Lake; and if from a main River any branch be separate and divided, then where that branch doth first bound it self with new banks, there is that part of the River, where the branch forsaketh the main streame, called the head of the River.

## §. XII.

Of the strange fertility and happiness of the Babylonian Soyle, as it is certaine that Eden was such.

Herod. Clia. l. 1.

It may also be demanded, whether this Region of Eden, by us described, be of such fertility and beauty, as Eden the seat of Paradise was: which, if it be denied, then must we also consider, that there was no part of the Earth, that retained that fertility and pleasure, that it had before the curse: neither can we ascribe the same fruitfulness to any part of the Earth, nor the same virtue to any plant thereon growing, that they had before the flood; and therefore this Region of Eden may be now 10 so such flourishing Countrey, as it was when it was first created in his perfection. Yet this I finde written of it: First, in *Herodotus*, who was an eye-witness, and speaketh of the very place it self; for the Ile of Eden is but twelve miles or thereabout from Nineve, and so from Mosul. *Ex Euphrate exiens in Tygrim, alterum flumen, juxta quod Urbs Ninus sita erat. Hec regio, omnium quas nos vidimus, optima est, &c. Where Euphrates runneth out into Tygris, not far from the place where Ninus is seated. This Region, of all that we have seen, is most excellent: and he addeth afterward; Cerevis autem fructu procreando adeo ferax est, ut nunquam non ferè ducenta reddat, &c. (that is) It is so fruitful in bringing forth Corne, that it yeeldeth two hundred fold: The leaves of Wheat and Bayley being almost fower fingers broad. As for the height of Millet and Sesame, they are even in length like unto Trees; which although I know to be true, yet I forbore to speake hereof, well knowing, that those things which are reported of this fruitfulness, will seeme very incredible to those, which never were in the Countrey of Babylon. They have commonly in all the Countrey Palm-Trees growing of their own accord, the most of them bearing fruit, out of which they make both Meats, and Wine, and Honey, ordering them as the Fig Trees. Thus far *Herodotus*.*

To this Palm-tree, so much admired in the East India, *Strabo* adde a fourth excellency, which is, that it yeeldeth bread; *Ex quibus panem, & mel, & vinum, & acetum conficiunt; Of which these people make Bread, Wine, Honey, and Vineger. But Antoninus the Eremita* findeth a fifth commodity, not inferiour to any of those four, which is, that from this selfe same Tree there is drawn a kinde of fine Flax, of which people make their garments, and with which in East India they prepare the cordage for their ships. And that this is true, *Athanasius* in the life of *Antoninus* the eremite, confelleth, saying: That he received a Garment made thereof from the Eremita himself, which he brought with him out of this Region. So therefore those Trees, which the East Indies so highly esteem and so much admire (as indeed the Earth yeelded no plant comparable to this) those Trees (I say) are in this upper Babylon, or Region of Eden, as common as any trees of the Field. *Sunt etiam* (saith *STRABO*) *palmis per omnem Regionem palmas sive sponte nascentes; There are of palms over all the whole Region, growing of their own accord. Of this place Quintus Curtius maketh this report: Eunibus à parte levia Arabie (Codorum fertilitate nobilis) regio campestris, inter Tygrim & Euphratem, jacens tam ubere & pingui solo, ut à passu repelli peiora dicantur, ne satietas perimat; (that is) As you travell on the left hand of Arabia (famous for plenty of sweet Odours) there lieth a Champain Country placed between Tygris and Euphrates, and so fruitful and fat a soile, that they are said to drive their Cattel from pasture, lest they should perish by satiety. His in anno segetis Babylonis fecant; The Babylonians cut their Corn twice a year (saith *Niger*). And as Countries generally are more fruitful to the Southward, than in the Northern parts: so we may judg the excellency of this by that report which *Strabo* maketh of the South parts of America, which is the North border of Eden, or a part thereof. His words be these in the Latino: *Tota enim hec regio frugibus & arboribus abundat mansuetis, itemque semper virentibus; This Region aboundeth with pleasant fruits, and Trees alwaies green: which winneth a perpetual Spring, nor found elsewhere but in the Indies onely, by reason of the Suns neighbourhood, the life and stirrer up of Nature in a perpetual activity. In brief, so great is the fertility of the ground, that the people are constrained twice to mow down their Corn fields, and a third time to eat them up with Sheep: which husbandry the Spaniards wanting in the Valley of Mexico, for the first forty years, could not make our kinde of Wheate beare seed, but it grew up as high as the Trees, and was fruitless. Besides, those fields are altogether without weeds* (saith*

(saith *Pliny*) who addeth this singularity to that soyle, That the second yeare the very stubble (or rather falling downe of the seedes again) yeeldeth them a harvest of corne without any further labour: his words are these, *Uberatis tante sunt, ut sequenti anno sponte restitibilis fiat seges.* *Plin. Nat. hist. l. 18. c. 17.*

## §. XIII.

Of the River Pison, and the land of Havilah.

After the discoverie of Eden, and the testimonies of the fertilitie thereof, it resteth 10 to prove that *Pison* and *Gebon* are branches of *Tygris* and *Euphrates*: For, that the knowledge and certaintie of these two Rivers should trouble so many wise men, it is strange to me, seeing necessitie it selfe (*Tygris* and *Euphrates* being knowne) findeth them out: for *Euphrates*, or *Tygris*, or both, be that River or Rivers of Eden, which water Paradise; which river or rivers *Moses* witnesseth afterward divided into four heads, wherof the one is called *Pison*, the other *Gebon* &c. Could there be a stranger fancie in the world, than when we find both these (namely) *Tygris* and *Euphrates* in *Assyria* and *Mesopotamia*, to seeke the other two in *India* and *Egypt*, making the one *Ganges*, and the other *Nilus*? Two rivers as far distant as any of fame knowne or discovered in the world: the Scriptures making it so plain, that these Rivers were divided into foure 20 branches, and with the Scriptures, Nature, reason, and Experience bearing witness. There is no error, which hath not some slipperie and bad foundation, or some appearance of probability, resembling truth, which when men (who studie to be singular) finde out, (straining reason according to their fancies) they then publish to the world matter of contention and jangling; not doubting but in the variable deformitie of mens minds, to find some partakers or sectators, the better by their helpe to nurse and cherish such weake babes, as their own inventions have begotten.

But this mistaking (and first for the River of *Pison*) seemeth to have grown out of the not-distinguishing of that Region in *India*, called *Havilah*, from *Havilah* which adjoining to *Babylonia*, afterward knowne by the name of *Susiana*. For *Havilah* upon *Tygris* 30 tooke name from *Havilah* the son of *Cush*; and *Havilah* in *India*, from *Havilah* the son of *Jokan*; the one remembered by *Moses* in the description of Paradise, the other Gen. 10. 7. where *Moses* setteth downe the generations of *Noah*, and his sons after the Flood. For the sons of *Cush* were *Seba*, *Havilah*, *Sabtah*, and *Raamah*; and the sons of *Jokan* were *Ophir*, and *Havilah* &c. of which latter (to wit) of *Ophir* and *Havilah* the sonnes of *Jokan*, that Island of *Ophir*, (whence *Salomon* had gold) and *Havilah* adjoining, had their names. Now because *Ganges* is a great and famous river of the East India, and *Havilah* a Country of the same, and is situated upon *Ganges*, hence it came that *Ganges* was taken for *Pison*, which river is said by *Moses* to water the land of *Havilah*. Or perhaps it was supposed that those foure rivers named by *Moses* must of necessitie be foure 40 of the greatest in the world; whence (supposing that *Ganges* was the next great and famous river after *Tygris* and *Euphrates*) they chose out this river to make one of the foure. And yet certainly there is another river, whom in these respects they should rather have chosen than *Ganges*: for the river *Indus* on this side *India*, for beauty, for neerenesse, and for ability, giveth no way place to *Ganges*, but exceedeth it in all. And how can any reasonable man conceive, that *Ganges* can be one of the four heads, seeing *Indus* cometh between it and *Tygris*; and between *Tygris* and *Indus* is all that large Empire of *Persia*, consisting of many Kingdomes. And againe, farther towards the East, and beyond *Indus*, are all those ample Dominions of *India intra Gangem*, which lie between those two proud rivers of *Indus* and *Ganges*, now called the Kingdome of *Mogor*. So as if *Indus* be not accounted for any of the foure, because it is removed from *Tygris* by all the breadth of *Persia*, then how much lesse *Ganges*, which falleth into the Ocean, little lesse than forty degrees to the Eastward of *Indus*? Surely, whosoever readeth the storie of *Alexander*, shall finde, that there is no river in *Asia*, that can exceede *Indus*. For *Hyalaspis* was of that breadth and depth, as *Alexander* thereon in great Gallies transported himselfe, and the greatest part of his armie, and in sayling down that branch of *Indus*, found it so large and deepe, and by reason thereof so great a bellow, as it endangered his whole Fleet, which was ready to be swallowed up therein: *Hyalaspis* (as aforesaid) being but one of many branches of *Indus*, comparable to it and as great

great as it, having besides this, the Rivers of *Coas*, of *Susius*, *Acefinus*, *Adris* (otherwise) *tirotis*, *Hipalis*, and *Zaradus*, all which make but one *Imus*, and by it are swallowed up with all their children and companions, which being all incorporated and made one stream, it crosseth athward *Asia*, and then at *Cambai* visiteth the Ocean Sea.

Gen. 2. 15.

But because *Pison*, which compasseth *Havilah*, as also *Gehon*, which watereth *Cush*, must some-where be joynd with the rest in one body, or at least be found to proceed out of the same Country of *Eden*, out of which the other two heads doe proceed; out of doubt they cannot either the one or the other, be *Ganges*, or *Nilus*: for *Nilus* riseth in the uttermost of the South, and runneth Northward into the *Mediterran* Sea; and the River *Ganges* riseth out of the mountain *Imaus*, or (as others will have it) *Caucasus*, which divides the Northern *Scythia* from *India*, and runneth from North to South into the *Indian Ocean*. And as for *Perath* and *Hiddekel* (that is, *Euphrates* and *Tygris*) the one of them is begotten in *Armenia*, neer *Georgiana* or *Iberia*, the other is not far off in the same *Armenia*, by the *Gorgian* mountains; so as *Ganges*, who only travaileth in her own *India*, and *Nilus* through *Ethiopia* and *Egypt*, never law the land of *Eden*, or joynd themselves in one channell, either with themselves, or with either of the others and therefore could not at any time from thence be separated, or divided into four heads or branches, according to *Moses*.

Gen. 2. 12.

Therefore the River *Pison*, which enricheth *Havilah*, is the same which by joyning it self with *Tygris*, was therefore called *Pisi-Tygris*, or *Piso-Tygris*, of *Pison* and *Tygris*, which 20 River watereth that *Havilah*, which *Havilah* the sonne of *Cush* gave name unto, and not *Havilah* of *India*, so called of *Havilah* the sonne of *Joſean*, who inhabited with his brother *Ophir* in the East. And this *Havilah* of the *Cushites* had also Gold, *Bdellium*, and the *Onyx* stone. This *Bdellium* is a Tree of the bignesse of an Olive, whereof *Arabia* hath great plenty, which yeeldeth a certaine Gum sweet to smell to, but bitter in taste, called also *Bdellium*. The Hebrews take the Load-stone for *Bdellium*. *Beroaldus* affirmeth, that *Bdela* in Hebrew signifieth pearl: so doth *Engubinus*; and *Hierom* calls it *Oleaster*: be it what it will, a tree bearing Gum or Pearle: *Havilah* or *Susiana* hath plenty of both. Now this Country of *Susiana* or *Havilah* stretcheth it self towards the North as far as the Altars of *Hercules*, and from thence embraceth all the Tract of Land Southward, 30 as far as the *Persian Gulfe*, on the East side thereof: from which East side had the *Sabaens* (which traded with the City of *Tyre* according to *Ezechiel*) their great plenty of gold; which *Strabo* also witnesseth, as was shewed before.

Strabo, Hec. de Per.

The Greeks had a conceit, that *Pison* was *Danubius*: the *Rabbins* take it for *Nilus*. *Aben-Ezra* (saith *Hopkins*) out of *Rabbi Saadia*, translatheth *Pison* into *Nilus*: But *Nilus* findeth the same impossibility that *Gauger* doth: and *Danubius* hath the Sea of *Helleſpont* and all *Asia* the lesse between it and *Tygris*. Now *Pison*, which runneth through *Havilah* or *Susiana*, doth to this day retain some signe of this name; for where it and *Tygris* embraceth each other under the City of *Apamia*, there doe they agree of a joynt and compounded name, and are called *Piso-Tygris*. And it is strange unto me, that from 40 so great antiquitie there should be found remaining any resembling sound of the first name: for *Babylon* it self, which dwelleth so neer these Rivers, is by some writers known by the name of *Bandalas*, as by *Posellus*: by *Cassaleus*, of *Balduch*: by *Barinus*, of *Bagdads*; and of *Bongbedor*, by *Andrew Thevet*; and yet all those that have lately seene it, call it *Bagdet*. To this River of *Pison*, *Ptolomie* indeed with many others give the name of *Balsim* or *Regius*, and *Gehon* they term *Mahar-sares*, and *Marjias*, and *Baſarjes*. So is *Euphrates*, neer the Spring and Fountain, by *Strabo* and *Plinie* called *Picirates*: by *Junius*, *Puch-perath*, out of the Hebrew (that is) The profusion, or comming forth of *Euphrates*: where it bre aketh through the mountain *Taurus*, it takes the name of *Onyrra*. *Plinarch* calls it *Medus* and *Zaranda*: the Hebrews *Parath*, (saith *Ar. Montanus*): 50 *Pagunus*, *Perath*: *Josephus*, *Phorath*; *Ensebins*, *Zozimus*: *Ammianus*, *Chalymicus*: *Gistilamus* and *Colinatus* term it *Cobar*: which *Ezechiel* calleth *Chebar*; but this is but a branch of *Euphrates*. The *Aſſyrians* know it by the name of *Armalchar*, or *Nahor Malcha*: but now commonly it is called *Frat*.

Pest Cosmog. Thevet. Cosmog.

Aſetab. 4.

Plinib. 5. c. 24.

The same confusion of names hath *Tygris*, as *Diglito*, and *Diglat*, *Seilax*, and *Sollax*: of the Hebrews it was called *Hiddekel*: now of the inhabitants *Tegil*.

But *Mercer* upon *Genesis* conceiveth rightly of these Rivers: for *Euphrates* and *Tygris* (saith he) stream into foure branches; two of which keep their ancient names, and the other

other two are called *Pison* and *Gehon*. The reason why these two Rivers joynd in one (below *Apamia*) lose their names and are called *Pisi-Tigris*, and the memory of *Euphrates* extinguiſhed is, because the best part of *Euphrates* running through the channell of *Gehon*, sinketh into the lakes of *Chaldaea*, not far from *U*, the City of *Abraham*, and fall not entirely into the *Persian Sea*, as *Tigris*, accompanied with *Pison*, doth.

This error that *Pison* was *Ganges*, was first broched by *Josephus*, (whose fields, though they be fertile, yet are they exceeding full of weeds) and other men (who take his authority to be sufficient in matter of description, whereupon depended no other important consequence) were not curious in the examination thereof. For *Epiphanius*, 10 *Augustine*, and *Hierome*, take this for currant; whereof it followed, that as *Pison* was transported into the East India to finde out *Havilah*: so was *Gehon* drawn into Africa to compass *Ethiopia*. But if *Havilah*, whereof *Moses* speaketh in the description of *Paradise*, be found to be a Region, adjoining to *Babylon* on the one side, and *Cush* (which is falsely interpreted *Ethiopia*) fastned to it on the other side, we shall not need then to work wonders (that is) to impose upon men the transportation of Rivers, from one end of the World to the other, which (among other uses) were made to transport men. Now it was in the valley of *Shinar*, where *Cush* the sonne of *Ham* first fate down with his sonnes *Sabelah*, *Havilah*, *Sutah*, *Raamah*, *Nimrod*, &c. and of *Havilah*, the sonne 20 of *Cush*, did that Region take name, which *Pison* compasseth; and the land (called *Cush*) which *Gehon* watereth, took name of *Cush* himself. For as the sonnes of *Joſean*, *Ophir*, and *Havilah*, seated themselves as near together as they could in *India*, so did the sons of *Cush* in *Shinar*, or *Babylonia*, where *Nimrod* built *Babel*: for *Havilah*, or *Chavilah*, was first *Chusea* of *Cush*; then *Chusa*, *Susa*, and *Susiana*.

From this *Havilah* unto the Desarts of *Sur*, did the *Israelites* and *Amalekites* possess all the interjacent Countries: for *Saul* smote the *Amalekites* from *Havilah* to *Sur*: which *Sur*, the *Chaldaean* Paraphraſt converteth *Hagra*, and *Hagra* bordereth the Red Sea. But this was not meant from *Sur* upon the Red Sea, to *Havilah* in the East India; for *Saul* was no such Travailer or Conquerour, and therefore *Havilah* must be found neerer home, where the sonnes of *Ismael* inhabited, and which Country *Saul* waſted: 30 for *Amalek* and the *Amalekites* possist that neck of Country, between the *Persian Sea*, and the Red Sea; *Havilah* being the extrem of the one, towards the East, and *Sur* of the other, towards *Egypt* and the West, leaving that great body of *Arabia Felix* towards the South, and they spread themselves with the *Midianites* and *Edumians*, from the East part, or backside of the Holy Land, to the banks of *Euphrates*, comprising the best part of *Arabia Petraea* and *Deserta*.

## §. XIII.

Of the River *Gehon*, and the Land of *Cush*, and of the ill translating of *Ethiopia* for *Cush*, 2 CHRON. 21. 16.

40 NOW, as *Havilah* in the East India drew *Pison* so far out of his way thither, so I say did *Cush* (being by the Seventy translated *Ethiopia*) force *Gehon* into Africa. For *Cush* being taken for *Ethiopia* by the Greeks, whom the Latines followed, *Gehon* consequently was esteemed for *Nilus*. But *Ethiopians* are, as much as black or burnt faces, whose proper Country called *Thebaides*, lyeth to the Southward of all *Egypt*. And although there be many other Regions of *Ethiopians*, and far South in Africa, yet those of *Thebaides* are those so often remembered in the Egyptian stories, and out of which Nation they had many times their Kings of *Egypt*: all which *Ethiopians* are very neer, or else directly under the Equinoctiall line, which is very far from that Land inhabited by the *Chusites*, who are neither black of colour, nor in any sort neighbouring *Torrida Zona*. But this translation of the Septuagint, *Pererius* doth qualifie in this manner: There are (saith he) two *Ethiopia's*, the East, and the West: and this division he findeth in *Strabo*, out of *Homer*. Now because there is no colour to make *Chus* *Ethiopia* in Africa, *Pererius* will make *Chush* and the land of the *Chusites* (which is *Arabia Petraea*, and a part of *Arabia* the Happy, with the Region of *Madian*) to be the East *Ethiopia*.

Now if it be granted, that *Chush* and the land of the *Chusites* be that tract from *Sur* to *Havilah*, according to the Scriptures: *Habitavit ISMAEL Ab Havilah usq; Sur, quæ respicit Egyptum* Gen. 25. 18.

Vef. 15.

2 Chron. 14.9

Gen. 10.11.  
Excl. 17.8.

1C. 19.

Plin. l. 5. c. 8.

C. 2. v. 18.

Ex. 2. 21. & 3.  
Nem. 12. 1.

Egyptum introcutibus Affyrios, Ismael dwelt from Havilah unto Sur, that is, towards Egypt, as thou goest toward Assyria. The same sufficeth to prove that Gehon cannot be Nilus, but a River which watereth Cush, and not Æthiopia. But this place of Scripture, *Habitavit Ismael, &c.* hath this sense: Ismael dwelt from Havilah, which is the way of Assyria, or the Countrey bordering Assyria; and Sur, which lieth toward Egypt, which is as much to say, as, The illues of Ismael (where of there were twelve Princes) whom God had promised to make a great people, inhabited all those Regions between the border of Egypt and Assyria. And that they were (according to the word of God) so increased and multiplied, it well appeared, when Zearah the Chusite, which others call *Tharantha*, brought an Armie of ten hundred thousand against *Afa* King of Judah. Which Armie came not out of Æthiopia beyond Egypt; for that had been a strange progresse for such a multitude, as ten hundred thousand, having so mighty a King as the King of Egypt, between Palestina and Æthiopia. But these were the Chusites, Amalekites, Madianites, Ismaelites, and Arabians. For it is written, that after *Afa* (strengthened by God) had defeated this world of an Armie, he in following his victory took some of the Cities of King Zearah round about, as Gerar. Now that Gerar is a Citie of the Ethiopians, it cannot be suspected: for these be the words of the scripture disproving it: And *Abraham* departed thence toward the South Countrey, and dwelt between Kadeh and Sur, and sojourned in Gerar: Now Sur is that part upon which *Moses* and the Israelites first left their feet after they passed the Red Sea, where the Amalekites in *Rephidim* set on them, supposing that they had been weary, and unable to resist. Again, in the story of *Isaac* it is written: *Wherefore Isaac went to Abimelech, and the Philistines unto Gerar*: and I am sure *Abimelech* and the Philistines were no Ethiopians. And lastly, *Moses* himselfe, where he describeth the bounds of Canaan, hath these words: *Then the border of the Canaanites was from Sydon, as thou comest to Gerar: for Sydon was the Frontier of Canaan towards the North, and Gerar by Gaza towards the South.* But indeed, howsoever *Pererius* doth with an honest excuse save his translation of Chus for Æthiopia, yet it appeareth plainly, that the Septuagint and *Josephus* did altogether mis-understand this place. And first, for *Homer's* East and West Æthiopia, they are both found elsewhere: For *Plinie* in his first Book and eight Chapter, citeth *Homer* for an Author of these two Æthiopia's. But the East Æthiopia is that which compasseth Nilus to the South of Egypt, and is the South border thereof; now a part of the Empyre of the Abyssines under *Prestor John*; And the West Æthiopia is that which joyneth it self with the River Niger, which we call Senega and Gambia: for thereabouts are these Ethiopians called *Peroriti*, *Dararites*, with divers other names, which *Plinie* numbred. But all these are in Africa, and beyond the Desarts thereof, saith *Plinie* out of *Homer*, *Agrippa*, and *Juba*; which Regions indeed (I mean that of Niger, and that of *Prestor John*, and the Troglodites) lye due East and West. But as for Cush, and the Region of the Ismaelites, &c. they are extended directly North from that Æthiopia, which is beyond Egypt. Now, that *Josephus* was exceeding grosse herein, it appeareth by that fiction which he hath of *Moses* when he served *Pharao*, in the Warres against the Ethiopians: for in that (to make Chus, Æthiopia) he transporteth Madian by miracle over the Red Sea, and beyond all Egypt, and setteth it in Æthiopia, as shall bee shewed more at large in the Chapter of the Worlds Plantation. Again, that Gehon was improperly translated Nilus, *Pererius* confesseth, and layeth it rather to the corruption of the Greek Copie, than otherwise. And whereas the Septuagint have converted this place of the Prophet *Hieremie*; *And what hast thou now to doe in the way of Egypt, to drinke the water of Nilus? Quid tibi vis in via Egypti, ut bibis aquam Gehon?* To this saith *Pererius*, *profecto hebraice ibi non est vox Gehon, sed Sichor, que significat nigrum & turbidum: Truly* (saith *Pererius*) *the word Gehon in this place, is not found in the Hebrew, but Sichor, which significeth black and troubled water.*

Furthermore, this is a manifest and unanswerable argument, that Chus was ill taken for Æthiopia. *Moses* married the daughter of *Jethro*, Prince and Priest of Madian, whom both the Greek and Latine call a Madianite, and not *Æthiopissam*, as (with *Josephus*) the Geneva converts it, though it help it a little with a marginall note. Now it is without dispute, that *Zipporah* was of the Countrey of Madian, which is that part of Arabia

Arabia Petraea bordering the Red Sea: for it is written in the second of *Exodus*, that *Moses* fled from *Pharao* into the Land of Midian, and sat down by a Well, &c. and against the third of *Exodus*, *When Moses kept the sheep of Jethro his Father in Law, Priest of Midian*: and so did these four Nations are every where mixt in the Scriptures, because they dwell adjoinedly together (to wit) the Madianites, the Ismaelites, the Amalekites, and the Chusites, which were all in one general word, Arabians, and in the Scriptures sometimes called by one of these names, and sometimes by another: as in *Gen. 25. v. 27.* & 28. that *Joseph* was sold to the Ismaelites; and in the same Chapter, *25. v. 29.* it is written, that the Madianites sold *Joseph* to *Potiphar*, *Pharao's* Steward. The Geneva in a marginall note (to avoid this confounding of the Nations) say, that *Moses* wrote according to their opinion, who took the Madianites and Ismaelites to be all one. But *Moses* wrote not after any mans opinion, he wrote the truth; and these were all Arabians: for in this very place it appeareth by their merchandise, which they brought with them, when they bought *Joseph*: for their Camels were laden with Spicery, and Balsam, and Myrrhe; which are the trades of Arabia felix: from whence chiefly, and from the East India, all the World is served with Myrrhe and Frankincense; and their spices they received from the East side of the Arabian Gulf, as aforesaid. And in the 39. Chap. it is said: That *Joseph* bought the Ismaelites, which the Chaldean *Paraphrase* for the same place calleth Arabians. Now, to make this the more manifest, it is written in the first of *Judges*, *Then when Israel had sown, then came up the Madianites, and the Amalekites, and they of the East, and came upon them*: they of the East, were Arabians of the Desart, so as where before in the buying of *Joseph*, the Madianites and the Ismaelites were confosed: here the Madianites, and Amalekites are made one Nation. For in the prosecution of the Story of *Gedon*, the Madianites only are named, as comprehending both Nations; and in the eighth Chapter, *v. 14.* these Nations are all called Ismaelites, and neither Madianites nor Amalekites: As when *Gedon* desired that every man would give him the golden ear-rings, which they had taken after the victory against *Zeba* and *Zolunnah*, Kings of Arabia, amounting to 1700. shekels of gold, it is written: *For they had golden ear-rings, because they were Ismaelites.* And these Ismaelites were a great and valiant Nation, and ever in action of War: *Manus ejus contra omnes, & manus omnis contra eum; His hand* (saith God of ISMAEL) *shall be against all men, and every mans hand against him.* Of these Ismaelites come the *Mahometan Arabians*, though some Writers think *Mahomet* to be of the *Schemites*. And these Ismaelites, which inhabit chiefly in Cedar, and the Desarts of Sur and Pharao (saith *Josephus*) use poyson upon their Arrowes, as the Indians do: Towards the South-east are the Madianites, and Chusites: and beyond them, towards the Desarts of Arabia, the Amalekites, and all are one Nation, and all Arabians.

Lastly, the ill translation of Æthiopia for Chus, is among other places, made most apparent in the second of *Chronicles*, in these words: *So the Lord stirred up against Jehoram the spirit of the Philistines, and the Arabians, which confine the Ethiopians*; so *Hierome* reads it: the Geneva translation hath it, *which were besides the Ethiopians*. Now how far it is off between the Philistines and the Negro's, or the Ethiopians, every man that looketh in a Map may judge. For the Philistines and Arabians do mixe and joyn with the Land of the Chusites, and are distant from Æthiopia about two and thirty, or three and thirtie degrees, and therefore not their next neighbours; but all Egypt, and the Desart of Sur and Pharao are between them: So as this place of the second of *Chronicles*, should have been translated in these words: *So the Lord stirred up against Jehoram, the spirit of the Philistines, and the Arabians, which confine and border upon the Chusites, who indeed are their next neighbours.* \* *Nulla superesse dubitatio quin Æthiopia in sacris literis sit Arabia propinqua: There remaineth no doubt* (saith *Stenches*) *but Æthiopia in the Scriptures, is taken for that Country which joyneth to Arabia.*

Now, may we think, it is probable, or possible, that *Moses* could be ignorant of Nilus? No, he knew it, no living man so well, and therefore would never have named Gehon, for Nilus, or Nilus for Gehon. Surely, if *Moses* had meant Nilus, when he named Gehon, he would have called the River (into which he was cast upon reeds, and preserved by God, working compassion in the daughter of *Pharao*) a River of Egypt, wherein he was born and bred, and wrought so many miracles: Besides, the River of Nilus is often named in the Scriptures, but never by the name of *Gehon*. And if *Moses* had told the

Flin. 1.8. C.1.  
C.24. u.3.  
C.2. v. 18.

Israelites, that Nilus had been a River of Paradise, they might justly have thought, that he had derided them: for they had lived there all daies of their lives, and found no such Paradise at all, nor any memory, or speech thereof, except we shall believe the paradise of Hesperiades, where (saith *Plinius*) there was nothing found in his time; but wilde Olives in stead of golden Apples. But Nilus is twice called Sichor, once in *Isaiah*, and once in the Prophet *Jeremie*, and yet in those places it is not said to be a River of Ethiopia, but of Egypt. For in a word, the Israelites had never any communion or acquaintance with the Ethiopians, nor any intelligence, or trade, beyond Egypt, to the South; but the enemies which they had on the South, and East parts, were these Nations of the Chusites, Philistines, Himealites, Amalekites, and Madianites: who being often governed by many little Kings, or *Reguli*, were distinguished in names, according to the Fathers or heads of those Nations; but in one general name were all *Arabians*. On the North side of Canaan, they were afflicted with the Colosyrians, with the Magogians, Tubalites, and others their adherents. And thirdly, within themselves, the Nations, which remained of the ancient Canaanites, held the strongest Cities upon the Sea-coast (as Tyre, Sidon, Acon, Gaza, and many others: yea, Jerusalem it self was withheld from Israel (from the daies of *Moses*, even unto the time of *David*) by the *Jehusians*.

That which now remaineth of most difficultie is, that it doth not appear that any part of Gehon watereth that part of Arabia the stony, which the Chusites inhabited in the times of the Kings of Israel: and in this *Desert* it was that *Matt. Beroaldus* lost himself in seeking out Paradise: for he was driven (to my understanding) to create two Rivers, and call them Gehon and Pison; to the end that the one might water Chus, and the other Havilah; for I finde none such *invention*, as he hath described: by which Rivers he also includeth within Paradise, even Arabia the Desert.

And as he well proved that Pison was not Ganges, nor Gehon, Nilus; so where to find them else, where it seemeth he knew not. Certainly this River of Gehon, which he maketh to fall into the Mediterranean at Gaza, and whose Springs he findeth farre East in Arabia, is but imaginary; for the Current by Gaza is but a small stream, rising between it and the Red Sea, whose head from Gaza it selfe is little more than twentie English miles, as shall appear hereafter. But questionless, hence it comes that many were mistaken. They all considered of the Habitations of the Chusites, as they were planted when the Race of Israel stood, and when it flourished, being then their nearneighbours, and never looked back to the first sears and plantation of Chus. For after the Flood, Chus and his Children never rested, till they found the Valley of Shinar, in which, and near which himself, with his sons, first inhabited. *Havilah* took the River-side of Tygris chiefly on the East, which after his own name he called *Havilah*. (now *Sustana*.) *Raamah*, and *Sheba* farther down the River, in the entrance of Arabia felix. *NIMROD* seated himself in the best of the Valley, where he built Babel, whereof that Region had afterwards the name of Babylonia. Chus himself and his brother *Mizraim* first kept upon *Gehon*, which falleth into the Lakes of Chaldaea, and in process of time, and as their people increased, they drew themselves more westerly towards the Red or Arabian Sea: from whence *Mizraim* past over into Egypt, in which Tract the Chusites remained for many years after. Now because there could be no such River found in Arabia the stony, which they might entitle *Gehon*, they translated Chus, *Ethiopia*, and *Gehon*, Nilus. And if we doe examine this mistaking by example, we shall the better perceive it as it was. For let us suppose, that *Brute*, or whosoever else that first peopled this Island, had arrived upon the River of Thames, and called the Island after his name *Britannia*, it might be said that Thames or Tems was a River that watered *Britannia*; and when afterwards in processe of time, the same *Brute* had also discovered and conquered Scotland, which he also intitled by the same name of *Britannia*, after ages might conclude that Scotland was no part thereof, because the River of Tems is not found therein. Or let us suppose that *Europa*, the Daughter of the King of *Phoenicia*, gave the name to Europe, according to *Herodotus*, and that the first discoverers thereof arrived in the mouth of the River in Thrace, which then watered as much of Europe, as the first discovered, shall we in like sort resolve that France, Spaine, and Italie, &c. are no parts of Europe, because that River is not found in them, or any of them: in like manner was it said by *Moses* in his description of *Gehon*, that it watered the whole Land of Chus; but not the whole Land which

which the Chusites should, or might in future time conquer people, and inhabit, seeing in after ages they became Lords of many Nations, and they might (perchance) have become Masters in time, (as the Sargens, which came of them, were) of a great part of the world. For, though the Babylonian Empire which tooke beginning in *Nimrod* the (sonne of Chus, consisted at the first but of some Cities; (to wit) *Babel*, *Brachy*, *Acad*, and *Chus*; yet we finde, that his Successors within a few years after, commanded all the whole World in effect: and the same of Babel consumed the memorie of Chus. For of this Tower of *Babel* did all that Land take the name of Babylonia: and the greatness of that Empire, founded by *Nimrod* a young man, obscured the name and nation of his father Chus, in those parts untill they crept farther off, and in places not yet intitled, and farthor from the Babylonian Empire, where the Chusites retained their names, which also they fastned to the Soile and Territories by themselves afterwards inhabited and held. And yet we may not thinke, that Chus or any of his, could in haste tread through those desert Regions, which the length of 1300. yeares after the Flood had (as we have) fortified with Thickets, and permitted every Bush and Bryar, Redde and Thure to joyne themselves (as it were) into one maine body and Forrest. For if we look with judgement and reason into the Worlds plantation, we shall finde, that every Family seated themselves as neere together as possibly they could; and though necessity enforced them, after they grew full of people, to spread themselves, and creepe out of Shinar or Babylonia, yet did they it with this advice, as that they might be all times resort and succour one another by Rivers, the fields being then (without all doubt) impassable. So *Nimrod*, who out of vice and strength usurped dominion over the rest, fare down in the very confluence of all those Rivers, which watered Paradise: for thither it was to which the great troops of *Nabils* children repaired; and from the same place whence Mankind had his beginning, from thence had they again their increase. The first Father of men *Adam*, had thence his former habitation. The second Father of Mankind *Noah*, began from thence his dispersion. *Abraham* thence.

Now *Nimrod* the youngest, yet strongest, made his choice of Babel (as we have said) which both *Tygris* and *Euphrates* clasped and enriched; for did *Havilah* place himselfe upon *Piso*, *Tygris*, *Raamah*, and his son *Sheba* farther down upon the same River, on the Sea coast of Arabia; Chus himselfe upon *Gehon*, the fairest branch of *Euphrates*. And when they began to spread themselves farther off, yet they alwaies fastned themselves to the Rivers sides: for *Nimrod*, *Charran*, *Reseph*, *Uanach*, *Uin*, *Abudam*, and the other first-peopled Cities, were all founded upon these navigable Rivers, or their branches, by which the one might give succour and assistance to the other, as is already often remembered.

## S. XV.

A conclusion by way of repetition of something spoken of before.

BUT now to conclude this dispute, it appeareth to me by the testimonies of the Scriptures, that Paradise was a place created by God, and a part of this our Earth and habitable World, seated in the lower part of the Region of Eden, afterward called *Aram sinuorum*, or *Mesopotamia*, which taketh into it also a portion of *Shinar*, and *Armenia*: this Region standing in the most excellent temper of all others, (to wit) 35 degrees from the *Equinoctial*, and 55 from the North-pole: in which climate the most excellent Wines, Fruits, Oyle, Graine of all sorts, are to this day found in abundance. And there is nothing that better proveth the excellency of this soile and temper, than the abundant growing of the Palm-tree, without the care and labour of man. For whereinsoever the Earth, Nature, and the Sun can most vaunt that they have excelled, yet shall this Plant be the greatest wonder of all their works. This Tree alone giveth unto man whatsoever his life begetteth at Nature hand. And though it may be said, that these Trees are found both in the East and West-Indies, which Countries are also blessed with a perpetual Spring and Summer, yet lay downe by those pleasures and benefits the fearful and dangerous Thunders and Lightnings, the horrible and frequent Earthquakes, the dangerous diseases, the multitude of venomous Beasts and Worms, with other inconveniences; and then there will be found no comparison between one and the other.

What



What other excellencies this Garden of Paradise had, before God (for man's ingratitude and cruelty) cursed the Earth, we cannot judge; but I may safely think, that by how much *Adam* exceeded all living men in perfection; by being the immediate workmanship of God; by so much did that chosen and particular Garden exceed all parts of the Universal World, in which God had planted (that is) made to grow the Trees of Life, of Knowledge; Plants onely proper, and becoming the Paradise, and garden of so great a Lord.

The sum of all this is; That whereas the eyes of men in this Scripture have been dim-sighted (some of them finding Paradise beyond our known World; some above the middle region of the ayre; some elevated neerer the Moons; others, as far South as the Line, or as far North as the Pole, &c.) I hope that the reader will be sufficiently satisfied, that these were but like Castles in the ayre; and in mens fancies, vainly imagined. For it was Eastward in Eden (saith *Moses*) Eastward, in respect of Judaea; that God planted this Garden; which Eden we finde in the Propheies where it was, and whereof the name (in some part) remaineth to this day. A river went out of Eden to water this Garden, and from thence divided it selfe into foure branches; and we finde that both *Tygris* and *Euphrates* (swimming through Eden, do joine in one, and afterwards taking waies apart; do water *Chus* and *Havilah*, according to *Moses*, the true seats of *Chus* and his Sons being then in the Valley of Shinar, in which *Nimrod* built Babel. That *Pisyrus* was *Ganges*, the Scripture, reason, and experience teach the contrary; for that which was never joyned, cannot be divided; *Ganges*, which inhabiteth *India*, cannot be a branch of the rivers of Eden; That *Gehon* was *Nilus*, the same distance maketh the same impossibility; and this river is a greater stranger to *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, than *Ganges* is; for although there are between *Tygris* and *Ganges* above four thousand miles, yet they both rise in the same quarter of the World; but *Nilus* is begotten in the Mountains of the Moon, almost as far off as the Cape of good hope, and falleth into the Mediterranean Sea; and *Euphrates* distilleth out of the Mountains of Armenia, and falleth into the Gulf of *Perseus*; the one riseth in the South, and travaileth North; the other riseth in the North, and runneth South, threescore and three degrees the one from the other. In this leafe following, I have added a *Chorographical* description of this terrestrial Paradise, that the reader may thereby the better conceive the preceding Discourse; and this is the reward I looke for, that my labour may but receive an allowance suspended, until such time as this description of mine be reproved by a better.

## CHAP. IV.

Of the two chief Trees in the Garden of Paradise.

## §. I.

That the tree of Life was a material tree, and in what sense it is to be taken, that man by his eating the forbidden fruit, was made subject to death.

For eating the forbidden fruit of the tree of Knowledge was *Adam* driven out of Paradise, in *exilium vite temporalis*, into the banishment of temporal life, saith *Beda*. That these Trees of Life and Knowledge were material Trees (though Figures of the Law and of the Gospel) it is not doubted by the most religious and learned Writers; although the wits of men, which are so volatile, as nothing can fix them, and so slippery, as nothing can fasten them, have in this also delivered to the World, an imaginary doctrine.

The Tree of Life (say the *Hebrews*) hath a plural construction, and is to be understood, *Lignum vitarum*, The tree of lives, because the fruit thereof had a property, to preserve both the growing, sensitive, and rational life of man; and not onely (but for *Adam's* transgression) had prolonged his own daies, but also given a duresful continuance to all posterity; and that, so long, as a body compounded of Elements could last. And although it is hard to think, that flesh and blood could be immortal, but that it must once perish and rot, by the unchanged Law of God imposed on his creatures,

Man





Man notwithstanding should have enjoyed thereby a long, beautiful, and ungrieved life: after which (according to the opinion of most Divines) he should have been translated, as *Enoch* was. And as before the Flood, the daies of men had the long measure of eight hundred or nine hundred years; and soon after the flood; of two hundred years and upwards, even to five hundred: so if *Adam* had not disobeyed Gods first and easie Commandment, the lives of men on earth might have continued double, treble, or quadruple to any of the longest times of the first age, as many learned men have conceived. *Chrysostome*, *Rupertus Tostatus*, and others were of belief, that (but for *Adams* fall and transgression) *Adam* and his Posterity had been immortal. But such is the infinite Wisdom of God, as he foresaw that the earth could not have contained Mankind; or else, that millions of souls must have been ungenerated, and have had no being, if the first number, wherewith the Earth was replenished, had abode thereon for ever: and therefore that of *Chrysostome* must be understood of immortality of bodies, which should have been translated and glorified.

But of what kinde or *Species* this Tree of Life was, no man hath taken on him to teach: in which respect many have conceived, that the same was not material, but a meer *Allegorie*, taking their strength out of *Solomon*, where Wisdom is compared to the Tree of Life, and from other places, where also *Christ* is called the Tree of Life; and out of the *Apocalypse*, *I will give to him that overcometh, to eat of the Tree of Life which is in the Paradise of God*. But to this place Saint *Augustine*'s answer may suffice, (which is) That the one doth not exclude the other, but that, as there was a terrestrial Paradise, so there was a celestial. For although *Agar* and *Sara* were Figures of the Old, and New Testament, yet to think that they were not Women, and the Maid and Wife of *Abraham*, were meer foolishness. And so in this place the sense of the Scripture is manifest. For God brought out of the earth every Tree faire to the sight, and sweet to taste; the Tree also of Life in the midst of the Garden: which sheweth, that among the trees, which the Earth by God's commandment produced, the tree of Life was one, and that the fruit thereof was also to be eaten. The report of this Tree was also brought to the ancient Poets: for as from the indigested matter or *Chaos*, *Hesiodus*, *Homer*, *Ovid*, and others, so scale the invention of the created World; so from the Garden of Paradise they took the Plat-form of the Orchard of *Alcinous*, and another of the *Hesperides*: and from the Tree of Life, their *Nectar* and *Ambrosia*; for *Nectar*, according to *Suidas*, signifieth making young, and *Ambrosia*, immortality; and therefore said to be the meat and drinke of the gods.

## §. II.

Of *BECANUS* his opinion, that the Tree of knowledge was *Ficus Indica*.

Now for the Tree of Knowledge of good and evil, some men have presumed farther, especially *Goropius Becanus*, who giveth himselfe the honour to have found out the kind of this Tree, which none of the Writers of former times could ever guess at, wherewith *Goropius* much marvelled. But as he had an inventive brain, so there never lived any man, that believed better thereof, and of himself. Surely, howsoever his opinion may be valued, yet he usurpeth the praise due to others, at least if the invention be at that price at which he setteth it. For *Moses Bar-Cephas* fastened on this conjecture above six hundred years before *Becanus* was born: and *Bar-Cephas* himselfe referreth the invention to an antiquity more remote, citing for his Author *Philoxenus Maburgensis*, and others, whose very words *Goropius* useth, both concerning the Tree, and the reasons wherewith he would induce other men to that believe. For *Moses Bar-Cephas* in his Treatise of Paradise (the first Part and fol. 48.) saith, That the Tree of Knowledge was *Ficus Indica*, The Indian Fig-Tree; of which the greatest plenty (saith *Becanus*) are found upon the banks of *Acesines*, one of the Rivers which falleth into *Indus*, where *Alexander* built his Fleet of Gallies, in or neer the Kingdom of *Porus*.

This Tree beareth a fruit of the bigness of a great Peaze, or (as *Plinie* reporteth) somewhat bigger; and that it is a tree, so *semper ferax*; always planting it self; that it spreadeth it self so far abroad, as that a troupe of horsemen may hide themselves under it. *Strabo* saith, that it hath branches bending downwards, and leaves no less than a shield.

*Aristobolus*

*Aristobulus* affirmeth, that fifty Horsemen may shadow themselves under one of these Trees. *Onciscritus* raiseth this number to foure hundred. This tree (saith *Theophrastus*) exceeded all other in bigness, which also *Plinie* and *Onciscritus* confirm: to the trunk of which, these Authors give such a magnitude, as I shame to repeat. But it may be, they all speak by an ill-understood report. For this Indian Fig-tree is not so rare a plant, as *Becanus* conceiveth, who because he found it no where else, would needs draw the Garden of Paradise to the Tree, and set it by the River *Acesines*. But many parts of the world have them, and I my self have seen twenty thousand of them in one Valley, not far from *Paria* in America. They grow in moist grounds, and in this manner: After they are first shot up some twenty or thirty foot in length (some more, someless, according to the soile) they spread a very large top, having no bough nor twig in the trunk or stem: for from the utmost end of the head branches there issueth out a gummy juyce, which hangeth downward like a cord or sinew, and within a few moneths reacheth the ground; which it no sooner toucheth but it taketh root, and then being filled both from the top boughs, and from his own proper roote, this cord maketh it self a Tree exceeding hastily. From the utmost boughs of these young Trees there fall again the like cords, which in one year and less (in that World of a perpetual Spring) become also trees of the bigness of the weather part of a Lance, and as straight as art or nature can make any thing, casting such a shade, and making such a kinde of Grove, as no other Tree in the world can do. Now, one of these Trees considered with all his young ones, may (indeed) shrowd foure hundred or foure thousand Horsemen, if they please; for they cover whole Vallies of ground where these Trees grow near the Sea-bank, as they do by thousands in the inner parts of *Trinidad*. The cords which fall down over the banks into the Sea, shooting away downward to find root under water, are in those Seas of the Indies, where Oysters breed, intangled in their beds, so as by pulling up one of these cords out of the Sea, I have seen five hundred Oysters hanging in a heap thereon; whereof the report came, That Oysters grew on Trees in India. But that they beare any such huge leaves, or any such delicate fruit, I could never finde, and yet I have travailed a dozen miles together under them: but to returne to *Goropius Becanus*. This Tree (saith he) was good for meat and pleasing to the sight, as the Tree of knowledge of good and evil is described to be.

Secondly, This Tree having so huge a trunk (as the former Authours report, and *Becanus* believeth) it was in this Tree that *Adam* and *Eve* hid themselves from the presence of God; for no other tree (saith he) could contain them. But first it is certaine, that this Tree hath no extraordinary magnitude, as touching the trunk or stem, for among ten thousand of them it is hard to finde any one bigger than the rest, and these are all but of a mean size. Secondly, the words of *Moses* translated, in medio signi, are by all the Interpreters understood in the plurall number (that is) in the midst of the Trees. But his third argument (or rather the argument of *Moses Bar-Cephais*, word for word) is, That when *Adam* and *Eve* found themselves naked, they made them breeches of Fig-leaves; which proveth (indeed) that either the tree it selfe was a Fig-tree, or that a Fig-tree grew nearest: because *Adam* being possit with shame, did not run up and downe the Garden to seeke out leaves to cover him, but found them in the place it selfe; and these leaves of all other were most commodious by reason of their largenesse; which *Plinie* avoweth in these words: *Latitudo foliorum pelte effigiem Amazonian habet; The breadth of the leaves hath the shape of Amazonian shield: which also Theophrastus* confirmeth; the form of which Targets *Virgil* toucheth:

*Ducit Amazonidum lunatis agmina peltis*  
PENTHESILAEAE furens.

The Amazons with Crescent-formed shield  
PENTHESILAEAE leads into the field.

Here *Becanus* desireth to be believed, or rather threatneth us all that reade him, to give credit to this borrowed discovery, using this confident (or rather cholerick) speech: *Quis erit tam impudenter obstinatus, si haec à nobis de seu hac ex antiquis scriptoribus cum MOISIS narratione comparet, ut audeat dicere aliam arborem inveniri posse, quae cum illa magis quadret? Who will be so impudently obstinate, if he compare these things which*

we have reported of this Fig-tree, and out of ancient Writers delivered, with the narration of *Moses*, as to dare to avow, that any other Tree can be found, which doth more properly answer, or agree therewith? But for my self, because I neither finde this Tree, sorting in body, in largeness of leaves, nor in fruit to this report, I rather incline to the opinion of *Philo*. That the Earth never brought forth any of these trees neither before nor after; but I leave every man to his owne belief, for the matter is of no great weight as touching his kinde; onely thereby, and by the easie Commandment by God given to *Adam*, to forbear to feed thereon, it pleased God to make trial of his obedience: *prohibita, non propter aliud, quàm ad commendandum purae ac simplicis Obedientiae bonum; Being forbidden, not for any other respect, than thereby to commend the goodness of pure and simple Obedience.*

## §. III.

Of *Becanus* his not newly allegorizing of the story of his *Ficus Indica*.

BUT in this I must do *Becanus* right, that he hath very wittily allegorized this Tree, allowing his supposition of the Tree it selfe to be true. The effects whereof, because his discourses are exceeding ample, I have gathered in these few words. As this Tree (saith he) so did Man grow straight and upright towards God, until such times as he had transgressed and broken the Commandment of his Creator; and then like unto the boughs of this tree, he began to bend downward, and stooped toward the earth, which all the rest of *Adam's* posterity after him have done, rooting themselves therein, and fastning themselves to this corrupt world. The exceeding umbragiousness of this tree, he compareth to the dark and shadowed life of man, through which the Sun of justice being not able to pierce, we have all remained in the shadow of death, till it pleased *Christ* to climbe the tree of the Crosse for our enlightning and redemption. The little fruit which it beareth, and which is hard to finde among so many large leaves, may be compared (saith he) to the little virtue, and unperceived knowledge among so large vanities, which obscure and shadow it over. And as this fruit is exceeding sweet, and delicate to the taste and palate: so are the delights and pleasures of the world most pleasing, while they dure. But as all those things which are most mellifluous, are soonest changed into choler and bitterness: so are our vanities and pleasures converted into the bitterest sorrows and repentances. That the leaves are so exceeding large, the fruit (for such leaves) exceeding little, in this, by comparison we behold (saith he) the many cares and great labours of worldly men, their sollicitude, their outward shews, and publike ostentation, their apparent pride and large vanities; and if we seek for the fruit, which ought to be their virtuous and pious actions, we finde it of the bigness of the smallest pease; glory, to all the world apparent; goodness, to all the world invifible. And furthermore, as the leaves, body and boughs of this Tree, by so much exceed all other Plants, as the greatest men of power and worldly abilitie surpass the meanest: so is the little fruit of such men, and such trees, rather fitting and becoming the unworthiest Shrub, and humblest Briar, or the poorest and basest Man, than such a flourishing stateliness, and magnitude. Lastly, whereas *Adam*, after he had disobeyed God, and beheld his own nakedness and shame, sought for leaves to cover himselfe withal: this may serve to put us in minde of his and our sins, as often as we put on our garments, to cover and adorne our rotten and mortal bodies: to pamper and maintain which, we use so many uncharitable and cruel practices in this world.

## §. IV.

Of the names of the tree of Knowledge of good and evil: with some other notes touching the story of *ADAM's* sin.

NOW, as touching the sense of this tree of Knowledge of good and evil, and what operation the fruit thereof had, and as touching the property of the Tree it selfe, *Moses Bar-Cephais* an ancient Syrian Doctor (translated by *M. J. J.*) giveth this judgement: That the fruit of this Tree had no such virtue or quality,

as that by the tasting thereof, there was any such knowledge created in Adam, as if he had been ignorant before; but as *Junius* also noteth: *Arbor scientie boni & mali* (id est) *experientie boni & mali ab eventu. The Tree of knowledge of good and evil* (that is) the experience of good and evil by the event. For thus much we may conceive, that Adam being made (according to the Hebrew phrase) by the workmanship of Gods owne hand, in greater perfection than ever any man was produced by generation, being (as it were) the created Plant, out of whose seed, all men living have growne up; and having received immortality from the breath or spirit of God; he could not (for these respects) be ignorant, that the disobeying of Gods commandment was the fearefullest evil, and the observation of his precepts the happiest good. But as men in perfect health do (notwithstanding) conceive, that sickness is grievous, and yet in no such degree of torment, as by the suffering and experience in themselves they afterwards witness: so was it with Adam, who could not be ignorant of the punishments, due to neglect and disobedience; and yet felt by the prooffe thereof in himselfe another terror than he had fore-thought, or could imagine. For looking into the glasse of his own guiltie foule, he beheld therein the horror of Gods judgements, so as he then knew, he feelingly knew, and had triall of the late good, which could not be prized, and of the new purchased evil, which could not be exprest. He then saw himselfe naked both in Body and mind; that is, deprived of Gods grace and former felicitie: and therefore was this tree called the tree of Knowledge, and not because the fruit thereof had any such operation by any selfe: qualitie or effect: for the same phrase is used in many places of the Scriptures, and names are given to Signes and Sacraments, as to acts performed, and things done. In such sort, as this tree was called the tree of Knowledge, because of the event, as is aforesaid: so was the Well of contention therefore called *Esek*, and the Well of hatred *Sinath*, because the Heardsmen of *Isaac* and *Gerar* contended for them: and the heape of Stones called the heape of witnessse, between *Jacob* and *Laban*; nor that the stones bare witnessse, but for a memorie of the covenant. So *Jacob* called the house of God *Bethel*; and *Hagar*, the Well in the Desert, *Viventis*, & *videntis*.

But Adam being both betrayed and mastered by his affections, ambitious of a farther knowledge than he had perceived in himselfe, and looking but slightly (as all his illnesses doe) into the miseries and sorrows incident, and greatly affecting the supposed glory which he might obtaine by tasting the fruit forbidden, he was transported and blowne forward, by the gentle winde of pleasing persuasions, unawares; his progression being strengthened by the subtile arguments of *Sathan*, who laboured to poyson mankind in the very roote, which he moistened with the liquor of the same ambition, by which himselfe perished for ever.

But what meanes did the Divell find out, or what instruments did his owne subtilty present him, as fittest and aptest to work this mischief by? even the unquiet vanity of the woman; so as by *Adams* hearkning to the voice of his wife, contrarie to the expresse commandment of the living God, Mankind by that her incantation became the subject of labour, sorrow, and death: the woman being given to man for a comforter and companion, but not for a counsellor. But because she had obeyed the voice of thy wife &c. (said God himselfe) *Cursed is the earth for thy sake, in sorrow shalt thou eate of it all thy life.* It is also to be noted, by whom the woman was tempted? even by the most ugly and unworthy of all beasts, into whom the Divell entred and perswaded.

Secondly, what was the motive of her disobedience? even a desire to know what was most unfitting her knowledge; an affection which hath ever since remained in all the posterity of her sex. Thirdly, what was it that moved the man to yeild to her persuasions? even the same cause which hath moved all men since to the like consent; namely, an unwillingnesse to grieve her and make her sad, lest she should pine and be overcome with sorrow. But if Adam in the state of perfection, and *Solomon* the son of *David*, Gods chosen servant, and himselfe a man endued with the greatest wisdom, did both of them disobey their Creator, by the perswasion and for the love they bare to a woman, it is not so wonderful as lamentable, that other men in succeeding ages have been allured to so many inconvenient and wicked practices by the persuasions of their wives or other beloved darlings, who cover over and shadow many malicious purposes with a counterfeit passion of dissimulate sorrow and unquietnesse.

CHAP.

## CHAP. V.

Of divers memorable things betweene the fall of ADAM, and the Flood of NOAH.

## §. I.

Of the cause and the revenge of CAINS sinne: and of his going out from God.

**T**He same Pride and Ambition which began in Angels, and afterward possessed Adam, Cain also inherited: for Cain (envious of the acceptance of his Brothers Prayer and Sacrifice) slew him, making himselfe the first Murtherer, and his Brother the first Martyr: the revenge of which unnaturall Murther, although it pleased God to mitigate, when Cain cried out that his punishment was greater than he could beare. For the same offence chiefly (where-with the Sons of Adam, as it were, urged and provoked God) he destroyed all Mankind, but Noah and his Family: for it is written, *The Earth also was corrupt before God: of which in the same place Moses giveth a reason; for saith he, The Earth was filled with cruelty: and anon after, God himselfe made the cause knowne unto Noah, saying, An end of all flesh is come before me, for the Earth is filled with cruelty through them, and behold, I will destroy them with the Earth, or from the Earth.* Neither was this cruelty meant to have been in taking away the lives of men onely, but in all sorts of Injustice and Oppression. After this Murther of ABEL, CAIN went out from the presence of the Lord, and dwelt in the Land of Nod, towards the East-side of Eden: in which words, The going out of Cain from the presence of the Lord, is not to be understood after the literal sense, God being wholly in all parts of the World: *Totus in celo est, totus in terra, non alternis temporibus, sed semper; simul; God* (saith S. AUGUSTINE) *is wholly in Heaven, and wholly in Earth, not by entered times, but all at once;* And that this is true, David witnesseth: *If I be in Heaven, thou art there; in Hell, thou art there also.* But what is meant thereby? *Ex facie Dei* (saith CHRYSOSTOME) *CAIN went out from the presence of the Lord* (that is) he was left of God, disfavoured and bereaved of his protection.

## §. II.

Of CAINS dwelling in the Land of Nod: and of his City Enoch.

**T**His word Nod or Naid, S. Hierome and many others understand to signifie wandering or uncertaine habitation: vexation or agitation, saith *Junius*; but the Seventy convert it otherwise, and take Nod for the proper name of a Countrey, and so doth *Josephus*. But it seemeth to me, that Cain was rather a Vagabond or Wanderer in his cogitations, than any thing else, and that his thoughts and conscience had no quiet or rest, in regard of the Murther committed, justly fearing (by his own words) the like violence: *And whatsoever findeth me* (saith CAIN) *shall slay me.* Now that Nod or Naid was a Region wherein Cain inhabited, appeareth by the word (dwelt) for dwelling signifieth an abiding; and we call those people Wanderers and Vagabonds that have no dwelling place. And to make this dwelling and abiding more manifest, Moses teacheth in what part of the Earth this his habitation was, which he affirmeth towards the East-side of Eden. Secondly it is said by Moses, that after Cain departed from the presence or favour of God, he built a City, and called it by the name of his first-born, Enoch; which sheweth that he feared to wander, and rather sought to fortifie himself against revenge. *Cyrillus* saith, that Cain and Abel were figures of Christ, and of the Jewes; and that as Cain after that he had slain Abel unjustly, had thenceforth no certain abiding in the World: so the Jewes after they had crucified the Son of God, became Runnagates: and it is true, that the Jewes had never since any certain Estate, Common-wealth, or Prince of their owne upon the Earth. Now this Land of Nod, *Junius* taketh to be in Arabia Deserta, a Region of Nomades; but Arabia the Desert is not Eastward, or on the East part of Eden, neither are these Nomades any particular People or Nation. For all these, in what part of the World soever, which in old time lived by Pastorage, and not as

E

we

Page 23.

24.

we call it in Ireland) upon white meat, without tilling of the ground, are called by the Greeks *Nomades*, and by the Latines *Pastores vagi*; as the Northerne Tartarians, the Gētulians, and Numidians in Africa, the ancient Britains, and the Northern Irish: yea, such were the Inhabitants of Italy it self, till such time as *Italus* (who gave them that name) taught them the husbandry of tillage, used at this day. But the Region Eastward from Eden is that part of Asyria, called by *Ptolomy* Calene, which also might be derived of *Carena*, the country of *Cain*. And that *Cain* inhabited in those parts, it may be gathered by the first possession of his Father *Adam*; for thus it is written, *Genes. 3. Therefore the Lord God sent him forth from the Garden of Eden to till the Earth whence hee was taken: and in the Verse following: Thus hee cast out man, &c. and, at the East side of the Garden of Eden he set the Cherubims: which heeeth that the entry into Paradise was from the East; by which entrance Adam was cast out, and therefore inhabiting on that side of Paradise which was Eastward, according to the Text. Cain also in the same Region sought his dwelling place. Now, if the word *Nod* or *Naid* doe signifie *profugus*, that is, a fugitive, we can give no longer time to this uncertain habitation of *Cain*, than till hee built the City of Enoch, the first of the World, which he inclosed, either for his owne defence, or (as *Josephus* writeth) to oppress others thereby. So as for mine own opinion, I am resolved with the *Septuagint*, that *Nod* was the proper name of a Region; and for the word (*Vagabond*) which *Cain* useth of himselfe, it seemeth by the percelse of the same Verse, that (*Vagabond*) is therein understood for such an one as travaileth in fear of revengement: For whosoever findeth me (saith *Cain*) shall slay me; or else (*Vagabond*) is taken for a man without protection, and cast out from the favour of God.*

And because these Henochians, so called of the City of Henoch, were the first society & civil assembly of all other, it is likely that the fame of these people (either for cruelty, strength, or other actions) lived in the memory of *Noah* and his Sons : so that after the Flood (as there were of all sorts of natures, some virtuously, some impiously disposed, and every active mind setting before it whom to follow or imitate) those people, which delighted in cruelty and oppression, took on them their names whose natures they most liked and allowed; of whom these Henochians were not the least. Perchance the place it self where Henoch stood before the Flood, and whereof the Monuments might remain (as the pillars or the foundation of Joppe did) gave occasion to the Planters of that place to call themselves by the same name : for of those Henochians there were many Nations in the borders of Pontus, & Colchis in Iberia, Segdiana, & Bactria; of the same name many mountains, as those which are otherwise called Coraxici. And seeing that it is hard to finde out the truth of these things, which the most aged Time hath covered over or defaced, we may (according to the counsel of *Plato*) exceedingly rejoice, and therewith fatisfie our selves, if of so great & almost worn-out antiquity, if of the eldest peoples names & nations, there remain any print or footsteps to posterity.

Quotidie ali-  
quid in hoc ma-  
gno orbe muta-  
tur, noua urbi-  
um fundamenta  
jaciuntur, noua  
Gentium nomi-  
na (extinctis  
nominibus prio-  
ribus oriuntur.  
Seneca ad Al-  
bium.  
\* Plin. l.6.c.9.  
11. Cy 16.  
Mel. l.1.c.8.  
Strabo lib 11.  
Val. Flacc. l.6.  
Lucan. l.3.v.37  
Y.2.

On the eldest peoples names & nations, there remain any print or likeness of a borrowing. As *Pliny*, *P. Mela*, *Strabo*, *Valerius Flaccus*, *Lucan*, *Stephanus*, we finde those *Henochi* described, though diversly written; as in *Pliny*, sometimes *Henochii*, in *Mela*, *En-ochi*, in *Flaccus*, *Hemiochii*; in *Lucan*, *Eniochi*, all which inhabit upon the Sea Euxinus, but yet none of these are on the East side of Eden, or (according to *Moses* words) Eastward from Eden. For *Moses* in all places where he describeth any Region, was so exceeding precise as sometime he useth the word East or South without borrowing or addition, at other times with a borrowing, as Eastward, or Southward, or towards the East or South. In the place of *Genesis* the eleventh, he writeth the word (East) simply and directly. And as they went from the East, they found a Plaine in the Land of Shinar; but in this of *Cain* he addeth the word (towards) as, in the Land of Nod, towards the East side of Eden; which may be taken, as inclining some one point or two either to the North or to the South of the East.

But as we may conjecture that these Nations took name of Henoch the City of *Cain*, or of the Region wherein it stood, when the fame was reaped after the Flood: so it is probable that these *Hemochis* of Colchis, and other parts adjoining, were not the first of that name after the Sons of *Noah* began to fill the World again: because, had this *Hemoch* the City of *Cain* stood in any of these parts, it had then bin feared North, and not East or Eastward from Eden. But as *Pliny* findeth their habitation towards *Pontus*, so afterwards he goeth on Eastward, till he track them or trace them out to their originall, For he callen these of *Colchis* (now *Mengrelia*) *Sanni Hemochis*, *Phlomy Zanis*; beyond which

an hundred and fifty mile Eastward hee findeth another Nation of them about Iberia and Albanias; & beyond theſe he again diſcovereth a third Nation, from whence all the reſt took beginning, which inhabited on the Weſt ſide of the mountains of Paro-paniſus; between them and the great River of Oxus, which bordereth Baſtria on the North ſide; and theſe Henochii are due Eaſt from the Region of Eden, and Eaſtward from the very Garden it ſelf.

And although we cannot be assured that these Henochii took name from the memory of the City of *Enoch* directly; yet because they inhabited due East from Paradise, and afterwards spread themselves Weltward (as all *Noah's* Sons did that came into to Shinar) the conjecture is far more probable than that of *Annius* the Frier, who sets *Hennoch* in Phœnicia, quite contrary to *Moses* word: Phœnicia from all parts of Eden being directly welt.

And besides these severall Nations of the Henochii, *Stephanus* findeth a Region called Henochia, and the same also in the East, with divers mountains about Baetria and Sogdiana, of the same name. Only the Grecians (according to their fabulous inventions of all things else) out of the word (*Henochi*) which signifieth Carts or Coach-men, make these Nations to have sprung from the Waggoners of *Caſtor* and *Pollux* (to wit) *Amphites* and *Teleschius*, who attended them in the enterprife of *Jafon* into Colchis. And though I doe not deny, but that *Jafon* with other Greeks reder the coats of Asia the less in an open Boat or kind of small Galley, \* of whom I shall speak in his own time: yet no man doubteth but that the Tale of the Golden Fleece was for the most part Poeticall; and withall that in such an open Boat, which could hardly carry their owne Rowers, being 54. there was no place, and less use of Coach-horses or Waggoners.

Steph. de Urb.  
Nat. Comesc. 1.  
Ieth then  
Rhecas.  
Nat. Com. l. 8.  
c. 9.  
Strab. l. 11.  
\* In the se-  
cond Book of  
this first part,  
Cap. 13. Sect. 5

### §. III.

of MOSES his omitting sundry things concerning CAINS Generation.

**B**Ut of the remembrance and testimonies of the name of the City of *Enoch* in *Phane* Story, thus much may suffice : Now it followeth to answer some few Objections against certain particulars in the fourth and fifth Chapter of *Genesis* : 30 against which for the first it is demanded, how it was possible for *Cain* (having no other assistance than his Son *Henoch*) to performe such a Work as the building of a City, seeing there is thereto required for many hands, and so great a mass of all sorts of materials? To which it is answered, that we are first to consider, That of *Cain* (because he was the Parent of an impious Race) *Moses* useth no ample declaration ; and so it best agreeth with his divine Reason, seeing that he containeth the whole Story of the first Race, which lasted by the least account, 1656. years, in five short Chapters. Yet thusmuch may every man borrow of his own weak reason, That seeing it pleased God to bestow on the first generations of mens lives so long a measure as 800. & 960. 40 years, that in such a space *Cain* had not want of leisure and means to build many such Cities as *Enoch*, be the capacity answering to what other of the World (soever for in what Age of *Cain*'s life he built it, the Scriptures are silent : as of whose times, and the times of his issues *Moses* had the least care. And, as it was said of *Cain*, that he built a City : so it was said of *Noah*, that his three Sons peopled all the World ; but in both, the process of time required to be understood : which advice, seeing *Moses* useth where the space less requireth it, as knowing that he writ the Scriptures to reasonable men , wee may easily understand, that such was his meaning also in all reports of like nature. For in making but a difference between the birth of *Abel*, and the birth of *Cain*, he spake it in this sort, *Fuit autem post dies multos et sine diebus* (that is in process of time, it came 50 to passe that *Cain* brought an oblation. And therefore it is in like sort to be understood of *Cain*, that many years fore-gone, and when his people were increased , hee built the City of *Enoch* or *Henoch*.

And where it is written, as of *Cain*, that he built *Enoch*, so of *Solomon*; that hee built the Temple of *Jerusalem*; yet it is well known of *Solomon*, that he employed in that Work 150000. labourers: for this phrase or speech is common with our selves to say, the King invaded, when he caused an invasion to be made: & hee built, when he commanded such a building. And therefore seeing that we find that *Moses* had no regard to the ages, birth, or death of any of *Cain's* issues, it is not to be marvelled at, why hee also

Gen. 4. 17.

18.

C. 5. 1. 5.

passeth over in a word the building of Enoch, without addition of any circumstance: for of Cain, Moses writeth in this manner: CAIN also knew his Wife, who conceived and bare HENOC, and he built a City, and called the name of the City after the name of his Sonne HENOC. And to HENOC was borne IRAD, and IRAD begat MEHUIJAE, and MEHUIJAE begat METHUSAE, and METHUSAE LAMECH:

Now of Seth, Moses writeth far otherwise, and in this manner. And SETH lived an hundred and five yeares, and begat ENOC, and SETH lived after he begat ENOC 807. yeares, and begat Jannes and daughters: so as all the daies of SETH were 912. yeares, and he dyed: as for the yeares and times of the wicked, they were not numbred in libro vivendum, saith Cyril. But in Seth was the Church of God established; from whom Christ descended, as touching his manhood: and therfore this way and work Moses walked in, and finished it with care, passing over the reprobate Generation (as aforesaid.) Of the Line of Adam by Cain, Moses remembereth but eight Generations, reckoning Adam for one; and of the Line of Adam by Seth ten, counting Adam also therein, as followeth.

## I. ADAM.

2 Cain	7 Lamech, who by	2 Seth.	7 Henoch.
3 Henoch.	Adah had	3 Enosh.	8 Methusale.
4 Irad.	8 Tubal & Tubal, &	4 Caman.	9 Lamech, and
5 Mehuijæl.	by Silla, Tubal-Cain	5 Mahaleel.	10 Noah.
6 Methusale.	and Noëma.	6 Jared.	

20

Gen. 4. 25, 26, 27.

These be the Generations of Adam by Cain, which the Scriptures mention: but Josephus giveth unto Lamech threecore and seventeen Sonnes and Daughters, by his two Wives Ada and Sylla: and to these three sons of Lamech, Moses ascribeth the invention of Pastorage, of Musick, and the working in Metall; for it seemeth that Tubal first gathered together, and made familiar those beasts which formerly were untamed, & brought them into Heards and Drovers: Tubal invented musick, and Tubal-cain the working in Brasse and Iron: the one being addicted to Husbandry, the other was Mechanicall, the third given to idleness and pleasure. In whom began these three meaner degrees of Shepherds, Handy-crafts-men, and Musicians. And in the issues of Seth began the Services of God, Divinity, Prophecie, and Astronomy: the Children of the one beheld the Heavens, the other the Earth.

## §. IV.

Of the diversities in the Ages of the Patriarchs when they begat their Children.

A Second Scruple hath been made, How it came to passe that the Patriarchs begat their children at so divers Ages, as Caman or Conan at seventy yeares, Mahaleel and Enoch at threecore and five yeares, whereas Jared begat not any of his untill he was 162. yeares old: Methusaleem begat at 187. Lamech at 182. and Noah at 500. yeares. Now this difference hath been the more enforced, because it cannot be conjectured, that either Jared, Methusaleem, or Lamech abstained from Marriage out of the religion of Abstinence, seeing that Enoch, who was translated by God for his singular Sanctities, begat children before he was threecore and ten yeares old.

The apparent difference hereof ariseth in this, that Moses did not number the Generations before the Flood precisely, according to the first begotten and eldest sons of the Patriarchs, but he drew down the Line of Noah from Seth, and afterward from Noah to Abraham, by their true Ancestors, were they elder or younger, as he found them: for it is likely that Henoch was not the eldest of Jared, nor Lamech the first-born of Methusaleem, nor Noah of Lamech; neither is there any thing known to the contrary, but that Noah might have had many Sons before Shem, Ham, and Japhet, though these three were only named, and surviving, & which by God were reserved to bee the Fathers of mankind after the Flood; and therefore when we find Mahaleel to be begotten by Kenan at threecore and ten yeares, who was the first Son of Kenan, and then reckon that Methusaleem begat Lamech in the 187. year of his life, the difference seemeth strange, where Lamech is taken for the eldest. But Moses rejecteth all the other sons of Methusaleem but Lamech only, because he was the Father of Noah, as aforesaid. Of this

Saint

Saint Augustine hath somewhat else in his twentieth, and one and twentieth Chapters, De Civitate Dei.

But as Moses counted the Generations of the first Age, and so to Abraham, and the children of the promise after him; so doth S. Matthew recite the Genealogy of Christ, not by the eldest sons, but from those whom God had chosen and blessed, without respect of the first-born, who have hereby the prerogative in Estates, worldly and transitory only; and therefore the Evangelist nameth Isaac; and not Ismael, though Ismael Mat. 12. were first in time; so doth he take Jacob the younger, and not Esau the Elder; neither is Christ derived from any of the three eldest Patriarchs, Reuben, Simeon, or Levi, but from Juda a fourth Brother, and so from David a younger son of Jesse; and lastly, we finde, that the Kingdome it self of Juda was not given to the Heir in nature, but to the Heire of Grace, namely Solomon.

1 Kings 2.

## § V.

Of the long lives of the Patriarchs, and some of late memory.

The third Objection is, that the great difference of yeares between those of the first Age, whereof some of them had well nigh seen a thousand yeares, makes it disputable, whether the account of times were of the same measure as in after-Ages, seeing that soon after the Flood, men lived not a third part of that time, and in succeeding Ages, and to this day, not the tenth.

They that have heretofore resolved that those yeares were but Lunary yeares, (to wit) of a moneth or thereabouts, or Egyptian yeares, are easily confuted. For whereas Seth begat Enosh in the yeare of his life an hundred and five, if those yeares be taken but for moneths, then had Seth lived but eight yeares and one moneth when he begat Enosh; and if the time of Enosh have the same allowance when he begat Kenan, then could Enosh at that time have been but six yeares and forty eight weeks old; and so it may be gathered of the rest, excepting only Adam, who was created perfect in his kinde, as were the trees in their kinde, bearing fruit and seed. But this were too ridiculous to imagine. For to give an ability of generation at six, seven, or eight yeares, agreeth with the short lives of the Pigmies, and not with the constitutions of our first Fathers, who being descended from Adam, the workmanship of Gods hands, and begotten and born in the strong youth of the World, and length of daies, and ability of body agreeable. Again, if we allow this idle conceit of the lunary yeares, then there would follow this extremity, that those which lived longest, and upwards of nine hundred yeares, had by that account but the time of fourcore and ten and odd yeares, which were not only lesse by far than the Patriarchs lived after the Flood, but short of many mens lives in this decrepit Age of the World, wherein many exceed fourcore, and some a hundred yeares. Further (if need be) to disprove this reckoning, whereas it is written, Gen. 25. That Abraham died in a good Age, an old man, and of great yeares: all which (if the former account were of Lunary yeares) makes but seventeen and an half of our yeares.

And if we seek for a cause of this long life in nature, then is it reasonable, that the first man, created in highest perfection, should also beget children of equal strength or little differing: for of the first and purest seed there must of necessity spring up the fairest and fruitfulest plants. Secondly, the Earth it self was then much less corrupt, which yielded her increase, and brought forth fruit and food for man, without any such mixture of harmfull quality, as since that time the curse of God, for the cruelty of mans heart, brought on it and mankind: Neither had the waters of the Flood infused such an impurity, as thereby the naturall and powerful operation of all Plants, Herbs, and Fruits upon the Earth received a qualification and harmfull change. And as all things under the Sun have one time of strenght, and another of weaknesse, a youth and beauty, and then age and deformity: so time it self (under the deathfull shade of whose wings all things decay and wither) hath wasted and worn out that lively vertue of Nature in Man, and Beasts, and Plants; yea, the Heavens themselves, being of a most pure and cleansed matter, shall wax old as a garment; and then much more the power generative in inferior Creatures, who by the ordinance of God receive operative Vertue from the superiour.

But besides the old Age of the World, how far doth our education and simplicity

F 3

of



of living differ from that old time? the tender bringing up of Children, first fed and nourished with the Milk of a strange Dugge; an unnatural curiosity having taught all Women (but the Beggar) to finde out Nurser, which necessity onely ought to commend unto them: The hasty Marriages in tender years, wherein, Nature being but yet green and growing, we rent from her and replant her branches, while her self hath not yet any root sufficient to maintain her own top; and such half-ripe feeds (for the most part) in their growing up wither in the bud, and wax old even in their Infancy. But above all things, the exceeding luxuriosities of this gluttonous age, wherein we press Nature with over-weighty burdens, and finding her strength defective, we take the work out of her hands, and commit it to the artificial help of strong Waters, hot Spices, and provoking Sawces; of which *Lucan* hath these elegant Verses:

Petr. al. 4.

-----O Prodigia rerum  
Luxuries nunquam parvo contenta parati:  
Et quistorma terra pelagis; ciborum  
Ambitiosa famae, & laute gloria mense,

Discite quidam parvo liceat producere vitam:  
Et quantum Natura petat.  
Non auro myrrhâq; bibunt: sed gurgite puro  
Vita redit: satis est populis stuviusq; Ceresque.

O wastfull Riot never well content  
With low-priz'd fare; hunger ambitious  
Of Cates by Land and Sea far fetch and sent:  
Vain glory of a Table sumptuous,  
Learn with how little life may be preserved.  
In Gold and Myrrhe they need not to carouse,  
But with the Brook the peoples thirst is served:  
Who fed with Bread and Water are not served.

Pier. Hierog. 1.2

The Egyptians affirm, that the longest time of man's life is a hundred years, because the heart in a perfect body waxeth and groweth to strength fifty years, and afterwards by the same degree decayeth and withered. *Epigenes* findeth in his Philosophy, that the life of man may reach to the period of an hundred and twenty years, and *Berosus* to a hundred and seventeen years. These opinions *Plinie* repeateth and reproveth, producing many examples to the contrary. In the last taxation, number and review of the eighth region of Italy, there were found in the Roll (saith *Plinie*) foure and fifty per-sons of an hundred years of age: seven and fifty of an hundred and ten: two, of an hundred and five and twenty: foure, of an hundred and thirty: as many that were an hundred and five and thirty, or a hundred and seven and thirty years old: and last of all, three men of an hundred and forty: and this search was made in the times of *Vespasian* the Father and the Son.

Plin. l. 7. c. 25.

The simple dyet and temperate life of the *Ellaens* gave them long account of many years: so did it to the Secretaries of Egyptian Ceremonies, to the Persians Magicians, and Indian Brachmans. The Greeks affirme out of *Homer*, that *Nestor* lived three Ages, and *Tiresias* six, *Syllia* three hundred years, *Eudymion* of the less Asia, little less: Also *Masanija* of Numidia lived very long, and *Daudo* of Illyria. Among the kings of Arcadia many lived three hundred years (saith *Epiphorus*). *Hellanicus* affirmeth of the *Epeians*, that some of them lived full two hundred years; and so doth *Diodorus Siculus* of the Egyptians; and that these reports are not fabulous, *Josephus* bringeth many witnesses with himself as *Marathon*, *Berosus*, *Mochous*, *Isidorus*, *Hieronymus*, *Egyptius*, *Hecataeus*, *Ephorus*, and others. And *Anthony Fume*, an Historian of good reputation reporteth, that in the year 1570. there was an Indian presented to *Solyman*, General of the Turks Army, who had out-lived three hundred years. I my self knew the old Countess of Desmond of Inchiquin in Munster, who lived in the year 1589. and many years since, who was married in Edward the Fourth's time, and held her Joynture from all the Earles of Desmond since then; and that this is true, all the Noblemen and Gentlemen of Munster can witness: *Siracenus Cicogena*, out of *Compendio Mussens*, and the like Authours, tellet of some that have not only far exceeded the term prescribed by *Epigenes*; but been repaired from the withered estate of decrepitude to fresh youth. But for length of life, if we note but the difference between the ability of men in those daies wherein *Galen* the Physician lived, it may easily prove unto us what Reeds we are in respect of those Cedars of the first age. For *Galen* did ordinarily let blood six pound weight, whereas we (for the most part) stop at six ounces. But to conclude this part, there are three things (not counting Constellations) which are the natural causes of a long and healthful life; (to wit) strong

Hes. l. 13. c. 8  
Plin. l. 7. c. 48.

Parents, a pure and thin ayre, and temperate use of dyet, pleasure, and rest: for those which are built of rotten timber, or mouldring stone, cannot stand long upright; on ayre we feed alwaies and in every instant, and on meats but at times; and yet the heavy load of abundance, wherewith we oppress and overcharge Nature, maketh her to sink unawares in the midway; and therefore with a good constitution, a pure ayre, and a temperate use of those things which nature wanteth, are the onely friends and companions of a long life.

## §. VI.

10 Of the Patriarchs delivering their knowledge by Tradition: and that *ENOCH* writ before the Flood.

A Fourth scruple hath bin made, How the certain knowledge of the Creation came to *Moses*, seeing there was no Story thereof written; and if any such had been, yet it is conceived, that all memory of Antiquity perished in the Universal Flood.

But if we consider the curiosity and policy of elder ages, we shall finde, that knowledge was the greatest treasure that men sought for, and which they also covered and hid from the vulgar sort, as Jewels of inestimable price, fearing the irreverent construction of the ignorant and irreligious: so as whatsoever was attained unto concerning God, and his working in nature, the same was not left to publike dispute, but delivered over by heart and tradition from wise men to a posterity equally zealous; *Ex animo in animum sine literis medio intercedente verbo: From minde to minde without Letters, by way of tradition or word of mouth.* And it was thought by *Esdraus*, *Origen*, and *Hilarius* (as *Mirandula* conceiveth) that *Moses* did not onely upon the Mount receive the Law from God, but withal, secretiores & veram legis enarrationem; a more secret and true explanation of the Law; which (saith he, out of the same Authors), he delivered by mouth to *Josuah*, and *Josuah* to the Elders: for to teach these mysteries, which he called *secretiora*, to the rude multitude, were no other quàm dare sanctum canibus, & inter porcos spargere *Margaritas*; than to give holy things to Dogs, and to cast Pearls before Swine. In succeeding times this understanding and wisdom began to be written in Ciphers and Characters, and Letters bearing the form of beasts, birds, and other creatures; and to be taught onely to such as served in their Temples, and to their Kings and Priests. Of the first the Cabala of the Jews was an imitation: the invention of the other is ascribed to *Zoroaster*, *Mercurius*, *Cadmus*, and others; but falsely.

This Cabala importeth a Law, received by tradition and unwritten. Cabala in Hebrew is receptio in Latine, and a receiving in English. And this custome was also held by the Druids and Bards of our ancient Britains, and of latter times by the Irish Chroniclers called Rimers. If then such as would seem wisest in the use of reason, will not acknowledge, that the story of the Creation, or beginning of all things, was written by inspiration, the holy Ghost guiding the hand of *Moses*; yet it is manifest, that the knowledge thereof might by tradition (then used) be delivered unto him by a more certain presumption, than any or all the testimonies which prophane antiquity had preserved and left to their successors: which their wisdom (as they terme them) did lay up and defend from the injury of the time and other hazards. For, leaving to remember that *Adam* instructed *Seth*, and *Seth* his children and successors, which cannot be donbeed of, it is manifest, that *Methusaleme* lived together with *Adam* himself two hundred forty and three years, and *Noah* with *Methusaleme* no less than five hundred years: and before *Noah* died, *Abraham* was fifty and eight years old: from whence this knowledge by an easie and ordinary way might come to *Israel*, and so to *Moses*.

But besides this tradition, it is questionless, that the use of letters was found out in the very infancy of the world, proved by those prophetical written on pillars of stone and brick by *Enoch*: of which *Josephus* affirmeth that one of them remained even in his time (meaning belike some ruine or foundation thereof) which pillars by others are ascribed to *Seth*. But of these propheties of *Enoch*, *S. Jude* testifieth; and some part of his Books (which contained the course of the Stars, their names and motions) were afterward found in *Arabia felix*, in the Dominion of the Queen of Saba (saith *Origen*) of which *Tertullian* affirmeth, that he had seen, and read some whole Pages. It is not therefore strange, that *Moses* came to the knowledge of the Creation, and story

Origen. Homil. 1. in Numer.

of the first Age, seeing he might receive it both by tradition and letters, had not the spirit of God instructed and inspired him as it did : which also his many and strange miracles (performed before he wrote the Scriptures) make more manifest.

Origen. Hol. 28.  
in Num. & com-  
ment in Evang.  
Joan.  
Gelas. diff. 15.

Now for the Books of *Enoch*, howsoever some men make mention of them, sure I am that *Tertullian*, *Origen*, *Augustine*, *Beda*, *Procopius*, *Gazens* (with others) cite them in their writings : although *Medina*, for an argument to prove them unwritten traditions, alledgeth that Pope *Gelasius* among other the Apocryphal Scriptures (which he rejecteth) named not these of *Enoch* ; but that whatsoever was remembered out of them, the same was delivered by Tradition from the Jews. But I rather think with *Pererius*, that such a Book there was, and that the same was corrupted after the death of the Apostles, and many things added thereunto by Hereticks, who took occasion upon the antiquity thereof, and out of that place of *Michael* contending with the Devil about the body of *Moses*, to frame and add thereunto many inventions of their own. One of the greatest arguments against these Books, is, that neither *Philo* nor *Josephus* (the most diligent searchers of Antiquity) make mention thereof. But against it I will set this opinion of *S. Augustine*, *Scriptis quidem nonnulla divina Enoch, illum septimum ab Adam, negare non possumus* : That *Enoch* the seventh from *Adam*, did write divers divine things, we cannot deny. Now his writings which came afterwards to light, were suspected because of the antiquity, and of fables of Giants, supposed to be begotten of Angels, and others ; and by so much the more, because no such Book was found amongst those Canonical Scriptures, kept by the diligence of the Hebrew Priests in *Armario Judaico* (saith *Tertullian*) who yet affirmeth that this Book might be preserved by *Noah*. Surely, that *Enoch* wrote the prophecies remembered by *Jude*, no man can deny ; how they were delivered to posterity, I know not ; whether by the Jews *Cabala*, or by what other means, the same is but mans conjecture. And (certainly) by the knowledge ascribed to *Noah* of the motions of the Heavens, and of the natures and conjunctions of the Stars ; and afterwards to some of his sons, to *Zoroaster*, and then to *Abraham*, it is very probable that *Noah* had seen and might preserve this Book. For it is not likely, that so exquisite knowledge therein (as these men had) was suddenly invented and found out, but left by *Seth* to *Enoch*, and by *Enoch* to *Noah*, as hath been said before. And therefore if letters and arts were known from the time of *Seth* to *Enoch*, and that *Noah* lived with *Methusalem*, who lived with *Adam*, and *Abraham* lived with *Noah*, it is not strange (I say) to conceive how *Moses* came to the knowledge of the first Age, be it by letters, or by *Cabala* and tradition, had the undoubted word of God need of any other proof than self-authority.

Tert. de habit.  
maiorum.

Heb. 11. 15.

### §. VII.

Of the men of renown before the Flood.

Now let us consider the relation of *Moses*, who nameth seven descents of *Cains* children : and of *Adam* by *Seth* ten ; *Seth* being given by God in stead of *Abel* : and of *Seth* was *Enosh* begotten, in whose time men began to profess Religion, and to offer sacrifice in publicke. For although *Adam* instructed his children in the knowledge of God their Creator, as appeared by the sacrifice offered by *Cain* and *Abel* ; yet it seemeth that after the birth of *Enosh*, men began publicly to call on the Name of the Lord, that is, they served and praised God by Communion and in publicke manner, or calling upon the Name of the Lord ; and thereby were the sons of God, or the godly, distinguished from the wicked. From the birth of *Enosh* the son of *Seth*, to the time of *Enoch* the son of *Jared*, there is nothing remembered by *Moses*, but their owne births, the births of their sons, the length of their lives, and deaths. But of *Enoch* it is written : That he walked with God, and he was no more scene : For God tooke him away. By that ; that he walked with God, was meant, that he was a just and upright man, and that he feared, loved, and obeyed God. For the same phrase *Moses* useth of *Noah* ; *Noah was a just and upright man in his time, and Noah walked with God*. The seventy convert it, *Enoch placuit Deo* ; *Enoch pleased God*. And although *Aben-Ezra* and others understand this place, (sicut cum Deo) scilicet, mortuus est ; God tooke him away, (that is) he dyed, which (indeed) agreeth both with the phrase of the Scripture, and with our manner of speech to this day, to say, God tooke him away when he died ; yet the difference which *Moses* maketh between the piety of *Enoch*, and the rest of the Patriarchs

Gen. 5. 24.

67.

triarchs, and by omitting the word (death) which he useth to all else, makes it manifest, that *Enoch* was not dissolved as the rest. For to all the rest of the Patriarchs, *Moses* useth these words, And he dyed ; but of *Enoch* he spake otherwise, saying onely, He was missing, or he was not scene. Et non inveniebatur (saith the Apostle to the Hebrewes) quia Deus eum transtulit ; And he was not found, for the Lord tooke him away. In the same place it is expressly added, that he saw not death.

But whether this taking away of *Enoch* were not with the same kinde of changing, which *S. Paul* promisseth, when he saith, that, when the end shall come, we shall not all dye, 1 Cor. 15. 51. but all shall be changed, I leave it to the learned Divines.

After *Enoch*, *Moses* passeth over to *Methusalem* and *Lamech*, remembering (as of the rest) the times of their birth and death : saying that *Lamech* prophesied of his son *Noah*, saying, This same shall comfort us concerning our worke, and sorrow of our hands, as touching the earth which the Lord hath cursed. Of *Noah*, *Moses* writeth more amply than of any of the rest of *Adams* children by *Seth*, being the last of the ten generations of the first Age, whom God (with his Family) preserved, because he was an upright man in his time, and feared God.

But of the warre, peace, government, and policy of those strong and mighty men, so able both in body and wit, there is no memory remaining : whose stories if they had bin preserved, and what else was then performed in that newnesse of the world, there could nothing of more delight have been left to posterity. For the exceeding long lives of men (who to their strength of body and naturall wits, had the experience added of 800 and 900 years) how much of necessity must the same adde of wisdom and undertakings : Likely it is, that their works excelled all whatsoever can be told of after times, especially in respect of this old age of the World, when we no sooner begin to know, but we begin to die ; according to *HIPPOCRATES* : Vita brevis, ars longa, semper preceptis ; (which is) Life is short, art is long, and time is headlong. And that those people of the first age performed many things, worthy admiration, it may be gathered out of these words of *MOSES* ; These were mighty men, which in old time were men of renown. But these men of renown (whom the Scripture afterwards calleth Giants, both for strength of body, and cruelty of mind) trusted so much to their owne abilities, as they forgot altogether the piety of *Seth*, and the waies wherein *Enoch* walked : for all the imaginations of their hearts were evil, only evil, and continually evil. And this wickednesse was not only found in the issues of *Cain*, but it was then universall, when the children and sons of God (or of the godly) were corrupted and misled by their idolatrous wives, the daughters of *Cain*, or of those other men, loving themselves and the world only.

That these sons of God were Angels, which being taken with the beauty of women, accompanied them and begat Giants, some of the Fathers supposed ; namely, *Lactantius*, and *Enschim*, misled by *Josephus* : of whom I cannot doubt, but that they afterward changed their former opinions. And of this mistaking many Writers have taken great advantage, and have troubled themselves with large answers, and very needlesse : the question being incapable of dispute, especially since *S. Chrysostom* and *S. Augustine* have answered it largely long agoe. For, that good and godly men were honoured with the title of Gods children, it doth every where appear in the Scriptures ; and on the contrary, to thinke that Angels, who (as Christ witnesseth) beheld the face of God, (that is) alwaies attend his commandements, should after a separation from the rest which fell with *Lucifer*, forsake the glorious presence of their Creatour, and become *Incubi*, or *Succubi*, contrary both to Nature and Grace, were more than madnesse to imagine.

### §. VIII.

That the Giants by *MOSES* so called, were indeed men of huge bodies : as also divers in later times.

OF these Giants which *Moses* calleth mighty men, *Goropius Becanus* an *Antwerpian* (who thought his owne wit more Gigantically than the bodies of *Nimrod* or *Hercules*) hath written a large discourse, intituled *Gigantomachia*, and strayed his braines to prove, that there were never any such men : his reasons (whosoever desires to lose time) he may find them in the Treatises before named. It is true that *Cyrollus* reproves the Grecian Poets for their monstrous fictions : who affirme shamelesly, That

That the Giants have in elder times not only cast up Mountains upon Mountains, but removed Islands out of the Sea, with like fooleries. And for that invention of casting up Hills, and making war with the gods, no doubt but that the same was borrowed out of the story of *Nimrod*, as before remembred; and even out of this Scripture: That the Sons of God saw the Daughters of Men, of whom the first Giants were begotten, was that conceit taken of *Orpheus* and *Hesiodus*. That Giants were the sons of the Heaven and the Earth; meaning by the Heavens the sons of God, and by the Earth the daughters of Men: which verses of *Orpheus* are by *John Cassian* (who hath written a witty discourse of this subject) thus changed into Latine:

*Nomine cælestes illos dixere Gigantes,  
Orti quod terrâ fuerint & sanguine cæli.*

From the Earth, and from thy blood, O heaven, they came,  
Whom thereupon the gods did Giants name.

But what will not Opiniators and selfe-beleeving men dispute of, and make doubt of, if they cannot conceive that there were in the first Age such kind of men; and of which there have been in all times since; seeing the Scriptures avow the one manifestly, and common experience the other?

And for that superlative straining of words, and the meaning of them, that the name of Giants was given to Oppressors and Tyrants, and not to strength of body and eminent stature: such men might with better reason call them Oppressors, because they were Giants; and therefore had ability to oppress, than say, That they were called Giants only, because Oppressors. For first, *Moses* himself calleth them mighty men; which sheweth a strength surpassing others; and afterwards men of renowne, (that is) of great undertaking and adventurous action. And if the same stature of body, and ability had not bene found among divers Nations after the generall flood, then might this place of *Moses* have more willingly hearkened to a dispute, and yielded to interpretation.

But besides all these famous Giants found in prophane Histories (which I will refferve to accompany the Giants of Albion, in the story of Britanie) the Scriptures doe cleerly and without all allegorical construction avow, That, besides *Nimrod*, there were found; of these Giants in the time of *Abraham*, of *Moses*, of *Joshua*, and of *David*; namely, the Rephaims in Aferoth; the Zuzai or Zanzummims in Ham, and the Emims which dwelt anciently in the Land of Moab: whom *Moses* (for stature) compareth with the Anakims, which dwelt in Hebron; for they also were taken for Giants as the Anakims. Likewise where *Moses* speaketh of the Land of *Ammon* he useth these words: That also was taken for a land of Giants, for Giants dwelt therein afore-times: & whom the *Ammonites* call *Zanzummims*: a people that was great, and many, and tall as the *Anakims*. And these Giants called Rephaims in Aferoth and Karnaim, and the Zuzai or Zanzummims, *Chedorlaomer* king of Elam overthrew, assisted by other kings his associates. Also the Prophet *Amos* found among the *Ammonies* men of giant-like stature, whom he compareth to the *Cedar*, and whose strength to the *Oakes*; and the Prophet *Baruch*, These were the *Giants* famous from the beginning, that were of so great stature, and so expert in war. Particularly it is written of *Og*, King of *Basan*, that his bed of yron was 9 cubits long, and four cubits broad: for only *Og* king of *Basan* remained of the remnant of the Giants, who commanded the Kingdome of *Basan*, four hundred yeares after the Expedition of *Chedorlaomer*. Moreover, those Discoverers and Searchers of the Land of Promise (sent by *Moses* from *Cadesbarne* in *Paran*) made reporte at their returne of the great stature of those people in general, and especially of the sons of *Anak*, in these words: All the people which we saw in it are men of great stature: for there we saw Giants, the sons of *ANAK*, which count of the Giants, so that we seemed in our sights like *Grasse-hoppers*, and so we were in their sight, (that is) the Searchers found in their owne judgements a marvellous difference between the *Anakims* and themselves: inso much that the *Israelites* were so stricken with fear, as they rather sought and desired to return againe into *Egypt*: and were more willing to endure their former slavery, than to fall by the strokes of those fearful Nations. Furthermore, the Scriptures put us out of doubt, that *Goliath* the Philistine of *Gath*, was a Giant of six cubits and a span long: the Armour which he wore weighed five thousand shekles of brass: the shaft of his speare was like a Weavers beame, and his speare-head weighed six hundred shekles of yron. Also in *Samuel* there is mention of another *Goliath*.

Gen. 14. 5.

Num. 13. 34.

Deut. 2. v. 21.

Vers. 21.

Amos 1.

Bar. 3. v. 26.

Deut. 3. v. 11.

Num. 13. v. 34.

Cap. 14. 4.

1 Sam. 17. 4.

2 Sam. 21. v. 19.

of another *Goliath*, surnamed *Gethseu*, because he was of *Gath*: and of three other Giants; of which the first was slain by *Jonathan*, *David's* Nephew, who had twelve fingers, and as many toes: a man of great stature, and his fingers were by sixes, even four and twenty.

Also that *Sampson* was of surpassing strength, no man doubteth, who tore a Lion as it had been a Kid, and after slue thirty of the Philistines, and (after that) a thousand more of them with a Jaw-bone of an Ass: And lastly, he took the gates of *Azzah*, and the two Posts, and lifted them away with the bars, and put them upon his shoulders, and carried them to the top of the Mountain before *Ebron*. If then it be approved by every judgement, that both Nature and the Heavens wax old, and that the great age of Time hath (with it self) infeebled and almost worn out the virtue of all things, then, I say, That as in all other kinds the Earth (before that Sin had increased the curse and corruption) brought forth her young ones more strong and beautiful, than it did in after ages: so also those Giants, those mighty men, and men of renown, as far exceeded the proportion, nature, and strength of those Giants, remembred by *Moses* of his own time, and after him their successors, as the ordinary proportion of all men in general, soon after the flood and in times far off, exceeded the bulks and bodies of men which are now born in the withered quarter and Winter of the World. If therefore Giants were common in the third and fourth age, much more in the first flourishing youth and newness of the world.

But the wickedness (especially in cruelty and oppression) of these men was such, as God therefore by the flood gave end to all flesh, but to the just *Noah* and his Family. And God repented him that he had made man: which *S. Augustine* thus expoundeth; *Neg. Gen. 6. 6. enim sicut hominem, ita Deum facti sui penitet, cujus est de omnibus omnino rebus tam fixa sententia, quam certa prescientia. Sed si non uatur Scriptura talibus verbis, non se quodammodo familiaris insinuat omni generi hominum, quibus uult esse consilium: ut & perterret superbientes, & excitet negligentes, & exerceat quarentes, & alacritelligentes; God (saith he) doth not repent him of any thing which he hath done (as men use to do): but if the Scripture did not use those words or the like, it should not (in a sort) insinuate it self familiarly to all sorts of men, for whom it would provide: that it might terrise the proud, stir up the negligent, exercise the searchers of the truth, and nourish those that understand.*

14. 19.  
16. 3.De Civit. Dei.  
1. 15. c. 15.

## CHAP. VI.

Of idolatrous corruptions, quickly rising, and hardly at length vanishing in the world: and of the Reliques of Truth touching these ancient times, obscurely appearing in Fables and old Legends.

## §. 1.

That in old corruptions we may finde some signs of more ancient truth.

Here, before we proceed any further, the occasion offereth it self for us to consider how the Greeks and other more ancient Nations, by fabulous inventions, and by breaking into parts the story of the Creation, and by delivering it over in a mystical sense, wrapping it up mixed with other their own trumpery, have sought to obscure the truth thereof; and have hoped, that after-ages, being thereby brought into many doubts, might receive those inter-mixt discourses of God and Nature, for the inventions of Poets and Philosophers, and not as any thing borrowed or stolne out of the Books of God. But as a skilful and learned Chymist can aswell by separation of visible elements draw helpful medicines out of poyson, as poyson out of the most healthful hearbs and plants (all things having in themselves both life and death): so, contrary to the purposes and hopes of the Heathen, may those which seek after God and Truth, find out every-where, and in all the ancient Poets and Philosophers, the Story of the first Age, with all the works and marvels thereof, amply and lively exprest.

## §. II.

That the corruptions themselves were very ancient; as in the Family of Noah, and in the old Egyptians.

**B**ut this defection and falling away from God, which was first found in Angels, and afterwards in men (the one having erred but once, the other ever) as concerning Mankind it took such effect, that thereby (the liberal grace of God being withdrawn) all the posterity of our first Parents were afterwards born and bred in a world, suffering a perpetual Eclipse of spiritual light. Hence it was that it produced plants of such imperfection and harmful quality, as the waters of the general flood could not so wash out or depure, but that the same defection hath had continuance in the very generation and nature of mankind. Yea, even among the few sons of Noah, there were found strong effects of the former poison. For as the children of Sem did inherit the virtues of Seth, Enoch, and Noah; so the sons of Cham did possess the vices of the sons of Cain, and of those wicked Giants of the first Age. Whence the Chaldeans began soon after the Flood to ascribe divine power and honour to the Creature, which was onely due to the Creatour. First, they worshipped the Sun, and then the Fire. so the Egyptians and Phœnicians did not onely learn to leave the true God, but created twelve several gods, and divine powers, whom they worshipped, and unto whom they built Altars and Temples. For Herodotus saith, *Duodecim Deorum nomina primi Egypti in usum habuisse, atque Græcos ab illis cepisse mutatos, eoque prius Aras, & Imagines, & Tempia Diis sibi erexisse*; The Egyptians (saith he) first devised the names of the twelve gods, which the Greeks received from them, who first erected unto themselves Altars, Images, and Temples for the gods.

Herod. in Ex.  
102.

## §. III.

That in process of time these lesser errors drew on greater: as appeareth in the grofs Superstitions of the Egyptians.

**B**ut as men once fallen away from undoubted truth, do then after wander for evermore in vices unknown, and daily travail towards their eternal perdition: so did these grofs and blinde Idolaters every Age after other, descend lower and lower, and shrink and slide downwards from the knowledge of one true and very God; and did not thereby erre in worshipping mortal men onely; but they gave divine reverence, and had the same respect to Beasts, Birds, Fishes, Fowls, Winds, Earth, Water, Ayre, Fire, to the Morning, to the Evening, to Plants, Trees, and Roots, to Passions and Affections of the Minde, to Palenes, Sicknes, Sorrows, yea to the most unworthy and base of all these. Which barbarous blasphemy, Rhodius Anaxandrides derideth in this manner:

Nat. Com. 1.1.  
cap. 7.

*Bovem colis, ego Deis multo bovem.  
Tu maximum Anguillam Deum putas: ego  
Obscurum credidi Juvissimum.*

*Carnes suillas tu caveris, at gaudeo  
His maxime: carnem colis, quem verbero  
Edentem ubi deprehendo sorte obscurum.*

Isacrifice to God the Beef, which you adore.  
I broyle th' Egyptian Eeles, which you (as god) implore:  
You fear to eat the flesh of Swine, I finde it sweet.  
You worship Dogs; to beat them I think meet,  
When they my store devour:

And in this manner JUVENAL.

*Porcum iam cape nefas violare aut frangere mæris:  
O sanctas gentes, quibus hæc nascuntur in hortis  
Tomina!*

The Egyptians think it sin to root up, or to bite  
Their Leeks or Onyons, which they serve with holy rites:  
O happy Nations, which of their own sowing  
Have store of gods in every Garden growing!

## §. IV.

## §. IV.

That from the reliicks of ancient Records among the Egyptians and others, the first Idols and Fables were invented: and the first Jupiter was Cain, Vulcan, Tubalcain, &c.

**B**ut in so great a confusion of vanities, where among the Heathens themselves there is no agreement or certainty, it were hard to finde out from what example the beginnings of these inventions were borrowed, or after what ancient pattern they erected their building, were it not certain that the Egyptians had knowledge of the first Age, and of whatsoever was done therein, partly from some inscriptions upon stone or metall remaining after the Flood; and partly from Mizraim the son of Cham, who had learnt the same of Cham, and Cham of his Father Noah: for all that the Egyptians write of their ancient Kings, and date of times, cannot be fained, and though other Nations after them had by imitation their Jupiters also, their Saturnes, Vulcans, and Mercuries, with the rest, which S. Augustine out of Varro, Eusebius out of many prophane Histories, Cicero, Diodorus Siculus, Arnobius, and many more have observed, to wit, the Phenicians, Phrygians, Cretians, Greeks, and other Nations; yet was Cain the Sonne of Adam (as some very learned men conceive) called and reputed for the first and ancient Jupiter, and Adam for the first Saturne: for Jupiter was said to have invented the founding of Cities; and the first City of the World was built by Cain, which he called *Enoch*, of whom were the *Henochii* before remembered. And so much may be gathered out of Plato in *Protagoras*, which also Hieronymus in his 275. Chapter confirmeth. For besides that many Cities were founded by divers men; *Tamen primis latissimam à primo & antiquissimo Jove adificiam*: yet the first and largest was built by the first and most ancient Jupiter, seated in the East parts, or in India, according to that of Moses: And Cain dwelt towards the East side of Eden, &c. where also the *Henochii* were found after the Flood. And therefore was Jupiter by the Athenians called *Poliens*, a Founder of Cities, and *Hercors*, an incloser or strengtheners of Cities (say Phormius and Panfanius) and that to *Jupiter Hercors* there were in very many places Altars and Temples erected. And that there were Cities built before the Flood, Plato also witnesseth, as may be gathered in this his affirming, that soon after mankind began to increase, they built many Cities; which, as his meaning, he delivereth in plaine termes, in his third Book of *Laws*: for he saith that Cities were built an exceeding space of time before the destruction by the great Flood.

This first Jupiter of the Ethnicks was then the same Cain, the sonne of Adam, who marrying his own Sister (as also Jupiter is said to have done) inhabited the East, where *Stephanus de Urbibus* placeth the City *Henochia*. And besides this City of *Henoch*, *Philo* Gen. 4. 20, 21, 22. *Judeus* conceiveth that Cain built six others, as *Maich, Jared, Tebe, Ielca, Selet, and Gebar*: but where *Philo* had this, I know not. Now as Cain was the first Jupiter, and from whom also the Ethnicks had the invention of Sacrifice: so were *Tubal, Tubal, and Tubalcain* (inventors of Pastorage, Smiths-craft, and Musick) the same which were called by the ancient prophane Writers, *Mercurius, Vulcan, and Apollo*; and as there is a likelihood of name between *Tubalcain* and *Vulcan*: so doth *Augustine* expound the name of *Noëma*, or *Naamath*, the sister of *Tubalcain*, to signifie *Venus*, or beautifull, *Venus* or pleasures; as the Wife of *Vulcan* is said to be *Venus*, the Lady of pleasure and beauty. And as *Adam* was the ancient and first Saturne, Cain the eldest Jupiter; *Esa*; *Abica*; and *Nemica* or *Naamath* the first Venus: so did the Fable of the dividing of the World between the three Brethren the Sons of Saturne, arise from the true Story of the dividing of the Earth between the three Brethren the Sonnes of Noah: so also was the fiction of those Golden Apples kept by a Dragon, taken from the Serpent which tempted *Eva*: so was *Paradise* it self transported out of Asia into Africa, and made the Garden of the *Hesperides*: the Prophecies, that *Christ* should break the Serpents head, and conquer the power of Hell, occasioned the fables of *Hercules* killing the Serpent of *Hesperides*, and descending into Hell, and captivating *Cerberus*: so out of the taking up of *Henoch* by God, was borrowed the conversion of their *Herodes* (the inventors of Religion, and such Arts as the life of man had profit by) into Stars and Heavenly signes, and (which all) that leaving of the World, and ascension of *Africa*: of which *Ovid*:

*Ultima caelestium terras Africa reliquit.*

Africa last of heavenly Wights the Earth did leave.

G

For

*Ovid. Met. 1.1.*

Nat. com. Lib. 6. 2.

For although thereby the *Ethnick* would understand Justice it selfe to have failed, as is a vertue abstract, and may be considered without a person, yet as it is usuall among the ancient Poets to describe Vertues and Vices by the persons of men and women, as Desire by *Cupid*, Valour by *Mars*, Beauty or Lust by *Venus*; so doe they also the persons of men by like Vertues and Vices: and therefore by justice and *Asraa*, *Enoch*; the justice and piety of *Enoch* being in the same manner exprest, as that of *Noah* was by *Moses*: for *Noah* was said to be a just man; and *Noah* walked with God. And of *Enoch* it is written, *That he walked with God, and he was no more seen: for God took him away.*

Gen. 7.

Gen. 5. 22. 24.

From this Story also of the first Age, and from that part where *Moses* remembreth the Giants begotten by the sonnes of good men upon the daughters of the wicked (whom *Moses* calleth mighty men, and men of renowne) did they steale those wondrous great acts of their ancient Kings, and powerfull Giants; and again their war undertaken against the Gods, from the building of the Tower of *Babel* by the Giant *Nimrod*, as *S. Augustine* termeth him. Which warre of their Giants, *Cornelius Severus* thus describeth.

*Tent a vero (nesas) olim detrudere mundo  
Syderis, captivum; Jovis transferre Gigantes  
Imperium, & visco leges imponere cælo.*

The Giants did advance their wicked hand  
Against the Stars to thrust them headlong down;  
And robbing *Jove* of his Imperiall Crown,  
On conquer'd Heavens to lay their proud command.

Whereby was meant that *Nimrod* purposed to raise the building of *Babel* to that height, as God neither by drawing waters from the deep, nor by any conjunction of the Stars, should bury them under the moisture of a second Floud, but that by this building (if they had been herein victorious) they would have given the Law to Heaven it self. Also the making of leagues, peace and covenants among Heathen Nations and Kings, confirmed by sacrifice, whereof *Virgil* both in the eighth and twelfth of his *Æneides* hath a touch, was (as it seemeth) borrowed from *Moses*, *Exod. 24.* who when he read the Book of the Covenant, sprinkled the people with blood.

Polyb. lib. 1. con-  
tra Aprian.

We finde also many remembrances of *Seth*, the paternall Ancestor of *Enoch* and *Noah*: for *Amenophis*, the same King of *Egypt* which reigned at such time as *Moses* carried thence the children of *Israel* (as of late some learned men, mistaking his time, supposed) called his Sonne and Succellour *Setho*, of *Seth*: and of the same *Seth* (as many men of good judgment have granted) were the Princes of *Thrace*, called *Seuthes*, whereof there were many very famous. But herein was the memory of *Seth* most manifestly preserved, that the Egyptians worshipped *Seth*, as their most ancient parent, and of the first tradition in honour of whom they called a principal Province *Setheutica*. We also finde in *Babylonia* the City of *Setbia*, and others of the same name elsewhere. And sure, from the Egyptians did the Grecians borrow this kinde of Theologie, though they scorned to acknowledge any antiquity preceding their own: and that they might not seem to learn elsewhere, they gave the same names to their own Idols, which the Egyptians did to theirs.

Plat. in Iste.

Sirab. lib. 17.

§. V.

Of the three chiefest Jupiters, and the strange story of the third.

But of all those Armies of Jupiters remembred by the Ancients, *Cicero* maketh but three, because those were of most fame: which other Writers have also done, who sought out, and laboured in their originals.

The first was *Jupiter*, the sonne of *Aether* and *Dies*, so called because the one had reference to his celestiall conditions (for *Aether* is as much as shining or pure fire): the other discovered his naturall vertues, which daies and times make more perfect, and are the witness of mens actions.

The second was said to be the son of *Cælus* or Heaven, for the same former respect, and this *Jupiter* was an *Arcadian*, and King of *Athens*.

The

The third, of whom all the Grecian fables were devised, was of *Creta* (now *Candia*) the Son of *Saturne* and *Ops*. The name derived from the Latine is taken of *Jovans* pater, from the Greek word *Zeus*, it signifieth life, but somewhat strained. *Boccas* in his Genealogie of the Gods conceiveth, that his name was borrowed from *Jupiter* the Planets; but whether that Star had such a name before the same was given to men, I know not, but *Jupiter* is hot and moist, temperate, modest, honest, adventurous, liberall, mercifull, loving, and faithfull (that is) giving these inclinations. And therefore those ancient Kings beautified with these conditions, might be called thereafter *Jupiter*: but howsoever they were, or were not with those vertues enriched, yet by imitation, all Kings in the eldest times assumed those Titles and Sit-names: great Princes affecting as high Titles of honour and reputation in the world (howsoever deserved) as the worthiest, that ever were, acquired by their well deservings. *Jovis omnes Reges vocarunt antiqui*, The ancients called all Kings *Jupiters*, as *Tacitus* in his *varia historia* confirmeth; *Reges olim Jovis vocarunt omnes*; In old times all Nations called their Kings *Jupiters*. But where this last and most remembred *Jupiter* was borne, it is uncertain. Some there are that make him of *Creta*: others that he was but sent thither by his Mother *Ops*, or *Opis*, to be fostered and hidden from the fury of *Titan* his Uncle: because it was conditioned between *Saturne* and *Titan*, that *Saturne* being a younger Brother, and reigning (for his own life) by *Titan*'s permission, he should put to death all his male children, lest the *Titans* might be interrupted by any of them in their succession; which agreement, because *Saturne* performed in his first borne, it is feigned that *Saturne* devoured his own children. Hereof *Lycophron* thus turned into Latine:

*Hand sit pinguis,*

*Cnidii sepulchrum quid sit ipse scitis.*

By being the grave and buriall of his own.

This composition between *Titan* and *Saturne*, *Sybilla* also witnesseth in these words;

*Conceptis verbis Titan jurare coegit*

*Saturnum, de se natum ne nutriet ullum,*

*quo possint regnare Jovis post fata Nepotes.*

Things thus agreed; *Titan* made *Saturne* swate

No Son to nourish, which by reigning might

Usurp the right of *Titan*'s lawfull heire.

But *Opis*, the mother of *Jupiter*, being delivered at once both of *Jupiter* and *Juno*, conveyed *Jupiter* (first called *Lysianus*) into *Creta*, as he did afterwards his two Brothers, *Neptune* and *Pluto*: where he was brought up in *Gnosslus*, the chief City of that Island, by *Cressa* the King, or by the *Curetes*, a people and nation thereof.

Euseb. in Temp.

Others challenge him to be of *Thebes* and a *Thebane*: others call him an *Arcadian*: Others make him of *Messena*. The like contention is found among the Greeks touching his education and first fostering. Some affirm that he was fed by Honey-bees: in recompence whereof he changed their black coats and skins into yellow; a reward well fitting such a God; others, that he was nourished by Bears: others, by Goats: and of all these the idle Greeks have many pretty tales. But in the end when *Titan* had knowledge that *Saturne* had broken his faith, he set on him, and took him and his wife prisoners, whom *Jupiter* again rescued and delivered.

But lastly, the Father and the Son equally ambitious, the one doubted the other. *Saturne* being the less powerfull, fled into Italy, and left his Kingdoms in Greece to his sonne. And although this Prince at the first purchased great honour, and for his many vertues, the name of *Jupiter* was given him: yet after he was once settled, and became potent, he gave himself over wholly to palliardize and adultery, without all respect of Honour, Law, or Religion. And it is reported by such as doe ascribe the actions of many to one *Jupiter*, that not therewith satisfied, he was afterwards known to offend in the sinne of Sodom with *Ganimedes* and others: and did not only begin with incest, marrying his owne Sister *Juno*; but he ravished, betrayed, stole away, and took by strong hand all the beautifull women borne in his time, within the limits of his owne Kingdoms, or bordering them. Among whom these hereafter written were of greatest fame; *Niobe*, *Ladæmia*, and *Alemena*, the Wife of *Amphitrion*, by whom he had *Plasgus*, *Sarpedon*, *Argus*, and *Hercules*: by *Taygete* he had *Taygetus*, of whom the Mountain *Taygetus* took name, with another Sonne called *Saon*, of whom *Saturnus*:

G 2

by

by *Antiope* he had *Amphion* and *Zetus* : by *Leda*, *Caster* and *Pollux*, *Hellen* and *Clytemnestra* : by *Danaë*, *Perseus* ; by *Jordana*, *Democalion* : by *Charme* (the daughter of *Eubolus*) *Eritonartus* : by *Protegentia*, he had *Athlius* the Father of *Endymion* : and by *Io* (the daughter of *Inachus*) *Epaphus*, the founder of *Memphis* in *Egypt* : which *Epaphus* married *Libya*, of whom that Countrey tooke name, for so the Greeks afterward called *Africa*. He ravished *Aegina* the daughter of *Aesoprus*, and carried her into the Island *Oenopia* or *Oenotria*, afterward called *Aegina*, on whom he begate *Aecus* : by *Torrbibia* he had *Archessilaus* and *Carilius* : by *Ora*, *Colaces* : he had also *Dardanus* by *Elefra*, who built *Dardaniūm*, afterward *Ilium* or *Troy*. He begate the brothers *Talici*, on *Thalia*, and on *Garamanthis*, *Hiarbas*. He had besides these (if they belye not their chief God) *Phileus* and *Piliunius*, inventors of the Bakers craft ; and I know not how many more ; but I know well that he could not be father to all these, who were borne in ages so farre differing. And of these his severall ravishments, betrayings, stealing away of mens wives, daughters, and sons, buying of virgins, and the like, came in all those ancient fables of his transformations into shewers of gold, eagles, bulls, birds, and beasts ; and of him, and by him (in effect) all that rabble of Grecian forgeries. And yet did not the *Greeks* and *Romans* fear to entitle this monster, *Optimus Maximus*, though *Cicero* in his second Booke, *de natura Deorum*, affirme, that he deserved nothing lesse ; and in his Oration, *pro dombo sua*, reprocheth *Clodius* for his incest, by the name of *Jupiter*. His buriall was in *Crete* (saith *Lucian*). *Creten* is non solum natus apud se, & sepultus Jovem testantur, sed etiam sepulchrum ejus ostendunt ; The *Crete*ians or *Candians* doe not onely avow that *Jupiter* was borne and buried among them, but they shew his grave and sepulchre : which *Epiphanius* also confirmeth ; for in his time there remained the monuments of his tombe in the Mountain *Jusius*. This *Callimachus* in his hymnes also witnesseth, but, as offended thereat, saith thus :

The *Crete*ians ever lyars were, they care not what they say :  
For they a tombe have built for thee, O King, that liv'st alway.

*Diodorus Siculus* tels by way of report from the *Libyan* fables, confirmed (as he saith) by some *Greek* Writers, that the original of these gods was from the Western parts of *Africa*. For there among the *Atlantide* reigned one *Uranus* (which signifieth Heaven) called so for his great skill in *Astrology* ; and for his knowledge, and benefits to the people, honoured by them as a god after his death. He had by many wives 45 sons ; but by his principal wife *Titea*, he had seventeen sons and two daughters, all which were called after their mothers name, the *Titans*. Of *Titea*, likewise it is said, that she for her goodness was canonized as a goddess, being dead, and called the Earth, as her husband was stiled Heaven. But of all the children of *Titea*, her daughter *Bastileia* (which name sounding as *Queen* in *Engliss*, she is by the Latine translation of *Diodorus* called *Regina*) excelling the rest as far in virtue as in years, was by generall consent of her brethren, and of the people, appointed to rule as *Queen* after her father's death, being as yet a Virgin. She took to husband her brother *Hyperion*, to whom she bare a son and a daughter, called *Sunne* and *Moonne*. The beauty and towardlines of these children moved her brethren to envie, and bred in them a fear of being excluded from the succession : wherefore they took the boy and drowned him in the River *Eridanus*, now called *Roe*. The loss of this child caused his sister to break her own neck ; and the loss of both her children made the mother to play many mad pranks, dauncing with Cymbals, after a wilde fashion, in sight of all the people, before whom she is said to have vanished away. Ere she died, her son (as the fable hath it) signified unto her in a dreame, that he and his sister, by the providence of God, should become immortal, that also the *Sunne* and *Moonne* should be called by their names, and that their death should be revenged upon the Murderers. According to which it is said, that the people did so call those two Planets, and withal held her selfe as a goddess ; and termed her the great Mother, which name they had formerly given to her, for her motherly care in cherishing her brethren whilst they were young. *Hyperion* and his race being extinguished, the other sons of *Uranus* divided the Kingdome. Of these *Atlas* and *Saturne* were chief. *Atlas* reigned over the Countreys lying about the Mountains, which afterward bare his name ; a just and wise Prince, deeply skillful in *Astrologie*, and for invention of the *Spheare*, said to have supported Heaven.

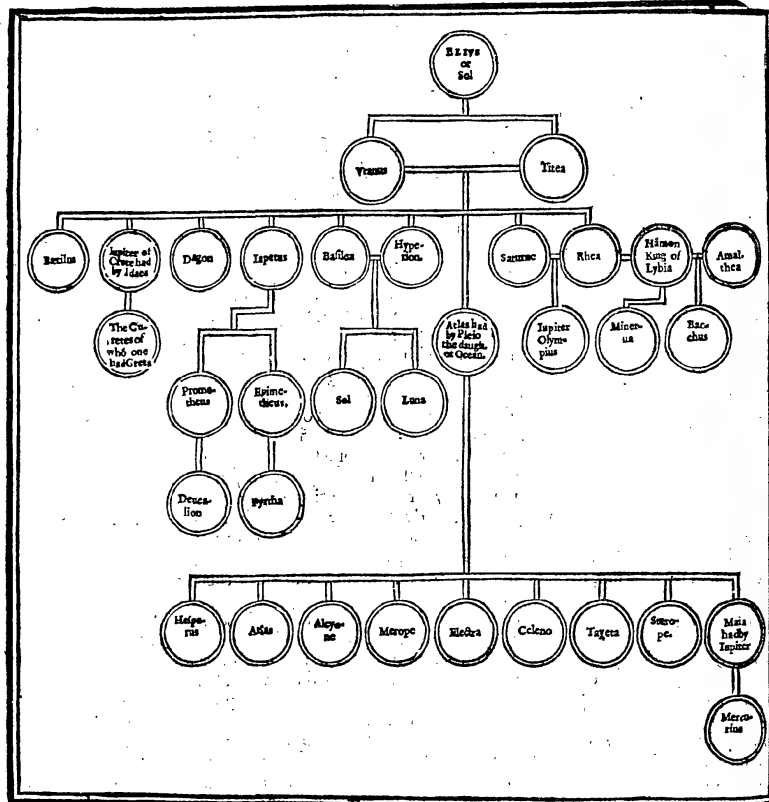
He

He had many sons ; but the principall of them called *Hesperus*, being of his fathers qualities and studies, was said to have been carried away by the winde, from the top of an high Hill in the midst of his contemplations ; and his name in honour of him, imposed by the people upon the morning Star. The seven Daughters of *Atlas* were also said to have been excellent Ladies, who accompanying such as came to be Deified, or registered among the Worthies, brought forth children, answerable in quality to those that begat them. Of these it is held, that the seven Stars, called *Pleades*, took name. *Saturn*, the brother of *Atlas*, reigned in *Sicilia*, part of *Africa*, and Italy. *Jupiter*, another of the sons of *Uranus*, reigned in *Crete* ; who had ten sons, which he called *Cretes* : he called that Island after his Wives name, *Idea* ; in which Isle he died, and was buried. But this *Jupiter* must not have been that great one, but Uncle to the great *Jupiter*, if these Fables of the *Lybians* were true. *Saturn* (as these *Lybians* tell the tale) was a great Tyrant, and fortified strong places, the better to keep his people in subjection. His sister *Rhea* was married to *Hammon*, who reigned in some part of *Africa*, *Hammon* loving others as well as his Wife, or better, got a Daughter called *Minerva*, neer to the River *Triton*, who thereupon was called *Tritonia*. He also begat on *Amalthaea* a son called *Bacchus*, whom he cauled secretly, for fear of his life, to be brought up at *Nysa*, an Island in the River *Triton*, under the tuition of his Daughter *Minerva* and certain *Nimphs*. To *Amalthaea* he gave in reward a goodly Country, that lay on the Sea-coast, bending in form of a horn, whence grew the tale of *Amalthaea*'s plentifull horn, famous among the Poets. When *Rhea* heard these news, she fled from her husband to her brother *Saturn*, who not onely entertained her as a sister, but took her to Wife, and at her instigation made war upon *Hammon*, vanquished him by the assistance of the *Titans*, and made him flee into *Crete*. The *Cretes*, *Jupiter*'s children before mentioned, held the Island at that time ; which was new named *Crete* by *Hammon*, after the name of *Creta* the Kings daughter, whom he took to Wife, and had with her (women, as may seem, being very gracious in those names) the Kingdom. *Bacchus* was grown a proper young man, had found out the making of Wine, the art of planting Trees, and many things else commodious for mankind, before the flight of his Mother-in-law. Now therefore hearing report of all that had hapned, and that *Saturn* was coming against him with the *Titans* ; he levied an Army, to which the *Amazons*, living not far from *Nysa*, added great forces, in love of *Minerva*, who was entred into their profession. So *Bacchus* leading the men, and *Minerva* the women, they set forward against *Saturn*, met him, and overthrew him, and taking many of the *Titans* prisoners, returned to *Nysa*, where pardoning the prisoners, that promised to become his true followers, he prepared for a second Expedition. In the second Expedition he behaved himself so well, that he won the love of all the people by whom he passed : insomuch, that partly for good affection to him, partly in hatred of *Saturn*'s rigorous government, he was greatly strengthened, and the Enemy as much enfeebled by daily revolts. Coming to the City of *Hammon*, he won a battell of *Saturn* before the very walls. After which *Saturn*, with his wife *Rhea*, fled by night, setting the Town on fire, to despight *Bacchus*. But they were caught in their flight, pardoned by *Bacchus*, and kindly entreated. *Saturn* had a young son by *Rhea*, called *Jupiter*. This child *Bacchus* took with him in a great Expedition that he made into the East Countreys : and coming into *Egypt*, he left this *Jupiter*, being then a boy, Governor of the Countrey ; but appointed unto him, as an Overseer, one *Olympus*, of whom *Jupiter* grew to be called *Olympus*. Whilst *Bacchus* travelled through all Nations, as far as into *India*, doing good in all places, and teaching many things profitable to the life of man ; the *Titans* had found out his father *Hammon* in *Crete*, and began to war upon him. But *Bacchus* returned out of *India*, with whom *Jupiter* from *Egypt*, and his sister *Minerva*, together with the rest, that afterwards were held as gods, joining all their forces, went into *Crete*, overthrew the *Titans*, chased them, took and slew them, and freed the World of them all. After all this, when *Hammon* and *Bacchus* were dead, they were deified ; and the great *Jupiter*, the son of *Saturn*, succeeding them, reigned Lord alone over all the World, having none of the *Titans* left alive, nor any other to disturb him. Between this tale of the *Libyan* gods, and the *Egyptian* fables of *Osiris*, there is a rude resemblance, that may cause them both to be taken for the crooked Images of some one true History. For the Expeditions of *Osiris*, and of *Bacchus* ; the



Enf. b. l. 2. c. 7.

wars of the Giants in the one story, of the *Titans* in the other; the Kingdom of *Egypt* given by *Hercules Libycus* to *Orus*, by *Bacchus* to *Jupiter*, the rattles of *Ifts*, and the cynballs of *Bastia*, with many petty circumstances, neerly enough resemble each other, howsoever not alike fitted to the right persons. *Sanchoiatio* (as *Enf. b. l. 2. c. 7.* cites him) would have all these to be *Phenicians*, and is earnest in saying, That it is a true storie, and no allegorie. Yet he makes it seem the more allegoricall, by giving to *Uranus* or Heaven for daughters, *Fate*, and *Beauty*, and the like, with addition of much fabulous matter, omitted by *Diodorus*, though *Diodorus* have enough. To the Genealogie he addes *Elius*, or the *Sun*, as father of *Uranus*, and among the children of *Uranus*, *Japetus*, *Betulus*, and *Dagon* (whom *Diodorus* doth not mention by their names) giving withall to *Uranus* the proper name of *Terrenus*, or *Indigena*, and of *Ilus* to *Saturn*, but omitting *Jupiter* of *Crete*. The pedigree of them is this:



§. VI.

## §. VI.

of Cham, and other wicked ones, whereof some gave, some affected the name of God. Of *Jupiter Belus*, the son of *Saturnus Babylonicus*, otherwife *Nimrod*, it seemeth that *Cicero* had not heard, (at least by that name) who was more ancient than any of the former three by him remembered: for long after these times were the *Greeks* but *Salvages*, if they seek no farther off for their gods.

But the *Egyptians*, even after the flood, began (somewhat before this *Chaldean Jupiter*) to intitle *Cham*, the parent of their own *Mizraim*, *Jupiter Chammon*, or *Hammon*. For the Etymology of this word (*Hammon*) which the *Greeks* deduce ab *arenis*, from the sands, is ridiculous (saith *Pencer*;) neither yet is his own much better, who brings it from *Hammath*, which signifieth heat: because the said Temple of *Jupiter Hammon* was seated in *Libya*, where the aire is exceeding hot and scorching. And as for the antiquity of the latter *Jupiter* (among the *Greeks* and *Romans* the most renowned) it is certain that he was borne not long before the war of *Troy* as by many of his sons is made manifest; namely, *Castor*, *Pollux*, *Hercules*, *Sarpedon*, and others, which lived in that age of *Priamus*, under whom, and with whom, *Troy* was destroyed.

Now seeing that mortal men, and the most wicked, were esteemed immortal among the *Heathens*; it was not to be wondered at, that *Alexander Macedon*, *Tyberius*, *Nero*, *Caligula*, and others, sought to be numbred among them, who were as deformed monsters as the rest: for by what reason could the same Deity be denied unto *Laurentia* and *Flora*, which was given to *Venus*? seeing they were as notorious and famous harlots as she was.

## §. VII.

That the wisest of the ancient Heathen had far better opinions of God.

But that ever *Pythagoras*, or *Plato*, or *Orpheus*, with many other ancient and excellently learned, beleived in any of these fooleries, it cannot be suspected, though some of them (over-busily) have mixed their own inventions with the Scriptures, for in punishment for their fictions, did *Pythagoras* hang both *Homer*, and *Hesiodus* in Hell, where he saith that they were perpetually stung and pinched with Serpents. Yet it cannot be doubted, but that *Homer* had read over all the books of *Moses*, as by places stolne thence, almost word for word, may appear; of which *Iustine Martyr* remembreth many in that treatise converted by *Mirandula*. As for *Plato*, though he dissembled in some things for fear of the Inquisition of the *Arcopagites*, yet *Saint Augustine* hath already answered for him (as before remembred) *ut sacrificia delectantur eis, quæ de uno Deo tradita fuerant*; And he was greatly delighted in the doctrine of one God, saith *Iustine Martyr*. Now howsoever *Laërtius* pleased to reprehend *Plato*, because (saith he) *Plato* sought knowledge from the *Egyptians*, and the *Chaldeans*, neglecting the Jews, and books of *Moses*; *Enf. b. l. 2. c. 7.* *Cyillus*, and *Origen*, finde reason to believe the contrary, thinking that from thence he took the grounds of all by him written of God, or favouring of Divinity: and the same opinion had *Saint Ambrose* of *Pythagoras*.

But whether it were out of the same vanity, which possessed all those famed Philosophers and Poets, that *Plato* also published (hence under the right Authors names) those things which he had read in the Scriptures, for fearing the severity of the *Arcopagites*, and the example of his Master *Socrates*, by them put to death by poison, I cannot judge. *Iustine Martyr* (as it seemeth) ascribeth it wholly to *Naturalists*, whose words among many other of the same effect, are these, *Plato* *Moses* *mentem facere, ob id, quod unum solumque Deum docuerat, sibi aquid Atheniensium non putavit, autem Arcopagum*; *Plato* fearing the *Arcopagites*, thought it not safe for him among the *Athenians* to make mention of *Moses*, that he taught that there is but one God. But for that Divinity which he hath written in his *Timæus* of *Deo*, *Plato* saith, *quod & Moses*; He discoursed and taught the Jews of God (saith *Iustine Martyr*), *quod & Moses* did. For where it pleased God by his Angel to answer *Moses*, *Ecce ego sum*, which (which is) *I am*; and, *existens* *misit me ad vos*; *Ecce ego sum*, *quod & Moses* did. *Plato* (saith *Iustine Martyr*) no otherwise differeth than that *Moses* used the word *ego*, and *Plato* the word *quod*: *Moses enim qui existit* (inquirit) *Plato quod existit*; *quod & Moses* saith, *Exo. l. 14.*

He

In Timæo.

Deligib. 10.

Lactant.

He who is; Plato, That which is. Now of Gods incomprehensible nature, and of the difficulty either to conceive, or expresse the same, he giveth this testimony: *Genitorem Universitatis tam difficile est invenire, quam inventum impossibile digne profari; It is as hard to finde out the Creatour of the Univerſall, as it is impossible, if he were found, to speak of him worſhipfully.* And what can be more agreeable to the Majesty of Gods Nature, than this property by *Plato* acknowledged? *Deus bonus, & quidem, Deus causa bonorum: malorum autem omnium non causa; God is absolutely good, and so assuredly the cause of all that is good; but of any thing that is evil, he is no cause at all.* And again, *Charitas Dei fuit causa satisfactionis mundi, & originis omnium rerum: The love of God was the cause of the worlds creation, and the originall of all things.* *Aplius* the Platonist; *Summus Deus infinitus est, non solum loci exclusione, sed etiam nature dignitate: & nihil est Deo similis & gratus, quam vir animo perfectio bonus; The most high God is also an infinite God, not onely by exclusion of place, but by the dignity of nature: neither is there any thing more like or more acceptable to God, than a man of a perfect heart.* *THALES* affirmed, that God comprehended all things, and that God was of all things the most ancient: *Quia nunquam esse cepit; Because he never had any beginning.* *ZENO* O, that God beheld even the thoughts of men. *Athenodorus*, that therefore all men ought to be carefull in the actions of their life, because God was every where present, and beheld all done. But what can be more agreeable to *Moses* story of the Creation, than this opinion and description of the Worlds beginning in *Euripides*, Scholar of *Anaxagoras*?

*Celum terraque unius forme fuit:  
Sed cum fuissent abjuncta amplexu mutuo,  
Emerſit omnis in lucem res progenita;  
Arbores, aves, fere, quasque aſſert mare,  
Gemisq; mortalium.*

Heaven and Earth one form did bear:  
But when dis-joynd once they were  
From mutuall embraces,  
All things to light appeared then;  
Of trees, birds, beasts, fishes, and men  
The still-remaining races.

And as in *Pythagoras*, in *Socrates*, and in *Plato*; so we finde the same excellent understanding in *Orpheus*, who every where expresse the infinite and sole power of one God; though he use the name of *Jupiter*, thereby to avoid the envie and danger of the time: but that he could attribute those things to the sons of men, and mortall creatures, which he doth to this *Jupiter*, there is no man, who hath ever heard of God, that can imagine.

*Nomina Deorum* (saith *MIRANDULA*) *quos ORPHEUS canit, non decipientium demonum, & quibus malum & non bonum provenit; sed naturalium virtutum divinorumque sunt nomina; The names of those Gods whom Orpheus doth sing, are not of deceiving devils, from whom evil comes, and not goodnesse; but they are the names of naturall and divine virtues.* Yea, that he reacheth higher, and speaketh of God himself, this his instruction to *Adulæus*, and the *Pythia* following, teach us: *Respicens vero ad divinum hunc sermonem diligenter animam adverte, intendens cordis rationis capax conceptaculum: rectam autem ascende viam; & solum aspectu mundi rogem. Unus est ex se genitus, ex eo omnia nata sunt: ipse videtur illis coſtitutus, nec quisquam eum intueri poteſt mortalium, sed ipse nihilominus omnia instruit.*

Then marking this my sacred speech, but truly lend  
Thy heart, that's reasons sphere, and the right way ascend,  
And see the worlds sole King. First, he is simply one,  
Begotten of himself, from whom is born alone  
All else; in which hee's still; nor could it ere befall  
A mortall eye to see him once, yet he sees all.

And again the same Author,  
*Jupiter omnipotens, & primus, & ultimus idem;  
Jupiter est caput & medium: Jovis omnia munus.  
Jupiter est fundamentum mundi, & stellantis Olympi.  
Jupiter & mare est, & fluvius, nescia mori.  
Jupiter est cunctis, oculis vis Jupiter ignis.  
Jupiter est sol, Luna est Jupiter ipse.  
Jupiter & origo simul rerum est, & terminus idem.  
Jupiter primus oculis, magno post munus, sacrum  
Cor refrans bonus in dulcem dedit omnia lucem.*

The

The first of all is God, and the same last is he,  
God is the head and midst, yea from him all things be,  
God is the Base of earth and of the starred skie.  
He is the male and female too, shall never die.  
The spirit of all is God, the Sun and Moone, and what is higher:  
The King, the original of all, of all the end.  
For close in holy breast he all did comprehend,  
Whence all to blessed light, his wondrous power did send.

Now besides these former testimonies, that all the learned men of ancient times were not so stupid and ignorant, as the Egyptians, Græcians, and other Nations by them infected were, I will only repeat two or three other opinions, and leave the Reader to those large and learned Collections of *Justine Martyr*, *Clement*, *Lactantius*, *Eusebius*, *Eugubinus*, *Pencer*, *Plessis*, *Damascus*, and others. For *Clement* the Stoick, being demanded of what nature God was, described him by these attributes and properties: *Bonus, justus, sanctus, seipsum possidens, utilis, speciosus, optimus, severus, liber, semper commodus, tutus, gloriosus, charitas, &c. Good, just, holy, possessing himself, profitable, beautiful, best, severe, free, always doing good, safe without feare, glorious, and self-charity.* *Epicharmus* affirmed, that God who beheld all things, and pierced every nature, was onely and every where powerful: agreeing with *Democritus*: *Rex omnium ipse solus; He is the onely King of kings; and with Pindarus the Poet, Deus unus, Pater, creator summus, atque optimus artifex, qui progressus singulis diversos secundum merita præbet; One God, the Father, the most high Creator, and best artificer, who giveth to every thing divers proceedings according to their deserts.* This God (saith *Aristophanes*) cannot be resembled to any thing, and therefore not elsewhere known; *Nisi in patria illa perenni, cujus imaginem nullam habet; Save onely in that everlasting Countrey, whose image thou hast none at all.* Hereof also *Xenophanes* Colophonius: *Unus Deus inter deos & homines maximus, nec corpore, nec mente mortalibus similis; There is one God among gods and men most powerful, neither corporally, nor mentally like unto mortals: and Xenophon, Deus qui omnia quatit, & omnia quiescere facit, magnus potensque quod omnibus patet: qualis autem forma sit, nemini patet, nisi ipsi soli, qui luce sua omnia perſuſat; God who shaketh all things, and setteth all things at rest, is great and mighty; as is manifest to all: but of what forme he is, it is manifest to none, save onely to himself; who illuminateth all things with his own light.* Finally, *Plato* saith, *Totius rerum nature causa, & ratio, & origo Deus, summus animi genitor, æternus animantium ſolſtitator, afflictor mundi sui opifex, sine propagatione genitor, neque loco, neque tempore ullo comprehensus, eoque pauci cogitabili, nemini effabilis; God is the cause, ground, and original of the whole nature of things, the most high Father of the ſoule, the æternal preserver of living creatures, the continual framer of his world, a begetter without any propagation, comprehended neither in any place, nor time; therefore few can conceive him in thought, none can expresse what he is.* Therefore was it said by *Saint Hierome*, *Si enim cunctos Philosophorum revolvamus libros, necesse est in eis reperiri aliquam partem vaſorum Dei, ut apud Platonem, fabricatorem mundi Deum: apud Zenonem, Stoicorum Principem, in eros & immortales animas, &c. If thou consider all the books of the Philosophers, thou canst not but finde in them some part of the Vessels of God, as in Plato, God the Creatour of the world: in Zeno, Prince of the Stoicks, Hell and immortal ſouls, &c. And this is certain, that if we look into the wisdom of all Ages, we shall finde that there never was man of solid understanding or excellent judgement: never any man whose minde the Art of education hath not bended; whose eyes a foolish superstition hath not afterward blinded; whose apprehensions are sober, and by a pensive inspection advised; but that he hath found by an irresistible necessity, one true God, and everlasting being, all for ever causing, and all for ever sustaining; which no man among the Heathen hath with more reverence acknowledged, or more learnedly exprest, than that Egyptian *Hermes*, howsoever it failed afterward in his posterity: all being at length by divellish policy of the Egyptian Priests purposely obscured; who invented new gods, and those innumerable, best forcing (as the Devil perſwaded them) with vulgar capacities, and fittest to keep in awe and order their common people.*

Histor. in Cœl.  
in Dan. in prin.  
cip.

## §. VIII.

That Heathenisme and Judaisme, after many wounds, were at length about the same time under Julian miraculously confounded.

BUT these are again vanished: for the inventions of mortal men are no less mortal than themselves. The Fire, which the Chaldeans worshipped for a god, is crept into every mans chimney, which the lack of fuel starveth, water quencth, and want of ayre suffocateth: Jupiter is no more vexed with Juno's Jealousies; Death hath perswaded him to chastity, and he to patience; and that time which hath devoured it self, hath also eaten up both the Bodies and Images of him and his: yea their stately Temples of Stone and duteful Marble. The houses and sumptuous buildings erected to Baal, can no where be found upon the earth, nor any monument of that glorious Temple consecrated to Diana. There are none now in Phœnicia that lament the death of Adonis; nor any in Lybia, Crera, Thessalia, or elsewhere, that can ask counsell or help from Jupiter. The great god Pan hath broken his Pipes, Apollos Priests are become speechless, and the trade of riddles in Oracles, with the Devils telling men's fortunes therein, is taken up by counterfeit Egyptians, and couzening Astrologers.

But it was long ere the Devil gave way to these his overthrows and dishonours: for after the Temple of Apollo at Delphos (one of his chief mansions) was many times robbed, burnt, and destroyed; yet by his diligence the same was often enriched, repaired, and re-edified again, till by the hand of God himself it received the last and utter subversion. For it was first robbed of all the Idols and Ornaments therein by the Eubæan Pyrates: Secondly, by the Phlegians utterly sackt: Thirdly, by Pyrrhus the son of Achilles: Fourthly, by the Army of Xerxes: Fifthly, by the Captaines of the Phœnians: Sixtly, by Nero: who carried thence five hundred brazen Images: all which were new made, and therein again set up at the common charge. But whatsoever was gathered between the time of Nero and Constantine, the Christian Army made spoile of, defacing as much as the time permitted them: notwithstanding all this, it was again gloriously re-built, and so remained till such time as Julian the Apostata sent thither to know the success of his Parthian enterprise, at which time it was utterly burnt and consumed, with fire from Heaven, and the Image of Apollo himself, and all the rest of the Idols therein, molten down, and lost in the earth.

The like success had the Jewes in the same Julians time, when by his permission they assembled themselves to rebuild the Temple of Jerusalem: for while they were busied to lay the foundations, their buildings were overthrown by an earthquake, and many thousands of the Jewes were overwhelmed with the ruines, and others slain, and scattered by Tempest and thunder: though Am. Marcellinus report it more favourably for the Jewes, ascribing this to the nature of that Element. For, saith he, Alipius, and the Ruler of the province of Judæa, being by Julian busied in the re-edifying of this Temple, flaming Balls of fire issuing neer the foundation, and oft consuming the Work-men, made the enterprize frustrate.

## §. IX.

Of the last refugees of the Devil to maintain his Kingdom.

NOW the Devil, because he cannot lay upon the open stage of this World, (as in those daies) and being still as industrious as ever, finds it more for his advantage to creep into the minds of men; and inhabiting in the Temples of their hearts, works them to a more effectual adoration of himself than ever. For whereas he first taught them to sacrifice to Monsters, to dead stones cut into faces of Beasts, Birds, and other mixt Natures; he now sets before them the high and shining Idol of glory, the All-commanding Image of bright Gold. He tells them that truth is the Goddess of dangers and oppressions, that chastity is the enemy of Nature, and lastly, that as all vertue (in general) is without taste; so pleasure satisfieth and delighteth every sense: for true wisdom (saith he) is exercised in nothing else, than in the obtaining of power to oppress, and of riches to maintaine plentifully our worldly delights. And if this Arch-Polititian finde in his pupils any remorse, any feeling or feare of God's future judgement, he perswades them that God hath to great need of men's souls, that

he will accept them at any time, and upon any condition: interrupting by his vigilant endeavours all offer of timefull returne towards God, by laying those great blockes of rugged poverty and despised contempt in the narrow passage leading to his divine presence. But as the minde of man hath two Ports, the one alwaies frequented by the entrance of manifold vanities; the other desolate and over-grown with grasse, by which enter our charitable thoughts & divine contemplations: so hath that of death a double and twofold opening, worldly misery passing by the one, worldly prosperity by the other: at the entrance of the one we finde our sufferings and patience to attend us: (all which have gone before us to prepare our joies) at the other our cruelties, covetousness, licentiousness, injustice, and oppressions (the Harbingers of most fearefull and terrible sorrow) staying for us. And as the Devil our most industrious enemy was ever most diligent: so is he now more laborious than ever, the long day of Mankind drawing fast towards an evening, and the Worlds Tragedy and time neere at an end.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of Noah's Flood.

## §. I.

Of God's fore-warning: and some humane testimonies: and some doubting touching the truth of Noah's Flood.

OF this distruction it pleased God to give warning unto Noah: who (saith Iosephus) fearing to perish among the rest, *Cecedens cum suis in aliam regionem migravit: i. e. deparavit with his children, and travailed into another region.* And of these Giants from whom Noah withdrew himself, Berosus writeth in this manner: *That they exceeded in all sorts of inhumane and unnatural wickedness, and that they were contemptors of religion, and scorned the worship of the Gods: among which mighty men (saith Berosus) unus erat qui deorum venerantior, & prudentior existit, &c. hunc nomen erat Noah: i. e. there was one more wise and reverencing the Gods than the rest, whose name was Noah: who with his three sons, Sem, Lamech, and Cham, and with their Wives, and the Wife of Noah, (namely, Tizea the great, Pandora, Noela, and Noegla) preserved themselves in the Arke.* This Arke God commanded Noah to prepare: *And God said unto Noah, Make thee an Arke of Pinetrees: thou shalt make cabins in the Arke, and shalt pitch it within and without with pitch.* For God made Noah to know, that an end of all flesh was at hand, and that the graves of the rebellious and cruel Generations were already fashioned in the Clouds, which soon after should swallow up and cover all living creatures which breathed in the aire, Noah and his family excepted.

But this universal grave of waters, and general Deluge hath not been received by all: for divine testimonies do not perswade all natural men to those things to which their own reason cannot reach: *Dum obroluta in obscuris veritas latet: i. e. whilst the truth lieth wrapt up in obscurity.* Many there are who have disputed against the universality of this overflowing, and have judged that this flood of Noah fell but in some particular places and kingdoms: moved so to think, because in elder ages there have been many other floods (as they suppose) of that nature. Hereof Nicholas Damascenus writeth in this manner, as his words are cited by Iosephus. *Est super Minyadam excelsum mons in Armenia, qui Baris appellatur, in quo multos confugientes sermo est diluvii tempore liberatos, & quendam simul in Arca decessum in huius vertice basse, lignorumque reliquias multo tempore conservatas, qui fortasse is fuit de quo etiam Moyses Indæorum legislator scribit: thus far this Author. I here is (saith he) above Minyada (or the country of Minya) an exceeding high mountain in Armenia, called Baris: on which it is reported, that many having fled thither, were saved in the time of the deluge: and that one was carried in an arke, and rested upon the top of the mountain, whereon there remained a long time after certain pieces thereof, and this might be the same of which Moyses the Law-giver of the Jewes makes mention.* And of this opinion were

were the *Thalmudists* (saith *Ammius*) that many Giants saved themselves upon Mount *Sion*.

But *Berosus* (who, after *Moses*, was one of the most antient, howsoever he hath been since deformed & corrupted) doth in the substance of all agree with *Moses* as touching the generall Flood, taking from thence the beginning of his History in these words: *Ante aquarum cladem famosam, qua universi perierit Orbis, &c. Before that famous destruction of Waters, by which the World universall perished: witnessing withall, that Noah with his wife Titea, and his three sons with their wives (in all eight persons) were only saved*

## §. II.

Of the Flood in the time of *Ogyges*: and that this was not *Noahs Flood*.

But from the vanity of the Greekes, the Corrupters of all truth (saith *Lactantius*) who without all ground of certainty vaunt their Antiquity, came the error first or all: who therein flattering themselves also, sought to perwade the world that there was no Flood preceded the Flood of *Ogyges*, King of the Thebans in *Bæotia*, or rather of *Attica*; and therefore (saith *Rhodiginus*) *Ogygum id appellat Poeta, tanquam per vetus dixeris, ab Ogyge vetustissimo: The Poets gave the name of Ogygia to things exceeding ancient, as of Ogyges the most antient.*

But let *Ogyges* be as ancient as those men can make him, yet it is manifest that he lived but in *Jacob's* time (though *Eusebius* makes him later, and in *Moses* time) and was born 67. yeeres after him. There is also an opinion that *Ogyges* was *Cadmus* (and then was he farre later) as *Rhodiginus* in the ninth booke of his Antiquities remembreth: *Sunt tamen qui in Aegypto regnasse autmant hunc: unde sit Cadmus qui in Greciam profectus Thebas condidit, à bove jugulato sic nuncupatus; quoniam Syrorum lingua Bos dicitur Thebe. There are (saith he) who thinke that this Ogyges did reigne in Egypt, whereby he should be Cadmus, who travelling into Greece built Thebes, so named of a Beefe: because in the Syrian Language, a Beefe is called Thebe.*

But this Flood of *Ogyges* fell in the yeere of the World, 3440. according to *Eusebius*; who followed the account of the Septuagint: and the Flood of *Noah* in the year 2242. after the same account: and so there came 1200. between these Floods, wanting but two, though herein *Eusebius* was much mistaken, and corrected this opinion in his *Chronologie*. Now although the very year and time of this overflowing in *Achaia*, or rather *Attica*, be not precisely set downe, but that there is a great difference among Writers; yet whosoever makes it most ancient, findes above 500. yeeres difference between that and the generall flood.

For *Paulus Orosius* affirms that this tempest fell upon the Athenians, but 1040. yeeres before *Rome* was built. *Bucholzerus* saith, it was 1043. elder than *Rome*; which was founded (according to the same *Bucholzerus*) in the worlds yeare 3219. though after the account which I follow (and whereof I will give my reasons in the Story of *Abraham*) it was built in the Worlds year, 3280. Now the generall Flood preceded the building of *Rome* (saith *Bucholzerus*) 1563. yeares: and the Flood of *Ogyges* (as before) 1043. Hence it followeth by easie calculation, that (if he place *Ogyges* in his true age) the difference between these two Floods must be 520. yeares, to which wee (allowing 60. more) find 580. And that this of *Ogyges* was not the same of *Noah* (except we call *Noah, Ogyges Priscus*, as some doe) it appears by this, that the Flood of *Ogyges* then King of *Attica* or *Ogygia*, did not extend it selfe any farther than the banks of *Archi-pelago*, or the *Aegean Sea*. For whereas *Mela*, *Pliny*, and *Solinus* witnesse, that the City of *Joppa* in *Judæa* was founded before the Flood; and that (notwithstanding the weight of Waters) there remained on certaine Altars of stone, the Title of the King, and of his Brother *Phineas*, with many of the grounds of their Religion: sure it is no where found among prophane Historians, nor in the Scriptures, that ever the Flood of *Ogyges* spred it selfe over any part of *Syria*, much lesse over all the earth. But that it drowned both the Regions of *Attica* about *Athens*, and that of *Achaia* in *Peloponnesus*, it is very probable, For it seemeth that at that time it was, when *Helice* and *Peræ* were swallowed up (Cities seated on the North part of *Peloponnesus*): of which *Ovid*:

*Si queras Helicem, & Buran, Achados urbes, Invenies sub aquis.*

*Bura* and *Helice*, on *Achaian* ground  
Are sought in vaile, but under Sea are found.

Of this Flood of *Ogyges* was invented the Fable of *Apollo* and *Diana*. For *Latona*, the daughter of *Cæus*, the son of *Titan*, being beloved and forced by *Jupiter*, and by him gotten with child, *Juno* thereat enraged, permitted her (as they say) no part of the Earth to be delivered on and withall, caused the monstrous Serpent *Pylhon* to follow and assault her, wheresoever she travelled: till at length arriving at the Isle of *Ortygia*, she was there received; in which she was delivered, first of *Diana*, and then of *Apollo*, being Twins; whereof *Barlaam* makes this exposition: That at such time as the Deluge (which happened in *Ogyges* his reigne) ceased, out of the abundant moisture of the Earth (heat by putrefaction being thereto mixed) there were exhaled such thicke mists and fogges, that in *Attica*, and along the coasts of the *Aegean Sea*, neither the beames of the Sun by day, nor of the Moone by night, could pierce the ayre, or be perceived by the inhabitants: so as when at length (the Earth being dried, and these vapours dissipated) the ayre began to be cleare, the people of *Ortygia* espied the light of the Moone somewhat before day, and in the same morning the Sun also appeared: fabulously (because *Diana* represented the Moone, and *Apollo* the Sun) they were reported to be borne in the Isle of *Ortygia*, thereof afterwards called *Delos*: which signifieth manifestation.

And surely it is not improbable, that the Flood of *Ogyges*, being so great, as Histories have reported it, was accompanied with much alteration of the ayre, sensibly discerned in those parts, and some unusuall face of the Skyes. *Varro* in his Bookes de gente populi *Romani* (as he is cited by Saint *Augustine*) reporteth out of *Cassor*, that so great a miracle happened in the Star of *Venus*, as never was seene before, nor in after-times: For the colour, the greatnesse, the figure, and the course of it, were changed. This fell out, as *Adrastus Cyzicenus*, and *Dion Neapolites*, famous Mathematicians, affirmed, in the time of *Ogyges*.

Now concerning the course of that or any other Planet, I do not remember, that I have any where read of so good Astrologers, flourishing among the *Greeks*, or elsewhere in those dayes as were likely to make any calculation of the revolutions of the Planets, so exact, that it should neede no reformation: Of the colour and magnitudes I see no reason, why the difference found in the Starre of *Venus*, should be held miraculous; considering, that lesser mists and fogges than those which covered Greece with so long darknesse, do familiarly present our senses with as great alterations in the Sun and Moone. That the figure should varie, questionlesse it was very strange: Yet I cannot hold it any prodigie: for it stands well with good reason, that the side of *Venus* which the Sun beholds, being enlightened by him, the opposite halfe should remain shadowed; whereby that Planet would, unto our eyes, deservyng only that part whereon the light falleth, appeare to be horned, as the Moone doth seeme; if distance (as in other things) did not hinder the apprehension of our senses.

A worthy Astrologer now living, who by the helpe of perspective Glasses hath found in the Starres many things unknowne to the Ancients, affirmeth so much to have beene discovered in *Venus*, by his late observations. Whether some warlike disposition of the ayre might present as much to them that lived with *Ogyges*, as *Galilæus* hath seen through his Instrument; I cannot tell: sure I am, that the discoverie of a truth formerly unknown, doth rather convince Man of ignorance, than Nature of error. One thing herein is worthy to be noted, that this great, but particular Flood of *Ogyges*, was (as appeareth by this of Saint *Augustine*) accompanied with such unusuall (and therefore the more dreadfull, though naturall) signes, testifying the concurrence of causes with effects in that inundation; whereas the Flood of *Noah*, which was generall, and altogether miraculous, may seeme to have had no other token, or fore-shewing, than the long preaching of *Noah* himselfe, which was not regarded: for they were eating and drinking, when the Flood came suddenly, and tooke them all away.

## §. III.

of DEUCALIONS Flood: and that this was not NOAH'S Flood: nor the Umbri in Italy a remnant of any universall Flood.

A Second Flood of great fame, and of which the time is more certain, was that of Deucalion in Thessaly; of which S. Augustine out of Varro: *Hist. temporibus* (ut VARRO scribit) regnante Atheniensibus CRANAUS, successor CECROPS (ut autem nostri, EUSEBIUS & HIERONYMUS) adhuc eodem CECROPE permanente, diluvium fuit, quod appellatur est DEUCALIONIS: (that is) in these times (as VARRO reporteth) CRANAUS the successor of CECROPS governing the Athenians, or (as our EUSEBIUS and HIEROME say) CECROPS yet living, that Flood (called DEUCALIONS) happened.

And in the beginning of the eleventh Chapter of the same eighteenth Book, he useth these words: *Eduxit ergo MOSES ex Egypto populum Dei novissimo tempore Cecropis Atheniensium Regis, cum apud Assyrios regnaret Alcatades, apud Sicyonios Marathus, apud Argivos Tripas*: MOSES led the people of God out of Egypt about the later time of CECROPS King of the Athenians, Alcatades reigning over the Assyrians, over the Sicyonians Marathus, and over the Argives Tripas. So as leaving the curiosity of a few years, more or lesse, it appeareth, that this Flood of Deucalion was either at the egression of the children of Israel out of Egypt, or near it: and then after Noah 753. yeares, according to Funckius, who makes Cecrops to live in the year of the World 2409, or if we follow Mercator, then 739. yeares after Noah, and in the year of the World 2395. But if Deucalion were borne in the age of the World 2356. according to Codoman; then giving unto Deucalion 40. yeares of age when this Flood happened, it falleth within one yeare of Mercators account. But Deucalion by all approved Historians is said to have been 82. yeares old at that time. Now Clemens Alexandrinus dates the time of this Flood of Deucalion, and the conflagration and burning in Phaëtons time, by the Reign of Crotopus, King of the Argives; but Crotopus lived King of the Argives six yeares after Israel departed Egypt, which makes twenty yeares difference, according to Funckius, who will have this Flood and Burning to have fallen 14. yeares before Moses left Egypt: for he gave of the Worlds yeares to the Flood and burning the year 2440.

Cedren. l. i. §. 34

Clem. Alex. l. i. §. 1. ex Clus.

Euseb. in Chron.

and to Moses his egression the year 2454. And yet Cedrenus thinks that Moses was more ancient, and lived with Inachus; but that cannot be true: for then had the Flood of Deucalion, and the burning of Phaëton, preceded the Flood of Ogyges, which is denied by all: for that of Thessaly (called Deucalions) followed that of Attica (called Ogygia) at least 250. yeares, or thereabouts. Eusebius in his Chronologie makes it 230. & so doth P. Orosius: Eusebius about the 50. yeare of Moses life, and Cyrillus about the 67. and both after Noahs Flood 770. yeares: for these be Clemens Alexandrinus his words: *Fuit autem in Græcia tempore quidem Phornei, qui fuit post Inachum, inundatio quæ fuit tempore Ogygis*: There happened in Greece in the time of Phorneus, who lived after Inachus, the Flood of Ogyges. Now if the Flood of Ogyges in Attica were 1020. or 1016. yeares before the first Olympiad, according to Eusebius and Orosius (as before) then is it manifest, that taking 763. out of this number of 1020. it falls out, that Ogyges flood happened before the Hebrews left Egypt 250. yeares, or 260. yeares, according to the difference between the opinions of Eusebius and Orosius. And for my selfe (who rather follow those Chronologers, which give 60. yeares more to Abraham after the Flood, than the rest) I reckon the times which come between these Floods in this sort. The generall Flood was in the year of the World 1656. Jacob was borne in the year of the World 2169. so as from the beginning of the flood to Jacobs birth, there were consumed 513. yeares. Ogyges flood happened 100. yeares after Jacob was borne; and therefore after the generall flood 613. yeares. Now Deucalion was borne in the year of the World 2356. and had lived 82. yeares when his Kingdome of Thessaly was overwhelmed; (which added to 2356. make 2438.) his flood was after Noahs flood ended, 782. yeares. And hereto Anninus his Xenophon agreeth, who makes 700. yeares between the generall flood and Deucalions birth; to which adde 82. yeares of his Age (as before) and then the flood of Thessaly followed the generall 782. yeares. The words of that Xenophon are these: *Ab inundatione terrarum ad ortum Deucalionis, secundo anno Sphæri, septingenti supputantur anni, qui natus annos duos & octoginta Thessaliani vidit inundatam*: From the drowning of the World to the birth of Deucalion, in the second

yeare

year of SPHERUS, are numbered 700. yeares, and when DEUCALION was 82. yeares old, he saw Thessaly drowned. This Flood happened in the Winter time about Parnassus; witnesseth Aristotle in the first of his *Meteor.* And Varro (whom Saint Augustine so often citeth for his excellent Learning, especially in Antiquities) findeth this Flood of Deucalion to have happened in the time of CRANAUS, who succeeded Cecrops: Orosius thinks it somewhat later, Amphitrion reigning in Athens, the third from Cecrops: Only this of Deucalion was very great; and reached not only over Thessaly it self, and the Regions adjoining Weltward, but it covered the greatest part of Italy: and either the same, or some other particular Flood then happening, oppressed Egypt, saith Eusebius. And therefore did the Greeks either think it, or feigne it to be universall; and Deucalion then King, saving himself and some others on the Mountain of Thessaly (of all other the highest, saith Solinus) was by reason thereof (as Strabo witnesseth) said to bee the preserver of mankind. That this Flood covered a great part of Italy, Pliny and Solinus make it probable, who affirm, that the people then inhabiting Italy, were therefore called *Scythi*: quia ab imbris diluvii superfluentis; and therefore also were they esteemed the most ancient Nation, as Strabo confirmeth in his first Booke, and Trezenius in his second: which Umbri these Authors make the Parents of the Sabines, and the Sabines to be the Parents of the Samnites, Piceni, Lucani, Brutii, and all others inhabiting anciently the banks of the Mediterranean Sea. But that these Umbri were not the Inhabiters of Italie before the Flood of Noah, and so took name by saving themselves upon the Appennine Mountaines, the Scriptures teach us; shewing who, and who only then were preserved, which is sufficient. Report hath adventured further, telling us, that the first people which after the generall Flood inhabited Italy, were the *Camejenses*; (so named from *Camefe*, whom CATO in *originibus*, another of Anninus his Authors, names for a comfort of Janus) which people lived altogether a savage life; till such time as Saturne arriving on those Coasts, devised Lawes to govern them by: the memorie of whose wife and sister of Janus, Diodor and Thallus among the Greeks, Nepos Cassius and Varro among the Latines, have preserved; and of whom Virgil:

30 *Primus ab æthereo venit SATURNUS Olympo,  
Arma JOVIS fugiens, & regnis exul adeptis,  
Is genus indocile, ac dispersum montibus alius  
Composuit, Legesq; dedit; Latiumq; vocari  
Maluit.*

SATURNE descending from the Heavens high,  
Fearing the Armes of JUPITER his Son,  
His Kingdome lost, and banisht thence, doth fly,  
Rude people on the Mountain tops he won  
To live together, and by Lawes: which done,  
He chose to call it Latium.

40 And afterward in the Verses following he speaketh of the *Aufones*, and after them, of the *Sicani*: Nations, which again fought to dis-plant the ancient Inhabiters:

*Tum natus Ausonia, & gentes venire Sicani.  
Then came th' Ausonian Bands, and the Sicanian Tribes.*

Of these *Sicani* (which left Spaine, and sate down in Italy) Thucydides and Pliny give testimony: who were again expelled by the *Ligi*, saith Thucydides. After all these plantations & replantations, came the *Umbri*, descended of the *Gauls* (saith Anninus) not of those *Gauls* of France, but of those of *Scythia*, who commanded a great part of Italy, even all *Hetruria* and *Campania*; as Herodotus, Pliny, and Dionysius have assured us: and therefore this flood of Deucalion was longer after that of Noah. For all those Nations were planted in Italy, & dispossest of Italy again, before the *Umbri* were ever heard of, or had being. So that Kingdom was first called *Camefene*, then *Latium* or *Saturnia*, then *Ausonia*, then *Sicaniæ*, before the *Umbri* (in whose time Deucalions flood happened) posselt the same, about 306. yeares before the war of Troy; Lycan then governing *Arcadia*: who being the father of two and twenty sons, the youngest called *Oenotrus* invaded Italy, who gave it the name of *Oenotria*. This name it held until *Iahus* of the same Nation changed it into Italy, after his own name, about 250. yeares before the fall of Troy. After these,

H 2

came

Herod. l. 2.  
Plin. l. 3. c. 4.

came the *Pelasgi*, of whom *Pliny* in his third Book and fifth Chapter, and *Strabo* in his fifth, *Thucydides* in his sixth, speak at large : and after them the *Lydi*, under *Tyrrhenus* their Captain, that gave name to the *Tyrrheni*; who casting thence the *Umbri*, tooke from them three hundred Castles, and built therein twelve Cities; to which (after they had possesed and past over the *Appenine* Mountains) they added divers others, wherof *Tellina* (afterward *Bononia*) was one.

Now that there was not anciently such a Nation as these *Umbri* in those parts, I doe not affirm; having respect to the testimonies before repeated. And *Stephanus* thinks, that the name was derived from the Greek word *Ombros*; but that these *Umbri* of Italy were descended of the Nation of *Scythians* (called *Galli*) it shall be shewed hereafter.

#### §. IV.

Of some other Records testifying the universall Flood : and of two ancient Deluges in Egypt : and of some elsewhere.

**S**aint *Augustine* out of *Varro* affirmeth, that the *Greeks* and *Latines* made not any mention of the Universall Flood, because they had nothing of Antiquity foregoing that of *Ogyges* ; and therefore (according to *Rhodoginus*, before remembered) were all things among the *Greeks* (which antiquity had worn out of knowledge) called *Ogygia*, which we in *English* commonly call (worm-eaten) or of defaced date. But as all the parts of the Earth were successively planted and peopled; and as all Nations had their proper times, and not their beginning at once and at the instant: so did every Family, which afterward became a great people, with whom the knowledge of divine letters was not received, finde no Parent of more antiquity, than such as they had themselves, nor allow of any before their own; and as the *Grecians*, so did others want themselves, nor allow of any before the origin of the Earth, or invent some other prophane or ridiculous beginning. But the *Chaldeans* had certain knowledge of *Noah's* Flood, as *Berosus* witnesseth; and *Nicolaus Damascenus* maketh particular mention thereof (as is aforesaid) though he also affirm by hear-say, that some Giants saved themselves upon the Mountains *Bark* in *Armenia*, but speaketh not thereof as from any authority approved: using the word *Sermo* off; That such a speech there was. And *Eusebius* remembereth a place out of the ancient Historian *Abydenus* : who writeth that *Sisithrus*, to preserve himself from a Flood fore-told him by *Saturnus*, fled to the hills of *Armenia* by ship ad *Armeniam* navigio confugit : who the third day (after the waters were fallen) sent forth birds, that finding no land to rest on, returned again; which he also did a second time; but at the third return the birds feet were covered with mud and slime. To this effect are *Eusebius* words out of *Abydenus*, which may seem a true description (though in other terms) of *Noah's* Flood.

Euseb. p. 7.  
Evangel. l. 4. c. 6.

*Cyrillus* also affirmeth, that *Alex. Polyhistor* maketh mention of this generall Flood. And *Plato* in *Timæo* produceth an *Egyptian* Priest, who recounted to *Solon* out of the holy Books of *Egypt*, the story of the Flood universall, which (saith he) happened long before the *Grecian* Inundations. Frier *Annius* his *Xenophon* remembereth a third Flood, which also *Diodorus Siculus* confirmeth, somewhat more ancient than that of *Ogyges* in *Attica*. For he named the generall Flood for the first, which happened (saith he) under the old *Ogyges* : Sub *prisco* *Ogyge*, which was *Noah*, he calleth the second *Niliaca* : *Hercules* and *Prometheus* then living, 44. years before that of *Attica*, in the 34. year of *Belosus* King of the *Assyrians*, though I doe not believe him as touching the time. But this Flood covered a great part of the nether *Egypt*, especially all the Region subject to *Prometheus*; and hereof came the fable of the *Vulture* on *Prometheus* his liver, afterward slain by *Hercules* of *Egypt*; which fiction *Diod. Siculus* delivereth in these words : *Fluvium propter cursus velocitatem, profunditatemque aquarum, Aquilam tunc appellatum, HERCULEM tum consilii magnitudine, tum virtute, voluit & vestigio compressisse, & aquarum impetum ad priorem cursum convertisse : Unde & Græci quidam Poetæ rem gestam in fabulam vertentes, HERCULEM tradunt Aquilam PROMETHEI jecur depascentem occidisse : This Flood (meaning of *Nilus*) for the swiftnesse of his course ; as also for the depth, was in those dayes called the Eagle : but *HERCULES* by his great judgment and vertue did againe compress and straighten this River, so far extended and over-spread, turning it into the old channels : Whence certain Greek poets (converting this labour and work of *HERCULES* into a fable)*

Diod. l. 1.

Nat. com. l. 4. c. 6.

fable) devised, that *HERCULES* slew the Eagle which sed on *PROMETHEUS* liver; meaning that he delivered *Prometheus* of that sorrow and torment, which for the loss of his people and Country (by the Waters destroyed and covered over) he suffered.

A fourth Flood chanced about *Pharus* in *Egypt*, where *Alexander Macedon* built *Alexandria*, as *Annius* conceiveth out of his *Xenophon*, who in this briefe sort writeth of all these Inundations : Inundationes plures fuerunt : prima novimeisris inundatio terrarum sub *prisco* *Ogyge* : secunda *Niliaca*, &c. There were many Inundations (saith the same *Xenophon*) the first, which was universall, of nine months ; and this happened under the first *Ogyges* : the second was *Niliaca*, and of one moneths continuance, in the time of *Hercules* and *Prometheus*, *Egyptians* : a third of two moneths, under *Ogyges Atticus* : the fourth of three moneths, in *Thessalia*, under *Deucalion* : and a fifth of the lik continuance (called *Pharonica*) under *Proetus* of *Egypt*, about the time of *Helens* rape. *Diodegus* in his fifth Book and eleventh Chapter, taking the *Samothracas* for his Authors, remembereth a Flood in *Asia* the less, and elsewhere, of no less destruction than any of the other particular Inundations, saying, that the same happened before that of *Deucalion*; the Sea of *Pontus* and *Hellespont* breaking in over the Land.

But there have bin many floods in divers times and ages, not inferior to any of these two last remembered, *Niliaca* and *Pharonica* in *Egypt* : as in the year of our Redemption 590. when in *October* of the same year, *Gregory* then being Bishop of *Rome*, there happened a marvellous overflowing in *Italy*, and especially in the *Venetian* Territory, and in *Liguria*, accompanied with a most fearful storm of thunder and lightning: after which followed the great plague at *Rome*, by reason of the many dead Serpents cast up and left upon the land after the waters decreased and returned. And in the year 1446. there perished 10000. people, by the breaking in of the Sea at *Dordrecht* in *Holland* : of which kind I take that Flood to be of *Achaia* or *Attica*. Before that, and in the year 1238. *Triphenius* speaketh of an Earthquake, which swallowed many thousands : and after that of a Flood in *Friseland*, in which there perished 100000. persons. *Strozius Sigog*, in his *Magia omnivaria*, telleth of an Inundation in *Italy*, in the time of Pope *Damasus*, in which also many Cities of *Sicily* were swallowed : another in the Papacie of *Alexander*, the sixt: also in the year 1515. *Maximilian* being Emperor. He also remembereth a perillous over-flowing in *Polonia*, about *Cracovia*, by which many people perished. Likewise *Vignier* a French Historian speaketh of a great Flood in the South part of *Languedoc*, which fell in the year of our Lord 1557. with fo dreadfull a tempest, as all the people attended therein the very end of the World and judgment day ; saying, That by the violent descent of the Waters from the Mountains, about *Nismes* there were removed divers old heaps and mountures of ground, and many other places come up and rent : by which accident there was found both coyn of silver and gold, divers pieces of plate and vessels of other mettall, supposed to be hidden at such time as the *Goths* invaded that Province, in the year 1156.

10

30

40

#### § V.

That the Flood of *NOAH* was supernaturall, though some say it might have been foretold by the Starrs.

**N**OW howsoever all these Floods, and many other, which have covered at severall times severall Regions, not only in these parts of the World, but in *America* also, (as I have learned of some ancient Southlayers among them) may be ascribed to naturall causes and accidents; yet that universall Flood (in the time of *Noah*) was poured over the whole face of the Earth by a power above Nature, and by the especial commandment of God himselfe, who at that time gave strength of influence to the Starrs, and abundance to the Fountaines of the deep : whereby the irruption of Waters was made more forcible than any ability of nature could effect, or any second causes, by whatsoever union, could performe, without receiving from the Fountain of all-power, strength, & faculties supernaturall. *Henricus Moehliniensis*, a Scholler of *Albertus Magnus* in his Commentaries upon the great conjunctions of *Albus Masar*, observeth, that before the Flood of *Noah*, the like conjunction of *Jupiter* and *Saturne* happened in the last degree of *Cancer*, against that constellation since called the *Ship of Argos*; by which the Flood of *Noah* might be fore-told, because *Cancer* is both a watry Signe, and the House



Alfo de Concordia Theolog. & Astrolog. Gen. 7. 11.

\* The word properly signifies any place of stoppage, against which the force of the water being naturally carried downwards, dasheth and breaketh; & of eggs, as it is said, *allisior frangit*. Hence because Windows do not only open, but also shut, the word hath been expounded (Windows) for Bars or Floud-gates.

of the Moon, which is the Lady of the Sea, and of moysture, according to the rules of *Astrology*, and common experience. And this opinion *Petrus de Aliaco* upon *Genesis* confirms, affirming, that although *Noah* did well know this Floud, by divine revelation, yet this conjunction being notorious, he could not be ignorant of the second cause thereof: for those were not only signs, but also working causes, by strength received from the first cause, which is God himself, and further, that by *Cataractæ celi*, Englished the Windows of Heaven, *Moses* meant this great and wary conjunction; the word *Cataractæ* signifying flowing down, or coming down. Now (saith *P. de Aliaco*) it pleased God to ordain by the course of the Heavens such a constellation, by which all men might behold therein their destruction towards, and thereby forsake those wicked ways wherein they walked, and call unto God for mercy.

Of this judgment was *Gul. Parisensis*, who understood, that the words *Cataractæ celi*, or Windows of Heaven, were to be taken for the former conjunction, or for these wary signs, *Cancer*, *Pisces*, *Pleides Hyades*, and *Orion*, and of the Planets, *Mars*, *Venus*, and the Moon: which are the forcible causes of the greatest Inundations. His owne words are these: *Nondum intelligi Prophetam Hebraeorum Cataractas Celi vocasse, nisi partes illas celi; quæ generativæ sunt Pluviarum & Inundationum Aquarum, quales sunt signa aquatica, ut Cancer, &c.* as aforesaid: As yet (saith he) I perceive not what the Prophet of the Hebrews meant by those words *Cataractæ celi*, or Windows of Heaven, unless he thereby understanding those celestiall powers, by whose influences are engendred the rain, and inundations of waters, such as are the wary signs of *Cancer*, &c.

But in a word, as it might please God, that in the course of his unsearchable wisdom this conjunction should at such time be so did he (as aforesaid) adde vigour and faculty, and gave to every operation increase of vertues, violent eruptions to Springs and Fountains, commanding them to cast out the whole treasure and heap of their waters, taking retention from the clouds, and condensing aire into water by the ministry of his Angels, or whosoever else best pleased his All-powerfulness.

## §. VI.

That there was no need of any new Creation of matter to make the universal Floud: And what are *Cataractæ celi*.

GEN. 7. VERS. 11.

NOW if it be objected, that God doth not create any thing of new; (for God resteth the seventh day: (that is) he did not then after create any new species) which granted, it may seem that then all the Earth and Aire had not waters sufficient to cover the habitable World fifteen cubits above the highest mountaines. Of this proposition; whether God hath so restrained himself, or no; I will not dispute; but for the consequent (which is) that the World had want of water to over-cover the highest mountaines, I take that conceit to be unlearned and foolish: for it is written, that the Fountains of the great deep were broken up (that is) the waters forsook the very bowels of the Earth; and all whatsoever was dispersed therein, pierced and brake through the face thereof. Then let us consider, that the Earth had above one and twenty thousand miles, the Diameter of the Earth, according to that circle, seven thousand mile, and then from the Superficies to the center, some three thousand five hundred miles. Take then the highest mountain of the World, *Caucasus*, *Taurus*, *Olympus*, or *Atlas*, the mountains of *Armenia* or *Scythia*, or that (of all other the highest) in *Temeris*, and I doe not finde, that he that looketh highest, stretcheth above thirty miles upright. It is not then impossible, answering reason with reason, that all those waters mixed within the Earth three thousand five hundred miles deep, should not well help to cover the space of thirty miles in height, this thirty miles upright being found in the depths of the Earth 50 one hundred and sixteen times: for the Fountains of the great deep were broken up, and the waters drawn out of the bowels of the Earth. Secondly, if we consider what proportion the Earth beareth to the extension of the Aire over and above it, we shall finde the difference exceeding great. If then it pleased God to condense but so much of this Aire, as every where compasseth and imbraceth the Earth, which condensation is a conversion of Aire into Water, a change familiar in those Elements; it will not seem strange to men of judgment, yea but of ordinary understanding, that the Earth (God so pleasing) was covered over with Waters, without any new Creation.

Lastly,

Lastly, for the opinions of *Gulielmus Parisensis*, and *Aliacenſis*, to which I may adde *Berossus* and others, That such a conjunction there was, fore-shewing that destruction by Waters which followed; and that by the word *Cataractæ celi*, or Windows of Heaven, was meant this conjunction; there needs no other answer than that observation of *Ludovicus Riverus*, who affirmeth, That by the gravest *Astrologian* it was observed, that in the year 1524 there should happen the like conjunction as at *Noah's* Floud; than which (saith he) there was never a more faire, dry, and reasonable year: the like destruction was prophesied of the year 1588. But *Picus Earle of Mirandula* proveth, that there could not be any such conjunction at that time.

To conclude, I find no other myſterie in the word *Cataractæ celi*, than that the clouds were meant thereby: *Moses* using the Word *Windows of Heaven* (if that be the sense of the word) to expresse the violence of the rains, and Pouring down of Waters. For whoſoever hath ſeen thoſe fallings of water, which ſometimes happen in the *Indies*, which are called the Spouts; (where clouds do not break into drops, but fall with a reſtleſſe violence in one body) may properly uſe that manner of ſpeech which *Moses* did; That the Windows or Floud-gates of Heaven opened: (which is) That waters fell contrary to cuſtom, and that order which we call natural. God then looſened the power retentive in the uppermoſt ayre, and the waters fell in abundance: Behold (saies *Job*) he withholdeth the Waters, and they drie up (or better in Latine, *Et omnia ſiccantur*; *Job* c. 12. v. 15. And all things are dried up) but when he ſendeth them not, they deſtroy the Earth: And in the 26 Chapter: He bindeth the waters in the clouds. But theſe Bonds God looſed at that time of the general Floud, and called up the Waters which ſlept in the great Deep; and theſe joyning together, covered the Earth, till they performed the work of his will: which done, he then commanded them to return into their dark and vault Caves, Gen. 8. 1. and the reſt (by a winde) rarified again into ayre, formerly condensed into drops.

## §. VII.

Of ſome remainder of the memory of NOAH among the Heathen.

NOAH, commanded by God, before the fall of theſe Waters, entered the Ark which he had built, with his owne wife, and his Sons; and his Sons Wives, taking with them of every creature which took life by generation, ſeven of the clean, and of the unclean, two. *Noah*, according to *Philo*, ſignifieth quietneſſe: after others, and according to the prophecy of his Father *Lamech*, ceſſation; to whom after times gave many Names, anſwering his antiquity, zeale, virtue, and other qualities: as, *The first Ogyges*, becauſe in the time of the *Grecian Ogyges* there was alſo a great Floud of *Achaia*: *Saturne* they called him, becauſe he was the Father of Nations: Others gave him the Name of *Prometheus*, who was ſaid to ſteale away *Jupiters* fire; fire in that place being taken and underſtood for the knowledge of God and heavenly things. Others thinke, that he was ſo called for his excellent wiſedome and foreſight. He had alſo the Name of *Janus*, (*id est* *vinus*), becauſe *Jain* ſignifieth Wine in the Hebrew. And ſo *Tertullian* findes him written in *Libris Ritualibus*, in the Bookes of Ceremonies, preceeding both *Saturne*, *Drumms*, and *Jove*: which three enjoyed an elder time than all the other antientſt feigned gods. And this Name *Jain* is taken from the Hebrew and Syriac, and not from the Latine: for it was in uſe before there was any Latine Nation, or any Kingdome by that Name knowne. Of the antiquitie of *Janus*, *Fabius Piſtor* giveth this teſtimony: *JANI etate nulla erat Monarchia, quia mortalibus peſſoribus nondum heſerant illa regnandi cupiditas, &c. Vinum & Far primus populus docuit JANUS ad ſacrificia: primus enim Aras & Fomeria & ſacra docuit. In the time of JANUS (saith he) there was no Monarchie: for the deſire of rule had not then folded it ſelfe about the hearts of men. JANUS firſt taught the people to ſacrifice Wine and Meale: he firſt ſet up Altars; inſtituted Gardens and ſolitarie Groves, wherein they uſed to pray; with other holy Rites and Ceremonies. A greater teſtimonie than this there cannot be found among the Heathen, which in all agreeeth ſo well with the Scriptures. For firſt, whileſt *Noah* flouriſhed, there was not any King, or Monarch; *Nimrod* being the firſt that tooke on him ſovereigne authority. Secondly, *Noah* after the Floud was the firſt that planted the Vine, and became a Husbandman; and therefore offered the firſt-fruits of both (to wit) Wine and Meale. Thirdly, he was the firſt that rayſed an Altar, and offered ſacrifice to God a thankſgiving for*

Gen. 9. 20.

Gen. 9. 20.

for

for his merciful goodness towards him. *Noah* was also signified in the Name of *Eifons* (which was given to *Janus*) because he beheld the times both before and after the Flood: *Quia praterita noverit, & futura profpexerit*, saith *ARNOTIUS*: Because he knew what was past, and provided for what was to come. He was also in the person of *Janus* shadowed by the Name of *Chaos*, and *Semen Orbis*, The seed of the World: because as out of that confused Heap was drawn all the kinds of beasts and Plants; so from *Noah* came all Mankind. Whereof *Ovid* in the person of *Janus*:

*Ann. cent. Gent. lib. 6.*  
*Ovid. de Fastis lib. 1.*

*Me Chaos antiqui (nam sum res prisca) vocabant,  
Aspice quibus longi temporis æta cano.*

The Ancient call'd me *Chaos*: my great years  
By those old times, of which I sing, appears.

He was also intitled *Cælus* and *Sol*, Heaven and the Sun, for his excellent knowledge in Astronomy: *Vermunus*, *Bacchus*, and *Liber Pater*; not that latter, which *Diod. Siculus* and *Alex. Aphrodisius* to call, because he was the restorer of the *Greeks* to their former liberty, but in respect of the Flood. For the *Greeks* called *Liber* in, and his Nurles *Hyades*, of Raine, because *Noah* entred the Ark when the Sun joyned with the Stars *Hyades*, a constellation in the Brow or Neck of *Taurus*, and ever after a Monument of *Noah's* Flood. He was also by others surnamed *Triton*, a Marine god, the Son of *Neptune*; because he lived in safety on the Waters. So was he known by the name of *Dionysus*,

*Nat. Com. 1. 5. c. 13.*

*Calius.*

*Gen. 9. 20.*

*Stuck. in libris contrivendis Dædus de prima mundi ætate*

*quasi divinus, mentem pungens, Bile-brain, or Wit-stinger*; though *Diodorus* conceive otherwise, and derive that name to *Paire & Loco*; Of his Father, and the place of his Birth, (to wit) of *Jove*, and *Nysa*; a Towne of *Arabia felix*, saith *Suidas* out of *Orpheus*. He had also the by-name of *Taurus*, or *Tamophagus*; because he first yoked Oxen, and tilled the ground: according to that of *Moses*; and *NOAH* became an Husbandman. Now howsoever the *Grecians* vaunt of their *Theban Bacchus*, otherwise *Dionysus* it is certain, that the Name was borrowed, and the Invention stolen from *Noah*. But this Name of *Bacchus*, more anciently *Boachus*, was taken (saith *Cul. Stuckius*, and out of him *Dædus*) from *Noachus*, (N) being changed into (B); and it is the more probable, because it cannot be doubted but that *Noah* was the first planter of the Vine after the Flood: and of *Noah* (the first and ancient *Bacchus*) were all those fables devised, of which *Diodorus* complaineth in his fourth Book and fifth Chapter. This first *Bacchus* (to wit) *Noah*, was surnamed *Nysus*, of the Mountain *Nysa* in *India*; where the *Grecian Bacchus* never came, whatsoever themselves feign of his enterprises: and these Mountains of *Nysa* joyned with those of *Paropamisus*, and those other *Eastern* Mountains, on which the Ark of *Noah* rested after the Flood.

Furthermore, to the end that the memory of this second Parent of Mankind might the better be preserved, there were founded by his Issues many great Cities, which bare his Name, with many Rivers and Mountains; which oftentimes forgot that it was done in his regard, because the many Names given him brought the same confusion to places as to himself. Notwithstanding all which, we finde the City of *Noah* upon the banks of the red Sea, and elsewhere: the River of *Noas* in *Thrace*, which *Strabo* calleth *Noarus*; *Plutomy*, *Danubius*; dividing *Illyria* from *Pannonia*. Thus much for the Name.

#### §. VIII.

Of sundry particulars touching the Ark: as the place where it was made, the matter, fashion, and name.

Now in what part of the World *Noah* built the Ark, it doth not appear in the Scriptures, neither do I find any approved Authour that hath written thereof; onely *Goropius Becanus* in his *Indo. Scythia* conceiveth, that *Noah* built his Ark near the Mountains of *Caucasus*, because on those hills are found the goodliest Cedars: for when *Alex. Macedon* made the war among the people, called *Nysæi*, inhabiting the other side of *Caucasus*, he found all their Burials and Sepulchres wrought over with Cedar. To this place (saith *Becanus*) *Noah* repaired, both to separate himself from the reprobate Giants, who rebelled against God and Nature, as also because he would not be interrupted in the building of the Ark; to which also he addeth the conveniency of Rivers, to transport the Timber which he used, without troubling any other Carriages.

Onely

Onely this we are sure of, that the Ark was built in some part of the Eastern World; and to my understanding, not far from the place where it rested after the Flood. For *Noah* did not use any Malt or Sayle (as in other Ships) and therefore did the Ark no otherwise move, than the Hulk or body of a Ship doth in a calme Sea. Also, because it is not probable, that during these continuall and downe-right Raines there were any Windes at all, therefore was the Ark little moved from the place where it was fashioned and set together: for it is written, *God made a Wind to passe upon the Earth, and the Waters ceased*. And therefore it may be gathered, that during the fall of the Waters, there was not any Storme or forcible winde at all, which could drive the Ark any great distance from the place where it was first by the Waters lifted up. This is also the more probable, if that ancient opinion be true, as it is very likely, that the Ark had fundum planum, a flat bottom, and not rayed in forme of a Ship, with a sharpenesse forward, to cut the waves, for the better speed.

This kind of Vessell the Hebrewes call *Thebet*, and the *Greeks* *Larnax*, for so they termed *Deucalions* Ship: and some say, that the Hill *Parnassus*, to which in eight dayes he arrived, was first called *Larnassus*, and by the change of (L) into (P) *Parnassus*; but *Pan-staph. de Urb. fol. 227.* *sanias* thinks that it took name of a Son of the Nymph *Cleodora*, called *Parnassus*, the Inventor of *Auguration*.

*Peucernus* finds the word (*Parnassus*) to have no affinity with the *Greeke*, but thinks *De Oracul. fol. 20* it derived from the Hebrew word *Wabar*, which signifieth *Auguration* and *Divination*; or *94* from *Har* or *Parai*, as in his Chapter of Oracles in the Lease before cited.

*Josephus* calls the Ark *Macchina*, by the generall name of a huge Fram; and *Epiphanius* Epiph. in Anor. out of the Hebrew, *Aron*: but herein lieth the difference between *Aron* and *Thebet*. That *Aron* signifieth properly the Ark of the Sanctuaries, but *Thebet* such a Vessell, as swimmeth, and beareth it self upon the Waters.

Lastly, this Ark of *Noah* differed from the fashion of a ship in this, that it had a Cover and Rooft, with a Crest in the middelt thereof, and the sides declining like the Rooft of an House; to the end, both to cast off the Waters, and that thereunder *Noah* himselfe and his children might shelter, and separate themselves from the noysomnesse of Gen. 6. 4. the many Beasts, which filled the other roomes and parts of the Ark.

Of what Wood the Ark was built, it is uncertain. The Hebrew word *Gopher* once, and in this place only used, is diversly understood: & though the matter be of little importance, yet this difference there is, That the *Geneva* Translation calls it Pine-tree; the *Rabbins*, Cedar; the *Seventie*, square Timber; the *Latine*, smooth Timber. Other will have it Cypres Trees, as dedicated to the dead, because Cypres is worn at Funerals. But out of doubt, if the word *Gopher* signifie any special kind of Timber, *Noah* obeyed the voice of God therein; If not, he was not then curious as touching the kind or nature of the wood, having the promise of God, and his Grace and mercie for his defence. For with *Noah* God promised to establish his covenant: *Plinie* affirmeth, that in *Egypt* it was 17. 18. the use to build ships of Cedar, which the worms ate not; and he avoweth, that he saw 19. 20. in *Utica*, in the Temple of *Apollo*, Cedar beams, laid in the time of the foundation of the Citie, and that they were still found in his time, which was about 1188. years after: proving thereby, that this kind of wood was not subject to putrefying or mouldring in a very long time. But in that it is easie to cut, light to carrie, and of a sweete savour, lasting also better than any other wood, and because near the place where the Ark rested, there are found great store of these Cedar trees, as also in all the Mountains of the East, besides those of *Libanus*; it is probable enough that the Ark might be of that wood: which hath, besides the other commodities, the greatest length of Timber, and therefore fittest to build ships withall. *Pererius* conceiveth, that the Ark had divers sortes of Timber, & that the bottom had of one sort, the deck & partition of another; all which may be true or false, if *Gopher* may be taken for Timber in general. True it is, that Cedar will serve for all parts of a Ship, as well for the body, as for Masts and Yards. But *Noah* had most respect to the direction received from God: to the length, breadth, and height, and to the partitions of the Ark; and to pitch it, and to divide it into Cabines; thereby to sever the clean beasts from the unclean, and to preserve their several sorts of food; and that it might be capable of all kind of living creatures, according to the numbers by God appointed. All which when *Noah* had gathered together, he cast his confidence wholly on God; who by his Angels steered this Ship without a Rudder, and directed it without

without the helpe of a Compass or the North star. The Pitch which Noah used, is by some supposed to have bin a kind of Bitumen, whereof there is great quantity about the Valley of Sodome and Gomorah, now the dead Sea, or Asphalt, and in the Region of Babylon, and in the West India: and herein it exceedeth other Pitch, that it melts not with the Sun, but by the fire onely, after the manner of hard Wax.

## §. I X.

That the Arke was of sufficient capacitie.

**T**He Arke, according to Gods commandement, had of length three hundred Cubits, fifty of bredth, and thirrie deepe or high: by which proportion, it had fixe parts of length to one of bredth, and ten times in length to one of depth; of which S. AUGUSTINE: *Præcudubio figura est peregrinantis in hoc seculo Civitatis Dei, (hoc est) Ecclesie, que sit (scilicet) per lignum, in quo pependit Mediator Dei & hominum, homo Jesus Christus: nam & mensura ipsa longitudinis, altitudinis, latitudinisq; ejus significat corpus humanum, in cuius veritate ad homines promissus est venturus, & venit, &c. Without doubt (saith he) it is a figure of the City of God travelling in this World as a stranger, (that is) of the Church, saved by the Tree, whereupon the Mediator betweene God and Man, the Man Jesus Christ did hang: for even the very measure of the length, height and breadth, answereth the shape of Mans body, in the truth whereof the coming of Christ was fore-told and performed.*

By what kinde of Cubite the Arke was measured, it hath bin a disputed question among the Fathers, and others; and the differences are in effect these: The first kinde of Cubit (called the common) containeth one foot and a halfe, measured from the sharpe of the elbow to the point of the middle finger. The second (the Palm-Cubit) which taketh one handfull more than the common. The third is called *Regius Cubitus*, or the Persian Cubit, which exceedeth the common Cubit three inches. The fourth is the sacred Cubit, which containeth the common or vulgar cubit double, wanting but a quarter or fourth part. Lastly, there is a fifth Cubit, called Geometrical, which containeth six common Cubits. But of all these sorts, which were commonly measured by the vulgar cubit, the alteration and diminution of mensures hath made the difference. For as there is now a lesse proportion of bodies, so is the common Cubit, from the sharpe of the elbow to the point of the middle finger, of lesse length than it was in elder times.

S. Augustine considering the many sorts of Beasts and Birds which the Arke held, with their food and water, was sometimes of opinion, that the Arke had proportion after the Geometrical Cubit, which containeth almost fixe of the Common: For, measuring the Arke by the vulgar Cubit, it did not exceed the capacitie of that Vessell built by Hero of Syracuse, or the Ship of Ptolomie Philopater. But S. Augustine (who at the first was led by Origen) changed his judgement as touching the Geometrical Cubit; and found, upon better consideration, that there needed not so huge a Body to preserve all sorts of Creatures, by God appointed to be reserved. For it was not needfull to take any kindes of Fishes into the Ark, because they were kept living (saith S. Augustine) in their own element. *Non fuit necesse conservare in Arca que possent in aquis vivere, non solum merfæ sicut Pisces, verum super natantia, sicut mulæ aliter: It was not needfull to conserve those Creatures in the Arke, which could live in the Waters; and not onely Fishes which can live under water, but also those Fowles which sit and swim on them. And againe, Terra, non aqua, maledicta, quia ADAM non hujus, sed illius fructum vetitum comedit: It was the Earth, and not the Waters which God cursed; for of the forbidden fruit of the Earth, and not of the Sea, did ADAM eat. So as S. Augustine gathereth hereupon (as aforesaid) that so huge a Frame needed not.*

And if we looke with the eyes of judgement hereunto, we shall find nothing monstrous therein; although the imaginations of men, who (for the most part) have more of mischiefe and of ignorance, than of any reverend reason, found many impossibilities in this worke of God. But it is manifest, and undoubtedly true, that many of the species, which now seeme differing, and of severall kinds, were not then in rerum natura. For those Beasts which are of mixt natures, either they were not in that age, or else it was not needfull to preserve them, seeing they might be generated againe by others: as the Mules, the Hyenas, &c. the like; the one begotten by Asses & Mares, and the other

by Foxes and Wolves. And whereas by discovering of strange Lands, wherein there are found divers Beasts and Birds, differing in colour or stature from those of these Northern parts; it may be supposed by a superficial consideration, that all those which wear red and pied skins, or feathers, are differing from those that are less painted, and wear plain russet or black; they are much mistaken that so think. And for my owne opinion, I find no difference, but only in magnitude, between the Cat of Europe, and the Owne of India; and even those Dogs which are become wilde in Hispaniola, with which the Spaniards used to devour the naked Indians, are now changed to Wolves, and begin to destroy the breed of their Cattel, and do also oftentimes teare asunder their own Children. The common Crow and Rook of India is full of red feathers in the drowned and low Islands of Caribana; and the Black-bird and Thrush hath his feathers mixt with black and carnation in the North parts of Virginia. The Dog-fish of England is the Shark of the South Ocean: For if colour or magnitude made a difference of species, then were the Nigro's, which we call the Black-Mores, *non animalia rationalia*, not Men, but some kind of strange Beasts: and so the Giants of the South America should be of another kind, than the people of this part of the World. Wee also see it daily, that the natures of Fruits are changed by transplantation, some to better, some to worse, especially with the change of Clymate. Crabs may be made good Fruit by often grafting, and the best Melons will change in a year or two to common Cowcummers, by being set in a barren Soyle. Therefore, taking the kinds precisely of all Creatures, as they were by God created, or out of the Earth by his Ordinance produced; the Ark, after the measure of the common Cubit, was sufficiently capacious to contain of all, according to the number by God appointed: For if we adde but half a foot of measure to the common Cubit, which had a foot and a halfe of Giantly stature (and lesse allowance we cannot give to the difference between them and us) then did the Arke contain 600. foot in length, and 100. foot in bredth, and 60. foot deep.

But first of all, to make it manifest that the Geometrical Cubit is not used in the Scripture, the stature of the Giants therein named may suffice. For if the bed of Og, King of Basan, had been nine Geometrical Cubits long, it had taken 54. Cubits of the common, which make 80. foot: and Goliath, who had the length of six Cubits and a handfull, which makes nine foot and a handfull (a proportion credible) if these Cubits had been Geometrical, then had been 54. foot in height, and upwards, which were monstrous and most incredible: for (according to this proportion) had the head of Goliath been nine foot long, and far weightier and bigger than all David's body, who carried it away.

Again, if the Geometrical Cubit had been used for a Measure in the Scripture, as many Commenters have observed, then had the Altar (appointed to contain five Cubits of length, five of bredth, and three of height) have reached the length of 27. foot upright, and so mult their Priests have ascended by steps or Ladders to have performed their Sacrifices thereon, which was contrary to Gods Commandment given in these words: *Thou shalt not go up with steps unto mine Altar, that thy shame be not discovered thereon;* and therefore was the Altar but three common Cubits high, which make four foot, that their Priests standing thereby might execute their Office. Wherefore I may conclude, that the Cubit mentioned in the Scriptures was not the Geometrical, but the ordinary Cubit of one foot and a half, according to the measure of Giantly stature; which measure (doubtless) might give much the more capacity to the Ark; although it be also probable, that as the Men were, so were the Horses whereon they rode, and all other creatures of a correspondent size. And yet (as I take it) though by this means there were not any whit the more room in the Arke, it were not hard to conceive, how all the distinct species of Animals, whose lives cannot be preferred in the Waters, might according to their present quantities be contained in a Vessel of those dimensions which the Ark had; allowing to the Cubit one foot and a half of our now usual measure: whence it followeth of necessity, that those large bodies which were in the daies of Noah might have room sufficient in the Ark, which was measured by a Cubit of length proportionable.

How the appointed number of creatures to be saved, (that is, seven of the clean, two of the unclean (with necessary food) might have place in the Arke; *Est* hath very

Petrus.

De Civit. Dei. lib. 5. c. 26.

Athen. d'ipno. lib. 4. Plutar. in vita Demetrii.

Aug. de Civit. Dei, lib. 5. c. 27.

Aest. hij. In dia.

Dmt. 3. 11.

1 Sam. 17. 4.

Exod. 20. 24.

learnedly declared: the brief sum of whose discourse to that purpose, is this. *The length of the ark was three hundred cubits, which multiplied by the breadth, namely fifty cubits, and the product by the height of thirty cubits, sheweth the whole Concavity to have been 450000. Now whereas the posts, walls, and other partitions of Lodgings may seem to have taken up a great part of the hallow: the height of the roof, which (the perpendicular being one Cubit) contained 7500 cupicall Cubes was a sufficient recompence: If therefore in a Ship of such greatnes we seek room for 89 distinct Species of Beasts, or (least any should be omitted) for 100. several kinds, we shall easily finde place both for them, and for the Birds, which in bigness are no way answerable to them, and for meat to sustain them all. For there are three sorts of Beasts, whose bodies are of a quantity best known; the Beef, the Sheep, and the Wolf: to which the rest may be reduced, by saying, (according to Aristotle) that one Elephant is answerable to four Beeves, one Lyon to two Wolves, and so of the rest. Of Beasts, some feed on vegetables, others on flesh. There are one and thirty kinds of the greater sort, feeding on vegetables: of which number, onely three are clean, according to the Law of Moses, whereof seven of a kinde entred into the Ark, namely, three couples for breed, and one odde one for sacrifice: the other eight and twenty kinds were taken by two of each kinde, so that in all there were in the Ark one and twenty great Beasts clean, and six and fifty unclean, estimable for largeness as ninety one Beeves; yet for a supplement (left perhaps any Species be omitted) let them be valued as a hundred and twenty Beeves. Of the lesser sort feeding on vegetables, were in the Ark six and twenty kinds, estimable with good allowance for supply, as fourscore Sheep. Of those which devour flesh were two and thirty kinds, answerable to threecore and foure Wolves. All these two hundred and eighty Beasts might be kept in one story or room of the Ark, in their several Cabines; their meat in a second: the Birds and their provision in a third, with place to spare for NoAH and his family, and all their necessities.*

## §. X.

*That the Ark rested upon part of the hill Taurus (or Caucasus) between the East Indies, and Scythia.*

## §. I.

*A preterition of some questions less material: with a note of the use of this question to finde out the Metropolis of Nations.*

WHAT time NoAH took to build the Ark, I leave to others to dispute: but hereceived the Commandment from God a hundred yeers before the waters fell; and had therefore choice of time and leisure sufficient. As for the number of Decks and Partitions, which Origen divides into foure, S. Augustine into three, I will not trouble the Reader with the controversie: or whether those creatures which sometimes rest on the Land, other times in the Waters, as the Crocodiles (now called *Alegarij*) the Sea-Cowes or Sea-Horses, were kept in the Ark, or no, I thinke it a needles curiosity; and yet to this faith *Pererius*, and others before him, that a Fishpoole might be made as well within the Ark, as in *Hiero* his Ship of *Syracuse*. Lastly, to consider or labour to disprove the foolery of the *Hebrews*, who suppose that the Ark was lightened by a Carbuncle, or had Windows of Crystal to receive in Light, and keep out Water, were but to revive the buried vanities of former times. But that which I seek most to satisfie my self and others in, is, in what part of the World the Ark rested after the Flood: because the true understanding of some of these places (as the seat of the terrestrial *Paradise*, and the resting of the Ark) do onely and truly teach the Worlds Plantation, and the beginning of Nations, before and after the Flood; and all story, as well general as particular, thereby may be the better understood.

## §. II.

*A proposal of the common opinion, that the Ark rested upon some of the Hills of Armenia.*

AND first, for the true place where the Ark rested after the Flood, and from what part of the World the Children of NoAH travailed to their first settlement and plant-

plantation, I am resolved (without any presumption) that, therein the most Writers were utterly mistaken. And I am not led so to thinke out of my Humour or newnesse of opinion, or singulartie; but doe herein ground my selfe on the originall & first truth, which is the word of God, and after that upon reason, and the most probable circumstances thereon depending. For whereas it is written, *that the Arke stayed upon one of the mountaines of Ararat*, which the *Chaldean Paraphrast* hath converted *Kardu*, meaning the hills *Gordei* or *Gordiei* in Armenia the greater; (as the words *Gordei* and *Kardu* seem to be one and the same) of which opinion also the most of our Interpreters are; I finde neither Scripture nor reason which teacheth any such thing: (to wit) that it rested on that part of *Ararat*, which is in the greater Armenia. *Nicolas Damascenus* calls this mountain of *Ararat*, *Bavis*; being the same which the *Chaldean* nameth *Kardu*, to which mountaine the Fryer *Annius* (citing this place out of *Iosephus*) makes him finde another adjoyning, called *Ocila*, and to say that the Arke (of which *Moses* the Lawgiver of the *Hebrewes* wrote) did first take ground on this *Ocila*. But I doe not finde any such mountaine in being, as this *Ocila*, neither is there any mention of it in the place of *Iosephus*. *Sirabo* remembreth a Promontorie in Arabia felix of that name; and *Plinie* findes a Mart-towne fo called in the same, which *Plolinie* calls *Ocillus*, *Pineus* *Acyia*, and *Niger* *Zidon*. But this *Ocila* of *Damascenus*, or rather of *Annius*, seemeth to be one and a part of the Armenian mountains. *Berosus* calleth those mountains of Armenia *Gordiei*, and *Curdus* *Cordei*: *Plolinie* *Gordei* and *Gordiei*: of which the Countrie next adjoyning is by *Hiero* 51. 27. this *Nicolas Damascenus* called *Ninyas*, perhaps (as *Becanus* conjectures) for *Milyada* or rather *Minni*: which word is used for Armenia Minor. And the very word of Armenia seems to be compounded of this word *Minni*, and *Aram*: as if we should say *Minni* of Syria; for that Armenia also was a part of Syria, *Plinie* witnesseth. *Epiphanius* placeth the *Cardes* about these mountains, whom others call *Gordieni* or *Gordeni*. The mountaines are seated apart from all other to the North of that Ledge of the mountains called *Taurus*, or *Niphates* in the plains of Armenia the great, neere the Lake *Thosphis*: whence the River of *Tygris* floweth in 75. degrees of longitude, and 41. and 52. degrees of latitude. One of the mountains *Gordiei* (that which surmounteth the rest) *Epiphanius* calls *Lubar*, which in the Armenian signifieth a place of descent; but this out of *Iosephus*, which name (saith *Junius*) was of the event; because of *Noahs* coming downe with his children. But this also I take to be a supposed event; seeing any hill from whence on every side we must descend, may thus be called: as *Junius* corrects the place in *Iosephus* *νοβάρην* (*Kubaris*). That the place is thus to be read, he conjectureth, because *Ios.* 1. 1. c. 4. sayes, the place is called *καταρτή* (as it were the descent or coming downe) and *Epiphanius* 1. 1. contr. *Heres.* calls it *κατὰ* which word in the Armenian and Egyptian tongue signifieth descent, of *Lubar*, which is to descend; whence also *Lubra* is a Synagogue, because it was commonly built on som high place: whereof also the Latine *Delubrum* may seem to be derived; and *Ab.* 6. 9. they that belonged to the Synagogue of the Egyptians are called *Libertini*, for *Lubra tenu*. Yet this opinion hath beene embraced from age to age, receiving a habit of strength by time, and allowance without any farther examination; although the name of *Lubar* might otherwise rightly be given, especially to that mountain, by reason that the passage was more faire, up, and downe unto it, than to any of the rest adjoyning.

## §. III.

*The first argument against the common opinion. They that came to build Babel, would have come sooner, had they come from so neere a place as Armenia.*

BUT there are many arguments to perswade me, that the Arke of NoAH did, not rest it selfe in any part of Armenia, and that the mountaine *Ararat* was not *Bavis*; nor any one of the *Gordiean* mountaines.

For the first, it is agreed by all which follow *Berosus*, that it was in the 120. yeer, or in Brief 1. 1. the year 131. after the flood, when *Nimrod* came into the valley of *Shinar*, which valley was afterward called *Babylonia*, *Chush*, and *Chaldea*. If then the Arke had first found land in Armenia, it is very improbable, that the children of NoAH, which came into that valley could have spent so many yeers in so short a passage: seeing the Region of *Mesopotamia* was onely interjacent, which might by easie journeyes have bene past over in twenty

twenty dayes; and to hasten and help which passage, the navigable River of *Tigris* offered it selfe, which is every where tranſſable by boats of great burden : ſo as where the Deſart on the one ſide reſiſted their expedition, the River on the contrary ſide ſerved to advance it; the River riſing out of the ſame ledge of mountains, or at the foot of them, where the Ark of *Noah* was firſt ſuppoſed to ſettle it ſelfe; Then if the Nations which followed *Nimrod* ſtill doubted the ſurpriſe of a ſecond flood (according to the opinions of the ancient Hebrews) it ſoundeth ill to the eare of reaſon, that they would have ſpent many years in that low and overflown Valley of *Meſopotamia*, ſo called of the many rivers which inbroyder or compaſs it for the effects which their afflictions, and the works which they undertook, their unbelief; being no ſooner arrived in *Shinar*, but they began to provide themſelves of a defence (by erecting *Babel*) againſt any future or feared inundation. Now at *Babel* it was that *Nimrod* began his Kingdome, the firſt known City of the World, founded after the flood about 131. years, or (as others ſuppoſe) ten years later : though (for my ſelfe) I rather think, that they undertook that work in two reſpects; firſt, to make themſelves famous, *To get us a name* (ſaith the Text;) Secondly, thereby to uſurp dominion over the reſt.

Gen. 12. 12.  
Gen. 11. 1.

### ||. IIII.

*The ſecond Argument, That the Eaſtern people were moſt ancient in populatioe, and in all humane glory.*

FOR a ſecond Argument : The civility, magnificence, and multitude of people (wherein the Eaſt parts of the World firſt abounded) hath more weight than any thing which hath been, or can be ſaid for *Armenia*, and for *Noahs* taking land there. And that this is true, the uſe of Printing and Artillery (among many other things which the Eaſt had) may eaſily perſwade us, that thoſe Sun-riſing Nations were the moſt ancient. The certainty of this report, that the Eaſt *Indians* (time out of mind) have had Guns and Ordnance of battery, confirmed by the *Portugals* and others, make us now to underſtand, That the place of *Philoftratus* in *vita Apollonii Tiamæi*, l. 2. c. 14. is no fable, though expreſt in fabulous words: when he ſaith, that the wife men, which dwell between *Hyphaſis* and *Ganges*, uſe not themſelves to go forth into battaile: but that they drive away their enemies with thunder and lightning ſent from *Jupiter*. By which meanes there it is ſaid, that *Hercules*, *Ægyptius* and *Bacchus*, joyning their forces, were defeated there; and that this *Hercules* there caſt away his golden ſhield. For the invention of letters was ignorantly aſcribed to *Cadmus*, becauſe he brought them firſt into Greece: of which the people (then rude and ſavage) had reaſon to give him the honour, from whom they received the benefit. But it is true, that letters are no leſſe ancient than *Seth* or *Enoch* were: for they are ſaid to have written on pillars of ſtone (as before remembred) long before the flood. But from the Eaſtern world it was that *Jobu Cuſtberg* a *Germane*, brought the device of Printing : by whom *Conradus* being inſtructed, brought the practice thereof to *Rome* : and after that *Nicholaus Goſſon* a *Frenchman*, bettered both the letters and invention. And notwithstanding that this miſtery was then ſuppoſed to be but newly borne, the *Chinaes* had letters long before either the *Ægyptians* or *Phenicians*; and alſo the Art of Printing, when as the Greeks had neither any civill knowledge, or any letters among them.

And, that this is true, both the *Portugals* and *Spaniards* have witneſſed, who about an hundred years ſince diſcovered thoſe Kingdomes, and doe now enjoy their rich trades therein: for the *Chinaes* account all other nations but ſalvages in reſpect of themſelves.

And to adde ſtrength to this argument, the conqueſt and ſtory of *Alex. Macedon* may juſtly be called to witneſs, who found more Cities and ſumptuouſity in that little Kingdome of *Perna*, which lay ſide by ſide to the Eaſt *India*, than in all his other traivails and undertakings. For in *Alexanders* time, learning and greatneſſe had not traivelled ſo far to the Weſt as *Rome*. *Alexander* eſteeming of *Italy* but as a barbarous Country, and of *Rome* as of a Village. But it was *Babylon* that ſtood in his eye, and the fame of the Eaſt pierced his ears. And if we look as far as the Sun-riſing, and hear *Paulus Venetus* what he reporteth of the uttermoſt Angle and *Iſland* thereof, we ſhall finde that thoſe Nations have ſent out, and not received; lent knowledge, and not borrowed it from the Weſt. For the farther Eaſt (to this day) the more civill, the farther Weſt, the more Salvage.

And

and of the Iſle of *Japan* (now *Zippingari*) *Venetuſ* maketh this report : *Incole religioni, literis, & ſapientie ſunt additiſſimi, & veritatis indagatores acerrimi; nihil illis frequentius oratione, quam (more noſtro) ſacris in delubris exercere: unum cognoscunt Principem, unum Deum adorant* : The *Iſlanders* are exceedingly addiſſed to religion, letters, and philoſophy, and moſt diligent ſearchers out of truth : there is nothing among them more frequent than prayer, which they uſe in their Churches, after the manner of *Chriſtians* : They acknowledge one King, and worſhip one God. The antiquity, magnificence, civility, riches, ſumptuous buildings, and policie in government, is reported to be ſuch by thoſe who have bin employed into thoſe parts, as it ſeemeth to exceed (in thoſe formerly named, and divers to other particulars) all other Kingdomes of the World.

### ||. V.

*The third Argument, from the wonderful reſiſtance which SEMIRAMIS found in the Eaſt Indies.*

BUT for a third argument, and alſo of a treble ſtrength to the reſt, I lay the invaſion of *Semiramis* before the indifferent and adviſed Reader: who may conſider in what age he lived, and how ſoon after the Worlds new birth ſhe gathered her Army (as *Diodorus Siculus* out of *Cteſias* reporteth) of more than three millions to invade *India*, to which he adjoyned alſo 500000. Horſes, and 100000. Waggon : whereof if we believe but a third part, it ſhall ſuffice to prove that *India* was the firſt planted and peopled Country after the flood. Now as touching the time wherein he lived : All Hiſtorians conſent that ſhe was the Wife of *Ninus*, and the moſt approved Writers agree, that *Ninus* was the Son of *Beluſ*, and *Beluſ* of *Nimrod*, that *Nimrod* was the Son of *Cuſh*, *Cuſh* of *Cham*, and *Cham* of *Noah*. And at ſuch time as *Nimrod* came to *Shinar*, he was then a great Nation, as by the building of the City and Tower of *Babel* may appeare; and being then ſo multiplied and increaſed, the two deſcendants caſt between *Nimrod* and *Semiramis*, brought forth in that time thoſe multitudes, whereof her Army was compoſed. Let us then ſee with whom ſhe encountred in that War with this her powerful Army : even with a multitude, rather exceeding, than equalling her own conducted by *Staubates* King of *India* beyond *Indus*; of whoſe multitudes this is the witneſſe of *Diod. Siculus*. *STAUROBATES avitis majoribus, quam que erant SEMIRAMIDIS copis* : *STAUROBATES* gathering together greater Troops than thoſe of *SEMIRAMIS*. If then theſe numbers of *Indians* had bene increaſed but by a *Colonie* ſent out from *Shinar* (and that alſo after *Babel* was built; which no doubt took ſome time in the performance) this increaſe in the Eaſt, and this Army of *Staubates* muſt have been made of ſtone, or ſomewhat elſe by miracle. For as the numbers which *Semiramis* gathered might eaſily grow up in that time, from ſo great a Troop as *Nimrod* brought with him into *Babylonia* (as ſhall be demonſtrated hereafter in the ſtory of *Iſrael*) ſo could not any ſuch time, by any multiplication natural, produce ſo many bodies of men as were in the *Indian* Army victorious over *Semiramis*, if the *Colomes* ſent thither had been ſo late as *Babel* overturned, and the conſuſion of Languages. For if wee allow 65. years time after the Flood, before *Nimrod* was borne : of which; thirty yeares to *Cuſh* ere he begat *Seba*, after whom hee had *Hauilah*, *Sabtah*, *Raamah*, and *Sahchech* : and then thirty yeares to *Raamah*, ere he begat *Sheba* and *Dedan*, both which were borne before *Nimrod* : and five yeares to his five elder brothers, which make ſixty five, and then twice thirty yeares for two Generations more, as for *Nimrod*, *Sheba* and *Dedan* with others, to beget their ſonnes 5. and that a third Generation might grow up, which makes in all an hundred twenty five yeares; there will then remaine ſix yeares to have been ſpent in traivelling from the Eaſt, ere they arrived in *Shinar*, in the year after the Flood 131. And ſo the followers of *Nimrod* might be of ſufficient multitude. But as for thoſe which make him to have arrived at *Shinar* in the year 101. and the conſuſion to have been at *Peleg* birth, theſe men doe all by miſtake; they beget whole Nations without the help of time; and build *Nimrod* Tower in the Ayre; and not on thoſe low and marſh grounds (which require ſound foundations) in the Plains of *Shinar*. For except that huge Tower were built in a day, there could be no conſuſion in that year 101. or at *Peleg* birth; and therefore it is farre more probable, that *Nimrod* uſurped Regall authority in the 131. yeare after

I 2

Glyc. in Gen. &  
de Turris ex-  
structione  
fol. 173.

after the Flood, (according to Berosus) and that the work of Babel lasted forty years (according to GLYCAS) *Hominibus in ea perficienda totis 40. annis incassum laborantibus; Mos labouring in vain 40. years to finish it.* By which account it falls out that it was 170. years after the Flood, ere a Colony was sent into East India; which granted (the one being the main Body, and the other but a Troop taken thence) it can hardly be believed that Stanrobates could have exceeded Semiramis in numbers: who being then Empress of all the part of that world, gathered the most of Nations into one body.

||. VI.

The fourth Argument from divers considerations in the person of NOAH.

FOURTHLY, it is no way probable, that Noah, who knew the world before the Flood, and had lived therein the long time of 600. years, was all that space 130. years after the flood without any certain habitation: No, it will fall out, and better agree with reason, that Nimrod was but the conductor of those people, by Noah destined & appointed to fill and inhabit that middle part of the earth and the Western World; (which travailes Noah put over to young and able bodies) and that Noah himself then covered with many years, planted himself in the same place which God had assigned him; which was, where he first came down out of the Ark from the waters: for it is written, that after Noah came down out of the Arke, he planted a Vineyard, and became a Husbandman, whose business was to dress and manure the Earth; and not to range over so many parts of the world, as from Armenia into Arabia felix, where he should (if the tradition be found) have left certain Colonies: thence into Africa towards Triton, then into Spaine, where they say he settled other companies, and built Cities after the names of Noela and Noegla his Sons Wives: from thence into Italy, where they say he found his Sonne Cham the Saturne of Egypt, who had corrupted the people and subjects of Gomer in his absence: with whom Noah (as they make the story) had patience for three years; but then finding no amendment, they say he banisht him out of Italy. These be but the fancies of Berosus Annianus; a plain imitation of the Grecian fables. For let every reasonable man conceive, what it was to travaile far in such a forrest as the World was, when after so great a rotting of the Earth by the Flood, the famely waste and over-grown for 130. or 140. years, and wherein there could hardly be found either part or passage through which men were able to creep for woods, bushes, and bryars that in those years were grown up.

And there are so many reasons, proving that Noah never came into the valley of Shinar, as we need not suspect his passage into Italy or Spaine: For Noah, who was Father of all those Nations, a man revered both for his authority, knowledge, experience and piety, would never have permitted his children and issues to have undertaken that unbelieving presumptuous work of Babel. Rather by his presence and prevalent persuasions he would have bound their hands from so vain labours, & by the authority which he received even from God himself, he would have held them in that awful subjection, as whatsoever they had vainly conceived or feared, yet they durst not have disobeyed the personal commandement of him, who in the beginning had a kinde of Regall authority over his children and people. Certainly, Noah knew right well, that the former destruction of mankind was by themselves purchased through cruelty and disobedience; and that to distrust God, and to raise up building against his Almighty power, was as much as in them day, a provocation of God to lay on them the same, if not a more sharp affliction. Wherefore, there is no probability, that ever he came so far West as Babylonias; but rather, that he sent those numbers which came into Shinar (being the greatest troop, because they had the greatest part of the world to plant) under Nimrod, or those upon whom he usurped. Nucleus and Celestius take the testimony of Methodius Bishop of Tyre for currant, that there were three Leaders of the people after their increase (to wit) Nimrod, Saphene, and Jochan: of which Nimrod commanded the issues of Cham, Jochan of Sem, and Saphene of Japhet. This opinion I cannot judge of, although I will not doubt, but that so great a work as the Worlds plantation, could not be effected without order and conduction.

Of the sonnes of Sem: Jochan, Havilah, and Ophir, are especially noted to have dwelt in the East India: The rest of Sem's issues had also the Regions of Persia and the other adjoining

adjoining to Indus, and held also a part of Chaldaa for a time: for Abraham inhabited Ur, till he was thence called by God; and whether they were of the sons of Jochan, or of all the rest a certain number (Cham and his issue only excepted) that Noah kept with himself, it cannot be known. Of which plantation I shall speak at large in the Chapter following.

Now another reason which moves me to believe that Noah stayed in the East far away from all those that came into Shinar, is, that Moses doth not in any word make mention of Noah in all the story of the Hebrews, or among any of those Nations which contended with them. And Noah being the Father of all mankind, and the chosen servant of God, was too principall a person, to be either forgotten or neglected, had he not (in respect of his age and wearisome experience of the World) withdrawn himselfe, and rested a part with his best beloved, giving himself to the service and contemplation of God and heavenly things, after he had directed his children to their destined portions. For he landed in a warm and fertile soile, where he planted his Vineyard, and dressed the Earth after which, and his thanksgiving to God by sacrifice, hee is not remembered in the Scriptures, because he was so farre away from those Nations of which Moses wrote: which were the Hebrews chiefly, and their enemies and borderers.

|| §. VII.

Of the senselesse opinion of ANNIUS the Commentator upon Berosus: who findes divers places where the Ark rested; as the Cassian and Gordian hills which are three hundred miles asunder, and also some places of Scythia.

IT remaineth now that we examine the Arguments and Authorities of Frier Anniius, who in his Commentaries upon Berosus and others, laboureth marvailously to prove that the Arke of Noah rested upon the Armenian Mountaines called Caspi; which mountaines separate Armenia from the upper Media, & do equally belong to both. And because all his Authors speak of the mountaines Gordia, he hath no other shift to unite these opinions, but by uniting those far-distant mountaines together. To effect which, he hath found no other invention, than to charge those men with error, which have so carefully over-seen, printed, and published Ptolomies Geography, in which they are altogether dislevered. For that last edition of Mercators, sets these hills five degrees (which makes three hundred English miles) asunder. And certainly, if we look into those more ancient copies of Ptolomys and others, we shall finde nothing in them to help Anniius withall: for in those the mountaines Caspi stand seven degrees to the East of the Cordia, which makes 420. miles. And for those Authors by whose authority Anniius strengtheneth himself, Diodorus whom he so much followeth, giveth this judgment upon them in the like dispute. *Aberant vero omnes, non negligentia, sed regnorum sum ignorantiis; They have all erred (saith he) not through negligence, but through ignorance of the situation of Kingdomes.* But for an induction, to prove that the Ark of Noah stood on the mountaines of Armenia, he beginneth with the antiquity of the Scythians: and to prove the same he citeth Marcus Portius Cato, who avoweth that 250. years before Nimus, the earth was over-flown with waters, & in Scythia Sagare natum mortale genus, and that in Scythia the stock of mortall men was renewed. The same Author also teacheth, that the Umbri before remembred (who were so called, because saved from Deucalions Flood) were the sonnes of the Galli, a Nation of the Scythians. *Ex his venisse JANUM cum DYRIM, & Gallis progenitoribus Umbriorum; From these Scythians, he saith, that JANUS came with DYRIM, and with the Galli the progenitors of the Umbri:* And againe, *Equidem principatus originis semper Scythia tribuitur; Certainly, the Prime Antiquity of Offspring is alway given to the Scythians:* And herein truly I agree with Anniius, that those Regions called Scythia, and now Tartaria, and by some Writers Sarmatia, Asiatica, were among the first peopled: and they held the greatest part of Asia under Tribute till Nimus time. Also Plinie called the Umbri which long since inhabited Italy, *Gens antiquissima, a most ancient Nation, who descended of these Scythians.* Now that which Anniius labourerth, is to prove, that these ancient Scythians (meaning the Nephewes of Noah) did first inhabite that Region of the mountaines, on which the Ark rested; and confessing that this great Ship was grounded in Armenia, he feigneth a nation of Scythians called Araxes, taking name of the mountain Ararat, near the River of Araxes. And because his Author Cato helpeth him in part



Berof. l. 1.

Ptol. Afia. tab. 7.

Gen. 11. 2.

L. 6. c. 17.

Tab. Afia. 7. &amp; 8.

Rha, now  
Volga.Com. 2. Afia.  
fol. 42.Ad meridiem  
flexo Bosphoro  
perseptentio-  
nalis ponte Eu-  
xini usque in  
offium Coracis  
fluvii: unde re-  
lictum à parte  
dextra Colchis,  
Beris, Albanis-  
in litibus Hyrcan-  
is mare prece-  
nit.  
Syn. hist. l. 30.

(to wit, That in Scythia mankind was restored after the great flood 250. years before Ninus) and in part utterly destroyeth his conceit of Armenia, by adding the word *Saga*; as, *In Scythia Saga renatum mortale genus*; In Scythia Saga mankind was restored, he therefore in the *Promme* of his Commentary upon *Berosus*, leaveth out the addition of *Saga* altogether in the repetition of *Cato* his words, and writes, *homines in Scythia salvatos*. For Scythia Saga or Saca, is undoubtedly under the Mountaines of Parapanifus; on which, or near which it is most probable that the Arke first took ground: and from thofe East parts (according to *Moses*) came all thofe companies which erected the Tower of Babel in Shinaar or Babylonia.

But now the best authority which *Ammius* hath, is out of *Diodorus*: where he hath read that the Scythians were originally Armenians, taking name à *Scythia Rege cornu*, from Scythia their King. But (in a word) we may see his vanity, or rather (indeed) his fallhood in citing this place. For *Diodorus*, a most approved and diligent Author, beginneth in that place with these words: *Fabulantur Scythæ; The Scythians fable*: and his Interpreter in the table of that work giveth this title to that very Chapter. *Scytharum origo & successus, fabula; The originall and successe of the Scythians, a fable*. And (indeed) there needs no great disproof hereof, since *Ptolomy* doth directly delineate Scythia Saga or Saca, and sets them in 130. degrees of longitude: and the Persians (saith *Herodotus* call all the Scythians, Saca; which *Pliny* confirmeth: for in respect that these Saca (saith *Pliny*) are the next Scythians to the Persians, therefore they gave all the rest that name. Now that any Nation in Armenia can neighbour the Persians, there is no man believeth. But this supposed Scythia Araxea in Armenia lieth in 78. degrees of longitude (that is) 42. degrees distant from the Saca; and the Country about *Araxes* *Ptolomy* calleth Colchene and Soduene & Sacapene without any mention of Scythia at all: and yet all thofe which are or were reputed Scythians either within Imaus or without,

Tab. Afia. 7. & 8. to the number of 100. severall Nations, are by *Ptolomy* precisely set down. But to come to thofe latter Authors, whereof some have written, others have seen a great part of thofe North-East Regions, and searched their antiquities with great diligence: First *Marius Niger* boundeth Scythia within *Imaus*, in this manner: for Scythia without these Mountains is also beyond our purpose) *Scythia inter Imaum montem est, que proprio vocabulo Gassaria* hoc tempore dicitur: ab Occasu Sarmatia Asiatica: ab Oriente Imao monte: à Septentrione terra incognita: à Meridie Sacis, Sogdianis, Margianis, usque ostia Oxæamnis in Hyrcanum mare exentis; & parte ipsius maris hinc usque ad Rhæthumini ostia terminatur: Scythia within the mountaine Imaus is that part of the World which in their owne speech is at this time called Gassaria; and the same is bounded on the West side by Sarmatia Asiatica (or of Asia:) on the East by the Imaus Mountaines: on the North by unknown Lands: on the South by the Saccæ (which are in the Saccæ) the Sogdiani, and the Margiani, to the mouth of Oxus, falling into the Hyrcan Sea, and by a part of the same Sea as far as the mouth of Rha.

Now if *Niger* sets all Sarmatia Asiatica to the West of Scythia, then Sarmatia (que magna sanè Regio est, & que innumeras nationes complectitur) Which is a great Region, comprehending innumerable nations (saith *Niger*) much of it being between Scythia and Armenia, doth sufficiently warrant us, that Armenia can be no part of Scythia, and to make it more plain, he differeth Sarmatia it self from any part of Armenia, by the Regions of Colchis, Iberia, and Albania, which he leaveth on the right hand of Sarmatia, and yet makes Sarmatia but the West bound of Scythia.

And for *Paulus Venetus*, he hath not a word of Armenia among the Tartarian or Scythian Nations; neither doth his fellow *Frier John Planerpio* (cited by *Vincennes* in his description of Scythia) make any mention of Armenia; neither doth *Haytonus*, an Armenian borne, of the bloud of those Kings (though afterward a Monk) ever acknowledge himself for a Tartarian, or of the Scythian Races descended: though he write that story at large, gathered by *Nicholaus Salicrni*, and (by the commandement of Pope Clement the fifth) in the year 1307. published.

Neither doth *Matthias a Michon* (a Canon of Cracovia in Polonia) a Sarmatian borne, and that travell'd a great part of Sarmatia Asiatica, finde Armenia any way within the compass of Tartaria, Scythia, or Sarmatia; and yet no man (whose Travails are extant) hath observed so much of those Regions as he hath done: proving and disproving many things, heretofore subject to dispute. And among others he burieth that ancient and received

received opinion, That out of the Mountains, *Raphai*, and *Hyperborci* in Scythia, spring the Rivers of *Tanis* or *Don*, *Volga* or *Edel*; providing by unanswerable experience, that there are no such Mountains in rerum natura; and (indeed) the Heads and Fountains of those famous Rivers are now by the Trade of *Muscovia* knowne to every Merchant, and that they arise out of Lakes, low, wooddie, and marish grounds. The River of *Tanis* or *Don*, ariseth to the South of the Citie *Tulla*, some twentie English miles, out of a Lake called *Iwanowesero*, in the great wood *Ogenitzkies* or *Jepiphanolis*. *Volga*, which *Ptolomy* calls *Rha*, and the *Tartars* call *Edel*, riseth out of a Lake called *Fronow*, in the great Wood *Vodkonzki*: from which Lake the two other famous Rivers flow of *Bozphthenes* (now *Neyper*) and *Dsuina* or *Dividna*. And this learned *Polonian* doth in this *Sig. Herbesstem* sort bound the European Sarmatia. In Sarmatia of Europe are the Regions of *Russians*, *Lithuanians*, *Muscovians*, and those adjoining, bounded on the West by the River of *Vissa*, the Name perchance mis-printed *Vissa* for *Vistula*, a River which parts *Germania* and *Craesus* calleth this River *Wissus*, *Niger Dravaman*; and for the East border he nameth *Tanis*, or *Don*. Sarmatia Asiatica he cutteth from Europe by the same River of *Tanis*, and the *Caspian* Sea, to with-hold it from stretching farther East: this *Asian* Sarmatia being part of that Scythia which *Ptolomee* calleth *Scythia intra Imaum montem*: Scythia within the Mountaine Imaus. And the same *Matthias* farther affirmeth, that the Scythians (which *Frier Annius* would make Armenians) came not into Sarmatia Asiatica it selfe above three hundred and a few odd yeeres before his owne time: these be his words: *Constat eam esse gentem novam, & adventitiam à partibus Orientis (mutatis sedibus) paulo plus abhinc trecentis annis Asie Sarmatiam ingressam: Ut manifestum (saith he, speaking of the Scythian Nation) that this is a late planted Nation, come from the coasts of the East: from whence they entered into Asia, & gat now sates a little more than 300. yeeres since: For (indeed) before that time the *Goths* or *Ponloes* inhabited Sarmatia Asiatica. And this *Matthias* lived in the year 1511. and this his Discourse of Sarmatia was printed at *Amstela* in the yeere 1506. as *Bucholzerus* in his *Chronologie* witnesseth. Now these Scythians (saith he) came from the East, for in the East it was that the *Ark* of *Noah* rested, and the *Scythæ Saccæ* were those people which lived at the North foot of those Mountains, of *Taurus* or *Ararat*, where they encounter or begin to mixe themselves with the great *Imaus*. And were there no other testimony than the general description of the Earth now extant, and the witness of *Ptolomee*, it is plaine, that betwene all parts of Armenia, and Scythia, there are not only those three Regions of *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania*, but the *Caspian* Sea: on the East shore of which Sea, but not on the West, or on that part which any way toucheth Armenia, there are (indeed) a Nation of Scythians (called *Ariacæ*) between *Jaxartus* and *Jabus*; but what are these Scythians to any *Ariacæ*, or Scythia Araxea, which *Annius* placeth in Armenia, more than the Scythians of Europe?*

## ||. VIII.

The first Argument, The Vine must grow naturally neere the place where the Arke rested.

TO this if we adde the consideration of this part of the Text, That *NOAH* planted a Vineyard, we shall find that the fruit of the Vine or Rayn did not grow naturally in that part of Armenia, where this resting of the Arke was supposed: for if the Vine was a stranger in *Italie* and *France*, and brought from other Countries thither, it is not probable that it grew naturally in Armenia, being a farre colder Country. For *Tyrrebus* first brought Vines into *France*, and *Saturnus* into *Latium*: yea at such times as *Brennus* and the *Gauls* invaded *Italie*, there were few or no Vines in *France*. For (saith *Plinarch* in the life of *Camilus*) the *Gauls* remained betwene the *Pyrenæi* and the *Alpes*, *Servius Ateius* neere unto the *Senones*, where they continued a long time, untilt they drunke Wine, which was first brought them out of *Italie*; and after they tasted thereof, they hasted to inhabit that Country, which brought forth such pleasant fruit: so as it appeareth, that the Plant of the Vine was not naturall in *France*, but from *Italie* brought thither; as by *Saturne* from elfe where into *Italy*.

Now it is manifest, that *Noah* travell'd not far to seeke out the Vine. For the Plantation thereof is remembered, before there was any counsaile how to dispose of the world among his children: and the first thing he did, was, to till the ground, & to plant a Vineyard, after the Sacrifice and Thanksgiving to God; and wheresoever the Arke rested, there

there did the Vine grow naturally. From whence it doth no where appear, that he travailed far: for the Scriptures teach us, that he was a Husband-man, and not a wanderer.

## ||. IX.

An answer to an objection out of the words of the Text: The Lord scattered them from thence upon the face of the whole earth.

And that all the children of Noah came together into Shinar, it doth not appear saving that it may be inferred out of these words (from thence) because it is written: So that the Lord scattered them from thence upon all the Earth; which hath no other sense, but that the Lord scattered them (to wit) those that built this Tower: for those were from thence dispersed into all the Regions of the North and South, and to the Westward. And by these words of Sybilla (as they be converted) it seemeth that all came not together into Shinar; for they have this limitation: Quidam eorum turrim edificarunt altissimam, quasi per eam celum essent ascensuri: Certaine of them built a most high Tower, as if they meant thereby to have scaled the Heavens.

## ||. X.

An answer to the objection of the name of Ararat, taken for Armenia: and the height of the Hills there.

But before I conclude this part, it is necessarie to see and consider, what part of Scripture, and what reason may be found out, to make it true or probable, that the Arke of Noah was forsaken by the waters on the Mountains of Armenia. For the Text hath onely these words: The Arke rested on (or upon) the Mountains of Ararat, or Armenia, saith the marginall note of the Geneva: the Chaldean Paraphrast calls it Kardis, of which, the highest hath the name of Lubar, saith Epiphanius. Now this Ararat (which the Septuagint do not convert at all, but keep the same word) is taken to be a Mountain of Armenia; because Armenia it selfe had anciently that name: so as first out of the name, and secondly out of the height (which they suppose exceeded all other) is the opinion taken, that the Arke first lay thereon.

But these suppositions have no foundation: for neither is Ararat of Armenia alone, neither is any part, or any of those Mountains of equal stature to many other Mountaines of the World; and yet it doth not follow, that the Arke found the highest Mountaine of all other to rest on: for the Plains were also uncovered before Noah came out of the Arke. Now, if there were any agreement among Writers of this Ararat, and that they did not differ altogether therein, we might give more credit to the conceit. For in the Bookes of the Sybil, it is written, that the Mountains of Ararat are in Phrygia, upon which it was supposed that the Arke stayed after the Flood. And the better to particularize the place and seate of these Mountains, and to prove them in Phrygia, and not Armenia; they are placed where the City of Celenes was afterward built. Likewise in the same description the maketh mention of Myrysus, a River which runneth through part of Phrygia and afterward joyneth it selfe with the River Meander, which is far from the Gordiean Mountaines in Armenia. We may also finde a great mistaking in JOSEPHUS (though out of BEROSUS, who is in effect the Father of this opinion) that JOSEPHUS lets Ararat betwene ARMENIA and PARTHIA, toward ADIABENE, and affirmeth withall, that in the Province of Ceron (by others Kairos and Arnos, so called by reason that the waters have from thence no descent, nor issue out) the people vaunt that they had in those dayes reserved some peices of Noahs Arke. But Parthia toucheth no where upon Armenia; for Armenia bordereth Adiabene, a Province of Assyria: so that all Media and a part of Assyria is betwene Parthia and Armenia. Now whereas the discoverie of the Mountaines Gordiei was first borrowed out of Berosus by Josephus; yet the Text which Josephus citeth out of Berosus differs far from the words of that Berosus, which wandereth up and downe in these dayes, set out by Annins. For Berosus, cited by Josephus, hath these words: Fertur & navigii hujus pars in Armenia apud montem Cordieorum superesse, & quosdam Bitumen inde abstrahum secum reportare, quo vice anniei loci hujus homines ut solent: (which is) It is reported also that a part of this ship is yet remaining in Armenia upon the Gordiean Mountaines; and that diverse do scrape from it the Bitumen or Pitch, and carrying it with them, they use it in stead of an annet. But Annins his Edition

G. n. 8. 14.

Epiph. l. i. conr.  
H. n. f.

Edition of the Fragment of Berosus useth these words: Nam elevata ab aquis in Gordie montis vertice quievit, cujus adhuc dicitur aliqua pars esse, & homines ex illa Bitumen tollere quo maxime utuntur ad expiationem: For the whole Arke being lifted up by the waters, rested on the top of the Gordiean Mountaines, of which it is reported that some parts remaine, and that men doe carry thence of the Bitumen to purge by Sacrifice therewith: so as in these two Texts (besides the difference of words) the name is diversly written. The ancient Berosus writes Gordiei with a (C.) and the Fragment Gordiei with a (G.) the one that the Bitumen is used for a preservative against Poyson or Inchantment; the other in Sacrifice. And if it be said that they agree in the generall, yet it is reported by neither from any certain knowledge, nor from any approved Author: for one of them, useth the word (fertur) the other (dicitur) the one, that so it is reported, the other, that so it is said; and both but by heare-say, and therefore of no authority nor credit. For common bruit is so infamous an Historian, as wise men neither report after it, nor give credit to any thing they receive from it.

Furthermore, these Mountaines which Polomies calls Gordiei, are not those Mountaines which himselfe giveth to Armenia, but he calleth the Mountaines of Armenia, Moschici. These be his own words: Montes Armenie nominantur ii, qui Moschici appellantur, qui protruduntur usque ad superjacentem partem Ponti Cappadocum; & mons qui Paryardes dicitur: The Mountaines of Armenia are they which are called Moschici, stretch along to the higher part of Pontus of the Cappadocians: also the Hill which is called Paryardes: which Mountaines Plinie calleth Paryedri, and both which lye to the North of Gordiei or Baris, Plin. l. 5. c. 9. in 43. and 44. and a halfe; and the Gordiean Mountaines in 39. and a halfe: from the Northernmost of which did the Georgians take their names, who were first Gordians, and then Georgians, who amidst all the strength of the greatest Infidels of Persia and Turkie, doe still remaine Christians. Concerning the other suppositions, that the Mountaines of Gordiei, otherwise Baris, Kardus or Lubar (which Polomies calleth Torgodiaion) are the highest of the World, the same is absolutely false.

## ||. XI.

Of Caucasus, and divers say higher hills than the Armenian.

For the best Cosmographers with other, that have seene the Mountaines of Armenia, find them far inferiour, and under-set to divers other Mountaines even in that part of the World, and else where: as the Mountaine Athos betwene Macedon and Thrace, which Polomies calls Olympus, now called Lucas, (saith Castaldus) is far surmounting any Mountain that ever hath beene seene in Armenia: for it casteth shade three hundred furlongs, which is seven and thirtie miles and upwards: of which Plutarch; Athos ad Plat. Man. umbrat latera Lemnie bovis: Athos shadoweth the Corn of Lemnos. Also the Mount of Olympus in Thessalie, is said to be of that height, as neither the Windes, Clouds or Raine overturn it. Again, the Mountaine of Antandrus in Mysia, not farre from Ida, whence the River Scamandrus floweth, which runneth through Troy, is also of a farre more admiration than any in Armenia, and may be seene from Constantinople. There are also in Mauritania neere the Sea the famous Mountaines of Atlas, of which HERODOTUS: Extat in hoc mari Mons cui nomen Atlas, ita sublimis esse dicitur, ut ad illius verticem oculi mortalium pervenire non possint: Upon this Coast there is a Mountaine, called Atlas, whose height is said to be such, as the eye of no mortall man can discern the top thereof. And if we may believe Aristotle, then are all these inferiour to Caucasus, which he maketh the most notorious both for breadth and height: Caucasus Mons omnium maximus, qui estimum ad ortum sunt, acumine atque latitudine, cujus juga a Soleradiantur usque ad contemina: Arif. Met. cor. l. c. 13. Sound ab ortu: & iterum ab occasu: Caucasus (saith ARISTOTLE) is the greatest Mountaine, both for breadth and height of all those in the North-east, whose tops are lightened by the Sun-beams, usque ad contemina: which is, saith Macrebius betwene the first crowing after midnight and the breake of day: Others affirm, that the top of this Mountain holds the Sun-beams when it is darke in the Valley; but I cannot believe either, for the highest Mountaine of the World knowne, is that of Tenerife in the Canaries: which although it hath nothing to the Westward of it for 1000. Leagues together but the Ocean Sea, yet doth it not enjoy the Sun's company at any such late houre. Besides these Mountaines which Aristotle calleth Caucasus, are those which separate Colchis from Iberia;

Iberia; though (indeed) *Caucasus* doth divide both *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania* from *Sarmatia*: for he acknowledgeth that the River of *Phasis* riseth in the same Mountain, which himself calleth *Caucasus*, and that *Phasis* springeth from those Hills which funder *Colchis* from *Iberia*, falling afterward into *Eufrinus*: which River (it is manifest) yeeldeth it self to the Sea, two degrees to the North of *Trapezum* (now *Trabesunda*) howsoever Mercator bring it from *Paryarden*.

## ||. XII.

Of divers incongruities if in this Story we should take *Ararat* for *Armenia*.

So as it doth first appear, that there is no certainty what Mountain *Ararat* was: for the Books of the *Sybls* set it in *Phrygia*, and *Berosus* in *Armenia*: and as for *Berosus* authority, those men have great want of proofs that borrow from thence.

Secondly, that *Baris* was the highest Hill, and therefore most likely that the Arke grounded thereon, the assertion and supposition have equal credit: for there are many Hills which exceed all those of *Armenia*; and if they did not, yet it doth not follow (as is before written) that the Arke should fit on the highest.

Thirdly, it cannot be proved that there is any such Hill in *Armenia*, or in *verum natura*, as *Baris*: for *Baris* (saith *Hierome*) signifieth high Towers: and so may all high Hills be called indifferently; and therefore we may better give the name of *Baris* to the Hills of *Caucasus* (out of which *Indus* riseth) than to any Hills of *Armenia*. For those of *Caucasus* in the East, are undoubtedly the highest of *Asia*.

Fourthly, the Authors themselves do not agree in what Region the Mountains *Gordæi* stand: for *Ptolomie* distinguisheth the Mountains of *Armenia* from the *Gordæan*, and calleth those of *Armenia* *Mojchici* and *Paryarden*, as aforesaid. Now *Paryarden* is seated near the middle of *Armenia*, out of which on the West-side riseth, *Eufrates*, and out of the East-side, *Araxis*: and the Mountains *Mojchici* are those Hills which disjoin *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania* (now the Country of the *Georgians*) from *Armenia*.

## ||. XIII.

Of the contrary situation of *Armenia*, to the place noted in the Text: and that it is no marvaile that the same Ledge of Hills running from *Armenia* to *India*, should keep the same name all along: and even in *India* be called *Ararat*.

Lastly, we must blow up this Mountain *Ararat* it self, or else we must dig it downe, and carry it out of *Armenia*, or finde it elsewhere, and in a warmer Country, and (withal) set it East from *Shinaar*: or else we shall wound the Truth it self with the weapons of our own vain imaginations.

Therefore to make the mistaking open to every eye, we must understand, that *Ararat* (named by *Moses*) is not any one Hill, so called, no more than any one Hill among those Mountains which divide *Italy* from *France*, is called the *Alpes*: or any one among those which part *France* from *Spain* is the *Pyrenian*; but as these, being continuations of many Hills, keep one name in divers Countries: so all that long Ledge of Mountains, which *Plinie* calleth by one name *Taurus*, and *Ptolomie* both *Taurus*, *Niphates*, *Coatras*, *Coronus*, *Sariphi*, until they encounter and cross the Mountains of the great *Imaus*, are of one general name, and are called the Mountains of *Ararat* or *Armenia*, because from thence or thereabout they seem to arise. So all these Mountains of *Hyrcania*, *Armenia*, *Coraxia*, *Caspia*, *Mojchici*, *Amazonicci*, *Heniochi*, *Scythici*, (thus diversly called by *Plinie* and others) *Ptolomie* calls by one name *Caucasus*, lying between the Seas *Caspium* and *Eufrinus*: as all those Mountains which cut asunder *America*, even from the new Kingdome of *Granado*, to the streight of *Magellan*, are by one name called *Ander*. And as these Mountains of *Ararat* run East and West, so do those marvellous Mountains of *Imaus* stretch themselves North and South; and being of like extent well-neer, are called by the name of *Imaus*, even as *Plinie* called these former Hills *Taurus*, and *Moses* the hills of *Ararat*. The reason of several names given by *Ptolomie*, was thereby the better to distinguish the great Regions and Kingdoms, which these great Mountains bound and dislever; as *Armenia*, *Mesopotamia*, *Affyria*, *Media*, *Susiana*, *Persia*, *Parthia*, *Caramania*, *Aria*, *Margiana*, *Edhrina*, *Sogdiana*, and *Parapanisus*: having

Plinie in his description of Lycia, l. 5. c. 27.

ving all these Kingdoms either on the North or South side of them. For all the mountains of *Asia* (both the less and the greater) have three general names, (to wit) *Taurus*, *Imaus*, and *Caucasus*: and they receive other titles, as they sever and divide particular places and Regions. For these Mountains which funder *Cilicia* from the rest of *Asia* the less on the North side, are called *Taurus*; and those Mountains which part it from *Comagena* (a Province of *Syria*) are called *Amans*: the mountains called *Taurus* running Eastward West, as *Imaus* doth North and South. Through *Taurus* the River of *Eufrates* forceth her passage, leaving the name of *Amans* to the Mountains on her West-bank, and on her East side the Mountains are sometimes known by the name of *Taurus*, (as in *Ptolomie*'s three Tables of *Asia*) and sometimes *Niphates*; (as in the fourth) retaining that uncertain appellation so long as they bound *Armenia* from *Mesopotamia*: and after the River of *Tygris* cutteth them asunder, they then take the name of *Niphates* altogether, until they separate *Affyria* and *Media*; but then they call themselves *Coatras*, though between the upper and nether *Media*, they do not appear, but altogether discontinue. For at *Mazada* in *Media* they are not found, but run through the Easterne *Media* by pieces: in the middle of which Region they call themselves *Oronter*, and towards the East part *Coronus*; out of the Southerne part whereof the River of *Bagradas* riseth, which divideth the ancient *Persian* from *Caramania*: and then continuing their course Eastward by the name of *Coronus*, they give to the *Parthians* and *Hyrcanians* their proper Countries. This done, they change themselves into the mountains of *Sariphi*, out of which riseth the River *Margus*, afterward yeelding her self to *Oxus* (now *Abia*): and drawing now neer their waies end, they first make themselves the South border of *Bactria*, and are then honoured with the Title of *Parapanisus*; and lastly of *Caucasus*, even where the famous River of *Indus*, with his principal companions *Hydaspis* and *Zaradrus*, spring forth and take beginning. And here do these Mountains build themselves exceeding high, to equal the strong Hills called *Imaus* of *Scythia*, which encounter each other in 35, 36, and 37. degrees of Latitude, and in 140. of Longitude: of the which the West parts are now called *Delanuer*, and the rest *Nagract*; and these Mountains in this place only are properly called *Caucasi* (saith *Ptolomie*) that is, between *Parapanisus* and *Imaus*; and improperly, between the two Seas of *Caspium* and *Pontus*.

## ||. XIV.

Of the best Vine naturally growing on the South side of the Mountains *Caucasi*, and toward the East Indies: and of other excellencies of the soile.

Now in this part of the World, it is where the Mountain and River *Janus*, and the Mountain *Nysus* (so called of *Bacchus Nysus* or *Noah*) are found: and on these highest Mountains of that part of the world did *Gorgippus Becanus* conceive that the Ark of *Noah* grounded after the Flood; of all his conjectures the most probable, and by best reason approved. In his *Indoscythia* he hath many good Arguments, though mixt with other fantastical opinions of this subject. And as the same *Becanus* also noteth, that as in this part of the World are found the best Vines: so it is as true, that in the same Line, and in 24, 35, & 36. degrees of Septentrional Latitude, are the most delicate Wines of the World; namely, in *Judea*, *Candia*, and other parts of *Greece*: and likewise in this Region of *Margiana*; and under these Mountains *Strabo* affirmeth, that the most excellent Vines of the World are found; the clusters of Grapes containing two Cubits of length: and it is the more probable, because this place agreeth in Climate with that part of *Palestina*, where the feathers of the land, by *Moses* direction, found bunches of equal bignets at *Escol*.

Numb. 13. 24.

The fruitfulness of this place (to wit) on the South bottome of these Hills, *Curtius* witnesseth. For in *Margiana* neer the Mountains of *Meyus* did *Alexander* feast himselfe and his Army ten daies together, finding the most delicate Wine of all other.

## ||. XV.

The conclusion, with a brief repeating of divers chief points.

And therefore to conclude this opinion of *Ararat*, it is true, that those Mountains do also traverse *Armenia*: yea, and *Armenia* it self sometime is knowne by the name

L. 5. c. 27.

name of *Ararat*. But as *Plinie* giveth to this ledge of high Hills, even from *Cilicia* to *Paropamisus* and *Caucasus*, the name of *Taurus*: and as the Hills of *France* and *Germanie* are called the *Alpes*: and all between *France* and *Spain* the *Pyrenes*: and in *America* the continuation of Hills for 3000 miles together, the *Andes*: so was *Ararat* the general name which *Moses* gave them; the diversity of appellations no otherwise growing, than by their dividing and bordering divers Regions and divers Countries. For in the like case do we call the Sea, which entreth by *Gibraltar*, the *Mediterran* and inland Sea; and yet where it washeth the Coasts of *Carthage*, and over against it, it is called *Tyrrhenum*: between *Italy* and *Greece*, *Ionium*: from *Venice* to *Durazzo*, *Adriaticum*: between *Atheni* and *Asia*, *Aegeum*: between *Sesius* and *Abydus*, *Hellepont*: and afterward *Pontus*, *Tropon*, *the*, and *Bosphorus*. And as in these, so is the Ocean to the North-east part of *Scotland* called *Denealedonycum*: and on this side, the *Brittain* Sea: to the East, the *Germane* and *Baltick*, and then the *Frozen*.

For a final end of this question, we must appeal to that Judge, which cannot erre, even to the Word of Truth, which in this place is to be taken and followed according to the plain sense: seeing it can admit neither distinction, nor other construction than the words bear literally, because they are used to the very same plain purpose of a description, and the making of a true and precise difference of places. Surely, where the sense is plain (and being so understood, it bringeth with it no subsequent inconvenience or contrariety) we ought to be warie, how we fancie to our selves any new or strange exposition; And (withal) to resolve our selves, that every word (as aforesaid) hath his weight in Gods Book. And therefore we must respect and reverence the testimonies of the Scriptures throughout, in such sort as Saint *Augustine* hath taught us touching the Gospel of CHRIST JESUS (which is) *Ne quis aliter accipiat (quod narratum Discipulis Christi) in Evangelio legerit, quam si ipsam manum Dei, quam in proprio corpore gestabat, conspexerit*; That no man otherwise take or understand that which he readeth in the Gospel (the Disciples of Christ having written it) than if he had seen the very hand of the Lord, which he bare in his own body, setting it down.

Gen. 11. v. 2.

The words then of *Moses* which end this dispute, are these: *And as they went from the East, they found a Playne in the land of Shinaar, and there they abode*: which proveth without controversie, that *Nimrod*, and all with him, came from the East into *Shinaar*; and therefore the *Arke* of *Noah* rested and tooke land to the East-ward thereof. For we must remember, that in all places wheresoever *Moses* maketh a difference of Countries, he alwaies precisely nameth toward what quarter of the world the same were seated: as where he teacheth the plantation of *Jochan*, he nameth *Sephar*, a Mount in the East: where he remembreth *Cain's* departure from the presence of God, he addeth; *And Cain dwelt in the land of Nod towards the East-side of Eden*: And when he describeth the Temples and Habitations of *Abraham* after he departed from *Sechem*, he useth these words; *Afterwards removing thence unto a mountain East-ward from Bethel, he pitched his Tents: living Bethel on the West side, and Hai on the East*: and afterward in the ninth Verse of the same Chapter it is written; *And ABRAHAM went forth journeying towards the South*: also when *Ezekiel* prophesieth of *Gog* and *Magog*, he sheweth that these Nations of *Togorma* were of the North quarters: and of the Queene of *Saba* it is written; that she came from the South to visit *SOLOMON*: And the *Magi* (or *wisemen*) came out of the East to offer presents unto Christ. And that all Regions, and these travailes were precisely set downe upon the points of the Compasse and quarters of the world, it is most manifest: for

Gen. 10. 30.

Gen. 4. 16.

Gen. 12. 8.

Ezek. 38. 6.

Matth. 12. 42.

Matth. 2. v. 11.

Eden was due East from *Judeas*, *Saba* South from *Hierusalem*: the way from *Bethel* to *Egypt* directly South; and the *Calocyrians*, the *Tubalines* and *Magogians* inhabited the Regions directly North from *Palestina*, and so of the rest. But *Armenia* answereth not to this description of *Shinaar* by *Moses*. For to come out of *Armenia*, and to arrive in that Valley of *Babylonia*, is not a journeying from the East, nor so near unto the East as the North: for *Armenia* is to the West of the North it selfe; and we must not say of *Moses* (whose hands the holy Ghost directed) that he erred into *calo*, and that he knew not East from west. For the body of *Armenia* standeth in forty three degrees Septentrional, and the North part thereof in forty five; and those *Gordiean* Mountains, whereon it was supposed that the *Arke* rested, stand in fortie one. But *Babylonia*, and the valley of *Shinaar* are situated in thirtie five; and for the Longitude (which maketh the difference betweene East and West) the *Gordiean* Mountaines stand in 75. degrees, and the



the valley of *Shinaar* in 79. and 80. And therefore *Armenia* lieth from *Shinaar* North-west, ninety five degrees from the East; and if *Armenia* had been but North, yet it had differed from the East one whole quarter of the compasse. But *Gregory* and *Hierome* warne us, *In Scripturis minima differentia omitti debet: nam singuli sermones, syllabe, apices, & puncta in divina Scriptura plena sunt sensibus; In the Scriptures the least difference may not be omitted: for every speech, syllable, note, or accent, and point in divine Scriptures are replenished with their meanings.* And therefore seeing *Moses* teacheth us that the children of *Noah* came from the East, we may not believe Writers (of little authority) who also speak by hear-say and by report, *ut feritur, & ut dicitur*, as *Berosus* and *Nicolaus Damascenus*, determining herein without any examination of the Text, at all adventure. But this is infallibly true, that *Shinaar* lyeth West from the place where the Ark of *Noah* rested after the flood; and therefore it first found ground in the East, from whence came the first knowledge of all things. The East parts were first civil, which had *Noah* himself for an instructor: and directly East from *Shinaar* in the same degree of 35. are the greatest grapes, and the best wine. The great Armies also which overtopped in number those millions of *Semiramis*, prove, that those parts were first planted. And whereas the other opinion hath neither Scripture nor Reason sufficient: for my self I build on his words, who in plain terms hath told us, that the sons of *Noah* came out of the East into *Shinaar*, and there they abode. And therefore did the Ark rest on those Eastern mountains, called by one generall name *Taurus*, and by *Moses* the mountains of *Ararat*, and not on those mountaines of the North-west, as *Berosus* first feigned, whom most part of the Writers have followed therein. It was, I say, in the plentiful warm East where *Noah* rested, where he planted the Vine, where he tilled the ground and lived thereon. *Placuit vero Noacho agriculturæ studium, in qua tractanda ipse omnium peritissimus esse dicitur: ob eamque rem sua ipsius lingua Ith-Adamath (hoc est) teluris vir appellatur celebratusque est, The study of Husbandry pleased Noah (saith the excellent learned man Arias Montanus) in the knowledg and order of which, it is said that Noah excelled all men: and therefore was he called in his own language a man exercised in the earth.* Which also sheweth, that he was no wanderer; and that he troubled not himselfe with the contentions beginning again in the World, and among men, but stayed in his destined places, and in that part of the World where he was first delivered out of the prison of the Ark, whereinto God had committed him, to preserve him and mankind.



## CHAP. VIII.

Of the first planting of Nations after the Flood; and. of the Sonnes of  
NOAH, SHEM, HAM, and JAPHET, by  
whom the Earth was re-peopled.

## §. I.

Whether SHEM and HAM were elder than JAPHET.

OF these Sons of *Noah*, which was the eldest, there is a question made. *S. Augustine* esteemed *Shem* for the eldest, *Ham* for the second, and *Japhet* for the youngest: and herein the opinions of Writers are divers. But this we finde every where in the Scriptures, and especially in *Moses*, that there was never any respect given to the eldest in years, but in vertues; as by the examples of *Enoch*, *Abraham*, *Jacob*, and *David*, is made manifest. In a few words, this is the ground of the controverſie; The *Latine* translation, and so the *Geneva*, hath converted this Scripture of *Genesis* the 10. v. 21. in these words: Unto *SHEM* also the Father of all the Sonnes of *HEBER*, and elder brother of *JAPHET*, were children born. But *Junius* agreeing with the *Septuagint*, placeth the same words in this manner: To *SHEM* also the Father of all the Sons of *HEBER*, and brother of *JAPHET* the eldest Sonne, were children borne: So the transposition of the word (elder) made this difference. For if the word (elder) had followed after *Japhet*, as it is in the vulgar translation placed before it, then had it been as plain for *Japhet*, as it is by these translations for *Shem*. Now (the matter being otherwise indifferent) seeing Gods blessings are not tyed to first and last in

Aug. de Civit.  
Dei. l. 16. c. 3



bloud, but to the eldest in piety, yet the arguments are stronger for Japhet than for Shem. And where the Scriptures are plainly understood without any danger or inconvenience, it seemeth strange why any man of judgment should make valuation of conjectural arguments, or mens opinions. For it appeareth that Noah in the five hundredth year of his life, begat the first of his three Sons, *Shem, Ham, and Japhet*; and in the six hundredth year (to wit) the hundredth year following, came the general flood; two years after which, *Shem* begat *Arphaxad*, which was in the year 602. of *Noahs* life, and in the year of *Shem's* life one hundred: so as *Shem* was but 100. years old, two years after the Flood; and *Noah* begat his first borne being 500. years old, and therefore were *Shem* the elder, he had then been an hundred years old at the flood, and in the six hundredth year of *Noahs* life, and not two years after. Which seeing the Scriptures before remembered hath denied him, and that it is also written: *Then NOAH awoke from his wine, and knew what his younger sonne had done unto him (to wit) HAM*; of necessity the first place doth belong to Japhet. This younger son, so converted by the vulgar and *Genea*, *Junius* turns it *filius minimus*, his youngest son; but *S. Chrysostome* takes it other wise, and finds *Cham* to be the middle or second brother, and Japhet the youngest sonne of all: which *Cham* for his disobedience and the contempt of his Father (whose nakedness he derided) was dis-inherited, and lost the preeminence of his birth, as *Esaie* and *Ruben* did. *Peregrinus* conceiveth that *Ham* was called the younger in respect of *Shem* the eldest, but avoweth withall, that the Hebrew hath not that precise difference of younger and youngest, because it wanteth the comparative degree. It is true that *Shem* himself was always named in the first place, yet whereas in the first verse of the tenth Chapter of *Genesis*, *Shem* is accounted before *Japhet*: in the second verse *Moses* leaveth to begin with the issue by *Shem*, and reciteth the children of *Japhet* first. So the first place was given to *Shem* for his election and benediction, and for this weighty respect, that the Hebrew Nation, *Abraham*, the *Prophets*, *David*, and *Christ* our Saviour were descended of him. And therefore, whether we shall follow the vulgar *Pagninus*, and the *Genea*, who agree in this conversion, *SHEM* Frater *JAPHET* major; or with the *Septuagint*, *Ionini* and *Tremelius*, *SHEM* frater *JAPHET* majoris; or with *Peregrinus*, *SHEM* frater *JAPHET* ille magnus: inferring that *Shem* was the great and famous brother of *Japhet*, let the Reader judge. But for ought that I have seen to the contrary, it appeareth to me that *Japhet* was the eldest. For where *Peregrinus* qualifyeth the strength of the former argument, That *Shem's* age at the time of the flood did not agree with the elder ship (with a supposition that the Scriptures took no account of smaller numbers) I do not finde in the Scriptures any such neglect at all: for it is written, that *SHEM* was an hundred years old, and begat *ARPHAXAD* two years after the flood; and again in the 12. verse: So *SHELA* lived after he begat *EBAR*, four hundred and three years, &c. so as the number of two years, of three years, of five years, and afterward of two years, were always precisely accounted.

## §. II.

Of divers things that in all reason are to be presumed, touching the first planting of the world, as that all Histories must yeeld to *MOSES*: that the world was not planted all at once, nor without great direction: and that known great Lords of the first Ages were of the issue of *HAM*.

BUT let us goe unto the Worlds plantation after the flood, which being rightly understood, we shall finde that many Nations have supposed or feigned themselves those Ancestors and Fathers, which never saw or approached the bounds of their Countries, and of whom they are by no way or branch descended. For it is plain in the Scriptures how the sons & issues of *Noah* were distributed, and what Regions were first planted by them, from whence by degrees the rest of the world was also peopled. And if any prophane Author may receive allowance herein, the same must be with this caution, that they take their beginning where the Scriptures end. For so far as the story of nations is therein handled, we must know, that both the truth & antiquity of the books of God find no companions equal, either in age or authority. All record, memory, & testimony of antiquity whatsoever, which hath come to the knowledg of men, the same

have bin borrowed thence, & therefore later than it, as all careful observers of time have noted: among which thus writeth *Eusebius* in the Prologue of his Chronology: *MOSES is found more ancient than all those whom the Grecians make most ancient, as HOMER, HESIOD, and the Trojan Warre; and farre before HERCULES, MUSÆUS, LINUS, CHIRON, ORPHEUS, CASTOR, POLLUX, ÆSCULAPIUS, BACCHUS, MERCURIUS, and APOLLO, and the rest of the Gods of the Nations, their Ceremonies, or holy Rites, or Prophets: and before all the deeds of JUPITER, whom the Greeks have seated in the top and highest Tower of their Divinity.*

For of the three *Jupiters* remembered by *Cicero*, the ancientest was the son of *Æther* whose three sons begotten on *Proserpina*, were borne at *Athenis*, of which *Cecrops* was the first King; and in the end of *Cecrops* time did *Moses* bring the children of *Israel* out of *Egypt*: *Eduxit MOSES populum Dei ex Egypto novissimo tempore CECROPIS Atheniensis Regis*; *MOSES* brought the children of *Israel* out of *Egypt* in the last dayes of *CECROPIS* King of the *Athenians*, saith *S. Augustine*: and yet was not *Cecrops* the Founder of the Citie itself, but *Theseus* long after him. But because the truth hereof is diversly proved, and by many learned Authors, I will not cut asunder the purpose in hand, by alledging many authorities in a needlesse question, but leave it to the proper place.

The Sons of JAPHET were,

Gomer,  
Magog,  
Madai,  
Javan,  
Tubal,  
Mesbach,  
and  
Tirars.

The Sonnes of GOMER were,

Askenaz,  
Ripbath,  
Togorma,

The Sonnes of JAVAN were,

Elisha,  
Tarshis,  
Kittim, and  
Dodanim.

First, we are to consider, that the world after the flood was not planted by imagination, neither had the children of *Noah* wings to fly from *Shinar* to the uttermost border of *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Asia*, in haste, but that these children were directed by a wise Father, who knew those parts of the World before the flood; to which he disposed his children after it, and sent them not as discoverers, or at all adventure, but assigned and allotted to every Son and their issues, their proper parts. And not to hearken to fabulous Authors, who have no other end than to flatter Princes (as *Virgil* did *Augustus* in the fiction of *Aeneas*) or else to glorifie their own nations; Let us build herein upon the Scriptures themselves, and after them upon Reason and Nature. First therefore we must call to mind and consider, what manner of face the Earth every where had in the 130. year after the great inundation; and by comparing those fruitfulest Vallies with our own barren and cold ground, inform our selves thereby, what wonderful Defarts, what impassable fastness of woods, reeds, bryars and rotten grasse, what lakes and standing pools, and what marshes, fens, and bogs, all the face of the Earth (excepting the mountains) was pestered withall. For if in this our Climate (where the dead and destroying Winter depresseth all vegetative and growing Nature, for one halfe of the year in effect) yet in twenty or thirty years, these our grounds would all overgrow and be covered (according to the nature thereof) either with woods, or with other offensive thickets and bushments: much more did all sorts of plants, reeds, and trees, prosper in the most fruitful Vallies, and in the Climate of a long and warm Summer, and having withall the start of 130. years to raise themselves without contemplement.

This being considered, it will appear, that all these people which came into *Shinar*, and over whom *Nimrod* either by order or strength took the Dominion, did after the confusion of Languages, and at such time as they grew to be a mighty people, disperse themselves into the Regions adjoining to the said Valley of *Shinar*, which contained the best part of *Mesopotamia*, *Babylonia*, and *Chaldea*; and from the borders thereof, in time they were propagated; some of them towards the South; others towards the West and North. And although there were allotted to *Shem* many Regions, both East and West from *Shinar*, with the Dominion of *Palestina*, which the *Canaanites* first possessed; yet could he not enjoy the Lot of his Inheritance on the sudden, but by time and degrees. For we finde, that *Abraham*, the true successour of *Shem*, dwelt in

Chaldea at Ur; and from thence (called by God) he rested at Charran in Mesopotamia: from whence after the death of Thare he travelled to Sichem in Palestina: and yet there had passed between Shem and Abraham (reckoning neither of themselves) seven Descents, before Abraham moved out of Chaldea; where, and in Babylonia, all those people by Nimrod commanded, inhabited for many yeares, and whence Nimrod went out into Assyria, and founded Ninive. Indeede the great Masters of Nations (as far as we can know) were, in that Age of the issues of Ham; the blessing of God given by Noah to Shem and Japhet taking lesse effect, untill divers yeares were consumed; and untill the time arrived, which by the wisdom of God was appointed. For of Chus, Mizraim, and Canaan, came the people and Princes, which held the great Kingdomes of Babylonia, Syria, and Egypt for many Descents together.

## §. III.

Of the Isles of the Gentiles in JAPHETS Portion: of BEROSUS his too speedy seating GOMER the sonne of JAPHET in Italy; and another of JAPHETS sons TUBAL in Spaine: and of the Antiquity of Longinque Navigation.

TO begin therefore (where Moses beginneth) with the sonnes of Japheth among whom the Isles of the Gentiles were divided: which division, as well to Japhets sonnes as to the rest which came into Shinaar, was (if the division were made at Phalegs birth) in the year of the World 1757. or 1758. and (by that account) in the yeares after the Flood one hundred and one, of which question elsewhere.

The habitations proper to the sons of Japhet were the Isles of the Gentiles, which include all Europe, with all the Islands adjoining, and compassing it about: Europe being also taken for an Island, both in respect that the Sea Hellespont and Aegeum, Bosporus and Euxinus cut it off from the great Continent of Asia, as also because Europe it self is (in effect) surrounded with water, saving that it is fastned to Asia by the North, for it hath those Seas before named to the East, the Mediterran to the South and South-west, the Ocean to the West, and Brittish, Germane, and Baltick Sea, with that of Glaciale to the North North-east, and North-west. Besides, it hath about it all the Cyclades or Isles lying between Greece and the lesser Asia, and the Isles of Rhodes, Cyprus, Crete, or Candia, Sicilia, Corsica, Sardinia, Malta, the Isles of Brittainie and Zealand, with their young ones adjacent.

This partition and portion of Japheth, with the part which he held in Asia, and the North, which was also very great, answereth to that blessing of God by Noah, *Dilata Deus JAPHETH; Let God spread abroad (or increase the Posterity of) JAPHETH, and let him dwell in the Tents of SHEM.* For though Junius here useth the word (*allicia*) and not *dilatet*: and the Geneva perswade; yet the Septuagint have *dilatet* or *amplificet*; and such was the blessing given to our Fathers, which God promised to Abraham, and his seed for ever. And the dwelling in the Tents or Tabernacles of Shem was a blessing by God to the Posterity of Japheth: noting not only an enlargement of Territories, but that thereby they should be made participant of Gods Church. But to come to Japhets Iounes, of whom Gomer is the eldest. This Gomer (if we may believe Berosus and Ammian, whose authority the greatest number of all our late Writers have followed) did in the tenth year of Nimrods Reign depart from Babylonia, and planted Italy: which also Functius confirmeth in these words, *Anno decimo NIMRODI, &c. In the tenth year of NIMRODS Reigne, GOMERUS GALLUS planted a Colonie in that Land afterward called Italy: and in the twelfth yeare of the same NIMRODS Reigne TUBAL seated himselfe in Austria in Spaine (now called Biscay) which was in the 140. and 90 in the 142. yeares after the Flood, according to BEROSUS.* But this opinion is very ridiculous. For before the confusion of Tongues, the children of Noah did not separate themselves, at least so many of them as came with Nimrod into Shinaar. Let us therefore consider with reason, what time the building of such a City & Tower required, where there was no prepared matter, nor any ready meanes to performe such a work as Nimrod had erected (and as Functius himself out of his Author Berosus witnesseth) *ad altitudinem & magnitudinem montium; To the height and magnitude of the mountains.* Sure that both this City and Tower was almost builded, the Scriptures witness: but the

the Lord came downe to see the Citie and Tower which the Sonns of men had builded. Let us then but allow a time sufficient for the making of brick to such a Work, of the greatest height (and therefore of circuit and foundation answerable) that ever was. For where the universal Flood covered the highest Mountains fifteen Cubits; *Let us build us a Citie and Tower* (saith NIMROD) *whose top may reach unto the Heavens;* meaning, that they would raise their work above fifteen Cubits higher than the highest Mountaine, otherwise they could not assure themselves from the fear of a second inundation: a great part whereof was finished before it fell, and before they left the work. They also began this building upon a ground, the most oppressed with waters of all the world; as by the great ruine which those waters, forcibly over-bearing and over-flowing, made in the time of the succeeding Emperours, is made manifest, approved also by the Prophet Jeremy, speaking of Babylonia in these words: *Thou that dwellest upon many waters.* It cannot be doubted but that there needed a substantiall foundation for so high a, raised building on a marshy ground: and to which, Glycas upon Genesis giveth forty yeares. For it seemeth, that the Tower was near finished when God overthrew it: it being afterward written, *So the Lord scattered them from thence upon all the Earth, and they left to build the City.* Out of which place it may be gathered (because the Tower is not then named) that they very near had performed the work of their supposed defence, which was the Tower: and that afterward they went on with the City adjoining, wherein they inhabited. It is also to be noted, that till such time as this confusion seized them (whereupon the Tower was thrown down) these nations did not disperse themselves: for from thence the Lord scattered them upon all the Earth, (that was) when they perceived not one anothers speech. Now to think that this work in the newnesse of the World (wanting all instruments and materials) could be performed in ten yeares; and that Tubal and Gomer in the same year could creep through 3000. miles of Desert, with Women, Children, and Cattell: Let those light believers, that neither tye themselves to the Scripture, nor to reason, approve it, for I doe not. And if the Arke of Noah was 100. yeares in building, or but near such a time, (and then) when the World had stood 1556. yeares, it were more than foolishnesse and madnesse it self, to think that such a work as this could be performed in ten; when the World (from the flood to the arrival at Babel, and beginning of this building there) had but 131. yeares; and whereof they had spent some part in travelling from the East. Again, if all Asia set to their helping hands in the building of the Temple of Diana, and yet they consumed in that Work 400. yeares (or be it but halfe that time) and in such an Age as when the World flourished in all sorts of Artificers, and with abundant plenty of materials & carriages: This work of the Tower of Babel could hardly (with all the former wants supposed) be erected in those few yeares remembred. And for conclusion, let all men of judgment weigh with themselves how impossible it was for a nation or family of men, with their Wives, Children, and Cattell, to travaile 3000. miles through Woods, Bogs, and Desarts, without any Guide or Conductor; and we shall finde it rather a work of 100. yeares than of 100. dayes. For in the West Indies, of which the Spaniards have the experience, in those places where they found neither path nor guide, they have not entred the Country ten miles in ten yeares. And if Nimrods people spent many yeares by the account before remembred in passing from the East India, or the higher part thereof, which standeth in 115. degrees of Longitude, untill they came into Shinaar, which lyeth in 79. degrees (the distance between those places containing 36. degrees, which makes 720. leagues, which is 2160. miles) and did all the way keep the mountains and hard grounds; then the difference between Babylonia and Biscay is much more: for the body of Biscay lyeth in ten degrees, and Babylonia or Shinaar, (as aforesaid) in 79. so the length of way from Shinaar to Austria or Biscay is 69. degrees, which make 1380. leagues, or of miles 4140. And therefore if Nimrod took divers yeares to finde Shinaar, which was but 2160. miles: or (supposing that the Ark rested in Armenia) little above 400. miles: there is no cause to the contrary, but to allow as many yeares to Gomer and Tubal to travaile 3000. miles, to Countreies less known unto them by far, than the Land of Shinaar was to Nimrod. For Paradise was known to Noah before the Flood: and so was the Region of Eden by Moses afterward remembred; but what he understood of most part of the World else it is unknowne. And therefore did Junius ill advise himselfe to plant Gomer in Italy, and Tubal in Spaine, in the tenth and twelfth of Nim-

114.65.0.8.

roads Reigne: shall the Earth be brought forth in one day, or shall a Nation be borne in one day? But it may be objected, That the Sons of Japheth might come by Sea, and so save this great travail through Deserts by Land: But we never read of any Navigation in those dayes, nor long after. Surely he that knoweth what is to imbarke to great a people as we may justly suppose those Conductors carried with them; will not easily believe that there were any Vessels in those daies to transport Armies, and (which) their care, tell, by whose hands they lived, and fed their children: For milk and fruit were the banqueting times of our Fore-Fathers: And in the eldest times, even the Kings and Fathers of Nations valued themselves by the Herds and numbers of their Cattell: who had Flocks of Sheep, and great Drives, and Herds of their owne, and their own Shepherds and Herdsmen. Now if Tubal had past by Sea from any part of Palestine, Syria, or Cilicia, he might have made good choice within the Streights, and not have overgone Grando, Valencia, and other Provinces in that Tract: past the Streights of Gibraltar, disdained all Andalusia and Portugal, with all those goodly Ports and Countries, and have sought out the iron, woody, and barren Country of the world (called Biscay) by a long and dangerous Navigation. But before the journey of the Argonauts, there were scarce any Vessels that durst cross the Seas in that part of the World: and yet that which Japheth had (if the Tale be true) was but a Galley, and a poore one (God knows) and perchance such as they use this day in Ireland: which although it carried but four and fifty Pullengers, yet it was far greater than any of the former times: *Erant autem parva navicularum usque*: For in former times they used very small Vessels. I deny not but that the Tyrians gave themselves of old to far-off Navigations, whence Tubal ascribed the invention of Ships to them:

Died. Sicul. 14.  
c. 4. fol. 115.Tibull. Eleg. 7.  
Strabo. l. 15.

Prima ratam mentis credere docta Tyros.

Tyros knew first how Ships might use the Wind.

Died. Sicul. 14.  
Plin. l. 7. cap. 56.

Thucid.

Plin. l. 7. c. 56.  
Euseb. de prep.  
Evangel. c. 1.  
Tertul. de Coron.  
mil.

And for those Boats called *longe naves*, or Gallies, Pliny saith that *Egeas* ascribed the device to *Paralus*: and *Philostephanus* to *Jason*: *Ctesius* to *Samyras*, and *Sophamus* to *Semiramis*: *Archimachus* to *Aegon*: to which invention the *Erythraei* are said to have added certain numbers of Oares: and then *Antiochus the Corinthian* to have increased them: the *Carthaginians*, afterwards to have brought them to foure Banks: the *Quings*, *Rent*, first to have been used by *Nesibith* the *Salaminian*, with which Vessels in those parts of the World, the *Romanes* served themselves in the *Punic* War. But these be perhaps but the partialties of Writers, on their ignorance. For there are that as constantly cast the devising of these Gallies on *Seiosiris*, though *Semiramis* used them in the passage of her Army over *Indus* in *Abrahams* time. So it is said, that *Danaus* was the first that brought a Ship into Greece: and yet the *Samothebricans* challenge the invention; and yet *Tertullian* (on the contrary) gives it to *Minerva*: others to *Neptune*; *Thucydides* to the *Corinthians*. And so ignorant were the people of those Ages, as the Egyptians used to coast the shores of the Red Sea upon rafts, devised by King *Erythrus*: and in the time of the *Romanes*, the *Britani* had a kinde of Boat (with which they cross the Seas) made of small twigs, and covered over with leather: of which kind I have seen at the Dingle in Ireland, and elsewhere. *Navis excorior circumfusa in Oceano Britannico* (saith *Tector*;) of which *Lucan* the Poet:

*Primum cana salix, madefacta vimine parvam  
Texitur in puppim, cesosq; induta juvenco,  
Velloris patiens tumidum impexerat amnem.  
Sic Ventus stagnante Pado, susq; Britannus  
Navigat Oceano.*

The moistned Oser of the hoary Willow  
Is woven first into a little Boat:  
Then cloath'd in Bullocks hide upon the billow  
Of a proud River, lightly doth it float  
Under the Waterman:  
So on the Lakes of over-swelling Pae  
Sailes the Venian: and the Britain so  
On th' out-spread Ocean.

And

And although it cannot be denyed, when *Noah* by Gods inspiration was instructed in so many particulars concerning the *Arche*; that then many things concerning Navigation were first revealed; yet it appears that there was much difference between the *Arche* of *Noah*, and such Ships as were for any long Navigation. Very ancient Stories shew, that it was long after these times, ere any durst presume upon any long voyages to Sea; at least with multitudes of Women, and Children, and Cattel: as also a common reason can tell us, that even now when this Art is come to her perfection, such Voyages are very troublesome and dangerous. So as it doth appeare, that there was not in that Age of *Nimrodians* Ship, for use of Ships fit for long Navigation: For if *Gomer* and *Tubal* had passed themselves and their people by Sea, the exercise of Navigation would not have beene dead for so many hundred yeares after. Leaving therefore the fables to their Fables, and all minde to their fancies, who have cast Nations into Countries far off, I know not how, I will follow herein the Relation of *Moses* and the Prophets: to which Truth there is joyned both Nature, Reason, Policy, and Necessitie: and to the rest, neither probability, nor possibility.

## §. IV.

Of Gog and MAGOG, TUBAL, and MESHECH, seated first about Asia the lesse; out of EZECHIEL, CAP. 38. 39.

Now although many learned and reverend men have formed (I know not where by led) a Plantation of the World, which also hath been and is received; yet I hope I may be excused, if I differ a together from them in many particulars. Certainly, that great Learned man of this latter Age, *Arius Montanus* was also in some things much mistaken: and for *Josephus*, as he hath many good things, and is a Guide to many errors withall; so was he in the Plantation of the World very grosse and fabulous; whereby both *Eusebius*, *Hierosolymitanus*, *Epiphanius*, and others, that have taken his testimonies for current, have beene by him farre misled. But the better to conceive what Regions of the World *Gomer* the first sonne of *Japheth* posselt, as also *Tubal*, it is needfull to begin with *Magog*; because the Scriptures take most knowledge of *Gog* and *Magog*: which two names have troubled many Commentators, saith *Matthei Beroaldus*; who hath laboured herein with great diligence; and whom (of all that ever I read) I find most judicious in the examination of this Plantation. He takes authoritie from the Prophet *Ezechiel* chiefly, who in the 38. and 39. Chapters directeth us, what Nations the *Gomerians*, *Tubalines*, and *Togormians* were, together with the *Magogians*: of which *Gog* was Prince or Chief Conductor in their Attempts against *Israel*. Besides the portions of Europe, and the North-east parts of the greater Asia, which *Japheth* himselfe posselt, all Asia the lesse was peopled by them. And that those of the Issue of *Japheth* (whom *Ezechiel* speakes of) were seated hereabout, it may best appeare, if we consider the circumstances of the place, and the dependencie upon the former Prophecie in the 37. Chapter. For in that 37. Chapter, *Ezechiel* prophesieth of the raising of the two Kingdomes of *Israel* and *Juda*, after their deliverie from captivity:

By which Prophecie of *Ezechiel*, it appeareth, that God purposed together together his people, to give life to dead bones, & to rule them by one Prince. For to that purpose it is written, AND DAVID my Servant shall be King over them, and they shall have one Sheepheard, (that is) they shall be united as they were in *David's* time. Hereupon in the 38. Chapter, *Ezechiel* prophesieth against those Nations, which should seeke to impeach this Union, and disturb the people of *Israel*, whom God purposed to receive to grace, and promised to restore. And so in the same Chapter are those Nations coupled together, which infected the *Israelites* after their returne, and sought to subject them: all which were the Subjects or Allies of *Gog*, Prince of the *Magogians*, of *Calosyrians*, next bordering *Palestina*, or the holy Land, followed also by the rest of the Nations of Asia the lesse, which lay North from *Judea*. The words of *Ezechiel* are these: Son of man, set thy face against *Gog*, and against the Land of *MAGOG*, the chiefe Princes of *MESHECH* (or *MOSCOCH*) and *TUBAL*: and afterward; Behold, I come against the chiefe Princes of *MESHECH* and *TUBAL*: and in the sixth verse; *GOMER* and all his Bands, and the House of *TOGORMA* of the North quarters. Herein *Ezechiel* having first delivered the

In Exech.

L. de Fide.

Strab. lib. 13.

Suid. Col. 107.

Jen. in Exech. 38

Strab. lib. 16.

the purpose of his Prophecie, teacheth what Nations they were that should in vanitie assayle *Israel*. He joyneth them together under their Prince *Gog*, and sheweth that their habitations were on the North quarters of *Juda*, and how feared and joyned together. *Gog* signifieth in the Hebrew (saith Saint Hierome) *tectum* or *covering of a house*; and Pin-  
in upon Ezechiel affirmeth, that by *Gog* is meant *Antichrist*: for (saith he) *Antichristus* *est* *Diaboli tegumentum sub specie humani: 1. ut Antichristus shall be the covering of the Devil under humane forme*. He addeth, that *Magog* is as much to say as *Gog*: the Letter (M) being an Hebrew Preposition, and importeth as much as *of*, *from*: so he taketh *Magog* for those people which follow *Antichrist*. So far *Vintus*; at least in this amisse, that he expoundeth *Magog* not for any one person, but for a Nation: with which agree-  
eth this observation of *Beroaldus*, *Magog* (saith he) in Hebrew is written *Ham-Magog*, which sheweth *Magog* to be a Region or Nation: for the Letter (H) which is used but for an *Emphasis* (which the Hebrewes call *Heliajedia*) is never added to proper names of men, but often to place. So as *Gog* was Prince of that Nation (called either *Magog*, or, according to others, the people of *Gog*) also Prince of *Meshech*, (or *Mosch*) and of *Tubal*: as by the first Verse of the 29 Chapter is made manifest: *Behold I come against thee Gog the chiefe Prince of MESHECH and TUBAL*. This must needs be meant by the Suc-  
cessors of *Selencus Nicanor*, who did not (as other conquering Nations) seeke to make the *Jewes* their Tributaries only, but indeavoured by all means, and by all kinde of violence to extinguish the Religion it selfe (which the Hebrewes profest) and the acknow-  
ledging of one true God: and to force them to worship and serve the mortall and rotten gods of the Heathen; of which nothing remained but the very name, and dead Images. Saint *Ambrose* and *Isidore* take *Gog* for the Nation of the *Goths*: belike, because they invaded *Europe*, and sacked *Rome*, and many other places and Cities thereabout. *Hermolus Barbarus* out of *Pomp. Mela* drives the *Turkes* from the *Scythians*, esteemed *Magogians* of *Gog*. Many take *Gog* for the proper name of a Man: others of a Region: others for a Nation inhabiting a Region, as *Junius*, who sayes that *Gog* is the name of a Nation, denominated from him whom the *Greekes* Stories call *Cyges*: who in former time having slain *Candaules* the *Lydian*, gave his owne name to that Nation, thence after called *Cygades*: and thereof also the *Cygan* Lake; which Lake *Strabo* also findeth in *Lydia*, (of which *Cyges* was King) fortie Furlongs from *Sardis*. *Plinie* calleth it *Cyganus fluvium*. *Herodotus* and *Nicanor* set it about the Rivers of *Hillur*, and *Mander*; but the difference is not great. *Marius Niger* maketh mention of this *Cyges* King of *Lydia*: who after he had subdued the Countrey about the River *Rhodus* which runneth into the *Hellepont*, called the Promontorie *Trapesa* after his owne name *Cyges*. These Opinions doe also seeme to strengthen that of *Junius*. For *Magog*, saith he, is that part of *Asia* the lesse, which *Halyattes* obtained, and after him his Son *Croesus*; who (as *Junius* further notes) having mastered all those Regions as farre South as *Libanus*, in that Border built the Citie *Gigarta* or *Gogkarta* (which in the Syrian signifieth the Citie of *Gog*) seated in *Celofyria*, whose people were the ancient Enemies of the *Jewes*.

Now that *Magog* is found in *Celofyria*, *Plinie* affirmeth, saying; *Celofyria* habet *Bambycen*, que alio nomine *Hierapolis* vocatur: *Syrus* vero, *Magog*; *Celofyria* habet in it *Bambyce*, which by another name is called *Hierapolis*, but of the *Syrians*, *Magog*. He further telleth us that the monstrous Idoll *Atergatis*, called by the *Greekes* *Dereeto*, was here worshipped. *Lucian* makes mention hereof, saying, that the Citie had anciently another name, which he yet expresseth not; forbearing perhaps the word *Magog*, as founding nothing elegantly in the *Greeke*. But if we may believe *Strabo*, then was *Edessa* in *Mesopotamia* the same *Bambyce* or *Hierapolis*, where the same Idoll was worshipped. *Ortelius* is doubtful whether one of these Authors did not mistake the place of this *Bambyce* or *Hierapolis*. It may well enough be, that the same name and Religion was common to them both. Certaine it is, that both of them lay due North from *Palestina*, and were both subject unto the Kings of the Race of *Selencus*. Now I do not condemne the Opinion of *Hermolus Barbarus* following *Josephus*, but grant that perhaps *Magog* might also be the Father of the *Scythians*; notwithstanding that in this place, where *Gog* is made the Prince of *Magog*, the Nations of *Celofyria*, and the North parts adjoining be meant by *Magog*: for by a latter Plantation from these parts might bee propagated into *Scythia*. Yet it is not to be denied, that the *Scythians*

in old times coming out of the North-east walked the better part of *Asia* the lesse, and posselt *Celofyria*, where they built both *Scythopolis* and *Hierapolis*, which the *Syrians* call *Magog*. And that to this *Magog* *Ezechiel* had reference, it is very plain: for this Citie *Hierapolis* or *Magog* standeth due North from *Judea*, according to the words of *Ezechiel*, that from the North quarters those Nations should come. For as the Kings of the South which infested the *Israelites* were the *Ptolomies*, Kings of *Egypt*: so those of the North were the Kings of *Asia* and *Syria*, the Successors of *Selencus*, the Successors of *Alexander Macedon*. *Gulielmus Tyrim* thinks that this *Hierapolis* is that *Rages*, mentioned in the Storie of *Tobias*. *Plinie* takes it not only to have been called *Bambyce*, as we have  
said, but also *Edessa*: not that by *Euphrates*; but another of the same name: now the known name is *Aleppo*: for so *Belonius* expounds this *Hierapolis*, or *Magog*. This Citie had the Title of Sacred, as the Sacred Citie, (for so the word *Hierapolis* signifieth) yet was it a place of most detested Idolatry, and wherein was worshipped the Idoll of the Mermayde *Atergatis*, or *Atergits*, according to *Plinie*, which the *Greekes* call *Dereeto*.

If then we confer the words of *Ezechiel* in the third verse of the thirty eight Chapter, wherein he joyneth together *Gog*, *Meshech* and *Tubal*; and withal remember that *Hierapolis* was the Citie of *Magog*, which also is seated directly North from *Judea*: with whom also *Ezechiel* coupleth *Gomer*, and all his bands of the North quarters; we may (as I conceive) safely conclude, that these Followers and Vassals of *Gog* (which were Northern Nations in respect of *Judea*) were not the *Gomerians* of *France*, nor the *Tubalines* of *Spain*, but a people of the lesser *Asia*, and *Celofyria*: and therefore that the opinions of *Berosus*, *Iosephus*, and whosoever else hath followed them therein, are to be rejected. But if *Iosephus* refer himself to later times, and think that some *Colonic* of the *Tubalines* might from *Iberia* and *Asia* passe into *Spain* (to wit) from that piece of Land between *Colchis* (or *Mengrelia*) and *Albania*, (most part posselt by the *Georgians*) then is his judgement of better allowance. For without any repugnancy of opinions, it may be granted, that in process of time these people might from their first habitation, pass into the Countries neer the *Euxine* Sea, and from thence in after-Ages into *Spain*.

*Iosephus* makes mention of the *Iberi*, saying, that they were anciently called *Thobolers*; as of *Tubal*; from whence (saith *Iustine*) they passed into *Spaine* to search out the mines of that Region: having belike understood that it was a Southerly Countrie, and Mountainous. For it seemeth that the *Tubalines* called *Calybes* lived altogether by the exchange of Iron, and other Metals, as *Apollonius* witnesseth in these following Verses, telling how the *Argonantes* did visit them:

*Hec gens tellurem rigido non vertit aratro,  
Sed ferri venas scindit sub montibus altis:  
Mercibus hæc mutat, quæ vitæ alimenta ministrant.*

The *Calybes* plough not their barren soyle,  
But undermine high Hills for Iron Veins:  
Changing the purchase of their endless toyle  
For Merchandize, which their poor lives sustains.

But it is more probable, that *Spain* was first peopled by the *Africans*, who had ever since an affection to return thither, and to re-people it anew. This appeared by the *Carthaginians* of old, who were easily drawn to pass over the Straights into that Country; and after by the Moors who held *Granado*, and the South parts eight hundred yeers, till the time of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*. And either of these opinions are more probable, than that in the twelfth yeere of *Ninrods* Reigne, *Tubal* past into *Spaine*, and therein built Saint *Quail*: a poor Town, and a poor device, God knows. Certaine it is, that we must finde *Moshech* or *Meshech*, and *Tubal* Neighbours, and *Gomer* and *Togarma* not far off, or else we shall wrong *Ezechiel*: for he called *Gog* the Leader or Prince of *Meshech* and *Tubal*, and maketh *Gomer* and *Togarma* their assistants. And that *Meshech* inhabited *Asia*, *Junius* (though he followed *Berosus*) confesseth, for these be his words: *MESACUS, qui à MOSE MESECH, priscos Mesios ab Adula monte usque ad Ponticam regionem posuit: hæc regio postea Cappadocia dicta est, in qua urbs Mæsica, &c. hæc est prima MAGOG principalis; MESACUS, whom MOSES calleth MESECH, placed the ancient Mesians*

Mesians from the Mount Adulas, unto the Coasts of Pontus. This Region was afterward called Cappadocia, in which is the Towne Mazica, &c. this is the principall Countrey of MAGOG. And this doth Annus also avow, and yet forgets that Gog was Prince both of Mesch and Tubal; and therefore that the one was a Nation of Spaniards, the other of Cappadocians, is very ridiculous; Spain lying directly West, & not North from Indea. Also Ezechiel in the 27. Chapter, where he prophesieth of the destruction of Tyre, nameth Mesch and Tubal joyntly. And for a final prooffe, that these Nations were of a Northern Neighbour Land (how farr soever stretched) Ezechiel in the 38. Chapter makes them all Horsemen. *Thou, and much people with thee, all shall ride upon Horses, even a great multitude and a mightie.* Then if any man beleve that these troupes came out of Spain over the Pyrenes, and first passed over a part of France, Italie, Hungarie, and Sarmatia, and imbarqued againe about the Hellespont, or else compassed all Pontus, and Euxinus, to come into the lesser Asia, which is halfe the length or compass of the then known World; he may be called a strong beleever, but he shall never be justified thereby. But on the contrarie, it is knowne, that Seleucus was a Province neighbouring Palestina or Indea, and that Hierapolis (or Magog) joyned unto it: whose Princes commanded all Syria, and Asia the lesse, (namely, the Seleucida) and held it, till Scipio Asiaticus overthrew Antiochus the Great: after which they yet posselt Syria till the time of Tigranes: and whether Mesch be in Cappadocia, or under Iberia, yet is it of the Tubalines, and one and the same Dominion.

Of Gomer the like may be said. First, he seated himselfe with Togorma, not far from Magog and Tubal, in the borders of Syria and Cilicia. Afterward he proceeded further into Asia the lesse; and in long tract of time his valiant Issue filled all Germany, refted long in France and Brittainie, and possessed the utmost borders of the earth, accomplishing (as Melancthon well notes) the signification of their parents name, which is *Vimosa bordering*. But when these borderers wanted further place, wherein they might exonerate their swelling multitudes that were bounded in by the great Ocean, then did they returne upon the Nations occupying the Countries, through which they had formerly passed, oppressing first their Neighbours, afterwards the people more remote. Hereupon it was (as the worthy restorer of our Antiquities M. William Camden hath noted) that they were called *Cimbri*, which in their old Language doth signifie Robbers; necessity enforcing them to spoyle their Neighbours, to whom in their originall they were as neere joyned, as afterwards in the feates which they possessed. For that the Warlike nations of Germany were in elder Ages accustomed to be beaten by the Gauls, the authoritie of Caesar affirming it, is prooffe sufficient. But in times following they pursued richer Conquests, and more easie though further distant, by which (to omit their other enterprises not here to be spoken of) they were drawne at length into Asia the lesse, and occupied those parts, which had formerly bene held by their Progenitours. I say not that they claymed those Lands as theirs by Descent; for likely it is, that they knew little of their owne Pedigree. Neyther can any man therefore deny, that they were of old seated in Asia, because in late Ages they returned thither; unless he will think, that all those Nations which from far parts have invaded and conquered the Land of Shinar, may by that Argument be proved not to have issued from thence at the first.

Now concerning Samother, for his excellent wisdom surnamed *Dix*, whom Annus makes the Brother of Gomer and Tubal (which Brother, Moses never heard of, who speaks his knowledge of Japhets sons) they must finde him in some old Poet: for *Fundius*, a great Berosian, confesseth: *Quis hic Samothies fuerit incertum est; Who this Samother was, it is uncertain;* neither is there any proof that he was that same *Dix*, whom Caesar saith the Gauls suppose to be their Ancestor; yea, and *Vignier* confesseth with *Fundius*: *Mays on ne scayt qui ile estoit; No man knows who he was.*

## §. V.

Against the fabulous Berosus' his fiction, that the Italian Janus was Noah.

BUT before I go on with Noah his Sonnes, I thinke it is necessarie to disprove the fiction which Annus hath of Noah himselfe; an invention (indeed) very ridiculous, though warrantad (as hee hath wrested) by those Authors of whose

himselfe hath Commented: as the Fragment of Berosus, Fabius, Pictor, Cato, Lavinius and others. For Annus seeks to persuade us, that Noah (surnamed Janus) was the same which founded Genoa, with other Cities in Italie, wherein he lived 92 yeeres. This to disprove, by Moses silence, is a sufficient argument to me, if there were nothing else to disprove it. For if he vouchsafed to remember the building of Babel, Erec, Achad, Chalne and Nineve by Nimrod, Noah was a man of too great make to be forgotten, with all the acts he did in 92 yeeres. But it were a needlesse labour for me to disprove the authoritie of that Berosus, on whom Annus groundeth, seeing so many learned men have so demonstratively proved that Fragment to be counterfeited. Besides that, Tavianus the Assyrian, in his Oration against the Greekes, avoweth, that the ancient and true Berosus wrote onely three Bookes, dedicated to Antiochus, the successor of Seleucus Nicator: but Annus hath devised five Bookes, wherewith he honoureth Berosus. And whereas Berosus handled only the estate of the Chaldeans and Assyrians, Annus hath filled this Fragment with the businesse of all the World. And if we may beleve Eusebius better than Annus, then all the Kings of the Latines (before Aeneas) consumed but 150. yeeres: whereas no man hath doubted, but that from Noah to Aeneas arrivall into Italy there past 1126, (after the least rate of the Hebrew account) and (after Codoman) 1291. For Janus (who was the first of their Kings) lived at once with Ruth, who married Booz in the worlds year (as some reckon) 2717, after the Flood, 1064, and Noah dyed 350. yeeres after the Flood: and so there past betwene Janus of Italie and Noah surnamed Janus 704. yeeres. For Saturnus succeeded Janus, Picus after Saturnus, Faunus after Picus, and Latinius followed Faunus: which Latinius lived at once with Tautanes the 27. King of Assyrias with Pelasgus of Peloponnesus; with Demophoon of Athens; and Sampson Judge of Israel. Now all these five Kings of the Latines having consumed but one hundred and fiftie yeeres, and the last of them in the time of Sampson: then reckoning upwards for one hundred and fiftie yeeres, and it reacheth Ruth, with whom Janus lived.

True it is, that the Greekes had their Janus; but this was not Noah: so had they Ion the son of Xuthus, the son of Deucalion, from whom they draw the Iones, who were indeed the children of Iavan, the fourth son of Japheth. For the vulgar Translation (where the Hebrew word is Iavan) writes Greece, and the Septuagint, Hellas; which is the same. So had they Medus the son of Madai, whom they make the Parent of the Medes though they were descended of a farre more ancient Father, (to wit) Madai the third son of Japheth.

Lastly, we see by a true experience, that the British Language hath remained among us above 2000. yeeres, and the English speech ever since the invasion of the Angles, and the same continuance have all Nations observed among themselves, though with some corruption and alteration. Therefore it is strange if either Noah (by them called Janus) had left in Italie his Grand-child Gomer after him, or Tubal in Spaine, that no plaine resemblance of the Hebrew, Syriac, or Scythian (which no time could have quite extinguished) should have bene found in the Languages of those Countries. For which reasons we doubt not but these personall Plantations of Janus, Gomer, Tubal, &c. in Italie, Spaine, or France, are merely fabulous. Let the Italians therefore content themselves with the Gracian Janus which commanded them and planted them, and who preceded the fall of Troy but 150. yeeres (saith Eusebius) which was in the time of Latinius, the fift King: which also Saint Augustine and Iustine confirme: and this agreeeth with reason, time, and possibilitie. And if this be not sufficient to disprove this vanity, I may out of themselves adde thus much: That whereas some of them make Vesta (others Camesma) the wife of this Janus, who instituted the holy Fire of the Vestal Virgins in Rome, the Latines and Romans taking from Janus all their Idolatrous and Heathenish Ceremonies: there is no man so impious, as to beleve that Noah himselfe (who is said by Moses to have walked with God, to be a just man, and whom God of all Mankind made choice of) could be either ignorant of the true and only God, or so wicked and ungratefull, to set up or devise any Heathen, Salvage, or Idolatrous adoration, or have instituted any Ceremonie, contrary to that which he knew best pleasing to God himselfe.

## §. VI.

That GOMER also and his son TOGORMA of the Posterity of JAPHETH, were first seated about Asia the lesse: and that from thence they spread Westward into Europe, and Northward into Sarmatia.

TO turne now to the sons of Noah, and the Worlds Plantation after the Flood: therein I observe, that as both reason and necessitie taught them; so, when they multiplied in great numbers, and dispersed themselves into the next Countries bordering to their first habitations, and from thence sent forth Colonies elsewhere, it was in such a manner as that they might repaire to each other, and keepe intelligence by River: because the Land was yet Desert, and over-prest with Woods, Reeds, Bogs, and rotten Marishes. As when Nimrod seated in Babylonia, Chus took the South part of Chaldaea, downe the River of Gehon, by which he might passe to and fro from Babylon to his own Plantation: those also, which were of the race of Shem, inhabiting at Ur or Orcho near the Lakes of Chaldaea, might by the same river get up to Babylon, and receive succour from thence. All which Tract of Land upon Gehon Southward, Moses in the description of Paradise calleth the Land of Chus; because the Dominion and Empire, was then in the hands of Nimrod a Chusite, by whom the children of Shem (which came into that Valley and stayed not in the East) were for a while oppressed, till God afterward by the seed of Abraham made them his owne Nation and victorious. Havilah, the brother of Nimrod, and son of Chus, tooke both Bankes of Tygris, especially on the East side of the River: by which River his people might also passe to and fro to Babel.

The Imperiall seat of which Region of Havilah or Susian, was anciently called Chusian or Chusan, afterward Susa. Chus himselfe tooke the Bankes of Gehon, and planted those Countries Westward, and South-westward towards Arabia the Stony, and the Desert, where Ptolomie placeth the Citie of Chusida, first Chusita.

Seba, and Sheba, with the rest that planted Arabia felix, had Tygris, to convey them into the Persian gulf, which washeth the bankes of Arabia felix on the East side: so as those sons of Chus might take Land downe the River as they pleased. Also the Citie of Ninive was by Nimrod founded on the said river of Tygris, and from thence a Colony past to Charran, standing also upon a navigable branch of Euphrates. In like manner did Japheths sons settle themselves together, and tooke their seats in Asia the lesse: from whence they might indifferently stretch themselves Northward, and Westward, into the next parts of Europe, called the Isles of the Gentiles. And it seemeth very agreeable to reason, that both Gomer, Magog, and Tubal, late downe first of all in that part of Syria, to the North of Palestina and Phenicia: and from thence Gomer or his children past on into Asia the lesse, as those of Magog and Tubal did; from whence the Tubalines spread themselves into Iberia: and the Magogians more Northerly into Sarmatian. The first Gomerians, and first Planters in Asia the lesse, held the Country of the Cymmerians (witnesseth Herodotus) the same Region which was afterward by the Gallo-Greeks called Galatia, to whom Saint Paul wrote his Epistle so intituled. This Nation of the Cymmerians (whom the invincible Scythians afterwards dispersed, and forced from their first Plantations) gave names to divers places, as to the Mountaines about Albania (called Cymmerini) and to the City of Cymmeris in Phrygia: also Bosphorus Cymmerius took appellation from this Nation, in the out-let whereof was also a City of that name, called Cymmerian: which Plinie saith (mistaking the place) had sometime the name of Cerberion, but Cerberion was a Towne in Campania, so called of the unhealthfull waters favouring of Brimstone, which Augustus caused to be cleansed by letting in the water of the Lake Lucrinus.

The children of Tubal ranged as far as Iberia, to whom the Moschici were Neighbours, which others write Meshech. The Prophet Ezechiel (coupling them together) calleth Gog the Prince of Meshech and Tubal. For these Meschi (which Ptolomie calleth Moschi) inhabit Syracena a Province of Armenia, directly South from the Mountaines Moschici, in the Valley betweene the Mountaines Moschici, and the Mountaines Pariatides: out of whose North part springeth the River Phasis; from the East part Araxius; and from the West Euphrates: and of this Meshech are descended also the Moscovians (saith Melancthon) and it may be, that in proceesse of time some of them inhabited those Regions also: For Meshech (saith Melancthon) signifieth extendens, enlarging or stretching forth.

forth. Togorma also at first did inhabit amongst his parents and kindred: The Togormians were also called Giblei, a people neighbouring the Sydonians in Gabala, a Tetrarchie of phenicia, the same which Plinie calleth Caben: from whence Sponson had his most excellent Mapons, which hewed stones for the Temple of Hierusaleni. Thence the Togormians stretched into the lesse Armenia, whose Kings were hence called Tigranes, and their Cities Tigranokarte: of which Cities Tigranes, subdued by Lucullus the Roman, built one, Hieroglymitanus hath planted the Togormians in Barbary; forgetting the prophesie of Ezechiel against the Tyrians: They of the house of Togorma, brought to thy Fairer, horses, and horse-men, and mules; which could not well be driven over the whole length of the Mediterranean Sea, but from the neighbour Countries by land. But Josephus takes them for the parents of the Phrygians, which I doe not deny, but they might be in the ensuing ages: and so might the Tubalines be of the Spaniards; but it was from Iberia, and many hundred yeeres after the twelfth of Nimrods reigne. The Jews conceive that the Turkes came of those Togormians, because their Emperor is called Togor. The Chaldeans make them the Fathers of the Germans. But Laonicus affirms, that the Turkes descended of the Crim Tatars, which borders Attycavia. But for these subderivations it were infinite to examine them. Only of the first and second plantation, and of the first Nations after the flood, is the matter which I labour to discover; and therein to open the ignorance of some, and the corruption of other fabulous Writers. And this we must Note, that those grandchildren of Noah which were of a more quiet, or (perchance) of lesse understanding, and had not therefore the leading of Colonies sent out, their proper habitations could be hardly knowne: onely reason hath taught us, that they dwelt among the rest, and were covered with the fame of others, who tooke on them the Conduccion and Dominion over them.

From Madai the third son of Japheth, were the Medes. The Grecians bring them (as before) from Medus the son of Medea.

## §. VII.

Of Javan the forth son of Japheth: and of Melchec of Aram, and Melchec of Japheth.

OF Javan the fourth son of Japheth came the Iones, which were afterwards called the Gyckes: and so the Latine and Greek Interpreters for Javan write Greece, as in Esay: Et mittam ex eis qui salvati fuerint ad gentes, in mare, in Italiam, & Græciam: And I will send those that escape of them to Nations in the Sea, in Italie and in Greece. The Genevans here use the word (Turkish) for Tarsus, a City in Cilicia, though Tarsis in many places betaken for the Sea. The Tigurians and the Genevans use the names Tubal and Javan, and not Italy and Greece: keeping the same Hebrew words. Of the Iones were the Athenians, though themselves dreame that they were Aborigines, or men without Ancesters, and growing (as it were) out of the soile it selfe: who abounding in people, sent Colonies into Asia the lesse, of whom came the Iones of those parts. Others derive the Athenians from Ion the son of Xuthus, the son of Deucalion; but the antiquity of Javan mars the fathion of that supposition, who so many yeeres preceded Xuthus, Ion or Deucalion. Pansias tells us that Xuthus stole out of Thessaly with all his Fathers treasure, and his Brothers portions, and arriving at Athens, he was graciously received by Erichon, who gave him his Daughter in marriage; of whom he received two sons Ion and Achens, the supposed Ancesters of the Athenians: (For Attica was called Ionia, saith Plutarch in the life of Theseus;) who, when he had joynd Megara to Attica, erected a pillar in that Isthmos or Strait, which fastneth Peloponnesus to the other part of Greece: writing on that part which looketh towards the East, these words: Hæc non sunt Peloponnesus, sed Ionia: These Countries are not Peloponnesus, but of Ionia: and on the other side which looked towards the South, and into Peloponnesus, this: These parts are Peloponnesus, and not Ionia.

Strabo out of Hecateus affirmeth that the Iones came out of Asia into Greece, which is contrary to the former opinion: That the Iones of Greece transporting certaine companies into Asia the lesse, the name of Iones was thereby therein retained. And though Strabo knew no more thereof than he learned of the Greeks themselves, yet I find this conjecture of Hecateus reasonable enough. For though it were to him unknown, yet sure I am that Asia the lesse had people before Greece had any; and that Javan did not flie from



Babylonia into Greece, but tooke *Asa* the lesse in his passage; and from thence past over the nearest way, leaving his own name to some maritime Province on that side, as he did to that part of Greece so called. But yet *Strabo* himself beleeveth, that *Tonia* tooke the name from *Iou* the son of *Xanthas*: for so much he had learned from themselves; which was also the opinion of *Panfanias*. True it is, that the *Greeks* in after-times cast themselves into that part of *Asia* the lesse, opposite unto them, which they held for divers yeeres. And howsoever the *Greekes* vaunt themselves to be Fathers of Nations, and the most ancient; yet all approved Historians (not their owne) deride and disprove their pride, and vanity therein. For this dispute of Antiquity (among prophane Writers) rested between the *Scythians* and the *Egyptians*, as *Tusine* out of *Trogus*, in the warrebetween *Vexorus* of Egypt, and *Tanaïs* of Scythia, witnesseth: which preceded farre the reign of *Ninus*, and was long before the name of Greece was ever heard of. And it is also manifest, that in *Cecrops* time the *Greekes* were all salvages, without law or religion, living like brute beasts in all respects: and *Cecrops* (saith Saint *Augustine*) lived together with *Moses*.

Lib. 18. de Civ.  
Dei, c. 10.

The sixth son of *Iapheth* was *Meshech*, whom the *Septuagint* call *Mosech*: (a part of those Nations commanded by *Gog* the chiefe Prince of *Meshech* and *Tubal*.) But this we must remember, that betweene *Meshech* the son of *Aram*, and *Meshech* (or *Mosech*) the son of *Iapheth*, there is little difference in name, and both by divers Interpreters diversly written. *Montanus* with the Vulgar writeth *Meshech*, the son of *Aram*, *Mes*; the *Genea*, *Mash*; *Iunius*, *Meshech*. But it may be gathered out of the 120. *Psalms*: that either *Meshech* the son of *Iapheth*, was the parent of those people, or gave the name to that Province wherein *David* hid himselfe: or else (which may rather seeme) that it tooke name from *Meshech* the son of *Aram*. For *David* bewailing his exile (while he lived among a barbarous and irreligious People) useth these words: *Woe is me that I remaine in Meshech*, and dwell in the Tents of *Kedar*: which *Iunius* converteth thus: *Hei mihi quia peregrinor tam diu: habito tanquam Scenite Kedareni*. The *Septuagint* gives it this sense: *Woe is me because my habitation (or abode) is prolonged, who dwell with the Inhabitants of Kedar*: with which this of the *Latine* agreeth; *Heu mihi, quia incolatus meus prolongatus est, habitans cum habitantibus Kedar*: The *Chaldean* otherwise, and in these words: *O me miserum, quia peregrinatus sum Ascanes, habitavi cum tabernaculis Arabum*; O wretch, that I am, for I have travelled among those of *Asa*: I have dwelt in the Tabernacles of the *Arabians*. But howsoever or which soever conversion be taken for the best, yet all make mention of *Kedar*: which is a Province of *Arabia Petraea*; and the *Chaldean* putteth *Asa* in stead of *Meshech*, but the *Hebrew* it selfe hath *Meshech*. And if it be to be taken for a Nation, (as it is most likely, because it answers to *Kedar*, the name of a Nation) seeing *Meshech* the son of *Aram*, 1 *Chron.* 17. is called *Meshech*, it is indifferent whether this Nation took name from *Meshech* or *Melch*, both bordering *Judea*, and like enough to be commanded by one Prince: for so *Ezechiel* makes *Meshech* and *Tubal*. But as for those that take *Meshech* out of the word *Mosech* (given by the *Septuagint*) to be the *Muscovians*: sure they presume much upon the affinity of names, as aforesaid. Sure I am that *David* never travelled so far North; (for to him *Muscovia* was utterly unknown) but about the border of *Kedar* (it may be) he was often in all the time of his persecution: the same being a city on the mountains of *San* or *Galaad*. And yet *Arius Montanus* makes *Mosech* the Father of the *Muscovians*: and here in also *Melanchton* runs with the tide of common opinion, and sets *Meshech* in *Muscovia*, though with some better advice of judgment; as, first seated in *Cappadocia*, and from thence travelling Northward: expounding the places of the 120. *Psalme*, (*Hei mihi quod exulo in Meshech*) to signifie, *Genis ejus feritatem insignem esse; That the ferity of this Nation exceeded: which fiercenes or brutality of the Muscovians, David never proved, or (perchance) never heard of. But the same ferity or cruelty which those Northern Muscovians had, may aswell be ascribed to the Arabians and Kedarens*. For this Country tooke name of *Kedar* the second sonne of *Ismael*, of whom a people of equall fiercenes to any of the world were begotten, both in those times and long after, even to this day (if the *Arabians*, *Ismaelites*, and *Saracens*, may be accounted one people): the same being foretold by the speech of the Angell to *Hagar*, *Gen.* 16. v. 12. *And he shall be a wilde man: his hand shall be against every man, and every mans hand against him*. Now *Arabia* the *Desert* (saith *Pliny*) confronteth the *Arabians* *Cochlei* on the East, and the *Arabi* Southward, both which joyn together upon the *Nabathaei*. So it appeareth at before

Psal. 120. vs. 5.

Gen. 25. 13.

before) that *Meshech*, *Tubal*, *Gomer*, *Togarma*, and *Magog*, neighboured *Canaan* and *Israel*, and that *Kedar* also did joyn to *Meshech*: all which were Regions of *Syria*, or of *Asia* the lesse, commanded by the successeours of *Seleucus*, enemies of the re-establisment of *Israel* and *Juda*. But (as I have already said) it might well be, that long after the first plantation on the issue of *Meshech* (or *Mosech*) might pass into *Cappadocia*, and thence into *Hircania*, and give names, both to *Mazega* in the one, and to the mountains *Moschici* in the other, and from thence might send people more northerly into *Muscovia*, and so all opinions saved. But all salvage nations over-grown & uncultivated, do (for the most part) shew a late plantation, even as civility, letters, and magnificent building, witnesseth antiquity. *Tyras*, the seventh son of *Iapheth*, which *Montanus* reckons among the sons of *Gomer*, *Mat. in C.* was the Father of the *Thracians*, as all Authors (worthy the examination) affirm. *Josephus* was the first that determined hereof: and because the Scriptures are altogether silent, what part of the world *Tyras* peopled, the conjectures are indifferent, and give no ground at all of dispute. It followeth now to speak of the Sonnes of *Gomer*, which were three, *Ascanes*, *Riphat*, and *Togorma*.

## § VIII.

of *Ascanes* and *Riphat*, the two elder Sonnes of *Gomer*.

*Ascanes* was the Father of those which the *Greeks* call *Regini*, (saith *Josephus*) but he gives no reason why. *Eusebius* makes *Ascanes* the Father of the *Goths*. The *Jewes* in their *Thargum* make him the root of the *Germane Nation*; but their expositions are commonly very idle. *Pliny* findeth *Ascania* in *Phrygia*, near the Rivers of *Hilas* and *Cios*: *Melanchton* being of the same opinion, that the *Tuiscanes* were descended of the *Ascanes*: (for *Tuiscanes*, *Ascanes*, saith he, is as much to say, as of the *Ascanes*, *preposito articulo die Ascanes*) and that the word signifieth a Religious Keeper of fire: it being an ancient superstition to pray at the fire of Sacrifices, as afterwards at the Tombs of Martyrs. Not far from *Phrygia* was the lake *Ascania*, known by that name in the *Romanes* time. And among the Kings which came to the succour of *Troy*, was *Ascanius* (*Deo similis*, saith *Homer*) like unto God: because he was beautifull and strong: for in the same manner doth *Virgil* grace *Aeneas*, *O humerosq; Deo similis: in face and body like one of the gods*. *Virgil* also remembereth such a River, together with the Hills *Gargara*: as, *Illas ducit amor trans Gargara, transq; sonantem Ascanium*; Appetite leads them both over the mountains *Gargara*, & the roaring *Ascanius*. But this *Pliny* maketh more plain in the description of *Phrygia*. For he placeth the City of *Brillion* upon the River *Ascanius*, which is adjoining to *Myfia*, and is near the border of the *Trojan Empire*: and the lake *Ascanes* he directs us to finde by the description of *Prusfa*, founded by *Hannibal* at the foot of *Olympus*, which lyeth far within the Countreies of *Bithynia*: and then from *Prusfa* to *Nicea* are accounted 25. miles, in which way this lake lieth, even between *Prusfa* and *Nicea*. And so *Iunius* (as I conceive him) takes them to be the inhabitants of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, and those North parts of Asia. *Stephanus de Urbibus* makes it a City of *Trois*, built by *Ascanius* the son of *Aeneas*: saying that there was another of that name in *Myfia*. Of *Ascania* a lake of *Bithynia*, *Ptolemy* witnesseth, and *Strabo* giveth *Ascania* both a Lake, a River, and a Town in *Myfia*, near unto *Cios*: which also agreeth with *Pliny*. For *Pliny* findeth *Prusfa* (before spoken of near *Cio*, and calleth the Islands before *Troy*, *Ascanes*.

Now, whether these places took name of *Ascanes* the son of *Gomer*, or of *Ascanius* the son of *Aeneas*, it might be questioned: sure it is, that *Ascanius* which brought succour to the *Trojans*, could not take his name from *Aeneas* sonne, who was then either exceeding young, or rather unborn: and it seemeth that the Countreies whence those succours came, were not out of any part of *Phrygia* or *Myfia*, but farther off, and from the North parts of all *Asia* the lesse, which by *Hieremy* is called *Ascanes*, by the figure *Synecdoche*, as *Iunius* thinketh. Out of those testimonies therefore which deceive not, we may confidently determine. For of the Prophet *Hieremy* we shall learne of what Nation the *Ascanes* were, whose words are these: *Set up a Standard in the Land, blow the trumpet among the Nations against her; call up the Kings of Ararat, Minni, and Ascanes, against*

Mat. in C.

Ascanes

Hom. Illad.

Virg. Georg. 2.

C. 51. v. 2.

against her, &c. meaning against the Babylonians. Ararat was Armenia the greater, as most Interpreters consent, so called of the mountains of Ararat which runne through it: *Minni* the lesser Armenia: Armenia being compounded of *Aram* and *Minni*. For *Minni* was the ancient name, (saith *Junius* and others before him:) and *Aram* anciently taken for Syria, which contained all that Tract from *Euphrates* to the Sea-coasts of *Phenicia*, and *Palestina*; and therefore *Mesopotamia* being in elder times but a Province of Syria, the Scriptures difference it in the story of *Jacob* and *Eſau*, and call it *Aram-Padan*. Then if these two Nations were of the *Armenians* and *Assyrians*, joyned with them (who altogether united under *Cyrus* and *Darius*, came to the spoile of the Babylonian Empire) we shall erre much to call *Assyria*, *Germany* or *Almaine*: for we hear of no ſwart Ruttier at that ſiege. But the *Assyrians* were of those Nations which were either ſubject or allied to the *Medes*: of which if any of them came afterward into *Phrygia*, I know not: for the diſperſion of Nations was in after-times without account. But for the opinion of *Enſebius*, who makes them to be *Goths*; or that of *Joſephus*, who calls them *Rhagin*; or of the *Lives*, who will have them to be *Almaines*; when they confirm it either by Scriptures or Reason, I will think as they doe.

Of *Riphat* the ſecond ſon of *Gomer* there is mention in the firſt of *Chronicles*. *Berwaldus* and *Pererius* think that he wandered far off from the reſt of his Brothers, and therefore no memory of his Plantation. But I ſee nothing to the contrary, but that he might ſeat himſelf with the reſt of his Family: for there wanted no room or ſoyl in thoſe dayes for all the Sons and Grand-children of *Noah*. Therefore I take it to be well underſtood, that the *Riphei* were of *Riphat*, which the *Greeks* afterwards (according to *Joſephus*) called the *Paphlagonians*; and *Riphei* (ſaith *Melanchton*) ſignifieth Giants. Theſe people were very famous in the North parts, and in *Sarmatia*: the moſt of number and power among them, *Sarmatarum gens maxima Heneti*, The greateſt number of the *Sarmatians* were the *Heneti*, who ſpake the ancient *Polac*: which being firſt called *Riphei* (for the love of ſome of their Leaders or Kings) changed their names and became *Heneti*, (a cuſtome exceeding common in thoſe times) and dwelt firſt in *Paphlagonia*, as *Homer* witneſſeth, and ſo doth *Apollonius* in his *Argonauticks*: Now, when theſe *Riphei* (afterward *Heneti*) fought new Regions, they came along the ſhores of *Euxinus*, and filled the North-part of Europe, containing *Ruſſia*, *Lithania*, and *Polonia*. From thence they croſt thwart the Land, and peopled *Syria*, deſirous (ſaith *Melanchton*) of a warmer ſoyl of fruit and wine. Theſe *Heneti* or *Veneti*, whom *Melanchton* taketh to be one people, filled all that Land between the *Baltick* and *Adriatick* Sea; and to this day the name of the *Gulf Venedicus* is found in *Ruſſia*. This Nation, after they were poſſeſt of *Lithania* and *Polonia*, diſturbed the plantation of the *Boii* and *Hermundurii*. Therefore it ſeemeth to me, that of *Riphat*, came the *Riphei*, afterward *Heneti*; and ſo thinketh *Arias Montanus*, firſt ſeated in *Paphlagonia*, but in courſe of time Lords of *Sarmatia*, and thoſe other parts before remembred, chiefly between the Rivers of *Viſtula* and *Albis*. The name (ſaith *Melanchton*) ſignifieth wandering or wanderers, or *Nomades*: a people which lived by white-meats and fruits, as (indeed) all Nations did in the firſt Ages.

Of the third ſon of *Gomer*, *Togorma*, I have ſpoken already; now therefore of *Iavan* children, which were four:

*Elifa*, *Tharſis*, *Cethim*, *Dodanim*.

### §. IX.

Of ſowe ſonnes of *Iavan*: and of the double ſignification of *Tharſis*, either for a proper name, or for the Sea,

OF *Elifa* or *Elipha*, came the *Aeoles*: and of this *Elifa*, all the *Greekes* were called *Hellenes*, ſaith *Montanus*. *Melanchton* makes *Elifa* the Father of the *Aeoles* in *Aſia* ſide: others of *Elis* in *Peloponneſus*; or of both. And ſeeing the *Greekes* were deſcended in generall of *Iavan*, it is probable that the *Aeoles* and the *Elis* took name of *Elifa* his eldeſt ſon. *Ezechiel* in the 27. ſpeaking of *Tyre*, nameth the Iſles of *Elifa*, *Bycinthi* & *purpura de inſulis Elife facta ſunt operimentum tui*: blue Silke and Purple, brought from the Iſles of *Elifa* was their covering. The *Chaldeans* for *Elifa*, write *Italia*: but the *Vulgar*, the *Ligurine*, the *Geneva*, and *Iunius*, keep the word *Elifa*: and ſo I think they might doe with reaſon. For there was not found any ſuch Purple Dye in *Italy*

in thoſe daies, nor ſince, that I can read of: but thoſe Iſles of *Elifa*, were by a better conjecture the Iſles of *Greece*; and the beſt Purple was found afterward at *Tyre* it ſelf: and before that, among the *Cyclades*, and on the Coaſt of *Gentilia*.

*Tharſis*, the ſecond Son of *Iavan*, inhabited *Cilicia*; of which *Tharſis* is the Metropolis. *Montanus* for *Tharſis* in *Cilicia*, underſtands *Carthage* in *Africa*; but (reſerving the reſpect due to ſo learned a man) he was much miſtaken in that conjecture. The *Chaldean* *Parapraſt* puts *Carthage* for *Tharſis*, but it hath no authority nor warrant of reaſon therein. So likewiſe, where it is written, that the Ships of *Solomon* went every 3. yeares to *Tharſis*, and brought thence Gold, Silver, Elephants teeth, &c. the *Chaldean* *Parapraſt* 10 translates *Tharſis* (*Africa*). But *Solomon*'s Ships were prepared in the Red Sea at *Eſſon-Gaber*, in the Bay of *Elana*, near unto *Madian*, where *Iethro* (*Moses* Father in Law) inhabited; a Province of *Arabia Petraea*, *Idumea*, or of the *Chniſter*; and they ſailed to the higher part of the Eaſt India. For it had been a ſtrange Navigation to have ſpent three yeares in the paſſage between *India* and *Carthage*, or any other part of *Africa*, which might have been failed in fix or ten dayes. And if ſo great riches might have bin found within the bounds of the *Mediterranean* Sea, all the other neighbouring Princes would ſoon have entertained that trade alſo. But this enterpriſe of *Solomon* is in this ſort written of in the 1. of *Kings*: Alſo King *Solomon* made a Navy of Ships in *Eſſon-Gaber*, which is beſide *Elath* and the brink of the Red Sea in the land of *Edom*: and *Hyram* ſent with 20 the Navy his ſervants, that were mariners, and had knowledge of the Sea, with the ſervants of *Solomon*: and they came to *Ophir*, and ſet from thence 420. talents of gold, &c. But as the Nations about *Pontus* thought no Sea in the world like unto their own, and doubted whether there were any other Sea but that oneſy: (whereof it came, that *Pontus* was a word uſed for the Sea in general) ſo, becauſe the *Iſraelites* and the *Phenicians* knew no other Sea than that of the *Mediterranean* in the beginning; and that the people of *Tharſis* had the greateſt Ships, and were the firſt Navigators in thoſe parts with ſuch Veſſels, they were therefore called men of the Sea; and the word *Tharſis* uſed often for the Sea. And whereas it is ſaid that the Ships of *Solomon* went every three yeares to *Tharſis*, that phraſe is not ſtrange at all ſo for we uſe it ordinarily whereſoever we navigate, (namely) 30 that the Kings Ships are gone to the Sea, or that they are ſet out every year, or every three year to the Sea, and therefore *Tharſis* was not therein named, either for *Carthage*, *Africa*, or *India*, but uſed for the Sea it ſelf. But in this place, *Tharſis* is truly taken for *Tharſis*, the chief City in *Cilicia*, founded by *Tharſis* the ſecond ſon of *Iavan*, or by his Succellours in memory of their firſt Parent. To this City arrived *Alex. Macedon*, before he gave the firſt overthrow to *Darius*, and caſting himſelf into the River to bathe and waſh his body, he fell into an extream fever, and great danger of death: And in this City of *Tharſis* was *S. Paul* borne. Now this agreeeth with the reaſon and nature of a Plantation. For *Gomer* and his other ſons inhabiting *Aſia* the leſſe, and that part of *Syria* adjoining *Iavan*, who was to paſs over the Sea into *Greece*, took the edge of the 40 ſame Coaſt, and firſt planted the *Iones* on that ſhore: gave the Iſlands between *Aſia* the leſſe and *Greece* to *Elifa*, and left *Tharſis* upon the Sea-side in *Cilicia*; of whom that City took name.

The third ſon of *Iavan* was *Cethim*, of whom wrote the *Romanes* and *Italians*, ſaith *Berwaldus*, but I allow better of *Melanchton*'s opinion, who makes *Cethim* the Father of the *Macedonians*. *Cethim* is a voice plurall (ſaith he) and ſignifieth percuſſores, though in that reſpect it may be meant by either. But it ſeemeth more probable, that the place of *Eſy* 23. (according to *Melanchton*) had relation to *Alexander* and the *Macedonians*: *Heccalmitas ab Eſai predicta eſt, qui capite viceſimo tertio aquas gentes eſſe everſores Tyrri ex terra Cithim*; This calamity (ſaith *Melanchton*) was foreſhewed by *Eſai* the Prophet, who 50 in the three and twentieth Chapter pronounced, that the deſtroyers of *Tyre* were come out of *Cithim*. And although the children of *Iſrael* eſteemed all men Iſlanders, which came to them by Sea, and ſeparate from that Continent; and ſo alſo *Cithim* might be taken for *Italy*; ſaith *Berwaldus* yet we muſt take the firſt performance of the former Prophecy which took effect by the deſtruction of the *Tyrrians* by *Alexander*, who after 7. months ſiege, entred that proud City, and cut in pieces ſeven thousand principal Citizens, ſtrangled 2. thousand, and changed the freedom of 12. thousand others into bondage and ſlavery. Now, that *Macedon* was taken for *Cethim*, in both appeares plainly in the firſt of the *Maccabees*, in theſe words: After that *Alexander* the *Macedonian*, the

the son of Philip, went forth of the Land of Cethim, and slew Darius King of the Persians and Medes. Josephus sets Cethim in the Ile of Cyprus, in which (saith he) there remaineth the City Citium, the Countie of Zeno the Philosopher (witnesseth Laertius) which City Pinus upon Ezechiel affirmeth, that it stood in S. Hieromes time. So it may be that all the Islands in ancient times by the Hebrews were called the Islands of Cethim: and in that sense might Cyprus be so called also; and yet because Tharsus was the very next Port to Cyprus, and directly over against it, it is also very probable, that Cethim dwelt by his brother Tharsus: and finding that Island too straight for his people after they were migrated, and that the rest of the Coasts, both on Asia side and Greece, were inhabited by his father and brothers, he sent Colonies over the Aegean Sea, & inhabited Macedonia.

Dodanim the fourth son of Javan, and the youngest brother (by the most opinions) fate down at Rhodes, as near Cethim, Tharsus, and Eliza, as he could. For Dodanim and Rhodanim are used indifferently by many Translators: the Hebrew (D) and the Hebrew (R) are so like, as the one may easily be taken for the other, as all Hebricians affirm. There is also found in Epirus the City of Dodana, in the Province of Molossia. And as Cethim, when he wanted soile in Cyprus: so Dodanim (seated in a far less Island) did of necessity send his people farther off; and keeping alongst the Coast, and finding Peloponnesus in the possession of Eliza, he passed a little further on the Westward, and planted in Epirus. And though the City of Dodona was not then built, or (perchance not so ancient as Dodanim himself, yet his Posterity might give it that name in the memory of their first Parent, as it happened all the World over. For names were given to Cities, Mountains, Rivers, and Provinces, after the names of Noahs children and grand-children; not in all places by themselves, but by their successors many years after: every of their Families being desirous to retain among them by those memories, out of what branch themselves were taken and grafted elsewhere. And because great Kingdoms were often by new Conquerours newly named, and the greatest Cities often fired and demolished, therefore those that hoped better to perpetuate their memories, gave their own names, or the names of their Ancestours, to Mountains and Rivers, as to things (after their judgments) freest from any alteration.

Thus then did Javan settle himself and his children in the edge and frontier of Asia the less, towards the Sea-shore: and afterward in Greece, and the Islands and neighbour Provinces thereof, as Josephus their Father had done in the body of the lesser Asia, together with Javans brethren; Gomer, Magog, Madai, Tubal, Mesch, and the rest round about him. And in like sort did Chus (the son of Cham) people Babylonia, Chaldaea, and the borders thereof towards the West and South-west: and the sons of Chus (all but Nimrod, who held Babylonia itself) travelled Southward in Arabia felix, & South-westward into Arabia Petraea: the rest of his children holding the Regions adjoining to Nimrod. Adirams the brother of Chus in like manner took the way of Egypt: and his brother Canaan of the Region of Palestine adjoining. The sons of Canaan had their portions in Canaan, of whom all those Nations came, which were afterward the Enemies both to the Hebrews, and to those of the sons of Shem, which spread themselves towards the West, and the borders of the Mediterranean Sea: of which I shall speak hereafter. But first of the sons of Cham or Ham, which were four:

Chus, Madai, Phis, and Canaan.

### X.

Thus the son of Chus the eldest son of Ham, was in Arabia, not in Ethiopia: and of strange Fables, and all Translations of Scripture grounded on the mistaking of this point.

Of Josephus his Tale of an Ethiopess wife of Moses, grounded on the mistaking of the tale of Chus.

That Ham was the Father of the Egyptians, it is made manifest in many Scriptures, as in the 10. of Psalm, verse 31. Then Israel came to Egypt, and Jacob was a stranger in the Land of Ham: and in the 78. Psalm, He slew all the first-born in Egypt, even the beginning of their strength, in the Tabernacles of Ham. There

also

also found a great City in Thebais, called Cherenis: (as it were the City of Ham) of which name Herodotus also discovers an Island in the same Region. But because Chus already in the description of Paradise handled this question, and (I hope) proved that Chus could not be Ethiopia: yet seeing it cometh now to his turn to speak for himself, I will add some farther proof to the former. For, the manifestation hereof sets many things straight, which had otherwise very crooked constructions, and senseless interpretations. Surely, howsoever the Septuagint and Josephus have herein failed, that Chus could not be Ethiopia, but Arabia: (to wit) both that Arabia called Petraea, and a part of Arabia the Happy and the Desert: which Regions Chus and the Chusites presently planted, after they left Babylonia to Nimrod, wherein they first fate down all together. And there is nothing which so well cleareth this Controversie, as the true interpretation of the place, Num. 12. v. 1. where Moses his Wife is called a Chusite; together with some places which speak of Nabuchodonosors Conquests. For whereas Josephus and the Septuagint in the place Num. 12. v. 1. as also elsewhere, understand Chus for Ethiopia, we must give credit to Moses himself herein; and then it will appear, that Josephus was grossly mistaken, or vainly led by his own invention. For Josephus presuming that Chus was Ethiopia, and therefore that the wife of Moses (which in Scripture, Num. 12. v. 1. is called a woman of Chus) was a woman of the land of Ethiopia, saigneth that Tharbis the Daughter of the King of Ethiopia, fell in love with the person and fame of Moses, while he besieged Saba her Father's City; and to the end, to obtain Moses for her Husband, she practised to betray both her Parents, Country, and Friends, with the City it self, and to deliver it into Moses hands: The Tale (if it be worth the reciting) lieth thus in Josephus. After he hath described the strength of the Ethiopick City Meroe, which he saith at length Chamylis called so from the name of his Sister, (the old name being Saba) he goeth on in these words: *Hic cum Moses desidero exercitum otiosum egypti ferret, hoste non audente manus conferere, tale quiddam accidit. Erat Arabis Regi filia nomine Tharbis, &c.* which tale hath this sense in English: When Moses was grieved that his Army lay idle, because the Enemy besieged their not ally and came to him day-sirker, there happened this accident in the mean while. The Ethiopian King had a Daughter called Tharbis, who at some assault given, beheld the person of Moses, and withal admired his valour. And knowing that Moses had no wife, she held and restored the falling side of the Egyptians, but had also brought the conquering Ethiopians to the very brink of subversion: these things working in her thought, together with her own affection, which daily increased, she made means to send unto him by one of her bravest servants, to offer herself unto him, and become his Wife; Which Moses on this condition entertained, that she should first deliver the City into his possession; whereupon she condescending, and Moses having taken oath to perform this contract, both the one and the other, were instantly perished.

### A dispute against the tale of Josephus.

This Tale (whereof Moses hath not a word) hath Josephus fashioned, and therein also utterly mistaken himself in naming a City of Arabia for a City of Ethiopia, as he names Ethiopia it self to have been the Countie of Moses his Wife. When in deed it was Arabia. For Saba is not in Ethiopia, but in Arabia: as both Strabo and all other Geographers, ancient and modern, teach us, saying, that the Sabaeans are Arabians, and not Ethiopians; except Josephus can persuade us, that the Queen of Saba which came from the South to hear the wisdom of Solomon, were a Negro, or Black-moor. And though Damianus a Goer speak of certain Letters to the King of Portugal from Prester John, of the Abissines: wherein that Ethiopian King would persuade the Portugals, that he was descended of the Queen of Saba and of Solomon; yet it doth no where appear in the Scriptures, that Solomon had any Son by that great Princess, which had it bin true, it is likely that when Siseac King of Egypt invaded Roboam, and sackt Hierusalem his Brother (the Son of Saba and Solomon) who joyned upon Egypt, would both have matched that enterprize, as also given aid and succour to Roboam against Jeroboam, who drew from him ten of the twelve Tribes to his own obedience. Neither is it any thing against our opinion of Moses his Wife, to have bin an Arabian, that the Scriptures teach

us, that *Moses* married the daughter of *Jethro* Priest of *Midian* or *Madian*: which stand-  
ing on the North Coast of the Red Sea, over against the body of *Egypt*, and neer *Effen-  
Gaber*, where *Solomon* provided his Fleet for *India*, in the Region of *Edom*, may well be  
reckoned as a part of *Arabia*, as the Red Sea is called *Sinus Arabicus*. For *Edumaea* joy-  
neth to the Tribe of *Juda* by the North, to *Arabia Petraea* by the East, to the Mediter-  
ran by the West, and to the Red Sea by the South-east. And if we mark the way which  
*Moses* took when he left *Egypt*, and conducted *Israel* thence, it will appear that he was  
no stranger in *Arabia*: in the border whereof, and in *Arabia* it self, he had formerly li-  
ved forty years; where it seemeth, that besides his careful bringing up in *Egypt*, he was  
instructed by *Jethro* in the Egyptians learning. For *Iosephus* confelleth, and *Saint Ste-  
phen* confirmeth, that he was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians. But on the o-  
ther side, this Text makes much against *Iosephus*, where it is written in *Exod.* the second,  
Therefore *Moses* fled from *Pharao*, and dwelt in the Land of *Madian* or *Midian*, and not in  
*Ethiopia*. And in the third Chapter it is as plain as words can express, in what Region  
*Madian* was, where it is written, When *Moses* kept the sheep of *Jethro* his Father in Law  
Priest of *Madian*, and drave the Flock to the Desert, and came to the mountain of *God in Ha-  
reb*. Now that Mount *Harib* is not in *Ethiopia*, every Infant knoweth. And if we may  
believe *Moses* himself, then was not the Wife of *Moses* purchased in that manner which  
*Iosephus* reporteth (which was for betraying her Countrey and friends) neither had the  
the name of *Tharbis*, but of *Sippora*, or, *Zippora*: neither was she a Negro, but a *Madia-  
nitess*. And as God worketh the greatest things by the simplest means: so it pleased  
him from a Shepherd to call *Moses*, and after him *David*, and by them to deliver his  
people first and last. For *Moses*, sitting by a Well (as discomfolute and a stranger) de-  
fended the daughters of *Reuel* from the other Shepherds, and drew them Water to  
water their Sheep: upon which occasion (by God ordained) he was entertained  
by *Jethro*, whose daughter he married; and not for any betraying of Townes or  
Countries.

From hence also came *Jethro* to *Moses* at *Rephidim*, not far from *Idumaea*, and finding  
the insupportable government of such a multitude, he advised him to distribute this  
weighty charge, and to make Governours and Judges of every Tribe and Family. And  
if *Jethro* had been an *Ethiopian*, it had beene a farre progress for him to have passed  
through all *Egypt* with the Wife and Children of *Moses*, and to have found *Moses* in the  
border of *Idumaea*: the Egyptians hating *Moses* and all that favoured him. But the pas-  
sing of *Moses* through *Arabia Petraea* (which joyneeth to *Madian*) proveth that *Moses* was  
well acquainted in those parts, in which the second time he wandred forty years, and  
did by these late travails of his, seek to instruct the children of *Israel* in the knowledge  
of one true God, before he brought them to the Land of plenty and rest. For he found  
them nourished up with the milk of Idolatry, and obstinate in the Religion of the Hea-  
then, and finding that those stiff plants could not be bowed or declined, either by per-  
suasion or by miracle, he ware them out in the Deserts, as God directed, and grafted  
their branches anew, that from those he might receive fruit, agreeable to his own de-  
sire, and Gods Commandments.

Lastly, this opinion of *Iosephus* is condemned by *Augustinus Chrysamenis*, where also  
he reprehendeth *Apollinaris*, who avowed that *Moses* had married both *Tharbis* and *Si-  
ppora*: His own words have this beginning: *Mentitur etiam Apollinaris duas uxores tu-  
isse Moysen, &c.* *Apollinaris* also leith, in affirming that *Moses* had two wives: and  
did not perceive these things joined by them: for it is manifest that the Wife of *Moses* was  
*Zippora*, Daughter to the Priest or President of *Madian*: and that *Madian* cannot be taken  
for *Ethiopia*, beyond *Egypt*, being the same that joyneeth to *Arabia*: So far *Chrysamenis*.

Sist. Scenif.  
Bibl.

Ezech. 29. 10.

Now as *Chus* is by the Septuagint converted *Ethiopia*, and the wife of *Moses* there-  
fore called *Ethiopia* (also in the conquest of *Nebuchodonosor* is *Ethiopia* written for  
*Arabia*. For by the words of *Ezechiel*, it is manifest that *Nebuchodonosor* was never in  
*Ethiopia*, behold (saith *Ezechiel*, speaking of the person of this great Assyrian) I came

upon thee and upon thy Rivers, and I will make the Land of *Egypt* utterly waste and desolate,  
from the Tower of *Seuench*, even to the borders of the blacke-Moores: which last words  
should have beene thus converted: From the Tower *Seuench* to the borders of the *Chusites*  
or *Arabians* betweene which two is situated all *Egypt*. For to say, from the borders of  
*Seuench* to the *Ethiopians*, hath no sense at all, *Seuench* it selfe being the border of *Egypt*,  
confronting and joyning to *Ethiopia*, or the Land of the blacke-Moores. So as if *Na-  
buchodonosor*, conquest had beene but betweene *Seuench* and the border of *Ethiopia*, it  
were as much to say, and did expresse no other victory than the conquest of all that  
Land and Countrey, lying betweene *Middlesex* and *Buckingham*, where both the Coun-  
tries joyne together; or all the North parts of *England* betweene *Barnick* and *Scotland*:  
for this hath the same sense with the former, if any man sought to expresse by these two  
bounds, the Conquest of *England*: *Barnick* being the North border of *England*, as *Seve-  
nbor Syena* is the South bound of *Egypt*, seated in *Thebaida*, which toucheth *Ethiopia*.  
But by the words of *Ezechiel* it appeareth, that *Nabuchodonosor* never entred into any  
part of *Ethiopia*, although the *Septuagint*, the *Vulgar*, the *Geneva*, and all other (in effect)  
have written *Ethiopia* for *Chus*.

### ||. IV.

Another place of *Ezechiel*, cap. 30. vers. 9. in the like manner mistaken.

And as the former, so is this place of *Ezechiel* mistaken, by being in this sort con-  
verted: In die illa egredientur muncii à facie mea in trivribus ad conterendam *Ethiopiae*  
confidentiam: Which place is thus turned in English by the *Geneveans*: In that day shall  
there Messengers goe forth from me in ships to make the carelesse Moores afraid. Now the  
Latine for (ships) hath the Greeke word *Trieres* for *Trivemes*, which are Gallies of three  
banks, and not ships. But that in this place the Translation should have been (as in the  
former) amended by using the word *Chus* or *Arabia* for *Ethiopia* or the black-Moores,  
every man may see which meanly understandeth the Geography of the world, knowing  
that to passe out of *Egypt* into *Ethiopia* there need no Gallies or Ships, no more than to  
passe out of *Northampton* into *Leicestershire*: *Ethiopia* being the conterminat Region  
with *Egypt*, and not divided so much as by a River. Therefore in this place of *Ezechiel*  
it was meant, that from *Egypt*, *Nabuchodonosor* should send Gallies alongst the coast of  
the Red Sea, by which an Army might be transported into *Arabia* the *Happy* and the  
*Stony* (sparing the long wearisome march over all *Egypt*, and the Desert of *Pharan*) which  
Army might thereby surprize them unawares in their security and confidence. For  
when *Nabuchodonosor* was at *Seuench* within a mile of *Ethiopia*, he needed neither Gal-  
ley nor Ship to passe into it; being all one large and firme Land with *Egypt*, and no o-  
therwise parted from it, than one In-land thire is parted from another: and if he had a  
fancy to have rowed up the River but for pleasure, he could not have done it: for the  
fall of *Nilus* (tumbling over high and steepy Mountaines) called *Catadupe Nili*, were at  
hand.

Lastly, as I have already observed, the sons of every father seated themselves as neer  
together as possibly they could, *Gomer* and his sons in *Asia* thelesse; *Javen* and his  
sons in *Greece*, and the Islands adjoining; *Shem* in *Persia* and Eastward. So the Sons  
and Grand-children of *Chus* from the River of *Gehon* (their Fathers first seat) inha-  
bited upon the same, or upon some other contiguous unto it, as *Nimrod* and *Havilah* on  
the one side, and *Saba*, *Sheba*, and *Sabtecha* (with the rest) did on the other side. And  
to conclude in a word, the *Hebrewes* had never acquaintance or fellowship, any warre,  
treaty of peace, or other intelligence with the *Ethiopian* black-Moores, as is already  
remembered in the Chapter of *Paradise*.

### ||. V.

A place, *Esay* 18. v. 1. in like manner corrupted, by taking *Chus* for *Ethiopia*.

And as in these places before remembered, so in divers others is the word *Ethiopia*  
put for *Arabia* or *Chus*, which puts the story (where it is so understood) quite out  
of square, one Kingdom thereby being taken for another. For what sense hath this part  
of

of Scripture, *Eſay 18. Væ terra Cymbalorum alarum quæ eſt trans flumina Æthiopie*; according to the Septuagint in theſe words: *Væ terra navium alarum quæ eſt trans fluvios Æthiopie*, *Woe to the land ſhadowing with wings, which is beyond the Rivers of Æthiopia, ſending Embaſſadors by ſea, even the veſſels of reeds upon the waters. Væ terra umbroſæ oræ; Woe to the Land of the ſhadie coaſt, ſaith Iſaius.* The former Tranſlators underſtand it in this ſenſe; That the waters are ſhadowed with the ſails, which are ſignificatively called the wings of the ſhips; the other, that the coaſt of the Sea was ſhadowed by the height of the Land.

But to the purpoſe: That this Land here ſpoken of by the Prophet *Eſay*, is *Egypt*, no Interpreter hath doubted. For they were the *Egyptians* that ſent this meſſage to the *Iſraelites*, which *Eſay* repeateth, and by the former tranſlation every man may ſee the tranſpoſition of Kingdoms: for hereby *Egypt* is tranſported unto the other ſide of *Æthiopia*, and *Æthiopia* ſet next unto *Judea*, when it is the Land of *Chuſh* and *Arabia* indeed that lyeth between *Judea* and *Egypt*, and not *Æthiopia*, which is ſeated under the *Equinoctial* Line. And of this, *Berwaldus* asketh a material queſtion, (to wit) what Region that ſhould be, of which the Prophet ſpeaketh, & placeth it beyond the rivers of *Æthiopia*. Nam de ignota aq̄ regione dici nequit; For it cannot be ſaid that he treateth of an unknown Region. Now if *Æthiopia* it ſelf be under the *Equinoctial* line, with whom the *Jews* had never any acquaintance, why ſhould any man dream that they had knowledge of Nations far beyond it again, and beyond the Rivers of *Æthiopia*? except we ſhall impiouſly think that the Prophet ſpoke he knew, not what, or uſed an impertinent diſcourſe of thoſe Nations, which were not diſcovered in 2000. years after, inhabiting as far South as the Cape of Good Hope, commonly knowne by the name of *Bona eſperanza*.

## ||. VI.

That upon the like miſtaking, both *Terracha* in the ſtory of *Senacherib*, and *Zera* in the ſtory of *Ala* are miſadviciſly made *Æthiopians*.

And by this tranſlation is the ſtory of *Senacherib* utterly miſtaken in the cauſe of his retreat. For *Senacherib* was firſt repulſed at *Peliſium*, at the very entrance of *Egypt* from *Judea*: when having certain knowledge that *Thirrhakeh*, (which all the Interpreters called King of *Æthiopia*) was on the way to ſet on him, he began to withdraw himſelf; and fearing to leave his Army in two parts, he ſent threatening Meſſenger to *Ezechieh* King of *Juda*, perſwading him to ſubmit himſelf: the Tenor whereof is ſet down in the ſecond of *Kings* in theſe words: *Have any of the gods of the Nations delivered his Land out of the hands of the King of Aſſur? Where is the god of Hamath, &c.* By which proud Embaſſage, if he had obtained entrance into *Jeruſalem*, he then meant to have united that great Army before *Jeruſalem*, commanded by *Rabſakeh*, with the other which lay before *Peliſium*, a great City upon the branch of *Nilus* next *Arabia*. For *Senacherib* had already maſtered the moſt part of all thoſe cities in *Judea* & *Benjamin* with a third Army, (which himſelf commanded) being then at the ſiege of *Lebna*. But upon the report of that *Arabian* Army led by the King *Thirrhakeh* (whom *Joſephus* calls *Tharſeus*) *Rabſakeh* haſted from the ſiege of *Hiernſalem*, and found *Senacherib* departed from *Lebna*, and ſet downe before *Lebna*, which was afterwards called *Eleutheropolis*, as ſome have ſuppoſed. But while he had ill ſucces at *Peliſium* and feared *Thirrhakeh*, God himſelf, whom he leaſt feared, ſtrook his Army before *Jeruſalem* by the Angel of his power, ſo as 180000. were found dead in the place, as in the life of *Ezechieh* is hereafter more largely written. And that this Army of *Thirrhakeh* was from *Arabia*, *Joſephus* himſelf makes it plain. For he confeſſeth in the tenth Book, the firſt Chapter of the *Jews* Antiquities, that it was come to *Senacherib*'s knowledge, that the Armie which was a foot (both to relieve the *Egyptians* and the *Jews*) marched towards him by the way of the Deſart: Now the Deſart which lay indifferent between *Hiernſalem* and *Peliſium*, was that of *Pharan* or *Sin*, which alſo toucheth on the three *Arabia*'s, to wit, the *Stony*, of which it is a part: the *Deſart*, and the *Happy*; and by no other way indeed could the *Arabians* come on to ſuccour either *Peliſium* or *Hiernſalem*. But that there is any Deſart between *Peliſium* and the South part of *Egypt*, hath never yet been heard of, or deſcribed by any *Geographical* or *Hiſtorian*. So then this deſcription of the ſecond of *Kings*, ver. the ninth, hath the ſame miſtaking as the reſt. For here the word (*Chuſh*) is alſo tranſlated *Æthiopia*; and in this ſenſe have all the Interpreters, (but *Iunius*) expreſſed the beginning of the ninth Verſe.

He heard alſo men ſay of *Thirrhakeh* King of *Æthiopia* &c. whereas it ſhould have been thus converted with *Iunius*: *Andiens autem de Thirrhakeh Rege Chuſh*; He heard alſo of *Thirrhakeh* King of the *Chuſhites*. For they were the *Chuſhites* and *Arabians*, whole houſes and Cities were next the fire, and upon whom the very ſmoake of *Juda* flaming was blown, being their neereſt Neighbours: and ſo were not the *Æthiopian* Black-Moors (the Kings of *Egypt* being mighty Kings) let all men that know how theſe Regions are ſeated, and how far diſtant, judge. For Princes do not eaſily permit Armies of a Million to run through them; neither was there ever ſuch ſtrength of Black-Moors heard of in that part of the World, or elſewhere. Neither are theſe *Æthiopians* ſuch travailers or Conquerors; and yet is this King *Zerah* alſo called King of *Æthiopia*. But the word *Chuſh* being firſt ſo converted for *Æthiopia*, the reſt of the Interpreters (not looking into the ſeats of Kingdoms, or the poſſibilities of attempts, or invaſions) followed one another in the former miſtakings.

## ||. VII.

A farther expoſition of the place, *Eſay 18. i.*

Concerning theſe words in that eighteenth Chapter of *Eſay*, *Navium alarum, Winged Ships*, (to the Septuagint turn it) or *Cymbalo alarum* (according to the Latine) ſays whiſtling in the winds, or *terra umbroſæ oræ* (after *Iunius*) the Land of a ſhadowed coaſt, or, the Land ſhadowing with wings, as our *Engliſh* Geneva hath it. The two firſt interpretations of the Septuagint and *S. Hierome*, have one ſenſe in effect. For the ſails are commonly called the wings of a ſhip; and we uſe to ſay ordinarily when our ſhips ſaile ſlowly, that the wanteth wings: (that is) when her ſails are either worn or too narrow: and we alſo uſe the ſame phraſe of the winde whiſtling in the ſails. And it may be ſo that the *Egyptians* employed ſo many of thoſe ſmall ſhips, as their ſails were ſaid to give a ſhadow over the Red Sea. But to make both interpretations good, *Pintus* (upon *Eſay*) affirmeth, that the word (*Sabal*) doth ſignifie both to ſhadow and to gingle (which is) to make a kinde of Cymbaline ſound: ſo as the meaning of this place (ſaith *Pintus*) is this: *Woe to thee, O Egypt, which doſt promiſe to others ſafeguard, under the ſhadow of thy wings*; which (indeed) ſeemeth to agree with the argument of the eighteenth Chapter of *Eſay*: and this phraſe is often elſewhere uſed, as in the ſixteenth *Plalm*: *Sub umbra alarum tuarum protege me*; *Defend me under the ſhadow of thy wings*. The Boats of Reede ſpoken of are of two kinds; either of basket-willow covered with hides (as anciently in *Brittain*) or a Tree made hollow in the bottome, and built upon both ſides with Canes. Of the one fort I have ſeen in *Ireland*, of the other in the *Indies*.

## §. XI.

Of the plantation and antiquities of *Egypt*.

## ||. I.

That *Mizraim* the chief planter of *Egypt*: and the reſt of the ſons of *Ham*, were ſeated in order one by another.

The ſecond ſon of *Ham* was *Mizraim*; (who according to the place of a ſecond brother) was ſent ſomewhat farther off to inhabit. For *Chuſh* firſt poſſeſt *Chaldea* on the Weſt ſide of *Gehon* chiefly: and from thence, as he increaſed in people, ſo he entred *Arabia*, and by time came to the border of the Red Sea, and to the Southeaſt ſide of *Judea*. *Mizraim* his brother (with *Phut*) paſt over into *Africa*. *Mizraim* held *Egypt*; and *Phut* (as a third brother) was thruſt farther off into *Mauritania*. *Canaan* took the Sea-coaſt, and held the ſide of *Paleſtina*: and theſe four brothers poſſeſt all that Tract of Land, from *Gehon* in *Chaldea*, as far to the Weſt as the *Mediterran* Sea: comprehending all *Arabia Deſerta*, and *Petræa*, all *Canaan* which embraceth *Galilee*, *Samaria*, and

and Judea; with the two Egypts, whereof the neather is bounded by Memphis on the South, and by the Mediterran Sea on the North: and Thebaida (called the upper Egypt) stretcheth it self toward the South as far as Syene, the border of the Ethiopians or black Moors. All the rest of the coast of Africa Westward, Phut peopled; which brothers had not any other Nation or Family that dwelt between them. And in the same manner did all their sons again, and all the sons of the rest of Noahs children, fort themselves.

## ||. II.

Of the time about which the name of Egypt began to be known: and of the Egyptians Luvians, years, which made their antiquities seem more fabulous.

His flourishing Kingdom posselt by Mizraim, changed her ancient name, and became Egypt, at such time as Aegyptus (otherwise Rameses, as some think) the son of Seth, chased thence his elder brother Danais, shifting him into that part of Greece now called Achaia, by whom the Argives were made Danai, abandoning their proper names: which happened 877. yeeres after the Flood, in the time of Joshua, as S. Augustin conjectureth out of Eusebius. But in Homers Odyssey it appeareth that the Egyptians were so called at the time of the Trojan War. And before this Egypt was knowne by divers other names, as Oceana, Aria, Osiriana, &c. And Manethon (whom Iosephus citeth in his first booke against Appion) numbred all the Kings of Egypt after Moses departure, who consumed 393 yeeres. By which other men conjecture, that the Egyptians took on them that name 330. yeeres after Iosua, and about 1000. yeeres after the Flood. But where Iosephus in the same booke taketh Israel to be those Hyksos, which he also calleth Pastors or Shepherds, which are said to have reigned in Egypt 511. yeeres: whom also he calleth his Ancestors, (meaning the Ancestors of the Iewes) in this I am sure he was grossly deceived, or that he vainly boasted: for the Israelites had no such Dominion as Manethon saith, nor abode in Egypt so long a time by many yeeres.

Of the Egyptian Antiquities there are many fancies in Trogor, Herodotus, Plato, Diad, Siculus, Mele, and others. For they affirme (saith Pomp. Mele) that there had reigned in Egypt 330 Kings before Amasis, who was contemporary with Cyrus; and that they had memory and story of 13000. yeeres; and that the Stars had four times changed their course, and the Sun twice set in the East. These Riddles are also rise among the Athenians and Arcadians, who dare affirm, that they are more ancient than Iupiter and the Moon; whereof Ovid:

*Ante Jovem genitum terras habuisse feruntur.  
Arcades: & Luna gens prior illa fuit.*

The Arcadians the earth inhabited  
Ere yet the Moon did shine, or Iove was bred.

But for those 13000. years it may well be true; seeing it is certain that the Egyptians reckon their yeers by Moneths, which makes after that account not above 1000. or 1100. yeers, whether we take their Moneths or Lunary yeers to have been of the first kinde of 27. daies and eight hours; or otherwise 29. daies and twelve hours; or after any other of those five diversities of their Lunary yeers.

## ||. III.

Of certain vain assertions of the Antiquity of the Egyptians.

Gerardus Mercator in his Chronology, reasoneth for the Egyptians Antiquity in this manner: That the sixteenth Dynastie (where Eusebius begins to reckon the Egyptian times) had beginning with the general Flood; and that therefore the first of the other fifteen reached the Creation, or soon after it. To which conjecture of Mercator, Pererius maketh this answer; That therein Mercator was first deceived, because he taketh it for granted, that the beginning of the sixteenth Dynastie was at once with the general Flood: which Eusebius maketh 292. yeeres after, and in the time of Abraham. Secondly, Mercator maketh the beginning of the shepherds Dynastie (being in number 17.) in the time of their first King, Salis, to have been in the yeere of the World 1846. which

Eusebius findeth in the Worlds age 2140. For the 16. Dynastie was begun but in the 292 yeeres after the Flood, as they account, and continued 190. yeeres. Thirdly, whereas Mercator maketh every Dynastie to endure 15. yeeres, Eusebius reckoneth many of them at lesse than 100. yeeres: for the 28. had but sixe yeeres, the 29. but 20. and the 30. but 18. yeeres.

Now Annus in his Supplement of Manethon affirmeth, That all these 15. Dynasties lasted but 162. yeeres: and that the first of the 15. began but in the 131. yeere after the flood: so as where Mercator makes all the 15. to precede the flood, and the 16. to have been then in being at the time of the flood, Annus makes them all after it. But the contrariety of fallhood cannot be hidden, though disguised. For Annus had forgotten his former Opinion and assertion, that it was in the 131. yeere that Nimrod, with the sons of Noah, came into the Valley of Shinar: so he forgets the time which was consumed in the building of Babel: and that before the confusion of Speech there was no dispersion, nor far-off plantation at all. And though he hastily conveyed Gomer into Italy, and Tubal into Spaine, in the tenth yeere of Nimrods reigne: (which was ten yeeres after his arrival into Babilonia) yet herein he is more unadvised. For he makes Egypt posselt, and a government established in the very first yeere of the arrival of Nimrod into Shinar, before all partition, or any expedition far off or neere in question: for from thence (that is, from Babel) did the Lord scatter them upon all the earth.

## ||. IV.

Against Pererius: that it is not unlikely, but that Egypt was peopled within 200. yeeres after the Creation; at least, that both it, and the most parts of the World were peopled before the Flood.

But whereas Pererius seeketh to overthrow this Antiquity of the Egyptians touching their Dynasties, (which Eusebius doth not altogether destroy, but lessen) I do not find any great strength in this opinion of Pererius: (to wit) that it was either unlikely or impossible that Egypt should be peopled within 100. or 200. yeeres after Adam, in the first Age. And whereas he supposeth that it was not inhabited at all before the general Flood, I do verily beleeeve the contrary: and that not onely of Egypt, but the better part of all World was then peopled: Pererius his words are these; *Quomodo enim primos mundi ducentos, vel etiam centum annos Adami proles adeo multiplicari potuit, ut ad Egyptum usque habitandam & complendum propagata sit, &c.* For how could the children of Adam be so multiplied in the first two hundred, or in the first hundred yeeres of the World, and so propagated as to inhabit and fill Egypt? for allowing this (saith Pererius) we must also confesse, that there were then both the Assyrians and other Nations.

Now seeing that the Scriptures are silent herein, and that it is no point of our saving beleefe, it is lawfull for every man to be guided in this and the like questions by the best reason, circumstance, and likelyhood; and herein, as in the rest, I protest that I do not gainsay any mans opinion out of any crossing or cavilling humours: for I thinke it the part of every Christian, rather to reconcile differences, where there is possibility of union, than out of froward subtlety, and prejudicate resolvednesse, to maintaine factions needlesse, and dangerous contentions.

First therefore, for this opinion, that Egypt was not planted so soone after Adam, nor at all before the Flood, I say, that there is no reason why we should give a lesse increase to the sons of Adam, than to the sons of Noah. For their length of life, which exceeded those which came after the Flood double, and (after a few yeeres) treble, is an infallible proof of their strength and ability, to beget many Children: and at that time, they observed, no degrees of kindred, nor consanguinity. And that there was a speedy increase of people, and in great numbers, it may in some sort appeare by this, that Cain, who (being fearefull that the death of Abel would have beene revenged on him) withdrew himselfe from the rest, which were afterward begotten, and dwelt in the Land of Nod, and there, by the helpe of his owne issues, built a City, (called Enoch) after the name of his first-borne. Now if it be gathered that Nimrod came into the Valley of Shinar with so many multitudes, as sufficed to build the City and Tower of Babel: and that to this increase there was given but 130. yeeres by Berofus, and after the account of the Scriptures (reckoning, as it is commonly understood, by the birth of Arphaxad,



*Selah, Heber, and Phaleg*) but one hundred and one year: I see no cause to doubt, but that in the infancie of the first age, when the bodies of men were most perfect, even within 130. years, the same (if not a greater) number might be increased; and so within 70. years after (that is, by such time as the World had stood 200. years) as well *Affria, Syria, and Egypt* might be posset before the flood, as they were within the same or lesse time after it. Neither doth it agree with the circumstance or true story of the *Babylonian* and *Affrian Empire*, that all those people, which were increased in the first 100. or 130. years after the flood, came into *Shinar* and *Babylonia*. For that ever *Noah* himself came out of the East, as there is no Scripture or Authority to prove it, so all probable conjecture and reason it self denies it. Again, those multitudes and powerfull numbers, which *Semiramis* (but the third from *Nimrod*) found in *India*, considered with her own Army of three millions, (and the left not all her Kingdomes empty) do well prove, that if the World had such plenty of people in so few years after the flood, it might also be as plentifully filled in like time before it. For after their own account, *Ninus* governed *Babylonia* and *Affria* but 292. years after the flood of *Noah*. And these Troops of *Semiramis* were gathered out of all those Eastern Kingdomes, from *Media* to the *Mediterranean* Sea; when there had now past from the flood to the time of this her invasion somewhat less or more than 360. years: for much more time the true *Chronologie* cannot allow; though I confesse, that in respect of the strange greatness of *Semiramis* Army, and the incredible multitudes gathered, this is as short a time as can well be given. And if but one half be true of that which is said, That her Army consisted of 1300000. Footmen, and 500000. Horsemen, it must needs be, that long before *Semiramis* Reign, the greatest part of *Asia* (whence her huge Army was gathered) was full of people: yea *Arabia* it self (much part whereof is barren) must long before this time of *Semiramis* have been plentifully peopled; when *Ninus* having a determination to make himself Master of all Nations, entered (notwithstanding) in league with the King thereof: whom therefore he either feared, or sought his assistance. And if *Arabia* were then so well replenished, I see no cause but *Egypt* might also be peopled. Now if we may beleve *Trogus Pompeius* (*Epim. d* by *Justin*) *Egypt* was a most flourishing and magnificent nation before *Ninus* was born. For these be his own words, speaking of *Ninus*: *Fuere quidem temporibus antiquioribus Vexoris Rex Egypti, &c. But there were in times more ancient Vexoris King of Egypt, and Tanais King of the Scythians: of which the one invaded Pontus, the other Egypt. And how full of people all that part of the World was, the Conquests of Ninus witness, who subdued with no small force the Armenians, the Medes, and afterward the Bactrians; yea, all that whole body of Asia on this side India. For Diodorus out of Ctesias numbrell the Armies wherewith Ninus invaded Zoroaster, at 1700000. Footmen, and 200000. Horsemen: & the stories generally shew, that though Zoroasters Army was far short of this, yet it was greater than any that those parts of the world ever since beheld. But to what end should I seek for foreign authority? for no man doubteth but that *Egypt* was posset by *Mizraim*, the son of *Hams*; and that it was an established Kingdom, filled with many Cities in *Abrahams* time, the Scriptures tell us. And sure, to prepare and cultivate a desolate and overgrown ground, to beautifie it with many Cities, Lawes, and Policies, cannot be esteemed a labour of a few daies; and therefore it must be inhabited in a lesse time than 200. years after the flood; and in the same time (if not in a shorter) before the flood. For if so many millions of men were found within 300. years after the general flood; so as not only *Babylon*, and *Affria*, *Bactria*, *Armenia*, *Media*, *Arabia*, *Egypt*, *Palestina*, yea the far-off *Lybia* on the one side, and *India* on the other, and *Scythia* (inferiour to neither) were all filled: into what small corners could then all those Nations be compressed, which 1656. years brought forth before the flood? even necessity, which cannot be resisted, cast the abundance of mens bodies into all parts of the known world; especially where death forbore the father, and made no place for the son, till he had begotten living Nations of his own body.*

¶ V.

¶ V.

Of some other reasons against the opinion of Pererius.

For what a strange increase did the long lives of the first Age make, when they continued 800. or 900. years? Surely we have reason to doubt, that the World could not containe them, rather than that they were not spread over the World. For let us now reckon the date of our lives in the Age of the World: wherein if one exceed 50. years, ten for one are cut off in that passage, and yet we finde no want of people; nay we know the multitude such, as if by Wars or pestilence they were not sometimes taken off by many thousands, the earth with all the industry of man could not give them food. What strange heaps then of souls had the first Ages, who enjoyed 800. or 900. years, as aforesaid? These numbers, I say, cannot be counted nor conceived. For it would come to the same reckoning in effect, as if all those which have been borne in *Brittaine* since 3. or 4. hundred years before the *Norman Conquest* (having such as by accident or by violence were cut off) were now alive; and if to these there were added as many as by *Polygamie* might have been increased. For (to omit, that the Gyants and mighty ones of the first Age observed no law of Matrimony) it is to be thought that those lovers of the World and of pleasure, when they knew the long and liberal time which nature had given them, would not willingly or hastily present themselves to any danger which they could fly from or eschew. For what humane argument hath better perswasion to make men careless of life, and fearless of death, than the little time which keeps them afunder, and that short time also accompanied with so many pains and diseases, which this envious old Age of the World minglenth together, and soweth with the seeds of mankind?

Now if that *Berosus* or *Ammius* may be alledged for sufficient Authours, whom *Pererius* himselfe in this question citeth, then is it by them affirmed, and by *Iosephus* confirmed, that the City of *Enoch* was seated near *Libanus* in *Syria*: and if other parts of *Syria* were peopled in *Cains* time, I see no cause why *Palestina* (which is also a Province of *Syria*) and *Egypt* (which neighboureth it) could be left desolate both all the lifetime of *Cain*, and all those times between his death and the Flood, which were by estimation 700. or 800. years. And sure though this fragment of *Berosus* with *Ammius* his Comment be very ridiculous in many places (the ancient Copies being corrupted or lost) yet all things in *Berosus* are not to be rejected. Therefore *Saint Hierome*, for such Authours gives a good rule: *Bona eorum eligamus, vitemus contraria; Let us choose what is good in them, and reject the rest.* And certainly in the very beginning of the first Book, *Berosus* agreeth (in effect) with *Moses*, touching the generall Flood: and in that first part *Berosus* affirmeth, that those mighty men and Gyants which inhabited *Enoch*, commanded over all Nations, and subjected the universal World: and though that phrase (of all the World) be often used in the Scriptures for a part thereof; as in the second of the *Acts*, That there were dwelling at *Hierusalem Jewes, men that feared God of every Nation under Heaven*: yet by the words which follow in *Berosus*, it is plain, that his words and sense were the same: for he addeth, from the Suns rising to the Suns setting; which cannot be taken for any small part thereof. Again, we may safely conjecture that *Noah* did not part and proportion the World among his sons; or adventure, or left them as Discovers, but directed them to those Regions which he formerly knew had been inhabited. And it cannot be denied that the earth was more passable and easie to travail over before the flood, than after it. For *Pererius* himselfe confesseth, that *Attica* (by reason of mud and slime which the water left upon the earth) was uninhabited 200. years after *Ogyges* flood; whereby we may gather, that there was no great pleasure in passing into far Countries, after the general deluge, when the earth lay (as it were) incopied for 100. or 130. years together. And therefore was the face thereof in all conjecture more beautifull, and less cumbersome to walk over, in the first Age, than after the generall overflowing.

M 2

¶ VI.

## ¶ VI.

Of the words of Moses, Gen. 10. v. ultimo, whereupon Pererius grounded his opinion.

L. 33.

**I** Astly, whereas Pererius draws this Argument out of the last Verse of the tenth of Genesis; And out of these were the Nations divided after the Flood: *Quo significatur talem divisionem non fuisse ante diluvium*; By which it appeareth (saith Pererius) that there was no such division before the Flood; which he also seeketh to confirm out of the eleventh of Genesis, because the division of tongues was the cause of the dispersion of the people. This consequence, *quo significatur*, &c. seemeth to me very weak: The Text itself rather teacheth the contrary: For out of these (saith Moses) were the Nations divided in the earth after the flood; inferring, that before the flood the nations were divided out of others, though after the flood out of these only. But whatsoever sense may be gathered from this place, yet it can no way be drawn to the times before the flood, or to any plantation or division in that age: for if there were none else among whom the Earth could be divided after the flood, but Noah's sons, wherein doth that necessary division controul the planting of the World before it? And whereas it is alledged that the confusion of speech was the cause of this dispersion; it is true, that it was so for that presents; but if Babel had never been built, nor any confusion of languages at all, yet increase of people and time would have enforced a farther-off and general plantation: as Berossus saies well, that when mankind were exceedingly multiplied, *Ad comparandas novum sedes necessitas compellebat*, They were driven by necessity to seek new Habitations. For we finde (as it is before said) that within 300. years after the Flood, there were gathered together into two Armies such multitudes, as the Valley about Babylon could not have sustained those numbers, with their increase, for any long time; all Asia the greater and the lesser; all Scythia, Arabia, Palestina, and Egypt, with Greece, and the Islands thereof; Mauritania and Lybia, being also at that time fully peopled. And if we beleeve Berossus, then not onely those parts of the World, but (within 140. years after the flood) Spain, Italy and France were also planted: much more then may we think, that within 166. years before the flood, in the time of the chief strength of mankind, they were replenished with people. And certainly, seeing all the world was overflowed, there were people in all the World which offended.

## ¶ VII.

A conclusion, resolving of that which is most likely, touching the Egyptian antiquities: with somewhat of Phut (another son of Ham) which peopled Lybia.

**T**herefore, for the Antiquity of the Egyptians, as I doe not agree with Mercator, nor judge with the Vulgar, which give too much credit to the Egyptians Antiquities: so I doe not think the report of their Antiquities so fabulous, as either Pererius or other men conceive it. But I rather incline to this, that Egypt being peopled before the flood, and 200. or 300. years more or lesse after Adam, there might remaine unto the Sons of Mizraim some Monuments in Pillars or Altars (of stone or mettall) of their former Kings or Governours: which the Egyptians having added to the List and Roll of their Kings after the flood, in succeeding time (out of the vanity of glory, or by some corruption in their Priests) something beyond the truth might be inserted. And that the memory of antiquity was in such sort preserved, Berossus affirmeth it of the Chaldeans, and so doth Epigenes. For they both write, that the use of Letters and the Art of Astronomy was known to the Babylonians 3634. years before Alexanders Conquest: and this report Annus findeth to agree, and reach to the time of Enoch, who was born 1034. years before the flood, and wrote of the Worlds destruction, both by Water and Fire, as also of Christ his coming in judgment, as Saint Jude hath witnessed. But leaving these Antiquities to other mens judgments, and every man to his own reason, I will conclude this Plantation of Egypt. It is agreed by all, that it was peopled by Mizraim, and that it took the name of Egypt from Egyptus the sonne of Belus, as aforesaid. Being divided into two Regions, that part from Memphis or Nicopolis to the Mediterranean Sea, was called the inferiour Egypt; surnamed also Delta: because the severall branches of Nilus breaking asunder from one body of the River, gave it the forme

of the Greek letter Delta, which is the form of a Triangle. That branch, which ran toward the North-east and embraced the Sea, next unto the Desarts of Sur & Pharam, had on it the City of Pelusium, where Sennacherib was repulsed: The other branch, which yielded it self to the Salt-water towards the North-east, is beautified by that famous City of Alexandria: The upper part of Egypt is bounded between Memphis and Syene near Ethiopia, and had the name of Thebaida, of that ancient City of Thebes, which (according to Homer) was adorned with 100. Gates, and therefore called *Civitas centum portarum*; and by the Greeks *Diospolis*; in the Scriptures *No-hamon*, which signifieth multitudes of inhabitants, exceeding belief. Josephus calls Egypt *Misraim*; and Herodotus affirms that it had once the name of Thebais: Egypt the third sonne of Ham took the next portion of Land to his brother Mizraim, and inhabited Lybia: whose people were anciently called Phutai, (saith Josephus) and Pliny mentioneth the River Phut in Mauritania: which River from the mountain Atlas (known to the inhabitants by the name of Dyris) he maketh to be distant the space of two hundred miles. It also appeareth in the thirtieth Chapter of Ezechiel, that Phut, Chubb, and Lud were contermini and associates with the Egyptians.

Isrl. s. Ant. c. 7.  
Herod. Euterpe.

L. 5. c. 1.

## §. XII.

Of the eleven Sons of Canaan, the fourth Son of Ham.

## ¶ I.

Of the bounds of the Land of Canaan: with the names of his eleven Sonnes.

**C**anaan (the fourth son of Ham) possieth all that Region called by the Romans *Palestina*; in the Scriptures *Galilea*, *Samaria*, and *Judea*; in the later times knowne by the name of the Holy Land and *Jurie*: the limits whereof are precisely set downe by Moses, Genesis: the tenth, *Then the border of the Canaanites was from Zidon as thou goest to Gerar with Azsah*, and as thou goest unto Sodom and Gomorrah, and Admah, and Zeboim, even unto Lassa. Now howsoever these words of the Hebrew Text (as thou goest) be converted, Moses meaning was that Gerar was the South bound of Canaan, and Zidon the North; Sodom and Gomorrah the East, and the other Cities named, stood on the Frontiers thereof. For Gerar standeth in a right line from Gaza in the way of Egypt, the uttermost Territory of Canaan Southward: and this was properly the Land of Canaan. Now the sons of Canaan which possieth this Country, and inhabited some part of the borders thereof, were in number eleven.

1. Zidon.
2. Heth or Chethus.
3. Jebusi or Jebusans.
4. Emori or Emoreus, or Amoreus.
5. Girgishi or Girgeseus.
6. Hevi or Chiveus.
7. Arki or Harkens.
8. Seni or Sineus.
9. Arvadi, or Arvadeus.
10. Zemari of Samareus, or Tzemareus.
11. Hamathi, or Hamathew, or Chamathew.

Of which the most renowned were the Hethites, Girgishites, Amorites, Hevites, Jebusites, and Perizzites: which Perizzites were defended of Zemari or Samareus, or from some of his.

## ¶ II.

Of the Portions of Zidon and Heth.

**Z**idon the first borne of Canaan, built the famous City of Zidon in Phœnicia, which afterward fell in partition to the Tribe of Aser: for Aser Zabulon and Nephthali had a great part of the ancient Phœnicia distributed among them; but the Aserites could never obtain Zidon it self.

Gen. 10. 19.

Gen. 23.

Gen. 27. 46.

Kin. 7. 6.

The second son of Canaan was *Heth* or *Cethus*: of whom came the *Hethites*, or *Hittites*, one of those seven principal Nations (commanders of Canaan) appointed by God to be rooted out; namely, the *Gergesites*, the *Amorites*, the *Canaanites*, the *Perizzites*, the *Hittites*, and the *Jebusites*. The *Hittites* inhabited about *Bersabe*, and towards *Hebron*, near the *Torrent Besor*, and about *Gerar*, which *Moses* maketh the uttermost limit of Canaan, having the *Desart of Pharan* to the South: for about *Bersabe* (otherwise *Puteus Juramen*, *ti*) four miles from *Gaza* dwelt *Heth* and his Posterity, as far to the North-east as *Hebron*, and *Mamre*, and of *Ephraim* the *Hittite* did *Abraham* buy the field of *Sanahs* buriall. Of which Nation *Rebecca* bewailed her self to *Isaac*, saying, *That she was weary of her life for the daughters of Heth*. The Giants *Anakim* were of these *Hittites*, a strong and fierce nation, whose entertainment by the *Kings of Israel* against them the *Syrians* greatly feared: as in the seventh of the *Kings*, *Israel* hath hired against us the *Kings of the Hittites*.

## || III.

of the *Jebusites* and *Amorites*.

*Jebusens*, the third sonne of Canaan, of whom came the *Jebusites*, and whose principal seat was *Jerusalem* (afterward *Hierusalem*) were also a valiant and stubborn Nation, and held their City and the Country near it, till such time as *David* by Gods assistance recovered both: yet were not the *Jebusites* extinguished, but were Tributaries to *Solomon*.

*Amorens* was the fourth son of Canaan, of whom the *Amorites* took name, who inhabited that Land to the East of *Jordan* below the Sea of *Galilee*, having *Arnon* and the mountains of *Galaad* on the East, and *Jordan* on the West: of whom *Og* (King of *Basan*) and *Sihon* (overthrown by *Moses*) were Princes.

The *Amorites* had also many other habitations disperfed within the bounds of Canaan: as behind *Libanus* in the edge of *Celofyria*, or *Syria Libanica*. They had also their being in the mountaines of *Juda*, and in *Idumaea* near the *Metropolis* thereof, called *Dama*. And hereof it came that all the *Canaanites* were sometime called *Amorites*: as in *Genesis* the fifteenth: *For the wickednesse of the Amorites is not yet full*. And that this was also a powerful Nation, we finde in the *Prophet Amos*: *Yet destroyed I the Amorites before them, whose height was like the height of a Cedar, and bee was strong in the oak*.

Deut. 1.  
Nem. 13.

Amos 2.

## || IIII.

Of the *Gergesites*, *Hevites*, and *Harkites*.

The fifth son of Canaan was *Gergesus*, or *Gergeson*, (otherwise *Girgasi*) who inhabited on the East side of the Lake of *Tiberias*, or the Sea of *Galilee*, where *Ptolomy* sets the City *Gerasa*, which *Iosephus* calls *Geſera*, in the Territory of *Decapolis*. Here it was that *Christ* dispossest the possessed with devils; and the *Gergesites* desired him to depart their Coasts: because their swine, filled with the evill spirits, drowned themselves in the Sea of *Galilee*. *Gergesus* also built *Beritus* (sometime *Geriz*) afterward *Felix India*, three miles from the River *Adoni* in *Phenicia*: in which the *Romans* held a Garrison: and to which *Augustus* gave many large priviledges.

*Hevens* the sixth son, and Father of the *Hevites*, inhabited under *Libanus* near *Emath*. These *Hevites*, howsoever the *Capthorim* expelled a good part of them (as in *Deuteronomy* the second is remembered) yet many of them remained all the War of *Iofua*, and afterward to the time of *Solomon*. For God was not pleased utterly to root out these nations, but they were sometimes made Tributaries to the *Israelites*, and at other times served (in their falling away from the true worship of God) to afflict them: for as it is written, *Judges* the third: *They remained to prove Israel by them, whether they would obey the commandments of God*.

The seventh sonne was *Aracens* or *Harki*, who between the foot of *Libanus* and the *Mediterran Sea*, (over against *Tripolis*) built the City of *Archas*, *Arce*, or *Arca*, afterwards *Aruchis*.

|| V.

## || V.

Of *Sini* and *Arvadi*.

*Sineus* the eight son, *Hierosolymitanus* sets at *Caparofisi*, which *Ptolomy* finds in *Judea*, not far from *Jerusalem*; to the South thereof; (saith *Iunius*). But it is more probable, that *Sineus* founded *Sini*, which *S. Hieronymus* calls *Sini*: *Ptolomy*, *Siniya*: *Mela* and *Pliny*, *Siniyus*; *Brocard*, *Sycon*; (called *Syrochis*) near *Arca*. *Pererius* thinks that *Sineus* inhabited the *Desarts of Sini*, or thereabout; but hereof there is no other certainty, than the report of *Brocard*, who took view of all these places, affirming, that *Sineus* built *Sinochis*, as *Zidon* built *Zidon*. There is also another Nation of *Cine* written with the letter *C* (otherwise *Kenei*) who descended of *Hobab* the son of *Raguel* the *Madianite*, who assisted the *Israelites* in their conduction through the wilderness of *Pharan*. But these *Cine* were admitted among the *Israelites*, and had a portion of Land with the *Nephthalims*, beside their habitations with the *Amalekites*: against these *Cine*, *Balam* prophesied, that they should be destroyed by the *Affyrans*.

The ninth son was *Aradeus* or *Arvadeus*, who in the Isle of *Aradus* built the City *Aradus*: opposite against which Island on the Maine of *Phenicia*, they founded another City of that name, which for opposition was afterwards called *Antaradus*. To this City came *S. Peter* (saith *Clement*) and in this Isle preached the Gospel, and founded a Church in honour of our Lady: but we find no such worke of his in the Acts of the Apostles. Both these two were very famous, and places of Skilfull Sea-men: whom *Ezechiel* remembreth in his prophecies against the *Tyrians*: *The inhabitants of Zidon and Arvad were thy Mariners*.

## || VI.

of *Zemari*.

Of *Samarens*, or *Zemari*, the tenth son, there are divers opinions. Some think that he inhabited in *Celofyria* at *Edeſſa*, and founded *Samarium*, which in *Iofua* is placed in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. There is also *Samarajim* (of the same orthography) upon the Mountaine of *Ephraim* (saith *Beroaldus*) mentioned in the second of *Chr.* c. 13. v. 4. *Berosus*, in *Chro.* which the *Latine* converteth amiss (saith he) by *Semerou*. The *Hierosolymitan Paraphraſt* makes *Samarens* (of whom were the *Perizzites*) the parent of the *Emiffani*, which *Pliny* calls the *Hemiffeni*, in *Celofyria*; and it may be that it was their first habitation, and that they afterwards inhabited those other places before remembered. But that they founded *Samaris*, both the Hebrew Orthographie, and this place in the 1 of *Kings* (speaking of *Omri*) disproveth: *And he bought the Mountain Samaria or Shemeron of one Shemar, for two talents of Silver, and built in the Mountaine; and called the name of the City which he built, after the name of Shemar, Lord of the mountaine, Samaria*. But of all these places I shall speake more at large in the conquest of the holy Land, by the children of *Israel*. Of whomsoever the *Samaritanes* were descended, sure I am, that they were ever a perfidious Nation, and base: for as long as the state of the *Jews* stood up, they always called themselves *Jewes*: when it suffered or sank, they then utterly denied to be of that Nation or Family; for at such time as they were returned from their first captivity, they became a mixt Nation; partly of the Colonies of the *Affyrans*, and partly of the *Naturals*.

## || VII.

of *Hamathi*.

The last of Canaan's sons was *Hamathens*, or (according to the Hebrew) *Hamathi*, of *Hamath*, (saith *Beroaldus*): of which (the aspiration taken away) the same is pronounced *Emath*, whereof *Hamathens* was present. *Iosephus* and *S. Hieronymus* confound *Emath* with *Antioch*: not that *Antioch* which standeth on the River *Oremes*, on the frontier of *Comagena*, between the Mountaine *Cassius* and the Province of *Pieria* and *Seleucia*, of which *Saint Peter* was Bishop, and in which *Saint Luke* and *Ignatius* were borne; but *Antioch*, surnamed *Epiphania*, as *Beroaldus* supposeth, which standeth between *Apamea*

*Apamea* and *Emefa* in *Cassiotis*. Yet indeed, *Emath* cannot be taken for either: for both that *Antioch* upon *Orontes*, and that which, neighboureth *Emefa*, are farther off seated from *Canaan*, than ever any of those Nations straggled. And whereas *S. Hierome* tentheth *Emath*, which he confoundeth with *Epiphania*, in the Tribe of *Nephtali*; it is manifest, that *Epiphania*, which standeth to the North of *Emefa*, hath all the Province of *Laodicea* betweene it and any part of the Land divided. And if *Libanon* it selfe were not shared among the Tribes, then could not *Epiphania* belong unto them: for both the Provinces *Laodicea* and *Libanica*, are between *Epiphania* and any part of the holy Land: and therefore *Emath* to taken could not be a part of *Nephtali*, as in the thirteenth of *Iosua's* directly proved. For *Iosua* counting the lands that remained unpoffest, reckoned all Mount *Libanon* towards the Sun-rising, from *Baalgad* under Mount *Hermon*, until we come to *Hamath*. And this reason (among others) is used, that *Emath* was not in *Nephtalim*, or any way belonging to the children of *Israel*: because *David* accepted the presents of *Toku* King of *Emath*, and (therewithall) conditions of peace: which he would not have done, if that Territory had ever belonged to the children of *Israel*, but would have recovered it without composition, and by strong hand, as he did the rest. But this Argument (as I take it) hath no great weight. For if the promise which God made, be considered, as it is written in *Deuteronomy*, then might *Emath* be comprehended; though seated altogether without the bounds of the land promised, according to the description of *Moses* and *Iosua*: for *Emath* is indeed situate on the other side of the Mountain of *Hermon*, which joyneth to *Libanus*: and is otherwise called *Iturea*. But whereas *Hamath* is named in *Iosua* 19. v. 35. and written in the *Latine* conversion *Iturea*, therein (*saith Beza*) was *S. Hierome* mistaken. *Emath* or *Iturea* is that over the Mountaines, and the City in *Nephtalim* should be written *Hamath*: and so the *Septuagint* (understanding the difference) write it *Ammath* and not *Emath*, the same which indeed belongeth to the *Nephtalims*, seated on the South side of *Libanus*, to the East of *Afcedim*: which City *S. Hierome* writes *Emath*; *Iosephus*, *Hamath*; others, *Emathin*, or *Amathos*, and the people *Cp. 18. & 19.* *Amathiein*; of which (as I take it) *Rabjakeb* vaunteth in the second of *Kings*. Where is the god of *Hamath*?

§. XIII.

*of the sons of Chush (excepting Nimrod) of whom hereafter.*

The Sons of Chusſh were, { Sheba,  
Havila,  
Sabta,  
Raama,  
Sabecca,  
Nimrod. } And the Sons of Raama were, { Sheba,  
and  
Degan.

## II. I.

That most of the sons of Chush were seated in Arabia the happy: and of the Sabeans that robbed Job: and of the Qucene that came to Solomon.

**S**eba or Saba was the eldest son of Chushb, the eldest son of Ham; to make a difference between Him and his Nephew Sheba, the son of his brother Raama or Regma, (or Ragma after Montanus:) his name is written with a single (S) Samech, and Sheba the son of Regma with an (S) asperat, which is the Hebrew Schin. Saba the eldest son of Chushb, Regma his brother, and Sheba the son of Regma, posselt both the shores of Arabia felix. Saba tooke that part toward the Red Sea, as neerest his Father Chushb, and the Land of the Chushites: Regma and Sheba the East coast of the same Arabia, which looketh into the Gulfe of Persia; of which Pliny *Sabaei, Arabum populi; propter thura clarissimi ad utraq; maria porrectis gentibus habitant*; The Sabeans, people of Arabia, famous for their Frankincense, extending their Nations, dwell along both the Sea, (to wit) the Persian, and the Arabian or Red Sea. This Country was afterwards called Arabia, *populi mixtionis, sicut Popellus*. To this agreeth Ptolemy, who setteth the City of Saba towards the Arabian or Red Sea, and the Citie Rhegama towards the Persian; with whom also we may leave Saba: for so much Montanus gathereth out of Ptolemy, because

because he remembreth a Nation (called *Sabei*) neere the *Perſian Sea*; and *Miffabathe* which defended of them. But *Mount-math* ſent *Agua*, or (as he calls him) *Rham*, into *Carmunia*, for which I ſee no reaſon. *Joſephus*, who only attended his owne fantaſies, hath baniſhed *Saba* or *Seba* to the border of *Ethiopia*. But *Beroaldus* thinks it ſtrange, that the *Sabei*, which ſtole away *Job's* Cattle, ſhould runne through all *Egypt*, and *Arabia Petraea*, and finde out *Job* in *Traconitis*, betwene *Paleſtina* and *Ceſoſyria*, 1200. miles off. Now, as this conjecture was more than ridiculous, ſo do I thinke, that neither the *Sabei* on the Red Sea, nor thoſe toward the *Perſian Sea*, could by any meanes execute the ſtealth upon *Job*, which ſoever *Beroaldus* ſhall take for neceſſit. But theſe were to the *Sabei* of *Arabia* the Deſart, where *Guilandinus Melchior* affirmeth out of his own experience, that the Citie *Saba* is ſeated : the ſame which *Ptolomy* calls *Sabe*, now *Semifcaſac*; and from this *Saba* in *Arabia* the Deſart, came thoſe *Magi* or *Wiſe men*, which worſhipped *Chriſt*, ſaith *Melchior*, whoſe words are theſe: *The Magi came neither out of Meſopotamia* (as *Chryſoſtome*, *Hierome*, and *Ambroſe* ſuppoſed) *nor out of Arabia* the Happy, as many wiſe men doe beleeve, *but out of Saba in Arabia* the Deſart : *which Citie, when my ſelfe was there, was* (as I judged it) *called Semifcaſac*. And to approve this opinion of *Guilandinus*, it appeareth that theſe *Sabei* were neighbours to *Job*, and lay fit to invade and rob him. For both the other Nations (as well thoſe on the *Perſian Sea* as thoſe on the Red Sea) are ſo diſ-jointed with large Deſerts, as there is no poſſibilitie for ſtrangers to paſſe them, eſpecially with any numbers of Cattell, both in reſpect of the mountains, of the ſands, and of the extreme want of water in thoſe parts: *Ubi nec homines, nec beſtie videntur, nec arves, imo nec arbores, nec grauen aliquod non viſi montis ſaxo ſi, alius ſimilis, aſpernis*; where there are found neither men, nor beaſts, no not ſo much as birds, or trees, nor any paſture or graſſe, but onely ſharpe, and high, ſtonie, and craggie mountaines. *Beroaldus* and *Perrinus* conceive, that the Queen of *Saba* which came to viſit *Solomon*, was of the *Sabei* on the Eaſt ſide of *Arabia felix*; but the contrarie ſeemeth more probable, and that the ſame was Queen of *Saba* toward the Red Sea; for *Solomon* at that time commanding all that part of *Arabia Petraea*, betwixt *Jadmaea* and the Red Sea, as far downe as *Midian* or *Madian*, and *Ezion Gaber*; and this Queene of *Saba*, which inhabited the Weſt part of *Arabia Felix*, being his neighbour, might without any far travel exent his Territories, free from all danger of ſurpriſe by any other Prince or Nation.

But to avoid tediousness, it is manifest that *Seba* or *Saba*, *Sabta*, *Raama*, or *Regma*, with his Sons *Sheba* and *Dedan*, and *Sabeica*, were all the possessors of *Arabia the Happy*, and the Desert: onely *Havilah* and *Nimrod* dwelt together on the East side of *Cush*, who held *Arabia Petraea*. Now for *Sabta*, there is found of his name the City of *Sabbathiz* or *Sabota* in the fame *Arabia* of which both *Plinie* and *Ptolomy*; who withall name *Sabotale*, within the wals whereof there were sometimes found fixtie Temples. *Ezechiel* joyneth the Father and the son together, *The Merchants of Sheba and Raama were thy Merchants*. And that they were the Eastern *Arabians*, their merchandise witnesseth, formerly repeated in the Chapter of *Paradise*. For *Iosaphath* his fancies, that *Saba* was the Parent of the *Ethiopians* about *Meroe*, and *Sabta* of the *Ethiopians* *Afsabanti*; they be not worthy any farther answer than hath already beene given: especially seeing these Cities, preserving the memorie of the names of *Saba*, and of *Sabta* in *Arabia*, were yet remaining in *Ptolomies* time, though in some letters changed. As also in the coasts adjoyning, the names of other of the brethren of the familie of *Cush*, with little alterations are preserved. In *Arabia* the Desert is found the City *Suba* or *Sava*, (now *Semiscasac*) with the Citie of *Rhegama* for *Rhegmas*; and the Nation by *Ptolomy* himself called *Raaben* or *Raamah*. In *Arabia* the Happie is found the Citie of *Rhegama*, & *Rabana*; which also keepeth the found of *Rhegma*, the Citie of *Saptha* or *Sapta*, not far from the East-coast of *Arabia*: as also the *Metropolis* and chiefe Citie in the bodie of the South part of *Arabia*, called without difference or alteration *Sabatha*, and to the West of *Sabatha* towards the Red Sea, the great Citie of *Saba*; and the Nation adjoyning, *Sabei*; and to the South thereof againe toward the streight entrance of the Red Sea, the Region of *Saba*. To all these his brothers and nephews which were seated on the East side of *Arabia*, *Havilah* by the passage of *Egyris* was a neighbour, to whom he might passe by Boate even unto *Rhegma* the Citie of *Raama*, or *Rhegma*, yet neere the River of *Lar* towards the mouth of the *Persian* Sea, which stood in *Ptolomies* time.

II.

## II.

Josephus his opinion of Dedan, one of the issue of Chush, to have been seated in the West Ethiopia, disproved out of Ezechiel and Hieremy.

And whereas Josephus (whom in this S. Hierome followeth, as not curious herein) saith Dedan the son of Raamah into West Ethiopia, it is strange that Ezech. should couple Sheba, Raamah, and Dedan together; Dedan in the 15. Verse, and Sheba, and Raamah in the 22. Verse, to be the Merchants of Tyre, if Dedan had dwelt in West Ethiopia, which is distant from Raamah and Sheba (the habitation of his father and brother) above four thousand miles. Besides which, the merchandise that the Dedanites brought to Tyre doth not make them naked Blacke-moors. For they of Dedan (saith Ezechiel) were thy Merchants in precious clothes for thy Chariots; and these Westermen Ethiopians never saw cloth, till the Portugals, seeking those Coasts, traded with them: the merchandise of the Countrey being Hides, Elephants teeth, some Gold and Amber, Civer Cats, and Rice, but nothing at all of any manufacture: and all these they exchanged for linnen, or iron chiefly.

But in those dayes, the West part of Africa within the body of the land was knowne onely by imagination: and, being under the burnt Zone, was held uninhabitable. And therefore that the Negroes of the West Ethiopia, which inhabite about Serra Liona, or Niger, could either passe by Sea or Land to Tyre, in the bottome of the Mediterrann Sea, were a strange, or rather a foolish fancy. Now to put it out of dispute that Dedan also dwelt by the rest of the children of Chush, which sears they held by that name in the time of Hieremy the Prophet, let us heare Hieremy his owne words: Fly, ye Inhabitants of Dedan, for I have brought the destruction of Esau upon him. Hereby it appeareth, that Dedan was a Neighbour to the Idumeans: and Idumaea is a Province of Arabia Petraea, and Dedan which dwelt on the North part of Arabia felix, joyined in that part to Petraea, the seat of his Grand-father Chush; which neighbourhood and fellowship of Dedan and the Idumeans, is also confirmed by Ezechiel: I will stretch out my hand upon Edom, and destroy Min and Beelp out of it, and I will make it desolate from Teman: and they of Dedan shall fall by the sword.

Ezech. 25. 15.

## §. XIII.

Of the issue of Mizraim: and of the place of Hieremie, Chap. 9. Vers. 7.

The termination in the Hebrew, is commonly a signe of the plural number, as aim, of the dual.

Cap. 46. v. 9.

After Chush, it followeth to speake of Mizraims sons, whose names (saith Saint Augustine) were plurall, to signifie the Nations, which came of them. Ludim, the elder son of Mizraim, was the Father of the Lybians in Africa: and the rest of his Brothers dispersed themselves into all the Regions adjoining. Among the sons of Shem there is also Lud; but he is differenced from Lud the son of Mizraim by the singular number: the sonne of Shem being written Lud; the sonne of Mizraim, Ludim: and yet these Names and Nations are often confounded, notwithstanding the apparent difference both of Names and Nations. For, that Ludim the son of Mizraim was the Parent of the Lybians in Africa, and that he was seated not far from Mizraim his father, appeareth by the Prophet Hieremy, who joyined them in this sort together: Come up seee Harin, and seee ye Chariots, and let the valiant men come forth, the Blacke-moors, and the Lybians which beare the shield: for those Nations assisted the Egyptians, being of one Parent descended. And in Ezechiel, Phut and Lud are joyined together. Ethiopia (or Chush) saith Ezechiel, c. 30. v. 3. and Phut, and Lud, and all the common people, and the men of the Land that are in league, shall fall with them by the sword: which is as much to say, as the sonnes of Chush, (which were the Chushites) the sons of Mizraim, (which were the Egyptians) and the Lybians (descended of his son Lud) with other the Inhabitants of Egypt and Africa, shall fall together. Hierosolymitanus finds also in Africa a Nation of the Lydians. And I beleeve it: because Hieremy joyneeth the Lybians, and Lydians together in the place before remembred. But Lybia in Africa is by the Hebrews called Ludim (saith Arias Montanus) though 2 Chron. 12. 3. they seeme to be called Lubim or Lubei, a name somewhat neere the word Lybies, and by which it may seeme that the truest writing

writing is, not Lybies, but Lybies. Neither is it here to be omitted, that Pintus (upon the thirtieth of Ezechiel) understandeth that which is spoken in the third Verse of Lud, not to be meant of the Lybians at all: for he will have this threatening to be meant against the people of Lyda, a City (saith he) between Egypt and Palestina, which opinion I could not mislike, if the City of Lyda were so seated. But Lyda (which should be written Lyda with a double D, and is the same City which was afterward Daispolis, in which S. Peter cured Aenes of the palsey) standeth neere the Torrent Gans, not far from Joppe the Port of Hierusalem. Yet it is not impossible but that this City might have Lud for the Founder. For there are many Cities of one name founded in all the Regions of the World, and far asunder; as after the names of Alexander, Seleucus, and Antiochus, many Cities called Alexandria, Seleucia, and Antiochia, so divers others. S. Hierome maketh Lehabim to be the Father of Lybia, who was the third son of Mizraim: and so doth Postellus; and either opinion may be true.

The rest of Mizraims sons have no proper Countries given them in the Scriptures, saving Casubim and Caphthorim, of whom came the Philistims, whom the Scriptures call Peleth.

These Casubim inhabited Cassotis, a Region lying in the enterence of Egypt from Palestina, in which the Lake Sirbonis, and the Mountain Cassius are found, not far from whence Pompey was buried.

Caphthorim seated neer Casubim in that Tract of Egypt called Setbrotis, not far from Pelusium. Strabo calls it Setbrotis; Stephanus and Pliny, Setbrotis, of the City Sethron: which Ortelius takes to be the same which Ptolomy calls Hercules parva. Of the Casubim and Caphthorim came the Philistims, which are called by the Septuagint Allophylis (which is) Alienigenae, Strangers, or of a strange kindred. These Philistims inhabited the South part of the holy Land towards Egypt, of whom Palestina tooke name. For the Hebrews (saith Isidore) doe not use the letter (P) but in stead of it (ph). Their principall Cities were Gaza, Ascalon, Azotus, Geth, and Accaron: and the people of them called Gasei, Ascalonites, Azotii, Gethai, and Accaronites: Isidore affirmes, that Ascalon was first called Philistim: and of that City the Country adjoining. But where Isidore had it, I know not.

The first knowne King of the Philistims, was that Abimelech, who had a liking to Abraham's wife; with whom Abraham made a covenant and league. This Abimelech dwelt indeed at this time in Gerar; but it is written that he was also King of the Philistims, in these words: Wherefore Isaac went to Abimelech King of the Philistims unto Gerar. Now in regard that this or some ancienter Abimelech governed the commonwealth greatly to his glory, the rest of his successors called themselves by the same name. The Philistims commanded that Tract of Land upon the mediterrann Sea to the Northward, from the Castle of Pilgrims (otherwise Casarea Palestina, or Straton's Tower) which was the South border of Phenicia, to Gaza, or to the River of Egypt. The Anakims or strong Gyants were of these Philistims: and Goliath was of Geth, one of the five Cities above named. They had sometimes five Kings, saith Lyrannus. They mastered the Israelites at severall times above 150. yeeres, and kept them Tributaries, till they were weakened by Sampson and Samuels; but in the end, this yoke was taken off by David, and laid on themselves.

It is objected, that because these Cities and the Countries adjoining, were held by the sons of Mizraim, therefore did the Israelites dispossesse the sons of Mizraim, and not of Canaan, by forcing those places.

To this I faith Pererius, that although the Palestines or Philistims held it in the time of Josiah, yet at the time of the promise it was possit by the Canaanites, as in the second of Deuteronomy. The Hevites dwelt in the Villages unto Gaza. And what marvell, if the Canaanites being the greater part, the denomination were from them? For that the Philistims were of Caphthor, and so of Mizraim, and not of Canaan, besides Moses, the Prophet Hieremy witnesseth: The Lord will destroy the Philistims: the remnant of the issue of Caphthor: and in like manner in the ninth of Amos, the Philistims are said to be the reliques of Caphthorim: Have not I brought up Israel out of the Land of Egypt, and the Philistims from Ainos? v. 9. v. 7. Caphthor, and Atram from Kir? so I read this place with divers of the learned. For whereas the Vulgar hath, and Palestinos de Cappadocia, & Syros de Cyrene, this conversion Beroaldus condemneth; where Caphthor is taken for Cappadocia, and Cyrene for Kir. For Cyrene is a City directly West from Egypt, betwene Ptolomais or Barca and Apollonia: but Kir is in Asia under the Assyrians: Junius hath it Kir, and not Cyrene: and so hath the Geneva.

But

Of which see  
in the second  
Book, Chap.  
Sect. 3. ll. 5.

Cap. 26. v. 9.

But *Peterius* calls Caphtorim Cappadocia, according to the Vulgar translation, to which he is bound: and yet it is not altogether improbable if he mean Cappadocia in *Palæstina*, and not that Cappadocia by the Sea Pontus in the North of Asia the Iesse. For whether they inhabited *Sethreites*, or Cappadocia of *Palæstina*, it is not certainly knowne. And sure in this manner he may expound Cappadocia to be ambiguous, as well as he doth *Cyrene*: taking it here not for *Cyrene* in Africa but for a place in Media. For it is written in the second of *Kings*, that *Teglaphlaser* King of the *Assyrians* carried away the inhabitants of *Damascus* into *Kir*: and so *Josephus* seemes to understand this *Kir* for *Cyrene* in Media, calling this *Cyrene* *Media superior*: for it was the manner and policy of the *Assyrians* to transplant the people conquered by them, as they did the *Samaritans* or *Israelites*, and other Nations. And hereof it came that *Kir* was called *Syria Media*: because the *Syrians* by the *Assyrians* were therein captured.

## §. X V.

Of the issue of Sem.

## ||. I

Of *Elam*, *Assur*, *Arphaxad*, and *Lud*.

It remaineth lastly to speake of the Sons of *Sem*, who are these:

1. *Elam*, of *Elam*,
2. *Assur*,
3. *Arphaxad*,
4. *Lud*, and
5. *Aram*.

The posterity of *Sem*, *Moses* recounteth after the rest: because from them he proceeded in order with the Genealogie and Story of the *Hebrewes*: (For of *Sem* was *Abraham* descended.)

Of these five sons, the Scriptures remember the length of the life of *Arphaxad* only, and only the children of him & *Aram*; the rest are barely spoken of by rehearsal of their names, saving that it may be gathered, that *Assur* (who was supposed to found *Ninive*) was also said to be the Father of the *Assyrians*, whose issues, and the issues of *Cham*, instantly contended for the Empire of the East: which sometimes the *Assyrians*, sometimes the *Babylonians* obtained, according to the virtue of their Princes. This is the common opinion, which also teacheth us that all the East parts of the World were peopled by *Assur*, *Elam*, and *Lud* (saving *India*) which I beleeve *Noah* himselfe first inhabited: to and to whom *Ophir* and *Havilah* the sons of *Joſhan* afterward repaired, *His* *ii* *Sem* ab *Euphrate* *fluvio* *partem* *Asia* *usq;* *ad* *Oceanum* *Indicum* *tenuerunt*; These sons of *Sem* (saith *S. Hierome*) held all those Regions from *Euphrates* to the *Indian Ocean*.

Jos. Ant. l. 1. c. 7

Cap. 8. vers. 2.

Psol. Asia tab. 5

Den. 8. 2.

Of *Elam* came the *Elamites*, remembered, *Acts* 2. v. 9. and the Princes of *Persia*; which name then began to be out of use and lost, when the *Persians* became Masters of *Babylonia*: the East Monarchy being established in them. Some prophane writers distinguish *Elam* from *Persia*, and make the *Elamites* a people apart. But *Susa* (which the Scriptures call *Susan*) in *Elam* was the Kings seate of *Persia* (witnesseth *Daniel*): And I saw (saith he) in a vision, and when I saw it, I was in the palace of *Susan*, which is in the Province of *Elam*. This City is embraced by the River *Euleus* (according to *Ptolomy*) in *Daniel*, *Ullai*: and seated in the border of *Susiana*.

*Assur* (as most Historians beleeve) the second son of *Sem*, was Father of the *Assyrians*, who disdaining the pride of *Nimrod*, parted from *Babel*, and built *Ninive*, of equal beauty and magnitude with *Babylon*, or exceeding it. But we shal in due place disprove that opinion. Every mans hand hath bene in this Story, and therefore I shal not need herein to speake much: for the *Assyrians* se often invaded and spoiled the *Israelites*, destroyed their Cities, and led them Captives, as both in Divine and Humane letters there is large, and often mention of this Nation.

But howsoever *Herodotus* and *D. Siculus* extend this Empire, and honour this Nation with

with ample Dominions; yet was not the state of the *Assyrians* of any such power, after such time as *Sardanapalus* lost the Empire. For *Senacherib*, who was one of the powerfulest Princes among them, had yet the mountain *Taurus* for the utmost of his Dominion toward the North-east, and *Syria* bounded him toward the West, notwithstanding these vaunts of *Senacherib* in *Esay* the 37. Have the Gods of the Nations delivered them whom my Fathers have destroyed: as *Gozan*, and *Haran*, and *Reseph*, and the children of *Eden* which were at *Telaſſar*: Where is the King of *Hamath*, and the King of *Arphad*, and the King of the City *Seppharaim*, *Hena* and *Ivab*? All these were indeed but petty Kings of Cities, and small Countries, as *Haran* in *Mesopotamia*: *Reseph* in *Palmyrena*: *Hamath* or *Emath* in *Iuræa*, under *Libanus*: the Isle of *Eden*: *Sepphar*, and others of this sort. Yea, *Neluchodonosor*, who was most powerfull, before the conquest of *Egypt*, had but *Chaldea*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Syria*, with *Palæstina*, and *Phœnicia*, parts thereof. But in this question of *Assur*, I will speak my opinion freely when I come to *Nimrod*, whose plantation I have omitted among the rest of the *Chusites*, because he established the first Empire: from whom the most memorable story of the World taketh beginning.

Of *Arphaxad* came the *Chaldeans*, saith *Saint Hierome* and *Josephus*; but it must be those *Chaldeans* about *Ur*: for the sons of *Cham* posselt the rest. It is true that he was the father of the *Hebrewes*: for *Arphaxad* begat *Shela*, and *Shela*, *Heber*, of whom hereafter.

20 And that *Lud*, the fourth son of *Shem*, gave name to the *Lydians* in *Asia* the less, is the common opinion, taken from *Josephus* and *S. Hierome*; but I see not by what reason he was moved to straggle thither from his friends.

## ||. II.

Of *Aram*, and his Sons.

*Aram* the fifth and last Son of *Shem* was the Parent of the *Syrians*: of which *Damascus* was head. Their name was changed from *Aram* or *Aramiter* by *Syrus* (saith *Enchiridion* out of *Josephus*) which *Syrus* lived before *Moses* was borne; the same which others call the son of *Apollo*. *Mesopotamia* also being but a Province of *Syria*, had the name of *Aram Nabarajim*, which is as much to say, as *Syria duorum fluviorum*, *Syria compassed with two Rivers*, (to wit) *Tygris* and *Euphrates*. The Scriptures call it *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, and *Padan Aram*: and the *Greeks* *Mesopotamia* simply.

*Arise* and get thee to *Padan Aram* (saith *Isaac* to *Jacob*) to the house of *Bethuel* thy mothers father, and thence take thee a wife. *Strabo* also remembreth it by the ancient name of *Aram*, or *Aramea*, as these his own words converted witness: Quos nos Syros vocamus, ipse Judæ. 3. *Paral.* 1. 19. *Psal.* 59. *Strab.* l. 1.

40 Against this opinion, that *Aram* the son of *Sem* was the Father and Denominator of the *Syrians* in general; (and not onely of those in *Syria Inter-Amnis*, which is *Mesopotamia*) some read, *Genes.* 22. l. 2. *Kemuel*, the Father of the *Syrians*: where others out of the original read *Kemuel*, the son of *Aram*. Neither is it any inconvenience for us to understand the word *Aram* here, not for the Nation, but for the name of some one of notes; the rather, because in the history of *Abraham* and *Isaac* (which was in time long before *Kemuels* Posterity could be famous) we finde *Mesopotamia* called *Aram*; and that with an addition: sometimes with *Nabarajim*, and sometimes of *Padan*, to distinguish it from another *Aram*, which (as it seemes) then also was called *Aram*. For whereas *Isaac* thinks in his notes upon *Gen.* 25. 20. that *Padan Aram* ought to be restrained to some part of *Mesopotamia*, (to wit) to that part which *Ptolomy* calls *Ancobariitis* (so called from the River *Chaboras*, which dividing it, runneth into *Euphrates*) the promiscuous use of *Padan Aram*, and *Aram Nabarajim* (which latter appellation questionless comprehends the whole *Mesopotamia*) may seem to refute this opinion: especially seeing the signification of this appellation agreeth with the whole Region. For it signifieth as much as the yoke of *Syria*, which name agreeth with this Region: because the two Rivers, (as it were) yoked together goe along it. The Reliques of the name *Padan* appear in the name of two Cities in *Ptolomy*, called *Aphadana*: (as *Isidore* hath well noted) the one upon *Chaboras*, the other upon *Euphrates*.



The sonnes of *Aram* were,   
*Uz*, or *Hus*.   
*Hul*.   
*Gether*, and   
*Mesh* or *Mes*.

*Hieron. in trad. Hebraic.* *Uz* or *Hus* inhabited about *Damascus*, and built that City, saith *Josephus* and *S. Hierome*. But *Tostatus* mistaking this opinion, both in them and in *Lyrus*, who also followeth *Josephus*, affirmeth that *Abraham's* Steward *Eliezer* was the Founder thereof; though it were likely that *Hus* the eldest son of *Aram* dwelt near unto his father, who inhabited the body of *Syria*. For *Hus* was a Region of the same, adjoining to *Arabia* the Desert, & to *Batanea* or *Tracanit*, whereof the Prophet *Hieremy*: Rejoyce and be glad O daughter of *Edom* that dwellest in the Land of *Hus*. *Hus* therefore is seated beyond *Jordan*, in the East Region of *Tracanit*, adjoining to *Basan*, having *Batanea* *Ganlonitis*, and the Mountain *Seir* to the East, *Edrai* to the South, *Damascus* North, and *Jordan* West: having in it many Cities and people, as may also be gathered out of *Hieremy*: And all sorts of people and all the Kings of the Land of *Hus*. In this Region dwelt *Job*, descended of *Hus*, the son of *Nahor*, the brother of *Abraham* (saith *St. Hierome*) and married *Dina* the daughter of *Jacob*, saith *Philo*.

*Hieron. Lam. 49. 4. ser. 21.*

*Cap. 25. v. 20.*

*Hul* the second son of *Aram*, *S. Hierome* makes the Father of the *Armenians*, and *Gether* the third son, Parent to the *Acarnians*, or *Carians*: which opinion, I alwaies keep the rule not where to set him.) I do not disprove, though I see no reason why *Gether* should leave the fellowship of his own brethren, and dwell among strangers in *Asia* the less. *Junius* gives *Hul* (whom he writes *Chul*) the Desert of *Palmyrena*, as far as *Euphrates*, where *Ptolemy* setteth the City of *Cholle*.

*Gether* (saith *Josephus*) founded the *Bacrians*: but *Josephus* gave all *Noah's* children fathers, to carry them far away in all halt. For mine own opinion, I alwaies keep the rule of Neighbourhood, and think with *Junius* (to wit) That *Gether* seated himself near his brothers, in the body of *Syria*, and in the Province of *Cassiotis*, and *Selenis*, where *Ptolemy* placeth *Gindarus*, and the Nation by *Pliny* called *Gindareni*.

*Junius* also giveth to *Mes* or *Mesh* the North part of *Syria*, between *Cilicia* and *Mesopotamia*, near the mountain *Mafius*. The certainty of those Plantations can no otherwise be known than by this probability, that *Aram* the Father (of whom that great Region took name) planted his sons in the same Land about him: for he wanted no scope of Territory for himself and them; neither then when the World was newly planted, nor in many hundred years after: and therefore there is no reason to cast them in the desert parts of the World, so far asunder. And as necessity and policie held them together for a while; so ambition (which began together with Angels and Men) inhabiting the hearts of their children, set them asunder. For although these sons of *Aram*, and the sons of the rest of *Noah's* children, kept themselves within the bounds of some on large Kingdomes; yet therein every one also sought a Province apart, and to themselves; giving to the Cities therein built their own names, thereby to leave their memory to their Posterity: the use of letters being then rare, and known to few.

In this sort did the pride of the *Spaniards* in *America* cast them into so many Provinces: every one emulating and disdaining the greatness of other, as they are thereby to this day subject to invasion, expulsion, and destruction: so as (*Nova Hispania* and *Pernex* excepted, because those Countries are inaccessible to strangers) an easie force will cast them out of all the rest.

*Chap. 8. Sect. 7.*

*Mes* the fourth son is made the Parent of the *Mæonians*: of whom something hath bin spoken already. *Arphaxad* the third son of *Shem*, begat *Shelah*, and *Heber*. *Heber* had two sons, *Phaleg* and *Jochan*: and in *Phaleg's* time was the Earth divided.

### ||. III.

Of the division of the Earth in the time of *Phaleg*, one of the sonnes of *Heber*, of the issue of *Sem*.

The many people which at the division (at *Phaleg's* birth) were then living, and the through Plantation of all the East part of the World (at his death) hath made a doubt, whether the Earth were divided at either. The *Hebrewes* (saith *Pererius* out of

of *Sedar Holam*, one of their Chronicles) affirm that this partition happened at the death of *Phaleg*: and *Phaleg* was borne in the year after the flood 101: and lived in all 239 years, which numbers added, makes 340. And therefore was in 10 many years after the flood, ere the children of *Noah* severed themselves: But to this opinion of the *Hebrewes*, and the doubt they make how in so few years as 101. (the time of *Phaleg's* birth) so many people could be increased, *Pererius* gives this answer, That if 70. persons of the Family of *Jacob* increased to 600000. fighting men in 215. years, (besides women, children, and impotent persons) how much more is it likely, that so soon after the Flood the children of *Noah* might in a shorter time bring forth many multitudes, having received the blessing of God, Increase and multiply, and fill the earth? What strength this answer hath, let others judge: for the children of *Israel* were 70. and had 215. years time: and the sons of *Noah* were but three, and had but 101. years of time, to the birth of *Phaleg*.

Others conceive that *Phaleg* took that name after the division, in memory thereof: as *Josephus* and *S. Augustine*, who reason in this manner. If the division were at *Phaleg's* death (which happened in the year, which is commonly held to be the 48. of *Abraham*, but was by more likely computation 42. years before his birth) then was the division 38. years after *Nimrod*, who governed 52. years: in the 43. year of whose Reigne *Abraham* was borne. But when *Nimrod* began to rule the *Assyrians*, 80. years before this division (as this division is placed by the *Hebrewes*, *Hierome* and *Chrysostome*) then was the earth so peopled in all the East and Northern parts, as greater numbers have not been found at any time since. For *Nimrod* associating to himself *Ariens* King of *Arabia*, a people who at that time (saith *Diod. Siculus*) plurimum opibus atq; armis præstabant, Exceeded both in riches and bodies of men, subdued many Cities in *Armenia*; received *Babylon* into grace; then invaded *Media*, and crucified *Pharnas* the King thereof, with his Wife and seven Children; vanquished all those Regions between *Ninus* and *Tamir*, the *Egyptians*, *Phenicians*, the Kingdomes of *Syria*, and all the Nations of *Persia*, to the *Hyrcanian* Sea. For the numbers which followed *Nimrod* (already remembred out of *Ctesias*), against *Zoroaster* and others: and *Zoroaster* on the other side, who made resistance with 30. 400000. prove it sufficiently, that if the division had not happened before the death of *Phaleg*, there had needed no division at that time at all. For some of them were so ill satisfied with their partitions, as they fought to be masters of all, and greater Armies were there never gathered than by *Nimrod* and *Semiramis*; wherefore, in this opinion, there is little appearance of the truth.

But for that conceit, that if the division had been made at the birth of *Phaleg*, there were not then sufficient numbers, borne to fill the earth: It was better means, that the earth could be filled every where at the very instant, but by times & degrees. And surely whatsoever mens opinions have been herein, yet it is certain, that the division of tongues and of men must goe neare together with the ceasing of the work at *Babel*: and that the enterprise of *Babel* was left off instantly upon the confusion of Languages, where followed the execution of the divisions; and so neither at the birth nor death of *Phaleg*: for *Phaleg* was borne in the year 101. after the Flood, which was the year that *Nimrod* came into *Shinar*, or ten years after he arrived, saith *Berosus*.

Now if it be objected that *Phaleg* (the Etymology of whose name signifieth division) must have lived without a name, except the name had bin given him at the time of this confusion and partition: to this objection, it may be answered, That the change of names upon divers accidents is not rare in the Scriptures: for *Jacob* was called *Israel* after he had wrestled with the Angels; *Abraham* was first *Abram*; and *Edom*, *Ejau*; and that *Phaleg* being a principal man in this division had his first name upon this accident changed, it is most probable.

And lastly, whereas the *Hebrewes*, *Saint Hierome* and *Chrysostome* account *Heber* for a great Prophet, if that by giving his sonne the name of *Phaleg*, he foretold the division which followed: so this may be answered, that *Heber* deserved any such honour, if he had thereupon so called his sonne: for division and dispersion followed increase of people of necessity, and this Prophecy (if any such had been) might also have reference to the division, which afterwards fell amongst the *Hebrewes* themselves.

But if we give a reasonable time to the building of the Tower and City of Babel, in which time many people (by reason and by demonstrative proof) might be increased; and that upon the fall thereof the confusion and division followed (whereupon Phaleg took name) then in this opinion there is nothing either curious or monstrous.

## II. IV.

Of the Sonnes of Jothan, the other Sonne of Heber.

1. Elmodad.
2. Saleph, or Salep, or Sheleph.
3. Asamath, or Chazzar.
4. Jare, or Jaraab, or Jerath.
5. Hadoram.
6. Uzal, or Uxal.
7. Dicklach, or Diela.
8. Ohal, or Ehal, or Hobal.
9. Abimeael.
10. Sheba, or Seba.
11. Ophir, or Opin.
12. Havilah, or Chavila, and
13. Jobab.

The Sonnes of Jothan were,

All those Sonnes of Jothan (According to Saint Hierome) dwelled in the East parts of the World, or India, even from the River Cophe or Choras, which is one of the branches or heads of Indus.

Gen. 10. 30.

But the certain places of those thirteen Sonnes cannot be gathered out of the Scriptures, the words of Moses being general: And their dwelling was from Mesha as thou goest unto Sephar a Mount in the East. Of all these thirteen Sons, there were onely three memorable; (to wit) Sheba, Ophir, and Havilah. Concerning whose names, to avoid confusion, it is to be observed, that among the sons of Chus, two of them had also the names of Sheba and Havilah. Abraham had also a third Saba, or Seba, his grand-child by his wife Ketura. But Saba the son of Chus, and Sheba the son of Ramea his Nephew, we have left in Arabia Felix: and this Saba the son of Chus upon Tygrii. Saba the grand-child of Abraham was (as some have thought) the Father of the Sabaeans in Persia: of which Nations Dionysius de Orbis situ maketh mention. Primus Sabaei post hos sunt Passagardi: prope orbis sunt Tabei: The first are Sabaei; after these be Passagardi; and near these the Tabei. And whereas it is written: But unto the Sonnes of the Concubine which Abraham had, Abraham gave gifts, and sent them away from Isaac his sonne (while he yet lived) Eastward into the East Country: Hereupon it is supposed, that this Saba the son of Abraham wandered into Persia: for Persia was accounted the furthestmost East Country in respect of India; which also Ovid setteth under the Sun-rising. Yet seeing the rest of Abraham's sons feared themselves on the borders of Judaea; I rather choose to leave Saba the sonne of Abraham in Arabia the Desert, where Ptolemy setteth a Cile of that name.

Gen. 25. 6.

Metam. lib. 1.

Sic de Indis  
reperit  
et in  
Arabia  
et in  
Arabia

But Saba the son of Jothan, the son of Heber, (as I conceive) inhabited India it self. For Josephus Asar in his Periegesis (or description of the World) which he wrote in Greek verse, among the Regions of India findeth a Nation called the Sabaei: Taxitibi inter medias habitant Sabaei: in the midst of these dwell the Sabaei, and the Taxitibi. Dionysius Periegetes also maketh mention of the Sabaei, and setteth them in the East parts of India.

## II. V.

Of Ophir one of Jothan's sons, and of Peru, and of that voyage of Solomon.

Ophir also was an inhabitant of the East India, and (as S. Hierome understands) in one of the Islands plentiful with gold, which are now known by the name of Moluccae. Josephus understands Ophir to be one of those great head-lands in India, which by a general name are called Chalcidius, or Perisula: of which there are two very notorious; Calicut and Malacca. Pererius takes it rightly for an Island, as S. Hierome doth, but

but he sets it at the head-land of Malacca. But Ophir is found among the Moluccae farther East.

Arias Montanus out of the second of Chronicles, the third Chapter and sixth Verse, gathers that Ophir was Peru in America, looking into the West Ocean, commonly called Mare del Sur, or the South Sea; by others, Mare pacificum. The words in the second of the Chronicles are these: And he over-layed the house with precious stones for beauty; and the gold was gold of Parvaim. Juvius takes this gold to be the gold of Havilah, remembered by Moses in the description of Paradise: And the gold of that Land is good: finding a Town in Characene a Province of Sufiana, called Barbatia; so called (as he thinks) by corruption for Parvaim: from whence those Kings subjected by David, brought this gold, with which they presented him; and which David preserved for the enriching of the Temple.

Gen. 2. 11. & 12  
Plin. lib. 6. c. 28.

But this fancy of Peru hath deceived many men, before Morianus, and Plessis, who also took Ophir for Peru. And that this question may be a subject of no further disputes; it is very true that there is no Region in the world of that name: sure I am, that at least, America hath none, no not any City, Village, or Mountain so called. But when Francis Pizarro first discovered those Lands to the South of Panama, arriving in that Region, which Atabaliba commanded (a Prince of magnificence, riches, and dominion inferior to none) some of the Spaniards utterly ignorant of that language, demanding by signes (as they could) the name of the Country, and pointing with their hand athwart a river or torrent, or brook that ran by, the Indians answered Peru, which was either the name of that brook, or of water in general. The Spaniards thereupon conceiving that the people had rightly understood them, set it down in the Diurnall of their enterprise, and so in the first description made, and sent over to Charles the Emperor; all that west part of America to the South of Panama had the name of Peru, which hath continued ever since, as divers Spaniards in the Indies assured me; which also, Acosta the Jesuite in his natural and moral History of the Indies confirmeth. And whereas Montanus also findeth, that a part of the Indies (called Jucatan) took that name of Jothan, who as he supposeth navigated from the utmost East of India to America: it is most true, that Jucatan is nothing else in the language of that Country, but [What is that?] or [What say you?]. For when the Spaniards asked the name of that place (no man conceiving their meaning) one of the salvages answered Jucatan (which is) What ask you, or What say you? The like happened touching Paria, a mountainous Country on the South side of Trinidad, and Margarita: for when the Spaniards inquiring (as all men do) the names of those new Regions which they discovered, pointed to the Hills afar off, one of the people answered, Paria, which is as much to say, as, high Hills or Mountains. For at Paria begins that marvellous ledge of mountains, which from thence are continued to the Strait of Magellan, from eight degrees of North latitude to the 52. of South: and so hath that Country ever since retained the name of Paria.

The same happened among the English, which I sent under Sir Richard Grenewile to inhabit Virginia. For when some of my people asked the name of that Country, one of the salvages answered, Wingandacon, which is as much to say, as You wear good clothes, or gay clothes. The same happened to the Spaniard in asking the name of the Island Trinidad: for a Spaniard demanding the name of that self place which the Sea incomparted, they answered, Caerti, which signifieth an Island. And in this manner have many places, newly discovered, been intitled, of which Peru is one. And therefore we must leave Ophir among the Moluccae, whereabout such an Island is credibly affirmed to be.

Now although there may be found gold in Arabia it self (towards Persia) in Havilah, now Sufiana, and all alongst that East Indian shore; yet the greatest plenty is taken up at the Philippines, certain Islands planted by the Spaniards, from the East India. And by the length of the passage which Solomons Ships made from the Red Sea (which was 3. years in going and coming) it seemeth they went to the uttermost East, as the Moluccae or Philippines. Indeed these that now goe from Portugal, or from hence, finish that navigation in two years, and sometimes less: and Solomons Ships went not above a tenth part of this our course from hence. But we must consider, that they evermore kept the coast and crept by the shores, which made the way exceeding long. For before the use of the compasse was known, it was impossible to navigate athwart the Ocean, and therefore Solomons Ships could not finde Peru in America. Neither was it needfull

for the *Spaniards* themselves (had it not been for the plenty of gold in the East *India* Islands, farre above the mines of any one place of *America*) to sail every year to the West part of *America* thither, and there to have strongly planted, and inhabited the richest of those Islands; wherein they have built a City called *Manila*. *Solomon* therefore needed not to have gone farther off than *Ophir* in the East, to have sped worse; neither could he navigate from the East to the West in those dayes, whereas he had no coast to have guided him.

*Tostatus* also gathereth a fantastical opinion out of *Rabanus*, who makes *Ophir* to be a Country, whose mountains of gold are kept by *Griffins*: which mountaines *Solinus* affirmed to be in *Scythia Asiatica*, in these words: *Nam cum auro & gemmis affluant, Griffes tunc universæ, albes ferocissime, Arimaspi cum his dimicant, &c.* For whereas these Countries abound in gold and rich stones, the *Griffins* defend the one and the other: a kind of People the fiercest of all other; with which *Griffins* a nation of people called *Arimaspi* make War. These *Arimaspi* are said to have been men with one eye onely, like unto the Cyclopes of *Sicilia*: of which *Cyclopes*, *Herodotus* and *Aristeus* make mention: and so doth *Lucan* in his third Book: and *Valerius Flaccus*: and *D. Siculus* in the story of *Alexander Macedon*. But (for mine own opinion) I beleve none of them. And for these *Arimaspi*, I take it that this name signifying one-eyed, was first given them by reason that they used to wear a vizzard of defence, with one sight in the middle to serve both eyes; and not that they had by nature any such defect. But *Solinus* borroweth these things out of *Phlegon*, who speaks of such a nation in the extreame North, at a place called *Gislotiron*, or the Cave of the North-east winde. For the rest, as all fables were commonly grounded upon some true stories, or other things done: so might these tales of the *Griffins* receive this moral: That if those men, which fight against so many dangerous passages for gold, or other riches of this World, had their pericell senses, and were not deprived of halfe their eye-sight (at least of the eye of right reason and understanding) they would content themselves with a quiet and moderate estate; and not subject themselves to famine, corrupt aire, violent heat, and cold, and to all sorts of miserable diseases. And though this fable be feigned in this place, yet if such a tale were told of some other places of the World, where wilde Beasts or Serpents defend mountains of gold, it might be avowed. For there are in many places of the World, especially in *America*, many high and impassable mountains, which are very rich and full of gold, inhabited onely with Tygers, Lions, and other ravenous and cruel beasts: unto which if any man ascend (except his strength be very great) he shall be sure to finde the same war which the *Arimaspi* make against the *Griffins*: not that the one or other had any sense of the gold, or seek to defend that metall, but being disquieted, or made afraid of themselves or their young ones, they grow enraged and adventurous. In like sort it may be said that the *Alegartos*, (which the *Egyptians* call the *Crocodyles*) defend those pearls which lye in the Lakes of the Inland: for many times the poor *Indians* are eaten up by them, when they dive for the pearl. And though the *Alegartos* know not the pearl, yet they find favour in the flesh and blood of the *Indians*, whom they devour.

### ¶. VI.

Of *Havilah* the sonne of *Joctan*, who also passed into the East Indies: and of *Metha* and *Sepher* named in the bordering of the Families of *Joctan*: with a conclusion of this discourse touching the plantation of the World.

OF *Havilah* the sonne of *Joctan*, there is nothing else to be said, but that the general opinion is, that he also inhabited in the East India in the Continent, from which *Ophir* pass into the Islands adjoining. And whereas *Ganges* is said to water *Havilah*, it is meant by *Havilah* in the East India, which took name of *Havilah* the son of *Joctan*: but *Havilah*, which *Pison* compasseth, was so called of *Havilah*, the son of *Chub*, as is formerly proved by this place of Scripture: *Saul smote the Amalekites from Havilah as thou comest to Shur, which is before Egypt.* But that *Saul* ever made War in the East India, no man hath suspected. For an end we may conclude, that of the thirteen sons of *Joctan*, these three, *Saba*, *Havilah*, and *Ophir*; though at the first seated by their brethren about the hill *Mafus* or *Mesb*, *Gen. 10. 30.* (to wit) between *Cilicia* and *Mesopotamia*; yet at length either themselves or their issues removed into the East India, leaving the other

other Families of *Joctan*, to fill the Countries of their first plantation, which the Scripture defines to have been from *Mesb* unto *Sephar*. And although *S. Hierome* takes *Mesb* to be a Region of the East India, and *Sephar* a Mountain of the same (which Mountain, *Montanus* would have to be the *Andes* in *America*) those fancies are far beyond my understanding. For the word (*East*) in the Scriptures, where it hath reference to *Judea*, is never farther extended than into *Persia*. But *Mesb* is that part of the Mountain of *Mafus* in the North of *Mesopotamia*, out of which the River *Chaboras* springeth, which runneth by *Charra*: and in the same Region we also finde for *Sephar* (remembered by *Moses*) *Sipphara* by *Plolony*, standing to the East of the Mountain *Mafus*, from whence *Joctan* having many sons, some of them might pass into *India*, hearing of the beauty and riches thereof. But this was in processe of time.

The other fashion of planting I understand not, being grounded but upon mens imaginations, contrary to reason and possibility. And that this Mountain in the East was no farther off than in those Regions before remembered, it appeareth by many places of the Scripture where the same phrase is used: as in *Numbers 23*. *Balac the King of Moab hath brought me from Aram, out of the mountaine of the East*; which was from the East part of *Mesopotamia*. For *Balac* brought *Balaam* out of *Mesopotamia*, (witness this place of *Deuteronomie*;) *Because they hired Balaam the sonne of Beor, of Pethor in Aram Nabarrim, to curse thee*: for *Aram Nabarrim* was *Syria* *superiorum*, which is *Mesopotamia*, as

This plantation of the World after the flood doth best agree (as to me it seems) with all the places of Scripture compared together. And these be the reports of reason and probable conjecture; the guides which I have followed herein, and which I have chosen to goe after; making no valuation of the opinions of men, conducted by their own fancies, be they ancient or moderne. Neither have I any end therein, private or publick, other than the discovery of truth. For as the partiality of man to himself hath disguised all things: so the factious and hireling Historians of all Ages (especially of these latter times) have by their many volumes of untrue reports left *Honour* without a monument, and *Verue* without memory: and (in stead thereof) have erected *Statues* and *Trophies* to those, whom the darke forgetfulness ought to have buried, & covered over for evermore. And although the length & dissolving nature of time hath worn out or changed the names and memory of the Worlds first planters after the flood (I mean the greatest number and most part of them) yet all the footsteps of Antiquity (as appears by that which hath been spoken) are not quite worn out nor over-grown: for *Babylon* hath to this day the found of *Babel*; *Phoenicia* hath *Zidon*, to which City the eldest son of *Canaan* gave name; so hath *Cilicia*, *Tharsis*; and the *Armenians*, *Medes*, *Hiberians*, *Cappadocians*, *Phrygians*, the *Syrians*, *Idumeans*, *Libyans*, *Moors*, and other Nations, have preserved from the death of forgetfulness some signes of their first Founders and true Parents.

## CHAP. IX.

Of the beginning and establishing of Government.

### § I.

Of the proceeding from the first Government under the eldest of Families to Regall, and from Regall absolute, to Regall tempered with Lawes.

IT followeth now to entreat how the World began to receive Rule and Government, which (while it had scarcitie of people) under-went no other Dominion than Paternity and Elderhip. For the Fathers of Nations were then as Kings, and the eldest of Families as Princes. Hereof it came; that the word (*Elder*) was alwayes used both for the Magistrate, and for those of Age and Gravity: the same bearing one signification almost in all Languages. For in the eleventh of *Numbers*, God commanded *Moses* to gather together 70. of the Elders of the people, and

Gover-

Governour over them: the Hebrew bearing the same sense which the Latine word *Senex* or *Seniores* doth. So it is written in *Susanna*, *Then the Assembly beleev'd them as those that were the Elders and Judges of the people.* And so in the words of those false Judges and witnesses to *Daniel*, *Shew it unto us, seeing God hath given thee the office of an Elder.* Demosthenes useth the same word for the Magistrate among the Grecians. *Cicero* in *Cato* giveth two other reasons for this appellation: *Apud Lacedæmonios qui amplissimum Magistratum gerunt, ut sunt, sic etiam appellantur Senes; Among the Lacedæmonians: the chiefe Magistrates, as they were; so they are called Eldermen:* and again, *Ratio & prudentia nisi essent in senibus, non summum Concilium Majores nostri appellassent Senatum; If reason and advisement were not in old men, our Ancestours had never called the highest Councell by the name of a Senate.*

But though these reasons may well be given, yet we doubt not but in this name of (Elders) for Governours or Counsellours of State, there is a sign that the first Governours were the Fathers of Families; and under them the eldest Sons. And from thence did the French, Italian, and Spaniard take the word (*Signor*) and out of it (*Seignourie*) for Lordship and Dominion: signifying (according to *Loysseu*) puissance in propriety, or proper power. The kinds of this *Seignourie*, *Seneca* makes two: the one, *Potestas aut imperium*, Power or command: the other, *Proprietas aut dominium*; Propriety or mastership: the correlative of the one is the subject of the other the slave. *Ad Cæsarem* (saith he) *Potestas omnium pertinet; ad singulos proprietas; Cæsar hath power over all, and every man propriety in his owne:* and again; *Cæsar omnia imperio possidet, singuli domino; Cæsar holdeth all in his power, and every man possesseth his owne.* But as men and vice began abundantly to increase: so obedience (the fruit of natural reverence, which but from excellent seed seldom withered and fell away. And the soft weapons of paternal persuasions (after mankind began to neglect and forget the Original and first giver of life) became in all over-weak, either to resist the first inclination of evill, or after (when it became habitual) to constrain it. So that now, when the hearts of men were onely guided and steered by their own fancies, and tost to and fro on the tempestuous Seas of the World, while wisdom was severed from power, and strength from charity: Necessity (which bindeth every nature but the immortal) made both the wise and foolish understand at once, that the estate of reasonable men would become far more miserable than that of beasts, and that a general flood of confusion would a second time overflow them, did they not, by a general obedience to order and dominion, prevent it. For the mighty, who trusted in their own strengths, found others again (by interchange of times) more mighty than themselves: the feeble fell under the forcible; and the equall from equall received equal harms. In somuch that the licentious disorder (which seemed to promise a liberty upon the first acquaintance) proved upon a better triall, no less perillous than unindurable bondage.

These Arguments by Necessity propounded, and by Reason maintained and confirmed, perswaded all nations which the Heavens cover, to subject themselves to a Master, & to Magistracy in some degree. Under which Government, as the change (which brought with it lesse evill, than the former mischief) was generally pleasing: so time (making all men wise that observe it) found some imperfection and corrosive in this cure. And therefore the same Necessity which invented, and the same Reason which approved sovereign power, bethought it self of certain equall rules, in which Dominion (in the beginning boundless) might also discern her own limits. For before the invention of Lawes, private affections in supream Rulers made their own fancies both their Treasurers and Hangmen: measuring by this yard, and waighing in this ballance, both good and evill.

For as wisdom in Eldership preceded the rule of Kings; so the will of Kings forewent the inventions of Lawes. *Populus nullis legibus tenebatur: arbitria principum pro legibus erant; The people were not governed by any other lawes than the wills of Princes.* Hence it followed, that when Kings left to be good, neither did those mens vertues value them which were not fancied by their Kings, nor those mens vices deforme them that were. *Amor interdum nimis videt, interdum nihil videt; Love sees one while too much, another while steeke nothing.* Hence it came to passe, that after a few yeares (for direction and restraint of Royal power) Lawes were established: and that Government which

Necessitas est  
firmum indicium  
et immutabile  
providentia  
potestatis.

THE SONES OF IAVAN WICH PLANTED  
THRACE MA CEDON EPIRVS AND  
THE REST OF GREECE SENT  
COLLON<sup>13</sup> WEST WARD INTO THE  
BODIE OF EVROPE

# THE EVXIN SEA

TIRAS peopled  
THRACE  
Constantinople

CETHIM or KITTIM  
the 3 form of IAVAN peop-  
led MACEDON by a second  
plantation

EPHVS planted by the  
Issues of DODANIM from  
RODES

**I**AVAN  
is second  
elimination

ELISA  
planted

MAGOG from Hierapolis  
in SYRIA - planted LYDIA

IAVAN planted IONIA  
and then GRECE.

first planted by  
DODANIM who  
afterward sent colonies

CYPRVS

## THE MEDITERAN SEA

## THE AFRICAN SEA

PHYT the father  
of the MORITANIANS  
whose offsprings peopled the  
regions adjoining, as their  
numbers increased

A F R I C A

**LVDIM**  
The first borne of  
**MISRAIM** was the  
parent of the **LY**  
**BYANS**.

*The passage of*

AEGYPT first dis-  
fer by CHAM and his  
sons MIZRAIM by which  
names the scriptures  
know it. Also Plutarch in  
Criside out of the holy books  
of the AEGYPTIAN'S wun-  
test that it had the name of  
CHEMIA for CHAMIA  
it was in aftertimes called  
AERIA. POTAMIA and  
GIA. Stephanus and Ebstius  
insisted it MELAMPODES  
Apollonius MYARA others  
THEBAE of Herodotus and  
the Egypt. and now by the  
name of SYCHERITE.

LIBYA INTERIOR

**LIBIA INTERIOR  
AND ÆTHIOPIA RE-  
PLED IN PROCE-  
SS TIME BY LYDIA HART  
AND THEIR ISSUE.**

ÆTHIOPIA

OVY<sup>1</sup> SIA THE LESS WERE  
THE<sup>2</sup> R<sup>3</sup>N<sup>4</sup> REGIONS<sup>5</sup> PLANTED

# THE CASPIAN SEA

ARMENIA  
MAJOR

TAVRVS

**MAIIVS MONS.**  
 From this mountain of Maius  
 to Chaine uppon Euphrates. and  
 unto Sephar aduyning dwelt the  
 sons of IOCTAN all but OPHIR  
 and HAVILAH who inhabited the

NINIVE

**BABEL** *Wher*  
**NIMROD** *seated himse*  
*and thence built* **ACHAD**  
**ERECH** **CHALNE** *and*  
*then* **NINIVE**  
**ERECH**

**SVSAN**

ARABIA  
ESARTY

VR. Ptolema VR.  
CHOA *When the issues of*  
SEM as many as came  
into Shinaar first seated  
Who by ARPHAXAD  
Were afterward the fathers  
of the HEBBRES.

SABA the plantation,  
of SABA or SEBA the  
Eldesi son of CHVS

**SABATHA**  
the plantation of Sabat  
the 3. form of CHVS

R.HABNA RHEGMA

ARABIA THE HAPPY

BY COLONIES SENT OVT BY SABA RHEGMA  
AND THE REST OF THE SONS OF CHVS WAS  
THE REST OF ARABIA THE HAPPIE PEOPLED

ADEN

had this mixture of equality (holding in an even ballance supreme power and common right) acquired the title of Regall: the other (which had it not) was knowne for Tyrannicall: the one God established in favour of his people: the other he permitted for their affliction.

In the infancy of this Regall authority, Princes as they were chosen for their vertues only, so did they measure their powers by a great deale of moderation. And therefore (saith Fabius Pictor) *Principes, quia iusti erant, & religionibus diviti, iure habiti Dei & dei.* *Princes because they were just and religious, were rightly accounted and called Gods.*

And though (speaking humanely) the beginning of Empire may be ascribed to Reason and Necessity; yet it was God himself that first kindled this light in the mindes of men, whereby they saw that they could not live and be preserved without a Ruler and Conduiter: God himselfe by his eternall providence having ordained Kings; and the law of Nature Leaders, and Rulers over others. For the very Bees have their Prince; the Deere their Leaders; and Cranes (by order imposed) watch for their own safety.

The most High beareth rule over the Kingdomes of men, and appointeth over it whomsoever he pleaseth. By me (saith Wisdom, spoken by the son of God) *Kings reign: By me Princes rule; and it is God (saith Daniel) that setteth up Kings, and taketh away Kings.* And that this power is given from God, Christ himselfe witnesseth, speaking to Pilate; *Thou couldst have no power at all against me, except it were given thee from above.*

It was therefore by a threefold Justice that the World hath beene governed from the beginnings (to wit) by a Justice naturall: by which the Parents and Elders of Families governed their Children, and Nephewes, and Families; in which government the Obedience was called naturall Piety: Again, by a Justice divine drawne from the Lawes and Ordinances of God; and the Obedience hereunto was called Conscience: And lastly, by a Justice civill, begotten by both the former; and the Obedience to this we call Duty. That by these three those of the eldest times were commanded, and that the rule in generall was Paternall, it is most evident: for *Adam* being Lord over his own Children, instructed them in the service of God his Creator as we read; *Cain* and *Abel* brought Oblations before God; as they had beene taught by their Parent, the Father of Mankind.

Of the three commendable sorts of Government with their opposites; and of the degrees of humane Society.

What other Policy was exercised, or State founded after such time as mankind was greatly multiplied before the Flood; it cannot be certainly knowne, though it seeme by probable conjecture, that the same was not without Kings in that first Age: it being possible that many Princes of the *Egyptians* (remembered among their antiquities) were before the generall Flood: and very likely, that the civill Oppressions in that Age proceeded from some tyranny in Government; or from some rougher forme of Rule, than the Paternall.

*Berosus* ascribeth the rule of the World in those dayes to the *Gigantes of Libanus*, who mastered (saith he) all Nations from the Sun-rising to the Sun-set. But in the second Age of the World, and after such times as the rule of Eldership failed, thre severall sorts of Government were in severall times established among men, according to the divers natures of Places and People.

The first, the most ancient, most general, and most approved, was the Government of one, ruling by just Lawes, called *Monarchy*: to which *Tyranny* is opposed, being a sole and absolute Rule, exercised according to the will of the Commander, without respect or observation of the Lawes of God, or Men. For a Lawfull Prince or Magistrate (saith *Aristotle*) is the Keeper of Right and Equity; and of this condition ought every Magistrate to be, according to the rule of Gods words; *Judges and Officers shall shew judgement in the Cities: And they shall judge the people with righteousness.*

The second Government is of divers principal Persons established by order, and ruling by Lawes, called *Aristocracy*, or *optimatum potestas*; to which *Oligarchy*, or the particular faction and usurpation of a few great ones is opposed; as the *Dei omni*, or *Patrum viri*, and the like.

The



The third is a State popular, (or Government of the people) called *Democratia*, to which is opposed *Ochlocratia*, (or the turbulent unjust ruling of the confused multitude, sedulously twaying the State, contrary to their own Lawes and Ordinances. These three kinds of Government are briefly exprest by *Tholofamus*; *unius, paucorum, & multorum*; *Of one, of few, of many*.

Now as touching the beginning and order of policy since the second increase of mankind, the same grew in this sort: First of all, every Father, or eldest of the Family gave Lawes to his owne issues, and to the people from him and them increased. These, as they were multiplied into many households (man by nature loving society) joyined their Cottages together in one common Field or Village, which the Latins call *Vicius*; of the *Greeke* *κωμη*, which signifieth a House; or of the word (*Via*) because it hath divers waies and paths leading to it. And as the first House grew into a Village, so the Village into that which is called *Pagus*, (being a society of divers Villages) so called of the *Greeke* *παγος*, which signifieth a Fountain: because many people (having their habitations not far asunder) dranke of one Spring or Streame of water. To this word the *English* Hundreds, or (as some thinke) Shires, answereth not unfitly.

But as men and impiety began to gather strength, and a emulation and pride between the Race of the one and the other daily increased: so both to defend themselves from out-rage, and to preserve such goods as they had gathered, they began to joyne and set together divers of their Villages, invironing them first with banks and ditches, and afterwards with wals: which being so compassed, were then called *Oppida*; either *ab opponendo se hostibus*, Because wals were opposed against Enemies; or *ab opibus*, because thither they gathered their riches for safety and defence: as also they were called *Urbs*, *ab orbis*, because when they were to build a City, they made a Circle with a Plough (saith *Varro*) therewith measuring and compassing the ground which they went to inclose or fortifie. And although *Urbs* and *Civitas* be often confounded, yet the difference was anciently in this, that *Urbs* signified no other than the very wals and buildings, and *Civitas* was taken for the Citizens, inhabiting therein: so called of *Civis*, and that, *ab eo quod multitudo civis, of coming together*. But all inhabitants within these wals are not properly Citizens, but only such as are called Free-men: who bearing proportionably the charge of the City, may by turnes become Officers and Magistrates thereof: the rest goe under the name of Subjects, though Citizens by the same generall name of Subjects are also known. For every Citizen is also a Subject, but not every Subject a Citizen: perhaps also some Citizen (as the chiefe Magistrate, if he be to be termed one of the Citizens) is no Subject; but of this we neede not stand to inquire. The word (Magistrate) is taken *Magistro*, from a *Master*, and the word (Master) from the Adverb *Magis* (as also *Magistrus*, Precepts of Art) or else from the *Greeke* word (*Μεγιστος*) and so the *Greekes* call them *Μεγιστοι*, whom the *Latines* call *Magnates*, or *Magistratus*.

Ebrin. 5.

The office and duty of every Magistrate *Aristotle* hath written in few words. A Magistrate or Prince (saith he) is the keeper of right and equity; but the same is best taught by *Saint Paul*, who expresth both the cause efficient, and finall, (that is) by whom Magistrates and Princes are ordained, together with their duties and office. A Magistrate is the Minister of God for thy wealth; but if thou doe evil, feare: for he beareth not the sword for nought. For he is the Minister of God, to take vengeance on him that doth evil. He also teacheth in the same places That every soule ought to be subject to the higher powers, because they are by God ordained, and that whosoever resisteth that power, resisteth God, the giver and fountain thereof: and shall not onely be therefore subject to the judgment and condemnation of Man, but of God: For ye must be subject (saith he) not because of wrath onely, but also for conscience sake.

Rom. 13. 4.

Yer. 1.

2.

Ibid. v. 5.

Hierem. 29. 7.  
Gen. 20. 17.  
27. 10.

The examples are not to be numbred of Gods punishments upon those that have resisted Authority, by God ordained and established. Neither ought any subject therefore to resist the power of Kings, because they may be taxed with injustice or cruelty: for it pleaseth God sometimes to punish his people by a tyrannous hand: and the Commandment of obedience is without distinction. The Prophets and *Christ* himselfe subjected themselves to the power of Magistracy. *Christ* commanded that all due to *Cæsar* should be given unto him: and he payed Tribute for himselfe and *Peter*. *Hieremy* commanded the *Israelites* (even those that were Captives under Heathen Kings) to pray for them and for the peace of *Babylon*. So *Abraham* prayed for *Abimelech*; and *Jacob* blessed the King

of *Egypt*: And it is acceptable in the sight of our Saviour (saith *Paul*) that ye make Supplications and Prayers for Kings, and for all that are in authority: and if for such Kings as were Idolatrous, much more for Christian Kings and Magistrates. And so much did *Saint Chrysostome* in his Homily to the people prefer Monarchical Government, as he rather commended the rule of Kings (though Tyrants) than that they should be wanting: *Prestat Regem tyrannum habere, quam nullum; Better a tyrannous King, than no King: to which also Tacitus* subscribeth: *Prestat* (saith *Tacitus* in the first of his History) *sub malo principe esse quam nullo; it is better to have a bad Prince than none at all*. And be they good Kings (which is generally presupposed) then is there no liberty more safe, than to serve them: *Nullus enim liber est tutior ulla est* (saith *Claudian*) *quam Domino servire bono: No liberty* (saith he) *more safe for us than to be servants to the verinuous*. And certainly howsoever it may be disputed, yet is it safer to live under one Tyrant, than under 100000. Tyrants: under a wife man that is cruel, than under the foolish and barbarous cruelty of the multitude. For as *Agefilaus* answered a Citizen of *Sparta* that desired an alteration of the Government, That kinde of rule which a man would disdain in his owne house, were very unfit to governe great Regions by.

Lastly, as many Fathers erected many Cottages for their many children: and as (for the reason before remembred) many Households joyined themselves together, and made Villages; many Villages made Cities: so when these Cities and Citizens joyined together, and established Laws by consent, associating themselves under one Governour, and Government; they so joyined, were called a Common-wealth: the same being sometimes governed by Kings; sometimes by Magistrates; sometimes by the people themselves.

## §. III

## Of the good Government of the first Kings.

Now this first Age after the Flood, and after such time as the people were increased, and Families became strong, and the dispersed into several parts of the world, was by ancient Historians called Golden: Ambition and Covetousness being as then but green, and newly grown up, the seeds and effects whereof were as yet but potential, and in the blowth and bud. For while the Law of Nature was the rule of mans life, they then sought for no larger Territory than themselves could compass and manure: they erected no other magnificent buildings, than sufficient to defend them from cold and tempest: they cared for no other delicacy of fare, or curiositie of dyet, than to maintain life: nor for any other apparel, than to cover them from the cold, the rain and the Sun.

And sure if we understand by that Age (which was called Golden) the ancient simplicity of our Fore-fathers, this name may then truly be cast upon those elder times: but if it be taken otherwise, then, whether the same may be attributed more to any one time than to another, (I mean to one limited time and none else) it may be doubted. For good and Golden Kings make good and Golden Ages: and all times have brought forth of both sorts. And as the infancy of Empiry, (when Princes played their Prizes, and did then onely woe men to obedience) might be called the Golden Age, so may the beginning of all Princes times be truly called Golden. For be it that men affect honour, it is then best purchased; or if honour affect men, it is then that good deservings have commonly the least impediments: and if ever Liberality overflow her banks and bounds, the same is then best warranted both by policy and example. But Age and Time do not onely harden and shrink the openest and most jovial hearts, but the experience which it bringeth with it, layeth Princes torne estates before their eyes, and (withal) perswadeth them to compassionate themselves. And although there be no Kings under the Sun whose means are answerable unto other mens desires: yet such as value all things by their own respects, do no sooner finde their appetites unanswered, but they complain of alteration, and account the times injurious and iron. And as this fallth out in the Reign of every King, so doth it in the life of every man, if his daies be many: for our younger years are our Golden Age; which being eaten up by time, we praise those seasons which our youth accompanied: and (indeed) the grievous alterations in our selves, and the pains and diseases which never part from us but at the

grave

Tacit. in Dial.  
de Orat.

Ecclij. 7.

Araob. lib. 2.

Wisd. 6. 7.

grave, make the times seem so differing and displeasing: especially the quality of man's nature being also such, as it adotheth and extollet the passages of the former, and condemneth the present state how just soever: *Fit humane malignitatis vitio, ut semper terra in laude, presentia in fastidio sint; It comes to pass (saith Tacitus) by the vice of our malignity, that we always extoll the time past, and hold the present fastidious: For it is one of the errors of wayward Age: Quod sunt laudatores temporis acti; That they are praisers of fore-past times, forgetting this advice of Solomon: Say not then, Why is it that the former dates were better then these? for thou dost not inquire wisely of this thing: to which purpose Seneca; Majores nostri questi sunt, & nos querimur posteri querentur, everos, esse moras, regnare nequitiam, in deterius res hominum & in omne nefas labi: Our Ancestors have complained, we do complain, our children will complain, that good manners are gone, that wickedness doth reign, and all things grow worse and worse, and fall into all evil. These are usually the discourses of Age and Misfortune. But hereof what can we add to this of Araobius: Nova res quandoq; vetus fiet, & vetus temporibus: quibus cepit nova sunt, & repentina. What soever is new, in time shall be made old: and the ancientest things when they took beginning were also new and sedate. Wherefore not to stand in much admiration of these first times, which the discontentment of present times have made Golden, this we may set down for certain, That as it was the virtue of the first Kings, which (after God) gave them Crowns: so the love of their people thereby purchased, held the same Crowns on their heads. And as God gave the obedience of Subjects to Princes: so (relatively) he gave the care and justice of Kings to the Subjects; having respect, not only to the Kings themselves, but even to the meanest of his Creatures: Nunquam particulari bono servio omne bonum; The infinite goodness of God doth not attend any one onely: for he that made the small and great, careth for all alike: and it is the care which Kings have of all theirs, which makes them beloved of all theirs; and by a general Love it is, that Princes hold a general obedience: For, tota est humani radicatur in voluntatibus hominum. All humane power is rooted in the will or dispositions of men.*

## §. IV.

Of the beginning of Nobility: and of the vain want thereof without virtue.

Vetus nobilitas  
non assequitur  
sed fit.

And with this Supreme Rule and Kingly authority began also other degrees and differences among Subjects. For Princes made election of others by the same Rule, by which themselves were chosen; unto whom they gave place, trust, and power. From which employments and Offices sprung those Titles, and those degrees of Honour, which have continued from Age to Age to these dates. But this Nobility, or difference from the vulgar, was not in the beginning given to the Succession of Blood, but to Succession of Virtue, as hereafter may be proved. Though at length it was sufficient for those whose Parents were advanced, to be known for the Sons of such Fathers: and so there needed then no endeavour of well-doing at all, or any contention for them to excell, upon whom glory or worldly Nobility necessarily descended. Yet hereof had Nobility denomination in the beginning, That such as excelled others in virtue, were so called: *Hinc dictus Nobilis, quasi virtute præ aliis notabilis*. But after such time as the deserved Honour of the Father was given in reward to his Posterity, Saint Hierome judged of the Succession in this manner: *Nihil aliud video in Nobilitate appetendum, nisi quod Nobiles quadam necessitate constringantur, ne ab antiquorum probis degenerent; I see no other thing to be affected in Nobility, than that Noblemen are by a kind of necessity bound, not to degenerate from the virtue of their Ancestors. For if Nobility be Virtus & antique divitiæ; Virtue and ancient riches, then to exceed in all those things which are extra hominem, as riches, power, glory, and the like, do no otherwise define Nobility, than the word (animal) alone doth define a reasonable man. Or if honour (according to L. Vives) be a witness of virtue and well-doing: and Nobility (after Plutarch) the continuance of virtue in a Race or Linage: then are those in whom Virtue is extinguished, but like unto painted and printed Paper, which ignorant men worship in stead of Christ, our Lady, and other Saints: men in whom there remain but the dregs and vices of ancient Virtue: Flowers, and Herbs, which by change of soile and want of manuring are turned to Weeds. For what is found praise-worthy in those waters, which had their beginning out of pure Fountain*

Pint. in Ecclij.

if in all the rest of their course they run foule, filthy, and defiled? *Ex terra fertilis produciuntur aliquando Cicuta venenosa, & ex terra sterili pretiosum aurum; Out of fruitful ground ariseth sometimes poisoning Hensbane, and out of barren soyle precious Gold. For as all things consist of matter and form, so doth Charron (in his Chapter of Nobility) call the Race and Linage but the matter of Nobility: the form (which gives life and perfect being) he maketh to be Virtue, and Quality, profitable to the Common-weale. For he is truly and entirely Noble, who maketh a singular profession of publike Virtue, serving his Prince and Country, and being defended of Parents and Ancestors that have done the like. And although that Nobility, which the same Authour calleth personal (the same which our selves acquire by our Virtue and well deservings) cannot be ballanced with that which is both natural by Descent, and also personal; yet if Virtue be wanting to the natural, then is the personal and acquired Nobility by many degrees to be preferred: For (saith Charron) this Honour (to wit) by Descent, may light upon such a one, as in his own nature is a true Villain. There is also a third Nobility which he calleth Nobility in Parohment, bought with Silver or Favour: and these be indeed but Honours of affection, which Kings with the change of their fancies with they knew well how to wipe off again. But surely if we had as much sense of our degenerating in worthiness, as we have of vanity in deriving our selves of such and such Parents, we should rather know such Nobility (without Virtue) to be shame and dishonour, than Nobility and glory to vaunt thereof. What calamity is wanting (saith Bernard) to him that is born in sin, of a Potshare body and barren minde? for (according to the same Father) Descent from a Potshare body, & male coronate nitorem glorie, &c. Wipe away the painting of this fleeting honour, and the glittering of the ill-crowned glory, that then thou mayest consider thy self nakedly: for thou camest naked out of thy Mothers womb. Camest thou thence with thy Myrtle, or glittering with Jewels, or garnished with Silks, or adorned with Feathers, or stuffed with Gold? If thou scatter and blow away all these by thy consideration as certain morning clouds, which do or will soon pass over, thou shalt meet with a naked, and poor, and wretched, and miserable man, and blushing, because he is naked, and weeping, because he is born, and repining, because he is born to labour, and not to honour.*

For, as touching the matter of all men, there is no difference between it and dust: which if thou dost not believe (saith S. Chrysostome) looke into the Sepulchres and Monuments of thy Ancestors, and they shall easily persuade thee by their own example, that thou art dust and dirt: so that if man seem more noble and beautiful than dust, this proceedeth not from the diversity of his Nature, but from the cunning of his Creatour.

For true Nobility standeth in the Trade  
Of virtuous life; not in the fleshy Line:  
For blood is brute, but Gentry is Divine.

And howsoever the custome of the World have made it good, that Honours be cast by birth upon unworthy Issues: yet Solomon (as wise as any King) reprehendeth the same in his fellow-Princes: *There is an evil (saith he) that I have seen under the Sun, at an error that proceedeth from the face of him that ruleth: Folly is set in great excellency.*

## CHAP. X.

Of Nimrod, Belus, and Ninus: and of memorable things about those times.

That Nimrod was the first after the Flood that reigned like a Sovereign Lord, and that his beginning seemeth to have been of self authority.

The first of all that reigned as Sovereign Lord after the Flood was Nimrod: the Sonne of Chush, distinguished by his name from the rest (according to Saint Augustine) in one of these two respects: either for his eminency, and because he was the first of fame; and that took on him to command others: or else

in that he was begotten by *Chush*, after his other children were also become Fathers; and of a later time than some of his Grand-children and Nephews. Howsoever, (seeing *Moses* in express words calleth *Nimrod* the son of *Chush*, other mens conjectures to the contrary ought to have no respect.

This Empiry of *Nimrod*, both the Fathers and many later Writers call tyrannical: the same beginning in *Babel*, (which is) confusion. But it seemeth to mee that *Apollonius* conceived not amiss hereof: the same exposition being also made by the Author of that work called *Onomasticum Theologicum*, who affirms that *Nimrod* was therefore called *Amarus Dominator*, *A bitter or severe Governour*, because his forme of rule seemed at first far more terrible than Paternal authority. And therefore is hein this respect also called a mighty Hunter: because he took and destroyed both beasts and Theeves. But Saint *Augustine* understands it otherwise, and converts the word (ante) by (contra) affirming therein, that *Nimrod* was a mighty Hunter against God: Sic ergo intelligendus est Gigas ille, Venator contra Dominum; So is that Giant to be understood, a Hunter against the Lord.

But howsoever this word (a mighty Hunter) be understood; yet it rather appeareth, that as *Nimrod* had the command of all those which went with him from the East into *Shinar*: so, this charge was rather given him, than by him usurped. For it no where is found, that *Noah* himself, or any of the Sonnes of his own body came with this troop into *Babylon*: no mention at all being made of *Noah* (the years of his life excepted) in the succeeding story of the *Hebrews*; nor that *Sem* was in this disobedient troop, or among the builders of *Babel*.

The same is also confirmed by divers ancient Historians, that *Nimrod*, *Saphne*, and *Jeban*, were the Captains and Leaders of all those which came from the East. And though *Sem* came not himself to farre West as *Shinar* (his lot being cast on the East parts) yet from his Sons Nephew *Heber*, the name and Nation of the *Hebrewes* (according to the general opinion) took beginning, who inhabited the Southermost parts of *Chaldea*, about the City of *Ur*; from whence *Abraham* was by God called into *Charran*, and thence into *Canaan*.

And because those of the Race of *Sem* which came into *Chaldea*, were no partners in the unbelieving work of the Tower: therefore (as many of the Fathers conjecture) did they retain the first and most ancient language, which the Fathers of the first Age had left to *Noah*; and *Noah* to *Sem*, and his issues: *In familia Heber remansit hac lingua; In the family of Heber this language remained* (saith Saint *Augustine* out of *Epiphanius*) and this Language *Abraham* used; yea, it was anciently, and before the Flood the generall speech: and therefore first called (saith *Celestinus*) *lingua humana: the human tongue*.

We know that *Geropius Becanus* following *Theoporet*, *Rabbi Moses*, *Egyptius*, *Vergara*, and others, is of another opinion; but howsoever we determine of this point, we may with good probability resolve, that none of the godly seed of *Sem* were the chiefe Leaders of this presumptuous multitude. And seeing it is not likely, but that some one was by order appointed for this charge, we may imagine that *Nimrod* rather had it by just authority, than violence of usurpation.

## § II.

That *Nimrod*, *Belus*, and *Ninus* were three distinct persons.

**B**ezo, and out of him *Naucherus*, with others, make many *Nimrods*, *Ensebius* counts him with *Belus*, and so doth Saint *Hierome* upon *Isa*; and these words of *S. Augustine* seem to make him of the same opinion: *Ibi autem Ninus regnabat post mortem patris sui Beli qui primus illic regnaverat* 65. annos; There did *Ninus* reign after the death of his father *Belus*, who first governed in *Babylon* sixty five years. But it could not be unknown to Saint *Augustine*, that *Nimrod* was the establisher of that Empire: *Moses* being plain and direct therein. For the beginning of *Nimrod's* Kingdom (saith he)

was *Babel*, *Erec*, *Accad*, and *Chalne*, in the Land of *Shinaar*; wherefore *Nimrod* was the first King of *Babel*. And certainly it best agreeth with reason, that *Ninus* was the third, and not one with *Nimrod*, as *Mercator* (led by *Clement*) supposed: for in *Ninus* time the World was marvelously replenished. And if *S. Augustine* had undoubtedly taken *Belus* for *Nimrod*, he would have given him the name which the Scriptures give him, rather than have borrowed any thing out of prophane Authors. And for those words of *S. Augustine* (*qui primus illic regnaverat; Who was the first that reigned there*) supposed to be meant by *Belus*: those words do not disprove that *Nimrod* was the founder of the *Babylonian* Empire. For although *Julius Caesar* overthrew the liberty of the *Romane* commonwealth, making himselfe perpetuall Dictator, yet *Augustus* was the first established Emperour: and the first that reigned absolutely by sovereign authority over the *Romans*, as an Emperour.

The like may be said of *Nimrod*, that he first brake the rule of Eldership and Paternity, laying the foundation of sovereign rule, as *Cesar* did; and yet *Belus* was the first, who peaceably, and with a generall allowance exercised such a power. *Pererius* is of opinion, that *Belus* and *Nimrod* were the same, because many things are said of them both agreeing in time: for it was about 200. years after the flood (as they account) that *Belus* reigned; but such agreement of times proves it not. For so *Edward* the third, and his grand-child *Richard* the second, were Kings both in one year: the one died; the other 30 in the same year was crowned King.

And yet the opinion (that *Nimrod* and *Belus* were one) is far more probable than that of *Mercator*; who makes *Ninus* and *Nimrod* to be the same. For it is plaine that the beginning of *Nimrod's* Kingdom was *Babel*, and the Towns adjoining: but the first and most famous work of *Ninus* was the City of *Ninieue*.

Now whereas *D. Siculus* affirmeth, that *Ninus* overcame and suppressed the *Babylonians*, the same rather proveth the contrary, than that *Ninus* and *Nimrod* were one person. For *Ninus* established the seat of his Empire at *Ninieue* in *Assyria*, whence the *Babylonians* might (perchance) in disdain thereof fall from his obedience, whom hee recovered again by strong hand; which was easie: *Babylon* being not walled till *Semiramus* 30 m's time.

—Dicitur altam  
Castris: muris circumfisse Semiramis Urbem.

*Semiramis* with wals of brick the City did inclose.

Further, where it is alledged, that as the Scriptures call *Nimrod* mighty; so *Justine* hath the same of *Ninus*; which is one of *Mercator's* arguments; It may be answered, that such an addition might have been given to many other Kings as well. For if we may believe *Justine*, then were *Pexoris* King of *Egypt*, and *Tanais* of *Scythia*, mighty Kings before *Ninus* was borne. And if we may compare the words of *Moses* (touching *Nimrod*) with the undertakings of *Ninus*, there will bee found great difference betweene them.

For whereas *Mercator* conceiveth, that it was too early for any that lived about the time of the confusion of languages, to have invaded & mastered those Cities so far removed from *Babel*, namely, *Erec*, *Accad*, and *Chalne*: which work he therefore ascribeth to *Ninus*, as a man of the greatest undertaking; and consequently would have *Nimrod* to have been long after the time, in which we suppose he flourished; and both those names 50 of *Nimrod* and *Ninus* to belong to one person; to wit, to *Ninus*: to these things to make some answer. First, I doe not finde that supposition true. That ever *Nimrod* invaded any of these Cities; but that he founded them, and built them from the ground, being the first after the flood, that conducted the children of *Noah* into those parts; and therefore had nothing built or erected to his hands.

Besides, whereas these Cities in many mens opinions are found to stand far away from *Babylon*, I find no reason to bring me to that belief. The City of *Arad*, which the *Septuagint* calls *Archad*, & *Epiphanius*, *Arphul*; *Justine* takes it to be *Nisibis* in *Mesopotamia*: for the Region thereabout, the *Cosmographers* (saith he) call *Aracene* for *Accadene*. Others under-

understand *Nisibis* and *Ninive* to be one City: so doe *Strabo* and *Stephanus* confound it with *Charran*, but all mistaken. For *Nisibis*, *Accad*, and *Charran* are distinct places. Though I cannot deny *Accedene* to be a Region of *Mesopotamia*, the same which *Aris Montanus* out of *S. Hierome* calls *Acad*: and so doe the Hebrews also call *Nisibis*, which seemeth to be the cause of this mistaking. As for the City of *Erec*, which the *Septuagint* call *Orech*, *S. Hierosime*, *Oreg*, and *Paguinus*, *Erec* this place *Junius* understands for *Aracca* in *Sustiana*: but there is also a City in *Camagena*, called *Arace*: and indeed likelihood of name is no certain proof, without the assistance of other circumstances.

Lib. 22.

Concerning the third City (called *Chalneh*) some take it for *Caliniss*: of which *Am. Martellinus*, *S. Hierome* takes it for *Seleucia*; *Hierosolymitanus* for *Ctesiphon*: others doe think it to be the *Agrani* upon *Euphrates*, destroyed and razed by the *Persians*. But let *Moses* be the Moderator and Judge of this dispute, who teacheth us directly, that these Cities are not keinged in so divers and distant Regions; for these be his words: And the beginning of his Kingdom (speaking of *Nimrod*) was *Babel*, *Erech*, *Accad*, and *Chalneh* in the Land of *Shinaar*: so as in the Valley of *Shinaar*, or *Babylonia*, or *Chaldea* (being all one) we must finde them. And therefore I could (rather of the two) think with *Viterbiensis*, that these four made but one *Babylon*, than that they were Cities farre removed, and in several Provinces, did not the Prophet *Amos* precisely distinguish *Chalneh* from *Babylon*: *Goe you* (saith *Amos*) *to Chalneh*, and from thence *goe you to Hamath*, and then to *Gath* of the *Philistims*. The Geneva translation favouring the former opinion, to set these Cities out of *Shinaar*, hath a marginal note expressing that *Shinaar* was here named, not that all these Cities were therein seated, but to distinguish *Babylon* of *Chaldea*, from *Babylon* in *Egypt*: but I finde little substance in that conceit. For sure I am, that in the beginning of *Nimrod's* Empire, there was no such *Babylon*, nor any City at all to be found in *Egypt*: *Babylon* of *Egypt* being all one with the great City of *Cairo*, which was built long after, not far from the place where stood *A Memphis* the ancient City, but not so ancient as *Babylon* upon *Euphrates*. Now that *Chalneh* is situate in the valley of *Shinaar*, it hath been formerly proved in the Chapter of *Paradise*. So as for any argument that may be brought to the contrary, from the remote situation of these three Cities from *Babylon*, we may continue in our opinion, That *Nimrod*, *Belus*, and *Ninus*, were distinct and successive Kings.

## §. III.

That *Nimrod*, not *Assur*, built *Ninive*: and that it is probable out of *Esay* 23. 13, that *Assur* built Or of the *Chaldees*.

Now as of *Nimrod*; so are the opinions of Writers different touching *Assur*, and touching the beginning of that great State of *Babylon* and *Assyria*: a controverſie wearisomely disputed without any direct proofe, conclusion; or certainty. But to me (of whom, where the Scriptures are silent, the voice of reason hath the best hearing) the interpretation of *Junius* is most agreeable; who, besides all necessary consequence, doth not disjoyn the sense of the Scriptures therein, nor confute the understanding thereof. For in this sort he converteth the Hebrew Text: *Erat enim principium Regni ejus Babel, & Erech, & Accad, & Chalneh, in terra Shinaaris: & terra hac prius cecit in Assyriam; ubi edificavit Nimrodus* (which is) For the beginning of his Kingdom was *Babel*, and *Erech*, and *Accad*, and *Chalneh*, in the Land of *Shinaar*: and he bringeth forth of this Land into *Assyria*; and built *Ninive*. So as *Junius* takes *Assur* in this place, not for any person, but for the Region of *Assyria*: the Land being so called in *Moses* time, and before it. For certainly, the other construction, (where the word *Assur* is taken for *Assur* the sonne of *Sem*) doth not answer the order which *Moses* observeth through all the Books of *Genesis*, but is quite contrary unto it. For in the beginning of the tenth Chapter he setteth down the sonnes of *Noah*, in these words: Now these are the Generations of the sonnes of *Noah*: *Sem*, *Ham*, and *Japheth*; who were born after the Flood: then it followeth immediately: The names of *Japheth* were *Gomer*, &c. so as *Japheth* is last named among *Noah's* sonnes, he be eldest, or youngest: because he was first to be spoken of, with whom (having last named him) he proceeds and sets downe his issue, and then the issue of his sonnes: first, the issue of *Gomer*, *Japheth's* eldest sonne; and then speaks of *Junius* and his sonnes: for of the

rest of that Familie he is silent. Anon after he numbrell the sons of *Ham*, of which *Chush* was the eldest: and then the sons of *Chush* and *Mizraim*; and afterward of *Canaan's* leaving *Shem* for the last, because he would not disjoyn the Story of the Hebrews. But after he beginneth with *Shem*, he continueth from thence by *Arphaxad*, *Shela*, & *Heber*, unto *Abraham*, and so to *Jacob*, and the Fathers of that Nation. But to have brought in one of the sons of *Shem* in the middle of the Generations of *Ham*, had been against order; neither would *Moses* have past over so lightly the erection of the *Assyrian* Empire in one of the sons of *Shem*, if he had had any such meaning: it being the storie of *Shenis* sons which he most attended. For he nameth *Nimrod* apart, after the rest of the sons of *Chush*, because he founded the *Babylonian* and *Assyrian* Empire: and in the eleventh Chapter he returnes to speake of the building of *Babel* in particular, having formerly named it in the tenth Chapter, with those other Cities which *Nimrod* founded in *Shinaar*. And as he did in the tenth Chapter, so also in the eleventh he maketh no report of *Shem*, till such time as he had finished so much of *Nimrod* as he meant to touch: and then he beginneth with the issue of *Shem*, which he continueth to *Abraham* and *Isaac*. And of *Junius* opinion touching *Assur*, was *Calvin*: to which I conceive that *P. Comestor*, in his *historia Scholastica*, gave an entrance, who after he had delivered this place in some other sense, he useth these words: *Vel intelligendum non est de Assur, filio Sem, &c. sed Assur (id est) Regnum Assyriorum inde egressum est, quod tempore Sarug proavi Abrahami factum est* (which is) Or else it is not to be understood of *Assur* the son of *Sem*, &c. but *Assur* (that is, the Kingdom of the *Assyrians*) came from thence (videlicet, from *Babylon*) or was made out of it: which happened in the time of *Sarug* the great Grand-father of *Abraham*. After which he reconcileth the difference in this sort: If you take the ancient *Belus* (meaning *Nimrod*) to be the first Erector of the *Assyrian* Empire, or the first Founder thereof, it is true, *Quantum ad initium*; Respecting the beginning; but others conceive that it had beginning from *Ninus*, which is also true, *Quantum ad Regni ampliamentum*; Regarding the enlargement of the Empire. To this I may adde the opinion of *Epiphanius*, confirmed by *Cedrenus*, who takes *Assur* to be the son of *Nimrod*: and so doth *Metochius*, and *Viterbiensis*, *Saint Hierome*, and *Cyrillus*, and now lastly *Tornicius*: who (saith he) took upon him that name of *Assur* after he had beaten the *Assyrians*, as *Scipio* did of *Africanus*, after his Conquest in *Africa*: and that *Assur* was a common name to the Kings of *Assyria*, as it appeareth by many Scriptures, as *Psalm* 81. *Esay* 10. *Ose* 5. &c. But to help the matter, he makes *Nimrod* of the race of *Shem*, and the sonne of *Irari*. But *Rabanus Maurus*, who was Archbishop of *Mentz* in the yeare of Christ 854. an ancient and learned Writer, understands this place with *Comestor*, or *Comestor* with him, agreeing in substance with that translation of *Junius*: to which words of *Moses* he giveth this sense: *De hac terra Assyriorum pullulavit imperium, qui ex nomine Nini, Belis filii, Ninus condiderunt urbem magnam, &c.* Out of this Land grew the Empire of the *Assyrians*, who built *Ninus* the great Citie, so named of *Ninus* the sonne of *Belus*. On the contrary *Calvin* objecteth this place of *Esay*: Behold the Land of the *Chaldeans*, this was no people, *Assur* founded it by the inhabitants of the Wilderness; than which there is no one place in the Scriptures; that hath a greater diversitie in the translation and understandings; inasmuch as *Michael de Palatio* upon *Esay* (though in all else very diligent) passeth it over. But *Calvin* seemeth hereby to infer; that because *Assur* founded the state of the *Chaldeans*, therefore also *Assur* rather than *Nimrod* established the *Assyrian* Empire, and built *Ninive*: contrary to the former translation of *Junius*. & to his own opinion. Now out of the *Vulgar* (called *Hieromes* translation) it may be gathered, that *Assur* both founded and ruined this Estate or City of the *Chaldeans*, by *Esay* remembered unto which City, People, or State, he plainly telleth the *Tyrans* that they cannot trust, or hope for relief thence. Or rather it may be taken, that the Prophet maketh this City of *Chaldea*, and that Estate, an example unto those *Phenicians*; whom in this place he fore-telleth of their ruine; which City of *Chaldea* being of strength, & carefully defended, was (notwithstanding) by the *Assyrians* utterly wasted and destroyed: whereby he giveth them knowledge, and fore-telleth them, that their own City of *Tyre* (invincible, as themselves thought) should also soon after be over-turned by the same *Assyrians*: as (indeed) it was by *Nabuchodonosor*. And these be the words after *Hierome*: *Ece terra Chaldeorum, talis populus non fuit, Assur fundavit eam in capivitatem produxerunt robustos ejus, suffoderunt domos ejus, posterunt rami in riuum*; (which is)

Tornel. Annal. fact. in Gen. 10.

Echold

Behold the Land of the Chaldeans, such a people there were not (or, this was no people, after the Geneva) *Affur* (or the *Affryans*) founded it, they carried away their strong men captive, they undermined their houses, and ruined their City. The *Septuagint* expresse it but in a part of another Verse, in these words: *Et in terra Chaldeorum, & hac desolata est ab Affryis, quoniam murus ejus corruit*, making the sense perfect by the preceding Verse, which all together may be thus understood: *It thou go over to Chittim* (which is *Macedon* or *Greece*) *yet thou shalt not rest* (speaking to the *Tyrians*) neither in the Land of the Chaldeans, for this is made desolate by the *Affryans*, because their walls fell together to the ground. *Pagninus* and *Vatablus* convert it thus: *Ecce terra Chaddim, iste populus non erat illic olim, nam Affur fundavit eam navibus, exercebant arces illius, contriverant ades ejus, posuit eam in ruinam*: which may be thus englished: Behold the Land of the Chaldeans, this people was not once therein inhabiting: for *Affur* built it a harbour for ships, they erected the Towers thereof, and again brake down the houses thereof, and ruined it. *Junius* in the place of this sense the word (pro *Barbaris*) that is, for the Barbarians: and the Geneva, by the Barbarians. But this is undoubtedly that the Prophet *Esay* (as may be gathered by all the sense of the Chapter) did therein assure the *Tyrians* of their future destruction, which (accordingly) fell on them: wherein (for the more terror) he maketh choise to note the calamities of those places, Cities, and Regions, by whose trade the state and greatness of the *Tyrians* was maintained; as by the *Cilicians* from *Tarsis*; from the *Macedonians*, and other *Grecians* under the name of *Cittim*; also by the *Egyptians*, the *Chaldeans*, and the rest. For *Tyr* was then the Mart Town of the World most renowned. And (as it appears in our discourse of *Paradise*) not the least part of her chief merchandize came in by the City *Ur*, or *Urchoa* in *Chaldea*, where the body or chiefe stream of *Euphrates* (even that stream which runneth through *Babylon* & *Orris*, which now falleth into *Tygris*) had his passage into the *Persian Gulf*: though now it be stopped up. For (as we have heretofore noted) the *Arabians* (that descended from *Sheba* and *Raamah*) dwelling on the East banks of the *Persian Gulf*, trading with the *Tyrians* (as those of *Eden*, *Charran*, and *Chalne* did) transported their merchandize by the mouth of *Tygris*, that is, from *Teredon*; & of *Euphrate*, that is, from *Ur*, or *Urchoa*: and then by *Babylon*, and thence by River and over land they conveyed it into *Syria*, and so to *Tyre*: as they do this day to *Aleppo*. So then *Ur* of the *Chaldees* was a Port Town, and one of those Cities which had Intelligence, Trade, and Exchange with the *Tyrians*: for it stood by the great Lakes of *Chaldea*, through which, that part of *Euphrates* ran, which passage is now stoppt up. *Ejus cursum vetustas aboluit* (saith *Niger*.) And *Pliny*: *Locus ubi Euphratis ostium fuit, flumen salum*; Time hath worn away the channell of *Euphrates*: the place where the mouth thereof was, is a Bay of salt water. These things being thus, certainly (not without good probability) we may expound the City of the *Chaldees*, whose calamities *Esay* here notheth for terror of the *Tyrians*, to be the City anciently called *Ur*; and by (*Hecateus*) *Camerinas*; by *Ptolomy*, *Urchoa*; and by the *Greeks*, *Chaldeopolis*, The City of *Chaldea*: which the sons of *Shem*, untill *Abraham*'s time inhabited. And whereas in all the Translations it is said, that *Affur* both founded it and ruined it: it may be understood, that *Affur* the Founder was the son of *Shem*; and *Affur* the destroyers were the *Affryans*, by whom those that inhabited *Ur* of *Chaldea*, were at length oppressed and brought to ruine: which thing God fore-seeing, commanded *Abraham* thence to *Carran*, and so into *Canaan*. And if the Hebrew word by *Vatablus* and *Pagninus* converted (by ships) doe bear that sense, the same may be the better approved, because it was a Port Town: and the River so farre up as this City of *Ur* was in ancient time navigable, as both by *Pliny* and *Niger* appeareth. And if the word (for the *Barbarians*) or (by the *Barbarians*) be also in the Hebrew Text, it is no lesse manifest, that the most barbarous *Arabians* of the Desert were and are the confronting; and next people of all other unto it. For *Chaldea* is now called *Arachalder*, which signifieth desert Land, because it joyneth to that part of *Arabia* so called: and *Cicero* (calling those *Arabians* by the name of *Ituraeans*) addeth, that they are of all other people the most salvage; calling them, *Homines omnium maximè barbaros*.

So as this place of *Esay*, which breedeth some doubt in *Calvin*, proveth in nothing the contrary opinion, nor in any part weakeneth the former translation of *Junius*, nor the interpretation of *Comestor* and *Rabanus*. For though other men have not conceived (for any thing that I have read) that *Affur* is in this place diversly taken (as for the son

of *Shem*, when he is spoken of as a Builder of *Ur*; and when as a Destroyer thereof, then for the *Affryan* Nation) yet certainly the evidence of the truth, and agreement of circumstances seeme to enforce it. And so this Founding of the City of the *Chaldees* by *Affur* (into which the most of the posterity of *Shem* that came into *Shinaar*, and were separate for the Idolatrie of the *Chusites* and *Nimrodians*, reired themselves) hath nothing in it to prove that the same *Affur* built *Nimrod*, or that the same *Affur* was all one with *Nimrod*: except we will make *Affur*, who was the son of *Shem*, both an Idolater, and the son of *Belus*. For (out of doubt) *Nimrod* was the first notorious sacrificer to Idols; and the first that set up a Statue or Image to be honoured as God. Now if *Affur* must be of that Race, and not of the Family of *Shem*, as he must be if he founded *Nimrod*, then all those which seeke to give him the honour thereof, do him by a thousand parts more injurie, by taking from him his true Parent and Religion.

Besides, if this supposed *Affur* whom they make the Founder of *Nimrod* (and so the son of *Belus*) were any other, and not the same with *Nimrod*; then what became of him? Certainly he was very unworthy and obscure, and not like to be the Founder of such an Empire and such a City, if no man have vouchsafed to leave to posterity his expulsion thence, and how he lost that Empire againe, or quitted it to *Nimrod*: whose acts and conquests are so largely written, and (according to my apprehension) far differing from truth. It will therefore be found best agreeing to Scripture and to Reason, and best agreeing with the story of that age written by prophane Authors, that *Nimrod* founded *Babel*, *Erech*, and *Accad*, and *Chalne*, the first works and beginnings of his Empire, according to *Moses*; and that these workes being finished within the Valley of *Shinaar*, he looked farther abroad, and set in hand the worke of *Nimrod*, lying neere unto the same stream that *Babel* and *Chalne* did: which work his grand-child *Nimrod* afterward amplified and finished, as *Semiramis* (this *Nimrod*'s wife) did *Babylon*. Hence it came to passe, that as *Semiramis* was counted the Foundresse of the City which the only finished: so also *Nimrod* of *Nimrod*: *Quam quidem Babylonem potius insituare; She might repaire or renew Babylon*, saith *S. Augustine*. For so did *Nabuchodonosor* vaunt himselfe to be the Founder of *Babylon* also, because he built up againe some part of the wall, over-borne by the furie of the River: which work of his stood till *Alexanders* time, whereupon he vaunted thus: *Is not this great Babel which I have built?*

## § IV.

Of the Acts of *Nimrod* and *Belus*, as far as now they are known.

BUT to returne to the Storie, it is plaine in *Moses*, that *Nimrod* (whom *Philo* interpreteth *transugium*; and *Julius Africanus* surnamed *Saturne*) was the establisher of the *Babylonian Monarchie*, of whom there is no other thing written, than that his Empire in the beginning consisted of those 4. Cities before remembered; *Babel*, *Erech*, *Accad*, and *Chalne*: and that from hence he propagated his Empire into *Affrya*, and in *Affrya* built foure more Cities (to wit) *Nimrod*, *Rehoboth*, *Celah*, and *Resen*. And seeing that he spent much time in building *Babel* it selfe and those adjoyning, and that his travailes were many ere he came into *Shinaar*: that worke of *Babel* (such as it was) with the other three Cities, and the large foundation of *Nimrod*, and the other Cities of *Affrya* which he builded (considered with the want of materials, and with other impediments) were of greater difficulty than any thing performed by his Successors in many years after: to whose undertakings time had given so great an increase of people; and the examples and patternes of his beginning so great advancement and encouragement; in whose time (saith *Glycas*) all these Nations were called *Meropet*, *Afermonis linguarum terram*; so diversely: By reason that the earth and the speech were then divided.

*Belus*, or *Bel*, or *Jupiter Belus*, succeeded *Nimrod*, after he had reigned 114. years; of whose acts and undertakings there is little written. For it is thought that he spent much of his time in dis-burdening the low Lands of *Babylon*, and drying and making firm ground of all those great Fens and over-flowne Marishes which adjoynd unto it. For any of his Warres or conquests there is no report, other than of his begun enterprise against *Sabatus* King of *Armenia*, and those parts of *Scythia* which *Berytus* calls *Scythia Sages*, whose son and successor *Barzanes* became subject and Tributary to *Nimrod*, that followed the warre to effect, which was by his Father *Belus* begun.



## §. V.

That we are not to marvell how so many Kingdomes could be erected about these times: and of Vexoris of Egypt, and Tanais of Scythia.

That so many Kingdomes were erected in all those Easterne parts of the World so soon after Nimrod, (as by the storie of Nimrod is made manifest) the causes were threefold (namely) Opportunitie, Example, and Necessitie. For opportunitie being a Princess liberrall and powerful, bestoweth on her first Entertainers many times the benefits, than either Fortune can, or Wisdom ought; by whose presence alone the understanding mindes of men receive all those helps and supplies, which they either want or wish for: so as every Leader of a troupe (after the division of tongues and dispersion of People) finding these faire offers made unto them, held the power which they posselt, and governed by discretion all those people, whom they conducted to their destined places. For it cannot be conceived, that when the Earth was first divided, mankind straggled abroad like beasts in a Defart; but that by agreement they disposed themselves; and undertooke to inhabit all the known parts of the World, and by distinct Families and Nations: otherwise, those remote Regions from Babylon and Shinaar, which had Kings, and were peopled in Nimrod time, would not have been posselt in many hundreds of yeeres after, as then they were neither did those that were, sent, and travailed far off (order being the true Parent of prosperous successe) undertake so difficult enterprises without a Conductor or Commander. Secondly, the Example of Nimrod with whom it succeeded well, strengthened every humor that aspired. Thirdly, Necessitie resolved all men by the arguments of common miseries, that without a Commander and Magistrate, neither could those that were laborious, and of honest dispositions, enjoy the harvest of their owne Travailes: nor those which were of little strength, secure themselves against forcible violence: nor those which fought after any proportion of greatnesse, either possesse the same in quiet, or rule and order their owne Ministers and Attendants.

That these causes had wrought these effects, the undertakings and Conquests of Nimrod (the son of Belus) made it apparent; for he found every where Kings and Monarchies, what way soever his Ambition led him in the Wars.

But Nimrod (his Grand-father) had no companion King, to us known, when he first tooke on him Sovereignty and sole commandment of all those the children of Noah, which came from the east into Babylonia: though in his life-time others also raised themselves to the same estate; of which hereafter. Belus (his son and Successor) found Sabatius King of Armenia and Scythia, sufficiently powerful to resist his attempts; which Sabatius I take to be the same, which Justine calls Tanais; and should conjecture, that Mirzaim had bene his Vexoris, were it not that I vehemently suspect some error, (as Justine placeth him) in the time of that Vexoris, who by many circumstances seemes to me, rightly accounted by the Judicious and Learned Reineccius, all one with the great Sesostris, that lived certaine Ages after Nimrod. This Belus, the second King of Babylon, reigned 65. yeeres, according to the common account.

## §. V I.

Of the name of Belus, and other names affines unto it.

Whence this second King and Successor of Nimrod had the name of Bell, or Belus, question hath bene made for it seemeth rather a name imposed, or (of addition) given by Nimrod, than assumed by Belus himselfe.

Cyrillus against Julian calls the Father of Nimrod Arbelus, affirming that he was the first of all men that caused himselfe to be called a god: which were it so, then might the name of Belus be thence derived. But Bel, as many Writers have observed, signifieth the Sun in the Chaldean Tongue; and therefore did Nimrod and Semiramis give that name to their Father, that he might be honoured as the Sun, which the Babylonians worshipped as a god. And as this Title was assumed in after-times by divers others of the Chaldean Princes, and Babylonian Sarrapes: so was it used (in imitation) by the chiefe of the Carthaginians and other Nations, as some Historians have conceived.

See more of this, i. a. of this first Part, cap. 2. S. 6. 6.

To this Bel, or Belus, pertain (as in affinity) those voyces of Baal, Baalam, Belphegor, Belphegor, Belsebub, and Beelzebub. Those that are learned in the Hebrew and Chaldean, convert the word Baal by the Latine, *Princeps militie*, Chief in the War; though Daniel was so called (saith Esdras) *Ob honorem explicatissimi arcanarum rerum: in honorem of his expounding secrets*. Saint Hierame makes Bel, Beel, and Baal, to have the same significati-  
on: and saith, that the Idol of Babylon was so called, which Nimrod in memory of his fa-  
ther set up to be worshipped: to which that he might adde the more honour and reve-  
rence, he made it a Sanctuary and refuge for all offenders. Hence (saith Lyrannus) came  
Idolatrie, and the first use of Images into the World. *Isidore* doth interpret Bel by *Ve-*  
*latur*, old or ancient; adding, that as among the *Assyrians* it is taken for *Saturne* and the  
Sun: so, in the *Punick* or *Carthaginian* Language, it signifieth God: *Glycas* makes it an *As-*  
*syrian* name properly: and *Josephus* a *Tyrian*. He also affirmeth that the Idol which the  
*Macedonians* worshipped (by them erected on the Mountain *Phogor*, or *Peor*, and called *Bu-*  
*al*) is the same which the *Latines* call *Priapus*, the god of Gardens; which also was the  
opinion of *S. Hierome*. But that the word Bel or Beel, was as much to say as God, appear-  
eth by the word *Beelzebub*, the Idol of *Accaron*. For Bel, or Beel foundeth (God) and *zu-*  
*bub* (Flies or Hornets): by which name (notwithstanding) the *Jews* expresse the Prince  
of Devils. But the Prophet *Isaiah* teacheth us the proper signification of this word from  
the voice of God himself; *And at that day (saith the Lord) thou shalt call me Ithi, and shalt*  
*call me no more Baalim: for I will take away the name of Baalim out of their mouths.* For  
although the name of Baal or Babul, be justly to be used towards God; yet in respect  
that the same was given to Idols, God hath hated it, and forbid it. And the using of the  
word Bel among the *Chaldeans* for the Sun, was not because it properly signifieth the Sun,  
but because the Sun there was worshipped as a God: as also the Fire was, *Sanquani* *So-*  
*lis particula*. As for the words compounded (before remembered) as *Belphegor*, and *Bel-*  
*zebub*, *Belphegor* is expounded out of *Factus*, *Dominus specule vel custodie*: The Lord of  
the Watch-Tower, or of the Guard: the other word noeth the Idol, and the place where  
it was worshipped. It is also written *Belphegor*, or *Baalpeors*, and *Peor* (they say) is as  
much as *Demodivis*; and therefore the word joyned, expresseth a naked Image. Some  
there are that call this Belus the son of Saturne: for it was used among the Ancients to  
name the Father Saturne, the son Jupiter, and the Grand-child Hercules. *Saturni di-*  
*centur familiarum Nobilitum, Regumque: qui orbis condiderunt sensim: prius gentis eorum*  
*Joves & Junones; Hercules vero nepotes eorum fortissimi; The ancientest of Noble Families*  
*and Kings which founded Cities, are called Saturnes; their first wives, Jupiters and Junoes;*  
*their valiant Nephewes, Hercules. But this Belus (saith L. Vinnus) was famous by reason of*  
*his warlike son Nimus, who caused his father to be worshipped as a God by the name*  
*of Jupiter Babylonius, whom the Egyptians (transported by the Dreames of their Anti-*  
*quite) make one of theirs. For Neptune (say they) upon Lybia the Daughter of Epiphi*  
*phus begat this Jupiter Belus, who was father to Epiphanius. They adde, that this Belus,*  
*carrying a Colonie to the River of Euphrates, there built a Cite, in which he ordained*  
*Priests after the Egyptian manner. But were there any Belus the son of Epiphanius and Isis*  
*or of Neptune and Lybia, or (with Eusebius) of Tyegonus, who after the death of Isis*  
*married Isis; (Cicero) then reigning in Aethiopia) the same was not this Babylonian*  
*Belus of whom we speake, but rather some other Belus, of whom the Egyptians so*  
*much vaunted.*

## §. V I I.

Of the worshipping of Images begun from Belus in Babyl.

As for the Babylonian Belus, he was the most ancient Belus, and the Inventor of  
Idolatrie, if *Plinius* say true: from whence the Egyptians might borrow both  
the name and the Doctrine. Some part of the Temple, in which his Statue or  
Image was honoured as a God, the same Author affirmeth that it did remain in his  
time.

Of the Sepulchre of Belus, *Strabo* writeth thus: *Over the River, saith he, there are gar-*  
*dens, where they say the ruines of Belus his Tombe, which Xerxes brake up, are yet remain-*  
*ing. It was a square Pyramid made of Brick, a furlong high, and on every side it had a fur-*  
*long in breadth. It appears by Cyril against Julian, that he obtained divine worship yet*  
*living;*

*Strabo l. 13. c. 3*

*L. 1. cont. Juli-*



living: for so he writes of him (calling him *Arbelus*.) *Arbelus, vir superbus & arrogant, primus hominum dicitur a subditis Deitatis nomen accepisse: Perseverantem igitur Assyrii, & finitima ille gentes sacrificantes ei. Arbelus, a man very proud and arrogant, is accounted to be the first of all men that was ever honored by their subjects with title of Deitie; (or with the name of God.) The Assyrians therefore, and the bordering nations have persevered, sacrificing to him. Even Arius also, whom *Suidas* calls *Thuras*, who succeeded next after *Ninus*, was made an Idol-god among them, if we credit *Suidas*.*

After *Ninus*, that is; after *Ninus* (Thuras reigned (saith *Suidas*) whom they called after the name of the Planet *Mars*; a man of sharpe and fierce disposition, who bidding battaile to *Caucasus* of the stocke of *Japheth*, slue him. The Assyrians worshipped him for their God, and called him *Baal* (that is) *Mars*; thus far *Suidas*. Neither is it unlikely but that many among Idolatrous nations were Deified in their life-times, or soone after: though I denie not but that the most of their Images and Statues were first erected without divine worship, only in memorie of the glorious acts of Benefactors, as *glaucus* rightly conceiveth; and so afterward the Devil crept into those wooden and brazen carcasses, when Posteritie had lost the memorie of their first invention. Hereof *Isidore* speaketh in this manner: *Quos autem Pagani Deos asserunt, homines fuerunt, & prouincij suisq; uitae meritis vel magnificentia, colit apud suos post mortem ceperunt: sed (Demonum persuadentibus) quos illi pro sua memoria honorauerunt, minores Deos existimauerunt: ad ipsos vero magis excolenda accesserunt Poetarum signimenta; They were men (saith he) whom the Pagans affirmed to be gods: and every one for his merits or magnificence began after his death to be honoured of his own: But at length (the Devils perswading) they accounted them lesser gods, whose memorie they honoured: and the Fictions of the Poets made the opinions (concerning the honours of the dead) much more superstitious.*

And that the worshipping of Images was brought in by the Pagans, and Heathen Nations, it is not *Isidore* alone that witnesseth; but *Gregory: Gentilitas (saith he) inuentrix & caput est Imaginum; Gentilitasne is the inventresse and ground of Images: and Ambrosius; Gentilium adorant, tanquam imaginem Dei; The Gentiles adore wood, as it were the Image of God. Eusebius* also affirmeth as much, and calleth the worshipping of Images a custome borrowed of the Heathen. The like hath *Saint Augustine* against *Adimantius*. *Et uenerunt (saith *Laetantius*) ne religio uana sit, se nihil uideant quod adorent; They feare their Religion would be vaine, should they not see that which they worship.*

And (out of doubt) the Schoolemen shifft this kearefull custome very strangely. For seeing the very workmanship is forbidden, how can the heart of a wise Christianistisie it selfe with the distinction of *Dynia* and *Hyperdynia*, which can imply nothing but some difference of worshipping of those Images after they are made? And it is of all things the most strange, why religious & learned men should straine their wits to defend the use of those things, which the Scriptures have not onely no where warranted, but expressly in many places forbidden, and cursed the practisers thereof. Yet this doctrine of the Devil was so strongly and subtilly rooted, as neither the expresse Commandement of God himselfe, *Thou shalt not make any graven Image*, nor all the threatening of *Moses* and the Prophets after him, could remove, weed it, or by fear, or by any persuasions lead the hearts of men from it. For where shall we find words of greater weight, or of plainer instruction than these? Take therefore good heed to your selves (say I) saw no Image in the day that the Lord spake unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire; that ye corrupt not your selves, and make you a graven Image or representation of any Figure, whether it be the likenesse of Male or Female.

And besides the expresse Commandement, *Thou shalt not make thee no graven Image*, and the prohibition in many Scriptures, so it is written in the Booke of *Wisdomes*, That the invention of Idols was the beginning of *Whoredome*: and the finding of them the correction of life: for they were not from the beginning, neither shall they continue for ever.

And whereas the Schoolemen affirme, that the Prophets spake against the Worshipping of the Heathen Idols, it is manifest that *Moses* spake of Images of the living God, and not of *Baal* and the rest of that nature. For you saw no Image (saith *Moses*) that day that the Lord spake unto you in Horeb. Surely it was excellently said of *Basil*; *Noli autem in illo formam imaginari, ne circumscribas eum uento tua: Do not imagine any form to be in God, lest thou limit or circumscribe him in thy minde too.* Now, if the great *Basil* thought it a presumption unlawful to represent a pattern of the infinite God to our own

thoughts and minds, how far do those men presume that put him under the greazie Penell of a Painter, or the rusty Axe or other Instrument of a Carpenter or Carver?

For as this dishonour to the infinite and incomprehensible God, began in *Babel*: so did the Devil transport and spread this invention into all the Regions adjoining, and into *Egypt* and *Greece*.

The *Romans* for a while resisted the erection of these Idols and Images, refusing to set them in their Temples for 170 yeeres; observing the Law of *Numa*, who thought it impiety to resemble things most beautiful, by things most base. But *Tarquinius Priscus* afterwards prevailing, and following the vanity of the *Grecians* (a Nation of all others under the Sun most deluded by Satan) set up the Images of their gods; which (as *S. Aug. de Civit. Angustine* witnesseth) that learned *Varro* both bewailed, and utterly condemned: and which *Seneca* thus derideth; *Simulachra deorum venerantur, illi supplicant, gemi posito illa adorant; & cum hac suspiciant, fabros qui illa fecere, contemnunt; The Images of the gods are worshipped, those they pray unto, with bended knees those they adore; and while they so greatly admire them, they contemn the Handi-craftsmen that made them: which also *Sedulius* the Poet in this sort scoffed at:*

*Hec miseri qui uana colunt, qui corde sinistro Religiosa sibi sculptunt simulachra, summsq; factorem fugiunt, & quae fecere, uerentur. Quis furor est? quae tanta animos demencia ludit? Ut uolucrum, turpemp; bouem, toruemp; Draconem, Semi-hominemp; canem supplex homo pronus adoret.*

Ah wretched they that worship vanities, And consecrate dumb Idols in their heart, Who their own Maker (God on high) despise, And feare the work of their own hands and art. What furie? what great madnes do beguile Mens minds? that man should ugly shapes adore Of Birds, or Buls, or Dragons, or the vile Half-dog-half-man on knees for aid implore.

And though this device was barbarous, and first, and many yeeres practised by Heathen Nations onely, till the *Jews* were corrupted in *Egypt*, yet it is not *Seneca* alone that laugheth to scorn the ignorant stupidity of his Nation: but *Iustin Martyr* remembereth how the *Syrials* inueighed against Images: and *Hosianus*, how *Sophocles* taught, that it was pernicious to the souls of men to erect and adore those bables. *Strabo* and *Herodotus* witness, that the *Persians* did not erect or set up any Statues of their Gods. *Lycurgus* never taught it the *Lacedemonians*, but thought it impiety to represent immortal natures by mortal Figures. *Eusebius* also witnesseth in his sixt Book, *de preparatione Evangelica*, that it was forbidden by a Law in *Seneca*, or among the *Brackmans* in *India*, that Images should be worshipped. The same do *Tacitus* and *Crinus* report of the ancient *Germani*. Many other Authours might be remembered, that witness the disdain which the Heathen themselves had of this childish Idolatry: of which *Hosianus* hath written at large in his Tract, *de origine imaginum*. And it was truly said, *Omnia mala exempla bonis initijs orta sunt, All ill examples have sprung from good beginnings.* The Heathen at first made these Statues and Images, but in memory of such remarkable men, as had deserved best of their Countries and common-wealthe: *Effigies hominum (saith *Pliny*) non solum exprimi, nisi aliqua illustra causa perpetuatum merentium: Adm were not wont to make Pictures, but of men which merited for some notable cause to be perpetually remembered.* And though of the more ancient *Papists*, some have borrowed of the *Gentiles* (as appears in *Laetantius*) that defence for Images: That *Simulachra* are praeclementis liberatum, ut per ea different homines Deum inuisibilem cognoscere: Images say they, (and so before them the Heathen said) are in stead of Letters, whereby men might learn to know the inuisible God: in which understanding perhaps they no otherwise esteemed them than pictures indeed; yet as that of *Baal* or *Bel* set up in memory of *Belus* the *Babylonian*, became afterward the most revered Idol of the World, by which so many Nations (and they which were appropriate to God himself) were misled and cast away: so those very Books & stones, and

and painted canvases (called the pictures of *Christ*, our *Ladie*, and others) were by thousands of ignorant people, not onely adored, but esteemed to have life, motion, and understanding. On these stocks we call (saith the Book of *Wisdom*) when we pass through the raging waves, on these stocks more rotten than the Ship that carrieth us.

This Heathen invention of Images became so fruitful in after-times, breeding an infinite multitude of gods, that they were forced to distinguish them into degrees and orders; as *Dii consentes*, *sem majorem gentium*, *selecti*, *Patritii*, *insigniores*, *dii medii*: Counting gods, or gods of the mightiest Nobility, *selecti* gods, *Patritii*, gods of mark, and Common gods (which the *Romans* called *Mediocris*) *dii infirmi*, and terrestrial Heroes, and multitudes of other gods, of which Saint *Augustine* hath made large mention in his Booke de *Civitate Dei*. But (saith *Laërtius*) among all those miserable souls and rotten bodies, worshipped by men more like to their Idols, did *Epimenides Cretensis* (by what good Angel moved I know not) erect in the *Athenian* Fields, Altars to the unknown God, which stood with the same title and dedication, even to the times of *S. Paul*: who made them first know to whom these Altars belonged, and opened their eyes which were capable of grace, that they might discern the difference betwixt that light which lighteneth every man, and the obscure and stinking mist wherein the Devil had so many years led and misled them. And it sufficed not that the multitude of these gods was so great in general, or that every Nation had some one which took particular and singular care of them, as *Jupiter* in *Crete*, *Isis* in *Egypt*, *Athena* in *Samos*, *Venus* in *Paphos*, *Venus*, and so of all other parts; but every Citie, and almost every Family had a god apart. For, as it is written in the second of *Kings*, the men of *Babel* made *Succoth Benoth*, and the men of *Cuth* made *Nergal*, and the men of *Hamath* made *Ashima*, and the *Avites* made *Nilbaz* and *Tartak*, and the *Sephervains* burnt their children in the fire to *Adramelech*. All which how plainly hath the Prophet *Esaie* derided? Men cut down Trees, rinde them, burn a part of them, make readie their meat, and warm themselves by the fire thereof, and of the residue he maketh a god; an Idol, and prayeth unto it: but God hath shut their eyes from sight, and their heart from understanding. It is therefore safest for a Christian to believe the Commandements of God to direct against Idolatry, to believe the Prophets, and to believe *S. Paul*: who speaketh thus plainly and feelingly, My beloved, flye from Idolatry; I speak as unto them which have understanding, judge ye what I say.

## §. V III.

Of the Wars of *Ninus*: and lastly of his War against *Zoroaster*.

UNTo this *Belus* succeeded *Ninus*, the first that commanded the exercise of Idolatry, the first that injuriously invaded his Neighbour Princes, and the first that without shame or feare committed adultery in publique. But as of *Belus* there is no certain memory (as touching particulars): so of this *Ninus* (whose Story is gathered out of profane Authors) I finde nothing so warrantable, but that the same may be disputed, and in the greatest part doubted. For although that piece of *Berosus* set out and commented upon by *Anniius*, hath many good things in it, and giveth great light (as *Chryseus* noteth) to the understanding of *Diodorus Siculus*, *Dion*, *Halicarnassensis*, and others: yet *Lodovicus vivus*, *B. Rhenanus*, and others after them, have laid open their imperfection and defects of the Fragments, proving directly that it cannot be the same *Berosus* which lived in *Alexander's* time, cited by *Athenæus* and *Iosephus*: and whole *Strabo* the *Athenians* erected, saith *Plinius*. Yet is from him chiefly, that many have gathered the succession of the *Babylonian* and *Assyrian* Princes, even from *Nimrod* to the eighteenth King *Alcatades*, and to the times of *Iosias*. For of *Mesasthenes*, an Historian of the Race of the *Persian* Priests, there are found but certain Papers; or some few lines of the *Chaldeans* and *Assyrian Monarchies*: but he afterwards in the collection of the *Persian* Kings is not without his errors.

*Ctesias* or *Cnidus* (a City joyning to *Halicarnassensis*) who lived together with *Cynobius* the younger, and with *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, gathered his History out of the *Persian* Records, and reacheth as far upwards as *Ninus* and *Semiramis*: and though in the Story of *Cyrus* the younger, *Xenophon* approveth him in some things, and *Athenæus*, *Epianus* and *Tertullian* cite him; yet so base and apparent are his flatteries of the times and Prin-

*Athen. l. 14.*  
*Ioseph. cont. Apion. l. 1. c. 7.*

ces with whom he lived, and so incredible are the numbers which he finds in the *Armies of Ninus*, and especially of *Semiramis*; as whatsoever his reports were, times have consumed his works, saving some very few excerpts lately published.

And therefore in things uncertain, seeing a long discourse cannot be pleasing to men of judgement, I will pass over the acts of this third *Assyrian*, in as few words as I can express them. *S. Augustine* affirms that *Ninus* mastered all *Asia*, *India* excepted. Others say that he won it all, save *India*, *Bactria*, and *Arabia*. For he made *Aricus* of *Arabia* the companion of his Conquests, with whom he entered into a straight league of amity, because he commanded many people, and was his kinsman, and a *Chyuste*, and the next-arest Prince confronting *Babylonia*. His first enterprize was upon *Syria*, which he might easily subdue, both because he invaded it on the sodain, and because it lay next him: and also because the *Arabians* and their king *Aricus* (which bordered *Syria*) assisted him in the Conquest thereof.

The king of *Armenia*, *Barzaner*, he forced to acknowledge him, and to aid him in his War against *Zoroaster*: for from *Armenia* he bent himself that way toward the East; but that ever he commanded the lesser *Asia*, I do not believe, for none of his Successors had any possession therein.

His third War was against *Thurnus*, king of the *Medes*, whom it is said that he overthrew, and cruelly murdered with his seven Children, though others asseme, that he they all died in one battaile against him. Whether he invaded *Zoroaster* before the building or amplifying of *Nineve*, or after, it is uncertain. It is said that he made two expeditions into *Bactria*: and that finding little or ill success in the first, he returned, and set the work of *Nineve* forward: and then a second time entred *Bactria* with 1700000 Foot, and 200000 Horse, and 100000 six hundred Chariots: being encountered by *Zoroaster* with four hundred thousand. But *Ninus* prevailing, and *Zoroaster* being slain, he entred farther into the Country, and besieged the chief City thereof, called *Bactra* or *Bactrian* (saith *Stephanus*: ) which by a passage found, and an assault given by *Semiramis* (the wife of *Menon*) he entred and posselt. Upon this occasion *Ninus*, both admiring her judgment and valour, together with her person and external beauty, fancied her so strongly, as (neglecting all Princely respects) he took her from her husband, whose eyes he threatened to thrust out if he refused to consent. He therefore yielding to the passion of love in *Ninus*, and to the passion of sorrow in himself, by the strong persuasions of shame and dishonour, cast himself headlong into the water, and died.

## CHAP. XI.

Of *ZOROASTER*, supposed to have been the chief Author of Magick Arts: and of the divers kinds of Magick.

## §. I.

That *Zoroaster* was not Cham, nor the first Inventor of Astrologie, or of Magick: and that there were divers great Magicians of this name.

**Z**oroaster King of the *Bactrians*, *Vincentius* supposeth to be Cham the son of *Noah*: A fancy of little probability. For Cham was the Paternal Ancestor of *Ninus*, the Father of *Chus*, the Grand-father of *Nimrod*, whose son was *Belus*, the Father of *Ninus*. It may be that *Vincentius* had heard of that Book which was called *Scriptura Cham*, devised by some wicked Knave, and so intitled: of which *Sextus Senensis* hath made the due mention.

It is reported by *Cassianus*, that *Serenus Abbas* gave the invention of Magick to *Cassian*, in *Qst. Col. cap. 21.* *Cham* the sonne of *Noah*: so did *Comestor* in his Scholastical History: which Art (saith he) with the seven liberal Sciences he writ in 14. Pillers: seven of which were made of brass, to resist the defacing by the Waters of the Flood; and seven of brick, against the injury of fire. There was also another devised discourse, which went under the

the title of *Prophetia Cham*. *Cassianus* out of *Serenus* hath somewhat like to this of *Comefor*. These be *Cassianus* words: *Cham (filius Noah) qui superstitionibus istis & sacrilegiis suis artibus infectus, sciens nullum se posse super his memorialibus libris in Arcam profectum inferre, in qua erat cum patre iusto, &c.* *Cham (the son of Noah) who was infected with these superstitions and sacrilegious Arts, knowing that he could not bring any book or memorial of that nature into the Arke, wherein he was to remain with his godly Father, caused the Precepts and Rules thereof to be graven in metall and hard stone.*

*S. Augustine* noteth that *Zoroaster* was said to have laught at his birth, when all other children weep; which prefigured the great knowledge which afterward he attained unto: being taken for the Inventor of naturall *Magick* and other Arts; for the Corrupter, so saith *Plinie* and *Iustine*. But I do not think that *Zoroaster* invented the doctrine of the *Horoscopes* or *Nativities*: or first found out the nature of herbs, stones, and mineralls, or their Sympatheticall or Antipatheticall workings; of which, I know not what King of *Chaldea* is also made the Inventor. I rather think that these knowledges were far more ancient, and left by *Noah* to his sons. For *Abraham* who had not any acquaintance with *Zoroaster*, (as *Iosephus* reporteth) was no lesse learned herein than any other in that age, if he exceeded not all men then living: differing from the wisdom of aftertimes in this, that he knew and acknowledged the true cause, and giver of life and vertue to Nature and all Naturall things; whereas others (forgetting Gods infinite, dispersed, and universall power) admired the instruments, and did attribute proper strength to the things themselves, (from which the effects were sensible) which belonged to that wisdom, *Which being one, and remaining in it selfe, can doe all things, and reneweth all.*

Now whether this *Zoroaster* (overthrown by *Nims*) were the same which was excellent a Naturalist, it is doubted. For *Zoroaster* the *Magician*, *Ctesias* calls *Oxyartes*, whom *Plinie* findes of a later time. And if *Zoroaster* were taken away by a spirit (being in the midst of his Disciples) as some Authors report, then *Zoroaster*, slain by *Nims*, was not the *Magician*: which is also the opinion of *Scaliger*.

Again, *Iosephus* and *Cedrenus* affirm, that *Seth* first found out the Planets, or wandering Stars, and other motions of the Heavens: for if this Art had been invented by *Zoroaster*, he could not have attained to any such excellency therein, in his own life time; but being a man (as it seemeth) of singular judgement, he might adde somewhat to this kind of knowledge, and leave it by writing to posterity.

But of this *Zoroaster* there is much dispute: and no lesse jangling about the word and art of *Magick*. *Arnobius* remembreth foure, to whom the name of *Zoroaster*, or *Zoroastrus* was given: which by *Hermodorus* and *Dimon* seemeth to be but a cognomen, or name of art, and was as much to say, as *astrorum tutor*. The first, *Arnobius* calleth the *Bactrian*, which may be the same that *Nims* overthrew: the second, a *Chaldean*, and the *Astronomer* of *Nims*: the third, was *Zoroaster Pamphilus*, who lived in the time of *Cyrus* and his familiar: the fourth, *Zoroaster Armenius*, the Nephew of *Hofstanes*, which followed *Xerxes* into *Greece*: between whom and *Cyrus* there past threecore and eighteen years. *Suidas* remembreth a fifth, called *Perseus sapiens*: and *Plato* speaketh of *Zoroaster* the son of *Orontasides*; which *Picus Mirandula* confirmeth.

Now of what Nation the first and chiefe *Zoroaster* was, it is doubted. *Plinie* and *Lactantius* make him a *Persian*. *Gemisthius* or *Pletho*, *Ficinus* and *Stenclius*, make him a *Chaldean*. But by those bookes of one *Zoroaster*, found by *Picus Mirandula*, it appeareth plainly, that the Author of them was a *Chaldean* by Nation, though the word (*Chaldean*) was as often given to the learned Priests peculiarly, as for any distinguishing of Nations. *Porphyrius* makes the *Chaldei* and *Magi* divers; *Picus* the same. But that this *Zoroaster* was a *Chaldean* both by Nation and Profession, it appeareth by his Bookes, which (saith *Picus*) were written in the *Chaldean* tongue, and the Comment in the same language. Now that the *Magi* and they were not differing, it may be judged by the name of those bookes of *Zoroaster*, which in an Epistle of *Mirandula* to *Ficinus*, he saith, to be intituled, *Patris Ezre Zoroastris, & Melchior magorum oracula*.

## § II.

of the name of *Magia*: and that it was anciently far divers from *Conjuring* and *Witchcraft*.

Now for *Magick* it selfe; which Art (saith *Mirandula*) pauci intelligunt, multi reprehendunt; Few understand, and many reprehend; Et scit Canes ignotos semper allatrant; As Dogs bark at those they know not: so they condemn and hate the things they understand not: I think it not amisse (leaving *Nims* for a while) to speak somewhat thereof.

It is true that many men abhorre the very name and word (*Magos*) because of *Simon Magus*, who being indeed, not *Magus*, but *Goer*, (that is) familiar with evil spirits, usurped that title. For *Magick*, *Conjuring*, and *Witchery*, are far differing Arts, whereof *Plinie* being ignorant (scotteth thereat. For *Nero* (saith *Plinie*) who had the most excellent Magicians of the East sent him by *Tyridates* King of *Armenia*, who held that Kingdom by his grace, found the art after long study and labour altogether ridiculous.

*Magus* is a Persian word primitively, whereby is exprest such a one as is altogether conversant in things divine. And (as *Plato* affirmeth) the Art of *Magick* is the Art of worshipping God. To which effect *Apollonius* in his Epistles expounding the word (saith) that the Persians called their gods *Magi*: whence he addeth, that *Magus* is either *Magus* (that is) *Magus* (that is) that *Magus* is a name sometime of him that is a God by nature; sometimes of him that is in the service of God: in which latter sense it is taken, *Mat. 2. v. 1*. And this is the first and highest kind: which *Piccolominie* calleth divine *Magick*: and these did the Latines newly intitle *Sapientes*, or *Wisemen*: For, the star and worship of God is the beginning of knowledge. These *Wisemen* the Greeks call *Philosophers*: the Indians, *Branchmans*: which name they somewhat neerly retain to this day, calling their Priests *Bramines*; among the Egyptians they were termed *Priests*; with the Hebrews they were called *Cabalists*, *Prophets*, *Scribes*, and *Pharisees*: amongst the Babylonians they were differed by the name of *Chaldeans*: and among the Persians, *Magicians*: of whom *Arnobius* (speaking of *Hofstanes*, one of the ancient Magicians) useth these words: *Et verum Deum merit: majestate persequitur, & Angelos ministros Dei, sed veri, ejus venerationi novit assistere. Idem demones prodit terrenos, vagos, humanitatis inimicos; Sosithenes* (for so *M. Felix* called him, not *Hofstanes*) ascribeth the due majesty to the true God, and acknowledgeth that his Angels are ministers and messengers which attend the worship of the true God. He also hath delivered that there are Devils earthly and wandering, and enemies to mankind.

His Majesty also in his first Book of *Demonologie*, c. 3. acknowledgeth, that in the Persian tongue the word (*Magus*) imports as much a contemplator of divine and heavenly sciences; but unjustly so called, because the *Chaldeans* were ignorant of the true divinity. And it is also right which His Majesty avoweth, that under the name of *Magick* all other unlawfull Arts are comprehended, and yet doth His Majesty distinguish it from *Necromancie*, *Witchcraft*, and the rest: of all which he hath written largely and most learnedly. For the *Magick* which His Majesty condemneth, is of that kind whereof the Devil is a party. *Daniel* in his second chapter nameth foure kinds of those *Wisemen*: *Arioli*, *Magi*, *Malefici*, and *Chaldei*. *Arioli* the old Latine translation calleth *Sophists*; *Vatubus* and *Pagninus* *Genethliacos*, or *Physicos*, or *Philosophers*, or (according to the note of *Vatubus*) *Naturalists*: *Nempe sunt Magi apud Barbaros, quod Philosophi apud Græcos* (scilicet) *divinarum humanarumque rerum scientiam profitentes*; For the *Magi* are the same with the *Barbarians*, as the *Philosophers* are with the *Græcians* (that is) men that profess the knowledge of things both divine and humane. The Greek and the English call them *Enchanters*; *Junius*, *Magicians*; *Cassianus*, *Conjurers*: in the Syrian they are all foure by one name called *Sapientes Babylonis*; The *Wisemen* of *Babel*.

The second sort *Vatubus*, *Pagnin*, *Junius*, and our English, call *Astrologers*; *Hierome* and the *Septuagint*, *Magicians*.

The third kind are *Malefici*, or *Venefici*; in *Hierom*, *Pagnin*, and the *Septuagint*, *Witches* or *Poysoners*: in *Junius*, *Prefigitantes* or *Sorcerers*, as in English.

That *Witches* are also rightly so called *Venefici*, or *Poysoners*; and that indeed there is a kinde of *Malefici*, which without any Art of *Magick* or *Necromancie* use the help

of the Devil to do mischief, His Majesty confirmeth in the first Chapter of his second Book: speaking also in the fifth Chapter of their practice, to mixe the powder of dead bodies with other things by the Divell prepared; and at other times to make pictures of wax, or clay, or otherwise (as it were sacramentaliter) to effect those things, which the Divell by other means bringeth to passe.

The fourth, all Translators call Chaldeans: who took upon them to foretell all things to come, as well naturall as humane, and their events: and this they vaunted to performe by the influences of the Stars by them observed, and understood.

Such were, and to this day partly (if not altogether) are the corruptions, which have made odious the very name of *Magick*, having chiefly sought (as is the manner of all impostures) to counterfeit the highest and most noble part of it, yet so as they have, to creep into the inferior degrees.

A second kinde of *Magick* was that part of *Astrologie*, which had respect to sowing and planting, and all kinds of agriculture and husbandry: which was a knowledge of the motions and influences of the Stars into those lower Elements.

*Philo Judæus* goeth farther, affirming, that by this part of *Magick* or *Astrologie*, together with the motions of the Stars and other heavenly bodies, *Abraham* found out the knowledge of the true God, while he lived in *Chaldea*: *Qui contemplatione creaturarum cognovit Creatorem*, (saith *Jo. Damascen*) *Who knew the Creator by the contemplation of the creature.* *Josephus* reporteth of *Abraham*, that he instructed the Egyptians in *Arimetick* and *Astronomic*, who before *Abraham* coming unto them knew none of these sciences.

And so doth *Archangelus de Burgo*, in defence of *Mirandula* against *Gasius*: *Alexander & Eupolemon dicunt, quod Abraham sanctitate & sapientia omnium prestantissimus Chaldaeus primus, deinde Phœnicus, demum Egyptius sacerdos Astrologiam & divina docuit*; *Alexander* (saith he, meaning *Alexander Polyhistor*) and *Eupolemon* affirme, that *Abraham* the holiest and wisest of men, did first teach the Chaldeans; then the Phœnicians; lastly the Egyptian priests, *Astrologie* and divine knowledge.

The third kinde of *Magick* containeth the whole Philosophie of nature; not the brabbings of the *Aristotelians*, but that which bringeth to light the inmost vertues, and draweth them out of Natures hidden bosome to humane use: *Vertutes in centro centilientis*; *Vertutes hidden in the center of the center*, according to the *Chymists*. Of this sort were *Albertus*, *Arnoldus de villa nova*, *Raymond*, *Bacon*, and many others: and before these were elder times, and who better understood the power of Nature, & how to apply things that work to things that suffer, were *Zoroaster* before spoken of: *Apollonius Tyana* remembered by *S. Hierome* to *Paulinus*; in some mens opinion *Numa Pompilius* among the *Romans*; among the *Indians*, *Jehsian*; among the *Egyptians*, *Hermes*; among the *Babylonians*, *Budda*; the *Thracians* had *Zamolxis*; the *Hyperboreans* (as is supposed) *Abbarin*; and the *Italians*, *Petrus Aponeusis*. The *Magick* which these men profest, is thus defined: *Magia est connexio a viro sapiente agentium per naturam cum patientibus, sibi congruenter respondentibus, ut inde opera prodeant, non sine eorum admiratione qui causam ignorant*; *Magick is the connexion of naturall agents and patients, answerable each to other, wrought by a wise man, to the bringing forth of such effects, as are wonderfull to those that know not their causes.* In all these three kinds, which other men divide into four: it seemeth that *Zoroaster* was exceedingly learned; especially in the first and highest. For in his Oracles he confessed God to be the creator of the Universal: he beleeveth of the *\* Trinity*, which he could not investigate by any naturall knowledge; he speaketh of Angels, and of *Paradise*: approveth the immortality of the soule: teacheth Truth, Faith, Hope, and Love, discommends of the Abstinence and Charity of the *Magi*: Which Oracles of his, *Pellus*, *Ficinus*, *Patritius*, and others have gathered and translated.

Of this *Zoroaster*, *Eusebius* in the *Theologie* of the *Phœnicians*, using *Zoroasters* own words: *Hæc ad verbum scribit* (saith *Eusebius*) *Dens primus incorruptibilis, sempiternus, ingenuus, expertus partium, sibi ipsi similis, bonorum omnium origo, numerus non expectans, optimus, prudensissimus, pater juris, sine doctrina justitiam perdoctus, natura perfectus, sapiens, sacra natura unicus inventor, &c.* Thus writeth *Zoroaster* word for word, *God the first incorruptible, everlasting, unbegotten, without parts, most like himselfe, the guide of all good, expecting no reward, the best, the wisest, the father of right, having learned justice without teaching, perfect, wise by nature, the only inventor thereof.*

*Sixtus Senensis* speaking of the wildome of the Chaldeans, doth distinguish those wild

De vit. sancti.  
Gy. Anad.  
fol. 180.

See upon his  
Comment in  
Aug. de civit.  
Dei, l. 18. c. 2.

\* Tota in mundo  
lucet Trinitas,  
Cuius Nomina est  
principis. Cuncta  
namque perficit  
pater, & memi  
tradidit fecun  
da. P. Fel. & Fi  
cin. de 11. ap. E  
vang. l. 1. c. 7.

L. 2. fol. 26.

men into five orders, (to wit) *Chascedim*, or *Chaldeans*: *Asaphim*, or *Magicians*: *Chartumim*; (which he translates *Ariolite*, or *Sophists*) *Macchaphim*, or *Malefici*, or *Venefici*, *Witchers*, or *Possioners*; and *Gazarim*, *Augures*, or *Aruspices*, or *Diviners*.

*Chascedim* were those which had the name of Chaldeans, which were Astronomers: *Hi celorum motus diligentissime spectarunt*; These did most diligently contemplate the motions of the heavens: whom *Philo* in the life of *Abraham* describeth.

*Asaphim* were in the old *Latine* translation called *Philosophers*: of the *Septuagint* and of *Hierome*, *Magicians*: *Qui de omnium tam divinarum quam humanarum rerum causis Philosophati sunt*; Who discoursed of the causes of all things, as well divine as humane: of whom *Origen* makes *Balaam* (the son of *Beor*) to be the first: but *Laertius* ascribeth the invention of this art to *Zoroaster* the Persian.

*Chartumim*, or *Inchanters*, the Disciples (saith *Saint Augustine*, *Plinie*, and *Iustine*) of another *Zoroaster*: who corrupted the admirable wildome of the *Magi*, which he received from his Ancesters.

*Macchaphim*, or *Venefici*, or *Witchers*, are those which we have spoken already out of His Majesty's book of *Demonologia*.

*Gazarim*, or *Aruspices* (after *Saint Hierome*) which divine from the entrails of beasts slain for sacrifices: or by *Gazarim* others understand *Augures*, who divine by the flying, singing, or feeding of birds.

By this distinction we may perceive the difference between those wise men which the kings of *Babylon* entertained; and that the name and profession of the *Magi* among the ancient Persians was most honest. For as *Pencer* truly observeth, *Præerant religioni Persæ, ut in populo Dei Levitæ, studisque veræ Philosophiæ dediti erant*; *nec quisquam Rex vinitur in c. de Persarum poterat esse, qui non antea Magorum disciplinam scientiamque percepisset*; The *Magi* (saith he) were the chief Ministers of the Persian Religion, as the Levites among Gods people, and they were given to the studies of true Philosophie: neither could any be King of the Persians, who had not first been exercised in the mysteries and knowledge of the *Magi*. *Sixtus Senensis*, in the defence of *Origen* against *Polychronius* and *Theophilus*, hath two kinds of *Magick*, his own words are these: *Et ne quem moveant præmissa Polychronii & Theophili testimonia, sciendum est duplicem esse Magiam* a alteram ubique ab Origine damnatam, que per fœdera cum demonibus inita aut verè aut apparenter operatur; alteram ab Origine laudatam, que ad prædicendam naturalem philosophiam pertinet, docens admirabiles res operari ex applicatione naturæ naturalium virtutum ad invicem agentium ac patientium; The testimonies of *Theophilus* and *Polychronius* (saith he) may not move any man, it is to be understood that *Magick* is of two sorts, the one every where condemned by *Origen*; which worketh (whether truly or seemingly) by covenants made with Devils; the other commended by *Origen*; which appertaineth to the practick part of naturall Philosophie, teaching to work admirable things by the mutual application of naturall vertues, agent and suffering reciprocally.

This partition *Hierome* doth embrace in the first of his Commentaries upon *Daniel*: where considering of the difference which *Daniel* makes between these four kinds of wise Men formerly remembered, he useth this distinction: *Quos nos hariosos ceteri incantatores interpretati sunt, videntur mihi esse qui verbis rem peragunt*; *Magi, qui de singulis philosophantur malefici, qui sanguine utuntur & victimis*; & *sæpe contingunt corpora mortuorum*; porro in Chaldeis Geneblicos significari puto, quos vulgo Mathematicos vocant. Consuetudo autem communis Magos pro maleficis accipit, qui aliter habentur apud gentem suam, eo quod sint Philosophi Chalæorum: & ad artis huius scientiam, Reges quoque & Principes ejusdem gentis omnia faciunt; unde, & in civitate Domini Salvatoris, ipsi primum ortum ejus intellexerunt, & venientes sanctam Bethleem, adoraverunt puerum, stellæ desuper ostendite; They whom we call Sorcerers, and others interpret Inchanters, seem to me, such as performe things by words; Magicians, such as handle every thing philosophically; Witchers, that use blood and sacrifices, and often lay hands on the body of the dead: further, among the Chaldeans I take them to be signified by the name of Confessors upon nativities, whom the vulgar call Mathematicians. But common custome takes Magicians for Witchers, who are otherwise reputed in their own Nation: for they are the Philosophers of the Chaldeans: yea, King and Princes of that Nation doe all that they doe according to the knowledge of this Art: whence, at the nativity of the Lord our Saviour, they first of all understood his birth, and coming unto holy Bethleem, did worship the Child: a the Starre from above shewing him unto them. By this therefore it appeareth that there is

great difference between the doctrine of a Magician, and the abuse of the word. For though some Writers affirme, that *Magus hodie dicitur, qui ex sacro facto nititur diaboli opera adrem quancumque*. That he is called a Magician now-a-days, who having entred league with the Devil, useth his help to any matter: yet (as our Saviour said of Divorce) it was not so from the beginning. For the Art of Magick is of the wisdom of Nature; other Arts which undergoe that title, were invented by the fallhood, subtilty, and envie of the Devil. In the latter there is no other doctrine, than the use of certain ceremonies, *Per nullā fidem; By an exall faith* in the former no other ill, than the investigation of those vertues and hidden properties which God hath given to his creatures, and how fitly to apply things that work, to things that suffer. And though by the Jewes those excellent Magicians, Philosophers, and Divines, which came to worship our Saviour Christ, were termed Machiscephim, or Mecaſſhim; yet had they no other reason than common custome therein. *Consecratio autem communis Magos pro maleficiis accipit; Common custome* (saith S. Hierome) understandeth Witches under the name of Magicians: And antiquity (saith Peter Martyr) by the word (Magi) understood good and wise men. *Quid igitur expauescit Magi nomen formidolose, nomen Evangelio gratiosum, quod non maleficum & veneficum, sed sapientem sonat & Sacerdotem?* O how fearfull one (saith Ficinus) why doubtst thou to use the name of Magus, a name gracious in the Gospel, which doth not signifie a Witch, or Conjuror, but a wise man and a Priest? For what brought this slander to that study and profession, but only idle ignorance, the Parent of causelesse admiration? *Causa sunt mirificentia quorundam operum, quae (re vera) opera naturalia sunt: verum tamen quia procuratione demonum, naturas ipsas vel conjugentium, vel commiscuentium, vel aliter ad operandum expeditum facta sunt, opera demonum credebantur ab ignorantibus haec.* De operibus huiusmodi est *Magia naturalis*, quam Necromantiam multi improprie vocant: The marvellousnesse of some works, which (indeed) are naturall, hath been the cause of this slander: but because these works have been done by procurement of Devils, joyning the naturas together, or mingling them, or howsoever fitting the naturas to their working, they were thought the work of the Devils by the ignorant. Among these works is natural Magick, which men call very improperly Necromancie.

Mirandula in his Apologie goeth further: For by understanding (saith he) the uttermost activity of naturall agents we are assisted to know the Divinity of Christ: for otherwise (to use his own words) ignorantia terminis potentiae & virtutis rerum naturalium, stat non dubitare illa eadem opera, quae fecit Christus, posse fieri per media naturalia. The termes or limits of naturall power and vertue not understood, wee must needs doubt whether those very works which Christ did, may not be done by naturall means: after which he goeth on in this sort: Ideo non hereticè, non superstitiosè dixi, sed verissimè & Catholicè per talium Magiam adiuvant nos in cognoscenda divinitate Christi: Therefore I said not heretically, not superstitiously, but most truly and Catholically, that by such Magick we are furthered in knowing the Divinity of Christ. And seeing the Jewes and others, the enemies of Christian Religion, do impudently and impiously object, that those Miracles which Christ wrought were not above nature, but by the exquisite knowledge thereof performed: Mirandula, a man for his years fuller of knowledge than any that this latter Age hath brought forth, might with good reason avow, that the uttermost of Natures workes being knowne, the workes which Christ did, and which (as himself witnesseth) no man could doe, doe manifestly testifie of themselves, that they were performed by that hand which held Nature herein but as a Pencill, and by a power infinitely supreme and divine; and thereby those that were faithles, were either converted or put to silence.

## §. III

That the good knowledge in the ancient Magick is not to be condemned: though the Devil here, as in other kinds, hath sought to obtrude evill things, under the name and colour of good things.

Seeing therefore it is confessed by all of understanding, that a Magician (according to the Persian word) is no other than, *Divinorum cultor & interpret*: A studious observer and expounder of divine things: and the Art of it selfe (I mean the Art of Naturall Magick) no other, *quam naturalis Philosophia absoluta consummatio*; Upon the absolute perfection of naturall Philosophy: Certainly then it proceeds from ignorance, and

Hieron. in Daniel.  
Pet. Mart. Lec.

Mar. Ficinus prim. fol. 173.

Gul. Parisien. de Leges. cap. 14.

Fil. 8c.

no way forth with wife and learned men, *promiscue*, and without difference and distinction, to confound lawfull and praise-worthy knowledge with that impious, and (to use S. Pauls words) with those beggerly rudiments, which the Divell hath shuffled, and by them bewitcheth and befooleth gracelesse men. For if we condemn naturall Magick, or the wisdom of Nature, because the Divell (who knowes more than any man) doth also teach witches and Poysoners the harmfull parts of Herbes, Drugges, Minerals, and Excrements: then may we by the same rule condemn the Physician, and the Art of healing. For the Divell also in the Oracles of *Amphibolus, Amphibolus, Trophonius*, and the like, taught men in Dreames what Herbes and Drugges were proper for such and such diseases. Now no man of judgement is ignorant, that the Divell from the beginning hath sought to thrust himselfe into the same employment among the Ministers and Servants of God, changing himselfe for that purpose into an Angel of Light. He hath led men to Idolatry as a Doctrine of Religion; he hath thrust in his Prophets among those of the true God; he hath corrupted the Art of Astrologie, by giving a divine power to the Starres, teaching men to esteeme them as gods, and not as instruments. And (as Bunting observeth) it is true, that judicial Astrologie is corrupted with many superstitions: but the abuse of the thing takes not away the Art, considering that heavenly bodies (as even generally experience sheweth) have, and exercise their operation upon the inferior. For the Sun, and the Star of Mars doe drie; the Moone doth moisten, and govern the Tides of the Sea. Again, the Planets, as they have severall and proper names, so have they severall and proper vertues: the Starres doe also differ in beautie and in magnitude; and to all the Starres hath God given also their proper names, which (had they not influences and vertues different) needed not: He counteth the number of the Starres, and calleth them by their names. But into the good and profitable knowledge of the celestial influences, the Divell ceaseth not to shuffle in his Superstitions: and so to the knowledge of the secret vertues of Nature hath he fastened his doctrine of Charactery, Numbers and Incantations; and taught men to beleeve in the strength of words and Letters: (which without Faith in God are but Inke or common breath) thereby either to equal his owne with the All-powerful Word of God, or to diminish the glory of Gods creating Word, by whom are all things.

Moreover, he was never ignorant, that both the wife and the simple observe when the Sea-birds forsake the shores and fly into the Land, that commonly some great storme followeth; that the high flying of the Kite and the Swallow, betoken faire weather; that the crying of Crows and bating of Ducks, foreshew raime: for they feeble the Ayre moistened in their Quills. And it is written in Hieremie the Prophet, *Even the Stork in the ayre knoweth her appointed times, and the Turtle, and the Crane, and the Swallow.* Hereupon, this enemy of Mankind, working upon these as upon the rest of Gods creatures, long time abused the Heathen by teaching them to observe the flying of Fowles, and thereby to judge of good or ill successe in the War: and (withall) to looke into their entrailes for the same, as if God had written the secrets of unsearchable providence in the livers & bowels of birds and beasts. Again, because it pleased God sometimes by Dreams not only to warne and teach his Prophets and Apostles, but Heathen Princes also; as Abimelech to restore Sara to Abraham; because he admonished Joseph, and by Dream informed Jacob, Laban, Pharaos, Solomon, Paul, Annias, the Magi of the East, and others. For as it is remembered in Job: *In Dreames and Visions of the night, when sleepe filleth uppon men, &c. then God openeth the eares, that he might cause man to returne from his enterpriss* therefore, I say, doth the Divell also practise his Divinations by Dreames, or (after Parisiensis) divinitatis imitationes, his mock-divinitie. This in the end grew so common, as Aristotle compiled an Ephemerides of his owne Dreames: Mitridates of those of his Conquerors. Yea the Romans finding the inconvenience hereof, because all dreams (without distinction of cases) were drawne to Divination, forbade the same by a Law, as by the words of prohibition (*aut narrando somnia occultare aliquam artem divinandi*) it may appeare. Likewise by the Law of God in Deuteronomie, cap. 18. seducing Dreamers were ordered to be slaine: Yet it is to be contemned, not that Marcus Antonius was told a remedie in his Dreame for two grievous diseases that oppress him; nor that of Alexander Macedon for the cure of Prolomies poisoned wound; nor that which S. Augustine reporteth of a Milanaisse, whose son (the Father dead) being demanded a debt already paid, was told by his Father in a dream where the Acquittance lay to discharge it: not

Bant. in Cirs.

Psal. 147.

Cap. 8. ver. 7.

Gen. 12. v. 17.

Job 33. 17.

G. Parisien. de leg. 24. cap.

Colex. de maleficis & Maribus. leg. 6. §. 1.

Aug. de cura pro mortuis &c.

that of *Astrogers* of his Daughter, and many others of like nature. Of the reason of all which, for asmuch as the cause is not in our selves, this place denieth dispute.

## §. IV.

*That Daniels misliking Nabuchodonosors condemning of the Magicians, doth not justify all their practices.*

Deut. 13. & 18.  
Levit. 24.

**B**Ut it may be objected, that if such Divinations as the Heathens commonly used were to be condemned in them, who tooke on them very many and strange Revelations; how came it to passe that *Daniel* both condemned the halfe sentence of *Nabuchodonosor* against the *Magicians* of *Chaldea*, and in a sort forbad it? especially considering that such kind of people God himselfe commanded to be slaine. To this, divers answers may be given. First, it seemeth that *Daniel* had respect to those *Chaldeans*, because they acknowledged that the Dreame of the king, which himselfe had forgotten, could not be knowne to any man by any Art either Natural or Diabolical: For therein none other (said the *Chaldeans*) that can declare it before the king, except the Gods, whose dwelling is not with flesh: and herein they confessed the power of the Ever-living God.

Secondly, it may be conjectured (and that with good reason) that among so many learned men, some of them did not exercise themselves in any evill or unlawfull Arts, but were merely *Magicians* and *Naturalists*: and therefore when the king commanded, to kill all, *Daniel* perswaded the contrary, and called it a hasty judgement, which proceeded with furie without examination. And that some of those mens studies and professions were lawfull, it may be gathered by *Daniel*'s instruction: for himselfe had bin taught by them, and was called chiefe of the Inchanters: of which some were termed *Soothsayers*, others *Astrologians*, others *Chaldeans*, others *Magi* or *Wise-men*: and therefore of distinct professions.

Thirdly, *Daniel* misliked and forbad the execution of that judgement, because it was unjust. For howsoever those men might deserve punishment for the practice of unlawfull arts (though not unlawfull according to the law of that State) yet herein they were altogether guiltlesse. For it exceeded humane power to pierce the Kings thought, which the Divell himselfe could not know. So then in *Daniel*'s dislike, and hindering of the execution of sentence of death pronounced against the *Magicians*, there is no absolute justifying of their practice and profession.

## §. V.

*The abuse of things which may be found in all kinds, is not to condemne the right use of them.*

**N**Otwithstanding this mixture every where, of good with evill, of fals-hood with truth, of corruption with cleanness and purity: The good, The truth, The purity in every kind may well be embraced: As in the ancient worshipping of God by Sacrifice, there was no man knowing God among the Elders, that therefore forebare to offer Sacrifice to the God of all power, because the Divell in the Image of *Baal*, *Asteroth*, *Chemoth*, *Jupiter*, *Apollo*, and the like was so adored.

Exul. & Artapan. & Polybi.

Neither did the abuse of *Astrologie* terrifie *Abraham* (if we may believe the most ancient and religious Historians) from observing the motions and natures of heavenly bodies; neither can it dehort wise and learned men in these dayes from attributing those virtues, influences, and inclinations to the Starres and other lights of Heaven, which God hath given to those his glorious creatures.

The Sympatheticall and Antipatheticall working of Herbes, Plants, Stones, Minerals, with their other utmost virtues sometimes taught by the Divell, and applied by his Ministers to harmefull and uncharitable ends, can never terrifie the honest and learned Physician or Magician from the using of them to the helpe and comfort of Mankind: neither can the illusions, whereby the Divell betrayeth such men as are fallen from God, make other men reject the observations of Dreames; so far as with a good Faith and Religious caution they may make use of them.

Deut. 18. 20.

Lastly, the prohibition to marke flying of Fowles (as signes of good or evill success) hath no reference at all to the crying of Crowes against Raine, or to any observation not superstitious, and whereof a reason or cause may be given. For if we confound Arts with

with the abuse of them, we shall not onely condemne all honest Trades and enterchange among men (for there are that deceive in all professions) but we shall in a short time bury in forgetfulness all excellent knowledg and all learning, or obscure and cover it over with a most scornfull and beggarly ignorance: and (as *Plinie* teacheth) we should shew our selves ingratos erga eos, qui labore curaque lucem nobis aperuerunt in hac luce. Unthankfull we should shew our selves towards those, who with paines and care have discovered unto us light in this light.

Indeed not onely these natural knowledges are condemned by those that are ignorant; but the Mathematicks also and Professers thereof: though those, that are excellently learned, judge of it in this sort: *In speculo Mathematico verum illud, quod in omni scibili queritur, elucet; non modo remota similitudine, sed fulgida quædam propinquitate; In the Glasse of the Mathematickes that Truth doth shine, which is sought in every kind of knowledge; not in an obscuring, but in a netre and manifest representation.*

## §. VI.

*Of the divers kinds of unlawfull Magicke.*

**I**T is true that there are many Arts, if we may so call them, which are covered with the name of Magicke: and esteemed abusively to be as branches of that Tree, on whose root they never grew. The first of these hath the name of Necromancy or Goetia; and of this againe there are divers kinds. The one is an Invocation at the graves of the dead, to whom the Divell himselfe gives answer in stead of those that seeme to appeare. For certaine it is, that the immortall soules of men doe not inhabit the dust and dead bodies, but they give motion and understanding to the living: death being nothing else but a separation of the body and soule: and therefore the soule is not to be found in the Graves.

A second practice of those men, who pay Tribute or are in league with Satan, is that of conjuring or of rayting up Divels, of whom they hope to learne what they list. These men are so distracted, as they believe that by terrible words they make the Divell to tremble; that being once impaled in a Circle (a Circle which cannot keepe out a Mouse) they therein (as they suppose) insconce themselves against that great Monster. Doubtles, they forget that the Divel is not terrified from doing ill and all that is contrary to God and goodness, no, not by the fearefull word of the Almighty: and that he feared not to offer to sit in Gods seat, that he made no scruple to tempt our Saviour Christ, whom himselfe called the Son of God. So, forgetting these proud parts of his, an unworthy wretch will yet resolve himselfe, that he can draw the Divell out of Hell, and terrifie him with a Phrase: whereas in very truth, the obedience which the Divels seeme to use, is but thereby to possess themselves of the bodies & soules of those which raise them up as His Majestie in his Book aforementioned hath excellently taught: *That the Divels obedience is only, secundum quid, scilicet ex pacto; respectu, that is, upon bargain.*

I cannot tell what they can doe upon those simple and ignorant Divels, which inhabit *Tamblers* imaginations; but sure I am the rest are apenough to come uncalled: and alwaies attending the cogitations of their servants and vassals, doe no way need any such enforcement.

Or it may be that these Conjurers dealt altogether with *Cardans* mortall Divels, following the opinion of *Rabbi Avornathan* and of *Porphyrius*, who taught that these kinde of Divels lived not above a thousand yeares: which *Plutarch* in his Treatise of Oracles confirmeth, making example of the great God Pan. For were it true that the Divels were in awe of wicked men, or could be compelled by them, then would they always fear those words and threats, by which at other times they are willingly mastered. But the Familiar of *Simon Magus* when he had lifted him up in the Ayre, cast him headlong out of his claws, when he was sure he should perish with the fall. If this perhaps were done by S. Peters Prayers (of which S. Peter no where vaunteth) yet the same practice at other times upon his owne accord the Divell played with *Theodorus*: who transported (as *Simon Magus* was supposed to have beene) had the same mortall fall that he had. The like successe had *Eudas*, a principall pillar of the Manichean Heresie, as *So. Lib. 1. c. 21.* craters in his Ecclesiastical History witnesseth: and for a manifest prooffe hereof we see it every



every day, that the Divell leaves all Witches and Sorcerers at the Gallows, for whom at other times he maketh himself a *Pegasus*, to convey them in haste to places far distant, or at least makes them so thinke: For to those that received not the truth (saith Saint Paul) God shall send them strong illusions: Of these their supposed transmutations (yet agreeing with their confessions) His Majesty in the second Book and the fourth Chapter of the *Demonologie*, hath confirmed by unanswerable reasons, that they are meely illusive. Another sort there are who take on them to include spirits in Glasses and Crystals; of whom *Cujanus*: *Falsi sunt incantatores, qui in ungue & vitro volunt spiritum includere, quia spiritus non clauduntur corpore*: They are foolish Inchanters, which will shut up their spirits within their nails or in Glass: for a Spirit cannot be inclosed by a body.

There is also another Art besides the afore-mentioned, which they call *Theurgia*, or *White Magick*; a pretended conference with good Spirits or Angels, whom by Sacrifice and Invocation they draw out of Heaven and communicate withall. But the administering Spirits of God, as they require not any kind of adoration due unto their Creator; so seeing they are most free Spirits, there is no man so absurd to think (except the devil have corrupted his understanding) that they can be constrained or commanded out of Heaven by threats. Wherefore let the professors thereof cover themselves how they please by a professed purity of life, by the ministry of infants, by fasting and abstinence in general; yet all those that tamper with immateriall Substances, and abstract natures, either by Sacrifice, Vow, or Inforcement, are men of evil faith, and in the power of *Satan*. For good Spirits or Angels cannot be constrained; and the rest are Devils, which willingly obey.

Other sorts there are of wicked Divinations; as by fire, called *Pyromantia*: by water, called *Hydromantia*: by the ayre, called *Meteotechnia*, and the like.

The last, and (indeed) the worst of all other is Falcination or Witchcraft: the Practisers whereof are no less envious and cruell, revengefull and bloody, than the Devil himself. And these accursed creatures having sold their souls to the Devil, work two waies; either by the Devil immediately, or by the Art of poysoning. The difference between *Necromancers* and *Witches*, His Majesty hath excellently taught in a word: that the one (in a sort) commands; the other obey the Devil.

There is another kind of pettie witchery (if it be not altogether deceit) which they call charming of Beasts and Birds, of which *Pythagorus* was accused, because an Eagle lighted on his shoulder in the *Olympian* fields. But if the same exceeded the Art of Falconrie, yet was it no more to be admired than *Mahomet's* Dove, which he had used to feed with Wheat out of his ear: which Dove, when it was hungry, lighted on *Mahomet's* shoulder, and thrust his Bill therein to find his break-fast: *Mahomet* perswading the rude and simple *Arabians*, that it was the holy Ghost that gave him advice. And certainly if *Banks* had lived in elder times, he would have shamed all the Inchanters of the World: for whosoever was most famous among them, could never master or instruct any beast as he did his Horse.

For the drawing of Serpents out of their Dens, or killing of them in the holes by Inchantments (which the *Marijans*, a people of *Italia*, practised: *Colubros distrumpit Marijans: incantans Marija makes the snakes to burst*.) That it hath beene used it appears, *Psalm* 58.6. though I doubt not, but that many Impostures may be in this kinde, and even by natural causes it may be done. For there are many fumes that will either draw them out or destroy them; as womens haire burnt, and the like. So many things may be layed in the entrance of their holes that will allure them: and therein I find no other *Magick* or Inchantments than to draw out a Mouse with a piece of tosted Cheefe.

## §. VII.

Of divers waies by which the Divell seemeth to work his wonders.

But to the end that we may not dote with the *Manichees*, who make two powers of Gods: that we doe not give to the Divell any other dominion than he hath (not to speake of his abilitie, when he is the Minister of Gods vengeance; as when *Egypt*, according to *David*, was destroyed by evil Angels) he otherwise worketh but three waies. The first is by moving the cogitation and affections of men: The second

second by the exquisite knowledge of Nature: and the third by deceit, illusion, and false semblance. And that they cannot work what they would, *G. Parisiensis* giveth three causes: the first, a natural impotency: the second, their own reason dissuading them from daring overmuch, or indeed (and that which is the only certain cause) the great mercy of the Creator, *Tenens eos ligatos* (saith the same Author) *velut immanissimos belluas*. *S. Augustine* was of opinion that the Frogs which *Pharaoh's* Sorcerers produced, were not natural, but that the Divel (by betraying of their senses that looked on) made them appear to be such. For as *Varinus* observeth, those Frogs of the Inchantment were not found corrupted as those of *Moses* were, which might argue that they were not creatures indeed. Hereof saith *S. Augustine*: *Nec sanè Dæmones naturæ creant, sed quæ à Deo creatæ sunt commutant, ut videantur esse quod non sunt*: The Devils create not any natures, but so change those that are created by God, as they seem to be that which they be not: of which in the 83. question he giveth the reason. *Demon quibusdam nebulis implet omnes meatus intelligentiæ, per quos aperire lumen rationis radis mentis solet*, (that is) The Devil fills with certain clouds all passages of the understanding, by which the beam of the minde is wont to open the light of reason.

And as *Tertullian* in his Book *de anima* rightly conceiveth, if the Devil can possess himself of the eyes of our minds and blinde them, it is not hard for him to dazel those of the body. For (out of doubt) by the same way that God palleth out, the Devil enroeth in, beginning with the fantasie, by which he doth more easily betray the other faculties of the soule: for the fantasie is most apt to be abused by vain apprehensions.

*Aquinas* on the contrary held that those Frogs were not imaginary, but such indeed as they seemed: not made *Magica artis ludibrio*, which indeed agreeth not with the Art, but (according to *Thomas*) *Per aptam & idoneam agentium & patientium applicationem*: By an apt and fit applying of agents and patients. And this I take to be more probable. For *Moses* could not be deceived by that sleight of false semblance; and Saint *Augustine* in another case like unto this (to wit) of the turning of *Diomedes* his companions into Birds, per *activa cum passiva*, inclineth rather to this opinion: though I am not perfwaded that Saint *Augustine* believed that of *Diomedes*. And this opinion of *Thomas*, *G. Parisiensis*, a man very learned also, confirmeth. For speaking of natural *Magick* he useth these words: *De hujusmodi autem operibus & subita generatio ranarum, & pediculorum, & vermium, aliorumque animalium quorundam: in quibus omnibus sola naturæ operatur, verum adhibitis adiutoribus, quæ ipsa semina naturæ confortant & accingunt, ita ut opus generationis tantum accelerent, ut eis qui hoc nesciunt non opus naturæ videatur (quæ tardius talia efficere consuevit) sed potentia Demonum, &c.* to which he addeth: *Qui autem in his docti sunt, talia non mirantur, sed solum Creatorem in his glorificant*: In such works (saith he) the sodain generation of Frogs and Lice, and Worms, and some other creatures is: in all which Nature alone worketh; but by means strengthening the Seeds of Nature, and quickning them; in such wise that they so hasten the work of generation, that it seemeth to the ignorant not to be the work of Nature, which usually worketh more leisurely, but they think it is done by the powers of Devils. But they who are learned in these Arts, marvel not at such workings, but glorify the Creator. Now by these two waies the Devils do most frequently work, (to wit) by knowing the uttermost of nature; and by illusion: for there is no incomprehensible or unsearchable power, but of God only.

For shall we say, he causeth sometimes thunders, lightnings, and tempests; and can infect the ayre, as well as move it or compress it; who knows not that these things are also natural? Or may it be objected that he fore-telleth things before they happen, which exceedeth nature, and is no illusion. It is true, that he sometimes doth it; but how? In elder ages he stole his knowledge out of the predictions of the Prophets: and he foretold the death of *Saul*, at such time as he was in his own possession and power to dispose of. And he that hath lived from the infancy of the world to this day, and observed the success of every counsaill: he that by reason of his swift motions can inform himself of all places, and preparations: he that is of counsaill with all those that study and practise subversion & destruction: he that is Prince of the ayre, & can thence better judge, than those that inhabit the earth: if he should not sometimes, yea if he should not very oftentimes guess rightly of things to come (where God pleaseth not to give impediment) it were very strange. For we see that wife and learned men do oftentimes

oftentimes by comparing like causes, conceive rightly of like effects, before they happen: and yet where the Devil doubteth, and would willingly keep his credit, he ever more answereth by Riddles: as

*Cræsus Halym penetrans magnam sub veritè opum vim:*

If *Cræsus* over Halys go,  
Great Kingdoms he shall overthrow.

Which answer may be taken either way: either for the overthrow of his own Kingdom, or of his Enemies. And thus far we grant the Devil may proceed in predictions, which (otherwise) belong to God onely, as it is in *Elay*: *Shew the things that are to come hereafter, that we may know that ye are Gods; shew us at all times and certainly what is to come.* *Solius enim divine intelligentie ac sapientie est, occulta nosse & revelare; It is only proper to Gods understanding and wisdom to know and reveal hidden things.*

Gul. Parisiensis  
de legib. c. 24.

### §. VIII

That none was ever raised from the dead by the power of the Devil: and that it was not the *Samuel* which appeared to Saul.

To conclude, it may be objected that the Devil hath raised from the dead: and that others by his power have done the like, as in the example given of *Samuel* raised by the Witch of *Endor*: which were it true, then might it indeed be affirmed, that some of the Devils acts exceeded all the powers of nature, false semblance, and other illusions. *Iustine Martyr* was sometime of the opinion, that it was *Samuel* indeed; and so was *Ambrose*, *Lyra*, and *Burgenfis*; from which authorities those men borrow strength which so believe. But *Martyr* changed his opinion; and so did *S. Augustine*, who at first seemed to be indifferent: For in his questions upon the Old and New Testament, he accounteth it detestable to think that it was *Samuel* which appeared: and these be his words elsewhere to the same effect: *In requie sunt anime priorum a corpore separate, impiorum autem penas lunt, donec istarum ad vitam eternam, illarum vero ad eternam mortem que secunda dicitur, corpora reviviscant.* The souls of the godly separated from their bodies are at rest, but those of the wicked suffer punishment, till the bodies of the just rise to eternal life, and of the wicked to an eternall and second death.

Iust. Martyr in  
colloq. cum Ty-  
phone in resp. ad  
Orthodoxos. 52.  
Ambros. in Luc.  
l. 1. c. 1. Arg. ad  
Simplicium. 2. q. 3.  
De Civit. Dei.  
l. 13. c. 8.

Aug. de ver. A-  
post. 18.  
Iust. Martyr ad  
Orthodoxos. q. 75.  
Hilar. Plac. 2. in  
fine.  
T. de anima  
in fin.  
Athanasius. q. 13.  
Chrysostom. in  
Evangel. Mat.

251. Episcopi.

And (besides *S. Augustine*) *Iustine Martyr*, *Helarius*, *Terullian*, *Athanasius*, *Chrysostom*, and others, believed firmly, and taught it: that the souls of men being once separate from their bodies, did not wander on the earth at all: *Credere debemus* (saith *Cyrill*) *quoniam a corporibus sanctorum anime abierint, tanquam in manus charissimi patris Bonitati divine commendari; We must believe when the souls of holy men are departed from their bodies, that they be commended to the divine Goodnesse, as into the hands of a most dear Father. If then they be in Heaven, the power of the Devil cannot stretch so high: if in Hell, inferno nulla est redemptio; From Hell there is no redemption.* For there are but two habitations after death: *Unum* (saith *Augustine*) *in igne eterno; alterum in regno eterno; the one in eternall fire; the other in Gods eternall Kingdom.* And though it be written in *Job* *Postificio*, that many there are who believe that the dead have again appeared to the living; yet the Gloss upon the same Text finds it ridiculous: *Credunt, & male, quia sua Phantasmata* (saith the Gloss) *they believe, and they believe amisse, because they be but Phantasmes or Apparitions.* For whereas any such voyce hath been heard, saying, I am the Soule of such a one: *Hec oratio a fraude atq; deceptione diabolica est; That speech is framed by the fraud and deception of the Devil*, saith *Chrysostom*. Likewise of the same, saith *Tertullian*: *Abste ne animam conjulibet sancti, medium Prophete, a demonio credamus extrahi; God forbid that we should think that the soul of any holy man, much lesse of a Prophet, should be drawn up again by a Devil.*

It is true that the Scriptures call that apparition, *Samuel*; so do they the wooden images, *Cherubims*; and false brazen gods are gods, and the like. And whereas these of the contrary opinion build upon that place of the 26 of *Ecclesiasticus* (a book not numbered among the Canonical Scriptures, as *S. Augustine* himself in this Treatise, if it be his, De cura pro mortuis agenda, confesseth) yet *Syracides*, following the literall sense and phrase of the Scriptures, proveth nothing at all: For though the Devil would willingly per-

swade

swade, that the souls (yea even of just men) were in his power; yet so far is it from the promises of the Scriptures, and from Gods just and mercifull nature, and so contrary to all divine reason, as *S. Augustine* (or whoever wrote that book before cited) might rightly term it a detestable opinion so to think. For if God had so absolutely forsaken *Saul*, that he refused to answer him either by *Dreams*, by *Urim*, or by his *Prophets*: it were foolish to conceive, that he would permit the Divell, or a wicked Witch, to raise a Prophet from the dead in *Sauls* respect: it being also contrary to his own divine Law to ask counsell of the dead; as in *Deuteronom. 18.* and elsewhere. Therefore it was the Devil, and not the soul of a dead body, that gave answer and advice.

But because *Helias* and *Helizæus* had raised some from the dead by the power of God, those Devils which *S. Augustine* calleth *Ludificatores animantium sibi subiectorum*; Mockers of their own vassalls, casting before their eyes a semblance of humane bodies; and framing sounds to their ears like the voices of men, do also perfwade their gracelesse and accursed attendants, that themselves both possesse, and have power over the souls of men. *Eldudis* *Diabolus aciem tum spectantium, tum etiam cogitantium*, saith *L. Vives*: The Devil beguileth the sense both of the beholders, and of those that so imagine. These then are the bounds of the Devils power, whom if we will not fear, we must fear to fin. For when he is not the instrument of Gods vengeance, he can touch no man that makes not himselfe his voluntary vassall: *Potest ad malum invitare, non potest trahere*, saith *S. Augustine*; so he can allure, but he cannot enforce to evill. Such as think otherwise, may go into the number remembred by *Lucretius*:

*Nam veluti pueri trepidant, atque omnia cæcis  
In tenebris metunt: sic nos in luce timemus.*

We fear by light, as children in the dark.

## CHAP. XII.

of the memorable buildings of *Ninus*, and of his wife *Semiramis*, and of other her Acts.

### §. I.

of the magnificent building of *Nineve* by *Ninus*: and of *Babylon* by *Semiramis*.

But to come back to *Ninus* the amplifier and finisher of *Nineve*: whether he performed it before or after the overthrow of *Zoroaster*, it is uncertain. As for the City it selfe, it is agreed by all prophane Writers, and confirmed by the Scriptures, that it exceeded all other in circuit, and answerable magnificence. For it had in compasse 440. *stadia*, or furlongs; the walls whereof were an hundred foot upright, and had such a breadth as three Chariots might passe on the Rampire in front: these walls were garnished with 1500. Towers, which gave exceeding beauty to the rest, and strength, no lesse admirable for the nature of those times.

But this City (built in the Plaines of *Assyria*, and on the banks of *Tygris*, and in the region of *Eden*) was founded long before *Ninus* time; and (as ancient Historians report, and more lately *Nauclerus*) had the name of *Campfor*, at such time as *Ninus* amplified the

same, and gave it a wall, and called it after his own name. For these works of *Babylon* and *Nineve* begun by *Nimrod* in *Chaldea*; and in *Assyria*, *Herod. l. 1.* *Nims* and *Semiramis* made perfect. *Ninus* finished *Nineve*, *Semiramis* *Babylon*: where-  
in the sought to exceed her husband by far. Indeed in the first Age when Princes were moderate, they neither thought how to invade others, nor feared to be invaded: labouring to build Towns and Villages for the use of themselves and their people, without either Walls or Towers; and how they might discharge the earth of Woods, Briars, Bushments, and Waters, to make it more habitable and fertile. But *Semiramis* living in that Age, when Ambition was strong in youth: and purposing to follow

1 Kin. 17. 22.  
2 Kin. 4. 34.  
Nullus enim  
magis aut de-  
mon mortuam  
verè unquam  
excitavit, Wier-  
de falsis.

Julian. l. 2.  
Diod. l. 2.  
Sæd. l. 11. c. 1.

Julian. l. 1.  
Diod. l. 2. & 3.

follow the conquest which her husband had undertaken, gave that beauty and strength to Babylon which it had.

## § II.

Of the end of Ninus : and beginning of Semiramis reigns.

**T**His she did after the death of her husband *Ninus* : who after he had mastered *Babylonia*, and subjected unto his Empire all those Regions between it and the *Mediterranean Sea*, and *Hellepont* (Asia the lesse excepted) and finished the work of *Ninus*, he left the World in the year thereof 2019, after he had reigned 52 years. *Plutarch* reporteth that *Semiramis* desired her husband *Ninus*, that he would grant unto her the absolute sovereign power for one day. *Diad. Siculus* out of *Athenæus*, and others, speaks of five dayes. In which time (moved either with desire of rule, or licentious liberty, or with the memory of her husband *Menon*, who perished for her) she caused *Ninus* her husband to be slain. But this seemeth rather a scandall cast on her by the *Greeks*, than that it had any truth.

Ælian lib. 7. c. 2.  
Dion.

Howsoever *Ninus* came to his end, *Semiramis* took on her after his death the sole rule of the *Assyrian* Empire : of which, *Ninus* was said to be the first Monarch, because he changed his seat from *Babylonia* in *Chaldea*, to *Nineve* in *Assyria*. *Justin* reports, that *Semiramis* (the better to invest her selfe, and in her beginning without murmure or offence to take on her so great a charge) presented her selfe to the people in the person of her son *Ninus* or *Zameis*, who bare her externall form and proportion without any sensible difference.

This report I take also to be feigned, for which many arguments might be made. But as she ruled long, so she performed all those memorable acts which are written of her by the name of *Semiramis*, and subscribed that letter which she sent to the King of *India* (her last challenge and undertaken conquest) by her owne name. And were it true that her son *Ninus* had such a stature at his fathers death, as that *Semiramis* (who was very personable) could be taken for him; yet it is very unlikely that shee could have held the Empire from him 42 years after by any such subtilty : (for so long shee reigned after the death of her husband :) but it may be true that *Ninus* or *Zameis* (being wholly given to his pleasures, as it is written of him) was well pleased with his mothers prosperous government and undertakings.

## § III.

Of *Semiramis* parentage and education, and *Metamorphosis* of her mother.

**S**ome Writers (of which *Plutarch* is one) make this famous woman to have been of base parentage, calling her after the name of her Country, a *Syrian*. *Berosus* calls her after the name of her City wherein she was born, *Semiramis* *Ascalonitis*, of *Ascalon*, the ancient City and Metropolis of the *Philistims*. Others report her to be the daughter of *Derceta*, a *Curvian* of *Ascalon*, exceeding beautifull. Others say that this *Derceta* or *Dercetis*, the mother of *Semiramis*, was sometimes a Recluse, and had professed a holy and a religious life; to whom there was a Temple dedicated, seated on the bank of a Lake adjoining to *Ascalon*; and afterward falling in love with a godly young man, she was by him made with childe, which (for fear of extreme punishment) shee conveyed away, and caused the same to be hidden among the high reeds which grew on the banks of the Lake : in which (while the childe was left to the mercy of wilde beasts) the same was fed by certain birds, which used to feed upon or neer those waters. But I take this tale to be like that of *Lupa* the Harlot that fostered *Romulus*. For some other or other adjoining to this Lake, had the charge and fosteridge of this childe, who being per chance but some base and obscure creature, the mother might thereby hope the better to cover her dishonour and breach of vow; notwithstanding which the same was cast from the top of her Temple into the Lake adjoining, &c. (as the Poets have feigned) changed by *Venus* into a Fish, all but her face, which still held the same beauty and humane shape. It is thought that from this *Derceta* the invention of that Idol of the *Philistims* (called *Dagon*) was taken : for it is true, that *Dagon* had a mans face, and a fishes body : into whose Temple when the ark of God was brought, the Idol fell

fell twice to the ground : and at the second fall there remained onely the trunk of *Dagon*, the head being broken off : For so *S. Hierome* hath converted that place. *Vatablus*, *Pagninus*, and *Junius*, write it by *Dagon* onely, which signifieth a fish, and so it onely appeared : the head thereof by the second fall being sundred from the body.

For my self I rather think, that this *Dagon* of the *Philistims* was an Idol representing *Triton*, one of those imaginary Sea-gods under *Neptune*. For this City being maritime (as all those of the *Philistims* were, and so were the best of *Phœnicia*) used all their devotions to *Neptune*, and the rest of the petty gods which attended him.

## § IV.

Of her Expedition into *India*, and death after discomfiture : with a note of the improbability of her vices.

**B**ut for her Pedigree, I leave it to the *Assyrian* *Heralds* : and for her vicious life, I ascribe the report thereof to the envious and lying *Grecians*. For delicacy and ease doe more often accompany licentiousnesse in men and women, than labour and hazard doe. And if the one halfe be true which is reported of this Lady, then there never lived any Prince or Princesse more worthy of fame than *Semiramis* was, both for the works she did at *Babylon* and elsewhere, and for the wars she made with glorious success : all but her last enterprize of *India*, from whence both *Strabo* and *Arianus* report that she never returned : and that of all her most powerfull Army there survived but onely twenty persons : the rest being either drowned in the river of *Indus*, dead of the famine, or slain by the sword of *Stanrobates*. But as the multitude which went out are more than reason hath numbered ; so were those that returned lesse than could have escaped of such an Army, as consisted of four millions and upwards. For these numbers which she levied by her Lieutenant *Dercetæus*, (saith *Suidas*) did consist of Foot-men three millions ; of Horse-men one million ; of Chariots armed with hooks on each side, one hundred thousand ; of those which fought upon Camels as many ; of Camels for burden two hundred thousand ; of raw Hides for all uses three hundred thousand ; of Gallies with brazen heads three thousand, by which the might transport over *Indus* at once three hundred thousand souldiers : which Gallies were furnished with *Syrans*, *Phœnicians*, *Cilicians*, and men of *Cyprus*. These incredible and impossible numbers, which no one place of the earth was able to nourish (had every man and beast but fed upon grasse) are taken from the authority of *Ctesias* whom *Diodorus* followeth. But as the one may be taxed with many frivolous reports : so *Diodorus* himselfe hath nothing of certainty, but from *Xerxes* expedition into *Greece* and afterwards : whose Army (though the same was far inferior to that of *Semiramis*) yet it had weight enough to overload the belief of any reasonable man. For all Authors consent, that *Xerxes* transported into *Greece* an Army of 1700000. and gathered together (therein to passe the *Hellepont*) three thousand Gallies, as *Herodotus* out of the severall Provinces whence those Gallies were taken hath collected the number.

But of what multitude soever the Army of *Semiramis* consisted, the same being broken and overthrowen by *Stanrobates* upon the banks of *Indus*, canticum cantavit extremum ; she sang her last song ; and (as Antiquity hath feigned) was changed by the gods into a Dove (the bird of *Venus*) whence it came that the *Babylonians* gave a Dove in their ensignes.

## § V.

Of the Temple of *Belus* built by *Semiramis* : and of the Pyramids of *Egypt*.

**A**mong all her other memorable and more than magnificent works (besides the wall of the City of *Babylon*) was the Temple of *Bel*, erected in the middle of this City, invironed with a wall carried four square of great height and beauty, having on each square certain brazen Gates curiously engraven. In the Core of the square she raised a Tower of a furlong high, which is halfe a quarter of a mile ; and upon it again (taking a *Basis* of a lesse circuit) she set a second Tower ; and so eight in all one above another, upon the top whereof the *Chaldean* Priests made the observation of the Stars ; because this Tower over-topped the ordinary clouds.

By beholding the ruines of this Tower have many Travellers been deceived; who suppose that they have seen a part of *Nimrod's* Tower, when it was but the foundation of this Temple of *Zel*: (except this of *Zel* were founded on that of *Nimrod*.) There were burnt in this Temple one hundred thousand talents of frankincense every year (saith *Herodotus*.) This Temple did *Nabuchodonosor* adorn with the spoils of *Hierusalem*, and of the Temple of *Solomon*: all which vessels and ornaments *Cyrus* re-delivered. This Temple *Xerxes* evened with the soile; which *Alexander* is said to have repaired, by the persuasions of the *Chaldeans*. I deny not that it might have been in his desire so to doe; but he enjoyed but a few yeeres after *Babylon* taken, and therefore could not perform any such work. The *Egyptians* (saith *Trochus*) inhabiting a low and level ground, and given to the same superstition of the Stars that the *Chaldeans* were, erected in imitation, and for the same service and use, the *Pyramides* by *Memphis*, which were *conspicue undique navigantibus*, saith *Plinie*. Of these *Pyramides* *Bellonius* a carefull observer of rarities (who being in *Egypt*, mounted by steps to the top of the highest) maketh this report: *Le meilleur archer qui seroit a sa sonnette, & tirant une fleche en l'air, a peine pourroit l'envoyer hors de sa base q' elle ne se tombast sur les degrez*; The best Archer standing on the top of one of these *Pyramides*, and shooting an arrow from thence into the ayre as far as he can, with great difficulty shall be able so to force the same, but that it will fall upon some of the degrees or steps.

Prod. in Times lib. 1.

Bellon. l. 2.

Finis Libri primi.



# THE FIRST PART OF THE HISTORIE OF THE WORLD:

## INTREATING OF THE TIMES

from the birth of *ABRAHAM* to the destruction of  
the Temple of *SOLOMON*.

THE SECOND BOOK.

## CHAP. I.

of the time of the birth of *Abraham*: and of the use of this question, for the ordering  
of the storie of the *Assyrian* Empire.

## §. I.

30 of some of the successors of *Semiramis*: with a briefe transition to the question, about the time  
of the birth of *Abraham*.



40 After the death of *Semiramis*, *Ninias* or *Zameis* succeeded her in the Empire, on whom *Berosus Annianus* bestowes the conquest of *Bactria*, and the overthrow of *Zoroaster*; contrary to *Diodorus*, *Iustine*, *Orosius*, and all other approved Writers. For *Ninias* being esteemed no man of war at all, but altogether feminine, and subjected to ease and delicacy, there is no probability in that opinion. Now because there was nothing performed by this *Ninias* of any moment, other than that out of jealousy he every year changed his Provinciaall Governours, and built Colledges for the *Chaldean* Priests, his Astronomers: nor by *Arius* his successour, whom *Suidas* calleth *Thuras*; but that he reduced againe

the *Bactrians* and *Cassians*, revolted (as it seemeth) in *Ninias* his time: nor of *Aralius*, the successour of *Arius*; but that he added sumptuosity, invented jewels of gold and stone, and some engines for the war: I will for this present passe them over, and a while follow *Abraham*, whose wayes are warrantable, (till we meet these *Assyrians* again in this story) by whom and by whose issues we shall best give date to the Kings of *Babylon*: *Abraham* living at once with *Ninus*, *Ninias*, *Semiramis*, *Arius*, *Aralius*, and *Xerxes*, or *Babylanius*. For otherwise if we seek to prove things certain by the uncertain, and judge of those times, which the Scriptures set us downe without error, by the reignes of the *Assyrian* Princes: we shall but patch up the story at adventure, and leave it in the same confusion, in which to this day it hath remained. For where the Scriptures doe not help us, *Atirum non est in rebus antiquis*, *Historiam non constare*, No marvell if then in things *Plut. in These.* very ancient, History want assurance.

The better therefore to find out, in what age of the World, and how long these *Assyrian* kings reigned, as also for other good causes, we must first assure the time of *Abraham's* birth, and in what yeer the same hapned after the flood. Now since all agree, that the

fortieth three year of *Ninus* was the birth-year of *Abraham*; by proving directly out of the Scriptures, in what year after the flood the birth of *Abraham* hapned, we shall thereby set all the rest in square and order. But of this time there is much jangling between those *Chronologers*, which follow the Hebrew account, and others: the most part making 292. or 293. years; others 352. years between *Abraham's* birth and the flood: a matter often disputed, but never concluded.

*Archilochus de temporibus* (as we find him in *Amicus*) makes but 250. years from the flood to *Ninus*: then seeing that *Abraham* was born in the fortieth three year of *Ninus*, according to *Eusebius* and *S. Augustine*, it followeth by the addition of those two numbers, that the year of *Abraham's* birth was in the year after the flood 293. or, as the most part of all *Chronologers* gather, the year 292.

Now, since I do here enter into that never resolved question, and *Labyrinth* of times, it behoveth me to give reason for my own opinion: and with so much the greater care and circumspection, because I walk aside, and in a way a part from the multitudes yet not alone, and without companions, though the fewer in number: with whom I rather choose to endure the wounds of those darts, which *Envie* casteth at Novelty, than to go on safely and sleepily in the easie wayes of ancient mistakings: seeing to be learned in many errors, or to be ignorant in all things, hath little diversity.

## §. II.

A proposall of reasons or arguments, that are brought to prove *Abraham* was born in the year 292. after the Flood, and not in the year 352.

Those which seek to prove this account of 292. years, between the generall flood and *Abraham's* birth, ground themselves, first on these words of the Scripture: so *Terah* lived 70. years, and begot *Abraham*, *Nahor*, and *Haran*: secondly, upon the opinion of *Iosephus*, *S. Augustine*, *Beda*, *Isidore*, and many of the ancient Hebrews before them: authorities (while they are slightly look't over) seeming of great weight.

From the place of Scripture last remembered, the later *Chronologers* gather these arguments. First out of the words as they lie; That *Terah* at 70. years begot *Abraham*, *Nahor* and *Haran*: and that *Abraham* being the first named, *Abraham* being the worthiest, *Abraham* being the son of the promise, ought in this respect to be accounted the eldest son of *Terah*, and so necessarily born in the seventieth year of his life. Secondly, it was of *Abraham* that *Moses* had respect, in whom the Church of God was continued, who was heir of the blessing; and not of *Nahor* and *Haran*: for the scope of this Chapter was to set down the genealogie of *Christ*, from *Adam* to *Abraham*, without all regard of *Nahor* and *Haran*.

It is thirdly objected, that if *Abraham* were not the eldest son, then there can be no certainty of his age, and so are all future times made doubtfull. For it cannot then be proved, that *Abraham* was born more assuredly in the 130. year of *Terah* his age, than in the 131, 132. &c. *Moses* having no where set down precisely that *Abraham* went into *Canaan* that very year, in which his father died.

Fourthly, it is thought improbable, that *Terah* begat *Abraham* at 130. years: seeing *Abraham* himselfe thought it a wonder to be made a father at 100. years.

## §. III.

The answer to one of the objections proposed, shewing that *Abraham* made but one journey out of *Mesopotamia* into *Canaan*: and it, after his fathers death.

To answer all which objections, it is very easie, the way being prepared thereto by divers learned Divines long since, and to which I will adde somewhat of mine owne, according to the small talent which God hath given me. Now forasmuch as the state of the question cannot well be scanned, unless the time of *Abraham's* journey into *Canaan* be first considered of; before I descend unto the particular examination of these arguments, I will make bold with order and method so far, as to search into a strange tradition concerning his travells, that serveth as a ground for this opinion, and a bulwark against all that can be said to the contrary.

But it is conceived that *Abraham* made two journeys into *Canaan*: the later after his fathers

Fathers death, the former presently upon his calling; which he performed without delay, not staying for his fathers death at *Haran*: a conjecture, drawne from a place in the *Epistle* to the Hebrews, where it is written, By faith *Abraham* (when he was called) obeyed *God* to goe out into a place which he should afterwards receive for inheritance: and he went out, not knowing whither he went. This supposition (if it be granted) serves very well to uphold the opinion, that can ill stand without it. Let us therefore see whether we may give credit to the supposition it selfe.

Surely, that *Abraham* first departed *Charran* or *Haran* after the death of *Terah* his Father, the same is proved, without the admission of any distinction, by these words of *St. Stephen*: And after his Father was dead, God brought him into this Land, where ye now dwell, that was, out of *Haran* into *Canaan*. Against which place so direct and plaine, what force hath any mans fancy or supposition, perswading that *Abraham* made two journeys into *Canaan*; one before *Terah's* death, and another after: no such thing being found in Scriptures, nor any circumstance, probability, or reason to induce it? For if any man out of this place before alledged can pick any argument, proving, or affording any strong presumption, that *Abraham* past into *Canaan*, and then returned unto *Haran*, from whence he departed a second time: then I thinke it reason, that he be beleev'd in the rest. But that he performed the commandment of God after his Fathers death, leaving *Ur* and *Haran* for *Canaan*, it is as true as the Scriptures themselves are true. For after his Father was dead, (saith Martyr *Stephen*) God brought him into this Land. And as *Beza* noteth, if *Abraham* made a double journey into *Canaan*, then must it be inferred, that *Moses* omitted the one, and *Stephen* afterwards remembered the other: and whence had *Stephen*, saith *Beza*, the knowledge of *Abraham's* coming into *Canaan*, but out of *Moses*? For if *Stephen* had spoken any thing of those times, differing from *Moses*, he had offended the Jews, his adversaries, too great an occasion both of scandalizing himselfe, and the Gospel of *Christ*. Indeed we shall finde small reason to make us thinke that *Abraham* passed and repassed those wayes, more often than he was enforced so to do, if we consider, that he had no other guide or comforter in this long and wearisome journey, than the strength of his faith in Gods promise: in which if any thing would have brought him to despair, he had more cause than ever man had to fall into it. For he came into a Region of strong and stubborn nations: a nation of valiant and resolute Idolaters. He was besieged with famine at his first arrival, and driven to flie into *Egypt* for relief. His wife was old, and he had no son to inherit the promise. And when God had given him *Isaac*, he commanded him to offer him up to himself for sacrifice: all which discomforts he patiently and constantly underwent.

Secondly, let us consider the wayes themselves, which *Abraham* had to passe over; the length whereof was 300 English miles; and through Countries of which he had no manner of experience. He was to transport himself over the great river of *Emphrates*, to travell through the dangerous and barren Desarts of *Palmyrena*, and to climb over the great and high mountains of *Libanus*, *Hermon*, or *Gilead*: and whether these were easie walkes for *Abraham* to march twice over, containing, as aforesaid, 300. miles in length, let every reasonable man judge. For if he travailed it twice; then was his journey in all 1800. miles from *Ur* to *Haran*: and from *Haran* twice into *Canaan*. But were there no other argument to disprove this fancy; the manner of *Abraham's* departing from *Haran* hath more prooffe (that he had not *animum revertendi*, nor any thought of looking backward) than any mans bare conjecture, be he of what antiquity or authority soever. For thus it is written of him, Then *Abraham* took *Sara* his wife, and *Lot* his brothers son, and all their substance that they possessed, and the souls that they had gotten in *Haran*: and they departed to go to the land of *Canaan*, and to the land of *Canaan* they came. Now if *Abraham* brought all with him that was dear unto him; his wife, and kinsmen, and his and their goods: it is not probable that he meant to walk it back again for his pleasure, in so warm, dangerous, and barren a Country as that was: or if he could have been thereto moved, it is more likely that he would have then returned, when he was yet unsettled, and preft with extreme famine at his first arrivall. For had his Father been then alive, he might have hoped from him to receive more assured comfort and relief than among the *Egyptians*, to whom he was a meer stranger both in Religion and Nation.

What the cause might be of *Abraham's* return to *Haran*, as I will not enquire of them, that without warrant from the Scriptures have sent him back thither, about the

Gen. 24.

the time of his fathers death : so they perhaps, if they were urged, could say little else, than that without such a second voyage their opinion were not maintainable. One thing in good reason they should do well to make plain, if it be not over-troublesome. They say that *Abraham* was in *Haran* at his Father's death, or some time after, being then by their account 135 years old, or a little more. How then did it happen, that he left quite undone the business, which, as we read, was within foure or five years after that time his greatest, or (as may seem) his only care? Did not he binde with a very solemn oath his principal servant, in whom he reposed most confidence, to travell into those parts, and seek out a Wife for *Isaac* his son? and doth it not appear by all circumstances, that neither he nor his servant were so well acquainted in *Mesopotamia*, that they could particularly design any one woman, as a fit match for *Isaac*? Surely if *Abraham* had been there in person so lately, as within foure or five years before, he would not have forgotten a matter of such importance; but would have trusted his own judgement, in choosing a woman, fit for her piety, virtue, and other desirable qualities, to be linked in marriage with his only son, who was then five and thirty years old; before which age most of the Patriarchs after the Flood had begotten children: rather than have left all at random to the consideration of a servant, that neither knew any, nor was known of any in that Country. But let it be supposed (if it may be believed) that either *Abraham* forgot his business when he was there, or that somewhat happened which no man can devise; What might be the reason, that *Abraham* man, doing his Masters errand, was faine to lay open the whole story of his Masters prosperity, telling it as news, that *Sarah* had borne to him a son in her old age? If *Abraham* himself, a more certain Authour, had so lately been among them, would not all this have bin an idle tale? It were needles to stand long upon a thing so evident. Whether it were lawful for *Abraham* to have returned back to *Haran*, would perhaps be a question hardly answerable: considering how averse he was from permitting his son to be carried thither, even though a wife of his own kinsed could not have been obtained without his personall presence. *Jacob* indeed was sent thither by his Parents, to take a Wife of his own linage; not without Gods especial approbation, by whose blessing he prospered in that journey; yet he lived there as a servant; suffered many injuries; and finally was driven to convey himself away from thence by flight. For although it be not a sentence written, yet out of all written examples it may be observed, that God alloweth not in his servants any desire of returning to the place, from whence he hath taken, and transplanted them. That brief saying, *Remember Lots wife*, contains much matter. Let us consider *Mesopotamia*, from whence *Abraham* was taken, and *Egypt*, out of which the whole Nation of the *Israelites* were delivered: we shall find, that noblesse issued from either of them, to the posterity of the *Hebrews*. When *Ezechias* was visited with an honourable Embassie from *Babel*, it seems that he conceived great pleasure in his minde, and thought it a piece of his prosperity; but the prophesie which thereupon he heard by *Esay*, made him to know, that the counsell of God was not agreeable to such thoughts: which more plainly appeared in a following generation, when by the waters of *Babylon* they late down and wept. Concerning *Egypt* we read, that *Sejace* and *Neco*, Kings of *Egypt*, brought calamity upon *Israel*: also that their confidence in the *Egyptian* succours was the cause of their destruction. Where they were forbidden to return into *Egypt* I do not remember, nor can readily finde; but it is found in *Deuteronomy*, that God had said, *They should no more return that way*; which is given, as the reason, why their King might not cause the people to return to *Egypt*, for the multiplying of his Horfes. Whether the Lord had laid any such injunction upon *Abraham* of not returning to *Mesopotamia*, I cannot say; many things do argue it probably: That he never returned, all circumstances do (to my understanding) both strongly and necessarily conclude.

Gen. 24. 35. &amp;c.

Gen. 24. 6. &amp;c.

Gen. 28.

2 Kin. 20.

Psal. 137.  
1 Kin. 14. 25.  
& 2 Kin. 23.  
v. 29.

Decc. 17. v. 16.

that they could particularly design any one woman, as a fit match for *Isaac*? Surely if *Abraham* had been there in person so lately, as within foure or five years before, he would not have forgotten a matter of such importance; but would have trusted his own judgement, in choosing a woman, fit for her piety, virtue, and other desirable qualities, to be linked in marriage with his only son, who was then five and thirty years old; before which age most of the Patriarchs after the Flood had begotten children: rather than have left all at random to the consideration of a servant, that neither knew any, nor was known of any in that Country. But let it be supposed (if it may be believed) that either *Abraham* forgot his business when he was there, or that somewhat happened which no man can devise; What might be the reason, that *Abraham* man, doing his Masters errand, was faine to lay open the whole story of his Masters prosperity, telling it as news, that *Sarah* had borne to him a son in her old age? If *Abraham* himself, a more certain Authour, had so lately been among them, would not all this have bin an idle tale? It were needles to stand long upon a thing so evident. Whether it were lawful for *Abraham* to have returned back to *Haran*, would perhaps be a question hardly answerable: considering how averse he was from permitting his son to be carried thither, even though a wife of his own kinsed could not have been obtained without his personall presence. *Jacob* indeed was sent thither by his Parents, to take a Wife of his own linage; not without Gods especial approbation, by whose blessing he prospered in that journey; yet he lived there as a servant; suffered many injuries; and finally was driven to convey himself away from thence by flight. For although it be not a sentence written, yet out of all written examples it may be observed, that God alloweth not in his servants any desire of returning to the place, from whence he hath taken, and transplanted them. That brief saying, *Remember Lots wife*, contains much matter. Let us consider *Mesopotamia*, from whence *Abraham* was taken, and *Egypt*, out of which the whole Nation of the *Israelites* were delivered: we shall find, that noblesse issued from either of them, to the posterity of the *Hebrews*. When *Ezechias* was visited with an honourable Embassie from *Babel*, it seems that he conceived great pleasure in his minde, and thought it a piece of his prosperity; but the prophesie which thereupon he heard by *Esay*, made him to know, that the counsell of God was not agreeable to such thoughts: which more plainly appeared in a following generation, when by the waters of *Babylon* they late down and wept. Concerning *Egypt* we read, that *Sejace* and *Neco*, Kings of *Egypt*, brought calamity upon *Israel*: also that their confidence in the *Egyptian* succours was the cause of their destruction. Where they were forbidden to return into *Egypt* I do not remember, nor can readily finde; but it is found in *Deuteronomy*, that God had said, *They should no more return that way*; which is given, as the reason, why their King might not cause the people to return to *Egypt*, for the multiplying of his Horfes. Whether the Lord had laid any such injunction upon *Abraham* of not returning to *Mesopotamia*, I cannot say; many things do argue it probably: That he never returned, all circumstances do (to my understanding) both strongly and necessarily conclude.

But because this double passage of *Abraham* is but an imagination; and that imaginations of men are rather valuable among children, than that they can perfwade those of judgement or understanding: I take it sufficient, that *S. Stephen* hath directly taught us, that *Abraham* left *Haran*, his father being dead. And for the rest, when they shew any one Scripture to prove it, I will believe as they do. For all the travails of *Abraham* are precisely set down in the Scriptures: as first from *Ur* or *Camerina* in *Chaldea* to *Haran* or *Charran*: and then from *Haran* (after his Fathers death) to *Sichem*; from *Sichem* he

he removed to a mountain between *Bethel* and *Haie*: thence into *Egypt*; from *Egypt* he returned thither againe, where *Lot* and he parted, because their flocks and herds of *Cattell* were more than could be fed in that part: from thence the second time he removed to *Mamre*, neere *Hebron*: and thence having pursued *Amraphel*, and rescued *Lot*, he after inhabited at *Gerar*, in the border of *Idumaea* under *Abimelec*; and after neer unto it at *Berfabe*, at which time he was ready to offer up his son *Isaac* on the mountain *Moriah*. But this fiction of his retreat to *Haran* or *Charran*, appeareth not in any one story, either divine or humane. Now, if it may be supposed, that *Abraham* had made any former journey into *Canaan*, as *Levita* his *Cabala* hath fained, it should in reason be there withall beleaved, that he would in those his first travails have provided himselfe of some certain seate, or place of abiding; and not have come a second time with his wife, kinsmen, family, goods and *Cattell*, not knowing whereon to rest himself. But *Abraham* when he came from *Charran*, past through the North part of *Canaan*, thence to *Sichem*, Gen. 12. 5. and the Plaine of *Moriah*: where finding no place to inhabit, he departed thence to *Bethel*, and *Haie*; and so from Nation to Nation, to discover and find out some fit habitation: from whence againe, as it is written in *Genesis*, the eleventh, *He went forth, going and journeying towards the South*: and alwayes unsettled. By occasion of which wandring to and fro, some say, the *Egyptians* gave him and his the name of *Hebraei*.

Further, to prove that he had not formerly beene in the Countrey, we may note, that ere he came unto *Bethel* and *Haie*, and at his first entrance into *Canaan*, God appeared unto him, saying, *Unto thy seed will I give this Land*, shewing it him as unto a stranger therein, and as a Land to him unknowne. For *Abraham* without any other provident care for himselfe, beleaved in the Word of the living God: neither sending before, nor comming first to discover it; but being arrived, he received a second promise from God, that he would give those Countries unto him and his seed to inhabite and inherit.

Lastly, what should move any man to thinke, that *Moses* would have omitted any such double journey of *Abraham*, seeing he setteth downe all his passages else-where long and short? as when he moved from *Sichem*, and seated betwene *Haie* and *Bethel*, the distance being but 20. miles: and when he moved thence to the valley of *Mamre*, being but 24. miles: and when he left *Mamre* and fate downe at *Gerar*, being lesse than sixe miles; No, *Moses* past over all the times of the first age with the greater brevity, to hasten him to the story of *Abraham*: shutting up all between the Creation and the flood in sixe chapters; which age lasted 1656. yeeres: but he bestoweth on the story of *Abraham*, fourteene chapters, beginning with his birth in the eleventh, and ending with his death in the five and twentieth; and this time endured but 175. years. It hath therefore no face of truth, that *Moses* forgot or neglected any thing concerning *Abraham*s travels, or other actions: or that he would set down those small removes of five miles, and omit those of three hundred. For such a journey in going and coming would have ministred some variety of matter, or accident, worthy the inserting and adding to *Abraham*s story.

## §. I V.

The answer to another of the objections proposed, shewing that it was not unlikely, that *Terah* should beget *Abraham* in his hundred and thirtieth yeere.

Now touching the objection, where it is said, that it was very unlikely that *Terah* should beget *Abraham* in his 130. yeere, seeing *Abraham* himselfe thought it a wonder to have a son at an hundred: this is hardly worth the answering. This wonder is indeed mis-cast, and mistaken: *Abraham* having respect onely to *Sarah* his wife, when he spake of their many yeates. For when the Angel said unto *Abraham* in his Tent doore at *Mamre*; *Loe Sarah thy wife shall have a Son*, it followeth in the next verses, *Now Abraham and Sarah were old and stricken in age, and it ceased to be with Sarah after the manner of women*: therefore *Sarah* laughed, &c.

So then in that it is said, it ceased to be with *Sarah* after the manner of women, it appeareth that the wonder was wrought on her, and not on *Abraham*. For *Abraham* by his second wife *Keturah* had many sons after *Sarah*s death, as *Zimron*, *Jockshan*, *Medan*, *Adnan*, *Shibak*, and *Shuah*: and the eldest of these was borne 37. yeares after *Isaac*: and the youngest



youngest forty years after. What strangeness then, that *Terah*, being 130 years old, should beget *Abraham*, will they say, may be gathered from this supposed despaire of *Abraham* at one hundred years? For *Sarah* died in the year of the world 2145. and *Isaac* was born in the year 2109. and *Abraham* did not marry *Keturah* till *Sarah* was buried. So if we deduct the number of 2109. out of 2145. there remaineth 36. And therefore if *Abraham* begat five sons 36. years after this supposed wonder, and when *Abraham* was 137. years old: it is not strange that his father *Terah* should beget *Abraham* at 130. And if *Boaz*, *Obed*, and *Jesse*, who lived to many years and ages after *Abraham*, begat sons at 100. years, or near it, it cannot be marvelled at, that *Terah* begat *Abraham* at 130. and *Abraham* others at the same age and seven years after.

## §. V.

The answer to two more of the objections: shewing that we may have certainty of *Abraham*'s age from the Scripture, though we make not *Abraham* the eldest son: and that there was great cause, why in the story of *Abraham* his two brethren should be respected.

It followeth now to speak something to the objection, which brings *Abraham*'s age altogether in doubt, except we allow him to be the eldest son of *Terah*, and born when *Terah* was 70. years old. For *Abraham*'s age being made uncertain, all succeeding times are thereby without any perfect rule or knowledge.

But this proposition, That we cannot be certain of *Abraham*'s age, unless we make him the eldest son, is false. For it is plain in the Scriptures, that when *Terah* was 205, which was the year of his death: then was *Abraham* 75. And if you ask, how I can judge of times, either preceding or succeeding, by knowing that *Abraham* departed *Haran* at that age: I answer, That Saint *Stephen* hath told us, that *Abraham*'s departure followed the death of his Father *Terah*: and *Terah* died at 205. so as the 75. year of *Abraham* was the 205. year of *Terah*: which known, there can be no error in the account of times succeeding. Now to come to the objection, where it is said, That *Moses* had no respect unto *Nachor* and *Haran*, because they were out of the Church, but to *Abraham* only, with whom God established the Covenant, and of whom *Christ* descended according to the flesh, &c. I answer, that *Moses* for many great and necessary causes had respect of *Nachor* and *Haran*. For the succession of Gods Church is not witnessed by *Abraham* alone, but by the issues of *Nachor* and *Haran*, were they Idolaters or otherwise. For *Nachor* was the Father of *Bethuel*, and *Bethuel* of *Rebecca*, the mother of *Israel*: and *Haran* was the Parent of *Lot*, *Sarah*, and *Milcah*: and *Sarah* was mother to *Isaac*, and grandmother to *Jacob*: *Milcah* also the wife of *Nachor*, and mother of *Bethuel*, was *Jacob*'s great grandmother: and the age of *Sarah* the daughter of *Haran* is especially noted, in that it pleased God to give her a son at 90. years, and when by nature she could not have conceived. And therefore, though it were not in regard of themselves, yet because both *Nachor* and *Abraham* married the daughters of their brother *Haran*, and because *Isaac* married *Rebecca* the grand-child of *Nachor*; and *Jacob*, *Lea*, and *Rachel*, the daughters of *Laban*, the grand-child also of *Nachor*: it was not superfluous in *Moses* to give light of these mens times and ages. And though sometime they worshipped strange gods, as it is *Jos. 24. 2.* yet I see no cause to think, that they still continued Idolaters. For they believed and obeyed the calling of *Abraham*, leaving their natural Country, and City of *Ur in Chaldaea*, as *Abraham* did, and removed thence all, except *Haran*, who died before his father *Terah*, ere they left *Chaldaea*; but *Lot*, his son, followed *Abraham* into *Canaan*; and *Sarah*, the sister of *Lot*, *Abraham* married. *Nachor* also, who remained at *Charran*, gave his sons daughters to *Isaac*, and *Jacob*, his own kinsmen: he himself having also married in his own Family; not thinking it pleasing unto God to mix themselves with strangers and Idolaters. And that these men at length believed in the God of *Abraham*, it can no way be doubted. For when *Laban* had seen the servant of *Abraham* standing at the Well beside *Charran*, he invited him to his Fathers house in this manner: Come in, thou blessed of *Jehovah*, &c. And when this servant of *Abraham* demanded an answer as touching *Rebecca*, then answered *Laban* and *Bethuel*, and said, This thing is proceeded of *Jehovah*: meaning, that it was the will of the true God it should be so; wherein he acknowledged Gods providence. Like wise in the following verse it is written; Take, go, that she may be thy Masters sons wife, even as *Jehovah* hath said. This their

Gen. 24. 31.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 24. 50.

Gen. 14.

Terah begat Abraham at 70. yeer old, then must Abraham have been 135. yeares when he first set his foot in Canaan, seeing Terah must be dead ere he parted, and so 70. added to 135. make 205. the true age of Terah : which is contrary to all those places of Scripture before remembred. For he entred at 75. he rescued Lot at 83. he had Isaac at 86. he had Isaac at 100. proved by the former places.

Moreover, if Abraham were the eldest son of Terah, and borne in the 70. yeere of his age : then had Terah lived till Isaac had beene 35. yeeres old, and Isaac 49. both which must then have beene borne in Mesopotamia, and therein fostered to that age : unless we should either deny credit to S. Stephen, who faith that Abraham departed from Mesopotamia after his Fathers death : or else beleve the interpretation of Daniel Angelocritator, who in his *Chronologia antioptica*, faith it was about his Fathers death : because the Greek word *μῆρας* may be transported by the Latine *sub*, as well as by *post* : which though elsewhere it may be, yet cannot it be so in this place. For it were most improperly spoken, to say that those things were done about Terahs death, which were 60. yeeres before. Wherefore supposing Abraham to have beene borne in the seventy yeer of Terahs, we must give those times and places of birth to Abrahams children, which no authority will warrant ; for Abraham had no children in *Ur of Chaldaea*, nor in Haran, nor in ten yeeres after his arrivall into Canaan. For the yeere of Terahs death, in which Abraham left Haran, was the yeere of the World 2083. and the yeere of Isaacs birth was the Worlds yeere 2094. which maketh 10. yeeres difference. And that Isaac was borne in Canaan, and was to be offered upon the mountaine Moriah therein, 39. miles from *En-sabe*, where Abraham then inhabited : and that three Angels first of all appeared to Abraham in the valley of *Maurre*, no man doubteth.

And therefore it cannot be that any of Abrahams sons were borne in Mesopotamia ; nor while Terah lived ; nor in lesse than ten yeeres after Terahs death : and then consequently was not Abraham the eldest son of Terah, nor borne in the 70. yeere of Terahs age.

Gen. 12.

Thirdly, whereas Abraham came into Canaan at 75. if Terah had begotten him at 70. then had Terah lived but 145. for 70. and 75. make 145. which must also have beene the full age of Terah : but Terah lived 205. yeeres ; and therefore was not Abraham borne in the 70. yeere of Terah.

Fourthly, the ages of Lot and Sarah make it manifest, that Haran was the elder, if not the eldest brother of Abraham ; for Sarah or Iscab wanted but ten yeeres of Abraham age : Isaac being borne when Abraham was 100. and Sarah 90. yeeres old.

It followeth then, that if Abraham had been the elder brother of Haran, Haran must have begotten Sarah at nine yeeres old : for granting that Haran was borne but one yeer after Abraham, and Sarah within ten yeeres as old as Abraham, then of necessity must Haran beget her, when he had lived but nine yeeres ; which were too ridiculous to imagine.

And that Iscab was Sarah, Rab. Solomon affirmeth ; both names, faith he, bearing the same signification ; and names of principality. Again, to what end was the word Iscab of Ischab inserted in this place, if Sarah were not meant thereby ? For, to speake of anything superfluous, it is not used in Gods Booke : and if Iscab had not belonged to the story, it had been but an idle name to no purpose remembred.

Now if it had beene true ( as those of the contrary opinion affirme ) that Moses had no respect of Nahor and Haran, who were notwithstanding the Parents of Bethuel and Rebecca the mother of Israel and of Christ : what regard then had Moses of Iscab in this place, were he not Sarah, but otherwise an idle name, of whom there is nothing else first or last ?

The age also of Lot disproveth the eldership of Abraham : for Lot was called an old man when Abraham was but 83. yeeres old : And if Lot were of a greater age than Abraham, and Haran were Father to Lot, Sarah, and Milcah ; Abrahams marrying one of Harans daughters, and Nahor the other, Sarah also being within ten yeeres as old as Abraham : it may appear to every reasonable man (not obstinate and prejudicate) that Haran was the eldest son of Terah, and not Abraham : who also died first, and before his Father left *Ur in Chaldaea*. Also Lyra reasoneth against the opinion of Abrahams eldership, upon the same place of Genesis : drawing argument from the age of Sarah, who was but ten yeeres younger than Abraham himself. Lyra his words are these : *Si igitur Haran fuit junior*

Abraham,

Abraham, sequitur quod non habebat decem annos quando genuit Saram : imò nec octo, &c. and afterward, & idem melius videtur dicendum, quod Abraham fuit ultimus natus de tribus filiis Thare, tamen nominatur primus, propter ejus dignitatem : & ponendus erat caput stirpis & generationis sequentis : & quia primò facta est ei re promissio expressa de Christo, sicut supra dictum est de Sem, &c. if therefore (saith Lyra) Haran was younger than Abraham himselfe, it followeth that he was not ten yeeres old when he begat Sarah : And therefore it seemeth better to be said, that Abraham was the last born of the three sons of Thare, nevertheless he is named first for his dignity, both because hee was to be ordained head of the stock and generation following, and because the promise of Christ was first made unto him, as before it is said of Sem.

## §. VII.

A conclusion of this dispute, noting the Authors on both sides : with an admonition, that they which shorten the times make all ancient stories the more improbable.

It therefore agreeth with the Scriptures, with Nature, Time, and Reason, that Haran was the eldest son of Terah, and not Abraham : and that Abraham was born in the 130. yeere of Terahs life, and not in the 70. yeere. For Abraham departing Charran after Terahs died, according to S. Stephen, and that journey by Abraham performed when he was 75. yeeres old ; these two numbers added make 205. yeeres, the full age of Terah : seeing that when Terah died, then Abraham entred Canaan. For my selfe, I have no other end herein than to manifest the truth of the Worlds story. I reverence the judgements of the Fathers : but I know they were mistaken in particulars : Saint Augustine was doubtfull, and could not determine this controversy. For whatsoever is borrowed from him out of his sixteenth book de Civitate Dei, cap. 15. the same may be answered out of himselfe in his five and twentieth question upon Gen. But S. Augustine herein followed Josephus and Isidor : and Beda followed S. Augustine. And it was out of a foolish pride and vanity, that the Hebrews and Josephus sought to make Abraham the first borne : as if God had had respect to the eldest in nature. So did Josephus together with Nicholas Damascenus (thinking thereby to glorifie the Jewish Nation) make Abraham a King, entitling Sarah by the name of Queen Sarah : and said that Abraham was followed with 318. Captains, of which every one had an infinite multitude under him ; trecentos & octo decem presceltos habuit : quorum singulis infinita multitudo parebat. And that Pharoa invading him with a great Army, took from him his wife Sarah : Such fables argue that Josephus is not to be beleaved, but with discreet reservations.

This account of times, allowing no more than 292. yeeres from the Flood to Abraham, is upheld by many of the Hebrew. But how should we value the opinion of such Chronologers, as take Anrappel for Nimrod ? Surely, if their judgement in such matters were worthy to be regarded, it would have appeared in setting down the succession of the Persian Kings under whom they lived, whose History was not so far remote in time, as these antiquities, nor wanting the light of many good Writers. Yet grossly have they erred therein, and so familiar are their mistakings in all things of like nature, that we seldom find their opinion rehearsed without the confutation treading on the heels of it. They of the Romane religion are also generally on the same side : it being a thing usual among them, to maintain whatsoever they have been formerly known to hold and beleve. Contrariwise, of the more ancient, Theodoret, and some following him : of later times, Beroaldus, Codoman, Pencer, Calvin, Junius, Beza, Broughton, Doct. Gibbons, and More, with divers of the Protestants, hold Abraham to have been born in the 130. yeere of his father Terah. From these (as in a case not concerning any point in Religion) divers of the same Religion, and those nevertheless good Authors, as Bucholcerus, Chistius, Funckius and others, are very averse herein : especially Josephus Scaliger with his Sethus Calvinus, proclaiming Beroaldus an *Atch* heretike in Chronologie, and condemning this opinion of his as poysonous. Contrariwise, Augustinus Tornellus, a Priest of the Congregation of Saint Paul, a judicious, diligent, and free Writer : whose Annals are newly set forth, very earnestly defends the opinion, which I have already delivered : not alledging Beroaldus, nor any Protestant Writer, as being perhaps unwilling to owe thanks to heretikes. For my selfe, I doe neither milike the contrary opinion, because

R

commonly

commonly those of the *Romish* Religion labour to uphold it; nor favour this larger account of times, because many notable men of the *Protestant* writers have approved it; but for the truth it selfe. To strengthen which, after all these former reasons, and testimonies of Scripture, I will add thus much more to the rest. First, it is apparent to all men of judgement, that the best approved Historians, divine and prophane, labour to investigate the truth of times, thereby to approve the stories, and forepast actions of the world: and not the truth of histories to approve the times by. Let us then make judgement to our selves, which of those two accounts give the best reputation to the story of the Scriptures; teaching the Worlds new plantation, and the continuance of Gods Church: either that of *Josephus*, and those which follow him; who makes but 2920 years, or thereabouts, between the flood and birth of *Abraham*: or this other account, which makes 352 years between the one and the other: the one taking *Abraham* to be the first born of *Thare*, in the 70. year of his life: the other a younger son of *Thare*, and born when he had lived 120. years. And if we look over all, and do not hastily falsifie our understanding with the first things offered, and thereby being fatiated do foolishly and drowsily sit down; we shall find it more agreeable rather to allow the reckoning of the *Septuagint*, who, according to some editions, make it above 1072. years between the Flood and *Abrahams* birth: than to take away any part of those 352. years given. For if we advicely consider the state and continuance of the world, such as it was in *Abrahams* time, yea before *Abraham* was born, we shall find that it were very ill done of us by following opinion without the guide of reason, to pare the times over, deeply between *Abraham* and the Flood: because in cutting them too neer the quick, the reputation of the whole story might perchance bleed thereby, were not the testimony of the Scriptures supreme, so as no objection can approach it: and that we did not follow withall this precept of *S. Augustine*, That 'wheresoever any one place in the Scriptures may be conceived disagreeing to the whole, the same is by ignorance of interpretation mis-understood. For in *Abrahams* time all the then known parts of the World were peopled: all Regions and Countries had their Kings. *Egypt* had many magnificent Cities: and so had *Palestina*, and all the bordering Countries; yea, all that part of the World besides, as far as *India*: and those not built with sticks, but of hewne stones, and defended, with walls and rampiers: which magnificence needed a parent of more antiquity, than those other men have supposed. And therefore, where the Scriptures are plainest and best agreeing with reason & nature, to what end should we labour to beget doubts and scruples, or draw all things into wonders and marvels, giving also strength thereby to common cavillers, and to those mens apish brains, who only bend their wits to find impossibilities, and monsters in the story of the World and Mankind.

## §. VIII.

*A computation of the times of the Assyrians, and others, grounded upon the times noted in the story of Abraham.*

**IN** this sort therefore for the reasons before alledged, I conclude, that from the general Flood, to the birth of *Abraham*, 322 years were consumed : and taking the *Affian* history with us, the same number of years were spent from the Flood to the 43 year of *Nimrod* : in which 43 year of *Nimrod*, *Abraham* was born : which happened in the year of the world, 2009.

Now of this time of 352 years, we must give one part as well to the increase of those people which came into *Shinar*, as to those that stayed in the East, to wit, 30 years to *Chub*, ere he began *Seba*: of which, though the Scriptures are silent, yet because those of the same time had that age when they began their first sons, we may the more likely give the like allowance to these. For *Ish* began *Peleg* at 34. *Peleg* began at 30. *Ragab* at 34. Now after *Seba*, *Chub* began *Havila*, *Saba*, *Rasama* and *Sabrecha*: and *Rasama* began *Sheba* and *Dedan*, before *Nimrod* was born; as it appeareth Gen. 10. which *S* *Jerghin* approveth. Giving then 30 years more to *Rasama* ere he began *Sheba*, and five years to the five elder brothers of *Nimrod*, it may be gathered that 65 years were continued ere *Nimrod* himselfe was born: and that *Rasama* had that age before any of his sons

were begotten, it may be gathered by example and comparison: for Peleg the fourth from Noah, as Kaamab was, began Ren in the same year of his life.

Let us then allow 60. years more after the birth of *Nimrod*, for two other generations to be brought forth, or else we shall hardly find people to build *Ebel*: for these were, that it was done by hands, and not by miracle: because it displaced God. These two numbers of 65. and 60. make 125. The rest of the time of 131. (in which year they arrived in *Shinar*, whereof there are 6. years remaining) we may give them for their travels from the East: because they were pestered with women, children and cattell: and, as some ancient writers have conceived, and became of later times, they kept always to the mountain sides, for fear of a second Flood. Now, if we take this number of 131. out of 352. there remains 221. of which number *Berosus* beltoweth 65. on *Belus*, and 42. on *Ninus* before *Abraham* born: both which *S. Augustin* approveth: which two numbers taken again out of 221. there remaineth 114. years of the 352. from the Flood to *Abraham* birth: which number of 114. necessity beltoweth on *Nimrod*, *Nimrod* is our Lord, sure if we compare

And if it be objected that this time given to *Nimrod* is over-long: sure if we compare the age of *Nimrod* with the rest of the fame descent from *Noah*, it will rather appear over-thort. For *Nimrod*, by this account, lived in all but one hundred seventy nine years : whereof he reigned one hundred and twelve : whereas *Sale*, who was the son of *Arphaxad*, the son of *Sem*, lived four hundred thirty three years : and of the fame age of the 20 world was *Nimrod* the son of *Chus*, the son of *Cham*.

30 World was Ninrod the Ion of *Chus*, the Ion of *Chani*.  
Now after *Abraham* was born, *Ninus* reigned 9 years: which added to 43. make *Ninus* dieth, and leaveth *Semiramis* his Succellor.  
*Semiramis* governed the Empire of *Babylonia* and *Affyria* 42. years, and died in the 52. year complete of *Abrahams* life.  
*Ninus* or *Zameis* succceeded *Semiramis*, and ruled 38. years, in the second year of whose reign *Abraham* left *Mesopotamia*.  
When *Abraham* was 85. years old, he refused his Nephew *Lot*, and overthrow by surpris *Amraphel* king of *Shinaar*, or *Babylonia*. *Nimrod* reigned 38. years, and *Abraham* came into *Canaan* but 23. years after *Semiramis* died: which was the 75. year of his age: so that *Amraphel* may seem to have been this *Nimrod* the Ion of *Ninus*, and *Semiramis*, whose 23. years, as aforefaid, being the 75. year of *Abraham*, he and his fellow-kings might have received this overthrow in the 85. year of *Abraham*, and the 33. year of his owne reign: after which he reigned five years: which make in all 38. But the truth is, that the reasons to the contrary, urging that this *Amraphel* could not be *Nimrod*, are not easily answered. Howbeit, for the times of the *Affyrian* kings; that they are to be ordered as we have set downe, according to the times noted by *Moses* in the story of *Abraham*, it is most certain; unless we will either derogate from the truth of *Moses* his computation, which were impiety, or account the whole History of *Ninrods* and *Semiramis* to be but a fiction; which were to condemne all ancient Historians for fablers.

§ IX.

*That Amraphel, one of the four Kings whom Abraham overthrew, Gen. 14. may probably be thought to have been Ninias the son of Ninus.*

**A**ND now touching this *Amraphel*, whom *Moses* makes king of *Shinar* or *Babylonia*, in the 85. year of *Abraham's* life, that is, in the 33. year of the reign of *Nimrod*, the son of *Nimrod*, the king of the *Assyrians*, the son of *Nimrod* and *Semiramis*; it is hard to affirm what he was, and how he could be at this time king of *Babylonia*: *Nimrod* *Camel* then reigning there. To this doubt the answer which first offereth it self as most probable, is that which hath been already noted, viz. that this *Nimrod* or *Camel*, was no other than our *Amraphel*: who invaded *Tracontin*, or *Babylon*, and overthrew those five kings of *Pentapolis*, or the valley of *Siddim*. For the Scriptures tell us, that *Amraphel* was king of *Shinar*, which is *Babylonia*: and the times before accounted make him to be the successor of *Nimrod* and *Semiramis*: and it falleth out with the 85. year of *Abraham's* life: wherein he rescued *Lot*, slew *Chedorlaomer*, and overthrew the rest. True it is; that

An. mundi  
2008. dil. 352.  
natus Abra-  
ham, Euf. Aug.  
de civit. Dei,  
l. 16. c. 17.

*Aus. de civ. Dei.*

Gen. 14.4.

this *Amraphel* was not at this time the greatest *Monarch*: for *Chedorlaomer* commanded in chiefe, though *Amraphel* be first named by *Moses* in the first verse of the 14. Chapter of *Genesis*. For the kings of the valley of *Siddim*, or of *Pentapolis*, or the five Cities, were the vassals of *Chedorlaomer*, and not of *Amraphel*: as it is written, Twelve years were they subject to *Chedorlaomer*, but in the 13. year they rebelled, and in the 14. year came *Chedorlaomer* and the Kings that were with him: and therefore was *Chedorlaomer* the principall in this enterprise, who was then king of *Elam*, which is *Persia*: Now *Persia* being leated over *Tygrus*, and to the East of *Amraphels* Countrie; and the other two kings, which were companions with *Amraphel*, being leated to the West of *Shinar* or *Babylonia*: *Amraphel*, who held *Babylonia* it selfe, seemeth at this time to have had no great scope or large dominion. For had *Amraphel* been so great a Prince as prophane Historians make *Ninus* or *Semiramis* whom he succeeded, hee should not have needed the assistance of three other kings for this expedition. But though *Chedorlaomer* were the first and greatest of those four kings, (as it is manifest that he was: For these little kings of *Sodom*, *Gomorrah*, &c. were his vassals, and not *Amraphels*;) yet this makes not the conjecture lesse probable, but that this *Amraphel* might be *Ninus*. For it may be, that the great and potent Empire of *Assyria* had now (as we shall shew more plainly in that which followeth) received a down-right fall at the time of this war: though not long before it commanded all the kingdoms between *India* and the *Phœnician* Sea: to wit, in the times of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*.

## §. X.

of *Arioch* another of the foure Kings, and that *Ellas*, whereof he is said to have been King, lies between *Cœlosyria* and *Arabia* *Petræa*.

Nepheon.

Gen. 14.

Now the two other kings joyned with *Amraphel* and *Chedorlaomer*, were *Arioch* and *Tidal*; the one king of *Ellasar*, the other of the Nations. For *Ellasar*, *Aquila*, and *Hierome* write *Pontus*: so *Tostatus* thinketh that it should be *Hellepont*: which opinion *Pererius* favourereth. But this is onely to defend the Latine translation. For as *Pontus*, so is *Hellepont* far distant, and out of the way to send any Armies into *Arabia* *Petræa*, or into *Idumæa*; which Countries these foure kings chiefly invaded: Besides that, it is certain, that the *Assyrians* (when they were greatest) had never any dominion in *Asia* the lesse. For at such time as the *Assyrians* feared the invasion of the *Medes* and *Persians*, they sent not into *Asia* the lesse as Commanders: but used all the art they had to invite *Cressus* to their assistance: perswading him that nothing could be more dangerous for himselfe, and the other Kings of those parts, than the successe of the *Medes* against the *Assyrians*. But examine the enterprise what it was. These Kings (saith the Text) made war with *Bera* king of *Sodom*, *Birsha* king of *Gomorrah*, *Shinab* king of *Admah*, and *Shemchar* king of *Zebaim*, and the king of *Bela*, which is *Zoar*. All which five kings had not so much ground as *Middlesex*: being such a kinde of *Regdus*, as *Joshua* found in the land long after: namely, Lords of Cities and small Territories adjoining; of which *Canaan* had three and thirty, all slain or hanged by *Joshua*. Neither can the other Countries, which in the Text they are said also to have invaded, be imagined to have been at that time of any great power: and therefore to call in kings from *Pontus* or *Hellepont*, had manifested a great impotence and weaknesse in the kings of *Babylon* and *Persia*.

And though it be alledged for an example, that divers kings far off, came to assist *Pompey* against *Cæsar*; yet these same examples without like occasions and circumstances, do neither lead nor teach. For there was no cause to fear the greatnesse of these petty kings, or of the other Countries: But the eyes of the world were fixed on *Cæsar*; and his undertakings and intents were to all other Princes, no lesse doubtfull than fearfull: But the whole Country by these foure kings mastered in their passage, was afterward given to the halfe tribe of *Manasse*, *Gad*, and *Reuben*: a narrow valley of ground lying between *Jordan* and the mountaines of *Seir*: inclosed by the river of *Arnon* on the South side, and by *Lybanus* on the North, consisting of the two small Provinces of *Traconitis* or *Basam*, and the region of the *Moabites*: a conqueſt far unvaluable; and little answering to the power of the *Assyrian* Empire, if the same had remained in any comparable estate with the times of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*, who subjected all

all the great Kings of that part of the World, without the assistance of any of the Kings of *Hellepont*, or any other part of *Asia* the lesse. But as the vulgar and *Aquila* convert *Ellasar* for *Pontus*: so *Symmachus* makes *Arioch* a King of the *Scythians*, a King indeed, as far fetched to joyn with the *Assyrians* in this War, as the World had any at that time.

The *Septuagint* do not change the word of *Ellasar* at all, but as they keep the word *Ararat*, on the mountaines whereof the *Arke* did rest: so doe they in this place retaine the Hebrew word *Ellasar*, being doubtfull to give it a wrong interpretation. And *Pererius* himselfe remembereth other opinions far more probable than this of *Pontus* or *Hellepont*: yet he dares not avow his liking of them, because the Latine Translation hath it otherwise. For *Stephanus de Urbibus*, a *Græcian* Cosmographer, findeth the Citie of *Ellas* in the border of *Cœlosyria*: and *S. Hierome* calleth *Ellas* the Citie of *Arioch*, as in truth it was. Now although the same be leated by *Stephanus* in *Cœlosyria*, yet it standeth on the border of *Arabia*, of which *Arioch* was king: who formerly joyned with *Ninus* in all his conquests, being of the same family, and descended from *Cham* and *Chus*: after whom the name of *Arius* was by the Hebrew written *Arioch*: and afterward againe *Aretas*; as in the *Machabees*: the kings of *Arabia* holding that name even to the time of *S. Paul*, as in the *Acts*. They were Princes for the most part confederate and depending upon the *Assyrian* Empire. It is true that we finde in *Daniel*, that in the time of *Nabuchodonosor*, one *Arioch* was General of his Army, and the principall Commander under him, who was a King of kings: which makes it plain, that *Arioch* here spoken of, the son of that *Arioch*, confederate of *Ninus*, was no king of *Pontus*, nor of *Scythia*: regions far removed from the *Assyrians* and *Babylonians*. The name also of *Arioch*, who commanded under *Nabuchodonosor* is mentioned in *Judith*, by the name of King of the *Elymeans*: who are a Nation of *Persians* bordering *Assyria*, according to *Stephans*: though *Pliny* sets it between the Sea-coast, and *Media*: and if any brother of the *Arabian* Kings, or other of that house (known by the name of *Arius*, *Arioch*, *Aretas*, or *Aretas*) had the government of that *Persian* Province called *Elymais* (as it seemeth they had by the places of *Daniel* and *Judith*) yet the same was in *Nabuchodonosors* time. But this *Arioch* here spoken of may with more reason be taken for the king of *Arabia*, the son of *Arius*, the confederate of *Ninus*: whose sons held league, as their fathers did, being the next bordering Prince of all on that side towards the West unto *Babylonia*, and *Chaldea*: and in amitie with them from the beginning, and of their owne house and blood: which *Diod. Siculus* also confirmeth.

## §. XI.

Of *Tidal* another of the foure Kings.

The fourth king by *Abraham* overthrown was *Tidal*, king of the Nations. The Hebrew writes it *Gogim*, which *Vatablus* takes to be a proper name: *Tyrus* of mixt people: *Calvin* of runnagates without habitation. *Pererius* out of *Strabo*, finds that *Galilee* was inhabited by divers Nations, which were a mixt people: namely, of *Egyptians*, *Arabians*, and *Phœnicians*. Nam tales sunt qui *Galileam* habitant; Such are the inhabitants of *Galilee*, saith *Strabo*: and therefore was *Tidal* called king of these Nations, as they suppose. And it may be so: but the authority of *Strabo* is nothing in this question. For *Galilee* was not peopled at this time, as it was in the time of *Strabo*. For when *Abraham* came into *Canaan*, the *Canaanite* was then in the Land, howsoever they might be afterwards mixt; which I know not. But there are many petty kingdoms adjoining to *Phœnicia*, and *Palestina*; as *Palmyrena*, *Batanea*, *Laodicea*, *Apamena*, *Chalcidice*, *Cassiotis*, *Chalibonitis*, and all these do also joyn themselves to *Mesopotamia* on the North, and to *Arabia* on the East. And that these Nations gathered themselves together under *Tidal*, I take to be the probableſt conjecture.

## §. XII.

That Chedorlaomer the chiefe of the foure Kings was not of Assyria, but of Persia: and that the Assyrian Empire at this time was much impaired.

Asfly, whereas it is conceived that Chedorlaomer was the Assyrian Emperour, and that Amraphel was, but a *Satrap*, Viceroy, or Provinciaall governour of *Babylonia*, and that the other Kings named were such also, I cannot agree with *Pererius* in this. For *Mose* was too well acquainted with the names of *Assur* and *Shinaar*, to call the Assyrian a king of *Elam*: those kings being in the Scriptures evermore called by the name of *Chaldees*, *Shinaar*, *Babylonia*, or *Assyria*: but never by *Elam*; and Chedorlaomer or Kedorlaomer was so called of *Kidar*, from *Cidarum*, which in the Hebrew signifieth *Regale*: for so *2. Cor.* calleth the garment which the Persian Kings wore on their heads.

Neither do I beleve that the Assyrian or Babylonian Empire stood in any greatnesse at the time of this invasion; and my reasons are these: First, example and experience teach us, that those things which are set up hastily, or forced violently, do not long last. *Alexander* became Lord of all *Asia*, on this side of *Indus*, in a time of so short a life, as it lasted not to overlook what it selfe had brought forth. His fortunes were violent, but not perpetuall. For his Empire died at once with himselfe: all whose chief Commanders became kings after him. *Tamberlain* conquered *Asia* and *India* with a storm-like and terrible successe: but to prevalent fury God hath adjoynd a short life: and whatsoever things Nature her selfe worketh in haste, she taketh the least care of their continuance. The fruit of his victories perished with him, if not before.

*Ninus* being the first whom the madnesse of boundlesse dominion transported, invaded his neighbour Princes, and became victorious over them: a man violent, insolent and cruell. *Sennacherib* taking the opportunity, and being more proud, adventurous, and ambitious, than her *Paragon*: enlarged the Babylonian Empire, and beautified many places therein with buildings unexampled. But her son having changed Nature and Condition with his Mother, proved no lesse feminine than the was masculine. And as wounds and wrongs, by their continuall smart, put the Patient in minde how to cure; the one, and revenge the other: so those Kings adjoyning (whose subjection and calamities incident, were but new, and therefore the more grievous) could not sleep, when the advantage was offered by such a succellour. For, in regno *Babylonico* hic parum resplendit: This King shined little (saith *Naucerus* of *Ninus*) in the Babylonian Kingdom. And likely it is that the necks of mortall men having been never before galled with the yoke of forraign dominion, nor having ever had experience of that most miserable and detested condition of living in slavery: no long descent having as yet invested the Assyrian with a right: nor any other title being for him pretended than a strong hand; the foolish and effeminate son of a tyrannous and hated Father, could very ill hold so many great Princes and Nations his vassals, with a powerlesse mastering, and a mind lesse industrious than his Father and Mother had used before him. And he that was so much given over to licentious idlenesse, as to suffer his Mother to reigne 42. years, and thereof the greatest part after he came to mans estate: witnessed thereby to the World that he so much preferred ease before honour, and bodily pleasures before greatness, as he neither indeavoured to gain what he could not govern, nor to keep what he could not without contentious perill enjoy.

These considerations being joynd to the story of *Amraphel*, delivered by *Mose*, by which we find that *Amraphel* King of *Shinaar* was rather an inferior to the king of *Assyria* than either his superior, or equal, make it seem probable, that the Empire of *Ninus* and *Sennacherib* was at that time broken asunder, and restrained again to *Babylonia*.

For conclusion, I will adde these two arguments confirming the former: First, that at such time as it pleased God to impose that great travel upon *Abraham*, from *Ur* in *Chaldea* to *Charran*, and then to *Canaan*, a passage of 700. miles, or little lesse, with women, children, and carriages: the countries through which he wandred were then settled, and in peace. For it was in the 23. year of *Ninus*, when *Abraham*, obeying the voice of God, took this great journey in hand: in which time of 23. years after the death of *Sennacherib*, the neighbour Princes had recovered their liberty and former estates. For *Sennacherib* Army of four millions, with her self, utterly consumed in *India*, and all her Armies

and engines of warre, at the same time lost, gave an occasion and opportunitie even to the poorest soules and weakest hearted creatures of the World, to repurchase their former libertie.

Secondly, it is affirmed by the best and ancientest Historians, that *Arius* the son of *Ninus*, or *Amraphel*, invaded the *Bactrians* and *Caspians*, and againe subjected them: which needed not if they had not beene revolted from *Ninus*, after *Ninus* death. And as *Arioch* recovered one part, so did *Baleus* or *Balanus*, otherwise *Xerxes*, reduce the rest revolted, to their former obedience. Of whom is said that he conquered from *Egypt* to *India*: and therefore was called *Xerxes*, id est, *Victor* & triumphator, a conquerour and triumpher; which undertakings had bene no other than the effects of madnesse, had not those Countries freed themselves from the Babylonian subjection. Now if we shall make any doubt hereof, that is, of the reconquest of *Arius* and *Xerxes*, both which lived after *Ninus* and *Ninias*, we may as well thinke the rest of *Ninus* and *Sennacherib* to be but fained: but if we grant this reconquest, then is it true, that while *Ninias* or *Amraphel* ruled, the Assyrian Empire was torne asunder, according to that which hath bene gathered out of *Hosea*, as before remembred.

## §. XIII.

That it is not unprobable that the foure Kings had no dominion in the Countries named, but that they had else-where with their colonies planted themselves: and so retained the names of the Countries whence they came: which if it be so, we neede not say that *Amraphel* was *Ninias*, nor trouble our selves with many other difficulties.

The consent of all Writers, whose workes have come to my perusal, agreeing as they doe, that these four Kings, *Amraphel* of *Shinaar*, *Chedorlaomer* of *Elam*, and those fellowes, were Lords of those Regions, whereunto they are or seeme intituled: doth almost enforce us to thinke that the history must so be understood, as I have delivered. But if in this place, as often else-where in the Scriptures, the names of Countries may be set for people of those lands, or if (as *Hierome* hath it) *Chedorlaomer* was king of the *Elamites*, as *Tidal* was said to be of the Nations, that is, of people either wanting a fixed habitation, or gathered out of sundry regions: then may we otherwise conceive of this Historie: removing thereby some difficulties, which men perhaps have bene unwilling to find, because they could not find how to resolve them. For as it had bene a strange conjecture to thinke that *Arioch* was drawn to assist the Persian against the *Sodomites*, as far as from *Pontus*, where it is very unlikely that *Chedorlaomer* was knowne, and almost impossible that the vale of *Siddim* should have beene once named: so in true estimation it is a thing of great improbabilitie, that *Chedorlaomer*, if he were King of *Persia* alone, should passe through so great a parte of the World, as the Countries of *Assyria*, *Chaldea*, *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, and parte of *Arabia*, & *Canaan*, to subdue those five Townes, whose very names how they should come to his ear, being dis-joynd by so many great nations of different languages, a wise man could hardly conjecture. And if all the Countries bordering *Persia* together with the Babylonian himselfe, yea the kingdome of *Elasar* and that of *Tidal*, so far off removed, were become his dependancies: what reason can we find that might have induced him to hearken after *Sodom* and *Gomorrath*? and when he should have sought the establishment of his new gotten Empire, by rooting out the posterity of *Ninus* (as *Ninus* had dealt by *Pharus* of *Media*, and *Zoroaster* of *Bactria*) then to employ the forces of *Amraphel*, and those other Kings, against five petty Townes, leaving *Tyrus* and *Sidon*, and the great Citie of *Damasco*, with many other places of much importance, and far neerer unto him, unsubdued? Now as these doubts which may be alleged against the first conquest of the vale of *Siddim*, are exceeding vehement: so are the objections to be made against his reconquest of these five Cities, when they had revolted, as forcible; yea and more, as being grounded partly upon the Text it selfe. For first, what madnesse had it bene in that small Province to rebell against so powerfull a Monarch? Or if it were so that they dwelling far from him, hoped rather to be forgotten, than that he should come or send to reclaim them: was it not more than madnesse in them, when his terrible armie approached, still to entertaine hope of evasion: yea to make resistance (being themselves a dissolute and therefore unwarlike people) against the power of all the Nations between *Eufrates*, yea between themselves & the river of

Gen. 14. 17.

*Indus*? Likewise on the part of *Chedorlaomer* we should finde no great wisdom, if he, knowing the weakenesse of this people, had raised such a world of men against them: whom by any *Lieutenant*, with small forces he might have subdued. For the perpetuall inheritance of that little Country, was not sufficient to countervail one moneths charges of so huge an army. How small then must his valour have been, who with so mighty preparations effected no more than the wasting of that *Valley*, wherein he left the Cities standing, taking no one of them; but returned well contented with a few prisoners, and the pillage of the Country, although he had broken their army in the field? Now the Scriptures do not of this invasion (supposed so great) make any fearfull matter: but compose the two armies as equally matcht, saying they were four kings against five: yea if the place be literally expounded, we shall find that *Abraham* slew all these Kings; of which great slaughter no Historie makes mention: Neither will the reigne of *Ninias* who lived foure or five yeeres longer, permit that he should have died so soone: neither would Histories have forgotten the manner of his death, if he had so strangely perished in *Syria*. Whereby it appears, that these foure Kings were not the same that they are commonly thought: nor their forces so great as opinion hath made them. It may therefore well be true, that these kings were such as many others, who in that age carried the same title: Lords and Commanders every one of his own company, which he carried forth as a *Colony*, seeking place where to settle himself and them, as was the usuall manner of those times.

Neither is it improbable, that *Chedorlaomer* leading a troupe of *Persians*, *Amraphel* some people out of *Shinaar*, and *Tidal* others gathered out of sundry places, might con- sort together, and make the weakest of the Country which lay about them, to pay them tribute. Whosoever will consider the beginning of the first Book of *Thucydides*, with the manner of discoveries, conquests and plantations, in the infancy of *Greece*; or the manner of the *Saracens* invading *Africa* and *Spain*, with almost as many kings as several Armies: or the proceedings of the *Spaniards* in their new discoveries, passages, and conquests in the *West-Indies*: may easily perceive, that it was neither unusual for the leaders of *Colonies* to receive title from the people whom they conducted: nor to make alliances together, and break them again, disturbing sometimes one the other, sometimes helping in pursuit of a conquest. That *Amraphel* and his associates were such manner of Commanders, it may seem the more likely, by the sloathfull quality of *Ninias* then reigning in *Affyria*: whose unmanlike temper was such, as might well give occasion to such undertaking spirits, as wanted the employments whereunto they were accustomed in the reign of *Semiramis*; rather to seek adventures abroad, than to remain at home unregarded, whilst others, more unworthy than themselves, were advanced. If the consent of the whole stream of writers upon this place make this conjecture disagreeable to the Text, to the authority whereof all humane reason must subscribe, then we may hold our selves to the former conjecture, that *Amraphel* was *Ninias*: and that the power of his Ancestors being by his sloath decayed, he might well be inferiour to the *Persian* *Chedorlaomer*: or if this do not satisfie, we may say that *Amraphel* was an Under-king or *Satrapa* of *Shinaar*, under *Ninias*; who may be supposed to have had his *Imperiall* seat in his Fathers Citie *Ninive*: and to have preferred it before *Shinaar* and *Babylon* the City of his Mother, whom he hated as an usurper of his right. But if it were possible that in a case not concerning any mans Salvation, and wherein therefore none hath cared to take great pains, all might erre: then can I think that the opinion, That those four Kings were leaders of *Colonies*, sent out of the Countries named in the Text, and not Kings of the Countries themselves, is most consonant both to the condition of those times, and to the Scripture. And hereto adde that *Chedorlaomer* seems rather called a *Persian* King, than King of *Persia*: and that *Arioch* (whose Kingdom undoubtedly was between *Syria* and *Arabia*) having been a man of action, or being a worthy mans son, was very well pleased, to give passage and assistance to these Captains or pettie Kings. These and such like things here to urge, were but with circumstances to adorn a supposition, which either may stand without them, or if it must fall, is unworthy to have cost bestowed upon it: especially considering, that it is not my intent to employ any more time in making it good, but to leave it wholly to the Readers pleasure, to follow any of these opinions, or any other, if he find any that shall seem better than these. But of what countries or people forever these 4. were kings, this expedition is the only publick action that

we know of performed by *Abraham*. And as for other things belonging to his Story, and of his sons, and of his Nephews *Efan* and *Jacob*, as they are registred by *Moses*, because it is not our purpose, either to stand upon things generally known to all *Christians*, nor to repeat what hath been elsewhere already spoken, nor to prevent our selves in things that may hereafter in due place be remembered, we passe them here in silence. And because in this Story of *Abraham* and his posteritie, there is much mention of *Egypt*: by which it appears that even in the time of *Abraham*, it was a settled and flourishing kingdom; it will not be amisse in the next place to speak somewhat of the antiquities and first kings thereof.

## CHAP. II.

of the Kings of Egypt from the first peopling of it after the Flood, to the time of the delivery of the Israelites from thence.

## §. I.

Abrif of the names and times of the first Kings of Egypt: with a note of the easies of difficulty in resolving of the truth in these points.

Soone after the confusion at *Babel* (as it seems) *Cham* with many of his issue and followers (having doubtlesse known the fertility of *Egypt* before the Flood) came thither and tooke possession of the Country; in which they built many Cities: and began the kingdome one hundred ninety one yeers after the deluge. The ancient Governours of this Kingdome till such time as *Israel* departed *Egypt*, are shewn in the Table following.

An. Mundi.	An. dil.	
1847.	191.	<i>Cham.</i>
2008.	352.	<i>Osiris.</i>
2269.	613.	<i>Typhon</i>
		<i>Hercules.</i>
2276.	620.	<i>Orus.</i>
2391.	735.	<i>Sesostris</i> the great.
2424.	768.	<i>Sesostris</i> the blinde.
2438.	782.	<i>Bufris</i> or <i>Osiris</i> the second.
2476.	820.	<i>Acencher</i> or <i>Thermutis</i> , or <i>Ateris.</i>
2488.	832.	<i>Rathoris</i> or <i>Atheris.</i>
2497.	841.	<i>Chencres</i> drowned in the red Sea.

The Table, and especially the *Chronologie*, is to be confirmed by probabilities and conjectures, because in such obscurity, manifest and restless truth cannot be found. For *Saint Augustine*, a man of exceeding great judgement, and incomparable diligence, who had sought into all antiquities, and had read the books of *Varro*, which now are lost, yet omitted the succession of the *Egyptian* Kings: which he would not have done, if they had not been more uncertain than the *Sicyonians*, whom he remembereth, than whom doubtlesse they were more glorious. One great occasion of this obscurity in the *Egyptian* Story, was the ambition of the Priests: who, to magnifie their Antiquities, filled the Records (which were in their hands) with many leasings, and recounted unto strangers the names of many Kings, that never reigned. What ground they had for these reports of supposed Kings, it shall appear anon. Sure it is: That the magnificent works and royall buildings in *Egypt*, such as are never found



found but in States that have greatly flourished, witness that their Princes were of marvellous greatness, and that the reports of the Priests were not altogether false. A second cause of our ignorance in the *Egyptian* History, was the too much credulity of some good Authors, who believing the manifold and contrary reports of sundry *Egyptians*, and publishing in their own name such as pleased them best; have continued them, and as it were enforced them upon us by their authority. A third and general cause of more than *Egyptian* darkness in all ancient Histories, is the edition of many Authors by *John Annius*, of whom (if to the censures of sundry very learned, I may add mine) I think thus; that *Annius* having seen some fragments of those Writers, and added unto them what he would, may be credited, as an avoucher of true Histories, where approved writers confirm him: but otherwife is to be deemed fabulous. Hereupon it cometh to passe that the account of Authors, either in the *Chronologie* or *Genealogie* of the *Egyptian* Kings, runs three, altogether different ways. The Christian writers, such as are ancient, for the most part follow *Enchiridion*: Many late writers follow the edition of *Annius* his Authors: The profane Histories follow *Hierodorus*, *Diodorus*, and such others.

§. II.

*That by the account of the Egyptian Dynasties, and otherwise, it appears that Chams reign in Egypt began in the year after the Flood. 191.*

**T**O reconcile theſe, or gather out of them the times of the ancient Kings, whom is moſt controverſie, the beſt mean is by help of the *Dynasties*: of whose continuance there is little or no diſagreement. The account of the *Dynasties* (beſides the authority of approved Authors) hath this good ground, that it agreeth for the moſt part, if not altogether, with the Hiſtories of the *Aſſyrians, Trojans, Italians, &c.* and others. The beginning of the 16. *Dyn.* is joynd by generall conſent, with the 43. year of *Ninus*: in which *Abraham* was born. The twelve firſt *Dynasties* laſted each of theſe ſeven years, under the twelve, which were called the greater gods: ſo that all theſe years of their continuance were 84. The thirteenth *Dynastie* endured fourteen years: the fourteenth 26. the fifteenth 37. Theſe three laſt are ſaid to have been under theſe three younger gods. So the fifteen firſt *Dynasties* laſted one hundred fixty one years. As I do not therefore believe that the continuance of theſe *Dyn.* was ſuch as hath bin mentioned, becauſe *Annus* in ſuch wile limits out their time: ſo I cannot reject the account upon this onely reaſon, that *Annus* hath it ſo: conſidering that both hitherto it hath paſſed as currant, and is greatly ſtrengthened by many good reaſons. For, whereas *Eufebius* placeth the beginning of the ſixteenth *Dynastie*, in the year of *Abrahams* birth, as aforeſaid: the reckoning is eaſily caſt; by which the ſum of 161. years, which according to our account were ſpent in the fifteen former, being ſubducted out of the ſum of 352. years, which were between the Flood and *Abrahams* birth, ſhew that the beginning of the firſt *Dynastie*, which was the beginning of *Chams* reign in *Egypt*, was in the year 191. Aſſo by other probabilities the ſame may appear. For it is generally agreed, that the multitude of mankind which came into *Shinaar*, arrived at *Babel*, *Ann. à diluvio* 131. In building the Tower were conſumed forty years, as *Glycas* records: whoſe report I have elſewhere confirmed with divers probabilities. That *Cham* was long in paſſing with his company, their Wives, Children, Cattel, and ſubſtance through all *Syria* then deſolate, and full of Bogs, Forreſts, and Bryers (which the Deluge and want of culture in one hundred ſeventy one years had brought upon it) no reaſonable man will doubt. To this iſſuaſſage therefore, and the ſeating of himſelf in *Egypt*, we allow twenty years: and theſe ſums being added together, to wit, one hundred thirty one years after the Flood, before they arrive at *Babel*, 40. years for their ſtay there, and 20. for *Chams* paſſage into *Egypt*, and ſettling there, make up the ſum of 191. years: at which time we ſaid that *Cham* began his reign in *Egypt*, in the beginning of the firſt *Dynastie*. And to this ſumme of 191. years if we adde the 161. years of the 15. firſt *Dynasties*, as they are numbred in common account, we ſhall fall right with the year of *Abrahams* birth, which was *An. Dil.* 352. And hereto omitting many other reaſons, which might be brought to prove that theſe firſt *Dynasties* muſt needs have been very ſhort, and not containing in the whole ſumme of their ſeveral

times above 161. years: Let it suffice: that had they lasted longer, then either mult *Egypt* have been peopled as soon as *Babel* after the Flood, or the *Dynasties* (as *Mercator* thinks) must have been before the flood. That the arrivall at *Babel* was many yeers before the plantation of *Egypt*, after the flood, enough hath been said to prove: and that the *Dynasties* were not before the flood, the number of the long-lived generations between *Adams* and the flood, which was lesse than the number of the *Dynasties*, may sufficiently witness. Or if we will thinke, that one life might (perhaps) be divided into many *Dynasties*, then may this have bene as well after the flood, as before: considering that the sons of *Noah* did not in every Countreiere y<sup>e</sup> such forme of Police, as he had bin used in the same ere the Deluge: but such, as the disposition of the people, the authority and power of the Conducter, together with many other circumstances, did induce or enforce them to.

### §. III.

*That these Dynasties were not divers families of Kings, but rather successions of Regents, oft times many under one King.*

**T**he short continuance of the *Dynasties*, doth shew that they were not severall races of kings, as the vaunting *Egyptians* were wont to stile them. What they were, is cannot certainly be warranted. For in refutations of decayed antiquities, it is more safe to deny than to affirm. But this may be said, partly upon good circumstance, partly upon the surest proofe, That it was the manner of the *Egyptian* Kings, to put the government of the Countrey into the hands of some trustie Countessellor, only reserving the Sovereignty to themselves, as the old Kings of *France* were wont to the Masters of the Palace, and as the Turke doth to the chiefe *Vizier*. This is confirmed, first by the number of the *Dynasties*, wherof many are under *Cham*, and more than one under *Osiris* or *Misraim*, and must therefore have bin successions, not of Kings, but rather of Countessallors and Regents. Secondly, by custome of such Princes borderers to *Egypt*, as are mentioned in the Scriptures, of whom *Abimelech* the *Philistin* in his dealing with *Abraham* and *Isaac* about confederation, did nothing without *Phicol* Captaine of his Host: though in taking *Abrahams* wife, and in his private carriage, he followed his own pleasure. Likewise of *Abimelech* the son of *Gideon* it was said: *Is not he the son of Jerubbaal*? and *Zebul* is his officer? Also *Ishbosheth* the son of *Saul*, feared *Aner* the Captaine of the Hosts. Yea, *David* himselfe hating *Joab* for his crueltye, did not punish him in regard of his greatness, which was such, as was feared even of *Hadaad* the *Edomite* living then in *Egypt*. Thirdly, this is confirmed by the temper and disposition of *Cham*, who was lewd, as appears by the Scriptures: therefore likely both for his owne idleness and pleasure, to have laid the burden of government upon others; and upon jealousye, the companion of unworthinesse, to have changed his Lieutenants often. Above all other proofes is the advancement of *Joseph* by *Pharaoh*. For *Pharaoh* said to *Joseph*, *Only in the Kings throne will I be above thee: behold, I have set thee over all the Land of Egypt*. Will. Tyr. de bell. Sacra. l. 19. c. 17. 18. 19. & 20.

*William Archbishop of Tyre*, who flourished about the yeere of our Lord, one thousand one hundred eightie, affirms that the like or very same forme of government by *Vizier* was, was in his time practised in *Egypt*, having there beene in use (as he beleeveth) ever since the time of *Joseph*. He plainly shewes, that the *Sultans* of *Egypt* were not Lords of the Countrey, however they have beene so deemed: but that they acknowledged and humbly performed the dutie of subjects unto the *Gulibes*, who residing in a most magnificent Palace in *Cairo*, did commit the charge, not only of civil government, but the power of making warre and peace, with the whole offices and authority royall, into the *Sultans* hands. He that shall reade in *William* of *Tyre*, the state of the *Gulibes*, or *Andreas Elhadger*, with the forme of his Court, shall plainly behold the image of the ancient *Pharaoh*, ruling by a Lievtenant, as great in authority as *Joseph* was, though far inferior in wisdom.

To think that many names of such *Rogers* or *Lieutenants* as *Joseph* was, have crept into the List of the *Egyptian Kings*, were no strange imagination. For *Joseph*'s brethren call him, *The man that is Lord of the Land*, and *The Lord of the Conmire*: besides, it is not un-<sup>33</sup>likely that the vain-glorious *Egyptian Priests* would as easily report him a King to posterity, as ignorant men and strangers deem him such, under whose hand all dispatches

9

of importance, and royall managing of the State had passed, whilst that the King himselfe intending his quiet, had given his office to another. How strangers have mistaken in this kinde, the example already cited of *Josephus* brethren, doth sufficiently witness. The reports of Priests doe appeare in *Diodorus*, and *Herodotus*: each of whom, citing their relations, as good authority, say; *Diodorus*, and *Sesoftris* was the nineteenth King after *Menas*; *Herodotus*, that he was the 32. after *Menas*; which could not have been, if *Menas* had bene *Adam*. Therefore we may well conclude, That the *Dynasties* were not so many races of Kings, but successions of *Regents*, appointed by the Kings of so many sundry linages or sorts of men. Now by whatsoever meanes a *Dynasty* or *Regencie* continued: whether in one familie, as being made an hereditary office: or in one order of men, as held by faction: sure it is that was the Kings gift and free choice, that gave the office. But the Crowne royall alwayes passed by descent, and not by election: which (besides consent of *Authors*) the Scriptures also prove. For whereas *Joseph* bought all the land of *Egypt* for *Pharaoh*, if the Crowne had passed by election, then should *Pharaoh's* children hereby either have bene intrahled amongst the rest of the people, to the next successor; or injoying their Fathers land, though not his estate, have bin more mighty than the king: as Land-lords of all *Egypt*, and the king himselfe their Tenant. Likewise we find in *Exod. 12.* that God smote the first borne of *Pharaoh*, that was to sit on his Throne. And in *Esay* it is said of *Pharaoh*: *I am the son of the ancient King.*

Esay 19.

## §. IV.

Of Cham, and his son Mizraim, or Osiris.

That the succession of Kings began, and continued in such wise as the Table hath shewed from *Cham* to *Chenres*, now it followeth to shew. *Egypt* is called in the Scripture the land of *Ham*. That this name is not given to it, because the posteritie of *Cham* did reigne there, but for that himselfe did first plant it, we may gather by many circumstances. For I thinke it is no where found, that the Countries of *Cush*, *Put* or *Canaan*, as well as *Egypt*, were called the Land of *Ham*. Further, it is found in *Diodorus Siculus*, that *Osiris* called himselfe the eldest son of *Cham*, saying, *Mibi pater Saturni deorum omnium junior: also, Sum Saturni filius antiquior, germen ex pulchro & generosior*: which must needs be understood of *Cham*: for this *Saturnus* *Egyptus* was *Cham*: as it is said, that on the monument of *Ninus* was an inscription, wherein *Cham* was called *Saturnus* *Egyptius*. Likewise the Temple of *Hammon*, not far from *Egypt*, doth testify, that *Ham* resided in those parts: And *S. Hierome* in *questionibus Hebraicis*, saith, that the *Egyptians* themselves did in his dayes call their Countrey *Ham*: as in foure severall places in the *Psalmes* this Countrey is called the land of *Cham*. And *Ortelius*, writing out of *Plutarch* in *Osiride*, that in the sacrifices of the *Egyptians* this Countrey *Egypt* was called *Chemia*, expounds it for *Chamia*, ut puto (saith he) à *Chama* Nuplin, to which also he addeth out of *Isidore*, *Egyptum usq; bodie Egyptiorum lingua Kamouvi: that Egypt unto this day in the tongue of the Egyptians is called Kam*. For the beginning and continuance of *Chams* reigne, the same reasons may suffice to be alledged, which have already given in proof of the time spent in the 15. first *Dynasties*: Neither is strange that the reigne of *Cham* should last so long as 161. yeeres: considering that *Uto* lived 600: *Arphachshad* and *Shelah* each above 400. But strange it had bene, if *Saltis* created by *Manetho*, had in those long-lived generations reigned there 19. yeeres, and with *Beon*, *Apachnas*, *Apoche*, and others of the same brood, obscured the fame and glory of *Osiris*, *Orni*, and *Sesoftris*. *Reineccius* in *histor. Julia*, placeth *Mizraim* next, otherwise called *Osiris*, according to *Diodorus*: who, saith he, was the son of *Hammon*. *Krentzhemius* saith that *Mizraim* and *Osiris* are words of neere affinitye and found in the Hebrew tongue. Howsoever it be, we know that *Mizraim* the son of *Cham*, was Lord of *Egypt*, and *Reineccius*, citing good authoritie in this case, affirmeth that *Egyptus* was called by the naturals in their owne language, *Mezre*. Neither doe I see caused doubt whether *Osiris* were the same with *Mizraim*. It is more necessary, and hard to shew manifestly, how long *Mizraim* or *Osiris* reigned. For whereas the yeer of his death is no where precisely set down, we must be faine to follow probabilities. That he reigned vainly fable by *Ammius* his *Berosus*, to have begun his reign at the birth of *Abraham*, when the *Dynastie* of the *Thebais* began, it appeareth, first, by the authority of *Eusebius*: who

avoucheth

avoucheth as much; next by *Diodorus*, who saith that he inhabited *Thebes*: which habitation of *Osiris* there, that it might be cause of that *Dynastie*, I can well beleieve; assenting so far to *Reineccius*, who thinks the *Dynasties* were named onely, according to the severall seats of the kings.

## §. V.

Of the time when *Osiris* reigned ended: and that *Jacob* came into *Egypt* in the time of *Orus* the son of *Osiris*.

The death of *Osiris*, when it was, none can certainly affirm. The onely conjecture that I know is made thus: *Lehabim* the son of *Mizraim*, called *Hercules Lybius*, made war in *Italy* to revenge his fathers death on the associates of *Typhon*, in the 41. yeer of *Baleus* King of *Assyria*: before which yeer hee had made many great wars in *Egypt*, *Phoenicia*, *Phrygia*, *Crete*, *Lybia*, and *Spain*: and having ended his *Egyptian* wars, left the Kingdom to *Orus*. Thus far *Berosus*, or *Authors* following *Berosus*. That *Orus* last of all the gods (as they were filed) held the Kingdom of *Isis*, *Diodorus Siculus* plainly saith: *Plutarch* as much; to which all Histories agree. *Krentzhemius* hereupon infers, that six yeeres may be allowed to the wars, which *Hercules* made in so many Countries, after the *Egyptian* wars were ended: so should the death of *Osiris* have bene the 34. of *Baleus*, when himselfe had reigned 297. yeeres. I thinke that *Krentzhemius* was a greater Scholar than *Souldier*. For surely in those dayes when commerce was not such as now, but all Navigation made by coasting, a far longer time would have bene required, to the subduing of so many Countries. An allowance of more time, though it would alter his computation, yet would it well agree with his intent: which was (doubtlesse) to find the truth. If according to his account the death of *Osiris* had bene the 34. of *Baleus*, then must *Israel* have come into *Egypt* but seven yeeres before the death of *Osiris*: and have lived there in the reign of *Typhon*. A thing not easily beleieved. For it was the same king who advanced *Joseph*, bade him send for his father, and gave him leave to go into *Canaan*, to the performance of his fathers Funerall: as may easily be gathered out of the book of *Genesis*. Whereas therefore the reign of *Osiris* cannot be extended by any possible allowance in account of times, beyond the seventh yeer of *Israels* coming into *Egypt*: we must needs cut off 23. yeeres from that number, which *Krentzhemius* conjectures his reign to have continued: namely, seven which hee should have lived after *Jacob* coming into *Egypt*; nine in which *Joseph* had there flourished, ere his fathers coming; and other seven in which *Typhon* and *Hercules* had reigned after the death of *Osiris*, yet before *Joseph* his advancement.

Neither will this disagree with the time of *Hercules Lybius* his wars. For the war which *Hercules* made in *Italy*, is said to have endured ten yeeres: After which proportion we may well give not onely six yeeres, as *Krentzhemius* doth, but 23. more to so many wars, in so many and so far distant Countries, as are named before: yea, by this proportion we may attribute unto *Orus* the 13. yeeres, which passed between the time of *Joseph* being sold into *Egypt*, unto his advancement, considering that *Potiphar* who bought him, and whose daughter he may seem to have married, continued all that while chiefe Steward unto *Pharaoh*; a thing not likely to have been, if so violent alterations had hapned the whilst in *Egypt*, as the tyrannous usurpation of *Typhon* must needs have brought in. If citing some fragment of a lost old Author, I should confidently say, that *Potiphar* for his faithfulness to *Orus*, the son of *Osiris*, was by him in the beginning of his reign made his chiefe Steward: at which time buying *Joseph*, and finding him a just man, and one under whose hand all things did prosper, he rather committed his estate into *Joseph* hands, than unto any of his *Egyptian* followers (many of whom he had found either faine-hearted, or weak and unlucky in the troublesome dayes of *Typhon*) I know not what could be objected against this. Perhaps I might proceed further, and say, That when the saying of *Joseph* pleased *Pharaoh*, and all his servants; then *Potiphar* Priest of *On*, being chiefe Officer to *Pharaoh*, did acknowledge in *Joseph*, the ancient graces of God, and his injurious imprisonment: whereupon he gave him his daughter to wife; and being old, resigned his office of chiefe Steward unto him, who afterward in regard of *Potiphar*, did favour the Priests, when he bought the lands

S

of

of all other *Egyptians*. This might appear to some a tale not unlike to the Friarly book of *Asenath*, *Potiphers* daughter: but unto such as consider that God works usually by means; and that *Potiphars* was the Steward of that King, under whom *Jacob* died: it would seem a matter not probable, had it an Author of sufficient credit to avouch it. Concerning the wars of *Hercules*, in which by this reckoning hee should have spent 42. yeeres after he left *Egypt*, ere he began in *Italy*, it is a circumstance which (the length of his *Italian* wars considered, and his former enterprises and achievements proportioned to them) doth not make against us, but for us: or if it were against us, yet could it not so weaken our supposition, as these probabilities collected out of the undisputable truth of Scripture do confirm it. Nevertheless, I freely grant that all these proofs are no other, than such as may be gathered out of Authors, not well agreeing, nor to be reconciled in such obscurity, otherwise than by likelihoods, answerable to the holy Text.

## §. VI.

Of Typhon, Hercules, Egyptus, Orus, and the two Sesostris, successively reigning after Mizraim: and of divers errors about the former Sesostris.

Concerning the reign of Typhon, and of Hercules, I find none that precisely doth define how long either of them continued. *Daniel Angelocrator* giveth three yeeres to Typhon, omitting Hercules. But he is so peremptory without proofe, as if his own word were sufficient authority, in many points very questionable; alledging no witness, but as it were saying, *Teste me ipso*: yet herein we may think him to speak probably, forasmuch as the learned *Krentzheimius* affirmeth, that Hercules did very soon undertake his fathers revenge; and was not long in performing it: and that leaving *Egypt* to his brother, he followed other wars, in the same quarrell, as hath been shewed before. True it is, that I cannot collect (as *Krentzheimius* doth) out of *Berosus*, that Hercules reigned after Typhon: yet seeing *Aventinus* a follower of *Berosus* hath it so, I will also beleve it. That in the reign of Typhon and Hercules, seven yeeres were spent, howsoever divided between them, I gather out of *Krentzheimius* onely, who placeth the beginning of Orus seven yeeres after the death of Osiris: forgetting to set down his reasons, which in a matter so probable I think hee wanted not. Now whereas hee alloweth 90. yeeres of the 18. Dynastie to Osiris, Typhon, Hercules, and Orus: it seems that the reign of Orus lasted 11.5. yeeres. From the death of Orus, to the departure of Israel out of *Egypt*, there passed 122. yeeres by our account: who (according to *Berosus* and others) think that *Abraham* was born in the 130. yeer of Terah, and thereupon reckon thus: From the end of the Flood to the birth of *Abraham* ———— 351

From that time to the { vocation of *Abraham* ———— 75  
                                  { departure out of *Egypt* ———— 430  
                                  { Summa ———— 851

which summe divers other waies may be collected. Since therefore to the departure out of *Egypt* there do remain (as is aforesaid) onely 122. yeeres from the death of Orus: we are now to consider how many of them are to be allowed unto *Sesostris*, or *Sesostris*: who is placed next unto Orus, by authority of the *Scholiasfes Apollonii*: not without good probability. For this great King or Conquerour, is by many histories recorded to have over-run a great part of *Asia*: to have built a fleet of ships on the red Sea: & so to have entred into *India*: likewise with another fleet on the middle earth Seas, to have passed into *Europe*, and subdued many Nations. This is he (as *Reineccius* judgeth) whom *Justine* erring in account of his time, calleth *Vexoris*: For *Justine* placeth *Vexoris* in ages before *Ninus*: whereby it would follow that *Sesostris*, if he were *Vexoris*, was more ancient than was Osiris (otherwise *Mizraim*) a thing altogether unlikely. Certain it is, that after the departure of Israel out of *Egypt*, no one Pharaoh came into the land of *Canaan* (which lieth in the way from *Egypt* into *Asia*) till the father in law of *Solomon*, Pharaoh *Vaphres*, took *Gerar*, and gave it to his daughter: (as we may reade more at large in the holy History of the Bible) after which time *Sesac* oppressed *Rehoboam*, and *Necho* sought passage through the land of *Israel*, when hee made his expedition against the *Chaldeans*. Of King *Vaphres* and *Necho* it is out of question, that neither of them was the great King *Sesostris*. Of *Sesac* it is doubted by some, forasmuch as he came into *Judea* with

with a great Army. *Reineccius* propounding the doubt, leaveth it undecided; unless it be sufficient proofe of his own opinion, that he himself placeth *Sesostris* next to Orus; following the *Scholiasfes Apollonii*. But further answer may be made to shew that they were not one. For, as *Justine* witnesseth, *Sesostris*, otherwise *Vexoris*, made war on people far removed, abstaining from his neighbours. *Sesac* came up purposely against *Hierusalem*. *Sesostris*, as *Diodorus* witnesseth, had but 24000. horse, *Sesac* had 60000. *Sesostris* had 8020. chariots, *Sesac* 1200. *Sesostris* made his expedition for no private purpose, but to get a great name: *Sesac*, as most agree, had no other purpose than to succour *Jeroboam*, and give him countenance in his new reign; whom he had favoured even against *Solomon*: therefore *Sesostris* must needs have reigned whilest *Israel* abode in *Egypt*.

Whereas *Krentzheimius* collecteth out of *Herodotus*, and *Diodorus*, that one *Menus*, or *Menis*, was next to Orus: because those Historians affirm that he reigned next after the gods; it moveth me nothing. For Osiris did succeed those fifteen gods; namely, the twelve greater, and three lesser: himself also (as the learned *Reineccius* noteth) being called *Menus*. Which name, as also *Menais*, and *Menis*, were titles of dignity: though mistaken by some as proper names. *Krentzheimius* doth very probably gather, that *Menus* was *Mercurius Ter-maximus*; the Hebrew word *Meni* signifying an *Arithmetician*, which name *Ter-maximus* might well be attributed to Osiris, who was a great Conquerour, Philosopher, and Benefactor to mankind, by giving good laws, and teaching profitable Arts. In prowess and great undertakings *Sesostris* was no whit inferior to Osiris. For he fought victory not for gain, but for honour onely; and being well contented, that many Nations had acknowledged his power, and submitted themselves to his will and royall disposition, leaving them in a manner to their liberty, returned into *Egypt*. Soon upon his return he was endangered by a great Treason, the house in which hee was being by his own brother purposely fired: which nevertheless he is said to have escaped, and to have reigned in all thirty three yeeres: after which time he chose rather to die than to live; because he fell blinde. Both *Herodotus* and *Diodorus* affirm, that *Sesostris* left a son, whose name was *Pheron*, or *Pherones*: who afterwards took the name of *Sesostris*; but was nothing like to his father in glory: for he shortly fell blind. The cause of his blindness, *Herodotus* attributes to his assaulting the river *Nilus* with a javelin: which tale *Diodorus* having likewise heard, yet reports as a fable, saying that perhaps he took the disease naturally from his father. How long this man reigned, it is no where expressed: yet forasmuch as Orus the second, (otherwise *Busris*) who succeeded him, began 14. yeeres after that this *Sesostris* had been king, it must needs be that this reigned 14. yeeres at least. That *Busris* began not until these 14. yeeres at least were expired, the very account of time from the first of *Busris*, to the departure of Israel out of *Egypt*, plainly shews, being almost generally agreed upon, to have been 75. yeeres. That none came between *Sesostris* the second, and *Busris* or Orus the second, it stands onely upon probabilities: which are these. After *Sesostris* had reigned some while, he fell blind; after certain yeeres he recovered his sight, as is said: which may have been true, but is more like to have been a fable: surely the manner of his recovery, as it is set down, is very fabulous: namely, that by looking upon a woman, or washing his eyes with her water, who had onely known her own husband, he got his sight again. As the time of his reign, before his blindness, and when he was well again (if ever he were) may have taken up a good part of 14. yeeres: so his works which were great, do much more strongly argue, that his reign was not very short. His works are largely set down by *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*: a part of which may seem to have been the finishing of that which his father had begun, about the channels and sluices of *Nilus*: whom I think he rather frightened, (as his father had done) with spades and shovels, than with darts and javelins; and by his diligent oversight of that work, was like enough to lose both his eye-sight and his peoples love; whom his father had very busily employed in excessive labour about it.

## §. VII.

Of Busiris the first oppressor of the Israelites; and of his successor Queen Thermutis that took up Moses out of the water.

Ecc. 1.

AND herein (if I may presume to conjecture) *Busiris*, who was afterwards king, is like to have dealt with him, as *Jeroboam* did with the son of *Solomon*. For that *Busiris* himself was much addicted to magnificent works, it well appeared by the drudgery wherewith he wearied the children of *Israel* in his buildings: If therefore he were employed by the great *Sesostris*, as *Jeroboam* was by *Solomon*, in the oversight of those businesses, he had good opportunity to work his greatness with the king by industry; and afterward with the people, by incensing them against their new king, as *Jeroboam* did. For what the multitude will endure at one Princes hands, they will not at another: unless he have either an equal spirit, or a surer foundation. If moreover he fought to derive all the pain and labour of publick works from the *Egyptians* to the *Israelites*: he surely did that which to his own people was very plausible: who (as appears in *Exodus*) were nothing slack in fulfilling the Kings cruelty. Now that *Orus* the second, or *Busiris*, was the king that first oppressed *Israel*, and made the *Edit* of drowning the *Hebrew* children, which (saith *Cedrenus*) lasted ten moneths: it is a common opinion of many great and most learned Writers; who also think that hereupon grew the fable of *Busiris* sacrificing strangers. It is also a common interpretation of that place, *Exod. 1.* that the king who knew not *Joseph*, was a king of a new family. That *Busiris* was of a new family, *Reineccius* doth shew; who also thinks him Author of the bloody *Edit*. Nevertheless, true it is, that *Busiris*, according to all mens computation, began his reign five years after the birth of *Moses*; before whose birth it is most manifest, that the law was made, and much more that the persecution began; which *Buning* thinks to have lasted 87. years, ere the departure out of *Egypt*. Let us therefore consider, besides the blindness of *Sesostris* the second, how great the power of the *Regent* or *Vice-Roy* in *Egypt* was; and how great confidence the kings did put in them, seeing *Joseph* ruled with such full power, that hee bought all *Egypt*, and all the *Egyptians* for bread; giving at the same time the belt of the land to his own father and brethren for nothing: seeing also that when the *Egyptians* cried out upon *Pharaoh* for bread; *Pharaoh* said to all the *Egyptians*, Go to *Joseph*; what he saith to you, do ye. If to a stranger born, lately fetcht out of prison, a king well able to have governed himself, would give such trust, and soveraign authority; it is not unlikely that a blind Prince should do it to a man of especial reputation. For God often prospers, not only the good (such as *Joseph* was) but wicked men also, as his instruments against the day of wrath. Therefore perhaps the king did (as many have done) resigne his kingdom to him, though his reign was not accounted to have begun, till the death of *Sesostris*. But whether *Busiris* did usurp the kingdom, or protection of the land by violence: or whether the blind king, resigned it, keeping the title; or whether *Busiris* were onely *Regent*, whilst the king lived, and afterwards (as is acknowledged by all) king himself: it might wel be said that *Pharaohs* daughter took up *Moses*, and that *Pharaoh* vexed *Israel*; seeing he both at that time was king in effect, and shortly after, king in deed and title both. It were not absurd for us to say, that the blind king *Sesostris* the second oppressed *Israel*: but so far as it may seem that the wicked *Tyrant* shewed his evil nature even when he first arose: I think it more likely, that *Busiris* did it, using at first the power of a king, and shortly after the stile. Thus of the 122. years which passed between the beginning of *Sesostris* his reign, and the departure of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, 47. being spent; the 75. which remain, are to be accounted to *Busiris*, or *Orus* the second, and his children. *Busiris* himself reigned 30. years, according to *Eusebius*: whom very many judicious Authors herein approve. After him his daughter, who took *Moses* out of the water, is said by all that I have read, to have reigned 12. years. Her name was *Thermutis* *Pharis*, or *Motis*, according to *Cedrenus*: *Euseb.* calls her *Acencriis*; and out of *Artabanius* his History, *Meris*: *Joseph* calls her both *Acencheres*, and *Thermutis*. *Epiphanius* in *Panario* saith, that she was honoured afterward of the *Egyptians*, by the name of *Thermutis* the daughter of *Amenophis*, the son of *Pharaoh*. Of this last title question might be made, and much spoken: for the Scriptures call her not *Pharaohs* sons daughter, but *Pharaohs* daughter.

Amenophis

## §. VIII.

Of the two brethren of Queen Thermutis: and what king it was, under whom Moses was born: and who it was that perished in the Red Sea.

HE had two brethren: the one was *Rathoris*, or *Athoris*, who succeeded her; the other *Telegonus*, who is onely named by *Eusebius*; but his linage and off-spring described by *Reineccius*. *Rathoris* after his sisters death reigned nine years: after whom *Chencher*, thought to be his son, reigned ten years, and then perished in the Red Sea. During the reign of *Chencher*, *Eusebius* saith, that *Telegonus* begat *Epaphus* upon *Io*: of which History elsewhere he reporteth otherwise. After the death of *Chencher* (whom some call *Acencheres*: but all or most do stile *Δικαιος*, a fighter against God) *Acencheres* reigned 8. years; and then *Cherres* 15. This descent seems from father to son. In the 11. year of *Cherres* it is said by *Eusebius*, that *Epaphus* reigning in the lower part of *Egypt*, built *Memphis*. This is an argument of that which otherwise was not unlikely: viz. That *Egypt* was greatly brought out of order by the plagues which God had laid upon it, and the destruction of her King and Army in the Red Sea: else could it not have had two reigning in it at once; the latter of whom, or his posterity, seems to have taken all from *Cherres* the grand-child of *Chencher*. For whereas *Armais* is said to have reigned four years after *Cherres*: and *Armesis* one after *Armais*: these two kings are by *Eusebius* and others accounted as one, and his reign said to have been five years. His name is called *Armenus*, otherwise *Danans*: and his pedigree thus described by *Reineccius* in his *Histor. Juda.*

Telegonus:  
Epaphus:  
Lybia, who had

Agenor, Belus, and Busiris.  
T

*Egyptus* or *Rameses*, who gave name to the Country, having expelled his brother *Danans*, reigned, and begat *Lyncus*, married to *Hypermetra*.

*Danans* or *Armenus* expelled by his brother *Egyptus*, after hee had reigned five yeers, became king of *Argos* in Greece: was father to *Hypermetra*.

How it might come to passe that the Nephews sons of *Epaphus* should have occupied the Kingdom after *Cherres*, it is hard to say: considering that *Epaphus* himself is reported by *Eusebius* to have been born in the time of *Chencher*. But so far as much as the History of *Epaphus* his birth, is diversly related by *Eusebius*, it may suffice, that *Belus* the father of *Danans* and *Egyptus*, otherwise called *Armenus* and *Rameses*, was equally distant from *Busiris* or *Orus* the second, with *Cherres* the grand-child of *Chencher*. And that the posterity of *Telegonus* did marry very young, it appears by the History

Exod. 4. 15.

of these two brethren, *Danaus* and *Aegyptus*: of whom the former had 50. daughters, the latter 50. sons: perhaps, or rather questionable, by divers women: yet surely they began to beget children in their first youth: Howsoever it were, the generall consent of writers is, that *Armenus* or *Danaus* did succeed *Cherres*: and (according to *Eusebius* and good Authors approving him) reigned five years. *Rameses* followed, who reigned 68. years. This *Rameses* or *Aegyptus*, is that *Armesesimianum*, or *Armesesimianus*, under whom, in the opinion of *Mercator*, and of *Bunting* that follows *Mercator*, *Moses* was born: and the cruell *Edict* made of drowning the Hebrew children. The length of this reign seems to me the chief, if not the onely ground of *Mercator's* opinion. For where as the Lord said to *Moses*, *Go, return to Egypt, for they are all dead which went about to kill thee*: *Mercator* hereupon conceives, that it was one and the same king under whom *Moses* was born, and under whom he slew the *Aegyptian* at the 40. year of his age: and fled into the wilderness, and there abode for fear: all which circumstances could agree with none, but this *Rameses*, who reigned so long: wherefore desirous rather to hold a true Paradox, than a common error, he placeth one *Alisfragmuthosis* (whose name is found in the list of *Aegyptian* kings, but the time uncertain wherein he reigned) in an age 112. or 113. years more ancient than others left him in: and so continuing the Catalogue of his successors from *Themos* (whom *Eusebius* calls *Amosis*) downwards, with no other variation of the length of each mans reign, than is the difference between *Manetho* and *Eusebius*, he findes *Moses* born under *Armesesimianum*, and *Israel* delivered in the dayes of his son *Amenophis*. The very name of *Alisfragmuthosis* seems to him with little alteration to sound like *Phararates*, of which name one was thought to have flourished either as a king, or a wife man, about the time of *Isaac*. For (saith he) from *Alisfragmuthosis* to *Phragmuthosis*, *Pharmuthosis*, or *Phararates*, the change is not great. *Mercator* was a man of excellent learning and industry: and one to whom the world is bound for his many notable works: yet my assent herein is withheld from him, by these reasons. First, I see all other Writers agree, that *Cherres* was king, who was drowned in the Red Sea. Secondly, the place, *Exod. 4. all are dead, &c.* may better be understood of *Eufrius* and all his children, than of one king alone. Thirdly, *S. Cyril* in his first book against *Julian* the *Apostata*, saith, that *Dardanus* built *Dardania*, when *Moses* was 120. years old: *Rameses*, which was this *Armesesimianum*, being then king of *Egypt*. After *Rameses*, *Amenophis* reigned 19. years: who is thought by *Mercator*, and peremptorily by *Bunting* pronounced, to be the King that perished in the Red Sea: of which our opinion being already layed open, I think it most expedient to referre the kings ensuing to their own times (which a *Chronologicall Table* shall lay open) and here to speak of that great deliverance of *Israel* out of *Egypt*: which for many great considerations depending thereupon, we may not lightly over-passe.

CHAP. 3.

## CHAP. III.

of the delivery of *Israel* out of *Egypt*.

## §. I.

of the time of *Moses* birth, and how long the *Israelites* were oppressed in *Egypt*.

**T**Rue it is that the History it selfe is generally and well knowne: yet concerning the time of *Moses* his birth, who was the excellent and famous instrument of this and other great workes of the *Higheft*, the different opinions are very neere as many, as the men that have written of that Argument.

*L. Vives* in his annotations upon *S. Augustine* citeth very many of their conjectures: as that of *Porphyrie* out of *Sanchoisio*, that *Moses* lived in the time of *Semiramis*: But if he did meane the first *Semiramis*, it was but a fond conceit: for besides that the same is contrary to all Stories divine and human; while that *Semiramis* lived, the commanded *Syria*, and all the parts thereof absolutely: neither were the *Ammonites*, or *Moabites*, or *Edomites*, while she ruled, in verum natura.

A second opinion he remembreth of *Appion*, taken from *Ptolomy* a Priest of *Alexander*, who saith that *Moses* was borne while *Inachus* did rule the *Argives*, and *Amoses* in *Egypt*.

The third opinion is taken out of *Polemon*, in his *Greece* History, the first Booke: that *Moses* was borne while *Apis* the third King ruled *Argos*.

A fourth is borrowed from *Tatianus* *Alyrinus*, who though he cite some authorities, yet that *Moses* lived after the *Trojan* war, is himselfe of opinion, that *Moses* was far more ancient, proving it by many arguments.

Finally, he setteth downe the testimony of *Numinius* the Philosopher, who took *Musa* and *Moses* to be one: confirming the same out of *Artapanus*, who confesseth that *Moses* was called *Musa*, by the *Grecians*: and who farther delivereth that he was adopted by *Chenephis*, or *Thermutis*, the daughter of *Egypt*: the same which *Enpolemus* calleth *Meris*; others (as *Rabanus Maurus*) *Thermotes*. *Eusebius* also affirmeth, that by *Enpolemus* in his first booke de bono, *Moses*, vir Deo conjunctissimus, is called *Musa*. *Judeorum*. *Eusebius* in his Chronology, findes that *Moses* was borne while *Amenophis* ruled *Egypt*. The ancient *Manethon* calls that *Pharao*, which lived at *Moses* birth, *Thumos*; or *Thmos*: the same perchance which *Appion* the *Grammarian* will have to be *Amosis*, and elsewhere *Amenophis* the Father of *Sethosis*: to whom *Lysimachus* and *Cornelius Tacitus* gave the name of *Bocchoris*. To me it seemes most probable, that while *Saphrus*, called also *Spherus* or *Iphereus*, governed *Affryia*; *Orthopolis*, *Sicyonia*; and *Crisus* the *Argives*; that then (*Sesoftris* the second ruling in *Egypt*) *Moses* was borne. For if we belevee *Saint Augustine*, it was about the end of *Cecrops* time, that *Moses* led *Israel* out of *Egypt*.

*Eduxit* *Moses* ex *Egypte* populum Dei novissimo tempore *Cecropis Athenien[sis] Regis*; *Moses* (saith he) led the people of God out of *Egypt*, about the end of *Cecrops* time, King of the *Athenians*. In this sort therefore is the time of *Moses* birth, and of his departure out of *Egypt* best proved. *S. Augustine* affirmes (as before remembered) that *Moses* was borne, *Saphrus* governing *Affryia*; and that he left *Egypt* about the end of *Cecrops* time. Now

*Saphrus* ruled 20. years; his successor *Mamelus* 30. years; *Sparetus* after him 40. yeeres: in whose fourth yeere *Cecrops* began to governe in *Attica*: *Ascatades* followed *Sparetus*, and held the Empire 41. So as *Moses* being borne while *Saphrus* ruled *Affryia*; *Orthopolis* *Sicyonia*; and *Crisus* *Argos* (for these three Kings lived at once at his birth, saith *S. Augustine*, as *Cecrops* did when he departed *Egypt*) it will follow that the birth of *Moses* was in the nineteenth yeere of the *Affryan* *Saphrus*: for take one yeere remaining of 20. (for so long *Saphrus* reigned) to which adde the thirty yeeres of *Mamelus*, and the 40. yeeres of *Sparetus*, these make 71. with which there were waisted three yeeres

*Euseb. de prep. Evang. l. 3. c. 3.*

*Aug. l. 18. c. 11. de civit. Dei.*

2514.

years of *Cecrops* his 50. years : then take nine yeeres out of the reign of *Ascatades*, who was *Sparticus* succellour, those nine yeeres added to 71. make 80. at which age *Moses* left *Egypt* : and adde these nine yeeres to the three yeeres of *Cecrops* formerly spent, there will remaine but foure yeeres of *Cecrops* his 50. and so it falleth right with *S. Augustine* words, affirming that towards the end of *Cecrops* his time, *Moses* led the people of *Israel* out of *Egypt*.

Now the time in which the *Hebrews* were oppressed in *Egypt*, seemeth to have had beginning some eight or nine yeeres before the birth of *Moses*, and 54. yeeres, or rather more after *Joseph* : between whose death and the birth of *Moses*, there were consumed 64. yeeres, some of which time, and 80 yeeres after, they lived in great servitude and misery. For as it is written in *Exodus* : They set task-masters over them, to keepe them under with burdens : and they built the Cities, *Pithom* and *Ramases*, &c. And by cruelty they caused the children of *Israel* to serve ; and made them weary of their lives, by sore labour in clay and bricke, and in all worke of the field, with all manner of bondage. All which laid upon them by a mastering power and strong hand, they endured to the time by the will-dome of God appointed : even from 54. yeeres, or not much more after the death of *Joseph*, who left the World when it had lasted 2370. yeeres to the eightieth yeere of *Moses*, until he wrought his miracles in the field of *Zaan*, which he performed in the Worlds age 2514. towards the end thereof, according to *Codoman*, or after our account, 2513. And because those things which we deliver of *Egypt*, may the better be understood, I thinke it necessary to speake a few words of the principall place therein named, in this discourse.

## §. II

Of divers Cities and places in *Egypt*, mentioned in this Story, or elsewhere in the Scripture.

**T**His City which the *Hebrews* call *Zaan*, was built seven yeeres after *Hebrom*. *Ezechiel* calleth it *Taphnes* ; and so doth *Hieremy* ; the *Septuagint*, *Tanais* ; *Josephus*, *Tanais*, after the name of an *Egyptian* Queen ; *Antonius* gives it the name of *Thamis*, *Hugobon*, *Thamnia* ; and *William Tyrinus*, *Tapins*. It adjoyneth to the land of *Gosen*, and is the same, wherein *Hieremy* the Prophet was stoned to death, for preaching against the *Egyptian* and *Jewish* Idolatry.

*Zaan* or *Taphnes* was in *Moses* time the Metropolis of the lower *Egypt*, in which their *Pharaohs* then commonly resided ; and not unlikely to be the same City, where *Abraham* in his time found him. But *Eusebius* out of *Artapanus* affirmeth, that *Abraham* did reside at *Astronomy* in *Heliopolis*, or *On*, to *Phareates* King of *Egypt*. *Alex. Polybist*, out of *Eupolemus* hath it otherwise, saying, that *Abraham* instructed the *Egyptian* Priests, and not the King ; both which authorities *Eusebius* citeth. The *Septuagint*, and the *Vulgar* edition, for *Zaan* write *Heliopolis*, *Pagnin*, *Vatablus*, *Junius*, and our *English* call it *On* ; and *Ptolomy*, *Onim*. There are two Cities of that name ; the one on the frontier of the lower *Egypt*, towards the South ; the other somewhat lower on the Easter-moſt branch of *Nile* falling into the Sea at *Pelufium*. And it may be that *Heliopolis* to the South of the river *Trojan*, was the same which *Vatablus* and our *English* call *Aven*. Of the latter it is, that the Scriptures take certain knowledge ; the same which *Pomp. Mela* and *Plinie* call *Seth oppidum* ; *Tyrinus* in the *Holy War*, *Malbec* ; the *Arabians*, *Bahabeth* ; and *Siméon Sethi*, from *Solk*. Of this *Heliopolis*, or *On*, was *Potiphar* Priest, or Prince, whose daughter *Joseph* married. In the Territory adjoyning *Jacob* inhabited, while he lived in *Egypt*. In the confines of this City, *Onias*, the high Priest of the *Jews*, built a Temple, dedicated to the eternall God ; not much inferiour to that of *Hiernsalem* (*Ptolomy Philopater* then governing in *Egypt*) which stood in the time of *Vespasian*, 333. yeeres after the foundation by *Onias*, whom *Josephus* falsly reporteth herein to have fulfilled a prophecy of *Ely*, c. 19. In die illa erit Altare Domini in medio terre Ægypti ; In that day shall the Altar of the Lord be in the midst of the Land of *Egypt*. *Antiochus Epiphanes* at the time of the building tyrannizing over the *Jews*, gave the occasion for the erecting of this Temple in *Egypt*. Lastly, there it was that our Saviour *Christ Jesus* remained, while *Joseph* and the Virgin *Mary* feared the violence of *Herod* : neer which (saith *Brochard*) the fountain

Nam. 33.  
Ezechiel 30.  
Hierem. 2. 43.  
4. 4. 5.  
Joseph 1. c. 9.  
Tyr. de Sol. fac.  
1. 19. c. 23.

Euseb. de prep.  
Evang. 1. 9. c. 4.  
Gen. 12. 15.  
Ely 19. 11.

tain is still found, called *Jesus well*, whose streams do afterward water the Gardens of *Balsanum*, no where else found in *Egypt*. And hereof see more in *Brochard*, in his description of *Egypt*.

There is also the City of *Noph*, remembred by *Esay* and *Ezechiel*, the same which *Ho-* *Esay 19. 13.*  
*sea* the Prophet calleth *Moph* : which latter name it took from a Mountain adjoining, *Ezech. 34.*  
so called ; which Mountain *Herodotus* remembreth. And this is that great City, which *Ho-* *Hoſa 9. 6.*  
was called *Memphis* ; and so the *Septuagint* write it. It is known to the *Arabians* by the *Lib. 2.*  
name of *Mazar*. The *Chaldeans* name it *Alchabyr* ; and *Tudalenſis Mizraim*.

*Pelufium*, which *Vatablus*, *Pagnin*, *Junius*, and our *English* write *Sin* ; the *Septuagint* call *G. Tyr. 1. 20.*  
*10 Sois* ; and *Montanus*, *Lebna* ; is not the same with *Damiata*, as *Gul. Tyrinus* witnesseth. In *c. 17. lib. 2. c. 5.*  
the time of *Baldwin* the third, *Pelufium* was called *Belbeis*. *Belbeis* (saith *Tyrinus*) *quæ olim*  
dicta est *Pelufium* ; *Belbeis*, that in times past was called *Pelufium*.

The City of *No*, the *Septuagint* call *Dioſpolis*. Of which name there are two or three *Ezech. 30. 15, 16*  
in *Egypt*. *Hierome* converts it *Alexandria*, by anticipation, because it was so called in the future.

*Bubastus*, (for so *Hierome* and *Zeigler* do write it) is the same which the *Hebrews* call *Ezech. 30. 17.*  
*Pibesth*.

To make the story the more perceivable, I have added a description of the land of *Gosen*, in which the *Israelites* inhabited ; with those Cities and places so often remembred in the Scripture : as of *Taphnes* or *Zaan*, *Heliopolis* or *Bethjemes*, *Balsaphon*, *Succoth*, and the rest ; together with *Moses* passage through the Desarts of *Arabia the Stony*. For all story without the knowledge of the places wherein the actions were performed, as it wanteth a great part of the pleasure ; so it no way enricheth the knowledge and understanding of the Reader ; neither doth any thing serve to retain, what we read, in our memories, so well as these pictures and descriptions do. In which respect I am driven to digresse in many places, and to interpose some such discourse, otherwise seeming impertinent : taking for my authority, after many others more ancient, that great learned man, *Arian Montanus* ; who in his Preface to the Story of the Holy Land, hath these words : *Si enim abſque locorum obſervatione res geſta narrentur, aut ſine Topographiæ cognitione hiſtoriæ legantur, adeo conſuſa atq; perturbata erunt omnia, ut eis niſi nihil non obſcure, nihil non difficile elici poſſit ;* If narration (saith he) be made of those things which are performed, without the observation of the places, wherein they were done : or if Histories be read without Topographical knowledge ; all things will appear so intricate and confused, as we shall thereby understand nothing but obscurely, nor draw thence any knowledge, but with the greatest difficulty.

## §. III.

Of the cruelty against the *Israelites* young children in *Egypt* : and of *Moses* his preservation and education.

**B**UT to return to the story it selfe. It appeareth that notwithstanding the labour and slavery, which the *Israelites* endured, yet they decreased not in numbers : inſomuch as *Pharaoh* considering the danger of discontented poverty, and the able bodies of an oppressed multitude, how perillous they might be to his estate, by suggestion of the Devil, resolved to slaughter all the male children of the *Hebrews*, as soon as they should be born. To which end he sent for *Sephora* and *Thura*, women the most famous and expert amongst them, *quæ præerat* (saith *Comestor*) *multitudinis obſervantiæ*, who had command given them over all mid-wives ; by whom (as it seemeth) he gave order to all the rest for the execution of his Edict. For to have called all the Mid-wives of *Egypt* together, had been a strange Parliament. Now whether these two (before named) were of the *Hebrews*, or of the *Egyptians*, it is diversly disputed. *S. Augustine* calls *Ver. 16.*  
them *Hebrews*, because it is written *Exodus* the first, *The King of Egypt commanded the* *Joseph. ant. 1. 2.*  
*Mid-wives of the Hebrew women*, &c. But *Josephus*, *Abulenſis*, and *Perrinus* believethem *Aul. 2y Pere*  
to be *Egyptians*. Whoſoever they were, when it pleased God to frustrate the execution of that secret murder, to the end the world might witness both the wickedness of the *Egyptians*, and the just cause, thereby made manifest, of his future indignation and revenge : *Pharaoh* finding these women filled with piety, and the fear of God, commanded

Ver. 16.  
Joseph. ant. 1. 2.  
Aul. 2y Pere  
in exod.



commanded others of his people to execute his former intent; and publickly, or howsoever, to destroy all the male Hebrew children born within his dominions.

Now besides the doubts, which Pharaoh had of the multitudes of the Hebrews, the greatest part of whom he might have assured, by affording them the justice which every King oweth to his vassals, and the rest he might have employed or sent away at his pleasure; Josephus giveth another cause of his rage against them, namely, That it was prophetically delivered him by an Egyptian Priest, that among the Hebrews there should be born a child, who growing to mans estate, should become a plague and terror to his whole Nation. To prevent which, (and presuming that he could resist the ordinance of God, by a mean, contrary to the laws of heaven and of nature) he stretched out his bloody and merciless hand to the execution of his former intent. The same prevention Herod long after practised, when fearing the spirituall Kingdom of Christ, as if it should have been temporall, he caused all the male children at that time born, to be slaughtered. And that Pharaoh had some kind of foreknowledge of the future success, it may be gathered by these his own words, in the tenth verse of the fifth of Exodus: *Come, let us work wisely with them, lest they multiply; and it come to passe, that if there be war, they joyn themselves also unto our enemies, and fight against us, and get them out of the Land.* But we see, and time hath told it us from the beginning, how God derideth the wisdom of the worldly men, when forgetting the Lord of all power, they rely on the inventions of their own most feeble, and altogether darkened understanding. For even by the hands of the dearly beloved daughter of this tyrant, was that great Prophet and Minister of Gods marvellous works taken out of Nilus, being therinto turned off, in an Ark of reeds, a sucking and powerless infant. And this Princeesse having beheld the child his form and beauty, though but yet in the blouth, so pierced her compassion, as she did not onely preserve it, and cause it to be fostered; but commanded that it should be esteemed as her own, and with equall care to the son of a King nourished. And for memory that it was her deed, she called the child *Moses*, as it were, *extraximus* or *crepus*, taken out, to wit, out of the water: or after Josephus and Glycas, *Moy*, a voice expressing water, and *Hisee*, as much to say, as that which is drawn out of water, or thence taken. Clemens Alexandrinus was of opinion, that *Moses* was circumcised before he was put into the Ark of reeds, and that *Anram* his father had named him *Joachim*. In his youth he was carefully bred, by the care, and at the charge of Pharaohs daughter, and by men of the most understanding, taught and instructed: *quem regio more educavit, presens sapientibus Aegyptiorum Magistris, a quibus eruditur, fidei Basil; unto whom she gave princely education, appointing over him wise masters of the Egyptians for his instructors.* Thereby (say Josephus and Philo) he became excellently learned in all the doctrine of the Egyptians, which also the Martyr Stephen in the seventh of the Acts confirmeth; And *Moses was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians.* Which wisdom or sapience, such as it was, or at least so much thereof as *Six. Senensis* hath gathered, we have added, between the death of *Moses*, and the reign of *Joshua*.

## §. IV.

of *Moses* his flying out of Egypt; and the opinions of cert. in ancient Historians of his war in Ethiopia; and of his marriage there: Philo his judgement of his Pastoral life: and the of Pererius of the Books of Genesis and Job.

When *Moses* was grown to mans estate, Josephus and Eusebius out of *Artapanus*, tell us of ten years war that he made against the Ethiopians: of the besieging of *Saba*, afterward by *Cambyses*, called *Meroe*; and how he recovered that City by the favour of *Tharbis*, a daughter of Ethiopia, whom he took to wife. So hath *Comestor* a pretty tale of *Moses*. Now after the end of that war, *Tharbis* resisting his return into Egypt, *Moses* most skilfull in Astronomy, caused two Images to be ingraven in two precious stones, whereof the one increased memory; the other caused forgetfulness. These he set in two rings; whereof he gave the one, to wit, that of oblivion, to his wife *Tharbis*, reserving the other of memory for himself: which ring of forgetfulness, after she had a while worn, she began to neglect the love she bare her husband; and so *Moses* without danger returned into Egypt. But leaving these fancies to the Authors of them: It is true, that about the 40. year of *Moses* age, when he beheld an

Egyptian

*Egyptian* offering violence to one of the oppressed Hebrews, moved by compassion, in respect of his brother, and stirred up by disdain against the other, in the contention he slew the Egyptian. Soon after which fact, finding a disposition in some of his own Nation to accuse him, for whose defence he had thus greatly endangered his own life: by the ordinance and advice of God, whose chosen servant he was, he fled into *Arabia Petrea*, the next bordering Countrey to Egypt; where wandering all alone, as a man left and forsaken, in a place unknown unto him, as among a Nation of barbarous strangers; and who in future times were the irreconcilable enemies of the Hebrews: it pleased God (working the greatest things by the weakest worldly means) to make the watering of a few sheep, and the assisting of the Daughters of *Raguel* the *Madianite*, an occasion whereby to provide him a wife of one of those, and a father in law, that fed him, and sustained him in a Country nearest Egypt, fittely to returne from; necessary to be known, because interjacent between Egypt and *Judea*, through which he was to lead the *Israelites*; and wherein God held him, till the occasion which God presented, best served. And lastly, where the glory of the world shined least, amidst mountainous Deserts, there the glory of God, which shineth most, covered him over, and appeared unto him, not finding him as a Kings son, or an adopted child of great Pharaohs daughter, but as a meek and humble shepherd, sitting at a mountains foot, a keeper and commander of those poor beasts onely.

In that part of *Arabia* neer *Madian*, he consumed 40. years, And though (as *Philo* in the story of *Moses* life observeth) he did not neglect the care of those flocks, committed to his charge, but that he excelled all others in that Pastoral knowledge; yet in that solitary Desart he enjoyed himself: and being separate from the press of the world, and the troublesome affairs thereof, he gave himself to contemplation, and to make perfect in himself all those knowledges, whereof his younger years had gathered the grounds and principles: the same Author also judging that his Pastoral life did excellently prepare him for the execution of the Principality, which he afterward obtained. *Est enim (saith Philo) ars Pastoralis, quasi preludeum ad regnum, hoc est, ad regimen hominum, gregis mansuetissimi. Quem admodum bellicosia ingenia preceperunt se in venatione, experientia in jure, quod postea in militia & bello perfectura sunt; brutis prebeatissimum materiam exercitii, tam belli quam pacis tempore. At vero presectura mansueti pecoris, habet quiddam simile cum regno in subditis; ideoque Reges cognominantur Pastores populorum, non commutative, sed honoris gratia; The art of keeping sheep is, as it were, an introductory exercise unto a Kingdom, namely, the rules over men, the most gentle flock: Even as warlike natures do before-hand exercise themselves in hunting, practising on wild beasts; those things, which after they will accomplish in warfare: those brute beasts affording matter, wherein to train themselves, both in time of war and of peace. But the government of gentle cattell, hath a kinde of resemblance unto a Kingly rule over subjects; therefore Kings are stiled shepherds of the people, not in way of reproach, but for their honour.*

That *Moses*, in this time of his abode at *Madian*, wrote the Book of *Job*, as *Pererius* supposeth, I cannot judge of it, because it is thought, that *Job* was at that time living. Neither dare I subscribe to *Pererius* opinion, That *Moses* while he lived in that part of *Arabia*, wrote the Book of *Genesis*; although I cannot deny the reason of *Pererius* conjecture, That by the example of *Jobs* patience he might strengthen the oppressed Hebrews: and by the promises of God to *Abraham*, *Isaac*, and *Jacob*, put them in assurance of their delivery from the Egyptian slavery, and of the Land of rest, and plentie promised.

Of this calling back into Egypt by the Angell of God, and the marvels and wonders which he performed, thereby to persuade Pharaoh, that he was the messenger of the most High, the particulars are written in the first fourteen Chapters of Exodus; and therefore to treat of all the particulars therein contained, it were needlesse. But for the first, it is to be noted, that when *Moses* desired to be taught by God, by what name he should make him known, and by whom he was sent; he received from God so much, as a man could comprehend of his infinite and ever-being nature. Out of which he delivered him in the first part of his answer, a name to be considered of by the wisest; and in his second, to be understood by all. For there is nothing that is, or hath being of it self, but the Eternal; which truly is; which is above all; which is immutable. The bodies of men are changed every moment: their substance wasteth, and is repaired by nutriment,

Hier. ad Rom.

C. 49. v. 13.

C. 16. v. 5.

Epiphani. Lt.  
cont. Hæres.

meat; never continuing at one stay, nor being the same so long as while one may say, Now. Likewise, whatsoever is consumed in the longest continuance of time, the same in every shortest piece of time suffereth decay; neither doth any thing abide in one state. *Una est Dei & sola natura que verè est: id enim quod subsistit, non habet aliunde, sed suum est. Cætera que creata sunt, etiam si videntur esse, non sunt, quia aliquando non fuerunt, & potest rursum non esse, quod non fuit: It is the one and only nature of God, which truly is: for he hath his being of himself; and not from any thing without him. Other things that are created, although they seem to be, yet they are not; for sometimes they were not: and that which hath not been, may again want being. And with this, in respect of the divine nature, the saying of Zeno Eleates excellently agreeth: Totæ rerum natura umbra est, antinaturalis, aut fallax; The whole nature of things is but a shadow, either empty or deceitfull: in comparison of whom (saith Esay) all Nations are. as nothing, lesse than nothing, and meer vanity.*

Of the ten plagues wherewith the Egyptians were stricken, the first was by changing the Rivers into blood: God punishing them by those waters, into which their Forefathers had thrown, and in which they had drowned the innocent children of the Hebrews. To which this place of the Revelation may be fitly applied: *And I heard the Angel of the water say, Lord, thou art just, which art, and which wast; and holy, because thou hast judged these things; for they shed the blood of thy Saints and Prophets, and therefore hast thou given them blood to drink.*

The rest of the plagues by Frogs, Lice, Flies, or stinging Wasps; by the death of their Cattell; by leprous Scabs; by Haile and Fire; by Grasshoppers; by Darknesse; after which Pharaoh forbade Moses his presence: moved the hardened heart of the unbelieving King, no longer, than the pain and perill lasted; till such time as his own first-born, and the first-born of all his Nation perished. He then, while he feared his own life, (a time wherein we remember God perforce) stood upon no condition: whereas before, he first yielded but to the departure of the men; then of the men, women, and children, reserving their bestiall; but he was now content for the present, that the Israelites should not only depart with all their own, but with a part of the Silver, Gold, and Jewels, of his own people: of which (the fear being past) he suddenly repented him, as his pursuit after them proved. For when every one of the Hebrews had (according to direction from Moses received) slain a Lamb, without spot or blemish, for the Passover, (a Sacrament of the most clean and unpotted Saviour,) and with the blood thereof coloured the post and lintell of the doors; the Angel of God in the night smote every first-born of Egypt, from the son of the King, to that of the Beggar and Slave: the children of the Israelites excepted. At which terrible judgement of God, Pharaoh being more than ever amazed, yielded, as before is said, to their departure. The Egyptians (saith Epiphanius) did in after-times imitate this colouring with blood, which the Israelites used after the Passover; ascribing an exceeding virtue to the Red Colour: and therefore they did not only mark their Sheep and Cattell, but their Trees bearing Fruit, to preserve them from lightning and other harms.

## §. V.

Of Pharaohs pursuit of the Israelites: and of their passage towards the Red Sea, so far as Succoth.

Now, when the people were removed, and on their way, (his heart being hardened by God) he bethought him as well of the honour lost, as of the shame remaining after so many Calamities and Plagues, in suffering them to depart with the spoils of his people, and in despite of himself. And having before this time great Companies of Souldiers in readinesse, he consulted with himself what way the Israelites were like to take. He knew that the shortest and fairest passage was through the Country of the Philistines. But because these people were very strong, and a warlike Nation, and in all probability of his Allies, he suspected that Moses meant to finde some other out-let, to wit, through the Defart of Etham; and there, because the Country was exceeding mountainous, and of hard access, and that Moses was pestered with multitudes of Women, Children, and Cattell, he thought it impossible for the Israelites to

escape him that way. In the mean while having gathered together all the Chariots of Egypt, and 600. of his own, and Captains over them; he determined to set upon them in the plains of Gosen, which way soever they turned themselves. For it was the ancient manner to fight in those Chariots, armed with broad and sharp hooks on both sides, in fashion like the Mowers Sythe. Which kinde of fight in Chariots, but not hooked, the Eritians used against the Romans, while they made the war for the conquest of this Land. Of this Army of Pharaoh, Josephus affirmeth, that it consisted of 50000. Horse, and 20000. Foot; which, were it true, then it cannot be doubted but that Pharaoh intended long before to assaile the Hebrews at their departure, or to destroy them in Gosen; and refused them passage, till such time as he had prepared an Army to set on them. For, as it is written in the first of Exodus, he doubted two things, either that the Hebrews might joyn themselves to his enemies within the Land; or being so multiplied, as they were, might leave his service, and get themselves thence at their pleasure. But the plagues which God grieved him withall, enforced him at this time to give an assent to their departure: perchance fore-running his intent. But were it otherwise, and Josephus partiall in this affair, yet by the words of the Text it appeareth, that he gathered all the Chariots of Egypt, which could not be done in haste. For Moses made but three dayes march, ere Pharaoh was at his heels; and yet the last day he went on sixteen miles: which, in so hot a countrey, and to drive their cattell and sheep with them, pestered with a world of women and children, was a march witnessing the dread of a powerfull Enemy at hand. Now, as Moses well knew that he went out with a mighty hand, and that God guided his understanding in all his enterprizes; so he lay not still in the ditch crying for help, but using the understanding which God had given him, he left nothing unperformed becoming a wise man, and a valiant and skilfull Conductor; as by all his actions and counsells from this day to his death, well appeared.

When Moses perceived that Pharaoh was enraged against him, and commanded him not to dare to come thenceforth into his presence: after that he had warned Israel of the Passover, he appointed a generall Assembly or Rende-vous of all the Hebrews at Ramses, in the territory of Gosen; a City standing indifferent to receive from all parts of the Countrey the dispersed Hebrews: and gave commandment, that every Family should bring with them such store as they had of dough, and paste, not staying to make it into bread: knowing then that Pharaoh was on foot, and on his way towards them. Which done, and having considered the great strength of Pharaohs Horse-men and Chariots, of which kinde of defence Moses was utterly unprovided (though, as it is written, the Israelites went up armed) he marched from Ramses East-ward, towards the Defarts of Etham, and incamped at Succoth; which he performed on the fifteenth day of the moneth Abib: which moneth from that time forward they were commanded to account as the first moneth of the year. Whether in former times they had been accustomed to begin their year in some other moneth, following the manner of the Egyptians, and were now recalled by Moses to the rule of their fore-fathers, it is uncertain. Certain it is, that they had, and retained another beginning of their politick year, which was not now abrogated, but rather by some solemnities thereunto annexed, was confirmed, and still continued in use. Wherefore in referring things done, or happening among them, unto the beginning, middle, or ending of the year; that distinction of the Sacred and the Politick year is not to be neglected. Concerning the number of dayes in every moneth, and the whole form of their year, like enough it is that Moses himself in forty years space, did sufficiently instruct the Priests, to whose care the ordering thereof (as common opinion holds) was given in trust: but that any rule of so framing their Kalendar was made publick, before the captivity of Babylon; I do not find. Now because time and motion begin together, it will not, I think, be any great breach of order, to shew here at their first setting forth, what was the form of the Hebrew year: with the difference between them and other Nations in ordering the account of time.

T

§. V I.

## §. VI.

Of the Solary and Lunary yeers; and how they are reconciled: with the form of the Hebrew yeer, and their manner of intercalation,

The Hebrew Moneths are thus named.

The first Moneth, *Nisan*, or *Abib*.  
The second, *Jar*, or *Tiar*, *Zio*, or *Zin*.  
The third, *Sivan*, or *Sinan*, or *Siban*.  
The fourth, *Tammuz*.  
The fifth, *Ab*.  
The sixth, *Ehul*.  
The seventh, *Tifri*, or *Ethavin*, or *Ethanim*.  
The eighth, *Marchesvan*, or *Mechasvan*, or *Eul*, or with *Josephus*, *Morfonane*.  
The ninth, *Chislev*, or *Cassen*.  
The tenth, *Tebeth*, or *Thobeth*.  
The eleventh, *Sebeth*, or *Sabath*.  
The twelfth, *Adar*, and *Ve Adar*.

1. March.  
2. April.  
3. May.  
4. June.  
5. July.  
6. August.  
7. September.  
8. October.  
9. November.  
10. December.  
11. January.  
12. February.

An. 1. c. 4.

Deut. 16.

30. & 29.

P. in. l. 34. c. 6.

**V**E *Adar* was an intercalary moneth, added some yeers unto the other twelve, to make the Solary and Lunary yeer agree; which (besides the generall inconvenience that would otherwise have risen, by casting the moneths of Summer into the Winter season, to the great confusion of all account) was more necessarily to be regarded of the Hebrews, because of the divine Precept. For God appointed especial Feasts to be celebrated precisely in such a moneth of the yeer, and withall on a set day, both of the Moon and of the moneth; as the feast of the First-fruits; the new Moons, and the like: which could not have so been kept, if either the day of the Moon had fallen in some other part of the moneth, or the moneth it self been found far distant from his place in the season of the yeer.

Other Nations, the better to observe their Solemnities in the due time, & to ascertain all reckonings and remembrances, (which is the principall commodity of time, that is the measure of endurance) were driven in like manner to make their yeers unequal, by adding sometimes, and sometimes abating one or more dayes, as the error committed in foregoing yeers required. The error grew at first, by not knowing what number of dayes made up a complete yeer. For though by the continuall course of the Sun, causing Summer and Winter duly to succeed each other, it is plain enough, even to the most savage of all people, when a yeer hath passed over them; yet the necessity of ordinary occurrences, that are to be numbred by a shorter tally, makes this long measure of whole yeers insufficient for the smaller sort of more daily affaires. Therefore men observed the monethly conspicuous revolution of the Moon, by which they divided the yeer into twelve parts, subdividing the moneth into 29. dayes & nights, & those again into their quarters and hours. But as the marks of time are sensible and easily discerned; so the exact calculation of it is very intricate, and worketh much perplexity in the understanding. Twelve revolutions of the Moon, containing lesse time by 11. dayes, or thereabout, than the yearly course of the Sun through the Zodiack, in the space of sixteen yeers, every moneth was found in the quite contrary part of the yeer, to that wherein it was placed at the first. This caused them to adde some dayes to the yeer, making it to consist of 12. moneths, and as many dayes more as they thought would make the courses of the Sun and Moon to agree. But herein were committed many new errors. For neither did the Sun determine his yearly revolution by any set number of whole dayes; neither did the Moon change alwayes at one hour; but the very minutes and lesser fractions were to be observed by him, that would seek to reduce their motions (which motions also were not still alike) into any certain rule.

Here lay much Wisdom and deep Art, which could not soon be brought to perfection. Yet as making an estimate at randome, the Athenians held the yeer to contain three hundred and sixty dayes, wherein most of the Greeks concurred with them. That 360. dayes filled up the Grecian yeer (besides many collateral proofes) it is manifest by that which *Pliny* directly affirmeth, telling of the *Statues*, erected in honour of

Dionysius

*Demetrius Phalereus*, which were (saith he) 360. whilest as yet the yeer exceeded not that number of dayes. By this account neither did any certain age of the Moon begin or end their moneths; neither could their moneths continue many yeers in their own places; but must needs be shifted by little and little from Winter to Summer, and from Summer to Winter, as the dayes forgotten to be inserted into the Almanack by men, but not forgotten by the superiour bodies in their courses, should occupy their own rooms in their due turns. Now, because the solemnity of the *Olympian* games was to be held at the full Moon, and withall, on the 15. day of the moneth *Hecatombæon* (which answered in a manner to our *June*) they were carefull to take order, that this moneth might ever begin with the new Moon; which they effected by adding some two dayes to the last moneth of every yeer; those games being held once in four yeers. This intercalation sufficed not to make the matter even; which caused them sometimes to omit one day in the fourth yeer, which was the second of the moneth *Bedromions* (agreeing neerly with our *August*) sometimes not to omit it, or (which is all one) to insert another for it in their fourth Lunary yeer, accounting by the Moon, after a manner that was not vulgar. All this notwithstanding, their moneth of *June* would every yeer have grown colder and colder, had they not sought to keep all upright, by intercalating in each other *Olympiad*, that is, each eighth yeer, one whole moneth, which they called the second *Pogidæon*, or *December*; which was the device of *Harpalus*, who also taught them to make one moneth of 29. dayes, another of 30. dayes, & so successively through the whole yeer. Thus with much labour they kept their yeer as neer as they could, unto the high way of the *Planets*; but these marks which they observed, were found at length to be deceitfull guides. For it was not possible so to fashion this eighth yeers intercalation, that it should not deceive them in 11. hours and 18. minutes at the least, or some wayes in 34. hours and 10. minutes, or 36. and 41. minutes; which differences would in few Ages have bred much confusion. The first that introduced a good method, likely to continue, was *Meton* the *Athenian*, who not regarding the *Olympiads*, and the eighth yeers intercalation, devised a *Cycle* of 19. yeers, wherein the Moon having 235. times run out her circuit, met with the Sun in the same place, and on the same day of the yeer, as in the 19. yeer before past she had done. This invention of *Meton* was entertained with great applause, and passing from *Greece* to *Rome*, was there inserted into the Kalendar in Golden Letters, being called the Golden Number, which name it retaineth unto this day. Hereby were avoided the great and uncertain intercalations that formerly had been used; for by the intercalation of 7. moneths in the 19. yeers, all was so even, that no sensible difference could be found. Yet that error which in one yeer could not be perceived, was very apparent in a few of those *Cycles*; the new Moons anticipating in one *Cycle* 7. hours, and some minutes of the precise rule. Therefore *Calippus* devised a new *Cycle*, containing four of *Metons*, that is to say, 76. yeers; and afterwards *Hipparchus*, a noble *Astrologer*, framed another, containing four of *Calippus* his Periods, each of them finding some error in the former observations, which they diligently corrected. The last reformation of the Kalendar was that which *Julius Caesar* made, who by advice of the best *Mathematicians*, then to be found, examining the courses of those heavenly bodies, reduced the yeer unto the form which is now in use with us, containing 365. dayes and six hours, which hours in four yeers make up one whole day, that is intercalated every fourth yeer, the 24. of February. The correction of the *Julian* yeer by *Pope Gregory* the 13. *Anno Dom.* 1582. is not as yet entertained by general consent; it was indeed but as a note added unto the work of *Caesar*: yet a note of great importance. For whereas it was observed, that the Sun, which at the time of the *Nicene Council*, *Anno Dom.* 324. entered the *Equinoctial* on the 21. day of 10 March, was in the yeer 1582. ten dayes sooner found, in that time *Pope Gregory* strook out of the Kalendar ten dayes, following the fourth of October, so that in stead of the fifth day was written the fifteenth; by which means the moveable Feasts depending on the Suns entrance into *Aries*, were again celebrated in such time, as at the *Nicene Council* they had been. And the better to prevent the like alterations, it was by the *Council* of *Trent* ordained that from thence forward in every hundred yeer, the Leap-day should be omitted, excepting still the fourth hundred: because the Sun doth not in his yearly course take up full six hours above the 365. dayes; but faileth so many minutes, as in 400. yeers make about three whole dayes.

But the Cycle of 29. years, which the Hebrews used, was such as neither did need any nice curiosity of hours, minutes, and other lesser fractions to help it; neither did in summing up the days of the whole year, neglect the days of the Moon, confounding one month with another. For with them it fell out so, that alwaies the Kalends or first day of the month was at the new Moons; and because that day was festival, they were very carefull as well to observe the short year of the Moon, passing through all the 12. Signs in one month, as that longer of the Sun, which is needfully regarded in greater accounts. First, therefore they gave it to Nisan their first month, which is about our March or April, 30. days; to Jar their second month 29. days; and so successively 30. to one, 29. to another. Hereby it came to passe, that every two months of theirs contained somewhat evenly two revolutions of the Moon, allowing 29. dayes 12. hours, and odd minutes, from change to change. The spare minutes were bestowed among the superfluous or Epact dayes; which made up 7. months in 19. years; to 6. of which, 7. were commonly given 30. dayes; to one of them 29. dayes, or other wise as was found requisite. Their common year (as appeareth by the several days of each month) contained 354. dayes, which fall of the year, wherein the Sun finisheth his course, 11. whole dayes, with some fractions of time. But these dayes, and other broken pieces, howsoever they were neglected in one year, yet in the Cycle of 19. years were so disposed of by convenient intercalations, that still at the end of that Cycle, both the Sun and Moon were found on the same day of the year, month and week, yea, commonly on the same houre of the day, where they had been at the beginning of it 19. years before.

Sig. de rep. Heb.  
lib. 3. c. 1.

Gen. Chron.  
lib. 2.

Divers have diversly set down the form of the Hebrew year, with the manner of their Intercalations. Sigonius tells us, that every second year they did adde a month of 22. dayes; every fourth year a month of 23. in the regard of 11. dayes and a halfe wanting in 12. Moons, to fulfill a year of the Sun. But herein Sigonius was very much deceived. For the Moon doth never finish her course in 22. or 23. dayes: and therefore to have added so many dayes to the end of the year, had been the way to change the fashion of all the months in the years following, which could not have begun, as they ought, with the new Moon: Genebrard saith, that every third year, or second year, as need required, they did intercalate one month, adding it at the years end unto the other 12. This I beleve to have been true; but in which of the years the intercalation was (if it be worthy of consideration) me thinks they do not probably deliver, who keep all far from evenesse, untill the very last of the 19. years. For (to omit such as erre grossly) some there are who say, that after three years, when besides the dayes spent in 36. courses of the Moon, 33. dayes are left remaining, that is, 11. dayes of each year; then did the Hebrews adde a month of 30. dayes; keeping three dayes, as it were, in plussage unto the next account. The like, say they, was done at the end of the sixth year; at which time, besides the Intercalary month, remained six dayes, namely, three surmounting that month, and the Epact of three years, besides the three formerly reserved. Thus they go on to the 18. year; at which time they have 18. dayes in hand: all which with the Epact of the 19. year, make up a month of 29. dayes, that being intercalated at the end of the Cycle, makes all even.

Whether this were the practice, I can neither affirm nor deny; yet surely it must needs have bred a great confusion, if in the 18. year, every month were removed from his own place by the distance of 48. dayes, that is, half a quarter of the year and more; which inconvenience by such a reckoning was unavoidable. Wherefore, I preferre the common opinion, which preventeth such dislocation of the months, by setting down a more convenient way of Intercalation in the 8. year. For the 6. dayes remaining after the two former Intercalations made in the third and sixth years, added unto the 22. dayes, arising out of the Epacts of the 7. and 8. years, do fitly serve to make up a month, with the borrowing of one day or two from the year following; and this borrowing of two dayes is so far from causing any disorder, that indeed it helps to make the years ensuing vary the lesse from the proper season of every month. This may suffice to be spoken of the Hebrew months and years, by which they guided their accounts.

§. VII.

§. VII.

Of the passage of Israel from Succoth towards the Red Sea: and of the divers waies leading out of Egypt.

From Succoth in the morning following, Moses led the Israelites towards the Desert of Etham, to recover the Mountain foot, by the edge of that Wilderneis, though he intended nothing lesse than to go out of that way, of all other the nearest. But being assured of the multitude of Horsemen and armed Chariots that followed him, he kept himself from being incompassed, by keeping the rough and mountainous ground to on his left hand. At Etham he rested but one night, and then he reflected back from the entrance thereof, and marched away directly towards the South; the distance between it and Succoth being about eight miles. That he forbore to enter Arabia, being then in sight thereof, it seemeth to proceed from three respects; the first two, naturall; the third, divine. For Pharaoh being then at hand, and having received intelligence of the way which Moses took, perswaded himself, that the numbers which Moses led, consisting of above a Million, if not two Millions of souls, (for as it is written Exod. the 12. Great multitudes of sundry sorts of people went out with them) could not possibly passe over those desert and high Mountains with so great multitudes of Women, Children, and Cattel, but that at the very entrance of that fastnesse he should have overtaken them, and destroyed the greatest numbers of them. For these his own words: They are tangled in the Land, the Wilderneis hath shut them in, do shew his hopes and intents; which Moses, by turning another way, did frustrate. Secondly, Moses by offering to enter Arabia that way, drew Pharaoh toward the East-side of the Land of Gessen, or Ramesses: from whence (missing Moses there) his pursuit after him with his Chariots was more difficult, by reason of the roughnesse of the way; and howsoever, yet while the Hebrews kept the Mountain foot on the left hand, they were better secured from the over-bearing violence both of the Horse and Chariots. Thirdly, Moses confidence in the All-powerfull God was such, by whose spirit, only wife, he was directed, as he rather made choice to leave the glory of his deliverance and victory to Almighty God, than either by an escape the next way, or by the strength of his multitude, consisting of 600000. men, to cast the successe upon his own understanding, wise conduction, or valour. The third day he marched with a double pace from Etham towards the Valley of Pihacheroth, 16. miles distant; and fate down between two ledges of Mountains adjoining to the Red Sea, to wit, the Mountains of Etham on the North, and Balaephon towards the South; the same which Orosius calleth Climax: on the top whereof there stood a Temple dedicated to Baal. And, as Phagius noteth, the word so compounded, is as much to say, as, Dominus specula, five custodie; Lord of the watch tower. For the Egyptians believed, or at least made their slaves believe, that if any of them offered to escape that way into Arabia, this Idoll would both arrest them, and force them to return to their Lords and Masters. For the Egyptians had gods for all turns. Egyptii diis secundi; The Egyptians were fruitfull in gods, saith Saint Hierome. But Moses, who encamped at the foot of this Mountain with a million of souls, or as others conceive, with two millions, found this Lord of the watch-tower asleep, or out of countenance.

Now these two passages leading out of Egypt into Arabia upon the firm land, Moses refused, as well that of Pelusium and Casotis, the fairest and shortest of all other, in respect of Judea, as the other by Etham, from which he reflected, for the reasons before remembred, and took the way by the Valley of Pihacheroth, between the Mountains, which made a freight entrance towards the Sea. After whom Pharaoh made so great speed with his Horse-men and Chariots, as he gave the Hebrews no time at all to rest them after so long a march; but gate sight of them, and they of him, even at the very brink and wash of the Sea: inso much as the Hebrews being terrified with Pharaohs sudden approach, began to despair, and to mutine, at that time when it behooved them most to have taken courage for their own defence; laying it to Moses charge, that themselves foresaw those perils in which they were wrapped. And fear, which, saith the Book of Wisdom, is the betraying of those succours which reason offereth, made them both despair in Gods former promises, and to be forgetfull of their own strength and multitudes.

§. VIII.

But the *Cycle* of 29. years, which the *Hebrews* used, was such as neither did need any nice curiosity of hours, minutes, and other lesser fractions to help it; neither did in summing up the days of the whole year, neglect the days of the Moon, confounding one month with another. For with them it fell out so, that alwaies the *Kalends* or first day of the month was at the new Moon; and because that day was festival, they were very carefull as well to observe the short year of the Moon, passing through all the 12. Signs in one month, as that longer of the Sun, which is needfully regarded in greater accounts. First, therefore they gave it to *Nisan* their first month, which is about our *March* or *April*, 30. days; to *Iyar* their second month 29. days; and so successively 30. to one, 29. to another. Hereby it came to passe, that every two months of theirs contained somewhat evenly two revolutions of the Moon, allowing 29. days 12. hours, and odd minutes, from change to change. The spare minutes were bestowed among the superfluous or *Epaet* days; which made up 7. months in 19. years; to 6. of which, 7. were commonly given 30. days; to one of them 29. days, or otherwise as was found requisite. Their common year (as appeareth by the several days of each month) contained 354. days, which fall of the year, wherein the Sun finisheth his course, 11. whole days, with some fractions of time. But these days, and other broken pieces, howsoever they were neglected in one year, yet in the *Cycle* of 19. years were so disposed of by convenient intercalations, that still at the end of that *Cycle*, both the Sun and Moon were found on the same day of the year, month and week, yea, commonly on the same hour of the day, where they had been at the beginning of it 19. years before.

Sig. de rep. Heb.  
lib. 3. c. 1.

Gen. Chrin.  
lib. 2.

Divers have diversly set down the form of the *Hebrew* year, with the manner of their Intercalations. *Sigonius* tells us, that every second year they did adde a month of 22. days; every fourth year a month of 23. in the regard of 11. days and a halfe wanting in 12. Moons, to fulfill a year of the Sun. But herein *Sigonius* was very much deceived. For the Moon doth never finish her course in 22. or 23. days: and therefore to have added so many days to the end of the year, had been the way to change the fashion of all the months in the years following, which could not have begun, as they ought, with the new Moon: *Genebrard* saith, that every third year, or second year, as need required, they did intercalate one month, adding it at the years end unto the other 12. This I beleve to have been true; but in which of the years the intercalation was (if it be worthy of consideration) me thinks they do not probably deliver, who keep all far from evenesse, untill the very last of the 19. years. For (to omit such as erre grossly) some there are who say, that after three years, when besides the days spent in 36. courses of the Moon, 33. days are left remaining, that is, 11. days of each year; then did the *Hebrews* adde a month of 30. days; keeping three days, as it were, in plussage unto the next account. The like, say they, was done at the end of the sixth year; at which time, besides the Intercalary month, remained six days, namely, three surmounting that month, and the *Epaet* of three years, besides the three formerly reserved. Thus they go on to the 18. year; at which time they have 18. days in hand: all which with the *Epaet* of the 19. year, make up a month of 29. days, that being intercalated at the end of the *Cycle*, makes all even.

Whether this were the practice, I can neither affirm nor deny; yet surely it must needs have bred a great confusion, if in the 18. year, every month were removed from his own place by the distance of 48. days, that is, half a quarter of the year and more; which inconvenience by such a reckoning was unavoidable. Wherefore, I preferre the common opinion, which preventeth such dislocation of the months, by setting down a more convenient way of Intercalation in the 8. year. For the 6. days remaining after the two former Intercalations made in the third and sixth years, added unto the 22. days, arising out of the *Epaets* of the 7. and 8. years, do fitly serve to make up a month, with the borrowing of one day or two from the year followings; and this borrowing of two days is so far from causing any disorder, that indeed it helps to make the years ensuing vary the lesse from the proper season of every month. This may suffice to be spoken of the *Hebrew* months and years, by which they guided their accounts.

§. VII.

§. VII.

Of the passage of Israel from Succoth towards the Red Sea: and of the divers waies leading out of Egypt.

From Succoth in the morning following, *Moses* led the *Israelites* towards the Desert of *Etham*, to recover the Mountain foot, by the edge of that Wildernesse, though he intended nothing lesse than to go out of that way, of all other the nearest. But being assured of the multitude of Horsemen and armed Chariots that followed him, he kept himself from being incompassed, by keeping the rough and mountainous ground to his left hand. At *Etham* he rested but one night, and then he reflected back from the entrance thereof, and marched away directly towards the South; the distance between it and Succoth being about eight miles. That he forbore to enter *Arabia*, being then in sight thereof, it seemeth to proceed from three respects; the first two, naturall, the third, divine. For *Pharaoh* being then at hand, and having received intelligence of the way which *Moses* took, perswaded himself, that the numbers which *Moses* led, consisting of above a Million, if not two Millions of souls, (for as it is written *Exod. the 12. Great multitudes of sundry sorts of people went out with them*) could not possibly passe over those desert and high Mountains with so great multitudes of Women, Children, and Castell, but that at the very entrance of that fastnesse he should have overtaken them, and destroyed the greatest numbers of them. For these his own words: *They are tangled in the Land, the Wildernesse hath shut them in*, do shew his hopes and intents, which *Moses*, by turning another way, did frustrate. Secondly, *Moses* by offering to enter *Arabia* that way, drew *Pharaoh* toward the East-side of the Land of *Gessen*, or *Rameses*: from whence (missing *Moses* there) his pursuit after him with his Chariots was more difficult, by reason of the roughnesse of the way; and howsoever, yet while the *Hebrews* kept the Mountain foot on the left hand, they were better secured from the over-bearing violence both of the Horse and Chariots. Thirdly, *Moses* confidence in the All-powerfull God was such, by whose spirit, onely wise, he was directed, as he rather made choice to leave the glory of his deliverance and victory to Almighty God, than either by an escape the next way, or by the strength of his multitude, consisting of 600000. men, to call the successe upon his own understanding, wife conduction, or valour. The third day he marched with a double pace from *Etham* towards the Valley of *Pihacheroth*, 16. miles distant; and late down between two ledges of Mountains adjoining to the Red Sea, to wit, the Mountains of *Etham* on the North, and *Balsazephon* towards the South; the same which *Orosius* calleth *Climax*: on the top whereof there stood a Temple dedicated to *Baal*. And, as *Phagins* noteth, the word so compounded, is as much to say, as, *Dominus specule, five custodie*; Lord of the watch tower. For the *Egyptians* believed, or at least made their slaves believe, that if any of them offered to escape that way into *Arabia*, this Idoll would both arrest them, and force them to return to their Lords and Masters. For the *Egyptians* had gods for all turns. *Egyptii diis sacundi*: The *Egyptians* were fruitfull in gods, saith Saint Hierome. But *Moses*, who encamped at the foot of this Mountain with a million of souls, or as others conceive, with two millions, found this Lord of the watch-tower asleep, or out of countenance.

*Climax* is rather so called in respect of a passage up and down, than that it is any proper name.

Now these two passages leading out of Egypt into *Arabia* upon the firm land, *Moses* refused, as well that of *Pelusium* and *Casotis*, the fairest and shortest of all other, in respect of *Judea*, as the other by *Etham*, from which he reflected, for the reasons before remembered, and took the way by the Valley of *Pihacheroth*, between the Mountains, which made a freight entrance towards the Sea. After whom *Pharaoh* made so great speed with his Horse-men and Chariots, as he gave the *Hebrews* no time at all to rest them after so long a march; but gate sight of them, and they of him, even at the very brink and wash of the Sea: inso much as the *Hebrews* being terrified with *Pharaohs* sudden approach, began to despair, and to mutine, at that time when it behooved them most to have taken courage for their own defence; laying it to *Moses* charge, that themselves foresaw those perils in which they were wrapped. And fear, which, saith the Book of Wisdom, is the betraying of those succours which reason offereth, made them both despair in Gods former promises, and to be forgetfull of their own strength and multitudes.

Cap. 17. 11.

§. VIII.

## §. VIII.

Of their passage over the Red Sea: and of the Red Sea it self.

**B**Ut *Moses* who feared nothing but God himself, perswaded them to be confident in his goodness, who hath never abandoned those, that assuredly trust in him; using this comfortable and resolved speech: *Fear not, &c. for the Egyptians whom ye have seen this day, ye shall never see them again. The Lord shall fight for you.* After which *Moses* called on God for succour, received encouragement, and commandment to go on in those words: *Wherefore criest thou unto me? Speak unto the children of Israel that they go forward; and lift thou up thy rod, and stretch out thy hand upon the Sea, and divide it, and let the children of Israel go on dry ground through the midst of the Sea.* *Moses* obeying the voice of God, in the dark of the night finding the sands uncovered, past on towards the other side and coast of *Arabia*: two parts of the night being spent ere he entred the Foord, which it pleased God by a forcible Eastern wind, and by *Moses* rod to prepare. *Pharaoh* followed him even at the heels, finding the same dry ground which *Moses* trod on. Therefore, as it is written: *The Angel of God which went before the Host of Israel, removed, and went behind them; also the pillar of the cloud went from before them, and stood behind them;* which is, that it pleased God therein either by his immediate power, or by the ministry of his Angel, to interpose his defence between the *Hebrews* and their Enemies; to the end that the *Egyptians* might hereby be blinded, in such sort, as they could not pursue *Israel* with any harmfull speed. But in the morning watch, *Moses* seized the other bank of *Arabia* side: and *Pharaoh* (as the dawn of day began to illighten the obscure aire) finding a beginning of the Seas return, halted himself towards his own Coast: But *Moses* stretched forth his hand, and the Sea returned to his force, that is, the Sea moved by the power of God, ran back towards the land with unresistable fury and swiftnesse, and overwhelmed the whole Army of *Pharaoh*, so as not one escaped. For it is written, that *God took off their Chariot wheels*, that is, when the waters began to cover the sands, the *Egyptians* being stricken with fear of death, ran one athwart another, and missing the path by which they had past on after the *Hebrews*, their wheels stuck fast in the mud and quick-sands, and could not be drawn out: the Sea coming against them with supernaturall violence.

*Lyranus* upon *Exod. 14.* and others, following the opinions or old Traditions of the *Hebrews*, conceived, that after *Moses* had by the power of God divided the Red Sea, and that the children of *Israel* were fearfull to enter it, *Aminadab* Prince or Leader of the Tribe of *Juda* first made the adventure; and that therefore was that Tribe ever after honoured above the rest, according to the prophecy of *Jacob, Gen. 49. 8.* *Thy fathers sea shall bow down unto thee.* But *Hierome* upon the 11. of *Hosea* condemns this opinion. And though it be true, that *Juda* had the first place in all their marches in the Desert, and, as we now call it, led the Van-guard, (whereupon it may be inferred, that he alotted the way through the Red Sea) yet that *Moses* himself was the Conductor of *Israel* at that time, it is generally received. For, as it is written in the 77. Psalm: *Thou didst lead thy people like sheep by the hand of Moses and Aaron.*

The *Hebrews* have also another fancy, that the Red Sea was divided into twelve parts, and that every Tribe past over in a path apart, because it is written in the 135. Psalm, according to the vulgar: *Divisit mare rubrum in divisiones; He divided the Red Sea in divisions.* Also that the bottom of the Sea became as a green Field or Pasture. But *Origen*, *Epiphanius*, *Abulenstis*, and *Genebrard*, favouring this conceit, had forgotten to consider, that there were not twelve Pillars, nor twelve Armies of the *Egyptians*. It is written Psalm 77. v. 16. *Thy way is in the Sea; not thy waies:* and in the last Book of *Wisdom*, ver. 7. *In the Red Sea there was a way.*

Now this Sea, through which *Moses* past, and in which *Pharaoh*, otherwise called *Chencres*, perished in the 16. year of his reign, is commonly known by the name of the Red Sea, though the same differ nothing at all in naturall colour from other waters. But as *Philostratus* in his third book noteth, and our selves know by experience, it is of a bluish colour, as other Seas are. It entreteth at a narrow strait between *Arabia* the Happy and *Ethiopia*, or the land of the *Abyssins*: the mouth of the indraught from the Cape, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Possodunus*, to the other Land of *Ethiopia*, hath not above



Sin. Ez. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100. 101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 838. 839. 840. 841. 842. 843. 844. 845. 846. 847. 848. 849. 850. 851. 852. 853. 854. 855. 856. 857. 858. 859. 860. 861. 862. 863. 864. 865. 866. 867. 868. 869. 870. 871. 872. 873. 874. 875. 876. 877. 878. 879. 880. 881. 882. 883. 884. 885. 886. 887. 888. 889. 890. 891. 892. 893. 894. 895. 896. 897. 898. 899. 900. 901. 902. 903. 904. 905. 906. 907. 908. 909. 910. 911. 912. 913. 914. 915. 916. 917. 918. 919. 920. 921. 922. 923. 924. 925. 926. 927. 928. 929. 930. 931. 932. 933. 934. 935. 936. 937. 938. 939. 940. 941. 942. 943. 944. 945. 946. 947. 948. 949. 950. 951. 952. 953. 954. 955. 956. 957. 958. 959. 960. 961. 962. 963. 964. 965. 966. 967. 968. 969. 970. 971. 972. 973. 974. 975. 976. 977. 978. 979. 980. 981. 982. 983. 984. 985. 986. 987. 988. 989. 990. 991. 992. 993. 994. 995. 996. 997. 998. 999. 1000.

A Description of the Land of Canaan, and the way from Golen into Palestine.

PART OF THE MEDITERRANEAN PHOENICIA

THE SANDY DESERT THE DESERT OF ETHIOPIA THE DESERT OF SIN THE RED SEA



six leagues in breadth, and the same, also filled every where with Islands, but afterwards it extendeth it self 58. Leagues from Coast to Coast, and it runneth up between Arabia the Happy, and Arabia Petraea, on one side, and *Aethiopia* and *Egypt* on the other, as far as *Suez*, the uttermost end and indraught of that Sea: where the *Turk* now keepeth his fleet of Gallies. The Cosmographers commonly give it the name of the *Arabian Gulf*: but the North part towards *Suez*, and where *Moses* past, is called *Heropolites*, of the City *Hero*; sometime *Troy*, and of later times *Suez*. *Phynie* calls it *Cambisa*, by which name it was known, saith he, before it was called *Hero* many yeers. The *Arabians* call this Sea towards the North *Apocopa*, *Eccant*, and *Eant*. *Artimidorus* writes it *Elaniticum*: King *Juba* *Elaniticum*, others more properly *Elaniticum*, of the Port and City *Elana*: which the *Septuagint* call *Elath*: *Ptolomy*, *Elana*: *Phynie*, *Lana*: *Josephus*, *Ilana*: and *Marius Niger*, *Atla*: there is also *Ilalah* in *Assyria*, to which *Salmanaſſer* carried the *Israelites* captive, 2 *Kin.* 8. 11. which *Ilalah* in *Assyria* the *Septuagint* call *Elaa*: and in the first of *Chr.* the 5. *Ala*. But as for this Red Sea on the parts thereof, thus diversly named, the *Moors* and *Arabians* (Vassals to the *Turk*) know it by no other appellation, than the Gulf of *Mecca*, after the name of *Mahomets* Town *Mecca*. The *Greeks* write it the Sea *Erythraean*, of a King called *Erythras*, or *Erythraeus*: and because *Erythros* in the *Greek* signifieth Red: hence it is, that being denominated of this *Erythraeus*, the son of *Perſeus* and *Andromeda*, yet it took the name of the Red Sea, as *Quin. Curtius* conjectureth: which *Arianus* and *Strabo* confirm. But it seemeth to me by the view of a Discovery of that Sea in the year 1544. performed by *Stephen Gama*, Viceroy of the East *India* for the King of *Portugal*, that this Sea was so called from a reflection of rednesse, both from the banks, cliffs, and sands of many Islands, and part of the Continent bordering it. For I finde by the report of *Castro*, a principall Commander under *Gama* (which discurbse I gave Master *Richard Hakluyt* to publish) that there is an Island called *Dalagui*, sometime *Leques*, containing in length 25. Leagues, and 12. in breadth; the earth, sands, and cliffs, of which Island, being of a reddish colour, serve for a soile to the waters about it: and make it seem altogether of the same colour. Secondly, the same *Castro* reporteth, that from 24. degrees of *Septentrionall* Latitude, to 27. (which make in length of Coast 180. miles, lying as it doth Northerly and Southerly) all the cliffs and banks are of red earth or stone, which by reflection of the Sun-beams, give a kind of reddish lustre to the waters. Thirdly, those *Portugals* report, and we know it by many testimonies, that there are found in the bottom of this Sea towards the shore, great abundance of red stones, on which the greatest store of Corall grows, which is carried into most parts of *Europe*, and elsewhere. There are also on the Islands of this Sea many red Trees, saith *Strabo*, and those growing under water may also be a cause of such a colour. Of these appearances of rednesse by the shadows of these stones, sands, earth, and cliffs, I suppose that it first took the name of the Red Sea, because in so many places it seemeth to be such: which *Johannes Barros* in his second *Decade*, eighth Book and first Chapter, confirmeth.

The breadth of this Sea from *Elana*, or *Ezion-Gaber* adjoining, now *Toro*, called by the ancient Cosmographers *Sinus Elaniticus*, which washeth the banks of *Madian* or *Midian*, is for 16. or 17. Leagues together, along Northward towards *Suez*, some 3. Leagues, or nine *English* miles over, and from this Port of *Toro* to *Suez*, and the end of this Sea, it is in length about 28. Leagues, of which the first 26. have nine miles breadth, as aforesaid, and afterward the lands both from *Egypt* and *Arabia*, thrust themselves into the Sea, and strengthen it so fast, as for six miles together it is not above three miles over; from thence upward the land on *Egypt* side, falleth away, and makes a kind of Bay: of Cove for some ten miles together, after which the land grows upon the Sea again, and so binds it into the very end thereof, at four miles breadth, or thereabout, in which tract it was that *Moses* past it over, though others would have it to be over against *Elana* or *Toro*, but without judgement: for from *Ramases* to *Pithachereth* and *Baalzephon*, there is not above 30. miles interjacent, or 35. miles at most, which *Moses* past over in three daies: and between the land of *Egypt*, opposite to *Elana* or *Toro*, the distance is above 80. miles. For *Ramases*, to which City *Moses* came (being the Metropolis of *Goshen*) when he left *Pharaoh* at *Zeon*, and took his last leave, standeth in 30. degrees five minutes of *Septentrionall* Latitude; and *Migdol*, or the Valley of *Pithachereth*, at the foot of the Mountain *Climax*, or *Baalzephon*, in nine and twenty and a half, which make a difference of five and thirty *English* miles, the way lying in effect North and South.

## §. IX.

*That the passage through the Red Sea was miraculous, and not a low ebbe.*

**T**He Egyptians, and of them the Memphites, and other Heathen Writers, who in hatred of the Hebrewes have objected that *Moses* past over the Red Sea at a low ebbe, upon a great spring-tyde, and that *Pharaoh*, conducted more by fury than discretion, pursued him so far, as before he could recover the coast of *Egypt*, he was over-taken by the flood, and therein perished; did not well consider the nature of this place with other circumstances. For, not to borrow strength from that part of the Scriptures, which makes it plaine, that the Waters were divided, and that God wrought this miracle by an Easterly winde, and by the hand and rod of *Moses* (which authority comes that beleeve not therein, perswadeth nothing) I say, that by the same naturall reason unto which they fastned themselves, it is made manifest, that had there been no other working power from above, or assistance given from God himself to *Moses* and the children of *Israel*, than ordinary and casual, then could not *Pharaoh* and all his Army have perished in that pursuit.

For wheresoever there is any ebbing of the Sea in any gulf, or indraught, there doe the waters fall away from the Land, and runne downwards toward the Ocean, leaving all that part towards the Land as far as the Sea can ebbe, or fall off, to be dry Land. Now *Moses* entring the Sea at *Migdol* under *Baalzephon* (if he had taken the advantage and opportunity of the tide) must have left all that end of the Red Sea towards *Suez*, on his left hand dry and uncovered. For if a passage were made by falling away of the water ten or twelve miles farther into the Sea than *Suez*, and between it and where *Moses* past, who entred the same so far below it, and towards the body of the same Sea: it followeth then, that if all that part of the Sleeve or Strait, had bin by the ebbs of spring-tide discovered, when *Pharaoh* found the flood increasing, he needed not to have returned by the same way toward *Egypt* side, but might have gone on in his returne before the tide, on his right hand: and so taken ground again at the end of that Sea, at *Suez* if self, or elsewhere. But the Scriptures do truly witness the contrary: that is, That the Sea did not fall away from the Land, as naturally it doth, but that *Moses* past on between two Seas, and that the waters were divided. Otherwise *Pharaoh* by any returne of waters could not have perished, as he did: and therefore the effects of that great Armes destruction, prove the cause to have been a power above nature, and the miraculous worke of God himself. Again, those words of the Scriptures, that *God caused the Sea to run back by a strong East-wind*, doe rather prove the miracle, then that thereby was caused an ebbe more than ordinary: for that Sea did not lye East and West, but, in effect, North and South. And it must have beene a West and North-west winde, that must have driven those waters away through their proper Channels, and to the South-east into the Sea. But the East winde blew athwart the Sea, and cut it asunder: so as one part fell back towards the South and main body thereof, the other part remained towards *Suez*, and the North. Which being unknowne to *Pharaoh*: while he was checkt by that Sea which used in all times before to ebbe away, the flood prest him and over-whelmed him. Thirdly, seeing *Josephus* avoweth, that *Moses* was not onely of excellent judgement generally, but also, to great a Captain, as he over-threw the *Ethiopians* in battell, being employed by *Pharaoh*, and wan divers Cities seeming impregnable: it were barbarous to condemn him of this grossness, and distraction: that rather than he would have endured the hardness of a Mountainous passage at hand (had not God commanded him to take that way, and foretold him of the honour which he would there win upon *Pharaoh*) he would have trusted to the advantage of an ebbing water. For he knew not the contrary, but that *Pharaoh* might have found him, and prest him, as well when it flowed as when it ebbed, as it seemeth he did. For the people, beholding *Pharaohs* approach, cried out against *Moses*, and despaired altogether of their safety: and when *Moses* prayed unto God for help, he was answered by God: *Wherefore criest thou unto me? Speak unto the children of Israel that they go forward, and lift up thy rod, and stretch out thy hand upon the Sea, and divide it*: which proves that there was not at the time of *Pharaohs* approach any ebbe at all; but that God did disperse and cut through the weight of waters, by a strong East-winde, whereby the Sands

discovered themselves between the sea on the left hand toward *Suez*, from whence the waters moved not, and the sea which was towards the South on the right hand, so that the waters were a wall unto them on the right hand, and on the left hand, that is, the waters so defended them on both sides, as the Egyptians could onely follow them in the same path, not that the waters stood upright as walls do, as some of the School-men have fancied. For had *Pharaoh* and the Egyptians perceived any such buildings in the sea, they would soon have quitted the chase and pursuit of *Israel*. Furthermore, there is no man of judgement that can think, that *Pharaoh* and the Egyptians, who then excelled all Nations in the observations of heavenly Motions, could be ignorant of the fluxes and refluxes of the sea, in his own Countrey, on his own coast, and in his own most traded and frequented Ports and Havens; and wherein, his people having had so many hundreds of years experience of the tides, he could not be caught, as he was, through ignorance, nor by any foreknown or naturall accident, but by Gods powerfull hand onely; which then falleth most heavily on all men, when looking through no other spectacle but their own prosperity, they least discern it coming, and least fear it. Lastly, if the Army of the Egyptians had been overtaken by the ordinary return of the flood before they could recover their own coast; their bodies drowned would have been carried with the flood which runneth up to *Suez*, and to the end of that sea, and not have been cast alhore on that coast of *Arabia* where *Moses* landed, to wit, upon the sea-bank over against *Baalzephon*, on *Arabia* side: where it was that the *Israelites* saw their dead bodies, and not at the end of the Red Sea, to which place the ordinary flood would have carried them: Which flood doth not any where cross the Channel, and runneth athwart it, as it must have done from *Egypt* side to *Arabia*, to have cast the bodies there; but it keeps the naturall course towards the end of that sea; and to which their carcasses should have been carried, if the work had not been supernaturall and miraculous. *Apollonius* in the lives of the Fathers affirmeth, that those of the Egyptians which stayed in the Countrey, and did not follow *Pharaoh* in the pursuit of *Israel*, did ever after honour those Beasts, Birds, Plants, or other creatures, about which they were buied at the time of *Pharaohs* destruction: as he that was then labouring in his garden, made a god of that Plant or Root about which he was occupied: and so of the rest. But how those multitudes of gods were erected among them, a more probable reason shall be given elsewhere. *Orestes*, in his first Book and tenth Chapter against the Pagans, tells us, that in his time, who lived some 400. years after *Christ*, the prints of *Pharaohs* Chariot wheels, were to be seen at a low water on the Egyptian sands: and though they were sometime defaced by wind and weather, yet soon after they appeared again. But herof I leave every man to his own belief.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of the journeying of the Israelites from the Red Sea, to the place where the Law was given them: with a discourse of Laws.*

## §. I.

*A transition, by way of recapitulation of some things touching Chronologie: with a continuance of the story, untill the Amalekites met with the Israelites.*

**B**Ut to go on with the story of *Israel*, in this sort I collect the times. *Moses* was born in the year of the World, 2434. *Saphrus* then governing *Assyria*; *Orthopolis*, *Sycionia* or *Peloponnesus*; *Crisosus*, the *Argives*; *Orus*, *Egypt*; and *Dencalion*, *Attica*, *Thessaly*. He fled into *Midian*, when he had lived forty yeers, in the year of the World, 2474. and two yeers after was *Caleb* born. He returned by the commandment and ordinance of God into *Egypt*, and wrought his miracles in the fields of *Zaan*, in the year 2514. the last moneth of that year. On the 14. day of the first

Pag. 254.

Exod. 12.  
Num. 33.

Exod. 13.

Num. 33.  
Exod. 14.  
Num. 33.  
Exod. 14.

Num. 33.

Exod. 15.  
Num. 33.W. U. Tyr. l. 11.  
cap. 16.

Exod. 16.

Exod. 16.

first Hebrew moneth *Abib*, or the 15. of that moneth, beginning the day (as they) at Sun-setting, in the year of the World, 2514. was the celebration of the *Paschever*: and in the dead of the night of the same day were all the first-born slain through *Egypt*, or in all those parts where the *Hebrews* inhabited not. The 15. day of the first moneth of the *Hebrews* called *Abib*, being about the beginning of the year of the World, 2514. *Moses* with the children of *Israel* removed from the generall Assembly at *Rameses*, and marched to *Succoth*.

And departing thence, they made their third Station at *Etham*: and journeying from *Etham*, they encamped in the Valley of *Pihacheroth*, or *Migdol*, under the mountain *Baal-zephon*; and in the same night after midnight, they palt the *Red Sea*: *Pharaoh* and his Army perishing in their return, about the first dawn of the day. *Moses* having recovered the banks of *Arabia*, gave thanks unto God, for the delivery of *Israel*; and making no stay on that coast, entered the Desarts of *Arabia Petraea*, called *Sur*. But finding no water in that passage, he incamped at *Marah*, in the Desert of *Etham*, which in *Exod.* 15. 22. is also called *Sur*; 25. miles from the Sea: where the children of *Israel*, pelt with extreme thirst, murmured against *Moses* the second time; first, at *Pharaohs* approach in *Pihacheroth*, and now in *Arabia*. But *Moses* taking the branches of a tree, growing near a Lake of bitter water, and casting the same thereinto, made the same sweet: a plain type and figure of our Saviour; who upon the tree of the Cross changed the bitterness of everlasting death into the sweetness of eternal life. *Plinie* remembers these bitter Fountains in his sixth Book and 29. Chapter. From whence to *Delta* in *Egypt*, *Sesostris* first, *Darius* after him, and lastly, *Proton* the second, began to cut an artificiall river, thereby by boats and small shipping to trade and navigate the *Red Sea*, from the great Cities upon *Nilus*. From *Marah* he removed to *Elim*, the sixth Mansion, a march of eight miles: where finding twelve Fountains of sweet water, and three-score and ten Palm-trees, he rested divers dayes.

Whether this *Helim* were the name of a Town or City in *Moses* time, I cannot affirm. And yet the scarcity of waters in that Region was such, as *Helim*, which had twelve Fountains, could hardly be left unpeopled. *William*, Archbishop of *Tyre*, in his History of the *Holy War*, found at *Helim* the ruines of a great and ancient City. And this time as *Baldwin* the first palt that way into *Egypt*. *Ingressus* (saith he) *Helim* Civitatem antiquissimam, populo Israelitico aliquando familiarem: ad quam cum pervenisset, loci illius incolae, Regis adventu praecognito, naviculam ingredientes, in mare vicinum se contulerunt; Entering *Helim* a very ancient City, well known sometime to the people of *Israel*; whither when he came, the inhabitants, forewarned of the Kings approach, took boat, and shifted themselves into the sea lying near them. From *Elim* he returned again towards the South, and late down by the banks of the *Red Sea*: the seventh Mansion. For it seemeth that he had knowledge of *Amalech*, who repaired to resist his passage through that part of *Arabia*. And *Moses*, who had not as yet trained those of the *Hebrews*, appointed to bear arms: nor assured the mindes of the rest, who encountering with the least misery, were more apt to return to their quiet slavery, than either to endure the wars and perils which every where accompanied them in that passage, or at this time to undertake or sustain so dangerous an enemy: he therefore made stay at this Mansion untill the fifteenth of this second moneth called *Zim*, or *Jiar*: and made the eighth Mansion in the Desert of *Zim*; where the children of *Israel* mutined against *Moses* the third time, having want of food. In the sixteenth Chapter of *Exodus*, *Moses* omitteth this retreat from *Elim* to the *Red Sea*, but in the collection of every severall incamping, in the 33. of *Numbers*, it is set down.

Here it pleased God to fend to many flights of Quails, as all the Countrie about their incamping was covered with them. The morning following it also rained *Manna*, being the sixteenth of their moneth, which served them in stead of bread. For now was the store consumed which the people carried with them out of *Egypt*. And though they had great numbers of cattell and sheep among them, yet it seemeth that they durst not feed themselves with many of those: but reserved them, both for the milk to relieve the children withall, and for breed to store themselves when they came to the Land promised.

From hence towards *Raphidim* they made two removes of twenty miles: the

to *Daphca*, the other to *Alur*, distant from *Raphidim* six miles. Here being again pelt with want of water, they murmured the fourth time, and repented them of their departure from *Egypt*, where they rather contented themselves to be fed and beaten after the manner of beasts, than to suffer a casual and sometime necessary want, and to undergo the hazzards and travells which every manly mind seeketh after, for the love of God, and their own freedoms. But *Moses* with the same rock which he divided the Sea withall, in the sight of the *Elders* of *Israel* brought waters out of the rock, wherewith the whole multitude were satisfied. Exod. 17.

## §. II.

Of the *Amalekites*, *Madianites*, and *Kenites*, upon occasion of the battell with the *Amalekites*, and *Jethro's* coming: who being a *Kenite*, was Priest of *Madian*.

And while *Moses* incamped in this place, the *Amalekites*, who had knowledge of his approach, and ghesied that he meant to lead the children of *Israel* through their Countrie (which being barren of it selfe, would be utterly waited by to great a multitude of people and cattell) thought it most for their advantage to set upon them at *Raphidim*: where the want of water, and all other things needfull for the life of man, infeebled them. On the other side, *Moses* perceiving their resolutions, gave charge to *Jethro* to draw out a sufficient number of the ablest *Hebrews*, to encounter *Amalech*: Between whom and *Israel* the victory remained doubtful, for the most part of the day: the *Hebrews* and *Amalekites* contending with equal hopes and repulses for many hours. And had not the strength of *Moses* prayers to God been of far greater force, and more prevalent, than all resistance and attempt made by the bodies of men; that valiant and warlike Nation had greatly endangered the whole enterprife. For those bodies which were unacquainted with scarcity of food, and those mindes whom a servile education hath dulled, being beaten, and despaired in their first attempts, will hardly, or never be brought again to hazzard themselves. Exod. 17.

After this victory, *Jethro* repaired to *Moses*, bringing with him *Moses* his wife, and his two sons, which either *Jethro* forbore to conduct, or *Moses* to receive, till he had by this overthrow of *Amalech* the better assured himself of that part of *Arabia*. For it is written in *Exod.* 18. 1. When *Jethro* the Priest of *Madian*, *Moses* father in law; heard all that God had done for *Moses*, &c. of which, the last deed, to wit, the overthrow of *Amalech*, gave *Jethro* courage and assurance, he then repaired to his son in law *Moses*, at *Sinai*; where amongst other things, he advised *Moses* to appoint Judges and other Officers over *Israel*: being himself unable to give order in all causes and controversies, among so many thousands of people, full of discontentment and private controversy.

This *Jethro*, although he dwelt amongst the *Madianites*; yet he was by nation a *Kenite*, as in the fourth of *Judges*, ver. 11. & 17. it is manifest: where it is written, Now Heber the *Kenite*, which was of the children of *Hobab*, to wit, the son of *Jethro*, the father in law of *Moses*, was departed from the *Kenites*, and pitched his tents untill the Plain of *Zaanaim*, which is by *Kadesh*. Likewise in the first of *Sammuel*, *Saul* commanded the *Kenites* to depart from among the *Amalekites*, lest he should destroy them with the *Amalekites*. For the *Kenites* inhabited the mountains of *Sim Kadesh*: and the *Amalekites* dwelt in the Plains, according to the saying of *Balaam*, speaking of the *Kenites*: Strong is thy dwelling place, and thou hast put thy nest in the rock. And that *Saul* spared this Nation, he giveth for cause, that they shewed mercy to all the children of *Israel*, when they came up from *Egypt*: For these *Kenites* were a Nation of the *Madianites*, and the *Madianites* were of the issues of *Madian*; one of the six sons which *Abraham* begat on *Keturah*: and might also take that name of *Kenites* from *Keturah*, of whom they descended by the mother, who (as it seemeth) kept the knowledge of the true God among them, which they received from their parent *Abraham*. For *Moses*, when he fled out of *Egypt* into *Madian*, and married the daughter of *Jethro*, would not (had he found them idolaters) have made *Jethro's* daughter the mother of his children. And although the *Kenites* are named amongst those Nations, which God promised, that the seed of *Abraham* should root out, and inherit their lands; yet it cannot be meant by these, who are descended from *Abraham* himself: but by some other Nation; bearing the



Also private contracts among Merchants and other Trade-men, do often put on the name of laws. But law commonly and properly, is taken for a right rule, prescribing a necessary mean, for the good of a Common-wealth, or Civill Communitie. The rest, to wit, the commandments of Tyrants, &c. which have not the common good for their end, but being *leges iniquæ*, are by Thomas called *violentiæ magis quam leges*; rather *compulsions than laws*: And whatsoever is not just, S. Augustine doth not allow for laws, howsoever established: for he calls them *iniqua hominum constituta, que nec jura dicenda, nec putanda sunt*; the unjust constitutions of men, which are neither to be termed nor thought laws. For, saith Aristotle, *Legalia iusta sunt factiva, & conservativa felicitatis*; Just laws are the workers and preservers of happiness: because by them we are directed *ad vitam in quietam*, to a quiet life, according to Cicero: Yea, to life everlasting, according to the Scriptures. For the end of the Law, saith Plato, is God and his worship: *Finis legis Deus & cultus ejus*. Lex, or the Law, is so called by the Latines, à *legendo*, or *à ligando*, of reading, or binding: *Leges quia lætæ & ad populum lætæ*, saith Varro; For after Laws were written and published, all men might read them, and behold in them whereto they were bound. The other Etymology, à *ligando*, is no lesse agreeable with the nature of a Law: whence in the Scripture it is called also a yoke, and a band: as *confrangerunt jugum, diruperunt vincula*: they have broken the yoke, they have broken the bands. And in the second Psalm, *Dirumpamus vincula eorum, & projiciamus à nobis funes ipsorum*; Let us break their bands in sunder, and cast away their cords from us.

Arist. Ethic. 5. 49. 5.

Plato in Dial. 1. de Leg.

Hierem. 5. 5.

Psal. 2.

The Covenant is called, because of the conditional promises of God; and because of Gods peoples voluntary submission of themselves unto it: for which word the Septuagint, and the Epistle to the Hebrews, use the word *διαθήκη*, a Testament, or last Will: which name it hath, because it is not otherwise effectual for our salvation, but in respect of the death of the Testator; for without the death of the Testator, the Testament is of no force, as Heb. 9. 17. it is said, *Testamentum in mortuis ratum est*. The Hebrews call the law *torah*, of teaching, because every man is thereby taught his duty, both to God and Men. The Greeks call it *Nómos*, of distributing, because it distributeth to every man his own due; the power of the law is the power of God: Justice being an attribute proper unto God himself. *Imperium legis, imperium Dei est*; The reign of the law, is the reign of God.

Law in general is thus defined by the Philosophers: *Lex est vitæ regula, præcipientque sunt sequenda, & que fugienda*; Law is the rule of life, commanding what to follow, and what to shun: or *Lex est omnium divinarum & humanarum rerum Regina*; Law is the Queen or Princess of things both humane and divine. But this description is grounded upon the opinion of inevitable fate. Law is the very wisdom of Nature: the reason and understanding of the prudent: and the rule of right and wrong. For as a right line is called, *Index sui & curvi*, the demonstration of it self, and of the crooked: so is the law, the judge and measure of right and wrong.

M. Hooker calls the Law a directive rule to goodnesse of operation: and though law, as touching the substance and essence, consist in understanding: *Concludit tamen aliquid voluntatis*; yet it comprehends the act of our will. The word *jus* is also diversely taken, as sometime for the matter of the law, and for common right: sometime for the law it self as *jus civile*, or *jus gentium*. Isidore distinguisheth the two general words, *jus* and *fas*: whereof *jus*, saith he, hath reference to men, *Fas* to God. *Fas lex divina, jus lex humana*. To go over another mans field, is permitted by Gods law, not by mans; and therefore in a thing out of controversie, Virgil used both these words: as, *Fas & jura loquor*, God and men permit.

Isid. Etym.

Deut. 1. 17. 2 Chron. 19. 6.

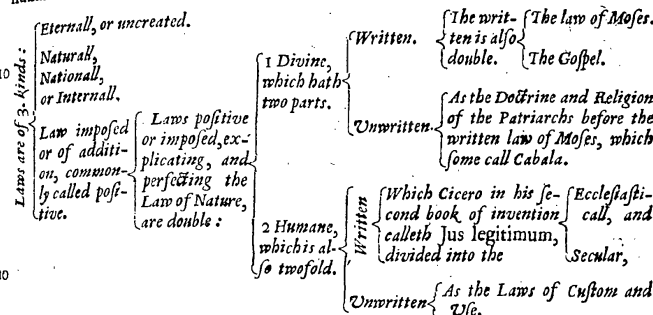
Exod. 22. 15. 1 Reg. 2. 45.

The word *jus*, or Right, is derived or taken from the old substantive Noun *jussus*, a bidding or commandment: or perhaps from the Greek *ζωω*, which is the name of Jupiter, or of the Latine genitive case *Jovis*; because, as the Scripture speaks, the judgement is Gods. For as it is certain that *jus-jurandum* came of *Jovis-jurandum*, (for so we find it written in *Nomus* out of the ancient, in which sense the Scripture calls it *juramentum Jovis*) so also we may say, that *jus* came of *Jovis*, quia *Jovis est*: because as God is the Author and Pattern, and Maintainer of right, so also in his Vicegerents, the Magistrates, he is the Pronouncer and Executor of right. Of this *jus* the just are denominated, *jussus à jure*, and *justitia à jussu*: The right gives name to the righteous; and justice taketh name from the just.

## §. V.

Of the definition of Laws, and of the Law eternall.

But because laws are manifold, and that every kind hath a proper and peculiar definition, it agreeth with order, first to divide and distinguish them. I mean those sorts of laws, from whence all other particulars are drawn: leaving the individuals of humane laws to their infinitè and horrible confusion.



The law eternall is thus defined by Thomas. *Lex eterna est æternus divine sapientiæ conceptus, secundum quod ordinatur ad gubernationem rerum ab ipso præcogitatum*; The eternall law is the eternall conceit of Gods wisdom as it is referred to the government of things foreknown by himself. Or, *Lex eterna est summa atque eterna ratio divine sapientiæ: quatenus res omnes ad destinatos fines ita dirigit, ut illis juxta conditionem ipsarum modum aliquem necessitate adferat*; It is the high and eternall reason of divine sapience: because it directs all things in such sort to their proper ends, imposing a kind of necessity, according to their severall natures, or conditions. Now the difference lieth in this: That as the same divine understanding directs all these to their proper ends; so it is called providence: but as it imposeth a necessity according to the nature of all things which it directs, so it is called a law.

Of this eternall law Cicero took knowledge, when in his book of Laws, he wrote in this manner: *Erat ratio perfecta, rerum natura, & ad rectè faciendum impellens & à dilecto vocans: que non tum incipit lex esse cum scripta est, sed tum cum orta est. Orta autem simul est cum mente divina: quæ mox lex vera atque princeps, apta adjuvendum & ad vetandum, ratio est rectæ summi Jovis*; That perfect reason and nature of things, encouraging or impelling to rightfull actions, and calling us back from evil, did not (saith he) then begin to be a law when it was written, but when it had being. Being and beginning it had together with divine understanding, and therefore a true law, and a fit Princeps to command and forbid, is the right reason of the most high God. This eternall law (if we consider it in God, or as God) is alwayes one and the same; the nature of God being most simple: but as it is referred to divers objects, so the reason of man finds it divers and manifold. It also seemeth one law in respect of things necessary, as the motions of the heavens, stability of the earth, &c. but it appeareth otherwise to things contingent: another law to men, another to other creatures, having life, and to all those that be inanimate.

By this eternall law all things are directed, as by the counsell and providence of God: from this Law all laws are derived, as from the rule universall: and thereto referred, as the operation of the second to the first.

The eternall, and the divine law, differ onely in consideration; the eternall directing more largely: as well every creature, to their proper and naturall ends, as it doth man to his supernaturall: but the divine law to a supernaturall end onely: the naturall law is thence derived, but an effect of the eternall: as it were a stream from the fountain.

The Law humane or temporall is also thence drawn: in that it hath the form of right reason: from which if it differ, it is then *impositio iniqua*, a wicked imposition: and onely borroweth the name of a law.

To this eternall law all things are subjected, as well Angels and Men, as all other creatures,



creatures, or things created; whether necessary or contingent, naturall or morall, and humane. For the Law eternall runneth through all the universall, and therefore it is the law also of things which are simple, naturall and inanimate.

Hence it is, that all things created are commanded to praise God their Creator and Directour: as *Praise him all ye his Angels: praise him Sun and Moon, all bright Stars: heavens of heavens, for he hath established them for ever and ever. He hath made an ordinance which shall not passe: Praise ye the Lord from the earth ye Dragons and all Deeps: Fire and haile, snow and vapours, stormy winds, which execute his word: mountains and hills, fruitful trees and all Cedars: Beasts, and all Cattle, &c.* Now as the reasonable creatures are by this eternall law bound, by the glory and felicity proposed unto them (beatitude being both the attractive, and the end) so all other naturall things and creatures, have in themselves, and in their own natures, an obedience formall to it, without any proper intention, known cause, or end proposed. For beasts are led by sense, and naturall instinct: things without life by their created form, or formall appetites, as that which is heavy to fall downward: things light to mount upward, &c. and fire to heat whatsoever is apposed. This kinde of working, the Aristotelians ascribe to common nature: others to fate; a difference used in terms only; it being no other than Gods generall providence: for as it is truly said of God, that he is *omnia super omnia*: so are all things which appear in themselves thence derived: there-under subjected: thence-from by his eternall law and providence directed, even from the greatest to the least of his creatures, in heaven and in earth.

The Schoolmen are very curious and ample in the consideration of these laws: and in discourse of the profit, and of the matter, and object of the eternall law. But as the profit is manifest in the good of all creatures, who have thence-from, either reason, sense, vegetation, or appetition, to condukt them: so is the object and matter of the law, the whole creature. For according to *S. Augustine, Lex eterna est, qua iustitia est, et omnia sunt ordinatissima*; The law eternall is that, whereby it is just, th it all things should be disposed in the best and goodliest order.

Lastly, it is disputed, whether the eternall law be immutable, yea or no? But the resolution is, that it changeth not; for which *S. Augustine* useth a sufficient argument in his first Book of *Free-will*, the sixth Chapter. For the law of *Moses* which had a time prefixed, was eternally by God ordained to last untill the time of the Pedagogie of Gods people, or introduction to Christ should be expired; which time of expiration some think our Saviour noted to be come, when on the Crosse he said, *Consummatum est*. But I rather think these words of our Saviour to have no other signification, than that now the prophetic of their giving him Vinegar to drink was fulfilled. For so Saint *John* expounds it, when he saith *v. 28. That Christ seeing all (other) things to be fulfilled, Ut consummaretur Scriptura, That the Scripture in this also might be fulfilled, said, I thirst*: though I deny not, but at the same time also the date of the law was expired, to wit, of the law ceremoniall, and of so much of the iudiciall, as appertained peculiarly to the Jews; and agreeth not with the law of the new Testament and Gospel of Christ. For the immutable law of God, though prescribing things mutable, is not therefore changed in it self; but the things prescribed, change according to this eternall ordinance, of which the *Wisdom of Solomon*, and being one she can do all things, and remaining in her self reneweth all.

## §. VI.

## Of the Law of nature.

OF the law of Nature as it is taken in generall, I find no definition among the School-men: only as it is considered in man, it is called the impression of divine light, and a participation of the eternall law in the reasonable creature. *Lex naturalis est impressio divini luminis in nobis, & participatio legis eterne in rationali creatura.* *Optina* defines the naturall law to be the same which nature hath taught all living creatures: *juris naturalis est quod Natura omnia animalia docuit*; and he afterward addeth, *Jus ipsum non humani generis proprium, sed omnium animalium quae terra marique nascuntur, aequum quoque commune est*; The law of nature is not proper to man alone, but the same is common to all living creatures, as well to birds, as to those which the Land and Sea produce.

But this definition is not generall, but of the naturall Law in things of life.

The Law of nature in generall, I take to be that disposition, instinct, and formall quality, which God in his eternall providence hath given and imprinted in the nature of every creature, animate, and inanimate. And as it is *divinum lumen* in men, enlightning our formall reason; so is it more than sense in Beasts; and more than vegetation in plants. For it is not sense alone in Beasts, which teacheth them at first sight, and without experience or instruction, to flee from the enemies of their lives: seeing that Bulls and Horses appear unto the sense more fearfull and terrible, than the least kind of dogs; and yet the Hare and Deer feedeth by the one, and flieth from the other, yea, though by them never seen before, and that as soon as they fall from their Dams. Neither is it sense which hath taught other Beasts to provide for winter, Birds to build their nests, high or low, according to the tempestuous or quiet seasons: or the Birds of *India*, to make their nests on the smallest twigs which hang over Rivers, and not on any other part of the tree, or elsewhere: to save their eggs and young ones from the Monkeys, and other Beasts, whose weight such a twig will not bear: and which would fear to fall into the water. The instances in this kinde are exceeding many which may be given. Neither is it out of the vegetable or growing nature of plants, that some trees, as the female of the *Palmito*, will not bear any fruit except the male grow in sight. But this they do by that Law, which the infinite and unsearchable wisdom of God had in all eternity provided for them, and for every nature created. In man this Law is double, corrupt, and incorrupt: corrupt, where the reason of man hath made it self subject, and a Vassall to passions, and affections brutall: and incorrupt, where time and custome hath bred in men a new nature, which also, as is aforesaid, is a kinde of Law. For it was not by the Law of Nature incorrupt, which *S. Augustine* calleth the law of reason, but by a nature blinded and corrupted, that the *Germans* did anciently allow of theft: and that other Nations were by Law constrained to become Idolaters; that by the Laws of *Lycurgus* was permitted to men to use one anothers wife, and to the women, to choosethem others besides their husbands, to beget them with child: which law in those parts hath lasted long, and is not forgotten to this day.

The *Scythians*, and the people of both *Indies*, hold it lawfull to bury with them the best beloved wives: as also they have many other customs remembered by *G. Valentia*, against nature and right reason.

And I know not from what authority it is, that these Laws some men avow to be naturall: except it be of this corrupt nature, as (among others) to pay guile with guile: to become faithlesse among the faithlesse: to provide for our selves by another mans destruction: that injury is not done to him that is willing: to destroy those whom we fear, and the like. For taking the definition of naturall laws, either out of *S. Augustine*, or *Aquinas*, (the one calling it the impression of divine light; the other, the dictate, or sentence of *pratique reason*) the same can teach us, or incline us to no other thing, than to the exercise of Justice and uprightness: and not to offer or perform any thing toward others, save that which we would be content should be offered or performed toward ourselves. For such is the Law of nature to the minde, as the eye is to the body; and that which, according to *David*, sheweth us good, that is, the observation of those things which lead us thereby to our last end; which is eternall life; though of themselves not sufficient without faith and grace.

Now, that which is truly and properly the law of Nature, where the corruption is not taken for the law, is, as aforesaid, the impression of Gods divine light in men, & a participation of the law increased and eternal. For without any law written, the right reason and understanding, which God hath given us, are abilities within our selves, sufficient to give us knowledge of the good and evil, which by our gratitude to God and distribution of right to men, or by the contrary, we prepare and purchase for our selves. For when the *Gentiles* (saith *S. Paul*) which have not the law, do by nature those things contained in the law: they having not the law, are a law unto themselves. Now, to love God by whom we are, and to do the same right unto all men, which we desire should be done unto us, is an effect of the purest reason: in whose highest Turrets, the quiet of conscience hath made her resting place, and habitation; In arce altissima rationis quies habitat. Therefore the *Gentiles* (saith *S. Paul*) which shew the effects of the law written in their hearts, have their consciences for a witnesse of those effects: and the reprobate their thoughts to accuse them.

And it is most true, that whosoever is not a law unto himself (while he hopeth to abuse the world by the advantage of hypocrisie) worketh nothing else, but the betraying of his own soule, by crafty unrighteousnesse, purchasing eternall perdition. For it helpeth us not to hide our corrupt hearts from the worlds eye, seeing from him, who is an infinite eye, we cannot hide them: some Garlands we may gather in this May-game of the world, *Sed flos ille, dum loquimur, arecit; Those flowers wither, while we discourse of their colours, or are in gathering them.* That we should therefore inhabit and dwell within our selves, and become fearfull witnesses of our secret evils, did that reverend Philosopher Pythagoras teach in this golden precept: *Nil turpe committas, neque coram aliis, neque tecum; maxime omnium verere teipsum; Commit nothing foul or dishonourable, neither to be known to others, nor to thine own heart: but above all men reverence thine own conscience.* And this may be a precept of nature and right reason: by which law, men, and all creatures, and bodies are inclined to those operations, which are answerable to their own form; as fire to give heat. Now, as the reasonable minde is the form of man, so is he aptly moved to those things which his proper form presenteth unto him: to wit, to that which right reason offereth; and the acts of right reason, are the acts of vertue: and in the breach of the rules of this reason, is man least excusable: as being a reasonable creature. For all else, both sensitive, growing, and inanimate, obey the law which God imposed on them at their first creation.

The Earth performeth her office, according to the law of God in nature: for it bringeth forth the bud of the herb which feedeth feed, &c. and the beast, which liveth thereon. He gave a law to the Seas, and commanded them to keep their bounds: which they obey. He made a decree for the rain, and a way for the lightning of the thunders. He caused the Sun to move, and to give light, and to serve for signes and for seasons. Were these as rebellious as man, for whose sake they were created, or did they once break the law of their natures and forms: the whole world would then perish, and all return to the first Chaos, darknesse, and confusion.

By this naturall law, or law of humane reason, did Cain perceive his own wickednesse and offence, in the murder of Abel: for he not onely feared the displeasure of God, but the revenge of men: it being written in his reason, that whatsoever he performed towards others, the same by others might be done unto him again. And that this judgement of well and evill doing, was put into our natures by God, and his eternall Law, before the law written, Moses in the person of God witnesseth, *Gen. 4. If thou do well, shalt thou not be accepted? and if thou do not well, sin lieth at thy doore.*

The Schoolmen are large also in this question of the naturall law: the same being opened amply by Reinerius, Antonius, and Valentia. But it is not my purpose to write a Volume of this subject.

But this law, which Thomas Aquinas calleth an act of reason taken properly; and nota habit, as it is an evident naturall judgement of practick reason: they divide into indemonstrable, or needing no demonstration (as that good is to be followed, and evill eschewed) and demonstrable, which is evidently proved out of higher and more universall propositions. Again, as it answereth the naturall appetite, prescribing things to be desired as good, or to be avoided as evill (as of the first, to desire to live, and to satisfie hunger, &c. and of the second, to eschew pains, sorrow, and death) in this consideration they divide it, according to the divers kinds of appetites that are in us. For in every man there are three sorts of appetites, which answer the three degrees of naturall law. The first is, to be that which we are; in which is comprehended the desire, both to live, and to preserve our being and life, also the desire of illue, with care to provide for them: for the Father after his death, lives in his children; and therefore the desire of life comprehends the desire of children. And to these appetites are referred the first indemonstrable lawes of nature, for the most part. For it needs no proof, that all creatures should desire to be, to live, and to be defended, and to live in their issue, when they cannot in themselves. And as man is a being, *Ens* or *Res*: so he doth desire good, and shun evill. For it is common to all things, to desire things agreeable to their own natures, which is, to desire their owne good. And so is good defined by Aristotle, to be that which all desire. Which definition Basil upon the 44 Psalm provoveth: *Redd.*

*Quidem bonum definitur, quod omnia appetunt; Rightly have some men defined good, or goodness, to be that which all things desire.*

The second kinde of appetite is of those things which appertain to us, as we have sense. Whence, by the law of Nature, we desire the delights of every sense; but with such moderation, as may neither glut us with satiety, nor hurt us with excess. For as Sense it self is for the preservation of life and being: so is it meet, even by the law of Nature, that the sensitive appetite should not carry us to the destruction, either of our life or being. And although (seeing both these kinds of appetites are in beasts) we may well say, that Nature hath given divers laws unto them: In which sense the Civilians define *Naturall right*, or *Jus naturale*, to be the same which Nature hath taught all living creatures: Yet the Schoolmen admit not, that the instincts of beasts can be properly called a law, but onely a *Jus*, or *Right*, which is the matter, and aime of every law. For so they distinguish it; where *Ulpian* affirmeth, that *Jus naturale* is that, which Nature hath taught all living creatures. In this place (saith *Valentia*) *Jus* is not to be taken for a law, but for the matter of the law. And yet where *Ulpian* also distinguisheth the right belonging to living creatures in general, from the right belonging to men; calling the one *Jus nature*, the other *Jus gentium*: the Divines understand the law of Nature more largely, that is, for all evident dictates, precepts, or biddings of divine reason, both in beasts and men; and restrain the law of Nations to a kind of humane right.

The third appetite is of those things which appertain properly to man, as he is a living creature reasonable: as well with relation to God, and to our Neighbour, as for our selves: and the laws of this appetite are the commandments of our Religion.

Now although there are many other branches and divisions of this law of Nature answering the division of matter, which it describeth, and as manifold, as the morall actions are which it commandeth or forbiddeth; yet is the law of Nature but one law, according to *Aquinas*: first, because it hath one fountain or root in the naturall or motive facultie, which is but one, stirring up to good, and declining the contrary: secondly, because all is contained in that generall naturall precept, That good is to be followed, and ill avoided: and thirdly, because all the parts are reduced to one and the same last end.

That this law of Nature bindeth all creatures, it is manifest: and chiefly man; because he is indued with reason: in whom as reason groweth, so this band of observing the law of Nature increaseth; *Postquam ratio ad perfectum venit, tunc fit quod scriptum est, Basil. Adveniente mandato, peccatum revixit; When reason grew to perfection, then it came to passe, which was written by S. Paul, When the commandment came, sin revived.* Neither is it a small warrant for this law of Nature, when those which break the same, are said by S. Paul, To be delivered over into a reprobate sense (or minde) to do those things which are not convenient: And again, that their consciences bear witness, and their thoughts accuse them. *Rom. 2. 15.* For, though this law of Nature stretch not to every particular; as to command fasting, and the like: yet it commandeth in generall all good, and whatsoever is agreeable to right and reason. And therefore, said Damascene; *Homines facti sunt mali, declinando in L. 2. Fid. orth. quod contra naturam est; Men (saith he) are made evill, by declining unto that which is contrary to nature: And S. Augustine, Omne vitium nature nocet, ac per hoc contra naturam est; Every vice doth wrong to nature, and is therefore contrary unto it.*

Neither yet are the rules of this law of Nature so straight, but that they suffer exceptions in some particulars. For whereas by this law all men are born Lords of the earth, yet it well alloweth inequality of portions, according to unequall merit: by taking from the evill, and giving to the good; and by permitting and commanding that all men shall enjoy the fruits of their labours to themselves: according to the rules of justice and equity.

And though the law of Nature command, that all things be restored which are left in trust, yet in some causes, this her law she suffereth to be broken: as to deny a mad man his weapons, and the like, which he left in keeping while he was sober. But the universall principles can no more be changed, then the decrees of God are alterable: who, according to S. Paul, abideth faithful, and cannot deny himself.

2 Tim. 1.

## §. VII.

Of the written Law of GOD

Aug. de Civit.  
Dei. lib. 1.

After the eternall, and naturall, the law *positive* or imposed is the next in order, which law, being nothing but an addition, or rather explication of the former, hath two kinds: Divine and Humane. Again, the divine positive law is double; the Old and New: The Old was given unto *Moses* in Mount *Sinai* or *Horeb*, at such time as the world had stood 2513. whole yeeres: and in the 67. day of this year, when as *Ascalades* or *Ascalades* governed the *Assyrians*, *Marathus* the *Sycionians*, *Triopus* the *Argives*, *Cecrops* the *Attica*, and *Acherres* *Egypt*: to wit, after the promise to *Abraham*, 430. yeeres. And thus it seems, was the first written law which the world received. For the very word *Nemo*, signifying a law, was not then, nor long after invented by the *Grecians*: no not in *Homer* time, who lived after the fall of *Troy* 80. yeeres at least: and *Troy* it self was calt downe 335. yeeres, after *Moses* led *Israel* out of *Egypt*. This law, it pleased God to ingrave in stone, that it might remaine a lasting booke of his exprest will in the Church: and that the Priests and people might have whereof to meditate, till the coming of *Christ*: and that so these Children of *Israel*, though bred among an Idolatrous people in *Egypt*, might be without excuse, the slight defences of ignorance being taken from them.

The reason known to us why this law was not written before, is, that when the people were few, and their lives long, the *Elders* of Families might easily, without any written law, instruct their own Children: and yet as they increased, so doubtlesse they had besides the law of Nature, many precepts from God, before the law written. But now at length, forasmuch as the law of Nature did not define all kinds of good, and evill: nor condemn every sin in particular: nor sufficiently terrifie the consciences of offenders: nor so expound divine worship, as for those after ages was required, who gave every day less authority than other to the naturall law; In these respects it was necessary, that the law should be written, and set before the eyes of all men: which before, they might, but would not, reade in their own consciences. The *Schoolmen*, and the Fathers before them, inlarge the causes and necessity, why the law was written; whereof these are the chiefest.

The first, for restraining of sin, directly grounded upon this place of *David*, The law of the Lord is undefiled, converting souls: The testimonies of the Lord are faithfull, giving wisdom to children: For the humane law, faith Saint *Augustine*, meeteth not with all offences, either by way of prohibition or punishment; seeing thereby it might take away something seeming necessary, and hinder common profit: but the divine law written, forbiddeth every evill, and therefore by *David* it is called undefiled.

Secondly, it serveth for the direction of our mindes. For the Lawes of men can only take knowledge of outward actions, but not of internall motions, or of our disposition and will: and yet it is required, that we be no lesse cleane in the one, than in the other. And therefore were the words converting our souls, added by *David*: wherein are all our outward acts first generated, according to the *Cabalists*. *Actiones hominum nulla essent, nisi prius in mente dicerentur*: The actions of men (say they) would be none at all, were they not first conceived in the minde.

Thirdly, it leadeth us to the knowledge of truth, which by reason of diversitie of opinion, and difference of peculiar Lawes among sundrie Nations, we cannot be assured of; but the law of GOD bindeth all men, and is without error: and therefore also said *David*, That the testimony of the Law of God is faithfull: giving Wisdom to children.

## §. VIII.

Of the unwritten Law of God, given to the Patriarchs by Tradition.

Now, that in all this long tract of time, between the creation and the written law, the world and people of God were left altogether to the law of reason & nature, it doth not appear. For the Patriarchs of the first age received many precepts from God himself, and whatsoever was first imposed by *Adam*, the same was observed by *Seth*, who instructed *Enos*: from whom it descended to *Noah*, *Sem*, *Abraham*, *Isaac*, *Jacob*, *Joseph*, and *Moses*. Yea, many particular commandments afterward written, were formerly imposed and delivered over by tradition; which kinde of teaching the Jews after-

ward

ward called *Cabala*, or *Receptio*: precepts received from the mouth of their Priests and Elders: to which the Jews after the law written, added the interpretation of secret mysteries, reserved in the bosoms of their Priests, and unlawfull to be uttered to the people. But the true *Cabala* was not to be concealed from any; as being indeed the divine law revealed to the Patriarchs, and from them delivered to the posterity, when as yet it was unwritten. The commandments which God gave unto *Adam* in the beginning, were, that he should impose names to all beasts, according to their natures; to whole perfection of understanding they were sufficiently known. For finding the reason of his own name *Adam*, or *Adamah*, Earth, or red clay, he gave other names significant, not onely to beasts, but to his children and nephews, which afterward his issues imitated; as the name of *Seth* signifieth, as some take it, one that was laid for the ground or foundation of the Church, or rather, one given in recompence for *Abel* that was slain: and *Enosh* signifieth man, or miserable, &c. Further, God commanded *Adam* to till the ground, and to live by the labour thereof: God also gave him the choice of all fruits, but the forbidden, and in *Adam* also was marriage first instituted: all men thence after being commanded to co-habit with their wives, rather than with their father or mother.

That murder and cruelty was also forbidden, both before the law written, and before the flood it self, it is manifest. God himself making it appear, that it was one of the greatest causes of the destruction of mankind by the generall flood. For God said unto *Noah*, An end of all flesh is come before me: for the earth is filled with cruelty through them: and behold, I will destroy them from the earth. That offence therefore, for which all perished, could not be unknown to all that perished: Gods mercy and justice interposing between the untaught, and revenge. This commandment God repeated to *Noah*, after the waters were dried up from the earth: Who sheddeth mans blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the Image of God hath he made man.

Also the law of honouring and reverencing our Parents, was observed among the faithfull, and the contrary punished by the fathers curse: as, Cursed be *Canaan*, a servant of servants shall he be unto his brethren. Again, we find that the unnatural sin of the Sodomiters was punished in the highest degree, as with fire from heaven. The sin of *Adultery* and *Ravishment*, was before the law no lesse detested than the rest, as appeareth by that revenge taken for *Dinas* forcing: and by the judgement which *Juda* gave against *Tamar*, That she should be burnt: and by the repentance of *Pharao* and *Abimelech*, against whom this sentence was pronounced, how art thou dead, because of the woman which thou hast taken: for she is a mans wife. To these we may adde the ordinance of Sacrifice, of distinction of clean and unclean beasts; of Circumcision, of the brother to raise up seed to his brother that left a widow childless, and divers other constitutions, partly Morall, and partly Ceremoniall, which being delivered before the written law, were after by it confirmed. So that this Divine Law imposed, of which the law of *Moses* containeth that which is called, The Old Testament, may be said, not onely to have been written in the hearts of men, before it was engraven in stone, but also in substance to have been given in precept to the Patriarchs. For as *S. Paul* witnesseth of himself, I knew not sin, but by the law: so ever the law naturally preceded, and went before offences, though written after offences committed. It is true, that all the creatures of God were directed by some kinde of unwritten law; the Angels intuitively; Men by reason; Beasts by sense and instinct, without discourse; Plants by their vegetative powers; and things inanimate by their necessary motions, without sense or preception.

## §. IX.

Of the Morall, Judiciall, and Ceremoniall Law, with a note prefixed, how the Scripture speaketh not away in one sense, when it nameth the Law of Moses.

Now as the word (Law) in general, as is aforesaid, hath divers significations, and is taken for all doctrine which doth prescribe and restrain; so the law, called the Law of *Moses* in particular, is taken by *S. Paul* diversly: as sometime for all the Old Testament; as, Now we know whatsoever the Law saith, it saith to them which are under the Law. Rom. 3. 19.

When it is opposed, or differed from the Prophets and Psalms, it is there taken for the five Books of *Moses*. For so *S. Luke* hath distinguished them; as, All must be fulfilled which are written of me in the Law, in the Prophets, and in the Psalms. Luc. 24. 44.

A a 3

When

\* The common reading is cum terra: but God did not destroy the earth: and why may not this proposition in this place have the same force, which it hath according to *Tunius*? Gen. 1. Item 44.4. & Deut. 32.1. especially seeing these words are but a repetition of that which is said, ver. 7. Delebo hominem de superficie terrae. Gen. 3. 25. Gen. 38. 24.

Rom. 3. 28.

When it is opposed to the Gospel, then it is taken for the law Morall, Ceremoniall, and Judiciall; as, *Therefore we conclude, that a man is justified by Faith, without the works of the law.*

Rom. 6. 4.  
Gal. 3. 18.

When it is opposed to Grace, it signifieth the declaration of Gods wrath, and our guilt of condemnation; or the extremity of the law, and *summum jus*: as, *For ye are not under the law, but under grace.*

John 1. 17.

When it is opposed to the Truth, namely, where the Ceremonies or signs are taken for the things signified; as the *Sacrifice for Christ*, and the like: then it signifieth but shadows and figures; as *The law was given by Moles, but grace and truth came by Jesus Christ.*

Gal. 3. 23.  
Luc. 16. 6.

Lastly, when it is opposed to the time of *Christ's* coming, it signifieth the whole policy of the *Jews* Common-wealth; as, *Before faith came, we were kept under the law, &c.* Or the law of the order and institution of the *Aaronicall* Priesthood; as, *All the Prophets and the law, or the Priests prophesied unto John.* And if the Priesthood be changed, the law also, to wit, of the Priesthood, must needs be changed.

Hib. 7. 12 &  
10. 1.

The word (*Law*) is sometime also taken by the Figure *Metonymia*, for Interest, Authority, and Empire, or for constraining force; as, *The law of the Spirit of life, the law of the force of sin and death, the enforcements of conscience, &c.*

Rom. 8. 2.  
Rom. 7. 23.

But the *Written law of Moles*, or the law of the Old Testament, of which we now speak, is thus defined. The law is a doctrine, which was first put into the minds of men by God, and afterwards written by *Moles*, or by him repeated, commanding Holiness, and Justice, promising eternall life conditionally, that is to the observers of the law, and threatening death to those which break the law in the least. For according to *S. James*, *Whoever shall keep the whole, and faileth in one point, is guilty of all.* The definition used by the *Schoolmen* in which both the old and new law are comprehended, is thus given: *Lex divina est divinum decretum, hominibus prescribens modum necessarium, ut apte pervenire possint ad supernam beatitudinem, quæ est ultimus humane vite finis*: The divine Law (say they) is the decree of God, prescribing unto men a necessary mean, whereby they may aptly attain supernaturall beatitude, which is the last end of mans life.

James 2. 10.

The law of *Moles* hath three parts: Morall, Ceremoniall, and Judiciall. The Morall part commandeth this or that good to be done, and this or that evil to be avoided, in particular; as also it declareth, for whose sake it is to be done; as, *Do this, for I am the Lord*; whereas the law of nature commands it but in general. Again, the Morall law entreateth of vertue and goodnesse; the Ceremoniall of divine service, and of holiness; (for externall worship and the order of hallowing our selves unto God is called Ceremony) and the Judiciall teacheth the particular government, fit for the Common-wealth of the *Jews*, and prescribeth orders for justice and equity. And therefore was it said of *S. Paul*, *The Commandment is just, holy, and good*: just, or justice being referred to the Judiciall: holy, or holiness to the Ceremoniall; good, or honest to the Morall. The Judiciall part is touching the government of the Common-wealth of the *Jews*, in which many things must needs be proper to that estate, as such as were instituted either in respect of place or persons.

Rom. 7. 12.

The Ceremoniall is divided into four parts, according to the four kinds of things of which it speaketh, to wit, Sacrifice, holy things, Sacraments, and Observances. To Sacrifices belong beasts, and the fruits of the earth; to holy things the Tabernacle, Temple, Vessels, Altars, and the like; to Sacraments, Circumcision, the Pascheover, and such like. For Observances, they consisted either in prohibition of certaine meats, as not to eat the blood and fat of beasts: or in some other outward things, as in washings, purifying, anointings, and attire, as not to wear mixt garments of Linnen and Woollen: as also it prohibiteth other unnatural and unproper commixtions, as, *Thou shalt not yoke together in a Plough an Oxe and an Ass*, or cast mingled seed in one field. It also exhorteth to naturall compassion, and forbiddeth cruelty even to beasts, birds, and plants, whereby the creatures of God might be destroyed without any profit to man. For to some refer these precepts, *Thou shalt not kill the bird sitting on her nest; nor beat down the first bud of the tree, nor muzzle the labouring oxe*, and the like, to the Ceremoniall law.

Neither is there any of these three parts of the law of *Moles*, but it hath as yet in some respects the same power which it had before the coming of *Christ*. For the Morall liveth still, and is not abrogated or taken away: saving in the ability of justifying or condemning; for therein are we commanded to love and worship God: and to use charity

one

one towards another: which for ever shall be required at our hands. Therein also are we in particular directed, how this ought to be done: which power of directing by speciall rules and precepts of life, it retaineth still. For these things also are commanded in both Testaments to be observed: though principally for fear of God in the one, and for the love of God in the other.

The Ceremoniall also lived in the things which it fore-signified. For the shadow is not destroyed, but perfected, when the body it self is represented to us. Besides, it still liveth, in that it giveth both instruction and testimony of *Christ*, and in that it giveth direction to the Church, for some Ceremonies and Types of holy signification, which are still expedient; though in a far fewer number than before *Christ's* coming, and in a far lesse degree of necessitie.

Lastly, the Judiciall liveth in substance, and concerning the end, and the naturall and universall equitie thereof.

But the Morall faileth in the point of justification, the Ceremoniall as touching the use and externall observation (because *Christ* himself is come, of whom the ceremonies were signs and shadows) and the Judiciall is taken away, as far forth as it was peculiar to the *Jews* Common-wealth and policie.

## §. X.

*A proposall of nine other points to be considered, with a touch of the five first.*

As for that which remaineth in the generall consideration of the divine written law, it may in effect be reduced into these nine points.

1. The dignity and worth of the Law.
2. The Majesty of the Law-giver.
3. The property and peculiarity of the people receiving it.
4. The conveniency of the time in which it was given.
5. The efficacy and power thereof.
6. The difference and agreement of the old and new Testament.
7. The end and use of the Law.
8. The sense and understanding of the Law.
9. The durance and continuance thereof.

1. The dignity of the Law is sufficiently proved by *S. Paul*, in these words: *Wherefore the Law is holy, and the commandment is holy, and just, and good*: which three attributes are referred, as aforesaid, to the Morall, Ceremoniall, and Judiciall.

2. The Majesty of the Law-giver is approved in all his creatures: who as he hath given all things their lives and beings, so he onely gave the Law, who could onely give the end and reward promised, to wit, the salvation of mankind: but he gave it not to *Moles* immediately, but by the ministry of Angels, as it is said: *And the law was ordained by Angels, in the hand of a Mediator*: And in the Acts, *He gave the law by the ordinance of Angels*.

3. The propriety and peculiarity of the people, receiving the Law, is in three respects. First, in that they were prepared. Secondly, in that they were a Nation apart and dislevered. Thirdly, in that they were the children of the promise made to *Abraham*. Prepared they were, because they had the knowledge of one God, when all other Nations were Idolaters. A Nation apart and severed they were, because of Gods choice and election. Children of the promise they were, for the promise was made by God unto *Abraham* and his seed: not unto his seeds, as to *Ethan* and *Jacob*, but to his seed, as to *Jacob* or *Israel* singularly, of whom *Christ*. Now to *Abraham* and his seed were the promise made: he saith not, to the seeds, as speaking of many, but, to thy seed, as of one, which is *Christ*.

4. The conveniency of the time, in which it was given, is noted by *S. Augustine*: that it was about the middle time, between the Law of Nature, and Grace: the Law of Nature continued from *Adam* to *Moles*: the Law written in the Commandments received by *Moles* in the worlds year 2514. continued to the Baptism of *John*: from which time, began the law of Grace, which shall continue to the worlds end. Other reasons for the conveniency are formerly given.

5. The fifth consideration is of the efficacy of this law, the same being a disposition

to,

Gal. 4.

Heb. 9.

Gal. 2.

to, or signe of our Justification: but not by it self sufficient, but as a figure of *Christ* in ceremonies, and a preparation to righteousness in morall precepts. For through the passion of *Christ* were sins forgiven, who taketh away the sins of the world: and therefore *S. Paul* calleth the rudiments of the law *beggerly and weak*; begerly, as containing no grace, weak, as not able to forgive and justifie. The blood of Goats and Bulls, and the ashes of an Heifer could onely cleanse the body; but they were figures of *Christ's* blood, which doth cleanse the inward soul. For if the law could justifie, then *Christ* died in vain.

## §. XI.

Of the sixth point, to wit, of the difference and agreement of the old and new Testament.

The old and new Testament differ in name, and in the meane & way proposed for attaining to salvation; as the old by works, the new by grace: but in the thing it self, or object and remote end, they agree: which is, mans happinesse and salvation.

Heb. 8. 13.

The old Testament, or Law, or Letter, or the Witness of Gods will, was called the old, because it preceded the new Testament; which is an explication of the old: from which the new taketh witness. Yet the new is of more excellency, in that it doth more lively expresse, and openly and directly delineate the waies of our redemption. It is also called the old, to shew that in part it was to be abrogated: *In that he saith the New Testament, he hath abrogated the old.* For the old law, though greatly extolled by the *Prophets*, and delivered with wonderfull miracles, yet was it constituted in a policy perishable: but the new was given in a promise of an everlasting Kingdom, and therefore called in the *Apocalyps*, a Testament and Gospel for ever during.

The old Testament is called the Law, because the first and chief part is the Law of *Moses*, of which the *Prophets* and *Psalms* are Commentaries, explicating that Law.

The new Testament is called the Gospel, because the first and chief part thereof, is the glad tidings of our Redemption: the other Books, as the Epistles, or Letters of the *Apostles*, and the Acts or story of the *Apostles*, are plentiful interpreters thereof: The word *Evangelion*, signifying a joyfull, happy, and prosperous message, or (as *Homer* used it) the reward given to the Messenger, bringing joyfull news. It is also sometime taken for a sacrifice, offered after victory, or other pleasing successe, as by *Xenophon*. In the Scriptures it hath three significations. First, for glad tidings in generall, as in *Ejy* 52. v. 7. concerning peace. Secondly, by an excellency it is restrained, to signify that most joyfull message of Salvation, as in *Luk* 2. 10. whence also by figure it is taken for the History of *Christ*: and so we understand the four Gospels.

All. 1.

Lastly, for the preaching and divulging the doctrine of *Christ*, as *1 Cor* 9. 14. and *2 Cor* 8. 18.

The agreement of both Testaments (taken, I think, as they are divided in volumes) is by *Danaus* comprised in these four.

In their Author.

In the substance of the Covenant, or things promised.

In the foundation, to wit, *Christ*.

In the effects, that is, in righteousness and justification.

In the Author they agree, because both are of God, and therefore both one Testament and will of God in substance of doctrine. For as there was ever one Church, so was there one Covenant, one Adoption, and one Doctrine. As the old law doth point at *Christ*, so doth the new Law teach *Christ*: the old proposing him as to come, the new as already come; one and the same thing being promised in both, both tending to one end, and the same end, even the salvation of our souls: which according to *S. Peter*, is the end of our Faith. For although it be said, that *Moses* did promise by observing the law, and earthly kingdom, a land flowing with milk and honey, the propagation of children, and other worldly blessings: yet all these were but figures to teach, and pledges to assure the Fathers of those spirituall blessings by *Christ*; for by the earthly, he raised their minds to the hope of heavenly. And the Fathers notwithstanding these worldly goods, did yet acknowledge themselves strangers, and pilgrims, expecting the heavenly *Hierusalem*: according to this place of the *Hebrews*: *All these died in faith, and received the promises, but saw them a far off and believed them; confessing that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth.* To which purpose also *S. Augustine*, *Omnino pauci veterum legem intelli-*

Cp. 11. v. 13.

Lib. de Civit.

Det. 18. c. 15.

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

*gunt, non attendentes per promissa terrena, eterna promitti: Few (saith he) do understand the old law: not attending that by things earthly, eternall are promised.* And *S. Hierome*: *Noluit in Sophon. c. 3. Deus pascere Judaeos more pecorum corporalibus donis opibusque, ut Judei somniant; God would not feed the Jews as beasts with corporall gifts and riches, as themselves dream.* And this may be gathered out of Gods own words, *Ego sum Deus tuus; & ero vobis in Deum; I am thy God, and I will be your God.* For the words, *I will be your God*, prove that it was not for the present, or for perishable things, that God gave them this promise, but in respect of the future: to wit, the safety of their souls. For as God created both body and soul, so hath he of his goodness, not left the better part uncared for, which liveth ever.

The agreement between the old and new Testament in substance, infers also the agreement in foundation. For *Christ* is called the foundation of the law, laid both by the *Apostles* and *Prophets*; in whom all the promises of God in the old and new, are assured: the Fathers having eaten the same spirituall food, which we eat in our Sacraments.

The agreement in effects, is, in that the knowledge of our sin and misery, which is taught us by the law, maketh way, and, as it were, serveth in subordination to the Gospel, the proper effects whereof are mercy and salvation: to which the law serving as an introduction (for to those which acknowledge their sin & misery, God sheweth his mercy and salvation) may be said to agree with the Gospel in the effect. For otherwise, if we sever the Law from subordination to the Gospel, the effects are very different: the

one sheweth the way of righteousness by works, the other by faith: the Law woundeth, the Gospel healeth: the Law terrifieth, the Gospel allureth: *Moses* accuseth, *Christ* defendeth: *Moses* condemneth, *Christ* pardoneth. The old restrained the hand, the new, the minde. *Dura est lex que non sanaret* (saith *S. Augustine*) *sed que egrotantes probaret; The law was given, not to help, but to discover sickness: and S. Chrysostome; Data est lex, ut se homo inveniret; non ut morbus sanaretur, sed ut medicus quereretur: The law was given that man might finde and know his own imperfection: not that his disease was thereby holpen, but that he might then seek out the Physician.* For *Christ* came to save the world, which the law had condemned. And as *Moses* was but a servant, and *Christ* a Son; so the greatest benefit was referred to be brought, as by the *worthiest* person, saith *Cyril*: for this law

Homil. 1. ad Rom.

made nothing perfect, but was an introduction of a better hope.

made nothing perfect, but was an introduction of a better hope.

## §. XII.

Of the rest of the points proposed.

The seventh consideration is of the end, and use of the law: which is to bring us to *Christ*: for finding no righteousness in our own works, we must seek it in some other. But this is the last, and remote, and utmost end: the next and proper end of the law, is to prescribe righteousness, and to exact absolute and perfect obedience to God. *Cursed is he which continueth not in all the things of this law.*

The second end of the Law, is to render us inexcusable before God: who knowing so perfect a law, do not keep it: the law requiring a perfect and intire, not a broken or halfe obedience: but both inward and outward righteousness, and performance of duty to God and Men.

The third and chief end of the law, is, as hath bin said, to send us to *Christ*, and his grace, being in our selves condemned and lost. For the law was delivered with thunder, and with a most violent and fearfull tempest, threatening eternall death.

The fourth end of the law was to designe, and preserve, the place of the Church and true people of God: and to hold men in one Discipline, and awe, till the coming of *Christ*: after whom the Church was to be dispersed over the whole world.

These be the ends of the Morall law. The end and use of the Ceremoniall law, is to confirm the truth of *Christ*, and the new Testament. The use of the Judiciall, to teach us naturall equity and right, whereto we must conform our selves.

The sense and understanding of the Law is double, literall and spirituall: by the literall we are taught the worship and service of God: by the spirituall, the figures and mysticall fore-speakings of *Christ*.

Lastly, for the durance or continuance of the Law, the same had being until the passion of *Christ*: before which time, and while *Christ* taught in the world, both the old and the new were in force. But after that the true sacrifice was offered upon the Altar

of

\* Gen. 49. 10.

The Scepter

shall not de-

part from Ju-

da, nor a Law-

giver from be-

tween his feet

until Shila

come

of the Crosse, then the Jewish sacrifices and ceremonies, which were Types and figures of Christ (Christ being the body of those shadows) ceased to binde the conscience any longer: the mystery of our redemption being now by Christ and in him finished. In token whereof, the vail of the Temple rent asunder; noting that the ceremonial vails and shadows were now to be removed, not that the morall law of the Commandments was hereby abolished, or weakened at all: otherwise than that it had not power to condemn according to the Jewish doctrine, as aforesaid. For the observing of the law was by Christ himself severely commanded: our love towards God being thereby to be witnessed. And herein David so much rejoiced, as he preferred the observation of the law before all that the world could yeeld. *In via testimoniorum tuorum delectatus sum, sicut in omnibus divitiis; I have been delighted in thy law, as in all manner of riches: And again, the law of thy mouth is good for me above thousands of gold and silver. This is the love God (saith S. John) that we keep his Commandment. And that there is no excuse for the neglect of the things commanded in the law, God himself in Deuteronomy witnesseth. This Commandment (saith he) which I command thee this day, is not hid from thee, neither is it far off. It is not in heaven that thou shouldst say, Who shall go up for us to heaven, and bring it us, and cause us to hear it, that we may do it: neither is it beyond the Sea, that thou shouldst say, Who shall go over the Sea for us, and bring it us? &c. but the word is very near unto thee, even in thy mouth, and in thy heart for to do it. Behold (saith Moses) I have set before thee this day life and death, good and evil, in that I command thee this day, to love the Lord thy God, to walk in his waies, and to keep his Commandments, and his Ordinances, and his Laws; that thou mayst live, &c. Neither is it said in vain in S. Matthew: Si vis vitam ingredi, serva mandata: if thou wilt enter into life, keep the Commandments: and in S. John: Scio quia mandatum ejus vita eterna est; I know that his Commandment is life everlasting. And if this be the charity of God, or of Men towards God, as S. John hath taught, to wit, that we keep his Commandments: certainly, he is but a liar, that professeth to love God, and neglecteth to observe the word of his will, with all his power. And though I confesse it not in man's ability, without the speciall grace of God to fulfill the law (Christ onely as man excepted) yet if we rightly consider the mercifull care which God had of his people in those his Commandments, we shall finde in our selves, how we borrow liberty, and rather let us slip our affections, and voluntarily loosen them from the chains of obedience, to which the word of God and divine reason hath fastened them, than that we are excusable by those difficulties and impossibilities, which our minde (greedy of liberty) propoeth to itself. For this is the love of God, that we keep his Commandments, and his Commandments are not grievous, 1 John 5. 12. and if we examine every precept apart, and then weigh them each after other, in the ballance of our consciences: it is not hard for any man to judge, by what easie persuasions, we steal away from our own power, as unwilling to use it against our pleasing desires.*

## §. XIII.

*Of the severall Commandments of the Decalogue: and that the difficulty is not in respect of the Commandments, but by our defaults.*

For by the first we are commanded to acknowledge, serve, and love one God. Now, whereby are we inticed to the breach of this precept? seeing every reasonable man may conceive and know, that infinite power cannot be divided into many infinities: and that it is of necessity, that by this almighty Unity, all things have been caused, and are continued. And if brute beasts had this knowledge of their Creator, and how in his providence he hath also provided for every of them, Which giveth to beasts their food, &c. there is no doubt but that they would also serve and love him onely.

The second precept is the forbidding of Idolatry, and worship of Images: the making whereof, out of doubt, was not the invention of an ill intent in the beginning, seeing this is generally true, *Omnia mala exempla bonis initiis orta sunt; All ill examples did spring and arise from good beginnings.* For their first erection was to keep the memory of men famous for their vertue: untill (saith Laetantius) the devill crept into them, and (having blotted out the first intent) working in weak and ignorant souls, changed the nature of the one, and the reason of the other, to serve himself thereby. For what reasonable man, if he be not forsaken of God, will call on those blinde, deaf, dumbe, and dead stocks,

more worthlesse than the most worthlesse of those, that having life and reason, implore their help, which have neither: yea, of more vile prize and baser, than the basest of beasts, who have sense and estimation? For what do we thereby? (saith the Wildome of Solomon) but call to the weak for help, pray to the dead for life, require aid of him that hath no experience, assistance in our journeyes of him that cannot go, and successe in our affairs of him that hath no power? And whether the Idolater, or the block, to which he prayeth, be more senselesse, David maketh a doubt. For (saith he) they that make them are like unto us, and so are all the rest that trust in them.

The third of this second Commandment, is neither perswaded by worldly pleasure, nor worldly profit: the two greatest enchanters of mortall men. No, we are no way allured to this horrible disdain of God, unlesse the hate of good men, and Gods curse, be accounted an advantage. For as our corruptest nature gives us nothing towards it, so can it satisfie no one appetite, except everlasting sorrow, and hell dwell in our desire. And therefore this strange custom hath the devil brought up among men, without all subtiltie of argument, or cunning perswasion, taking thereby the greatest and most scornfull advantage over us. For slaughter satisfieth hatred, Theft gives satisfaction to need, Adultery to lust, Oppression to covetousnesse: but this contemptuous offence of blasphemy, and the irreverent abuse of Gods name, as it giveth no help to any of our worldly affections, so the most salvage Nations of the world do not use it.

The fourth Commandment, to keep the Sabbath day holy, hath neither pain, burthen, nor inconvenience. For it giveth rest to the labourer, and consolation to their Masters: And that this law was imposed on man for his benefit, Moses teacheth in the reason of the law: as in Exod. 23. 12. *And in the seventh day thou shalt rest, that thine Ox, and thine Ass may rest, and the son of thy maid, and the stranger may be refreshed.*

The first of the second Table, to honour our Parents, with whom we are one and the same, is a gratitude which nature it self hath taught us towards them, who, after God, gave us life and being, have begotten us, and born us, cherished us in our weak and helpless infancy, and bestowed on us the harvest and profit of their labours and cares. Therefore, in the Temporall and Judiciall ordinances, cursing of Parents, or the forgetting their violence, was made death.

The next is, that thou shalt not Murther, that is, thou shalt not do the acts following the affections of hatred. For the law of God, and after it our own laws, and, in effect, the law of all Nations, have made difference between slaughter casual, and furious. *Affectio enim tui (saith Bracton) imponit nomen operi tuo: It is the affection and will that makes the work, such as it is.* And certainly, whosoever cannot forbear to commit murder, hath neither the grace of God, nor any use of his own will.

The third of the second Table, commands us from adultery. Now if the preservation of Virginity have been possible for thousands of men and women, who in all Ages have mastered their fleshly desires, and have returned chaste to their grave: It cannot be accounted a burthen, to forbear the dishonour and injury, which we offer to others by such a violation, seeing marriage is permitted by the laws of God and men, to all, that affect it. And there is no man living, whom the desire of beauty and form hath so constrained, but he might with ease forbear the prosecution of this ill, did not himself give suck to this infant, and nourish warmth till it grow to strong heat, heat till it turn to fire, and fire to flame.

The fourth of the second Table is, That we shall not steal. And if that kinde of violent robbery had been used in Moses time, which many Russians practise now a dayes in England, and to the dishonour of our Nation, more in England, than in any Region of the world among Christians; out of doubt, he would have censured them by death, and not by restitution, though quadruple. For I speak not of the poor and miserable souls, whom hunger and extreme necessity enforceeth; but of those detested Theeves, who, to maintain themselves Lord-like, assault, rob, and wound the Merchant, Artificer, and labouring man; or break by violence into other mens houses, and spend in Braverie, Drunkennesse, and upon Harlots, in one day, what other men sometime have laboured for all their lives: impoverishing whole Families, and taking the bread and food from the mouths of their children. And that this Commandment might easily be observed, it would soon appear, if Princes would resolve, but for a few years, to pardon none. For, it is the hope of life, and the argument of sparing the first offence, that incourageth these

1 John 5.

Deu. 30. 11. 12.  
13. & 14.  
Rom. 10. u. 6.  
7. 8.Cap. 9. 17.  
Cap. 12. 50.

Psal. 147. 9.

Glosse in verb.  
Colum.Mortis replem  
terram, Virgi-  
nitas Paradisi



these Hell-hounds. And if every man presume to be pardoned once, there is no State or Common-wealth, but these men would in a short time impoverish or destroy it.

The fifth Commandment of this second Table, is, the prohibition of false witness: from which if men could not forbear, all surety of estate and life were taken away. And so much did God detest a false witness, and a false accuser, especially in matters criminal, that the law ordained him to suffer the same death or punishment, which he sought by falsehood to lay on his brother.

The last of the ten Commandments forbiddeth us to covet any thing, which belongeth to another man, either the bodies of their wives for concupiscence, or their goods for desire of gain. And this precept seemeth the hardest for men to observe; so esteemed by reason of our frail affections; and yet if we judge hereof rightly, it may be doubted whether it extend to all our inconsiderate fancies and vain thoughts. For, although it be not easie to master all our sudden passions, yet we may restrain and hinder the growing, and farther increase, if we please to intend our strength, and seek for grace. How the word *Coveting* reacheth to all those, it is to be considered. For *Concupiscentia*, according to some, *Est effrenatus habendi appetitus*; An unbridled, or unrestrained appetite of having: And as touching such an appetite, we cannot excuse our selves by any our naturall frailty, or unadvised error; But, as I suppose, the word *Concupiscence* is more largely taken, either for a determinate and unbridled evil intent, or for some urging inclination thereunto. All the question is of the latter sort: which is, *Actus inperfectus, id est, non deliberatus ratione, quæ est principium proprium actus boni aut vitiosi*; Such passions, or inclinations are imperfect acts, that is, not deliberated upon by reason, which is the proper principle of a good or vicious action. And sure, it may seem, that so long as we resist such motions, they harm us not: as they say, *Quandiu resurgamus, nihil nocet: nocent autem cum eis dominari permittimus*; As long as we give no assent unto them, it is thought by some that they hurt us not; and that then only they hurt, when we suffer them to bear sway. But these men, as it seems, make nothing forbidden in the tenth precept, but what hath been forbidden in the other: for in every Commandment, not onely the outward act, but also the inward assent unto evil, though it break not out into act, is forbidden: therefore, that we may know the difference between this Commandment and the rest, the distinction of desires is to be held: that some are with assent, and unbridled; others bridled, and without assent. For so even the Morall Philosopher can tell us, that the continent man hath evil desires, but without assent (for they are bridled by the strength of right reason) as, on the other side, the Incontinent hath good desires, but restrained and suppressed by contrary passions. The evil desires, when they are accompanied with assent, are in every Commandment forbidden, together with the outward act: and therefore, if we will have any thing proper to this Commandment, we must needs say, that the evil desires of the continent man (that is, even those which we resist and bridle) are here forbidden. For though he that bridleth his evil desires, be much better than he that yeeldeth unto them; yet such a man, even according to the Heathen Philosopher, is not worthy the name of a vertuous man. For Aristotle himself makes *Continencia*, not to be vertue, but onely a degree unto it: confessing, that though the Continent man do well in bridling his evil affections, yet he doth not all, seeing he ought not so much as to have them at all. Neither is it much more, that true divinity delivereth touching this matter. For, as he saith, that in the continent man the having of these evil desires, though he resist them, is the cause that he cannot be called a vertuous man: so we, that the having of them is a sin. Onely in this we excell him here: that we are able out of divinity to give the true reason of this doctrine: which is, that every one sinneth, that doth not love God with his whole heart and affection: whence it followeth, that the evil desires of the Continent man; that is, of him which bridleth them, must needs be sin: seeing such desires, though bridled, are a pulling away of a part of our heart and affection from God.

Seeing therefore it hath pleased God, to make us know, that by our faithfull endeavours to keep his commandments, we witness our love toward himself: we may not safely give liberty to our vanities, by casting back upon God (who is justice it self) that he hath given us Precepts altogether beyond our power, and Commandments impossible for us to keep. For, as he is accused (saith Saint Hierome) that avows that the Law is in all things possible to be observed: so he hath made this addition: *Maledictus*

*qui dicit impossibilia Deum præcepisse*; Accused is he that saith that God hath commanded things: (in themselves, and not through our fault) impossible. Now, as the places are many which command us to keep the Law; so is our weakness also in the Scriptures laid before us, and therefore it is thus safely to be understood, that we should without evasion, or without betraying of our selves, do our faithfull endeavours to observe them: which if we do unfainedly, no doubt but God will accept our desires therein. For that there is no man just, David witnesseth: *Enter not into judgement with thy servant, for in thy sight no just that liveth shall be justified*. And in the first of Kings, *There is no man that doeth right in all that he doeth*. And again, *Who can say, I have made my heart clean*? But seeing there is no sin grievous without deliberation; let every mans conscience judge him, whether he give way willingly, or restrain himself in all that he can; yea, or no? For when a King gives to his subject a commandment upon pain of losse of his love, to perform some service: if the subject neglecting the same, seek to satisfie his Sovereign with shifting excuses, out of doubt such a Prince will take himself to be derided therein.

## §. XIV.

*If there were not any Religion, nor Judgement to come, yet the Decalogue were most necessary to be observed.*

And if we consider advisedly and soberly of the Morall Law, or ten Commandments, which God by the hand of Moses gave unto his people, it will appear, that such was his mercifull providence in the choice of them, as were there neither pain nor profit adjoynd to the observing, or not observing of them; were there no divine power at all, nor any Religion among men; yet if we did not for our own sakes strive to observe these laws, all society of men, and all endeavours, all happinesse and contentment in this life would be taken away: and every State and Common-wealth in the World fall to the ground and dissolve. Therefore these laws were not imposed as a burden, but as a blessing: to the end that the innocent might be defended, that every man might enjoy the fruits of his own travell, that right might be done to all men from all men: that by justice, order, and peace, we might live the lives of reasonable men, and not of beasts; of free-men, and not of slaves; of civil men, and not of savages. And hereof making our humane reason onely Judge, let us see the inconveniences in this life which would follow by the breach and neglect of these laws.

As first, what would the issue be, if we acknowledged many gods? would not a far greater hatred, war, and blood-shed follow, than that which the difference of ceremony, and diversity of interpretation hath already brought into the World, even among those Nations which acknowledge one God, and one Christ?

And what could it profit mankind to pray to Idols, and Images of gold, metall, dead stones, and rotten wood, whence nothing can be hoped, but the losse of time, and an impossibility to receive thence-from, either help or comfort?

The breach of the third Commandment bringeth therewith this disadvantage, and ill to man, that whosoever taketh the Name of God in vain, shall not at any time benefit himself by calling God to witness for him, when he may justly use his holy Name.

The observing the Sabbath holy, giveth rest to men and beasts, and nature her self requireth intermission of labour.

If we despise our Parents, who have given us being, we thereby teach our own children to scorn and neglect us, when our aged yeers require comfort and help at their hands.

If murder were not forbidden, and severely punished, the race of mankind would be extinguished: and whosoever would take the liberty to destroy others, giveth liberty to others to destroy himself.

If adultery were lawfull and permitted, no man could say unto himself; This is my son: there could be no inheritance proper, no honour descend to posterity, no endeavour by vertue and undertaking to raise Families: murders and poysonings between man and wife would be daily committed: and every man subject to most filthy and unclean diseases.

If stealth and violent rapine were suffered, all mankind would shortly after perish,

or live as the salvages, by roots and acorns. For no man laboureth but to enjoy the fruits thereof. And such is the mischief of robbery, as where *Moses* for lesser crimes appointed restitution fourfold, policy of State and necessity hath made it death.

To permit false witnesses, is to take all mens lives and estates from them by corruption: the wicked would swear against the virtuous: the waster against the wealthy: the idle beggar and loyterer, against the careful and painfull labourer: all trials of right were taken away, and justice thereby banished out of the world.

The coveting of that which belongs to other men, bringeth no other profit than a distraction of minde, with an inward vexation: for while we covet what appertaineth to others, we neglect our own: our appetites are therein fed with vain and fruitlesse hopes, so long as we do but covet; and if we do attain to the desire of the one, or the other, to wit, the wives or goods of our neighbours; we can look for no other, but that our selves shall also, either by theft or by strong hand, be deprived of our own.

Wherein then appeareth the burthen of Gods Commandments, if there be nothing in them, but rules and directions for the generall and particular good of all living? Surely for our own good, and not in respect of himself, did the most mercifull and provident God ordain them; without the observation of which, the virtues of heavenly bodies, the fertility of the earth, with all the blessings given us in this life, would be unto us altogether unprofitable, and of no use. For we should remaine but in the state of brute beasts, if not in a far more unhappy condition.

## §. XV.

Of humane law, written and unwritten.

**H**umane law, of which now it followeth to speak, is first divided into two: (*Viz.*) Written, and Unwritten. The unwritten consists of usage, approved by time; which *Isidore* calls *Mores*: and he defines *Mores* to be *Consuetudines vetustate probatas; to be customes approved by antiquitie, or unwritten lawes.* Now custome differeth from use, as the cause from the effect: in that custome is by use and continuance established into a law: but yet there where the law is defective, saith *Isidore*.

And of customes there are two generall natures, containing innumerable particulars, the first are written customes received and exercised by Nations, as the customes of *England*, and *Normandy*, the ancient generall custome of *England*, and the customes of *Castile*, and other *Provinces*.

The second are these petty customes, used in particular Places, Cities, Hundreds, and Mannors. The generall or Nationall customes are some written, others unwritten.

The particular or petty customes are seldome written, but witnessed by testimony of the inhabitation. The customes of the *Duchie of Cornwall*, comprehending also the *Stannary of Devon*, as touching *Tin*, and *Tin* causes are written in *Devon*, but not in *Cornwall*. But howsoever use and time hath made these customes as laws, yet ought every custome to be rationabilis, as well as *prescripta*. Non firmatur trans temporis, quod de jure ab initio non subsistit; That which at first was not grounded upon good right, is not made good by continuance of time. And (*saith Ulpian*) quod ab initio vitiosum est, non potest trans temporis consuetudine; Course of time amends not that which was naught from the first beginning. For these two defences are necessary in all laws of custome; the one, that it be not repugnant to the law divine, and naturall: the other, that the cause and reason be strong, proving a right birth, and necessary continuance: it being manifest, that every custome which is against the law, had his beginning from evil deeds, and therefore not without the former considerations to be allowed. And it is true, that all customes of this nature, were but tolerated for a time, by the law-makers, though they have been since continued; because posterity is not bound to examine by what cause their Ancestors were thereto moved. For, Non sufficit simplex toleratio. And it is in this sort over-ruled in the law; Per populum consuetudo contra legem induci non potest, nisi de voluntate illius, qui novam legem & novam constitutionem statueret potest, qui solus princeps est; The people cannot bring in a new custome against law, save by his will, who hath power to make a new law and ordinance, which is only the Prince.

Humane law generally taken, to wit, humane law written, is by some defined to be the decree or doom of practick reason: by which humane actions are ruled and directed.

rected. *Papinian* calls the law a common precept, the advisement of wise men, and the restraint of offences committed, either willingly or ignorantly. *Isidore* calls the law a Constitution written, agreeing with Religion, fittest for government and common profit: And more largely, *Omne id quod ratione conficit; All that stands with reason.*

Lastly, and more precisely, it is thus defined. Humane law is a righteous decree, agreeing with the law naturall & eternall: made by the rationall discourse of those, that exercise publicke authority: prescribing necessary observances to the subject. That every law ought to be a righteous decree, *S. Augustine* teacheth, saying: *Atih lex esse non videtur, que iusti non fuerit; It seems to be no law at all to me, which is not just: and just it cannot be, except it agree with the law naturall and eternall.* For there is no law just and legitimate (*saith S. Augustine*) which the Law-makers have not derived from the eternall. *Nihil justum atque legitimum est, quod non ab aeterna lege sibi homines derivaverunt.* *Lib. 1. de lib. arb. cap. 5.*

Secondly, it ought to be constituted by discourse of reason, whereby it is distinguished from the law naturall, to wit, the naturall, indemonstrable, or needing no demonstration, from whence the law humane is taken and deduced.

Thirdly, that it ought to be made by an authorized Magistracy, it cannot be doubted, be the government of what kind soever. For it falleth otherwife under the title of those decrees called *Violentia*, or *inique constitutiones; Violences, or wicked constitutions.*

Of humane law there are four properties, especially answering these four conditions in the former definition. First, as it is drawn out of the law of Nature; so every particular of the humane law may be resolved into some principle or rule of the naturall.

Secondly, it is to be considered as it is referred unto, and doth respect the common good.

Thirdly, it is to be made by publicke authority.

Fourthly, concerning the matter of the law, it prescribeth and directeth all humane actions. And so is the law as large and divers, as all humane actions are divers, which may fall under it. For according to *Thomas*, *Alia lex Julia de Adulteriis, alia Cornelia de Sicariis; The law of Julian against Adultery, is one, the Cornelian against Ruffians, is another.* Now the humane law generally taken, is in respect of the first of these considerations, divided into the law of Nations, and the Civill.

The law of Nations is taken lesse or more properly; lesse properly for every law which is not of it self, but from other higher principles deduced: and so it seemeth that *Ulpian* understandeth it: for he defineth *Jus Gentium*, or the law of Nations, to be that which is onely common amongst men, as Religion, and the Worship of God: which is not in the very nature of this law of Nations; but from the principles of the Scriptures, and other divine Revelations. But the law of Nations properly taken, is that *dictate*, or *sentence*, which is drawn from a very probable, though not from an evident principle, yet so probable, that all Nations do assent unto the conclusion, as that the free passage of *Ambassadors* be granted between enemies, &c. which Nationall law, according to divers acceptations, and divers considerations had of the humane law, may be sometime taken for a *Species* of the Naturall, sometime of the Humane.

*Jus Civile*, or the Civill law, is not the same in all Common-wealths, but in divers Estates it is also divers and peculiar, and this law is not so immediately derived from the law of Nature, as the law of Nations is: For it is partly deduced out of such principles as all Nations do not agree in, or easily assent unto; because they depend on particular circumstances, which are divers, and do not fit all estates. Hereof *Ulpian*, *Jus Civile neque in totum à Naturali & Gentium recedit, neque per omnia ei servit: itaque cum aliquid addimus, vel detrahimus juri communi, jus proprium, id est, Civile efficitur; The civill law* (*saith he*) *doth neither wholly differ from the law of Nature and Nations, nor yet in all points obey it: therefore when we adde ought to, or take from the law that is common, we make a law proper, that is, the Civill Law.*

The law now commonly called the Civill law, had its birth in *Rome*: and was first written by the *Decem-viri*, 303. yeers after the foundation of the City. It was compounded as well out of the *Athenian* and other *Grecian* laws, as out of the ancient *Roman* customes and laws *Regall*. The *Regall* laws were devised by the first Kings; and called *Leges Regiae*, or *Papyrianae*, because they were gathered by *Papirius*, *Tarquinius* then reigning. For though so many of the former laws as maintained Kingly

Dion. Hal.

C. Sigon l. 1.  
out of Pompe-  
nium.

authority, were abolished with the name; yet those of *Servius Tullius*, for commerce and contracts, and all that appertained to Religion and common utility, were continued, and were a part of the laws of the twelve Tables. To these laws of the twelve Tables were added (as the times gave occasion) those made by the *Senate*, called *Senatus-consulta*: those of the common people, called *Plebei-jura*, those of the Lawyers, called *Responsa-prudentum*: and the Edicts of the *Annual Magistrate*: which Edicts being first gathered and interpreted by *Julian*, and presented to *Adrian* the Emperour, they were by him confirmed and made perpetual laws, and the Volume filed *Edictum perpetuum*; as those and the like collections of *Justinian* afterward were.

The difference anciently between Laws and Edicts, which the French call *Reglements*, consisted in this, that laws are the constitutions made or confirmed by sovereign authority (be the sovereignty in the people, in a few, or in one) and are withall general and permanent: but an Edict (which is but *justum magistratus*), unless by authority it be made a law) hath end with the Officer, who made the same, saith *Varro*. *Qui plurimum Edicto tribuunt, legem annuam esse dicunt*; They who ascribe the most to an Edict, say that it is a law for one year: Though *Isidore* doth also expresse by the word *Constitution* or Edict, those Ordinances called *Acts of Prerogatives*; as, *Constitutio vel Edictum est quod Rex vel Imperator constituit, vel edicit*; An Ordinance or Edict is that which a King or Emperour doth ordain, or proclaim.

Lastly, the humane law is divided into the *Secular*, and into the *Ecclesiasticall*, or *Canon*. The *Secular* commanding temporall good, to wit, the peace and tranquility of the Common-weal: the *Ecclesiasticall* the spirituall good, and right government of the *Ecclesiasticall Common-wealth*, or Church: *Illud nature legem, hoc divinam spectat*; That respecteth the law of nature, this the law of God. And so may *Jus Civile* be taken two ways; first, as distinguished from the law of Nations, as in the first division: Secondly, as it is the same with the *Secular*, and differs from the *Ecclesiasticall*. But this division of the *Schoolmen* is obscure. For although the *Civill* be the same with the *Secular*, as the *Civill* is a law, yet the *Secular* is more general, and comprehendeth both the *Civill*, and all other laws not *Ecclesiasticall*. For of *Secular* laws in use among *Christian* Princes, and in *Christian* Common-wealths, there are three kinds; the *Civill*, which hath every where a voice, and is in all *Christian* estates (*England* excepted) most powerful; the law of *England* called *Common*, and the laws of custome or *Provinciall*. In *Spain*, besides the law *Civill*, they have the customs of *Castill*, and other Provinces. In *France*, besides the *Civill*, the customs of *Burgundy*, *Boys*, *Berry*, *Nivernois*, and *Lodunois*, &c. *Tous lies fieux & assis en Lodunois, seront gouvernez selon les costumes du dit pays*; All places lying within the precincts of *Lodunois*, shall be governed according to the customs of that place. There are also in *France* the customs of *Normandy*, and these of two kinds; Generally, and Locally: and all purged and reformed by divers Acts of the three Estates. The *Charters* of confirmation of these ancient customs, before and since their reformation have these words: *Nos autem Registrum predictum, usum laudabiles, & consuetudines antiquas, &c. laudamus, approbamus, & autoritate Regia confirmamus*; The Register aforesaid, laudable use, and ancient custome we praise, approve, and by our Kingly authority confirm. The common law of *England* is also compounded of the ancient customs of the same, and of certain *Mixtures* by those customs of the Realm approved. Upon which customs also are grounded those Courts of Record, of the *Chancery*, *Kings Bench*, *Common Pleas*, and *Exchequer*, with other small Courts.

These ancient customs of *England* have been approved by the Kings thereof from age to age: as that custome by which no man shall be taken, imprisoned, diseised, nor otherwise destroyed, but he must first be put to answer by the Law of the Land, was confirmed by the *Statute of Magna Charta*. It is by the ancient custom of *England*, that the eldest son should inherit without partition. In *Germany*, *France*, and elsewhere otherwise, and by partition. In *Ireland* it is the custome for all lands (that have not been resigned into the Kings hands) that the eldest of the House shall enjoy the inheritance during his owne life: and to the second and third eldest (if there be so many brothers) before the Heire in lineall descent: this is called the custome of *Tanistrie*. For example, if a Lord of Land have four sons, and the eldest of those four have also a son, the three brothers of the eldest son shall, after the death of their brother, enjoy their fathers Lands before the grand-child: the custome being grounded

Art. 3. tit. 5.  
G. Capi.

grounded upon the reason of necessity. For the *Irish* in former times, having alwaies lived in a subdivided *Civill* War, not onely the greatest against the greatest, but every *Baron* and *Gentleman* one against another, were enforced to leave successors of age and ability, to defend their own Territories. Now as in *Normandy*, *Burgundy*, and other Provinces of *France*, there are certain peculiar and petty Customs, besides the great and generall custom of the Land, so are there in *England*, and in every part thereof. But the greatest bulk of our Laws, as I take it, are the *Acts of Parliament*: laws propounded and approved by the three estates of the Realm, and confirmed by the King, to the obedience of which all men are therefore bound, because they are *Acts* of choice, and self-desire. *Leges nulla alia causa nos tenent, quam quid judicio populi receptæ sunt*; The laws do therefore bind the subject, because they are received by the judgement of the subject. Tum demum humane leges habent vim suam, cum fuerint non modo institutæ, sed etiam firmate approbatione communitatis; It is then that humane laws have their strength, when they shall not onely be devised, but by the approbation of the people confirmed.

*Isidore* fasteneth these properties to every *Christian* Law, that the same be honest, that it be possible, that it be according to Nature, and according to the custome of the Country; also for the time and place, convenient, profitable, and manifest, and without respect of private profit, that it be written for the generall good. He also gives foure effects of the Law, which *Modestinus* comprehends in two; to wit, obligation, and instigation: the former binds us by fear, to avoid vice; the latter encourageth with hope, to follow vertue. For according to *Cicero*, *Legem oportet esse vitiorum emendatricem, commendatricemque virtutum*: It becometh the Law to be a mender of vices, and a commender of vertue. The part obligatory, or binding us to the observation of things commanded or forbidden, is an effect common to all laws: and it is two-fold; the one constraineth us by fear of our consciences, the other by fear of externall punishment. These two effects the Law performeth, by the exercise of those two powers, to wit, *Coactive* and *Directive*.

The second of these two effects remembred by *Modestinus*, is *Instigation*, or encouragement to vertue, as *Aristotle* makes it the end of the law, to make men vertuous. For laws being such as they ought to be, do both by prescribing and forbidding, urge us to well-doing; laying before us the good and the evill, by the one and the other purchased. And this power affirmative commanding good, and power negative forbidding evill, are those into which the law is divided, as touching the matter: and in which *David* comprehendeth the whole body and substance thereof: saying, *Declina a malo, & fac bonum*, Decline from evill, and do good.

## §. XVI.

That onely the Prince is exempt from humane Laws, and in what sort.

Now whether the power of the humane Law be without exception of any person, it is doubtfully disputed among those that have written of this subject, as well *Divines* as *Lawyers*: and namely, whether Sovereigne Princes be compellable; yea, or no? But whereas there are two powers of the law, as aforesaid; the one *Directive*, the other *Coactive*: to the power *Directive* they ought to be subject, but not to that which constraineth. For as touching violence or punishments, no man is bound to give a pre-judiciall judgement against himself; and if equals have not any power over each other, much lesse have inferiours over their superiours, from whom they receive their authority and strength.

And speaking of the supreme power of laws, simply then is the Prince so much above the laws, as the foul and body united, is above a dead and senselesse carcase. For the King is truly called, *Jus vivum, & lex animata*: An animate and living law. But this is true, that by giving authority to laws, Princes both add greatness to themselves, & conserve it; and therefore was it said of *Bracton* out of *Justinian*; *Mérito debet Rex tribuere legi quod lex attribuit ei*; nam lex facit ut ipse sit Rex; Rightfully ought the King to attribute that the law, which the Law first attributeth to the King; for it is the Law that doth make Kings.

But whereas *Bracton* ascribeth this power to the humane law, he is therein mistaken. For Kings are made by God, and laws divine; and by humane laws onely, declared to be Kings. As for the places remembred by the *Divines* and *Lawyers*, which infer

Ulp. ff. de Leg.  
leg. 3.  
Ang. de creatura  
leg. cap. 31.  
Gratian. in de.  
dist. 4. Cum in  
jura.

Psalme 37.

Bract. l. 2.

a kinde of obligation of Princes, they teach no other thing therein, than the bond of conscience, and profit arising from the examples of vertuous Princes, who are to give an account of their actions to God only.

Pfal. 50.  
Aff. de Leg.

*Ubi soli peccant, faith David; Against thee only have I sinned:* therefore the Prince cannot be said to be subject to the law; *Principes non subijciuntur legi.* For seeing, according to the Schoolmen, the law humane is but quoddam organum & instrumentum potestatis gubernativæ: non videtur posse ejus obligatio ad eum se extendere, ad quem ipsi ejus potestatis humane non pertinet; sed ejus potestatis humane non se extendit ad gubernatorem, in quo illa residet. Ergo neque lex condita per talem potestatem obligare potest ipsam conditionem. Omnis enim potentia activa, est principium transmutandi aliud; Seeing humane law (say they) is but a kind of organ or instrument of the power that governeth, it seems that it cannot extend it self to bind any one whom no humane power can contröll, or lay hold of: but the governour himself, in whom the governing power doth reside, is a person that cannot by himself, or by his own power be contrölled. And therefore the law which is made by such a power, cannot binde the Law-maker himself: for every active ability, is a cause or principle of alteration in another body, not in the body in which it self resides. And seeing Princes have power to deliver others from the obligation of the Law: ergo etiam potest ipsi semet ipsos legem legistorem suam se voluntate pro libito ab obligatione legis liberare; Therefore also may a Prince or Law-maker at his own will and pleasure, deliver himself from the bond of the Law. Therefore in the rules of the Law it is thus concluded: *Subditi tenentur leges observare necessitate coactionis. Princeps vero sola voluntate sua, & intuitu boni communis:* The subjects are bound to fulfill the Law by necessity of compulsion, but the Prince onely by his own will, and regard of the common good.

Greg. de Valentia de Leg.

Now concerning the politick Laws, given by Moses to the Nation of the Israelites, whether they ought to be a President, from which no civill institutions of other people should presume to digresse, I will not presume to determine, but leave it as a question for such men to decide, whose professions give them greater ability. Thus much I may be bold to affirm, That we ought not to seem wiser than God himself, who hath told us, that there are no Laws so righteous, as those which it pleased him to give to his Elect people to be governed by. True it is, that all Nations have their severall qualities, wherein they differ, even from their next borderers, no lesse than in their peculiar languages: which disagreeable conditions to governe aptly, one and the same Law very hardly were able. The Roman civill Laws did indeed contain in order a great part of the then known World, without any notable inconvenience, after such time as once it was received and become familiar: yet was not the administration of it alike in all parts, but yeilded much unto the naturall customs of the sundry people which it governed. For whether it be through a long continued pervasion; or (as Astrologers more willingly grant) some influence of the Heavens; or peradventure some temper of the soile and climate, affording matter of provocation to vice (as plenty make the Sybarites luxurious: want and opportunity to steal, makes the Arabians to be Theeves) very hard it were to forbid by Law an offence so common with any people, as it wanted a name, whereby to be distinguished from just and honest. By such rigour was the Kingdom of Congo unhappily diverted from the Christian Religion, which it willingly at the first embraced, but after with great fury rejected, because plurality of Wives was denied unto them, I know not how necessarily, but more contentiously than seasonably. In such cases, me thinks it were not amiss to consider, that the high God himself permitted some things to the Israelites, rather in regard of their naturall disposition (for they were hard-hearted) than because they were consonant unto the ancient rules of the first perfection. So, where even the generall nature of man doth condemn (as many things it doth) for wicked and unjust; there may the Law, given by Moses, worthily be deemed the most exact reformer of the evil, which forsooth man, as near as may be, to the will and pleasure of his Maker. But where nature or custom hath entertained a vicious, yet not intolerable habit, with so long and so publick approbation, that the vertue opposing it would seem as uncouth, as it were to walk naked in England, or to wear the English fashion of apparrell in Turkey: there may a wise and upright Law-giver, without presumption, omit somewhat that the rigour of Moses Law required; even as the good King Hezekiah did, in a matter merely Ecclesiasticall, and therefore the lesse capable of dispensation, praying for the people; The good Lord be mercifull unto him, that prepareth his whole heart

to

to seek the Lord God, the God of his Fathers, though he be not cleansed according to a Chron. 30. 18, 19. the purification of the Sanctuary; which Prayer the Lord heard and granted.

To this effect it is well observed by Master Doctor Willet, that the morall Judicials of Moses do partly binde, and partly are let free. They do not hold affirmatively, that we are tied to the same severity of punishment now, which was inflicted then; but, negatively they do hold, that now the punishment of death should not be adjudged, where sentence of death is not given by Moses: Christian Magistrates ruling under Christ the prince of peace, that is, of Clemency and Mercy, may abate of the severity of Moses law, and mitigate the punishment of death, but they cannot add unto it, to make the burden more heavey: for to shew more rigour than Moses, becometh not the Gospel.

But I will not wander in this copious argument, which hath been the subject of many learned discourses, neither will I take upon me, to speak any thing definitively in a case which dependeth still in some controversie among worthy Divines. Thus much (as in honour of the Judiciall Law, or rather of him that gave it) I may well and truly say, that the defence of it hath alwaies been very plausible. And surely howsoever they be not accepted (neither were it expedient) as a generall and onely Law: yet shall we hardly find any other ground, whereon the conscience of a Judge may rest, with equall satisfaction in making interpretation, or giving sentence upon doubts arising out of any Law besides it. Hereof, perhaps, that Judge could have been witness, of whom Fortescue, that notable Bulwark of our Laws, doth speak, complaining of a judgement given against a Gentlewoman at Salisbury; who being accused by her own man, without any other proof, for murdering her Husband, was thereupon condemned, and burnt to ashes: the man who accused her, within a yeer after being convict for the same offence, confest that his Mistis was altogether innocent of that cruel fact, whose terrible death he then (though over-late) grievously lamented: but this Judge, faith the same Author, *Sapius ipse mihi fassus est, quod nunquam in vita sua animam ejus de hoc facto ipse purgaret: He himself often confessed unto me, that he should never, during his life, be able to clear his conscience of that fact.* Wherefore that acknowledgement which other Sciences yeeld unto the Metaphysiques, that from thence are drawn propositions, able to prove the principles of Sciences, which out of the Sciences themselves cannot be proved, may justly be granted by all other politique institutions, to that of Moses; and so much the more justly, by how much the subject of the Metaphysiques, which is, *Ens quatenus Ens; Being as it is being;* is infinitely inferior to the *Ens Entium; The being of beings,* the onely good, the fountain of truth, whose fear is the beginning of wisdom. To which purpose well faith S. Augustine, *Conditor legum temporalium si vir bonus est & sapiens, illam in law consilium eternam, de qua nulli anime judicare datum est; The Author of temporall Laws, if he be good and wise, doth therein consult the Law eternall, to determine of which there is no power given to any soul.* And as well Prince Edward, in Fortescue his discourse, *Nemo potest melius aut aliud fundamentum ponere, quam posuit Dominus; No man can lay a better, or another foundation than the Lord hath laid.*

## CHAP. V.

The Story of the Israelites from the receiving of the Law, to the death of MOSES.

### §. 1.

Of the numbering and disposing of the Host of Israel, for their marches through the Wilderness; with a note of the reverence given to the worship of God, in this ordering of their troupe.

WHEN Moses had received the Law from God, and published it among the people, and finished the Tabernacle of the Arke and Sanctuary; he mustred all the Tribes and Families of Israel: and having scene what numbers of Men fit to beare Armes, were found in every Tribe, from twentie yeeres of age upwards; he appointed unto them, by direction from the LORD, such Princes and Leaders, as in Worth and Reputation were in every Tribe most eminent. The number

number of the whole Army was 603550. able men for the wars, besides women and children; also, besides the strangers which followed them out of Egypt. This great Army was divided by *Moses* into four grosse and mighty Battalions, each of which contained the strength of three whole Tribes.

The first of these containing 186400. able men, consisted of three Regiments, which may well, in respect of their numbers, be called Armies; as containing the three whole Tribes of *Judah*, *Issachar* and *Zabulon*. In the Tribe of *Judah* were 74000. fighting men, led by *Nasson*; in *Issachar* 54400. led by *Nathaniel*; in *Zabulon* 57400. led by *Eliab*. All these marched under the Standard of the Tribe of *Judah*, who held the Vant-guard, and was the first that moved and marched, being lodged and quartered at their general incamping on the East side of the Army, which was held the first place, and of greatest dignity.

The second Battalion or Army, called in the Scriptures the host of *Reuben*, had joynted unto it *Simcon* and *Gad*, in number 151450. All which marched under the Standard of *Reuben*. In the Tribe of *Reuben* were 46500. under *Elizur*; in *Simcon* 59300. under *Selumiel*; in *Gad* 45650. under *Elisaph*. These had the second place, and incamped on the South-side of the Tabernacle.

The third Army marched under the Standard of *Ephraim*, to whom were joynted the Regiments of *Manasse* and *Benjamin*; who joynted together, made in number 108100. able men. These marched in the third place, incamping on the West quarter of the Tabernacle. *Ephraim* had 40500. under *Elisbama*; *Manasse* 32200. under *Ganliel*; *Benjamin* 35400. under *Abidam*.

The fourth and last Army, or Squadron, of the generall Army, containing 157600. able men, marched under the Standard of *Dan*; to whom were joynted the two Tribes of *Nephthali* and *Asher*. And these had the Rere-ward, and moved last, incamping on the North-side, *Dan* had 62700. under *Abiezzer*; *Asher* 41500. under *Pagiel*; *Nephthali* 53400. under *Ahira*.

Besides these Princes of the several Tribes, there were ordained Captains over Thousands, over Hundreds, over Fifties, and over Tens; as it may appear by that mutinie and insurrection against *Moses*; *Num.* 16. v. 1 & 2. For there arose up against *Moses* 250. Captains of the Assembly, famous in the Congregation, and men of renown: of which number were *Korah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*. Which three principall Mutiners, with those 250. Captains that followed them, were not any of the 12. Princes of the Tribes or generall Colonels before spoken of, as by their names, *Num.* 1. is made manifest.

The blessing which *Israel* gave to his children, took place not only in the division of the Land of promise, and other things of more consequence, long after following; but even in sorting them under their severall Standards in the wilderness it was observed. For *Judah* had the precedency & the greatest Army, which also was wholly compounded of the Sons of *Leah*, *Jacobs* wife. *Reuben* having lost his birth-right, followed in the second place, accompanied with his brother *Simcon*, who had under-gone his Fathers curse; and with *Gad*, the son of his Mothers Hand-maid. *Joseph*, who in temporall blessings had the prerogative of the first born a double portion, was accounted as two Tribes, and divided into two Regiments: the younger (according to *Jacobs* prophecy) taking place before the elder, he was assisted by *Benjamin*, his best beloved brother, the other son of *Rachel*. To *Dan*, the eldest son of *Jacobs* Concubines, was given the leading of the fourth Army, according to *Jacobs* prophecy. He had with him under his Standard none of the Children of *Leah*, or *Rachel*, but only the sons of the Hand-maids.

In the middle of these four Armies, was the Tabernacle, or portable Temple of the Congregation carried, surrounded by the *Levites*. Neer unto which, as the Heathens and Pagans could not approach, by reason of these four powerful Armies which guarded the same: so was it death for any of the children of *Israel* to come neer it, who were not of the *Levites*, to whom the charge was committed. So sacred was the moveable Temple of God, and with such reverence guarded and transported, as 22000. persons were dedicated to the service & attendance thereof; of which 8580. had the peculiar charge, according to their severall offices and functions; the particulars whereof are written in the third and fourth of *Numbers*. And as the Armies of the people observed the former order in their incampings: so did the *Levites* quarter themselves, as in an inner square, on every side of the Tabernacle; the *Gershurites* on the West, within the Army,

and Standard of *Ephraim*, over whom *Elisaph* commanded, in number 7500. The Family of *Cobash* on the South-side guided by *Elizaphan*, within the Army of *Reuben*, and between him and the Tabernacle, in number 8600. The third company were of the Family of *Merari*, over whom *Zurriel* commanded, in number 6200. and these were lodged on the North-side, within the Army of *Dan*; on the East-side, and next within those Tribes and Forces which *Juda* led, did *Moses* and *Aaron* lodge, and their children, who were the first and immediate Commanders, both of the Ceremonies and of the people; under whom, as the chief of all the other Levitical Families, was *Eleazar* the son of *Aaron*, his succellour in the high Priest-hood.

This was the order of the Army of *Israel*, and of their incamping and marching; the Tabernacle of God being alway set in the middle & center thereof. The reverend care which *Moses* the Prophet, and chosen servant of God, had in all that belonged even to the outward and least parts of the Tabernacle, Ark and Sanctuary, witnessed well the inward and most humble zeale born towards God himself. The industry used in the framing thereof, and every, and the least part thereof; the curious workmanship thereon bestowed; the exceeding charge and expence in the provisions; the dutifull observance in the laying up, and preserving the holy Vessels; the solemn removing thereof; the vigilant attendance thereon, and the provident defence of the same, which all Ages have in some degree imitated, is now so forgotten and cast away in this super-fine Age, by those of the Family, by the *Anabaptist*, *Brownist*, and other *Seſſarier*, as all cost and care bestowed and had of the Church, wherein God is to be served and worshipped, is accounted a kind of Popery, and as proceeding from an idolatrous disposition: inasmuch as time would soon bring to passe (if it were not resisted) that God would be turned out of Churches into Barns, and from thence again into the Fields and Mountains, & under the hedges; and the offices of the Ministry (robbed of all dignity and respect) be as contemptible as those places; all Order, Discipline, and Church-government, left to new-nelle of opinion, and mens fancies: yea, and soon after, as many kinds of Religions would spring up, as there are Parish-Churches within England: every contentious and ignorant person clothing his fancy with the Spirit of God, and his imagination with the gifts of Revelation; inasmuch, as when the Truth, which is but one, shall appear to the simple multitude, no lesse variable than contrary to it self, the Faith of men will soon after die away by degrees, and all Religion be held in scorn and contempt. Which distraction gave a great Prince of Germany cause of this answer to those that perswaded him to become a Lutheran; *Si me adjungo vobis, tunc condemnor ab aliis: si me aliis adjungo, vobis condemnor: quid fugiam video, sed quid sequar, non habeo*: If I adjoyn my self to you, I am condemned by others; If I joyn with others, I am condemned by you: what I should avoid I see, but I know not what I should follow.

## §. II.

The offerings of the twelve Princes: the Passover of the second year: the departing of Jethro.

Now when *Moses* had taken order for all things necessary, provided for the service of God, written the lawes, numbred his Army, and divided them into the battails and troupes before remembred, and appointed them Leaders of all sorts; The twelve Princes or Commanders of the Tribes brought their offerings before the Lord, to wit, six covered Chariots, and twelve Oxen to draw them, therein to transport, as they marched, the parts of the Tabernacle, with all that belonged thereunto, the Sanctuary excepted, which for reverence was carried upon the shoulders of the sons of *Korah*, to whom the charge was committed; and the Chariots, in which was conveyed the other parts of the Tabernacles and Vessels thereto belonging, were delivered to the *Levites* for that service, namely, to the Sons of *Gershon* and *Merari*.

Besides these Chariots, each of these Commanders, Princes, or heads of Tribes, offered unto God, and for his service in the Temple, a Charger of fine silver, weighing 130 shekels; a silver Bowle of 70 shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary; and an Incense-Cup of Gold, of ten shekels, which they performed at the same time when the Altar was dedicated unto God by *Aaron*: and before they marched from *Sinai* towards

Num. 6.

The Hebrew Gerah weigheth sixteen grains: for a Gerah of Silver is about three half pence sterling: the

Side of the Sanctuary (as it is expounded, Exod. 26. 13.) containeth 20 Gerahs, for a Sanctuary Side of Silver is about 70 grains, the common Side is but half: much, to wit, ten Gerahs: as it is usually expounded; though Villalpand labours to prove that the common and the Sanctuary Side were all one, Num. 9. 9. Num. 10. 11. Exod. 26. 13. Deut. 9. 17.

their

their conquest, besides the beasts which they offered for sacrifice, according to the law Ceremonial, the weight of all the twelve silver Chargers, and twelve silver Bowls, amounted unto 2400. shekels of silver; and the weight of gold in the Incense-Cups, to 120. shekels of gold; which makes of shekels of silver 1200. every shekel of gold valuing ten of silver, so that the whole of gold and silver which they offered at this time, was about four hundred and twenty pound sterling. This done, *Moses*, as in all the rest, by the Spirit of God conducted, gave order for the celebrating of the *Passeover*, which they performed on the fourteenth day of the second month of the second year: and on the twentieth day of the same, the cloud was lifted up from above the Tabernacle, as a signe of going forward; *Moses* beginning his march with this invocation to God: *Rise up, Lord, and let thine enemies be scattered; and let them that hate thee, flee before thee.* Then all the people of *Israel* removed from their incamping at the foot of the Mountain *Sinai*, towards *Paran*, the Army, or great Squadron of *Juda*, led by *Naafson*, taking the Vaunt-guard, followed by *Nathaniel* and *Eliab*, Leaders of the Tribes of *Issachar* and *Zabulon*: after whom the rest marched, as in the figure exprest. And because the passage through so many deserts and mountains, was exceeding difficult: *Moses* leaving nothing un-forethought, which might serve for the advancement of his enterprise, he instantly intreated his Father in Law, whom in the tenth of *Numbers* he calleth *Hobab*, to accompany them in their journey towards *Canaan*; promising him such part and profit of the enterprise, as God should bestow on them: for this man, as he was of great understanding and judgement (as appeared by the counsell he gave to *Moses* for the appointing of Judges over the people) so was he a perfect guide in all those parts, himself inhabiting on the frontier thereof, at *Midian*, or *Madian*: and (as it seemeth) a man of great years and experience; for he was then the Priest or Prince of *Midian*, when *Moses* fled first out of *Egypt*; and married his Daughter, which was 42. years before this request made. And though *Moses* himself had lived 40. years in these parts of *Arabia*, through which he was now to travel: yet the better to assure his passage, and so great a multitude of souls, which could not be so few as a million, it was necessary to use many guides, and many conductors. To this request of *Moses*, it may seem by the places, *Exod. 18. 27.* and *Num. 10. 30.* that *Jethro*, otherwise called *Hobab*, yielded not: for it is evident, that he went back from *Moses* into his own Country. But because it appeareth by other places of Scripture, that the posterity of this *Hobab* was mingled with the *Israelites*, it is most likely that this his return to his own Country, was rather to fetch away his Family, and to take his leave of his own Country, by setting things in order, than to abide there.

Judic. 1. 16. &  
4. 11. Also  
1 Sam. 15. 6.  
And 2 Reg. 10.  
15.  
1 Chre. 2. 55.  
Jer. 35.

## §. III.

The voyage from Horeb to Kades: the Mutinies by the way: and the cause of their turning back to the Red Sea.

AFTER this dismissal of *Hobab*, *Israel* began to march towards the Deserts of *Paran*: and after three daies wandering, they sat down at the Sepulchres of lust, afterward called *Tabera*, or *Incenso*: by reason that God consumed with fire those Mutinies and Murderers which rose up in this remove, which happened about the 23. day of the same month. And from this 23. day of the second month, of the second year, they rested & fed themselves with quails (which it pleased God by a Sea-wind to cast upon them) to the 24. day of the third month; so wit, all the month of *Sinan*, or *June*: whereof suffering there died great numbers: from whence in the following month, called *Zib*, answering to our *July*, they went on to *Hazeroth*, where *Miriam* the sister of *Moses* was stricken with the leprosie, which continued upon her seven daies, after whose recovery *Israel* removed toward the border of *Idumea*, and incamped at *Rathma*, near *Kades Barnea*, from whence *Moses* sent the twelve discoverers into the Territory of *Canaan*, both to inform themselves of the fertility and strength of the Country; as also to take knowledge of the Waies, Passages, Rivers, Fords, and Mountains. For *Arad* King of the *Canaanites* surprized divers companies of the *Israelites*, by lying in ambush near those waies, through which the discoverers and searchers of the Land had formerly past. Now, after the return of the discoverers of *Kades*, the wrath of God was turned against *Israel*; whose ingratitude & rebellion after his so many benefits, so many remissions, so many miracles wrought, was such, as they esteemed their deliverance from

Num. 11. & 13.  
Num. 12.

Num. 11.

the Egyptian slavery, his feeding them, and conducting them through that great and terrible Wilderness (for so *Moses* calleth it) with the victory which he gave them against the powerfull *Amalekites*, to be no other than the effects of his hatred, thinking that he led them on and preserved them, but to bring them, their wives, and children to be slaughtered, and given for a prey and spoyle to the *Amorites* or *Canaanites*. For it was reported unto them, by the searchers of the Land, that the Cities of their enemies were walled and defended with many strong Towers and Castles; that many of the people were *Gymtike*, (for they confest that they saw the sons of *Anac* there) who were men of fearful stature, and so far over-topped the *Israelites*, as they appeared to them, and to themselves, but as Grasshoppers in their respect. Now, as this mutiny exceeded all the rest, wherein they both accused God, and consulted to choole them a Captaine (or as they call it now adays, an *Electo*) to carry them back again into *Egypt*; so did God punish the same in a greater measure, than any of the former. For he extinguished every soul of the whole multitude (*Josua* and *Caleb* excepted) who being confident in Gods promises, perswaded the people to enter *Canaan*, being then neer it; and at the mountain foot of *Idumea*, which is but narrow; laying before them the fertility thereof, and assuring them of victory. But as men, whom the passion of fear had bereaved both of reason and common sense, they threatned to stone these encouragers to death; accounting them as men either desperate in themselves, or betrayers of the lives, goods, and children of all their brethren, to their enemies; but God resisted these wicked purposes, and interposing the fear of his bright glory between the unadvised fury of the multitude, and the innocency and constancy of his servants, preserved them thereby from their violence; threatening an intire destruction, of the whole Nation, by sending among them a consuming and mercilesse pestilence. For this was the tenth infraction and rebellion, which they had made, since God delivered them from the slavery of the *Egyptians*. But *Moses* (the mildest or meekest of all men) prayed unto God to remember his infinite mercies; alledging, that this so severe a judgment, how deservedly soever inflicted, would increase the pride of the Heathen Nations, and give them occasion to vaunt, that the God of *Israel*, failing in power to perform his promises, suffered them to perish in these barren and fruitlesse Deserts. Yet as God is no lesse just than mercifull, as God is slow to anger, so is his wrath a consuming fire; the same being once kindled by the violent breath of mans ingratitude: and therefore, as with a hand less heave than hoped for, he scourged this iniquity; so by the measure of his glory (evermore jealous of neglect and derision) he suffered not the wicked to passe unpunished; reserving his compassion for the innocent: whom, because they participated not with the offences of their Fathers, he was pleased to preserve, and in them to perform his promises, which have never been frustrate.

## §. III.

Of their unwillingnesse to return: with the punishment thereof, and of divers accidents in the return.

NOW when *Moses* had revealed the purposes of God to the people, and made them know his heave displeasure towards them, they began to bewaile themselves, though overlate: the times of grace & mens repentance, having also their appointment. And then when God had left them to themselves, and was no more among them, after they had so often plaid and dallied with his mercifull sufferings, they would needs amend their former disobedience by a second contempt, and make offer to enter the Land contrary againe to the advice of *Moses*; who assured them that God was not among them; and that the Ark of his covenant should not move, but by his direction, who could not erre; and that the enemies sword, which God had hitherto bended and rebated, was now left no lesse sharp than death; and in the hands of the *Amalekites* and *Canaanites*, no lesse cruell. But as men from whom God hath with-drawn his grace, do alwaies follow those counsels which carry them to their own destructions: so the *Hebrews*, after they had forsaken the opportunity by God and their Conductors offered; and might then have entered *Judea* before their enemies were prepared and joyntly did afterward, contrary to Gods commandment, undertake the enterprise of themselves, and ran head-long and without advice into the mountains of *Idumea*. There



the *Canaanites* and the *Amalekites* being joyned, and attending their advantage, set on them, brake them, and of their numbers slaughtered the greatest part: and following their victory and pursuit, consumed them all the way of their flight, even unto *Haramah*: the *Amalekites* in revenge of their former losse, and overthrow at *Raphidim*: the *Canaanites* to prevent their dilplantation and destruction threatned. Of which powerful assembly of those two Nations (affisted in all likelihood with the neighbour kings, joyned together for their common safety) it pleased God to forewarn *Moses*, and to direct him another way, than that formerly intended. For he commanded him to return by those painful passages of the Deserts, through which they had formerly travelled, till they found the banks of the red Sea again: in which retreat before they came back to passe over *Jordan*, there were consumed 38. yeers; and the whole number of the 600. and odd thousand, which came out of *Egypt* (*Moses*, *Josua*, and *Caleb* excepted, were dead in the Wilderness, the stubborn and careless generations were wholly worn out, and the promised Land bestowed on their children; which were increased to 600000. and more. For besides the double fault, both of refusing to enter the Land upon the return of their discoverers, and the presumption then to attempt it, when they were countermanded: it seemeth that they had committed that horrible Idolatry of worshipping *Moloch*, and the Host of Heaven. For although *Moses* doth not mention it, yet *Amos* doth, and so doth the Martyr *Stephens*; as also that the *Israelites* worshipped the Sun and Moon in after-times, it is proved out of sundry other places.

Amos 5. 25.  
All: 7. 42.  
2 Kin. 17. 16.  
Eccl. 21. 1. 3.  
Eccl. 23. 1. 4. 5.  
11.  
2 Chron. 35. 3.  
Hieron. 19.  
v. 13. &c.

Nam. 33.

Now after the broken Companies were returned to the Camp at *Cades*, *Moses* according to the commandment received from God, departed towards the South from whence he came, to recover the shoars of the Red Sea. And so from *Cades*, or *Rithmah*, he removed to *Remmonparez*, so called of abundance of Pomegranates there found, and divided among them. From whence he went on to *Libnah*, taking that name of the Frankincense there found. From *Libnah* he crost the Valley, and late down at *Refaj*, neer the foot of the mountain. And after he had rested there, he bended towards the West, and incamped at *Ceclata*; where one of the *Hebrews*, for gathering broken wooden the Sabbath, was stoned to death. After which, *Moses* always keeping the Valley, between two great ledges of mountains, (those which bound the Desert of *Sin*, and those of *Pharan*) crost the same from *Ceclata*, and marched Eastward to the mountain of *Sopher*, or *Sepher*: this making the twentieth mansion. From thence he passed on to *Harada*; then to *Maseloth*; and then to *Thabab*, and so to *Thara* or *Thares*; the foure and twentieth mansion. Where *Moses* rested, the people began that insolent and dangerous mutiny of *Korah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*; who for their contempt of God and his Ministers, were some of them swallowed up alive, and by the Earth, opening her mouth, devoured others, even two hundred and fifty which offered incense with *Korah*, were consumed with fire from Heaven; and 14700. of their party, which murmured against *Moses*, stricken dead with a sudden pestilence: one of the greatest marvels and judgements of God, that hath been shewed in all the time of *Moses* his government, or before. For among so great a multitude, those lay-men, who would have usurped Ecclesiastical authority, were suddenly swallowed up alive into the Earth, with their Families and goods; even while they sought to overthrow the Order, Discipline, and Power of the Church, and to make all men alike therein, rebelliously contending against the High Priest & Magistrate, to whom God had committed the government both of his Church, and Common-weale of his people. And the better to assure the people, and out of his great mercy to confirm them, it pleased him in this place also to approve by miracle the former election of his servant *Aaron*, by the 12. Rods given in by the Heads of the 12. Tribes; of which *Moses* received one of every Head, and Prince of his Tribe: which being all withered and dried Wands, and on every rod the name of the Prince of the Tribe written, and *Aaron* on that of *Levi*, it pleased God, that the rod of *Aaron* received by his power a vegetable spirit, and having lain in the Tabernacle of the Congregation, before the Ark one night, had on it both Buds, Blossoms, and ripe Almonds.

From *Thara* the whole Army removed to *Metbra*; and thence to *Esfongaber*; and thence to *Moseroth*, (or *Masurit*, after *S. Hierome*) and from *Moseroth* to *Benecajan*; and from *Gadgad*, which *Hierome* calleth *Gadgada*; thence to *Jetabata*, the thirtieth Mansion; where from certain fountains of water gathered in one, *Adrichomius* maketh a River, which falleth into the Red Sea, between *Madian* and *Afongaber*.

Now

Now although it be very probable, that at *Afongaber*, where *Solomon* furnished his Fleets for the East India, there was store of fresh water; and though *Herodotus* maketh mention of a great River in Arabia the stonie, which he calleth *Corys*, from whence (saith he) the inhabitants convey water in pipes of leather to other places, by which device the King of Arabia relieved the Army of *Cambyses*: yet is *Adrichomius* greatly deceived, as many times he is, in finding these Springs at *Gadgad*, or *Jetabata*, being the nine and twentieth or thirtieth Mansion. For it was at *Punon*, that those Springs are spoken of, which in *Deuteronomy* the tenth, and the seventh Verse, is also called *Jetabata*, or *Jotbath*, a Land of running waters, and which by all probability fall into the River *Zared*, the next adjoining. And that these Springs should fall into the Red Sea at *Afongaber*, or *Eloth*, I cannot beleeve, for the way thither is very long. And this I finde in *Belonius*, that there are divers Torrents of fresh water in those sandy parts of Arabia: which though they continue their course for a few miles, yet they are drunk up by the hot and thirsty sand, before they can recover the banks of the Red Sea.

From *Jetabata*, *Moses* directed his journey towards the Red Sea, and incamped at *Helvona*, and from thence to *Esfongaber*: which City in *Josephus* time had the name of *Berenice*; and in *Hieromes*, *Fljia*. From thence, keeping the Sea, and *Eloth* on his right hand, he turned towards the North, as he was by God commanded: *Esfongaber* being the farthest place towards the South-East, that *Moses* travelled in that passage.

It seemeth that *Esfongaber*, or *Afongaber*, *Eloth* and *Madian*, were not at this time in the possession of the Kings of Edom. For it is said, 'that the Lord spake unto *Moses* and *Aaron* in the mount *Hor*, neer the coast of the Land of Edom'; so as the Mount *Hor* was at this time in the South border of *Idumea*. And if *Esfongaber*, and the other places neer the Red Sea, had at this present been subject unto the *Idumeans*, *Moses* would also have demanded a free passage through them. It is true, that in the future the *Idumeans* obtained those places: for it is said: And they arose out of *Midian*, and came to *Paran*, and took men with them; which were those companies that followed young *Adad* of *Idumea* into *Egypt*, when he fled from *Joab*. Likewise it is said of *Solomon*, that he made a Navie of ships in *Esfongaber*, besides *Eloth*, in the Land of Edom.

### §. V.

Of *Moses* arrivall at *Zin Kades*: and of the accidents while that they abode there.

From *Esfongaber* he turned again towards the North, and pitched in the Wilderness of *Zin*, which is *Kadesh*: or in *Beroth*, of the children of *Jaean*; where they late down in the first moneth of the fortieth yeer, after they left *Egypt*. For at the next Mansion *Aaron* died in the first day of the fifth moneth of the fortieth yeer: the nine and thirtieth yeer taking end at *Esfongaber*. And at this City of *Cades* (for so it was thought to be) or neer it, died *Miriam*, or *Mary*, *Moses* sister, whose Sepulchre was to be seen in Saint *Hieromes* time, as himself avoweth. From hence ere they departed to the mount *Hor*, all the people murmured most violently against *Moses*, by reason of the scarcity of water. For neither the punishments by fire from Heaven; by being devoured and swallowed up by the earth; by the sudden pestilence, which often seized them; nor any miracle formerly shewing, either the love or wrath of God, could prevail with this Nation any longer, than while they were full fed and satisfied in every of their appetites: but in stead of seeking for help and relief at Gods hands, when they suffered hunger, thirst, or any other want, they murmured, repined, and rebelled, repenting them of their changed estates, and casting ungratefully on *Moses* all their misadventures; yea, though they well knew that their own fathers had left their bodies in the Deserts, and that they were now entred into the fortieth yeer, wherein all their miseries were to take end. And being, as it were, in the sight of the Land promised, they again as obstinately tempted God as in former times, and neither trusted his promises, nor feared his indignation. But as the will and purposes of God

Cc

God

Num. 20. 9.

God are without beginning; so his mercies being without end, he commanded *Moses* to strike a Rock adjoining with his rod; and the waters issued out in a great abundance, with which both themselves and their cattell were satisfied. Nevertheless, because God perceived a kinde of diffidence both in *Moses* and *Aaron* at this place; therefore he permitted neither of them to enter the Land promised, whereto perchance their worldly desires might invite them. But it pleased him to end the travells of *Aaron* at the Mountain *Hor*, being the next, and the four and thirtieth Station. At which

2553.

Mountain of *Hor*, *Aaron* was deploiled of the garments of his Priest-hood, and the same put on *Eleazar* his son, as God had commanded. Which done, *Moses* and *Eleazar* descended the Mountain; but God received *Aaron* on the top thereof, and he was no more seen.

Num. 33.

Of this Mountain called *Hor*, otherwise *Mosera*, as in *Deuteronomy* 10. Verse 6. those *Horites* took name which the *Idumeans* had formerly vanquished. Some there are which make *Mosera*, which was the seven and twentieth Mansion; and *Mosera*, which they write *Moseroth* for difference, which was the four and thirtieth Mansion, and is also called *Hor*, to be two distinct places: because *Moses* in passing from *Cadesbarne* towards *Eziongaber*, incamped at *Mosera*, after he departed from *Hesmona*, and before he came to *Benjamin*. And this *Mosera*, which is also called *Hor*, he came unto after he left *Cades*, where *Miriam*, *Moses* sister died; the first being the seven and twentieth, and the second being the four and thirtieth Mansion. But for *Hor*, which is also called *Mosera*, it should have been written, *Hor* *juxta Mosera*; *Hor* *neer Mosera*: for it is but one root of a Mountain, divided into divers tops, as *Sinai* and *Horeb* are: Whereof the West part *Moses* calleth *Mosera*, and the East part *Horeb*. By the West part *Moses* encamped, as he past towards the *Red Sea* on his left hand; by the East part, as he went back again Northwards towards *Moab*: as in the description of *Moses* his passage through *Arabia*, the Reader may perceive.

Now it was from *Cades*, before they came to *Hor*, because *Hor* belonged to *Edom*, that *Moses* sent messengers to the Prince of *Idumea*, praying him that he might pass with the people of *Israel* through his Territory into the Land of *Canaan*, which bordered it. For it was the neereest way of all other from the city of *Kadesh*, where *Moses* then encamped; whereas otherwise, taking his journey by the Rivers of *Zared*, *Arnon*, and *Jordan*, he might have run into many hazards in the passage of those Rivers, the far way about, and the many powerfull Kings, which commanded in those Regions. Now the better to perswade the Prince of *Idumea* hereunto, *Moses* remembered him, that he was of the same race and family with *Israel*: calling him by the name of brother, because both the *Edomites* and *Israelites* were the sons of one father, to wit, *Isaac*; inferring thereby that he had more reason to favour and respect them, than he had to assist the *Canaanites*: against whom *Esaú* his Ancestor had made war, and driven out the *Horites* (who were of their ancient race descended of *Cham*) out of the Region of *Seir*, calling it by his own name *Edom*, or *Edumea*. He also making a short repetition of Gods blessings bestowed on them, and of his purposes and promises; assured *Edom*, or the King thereof, that he would no way offend his people, or waste his Countrey, but that he would restrain his Army within the bounds of the Common, and Kings high wayes, paying money for whatsoever he used, yea, even for the water, which themselves or their cattell should drink. For *Moses* was commanded by God, not to provoke the children of *Esaú*. But the King of *Edumea* knowing the strength of his own Countrey, the same being near *Canaan*, ramp'd with high and sharp mountains: and withall suspecting, as a naturall

D. N. I. 2. 4.

man, that 600000. strangers being once entered his Countrey, it would rest in their wills to give him law, resolutely refused them passage, and delivered this answer to the Messengers: That if they attempted to enter that way, he would take them for enemies, and resist them by all possible means. And not knowing whether such a denial might satise or exasperate, he gathered the strength of his Countrey together, and shewed himself prepared to defend their passage. For, as it is written; Then *Edom* came out against him (to wit, *Moses*) with much people, and with a mighty power. Whereupon *Moses* considering, that the end of his enterprise was not the conquest of *Seir* or *Edumea*, and that the Land promised was that of *Canaan*: like unto himself who was of a naturall understanding the greatest of any man, and the skilfullest man of war that the

world

world had, he refused to adventure the Army of *Israel* against a Nation, which being overcome, gave but a passage to invade others; and which, by reason of the fear of their mountainous Countrey, could not but have endangered, or (at least) greatly enfeebled the strength of *Israel*, and rendred them lesse able, if not altogether powerlesse, to have conquered the rest.

## §. VI.

Of their compassing *Idumea*, and travelling to *Arnon*, the border of *Moab*.

HE therefore leaving the way of *Idumea*, turned himself towards the East, and marched towards the Desarts of *Moab*. Which when *Arad* King of the *Canaanites* understood, and that *Moses* had blanced the way of *Idumea*; and knowing that it was *Canaan*, and not *Edom*, which *Israel* aimed at, he thought it safest, rather to find his enemies in his neighbours Countrey, than to be found by them in his own: which he might have done with a far greater hope of victory, had *Moses* been enforced first to have made his way by the Sword through *Idumea*, and thereby, though victorious, greatly have lessened his numbers. But although it fell out otherwise than *Arad* hoped for, yet being resolved to make triall, what courage the *Israelites* brought with them out of *Egypt*, before they came neerer his own home; leading the strength of his Nation to the edge of the Desert, he set upon some part of the Army; which, for the multitude occupied a great space, and for the many herds of cattell that they drave with them, could not encamp so neer together, but that some quarter or other was evermore subject to surprise. By which advantage, and in that his attempts were then perchance unexpected, he slew some few of the *Israelites*, and carried with him many prisoners.

Now it is very probable, that it was this *Canaanite*, or his Predecessour, which joyned his forces with the *Amalekites*, and gave an overthrow to those mutinous *Israelites*, which without direction from God by *Moses*, would have entered *Canaan* from *Cadesbarne*. For it seemeth that the greatest number of that Army were of the *Canaanites*, because in the first of *Deuteronomy* 44. the *Amorites* are named alone without the *Amalekites*, and are said to have beaten the *Israelites* at that time. And this *Arad*, if he were the same that had a victory over *Israel*, neer *Cadesbarne*; or if it were his Predecessour that then prevailed; this man finding that *Moses* was returned from the *Red Sea*, and in his way towards *Canaan*, and that the South part of *Canaan* was first to be invaded, and in danger of being conquered, not knowing of *Moses* purpose to compass *Moab*, determined while he was yet in the Desert, to trie the quarrell. And whereas it followeth in the third Verse of the twelfth Chapter of *Numbers*, that the *Israelites* utterly destroyed the *Canaanites* and their Cities, they are much mistaken that think, that this destruction was presently performed by the *Israelites*. But it is to be understood, to have been done in the future, to wit, in the time of *Joshua*. For had *Moses* at this time entered *Canaan* in the pursuit of *Arad*, he would not have fallen back again into the Desarts of *Zin* and *Moab*, and have fetcht a wearisome and needlesse compass, by the rivers of *Zared* and *Arnon*.

Neither is their conjecture to be valued at any thing, which affirm, that *Arad* did not inhabit any part of *Canaan* it self, but that his Territory lay without it, and neer the Mountain *Hor*. For *Hor* and *Zin* *Cades* were the South borders of *Edom*, and not of *Canaan*. And it was in the South of the Land of *Canaan*, that *Arad* dwelt: which South part of *Canaan* was the North part of *Edom*.

Again, *Horma* (for so far the *Israelites* after their victory pursued the *Canaanites*) is soled in the South of *Judea*. There is also a City of that name in *Simoon*. But there is no such place to the South of *Edom*. And were there no other argument, but the mutiny which followed presently after the repetition of this victory, it were enough to prove, that the same was obtained in the future, and in *Joshua* his time, and not at the instant of *Arads* assault. For had the *Israelites* at this time sackt the Cities of *Arad*, they would not the next day have complained for want of water and bread. For where there are great Cities, there is also water and bread. But it was in the time of *Joshua*, that the *Israelites* took their revenge, and after they had past *Jordan*: *Joshua* then governing them; who in the twelfth Chapter and fourteenth Verse, nameth this

Cc 2

Arad

Arad by the name of his City so called; and with him the King of Horma: to which place the Israelites pursued the Canaanites. And he nameth them amongst those Kings, which he vanquished, and put to death.

Now after this assault and surprize by Arad, Moses finding that all entrance on that side was defended, he led the people Eastward to compass Idumea and the Dead Sea, and to make his entrance by Arnon and the Plains of Moab, at that time in the possession of the Amorites. But the Israelites, to whom the very name of a Desert was terrible, began again to rebel against their Leader; till God by a multitude of fiery Serpents, (that is, by the biting of Serpents, whose venom inflamed them, and burnt them as fire) made them know their error, and afterward, according to his plentiful grace, cured them again by their beholding an artificiall Serpent, by his Commandment set up.

From the Mount Hor, Moses leaving the ordinary way which lyeth between the Red Sea, and Celosyria, encamped at Zalmona: and thence he removed to Phunon, where he erected the Brazen Serpent; making these journeys by the edge of Idumea, but without it. For Phunon was sometime a principall City of the Edomites. Now where it is written in Numbers 21. Verse 4. That from Mount Hor they departed by the way of the Red Sea, which grieved the people, it was not thereby meant that the Israelites turned back towards the Red Sea; neither did they march (according to Fonseca) per viam quæ habet à latere maris rubrum; By the way that sided the Red Sea, but indeed they crost, and went athwart the common way from Galaad, Tracemitis, and the Countries of Moab, to the Red Sea, that is, to Esengaber, Eloth, and Midian: which way, as it lay North and South, so Israel to shun the border of Edom, and to take the utmost East part of Moab, crost the common way towards the East, and then they turned againe towards the North, as before.

From Phunon he went to Oboboth, where they entred the Territory of Moab, adjoining to the Land of Suph a Country bordering on the Dead Sea; and from thence to Aberin, the eight and thirtieth Mansion, that is, where the Mountains so called take beginning, and are as yet but small Mountures of Hills, on the East border of Moab; from thence they recovered Dibon Gad, or the River of Zared, which riseth in the mountains of Arabia, and runneth towards the Dead Sea, not far from Petra the Metropolis thereof, being the nine and thirtieth Station. And having past that River, they lodged at Dibon Gad, and from thence they kept the way to Diblathaim, one of the Cities of Moab, which Hieremie the Prophet Chap. 48. Verse 22. calleth the House of Diblathaim, the same which afterward was destroyed among the rest by Nabuchadnezzar. From thence they came to the River of Arnon, and encamped in the mountains of Abarim: though in the 22. of Numbers, Moses doth not remember Helmondiblathaim, but speaketh of his remove from the River of Zared, immediately to the other side of Arnon; calling Arnon the border of Moab, between them and the Amorites: speaking, as he found the state of the Country at that time. For Arnon was not anciently the border of Moab, but was lately conquered from the Moabites, by Sehon King of the Amorites: even from the Predecessour of Balac Peer then reigning. From Diblathaim, Moses sent messengers to Sehon King of the Amorites, to desire a passage through his Countrey: which though he knew would be denied him, yet he desired to give a reason to the neighbour Nations of the war he undertook. And though Edom had refused him as Sehon did, yet he had no warrant from God to enforce him. Moses also in sending messengers to Sehon, observed the same precept which he left to his posterity and successors, for a law of the war; namely, in Deut. 20. 10. in these words; When thou comest neer unto a City to fight against it, thou shalt offer it peace, which if it do accept of and open unto thee, then let all the people found therein be tributaries unto thee, and serve thee; but if it refuse, &c. thou shalt smite all the males thereof with the edge of the sword. Which ordinance all Commanders of Armies have observed to this day, or ought to have done.

## §. VII.

Of the Book of the battels of the Lord mentioned in this Story, and of other Books mentioned in Scripture, which are lost.

Num. 21. 14.

Now concerning the War between Israel and Sehon, Moses seemeth to refer a great part of this Story to that Book intituled, Liber bellorum Domini; The book of Gods battels: and therefore passeth over many encounters, and other things memorable; with

with greater brevity in this place. His words after the Geneva Translation are these: Therefore it shall be spoken in the book of the battels of the Lord, what things he did in the Red Sea, and in the Rivers of Arnon. The Vulgar copie differeth not in sense from this: But the Greek Septuagint vary. For the Greek writes it to this effect; For thus it is said in the book: The war of the Lord hath burnt (or inflamed) Zoob, and the brooks of Arnon. *Junius* for the Red Sea, which is in the Genevean and Vulgar Edition, names the Region of the Rivers of Arnon. In which words hee understands, that amongst the wars which the Lord disposed for the good of the Israelites, there was in those times a famous memorie in the mouth of most men, concerning the war of Sehon against Vabeb, the King of the Moabites, and of his winning the Countrey near Arnon, out of the possession of the Moabites. For this Vabeb was the immediate predecessour of Balac, who lived with Moses: though it be written that this Balac was the son of Zippor, and not of Vabeb. For it seems (as it is plain in the succession of the Edomites) that these Kingdoms were elective, and not successive. And as *Junius* in this translation understandeth no speciall Book of the battels of the Lord: so others, as *Vatablus* in his Annotations, doubt whether in this place any speciall Book be meant; and if any, whether it be not a prediction of wars in future ages, to be waged in these places, and to be written in the book of Judges. *Synacides*, cap. 46. tells us plainly, that those battels of the Lord were fought by Joshua; *Uho* was there (saith he) before him like to him? for he fought the battels of the Lord. But seeing the Histories of the Scripture elsewhere often passe over matters of great weight in few words, referring the Reader to other books written of the same matter at large: therefore it seemeth probable, that such a book as this there was; wherein the severall victories by Israel obtained, and also victories of other Kings, making way for the good of the Israelites, were particularly and largely written. And that the same should now be wanting, it is not strange, seeing so many other Volumes, filled with divine discourse, have perished in the long race of time, or have been destroyed by the ignorant and malicious Heathen Magistrate. For the books of *Hunch*, howsoever they have been in later ages corrupted, and therefore now suspected, are remembered in an Epistle of *Thaddæus*, and cited by *Origen* *2. de 1. 2. 2. 2.* and by *Tertullian*.

That work also of the Patriarch Abraham, of Formation, which others bestow on Rabbi Achiba, is no where found. The Books remembered by Joshua, cap. 10. v. 13. and in the second of Samuel, c. 1. v. 18. called the Book of Jasher, or Jashurim, is also lost; wherein the stay of the Sun and Moon in the middle of the Heavens is recorded, and how they stood still till Israel had avenged themselves of their enemies: out of which also David took the precept of teaching the children of Juda, to exercise their bowes against their enemies.

Some think this to be the book of eternall Predestination, in which the just are written according unto the sixty and ninth Psalm, v. 28. where it is said: Let them be put out of the Book of Life, neither let them be written with the righteous. *Hierome* thinks, that David by this Book understood those of Samuel; Rabbi Solomon, that the books of the Law are thereby meant, in which the acts of the just Abraham, of Isaac, Jacob, and Moses are written. Others, that it was the book of Exodus. Others, as *Theodoretus*, that it was a Commentary upon Joshua, by an unknown Author.

The book of Chozar, concerning Manasse, remembered in the second of Chron. cap. 33. 18. & 19. Of this book, also lost, *Hierome* conceives, that the Prophet Elyas was the Author.

The same mischance came as well to the Story of Solomon, written by Abia Silonites, who met with Jeroboam, and foretold him of his obtaining the Kingdom of Israel from the son of Solomon: As to the books of Nathan the Prophet, and to those of Jedo the Seer, remembered in the second of Chron. c. 9. v. 29. With these have the books of She-matah and of Iddo, remembered in the second of Chron. c. 12. v. 15. perished: and that of Jehu the son of Hanani, of the acts of Jehoshaphat, cited in the second of Chron. cap. 20. v. 34. Also that book of Solomon which the Hebrews write Hascirim, of 5000. verses,

of which that part called *Canticum Canticorum*, onely remaineth, 1 Kings 4. 32. and with this divers others of *Solomon's* works have perished, as his Book of the natures of Trees, Plants, Beasts, Fishes, &c. 1 Kings 4. 33. with the rest remembered by *Origen*, *Josephus*, *Hierome*, *Cedrenus*, *Cicero*, *Arculanus*, *Picus*, *Mirandula*, and others.

Of these and other Books many were consumed with the same fire, wherewith *Nebuchadnezzar* burnt the Temple of *Hierusalem*. But let us return thither where we left.

## §. VIII.

of Moses his sparing the issue of Lot; and of the Giants in those parts; and of *Sehon* and *Og*.

When *Moses* had past *Arnon*, he incamped on the other side thereof at *Abarim*, opposite to the City of *Nibo*; leaving the City of *Midian* on the left hand, and attempting nothing upon the *Moabites* on that side. For *Moab* did at this time inhabit on the South-side of *Arnon*, having lost all his ancient and best Territory, which was now in the possession of *Sehon* the *Amorite*. For *Moses* was commanded by God not to molest *Moab*, neither to provoke them to battaile, God having given that Land to the children of *Lot*; the same which was anciently possessed by the *Emims*, who were men of great stature, and comparable to those Giants called *Anakims*, or the sons of *Anac*.

God also commanded *Moses* to spare the *Ammonites*, because they likewise were descended of *Lot*: who had expelled from thence those Giants, which the *Ammonites* called *Zamzummins*. For it seemeth that all that part, especially to the East of *Jordan*, even to the Desert of *Arabia*, as well on the West, as on the East-side of the Mountains of *Gilead*, was inhabited by Giants. And in the plantation of the Land promised, the *Israelites* did not at any time passe those Mountains to the East of *Basan*, but left their Country to them, as in the description following is made manifest. We find also, that as there were many Giants both before and after the flood: so these Nations, which anciently inhabited both the border of *Canaan*, and the Land it self, had among them many Families of Giant-like men. For the *Anakims* dwelt in *Hebron*, which sometimes was called the City of *Arbah*, which *Arbah* in *Joshua* is called the father of the *Anakims*; and the greatest man of the *Anakims*. There had also bin Giants in the Land of the *Moabites*, called *Emims*: and their chiefe City was *Aroer* or *Ar*, neere the River of *Arnon*. To the Giants of the *Rephaims*, the *Ammonites* gave the name of *Zamzummins*; which were of the same ancient *Canaanites*: and their chiefe City was *Rabbat*, afterward *Philadelphia*. They were also called *Luzims*, which is as much to say, as *very robust*, *horrendous*, *Gigantes*, *Strong men*, and *feayfull Giants*, who inhabited other Cities of *Ham*, or *Hem*, in the same Province, and not far to the North of *Aroer*.

Now *Moses* having past *Arnon*, and being incamped at *Abarim*; and having (as before) sent to *Sehon*, as he had done to *Edom*, to pray a passage through his Country, was denied it. For *Sehon* being made proud by his former conquest upon *Abel* the *Moabite*; which Nation the *Amorites* esteemed but as strangers and usurpers, (themselves being of the sons of *Canaan*, and the *Moabites* of *Lot*) refused to grant *Israel* any entrance that way; and withall, prepared to encounter *Moses* with as much speed as he could, because *Moses* encamped in the Countrey of his new conquests, to wit, the Plains of *Moab*, the two and fortieth and last Mansion: which *Moses* waited with the multitude of his people and cattell. Towards him therefore hastning himself, they encountered each other at *Jabaz*: where *Sehon* with his children and people were broken and discomfited: and the victory pursued by *Moses*, as few or none of the *Amorites* escaped. Hee also slaughtered all the Women and Children of the *Amorites*, which he found in *Essebon*, and all the other Cities, Villages, or Fields; they being of the race of *Canaan*, as those of *Basan* also were, and descended of *Emims*, or *Amoreus*: for *Moses* calleth the *Basanites* also *Amorites*. And although *Israel* might now have taken a ready way and passage into *Judea*, being at this time, and after this victory at the banks of *Jordan*: yet hee knew it to be perillous to leave so great a part of that Nation of the *Amorites* on his back, as inhabited all the Region of *Basan* or *Tracottis*: and therefore he led on his Army to invade *Og*: a person of exceeding strength and stature, and the onely man of mark remaining of the ancient Giants

of those parts, and who at that time had 60. Cities walled and defended: lying between the Mountain of *Hermion* (which Mountain, saith *Moses*, the *Sidonians* call *Sbiron*, and the *Amorites*, *Shenir*) and the River of *Jordan*. And it befell unto the King of *Basan* who attended *Moses* coming at *Edrei*: as it did unto *Sehon*: for he and his sons perished, and all his Cities were taken and possessed. After this, *Moses* with-drawing himself back again to the Mountains of *Abarim*, left the prosecution of that war unto *Jair* the son of *Mansise*: who conquering the East parts of *Basan*, to wit, the Kingdom of *Argob*, even unto the Nations of the *Gessuri* and *Muchati*, 60. walled Cities, called the same after his own name *Haroth Jair*: of all which conquests afterward the half Tribe of *Manasse* possessed the North part as far as *Edrei*, but the East part that belonged to *Sehon* the *Amorite*, with the Mountains of *Gilead* adjoining, was given to *Ruben*, and unto *Gad*.

## §. IX.

Of the troubles about the *Madianites*, and of *Moses* his death.

After these victories, and while *Israel* sojourned in the valley of *Moab*, the *Madianites* and *Moabites* (over both which Nations it seemeth that *Balaam* King of the *Moabites* then commanded in chief) sought, according to the advice of *Balaam*, both by alluring the Hebrews to the love of their daughters, and by perswading them to honour and leave their Idols, to divide them both in Love and Religion among themselves: thereby the better both to defend their own interest against them, as also to beat them out of *Moab*, and the Countries adjoining. The *Israelites* as they had ever been inclined, so were they now easily perswaded to these evil courses, and thereby drew on themselves the plague of pestilence, whereof there perished 24000. persons: besides which punishment of God, the most of the offenders among the Hebrews, were by his commandment put to the Sword, or other violent deaths: after this, when that *Phineas* the son of *Eleazar* had pierced the bodies of *Zimri*, a Prince of the *Simeonites*, together with *Cosbi*, a Daughter of one of the chief of the *Midianites*, the plague ceased, and Gods wrath was appeased. For such was the love and kindnesse of his all-powerfulnesse, respecting the ardent zeal of *Phineas* in prosecuting of *Zimri* (who being a chief among the Hebrews, became an Idolater) as he forgave the rest of *Israel*, and stayed his hand for his sake.

In this valley it was that *Moses* caused the people to be numbred the third time: and there remained of able men fit to bear arms, 601730. of which as his last enterprise, he appointed 12000. to be chosen out, to invade the Cities of *Midian*, who, together with the *Moabites*, practised with *Balaam* to curse *Israel*: and after that, sought to allure them (as before remembered) from the worship of the true God, to the service of *Beth-Peor*: and to the rest of their barbarous Idolatry. Over which Companies of 12000. *Moses* gave the charge to *Phineas* the son of *Eleazar* the high Priest: who slew the five Princes of the *Midianites*, which were, or had lately been, the vassals of *Sehon*, as appeareth by *Joshua*. These five Princes of the *Midianites* slain by *Eleazar*, were at this time but the vassals of *Sehon* the *Amorite*, to wit, *Evi*, *Rakem*, *Zur*, *Hur*, and *Rea*, the Dukes of *Sehon*, saith *Joshua*. He slew also the men, male-children, and women; saving such as had not yet used the company of men, but those they saved, and dispersed them among the children of *Israel* to serve them.

And *Moses* having now lived 120. yeers, making both his own weaknesse of body known to the people, and his inability to travail: and also that he was forewarned of his end by the Spirit of God, from whom he received a new commandment to ascend the Mountains of *Abarim*, and thereon to render up his life: He hastned to settle the government in *Joshua*: whom he perswaded with most lively arguments to prosecute the conquest begun, assuring him of Gods favour and assistance therein. And so having spent these his latter daies after the Conquest of *Og*, and *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*, in the repetition and exposition of the Law, (or an iteration of the Law, according to *Saint Augustine*) using both arguments, prayers, and threats unto the people, which he often repeated unto them; thereby to confirm them in knowledge, love, fear, and service, of the all-powerfull God: He blessed the twelve Tribes, that of *Simeon* excepted, with severall and most comfortable blessings: praising the greatnesse and goodness

Deut. 32. 1.  
Deut. 34. 6.

ness of him, unto whom in his prayers he commended them: He also commanded the Priests to lay up the Book of the Law, by the side of the Ark of God: The last that he indited, was that Prophetical Song, beginning: *Hearken ye Heavens, and I will speak, and let the Earth hear the words of my mouth:* and being called by God from the labours and sorrows of this life, unto that rest which never afterward hath disquiet, he was buried in the Land of *Moab*, over against *Beth-Peor*: but no man knoweth of his Sepulchre to this day; which happened in the year of the World 2554.

## §. X.

*Observations out of the Story of Moses, how God disposeth both the smallest occasions, and the greatest resistances, to the effecting of his purpose.*

NOW let us a little, for instruction, look back to the occasions of sundry of the great events, which have been mentioned in this Story of the life of *Moses*, for (excepting Gods miracles, his promise, and fore-choice of this people) he wrought in all things else by the medium of mens affections, and naturall appetites. And so we shall finde that the fear which *Pharaoh* had of the increase of the *Hebrews*, multiplied by God to exceeding great numbers, was the next naturall cause of the sorrows and losse, which befell himself, and the *Egyptian* Nation: which numbers when he sought by cruell and ungodly policies to cut off and lessen, as when he commanded all the male children of the *Hebrews* to be slain, God (whose providence cannot be resisted, nor his purposes prevented by all the foolish and salvage craft of mortall men) moved compassion in the heart of *Pharaoh's* own daughter, to preserve that child, which afterward became the most wife, and of all men the most gentle and mild, the most excellently learned in all Divine and Humane knowledge, to be the conductor and deliverer of his oppressed brethren, and the overthrow of *Pharaoh*, and all the flower of his Nation; even then, when he sought by the strength of his men of War, of his Horse, and Chariots, to tread them under, and bury them in the dust. The grief which *Moses* conceived of the injuries, and of the violence offered to one of the *Hebrews* in his own presence, moved him to take revenge of the *Egyptian* that offered it: the ingratitude of one of his own Nation, by threatening him to discover the slaughter of the *Egyptian*, moved him to flee into *Madian*: the contention between the Shepherds of that place, and *Jabris* Daughters, made him known to their Father; who not onely entertained him, but married him to one of those Sisters: and in that solitary life of keeping of his Father-in-Laws sheep, far from the presse of the World, contenting himself (though bred as a Kings Son) with the lot of a poor Herd-man, God found him out in that Desert, wherein he first suffered him to live many yeers, the better to know the waies and passages through which he purposed that he should conduct his people, toward the Land promised: and therein appearing unto him, he made him know his will and divine pleasure for his return into *Egypt*. The like may be said of all things else, which *Moses* afterward by Gods direction performed in the Story of *Israel* before remembered. There is not therefore the smallest accident, which may seem unto men as falling out by chance, and of no consequence; but that the same is caused by God to effect somewhat else by: yea, and oftentimes to effect things of the greatest worldly importance, either presently, or in many yeers after, when the occasions are either not considered, or forgotten.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the Nations with whom the Israelites had dealing after their coming out of Egypt; and of the men of renown in other Nations, about the times of Moses and Josua, with the sum of the History of Josua.*

## §. I.

*How the Nations with whom the Israelites were to have War, were divers waies, as it were, prepared to be their enemies.*

LIKE manner if we look to the quality of the Nations, with whom the *Israelites*, after their coming out of *Egypt*, had to do, either in the Wildernesse, or afterward, we shall finde them long before-hand, by the disposing providence of God, as it were prepared for enmity: partly in respect that they were most of them of the issue of *Canaan*, or at least of *Ham*; and the rest (as the *Edomites*, *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, and *Israelites*) were mingled with them by mutual marriages: whereas the *Israelites* still continued strangers, and separate from them: and so partly in this respect, and partly by ancient injuries or enmities, and partly by reason of diversity in Religion, were these Nations, as it were prepared to be enemies to the *Israelites*: and so to serve for such purposes as God had reserved them for. To make these things more manifest, we must understand that this part of *Syria*, bounded by the mountains of *Libanus*, and *Zidon* on the North, by the same mountains continued as far as the Springs of *Arnon* on the East: by the way of *Egypt*, and the *Red Sea*, on the South: and by the *Mediterranean* Sea on the West: was inhabited and peopled by two Nations, the one springing from the sons of *Cham*, the other from *Sem*: but those of *Sem* were but as strangers therein for a long time, and came thither, in effect, but with one Family, to wit, that of *Abraham*, and a few of his kinned. The other for the greater part, were the *Canaanites*, the ancient Lords and possessors of those Territories, by proceesse of time divided into severall Families and names: whereof some of them were of eminent stature and strength, as the *Anakims*, *Zamzumims*, or *Zuzim*, *Emims*, *Horites*, and others. These (as men most valiant and able commonly do) did inhabit the utter borders and Mountains of their Countries: the rest were the *Zidonians*, *Jebusites*, *Amorites*, *Hevites*, *Hetites*, and others, who took name after the sons of *Canaan*, and after whom the Country in generall was still called.

As for the *Hebrews* which descended of *Shem* by *Abraham*, they were of another Family, and strangers in that Country, especially the *Israelites*: and this was some cause that the *Canaanites* did not affect them, or indure them, no more than the *Philistines* did, who descended also of *Cham* by *Mizraim*. For though *Abraham* himself being a stranger, was highly esteemed and honoured among them; especially by the *Amorites* inhabiting the West part of *Jordan*: yet now even they which descended from *Abraham*, or from his kinned, abode and multiplied in those parts, were alienated in affections from the *Israelites*, as holding them strangers and intruders: making more account of their alliance with the *Canaanites*, and the rest of the issue of *Cham*, with whom they daily contracted affinity, than of their old pedigree from *Abraham*.

True it is, that these Nations descended of *Abraham*, or of his kinned, who had linked themselves, and marched with the *Canaanites* and others, had so far posset themselves of the borders of those Regions, as they began to be equall in strength to the bordering *Canaanites*, if not superiour. For of *Lot* came those two great Families of the *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*: of *Esau* the *Idumaeans*: of *Madian* the *Madianites*: of *Ismael* the eldest son of *Abraham*, came the *Ismaelites*, with whom are joynd, as of the same Nation, the *Amalekites*; whom though the more common opinion thinketh to have been a Tribe of *Edom*, because *Esau* had a grand-child of that name, yet manifest reason convinceth it to have been otherwise. For the *Israelites* were forbidden to provoke the *Edomites*, or do them any wrong; whereas contrariwise *Amalek* was cursed, and endless war decreed against him: but hereof more elsewhere, Chap. 8. §. 3. Of *Ismaels* eldest

\* It seemeth also that *Hur*, the Son of *Na-hor*, and *Buz* his Brother, placed themselves in the East side of *Jordan*, about *Baan*: where they finde the Land of *Hur*, in which *Job* dwelt as one of the issue of *Hur*, the Son of *Na-hor*, and *Elisa*, his friend which is called a *Ba-achite*. See hereafter chap. 10. §. 7.

Deut. 17. 16.  
Deut. 11. 5.

Deut. 11. 5.

Exod. 17. 16.

Gen. 17.

eldest son Naboth sprung the Arabians of Petra, called Nabathai. Now even as Abraham besought God to bleſſe *Iſmael*, ſo it pleaſed him both to promiſe and perform it. For of him thoſe twelve Princes came, which inhabited, in effect, all that Tract of Land between *Havilah* upon *Tygris*, and *ſur* which is the Weſt part of the Deſart of *Arabia Petraea*. Yet howſoever the ſtrength of theſe later named Nations, which deſcended from *Abraham*, were great; it is not unlikely, but that ſome reaſon which moved them not to favour the entrance of the *Iſraelites* into *Canaan*, was in reſpect of fear: becauſe all Princes and States do not willingly permit any ſtranger or powerful Nation to enter their Territories. Wherefore, though all theſe Families before named, were not united in and among themſelves, but that they had their jealousies of each other, and contended for dominion: yet fearing a third more ſtrong than themſelves, whether they ſtood apart or united, they were taught by the care of their own preſervation, to joyn themſelves together againſt *Iſrael*: though they did it nothing ſo maliciously and reſolv'dly as the *Canaanites* did. For the *Edumæans* only denied the *Hebrews* a paſſage, which the *Moabites* durſt not deny: becauſe their Country lay more open; and becauſe themſelves had lately been beaten out of the richeſt part of their Dominions, by the *Amorites*: and as for the *Ammonites*, their Country lay altogether out of the way, and the ſtrength of *Sehon* and *Og*, Kings of the *Amorites*, was interjacent: and beſides that, the border of the *Ammonites* was ſtrong; by reaſon of the mountains which divided it from *Baſan*. Again, that which moved the *Moabites* in their own reaſon not much to interrupt *Iſrael*, in the conqueſt of *Sehon* the *Amorite*, and of *Og* his confederate, was, that the *Moabites* might hope, after ſuch time as the *Amorites* were beaten by *Mos*, that themſelves might recover again their own inheritance: to wit, the Vallies and Plains lying between the mountains of *Arabia* and *Jordan*: But as ſoon as *Sehon* was ſlain, and that the King of *Moab*, *Balaam*, perceived that *Mos* allotted that Valley to the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*, he began to praſtice with *Balaam* againſt *Iſrael*, and by the daughters of *Midian*, as aforeſaid, to allure them to Idolatry: and thus at the length the *Moabites*, by ſpecial occaſion, were more and more ſtirred up to enmity againſt *Iſrael*. And as for divers of the reſt that were deſcended from *Abraham's* kined, we may note, how in the beginning, between the Authours of their Pedigrees, God permitted ſome enmities to be, as it were, preſages of future quarrels, which in the polterity might be the eaſier incended by the memory of old grudges: and withall, by ſome diſdain from the elder in nature to the younger. For the *Iſmaelites* being deſcended from the eldeſt ſon of *Abraham*, and the *Edomites* from the eldeſt ſon of *Isaac*, *Jacob*, being but a ſecond ſon, of a ſecond brother; thoſe Princes which were deſcended of the elder Houſes, being naturall men, might ſcorn to give place, much leſſe to ſubject themſelves to their inferiours, as they took it: and for a more aggravation, the illuſes of *Eſau*, Princes of *Idumæa*, might keep in record, that their Parent was bought out of his birth-right by *Jacob's* taking his advantage, and that he was deceived of his fathers bleſſing alſo by him: and that *Jacob*, after reconciliation, came not unto him as he promiſed, into *Seir* or *Idumæa*.

Gen. 25.

Gen. 27.

Gen. 33-14.

So alſo in the poſterity of *Iſmael*, it might remain as a ſeed or pretence of enmity, that their fore-father was by the intigation of *Sara*, caſt out into the Deſart, with his mother *Hagar*; and had therein perished, but that it pleaſed God by his Angel to relieve them. *Iſmael* alſo had an Egyptian both to his mother and to his wife: and *Amalec* was alſo an *Horite* by his mother: which *Horites* were of the ancient *Canaanites*. The *Edumæans* alſo, or *Edomites*, were by their Maternall line deſcended of the *Canaanites*. For *Eſau* took two wives of that Nation: one of them was *Adath*, the daughter of *Ezer*, the *Hittite*; and the other *Aholibamah*, the grand-child of *Zibeon*, the *Hevite*, Lord of *Seir*, before the ſame was conquered by *Eſau*, and called after his name, *Edom*, or *Idumæa*.

Gen. 36.

Laſtly, it appeareth that all thoſe Families of the *Iſmaelites*, *Amalekites*, *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Edomites*, &c. were in proceſſe of time corrupted, & drawn from the knowledge and worſhip of God, and became Idolaters, infected and ſeduced by the conveſation of thoſe people among whom they dwelt, and by thoſe wives of the *Canaanites* which they had married: onely a few of the *Kenites* and thoſe *Madianites*, which inhabited on the edge of the *Red Sea*, whereof *Jethro* was Prielt, or Prince, or both, worſhipped the true and ever-living God.

§. 11.

§. 11.

of the Kings of the *Canaanites* and *Madianites*, mentioned in the ancient Wars of the *Iſraelites*.

OF the Kings of the *Canaanites*, deſcended of *Cham*, (for *Melchizedek* may be thought to be of a better Pedigree) we find four named by *Mos*: and one and thirty remembered by *Joſua*, though few of theſe named, otherwiſe than by the Cities over which they commanded: to which each of them had a ſmall Territory adjoining, and no other Dominion. Theſe *Canaanites* in a generall conſideration are to be underſtood for all thoſe Nations, deſcended of *Cham* by *Canaan*, as the *Hittites*, *Jebuſites*, *Amorites*, *Gergeſites*, *Hevites*, &c. and ſo here we underſtand this name in ſpeaking of the Kings of the *Canaanites*: and ſo alſo we call the Country of their habitation, the holy Land, or the Land of promiſe: for God hath appointed that the ſeven principle Families ſhould be rooted out, and that his own people ſhould inherit their Lands and Cities. But if we conſider of the name and Nation in particular, then is their proper habitation bounded by *Jordan*, on the Eaſt, and by the *Mediterranean Sea* on the Weſt: in which narrow Country, and in the choyeſt places thereof, thoſe *Canaanites* which held their Paternall name chiefly inhabited.

The firſt King of theſe Nations, named in the Scriptures, was *Hamor* or *Hemer*, of the *Gen. 34*. *Hevites*, whom *Simcon* and *Levi* ſlew, together with his ſon *Sichem*, in revenge of their ſisters raviſhment.

*Arad* was the ſecond King which the Scriptures have remembered, who had that part of *Canaan* towards the South, neighbouring *Edom* and the *Dead Sea*; the ſame which ſurpriſed *Iſrael*, as they encamped in the *Wilderneſſe* in the edge of *Edumæa*. Num. 21. 1.

The third named was *Sehon* King of *Eſſebon*, who before *Mos*'s arrivall had beaten the *Moabites* out of the Weſt part of *Arabia Petraea*, or *Nabatheia*, and thruſt them over *Arnon* into the Deſerts, the ſame whom *Mos*'s overthrow in the plains of *Moab*: at which time he took *Eſſebon*, and all the Cities of the *Amorites*. Num. 21. 24.

Preſently after which victory, *Og* was alſo ſlain by *Iſrael*, who commanded the North part of that Valley between the Mountains *Tracon*, or *Galaad*, and *Jordan*, who was alſo a King of the *Amorites*. Joſ. 9. Joſeph. ant. lib. 4. c. 5.

The fifth was *Adonibezek* King of the *Jebuſites*, and of *Hiernſalem*, with whom *Joſua* nameth four other Kings.

*Hebam*, King of *Hebron*.

*Pirani*, King of *Jarmuth*.

*Jepia*, King of *Lachis*: and

*Deber*, King of *Eglon*, who were all *Amorites* overthrowne in battell; and hanged by *Joſua*. Joſ. 10.

After this overthrow *Joſua* nameth *Jabin*, King of *Hazor*; and *Jobab*, King of *Madon*: whom he alſo ſlaughtered, and took his Cities: and this *Jabin* ſeemed to have ſome dominion over the reſt; for it is ſaid in the Text, For *Hazor* be- Joſ. 11. 1.

foretime was the head of all theſe Kingdoms. After theſe *Adonibezek* that notorious Tyrant is named: who confeſt that he had cut off the thumbs of the hands and feet of ſeventy Kings, inforcing them to gather crumbs under his Table: who, after *Juda* and *Simcon* had uſed the ſame execution upon himſelf, acknowledged it to be a juſt revenge of God: this King was carried to *Hiernſalem* where he died. Joſ. 1. 1. Joſeph. l. 5. c. 2.

The laſt King named is *Jabin* the ſecond, who as it ſeemeth had rebuilt *Hazor*, burnt by *Joſua*. For at ſuch time as he employed *Siſara* againſt *Iſrael*, whom he oppreſt twenty years, after the death of *Ehud*, he inhabited *Hazor*. This *Jabin*, *Barac* (encouraged by *Debra*) overthrow; and his Captain *Siſara* had by *Jael*, the wife of *Heber* the *Kenite*, a nail driven into his head while he ſlept in her Tent: *Jabin* himſelf periſhing afterward in that war. Joſ. 4. 1. Joſeph. l. 5. c. 6.

The *Madianites* had alſo their Kings at times, but commonly mixt with the *Moabites*: and they held a corner of Land in *Nabatheia*: to the South-eaſt of the *Dead Sea*. They deſcended from *Madian* *Abraham's* ſon, by *Cethura*. *Raguel* ſurnamed *Gethgileu* or *Jether*, ſiſter of *Joſeph*, called *Jethro* in *Exodus*, *Keniz* in the firſt of *Judges*, the ſon of *Dur*, the grand-child of *Jexaris*, or *Jokſham*, the great grand-child of *Abraham* by *Cethura*. Exod. 3.



*thura*, was Priest or Prince of the *Madianites*; by the Red Sea: whose Daughter or Niece, *Moses* married, and of whom I have spoken elsewhere more at large. This *Jethro*, if he were not the same with *Hobab*, must be his father: and this *Hobab* had seven daughters. He guided *Moses* in the *Wilderness*, and became one of the *Israelites*: of him descended the *Kenites*, so called of his father *Raguel's* surname, of which *Kenites* was *Heber*, which had peace with *Jabin* the second, even now remembered.

At such time as *Saul* invaded the *Amalekites*, he knowing the good affection of the *Kenites* to *Israel*, gave them warning to separate themselves: and yet the *Kenites* had strong seats, and lived in the mountains of the *Desarts*.

The Kings of the *Canaanites*, and *Madianites*, and the *Amalekites*, as many as I find named, were these:

1. *Homar* the *Hevite* of *Sichem*
2. *Arac* of the South parts
3. *Sehon* of *Essebon*
4. *Og* of *Basjan*
5. *Adonizedek* the *Jebusite*, king of *Hiernusalem*
6. *Hobab* of *Hebron*
7. *Piram* of *Jarmuth*
8. *Japia* of *Lachis*
9. *Debir* of *Eglon*
10. *Jabin* of *Hazor*
11. *Jobab* of *Modon*
12. *Adonibezek* of *Bzek*, and
13. *Jabin* the second King of *Hazor*.

Of the *Madianites* these:

\* *Evi* or *Eni*.

*Rekam* or *Rekem* who bulit *Petra* the Metropolis of *Petrea*, so called by the *Greeks*: and by *Esay*, cap. 16. v. 1. and *Selah*, which is as much as *Petra*: and so also it is called 2 *Reg.* 14. 7. where it is also called *Joktheel*.

- Zur*  
*Hur* and  
*Reba*  
\* *Oreb*  
*Zeb*  
*Zebab*  
*Zalmunna*.

After the death of *Barac*, Judge of *Israel*, the four last named of these *Madianite* Kings, vexed *Israel* seven years: till they being put to flight by *Gideon*, two of them, to wit, *Oreb* and *Zeb*, were taken and slain by the *Ephraimites*, at the passage of *Jordan*, as in the 6, 7. and 8. of *Judges* it is written at large. Afterward in the pursuit of the rest, *Gideon* himself laid hands upon *Zebab* and *Salmuna*, or *Zalmunna*, and executed them, being prisoners; in which expedition of *Gideon* there perished 120000. of the *Madianites* and their confederates. Of the *Idumeans*, *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*, I will speak hereafter in the description of their Territories.

### §. III.

Of the *Amalekites* and *Ismaelites*.

OF the kings of the *Amalekites* and *Ismaelites*, I find few that are named; and though of the *Ismaelites* there were more in number than of the rest (for they were multiplied unto a greater Nation, according unto the promise of God made unto *Abraham*) yet the *Amalekites*, who together with the *Midianites* were numbered among them, were more renowned in *Moses* time than the rest of the *Ismaelites*. So also were they when *Saul* governed *Israel*. For *Saul* pursued them from *Sur* unto *Havilah*, to wit, over a great part of *Arabia Petrea*, and the *Desart*. The reason to me seemeth to be this: That the twelve Princes which came of *Ismael*, were content to leave those barren *Desarts* of *Arabia Petrea*, called *Sur*, *Paran*, and *Sin*, to the issue of *Abraham* by *Cetur*, that

that joyned with them (for so seem the *Amalekites* to have been, and so were the *Madianites*): themselves taking possession of a better soil in *Arabia the Happy*, and about the Mountains of *Galaad* in *Arabia Petrea*: For *Nabaioth* the eldest of those twelve Princes planted that part of *Arabia Petrea*; which was very fruitfull, though adjoining to the *Desart* in which *Moses* wandered, afterward called *Nabathe*: the same which neighboureth *Judea* on the East-side. They also peopled a Province in *Arabia the Happy*, whereof the people were in after-times called *Napathes* (B) changed into (P.)

*Kedar*, the second of *Ismaels* sons, gave his own name to the East-part of *Basan*, or *Batanea*, which was afterward possessed by *Manasse*, so much thereof as lay within the 10 mountains *Traconi*, or *Gilead*. Which Nation *Lampridius* calleth *Kedarens*; and *Pliny*, *Cedarens*.

*Abdeel* sat down in the *Desart Arabia*, neer the Mountains which divide it from the *Happy*: and gave name to the *Adubens*, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Agubens*.

*Misham* was the Parent of the *Masamancuses*, neer the Mountain *Zamath*, in the same *Arabia the Happy*.

The *Rababens* were of *Mishma*: who joyned to the *Orchens*, neer the *Arabian* gulf, where *Ptolomy* setteth *Zagmar*. Of *Duma* were the *Dumians*, between the *Adubens* and *Rababens*: where the City *Dumeth* sometimes stood.

Of *Massa* the *Massani*, and of *Hadar*, or *Chadar*, the *Athrites*, who bordered the *Napathens* in the same happy *Arabia*.

*Thema* begat the *Themaneans*, among the *Arabian* Mountains, where also the City of *Thema* is seated.

Of *Jetur* the *Jureans*, or *Camathens*: of whom *Tobin* was King in *David's* time. Plin. l. 6. c. 28.

Of *Naphri* the *Nabeian* *Arabians*, inhabiting *Syria Zoba*: over whom *Adadezer* commanded, while *David* ruled *Israel*.

*Cadma*, the last and twelfth of *Ismaels* sons, was the Ancestor of the *Cadmoneans*: who were afterward called *Astie*, because they worshipped the Fire with the *Babylonians*. Junius. The *Amalekites* gave their Kings the name of *Agag*, as the *Egyptians* the name of *Pharaoh* to theirs, and the ancient *Syrians*, *Adad* to theirs, and the *Arabian* *Nabatheans*, *Aretas*, as names of Honour.

The *Amalekites* were the first that fought with *Moses* after he past the Red Sea: when of all times they flourished most, and yet were vanquished. Exod. 17.

Afterward they joyned with the *Canaanites*, and beat the *Israelites* neer *Cadesbarne*. Num. 14. After the government of *Othniel*, they joyned them with the *Moabites*: after *Barac* with the *Madianites*: and invaded *Israel*. God commanded that as soon as *Israel* had rest, they should root out the name of the *Amalekites*: which *Saul* executed in part, when he wasted them from the border of *Egypt*, to the border of *Caldea*: from *Havilah* to *Shur*.

In *David's* time they took *Siklag* in *Simoon*: but *David* followed them, and surprised them, recovering his prisoners and spoils. And yet, after *David* became King, they again vexed him, but to their own loss. 1 Sam. 30.

In *Ezekias* time, as many of them as joyned to *Edumaea*, were wasted and displanted by the children of *Simoon*. 2 Sam. 8. 12.

### §. IIII.

Of the insurrection of *Civility* in *Europe* about these times, and of *Prometheus* and *Atlas*.

HERE lived at this time, and in the same age together with *Moses*, many men exceeding famous, as well in bodily strength, as in all sorts of learning. And as the World was but even now enriched with the written Law of the living God, so did Art and *Civility* (bred and fostered far off in the East, and in *Egypt*) begin at this time to discover a passage into *Europe*, and into those parts of *Greece*, neighbouring *Asia* and *Judea*. For if *Pelasgus*, besides his bodily strength, was chosen King of *Arcadia*, because he taught those people to erect them simple Cottages, to defend them from rain and storm: and learned them withall to make a kinde of Meale, and bread of Acorns, who before lived for the most part, by Herbs and Roots: we may thereby judge how poor and wretched those times were, and how fallly those

Dd

Nations

Aug. l. 18. c. 8.  
de civit. Dei.

Æschyl. in  
Prom. vinct.  
In c. 8. lib. 18.  
de civit. Dei.

Luc. Vives ex  
Hes.

Æschyl. in  
Prom. vinct.

Aug. l. 18. c. 3.  
de civit. Dei.

Nations have vaunted of those their antiquities, accompanied not onely with civil learning, but with all other kinds of knowledge. And it was in this age of the World, as both *Eusebius* and *S. Augustine* have observed, that *Prometheus* flourished: *Quem propterea fecerunt de luto formasse homines, quia optimus sapientia doctor fuisse perhibetur*; Of whom it is reported that he formed men out of clay, because he was an excellent teacher of wisdom: and so *Theophrastus* expoundeth the invention of fire ascribed to *Prometheus*, *Ad invicem sapientia pertinere*; To have reference to wife inventions: and *Æschylus* affirmeth, That by the stealing of *Jupiter's* fire was meant, that the knowledge of *Prometheus* reached to the Stars, and other celestial bodies. Again, it is written of him, that he had the art so to use this fire, as thereby he gave life to the Images of Wood, Stone, and Clay: meaning, that before his birth and being, those people among whom he lived, had nothing else worthy of men, but externall form and figure. By that fiction of *Prometheus*, being bound on the top of the Hill *Caucasus*, his entrails the while devoured by an Eagle, was meant the inward care and restless desire he had to investigate the Natures, Motions, and Influences of heavenly bodies; for so it is said: *Ideo altissimum ascendisse Caucasum, ut sereno celo quim longissimè astra, signorum obitus & ortus spectaret*; That he ascended *Caucasus*, to the end that he might in a clear skie discern a far off the settings and risings of the Stars: though *Diodorus Siculus* expounds it otherwise, and others diversly.

Of this *Mans* knowledge *Æschylus* gives this testimony.

*Ast agebant omnia  
Ut fors ferebat: donec ipse repperi  
Signorum obitus, ortusque qui mortalibus  
Sunt utiles: & multitudinem artium  
His repperi: componere inde literas;  
Matremque Musarum auxi ego Memoriam  
Peruilem cunctis, &c.*

But Fortune govern'd all their works, till when  
I first found out how Stars did set and rise:  
A profitable art to mortal men &c.  
And others of like use I did devise:  
As letters to compose in learned wife.  
I first did teach: and first did amplify  
The Mother of the *Muses*, *Memorie*.

*Africanus* makes *Prometheus* far more ancient, and but 94. yeers after *Ogyges*. *Porphyrus* sayes, that he lived at once with *Inachus*, who lived with *Isaac*.

There lived also at once with *Moses*, that famous *Atlas*, brother to *Prometheus*, both being the sons of *Jupiter*, of whom though it be said, that they were born before *Moses* dayes, and therefore are by others esteemed of a more ancient date: yet the advantage of their long lives gave them a part of other ages among men, which came into the World long after them. Besides these sons of *Jupiter*, *Æsculapius* findes two other, to wit, *Oceanus* and *Hesperus*, who being famous in the West, gave name to the Evening, and so to the evening Star. Also besides this *Atlas* of *Lybia*, or *Mauritania*, there were others which bare the same name: but of the *Lybian*, and the brother of *Prometheus*, it was that those Mountains which crosse *Africa*, to the South of *Marocco*, *Sus*, and *Hea*, with the Sea adjoining, took name, which memory *Plato* in *Critias* bestowes on *Atlas*, the son of *Neptune*.

*Cicero* in the fifth of his *Tusculan* questions affirmeth, that all things written of *Prometheus* and *Atlas*, were but by those names to expresse divine knowledge. *Nec vero Atlas sustinere cunctas, nec Prometheus affixus Caucasus, nec stellatus Cepheus cum uxore tridentem, nisi divina cognitio nomen eorum ad errorum fabula traduxisset*; Neither should *Atlas* be said to bear up heaven, nor *Prometheus* to be fastened to *Caucasus*, nor *Cepheus* with his wife to be stellified, unless their divine knowledge had raised upon their names these erroneous fables.

*Orpheus* sometimes exprest *Time* by *Prometheus*, sometime he took him for *Saturnus*, as *Rheæ* conjunct alone *Promethew*. But that the Story of *Prometheus* was not altogether a fiction:

a fiction: and that he lived about this time, the most approved Historians and Antiquaries, and among them *Eusebius* and *S. Augustine* have not doubted; For the great judgement which *Atlas* had in *Astronomy*, saith *S. Augustine*, were his daughters called by the names of constellations, *Pleiades* and *Hyades*. Others attribute unto him the finding out of the Moons course, of which *Archeas* the son of *Orchomenus* challengeth the invention. Of this *Archeas*, *Arcadia* in *Peloponnesus* took name; and therefore did the *Arcadians* vaunt that they were more ancient than the Moon: *Et Luna gens prior illa fuit*: *Ovid*. de fast. which is to be understood, saith *Natalis Comer*, before there had been any observation of it. the Moons course, or of her working in inferiour bodies. And though there be that belittle the finding out thereof upon *Endymion*: others (as *Xenagoras*) on *Typhon*: yet *Isaacus Tetzler*, a curious searcher of antiquities, gave it *Atlas* of *Libya*: who besides his gifts of minde, was a man of unequalled and incomparable strength: from whom *Thales* the *Milesian*, as it is said, had the ground of his *Philosophy*.

### §. V.

Of Deucalion and Phæton.

And in this age of the World, and while *Moses* yet lived, *Deucalion* reigned in *Thessaly*, *Crotopus* then ruling the *Argiver*. This *Deucalion* was the son of *Prometheus*, saith *Herodotus*, *Apollonius*, *Hesiodus*, and *Strabo*. *Hesiodus* gave him *Pandora* for mother; the rest *Clymene*: *Homer* in the fifteenth of his *Odyssees*, makes *Deucalion* the son of *Minos*; but he must needs have meant some other *Deucalion*; for else either *Olysses* was mistaken, or *Homer*, who put the tale into his mouth. For *Olysses*, after his return from *Troy*, feigned himself to be the brother of *Idomeneus*, who was son to this later *Deucalion*, the son of *Minos*; but this *Minos* lived but one age before *Troy* was taken: (for *Idomeneus* served in that war) and this *Deucalion* the son of *Prometheus*, who lived at once with *Moses*, was long before. In the first *Deucalions* time happened that great inundation in *Thessaly*: by which in effect every soul in those parts perished, but *Deucalion*, *Pyrrha* his wife, and some few others. It is affirmed, that at the time of this flood in *Thessaly*, those people exceeded in all kinde of wickednesse and villany: and as the impiety of men is the forcible attractive of Gods vengeance, so did all that Nation for their foul sin perish by waters: as in the time of *Noah* the corruption and cruelty of all mankind drew on them that generall destruction by the flood universall. Onely *Deucalion*, and *Pyrrha* his wife, whom God spared, were both of them esteemed to be lovers of *Virtue*, of Justice, and of Religion. Of whom *Ovid*:

*Non illo melior quisquam, nec amantior equi  
Vir fuit: aut illa reverentior ulla deorum.*

No man was better, nor more just than hee:  
Nor any woman godlier than shee.

It is also affirmed, that *Prometheus* fore-told his son *Deucalion* of this over-flowing, and advised him to provide for his safety: who hereupon prepared himself a kinde of Vessell, which *Lucian* in his *Dialogue* of *Timon* calls *Cibotium*; and others *Larnax*. And because to these circumstances, they afterward adde the sending out of the Dove, to discover the waters fall and decrease, I should verily think that Story had been but an imitation of *Noahs* flood devised by the *Greeks*, did not the times so much differ, and *S. Augustine* with others of the Fathers and reverent Writers approve this Story of *Deucalion*. Among other his children, *Deucalion* had these two of note; *Hellen*, of whom Greece had first the name of *Hellas*; and *Melanto*, on whom *Neptune* is said to have begot *Dolphus*, which gave name to *Delfhos*, so renowned among the Heathen for the Oracle of *Apollo* therein founded.

And that which was no lesse strange and marvellous than this flood, was that great burning and conflagration which about this time also hapned under *Phæton*; not only in *Ethiopia*, but in *Libya*, a Region in *Italy*, and about *Cuma*, and the Mountains of *Resina*: of both which the *Greeks*, after their manner, have invented many strange fables.

## §. VI.

Of Hermes Trismegistus.

But of all other which this age brought forth among the Heathen, *Mercurius* was the most famous and renowned; the same which was also called *Trismegistus*, or *Termaximus*; and of the *Greeks*, *Hermes*.

Many there were of this name; and how to distinguish, and set them in their own times, both *S. Augustine* and *Lactantius* finde it difficult. For that *Mercury* which was esteemed the god of Theeves, the god of Wrestlers, of Merchants, and Sea-men, and the god of Eloquence (though all by one name confounded) was not the same with that *Mercury*, of whose many works some fragments are now extant.

*Cicero*, *Clement Alexandrinus*, *Arnobius*, and certain of the *Greeks* reckon five *Mercuries*. Of which, two were famous in Egypt, and there worshipped; one, the son of *Nilus*, whose name the *Egyptians* feared to utter, as the *Jews* did their *Tetragrammaton*; the other that *Mercury*, which slew *Argus* in Greece, and flying into Egypt, is said to have delivered literature to the *Egyptians*, and to have given them laws. But *Diodorus* affirmeth; that *Orpheus*, and others after him, brought learning and letters out of *Egypt* into Greece; which *Plato* also confirmeth, saying; That letters were not found out by the *Mercury* which slew *Argus*, but by that ancient *Mercury*, otherwise *Thevet*; whom *Heribellus* writeth *Taanus*; the *Egyptians*, *Theoth*; the *Alexandrians*, *Thot*; and the *Greeks*, (as before) *Hermes*. And to this *Taanus*, *Sauconiantho*, who lived about the war of *Troy*, gives the invention of letters. But *S. Augustine* making two *Mercuries*, which were both *Egyptians*, calls neither of them the son of *Nilus*, nor acknowledgeth either of them to have slain *Argus*. For he findes this *Mercury* the slayer of *Argus*, to be the grand-child of that *Atlas*, which lived while *Moses* was yet young. And yet *L. Vives* upon *S. Augustine* seems to understand them to be the same with those, whom *Cicero*, *Alexandrinus*, and the rest have remembered. But that conjecture of theirs, that any *Grecian Mercury* brought letters into *Egypt*, hath no ground. For it is manifest, (if there be any truth in prophane antiquity) that all the knowledge which the *Greeks* had, was transported out of *Egypt* or *Phenicia*, and not out of Greece, nor by any *Grecian* into *Egypt*. For they all confesse, that *Cadmus* brought letters first into *Bavotia*, either out of *Egypt*, or out of *Phenicia*: it being true, that between *Mercurius*, that lived at once with *Moses* and *Cadmus*, there were these descents cast; *Crotopus* King of the *Argives*, with whom *Moses* lived, and in whose time about his tenth year *Moses* died; after *Crotopus*, *Sthenelus*, who reigned eleven years; after him *Danans* fifty years; after him *Linceus*: in whose time, and after him in the time of *Minos* King of *Crete*, this *Cadmus* arrived in *Bavotia*. And therefore it cannot be true that any *Mercurius* about *Moses* his time, flying out of Greece for the slaughter of *Argus*, brought literature out of Greece into *Egypt*. Neither did either of those two *Mercuries* of *Egypt*, whom *Saint Augustine* remembreth, the one the grand-father, the other the Nephew or grand-child, come out of Greece. *Eupolemus* and *Artapanus* note, that *Moses* found out letters, and taught the use of them to the *Jews*: of whom the *Phenicians* their neighbours received them; and the *Greeks* of the *Phenicians* by *Cadmus*. But this invention was also ascribed to *Moses*, for the reason before remembered; that is, because the *Jews* and the *Phenicians* had them first from him. For every Nation gave unto those men the honour of first Inventors, from whom they received the profit. *Ficinus* makes that *Mercury*, upon part of whose works he commenteth, to have been four descents after *Moses*; which he hath out of *Virgil*, who calls *Atlas*, that lived with *Moses*, the maternal grand-father of the first famous *Mercury*, whom others, as *Diodorus*, call the Counsellor and Instructor of that renowned *Isis*, wife of *Osiris*. But *Ficinus* giveth no reason for his opinion herein. But that the elder *Mercury* instructed *Isis*, *Diodorus Siculus* affirmeth, and that such an inscription was found on a pillar erected on the Tomb of *Isis*. *Lod. Vives* upon the fix and twentieth Chapter of the eighth Book of *Saint Augustine*, de Civitate Dei, conceiveth, that this *Mercury*, whose works are extant, was not the first which was entituled *Termaximus*, but his Nephew or Grand-child, \* *Sauconiantho*, an ancient *Phenician*, who lived shortly after *Moses*, hath other fancies of this *Mercury*; affirming that he was the Scribe of *Saturn*, and called by the *Phenicians*, *Taanus*; and by the *Egyptians*, *Thot*.

Lod. Vives out of Cicero in Aug. de civ. Dei. lib. 8. c. 26.

Euseb. l. 1. c. 6. de Prep. Ev. c.

Virg. l. 4. Æt. 1.

Ficinus Prof. Pomand. Mercurii Trismegisti.

\* Or Sauconiantho: See Euseb. de prep. Evang. l. 1. c. 6.

or *Thot*. It may be, that the many yeers which he is said to have lived, to wit, three hundred yeers, gave occasion to some Writers to finde him in one time, and to others in other times. But by those who have collected the grounds of the *Egyptian* Philosophy and Divinity, he is found more ancient than *Moses*: because the Inventor of the *Egyptian* Wisdom, wherein it is said, that *Moses* was excellently learned.

It is true, that although this *Mercury* or *Hermes* doth in his Divinity differ in many particulars from the Scriptures, especially in the approving of Images, which *Moses* of all things most detested: yet whosoever shall reade him with an even judgement, will rather resolve, that these works which are now extant, were by the *Greeks* and *Egyptians* Priests corrupted, and those fooleries inserted, than that ever they were by the hand of *Hermes* written, or by his heart and spirit devised. For there is no man of understanding, and master of his own wits, that hath affirmed in one and the same Tract, those things which are directly contrary in doctrine, and in nature: For out of doubt (*Moses* excepted) there was never any man of those elder times that hath attributed more, and in a stile more reverend and divine unto Almighty God, than he hath done. And therefore if those his two Treatises now among us; the one converted by *Apuleius*, the other by that learned *Ficinus*, had been found in all things like themselves: I think it had not been perillous to have thought with *Eupolemus*, that this *Hermes* was *Moses* himself; and that the *Egyptian* Theologie hereafter written, was devised by the first, & more ancient *Mercury*, which others have thought to have been *Joseph*, the son of *Jacob*: whom, after the exposition of *Pharaoh's* dreams, they called *Sapaneptane*, which is as much to say as *Abconditorum repertor*; A finder out of hidden things. But these are over-venturous opinions. For what this man was, it is known to God. Envie and aged time hath partly defaced, and partly worn out the certain knowledge of him: of whom, whosoever he were, *Lactantius* writeth in this sort: *Hic scriptis libris, & quidem multis, ad cognitionem divinarum rerum pertinentibus, in quibus Majestatem summi ac singularis Dei asserunt, iidemque nominibus appellat, quibus nos, Deum & Patrem; He hath written many books belonging to, or expressing the knowledge of divine things, in which he affirmeth the Majesty of the most High, and one God, calling him by the same names of God and Father, which we do.* The same Father also feareth not to number him among the *Sybls* and *Prophets*. And so contrary are these his acknowledgements to those Idolatrous fictions of the *Egyptians* and *Grecians*: as for my self I am perswaded, that whatsoever is found in him contrary thereto, was by corruption inserted. For thus much himself confesseth: *Deus enim Dominus, & Pater, fons & vita, potentia & lux, & mens, & spiritus; & omnia in ipso, & sub ipso sunt. Verbum enim ex ejus esse prodiens, perfectissimum existens, & generator, & opifex, &c. God (saith he) the Lord and Father of all things, the fountaine and life, and power, and light, and minde, and spirit: and all things are in him, and under him. For his Word out of himself proceeding, most perfect, and generative, and operative, falling upon fruitfull nature, made it also fruitfull and producing. And he was therefore (saith *Suydas*) called *Termaximus*, quia de Trinitate loquutus est, in Trinitate unum esse Deum asserens; Because he spake of the Trinity, affirming that there is one God in Trinity. *Hic ruinam* (saith *Ficinus*) *prædixit præce Religioni, hic ortus novæ fidei, hic adventum Christi, hic futurum judicium, resurrectionem sanctorum, beatitudinem gloriam, supplicia peccatorum; This Mercury foretold the ruin of the old or superstitious Religion, and the birth of the new faith, and of the coming of Christ, the future judgement, the resurrection, the glory of the blessed, and the torment or affliction of the wicked or damned.**

To this I will only adde his two last speeches reported by *Calcidius* the *Platonist*, and by *Volterran* out of *Suydas*. *Hæcenus, fili, pulsus à patria, vixi peregrinus & exul, nunc incolam me repeto. Cumque post paulum à vobis corporis vinculis absolutus, discessero, videtote ne me quasi mortuum lugeatis: nam ad illam optimam beatamque Civitatem regredior, ad quam universi cives morte conditione venturi sunt. Ibi namque solus Deus est summus Princeps, qui cives suos repleat suavitatis mirifica: ad quam hæc, quam multi vitam excitant, mors est potius dicenda quam vita; Hitherto, O son, being driven from my country, I have lived a stranger and banished man: but now I am repaired homeward again in safety. And when I shall after a few days (or in a short time) be being loosed from these bonds of flesh and blood, depart from you, see that you do not bewail me as a man dead; for I do but return to that best and blessed City, to which all her citizens (by the condition of death) shall repair. Therein is the only God, the most high and chiefe Prince, who filleth or feedeth his citizens with sweetnesse more than marvellous:*

Vites in lib. 8. c. 25. Aug. de Civit. Dei.

L. 1. c. 5. f. 1. 4.

In Prof. Mer. l. 1. c. 1.

marvellous: in regard whereof, this being, which others call a life, is rather to be accounted a death than a life. The other, and that which seemeth to be his last, is thus converted by others, agreeing in sense, but not in words: with *Suydas*: *O calum, magni Dei sapientia opus, teque O vox Patris quam ille primam emisit, quando universum constituit mundum, adjuro per unigenitum ejus Verbum, & Spiritum, cuncta comprehendentem, Misereamini mihi: I adjure thee O heaven, thou wise work of the great God, and thee O voice of the Father, which he first uttered, when he framed the whole world, by his onely begotten Word, and Spirit, comprehending all things, Have mercy upon me.*

But *Suydas* hath his invocation in these words: *Obtestor te celum, magni Dei sapientia opus, obtestor te vocem Patris, quam loquutus est primum cum omnem mundum firmavit, obtestor te per unigenitum sermonem omnia continentem, propitius, propitius esto; I beseech thee O heaven, wise work of the great God, I beseech thee O voice of the Father, which he spake first when he established all the world, I beseech thee by the onely begotten Word containing all things, be favourable, be favourable.*

## §. VII.

of Jannes and Jambres, and some other that lived about those times.

There were also in this age both *Aesculapius*, which after his death became the god of the Physicians, being the brother of *Mercurius*, as *Vives* thinks in his Commentary upon *Augustine*, de *Civitate Dei*, lib. 8. and also those two notorious Sorcerers, *Jannes* and *Jambres*, who in that impious art excelled all that ever had been heard of to this day: and yet *Moses* himself doth not charge them with any familiarity with Devils, or ill Spirits: words indeed that seldome came out of his mouth: however by the *Septuagint* they are called *Sophists*, or *Venefici*, and *Incantatores*; *Sophists*, Poisoners, and *Incantators*: by *Hierome*, *Sapientes*, & *malefici*; Wise men, and evill doers: and so by *Vatablus*, who also useth the word *Magi*. The Greek it self seems to attribute somewhat of what they did to naturall Magick: calling them *εργασταί*, workers by drugs. The *Genevian Sorcerers and Incantors*: *Junius*, *Sapientes*, *Præstigiatores*, & *Magi*. *Magicians* and *Wise men* here by him are taken in one sense: and *Prestigiatōrs* are such as dazzle mens eyes, and make them seem to see what they see not: as false colours, and false shapies. But as some vertues and some vices are so nicely distinguished, and so resembling each other, as they are often confounded; and the one taken for the other: (Religion and Superstition having one face and countenance) so did the works and workings of *Moses*, and of *Pharo's* Sorcerers appear in outward shew, and to the beholders of common capacities, to be one and the same art and gift of knowledge. For the Devil changeth himself into an *Angel* of light: and imitateth in all he can the waies and workings of the most High. And yet on the contrary every work which surmounteth the wisdom of most men, is not to be condemned, as performed by the help or ministry of ill Spirits. For the properties and powers which God hath given to naturall things, are such, as where he also bestoweth the knowledge to understand their hidden and best vertues, many things by them are brought to pass, which seem altogether impossible, and above nature or art: which two speculations of works of nature, and of miracle, the *Cabalists* distinguished by these names; *Opus de Beseish*, & *opus de mercani*: the one they call, *Sapientiam naturæ*; The *Wisdom of nature*: the other, *Sapientiam divinitatis*: The *Wisdom of divinity*: the one *Jacob* practised in breeding the pied Lambs in *Mesopotamia*; the other *Moses* exercised in his miracles wrought in *Egypt*, having received from God the knowledge of the one in the highest perfection, to wit, the knowledge of nature: of the other so far as it pleased God to proportion him, both which he used to his glory that gave them: assuming to himself nothing at all, either in the least or most. Also *S. Augustine* noteth, that from the time that *Moses* left *Egypt*, to the death of *Joshua*, divers other famous men lived in the World, who after their deaths, for their eminent vertues and inventions, were numbred among the gods: as *Dionysius*, otherwise *Liber Pater*, who taught the *Grecians* the use of the Vine in *Attica*: at which time also there were instituted *Musical* playes to *Apollo Delphicus*: thereby to regain his favour, who brought barrennesse and scarcity upon that part of *Greece*, because they resisted not the attempts of *Danaus*, who spoiled his Temple, and set it on fire: so did *Erithonius* institute

L. Vives in l. 8.  
August. de Civ.  
D. i. c. 20.

Ex d. 6. 11.



tute the like games to *Minerva*: wherein the Victor was rewarded with a present of *Oyl*, in memory of her that first prest it out of the Olive.

In this age also *Xanthus* ravished *Europa*, and begat on her *Radamanthus*, *Sarpedon* and *Minos*, which three are also given to *Jupiter* by other Historians. To these *S. Augustine* Lib. de Civit. addeth *Hercules*; the same to whom the twelve labours are ascribed, native of *Tyrintia* Deic. cap. 12. a City of *Peloponnesus*: (or as others say, only nursed and brought up there) who came into *Italy*, and destroyed many Monsters there; being neither that *Hercules*, which *Ense-* bins furnameth *Delphin*, famous in *Phœnicia*; nor that *Hercules*, according to *Philostratus*, Philo. l. 2. which came to *Gades*, whom he calleth an Egyptian: Manifestum sit, non Thebanum *Herculeum*, (ad *Egyptium* ad *Gades* pervenisse, & ibi finem statuisse terre (saith *Philostratus*;) It is manifest, that it was the Egyptian *Hercules*, and not the Theban, which travelled as far as the straights of *Gades*, and there determined the bounds of the earth. In this time also while *Moses* wandered in the Desarts, *Dardanus* built *Dardania*.

But whosoever they were, or how worthy soever they were that lived in the dayes and age of *Moses*, there was never any man, that was no more than man, by whom it pleased God to work greater things; whom he favoured more, to whom (according to the appearing of an infinite God) he so often appeared; never any man more familiar and conversant with Angels; never any more learned both in Divine and Humane knowledge; never a greater Prophet in *Israel*. He was the first that received and delivered the Law of God entire; the first that left to posterity by letters, the truth and power of one infinite God; his creating out of nothing the World Universall, and all the creatures therein; that taught the detestation of Idolatry, and the punishment, vengeance, and eradication, which followed.

*Syracides* calleth *Moses* the beloved of God and men, whose remembrance is blessed. He made him (saith the same Author) like to the glorious Saints, and magnified him by the fear of his enemies, made him glorious in the sight of Kings, shewed him his glory, caused him to bear his voice, sanctified him with faithfulness and meekness, and chose him out of all men.

He is remembred among prophane Authors; as by *Clearchus* the *Peripatetic*; by *Metasthenes*, and *Numenius* the *Pythagorian*. The long lives which the Patriarchs enjoyed before the flood, remembred by *Moses*, *Esiens*, *Hieronymus* *Egyptius*, *Hecateus*, *Elavicus*, *Acusilus*, *Ephorus*, and *Alexander* the Historian, confirm. The universall flood which God revealed unto *Moses*, *Berosus*, *Nicolaus* *Damascenus*, and others have testified. The building of the Tower of *Babel*, and confusion of tongues, *Abydennus*, *Esiens*, and *Sy-billa* have approved. *Berosus* also honoureth *Abraham*. *Hecateus* wrote a book of him. *Damascenus* before cited, speaketh of *Abraham's* passage from *Damascus* into *Canaan*, agreeing with the books of *Moses*. *Eupolemon* writeth the very same of *Abraham*, which *Moses* did. For beginning with the building of *Babel*, and the overthrow thereof by divine power, he saith that *Abraham*, born in the tenth generation, in the City called *Caldeina*, or *Urien*, excelled all men in wisdom: and by whom the Astrologie of the *Caldeans* was invented. *Is iustitia pietateque sua* (saith *Eusebius* out of the same Author) *sic Deo gratus fuit, ut divino precepto in Phœniciam venerit, ibique habitaverit*; For his justice and piety he was so pleasing unto God, as by his commandment he came into *Phœnicia*, and dwelt there. Likewise *Diodorus Siculus* in his second Book & fifth Chapter, speaketh reverently of *Moses*: There are many other among prophane Authors, which do confirm the books of *Moses*, as *Eusebius* hath gathered in the ninth of his Preparation to the Gospel, Chapter the third and fourth, to whom I refer the Reader. Lastly, I cannot but for some things in it commend this notable testimony of *Strabo*, who writeth of *Moses* in these words: *Moses enim affirmavit, docebatque Egyptios non recte sentire, qui bestiarum & pœco-* Strabo. l. 14.

*rum imagines Deo tribuerunt: Itemque Afros & Grecos, qui diis hominum figuram affuxerunt: id verò solum esse Deum, quod nos, & terram & mare continet, quod celum, & mundum, & rerum omnium naturam appellamus: cuius profecto imaginem, nemo sane mentis, alienius earum rerum, quæ pener nos sunt, similem audeat effingere. Proinde (omni singulariorum effigione repudiata) dignum ei Templum ac Delubrum constitutendum, ac sine aliqua figura colendum: Moses affirmed and taught, that the Egyptians thought amisse, which attributed unto God the images of beasts and cattell: Also that the Africans and Greeks greatly erred, in giving unto their gods the shapes of men: whereas that onely is God indeed, which containeth both the earth and sea, which we call heaven, the world, and the nature of all things: whose image,*

doubtlesse,



doubtlesse, no wise man will dare to fashion out unto the likeness of those things, which are amongst us. That therefore (all devising of Idols cast aside) a worthy Temple and place of prayer was to be erected unto him, and be to be worshipped without any figure at all therein.

A. 7. 2. 3.

Now concerning the Egyptian wisdom, for which the Martyr Stephen commended Moses, saying, That Moses was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians, and was mighty in his works and words: the same is corrected (how truly I know not) by Diodorus Siculus, Laertius, Lamblicus, Philo Judaeus, and Eusebius Caesariensis, and divided into four parts, viz. Mathematicall, Naturall, Divine, and Morall.

In the Mathematicall part, which is distinguishing into Geometric, Astronomie, Arithmetick, and Musick, the ancient Egyptians exceed all others. For Geometry which is by interpretation measuring of grounds, was usefull unto them: because it consisting of infallible principles, directed them certainly in bounding out their proper Lands and Territories, when their fields and limits, by the inundations of Nilus, were yearly overflowed and confounded, so as no man could know what in right belonged unto him.

For the second part, to wit, Astronomie, the site of the Country being a level and spacious Plain, free and cleer from the clouds, yielded them delight with ease, in observing and contemplating the risings, fallings, and motions of the Stars.

Arithmetick also, which is the knowledge of numbers, they studied; because without it, in Geometry and Astronomie, nothing can be demonstrated or concluded. But of Musick they made no other account, nor desired farther knowledge, than seemed to them sufficient to serve and magnifie their gods, their Kings, and good Men.

The Naturall part of this Wisdom, which handleth the principles, causes, elements, and operations of naturall things, differs little from Peripateticall Philosophie; teaching that *Materia prima* is the beginning of all things: that of it all mixt bodies & living creatures have their being; that Heaven is round like a Globe; that all Stars have a certain soverain heat, and temperate influences, whereby all things grow and are produced; that rains proceed and be from mutations in the ayre; that the Planets have their proper souls, &c.

The Divine part of this wisdom, which is called Theologie, teacheth and believeth that the world had a beginning, and shall perish; that men had their first originall in Egypt; partly by means of the temperatenesse of that Country, where neither Winter with cold, nor Summer with heat, are offensive; and partly through the fertility, that Nilus giveth in those places: That the soul is immortal, and hath transmigration from body to body; That God is one, the Father and Prince of all gods, and that from this God, other gods are, as the Sun and Moon, whom they worshipped by the names of *Osiris* and *Isis*, and erected to them Temples, Statues, and divers Images, because the true similitudes of the gods is not known; that many of the gods have been in the estate of mortall men, and after death, for their vertues and benefits bestowed on mankind, have been Deified; that those beasts, whose Images and Forms the Kings did carry in their Arms, when they obtained victory, were adored for gods: because under those Ensignes they prevailed over their enemies. Moreover the Egyptian Divines had a peculiar kinde of writing, mysticall and secret, wherein the highest points of their Religion and worship of God, which was to be concealed from the vulgar sort, were obscured.

Clem. Strom. l. 5.

Clemens distributeth the whole sum of this later Egyptian learning into three severall sorts, viz. *Epistolar*, which is used in writing common Epistles; *Sacerdotal*, which is peculiar to their Priests; and *Sacred*, which Sacred containeth Scripture of two kinds: the one proper, which it expressed by letters Alphabetically in obscure and figurative words; as for example, where it is written: The *Ibis* by the Horner participateth the beauty of the Hawke; which is read thus: The Moon doth by the Sun borrow part of the light of God; because Light is an Image of Divine beauty; the other symbollicall, or by signatures, which is threefold, viz. Imitative, Tropically, and Aenigmaticall: Imitative, which designeth things by characters, like to the things signified, as by a Circle, the Sun; and by the Horns of the Moon, the Moon it self: Tropically or transference, which applies the divers forms and figures of naturall bodies or creatures, to signify the dignities, fortunes, conditions, vertues, vices, affections, & actions of their gods, and of men. So with the Egyptian Divines, the Image of an Hawke signifieth God, the figure of the Horner signifieth the Sun, the picture of the Bird *Ibis* signifieth the Moon: by

by the form of a Man, Prudence and Skillfullnesse: by a Liou, Fortitude: by a Horse, Liberty: by a Crocodile, Impudency: by a Fish, Hatred is to be understood: Aenigmaticall is a composition or mixture of Images or Similitudes: in which sense, the monstrous Image of a Lions body having a Mans head, was graven on their Temples & Altars, to signify, that to men all divine things are Aenigmaticall and obscure. So the Image of the Sun set on the head of a Crocodile, (which liveth as well in the Waters, as on Land) expresseth that the Sun acquirith Meteors in the Aire, as well from the Waters, as from the Earth. So a Scepter, at the top whereof is made an Eye, and an Eare, signifieth God, Hearing, Seeing, and governing all things. The Scythians are thought to have been delighted with this kind of writing. For *Pherecides Syrius* reporteth, That when *Darius* sending letters, threatned *Idanthurus*, King of the Scythians, with ruine and destruction of his Kingdom, unless he would acknowledge subjection: *Idanthurus* returned to him a Moule, a Frog, a Bird, a Dart, and a Plough-share: which *Ovontopigmas*, Tribune of the Souldiers, interpreted to signify, that by the Moule, their dwellings: by the Frog, their waters: by the Bird, their ayre: by the Dart, their weapons: by the Plough, their Lands were signified to be ready to be delivered to *Darius*, as their Sovereigne Lord. But *Xyphodes* made another construction, viz. that the King meant, That except *Darius* with his men did hasten away, as a Bird through the ayre; or creep into holes as a Moule, or run into the waters which they had passed as a Frog, they should not escape his arms, but either be slain, or being made Captives, till his grounds. The same History is with little difference reported by *Herodotus*.

Herod. l. 4.

The fourth and last part, which is Morall and Politick, doth contain especially the Laws, which (according to *Laertius*) *Mercureus Trismegistus*, or *Terminus* devised: who in his Books or Dialogues of *Pimander* and *Alephius*, hath written so many things of God, worthy of admiration; as well (saith *Sextus Senensis*) of the Trinity, and of the coming of *Christ*, as of the last and fearfull day of Judgement; that (as saith the same Author, the opinion being also ancient) he is not onely to be accounted a Philosopher, but a Prophet of things to come.

*Lamblicus* in his Books of Mysteries of the Egyptians, taking two very ancient Histories for their Authors, to wit, *Seleucus* and *Menelaus*, affirmeth, that this *Mercury* was not onely the Inventor of the Egyptian Philosophie, but of all other learning, called the Wisdom of the Egyptians, before remembered: and that he wrote of that subject 36525 Books, or Pages. Of which there were numbered, of Fiery Spirits, one hundred Books; of Aereall Spirits as many, and of Spirits Celestiall a thousand; which because they were out of the Egyptians language converted by certain learned Philosophers into naturall Greek, they seemed to have been first written in that Tongue. *Clemens Alexan.* l. 5. *Strom.* *l. 5.* *denus* writeth, that among the Books of *Hermes*, to wit, of the Wisdom of the Egyptians, there were extant in his time 36. Of Physick, six Books; of the orders of Priests, ten; and of Astrology, four.

40

## §. VIII.

A Brief of the History of Josua; and of the space between him and Othoniel: and of the remainders of the Canaanites; with a note of some Contemporaries to Josua: and of the breach of Faith.

AFTER the death of Moses, and in the one and fortieth yeer of the Egression, in the first moneth called *Nisan*, or *March*, Josua, the son of *Nun*, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, being filled with the Spirit of wisdom, took on him the government of Israel: God giving him comfort, and encouraging him to passe the River of *Jordan*, and to possesse and divide among the Israelites the Land promised.

The beginning of Josua's rule, Saint *Augustine* dates with the reign of *Amraphar*, the Lib. 18. de Civ. Dei. c. 11. eighteenth King in *Assyria*; with *Corax* the sixteenth King in *Sicyonia*, when *Darius* governed the *Argives*; and *Erichonius*, *Athens*.

Josua imitating in all things his Predecessor, sent over *Jordan* certain discoverers to Jos. 2. 1. view the feat and strength of *Jerico*, the next City unto him on the other side of the River, which he was to passe over. Which discoverers being saved, and sent back by *Rahab*, a woman of ill fame, because she kept a Tavern or Victualling-house, made Josua know, that the inhabitants of *Jerico*, and those of the Country about it, hearing of the approach

Jos. 2. 11.

approach

Jef. 2. 11. approach of *Israel*, had lost courage. Whereupon the day after the return of the Spies, which was the sixth day of the one and fortieth year after the Egression, *Josua* removed from *Sittim* in the plains of *Moab*, and drew down his Army to the banks of the River *Jordan*; and gave them commandment to put themselves in order to follow the Ark of God, when the Levites took it up, and moved towards the River, giving them withall this forcible encouragement, That they should thereby assure themselves of his favour and presence, who is Lord of all the world, when the River of *Jordan* should be cut off and divided, and the waters coming from above should stand still in a heap, whereby those below towards the *Dead Sea* wanting supply, they might passe over into the land of *Canaan* with dry feet.

Jef. 1. 12. He also commanded *Reuben*, *Gad*, and the half Tribe of *Manasse*, to prepare themselves (according to their Covenant made with *Moses*) to march in the head of the rest, and, as we call it in this age, to lead in the Vant-guard, which through all the Deserts of *Arabia*, from the Mount *Sinai* to this place, those of the Tribe of *Juda* had performed. For these Tribes being already provided of their habitations, and Country and Cities of the *Amorites*, by the help of the rest, conquered for them: it agreed with justice and equality, that *Reuben*, *Gad*, and the half of *Manasse* should also assist their brethren in the obtaining of their parts, as yet in their enemies possession.

On the banks of *Jordan* they rested themselves from the sixth day to the ninth, and on the tenth day of the first month *Nisan*, or *March*, they past over to the other side, taking with them twelve stones from the dry ground in the midst of the River: which, for a memory of that miracle by God wrought, they set up at *Gilgal*, on the East side of the city of *Jerico*, where they incamped the first night. At which place *Josua* gave commandment, that all born in the last fortieth year in the Deserts should be circumcised, which ceremony to that day had been omitted. Of the neglect whereof *S. Augustine* giveth for cause, The peoples contempt of their superiours. *Thomas* excuseth it in this sort; That the *Israelites* knew not the certain time of their removing from one place to another: *Damasceen*, That it was not needfull by circumcision to distinguish them from other Nations, at such time as they lived by themselves, and a-part from all Nations.

On the fourteenth day of the same month, the children of *Israel* celebrated the Passover now the third time; first, at their leaving *Egypt*; secondly, at Mount *Sinai*; and now at *Gilgal*. After which, being desirous to taste of the fruits of the Country, and having, as it were, surfeited on *Man*, they parched of the Corn of the Land, being not yet fully ripe, and ate thereof.

And as *Moses* began to distribute those Regions beyond *Jordan*, to wit, the Lands of the *Amorites* which *Og of Basan*, and *Sehon* held, so did *Josua* perform the rest; and after a view and partition made of the Territories, he gave to each Tribe his portion by lot. But this partition and distribution was not done at once, but at three severall times; first, by *Moses* to *Gad*, *Reuben*, and the half Tribe of *Manasse*, of the Lands over *Jordan*; secondly, by *Josua*, to the Tribe of *Juda*, *Ephraim*, and the other half Tribe of *Manasse*, about the fifth year of his government; proved in the 14. of *Josua* v. 10. and a third division was made to the other seven Tribes at *Shilo*, where *Josua* seated the *Tabernacle* of the Congregation.

The victories of *Josua* against the Kings of the *Canaanites*, are so particularly set down in his own books, as I shall not need to lengthen this part by their repetition. In whose Story I chiefly note these particulars. First, how in the beginning of the war, those little kings, or regents of the *Canaanites*, had not so much understanding, as to unite themselves together against the *Israelites*; but according to the custom of those estates, from whose Governours God hath taken away all wisdom and foresight, they left those of their own Nation, which were next the invaders, to themselves, and to their own defence, hoping that the fire kindled somewhat far off, might again have been quenched, ere it could spread it self so far as their own Territories and Cities. But after such time as *Jerico* and *Ai* were entred, and the Kings, People, and Cities consumed; five of those 31. Kings (all which at length perished in that war) joyned themselves together, first attempting the *Gibeonites*, who had rendred themselves to *Josua*. Onely five (the rest looking on to the successe) namely, the King of the *Jebusites*, in *Jebus*, or *Hiersusalem*, the Kings of *Hebron*, *Jarmoth*, *Lachis*, and *Eglon*, addrest themselves for resistance: whose Army being by *Josua* surprized and broken, themselves despairing to escape by

flight, and hopelesse of mercy by submission, creeping into a Cave under ground, were thence by *Josua* drawne forth and hanged. In the prosecution of which victory he also took *Makdesh*, and *Libnah*, and *Lachis*. To the relief whereof *Horam* King of *Gezar* hastened, and perished. After which *Josua* posselt himself of *Eglon*, *Hebron*, and *Debir*, destroying the Cities with their Princes.

In the end, and when the South Countries were posselt, the Cities thereof conquered, and their Kings and People made dust: the rest of the *Canaanites*, guided by the over-late counsels of necessity, united themselves, to make one grofs strength and body of an Army: which *Jabin*, King of *Hazor*, practised and gathered together, by *Josua* discovered, as the same rested neer the Lake of *Merom*, he used such diligence, as he came on them unawares; and obtaining absolute victory over them, he prosecuted the same to the utmost effect. And, besides the slaughter of the defendants, he entred their Cities, of which he burnt *Hazor* onely, reserving the rest for *Israel* to inhabit and enjoy.

Secondly, I note, that *Josua* shewed himself a skilfull man of War, for that in those ancient times he used the stratagem of an ambush in taking of *Ai*; and in that he broke the Armies of the first five Kings of the *Amorites*, which attempted *Gibeon* by surprize. For he marched all night from his camp at *Gilgal*, and set on them early the next day; when he overthrew *Jabin* and his confederates. After which, making the best profit of his victory, he assaulted the great City of *Hazor*.

Thirdly, the miracles which God wrought during this war, were exceeding admirable; as the stay of the River *Jordan* at the Springs, so as the Army of *Israel* past it with a drie foot; the fall of *Jerico* by the found of the Horns; the showers of Haile-stones, which fell upon the *Amorites* in their flight from *Gibeon*, whereby more of them perished than by the sword of *Israel*: again, the arrest of the Sun in the firmament, whereby the day was so much the more lightened, as the *Israelites* had time to execute all those which fled after the overthrow: a wonder of wonders, and a work onely proper to the all-powerfull God.

Fourthly, out of the passage between *Josua* and the *Gibeonites*, the Doctrine of keeping Faith is so plainly and excellently taught, as it taketh away all evasion, it admitteth no intrusion, nor leaveth open any hole or out-let at all to that cunning perfidiousnes, and horrible deceit of this later age, called *Equivocation*. For, notwithstanding that these *Gibeonites* were a people of the *Hevites*, expressly and by name, by the commandment of God to be rooted out, & notwithstanding that they were liars, and deceivers, and counterfeiters, and that they did over-reach, and, as it were, deride *Josua*, and the Princes of *Israel*, by feigning to be sent as Embassadors from a far Country, in which travell their cloths were worn, their bread mouldie, which they avowed to have been warm for newnesse when they first set out; their barrels and bottles of wine broken; their shoes patcht; and their sacks rent and ragged: Yet *Josua* having sworn unto them by the Lord God of *Israel*, he durst not, though urged by the multitude of the people, to lay violent hands on them; but he spared both their lives, and the Cities of their inheritance.

Now if ever man had warrant to break faith, and to retract his promise made, *Josua* had it. For first, the commandment which he received from God to root out this Nation among the rest, preceded by far the peace which he had granted them. Secondly, he might justly have put these men to the sword, and have sackt their Cities, if there be any evasion from a promise made, whereof the living God is called to witnesse. For it was not to the *Gibeonites* he gave peace, because he knew them to be a people hated of God. He told them, that if they were of the *Hevites*, it was not in his power to make a league with them. But it was to a strange people that he gave faith, and to a Nation which came from far, who hearing of the wonders which the God of *Israel* had done in *Egypt* and over *Jordan*, sought for peace and protection from his people. Thirdly, the accord, which *Israel* made with these crafty *Canaanites*, was without warrant. For it is written in the same place, That the *Israelites* accepted their tale, that is, believed what they had said, and counselled not with the mouth of the Lord. Fourthly, these men who were known Idolaters, and served those Puppets of the Heathen, men of an apish Religion, as all Worshipers of Images are, could not challenge the witnesse of the true God, in whom they believed not. I say therefore, that if ever man might have served himself by any evasion or distinction, *Josua* might justly have done it. For he needed

not in this case the help of *Equivocation* or *Mental Reservation*. For what he swears, he swears in good Faith; but he swears nothing, nor made any promise at all to the *Gibonites*. And yet, to the end that the faithlesse subtilty of man should borrow nothing in the future from his example, who knowing well, that the promises he made in the Name of God, were made to the living God, and not to the dying man, he held them firm and inviolable, notwithstanding that they, to whom he had sworn it, were worshippers of the Devil.

For it is not, as faithlesse men take it, that he which sweareth to a Man, to a Society, to a State, or to a King, and sweareth by the Name of the living Lord, and in his presence, That this promise (if it be broken) is broken to a man, to a Society, to a State, or to a Prince; but the promise in the Name of God made, is broken to God. It is God that wherein neglect: we therein professe that we fear him not, and that we set him at naught, and despise him. If he that without reservation of honour, giveth a lie in the presence of the King, or of his Superiour, doth, in point of Honour, give the lie to the King himself, or to his Superiour; how much more doth he break Faith with God, that giveth Faith in the presence of God, promiseth in his Name, and makes him a witness of the Covenant made?

Out of doubt, it is a fearful thing for a Son to break the Promise, Will, or Decree of the Father; for a State, or Kingdom, to break those Contracts which have been made in former times, and confirmed by publick faith. For though it were 400. years after *Jehsa*, that *Saul*, even out of devotion, slaughtered some of those people descended of the *Gibonites*: yet God, who forgot not what the Predecessors and Fore-fathers of *Saul* and the *Israelites* had sworn in his Name, afflicted the whole Nation with a consuming famine; and could not be appeased, till seven of *Saul's* sons were delivered to the *Gibonites* grieved, and by them hanged up.

And certainly, if it be permitted by the help of a ridiculous distinction, or by a God-mocking equivocation, to swear one thing by the Name of the living God, and to reserve in silence a contrary intent: the life of man, the estates of men, the faith of Subjects to Kings, of Servants to their Masters, of Vassals to their Lords, of Wives to their Husbands, and of Children to their Parents, and of all trials of right, will not only be made uncertain, but all the chains whereby free-men are tied in the world, be torn asunder. It is by oath (when Kings and Armies cannot pass) that we enter into the Cities of our enemies, and into their Armies: it is by oath that wars take end, which weapons cannot end. And what is it, or ought it to be, that makes an oath thus powerful, but this; That he that sweareth by the Name of God, doth assure others that his words are true, as the Lord of all the World is true, whom he calleth for a Witness, and in whose presence he that taketh the oath hath promised? I am not ignorant of their poor evasions, which play with the severity of Gods Commandments in this kinde: But this indeed is the best answer, That he breaks no faith, that hath none to break. For whosoever hath faith and the fear of God, dares not do it.

The *Christians* in the *Holy Land*, when they were at the greatest, and had brought the *Caliph* of *Egypt* to pay them tribute, did not only lose it again, but were soon after driven out of the *Holy Land* it self: by reason (saith *William* of *Tyre*, a reverend Bishop, which wrote that Story) that *Almerick* the fiftieth King after *Godfrey* brake faith with the *Caliph Elhadach*, and his Vicegerent. The *Soldan Salar*, who being suddenly invaded by *Almerick*, drew in the *Turk Syracon* to their aid: whose Nephew *Seladine*, after he had made *Egypt* his own, beat the *Christians* out of the *Holy Land*; neither would the wooden Crosse (the very Crosse, say they, that *Christ* died on) give them victory over *Seladine*, when they brought it into the field as their last refuge, seeing they had sworn themselves in his Name that was crucified thereon. And if it be a direction from the holy Ghost, That he that speaketh lies, shall be destroyed, and that the mouth which uttereth them, slayeth the soul: how much more perillous is it (if any perill be greater than to destroy the soul) to swear a lie? It was *Engenius* the Pope, that perswaded, or rather commanded the King of *Hungarie* after his great victory over *Ammrath* the *Turk*, and when the said King had compelled him to peace, the most advantageous that ever was made for the *Christians*, to break his Faith, and to provoke the *Turk* to renew the war. And though the said King was far stronger in the field than ever; yet he lost the battle with 30000. *Christians*, and his own life. But I will stay my hand: For this

volume will not hold the repetition of Gods judgements upon faith-breakers; be it against *Infidels*, *Turks*, or *Christians* of divers Religions. Lamentable it is, that the taking of oaths now a dayes is rather made a matter of custome, than of conscience.

It is also very remarkable, That it pleased God to leave so many Cities of the *Canaanites* unconquered by *Israel*, to scourge and afflict them, by fore-seeing their Idolatry, and as it is said in the Scriptures, To be thorns in their eyes to prove them, and to teach them to make war. For these Cities hereafter named did not onely remain in the *Canaanites* possession all the time of *Jehsa*; but soon after his death the children of *Dan* were driven out of the plain Countries, and enforced to inhabit the Mountains, and places of hardest access. And those of *Juda* were not able to be masters of their own Vallies; because as it is written in the Judges, The *Canaanites* had Chariots of iron. And those principal Cities which stood on the Sea-side, adjoining unto *Juda*, were still held by the remainder of the *Anakims*, or *Philistines*: as *Azzah*, *Gath*, *Ajdod*; out of one of which Cities came *Goliath*, remembered in *Samuel*.

Neither did the children of *Manasse* over *Jordan* expell the *Geshurites*, nor the *Machabites*; which inhabited the North parts of *Basan*, afterward *Traconitis*. Nor the *Nephelims* possesse themselves of *Bethseleph*, nor of *Bethanab*; but they enforced those *Canaanites* to pay them tribute. Neither did *Asher* expell the *Zidonians*, nor those of *Acho*, or *Acon*, *Atblab*, *Achziv*, *Helbath*, *Aphike*, and *Rehob*, nor enforced them to tribute.

No more could *Zabulon* enjoy *Kiron*, and *Nahalol*, but received tribute from them. All the *Canaanites* dwelt in *Gezer* among the *Ephraims*; and among the children of *Manasse*, on the West of *Jordan*, the *Canaanites* held *Bethshean*, *Taanach*, *Dor*, *Ibleam*, and *Megaddo*; yea, *Hierusalem* it self did the *Jebusites* defend above four hundred years, even till *Davids* time.

Now *Jehsa* lived one hundred and ten years, eighteen of which he governed *Israel*, and then changed this life for a better. The time of his rule is not expressed in the Scriptures, which causeth divers to conjecture diversly of the continuance. *Josephus* gives him five and twenty years: *Seder Ollan Rabbi* the Authors of the *Hebrew Chronicle* eight and twenty; and *Masius* six and twentie: *Maimonius* cited by *Masius*, fourteen: *Joannes Lucidus*, seventeen: *Cajetanus*, ten: *Eusebius* giveth him seven and twenty: and so doth *S. Augustine*: *Melancthon*, two and thirty: *Codoman*, five and twenty. But whereas there passed 480. years from the delivery of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, unto the building of the Temple, it is necessary that we allow to *Jehsa* onely eighteen of them; as finding the rest supplied otherwise, which to me seems the most likely, and, as I think, a well approved opinion.

The same necessity of retaining precisely 480. years from the departure out of *Egypt* unto the building of the Temple, convinceth of error, such as have inserted years between *Jehsa* and *Othniel*, of whom *Eusebius* findes eight years, to which *Arius Montanus* adhereth; and for which he giveth his reason in his four and twentieth and last Chapters upon *Jehsa*: *Euning* reckons it nine years: *Eucholzer* and *Reisner* but one: *Codoman*, twenty; and *Nicephorus* no lesse than three, and thirty; whereas following the sure direction of these 480. years, there can be no void years found between *Jehsa* and *Othniel*, unless they be taken out of those eighteen ascribed unto *Jehsa* by the account already specified. The praises and acts of *Jehsa* are briefly written in the six and fortieth Chapter of *Ecclesiasticus*, where among many other things it is said of him, Who was there before him like to him, for he fought the battels of the Lord?

That he wrote the book called by this name, it was the opinion of *Arius Montanus*, because it is said in the last Chapter, ver. 26. And *Jehsa* wrote these words in the book of the Law of God: which seemeth rather to have been meant by the covenant which *Jehsa* made with *Israel* in *Sichem*, where they all promised to serve and obey the Lord: which promise *Jehsa* caused to be written in the book of the Law: and of this opinion were *Cajetan* and *Abulenfis*: *Theodoret* doth likewise conceive, that the book of *Jehsa* was collected out of an ancient Volume, intitled *Liber Jusforum*, remembered by *Jehsa* himself; and others, that it was the work of *Samuel*: for whereas *Montanus* groundeth his opinion upon these words of the 26. Verse, And *Jehsa* wrote these words; &c. this place hath nothing in it to prove it: for when the people had answered *Jehsa*, The Lord

our God will we serve, and his voice will we obey, it followeth that *Josua* made a covenant with the people, and wrote the same in the book of the Law of God.

There lived at once with *Josua*, *Erichonius* in *Attica*, who taught that Nation to yoke beasts together, thereby to till the ground with more ease and speed: And about the same time the fifty Daughters of *Danans* (as it is said) slew the fifty Sons of *Egyptus*, all but *Lyncus*, who succeeded *Danans*, if the tale be true. There lived also with *Josua*, *Phenix*, and *Cadmus*, and near the end of *Josua's* life, *Jupiter* is said to have ravished *Europa*, the daughter of *Phenix*, (afterward married to *Asferius* King of *Creta*) and begat on her *Minos*, *Radamantus*, and *Sarpedon*. But *S. Augustine* reports this ravishment to be committed by *Xanthus*, and yet they are more commonly taken for the Sons of *Jupiter*. But it may be doubted whether *Minos* was father to *Dencalion*, and *Dencalion* to *Idomeneus*, who was an old man at the war of *Troy*, and *Sarpedon* was in person a young or strong man at the same *Trojan* war. And so doth *Nesfor* reckon up in the Council of the *Greeks*, *Thestus* and *Perithus* for men of Antiquity and of Ages past: *Minos* being yet more ancient than any of these. But hereof elsewhere.

## CHAP. VII.

Of the Tribes of Israel that were planted in the borders of Phœnicia, with sundry Stories depending upon those places.

### §. I.

The Proæme to the description of the whole Land of Canaan; with an Exposition of the name of Syria.

**T**He Story of the *Judges* ought to follow that of *Josua*, after whom the Common-wealth of the Jews was governed by Kings, of which so many of them as ruled the ten Tribes, shall be remembered when we come to the description of *Samarita*: but because the Land of *Canaan*, and the borders thereof, were the Stages and Theaters, whereon the greatest part of the Story past, with that which followeth, hath been acted, I think it very pertinent (for the better understanding of both) to make a Geographicall description of those Regions: that all things therein performed by the places known, may the better be understood, and conceived. To which purpose (besides the addition of the neighbour Countries) I have bestowed on every Tribe his proper portion: and do shew what Cities & Places of strength were by the Jews obtained: and what numbers it pleased God to leave unconquered; by whom he might correct and scourge them, when ungrateful, for his many graces, they at sundry times forgot or neglected the Lord of all power, and adored those deaf and dead Idols of the Heathen. *Druina bonitas* (saith *Augustine*) *ideo maxime irascitur in hoc seculo, ne irascatur in futuro: & misericorditer temporalium adhibet severitatem, ne æternam juste inferat ultionem*; The divine goodnesse is especially therefore angry in this world, that it may not be angry in the world to come, and doth mercifully use temporal severities, that it may not justly bring upon us eternal vengeance.

To the Cities herein described, I have added a short Story of the beginnings and ends of divers Kingdoms and Common-wealths: and to help my self herein, I have perused divers of the best Authors upon this subject: among whom, because I find great disagreement in many particulars, I have rather in such cases adventured to follow my mine own reason, than to borrow any one of their old patterns.

And because *Canaan*, with *Palestina* of the *Philistines*, and the Lands of *Og* and *Sichon* Kings of *Basan*, and the *Arabian Amorites*, were but small Provinces of *Syria*: it shall be necessary, first to divide and bound the generall, and so to descend to this particular, now called the *Holy Land*.

*Syria*, now *Soria*, according to the largest description, and as it was anciently taken, imbraced all those Regions from the *Euxine Sea*, to the *Red Sea*: and therefore were the *Cappadocians*, which look into *Pontus*, called *Leucosyrians*, or white *Syrians*. But taking it

shorter, and from the coast of *Cilicia*, which is the North border, unto *Idumæa* towards the South, *Tigris* towards the Sun-rising, and the *Mediterranean Sea* Westward: it then containeth besides *Babylonia*, *Chaldea*, *Arabia the Desert*, and *Arabia Petrea*, that Region also which the *Greeks* call *Mesopotamia*, the *Hebrews*, *Syria*, of the two Rivers, to wit, *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, for so *Aran Nabairajim* is expounded: also *Padan Aram*; that is, *Jugum Syria*, because the two Rivers go along in it as it were in a yoke.

*Edessa*, sometime *Rager*, now *Rage*, was the Metropolis of this Region of *Syria*. In *Syria* taken largely, there were many small Provinces, as *Cælosyria*, which the *Latines* call *Syria Cæzia*, because it lay in that fruitfull Valley between the Mountains of *Lybanus*, and *Antilybanus*, in which the famous Cities of *Antioch*, *Laodicea*, *Apamea*, with many others, were seated. Then *Damascena*, or *Syria Lybanica*, taking name of the City *Damascus*, and the Mountaines of *Lybanus*, the Regall seat of the *Adades*, the first Kings of *Syria*. Adjoining to it was the Province of *Sephene*, or *Syria Soba*, *Choba*, or *Zobai*: over which *Adadexer* commanded in *Solomon's* time. Then *Phœnicia*, and the people *Phœnicians*: and lastly, *Syria Palestina* bordering *Egypt*: of which *Ptolomy* maketh *Judea* also a part: and to that Province which *Moses* calleth *Seir* and *Edom*, *Pomponius Mela* giveth the name of *Syria Judea*.

### §. II.

Of the bounds of the Land of Canaan, and of the promises touching this Land.

**B**UT that Land which was anciently *Canaan*, taketh a part of *Phœnicia*, and stretcheth from behinde *Lybanus* to the great *Desarts* between *Idumæa* and *Egypt*: bounded by the *Mitland Sea* on the West, and the Mountains of *Hermon*, *Galaad*, and *Arnon* towards the East: the same Hills which *Strabo* calleth *Traconi*, or *Traconite*, and *Ptolome*, *Hippus*. The name of *Canaan* it had from *Canaan* the son of *Cham*: *Et lingua appellata fuit Canaan*; The language was also called *Canaan*, saith *Montanus*: and after *Hebrew* of the *Hebrews*: who took name from *Heber*, the son of *Sale*, according to *Saint Augustine*. But *Arias Montanus* not so well allowing of this derivation, makes it a common name to all those of *Noah's* sons, which pass over *Euphrates* towards the West Sea. For the word *Heber*, saith he, is as much as *transiens*, or *transmittens*, of going, or passing over. And because the children of *Abraham* had for a long time no certain abiding: therefore, as he thinks, they were by the *Egyptians* called *Hebræi*, as it were passengers, which is also the opinion of *C. Sigonius*, and of *Eusebius* long before them both. It had also the name of *Judea* from *Juda*; and then afterwards intituled the *Holy Land*, because therein our Saviour *Christ* was born, and buried. Now this part of *Syria* was again divided into four; namely, into *Edom*, (otherwise *Seir*, or *Edumæa*) *Galilee*, *Samarita*, and *Judea*. *Galilee* is double, the superiour called *Gentium*, and the inferiour: and that *Galilee* and *Judea* are distinguished, it is plain in the *Evangelists*, though both of them belong to *Phœnicia*.

Now besides these Provinces of *Phœnicia*, and *Palestina* (both which the River of *Jordan* boundeth; saving that *Phœnicia* stretcheth a little more Easterly towards *Damascus*) that part also to the East of *Jordan*, and within the Mountains of *Hermon*, *Gilead*, and *Arnon*, otherwise *Traconi*, fell to the possession of half *Manasse*, *Gad*, and *Reuben*, and therefore are accounted a part of *Canaan* also: as well because anciently possess by the *Amorites*, as for that they were conquered and enjoyed by the *Israelites*; which Easternmost parts are again divided into *Basan*, or *Batanea*, into *Gilead*, *Moab*, *Midian*, *Ammon*, and the Territories of the *Macchati*, *Gessuri*, *Argobe*, *Hur*. They are known to the latter *Cosmographers* by the name of *Arabia* in general: and by the names of *Traconitis*, *Pieria*, *Batanea*, &c. of which I will speak in their proper places.

But where *Moses* describeth the Land of *Canaan* in the tenth of *Genesis*, he maketh no mention of the later Provinces, which fell to *Manasse*, *Gad*, and *Reuben*, for these be his words: *Then the border of the Canaanites was from Zidon, as thou comest to Gerar until Azab (which is Gaza)* and this was the length of the Countree North and South: then it followeth in the Text; *And as thou goest unto Sodome and Gomorah, and Admah, and Seboim, even unto Lajla*: by which words *Moses* setteth down the breadth, to wit, from the *Dead Sea* to the *Mediterranean*. But in *Deuteronomy* it seemeth to be far more large: For it is therein written; *All the places whercon the Soal, of your feet shall tread, shall be yours*: *Deut. 1. 24.*

your coast shall be from the wilderness, and from Libanon, and from the river Perah, unto the uttermost sea. Now for the length of the Countrey North and South, this description agreeth with the former: onely Libanon is put for Zidon; and the Wilderness for Gena and Azekab, which make no difference: but for the breadth and extent East and West, if Perah be taken for Euphrates: then the Land promised stretcheth it self both over Arabia Petraea, and the Desert, as far as the border of Babylon: which the Israelites never possesst; nor at any time did so much as invade or attempt. And therefore Vadianus doth conceive, that by the River Perah was meant Jordan, and not Euphrates: taking light from this place of Josua: Behold, I have divided unto you by lot these Nations, that remain to be an inheritance according to your Tribes: from Jordan with all the Nations that I have destroyed, even unto the great Sea Westward.

Vadian. Epi-  
tom. trium ter-  
ra peritum. cap.  
Palsin.

And though it be true, that David greatly enlarged the Territory of the Holy Land; yet as Vadianus well noteth, if Perah in the former place be taken for Euphrates, then was it put per gentes in amicitiam receptas. For David did not at any time enter so far to the East as Assyria, or Babylonia. Neither doth the not possessing of all these Countries give advantage to those that would make any irreligious cavill, as touching the promise of God to the Israelites unperformed: For when both their Kings, Magistrates, and People, fell from his worship and service, it pleased him not onely to inclose them within that Territory, which was for so many people exceeding narrow; but therein and elsewhere to subject them unto those Idolatrous Nations, whose false and foolish gods themselves also served and obeyed. And sure the promise by which the Hebrews claimed the inheritance of Canaan, and the lasting enjoying thereof, to wit, as long as the heavens were above the earth, was tied to those conditions, both in the Verses preceding, and subsequent; which the Israelites never performed. And therefore they could not hope for other than all mankind could or can expect; who knew that all sorts of comforts from the mercifull goodness of God looked for, as well in this life as after it, are no longer to be attended, than while we persevere in his love, service, and obedience. So in the eighth Verse of the eleventh of Deuteronomy, the keeping of Gods Commandments was a condition joynt to the prosperity of Israel. For therein it is written; Therefore shall ye keep all the Commandments which I command you this day: that ye may be strong, and go in, and possesse the Land, whither ye go to possesse it. Also that you may prolong your dayes in the Land which the Lord sware unto your fathers, &c.

Deut. 11. 23.

Deut. 11.

Deut. 11.

The like condition was also annexed to the enjoying of the Land conquered, and the possession thereof, so long as the heavens were above the earth. For if ye keep diligently, saith he, all these commandments, which I command you to do, that is, to love the Lord your God, &c. then will the Lord cast out all these Nations before you, and ye shall possesse great Nations, and mightier than you. And here, though it be manifest, that by reason of the breach of Gods Commandments, and their falling away from the worship of his all-powerfull Majestic, to the Idolatry of the Heathen, the conditionall promises of God were absolutely void, as depending upon obedience unperformed: yet I cannot milke that exposition of Melancthon: For, saith he, ostendit promissionem precipuam non esse de hoc politico Regno; He sheweth that his chief promise is not of a civill Kingdom. To which agrees that answer which S. Hierome made to a certain Heretick in his Epistle ad Dardanium, who accused S. Hierome, that he overthrowed the reputation of the Jews Story, and brought the truth thereof in question, by drawing it altogether into an Allegorie; and ad illam duntaxat vivendum terram que in celis est; (that is) Onely to that land of the living which is in heaven. Quoniam tota Judearum Regio adeo angusta sit ambitu, ut vix longitudo habeat 160. miliarium, latitudine vero 40. & in his etiam regionibus, loca, ubi, & oppida sunt plurima, nunquam a Judeis occupata, sed tantum divina pollicitatione promissa; Because the whole Countrey of the Jews is so narrow in compasse, that it scarce hath 160. miles in length, and 40. miles in breadth, and in these are countries, places, cities, and many towns, which the Jews never possesst, but were onely granted by divine promise. In like manner the same Father speaketh upon EJay, touching the blessings promised unto Hierusalem, where he hath these words: De quo discimus Hierusalem nequaquam in Palestina regione petendam, qua totius Provinciae deterrima est: & saxosis montibus asperum, & penuriam patitur flumina: ita ut celestibus natus pluvius, & varietatem fontium cisternarum extruere soleat: sed in Dei manibus, ad quam dicitur, festinauerunt struere turres. From whence, saith he, we learn, that Hierusalem is not to be sought in that region of Palestina,

Sp. 49. 14.

which is the worst of the whole Province, and ragged with craggie mountains, and suffereth the penury of thirst: so as it preserveth rain water, and supplieth the scarcity of Wells by building of cisterns; but this Hierusalem is in Gods hands, to which it is said, Thy builders have hastened: so far S. Hierome; where also to prevent mistaking, he thus expoundeth himself: Neque hoc dico in jugillationem terre Judaeae, ut heretici Sycothania mentiuntur: aut quo asseram historiam veritatem, quae fundamentum est intelligentiae spiritualis: sed ut decemum supercilium Judaeorum: qui Synagoga angustias latitudinis Ecclesiae praefereunt: Si enim occidentem tantum sequuntur hieram, & non spiritum vivificantem, ostendant terram promissionis laque & melle manentem: Neither (saith he) say I this to disgrace the land of Judaea, as the heretical Sycothani doth belie me; or to take away the truth of the history, which is the foundation of spiritual understanding: but to beat down the pride of the Jews, which enlarge the straits of the Synagoga rather than the breadth of the Church: For if they follow onely the killing letter, and not the quickening spirit, let them shew the Land of promise, flowing with milk and honey. By this it may also be gathered, howsoever it be unlikely (seeing the West-bound in the place, Deut. 11. 24. had his truth in the littell sense, that Euphrates or Perath, which is made the East-bound, should be taken onely in a spirituall sense) yet nevertheless that Hieroms opinion inclineth to this, as if this Perath were not to be understood for Euphrates, and that the promise it self was never so large: much lesse the plantation and conquest of Israel.

And now for a more particular description of this Holy Land, because Asher, Neptulim, and Zabulon held the Northernmost part, and were seated in Phoenicia, I will begin with these three, taking Asher for the first: of which Tribe yet before I speak, I must admonish the Reader touching the names of places in this, and the other Tribes to be mentioned, that he remember that many names, by reason of the divers fancies of Translators, are diversly expressed, so that to the unskillfull they may seem divers, when they are one and the same: the reason of this diversity (as by those learned in the Hebrew I am taught) is, partly because the ancient Editions of the Hebrew want vowels; the old Translators imagined other vowels than now the Hebrew Editions have; and partly, because the Ancient expressed or omitted divers consonants, otherwise than the later do think fit.

### §. III.

#### THE TRIBE OF ASHER.

### ||. 1.

#### The bounds of the Tribe of Asher.

The Asherites descended of Asher the son of Jacob by Zelpha, the hand-maid of Lea, were increased while they abode in Egypt to the number of 41 500. and odde persons, all men above twenty yeers of age, and able to bear arms, at the time when they were mustered by Moses at Mount Sinai: all which number perishing in the Desarts, there remained of their issues, besides women and children, 53 400. bodies fit for the wars: which past the river of Arnon into the Plains of Moab, & after the conquest of Canaan, had for their portion that part of Phoenicia, from Zidon & the fields of Libanus, unto Ptolomae Acon alongst the Sea-coast, containing thirty English miles, or thereabout: from the Mid-land Sea to the East border some twelve miles: though Antoninus An. Riv. makes it somewhat larger. This part of Canaan was very fruitfull, abounding in wine, oyl, and wheat, besides the Balsammum, with other pleasant and profitable commodities: according to that Prophecy, Asher pinguis panis: Concerning Asher, his bread shall be fat: And he shall give pleasures for a King.

Gen. 40.

### ||. II.

#### Of Zidon.

The first City seated on the North border of the Territory of Asher, was Zidon, which Josua calleth the great Zidon, both for strength and magnitude. The Greeks and Latines make Agenor the founder thereof: and Justine derives the name from Josin. 1. 18. the



Gen. 10. Jofeph.

Ej. 23. Hier.  
47. Jerk. 28.  
Ch. 32. Zec. 9.P. 1. St. 1.  
f. 1. Valim.  
Phen. f. 278.  
Strabo. l. 16.\* Strabo. l. 16.  
Zach. g. 2.  
Herod. l. 5.  
Plin. l. 5. c. 9.

\* It seems that even in *Jofua's* time they practised glasse-making, whence *Junius* for *Misphre* both majim, which ad verbum is as much as combustion; *apud* *Strabo*, reads *stiraces vitriarii*, *Jos. l. 8.* as it seems, because those furnaces were where there was stove of water, either for the moving of the bellows by the force of the water, or for other necessary uses. But there are others that take them for salt-pits, and others again for hot baths. The form of *Afshoth* (or *Afshoth*) is *stiraces vitriarii*, which to have been a sheep, for *Deut. 7. 13.* the word in the plural number signifies sheep, and this may confirm *Augustine's* opinion, that *Afshoth* was *Junius* for the form of her husband *Jupiter* *Hammam* was a Ram.

the abundance of fish found on those shores: whereof it hath been called *Zidon*. But that it was far more ancient, *Moses*, *Jofua*, and *Josephus* witness, the same being founded by *Zidon* the eldest of *Canaan's* sons: and so strong it was in *Jofua's* time, as neither did himself attempt it, neither could the *Assyrians*, or any of their successful warriors: it continued all the time of the *Judges* and *Kings*, even unto the coming of *Christ*; a City interchangeably governed, by their own Princes or other Magistrates: though according to the warnings and threats of the Prophets, *Ejsey*, *Hieremie*, *Ezechiel*, and *Zacharie*, it was often afflicted, both by the enemies sword, and by the pestilence.

*Zidon* is seated on the very wath of the *Phenician Sea*, which is a part of the *Mediterranean* or *Mid-land Sea*. It hath to the North the City of *Berythus*, and the River *Levanti*; and to the South *Sarepta*, or *Sarphat*, which standeth between it and *Tyre*: the distance between which two great and famous Cities, to wit, *Zidon* and *Tyre*, is 14 thousand paces; saith *Seiglerus*: but *Vadianus* makes it two hundred furlongs, and so doth *Josephus* in his description of the holy Land, and both from *Strabo*: which two hundred furlongs make five and twenty miles. This difference of distance as well between these two known Cities, as all the rest, make it over-difficult to devise any new scale for the Map and Description of the holy Land.

What Kings it had till *Agenor's* time there is no memory: the story which *Zennobius* Philosopher, who was a *Zidonian*, wrote thereof, being by time consumed and lost. It seemeth to be more ancient than *Tyre*; which was also built by the *Zidonians*. For as *Strabo* noteth, *Homero* speaking of *Zidon*, neglecteth the memory of *Tyre*, because it was but a member of *Zidon*; and a City subject to the Kings thereof: though it be true that in after-times it contended with *Zidon* for Primacie, and became far more renowned, opulent, and strong: From *Zidon* had *Solomon* and *Zorababel* their principall workmen, both in Timber and Stone, for the building of the Temple. For as it flourished in all sorts of learning, so did it in all other Mechanicall Arts or Trades: the Prophet *Zachary* calling them the wise *Zidonians*. The City was both by nature and art exceeding strong, having a Castle or Citadell on the North-side, standing upon an unaccessable Rock, and compassed by the Sea, which after the Citizens became Christians, was held and defended by the Knights of the Dutch Order: and another Castle it hath on the South-side by the Port of *Egypt*, which the Templers guarded. It also sent many other Colonies besides that of *Tyre*, into places remote: as unto *Thebes*, and *Sephria*, Cities of *Boeotia* in *Greece*. *Strabo* and *Pliny* give the *Zidonians* the invention of Glasse, which they used to make of those sands which are taken out of the river *Belus*, falling into the *Mediterranean Sea*, near *Ptolomais*, or *Acon*: and from whence the *Venetians* fetch the matter of those clear Glasses which they make at *Murano*: of which *S. Hierome* and *Pliny*: *Zidon artificis vitrii*: *Zidon vitriarii officinis nobilis*; *Zidon a famous Glasse-maker*, or a skillfull worker in Glasse-houses.

They were in Religion Idolaters (as the rest of the *Canaanites*) worshippers of *Baal* and *Afshoth*: which Idols though common to the other of the issue of *Canaan* (as *Pindus* gathers out of *1 Sam. 31. 10.* and *Judg. 10. 6.* yet especially & peculiarly were accounted the gods of the *Zidonians*: as appears *1 Reg. 11. 5.* in the story of *Solomon's* Idolatry: where *Afshoth* is called the god of the *Zidonians*: and *1 Reg. 16. 33.* in the story of *Achab*, the chief worshipper of *Baal*, where it is said, that he marrying *Jezabel* the daughter of the King of the *Zidonians*, worshipped their *Baal*. Divers *Baals* and divers *Afshoths* in their Idolatries they acknowledged: as it appears by the plural names of *Baalim* & *Afshoths*; *1 Sam. 12. 10.* & elsewhere: for even the name *Afshoth*, as I am informed by a skillfull *Hebrewist*, is plural; the singular being *Afshoth*: whence *Judg. 2. 13.* the Septuagint reads *idolatriam* *non* *idolatrias*: They worshipped the *Afshoths*. The occasion of this their multiplying of their *Baals* and *Afshoths*, may be diversly understood: either in respect of the diversity of the forms of the Images, or of the worship in divers places, or of the stories depending upon them: which (as tables use to be) were doubtless in divers cities divers. *Augustine* quest. 19. in *Judg.* thinks *Baal* and *Afshoth* to be *Jupiter* and *Juno*. For the *Carthaginians* (which were *Tyrians*) call *Juno* by such a name as *Afshoth*. *Tully*, lib. 3. de *Nat. Deorum*, making divers Goddesses of the name of *Venus*, expounds the fount to be *Afshoth*: whom he makes to be born of *Tyris* and *Syria*, and to have been the wife of *Adonis*: as also *Macrob. 2. Saturn. cap. 21.* says, that *Adonis* was with great veneration

veneration commonly worshipped of the *Assyrians*: and *Hierome* upon *Ezek. 8. 44.* notes that *Thammuz* (whom there the Idolatrous women are noted to bewail) is the name of *Adonis* among the *Syrians*. So that it may seem that in the worship of *Afshoth* or *Venus*, they did bewail her husband *Adonis*: as also the *Grecians* did in their songs of *Adonis*: *Adonis* for *Adonis* the fair, dead is *Adonis* the fair. Howbeit others in that place of *Ezek. 8. 44.* have not without good probability, expound the mourning for *Thammuz*, to be the mourning for *Osiris* in the sacrifice of *Isis*: whose losse of her Husband *Osiris*, was as famous in the *Egyptian* Idolatry, as with the *Grecians*, *Venus* losse of *Adonis*. And to this agreeeth that which *Plutarch* hath, de *Iside & Osiride*, that *Osiris* with the *Egyptians* is called *Thammuz*; which word may seem to be the same with *Ezekiel's* *Thammuz*. But howsoever these *Zidonians* were thus anciently fostered with the milk of Idolatry: yet they were more apt to receive the Doctrine of the Gospel of *Christ* after his Ascension, than the *Jews*: who had been taught by *Moses* and the Prophets so many years, whereof our Saviour in *Matthew* and *Luke*: *Woe be to thee Corazin, &c.* for if the great works which were done in thee, had been done in *Tyris* and *Zidon*, they had repented long ago, &c. but I say unto you, it shall be easier for *Tyris* and *Zidon*, at the day of judgement, than for you.

It received a Christian Bishop with the first: who was afterward of the Diocese of *Tyre*. But in the year of our Redemption 636. it fell into the hands of the *Saracens*, and continued in their possession till *Baldwinus* the first, then King of *Hierusalem*: in the year 1113. by the help of the *Danes* and *Normans*, who came with a Fleet to visit the Holy Land, and took Port at *Joppa*: it was again recovered, the commandment thereof being given to *Eustace Gremer*, a Noble man of that Country. And again in the year 1230. it was receded and strengthened by *Lodowick* the French King: while he spent four year in the War of the Holy Land. Lastly, in the year 1289. it was reconquered by the *Saracens*: and is now in possession of the *Turk*, and hath the name of *Zai*.

## §. III.

Of *Sarepta*, with a brief History of *Tyre* in the same Coast.

*Sarepta*, or after the *Hebrew*, *Sarphath*, is the next City Southward from *Zidon*, between it and the River called *Naar*, or *Fons hortorum Libani* (of which more hereafter) standing in the way towards *Tyre*, a City very famous for the excellent Wine growing neer it: of which *Sidonius*:

*Vina mihi nun sunt Gazetica, Chia, Falerna,*  
*Quaque Sareptano palmitis missa bibas.*

I have no wine of *Gaza*, nor *Falerna* wine,  
Nor any for the drinking of *Sarepta's* vine.

This City had also a Bishop, of the Diocese of *Tyre*: after it came to the *Saracens* and *Turks*, as theret: and is now called *Saphet*, saith *Postellus*.

Not far from *Sarepta* was situated that sometime famous City of *Tyre*, whose fleets of ships commanded, and gave the law over all the *Mediterranean Sea*, and the borders thereof: during which time of greatness and power, the *Tyrians* erected *Utica*, *Leptis*, and *Carthage* in *Africa*, of which *Virgil*, *Urbs antiqua fuit, Tyrii tenere coloni, Carthago*. *Virgil. l. 1.* And *Carthage* was therefore called *Punica* quasi *Phoenicum*, a Colony of the *Phenicians*. In Spain they founded *Gades*, now *Calix*. In *Italy*, *Nola*: in *Africa* the less, *Dromos*. *Plin. l. 5. c. 19.* *Marcelin. l. 22.* *Actibus*, which City the Scholiast of *Apollonius* placeth neer the River *Phyllis*, in *Bybina*.

It had anciently the name of *Zor*, or *Tzor*: and so it is written in *Jofua* the 19. taking name from the situation; because built on a high Rock, sharp at one end. The *Lastnes*, as it seems, knew it by the name of *Sarra*: for *Virgil* calleth the purple of *Tyre*, *O-Sarra* *Sarranum*, by which name *Juvenal* and *Silius* remember it. The *Zidonians* built it upon a high hill, whereof many ruines remain to this day: the place being still known by the name of the ancient *Tyre*: and because it was a Colony of the *Zidonians*, the Prophet *Ejsey* calleth it the Daughter of *Zidon*: which *Trogus* also confirmeth





before therein buried : but in the year 1289. the Saracens again attempted it, and carried it, and it now remaineth subject to the *Turks*.

||. IV.

Of *Ptolomais* or *Acon*.

**T**he third City alongst the coast of the Sea, which the *Asserites* could not obtain, on the South bound of *Affer* was *Acho*, which was the ancient name thereof after *Hierome*, though other good Authours affirm, that it took name from *Acon* the brother of *Ptolomie*. *Plinie* calleth it *Ace* : and otherwise the Colonie of *Claudius*. It had also the name of *Coth*, or *Cod*, and by *Zeiglers* it is called *Hatipos*.

*Plin. li. 5. c. 19.*  
*In descript. terr. sanct.*

*Ptolomæus*  
*Polimæter.*

*1 Mac. 1. 10.*

*1 Mac. 11. 18.*

*Ant. liii.*

*Hersld.*

*G. Tyr. tell. sacr.*  
*lib. 1. c. 28.*  
*Herold. l. 1. c. 28.*  
*sacr. lib. 7. c. 28.*  
*c. 28. c. 28.*

But lastly, it was intitled *Ptolomais*, after the name of one of the Egyptian *Ptolomies* : which City also, as it is *1 Mac. 11.* another of the *Ptolomies*, infideliously wrested from his son in law *Alexander*, which called himself the son of *Antiochus Epiphanes* : the same *Alexander* having married *Cleopatra*, daughter of the said *Ptolomie*, not long before. Therein also was *Jonathan Machabæus* treacherously surpris'd and slain, as it is *1 Mac. 12. 48.* by the perfidiousness of *Tryphon*, whom soon after *Antiochus* pursued, as it is in the Story ensuing : and, by like reason, about the same time was the afore said *Alexander* in the war against *Demetrius*, one of the sons of *Antiochus* the great, with whom *Ptolomie* joyned, overthrown and treacherously murdered by *Zabdiel* the Arabian : to whom he fled for succour : and his head presented unto his father in law *Ptolomie* : who enjoyed not the glory of his victory and treason above three daies, for God struck him by death.

For the beauty and strength of this City, this *Alexander* made it his regal seat : two parts of the same being invironed by the Sea, and the Port, for safety and capacity, no inferior to any other in all that Tract. This City is distant from *Hierusalem* somewhat and thirty miles : four miles to the North from the Mountain *Carmel*, and as much to the South from *Castrum Lamberti* : from *Tyre*, *Antonius* maketh it two and thirty *Italin* miles. In the midst of the City there was a Tower of great strength, sometimes the Temple of *Bel-zebub* : and therefore called the Castle of *Phis*, on the top whereof there was maintained a perpetual light, like unto that called *Pharus* in *Egypt* : to give comfort in the night to those Ships which came neer and sought that part. It had in it a Bishop's seat of the Diocesse of *Tyre*, after it became *Christian* : but in the year 636. (a little year to the *Christians* in those parts) it was forced and taken by *Haomar* the *Saracen*. In the year 1104. it was regained by *Baldwine* the first, by the help of the *Gallies* of *Genoa* : to whom a third of the Revenue was given in recompence. Again, in the year of our Lord God, one thousand one hundred fourscore and seven, *Saladin* King of *Egypt* and *Syria*, became Lord thereof. In the year of Christ, one thousand one hundred ninety and one, by *Richard* King of *England*, and *Philip* King of *France*, it was repossessed and redelivered to the *Christians*. Lastly, in the year 1291. it was by the fury of the *Saracens* besieged with an Army of 150000. entred, sackt, and utterly demolished : though in some sort afterward reedified, and it is now *Turkish*.

||. V.

Of the Castle of Saint George.

*Brq. b.*

*Jim. 4.*  
*Of the place*  
*and memory*  
*of his death.*  
*See ch. 5. sect. 1.*

**F**ive miles from *Ptolomais* towards the East, is the Castle of Saint George seated, in which he was born : the Valley adjoining bearing the same name. And though it be the credit of Saint Georges killing the Dragon, I leave every man to his own belief : yet I cannot but think, that if the Kings of *England* had not some probable record of this his memorable act, among many others : it was strange that the Order full of Honour, which *Edward* the third founded, and which his Successors royally have continued, should have borne his name, seeing the World had not that scarcity of Saints in those daies, as that the *English* were driven to make such an erection upon a fable, or person feigned. The place is described by *Adrichomius* in his description of *Affer*, to have been in the fields of *Libanus*, between the River *Adonis*, and *Zidon* : his own words are these :

these : *Hoc loco qui ab incolis Cappadocia appellatur, non longe à Beryto, memorant inclitum Christi Asilitem D. Georgium, Regis filium ab immanissimo Dracone asseruisse : eamque magnâ bestia parenti restituisse. In ejus rei memoriam Ecclesia postmodum fuit edificata : In this place, which by the Inhabitants is called Cappadocia, not far from Berytus, men say that the famous Knight of Christ, Saint George, did rescue the Kings Daughter from a huge Dragon : and having killed the beast, delivered the Virgin to her Parent. In memory of which deed a Church was after built there : Thus far Adrichomius. His Authours he citeth *Lodovicus Romanus*, *Patric. Navigationum* l. 1. c. 3. and *Bridenbach* *Itin.* 3. The Valley under this Castle sometime called *Affer*, was afterward called the Valley of Saint George. If this authority suffice not, we may rather make the Story allegoricall, figuring the victory of Christ, than except of George the *Arrian* Bishop, mentioned by *Am. Marcellinus*.*

||. VI.

Of *Acziba*, *Sandalium*, and others.

**B**etween *Ptolomais* and *Tyre* alongst the Seacoast, was the strong City of *Acziba*, or *Abchazib*, which *S. Hierome* called *Abchizib*, and *Josephus* *Ecdippus*, *Plinie* *Ecdippa*, one of those which defended it self against the *Asserites*. *Belforst* findes *Acziba* and *Sandalium*, or the Castle of *Alexander* to be one, but I know not whence he had it.

The twelve Searchers of the Land which *Moser* sent from *Caderbarn*, travelled as far to the North as *Roob*, or *Rechob*, in the Tribe of *Affer*, which *Rechob* : as also *Berothe*, which by *Ezechiel*, *cap. 47. ver. 16.* is placed in these North borders, belonged in *David*'s time to the King *Hadar bezzer*, as it may be gathered out of the second of *Sammuel* *chap. 8. ver. 8.* and *cap. 10. ver. 6.* and it defended it self against the *Asserites*, as *Zidon*, *Tyre*, *Abchizib*, *Ptolomais*, *Alab*, *Helbab*, and *Apbek* did.

This *Apbek* it was, whose wall falling down, flew seven and twenty thousand of *Ben-hadad*'s Soldiers, after that a hundred thousand had been slaughtered by the *Israelites*, under the conduct of *Ahab*. Here *Junius* finds that the *Philistines* encamped a little before the battell at *Gilboa*, though in his note upon the first of *Sammuel* the 9. & 1. he takes *Apbek* there mentioned (at which battell the Ark was taken) to have been in *Juda*. Of which *Jos. 15. and 53.* and in the second of *Kings* 13. 17. he reads, *For it is, for, in Apbek*, 1 *Sam. 29. 1.* Where others convert it, *Percuties* : *Syros* in *Apbek*.

The next place alongst the coast is *Sandalium*, first called *Schaudaliun* of *Schunder*, which we call *Alexander*, for *Alexander Marcedon* built it when he besieged *Tyre* : and set it on a point of Land which extendeth it self into the Sea, between *Acziba* and *Tyre* : which Castle *Baldwine* the first rebuilt and fortified ; in the year of Christ 1157. when he undertook the recovery of *Tyre*.

Not much above a mile from this Castle, there ariseth that most plentiful Spring of water, which *Solomon* remembreth, called the *Well of living Water* : from whence not only all the fields and plains about *Tyre* are made fruitful by large pipes hence drawn : but the same Spring, which hath not above a bow-shot of ground to travell till it recover the Sea, driveth six great Mills in that short passage, saith *Brocard*.

Within the Land, and to the East of *Acziba*, and *Sandalium*, standeth *Hofa* : and beyond it, under the Mountains of *Tyre*, the City of *Abchazib*, or *Aczab*, or after *S. Hierome*, *Asip*, a City of great strength, whose King, amongst the rest, was slain by *Jesus*, at the waters of *Aderon*.

||. VII.

Of *Thoron*, *Giscala*, and some other places.

**F**urther into the Land, towards *Jordan*, was seated the Castle of *Thoron*, which *Hugo de Sando* *Abdum* are built on the Easter-most hills of *Tyre*, in the year 1107. thereby to restrain the excursions of the *Saracens*, while they held *Tyre* against the *Christians* : the place adjoining being very fruitfull, and exceeding pleasant. From this Castle the Lords of *Thoron*, famous in the story of the Wars for the recovery of the Holy Land, derive their names, and take their Nobility. It had in it a curious Chappell, dedicated to the blessed Virgin, in which *Humphrey* of *Thoron*, Constable to *Baldwine* the 3. King of *Hierusalem*, lieth buried : There were five Castles besides this within the Territory of *Affer* : where,



The Rivers which *Libanus* bestoweth on the neighbour Regions, are, *Chrysorrhoen*, *Jordan*, *Eleutherus*, *Leontes*, *Lycus*, *Adonis*, *Fons hortorum Libani*, and others.

The rest of the Mountains of *Affer*, are those Hills above *Tyre*, and the Hills of *Saron*, both exceeding fruitfull: but those are but of a low stature, compared with *Libanus*: for from *Nebo*, or the Mountain of *Abarim* in *Reuben*, *Moses* beheld *Libanus* threescore miles distant.

## §. IV.

## THE TRIBE OF NEPHTALIM.

## §. I.

Of the bounds of *Nephtalim*, and of *Heliopolis*, and *Abila*.

The next portion of the Land of *Canaan* bordering *Affer*, was the upper *Galilee*: the greatest part whereof fell to the lot of *Nephtalim*, the son of *Jacob* by *Billa*, the hand-maid of *Rachel*: who while they abode in *Egypt*, were increased to the number of 53400. persons, able men to bear arms, numbred at Mount *Sinai*: all which leaving their bodies in the *Desarts*, there entered the Holy Land of their sons, 45400. besides Infants, Women, and Children, under twenty yeers of age. The Land of *Nephtalim* took beginning on the North part, from the Fountains of *Jordan*, and the Hill of *Libanus* adjoining, as far South as the Sea of *Galilee*, bounded on the West by *Affer*, and on the East and South-East by *Jordan*.

On the North-side of *Libanus*, and adjoining to this Territory of *Nephtalim*, did the *Amorites* (or *Emorites*) also inhabit, in which Tract, and under *Libanus*, was the city of *Heliopolis*: which the height of the Mountains adjoining shadowed from the Sun the better part of the day. *Possellus* calls it *Balbec*; *Niger*, *Marbech*; and *Leonclaus*, *Beallebecca*.

Of this name of *Heliopolis*, there are two great cities in *Egypt*: the first called *On*, by the Hebrews, and the *Chaldean Paraphrast*; otherwise *Bethfemes*, or after the *Latines*, *Solis oppidum*, or *Domus Solis*; The City of the Sun: into which, saith *Ulpian*, *Severus* the Roman Emperor sent a *Colonia*: the other *Gestellus* nameth *Dealmarach*: and of this name *Strophianus* also findeth a city in *Thrace*, and *Glycas* in *Phrygia*.

There is also in the same Valley adjoining to *Nephtalim*, *Chalcis*, and *Abila*. *Chalcis*, of whom the region towards *Palmyrena* hath the name of *Chalcidica*, over which *Herod Agrippa*, and *Berice* the Queen commanded.

*Abila* also gave name to the region adjoining, of which *Lysanius* the son of *Herod* the elder, became *Tetrarch* or Governour: whereof *Ptolemy* gave it the addition of *Lysani*, and called it *Abila Lysanii*. *Volaterranus* names it *Aphila*, of which he notes, that one *Diogenes*, a famous *Sophister* was native, who by *Volaterran* is intituled *Apuleius*, not *Aliphen*. After that this city of *Abila* or *Aphila*, had received the *Christian Faith*, *Priscillianus* became the Bishop thereof: slain afterward by our *Brittish Maximian* at *Treuer*. For distinction of this city (if it be not the same, as it may be thought to be the same) it is to be remembered, that in the Tribe of *Manasse*, joyning upon the bounds of the Tribe of *Nephtalim*, there is another city of the same name, saving that it is written with an (E) for an (I) and called *Abela*, remembered in the 20. chapter of the second of *Samuel*. The same *Josephus* calls *Abelmachea*, and *Hierome*, *Bethumacha*. In the place of *Samuel*, for distinction sake, it is written *Abel Beth-Mahaca*, (for belike it was the Town of *Mahaca* the wife of *Maacir*, the son of *Manasse*, the father of *Gilead*) in the *Chronicles* it is called *Abel-Majim*. This city *Joab* besieged, because *Seba* the son of *Bichri*, who rebelled against *David*, fled thereinto for succour: but a certain wife woman of the city persuading the people to cast *Seba* his head over the wall, *Joab* retired his Army. The same city was afterward taken by the King of *Damascus*, *Benadad*: and after a while by *Teglatphalasar*.

The word *Abel* may be expounded, either to signifie bewailing, or a plain ground; and therefore no marvel that many Towns (with some addition for distinction sake) were thus called: for even of bewailing, many places took name; as *Bochim*, *Judg.* 2. 4. and

*Guil. Tyr. Bell.*  
*for l. 9. c. 15.*  
*Throd. 4. hifi.*  
*Ecclesiast.*  
*Mela. l. 3. c. 9.*  
*Justin. Gijel.*  
*in itinerar.*  
*Joseph. in plur.*  
*loci. Euseb. 8.*  
*Demetri. Volat.*  
*l. 11. f. 243.*  
*l. 11. f. 243.*  
*Alio a third*  
*in Egiptum,*  
*called Abel-*  
*Machela, and*  
*a fourth in*  
*Reuben, called*  
*Abel-Sittim,*  
*also Abel-*  
*Misraim, at*  
*the Foord of*  
*Jordan, and (as*  
*it seems) in*  
*the same Tribe*  
*of Reuben, of*  
*all which in*  
*which that*  
*follows: to*  
*which also we*  
*may adde*  
*Abel-Magnum,*  
*the name, as*  
*some think, of*  
*a City, other-*  
*wise called*  
*Bethfemes,*  
*next the bor-*  
*der of the Tri-*  
*bute, or ac-*  
*cording to o-*  
*thers, of the*  
*great stone in*  
*the border.*  
*1 Sam. 6. 18.*  
*Joseph. ant. 17.*  
*cap. 10.*  
*2 Sam. 20.*  
*1 Kings 15.*  
*2 Kings 15.*

and so doubtlesse \* *Abel-Misraim*, *Gen.* 50. 11. and yet *Junius* in his notes upon *Num.* 33. \* And *Abel* 49. thinks that *Abel-Sittim* was so called, rather by reason of the plain ground there, (to wit, in the Land of *Moab*) and so perhaps *Abel-Michelab* in the Tribe of *Ephraim*: the Town of *Elijsha* the Prophet: also *Abel-Vinearum* of the *Ammonites*, whither *Jephtha* pursued them.

## ||. II.

## Of Hazor.

In the Tribe of *Nephtalim* was that famous City of *Jabin*, in *Joshua's* time called *Azor*, \* (or after the *Chaldean Paraphrast*, *Hafzor*) by *Josephus*, *Afora*; by *Junius*, \* *Chatzor*: ther Cities of which *Laicstan* names *Hefron*; and the Regall City, and Metropolis of *Canaan*: seated in the West part of *Nephtalim*, towards *Affer*. In this city was that great Rendevow and Assembly of those four and twenty Kings against *Joshua*: who being all overthrowen, slain, and scattered, this their powerful city was by *Joshua* taken & burnt to dust. But in process of time the same being re-built by the *Canaanites*, a second King *Jabin*, 137 yeers after the death of this first *Jabin*, invaded the *Israelites*: and being ordained of God to punish their Idolatry, he prevailed against them, and held them in a miserable servitude 20. yeers; till *Debora* the Prophetesse overthrew *Sisera*, *Jabin's* Lievtenant, and his Army, neer the Mountain *Tabor*. This city *Solomon* restored at such time as he also re-edified *Gezar*, burnt by *Pharao* of *Egypt*, with \* *Megiddo*, *Bethoron*, and other cities; but about 260. yeers after, it fell into the hands of *Teglatphalasar*, King of the *Affryans*. It is now, saith *Adrichomius*, called *Antiopia*: it was one of the principall cities of *Decapolis*. There is another city of this name in the Territory of *Benjamin*, seated on the confines of *Alcalon*, called the new *Hazor*, d saith *Hierome*.

See, Ex. 41. Num. 34. 8. Also in *Simoon*, *Chatfar-Sufina*, of which 1 *Chren.* 4. 31. which also is called *Chatfar-Sula*, and *Chatfar-Gadda*, at d lally, *Chatfar-Shuleh*, another City of *Simoon*, fol 19. 3. c 1 *Kings* 9. d *Hieron.* loc. *Hebr.* l. 4. out of *Nebem.* 11. 33. as 10. cems.

## ||. III.

## Of Caesarea Philippi.

There was also on the border, and within the Territory of *Nephtalim*, that renowned city of *Lais*, or *Lajisch*, as *Junius* writes it, or *Leschen*; which city the children of *Dan* (being straitned in their Territory under *Juda*) invaded and mastered; and gave it the name of their own Parent *Dan*: and by that name it is written in *Genes.* 14. at which place *Abraham* surprized *Chedorlaomer* and his confederates, and followed his victory as far as *Sebah*, formerly remembered in the division of *Syria*, otherwise called *Sophena*. And after the possession of the *Danites*, it had the joynt name of *Leschem-Dan*. *Weissenbach* writes it *Lacke*, the *Geneva*, *Laisb*; *Josephus*, *Dana*; *Benjamin*, *Balina*; *Breidenbach*, *Belena*: but the now Inhabitants know it by the name of *Belina* to this day: witness *Neubrigenfis*, *Tyrius*, *Volaterranus*, *Brochard* the Monk, and *Possellus*: who also taketh this city to be the same, which in *Matth.* 15. 39. in the *Vulgar* is called *Atagedin*, for which the *Greek Text* hath *Magdala* in that place, and in *S. Mark*, speaking of the same story, *Dalmammtha*. At such time as the children of *Dan* obtained this place, it seemeth that it was either a free city, of the alliance and confederacy of the *Zidonians*, or else subject unto the Kings thereof; for it is written *Judges* 18. And there was none to help, because *Lais* was far from *Zidon*: and they had no businessse with other men: for it was above thirty English miles from the *Mediterran Sea*, and from *Zidon*.

In after-times when these regions became subject to the state of *Rome*, it had the name of *Paneth*, from a Fountain adjoining so called: and therefore *Ptolemy* calls it *Caesarea* *Heg. l. 1. c. 35.* *Pania*. *Hegeffippus* calls it *Parnium*, saith *Weissenbach*: but he had read it in a corrupt copy; for in *Hegeffippus*, set out by *Badius*, it is written *Paneum* without an (R); and at such time as *Philip* the son of the elder *Herod*, brother to *Herod*, *Tetrarch* of *Galilee*, became \* of another *Caesarea* or *Ca-* for in *Hegeffippus*, set out by *Badius*, it is written *Paneum* without an (R); and at such time as *Philip* the son of the elder *Herod*, brother to *Herod*, *Tetrarch* of *Galilee*, became \* of another *Caesarea* or *Ca-* and both to give memory to his own name, and to flatter *Tiberius Caesar*, he called it *Caesarea* *Philippi*: and so it became the Metropolis, and head city of *Tracountis*, and one of the first cities of *Decapolis*. And being by *Agrippa* in the succeeding age greatly adorned; by him in honour of *Nero*, it was called *Neronia*, or *Neremiada*. But as former part of *Manasse*.

Of Diocæsaria,  
see *Sepher* in  
Zabulon.  
*Euseb. hist. Ec-  
clesiæ* l. 7. c. 14.  
*Nicph. l. 6. c. 25*

a *Josephus* in  
the book of  
the Jewish  
war, chap. 18.  
saith, that *Phi-  
lip* the Tetrarch  
cait chaffe into  
a Fountain  
called *Phi-  
læ*, distant  
120. stadia  
North-east  
from *Cæsaria*,  
which chaffe  
being carried  
under ground,  
was call up a-  
gain at *Peni-  
on*, or *Dan*,  
wherby it is  
conjectured,  
that the first  
Spring of *Jor-  
dan* is from  
this Fountain  
called *Phi-  
læ*, from whence  
*Jor* and *Dan*  
receive their  
waters.

nothing remained with that Emperour, but the memory of his impiety: so in *S. Hieronim* time the Citizens remembred their former *Panæas*, and so re-called it, with the Territo-ry adjoining by the ancient name. Of this City was that woman whom *Christ* healed of a bloody issue, by touching the hem of his garment with a constant Faith: who af-terward, as he was a woman of great wealth and ability, being mindfull of Gods good-ness, and no lesse gratefull for the same, as *Eusebius* and *Nicephorus* report, caused two Statues to be cast in pure Copper: the one representing *Christ*, as near as it could be moulded: the other made like her self, kneeling at his feet, & holding up her hands towards him. These she mounted upon two great Bases or *Pedestals* of the same metall, which she placed by a Fountain near her own house: both which (saith *Eusebius*) remained in their first perfection, even to his own time: which himself had seen, who lived in the reign of *Constantine* the Great. But in the year after *Christ* 363, that Monster *Julian A. postata*, caused that worthy Monument to be cast down and defaced: setting up the like of his own in the same place: which Image of his was with fire from Heaven broken into fitters: the head, body, and other parts sundred and scattered, to the great admi-ration of the people at that time living. The truth of this accident is also confirmed by *Sozomenus Salaminius*, in his fifth Book and twentieth Chapter.

This City built by the *Damites*, was near the joining together of those two Riven, which arising from the springs of *Jor* and *Dan*, the two<sup>a</sup> apparent Fountains of *Jordan*, in a soile exceeding fruitful and pleasant: for, as it is written, *Judges* 18. it is a place, which doth want nothing that is in the world. In the fields belonging to this City it was that *S. Peter* acknowledged *Christ* to be the Son of God: whereupon it was answered, *Tu es Petrus, & super hanc Petram, &c.* After this City received the *Christian* faith, it was honoured with a Bishops seat: and it ran the same fortune with the rest, for it was after taken and re-taken by the *Saracens*, and *Christians*: under *Fulch* the fourth King of *Hierusalem*, and after the death of *Godfrey of Bullion*, the King of *Damascus* wrestled it from the *Christians*; and shortly after by them again it was recovered. Lastly, now it remaineth with all that part of the World subjected to the *Turk*.

#### §. IV.

Of Capernaum, and the Cities of Decapolis.

Among the remarkable Cities within this Tribe, *Capernaum* is not the least: so often remembred by the *Evangelists*. This City had the honour of *Christ*s presence three years: who for that time was a Citizen thereof, in which he first preached and taught the doctrine of our salvation: according to that notable Prophecy of *Esaie*, The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light: they that dwell in the Land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

*Capernaum* was seated on *Jordan*, even where it entrench into the Sea of *Galilee*, in an excellent and rich soile: of whose destruction *Christ* himself prophesied in these words, And thou *Capernaum* which art lifted up unto heaven, shalt be brought down to Hell, &c. which shewed the pride and greatness of that City: for it was one of the principal Cities of *Decapolis*, and the Metropolis of *Galilee*. And although there were some marks of this Cities magnificence in *Saint Hieronim*s time, as himself confesseth; it being then a reasonable Burge or Town: yet those that have since, and long since seen it, as *Brochard*, *Breidenbech*, and *Salimiac* affirm, that it then consisted but of six poor Fishers houses.

The Region often principall Cities, called *Decapolitana*, or *Decapolis*, is in this description often mentioned, and in *S. Matthew*, *Mark* and *Luke* also remembred; but I find no agreement between the *Cosmographers*, what proper limits it had: and so *Pliny* himself confesseth; for *Marinus Niger*, speaking from others, bounds it on the North by the Mountain *Casius* in *Cæsotis*: and endeth it to the South at *Egypt* and *Arabia*; by which description it embraceth *Phenicia*, a part of *Calosyria*, all *Palestina*, and *Judea*.

*Pliny* also makes it large, & for the ten Cities of which it taketh name, he numbred four of them to be situated towards *Arabia*: to wit, first these three, *Damascus*, *Opus*, *Raphana*, then *Philadelpia* (which was first called *Amara*, saith *Stephanus*, or as I shew, *Amora* rather, because it was the chief City of the *Ammonites*, known by the name of *Rabbah*, before *Ptol.* *Philadelphus* gave it this later and new name.) Then *Scythopolis*, sometime

*Matth. 4.*  
*Mark 7.*  
*Luke 8.*  
*Niger. comment.*  
*Alia 4. f. 503.*  
*Plin. l. 5. c. 18.*  
*Opus* a City  
standing in  
the Valley of  
*Calosyria*, wa-  
tered by *Chy-  
rretus*, as *Dam-  
ascius* is.  
*Plin. l. 5.*

sometime *Nisa*, built (as is said) by *Bacchus*, in memory of his Nurse, who died therein, anciently known by the name of *Bethansur* for the sixth he setteth *Gadara* (not that *Gadara* in *Calosyria*, which was also called *Antioch* and *Seleucia*: ) but it is *Gadara* in *Bajan*, which *Pliny* in this place meaneth, seated on an high hill, near the River of *Hieromaix*. This River *Oretinus* takes to be the River *Jaboc*: which boundeth *Gad* and *Manasse* over *Jordan*: but he mistaketh it; for *Hieromaix* falleth into the Sea of *Galilee*, between *Hippus* and *Gerasa*, whereas *Jaboc* entrench the same Sea between *Ephron* and *Phanua*. For the seventh he nameth \* *Hippus* or *Hippion*, a City so called of a Colony of Horsemen there gar- rison'd by *Herod* on the East-side of the *Galilean* Sea, described hereafter in the Tribe of *Manasse* over *Jordan*. For the eighth *Pella*, which is also called *Buris*, and *Berenice*, seated in the South border of the Region over *Jordan*, called *Peræa*. For the ninth *Gelasa*, which *Josephus* takes to be *Gerasa*: and *Gerasa* is found in *Calosyria* by *Josephus*, *Hegeppus*, and *Stephanus*: but by *Ptolomy* (whom I rather follow) in *Phenicia*. The tenth and last, *Pliny* nameth *Canatha*, and so doth *Suetonius* and *Stephanus*, which *Volaterran* calls *Gamala*, but *Hegeppus* rightly *Camala*, a City in the Region of *Bajan* over *Jordan*, so called, because those two Hills on which it is seated, have the shape of a Camell. But the collection of these ten Cities, whereof this Region took name, is better gathered out of *Brochard*, *Breidenbech*, and *Salimiac*, which make them to be these; *Cæsarea Philippi*, and *Ajor*, before remembred, *Ceder*, *Nephtalim*, *Sepher*, *Corazin*, *Capharnaum*, *Bethsaida*, *Jotapata*, *Tiberias*, and *Scythopolis*, or *Bethsan*. For all other Authors disagree herein, and give no reason for their opinion. One place of the *Evangelist* *S. Matthew* makes it manifest, that this Region called *Decapolitana*, was all that Tract between *Zidon*, and the Sea of *Galilee*. For thus it is written: And he departed again from the coasts of *Tyrus* and *Zidon*, and came unto the Sea of *Galilee*, through the midst of the coasts of *Decapolis*: so that it was bounded by *Damascus* and *Libanus* on the North: by the *Phenician* Sea, between *Zidon* and *Ptolomais* on the West: by the Hills of *Gelbo* and *Bethsan* on the South: and by the Mountains *Tracones*, otherwise *Hermon*, *Sanir*, and *Galaad*, on the East: which is from East to West the whole breadth of the Holy Land: and from the North to the South, near the same distance, which may be each way forty English miles.

#### §. V.

Of Hamath.

To look back again towards *Libanus*, there is seated near the foot thereof the City of \* *Hamath* or *Chammath*, of which (as they say) the Country adjoining \* The Septuagint write it *Amathis*, and *Amathensis*: <sup>a</sup> *Jacobus* *Zeigler*, *Itinæa*. *Itinæa* Regio tenet borealia tribus *Nephtalim*, per montem *Libanum* usque *Trachones*. The Country of *Itinæa*, saith he, containeth the North parts of the Tribe of *Nephtalim*, along the Mount *Libanus* to *Trachones*. But herein following *Strabo*, who calls *Trachonitis* *Itinæa*, he mistakes the seat of this Region: and so doth *Mercator*. For indeed were *Itinæa* (which *Hegeppus* calls *Peræa*, and *G. Tyrinus*, *Baccar*) the same with *Trachonitis*, yet *Trachonitis* is self is far more to the East than *Hamath* in *Nephtalim*: for *Trachonitis* lieth between *Cæsarea Philippi*, and the Mountains *Trachones*: which the Hebrews call *Gilead*: and this *Hamath* or *Chammath* is seated under *Cæsarea*, towards the Sea West-ward. And it seemeth that this mistaking grew by confounding *Emath* or *Hamath* the great in *Calosyria*, beyond the Mountains *Trachones*, which <sup>b</sup> *Hieron* upon *Amos* calls *Antiochia*, with *Hamath* or *Hamath* the lesser in *Phenicia*, and *Nephtalim*, which he calleth *Epiphania*: m<sup>a</sup>th the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Zeigler* above mentioned on *Amos* 6. 2. where there is mention of *Hamath* the great, as it seems for distinction from the other in *Nephtalim*, though *Mat. Beroaldus*, rejecting *Hieron*, rather follows the opinion of *Ze*



and Chamath Jude, as we have noted, 2 Reg. 24. Secondly, because Numbers 34.8. and also Ezek. 47.10. Chamath in the North side of the Holy Land is placed too near the West-corner, to be the Chamath Isha: for in the line which should make the North border which begins at the great Sea, they make Ashtor to name never a place Eastward along all the breadth of the Holy Land, until we come to Hermon (for so they expound Mount Her, Num. 34.7.) and beyond Hermon Eastward in this North side, they make him to name divers Towns, first Chamath, then Tzedid, then Ziphron, and lastly, Chasfer-henan, a thing most unlikely: seeing Israel had little or nothing Eastward beyond Hermon. Therefore we must needs expound Hor to be one of the Hills near Sidon, and so those Towns, as they are named, to lie in order on the North side of Ashtor, Nephtholim, and Manasse: and in like manner those in Ezekiel, first Chelion, then Chamath, and so in order, Berolia, Sibraim, Tzedid, Chawan, Chasfer-henan, &c. of which Jos. 19.35. d Which Rebo, or Rebo, in Jos. 19.28. is placed in Ashtor towards Zidon, in the confines of Nephtholim.

e. Tilenmann, Stella and Peter Lightfoot in their Tables of the Holy Land.

f Jos. ant. 13.8.

joining, prove it: the other Hamath, or Emath (being far removed, and beyond the fore-named Mountains, which inclose all those Lands which Israel ever had possession of) is that Emath, which is also called Thurea, witness<sup>e</sup> Stella and Laestian; and not that in Nephtholim, where Jonathan Macchabeus attended the Army of Demetrius, who fled from him, and removed by night.

For though Traconitis be comprehended within Thurea (and therefore it is said to be Jnnitima Galilee Gentium) yet it hath beginning over the Mountains Traconitis, and so stretcheth into the Plains of the Territory of Thurea; whence Philip the brother of Herod was Tetrarch, or President, both of Thurea and Traconitis: both which are over Jordan towards the East. But Chemath in Nephtholim, is on the West side of Jordan towards the Mediterranean Sea.

The Country Thurea was so called of Jethur, one of the sons of Ismael; it is placed in the bounds of Celosyria, and Arabia\* the Desert.

The people Thurei were valiant and war-like men, and excellent Archers: Of whom Virgil:

Thureos Taxi torquentur in arcus.

Of Eugh the Thureans bowes were made.

\* That it doth properly belong to Arabia, the name of Jethur Ismael's son, whose issue settled in the Arabia's, may in part give witness. Also the place of the 1 Chron. 5. 19. confirms it, where Jethur is named among the Hagarenes, against whom the Reubenites and Gadites made war, and whose country they possessed in the time of Jeroboam, as their fore-fathers had done in the time of Saul after his conquest of the Amalekites, 1 Chron. 5. 10. where the country is placed at the East of Gilead. a Of the larger promise express<sup>t</sup> Deut. 1. 7. where Euphrates is named for one of the bounds: See Chap. 7. §. 2. Hieron. de locis Hebr.

This City Chamath, or Hamath in Nephtholim, seems to have been as ancient as the other in Thurea, both built by Amathem the eleventh son of Canaan. Whether in the time of David, then, or the other had Tobu for King, it is not certain; for Hamath or Emath beyond the Mountains, and Hamath in Nephtholim, were both neighbours to Damascus: of whose subjugation Tobu rejoiced, because Hadadsefer, whom the Damascus came to help, was his enemy. This Tobu fearing the strength and prosperity of David, hearing of his approach towards his Territory, bought his peace with many rich presents, and with many ancient vessels of gold, silver, and brass.

But it seemeth that David in such great success he would not have had peace with Tobu, if he had been King of any place in Nephtholim, and therefore it is probable that he ruled in Tybba: which City Solomon after his Fathers death made himself Master of, as a part of the lands (in the larger and conditionall promise) allotted by God to the children of Israel.

But this Hamath of Nephtholim, in the end, and after divers mutations and changes, both of name and fortune, being, as it hath been said, possessed by Antiochus Epiphanes, was called Epiphania.

While S. Hierome lived, it remained a City well peopled, known to the Syrians by the name Amathe, and to the Greeks by Epiphania.

Where the country is placed at the East of Gilead. a Of the larger promise express<sup>t</sup> Deut. 1. 7. where Euphrates is named for one of the bounds: See Chap. 7. §. 2. Hieron. de locis Hebr.

## §. VI.

Of Reblatha and Rama, and divers other Towns.

IN the border of Hamath or Emath towards Jordan, standeth the City Reblatha, or Ribla, watered from the fountain Daphnis: which falleth into the Lake of Merom. Hereunto

was Zedekias brought prisoner, after his surprize in the fields of Jerico: and delivered Nabuchodonosor: who to be avenged of Zedekias's infidelity, beyond the proportion of piety, first caused the Princes his children to be slain in his presence: and to the end that this miserable spectacle might be the last that ever he should behold in this world, and so the most remembered, he commanded both his eyes presently to be thrust out, and binding him in Iron chains, he was led a slave to Babylon, in which estate he ended his life. Of which seldom exampled calamity, though not in expresse words, Jeremy which the Prophet fore-told him in Hierusalem not long before: But Ezekiel thus directly speaking in the person of God; I will bring him to Babel, to the land of the Chaldeans, yet shall he not see it, though he shall die therein.

There are, besides these before remembered, many other strong Cities in Nephtholim: as that which is called (a) Cedes: there are two other of the same name, one in (b) Issachar, another in Juda, of which Jos. 15. 23. and therefore to distinguish it, it is known by the addition of (c) Nephtholim, as Jud. 4. It is seated on a high hill, whence Jos. 20. 7. Kedesh in Galilee in monte Nephthali: Josephus calls it Cedes, and in Saint Hierome's time it was called Cidifsa. Belforell greatly mistakes this Cedes, and confounds it with Cades in the Desert of Paran.

After the King thereof, among other of the Canaanites, perished by the hand of Joshua, it was made a City of refuge, and given to the Levites. Herein was Barac born; who overthrew the Army of the second Jabin of Hazor, at the Mount Tabor. It was sometime possessed by Teglatphalaser, when he wasted all Nephtholim: afterward by the Romans, and numbered for one of the ten Cities of the Decapollitan Region: When it had embraced the Christian faith, it was honoured with a Bishops seat, but in time it fell with the rest into the power of the Saracens and Turks, and by them it was demolished.

From Cedes some four Italian miles towards the South-west, standeth Sephet, otherwise Zephet, which was also one of the ten Decapollitan Cities: a place exceeding strong, and for many years the inexpugnable Fortresse of the Christians, and afterward of the Saracens; for from hence they conquered all the neighbour Cities of those regions, both in-land and Maritimae, near it. Touching Rama of Nephtholim, seated Northward near

Sephet, this is to be noted, that there are (d) divers places of this name in Palestine, all situate on hills: and therefore called Rama (Rama Hebraicis excessum 3 Ramath with the Highness, Hebrews is high.) Also that from this Rama, Jos. 19. 36. they read Arama, making the article (which it hath in the Hebrew, as being a name of divers Towns) to be a part of the word: whence casting away the aspiration, they read Arema. From Sephet towards the West, they place Bethsemer, of which Jos. 19. 38. which defended it self against Nephtholim, Jud. 1. 33. but paid them tribute. On the other side of Sephet, towards the East, was Bethanath, who also kept their Citie from the Nephthalims.

Adjoining to which standeth Carban, (d) or Kiriatbajim, a City of the Levites, not far from the Mountain out of which the springs of Capharnaum arise, called Mons Christi, a place by our Saviour often frequented: as also then when calling his Disciples together, he made choise of twelve, which he called and ordained to be his Apostles or Messengers: of which place, or the acts therein done, there is often mention in the (e) Evangelists.

Adjoining to these are Magdalen, a place of strength, (f) and Mesaloth, of which we read, that it was forced by Bacchides in the time of the (g) Maccabees: also according to Adrichomius one of the two Berothas of Nephtholim. For Adrichomius maketh two of this name in this Tribe; (h) one near Chamath in the North border, of which Ezek. 47. 6. another (upon a weak conjecture out of Joseph. ant. 1. 5. c. 2.) he therefore placeth in this tract near the waters of Merom, because the Kings that joyned with Jabin against Joshua, which incamped at the waters of Merom, Jos. 11. 5. are by Josephus said to have incamped at the City Berotha in Galilee, not far from Cedes superior, which is also in Galilee: all which may be true of that Berotha of which Ezek. seeing it is in that Galilee which is called the upper Galilee, or Galilee of the Gentiles: The same Adrichomius placeth the Region of Berim near Abela (of which Abela, or Abel-beth Mahabab, we have spoken already) this he doth upon a conjecture touching the place, 2 Sam. 20. 14. where some read Abel & Bethmahabab; & omnia loca Berim: but the better reading is, & omnes Berim, that is, with all the Berai: for Sheb being of Benjamin (in which Tribe also there is a City called Berotha, or Beeroth) drew the men of that City after him.





stream Eastward to the Sea of Galilee, and with another stream Westward into the great Sea. This River of *Chifon* where it riseth, and so far as it runneth Southward, is called *Cbednium*, or *Cadunim*; and for mine own opinion, I take it to be the same which *Ptolonie* calleth *Chorfus*: though others distinguish them, and set *Chorfus* by *Casaria Palestina*. There is a second Torrent or Brook that riseth in the Hills of *Bethulia*, and falleth into the Sea of Galilee by *Magdalum*: and the third is a branch of a river rising out of the Fountains of *Capharnaum*, which falleth also into the same Sea, and neer *Magdalum*; which Torrent they call *Dotbam*, from the name of the city, from which it passeth Eastward to *Bethsaida*, and so joyning with *Jordanis parvus*, which runneth from the Valley of *Jephthael*, which *Josua* reckoneth in the bounds of *Zabulon*: it endeth in the Sea of Galilee.

See *Lafians*  
Map in *Ortelius*  
m. *Jof. 19. 14.*

## §. VI.

## THE TRIBE OF ISSACHAR.

The next adjoining Territory to *Zabulon*, to the South and Southwest, was *Issachar*, who inhabited a part of the *enether Galilee*, within *Jordan*: of whom there were increased in *Egypt*, as appeared by their musters at mount *Sinai*, 54400. able and warlike men, who leaving their bodies with the rest in the *Desarts*, there entered the *Holy Land*, 64300.

*Tarichea* in  
*Saltin*.

The first city of this Tribe neer the Sea of Galilee, was *Tarichea*, distant from *Tiberis* eight English miles, or somewhat more; a city wherein the *Jews* (by the practice of a certain malicious upstart, *John* the son of *Levi*) tooke arms against *Josephus* the Hiltanian, then Governour of both *Galilees*. This city was first taken by *Cassius*, and 3000. *Jews* carried thence captive; and afterward with great difficulty by *Vespasian*, who entered by the Sea side, having first beaten the *Jews* in a Sea-fight upon the Lake or Sea of Galilee: he put to the sword all sorts of people, and of all ages; saving that his fury being quenched with the Rivers of blood running through every street, he reserved the remainder for slaves and bond-men.

*Jof. 21. 28.* *Kishion*, which  
1 *Chr. 6. 72.* is  
called *Kedesh*.

*Josua 19.*  
1 *Sam. 4. 1.*  
1 *Sam. 3. 19.*  
1 *Kings 20. 26.*  
In the later  
two places  
*Jonas* makes  
*Aphec* in *Asser*,  
according to  
*Jof. 19. 20.* in  
the first he  
placeeth it in  
*Juda*, out of  
*Jof. 15. 53.*  
1 *Kings 20.*

*Judith 1. 8. &*  
*7. 3.*  
1 *Chron. 6. 73.*  
*Jof. 21. 29.*

Next to *Tarichea* is placed *Celzion*, or *Cishion*, of the *Levites*, and then *Issachar*, remembered in the first of *Kings*, c. 4. v. 17: then *Aber*, or *Ebets*, *Jof. 19. 20.* and *Remeth*, of which *Jof. 19. 21.* otherwise *Ramoth*, 1 *Chron. 6. 37.* or *Jarmuth*, *Jof. 21. 29.* this also was a city of the *Levites*, from whose Territory the Mountains of *Gilboe* take beginning: and range themselves to the *Mediterran* sea, and towards the West as far as the City of *Jeruel*, between which and *Ramoth*, are the cities of *Bethpheser*, or *Bethpasser*, according to *Zeigler*; and *Enadad*, or *Hem-chadda*, neer which *Saul* slew himself: under those, *Aphec*, or *Apheca*, which *Adrichomius* placeth in *Issachar*: between which and *Suna*, he saith, that the *Philistines* incamped against *Israel*, and afterward against *Saul*: a Land thirty of blood, for herein also, saith he, the *Syrians* with two and thirty *Reguli* assisting *Benhadad*, encountered *Achab*, and were overthrowen and slaughtered: to whom the King of *Israel* made a most memorable answer, when *Benhadad* vaunted before the victory: which was, *Tell Benhadad, Let not him that girdeth his barnes, boast himself as he that putteth himself to the sword*, meaning, that glory followed after victory, but ought not to precede it. In the year following, in the fields, as they say, adjoining to this city, was the same vain-glorious *Syrian* utterly broken and discomfited by *Achab*: and 100000. footmen of the *Aramees*, or *Syrians*, slain: before which overthrow the servants and counsellors of *Benhadad* (in derision of the God of *Israel*) told him, that the Gods of *Israel* were Gods of the Mountains; and therefore if they fought with them in the Plains, they should overcome them.

Under *Aphec*, towards the Sea, they set the city of *Esdrelon*, in the Plains of *Galilee*; called also the great field of *Eshelun*, and *Maggedo*: in the border whereof are the ruins of *Aphec* to be seen, saith *Brochard*, and *Ereidenbach*. After these are the cities of *Casaloeh*, of which; 1 *Mac. 9. 32.* *Anem*, or *Hem-Gannim*, of the *Levites*, and *Seefma*, or *Sebasma*, the West border of *Issachar*, of which *Jof. 19. 22.* From hence ranging the Sea coast, there is found the Castle of *Pilgrims*: a strong Castle, invironed with the Sea, sometime the Storehouse and Magazine of the *Christians*, and built by the Earl of *Saint Gilles*, or *Toluse*.

From the Castle of *Pilgrims*, the Sea maketh a great Bay towards the North, and the farthest

farthermost shore beginneth Mount *Carmel*, not far from the River *Chifon*, where *Elisab* assembled all the Prophets and Priests of *Baal*, and prayed King *Achab* and the people assembled, to make triall whether the God of *Israel*, or the Idol of *Baal* were to be worshipped, by laying a sacrifice without fire on the Altar: which done, the Priests of *Baal* prayed, and cut their own flesh after their manner, but the fire kindled not, while *Elisab* in derision told them that their God was either in pursuit of his enemies, not at leisure, or perchance asleep, &c. but at the prayer of *Elisab* the fire kindled, notwithstanding that he had caused the people to cast many vessels of water thereon: by which miracle the people incensed, slew all those Idolaters on the banks of *Chifon* adjoining.

At the foot of this Mountain to the North, standeth *Caiphas*, built, as they say, by *Caiphas* the high Priest. It is also known by the name of *Porfina*, and *Porphyria*, sometime a *Suffragane* Bishops seat. Returning again from the Sea-coast towards *Tiberias*, by the banks of *Chifon*, there are found the city of *Hapharaim*, or *Aphraim*, and the Castles of *Mezra* and *Saba*: of which *Brochard* and *Ereidenbach*: and then *Naim* on the River *Chifon*: a beautiful city while it stood, in the Gates, whereof *Christ* raised from death the widows only son.

Then *Seon* or *Shion*, named *Jof. 19.* between the two Hills of *Hermon*, in *Issachar*: beyond it standeth *Endor*, famous by reason of the Inchantresse that undertook to raise up the body of *Samuel* at the instigation of *Saul*.

Beyond it stands *Anaburath* and *Rabbith*, named *Jof. 19. v. 19. 20.* Then *Dabarath*, as it is named, *Jof. 21. 28.* or *Dobratha*, as it is named, 1 *Chron. 6. 71.* This city (which stretcheth itself over *Chifon*) was a city of refuge belonging to the *Levites*.

Next to *Dabarath* is *Arbela* situate, neer the Caves of those two Thieves which so greatly molested *Galilee* in *Herods* time. It joyneth on one side to the Mountain of *Issachar*, or *Hermon*, and on the other to the Valley of *Jesrael*: which Valley continueth itself from *Bethan*, or *Scythopolis*, the East border of *Issachar*, even to the *Mediterran* Sea: for Harabath, two parts whereof are inclosed by the Mountains of *Gilboe* on the South, and by *Hermon* and the River *Chifon* on the North. In these Plains *Gideon* overthroweth the *Midianites*, and herein, they think, *Saul* fought against the *Philistines*, *Achab* against the *Syrians*, and the *Tartars* against the *Saracens*.

## §. VII.

## THE HALF OF THE TRIBE OF MANASSE.

## ||. I.

Of the bounds of this half Tribe: and of *Scythopolis*, *Salem*, *Thersa*, and others.

The next Tribe which joyneth itself to *Issachar* towards the South, is the half of *Manasse*, on the West side of *Jordan*. *Manasse* was the first begotten of *Joseph*, the eleventh son of *Jacob*. His mother was an *Egyptian*, the daughter of *Putiphar*, Priest and Prince of *Helipolis*: which *Manasse*, with his brother *Ephraim*, the grand-children of *Jacob*, were by adoption numbred amongst the sons of *Jacob*, and made up the number of the twelve *Patriarchs*.

Of *Manasse* there were increased in *Egypt*, as they were numbred at Mount *Sinai*, 32200. able men: all which being consumed in the *Desarts*, there entered of their issues, 32700. bearing arms. The Territory which fell on this one half of *Manasse*, was bounded by *Jordan* on the East, and *Dora* upon the *Mediterran* Sea on the West, *Jesrael* on the North, and *Machmata* is the South border.

The first and principall City which stood in this Territory was *Bethsan*, sometime *Byssa*, saith *Pliny*, built by *Liber Pater*, in honour of his Nurse there buried, of the same name, which *Solinus* confirms. Afterward when the *Sythians* invaded *Asa* the leffe, and pierc't into the South, to the uttermost of *Celestria*, they built this City a-new, and very magnificent: and it had thereupon the name of *Scythopolis*, or the City of *Scythians*, given by the *Greeks*.

These barbarous Northren people constrained the *Jews* to fight against their own Nation

Nation and kindred, by whose hands when they had obtained victory, they themselves set on the Jews which served them, and slew them all. *Stephanus* makes it the utmost towards the South of *Celestria*: and *Strabo* joynes it to *Galilee*. It is seated between *Jordan* and the Hills of *Gilboa*, in *aulone ad montes acrabatena*, saith *Zeigler*. But I finde it in the East part of the Valley of *Jesrael* near *Jordan*: after that *Jordan* strengtheneth itself again into a River, leaving the Sea, or Lake *Genesareth*. Notwithstanding *Montanus* describes it far to the West, and towards the *Mediterran Sea*, near *Endor*, contrary to *Stella*, *Lactian*, *Adrichome*, and all other the best Authors. This City was the greatest of all those of *Decapolis*: but the children of *Manasse* could not expell the Inhabitants thereof: and therefore called it *Sane*, an enemy, or *Beth-san*, the house of an enemy.

Judg. 1. Jos. 17.  
de Beth-sar.

Over the walls of this *Beth-san* the *Philistims* hung the body of *Saul*, and his sons slain at *Gilboa*. It had, while the Christian religion flourished in those parts, an Arch-bishop, who had nine other Bishops of his Diocese, numbred by *Tyrinus*, in his 14. Book and 12. Chapter: but the same was afterward translated to *Nazareth*. The later travellers in those parts affirme, that there is daily taken out among the rubble and the ruins of that City, goodly pillars and other pieces of excellent Marble, which witness the lately buildings, and magnificence which it had in elder times, but it is now a poor and desolate Village.

Hierom. in  
Eph. ad Evagr.  
Crim. Lat. Hier.

From *Beth-san* keeping the way by *Jordan*, they finde an ancient City called *Salem*, which City the ancient Rabbines, saith *Hierome*, do not find to be the same with *Hierusalem*: there being in the time of *Hierome* and since, a town of that name, near *Sychar* before remembred, which if the place of Scripture, *Gen. 13. 18.* doe not confirm, where the Vulgar readeth *transivitis in Salem urbem Sichemorum* (for which other read *venit incoluntis ad Civitatem Sichemum*, making the word *Salem* not to be a proper name, but an adjective) yet the place *John. 3. 13.* where it is said, that *John* was baptizing in *Enon* near *Salem*, may somewhat strengthen this opinion, and yet it is not unlikely that this *Salem* of which *S. John* speaketh, is but contracted of *Shabalin*, of which in the Tribe of *Benjamin*, *1 Sam. 9. 4.* This word *Junius* maketh to be the plural of *Shal*: of which we read, *1 Sam. 13. 17.* for as for that which is added out of *Canticus* 6. 12. of *Shulammitis*, as if it had been as much as a Woman of this *Salem* near *Enon*, it hath no probability.

This City Be-  
zek, by the  
place, Jud. 1. 3.  
seemeth to  
have been in  
Juda.  
Jos. ant. 6. c. 11.  
1 Sam. c. 11.

Not far from thence where they place *Salem*, they finde *Bezech* the City of *Admon*. *zek*, *Josephus* calls it *Bala*: here it was that *Saul* assembled the strength of *Israel* and *Juda*, to the number of 330000. when he meant to relieve *Jabesh Gilead*, against *Nabab* the *Ammonite*: who would give them no other conditions of peace, than to suffer their right eyes to be thrust out. Near *Bezech* is the City of *Bethbera*, or rather *Beth-bara*, of which *Judg. 7. 24.* in the story of *Gideon*: and then *Ephra*, or *Hophra*, wherein *Gideon* inhabited: in the border whereof stood an Altar consecrated to *Baal*, which he pulled down and defaced; and near it that stone, on which *Abimelech* the Bastard slew his 70. brothers; a Heathenish cruelty, practised by the *Turk* to this day: and not far hence between the Village of *Ajphon* and *Jordan*, *Ptolomus* *Lathurus* overthrew *Alexander* King of the Jews, and slaughtered, as *Josephus* numbereth them, 3000. but according to *Timagenes* 50000. after which victory, as *Ptolomus* past by the Villages of the Jews, he slew all their women, and caused the young children to be sod in great Caldrons, that the rest of the Jews might thereby thinke that the Egyptians were grown to be murderers and strike them with the greater terror.

\* This Aet  
Junim upon  
1 Chron. 6. 70.  
makes to be  
the same with  
Tabanae, of  
which Jos. 21.  
25. Hierome  
names it from  
Aet the Con-  
federate of A-  
braham. Gen.  
14. 13. Josua  
12. 17.  
1 King. 14

Towards the West and on the border of *Isachar*, they place the Cities of \* *Aet* and the Levites, and *Abel-Mehola*, which *Junius*, *Judg. 7. 22.* placeth in *Ephraim*: it was the habitation of *Helisew* the Prophet, numbred among those places, *1 Reg. 4. 12.* which were given in charge to *Baana* by *Solomon*, to whose charge also *Tabanae* belonged: it was a place of great strength, which at the first resisted *Josua*, though their King was afterward hanged, and their City given to the Levites.

In the body of this Territory of *Manasse*, but somewhat neerer *Jordan* than to the *Mediterran Sea*, were three great Cities, to wit, *Thersa*, whose King was one of those that *Josua* slew: which the Kings of *Israel* used for their Regall seate, till such time as *Samarria* was built. From hence the wife of *Jeroboam* went to *Achia* to enquire of her sons death: who knowing her, though she were disguised, told her of her sons death.

The second was *Thaber* near *Samarria*, of which name there are both in *Egypt*, and

*Greece*, of great fame in the assault of the Tower of this Town, whereinto the Citizens retired, the Bastard *Abimelech* was wounded by a weighty stone, thrown by a woman over the wall, who despairing of his recovery, commanded his Page to slay him outright, because it should not be said that he perished by the stroke of a woman. But o- *Judg. 9. 54.* thers set this City in *Ephraim* near *Sichem*, or *Neapolis*.

The third is *Acabata*, of which the Territory adjoining is called *Acabata*, (one of the ten *Toparchies*, or governments in *Judea*) for which *Hierome*, *1 Mac. 5.* reads *Acabata*: but in the Greek it is *Acabatine*: *Isidore* calls it *Agrabat*. This City had one of the largest Territories of all *Palestine* belonging to the Governour thereof. *Josephus* remembred it often, as in his second book of the Jews wars, c. 11. 25, 28. and elsewhere.

The difference between a *Tetrarchy* and a *Toparchy*, was, that the first was taken for a Province, and the other for a City with some lesser Territory adjoining; and a *Tetrarch* is the same with *Præses* in Latine, and *President* in English, being commonly the fourth part of a Kingdom; and thereof so called. *Pliny* nameth seventeen *Tetrarchies* in *Syria*: the Holy Land had four, and so hath the Kingdome of *Ireland* to this day, *Leinster*, *Ulster*, *Connath*, and *Munster*. *Ench. in Chro.*

To the South-west of *Acabata* they place the Cities of *Balaam*, or *Bilbam*, and *Gebrummon* of the Levites: but *Junius* out of *Jos. 21. 25.* and *1 Chron. 6. 70.* gathers that these two are but one; and that *Jibleham*, *Jos. 16. 11.* is another name of the same City.

Then is *Jezael* a Regall City, set at the foot of the Mountains of *Gilboa*, towards the South-west: herein *Jezael*, by a false accusation, caused *Naboth* to be stoned, to the end the might possesse his Vineyard adjoining to the City, which *Naboth* refused to sell, because it was his inheritance from his father.

*Joram* also was cast unburied into the same field: for which his mother *Jezael* murdered *Naboth*. *2 Kings 9.*

Toward the Sea from *Jezael* is the City which they call *Gaber*: in whose ascent as *Abasab* King of *Juda* fled from *Jehu*, when he had slain *Joram*, he was wounded with the shoe of an arrow, of which wound he died at *Mageddo* adjoining. The Scripture calls this City of *Gaber*, *Gur*. *2 Kings 9. 27.*

Then *Adadremmon*, near unto which the good King *Josias* was slain by *Necho* King of *Egypt*, in a war unadvisedly undertaken. For *Necho* marched towards *Affyria* against the King thereof, by the commandment of God; whom *Josias* thought to resist in his passage. It was afterward called *Maximianopolis*.

A neighbour City to *Adadremmon* was *Mageddo*, often remembred in the Scriptures; whose King was slain among the rest by *Josias*: yet they defended their City for a long time against *Manasse*. The River which passeth by the Town, may perhaps be the same which *Ptolomy* calleth *Chorsens*: and not that of which we have spoken in *Babulon*. For because this name is not found in the Scriptures, many of those that have described the Holy Land, delineate no such River. *Moore* onely sets it down in his *Geography* of the twelve Tribes: but the River which passeth by *Mageddo*, he understandeth to be but a branch, falling thereinto. *Lactian* and *Schroet* make a great confluence of waters in this place, agreeable to this Scripture in the fifth of *Judges*: *Then fought the Kings of Canaan in Tanaac by the waters of Mageddo*. But these Authors, and with them *Stella*, give it no other name than the Torrent so called.

But seeing that ancient *Cosmographers* stretch out the bounds of *Phenicia*, even to *Sebaste*, or *Samarria*; and *Strabo* far beyond it on the Sea-coast: And *Josephus* calls *Cæsaria* *Palestina*, a City of *Phenicia*: yea, *Laurentius Corvinus* extendeth *Phenicia* as far as *Gozar*, seeing also *Ptolomy* sets down *Chorsens* for the partition of *Phenicia* and *Judea*, this river running East and West parallel with *Samarria*: it is very probable that this Torrent called *Mageddo*, after the name of the City which it watereth, is the same which *Ptolomy* in his fourth Table of *Asia*, calleth *Chorsens*. The later travellers of the Holy Land call *Mageddo* *Subimbre* at this day. *Strab. l. 16. Jos. l. 15. c. 13. Niger.*

## II.

Of *Cæsaria* *Palestina*, and some other Towns.

From *Mageddo* toward the West, and near the *Mediterran Sea*, was that glorious City of *Cæsaria* *Palestina*: first, the Tower of *Straton*: the same which *Pliny* calls *Gg* *Apollonia*:

*Apollonia*: though *Ptolomy* sets *Apollonia* elsewhere, and toward *Egypt*, between this City and *Joppe*, to which *Vespassian* gave the name of *Flavia Colonia*. It was by *Herod* re-built, who therein laboured to exceed all the works in that part of the world. For besides the edifices, which he reared within the Walls, of cut and polish't marbles, the Theater and Amphitheater, from whence he might look over the Sea far away, with the high and stately Towers and Gates: he forced a Harborow of great capacity, being in former times but an open Bay: and the winde blowing from the Sea, the Merchants haunting that Port, had no other hope, but in the strength of their Cables and Anchors. This work he performed with such charge and labour, as the like of that hath not been found in any Kingdom, nor in any age: which, because the Materials were fetcht from far, and the weight of the stones was such, as it exceedeth belief, I have added *Josephus* own words of this work, which are these: *Hanc locorum in commoditatem corrigimus, circum portus circumduxit, quantum putaret magnæ classi recipiendæ sufficere: & in viginti ulnarum profundum, prægrandia saxa demisit: quorum pleræque pedum quinquaginta longitudine, latitudine vero octodecim, altitudine novem-pedali: fuerunt quædam etiam majores, minoræ alia; To mend this inconvenience of place (saith *Josephus*) he compass't in a Bay where, in a great Fleet might well ride: and let down great stones twenty fadome deep: whereof some were fifty foot long, eighteen foot broad, and nine foot thick: and some bigger, some lesser. To this he added an arm or cawfie of two hundred foot long, to break the waves: therewith he strengthened with a stone wall, with divers stately Towers thereon builded: of which the most magnificent he called *Drusus*, after the name of *Drusus* the son-in-law of *Cæsar*: in whose honour he intituled the City it self, *Cæsaria* of *Palestine*: all which he performed in twelve yeeres time. It was the first of the Eastern Cities that received a Bishop: afterward erected into an Archbishopsrick, commanding twenty others under it, saith *Tyrrinus*.*

Jos. lib. 1. 15.  
c. 13.

Lib. 4. c. 12. bel.  
fact.

*S. Hierome* nameth *Theophilus*, *Eusebius*, *Acacius*, *Euzorius*, and *Galsius* to have been Bishops thereof. In this City was *Cornelius* the Centurion baptised by Saint *Peter*: and herein dwelt *Philip* the Apostle. *S. Paul* was herein two yeeres prisoner, under the President *Felix*, unto the time and government of *Porcius Festus*: by whom making his appeal, he was sent to *Cæsar*. Here, when *Herod Agrippa* was passing on to celebrate the *Quinquennalia*, taking delight to be called a god by his flatterers, he was stricken with an Angel unto death, saith *Josephus*.

To the North of *Cæsaria* standeth *Dora*, or *Naphoth Dor*, as some reade, *Jos. 1. 2.* so called (saith *Adrichomius*) because it joyneth to the Sea, whose King was slain by *Jeha*. But *Junius*, son in *Naphoth Dor*, reades in *tradibus Dor*: and so the Vulgar, in *regimini Dor*, although *1 Reg. 4. 11.* for the like speech in the Hebrew it readeth *omnis Naphoth Dor*: The *Septuagint* in the place of *Josua* call it *Nephth-Dor*, and in the other of the Kings, *Nepht-Dor*: but the true name by other places (as *Jos. 1. 2. 23.* *Judg. 1. 27.*) may seem to be *Dor*. It was a strong and powerfull City, and the fourth in account of those twelve Principalities, or *Sitarachis*, which *Solomon* erected. *Junius* upon *Macchab. 15. 11.* placeth this between the Hill *Carmel*, and the mouth of the river *Chorjen*: for so some name the river *Chorjen*, of which we have spoken already.

Mac. 1. 13. 15.

Into this City, for the strength thereof, *Tryphon* fled from *Antiochus* the son of *Demetrius*, where he was by the same *Antiochus* besieged with 12000. foot-men, and 8000. horse: the same perfidious villain that received 300. talents for the ransom of *Jonathan Macchabæus* (whom he had taken by treachery) and then slew him: and after him slew his own Master, usurping for a while the Kingdom of *Syria*. It had also a Bishops seat, of the Diocese of *Cæsaria*.

Gul. Tyr. de bell.  
fact. l. 10. c. 6.

From *Cæsaria* towards the South, they place the Cities of *Capharnaum*, *Gabe*, and *Gilgal*: for besides that *Capharnaum* famous in the *Evangelists*, they finde in these parts need the West Sea, another of the same name. Of *Gabe*, *Hierome* in *locis Hebraicis*. The famous *Gilgal*, or *Gilgal*, was in *Benjamin*: but this *Gilgal*, they say, it was whose King was slain by *Josua*.

Mac. 17. 31.

Then *Antipatris*, so called of *Herod*, in honour of his Father: but in the time of the *Macchabees*, it was called *Capharsalama*: in the fields whereof *Judas Macchabeus* overthrew a part of the Army of *Nicanor*, Lieutenant to *Demetrius*: an Army drawn into *Judea* by a traiterous Jew, called *Alcinus*: who contended for the Priest-hood, first under *Bacchides*, and then under *Nicanor*. To this was Saint *Paul* carried prisoner from *Hierusalem*.

*Hierusalem*, conducted by 470. souldiers, to defend him from the fury of the Jews. In after-times the Army of *Godfrey of Bulion* attempted it in vain: yet was it taken by *Baldwin*. It was honoured in those dayes with a Bishops seat, but it is now a poor Village, called *Assur*, saith *Brachard*. Neer unto this City the Prophet *Jona* was three dayes preserved in the body of a Whale.

Into the Land, from *Antipatris* and *Cæsaria*, standeth *Narbata*, whereof the Territorie taketh name: which *Cestius* the *Romane* waisted with fire and sword, because the Jews which dwelt at *Cæsaria* fled thence, and carried with them the Books of *Moses*. Neer unto this is the Mountain of *Abdia*, the Steward of King *Achab*: wherein he hid an hundred Prophets, and fed them; after which he himself is said to have obtained from God the Spirit of Prophecie also.

## CHAP. VIII.

Of the Kingdome of Phœnicia.

### §. I.

The bounds and chief Cities, and Founders, and Name of this Kingdome: and of the invention of Letters ascribed to them.

Because these five Tribes, of *Affer*, *Nephtalim*, *Zabulon*, *Issachar*, and the half of *Manasse*, posselt the better part of that ancient Kingdome of *Phœnicia*, to wit, of so much as lay to the South part of *Amis-libanus*; I have therefore gathered a brief of those Kings which have governed therein: at least so many of them as time (which devoureth all things) hath left to posterity: and that the rest have perished, it is not strange; seeing so many Volumes of excellent learning in so long a race and revolution, and in so many changes of Estates and Conquest of Heathen Princes have been torn, cast away, or otherwise consumed.

The limits of this Kingdome, as touching the South parts, are very uncertain: but all *Cosmographers* do in effect agree, that it takes beginning from the North, where that part of *Syria*, which is called *Casotis*, ends: most of them bounding it by *Orithofa*, to the North of *Tripolis*. *Ptolemy* makes it a little larger, as reaching from the River *Eleutherus*, that falls into the Sea at the Island of *Aradus*, somewhat to the North of *Orithofa*, and stretching from thence alongst the coast of the *Mediterran Sea*, as far as the River of *Chorjen*; which seems to be that which the Jews call the Torrent, or River of *Magdo*. *Pliny* extends it farther, and comprehends *Joppe* within it: *Corvims*, and *Eudæus*, *Plin. l. 5. c. 19.* *Joppe* and *Gaza*. *Phœnicia* apud *priscos* appellata (saith *Eudæus*) que nunc *Palestina* *Syrie* *dictur*: It was called *Phœnicia* of old (saith he) which now is called *Palestina* of *Syria*.

*Strabo* comprehends in this Countrey of *Phœnicia* all the Sea-side of *Judea*, and *Palestina*, even unto *Pelusium*, the first Port of *Egypt*. On the contrary, *Diodorus Siculus* foldeth it up in *Cælojyria*, which he boundeth not. But for my self, I take a middle course, and like best of *Ptolemies* description, who was seldom deceived in his own art. It had in it these famous Maritimate Cities (besides all those of the Islands) to wit, *Aradus*, *Orithofa*, *Tripolis*, *Botrys*, *Byblus*, *Berytus*, *Sidon*, *Tyre*, *Ptolomais* (or *Acon*) *Dora*, and *Cæsaria* *Palestina*: and by reason of the many Ports and goodly Sea-towns, it anciently commanded the Trades of the Eastern world: and they were absolute Kings of the *Mediterran Sea*.

The ancient Regall Seat of those Princes was *Zidon*, built by *Zidon* the first son of *Canaan*: and the people then subject to that people were called *Zidonians*: the same state continuing even unto *Josua's* time. For till then, it is probable that there was but one King of all that Region: afterward called *Phœnicia*: which *Procopius* also confirmeth in his second Book of *Vandal wars*. But in processe of time the City of *Tyre* adjoining, became the more magnificent: yet, according to the Prophet, it was but a daughter of *Zidon*, and by them first built, and peopled.

But after the death of *Moses*, and while *Josua* yet governed *Israel*, *Agenor* an Egyptian of *Thebes*, or a *Phœnician* bred in *Egypt*, came thence with his sons *Cadmus*, *Phœnix*, *Cyrus*,

Esay 23.

F. 17. *Cyrus*, and *Cilix*, (say *Cadmus* and *Curtius*) and built and possess the Cities of *Tyre* and *Zidon*: to wit, the new *Tyrus*, and brought into *Phœnicia* (so called after the name of his second son) the use of Letters: which also *Cadmus* in his pursuit after his sister *Europe*, taught the *Grecians*. For *Tamus* King of *Crete*, when he surpris'd *Tyre*, had stolen her thence: of which the Poets devised the fable of *Jupiters* transformation into a Bull, by whom that stealth was also supposed to be made. *Pomponius Sabinus* makes *Belus* the first King of *Phœnicia*; and findes *Cadmus* his successeur, whom he calleth his grand child: and it seemeth that *Belus* was the father of *Agenor*, and not *Neptune*: because the successeurs of *Dido* held that name alwayes in reverence, making it a part of their own, as *Asdrubal*, *Hannibal*: whose memory *Virgil* also toucheth in these Verses.

*Hic Regina gravem gepimis auroque poposcit,  
Implevitque patris: quam Belus & omnes  
A Belo soliti.*

The Queen anon commands the weighty bowl  
(Weighty with precious stones and masse gold)  
To flow with wine. This *Belus* us'd of old,  
And all of *Belus* Line.

Whether this *Belus* were father or grand-father to *Agenor*, the matter is not great. But it seemst me by comparing of times, that *Belus* was Ancestor to these *Phœnicians*, and preceded *Agenor*. For were *Belus*, or *Jupiter Belus*, the son of *Neptune* by *Lybia* the daughter of *Epaphus*; or were he the son of *Thelegonus*, according to *Eusebius*; yet it is agreed that *Cecrops* then ruled in *Attica*: and in the end of *Cecrops* time, saith Saint *Augustine*, *Moses* left *Egypt*: *Agenors* successeur living at once with *Josua*. Now that *Agenor* returned about the same time into the Territory of *Zidon*, I cannot doubt: neither do I deny, but that he gave that Region the name of *Phœnicia*, in honour of his son. But in stead of the building of *Tyre* and *Zidon*, it is probable that he repaired and fortified both: and therefore was called a Founder, as *Semiramis* and *Nabuchodonosor* were of *Babylon*.

For be it true, that *Agenor* was of the same Nation, and brought up in *Egypt*: where he learnt the use of Letters (*Egypt* flourishing in all kinde of learning in *Moses* time) or were he by Nation an *Egyptian*, yet it is very likely that either he came to save his own Territory; or otherwise to defend the coast of *Canaan* from the *Israelites*: who were by *Moses* led out of *Egypt*, to the great losse and dishonour of that Nation: and by *Josua* conducted over *Jordan*, to conquer and possess the *Canaanites* Land. For though the *Egyptians*, by reason of the losse which they received by the hand of God in the *Red Sea*, and by the ten plagues cast on them before that, and by the slaughter of so many of the male children at the same time, could not hinder the *Hebrews* from invading *Canaan* by land: which also they knew had so many powerfull Nations to defend it: the *Desarts* inter-jacent, and the strong *Edomites*, *Moabites*, *Amorites*, and *Ammonites* their borderers: yet *Egypt* having such Vessels, or Ships, or Gallies, as werethen in use, did not in all probability neglect to garrison the Sea-coast, or assist *Agenor* with such forces as they had to spare; and which they might perform with the greater facility, in that the *Philistims*, which held the shores of *Canaan* next adjoining unto them, were their Friends and Confederates.

Now, as it appeareth by the course of the Story, those Cities of *Phœnicia*, which *Agenor* was said to have built (that is, to have fortified and defended against *Josua*, and against the Tribes after him, as *Zidon*, *Sor*, or *Tyre*, by *Josua* called the strong Citie *Acco*, afterward *Prothamar*, *Achzib*, and *Dor*) were all that *Phœnicia* had in those days.

That the Kings of *Phœnicia* were mighty, especially by Sea, it appears, first by their defence against *Israel*: secondly, by this, that *David* and *Solomon* could not master them; but were glad of their alliance: thirdly, that one of their Cities, though they were then but *Regals*, defended it self 13. years against a King of Kings, *Nabuchodonosor*: and that *Alexander* the Great (who being made victorious by the providence of God, seemed irresistible) spent more time in the recovery of *Tyre*, than in the conquest of all the Cities in *Asia*.

Other

Other opinions there are, as that of *Ezerus* out of *Josephus*, who conceives that *Tyre* was founded by *Tyrus* the son of *Japhet*. And for the Region it self, though *Calisthenes* derive it, ab arbore da<sup>u</sup>ylorum; and the *Greeks* from the word *Phœnos*, of slaughter, because the *Phœnicians* slew all that came on their coasts; yet for my self, I take it that *Phœnix* the son of *Agenor* gave it that name. But that either *Agenor* in *Phœnicia*, or *Cadmus* his son in *Greece*, were the Inventors of Letters, it is ridiculous: and therefore the dispute unnecessary.

The *Ethiopians* affirm, that *Atlas*, *Orion*, *Orpheus*, *Linus*, *Hercules*, *Prometheus*, *Cadmus*, and others, had from them the first light of all those Arts, Sciences, and civill Policies, to which they afterward profest, and taught others: and that *Pythagoras* himself was instructed by the *Lybians*: to wit, from the South and superiour *Egyptians*: from whom those which inhabited neerer the out-let of *Nilus*, as they say, borrowed their Divinitie and Philosophy: and from them the *Greeks*; then barbarous, received Civilitie. Again, the *Phœnicians* challenge this invention of Letters and of Learning: acknowledging nothing from the *Egyptians* at all; neither do they allow that *Agenor* and his sons were *Africans*; whence *Lucan*,

*Phœnices primi (fama si creditur) anſe  
Mansuram rudibus vocem signare figuris.*

*Lucan* l. 5. 3.

*Phœnicians* first (if fame may credit have)  
In rude Characters dar'd our words to grave.

And that *Cadmus* was the son of *Agenor*, and was a *Phœnician*, and not an *Egyptian*, it appeareth by that answer made by *Zeno*; when he in a kinde of reproach was called a Stranger, and not a *Phœnician*:

*si patria est Phœnix, quid tum? nam Cadmus & ipse  
Phœnix; cui debet Græcia doſſa libros.*

*Athen* l. 1. *Dipnſ*.

If a *Phœnician* born I am, what then?  
*Cadmus* was so: to whom *Greece* owes  
The Books of learned men.

Out of doubt the *Phœnicians* were very ancient: and from the Records and Chronicles of *Tyre*, *Josephus* the Historian confirms a great part of his Antiquities. The *Thracians* again subscribe to none of these reports; but affirm constantly, that the great *Zalmoxis* flourished among them: when *Atlas* lived in *Mauritania*; *Nilus* and *Vulcan* in *Egypt*; and *Ochus* in *Phœnicia*. Yea, some of the *French* do not blush to maintain, that the ancient *Gauls* taught the *Greeks* the use of Letters, and other Sciences. And do nor we know that our *Bardes* and *Druides* are as ancient as those *Gauls*, and that they sent their sons hither to be by them instructed in all kinde of learning?

Lastly, whereas others bestow this invention on *Moses*, the same hath no probability at all; for he lived at such time as Learning and Arts flourished most, both in *Egypt* and *Assyria*, and he himself was brought up in all the learning of the *Egyptians*, from his infancy.

But true it is, that letters were invented by those excellent Spirits of the first age, and before the generall Flood: either by *Seth* or *Enos*; or by whom else God knows; from whom all wisdom and understanding hath proceeded. And as the same infinite God is present with all his Creatures, so hath he given the same invention to divers Nations: whereof the one hath not had commerce with the other; as well in this as in many other knowledges: for even in *Mexico*, when it was first discovered, there was found written Books after the manner of those Hieroglyphicks, anciently used by the *Egyptians*, and other Nations: and so had those *Americans* a kinde of Heraldrie; and their Princes differing in Arms and Scutchions, like unto those used by the Kings and Nobility of other Nations, *Jura naturalia communia*, & generalia, &c. *Natural laws are common, and Juriscon. general*.

## §. II.

## Of the Kings of Tyre.

**B**ut whatsoever remaineth of the Story and Kings of Phenicia (the books of *Zen,* *Sachoniathe,* *Atusaeus,* and others of that Nation, being no where found) the same is to be gathered out of the Scriptures, *Josephus,* and *Theophilus Antiochenus.*

*Agenor* lived at once with *Joshua*, to whom succeeded *Phœnix*, of whom that part of *Canaan*, and so far towards the North as *Aradus*, took the name of Phenicia: what king succeeded *Phœnix* it doth not appear; but at such time as the *Grecians* besieged *Troy*, *Phaïs* governed Phenicia.

Chap. 27.

In *Hieremie's* time, and while *Jebojakim* ruled in *Juda*, the *Tyrians* had a King apart from *Hieremie* speaketh of the Kings of *Zidon*, of *Tyre*, of *Edom*, &c. as of severall Kings.

In *Xerxes* time, and when he prepared that incredible Army wherewith he invaded *Greece*, *Tetramnestus* ruled that part of Phenicia about *Tyre* and *Zidon*: who commanded, as some Writers affirm, *Xerxes* Fleet, or rather, as I suppose, those 300. Gallies, which himself brought to his aid: for at this time it seemeth, that the *Phenicians* were Tributaries to the *Persian*: for being broken into *Reguli*, and petty Kings in *Hieremie's* time, they were subjected by *Nabuchodonosor*; of whose conquests in the Chapter before-mentioned, *Hieremie* prophesied.

*Tenner*, though not immediately, succeeded *Tetramnestus*, remembred by *D. Sirach* in his 14. Book.

*Strato*, his successor, and King of *Zidon*, *Alexander Macedon* threw out, because of his dependancy upon *Darius*, and that his Predecessors had served the East Empire against the *Grecians*. But divers Kings, of whom there is no memory, came between *Tenner* and *Strato*. For there were consumed 130. years and somewhat more, between *Xerxes* and *Alexander Macedon*. And this man was by *Alexander* esteemed the more unworthy of restitution, because (saith *Curius*) he rather submitted himself by the instigation of his Subjects (who foresaw their utter ruine by resistance) than that he had any disposition thereunto, or bare any good affection towards the *Macedonians*.

Lib. 4.

Abd. l. 12. c. 13.

Of this *Strato*, *Alibonaeus* out of *Theopompus* reporteth, that he was a man of ill living, and most voluptuous; also that he appointed certain games and prizes for women-dancers, and singers, whom he to this end chiefly invited, and assembled: that having beheld the most beautifull and lively among them, he might recover them for his own use and delights. Of the strange accident about the death of one *Strato* King of these coasts, *S. Hierome* and others make mention: who having heard that the *Persians* were near him with an Army too weighty for his strength, and finding that he was to hope for little grace, because of his falling away from that Empire, and his adhering to the *Egyptians*; he determining to kill himself, but fainting in the execution, his wife being present, wrested the sword out of his hand, and slew him: which done, she also thereupon pierced her own body, and died.

Hieron. l. 1. c. c. xxviii.

After *Alexander* was possessor of *Zidon*, and the other *Strato* driven thence, he gave the Kingdom to *Hephestion* to dispose of: who having received great entertainment of one of the Citizens, in whose house he lodged, offered to recompence him therewith; and willingly offered to establish him therein: but this Citizen, no lesse virtuous than rich, desired *Hephestion* that this honour might be conferred on some one of the blood and race of their ancient Kings: and presented unto him *Balonimus*, whom *Curius* calls *Abdolonimus*, *Justine*, *Abdolonius*, and *Plutarch*, *Alynonius*: who at the very hour that he was called to this regal Estate, was with his own hands working in his garden, sowing herbs and roots, for his relief and sustenance: though otherwise a wife man, and exceedingly just.

These were the ancient Kings of *Zidon*: whose estate being afterward changed into Popular or *Aristocraticall*: and by times and turnes subjected to the Emperours of the East, there remaineth no farther memory of them, than that which is formerly delivered in the Tribe of *Asser*.

The Kings of *Tyre*, who they were before *Samuels* time, it doth not appear: *Josephus* the Historian, as is said, had many things wherewith he garnished his Antiquities from the *Tyrian Chronicles*: and out of *Josephus*, and *Theophilus Antiochenus*, there may be

be gathered a descent of some twenty Kings of the *Tyrians*; but these Authors, though they both pretend to write out of *Alexander Ephesus*, do in no sort agree in the times of their reigns, nor in other particulars.

*Abibalus* is the first King of the *Tyrians*, that *Josephus* and *Theophilus* remember, whom *Theophilus* calls *Abemalus*: the same perchance that the son of *Sirach* mentioneth in his fourth and sixth Chapter, speaking of the Princes of the *Tyrians*.

To this *Abibalus*, *Swon* succeeded, if he be none one and the same with *Abibalus*. *David* (saith *Ensebius* out of *Eupolemus*) constrained this *Swon* to pay him Tribute, of whom also *David* complaineth, *Psal.* 83.

Prap. Evang. l. 9. c. 4.

*Hiram* succeeded *Swon*, whom *Josephus* calls *Irons*, and *Theophilus* sometime *Hieromus*, sometimes *Hieromus*, but *Tatian* and *Zonaras*, *Chiram*. He entred into a league with *David*, and sent him Cedars, with Masons and Carpenters, to performe his buildings in *Jerusalem*, after he had beaten thence the *Jebusites*. The same was he that so greatly assisted *Solomon*: whom he not onely furnished with Cedars, and other Materials towards the raising of the Temple, and with great sums of money, but also he joyined with him in his enterprize of the East India, and of *Ophir*: and furnished *Solomon* with Mariners and Pilots: the *Tyrians* being of all Nations the most excellent Navigators: and lent him 120. talents of gold. Of this *Hiram*, there is not onely mention in divers places of Scripture, but in *Josephus* in his Antiquities the 7. and 8. chap. 2. and 3. in *Theophilus* his third book, in *Tatianus* his Oration against the *Greeks*; and in *Zonaras*, Tome the first.

2 Sam. 5. &amp;c. 2 Sam. c. 5. 2 Kin. 1. 9. 10. 1 Chron. 14. 2 Chron. 2. 8. 5.

This Prince seemed to be very mighty and magnificent, he despised the 20. Towns which *Solomon* offered him: he defended himself against that victorious King *David*; and gave his daughter in marriage to *Solomon*, called the *Zidonian*: for whose sake he was contented to worship *Astarte*, the Idoll of the *Phenicians*. *Hiram* lived 53. years.

1 King. 11. Theoph. l. 9. years.

*Baleasartus*, whom *Theoph.* *Antiochenus* calleth *Bazorus*, succeeded *Hiram* King of *Tyre* and *Zidon*, and reigned 7. years, according to *Josephus*.

*Abdastartus* the eldest son of *Baleasartus*, governed 9. years, and lived but 20. years, according to *Josephus*: but after *Theophilus* he reigned 12. years, and lived 54. who being slain by the four sons of his own Nurse, the eldest of them held the Kingdom 12. years.

*Astartus* brother to *Abdastartus*, recovered the Kingdom from this Usurper, and reigned 12. years.

*Astartimus*, or *Atharimus*, after *Theophilus*, a third brother, followed *Astartus*, and ruled 9. years, and lived in all 54.

Joseph. 54. Theoph. 53.

*Phelles* the fourth son of *Baleasartus*, and brother to the three former Kings, slew *Astartimus*, and reigned 8. moneths, and lived 50. years.

*Ithobalus* (or *Iuthobalus*, in *Theophilus*) son to the third brother *Astartimus*, who was the chief Priest of the Goddess *Astarte*, which was a dignity next unto the King, revenged the death of his father, and slaughtered his Uncle *Phelles*: and reigned 32. years; the same which in the first of Kings, chap. 16. is called *Ethbaal*, whose daughter *Jezebel*, *Asab* married.

Joseph. 32. Theoph. 12.

*Badesor*, or *Bazor*, the son of *Ithobalus*, or *Ethbaal*, brother to *Jezebel*, succeeded his Father, and reigned 6. years, and lived in all 45.

1 King. 15. 34. Joseph. 6. years.

*Mettimus* succeeded *Badesor*, and reigned but 9. years (saith *Josephus*) he had two sons, *Pygmalion* and *Barca*, and two daughters, *Elisa* and *Anna*.

Joseph. 26. Theoph. 29.

*Pygmalion* reigned after *Mettimus* his Father 40. years, and lived 56. In the seventh year of whose reign, *Elisa* sailed into *Africa*, and built *Carthage*, 143. years and 8. moneths after the Temple of *Solomon*: which by our account was 289. years after *Troy* was taken, and 143. before *Rome*: and therefore that fiction by *Virgil* of *Æneas* and *Dido* must be far out of square. For *Pygmalion*, covetous of *Sichem* his riches, who had married his sister *Elisa*, slew him traiterously as he accompanied him in hunting: or if we believe *Justine* and *Virgil*, at the Altar: whereupon *Elisa* fearing to be deploied of her husbands treasure, fled by Sea into *Africa*, as aforesaid: whom when *Pygmalion* prepared to pursue, he was by his mothers tears, and by threats from the Oracle arrested.

Justin. l. 14. Virgil. l. 1.

*Barca* accompanied his sister, and assisted her, in the erection of *Carthage*: and from him sprang that noble Family of the *Burca* in *Africa*, of which race descended many famous Captains, and the great *Hannibal*. *Servius* interprets this name of *Dido* by *Virago*, because of her man-like acts: others from *Jedidia*, a surname of *Solomon*.

Elulens



Elulcus succeeded Pygmalion, and reigned 36. years: the same that overthrew the fleet of Salmanaſſar, in the Port of Tyre: notwithstanding which he continued his ſiege before it on the Land ſide five years, but in vain.

After Elulcus, Ethobales governed the Tyrians, who vaunted himſelf to be as wiſe as Daniel: and that he knew all ſecrets (ſaith Ezekiel) of whom the Prophet writeth large in his 28. Chapter: out of whom it was gathered, that this Prince died, or was ſlain in that long ſiege of Nabuchodonosor: who ſurrounded and attempted Tyre 12. years together, ere he prevailed.

Baal followed Ethobales, and reigned 10. years a tributary, perchanee, to Nabuchodonosor: for after his death, it was governed by divers Judges, ſucceeding each other: Firſt, by Enibaleus, then by Chelbis, Abarus the Prieſt, Mittonus, and Geraſtus, who held among them ſome 7. years, and odd moneths: after whom Salatorus commanded there in as a King for one year: after him Merbaleus ſent from Babylon, 4. years: after him Irem ſent thence alſo, 20. years. In the 17. of whole reign Cyrus began to govern Perſia.

## §. III.

Of Bozius his conceit, that the Edumeans inhabiting along the Red Sea, were the Progenitors of the Tyrians, and that the Tyrians from them received and brought into Phenicia the knowledge of the true God.

OF the great mutations of this Kingdom and State of the Tyrians, mixed with a diſcourſe of divers other Nations, there is one Bozius that hath written a Traſt at large, intituled, *De ruinis Gentium*. And although the great and many alterations found in this and other Cities, yea, in all things under heaven, have proceeded from his ordinance, who onely is unchangeable, and the ſame for ever; yet whereas the ſaid Bozius, inforcing here-hence, that the proſperity and ruine of the Tyrians were fruits of their embracing or forſaking the true Religion; to prove this his aſſertion, ſuppoſeth the Tyrians to have been Edumeans, deſcended from Eſau, Jacobs brother: firſt, it can hardly be believed, that Tyre, when it flouriſhed moſt in her ancient glory, was in any ſort truly devout and religious. But to this end (beſides the proof which the Scriptures give of Hiram's good affection when Solomon built the Temple) he brings many conjectural arguments; whereof the ſtrongeſt is their pedigree and deſcent: it being likely in his opinion, that the poſterity of Eſau received from him by Tradition the Religion of Abraham and Iſaac. That the Tyrians were Edumeans, he endeavours to ſhew, partly by weak reaſons, painfully ſtrained from ſome affinity of names, which are arguments of more delight than weight: partly by authority. For Strabo, Herodotus, Plinie, and others, witneſſe, that the Tyrians came from the Red Sea, in which there were three Iſlands called Tyros, Aradus, and Sidon: which very names (as he thinketh) were afterwards given to the Cities of Phenicia. Conſidering therefore that all the coaſt of the Red Sea, was in his opinion) under the Edumeans: as Elab and Eſiongaber; or under the Amalekites, who deſcended of Amalec the Nephew of Eſau, whole chief City was Madian, ſo called of Madian the ſon of Abraham by Cethura, whole poſterity did people it: the conſequence appears good (as he takes it) that the Tyrians originally were Edomites: differing little or nothing in Religion from the children of Iſrael. Hereunto he adds, that Cadmus and his Companions brought not into Greece the worſhip of Aſtarte, the Idoll of the Sidonians. That the Parents of Thales and Pherecydes being Phenicians, themſelves differed much in their Philoſophy from the Idolatrous cuſtoms of the Greeks. That in Tem, a Town of the Edumeans, was an Univerſity, wherein, as may appear by Eliſhu the Themanite, who diſputed with Job, Religion was ſincerely taught.

Such is the diſcourſe of Bozius, who labouring to prove one Paradox by another, deſerves in both very little credit. For neither doth it follow, that if the Tyrians were Edumeans, they were then of the true Religion, or well affected to God and his people: neither is it true that they were Edumeans at all. In what Religion Eſau brought up his children, it is no where found written; but that himſelf was a profane man, and diſapproved by God, the Scriptures in plain terms expreſſe. That his Poſterity were Idolaters, is directly proved in the 25. Chapter of the ſecond Book of Chronicles. That the Edomites were perpetual enemies to the houſe of Iſrael, ſave onely when David (ſon of his race, Kings of Juda, held them in ſubjection, who knows not? or who is igno-

rant of Davids unfriendly behaviour amongst them, when firſt they were ſubdued? ſurely, it was not any argument of Kinned or Alliance between Tyrus and Mount Seir, that Hiram held ſuch good correſpondence with David; even then when Job ſlew all the males of Edom: neither was it for their devotion to God, and good affection to Iſrael, that the Edumites were ſo ill intreated? It ſeemeth that the pious and ancient wiſdom of Eliſhu the Themanite was then forgotten; and the Edumeans puniſhed, for being ſuch as David in his own dayes found them. Although indeed the city of Teman whence Eliſhu came to reaſon with Job, is not that in Edumaea, but another of the ſame name, lying Eaſt from the Sea of Galilee, and adjoining to Hui, the country of Job: and to which the City of Beldad the Subite, as both ſuch Chorographers who beſt knew thoſe parts, do plainly ſhew, and the holy Text maketh manifeſt. For Job is ſaid to have exceeded in riches; and Solomon in wiſdom, all the people of the Eaſt; not the inhabitants of Mount Seir, which lay due South from Paleſtina. True it is, that Eliſhu the ſon of Eſau had a ſon called Teman: but that fathers were wont in thoſe dayes to take name of their ſons, I no where finde. And Iſmael alſo had a ſon called Thema: of whom it is not unlike, that Theman in the Eaſt had the name: for as much as in the 7. Chap. of the Book of Judges, the Midianites, Amalekites; and all they of the Eaſt are called Iſmaelites. And he that well conſiders how great and ſtrong a Nation Amalec was, which durſt give battle to the Hoſt of Iſrael, wherein were 600000. able men, will hardly believe that ſuch a people were deſcended from one of Eſaus his grand-children. For how powerfull and numberleſſe muſt the forces of all Edom have been: if one Tribe of them, yea, one Family of a Tribe had been ſo great? ſurely Mount Seir and all the Regions adjoining could not have held them. But we no where finde that Edom had to do with Amalec, or aſſiſted the Amalekites, when Saul went to root them out. For Amalec is no where in Scripture named as a Tribe of Edom: but a Nation of it ſelf, if diſtinct from the Iſmaelites. The like may be ſaid of Midian; that the Founder thereof being ſon to Abraham by Cethura, doubtleſſe was no Edomite. And thus much in generall for all the Seigniorie of the Red Sea coaſt, which Bozius imagines the Edumeans to have held: if the Edomites in after-times held ſome places, as Elan and Eſiongaber on the Red Sea ſhore, yet in Moſes time, which was long after the building of Tyre, they held them not. For Moſes himſelf ſaith, that Iſrael did compaſſe all the borders of Edom: within which limits had Midian ſtood, Moſes muſt needs have known it: becauſe he had ſojourn'd long in that Country: and there had left his wife and children, when he went into Egypt.

But conjectural Arguments, how probable ſoever, are needleſſe in ſo manifeſt a caſe. For in the 83. Pſal. Edom, Amalec, and Tyre, are named as diſtinct Nations: yea the Tyrians and Sydonians being one people, as all good Authours ſhew, and Bozius himſelf confeſſeth, were Canaanites, as appears, Gen. 10. 15. & 19. appointed by God to have been deſtroyed, and their Lands given to the children of Aſer, Joſ. 29. becauſe they were Idolaters, and of the curſed ſeed of Canaan, not Couſins to Iſrael, nor profeſſors of the ſame Religion. For though Hiram ſaid, *Bleſſed be God that hath ſent King David a wiſe ſon*: we cannot infer that he was of Davids Religion. The Turk hath ſaid as much of Chriſtian Princes, his confederates: Certain it is, that the Sydonians then worſhipped Aſtarth, and drew Solomon alſo to the ſame Idolatry.

Whereas Hiram aided Solomon in building the Temple, he did it for his own ends, receiving therefore of Solomon great proviſion of Corn and Oyle, and the offer of twenty Towns and Villages in Galilee. And if we rightly conſider things, it will appear that Hiram in all points, dealt Merchant-like with Solomon. He allowed him Timber, with which Libanus was, and yet is over-ſtuffed, being otherwiſe apt to yeeld ſilks: as the Indigine ſilks which come from thence, and other good commodities. For Corn and Oyle, which he wanted, he gave that which he could well ſpare to Solomon. Alſo Gold for Land: wherein Solomon was the wiſer, who having got the Gold firſt, gave to Hiram the worſt Villages that he had: with which the Tyrian was ill pleaſed. But it was a neceſſary policy which inforced Tyrus to hold league with Iſrael. For David had ſubdued Moab, Ammon, Edom, the Aramites, and a great part of Arabia, even to Euphrates: thorough which Countries the Tyrians were wont to carry and re-carry their Wares on Camels, to their fleets on the Red Sea, and back again to Tyrus: ſo that Solomon being Lord of all the Countries through which they were to paſſe, could have cut off their Trade.

But

But the *Israelites* were no Sea-men, and therefore glad to share with the *Tyrians* their adventures. Yet *Solomon*, as Lord of the Sea-towns which his Father had taken from the *Philistines*, might have greatly distressed the *Tyrians*, and perhaps have brought them even into subjection. Which *Hiram* knowing, was glad (and no marvel) that *Solomon* rather meant, as a man of peace, to employ his Fathers Treasure in magnificent Works, than in pursuing the conquest of all *Syria*. Therefore he willingly aided him, and sent him cunning workmen, to increase his delight in goodly Buildings, Imageries, and instruments of pleasure.

As these passages between *Solomon* and *Hiram*, are no strong arguments of piety in the *Tyrians*: so those other proofs which *Bozins* frames negatively upon particular examples, are very weak. For what the Religion of *Cadmus* was, I think, no man knows. It seems to me, that having more cunning than the *Greeks*, and being very ambitious, he would faine have purchased divine honours; which his Daughters, Nephews, and others of his house obtained; but his own many misfortunes beguiled him of such hopes, if he had any. *Thales* and *Pherecydes* are but single examples: Every salvage Nation hath some wisdom excelleth the Vulgar, even of civill people. Neither did the morall wisdom of these men expresse any true knowledge of the true God. Only they made no good mention of the Gods of *Greece*: whom being newly come thither, they knew not. It is no good argument to say, that *Cadmus* and *Thales* being *Tyrians* are not known to have taught Idolatry, therefore the *Tyrians* were not Idolaters. But this is of force, That *Carthage*, *Utica*, *Leptis*, *Cadix*, and all Colonies of the *Tyrians* (of which I think, the Islands before mentioned in the *Red Sea* to have been, for they traded in all Seas) were Idolaters, even from their first beginnings: therefore the *Tyrians* who planted them, and to whom they had reference, were so likewise.

This their Idolatry from *Solomons* time on-wards is acknowledged by *Bozins*, who would have us think them to have been formerly a strange kinde of devout *Edeumites*. In which fancie he is so peremptory, that he styleth men of contrary opinion, *Idol Politicians*, as if it were impertinent to think, that God (who even among the Heathen, which have not known his Name, doth favour Vertue and hate Vice) hath often rewarded morall honesty, with temporall happinesse. Doubtlesse, this doctrine of *Bozins* would better have agreed with *Julian* the *Apostata*, than with *Cyril*. For if the *Assyrians*, *Greeks*, *Romans*, and all those Nations of the *Gentiles*, did then prosper most, when they drew neereſt unto the true Religion: what may be said of the foule Idolatry which grew in *Rome* as fast as *Rome* it self grew: and was enlarged with some new superstition, almost upon every new victory? How few great battells did the *Romans* win, in which they vowed not either a Temple to some new god, or some new honour to one of their old gods? yea, what one Nation, save onely that of the *Jews*, was subdued by them, whose gods they did not afterward entertain in their City? Onely the true God, which was the God of the *Jews*, they rejected, upbraiding the *Jews* with him, as if he were unworthy of the *Roman* Majesty: Shall we hereupon enforce the lewd and foolish conclusion, which Heathen Writers used against the *Christians* in the *Primitive Church*: That such Idolatry had caused the City of *Rome* to flourish, and that the decay of those abominations did also bring with it the decay of the Empire? It might well be thought so, if prosperity were a signe or effect of true Religion. Such is the blinde zeal of *Bozins*, who writing against those whom he fallily terms impious, gives strength to such as are impious indeed. But such indiscretion is usually found among men of his humour; who having once either foolishly embraced the dreams of others, or vainly fashioned in their own brains any strange *Chimera*'s of Divinity, condemn all such in the pride of their zeal, as Atheists and Infidels, that are not transported with the like intemperate ignorance. Great pitié it is, that such mad dogs are oftentimes encouraged by those, who having the command of many tongues, when they themselves cannot touch a man in open and generous opposition, will wound him secretly by the malicious vertue of an *Hypocrite*.

## CHAP. IX.

of the Tribe of Ephraim, and of the Kings of the ten Tribes, whose head was Ephraim.

## §. I.

Of the memorable places in the Tribe of Ephraim.

**H**AVING now past over *Phœnicia*, we come to the next Territory adjoining, which is that of *Ephraim*: Sometimes taken *per excellentiam*, for the whole Kingdom of the ten Tribes. *Ephraim* was the second son of *Joseph*, whose issues when they left *Egypt* were in number 45000. all which dying in the *Desarts*, (*Joseph* excepted) there entered the Holy Land of their children grown to be able men, 32500. who fate down on the West side of *Jordan*, between *Manasse* and *Benjamin*: who bounded *Ephraim* by the North and South; as *Jordan*, and the *Mediterran Sea*, did by the East and West.

The first and chief City which *Ephraim* had, was *Samaria*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom of *Israel*, built by *Amris* or *Omri* King thereof, and seated on the top of the Mountain *Samron*, which overlooketh all the bottome, and as far as the Sea-coast. It was afterward called *Sebasté*, or *Augusta*, in honour of *August. Cesar*. This City is often remembered in the Scriptures: and magnificent it was in the first building; for as *Brochard* observeth, the ruines which yet remain, and which *Brochard* found greater than those of *Hierusalem*, tell those that behold them, what it was when it stood upright: for to this day there are found great store of goodly Marble pillars, with other hewen and carved stone in great abundance, among the rubble.

It was beaten to the ground by the sons of *Hircanus* the high Priest: restored and built by the first *Herod* the son of *Antipater*: who to flatter *Cesar* called it *Sebasté*. Herein were the prophets *Helisæus* and *Abdias* buried: and so was *John Baptiste*. It now hath nothing but a few Cottages filled with *Grecian* Monks.

Neer *Samaria* towards the South, is the hill of *Bethel*, and a town of that name: on the top of which mountain, *Jeroboam* erected one of his golden calves, to be worshipped: with which he seduced the *Israelites*.

In sight of this Mountain of *Bethel*, was that ancient City of *Sichem*; after the reſtauration called *Neapolis*, now *Pelosa*, and *Napolaſa*: It was destroyed by *Simeon* and *Levi*, in revenge of the ravishment of their sister *Dina*: and after that by *Abimelec* evened with *Joseph*. *Jeroboam* raised it up again: and the *Damascens* a third time caſt it down.

Under *Sichem* toward the Sea standeth *Pharaton* or *Pirbathon*, on the Mountain *Amale*, the City of *Abdon* Judge of *Israel*. And under it *Bethoron* of the *Levites*, built as it is said by *Sara*, the daughter of *Ephraim*. Neer to this City *Judas Macchabeus* overthrew *Serna* and *Lysias*, Lieutenants to *Antiochus*. This City had *Solomon* formerly repaired and fortified.

Between *Bethoron* and the Sea, standeth *Samir*, of which *Jos. 10.* and *Saron*, whose King was slain by *Joſua*: it is also mentioned *Aſs. 9. 35.* and of this *Saron* the Valley taketh name, which beginning at *Cæsarea Palestine*, extendeth it self alongt the coast as far as *Joppe*, saith *Adrichome*: though indeed the name *Saron* is not particularly given to this Valley, but to every fruitfull plain Region; for not onely this Valley is so called, to wit, between *Cæsarea* and *Joppe*, but that also between the Mountain *Tabor* and the Sea of *Galilee*: for so *S. Hierome* upon the five and thirtieth Chapter of *Eſay*, interprets the word *Saron*: and so doth the same Father in his Commentaries upon *Abdias*, read *Saron* for *Aſaron*: understanding thereby a Plaine neer *Lidda*: which *Lidda* in his time was called *Dioſpolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*, one of the *Toparchies* of *Judea*, the ſitt in dignitie (or the third after *Pliny*) where *S. Peter* (*non ſua, ſed Chriſti virgine*) cured *Ancaſ*. *Niger* calls all that Region from *Anti-libanus* to *Joppe*, *Saron*. This *Joppe* was burnt to the ground by the *Romans*, those Ravens and ſpoylers of all Eſtates, diſturbes

sturbors of Common-weales, usurpers of other Princes Kingdoms; who with no other respect led than to amplify their own glory, troubled the whole world: and themselves, after murdering one another, became a prey to the most salvage and barbarous Nations.

In *Diospolis* (saith *Wil. of Tyre*) was *S. George* beheaded, and buried: in whose honour and memory *Justinian* the Emperour caused a fair Church to be built over his Tomb; these be *Tyris* his words: *Reliquia dextris locis maritimis Antipatride, & Joppæ, per latèntem planitiem Elutheriam petranscentes, Liddam quæ est Diospolis, ubi & egregius Martyr Georgii usque hodie Sepulchrum ostenditur, pervenerunt, ejus Ecclesiam quæ ad hanc rem ejusdem Martyris, pios & orthodoxos Princeps Romanorum, Augustus Justinianus, studio & devotione prompta edificari præceperat, &c.* They having left (saith he) on the right hand, the Sea Towns, Antipatris and Joppe, passing over the great open Plain of Elutheria, came to Lidda, which is Diospolis: where the sumptuous Tomb of the famous Martyr *S. George* is at this day shewed; whose Church, when the godly and Orthodox Prince of the Romans, High and mighty Justinian, had commanded to be built, with great earnestness and present devotion, &c. Thus far *Tyris*: by whose testimony, we may conjecture that this *S. George* was not that *Arrian* Bishop of *Alexandria*; but rather some betwixt *Christians*: for this of *Alexandria* was slain there in an uprore of the people, and his ashes cast into the Sea, as *Animianus Marcellinus* reports. And yet also it may be, that this *Georgius* was a better *Christian*, than he is commonly thought: for his words of the Temple of *Genius*, How long shall this Sepulchre stand? occasioned the uprore of the people against him: as fearing lest he would give attempt to overthrow that beautifull Temple. This also *Marcellinus* reports; who though he say that this *Georgius* was also deadly hated of the *Christians*, who else might have rescued him: yet he addeth, that his ashes, with the ashes of two others, were therefore cast into the Sea, lest if their Reliques had bin gathered up, Churches should be built for them, as for others. But for my part, I further think that it was not *Georgius*, whose name lives in the right honorable order of our Knights of the Garter, but rather another, whom *Tyris* above cited, witnessed to have bin buried at Lidda or Diospolis. The same also is confirmed by *Vitricus*. *S. Hieron* affirms, that it was sometime called *Tigrida*, and while the *Christians* inhabited the *Libani*, it had a Bishop Suffragan.

Neer to Lidda or Diospolis standeth *Ramatha* of the *Levites*, or *Aramathia*: afterward *Rama*, and *Ramula*, the native City of *Joseph*, which buried the body of *Christ*. There are many places which beare this name of *Rama*; one they set in the Tribe of *Juda* near *Thebua* in the way of *Hebron*; another in *Nephtalim*, not far from *Sephet*; a third in *Zabulon*, which they say, adjoyneth to *Sephoris*; a fourth, which they make the same with *Silo*; and a fifth, which is this *Rama*, in the Hills of *Ephraim*, called *Rama-Sophim*, where *Samuel* lived, and wherein he is buried.

From hence to the North alongst the coast are *Helon*, or *Ajalon* of the *Levites*, of which *1 Chron. 6. Apollonia*, of which *Josephus* in his Antiquities, and in the wars of the Jews. Also *Balsafisa* (for which *Junius*, 2 Reg. 4.42. reads *planities Shalisha*) they place hereabout in this Tribe of *Ephraim*; but *Junius* upon 1. Sam. 6. where we read of the Land of *Shalisha*, findeth it in *Benjamin*.

On the other side of the Mountains of *Ephraim* standeth *Gofna*, one of the *Toparchie*, or Cities of government, the second in dignity, of which the Country about it taketh name.

Ten *Thamnath-Sarab*, or according to the Hebrew, *Thimnath-Serach*: one also of the ten *Toparchie*, or *Presidencies* of *Juda*, which they call *Thamnathica*, a goodly City and strong, seated on one of the high Hills of *Ephraim*: on the North of the Hill called *Gus*, which City and Territory *Israel* gave unto their Leader *Josua*; who also amplified it with buildings, neer which he was buried. His Sepulchre remained in *S. Hieron*'s time, and over it the *Sun* engraven, in memory of that greatest of wonders which God wrought in *Josua*'s time.

In the places adjoyning standeth *Adarsa*, or *Adasa*; where *Judas Maccabæus* with three thousand Jews overthrew the Army of *Nicanor*, Lieutenant of *Syria*; neer to *Gofna*, or *Cezor*, which *Josua* took, and hung their King; a City of the *Levites*. It was afterward taken by *Pharaoh* of *Egypt*; the people all slain, and the City razed; *Solomon* rebuilt it.

To

To the East of this place is the Frontier City of *Jeseti*, of which *Jos. 16. 3.* otherwise *Pelabai*, whence *David* had part of his Prætorian Souldiers, under the charge of *Benai*. Then that high and famous Mountain and City of *Silo*, whereon the Ark of God was kept so many yeers, till the *Philistims* got it.

To this they joyn the City of *Macbas*, or *Michmas*: in which *Jonathan Maccabæus* See in Benjamin. 1 Mar. 9. vlt. 1 King 4. and see Rama in Benjamin.

To this they joyn the City of *Macbas*, or *Michmas*: in which *Jonathan Maccabæus* See in Benjamin. 1 Mar. 9. vlt. 1 King 4. and see Rama in Benjamin.

Then the Village of *Naioth* where *Saul* prophesied; and neer it *Ephron*, one of those Cities which *Abijah* recovered from *Jeroboam*; after the great overthrow given him. Then *Kimbsaim*, of the *Levites*, of which *Jos. 21. 22.* which *Junius* thinks to be the same with *Jokneham*, of which 1 Chro. 6. 28. As for *Abisalom*'s *Baalaser*, which they find hereabout, *Junius* reads it in the Plain of *Chatzor*; and findes it in the Tribe of *Juda*; as *Jos. 15.* we read of two *Chatzors* in that Tribe; one neer *Kedesh*, ver. 23. and the other the same as *Chatzor*, ver. 25.

In this Tribe also they finde the City of *Mello*; whose Citizens, they say, joyned with the *Sichemites* in making the Bastard *Abimelec* King: adding that for the building thereof with other Cities, *Solomon* raised a Tribute upon the people. But it seems that *Mello*, or *Millu* is a common name of a strong Fort or Cittadell: and so *Junius*, for *domus Mello*, reads *incole munitionis*, and for *Solomon edificabit Millu*, he reads *edificabit munitionem*, and so the *Septuagint* reads *in loco* in that place. And without doubt the *Mello* which *Solomon* built, cannot be that of *Sichem*, but another in *Hierusalem*.

The other Cities of mark in *Ephraim*, are *Tapmach*, whose King was slain by *Josua* and *Jamach*, or *Janab*, spoiled by *Teglatphalassar*; *Pekab* then governing *Israel*, with divers others, but of no great fame. The Mountains of *Ephraim* sometime signifie the greatest part of the land of the sons of *Joseph*, on the West of *Jordan*: severall parts whereof are the Hill of *Samron*, or *Samaria*, 1 Reg. 16. 24. \* the Hill of *Gabaa*, *Judg. 2. 9.* \* Also the hill of *Tsalmon*, or *Salmon*, *Judg. 9. 48.* the Hills of the Region of *Tushph*, or *Tophim*, *Judg. 9. 5.* where *Rama-Tophim* stood, which was the City of *Samuel*.

The great plenty of fruitfull Vines upon the sides of the Mountains, was the occasion that *Jacob* in the spirit of prophecy, *Genes. 49. 22.* compared *Joseph*'s two branches, *Ephraim* and *Manasse*, to the branches of a fruitful Vine planted by the Well side, and spreading her (a) Daughter-branches along the Wall: which Allegory also *Ezek. 22.* in his Lamentation for *Ephraim* (that is, for the ten Tribes, whose head was *Ephraim*) where the prophets: as also in his Lamentation for *Juda*, he followeth the other Allegory of *Jacob*, *Gen. 49. 9.* comparing *Juda* to a Lion. Upon the top of one of the highest of these Hills of *Ephraim*, which overlooketh all the Plains on both sides of *Jordan*, they finde the Castle called *Dok*, which they make to be the same with *Dagon*, of which *Joseph. 1. bell. Jud. 2.* in which Castle, as it is 1 Macc. 16. *Ptolomy* most traiterously at a banquet, slew *Simon Maccabæus* his father-in-law.

Among the Rivers of this Tribe of *Ephraim*, they name *Gus*, remembered in the second of *Samuel*, c. 23. v. 30. where though *Junius* reads, *Hiddai ex una vallium Gabas*: yet the Vulgar and *Varabius* reads *Giddai*, of the river of *Gus*. Also in this Tribe they place the River of *Carith*, by which the Prophet *Elia* abode during the great drought: word *Daughter* for *branch*, whereby the River was dried up, he travelled (by the Spirit of God guided) towards *Sidon*: where he was relieved by the poor widow of *Zareph*, whose dead son he revived, and increased her pittance of Meal and Oil: whereby the sustained her life.

Hebrew phrase are called Daughters of the Metropolis: as in *Josua*, and elsewhere often. b 1 Reg. 17. 6. & chap. 17.

## §. II.

Of the Kings of the ten Tribes, from Jeroboam to Achab.

OF the first Kings of *Israel* I omit in this place to speak, and reserve it to the Catalogue of the Kings of *Juda*: of whom hereafter.

Touching the acts of the Kings of the ten Tribes, but briefly, beginning after the division from *Juda* and *Benjamin*, now it followeth to speak. The first of these Kings *Jeroboam* the son of *Nebat*, an *Ephraimite* of *Zareda*, who being a man of strength and courage, was by *Solomon* made overseer of the buildings of the Munition in *Hierusalem*, for

H h

25

as much as belonged to the charge of the Tribes of *Ephraim* and *Manasse* : and so many of them as wrought in those works. During which time, as he went from *Hierusalem*, he encountered the Prophet *Abijah* : who made him know that he was by God delinied to be King of *Israel*, and to command ten of the twelve Tribes. After this, fearing that those things might come to *Solomon's* knowledge, he fled into *Egypt* to *Shishak*, whom *Eusebius* calleth *Ochochore*, whose Daughter he married : the Predecessor of which *Shishak* (if not the same) did likewise entertain *Adad* the *Edumean*, whom he was carried young into *Egypt* from the fury of *David*, and his Captain *Joab* ; which *Adad* the King of *Egypt* married to his Wives sister *Tophnes* ; using both him and *Jeroboam* as instruments to shake the Kingdom of *Judea*, that himself might the easilier spoil it, as he did : for in the fifth year of *Rehoboam*, *Shishak* sack't the City of *Hierusalem*, and carried thence all the treasure of *David* and *Solomon*, and all the spoils which *David* took from *Adadizer* of *Soba*, with the presents of *Tohu*, King of *Hamath*, which were of an incalimable value.

This *Jeroboam* after the death of *Solomon* became Lord of the ten Tribes : and though he were permitted by God to govern the *Israelites*, and from a mean man exalted to that state : yet preferring the policies of the world before the service and honour of God (as fearing that if the Tribes under his rule should repair to *Hierusalem* to do their usual Sacrifices, they might be drawn from him by degrees) he erected two golden Calves, one in *Dan*, and another in *Bethel*, for the people to worship (an imitation of the Egyptian *Apis*, saith *S. Ambrose*, or rather of *Aarons* Calf in *Horeb* :) further he made election of his Priests out of the basest and unlearned people. This King made his chief Seat and Palace at *Sichem* : He despised the warning of the *Judean* Prophet, whom *Josephus* calleth *Adon*, and *Glycas* *Joel* : his hand thereafter withered, and was again restored : but continuing in his Idolatry, and hardened, upon occasion that the Prophet returning, was slain by a Lion ; *Abijah* makes him know that God purposed to root out his posterity.

He was afterward overthrown by *Abia* King of *Juda*, and died after he had governed two and twenty years ; whom *Nadab* his son succeeded : who in the second year of his reign, together with all the race of *Jeroboam*, was slain, and rooted out by *Baasha*, who reigned in his stead : so *Nadab* lived King but two years.

*Baasha* the son of *Abijah*, the third King after the partition, made war with *Asa* King of *Juda* : he feared himself in *Thersa* : and fortified *Rama* against *Juda*, to restrain their excursions. Hereupon *Asa* entertained *Benhadad* of *Damascus* against him, who invaded *Nephtalim*, and destroyed many places therein : the mean while *Asa* carried away the materials, with which *Baasha* intended to fortifie *Rama* : but being an Idolater, he was threatened by *Jehu* the Prophet, that it should befall his race, as it did to *Jeroboam* : which afterward came to passe : He ruled four and twenty yeers, and died.

To *Baasha* succeeded *Ela* his son, who at a feast at his Palace of *Thersa*, was in his cups slain by *Zambris*, after he had reigned two years : and in him the prophesie of *Jehu* was fulfilled.

*Zambris* succeeded *Ela*, and assumed the name of a King seven dayes ; but *Ambris* in revenge of the Kings murder, set upon *Zambris*, or *Zimri*, and inclosed him in *Thersa*, and inforc't him to burn himself.

*Ambris* or *Homri* succeeded *Ela*, and transferred the Regall seat from *Thersa* to *Samaria* : which he bought of *Shemer*, built, and fortified it. This *Ambris* was also an Idolater no lesse impious than the rest : and therefore subjeeted to *Tabrenmon*, King of *Syria*, the father of *Benhadad*, according to *Eusebius*, *Nieephorus*, and *Zonaras* : but how this should stand, I do not well conceive ; seeing *Benhadad* the son of *Tabrenmon* was invited by *Asa* King of *Juda*, to assaile *Baasha* King of *Israel*, the father of *Ela*, who fore-went *Ambris*. This *Ambris* reigned twelve years, six in *Thersa*, and six in *Samaria*, and left two children, *Achab* and *Athalia*.

### §. III.

Of *Achab* and his Successors, with the captivity of the ten Tribes.

*Achab*, or *Abah* succeeded *Omri*, who not onely upheld the Idolatry of *Jeroboam*, borrowed of the *Egyptians* : but he married *Jezabel* the *Zidonian* : and as *Jeroboam*

followed the Religion of his Egyptian Wife : so did *Achab* of his *Zidonian* : and erected an Altar and a Grove to *Baal* in *Samaria*. He suffered *Jezabel* to kill the Prophets of the most high God. God sent famine on the land of *Israel*. *Achab* met *Elias* : *Elias* prevailed in the trial of the sacrifice, and killeth the false prophets ; and afterward flieth for fear of *Jezabel*.

*Benhadad* not long after besieged *Samaria* : and taken by *Achab*, was by him set at liberty : for which the Prophet (whom *Glycas* calleth *Asichas*) reproveth him : afterward he caused *Naboth* by a false accusation to be stoned. Then joyning with *Josaphat* in the war for the recovery of *Ramoth*, he was slain, as *Michas* had foretold him.

He had three sons named in the Scripture, *Ochozias*, *Joram*, and *Jons* : besides seventy other sons by sundry wives and concubines.

*Ochozias* succeeded his father *Achab*. The *Moabites* fell from his obedience : he bruised himself by a fall : and sent for counsell to *Beelzebub* the god of *Achazur*. *Eliab* the Prophet meeteth the messenger on the way : and misliking that *Ochozias* sought help from that dead Idoll, asked the messenger, if there were not a God in *Israel* ? *Ochozias* sendeth two Captains, and with each 50. souldiers, to bring *Eliab* unto him, both which with their Attendants were consumed with fire. The third Captain besought mercy at *Eliab's* hands, and he spared him, and went with him to the King, avowing it to the King that he must then die ; which came to passe in the second year of his reigne.

*Joram*, the brother of *Ochozias* by *Jezabel*, succeeded : He allured *Josaphat* King of *Juda*, and the King of *Edom* to assist him against the *Moabites*, who refused to pay him the tribute of 20000. sheep. The three Kings wanted water for themselves and their horses in the Desarts. The Prophet *Elisha* causeth the ditches to flow. The *Moabites* are overthrown : their King flieth to *Kirharaseth*, and being besieged, according to some Expositors, burnt his son on the walls as a sacrifice, whereat the three Kings, moved with compassion, returned and left *Moab*, waiting and spoiling that Region. Others, as it seems with better reason, understand the Text to speak of the son of the King of *Edom*, whom they suppose in this irruption to have been taken prisoner by the *Moabites*, and that the King of *Moab* shewed him over the walls, threatening, unless the siege were dissolved, that he would offer him in sacrifice to his gods. Whereupon the King of *Edom* besought those of *Juda* and *Israel* to break off the siege for the safety of his son : which when the other Kings refused to yield unto, and that *Moab*, according to his former threatening, had burnt the King of *Edom's* son upon the rampire, that all the assailants might discern it, the king of *Edom* being by this sad spectacle enraged, forsook the party of the other Kings, for want of whose assistance the siege was broken up.

After this the King of *Aram* sent to *Joram*, to heal *Naaman* the Captain of his Army of the Leprosie. The answer of *Joram* was, *Am I God to kill, and to give life, that he doth send to heal a man of his Leprosie* ? adding, that the *Aramite* sought but matter of quarrell against him. *Elisha* hearing thereof, willed the King to send *Naaman* to him ; promising that he should know that there was a Prophet in *Israel* : and so *Naaman* was healed by washing himself seven times in *Jordan*. *Elisha* refused the gifts of *Naaman* ; but his servant *Gehazi* accepted a part thereof : from whence the sellers of spirituall gifts are called *Gehazites*, as the buyers are *Simonians*, of *Simon Magus*.

Afterward *Benhadad* King of *Aram*, or *Damascus*, having heard that this Prophet did discover to the King of *Israel* whatsoever the *Aramite* consulted in his secretest counsell, sent a troop of horse to take *Elisha* : all whom *Elisha* struck blinde, and brought them captives into *Samaria* : *Joram* then asked leave of the Prophet to slay them, *Elisha* forbade him to harm them : but caused them to be fed, and sent back to their own Prince in safety.

The King of *Aram*, notwithstanding these benefites, did again attempt *Samaria*, and brought the Citizens to extreme famine. *Joram* imputeth the cause thereof to the Prophet *Elisha*. *Elisha* by prayer caused a noise of Chariots and Armour to found in the aire, whereby the *Aramites* affrighted, fled away, and left the siege. An act of great admiration, as the same is written in the second of Kings. After this, when *Naad* obtained the Kingdom of *Syria* by the death of his Master, *Joram* entering upon his frontier, took *Ramoth-Gilead* : in which war he received divers wounds, and returned to *Jezreel* to be cured. But whilst he lay there, *Jehu* (who commanding the Army of *Joram* in *Gilead*, was anointed King by one of the children of the Prophets

sent by *Elisba*) surprized and slew both him and all that belonged unto him, rooting out the whole posterity of *Abah*.

Fig. 86.

*Jehu*, who reigned after *Jehoram*, destroyed not only the race of his fore-goers, but also their religion; for which he received a promise from God, That his seed should occupy the Throne unto the fourth generation. Yet he upheld the Idolatry of *Jehoram*, for which he was plagued with grievous war, wherein he was beaten by *Hazeael* the *Aramite*, who spoiled all the Countries to the East of *Jordan*: in which war he was slain, saith *Cedrenus*; whereof the Scriptures are silent. *Jehu* reigned 28 years.

2 Kings 13.

*Joachaz*, or *Jehoachaz* the son of *Jehu* succeeded his father, whom *Azael* and his son *Benhadad* often invaded, and in the end subjeeted, leaving him onely 50. horse, 20. chariots, and 10000. foot: and, as it is written in the Scriptures, he made them like dust beaten into powder. *Joachaz* reigned 17 years.

2 Kings 14.

After *Joachaz*, *Jos* his son governed *Israel*, who when he repaired to *Elisba* the Prophet as he lay on his death-bed, the Prophet promised him three victories over the *Aramites*: and first commanded him to lay his hand on his bowe, and *Elisba* covered the Kings hands with his, and bad him open the window Westward (which was toward *Damascus*) and then shoot an arrow thence out. He again willed him to beat the ground with his arrows, who smote it thrice, and ceased: The Prophet then told him, that he should have smitten five or six times, and then he should have had so many victories over the *Aramites* as he gave strokes. And so it succeeded with *Jos*, who overthrew the *Aramites* in three battels, and recovered the Cities and Territory from *Benhadad* the son of *Azael*, which his father *Joachaz* had lost. He also overthrew *Amazias* King of *Juda*, who provoked him to make the war, whereupon he entred *Hierusalem*, and sacked it with the Temple. This *Jos* reigned sixteen years, and died; in whose time also the Prophet *Elisba* exchanged this life for a better.

*Jeroboam* the third from *Jehu*, followed *Jos* his father, an Idolater, as his predecessor; but he recovered all the rest of the lands belonging to *Israel*, from *Hamath* which is neer *Libanus*, to the dead Sea, and reigned one and forty years.

*Zacharias* the fifth and last of the house of *Jehu*, slain by *Shallum* his vassall, who reigned in his stead, governed six moneths. *Shallum* held the Kingdome but one moneth, being slaughtered by *Menabem* of the *Gadites*.

2 King. 16. 19.

*Menabem* who took revenge of *Shallum*, used great cruelty to those that did not acknowledge him: ripping the bellies of those that were with child. This *Menabem* being invaded by *Pbul*, bought his peace with ten thousand talents of silver, which he exacted by a Tribute of fifty shekels from every man of wealth in *Israel*. *Menabem* governed twenty years.

1 King. 15. 29.

*Pekahiah*, or *Phaceia*, or after *Zonaras*, *Phacefa* succeeded, and after he had ruled two yeers, he was slain by *Phaca*, or *Pekah* the Commander of his Army, who reigned in his place. In this *Pekah*'s time, *Phulassar*, or *Tiglat-Phulassar* invaded the Kingdom of *Israel*, and won *Sion*, *Abel-Bethmaacab*, *Janoach*, *Kedesh*, *Hazor*, and *Gilead*, with all the Cities of *Galilee*, carrying them captives into *Assyria*: he was drawn in by *Achaz* King of *Judea*, against *Pekah* and *Rezin*, the last of the *Adades*. For *Achaz* being wasted by *Pekah* of *Israel*, and by *Rezin* of *Damascus*, did a third time borrow the Church-riches, and therewith ingaged the *Assyrian*, who first suppressed that Monarchy of *Syria* and *Damascus*, and then of *Israel*: and this inviting of the great *Assyrian*, was the utter ruine of both States, of *Israel*, and of *Judea*. *Pekah* reigned 20. yeers.

Then *Hofhea*, or *Ofea*, who slew *Pekah*, became the vassall of *Salmannassar*; but hoping to shake off the *Assyrian* yoke, he sought aide from *So*, or *Bua*, or *Sebiens* King of *Egypt*: which being known to the *Assyrian*, he cast him into prison, besieged *Samarita*, and mastered it: carried the ten Idolatrous Tribes into *Ninive* in *Assyria*, and into *Ragun* in *Media*, and into other Eastern Regions, and there dispersed them: and re-planted *Samarita* with divers Nations, and chiefly with the *Cutha* (inhabiting about *Cutha*, a River in *Persia*, or rather in *Arabia Deserta*) and with the people *Cataner* bounding upon *Syria*, and with those of *Sepharajim* (a people of *Sephar* in *Mesopotamia* upon *Euphrates*, of whose conquest *Senacherib* vaunteth) also with those of *Aus*, which were of the ancient *Avims*, who inhabited the Land of the *Philistines* in *Abrahams* time, dwelling neer unto *Gaza*, whom the *Caphitims* rooted out: and at this time they were of *Arabia* the Desert, called *Havai*, willing to return to their ancient seat.

To these he added those of *Chamath*, or *Iturea*, the ancient enemies of the *Israelites*, and sometime the Vassals of the *Adads* of *Damascus*, which so often afflicted them. And thus did this *Assyrian* advise himself better than the *Romanes* did. For after *Titus* and *Vespasian* had wasted the Cities of *Judea* and *Hierusalem*, they carried the people away captive: but left no others in their places, but a very few simple labourers, besides their own thin Garrisons, which soon decayed: and thereby they gave that dangerous entrance to the *Arabians* & *Saracens*, who never could be driven thence again to this day. And this transmigration, plantation, and displantation, happened in the yeer of the world, 3292. the sixth yeer of *Ezekiah* King of *Juda*: and the ninth of *Hofea* the last King of *Israel*.

#### A Catalogue of the Kings of the ten TRIBES.

1. Jeroboam	Reigned 22 Yeers.
2. Nadab	2 Yeers.
3. Baasha	24 Yeers.
4. Ela	20 Yeers.
5. Zambri	7 Dayes.
6. Omri	11 Yeers.
7. Achab	22 Yeers.
8. Ochozias	2 Yeers.
9. Joram	12 Yeers.
10. Jehu	28 Yeers.
11. Joachaz	17 Yeers.
12. Jos	16 Yeers.
13. Jeroboam	41 Yeers.
14. Zacharias	6 Moneths.
15. Shallum	1 Moneth.
16. Menabem	10 Yeers.
17. Pakahia	2 Yeers.
18. Phaca	20 Yeers.
19. Hofea	9 Yeers, about whose time Writers differ.

### CHAP. X.

Of the memorable places of Dan, Simeon, Juda, Reuben, Gad, and the other half of Manasse.

#### §. I.

Of Dan, whereof *Joppe*, *Gath*, *Accaron*, *Azotus*, and other Towns.

Now following the coast of the *Mediterranean Sea*, that portion of Land assigned to the Tribe of *Dan*, joyneth to *Ephraim*, whereof I spake last: of which Family there were numbred at Mount *Sinai* 62700. fighting men, all which leaving their bodies with the rest in the Desarts, there entred the Holy Land of their sons 66400. bearing arms. The first famous City in this Tribe on the Sea-coast was *Joppe*, or *Japho*, as in the 19. of *Joshua*: one of the most ancient of the World, and the most famous of others on that coast, because it was the Port of *Hierusalem*. From hence *Jonas* imbarcked himself when he fled from the service of God towards *Tharfs* in *Cilicia*. In the time of the *Macchabees* this City received many changes; and while *Judas Macchabees* governed the Jews, the *Syrians* that were garrisoned in *Joppe*, having their Fleet in the Port, invited 200. principall Citizens aboard them, and cast them all into the Sea: which *Judas* revenged by firing their Fleet, and putting the companies which sought to escape to the sword.

It was twice taken by the *Romanes*, and by *Cestius* the Lievetenant utterly burnt and mined. But in the yeer of Christ, 1250. *Lodowick* the French King gave it new Walls

Lib. 3. 1. 15. de  
bel. Jud. Solin.  
c. 47. Plin. l. 5.  
cap. 9.

2 Mac. 12.  
do bell. fact.

F. 244.

Hieron. in Mi-  
cham.

Lib. 21. c. 18.

1 Sam. 6. 1. 8.  
\* Or rather  
nor the City  
itself, but the  
great stone in  
the field upon  
which stone the  
Philistines  
set the Ark,  
the change  
being call'd  
from Eben, or  
Abeu, which  
signifieth a  
stone, to Abel  
which signifi-  
eth mourning.

a See in Neph.  
c. 7. §. 18. A. 11. 6.  
2 King 1.  
but was be-  
fied by Plin-  
metichus, the  
father of Pha-  
rao Necho for  
29 years to-  
gether, whence  
Jer. 25. 20.  
the words of  
the residue of  
Ahab, c. 10. wit,  
the greatest  
part having  
perished in  
this siege.

c. 1 Sam. 5. 4.  
d. 1 Mac. 9.  
1 Mac. 10.  
Jof. 19. 41.  
Jud. 13. 25.  
Eze. cap. 18. 2.

and Towers: It is now the *Turks*, and called *Jaffa*. There are certain Rocks in that Port, wherunto it is reported, that *Andromeda* was fastned with chains: and from thence delivered from the Sea-monster by *Perseus*. This fable (for so I take it) is confirmed by *Josephus*, *Solinus*, and *Pliny*. *Marcus Scaurus* during his office of *Ædileship*, threwed the bones of this Monster to the people of *Rome*. *S. Hierome* upon *Jonas* speaks of it indifferently.

The next unto *Joppa* was *Jamnia*, where *Judas Machabæus* burnt the rest of the Syrian Fleét: the fire and flame wherof was seen at *Hiernsalem*, 240 furlongs off. It had sometime a Bishops seat, faith *Will. of Tyre*; but there is no signe of it at this time, that such a place there was.

After *Jamnia* is the City of *Geth*, or *Gath*, sometime *Anthedon*, faith *Volatteran*. And so *Montanus* seems to understand it. For he sets it next to *Egypt*, of all the *Philistims* Cities, and in the place of *Anthedon*. But *Volatteran* gives neither reason nor authority for his opinion; for *Ptolomy* sets *Anthedon* far to the South of *Joppa*: and *Geth* was the first and not the last (beginning from the North) of all the great Cities of the *Philistims*: and about sixteen miles from *Joppa*: where *S. Hierome* in his time found a great Village of the same name. It was sometime the habitation and Seminary of the *Anakims*, strong and Giant-like men, whom *Josua* could not expell, nor the *Danites* after him; nor any of the *Israelites*, till *David* time: who slew *Goliath*, as his Captains did divers others not much inferiour in strength and stature unto *Goliath*.

*Roboam* the son of *Solomon* rebuilt *Geth*: *Ozias* the son of *Amazias* destroyed it again. It was also laid waste by *Anael* King of *Syria*. *Fulke* the fourth King of *Hiernsalem*, built a Castle in the same place out of the old ruins. Whether this *Geth* was the same that *Will. of Tyre* in the Holy war calls *Ibithim*, I much doubt: the error growing by taking *Geth* for *Anthedon*.

Nor far from *Geth* or *Gath* standeth *Bethfemes*, or the house of the Sun. In the fields adjoining to this City (as is thought) was the Ark of God brought by a yoke of two Kine, turned loose by the *Philistims*: and the *Bethfemites* presuming to look therein, there were slain of the Elders seventy, and of the people fifty thousand, by the ordinance of God. After which slaughter, and the great lamentation of the people, it was called the great \* *Abel*, faith *S. Hierome*. *Benedictus Theologus* findes three other Cities of this name; one in (a) *Nephtalim*: another in *Juda*: and another in *Issachar*. *Hieron* findes a fifth in *Benjamin*.

Keeping the Sea-coast, the strong City of *Accaron* offereth it self, sometime one of the five *Satrapies*, or Governments of the *Philistims*. *S. Hierome* makes it the same with *Cæsaria Palestine*. *Pliny* confounds it with *Apollonia*: It was one of those that defended it self against the *Danites* and *Idumeans*. It worshipped *Beel-zebub*, the god of Hornets or Flies. To which Idoll it was that *Abuziah* King of *Israel* sent to enquire of his health: whose messengers *Eliab* meeting by the way, caused them to return with a sorrowfull answer to their Master. This City is remembred in many places of Scrip-  
ture.

*Christiansus Schrot* placeth *Azotus* next to *Geth*, and then *Accaron* or *Ekron*. This *Azotus* or *Aslod*, was also an habitation of the *Anakims*, whom *Josua* (b) failed to destroy, though he once posselt their Cite. Herein stood a sumptuous Temple, dedicated to the (c) Idoll *Dagon*: the same Idoll which fell twice to the ground of it self, after the Ark of God was by the *Philistims* carried into their Temple: and in the second fall, it was utterly broken and defaced. Neer it was that famous (d) *Judas Machabæus* slain by *Bacchides* and *Alcinus* the Lieutenants of *Demetrius*. Afterward it was taken by *Jonathas*: and the rest of the Citizens being put to the sword, all that fled into the Temple of *Dagon*, were with their Idoll therein consumed with fire: neer which also he overthrew *Apollonius*.

*Gabinus* the Roman rebuilt it. It had a Bishops seat while Christianity flourished in those parts. But in *S. Hieroms* time it was yet a fair Village. And this was the last of the Sea-Towns within the Tribe of *Dan*.

The Cities which are within the Land Eastward from *Azotus*, and beyond the Fountain of *Ethiopia*, wherein *Philip* the Apostle baptized the Eunuch, are *Tyber*, or *Sarxa*, and *Ethbaol*, and between them *Casra Davis* neer *Hebron*: though this place where *Sampson* was born, may seem by the words, *Judg. 18. 12*. to be in the Tribe of *Judah*.

*Judah*, as the other also were bordering Towns between *Dan* and *Juda*.

After these within the bounds of *Juda*, but belonging to the *Danites*, they finde *Geder*, or as it is 1 *Mac. 15. Cedron*, which *Cendebeus* the Lievtenant of *Antiochus* fortified against the *Jews*, and neer which himself was by the *Maccabæes* overthrowen. 1 Mac. 15. 16.

Then *Modin* the Native City of the *Maccabæes*: and wherein they were buried, on whose Sepulchre the seven Marble Pillars, which were erected of that heighth, as they served for a mark to the Sea-men, remained many hundreds of yeers after their first setting up, as *Brochard* and *Breidenbach* witnesse.

There are besides these the City of *Cariatiarim*, that is, the City of the woods: seated in the border of *Juda*, *Benjamin*, and *Dan*, wherein the Ark of God remained twenty years in the house of *Aminadab*: till such time as *David* carried it thence to *Hiernsalem*. Of this place (as they say) was *Zacharias* the son of *Barachias*, or *Jehoiada*, who was slain between the Temple & the Altar: also *Urias*, whom *Joachim* King of *Hiernsalem* slaughter'd, as we finde in *Jeremy*. Many other places which they place in this Tribe, rather as I take it, upon presumption than warrant, I omit: as that of *Casbin* taken with great slaughter by *Judas Maccabæus*: and *Lechir*, whose King was slain by *Josua*, in which also *Amazias* was slain: The same which *Senacherib* took, *Ezekias* reigning in *Juda*. 1 Sam. 7. 1. & 2 Sam. 6. 2. 2 Chro. 24. 22. Jer. 26. 20. 2 Mac. 12. 13. Jof. 12. 11. 2 Reg. 14. 19.

Of other Cities belonging to this Tribe, see in *Josua* c. 19. from the ver. 41. where also it is added, that the *Danites* portion was too little for their number of Families: and therefore that they invaded *Lechem*, and inhabited it: which City, after amplified by *Philip*, the brother of *Herod Antipas*, was called *Cæsarea Philippi*, as before, and made the *Metropolis* of *Iturea*, and *Trachonitis*: of which coats this *Philip* was *Tetrarch*: but of this City see more in *Nephtalim*. In this Tribe there are no Mountains of fame.

It hath two Rivers or Torrents: the Northern-most riseth out of the Mountains of *Juda*: and passing by *Modin*, falleth into the Sea by *Sachrona*. The other hath the name of *Sorek* or *Sored*, whose banks are plentifull of Vines which have no seeds or stones: the wine they yeeld is red, of excellent colour, taste, and favour, &c. In this Valley of *Sorek*, which is so called from the River, inhabited *Dalila* whom *Sampson* loved. Hieron. in Esai. c. 1. Micah. 1. Broch. Bred. Jud. 16. 4.

## §. II.

### THE TRIBE OF SIMEON.

The Tribe of *Simeon* takes up the rest of the Sea-coast of *Canaan*, to the border of *Egypt*: who being the second son of *Jacob* by *Lea*, there were increased of that Family while they abode in *Egypt*, as they were numbred at Mount *Sinai*, 59300. able men, all which ending their lives in the *Desarts*, there entered the Land of Promise of their issues 22200. bearing arms, who were \* in part mixed with *Juda*, and in part severed, inhabiting a small Territory on the Sea-coast, belonging to *Edumæa*, of which the first City adjoining to *Dan*, was *Ascalon*. \* And therefore no marvel that divers places named

The *Reguli*, or petty Kings thereof, were called *Ascalonites*: of which *Volatteran* out of *Lambus*, in the History of the *Lydians*, reports, that *Tantalus* and *Ascalus* were the sons of *Hyemenus*: and that *Ascalus* being employed by *Acianus* King of the *Lydians*, with an Army in *Syria*, falling in love with a young Woman of that Country, built this City, and called it after his own name: The same hath *Nicolaus* in his History, faith *Volatteran*. Jof. 15. in the large portion of *Juda*, be reckoned in this Tribe: see Jof. 19. ver. 1. and 9. where thus much is expressly noted. Volat. Reg. 1. 11. f. 244.

*Diodorus Siculus* in his third Book remembreth a Lake neer *Ascalon*, wherein there hath been a Temple dedicated to *Dereto*, the Goddess of the *Syrians*; having the face of a Woman, and the body of a Fish: who, as I have said before in the story of *Ninur*, was the mother of *Semiramis*, feigned to be cast into this Lake, and fed and relieved by Doves. And therefore was the Dove worshipped both in *Babylonia* and *Syria*, of which *Tibullus* the Poet:

*Alba Palestina sanctæ Columbia Syre.*

The white Dove is for holy held in *Syria Palestine*.

It was one of the chiefest and strongest cities of the *Philistims*. It bred many leaped men



*Vol. ut supra.* men (saith *Volaterran*) as *Antiochus*, *Sofus*, *Cygnus*, *Dorotheus* the Historian, and *Artemidorus*, who wrote the story of *Bithynia*.

In *Afcalon*, as some say, was that wicked *Herod* born, that seeking after our Saviour, caused all the Male-children of two years old and under to be slain. In the Christian times it had a Bishop, and after that, when it was by the *Saladine* defaced, *Richard* King of England, while he made War in the *Holy Land*, gave it a new Wall and many buildings. *Ejus muros cum Saladinus diruisset*, *Richardus Anglorum Rex instauravit*, saith *Adrichomius*.

In *David's* time it was one of the most renowned Cities of the *Philistims*: for he nameth *Gath* and *Afcalon* onely, when he lamenteth the death of *Saul* and *Jonathan*: now speaking of the other three. Tell it not in *Gath*, nor publish it not in the streets of *Afcalon*: It is now called *Scaloue*. *Gabinus* restored it as he did *Azotus* and *Gaza*.

Next to *Afcalon* stood *Gaza*, or *Gazera*, which the Hebrews call *Hazza*, the Syrians, *Azan*, of *Azonus* (as they say) the son of *Hercules*. Other profane writers affirm, that it was built by *Jupiter*. *Pomp. Mela* gives the building thereof to *Cambyfes* the Persian: because belike he re-built it, and *Gaza* in the Persian tongue is as much to say, as Treasure. This *Gaza* was the first of the five *Satrapies* of the *Philistims*, and the South bound of the land of *Canaan* towards *Egypt*. But this City was far more ancient than *Cambyfes*, as it is proved by many Scriptures. It was once taken by *Caleb*: but the strength of *Anakims* put him from it. At such time as *Alexander Macedon* invaded the Empire of *Persia*, it received a Garrison for *Darius*: in despite whereof it was by the *Macedonians* after a long siege demolished, and was called *Gaza* of the Desert.

*Alexander Jannæus* King of the Jews, surprised it, and slew five hundred Senators in the Temple of *Apollo*, which fled thither for Sanctuary: but this *Gaza* was not set up in the same place again, to wit, on the foundations which *Alexander Macedon* had overturned, but somewhat neerer the Sea side: though the other was but two mile off. It was a Town of great account in the time of the *Macchabees*, and gave many wounds to the Jews till it was forst by *Simon*: of which he made so great account, as that he purposed to reside therein himself, and in his absence left *John* his Son and Successor to be Governour. In *Brochard* his time it was still a goodly City, and known by the name of *Gazara*.

At the very out-let of the River of *Beſor*, standeth *Majoma* the Port of *Gaza*: to which the privilege of a City was given by the great *Constantine*, and the place called *Constance*, after the name of the Emperours Son. But *Julian* the *Apostata* soon afterwards, making it subject unto them, and commanded it to be called *Gaza maritima*.

On the other side of *Beſor* standeth *Antbedon*, defaced by *Alexander Jannæus*, restored by *Herod*, and called *Agrippias*, after the name of *Agrippa*, the favourite of *Augustus*. Then *Raphia*, where *Philopater* overthrew the great *Antiochus*: and beyond it *Rhinocorra*, whose Torrent is known in the Scriptures by the name of \* the Torrent of *Egypt* till the *Septuagint* converted it *Rinocorra*: to difference it, *Es. 27. 12.* giving the name of the City to the Torrent that watereth it. *Plinie* call it *Rhinocolura*: and *Josephus* *Rinocorra*: (a) *Epiphanius* reports it as a Tradition, that at this place the world was divided by lot, between the three Sons of *Noah*.

Within the Land and upon the River of *Beſor* they place *Gerar*: which the Scripture placeth between *Kadeſh* and *Beer*. *Gen. 20. 1.* That it was neerer to the Wilderness of *Beerſheba*, it appears *Gen. 20. 31.* and therefore no marvell that as elsewhere *Beerſheba*, so sometime *Gerar*, be made the South bound of *Canaan*. It was of old a distinct Kingdom from the *Philistims* *Satrapies*: the Kings by one common name were called *Abimelechs*. *S. Hierome* saith that afterward it was called *Regio Salutaris*, the healthy Country: so that it was no marvel that *Abraham* and *Isaac* lived much in those parts. Of King *Aſa's* conquest of the Cities about *Gerar*, see *2 Chron. 14. 14.*

More within the Land was *Siceleg*, or *Tſiglak*, which was burnt by the *Amalekites*, when *David* in his flying from *Saul* to the *Philistims* had left his carriages there, but *David* followed them over the River of *Beſor*, and put them to the slaughter, and recovered the prey.

Next *Dabir* sometime *Cariath-Sepher*, the City of Letters, the University, as they say, or *Academie* of old *Palestine*. In *Saint Hierom's* time, it seems, it had the name of *Dabur*:

*Duma*: *Jof. 15. 49.* it is called *Urbs Samire*: from the name, as it seems, of some of the *Anakims*, as *Hebron* was called *Urbs Arbahi*. For even hence also were these Giants expelled. It was taken chiefly by *Othniel*, encouraged by *Caleb* promise of his Daughter *Jef. 11. 21.* in marriage: but that *Jofua* and the Hoast of *Israel* were at the surprise, it appears *Jof. 10. 49.* This City *Jof. 21. 15.* is named among those which out of *Simoon* and *Juda* were given to the *Levites*. And hence it seems they attribute it to this Tribe.

Besides these, there are many others in the Tribe of *Simoon*, but of less fame, as *Hajin*, of which *Jof. 19. 7.* which also *Jof. 21. 16.* is reckoned for one of the Cities of the *Levites*, given out of the portion of *Juda* and *Simoon*, (for which *Jonas* thinks *Hajham* is named *1 Chron. 6. 59.* though \* in the place of *Jofua* these two are distinguished) also *Tholad*, so named *1 Chron. 4. 29.* for which *Jof. 19. 4.* we have *Eltholad*, *Chatzar-Sufa*, so named, *Jof. 19. 5.* for which *Jof. 15.* we have *Chatzar-Gadda*, both names agreeing in signification: for *Gadda* is *Turma*, and *Sufa* *Equitatus*.

In the same places of *Jofua*, and of the *Chronicles*, *Chorma* is named, which they think to be the same with that of which *Num. 14. 45.* to which the *Amalekites* and *Canaanites* pursued the *Israelites*: But that *Chorma* cannot be in *Simoon*, nor within the Mountains of *Idumæa*. For *Israel* fled not that way: but back again to the Camp, which lay to the South of *Edumæa*, in the Desert.

The same places also name *Beerſheba* in this Tribe: so called of the Oath between *Abraham* and *Abimelec*: neer unto which *Hagar* wandered with her son *Ismael*. It was also called the City of *Isaac*, because he dwelt long there. While the *Christians* held the *Holy Land*, they laboured much to strengthen this place, standing on the border of the *Arabian Desert*, and in the South bound of *Canaan*. It hath now the name of *Gilelin*. The other Cities of *Simoon* which are named in the places of *Jofua*, and of the *Chronicles* above noted, because they help us nothing in story, I omit them. In the time of *Ezekia* King of *Juda*, certain of this Tribe being strengthened in their own Territories, passed to \* *Gedor*, as it is *1 Chron. 4. 39.* (the same place which *Jof. 15. 36.* is called *Gadera* and *Gederobaima*) which at that time was inhabited by the Issue of *Cham*: where they seated themselves: as also five hundred others of this Tribe, destroyed the Reliques of *Amalec* in the Mountains of *Edom*, and dwelt in their places.

The mountains within this Tribe are few, and that of *Sampſon* the chiefest: unto which he carried the Gate-post of *Gaza*. The Rivers are, *Beſor*, and the Torrent of *Egypt*, called *Shichar*, as is noted in *Aſſer*.

## §. III.

## THE TRIBE OF JUDA.

OF *Juda*, the fourth son of *Jacob* by *Lea*, there were multiplied in *Egypt* 74600. all which (Caleb excepted) perished in the Deserts. And of their sons there entered the Land of *Canaan* 7500. bearing arms. Agreeable to the greatness of this number was the greatest Territory given, called afterward *Judæa*: within the bounds whereof were the portions allotted to *Dan* and *Simoon* included. And many Cities named in those Tribes, did first, as they say, belong unto the Children of *Juda*: who had a kinde of Sovereignty over them: as *Succoth*, *Cariatharim*, *Lachis*, *Bethſemer*, *Tſiglag*, *Beerſheba*, and others. The multitude of people within this small Province (if it be meted by that ground given to this Tribe onely) were incredible, if the witness of the Scriptures had not warranted the report. For when *David* numbered the people, they were found five hundred thousand fighting men.

The Cities of *Juda* were many. But I will remember the chiefest of them: beginning with *Arad*, or *Horma*, which standeth in the entrance of *Judæa* from *Idumæa*: whose King first surprised the *Israelites* as they passed by the border of *Canaan* towards *Moab*, and took from them some spoyles, and many prisoners: who being afterward overthrown by the *Israelites*, the sons of *Keni*, the Kinsmen of *Mofes*, obtained a possession in that Territory: who before the coming of the *Israelites*, dwelt between *Madian* and *Amalek*.

Following this Frontier towards *Idumæa* and the South, *Ascensu* *Scorpionis*, or *Acrab*: him is placed: the next to *Arad*: so called because of *Scorpions*, which are said to be in that

that place: from which name of *Acrabbim*, *Hierome* thinks that the name of the *Eparchie*, called *Acrabathena*, was denominated: of which we have spoken in *Manasse*. On the South side also of *Judaea* they place the Cities of *Jagar*, *Dimona*, *Adada*, *Cedar*, *Abma*, *Jeihnam*, and *Afor*, or *Chafser*, most of them Frontier Towns.

And then *Ziph*: of which there are two places so called: one besides this in the body of *Juda*, of which the *Defart* and *Forrest* adjoining took name: where *David* hid himself from *Saul*. After these are the Cities of *Efron*, *Adar*, *Karkab*, and *Afemona*, or *Hamon*, of no great fame.

Turning now from *Idumea* towards the North, we finde the Cities of *Dama*, *Amah*, *Amam*, the other *Afor*, or *Chafser*, *Bebaloth*, and the two *Socboes*: of all which *Jos. 15.* also *Carioth*; by *Jos. 15. 25.* called *Kerioth*: whence *Judas* the Traitor was called *Il-carioth*, as it were a man of *Carioth*. Then *Heibam*, the abode of *Sampson*, which *Reboboam* re-edified. Beyond these, towards the North border, and towards *Elath*, *Heib*, is the City of *Jeihar*, or *Jathir*, belonging to the Levites. In Saint *Hierome's* time it was called *Jeihara*: and inhabited altogether with *Christians*: neer unto this City now that remarkable battell fought between *Asa* King of *Juda* and *Zara* King of the *Ammonites*, who brought into the field a Million of fighting men: and was notwithstanding beaten and put to flight: *Asa* following the victory as far as *Gerar*, which at the same time he recovered.

Not far from *Jeihar* standeth *Jarmuth*, whose King was slain by *Josua*, and the City overturned. Next unto it is *Maresa* the native City of the Prophet *Michea*: between it and *Odolla*, *Judas Macchabeus* overthrew *Gorgias*, and sent thence ten thousand *Dracmas* of silver to be offered for sacrifice.

*Odolla*, or *Haddan* it self, was an ancient and magnificent City, taken by *Josua*, and the King thereof slain. *Jonathan Macchabeus* beautified it greatly. Then *Ceila*, or *Kail*, afterward *Echela*, where *David* sometime hid himself: and which afterward he delivered from the assaults of the *Philistines*: neer which the Prophet *Abasene* was buried, whose monument remained, and was seen by *S. Hierome*.

Neer it is *Hebron*, sometime called the City of *Arbath*, for which the *Vulgar* hath *Cenharbe*: the reason of this name they give, as if it signified the City of four: because there four Patriarchs, *Adam*, *Abraham*, *Isaac*, and *Jacob*, were therein buried, but of *Adam* it is but supposed: and it is plain by the places *Jos. 14. 14.* and *15. 13.* and *20. 11.* that *Arbath* here doth not signifie four, but that it was the name of the Father of the Giants, called *Anakim*, whose son as it seems *Anak* was: and *Achimam*, *Shephai*, and *Talmai*, (whom *Caleb* expelled, *Jos. 15.*) were the sons of *Anak*, *Num. 13. 23.* The name of *Anak* signifieth *Torquem*, a chain worn for ornament; and it seems that this *Anak*, enriched by the spoils which himself and his father got, wore a chain of gold, and so got this name: and leaving the custom to his posterity, left also the name: so that in *Latine* the name of *Anakim* may not amiss be expounded by *Torquati*.

The City *Hebron* was one of the ancientest Cities of *Canaan*, built seven years before *TJoan*, or *Tamir*, in *Egypt*: and it was the head and chief City of the *Anakim*, whom *Caleb* expelled: to whom it was in part given, to wit, the Villages adjoining, and the rest to the Levites. It had a Bishop in the *Christian* times, and a magnificent Temple built by *Helen* the Mother of *Constantine*.

Not far hence they finde *Eleutheropolis*, or the free City, remembered often by Saint *Hierome*. Then *Eglon*, whose King *Dabir* associated with the other four Kings of the *Amorites*, to wit, of *Hierusalem*, *Hebron*, *Jarmuth*, and *Lachis*, besieging the *Gibeonites*, were by *Josua* utterly overthrown. From hence the next City offame was *Emaus*, afterward *Nicopolis*, one of the Cities of Government or *Presidencies* of *Judea*. In sight of this City, *Judas Macchabeus* (after he had formerly beaten both *Apollonius* and *Seron*) gave a thorough overthrow to *Gorgias*, Lieutenant to *Antiochus*.

In the year 1301. it was overturned by an earth-quake, saith *Ensebius*. In the *Christian* times it had a Bishops seat of the Diocese of *Casarea* of *Palestine*.

From *Emaus* toward the West Sea, there are the Cities of *Nabama*, *Bethdagon*, and *Gader*, or *Gedera*, or *Gederophajma*, of which, and of *Gederoth*, \* *Jos. 15. 36.* and *41.* Then *Valabius* keeps *Azecha*, to which *Josua* followed the laughter of the five Kings before named, a City of great strength in the Valley of (a) *Terebinth*, or *Twentine*, as the *Vulgar* reads, *1 Sam. 17. 2.* whence (as it seems) they set it neer unto *Soco*, and unto *Lebna* of the Levites.

Levites. It revolted from the subjection of the Jews, while *Joram* the son of *Josaphat* ruled in *Hierusalem*: And next unto this standeth *Maceda*, which *Josua* utterly destroyed.

On the other side of *Emaus* towards the East standeth *Bethsai*, otherwise *Bethsara*, and *Bethor*: one of the strongest and most fought for places in all *Juda*. It is seated on a high Hill; and therefore called *Bethsai* (the house on the Rock, or of strength.) It was fortified by *Roboam*, and afterward by *Judas Macchabeus*. *Lyfias* fortified it: and *Antiochus* \* *Antiochus* by famine, *Jonathas* regained it: and it was by *Simon* exceedingly fortified against the Syrian Kings.

*Bethleem* is the next unto it within six miles of *Hierusalem*, otherwise *Lehem*: sometime *Ephrata*; which name, they say, it had of *Caleb's* wife, when as it is so called by *Moses* before *Caleb* was famous in those parts, *Gen. 38. 16.* Of this City was *Abessan*, or *Ibzan*, Judge of *Israel* after *Jephthah*, famous for the thirty sons and thirty daughters begotten by him: *Elimelec* was also a *Bethleemite*, who with his wife *Naomi* sojourned in *Moad* during the famine of *Juda* in the time of the Judges, with whom *Ruth* the daughter-in-law of *Naomi* returned to *Bethleem*: and married *Booz*, of whom *Obed*, of whom *Isai*, of whom *David*. It had also the honour to be the native City of our Saviour *Jesus Christ*; and therefore shall the memory thereof never end.

In *Zabulon* of *Galilee* there was also a City of the same name: and therefore was this of four Saviours called *Bethleem Juda*.

From *Bethleem* some four or five mile standeth *Thebna*, the City of *Amos* the Prophet: and to this place adjoining is the City of *Bethzacarja*, in the way between *Bethsara* and *Hierusalem*: on whose Hills adjoining, the glorious guilt shields of *Antiochus* shined like lamps of fire in the eyes of the Jews. The City of \* *Bezek* was also neer unto *Bethleem*; which *Adoni-Bezek* commanded; who had during his reign tortured 70 Kings, by cutting off the joynts of their Fingers and Toes; and made them gather bread under his Table: but at length the same end befell himself by the sons of *Juda*, after they had taken him prisoner.

The rest of the Cities in this part (most of them of no great estimation) we may passe by, until we come to the magnificent Castle of *Herodium*, which *Herod* erected on a Hill, mounting thereunto with 200. Marble steps, exceeding beautifull and strong. And towards the Dead Sea, and adjoining to the *Defart* of *Jeruel*, between it and *Tekeza*, is that *Cirrus floridus*, where, in the time of *Jehosaphat*, the Jews stood and lookt on the *Moad*, *Ammonites*, and *Edomites*, mauling one another, when they had purposed to joy against *Juda*: neer which place is the Valley of blessing, where the Jews the fourth day after, solemnly came and blessed God for so strange a deliverance.

Now the Cities of *Juda* which border the Dead Sea, are these; *Aduran* beautified by *Roboam*; and *Tsohar*, which the *Vulgar* calleth \* *Segor*: so called, because *Lot* in his prayer for it, urged that it was but a little one: whence it was called *Tsohar*, which signifieth a little one: when as the old name was *Belah*, as it is *Gen. 14. 2.* In the *Romans* time it had a Garrison, and was called (as they say) *Pannier*: in *Hierom's* time, *Balexona*. Then *Engaddi*, or *Hen-gaddi*, first *Asafonhamar*: neer unto which are the Gardens of *Balsammus*, the best that the world had called *Opobalsammus*: the most part of all which Trees *Cleo-patra* Queen of *Egypt* sent for out of *Judea*, and *Herod*, who either feared or loved *Antiochus* her Husband, caused them to be rooted up, and presented unto her: which she re-planted neer *Heliopolis* in *Egypt*. This City was first taken by *Chedorloamer*, and the *Amorites* thence expelled. It was one of the most remarkable Cities of *Judea*; and one of the *Presidencies* thereof.

The rest of the Cities are many in the In-land, and among them *Jesrael*: not that which was the City of *Naboth*, of which already; but another of the same name, the City of *Achimam*, the wife of *David*, the mother of that *Amnon* whom *Abfalom* slew: also, as some think, the City of *Amasa*, *Abfaloms* Lieutenant, and the Commander of his Army: But this seemeth to be an error grounded upon the nearness of the words *Israel* and *Jesrael*: and because the *2 Sam. 17. 25.* *Amasa's* father is called an *Israelite*, who in the first of the *Chron. 2. 17.* is called an *Israelite*: indeed the Hebrew Orthography sheweth that *Amasa's* father is not said to be of the City *Jesrael*, but an *Israelite* in Religion, though otherwise an *Israelite*.

In this Tribe there were many high Hills and Mountains: as those of *Engaddi* upon the

Jos. 15. 8.  
1 Chron. 11. 6.  
Jas. out of the  
1 Chron. 4. 31.  
notes that  
this Heibam,  
though it  
were within  
the bounds of  
Juda, belong-  
ed to Simeon.  
Jof. 15. 48.  
Hieron. in loc.  
Hebr.

2 Macc. 12. 35.  
Gen. 38. 1.  
Jof. 12. 15.  
1 Sam. 23. 1.

Jof. 10. 11.  
Macc. 1. 3.  
Ensebius in Chron.  
Broch. lib. 6.  
\* Also 1 Chron.  
4. 39. as is a-  
bove remem-  
bered in the  
Tribe of Si-  
mon.  
a Junius, for in  
Velle Trebin-  
thi, hath in  
Velle quereci.  
Valabius keeps  
Azecha, to  
the Hebrew,  
reading in  
Velle Elab.

Hieron. in com.  
Jeser. Mat. c. 2.  
Matth. 2. 1.  
Amos 1. 1.  
1 Macc. 5. 32.  
Jof. ant. 12.  
c. 14.  
1 Macc. 5. 36.  
\* See in Ma-  
chab. c. 7. Jof. 7.  
ll. 1.

Jof. 14. ant. 22.  
2 Chron. 20. 15.  
8c. 25.

\* Chron. 11.  
\* Some call it  
Bal-sals and  
\* Tula conje-  
nant. See in  
Gal. 1. 10. Je. 5.  
p. 1. principium  
in Haroer.  
Gen. 19. 20.  
Hieron. in Offe.  
Hebr. Chafit-  
sa-thamar.  
2 Chron. 20. 2.  
Gen. 14. 7.

1 Reg. 21.

2 Sam. 17. 25.

the Dead Sea: and the Mountains of *Juda*, which begin to rise by *Emath*, and end near *Taphna*, and these part *Juda* from *Dan* and *Simeon*. Of others which stand single, there is that of *Hebron*, at the foot whereof was that Oak of *Mamre*, where the three Angels appeared to *Abraham*; which *Saint Hierome* calleth a Fir-tree, and saith, That it stood till the time of *Constantine* the younger. There is also that Mountain called *Colles Achille*, on the South of *Ziph*: on the top whereof the great *Herod*, inclosing the old Castle, erected by *Jonathan Macchabaeus*, and called *Masada*, garnished it with twenty seven high and strong Towers: and therein left Armour and Furniture for an hundred thousand men; being, as it seemeth, a place unaccessible, and of incomparable strength.

In the Valley afterward called the Dead Sea, or the Lake *Asphaltitis*, this Country had four Cities, *Adama*, *Sodom*, *Seboim*, and *Gomarra*, destroyed with fire from Heaven for their unnaturall sins.

§. IV.  
THE TRIBE OF REUBEN,  
and his Borderers.

||. I.

The seats and bounds of Midian, Moab, and Ammon, part whereof the Reubenites had from *Sehon King* of *Hefbon*.

ON the other side of the Dead Sea, *Reuben* the eldest of *Jacob's* sons inhabited: of whose children there were numbered at Mount *Sinai* 46000. who dying with the rest in the Desarts, there remained to possess the Land promised 43700. bearing arms. But before we speak of these, or the rest that inhabited the East side of *Jordan*, something of their borderers: to wit, *Midian*, *Moab*, and *Ammon*, whose Land in our writers are confusedly described, and not easily distinguished. And first we are to remember, that out of *Abraham's* kinsred came mighty Families: as by *Isaac* and *Jacob* the Nations called *Israel*, and afterward *Jews*: by *Esau*, or *Edom*, the *Idumeans*: by *Ismael*, the eldest son of *Abraham*, the *Ismaelites*: and by *Keturah*, his last wife, the *Midianites*. And again, by *Lot*, *Abraham's* brothers son, those two valiant Nations of the *Moabites* and *Ammonites*: all which being but strangers in the Land of *Canaan* (formerly possessed by the *Canaanites*: and by the Families of them descended) these issues and alliance of *Abraham*, all but *Jacob*, whose children were bred in *Egypt*, inhabited the frontier places adjoining.

*Esau* and his sons held *Idumaea*, which bounded *Canaan* on the South, *Ismael* took from the South-east part of the Dead Sea; stretching his possession over all *Arabia Petraea*, and a part of *Arabia* the Desert, as far as the River of *Tygris*, from *Sur* to *Havilah*.

*Moab* took the rest of the coast of the Dead Sea, leaving a part to *Midian*, and passing over *Arnon*, inhabited the Plains between *Jordan* and the Hills of *Abarim*, or *Arnon*, as far North as *Essebon*, or *Cherbon*.

*Ammon* sat down on the North-east side of *Arnon* and possessed the Tract from *Rahab*, afterward *Philadelphia*, both within the Mountains of *Gilead*, and without them as far forth as *Aroer*, though in *Moses* time he had nothing left him in all that Valley: for the *Amorites* had thrust him over the River of *Jaboc*, as they had done *Moab* over *Arnon*. As these Nations compassed sundry parts of *Canaan*, so the border between the River of *Jaboc* and *Danajon*, was held by the *Amorites* themselves, with other mixt Nations: all which Territory on the East side of *Jordan*, and on the East side of the Dead Sea, was granted by *Moses* to the Tribes of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and half *Manasse*: whereof that part which *Moab* had, was first possessed by the *Emims*, a Nation of Giants weakened and broken by *Chedorlahomer*, after repulsed by the *Moabites*, as before remembered. That which the *Ammonites* held, was the Territory and ancient possession of the *Zamzummims*, or *Zunai*, who were also beaten at the same time by *Chedorlahomer*, *Auraphel*, and the rest: and by them an easy way of conquest was prepared for the *Ammonites*.

Now where it is written, that *Arnon* was the border of *Moab*, the same is to be understood according to the time when *Moses* wrote. For then had *Sehon* or his Ancestor

beaten the *Moabites* out of the plain Countries, between *Abarim* and *Jordan*, and driven them from *Hefbon* over *Arnon*; and this hapned not long before *Moses* arrivall upon that border, when *Vabeb* governed the *Moabites*. For he that ruled *Moab* when *Moses* past *Arnon*, was not the son of *Vabeb*, but his name was *Balac*, the son of *Zippor*. And it may be that those Kings were elective, as the *Edumeans* anciently were.

Now, all that part of *Moab*, between *Arnon* and *Jordan*, as far North as *Essebon*, was inhabited by *Reuben*. And when *Israel* arrived there out of *Egypt*, it was in the possession of *Sehon*, of the race of *Canaan* by *Amoreus*: and therefore did *Jephthah* the Judge of *Israel* justly defend the regaining of those Countries against the claim of the *Ammonites*: because (as he alledged) *Moses* found them in the possession of the *Amorites*, and not in the hands of *Moab*, or *Ammon*: who (saith *Jephthah*) had 300. years time to recover *Jadg*. 11. them, and did not: whence he inferreth that they ought not to claim them now.

And lest any should marvel why the *Ammonites* in *Jephthah's* time should make claim to these Countries: whereas *Moses* in the place *Num. 21. v. 26.* rather accounts them to have been the ancient possession of the *Moabites*, than of the *Ammonites*: it is to be noted, that *Deut. 3. 11.* when it is said that the Iron bed of *Og* was to be seen at *Rabbath*, the chief City of the *Ammonites*, it is also signified, that much of the Land of *Og*, which the *Israelites* possessed, was by him or his Ancestors got from the *Ammonites*, as much of *Sebons* was from the *Moabites*.

And as the *Canaanite* Nations were seated so confusedly together, that it was hard to distinguish them; so also were the sons of *Moab* and *Ammon*, *Madian*, *Amalec*, and *Ismael*. Yet the reason seemeth plain enough why *Ammon* commanded in chief, in *Jephthah's* time; for sometime the one Nation, sometime the other of all those borderers acquired the Sovereignty: and again, that one part of the Land which *Gad* held, namely, within the Mountains of *Galaad*, or *Gilead*, and as far South as *Aroer*, belonged to the *Ammonites*. And therefore taking advantage of the time, they then sought how to recover it again. Yet at such time as *Moses* overthrew *Sehon* at *Jabaz*, the *Ammonites* had lost to the *Amorites* all that part of their possession which lay about *Aroer*, and between it and *Jaboc*: *Sehon* and *Og*, two Kings of the *Amorites*, having dislaid both *Moab* and *Ammon* of all within the Mountains. For it is written in *Numb. 21. 24.* that *Israel* conquered the Land of *Sehon* from *Arnon* unto *Jaboc*, even unto the children of *Ammon*: so as at this time the River of *Jaboc* was the South bound of *Ammon* within the Mountains, when as anciently they had also possessions over *Jaboc*, which at length the *Cadites* gotten lands out of the hands of the *Ammonites*.

||. II.

Of the memorable places of the Reubenites.

THE chief Cities belonging to *Reuben* were these, *Kedemoth*, for which the Vulgar, without any shew of warrant, readeth *Jethson*. The Vulgar or *Hierome* followed *Jethson*, those two Verses, 36. and 37. in *Jos. 22.* being wanting in the old Hebrew Copies, and the *Septuagint* readeth *Kedson* for *Kedmoth*, which *Kedson* by writing slip into *Jethson*.

This City which they gave to the Levites, imparts her name to the Desert adjoining: from whence *Moses* sent his Embassage to *Sehon*. In the same place of *Josua*, where this *Kedemoth* is mentioned, the Vulgar for *Beser* & *villa ejus*, reads *Bozor* in *Solitudine Misor*, without any ground from the Hebrew: whence *Adrichomius* makes a Town called *Misor*, in the border between *Reuben* and *Gad*. Farther from *Kedemoth*, near the Dead Sea (for the Countrie between being Mountainous, hath few Cities) they place two Towns of note, *Lasa* or *Leshab*, of which *Genesi 10. ver. 19.* The Greeks call it *Callirhoe*, where there is a Hill, from whence there floweth Springs both of hot and cold, bitter and sweet water: all which soon after their rising, being joynted in one stream, doe make a very wholesome Bath, especially for all contraction of sinews: to which *Herod* the elder, when he was desperate of all other help, repaired, but in vain. Others say, that these Springs arise out of the Hills of *Macherus*, in this Tribe. The like fountains are found in the *Pyrenes*, and in *Peru*, called the Baths of the *Indians*, or Kings. The other Town is *Macherus*, the next between *Lasa* and *Jordan*: of all that part of the world the strongest In-land City and Castle, standing upon a Mountain

Deut. 4. 43.  
Jof. 20. 8.  
E. Heb. in Chro.  
H. in loc. heb.

Num. 25. 1.

Jof. 13. 1.

Deut. 34. 1.

\* The same as it seems which Num. 21. 20. is called Medeba, whence we read of the plains of Medeba, Jof. 13. 9. 16. of which also we read in the wars of David against Hatan the Ammonite, 1 Chron. 19. 7. Also, 1 Mac. 9. 36. Jof. 16. 2. See before chap. 5. § 2. 7.

Jof. 1. 28.  
Jof. 7. 24.  
Jof. 1. 47.

Num. 15. 1.  
Exod. 25. 10.

Num. 31. 37.  
Gen. 14. 5.  
Num. 32.

\* Exod. 23. 13. Nomen deorum alienorum ne recordemini, ne audietis in ore tuo. Pſal. 26. 4. Non assumptus sum nomina eorum in labiis meis. Hof. 2. 17. Amalec nona Balaam nona ab ore eorum. What name they used for Aeb? it doth not appear: but Balaam it seems they named sometime Bajith, as Eſay 15. 2. and sometime Beth-meon, Eſay 48. 23.

every way unaccessible. It was first fortified by Alexander Jannæus, who made it a frontier against the Arabians; but it was demolished by Gabinius in the war with Aristobolus, saith Josephus. It was thither (saith Josephus) that Herod sent John Baptist, and wherein he was slain: his Army soon after being utterly overthrown by Arctas King of Arabia, and himself after this murder never prospering. Not far from Machærus was Boſor, or Boſra, a town of refuge, and belonging to the Levites, and near it Livias upon Jordan, which Herod built in honour of Livia, the mother of Tiberius Cæsar.

To the North of Livias is Setim, or Sittim: where the children of Israel embraced the daughters of Midian, or Moab: and where Phineas pierced the body of Zimri and Cozbi with his spear, bringing due vengeance upon them when they were in the midst of their sin; and from hence Josua sent the discoverers to view Jericho, staying here until he went over Jordan. As for the Torrent Setim, which in this place Adrichomius dreams of, reading Joel 3. 18. irrigabis torrentem Setim: The Vulgar hath torrentem spinarum: and Junius, vallem Cedronum: expounding it not for any particular place in Canaan: but for the Church, in which the just being placed, grow as the cedars, Pſal. 92. 13.

The plain Country hereabout, by Moses called, The plains of Moab, where he expounded the book of Deuteronomy to the people a little before his death, is in the beginning of the same book precisely bounded by Moses. On the South it had the great Desert of Paran, where they had long wandered. On the East it had Chatheroth, and Dizabab (of which two, the former is that Gaxorus, of which Ptolomy in Palestine: the later was in Tract belonging to the Nabathæi in Arabia Petrea, where was Mezabab, of which Gen. 36. 39.) by the Geographers called Medeva, and Medaba. On the West it had Jordan, and on the North it had Laban (in Junius edition, by the fault of the Print, Laban, Deut. 1. 1.) the same which the Geographers call Libias: and some confound it with Livias, of which even now we speak.

Also on the same North side towards the confines of Cælosyria, it had Theopoli: whereabout sometime Polla of Cælosyria stood: which was in the Region of Decapolis; and, as Stephanus saith, was sometimes called Buth. It is also noted in Moses to be over against or near unto Suph, for which the Vulgar hath the Red Sea, as also Num. 2. 14. it tranſlateth the word Suphah in like manner: whereas in this place of Deuteronomy there is no addition of any word in the Hebrew to signify the Sea: and yet the Scripture, when this word is so to be taken, useth the addition of Mara, thereby to distinguish it from the Region of Suph, or Suphah: which doubtless was about these plains of Moab towards the Dead Sea: where the Country being full of reeds, was therefore thus called: as also the Red Sea was called Mare Suph, for like reason.

The place in these large plains of Moab, where Moses made those divine exhortations, some say was Bethabara, where John baptized, which in the story of Gideon is called Beth-bara. Josephus says it was where after the City Abila stood, near Jordan, in a place set with Palm-trees: which sure was the same as Abel-sittim in the plains of Moab Num. 33. 49. (that some call Abel-sathaim, and Bel-sathim) which is reckoned by Moses in this place of Numbers for the 42. and last place of the Israelites incamping in the time of Moses: This place is also called Sittim: which word if we should interpret, we should rather bring it from Cedars than from Thorns, with Adrichomius and others. It was the wood of which the Ark of the Tabernacle was made.

Toward the East of these plains of Moab, they place the Cities, Nebo, Baal-meon, Sibma, and Hesbon the chief City of Sehon, and Elbale, and Kirithaima the seat of the Giants Emim. Of the two first of these Moses seems to give a note that the names were to be changed, because they tasted of the Moabites' Idolatry. For Nebo (in stead of which, Junius, Eſa. 46. 1. reads Deus vaticinus) was the name of their Idoll-Oracle, and Baal-meon, is the habitation of Baal. Of the same Idoll was the Hill Nebo in these parts denominated: from whose top, which the common Translators call Phajgab, Moses before his death saw all the land of Canaan beyond Jordan. In which story Junius doth not take Phajgab, or Pifgab for any proper name: but for an appellation, signifying a Hill: and so also Vatablus in some places, as Num. 21. 20. where he notes, that some call Pifgab that top which looketh to Jericho, and Hair as it looketh to Moab, which opinion may be somewhat strengthened by the name of a City of Reuben mentioned

mentioned

mentioned of Jos. 13. 20. called Asidoth-Pifga, which is as much as decursus Pifga: to wit, where the waters did run down from Pifga. In the same place of Josua there is also named Beth-Peor, as belonging to Renben: so called from the Hill Peor: from whence also Baal the Idoll was called Baal-Peor; which they say, was the same as Priapus: the chief place of whose worship seems to have been Bamoth-Bahal, of which also Jos. 13. in the Cities of Reuben: for which, Num. 22. 41. they read, the high places of Baal (for so the word signifieth) to which place Balaak first brought Balaam to curse the Israelites.

### || III.

Of divers places bordering Reuben, belonging to Midian, Moab, or Edom.

Here were besides these, divers places of note over Arnon, which adjoined to Reuben: amongst which they place Gallim, the City of Phalti: to whom Saul gave his daughter Michol from David: but Junius thinks this Town to be in Benjamin: gathering so much out of Eſa. 10. 29. where it is named among the Cities of Benjamin. With better reason perhaps out of Num. 21. 19. we may say that Mathana and Nabaliel were in those confines of Reuben: through which places the Israelites past after they had left the Well, called Beer: Then Delathaim, which the Prophet Hieremy threatneth with the rest of the Cities of Moab.

Madian also is found in these parts, the chief City of the Madianites in Moab: but not that Midian, or Madian by the Red Sea, wherein Jethro inhabited. For of the Madianites there were two Nations, of which these of Moab became Idolaters, and received an exceeding overthrow by a Regiment of twelve thousand Israelites, sent by Moses out of the Plains of Moab: at such time as Israel began to accompany their Daughters: their five Kings with Balaam the Soothsayer, were then slain: and their Regal City with the rest destroyed. The other Madianites, over whom Jethro was Prince or Priest, forgot not the God of Abraham their Ancestor; but relieved and assisted the Israelites in their painful travels through the Deserts: and were in all that passage their guides. In the South border of Moab adjoining to Edom, and sometime reckoned as the chief City of Edom, there is that Petra, which in the Scriptures is called Selah, which is as much as rupes, or petra. It was also called Jocheel, as appears by the place, 2 Kings 14. It was built (saith Josephus) by Recem, one of those five Kings of the Madianites: slain as before is said: after whom it was called Recem. Now, they say, it is called Crac, and Moxera: The Soldans of Egypt, for the exceeding strength thereof, kept therein all their treasures of Egypt and Arabia: of which it is the first and strongest City: the same perhaps which Pliny and Strabo call Nabathea, whence, also the Province adjoining took name: which name seems to have been taken at first from Nabajoth, the son of Abraham by Keturah. For Nabathea is no where understood for all Arabia Petrea (at least where it is not mis-understood) but it is that Province which neighboureth Judæa. For Pharan inhabited by Ismael, whose people Ptolomy calleth Pharanites, in stead of Ismaelites, and all those Territories of the Cufites, Madianites, Amalekites, Ismaelites, Edomites, or Idumeans, the Lands of Moab, Ammon, Eſa, Sin, and of Og King of Baſan, were parts of Arabia Petrea: though it be also true, that some part of Arabia the Desert belonged to the Amalekites, and Ismaelites: all which Nations the Scriptures in the first of Chronicles the fifth, calls Hagarens, or Hagar.

This City Petra, Scawm besieged with the Romane Army, and finding the place inſhew impregnable, he was content, by the persuasion of Antipater, to take a composition of monie, and to quit it. Yet Amasis King of Juda (after he had laughed ten thousand of the Arabians in the valley called Salinarum) was also this City. S. Hierome findes Rubh the Moabite to be naturall of this City. In the mean time, when the Chriſtians held the Kingdom of Hierusalem, it had a Latine Biſhop, having before been under the Greek Church. It is seated not far from Hor, where Aaron died, and on the other side towards the North is the river of Zared, or Zered, by which Moses encamped in the 38. station. Adrichomius describeth the waters of Memrim, or rather Newrim, in his Map of Reuben, not far hence, and between Zared and Arnon: and so he doth the Valley of Save: but the waters of Nimra, or Beth-Nimra (for which it seems Adrichomius writ Nemrim) refresh the plains of Moab: and the confluence of those waters of Nimra are in the Tribe of Gad. Save also cannot be found in this place, that is, to the South of Arnon, and under

under *Midian*. For after *Abraham* returned from the pursuit of the *Assyrian* and *Persean* Princes, the King of *Sodom* met him in the Valley of *Save*, or *Saveh*, which is the *King's Dale*, where *Abolom* set up his Monument, as it seems, not far from *Hiersusalem*. And at the same time *Melchizedec* King of *Salem* also encountered him. But *Abraham* coming from the North, and *Melchizedec* inhabiting either neer *Bethsan*, otherwise *Scythopolis*, in the half Tribe of *Manasse*, or in *Hiersusalem* (both places lying to the West of *Jordan*) could not encounter each other in *Arabia*: and therefore *Save*, which was also called the *King's Dale*, could not be in these parts.

## §. IV.

## Of the Dead Sea.

Now because the Sea of *Sodom*, or the *Dead Sea*, called also the Lake of *Alphaltit*, and the Salt sea (in distinction from the sea of *Tyberias*, which was fresh water) also the sea of the Wilderness, or rather the sea\* of the Plains, is often remembered in the Scriptures, and in this story also, therefore I think it not impertinent to speak somewhat thereof. For it is like unto the *Caspian* Sea, which hath no out-let, or disburthening. The length of this Lake *Josephus* makes 180. furlongs (which make 22. miles and a half of ours) and about 150. in breadth, which make 18. of our miles, and somewhat more. *Pliny* makes it a great deal less: but those that have of late years seen this sea, did account it (saith *Weissenburg*) eight Dutch miles (which is two and thirty of ours) in length, and two and a half of theirs (which is ten of ours) in breadth. Of this Lake or Sea, *Tacitus* maketh this report: *Lacus est in immenso ambitu, specie maris, sapore corruptior, gravitate odoris accolis pestifer: neque vento impellitur, neque pisces aut suas aquas volucres patitur, incertum unde superjecta aut solido feruntur, periti, imperitique nandi perinde attolluntur, &c.* That it is very great, and (as it were) a sea of a corrupt taste: of smell infectious, and pestilent to the borderers: it is neither moved nor raised by the winds, nor endureth fishes live in it, or fowl to swim in it. Those things that are cast into it, and the unskillful of swimming, as well as the skillful, are born up by this water. At one time of the year it calleth up *Bitumen*: the art of gathering which, Experience (the finder of other things) hath also taught. It is used in the trimming of ships, and the like businesses.

And then of the Land, he speaketh in this sort: The fields not far from this Lake, which were sometime fruitful, and adorned with great Cities, were burnt with lightning; of which the ruins remain, the ground looking with a sad face, as having lost her fruitfulness; for whatsoever doth either grow, or is set thereon, be it fruits or flowers, when they come to ripeness, having nothing within them, but moulder into ashes: Thus far *Tacitus*. And it is found by experience, that those *Pomegranates*, and other Apples or Oranges, which do still grow on the banks of this cursed Lake, do look fair, and are of good colour on the outside, but being cut, have nothing but dust within. Of the *Bitumen* which this Lake casteth up, it was by the *Greeks* called *Alphaltit*. *Vespasian* desirous to be satisfied of these reports, went of purpose to see this Lake, and caused certain Captives to be cast into it, who were not only unskillful in swimming, but had their hands also bound behind them, yet notwithstanding they were carried on the face of the waters, and could not sink.

## §. V.

Of the Kings of Moab, much of whose Country within *Arnon* *Reuben* possesseth.

Of the Kings of *Moab*, whose Country (within *Arnon*) *Reuben* possesseth (though not taken from *Moab*, but from *Sehon* the *Amorite*) few are known. *Junius* in the 21. of *Num.* v. 14. nameth *Vabeh*, which seems to be the Ancestor or Predecessor of *Balac*, the son of *Zipor*: which *Balac* sent for *Balaam* to curse *Israel*. For fearing to contend with *Moses* by arms, by the examples of *Sehon* and *Og*, he hoped by the help of *Balaam's* cursings or incantments, to take from them all strength and courage, and to cast on them some pestilent diseases. And though *Balaam* at the first, moved by the spirit of God, blest *Israel*, contrary to the hope and desire of *Moab*: yet being desirous in some sort to satisfy him, and to do him service, he advised *Moab* to send *Adianitish* women among the *Israelites*: hoping by them, as by fit instruments of mischief, to draw them to the Idolatry of the Heathen: but in the end, he received the reward of his falling from God, and of his evil counsel, and was slain among the rest of the Princes of *Midian*.

After

After these times the Kings of the *Moabites* are not named: saving that we finde in the first of *Chronicles* the fourth, that *Jokim*, and the men of *Chozabai*, and *Joah*, and *Sereph*, all being of the issue of *Juda*, sometime had the Dominion in *Moab*: but as it is written in the same Verse, These also are ancient things: to wit, as some expound it, Ver. 22. particulars of these mens governments are no where extant or remaining: or as others, because sure, these Families of *Juda* were once thus famous: but now their posterity choose rather to abide in *Babylon*, and be Clay-workers to the King there.

Then we finde *Eglon* King of *Moab*, who with the help of *Ammon* and *Amalec* mastered *Israel* and commanded them 18. years: which *Eglon*, *Ehud* slew in his own house, and 10. afterward 1000. of his Nation. What name the King of *Moab* had unto whom *David* fled fearing *Saul*, it doth not appear: or whether it were the same against whom *Saul* made war, it is not manifest, for neither are named. But in respect that this *Moabite* was an enemy to *Saul*, he received *David*, & relieved him; knowing that *Saul* fought his life. After this, *David* himself entered the Region of *Moab*, but not likely in the same Kings time: for he slaughtered two parts of the people, and made the third part tributary: whereupon it was said of *David*, *Moab is my wash-pot*, over *Edom* will I cast my shoe: meaning, that he would reduce them to such an abjection, and appoint them for base services: and that he would tread down the *Idumeans*.

The next King after *David's* time of the *Moabites*, whose name liveth, was *Mesha*: who falling from *Juda*, (perhaps in remembrance of the severity of *David*) fastened himself to the Kings of *Israel*, and paid tribute to *Ahab*, 100000. Lambs, and 200000. Rams with the wooll: who revolting again from *Israel* after the death of *Ahab*, was invaded by *Jehoram*, with whom joyned the Kings of *Juda* & *Idumea*: and being by these three Kings preft and broken, he fled to *Kir-hareseth*, as is else-where shewed. There is also mention made of the *Moabites* without the Kings name; when that Nation, assisted by the *Ammonites* and *Idumeans*, invaded *Jehoshaphat*: and by reason of some private quarrels among themselves, the *Moabites* and *Ammonites* set upon the *Idumeans*, and slaughtered them: and then one against another, so as *Jehoshaphat* had a notorious victory over them all, without either blood or wound. Also in the time of *Hieremy* the Prophet, there was a King of *Moab* which is not named, which was after *Mesha* of *Moab* many descents: for *Mesha* lived with *Jehoram*, and this *Moabite* in *Zedechia's* time, fourteen Kings of *Juda* coming between, who waited three hundred and odde years.

## §. V.

Of the memorable places of the *Gadites*, and the bordering places of *Ammon*.

The Territory adjoining to *Reuben*, is that of *Gad*: whereof all that part which joyned to the Mountains, was sometime in the possession of the *Ammonites*, as far to the South as *Arcoer*. Of the children of *Gad*, the seventh son of *Jacob* by *Zelpha*, the hand-maid of *Lea*, there parted out of *Egypt*, and died in the *Desarts*, 455. 50. and of their sons there entered the Land promised, 45000. bearing arms: from the half Tribe of *Manasse*, the River of *Jaboc* divided them: from *Reuben*, the Cities of *Herbon*, *Elbole*, and *Apphec*.

The chief City of *Gad* was *Arcoer*, which they make to be the same with *Ar*, or *Rabb*, both *Moab*, the great or commanding *Moab*. But the learned *Junius* attending diligently to those words of *Moses*, *Deut.* 2. 36. *Ab Harohero, que est in ripa fluminis Arnon, & civitate ipsa que est in flumine*; Where the city in the river is distinguished from the city upon the bank of the river, as also in like manner (*Jos.* c. 12. v. 2. and c. 13. v. 9.) thinketh that *Harober*, which doubtlesse belonged to the *Gadites* (as *Numb.* 32. 34. it is said that they built so it) was indeed seated neer *Har* of the *Moabites*, but divers from it. For that *Har* was never possess'd by *Moses*, it is plain *Deuteronomy* 2. 9. where God forbidding *Moses* to touch it, saith he hath given *Har* for an inheritance to the sons of *Lot*. Now that this City, which in divers places is said to be within, and in the middle of the River of *Arnon* (and so distinguished from *Harober*, which is said in the same places to be on the bank of *Arnon*) is *Har* of the *Moabites*, the same *Junius* proveth out of *Numbers*, c. 21. v. 15. where *Arnon* is said to be divided into divers streams, where or among which *Har* is seated: And the same is confirmed by the place of *Jos.* 13. ver. 25. where *Harober* is said to be seated before *Rabbah*: which *Rabbah*, as it seems, cannot be the

\* So *Junius* reads for the *Hebrew*, *Har*, both every where and so also the edition of *Vatablus*. *Deut.* 3. 17. though *Deut.* 4. 44. it hath more *solutudin*, as also 2 *Reg.* 14. 25. the reason of this name seems to be, because it joyns to the plains of *Moab*, which are called *Har* both *Moab*. *Deut.* 34. 1. as also we have *Cajus* in *Herab*, that is in the plains, to wit, of *Zabulon*, 1 *Mac.* 9. 2. whence *Adrichomius* imagines a city in *Zabulon*, called *Arab*. a *Defer.* ter. *Sand*.

*Num.* 1. 22. 23, 24. *Jos.* 24.



Rabbah of the Ammonites (for they fear not Haroher neer it, nor in sight of it) and therefore by Rabbah here, we must understand Rabbah of Moab, which they make to be *Arger* Har: and so we must needs distinguish it from Haroher. And as for \* Har (which also gave the name to the coast adjoining) it seems it continued in the possession of the Moabites, after they had once expelled the Giant-like people called *Emims*, first weakened by Chedorlamer and his Associates: but Haroher by the interchange of times suffered many ancient changes, as being won from the Moabites by *Sehon*, and from him by the *Israelites*, and from them, as it seems in the story of *Jephtha*, by the Ammonites: and from the Ammonites again by the *Israelites*, under the conduct of *Jephtha*. In *S. Hieron's* time the greatest part of this City perished by an earth-quake, as also *Zoar*, in which *Lot* saved himself in the destruction of *Sodom*, seated not far hence; which, they say, was therefore called *Vitula conseruans*, because as a wanton tumbling heifer, he was thrice overthrown with earth-quakes: for which cause also *Hierome* seems to think that this *Zoar* was called *Saliffa*, or *Bal-Saliffa*, as if *Baal* had been a remainder of the old name *Balah*, or *Belah*, (of which *Gen. 14. 2.* and *Saliffa*, which hath a signification of the ternary number, had alluded to the three earth-quakes.

*Brochard* takes *Haroher* to be *Petra*, but erroneously, as before it is noted; seeing that *Petra* was in the South border of *Moab* adjoining to *Edom*, whereas *Haroher* is in the North-East border. Between *Haroher* and *Jordan* they fear *Dibon*, which is attributed to the *Gadites*, because they are said to have built it, *Numbers 32. 34.* though *Josua 13. 20. verse 17.* it is said that *Moses* gave it to the *Reubenites*. Of this City among the rest of *Moab*, both *Efay* and *Hieremy* prophesied; that it should perish, and the Lakes about it run with the blood of the Inhabitants. It was a great Village near *Arnon* in *Saint Hieron's* time.

Keeping the banks of *Arnon*, one of the next Cities of fame to *Aroer*, was *Beith-rabbah*, of which *Efay* prophesieth, That the waters thereof should be dried up: and all the roads of *Moab* withered. Not far from *Beith-rabbah* in this Tribe, *Adrichomim* placeth *Jogtha*, and *Nobach*, or *Nobe*: of both which we read in the story of *Gideon*: and that *Jogtha* was in *Gad*, built by the *Gadites*, it appears, *Numbers 32. 35.* and therefore *Nobach* also must needs be in these parts; but whether in *Gad* or *Manasse* it is not certain: only so that it was anciently called *Kenath*, *Moses* witnesseth. *Nobach* also (saith he) went and took *Kenath* with her Towns, and called it *Nobach* of his own name, where because the Verses precedent speak of the *Manassites*, and because it is not likely that *Moses* would have feared this fear of the *Gadites* from the rest, of which he spake before, *ver. 34. 35. 36.* therefore it may seem that this \* *Nobach* was in that part of *Manasse* which was in the East of *Jordan*, though *Adrichomim* place it in *Gad*. For whereas he suppoeth it to be the same with *Nob*, which *Saul* destroyed, of this we shall speak (a) in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. And as for that *Karkor*, where *Zebah* and *Zalmunrah* rested themselves in their flight from *Gideon*, to which place *Gideon* marched through this *Nobach* and *Jogtha*, though some place it in *Gad*, and make it the same with *Kir-chares*, of which *Efay 15.* and *2 Reg. 3. 25.* yet there can be no certainty that it was in *Gad*: and if it be the same with *Kir-chares*, it is certain, that it was still a principall City held by the *Moabites*, and not in the Tribe of *Gad*.

In the body of this Tribe of *Gad* they place *Hataroth*: of which name the Scripture witnesseth that two Cities were built by the *Gadites*; the former simply called *Hataroth*, the later *Hataroth-Sophan*: for which later the vulgar makes two Cities, *Rab* and *Sophan*: the name *Hataroth*, is as much as *Corona*.

In the Valley of the Kingdom of *Sehon*, together with *Beth-nimrah*, of which we have spoken, *Jos. 12. 27.* nameth *Beth-haram* and *Succoth*: the former, *Numb. 32. 36.* (where it is called *Beth-haram*) together with *Beth-nimrah*, is said to have been built by the *Gadites*, which (perhaps the rather, because in *Josua* it is called *Beth-haram*) some take to be *Beitaranpitha*, (of which (b) *Josaphat* after by *Herod* called *Julias*. But whether this *Beitaranpitha* were corrupted from *Beth-haram*, or from *Beth-Aramatha* (of which *Aramatha* there is mention in (c) *Josaphat*) or from *Beth-Rumphan* (of which *Rumphan*, an Idol of those Countries, we read, *Abd. 7. 45.* and to which *Junius* refers the name of the City *Rephan*, *1 Machab. 37.*) of this question it were hard to resolve. But touching *Julias* (according to *Josaphat*, sometimes *Beitaranpitha*) the same *Josaphat* placeth in the Region of *Persea*, beyond *Jordan*, which *Regio Persea*, as the Greek word signifieth, it

no more than *Regio ulterior*, the Countrey beyond the River; and therefore they which labour to set down the bounds of this *Persea*, take more pains than needs. Fourteen Villages this *Julias* had belonging unto it, according to *Josaphat*. He makes it to have been built by *Herod Antipater*, and named *Julias*, in honour of the adoption of *Livia Augustus* his wife into the *Julian* Family: by which adoption she was called *Julia*. Another *Julias*, he saith was built by *Philip* the brother of *Herod*, in the lower *Gaulanitis*, which, he saith, is the same as *Bethaida*.

Upon the Sea of *Galilee*, neer to *Julias* in *Persea*, (that is, in the Region over *Jordan*) they finde *Peteezobra*, as it is called in *Josaphat*, for *Beth-zobab*; which is as much as *domus filij*. Of a noble woman of this City, which for safeguard in the time of War with the *Romans*, came with many others into *Hierusalem*, and was there besieged. *Josaphat* in the place noted, reports a lamentable History; how for hunger she eat her own child, with other tragical accidents hereupon ensuing.

Of *Succoth* (which we said *Jos. 13.* is placed with *Ben-haran*, in the Valley of the Kingdom of *Sehon*) it is plain by the story of *Gideon* that it is inserer unto *Jordan*: where it is said, that as he was past *Jordan* with his three hundred, wearie in the pursuit of *Zebah* and *Zalmunrah*, he requested relief of the men of *Succoth*: who denying him, and that with contempt, in *Gideon's* return were by him tortured, as it seems under a threshing-car or *Tribulum*, between which and their flesh he put Thorns to teare their flesh as they were preft and trod under the *Tribulum*, and after which fort also *David* used some of the Ammonites, though not with Thorns, but with Iron teeth of the *Tribulum*. As for the name of *Succoth*, which signifieth such Tabernacles as were made in haste, either for Men or Cattell, *Moses*, *Gen. 33. 17.* witnesseth that the original of the name was from such harbours, which *Jacob* in his return from *Mesopotamia* built in that place: as also the place beyond the *Red Sea*, where the children of *Israel*, as they came from *Rameses* in *Egypt*, had their first Station, was upon like reason called *Succoth*; because there they set up their first Tabernacles or Tents: which they used after for forty years in the Wilderness. In remembrance whereof the Feast of *Succoth*, or Tabernacles, was instituted.

Other four Cities of *Gad* are named *Jos. 21. 38.* *Ramoth* in *Gilead*, *Macchanaim*, *Cheshbon*, and *Jabzer*, all of them by the *Gadites* given to the *Levites*, of which *Jabzer*, as *Cheshbon*, or *Heshbon* was a chief City of *Sehon*, whence *Num. 32. 1.* his Countrey is called the Land of *Jabzer*. It was taken by *Moses*, having first sent spies to view it. In the first of the *Chronicles* it is made part of *Gilead*. In latter times (as it may be gathered by the Prophecy of *Efay* touching *Moab*) it was possessed by the *Moabites*: to which place of *Efay*, also *Hieremy* in a like prophecy alludes. It was at length regained (but as it seems from the Ammonites) by *Judas Macchabaeus*: as it is *1 Macc. 5. 8.* where *Judas* out of *Josaphat*, reads *Jabzer*, though the Greek hath *Gazer*. For *Gazer*, or *Gexer* (as he gathered it out of *Jos. 16. 3. & 8.* and *Jud. 1. 29.*) was far from these Countries of *Sehon*, seated in the West border of *Ephraim*, not possessed by the *Israelites*, until *Solomon's* time, for whom the King of *Egypt* won it from the *Canaanites*, and gave it him as a Dowrie with his Daughter.

Of *Cheshbon* it may be marvelled that in the place of *Josua*, and *1 Chron. 6. 81.* it should be said to have been given to the *Levites* by the *Gadites*, seeing *Jos. 13. 17.* it is reckoned for a principall City of the *Reubenites*: *Adrichomim*, and such as little trouble themselves with such scruples, finding *Cashbon*, *1 Mac. 5. 36.* among the Cities of *Gilead*, taken by *Judas Macchabaeus*, makes two Cities of one: as if this *Cashbon* had been the *Cheshbon* of *Gad*, and that of *Reuben* distinct from it: but the better reconciliation is, That it being a bordering City, between *Gad* and *Reuben*, was common to both; and that the *Gadites* gave their part to the *Levites*, for so also it seems that in like reason *Dibon* is said in one place built by the *Gadites*, and in another given to *Reuben*: as before is noted. Of *Macchanaim*, which word signifieth a double Army, we read *Gen. 32. 2.* that it was therefore so called, because the Angels of God in that place met *Jacob* in manner of another Host or company, to joyne with his for his defence: as also *Lv. 2. 13.* we read of a multitude of the Host of Heaven, which appeared to the Shepherds, at the time of our Saviours birth: and so unto the godly King *Oswald* of Northumberland, when he was soon after to joyne battell with the *Pagan Penda* of middle-England, *Beda* reports, that the like comfort appeared: whence the Field where the Battell





The reason why he tendered so hard a composition, was (besides this desire to bring shame upon Israel) because those *Gileadites* using to carry a Target on their left arms, which could not but shadow their left eyes, should by losing their right, be utterly disabled to defend themselves: but *Saul* came to their rescue, and delivered them from that danger. This *Nabab*, as it may seem, became the confederate of *David*, having befriended him in *Saul's* time, though *Josephus* thinks that this *Nabab* was slain in the battle, when *Saul* raised the siege of *Jabes*, who affirmeth that there were three Kings of the *Moabites* of that name.

*Jabes*, that is, the men of *Jabes*: *Thob*: *Thob*: a small Territory under *Ammon* hills. *Rebo* is another between *Hezer* and *Sidon*, in the North bound of *Canaan*, Num. 13. 22. of which see in the tribe of *Asser*. Hier. 40. & 41. 2 Chron. 20. 2 Chron. 26.

*Hamun* succeeded *Nabab*: to whom when *David* sent to congratulate his establishment, and to confirm the former friendship which he had with his father, he most contemptuously and proudly cut off the Ambassadors garments to the knees, and shaved the half of their beards. But afterward, notwithstanding the aids received from the *Ammonites*, subject to *Adadazer*, and from the *Reguli* of *Rehob*, and *Maacab*, and from *Jabes*, yet all those *Arabians*, together with the *Ammonites*, were overturned: their chief City of *Rabba*, after *Philadelphus*, was taken; the Crown which weighed a talent of gold, was set on *David's* head; all such as were prisoners, *David* executed with strange severity; for with saws and harrows he tare them in pieces, and cast the rest into lime-hills. *Jasaphat* governing *Juda*, they assisted the *Moabites* their neighbours against him, and perished together. *Ozias* made them Tributaries, and they were again by *Jotham* informed to continue that tribute, and to increase it, to wit, a hundred talents of silver, ten thousand measures of wheat, and ten thousand of barley: which the *Ammonites* continued two years.

The fifth King of the *Ammonites*, of whose name we read, was *Baalis* the confederate of *Zedekiah*: after whose taking by *Nabuchodonosor*, *Baalis* sent *Ismael*, of the blood of the Kings of *Juda*, to slay *Gedaliah*, who served *Nabuchodonosor*.

## §. VII.

Of the other half of Manasse.

The rest of the Land of *Gilead*, and of the Kingdom of *Og* in *Basan*, with the land of *Hus* and *Argob*, or *Trachonitis* (wherein also were part of the small Territories of *Batania*, *Gaulonitis*, *Gessuri*, *Machati*, and *Awranitis*) was given to the half Tribe of *Manasse* over *Jordan*; of which those three later Provinces defended themselves against them for many ages. But *Batania* *Ptolomy* setteth farther off, and to the North-East, as a skirt of *Arabia* the Desert: and all those other Provinces before named with *Penua*, *Dead Sea*, he makes a part of *Arabia Petraea*: for many of these small Kingdoms take not much more ground than the Country of *Kent*.

\* Another territory adjoining to *Manasse* whose limits were confounded with some of these, was that of *Tephthai* the country of *Elion*, as it is, 1 Kin. 16. 1. and of *Tebai*: *Teb*: 1. 2. To lay on the East to the Tribe of *Neft*, on the right hand of it, as in *Teb*: 1. 2. and was possessed by Colonies of the *Israelites* in the time of *Saul*, after his victory over the *Amalekites* and *Israhelites* in those parts, as it is gathered out of 1 Chr. 5. 10. whence it appears, that it was part of *Israhel*, of which chap. 7. 1. §. 8. 6.

So they call them of *Machath*, of which *Machath* somewhat hath been spoken toward the end of the fifth Paragraph of this Chapter, see the 1 Mac. 5. 36. and *Deut*: 3. 14. and *Jos*: 12. 5. 13. Anciently, as it seems, it was called *Tephthai*. See above in the bounds of *Manasse* in this Chapter, Sect. 4. §. 2. d. 1 Mac. 5.

*Basan*, or, after the *Septuagint*, *Basaniitis*, stretcheth it self from the River of *Jabes* to the (a) *Machati* and *Gessuri*: and from the mountains to *Jordan*, a Region exceeding fertile; by reason whereof it abounded in all sorts of Cattell. It had also the goodliest woods of all that part of the world: especially of oaks, which bare mast (of which the Prophet *Zacharias*; *Howe*, *O ye oaks of Basan*) and by reason hereof they bred foamy swine, as (b) 2000. in one herd were carried headlong into the Sea, by the unclean spirits which *Christ* had cast out of one of the *Gadarens*. It had in it 60. Cities walled and defended: all which, after *Og* and his sons were slain, *Jair*, descended of *Manasse*, conquered, and called the Country after his own name, *Avoth Jair*, or the Cities of *Jair*.

The principal Cities of this half Tribe (for I will omit the rest) are these, *Pella*, sometimes (c) *Eutis*, otherwise *Berenice*; by *Seleneus* King of *Syria*, it is said to have been called *Pella*, after the name of that *Pella* in *Macedon*: in which both *Philip* the Father, and his Son, *Alexander* the great, were born. It was taken, and in part demolished by *Alexander jannaeus*, King of the *Jews*, because it refused to obey the *Jews* laws: but it was repaired by *Pompey*, and annexed to the Government of *Syria*. It is now but a Village, saith *Niger*. *Carnaim*, by the River of *Jabes*, taken by (d) *Judas Macchabeus*: where the

for on fire the Temple of their Idols together with all those that fled thereunto for Sanctuary; and near it they place the Castle of *Carnaim*, of which 2 Mac. 12. 22. Then the strong City of (f) *Ephron* near *Jordan*: which refusing to yield passage to (g) *Judas Macchabeus*, was forced by him by assault, and taken and burnt with great slaughter.

*Jabes Gilead*, or *Jabes*, was another of the Cities of this half Tribe, which being besieged by *Nabab* (h) King of the *Ammonites*, was delivered by *Saul*, as is (i) elsewhere mentioned. In memory whereof these Citizens (k) recovered, embalmed and buried the bodies of *Saul* and his sons: which hung despoightfully over the walls of *Bethsan*, or to *Sepphoris*. (l) *Gaddara*, or *Gadara*, is next to be named, seated by *Phny* on a Hill near the River *Hieromiac*, which River *Ortelius* seems to think to be *Jaboc*. At the foot of the Hill there spring forth also hot baths, as at *Maacharus*. *Alexander Jannaeus* after ten months siege, won it, and subverted it. *Pompey* restored it and *Gabinus* (m) made it one of the five Courts of Justice in *Palestine*. *Hierusalem* being the first, *Gadara* the second, *Emath*, or *Amathus* the third, *Hierico* and *Sepphora* in *Gallie*, the fourth and fifth. The Citizens impatiently bearing the tyranny of *Herod*, surnamed *Ascalonita*, accused him to *Julius Caesar* of many crimes: but perceiving that they could not prevail, and that *Herod* was highly favoured of *Cesar*, fearing the terrible revenge of *Herod*, they slew them selves: some by strangling, others by leaping over high Towers, others by drowning themselves.

To the East of *Gadara* they place *Sebei* (o) in which, *Jos. ant. 5. 13*. saith, *Sepphtha* was buried: whence others reading with the *Vulgar*, *Jud. 12. 7*. *Septulus est in Circoate sua Gilead*, (for in una Civitatum *Gilead*) imagine *Gilead* to be the name of a City, and to be the same with *Sebei*. In like manner following the *Vulgar*, 1 Mac. 5. 26. where it readeth *Caphor* for *Chesbon*; the same *Adrichomius* imagineth it to be *ampla & firma Gileaditarum Civitas*: of so one City *Herbon*, or *Chesbon*, which they call *Essebon*, the chief City of *Sehon*, in the Tribe of *Reuben*, he imagineth two more: This *Caphor* in *Manasse*, and a City in *Gad* which he calleth *Carbon*, of which we have admonished the Reader heretofore. Of *Gamala* (so called, because the Hill on which it stood, was in fashion like the back of a Cammell) which *Josephus* placeth not far from *Gadara*, in the lower *Gaulanitis* over against *Tarichea*, which is on the West side of the Sea or Lake of *Tiberias*, see this *Josephus* in the fourth book of the Jewish war: where he describes the place by nature to be almost invincible: and in the storie of the siege, shewes how *Josephus* with much danger of his own person, entering it, was at first repulsed, with other very memorable accidents: and how at length, after the coming of *Titus* when it was taken, many leaping down the rocks with their wives and children, to the number of five thousand, thus perished: besides four thousand slain by the *Romans*: so that none escaped, save only two women that hid themselves.

About four miles West from *Gadara*, and as much East from *Tiberias* (which is on the other side of the Lake) *Josephus* placeth *Hippus*, or *Hippene*, whence *Ptolomae* gives the names to the hills that compass the plains in which it standeth: so that it may seem to have been of no small note. It is seated far from the hill Country: on the East of the Lake, as also *Pliny* noteth, lib. 5. cap. 15. It was restored by *Pompey*: after by *Augustus* added to *Herods* Tetrarchie: it was wasted by the *Jews*, in the beginning of their rebellion: when by many massacres of their Nation, they were enraged against their borders.

The next City of note, but of more ancient fame, is *Edrehi*, or *Edrai*, wherein *Og* of another King of *Basan* chiefly abode, when *Moses* and *Israel* invaded him: and near unto this his Regal City, it was that he lost the battell and his life. It stood in *S. Hieronim's* time: and had the name of *Adar*, or *Adara*. Not far from these townes near *Jordan*, in this valley, stood *Gerasa*, or *Gergefa*, inhabited by the *Gergefites*, defended of the fifth son of *Canane*. Of these *Gergefites* we read *Mar. 8. 28*. that *Christ* coming from the other side of the Lake of *Tiberias*, landed in their coasts: where casting the Devils out of the possessed, he permitted them to enter into the herd of *Hogges*: in which story, for *Gergefiter*, or *Gergefins*, *S. Luke* and *S. Marke* have *Gadarens*: not as if these were all one (for *Gergefa*, or *Gerasa* is a distinct Townie in these parts from *Gadara*) but the bounds being confounded, and the Cities neighbours, either might well be named in this story. This City received many changes and calamities: of which *Josephus* hath often mention.

Mark 8.

tiop. For besides other adventures, it was taken by *L. Annus*, Lieutenant to *Vespasian*, and 1000. of the ablest young men put to the sword, and the City burnt. In the year 1120. it was rebuilt by *Baldwine King of Damascus*: and in the same year recovered by *Baldwine de Burgo King of Jerusalem*: and by him utterly razed. Neer unto *Gersa* is the village of *Magedan*, or, after the *Syriack*, *Mageda*, or, after the *Greek*, *Magdala*, where the *Pharisees* and *Sadducees* desired of our Saviour a signe from Heaven: the same place, or some adjoining to it, which *S. Mark* calleth *Dalmanutha*. By the circumstances of which story it appears, that this coast lay between the Lake of *Tiberias* and the Country of *Decapolis*. *Brochard* makes both these places to be one; and finds it to be *Phile*, the fountain of *Jordan*, according to *Josephus*: but this *Phile* is too far from the Sea of *Galilee*, and from *Bethsaida*, to be either *Magdala* or *Dalmanutha*. For as it appears by the story, not far hence, towards the North, was the *Desart of Bethsaida*, where *Christ* filled 5000. people with the five barley loaves and two fishes.

On the North of this *Bethsaida*, they place *Julias*, not that which was built by *Héro*, but the other by *Philip*, which boundeth the Region *Trachonitis* towards the South. It was sometime a Village, and not long after the birth of *Christ*, it was compassed with a wall by *Philip the Tetrarch of Iturea and Trachonitis*: and after the name of *Julia*, the wife of *Tiberias*, called *Julias*, as hath been further spoken in the Tribe of *Gad*: where it was noted that *Josephus* makes this *Julias* to be the same as *Bethsaida*. Upon the East side of the same Lake of *Tiberias* stands *Corozaim*, or *Corazim*, of which *Christ* in *Matth.* them; *Woe be unto thee Corazim*.

But the principall City of all these in ancient time was *Asteroth*: sometime peopled with the *Giants Raphaim*: and therefore the Countrey adjoining called the Land of *Giants*, of whose race was *Og King of Basan*. In *Genesis* this City is called *Asteroth of Canaan*, whence 1 *Mac.* 5.26. it is called simply *Carnaim*, as *Jos.* 13.21. it is called *Asteroth*, without the addition of *Carnaim*. The word *Carnaim* signifieth a pair of Horns, which agree well with the name of their Idoll *Asteroth*, which was the image of a sheep, as is elsewhere noted, that *Asteroth* in *Deuteronomy* signifieth sheep. Others, from the ambiguity of the Hebrew take *Karnaim* to have been the name of the people which inhabited this City: and expound it *heros* \* *radiantes*. For of old the *Raphe* which inhabited this City (*Gen.* 14.5.) were Giant-like men, as appears by comparing the words *Deut.* 3.11. *Og ex residuo giganteum*, with the words *Jos.* 13.12. *Og ex reliquis Rapharum*: but if the *Karnaim* (or *Carnajim*) were these *Raphe*, the word would not have been in the duall number: neither would *Moses* in the place of *Genesis* have said the *Raphe* in *Asteroth* of the *Karnaim*, but either the *Raphe* in *Asteroth* of the *Raphe*, or some other way fittest for periphrasy: for this naming of both thus in the same clause, distinguisheth one from the other.

Not far from *Asteroth*, *Adricomius* out of *Brochard* and *Breidenbachius* placeth *Cela* in the way out of *Syria* into *Galilee*, foure miles from *Corazim*. This City (saith he) is remembered in the *Canticles*, and in the book of *Judith*, and there are that of this City understand *David* in his 120. *Psalme*: and here the Sepulchre of *Job* is yet to be seen, saith *Breidenbach*.

Now concerning the Texts which he citeth, it is so that the *Greek* hath *Galaad* in stead of the word *Cedar*, which the *Vulgar* doth use in that place of *Judith*, and joyneth *Carmel* and *Galilee*. The *Canticles* and the 120. *Psalme* do rather prove that *Cedar* was not hereabout, than any way help *Adricomius*. For that they speake of *Scennie Cedar*, it is apparent, and as evident by the place in the *Canticles*, that they were *deciduous*, much more than any under the *Climates* of the Land of *Canaan*: whence *Junius* out of *Lampridius* and *Pliny* placeth them in *Arabia Petraea*, far from these parts. Touching the Sepulchre of *Job*, it is certain that the *Arabians* and *Saracens* (holding those places) say many things to abuse the *Christians*, and to get money. Further, it may well be affirmed, that many (if not all) the historical circumstances of *Job* are so obscure, that we should rather by finding his Country seeke to get some knowledge of him, than by any presumptions founded upon him, inferre what his Country was, and build unto him a City by conjecture.

Of *Job* himself, whether he was the same *Jobab* remembered in the 36. of *Genesis*, descended from *Esau King also of Idumaea*, though *Rupertus*, *Lyranus*, *Oleaster*, and *Belarmine* are of another opinion, yet *Saint Ambrose*, *Augustine*, *Chrysostome*, and *Gregory* with

with *Arthanasius*, *Hippolitus*, *Iranus*, *Eusebius Emisennus*, *Apollinaris*, *Enstachius*, and other cited by *S. Hierome* in his 126. *Epist.* to *Evagrius*, take him for the same.

The Land of *Hus* or *Hus*, wherein *Job* dwelt, is from the *Greek* *ὅς*, which the *Septuagint* use for the word *Hus*, translated by the *Vulgar* sometime *Hus*, as *Job* 1.1. sometime *Aspis*, as *Hierem.* 25.20. This Land is placed by *Junius* between *Palastine* and *Celofyria*, besides *Chamaiba* (or *Hamath*) under *Palmyrene*, in the Countrey called by *Plolomy* *Trachonitis*, or *Bathanea*, the bounds of which Countreies are confounded with *Basan* in this half Tribe of *Manasser*. And that this Land of *Hus* was thus seated, it may in part be gathered out of the place of *Jer.* 25.20. where he reckons the *Hushites* among the 10. miscuous borderers of the *Israelites*, whom he therefore calleth promiscuous, or *miscellaneous turbam*, because their bounds were not onely joyned but confounded, and their *Seigniorities* mingled one with the other: but of this place the words of *Hieremy*, *Lam.* 4.21. speaking of the same Prophecy, of which he speaketh in the 25. Chapter, must needs be expounded, as *Junius* reads them, distinguishing the Land of *Hus* from *Edom*: *O fili Is Edom, O que habitas in terra Hutz; O daughter of Edom, O thou which dwellest in the land of Hus*. Now because the *Vulgar* doth not so distinguish, but readeth, *Filia Edom que habitas in terra Hus; Daughter of Edom which dwellest in the land of Hus*: Hence, as it seems, some of the learned have thought that *Job* was an *Edomite*, as we have said, and *King of Edom*, which if they understand by it *Idumaea*, or *Edom*, so called in *Moses* time, they are greatly mistaken, making this Land of *Hus* to be in *Idumaea*. For it is very probable that *Esau*, when he first parted from *Jacob*, did not seat himself in *Edom*, or *Seir*, which lieth on the South border of *Judea*, but inhabited *Seir* far to the East of *Jordan*, and held a part of those Mountains, otherwise called *Galaad*, and *Hermoz*, which by corruption the *Sidonians* call *Sbirion*, and the *Amorites*, *Shenir*, for *Seir*; and from this his habitation did *Esau* encounter *Jacob*, when he returned out of *Mesopotamia*, who passed by the very border of *Esau* his abiding. It is true, that at such time as *Moses* wandered in the *Deserts*, that the posterity of *Esau* inhabited *Seir* to the South of *Judea*: for it is like that the *Amorites*, who had beaten both *Ammon* and *Moab*, did also drive the *Edomites* out of those parts, who thence-forward seated themselves to the South of *Judea*, bordering the *Desart Paran*, and stretched their habitations over the *Deserts*: as far as *Hor* where *Aaron* died.

Now for this *Hus*, which gave the name to a part of the Land of *Trachonitis*, whether it were *Hus* the son of *Aram*, as *Junius* thinks in his note upon *Gen.* 10.23. or rather *Hus* the son of *Nachor*, *Abraham*'s brother, the question is doubtful. For my part I rather incline to think, that it was *Hus* the son of *Nachor*: partly because these Families of *Aram* seem long before to have been lost: and partly because in *Job* 32.2. *Elibu* the fourth of *Job*'s friends, which seems to be of *Job*'s own Countrey, is called a *Buzite*, of *Buz* the brother of *Hus*, the son of *Nachor*: as also *Jer.* 25. in the same continuation (though some other Nations named between) where *Hus* is spoken of, there *Buz* is also named. Neither doth it hinder our conjecture, that in the place of *Job* 32. *Elibu* the *Buzite* is said to be of the Family of *Ram*: (which *Junius* expounds to be as much as of the Family of *Aram*) for that by this *Aram* we are not to understand *Aram* the son of *Sem*, *Junius* himself maketh it plain, both in his annotation upon the beginning of his book, where he saith, that one of *Job*'s friends (which must needs be this *Elibu*) was of the posterity of *Nachor* (as also in this place he confesseth so much expressly), and in as much as he readeth not *è familia Aram*, or *Ram*, but *è familia Syria*; like as elsewhere *Laban*, who sprang of *Nachor*, is called a *Syrian*.

As for the other three of *Job*'s friends (of whom by this note of *Elibu* his being of the *Syrian* Family, or of the Family of *Nachor*) it is implied, that they were of other kindreds, as also by the *Septuagint* addition, that this *Elibu* was of the Land of *Hus*, or *Asi*, it is implied that they thought onely *Elibu* to have been of *Job*'s own Countrey.

*Franciscus Brochard* the *Monke*, in his description of the Holy Land in the journey from *Acem* Eastward, findeth *Suetha*, and *Themari* on the East of the Sea of *Galilee*: both very near to the Land of *Hus*: whereof the one may seem to have denominated *Thadda* the *Shuchite*; the other *Eliphaz* the *Themaite*: two of the three friends of *Job*, of the which *Job* 2.11. But *Junius* thinks that the *Shuchites* were inhabitants of *Arabia* the *Desert*, descended of *Shuch* the son of *Abraham* and *Keura*: of whom *Gen.* 25.2. perhaps, saith he, the same whom *Pliny* calls *Sacae*. So also he thinketh the *Themautes*, of whom

K k

Eliphaz

Mark 15.

Mark 8.

Broch. itin. 2.  
Of this Phiale  
see in Neph.  
c. 1. f. 4. || 3.  
Matth. 14.  
Mark 5.  
Luke 9.  
John 6.

Jos. 18. ant. 3.  
Et alibi.

Gen 14. 5.

See chap. 7.  
f. 3. || 2.

\* Because horn when it is polished, shineth: hence it is that the Verb of this Noun is sometime Lucet: as it were conuen offe: whereupon the Vulgar, Exo. 34. 19. reading coram lucidam faciem, gave occasion to the fabulous Painters to paint *Moses* with Horns. *Judith.* 1.8. 1. Cant. 5.

Rap. Lyran. O. leat in Gen. Bel. in Cant. lib. 1. de ver. Dei. S. Am. sup. Ep. ad Rom. Aug. de Civ. Dei. 1.28. c. 4. Chrys. Hom. 2. De patientia Job. Greg. com. in Job.

For *o* and *eo* are often changed one into the other: whence they used *Aspis* for *Oasis*, *Asis*, &c. Hence also by *Janius* and others it is called *Asfanitis*, and so as it seems they read it in the *Septuagint*. *Jun. in Gen.* 10. 23.

Deut. 3. 9.

Whence the *Septuagint* call him *ex regione Asitide*.

See *Sistus Senesii*.

Eliphaz was to have been of Arabia the Desert: and Eliphaz himself to have been of the posterity of Itheman the son of Eliphaz, which was the son of Esau. And so also Nahab, whence Ithamar the third of Job's friends (which in this place of Job 2.11. are mentioned) is by the same learned Expofitor, thought either to be named of Thimnah by transposition of letters (which Thimnah, Gen. 36.40. is named among the sons of Esau, that gave denomination to the places where they were seated) or else to be the same Nahab, which Jos. 15.41. is reckoned for a City of Juda in the border, as he thinks, of Edom. And yet I deny not but that neer the Land of Hus, in Bafan, as it seems, in the Tribe of Manasse, there is a Region which (at least) in later times was called *Suitis*, or of some like name. For this is evident by the History of Will. Tyrinus, which reports of a Fort in this Region of *Suita*, or *Suites* (as he calls it diversly) of exceeding great strength and use for the retaining of the whole Country: which, in the time of Baldwin the second King of Hierusalem, was with great digging through rocks recovered by the Christians, having not long before been lost, to the great disadvantage of the Country, while it was in the hands of the Saracens. The situation of this Fort is by Tyrinus described to be sixteen miles from the City *Tiberias*, on the East of Jordan: by *Adrichomius* four miles Northward from the place where Jordan enters the Lake *Tiberias* at *Corazin*.

Other Cities of this part of *Manasse* named in the Scripture are these: *Golan*, *Gethse*, *thera*, *Mitsha* of *Gilead*, and *Kenath*, which after the coming of the Israelites was called *Nobach*. Of *Nobach* or *Kenath*, and *Mitsha* of *Gilead*, we have spoken by occasion among the Cities of *Gad*. The other two were given to the *Levites*, and *Golan* made one of the Cities of refuge: from which *Golan* we have both *Gaulanitis superior* and *inferior*, often *Josephus*. *Bechisthera* is accounted the chief City of *Bafan* by some, but the Writers corrupting the name into *Bozra*, it is confounded with *Beiser*, or *Bozra* of *Reuben*, and with *Bozra* of *Edom*. *Argob* is oft named for a Region in this Tract, and hence *Hierome* hath *Arga*, a name of a City placed by some about the waters of *Merom* (as they are called by *Josephus*) which make the Lake *Samachonitis*, as *Josephus* calls it. This Lake, being as it were in the midst between *Cajarea*, *Philippi* and *Tiberias*, through which, as through the Lake of *Tiberias*, Jordan runneth, boundeth part of this half Tribe on the West. When the snow of *Libanus* melteth, it is very large, saith *Brocard*: otherwise more contrait, leaving the marshy ground on both sides, for Lions and other wilde beasts, which harbour in the shrubs that plentifully grow there.

Adjoining to this Lake in this Countrey of *Manasse*, *Josephus* names two places of strength, fortified by himself in the beginning of the Jews rebellion: *Seleucia* the one, and *Sogane* the other. In the North side of this half Tribe of *Manasse*, and in the North-east, the Scripture nameth divers bordering places towards *Damascus*, as *Isedad*, *Chauran*, and *Chasfar-Henan*, lying in a line drawn from the West; of which three Cities we read *Ezek. 47.15.* with which also agrees the place, *Nun. 34.8.* where for *Chauran* between *Isedad*, and *Chasfar-Henan*, *Zipbron* is named. From this *Chauran* is the named *Auranitis Regio*, in *Josephus* and *Tyrinus*, whose bounds (as also the bounds of *Gessur* and *Mahacath*, or *Macati*, which were likewise borderers to *Manasse* towards the North-east) are unknown: onely that *Gessur* was of might, it appears in that *David* married *Mahaca* the daughter of *Thalmay* King of *Gessur*: by whom he had the most beautiful, but wicked and unfortunate *Abfalom*.

## CHAP. XI.

The History of the Syrians, the chief borderers of the Israelites that dwelt on the East of Jordan.

### §. I.

Of the City of Damascus, and the divers fortunes thereof.

**D**AMASCUS of all other in this border, and of that part of the world, was the most famous, excelling in beauty, antiquity, and riches, and was therefore called the City of joy or gladness, and the House of pleasure; and is not onely remembered in many places of Scripture, but by the best Historians and Cosmographers. The Hebrews, saith *Josephus*, think it to have been built by *Hus* the son of *Arann*: of which opinion *S. Hierome* upon *Esay* seemeth to be: though

though in his Hebrew questions he affirmeth, that it was founded by *Damascus* the son of *Elietzer*, *Abrahams* Steward; a thing very unlikely, seeing the City was formerly known by that name, as appears by *Abrahams* calling this his Steward *Elietzer* of *Damiscoe*. *David* was the first that subjected it to the Kingdom of *Juda*, after the overthrow of *Adadazer* their King; but in *Solomons* time, *Rezon* recovered it again, though he had no title at all or right to that Principality: but *David* having overthrow *Hadadzer* King of *Sophena* (otherwise *Syria Seba*, or *Zoba*) *Razon* or *Rezon*, with the remainder of that broken Army, invaded *Damascena*, and possessed *Damascus* it self, and became an enemy to *Solomon* all his life.

The next King of *Damascus* was *Adad* the *Edomite*, who flying into *Egypt* from *David* and *Joab*, when they slew all the males in *Edom*, was there entertained, and married *Taphnes* the King of *Egypt*'s Wives filter: of whom *Taphnes* in *Egypt* was so called. This *Adad* returning again, became an enemy to *Solomon* all his life, and (as some Writers affirm) invaded *Damascus*, and thrust *Rezon* thence-out. In the Line of *Adad* that Kingdom continued nine descents, (as hereafter may be shewed in the Catalogue of those Kings of *Syria*) to whom the *Assyrians*, and then the *Greeks* succeeded. This City was exceeding strong, compassed with waters from the Rivers of *Abanah*, and *Pharpar*: whereof one of them, prophane Writers call *Chorrorhoas*, the golden River. *Junius* takes it for *Adonis*. The Countrey adjoining is very fruitful of excellent Wines and Wheat, and all manner of excellent fruits. It had in it a very strong Castle, built as it seems by the *Florentines*, after it became Christian: the Lillies being found cut in many Marbles in that Cittadell. Against this City the Prophets *Amor*, *Esay*, *Jeremy*, and *Zacharias*, prophesied that it should be taken, burnt, demolished, and made a heap of stones. In the time of the last *Rezon*, and tenth King of the *Damasceni*, *Teglatphalaser*, invited by *Achaz* King of *Juda*, carried away the naturals of *Damascus* into the East: leaving of his own Nation to inhabit it. After that it was utterly ruined by the *Babylonians*, saith *Hierome* upon *Esay*: which thing was performed by *Salmanasser*, according to *Junius* in his note upon that place, five years after the Prophecy. In time it was restored by the *Macedonians*, and the *Ptolomies*; but long after, when *Syria* fell into the hands of the *Romans*, it was taken by *Metellus*, and *Lellius*. In the time of the Christians it had an Archbishop: *Saint Hierome* living, as he affirmeth upon the *Acts*, it was the Metropolis of the *Saracens*: being taken by *Haomer* their King from the *Romanes*, in the year of our redemption 636. and in the year 1147. *Conrad* the third, Emperour of *Rome*, *Lewis* King of *France*, *Baldwine* the third King of *Hierusalem*, *Henry* Duke of *Alsiria*, brother to *Conrad*, *Frederick Barbarossa* afterward Emperour, *Theoderick* Earle of *Flanders*, and other Princes assembled at *Ptolomais Acon*, on the sea-coast, determined to recover *Damascus*: but being betrayed by the *Syrians*, they failed of the enterprise.

In the year 1262. *Halon* the Tartar incompast it, and having formerly taken the King, brought him under the Walls, and threatened extreme torture unto him, except the Citizens rendred the place: but they refusing it, the King was torn asunder before them, and in fine the City taken, *Agab* the son of *Halon* was by his father made King thereof.

In the year 1400. *Tamberlain* Emperour of the *Parthians*, invaded that Region, and besieged the City with an Army of 1200000. (if the number be not mistaken.) He entered it, and put all to the sword, filling the ditch with his prisoners; those that retired into the Castle, which seemed a place impregnable, he overtopped with another Castle adjoining: he forbore the demolishing of the City, in respect of the beauty of the Church, garnished with fourty Gates, or sumptuous Porches. It had within it 9000. Lanterns of Gold and Silver: but while he invaded *Egypt*, they again surprized *Damascus*. Lastly, in his return after three months siege, he forced it: the *Mahometans* prostrating themselves with their Priests, desired mercy. But *Tamberlain* commanding them to enter the Church, he burnt them and it to the number of 30000. and did so demolish it, as those that came afterwards to see their houses, knew them not by the foundations. And as a Trophoe of his victory, he raised three Towers with great art, builded with the heads of those whom hee had slaughtered. After this, it was restored and re-possessed by the *Soldane* of *Egypt* with a Garrison of *Mammalukes*: And in the year 1517. *Selimus* Emperour of the

Kk 2

Turks

Turks wrested it out of the hands of the Egyptians: in whose possession it now remaineth inhabited with Mahometans and Christians of all neighbouring Nations.

## §. II.

Of the first Kings of Damascus, and of the growing up of their power.

NOW be it that Damascus were founded by Huz the son of Aram, or by Damascus the son of Eliezer Abrahams Steward, we finde no relation of their Kings; or Commonwealth till Davids time. For it stood without the bounds of Canaan; and therefore neglected by Moses, Joshua, and the Judges, as impertinent to that Story. But were it that it had some Reguli, or petty Kings over it, as all the Cities of those parts had, yet none of them became famous for ought that is left to writing, till such time as David overthrew Adadazer Prince of Sophena, or Syria Zoba: the same Nation which Pliny calleth Nubai, inhabiting between Batania and Euphrates. Now the better to understand the story of those Syrian Princes, whom soon after the Kings of Damascus made their vassals, the Reader may inform himself, That on the North-east parts of the Holy Land, there were three chief principalities, whereof the Kings or Commanders greatly vexed or disturbed the State or Common-wealth of Israel, namely, Damascus, or Aram, Sophena, or Syria Zoba, and Chamath, or Chamath Zoba; of which there were Princes in Davids and Solomons times: Razon, or Rezon of Damascus, Adadazer of Syria Zoba, and Tobu of Chamath. But it seemeth, that Damascus was one of the Cities subject to Adadazer when David invaded him, though when Saul made war against Zoba, Damascus was not named. And as Josephus affirmeth, the leader of those succours, which were levied and sent to Hadad-Ezer from Damascus, had the name of Adad: who was in that battell slain with 20000. Aramites of Damascus: whereof, as of the overthrow of Adadazer, Rezon the Commander of his Army, taking advantage, made himself King of Damascus, Adadazer and Adad of Damascus being both slain. About the same time Tobu King of Chamath, or Iturae, hearing that his neighbour and enemy Adadazer was utterly overthrown, sendeth for peace to David, and presenteth him with rich gifts: but in dolo, saith S. Hierome; it was craftily done of him. Now to the North of the Holy Land, and to the West of Damascus, the Tyrians and Zidonians inhabited: but they for the most part were in league and peace with the Jews and Israelites. But to return to the Kings of Syria, I mean of Syria as it is taken in the Scriptures, containing Damascus, Zoba or Zoba, and Chamath, or Iturae; to which I may adde Geshur, because it is so accounted in the second of Sam. 15. as joyning in the Territory to Damascus (for Syria at large is far greater, of which Palestina it self is but a Province, as have noted in the beginning of this Tract.) It is not agreed among the Historians of former times, nor of our later Writers, who was the first of those Adads of Syria Zoba, and Damascus.

Some account Rezon, others Adad of Idumaea: of whom it is written in the first Kings, that David having invaded that Region, & left Joab there to destroy all the male children thereof: Adad of the Kings seed fled into Egypt; and was there married to Taphnes the Queens sister, as before; who hearing of Davids death, and of the death of his Captain Joab (whom indeed all the bordering Nations feared) he turned again: and as Benning thinketh, this Adad did expell Rezon out of Damascus, and was the first of the Syrian Kings. To me it seemeth otherwise. For, as I take it, Adadazer, the son of Rehob, whom Saul invaded, was the Founder of that Principality: and the first Adad, who forsaking his fathers name, as he grew powerfull, took upon him the stile of Adad, the great god of the Assyrians, saith Macrobinus, which signified Omneity or Unity: I have indeed a City called Adada, in the same part of Syria: of which whether these Princes took the name, or gave it, I am ignorant. For Adad-ezer, Ben-adad, El-adad were the same in name, with the differences of Ezer, Ben, and Eli adjoined. And that Adadazer was of greatest power, it appeareth first, because it is against him, that David undertook the war: secondly, because he levied 20000. Aramites out of the Territory of Damascus: as one of his proper Domintons: for had the Damascus had a King apart, it is probable that the Scriptures would have given us his name: thirdly, because Syria Zoba, of the most of which Adadazer was King, was an exceeding large Territory, and contained of Arabia the Desert as far as to Euphrates, according

Plin. l. 6. c. 28.

1 Sam. 14. 47.  
3082.

2 Sam. 8.

1 Kings 11.

2 Sam. 8. 3.

Chr. 12.

1 Sam. 14. 47.

Plin. l. 6. c. 18.

according to Pliny: and the greatest part of Arabia Petraea, according to Niger. Whosoever was the first, whether Adadazer, or Adad of Idumaea, Rezon was the second: Who was an enemy to Israel all the dayes of Solomon. Besides the evil that Adad did, the evil that Hadad did, seemeth to be referred to Hadad of Idumaea, lately returned out of Egypt to wit, 23. years after he was carried thither.

The third King of Damascus, and of Zobah both, was Hezion; to Hezion succeeded Tabrimmon, or Tabremmon; to him Benhadad, as is proved in the first of Kings: For Asa King of Juda the son of Abiam, the son of Roboam, the son of Solomon, being vexed & invaded by Baasba, the successour of Nadab, the son of Jeroboam, sent Baasba the son of Tabrimmon, the son of Hezion, King of Aram, that dwelt at Damascus, to invade Israel (while Baasba sought to fortifie Rama against Asa: thereby to block him up, that he should not enter into any of the territories of Israel) who according to the desire of Asa, having received his presents, willingly invaded the Country of Nephthalim, and took divers Cities, and spoyle thence: Asa in the mean while carrying away all the Materials, which Baasba had brought to fortifie Rama withall, and converted them to his own use.

This Benhadads Father Tabremmon was in league with Asa: and so was his Father Hezion: for Asa requireth the continuance of that friendship from Benhadad, his son: though it seemeth that the gold and silver sent him out of the Temple, was the most forcible argument. And that this Tabremmon invaded Israel, before the enterprize of his son Benhadad, it is conjectured. For Benhadad when he was prisoner with Achab, spake as followeth: The Cities which my Father took from thy father, I will restore: and thou shalt make streets or keepers of the borders for thee in Damascus: as my father did in Samaria. And herein there ariseth a great doubt (if the argument it self were of much importance) because Tabremmon was father indeed to Benhadad which invaded Baasba, at the request of Asa: But this Benhadad that twice entered upon Achab, and was the second time taken prisoner, was rather the son of Benhadad, the first of that name, the confederate of Asa and Abiam, as before, than the son of Tabremmon. For between the invasion of Benhadad the first, in Baasbas time, and the siege of Samaria, and the overthrow of Benhadad by Achab, there past 49. years, as may be gathered out of the reigns of the Kings of Israel. So that if we allow 30. years of age to Benhadad, when he invaded Baasba, and after that 49. years ere he was taken by Achab, which make eighty lacking one, it is unlikely that Benhadad at such an age should make war. Besides all this, the first Benhadad came with no such pomp; but the second Benhadad vaunteth, that he was followed with 32. Kings: and therefore I resolve, that Benhadad the son of Tabremmon invaded Baasba and Omri; and Benhadad the second invaded Achab; at whose hands this Benhadad received two notorious overthrows: the first at Samaria, by a fall of 7000. Israelites: the second at Aphec, where, with the like number in effect, the Israelites slaughtered 200000. of the Aramites; besides 27000. which were crush't by the fall of the wall of Aphec. And this Benhadad, Achab again setteth at liberty: to whom he rendreth those Towns that his father had taken from the Predecessour of Achab, but being returned, he refused to render Ramoth Gilead, a frontier Town, and of great importance. Now three years after (for so long the league lasted) Ramoth not being delivered, Achab invaded Gilead, and besieged the City, being assisted by Josaphat. The Aramites came to succour and fight: in which Achab is wounded, and dieth that night. After this, Benhadad sendeth the Commander of his forces, called Namian, to Joram the son of Achab to be healed of the leprosie, and though Elizeus had healed him, yet he picketh a quarrell against Joram: and when Joram, by Elizeus his intelligence, had escaped his plot, he sent men and Chariots to take the Prophet, as is aforesaid. After Benhadad besieged Samaria again, and being terrified thence from heaven, he departed home, and sicketh, and sendeth Azael with great gifts to Elizeus, to know his estate if he might live. Azael returning, smothereth him. Zonaras and Cedrenus call this Benhadad Adar, and the son of Adar: Amos and Hieremy mention the Towers of Benhadad. Josephus writeth that Benhadad and his successour Azael were worshipped for gods by the Syrians: to his time, for the sumptuous Temples which they built in Damascus. The Syrians also boasted much of their antiquity, ignorant, saith he, that scarce yet 1100. years are complete since their wars with the Israelites.

Hazael, or Azael, the first King of the race of the Adads of Damascus, was annoiored by Eliza, or Elizeus, when he was sent by Benhadad to the Prophet, to know whether Ben-



hadad should recover his present sicknesse: He waged war with *Joram*, who received divers wounds at the encounter at *Ramoth in Gilead*: from whence returning to be cured at *Jesreel*, he and the King of *Juda*, *Abaziah* or *Ochozias*, are slain by *Jehu*, as before is said. After the death of *Joram*, *Azael* continued war against *Jehu*, and wasted *Gilead*, and all those portions of *Gad*, *Reuben*, and *Manasse*, over *Jordan*. He then invaded *Juda*; and took *Gath*; but by gifts from *Joas* he was averted from attempting *Hierusalem*: for he presented him all the *hallowed things* which *Jehosaphat*, *Jehoram*, and *Abaziah* his fathers, Kings of *Juda*, had dedicated; and which he himself had dedicated: and all the gold which was found in the treasuries of the Lord, and in the Kings house. This was the second time that the Temple was spoiled to please the *Adads* of *Damascus*. For *Asa* did present *Benhadad* with those treasures, when he invited him to war upon *Bascha* King of *Israel*. And notwithstanding this composition between *Joas* and *Azael*, yet a part of his Army spoiled the other Provinces of *Judea*, and slaughtered many principall persons: Lastly, *Azael* vexed *Joabaz* the son of *Jehu*, and brought him to that extremity, as he left him but fifty Horse-men, ten Chariots, and ten thousand Foot-men of all his people.

## §. III.

Of the later Kings, and decay and overthrow of their power.

2 Reg. 13. 7. Jan. 6. 9. AFTER *Hazael*, *Benhadad* the second, or rather the third of that name, the son of *Hazael*, reigned in *Damascus*: who fought against *Israel* with ill successe: for *Joas* King of *Israel*, the son of the unhappy *Jehosabaz*, as he was foretold by *Elisha* the Prophet, beat *Benhadad* in three severall battels: and he lost all those Cities to *Israel*, which his father *Hazael* had taken violently from *Joachaz*.

Jes. ant. l. 7. c. 6. After this *Benhadad* the son of *Hazael*, there succeeded three others by the same name, of whom the Stories are lost, only *Nicholam* *Damascenus* cited by *Josephus*, makes mention of them: and in one of these Kings times it was that *Jeroboam* the second, the son of *Joas*, recovered *Damascus* itself to *Juda*, saith the *Geneva*, but better in *Justin*, *Utriusque reseruat Damascum, & Chamatham Jehuda pro Israele*; that is, And how he recovered for *Israel*, *Damascus* and *Chamatha* of *Judea*; for these Cities sometimes conquered by *David*, did of right belong to the Tribe of *Juda*.

1 Kim. 14. 28. And it is likely, that this conquest upon the *Adads* was performed: the first of these three *Adads* then living, of whom there is no Story, For when as *Jehosabaz* the King of the ten Tribes had thrice overcome the *Syrians* in the time of *Benhadad* the son of *Hazael*, and had recovered the Cities which *Hazael* had won from *Israel*; and so left his Kingdom to his son *Jeroboam* the second; yet seemeth that this *Jeroboam* without delay, and having nothing else left for him to enterprize, instantly followed his fathers good fortune, and invaded *Damascus*.

2 Kim. 16. 5. 5. Ely 7. Jos. ant. l. 9. c. 11. *Rezin*, or *Rezin*, after *Josephus*, *Rafes*; after *Zonaras*, *Rafson* the tenth *Adad*, making league with *Pekah*, or *Phasas* King of *Israel*, against *Achaz* King of *Juda*; both carry away a great number of prisoners. After this they both besiege *Achaz* in *Hierusalem* in vain. Then *Adad* alone invadeth *Elisha*, and beating out the Jews, maketh it a Colony of *Syrians*. Wherefore *Achaz* brought *Teglatphalassar* against *Rezin*, who took him, and beheaded him, and won *Damascus*: with whom ended the line of the *Adads*, and the Kingdom of *Damascus*: the *Assyrians* becoming masters both of that and *Israel*. These *Adads*, as they reigned in order, are thus reckoned:

1. *Adadazer* the son of *Rehob*.

2. *Rezin* the son of *Eliadad*, or *Razin*.

3. *Hothin*.

4. *Tarsumon*.

5. *Benhadad*, who invaded *Bascha*.

6. *Benhadad* the second, taken prisoner by *Achaz*.

7. *Hazael*, whom *Elisha* foretold with tears of his advancement; the same who overthrew *Joram* King of *Israel* at *Ramoth Gilead*. And that there was a second *Hazael* which preceded *Benhadad* the third, it is not improbable, because that *Hazael* which took *Geth*, and compounded the war with *Joas*, made the Expedition thirty years, and perchance more,

more, after the first *Hazael* which stifled his master *Benhadad*, and had slain *Joram* the son of *Achaz* King of *Israel*. For *Joas* began to reigne in the 7. year of *Jehu* King of *Israel*; and after he had reigned 23. years, the Temple was not yet repaired, after which (and how long we know not) it is said that *Hazael* took *Geth*, and turned his face towards *Jerusalem*. It is also some proof that *Hazael* that took *Geth*, was not the same with *Hazael* that murdered *Benhadad*, because he could not at that time be of good yeers, being, as it seemeth, the second person in the Kingdom, and Commander of *Benhadad*'s men of war. To this *Hazael* (be he the first or second) succeeded.

8. *Benhadad* the third, whom *Joash* King of *Israel* thrice overthrew.

109. *Rezin*, or *Rezin*, the last, who joyned with *Pekah* King of *Israel*, against *Juda*, at which time *Achaz* King of *Juda* waged for his defence *Teglatphalassar*.

Now between *Benhadad* the third, and *Rezin* the last, *Nicolaus Damascenus* finds three other Kings of the *Adads*, which make twelve in all.

For the rest of the Princes of *Syria*, which were but *Reguli*, as those of *Emath*, and *Geffur*, we finde that *Tobus* was King of *Emath*, or *Camath*, in *David*'s time, to whom he sent his son *Joram* with presents, after *David*'s victory against *Adadazer*. Also *Senacherib* speaketh of a King of *Emath*, but names him not.

## §. IV.

Of Other lesser Kingdoms of the *Syrians*, which being brought under the *Assyrians*, never recovered themselves again.

O *Geffur* we finde two Kings named; to wit, *Talmal*, and his Father *Amvihar*: to *Talmal*, whose Daughter *David* married, it was that *Abshalom* fled, who was his maternall grandfather. Of the Kings of *Sephena*, or *Syria*, *Soba*, or *Celestria*, there are two named, *Rehob*, or *Rechob*, the Father of *Adadazer*, and *Adadazer* himself; and it is plain, that after his death the seat of the Kings of *Soba* was transferred to *Damascus*, a City better fitting their greatnesse. After *Rezin* became Lord of both Principalities, And the race of these Kings of *Syria*, (which became so potent, and joyned *Soba*, *Damascus*, *Emath*, and the Desert of *Arabia*, with other Provinces into one, under *Rezin* the second of the *Adads*) as it began with *David*, so it ended at once with the Kingdom of *Israel*. For *Abaz* King of *Juda* waged the *Assyrian* *Teglatphalassar* against *Pekah* King of *Israel*, and against *Rezin* the last King of *Damascus*: which *Teglat* first invaded *Damascus*, and the Region of *Soba*, and took *Damascus* itself, and did put to death *Rezin* the last, carrying the Inhabitants captive. This was the second time that the *Assyrians* attempted *Israel*. For first *Phul Belochus* entered the borders thereof (Menabem governing) who stopp'd the enterprize of *Phul* with a thousand talents of Silver: for this *Phul Belochus*, whose pedigree we will examine hereafter, being scarce warui, as yet, in his seat at *Babylon*; which he, with the help of his companion *Arbaces*, had wrested from *Sardanapalus*: having besides this King of *Syria* in his way, who seemed to be a great and strong Prince, was content to take the composition of a thousand talents of the King of *Israel* for that present time. But his son *Teglat* following the purpose of his father *Belochus*, and finding for excellent an occasion, as the war begun between *Israel* and *Judah*, *Pekah* commanding in the one, and *Achaz* in the other, his neighbour *Rezin* being also wrapt in that war, and wasted in strength thereby, did willingly accept the offer of *Achaz* King of *Juda*, his impress and entertainment. So, first attempting *Damascus*, which lay in his path towards *Israel*, he carried it (as is before remembered) and then with great ease posselt himself of the Cities of *Neptalim*; leading with him a great part of the people captive. And his son *Salmanasser*, whom *Ptolomee* calleth *Nabonasser*, after the revolt of *Hofea*, forced *Samaria*, and rent that Kingdom asunder. So as the line and race of *Nimrod* in *Sardanapalus*, whom *Belochus* supplanted; the race and Monarchy of the *Syrian* *Adads* in *Rezin*, whom *Teglat* slaughtered; the Kingdom of *Israel* in *Hofea*, whom *Salmanasser* overturned; happened near about a time: that of *Nimrod* in the daies of *Belochus*, and the other two in the daies of *Teglatphalassar*, and *Salmanasser* his son. For *Sardanapalus* perished, *Ofsa* ruling *Juda*; and the other two Kingdoms were dissolved, *Achaz* yet living.

Lastly, the Kingdom of *Juda* it self, being attempted by *Senacherib*, the son of *Salmanasser*, in vain; and preserved for the time by God miraculously, was at length utterly



utterly overturned. *Hierusalem* and the Temple burnt 132. years after the captivity of *Israel* and *Samarita*: the destruction of *Israel* being in the ninth year of *Hofea*: that of *Juda* in the eleventh of *Zedechia*. Now the Emperours of *Affryia* and *Babylon* held also the Kingdom of *Syria*, from the eighth year of *Salmanassar*, to the last of *Baltassar*, whom *Herodotus* calleth *Labyntus*: in all about 200. years. After these the *Perfians* from *Cyrus* to *Darius* their last King, held *Syria* about 200. years.

Then *Alexander Macedon* took this among other Provinces of the *Persian* Empire, and his successor the *Seleucide* reigned therein, till it became subject unto the power of the *Romans*, from whom it was wrested long after by the *Saracens*, and remaineth now in possession of the *Turk*, as shall be shewed in due place. Thus much of the Nations bordering upon the *Israelites*, with whom they had most to do, both in war and peace, being the onely people, whose History in those ancient times carried an assured face of Truth.

## CHAP. XII.

Of the Tribe of Benjamin, and of Hierusalem.

### §. I.

Of divers memorable places in the Tribe of Benjamin, whereof *Hiericho*, *Gilgal*, *Mitpa*, *Bethel*, *Rama*, *Gobah* and *Gibba*.

**O**F the Tribe of Benjamin, the twelfth and youngest son of *Jacob*, whom he had by *Rachel*, there were mustered at Mount *Sinai* 35000. able bodies: all which perishing in the *Desarts*, there entered the *Holy Land* of their Iffues 45600. fit to bear Arms: and these had their Territory on this side *Jordan*, between *Juda* and *Ephraim*: The Cities within this Tribe neerer *Jordan*, are *Lod*, *Hadid*, and *Omo*: of which, *Lod* and *Omo* were built by *Shemed* a Benjaminite: they were all three re-inhabited with *Benjamites*, after the return out of Captivity, as is mentioned, *Nehem.* 11. 35. and *Esd.* 2. 35. where *Adrichemus* reading *Lod*, *Hadid*, *Omo*, makes besides *Hadid* in *Nehemia*, a City called *Lodhadid*: This *Hadid* or *Chadid* was built by *Simon Macchabaeus*.

*Samarim*, or *Tsemaraim*, named of *Tsemary*, one of the sons of *Cannan*, was another of their Cities: and further into the Land standeth *Jericho*, one of the Toparchies and the last of *Juda*, seated in a most fruitfull Valley, adorned with many Palm-trees: and therefore elsewhere called the City of Palms. From the time of *Josua*, who utterly destroyed it, it lay waste until the time of *Acab*: in whose daies *Chief* of *Bethel* laid the new foundation of it, in the losse of *Abram* his eldest son, and built the gates of it in the losse of his youngest son *Segub*: according to the curse of *Josua*: in which and other respects, *Hof.* 12. 14. calleth *Josua* a Prophet. In after-times it was destroyed by *Joshaphat*, and re-built by *Adrian*.

To the Southeast of *Jericho* stood \* *Halmon* of the Levites, of which *Jof.* 21. 18. To the South *Betharaba*, of which *Jof.* c. 15. and c. 18. Then that *Gilgal* of which there is much mention in the Scripture, where *Josua* first ate of the fruits of the land, circumsided all those borne in the *Desarts*, and celebrated the Paschever.

The reason of the name, or rather a memorable application of the Etymology of this name (for it seems by the place, *Deut.* 11. 30. that the name was known before the coming of the *Israelites* into *Canaan*) is noted *Jof.* 5. 9. *Ob devolutionem probri Egypti*, because their fore-skins (the people being there circumsided) were tumbled down the Hill: which from thence was called *Collis preputiorum*. This *Gilgal* was also called *Giloth*, as appears by comparing the places, *Jof.* 15. 7. and 18. 17. for it was in the borders of *Jordan*, of which *Jof.* 22. 13. and *Giloth* signifies borders. It stood (though in some distance) directly Eastward, over against the two Hills *Garazin* and *Hebal*, upon those of which the blessings, and on the other the cursings were to be read to the people, both being the mountains of *Ephraim*. Further, for the situation of this *Gilgal*, as

be noted, that both it, and *Mitpa* of *Benjamin* (of which also we read oft in the Scripture) were seated about the midst of the length of the land of *Canaan*: for which reason (a) *Sammuel* chose these two places, to either of which he came yeerly to give judgment to the *Israelites*; of which two, *Gilgal*, (as is said) was neerer *Jordan* on the East side of this Tribe; and *Mitpa* neerer the West Sea, towards the land of the *Philistims*.

The third place, which is named with these two, whither also *Sammuel* used yeerly to come, is (b) *Bethel*: which also was seated in this Tribe of *Benjamin*. But to return to *Gilgal*, which was the first place where the *Arke* resided, after they past over *Jordan* (from whence it was carried to *Silo*, and thence to *Kiriath-jeharim*, and at length to *Hierusalem*) here in *Gilgal* it was that *Josua* pitched up the 12. stones, which were taken out of the channell of *Jordan*, when it was drie, that the *Israelites* might passe over it: by which Story, as it is set down *Jof.* 4. it appears, that the same day that they passed over *Jordan*, they lodged at *Gilgal*. At the same *Gilgal*, to omit many other memorable things, it was by the Law, that *Sammuel* hewed *Agag* the King of the *Amalekites* in pieces. And as for *Mitpa*, whither *Sammuel* came yeerly to give judgment, there also were often the greatest meetings in the land: as that for the revenge of the Levites wife against *Gibba*, and the *Benjamites*, *Jof.* 19. 1. and another against the *Philistims*, 1 Sam. 7. 12. Thither also *Judas Macchabaeus* was where the gathered the Jews, (when *Hierusalem* was possessed by the *Heathen*) as it is 1 Macc. 3. 47. in which place this reason of their meeting is added; *Quia locus orationi fuerat Mitpa* and touching this *Mitpa*, to avoid confusion, it is to be remembred, that the Scriptures mention four places of this name: *Mitpa* of *Juda*, of which *Jof.* 15. 38. (c) *Mitpa* of *Gilead*, of which we have spoken already in the Tribe of *Gad*, *Mitpa* of the *Moabites*, where *David* for a while held himself, commending his Parents to the King of *Moab*, 1 Sam. 22. 3. and lastly, this chief *Mitpa* of the *Benjamites*. And as in this place the chief meetings were held both before *Hierusalem* was recovered from the *Jobabites*, and also in the time of the *Macchabees* (as we have said) when *Hierusalem* was held by the wicked under *Antiochus*, so also in the time of *Heremy*, after the destruction of the Temple by the *Chaldees*, *Gedaliah* whom *Nabucodonosor* left in *Jewrie*, as Governour over those that were left in the land, held his abiding in this place: untill (to the great sorrow of the Jews) he was slain by the treason of *Ismael*, one of the royall bloud of *Juda*, as it is *Jerem.* 41.

Neer unto this *Mitpa*, the Scripture mentioneth *Beth-car*, after called *Aben-Hozzer*, which, the Stone of help: where *Sammuel* pitched up the Pillar or Stone, for a Trophy against the *Philistims*.

Touching *Bethel*, which (as it seems) was the third place where *Sammuel* held his chief meetings for the ministering of Justice, that it was anciently called *Luz*, and how it was taken by the title of *Joseph* (though it belonged to the portion of *Benjamin*, as it is *Nehem.* 11. 31. and *Jof.* 18. 22.) and how another City called *Luz* (d) neerer adjoining to *Juda*, 1. and of the occasion of the name from *Jacob's* vision; and how *Jeroboam*, by erecting one of his calves here, of *Bethel* (which signifieth the house of God) made it (e) the chief place of this place, they are so well known out of the Histories of the Scripture, that we may well passe them over.

The Territory of *Bethel*, which at the first belonged to the Kingdome of the ten Tribes, from the time of the great victory of *Abia* against *Jeroboam*, of which 2 *Chron.* 13. was taken from them, and adjoynd to the Kingdome of *Juda*: and so it continued, as appears by the Story of *Josias*, which performed the Prophecies against the altar of *Bethel*, 2 Reg. 23. whence those coasts 1 Macc. 1. 34. are called *Apherema*, which word signifieth as much as, *A thing taken away*, to wit, from the ten Tribes. It was one of the three Seignories, or Prefectures which *Demevrius* in his Epistle mentioneth, as added by him to the *Dition* of the Jews, out of the *Samaritan* Country. A part of it appears in *Chron.* 13. 19. was *Hebrayim*, which *Jof.* 18. 23. is called *Hophran*, belonging to this Tribe of *Benjamin*.

Not far from this *Bethel*, in this tribe, we finde three other Cities, often mentioned in the Scriptures, *Rama*, *Gibba*, and *Geba*. Of the name *Rama*, (b) it is noted already, in the description of *Ephraim*, that there were many Towns so called, because of their town in the confines of the Kingdoms of *Juda* and *Israel* between *Hai* and *Bethel*, *Jof.* 7. 2. and 18. 12. b See cap. 9. §. 11. high

3603.  
3811.

1 Chro. 8. 12.

Macc. 12. 38.

1 Kings 16. 34.  
Jof. 6. 29.

\* 1 Chro. 6. 60.  
This *Halmon* is called *Halmon*, whence they make a new City *Al-muth*, as if this Tribe had given five Cities to the Levites.

Deut. 11. 30.

high situation. But whereas they find out *Rama* in the Tribe of *Juda* (as it seems, because *Mat. 2.* it appears that it bordered *Bethlehem*) and also out of *Brachard* and *Breidenbach* make *Silo* to have been called *Rama*, and find yet another *Rama* in *Zabulon*: these three have no warrant in the Scripture. Of *Rama* in the Tribe of *Asher*, as it seems, we have testimonie, *Jos. 19.* and of another in *Nephtholim*, *Jos. 19. 36.* of a third *Rama*, where *Sammel* dwelt in Mount *Ephraim*, *1 Sam. 25. 1.* which more often is called (c) *Ramatha*, and *1 Sam. 1. 1.* *Ramathaim* *Josaphim*: for which the Septuagint have *Aramathaim* *Josaphim*, taking the Article affixed in the beginning, for a part of the word, whence they think *Joseph of Arimathea* *Mat. 27. 57.* was denominated.

Of a fourth *Rama* we read *2 Reg. 8. 29.* which is *Ramoth* in *Gilead*. The first, which is most often mentioned, is *Rama* of *Benjamin*, seated, as we said, neer *Bethel* the uttermost South-border of the Kingdom of the ten Tribes: for which cause *Basfha* in the time of *Asa* King of *Juda*, fortified it, to hinder those that did flee from him to *Asa*. Of this *Rama*, or *Ramatha*, I should rather think *Joseph* was, that buried *Christ*: because it was neerer to *Hierusalem*, and after the captivity belonged to *Judea*, as it appears, *Ezra. 2. 26.* wherein that it is joyned with *Geba*, it is plain that he speaketh of that *Rama* with whose stones (after *Basfha* had ceased to build it) *Asa* (as it is *2 Reg. 25. 22.*) built *Gebah* adjoining to it: both being in *Benjamin*. And as *Rama* was the South-border of the ten Tribes, so was *Gebah* the North-border of the Kingdom of *Juda*: whence *2 Reg. 23. 8.* we read that *Josiah* through all his Kingdom, even from *Gebah*, which was the North-border, to *Beer-sheba*, which was the South-border, destroyed the places of Idolatry.

The third City *Gibba*, which was the City of *Saul* (the wickedness of which City in the time of the Judges had almost utterly rooted out this Tribe) *Adrichomius* confounds with *Gebah*, making one of two (as they are evidently distinguished, *Ezay. 10. 27.*) of which word (d) *Gibba*, in another from *Gibbath*, he imagineth *Gibbaath*, another City in this Tribe, making two of one. The vicinitie of this City also to *Rama* of *Benjamin* appears *Jud. 19. 13.* where the *Levite* with his wife, not able to reach to *Rama*, took up his lodging at *Gibba*. By that place of *1 Sam. 22. 6.* it seems that there was in this *Gibba* some Tower or Cittadel called *Rama*: where *Junius* reads in excell<sup>o</sup>, for in *Rama*: but it may be that the name of the Kings Palace in this City, was *Rama*: as it seems that in *Rama* of *Sammuel*, the name of the chief place where *Sammel* with the Colledge of Prophets abode, was *Najeth*. The great City of *Hai* overthrowen by *Josiah*, which *Jos. 7. 2.* is placed neer *Beth-aven*, upon the East of *Bethel*, was in this Tribe, as is proved *Neh. 7. 10. 30.* though it is not named by *Jos. c. 18.* for it was burned by him and laid desolate, as it is *Jos. 8. 28.* *In solitudinem, in tumulum perpetuum*. Another City of chief note is reckoned *Jos. 18. 25.* In this Tribe was *Gibbon*, the chief City of the *Hevites*: whose cunning to binde the *Israelites* by oath to save their lives, is set down *Jos. 9.* whence they were reckoned among the \* *Netibinai*, or *Prophetites*, and were bound to certain publique services in the house of God: which oath of laying these *Gebonites*, broken in part after by *Saul*, was by God punished by a famine, *2 Sam. 21. 1.* This *Gibbon*, or *Gibben* with *Almon* and *Jebah* (of both which we have spoken) and with *Hanothoth* the natall place of *Hieremie* the Prophet, were said *Jos. 21. 28.* to be given to the *Levites* by the *Benjaminites*. Neer to this *Hanothoth* was *Nob*, as appears *1 Reg. 2. 26.* where *Ahitath* the Priest, which was of *Nob* before it was destroyed by *Saul*, is sent to his grounds at *Hanothoth*. It is reckoned in the Tribe of *Benjamin*, *Neh. 9. 31.* and though in the time of *Saul* the residing place of the *Arke* was at *Kibeath-jeharim*: yet by the lamentable tragedie of bloodshed, which *Saul* raised in this place (as it is set down *1 Sam. 21. and 22.*) in the judgement of *Junius*, it is proved that the Tabernacle was there for a time.

*Micmas* also in this Tribe, *Nehem. 9. 31.* was a place of fame, of which *Ezay. 10. 30.* where also he nameth *Gallim*, and *Migron* in this Tribe. In *Micmas* *Saul* had his Camp, *1 Sam. 13. 2.* (when he left *Gibba* to *Jonathan*) and there also was *Jonathan Macchabeus* his abode, *1 Macc. 9. 73.* Of *Gibcala* in *Galilee* *Josephus* makes often mention, but of any here in *Benjamin*, which they make the natall place of *S. Paul*, whence (they say) when it was taken by the *Romani*, he failed with his parents to *Tharsis*, of this I find no proof warrant. Other places of lesse importance I omit, and come to the City of *Hierusalem*.

and the Princes and Governours of this City: A great part whereof was in the Tribe of *Benjamin*, whence *Jos. 18. 28.* it is named among the Cities of *Benjamin*.

## §. II.

Of divers memorable things concerning Hierusalem.

AT what time *Hierusalem* was built (which afterward became the Princeesse of all Cities) it doth not appear. Some there are who imagine that *Melchisedec* was the founder thereof in *Abraham*'s time. But, \* according to others, that City out of which \* See in the *Melchisedec* encountered *Abraham* (in his return from the overthrow of the *Affryan* and *Perfian* Kings or Captains, when *Lot* was made prisoner) standeth by the River of *Jordan*, in the half Tribe of *Manasse* bordering *Zabulon*, which was also called *Salem*, and by the Greeks *Solima*.

*Hierusalem* (whenever, or by whomsoever built) was a principall City in *Josua* his time: yet not so renowned as *Hazor* the Metropolis (in those dayes and before) of all the *Canaanites*. *Adonizedek* (whom *Josua* slew) was then King of *Hierusalem*. That it was belonging to the *Jebusites* it is manifest: for how long soever they held it before *Mose* time, they were Masters and Lords thereof almost 400. years after him: even till *David* won it: and therefore in all likelihood, it was by the *Jebusai* (the children of *Jebus* the son of *Canaan*) built; after whom it was called *Jebus*. And so much did that Nation relye on the strength of the place, as when *David* attempted it, they bragged that their lame, and blinde, and impotent people should defend it.

*David*, after he had by Gods assistance possessed it, and turned out the *Jebusites*, gave it an exceeding great increase of circuit; strengthened it with a Citadell or Castle: and beautified it with many Palaces, and other buildings: changing the name from *Jebusalem*, the City of the *Jebusites*, to *Hierusalem*, which the Greeks call *Hierosolyma*. After *David*'s time, *Solomon* amplified, beautified, and strengthened it exceedingly. For besides the work of the Temple, which was no lesse admirable than renowned among all Nations, the Palaces, Gates, and Walls, could not any where in the world be exemplled: and besides, that it had 150000. Inhabitants, the women and children not accounted. The ditch had 60. foot depth, cut out of the very rock: and 250. foot of breadth: whereof the like hath seldom been heard of, either since or before.

After the death of *Solomon*, and that the Kingdom of the Jews was cut asunder, *Shishac* King of *Egypt*, and his Predecessor, having bred for that purpose *Adad* the *Idumean*, and *Jeroboam* *Solomons* servant; and both married to *Egyptians*: the State by the one disturbed, by the other broken: *Shishac* first invaded the Territory of *Juda*, entered *Hierusalem*, and sack't it, and became Master not onely of the riches of *Solomon*, but of all those spoils which *David* had gotten from *Adadezer*, *Tobu*, the *Ammonites*, and other Nations. It was again sack't, and a part of the wall thrown down by *Josiah* King of *Israel*, while *Amasiah* the twelfth King thereof governed *Juda*.

Not long after, *Achaz* the fifteenth King of *Juda* impoverished the Temple, and presented *Teglatphalassar* with the treasures thereof. And *Manasse* the son of *Ezekiah*, the son of *Achaz*, by the vaunts made by *Ezekiah*, to the Embassadors of *Aderodach*, lost the remain, and the very bottom of their treasures. It was again spoiled by the *Babylonians*, *Joachim* then reigning. But this ungratefull, Idolatrous and rebellious Nation, taking no warning by these Gods gentle corrections and afflictions, but persisting in all kinde of impietie, filling the City even to the mouth with innocent blood, God raised up that great *Babylonian* King *Nabuchodonosor*, as his scourge and revenger, who making this glorious City and Temple, with all the Palaces therein, and the Walls and Towers which embraced them, even and level with the dust, carried away the spoiles with the Princes and people, and crush't them with the heavey yoke of bondage and servitude full seventy years, in so much as *Sion* was not onely become as a some and plowed-up field, *Hierusalem* an heape of stones, and rubble, the Mountain of the Temple as a grove, or wood of thorns and briars, but (as *Hierome* speaketh) even the birds of the Ayre loomed to flye over it, or the beasts to tread on that defiled soile.

Then 70. years being expired, according to the prophetic of *Daniel*, and the *Jeremy* *Hier. am. 3.* by the grace of *Cyrus* returned: the Temple was again built, though with interruption *1. 1. Hab.* and

e Of this *Amasiah* I understand the place *1 Macc. 11. 34.* where it is named for one of the three *Priests* which *Demetrius* yeelds to the Jews out of the country of *Samaria*: this lying toward the East to *Jericho*, and *Lidda* toward the West, and *Apherama* (of which even now we speak) lying in the middell between the two other. A sixth *Rama* it seems there was in the Tribe of *Simoon* toward the South, which *Jos. 13. 8.* is called *Rama* of the South, and otherwise *Babath-leer*. d *Gibba* in confederation, that is, Governing a genitive case, is *Gibbath*: whence the *Palace* out of the *Septuagint* reads *Jos. 24. 33.* *Gibbath* *Phinees*: for which *Junius* hath *Celsum* *Phineas* (for this word is oftentimes an Appellative, signifying a Hill) but *Adrichomius* taking notice of this, builds his City *Gabaath* upon this Text, and placeth it in *Benjamin*, when as the words adjoining note that this Hill was in the mountains of *Ephraim*.

\* The word *Netibinim*, or *Netibinai*, is as much as *daii* (as it were *a Deo dati*) or as *Junius* expounds it, *deserviti*: it is used *1 Chron. 23.* and in *Ezra* and *Nehemiah* often.

\* See in the higher half of *Manasse*.

2 Sam. 5. 6.

Jos. cent. Ap. 1. 1. Strab. geog. l. 10.

2 Chron. 12.

2 Kings 14.

2 Kings 15.

1 Chro. 5. 25.

2 Kings 25.

2 Kings 19.

2 Pet. 18.

Mich. 3. Her.

25. 29.

Neb. 12. 34. &amp;c.

\* The first of the Egyptian Kings after Alexander Macedon, who distinguishing his Religion, came up to Hierusalem to offer sacrifice. Jof. 12. ant. 1.

M.T.C. p. 8  
Sylla.

and difficulty enough: and the City meanly inhabited, and without Walls or other defences, for some 60. and odde yeers, till *Nebemia* by the favour of *Artaxerxes* re-built them. Then again was the Temple and City spoiled by *Bagofer*, or *Pagofer*, the Lieutenant of *Artaxerxes*: after by \* *Ptolomeus* the first; then by *Antiochus Epiphanes*: and again by *Apollonius* his Lieutenant. By *Pompey* it was taken long after, but not destroyed, nor robbed, though *Cassius* in his *Parthian* expedition took as much as he could of that which *Pompey* spared.

But the damages which it sustained by the violence of sacrilegious Tyrants, were commonly recompensed by the industry or bounty of good Princes, the voluntary contribution of the people, and the liberality of strangers. Before the captivity, the people of the Land, through the exhortation of godly Kings, made many and large offerings to repair the Temple of *Solomon*. The wrong done by *Ptolomeus Lagus* to the second Temple, was requited by the bounty of his son *Ptolomeus Philadelphus*. The mischief wrought by *Antiochus Epiphanes* and his followers, was amended partly by the great offerings which were sent to *Hierusalem* out of other Nations. Finally, all the losses, which either the City or Temple had endured, might well seem forgotten in the reign of *Herod*, that usurping and wicked, but magnificent King, who amplified the City, new built the Temple, and with many sumptuous works did to adorn them, that he left them far more stately and glorious than they had been in the dayes of *Solomon*.

## §. III.

Of the destruction of Hierusalem by the Romanes.

Eld. 4. 45.

IN this flourishing estate it was at the coming of our Saviour Christ Jesus: and after his death and ascension, it so continued about fourty yeers. But then did *Timotheus the Romane*, being stirred up by God to be the revenger of Christ his death, and to punish the Jews sinfull ingratitude, incompasse it with a *Romane* Army, and became Lord thereof. He began the siege at such time as the Jews from all parts were come up to the celebration of the *Passover*: so as the City was then filled with many hundreds of thousands of all sorts: and no manner of provision or store for any such multitudes. An extreme famine, with the civill dissension, oppress them within the Walls; a terrible enemy assailed them without. The *Idumeans* also, who lay in wait for the destruction of the Jews Kingdome, thrust themselves into the City, of purpose to betray it: who also burnt the Temple, when *Nabuchadonisor* took it. And to be short, they perished of all sorts, from the first besieging, to the consummation of the victory, eleven hundred thousand souls: and the City was so beaten down and demolished, as those which came afterward to see the desolation thereof, could hardly believe that there had been any such place or habitation. Onely the three *Herodian* Towers, (works most magnificent, and over-topping the rest) were spared, as well for lodging for the *Romane* Garrisons, as that thereby their victory might be the more notorious and famous: for by those buildings of strength and state remaining, after ages might judge what the rest were; and their honour be the greater and more shining, that there-over became victorious.

After this, such Jews as were scattered here and there in *Judea*, and other Provinces, began again to inhabit some part of the City; and by degrees to re-build it, and strengthen it as they could, being then at peace, and Tributaries to the *Romane* State: but after 65. yeers, when they again offered to revolt and rebell, *Elins Adrianus* the Emperor slaughtered many thousands of them, and overturned those three *Herodian* Towers, with all the rest, making it good which Christ himself had foretold; that there should not stand one stone upon another of that ungratefull City. Afterward, when his fury was appeased, and the prophecy accomplished, he took one part without the Wall, wherein stood *Mount Calvary*, and the Sepulchre of Christ, and excluding of the rest the greatest portion, he again made it a City of great capacity, and called it after his own name, *Elia Capitolia*. In the gate toward *Bethel*, he caused a Sow to be cut in Marble, and set it in the front thereof, which he did in despite of the Jews Nation: making an Edict, that they should not from thence-forth ever enter into the City, neither should they dare so much as to behold it from any other high place over-topping it.

But the Christian Religion flourishing in *Palestina*, it was inhabited at length by all Nations, and especially by Christians; and so it continued 500. yeers.

It was afterward in the 636. year after Christ, taken by the Egyptian Saracens, who held it 400. and odde yeers.

In the year 1099. it was regained by *Godfrey* of *Buiklon*, by assault, with an exceeding slaughter of the Saracens; which *Godfrey*, when he was elected King thereof, refused to be crowned with a Crown of Gold, because Christ, for whom he fought, was therein crowned with thorns. After this recovery, it remained under the Succellours of *Godfrey* fourscore & eight yeers: till in the year 1197. it was regained by *Saladine* of *Egypt*: and lastly, in the year 1517. in the time of *Selim*, the Turks cast out the Egyptians, who now hold it, and call it *Cuzumbarce*, or the Holy City. Neither was it *Hierusalem* alone that hath so often times been beaten down and made desolate, but all the great Cities of the World have with their Inhabitants, in severall times and ages, suffered the same shipwrack. And it hath been Gods just will, to the end others might take warning, if they would, not onely to punish the impiety of men, by famine, by the sword, by fire, and by slavery; but he hath revenged himself of the very places they possess; of the walls and buildings, yea, of the soil and the beasts that fed thereon.

For even that land, sometime called holy, hath in effect lost all her fertility and fruitfulness; witness the many hundreds of thousands which it fed in the dayes of the Kings of *Juda* and *Israel*; it being at this time all over, in effect, exceeding stony and barren. It also pleased God, not onely to consume with fire from heaven the Cities of the *Sodomites*; but the very soil it self hath felt, and doth feel the hand of God to this day. God would not spare the beasts that belonged to *Amalek*, no not any small number of them to be sacrificed to himself: neither was it enough that *Achan* himself was stoned, but that his moveables were so consumed and brought to ashes.

## §. IV.

Of the vain and malicious reports of Heathen Writers, touching the ancient Jews.

OF the originall of the Jews, prophane Writers have conceived diversly and injuriously. *Quintilian* speaks infamously of them, and of their Leader; who (saith he) gathered together a pernicious Nation. *Diodore* and *Strabo* make them Egyptians. Others affirm, that while *Ips* governed *Egypt*, the people were so increased, as *Hierosolymus* and *Judas* led thence a great multitude of that Nation, with whom they planted the neighbour Regions: which might be meant by *Moses* and *Aaron*: for the name of *Moses* was accidentall, because he was taken up and saved out of the waters. But *Justin*, of all other most malicious, doth derive the Jews from the Syrian Kings; of whom, *Damasus*, saith he, was the first: and to him succeeded *Abraham*, *Moses*, and *Israel*. He again suppoeth (somewhat contrary to himself) that *Israel* had ten sons, among whom he divided the land of *Juda*; so called of *Judas* his eldest, who had the greatest portion. The youngest of the sons of *Israel* he calleth *Joseph*: who being brought up in *Egypt*, became learned in Magicall Arts, and in the interpretation of Dreams, and signes prodigious; and this *Joseph* (saith he) was father to *Moses*: who with the rest, by reason of their foul diseases, and lest they should infect others, were banished *Egypt*. Further, he telleth how these men thus banished, when in the Desarts they suffered extreme thirst and famine, and therein found relief the seventh day, for this cause ever after observed the seventh day, and kept it Holy; making it a law among themselves, which afterward became a branch of their Religion. He addeth also, that they might not marry out of their own Tribes, lest discovering their uncleanness, they might also be expelled by other Nations, as they were by the Egyptians. These and the like fables hath *Justin*.

*Cornelius Tacitus* doth as grossly belie them, in affirming, that in the inmost Oratorie of their Temple, they had the golden head of an Asse, which they adored. But herein *Tacitus* forgetteth himself, having in the fifth book of his own History truly confessed of the Jews, that they worshipped one onely God: and thought it most prophane

L1

to

to represent the *Deity* by any materiall figure, by the shape of a man, or any other creature: and they had therefore in their Temples no Image or Representation, no not so much as in any City by them inhabited. Somewhat like this hath *Alexander Polyhistor*, in *Stephanus*; who also makes *Judas* with *Ishmael*, the first parents of the *Jews*.

Cited by Stephanus in Judea.

*Claudius Iohann* draws them from *Judeus*, whose parents were *Sparton* and *Thebis*, whence it came, that the *Spartans* or *Lacedæmonians* challenged kinred of the *Hebrews*: but they did it as descended of *Abraham*, saith *Josephus*. Some of these reports seem to have been gathered out of divine letters, though wrested and perverted, according to the custome of the Heathen. For so have they obscured and altered the Story of the Creation, of *Paradise*, of the Flood; and given new names to the children of *Adam* in the first age, to *Noah* and his sons in the second: and so to *Abraham*, *Isaac*, and *Jacob*, *Moses*, and the rest of the Fathers, and Leaders of the *Hebrews*: all which feignings, as touching the *Jews* and their originalls, *Josephus* against *Appion*, and *Tertullian* have sufficiently answered. For that the *Hebrews* were the children of *Arphaxad* and *Heber*, no man doubteth: and so *Chaldeans* originally, taking name either of *Heber*, the son of *Sale*, or else (saith *Montanus*) of wandering, as is before remembred. And therefore doth *Stephanus*, the Greek *Goanarian*, derive the *Hebrews* or *Jews*, from *Araban*; having mistaken the name of *Abraham*, who was the son of *Heber*, in the sixth descent. Their ancient names were first changed by the two grand-children of *Abram*: for after *Jacob*, otherwise *Israel*, the chief part were called *Israel*, another part after *Esau* or *Edom*, *Edomites*; at length the remnant of *Jacob*, being most of the Tribe of *Juda*, honoured the name of *Judas*, the son of *Jacob*, and became *Judeans*, or *Jews*: as also for a time in the name of *Ephraim* the son of *Joseph*, the chief of the *Patriarchs* of the ten Tribes, the rest of the ten Tribes were comprehended: but were first rooted out when the Kingdome of *Israel* fell. The *Judeans* continued their names, though they suffered the same servitude not long after, under *Nabuchodonosor*.

Tert. in Apol.

Cal. b. 55.

The government which this Nation under-went, was first paternall: which continued till they served the *Egyptians*. They were secondly ruled by their Captains and Leaders, *Moses* and *Josua*, by a policie Divine. Thirdly, they subjected themselves to Judges. Fourthly, they desired a King, and had *Saul* for the first: Of whom, and his Successours, before we intreat, we are first to speak of their government under Judges, after the death of *Josua*: with somewhat of the things of Fame in other Nations about these times.

### CHAP. XIII.

Of the memorable things that happened in the World, from the death of *Josua*, to the War of *Troy*: which was about the time of *Jephtha*.

#### §. I.

Of the Inter-regnum after *Josua's* death: and of *Othoniel*.

**W**hen *Josua* was now dead, who with the advice of the 70. Elders, and the high Priest, held authority over the people, and ordered that Common-weal: it pleased God to direct the Tribe of *Juda* (in whom the Kingdome was afterward established) to undertake the War against the *Canaanites*, over whom (with Gods favour, and the assistance of *Simeon*) they became victorious.

In the first attempt which they made, they not onely slew ten thousand, but made *Adonibezek* prisoner: the greatest and cruellest Commander, both of the *Canaanites* and *Perizites*. This tyrants cruelty, as elsewhere hath been signified, they returned in the same kinde upon his own head: and so by the torments which he now felt in his own person (before no otherwise known unto him but by his malicious imagination) made him confesse and acknowledge Gods judgements against himself.

The Tribes of *Juda* and *Simeon* did also master and possesse during this Inter-regnum

Saccæa

The desert A

Agræi

Site of Saba from whence the Sabæans spread to  
 Aladamas mons



Arabia the stonie

Agubeni



(or as some think, before the death of *Josua*) the Cities of *Azotus*, *Askelon*, *Ebron*, and *Hierusalem*, which they burnt, and the *Jebusites* after re-edified. They took also the Cities of *Hebron*, *Debir*, or *Kiriathsepher*, and *Zephath*, afterwards *Horma*. And although it be not set down in expresse words that any one person commanded in chief over the people, as *Moses* and *Josua* did: yet it seemeth that *Caleb* was of greatest authority among them: and that he, with the advice of *Phineas*, directed and ordered their wars. For if any think that they proceeded without a Chief, the good successe which followed their undertakings, witnesseth the contrary. And it was *Caleb*, even while *Josua* governed, as appears, *Jos. 10. 39.* that propounded the attempt of *Debir*, to the rest of the Captains: for the performance of which enterprise, he promised his daughter *Achsah*: which he performed to *Othoniel* his younger brother after the conquest: whose behaviour in that service was such, as (next unto the ordinance of God) it gave him the greatest reputation among them, and may be esteemed the second cause of his pre-ferment and election for their first Judge soon after. But while those of *Juda* made war with their borderers, from whom they onely recovered the mountainous Countries (for they could not drive out the Inhabitants of the Vallies, because they had Chariots of *Judg. 1. 19.* Iron.) The rest of the Tribes sought also to enlarge and establish their own Territories. In which they laboured with variable successe: for as the house of *Joseph* re-*Judg. 1. 25.* covered *Ephel*, or *Luz*, from the *Hittites*, so did the *Amorites* recover from *Dan* all the *Judg. 1. 30.* plain Countries, and forc't them to save themselves in the Mountains. And now the *Israelites*, unmindfull of Gods benefits, and how often he had miraculously a-force-time defended them, and made them victorious over their enemies (the Elders being also consumed, who better advised them in the *Inter-regnum*) did not onely joyn themselves in marriage with the Heathen Nations: but (that which was more detestable) they served the Idols of *Baal*, and *Asteroth*, with other the dead gods of the *Canaanites* and *Amorites*. And therefore did the Lord God, whom they had provoked with their Idolatry, deliver them into the hands of the *Aramites* of *Mesopotamia*, whom *Chusban Rishathaim* at that time commanded. But after they had felt the smart of Gods displeasure against them eight yeers, it pleased him to have compassion on his people, and to raise up *Othoniel* to be their Judge and Leader: who by God assisted, delivered *Judg. 3. 10.* his brethren from oppression, and inforced the *Aramites* to return into their own *Deserts*, and into *Mesopotamia* adjoining: after which the *Israelites* had peace forty yeers, during all the time of *Othoniels* government. This *Othoniel* is thought by *Tostatus* to have been the younger brother of *Caleb*, for as much as in the book of *Judges*, he is twice called *Othoniel*, the son of *Cenaz*, *Calebs* younger brother. Others do rather interpret those words [*Calebs* younger brother] as if they signified the meanest of his kindred. Indeed it is not likely that *Calebs* Daughter should marry with her own Uncle; yet it follows not therefore that *Othoniel* should have been the meanest of the kindred. Wherefore we may better think that he was the Nephew of *Caleb*, (as some learned men expound it) and as the very words of Scripture seem to enforce. For *Caleb* was the son of *Jephunneth*, and *Othoniel* the son of *Cenaz*, *Calebs* younger brother; that is, he was not brother to *Caleb*, but his younger brothers son; to whom it was not onely lawfull, but commendable to marry with his Cousin German *Calebs* daughter.

How long it was from the death of *Josua*, to the government of *Othoniel*, it cannot be found: but it seems to have been no short time. For many wars were made in that space against the people of the Land. *Laish* was then taken (as is thought) by the *Danites*; and the best Writers are of opinion, that between the times of *Josua* and *Othoniel*, that civill war brake out between the *Benjamites* and the rest of *Israel*, for the forcing to death of the *Levites* Wife. For it is written, that in those dayes there was no King in *Israel*, but every man did that which was good in his own eyes. And as *Juda* led the people against the *Canaanites* during the *Inter-regnum*, so was he commanded to do against *Benjamin*, even by the Lord God, whose direction they craved, as wanting a Judge to appoint what should be done; which sheweth it to have been when *Josua* was dead, and before the government of *Othoniel*, especially considering, that all other times wherein they wanted Governours, were spent under such oppression of strangers, as would have given them no leave to have attempted such a civill war,



war, if their power had been as great, as it was in the managing of this action; wherein they so weakened the body of their estate, by effusion of blood, that in many ages they could not bring into the field such numbers as formerly they had mustered against their bordering enemies.

## §. II.

Of the memorable things of this age in other Nations: and of the difficulty in the computation of times.

Here lived in this age of *Othoniel*, *Pandon* or *Pandareus*, according to *Homer*, the fifth King of *Athens*; who began to rule in the twentieth year of *Othoniel*, and governed forty years. He was father to *Eriothens*: his daughters were *Progne* and *Philomela*, so greatly mentioned in fables.

*Cadmus* also about this time obtained *Thebes*: of whose daughter *Semela* was born *Dionysus*, or *Liber Pater*: under whom *Linus* the *Musician* lived. In his time also the Cities of *Melus*, *Paphus*, and *Tharphus* were built.

*Ida* and *Dalylus* flourished in this age, who are said to have found out the use of Iron: but *Genesis* hath taught us the contrary, and that *Tubalcain* long before wrought cunningly both in Iron and Brasse. Not long after this time, *Amphion* and *Zethus* governed *Thebes*: whom divers *Chronologers* find in *Ehuds* time. But *S. Augustine* making a repetition of those fables, which were devised among the *Grecians* and other Nations, during the government of the Judges, begins with *Triptolemus*, of whose parentage there is as little agreement. *Vives* upon the thirteenth Chapter of *S. Augustine de Civit. Dei*, and the eighteenth book, hath gathered all the opinions of this mans progenie, where he that desires his pedigree may find it. *Laetantius* and *Eusebius* make him native of *Attica*: and the son of *Elenius* King of *Elenus*: which *Elenus* by careful industry had fed the people of that Territory in the time of a great famine. This, when upon the like occasion *Triptolemus* could not perform, fearing the fury of the people, he fled thence by Sea in a kinde of Galley or long Boat, which carried in her Prow a graven or carved Serpent: who because he made exceeding great speed to return and to relieve his people with Corn, from some neighbour Nation: it was feigned by the Poets, that his Coach was carried by Serpents through the aire.

Whether the times of these Kings, which lived together with *Othoniel*, and after him, with the rest of the Judges and Kings of *Israel* and *Juda*, be precisely set down, I cannot avow; for the *Chronologers*, both of the former and latter times, differ in many particulars; to examine all which would require the whole time of a long life: and therefore I desire to be excused, if in these comparisons I erre with others of better judgement. For whether *Eusebius* and all that follow him, or his opposites (who make themselves so conversant with these ancient Kings, and with the very year when they began to rule) have hit the mark of time, of all other the farthest off and most defaced, I cannot but greatly doubt. First, because the Authours themselves, from whom the ancient *Chronologers* have borrowed light, had nothing for the warrant of their own works, but conjecture. Secondly, because their own disagreement and contention in those elder dayes, with that of our own age among the labourers in times, is such, as no man among them hath yet so edified any mans understanding, save his own; but that he is greatly distracted, after what pattern to erect his buildings.

This disagreement is found not only in the reigns of Heathen Kings and Princes; but even in the computation of those times which the indisputable authority of holy Scripture hath summed up, as in that of *Abrahams* birth; and after in the times of the Judges and the oppressions of *Israel*, in the times from the egression to the building of *Solomons* Temple, in the *Persian* Empire, the seventy Weeks, and in what not? Wherefore the account of times may suffer examination, the arguments are opposite, and contentions are such, as for ought that I see, men have fought by so many ways to uncover the Sun, that the dayes thereby are made more dark, and the clouds more condensed than before: I can therefore give no other warrant, than other men have done in these computations: and therefore that such and such Kings and Kingdoms took beginning in this

Gen. 4. 12.  
Whence came  
the name of  
Vulcan by A-  
phrodite of the  
two first let-  
ters.  
Aug. de civit.  
Dei, l. 18. c. 13.

or that year, I avow it no otherwise than as a borrowed knowledge; or at least as a private opinion: which I submit to better judgements. *Nam in prisca rebus veritas non ad unum querenda; In ancient things we are not to require an exact narration of the truth, sayes Diodore.*

## §. III.

Of *Ehuds* time, and of *Proserpina*, *Orithya*, *Tercus*, *Tantalus*, *Tytius*, *Admetus*, and others that lived about these times.

After the death of *Othoniel*, when *Israel* fell back to their former Idolatry, God incouraged *Moab* to invade and suppress them: to perform which, he joyned the forces of *Ammon*, and *Amalec* unto his own, and so (as all kinde of misery readily findeth out those whom God hath abandoned, or for a time with-drawn his help from, thereby to make them feel the difference between his grace and his displeasure) these Heathen neighbouring Nations had an easie conquest over *Israel*, whom God himself exposed to those perills, within which they were so speedily folded up. In this miserable estate they continued full eighteen yeers under *Eglon* King of the *Moabites* and his confederates. Yet, as the mercies of God are infinite, he turned not his cares from their crying repentance: but raised up *Ehud* the son of *Gera* to deliver them: by which weak man, though maimed in his right hand, yet confident in the justnesse of his quarrell, and fearing that the *Israelites* were too few in numbers to contend with the Head of those valiant Nations, he resolved to attempt upon the person of *Eglon*, whom if he could but extinguish, he assured himself of the following victory: especially giving his Nation no time to re-establish their government, or to choose a King to command and direct them in the Wars. According to which resolution, *Ehud* went on as an Embassadour to *Eglon*, loaden with presents from the *Israelites*, as to appease him, and obtaining private access; upon the pretence of some secret to be revealed, he pierc't his body with a Poniard, made of purpose with a double edge: and shutting the doors of his closet upon him, escaped.

It may seem, that being confident of his good successe, he had prepared the strength of *Israel* in readinesse. For suddenly after his return, he did re-passe *Jordan*, and invading the Territory of *Moab*, overthrew their Army, consisting of 10000, able and strong men: whereof not any one escaped. After which victory, and that *Samgar* his Successour had miraculously slain 600. *Philistims* with an Oxe goad: the Land and People of *Israel* lived in peace unto the end of fourscore yeers from the death of *Othoniel*, which term expired in the Worlds year 2691.

In the dayes of *Ehud*, *Naomi*, with *Eliamelech* her husband, and with her two sons, travelled into *Moab*, and so the story of *Ruth* is to be referred to this time. About the beginning of the fourscore yeers which are given to *Ehud*; it was that *Orcus* King of the *Molossians*, otherwise *Pluto*, stole *Proserpina*, as she walked to gather flowers in the fields of *Syracusa* in *Sicilia*: or (according to *Pausanias*) by the River *Cephissus*, which else-where he calleth *Chemer*, if he mean not two distinct Rivers. This stealth being made known to *Pyrithous*, with whom *Hercules* and *Theseus* joyned themselves, they agreed together to recover her: but *Pluto*, or *Orcus* (whom others call *Aidonius*) had (as they say) a very huge Dogge, which fastened on *Pyrithous*, and tare him in pieces, and had also worried *Theseus*, but that *Hercules* speedily rescued him, and by strength took and mastered the Dogge *Cerberus*: whereof grew the fable of *Hercules* his delivering *Theseus* out of Hell. But *Zeux*, as I take it, hath written this story somewhat more according to the truth. For *Theseus* and *Pyrithous*, faith he, attempted to steal *Proserpina* Daughter to *Aidonius*, King of the *Molossians*, who had *Ceres* to Wife, the mother of *Proserpina*: *Proserpina* being a general name also for all fair women. This purpose of theirs being known to *Aidonius*, *Theseus* and *Pyrithous* were both taken; and because *Pyrithous* was the principall in this conspiracy; and *Theseus* drawn on by a kinde of affection or enforcement, the one was given for food to *Aidonius* his great Dogge *Cerberus*, the other held prisoner, till *Hercules*, by the instigation of *Enrichus*, delivered him by strong hand. The *Molossi*, which *Stephanns* writes with a single *S* were a people of *Epirus*, inhabiting neer the Mountains of *Pindus*: of which Mountains

Octa is one of the most famous, where *Hercules* burnt himself. The River of *Acheron* (which the Poets describe to be in Hell) riseth out of the same Hills. There is another Nation of the *Molossi* in *Thessali*: but these are neighbours to the *Cassiopei*, faithful in his Greek questions.

The rape of *Orithya*, the daughter of *Erythraeus*, King of *Athens*, taken away by *Boreas* of *Thrace*, is referred to the time of *Ehnd*. The Poets ascribe this rape to the Northwinde, because *Thrace* is situate North from *Athens*. In this time also *Tereus* ravished *Philomela*, of which the fable was devised of her conversion into a Nightingale. For *Tereus* having married her sister *Progne*, conducting *Philomela* from *Athens* to see her sister, forced her in her passage, and withall cut out her tongue, that she might not complain; perswading *Progne* his Wife, that *Philomela* died in the mid-way: all which her brother-in-laws mercilesse behaviour towards her, *Philomela* expressed by her needle upon cloth, and sent unto *Progne*. In revenge whereof, *Progne* caused her only son *Itys* to be cut in pieces, and set before *Tereus* her husband, so drest as it appeared to be some other ordinary food: of which when he had eaten his fill, she caused his head, hands and feet, to be presented unto him: and then fled away with such speed towards *Athens*, where her Father *Pandion* yet lived, as the Poets feigned, that she was turned into a Swallow. The place where it was performed, *Strabo* findes to be *Daulis* in *Phocis*: and the Tomb of *Ierens*, *Pausanias* hath built near the Rocks *Myri*, in the Territory of *Athens*. By which, as also by the name *Daulis*, where these things are supposed to have been done (whence also *Philomela* is called *Daulias ales*) it appears that it is true, which *Thucydides* notes by way of digression in his *Peloponnesian War*, That this *Tereus* was not King in that which is now called *Thracia*, or in *Odryse*, (as the Poets call him *Odrysius*) but that *Phocis* a Countrie in Greece not far from *Attica*, a City whereof is called *Daulia*, was in *Pandions* time inhabited by *Thracians*, of which this *Tereus* was King: whence *Pandion*, to have amity with his neighbours, made him his son-in-law: as it is good to beleieve, faith *Thucydides*, that *Pandion* King of *Athens* made that alliance with a neighbour King, from whom he might have succour, rather than with any *Tereus*, that should have held the Kingdom of *Odryse*, which was greatly distant from thence. The occasion that the Poets chose for *Swallow* for *Progne* to be turned into, may seem to have been, partly because, as *Pausanias* says, *Lanius nec nidificans, nec habitans in tota circum regione Hirundines*; as if a Swallow, remembering the wrong that was there done to her, and her sister, did forever after hate that place.

Neer this time *Melampus* (who is said to have understood the voices of Birds and Beasts) flourished, being also esteemed for an excellent Physician. He restored to their former health the Daughters of *Prætus* King of the *Argives*, who (as the Poets please) were made mad by *Juno*: and thinking themselves to be Kine, fled into the Woods, fearing to be constrained to the Plough: for in those Countries where the ground was light, they did use often to plough with Kine.

In the seven and fortieth year of *Ehnd*, *Tros* began to reign in *Dardania*, and gaveit his own name; about which time *Phemone* the chief Priest of *Apollo* in *Delfos*, devised the Heroicall Verse.

Of the same date was *Tantalus*, King of *Lydia*: whom *Ensebius* makes King of *Phrygia*: and also of that part of which the people were anciently *Maones*. Of *Tantalus* was devised the fable that some Poets have applied to the passion of love: and some to the covetous that dare not enjoy his riches. *Ensebius* calls this *Tantalus* the son of *Jupiter*, by the *Nymph Pleia*: *Dionysius* and *Didymus* in *Zeuxer*, give him another mother. He was said to be the son of *Jupiter*, as some will have it; because he had that Planet in his ascendent, betokening Wildom and Riches. It is said, that when he made a feast to the gods, having nothing more precious, he caused his own son to be slain and drest to the banquet: of whom *Ceres* ate part of one of the shoulders; whereby was signified, that those men which seek after Divine knowledge, preferre nothing on earth before it: no not the care of their own children, of all else the most dearest. And where it was devised, that he had always Water and Fruit offered to his lips, and yet suffered the torment of hunger and thirst, it was meant thereby, that though he abounded (by reason of his riches) in all delicacy of the world, yet his minde being otherwise, and to higher desires transported, he enjoyed no pleasure at all by the rest. Of whom *Ovid*:

Lib. 9.  
Paus. in Att.

Thucyd. l. 2.

Paus. l. 1.  
Homer. Odys. 11.

Paus.

Ensebius. prep. E.  
l. 1. c. 1. 2. Zeuxer.  
hili. 10. Chil. 5.

*Quærit aquas in aquis, & poma fugacia captat*  
*Tantalus, hoc illi garrula lingua dedit.*

Here *Tantalus* in water seeks for water, and doth misse  
The fleeting fruit he catcheth at: His long tongue brought him this.

This punishment, they say, was inflicted upon him, for that he discovered the secrets of the gods: that is, because he taught wisdom and vertue to mortal men: which story *Cornelius Gallus* hath elegantly exprest in Verse. Others expound this fable otherwise, and say, That *Tantalus*, though he excelled in riches, yet being thirsty of more abundance, was never satisfied. Of whom *Horace* against covetousnesse.

*Tantalus à labiis sitiens fugientia captat*  
*Flumina; quid rides? mutato nomine de te*  
*Fabula narratur.*

The thirsting *Tantalus* doth catch at streams that from him flee.  
Why laughest thou? the name but chang'd, the tale is told of thee.

Others conceive, where it is feigned of *Tantalus*, that he gave the *Nectar* and *Ambrosia* of the gods to vain and unworthy men, that he was therefore by them in that sort punished. Of which *Natalis* out of *Pindarus*:

*Immortalitatem quod furatus,*  
*Coetaneis conviviis*  
*Nectar Ambrosiamque dedit.*

Because that stealing immortality,  
He did both *Nectar* and *Ambrosia* give  
To guests of his own age, to make them live.

Whereby it was meant, that the secrets of Divinity ought not to be imparted to the impure Vulgar. For as the cleaneſt meats in a foule stomack, are therein corrupted, so the most high and reserved mysteries are often perverted by an unclean and defiled minde.

To you it is given (faith *Christ* in *Mark*) to know the mysterie of the Kingdom of God, Mark 4. 11.  
but unto them that are without, all things be done in parable. So it is said of him, that he expounded all things to his Disciples apart. And therefore doth *Gregory Nazianzene* infer upon a place of *S. Paul*: *Quod si Paulo licuisset effari ea, quorum ipsi cognitionem celum vertitum & usque ad illud progressio suppeditavit, fortasse de Deo, nobis aliquid amplius constaret*; if *Paul* might have uttered the things, the knowledge whereof the third Heavens, and his going thither, did bring unto him, peradventure we might know somewhat more of God.

*Pythagoras*, faith *Revelin*, thought it not the part of a wise man, *Astrologum* exponere, aut mysteria, que ita reciperet, ut suscipiam, & fidem gratulus, & unguenta *Scarabæus*: quæ silentium indixit discipulis, ne ulgo divinarum arcana patefacerent, quæ meditando facilius quam loquendo apprehendantur; To set an *Ass* to a harp, or to learn mysteries: which he would handle as a Swine doth a Trumpet, or a Jay a Violl, or *Scarabæus*, and unclean sties soveraigne oymment. Wherefore he commanded silence to his Disciples, that they should not disclose divines mysteries to the common sort, which are easier learned by meditation than by babling. And therefore did the *Egyptians* communicate their mysteries among their Priests in certain Hieroglyphick letters, to the end that their secrets might be hidden from the vulgar; and that they might bestow the more time in the contemplation of their covered meanings.

But to proceed with the contemporaries of *Aod*, or *Ehnd*, with him it is also said, that *Titus* lived, whom *Apollo* slew, because he fought to force his mother *Latona*. *Emphorion* hath it thus, that *Titus* was the son of *Elara*, the Daughter of *Orchomenus*; which *Elara* being beloved of *Jupiter*, to avoid *Juno*'s revenge, he hid *Elara* in the earth, where she was delivered of *Titus*: whose Mother dying, and himself therein nourished, he was therefore called the son of the earth. *Pausanias* speaking of the grave of this Giant, affirms, that his body occupied the third part of a furlong. But *Tibullus* hath a louder lie of his stature out of *Homer*:

Por-

Hom. O. d. 11.

*Torreſſique novem Titus per jugera terra,  
Alfidus atro viſcere paſcit aves.*

Nine ſhillongs ſtrecht lies *Titus*, who for his wicked deeds,  
The hungry Birds with his renewing liver daily feeds.

This *Strabo* doth thus expound; That *Apollo* killing this cruell and wicked Tyrant of *Panopea*, a City in *Phocia*, it was feigned by the Poets, to the terrour of others, That he was ſtill eaten in Hell by birds, and yet ſtill lived, and had his fleſh renewed.

*Admetus*, King of *Itheſſaly*, lived alſo in this age, whom it is ſaid that *Apollo* firſt lov'd as a Herd-man, and afterward, for his excellent wit, was by him advanced; but having ſlain *Hyacinthus*, he croſt the *Helleſpont*, and fled into *Phrygia*: where, together with *Neptune*, he was entertained by *Laomedon*, and got his bread by working in brick, for building of the walls of *Troy*, not by making the bricks leap into their Laces by playing on his Harp: according to him in *Ovid*, which ſaith:

*Ilion aſpicias, firmataque turribus altis  
Mœnia, Apollineæ ſtructa canore lyra.*

Strong *Ilion* thou ſhalt ſee with walls and towers high,  
Built with the harp of wiſe *Apollo's* Harmony.

Thus the Poets: but others, that he laboured with his hands, as hired in this work. And that he alſo laboured at the building of the *Labyrinth* in *Greece*, all the *Mægarian* witneſſe, ſaith *Pausanias*.

Paus. in Att.

In theſe daies alſo of *Ehnd*, or (as ſome finde it) in the daies of *Deborah*, lived *Perſeus*, the ſon of *Jupiter* and *Danae*, by whole ſouldiers (as they ſailed out of *Peloponneſus*, to ſeek their adventure on *Africa* ſide) *Meduſa*, the Daughter and Succellor of *Phœbus*, being weakly accompanied as the hunted, near the Lake *Triton*, was ſurprized and ſlain: whoſe beauty, when *Perſeus* beheld, he cauſed her head to be embalmed, and caried into *Greece*: the beauty whereof was ſuch, and ſo much admired, and the beholders ſo aſtoniſhed which beheld it, as thereof grew the fiction, That all that looked on *Meduſa's* head, were turned into ſtones.

*Triton* a Lake of *Africa*, which *Plinie* calleth *Palan-riat*. *Diſſim.* in peregr. Hiſt.

Eufeb. in Chro.

*Cærops*, the ſecond of that name, and 7. King of *Athens*, and *Acriſus* the 13. or, after *Eufebius*, the 14. King of the *Argives*, began alſo their reigns, as it is ſaid, in the time of this Judge: of which the firſt ruled 40. yeers, and the ſecond 31. yeers. Alſo *Bellerophon* lived in this age, being the ſon of *Glaucus*, the ſon of *Sifyphus*: who inticed by *Attea*, or *Sthenobia*, the wife of *Petrus*, to accompany her, but reſuſing it, ſhe accuſed him to her husband, that he offered to force her: whereupon *Petrus* ſent *Bellerophon* into *Lycia*, about ſome affairs of weight, between him and his ſon-in-law *Jobates*: giving ſecret order to *Jobates* to diſpatch him: but *Jobates* thinking it diſhonourable to lay violent hands on him, employed him againſt *Chimera*, a Monster vomiting, or breathing fire. Now the gods (as the report is) pitying his innocency, ſent him the winged Horſe, *Pegasus*, ſprung up of the blood of *Meduſa*, formerly ſlain by the ſouldiers of *Perſeus* in *Africa*, to tranſport him; a horſe that none other could maſter or bridle but *Minerva*: upon which beaſt *Bellerophon* over-came *Chimera*: and performed the other ſervices given him in charge: which done, as he returned toward *Lycia*, the *Lycians* lay in ambuſh to have ſlain him: but being victorious alſo over all thoſe, he arrived to *Jobates* in ſafety: whom *Jobates* for his eminent virtues honoured, firſt with one of his Daughters: and afterward with his Kingdom: after which he grew ſo indolent, as he attempted to ſlie up to heaven upon his *Pegasus*: whoſe pride *Jupiter* diſſuading, cauſed one of his ſtinging flies ſo to vex *Pegasus*, as he caſt off *Bellerophon* from his back, into the Valley of *Cilicia*, where he died blinde; of which burthen *Pegasus* being diſcharged (as the fable goeth) flew back to heaven: and being fed in *Jupiter's* own ſtable, *Aurora* begg'd him of *Jupiter* to ride on before the Sun. This tale is diversly expounded; aſirſt by ſome, That it pleaſeth God to relieve men in their indolent and undeſerved adverſity, and to caſt down thoſe which are too high minded: according to that which is ſaid of *Bellerophon*: that when he was expoſed to extreme hazard, or rather certain death; he found both deliverance and honour: but waxing over-

proud and preſumptuous in his glorious fortunes, he was again thrown down into the extremeſt of ſorrow, and ever-during miſerie. Secondly by others, That under the name of *Chimera*, was meant a cruell Pyrat of the *Lycians*, whoſe ſhip had in her prow a Lyon, a Goate in the mid-ſhip, and a Dragon in the ſtearn, of which three beaſts this Monster *Chimera* was ſaid to be compounded, whom *Bellerophon* purſued with a kinde of Galley, of ſuch ſwiftneſſe, that it was called the flying Horſe: to whom the invention of ſayls (the wings of a ſhip) are alſo attributed. Many other expoſitions are made of this tale by other Authors: but it is not unlikely, that *Chimera* was the name of a ſhip, for ſo *Virgil* calleth one of the greateſt ſhips of *Æneas*.

L. 5. *Æneid.*  
Homer in *Iliad*:  
ad *Apoll.*

10 *Imallo*, from whom the *Athenians* (being ignorant of the antiquitie of their parent *Jæon*) derive their name of *Iones*, is ſaid to have been about *Ehnd's* time: *Homer* calls them *Jæon*, which hath a neer reſemblance to the word *Jævan*. Perhaps it might be ſo that *Jon* himſelf took name from *Jævan*: it being a cuſtome obſervable in the Hiſtories of all times, to revive the ancient name of a fore-father, in ſome the principall of his iſſue.

The invasion of *India* by *Liber-Pater*, is by ſome reported as done in this age: but *S. Lib.* 18. c. 12. de *Asyſtime* makes him far more ancient: placing him between the coming out of *Egypt*, and the death of *Joſua*.

About the end of the 80. yeers, aſcribed to *Ehnd*, and *Samgar*, *Pelops* flouriſhed: who gave name to *Peloponneſus* in *Greece*, now called *Morea*.

## §. IV.

of *Deborah* and her Contemporaries.

AFTER *Iſrael* had lived in peace and plenty to the end of theſe 80. yeers, they again began to forget the giver of all goodneſſe, and many of thoſe being worn out, which were witneſſes of the former miſerie, and of Gods deliverance by *Ehnd*; and after him by *Samgar*; the reſt began to return to their former neglect of Gods commandments. For as Plenty and Peace are the parents of idle ſecurity; ſo ſecurity as fruitful in begetting and bringing forth both danger and ſubverſion: of which all eſtates in the world have taſted by interchange of times. Therefore when their ſins were again ripe for puniſhment, *Jabin* King of *Hazor*, after the death of *Ehnd*, invaded the territory of *Iſrael*; and having in his ſervice 900. iron Chariots, beſides the reſt of his forces, he held them in ſubjection twenty yeers, till it pleaſed God to raiſe up *Deborah*, the Prophetreſſe, who encouraged *Barac* to levie a force out of *Nepthalim*, and *Zabulon*, to encounter the *Canaanites*. That the men of *Nepthalim* were more forward than the reſt in this action, it may ſeem to have proceeded partly from the authority that *Barac* had among them, being of the ſame Tribe; and partly from their feeling of the common grievance, which in them was more ſenſible than in others, becauſe *Hazor* and *Haropheth* the chief holds of *Jabin*, were in *Nepthalim*. So in the dayes of *Jeſſa* the *Gileadites* took the greateſt care, becauſe the *Ammonites*, with whom the War was, preſſed moſt upon them, as being their borderers. Now as it pleaſed God by the left hand of *Ehnd* to deliver *Iſrael* from the *Moabites*: and by the counſell and courage of a woman, to free them from the yoke of *Canaan*, and to kill the valiant *Siſera* by *Jael* the *Kenites* wife: ſo was it his will at other times, to work the like great things by the weakeſt means. For the mighty *Aſſyrian Nabuchodonosor*, who was a King of Kings, and reſiſtleſſe, he overthrew by his own imaginations, the cauſers of his brutiſh melancholy: and changed his matchleſſe pride into the baſe humility of a Beaſt. And to approve that he is the Lord of all power, he ſometime puniſheth by inviſible ſtrength, as when he laughtered the Army of *Senacherib* by his Angell, or as he did the *Egyptians* in *Moſes* time: ſometime by dead bodies, as when he drowned *Pharaoh* by the waves of the Sea; and the *Canaanites* by haile-ſtones in the time of *Joſua*. Sometimes by the miniſtrie of men, as when he overthrew the four Kings of the Eaſt, *Chedorlaomer*, and his companions, by the houſhold ſervants of *Abraham*. He cauſed the *Moabites* and *Ammonites* to ſet upon their own confederate the Army of the *Edomites*; and having ſlain them, to kill one another in the ſight of *Jehoaſaphat*: and of the like to theſe a volume of examples may be gathered. And to this effect did *Deborah* the Prophetreſſe ſpeak unto *Barac* in theſe words: But this journey that thou takeſt, ſhall not be for thine honour, for

the

the Lord shall sell Sisera into the hands of a Woman. In which victory all the strength of the Canaanite Jabin fell to the ground, even to the last man: in the end of which War it seemeth that Jabin himself also perished, as appeareth by the last Verse of the fourth of Judges.

Jud. 5. v. 18.

verse 17.

Afterall which, Deborah giveth thanks to God, and after the acknowledgement of all his powerfullnesse, and great mercies, she sheweth the weak estate whereinto Israel was brought for their Idolatrie by the Canaanites, and other bordering Nations in these words: *Was there a shield or spear scene among forty thousand of Israel?* She also sheweth how the Israelites were severed and amazed, some of them confined over Jordan, and durst not joyn themselves to the rest; as those of Reuben in Gilead: that the Aserites kept the Sea-coast, and forsook their habitations towards the Land; and the children of Dan, who neighboured the Sea, crept into their ships for safety, shewing thereby that all were disperfed, and all in effect lost. She then cursed the Inhabitants of Menas, who dwelling neer the place of the battell (belike fearing the successe) came not out to assist Israel, and then blesteth Jael the wife of Heber the Kenite, who nailed Sisera in her Tent: shewing the ancient affection of that race to the Israelites. For though the Family of Heber were enforced in that miserable time of subjection, to hold correspondence with Jabin the Canaanite, yet when occasion offered them means, they witnessed their love and faith to their ancient friends. Lastly, she derideth the Mother of Sisera who promised her Son the victory in her own hopes: and fancied to her self, and described the spoiles both of Garments and Maidens by him gotten. For conclusion, she directeth her praise and thanks to God onely victorious.

Pausan. Corin-  
thiac. 9.

From the beginning of Jabin's oppression to the end of that peace, which Deborah and Barac purchased unto Israel, there passed 40. years. In which time the Kingdome of Argos, which had continued 544. yeers, was translated to Mycene: The translation of this Kingdome, *Vives* out of *Pausanias* writeth to this effect: After Danaus, Lynceus succeeded in Argos, after whom the Children of Abas the son of Lynceus divided the Kingdome: of which Acrisius being eldest, held Argos it self: Prætus his brother possessed Ephyræ, or Corinth, and Tirynthos, and other Cities, with all the Territorie towards the Sea, there being many monuments in Tirynthos, which witness Prætus' possession, saith *Pausanias*.

Now Acrisius was fore-told by an Oracle, that he should be slain by the son of his Daughter Danae: whereupon he caused her to be inclosed in a Tower, to the end that no man might accompanie her. But the Lady being exceeding faire, it is saied that Jupiter turned himself into a golden shower: which falling into her lap, begot her with child: the meaning whereof was, that some Kings son, or other worthy man, corrupted her Keepers with gold, and enjoyed her, of whom *Perseus* was borne; who when he grew to mans estate, either by chance (saith *Cressas*) or in shewing his grand-father the invention of the *discus*, or leaden ball, slew him unwillingly. After this, *Perseus*, to avoide the infamie of Patricide in Argos, changed Kingdoms with his Uncle *Prætus*: and built Mycene. This imprisonment of Danae, *Sophocles* reporteth otherwise: and that she was inclosed in a brazen vault under the Kings Hall with her Nurse and Keepers. Upon this close custodie *Horace* hath this witty observation:

*Inclusam Danaen turris ahenæ,  
Robustæq; fores, & vigilum curam  
Tristes excubie munierant satis  
Nesciuntis ab adulteris:*

*Si non Acrisium Virginis abditæ  
Custodem pavidum, Jupiter & Venus  
Rississent, fore enim tutum iter & patens  
Converso in pretium Deo.*

*Aurem per medios ire satellites,  
Et perumpere amat saxa, potentius  
Idem fulminibus.*

The brazen Tower with doors close barr'd,  
And watchfull bandogs frightfull guard,  
Kept safe the maidenhead,

of Danae from secret love:

Till smiling Venus, and wise Jove  
Beguil'd her Fathers dread.

For chang'd into a golden showre,

The god into her lap did poure

Himself, and took his pleasure.

Through guards and stony walls to break,

The thunder-bolt is far more weak,

Than is a golden treasure.

The first Kings of the Argives were these:

*Inachus* the first King, who began to reign in the first yeer of Jacob, and the 61. of Isaac: from which time, to the end of *Sthenelus*, *Cassor* mil-reckoneth 400. yeers. This Kingdome before the translation, *Eusebius* accounteth to have stood 544. yeers, others but at 417. It was the daughter of this *Inachus*: whom the Egyptians called *Isis*.

*Phoroneus,*

*Apis,*

*Argus,*

*Piræus,*

*Phorbas,*

*Triopas,*

*Crotopus,*

*Sthenelus,*

*Danaus,*

*Lynceus,*

*Abas,*

*Acrisius,*

*Pelops.*

After the translation to Mycene, *Mar. Scotus* findes these Kings:

*Perseus,*

*Sthenelus,*

*Eurystheus,*

*Atreus* and *The sons of Pelop* by *Hippodamia*: *Atreus*  
*Thyestes* by

*Europe* had *Agamemnon* and *Ancelans*.

*Agamemnon,*

*Agæsthus,*

*Orestes,*

*Tisamenus,*

*Penthius* and

*Cometes.*

Of these Kings *Alector* and *Bunting* leave out the two first, and the last: beginning with *Eurystheus*: and ending with *Penthius*. In *Tisamenus* time the *Heraclides* returned into *Peloponnesus*: of which hereafter.

The Contemporaries of Barac and Debora, were *Midias*, who reigned in Phrygia: and *Isis*, who built *Linn*: with others mentioned in our Chronologicall Table, as Contemporaries with Debora.

#### §. V.

Of Gideon, and of Dædalus, Sphinx, Minos, and others that lived in this age.

Debora and Barac being dead, the Midianites, assisted by the Amalekites, infested Israel. For when, under a Judge, who had held them in the fear of the Lord, they had enjoyed any quiet or prosperity: the Judge was no sooner dead, than they turned to their former impious Idolatry. Therefore now the neighbouring Nations did

Jud. 6.

so master them in a short time (the hand of God being with-held from their defence) as to save themselves, they crept into caves of the mountains, and other the like places of hardest access: their enemies possessing all the plains and fruitful vallies: and in harvest time, by themselves, and the multitude of their cattell, destroying all that grew up: covering the fields as thick as grasshoppers: which servitude lasted seven years.

Jud. 6. v. 5.

Jud. 6. v. 7.

Then the Lord by his Angell stirred up *Gideon* the son of *Jasoph*, afterward called *Jerubbaal*: whose feare and unwillingnesse, and how it pleased God to hearken him in his enterprize, it is both largely and precisely set down in the holy Scriptures: as also how it pleased God by a few select persons, namely 300. out of 32000. men, to make them know that he onely was the Lord of Hosts. Each of these 300. by *Gideons* appointment carried a trumpet, and light in a pitcher, instruments of more terror than force, with which he gave the great Army of their enemies an alarm: who hearing so loud a noyse, and seeing (at the crack of so many pitchers broken) so many lights about them, esteeming the Army of *Israel* to be infinite, and stricken with a sudden feare, they all fled without a stroke stricken, and were slaughtered in great numbers: two of their Princes being made prisoners and slain. In his return the *Ephraimites* began to quarrell with *Gideon*, because he made war without their assistance, being then greedy of glory, the victory being gotten: who (if *Gideon* had failed and fallen in the enterprize) would no doubt have held themselves happy by being neglected. But *Gideon* appealing them with a mild answer, followed after the enemy, in which pursuit being tyred with travell, and weary even with the slaughtering of his enemies, he desired relief from the inhabitants of *Succoth*, to the end, that (his men being refreshed) he might over-take the other two Kings of the *Midianites*: which had saved themselves by flight. For they were four Princes of the Nations, which had invaded and wasted *Israel*: to wit, *Oreb* and *Seeb*, which were taken already, and *Zabab* and *Zalmunna*, which fled.

*Gideon* being denied by them of *Succoth*, sought the like relief from the Inhabitants of *Pennel*, who in like sort refused to succour him. To both of these places he threatened therefore the revenge, which in his return from the prosecution of the other two Princes, he performed: to wit, that he would tear the flesh of those of *Succoth* with thorns and briars, and destroy the Inhabitants and City of *Pennel*. Now why the people of these two Cities should refuse relief to their brethren the *Israelites*, especially after so great a victory: if I may presume to make conjecture, it seems likely, first, that those Cities set over *Jordan*, and in the way of all invasions, to be made by the *Moabites*, *Ammonites* and *Midianites*, into *Israel*, had either made their own peace with those nations, and were not spoiled by them; or else they knowing that *Zeba* and *Zalmunna* were escaped with a great part of their army, might fear their revenge in the future. Secondly, it may be laid to the condition and dispositions of these men: as it is not rare to find of the like humour in all ages. For there are multitudes of men, especially of those which follow the war, that both envie and maligne others, if they perform any praiseworthy actions, for the honour and safety of their own Country, though themselves may be assured to beare a part of the smart of contrary success. And such malicious hearts can rather be contented that their Prince and Country should suffer hazard and want, than that such men as they mislike, should be the authors or actors of any glory or good to either.

A place in Bas-  
sin, as it is  
thought.  
Jud. 8. 10.

Now *Gideon*, how or wheresoever it were that he refreshed himself and his weary and hungry Souldiers, yet he followed the opportunity, and pursued his former victory to the uttermost: and finding *Zabab* and *Zalmunna* in *Karkor* (suspecting no further attempt upon them) he again surprised them, and slaughtered those 15000. remaining, and having put to the sword in the former attempt 120000. and withall he took *Zabab* and *Zalmunna* prisoners: whom because themselves had executed *Gideons* brethren before at *Tabor*, he caused them both to be slain: or (as it is written) at their own request slew them with his own hands, his Son whom he first commanded to do it, refusing it; and in his return from the consummation of this marvellous victory, he took revenge of the Elders of *Succoth*, and of the Citizens of *Pennel*: forgiving no offence committed against him, either by strangers or by his brethren the *Israelites*. But such mercy as he shewed to others, his own children found soon after his death, according

to that which hath been said before. The debts of cruelty and mercy are never left unsatisfied: for as he slew the 70. Elders of *Succoth*, with great and ununsuall torments, so were his own 70. sons, all but one, murdered by his own bastard *Abimelec*: The like Analogy is observed by the *Rabbines*, in the greatest of the plagues which God brought upon the *Egyptians*, who having caused the male children of the *Hebrews* to be slain, others of them to be cast into the river and drowned: God rewarded them even with the like measure, destroying their own first-born by his Angel, and drowning *Pharaoh* and his Army in the Red Sea. And hereof a world of examples might be given both out of the Scriptures and other Histories.

In the end so much did the people reverence *Gideon* in the present for his victory, and their own deliverance, as they offered him the Sovereignty over them, and to establish him in the Government; which he refused, answering; *I will not reign over you, neither shall my childre reign over you, but the Lord shall, &c.* But he desired the people that they would bestow on him the golden ear-rings which every man had gotten. For the *Ismaelites*, neighbours, and mixt with the *Midianites*, used to wear them: the weight of all which was a thousand & seven hundred shekles of gold, which makes of ours 2380. li. if we follow the account of the shekle vulgar. And because he converted that gold into an *Ephod*, a garment of gold, blew silk, purple, scarlet, and fine linen, belonging to the High Priest only, and set up the same in his own City of *Ophra* or *Ephra*, which drew *Israel* to Idolatry, the same was the destruction of *Gideon* and his house.

There was another kinde of *Ephod* besides this of the High Priests, which the Levites used; and so did *David* when he danced before the Ark; and *Samuel* while he was yet young, which was made of linnen onely.

Now if any man demand how it was possible for *Gideon* with 300. men to destroy 120000. of their enemies, and afterward 15000. which remained, we may remember, that although *Gideon* with 300. gave the first alarm, and put the *Midianites* in rout and disorder; yet all the rest of the Army came in to the slaughter, and pursuit: for it is written; *That the men of Israel being gathered together out of Nephthaly, and out of Acher, and out of Manasse, pursued after the Midianites: for this Army Gideon left in tents behinde him, when he went down to view the Army of his enemies, who with the noise of his 300. trumpets came after him to the execution.*

There lived with *Gideon*, *Egeus*, the son of *Pandion*, who reigned in *Athens*: *Euryssenes* King of *Mycene*: *Atreus* and *Thyestes* the sons of *Pelops*, who bare dominion over a great part of *Peloponnesus*, and after the death of *Euryssenes*, the Kingdom of *Mycene* fell into the hand of *Atreus*. This is that *Atreus*, who holding his brother in jealousy, as an attempter, both of his Wife and Crown, slew the children of *Thyestes*, and causing their flesh to be drest, did therewith feast their father. But this cruelty was not unrevenge. For both *Atreus* and his son *Agamemnon* was slain by a base son of *Thyestes*, yea the grand-children, and all the lineage of *Atreus* died by the same sword.

In *Gideons* time also those things were supposed to have been done, which are written of *Dedalus* and *Icarus*. *Dedalus*, they say, having slain his Nephew *Attalus*, fled to *Mimis*, King of *Crete*, for succour; where for his excellent workmanship he was greatly esteemed, having made for *Mimis* a Labyrinth, like unto that of *Egypt*. Afterward he was said to have framed an artificiall Cowe for *Pasiphae* the Queen, that she, being in love with a fair Bull, might by putting her self into the Cowe, satisfy her lust; a thing no lesse unnaturall than incredible, had not that shamelesse Emperour *Domitian* exhibited the like beastly spectacle openly before the people of *Rome*, in his Amphitheatre; of purpose, as may seem, to verifie the old Fable. For so it appears by those Verses of *Martial*, wherein the flattering Poet magnifieth the abominable shew, as a goodly Pageant, in those vicious times.

*Iuniam Pasiphaen Diſceo credite Tauri  
Vidimus, accepit fabula prisca fidem.  
Nec se miratur Caesar, longeva viſtus  
Quicquid facta canit; donat arena tibi.*

But concerning that which is reported of *Pasiphae*, *Servius* makes a lesse dishonest  
M m con-

construction of it, thinking that *Dedalus* was of her counsell, and her *Pandar* for the enticing of a Secretary of *Minos* called *Taurus*, which signifieth a Bull, who begat her with child; and that she being delivered of two sons, the one resembling *Taurus*, the other her husband *Minos*, it was feigned that she was delivered of the Monster *Minotaur*, half a Man, and half a Bull. But this practice being discovered, and *Dedalus* appointed to be slain, he fled out of *Crete* to *Cocalus* King of *Sicil*: in which passage he made such expedition, as it was feigned that he fashioned wings for himself and his son to transport them. For whereas *Minos* pursued him with boats which had oars onely, *Dedalus* framed sails both for his own boat, and for his sons, by which he overwent those that had him in chase. Upon which new invention, *Icarus* bearing himself over-bold, was over-born and drowned.

It is also written of *Dedalus*, that he made Images that could move themselves, and go, because he carved them with legs, arms, and hands; whereas those that preceded him, could onely present the body and head of those men, whom they carried to combat, and yet the workmanship was esteemed very rare. But *Plutarch*, who had seen some of those that were called the Images of *Dedalus*, found them exceeding rude.

With *Gideon* also flourished *Linus* the *Theban*, the son of *Apollo*, and *Terpsichore*, who instructed *Thamiris*, *Orpheus*, and *Hercules*. He wrote of the Creation, of the Sun and Moons course, and of the generation of living Creatures, but in the end he was slain by *Hercules* his scholar with his own Harp.

Again, in this age those things spoken of *Sphinx* and *Oedipus*, are thought to have been performed. This *Sphinx* being a great robber by sea and land, was by the *Corinthian* Army, led by *Oedipus*, overcome. But that which was written of her propounding of riddles, to those whom she mastered, was meant by the rockie and unaccessible Mountain neer *Thebes*, which she defended, and by *Oedipus* dissolving her probleme, his victory over her. She was painted with wings, because exceeding swift, and with the body of a Lion, for her cruelty. But that which *Palephatus* reports of *Sphinx*, were more probable, did not the time disprove it, for he calls her an *Amazonite*, & the wife of *Cadmus*: who when by her help he had cast *Draco* out of *Thebes* (neglecting her) he married the sister of *Draco*, which *Sphinx* taking in despitefull part, with her own troop she held the Mountain by *Thebes*, from whence she continued a sharp war upon the *Thebans*, until by *Oedipus* overthrowen. About this time did *Minos* thrust his brother out of *Crete*, and held sharp war with the *Megarians* and *Athenians*, because his son *Androgeus* was slain by them. He possessed himself of *Megara*, by the treason of *Scylla*, daughter of *Nisus* the King. He was long Master of the Sea, and brought the *Athenians* to the tribute of delivering him every year seven of their sons: which tribute *Theseus* released, as shall be shewed, when I come to the time of the next Judge *Ithola*. In the end he was slain at *Catherinus* or *Cimichus* in *Stetia*, by *Cocalus* the King, while he pursued *Dedalus*: and was esteemed by some to be the first Law-giver to those Islands.

To this time are referred many deeds of *Hercules*, as the killing of *Anteus* the Giant, who was said to have 60. and odder cubits of length, which though *Plutarch* doth confirm, reporting that there was such a body found by *Servotius* the Roman, in *Lybia*, where *Hercules* slew *Anteus*: yet for my self I think it but a loud lie. That *Anteus* was of great strength, and a cunning wrestler, *Euclides* affirmeth: and because he cast so many men to the ground, he was feigned to be the son of the earth. *Phiny* saith, that he inhabited neer the Gardens *Hesperides* in *Mauritania*. *S. Augustine* affirms, that this *Hercules* was not of Greece, but of *Lybia*: and the *Hydra* also which he overcame, *Plato* expoundeth to be a subtle Sophister.

## §. VI.

## Of the Expedition of the Argonauts.

About the eleventh yeer of *Crideon*, was the famous Expedition of the *Argonauts*: of which many fabulous discourses have been written, the sum of which is this: *Pelias* the son of *Neptune*, brother by the mothers side to *Aeson*, who was *Jason's* father, reigning in *Iolcos* a Town of *Thessaly*, was warned by the Oracle of *Apollo* to take heed of him that wore but one shoe. This *Pelias* afterward sacrificing to *Neptune*, injured

*Jason* to him, who coming hastily, lost one shoe in passing over a brook: whereupon *Pelias* demanded of him what course he would take (supposing he were able) against one of whom an Oracle should advise him to take heed? to which question when *Jason* had briefly answered, that he would send him to *Colchos* to fetch the golden Fleece, *Pelias* immediately commanded him to undertake that service. Therefore *Jason* prepared for the voyage, having a ship built by *Argus* the son of *Phryxus*, by the counsell of *Pallas*: wherein he procured all the bravest men of Greece to sail with him: as *Typhis* the Master of the ship, *Orpheus* the famous Poet, *Castor* and *Pollux* the sons of *Tyndarus*, *Telemachus* and *Pelemus* sons of *Acacus*, and fathers of *Ajax* and *Achilles*, *Hercules*, *Theseus*, *Zetes* and *Calais* the two-winged sons of *Boreas*, *Amphiaras* the great Sooth-sayer, *Molester* and *Calais* that slew the great wilde Boare, *Ascalaphus* and *Jalmenus*, or *Almenus* the sons of *Atars*, who were afterwards at the last war of *Troy*, *Laertes* the father of *Ulysses*, *Atalanta* a warlike Virgin, *Idas* and *Lyncus* the sons of *Apheareus*, who afterwards in fight with *Castor* and *Pollux*, slew *Castor*, and wounded *Pollux*, but were slain themselves: *Lyncus* by *Pollux*, *Idas* by *Jupiter* with lightning.

These and many other went with *Jason* in the ship *Argo*: in whose Prow was a table of the Beech of *Dodona*, which could speak. They arrived first at *Lenno*; the women of which Island, having slain all the males, purposing to lead an *Amazonian* life, were nevertheless contented to take their pleasure of the *Argonauts*. Hence they came to the Country about *Cyzicus*: where dwelt a people called *Doliones*: over whom then reigned one *Cyzicus*, who entertained them friendly; but it so fell out, that loosing thence by night, they were driven by contrary winde, back into his Port, neither knowing that it was the same Haven, nor being known by the *Doliones* to be the same men: but rather taken for some of their bordering enemies; by which means they fell to blows, inasmuch that the *Argonauts* slew the most part of the *Doliones*, together with their King *Cyzicus*: which when by day-light they perceived, with many tears they solemnized his funeral. Then departed they again, and arrived shortly in *Byssa*, where they left *Hercules* and *Polyphemus* the son of *Elater*, who went to seek *Hylas* the darling of *Hercules*, that was ravished by the *Nymphs*.

*Polyphemus* built a Town in *Myssa* called *Cioas*, wherein he reigned. *Hercules* returned to *Argos*. From *Myssa* the *Argonauts* sailed into *Bythia*, which then was peopled by the *Bebryces*, the ancient Inhabitants of the Country, over whom *Amycus* the son of *Neptune* was then King. He being a strong man, compelled all strangers to fight with him at whorlbat, in which kinde of fight he had slain many, and was now himself slain by *Pollux*. The *Bebryces* in revenge of his death slew all upon *Pollux*; but his companions rescued him, with great slaughter of the people. They sailed from hence to *Balmysdesus* a Town in *Thrace* (somewhat out of their way) wherein *Phineus* a Sooth-sayer dwelt, who was blinde, and vexed with the *Harpies*. The *Harpies* were said to be a kinde of Birds which had the faces of women; and foule long claws, very filthy creatures, which when the table was furnished for *Phineus*, came flying in, and devouring or carrying away the greater part of the viuals; did so defile the rest, that they could not be endured. When therefore the *Argonauts* craved his advice and direction for their voyage: You shall do well (quoth he) first of all to deliver me from the *Harpies*, and then afterwards to ask my counsell. Whereupon they caused the table to be covered, and meat set on; which was no sooner set down, than that presently in came the *Harpies*, and played their accustomed pranks: when *Zetes* and *Calais* the winged young men saw this, they drew their swords, and pursued them through the aire: Some say, that both the *Harpies* and the young men died of weariness in the fight, and pursuit. But *Apollonius* saith, that the *Harpies* did covenant with the youths, to do no more harm to *Phineus*, and were thereupon dismissed. For this good turn, *Phineus* gave them informations of the way, and advertised them withall of the dangerous Rocks, called *Symplegades*, which by force of winde running together, did shut up the passage; wherefore he willed them to put a Pigeon before them in the passage: and if that passed safe, then to adventure after her; if not, then by no means to hazard themselves in vain. They did so, and perceiving that the Pigeon had onely lost a piece of her taile, they observed the next opening of the Rocks, and then rowing with all their might, passed through safe, onely the end of their Poop was bruised.



From thence forward, (as the tale goeth) the *Symplegades* have stood still: for the gods, say they, had decreed that after the passage of a ship, they should be fixed. Thence the *Argonauts* came to the *Mariandyni*, a people inhabiting about the mouth of the river *Parthenius*, where *Lycus* the King entertained them curiously. Here *Idmon* a Soothsayer of their company was slain by a wilde Boare; also here *Typhis* dyed: and *Anteo* undertook to steare the ship. So they passed by the River *Thermodon*, and Mount *Caucasus*, and came to the River *Phasis*, which runs through the land of *Colchis*. When they were entred the haven, *Jason* went to *Aetes* the King of *Colchis*, and told him the Commandment of *Pelias*, and cause of his coming, desiring him to deliver the golden Fleece; which *Aetes*, as the Fable goeth, promised to doe, if he alone would yoke together two brazen hoof Bulls, and plowing the ground with them, sowe Dragon teeth, which *Minerva* had given to him, being part of those which *Cadmus* did sowe at *Thebes*. These Bulls were great and fierce, and breathed out fire: *Vulcan* had given them to *Aetes*.

Whilest *Jason* was in a great perplexity about this task, *Medea* the daughter of *Aetes* fell into a most vehement love of him, so far forth, that being excellent in *Magick*, she came privily to him, promising her help if he would assure her of his marriage. To this *Jason* agreed, and confirmed his promise by oath. Then gave she to him a medicine wherewith she bade him to annoint both his body and his armour, which would preserve him from their violence: further she told him, that armed men would rise out of the ground, from the teeth which he should sowe, and set upon him. To remedy which inconvenience, she bade him throw stones amongst them, as soon as they came up thick, whereupon they would fall together to blowes, in such wise that he might easily slay them. *Jason* followed her counsell; whereto when the event had answered, he again demanded the Fleece. But *Aetes* was so far from approving such his desire, that he devised how to destroy the *Argonauts*, and burn their ship; which *Medea* perceiving, went to *Jason*, and brought him by night to the Fleece, which hung on an Oak in the Grove of *Mars*, where, they say, it was kept by a Dragon that never slept. This Dragon was by the Magick of *Medea* cast into a sleep: so taking away the Golden Fleece, she went with *Jason* into the ship *Argo*; having with her, her brother *Abysrus*.

*Aetes* understanding the practices of *Medea*, provided to pursue the ship, whom when *Medea* perceived to be at hand, she flew her brother, and cutting him in pieces, she scattered his limbs in divers places; of which *Aetes* finding some, was faine to seek out the rest, and suffer his Daughter to passe: the parts of his son he buried in a place, which thereupon he called *Toni*; the Greek word signifieth *Division*. Afterwards he sent many of his subjects to seek the ship *Argo*, threatening that if they brought not back *Medea*, they should suffer in her stead. In the mean while the *Argonauts* were driven about the Seas, and were come to the River *Eridanus*: which is Po in Italy.

*Jupiter*, offended with the slaughter of *Abysrus*, vexed them with a great tempest, and carried them they knew not whither; when they came to the Islands *Abrytus*, there the ship *Argo*, (that there might want no incredible thing in this Fable) spake to them and said, that the anger of *Jupiter* should not cease, till they came to *Asonia*, and were cleansed by *Circe*, from the murder of *Abysrus*. Now they thereupon sailing between the coasts of *Lybia* and *Gallia*, and passing through the Sea of *Sardinia*, and alongst the coast of *Hetruria*, came to the Ile of *Eea*, wherein *Circe* dwelt, who cleansed them. Thence they sailed by the coast of the *Syrens*, who sang to allure them into danger: but *Orpheus* on the other side sang so well, that he stayed them. Onely *Entes* swam out unto them, whom *Venus* ravished, and carried to *Lylibeum* in Sicily to dwell.

Having past the *Syrens*, they came between *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, and the stragling Rocks, which seemed to cast out great store of flames and smoak. But *Theitis* and the *Nereides*, conveyed them safe through at the appointment of *Juno*. So they coasted *Sicily*, where the Bees of the Sun were; and touched at *Coreyra*, the Island of the *Phaeaces*, where King *Alcinous* reigned. Mean while the men of *Colchis*, that had been sent by *Aetes* in quest of the ship *Argo*, hearing no news of it, and fearing his anger, if they fulfilled not his will, betook themselves to new habitations: Some of them dwelt in the Mountains of *Coreyra*, others in the Islands of *Abrytides*, and some coming

to the *Phaeaces*, there found the ship *Argo*, and demanded *Medea* of *Alcinous*: whereto *Alcinous* made answer, that if she were not *Jason's wife*, they should have her; but if she were already married, he would not take her from her husband. *Arete*, the wife of *Alcinous*, hearing this, married them: wherfore they of *Colchis*, not daring to return home, stayed with the *Phaeaces*; so the *Argonauts* departed thence, and after a while came to *Crete*. In this Island *Minos* reigned, who had a man of brasie given to him (as some of the Fables say) by *Vulcan*. This man had one vein in his body reaching from the neck to the heel, the end whereof was closed up with a brazen nail; his name was *Talus*: his custome was to run thrice a day about the Island for the defence of it. When he saw the ship *Argo* passe by, he threw stones at it, but *Medea* with her Magick destroyed him. Some say that she slew him by potions, which made him mad; others, that promising to make him immortall, she drew out the nail that stoppt his vein, by which means all his blood ran out, and he died: others there are that say he was slain by *Pan*, who wounded him with an arrow in the heel. From hence the *Argonauts* sailed to *Agina*, where they were faine to fight for fresh water. And lastly, from *Agina* they sailed by *Enbæ* and *Locris* home to *Jilcos*, where they arrived, having spent four whole moneths in the expedition.

Some there are that by this journey of *Jason*, understand the mystrie of the Philosophers stone, called the golden Fleece, to which also, other super-fine *Chymists* draw the twelve labours of *Hercules*. *Snidas* thinks, that by the golden Fleece was meant a golden book of Parchment, which is of sheep-skin, and therefore called golden, because it was taught therein how other metals might be transmuted. Others would signifie by *Jason*, Wisdom, and Moderation, which overcometh all perils: but that which is most probable, is the opinion of *Dercilus*, that the story of such a passage was true, and that *Jason* with the rest went indeed to rob *Colchis*, to which they might arrive by boat. For not far from *Caucasus* there are certain steep falling torrents which wash down many grains of gold, as in many other parts of the World; and the people there inhabiting use to set many fleeces of wooll in those descents of waters, in which the grains of gold remain, and the water passeth thorow, which *Strabo* witnesseth to be true. The many rocks, straits, sands, and currents, in the passage between *Greece* and the bottom of *Pontus*, are Poetically converted into those fiery Bulls; the armed men rising out of the ground, the Dragon cast asleep, and the like. The man of brasie, the *Syrens*, *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, were other hazzards and adventures which they fell into in the *Mediterran Sea*, disguised, as the rest, by *Orpheus*, under Poeticall morals: all which *Homer* afterward used (the man of brasie excepted) in the description of *Ulysses* his travels on the same In-land seas.

## §. VII.

Of *Abimelech*, *Tholan*, and *Jair*, and of the *Lapythæ*, and of *Thefeus*, *Hippolytus*, &c.

AFTER the death of *Gideon*, *Abimelech* his base son, begotten on a Concubine of the *Sechemites*, remembering what offers had been made to his father by the people, who desired to make him and his his perpetual Princes; and, as it seemeth, supposing (notwithstanding his fathers religious modesty) that some of his brethren might take on them the Sovereignty, practised with the Inhabitants of *Sechem* (of which his mother was native) to make election of himself; who being easily moved with the glory, to have a King of their own, readily condescended: and the better to enable *Abimelech*, they borrowed seventy pieces of silver of their Idoll *Baalberith*, with which *Abimelech* hired a company of loose and desperate vagabonds, to assist his first detestable enterprise, to wit, the slaughter of his seventy brethren, the sons of *Gideon*; begotten on his Wives, of which he had many; of all which none escaped but *Jotham* the youngest, who hid himself from his present fury: all which he executed on one stone; a cruelty exceeding all that hath been written of in any age. Such is humane ambition, a monster that neither feareth God (though all-powerfull; and whose revenges are without date, and for everlasting) neither hath it respect to nature, which laboureth the preservation of every being: but it rageth also against her, though garnished with beauty which never dieth, and with love that hath no end. All other

passions and affections, by which the souls of men are tormented, are by their contraries often-times resisted or qualified. But ambition, which begetteth every vice, and in it self the childe and darling of *Satan*, looketh onely towards the ends by it self set down, forgetting nothing (how fearful and inhumane soever) which may serve it: remembering nothing, whatsoever justice, piety, right or religion can offer and alledge on the contrary. It ascribeth the lamentable effects of like attempts, to the error or weakness of the undertakers, and rather praileth the adventure, than feareth the like successe. It was the first fin that the World had, and began in *Angels*: for which they were cast into Hell, without hope of redemption. It was more ancient than man, and therefore no part of his naturall corruption. The punishment also preceded his creation, yet hath the Divell, which felt the smart thereof, taught him to forget the one as out of date, and to practise the other, as besitting every age, and mans condition.

*Jotham*, the youngest of *Gideons* sons, having escaped the present perill, fought by his best persuasions to alienate the *Sechemites* from the assisting of this mercilesse Tyrant, letting them know, that those which were vertuous, and whom reason and religion had taught the safe and happy estate of moderate subjection, had refused to receive as unlawfull, what others had no power to give, without direction from the King of kings: who from the beginning (as to his own peculiar people) had appointed them by whom and how to be governed. This he taught them by the Olive, which contented it self with its Fattnesse, the Figge-tree with its sweetnesse, and the Vine with the good juice it had: the Bramble onely, who was most base, cut down all the rest, and accepted the Sovereignty. He also fore-told them by a Prophetically spirit, what should befall them in the end, and how a fire should come out of the Bramble, and consume the Cedars of *Libanon*.

Now (as it is an easie matter to call those men back whom rage without right led on) *Gaal* the son of *Ebed* withdrew the Citizens of *Sechem* from the service of *Abimelech*: who therefore after some assaults entred the place, and mastered it; and in conclusion fired the Town, wherein their Idoll *Baalberith* was worshipped, and put all the people of all sorts to the slaughter. Lastly, in the assault of the Castle or Tower of *ibber*, himself was wounded in the head with a stone thrown over the wall by a woman; and finding himself mortally bruised, he commanded his own Page to pierce his body, thereby to avoid the dishonour of being slain by so feeble a hand.

While *Abimelech* usurped the Government, the *Lapithæ* and *Centaurs* made war against the *Thebans*. These Nations were descended of *Apollo*, and were the first in those parts that devised to manage horses, to bridle and to fit them: insomuch, as when they first came down from the Mountains of *Pindus*, into the Plains, those which had never seen horsemens before, thought them creatures compounded of men and horses; so did the *Mexicans*, when *Ferdinando Cortes* the Spaniard first invaded that Empire.

After the death of *Abimelech*, *Tholo* of *Issachar* governed *Israel* 23. years, and after him *Jair* the *Gileadite* 22. years, who seems to be descended of *Jair* the son of *Mannasse*, who in *Moses* time conquered a great part of *Gilead*, and called the same after his own name, *Havoth Jair*. For to this *Jair* there remained thirty of those Cities which his ancestor had recovered from the *Amorites*. Of these Judges, because there is nothing else written, it is an argument, that during all their times *Israel*, lived without disturbance, and in peace.

When *Jair* judged *Israel*, *Priamus* began to reign in *Troy*, who at such time as *Hecuba* lacked *Ilum*, was carried away captive with his sister *Hesione* into *Greece*, and being afterward redeemed for ranfome, he re-built and greatly strengthened and adorned *Troy*; and so far enlarged his Dominions, as he became the supreme Lord in effect of all *Asia* the lesse. He married *Hecuba* the Daughter of *Cisseus* King of *Thrace*, and had in all (saith *Cicero*) fifty sons, whereof seventeen by *Hecuba*, of whom *Paris* was one; who attempting to recover his Aunt *Hesione*, took *Helena* the Wife of *Menelaus*, the cause of the war which followed.

*Theseus* the tenth King of *Athens*, began likewise to reign in the beginning of *Jair*: some Writers call him the son of *Neptune* and *Ethra*: but *Plutarch* in the Story of his life, findes him begotten by *Ægeus*, of whom the *Grecian* Sea between it and *Asia* the

lesse took name. For when *Minos* had mastered the *Athenians*, so far as he forc't them to pay him seven of their sons every yeer for tribute, whom he inclosed within a *Labyrinth*, to be devoured by the Monster *Minotaur*: because belike the sons of *Taurus*, which he begat on *Pasiphaë* the Queen, had the charge of them: among these seven *Theseus* thrust himself, not doubting by his valour to deliver the rest, and to free the Country of that Slavery occasioned for the death of *Androgeus*, *Minos* his son.

And having posselt himself of *Ariadnes* affection, who was *Minos* daughter, he received from her a bottom of thred, by which he conducted himself through all the crooked and inextricable turnings of the *Labyrinth*, made in all like that of the City of *Crocodiles* in *Egypt*; by mean whereof having slain *Minotaur*, he found a ready way to return. But whereas his father *Ægeus* had given order, that if he came back with victory and in safety, he should use a white sail in signe thereof, and not that mournfull black saile under which they left the port of *Athens*: This instruction being either forgotten or neglected, *Ægeus* descrying the ship of *Theseus* with a black sail, did cast himself over the Rocks down into the Sea; afterward called of his name *Ægeum*.

One of the first famous acts of *Theseus*, was the killing of *Scyron*, who kept a passage between *Megara* and the *Peloponnesian Isthmus*, and threw all whom he mastered into the Sea, from the high Rocks. Afterward he did the like to *Cercyon*, by wrestling, who used by that art to kill others. He also rid the Countrey of *Procrustes*, who used to beat down the strong limbs of two trees, and fastned by cords such as he took, part of them to one, and part to the other bough, and by the springing up tare them asunder. So did he root out *Periphetes* and other mischievous thieves and murderers. He overthrew the Army of the *Amazons*, who after many victories and vastations, entred the Territory of *Athens*. *Theseus* having taken their Queen *Hippolita* prisoner, begat on her *Hippolitus*; with whom afterward his mother-in-law *Phædra*, falling in love, and he refusing to abuse his fathers bed, *Phædra* perswaded *Theseus*, that his son offered to force her: after which it is feigned, that *Theseus* besought *Neptune* to revenge this wrong of his sons by some violent death. *Neptune* taking a time of advantage, sent out his Sea-Calves, as *Hippolitus* passed by the sea-shore, and so affrighted his horses, as casting the Coach over, he was (by being intangled therein) torn in pieces. Which miserable and undeserved destiny, when *Phædra* had heard of, she strangled her self. After which it is feigned, that *Diana* intreated *Æsculapius* to set *Hippolitus* his pieces together, and to restore him to life: which done, because he was chaste, she led him with her into *Italy*, to accompany her in her hunting, and field sports.

It is probable that *Hippolitus*, when his father sought his life, thinking to escape by Sea, was affronted thereat, and did receive many wounds in forcing his passage and escape; which wounds *Æsculapius*, to wit, some skilfull Physician, or Chirurgion, healed again: after which he passed into *Italy*, where he lived with *Diana*, that is, the life of a Hunter, in which he most delighted. But of those ancient prophane Stories *Plutarch* saith well, that as *Cosmographers* in their descriptions of the World, where they finde many vault places whereof they know nothing, fill the same with strange Beasts, Birds, and Fishes, and with *Mathematicall* lines; so do the *Grecian* Historians and Poets imbroder and intermixe the Tales of ancient times, with a world of fictions and fabulous discourses. True it is, that *Theseus* did many great things in imitation of *Mercurus*, whom he made his pattern, and was the first that gathered the *Athenians*, from being dispersed in thin and ragged Villages: in recompence whereof, and for devising them Laws to live under, and in order, he was by the beggarly, mutable, and ungratefull multitude, in the end banished. Some say, for *Obsequiousness*, by the Law of Lots, or names written on shells, which was a device of his own.

He stole *Helen* (as they say) when she was fifty years old, from *Apollonia*, which City *Cythera* and *Polus* overturned, when they followed after *Theseus* to recover their sister. *Strabon* and *Pausanias* write, that *Theseus* begot her with childe at *Argos*, where she was kept in a Temple to *Lucina*: but herage makes that Tale unlikely to be true, and so doth *David*, *Non tamen ex sacro fructum tulit illa puerum*, &c. The rape of *Helen* findes in the first of *Jair*, who governed *Israel* twenty years, to whom succeeded *Jephthah* 22. years, six years, to whom *Ibsan*, who ruled seven years, and then *Hablon* eight years and whose time was the fall of *Troy*. So, as if *Theseus* had a childe by her

*Palæstræus*,  
de insectis.

*Deut.* 3. 14.  
*Num.* 12. 41.

*Judg.* 10.

2091.

In *Tese.*

*Strab. lib. 9.*  
*Pausan. Cent.*  
*in epyl. Helen.*  
*Judg. 10. 3.*

Bunt. Chron.  
Euseb. Chron.  
Hel. l. i.Aug. de Civit.  
Dei. l. 18. c. 19.

in the first of *Jair*, (at which time we must count her no less than fifteen years older; for the women did not commonly begin so young as they do now) she was then at least two and fifty years old at the destruction of *Troy*: and when she was stolen by *Paris*, eight and thirty: but herein the *Chronologers* do not agree. Yet *Eusebius* and *Bunting*, with *Halicarnassus*, do in effect consent: that the City was entred, and burnt in the first year of *Demophoon* King of *Athens*, the Successour of *Mnestheus*, the Successour of *Thebes*, seventeen dayes before the *Summer Tropicke*; and that about the eleventh of *September* following, the *Trojans* crost the *Hellepont* into *Thrace*, and wintered there, and in the next spring that they navigated into *Sicilia*, where wintering the second year, the next Summer they arrived at *Laurentium*, and builded *Lavinium*. But *S. Augustinus* hath otherwise, That when *Polyphides* governed *Sicyon*; *Mnestheus*, *Athens*; *Tantius*, *Affrica*; *Habdon*, *Israel*; then *Enceas* arrived in *Italy*, transporting with him in twenty ships the remainder of the *Trojans*: but the difference is not great; and hereof more at large in the story of *Troy* at hand.

In *Sicyonia*, *Phaestus* the two and twentieth King, reigned eight yeers, beginning by the common account in the time of *Thola*. His successours, *Adrastus*, who reigned four yeers, and *Polyphides*, who reigned thirteen, are accounted to the time of *Jair*; so is also *Mnestheus* King of *Athens*, and *Atreus*, who held a great part of *Peloponnesus*. In *Affrica*, during the government of these two peaceable Judges, *Mitrews*, and after him *Tantius* reigned. In *Egypt*, *Amenophis*, the son of *Rameses*, and afterwards *Annamenes*.

## §. VII.

Of the war of Thebes, which was in this age.

IN this age was the war of *Thebes*, the most ancient that ever Greek Poet or Historian wrote of: Wherefore the Roman Poet *Lucretius*, affirming (as the *Epicurus* in this point held truly against the *Peripateticks*) that the World had a beginning, urgeth them with this objection:

Si nulla fuit genitalis origo  
Rerumque & mundi, semperque eterna fuere,  
Cur supra bellum Thebanum, & funera Trojae,  
Non alius alii quoque nos cecinere Poetae?

If all this world had no original,  
But things have ever been as now they are:  
Before the siege of *Thebes*, or *Troies* last fall,  
Why did no Poet sing some elder warre?

It is true, that in these times *Greece* was very salvage, the Inhabitants being chased from place to place, by the Captains of greater Tribes: and no man thinking the ground whereon he dwelt his own, longer than he could hold it by strong hand. Wherefore merchandise and other intercourse they used little; neither did they plant many trees, or sow more corn than was necessary for their sustenance. Money they had little or none; for it is thought that the name of money was not heard of in *Greece*, when *Homer* did write, who measures the value of gold and brass by the worth in cattle; saying, that the golden armour of *Glaucus* was worth an hundred Bees; and the copper armour of *Diomedes* worth nine.

Robberies by land and sea were common and without shame, and to steal from kine was the usuall exercise of their great men. Their Towns were not many, whereof those that were walled were very few, and not great. For *Mycena* the principal City in *Peloponnesus* was a very little thing, & it may well be thought that the rest were proportionable: briefly, *Greece* was then in her infancy, and though in some small Towns of that half Isle of *Peloponnesus*, the Inhabitants might have enjoyed quietness in their narrow bounds; as likewise did the *Athenians*, because their Country was so barren, that none did care to take it from them: yet that the land in general was very rude, it wil easily appear to such as consider what *Thucydides* the greatest of their Historians hath writtē to this effect, in the Preface to his History. Wherefore, as in these

later times, idle *Chronicles* use when they want good matter, to fill whole books with reports of great Frosts, or dry Summers, and other such things which no man cares to read; so did they who spake of *Greece* in her beginnings, remember onely the great Floods which were in the times of *Ugges* and *Deucalion*: or else rehearse fables of men changed into birds, of strange Monsters, of adultery committed by their gods, and the mighty men which they begat, without writing ought that favoured of humanity before the time of the war of *Thebes*: the brief whereof is this.

*Oedipus* the son of *Laius* King of *Thebes*, having been cast forth when he was an infant, because an Oracle foretold what evil should come to passe by him, did after wards in a narrow passage, contending for the way, slay his own father, not knowing either then or long after, who he was. Afterward he became King of *Thebes*, by marriage of the Queen *Jocasta*, called by *Homer*, *Epicaste*: on whom, not knowing herto be his mother, he begat two sons, *Eteocles* and *Polynices*. But when in proceesse of time, finding out by good circumstances, who were his Parents, he understood the grievous murder and incest he had committed, he tore out his own eyes for grief, and left the City. His Wife (and Mother) did hang her self. Some say, that *Oedipus* having his eyes pulled out, was expelled *Thebes*, bitterly cursing his sons, because they suffered their father to be cast out of the Town, and aided him not. Howsoever it were, his two Sons made this agreement, that the one of them should reign one year, and the other another year, and so by course rule interchangeably. But this appointment was ill observed. For when *Polynices* had after a yeers government resigned the Kingdom to his brother: or (according to others) when *Eteocles* had reigned the first year, he refused to give over the rule to *Polynices*. Hereupon *Polynices* fled unto *Argos*, where *Adrastus* the son of *Talaus* then reigned, unto whose Palace coming by night, he was driven to seek lodging in an out-house, on the back-side.

There he met with *Tydeus* the son of *Oeneus*, who was fled from *Calydon*: with whom striving about their lodging, he fell to blowes. *Adrastus* hearing the noise, came forth and took up the quarrell. At which time perceiving in the shield of *Tydeus* a Bore, in that of *Polynices* a Lion, he remembered an old Oracle by which he was advised to give his two Daughters in marriage to a Lion and a Bore: and accordingly he did bestow his Daughter *Argia* upon *Tydeus*, and *Deiroke* upon *Polynices*, promising to restore them both to their Countries. To this purpose levying an Army, and assembling as many valiant Captains as he could draw to follow him, he was desirous among others to carry *Amphiarus* the son of *Oikleus* a great Soothsayer, and a valiant man, along with him. But *Amphiarus*, who is said to have foreseen all things, knowing well that none of the Captains should escape, save onely *Adrastus*, did both utterly refuse to be one in that expedition, and perswaded others to stay at home. *Polynices* therefore dealt with *Eriphyle* the Wife of *Amphiarus*, offering unto her a very fair Bracelet, upon condition that she should cause her Husband to assist him. The Soothsayer knowing what should work his destiny, forbade his Wife to take any gift of *Polynices*. But the Bracelet was in her eye so precious a Jewell, that she could not refuse it. Therefore whereas a great controversy betwixt *Amphiarus* and *Adrastus* was by way of compromise put unto the decision of *Eriphyle*, either of them being bound by solemn oath to stand to her appointment: she ordered the matter so, as a Woman should that did love a Bracelet better than her Husband, and now finding that it was far more easie to fore-see than avoid destiny, sought for such comfort as revenge might afford him, giving in charge unto his sons, that when they came to full age, they should kill their mother, and make strong war upon the

Now had *Adrastus* assembled all his forces, of which, the seven chief Leaders were himself, *Amphiarus*, *Capanus*, and *Hippomedon* (in stead of whom some name *Meas* *Phall* *Agrius*, with *Polynices* the *Theban*, *Tydeus* the *Argian*, and *Parthenopius* the *Argian*, son of *Melager* and *Atalanta*. When the Army came to the *Memnon* Wood, they met a woman, whom they desired to help them to some water; she having a childe in her arms, laid it down, and led the *Argians* to a Spring: but ere she returned, a Serpent had slain the childe. This woman was *Eriphyle* the Daughter of *Thebes* the *Lamian*, whom she would have saved when the women of the Isle slew all the

the males by conspiracy, intending to lead an *Amazonian* life. For such her Piety the *Lemnian* wives did sell her to *Pyrus*, and the *Pyrus* to *Lycurgus*, Lord of the Country about *Nemea*, whose young son *Opheltes*, or *Archemorus* she did nurse, and lost, as shewed before: When upon the child's death she bid her self for fear of her mother, *Amphiaras* told her sons where they should find her: and the *Argives* did both kill the Serpent which had slain the child, and in memory of the chance, did institute solemne funerall games, called *Nemean*, wherein *Adrastus* was the prize with his swift horse *Arion*, *Tydeus* with the whorl bats, *Amphiaras* at running and quoiting, *Polyneus* at wrestling, *Parthenopeus* at shooting, and one *Laodocus* in darting. This was the first institution of the *Nemean* games, which continued after famous in *Greece* for very many ages. There are, who think that they were ordained in honour of one *Opheltes* *Lacedemonian*. Some say by *Hercules*, when he had slain the *Nemean* Lion: but the common opinion agrees with that which is here set down.

From *Nemea* the *Argives* marched onwards, arrived at *Citheron*, whence *Tydeus* was by them sent Embassadour to *Thebes*, to require of *Eteocles* the performance of Covenants between him and *Polyneus*. This message was nothing agreeable to *Eteocles*, who was thoroughly resolved to hold what he had, as long as he could: which *Tydeus* perceiving, and intending partly to get honour, partly to trie what mettle was in the *Thebans*, he made many challenges, and obtained victory in all of them, not without much envie and malice of the people, who layd fifty men in ambush to intercept him at his return to the Army, of which fifty he slew all but one, whom he sent back to the City as a reporter and witness of his valour. When the *Argives* understood how resolved *Eteocles* was, they presented themselves before the City, and encamped round about it. *Thebes* is said to have had at that time seven gates, which belike stood not far asunder, seeing that the *Argives* (who afterward when they were very far stronger, could scarce muster up more thousands than *Thebes* had gates) did compass the Towne, *Adrastus* quartered before the gate *Hemoloides*, *Capaneus* before the *Ogygean*, *Tydeus* before *Crenis*, *Amphiaras* at *Proetia*, *Hippomedon* at *Anchais*, *Parthenopeus* at *Elecia*, and *Polyneus* at *Hypistia*. In the mean season, *Eteocles* having armed his men, and appointed Commanders unto them, took advice of *Tiresias* the Soothsayer, who promised victory to the *Thebans*, if *Menecius* the son of *Creon*, a principall man of the City, would vow himself to bee slain in honour of *Mars* the god of war. So full of malice and pride is the Devil, and so envious at his Creators glory, that he not onely challengeth honour due to God alone, as oblations and sacrifice withall Divine worship, but commandeth us to offer our selves and our children unto him, when he hath sufficiently clouded mens understanding, and bewitched their wits with ignorance and blind devotion. And such abominable sacrifice of men, maidens, and children hath he exacted of the *Syrians*, *Carthaginians*, *Gauls*, *Germans*, *Cyprians*, *Egyptians*, and of many other, if not of all Nations, when through ignorance or fear they were most filled with superstition. But as they grew more wise, so did he wake lesse impudent in cunning, though not lesse malicious in desiring the continuance of such barbarous inhumanitie. For King *Diphibus* in *Cyprus* without advice of any Oracle, made the Idoll of that Country rest contented with an Oxe in stead of a man. *Tiberius* forbade humane sacrifices in *Africa*, and crucified the Priests in the groves where they had practised them. *Hercules* taught the *Italians* to crown men of hay in stead of the living: yet among the salvages in the *West Indies* these cruell offerings have been practised of late ages: which, as it is a sufficient argument that *Human* malice is onely covered and hidden by this subtilty among civil people, so it may serve as a probable conjecture of the barbarismes then reigning in *Greece*. For *Menecius*, as soon as he understood that his death might purchase victory to his people, bestowed himself (as he thought) upon *Mars*, killing himself before the gates of the City. Then was a battell fought, wherein the *Argives* prevailed so far at the first, that *Capaneus* advancing ladders to the wals, got up upon the rampart: whence, when he fell, or was cast down, or (as Writers have it) was stricken down by *Jupiter* with a thunder-bolt, the *Argives* fled. Many on each part were slain in this battell, which ended both sides to desire that *Eteocles* and *Polyneus* might try out the quarrell in single fight: whereto, the two brethren according, flew each other.

Another battell was fought after their death: wherein the sons of *Asphes* behaved themselves very valiantly: *Ipharbus* one of the sons slew *Hippomedon*, which was one

of the seven Princes: *Parthenopeus* being another of the seven (who was said to have been lo faire, that none would hurt him when his face was bare) was slain by *Amphidicus*, or, as some say, by *Periclymenus* the son of *Nepheus*: and the valiant *Tydeus*, by *Menalippus*: yet ere *Tydeus* died, the head of *Menalippus* was brought unto him by *Amphiaras*, which he cruelly tore open, and swallowed up the brains. Upon which fact, it is said, that *Pallas*, who had brought from *Jupiter* such remedy for his wounds, as should have made him immortall, refused to bestow it upon him: whereby perhaps was meant that his honour which might have continued immortall, did perish through the beastly rage that he shewed at his death.

The host of the *Argives* being wholly discomfited, *Adrastus* and *Amphiaras* fled: of whom *Amphiaras* is said to have been swallowed quick into the earth, neer to the River *Ismenus*, together with his Chariot, and so lost out of mens sight, being peradventure overwhelmed with dead carcases, or drowned in the River: and his body never found, nor greatly sought for. *Adrastus* escaped on his good horse *Arion*, and came to *Athens*: where, sitting at an altar, called the Altar of Mercy, he made supplication for their aid to recover their bodies. For *Creon* having obtained the government of *Thebes* after the death of *Eteocles*, would not suffer the bodies of the *Argives* to be buried: but caused *Antigone*, the onely daughter then living of *Oedipus*, to be buried quick, because she had sought out and buried the body of her brother *Polyneus*, contrary to *Creon*'s Edict. The *Athenians* condescending to the request of *Adrastus*, did send forth an Army under the conduct of *Thefeus*, which took *Thebes*, and restored the bodies of the *Argives* to sepulture: at which time *Evadne* the wife of *Capaneus* threw her self into the funerall fire, and was burnt willingly with her husband. But it little contented the sons of those Captains which were slain at *Thebes*, that any lesse revenge should be taken of their fathers death, than the ruine of the City: wherefore ten year after, having levied forces, *Egialeus* the son of *Adrastus*, *Diomedes* of *Tydeus*, *Promachus* of *Parthenopeus*, *Sthenelus* of *Capaneus*, *Thersander* of *Polyneus*, and *Euripylus* of *Mecesteus*, marched thither under the conduct of *Alcmaeon*, the son of *Amphiaras*: with whom also went his brother *Amphilocheus*. *Apollo* promised victory, if *Alcmaeon* were their Captain, whom afterward by another Oracle he commanded to kill his own mother.

When they came to the City, they were encountered by *Laodamas* the son of *Eteocles* then King of the *Thebans* (for *Creon* was onely Tutor to *Laodamas*) who though he did valiantly in the battell, and slew *Egialeus*, yet was he put to the worst, and driven to flee, or (according to *Apollodorus*) slain by *Alcmaeon*. After this disaster, the Citizens began to desire composition: but in the mean time they conveyed themselves with their wives and children away from thence by night, and so began to wander up and down, till at length they built the Town called *Estiea*. The *Argives*, when they perceived that their enemies had quitted the Town, entering into it, sacked it, threw down the wals, and laid it waste: howbeit it is reported by some, that the Town was saved by *Thirander* the son of *Polyneus*, who causing the Citizens to return, did there reign over them. That he saved the City from utter destruction, it is very likely; for he reigned there, and led the *Thebans* to the War of *Troy*, which very shortly after ensued.

#### §. VIII.

Of *Jephtha*, and how the three hundred years which he speaketh of, *Judg.* 11. 28. are to be reconciled with the places, *Acts* 13. 20. 1 *Reg.* 6. 1. together with some other things touching *Chronologie* about these times.

After the death of *Jair* (neer about whose time these things hapned in *Greece*, and during whose government, and that of *Thola*, *Israel* lived in peace and in order) they revolted again from the Law and Service of God, and became more wicked and idolatrous than ever. For whereas in the former times they worshipped *Baal* and *Asteroth*, they now became followers of all the Heathen Nations adjoining, and imbraced the Idols of the *Aramites*, of the *Zidonians*, *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*: with those of the *Philistines*. And as before it pleased God to correct them by the *Aramites*, by the *Amalekites*, and *Midianites*: so now he scourged them by the *Ammonites*, and afterward by the *Philistines*.

Now among the *Israelites*, those of *Gilead* being most oppressed, because they bordered upon

*Judg.* 10.  
The persecution of the *Ammonites* lasted 18 years, & ended in the year of the World 2820, in which year *Jephtha* began, *Jud.* 11.

Judg. 11. 33.

Ezr. in Judg.

Judg. 12.

2925.

2942.

Judg. 11. 21.  
Ab. 13. 20.  
1 King. 6. 1.Id facit, numero  
certo pro incer-  
to, proposita.

upon the *Ammonites*, they were inforced to seek *Jephtha*, whom they had formerly despised and cast from them, because he was base born; but he (notwithstanding those former injuries) participating more of godly compassion, than of devilish hatred and revenge, was content to lead the *Gileadites* to the War, upon condition that they should establish him their Governour after victory. And when he had disputed with *Ammon* for the Land, disproved *Ammon* right, and fortified the Title of *Israel* by many arguments, the same prevailing nothing, he began the war; and being strengthened by God, overthrew them: and did not only beat them out of the Plains, but for them over the mountains of *Arabia*, even to *Minnith*, and *Abel* of the vineyards, Cities pre-est heretofore in the description of the *Holy Land*. After which victory it is said, that he performed the vain vow which he made, to sacrifice the first living creature he encountered, coming out of his house to meet him; which happened to be his own daughter, and only child, who with all patience submitted her self, and only desired two months time to bewail her Virginity on the mountains of *Gilead*; because in her the issues of her Father ended: but the other opinion, that she was not offered, is more probable, which *Berwaldus* and others prove sufficiently.

After these things the children of *Israel*, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, either envied *Jephtha*'s victory, or otherwise making way to their future calamity, and to the most grievous slavery that ever *Israel* suffered, quarrelled with *Jephtha*, that they were not called to the War, as before time they had contested with *Gideon*. *Jephtha* hereupon is forced to defend himself against their fury, in the encounter slew of them 42000, which so weakened the body of the Land, as the *Philistines* had an easie conquest of them all not long after. *Jephtha*, after he had judged *Israel* six years, died: to whom succeeded *Ishnan*, who ruled seven years: after him *Eliab* was their Judge ten years: in all which time *Israel* had peace. *Eusebius* finds not *Eliab*, whom he calleth *Adon*, for in the *Septuagint*, approved in his time, this Judge was omitted.

Now before I go on with the rest, it shall be necessary upon the occasion of *Jephtha*'s account of the times, *Jud. 11. 28.* (where he sayes that *Israel* had then posselt the East side of *Jordan* 300. years) to speak somewhat of the times of the Judges, and of the differing opinions among the Divines and Chronologers: there being found three places of Scriptures touching this point, seeming repugnant or disagreeing: the first is in this dispute between *Jephtha* and *Ammon*, for the right and possession of *Gilead*: the second is that of *S. Paul*, *Ab. 13.* the third is that which is in the first of *Kings*. *Jephtha* here lengtheneth the possession of *Gilead* for 300. years: *S. Paul* giveth to the Judges, as it seems, from the end of *Josua* to the last of *Hele*, 450. years. In the first of *Kings* it is taught, that from the departing of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, to the foundation of *Solomon*'s Temple, there were consumed 480. years. To the first, *Berwaldus* findeth *Jephtha*'s 300. years to be but 266. years, to wit, 18. of *Josua*, 40. of *Othniel*, 80. of *Aod* and *Samgar*, 40. of *Debra*, 40. of *Gideon*, 3. of *Abimelech*, 23. of *Ishnan*, and 22. of *Jair*: But *Jephtha* (saith *Berwaldus*) putteth or propoeth a certain number for an uncertain: *Sic ut dicat annum aji pnt trecentisimum, ex quo nullus litem ea de re moverit Israeli; So he speaketh* (saith he) *a mising, that then it was about, or well-nigh, the three hundred year; since Israel possessed those Countries, no man making question of their right.* *Codoman* on the contrary finds more years than *Jephtha* named by 65. to wit, 365. whereof 71. were spent in *Israel*'s captivity at several times, of which (as *Codoman* thinketh) *Jephtha* forbore to repeat the whole sum, or any great part, lest the *Ammonites* should have justly objected, that 71. of those years the *Israelites* were in captivity, and vassals to their neighbour Princes, and therefore knowing that to name three hundred years, it was enough for prescription, he omitted the rest.

To justify this account of 365. years, besides the 71. years of captivity or affliction, to be added to *Berwaldus* his 266. he addeth also 28. years more, and so maketh up the summe of 365. These 28. years he findeth out thus: twenty years he gives to the *Seniors* between *Josua* and *Othniel*: and where *Berwaldus* alloweth eighteen years to *Josua* his government, *Codoman* accounts that his rule lasted 26. according to *Jephtha*; whereas Saint *Augustine* and *Eusebius* give him 27. *Melancthon* 32. The truth is, that this addition of 28. years, is far more doubtful than the other of 71. But though we admit not of this addition, yet by accounting of some part of the years of affliction (to wit, 34. years of the 71.) if we adde them to the 266. years

of *Berwaldus*, which reckoneth none of those, we have the just number of 300. years. Neither is it strange that *Jephtha* should leave out more than halfe of the years of affliction: seeing, as it is already said, the *Ammonites* might except against the 71. years, and say, that during these years, or at least a good part of them, the *Israelites* had no quiet possession of the Countries in question. *Martin Luther* is the author of a third opinion, making those 300. years remembered by *Jephtha*, to bee 306. which odde years, saith he, *Jephtha* omitteeth. But because the years of every Judge, as they reigned, cannot make up the number of 306. but doe onely compound 266. therefore doth *Luther* adde to this number the whole time which *Moses* spent in the Deserts of *Arabia* 40. years: which forty years of *Moses* added to the number which *Berwaldus* findeth of 266. make indeed 306.

But I see nothing in the Text to warrant *Luther*'s judgment herein: for in the dispute between *Jephtha* and *Ammon* for the Land of *Gilead*, it is written in the person of *Ammon*, in these words: *Because Israel took my Land, when they came up from Egypt; from Aram unto Jacob, &c. now therefore restore those Lands quietly; or in peace.* So by this place it is plain, that the time is not to be accounted from *Moses* departure out of *Egypt*; but from the time that the Land was posselt. For it is said, *Quia cepit Israel terram meam. Behold Israel took my Land*: and therefore the beginning of this account is to be referred to the time of the taking; which *Jephtha*'s answer also confirmeth in these words: *When Israel dwelt in Hebron, and in her Towns, and in Aracr, and in her Towns, and in all the Cities that are by the coast of Arnon* 300. years: *why did ye not then recover them in that time?* So as this place speaks it directly, that *Israel* had inhabited and dwelt in the Cities of *Gilead* 300. years: and therefore to account the times from the hopes or intents that *Israel* had to possesse it, it seemeth somewhat strained to mee: for we doe not use to reckon the time of our conquests in France, from our Princes intents or purposes, but from their victories and possessions.

*Junius* neverthelesse likes the opinion of *Luther*, and sayes, that this time of 300. years hath reference, and is to take beginning from the first of *Jephtha*'s narration: when he maketh a brief repetition of *Moses* whole journey: to wit, at the sixteenth Verse of the sixteenth Chapter of *Judges*, in our translation in these words: *But when Israel came up from Egypt, &c.* and therefore *Moses* his 40. years (as he thinkes) are to be accounted, which make the number of 305. years: and not onely the time in which *Israel* posselt *Gilead*, according to the Text, and *Jephtha*'s own words: of which I leave the judgment to others; to whom also I leave to judge, whether we may not begin the 480. years, from the deliverance out of *Egypt* to the Temple, even from the first departure out of *Egypt*, and yet finde a more probable reconciliation of Saint *Paul*'s and *Jephtha*'s account with this reckoning, than any of those that as yet have been signified. For first, touching *Jephtha*'s three hundred years of possession of the East side of *Jordan*, it is to be remembered, that for a good while before the *Israelites* posselt it, *Sehon* and *Og* had disposselt *Moab* and *Ammon* thereof: so that when the *Israelites* had conquered *Sehon* and *Og*, the right of possession which they had, passed to *Israel*; and so *Jephtha* might say, that they had posselt those Countreies 300. years, reckoning 266. years of their own possession, and the rest of the possession of the two Kings, *Sehon* and *Og*, whose right the *Israelites* had by the law of conquest.

The second place disputed is this of *S. Paul*, *Ab. 13.* that from the end of *Josua*, to the beginning of *Samuel*, there past 450. years. And this place *Luther* understandeth also besides the letter (as I find his opinion cited by *Funckius Krentzschmus*, and *Beza*) that I have not read in his Commentaries. For he accounteth from the death of *Moses*, to the last year of *Hele*, but 357. years: and this he doth the better to approve the times from the egression out of *Egypt* to the building of the Temple, which in the first of *Kings* 6. is said to be 480. years.

Now so far as much as *S. Paul* (as it seems) findes 450. years from the death of *Josua*, to the last of *Hele*, and leaves but thirty years for *Saul* and *Samuel*, who governed 40. for *David* who ruled 40. and for *Solomon* who wore the Crown three whole years: ere that the foundation of the Temple was laid; therefore *Luther* takes it, that there was error in the Scribe, who wrote out this piece of Scripture of *S. Paul*: to wit, *Then afterward he gave unto them Judges about 450. years, unto the time of Samuel the Prophet*: the words [*then afterward*] being clearly referred to the death, or after the death

Reade the 24.  
of Jos. and the  
2. of Judg. 7.  
Funck. Chro. 4.  
Beza in his  
annotations  
upon the 13. of  
Ab. v. 10.

A. 13. 20.

of



of *Josua*, as shall be hereafter proved. But where Saint *Luke*, rehearsing the words of Saint *Paul*, wrote 350. years (saith *Luther*) the Scribe in the transcription being deceived by the affinity of those two Greek words, whereof the one significeth 300. and the other 400. wrote *Trescentos*, for *Tricentos*; 400. years for 300 years; and 450. for 350. This he seeketh to strengthen by many arguments: to which opinion *Beza* in his great annotations adhereth. A contrary judgment to this hath *Codoman*: where he and *Beza* begin at *Moses* death, he takes his account from the death of *Josua*, and from thence to the beginning of *Samuel* he makes 430. years: to wit, of the Judges (not reckoning *Sampsons* years) 319. and of years of servitude and affliction under the *Gentils*, 111. The reason why he doth not reckon *Sampsons* twenty years, is, because he thinks that they were part of the 40. years, in which the *Philistims* are said to have oppressed *Israel*. For it is plain, that during all *Sampsons* time, they were Lords over *Israel*. So then of the Judges, besides the 111. years of servitude, *Codoman* reckoneth (as I have said) 319. years, which two sums put together, make 430. years. And whereas Saint *Paul* nameth 450. years, he finds 20. years to make up Saint *Pauls* number, to have been spent after the death of *Josua* by the *Seniors*, before the Captivity of *Cushan*, or the election of *Othniel*: which 20. years added to 430. make 450. according to Saint *Paul*. To approve this time of the Elders, he citeth two places of Scriptures, namely the 24. of *Josua*, and the second of *Judges*, in each of which places it is written, that *Israel* served the Lord all the days of *Josua*, and all the days of the Elders that over-lived *Josua*: so as to these times of the Elders, *Codoman* giveth 20. years, which makes before 450. according to Saint *Paul*. Neither would it breed any great difficulty in this opinion, if he also the 20. years of the *Seniors* between *Josua* and *Othniel* should be denied. For they which deny these years, and make *Othniel* 40. to begin presently upon the death of *Josua*, as in the beginning of this reckoning they have 20. years less than *Codoman*, so toward the end of it (when they reckon the years of affliction apart from the years of the Judges) in the number of *Sampson* years, and of the forty years of the *Philistims* oppressing the *Israelites*, they have 20. years more than *Codoman*. For they reckon these 40. years of oppression all of them a-part from *Sampson* 20. but *Codoman*, as is said, makes *Sampson* 20. to be the one half of the forty of the *Philistims* oppressions; so that if the 20. years of the *Seniors* be not allowed to *Codoman*, then he may reckon (as the letter of the Text seems to enforce) that the *Philistims* in any *Inter-regnum*, before *Sampson* judged *Israel*, vexed the *Israelites* 40. years, besides the 20. while *Sampson* was their Judge; and so the reckoning will come to 450. years between the end of *Josua*, and the beginning of *Samuel*, though we admit not of an *Inter-regnum* of the *Seniors* between *Josua* and *Othniel*: For if the times of their affliction be summed, they make 111. years, to which if we add the years of the Judges, which are 339. we have the just sum of 450. And this computation either one way or other, may seem to be much more probable, than that which correct the Text, although we should admit of their correction thereof; and read with them 350. for 450. For whereas they conceive that this time of 350. years, is to begin immediately, or soon after the death of *Moses*: certainly the place of Saint *Paul* doth evidently teach the contrary, though it be received for true that there was vitium scriptoris in the rest. For these be Saint *Pauls* words: And about the time of forty years, God suffered their manners in the wilderness: and he destroyed seven Nations in the Land of *Canaan*, and divided their Land to them by lot. Then afterward he gave unto them Judges about 450. years, unto the time of *Samuel* the Prophet. So as still in the eighteenth verse he speaketh of *Moses*, and of his years spent in the Wilderness, then in the nineteenth verse he cometh unto the acts of *Josua*; which were, that he destroyed seven Nations in the Land of *Canaan*, and divided their Land to them by lot. In the twentieth Verse it followeth, Then afterward he gave them Judges about 450. years, &c. and therefore to reckon from the death of *Moses*, is wide of Saint *Pauls* meaning, so far as my weak understanding can pierce it. The only inconvenience of any weight in opinion of *Codoman* touching this place in the *Acts*, is, that it seems irreconcilable with the account, 1 *Reg.* 6. 11. For if indeed there were 450. years between the end of *Josua* and the beginning of *Samuel*, certainly there must needs be much more than 480. years between the beginning of the *Israelites* journeying from *Egypt*, and the foundation of the Temple by *Solomon*. To this difficulty

*Codoman* answereth, that these 480. years, 1 *Reg.* 6. 1. must begin to be reckoned, not in the beginning, but in the ending of their journeying from *Egypt*, which he makes to be 45. years after the beginning of *Othniels* government; from whence if we cast the years of the Judges, with the years of servitude (which sums, according to his account, of which we have already spoken, make 397. years) and so to these years add the 40. of *Samuel*, and *Saul*, and the 40. of *David*, and the 3. of *Solomon*, we shall have the just sum of 480. years. Neither is it hard, saith he) that the *annus egressione*, 1 *Kings* 6. 1. should be understood *egressione non incipientis, sed finis*, the year of their coming out of *Egypt* (for so it is in the original) or the year after they came out of *Egypt*, may well be understood for the year after they were come out thence, that is, after they had ended their wandering from thence. For so we find that things which were done forty years after they had set foot out of *Egypt*, are said to have been done in their going out of *Egypt*; as *Psal.* 114. When *Israel* came out of *Egypt*, *Jordan* was driven back, And *Deut.* 1. The Lord the testimony which *Moses* spake when they came out of *Egypt*. And thus far it seems we may very well agree with *Codoman*, for the interpretation of the *ab exitu*, to be as much as *quoniam exivissent*, or *ab exitu finito*: for if *Junius*, *Deut.* 4. 45. do well receive *quoniam exivissent*, for *in exitu*, as it seems that herein he doth well, why may not we also, to avoid contradiction in the Scripture, expound *ab exitu* to be, *postquam exivissent*? The next point to be cleared, is how their journeying should be said not to have lasted until the 25. year after the victory of *Othniel*. To this *Codoman* answereth, that it had no end, till when all the Tribes had obtained their portions, which happened not until this time: at which time the *Danites* at length seated themselves, as is declared, *Judg.* 18. For doubtlesse to this time the Expedition may most conveniently be referred. And thus without any great inconvenience to him appearing, *Codoman* reconcile the account of *Jephtha*, and of Saint *Paul*, with that in the first *Reg.* 6. 1. Now whereas it is said, that the Expedition of the *Danites* was when there was no King in *Israel*: to this *Codoman* answereth, that it is not necessary that we should suppose that *Othniel* lived all those 40. years of rest, of which *Judg.* 3. 11. is said that the 25. year after his victory, either he might have been dead, or at least, as *God* did, he might have refused all Sovereignty, and so either way it might truly be said that at this time (to wit, the 25. year after *Othniels* victory) there was no King in *Israel*. This opinion of *Codoman*, if it were as consonant to other Chronologers, grounding their opinions on the plain Text, where it is indisputable, as it is in it self found enough and coherent, might perhaps be received as good: especially considering that the speeches of Saint *Paul* have not otherwise found any interpretation, maintaining them as absolutely true, in such manner as they found, and are set down. But being that he wanteth all help of authority, we may justly suspect the supposition whereupon his opinion is grounded; it being such as the consent of many Authors would hardly suffice to make very probable. For who hath told *Codoman*, that the conquest of *Laish*, by the Tribe of *Dan*, was performed in the five and twentieth year of *Othniel*? Or what other probability hath he than his own conjecture, to shew that *Othniel* did so renounce the office of a Judge after five and twenty years, that it might truly be said there was no King in *Israel*, but every man did that which was good in his own eyes? Now concerning the rehearsal of the Law by *Moses*, and the stopping of *Jordan*, they might indeed be properly said to have been, when *Israel* came out of *Egypt*: but we say that King *Edward* the first was crowned when he came out of the Holy Land, for to all journeys with their accidents commonly take name from the place either whence or whither they tend. But I think that he can finde no such phrase of speech in Scripture as sheweth a journey by an accident, or faith by converting the proposition, when *Jordan* was turning back, *Israel* came out of *Egypt*. Indeed most improperly were to give date unto actions commenced long after, from an expedition finished long before, namely, to say, that King *Edward* at his arrivall out of *Palestine* did win *Jordan*, or died at *Laish*. How may we then believe that enterprise performed 25. years after the division of the Land (which followed the conquest at the journeying out) should be said to have been at the time of the departure out of *Egypt*? Or who will not think it most strange, that the most notable account of time, serving as the only guide for certain ages in sacred Chronologie, should not take name and beginning



ginning from that illustrious deliverance out of Egypt, rehearsed often by God himself among the principall of his benefits to Israel, whereof the very day and moneth are recorded in Scripture (as likewise are the year and moneth wherein it expired) and the form of the year upon that occasion changed; but should have reference to the surprizing of a Town by six hundred men, that robbed a Chappell by the way, and stole from thence Idols to be their guides, as not going to work in Gods Name? For this accident whereupon Codoman buildeth, hath either no time given to it, or a time far different from that which he supposeth, and is indeed rather by him placed in such a year, because it best stood with his interpretation so to have it, than for any certainty or likelihood of the thing it self.

Wherefore we may best agree with such as affirm, that the Apostle S. Paul did not herein labour to set down the course of time exactly (a thing no way concerning his purpose) but onely to shew that God, who had chosen Israel to be his people, delivered them out of bondage, and ruled them by Judges and Prophets unto the time of Saul, did raise up our Lord Jesus Christ out of the seed of David the King, in whose succession the Crown was established, and promise made of a Kingdome that should have no end. Now in rehearsing briefly thus much which tended as a Preface to the declaration following (wherein he sheweth Christ to have been the true Messiah) the Apostle was so far from labouring to make an exact calculation of times (the History being so well known and beleev'd of the Jews to whom he preached) that he spake as it were, in large of the 40. years consumed in the Wildernesse, whereof no man doubted, saying that God suffered their matners in the Wildernesse about 40. years. In like manner he proceeded, saying, that from the division of the Land unto the dayes of Samuel the Prophet, in whose time they required to have a King, there passed about 450. years. Neither did he stand to tell them, that an hundred and eleven years of bondage mentioned in this middle while, were by exact computation to be included within the 339. years of the Judges: for this had been an impertinent digression from the argument which he had in hand. Wherefore it is not a work so needfull as laborious, to search out of this place that which the Apostle did not here intend to teach, when the sum of 480. years is so expressely and purposely set down.

Now that the words of S. Paul (if there be no fault in the copy through error of some Scribe) are not so curiously to be examined in matter of Chronologie, but must betaken, as having reference to the memory and apprehension of the vulgar, it is evident by his ascribing in the same place 40. years to the reign of Saul: whereas it is manifest that those years were divided between Saul and Samuel, yea, that far the greater part of them were spent under the government of the Prophet, howsoever they are here included in the reign of the King. As for those that with so much cunning forsake the generall opinion, when it favoureth not such exposition as they bring out of a good minde, to help where the need is not over-great; I had rather commend their diligence, than follow their example. The words of S. Paul were sufficiently justified by Beroaldus, as having reference to a common opinion among the Scribes in those dayes, that the 111. years of servitude were to be reckoned apart from the 339. years ascribed to the Judges; which account the Apostle would not in this place stand to contradict, but rather chose to speak as the vulgar, qualifying it with a *quasi*, where he saith, *quasi quadringenti & quinquaginta annis*: As it were four hundred and fifty years. But Codoman being not thus contented, would needs have it be so indeed, and therefore dis-joynes the members to make the account even. In so doing he dasheth himself against a notable Text, whereupon all Authors have builded, (as well they might and ought) that purposely and precisely doth cast up the years from the departure out of Egypt, unto the building of Solomons Temple, not omitting the very moneth it self.

Now (as commonly the first apprehensions are strongest) having already given faith to his own interpretation of S. Paul, he thinketh it more needfull to finde some new exposition for that which is of it self most plain, & to examine his own conjecture upon a place that is full of controversie. Thus by expounding after a strange Method, that which is manifest by that which is obscure, he loseth himself in those wayes wherein before him never man walked. Surely if one should urge him to give reason of these new opinions, he must needs answer, that Othomiel could not govern above 25. years, because then was the taking of Laish; at which time there was no King in Israel; That the

Darius

Danites must needs have taken Laish at that time, because else we could not reckon backwards from the foundation of the Temple to any action that might be termed the coming of Israel out of Egypt, without excluding the years of servitude; And that the years of servitude must needs be included, for that otherwise hee himself should have spent his time vainly, in seeking to pleasure S. Paul with an exposition. Whether this ground be strong enough to uphold a Paradox, I leave it to the decision of the judicious Reader.

And now to proceed in our story. To the time of Fephtia are referred the death of Hercules, the rape of Helen by Paris, and the provisions which her husband Menelaus, reigning then in Sparta, and his brother Agamemnon King of Mycenae, made for her recovery. Others referre this rape of Helen to the fourth year of Ithaca: from which time, if the warre of Troy (as they suppose) did not begin till the third of Ailon or Elon, yet the Greeks had six years to prepare themselves: the rule holding not true in this War, *Longa preparatio belli celerem affert victoriam*; That a long preparation begets a speedy victorie: for the Greeks consumed ten years in the attempt; and Troy, as it seems, was entred, sackt, and burnt in the third year of Haddon.

Three years after Troy taken, which was in the sixt year of Haddon, Aeneas arrived in Italy. Haddon in the eighth year of his rule, died, after hee had been the Father of 40. sons, and 30. grand-children. And whereas it is supposed, that the 40. years of Israels oppression by the Philistims (of which *Judg. 13. v. 1.*) took beginning from the ninth year of Gair, and ended with the last of Haddon: I see no reason for that opinion. For Ephraim had had little cause of quarrell against Fephtia, for not calling them to war over Jordan, if the Philistims had held them in servitude in their own territories; and if Ephraim could have brought 42000. armed men into the field, it is not likely that they were then oppress: and had it been true that they were, who will doubt but that they would rather have fought against the Philistims with so powerfull an Army for their own deliverance, than against their own brethren the Israelites? but Ammon being overthrown, it seemed at that time, that they feared no other enemy. And therefore these 40. years must either be supplied elsewhere, as in the time of Sampson, and afterward: or else they must be referred to the inter-regnum between the death of Haddon, and the deliverance of Israel by Sampson, such as it was.



## CHAP. XIII.

## Of the Warre of Troy.

## S. I.

Of the Genealogie of the Kings of Troy, with a note touching the ancient Poets, how they have observed historical truth.



He Warre at Troy, with other stories hereupon depending (because the ruine of this Citie, by most Chronologers is found in the time of Haddon Judge of Israel, whom in the last place I have mentioned) I rather choose here to treat of in one entire narration, beginning with the lineal descent of their Princes, than to break the story into peeces by rehearsing a-part in divers years, the diversity of occurrences.

The Historie of the ancient Kings of Troy is uncertain, in regard both of their originall, and of their continuance. It is commonly held that Teneas and Dardanus were the two founders of that Kingdome. This is the opinion of Virgil: which if he (as Reineccius thinks) took from Berosus, it is the more probable: if Annins borrowed it of him, then it rests upon the authoritie of Virgil, who saith thus:

Creta Jovis magni medio jacet insula ponto  
Mans Idam ubi, & gentis chusabula nostrae.

Encl. 3.

N n

Centum

*Centum Urbes habitant magnas, uberrima regna :  
 Maximus unde Pater (sistit audita recorder)  
 Teucus Rhætas primum est advectus adoras :  
 Optavitq; locum regno. Nondum Ilium & arces  
 Pergameæ steterant : habitabant vallibus imis.  
 Hinc Mater cultrix Cybele, Corybantiq; æra,  
 Idaeumq; nemus.*

In the main Sea the Ile of Creete doth lye :  
 Where Jove was born, thence is our progeny.  
 There is a mount *Ida* : there in fruitfull Land  
 An hundred great and goodly Cities stand.  
 Thence (if I follow not mistaken fame)  
 Teucer the eldest of our grand-fires came  
 To the *Rhætan* shores : and reigned there,  
 Ere yet fair *Ilium* was built, and ere  
 The Towers of *Troy* : their dwelling place they fought  
 In lowest Vales. Hence *Cybelis* rites were brought :  
 Hence *Corybantian* Cymbals did remove ;  
 And hence the name of our *Idæan* grove.

Thus it seemeth by *Virgil*, who followed surely good authority, that *Teucer* first gave name to that Countrey, wherein he reigned ere *Troy* was built by *Dardanus* : of which *Dardanus* in the same book he speaks thus :

*Est locus, Hesperiam Graii cognomine dicunt :  
 Terra antiquâ, potens armis atq; ubere glebe,  
 Oenotrii coluere viri ; nunc fama minores  
 Italiam dixisse, ducis de nomine gentem.  
 Ha nobis propria sedes : hinc Dardanus ortus :  
 Fasilusq; Pater, genus à quo principe nostrum.*

*Hesperia* the *Gracians* call the place :  
 An ancient fruitfull Land, a warlike race,  
*Oenotrians* held it : now the later progenie  
 Gives it their Captains name, and calls it *Italy* ;  
 This seat belongs to us, hence *Dardanus*,  
 Hence came the author of your stock, *Fasilus*.

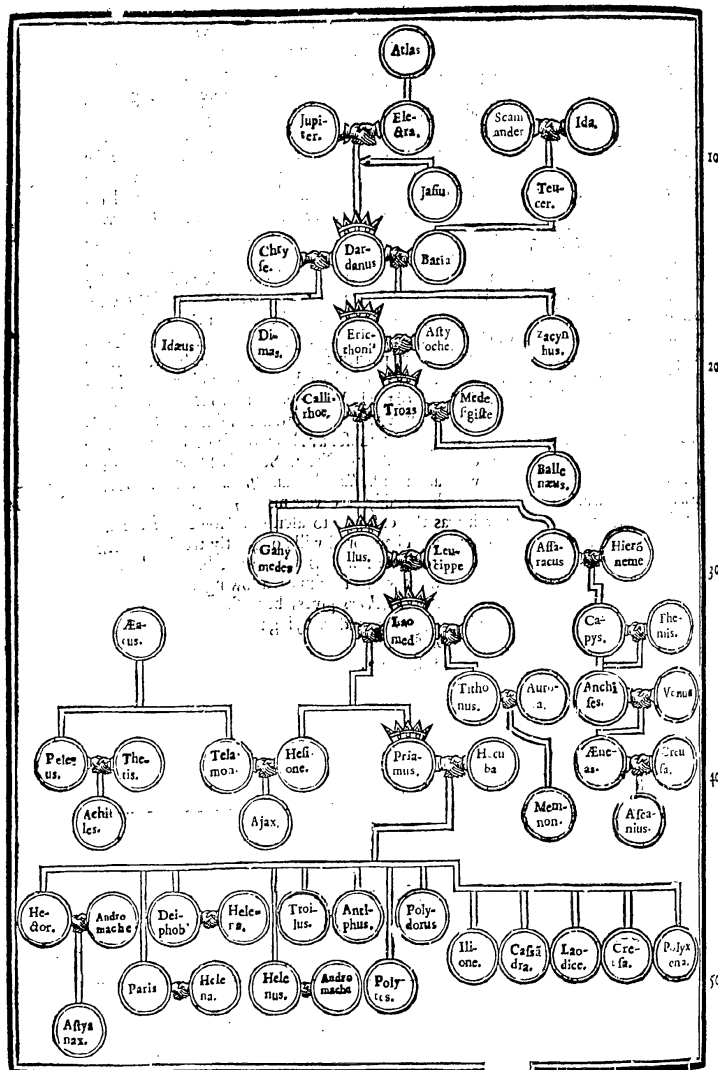
*Atq; equidem memini (fama est obscurior annis)  
 Auruncos ita fere senes, hic ortus ut agris  
 Dardanus Idæus Phrygiæ penetravit ad urbes,  
 Threiciamq; Samum, quæ nunc Samothracia fertur.  
 Hinc illum Coryti Tyrrenhæna ab sede profectum,  
 Aurea nunc solio stellantis regia cæli  
 Accipit, &c.*

Some old *Auruncans*, I remember well,  
 (Though time have made the same obscure) would tell  
 Of *Dardanus*, how born in *Italy*,  
 From hence he into *Phrygia* did flie.  
 And leaving *Tuscaine* (where he earst had place)  
 With *Corytus* did sail to *Samothrace* ;  
 But now intronized he sits on high,  
 In golden Palace of the starry skie.

But contrary to this, and so many Authors, approving and confirming it, *Reineccius* thinks that these names, *Troes*, *Teucris*, and *Thracæ*, are derived from *Tivas* or *Thiras* the son of *Japhet* : and that the *Dardanians*, *Myssians*, &c. *Ascanians*, mixt with the *Trojans*, were

were *Germane* Nations, descended from *Ashkenaz*, the son of *Gomer* : of whom the Countrey, Lake, and river of *Ascanius* in *Asia* took name. That *Ashkenaz* gave name to those places and people, it is not unlikely, neither is it unlikely, that the *Ascanii*, *Dardani*, and many others, did in after-times pass into *Europe* : that the name of *Teucer* came of *Tyras*, the conjecture is somewhat hard. Concerning *Teucer*, whereas *Halicarnassæus* makes him an *Athenian*, I find none that follow him in the same opinion. *Virgil* (as is before shewed) reporteth him to be of *Crete*, whose authority is the more to be regarded, because he had good means to find the truth, which it is probable that he carefully sought, and in this did follow, seeing it no way concerned *Augustus* (whom other-whiles he did flatter) whether *Teucer* were of *Crete* or no. *Reineccius* doth rather embrace the opinion of *Diodorus*, and others that think him a *Phrygian*, by which report he was the Son of *Scamander* and *Ida*, Lord of the Countrey, not founder of the Citie ; and his Daughter or Niece *Batia* was the second wife of *Dardanus* founder of *Troy*. *Reineccius* further thinks that *Atlas* reigned in *Samothracia*, and gave his daughter *Electra* to *Corytus*, or *Coritus* : and that these were parents to *Cryse*, first wife to *Dardanus*. *Virgil* holds otherwise ; and the common Tradition of Poets makes *Dardanus* the son of *Electra* by *Jupiter*, which *Electra* was the daughter of *Atlas*, and wife to *Coritus* King of *Hetruria*, to whom she bare *Fasilus*. *Annins* one of his *Berosus* finds the name of *Camboblascon*, to whom he gives the addition of *Corytus*, as a Title of dignity, making him Father of *Dardanus* and *Fasilus* ; and further telling us very particularly of the faction between these Brethren, which grew to such heat, that finally *Dardanus* killed his Brother, and thereupon fled into *Samothrace*. The obscurity of the history gives leave to *Annins* of saying what he list. I, that love not to use such libertie, will forbear to determine any thing herein. But if *Dardanus* were the Son of *Jupiter*, it must have been of some elder *Jupiter* than the Father of those that lived about the War of *Troy*. So it is likewise probable that *Atlas* the Father of *Electra* was rather an *Italian* than an *African*, which also is the opinion of *Boccaccio*. For (as hath often been said) there were many *Jupiters*, and many of almost every name of gods : but it was the custome to ascribe to some one the acts of the rest, with all belonging to them. Therefore I will not greatly trouble my self with making any narrow search into these fabulous antiquities, but set down the Pedigree according to the generall fame, allowing to *Teucer* such Parents as *Diodorus* gives, because others giving him none, and carrying the line of *Dardanus* in manner following.

N n z



Concerning the beginning and continuance of the *Trojan* Kingdome, with the length of every Kings reign, I have chosen good Authors to be my guides, that in a History, whereon depends the most ancient computation of times among the *Greeks*, I might not follow uncertainties, ill cohering with the consent of Writers, and general passage of things elsewhere done. And first for the destruction of *Troy*, which was of greater note than any accident befalling that City while it stood, it is reckoned by *Diodorus* to be 780. years more ancient than the beginning of the ninety fourth *Olympiad*. Whereas therefore 372. did passe between the beginning of the *Olympiads*, and the first year of the 94. it is manifest that the remainder of 780. years, that is, 408. years went betwixt the destruction of *Troy*, and the first institution of those games by *Iphitus*, if the authority of *Diodorus* be good proof, who elsewhere tells us, that the return of the *Atreidae*, which was 80. years after the fall of *Troy*, was 328. years before the first *Olympiad*.

Hereunto agrees the authority of *Dionysius Halicarnassensis*, who placing the foundation of *Rome* in the first of the seventh *Olympiad*, that is, four and twenty years after the beginning of those games, accounts it 432. later than the fall of *Troy*. *Solinus* in expresse words, makes the institution of the *Olympiads* by *Iphitus*, whom he calleth *Iphiclus*, 480. years later than the destruction of *Troy*. The sum is easily collected by necessary inference out of divers other places in the same book. Hereunto doth *Eusebius*, reckoning exclusively agree: and *Erastosthenes* (as he is cited by *Clemens Alexandrinus*) makes up out of many particulars, the same totall sum, wanting, but one year, as reckoning likewise exclusively.

The other collections of divers writers that are cited by *Clemens* in the same place, do neither cohere any way, nor depend upon any collateral history, by which they may be verified.

The destruction of *Troy* being in the year before the *Olympiads* four hundred and eight: we must seek the continuance of that from the beginning to the end, out of *Eusebius*, who leads us from *Dardanus* on-wards, through the reigns of four Kings; by the space of two hundred and five and twenty years, and after of *Priamus*, with whom also at length it ended. As for the time which passed under *Laomedon*, we are faine to do as others have done before us, and take it upon trust from *Annius* his Authors; believing *Manetho* so much the rather, for that in his account of the former Kings reigns, and of *Priamus*, he is found to agree with *Eusebius*, which may give us leave to think that *Annius* hath not herein corrupted him. But in this point we need not to be very scrupulous: for seeing that no history or account of time depends upon the reign of the former Kings, but onely upon the ruin of the Citie under *Priamus*, it may suffice that we are careful to place that memorable accident in the due year.

True it is, that some objections appearing weighty, may be alleged in maintenance of different computations, which with the answers I purposely omit, as not willing to dispute of those years, wherein the *Greeks* knew no good forme of a year; but rather to make narration of the actions which were memorable, and acknowledged by all writers, whereof this destruction of *Troy* was one of the most renowned.

The first enterprize that was undertaken by general consent of all *Greece*, was the last war of *Troy*, which hath bin famous even to this day, for the numbers of Princes and valiant Commanders there assembled; the great battails fought with variable success; the long indurance of the siege; the destruction of that great Citie; and the many Colonies planted in sundry countries, as well by the remainder of the *Trojans*, as by the victorious *Greeks* after their unfortunate return. All which things, with innumerable circumstances of especial note, have bin delivered unto posterity, by the excellent wits of many writers, especially by the Poems of that great *Homer*, whose verses have given immortality to the action, which might else perhaps have been buried in oblivion; among other worthy deeds, done both before and since that time. For it is true which *Horace* saith:

Vixere fortes ante Agamemnona  
Multi, sed omnes illachrymabiles  
Urgentur, ignotiq; longa  
Nocte: carent quia vate sacro.

Many

Many by valour have deserv'd renown  
 Ere *Agamemnon*; yet lye all opprest  
 Under long night, unwept for, and unknown:  
 For with no sacred Poet were they blest.

Yet so it is, that whilst these writers have with strange fables, or (to speak the best of them) with Allegories far strained, gone about to enlarge the commendations of those noble undertakers: they have both drawn into suspicion that great vertue which they sought to adorn, and filled after-ages with almost as much ignorance of the History, as admiration of the persons. Wherefore it is expedient that we seek for the knowledge of such actions, in Histories, learning their qualities who did manage them, of Poets; in whose works are both profit and delight; yet small profit to those which are delighted otherwise: but such as can interpret their fables, or separate them from the naked truth, shall find matter in Poems, not unworthy to be regarded of Historians. For those things excepted which are gathered out of *Homer*, there is very little, and not without much disagreement of Authors, written of this great war. All writers consent with *Homer*, that the rape of *Helen* by *Paris* the son of *Priamus*, was the cause of taking arms: but how he was hereunto emboldened, it is doubtful.

## §. II.

Of the rape of *Helen*: and strength of both sides for the War.

**H** *Herodotus* fetcheth the cause of this rape from very far; saying, That whereas the *Phenicians* had ravished *Iô*, and carried her into *Egypt*, the *Greeks*, to be revenged on the *Barbarians*, did first ravish *Europa*, whom they brought out of *Phenicia* into *Creta*; and afterward *Medea*, whom they fetcht from *Colchos*, denying to restore her to her father, till such time as they might be satisfied for the rape of *Iô*. By these deeds of the *Greeks*, *Paris* (as the same *Herodotus* affirms) was emboldened to doe the like, not fearing such revenge as ensued. But all this narration seems frivolous. For what had the King of *Colchos* to doe with the injury of the *Phenicians*? Or how could the *Greeks*, as in revenge of *Iô*, plead any quarrell against him, that never had heard the name of *Phenicians*? *Thucydides*, a writer of unquestionable sincerity, maketh it plain, that the name of *Barbarians* was not used at all in *Homer's* time, which was long after the war of *Troy*: and that the *Greeks* themselves were not then called all by one name, *Hellenes*, as afterwards. So that it were unreasonable to think, that they should have sought revenge upon all Nations, as barbarous, for the injury received by one: or that all people else should have esteemed of the *Greeks*, as of a people opposed to all the world; and that even then when as the *Greeks* had not yet one common name among themselves. Others with more probability say, that the rape of *Helen* was to procure the redelivery of *Hesione*, King *Priamus*'s sister, taken formerly by *Hercules*, and given to *Telamon*. This may have been true: for *Telamon* (as it seems) was a cruel man, seeing his own son *Teucer* durst not come in his fight, after the war of *Troy*, but fled into *Cyprus*, onely because his brother *Ajax* (which *Teucer* could not remedy) had slain himself. Yet, were it so, that *Hesione* was ill entreated by *Telamon*, it was not therefore likely that *Priamus*'s brother would seek to take her from her husband, with whom he had lived about thirty years, and to whom shee had borne children which were to succeed in his Dominion. Whereupon I think that *Paris* had no regard either to the rape of *Europa*, *Medea*, or *Hesione*, but was merely incited by *Venus*; that is, by his lust, to doe that which in those dayes was very common. For not onely *Greeks* from *Barbarians*, and *Barbarians* from *Greeks*, as *Herodotus* discourseth; but all people were accustomed to steal women and cattell, if they could by strong hand or power get them: and having stolen them either to sell them away in some faire Countrey, or keep them to their own use. So did *Theseus* and *Pirithous* attempt *Proserpina*; and so did *Theseus* (long before *Paris*) ravish *Helen*. And these practices, as it appears in *Thucydides*, were so common, that none durst inhabit neer unto the Sea, for fear of piracy, which was accounted a trade of life no lesse lawfull than merchandize: wherefore *Tyndareus*, the father of *Helen*, considering the beauty of his daughter, and the rape which *Theseus* had made, caused all her wooers, who were most of the principall men

in *Greece*, to binde themselves by solemn oath, that if she were taken from her husband, they should with all their might help to recover her. This done, he gave free choice of a husband to his daughter, who chose *Menelaus*, brother to *Agamemnon*. So the cause which drew the *Greeks* unto *Troy* in revenge of *Helen's* rape, was partly the oath which so many Princes had made unto her Father *Tyndareus*. Hereunto the great power of *Agamemnon* was not a little helping: for *Agamemnon*, besides his great Dominions in *Peloponnesus*, was Lord of many Ilands: he was also rich in money, and therefore the *Achaeans* were well contented to follow his pay, whom he embarked for *Troy* in his own ships, which were more than any other of the *Greek* Princes brought to that expedition. Thus did all *Greece*, either as bound by oath, or led by reputation and power of the two brethren, *Agamemnon*, and *Menelaus*; or desirous to partake of the profit and honour in that great enterprize, take arms against the *Trojans*. The *Greeks* Fleet was (by *Homer's* account) 1200. sayl, or thereabouts: but the vessels were not great: for it was not then the manner to build ships with decks; onely they used (as *Thucydides* saith) small ships, meet for robbing on the Sea; the least of which carried fifty men, the greatest 120. every man (except the Captains) being both a Mariner and a Souldier. By this proportion it appears that the *Grecian* army consisted of 100000. men or thereabout. This was the greatest army that ever was raised out of *Greece*: and the greatness of this armie doth well declare the strength and power of *Troy*, which ten whole years did stand out against such forces: yet were the *Trojans* which inhabited the Citie, not the tenth part of this number, as *Agamemnon* said in the second of *Homer's* *Iliads*; but their followers and aides were very many and strong. For all *Phrygia*, *Lycia*, *Misissia*, and the greatest part of *Asia* the lesse, took part with the *Trojans*. The *Amazons* also brought them succour. And *Rhesus* out of *Thrace*, and *Memnon* out of *Assyria* (though some think out of *Aethiopia*) came to their defence.

## § III.

Of the *Grecians* journey, and Embassage to *Troy*, and of *Helena's* being detained in *Egypt*, and of the sacrificing of *Iphigenia*.

**W** Herefore the *Greeks*, unwilling to come to tryall of arms, if things might be compounded by treaty, sent *Menelaus* and *Ulysses* Embassadors to *Troy*, who demanded *Helen*, and the goods were taken with her out of *Menelaus* his house. What answer the *Trojans* made hereunto it is uncertain. *Herodotus* from the report of the *Egyptian* Priests, makes it very probable, that *Helen* was taken from *Paris* before his return to *Troy*. The sum of his discourse is this.

*Paris* in his return with *Helena*, being driven by foul weather unto the coast of *Egypt*, was accused for the rape of *Helen* by some bondmen of his, that had taken Sanctuary. *Proteus* then King of *Egypt*, finding the accusation true by examination, detained *Helen*, and the goods taken with her, till her husband should require them: dismissing *Paris* without further punishment, because he was a stranger. When therefore the *Greeks* demanding *Helen*, had answer, that she was in *Egypt*, they thought themselves deluded, and thereupon made the warre, which ended with the ruine of *Troy*. But when after the City taken, they perceived indeed shee had not been there, they returned home, sending *Menelaus* to ask his wife of *Proteus*. *Homer*, and the whole Nation of Poets (except *Enripides*) vary from this History, thinking it a matter more magnificent, and more gracefull to their Poems, for the retaining of a fair Lady, than that they endured all by force, because it lay not in their power to deliver her. Yet in the fourth of his *Odysses*, *Homer* speaks of *Menelaus* his being in *Egypt*, before he returned home to *Sparta*; which voyage it were not easily believed that hee made for pleasure: and if hee were driven thither by contrary Winds, much more may wee think that *Paris* was likely to have been driven thither by foul Weather. For *Paris* immediately upon the rape committed, was enforced to flye, taking such Windes as he could get, and rather enduring any storm, than to commit himself to any Haven in the *Greek* Seas: whereas *Menelaus* might have put into any port in *Greece*, and there have remained with good entertainment, untill such time as the Wind had come about, and served for his Navigation.

One great argument *Herodotus* brings to confirm the saying of the *Egyptian* Priests, which is, that if *Helen* had been at *Troy*, it had been utter madnesse for *Priamus* to see so many miseries befall him, during the warre, and so many of his sonnes slain for the pleasure of one, who neither was heir to the Kingdom (for *Hector* was elder) nor equall in vertue to many of the rest. Besides, it may seem that *Lusian* spake not more pleasantly than truly, when he said that *Helen*, at the warre of *Troy*, was almost as old as *Queen Hecuba*, considering that he had been ravished by *Thesew* the companion of *Hercules*, who took *Troy* when *Priamus* was very young; and considering further, that she was sister to *Castor* and *Pollux* (the and *Pollux* being said by some to have been twinned) who sailed with the *Argonauts*, having *Telamon* the father of *Ajax* in their company, before the time that *Hesione* was taken; on whom *Telamon* begat *Ajax*, that was a principall Commander in the *Trojan* warre. But whether it were so that the *Trojans* could not, or would not restore *Helen*, so it was that the Ambassadors returned ill contented, and not very well entreated, for there wanted not some that advised to have them slain. The *Greeks* hereupon incensed, made all haste towards *Troy*: at which time *Calchas* (whom some say to have been a Runnagate *Trojan*, though no such thing be found in *Homer*) filled the Captains, and all the Host with many troublesome answers and divinations. For he would have *Agamemnon*s daughter sacrificed to appeale *Diana*, whose anger, he said, withstood their passage. Whether the young Lady were sacrificed, or whether (as some write) the goddesse was contented with a Hinde, it is not needfull here to be disputed. Sure it is, that the malice of the Devill, which awaits for all opportunities, is never more importunate, than where mens ignorance is most. *Calchas* also told the *Greeks*, that the taking of *Troy* was impossible, till some fatall impediments were removed: and that till ten years were past, the Town should hold out against them. All which notwithstanding, the *Greeks* proceeded in their enterprise, under the command of *Agamemnon*; who was accompanied with his Brother *Necleus*, *Achilles* the most vallant of all the *Greeks*, his friend *Patroclus*, and his Tutor *Phoenix*; *Ajax* and *Teucer*, the sonnes of *Telamon*; *Idomeneus*, and his companion *Morones*; *Nestor* and his sons *Antilochus* and *Thrasymides*; *Ulysses*, *Mneftheus* the son of *Petrens*, Captain of the *Athenians*; *Dionades* the son of *Tydeus*, a man of singular courage, the wife and learned *Palamedes*, *Ascalaphus*, and *Falmenus*, the sons of *Mari*, who had sailed with the *Argonauts*; *Philoetes* also the son of *Peon*, who had the arrows of *Hercules*, without which *Calchas* said, that the Citie could not be taken; *Ajax* the son of *Oileus*, *Peneleus*, *Thaos*, *Eumelus*, *Tylandrus*, *Euripilus*, *Athamas*, *Sibeneus*, *Tlepolemus* the son of *Hercules*; *Podalyrius*, and *Machon*, the sons of *Ascalaphus*; *Epeus*, who is said to have made the wooden Horse, by which the town was taken; and *Protesilans*, who first leapt on shore, neglecting the Oracle that threatned death to him that landed first.

## 5. IV.

## Of the Acts of the Gracians at the siege.

These, and many other of lesse note, arriving at *Troy*, found such sharp entertainment, as might easily perswade them to think that the warre would be more than one years work. For in the first encounter, they lost *Protesilans*, whom *Hector* slew, and many other, without any great harm done to the *Trojans*: save only that by their numbers of men, they wan ground enough to incamp themselves in, as appeareth in *Thucydides*. The principall impediment which the *Greeks* found, was want of victuals, which grew upon them by reason of their multitude, and the smallnesse of their vessels wherein they could not carry necessaries for such an Army. Hereupon they were compelled to send some part of their men, to labour the ground in *Cherranasse*: others to rob upon the Sea for the relief of the Camp. Thus was the warre protracted nine whole years, and either nothing done, or if any skirmishes were, yet could the town receive little losse by them, having equal numbers to maintain the field against such *Greeks* as continued the siege, and a more safe retreat if the enemy got the better.

Wherefore *Ovid* saith, That from the first year, till the tenth, there was no fighting at all, and *Heraclide* commends as very credible, the report of *Herodotus*, that the *Greeks* did not lye before *Troy* the first nine years: but onely did bear up and down the Seas, exerci-

exercising their men, and enriching themselves, and so by wasting the enemies countrey, did block up the Town, unto which they returned not, untill the fatall time drew near when it should be subverted.

This is confirmed by the enquire which *Priamus* made, when the *Greek* Princes came into the field, the tenth year, for he knew none of them; and therefore sitting upon an high tower (as *Homer* tells) he learned their names of *Helen*: which though it is like to be a fiction, yet could it not at all have been supposed that he should be ignorant of them, if they had shewed themselves before the town so many years together. Betweene these relations of *Thucydides* and *Herodotus*, the difference is not much; the one saying, that a few of the *Greeks* remained in the Camp before *Troy*, whilst the rest made purveyance by land and by sea: the others that the whole armie did spend the time in, waiting the Sea-coasts. Neither doe the Poets greatly disagree from these authors: for they make report of many towns and Ilands wasted, and the people carried into Captivity; in which actions *Achilles* was employed, whom the armie could not well, nor would have spared, if any service of importance had been to be performed before the Citie: Howsoever it was, this is agreed by general consent, that in the beginning of that Summer, in which *Troy* was taken, great booties were brought into the Camp, and a great pestilence arose among the *Greeks*, which *Homer* saith, that *Apollo* sent in revenge of his Priests daughter, whom *Agamemnon* had refused to set free, for any rancome: but *Heraclides* interpreting the place, saith, that by *Apollo* was meant the Sunne, who raised pestilent Fogs, by which the armie was infected, being lodged in a moorish piece of ground. And it might well be that the camp was over-pestered with those, who had been abroad, and now were lodged all close together, having all grounded their ships within the fortifications.

About the same time arose much contention between *Agamemnon* and *Achilles* about the bootie, whereof *Agamemnon*, as General, having first chosen for his part a captive woman, and *Achilles* in the second place chosen for himself another, then *Ajax*, *Ulysses*, and so the rest of the chiefe Captains in order: when the Soothsayer *Calchas* had willed that *Agamemnon*s woman should be restored to her father *Apollo*s Priest, that so the Pestilence might cease, then did *Agamemnon* greatly rage, and say, that hee alone would not lose his part of the spoile, but would either take that which had been given to *Achilles*, or that which had fallen to *Ajax*, or to *Ulysses*. Hereupon *Achilles* defied him, but was faine to suffer all patiently, as not able to hold his Concubine by strong hand, nor to revenge her losse otherwile than by refusing to fight, or to send forth his Captains: But the *Greeks*, encouraged by their Captains, presented themselves before the Citie without him and his troops.

The *Trojans* were now relieved with great succours, all the neighbour Countries having sent them aide: partly drawn to that warre by their Commanders who assisted *Priamus* for money, wherewith he abounded when the warre began (as appeares by his words in *Homer*), for love of himselfe and his sons, or hope of marriage with some of his many and fair daughters; partly also (as we may well ghesse) incited by the wrongs received of the *Greeks* when they wasted the Countries adjoining unto *Troy*. So that when *Hector* issued out of the town; he was little inferior to his enemies in numbers of men, or qualitie of their Leaders. The principall Captains in the *Trojan* armie, were *Hector*, *Parris*, *Deiphobus*, *Helenus*, and the other sons of *Priamus*: *Aeneas*, *Antenor*, and his sons, *Polydamas*, *Sarpedon*, *Glaucus*, *Asius*, and the sons of *Panthus*, besides *Rhesus*, who was slain the first night of his arrivall; *Memnon*, Queen *Penthesilea*, and others who came towards the end of the warre. Betweene these and the *Greeks* were many battels fought: the greatest of which were, that at the tombe of King *Lys* upon the Plain, and another at the very trenches of the Camp, wherein *Hector* brake through the fortifications of the *Greeks*, and began to fire their ships; at which time *Ajax*, the son of *Telamon*, with his brother *Teucer*, were in a manner the onely men of note that remaining unwounded, made head against *Hector*, when the state of the *Greeks* was almost desperate.

Another battell (for so antiquitie calls it) or rather the same renewed, was fought by *Patroclus*, who having obtained leave, drew forth *Achilles* troops, relieving the wearie *Greeks* with a fresh supply. *Agamemnon*, *Dionades*, *Ulysses*, and the rest of the Princes though sore wounded, yet were driven to put on armour, and with help of *Patroclus* repelled

repelled the *Trojans* very hardly. For in that fight *Patroclus* was lost, and his body, with much contention recovered by his friends, was brought back into the Camp: the armour of *Achilles* which he had put on, being torn from him by  *Hector* . It was the manner of those wars, having slain a man, to strip him, and hale away his body, not restoring it without ranfome, if he were one of mark. Of the vulgar little reckoning was made: for they fought all on foot, slightly armed, and commonly followed the success of their Captains; who rode not upon horses, but in Chariots, drawn by two or three horses, which were guided by some trusty followers of theirs; which drave up and down the field, as they were directed by the Captains, who by the swiftnesse of their horses presenting themselves where need required, threw first their Javelins, and then lighting, fought on foot, with swords and battle-axes, retiring into the ranks of footmen, or els returning to their Chariots when they found cause, and so began again with a new dart as they could get it, if their old were lost or broken. Their arms defensive were helmets, breast-plates, boots of brass, or other mettall, and shields commonly of leather plated over. The offensive were swords and battle-axes at hand, and stones, arrows or darts when they fought at any distance. The use of their Chariots (besides the swiftnesse) was to keep them from weariness, whereto the leaders were much subject, because of their armour, which the strongest and stoutest were heaviest, also that from them they might throw their Javelins downwards, with the more violence. Of which weapon I find not that any carried more than one or two into the field: wherefore they were often driven to return to their tents for a new one when the old was gone. Likewise of armours they had little change or none; every man (speaking of the chiefe) carried his own compleat, of which if any piece were lost or broken, he was driven to repair it with the like, if he had any fitting, taken from some Captain whom he had slain, and stripped: or else to borrow of them that had by such means gotten some to spare. Whereas therefore *Achilles* had lost his armour which *Hector* (as is said before) had taken from the body of *Patroclus*, he was faine to await the making of new, ere he could enter the fight: whereof he became very desirous, that he might revenge the death of *Patroclus* his dear friend.

At this time *Agamemnon* reconciled himselfe unto *Achilles*, not onely restoring his concubine *Briseis*, but giving him very great gifts, and excusing former matters as well as he might. In the next battell *Achilles* did so behave himself, that he did not onely put the *Trojans* to the worst, but also slew the valiant *Hector*, whom (if *Homer* may herein be beleaved) he chased three times about the walls of *Troy*. But great question may be made of *Homer's* truth in this narration. For it is not likely that *Hector* would stay alone without the Citie (as *Homer* doth report of him) when all the *Trojans* were fled into it: nor that he could leap over the rivers of *Xanthus* and *Simois*, as he must have done in that fight: nor that the *Trojans*, perceiving *Hector* in such an extremity, would have forbore to open some of their gates and let him in. But this is reported onely to grace *Achilles*, who having (by what means soever) slain the noble *Hector*, did not onely carry away his dead body, as the custome then was, but boring holes in his feet, and thrusting leathern thongs into them, tyed him to his Chariot, and dragging him shamefully about the field, selling the dead body to his father *Priamus* for a very great ranfome. But his cruelty and covetousness were not long unrevenged; for he was shortly after slain with an arrow by *Paris*, as *Homer* sayes, in the Scaen Gate; or as others, in the Temple of *Apollo*, whither he came to have married *Polyxena* the daughter of *Priamus*, with whom he was too far in love, having slain so many of her brethren; and his body was ranfomed (as *Lycophron* saith) at the self-same rate that *Hector's* was by him sold for. Not long after this, *Penthesilea* Queen of the *Amazons* arrived at *Troy*, who after some proofe given of her valour, was slain by *Pyrhus* the son of *Achilles*.

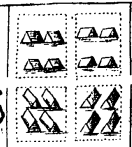
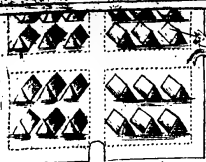
## S. V.

Of the taking of *Troy*, the wooden Horse, the Book of *Dares* and *Dyctis*, the Colonies of the reliques of *Troy*.

Finally, after the death of many worthy persons on each side, the Citie was taken by night, as all Writers agree: but whether by the treason of *Aeneas* and *Antenor*; or by a wooden Horse, as the Poets, and common Fame (which

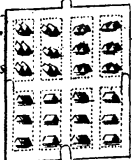


1586  
The greater  
Camp of the  
Romans

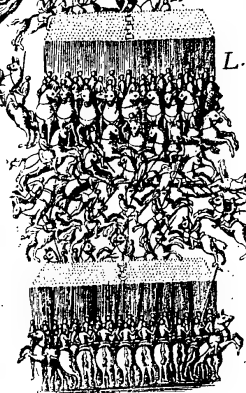


The Roman Camp  
beyond the river

The lesser  
Camp of  
the Romans



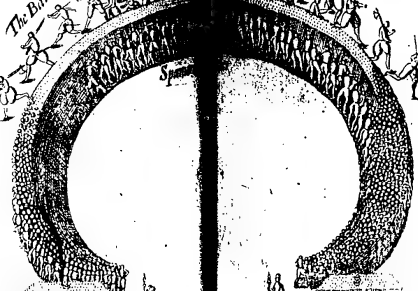
Asdrubal's fluvius



Asdrubal

L. Aemilius Paulus

The Balcones



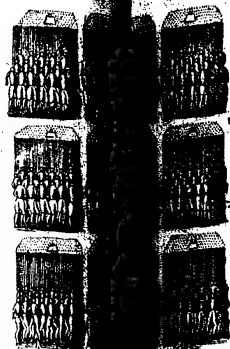
Afri



cars



Cn. Scipio 80000 foot



The Roman  
Velites



C. Terentius Varro



Hanno or Maharbal



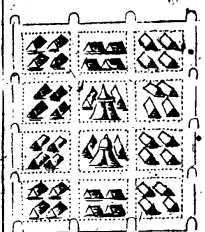
Afri



cars



The Camp of  
Hannibal



(which followed the Poets) have delivered, it is uncertain. Some write that upon one of the gates of *Troy*, called *Scaea*, was the image of a horse, and that the Greekes entering by that gate, gave occasion to the report, that the Citie was taken by an artificial horse. It may well be that with some wooden engine, which they called a horse, they either did batter the walls, as the Romans in after-times used to do with the Rammes: or scaled the walls upon the sudden, and so took the Citie. As for the hiding of men in the hollow body of a wooden horse, it had been a desperate adventure, and serving to no purpose. For either the *Trojans* might have perceived the deceit, and slain all those Princes of Greece, that were inclosed in it (which also by such as maintain this report they are said to have thought upon:) or they might have left it a few dayes without the Citie (for it was unlikely, that they should the very first day both conclude upon the bringing it into the town, and break down their walls upon the sudden to doe it:) by which means they who were shut into it, must have perished for hunger, if they had not by issuing forth unseasonably discovered the invention. Whereas further it is said, that this horse was so high and great, that it could not be brought into the town through any of the gates, and that therefore the *Trojans* were faine to pull down a part of their wall to make way for it, through which breach the *Greeks* did afterwards enter: it is hereby manifest, that the inclosing of so many principall men was altogether needlesse, considering that without their help there was way sufficient for the armie, so that the surprising of any gate by them was now to no purpose.

*John Baptista Gramay* in his Historie of *Asia*, discoursing of this warre, saith that the *Greeks* did both batter the walls with a wooden engine, and were also let into the Citie by *Antenor*, at the *Scaean* gate: the townsmen sleeping and drinking without fear or care, because the fleet of the *Grecians* had hoisted saile, and was gone the day before to the Ile of *Tenedos*, thereby to bring the *Trojans* into security. That the Citie was betrayed, the books of *Dares* and *Dyctis* must prove, which whether we now have the same that were by them written, it may be suspected, for surely they who have made mention of these writers in ancient times, would not, as they did, have followed the reports of *Homer* and others quite contradictory in most points to these two authors, without once taking notice of the opposition, which they having served in that war made against the common report, had it not been that either those books were even in those times thought frivolous, or else contained no such repugnance to the other Authours as now is found in them.

Also concerning the number of men slain in this warre, which *Dares* and *Dyctis* say to have been above 600000. on the *Trojan* side, and more than 800000. of the *Greeks*, it is a report meerly fabulous, for as much as the whole Fleet of the *Greeks* was reckoned by *Homer*, who extolled their armie and deeds as much as he could, to be somewhat lesse than 1200. saile, and the armie therein transported over the *Greek* seas, not much above 100000. men, according to the rate formerly mentioned. But it is the common fashion of men to extoll the deeds of their Ancients: for which cause both *Homer* magnified the Captains of the *Greeks* that served in the warre, and *Virgil* with others were as diligent in commending and extolling the *Trojans* and their Citie, from which the *Romans* descended. Yea, the Athenians long after in the warre which *Xerxes* the Persian King made against all *Greece*, did not forbear to vaunt of the great cunning which *Mnestheus* the son of *Peteus* had shewed in marshalling the *Grecian* army before *Troy*: whereupon, as if it had been a matter of much consequence, they were so proud, that they refused to yeeld unto *Gelon* King of almost all *Sicily*, the Admiralty of their Seas, notwithstanding that he promised to bring 200. good fighting ships, and 30000. men for their defence.

The like vanitie possessed many other Cities of *Greece*, and many Nations in these parts of the world, which have striven to bring their descent from some of the Princes that warred at *Troy*: all difficulties or unlikelihooods in such their Pedegree notwithstanding. But those Nations which indeed, or in most probability, came of the *Trojans*, were the *Albanes* in *Italie*; and from them the *Romans*, brought into that Countrey by *Aeneas*: the *Venetians* first seated in *Padua*, and the Countrey adjoining, by *Antenor*: the *Chaonians* planted in *Epirus* by *Helenus*, the son of King *Priamus*. To which *Helleniques* addeth, that the posteritie of *Hector* did assemble such of the *Trojans* as were left, and reigned over them about *Troy*.

## S. VI.

Of the distresses and dispersions of the Greeks returning from Troy.

Concerning the *Greeks*, they tasted as much miserie as they had brought upon the *Trojans*. For *Thucydides* notes, that by reason of their long abode at the siege, they found many alterations when they returned: so that many were driven by their borderers from their ancient seats: many were expelled their Countries by faction: some were slain anon after their arrivall: others were debarred from the Sovereignie among the people, by such as had stayed at home. The cause of all which may seem to have been the dispersion of the Armie, which, weakned much by the calamities of that long warre, was of little force to repell injuries, being divided into so many pieces under severall Commanders, not very well agreeing. For (besides other quarrels arising upon the division of the bootie, and the like occasions) at the time when they should have set sail, *Agamemnon* and his brother fell out, the one being desirous to depart immediatly, the other to stay and perform some sacrifices to *Minerva*. Hereupon they fell to hot words, half the fleet remaining with *Agamemnon*, the rest of them sailed to the Ile of *Tenedos*, where when they arrived, they could not agree among themselves, but some returned back to *Agamemnon*; others were dispersed, each holding his own course. But the whole fleet was sore vexed with tempests: for *Pallas* (as *Homer* saith) would not be perswaded in haste.

They who returned safe were *Nestor*, and *Pyrrhus*, whom *Orestes* afterwards slew: also *Idomeneus* and *Philoctetes*, who notwithstanding, as *Virgil* tells, were driven soon after to seek new seats: *Idomeneus* among the *Salentines*, and *Philoctetes* at *Pesilia* in *Italie*. *Agamemnon* likewise returned home, but was forthwith slain by his wife, and by the Adulterer *Egistus*, who for a while after usurped his Kingdome. *Menelaus* wandering long upon the Seas, came into *Egypt*, either with *Helen*, or (as may rather seem) to fetch her, *Ulysses*, after ten years, having lost all his company, got home in poor estate, with much ado recovering the mastership of his own house. All the rest either perished by the way, or were driven into exile, and fain to seek out new habitations.

*Ajax* the son of *Oileus* was drowned; *Tenar* fled into *Cyprus*; *Diomedes* to King *Darus*, who was Lord of the *Fapiges* in *Apulia*; some of the *Locrians* were driven into *Africk*, others into *Italy*, all the East part whereof was called *Magna Gracia*, by reason of so many towns which the *Greeks* were driven to erect upon that coast. Finally, it appears in *Homer*, that the *Græcian Ladies*, whose husbands had been at the war of *Troy*, were wont to call it, The place where the *Greeks* suffered miserie, and the unlucky Citie not to be mentioned. And thus much for *Troy*, and those that warred there: the overthrow of which City, as hath been said, happened in the time of *Habdon* Judge of *Israel*, whom *Sampson*, after a vacancie or *Inter-regnum* for certain years, succeeded.

## CHAP. XV.

Of Sampson, Eli, and Samuel.

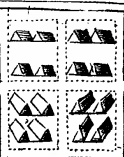
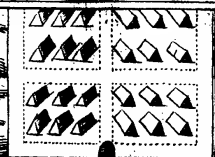
## S. I.

Of Sampson.

2970.

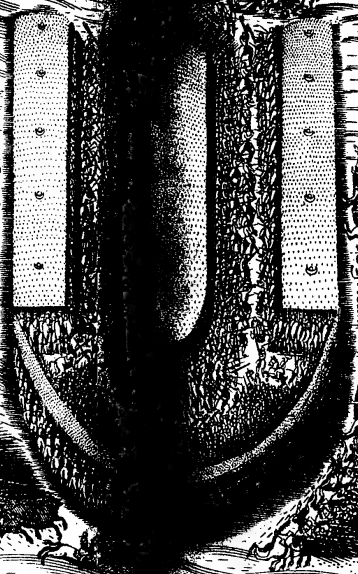


THE birth and acts of *Sampson* are written at large in the 13. 14. 15. and 16. of *Judges*; and therefore I shall not need to make a repetition thereof. But these things I gather out of that Storie, First, that the Angel of God forbad the wife of *Manoah* the mother of *Sampson*, to drink Wine or strong drink, or to eat any unclean meat after shee was conceived with child; because those strong liquors hinder the strength, and as it were wither and shrink the child in the mothers wombe. Though this were even the counsell of God himself, and delivered by his Angell, yet it seemeth that many women of this age have not read,



*African*

*Arabia*



*African*

*Arabia*



*African*

or at least will not believe this precept: the most part forbearing nor drinks, nor means, bow strong or unclean soever, filling themselves with all sorts of wines, and with artificiall drinks far more forcible: by reason whereof, so many wretched feeble bodies are born into the world, and the races of the able and strong men in effect decayed.

Secondly, it is to be noted, that the *Angel of God* refused the sacrifice which *Manna* would have offered him, commanding him to present it unto the Lord: and therefore those that professe divination by the help of Angels, to whom also they sacrifice, may assuredly know that they are devils who accept thereof, and not good Angels, who receive no worship that is proper to God.

10 Thirdly, this *Samson* was twice betrayed by his wives, to wit, by their importunite and deceitfull tears: by the first he lost but a part of his goods, by the second his life. *Quem nulla vis superare potuit, voluptas eversit: Whom no force could overcome, Lustfulness overthrew.*

Fourthly, we may note, that he did not in all deliver *Israel* from the oppression of the *Philistines*; though in some sort he revenged, and defended them: for notwithstanding that he had slain 30. of them in his first attempt, burnt their Corn in harvest time, and given them a great overthrow instantly upon it; yet so much did *Israel* fear the *Philistines*, as they assembled 3000. men out of *Juda*, to besiege *Samson*, in the rock or mountain of *Etam*, using these words: *Knowest not thou that the Philistines are rulers over us?*

20 *&c.* After which they bound him, and delivered him unto the *Philistines*, for fear of their revenge; though he was no sooner loosened, but he gave them another overthrow, and slew 1000. with the jaw-bone of an Ass.

Lastly, being made blind, and a prisoner by the treason of his wife, he was content to end his own life, to be avenged of his enemies, when he pulled down the pillars of the house at the feast whereto they sent for *Samson*, to deride him; till which time he bore his affliction with patience: but it was truly said of *Seneca*: *Patientia sapientia sapientia in furoribus*; *Patience often wounded is converted into furie*. neither is it at any time so much wounded by pain and losse, as by derision and contumelie.

30 *Of Eli, and of the Ark taken; and of Dragons fall, and the sending back of the Ark.*

**T**HE STORIE of *Eli* the Priest, who succeeded *Samson*, is written in the beginning of *Samuel*; who foretold him of the destruction of his house for the wickedness of his sons, which he suppressed not, neither did he punish them according to *Sam. 2. 29.* their delicts: whose sins were horrible, both in abusing the sacrifice, and prophanning, and polluting the holy places: though *Levi Ben Gerson*, to extenuate this filthy offence of forcing the women by the sons of *Eli*, hath a contrary opinion. In this time therefore, 40 he pleased God to cast the *Israelites* under the swords of the *Philistines*; of whom there perished in the first encounter 4000. and in the second battell 30000. footmen; among whom the sons of *Eli* being slain, their father (hearing the lamentable successe) by falling from his chair, brake his neck. He was the first that obtained the High-Priesthood of the stock of *Ithamar* the son of *Aaron*, before whose time it continued successively in the race of *Eleazar* the eldest brother of *Ithamar*: for *Aaron* was the first; *Eleazar* the second; *Phineas* the son of *Eleazar* the third; *Athiah* the son of *Phineas* the fourth; his son *Boggi* the fifth; *Ozi* the son of *Boggi* the sixth; and then *Eli*, as *Iosephus* and *Eusebius* out of divers Hebrew Authors have conceived. In the race of *Ithamar* the Priesthood continued after *Eli*, to the time of *Salomon*, who cast out *Athiah*, and established *Sadock* and *Athimaeus* and their successors. The Ark of God which *Israel* brought into the field, 50 was in this battell taken by the *Philistines*. For as *David* witnesseth, God greatly abhorred *Israel*, so that he forsook the habitation of *Shila*: even the Tabernacle where he dwelt among men, and delivered his power into captivity, &c.

Now as it pleased God at this time, that the Ark whereby himself was represented should fall in the hands of the Heathen, for the offences of the Priests and people: so did he permit the Chaldeans to destroy the Temple built by *Salomon*; the Romans to overthrow the second Temple; and the Turks to overthrow the Christian Churches in *Asia* and *Europe*. And had not the *Israelites* put more confidence in the





1 Sam. 13.  
See in this  
book, c. 12.  
S. 1.

answer of God, thus he spake; Come and let us go to the Seer: for hee that is now called a Prophet, was in old time called a Seer. And although it pleased God to appear by his Angels to Moses, as before to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, yet in the time of Eli, there was no manifest vision; nor that God had altogether withdrawn his grace from Israel: but as the Chaldean Paraphrast hath it, those revelations before Samuel's time, were more clouded and obscure. The places wherein Samuel judged were Mizpa or Mizpe, seated on a hill in Benjamin neere Juda: also Gilgal and Bethel, of which we have spoken else-where.

\* Plutarch reports of Numa the second King of Rome, that when as he was sacrificing, it was told him that the enemies approached, he nothing dismayed, answered, Ego autem sacrifico.

1 Sam. a. 10.

The Philistims taking knowledge of the assembly and preparation of War at Mizpa in the beginning of Samuel's government, gathered their Armie, and marched towards the Citie: at whose approach the Israelites stricken with fear, and with the memory of their former slaughters and servitude, besought Samuel to pray to God for them; who was then performing his sacrifice when the Philistims were in view. But God being moved with Samuel's prayers (as he was by those of Moses, when Israel fought against the Amalekites at the first entrance into Arabia:) it pleased him with thunder and tempest to disperse and beat down the Army of the Philistims, according to the prophesie of Hannah, Samuel's Mother, *The Lords adversaries shall be destroyed, and out of Heaven shall he thunder upon them, &c.* Josephus affirms, that a part of the Philistims were swallowed with an earthquake: and that Samuel himself led the Israelites in the prosecution of their victory. After which Samuel erected a Monument in memorie of this happy success, obtained by the miraculous hand of God, which Josephus called *Lapidem iuxta: Samuel, Eben-ezer*, or the stone of assistance: and then following the opportunitie and advantage of the victorie, the Israelites recovered divers Cities of their own formerly lost, and held long in the possession of the Philistims, who for a long time after did not offer any invasion or revenge. And the better to attend their purposes, and to withstand any of their attempts, the Israelites made peace with the Amorites, or Canaanites, which lay on their backs, and to the North of them, that they might not be assailed from divers parts at once, leaving the Philistims towards the West and Sea-coast, the Canaanites toward the North and East, and the Idumites on the South. The estate being thus settled, Samuel for the ease of the people gave audience and judgement in divers places by turns, as hath been else-where said.

## CHAP. XVI. OF SAMUEL.

Of the deliberation to change the government into a Kingdome.



But when age now began to over-take Samuel, and that hee was not able to undergoe the burthen of so carefull a government, he put off from himselfe the weight of the affairs on his sons, Joel and Abiath, who judged the people at Beersheba, a Citie, the very utmost towards the South of Judaa. And as the place was inconvenient and far away, so were themselves no lesse removed from the justice and verue of their Father: For the thirst of covetousnesse, the more it swalloweth, the more it drieth, and desireth, finding taste in nothing but gain, to recover which, they set the Law at a price, and sold Justice and Judgement to the best Chapmen. Which when the Elders of Israel observed, and saw that Samuel as a naturall man (though a Prophet) could not so well discern the errors of his own, they prayed him to consent to their change of government, and to make them a King, by whom they might be judged as other Nations were; who might also lead them to the War, and defend them against their enemies. For after the ill and lamentable successe which followed the rule of Eli his sons, when those of Samuel by their first blossomes promised to yield fruit no lesse bitter, they saw no way to put the government from out his race, whom they so much revered, but by the choyce of a King.

In a cause of so great consequence and alteration, Samuel sought counsell from God: which surely hee did not for the establishing of his own Sonnes; who being as they were, God would not have approved his election. Now as it appears by the Text, this speech or motion displeasing him, he used his best arguments to dehort them: which when he perceived to be over-feeble, he delivered unto them from Gods revelation, the inconveniences and miseries which should befall them. And yet, all which he fore-shewed was not intolerable, but such as hath been born, and is so still, by free consent of the subjects towards their Princes. For first he makes them know that the King will use their sons in his own service to make them his Horse-men, Chariotiers, and Foot-men; which is not onely not grievous, but by the Vassals of all Kings, according to their birth and condition, desired: it being very agreeable to subjects of the best qualitie to command for the King in his Warres, and to till the ground no lesse proper and appertaining to those that are thereto bred and brought up: so are likewise the offices of women-servants to dresse meat, to bake bread, and the like. But whereas immediately it is threatened, *He will take your Fields and your Vineyards, and your best Olive trees, and give them to his servants;* with other oppressions: this hath given, and gives daily occasion to such as would be ruled by their own discretion, to affirme that Samuel describeth here unto them the power of a King governed by his own affections, and not a King that feareth God. But others upon further examination, construe this Text farre otherwise, as teaching us what Subjects ought with patience to bear at their Sovereigns hand. The former opinion is grounded first upon that place of *Deuteronomie*, where God fore-sheweth this change of government from Judges to Kings; and after he had forbidden many things unto the Kings, as many wives, covetousnesse, and the like, he commandeth that the Kings which were to reign over Israel, should write the Law of *Deuteronomie*, or cause it to be written: and to shew how greatly the King should honour the Law, he addeth, *It shall be with him, and he shall read therein all the dayes of his life, that he may learn to fear the Lord his God, and to keep all the words of this Law, and these ordinances for to doe them: that he may prolong his dayes in his Kingdome, he and his Sons.* But to take away any other mans field, say they, is contrary to the Lawes of God, in the same 30 book written. For it is said, *That which is just and right shalt thou follow, that thou mayst live.* Now if it be not permitted to carry away grapes more than thou canst eat out of another mans vineyard, but forbidden by God: it is much lesse lawful to take the vineyard itself from the owner, and give it to another. Neither are the words of the Text (say they) such as do warrant the Kings of Israel, or make it proper unto them, to take at will any thing from their vassals. For it is not said that it shall be lawful for the King, or the King may do this or that: but it is written, that the King will take your sonnes: and again, This shall be the manner of the King that shall reign over you. God thereby fore-shewing what power, severed from pietie (because it is accountable to God onely) will do in the future. And hereof we find the first example in *Achab*, who took from Na- 40 both both his Vineyard and his life, contrary to the trust which God had put in him, of governing well his people. For God commanded, *That his people should be judged with righteous judgement.* Wherefore, though the King had offered unto *Naboth* composition, as a Vineyard of better value, or the worth in money, which he refused: yet because he was fallacy accused, and unjustly condemned (though by colour of law), how grievously *Achab* was punished by God, the Scriptures tell us. Neither was it a plea sufficient for *Achab* against the all-righteous God, to say that it was done without his consent, and by the Elders of Israel. For God had not then left his people to the Elders, but to the King, who is called a living Law, even as *David* testified of himself: *Posuisti me in caput gentium:* For this of *S. Augustine* is very true: *Simulata innocentia, non est innocentia: simulata equitas, non est equitas: sed duplicatur peccatū in quo est iniquitas & simulatio; Feigned innocence, and feigned equity, are neither the one nor the other: but the fault or offence is there doubled, in which there is both iniquity & dissimulation.* Such in effect is their disputation, who think this place to contain the description of a Tyrant. But the arguments on the contrary side, as they are many and forcible, so are they well known to all; being excellently handled in that Princely discourse of *The true Law of free Monarchies*: which Treatise I may not presume to abridge, much lesse here to insert. Only thus much I will say; That if practice doe shew the greatnesse of authoritie, even the best Kings of *Juda* and *Israel* were not so tyed by any lawes, but that they did whatsoever they pleased in the

the greatest things; and commanded some of their own Princes and of their own brethren to be slain without any trial of law, being sometime by Prophets reprehended, sometime not. For though *David* confessed his offence for the death of *Uriah*, yet *Solomon* killing his elder brother and others, the same was not imputed to him as any offence.

Gen. 49.  
Gen. 15.  
Gen. 17.

That the state of *Israel* should receive this change of government, it was not only foretold by *Moses* in *Deuteronomie*, but perceived by *Jacob* in this Scripture: *The Scipar shall not depart from Juda, &c.* It was also promised by God to *Abraham* for a blessing: For it was not only assured that his issues should in number equal the stars in heaven, but that Kings should proceed of him: Which state seeing it is framed from the pattern of his sole rule, who is Lord of the Univerfall; and the excellencie thereof in respect of all other governments, hath been by many judicious men handled and proved, I shall not need to over-paint that which is garnished with better colours already, than I can lay on.

In the time of the Judges every man hath observed what civil war *Israel* had: what outrageous slaughters they committed upon each other: in what miserable servitude they lived for many years; and when it fared best with them, they did but defend their own territories, or recover some parts thereof formerly lost. The Canaanites dwelt in the best vallies of the Countrie. The *Ammonites* held much of *Gilead* over *Jordan*; the *Philistines* the Sea-coasts; and the *Jebusites* *Hierusalem* it self, till *David's* time: all which that King did not only conquer and establish, but he mastered and subjected all the neighbour Nations and Kings, and made them his tributaries and vassals. But whether it were for that the *Israelites* were moved by those reasons, which allure the most of all Nations to live under a Monarch, or whether by this means they sought to be cleared from the fons of *Samuel*, they became deaf to all the persuasions and threats which *Samuel* used, insisting upon this point, that they would have a King, both to judge them and defend them: whereunto when *Samuel* had warrant from God to consent, he sent every man to his own Citie and abiding,

1 Sam. 8.

### 9. II. Of the election of Saul.

After that *Samuel* had dismissed the assembly at *Mizpah*, he forbore the election of a King, till such time as hee was therein directed by God: who foretold him the day before, that he would present unto him a man of the Land of *Benjamin*, whom he commanded *Samuel* to anoint. So *Samuel* went unto *Ramath Saphim*, to make a feast for the entertainment of *Saul* (whom yet he knew not, but knew the truth of Gods promises) and *Saul* also having wandered divers dayes to seek his fathers Asses, at length, by the advice of his servant, travelled towards *Ramath* to find a Seer or prophet, hoping from him to be told what way to take, to find his beasts. In which journey it pleased God (who doth many times order the greatest things by the simplest passages and persons) to elect *Saul*, who sought an Ass and not a kingdom: like as formerly it had pleased him to call *Moses*, while he fed the sheep of *Feibro*; and after to make choice of *David* the youngest of eight sons, and by the Scriptures called a little one, who was then keeping of beasts; and changed his sheep-hook into a Scepter, making him of all other the most victorious King of *Juda* and *Israel*. So *John* and *James* were taken from casting their nets, to become fishers of men, and honoured with the titles of Apostles: a dignity that died not in the grave, as all worldly Honours doe, but permanent and everlasting in Gods everlasting kingdome.

1 Sam. 16.

When *Samuel* was entred into *Ramath*, hee prepared a banquet for the King, whom he expected, and stayed his arrivall at the gate. Not long after came *Saul*, whom God shewed to *Samuel*, and made him know that it was the same whom hee had foretold him of, that he should rule the people of God. *Saul* finding *Samuel* in the gate, but knowing him not, though a Prophet and Judge of *Israel*, much lesse knowing the Honour which attended him, asked *Samuel* in what part of the Citie the Seer dwelt; *Samuel* answered, that himselfe was the man hee sought, and prayed *Saul* to go before him to the high place, where *Samuel* setting him according to his degree, above all that were invited, conferred with him afterwards of the affaires of the kingdome, and of

God

Gods graces to be bestowed on him, and the morning following annointed him King of *Israel*.

After this he told him all that should happen him in the way homeward; that two men should encounter him by *Rahel's* Sepulchre, who should tell him that his Asses were found, and that his Fathers cares were changed from the fear of losing his beasts; to doubt the loss of his son that he should then meet three other men in the plain of *Tabor*; then a company of Prophets: and that he should be partaker of Gods Spirit, and prophetic with them: and that thereby his condition and disposition should be changed from the vulgar, into that which became a King elected and favoured by God.

But the Prophets here spoken of, men indued with spirituall gifts, were not of the first and most reverenced number, who by divine revelation foretold things to come, reprehended without fear the errors of their Kings, and wrought miracles; of which number were *Moses*, *Joshua*, *Samuel*, and after them *Gad*, *Nathan*, *Ahiah*, *Elijah*, *Eliseus*, *Esaie*, *Jeremy*, and the rest; for these Prophets, saith *S. Chrysostome*, *Omnia tempora percurrunt, praeterita, praesentia, & futura*: but they were of those of whom *S. Paul* speaketh 1 Cor. 14. 14. who enriched with spirituall gifts, expounded the Scriptures and the Law.

At *Mizpah* *Samuel* assembled the people, that he might present *Saul* to them, who as yet knew nothing of his election: neither did *Saul* acquaint his own Uncle therewith, when he asked him what had past between him and *Samuel*: for either he thought his estate not yet assured, or else that it might be dangerous for him to reveale it, till he were confirmed by generall consent. When the Tribes were assembled at *Mizpah*, the generall opinion is, that he was chosen by lot. *Chimbi* thinks by the answer of \* *Urim* and *Thummim*: that is, by the answer of the Priest, wearing that mystrie upon his breast when he asked counsell of the Lord. But the casting of lots was not only much used among the *Jews*, but by many others, if not by all nations. The Land of promise was divided by lot: God commanded lots to be cast on the two Goats, which should be sacrificed, and which turned off a figure of Christs suffering, and our deliverance, for whose garments the *Jews* also cast lots. *Cicero*, *Plantus*, *Pausanias*, and others, have remembered divers sorts of lots, used by the *Romans*, *Greeks*, and other Nations: as in the division of grounds or honours; and in things to be undertaken: the two first kinds were called Divisorie, the Third, Divinatorie; and unto one of these three all may be reduced: all which kinds, howsoever they may seem chancefull, are yet ordered & directed by God, as in the *Proverbs*: the lot is cast into the lap, but the whole disposition is of the Lord. And in like sort fell the kingdome of *Israel* on *Saul*, not by chance, but by Gods ordinance, who gave *Samuel* former knowledge of his election: from which election *Saul* withdrew himself in modestie; as both *Josaphat* construe it, and as it may be gathered by his former answers to *Samuel*, when he acknowledged himselfe the least of the least Tribe. But *Samuel* enlightened by God, found where *Saul* was hidden, and brought him among the people, and he was taller than all the rest by the shoulders. And *Samuel* made them know that he was the chosen king of *Israel*, whereupon all the multitude saluted him King, and prayed for him; yet some there were that envied his glory (as in all estates there are such) who did not acknowledge him by offering him presents, as the manner was: of whom *Saul*, to avoyd sedition, took no notice.

### 9. III.

#### Of the establishing of Saul by his first victorie.

NO sooner was *Saul* placed in the kingdome, but that he received knowledge that *Nahas* King of the *Ammonites* prepared to besiege *Faber Gilead*: which nation since the great overthrow given them by *Jephtha*, never durst attempt any thing upon the *Israelites*, till the beginning of *Saul* his rule. And although the *Ammonites* did always attend upon the advantage of time, to recover those Territories which first the *Amorites*, and then *Israel* dispossessed them of; which they made the ground of their invasion in *Jephtha's* time; yet they never perfwaded themselves of more advantage than at this present: For first, they knew that there were many of the *Israelites* that did not willingly submit themselves to this new King: secondly, they were remembered that the *Philistines* had not long before slain 34000. of their men of War: and besides had

used

\* The *Urim* and *Thummim* in the ornaments of the High Priest, were inserted within the peccatoral, which therefore was duplicatum: they were placed in the peccatoral over against the heart of the High Priest, it is plain that they were not the precious stones, nor any thing made by artificers. See Exo. 28. 1. Cic. de divin. Paus. in Mes.

1 Sam. 10.

Jud. 12.

used great care and policie that they should have no Smithes to make; them swords or spears: neither was it long before, that of the *Bethshemites*, and places adjoining, were perished by the hand of God more than 50000, and therefore in these respects, even occasion it self invited them to enlarge their Dominions upon their borders: *Fabes Gilead* being one of the nearest. Besides, it may further be conjectured, that the *Ammonites* were imbouldened against *Fabes Gilead*, in respect of their weaknesse: since the *Israelites* destroyed a great part of them, for not joyning with them against the *Benjamites*: at which time, they did not only slaughter the men and male children, but took from them their young women, and gave them to the *Benjamites*: and therefore they were not likely to have been increased to any great numbers; and if they had recovered themselves of this great calamitie, yet the *Ammonite* might flatter himself with the opinion, that *Israel* having for long time been disarmed by the *Philistims*, was not apt to succour those whom they had so deeply wounded and destroyed. But contrariwise, when the tidings came to *Saul* of their danger, and that the *Ammonites* would give them no other condition to ransom themselves, but by pulling out their right eyes, by which they should be utterly disabled for the Warre, as elsewhere hath been spoken: *Saul*, both to value himself in his first years reign, and because perchance he was descended of one of those 400 Maids taken from the *Gileadites*, and given to the *Benjamites*, gave order to assemble the forces of *Israel*, hewing a yoke of Oxen into pieces, and sending them by messengers over all the coasts, protesting thus: *That whosoever came not forth after Saul, and after Samuel, should his Oxen be served*: threatening the people by their goods, and not by their lives at the first. Seven dayes had *Saul* to assemble an Armie, by reason that the *Gileadites* had obtained the respite of these seven dayes to give *Nabab* the *Ammonite* an answer; who, could they have obtained any reasonable condition, were contented to have severed themselves from *Israel*, and to become Vassals and Tributaries to the Heathen. In the mean while *Saul* assembled the forces which repaired unto him at *Bezer*, near *Jordan*, that he might readily passe the river, which done, he might in one day with a speedie march arrive at *Fabes*, under the Hills of *Gilead*.

1 Sam. 11. 8.

The Armie by *Saul* led, consisting of three hundred and thirty thousand, he returned an answer to those of *Fabes*, that they should assure themselves of succour by the next day at noon. For, as it seemeth, *Saul* marched away in the latter part of the day, & went on all night; for in the morning watch he surprized the armie of *Nabab* the *Ammonite*. And to the end that he might let on them on all sides, he divided his forces into three parts, putting them to the sword until the heat of the day, and the wearinesse of *Saul* troop enforced them to give over the pursuit. Now the *Ammonites* were become more careless and secure, in that those of *Fabes* promised the next morning to render themselves and their Citie to their mercie. After this happy successe, the people were so far in love with their new King, that they would have slau all those *Israelites* that murmured against his election, had not himselfe forbidden and resisted their resolutions. Such is the condition of worldly men, as they are violent lovers of the prosperous, and base Vassals of the time that flourisheth; and, as despightfull and cruell without cause against those, whom any misadventure, or other worldly accident hath thrown down.

1 Sam. 11.

1 Sam. 12.

After the Army removed, *Samuel* summoned the people to meet at *Gilgal*, where *Saul* was now a third time acknowledged, and, as some Commenters affirm, anointed King: and here *Samuel* used an exhortation to all the Assembly, containing precepts, and a rehearsal of his own Justice, during the beginning of his government to that day. After *Saul* had now reigned one year before he was established in *Gilgal*, or *Galgala*, he strengthened himselfe with a good guard of 3000. chosen men, of which he assigned 1000. to attend on *Jonathan* his son at *Gibeah*, the Citie of his nativitie: the rest he kept about his own person in *Mizma*, and in the Hill of *Bethel*.

## §. IIII.

Of *Sauls* disobedience in his proceedings in the Warres with the *Philistims* and *Amalekites*, which caused his small rejection.

*Jonathan* with his small Armie or Regiment that attended him, taking a time of advantage, surprized a Garrison of *Philistims*: the same, as some think, which *Saul* past by, when he came from *Rama*; when he was first annoied by *Samuel*, which

which they think to have been *Caristab-jearim*: because a place where the *Philistims* had a Garrison, 1 Sam. 10. is called the hill of God, which they understand of *Caristab-jearim*: but *Junius* understands this Garrison to have been at *Gebah* in *Benjamin* near *Gibba*, where *Jonathan* abode with his thousand followers. Howsoever, by this it appeareth that the *Philistims* held some strong places, both in the times of *Samuel*, and of *Saul*, within the Territorie of *Israel*: and now being greatly enraged by this surprize, they assembled thirty thousand armed Chariots, and six thousand Horse; wherewith they invaded *Judea*, and incamped at *Machmas* or *Michmas*, a Citie of *Benjamin*, in the direct way from *Samaria* to *Hierusalem*, and in the midst of the Land between the Sea and *Jordan*. With this sudden invasion the *Israelites* were stricken in so great a fear, as some of them hid themselves in the caves of the mountains; others fled over *Jordan* into *Gad* and *Gilead*: *Saul* himself with some 2000. men of ordinarie, and many other people, staid at *Galgala* in *Benjamin*, not far from the passage of *Joshua* when he led *Israel* over *Jordan*. Here *Saul* by *Samuels* appointment was to attend the coming of *Samuel* seven dayes: but when the last day was in part spent, and that *Saul* perceived his forces to diminish greatly, he presumed (as some expound the place, 1 Sam. 13. 9.) to exercise the office which appertained not unto him, and to offer a burnt offering, and a peace offering unto God, contrary to the Ecclesiasticall Lawes of the Hebrews; and Gods Commandements: others expound the word, *oboluit*, in this place, by *oboluit per Sacerdotem*, and to make the sin of *Saul* not to have been any intrusion into the Priests office; but first a disobedience to Gods Commandement, in not staying according to the appointment, 1 Sam. 10. 8. secondly, a diffidence or mistrust in Gods help, and too great relying upon the strength of the people, whose departing from him he could not bear patiently; and lastly, a Contempt of the holy Prophet *Samuel*, and of the help which the prayers of so godly a man might procure him. But whatsoever was his sin, notwithstanding his excuses, he was by *Samuel* reprehended most sharply, in termes unfitting his estate, had not extraordinary warrant been given to *Samuel* to doe, from God himself; at which time also *Samuel* feared not to let him know, that the Kingdome would be conferred to another (a man after Gods own heart) both from *Saul* and his posteritie.

After this, *Samuel* and *Saul* returned to *Gibeah*, where *Saul*, when he had taken view of his armie, found it to consist of 600. men: for the most were fled from him and scattered, yea and among those that staid, there was not any that had either sword or spear, but *Saul* and his son *Jonathan* onely. For the *Philistims* had not left them any Smith in all *Israel*, that made weapons; besides, they that came to *Saul*, came hastily, and left such weapons and armour as they had behind them in their garrisons: for if they had had none at all, it might be much doubted how *Saul* should be able the year before, or in some part of this very year, to succour *Fabes Gilead* with 300. and thirty thousand men, if there had not now been any iron weapon to defend themselves withall, save onely in the hand of *Saul* and *Jonathan* his son. But howsoever, all the rest of the people were formerly disarmed by the *Philistims*, and all those crafts-men carried out of the land that made weapons: there being left unto the *Israelites* only files to sharpen and amend such stuffe as served for the Plough, and for nought else: yet that they had some kind of armes, it is manifest, or else they durst not have attempted upon the *Philistims* as they did. And it is not said in the Text that there was not any sword in all *Israel*, but onely that there was not any found amongst those 600. souldiers which stayed with *Saul* after *Samuels* departure: and it seemeth that when *Samuel* had sharply reprehended *Saul*, that his own guards forsook him, having but 600. remaining of his 3000. ordinarie souldiers, and of all the rest that repaired unto him, of which many sower fled from him before *Samuel* arrived.

1 Sam. 13. 2.

With this small troop he held himself to his own city of *Gibeah*, as a place of more strength, & better assured unto him, than *Gilgal* was. Neither is it obscure how it should come to passe that the *Philistims* should thus disarm the most part of the *Israelites*, howsoever in the time of *Samuel* much had been done against them. For the victories of *Samuel* were not got by sword or spear, but by thunder from Heaven: and when these crafts-men were once rooted out of the Cities of *Israel*, no marvell if they could not in a short peace under *Samuel* be replanted again. For this tyrannic of the *Philistims* is to be understood, rather of the precedent times, than under *Samuel*: and yet under him

him is to be thought that by their crafts they proceeded in the policy, not suffering their Artificers to teach the *Israelites*, and so even to the times of *Saul* kept them from having any store of armour. The same policy did *Nabuchodonosor* use after his Conquest in *Judea*: *Dionysius* in *Sicily*, and many other Princes else-where in all ages. But these lost weapons in part the *Israelites* might repair in *Gilead*, for over *Jordan* the *Philistims* had not invaded. The rest of their defences were such as antiquity used, and their present necessity ministered unto them; to wit, clubs, bowes, and slings. For the *Benjamites* excelled in casting stones in slings: and that these were the naturall weapons, and the first of all nations, it is manifest; and so in the first of *Chronicles* the 12. Chapter it is written of those that came to succour *David* against *Saul*, while he lurked at *Siklag*, That they were *weaponed with bowes, and could use the right and the left hand with stones*; and with a sling it was that *David* himself slew the Gyant *Goliath*.

1 Sam. 14. 11.

While the State of *Israel* stood in these hard termes, the *Philistims* having parted their army into three troops, that they might spoil and destroy many parts at once; *Jonathan*, strengthened by God, and followed with his Esquire onely, scaled a mountain, whereon a company of *Philistims* were lodged: the rest of their army (as may be gathered by the successe) being incamped in the plain adjoining. And though he were discovered before he came to the hill top, and in a kind of derision, called up by his enemies: yet he so behaved himself, as with the assistance of God he slew 20. of the first *Philistims* that he encountred. Whereupon the next companies taking the alarm, and being ignorant of the cause, fled away amazed altogether. In which confusion, fear, and jealousy, they slaughtered one another in stead of enemies: whereupon those *Hebrews* which became of their party, because they feared to be spoiled by them, took the advantage of their destruction, and slew of them in great numbers. And lastly, *Saul* himself taking knowledge of the rout and disorder, together with those *Israelites* that shrouded themselves in mount *Ephraim*, set upon them, and obtained (contrary to all hope and expectation) a most happy and glorious victory over them. Here was that prophesie in *Deuteronomie* fulfilled by *Jonathan*, That one of those which feared God, should kill a thousand, and nine of them ten thousand.

1 Sam. 14.

This done, the small army of *Israel* made reitrait from the pursuit. And although *Saul* so had bound the people by an oath not to take food til the evening, yet his son *Jonathan*, being feeble with extreme labour and emptinesse, tasted a drop of honey in his passage: for which *Saul* his father would have put him to death, had not the people delivered him from his cruelty.

1 Sam. 14.

The late miraculous victorie of *Saul* and *Jonathan*, seems to have reduced unto the *Philistims* remembrance their former overthrow, likewise miraculous in the dayes of *Samuel*; so that for some space of time they held themselves quiet. In the mean while *Saul* being now greatly encouraged, undertook by turns all his bordering enemies; namely, the *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Edomites*, and the *Arabians* of *Zobah*, against all which he prevailed. He then assembled all the forces he could make, to wit, 2 10000. men, and receiving the commandment of God by *Samuel*, he invaded *Amalec*, waisting and destroying all that part of *Arabia Petraea*, and the *Desart* belonging to the *Amalekites*, from *Havilah* towards *Tigris* unto *Shur*, which bordereth *Egypt*; in which warre hee took *Agag* their King prisoner. But whereas he was instructed by *Samuel* to follow this Nation without compassion, because they first of all attempted *Israel*, when they left *Egypt* in *Moses* time: he notwithstanding did not only spare the life of *Agag*, but reserved the best of the beasts and spoil of the Countrie, with pretence to offer them in sacrifice to the living God. Therefore did *Samuel* now a second time make him know that God would cast him from his royall estate, to which he was raised when he was of babe condition, and, as the Text hath it, *little in his own eyes*. And though the offence was great in *Saul* for not obeying the voyce of God by *Samuel*, had there been no former precept to that effect: yet seeing *Saul* could not be ignorant how severely it pleased God to enjoyn the *Israelites* to revenge themselves upon that Nation, he was in all unexcusable. For God had commanded that the *Israelites* should put out the remembrance of *Amalec* from under heaven. For the cruelty which the predecessors of this *Agag* used against the *Israelites*, especially on those which were over-wearied, faint, sick, and aged people, was now to be revenged on him, and his Nation, above 400. years afterward; and now hee was to pay the debt of blood, which his forefathers borrowed from the

Exod. 17.

Deut. 25. 19.

the innocent: himself having also sinned in the same kind; as these words of *Samuel* witness: *As thy sword hath made other women childlesse, so shall thy mother be childlesse among other women*; at which time *Samuel* himself (after he had been by many bootlesse intreaties perswaded to stay a while with *Saul*) did cut *Agag* in pieces before the Lord in *Gilgal*, and soon after he departed to *Ramath*, and came no more to see *Saul* untill the day of his death.

S. V.

Of the occurrents between the rejection of Saul and his death.

NOW while *Samuel* mourned for *Saul*, God commanded him to choose a King for *Israel*, among the sons of *Israhel*: which *Samuel* (doubting the violent hand of *Saul*) feared in a sort to perform, till it pleased God to direct him, how hee might avoid both the suspicion, and the danger. And if *Samuel* knew that it was no way derogating from the providence of God, that by his cautious care and wisdom hee sought to avoid the inconveniences or dangers of this life: then do these men mistake the nature of his divine ordinance, who neglecting the reason that God hath given them, do so otherwise avoid the perills and dangers thereof, than as men stupefied in the opinion of fate or destinie, neglecting either to beg counsell at Gods hands by prayer, or to exercise that wisdom or foresight, wherewith God hath enriched the mind of man for his preservation. Neither did the all-powerfull God (who made and could destroy the world in an instant) disdain here to instruct *Samuel*, to avoid the fury of *Saul*, by the accustomed cautious waies of the world.

Of the sons of *Israhel*, *Samuel*, by God directed, made choice of *David*; the youngest; having refused *Eliah*, the first born: who though he were a man of a comely person and great strength; yet unto such outward appearance, the Lord had no respect. For as it is written, *God seeth not as man seeth, etc. but the Lord beholdeth the heart*. He also refusing the other six brethren, made choice of one whom his father had altogether neglected, and left in the flock to attend his flock; for of him the Lord said to *Samuel*, *Arise, and anoint him, for this is he*: which done, *Samuel* departed and went to *Ramath*. Neither was it long after this that *Saul* began to seek the life of *David*: in which bloody mind, hee continued till he died, overcome in battell by the *Philistims*.

The *Philistims* having well-considered (as it seems) the increase of *Saul* his power through many victories by him obtained; whilst they had sitted still and forborn to give impediment to his prosperous courses, thought it good to make new tryall of their fortune, as justly fearing that the wrongs, which they had done to *Israel*, might be repaid with advantage, if ever opportunity should serve their often injured neighbours against them, as lately it had done against *Moab*, *Ammon*, and the rest of their ancient enemies. Now for the qualitie of their Souldiers, and all warlike provisions, the *Philistims* had reason to think themselves equall, if not superiour to *Israel*. The successe of their former wars had for the most part been agreeable to their own wishes: as for late disasters, they might, according to humane wisdom, impute them to second causes; as to a tempest happening by chance; and to a mistaken alarm, whereby their Armie, possessed with needless fear, had fallen to rout. Having therefore mustered their forces, and taken the field, encamping so neer to the Armie which King *Saul* drew forth against them, that they could not easily depart without the trial of a battell, each part kept their ground of advantage for a while, not joyning in grosse, but maintaining some skirmishes, as refusing both of them to passe the Valley that lay between their Camps. Just causes of fear they had on both sides; especially the *Philistims*, whose late attempts had bin counterounded by the angry hand of God. Upon this occasion perhaps it was, that they sought to decide the matter by single combat, as willing to try in one mans person, whether any strook from heaven were to be feared. *Goliath* of *Gath*, a strong Giant, fearing neither God nor Man, undertook to defie the whole Host of *Israel*, provoking them with despightfull words, to appoint a Champion that might fight with him hand to hand, offering condition, that the party vanquished in Champion, should hold it self as overcome in grosse, and become vassall unto the other. This gave occasion to young *David*, whom *Samuel* by Gods appointment had anointed, to make a famous entrance into publique notice of the people. For no man durst expose himselfe

to encounter the great strength of *Goliath*, untill *David* (sent by his father of an errand to the Camp) accepted the combat, and obtained the victorie, without other arms, offensive or defensive, than a sling, wherewith he overthrew that haughty Gyaunt, and after with his own sword strook off his head. Hereupon the *Philistims*, who should have yielded themselves as subjects to the Conquerour, according to the covenant on their own side propounded, fled without stay, and were pursued and slaughtered even to their own gates. By this victory the *Philistims* were not so broken, that either any of their Towns were lost, or their people discouraged from infesting the Territories of *Israel*. But *David*, by whom God had wrought this victorie, fell into the grievous indignation of his Master *Saul*, through the honour purchased by his well-deserving. For after such time as the spirit of God departed from *Saul*, and came upon *David*, hee then became a cruell Tyrant, faithlesse, and irreligious. Because the high Priest *Abimelech* fed *David* in his necessitie with hallowed bread, and armed him with a sword of his own conquest, taken from *Goliath*; *Saul* not only by his wicked *Edomite Doeg* murdered this *Abimelech* and 85. Priests of *Nob*, but also he destroyed the Citie, and *Imate* with the edge of the sword both man and woman, both child and suckling, both Ox and Ass, and sheep. And he that had compassion on *Agag* the Amalekite, who was an enemy to God and his people, and also spared and preserved the best of his Cattel, contrary to the Commandement and Ordinance of God, both by *Moses* and *Samuel*, had not now any mercy in store for the innocent, for the Lords servants, the Priests of *Israel*. Yea, hee would have slain his own son *Jonathan*, for pitying and pleading *David*'s innocencie; as also once before for tasting the hony, when his fainting for hunger made him forget his fathers unreasonable commination. The companions of cruelty are breach of faith towards men, and impiety towards God. The former hee shewed in denying *David* his daughter, whom he had promised him; and again in taking her away from him to whom he had given her: also in that when *David* had twice spared his life in the Territory of *Ziph*, and *Saul* twice sworn to do him no hurt, and confessed his errours, yet he sought still to destroy him, by all the means he could. His impiecy towards God he shewed, in that he sought counsell of the Witch of *Endor*, which was the last preparative for his destruction. For whereas when he sought counsell from God, he had bin alwaies victorious from the Oracle of the Devil this successe followed, that both himself, and his three sons, with his nearest and faithful servants, were all slaughtered by the *Philistims*: his body with the bodies of his sons (as a spectacle of shame and dishonour) were hung over the walls of *Bethsan*; and there had remained till they had found buriall in the bowels of ravenous birds, had not the gratefull Gileadites of *Faber* stole their carcasses thence, and interred them. This was the end of *Saul*, after he had governed *Israel*, together with *Samuel*, 40. years, and by himself after *Samuel* 20. years, according to *Cedrenus*, *Theophilus* and *Josephus*. But yet it seemeth to me, that after the death of *Samuel*, *Saul* did not rule very long: For in the beginning of the 27. chapter, it is written, that *Samuel* died; and in the rest of the same chapter the passages are written of *David*, *Nabal*, and *Abigail*, after which the death of *Saul* quickly ensued.

An exceeding valliant man he was, and gave a fair entrance to all those victories which *David* afterward obtained: for he had beaten the *Ammonites* with their neighbouring Nations; cruell the *Syrians*, and their adherents; broken the strength of the *Amalekites*; and greatly wasted the power and pride of the *Philistims*.

## §. VI.

Of such as lived with *Samuel* and *Saul*; of *Hellen*, and *Hercules*, and of their issues: upon occasion of the *Dores*, with the *Heraclidae*, entering *Peloponnesus* about this time.

IN the second year of *Samuel*, according to *Eusebius*, was *David* born: after *Crisostomus*, later, and in the ninth year: after *Bunting* in the tenth. For *David*, faith hee, was thirte years old when hee began to reigne: whence it followeth, that hee was born in the tenth of the fortie years, which are given to *Samuel* and *Saul*. About the eleventh year of *Samuel*, *Aeneas Silvius* the son of *Posthumus* began his reign over the Latines in *Alba*, who governed that State one and thirte years. There are who place before him *Latinus Silvius*, as brother to *Posthumus*, calling him the fifth

from *Aeneas*, and fourth King of *Alba*, whereof I will not stand to dispute. In the eleventh of *Samuel*, *Dercilas* sat in the Throne of *Affria*, being the one and thirtieth King; he ruled that Empire forty years. In this age of *Samuel* the *Dores* obtained *Peloponnesus*, and at once with the *Heraclidae*, who then led and commanded the Nation, possessed a great part thereof, 328. years before the first *Olympiad*, according to *Diodorus* and *Eratosthenes*. For all *Greece* was anciently possessed by three Tribes or Kindreds, viz: the *Ionians*, *Dorians*, and *Aeolians*: at length it was called *Hellas*, and the people *Hellenes*, of *Hellen* the son of *Deucalion*, Lord of the Countrie of *Phiotia* in *Thessaly*. But before the time of this *Hellen*, yea, and long after, *Greece* had no name common to all the Inhabitants, neither were the people called *Hellenes*, till such time as partly by trading in all parts of the Land, partly by the Plantation of many Colonies, and sundry great victories obtained, the issues of *Hellen* had reduced much of the Countrey under their obedience, calling themselves generally by one name, and yet every severall Nation after some one of the posteritie of *Hellen*, who had reigned over it. And because this is the farthest antiquitie of *Greece*, it will not be amiss to recount the Pedegree of her first planters.

*Lapetus* (as the poets fable) was the son of Heaven and Earth, so accounted, either because the names of his Parents had in the Greek tongue such signification: or perhaps for his knowledge in *Astronomie* and *Philosophie*.

*Lapetus* begat *Prometheus*, and *Ephimetheus*: of whom all men have read that have read Poets. *Prometheus* begat *Deucalion*; and *Ephimetheus*, *Pyrrha*; *Deucalion* and his wife *Pyrrha* reigned in *Thessalie*, which was then called *Pyrrha* (as *Crisostomus* *Epianus* affirmeth) of *Pyrrha* the Queen. In *Deucalions* time was that great flood, of which wee have spoken else-where. *Deucalion* begat *Hellen*: whose sons were *Xuthus*, *Dirys*, and *Eolus*: of *Dorus* and *Eolus*, the *Dores* and *Aeolians* had name. The *Aeolians* inhabited *Boeotia*. The *Dores* having first inhabited sundry parts of *Thessaly*, did afterward seat themselves about *Parnassus*, and finally became Lords of the Countries about *Lacedaemon*: *Xuthus* the eldest son of *Hellen*, being banished by his brethren, for having departed from them to his own use some part of their Fathers goods, came to *Athens*: where marrying the Daughter of King *Erichtheus*, he begat on her two sons, *Achaeus* and *Ion*. Of these two, *Achaeus*, for a slaughter by him committed, fled into *Peloponnesus*: and seating himself in *Laconia*, gave name to that region: from whence (as some write) he afterwards departed; and levying an Armie, recovered the Kingdome of his Grandfather in *Thessalie*.

*Ion* being Generall for the *Athenians* when *Eumolpus* the *Thracian* invaded *Attica*, did obtain a great victorie, and thereby such love and honour of the people, that they committed the ordering of their State into his hands. Hee divided the Citizens into Tribes, appointing every one to some occupation, or good course of life. When the people multiplied, hee planted Colonies in *Sycionia*, then called *Aegialos* or *Aegialia*: In which Countrie *Solinus* then reigning, thought it safer to give his Daughter *Helice* in marriage to *Ion*, and make him his Heir, than to contend with him. So *Ion* married *Helice*, and built a Town called by his Wives name in *Aegialia*, where he and his posterity reigned long, and (though not obliterating the old name) gave to that Land denomination. But in after-times the *Dores* assisting the Nephewes of *Hercules*, invaded *Peloponnesus*, and overcomming the *Aeolians*, possessed *Laconia*, and all those parts which the *Achai* had formerly occupied. Hereupon the *Achai* driven to seek a new Seat, came unto the *Ionians*, desiring to inhabit *Aegialia* with them, and alleged in vain, that *Ion* and *Achaeus* had been brethren. When this request could not be obtained, they fought by force to expell the *Ionians*, which they performed; but they lost their King *Tisamenus*, the son of *Orestes*, in that War.

Thus were the *Ionians* driven out of *Peloponnesus*, and compelled to remove into *Attica*, from whence after a while they sailed into *Asia*, and peopled the Western coast thereof; on which they built twelve Cities, inhabited by them, even to this day, at the least without any universall or memorable transmigration. This expedition of the *Ionians* into *Asia* hath been mentioned of all which have written of that Age; and is commonly placed 140. years after the warre of *Troy*, and 60. years after the descent of the *Heraclidae* into *Peloponnesus*. These *Heraclidae* were they of whom the Kings of *Sparta* issued; which race held that Kingdome about 700. years. Of their Father



*Hercules* many strange things are delivered unto us by the Poets, of which some are like to have been true, others perhaps must be allegorically understood. But the most approved Writers think that there were many called *Hercules*, all whose exploits were by the *Greeks* ascribed to the son of *Alcmena*, who is said to have performed these 12. great labours.

First, he slew the *Nemean* Lyon: secondly, he slew the serpent *Hydra*, which had nine heads, whereof one being cut off, two grew in the place: the third was the overtaking a very swift Hart: the fourth was the taking of a wild Bore alive, which haunted mount *Erymanthus* in *Arcadia*: the fifth was the cleansing of *Augias* his Oxen-stall in one day, which he performed by turning the River *Alpheus* into it: the sixth was the chasing away to of the Birds from the Lake *Stymphalis*: the seventh was the fetching a Bull from *Crete*: the eighth was the taking of the Mares which *Diomedes* King of *Thrace* fed with humane flesh: the ninth was to fetch a Girdle of the Queen of the *Amazons*: the three last were, to fetch *Gerion's* Beeves from *Gades*: the golden Apples of the *Hesperides*; and *Cerberus* from Hell. The *Mythological* interpretation of these I purposely omit, as both over-long to be here set down, and no lesse perplexed than the labours themselves. For some by *Hercules* understand Fortitude, Prudence, and Constancy, interpreting the Monsters, Vices, Others make *Hercules* the Sun, and his travells to be the twelve signes of the *Zodiac*. There are others who apply his works historically to their own conceits; as well assured, that the exposition cannot have more unlikeliness, than the fables. That hee took *Elas*, *Pylus*, *Oebalia*, and other towns, being assisted by such as either admired his virtues, or were beholding unto him; Also that hee slew many Theeves and Tyrants, I take to be truly written, without addition of Poetical vanitie. His travells through most part of the world, are, or may seem, borrowed from *Hercules Libyensis*: But sure it is that many Cities of *Greece* were greatly bound to him: for that hee (bending all his indeavours to the common good) delivered the Land from much oppression: But after his death, no City of *Greece* (*Athens* excepted) requited the virtue and deserts of *Hercules*, with constant protection of his Children, persecuted by the King *Eurystheus*. This *Eurystheus* was Sonne of *Sthenelus*, and grand-child of *Perseus*; he reigned in *Mycena*, the mightiest City then in *Greece*. He; so it was that imposed those hard tasks upon *Hercules*, who was bound to obey him (as Poets report) for expiation of that Murder, which in his madnesse he had committed upon his own children; but as others say, because he was his Subject and Servant: wherefore there are who commend *Eurystheus* for employing the strength of *Hercules* to so good a purpose: But it is so generally agreed by the best Writers, that *Hercules* was also of the stock of *Perseus*, and holden in great jealousy by *Eurystheus* because of his virtue, which appeared more and more in the dangerous services, wherein hee was employed, so that he grew great in reputation and power through all *Greece*; and had by many Wives and Concubines above three score Children. These Children *Eurystheus* would faine have got into his power, when *Hercules* was dead: but they fled unto *Ceyx* King of *Thracina*, and from him (for he durst not withstand *Eurystheus*) to *Athens*. The *Athenians* not onely gave them entertainment, but lent them aid, wherewith they encountered *Eurystheus*. *Iolaus* the brothers son of *Hercules*, who had assisted him in many of his travells, was captain of the *Heraclidae*. It is said of him, that being dead he obtained leave of *Pluto* to live again till he might revenge the injuries done by *Eurystheus*: whom when he had slain in battell, he died again. It seems to me, that whereas hee had led Colonies into *Sicily*, and abode there a long time forgotten: he came again into *Greece* to assist his cousins, and afterwards returned back. When the *Peloponnesians* understood that *Eurystheus* was slain, they took *Atreus* the Sonne of *Pelops* to their King: for hee was rich, mighty, and favoured of the People. Against him the *Heraclidae* marched under *Hyllus*, the sonne of *Hercules*. But to avoid effusion of blood, it was agreed, that *Hyllus* should fight with *Echeneus* King of the *Tegeata*, a people of *Arcadia*, who assisted *Atreus*; with condition, that if *Hyllus* were victor, he should peaceably enjoy what hee challenged as his right: otherwise the *Heraclidae* should not enter *Peloponnesus* in an hundred years. In that combat *Hyllus* was slain, and the *Heraclidae* compelled to forbeare their Country, till the third generation: at which time they returned under *Arifodemus* (as the best authority doth shew, though some have said, that they came under the conduct of his children) and brought with them the *Doris*, whom

whom they planted in that Country, as is before shewed, having expelled the *Achai*, over whom the issue of *Pelops* had reigned after the death of *Eurystheus* four generations.

## 6. VII.

of Homer and Hesiod, and many changes in the world, that happened about this age.

- 10 About this time that excellent learned Poet *Homer* lived, as many of the best *Chronologers* affirm. He was by race of the *Maones*, descended (as *Funfius* imagineth) of *Berosus* his *Aniamxon*, who gave name to that people. But this *Funfius* imagineth *Homer* the Poet to have been long after these times, fahly framing his *Ara* according to *Archilochus* in the tract, or rather fragment de *temporibus*, and makes seven more of this name to have flourished in divers Cities in *Greece*. Whence, perhaps, sprang the diversitie of opinions, both of the time, and of the native Citie of *Homer*. According to this *Archilochus*, *Funfius* finds *Homer* about the time of *Manasse* King of *Juda*, and *Numa* of *Rome*. He was called *Melesigenes* from the place of his birth, and at length *Homer*, because blind men follow a guide, which signification among others, is in the verbe *homer*: for this *Homer* in his later time was blind. \* *Clemens Alexandrinus* recites many different opinions touching the question of the time when *Homer* lived. So also *Aulus Gellius*, and *Tatianus Assyrius* in his Oration ad gentes. *Paterculus* reckons that *Homer* flourished 950. years before the Consulship of *Marcus Vinnius*: which *Mercator* casteth up in the worlds year 3046. and after *Troy* taken, about 260. years: and about 250. years before the building of *Rome*; making him to have flourished about the time of *Jehoshaphat* King of *Juda*. But *Clemens Alexandrinus* and *Tatianus* above named, mention Authors that make him much antienter. The difference of which authors in this point is not unworthy the Readers consideration, that by this one instance hee may ghesse of the difficultie, and so pardon the errors in the computations of antient time: in seeing in such diversitie of opinions a man may hardly find out what to follow.
- 30 For *Crates* the *Grammarians* (as *Clemens Alexandrinus* reports) gave being to *Homer* about 80. years after *Troy* taken, neer the time that the *Heraclidae* returned into *Peloponnesus*: and \* *Eratosthenes* after *Troy* 100. years. *Theopompus* 500. years after the armie of *Greece* sailed into *Phrygia* for the warre of *Troy*. *Euphorion* makes him contemporarie with *Gyges*, who began to reign in the 18. *Olympiad* (which was 45. years after *Rome* was built) and *Sesibius* saith, that he was 90. years before the first *Olympiad*: which hee seeks to prove by the times of *Charillus* and his sonne *Nicander*. *Philechorus* placeth him 180. after *Troy*: *Aristarchus* 240. in the time of the seating of the Colonies in *Ionis*. *Apollodorus* affirms that he lived while *Agessilus* governed *Lacedemon*; and that *Lycurgus* in his young years about 100. years after the *Ionian* plantations, came to visit him; neer 240. years after *Troy* taken. *Herodotus* finds *Homer* flourishing 622. years before *Xerxes* enterprise against the *Grecians*: which *Berbaldis* accounteth at 168. years after the *Trojan* war. *Eusebius* seems to make him to have been about the time of *Joas* King of *Juda*, 124. years before *Rome* built: though elsewhere in his *Chronologie* hee notes that some place him in the time of *Sammel*, and others in the end of *David*, and others in other ages. In his *Evangelicall* Preparation, where out of *Tatianus Assyrius* hee citeth sundry opinions touching the time when *Homer* lived, he reckoneth many other Greek writers more antient than *Homer*; as *Linus*, *Philammon*, *Epimenides*, *Phemius*, *Aristeus*, *Orpheus*, *Museus*, *Thamyrae*, *Amphion*, and others.
- Now whether *Homer* or *Hesiodus* were the elder, it is also much disputed. *Aulus Gellius* reports that *Philechorus* and *Xenophanes* affirm, that *Homer* preceded *Hesiod*: and 30 on the contrary, that *Luc. Accius* the Poet, and *Ephorus* the Historian, make *Hesiod* of an elder time than *Homer*. *Varro* leaves it uncertain which of these learned fablers was first born: but hee finds that they lived together some certain years, where he confirms himself by an *Epigram*, written upon a Trevis, and left by *Hesiod* in *Helicon*.
- Cornelius Nepos* reports that they both lived 160. years before *Rome* built: while the *Silvii* reigned in *Alba*, about 140. years after the fall of *Troy*. *Euthymenes* finds them both 200. years after *Troy* taken, in the time of *Acastus* the son of *Pelias*, King of *Thessaly*.



of *Thesaly*. For my selfe, I am not much troubled when this Poet lived, neither would I offend the Reader with these opinions, but only to shew the uncertainty and disagreement of Historians, as well in this particular, as in all other questions and dispute of *Time*. For, the curiositie of this mans age is no lesse ridiculous, than the inquisition why he began his *Iliads* with the word *Menin*, as perhaps containing some great mysterie. In derision whereof *Lucian* feigning himself to have been in Hell, and to have spoken with *Homer*, there asked him the cause why he began his book with that word: who answered, That he began in that sort, because it came in his head so to doe.

It seemeth that *Semyes*, or, after *Macrobijus*, *Senemires* ruled *Egypt*, at this time: for *Tamopher Jobris* was his successor, who preceded *Vaphres*, father in law to *Soleman*.<sup>1</sup> About the end of *Sauls* government, or in the beginning of *Dauids* time, according to *Cassiodorus*, the *Amazones* with the *Cymmerians* invaded *Asia*, *Latinus Sylvius* then ruling in *Italy*. And besides the overthrow of that famous state of *Troy* (which fell 103. years before *Dauids* time) there were many other changes in the middle part of the world, not onely by reason of those Northern Nations: but there sprung up somewhat neatly together, six Kingdomes into greatnesse, not before erected. In *Italy* that of the *Latines*: in the South part of *Greece*, those of *Lacedaemon*, *Corinth*, and the *Achai*. In *Arabia*, *Syria*, *Soba*, and *Damascus*, the *Adams* made themselves Princes, of which there were ten Kings, which began and ended with the Kings of *Israel* in effect: and somewhat before these, the State of the *Israelites* having now altered the forme of government, began to flourish under Kings, of which *David*, in a few years, became master of all those neighbouring Nations, who by enterchange of times had subjected the *Judaans*, corrupted their religion, and held them under in a most abject and and grievous slavery; to wit, the *Edomians*, *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Midianites*, *Turans*, and the rest of the *Arabians*, with the *Philistims*, *Sejuthites*, *Geshurites*, *Machabites*, all which acknowledged *David* for their Sovereigne Lord, and paid him tribute.

## CHAP. XVII. OF DAVID.

### S. I. Of *Dauids* estate in the time of *Saul*.



He hazards which *David* ran into while he was yet onely designed King, and lived as a private man, expecting the Empire, were very many. The first personall act of fame, was his killing of *Goliath* in the view of both armies, whereby he became known to *Saul*, and to highly affected of *Jonathan* the sonne of *Saul*, that he loved him as his own soul: Insomuch as when *Saul* sought to perswade his sonne that *David* would assuredly be the ruine of his house, and estate, and offered him violence when he pleaded his cause; *Jonathan* could never be perswaded, never forc'd, nor ever wearied from the care of *Dauids* life, and well doing. It was not long after this signall act of *David*, but that *Saul* became exceeding jealous of him, though he were become as his household servant, and his Esquire, or Armor-bearer. *Saul* being vexed with an evil spirit, was advised to procura some cunning Musician to play before him upon the Harp, whereby it was thought that he might find ease; so came to passe accordingly. He entertained *David* for this purpose, and began to favour him, giving him a place of Command among the men of warre. But the jealous Tyrann soon waxed wearie of his good affection, and sought to kill *David*, being thereunto moved onely through envie of his vertue. This passion first brake forth in the midst of his raving fit, at which time he threw a spear at *David* that was then playing on his Harp to do him ease.

*Censorinus* remembreth one *Aesclepius* a Physician, who practised the curing of the Frenzie, by the like Musick: and tempered thereby those diseases which grew from passion. That *Pythagoras* did also the like by such a kind of harmony, *Seneca* in his third book of *Anger* witnesseth. But the madness of *Saul* came from the cause of causes; and

and was thereby incurable, howsoever it sometimes left him, and yeelded unto that Musick, which God had ordained to be a mean of more good to the Musician than to the King.

*Saul* having failed in such open attempts, gave unto *David* the command over 1000. souldiers to confront the *Philistims* withall. For he durst not trust him as before, about his person, fearing his revenge. Now the better to cover his hatred towards him, hee promised him his daughter *Merab* to wife: but having married her to *Adriel*, he gave to *David* his younger daughter *Michol*, but with a condition, to present him with an hundred foreskins of the *Philistims*: hoping rather (in respect of the valour of that Nation) that the *Philistims* would take *Dauids* head, than hee their foreskins. This hope failing, when as now *Dauids* victories begat new fears and jealousies in *Saul*, hee practised with *Jonathan*, and afterwards with his own hands attempted his life, but his purposes were still frustrated. After all this he sought to murder him in his own house, but *Michol* his wife delivered him. So *David* sought *Samuel* at *Ramah*, and being pursued by *Saul*, fled thence unto *Nob* in *Benjamin*, to *Abimeleck*, then to *Achis* the *Philistim*, Prince of *Geth*: where to obscure himselfe, he was forc'd to counterfeite both sim-<sup>1 Sam. 19.</sup> plicie and distraction. But being ill assured among the *Philistims*, he covered himselfe in the Cave of *Adullam*: and after conveying such of his kinsfolks as were not fit to follow him, into *Maab*, he hid himself in the deserts of *Ziph*, *Maon*, and the hills of *Engad- 1 Sam. 24.* iadi, where he cut off the lap of *Sauls* garment, and spared his life: as he did a second time in the desert of *Ziph*, after his passage with *Nabal* and *Abigail*. After which he repaired to *Achis* of *Geth* the second time, and was kindly entertained, in regard of the hatred<sup>1 Sam. 19.</sup> with which his master *Saul* was known to persecute him. *Jonathan* in *Psalm*.

Of *Achis* *David* obtained \* *Siglag* in *Simeon*, pretending to invade *Judea*: but he bent<sup>1</sup> his forces another way, and strook the *Amalekites*, with other enemies of *Israel*, letting some live to complain upon him. *Achis* supposing that *David* had drawn blood of his own Nation, thought himself assured of him: and therefore preparing to invade *Israel*, summoneth *David* to assist him, who dissembling his intent, seemeth very willing thereto. But the rest of the *Philistim* Princes knowing his valour, and doubting his dis-<sup>2</sup> position, liked not his company, and therefore he withdrew himself to *Siglag*. At his returne he found the town burnt, his two wives, with the wives and children of his people, taken by the *Amalekites*: Hereupon his followers mutined, but God gave him comfort, and assurance to recover all again: which he did.

This armie of the *Philistims* commanded by *Achis*, encountred *Saul* at *Gilboa*, in which he and his three sons were slain. The newes, with *Sauls* Crown and bracelets, were brought to *David* at *Siglag*, in his return from being victorious over *Amaleck*, by a man of the same Nation, who avowed (though falsely) that himself at *Sauls* request had slain him. *David*, because he had acculed himself, made no scruple to cause him to bee slain at the instant: and the sooner, because the probabilities gave strong evidence with-<sup>3</sup> out. Otherwise it followeth not that every man ought to be believed of himself to his own prejudice. For it is held in the law, *Confessor rerum non habenda est pro explorato crimine, nisi approbato alia instruit religionem cognoscens*. The prisoners confession is a proof not to be taken for an evidence of the crime, unless some other proof inform the conscience of the Judge. For a man may confesse those things of himself, that the Judge by examination may know to be impossible. But because it is otherwise determined in the use de custodia rerum l. si confessus, & in cap. de penis l. qui sententiam, therefore doth the Glosse reconcile these two places in this sort: *Si quis in iudicio sponte de seipso confetur, & postea maneat in confessione, id est satis*. If any man in judgement do confesse of himself, of his own accord, and after doth persevere in his confession, it is enough. That<sup>4</sup> *David* greatly bewailed *Saul*, it is not improbable, for death cutteth asunder all competition: and the lamentable end that befell him being a King, with whom in effect the strength of *Israel* also fell, could not but stirre up sorrow, and move compassion in the heart of *David*.

The victory which the *Philistims* had gotten, was so great, that some Towns of the *Israelites*, even beyond the river of *Jordan*, were abandoned by the Inhabitants, and left unto the enemies, who took possession of them without any resistance made. Wherefore it may seem strange, that a nation so warlike and ambitious as were the *Philistims*, did not follow their fortune with all diligence, and seek to make the Conquest entire.

Moh

Most like it seems, that the civill war immediately breaking out between David and the house of Saul, wherein Judah was divided from the rest of Israel, gave them hope of an easie victorie over both; and thereby caused them to attempt nothing at the present; lest by so doing they should enforce their disagreeing enemies to a necessary reconciliation; but rather to permit that the one part should consume the other, by which means both the victors, and the vanquished, would become a prey to the violence of such as had beaten them, when their forces were united.

## §. II.

Of the beginning of Davids reign, and the war made by Abner for Ishboeth.

**A**fter the death of Saul, Abner, who commanded for Saul in the warre, fought to advance Ishboeth (or Iseobtus, according to Josephus) though he had no right to the Kingdom of Israel: for Mephobeth the first son of Jonathan lived. Against this Abner and Ishboeth, David made a defensive war, till Abner past Jordan, and entered the border of Judah; at which time he sent Joab with such forces as he had, to resist Abner: Ishboeth remaining in Gilead, and David in Hebron. The armies encountered each other neer Gibeon, where it seemeth that Abner made the offer to trie the quarrell by the hands of a few, like to that combat between the Lacedemonians and the Argives, remembered by Herodotus, 300. being chosen of each Nation, of which number three persons were onely left unslain. The like tryall by a farre lesse number was performed by the Horatii and Curiatii, for the Romans and Latines. The same challenge Goliath the Philistin made, whom David slew: a custome very antient. Edward the third offered the like tryall in his own person to the French King; and Francis the French King to Charles the Emperour. There were twelve chosen of each part, in this war of David with the house of Saul, to wit, so many of Benjamin; and as many of Judah: whose force and valour was so equal, as there survived not any one to challenge the victory. But the quarrell staid not here; for the Army of Judah prest Abner in grolle, and brake him. Three hundred and sixty men of Abners companions were slain, and but twenty of Judah; whereof Asahel the brother of Joab was one: who when he would needs pursue Joab, and by Abners perswasions could not be moved to quit him, he was forced to turn upon him, wounded him to death with the stroak of his spear. For though Asahel were an excellent foot-man, and, as it is written in the Text, as light as a wild Roar, and, as Josephus reporteth, contended not onely with men, but with horses; and hoped to have gotten great fame if he could have mastered Abner (who, as Asahel perswaded himself, had by being overthrown, and flying away, lost his courage) yet here it fell out true, That the race is not to the swift.

That this civill warre lasted two years, we find it written in the second of Samuel, the second Chapter; though in the beginning of the third it is again made probable, that this contention dured longer; and therefore the matter reiteth still in dispute, and so some of the Rabbines conceive that Ishboeth had then reigned two years, when this was written, the Warre as yet continuing a longer time. For Abner held for the party of Ishboeth after this, and till such time as there grew jealousie between him and Ishboeth for Sauts Concubine: neither did the death of Ishboeth instantly follow; but how long after the murder of Abner it happened, the same doth not certainly appear.

## §. III.

Of the death of Abner slain by Joab, and of Ishboeth by Rechab and Baanah.

**A**fter, reconciled to David, was anon by Joab murdered; for Joab could not endure a companion in Davids Favoure, and in the commandment of his forces; by which he was grown so powerfull, as David forbore to call him to account: for thus much he confesseth of himself; *I am this day weak, and these men, the sons of Zerviah, be too hard for me.* In this sort David complained after Abners death; and to make it clear that he hated this fact of Joab, he followed him with this publike imprecation; *Let the blood fall on the head of Joab, and on all his fathers house: and let them*

be subject to ulcers, to the leprosy, to lameness, to the sword, and to poverty, &c. For could any thing have withstood the ordinance of God, this murder committed by Joab might greatly have endangered Davids estate, Abner being the mouth and trust of all the rest of the Tribes, not yet reconciled. This mischance therefore David openly bewailed, so that all Israel perceived him to be innocent of that fact. The place which Abner held, being generall of the men of warre, was of such importance, that the Kings themselves were faine to give them great respect, as hath been already shewed more at large. This office Joab held in the army of Judah, and thought himself worthy to hold the place entire, if once his Lord might obtain the whole Kingdom. For he was neer to David in kindred, and had been partaker of all his adversitie, wherefore hee did not think it meet, that an old enemy should in reward of new benefits, be made his partner. Indeed he was by nature so jealous of his dignitie and place, that he afterward slew Asahel his own kinsman, and the Kings, upon the same quarrell, taking it in high disdain to see him joyned with himself as captain of the hoste of Judah; much lesse could he brooke a superiour; and such a one as had slain his brother, and been beaught himself in battell. But howsoever Joab did hate or despise Abner, David esteemed highly of him as of a Prince, and a great man in Israel, excusing the oversight by which he might seem to have perished, by affirming that he died not like a fool, nor a man vanquished, but as a man saileth before wicked men, so (said he) diddest thou fall. And certainly it is no error of mine, nor want of valour & vertue in him, whom a stronger hand destroyeth unawares, or whom subtilty in free trust bringeth to confusion. For all under the sun are subject to worldly miseries and misadventures. Howsoever Ishboeth meant to have dealt with Abner, yet when he heard of his death, he despaired greatly of his estate, and with him all Israel were posselt with great fear: in so much as two of Ishboeths own Captains, Rechab and Baanah, murdered Ishboeth, and presenting his head to David, received the same reward that the Amalekites lately did, for pretending to have slain Saul. Ishboeth being dead, all the Elders of Israel repaired to David at Hebron, where he was the third and last time anointed by generall consent.

## §. IV.

Of the flourishing time of Davids Kingdom, the taking of Jerusalem, with two overthrowes given to the Philistines, and the conduction of the Ark to the City of David.

**W**hen David was now established in the Kingdom, his first enterprize was upon the Jebusites, who in derision of his force, and confident in the strength of the place (as is thought) manned their walls with the blind and lame of their Citie; which David soon after entred, all their other forces notwithstanding. For having mastered the fort of Zion (which was afterward the Citie of David) he became Lord of Hierusalem, without any great danger, expelling thence the Jebusites, who had held it from the foundation, to the times of Moses and Joshua, and after them almost 400 years. There are who expound this place otherwise: *Except thou take away the blind and the lame, thou shalt not come in hither.* For some think that it was meant by the Idols of the Jebusites: others, that it had reference to the Covenant made long before with Isaac, and Jacob: the one blind by nature and age, the other made lame by wrestling with the Angel; and that therefore till those (that is, till that Covenant) be broken, David ought not to molest them. But for my self, I take it with Josephus, that they armed their walls with certain impotent people at first, in scorn of Davids attempt. For they that had held their Citie about 400. years against all the children of Israel; Joshua, the Judges, and Saul, did not doubt but to defend it also against David.

When he had now posselt himself of the very heart and Center of the Kingdom, and received congratulatory Embassadors and presents from Hiram King of Tyre: he entertained divers other concubines, and married more wives, by whom he had ten sons in Jerusalem, and by his former wives, he had six in Hebron where he reigned 7. years.

The Philistines hearing that David was now anointed King, as wel of Judah as of Israel, they thought to try him in the beginning, before he was fully warm in his seat. And being encountered by David at two severall times in the Valley of Rephaim, or of the Giants, they were at both times overthrowen. After which he called the place Baalperazim. Then David assembled 30000. choice Israelites to conduct the Ark of God from the house

house of *Abinadab* in *Gibra* to the Citie of *David*, which businesse was interrupted by the death of *Nazzab* the son of *Abinadab*, whom the Lord slew for presuming to touch the *Ark*, though it were with intent to stay it from taking harme, when it was taken. But after three years it was with great solemnity brought into the Citie with sacrifices, musick, dances, and all signs of joyfulness, in which *David* himself gladly bare a part. Hereupon *Michol* derided him for dancing before the *Ark*, and afterward told him in scorn, *That he was uncovered as a fool in the eyes of the maidens his servants*; namely, that he forgat his regall dignity both in apparell and behaviour; and mixed himself among the base multitude, dancing as fools doe in the wayes and streets: not that she disliked *David's* behaviour (as I take it) though she made it the colour of her derision; but rather the abundant griefe, which this spectacle stirred up; beholding the glory of her husband to whom she was delivered lastly by force, and remembering the miserable end of her father and brethren, out of whose ruines she conceived that the son of *Isai* had built this his greatness: together with the many new wives and concubines imbraced since his possession of *Jerusalem*, made her break out in those despitfull terms, for which she remained barren to her death.

1 Chro. c. 3.

This done, *David* consulted with the Prophet *Nathan* for the building of the Temple or house of God: but was forbidden it, because he was a man of warre, and had shed blood. So greatly doth the Lord and King of all detest homicide; having threatened, not in vain, that he would require the blood of a man, at the hand of man and beast. The war which *David* had made were just, and the blood therein shed was of the enemies of God, and his Church: yet for this cause it was not permitted that his hands should lay the foundation of that holy Temple. Hereby it appears how greatly those Princes deceive themselves, who think by blood-shed and terror of their wars, to make themselves in greatness like to the Almighty, which is a damnable pride; not caring to imitate his mercy and goodness, or seek the blessednesse promised by our Saviour unto the peace-makers.

Now although it was not pleasing to the Lord to accept a Temple of *David's* founding, yet was his religious intent so well accepted, that hereupon he received both confirmation of the Kingdome to him and his heirs, and that happy promise of the everlasting Throne, that should be established in his seed.

## S. V.

## The overthrow of the Philistims and Moabites.

1 Sam. 8. v. 1.

Soon after this *David* overthrew the *Philistims*, which made them altogether powerlesse, and unable to make any invasion upon *Israel* in haste. For it is written, *Acceptit framm Amgaris e manu Philistheorum*; which place our English Generall converts in these words, And *David* took the bridle of bondage out of the hand of the *Philistims*. The Latin of *Junius* giveth another and a better sense; for by that bridle of *Amgar* was meant the strong City of *Gath*, or *Geth*, and so the *Generall* hath it in the marginal note. This Citie of *Gath* was the same which was afterward *Dio-Cesarea*, sit on the frontier of *Palestina*, at the entrance into *Judea* and *Ephraim*. From thence they made their incursions, and thenceinto their retreat in all their invasions; which being taken by *David* and demolished, there was left no such frontier town of equall strength to the *Philistims* on that part. The hill whereon *Geth* or *Gath* stood, the Hebrews call *Amma*, whereof and of the word *Gar* is made *Amgar*, of which *Pliny* in his first book, and chap. 13. This exposition is made plain, and confirmed in the first of *Chro.* the 18.

Junius in e. 8. of the 3. of Sam.

There was no nation bordering the *Fewes* that so greatly afflicted them as the *Philistims* did, who before the time of *Saul*, to the end they might not sharpen any weapon against them) did not leave one Smith in all their Cities and Villages of that kind, but inforced them to come down into their territorie, for all yron work whatsoever they needed; so as the *Israelites* till this time of *David*, were seldom free from paying tribute to the *Philistims*.

1 Sam. 13.

After this he gave them four other overthrows: but the war of the *Moabites* and *Arabians* came between. In the first of which he was endangered by *Isbith-benab*, the head of whose spear weighed 300. shekles of brasse, which make nine pound three quarters of our poins: at which time *Abishai* succoured *David*, and slew the *Philistim*, whereupon the

the Counsellours and Captains of *David* (left the light of *Israel* might by his losse be quenched) vowed that he should not thenceforth hazzard himself in any battell. The second and third encounter and overthrow of the *Philistims* was at *Gob*, a place near *Gifar*, and the last at *Gath* or *Geth*. And being now better assured of the *Philistims* by the taking of *Geth*, he invaded *Moab*, from whom notwithstanding in his adversity hee sought succour, and left his parents with him in trust. But whether it were the same King or no, it is not known.

The *Rabbins* feign that *Moab* slew those kinsfolkes of *David*, which lived under his protection in *Saul's* time; but questionlesse *David* well knew how that Nation had been to alwayes enemies to *Israel*, and took all the occasions to vex them that were offered. And he also remembered that in the 23. of *Dent*. God commanded *Israel* not to seek the peace or prosperity of the *Moabites*; which *David* well observed, for he destroyed two parts of the people, leaving a third to till the ground. This victory obtained, he led his army by the border of *Ammon* toward *Syria Zobab*, the region of *Adadazer* the son of *Rehob* King thereof. The place is set down in the description of the holy Land; to which I referre the Reader.

## S. VI.

## The warre which David made upon the Syrians.

It is written in the Text: *David smote also Hadadazer, &c. as hee went to recover his border at the river Euphrates*. Now whether the words (as he went to recover his border) be referred to *David* or *Hadadazer*, it is not agreed upon. *Junius* thinks that the article (hee) hath relation to *David*, who finding *Tobu* oppress by *Hadadazer*, overthrew the one, and succoured the other. But the antient and most received opinion, that this recovery hath reference to the Syrian, is more probable. For if *David* had intended any such enterprize towards *Euphrates*, hee was in farre better case to have proceeded after his victory than before: seeing that (*Adadazer* being taken) hee had now left no enemy on his back, either to pursue him, to take victuals and supplies from him, or to stop the passages of the mountains upon him at his return.

Again, seeing *David* was either to passe through a part of *Arabia* the desert, or by the plains of *Palmyrena*, his army consisting of footmen, for the most, if not all: Hee had now both horse and chariots good store to carry his provisions through those uncultivated places, by which hee was to have marched before hee could have reached *Euphrates*, or any part thereof. But we find that *David* returned to *Jerusalem*, after hee had twice overthrown the Syrian army, not bending his course towards the river *Euphrates*, but seeking to establish his purchases already made. Whereby it may appear, that it was the Syrian, and not king *David*, that was going to enlarge his border, as afore is said.

The King of *Syria*, *Damascena*, and of *Damascus*, whereof that region is so called, hearing that *Adadazer* was overthrown by the *Israelites*, fearing his own estate, and the loss of his own country which adjoined to *Syria Zoba* of *Hadadazer*, sent for an Army of *Aramites* or *Syrians* to his succour: but these, as it appeareth, came too late for *Adadazer*, and too soon for themselves: for there perished of those supplies 20000. This King of *Damascus*, *Josephus*, (out of *Nicholaus* an antient Historian) calleth *Adad*, who was also of the same name and family as also those other *Adads* were: which now began to grow up in greatness, and so continued for ten descents, till they were extinguished by the *Af-ryrians*, as is shewed heretofore. *David* having now reduced *Damascus* under his obedience, left a garrison therein, as he did in *Edom*: having also sacked the adjoining Cities of *Bethah* & *Berathi*, belonging to *Adadazer*, of which Cities *Ptolomie* calleth *Betah*, *Taaba*: and *Berathi* he nameth *Barathena*. *Tobu* or *Thoi*, whose country of *Hamath* joyned to *Adadazer* (as in the description of the holy Land the Reader may perceive) sent his son *Phoram* to congratulate this successe of *David*: partly because he had war with *Adadazer*, & partly because he feared *David* now victorious. He also presented *David* with vessels of gold, silver, and brasse; all which, together with the golden shields of the *Aramites*, and the

1 Sam. 8.

the best of all the spoiles of other Nations, *David* dedicated unto God at his return, *Junius* translated the words (*Clypeos aureos*) by *umbones*, as if all the parts of the targets were not of gold, but the bosses only. The *Septuagint* call them bracelets: *Aquila*, golden chains. But because *Roboam* made shields of brass in place of these of *Adadazer*, at such time as *Shibab* the Egyptian sack'd the Temple of *Jerusalem*, it may be gathered thereby that those of *Adadazer* were golden shields.

This done, *David* sent Embassadors to *Hanum* King of the *Ammonites*, to congratulate his establishment in his fathers Kingdome: for *David*, in the time of his affliction under *Saul*, had been relieved by *Nabash*, the father of *Hanum*. But this *Ammonite* being ill advised, and over-jealous of his estate, used *David's* messengers so barbarously, and contemptuously (by curtailing their beards, and their garments) as hee thereby drew a warre upon himself, which neither his own strength, nor all the aydes purchased, could put off or sustain. For notwithstanding that hee had waged three and thirtie thousand Souldiers of the *Amalekites*, and their confederates, to wit, of the vassalls of *Adadazer* twenty thousand, and of *Maachab* the North part of *Transit* remembered in *Deut.* 3. 14. *Ishob* or *Thob* a country neer *Gad* under the rocks of *Arnan*, 2 Sam. 10. *chab* and *Ishob* thirteen thousand (for which hee disbursed a thousand talents of silver) yet all these great Armies, together with the strength of the *Ammonites*, any great losse or slaughter at that time. And it is written, that when the *Aramites* fled, the *Ammonites* also retreated into their Cities, the one holding themselves within the walls, the other in their desarts adjoining, till *Joab* was returned to *Jerusalem*.

*Hadadazer* hearing that *Joab* had dismissed his Armie, assembled his forces again, and sent all the Companies that hee could levie out of *Mesopotamia*; who under the command of *Shobach* passed *Euphrates*, and incamped at *Helam*, on the South side thereof. *David* hearing of this new preparation, assembled all the ablest men of *Israel*, and marched toward the Syrian Armie in *Palmyrena*, not yet entered into *Arabia*; to wit, at *Helam*, a place no lesse distant from *Damascus*, towards the North-east, than *Jerusalem* was towards the Southwest. Now *David* (speaking humbly) might with the more confidence goe on towards *Euphrates* (which was the farthest off journey that ever he had) because hee was now Lord of *Damascus*, which *Salomon* afterward strongly fortified; and this City was but one dayes journey from *Helam*, and the river *Euphrates*. So had hee two safe retreats, the one to *Thadmoor*, and the next from thence to *Damascus*. In this encounter between *David* and the Syrians, they lost 40000. horsemen, and 700. chariots, together with *Shobach* Generall of their Armie. The *Chronicles* call these 40000. Souldiers, footmen, and so *Junius* converts it, and so is it very probable. For the Armie of *Israel* consisting of footmen, could hardly have slaughtered 40000. horsemen, except they quitted their horse and fought on foot. So are the chariots taken in this battell, numbered 40 at 7000. in the first of *Chronicles* the ninth; in which number, as I conceive, all the Souldiers that served in them, with the conductors, are included: so as there dyed of the Syrians in this warre against *David*, before he forc'd them to tribute, 100000. footmen, besides all their horsemen and waggoners, and besides all those that *Joab* slew, when they fled at the first encounter, together with the *Ammonites*, before *Rabbah*. Notwithstanding all which, the *Adads* in following ages gathered strength again, and afflicted the Kings of *Judah* often: but the Kings of *Israel* they impoverished even to the last end of that State.

*David* having now beaten the *Arabians* and *Mesopotamians*, from the partie and confederacy of *Ammon*: He sent out *Joab* the Lieutenant of his Armies to forrage and destroy their territorie, and to besiege *Rabbah*, afterward *Philadelphia*, which after a while the *Israelites* mastered and posselt. The Kings Crown which weighed a talent of gold, garnished with precious stones, *David* set on his own head, and carried away with him the rest of the riches and spoile of the Citie. And though *David* stayed at *Jerusalem*, following the war of *Uriah* his wife, till such time as the Citie was brought to extremity, and ready to be entered: yet *Joab* in honour of *David* forbore the last assault, & entrance thereof, till his masters arrivall. To the people he used extreme rigour (if wee may so call it being exercised against heathen Idolaters,) for some of them hee tare with har-

rowes

rowes, some hee sawed asunder, others he cast into burning kills, in which hee baked tile and brick.]

## S. VII.

of Davids troubles in his reigne, and of his forces.

**B**Ut as victory begetteth securitie, and our present worldly felicity a forgetfulness of our former miseries, and many times of God himself the giver of all goodnesse; so did these changes, in the fortune and state of this good King, change also the zealous care which formerly hee had to please God in the precise observation of his Lawes and Commandements: For having now no dangerous apparent enemy (against whom hee was wont to ask counsell from the Lord) hee began to be advised by his own humane affections and vain desires: For hee was not onely satisfied to take *Uriah's* wife from him, and to use her by stealth; but hee imbrodered his adultery with *Uriah's* slaughter, giving order to his trustie servant *Joab* to marshall him in the front or point of those *Israelites*, which gave an assault upon the suburbs of *Rabbah*, when there was not as yet any possibilitie of prevailing. And that which could no lesse displease God than the rest, hee was content that many others of his best servants and souldiers should perish together with *Uriah*, hoping thereby to cover his particular ill intent against him. After which hee began by degrees to fall from the highest of happinesse, and his dayes then to come were filled with joyes and woes interchangeable, his troden-down sorrows began again to spring, and those perils which he had pulled up by the roots (as hee hoped) gave him an after-harvest of many cares and discontentments. And if it had pleased GOD to take the witness of *David's* own mouth against him, as *David* himself did against the *Amalekite*, which pretended to have slain *Saul*, he had then appeared as worthy of reprehension as the other was of the death hee suffered. For when *Nathan* the Prophet propounded unto him his own error in the person of another, to wit, of him that took the poor mans sheep that had none else, the bearer being Lord of many; hee then vowed it to the living Lord, that such a one should die the death. And hereof, although it pleased God to pardon *David* for his life, which remission the Prophet *Nathan* pronounced; yet hee delivered him Gods justice together with his mercy in the tenour following; *Now therefore the sword shall never depart from thy house, &c. because thou hast taken his wife to be thy wife, & hast slain Uriah with the sword of the children of Ammon.* Soon after this, *David* lost the child of adulterie which he begot on *Bersheba*. Secondly, his own son *Amnon*, being in love with his half sister *Thamar*, by the advice of his cousin-german the sonne of *Shimeah* *David's* brother, posselt her by force; which when hee had performed, he thrust her from him in a careless and despitefull manner. Two years after which foul and incestuous act, *Abshalom* caused him to be murdered, at the feast of his sheep-shearing: not perchance in revenge of *Thamar's* ravishment alone; but having it in his heart to usurp the Kingdome, in which, because he could not in any sort be assured of *Amnon*, he thought his affairs greedily advanced by his destruction. So the one brother having ravished his own sister, and then despised her; the other after a long dissembled malice first made his own brother drunken, and then slaughtered him, which done, he fled away, and lived under the safeguard of *Talmai* King of *Geshur*, neer *Damascus*, who was his grandfather by the mother, but a heathen King. Thirdly, when *Abshalom* by the invention of *Joab* (but chiefly because of the great affection of *David* towards his sonne) was brought again, first to the Kings favour, and then to his presence; he began instantly to practise against *David* his father, seeking by the pretence of common justices, and by lowly and familiar manner to all men, and by detracting from his fathers equities to win unto himself a popular reputation. Here began the great affliction, threatened by the Lord as a punishment of *David's* sinne. The company which *Abshalom* gathered at the first were but 200 men: which he carried with him from *Jerusalem* to *Hebron*, pretending; though impiously, the performance of a vow to God. There when *Achishophel* repaired unto him, and many troops of

Q9 2

people

people from all places, he proclaimed himself King, & was by the people (whose hearts God had turned from their lawfull Prince) accepted so readily, that David doubting to be set upon on the sudden, durst not trust himself in his own Citie of *Jerusalem*, nor in any other walled town for fear of surprize: but incamped in the fields and deserts with some 600. of his guard, and few else. The Priests hee left in *Jerusalem* with the Ark of God, from whom he desired to be advertised of those things that chanced; to whom he directed *Hushai* his trustie friend, and servant, praying him to make himself in all his outward actions and counsells of *Absalom*s party and confederacy, thereby the better to discover unto him the purposes of *Achitophel*, a revolting Counsellour, whose practises be greatly doubted. And now when treason was in fashion, *Ziba* also sought to betray his master *Mephiboseth* the son of *Jonathan*: And *Shimei* of the house of *Saul* (the fire of whose hatred *David*s prosperity had smothered, but his adversity illighted) holding himself upon the advantage of a mountain side, cast stones at *David*, and most despitfully cursed him to his face: but *David* attending no private revenges, forbade *Abishai* to pursue him for the present, yet left him among others in the roll of his revenge, to his sonne *Salomon*: *Absalom* being now posselt of *Jerusalem*, was advised by *Achitophel* to use his fathers concubines in some such publike place, as all *Israel* might assure themselves, that he was irreconcilable to his father: whereof being perswaded, they would then resolutely adhere to *Absalom* and his cause, without fear of being given up upon a reconciliation between them. This salvage and impious (though crafty counsell) *Achitophel* indeed urged for his own respect, as fearing that this rebellion might take end to his destruction, who most of all other inflamed *Absalom* against his father. And now was it fulfilled that *Nathan* had directly foretold *David*: I will raise up evil against thee out of thine own house, and will take thy wives before thine eyes, and give them unto thy neighbour, and he shall lye with thy wives in the sight of the Sunne: for thou diddest it secretly, but I will doe this thing before all *Israel*, and before the Sunne. He also gave advice to *Absalom*, that himself with an armie of 12000. men might be employed at the instant for the surprizing of *David*; which had willingly been embraced by *Absalom*, had not *Hushai* *David*s faithfull servant given counter-advice, and stayed it: perswading *Absalom* that it was fitter and more safe for him with all the strength of *Israel* to pursue his father, than by such a troop, which *David*s valour and those of his attendants might either indanger or resist. This delay in *Absalom*, and advantage of time gained by *David*, was indeed, after God, the losse of the one, and delivery of the other. Whereupon *Achitophel* rightly fearing (by the occasion fore-shewed) the success which followed, disposed of his own estate, and then forsook both the party and the care of *Absalom*, and of his own life.

*David* being advertised of this enterprize against him, marched away all night, and past *Jordan*, possessing himself of *Mahanaim* in the Tribe of *Gad*: the same wherein *Mephiboseth* himself in the war against *David* after *Saul*s death seated himself. To which place there repaired unto him *Shobi* the son of *Nahash* the *Ammonite*, whom *David* loved, the same which *Josephus* calleth *Shiphar*. And though it be greatly disputed, what this *Shobi* was, yet the most generall and probable opinion makes him a second brother to *Hanani*, whom *David* for his fathers sake established in the Kingdome, after *Hanani*s overthrow: in thankfulness whereof hee relieved *David* in this his extremity. There came also to *David*s assistance *Machir* of *Lodabar*, Guardian in former times to *Mephiboseth*, and among others *Barzillai* the *Gileadite*, who willingly fed *David* and all his companie.

In the mean time both the King and *Absalom* prepared to fight; *Absalom* made *Amasa* Commander of the armie of *Israel*, the same place which *Joab* held with *David*; an office next the King himself, like unto that of the Mayors of the Palace anciently in *France*. *David*, perswaded by his companie, stayed in *Mahanaim*, & disposed the forces hee had to *Joab*, *Abishai*, and *Ittai*, giving them charge in the hearing of all that issued out of the port of *Mahanaim*, that they should spare the life of *Absalom*. But *Joab*, besides that he was very cruell by nature, remembered that *Absalom* had lately disposed of his government to *Amasa*, and therefore the victory being obtained, and news brought him that *Absalom* hung by the hair of his head on a tree, when he could not perswade the messenger to return and kill him, hee himself with his own servants dispatch him.

It appeared also by the sequell that *Joab* affected *Adonijah* whom he afterward acknowledged, *David* yet living; and fearing the disposition of *Absalom*, he embraced the present advantage offered.

Hereof, together with newes of the victorie, when knowledge was brought to *David*, he mourned and sorrowed, not only as a man that had lost a sonne, but as one that had outlived all his worldly ioyes, and seene euerie delight of life interred. For hee so hid himselfe from his people, as those which hoped for honour and reward after so great a victorie, couered themselves also in the citie, as if they had committed the greatest offences, and had rather deserved death than recompence. Whereupon *Joab* presenting himselfe before *David*, perswaded him to dissemble his sorrow for the present, and to shew himselfe to the armie. For first, he told him that hee had discountenanced his faithfull seruants; who had that day preferred his life; inferring that nothing could be more dangerous to a King, than not onely not to acknowledge so great a loue and constancie in his people, who being but few in number, did yet resolutely expose themselves to great perils for his sake: but on the contrarie, grieve and lament at their good successe. For, no doubt, they might all haue bought their peace of *Absalom* at an easie rate. Secondly, he urged that it was generally beleued, that hee loued his enemies & hated his friends; and that hee witnessed by this his mourning, that hee had not anie respect of his Princes, and others his faithfull seruants, but would more haue ioyed if they had all perished, and *Absalom* lived, than in the victorie by their faithfulness and approved valour gotten.

Lastly, hee vied this preualent argument, That if the King came not out and shewed himselfe publickly to his men of warre, that they would all that verie night abandon him, and returne; concluding with this fearefull threatening, And that will be worse unto thee than all the evil that fell on thee from thy youth hitherto. By these over-bold and arrogant speeches (though perchance vttered with a good intent) *Joab* raised *David* from his bed of sorrow, and brought him to the gates of the citie among the people, whom hee lifted of his loue and affection, especially *Amasa*, who commanded the armie of *Absalom*, to whom hee promised the office of Lieutenantship; the same which *Absalom* had given him; and which *Joab* now enjoyed. For *David* doubted, that if *Amasa* were not satisfied, he might draw from him a great part of the strength of *Israel*, now vnder his commandement.

This done, the King marched towards *Jordan* homeward, where in his passage hee pardoned *Shimei*, who had lately reviled him to his face: but this remission was but exterrall, as appeared afterward. He also accepted of *Mephiboseth*s excuse, whom *Ziba* had fallily accused and betrayed.

He also intreated *Barzillai* the *Gileadite*, his late liberall Oast, to follow him to *Jerusalem*, that he might reward his seruice done him; who excusing himselfe by his age, appointed his sonne *Chimham* to attend the King.

At *Gilgal* on this side *Jordan*, all the Tribes assembled; and after some contention which of them ought to haue most interest in *David*, the Armie brake, & *David* returned to *Jerusalem*. But *Sheba* the son of *Bichri*, a *Beniamite*, of the faction of the house of *Saul*, finding some discontent among the *Israelites*, withdrew them from *David*, as from a stranger in whom they had no interest, and it seemed that manie of the people of the out Tribes, and in effect of all but *Juda*, bare still a good affection to the issues of their first King. *David* employed his reconciled Captaine *Amasa*, to give him contentment, and to witness his trust, as also because hee conceived that *Amasa* had interest in those reuolts of *Israel* more than *Joab* had. Hee received commandement from *David* to assemble the Armie within three dayes; which hee foretold; but being on ward on his way, *Abishai*, *Joab*s brother, was sent after him, with *David*s guard and best Souldiers, whom also *Joab* accompanied: and ouertaking *Amasa* neere *Gibeon*, pretending to embrace him, gaue him a wound, whereof hee fell dead; being no lesse zealous of *Amasa* than he was of *Abner*, whom he murdered, in the same manner, and out of the same impetuous ambition. This done, hee pursued *Sheba*; and finding him inclosed in *Abel*, assaulted the citie with that furie, that the citizens by the perswasions of a wife woman there inhabiting, cut off *Sheba*s head, and flung it to *Joab* over the walls: which done, hee retrained his Armie to *Jerusalem*, and commanded, as before, all the Host of *Israel*.







and jewels, heartily reioycing in the advancement of so religious a worke. This businesse being so well dispatched, a solemne feast with great sacrifice was made, at which time *Salomon* was againe anointed King, & received fealtie of all the Princes & people of the Land, & of all the Princes his brethren, the sonnes of King *Dauid*. *Salomon* being thus established King, his Father *Dauid* finding himselfe euen in the hands of death, first exhorted his sonne to exercise the same courage and strength of minde, which himselfe had done in all his attempts: and to the end that a happy end might follow the beginning of all his enterprizes, he vttered these mighty words; *Take heed to the charge of the Lord thy God, to walke in his wayes, and keepe his statutes, and his commandments, and his iudgements, and his testimonies, as it is written in the Law of Moses, &c.* to the performance of which, GOD fastened the succession, and prosperitie of his issues. For this done (saith GOD himselfe) *Thou shalt not want one of thy posteritie to sit upon the Throne of Israel.*

Secondly, he aduised him concerning *Ioshab*, who out of doubt had serued *Dauid* from the first assault of *Ierusalem* to the last of his warres, with incomparable valour and fidelitie, sauing that he fastened himselfe to *Adonijah* (his master yet liuing) & thereby vexed him in his feeble age. But as God hath left cruelty vnreueged, so was it his will that *Ioshab* should drinke of the same cup, whereof he hath enforced other men to taste, & suffer the same violence which himselfe had vniuently strooken others withall. *Qui gladii percussit, gladio peribit*: for he had bereaued *Abner* & *Amasa* of their liues, hauing against the one the pretence onely of his brothers slaughter, whom *Abner* had slaine in the time of warre, and could not auoyd him: against the other but a meere ialousie of his growing great in the fauour of *Dauid*. And though *Ioshab* assured himselfe that *Abner* & *Amasa* being dead, there was none left either to equall him or supplant him, yet God (deriding the policies of wicked men) raised vp *Benhadad* the sonne of *Iehoiadab*, to pull him from the Sanctuary, and to cut him in peeces. For *Dauid* giueth this cause to *Salomon* against *Ioshab*, that he slue the Captaines of the hoste of *Israel*, and shed blood of battell in peace, and to this apparant & iust cause, it is not improbable but that *Dauid* remembered the ill affection of *Ioshab* towards *Salomon*, which *Ioshab* made manifest by the vtimately setting vp of *Adonijah*, *Dauid* yet liuing. Some other offence *Ioshab* had committed against *Dauid*, of which in these words he put his sonne *Salomon* in minde; *Thou knowest also what Ioshab the sonne of Seruiath did to me, &c.* Now whether this were meant by the killing of *Abshalom*, contrary to the Kings desire, or by the proud words vsed to him when he mourned in *Mahanaim* for *Abshalom*; or whether it were the publishing of *Dauid*'s letter vnto him for the killing of *Uriah*, thereby to disgrace *Salomon* as descended of such a mother, the Scriptures are silent. True it is; that those great men of warre doe oftentimes behaue themselves exceeding insolently towards their Princes, both in respect of their seruice done, as also because they flatter themselves with an opinion, that either their masters cannot misse them, or that they dare not offend them. But this kinde of pride hath overthrowne manie a worthy man otherwise deserving great honour and respect.

He also gaue order to *Salomon* to rid himselfe of *Shimei*, who not long before had cast stones at *Dauid*, and cursed him to his face. And albeit by reason of his oath and promise *Dauid* spared *Shimei* all the time himselfe liued, yet being dust and in the graue, he slew him by the hand of *Salomon* his sonne. Hence it seemeth that King *Henry* the seventh of England had his patterne, when he gaue order to *Henry* the eighth to execute *Poll* as soone as himselfe was buried, hauing made promise to the King of Spaine when he deliuered *Poll* vnto him, that while he liued he would neuer put him to death, nor suffer violent hands to be laid vpon him.

And yet did not the execution of *Ioshab* yeeld vnto *Salomon* any such great profit or assistance as he hoped for. For he found a young *Adad* of *Idumaea*, & *Resin* of *Damascus* to vex him: who, as the Scriptures witness, were emboldened to enterprize vpon *Salomon*, hearing that *Dauid* slept with his fathers, and that *Ioshab* the Captaine of the Host was dead. Now when *Dauid* had reigned in all fortie yeares, to wit, in *Hebron* 7. yeares, and in *Ierusalem* three and thirty, he died:

For his person, he was of small stature, but exceeding strong. For his internal gifts and graces he farre exceeded all other men, as putting his humane frailtie apart, he was said by God himselfe to be a man according to his owne heart. The Psalmes which he wrote, witness his pietie and his excellent learning: of whom *Hierome* to

*Paulinus*:

*Paulinus*: *Dauid* *Simonides* *noster*, *Pindarus*, & *Alcaeus*, *Flaccus*, *quoque* *Catullus*, & *Serenus*, *Christum* *lyra* *personat*, & in *dechachordo* *Psalterio* *ab inferioris* *suauitate* *resurgens*; *Dauid* (saith he) our *Simonides*, *Pindarus*, *Alcaeus*, *Horace*, *Catullus* and *Serenus*, hee playeth *Christ* on his *Harp*, and on a ten-stringed *Psalter* hee raiseth him up rising from the dead. And being both a King and a Prophet, he foretellet *Christ* more lightly and lively than all the rest.

The booke of the Psalmes, saith *Glycas*, was diuided, ordered and distinguished by *Ezekias*: but whether all the Psalmes were written by *Dauid*, it is diuersly disputed. For *Athanasius*, *Cyprian*, *Lyranus*, and others conceiue diuers Authors answering the titles of the severall Psalmes, as *Moses*, *Salomon*, and the rest hereafter named; and that onely 73. Psalmes were composed by *Dauid* himselfe, namely, those which are intituled *ipsius Dauid*. For the 50. and the 72. with the ten that follow, are bestowed on *Asaph* the son of *Barachias*, eleven other on the sons of *Korath*, and eleven are ascribed to *Moses*, to wit, the 89. and the ten following, and so they are intituled in the old Hebrew Copies, though the vulgar and Septuagint (three excepted) stile them otherwise. The supposed nine Authors of these Psalmes which *Dauid* wrote not, *Sixti Senensis* nameth as following, *Salomon*, *Moses*, (whom *Aben Ezra*, contrary to *Hierome*, maketh one of *Dauid*'s singers) *Asaph*, *Ethan*, *Ezra*, *Eman*, *Ezraira*, *Idithum*, and the three sons of *Chore*. But *S. Chrysostome* makes *Dauid* the sole Author of all the Psalmes, and so doth *S. Augustine*, reasoning in this manner: Although (saith he) some there are that ascribe those Psalmes onely to *Dauid*, which are over-written *ipsius Dauid*, and the rest intituled *ipsi Dauid*, to others, this opinion, (saith he) *Vox Evangelica* *Saluatoris* is *ipsius refutatur*, ubi ait quod *ipsi Dauid* in *spiritu* *Christum* *dixerit* *esse* *sum* *Domnum*, *quoniam* *Psalmus* *109. sic incipit*, *Dixit Dominus Domino meo*, *Sede a dextris meis*, &c. The voyce of the Gospell refutes this opinion, where it saith, that *Dauid* himselfe in the spirit called *Christ* his Lord; because the 109. Psalm begins thus: *The Lord said vnto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand*, &c. Lastly, his testimonies are used both by *Christ* and the Apostles, and hee was as a pattern to all the Kings and Princes that succeeded him.

His Story, and all his particular actions, were written by the Prophets, *Samuel*, *Nathan*, and *Gad*, as it is in the first of *Chron.* 29. vers. 19. For the severall parts of the books of *Samuel* which intreat chiefly of *Dauid*, were, as it seems, written by these three holy men.

*Constantine Manasses* hath an opinion, that the Trojans during the time of the siege sought for succour from *Dauid*, and that he stayed neuter in that warre. But it seemeth that *Manasses* did miscast the time 'twixt *Dauid* and the Trojan warre. For it is generally received that Troy fell between the times of *Abdon* and *Sampson* Judges of *Israel*, about the worlds year 2848. and *Dauid* died in the year 2991.

#### 6. IX. of the treasures of *Dauid* and *Salomon*.

His treasures were exceeding great. For it is written in the 22. of the first of *Chronicles*, that he left *Salomon* for the building of the Temple a hundred thousand talents of gold, and a thousand thousand talents of silver, and of brasse and yron passing all weight; which is more than any King in the world possesse besides himselfe, and his sonne, to whom he left it. For it amounteth to three thousand three hundred thirty & three cartload, and a third of a cartload of silver, allowing two thousand weight of silver or six thousand pound sterling to every cartload, besides three score and seventeen millions of French Crowns, or of our money twenty three millions and a thousand pound: a matter, but for the testimony of the Scriptures, exceeding all belife. For that any riches were left him, it doth not appear, seeing that the Judges had not any treasure, nor any sovereign power to make Levies; but when they went to the wars they were followed by such voluntaries as the severall tribes by turns gave them: seeing also that *Saul* who was of a mean parentage, and perpetually vexed and invaded by the Philistines, could not in all likelihood gather great riches (if any at all) his Territories being exceeding narrow, and thereof the better part possesse by his enemies.

Therefore it were not amisse to consider how *Dauid* within the space of not very many years, might amasse up such mighty treasures. For though parsimony be it selfe great

great revenue, yet needs there must have been some other great means. It seems that he made the uttermost profit of all that he had, that was profitable. *Eusebius* in his 9. book and last chapter de *Preparatione Evangelica*, citeth the words of *Eupolemus*, who reporteth that *David*, among other preparations for the Temple, built a Navie in *Melanis* (or, as *Vallalpandus* corrects it, *Achanis*) a city of *Arabia*, and from thence sent men to digge for gold in the Iland *Urpe*, which *Ortelius* thinks was *Ophir*, though *Eupolemus* digge for gold in this place of *Eusebius* (erring perhaps in this circumstance) saith that this Iland is in the red Sea: from whence, saith this *Eupolemus*, they brought gold into *Jury*. *Pineda* l. 4. de *Rebus Salomonis*, c. 1. thinks that *David* did this way also enrich himself, and citeth this testimonie of *Eupolemus*: and yet certainly *David* had many other wayes to gather riches. Much land doubtlesse he gained by conquest from the *Canaanites* and *Philistines*, besides those fruitfull vallies neer *Jordan* in *Trachonitis* and *Basan*, and the best of *Syria*, and other countries bordering the *Israelites*. These demaines belike he kept in his own hands, and with his infinite number of captives, which he took in his warres, which were not able to redeem themselves, husbanded those grounds for his greatest advantage. For it is written, 1 *Chro.* 17. that *Jehonathan* was over his treasures in the field, in the villages, in the cities, in the towns; that *Ezer* was over the labourers that tilled the ground, *Simeï* over the vineyards, and *Sabdi* over the store of the wine; *Baal Hannan* over the olive trees, and *Joab* over the store of the oyle: also that he had herd-men that had charge over his cattell, both in the high lands and in the plains, over his Sheep, Camels and Asses. And this custome of enriching themselves by husbandrie and cattell, the ancient Kings every where held, both before and after *David's* time. For wee read of *Pharaoh*, that hee spake to *Joseph* to appoint some of his brethren, or of their servants, to be rulers over his cattell. Wee read of *Uzzia*, that he loved husbandrie, had much cattell, and plough-men, and dressers of Vines: likewise wee read it in all Greek Poets, that the wealth of the ancient Kings did specially consist in their Herds and Flocks; whereof it were needlesse to cite *Angeas* and *Admetus*, or any other for examples, the rule holding true in all. Now concerning *David* it is not unlikely, but that those captives which were not employed in husbandrie, were many of them used by him in all sorts of gainfull professions, as the ancient Romans in like manner used their slaves.

Gen. 47.  
2 Chron. 26.

1 Chron. 21.

Numb. 31. 27.

To these profits (besides the tributes and impositions, which doubtlesse were great, and besides the innumerable presents which yearly were brought him, or extraordinarily sent him, by *Tobu* and others) wee may adde the great spoiles which hee found in the Cities and Countries which hee conquered: also the head money which hee gathered per legem capitacionis; By the law of capitacion, or head money, every man rich or poor paying half a sicke of the Sanctuary, which is about as much as fourteen pence, and so in all it amounted to a wondrous summe in that Kingdome: wherein one thousand thousand five hundred and seventie thousand fighting men were numbred by *Joab*. Now although this law of capitacion bee thought by some very learned, not to have been perpetuall (which opinion of theirs nevertheless they confesse is against the Hebrew expolitions) yet *David* upon this occasion is not unlikely to have put it in practise. And by these means might hee be able to leave those huge treasures to *Salomon*. Yet it may seem that of this great masse of gold and silver left by *David*, the least part was his own in private; and so will it appear the lesse wonderfull that hee left so much. Of his own liberalitie wee find, that hee gave to the building of the Temple three thousand talents of gold, and seven thousand talents of silver: a great summe, but holding a very small proportion to the other. Wherefore we are to consider, that the treasures of the Sanctuary it self were exceeding great, as needs they must have been, having received continuall encrease, without any losse or diminution ever since the time of *Moses* and *Joshuah*. The revenues of the Sanctuary (besides all manner of riches and oblations, which defrayed the daily expences, and maintained the Priests and Levites) were partly raised out of the head money before mentioned; partly out of the spoiles gotten in warre. For all the bootie was divided into two parts, whereof the Souldiers had one, and the people which remained at home, had the other half; whereby all the country received benefit of the victory, yet so, that the Souldiers had a farre greater proportion than the rest, as being fewer, and therefore receiving more for every single share.

Out

Out of this purchase was deducted the Lords tribute, which was one in fiftie, of that which the people received, and one in five hundred, of that which was given to the Souldiers; namely, one hundred and one thousand part of the whole bootie. So in the spoil of *Midian*, thirty two thousand women being taken, the Armie had sixteen thousand of them for slaves, and the Congregation had other sixteen thousand; but out of the sixteen thousand given to the Armie, were exempted two and thirty for the Lords tribute: Out of the peoples number were taken three hundred and twenty. By this means, the lesser that the Armie was which had exposed it self to danger, the greater profit had every Souldier; but when it consisted of many hands, they who remaining at home were faine to undergoe more than ordinarie travell in domestical affaires, did receive by so much the greater portion. But the Lords tribute was always certain, yea many times it was increased, either by some speciall commandement, as when all the gold, and silver, and other metalls found in *Jerico*, were consecrated unto God; or by thankfulnessse of the Rulers and People, as when after the victorie obtained against the *Midianites* without the losse of one man, all Jewells, Bracelets, Earrings, and the like, were offered up, as voluntarie presents.

Numb. 31. 40.

Jos. 6. 19.

Numb. 31. 50.

Now howsoever the *Israelites* were many times oppressed, and troden down by other Nations, yet were not these treasures robbed or spoiled; for the enemies never gat possession of the Tabernacle that was in *Shilo*. Wherefore it cannot otherwise be, than that the wealth of the Sanctuary must have been exceeding great; as containing above one hundredth part of all the money and other goods found by the *Israelites* in the whole Land of *Canaan*; and of all that was purchased by so many victories, as they obtained against the bordering Nations. For that this treasure was not defrauded of the due portion, it is evident; seeing that before the time of *David* and his Lieutenant *Joab*, it is recorded that *Saul* and *Abner*, and before them *Samuel*, had used to dedicate of the spoiles obtained in war, to maintain the house of the Lord: the like whereof may be well presumed of the former Judges and Captains of other Ages. Certain it is, that the Conquest of *David* brought into the Land far greater abundance of riches, than any former victories had purchased, those of *Joshua* perhaps excepted: but these vast summes of an hundred thousand Talents of silver, may seem rather to have been made up, by the addition of his winnings and liberalitie, to the treasures laid up in many former Ages, than to have been the meer fruits of his own industrie.

1 Chron. c. 4.  
v. 27. & 28.

Now concerning the riches of *Salomon*, it is more manifest how he gathered them: for he received of yearly revenues with his tributes 666. Talents of gold, besides the Customs of Spices. He had also fix rich Returns from the East India, which greatly increased his store. For his ships performed that voyage every three years, and he began that trade in the two and twentieth year of his reigne, and ruled fortie years. Besides this, all *Judea* and *Israel* were now mastered to his hands; all the *Arabians* his borderers, the *Syrians* of *Zobah*, of *Damascena*, of *Palmyrena*, of *Ituræa*; all of *Idumæa*, *Moab*, and *Ammon*, paid him tribute; as likewise did the *Hittites*, who with the *Perizzites*, *Hivites*, *Jeubistes*, and other races of the *Canaanites*, were now as yet extinguished, though subjected.

A Talent of gold is 770. French crowns.  
1 King. 10. 14.

1 King. c. 9.  
v. 20. & 10.  
v. 29.

Into this flourishing estate was the Kingdome of *Israel* reduced by *David*, who after 40. years reign, and 70. years of life, dyed in a good age, full of daies, riches, & honour, and was buried in the Citie of *David*. It is written by *Josephus* that there was hid in *David's* Tombe a marvellous quantitie of treasures, inasmuch as *Hircanus* (who first of the *Chasmanas*, or race of *Macchabees*, called himself King) one thousand and three hundred years after, drew thence three thousand Talents, to rid himself of *Antiochus* then besieging *Jerusalem*; & afterward *Herod* opening another Cell, had also an exceeding masse of gold and silver therein. And it was an ancient custome to burie treasure with the dead. So the *Peruvians* and other *Americans* did the like, which being discovered by the *Spaniards*, they enriched themselves by nothing so much in their first Conquest. That *Salomon* did burie so much treasure in his fathers grave, it would hardly be believed, in regard of the great exactions with which hee was faine to burthen the people, notwithstanding all the riches which hee got otherwise, or which were left unto him: were it notwithall considered that his want of money grew from such magnificent employments. Particularly of the Sepulchre of *David* the Scriptures have no mention, but only the Sepulchres of the Kings of *Juda*, as of an honourable place of buriall. Yet the Monuments,

Chro. 29. 28.

Jos. 6. 19.  
v. 29.

Peregrinat.  
Hierofof. D. 2.  
Cb. 18. 2.  
Epiſt. 1.

Monuments of theſe Kings, as (by relation of the Duke of *Ulrica*) they remained within theſe thirty years, and are like to remain ſtill, are able to make report credible of the coſt beſtowed upon them.

S. X.

Of the *Philiftims*, whom David abſolutely maſtered: and of ſundry other contemporaries with David.

**O**F the *Philiftims*, whoſe pride David was the firſt that abſolutely maſtered, in this concluſion of David's time ſomewhat here may be ſpoken.

They deſcended of *Caſſoim*, who, according to *Iſidor* and *Joſephus*, was one of the ſonnes of *Mifraim*, and was furnamed *Philiftim*, as *Eſau* was furnamed *Edom*, and *Jacob* *Iſrael*. There were of them five Cities or petty principalities, namely, *Axozus*, or *Aſdod*, *Gaza* or *Aczaph*, *Aſcalon*, *Geth* or *Gath*, and *Accaron*. It ſeemeth that *Caſſoim* was the firſt founder of this Nation, becauſe of his kindred on either hand, the *Canaanites* and the *Egyptians*.

The firſt King of theſe *Philiftims*, which the Scriptures have named, was that *Abimelech* which loved *Sara*, *Abrahams* wife.

The ſecond *Abimelech* lived at once with *Iſaac*, to whom *Iſaac* repaired in the time of famine, *Abimelech* then reſiding at *Gerar*, in the border of *Idumæa*, which *Abimelech* fancied *Iſaac* his wife, as his father had done *Sara*.

After *Abimelech* the ſecond, the *Philiftims* Kings are not remembered in the Scriptures, till David's time: perhaps the government was turned into *Ariſtocratical*. For they afterwards named Princes of the *Philiftims*, howſoever *Achis* be named King of *Gath*, the ſame to whom David fled, and who again gave him *Siklag* to inhabit in *Sauls* time.

After him we read of another *Achis* who lived with *Salomon*, to whom *Shimei* travelled to fetch back his fugitive ſervant, what time the ſeeking of his ſervant was the loſſe of his life. *Jeremie* the Prophet ſpeaketh of the Kings of *Paleſtin* or *Philiftim*. *Amos* nameth the King of *Aſcalon* *Zacharias*, a King of *Gaza*. The reſt of the wars of the *Philiftims* are remembered in the Catalogue of the *Judges*, of *Saul* and *David*, and ſo therefore I ſhall not need to collect the particulars in this place.

There lived at once with *David*, the third of the *Silvii* King of *Alba*, called *Latinus Silvius*, who is ſaid to have ruled that part of *Italy* fifty years. And about his fourteenth year *Codrus* the laſt King of the *Athenians* died, to whom ſucceeded the firſt Prince of thoſe, who being called after *Medon*, *Medontide*, without regall name governed *Athens* during their life.

The reaſons which moved the *Athenians* to change their government, were not drawn from any inconvenience found in the rule of ſovereignty, but in honour of *Codrus* only. For when the *Græcians* of *Doris*, a region between *Phocis*, & the mountain of *Oeta*, fought counſell from the Oracle, for their ſucceſſe in the warres againſt the *Athenians*, it was answered, that then undoubtedly they ſhould prevail and become Lords of that State, when they could obtain any victory againſt the Nation, and yet preſerve the *Athenian* King living. *Codrus* by ſome intelligence being informed of this answer, withdrew himſelf from his own forces, and putting on the habit of a common ſouldier, entred the Camp of the *Dorians*, and killing the firſt he encountered, was himſelf forthwith cut in pieces.

*Eupales* the 31. King of *Aſſyria*, which others account but the 30. began to rule that Empire, about the 13. year of *David*, and held it 38. years.

Neer the ſame time began *Ixion* the ſecond King of the *Heraclids*, the ſonne of *Euriſthenes* in *Corinth*; and *Agis* the ſecond of the *Heraclids* in *Lacedæmon*: in honour of whoſe which *Agis*, his ſucceſſors were called *Agida*, for many years after. Hee reſtored the *Laconians* to their former libertie: he overcame the Citizens of *Helos* in *Laconia*, who had reſuſed to pay him tribute: he condemned them and theirs to perpetual ſlavery; whereof it came, that all the *Meſſenians*, whom at length they brought into the like bondage, were after call *Helots*.

In like ſort from the *Sclavi* came the world *Slave*. For when that Nation iſſuing out of *Sarmatia*, now called *Ruſſia*, had ſeized upon the country of *Illyria*, & made it their own by conqueſt, their victory pleaſed them ſo highly, that thereupon they called themſelves by

by a new name, *Slavos*, which is in their language *Glorious*. But in after times (that war-mer Climate having thawed their northern hardineſs, and not ripened their wits) when they were trodden down, and made ſervants with their neighbours, the *Italians* which kept many of them in bondage, began to call all their bondmen *Slaves*, uſing the word as a name of reproach: in which ſenſe it is now current through many countries.

Other Chronologers make this *Agis* the third King of *ſparta*, and ſomewhat later, about the 23. year of *David*, and ſay, that *Acheſtratus* was the fourth King of this race, the ſame whom *Eufebius* calls *Labotes*, and ſets him in the thirteenth year of *Salomon*. *Eufeb.* in *clue.*

In the tenth year of *Acheſtratus*, *Androclus* the third ſonne of *Codrus*, aſſiſted by the *Ionæ*, built *Ephesus* in *Caria*, who after the adjoining of the Ile of *Samos* to his territorie, was ſlain by the *Carians*, whoſe countrie he uſurped. He was buried (ſaith *Pausanias*) in one of the gates of *Ephesus* called *Magnetis*; his armed Statua being ſet over him. *Strabo* reports that after *Androclus* had ſubdued the *Ionians* (the next province to *Ephesus* on the eaſt coaſt of *Aſia* the leſſe) he enlarged his Dominions upon the *Aolæ*, which joyneth to *Ionia*: and that his poſteritie governed the Cities of *Ephesus* and *Erythra* by the name of *Baſilids* in *Strabo* his own time. Of the expedition of the *Ionæ* how they came thither out of *Peloponniſus*, I have ſpoken already upon occaſion of the return of the *Hera-*

clide into *Peloponniſus*, wherein, with the *Doræ*, they expelled the *Achai*, and inhabited their places in that land (though this of the *Ionæ* ſucceeded that of the *Hera-*

clide 100. years. *Plin.* l. 2. c. 18. & l. 7. c. 37.

The City of *Ephesus* became exceeding famous: firſt, for the Temple of *Diana* there, in built, which had in length 425. foot, and 220. in breadth, ſuſtained with 127. pillars of marble, of 70 foot high: whereof 27. were moſt curiouſly graven, and all the reſt of choiſe marble poliſh, the work being firſt ſet out by *Cteſiphon* of *Gmſſos*. Secondly, it became renowned by being one of the fiſt that received the Chriſtian faith, of which *Timothy* was Biſhop; to whom, and to the *Ephesians*, *Saint Paul* wrote his Epistles (ſo intitled). The other City poſſeſt by *Androclus* in *Aolia*, was alſo univerſally ſpoken of by reaſon of *Sibylla*, furnamed *Erythra*, who lived 740. years before Chriſt was born. *S. Auguſtine* avoweth that a Roman Proconſul ſlew him in an antient Greek copie of certain verſes of this Prophetesſe, which began (as *S. Auguſtine* changed them into Latine) in theſe words: *Jeſus Chriſtus Dei Filius, Salvator; Jeſus Chriſt, Son of God, the Saviour.*

About the time that *Joab* beſieged *Rabba* in *Moab*, *Paphres* began to govern in *Egypt*, the ſame that was father in law to *Salomon*, whoſe Epistles to *Salomon*, and his to *Paphres*, are remembered by *Eufebius* out of *Polemon*. In the 21. of *David*, was the City of *Magneſia* in *Aſia* the leſſe founded; the ſame which is ſeated upon the river *Meander*, where *Scipio* gave the great overthrow to *Antiochus*. In this territorie are the beſt horſes of the leſſer *Aſia* bred, whereof *Lucan*:

*Et Magnetis equis, Minya gens cognita remis.*

About the ſame time *Cuma* in *Campania* was built by the Inhabitants of *Chalcis* in *Eubœa*, according to *Servius*, with whom *Strabo* joyneth the *Cumaans* of *Aolis*, ſaying, that to the one of theſe people the government was given, with condition that the other ſhould give name to the City. Of this *Cuma* was *Ephores* the famous ſcholar of *Iſocrates*. *Eufebius* and *Casiodor* find the building of *Carthage* at this time, to wit, in the 31. year of *David*, but much miſtaken. For the father of *Dido* was *Meinor* the ſon of *Bador*, brother to *Jezabel*, who married *Achab* King of *Iſrael*; and between the death of *David*, and the fiſt of *Achab*, there were waſted about 95. years.

In this time alſo *Acaſtus* lived, the ſecond of the *Athenian* Princes after *Codrus*, which there were thirteen in deſcent before the State changed into a Magiſtracie of ten years. Some writers make it probable, that the *Adians*, led by *Graus*, the grand nephew of *Oreſtes*, poſſeſt the City and Iland of *Thebes* about this time. In the 32. year of *David*, *Hiram* began to reign in *Tyre*, according to *Joſephus*, who ſaith that in his twelfth year *Salomon* began the work of the Temple. But it is a familiar error in *Joſephus*, to miſreckon times, which in this point he doth ſo ſtrangely, as if hee knew not how at all to caſt any account. For it is manifeſt, that *Hiram* ſent Meſſengers, and *Cedars* unto *David*, ſoon after his taking of *Jeruſalem*, which was in the very beginning of *David*'s reign over *Iſrael*, when as yet hee had reigned onely ſeven years in *Hebron* over the houſe of *Juda*. Wherefore it muſt needs be that *Hiram* had reigned above 30. years

*See in Amos, 3. 3. 1. 14.*

*Eufebius* in *clue.*

*Aut. 8. & cum. 4. l. 1.*

*See in Amos, 3. 3. 1. 14.*

*Aut. 8. & cum. 4. l. 1.*

*Aut. 8. & cum. 4. l. 1.*

*Aut. 8. & cum. 4. l. 1.*

years before *Sabinus*, unless more credit should be given to those *Tyrian* records which are cited by *Josephus*, than to the plain words of Scripture, contradicting them. But, that it was the same *Hiram* which lived both with *David* and with *Salomon*, the Scriptures make it plainly manifest. In the first of these, *David* is said to have sent him to *Phoenicia* to fetch him, and in the second, *Salomon* is said to have sent him to *Phoenicia* to fetch him.

## CHAP. XVIII. OF SALOMON.

*Salomon* the son of *David*, of the tribe of *Judah*, was born to *David* and *Bathsheba* the daughter of *Uriah* the Gittite. He was called *Salomon* by the appointment of God: He was also called *Jedidiah*, or *Theophilus*, by *Nathan*, because the Lord loved him.

*Salomon* was brought up under the Prophet *Nathan*, and began to reign over *Judah* and *Israel*, in the year of the World 4000. He was called *Salomon* by the appointment of God: He was also called *Jedidiah*, or *Theophilus*, by *Nathan*, because the Lord loved him. *Hiram* King of *Tyre*, after *Salomon* anointing him, sent his ambassadors towards him, congratulating his establishment: a gift was also sent him, consisting of gold, silver, and precious stones. The beginning of *Salomon* was in blood, though his reign were peaceable. For soon after *David* died, he caused his brother *Adonijah* to be slain by *Bathsheba* the wife of *Uriah*, and by the occasion of *Adonijah* his death, by *Bathsheba*, that the young man might be kept in *David*'s bosom in his later days; to keep him warm: which was a great favour to him. Whatsoever he pretendedly it was enough that *Adonijah* was his elder brother, and sought the Kingdom contrary to the will of *David*, whom God had chosen towards *Salomon*. And yet it is said that a word is enough to the wise, and he that sees but the claw may know whether it be a Lion or no: so it may seem that to the quick-sighted wisdom of *Salomon*, this motion of *Adonijah* was a demonstration of a new rebellion. For they which had been Concubines to a King, might not after be touched by a King: whence *Achitaphel* wished *Absalom* to take his father's Concubines as a part of the Royalty. And *David* after that wrong, determining to touch them no more, did not give them to any other, but shut them up, and they remained widowed until their death. And this it seems was the depth of *Isobab*'s quarrel against *Absalom*; for having his father's Concubine. And some signification of this custome may seem too in the words of God by *Nathan* to *David*: *I have given thee thy Masters house, and thy Masters wives*. And in the words of *Saul* upbraiding *Jonathan*, that he had chosen *David* to the shame of the nakedness of his Mother, because upon perhaps was some reference to this purpose of *Adonijah*, to marry with her that was always present with *David* in his later days, and who belike knew all that was past; for the conveying of the Kingdom to *Salomon*. There may be divers further occasions; as either that he would learn such things by her as might be for the advantage of his ambition, or that he would persuade her to forge some strange tale about *David*'s last Testament, or any thing else that might prejudice the title of *Salomon*.

As for the right of an elder brother which *Adonijah* pretended, though generally it agreed both with the law of Nations, & with the customes of the Jews: yet the Kings of the Jews were so absolute, as they did therein, & in all else, what they pleased. Some examples also they had (though not of Kings) which taught them to use this paternal authority in transferring the birth-right to a younger son: namely of *Isaac* his father, and giving the birth-right (which was twice as much as any portion of the other brethren) to *Joseph*: of whom he made two tribes. And that it was generally acknowledged that this power was in *David*, it appears by the words of *Bathsheba* and *Nathan* to *David*, and of *Jonathan* to *Adonijah*. For as for popular election, that it was necessary to confirm a right that the refusal of the people had authority to frustrate the elder

elder brothers right to the Kingdom, it now here appears in the stories of the *Pharaohs*. It is said indeed that the people made *Saul* King at *Galgai*: that is, they acknowledged and established him. For that he was King long before, no man can doubt. In like manner elsewhere the phrase of choosing or making their King, is to be expounded: as where in the prohibition, that they should not make themselves a King, it is said, *Thou shalt make him King whom the Lord shall choose*.

But to proceed with the acts of *Salomon*: at the same time that he put *Adonijah* to death, he hid himself also of *Joab*, and three years after of *Shimei*, as *David* had advised him: he displaced also the Priest *Abiathar*, who took part with *Adonijah* against him: but in respect of his office, and that he followed *David* in all his afflictions, and because he had born the Ark of God before his Father, he spared his life. And thus being established in his Kingdom, hee tooke the daughter of *Phaphres* King of *Egypt* to Wife: for so *Eusebius*, out of *Eusepius* calls him. He offered a thousand sacrifices at *Gibeon*, where God appearing unto him in a dream, bade him ask what he would at his hands; *Salomon* chooseth Wisdom, which pleased God. And God said unto him, *Because thou hast asked this thing, and hast not asked for thy self long life, neither hast thou asked riches for thy self, nor hast asked the life of thine enemies, behold, I have done according to thy words: by which word may inform our selves, what desires are most pleasing to God, and what not. For the coveting after long life in respect of our selves, cannot but proceed of self-love, which is the root of all impiety: the desire of private riches is an affection of covetousness, which God abhorreth; to affect revenge, is as much as to take the sword out of Gods hand, and to distrust his justice. And in that it pleased God to make *Salomon* know that it liked him, that he had not asked the life of his enemies, it could not but put him in mind of his brothers slaughter, for which he had not any warrant either from *David*, or from the Law of God; but because *Salomon* desired wisdom only, which taught him both to obey God, and to rule men, it pleased God to give him whithall that which he desired not. And I have also given thee (saith God) that which thou hast not asked, both riches and honour. This gift of Wisdom our Commentators stretch to almost all kinds of learning: but that it comprehended the knowledge of the nature of plants and living creatures, the Scripture testifieth; though no doubt the chief excellencie of *Salomon*'s wisdom, was in the knowledge of governing his Kingdom: whence, as it were for an example of his wisdom, the Scripture telleth how soon he judged the controversy between the two harlots.*

### S. II.

#### Of Salomons building and glorie.

He then entred into league with *Hiram* King of *Tyre*, from whom he had much of his materials for the Kings Palace and the Temple of God: for the building whereof he had received a double charge, one from his father *David*, and another from God. For like as it is written of *David*, that he called *Salomon* his sonne, and charged him to build a house for the Lord of *Israel*: so doth *Tostatus* give the force of a divine precept to these words, *Behold, a son is born unto thee, &c. He shall build an house for my Name*.

He began the work of the Temple in the beginning of the fourth year of his reign, at which time also he prepared his fleet at *Eliongabar* to trade for gold in the East Indies, that nothing might be wanting to supply the charge of so great a work. For, that the Temple was in building, while his fleets were passing to and fro, it is manifest. For the pillars of the Temple were made of the Almaggim trees brought from *Ophir*. Of this most glorious building, of all the particulars (whereof the form and example was given by God himself) many learned men have written; as *Salmeron*, *Montanari*, *Ribera*, *Barradas*, *Azorius*, *Villalpandus*, *Pineda*, and others, to whom I refer the Reader.

For the cutting and squaring of the Cedars which served that building, *Salomon* employed 30. thousand Carpenters, 10. thousand every month by course: he also used 80. thousand Masons in the mountain, and 70. thousand labourers that bare burdens, which is conceived, he selected out of the Proselytes, besides three thousand three hundred masters of his work; so as he paid and employed in all, one hundred eighty three thousand and three hundred men; in which number the *Sidonian*, which were farre more skilfull

skilfull in hewing timber than the *Israelites*, may (as I think) be included. For *Hiram* caused his servants to bring down the Cedars and Firres from *Libanon* to the sea, and thence sent them in raffles to *Foppe*, or the next port to *Ferusalem*. For in the second of *Chronicles* the second Chapter, it is plain, that all but the thirty thousand Carpenters, and the over-seers, were strangers, and as it seemeth the vassals of *Hiram*, and of *Vaphres* King of *Egypt*. In recompence of all this timber and stone, *Salomon* gave *Hiram* twenty thousand measures of wheat, and twenty measures of pure oyle yearly. *Eusebius* out of *Eupolemus* in the ninth book of his preparation, the last Chapter, hath left us a Copie of *Salomons* Letter to *Suron* (which was the same as *Hiram* and *Hiram*) King of *Tyre*, in these words:

**R**ex *Salomon* *Suroni*, *Tyri*, *Sydonis*, atque *Phœnicia regi*, Amico paterno salutem. Scias me a Deo magno *David patris mei regnum* accepisse, cumque mihi pater precepit templum Deo, quæ terram creavit, condere, ut etiam ad te scriberem præcepit: Scribitur, et peto a te ut artifices atque fabros ad aedificandum Templum Dei mittere velis.

**K**ing *Salomon* to King *Suron*, of *Tyre*, *Sydon*, & *Phœnicia King*, & my fathers friend, sendeth greeting. Thou may understand that I have received of the great God of my father *David*, the Kingdom: and when my father commanded me to build a Temple to God which created heaven and earth, he commanded also that I should write to you: I write therefore to you, and beseech you, that you would be pleased to send me Artificers and Carpenters to build the Temple of God.

To which the King *Suron* made this answer.

**S**uror, *Tyri*, *Sydonis*, & *Phœnicia Rex*, *Salomoni Regi* salutem. Litteris literis, gratias agi Deo, qui tibi regnum patri tradidit: Et quoniam scribis fabros, ministrosque, ad condendum Templum esse tibi mittendas; misi ad te milia hominum octoginta, & Architectum Tyrium hominem ex matre *Judæa*, virum in rebus architecturæ mirabilem. Curabis igitur ut necessariis non egeant, & Templum Dei condito, ad nos redeant.

**S**uror of *Tyre*, *Sydon* and *Phœnicia King*, to King *Salomon* greeting: When I read your Letters, I gave God thanks who hath installed you in your fathers kingdom. And because you write that Carpenters and Workmen may be sent to build Gods Temple, I have sent you fourscore thousand men, and a Master-builder, a Tyrian, born of a Jewish woman, a man admirable in building. You will be carefull that all necessities be provided for them, a man admirable in building. You will be carefull that all necessities be provided for them, a man admirable in building. You will be carefull that all necessities be provided for them, a man admirable in building.

and when the Temple of God is built, that they come home to us.

The Copies of these Letters were extant in *Josephus* time, as himself affirmeth, and to be seen (saith he) *Tam in nostris quam in Tyriorum annalibus*, as well in our own, as in the *Tyrian annals*. But he delivereth them somewhat in different termes, as the Reader may find in his Antiquities. But were this intercourse between *Salomon* and *Hiram* either by message or by writing, it is somewhat otherwise delivered in the Scriptures, than either *Eupolemus* or *Josephus* set it down, but so, that in substance there is little difference between the one and the other.

The like Letter in effect *Salomon* is said to have written to *Vaphres* King of *Egypt*, and was answered as from *Hiram*.

But whereas some Commenters upon *Salomon*, find that *Hiram* King of *Tyre*, and *Vaphres* King of *Egypt*, gave *Salomon* the title of *Rex magnus*, and cite *Eupolemon* in *Eusebius*, I do not find any such addition of *magnus* in *Eusebius*, in the last chapter of that ninth book; neither is it in *Josephus* in the eighth book and second chapter of the *Jewes Antiquities*: it being a vain title used by some of the *Assyrian* and *Persian* Kings, and cited likewise by the *Parthians*, and many other after them, inasmuch as in later times it grew common, and was usurped by mean persons in respect of the great *Hermus* the first, which was honoured by that name for his noble qualities, as much or more than for his mightiness.

After the finishing and dedication of the Temple and house of the Lord, *Salomon* fortified *Ferusalem* with a treble wall, and repaired *Hazor* which had been the ancient Metropolis of the *Canaanites*, before *Joshua*'s time: so did he *Gaza* of the *Philistines*, he built *Berobon*, *Gerar*, and the *Millo* or munition of *Ferusalem*. For *Pharaoh* (as it seemeth

in favour of *Salomon*) came up into the edge of *Ephraim*, and took *Gerar*, which place the *Canaanites* yet held, and put them to the sword, and burnt their Citie. The place and Territory he gave *Salomons* wife for a dowrie. And it is probable; that because *Salomon* was then busied in his magnificent buildings, and could not attend the war, that he entreated his father in law to rid him of these neighbours, which *Pharaoh* performed. But hee thereby taught the *Egyptians* to visit those parts again before they were sent for; and in his son *Rehoboams* time *Shephach* this mans successor did sack *Ferusalem* it selfe.

*Salomon* also built *Megiddo* in *Manasse*, on this side *Jordan*, and *Balah* in *Dan*: also *Thadmor*, which may be either *Ptolomies Thamor* in the desert of *Juda*, or (as *Josephus* thinks) *Palmira* in the desert of *Syria*; which *Palmyra*, because it stood on the utmost border of *Salomons* dominion to the northeast of *Libanus*, and was of *Davids* conquest when he was *Damascus*, it may seem that *Salomon* therefore bestowed thereon the most cost, and fortified it with the best Art that that age had. *Josephus* calls this place *Thadma-mora*, by which name (saith he) given by *Salomon*, the *Syrians* as yet call it. *Hierom* in his book of Hebrew places, calls it *Thermeth*. In after-times, when it was rebuilt by *Adrian* the Emperour, it was honoured with his name, and called *Adrianopolis*. In respect of this great charge of building, *Salomon* raised tribute through all his Dominions, besides an hundred and twenty talents of gold received from *Hirams* servants; *Salomon* offered *Hiram* twenty towns in or neer the upper *Galilee*, but because they stood in an unfruitfull and marshy ground, *Hiram* refused them, and therefore was the territory called *Chabul*.

These towns, as it is supposed, lay in *Galilee* of the Gentiles, *Non quod Gentes ibi habitarent: sed quia sub ditione regis Gentilis erat*. Not that it was possessed by the Gentiles (saith *Nauclerus*) but because it was under the rule of a King that was a Gentile. Howsoever it were, it is true that *Salomon* in the 21. year fortified those places which *Hiram* refused. Further, he made a journey into *Syria* *Zobah*, and established his tributes; the first & last warre (if in that expedition he were driven to fight) that he made in person in all his life. Hee then visited the border of all his Dominions, passing from *Thadmor* to the North of *Palmyrena*, and so to the Desarts of *Idumæa*, from whence he visited *Ezion-gaber* and *Eloth* the uttermost place of the South of all his Territories, bordering to the red sea: which Cities I have described in the Story of *Moses*.

### S. III.

Of *Salomons* sending to *Ophir*, and of some seeming contradictions about *Salomons* riches, and of *Pineda*'s conceit of two strange passages about *Africk*.

**H**ere *Salomon* prepareth his Fleet of ships for *India*, with whom *Hiram* joyned in that voyage, and furnished him with Mariners and Pilots, the *Tyrians* being of all other the most expert seamen. From this part of *Arabia* which at this time belonged to *Edom*, and was conquered by *David*, did the Fleet passe to the *East-India*, which was not farre off, namely, to *Ophir*, one of the Islands of the *Moluccas*, a place exceeding rich in gold: witnesse the *Spaniards*, who notwithstanding all the abundance which they gather in *Peru*, doe yet plant in those Islands of the East at *Manilla*, and recover a great quantity from thence, and with lesse labour than they do in any one part of *Peru*, or new *Spain*.

The return which was made by these Ships amounted to four hundred and twenty talents, but in the second of *Chronicles* the eighth, it is written 450. talents: whereof 30. talents went in expence for the charge of the Fleet, and wages of men, and 420. talents, which makes five and twenty hundred and twenty thousand Crowns, came cleer. And thus must those two places be reconciled. As for the place *Reg. 10. 14.* which speaketh of six hundred sixty and six talents of gold; that summe, as I take it, is of other receipts of *Salomons* which were yearly, and which came to him, besides those profits from *Ophir*.

My opinion of the land of *Ophir*, that it is not *Peru* in *America* (as divers have thought) but a Countrey in the *East-Indies*; with some reason why at those times they could not make more speedy return to *Ferusalem* from the *East-Indies*, than in three years; and that *Tharvis* in Scripture is divers times taken for the Ocean, hath been already declared in the first book.



Only it remaineth that I should speak somewhat of *Pineda* his strange conceits, who being a Spaniard of *Betlica*, would fain have *Gades* or *Calis-matis*, in old times called *Tartessus*, which is the Southwest corner of that Province, to bee the *Tharxis* from whence *Salomon* fetcht his gold; for no other reason, as it seems, but for love of his own Country, and because of some affinity of sound between *Tharxis* and *Tartessus*. For whereas it may seem strange that it should be three years ere they that took ship in the Red sea, should return from the *East-Indies* to *Jerusalem*, this hath been in part answered already. And further the intelligent may conceive of sundry lets, in the digging and refining of the metall, and in their other traffick, and in their land-carriages between *Jerusalem* and the Red sea, and perhaps also else-where: so that wee have no need to make *Salomons* men to goe many thousand miles out of their way to *Gades*, round about all *Africk*, that so they might be long a coming home.

For the direct way to *Gades* (which if *Salomon* and the *Israelites* knew not, the *Tyrians* which went with them could not have been ignorant of) was along the Mediterranean sea, and so (besides many wonderfull inconveniences, and terrible navigation in rounding *Africa*) they should have escaped the troublesome land-carriage between *Jerusalem* and the Red sea, through dry, desert, and the theevisht Countreys: and within 30. mile of *Jerusalem* at *Feppe*, or some other haven in *Salomons* own Country, have laden and unladed their ships.

But this direct course they could not hold (saith *Pineda*) because the huge Island of *Atlantis*, in largeness greater than all *Africk* and *Asia*, being swallowed up in the *Atlantic* Ocean, hindred *Salomons* ships from passing through the Straits of *Gibraltar*: for this hee allegeth *Plato* in *Timeo*. But that this calamity happened about *Salomons* time, or that thereby the Straits of *Gades* were filled with mud, and made unpassable, that there could be no coming to *Gades* by the Mediterranean sea; or that this indraught where the sea runneth most violently, and most easily scoureth his channell, should be filled with mud, and not also the great Ocean in like manner, where this huge Island is supposed to have stood; or that *Salomons* ships being in the Red sea, should neglect the golden Mines in the *East-Indies* (which were infinitely better and neerer to the Red sea, than any in *Spain*) to seek gold at *Cadyz* by the way of compassing *Africa*; it is most ridiculous to imagine. For the Spaniard himself that hath also the rich *Peru* in the West, fortieth in the *East-Indies*, and inhabites some part thereof, as in *Manilia*, finding in those parts no lesse quantity of gold, the small territory which hee there possesseth considered) than in *Peru*.

The same *Pineda* hath another strange passage round about all *Africa*, which else-where he dreams of: supposing whereas *Jonas* sailing to *Tharxis* the City of *Cilicia*, was cast out in the Mediterranean sea, and taken up there by a Whale, that this Whale in three dayes swimming above twelve thousand English miles along the Mediterranean seas, and so through the Straits of *Gades*, and along all the huge seas round about *Africa*, cast up *Jonas* upon the shore of the Red sea; that so he might have perhaps some fix<sup>40</sup> miles the shorter (though much the worse) way to *Ninive*. This conceit hee grounds onely upon the ambiguity of the word *Soph*, which oftentimes is an Epitheton of the Red sea (as if we should call it *mare algosum*, the sea full of weeds) for the Red sea. But in *Jonas* c. 2. 5. it is generally taken in the proper signification for weeds, and not as *Pineda* would have it, who in this place against his own rule (which elsewhere he giveth us) supposeth strange miracles without any need. For this long voyage of the Whale, finished in three dayes, is a greater miracle, than the very preservation of *Jonas* in the belly of the Whale: and therefore seeing there is no necessity of this miracle, we tend it back unto him, keeping his own rule, which in this place he forgets; *Miracula non sunt multiplicanda*. And again, *Non sunt miracula gratis danda, nec pro arbitrio nova fingenda*. Miracles are not to be multiplied without necessity, nor delivered without cause, or feigned at pleasure. Therefore we leave this man in his dreams, which (were he not otherwise very learned and judicious) might be thought unworthy the mentioning. But to proceed with our storie of *Salomon*.

The Queen of *Saba*'s coming from farre to *Salomon*, (as seems, from *Arabia Felix*, & not, as some think, from *Ethiopia*) and her rich presents, and *Salomons* reciprocal magnificence, and his resolving of her difficult questions; those are let down at large in the Text. But herein *Josephus* is greatly mistaken, who calls this Queen of *Saba* *Nicaules*,

*Debitus Sal.*  
l. 4. 10. 11.  
As appears he  
took a ship at  
Japho or Jop-  
pe. c. 1. v. 2.

ing. 7.

*Nicaules*, the succesor (saith he out of *Herodotus*) of those thirty and eight *Egyptian* Kings which succeeded *Meneus* the founder of *Memphis*; adding, that after this *Egyptian*, and the father in law of *Salomon*, the name of *Pharaoh* was left off in *Egypt*. For as it is else-where proved that the Queen was of *Arabia*, not of *Egypt* and *Ethiopia*; so were there other *Pharaohs* after the father in law of *Salomon*. Yea, above three hundred years after *Salomon*, *Pharaoh* *Necho* slew *Josias* King of *Juda*.

It is also written of *Salomon*, that he kept in garrisons fourteen thousand Chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen; that he spent in Court every day thirty measures of fine flower, threescore measures of wheat, one hundred sheep, besides stags and fallow Deer, bugles and fowle; four thousand stalls of horses he had for his Chariots and other uses, and for the twelve thousand horsemen of his guard. For, the ten thousand stalls in the first of *Kings* the fourth, are to be taken but for so many horses, whence in the second of *Chronicles* the ninth, it is written but four thousand stalls or teams, and in every teeme ten horses, as *Junius* and the *Geneva* understand it. He was said to be wiser than any men, yea than were *Ethan* the *Ezrahite*, than *Heman*, *Chalcal*, or than *Darda*; to which *Junius* addeth a fift, to wit, *Ezra*. For the *Geneva* maketh *Ethan* an *Ezrahite* by Nation. *Josephus* writes them, *Athan*, *Eman*, *Chalceus* and *Donan* the sons of *Hemon*. Hee spake three thousand Proverbs, and his songs were one thousand and five, whereof either the most part perished in the Captivity of *Babylon*, or hee because many acts of *Salomons* were written and kept among the publick Records of Civill causes, and not Ecclesiasticall, therefore they were not thought necessary to be inserted into Gods Book.

### S. IIII.

Of the fall of *Salomon*, and how long he lived.

Now as he had plenty of all other things, so had hee no scarcity of women. For besides his seven hundred Wives, hee kept three hundred Concubines, and (forgetting that God had commanded that none of his people should accompany the daughters of Idolaters) he took Wives out of *Egypt*, *Edom*, *Moab*, *Ammon*, *Zidon* and *Heth*: and when he fell a doting, his Wives turned his heart after other gods, as *Asteroth* of the *Zidonians*, *Milcom* or *Molech* of the *Ammonites*, and *Chemosh* of *Moab*.

These things God punished by *Adad* of *Idumaea*, *Rezin* of *Damascus*, and by *Feroboa* his own servant, and one of the masters of his works, who by the ordinance of God tare from his son *Roboam*, ten of the twelve parts of all the territorie he had. *Deus dum in peccatores animadvertit, aliorum peccatis utitur, quae ipse non fecit*: God punishing sinners, useth the sins of others, which he himself wrought not.

In the reign of *Salomon* (as in times of long peace) were few memorable actions by him performed, excepting his buildings with other workes of magnificence, and that great *Indian* voyage already mentioned. Fortie years he reigned; how many he lived, it is not written, and must therefore be found only by conjecture. The most likely way to ghesse at the truth in this case is, by considering the actions of *David* before and after *Salomons* birth, whereby we may best make estimation of the years which they consumed, and consequently learn the true, or most likely year of his nativity. Seven years *David* reigned in *Hebron*: in his eighth year hee took *Jerusalem*, and warred with the *Philistims*, who also troubled him in the year following. The bringing home of the Ark seems to have been in the tenth year of *David*, and his intention to build the Temple in the year ensuing, at which time hee had sufficient leisure, living in rest. After this he had warres with the *Philistims*, *Moabites*, *Aramites*, and *Edomites*, which must needs have held him five years, considering the *Aramites* of *Damascus* raised warre against him, after such time as hee had beaten *Hadadezar*; and that in every of these warres, he had the entire victory. Neither is it likely, that these services occupied any longer time, because in those dayes and places there were no wintering camps in use, but at convenient seasons of the year Kings went forth to warre, dispatching all with violence, rather than with temporizing; as maintaining their Armies, partly upon the spoyle of the enemies country, partly upon the private provision which every soldier made for himself. The 17. year of *David*, in which he took *Mephibosheth* the son of *Jonathan*, was the last year of his life.

*San. c. 17.*  
v. 17. 6. 18.



of *Jonathan* into his Court, appeareth to have passed away in quiet; and the year following to have begun the warre with *Ammon*; but somewhat late in the end of Summer perhaps, it came to tryall of a battell (for *Joab* after the victorie, returned immediately to *Jerusalem*) the causes and preparations for that warre, taking up all the Summer. *David*s personall expedition against the *Aramites*, wherein he brought all the tributaries of *Adadezer* under his own allegiance, appears manifestly to have been the next years work, wherein he did cut off all means of succour from the *Ammonites*; all *Syria*, *Moab*, and *Idumaea* being now at his own devotion. By this reckoning it must have been the 20. year of *David*s reign, and about the fiftieth of his life, in which hee sent forth *Joab* to besiege *Rabba*, and finished the warre of *Ammon*: wherein also he fell out the matter of *Uriah*s wife. So one half of *David*s reigne was very prosperous: in the other half hee felt great sorrow, by the expectation, execution, and sad remembrance of that heave judgement laid upon him by God for his foul and bloody offence.

Now very manifest it is, that in the year after the death of that child which was begotten in adultery, *Salomon* was born, who must needs therefore have been nineteen years old or thereabout when he began to reign at the decease of his father, as being begotten in the 21. year of his fathers reign, who reigned in all forty.

This account hath also good coherence with the following times of *David*, as may be collected out of ensuing Actions: for two years passed ere *Absolon* slew his brother *Ammon*; three years ere his father pardoned him, and two years more ere he came into the Kings presence. After this he prepared horses and men, and laid the foundation of his rebellion, which seems to have been one years work. So the rebellion it self, with all that happened thereupon, as the Commotion made by *Sheba*, the death of *Amasa*, and the rest, may well seem to have been in the 30. year of *David*s reign.

Whether the three years of famine should be reckoned apart from the last years of war with the *Philistims*, or confounded with them, it were more hard than needfull to conjecture. Plain enough it is, that in the ten remaining years of *David* there was time sufficient, and to spare, both for the three years of famine, for four years of warre, and for numbring the people, with the pestilence ensuing; as also for his own last firmities, and disposing of the Kingdome. Yet indeed it seems that the warre with the *Philistims* was but one years work, and ended in three or four fights, of which the two or three former were at *Gob* or *Nob* neere unto *Gezer*, and the last at *Gath*. This warre the *Philistims* undertook, as it seemeth, upon confidence gathered out of the mullets in *Israel*, and perhaps emboldened by *David*s old age: for he fainted now in the battell, and was afterwards hindered by his men from exposing himself unto danger any more. So *David* had six or seven years of rest, in which time it is likely that many of his great men of Warre dyed (being of his own age) whereby the stirring spirit of *Adonijah* found little succour in the broken party of *Joab* the sonne of *Zeruias*.

1 King. 1. 9.  
& 3. 7.

At this time it might both truly be said by *David* to *Salomon*, *Thou art a wise man*; and by *Salomon* to God, *I am but a young child*: for nineteen years of age might well agree with either of these two speeches.

2 Sam. 14. 7.

Nevertheless there are some that gather out of *Salomon*s professing himself a child, that he was but eleven years old when hee began to reign. Of these *Rabbi Salomon* seems the first Author, whom other of great learning and judgement have herein followed: grounding themselves perhaps upon that which is said of *Absolons* rebellion, that it was after forty years, which they understood as years of *David*s reign. But whereas *Rehobam* the sonne of *Salomon* was 41. years old when he began to reign, it would follow hereby that his father had begotten him, being himself but a child of nine or ten years old; the difference between their ages being no greater, if *Salomon* (who reigned 40. years) were but eleven years old when his reign began. To avoid this inconvenience, *Jos. phus* allows 80. years of reign to *Salomon*; a report to disagreeing with the Scriptures, that it needs no confutation. Some indeed have in favour of this opinion, construed the words of *Jos. phus*, as if they included all the years of *Salomon*s life. But by such reckoning hee should have been 40. years old at his Fathers death; and consequently should have been born long before his Father had wonne *Jerusalem*; which is a manifest untruth. Wherefore the 40. years

remem-

remembred in *Absolons* rebellion, may either seem to have reference to the space between *David*s first anointment, and the trouble which God brought upon him for his wickednesse, or perhaps be read (according to *Jos. phus*, *Theodoret*, and the Latine translation) four years; which passed between the return of *Absalon* to *Jerusalem*, and his breaking out.

§. V.

of *Salomon*s writings.

Here remain of *Salomon*s workes, the *Proverbs*, the *Preacher*, and the song of *Salomon*. In the first hee teacheth good life, and correcteth manners; in the second, the vanity of humane nature; in the third, he singeth as it were the Epithalamion of Christ and his Church. For the Book intituled, The wisdom of *Salomon*, (which some give unto *Salomon*, and some make the elder *Philo* the Author thereof) *Hierome* and many others of the best learned make us think it was not *Salomon* that wrote it. *Stylus libri sapientia* (saith *Hierome*) qui *Salomonis* inscribitur: *Græcam redolet elegantiam*; The Style of the Book of wisdom, which is ascribed to *Salomon*, *Javonensis* of the *Græcian* eloquence, and of the same opinion was *S. Augustine*, and yet he confesseth in the nineteenth Book, and twentieth Chapter of the Citie of God, that the Author of that Book hath a direct foretelling of the passion of Christ in these words: *Circumveniamus justum, quoniam insuavis est nobis, &c.* Let us circumvent the righteous, for he is unpleasing to us, he is contrary to our doings, he checketh us for offending against the Law, he makes his boast to have the knowledge of God, and he calleth himself the son of the Lord, &c. and so doth the course of all the following words point directly at Christ. The Books of *Ecclesiastes*, *Proverbs* and *Cantica Cantivorum*, *Rabbi Moses Kimchi* ascribeth to *Ishay* the Prophet, *Suidas* and *Cædrenus* report, that *Salomon* wrote of the remedies of all diseases, and graved the same on the sides of the Porch of the Temple, which (they say) *Ezechias* pulled down, because the people, neglecting help from God by prayer, repaired thither for their recoveries.

Of *Salomon*s Books of Invocations, and Incantments to cure diseases, and expell evil spirits, *Jos. phus* hath written at large, though (as I conceive) rather out of his own invention, or from some uncertain report, than truly.

He also speaketh of one *Eliázarus*, who by the root in *Salomon*s ring disposeth divers persons of evil spirits in the presence of *Vespasian*, and many others, which I will not stand to examine.

Certainly, so strange an example of humane frailtie hath never been read of as this King: who having received wisdom from God himself, in honour of whom, and for his onely service, he built the first and most glorious Temple of the world: he that was made King of *Israel* and *Judea*, not by the law of Nature, but by the love of God; and became the wisest, richest, and happiest of all Kings, did in the end, by the perswasion of a few weak and wretched Idolatrous Women, forget and forsake the Lord of all the world; and the giver of all goodnesse, of which he was more liberal to this King, than to any that ever the world had. Of whom *Syracides* writeth in this manner: *Salomon reigned in a peaceable time, and was glorious, for God made all quiet round about, that hee might build a house to his Name, and prepare the Sanctuary for ever: How wise wast thou in thy youth, and wast filled with understanding, as with a flood? Thy mind covered the whole earth, and wast filled with grave and dark sentences. Thy name went abroad in the Isles, and for thy peace thou wast beloved, &c.* but thus he concludeth: *Thou didst bow thy loynes to Women; and wast overcome by thy body; thou didst stain thine honour, and hast defiled thy posteritie, and hast brought wrath upon thy children, and felt sorrow for thy folly*, cap. 27.

§. VI.

of the Contemporaries of *Salomon*.

Here the beginning of *Salomon*s reign; *Agesslaus* the third of the *Heraclidae* in *Corinth*; *Labotes* in *Lacedæmon*; and soon after *Silvius Alba*, the fourth of the *Silvii*, swayed those Kingdomes: *Laophanes* then governing *Assyria*; *Agassius* and *Archippus* the second and third Princes after *Codrus*, ruling the *Athenians*.

In

In the six and twentieth of *Salomons* reign, *Hiram* of *Tyre* dyed, to whom *Balazrus* succeeded, and reigned seventeen years, after *Mercators* account; who reckons the time of his rule by the age of his sons. *Fosephus* gives him fewer years, *Theophilus Antiochus* against *Amolius* finds *Bozarias* the next after *Hiram*, if there be not some Kings omitted between the death of *Hiram* and the reign of *Bozarias*.

*Naphres* being dead, about the twentieth of *Salomon*, *Sefac* or *Shishak* (as our English *Geneva* termes him) began to govern in *Egypt*, being the same with him whom *Diodorus* calleth *Sofachia*; *Fosephus*, *Sufac*; *Cedrenus*, *Sufesinus*; *Eusebius* in the column of the *Egyptian* Kings, *Smendes*; and in that of the *Hebrewes*, *Sufac*. *Fosephus* in the eighth of his *Antiquities*, reproveth it as an error in *Herodotus*, that he ascribeth the Acts of *Sufac* to *Sefoftris*, which perchance *Herodotus* might have done by comparison, accounting *Sefac* another *Sefoftris*, for the great things he did.

Of the great acts and virtues of King *Sefoftris* I have spoken already in the story of the *Egyptian* Princes: only in this he was reproved, that he caused four of his captive Kings to draw his Caroch, when he was disposed to be seen, and to ride in triumph: one of which four, saith *Eutropius*, at such time as *Sefoftris* was carried out to take the aire, cast his head continually back upon the two foremost wheelers next him; which *Sefoftris* perceiving, asked him what he found worthy the admiration in that motion: to whom the captive King answered, That in those he beheld the instability of all worldly things; for that both the lowest part of the wheele was suddenly carryed about, and became the highest, and the upmost part was suddenly turned downward, and under all: which when *Sefoftris* had judiciously weighed, he dismissed those Princes, and all other from the like servitude in the future. Of this *Sefoftris*, and that hee could not be taken for *Sefac*, I have spoken at large in that part of the *Egyptian* Kings preceding.

Miss. Mss.  
4.17.

## CHAP. XIX.

### Of Salomons Successors untill the end of Jehosaphat.

#### S. I.

Of Rehoboam his beginnings; the defection of the ten Tribes, and Rehoboams Idolatrie.



**R**ehoboam the Sonne of *Salomon* by *Nahama* an *Ammonitess*, now forty years old, succeeded his Father *Salomon*, and was annointed at *Sichem*, where the ten Tribes of *Israel* were assembled: who attended a while the return of *Rehoboam* as yet in *Egypt*, since he fled thither, fearing *Salomon*. After his arrivall the people presented a Petition to *Rehoboam*, to be eased of those great Tributes laid on them by his Father, *Sic enim firmius est fore Imperium, si amari mallet quam metui*, so should his Empire (saith *Fosephus*) be more assured, if he desired rather to be beloved than feared: whereof hee took three dayes to deliberate before his answer; of whom therefore it could not be said as of *David*, that hee was wiser than all his Teachers. For as of himself hee knew not how to resolve, so had hee not the judgement to discern of Counsell, which is the very test of wisdom in Princes, and in all men else. But notwithstanding that hee had consulted with those grave and advised men, that served his Father, who perswaded him by all means to satisfy the multitude: hee was transported by his familiars and favourites, not onely to continue on the backs of his subjects those burdens which greatly crush them; but (vaunting fallily of greatness exceeding his fathers) he threatened in sharp, or rather in terrible termes, to lay yet heavier, and more unsupportable loads on them. But as it appeared in the successe, those young advisers greatly mistooke the nature of severity, which without the temper of democracy is no other than cruelty in self: they also were ignorant that it ought to be used for the help, and not for the harm of subjects. For what is the strength of a King left by his people? and what cords or fetters have ever lasted long, but those which have been twisted

with and forged by love onely: His wiselike parasites could well judge of the Kings weakness: and being well learned therein, though ignorant in all things else, it sufficed and enabled them sufficiently for the places they held: But this answer of *Rehoboam* did not a little advance *Jeroboams* designs: For being foretold by the Prophet *Ahijah* of his future advancement, these the Kings threats (changing the peoples love into fear) confirmed and gave courage to his hopes. For he was no sooner arrived, than elected King of *Israel*: the people cried out, What portion have we in *David*? wee have no inheritance in the Soane of *Israhel*. Now thought themselves, even all the Tribes of *Israel* had consented to *Rehoboam*: anointing at *Hebron* the second time, acknowledging that they were his bones and his flesh: yet now after the manner of rebels, they forgot both the bands of nature, and their duty to God; and, as all alienate resolved hearts doe, they served themselves for the present, with impudent excuses. And now over-late, and after-time, *Rehoboam* sent *Adoram*, one of the Taxers of the people, a man most hateful to all his Subjects, to pacifie them: whom they instantly beat to death with stones. Whereupon the King affrighted, got him from *Sichem* with all speed, and recovered *Jerusalem*, where preparing to invade *Israel*, with an hundred and fourscore thousand cholemen, *Shimma* in the person of God commanding to the contrary, all was stayed for the present. About the same time *Rehoboam* the new King fortified *Sichem* on this side, and *Penuel* on the other side of *Jordan*; and fearing that the Union and ex-  
pense of one Religion would disjoyne the peoples hearts again to the House of *David*, and having got all *Israel* to follow the *Egyptians* to follow their Idolatry, hee set up two Calves of gold for the children of *Israel* to worship, impiously perswading them that those were the Gods, or at least by these hee represented those Gods which delivered them out of *Egypt*; and refusing the service of the Levites, hee made Priests for such gods. It must needs be that by banishing the Levites which served *David* and *Salomon* through all *Israel*, *Rehoboam* greatly enriched himself: a taking into his hands all those Cities which were given them by *Moses* and *Joshua*, for as it is written, The Levites left their suburbs, and their possession, and came to *Juda*, &c. This irreligious policy of *Rehoboam* (which was the foundation of an Idolatry that never could be rooted out, untill *Israel* for it was rooted out of the Land) was by Prophecy and Miracles impugned sufficiently when it first began; but the affections maintaining it, were so strong, that neither Prophecy nor Miracle could make them yield. *Rehoboam* could not be removed now by the Authority of *Ahijah*, who from the Lord had first promised unto him the Kingdom, not by the withering of his own hand as hee stretched it over the *Altar*, which also cleave asunder according to the signe, which the man of God had given him by the commandement of God, who again recovered and cured him of his disease; yet he continued as obstinate an Idolater as before, for he held it the safest course in policy to proceed as he had begun. This impious Invention of *Rehoboam*, who forsook God; and the Religion of his forefathers, by God and his Ministers taught to them, was by a modern Historian compared with the policies of late Ages; observing well the practice of his Nation, being an Italian born. *Sic qui bodie* (saith he) *politici* *vacantur*, *et propria commoda presentisq; utilitates sibi tanquam ultimum finem constitunt*; easque quam vocant status in capite omnium ponunt: pro ipsa tuenda, promovenda, conservanda, amplianda, nihil non faciendum putant. Si injuria proximo irroganda, si injusta honestatq; leges subvertenda, si religio ipsa pessumda, si deniq; omnia jura divina et humana violanda, nihil intentatum; nil per fas nefasq; relinquendum censent; cunctis hominibus omnia perant, nihil ad ipsos, modo id, quod e re sua esse sibi persuadent, obtinent: ac si nullus sit qui talia caveret, castigareve possit Deus: So they who are now called Politicians, propounding to themselves, as their utmost end and scope, their own commoditie and present profit, are wont to allege the case of state forsooth, as the principall point to be regarded: for the good of the state, for advancing, preserving, or encreasing of the state, they think that they may doe any thing. If they mean to oppress their neighbour; to overturn all lawes of justice and honesty, if Religion it self must goe to wrack; yea, if all rights of God and man must be violated, they will say all courses be it right, be it wrong, they will doe any thing: yet all goe to ruine, what care they, so long as they may have what they would; as the Lord saith, there were no God that would offer to meddle in such matters, or had power to correct them.

Indeed this allegation of *raggione del stato*, did serve as well to uphold, as at the first

Amos 7. 13.

2 King. 10. 16.

1 Kings 10. 10.

first it had done to bring in this vile Idolatry of the ten Tribes. Upon this ground *Amazias* the Priest of *Bethel* counselled the Prophet *Amos* not to prophesie at *Bethel*; For (saith he) it is the Kings Court. Upon this ground even *Jehu* that had massacred the Priests of *Baal*, in zeal for the Lord, yet would not in any wise depart from that politique sinne of *Feroboam* the sonne of *Nebat*, which made *Israel* to sinne. It was reason of state that perswaded the last famous French King *Henry* the fourth to change his Religion, yet the Protestants whom he forsook, obeyed him, but some of the Papists whom hee followed, murdered him. So strongly doth the painted vizard of wise proceeding delude even those that know the foul face of impietie lurking under it: and behold the wretched ends that have ever followed it; whereof *Jehu*, and all the Kings of *Israel* had, and were themselves very great examples.

## §. II.

Of Rehoboam his impietie; for which he was punished by Sefac: of his end, and Contemporaries.

VV

1 Chro. 13.

1 King. 14. 13.

2 Chro. 12. 3.

Jes. Am. 8. c. 4.

2 Chro. 12.

2 King. 14.

Ann. in 12.

Chro.

7 An. 10. 6. c. 29

101. Affe. 140. 3.

Ca. 47. v. 13.

Hile *Feroboam* was occupied in setting up his new Religion, *Rehoboam* on the other side, having now little hope to recover the Provinces lost, strengthened the principall places remaining with all endeavour; for he fortified and victualled fifteen Cities of *Juda* and *Benjamin*: not that he feared *Feroboam* alone, but the Egyptians, to whom *Feroboam* had not only fastned himself, but withall invited them to invade *Juda*: laying perchance before them the uncountable riches of *David* and *Salomon*, which might now be easily had; seeing ten of the twelve Tribes were revolted, and become enemies to the *Judeans*. So as by those two waies (of late years of ten trodden) to wit, change of Religion, and invitation of forraign force, *Feroboam* hoped to settle himself in the seat of *Israel*, whom yet the powerful God for his Idolatry in few years after rooted out, with all his. *Rehoboam* having also, as hee thought, by fortifying divers places, assured his estate, forsook the law of the living God, and made high Places, and Images, and Groves, on every high Hill, and under every green Tree.

And therefore in the fifth year of his reign, *Sefac* or *Shishac* before spoken of, being now King of *Egypt*, and with whom, as well *Adad* of *Idumaea*, as *Feroboam*, were familiar, and his instruments; entered *Juda* with twelve thousand Chariots, and threecore thousand Horse, besides foot-men, which *Josephus* numbers at four hundred thousand. This Armie was compounded of four Nations: Egyptians, *Lubans*, *Succans*, and *Cusites*. The *Lubans* were *Lybaans*, the next bordering Region to *Egypt*, on the West-side. The *Cusites* were of *Petrea*, and of the desert *Arabia*, which afterward followed *Zera* against *Afa* King of *Juda*. The *Succans* according to *Junius* his opinion, were of *Succoth*, which signifieth Tents: he doth suppose that they were the *Troglodites*, mentioned often in *Plinie*, *Ptolomie*, and other Authors. The *Troglodites* inhabited not farre from the banks of the red Sea, in 22. degrees from the line Northward, about six hundred English miles from the best and Maritime part of *Egypt*: and therefore I do not think that the *Succans* or *Succai* were those *Troglodites*, but rather those *Arabians* which *Ptolomie* calls *Arabes Egyptii*, or *Ichthyophagi*, which possesse that part of *Egypt* behind the mountains called *Alabastri* and the red Sea, farre nearer *Egypt*, and readier to be levied than those removed Savages of the *Troglodites*.

With this great and powerfull Army, *Sefac* invaded *Juda*, and (besides many other strong Cities) van *Jerusalem* it self; of which, and of the Temple, and Kings house, he took the spoyle, carrying away (besides other treasures) the golden shields which *Salomon* had made, in imitation of those which *David* recovered from *Adad* in the Syrian war: these *Rehoboam* supplied with Targets of brasse, which were fit enough to guard a King of his quality: whom *Syracides* calleth, The foolishnesse of the people.

From this time forward the Kings of *Egypt* claimed the soveraignty of *Juda*, and held the Jews as their Tributaries: *Sefac*, as it seems, rendring up to *Rehoboam* his places on that condition. So much may be gathered out of the word of God, where promising the deliverance of *Juda* after their humiliation, he doth notwithstanding leave them under the yoke of *Egypt*, in these words: Nevertheless they (to wit, the *Judeans*) shall be his servants, that is, the servants of *Sefac*.

Affect

After this overthrow and dishonour, *Rehoboam* reigned twelve years, and his losses received by *Sefac*, notwithstanding, he continued the war against *Feroboam* all his lifetime. After his death *Feroboam* governed *Israel* four years.

*Rehoboam* lived 58. years, and reigned 17. his story was written at large by *Shemeiah* and *Hiddan* the Prophets, but the same perished with that of *Nathan*, and the rest.

With *Rehoboam*, *Archippus*, and *Terfippus*, the third and fourth *Archontes* or Governors for life after *Codrus*, governed in *Athens*. *Abdastrartus*, or *Abstrartus*, in *Tyre*. *Durishus* the fifth of the *Heraclidae* in *Sparta*, according to *Eusebius* (others make him the sixth) and *Priminas* the fourth in *Corinth*. Over the *Latines* reigned *Sylvius Alba*, *Sylvius Atys*, the fourth and fifth of the *Sylvii*.

About the 12. of *Rehoboam*, *Abdastrartus* King of *Tyre* was murdered by his Nurses sons, or foster-brethren, the elder of which usurped the Kingdome twelve years.

Toward his latter times *Periciades*, or *Pyrithiades*, began to govern *Afryria*, the 34. King thereof: and not long after *Astartus*, the son of *Baleastartus*, recovered the Kingdome of *Tyre* from the Usurpers.

## §. III.

Of the great battell between Jeroboam and Abia, with a Gorollarie of the examples of Gods judgements.

*Abijah* the son of *Rehoboam*, inherited his Fathers Kingdome, and his vices. He raised an Armie of four hundred thousand, with which hee invaded *Feroboam*, who encountered him with a double number of eight hundred thousand: Both Armies joyned neer to the Mount *Ephraim*, where *Feroboam* was utterly overthrowen, and the strength of *Israel* broken: for there fell of that side five hundred thousand; the greatest overthrow that ever was given or received of those Nations. *Abijah* being now master of the field, recovered *Bethel*, *Jeshanah*, and *Ephron*. Soon after which discomfiture, *Feroboam* died: who reigned in all 22. years. *Abijah*, the better to strengthen himself, entered into league with *Helson*, the third of the *Adads* of *Syria*; as may be gathered out of the 2. of *Chron*. he reigned but three years, and then died: the particulars of his acts were written by *Iddo* the Prophet, as some part of his Fathers were.

Here we see how it pleased God to punish the sins of *Salomon* in his son *Rehoboam*: first, by an Idolator and Traitor: and then by the successor of that Egyptian, whose daughter *Salomon* had married, thereby the better to assure his estate, which while he served God, was by God assured against all and the greatest neighbouring Kings; and when he forsook him, it was torn asunder by his meanest Vassals. Not that the Father wanted strength to defend him from the Egyptian *Sefac*; For the son *Abijah* was able to levie four hundred thousand men, and with the same number hee overthrowed eight hundred thousand *Israelites*; and slew of them five hundred thousand; God giving spirit, courage, and invention, when, and where it pleaseth him. And as in those times the causes were exprest, why it pleased God to punish both Kings and their People; the same being both before, and at the instant delivered by Prophets: so the same just God, who liveth and governeth all things for ever, doth in these our times give victory, courage, and discouragement, raise, and throw down Kings, Estates; Cities; and Nations, for the same offences which were committed of old, and are committed in the present: for which reason, in these and other the afflictions of *Israel*, always the causes are set down, that they might be as presidents to succeeding ages. They were punished with famine in *David* time for three years, For *Saul* and his bloody house, &c. And *David* towards his latter end suffered all sorts of afflictions, and sorrowes in effect, for *Uriah*, *Salomon* had ten Tribes of twelve torn from his son for his Idolatry. *Rehoboam* was spoiled of his riches and honour, by *Sefac* of *Egypt*, because the people of *Juda* made images, high places; and groves, &c. and because they suffered *Sodomites* in the Land. *Feroboam* was punished in himselfe and his posteritie, for the golden Calves that hee erected. *Joram* had all his fontes slain by the *Philistims*, and his veiy bowels torn out of his body by an execrating filix, for murdering his brethren. *Abie* and *Jesabel* were slain, the bloud of the one, the body of the other eaten with dogges, for the false accusing and killing of *Naboth*. So also hath God punished the same, and

§ f

the

the like finnes in all after-times, and in these our dayes by the same famine, plagues, warre, losse, vexation, death, sickness, and calamities; howsoever the wise men of the world raise these effects no higher than to second causes, and such other accidents, which, as being next their eyes and ears, seem to them to work every alteration that happeneth.

## S. IV.

of Asa and his Contemporaries.

Chron. 14.

Chro. 15. 16.

Chro. 14. 9.

\* In the former  
book, c. 4. §. 14.  
item, c. 8. §. 10.  
c. 6.

Chron. 14.

Chro. 16. 1.

**T**O Abijah succeeded Asa, who enjoyed peace for his first ten years, in which time he established the Church of God, breaking down the altars dedicated to strange gods, with their images, cutting down their groves, and taking away their high places. He also spared not his own mother, who was an Idolatress, but deposing her from her regency, brake her Idoll, stampit it, and burnt it. Hee also fortified many Cities, and other places, providing (as provident Kings do) for the troubles of war in the leasure of peace. For not long after hee was invaded by Zerah, who then commanded all the Arabians bordering Judaea, and with such a multitude entered the territorie of Asa, as (for any thing that I have read) were never assembled of that Nation, either before or since: For it is written, that there came against the Judaeans, Zerah of Ethiopia, with an hoste of ten hundred thousand, and three hundred Chariots, which Asa encountered with an Armie of five hundred and fourscore thousand, levied out of those two Tribes of Juda and Benjamin, which obeyed him, and with which hee overthrew this fearfull multitude, and had the spoile both of their Cities and Campes.

That this Zerah was not an Ethiopian, I have \* proved already, and were it but the length between Ethiopia and Judaea, and the strong flourishing Regions of Egypt inter-jacent (who would not suffer a million of strangers to pass through them) it were sufficient to make it appear how foolish the opinion is, that these invaders were Ethiopians. But in that the Scriptures acknowledge that Gerar was belonging to Zerah, and the Cities thereabouts were spoiled by the Judaeans, in following their victory, as places belonging to Zerah, and that all men know that Gerar standeth upon the torrent of Bejor, which David past over when he surprized the Amalekites or Arabians; this proveth sufficiently, that Zerah was leader of the Arabians, and that Gerar was a frontier town standing on the uttermost South-border of all Judaea, from all parts of Ethiopia six hundred miles. Also the spoiles which Asa took, as the cattell, camels, and sheepe, whereof he sacrificed five thousand, shew them to be Arabians adjoining, and not far off, and not unknown Ethiopians. And if it be objected that these desert countries can hardly yeeld a million of men fit for the wars, I answer, that it is as like that Arabia Petrea, and the Desert, which compass two parts of the holy Land, should yeeld ten hundred thousand, as that two Tribes of the twelve, should arm five hundred and fourscore thousand. Besides, it answereth to the promise of God to Abraham, that these Nations should exceed in number; for God spake it of Israel, that hee would make him fruitful, and multiply him exceedingly, that he should beget twelve Princes, &c.

Baasha a King of Israel began to reign in the third of Asa, and fearing the greatness of Asa after his great victory, entertained Benhadad King of Syria, of the race of Adadeer, to joyn with him against Asa; and to the end to block him up, he fortified Rama, which lieth in the way from Jerusalem toward Samaria.

This war began according to the letter of the Scriptures in the 36. year of Asa his reign: but because in the first of Kings the 16. it is said that Baasha died in the 26. year of Asa, therefore could not Baasha begin this war in the 35. of Asa his reign, but in the 35. year of the division of Juda & Israel; for so many years it was from the first of Rehoboam, who reigned 17. years, to the 16. of Asa. It may seem strange, that Asa being able to bring into the field an Army of five hundred & fourscore thousand good Souldiers, did not easily drive away Baasha, and defeat him of his purposes, the victories of Abia against Jeroboam, and of Asa himself against Zerah, being yet fresh in mind, which might well have emboldened the men of Juda, and almost disheartened the enemies. Questionlesse there were some important Circumstances, omitted in the Text, which

caused

caused Asa to fight at this time with money. It may be that the employment of so many hundred thousands of hands, in the late service against Zerah, had caused many mens private busineses to lye undispatched, whereby the people being now intensive to the culture of their lands and other trades, might be unwilling to stir against the Israelites, choosing rather to wink at apparent inconvenience, which the building of Rama would bring upon them in after-times. Such backwardness of the people might have deterred Asa from adventuring himself with the least part of his forces, & committing the success to the hands of God. Howsoever it were, he took the treasures remaining in the temple, with which he waged Benhadad the Syrian against Baasha, whose employments Benhadad readily accepted, and brake off confederacy with Baasha. For the Israelites were his borderers and next neighbours, whom neither himself (after his invasion) nor his successors after him ever gave over, till they had made themselves masters of that Kingdom. So Benhadad being now entered into Nephtholim, without resistance, hee spoiled divers principall Cities thereof, and enforced Baasha to quit Rama, and to leave the same to Asa, with all the materials which he had brought thither, to fortifie the same: which done, Benhadad, who loved neither party, being laden with the spoils of Israel, and the treasures of Juda, returned to Damascus. After this, when Hanani the Prophet reprehended Asa, in that he now relied on the strength of Syria, and did not rest himself on the favour and assistance of God, he not only caused Hanani to be imprisoned, but he began to burden and oppress his people, and was therefore stricken with the grievous paines of the gout in his feet, wherewith after he had been two years continually tormented; he gave up the ghost when he had reigned 41. years.

There lived Asa, Azeilans the first of the Heracleide, and Bacis the first King of the same race in Corinth, of whom his successors were afterward called Baciade, Astartus, and Asarimus were Kings in Tyre. Asarimus took revenge on his brother Phelletes, and Murshar of Ithobalus Priest of the goddesse Asarta, whom Salomon in dotage worshipped. Anys and Cypis ruled the Latines: Pirithiades and Ophratius the Assyrians: Tersippus and Phorbas the Athenians: Chemmis reigned in Egypt; who dying in the 36. year of Asa, left Cheeps his successor, that reigned fifty six years, even to the 16. of Josias.

## S. V.

of the great alteration falling out in the ten Tribes during the reign of Asa.

**I**N the reign of Asa the Kingdome of Israel felt great and violent commotions, which might have reduced the ten Tribes unto their former allegiance to the house of David, if the wisdom of God had not otherwise determined. The wickedness of Jeroboam had, in his latter dayes, the sentence of heavie vengeance laid upon it, by the mouth of Abia, the same Prophet which had foretold the division of Israel, for the sinne of Salomon, and his reign over the ten Tribes. One son Jeroboam had among others, in whom onely God found so much piety, as (though it sufficed not to with-hold his wrath from that Family) it procured unto him a peaceable end, an honourable testimony of the peoples love, by their generall mourning and lamentation at his death, and (wherein he was most happy) the favourable approbation of God himself.

After the losse of this good son, the ungodly father was soon taken away: a miserable creature, so conscious of his vile unthankfulness to God, that hee durst not suffer his own name to be used in consulting with an holy Prophet, assured of the ruine hanging over him and his, yea of Gods extreme hatred; yet forbearing to destroy those so accursed Idols that wrought his confusion. So loath he was to forsake his worldly wisdom, when the world was ready to forsake him, and all belonging to him, his hateful memory excepted.

Nadab the son of Jeroboam, reigned in the second and third years of Asa, which are reckoned as two years, though indeed his fathers last year of two and twenty did run along (how farre is uncertain) with the second of Asa, whose third year was the first of Nadab, so that perhaps this Nadab enjoyed not his Kingdome one whole year. Hee did not alter his fathers courses, neither did God alter his sentence. It seems that Hee little feared the judgements denounced against his fathers house: for as a Prince that

St 2

was

was secure of his own estate, he armed all *Israel* against the *Philistims*, and besieged one of their Towns. There (whether it were so, that the people were offended with his ill success, and recalled to mind their grievous losse of five hundred thousand under *Feroboam*, counting it an unluckie family to the Nation; or whether by some particular discretion, he exasperated them) slain he was by *Baalsha*, whom the Army did willingly accept for King in his stead. *Baalsha* was no sooner proclaimed King, than he began to take order with the house of *Feroboam*, that none of them might molest him, putting all of them, without mercy, to the sword. That he did this for private respects, and not in regard of Gods will to have it so, it is evident by his continuing in the same form of Idolatry which *Feroboam* had begun. Wherefore he received the same sentence from 10 God that had been laid upon *Feroboam*; which was executed upon him also in the same sort. He began to infect *Asa*, by fortifying *Ramah*, but was diverted from thence by the *Syrian Benhadad*, who did waite his Countrey, destroying all the Land of *Nephthim*. Four and twenty years he reigned, and then dying, left the Crown to *Ela* his son, who enjoyed it, as *Nadab* the son of *Feroboam* had done, two years current, perhaps not one complete.

*Ela* was as much an Idolater as his father; and withall a riotous person. Hee sent an Army against *Gibbethon*, the same town of the *Philistims*, before which *Nadab* the son of *Feroboam* perished; but hee sat at home the whilest, feasting and drinking with his Minions, whereby he gave such advantage against himself, as was not neglected. *Zimri*, an ambitious man, remaining with the King at *Tirza*, finding his Master so dissolute, and his behaviour so contemptible, conceived hope of the like fortune as *Baalsha* had found, by doing as *Baalsha* had done. Wherefore he did set upon *Ela* in his drunkenness, and slew him. Presently upon which fact, he stiled himself King of *Israel*: and began his reign with massacring all the house of *Baalsha*; extending his cruelty not onely to his children, and kinsfolk, but unto all his friends in *Tirza*. These newes were quickly blown to the Camp at *Gibbethon*, where they were not welcomed according to *Zimri*'s expectation. For the Souldiers in stead of proclaiming him King, proclaimed him Traitor: and being led by *Omri*, whom they saluted King, they (quitting the siege of *Gibbethon*) presented themselves before *Tirza*; which in short space they may 30 seem to have forced, *Zimri* wanting strength to defend the City, not courage to keep himself from falling alive into his enemies hands, did set fire on the Palace, consuming it and himself together to ashes. Seven dayes he is said to have reigned: accounting as is most likely to the time that *Omri* was proclaimed in the Camp. For *Zimri* was also 4 King. 16. 19. an Idolater, *Walking in the way of Jeroboam*; and therefore is likely to have had more time wherein to declare himself, than the reign of seven dayes, and those consumed partly in murdering the friends of *Baalsha*, partly in seeking to have defended his own life. After the death of *Ela*, there arose another King to oppose the faction of *Omri*; whereby it may seem, that *Zimri* had made his party strong, as being able to set up a new head, who doubtlesse would never have appeared, if there had not been ready to his 40 hand, some strength, not unlikely to resist and vanquish the Army which maintained *Omri*. How long this *Tibni*, the new competitor of *Omri*, held out, I doe not find; onely it appears that his side was decayed, and so hee died, leaving no other Successor than his concurrent.

## S. VI.

*A conjecture of the causes hindering the re-union of Israel with Juda, which might have been effected by these troubles.*

Any man that shall consider the state of *Israel* in thole times, may justly wonder 50 how it came to passe, that either the whole Nation, wearied with the calamities already suffered under these unfortunate Princes, and with the present civill warres, did not return to their ancient Kings, and re-unite themselves with the mighty Tribes of *Juda* and *Benjamin*; or that *Zimri* and *Tibni*, with their oppressed factions, did not call in *Asa*, but rather chose the one to endure a desperate necessity of yeelding, or burning himself, the other to languish away, as a man forsaken; than to have recourse unto a remedy, so sure, so ready, and so honourable. To say that GOD was pleased to have it so, were a true, but an idle answer (for his secret will is the

the cause of all things) unless it could be proved, that hee had forbidden *Asa* to deal in that business, as hee forbade *Rehoboam* to force the rebellious people to obedience. That the restraint laid by God upon *Rehoboam*, did only binde his hands from attempting the suppression of that present insurrection, it appears by the Warre continued between *Israel* and *Juda*, so many yeers following; wherein *Asa* so farre prevailed, that hee wan a great battail, and recovered some Townes belonging to the other Tribes, which hee annexed to his own Dominion. Wherefore we may boldly look into the second causes, moving the People and Leaders of the ten Tribes, to suffer any thing under new-upstarts, rather than to cast their eyes upon that Royall house of *David*, from which the succession of five Kings in lineall descent, had taken away all imputation, that might 10 formerly have beene laid upon the mean beginnings thereof. To think, that *Omri* had prevented his Competitors in making peace with *Asa*, were a conjecture more bold than probable. For *Omri* was not onely an Idolater, but did worse than all that were before him; which as it might serve alone to prove, that *Asa*, being a godly King, would not adhere to him, so the course which hee professed to take at the very first, of revenging the massacre committed upon the family and friends of *Baalsha* ( *Asa* his mortal enemy) gives manifest reason, why *Zimri*, who had wrought that great execution, should more justly than hee have expected the friendship of *Juda* in this quarrel. Wherefore in searching out the reason of this backwardnes in the ten Tribes ( which was such, that they may seeme to have never thought upon the matter ) to submit themselves to their true Prin- 20 ces, it were not amiss to examine the causes moving the people to revenge the death of *Ela*, an idle drunkard, rather than of *Nadab* the son of *Feroboam*, who followed the wars in person, as a man of spirit, & courage. Surely it is apparent, that the very first defection of the ten Tribes, was ( if we look upon human reason ) occasioned by desire of breaking that heave yoke of bondage, wherewith *Salomon* had galled their neckes. Their desire was to have a King that should not oppress them; not to have no King at all. And therefore when the arrogant follie of *Rehoboam* had caused them to renounce him, they did immediately choose *Feroboam* in his stead, as a man likely to afford that liberty unto them, for which hee had contended in their behalfe. Neither, were they ( as it seemes ) herein altogether deceived. For his affection of popularity, appears in his building of decayed 30 Townes, and in the institution of his new-devised Idolatry; where hee told the people, that it was too much for them to travayle so far as to Jerusalem. But whether it were so, that his moderation, being voluntary, began to cease, towards the latter end of his reign, and in the reign of his son, when long time of possession had confirmed his title, which at the first was onely good by courtisie of the people; or whether the people ( as often happens in such cases ) were more offended by some prerogatives of a King, that hee still retained in his own hands, than pleased with his remission of other burdens, it is cleerly apparent, that the whole army of all *Israel* joyined with *Baalsha*, taking in good part the death of *Nadab*, and eradication of *Feroboams* house.

Now the reign of *Baalsha* himself, was (for ought that remaineth in writing of it) every way unfortunate, his labour and cost at *Rama* was cast away, the other side of his Kingdom harried by the *Syrians*; neither did hee win that one town of *Gibbethon* from the *Philistims*, but left that business to his son, who likewise appears an unprofitable sluggard. Wherefore it must needs bee, that the favour of the people toward the house of *Baalsha* grew from his good forme of Civill government, which happily hee reduced to a more temperate method than *Feroboam* ever meant to doe. And surely hee that shall take pains to look into those examples which are extant of the different courses, held by the Kings of *Israel* and *Juda*, in administration of justice, will finde it most probable, that upon this ground it was that the ten Tribes continued so averse from the line of *David*, as to thinke all adversity more tolerable, than the weighty Scepter of that house. For the death of *Joab* and *Shimei* was indeed by them deserved; yet in that they suffered it 50 without forme of judgement, they suffered like unto men innocent. The death of *Adonijah* was both without judgement, and without any crime objected; other than the Kings jealousy: out of which by the same rule of arbitrary justice ( under which it may bee supposed that many were cast away ) hee would have slaine *Feroboam* ( if hee could have caught him ) before hee had yet committed any offence; as appears by his confident returne out of Egypt, like one that was knowne to have endured wrong, having not offered any.

The like and much more barbarous execution, to wit, without law, *Fehoram* did upon his brethren, & upon sundry of his greatest men, as also *Foab* did to put to death *Zachariah* the son of *Fehojada*, who had made him King, *even in the court of the house of the Lord: and Manasses did shed innocent blood exceeding much, till hee replenished Jerusalem from corner to corner:* and this was imputed to him as another fault; besides his sinne, whereunto he made *Juda* to sinne. Contrariwise, among the Kings of *Israel* we find no monument of such arbitrary proceeding, unless perhaps the words of *Fehoram* the sonne of *Abab* (which were bad words) may be taken for an instance, when he said, *God doe so to mee, and more also, if the head of Elisha the sonne of Shaphat shall stand on him this day:* whereby it is not plain whether hee meant to kill him without inuoe adoe, or to have him condemned as a false Prophet, that had made them hold out against the *Aramites*, till they were faine to eat their own children; which he thought a sufficient argument to prove, that it was not Gods purpose to deliver them. The death of *Naboth* sheweth rather the liberty which the *Israelites* enjoyed, than any peremptory execution of the Kings will. For *Naboth* did not feare to stand upon his own right, though *Abab* were even ficke for anger; neither was he for that cause put to death, as upon commandement, but made away by conspiracy, the matter being handled after a judiciall forme, which might give satisfaction to the people, ignorant of the device, though God it could not.

The murder of the Prophets is continually ascribed to *Fehabel*, an impudent woman, and not unto the King her husband. Neither is it certaine, that there was no Law made whereby their lives were taken from them; but certaine it is, that the people being Idolaters, were both pleased with their death, & laboured in the execution. So that the doings of the Kings of *Juda* (such as are registred) prove them to use a more absolute manner of command, than the Kings of the ten Tribes. Neither doe their sufferings witness the contrary. For of those which reigned over *Juda*, from the division of the Kingdome to the captivity of the ten Tribes, three were slaine by the people, and two were denied a buriall amongst their ancestors. Yea, the death of *Abaſia* and his brethren, slaine by *Fehab*, with the destruction of all that Royall seed of *Athalia*, did not (for ought that we can read) stirre up in the people any such thirst of revenge, as might by the suddennesse and uniformity testifie the affection to be general, and proceeding from a loving remembrance of their Princes: unless we should think that the death of *Athalia*, after seven yeeres reign, were occasioned rather by the memory of her ill purchasing, than by the present sense of her tyrannicall abusing the government, whereon she had seised. On the other side, such of the Kings of *Israel* as perished by treason (which were seven of the twenty) were all slaine by conspiracy of the great men, who aspired by treason to the Crown: the people being so far from embroiling their hands in the blood of their Sovereignes, that (after *Nadab*) they did never forbear to revenge the death of their Kings, when it lay in their power; nor approve the good successe of treason, unless feare compelled them. So that the death of two Kings, being thoroughly revenged upon other two, namely the death of *Ela* and *Zacharia*, upon *Zimri* and *Shallum*, who traitorously got and usurped, for a little while, their places; onely three of the seven remain, whose ends how the people took, it may be doubtfull. Though indeed it is precisely said of the slaughter committed on *Ababs* children by *Fehab*, that the people durst not fight with him that did it, because they were exceedingly afraid: and the same feare might be in them at the death of *Peka*, whose history (as others of that time) is cursorily passed over. The like may be pronounced, and more absolutely, of the Kings of *Egypt*, that never any of them perished by fury of the people, but by treason of such as did succeed them; neither was there any motive urging to forcibly the death of King *Edward* and King *Richard* when they were in prison, as feare lest the people should stirre in their quarrell. And certainly (howsoever all that the Law calls treason, be interpreted, as tending finally to the Kings destruction) in those treasonable insurrections of the vulgar, which have here most prevailed, the fury of the multitude hath quenched it selfe with the blood of some great Officers; no such rebellions, howsoever wicked and barbarous otherwise, thirsting after the ruine of their naturall Sovereigne, but rather forbearing the advantages gotten upon his Royall person: which if any man impute unto grosse ignorance, another may more charitably, and I think, more truly, ascribe to a reverent affection. Wherefore that fable of *Briareus*, who

who, being loosened by *Pallas*, did with his too hands give assistance to *Jupiter*, when all the rest of the gods conspired against him, is very fitly expounded by *Sir Francis Bacon*, as signifying that Monarches need not to feare any curbing of their absoluteness by mighty Subjects, as long as by wisdom they keep the hearts of the people, who will be faine to come in on their side. Though indeed the storie might very well have borne the same interpretation, as it is rehearsed by *Homer*, who tells us that *Pallas* was one of the conspiracie, and that *Thetis* alone did marre all their practice, by loosening *Briareus*. For a good forme of government sufficeth by it selfe to retaine the people, not onely without assistance of a laborious Wit, but even against all devices of the greatest and shrewdest Politicians: every Sheriffe and Constable, being sooner able to arme the multitude, in the Kings behalfe, than any over-weening Rebelle, how mighty soever, can against him.

This declaration of the peoples love, being seldome found in *Juda*, makes it very likely, that the rule it selfe of government there was such, as neither gave occasion of contentment unto the Subjects, nor of confidence in their good affection to the Kings. Upon which reasons it may seem that the multitude was kept usually disarmed. For otherwise it would have beene almost impossible, that *Athalia* the sister of *Abab*, a stranger to the Royall blood of *Juda*, should by the onely authority of a Queene-mother have destroyed all the seed of *David*, and usurped the Kingdome very neere 7. yeeres, without finding any resistance. Yea when *Fehojada* the high Priest had agreed with the Captains and principall men of the Land to set up *Foab* their lawfull King, whereunto the whole nation were generally well affected, hee was faine to give to these Captaines and their men, the spears and the shields that were King *Dauids*; & were in the house of the Lord. But we need not enter into such particulars. Questionlesse, the Tribes which thought obedience to their Princes to be a part of their duty toward God, would endure much more with patience, than they which had Kings of their own choice or admission, holding the Crowne by a more uncertaine tenure.

And this, in my opinion, was the reason, why the ten Tribes did never seeke to returne to their ancient Lords: but after the destruction of their fixe first Kings, which died in the reigne of *Asa*, admitted a seventh of a new family, rather than they would confubject themselves with those of *Juda* and *Benjamin*, under a more honourable, but more beavie yoke.

So *Asa* having seen the death of 7. Kings of *Israel*, died himselfe after one and fortie yeeres reigne, leaving *Fehozaphat* his sonne to deale with *Abab* the sonne of *Omri*, who was the eighth King over the ten Tribes.

## §. VII.

## Of Jehosaphat and his contemporaries.

*Jehosaphat*, who succeeded *Asa*, was a Prince, religious and happy; hee destroyed all the Groves, Altars, and high places dedicated to Idolatry, and sent teachers to all places and people wanting instruction; he recovered the tribute due unto him by the *Arabians* and *Philistims*: from the one he had silver, from the other sheepe & goates to the number of fifteene thousand & foure hundred. The numbers of men of war were more than admirable; for it is written that *Asiab* had the command of three hundred thousand, *Fehobanani* of two hundred and fourescore thousand, and *Amasia* of two hundred thousand; also that he had, besides these in *Benjamin*, of those that bare shields, which we call Targetiers, and of Archers under *Eliada*, two hundred thousand, & under the commandement of *Fehozabad* a hundred and fourescore thousand: which numbered together make eleven hundred and sixty thousand, all which are said to have waited upon the King; besides his garrisons.

That *Juda* & *Benjamin*, a territory not much exceeding the Countie of Kent, should muster eleven hundred and sixtie thousand fighting men, is very strange, & the number farre greater than it was found upon any other view. *Foab* in *Dauids* time found five hundred thousand: *Rehoboam* found but an hundred and fourescore thousand: *Abia* four hundred and eight thousand: *Asa* five hundred and fourescore thousand: *Amaſia* inrolled all that could beare arms, & they amounted to three hundred thousand. Surely, whereas



whereas it is written that when news was brought to *Jehosaphat* that *Moab* & *Ammon* were entered his territory to the West of *Jordan*, and that their numbers were many, he feared (to wit) the multitude; it is not likely that he would have feared even the army of *Xerxes*, if he could have brought into the field 11. hundred and 60. thousand fighting men, leaving all his strong Cities manned. I am therefore of opinion (referring my self to better judgement) that these numbers specified in the second of *Chronicles* the 17. distributed to severall Leaders, were not all at one time, but that the 300. thousand under *Adnah*, and the 200. and fourscore thousand under *Jehobanah*, were assigned commanded and mulstered by *Amasiah*, *Eliad*, and *Jehosabad*: for the grosse & totall is not in that place set downe, as it was under the other Kings formerly named. Again, as the aides which *Jehosaphat* brought to *Ahab* did not shew that he was a Prince of extraordinary power, so the *Moabites* & *Ammonites* which he feared, could never make the one halfe of those numbers, which he that commanded least among *Jehosaphats* Leaders had under him.

This mighty Prince, notwithstanding his greatnesse, yet he joyned in friendship with *Ahab* King of *Israel*, who had married that wicked woman *Jezabel*. Him *Jehosaphat* visited at *Samaria*, and caused his son *Joram* to marry *Athalia*, this *Ahab*s daughter.

*Ahab* perswaded *Jehosaphat* to assist him in the Warre against the *Syrians*, who held the City of *Ramoth Gilead* from him, & called together foure hundred of his Prophets, or *Baalites*, to foretell the successe: who promised him victory. But *Jehosaphat* believed nothing at all in those diviners, but resolved first of all to conferre with some one Prophet of the Lord God of *Israel*. Hereupon *Ahab* made answer that he had one called *Michaiab*, but he hated that Prophet, because he alwayes foretold of evill, and never of any good towards him. Yet *Michaiab* was sent for to the King, but by the way the messenger prayed him to consent with the rest of the Prophets, and to promise victory unto them, as they did. But *Michaiab* spake the truth, and repeated his vision to both the Kings, which was, that God asked who should persuade *Ahab*, that he may goe up and fall at *Ramoth Gilead*: to whom a spirit that stood before the Lord answered, that hee would enter into his Prophets, & be in them a false spirit to delude. For as it is said by Christ: *Non enim nos estis qui loquimini, sed spiritus pateris & mali loquuntur in vobis*: It is not you that speake, but the Spirit of your Father speaks in you: so in a contrary kinde did the devill in the Prophets of *Baal*, or *Satan*, incourage *Ahab* to his destruction. And as *Martyr* upon this place well observeth, these evill spirits are ministers of Gods vengeance, & are used as the hangmen and tormentors, which Princes sometime employ. For as it pleaseth God by his good Angels, to save & deliver from destruction, of which the Scriptures have many examples: so on the contrary, it is by the evill that hee punisheth and destroyeth; both which are said to performe the will of their Creator, *licet non eodem animo*. Ecclesiasticks remembreth a second sort of malignant natures, but they are every where visible. There are spirits, saith he, created for vengeance, which in their rigorous lay on sure strokes. In the time of destruction they shew forth their power, and accomplish the wrath of him that made them.

Now *Michaiab* having by this his revelation greatly displeased the King, & the Prophets, whose spirit he discovered, was stroken by *Zidkiah* one of *Baals* Prophets, and by *Ahab* himselfe committed to prison: where hee appointed him to bee reserved and fed with bread of affliction till he returned in peace. But *Michaiab*, not fearing to reply, answered, *If thou returne in peace, the Lord hath not spoken by mee*. Nevertheless *Ahab* went on in that warre, and was wounded to death: *Jehosaphat* returned to *Jerusalem*, where he was rehed by *Jehu* the Prophet for assisting an idolatrous Prince, and

2 Chron. 18. one that hated God.

After this the *Ammonites* or *Damascens*, joyned with the *Moabites*, *Ammonites* & *Edomites* to invade *Judea*: who passe *Jordan* & encamp at *Engaddi*; & when *Jehosaphat* gathered his army, the prophet *Jahaziel* foretold him of the victory, which should be obtained without any blood-shed of his part: & so when *Jehosaphat* approached, this assembly of Nations, the *Ammonites* & *Moabites*, disagreeing with the *Edomites*, & quarrelling for some causes among themselves, those of *Ammon* & *Moab* set upon the *Edomites*, & brake them utterly: which done, they also invaded each other; in which broil *Jehosaphat* arriving, took the spoile of them all without any loss of his part, as it was foretold & promised

3 Chron. 20.

vised by God. Notwithstanding this victory, *Jehosaphat*, forgetting that he was formerly reprehended for assisting an Idolatrous King, did notwithstanding joyn with *Ochaziah*, the son of *Ahab*, in preparing a Fleet to send to *Ophir*, hoping of the like return which *Salomon* had: but as *Eleizer* the Prophet foretold him, his ships perished, and were broken in the port of *Ezion Gaber*, and so that enterprise was overthrown.

2 Chron. 20.

Yet he taketh part with *Fehoram*, the brother of *Ochozias*, against the *Moabites*, with which Kings of *Juda* and *Israel*, the *Edomites* joyn their forces, not forgetting, it seems, that the *Moabites*, assisted by the *Ammonites*, had not long before destroyed their army. The *Moabites*, subjects to *David* and *Salomon*, forsaking the Kings of *Juda*, gave themselves for vassals to *Feroboam*, and so they continued to his successors till the death of *Ahab*: but *Jehosaphat*, notwithstanding the Idolatry of his Colleague, yet as it seemeth he was drawn into this war, both to be avenged of the *Moabites* for their defection from *Juda* to *Israel*, as also because they had lately joyned themselves with the *Syrians* against *Jehosaphat*, and thirdly, to punish their double rebellion who first forsook *Juda*, & now *Israel*.

Both Kings resolved to passe by the way of *Idumea*, thereby the better to assure that Nation; for we find that both *Moab*, *Ammon* and *Edom* were all in the field together at *Engaddi* against *Jehosaphat*: But whether they had then declared themselves against *Jehosaphat*, it is not certain; for in the 2. of *Chron*. 11. vers. 8. it is written, that in the time of *Iehoram* the son of *Jehosaphat*, *Edom* rebelled: and therefore it seemeth to me that the *Edomites*, when they were slain by *Moab* and *Ammon*, not finding themselves satisfied in such conditions as they required, offered to return from them, and to joyn themselves with the army of *Juda*. For that they were numbred among the enemies of *Jehosaphat*, it is plain in the 2. of *Chron*. the 20. and as plain 2. 21. v. 8. that they were not declared, nor had made them a King, till *Jehosaphats* death. Now in the passage of these Kings towards *Moab*, whether it were by the extraordinary heat of the year, or whether the *Idumeans* having a purpose to rebell, missed the army of *Juda* and *Israel*, with intent to intestine them for want of water; true it is, that they suffered the same, if not a greater thirst than the armies of *Cassius* and *M. Antonius* did in their *Parthian* expeditions; and had in all likelihood utterly perished, had not *Elisha* taught them to cut trenches whereunto the water spring, by which not onely *Jehosaphat* and his army, but *Iehoram* King of *Israel*, an Idolater was relieved: the great mercy and goodness of God having ever been prone to save the evill for the good, whereas he never destroyed the good for the evill.

The miserable issue of this warre, and how *Moab* burnt his son, or the son of the King of *Edom*, for sacrifice, on the rampire of his own City, I have already written in the life of *Fehoram* among the Kings of *Israel*. *Jehosaphat* reigned 25. years and died, he was buried in the valley of *Jehosaphat*, and a part of the *Pyramis* set over his grave is yet to be seen; saith *Brochard*. His acts are written at large by *Jehu* the son of *Hanani*.

2 King. 3.

There lived with *Jehosaphat*, *Ophratenes* in *Assyria*; *Capesus*; and *Tiberinus* Kings of the *Albani* in *Italy*; of the latter the river *Tiber* (formerly *Albula*) took name. In *Jehosaphats* time also ruled *Mecades* or *Mecadsin* *Athaus*: *Agelas* or *Ageflaus* in *Gordis*; and *Archilous* of the same race, of the *Heracleids* the seventh in *Lacedamon*: *Isidorus* ruled the *Tyrians*; *Achab*, *Ochozias*, and *Fehoram* the *Israelites*.

Brochard. sac. 3.

## CHAP. XX.

Of *Iehoram* the sonne of *Jehosaphat*, and *Ahazia*.

S. I.

That *Iehoram* was made King sundry times.

**I**EHORAM the Son of *Jehosaphat* King of *Juda* began to reign at thirty two years of age, and lived untill hee was forty years old, being eight yeasa King: but of these eight years, which *Fehoram* is said to have reigned, four are to be reckoned in the life of his father, who going to the *Syrian* warre with *Ahab*, left this *Fehoram* King in his stead, as *Ahab* did his son *Ahazia*. This appears by the severall beginnings, which are given in Scripture to the two *Fehoram* Kings of *Israel* and *Juda*, and to *Ahazia* the eldest son of *Ahab*. For *Ahazia* is said

1 King. 11.

v. 12.

said to have begun his reign, in the seventeenth year of *Jehosaphat*. *Jehoram* the brother of *Ahaziah* succeeded him in the 2. year of *Jehoram* the son of *Jehosaphat* King of *Juda*; that is, in the next year after that *Jehoram* of *Juda* was designed King by his father; it being (as we find elsewhere) the eighteenth year of *Jehosaphat* himself, who went with the *Israelites* against *Moab*. Hereby it appears that the full power and execution of the royal office was retained still by *Jehosaphat*, who governed absolutely by himself, nor communicating the rule with his son. But in the fifth year of *Jehoram* King of *Israel*, which was the two and twentieth of *Jehosaphat*, the old King took unto him, as partner in the government, this his eldest son, who was at that time 32. years old, his Father being 57. Now forasmuch as *Jehosaphat* reigned 25. years, it is evident that his sonne did not reign alone till the eighth of *Joram* King of *Israel*. The like regard is to be had in accounting the times of other Kings of *Juda* & *Israel*, who did not alwayes reign precisely so long as the bare letter of the Text may seem at first to affirm: but their years were sometimes compleat, sometimes onely current, sometimes confounded with the years of their successors or foregoers, and must therefore be found by comparing their times with the years of those others, with whom they did begin and end.

It were perhaps a thing lesse needfull than curious, to enquire into the reasons moving *Jehosaphat* either to assume unto him his son as partner in the Kingdome, whilst hee was able himself to command both in peace and in warre, the like having never been done by any of his progenitors, or having once (in the 17. of his reign) vouchsafed unto him that honour, to resume it unto himself, or at least wise to deferre the confirmation of it, untill four or five years were passed. Yet forasmuch as to enter into the examination of these passages, may be a mean to find some light, whereby we may more clearly discover the causes of much extraordinary businesse ensuing, I hold it not amiss, to make such conjecture, as the circumstances of the Story, briefly handled in the Scriptures may seem to approve.

We are therefore to consider, that this King *Jehosaphat* was the first of *Rehoboams* issue that ever entered into any freight league with the Kings of the ten Tribes. All that reigned in *Juda* before him, had with much labour and long war, tired themselves in vain, making small profit of the greatest advantages that could be wished. Wherefore *Jehosaphat* thought it the wisest way, to make a league offensive and defensive between *Israel* and *Juda*, whereby each might enjoy their own in quiet.

This confederacy made by a religious King, with one that did hate the Lord, could not long prosper, as not issuing from the true root and fountain of all wisdom: yet as a piece of sound policy, doubtlesse it wanted not fair pretences of much common good thereby likely to arise, with mutuall fortification of both those Kingdoms, against the uncircumcised Nations their ancient enemies. This apparent benefit, being so inestimable a jewel, that it might not easily be lost, but continue as hereditary from father to son, it was thought a very good course to have it confirmed by some sure bond of affinity, and thereupon was *Ataliah* the daughter of *Omri*, and sister of *Ahab* King of *Israel*, given in marriage to *Jehoram*, who was son and heir apparent to the King of *Juda*. This Lady was of a masculine spirit, and had learned so much of Queen *Jezabel* her brothers wife, that she durst undertake, and could thoroughly perform a great deal more in *Jerusalem*, than the other knew how to compass in *Samarita*. Shee was indeed a fire-brand ordained by God to consume a great part of the noblest houses in *Juda*, and perhaps of those men or their children, whose worldly wisdom, regardless of Gods pleasure, had brought her in.

The first fruits of this great league, was the *Syrian* war at *Ramoth Gilead*, wherein *Juda* and *Israel* did adventure equally, but the profit of the victory should have redounded wholly to *Ahab*: as godly Princes very seldome thrive by marching with Idolaters, nor rather serve the turns of those false friends, who being ill affected to God himself, cannot be well affected to his servants. Before their setting forth, *Ahab* designed, as King, his son *Ahaziah*; not so much perhaps in regard of the uncertain events of war (for none of his predecessors had ever done the like, upon the like occasions) nor as fearing the threatnings of the Prophet *Micahiah* (for he despised them) as inviting *Jehosaphat* by his own example, to take the same course, wherein he prevailed.

## §. II.

Probable conjectures of the motives inducing the old King *Jehosaphat* to change his purpose often, in making his son *Jehoram* King.

Many arguments do very strongly prove *Jehoram* to have been wholly over-ruled by his wife; especially for his forsaking the religion of his godly Ancestors, and following the abominable superstitions of the house of *Ahab*.

That he was a woman of intollerable pride, and abhorring to live a private life, the whole course of her actions witnesseth at large. Much vain matter she was able to produce, whereby to make her husband think that his brethren and kindred were but mean and unworthy persons in comparision of him, and of his children, which were begotten upon the daughter and sister of two great Kings, not upon base women, and meer subjects. The Court of *Ahab*, and his famous victories obtained against the *Syrian Benadad*, were matter sufficient to make an insolent man think highly of himself, as being allied to honourably; who could otherwise have found in his heart well enough, to despise all his brethren, as being the eldest, and heir apparent to the Crown, whereof already he had, in a manner, the possession.

How soon his vices brake out, or how long hee dissembled them and his idolatrous religion, it cannot certainly be known. Like enough it is, that some smoke, out of the hidden fire, did very soon make his fathers eyes to water; who thereupon caused the young man to know himself better, by making him fall back into rank among his younger brethren. And surely the doings of *Jehosaphat* about the same time, argue no small distemper of the whole country, through the misgovernment of his ungodly son. For the good King was faine to make his progresse round about the Land, reclaiming the people unto the service of God, and appointing Judges throughout all the strong Cities of *Juda* City by City. This had been a needlesse labour, if the religion taught and strongly maintained by *Aza*, and by himself, had not suffered alteration, and the course of Justice been perverted, by the power of such as had born authority. But the necessitie that then was of reformation, appears by the charge which the King did give to the Judges; and by his commission given to one of the Priests in spiritual causes, and to the Steward of his house in temporal matters, to be general over-seers.

This was not till after the death of *Ahaziah* the son of *Ahab*; but how long after it is uncertain. For *Jehoram* the brother of *Ahaziah* began his reign (as hath been already noted) in the eighteenth of *Jehosaphat*, which was then accounted the second of *Jehoram*, *Jehosaphat* son, though afterward this *Jehoram* of *Juda* had another first and second year, even in his fathers time, before he reigned alone, as the best Chronologers and Expositors of the holy Text agree. So he continued in private estate, untill the two and twentieth of his fathers reign, at which time, though the occasions inducing his restitution to former dignity are not set down, yet we may not think, that motives thereto, appearing substantially, were wanting: *Jehoram* of *Israel* held the same correspondency with *Jehosaphat* that his father had done; and made use of it. He drew the *Judeans* into the war of *Moab*, at which time it might well be, that the young Prince of *Juda* was again ordained King by his father, as in the *Syrian* expedition he had been. Or if we ought rather to think, that the preparations for the enterprize against *Moab* did not occupy so much time, as from the eighteenth of *Jehosaphat*, in which year that Nation rebelled against *Israel*, unto his two and twentieth; yet the daily negotiations between the two Kings of *Juda* and *Israel*, and the affinity between them contracted in the person of *Jehoram*, might offer some good occasions thereunto. Neither is it certain how the behaviour of the younger sons, in their elder brothers disgrace, might cause their Father to put him in possession for fear of tumult after his death; or the deep dissimulation of *Jehoram* himself might win the good opinion both of his Father and Brethren; it being a thing usual in mischievous fell natures, to be as abject and servile in time of adversity, as insolent and bloudy upon advantage. This is manifest, that being repossessed of his former estate, he demeaned himself in such wise toward his brethren, as caused their father to enable them, not onely with store of silver and gold, and of precious things, (which kind of liberality other Kings doubtlesse had used unto their younger sons) but with the custody of strong Cities in *Juda*, to assure them, if it might have been, by unwonted means, against unwonted perils.

## S. III.

The doings of Jehoram when hee reigned alone; and the rebellion of Edom and Libna.

**B**Ut all this providence availed nothing; for an higher providence had otherwise determined of the sequell. When once the good old man, their Father, was dead, the younger sons of *Jehosaphat* found strong Cities, a weak defence, against the power of him unto whom the Citizens were obedient. If they lay upon the summons of a King their brother, then had he them without any more ado; if they stood upon their guard, then were they Traitors, and so unable to hold out against him, who besides his own power, was able to bring the forces of the *Israelitish* Kingdom against them; so that the apparent likelihood of their final overthrow, sufficed to make all forsake them in the very beginning. Howsoever it was, they were all taken and slain, and with them for company many great men of the Land, such belike, as either had taken their part, when the Tyrant sought their lives, or had been appointed Rulers of the Country, when *Jehoram* was deposed from his Government; in which Office they, without forbearing to do justice, could hardly avoid the doing of many things derogatory to their young Master, which if hee would now call treason, saying that he was then King, who durst say the contrary?

After this *Jehoram* took upon him, as being now Lord alone, to make invasions in Religion, wherein he was not contented, as other Idolatrous Princes, to give way and safe conduct unto Superstition and Idolatry, nor to provoke and encourage the people to that sinne, whereto it is wonderful that they were so much addicted, having such knowledge of God, and of his detesting that above all other sins; but hee used compulsion, and was (if not the very first) the first that is registred, to have set up Irreligion by force.

Whilest he was thus busied at home, in doing what he listed, the *Edomites* his Tributaries rebelled against him abroad; and having hitherto, since *Dauid's* time, been governed by a Vice-Roy, did now make unto themselves a King: Against these *Jehoram* in person made an expedition, taking along with him his Princes, and all his Chariots, with which he obtained victory in the field, compelling the rebels to flee into their places of advantage, whereof he forced no one, but went away contented with the honour that he had gotten in beating and killing some of those whom he should have subdued, and kept his servants. Now began the prophecy of *Isaac* to take effect, wherein he foretold, that *Esau* in proceesse of time should break the yoke of *Jacob*. For after this the *Edomites* could never be reclaimed by any of the Kings of *Juda*, but held their own so well, that when, after many civill and forreign wars, the Jewes by sundry Nations had been brought low; *Antipater* the *Edomite*, with *Herod* his son, and others of that race following them, became Lords of the Jewes, in the decrepit age of *Israel*, and reigned as Kings, even in *Jerusalem* it self.

The freedome of the *Edomites*, though purchased somewhat dearly, encouraged *Libna*, a great City within *Juda*, which in the time of *Joshua* had a peculiar King, to rebel against *Jehoram*, and set it self in liberty. *Libna* stood in the confines of *Benjamin* and of *Dan*, far from the assistance of any bordering enemies to *Juda*, and therefore so unlikely it was to have maintained it self in liberty, that it may seem strange how it could escape from utter destruction, or at the least from some terrible vengeance, most likely to have been taken, by their powerfull, cruell, and thoroughly incensed Lord. The *Israelite* held such good intelligence at that time with *Juda*, that he would not have accepted the Town, had it offered it self unto him: neither doe we read that it fought how to cast it self into a new subjection, but continued a free state. The rebellion of it against *Jehoram*, was, because he had forsaken the Lord God of his Fathers; which I take to have not only been the first & remote cause, but even the next and immediate reason, moving the inhabitants to do as they did: for it was a Town of the Levites, who must needs be driven into great extremities, when a religion, contrary to Gods Law, had not onely some allowance to countenance it by the King, but compulsive authority to force unto it all that were unwilling. As for the use of the Temple at *Jerusalem* (which, being deserv't men, they might fear to lose by this rebellion) it was never denied to those of the

deserv'd Tribes by any of the Religious Kings, who rather invited the *Israelites* thither, and gave them kind entertainment: under Idolaters they must have been without it, whether they lived free, or in subjection. Yet it seems that private reasons were not wanting, which might move them rather to doe than suffer that which was unwarrantable. For in the generall visitation before remembered, wherein *Jehosaphat* reformed his kingdom, the good old King appointing new Governours, and giving them especial charge to doe justice without respect of persons, used these words: *The Levites shall be before you: Be of good courage, and doe it, and the Lord shall be with the good.* By these phrases, it seems, than he encouraged them against the more powerfull, than just proceedings of his son, whom if the Levites did (according to the trust reposed in them) neglect in discharging their duties, likely it is that he meant to be even with them, and make them now to feel, as many Princes of the Land had done, his heave indignation. How it happened that *Libna* was not hereupon destroyed, yea, that it was not (for ought shew'd we can read) so much as besieged or molested, may justly seem very strange. And the more strange it is in regard of the mighty Armies, which *Jehosaphat* was able to raise, being sufficient to have over-whelmed any one Town, and buried it under the earth, which they might well in one month have cast into it with shovels, by ordinarie appliances.

But it seems that of those great numbers which his Father could have levied, there were not many whom *Jehoram* could well trust; and therefore perhaps he thought it another losse, to let one Town goe, than to put weapons into their hands, who were more likely to follow the example of *Libna*; than to punish it. So desperate is the condition of Tyrants, who thinking it a greater happiness to be feared, than to be loved; are thus themselves to stand in fear of those, by whom they might have been dreadful unto others.

## S. IV.

Of the miseries falling upon Jehoram, and of his death.

**T**Hese afflictions not sufficing to make any impression of Gods displeasure in the mind of the wicked Prince, a Prophecie in writing was delivered to him, which threatened both his people, his children, his wives, and his own body. Hereby likewise it appears that he was a cruell persecutor of Gods servants; in as much as the Prophets durst not reprove him to his face, as they had done many of his predecessors, both good and evil Kings; but were faine to denounce Gods Judgements against him by letters, keeping themselves close and far from him. This Epistle is said to have been sent unto him from *Elias* the Prophet. But *Elias* was translated, and *Elizeus* prophesied in his stead before this time, even in the dayes of *Jehosaphat*. Wherefore it may be that *Elias* left this prophecie in writing behind him, or that (as some conjecture) the error of one letter in writing, was the occasion that we read *Elias* for *Elizeus*. Indeed any thing may rather be believed than the Tradition held by some of the Jewish Rabbins, that *Elias* from heaven did send this Epistle; a tale somewhat like to the fable of our Ladies letters, devised by *Erasmus*, or of the Verse that was sent from heaven to *S. Giles*.

But whosoever was the Author of this threatening Epistle, the accomplishment of the prophecie was as terrible as the sentence. For the *Philistines* and *Arabians* brake into *Juda*, and took the King's house, wherein they found all, or many of his children, and wives, all which they slew, or carried away, with great part of his goods. These *Philistines* had not presumed since the time of *Dauid*, to make any offensive warre till now; for they were by him almost confounded, and had lost the best of their Towns, maintaining themselves in the rest of their small territories, by defensive arms, to which they were constrained at *Gibbethon* by the *Israelites*. The *Arabians* were likely to have been then, as they are now, a naked people, all horsemen, and ill appointed; their Countrey affording no other furniture, than such as might make them fitter to rob and spoile in the open fields, than to offend strong Cities, such as were thick set in *Juda*. True it is that in ages long after following, they conquered all the South parts of the world then known, in a very short space of time, destroying some, and building other some very stately Cities. But it must be considered, that this was when they had learned of the

T t

Romans

Roman the Art of Warre; and that the provisions which they found, together with the Arts which they learned, in one subdued Province, did make them able and skillfull in pursuing their conquest; and going on into Regions far removed from them. As this day having lost in effect all that they had gotten, such of them as live in *Arabia* is selfe good, but ill appointed; very dangerous to passengers, but unable to deal with good Soldiers; as riding stark naked; and rather trusting in the swiftnesse of their horses, than in any other means of resistance, where they are well opposed. And such a little better, may they seem to have bin, that spoiled *Judea* in the time of *Jehoram*. For this Countrey was always barren and desart, wanting manfull Arts, whereby to supply the naturals with furniture: neither are these bands named as chiefe in that action, but rather adherents of the *Philistims*. Out of this we may infer, that one half, yea, for one quarter of the numbers found in the least muster of *Isaiah* and *Benjamin*, under *Jehoshaphat* (wherein were enrolled three hundred and eightie thousand fighting men) had been enough to have driven away farre greater forces than these enemies are likely to have brought into the field, had not the people been unable to deal with them; for lack of weapons, which were now kept from them by their Princes jealousie, as in *Sauls* time by the policie of the *Philistims*.

It may seem that the house of the King which these invaders took, was not his Palace in *Jerusalem*; but rather some other house of his abroad in the Countrey, where his wives and children at that time lay for their recreation: because we read not that they did sack the Citie, or spoyle the Temple, which would have invited them as a more commodious booke, had they got possession thereof. Yet perhaps, they took *Jerusalem* itself by surprize, the people being disarmed; and the Kings guard too weak to keep them out; yea had not the courage to hold it, because it was so large and populous: and therefore having done what spoyle they could, with-drew themselves with such purchase as they were able safely to convey away.

The slaughter committed by *Jehu* on the two and fortie brethren of *Ahaziah*, or, (as they are called elsewhere) so many of his brothers sons, and the cruell massacre wherein all the Royall seed perished (only *Jehaz* excepted) under the tyrannie of *Athalia*, following within two years after this invasion of the *Philistims* and *Arabians*, make it seem probable, that the sons of *Jehoram* were not all slain at once, but that rather the first murder began in his own time, and was seconded by many other heave blows, wherewith his house was incessantly stricken, untill it was in a manner quite hewed down.

After these calamities, the hand of God was extended against the body of this wicked King, smiting him with a grievous disease in his bowels, which left him not untill his guts fell out, and his wretched soul departed from his miserable carcase. The people of the Land, as they had small cause of comfort in his life, so had they not the good manners to pretend sorrow for his death; wherefore hee was denied a place of buriall among his Ancestors the Kings of *Juda*, though his own sonne succeeded him in the Kingdome, who was guided by the same spirits that had been his Fathers evil Angels. *Athalia* had other matters to trouble her head, than the pompous interring of a dead husband. Shee was thinking how to provide for the future, to maintain her own greatness, to retain her favourites in their authoritie, and to place about her own Counsellours of the house of *Ahab*, as were fitt for her turn. Wherefore she thought it unreasonable to make much ado about a thing of nothing, and offend the peoples eyes, with a stately funeral of a man by them detested: but rather chose to let the blame of things passed be layd upon the dead, than to procure an ill opinion of her self, and hers, which it now did concern her to avoyd. Such is the qualitie of wicked Instigators, having made greedy use of bad employments, to charge, not only with his own vices, but with their faults also, the man whose evil inclinations their sinister counsells have made worse, when once he is gone, and can profit them no longer. The death of *Jehoram* fel out indeed in a buisie time; when his friend and cousin the *Israelite*, who had the same name, was entangled in a difficult warre against the *Aramites*; and therefore could have had no better leisure to help *Athalia*, in setting of things according to her own mind, than hee had (perhaps through the same hinderance) to help her husband, when he was distressed by the *Philistims*: Yea, rather he needed and craved the assistance of the men of *Juda*, for the taking in of *Ramoth Gilead*, where they had

not sped so well the last time, that they should willingly run thither again, unless they were very fairly intreated.

The acts of his wicked man I have thought good to handle the more particularly (pursuing the examination of all occurrences, as far as the circumstances remembered in holy Scripture would guide me by their directions) to the end that it might more plainly appear, how the corrupted affections of men, impugning the revealed will of God, accomplish nevertheless his hidden purpose, and without miraculous means, confound themselves in the seeming-wise devices of their own folly: as likewise to the end that all men might learn to submit their judgements to the ordinance of God, rather than to think, that they may safely dispense with his commandements, and follow the prudent conceits which worldly wisdom dictateth unto them. For in such kind of unhappy subtilties, it is manifest that *Athalia* was able to furnish both her Husband and her Son; but the issue of them partly hath appeared already, and partly will appear, in that which immediately followeth.

## S. V.

Of the reign of Ahaziah, and his businesse with the King of Israel.

*Chazias*, or *Ahaziah*, the son of *Jehoram* and *Athalia*, began his reign over *Isaiah*, in the twelfth year of *Jehoram* the son of *Ahab* King of *Israel*, and reigned but one year. Touching his age, it is a point of much more difficulty than importance to know it: yet hath it bred much disputation, whereof I see no more probable conclusion than that of *Torniellus*, alleging the Edition of the *Septuagint* at *Rome*, Anno Domini 1588, which saith that he was twenty years old in the beginning of his kingdom; and the Annotations thereupon; which cite other Copies, that doe give him two years more. Like enough he is to have been young: for he was governed by his Mother, and her Ministers, who gave him counsell, by which he perished. In matter of Religion he altered none of his fathers courses. In matter of State he likewise upheld the league made with the house of *Ahab*. He was much busied in doing little, and that with ill successe. He accompanied his Cousin the *Israelite* against *Ramoth Gilead*, which they wan, but without blowes: for the *Aramites* fought so well, that the King of *Israel* was faine to adventure his own person, which escaped not un wounded.

The Town being won, was manned strongly, in expectation of some attempt likely to be made by *Hazael* King of *Arabs*: which done, *Jehoram* King of *Israel* with-drew himself to the City of *Iezrael*, where with more quiet he might attend the curing of his wounds; and *Ahaziah* returned to *Jerusalem*. It seems that he was but newly come home (for he reigned in all scanty one year, whereof the former expedition, with the preparations for it, had taken up a great part,) when he did make a new journey; as it were for good manners sake, to visit the King of *Israel*, who lay sore of his wounds. Belike *Athalia* was brewing some new plots, which his presence would have hindered, and therefore sought every occasion to thrust him abroad: for otherwise it was but a vain piece of work so to leave his kingdome, having no other businesse than by way of complement to goe see one whom he had seen yesterday. Certain it is, that the Lord had resolved at this time to put in execution that heavy judgement, which he had laid by the mouth of *Elijah* the Prophet upon the house of *Ahab*. And hereupon at this time had he disposed not only the concurrence of all other things, which in mans eyes might seem to have been accidental, but the very thoughts and affections of such persons, as intended nothing less than the fulfilling of his high pleasure. Of these *Athalia* doubtlesse was one, whose mischievous purposes it will shortly be needfull, for explanation of some difficulties arising, that we diligently consider and examine.

s. VI.

*How Ahazia perished with the house of Ahab: and how that Familie was destroyed by Jehu.*

**T**He whole Armie of Israel, with all the principall Captains, lying in Ramoth Gilead, a Disciple of Elizeus the Prophet came in among the Captains that were sitting together, who calling out among them Jehu, a principall man, took him apart, and anointed him King over Israel, rehearsing unto him the Prophecie of Elias against the house of Ahab, and letting him understand that it was the pleasure of God to make him executioner of that sentence. The fashion of the Messenger was such as bred in the Captains a desire to know the errand, which Jehu thought meet to let them know, as doubting whether they had over-heard all the talk or no. When hee had acquainted them with the whole matter, they made no delay, but forth-with proclaimed him king. For the Prophecie of Elias was well known among them, neither durst any one oppose himself against him, that was by God ordained to perform it.

Jehu, who had upon the sudden this great honour thrown upon him, was not slow to put himself in possession of it, but used the first heat of their affections, who joyined with him, in setting on foot the business which neerly concerned him, and was not to be fore-slowed, being no more his own than Gods.

The first care taken was that no news of the revolt might be carried to Jezebel, whereby the King might have had warning either to fight or flee: this being foreseen, he marched swiftly away, to take the Court while it was yet secure. King Jehoram was now so well recovered of his wounds, that he could endure to ride abroad, for which cause it seems that there was much feasting, and joy made, especially by Queen Jezebel, who kept her state so well, that the brethren of Ahazia, coming thither at this time, did make it as well their errand to salute the Queen, as to visit the King.

Certain it is, that since the rebellion of Moab against Israel, the house of Ahab did never so much flourish as at this time. Seventy Princes of the blood Royall there were, that lived in Samaria; Jehoram the son of Queen Jezebel had won Ramoth Gilead, which his Father had attempted in vain, with losse of his life; and hee won it by valiant fight, wherein he received wounds, of which the danger was now past, but the honour likely to continue. The amitie was so great between Israel and Juda, that it might suffice to daunt all their common enemies, leaving no hope of successe to any rebellious enterpriser: so that now the prophecie of Elias might be forgotten, or no otherwise remembered, than as an unlikely tale by them that beheld the majesticall face of the Court, wherein so great a friend as the King of Juda was entertained, and fortie Princes of his blood expected.

In the midst of this securitie, whilest these great Estates were (perhaps) either consulting about prosecution of their intents, first against the Aramites, and then against Moab, Edom, and other rebels and enemies: or else were triumphing in joy of that which was already achieved, and the Queen-mother dressing her self in the bravest manner to come down amongst them; tidings were brought in, that the watchman had from a Tower discovered a company coming. These newes were not very troublesome: for the Armie that lay in Ramoth Gilead, to be readie against all attempts of the Aramites, was likely enough to be discharged upon some notice taken that the enemy would not, or could not stirre. Onely the King sent out an Horse-man to know what the matter was, and to bring him word. The messenger coming to Jehu, and asking whether all were well, was retained by him, who intended to give the King as little warning as might be. The seeming negligence of this fellow in not returning with an answer, might argue the matter to be of small importance: yet the King to be satisfied, sent out another that should bring him word how all went; and hee was likewise detained by Jehu. These dumb shewes bred some suspicion in Jehoram, whom the watchman certified of all that happened. And now the companie drew so neer, that they might, though not perfectly, be discerned, and notice taken of Jehu himself by the furious manner of his marching. Wherefore the King that was loth to discover any weaknesse, caused his Chariot to be made ready, and issued forth with Ahazia King of Juda in his

company,

company, whose presence added majesty to his train, when strength to resist, or expedition to flee, had bin more needfull. This could not be done so hastily, but that Jehu was come even to the towns end, & there they met each other in the field of Naboth. Jehoram began to salute Jehu with termes of peace, but receiving a bitter answer, his heart failed him, so that crying out upon the treason to his fellow king, he turned away to have fled. But Jehu soon overtook him with an arrow, wherewith he strook him dead, and threw his carkasse into that field, which, purchased with the blood of the rightfull owner, was to be watered with the blood of the unjust possessor. Neither did Ahazia escape so well, but that he was arrested by a wound, which held him till death did seize upon him.

The Kings Palace was joyning to the wall, by the gate of the Citie, where Jezebel might soon be advertised of this calamitie, if she did not with her own eyes behold it. Now it was high time for her to call to God for mercie, whose judgement, pronounced against her long before, had overtaken her, when she least expected it. But she, full of indignation and proud thoughts, made her self ready in all haste, and painted her face, hoping with her stately and imperious looks to daunt the Traitor, or at least to utter some Apophthegme that should expresse her brave spirit, and brand him with such a reproach as might make him odious for ever. Little did she think upon the hungry dogs that were ordained to devour her, whose paunches she sibilum, with which she besmeared her eyes, would more offend, than the scolding language wherewith she armed her tongue could trouble the ears of him that had her in his power. As Jehu drew neer, she opened her window, & looking out upon him, began to put him in mind of Zimri, that had not long enjoyed the fruits of his treason, and murder of the King his Master. This was in meer humane valuation stoutly spoken, but was indeed a part of miserable folly; as are all things, howsoever laudable, if they have an ill relation to God the Lord of all. Her own Eunuchs that stood by and heard her, were not affected so much as with any compassion of her fortune; much lesse was her enemy daunted with her proud spirit. When Jehu saw that she did use the little remainder of her life in seeking to vex him, hee made her presently to understand her own estate, by deeds and not by words. He only called to her servants to know which of them would be on his side, and soon found them ready to offer their service before the very face of their proud Lady. Hereupon he commanded them to cast her down head-long: which immediately they performed, without all regard of her greatnesse and estate, wherein she had a few hours before shined so gloriously in the eyes of men; of men that considered not the judgements of God that had been denounced against her.

So perished this accursed woman by the rude hands of her own servants, at the commandement of her greatest enemy, that was yesterday her subject, but now her Lord: and she perished miserably, struggling in vain with base groomes, who countumeliously did hale and thrust her, whilest her insulting enemy sat on Horse-back, adding indignitie to her griefe by scornfull beholding the shamefull manner of her fall, and trampling her body under foot. Her dead carkasse that was left without the walls, was devoured by dogs; and her very memorie was odious. Thus the vengeance of God rewarded her Idollatry, murder, and oppression, with flow, but sure payment, and full interest.

Ahazia King of Juda fleeing a pace from Jehu, was over-taken by the way where he lurked; and receiving his deadly wound in the kingdome of Samaria, was suffered to get him gone (which he did in all haste) and seek his buriall in his own kingdome: and this favour he obtained for his grand-fathers sake, not for his fathers nor his own. He died at Megiddo, and was thence carried to Jerusalem, where he was entered with his Ancestors, having reigned about one year.

## CHAP. XXI.

Of Athalia; and whose son he was that succeeded her.

S. I.

Of Athalia's usurping the Kingdome, and what pretences she might forge.

2 Chron. 22. 9



After the death of *Ahazia*, it is sayd that his house was not able to retain the Kingdome: which Note, and the proceedings of *Athalia* upon the death of her son, have given occasion to divers opinions concerning the Pedigree of *Josias*, who reigned shortly after. For *Athalia* being thus dispoiled of her son, under whose name she had ruled at her pleasure, did forth-with lay hold upon all the Princes of the blood, and slew them, that so she might occupie the Royall Throne her self, and reign as Queen, rather than live a Subject. She had before-hand put into great place, and made Counsellors unto her son, such as were fittest for her purpose, and ready at all times to execute her will: that she kept a strong guard about her, it is very likely; and as likely it is that the great execution done by *Jehoram*, upon the Princes, and many of the Nobilitie, had made the people tame, and fearfull to stir, whatsoever they saw or heard.

Yet ambition, how violent soever it be, is seldome or never so shamelesse as to refuse the commoditie of goodly pretences offering themselves; but rather scrapes together all that will any way serve to colour her proceedings. Wherefore it were not absurd for us to think, that *Athalia*, when she saw the Princes of the Royall blood, all of them in a manner, slain by her husband, and afterwards his own children destroyed by the *Philistines*, began even then to play her own game, reducing by artificiall practice, into fair likelihoods, those possibilities wherewith her husbands bad fortune had presented her. Not without great shew of reason, either by her own mouth, or by some trustie creature of hers, might she give him to understand, how needfull it were to take the best order whilst as yet he might, for fear of the worst that might happen. If the issue of *David*, which now remained only in his Familie, should by any accident fail (as wofull experience had already shewed what might after come to passe) the people of *Juda* were not unlikely to chosse a King of some new stock, a popular seditious man peradventure, one that to countenance his own unworthinesse, would not care what aspersions he layd upon that Royall house, which was fallen down. And who could assure him, that some ambitious spirit, fore-seeing what might be gotten thereby, did not already contrive the destruction of him, and all his seed? Wherefore it were the wisest way to design by his authoritie not only his successe, but also the reversioner, and so to provide, that the Crown might never be subject to any rising, but remain in the disposition of them that loved him best, if the worst that might be feared comming to passe, his own posteritie could not retain it.

Such persuasions being urged, and earnestly followed, by the importunate sollicitation of her that governed his affections, were able to make the jealous Tyrant think, that the onely way to frustrate all devices of such as gaped after a change, was to make her Heir the last and youngest of his house, whom it most concerned, as being the Queen-Mother, to uphold the first and eldest.

If *Athalia* took no such course as this in her husbands time, yet might she do it in her sons. For *Ahazia* (besides that he was wholly ruled by his mother) was not likely to take much care for the securitie of his half-brethren, or their children; as accounting his Fathers other wives, in respect of his own-born-Mother, little better than Concubines, and their children basely begotten. But if this mischievous woman forgot her self so far in her wicked policie, that she lost all opportunitie which the weaknesse of her husband and son did afford, of prosecuting unto her self some seeming Title; yet could she afterwards feign some such matter, as boldly shee might: being sure that none would ask to see her evidence, for fear of being sent to learn the certaintie of her son or husband in another World. But I rather think that shee took order for

for her affairs before-hand. For though she had no reason to suspect or fear the sudden death of her son, yet it was the wisest way to provide betimes against all that might happen, whilst her husbands issue by other women was young and unable to resist. We plainly find that the Brethren or Nephewes of *Ahazia*, to the number of two and forty; were sent to the Court of *Israel*, only to salute the children of the King, and the children of the Queen. The slender occasion of which long journey, considered together with the qualitie of these persons (being in effect all the stock of *Jehoram* that could be grown to any strength) makes it very suspicious, that their entertainment in *Jezabels* house would onely have been more formall, but little differing in substance, from that which they found at the hand of *Jehu*. He that looks into the courses held both before and after by these two Queens, will find cause enough to think no lesse. Of such as have aspired unto Lordships not belonging to them, and thrust out the right Heirs by pretence of Testaments, that had no other validitie than the sword of such as claimed by them could give, Histories of late, yea of many Ages, afford plentifull examples: and the rule of *Salomon* is true: Is there any thing whereof one may say, Behold, this is new? It hath been already in the old time that was before us. That a King might shed his brothers blood, was proved by *Salomon* upon *Adonia*; that hee might alien the Crown from his naturall Heirs, *David* had given proof; but these had good ground of their doings. They which follow examples that please them, will neglect the reasons of those examples, if they suppose them not, and rest contented with the practice, as more willing by shewing what they may do, than acknowledging why *Salomon* slew his brother that had begun one rebellion, & was entering into another. *Jehoram* slew all his brethren, which were better than *David* purchased the kingdome, and might the more freely dispose of it, yet he dispoiled of it as the Lord appointed: if *Jehoram*, who had lost much and gotten nothing; thought that he might alien the remainder at his pleasure; or if *Ahazia* sought to cut off the succession of his brethren, or of their issue; either of these was to be answered with the words which *Jehojada* the Priest used afterwards, in declaring the title of *Josias*: Behold, the Kings son must reign; as the Lord hath said of the sons of *David*. Wherefore though I hold it very probable, that *Athalia* did pretend some title, whatsoever it might be, to the Crown of *Juda*; yet it is most certain that she had thereunto no right at all, but only got it by treacherie, murder, and open violence; and so she held it six whole years, and a part of the seventh, in good seeming securitie.

S. II.

How *Jehu* spent his time in *Israel*, so that hee could not molest *Athalia*.

In all this time *Jehu* did never go about to disturb her; which in reason he was likely to desire, being an enemy to her whole House. But hee was occupied at the first in establishing himself, rooting out the posteritie of *Ahab*, and reforming somewhat in Religion: afterwards in wars against the *Ammonites*, wherein hee was so far overcharged, that hardly he could retain his own, much lesse attempt upon others. Of the line of *Ahab* there were severitie living in *Samaria*, out of which number *Jehu* by letter advised the Citizens to set up some one as King, and to prepare themselves to fight in his defence. Hereby might they gather how confident he was; which they well understood to proceed from greater power about him, than they could gather to resist him: Wherefore they took example by the two Kings whom he had slain, and being exceedingly afraid of him, they offered him their service; wherein they so readily shewed themselves obedient, that in lesse than one dayes warning; they sent him the heads of all those Princes, as they were enjoined by a second letter from him. After this he surprized all the Priests of *Baal* by a subtiltie, feigning a great sacrifice to their god, by which means he drew them altogether into one Temple; where hee slew them: and in the same zeal to God utterly demolished all the monuments of that impietie.

Concerning the Idolatrie devised by *Jeroboam*, no King of *Israel* had ever greater reason than *Jehu* to destroy it. For he needed not to fear lest the people should be allured unto the house of *David*; it was (in appearance) quite rooted up, and the Crown of *Juda* in the possession of a cruell Tyrannesse: he had received his kingdom by the unexpected

grace



grace of God; and further in regard of his zeal expressed in destroying *Baal* out of *Israel*, he was promised, notwithstanding his following the sin of *Feroboam*, that the kingdom should remain in his Familie to the fourth Generation. But all this would not serve; he would needs help to piece out Gods providence with his own circumspection; doing therein like a foolish greedie gamester, who by stealing a needlesse Card to assure himself of winning a stake, forfeits his whole test. He had questionlesse displeased many, by that which he did against *Baal*; and many more he should offend by taking from them the use of a superstition, so long practised as was that Idolatrie of *Feroboam*. Yet all these, how many soever they were, had never once thought upon making him King, if God, whom (to retain them) he now forsook, had not given him the Crown, in when more difficulties appeared in the way of getting it, than could at any time after be found in the means of holding it.

This ingratitude of *Jehu* drew terrible vengeance of God upon *Israel*, wherof *Hazael* King of *Damascus* was the executioner. The cruelty of this barbarous Prince we may find in the Prophecies of *Elixer*, who fore-told it, saying: *Their strong Cities shall thus set on fire, and their young men shalt thou slay with the sword, and shalt dash their Infants against the stones, and rend in pieces their women with child.* So did not onely the wickedness of *Ahab* cause the ruine of his whole house, but the obstinate Idolatrie of the people bring a lamentable miserie upon all the Land. For the furie of *Hazael*s victorie was not quenched with the destruction of a few towns, nor wearied with one invasion; but he smote them in all the coast of *Israel*, and wasted all the Countrey beyond the River of *Jordan*. Notwithstanding all these calamities, it seems that the people repented not of their Idolatrie; (For in those dayes the Lord began to loath *Israel*;) but rather it is likely, that they bemoaned the noble house of *Ahab*, under which they had beateen those enemies to whom they were now a prey, and had bravely fought for the conquest of *Syria*, where they had enlarged their border, by winning *Ramoth Gilead*, and compelled *Benhadad* to restore the Cities which his Father had won: whereas now they were faine to make wooll shifts, living under a Lord that had better fortune and courage in murdering his master that had put him in trust, than in defending his people from their cruell enemies. Thus it commonly falls out, that they who can find all manner of difficulties in serving him, to whom nothing is difficult, are, in stead of the ease and the pleasure to themselves propounded by contrary courses, overwhelmed with the troubles which they fought to avoid; and therein by God, whom they first forsook, forsaken, and left unto the wretched labours of their own blind wisdom, wherein they had reposed all their confidence.

## s. III.

## of Athaliah's Government.

These calamities falling upon *Israel*, kept *Athalia* safe on that side, giving her leisure to look to things at home: as having little to doe abroad, unless it were so that she held some correspondencie with *Hazael*, pretending therein to imitate her husbands grandfather King *Aja*, who had done the like. And some probability that the did so, may be gathered out of that which is recorded of her doings. For we find, that this wicked *Athalia* and her children brake up the house of God, and all things that were dedicate for the house of the Lord did they bestow upon *Baalim*. Such a sacrifice, though it proceeded from a desire to set out her own Idolatrie, with such pomp as might make it the more glorious in the peoples eyes, was not likely to want some far pretext of necessitie of the State so requiring: in which case others before her had made bold with that holy place, and her next successe was faine to doe the like, being thereunto forced by *Hazael*, who perhaps was delighted with the taste of that which was formerly thence extracted for his sake.

Under this impious government of *Athalia*, the devotion of the Priests and Levites was very notable, and served (no doubt) very much to retain the people in the religion taught by God himself, howsoever the Queens proceedings advanced the contrary. For the poverty of that sacred Tribe of *Levi* must needs have been exceeding great at this time, all their lands and possessions in the ten Tribes being utterly lost, the oblations and other perquisites, by which they lived, being now very few and small; and the

store laid up in better times under godly Kings, being all taken away by shamefull robbery. Yet they up-held in all this miserie the service of God, and the daily sacrifice, keeping daily their courses, and performing obedience to the high Priest, no lesse than in those dayes wherein their entertainment was farre better.

## s. IV.

## of the preservation of Joas.

*Jehoadas* then occupied the high Priesthood, an honourable, wise, and religious man. To his carefulnesse it may be ascribed, that the state of the Church was in some slender sort up-held in those unhappy times. His wife was *Jehoshabeth*, who was daughter of King *Iehoram*, and sister to *Ahaziah*, a godly Lady and vertuous, whose piety makes it seem that *Athalia* was not her mother, though her access to the Court argue the contrary: but her discreet carriage might more easily procure her welcome to her own Fathers house, than the education under such a Mother could have permitted her to be such as she was. By her care *Joash* the young Prince that reigned soon after, was conveyed out of the nurserie, when *Athalia* destroyed all the Kings children, and was carried secretly into the Temple, where as secretly he was brought up. How it came to passe that this young child was not hunted out, when his body was missing; nor any great reckoning (for ought that we find) made of his escape, I will not stand to examine: for it was not good in policie; that the people should hear say, that one of the children had avoyded that cruell blow; it might have made them hearken after innovations, and so be the lesse conformable to the present government. So *Joash* was delivered out of that slaughter; he and his nurse being gone no man could tell whither, and might be thought peradventure to be cast away, as having no other guard than a poor woman that gave him suck, who foolishly doubting that she her self should have been slain, was fled away with him into some desolate place, where it was like enough that she and he should perish. As such cases flatterers, or men desirous of reward, easily coin such tales, and rather swear them to be true in their own knowledge, than they will lose the thanks due to their joyfull tidings.

## s. V.

## Whole Sonne Joas was.

## t. I.

## Whether Joas may be thought likely to have been the son of Ahazia.

Now concerning this *Joash*, whose son hee was, it is a thing of much difficulty to affirm, and hath caused much controversie among writers. The places of Scripture, which call him the son of *Ahazia*, seem plain enough. How any figure of the Hebrew language might give title of Sonne unto him, in regard that hee was his successour, I neither by my self can find, nor can by any help of Authors learn how to answer the difficulties appearing in the contrary opinions of them, that think him to have been, or not, the naturall son of *Ahazia*. For whereas it is said, that the house of *Ahazia* was not able to retain the Kingdom; some doe inferre that this *Joash* was not properly called his son, but was the next of his kindred, and therefore succeeded him, as sonne in the inheritance of his father. And hereunto the murder committed by *Athalia*, doth very well agree. For she perceiving that the Kingdom was to fall into their hands, in whom shee had no interest, might easily find cause to fear, that the tyrannie exercised by her husband at her instigation upon so many noble Houses, would now be revenged upon her self. The ruine of her Idolatrous Religion might in this case terrifie both her and her Minions, the sentence of the Law rewarding that offence with death; and the Tragedie of *Jezabel* teaching her what might happen to another Queen. All this had little concerned her, if her own grand-child had been heir to the Crown; for she that had power enough to make her self Queen, could with more ease, and lesse envie, have taken upon her the office of a Protector, by which authoritie she might have done her pleasure, and been the more both obeyed by others; and

and secure of her own estate, as not wanting an heir. Wherefore it was not needfull, that she should be so unnatural, as to destroy the Child of her own Son, of whose life she might have made greater use than the could of his death: whereas indeed, the love of Grand-mothers to their Nephewes, is little lesse than the Mothers to their Children.

This argument is very strong. For it may seem incredible, that all naturall affection should be cast a-side, when as neither necessity urgeth, nor any commoditie thereby gotten requirerh it, yea, when all humane policie doth teach one the same, which nature without reason would have perswaded.

## † II.

That Joas did not descend from Nathan.

**B**UT (as it is more easie to find a difficultie in that which is related, than to shew how it might have otherwise been) the pedigree of this *Joash* is, by them which think him not the son of *Ahaziah*, set down in such sort, that it may very justly be suspected. They say, that he descended from *Nathan* the son of *David* and not from *Salomon*: to which purpose they bring a Historie (I know not whence) of two families of the race of *David*, saying, that the line of *Salomon* held the kingdom with this condition, that if at any time it failed, the familie of *Nathan* should succeed it. Concerning this *Nathan* the son of *David*, there are that would have him to be *Nathan* the Prophet, who, as they think, was by *David* adopted. And of this opinion was *Origen*, as also *S. Augustin* sometime was, but afterward he revoked it, as was meet: for this *Nathan* is reckoned amongst the sons of *David*, by *Bathsabae* the daughter of *Amnes*, and therefore could not be the Prophet *Gregory Nazianzen* (as I find him cited by *Peter Martyr*) and after him *Eusebius*, and *Faber Stapulensis*, have likewise held the same of *Joash*, deriving him from *Nathan*. But *Nathan* and those other brethren of *Salomon* by the same Mother, are thought, upon good likelihoods, to have bin the children of *Uria* the *Hittite*: and so are they accounted by sundrie of the Fathers, and by *Lxx.* and *Athenis*, who follow the Hebrew Expositors of that place in the first of *Chronicles*. The words of *Salomon* calling himself the only begotten of his mother, doe approve this exposition: for we read of no more than two sons which *Bathsabae* or *Bathsheba* did bear unto *David*, whereof the one begotten in adulterie, died an Infant, and *Salomon* onely of her children by the King did live. So that the rest must needs have bin the children of *Uria*, and are thought to have bin *David* only by adoption. Wherefore if *Joas* had not bin the son of *Ahaziah*, then must that pedigree have bin false, wherein *S. Matthew* deriveth him lineally from *Salomon*; yea, then had not our blessed Saviour issued from the loins of *David*, according to the flesh, but had only bin of his line by courtesy of the Nation, and form of law, as any other might have bin. As for the authority of *Philo*, which hath drawn many late writers into the opinion that *Joash* was not of the posteritie of *Salomon*, it is enough to say, that this was *Friar Annius* his *Philo*: for no other edition of *Philo* hath any such matter; but *Annius* can make Authors to speak what he list.

## † III.

That Joas may probably be thought to have been the son of Jehoram.

**I**N so doubtfull a case, if it seem lawfull to hold an opinion that no man hath yet thought upon, me thinks it were not amiss to lay open at once, and peruse together two places of Scripture, whereof the one telling the wickedness of *Jehoram* the son of *Jeholaphat* King of *Juda*, for which he and his children perished, rehearseth it as one of Gods mercies towards the house of *David*, that according to his promise hee would give him a light, and to his children for ever: the other doth say, that for the offences of the same *Jehoram*, there was not a son left him, save *Jehoahaz* the youngest of his sons. Now, if it were in regard of Gods promise to *David*, that after those massacres of *Jehoram* upon all his brethren, and of the *Philistims* and *Arabians* upon the children of *Jehoram*, one of the seed of *David* escaped; why may it not be thought that hee was said to have escaped, in whom the line of *David* was preserved: for had all the race of *Salomon*

was been rooted up in these worst Tragedies, and the progenie of *Nathan* succeeded implacitely, it is not enough it is that some remembrance more particular would have been made; upon whom so memorable. That the race of *Nathan* was not extinguished; it is indeed apparent by the Genealogie of our Lord, as it is recounted by *S. Luke*: but the preservation of the house of *David*, mentioned in the books of *Kings* and *Chronicles*, was performed in the person of *Jeholaphat*; in whom the Royall branch of *Salomon*, the naturall and not only legall issue remaining of *David*, was keepealive. Wherefore it may be thought that this *Joash*, who followed *Athalia* in the Kingdom, was the youngest son of *Jehoram*, whole life *Athalia*, as a stepdame, was not likely to pursue. For it were not to easily understood, why the preservation of *David*'s line, by Gods especiall mercie, in regard of his promise made, should pertain rather to that time, when besides *Athalia* himself, there were two and fortie of his brethren, or (as in another place they are called) sons of his brethren remaining alive, which afterwards were all slain by *Jehu*; than have reference to the lamentable destruction and little lesse than extirpation of that progenie, wherein onely one did escape. Certainly that inhumane murder which *Jehoram* committed upon his brethren, if it were (as appeareth in the Historie) revenged upon his children, then was not this vengeance of God accomplished by the *Philistims* and *Arabians*, but being only begun by them, was afterwards prosecuted by *Jehu*, and finally took effect by the hands of that same wicked woman; at whose instigation he had committed such barbarous outrage. And from this execution of Gods heavey judgement laid upon *Jehoram* and all his children, onely *Jeholaphat* his youngest sonne was exempted; whom therefore if I should affirm to be the same with *Joas*, which is called the son of *Ahaziah*, I should not vvant good probabilitie. Some further appearance of necessitie there is, which doth argue that it could no otherwise have been. For it was the youngest sonne of *Jehoram* in whom the race was preserved; which could not in any likelihood be *Ahaziah*, seeing that he was twenty years old at the least (as is already noted) when he began to reign, and consequently, was born in the eighteenth or twentieth year of his Fathers age. Now I know not whether of the two is more unlikely, either that *Jehoram* should have begotten many children before hee was eighteen years old, or that having (as he had) many wives and children; he should upon the sudden, at his eighteenth year, become unfruitfull, and beget no more in twenty years following: each of which must have bin true, if this were true that *Ahaziah* was the same *Jeholaphat* which was his youngest sonne. But this inconvenience is taken away, and those other doubts arising from the causelesse cruelty of *Athalia*, in seeking the life of *Joas* are easily cleared, if *Joas* and *Jeholaphat* were one. Neither doth his age withstand this opinion: For he was seven years old when he began to reign; which if we understand of years complete, he might have been a year old at the death of *Jehoram*, being begotten somewhat after the beginning of his sickness. Neither is it more absurd to say that he was the naturall son of *Jehoram*, though called the son of *Ahaziah*, than it were to say, as our great Authors have done, this difficultie notwithstanding, that he was of the posteritie of *Nathan*. One thing indeed I know not how to answer, which, had it concurred with the rest, might have served as the foundation of this opinion. The name of *Jeholaphat*, that soundeth much more neer to *Joas*, than to *Ahaziah*, in an English ear, doth in the Hebrew (as I am informed by some, skilfull in that language) through the diversitie of certain letters, differ much from that which it most resembleth in our Western manner of writing, and little from the other. Now, although it be so that *Ahaziah* himself be also called *Azaria*, and must have had three names, if he were the same with *Jeholaphat*; in which manner *Joas* might also have had severall names; yet, because I find no other warrant hereof than a bare possibilitie, I will not presume to build an opinion upon the weak foundation of mine own conjecture, but leave all to the consideration of such as have more ability to judge, and leisure to consider of this point.

## † IV.

Upon what reasons *Athalia* might seek to destroy Joas, if he were her own grandchild.

If therefore we shall follow that which is commonly received, and interpret the text according to the letter, it may be said, that *Athalia* was not only blinded by the passion

pass of ambition and zeal to her idolatrous worship of *Baalim*, but pursued the accomplishment of some unnatural desires, in seeking the destruction of her grand-child, and the rest of the blood Royal. For whether it were to that *Athalin* (as proud and cruel women are not always good) had imitated the libertie of *Jezebel* her sister in law, whose former domes were upbraided by *Jezebel* to her son; or whether she had children by some former husband, before she was married unto *Jezebel* (which is not unlikely, in regard of her age, who was daughter of *Omri*, and sister to *Ahab*) certain it is, that she had lost of her own, and those old enough to be employed, as they were, in robbing of the Temple. So it is not greatly to be wondered at, that to settle the crown upon her own children, she did seek to cut off, by wicked policies, all other claims. As for *Joas*, if she were his grand-mother, yet she might mistrust the interest which his mother would have in him, lest when he came to years, it might draw him from her devotion. And hereof (besides that women doo commonly better love their daughters husbands, than their sons wives) there is some appearance in the reign of her son, for he made him spend all his time in idle journeys, to no other apparent end, than that she might rule at home; and he being abroad, he estranged from his wife, and entertained some new fancies, wherein *Jezebel* had cunning enough to be his tutor. But when the sword of *Jezebel* had rudely cutt out of him all these fine devices, then was *Athalin* faine to go roundly to work, and doe as she did, whereby she thought to make all sure. Other wife, if (as I could rather think) she were onely stepdame to *Joas*, we need not seek into the reasons moving her to take away his life; her own hatred was cause enough to dispatch him among the first.

## S. VI.

A digression, wherein is maintained the libertie of using conjecture in Histories.

Thus much concerning the person of *Joas*, from whom, as from a new root, the tree of *David* was propagated into many branches. In handling of which matter, the more I consider the nature of this Historie, and the diversity between it and others, the lesse me thinks I need to suspect mine own presumption, as deserving blame, for curiositie in matter of doubt, or boldnesse in libertie of conjecture. For all Histories doe give us information of humane counsels and events, as farre forth as the knowledge and faith of the writers can afford; but of Gods will, by which all things are ordered, they speak onely at randome, and many times falsely. This we often find in profane writers, who ascribe the ill successe of great undertakings, to the neglect of some impious Rites, whereof indeed God abhorred the performance as vehemently, as they thought him to be highly offended with the omission. Hereat we may the lesse wonder, if we consider the answer made by the *Jewes* in *Egypt* unto *Jeremie* the Prophet reprehending their Idolatry. For howsoever the written Law of God was known unto the people, and his punishments laid upon them for contempt thereof were very terrible, and even then but newly executed; yet were they so obstinately bent unto their wills, that they would not by any means be drawn to acknowledge the true cause of their affliction. But they told the Prophet roundly, that they would worship the *Queen of heaven*, as they and their fathers, their Kings and their Princes had used to doe: For then (sayd they) had we plenty of victuals, and were well, and felt no evil: adding, that all manner of miseries were befallen them, since they left off that service of the *Queen of Heaven*. So blind is the wisdom of man, in looking into the counsell of God, which to find out, there is no better nor other guide than his own written will, not perverted by vain additions.

But this Historie of the Kings of *Israel* and *Judah* hath herein a singular prerogative above all that have been written by the most sufficient of meely humane Authors: it setteth down expressly the true, and first causes of all that happened; not in imputing the death of *Ahab* to his over-forwardnesse in battell, the ruine of his Familie, to the securitie of *Jezebel* in *Jezebel*, nor the victories of *Hazael*, to the great commotions raised in *Israel*, by the coming of *Jezebel*, but referring all unto the will of God, I mean, to his revealed will, from which that his hidden purposes doe not varie, this Story, by many great examples, gives most notable proofe. True it is, that the concurrence of second causes with their effects, is in these books nothing largely described; nor per-

haps

haps exactly in any of those Histories that are in these points most copious. For it was well noted by that worthy Gentleman, Sir *Philip Sidney*, that Historians doe borrow of Poets, not onely much of their ornament, but somewhat of their substance. Informations are often false, records not alwaies true, and notorious actions commonly insufficient to discover the passions which doe set them first on foot. Wherefore they are faine (I speak of the best, and in that which is allowed; for to take out of *Livie* every one circumstance of *Claudius* his journey against *Ajdubol* in *Italy*, fitting all to another business, or any practice of that kind, is neither Historiall, nor Poeticall) to search into the particular humour of Princes, and of those which have governed their affections, or the instruments by which they wrought; from whence they do collect the most likely motives or impediments of every business; and so figuring as neer to the life as they can imagine, the matter in hand, they judiciously consider the defects in counsell, or obliquity in proceeding.

Yet all this, for the most part, is not enough to give assurance, howsoever it may give satisfaction. For the heart of man is unsearchable: and Princes, howsoever their intents be feldome hidden from some of those many eyes which pierce both into them, and into such as live about them; yet sometimes either by their own close temper, or by some subtil mist, they conceal the truth from all reports. Yea, many times the affections themselves lye dead, and buried in oblivion, when the preparations which they begar, are converted to another use. The industrie of an Historian, having to many things to weare it, may well bee excused, when finding apparent cause enough of things done, it forbearth to make further search; though it often fall out, where sundry occasions work to the same end, that one small matter in a weak mind is more effectually, than many that seem farre greater. So comes it many times to passe, that great fires, which consume whole houses or towns, begin with a few straws, that are wasted or not seen; when the flame is discovered, having fastened upon some wood-pile, that catcheth all about it. Quest: onlesse it is, that the warre commenced by *Darius*, and pursued by *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, proceeded from desire of the *Persians* to enlarge their Empire: howsoever the enterprize of the *Athenians* upon *Sardes*, was noised abroad as the ground of that quarrell; yet *Herodotus* telleth us, that the wanton desire of *Queen Atassa*, to have the *Grecian* dames her bond-women, did first move *Darius* to prepare for this war before he had received any injury, and when he did not yet so much desire to get more, as to enjoy what was already gotten.

I will not here stand to argue whether *Herodotus* be more justly reprehended by some, or defended by others, for alleging the vain appetite, and secret speech of the *Queen* in bed with her husband, as the cause of those great evils following; this I may boldly asseure, (having, I think, in every estate some sufficient witness) that matters of much consequence, founded in all seeming upon substantiall reasons, have issued indeed from such petty trifles, as no Historian would either think upon, or could well search out.

Therefore it was a good answer that *Sixtus Quintus* the Pope, made to a certain Frier, continuing to visit him in his Popedome, as having long before in his meaner estate, been his familiar friend. This poor Frier, being emboldened by the Pope to use his old liberty of speech, adventured to tell him, that he very much wondered how it was possible for his Holinesse, whom hee rather took for a direct honest man, than any cunning Politician, to attain unto the Papacy; in compassing of which, all the subtilty (said he) of the most crafty brains, find work enough: and therefore the more I think upon the Art of the Conclave, and your unaptnesse thereto, the more I needs must wonder. Pope *Sixtus* to satisfie the plain dealing Frier, dealt with him again as plainly, saying, Hadst thou lived abroad as I have done, and seen by what folly this world is governed, thou wouldst wonder at nothing.

Surely, if this be referred unto those exorbitant engines, by which the course of affaires is moved, the Pope said true. For the wisest of men are not without their vanities, which requiring and finding mutual toleration, work more closely, and earnestly, than right reason either needs or can. But if wee lift up our thoughts to that supreme Governour, of whose Empire all that is true; which by the Poet was said of Jupiter.

U u

Qui

*Qui terram inertem, qui mare temperat  
Festum, & urbes, regnaque tristia,  
Dirisque mortaleque turmas,  
Imperio regis unius aquo.*

Who rules the duller earth, the wind-swoln streams,  
The civill Cities and th' infernall Realms,  
Who th' host of heaven, and the mortall band,  
Alone doth govern by his just command.

Then shall wee find the quite contrary. In him there is no uncertainty nor change; hee foreseeeth all things, and all things disposeth to his own honour; Hee neither deceiveth nor can be deceived, but continuing one and the same for ever, doth constantly govern all creatures by that Law, which he hath prescribed, and will never alter. The vanities of men beguile their vain contrivers; and the prosperity of the wicked, is the way leading to their destruction: yea, this broad and headlong passage to hell, is not so delightfull as it seems at the first entrance, but hath growing in it, besides the poysons which infect the soul, many cruell thorns deeply wounding the body; all which, if any few escape, they have onely this miserable advantage of others, that their descent was the more swift and expedite. But the service of God is the path guiding us to perfect happiness, and hath in it a true, though not compleat felicity, yielding such abundance of joy to the conscience, as doth easily countervail all afflictions whatsoever; though indeed those brambles that sometimes tear the skin of such as walk in this blessed way, doe commonly lay hold upon them at such time as they sit down to take their ease, and make them with themselves at their journey's end, in the presence of their Lord whom they faithfully serve, in whose presence is the fulnesse of joy, and at whose right hand are pleasures for ever.

Wherefore it being the end and scope of all History, to teach by example of times past, such wisdom as may guide our desires and actions, we should not marvel though the *Chronicles of the Kings of Juda and Israel*, being written by men inspired with the Spirit of God, instruct us chiefly, in that which is most requisite for us to know; as the means to attain unto true felicity, both here, and hereafter, propounding examples which illustrate this infallible rule, *The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom*. Had the expedition of *Xerxes* (as it was foretold by *Daniel*) been written by some Prophet after the captivity: we may well beleve that the counsell of God therein, and the executioners of his righteous will; should have occupied either the whole or the principall room in that narration. Yet had not the purpose of *Darius*, the desire of his Wife, and the businesse at *Sardes*, with other occurrents, been the lesse true, though they might have been omitted, as the lesse materiall: but these things it had been lawfull for any man to gather out of prophane Histories; or out of circumstances otherwise appearing, wherein he should not have done injury to the Sacred Writings, as long as he had forborn to derogate from the first causes, by ascribing to the second more than was due.

Such, or little different, is the businesse that I have now in hand: wherein I cannot beleve that any man of judgement will tax me, as either fabulous or presumptuous. For hee doth not feign, that rehearseth probabilities as bare conjectures; neither doth he deprave the Text, that seeketh to illustrate and make good in humane reason, those things which authoritie alone, without further circumstance, ought to have confirmed in every mans beleife. And this may suffice in defence of the liberty: which I have used in conjectures, and may hereafter use when occasion shall require; as neither unlawfull, nor misbecoming an Historian.

## s. VII.

## The conspiracie against Athalia.

**VV** Hen *Athalia* had now six years and longer worn the Crown of *Juda*, and hand found neither any foreign enemy, nor domesticall adversarie to disturb her possession, suddenly the period of her glory, and reward of her

wickednesse meeting together, took her away without any warning, by a violent and shamefull death. For the growth of the young Prince began to be such, as permitted him no longer to be concealed, and it had been very unfitting that his education should be simple, to make him seem the child of some poor man (as for his safety it was requisite,) when his capacity required to have been indue with the stomach and qualities meet for a King. All this *Jehojada* the Priest considered, and withall, the great increase of impiety, which taking deep root in the Court, was likely to spread it selfe over all the Country, if care were not used to weed it up very speedily. Wherefore he associated unto himself five of the Captains, in whose fidelity hee had best assurance; and having taken an oath of them, and shewed them the Kings son, hee made a Covenant with them, to advance him to the Kingdome. These drew in others of the principall men, to countenance the action, procuring at the first onely that they should repair to *Jerusalem*, where they were further acquainted with the whole matter. There needed not many perswasions to win them to the businesse: the promise of the Lord unto the house of *David*, was enough to assure them that the action was both lawfull; and likely to succeed as they desired.

But in compassing their intent, some difficulties appeared: For it was not to be hoped; that with open force they should bring their purpose to good issue; neither were the Captains, and other associates of *Jehojada* able by close working, to draw together to many trusty and serviceable hands as would suffice to manage the businesse. To help in this case, the Priest gave order to such of the Levites as had finished their courses in waiting on the Divine service at the Temple, and were now relieved by others that succeeded in their turns, that they should not depart untill they knew his further pleasure. So by admitting the new commers, and not discharging the old, hee had, without any noise, made up such a number, as would be able to deal with the Queens ordinary Guard, and that was enough: for if the Tyrannesse did not prevail against them at the first brunt, the favour of the People was like to shew it self on their side, who made head against her. These Levites were placed in the inner Court of the Temple, about the person of the King, who as yet was kept close; the followers of the Captains, and other adherents, where bestowed in the utter Courts: As for weapons, the Temple it self had store enough: King *David* had left an Armory to the place, which was now employed in defence of his issue.

All things being in a readinesse, and the day come, wherein this high design was to be put in execution; *Jehojada* delivered unto the Captains, Armour for them and their adherents; appointed a guard unto the Kings person, produced him openly, and gave unto him the Crown; using all ceremonies accustomed in such solemnities, with great applause of the people. Of these doings, the Queen was the last that heard any word, Which is not so strange as it may seem: for insolent natures, by dealing outrageously with such as bring them ill tidings, doe commonly lose the benefit of hearing what is to be feared, whilst yet it may be prevented, and have no information of danger, till their own eyes, amazed with the suddennesse, behold it in the shape of inevitable mischief.

All *Jerusalem* was full of the rumour, and entertained it with very good liking. Some carried home the newes, others ran forth to see, and the common joy was so great, that without apprehension of perill, under the windowes of the Court, were the people running and praising the King. *Athalia* hearing and beholding the extraordinary concourse, and noise of folks in the streets, making towards the Temple, with much unusuall passion in their looks; did presently conceive, that somewhat worthy of her care was happened; though, what it might be, she did not apprehend. Howsoever it were, she meant to use her own wisdom in looking into the matter, and ordering all as the occasion might happen to require. It may bee, that she thought it some especiall solemnitie used in the Divine service, which caused this much adoe; and hereof the unaccustomed number of Levites, and of other devout men, about the town, might give some presumption.

Many things argue that she little thought upon her own Tragedy; although *Josephus* would make it seem otherwise. For we find in the Text, *She came to the people into the house of the Lord* (which was neer to her Palace) and that when she looked and saw the King stand by his pillar, as the manner was with the Princes, or great men of the

Land by him, and the Trumpeters proclaiming him, she rent her clothes, and cried Treason, Treason. Hereby it appears that shee was quietly going, without any mistrust or fear, to take her place; which when the found occupied by another, then she began to afflict her self, as one cast away, and cried out in vain upon the Treason, whereby she saw that she must perish. But that she came with a guard of armed men to the Temple, (as *Josephus* reporteth) and that her company being beaten back, she entred alone, and commanded the people to kill the young Tyrant, I find no where in Scripture, neither doe I hold it credible. For had she truly known how things went, she would surely have gathered her friends about her, and used those forces in defence of her Crown, by which she got it, and hitherto had held it. Certainly, if it were granted, that she, like a new *Semiramis*, did march in the head of her troop, yet it had been meer madnesse in her, to enter the place alone, when her assistants were kept out; but if shee, perceiving that neither her authority, nor their own weapons, could prevail to let in her guard, would nevertheless take upon her to command the death of the new King, calling a child of seven years old a Conspirator, and bidding them to kill him, whom shee saw to bee armed in his defence, may we not think that she was mad in the most extreme degree? Certain it is that the counsell of God would have taken effect, in her destruction, had she used the most likely means to disappoint it: yet we need not so cut her throat with any morall impossibilities. It is enough to say, that the godly zeal of *Jehojada* found more easie successe, through her indiscretion, than otherwise could have been expected; so that at his appointment, shee was without more adoe, carried out of the Temple and slain, yea so, that no blood, save her own, was shed in that quarrell; her small train that she brought along with her, not daring to stand in her defence.

## S. VIII.

The death of *Athalia*, with a comparison of her and *Jezabel*.

**M**OST like it is, that *Athalia* had many times, with great indignation, bewailed the rashnesse of her Nephew *Jehoram* the *Israelite*, who did foolishly cast himself into the very throat of danger, gaping upon him, onely through his eager desire of quickly knowing what the matter meant: yet shee her selfe, by the like bait, was taken in the like trap, and having lived such a life as *Jezabel* had done, was rewarded with a suitable death. These two Queens were in many points much alike, each of them was Daughter, Wife, and Mother to a King; each of them ruled her husband, was an Idolatresse and a Murtheresse. The onely difference appearing in their condition, is, that *Jezabel* is more noted as incontinent of body, *Athalia* as ambitious: So that each of them surviving her husband about eight years, did spend their time in satisfying her own affections; the one using tyrannic, as the exercise of her haughty mind; the other painting her face, for the ornament of her unchaste body. In the manner of their death little difference there was, or in those things which may seem in this world to pertain unto the dead when they are gone. Each of them was taken on the sudden by Conspirators, and each of them exclaiming upon the Treason, received sentence from the mouth of one that had lived under her subjection; in execution whereof, *Jezabel* was trampled under the feet of her enemies horses; *Athalia* slain at her own horse-gate; the death of *Athalia* having (though not much) the more leisure to vex her proud heart; that of *Jezabel* the more indignitie and shame of body. Touching their buriall, *Jezabel* was devoured by Dogges, as the Lord had threatened by the Prophet *Elias*; what became of *Athalia* wee doe not find. Like enough it is, that she was buried, as having not persecuted and slain the Lords Prophets, but suffered the Priests to exercise their function; yet of her buriall there is no monument, for she was a Church-robbet. The service of *Baal* erected by these two Queens, was destroyed as soon as they were gone, and their Chaplaines, the Priests of that Religion, slain. Herein also it came to passe, alike, as touching them both when they were dead; the Kings who slew them, were afterwards afflicted, both of them by the same hand of *Hazeael* the Syrian; in which point *Athalia* had the greater honour, if the Syrian (who seems to have been her good friend) pretended, her revenge, as any part of his quarrell to *Juda*. Concerning children, all belonging to *Jezabel* perished in

few dayes after her: whether *Athalia* left any behind her, it is uncertain, she had sons living after she was Queen, of whom, or of any other, that they were slain with her, we doe not find.

This is a matter not unworthy of consideration, in regard of much that may depend upon it. For if the children of *Athalia* had been in *Jerusalem* when their Mother fell, their death would surely have followed hers as neerely, and bene registred, as well as the death of *Masian* the Priest of *Baal*. That Law by which *God* had that the children should die for the fathers, could not have saved these ingracious Imps, whom the clause following would have cut off, which commands, that every man should die for his own sinne. Seeing therefore that they had been professors and advancers of that vile and Idolatrous worship of *Baal*, yea had robbed the Temple of the Lord, and enriched the house of *Baal* with the spoile of it; likely it is, that they should not have escaped with life, if *Jehojada* the Priest could have gotten them into his hands. As there was lawfull cause enough requiring their death, so the security of the King and his friends, that is, of all the Land, craved as much, and that very earnestly. For these had been esteemed as heires of their mothers Crowne, & being reckoned as her assistants in that particular businesse of robbing the Temple, may be thought to have carried a great sway in other matters, as Princes, and fellows with their Mother in the Kingdome. Therefore it is evident, that either they were now dead, or (perhaps following *Hazeael* in his warres against *Jebu*) absent from *Jerusalem*; whereby *Jehojada* might, with the more confidence, adventure to take Armes against their Mother, that was desolate.

## CHAP. XXII.

Of *Joas* and *Amasia*, with their Contemporaries; where somewhat of the building of *Carthage*.

## S. I.

Of *Joas* his doings, whilst *Jehojada* the Priest lived.



**B**Y the death of *Athalia*, the whole countie of *Juda* was filled with great joy and quietnesse, wherein *Joas*, a child of seven yeeres old or there-about, began his reign, which continued almost fortie yeeres. During his minority, he lived under the protection of that honourable man *Jehojada* the Priest, who did as faithfully govern the Kingdome, as he had before carefully preserved the Kings life, & restored him unto the Throne of his ancestors. When he came to mans estate, he took by appointment of *Jehojada* two wives, & begat Sonnes and Daughters, repairing the family of *David* which was almost worn out. The first Act that hee took in hand, when hee began to rule without a Protector, was the reparation of the Temple. It was a needfull peece of work, in regard of the decay wherein that holy place was fallen, through the wickednesse of ungodly Tyrants; and requisite it was that hee should up-hold the Temple, whom the Temple had up-held. This businesse he followed with so earnest a zeal, that not only the Levites were more slack than he, but even *Jehojada* was faine to be quickened by his admonition. Money was gathered for the charges of the work; partly out of the tax, imposed by *Moses*; partly out of the liberality of the people; who gave so freely, that the Temple, besides all reparations, was enriched with vessels of gold and silver; and with all other Utensiles. The sacrifices likewise were offered, as under godly Kings they had bene; and the service of *God* was magnificently celebrated.



## §. II.

The Death of Jehoiada, and Apostasie of Joas.

**B**Ut this endured no longer than the life of *Jehoiada* the Priest: who having lived an hundred and thirty yeeres, dyed before his Countrey could have spared him. He was buried among the Kings of *Juda*, as he well deserved, having preserved the race of them, and restored the true Religion, which the late Princes of that house, by attempting to eradicate, failed but a little of rooting up themselves, and all their issue. Yet this honourable Funerall seems to have bin given to him, at the motion of the people; it being said, *They buried him in the Citie of David*. As for the King himself, who did owe to him no lesse than his Crown and life, he is not likely to have been Author of it, seeing that hee was as easily comforted after his death, as if he had thereby been discharged of some heave debt.

For after the death of *Jehoiada*, when the Princes of *Juda* began to flatter their King, he soon forgot, not only the benefits received by this worthy man his old Counsellour, but also the good precepts which he had received from him, yea & God himself, the Author of all goodnesse. These Princes drew him to the worship of Idols, where-with *Jezebel* and *Athalia* had so infected the Country, in fifteen or sixteen yeeres, that thirty yeeres, or there-about, of the reign of *Joas*, wherein the true Religion was exercised, were not able to cleere it from that mischief. The King himself, when once he was entred into these courses, ran on head-long, as one that thought it a token of his liberty, to despise the service of God; and a manifest proove of his being now King indeed, that he regarded no longer the sower admonitions of devout Priests. Hereby it appears, that his former zeal was only counterfeited, wherein like an Actor upon the stage, he had striven to expresse much more lively affection, than they could shew, that were indeed religious.

## §. III.

The causes and times of the Syrians invading Juda in the dayes of Joas.

**B**Ut God, from whom hee was broken loose, gave him over into the hands of men, that would not easily bee shaken off. *Hazael* King of *Aram*, having taken *Gath*, a Towne of the *Philistines*, addressed himself towards *Jerusalem*, whither the little distance of way, and great hope of a rich booty, did invite him. He had an Army heartned by many victories, to hope for more; and for ground of the war (if his ambition cared for pretences) it was enough that the Kings of *Juda* had assisted the *Israelites*, in their enterprises upon *Aram*, at *Ramoth Gilead*. Yet I think hee did not want some further instigation. For if the Kingdome of *Juda* had molested the *Aramites* in the time of his predecessour, this was thoroughly recompented, by forbearing to succour *Israel*, & leaving the ten Tribes in their extreme misery, to the fury of *Hazael* himself. Neither is it likely, that *Hazael* should have gone about to awake a sleeping Dogge, and stirre up against himself a powerfull enemy, before he had assured the conquest of *Israel*, that lay between *Jerusalem* and his own Kingdome, if some opportunity had not performed such easie and good successe, as might rather advance, than any way disturbe his future proceedings against the ten Tribes. Wherefore I hold it probable, that the sonnes of *Athalia*, mentioned before, were with him in this action, promising (as men expelled their Countreies usually doe) to draw many partakers of their own to his side; and not to remain, as *Joas* did, a neutral in the warre betweene him and *Israel*, but to joyn all their forces with his, as they had cause, for the rooting out of *Jehu* his posterity, who, like a bloudy Traitor, had utterly destroyed so all the kindred of the Queenes, their mother, even the whole house of *Ahab*, to which hee was a subject. If this were so, *Hazael* had the more apparent reason to invade the Kingdome of *Juda*. Howsoever it were, we find it plainly, that *Joas* was afraid of him, and therefore took all the hollowed things, and all the gold that was found in the treasures of the house of the Lord, or in his own house, with which present hee redeemed his peace: the Syrian (questionlesse) thinking it a better bargain, to get so much readily paid into his hand for nothing, than to hazard the assurance of this

for the possibility of not much more. So *Hazael* departed with a rich bootie of unhappy treasure, which belonging to the living God, remained a small while in the possession of this mighty, yet corruptible man, but sent him quickly to the grave. For in the thirtieth seventh yeere of *Joas*, which was the fiftieth of *Jezebel*, hee made this purchase; but in the same or very next yeere he died, leaving all that hee had unto his Sonne *Jezebel*, with whom these treasures prospered no otherwise, than ill-gotten goods are wont.

This enterprise of *Hazael*, is, by some, confounded with that warre of the *Aramites* upon *Juda*, mentioned in the second book of *Chronicles*. But the reasons alleged by them that hold the contrary opinion, doe forcibly prove, that it was not all one warre. For the former was compounded without blood-shed or fight; in the latter, *Joas* tried the fortune of a battaile, wherein being put to the worst, he lost all his Princes, and hardly escaped with life. In the one, *Hazael* himself was present; in the other, hee was not named: but contrariwise, the King of *Aram* then reigning (who may seem to have then been the Sonne of *Hazael*) is said to have been at *Damasus*. The first *Armie* came to conquer, and was so great, that it terrified the King of *Juda*; The second was a small company of men, which did animate *Joas* (in vaine, for God was against him) to deal with them, as having a very great Armie.

Now, concerning the time of this former invasion, I cannot perceive that God forsooke him, till he had first forsaken God. There are indeed some, very learned, who think that this expedition of *Hazael* was in the time of *Jehoiada* the Priest, because that storie is joyned unto the restauration of the Temple. This had been probable, if the death of *Jehoiada* had been afterwards mentioned in that place of the second book of Kings; or if the Apostasie of *Joas*, or any other matter implying so much, had followed in the relation. For it is not indeed to be doubted, that the Lord of all may dispose of all things, according to his own will & pleasure; neither was he more unjust in the afflictions of *Jehoiada* that righteous man, or the death of *Joas* that godly King, than in the plagues which he laid upon *Pharaoh*, or his judgements upon the house of *Ahab*. But it appears plainly, that the rich furniture of the Temple, and the magnificent service of God therewithall, which are joyned together, were used in the house of the Lord continually, all the 30 dayes of *Jehoiada*, soone after whose death, if not immediately upon it, that is (as some very learnedly collect) in the sixt, or thirty seventh yeere of this *Joas* his reign, the King falling away from the God of his Fathers, became a foule Idolater.

And indeed we commonly observe, that the crosses which it hath pleased God sometimes to lay upon his servants without any cause notorious in the eyes of men, have alwayes tended unto the bettering of their good, in which respect, even the sufferings of the blessed Martyrs (the death of his Saints being precious in the sight of the Lord) are to their great advantage. But with evill and rebellious men, God keepeth a more even and strict account, permitting usually their faults to get the start of their punishments; & either delaying his vengeance (as with the *Amorites*) till their wickednesse be full, or not working their amendment by his correction, but suffering them to run on in their wicked courses, to their greater misery. So hath he dealt with many, and so it appears that hee dealt with *Joas*. For this unhappy man did not onely continue an obstinate Idolater, but grew so forgetfull of God and all goodnesse, as if hee had striven to exceed the wickednesse of all that went before him, and to leave such a villanous pattern unto others, as few or none of the most barbarous Tyrants should endure to imitate.

## §. IV.

How Zacharia was murdered by Joas.

**S**undry Prophets having laboured in vaine to reclaim the people from their superstition, *Zacharia* the sonne of *Jehoiada* the Priest, was stirred up at length by the Spirit of God, to admonish them of their wickednesse, and make them understand the punishment due unto it, whereof they stood in danger. This *Zacharia* was a man so much honoured, and sonne to a man so exceedingly beloved in his life time; and revered, that if *Joas* had repud him (as *Ahab* did *Elias*) his open enemy, yet ought he in common honesty, to have cloaked his ill affection, and have used at least some part



of the respect that was due to such a person : On the other side, the singular affection which he and his father had born unto the King, and the unreckonable benefits which they had done unto him, from his first infancie, were such, as should have placed *Zacharia* in the most hearty and assured love of *Joas*, yea though hee had bin otherwise a man of very small mark, and not very good condition. The truth is, that the message of a Prophet sent from God, should be heard with reverence, how simple soever he appears that brings it. But this King *Joas*, having already scorned the admonitions and protestations of such Prophets as first were sent, did now deale with *Zacharia*, like as the wicked husbandmen, in that parable of our Saviour, dealt with the heir of the Vineyard, who said, *This is the heir, come let us kill him, that the inheritance may be ours*. By killing *Joas* he thought to become an absolute Commander, supposing belike that he was no free Prince, as long as one durst tell him the plain truth, how great soever that mans deservings were, that did so, yea though Gods commandement required it. So they conspired against this holy Prophet, and stoned him to death at the Kings appointment; but whether by any forme of open Law, as was practised upon *Naboth*; or whether surprising him by any close treachery, I doe neither read, nor can conjecture. The dignity of his person, considered together with their treacherous conspiracy, makes it probable, that they durst not call him into publique judgement, though that the manner of his death, being such as was commonly, and by order of Law, inflicted upon malefactors, may argue the contrary. Most likely it is, that the Kings commandement, by which he suffered, took place in stead of Law: which exercise of meere power (as hath been already noted) was nothing strange amongst the Kings of *Juda*.

## S. V.

*How Joas was shamefully beaten by the Amorites, and of his death.*

**T**His odious murder committed by an unthankfull snake upon the man in whose bosom he had been fostered, as of it self alone it sufficed to make the wretched Tyrant hatefull to men of his own time, and his memory detested in all ages, so had it the well-describ'd curse of the blessed Martyr, to accompany it unto the Throne of God, and to call for vengeance from thence; which fell down swiftly, and heavily upon the head of that ungrateful monster. It was the last yeere of his reign; the end of his time committing then upon him, when he thought himself beginning to live how he list'd without controulment. When that yeer was expired, the *Aramites* came into the Country, rather as may seem to get pillage, than to performe any great action; for *Chiron*, 24. *they came with a small company of men*: but God had intended to do more by them, than they themselves did hope for.

That *Joas*, naturally was a coward, his bloody malice against his best friend, is, in my judgement proof sufficient: though otherwise his base composition with *Hazael*, when hee might have leaved (as his son after him did muster) three hundred thousand chosen men for the warre, doth well enough shew his temper. Yet now he would needs be valiant, and make his people know, how stout of disposition their King was, when hee might have his own will. But his timorous heart, was not well cloaked. For to encounter with a few bands of Robbers, hee took a very great Army, so that wise men might well perceive, that he knew what he did; making shew as if he would fight for his Country, and expose himself to danger of warre, when as indeed all was meere ostentation, and no perill to be feared; hee going forth, so strongly appointed, against so weak enemies. Thus might wise men think, and laugh at him in secret; considering what adoe he made about that, which in all apparent reason was (as they say) a thing of nothing. But God, before whom the wisdom of this world is foolishnesse, did laugh not only at this vaine-glorious King, but at them that thought their King secure, by reason of the multitude that he drew along with him.

When the *Aramites* & King *Joas* met, whether it were by some folly of the Leaders, or by some amazement happening among the souldiers, or by whatsoever means it pleased God to work, so it was, that that great Army of *Juda* received a notable overthrow, and all the Princes were destroyed: the Princes of *Juda*, at whose perswasion the King had become a Rebell to the King of Kings: As for *Joas* himself (as *Abulensis* and others expound

expound the story) he was sorely beaten and hurt by them, being (as they think) taken and shamefully tormented, to wring out of him an excessive ranseme.

And surely, all circumstances do greatly strengthen this conjecture. For the Text (in the old translation) saith, they exercised upon *Joas* ignominious judgements; and that departing from him, they dismissed him in great languor. All which argues, that they had him in their hands, and handled him ill-favoredly. Now at that time *Joas* the son of *Jehobabaz* reigned over *Israel*, and *Benhadad* the son of *Hazael* over the *Syrians* in *Damascus*; the one a valliant undertaking Prince, raised up by God to restore the State of his miserable Country; the other interiour every way to his father, of whose purchases hee lost a great part, for want of skill to keep it. The difference in condition found between these two Princes, promising no other event than such as afterward followed, might have given to the King of *Juda* good cause to be bold, and pluck up his spirits, which *Hazael* had beaten down, if God had not been against him. But his fearful heart being likely to quake upon any apprehension of danger, was able to put the *Syrian* King in hope, that by terrifying him with some shew of war at his doores, it were easie to make him crave any tolerable conditions of peace. The unexpected good successe hereof, already related, and the (perhaps as unsuspected) ill successe, which the *Aramites* found in their following wars against the King of *Israel*, sheweth plainly the weaknesse of all earthly might, resisting the power of the Almighty. For by his Ordinance, both the Kingdome of *Juda*, after more than forty years time of gathering strength, was unable to drive out a small company of Enemies; and the Kingdome of *Israel*, having fo been trodden down by *Hazael*, that onely fifty Horsemen, ten Chariots, and ten thousand Footmen were left; prevailed against his Son, and recovered all from the victorious *Aramites*. But examples hereof are every-where found, and therefore I will not insist upon this; though indeed we should not, if we be Gods children, think it more tedious to hear long and frequent reports of our heavenly Fathers honour, than of the noble acts performed by our fore-fathers upon earth.

When the *Aramites* had what they list'd, and saw that they were not able, being so few, to take any possession of the Country; they departed out of *Juda* loaden with spoile, which they sent to *Damascus*, themselves belike falling upon the ten Tribes, where it is to be thought that they sped not half so well. The King of *Juda* being in ill case, was killed on his bed when he came home, by the sons of an *Ammonitess*e, and of a *Moabitess*e, whom some (because onely their Mothers names, being strangers, are expressed) think to have been bondmen. Whether it were contempt of his fortune, or fear, left (as Tyrants use) hee should revenge disaster upon them, imputing it to their fault, or whatsoever else it were that animated them to murder their King; the Scripture tells us plainly, that, *For the blood of the children of Jehoada*, this befell him. And the same appears to have been used as the pretence of their conspiracy, in excuse of the fact when it was done. For *Amazias*, the son and successor of *Joas*, durst not punish them, till his Kingdome was established: but contrariwise, his body was judged unworthy of buriall in the Sepulchres of the Kings: whereby it appears, that the death of *Zacharia* caused the treason, wrought against the King, to find more approbation, than was requisite, among the people, though afterwards it was recompenced by his sonne, upon the Traitors, with well-deserved death.

## S. VI.

*Of the Princes living in the time of Joas: of the time when Carthage was built: and of Dido.*

**T**Here lived with *Joas*, *Mezades* and *Diognetus* in *Athens*: *Eudemus* and *Arifomides* in *Corinth*: about which time *Agrippa Sylvius*, and after him *Sylvius Alladius*, were Kings of the *Albans* in *Italy*. *Oczrazapes*, commonly called *Anacyn-daraxes*, the thirty seventh King succeeded unto *Ophratanes*, began his reign over the *Athyrians*, about the eighteenth year of *Joas*, which lasted forty two years. In the sixteenth of *Joas*, *Cephrenes*, the fourth from *Sesac*, succeeded unto *Cheops* in the Kingdome of *Egypt*, and held it fifty years.

In this time of *Joas*, was likewise the reign of *Pigmalion* in *Tyre*, and the foundation of

of *Carthage* by *Dido*, the building of which City is, by divers Authors, placed in divers ages, some reporting it to be 70. years younger than *Rome*, others above 400. years older, few or none of them giving any reason for their assertions, but leaving us uncertain whom to follow : *Foëphus*, who had read the Annals of *Tyre*, counting one hundred forty and three years and eight moneths from the building of *Salomons* Temple, in the twelfth year of *Hyram* King of *Tyre*, to the founding of *Carthage* by *Dido*, in the seventh of *Pigmalion*. The particulars of this account (which is not rare in *Foëphus*) are very perplexed, and serve not very well to make clear the total summe. But whether it were so that *Foëphus* did omit, or else that he did mis-write some number of the years, which he reckoneth in *Eractians*, as they were divided among the Kings of *Tyre*, from *Hyram* to *Pigmalion* ; we may well enough beleeve, that the *Tyrian* writers, out of whose books hee gives us the whole summe, had good means to know the truth, and could rightly reckon the difference of time, between two works no longer following one the other than the memory of three or four generations might easily reach. This hundred forty and four years current, after the building of *Salomons* Temple, being the eleventh year of *Joss*, was a hundred forty and three years before the birth of *Rome* ; and after the destruction of *Troy*, two hundred eighty and nine : a time so long after the death of *Aeneas*, that we might truly conclude all to be fabulous which *Virgil* hath written of *Dido*, as *Ausonius* noteth, who doth honour her Statue with this Epigram :

13/07/08, pp. 117.

**I**lla ego sum Dido vultu quam conspicis hospes,  
*Assimulata modis pulchraque mirificis.*  
 Talis eram, sed non Maro quam mihi finxit, erat mens;  
 Vita nec incestis leta cupidinibus:  
 ( Namque nec Æneas vidit me Troias unquam,  
 Nec Lybiam advenit, clausibus Iliacis,  
 Sed furas fugiens, atque arma procacis Iarbae,  
 Servavi, fateor, morte pudicitiam )  
 Pectore transfixo castos quod permittit enses )  
 Non furor, aut laeso crudum amore dolor.  
 Sic cecidisse juvat: vivax sine vulnere fama,  
 Ultra virum, postitis membris appetit.  
 Invida cur in me stimulas? Musa Maronem;  
 Fingeret ut nostræ damna pudicitiae?  
 Vos magis Historicis lectores credite de me  
 Quam qui furta Deum concubitusque canunt.  
 Falsidici vates: temerant qui carmine verum,  
 Humanisque deos assimilant vitiiis.

Which in effect is this?

**I** Am that *Dido* which thou here do'st see,  
Cunningly fram'd in beauteous Imag'rie,  
Like this I was, but had not such a foul,  
As *Maro* feign'd, incestuous and foul.

*Antes* never with his *Trojan* hoast  
Beheld my face, or landed on this coast.  
But flying proud *Iarbas* villanie,  
Not mov'd by furious love or jealousy,  
I did with weapon chaste, to save my fame,  
Make way for death untimely, ere it came.  
This was my end; but first I built a Town,  
Revenge'd my husbands death, liv'd with renown.  
Why did'st thou stir up *Virgil*, envious Muse,  
Falsely my name and honour to abuse?  
Readers, beleeve Historians, not those  
Whichto the world *Joves* thefts and vice expose:  
Poets are liars, and for verses sake  
Will make the Gods of humane crimes partake.

From the time of *Dido* unto the first *Punic* warre, that *Carthage* grew and flourished in wealth and conquests, we find in many Histories: but in particular we find little of the *Carthaginian* affairs before that war, excepting those few things that are recorded of their attempts of the Isle of *Sicily*. We will therefore deferre the relation of matters concerning that mighty City, until such time as they shall encounter with the State of *Rome*, by which it was finally destroyed; and prosecute in the mean while the History that is now in hand.

§. VII.

10      *The beginning of Amazia his reign : Of Joas King of Israel; and  
Elisha the Prophet.*

**A**MAZIAS, the son of *Josiah*, being twenty five years old when his Father died, took possession of the Kingdom of *Juda*, wherein he laboured to to demean himself, as his new beginning reign might be least offensive. The Law of *Moses* hee professed to observe, which howsoever it had been secretly despised since the time of *Jeheram*, by many great persons of the land, yet had it by provision of good Princes, yeas, and obad ones (in their best times) imitating the good, but especially by the care of holy Priests, taken such deep root in the peoples hearts, that no King might hope to be very plausible, who did not conform himself unto it. And at that present time, the slaughter which the *Aramites* had made of all the Princes, who had withdrawn the late King from the service of God, being seconded by the death of the King himself, even whilst that execrable murder, committed by the King upon *Zechariah*, was yet fresh in memory, did serve as a notable example of Gods justice against Idolaters, both to animate the better sort of the people in holding the Religion of their fathers, and to discourage *Amaziah* from following the way, which led to such an evil end. Hee therefore, having learned of his father the art of dissimulation, did not onely forbear to punish the Traitors that had slain King *Josiah*, but gave way to the time, and suffered the dead body to be interred, as that of *Jeheram* formerly had been, in the City of *David*, yet not among the Sepulchres of the Kings of *Juda*. Nevertheless, after this, when (belike) the noise of the people having wearied it self into silence, it was found that the Conspirators (howsoever their deed done, was applauded as the, handi-works of God) had neither any mighty partakers in their fact, nor strong maintainers of their persons, but rested secure, as having done well, seeing it was not ill taken: the King, who perceived his government well established, called them into question, at such a time, as the heat of mens affections being well allayed, it was easie to distinguish between their treasons and Gods judgements, which, by their treasons, had taken plausible effect. So they were put to death without any tumult, and their children (as the Law did require) were suffered to live: which could not but give contentment to the people, seeing that they knew did the office of a just Prince, rather than of a revenging sonne. This being done, and his own life better secured, by such exemplary justice, against the like attempts, *Amaziah* carried himself outwardly as a Prince well affected to Religion, and so continued in it, about twelve or thirteen years.

As *Amazias* gathered strength in *Juda* by the commodity of a long peace, so *Jehs* the *Israhelite* grew as fast in power, by following the war-hotly against the *Aramites*. Hee was a valiant and fortunate Prince, yet an Idolater, as his Predecessors had been, worshipping the Calves of *Feroboam*. For this sinne had God so plagued the house of *Jehu*, that the ten tribes wanted little of being utterly consumed, by *Hazael* and *Benhadad*, in the time of *Jehu* and his sonne *Jehoahaz*. But as Gods benefits to *Jehu*, sufficed not to so with-draw him from this politique Idolatry; so were the miseries, rewarding that impiety, unable to reclaim *Jehoahaz* from the same impious course: yet the mercy of God beholding the trouble of *Israel*, did condescend unto the prayers of this ungodly Prince, even then when hee and his miserable subjects, were obstinate in following their own abominable wayes. Therefore in temporall matters the ten Tribes recovered space; but the favour of God, which had been infinitely more worth, I doe not find, nor believe that they sought: that they had it not, I find in the words of the Prophet, saying plainly to *Amazias*, *the Lord is not with Israel, neither with all the house* 1 Cluio, 23.7. of *Ephraim*.

## Whether

Whether it were so, that the great Prophet *Elisha*, who lived in those times, did foretell the prosperity of the *Israelites* under the reign of *Joas*; or whether *Jehoahaz*, warried and broken with long adversity, thought it the wisest way, to discharge himselfe in part of the heave cares attending those unhappy *Syrian* Warres, by laying the burden upon his hopefull son; we find that in the thirtieth seventh year of *Joas*, King of *Juda*, *Joas* the son of *Jehoahaz* began to reign over *Israel* in *Samaria*; which was in the 15. year of his fathers reign, and some two or three years before his death.

It appears that this young Prince, even from the beginning of his Rule, did so well husband that poor stock that he received from his Father, of ten Chariots, fifty Horsemen, and ten thousand Foot, that hee might seem likely to prove a thriver. Amongst other circumstances, the words which he spake to *Elisha* the Prophet, argue no lesse, *King. 13. 14* For *Joas* visiting the Prophet, who lay sick, spake unto him thus; *O my father, my father, the Chariot of Israel, and the horsemen of the same*: by which manner of speech hee did acknowledge, that the prayers of this holy man had stood his Kingdom in more stead, than all the Horses and Chariots could doe.

This Prophet who succeeded unto *Elisha*, about the first year of *Joas* the son of *Ahab* King of *Israel* died (as some have probably collected) about the third or fourth year of this *Joas*, the Nephew of *Jehoi*. To shew how the spirit of *Elisha* was doubled, or did rest upon him, it exceedeth my faculty. This is recorded of him, that hee did not onely raise a dead child unto life, as *Elisha* had done, but when hee himselfe was dead, he pleaded God that his dead bones should restore life unto a carcass, which touched them in the grave. In fine, hee bestowed as a legacie, three victories upon King *Joas*, who thereby did set *Israel* in a fair way of recovering all that the *Aramites* had usurped, and weakening the Kings of *Damascus* in such sort, that they were never after terrible to *Samaria*.

### §. VIII.

of *Amaziah* his war against *Edom*; His Apostasie; and overthrow by *Joas*.

**T**He happy successe which *Joas* had found in his war against the *Aramites*, was such as might kindle in *Amaziah* a desire of undertaking some expedition, wherein himselfe might purchase the like honour. His Kingdom could furnish three hundred thousand serviceable men for the Wars; and his treasures were sufficient for the payment of these, and the hire of many more. Cause of war hee had very just against the *Edomites*, who having rebelled in the time of his grand-father *Jehoram*, had about fifty years been unreclaimed, partly by reason of the troubles happening in *Juda*, partly through the sloth and timorousness of his father *Joas*. Yet, forasmuch as the men of *Juda* had in many years been without all exercise of Warre (excepting that unhappy fight wherein they were beaten by a few bands of the *Aramites*) hee held it a point of wisdom to increase his forces, with souldiers waged out of *Israel*, whence he hired for an hundred talents of silver, an hundred thousand valiant men, as the Scripture telleth us, though *Josephus* diminish the number, saying that they were but twenty thousand.

This great Army, which with so much cost *Amaziah* had hired out of *Israel*, hee was faine to dismisse before hee had employed it, being threatened by a Prophet with ill successe, if he strengthened himselfe with the help of those men, whom God (though in mercy hee gave them victory against the cruell *Aramites*) did not love, because they were Idolaters. The *Israelites* therefore departed in great anger, taking in ill part this dismission, as an high disgrace; which to revenge, they fell upon a piece of *Juda* in their return, and shewed their malice in the slaughter of three thousand men, and some spoil, which they carried away. But *Amaziah* with his own forces, knowing that God would bee assistant to their journey, entred courageously into the *Edomites* Countrey; over whom obtaining victory, he slew ten thousand, and took other ten thousand prisoners, all which hee threw from an high rock; holding them, it seems, rather as Traytors, than as just enemies. This victory did not seem to reduce *Edom* under the subjection of the Crown of *Juda*; which might be the cause of that severity, which was used to the prisoners; the *Edomites* that had escaped, refusing to buy the lives of their friends and kinsmen at so dear a rate, as the loss of their own libertie. Some towns in Mount

*Spir*,

*Sir*, *Amaziah* took, as appears by his carrying away the Idols thence; but it is like they were the places most indecentible, in that he left no garrisons there, whereby he might another year the better have pursued the conquest of the whole countrey. Howsoever it were, he got both honour by the journey, and gains enough, had hee not lost himself.

Among other spoiles of the *Edomites*, were carried away their gods; which being vanquished and taken prisoners, did deserve well to be led in triumph. But they cometh to us, I know not by what strange witchcraft, so besotted this unworthy King *Amaziah*, that he set them up to be his gods, and worshipped them, and burned incense unto them.

For this when he was rebuked by a Prophet sent from God, hee gave a churlish and threatening answer, asking the Prophet, Who made him a Counsellor, and bidding him hold his peace for fear of the worst. If either the costly stuffe, whereof these Idols were made, or the curious workmanship and beauty, with which they were adorned by Artificers, had ravished the Kings fancy; me thinks, he should have rather turned them to matter of profit, or kept them as house-hold ornaments and things of pleasure, than thereby have suffered himself to be blinded, with such unreasonable devotion towards them. If the superstitious account wherein the *Edomites* had held them, were able to work much upon his imagination, much more should the bad service which they had done to their old Clients, have moved him thereunto to laugh, both at the *Edomites*, and them. Wherefore it seems to me, that the same affections carried him from God,

unto the service of Idols, which afterwards moved him to talk so roughly to the Prophet reprehending him. He had already obeyed the warning of God by a Prophet, and sent away such auxiliarie forces as he had gathered out of *Israel*; which done, it is sayd, that he was encouraged, and led forth his people, thinking be like, that God would now rather assist him by miracle, than let him faile of obtaining all his hearts desire. But with better reason he should have limited his desires by the will of God, whose pleasure it was, that *Esau* having broken the yoke of *Jacob* from his neck, according as *Isaac* had foretold, should no more become his servent. If therefore *Amaziah* did hope to reconquer all the Countrey of *Edom*, he failed of his expectation; yet so, that he brought home both profit and honour, which might have well contented him.

But there is a foolish and a wretched pride; where with men being transported, can ill endure to ascribe unto God the honour of those actions, in which it hath pleased him to use their own industrie, courage, or force-fight. Therefore it is commonly seen, that they, who entering into battell, are carefull to pray for aide from heaven; with due acknowledgement of his power, who is the giver of victory; when the field is won, doe vaunt of their own exploits; one telling how he got such a ground of advantage; another, how hee gave check to such a battalion; a third, how hee seized on the enemies Cannon; every one striving to magnifie himself, whilest all forget God, as one that had not been present in the action. To ascribe to fortune the effects of another mans vertue, is, I confesse, an argument of malice. Yet this is true, that as he which findeth better successe, than hee did, or in reason might expect, is deeply bound to acknowledge God the Author of his happinesse; so he whose meere wisdom and labour hath brought things, to a prosperous issue, is doubly bound to shew himself thankfull, both for the victory, and for those vertues by which the victory was gotten. And indeed so far from weakness is the nature of such thanksgiving, that it may well be called the height of magnanimitie; no vertue being so truly heroically, as that by which the spirit of man advanceth it selfe with confidence of acceptance, unto the love of God. In which sense it is a brave speech that *Evander* in *Virgil* useth to *Aeneas*, none but a Christian being capable of the admonition:

*Aude hospes contemnere opes, & te quoque dignum  
Finge Deo.*

With this Philosophy *Amaziah* (as appears by his carriage) troubled not his head: hee had shewed himself a better man of war than any king of *Juda*, since the time of *Jehosaphat*, and could be well contented, that his people should think him little inferiour to *David*, of which honour hee saw no reason why the Prophets should rob him, who had made him lose an hundred talents, and done him no pleasure, he having prevailed by plain force and good conduct, without any miracle at all. That hee was distempered with such vain thoughts as these (besides the witness of his impiety following) *Josephus* doth

A a

refuse

testifie, saying, That he despised God, and that being puffed up with his good successe, of which nevertheless he would not acknowledge God to be the Author, he commanded *Joas*, King of *Israel* to become his subject, and to let the ten Tribes acknowledge him their Sovereign, as they had done his Ancestours *David* and *Salomon*. Some think that his quarrell to *Joas* was rather grounded upon the injurie done to him by the *Israelites*, whom hee dismissed in the journey against Mount *Seir*. And likely it is, that the sense of a late wrong had more power to stirre him up, than the remembrance of an old tide, forgotten long since, and by himselfe neglected thirteen, or foureteen years. Nevertheless it might so be, that when he was thus provoked, hee thought it not enough to requite new wrongs, but would also call old matters into question; that so the Kings of *Israel* might, at the least, learn to keep their subjects from offending *Juda*, for fear of endangering their own Crowns. Had *Amazias* desired onely recompence for the injury done to him, it is not improbable that hee should have had some reasonable answer from *Joas*, who was not desirous to fight with him. But the answer which *Joas* returned, likening himself to a Cedar, and *Amazias* in respect of him to no better than a thistle, shewes that the challenge was made in insolent termes, stut perhaps with such proud comparison of Nobilitie, as might be made (according to that which *Josephus* hath written) between a King of antient race, and one of lesse nobilitie than vertue.

*Sophocles in Ajax* Lib.

It is by *Sophocles* reported of *Ajax*, that when going to the warre of *Troy*, his father did bid him to be valiant, and get victory by Gods assistance, he made answer, That by Gods assistance a coward could get victory, but hee would get it alone without such help: after which proud speech, though he did many valiant acts, he had small thanks, and finally, killing himselfe in a madnesse, whereinto he fell upon disgrace received, was hardly allowed the honour of buriall. That *Amazias* did utter such words, I doe not find: but having once entertained the thoughts, which are parents of such words, he was rewarded with successe according. The very first councill wherein this warre was concluded, serves to prove that he was a wise Prince indeed at *Jerusalem*, among his Parafites, but a fool when he had to deal with his equals abroad. For it was not all one, to fight with the *Edomites*, a weak people, trusting more in the fear of their Country, than the valour of their Souldiers; and to encounter with *Joas*, who from so poor beginnings had raised himselfe to such strength, that hee was able to lend his friend a hundred thousand men, and had all his Nation exercised, and trained up in a long victorious warre. But as *Amazias* discovered much want of judgement, in undertaking such a match; so in prosecuting the businesse, when it was set on foot, he behaved himselfe as a man of little experience, who having once onely tried his fortune, and found it to be good, thought that in Warre there was nothing else to doe, than send a defiance, fight, and winne. *Joas* on the contrary side, having been accustomed to deal with a stronger enemy than the King of *Juda*, used that celeritie, which peradventure had often stood him in good stead against the *Aramites*. He did not sit waiting till the enemies brake in and wasted his Country, but presented himselfe with an Army in *Juda*, ready to bid battell to *Amazias*, and save him the labour of a long journey. This could not but greatly discourage those of *Juda*, who (besides the impression of fear which an invasion beats into people, not inured in the like) having devoured in their greedy hopes, the spoyle of *Israel*, fully perswading themselves to get as much, and at as easie a rate, as in the journey of *Edom*; were so far disappointed of their expectation, that well they might suspect all new assurance of good luck, when the old had thus beguiled them. All this notwithstanding, their King that had stomach enough to challenge the patrimonie of *Salomon*, thought like another *David* to winne it by the sword. The issue of which fool-hardinesse might easily have been fore-seen in humane reason; comparing together, either the two Kings, or the quality of their Armies, or the first and ominous beginning of the Warre. But meer humane wisdom, howsoever it might foresee much, could not have prognosticated all the mischief that fell upon *Amazias*. For as soon as the two Armies came in sight, God, whose help this wretched man had so despised, did (as *Josephus* reports it) strike such terrour and amazement into the men of *Juda*, that without one blow given, they fled all away, leaving their King to shift for himself; which he did so ill, that his enemy had soon caught him, and made him change his glorious humours into most abject baseness. That the Armie which fled

*J. cont. l. 9. 1. 10.*

led, sustained any other losse than of honour, I neither find in the Scriptures nor in *Josephus*; it being likely that the soon beginning of their flight, which made it the more shamefull, made it also the more safe. But of the mischief that followed this overthrow, it was Gods will that *Amazias* himselfe should sustain the whole disgrace. For *Joas* carried him directly to *Jerusalem*, where he bade him procure that the gates might be opened to let him in and his Army, threatening him otherwise with present death. So much amazed was the miserable captive, with these dreadfull words, that he durst do no other than periwade the Citizens, to yeeld themselves to the mercie of the Conquerour. The Town, which afterwards being in weaker state held out two years against *Nebuchad-nazzar*, was utterly dismayed, when the King that should have given his life to save it, used all his force of command and intreaty to betray it. So the gates of *Jerusalem* were opened to *Joas*, with which honour (greater than any King of *Israel* had ever obtained) he could not rest contented, but the more to despise *Amazias* and his people, he caused 400 cubits of the wall to be thrown down, and entered the City in his Chariot through that breach, carrying the King before him as in triumph. This done, he sack'd the Temple, and the Kings Palace, and so taking hostages of *Amazias*, he dismissed the poor creature that was glad of his life, and returned to *Samaria*.

## S. IX.

A discourse of the reasons hindring *Joas* from uniting *Juda* to the Crown of *Israel*, when he had won *Jerusalem*, and held *Amazias* prisoner. The end of *Joas* his reign.

WE may justly marvell how it came to passe, that *Joas*, being thus in possession of *Jerusalem*, having the King in his hands, his enemies forces broken, and his own entire, could be so content to depart quietly with a little spoil, when he might have seized upon the whole Kingdom. The reign of *Athalia* had given him cause to hope that the issue of *David* might be dispossessed of that crown; his own nobility, being the son and grand-child of Kings, together with the famous acts that he had done, were enough to make the people of *Juda* think highly of him; who might also have preferred his form of government before that of their own Kings, especially at such a time, when a long succession of wicked Princes had smothered the thanks which were due to the memory of a few good ones. The commodity that would have ensued upon the union of all the twelve Tribes under one Prince, is so apparent, that I need not to insist on it. That any message from God forbade the *Israelites* (as afterwards in the victorie which *Pekah* the son of *Remelias* got upon *Ahaz*) to turn his present advantage to the best use, we doe not read. All this makes it the more difficult to resolve the question, why a Prince so well exercised as *Joas* had been in recovering his own, and winning from the enemy, should forsake the possession of *Jerusalem*, and wilfully neglect the possibilities, or rather cast away the full assurance of so fair a conquest, as the Kingdom of *Juda*.

But concerning that point, which of all others had been most materiall, I mean the desire of the vanquished people to accept the *Israelites* for their King, it is plainly seen, that entering *Jerusalem* in triumphant manner, *Joas* was unable to concoct his own prosperitie. For, the opening of the gates had been enough to have let him not onely into the Citie, but into the Royall Throne, and the peoples hearts, whom by fair intreatie (especially having sure means of compulsion) hee might have made his own, when they saw themselves betrayed, and basely given away by him whose they had been before. The fair mark which this opportunitie presented, hee did not aim at, because his ambition was otherwise, and more meanly busied, in levelling at the glory of a triumphant entrie through a breach. Yet this error might afterwards have been corrected well enough, if entering as an enemy, and shewing what hee could doe, by spending his anger upon the Walls, he had within the Citie done offices of a friend, and laboured to shew good will to the inhabitants. But when his pride had done, his covetousnesse began, and sought to please it self with that which is commonly most ready to the spoyler, yet should be most forborn. The Treasure where with *Sefac*, *Hazeael*, and the *Philistims*, men ignorant of the true God and his Religion, had quenched their greedy thirst, ought not to have tempted the appetite of *Joas*, who though an idolater,

Aaa 2

yet





proof that he was not reclaimed unto his lives end: And certainly, they which call a man in his adversity of his faults passed, shall sooner be thought to upbraid him with his fortune, than to seeke his reformation. Wherefore it is no marvell, that Priests and Prophets were lesse welcome to him, than ever they had been: On the other side, flatterers, and such as were desirous to put a heart into him, whereof themselves might alwayes be masters, wanted not plausible matter to revive him. For he was not the first, nor second of the Kings of *Juda*, that had been overcome in battell: *Abdai* himselfe had abandoned the Citie, leaving it before the enemy was in sight, unto *Abshalom* his rebellious Sonne. Many besides him had received losses, wherein the Temple bare a part. If *Joas* might so easily have beene kept out, why did their Ancestors let *Sesac* in? *Asa* was reputed a vertuous Prince, yet with his own hands hee emptied the Temple, and was not blamed, but held excusable by necessity of the State. Belike these traducers would commend no Actions, but of dead Princes: if so they should rather live to punish them, than die to please them. Though wherein hee had given them any cause of displeasure? It was he indeed that commanded to let open the gates to *Joas*, but it was the people that did it. Good servants ought never to have obeyed their Masters Commandments to his disadvantage, when they find him not master of his own Person. As his captivity did acquit him from blame of all things that he did or suffered in that condition; so was that misfortune it selfe, in our estimation, as highly to his honour, as deeply to his losse. For had hee beene as halfe so free as others were, hee might have escaped, as well as others did. But seeking to teach the base multitude courage by his Royall example, he was shamefully betrayed by those in whom he trusted. Unworthy creatures, that could readily obey him, when speaking another mans words, being prisoner, he commanded them to yeeld; having neglected his charge, when leading them into the field, he had them stand to it and fight like men. The best was, that they must needs acknowledge his mischance, as the occasion whereby many thousand lives were saved: the enemy having wisely preferred the surprize of a Lion that was Captaine, before the chase and slaughter of an Army of Stags that followed him.

These or the like words comforting *Amazias*, were able to perswade him, that it was so even so indeed. And such excuses might have served well enough to please the people, if the King had first studied how to please God: But hee that was unwilling to ascribe unto God the good successe foretold by a Prophet, could easily find how to impute this late disaster unto fortune, and the fault of others. Now concerning fortune, it seemes that he meant to keep himself safe, from her by sitting still; for in fifteene years following (so long hee our-lived his honour) we find not that he stirred. As for his subjects, though nothing henceforth bee recorded of his government, yet we may see by his end, that the middle time was ill spent among them, increasing their hatred to his own ruine. He that suspecteth his own worth or other mens opinions, thinking the lesse regard is had of his person than he beleeveeth to be due to his place, will commonly spend all the force of his authoritie in purchasing the name of a severe man: For the affected fowrenesse of a vaine fellow, doth many times resemble the gravity of one that is wise: and the feare wherein they live, which are subject unto oppression, carries a shew of reverence to him that does the wrong; at least it serves to dazzle the eyes of underlings, keeping them from prying into the weakednesse of such as have jurisdiction over them. Thus the time, wherein, by well using it, men might attain to be such as they ought, they do usually mispend, in seeking to appeare such as they are not. This is a vaine & deceivable course, procuring, instead of the respect that was hoped for, more indignation than was feared. Which is a thing of dangerous consequence; especially when an unable spirit, being over-perted with so high authority, is too passionately in the execution of such an office, as cannot be checked but by violence. If therefore *Amazias* thought by extreme rigour to hold up his reputation, what did he else than strive to make the people think he hated them, when of themselves they were apt enough to beleeve that he did not love them? the best was, that he had, by revenging his fathers death provided well enough for his own security: but who should take vengeance (or upon whom?) of such a murder, wherein every one had a part? Surely God himselfe, who had not given commandment or leave unto the people, to take his office out of his hand, in shedding the blood of his Anointed. Yet as *Amazias* careless of God, was carried headlong

headlong by his own affections; so his subjects, following the same ill example, with out requiring what belonged unto their duties, rose up against him, with such headlong fury, that being unable to defend himself in *Jerusalem*, he was driven to forsake the Citie, and flee to *Lachis* for safeguard of his life. But so extreme was the hatred conceived against him, & so generally, that neither his absence could allay the rage of it in the Capital Citie, nor his presence in the Countrey abroad procure friends to defend his life. Questionlesse he chose the Town of *Lachis* for his refuge, as a place of all other best affected to him; yet found he there none other favour, than that the people did not kill him with their own hands, for when the Conspirators (who troubled not themselves about raising an Armie for the matter) sent pursuers after, he was abandoned to death. *Lachis* was the utmost Citie of his Dominion Westward, standing somewhat without the border of *Juda*, so that he might have made an easie escape (if he durst adventure) into the Territories of the *Philistines*, or the Kingdome of *Israel*. Therefore it may seem that he was detained there, where certain it is that he found no kind of favour: for had not the people of this Town added their own treason to the generall insurrection, the murderers could not at so good leasure as they did, have carried away his bodie to *Jerusalem*, where they gave him buriall with his fathers.

## §. XI.

10 Of the Interregnum, or vacancie, that was in the Kingdome of *Juda*, after the death of *Amazias*.

I hath already bin shewed, that the Reignes of the Kings of *Juda* and *Israel*, were sometimes to be measured by compleat years, otherwhiles, by years current: and that the time of one King is now and then confounded with the last years of his fathers Reign, or the foremost of his sons. But we are now arrived at a mere vacation, wherein the Crown of *Juda* lay voyd eleven whole yeares: a thing not plainly set down in Scriptures, nor yet remembered by *Josephus*, and therefore hard to be beleaved, were it not proved by necessary consequence.

30 Twice we find it written, that *Amazias*, King of *Juda*, lived after the death of *Joas* King of *Israel* fifteen yeares; whereupon it followes, that the death of *Amazias*, was about the end of fifteen yeares compleat, which *Feroboam* the second (who in the fifteenth year of *Amazias* was made King over *Israel*) had reigned in *Samaria*. But the succession of *Azarias*, who is also called *Azaria*, unto his father in the Kingdome of *Juda*, was eleven yeares later than the sixteenth of *Feroboam*: for it is expresse, that *Azaria* began to reign in the seven and twentieth yeare of *Feroboam*; the sixteenth year of his life, being joyned with the first of two and fiftie that he reigned. So the Interregnum of eleven yeares cannot be divided, without some hard means used, of interpreting the Text otherwise than the letter sounds.

40 Yet some conjectures there are made, which tend to keep all even, without acknowledging any voyd time. For it is thought that in the place last of all cited, by the seven and twentieth year of *Feroboam*, we should perhaps understand the seven and twentieth year of his life; or else (because the like words are no where else interpreted in the like sense) that *Azaria* was eleven yeares under age, that is, five yeares old, when his father died, and so his sixteenth yeare might concur with the seven and twentieth of *Feroboam*; or that the Text it selfe might have suffered some wrong, by miswriting twentie seven for seventeen yeares; and so, by making the seventeenth yeare of *Feroboam* to be newly begun, all may be saved. These are the conjectures of that worthy man *Gerard Mercator*: concerning the first of which, it may suffice, that the Author himselfe doth easily let it passe, as improbable; the last is followed by none that I know, neither is it fit, that upon every doubt, we should call the text in question, which could not be falsified in all copies, if perhaps it were in one: as for the second, it may be held with some qualification, that *Azaria* began his Reign being five yeares old; but then must we adde those eleven yeares which passed in his minority, to the two and fiftie that followed his sixteenth yeare, which is all one, in a manner, with allowing an Interregnum.

But why should we be so carefull to avoyd an Interregnum in *Juda*, seeing that the like necessitie



necessity hath enforced all good Writers to acknowledge the like vacancy, twice happening within few yeares; in the Kingdom of *Israel*: The space of time betwene *Jeroboam* death, and the beginning of *Zacharias* reign; and such another gap found betwene the death of *Pekah*, and the beginning of *Hosias*, have made it easily to be admitted into *Samarita*; which the consideration of things as they stood in *Juda*, when *Amazias* was slaine, doth make more probable to have happened there; yea, although the necessity of computation were not to appear.

For the publique furie having so farre extended it selfe, as unto the destruction of the kings own person, was not likely to be appeased without order taken for obtaining some redresse of those matters, which had cauled it at the first to break forth into such extremity. We need not therefore wonder how it came to passe, that they which already had thrown themselves into such an horrible treason, should afterwards dare to withhold the Crown from a Prince of that age, which being invested in all ornaments of Regality, is nevertheless exposed to many injuries, proceeding from head-trongs, and forgetfull subjects.

As for their conjecture, who make *Azarias* to have beene King but one and forie years after he came out of his non-age; I dare not allow it, because it agrees too hardly with the Text. The best opinion were that which gives unto *Jeroboam* eleven yeares of reigne with his Father, before he began to reigne single in the fifteenth of *Amazias*; did it not swallow up almost the whole reign of *Joas*, and extending the yeares of those which reigned in *Israel* (by making such of them compleat as were onely current) and take at the shortest the reignes of Princes ruling in other Nations. But I will not stand to dispute further of this: every man may follow his own opinion, and see mine more plainely in the Chronologicall Table, drawne for these purposes.

## §. XII.

Of Princes Contemporarie with *Amazias*, and more particularly of *Sardanapalus*.

**T**He Princes living with *Amazias*, and in the eleven yeares that followed his death, were *Joas* and *Jeroboam* in *Israel*; *Cephrenes* and *Mysereinus* in *Egypt*; *Sylvius Aladius*, and *Sylvius Aventinus* in *Alba*; *Agavemnon* in *Corinth*; *Diognetus Phredus*, and *Ariphron* in *Athens*; in *Lacedaemon* *Thalestus*, in whose time the *Spartans* went from the *Achaians*, *Gerauthes*, *Amycla*, and some other Townes.

But more notable than all these, was *Assyrian Sardanapalus*, who in the one and twentieth year of *Amazias*, succeeding his father *Ocraxapes* or *Anacyndaraxes*, reigned twenty yeares, and was slaine the last of the eleven voyd yeares which fore-went the reigne of *Azarias*. In him ended (as most agree) the line of *Ninus*, which had held that Empire one thousand two hundred and forty yeares. A most luxurious and effeminate Palliard he was, passing away his time among strumpets, whom he imitated both in apparel and behaviour.

In these voluptuous courses he lived an unhappy life, knowing himselfe to be so vile, that he durst not let any man have a sight of him; yet seene he was at length, and the sight of him was so odious, that it procured his ruine. For *Arbaces*, who governed *Media* under him, finding meanes to behold the person of his King, was so incensed with that beastly spectacle of a man disguised in womans attire, and striving to counterfeite a harlot, that he thought it a great shame to live under the command of so unworthy a creature. Purposing therefore to free himselfe and others from so base subjection, he was much encouraged by the prediction of *Belus* or *Belus* a *Chaldean*, who told him plainly, that the Kingdom of *Sardanapalus* should fall into his hands. *Arbaces* well so pleased with the prophetic, did promise unto *Belus* himselfe the government of *Babylon*, and so concluding how to handle the businesse, one of them stirred up the *Medes*, and allured the *Persians* into the quarrel, the other perswaded the *Babylonians* and *Arabians* to venture themselves in the same cause. These foure Nations armed forty thousand men against *Sardanapalus*, who in this danger was not wanting to himselfe, but gathering such forces as he could out of other Nations, encountred the rebels, as one that would by deeds refute the tales that they had told of him. Neither did his carriage in this beginning of that warre, answer to the manner of his retirednesse. For in three battels

battels he carried away the better, driving *Arbaces* and his followers into such fearfull tempests, that had not *Belus* promised them constantly some unexpected succours, they would forthwith have broken up their Camp. About the same time; an Armie out of *Babylonia* was coming to assist the King; but *Arbaces* encountering it upon the way, perswaded so strongly by promise of liberty, that those forces joyned themselves with his. The sudden departure of the enemy seeming to be a flight, caused *Sardanapalus* to feast his Armie, triumphing before victory. But the Rebels being strengthened with this new supply, came upon him by night, and forced his Camp, which through over-great security was unprepared for resistance.

This overthrow did so weaken the Kings heart, that leaving his wives brother *Salamennus* to keep the field, he withdrew himself into the Citie of *Nineve*; which, till new aydes that he sent for should come, he thought easily to defend; it having been prophesied, that *Nineve* should never be taken, till the River were enemy to the Town. Of the greatnesse and strength of *Nineve*, enough hath been spoken in our discourse of *Ninus*. It was so well walled, that *Arbaces* (having in two battels overthrowen the Kings Armie, and slaine *Salamennus*) was faine to lye two whole yeares before it, in hope to winne it by famine; whereof yet hee saw no appearance. It seems that hee wanted Engines and skill to force those walls, which were an hundred foot high, and thick enough for three Chariots in front to passe upon the rampire. But that which he could not doe in two yeares, the River of *Tigris* did in the third: for being high swollen with raines, it not onely drowned a part of the Citie through which it ranne, but threw down twenty furlongs of the wall, and made a fair breach for *Arbaces* to enter.

*Sardanapalus*, either terrified with the accomplishment of the old Oracle, or seeing no means of resistance left, shutting up himself into his Palace, with his Wives, Eunuchs, and all his Treasures, did set the house on fire, wherewith he and they were together consumed. *Strabo* speaks of a monument of his, that was in *Anchiale* a Citie of *Cilicia*, whereon was found an inscription shewing that hee built that Citie and *Tharsus* upon one day: but the addition hereto, bidding men eat and drink, and make merrory, encouraged others with verses well known, to a voluptuous life, by his own example testified that his nature was more prone to sensuality, than to any vertue becoming a Prince.

There are some that faintly report otherwise of his end; saying that *Arbaces*, when he first found him among his Concubines; was so enraged, that suddenly he slew him with a dagger. But the more generall consent of writers agrees with this relation of *Diodorus Siculus*, who citeth *Ctesias* a Greek Writer, that lived in the Court of *Persia*, where the truth might best be known.

Concerning the Princes which reigned in *Assyria*, from the time of *Semiramis*, unto *Sardanapalus*, though I believe that they were sometimes (yet not, as *Orosius* hath it, incessantly) busied in offensive, or else defensive arms; yet for the most part of them I do better trust *Diodorus Siculus*, who saith that their names were overpassed by *Ctesias*, because they did nothing worthy of memorie. Whatsoever they did, that which *Theophilus Antiochenus* hath said of them is very true; Silence and Oblivion hath oppressed them.

## CHAP. XXIII.

## Of Uzzia.

## §. I.

*The prosperitie of Uzzia, and of Jeroboam the second, who reigned with him in Israel, Of the Anarchie that was in these Tribes after the death of Jeroboam, of Zacharia, Sallum, Menahem, and Pekahia.*

**U**zzia, who is also called *Ahaziah*, the son of *Jotham*, was made King of *Juda*, when he was sixteen years old, in the seven and twentieth year of *Jeroboam* the son of *Joas* King of *Israel*. Hee served the God of his father *David*, and had therefore good successe in all his enterprises. Hee built *Eloth*, a Town that stood neer to the Red Sea, and restored it to *Juda*. He overcame the *Philistims*, of whose Towns he dismantled some, and built others in sundrie parts of their Territories. Also he got the masterie over some parts of *Arabia*, and brought the *Ammonites* to pay him tribute. Such were the fruits of his prosperous wars, wherein (as *Josephus* rehearseth his acts) he began with the *Philistims*, and then proceeded unto the *Arabians* and *Ammonites*. His Armie consisted of three hundred and seven thousand men of war, over which were appointed two thousand and six hundred Captains. For all this multitude the King prepared *shields*, and *spears*, and *helmetts*, and other Arms requisite; following therein happily a course quite opposite unto that which some of his late predecessors had held, who thought it better policie to use the service of the Nobility, than of the multitude, carrying forth to warre the *Princes*, and all the *Chariots*.

2 Chron. 26. 14

1 Chron. 21. 9

As the victories of *Uzzia* were far more important, than the achievements of all that he had reigned in *Juda*, since the time of *David*; so were his riches and magnificent works, equall if not superiour to any of theirs that had been Kings between him and *Salomon*. For, besides that great conquests are won to repay the charges of War with triple interest; he had the skill to use, as well as the happinesse to get. Hee turned his lands to the best use, keeping Ploughmen and Dressers of Vines, in grounds convenient for such husbandrie. In other places he had Cattell feeding, whereof he might well keep great store, having won so much from the *Ammonites* and *Arabians*, that had abundance of waste ground serving for pasturage. For defence of his Cattell and Herdsmen, hee built Towers in the wilderness. He also digged many Cisterns or Ponds. *Josephus* calls them water-courses; but in such drie grounds; it was enough that he found water, by digging in the most likely places. If by these Towers he so commanded the water, that none could without his consent, relieve themselves therewith, questionlesse he took the onely course, by which he might securely hold the Lordship over all the wilderness; i. e. being hardly passable, by reason of the extreme drought, when the few Springs therein found, are left free to the use of Travellers.

Besides all this cost, and the building both of *Eloth* by the Red Sea, and of sundrie Towns among the *Philistims*; he repaired the wall of *Jerusalem*, which *Joas* had broken down, and fortified it with Towers, whereof some were an hundred and fiftie Cubits high.

The state of *Israel* did never so flourish, as at this time, since the division of the twelve Tribes into two kingdoms. For as *Uzzia* prevailed in the South, so (if not more) *Jeroboam* the son of *Joas*, King of the ten Tribes, enlarged his border on the North; where obtaining many victories against the *Syrians*, he wan the Royall Citie of *Damascus*, and he wan *Hamath*; with all the countrie thereabout from the entring of *Hamath*, unto the Sea of the Wilderness, that is, (as the most expound it) unto the vast deserts of *Arabia*, the end whereof was undiscovered. So the bounds of *Israel* in those parts, were in time of this *Jeroboam*, the same (or not much narrower) which they had bin in the reign of *David*.

3 Kin. 14. 25

But

But it was not for the piety of *Jeroboam*, that he thrived so well, for he was an Idolater: it was only the compassion which the Lord had on *Israel*, seeing the exceeding bitter affliction whereinto the *Aramites* had brought his people, which caused him to alter the succession of war, and to throw the victorious *Aramites* under the feet of those whom they had so cruelly oppressed. The line of *Jehu* to which God had promised the Kingdom of *Israel* unto the fourth generation, was now not far from the end; and now again it was invited unto repentance by new benefits, as it hath been at the beginning. But the sin of *Jeroboam* the son of *Nebat* was held so pretious, that neither the kingdom it self given to him by God, was able to draw *Jehu* from that politick Idolatry; nor the misery falling upon him and his posterity, to bring them to a better course of Religion; nor yet, at the last, this great prosperity of *Jeroboam* the son of *Joas*, to make him render the honour that was due to the onely giver of victory. Wherefore the promise of God made unto *Jehu*, that his sons, unto the fourth generation, should sit on the throne of *Israel*, was not enlarged; but being almost expired, gave warning of the approaching end, by an accident (so strange, that we who find no particulars recorded, can hardly ghesse at the occasions) foregoing the last accomplishment.

When *Jeroboam* the son of *Joas*, after a victorious reign of one and forty years, had ended his life; it seems in all reason that *Zacharia* his son should forthwith have been admitted to reign in his stead; the Nobility of that race having gotten such a lustre by the immediate succession of four Kings, that any Competitor, had the Crown passed by election, must needs have appeared base; and the virtue of the last King having been so great, as might well serve to lay the foundation of a new house, much more to establish the already confirmed right of a family so rooted in possession. All this notwithstanding, two or three and twenty years did passe before *Zacharia* the sonne of *Jeroboam* was, by uniform consent, received as King. The true original causes hereof were to be found at *Dan* and *Bethel*, where the golden Calves did stand: yet second instruments of this disturbance are likely not to have been wanting, upon which the wisdom of man was ready to cast an eye. Probable it is, that the Captains of the army (who afterwards slew one another so fast, that in fourteen years there reigned five Kings) did now by head-strong violence, rend the kingdom asunder, holding each what hee could; and either despising or hating some qualities in *Zacharia*, untill, after many years, wearied with dissention, and the principall of them perhaps, being taken out of the way by death, for want of any other eminent man, they consented to yeeld all quietly to the son of *Jeroboam*. That this Anarchy lasted almost three and twenty years, we find by the difference of time between the fiftenth year of *Uzzia*, which was the last of *Jeroboam* his one and fortieth (his seven and twentieth concurring with the first of *Uzzia*) and the eight and thirtieth of the same *Uzzia*, in the last six moneths whereof *Zacharia* reigned in *Samaria*. There are some indeed that by supposing *Jeroboam* to have reigned with his father eleven years, do cut off the interregnum in *Juda* (before mentioned) and by the same reason abridge this Anarchie that was before the reign of *Zacharia* in *Israel*. Yet they leave it twelve years long: which is time sufficient to prove, that the kingdom of the ten Tribes was no lesse distempered than as is already noted. But I chosse rather to follow the more common opinion, as concurring more exactly with the times of other Princes reigning abroad in the World, than this doubtfull conjecture, that gives to *Jeroboam* two and fifty years, by adding three quarters of his fathers reign unto his own; which was it self indeed so long, that he may well seem to have begun it very young: for I do not think that God blessed this Idolater both with a longer reign, and with a longer life than he did his servant *David*.

Thus much being spoken of the time wherein the Throne of *Israel* was voyd, before the reign of *Zacharia*; little may suffice to be said of his reign it selfe, which lasted but a little while. Six moneths only was he King; in which time hee declared himself a worshipper of the golden Calves; which was enough to justifie the judgement of God, whereby he was slain. He was the last of *Jehu*'s house, being (inclusively) the first of that line; which may have been some cause of the troubles impeaching his orderly succession: the prophetic having determined that rate in the fourth generation. But (besides that Gods promise was extended unto the utmost) there was no warrant given to *Sallum*, or to any other, for the death of *Zacharia*, as had been given to *Jehu* for the slaughter of *Jeroboam*, and for the eradication of *Ahabs* house.

Zacharia



(whereof in due place we will give reason) was current, when *Uzzia* took possession of the Kingdome of *Juda*.

After the death of *Bacchoris*, *Aschis* followed in the Kingdome of *Egypt*: unto him succeeded *Ansis*; and these two, occupied that Crown six years. Then *Sabacu*, an *Aethiopian*, became King of *Egypt*, and held it fifty years, whereof the ten first ranne along with the last of *Uzzia* his Reigne and Life. Of these and other *Egyptian* Kings, more shall be spoken, when their affairs shall come to be intermedled with the business of *Juda*.

In *Athens*, the two last years of *Arisphron* his twentie, the seven and twentieth of *Theopne*, the twentieth of *Agamemnor*, and the three first of *Eschylus* his three and twentie, to made even with the two and fiftie of *Uzzia*: as likewise did in *Alba* the last seven of *Silvius Aventinus* his seven and thirtie, together with the three and twentie of *Silvius Proculus*, and two and twentie the first of *Silvius Amulius*. In *Media* *Arbaces* began his new Kingdome in the first of *Uzzia*, wherein, after eight and twentie years, his son *Sosarmus* succeeded him, and reigned thirty years. Of this *Arbaces*, and the devision of the *Assyrian* Empire: between him and others, when they had oppressed *Sardanapalus*, I hold it convenient to use more particular discourse, that we may not wander in too great uncertainty in the storie of the *Assyrian* kings, who have already found the way into *Palestina*, and are not likely to forget it.

## S. I. V.

Of the *Assyrian* Kings, descending from *Phul*: and whether *Phul* and *Belosus* were one person, or heads of sundrie Families, that reigned a part in *Nineve* and *Babylon*.

**B**Y that which hath formerly been shewed of *Sardanapalus* his death, it is apparent, that the chiefe therein was *Arbaces* the *Median*; to whom the rest of the Confederates did not only submit themselves in that Warre, but were contented afterwards to be judged by him, receiving by his authority sentence of death, or pardon of their forfeited lives. The first example of this his power, was shown upon *Belsus* the *Babylonian*, by whose especiall advice and help, *Arbaces* himself was become so great: Yet was not this power of *Arbaces* exercised in so tyrannicall a manner, as might give offence in that great alteration of things, either to the Princes that had assisted him, or to the generality of the people. For in the condemnation of *Belosus*, he used the counsell of his other Captains, and then pardoned him of his own grace; allowing him to hold not only the City and Province of *Babylon*, but also those treasures, for embezzling whereof his life had been endangered.

In like manner, he gave rewards to the rest of his partakers, and made them Rulers of Provinces; retaining (as it appears) onely the Sovereignty to himselfe, which to use immoderately hee did naturally abhorre. He is said, indeed, to have excited the *Medes* against *Sardanapalus*, by propounding unto them hope of transferring the Empire to their Nation. And to make good this his promise, he destroyed the Citie of *Nineve*, permitting the Citizens nevertheless to take and carry away every one his own goods. The other Nations that joyned with him, as the *Persians* and *Bactrians*, he drew to his side, by the allurements of liberty; which he himselfe so greatly loved, that by slackning too much the reines of his own Sovereignty, hee did more harm to the generall estate of *Media*, than the pleasure of the freedom, which it enjoyed, could recompence. For both the Territory of that Countrey was pared narrower by *Salmanassar*, (or perhaps by some of his Progenitors) whom wee find in the Scriptures to have held some Towns of the *Medes*; and the civill administration was so disorderly, that the people themselves were glad to see that reformation, which *Deioces* the first of *Arbaces* his Line, did make in that government, by reducing them into stricter termes of obedience.

How the force of the *Assyrians* grew to bee such as might in fourscore years, if not sooner, both extend it self unto the conquest of *Israel*, and tear away some part of *Media*, it is a question hardly to be answered; not only in regard of the destruction of *Nineve*, and subversion of the *Assyrian* Kingdome, whereof the *Medes*, under *Arbaces*, had the honour, who may seem at that time to have kept the *Assyrians* under their subjection, when the rest of the Provinces were set at liberty; but in consideration of the Kings themselves,

who

who reigning afterwards in *Babylon* and *Nineve*, are confounded by some, and distinguished by others; whereby their History is made uncertain.

I will first therefore deliver the opinion generally received, and the grounds whereupon it stands; then, producing the objections made against it, I will compare together the determination of that worthy man *Joseph Scaliger*, with those learned that subscribe therunto, and the judgement of others that were more ancient Writers, or have followed the Antients in this doubtfull case. Neither shall it be needfull to set down a part the several Authorities and arguments of sundry men, adding somewhat of weight or of clearness one to another: it will be enough to relate the whole substance of each discourse: to which I will do as briefly as I can, and without fear to be taxed of partialitie, as being no more addicted to the one opinion than to the other, by any fancie of mine own, but merely led by those reasons, which upon examination of each page, seemed to me most forcible, though to others they may perhaps appear weak.

That which, untill of late, hath passed as current, is this; That *Belosus* was the same King, who, first of the *Assyrians*, entred *Palestina* with an Armie; being called *Pul*, or *Phul*, in the Scriptures, and by *Annius* his authors with such as follow them, *Phul Belochus*. Of this man it is said, that he was a skilfull Astrologer, subtle, and ambitious; that he got *Babylon* by composition made with *Arbaces*; and that not therewith content, hee got into his hand part of *Assyria*: finally that he reigned eight and fortie years, and then dying, left the Kingdome to *Teglat-phalassar* his sonne, in whose Posteritie it continued some few descents, till the house of *Merodach* prevailed. The truth of this, if *Annius* his *Metaphyses* were sufficient proof, could not be gaind: for that Authour (such as he is) is peremptorie herein. But, howsoever *Annius* his Authors deserve to be suspected, it stands with no reason, that we should conclude all to be false which they affirme. They, who maintain this Tradition, justifie it by divers good Allegations, as a matter confirmed by circumstances found in all Authors, and repugnant unto no historie at all. For it is manifest by the relation of *Diodorus* (which is indeed the foundation whereupon all have built) that *Arbaces* and *Belosus* were partners in the action against *Sardanapalus*; and that the *Bactrians*, who joyned with them, were thought well rewarded with liberty; as likewise other Captains were with governments: but that any third person was so eminent, as to have *Assyria* it self, the chiefe Countrey of the Empire bestowed upon him, it is a thing whereof not the least appearance is found in any Historie. And certainly it stood with little reason, that the *Assyrians* should be committed unto a peculiar King, at such time as it was not thought meete to trust them in their own walls and houses. Rather it is apparent, that the destruction of *Nineve* by *Arbaces*, and the transplantation of the Citizens, was held a needfull policy, because thereby the people of that Nation might be kept down from aspiring to recover the Sovereignty, which else they would have thought to belong, as of right, unto the Seat of the Empire.

Upon such considerations did the *Romans*, in ages long after following, destroy *Carthage*, and dissolve the Corporation, or Body politick, of the Citizens of *Carthage*; because these two Towns were capable of the Empire: a matter esteemed over dangerous, even to *Rome* it selfe, that was Mistress of them both. This being so, how can it be thought that the *Assyrians* in three or four years had erected their Kingdome anew, under one *Pul*? or what mult this *Pul* have been (of whose deservings or entermidings, or indeed of whose very name, we find no mention in the Warre against *Sardanapalus*) to whom the principall parts of the Empire fell, either by generall consent in division of the Provinces, or by his own power and purchase very soon after? Surely he was none other than *Belosus*, whose near neighbour-hood gave him opportunity (as he was wise enough to play his own game) both to get *Assyria* to himselfe, and to empeach any other man that should have attempted to seize upon it. The Province of *Babylon*, which *Belosus* held, being (as *Herodotus* reports) rich in riches and power, as good as the third part of the *Persian* Empire, was able to furnish him with all that was requisite for such a business: if that were not enough, he had gotten into his own hands all the gold and silver that had been in the Palace of *Nineve*. And questionlesse, to restore such a Citie as *Nineve*, was an enterprize fit for none to take in hand, except he had such means as *Belosus* had, which *Pul*, if he were not *Belosus*, is likely to have wanted.

Besides all this, had *Pul* been a distinct person from *Belosus*, and Lord of *Assyria*, which

Joseph. l. 10.  
c. 12.

lay beyond the Countries of *Babylon* and *Mesopotamia*, it would not have been an easy matter for him, to passe quite through another mans Kingdome with an Armie, seeking bootie a farre off in *Israel*: the onely action by which the name of *Phul* is known. But if we grant, that he, whom the Scriptures call *Pul* or *Phul*, was the same whom prophane writers have called *Belofus*, *Beleses*, and *Belesis*, (in like manner as *Josephus* acknowledge, that he, whom the Scriptures called never otherwise than *Darius* the *Mede*, was the sonne of *Asiages*, and called of the *Greeks* by another name, that is, *Cyaxares*) then is this *Phul* utterly removed. For *Babylon* and *Mesopotamia* did border upon *Syria* and *Palestina*: so that *Belofus* having settled his affairs in *Assyria* toward the East and North, might with good leasure encroach upon the Countries that lay on the other side of his Kingdome, to the South and West. He that looks into all particulars, may find every one circumstance concurring, to prove that *Phul*, who invaded *Israel*, was none other than *Belofus*. For the Prince of the *Arabians*, who joyned with *Arbaces*, and brought no small part of the forces wherewith *Sardanapalus* was overthrown, did enter into that action, merely for the love of *Belofus*. The friendship of these *Arabians* was a thing of main importance, to those that were to passe over *Euphrates* with an Armie into *Syria*. Wherefore *Belofus*, that held good correspondence with them, and whose most fruitful Province, adjoining to their barrain quarters, might yearly doe them inestimable pleasures, was not onely likely to have quiet passage through their borders, but their utmost assistance: yea, it stands with good reason, that they who loved not *Israel*, should for their own behoofe have given him intelligence of the destruction and civil broyles among the ten Tribes; whereby as this *Pul* got a thousand talents, so it seems that the *Syrians* and *Arabians*, that had felt an heavey neighbour of *Ieroboam*, recovered their own, setting up a new King in *Damasco*, and clearing the coast of *Arabia*, (from the Sea of the Wilderness to *Hamath*) of the Hebrew Garrisons. Neither was it any new acquaintance, that made the Nations, divided by *Euphrates*, hold together in so good termes of friendship: it was ancient consanguinitie, the memorie wherof was available to the *Syrians*, in the time of *David*, when the *Aramites* about *Damasco*. So *Belofus* willingly, to the succour of *Hadadezer*, and the *Aramites* about *Damasco*. So *Belofus* had good reason to look into those parts: what a King reigning so far off as *Nineve*, should have to do in *Syria*, if the other end of his Kingdome had not reached to *Euphrates*, it were hard to shew.

But concerning this last argument of the businesse which might allure the *Chaldaens* into *Palestina*, it may be doubted, lest it should seem to have ill coherence with that which hath been said of the long Anarchie that was in the ten Tribes. For if the Crown of *Israel* were worn by no man in three and twenty years; then is it likely that *Belofus* was either unwilling to stir, or unable to take the advantage, when it was fairest, and first discovered. This might have compelled those, who alone were not strong enough to seek after help from some Prince that lay further off; and so the opinion of those that distinguish *Phul* from *Belofus*, would be somewhat confirmed. On the other side if we say, that *Belofus* did passe the river of *Euphrates*, as soon as he found likelihood of making a prosperous journey; then may it seem that the inter-regnum in *Israel* was not so long as we have made it: for three and twenty years leasure would have afforded better opportunitie, which ought not to have been lost.

For answer hereunto, we are to consider, what *Orosius* and *Eusebius* have written concerning the *Chaldaens*: the one, that after the departure of *Arbaces* into *Media*, they layd hold on a part of the Empire: the other, that they prevailed and grew mighty, between the times of *Asarhaddon* and *Darius* the *Medes*. Now, though it be held an error of *Orosius*, where he supposeth that the occupying of *Babylonia* by the *Chaldaens*, was in manner of a rebellion from the *Medes*; yet herein he and *Eusebius* doe concur, that the authority of *Arbaces* did restrain the ambition, which by his absence grew bold; and by his death, regardfull onely of it selfe. Now though I have conjectured that all *Assyria* was given to *Belofus* (as an overplus, besides the Provinces of *Babylon* which was his by plain bargain made aforehand) in regard of his high deservings; yet the opinion more commonly received, is, that hee did onely encroach upon that Province by little and little, whilst *Arbaces* lived; and afterwards dealing more openly, got it all himselfe. Seeing therefore, that there passed but twelve years between the death of *Arbaces*, and the beginning of *Neabonassar* his Reign, manifest it is, that the conquest

of *Assyria*, and settling of that Countrey, was worke enough to hold *Belofus* occupied, besides the restauration of *Nineve*, which alone was able to take up all the time remaining of his reign, if perhaps he lived to see it finished in his own dayes. So that this argument may rather serve to prove that *Phul* and *Belofus* were one person; forasmuch as the journey of *Phul* against *Israel* was not made until *Belofus* could find leasure; and the time of advantage which *Belofus* did let slip, argued his businesse in some other quarter, namely, in that Province of which *Phul* is called King. Briefly, it may be said, that he who conquered *Assyria*, and performed somewhat upon a Countrey so far distant as *Palestina*, was likely to have been, at least, named in some History, or, if not himself, yet his Countrey to have been spoken of for those victories: but we neither hear of *Phul*, in any prophane Author; neither doth any Writer, sacred or prophane, once mention the victories or acts whatsoever of the *Assyrians*, done in those times; whereas of *Belofus*, and the power of the *Chaldaens*, we find good Record.

Surely, that great slaughter of so many thousand *Assyrians*, in the quarrell of *Sardanapalus*, together with other calamities of that long and unfortunate warre, which overwhelmed the whole Countrey, not ending but with the ruine and utter desolation of *Nineve*, must needs have so weakened the state of *Assyria*, that it could not in thirty years space be able to invade *Palestina*, which the ancient Kings, reigning in *Nineve*, had, in all their greatesse, forborn to attempt. Yet these afflictions, disabling that Countrey, did help to enable *Belofus* to subdue it; who having once extended his Dominion to the borders of *Media*, and being (especially if he had compounded with the *Medes*) by the interposition of that Countrey, secure of the *Scythians*, and other warlike Nations on that side, might very well turn Southward, and try his fortune in those Kingdomes, wherinto civil dissention of the inhabitants, and the bordering envie of the *Arabians* and *Aramites* about *Damasco*, Friends and Cousins to the *Chaldaens* and *Mesopotamians*, did invite him. For these, and the other before alleged reasons, it may be concluded, That what is said of *Pul* in the Scriptures, ought to be understood of *Belofus*; even as by the names of *Nebuchadnezzar*, *Darius* the *Mede*, *Artaxastis*, and *Ahashuerus*, with the like, are thought, or known, to be meant the same whom prophane Historians, by names better known in their own Countreys, have called *Nabopolassar*, *Cyaxares*, and *Artaxerxes*: especially considering, that hereby we shall neither contradict any thing that hath been written of old, nor need to trouble our selves and others with framing new conjectures. This in effect is that, which they allege in maintenance of the opinion commonly received.

Now this being once granted, other things of more importance will of themselves easily follow. For it is a matter of no great consequence to know the truth of this point (considering it apart from that which depends thereon) Whether *Pul* were *Belofus*, or some other man: the whole race of these *Assyrian* and *Babylonian* Kings, wherein are found those famous Princes, *Nabonassar*, *Mardocempadus*, and *Nabopolassar* (famous for the Astronomical observations recorded from their times) is the main ground of this contention. If therefore *Belofus* or *Beleses* were that *Phul* which invaded *Israel*, if he and his posterity reigned both in *Nineve* and in *Babylon*; if he were father of *Teglat-Phul-Aser*, from whom *Salmanassar*, *Senacherib*, and *Asarhaddon* descended; then it is manifest, that we must seek *Nabonassar* the *Babylonian* King, among these Princes; yea, and conclude him to be none other than *Salmanassar*, who is known to have reigned in those years which *Ptolemy* the Mathematician hath assigned unto *Nabonassar*. As for *Mero-dach*, who supplanted *Asarhaddon*, manifest it is, that he and his successors were of another house. This is the scope and end of all his disputation.

But they that maintain the contrary part, will not be satisfied with such conjectures. They lay hold upon the conclusion, and by shaking that into pieces, hope to overthrow all the premises upon which it is inferred. For (say they) if *Nabonassar* that reigned in *Babylon*, could not be *Salmanassar*, or any of those other *Assyrian* Kings, then is it manifest, that the races were distinct, and that *Phul* and *Belofus* were severall Kings. This consequence is so plain, that it needs no confirmation. To prove that *Nabonassar* was a distinct person from *Salmanassar*, are brought such arguments as would stagger the resolution of him that had sworn to hold the contrary. For first, *Nabonassar* was King of *Babylon*; and not of *Assyria*. This is proved by his name, which is merely *Chaldaean*, whereas *Salman*, the first part of *Salmanassar*'s name, is proper to the *Assyrians*;







how he hath ordered these last *Assyrian* and *Babylonian* Kings. After the destruction of *Sardanapalus*, *Arbaces* being the most mighty, fought to get all to himself, but was opposed by *Belofus*; in which contention, one *Phul*, a powerfull man in *Assyria*, sided with *Belofus*, and they two prevailed to far, that finally *Arbaces* was content to share the Empire with them, making such a division thereof, as was long after made of the *Roman* Empire between *Othavian*, *Anthony*, and *Lepidus*.

Another conjecture is (for *Tornielus* offers not this, or the rest, as matter of certainty) that *Arbaces* made himself Sovereign Lord of all, and placed the seat of his Empire in *Media*, appointing *Belofus* his Lieutenant in *Babylonia*, and *Phul* in *Assyria*. But in short space, that is, in four years, he came to passe by the just judgement of God, that *Phul* and *Belofus* rebelled against *Arbaces*, like as *Arbaces* had done against *Sardanapalus*; and in stead of being Vice-Royes, made themselves absolute Kings. And to this latter opinion *Tornielus* himself leans, holding it much the more probable, as being more agreeable to that which is found in prophane Histories. Why hee did make and publish the former supposition, resolving to hold the latter, I shall anon, without any wrong to him, make bold to ghesse. Having thus devised how *Phul* and *Belofus* might, at the first, attain to be Kings, he orders their time and their successors in this manner.

Four years after *Arbaces*, *Phul* begins to reign, and continues eight and forty years. *Theglathphalasar* (whose name, and the names of other Princes, I write diversly, according as the Authors whom I have in hand are pleased to diversifie them) succeeding unto *Phul*, reigned three and twenty. *Salmanassar* followed him, and reigned ten. After him *Senacherib* reigned seven: and when he was slain, *Asarhaddon* his son ten years; in whom that line failed.

The same time that *Phul* took upon him as King of *Assyria*, or not long after (why not rather afore: for so it had been more likely) *Belofus* usurped the Kingdome of *Babylon*, and held it threescore and eight years; at the least threescore and eight years did passe, before *Nabonassar* followed him in the possession.

To *Nabonassar*, whom (with *Scaliger*) he thinks to be *Baladan*, are assigned six and twenty years: then two and fifty to *Merodach*, or *Mardocempadus*: four and twenty to *Ben Merodach*: and lastly, one and twenty to *Nabonassar* the father of *Nabushodonosor*; who is like to offer matter of further disputation.

Concerning the original of these *Assyrian* and *Babylonian* Kingdomes, I may truly say, That the conjectures of other men, who give all to *Belofus*, and confound him with *Phul*, appear to me more needily resembling the truth. Neither doe I think, that *Tornielus* would have conceived two different waies, by which *Phul* might have gotten *Assyria* (for how *Belofus* came to get *Babylon*, it is plain enough) if either of them alone could have contented him. He adheres to the latter of the two, as better agreeing with *Diodore*, and other Historians. But he perceived, that to make *Phul* on the sudden King of *Assyria*; or to give him so noble a Province, as would, of it self, invite him to accept the name and power of a King, was a thing most unlikely to have happened, unless his deserts (whereof we find no mention) had been proportionable to so high a reward. And for this cause (as I take it) hath he devised the means, whereby *Phul* might be made capable of so great a share in the Empire. If this were a true or probable supposition, then would a new doubt arise, Why this *Phul* being one of the three that divided all between them, was utterly forgotten by all Historians: yea, why this Division it self, and the civill Warres that caused it, were never heard of? Questionlesse, the interverting of some Treasures by *Belofus*, with his judgement, Condemnation, and Pardon following, were matters of farre lesse note. Therefore I doe not see, how one of the two inconveniences can this way be avoided; but that either we must confesse the Dominion given to *Phul* to have been exceeding his merits; or else his merits, and name withall, to have been strangely forgotten: either of which is enough to make us think, that rather the conjecture, inferring such a sequell, is wide of the truth. As for the rebellion of *Phul*, and *Belofus*, against *Arbaces*, it was almost impossible for the *Assyrians* to recover such strength in four years, as might serve to hold out in rebellion; for *Belofus* it was needlesse to rebell, considering, that *Arbaces* did not seek to molest him, but rather permitted (as being an over-great favourer of liberty) even the *Medes* that were under his own Government, to doe what they listed.

But

But it is now fit that wee peruse the Catalogue of these Kings; not passing through them all (for some will require a large discourse in their own times) but (speaking of their order and time in generall. If it be so unlawfull to think, that some of *Annius* his tales (let them all be counted his tales, which are not found in other Authors aswell as in his) may be true, especially such as contradict no acknowledged truth, or apparent likelihood, why then is it said, that *Phul* did reign in *Assyria* eight and forty years? For this hath no other ground than *Annius*. It is true that painfull and judicious Writers have found this number of years to agree fitly with the course of things in History: yet all of them took it from *Annius*. Let it therefore be the punishment of *Annius* his forgery (as questionlesse he is often guilty of this crime) that when he telstruth, or probability, he be not beleevved for his own sake; though for our own sakes wee make use of his boldnesse, taking his words for good, whereas (nothing else being offered) we are unwilling our selves to be Authors of new, though not unprofitable conjectures. Herein we shall have this commodity, that we may without blushing alter a little, to help our own opinions, and lay the blame upon *Annius*, against whom we shall be sure to find friends that will take our part.

The reignes of *Theglathphalasar* and *Salmanassar* did reach, by *Annius* his measure, to the length of five and twenty years the one; and seventeen the other; *Tornielus* hath cut off two from the former, and seven from the later of them, to fit (as I think) his own computation; using the liberty whereof I spake last: for that any Author, save our good *Metasthenes*, or those that borrowed of him, hath gone about to tell how long each of these did reign, it is more than I have yet found. To *Senacherib* and *Asarhaddon*, *Tornielus* gives the same length of reign, which is found in *Metasthenes*. I think there are not many, that will arrogate so much unto themselves, as may very well be allowed unto a man so judicious as is *Tornielus*: and yet I could, with that hee had forbore to condemn the followers of *Annius* in this business, wherein he himselfe hath chosen, in part, rather to become one of them, than to say, as else he must have done, almost nothing.

The like liberty we find that he hath used in measuring the reignes of the *Chaldeans*, so filling up all the space between the end of *Sardanapalus* and the beginning of *Nabonassar*, with the threescore and eight years of *Belofus*. In this respect it was, perhaps, that he thought *Belofus* might have begun his reign somewhat later than *Phul*: for threescore and eight years would seem a long time for him to hold a Kingdome, that was no young man when he took possession of it. But how is any whie of his age abated by shortning his reign, seeing his life reacheth to the end of such a time, as were alone, without adding the time wherein he was a private man, enough for a long liver? Indeed eight and forty years had been somewhat of the most, considering that he seems by the story to have been a little lesse at such time as he joyned with *Arbaces*; and therefore the addition of twenty years did well deserve that note, (which *Tornielus* advisedly gives) that if his reign extended not so far, then the reign of such as came after him, occupied the middle time, unto *Nabonassar*.

Neither doe reprehend the boldnesse of *Tornielus*, in conjecturing, nor the modesty of *Scaliger* and *Severus Calvinus*, in forbearing to set down as warrantable, such things as depend only upon likelihood. For things, whereof the perfect knowledge is taken away from us by Antiquity, must be described in History, as Geographers in their Maps describe those Countreys, whereof as yet there is made no true discovery, that is, either by leaving some part blank, or by inserting the Land of *Pigmies*, Rocks of Load-stone, with Head-lands, Bayes, great Rivers, and other particularities, agreeable to common reports, though many times controlled by following experience, and found contrary to truth. Yet indeed the ignorance growing from distance of place, allows not such liberty to a Describer, as that which ariseth from the remediless oblivion of consuming time. For it is true that the Poet saith;

— Neque ferunda  
Pars inclusa caloribus  
Mundi, nec Boreae finitimum latas,  
Duratque, sole Neveque  
Mercesorem abigunt, horrida calidis  
Vincunt aquora Navita.

Nor

Nor Southern heat, nor Northern snow  
That freezing to the ground doth grow,  
The subject Regions can fence,  
And keep the greedy Merchant thence:  
The subtle Shipmen way to find,  
Storme never so the Seas with Wind.

Therefore the fictions (or let them be called conjectures) painted in Maps, doe serve only to mislead such discourses as rashly believe them; drawing upon the publishers, either some angry curses or well deserved scorn; but to keep their own credit, they continue to serve alwayes. To which purpose I remember a pretty jest of *Don Pedro de Sarmiento*, a worthy Spanish Gentleman, who had been employed by his King in planting a Colony upon the Streights of *Magellan*: for when I asked, him being then my Prisoner, some questions about an Island in those Streights, which, me thought, might have done either benefit or displeasure to his enterprize, he told me merrily, that it was to be called the *Painters wives Island*, saying, That whilst the fellow drew that Map, his wife sitting by, desired to put in one Countrey for her; that she in imagination, might have an Island of her own. But in filling up the blankes of old Histories, we need not be so scrupulous. For it is not to be feared, that time shall runne backward, and by restoring the things themselves to knowledge, make our conjectures appear ridiculous: What if so the good Copy of an ancient Author, could be found, shewing (if we have it not already) the perfect truth of these uncertainties? would it bee more shame to have believed in the mean while, *Annius* or *Torriellus*, than to have believed nothing? Here I will not say, that the credit which we gave to *Annius*, may chance otherwhiles to be given to one of those Authors whose names he pretendeth. Let it suffice, that in regard of authority, I had rather trust *Scaliger* or *Torriellus*, than *Annius*; yet him than them, of his assertion be more probable, and more agreeable to approved Histories than their conjecture, as in this point it seems to me; it having moreover gotten some credit, by the approbation of many, and those not meanly learned.

To end this tedious dissertation; I hold it a sure course in examination of such opinions as have once gotten the credit of being generall, so to deal as *Pacuvius* in *Cepus* did with the multitude, finding them desirous to put all the Senators of the Citie to death. He lockt the Senators up within the State-house, and offered the lives of the Peoples mercy; obtaining thus much; that none of them should perish, untill the Commonalty had both pronounced him worthy of death, and elected a better in his place. The condemnation was halty; for as fast as every name was read, all the town cryed, Let him die: but the execution required more leisure; for in substituting of another, some notorious vice of the person, or baseness of his condition, or insufficiency of his quality, made each new one that was offered to be rejected: so that finding the worse and lesse choise, the further and the more that they fought, it was finally agreed, that the old should be kept for lack of better.

## S. V.

of the Olympiads, and the time when they began.

After this division of the *Affrian* Empire, follows the instauration of the *Olympian* games, by *Iphitus* in the reign of the same King *Uzziah*, and in his one and fiftieth year. It is, I know, the generall opinion, that these games were established by *Iphitus*, in the first of *Uzziah*: yet is not that opinion so generall, but that Authors, weighry enough, have given to them a more early beginning. The truth is, that instituting those things unto the sacred History, which are found in prophane Authors, we should not be too carefull of drawing the *Hebrews*, to those works of time, which had no reference to their affairs; it is enough, that setting in due order these beginnings of accounts, we joyn them to matters of *Israel* and *Juda*, where occasion requires.

These *Olympian* games and exercises of activity, were first instituted by *Hercules*, who measured the length of the race by his own foot; by which *Pythagoras* found out the stature and likely strength of *Arcturus* his body. They took name, not from the Mountain *Olympus*, but from the Citie *Olympia*; otherwise *Uzza*, neer unto *Elia*; where also

*Jupiter*

*Jupiter*: Temple in *Elia*, famous among the *Grecians*, and reputed among the wonders of the World, was known by the name of the Temple of *Jupiter Olympius*. These games were exercised from every fourth year compleat, in the plains of *Elia*, a Citie of *Peloponnesus*, neer the river *Alpheus*.

After the death of *Hercules*, these meetings were discontinued for many years, till *Iphitus*, by advice from the Oracle of *Apollo*, re-established them. *Licurgus* the Lawgiver then living: from which time they were continued by the *Grecians*, till the reign of *Theodosius* the Emperour, according to *Cedrenus*: others think that they were dissolved under *Constantine* the Great.

From this institution, *Varro* accompted the *Grecian* times and their stories to be certain: but reckoned all before, either doubtfull or fabulous: and yet *Pliny* gives little credit to all that is written of *Greece*, till the reign of *Cyrus*, who began in the five and fiftieth *Olympiad*, as *Eusebius* out of *Diodore*, *Cassor*, *Polybius*, and others, hath gathered, in whose time the seven wise *Grecians* flourished. For *Salon* had speech with *Craesus*, and *Craesus* was overthrown and taken by *Cyrus*.

Many patient and piercing brains have laboured to find out the certain beginning of these *Olympiads*, namely, to set them in the true year of the World, and the reign of such, and such Kings: but seeing they all differ in the first account, that is, of the Worlds year, they can hardly jump in particulars thereon depending.

*Cyri* against *Julian* and *Dydimus* begin the *Olympiads* the nine and fortieth of *Osias*, or *Asariah*.

*Eusebius*, who is contrary to himself in this reckoning, accounts with those that find the very first *Olympiad* in the beginning of the four hundredth and sixth year after *Troy*, yet he telleth us that it was in the fiftieth year of *Uzziah*, which is (as I find it) two years later.

*Eratosthenes* placeth the first *Olympiad* four hundred and seven years after *Troy*, reckoning the years that passed between, to whom *Dionysius Halicarnassensis*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Solinus* and many others adhere.

The distance between the destruction of *Troy* and the first *Olympiad*, is thus collected by *Eratosthenes*. From the taking of *Troy* to the descent of *Hercules* his posterity into *Peloponnesus*, were fourscore years; thence to the *Ionian* expedition, threescore years; from that expedition to the time of *Lycurgus* his government in *Sparta*, one hundred fifty nine; and thence to the first *Olympiad*, one hundred and eight years. In this account the first year of the first *Olympiad* is not included.

But vain labour it were to seek the beginning of the *Olympiads* by numbring the years from the taking of *Troy*, which is of date farre more uncertain. Let it suffice that by knowing the instauration of these games to have been in the four hundredth and eight year current after *Troy*, wee may reckon back to the taking of that Citie, setting that, and other accidents which have reference thereto, in their proper times. The certainty of things following the *Olympiads* must needs teach us how to find when they began.

To this good use wee have the ensuing years unto the death of *Alexander* the Great, thus divided by the same *Eratosthenes*. From the beginning of the *Olympiads* to the passage of *Xerxes* into *Greece*, two hundredth fourscore and seventeen years; from thence to the beginning of the *Peloponnesian* Warre, eight and forty years; forwards to the victory of *Lysander*, seven and twenty; to the battell of *Leuctra*, thirty four; to the death of *Philip* King of *Macedon*, five and thirty; and finally to the death of *Alexander*, twelve. The whole summe ariseth to 433. years; which number he otherwise also collecteth, and it is allowed by the most.

Now for placing the institution of the *Olympiads* in the one and fiftieth year of *Uzziah*, we have arguments grounded upon that which is certain, concerning the beginning of *Cyrus* his reign, and the death of *Alexander*; as also upon the Astronomically calculation of sundry Eclipses of the Sunne; as of that which happened when *Xerxes* set out of *Sardis* with his Army to invade *Greece*; and of divers other.

Touching *Cyrus*, it is generally agreed that his reign as King before hee was Lord of the great Monarchy, began the first year of the five and fiftieth *Olympiad*, and that hee reigned thirty years: they who give him but twenty nine years of reign (following *Hecataeus* rather than *Tully*, *Fustine*, *Eusebius*, and others) begin a year later, which comes

all

all to one reckoning. So is the death of *Alexander* set by all good Writers in the first year of the hundredth and fourteenth Olympiad. This latter note of *Alexander's* death serveth well to lead us back to the beginning of *Cyrus*; as many the like observations doe. For if we reckon upwards from the time of *Alexander*, wee shall find all to agree with the years of the Olympiads, wherein *Cyrus* began his reign, either as King, or (taking the word Monarch, to signifie a Lord of many Kingdomes) as a great Monarch. From the beginning of *Cyrus*, in the first year of the five and fiftieth Olympiad, unto the end of the Persian Empire, which was in the third of the hundredth and twelfth Olympiad, we find two hundred and thirty years compleat: from the beginning of *Cyrus* his Monarchy, which lasted but seven years, we find compleat two hundred and seven years, which was to the continuance of the Persian Empire.

Now therefore seeing that the first year of *Cyrus* his Monarchy (which was the last of the sixtieth Olympiad, and the two hundredth and fortieth year from the institution of those games by *Iphitus*), followed the last of the seventy years of the captivity of *Jude*, and desolation of the Land of *Israel*: manifest it is, that we must reckon back those seventy years, and one hundred threescore and ten years more, the last which passed under the Kings of *Juda*, to find the first of these Olympiads; which by this account is the one and fiftieth of *Uzziah*, as we have already noted.

The Eclipses whereof we made mention, serve well to the same purpose. For examples sake; that which was seen when *Xerxes* mustered his Army at *Sardis*, in the two hundredth threescore and seventh year of *Nabonasser*, being the last of the threescore and fourteenth Olympiad, leads us back unto the beginning of *Xerxes*, and from him to *Cyrus*, whence wee have a fair way through the threescore and ten years, unto the destruction of *Jerusalem*; and so upwards through the reigns of the last Kings of *Juda*, to the one and fiftieth year of *Uzziah*.

Thus much may suffice, concerning the time wherein these Olympiads began.

To tell the great solemnity of them, and with what exceeding great concourse of all *Greece*, they were celebrated, I hold it a superfluous labour. It is enough to say that all bodily exercises, or the most of them, were therein practised, as Running, Wrestling, Fighting, and the like. Neither did they only contend for the Mastery in those feats, whereof there was good use, but in running of Chariots, fighting With whole-hats, and other the like ancient kindes of exercises that served onely for ostentation. Thither also repaired Orators, Poets, Musicians, and all that thought themselves excellent in any laudable quality, to make tryall of their skill. Yea, the very Cryers which proclaimed the victories, contended which of them should get the honour of having played the best part.

The *Eleans* were presidents of those Games; whose justice, in pronouncing without partiality who did best, is highly commended. As for the rewards given to the Victors, they were none other than Garlands of Palme, or Olive, without any other commodity following than the reputation. Indeed there needed no more. For that was held so much, that when *Diagoras* had seen his three sons crowned for their severall victories in those games, one came running to him with this gratulation: *Morere, Diagoras, non enim in celum ascensus es*; that is, *Die, Diagoras, for thou shalt not clime up to heaven*: as if there could be no greater happinesse on earth, than what already had befallen him. In the like sense *Horace* speaks of these Victors, calling them,

*Quos Elea domum reducit  
Palma Calestes.*

Such as like heavenly wights do come  
With an *Elean* Garland home.

Neither was it only the voyce of the People, or songs of Poets, that so highly extolled them, which had wonne these Olympian prizes; but even grave Historians thought it a matter worthy of their noting. Such was (as *Tully* counts it) the vanity of the *Greeks*, that they esteemed it almost as great an honour to have wonne the Victory at Running or Wrestling in those games, as to have triumphed in *Rome* for some famous victory, or conquest of a Province.

That those Olympian games were celebrated at the full of the Moon, and upon the fifteenth

fifteenth day of the Moneth *Hecatombeon*, which doth answer to our *June*; and what means they used to make the Moneth begin with the new Moone, that the fifteenth day might be the full, I have shewed in another place. Wherefore I may now return unto the Kings of *Juda*, & leave the merrie *Greekes* at their games, whom I shall meet in more serious employments, when the *Persian* quarrells draw the body of this History into the coasts of *Ionis* and *Hellepont*.

## §. VI.

Of *Jotham* and his Contemporaries.

*Jotham* the sonne of *Uzziah*, when he was five and twenty yeeres old, and in the second of *Pekab* King of *Israel*, was anointed King in *Jerusalem*, his Father yet living. Hee built an exceeding high Gate to the Temple, of threescore cubits upright, and therefore called *Ophel*; besides divers Cities in the Hills of *Juda*, and in the Forrests, Towers & Palaces: he enforced the *Ammonites* to pay him Tribute, to wit, of Silver an hundred talents, and of Wheat and Barly two thousand measures: hee reigned fixe and twenty years: of whom *Iosephus* gives this testimonie: *Ejusmodi rex Princeps hic fuit, ut nullum in eo virtutis genus desideres: ut qui Deum adeo pi. coluerit, hominibus suis adeo iusti prae-  
fuit urbem ipsam tanta sibi cura esse passus sit, & tanopere auxerit, ut universum regnum  
in suis quidem minimè contemnendum, domesticis autem eius incolis atque civibus felix,  
sanctum & fortunatum sua virute effecit*; This was such a Prince, as a man could find no kind of vertue wanting in him: hee worshipped God so religiously, he governed his men so righteously, he was so provident for the Citie, and did so greatly amplify it, that by his vertue and promise he made his whole Kingdom not contemptible to his enemies, but to his Servants, Inhabitants and Citizens, prosperous and happye.

This is all that I find of *Jotham*: his reigns was not long, but as happye in all things, as he himselfe was devout and vertuous.

*Auchomenes* about this time succeeded *Phelisteus* in *Corinth*: after whom, the *Corinthians* erected Magistrates, which governed from yeare to yeare. And yet *Pausanias* in his second Book, with *Strabo* and *Plutarch*, in many places, are of opinion, That *Corinth* was governed by Kings of the race of the *Bacide*, to the time of *Cypselus*, who drove them out.

*Tiglathphalassar*, or *Tiglathpeleser*, the son of *Phul* the second of the *Babylonians* and *Assyrians* that was of this new race, about this time invaded *Israel*, while *Pekab* (who murdered his Master *Pekaiab*) was King thereof. In which Expedition he took most of the Cities of *Nephthali* and *Galilee*, with those of *Gilead* over *Jordan*, and carried the inhabitants captive. This *Tiglath* reigned five and twenty years, according to *Metasthenes*. But *Krentzheimus* findes, that with his sonne *Salmanassar* he reigned yet two yeares longer; which yeares I would not ascribe to the sonne, because the *Aera* of *Nabonassar* begins with his single reign, but reckon them to *Tiglath Phulassar* himselfe, who therewith reigned 27. yeeres.

*Aeschylus*, the son of *Agamnestor*, about the same time, the twelfth *Archon* in *Athens*, ruled 25. yeares. *Acamenes* governed *Sparta*: after whom, the Estate changed, according to *Eusebius*. But therein surely *Eusebius* is mistaken: for *Diodore*, *Plutarch*, *Pausanias*, and others, witness the contrary. *Pausanias* affirmeth, That *Polydorus*, a Prince of eminent vertues, succeeded his father, and reigned 60. yeares, and out-lived the *Messenian* warre: which was ended by *Theopompus*, the sonne of *Nicander*, his royall companion.

At this time lived *Nahum* the Prophet, who fore-told the destruction of the *Assyrian* Empire, and of the citie of *Nineve*, which succeeded (saith *Iosephus*) a hundred & fifteen yeeres after. The Cities of *Cyrene* and of *Aradus* were built at this time, while in *Medis*, *Sofarnus* and *Medidus* reigned, being the second and third Kings of those parts.

## §. VII.

Of *Achaz* and his Contemporaries.

*Ahu*, or *Achaz*, succeeded unto *Jotham* in the seventeenth yeer of *Pekab*, the son of *Remalia*: the same being also the last yeere of his fathers reign, who began in the second of the same *Pekab*, and reigned 16. but not compleat yeeres. This

Ccc

Ahaz

Howe. Cam. 1.4  
Olt. 2.

Tull. in Orat.  
pro. Flacco.

King 15. 33.

King 15.

Paus. lib. 3.

50

10

10

40

Abaz was an Idolater, exceeding all his predecessors. He made molten Images for *Babilon*, and burnt his son for sacrifice before the Idoll *Moloch*, or *Saturne*, which was represented by a man-like brazen body, bearing the head of a Calfe, set up not far from *Jerusalem*, in a Valley shadowed with Woods, called *Gehinnom*, or *Tophet*, from whence the word *Gehenna* is used for Hell. The children offered, were inclosed within the car-kasse of this Idoll, and as the fire encreased, so the sacrificers, with a noyse of Cymbals and other Instruments, filled the ayre, to the end the pittifull cries of the children might not bee heard : which unnatural, cruell, and devillish Oblation, *Jeremie* the Prophet vehemently reprehendeth; and of which *S. Hierome* upon the tenth of *Matthew* hath written at large. By the prohibition in *Leviticus* the eighteenth, it appeareth that this horrible sinne was ancient : in the twelfth of *Deuteronomie*, it is called an abomination which God hateth, That it was also practised elsewhere, and by many Nations remote from *Judea*, divers Authors witness : as *Virgil* in the second of *Aeneids*—*Sanguine placatis, &c. & Silius*—*Postere cade Deos. Saturne* is said to have brought this custome into *Italy*, besides the casting of many soules into the River of *Tyber*, in stead of which, *Hercules* commanded, that the waxen Images of men should be thrown in and drowned. The Devill also taught the *Carthaginians* this kind of butchery, in somuch, that when their Citie was besieged, and in distresse, the Priest made them beleieve, that because they had spared their own children, and had bought and brought up others to bee offered, that therefore *Saturne* had stirred up and strengthened their Enemies against them : whereupon they presently caused two hundred of the noblist youths of their Citie to be slaine, and offered to *Saturn* or *Satay*, to appease him : who besides these famed Nations, had instructed the *Rhodians*, the people of *Crete*, and *Cibios*, of *Messina*, of *Galatia*, with the *Masagetes*, and others, in these his services. Further, as if he were not content to destroy the soules of many Nations in *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, (as *Acosta* writeth) the *Mexicans* and other people of *America*, were brought by the Devill under this fearful servitude, in which he also holdeth the *Floridians* and *Virginians* at this day.

For the wickednesse of this King *Abaz*, God stirred up *Rezin* of *Damascus*, and *Pekah* the Son of *Remaliab*, King of *Israel* against him, who invaded *Judea*, and besieged *Jerusalem*, but entred it not.

The King of *Syria*, *Rezin*, posselt himself of *Elah* by the Red Sea, and cast the *Jews* out of it; and *Pekah* slaughtered in one day an hundred and twenty thousand *Judeans*, of the ablest of the Kingdome, at which time *Maasiah*, the Sonne of *Abaz*, was also slaine by *Ziebr*, with *Azrikam* the Governour of his house, and *Elcanah* the second person unto the King. Besides all this, two hundred thousand prisoners of women and children, the *Israelites* lead away to *Samaria* : but by the counsell of the Prophet *Odai*, they were returned and delivered back againe.

As *Israel* and *Aram* vexed *Juda* on the North; so the *Edomites* & the *Philistims*, who evermore attended the ruine of *Judea*, entred upon them from the South, and took *Bebsenetz*, *Aalon*, *Gaderoth*, *Socho*, *Timnah*, & *Gomze*, slew many people, & carried away many prisoners. Whereupon when *Abaz* saw himself environed on all sides, & that his Idols and dead gods gave him no comfort, hee sent to the *Assyrian Tiglathpileser*, to desire some aide from him against the *Israelites* and *Aramites*, presenting him with the silver and gold both of the Temple, and Kings house.

*Tiglathpileser* wanted not a good example to follow, in making profit of the troubles that rose in *Palestina*. His Father having lately made himself from a Provinciall Lieutenant, King of *Babylon* and *Assyria*, had a little before led him the way into *Judea*, invited by *Menabem*, King of *Israel*. Wherefore now the Son willingly harkened to *Abaz*, and embraced the advantage. As for *Belochus* himself, hee was content to assigne some other time for going through with this enterprize : because (as I have said before) he was not firmly settled at home, and the *Syrian* Kings lay directly in his way, who were yet strong both in men and fame. But *Tiglath*, having now, with the treasures of *Jerusalem*, prepared his Army, first invaded the Territorie of *Damascus*, wanne the Citie, & killed *Rezin* the last of the race of the *Adads*, who began with *David*, & ended with this *Abaz*. At *Damascus*, *Abaz* met *Tiglath*, and taking thence a pattern of the Altar, sent it to *Urib* the Priest, commanding the like to be made at *Jerusalem*, whereon at his returne hee burnt Sacrifice to the gods of the *Syrians*. In the meane while *Tiglath* posselt all *Bashan*, and

and the rest beyond *Jordan*, which belonged to the Tribes of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and *Manasse*. And then passing the River, he mastered the Cities of *Galilee*, invaded *Ephraim*, and the Kingdome of *Israel*, and made them his Vassals. And notwithstanding that hee was invited and waged by *Abaz*, yet after the spoile of *Israel*, he posselt himself of the greater part of *Juda*, and as it seemeth, enforced *Abaz* to pay him tribute. For in the second of *Kings*, the eighteenth, it is written of *Ezechia*, that hee revolted from *Asshur*, or rebelled against him, & therefore was invaded by *Sennacherib*. After *Abaz* had beheld and borne these miseries, in the end of the sixteenth yeere of his reigne he died ; but was not buried in the Sepulchres of the Kings of *Juda*.

With *Abaz* lived *Medias*, the third Prince in *Media*, who governed 40. yeeres, saith *Eusebius* : *Diodorus* and *Ctesias* find *Anticarmus* in stead of this *Medias*, to have been *Euseb.* in *Chron.*

*Tiglath Philser* held the Kingdome of *Assyria*, all the reign of *Abaz* : yet so, that *Salmanassar* his Son may seeme to have reigned with him some part of the time. For we find that *Abaz* did send unto the Kings of *Asshur* to help him. The *Geneva* note saies, that these Kings of *Asshur*, were *Tiglath Philser*, and those Kings that were under his Dominion. But that he or his Father had hitherto made such conquests, as might give him the Lordship over other Kings, I doe neither find any History, nor circumstance that proveth. Wherefore I think that these Kings of *Asshur*, were *Tiglath*, and *Salmanassar* his Son, who reigned with his Father, as hath been said before : though how long hee reigned with his Father, it had been hard to define.

At this time began the *Ephori* in *Lacedaemon*, a hundred and thirty yeeres after *Lycurgus*, according to *Plutarch*. *Eusebius* makes their beginning far later, namely, in the fifteenth Olympiad. Of these *Ephori*, *Elalus* was the first ; *Theopompus* and *Polydorus* being then joynr Kings. These *Ephori*, chosen every yeare, were controllers, as well of their Senators, as of their Kings, nothing being done without their adyce and consent. For (saith *Cicero*) they were opposed against their Kings, as the *Roman* Tribunes against the Consuls. In the time of *Abaz* died *Aeschylus*, who had ruled in *Athens* ever since the fiftieth yeare of *Uzzia*. *Alcamenon* the thirteenth of the *Medontides*, or Governours of the *Athenians* (so called of *Medon* who followed *Cadmus*) succeeded his Father *Aeschylus*, and was the last of their Governours : he ruled only two yeeres. For the *Athenians* changed first from Kings (after *Cadmus*) to Governours for life ; which ending in this *Alcamenon*, they erected a Magistrate, whom they termed an *Archon*, who was a kind of *Burgh-master*, or Governor of their City for ten yeeres.

This alteration *Pausanias* in his fourth Book begins in the first yeere of the eighth Olympiad. *Eusebius* & *Halicarnassensis* in the first of the seventh Olympiad : at which time indeed, *Carops* the first of these, began his ten yeeres rule.

The Kingdome of the *Latines*, governed about three hundred yeere by the *Sylvii*, of the race of *Aeneas*, took end in the same *Abaz* time : the foundation of *Rome* being laid by *Romulus* & *Remus* in the eighth yeere of the same King. *Cadoman* builds it in the eleventh of *Abaz*. *Bucholser* in the eighth, as I thinke he should ; others somewhat later, and in the reigne of *Ezechias*. *Cicero*, *Entropius*, *Orosius*, and others, square the time of the foundation to the third yeere of the sixth Olympiad. But *Halicarnassensis*, *Solinus*, *Amiochenus*, *Clementis Alexandrinus*, and *Eusebius*, to the first yeere of the seventh : who seeme not onely to me, but to many very learned Chronologers, to have kept herein the best accompt.

## CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Antiquitie of Italy, and foundation of Rome in the time of Ahaz.

## S. I.

Of the old Inhabitants, and of the name of Italy.



*Halican. lib. 1.* which it had of the *Oenotri*, whom *Halicanassus* thinkes to have been the first that brought a Colony of *Arcadians* into that Land. Afterward it was called *Italy of Italus*: concerning which changes of names, *Virgil* speaks thus:

*Est locus, Hesperiam Graii cognomine dicunt;  
Terra antiqua, potens armis, atque ubere gleba:  
Oenotrii coluere viri, nunc fama, minores  
Italiam dixisse, ducis de nomine, gentem.*

There is a Land which *Greeks* Hesperia name,  
Ancient, and strong, of much fertility:  
*Oenotrians* held it, but we hear by fame,  
That by late ages of Posterity,  
Tis from a Captaines name call'd *Italy*.

*Halican. lib. 1.*

*Jul. lib. 1.*

*Strabo lib. 6.*

*Plin. lib. 3. c. 5.*

Who this Captain or King may have bin, it is very uncertain. For *Virgil* speaks no more of him, and the opinions of others are many and repugnant. But like enough it is, that the name which hath continued so long upon the whole Countrey, and worn out all other denominations, was not at the first accepted without good cause. Therefore to find out the originall of this name, and the first planters of this noble Countrey, *Reineccius* hath made a very painfull search, and not improbable conjecture. And first of all he goes upon that of *Halicanassus*, who speaks of a Colonie which the *Eleans* did lead into *Italy*, before the name of *Italy* was given to it; Secondly, upon that of *Justin*, who saith, that *Brundisium* was a Colonie of the *Aetolians*; Thirdly, upon that of *Strabo*, who affirms the same of *Temisa* or *Templa*, a Citie of the *Bruttii* in *Italy*; Lastly, upon the authority of *Plinie*, who shewes that the *Italians* did inhabit only one Region of the Land, whence afterward the name was derived over all. Concerning that which is said of the *Eleans* and *Aetolians*, who (as he shewes) had one originall; from them he brings the name of *Italy*. For the word *Italia*, differs in nothing from *Aetolia*, save that the first Letter is cast away, which in the *Greek* words is common; & the letter (a) is changed into (i) which change is found in the name of *Aethalia* an Island neer *Italy*, peopled by the *Aetholians*: and the like changes are very familiar in the *Aeolic* Dialect, of which Dialect (being almost proper to the *Aetolians*) the accent & pronunciation, together with many words little altered, were retained by the *Latines*, as *Dionysius Halicanassus*, *Quintilian*, and *Priscian* the Grammarian teach.

Hereunto appertaines that of *Julian* the Apostata, who called the *Greekes* cousins of the *Latines*. Also the common Originall of the *Greekes* and *Latines* from *Javan*; and the Fable of *Fanus*, whose Image had two faces, looking East and West, as *Greece* and *Italy* lay, and was stamped on Coynes, with a Ship on the other side; all which is, by interpretation, referred to *Javan*, father of the *Greekes* and *Latines*: who sailing over the *Ionian* Sea, that lies between *Aetolia* and the Western parts of *Greece* and *Italy*, planted Colonies in both. Now whereas *Reineccius* thinkes, that the names

of *Atlis* and *Italus* belonged both to one man, and thereto applies that of *Berosus*, who called *Cethim*, *Italus*; though it may seeme strengthened by the marriage of *Dardanus*, whilest he abode in *Italy* with *Electra*, the daughter of *Atlis*, yet is it by arguments (in my valuation) greater and stronger, easily disproved. For they who make mention of *Atlis*, place him before the time of *Moses*: and if *Atlis* were *Cethim*, or *Kittim*, then was he the son of *Javan*, and nephew of *Japheth*, the eldest son of *Noah*: which antiquity far exceeds the name of *Italy*, that began after the departure of *Hercules* out of the Countrey, not long before the Warre of *Troy*.

Likewise *Virgil*, who speaks of *Atlis*, and of *Dardanus* his marriage with *Electra*, hath nothing of his meeting with her in *Italy*, but calleth *Electra* & her sister *Maia* (poetically) daughters of the Mountaine *Atlis* in *Africa*, naming *Italus* among the Kings of the *Aborigines*, which he would not have done, had *Atlis* and *Italus* beene one person. As for the authority of *Berosus* in this case, we need the lesse to regard it, for that *Reyneccius* himself, whose conjectures are more to bee valued than the dreames wherewith *Aenius* hath filled *Berosus*, holds it but a figment.

That the name of *Italy* began long after *Atlis*, it appeares by the verses of *Virgil* last rehearsed, wherein hee would not have said, — *Nun fama minores Italiam dixisse ducis de nomine gentem*, had that name beene heard of ere *Dardanus* left the Countrey, But seeing that, when *Hercules*, who died a few yeeres before the Warre of *Troy*, had left in *Italy* a Colonie of the *Eleans* (who in a manner were one and the same Nation with the *Aetolians*, as *Strabo*, *Herodotus*, and *Pausanias* teach) then the name of *Italy* began: & seeing *Virgil* makes mention of *Italus* among the *Italian* Kings, it were no great boldnesse to say, that *Italus* was Commander of these *Eleans*. For though I remember not that I have read of any such *Greek* as was named *Italus*; yet the name of *Aetolus* written in *Greek* *Aitolus*, was very famous among the *Aetolians*, and among the *Eleans*, he being son of a King of *Elus*, & founder of the *Aetolian* Kingdome. Neither is it more hard to derive the name of *Italus* from *Aetolus*, than *Italia* from *Aetolia*. So may *Virgil*'s authority stand well with the collections of *Reyneccius*; the name of *Italy* being taken both from a Captaine, and from the Nation, of which he and his people were.

## S. II.

Of the Aborigines, and other Inhabitants of *Lazium*, and of the reason of the names of *Latini* and *Lazium*.

IN *Italy* the *Latines* and *Hetrurians* were most famous; the *Hetrurians* having held the greatest part of it under their subjection; & the *Latines* by the vertue and felicity of the *Romans*, who were a branch of them, subduing all *Italy*, and in few ages whatsoever Nation was known in *Europe*: together with all the Western parts of *Asia*, and North of *Africa*.

The Region called *Lazium*, was first inhabited by the *Aborigines*, whom *Halicanassus*, *Varro*, & *Reyneccius* (following them) think to have bin *Arcadians*: & this name of *Aborigines* to omit other significations that are strained imports as much as Originall, or Native of the place, which they possessed: which title the *Arcadians* are known in vaunting manner to have alwayes usurped, fetching their antiquity from beyond the Moone, because indeed, neither were the inhabitants of *Poloponnesus* enforced to forsake their seats soot as other *Greeks* were, who did dwell without that halfe Island, neither had the *Arcadians* so unsure a dwelling as the rest of the *Poloponnesians*, because their Countrey was lesse fruitfull in land, mountainous, & hard of access, & they themselves (as in such places commonly are found) very wilde men. Some of these therefore having occupied a great part of *Lazium*, & held it long, did according to the *Arcadian* manner, stile themselves *Aborigines*, in that language, which either their new Seat, or their Neighbours thereby had taught them. How it might be that the *Arcadians*, who dwelt somewhat far from Sea, & are alwayes noted as unapt men to prove good Mariners, should have bin Authors of new discoveries, were a question not easie to be answered, were it not so; that both fruitfullnesse of children, in which those ages abounded, enforced the superfluous company to seek another seat, & that some expeditions of the *Arcadians*, as especially that of *Eriander*, into the same parts of *Italy*, are generally acknowledged.

After the *Aborigines*, were the *Pelassi*, an ancient Nation, who sometimes gave name to all *Greece*: but their antiquities are long since dead, for lacke of good records. Neither was their glory such in *Italy*, as could long sustaine the name of their own Tribe: for they were in short space accounted one people with the former inhabitants. The *Steani*, *Aufones*, *Arunci*, *Rutuli*, and other people, did in ages following disturbe the peace of *Latium*, which by *Saturne* was brought to some civility; and he therefore canonized as a god.

This *Saturne* *S. Augustine* called *Stercor* or *Sterculius*, others terme him *Stercutius*, & say, that he taught the people to dung their grounds. That *L. num* took his name of *Saturne*, because he did *latere*, that is, lie hidden there, when he fled from *Jupiter*, it is questionlesse a fable. For as in Heathenish superstition, it was great vanity to think that any thing could bee hidden from God, or that there were many gods of whom one fledde from another; so in the truth of History, it is well known, that no King reigning in those parts was so mighty, that it should bee hard to find one Country or another, wherein a man might bee safe from his pursuit. And yet, as most fables and poetical fictions were occasioned by some ancient truth, which either by ambiguity of speech, or some allusion, they did maimedly and darkely expresse (for so they fained a passage over a River in Hell, because death is a passage to another life: & because this passage is hatefull, lamentable, and painfull, therefore they named the River *Styx*, of Hate; *Cocytus* of Lamentation; and *Acheron*, of Paine: so also because men are stonie-hearted; and because the *Greek* *λίθος*, people, and *λίθος*, stones, are neere in sound, therefore they signified in the time of *Deucalion* stones converted into men, as at other times men into stones: in like manner it may be, that the originall of *Saturne* hiding himself, was some allusion to that old opinion of the wisest of the Heathen, that the true God was *ignotus Deus*, as it is noted in the *Aëtis*; whence also *Esay* of the true God saies, *tu Deus abscondens*. For it cannot be in vaine, that the word *Saturnus* should also have this very signification, if it be derived (as some thinke) from the *Hebrew* *Satâr*, which is to hide: Howbeit I denie not but that the originall of this word, *Latium*, ought rather to be sought else where.

*Reyneccius* doth conjecture that the *Ceteans*, who descended of *Cethim*, the Son of *Javan*, were the men who gave the name to *Latium*. For these *Ceteans* are remembered by *Homer* as aiders of the *Trojans* in their warre. *S. rabo* interpreting the place of *Homer*, calls them subjects to the Crown of *Troy*. Hereupon *Reyneccius* gathers, that their abode was in *Aja*: viz. in agro *Elatitico*, in the *Elatitan* Territory, which agreeth with *Strabo*. Of a City which the *Aeolians* held in *Aja*, called *Elaea*, or *Elaiä*, *Pausanias* makes mention: *Sophocles* calls it *Cidemis*, or (according to the *Greek* writing) *Cidamis*, which name last rehearsed hath a very neere sound to *Cethim*, *Citim*, or *Cethim*; the *Greek* Letter (*D*) having (as many teach) a pronunciation very like to (*TH*) differing only in the strength or weaknesse of utterance, which is found betwene many English words written with the same letters. Wherefore that these *Ceteans*, being descended of *Cethim*, *Citim*, or *Kittim*, the Sonne of *Javan*, who was Progenitor of the *Greekes*, might very well take a denomination from the City, and Region, which they inhabited, and from thence be called *Elatites*, or *Elatites*: it is very likely, considering that among the *Arcadians*, *Phocians*, *Aetolians*, and *Eleans*, who all were of the *Aeolique* Tribe, are found the names of the Mountaine *Elenus*, the Haven *Elaus*, the people *Elaita*, the City *Elaeus*, *Elaiä*, & *Elaetia*; of which last it were somewhat harsh in the *Latine* tongue to call the Inhabitants by any other name then *Elaiani*, from whence *Latini* may come. Now whereas both the *Cetei* and *Arcadians*, had their originall from *Cethim*, it is nothing unlikely, that agreeing in language and similitude of names, they might nevertheless differ in sound and pronunciation of one and the same word. So that as he is by many called *Sabinus*, to whom some (deriving the *Sabines* from him) give the name of *S. bus*: in the like manner might he whom the *Arcadians* would call *Elatus* (of which name they had a Prince that founded the City *Elaetia*) bee named of the *Ceteans* *Latinus*. *Reyneccius*, pursuing this likelihood, thinks that when *Eurypilus*, Lord of the *Ceteans*, (being the Sonne of *Telephus*, whom *Hercules* begat upon *Auge*, the daughter of *Aleu* King of *Arcadia*) was slaine by *Achilles* in the *Trojan* Warre: then did *Telephus*, brother to *Eurypilus*, conduct the *Ceteans*, who (fearing what evil might befall themselves by the *Greekes*, if the affairs of *Troy* should goe ill) passed into that part of *Italy*, whereas the *Arcadians* were planted by *Oenotrius*. And *Reyneccius* farther thinks, that *Telephus*, being the more gracious among

among the *Oenotrian* *Arcadians*, by the memory of his Grand-mother *Auge*, an *Arcadian* Lady, was well contented to take an *Arcadian* name, and to be called *Elatius*, which in the dialect and pronunciation either of the *Ceteans*, or of the *Oenotrians*, was first *Elatinus*, and then *Latinus*. That this name of *Elatius* may have bin taken or imposed by the *Arcadians*, it is the more easie to be thought, for that there were then two Families, the one of *Aphidas*, the other of *Elatius*, who were Sons of *Arcas* King of *Arcadia*, which gave name to the Countrey: & betwene these two Families the succession in that Kingdom did passe, almost interchangeably, for many ages, till at the end of the *Trojan* warre it fell into the hand of *Hippothous* of the race of *Elatius*, in whose Posterity it continued untill the last. Again, the name of *Latinus*, having a derivative sound, agrees the better with the supposition of such an accident. This is the conjecture of *Reyneccius*, which if he made over-boldly, yet others may follow it with the lesse reproofe, considering that it is not easie to find either an apparent truth, or faire probability among these disagreeing Authors, which have written the originals of *Latium*.

## S. VI.

Of the ancient Kings of the Latines untill *Aeneas* his coming.

THE Kings which reigned in *Latium* before the arrivall of *Aeneas*, were *Saturnus*, *Picus*, *Faunus*, and *Latinus*. Of *Saturne* there is nothing remembre, save what is mentioned already, and many Fables of the *Greekes*, which whether they be applyable to this man, it is for him to judge, who shall be able to determine, whether this were the *Saturne* of the *Greekes*, called by them *Σάτυρος*, or some other, stiled *Saturne* by the *Aborigines*. For the age wherein he lived, may very well admit him to have bin the same: but the names of *Stercor*, and *Stercutius* (for it may bee, this name was not borrowed from the skill which he taught the people, but rather the soile which they laid on their grounds had that appellation from him) doe rather make him seeme some other man.

Of *Picus* it is said, that he was a good Horse-man. The fable of his being changed into a Bird, which we call a Pie, may well seeme (as it is interpreted) to have grown from the skill which he had in sooth-saying, or divination, by the sight and chattering of Fowles. *Faunus*, the Son of *Picus*, reigned after his Father: He gave to *E. ander* the *Arcadian* (who having slaine by mischance his Father *Echmeus* King of *Arcadia*, fled into *Italy*) the waste grounds on which *Rome* was afterward built.

*Fauna*, called *Favia*, the sister of *Faunus*, who was also his wife, as all Historians agree, she was held a Prophetesse, and highly commended for her chastity, vvch praise in her must needs have bin much blemished by her marriage, it self being meerly incestuous. It is not mentioned that *Faunus* had by his sister any child, neither doe we read of any other Wife which he had, save onely that *Virgil* gives unto him *Latinus* as his Son, by a Nymph called *Marica*.

But who this *Marica* was, it is not found, save onely that her abode was about the River *Liris* neere *Minturnæ*.

Of the name *Latinus*, there are by *Pomponius Sabinus* recounted four: one, the Son of *Faunus*, another of *Hercules*, a third of *Phylus* by *Circe*, the fourth of *Telemachus*. *Suidas* in the *du* takes notice onely of the second, of whom he saith, that is hname was *Telephus*, and the people anciently named the *Cetii*, were from his surname called *Latini*. This agrees in effect with the opinion of *Reyneccius*, the difference consisting almost in this only, that *Suidas* calls *Telephus* the son of *Hercules*, whereas *Reyneccius* makes him his Nephew, by a son of the same name. This *Latinus* having obtained the succession in that Kingdom after *Faunus*, did promise his only Daughter and Heire *Lavinia*, to *Turnus* the son of *Ve-nilia*, who was sister to *Amata* *Latinus* his Wife.

But when *Aeneas* arrived in those parts with fiftene ships, or perhaps fewer, wherein might be embarked, according to the rate which *Thucydides* allows to the Vessels then used, about one thousand & two hundred men: then *Latinus* finding that it would stand best with his assurance, to make alliance with the *Trojan*, and moved with the great reputation of *Aeneas*, which himself had heard of, in the Warre of *Troy*, gave his Daughter to him, breaking off the former appointment with *Turnus*; who incensed here-

See lib. 1. cap. 6.  
§. 1. & 109.

Ad 7. 1. 3.  
Ely 45. 15.

Expletic often  
calls the Id-Is  
of the Heathen  
den. *Stercor*:  
and hence it  
may be that in  
the Evangelist  
we read of  
*Πελζαβ*, *Βε-  
ζαβ*, which a  
superstition  
into *Stercor*,  
and it may bee  
that at that  
time, he came  
the name of an  
Idol, & pleas-  
God, that in  
a like sense this  
name *Stercutius*  
should thicke  
unto him.  
Aeneid. 7.



herewith, sought to avenge himself by warre: which was soone ended with his own death.

Of *Amata* the Wife of *Latinus*, it is very certaine, that were she an *Italian*, she could not have born a Daughter marriageable at the arrivall of *Aeneas*; unless wee should wholly follow *Suidas*, and rather give the conduct of the *Cerei* into *Italy*, to *Telephus* the Father, than to his Son, who served in the last yeere of the *Trojan* Warre. But *Reynolds* holds her an *Apatique*, and thinks withall, that *Lavinia* was borne before *Telephus* came into *Italy*. That this name *Amata*, by which *Virgil* and *Halicarnassus* call her, was not proper, but rather a surname, it may seeme by *Varro*; who calleth her *Palatia*: which name very well might be derived from the *Greek* name *Pallas*. *Amata*, which signifieth beloved, or deare, was the name by which the High Priest called every *Virgin* whom he took to serve as a Nunne of *Vesta*; wherefore it is the more easie to be thought a surname, howsoever *Virgil* discourse of her and *Ventilia* her sister.

*Lavinia*, the daughter of *Latinus*, being given in marriage to *Aeneas*, the Kingdome of *Latium*, or the greatest part of that Countrey, was establihed in that race: wherein it continued untill it was over-grown by the might and greatnesse of the *Romans*.

## §. IV.

Of *Aeneas*, and of the Kings and Governors of *Alba*.

**A**ENEAS himself being of the Royall bloud of *Troy*, had the command of the *Dardanians*: he was a valiant man, very rich, and highly honoured among the *Troians*. By his wife *Cressa*, the daughter of *Priamus*, he had a sonne called *Ascanius*, whose surname was *Julius*, having before the ruine of *Troy* (as *Virgil* notes) bin surnamed *Iliu*. But when *Aeneas* was dead, his wife *Lavinia*, the daughter of *Latinus*, being great with childe by him, and fearing the power of this *Ascanius*, fled into the Woods, where she was delivered of a son, called thereupon *Sylvius*, and surnamed *Posthumus*, because he was borne after his fathers Funerall. This flight of *Lavinia* was so evill taken by the people, that *Ascanius* procured her returne, entreated her honourable, and using her as a Queene, did foster her young son, his halfe-brother *Sylvius*. Yet afterwards, whether to avoid all occasions of disagreement, or delighted with the situation of the place, *Ascanius* leaving to his motherinlaw the Citie *Lavinium*, which *Aeneas* had built and called after his new wives name, founded the Citie *Alba Longa*, and therein reigned. The time of his reign was, according to some, eight and twenty yeeres: *Virgil* gives him thirty; others five and thirty, and eight and thirty. After his decease, there arose contention betwene *Sylvius*, the son of *Aeneas*, and *Julius* the sonne of *Ascanius*, about the Kingdome: but the people inclining to the sonne of *Lavinia*, *Julius* was contented to hold the Priesthood, which he and his race enjoyed, leaving the Kingdome to *Sylvius Posthumus*, whose posterity were afterwards called *Sylvii*.

The reignes of the *Alba* Kings, with the continuance of each mans reign, I find thus set downe:

1 Sylvius Posthumus.	29
2 Sylvius Aeneas.	31
3 Sylvius Latinus.	50
4 Sylvius Alba.	39
5 Sylvius Atis.	26
6 Sylvius Capys.	28
7 Sylvius Capetus.	13
8 Sylvius Tiberinus.	8
9 Sylvius Agripa.	41
10 Sylvius Aladus.	19
11 Sylvius Aventinus.	37
12 Sylvius Procas.	23
13 Sylvius Amulius.	44
Sylvius Numitor.	

*Ilia*, called also *Abia* and *Sylvia*.

*Romulus Remus*.

The

The most of these Kings lived in peace, and did little or nothing worthy of remembrance.

*Latius* founded many Townies in the borders of *Latium*: who standing much upon the honour of their original, grew thereby to be called *Prisci Latini*. Of *Tiberinus* some thinke that the River *Tiber* had name, being formerly called *Albula*: but *Virgil* gives it that denomination of another called *Tibris*, before the coming of *Aeneas* into *Italy*. The Mountain *Aventinus* had name (as many write) from *Aventinus* King of the *Albanes*, who was buried therein: but *Virgil* hath it otherwise. *Julius*, the brother of *Aventinus*, is named by *Eusebius* as father of another *Julius*, & grandfather of *Julius Proculus*, who leaving *Alba*, dwelt with *Romulus* in *Rome*: *Numitor*, the elder son of *Procas*, was deprived of his Kingdome by his brother *Amulius*; by whom also his son *Aggestus* was slain, and *Ilia* his daughter made a Nunne of *Vesta*, that thereby the issue of *Numitor* might be cut off. But he conceived two sons, either by her Uncle *Amulius*, as some thinke; or by *Mars*, as the Poets feign; or perhaps by some man of warre. Both the children, their Uncle commanded to be drowned, and the mother buried quick, according to the law; which so ordained, when the Vestall Virgins brake their chastitie. Whether it was so, that the mother was pardoned at the entreatie of *Antho*, the daughter of *Amulius*, or punished as the Law required (for Authors herein doe varie) it is agreed by all, that the two children were preserved, who afterward revenged the cruelty of their Uncle, with the slaughter of him and all his, and restored *Numitor* their grandfather to the Kingdome: wherein how long hee reigned, I find not, neither is it greatly materiall to know; for as much as the Estates of *Alba* and of *Latium* were presently eclipsed by the swift increase of *Rome*; upon which the computation of Time following (as farre as concerns the things of *Italy*) is dependant. After the death of *Numitor*, the Kingdome of *Alba* ceased; for *Numitor* left no male issue. *Romulus* chose rather to live in *Rome*; and of the Line of *Sylvius* none else remained. So the *Albanes* were governed by Magistrates; of whom onely two Dictators are mentioned, namely *Caius Clulius*, who in the dayes of *Tullus Hostilius*, King of the *Romans*, making Warre upon *Rome*, dyed in the Camp; and *Metius Sufestius*, the successor of *Clulius*, who surrendered the Estate of *Alba* unto the *Romans*, having committed the hazzard of both Signories to the successe of three men of each side, who decided the quarrell by Combat: in which, the three brethren *Horatii*, the Champions of the *Romans*, prevailed against the *Curatii*, Champions of the *Albanes*. After this Combat, when *Metius* (following *Tullus Hostilius* with the *Albane* forces against the *Veientes* and *Fidenates*) withdrew his Companies out of the battail, hoping thereby to leave the *Romans* to such an overthrow, as might make them weak enough for the *Albanes* to deal with; *Tullus*, who notwithstanding this falschood, obtained the victory, did reward *Metius* with a cruell death, causing him to be tyed to two Chariots, and so torne in pieces. Then was *Alba* destroyed, and the Citizens carried to *Rome*, where they were made free Denizens; the noble Families being made *Patricians*; among which were the *Julii*: of whom *C. Julius Caesar* being descended, not only gloried in his ancient, royall, and forgotten pedigree, in full assembly of the *Romans*, then governed by a free Estate of the People; but by his rare industrie, valour, and judgement, obtained the Sovereignty of the *Romane* Empire (much by him enlarged) to himselfe and his posterity; whereby the name of *Aeneas*, and honour of the *Trojan* and *Alban* Race, was so revived, that seldome, if ever, any one Family hath attained to a proportionable height of glory.

## §. V.

Of the beginning of *Rome*, and of *Romulus* birth and death.

**O**F *Rome*, which devoured the *Alban* Kingdome, I may here best shew the beginnings, which (though somewhat uncertain) depend much upon the birth and education of *Romulus*, the grand-child of *Numitor*, the last that reigned in *Alba*. For how not onely the bordering people, but all Nations between *Euphrates* and the Ocean, were broken in pieces by the yron teeth of this fourth Beast, it is not to be described in one place, having been the worke of many Ages; whereof I now doe handle onely the first, as incident unto the discourse preceding. *Q. Fabius Pictor*, Por-



to the fifteenth yeere of *Ahaz* may have been concurrent, for the most part, with the first of *Ezechia*,

By supposing that *Hosea* began his Kingdom, when the twelfth yeere of *Ahaz* was almost compleat, some would find the means how to dis-joyne the first of *Ezechia* from the fifteenth of *Ahaz*, placing him yet one year later, of which yeere, *Ahaz* may perhaps have lived not many days. But seeing that the fourteenth and fifteenth yeeres of *Ezechia* may not be removed out of their places, it is vaine labour to alter the first yeere.

1 King 19. 35. In the fourteenth yeere of *Ezechia*, *Senacherib*, invading *Juda* and the Countreys adjoining, lost his Armie by a miraculous stroak from Heaven, fled home, and was slaine. The yeere following it was that God added fifteene yeeres to the life of *Ezechia*, when hee had already reigned fourteen of his nine and twenty: and the same yeere was that miracle scene of the Sunnes going back; of which wonder (as I heare) one *Babylonem Scultet*, who is much commended for skill in Astronomie, hath by calculation found the very day, which answered unto the twenty fift of April in the Julian year, being then Thursday. I have not scene any workes of *Scultet*; but surely to find a motion so irregular and miraculous, it is necessary that he produce some record of observation made at such a time. Howsoever it be, the fifteenth yeere of *Ezechia* agreed upon, and therefore we may not alter the first. As for that saying, which is usual in like cases, that *Ahaz* slept with his Fathers, & *Ezechia* his Sonne reigned in his stead, it doth no more prove that *Ezechia* reigned not with his Father, than the like saying doth inferre the like at the death of *Jehosaphat*, and succession of *Jehoram*; whereof, as concerning the beginning of the Sonne to reign whilest his Father lived, wee have already said enough.

Of this godly King *Ezechias*, we find, that his very beginning testified his devotion and zeale. For whether it were so, that his unfortunate and ungracious Father (who had out-worshipped his reputation) gave way to his Sons proceedings, which perhaps it lay not in him to hinder; or whether (as I rather thinke) the first yeere and first moneth of his reign, wherein *Ezechias* opened the doores of the Temple, were to bee understood as the beginning of his sole government; wee plainly find it to have been his first work, that hee opened the doores of the house of the Lord, which *Ahaz* had shut up, cleansed the Citie and Kingdom of the Idols, restored the Priests to their offices & estates, commanded the Sacrifices to bee offered which had bin for many yeeres neglected, & brake down the brazen Serpent of *Moses*, because the people burnt incense before it, & hee called it *Nebulban*, which signifieth a lump of brasse. He did also celebrate the Pass-over with great magnificence, inviting therunto the *Israelites* of the ten Tribes. Many there were, even out of those Tribes, that came up to *Jerusalem*, to this feast: But the generall multitude of *Israel* did laugh the Messengers of *Ezechia* to scorn.

It was not long ere they that scorned to solemnize the memoriall of their deliverance out of the *Egyptian* servitude, fell into a new servitude, out of which they never were delivered. For in the fourth of *Ezechia* his reign, *Salmanassar* the Son of *Tiglath* the Son of *Belochus*, hearing that *Hosea* King of *Israel* had practised with So King of *Egypt*, against him, invaded *Israel*, besieged *Samaria*, and in the third year (after the inhabitants had endured all sorts of miseries) forced it, and carried thence the ten Idolatrous Tribes into *Assyria* and *Media*: among whom *Tobias*, and his Son of the same name, with *Anna* his Wife, were sent to *Nineve*, in whose Seates and Places the *Assyrians* sent strangers of other Nations, and among them many of the ancient Enemies of the *Israelites*, as those of *Cutha*, *Assyria*, *Hamah*, and *Spernaim*, besides *Babylonians*: whose Places and Nations I have formerly described in the Treatise of the Holy Land.

These later *Assyrian* Kings, and the *Persians*, which followed them, are the first of whom wee find mention made both in Prophane and Sacred bookes. These therefore we serve most aptly to joine the times of the old World, (whereof none but the Prophets have written otherwise than fabulously) with the Ages following that were better known, and described in courie of History. True it is, that of *Cyrus* and some other *Persians*, we find in the Bible the same names by which other Authors have recorded them: but of *Phul* & *Salmanassar*, with other *Assyrian*, *Chaldean* Kings, diversity of names hath bred question of the persons. Therefore, whereas the Scriptures doe speak of *Salmanassar* King of *Assyria*, who reigned in the time of *Ahaz* and *Ezechia*, Kings of *Juda*, & of *Hosea* King of *Israel*, whom hee carried into captivity: and whereas *Ptolomy* makes mention

mention of *Nabonassar*, speaking precisely of the time wherein he lived, it is very pertinent to shew, that *Salmanassar* and *Nabonassar* were one, and the same man. The like reason also requirith, that it be shewed of *Nabuchadnezzar* that he was the same whom *Ptolomy* calleth *Nabopolassar*.

Of both these points *Bucholerus* hath well collected sufficient proofs from the exact calculations of sundry good Mathematicians. For by them it appears, that between *Nabonassar* and the birth of *Christ*, there passed seven hundred forty and six years, at which distance of time the reign of *Salmanassar* was. One great proofe herof is this, which the same *Bucholerus* allegeth out of *Erasmus Reinholdus*, in the *Rechenick Tables*, that *Mardocempadus* King of *Babylon* (whom *Ptolomy*, speaking of three Eclipses of the Moon, which were in his time, doth mention) was the same whom the Scriptures call *Mardach*, who sent Embassadors to attend the King of *Juda*. So that if we reckon backward to the difference of time between *Mardach* and *Salmanassar*, we shall find it the same which is between *Mardocempadus* and *Nabonassar*. Likewise *Fancius* doth shew, that whereas from the destruction of *Samaria*, to the destruction of *Jerusalem*, in the nineteenth of *Nabuchadnezzar*, we collect out of the Scriptures, the distance of one hundred thirty and three years, the selfe same distance of time is found in *Ptolomy* between *Nabonassar* and *Nabopolassar*. For whereas *Ptolomy* seems to differ from this account, making *Nabonassar* more ancient by an hundred and forty years, than the destruction of *Jerusalem*, we are to understand that he took *Samaria* in the eighth year of his reign; so that the seven foregoing years added in these one hundred thirty and three, make the accounts of the Scriptures fall even with that of *Ptolomy*. *Ptolomies* computation is, that from the first of *Nabonassar*, to the fifth of *Nabopolassar*, there passed one hundred twenty and seven years. Now if we add to these one hundred twenty seven, the thirteen ensuing of *Nabuchadnezzar* years, before the City and Temple were destroyed, we have the summe of one hundred and forty years. In to plain a case more proofes are needlesse, though many are brought, of which this may serve for all, that *Ptolomy* placeth the first of *Nabopolassar* one hundred twenty and two years after the first of *Nabonassar*, which agreeth exactly with the Scriptures. To these notes are added the consent of all Mathematicians, which in account of times I hold more sure than the authority of any History; and therefore I think it folly to make doubt, whereas Historians and Mathematicall observations doe so thoroughly concur.

Yet forasmuch as that argument of the learned *Scaliger* doth rest unanswered, wherein he proved *Baladan* the Father of *Mardach*, to have been this *Nabonassar*, I will not leave to lose a word or two in giving the Reader satisfaction herein. It is true, that the next observations of the heavenly Bodies, which *Ptolomy* recorded, after the time of *Nabonassar*, were in the reign of *Mardocempadus*; the second year of whose reigny is according to *Ptolomy*, concurrent in part with the twenty seven of *Nabonassar*. For the second of three ancient Eclipses which hee calculates, being in the second year of *Mardocempadus*, was from the beginning of *Nabonassar* twenty seven years, seventeen dayes, and eleven hours; the account from *Nabonassar*, beginning at high-noon the first day of the *Egyptian* Moneth *Thot*, then answering to the twenty six of *February*; and this Eclipse being fifty minutes before mid-night, on the eighteenth day of that Moneth, when the first day thereof agreed with the nineteenth of *February*; so that the difference of time between the two Kings *Nabonassar* and *Mardocempadus*, is noted by *Ptolomy*, according to the *Egyptian* years. But how doth this prove, that *Mardocempadus* of *Mardach*, was the Sonne of *Nabonassar* a year, how doth it prove, that he was his next Successour, or any way of his Linage? It was enough to satisfie me, in this argument, that *Scaliger* himselfe did afterwards believe *Mardocempadus* to have been rather the Nephew than the Sonne of *Baladan*, or *Nabonassar*. For if hee might bee either the Nephew, or the Sonne; hee might perhaps be neither the one, nor the other. But because our Countre-man *Lidjat* hath reprehended *Scaliger* for changing his opinion; and that both *Tornelius*, who follows *Scaliger* herein, and *Sextus Calpurnius*, who hath drawn into form of Chronology, that learned work, *De Brevitate Temporum*, doe hold up the same assertion, confounding *Baladan* with *Nabonassar*, I have taken the pains to search, as farre as my leisure and diligence could reach, after any sentence that might prove the kindred or Succession of these two: Yet

D d d

cannot

cannot find in the *Almagest* (for the Scriptures are either silent in this point, or adverse to *Scaliger*; and other good authorities I know none, in this business) any sentence necessarily proving the succession of *Merodach* to *Nabonassar*, than the place now last rehearsed: which makes no more, to them that the one of these was father to the other, than (that I may use a like example) the as near succession of *William the Conqueror*, declares him, to have bin Son, or Grand-child to *Edward the Confessor*. This considered, we may safely go on with our account from *Nabonassar*, taking him for *Salmannassar*, and not fearing, that the Readers will be driven from our Book, when they find something in it, agreeing with *Ammius*, so far as these Kings mentioned in Scriptures, reigned in *Babylon* and *Assyria*, in those very times which by *Diodorus* and *Ptolemy* are assigned to *Babylon*, *Nabonassar*, and *Mardacempadus*, and the rest: no good Historie naming any others that reigned there in those ages; and all Astronomical observations, fitly concurring with the years that are attributed to these, or humbled from them.

## S. II.

## Of the danger and deliverance of Judaea from Senacherib.

When *Salmannassar* was dead, and his son *Senacherib* in possession of the Empire, in the fourteenth year of *Ezechias*, he demanded of him such Tribute as was agreed on, at such time as *Tiglath*, the Grand-father of *Senacherib*, and Father of *Salmannassar*, invited by *Abaz*, invaded *Rezin* King of *Damascus*, and delivered him from the dangerous Warre which *Israel* had undertaken against him. This Tribute and acknowledgement when *Ezechias* denied, *Senacherib*, having (as it seems) a purpose to invade *Egypt*, sent one part of his Armie to lye before *Jerusalem*. Now though *Ezechias* (fearing this powerfull Prince) had acknowledged his fault, and purchased his peace, as he hoped, with thirty hundred talents of silver, and thirty talents of gold, wherewith he presented *Senacherib*, now set down before *Lachis* in *Judaea*; yet under the colour of better assurance, and to force the King of *Judaea* to deliver hostages, the *Assyrian* invironed *Jerusalem* with a grosse Armie, and having his sword in his hand, thought it the fittest time to write his own conditions.

*Ezechias* directed his three great Counsellors, to parly with *Rabfices* over the Wall, and to receive his demands: who used three principall arguments to perswade the people to yeld themselves to his Master *Senacherib*. For though the Chancellour, Steward, and Secretarie, sent by *Ezechias*, desired *Rabfices* to speak unto them in the *Syrian* tongue, and not in the *Jewish*, yet he with a louder voice directed his speech to the multitude in their own language. And for the first, he made them know, That if they continued obstinate, and adhered to their King, that they would in a short time be informed to eat their own dung, and drink their own urine: Secondly, hee altogether disabled the King of *Egypt*, from whom the *Judaans* hoped for succour; and compared him to a broken staffe, on which whosoever leaneeth, pierceeth his own hand: Thirdly, that the gods who should help them, *Ezechias* had formerly broken and defaced, meaning chiefly (as it is thought by some) the brazen Serpent, which had been preserved ever since *Moses* time: and withall hee bade them remember the gods of other Nations, whom, notwithstanding any power of theirs, his Master had conquered and throw down; and for God himselfe, in whom they trusted, hee perswaded them by no means to rely upon him, for hee would deceive them. But finding the people silent (for so the King had commanded them) after a while, when he had understood that the King of *Arabia* was marching on with a powerfull Armie, hee himselfe left the *Assyrian* forces in charge to others, and fought *Senacherib* at *Libna* in *Judaea*, either to inform him of their resolution in *Jerusalem*, or to conferre with him concerning the Armie of *Tarbaca* the *Arabian*. Soon upon this there came letters from *Senacherib* to *Ezechias*, whom he partly advised, and partly threatened to submit himself, using the same blasphemous outrage against the all-powerfull God, as before. But *Ezechias* sending those Counsellors to the Prophet *Isay*, which had lately been sent to *Rabfices*, received from him comfort and assurance, that this heathen Idolater should not prevaile; against whom the King also besought aide from Almighty God, repeating the most insolent and blasphemous parts of *Senacherib*'s letter, before the

Altar

Altar of God in the Temple, confessing this part thereof to be true, That the King of *Assyria* had destroyed the Nations and their Lands, and had set fire on their gods, for they were no gods, but the work of mans hands, even wood and stone, &c.

The reason that moved *Senacherib* to desire to possesse himself in haste of *Jerusalem*, was, that he might therein have retraited his Armie, which was departed as it seemed from the siege of *Pelusium* in *Egypt*, for fear of *Tarbaca*: and though the Scriptures are silent of that enterprise (which in these books of the Kings, and of the *Chronicles* or *Paralipomenon*, speak but of the affairs of the Jews in effect) yet the ancient *Bevelus*, and out of him *Iosephus*, and *Saint Hierome*, together with *Herodotus*, remember it as followeth. *Herodotus* calleth *Senacherib* King of *Arabia* and *Assyria*: which he might justly doe, because *Tiglath* his Grand-father held a great part thereof, which he wrested from *Pekah* King of *Israel*: as *Gilead* over *Jordan*, and the rest of *Arabia Petraea* adjoining: the same *Herodotus* alloweth *Senon* King of *Egypt*, to be *Pelaeus* Priest; and reporteth that the reason of *Senacherib*'s return from *Pelusium* in *Egypt*, which he also besieged, was, that an innumerable multitude of Rats had in one night eaten in sunder the Bow-strings of his Archers, and spoyled the rest of their weapons in that kind, which no doubt might greatly amaze him: but the approach of *Tarbaca*, remembered by *Iosephus* and *Berosus*, was the more urgent. *Saint Hierome* upon the seven and thirtieth of *Isay*, out of the same *Berosus*, as also in part out of *Herodotus*, whom *Iosephus* citeth somewhat otherwise than his words lye, reports *Senacherib*'s retreat in these words, *Paganus autem Senacherib Regem Assyriam contra Aegyptios, & obsidisse Pelusium, jamque extructis aggeribus urbi capiende, venisse Taracham Regem Aethiopum in auxilium, & una nocte juxta Jerusalem, centum octoginta quinque milia exercitus Assyrii pestilentia corrumpi, narrat Herodotus: & plenissime Berosus, & Baldaicus scriptor Historiae, quorum fides de propriis libris petenda est, That Senacherib King of the Assyrians fought against the Egyptians, and besieged Pelusium, and that when his Idioms were built for taking of the Citie, Tarbaca King of the Aethiopians came to help them, and that in one night, near Jerusalem, one hundred eighty five thousand of the Assyrian Armie perished by pestilence, these things (saith Hierome) \* *Herodotus reports, and more at large Berosus a writer of Chaldaean Stories, whose credit is to be taken from their own books. Out of Isay it is gathered, that this destruction of the Assyrian Armie was in this manner: Thou shalt be visited of the Lord of Hosts with thunder and shaking, and a great noise, a whirlwind and a tempest, and a flame of devouring fire. But Iosephus hath a more largely out of the same Berosus, an authoritie (because to well agreeing with the Scriptures) not to be omitted, Senacheribus autem ab Aegyptiaco bello revertens, offendit ibi exercitum quem sub Rabfaxis imperio reliquerat peste divinitus immixta delectum, prima nocte posteaquam Urbem oppugnare ceperat, absumptis cum Ducibus & Tribunis centum octoginta quinque milibus Militum; qua clade territus; & de reliquis copiis sollicitus, maximis numeribus in regnum suum contendit, ad regiam qua Ninus dicitur. Ubi paulo post per insidias Seniorum & filiorum suorum, Adramelech, & Sennanari, vitam amisit: occisus in ipso Templo quod dicitur Arafaci, quem praecipuo cultu dignabatur, quibus ob patricidium a populo pulsus; & in Armeniam fugientibus, Alaracoldas minor filius in Regnum successit, Senacherib (saith Iosephus) returning from the Egyptian War, found there his Armie, which he had left under the command of Rabfaxes, destroyed by a pestilence sent from God, the first night that he had begun to assault the Town: one hundred four score and five thousand of the Souldiers being consumed with their Chieftains and Colonels. With which destruction being terrified, and withall afraid what might become of the rest of his Armie, he made great marches into his Kingdome, to his Royall Citie, which is called Ninus, where shortly after by the treason of two of the eldest of his Sons, Adramelech and Sennanar or Sharcezer, he lost his life in the Temple dedicated to Arafac, or Nesroth, whom he especially worshipped. These his Sons being for their partide chased away by the people, and flying into Armenia; Alaracoldas his younger Son succeeded in the Kingdome. Who in the beginning of his reign sent new troops out of Assyria to Samaria, to fortifie the Colonie therein planted by his Grand-father Salmannassar. What this Nesroth was, it is uncertain: Hierome in his Hebrew traditions hath somewhat of him, but nothing positively. It is certain, that Venus Urania was worshipped by the Assyrians; and so was Jupiter Belus, as Dion, Eusebius; and Cyrillus witnesseth. Many fancies there are, what cause his Sons had to murder him; but the**

Ddd 2

most

most likely it is, that he had formerly dis-inherited those two, and conferred the Empire on *Assarhaddon*. *Tobit* tells us, that it was fiftie five days after *Senacherib's* return, ere he was murdered by his Sons, during which time he slew great numbers of the *Israelites* in *Nineve*, till the most just God turned the sword against his own braet.

## s. III.

of *Ezechias* his sicknesse and recoverie; and of the *Babylonian* King that congratulated him.

After this marvellous deliverie, *Ezechias* sickned, and was told by *Isaiah* that he must dye: but after he had besought God with tears for his deliverie, *Isaiah*, as he was going from him, returned again, and had warrant from the Spirit of God to promise him recovery after three days, and a prolongation of life for fiftie years. But *Ezechias* somewhat doubtful of this exceeding grace, prayeth for a sign to confirme him: whereupon, at the prayer of *Isaiah*, the shadow of the Sunne cast it self the contrary way, and went back ten degrees, upon the Dyall of *Achaz*. The cause that moved *Ezechias* to lament (saith *Saint Hierome*) was, because he had as yet no son; and then in despair that the *Messias* should come out of the house of *David*, or at least of his Seed. His disease seemeth to be the pestilence, by the medicine given him by the Prophet, to wit, a masse of Figs, layd to the Bitch or Sore.

This wonder when the Wife-men of *Chaldea* had told to *Merodach*, King of *Babylon*, the first of that house, he sent to *Ezechias*, to be informed of the cause: at which time *Ezechias* shewed him all the Treasure he had, both in the Court and in the Kingdom: for which he was reprehended by the Prophet *Isaiah*, who told him; *The treasures are at hand, that all that is in thine house, and whatsoever thy Fathers have layd up in store to this day, shall be carried into Babel; nothing shall be left, saith the Lord. It may seeme strange, how Ezechias should have got any treasure worth the shewing: for Senacherib had robbed him of all, the year before. But the spoyle of the same Senacherib his Camp repayed all with advantage, and made Ezechias richer upon the sudden than ever he had been: which unexpected wealth was a strong temptation to boasting. After this time Ezechias had rest, and spending without noyse that addition which God had made unto his life, he dyed having reigned nine and twentie years: One only offensive War he made, which was against the *Philistims*, with good successe. Among his other acts (shortly remembered in *Ecclesiasticus*) he devised to bring water to *Jerusalem*.*

In two respects they say that he offended God: the one, that he rejoiced too much at the destruction and lamentable end of his enemy; the other, that he so much gloried in his riches, as he could not forbear to shew them to strangers. But the reason why he moved *Ezechias* (speaking humanely) to entertaine the Embassadors of *Merodach* in this friendly and familiar manner, was, because he came to visit him, and brought him a present, congratulating the recovery of his health; as also in that *Merodach* had weakened the house of *Senacherib*, his fearfull enemy. For *Merodach*, who was Commander and Lieutenant under *Senacherib* in *Babylon*, usurped that State himselfe in the last year of that King, and held it by strong hand against his son *Assarhaddon*; who was not only simple, but impaired in strength, by the molestation of his brothers. This advantage *Merodach* espied, and remembering that their ancestor *Phul Belochus* had set his own Master *Sardanapalus* besides the cubition, thought it as lawfull for himselfe to take the opportunitie which this Kings weaknesse did offer, as it had been for *Belochus* to make use of the others wickednesse: and so, finding himselfe beloved of the *Babylonians*, and sufficiently powerfull, he did put the matter to hazard, and prevailed. The assertion of this historie is made by the same arguments that were used in maintaining the common opinion of Writers, touching *Phul Belochus*; which I will not here again rehearse. So of this new race, which cut a-sunder the Line of *Ninus*, there were only five Kings.

Phul

<i>Phul Belochus</i>	} reigned	{	43
<i>Tiglath Philassar</i>			27
<i>Salmanassar</i>			10
<i>Senacherib</i>			7
<i>Assarhaddon</i>			10

But forasmuch as the last year of *Salmanassar* was also the first of *Senacherib* his son, we reckon the time, wherein the house of *Phul* held the *Assyrian* Kingdome, to have been an hundred and one years, of which, the last five and twenty were spent with *Ezechias*, under *Salmanassar*, *Senacherib*, and *Assarhaddon*.

## s. IIII.

The Kings that were in *Media* during the reign of *Ezechias*: Of the difference found between sundrie Authors in rehearsing the Median Kings, other contemporaries of *Ezechias*: Of *Candaules*, *Gyges*, and the Kings descended from *Hercules*.

In the time of *Ezechias*, *Medius*, and after him *Cardiceas*, reigned in *Media*. Whether it were so, that varietie of names, by which these Kings were called in severall Histories, hath caused them to seem more than indeed they were; or whether the sons reigning with the fathers, have caused not only the names of Kings, but the length of Time wherein they governed *Media*, to exceed the due proportion; or whether the Copies themselves of *Ctesias* and *Annius* his *Metasthenes*, have been faulty, as neither of these two Authors is over-highly commended of trustinesse, so it is, that the names, number, and length of reign, are all very diversly reported of these Median kings, that follow *Arbaces*: therefore it need not seem strange, that I reckon *Medius* and *Cardiceas* as contemporaries with *Ezechias*. For to reconcile so great a difference, as is found in those writers that varie from *Eusebius*, is more than I dare undertake. I will only here set down the roll of Kings that reigned in *Media*, accordingly as sundry Authors have delivered it.

*Annius* his *Metasthenes* orders them and their reigns thus;

<i>Arbaces</i>	} reigned	{	28
<i>Mandanes</i>			50
<i>Sofarmon</i>			30
<i>Articarmin</i>			50
<i>Arbians</i>			22
<i>Artaus</i>			40
<i>Artines</i>			22
<i>Asbybarus</i> , with his			
son <i>Apanda</i>			20
<i>Apanda</i> alone			30
<i>Darius</i> with <i>Cyrus</i> .			36

*Diodorus Siculus* following *Ctesias* (as perhaps *Annius* made his *Metasthenes* follow *Diodorus*, with some little variation, that he might not seem a borrower) placeth them thus;

<i>Arbaces</i>	} reigned	{	28
<i>Mandanes</i>			50
<i>Sofarmus</i>			30
<i>Articus</i>			50
<i>Arbians</i>			22
<i>Arseus</i>			40
<i>Artines</i>			22
<i>Artabamus</i>			40

*Asbybara*, & the continuance of these two he doth mention.

*Mercator* hath laboured, with much diligence, to reconcile these Catalogues, and to make them also agree with *Eusebius*. But forasmuch as it seems to me an impossible matter, to attain unto the truth of these forgotten times, by conjectures founded upon

D d d

*Ctesias*

*Ctesias* and *Metasthenes*, I will lay the burden upon *Eusebius*, who lived in an age better furnished than ours, with books of this argument. Let it therefore suffice, that these two Kings (whom I have reckoned as contemporaries with *Ezekia*) *Medius* and *Cardicus*, are found in *Eusebius*: for whether *Cardicus* were *Diodorus* his *Arbians*, I will not stay to search. The Kings of *Media*, according to *Eusebius*, reigned in this order.

<i>Arbaces</i>	28	} reigned	} years.
<i>Sofarmus</i>	30		
<i>Medius</i>	40		
<i>Cardicus</i>	15		
<i>Deioeces</i>	54		
<i>Phraortes</i>	24		
<i>Cyaxares</i>	32		
<i>Astyages</i>	38		

These names, and this course of succession I retain; but adde unto these, *Cyaxares*, the son of *Astyages*, according to *Xenophon*; and sometimes follow *Herodotus*, in setting down the length of a Kings reign, otherwise than *Eusebius* hath it: of which variations I will render my reasons in due place.

The twenty nine years of *Ezekia* were concurrent, in part, with the rule of the four first that were chosen Governours of *Athens* for ten years, that is, of *Charops*, *Estimides*, *Eldicus*, and *Hippones*. Touching the first of these I hear nothing, save that *Rome* was built in his first year, of which perhaps himself did not hear. Of the second and third I find only the names. The fourth made himself known by a strange example of justice, or rather of cruelty, that he shewed upon his own Daughter. For he finding that she had offended in unchastity, caused her to be lockt up with an Horse, giving to neither of them any food: so the Horse, constrained by hunger, devoured the unhappy Woman.

In *Rome*, the first King, and founder of that City *Romulus*, did reign both before, and somewhat after *Ezekia*.

In *Lydia*, *Candaules* the last King ruled in the same age.

This Region was first called *Maonia*. *Lydus* the son of *Atyx* reigning in it, gaveth the name of *Lydia*, if we believe such authority as we find. This Kingdom was afterward, by the appointment of an Oracle, conferred upon *Argon*, who came of *Alcaus* the son of *Hercules*, by *Jardana*, a bond-woman. The race of these *Heraclids* continued reigning fifty five years (in which two and twenty Generations passed) the son continually succeeding the father. *Candaules* the son of *Myrsus* was the last of his race, who doated so much upon the beauty of his own wife, that he could not be content to enjoy her, but would needs enforce one *Gyges* the son of *Dasyalus* to behold her naked body; and placed the unwilling man secretly in her chamber, where he might see her preparing to bedward. This was not so closely carried, but that the Queen perceived *Gyges* at his going forth, and understanding the matter, took it in such high disdain, that she forced him the next day to requite the Kings folly with treason. So *Gyges* being brought again into the same chamber by the Queen, slew *Candaules*, and was rewarded not only with his Wife, but with the Kingdom of *Lydia*. He reigned thirty eight years, beginning in the last of *Ezekia*, one year before the death of *Romulus*.

After *Gyges*, his son *Ardis* reigned nine and forty years; then *Sadyattes* twelve; *Halyattes*, fifty seven; and finally *Craesus* the son of *Halyattes*, fourteen years: who lost the Kingdom, and was taken by *Cyrus* of *Persia*.

And here by the way we may note, that as the *Lydian* Kings, whom *Craesus* his Progenitor disposed, are deduced from *Hercules*, so of the same *Hercules* there sprang many other Kings, which governed severall Countreys very long; as in *Asia*, the *Myssians*; in *Greece*, the *Lacedemonians*, *Messenians*, *Rhodians*, *Corinthians* and *Argives*; and from the *Argives*, the *Macedonians*, as likewise from the *Corinthians*, the *Syraculans*: besides many great and famous, though private Families.

But of the *Heraclids* that reigned in *Lydia*, I have not troubled my self to take notice of the time of their severall reigns: for little is found of them beside the bare names, and the folly of this last King *Candaules*.

## CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Kings that reigned in Egypt, between the deliverance of Israel from thence, and the reign of Ezekiah in Juda, when Egypt and Juda made a league against the Assyrians.

S. I.

That many names of Egyptian Kings, found in Historie, are like to have belonged onely to Viceroyes. An example proving this out of William of Tyre his Historie of the Holy Warre.



He emulation and quarrels arising in these times, between the mightie Kingdomes of *Egypt* and *Assyria*, doe require our pains, in collecting the most memorable things in *Egypt*, and setting down briefly the state of that Countrey, which had continued long a flourishing Region, and was of great power, when it contended with *Assyria* for the masterie. Of *Cham* the son of *Noah*, who first planted that Countrey, and of *Osiris*, *Orus*, and other ancient Kings that reigned there, untill the *Israelites* were thence delivered, more hath been said already than I can stand to; though I hold it no shame to fall in such conjectures. That which I have delivered, in speaking mine opinion of the *Egyptian* Dynasties, must here again help me. For it may truly be affirmed, That the great number of Kings, which are said to have reigned in *Egypt*, were none other than Viceroyes or Stewards, such as *Joseph* was, and such as were the Soldans in later ages. Therefore I will not onely forbear to seek after those, whom *Herodotus* and *Diodorus* have reckoned up, from the mouths of *Egyptian* Priests, delivering them by number, without rehearsing their names; but will save the labour of marshalling them in order, whose names onely are found; the years of their reigns, and other circumstances proving them to have been Kings indeed, being not recorded.

But that I may not seem before hand to lay an imaginarie ground, whereupon after I may build what I list; it were not amisse to give unto the Reader such satisfaction in this point, as apparent reason, and truth of Historie doth afford. First therefore, we ought not to believe those numbers of Generations, which the lying Priests have reckoned up, to magnifie their Antiquities. For we know, that from *Abraham* our Saviour *Christ* was removed onely forty two descents; which makes it evident, that in farre shorter time, namely before the *Persian* Empire, there could not have passed away twice as many successions in *Egypt*: especially considering, that many of these, whose continuance is expressed, having reigned longer than forty years. It follows that we should square the number of the *Egyptian* Kings in some even proportion; to those which did bear rule in other Countries. As for the rest whose names we find scattered here and there; any man that will take the pains to read the nineteenth book of the Holy War; written by *William* Archbishop of *Tyre*, may easily perswade himself, that it is not hard to find names enow, of such as might be thought to have reigned in *Egypt*, being none other than Regents or Viceroyes. Yet will I here insert, as briefly as I can, some things making to that purpose, for the pleasure and information of such as will not trouble themselves with turning over many Authors.

When *Elabdech* the Caliph ruled in *Egypt*, one *Dargan*, a powerfull and a subtle man, made himself Soldan, by force and cunning, chafing away *Sanar* an *Arabian*, who was Soldan before and after him. This *Dargan* ministred matter of quarrel to *Amalrick* king of *Jerusalem*, and sustained, with little losse, an invasion, which *Amalrick* made upon *Egypt*. Hereupon he grew so insolent and proud, that *Sanar* the former Soldan hoped to make his partie good against him; if he could get any forces wherewith to enter *Egypt*. Briefly,



Briefly, *Sanar* sueth to *Noradine*, King of *Damasco*, for aid, who sends an Armie of his Turks, under the command of *Syrac*, against the *Soldan Dargan*. So *Dargan* and *Sanar* met, and fought: The victorie was *Dargan*'s; but he enjoyed it not: for in few dayes after, he was slain by treason, whereby *Sanar* did recover his Dignitie: which to establish, he slew all the kindred and friends of *Dargan*, that he could find in the great Citie of *Cairo*.

To all these doings, the *Caliph Elhadeth* gave little regard: for he thought it little concerned him, which of them lived, and had the administration of the kingdome, whilst he might have the profit of it, and enjoy his pleasure. But new troubles presently arise, which (one would think) do needly touch the *Caliph* himself. *Syrac*, with his Turks, whom *Sanar* had gotten to come into *Egypt*, will not now be intreated there to leave him, and quietly go their way home. They seize upon the Town of *Belbeis*, which they fortifie, and there attend the arrivall of more companie from *Damasco*, for the conquest of all *Egypt*. The *Soldan* perceives their intent, and finds himself not strong enough to expell them, much lesse to repell the Turkish Armie that was likely to second them: He therefore sends Messengers to King *Almarick* of *Jerusalem*, whom with large promises he gets to bring him aid, and so drives out the Turks. Of all this trouble the great *Caliph* hears nothing, or not so much as should make him look to the playing of his own game.

A greater mischief, it selfe, concerning the *Caliph Elhadeth* particularly in his own Title. *Syrac*, Captain of the Turks that had been in *Egypt*, goes to the *Caliph of Balдах* (who was opposit to him of *Egypt*, each of them claiming as heir to *Mahomet*, that false Prophet, the Sovereigntie over all that were of the Saracen Law) and tells him the weaknesse of the *Egyptian*, with his own abilitie of doing service in those parts offering his best means for the extirpation of the Schismaticall *Caliph*, and the reduction of all *Egypt*, with the Western parts, under the subjection of the *Babylonian*. This motion is readily and joyfully entertained; all the Eastern Provinces are up in Arms, and *Syrac*, with a mighty power, descendeth into *Egypt*. The noyse of this great expedition so affrighteth King *Almarick*, that with all his forces he hasteth into *Egypt*, well knowing how needly concerned him and his Kingdome of *Jerusalem*, to keep the Saracens from joyning all under one head. *Sanar* the *Soldan* perceiving the faithful care of the Christians his friends, welcomes them, and bestirs himselfe in giving them all manner of content, as it behoved him: for by their admirable valour, he finally drave the enemies out of the Countrey. But this victory was not so soon gotten, as it is quickly told.

Strange it is (which most concerns our present purpose) that of so desperate a danger, the *Caliph*, as yet, seems to know nothing. May we not think him to have been King in title onely, who meddled so little in the Government? The *Soldan*, finding that the Christians (without whose help all was lost) could not well stay so long as his necessities required, makes large offers to King *Almarick*, upon condition that he should abide by it. He promiseth a great Tribute. (*William* of *Tyre* calls it a Tribute, the Saracens, perhaps, called it a Pension) which the Kings of *Jerusalem* should receive out of *Egypt*, for this behovefull assistance. But the Christians understanding that the *Soldan* (how much soever he took upon him) was subject to a higher Lord, would make no bargain of such importance with any other than the *Caliph* himself. Hereupon *Hugh* Earl of *Cesaria*, and a Knight of the Templers, are sent unto *Elhadeth* to ratifie the covenants. Now shall we see the greatnesse of the *Caliph* and his estate.

These Embassadours were conveyed by the *Soldan* to *Cairo*, where arriving at the Palace, they found it guarded by great troupes of Souldiers. The first entrance was through dark Porches, that were kept by many armed bands of *Ethiopians*, which with so all diligence did reverence to the *Soldan* as he passed along. Through these streights the Warders led them into goodly open Courts, of such beaurie and riches, that they could not retain the gravitie of Embassadours, but were enforced to admire the things which detained their eyes. For there they saw goodly Marble Pillars, gilded Beams, all wrought over with embossed workes, curious pavements, fish-ponds of Marble with clear waters, and many sorts of strange birds, unknown in those parts of the World, as coming perhaps from the East Indies, which then was undiscovered. The further they went, the greater was the magnificence; for the *Caliph* his Eunuches conveyed them into

other

other Courts within these, as far excelling the former, as the former did surpass ordinary houses. It were tedious perhaps to rehearse how the further they entred, the more high state they found, and cause of marvaile; suffice it, that the good Archbishop, who wrote these things, was never held a vain Author. Finally they were brought into the *Caliph* own lodgings, which were yet more stately and better guarded; where entering the Presence, the *Soldan* having twice prostrated himself, did the third time cast off his Sword that he wore about his neck, and throw himself on the ground before the curtain; behind which the *Caliph* sat. Presently the travesty wrought with Gold and Pearls was opened; and the *Caliph* himself discovered, sitting with great majesty on a throne of gold, having few of his most inward servants and Eunuches about him. When the *Soldan* had humbly kissed his Masters feet, he briefly told the cause of his coming, the danger wherein the land stood, and the offers that he made unto King *Almarick*, desiring the *Caliph* himself to ratifie them in presence of the Embassadors. The *Caliph* answered, That he would thoroughly perform all which was promised. But this contented not the Embassadors: They would have him to give his hand upon the bargain; which the *Egyptians* that stood by thought an impudent request. Yet his greatnesse condescended at length, after much deliberation, at the earnest request of the *Soldan*, to reach out his hand: When the Earl of *Cesaria* saw that the *Caliph* gave his hand neither willingly nor bare; he told him roundly thus much in effect: Sir, Truth seeks no holes to hide it self: Princes that will hold covenant, must deal openly, nakedly and sincerely: Give us therefore your bare hand, if you mean that we shall trust you, for we will make no bargain with your Glove. Much adoe there was about this: for it seemed against the Majesty of such a Prince to yeeld so far. But when it would none otherwise be, with a smiling cheer (though to the great grief of his Servants) he vouchsafed to let the Earl take him by the bare hand; and so rehearsing the covenants word by word, as the Earl spake them, he ratified all; dismissing finally the Embassadors with such rewards as testified his greatnesse.

In this *Caliph* and his Sultan, we may discern the Image of the ancient *Pharaoh*; and his Viceroy: we see a Prince of great estate, sitting in his Palace, and not vexing himself with the great preparations made against him, which terrifie his neighbour Countries: we see his Viceroy, in the mean season, using all Royall power, making War and Peace, entreaining and repelling Armies of strangers; yea, making the Land of *Egypt* tributary to a forrain Prince. What greater authority was given to *Joseph*, when *Pharaoh* said unto him, *Thou shalt be over mine house, and at thy word shall all my people be armed, only in the Kings throne will I be above thee. Behold I have set thee over all the Land of Egypt*?

I doe not commend this forme of Government; neither can I approve the conjecture of mine Author, where he thinks, that the *Egyptians*, ever since *Joseph*'s time, have felt the burden of that servitude which he brought upon them, when he bought them and their Lands for *Pharaoh*. Herein I find his judgement good; that he affirms this manner of the *Egyptian* Kings, in taking their ease, and ruling by a Viceroy, to be part of the ancient customs practised by the *Pharaohs*. For we find, that even the *Ptolomies* (excepting *Ptolomeus Lagi*, and his son *Philadelphus*, founder and establisher of that race) were given, all of them wholly, to please their own appetites, leaving the charge of the Kingdome to Women, Eunuches, and other Ministers of their desires. The pleasures which that Country afforded, were indeed sufficient to invite the Kings thereof unto a voluptuous life, and the awfull regard wherein the *Egyptians* held their Princes, gave them security, whereby they might the better trust their Officers with so ample commission. But of this matter, I will not stand longer to dispute. It is enough to have shewed, that the great and almost absolute power of the Viceroyes governing *Egypt*, is set down by *Moses*, and that a lively example of the same is found in *William* of *Tyre*, who lived in the same age, was in few years after Chancellor of the Kingdome of *Jerusalem*, and had full discourse with *Hugh* Earl of *Cesaria* touching all these matters. Wherefore it remains, that we be not carried away with a vain opinion, to beleave that all they were Kings, whom reports of the fabulous *Egyptians* have honoured with that stile; but rest contented with a Catalogue of such, as we find by circumstance, likely to have reigned in that Country; after whom it follows that we should make inquiry.

## s. II.

of Acherres; whether he were Uchoerus that was the eighth from Osymandyas. of Osymandyas and his Tombe.

**I**N this businesse I hold it vain to be too curious. For who can hope to attain to the perfect knowledge of the truth, when as *Diodorus* varies from *Herodotus*, *Eusebius* from both of them; and late Writers that have sought to gather the truth out of these and others, find no one with whom they can agree? In this case *Achilles* would doe good service, if a man could trust him. But it is enough to be beholding to him, when others doe either say nothing, or that which may justly be suspected. I will therefore hold my self contented with the pleasure that he hath done me, in saying somewhat of *Osiris*, *Isis*, *Orus*, and those antiquities removed so far out of sight: as for the Kings following the departure of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, it shall suffice that *Herodotus*, *Diodorus*, and *Eusebius* have not been silent, and that *Reinecius* hath taken pains to range into some good order the names that are extant in these, or else found scattering in others.

From the departure of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, unto the reign of *Thoutis* (who is generally taken to be the same that the Greeks call *Proteus*) there is little or no disagreement about the *Egyptian* Kings. Wherefore I set down the same which are found in *Eusebius*, and give to every one the same length of reign.

*Acherres* was the first of these, who succeeded unto *Chenres*, that perished in the Red Sea. This King seems to *Reinecius* to be the same whom *Diodorus* calls *Uchoerus*, the founder of *Memphis*. But whereas mention is found in *Diodorus* of a great King, named *Osymandyas*, from whom *Uchoerus* is said to be the eighth; it will either hardly follow, that *Timaeus* (as *Reinecius* conjectures) was the great *Osymandyas*; or else that this *Acherres* was *Uchoerus*: for the distance between them was more than eight generations. *Macrobius* judgeth *Osymandyas* to have bin the husband of *Ancheres*, *Orus* the seconds daughter, thinking that *Manethon* (cited by *Iosephus*) doth omit his name, and insert his wives into the Catalogue of Kings, because he was King in his wives right. As for *Uchoerus*, it troubles not *Macrobius* to find him the eighth from this man: for he takes *Osiris*, not to signify in this place of *Diodore* (as that Greek word else doth) the eighth, but to be an *Egyptian* name, belonging also to *Uchoerus*, who might have had two names, as many of the rest had. I will not vex my brains in the unprofitable search of this, and the like inextricable doubts. All that *Diodore* hath found of this *Osymandyas*, was wrought upon his monument; the most thereof in figures, which I think the *Egyptians* did fabulously expound. For whereas there was portrayed a great Army, with the siege of a Town, the captivity of the people, and the triumph of the Conqueror; all this, the *Egyptians* said to denote the conquest of *Bactria* made by that King: which how likely it was let others judge. I hold this goodly piece of work, which *Diodore* so particularly describes, to have been erected for a common place of buriall to the ancient Kings and Queens of *Egypt*, and to their Viceroy; whilst yet they were not so ambitious, as every one to have his own particular monument, striving therein to exceed all others. This appears by the many statues therein placed, by the Wars, the judgement seats, the receiving of Tribute, the offering sacrifice to God, the account of revenues, & plenty of all cattell and food; all which were there curiously wrought, shewing the severall Offices of a Governour. On the Tomb of *Osymandyas* was this inscription. *I am Osymandyas King of Kings; If any desire to know what I am, or where I lie, let him exceed some of my works.* Let them that hope to exceed his works, labour to know what he was. But since by those words, *Or where I lie*, it should seem that he lay not there interred, we may lawfully suspect that it was *Ioseph*, whose body was preserved among the Hebrews, to be buried in the kind of *Canaan*, and this empty Monument might King *Orus*, who outlived him, erect in honor of his high deserts, among the royall sepulchres. To which purpose the plenty of Cattell, &c. all manner of viands, had good reference. The name of *Osymandyas* doth not hinder this conjecture; seeing *Ioseph* had one new name given to him by *Pharaoh*, for expounding the dream, and might, upon further occasions, have another, to his increase of honour. As for that stile, *King of Kings*, it was perhaps no more than *Beglerberg*, as the Turkish *Bassas* are called, that is, Great above the Great.

Now

Now although it be so, that the reckoning falls out right, between the times of *Ioseph* and *Acherres* (for *Acherres* was the eighth in order, that reigned after the great *Orus*, whose Viceroy *Ioseph* was) yet will I hereby seek, neither to fortifie mine own conjecture, as touching *Ioseph*, nor to infer any likelihood of *Acherres* his being *Uchoerus*. For it might well be, that *Memphis* was built by some such King as was *Gchoar*, Lieutenant unto the Caliph *Elcain*; who having to his Masters use conquered *Egypt*, and many other Countries, did build, not far from old *Memphis*, the great Citie of *Cairo* (corruptly so pronounced) naming it *El Gahira*, that is, an enforcing, or an imperious Mistress; though he himself were a *Dalmatian* slave.

## s. III.

of Cherres, Armeus, Rameffes, and Amenophis. Of Myris, and the Lake that bears his name.

**V**HEN *Acherres* had reigned eight years, *Cherres* succeeded and held the kingdom fifteen years; then reigned *Armeus* five years, and after him *Rameffes* threescore and eight. Of *Armeus* and *Rameffes* is that Historie understood by *Eusebius*, which is common among the Greeks, under the names of *Danans* and *Egyptus*. For it is said that *Danans*, being expelled out of *Egypt* by his brother, fled into *Greece*, where he obtained the Kingdom of *Argos*: that he had fifty Daughters, whom upon seeming reconciliation, he gave in marriage to his brothers fiftie sons, but commanded every one of them to kill her husband the first night; that only *Hypermetra*, one of his Daughters, did save her husband *Lyncus*, and suffered him to escape; finally, That for this fact, all the bloody sisters, when they dyed, were enjoined this foolish punishment in Hell, to fill a leaking vessell with water.

The reign of *Danans* in *Argos* was indeed in this age; but that *Armeus* was *Danans*, and *Rameffes*, *Egyptus*, is more than *Reinecius* believes: he rather takes *Armeus* to have been *Myris*, or *Meris*, who caused the great lake to be made which bears his name. For my own part, as I can easily believe, that he which fled out of *Egypt* into *Greece*, was a man of such qualitie as the Soldan *Sanar*, of whom we spake before; so do I not find how in so short a reign, as five years, a work of that labour could be finished, which was required unto the Lake of *Myris*, and the Monuments therein; whereof his own Sepulchre and his wives being some part, it is manifest that he was not buried in *Argos*. Wherefore of *Myris*, and of all other Kings, whose age is uncertain, and of whose reigns we have no assurance, I may truly say, that their great works are not enough to prove them of the house of *Pharaoh*, seeing that greater deeds or more absolute, than were those of *Ioseph*, who bought all the people of *Egypt* as bondmen, and all their land for bread; of *Gchoar*, who founded *Cairo*; and of *Sanar*, who made the Countrey Tributarie; were performed by none of them.

It shall therefore be enough to set down the length of their reigns whom we find to have followed one another in order of succession: but in rehearsing the great acts which were performed, I will not stand to examine, whether they that did them were Kings or no.

The Lake of *Myris*, is, by the report of *Diodore* and *Herodotus*, three thousand six hundred furlongs in compass, and fifty fadomes deep. It served to receive the waters of *Nilus*, when the overflow, being too great, was harmful to the Countrey: and to supply the defect, by letting out the waters of the lake, when the river did not rise high enough. In opening the sluices of this lake, for the letting in or out of waters, were spent fiftie talents; but the lake it self defraided that cost, seeing the tribute imposed upon fish taken therein was every day one talent, which *Myris* gave to his Wife to buy sweet oymnts and other ornaments for her body. In the midst of it was left an Island, wherein were the Sepulchres of *Myris* and his Wife, and over each of them a Pyramid, that was a furlong, or (according to *Herodotus*) fiftie paces high; having on the tops their statues, sitting in Thrones. I find not the description of this Lake in Maps, answerable to the report of Historians: yet it is very great. The years of *Armeus* are by *Manethon* divided; by inserting one *Armeis* (whom *Eusebius* omits) that should have reigned one year and odd months of the time: but I hold not this difference worthy of examination.

After

After *Rameses*, his son *Amenophis* held the Kingdom forty years. Some give him only nineteen years; and *Mencator* thinks him to have been the King that was drowned in the Red Sea: whereof I have already spoken in the first Book.

of the Kings that reigned in the Dynastie of the Larthes.

**S**ethosis, or *Zethus*, reigned after his Father *Amenophis*, fiftie five years. I have ascribed the famous acts of that ancient *Sesoftris*. But the state of the world was not such at these times, that so great an expedition as the old *Sesoftris* made, could have been either easily performed, or forgotten in the Countries through which he passed, had it now been performed; as any man will perceive, if he look upon my Chronological Table, and consider who lived with this *Zethus*. With this King began the Dynastie of the *Larthes*, which *Reineccius* conjectures to have had the same signification, wherein the old Kings of *Heptaria* were called *Lartes*, (the *Hetrurians* being illudged out of *Lydia* the *Lydians* out of *Egypt*) and to have signified as much as *Imperators* or *Generals*. The wars in which these Kings were Generals, I take to have been against the *Ethiopiens*; for sure I am, that they troubled not the Countie of *Palaestina*, they lay next unto them on the one hand, nor is it likely that they travelled over the desert sands, to seek matter of conquest, in the poor Countie of *Africa*. But on the other hand, to seek matter of conquest, in the poor Countie of *Africa*. But these Generals (if the *Larthes* were such) were not many. Five only had that title; and the last of these took it, perhaps, as hereditary from the first, in such sort as the *Roman* Emperours were proud, for a while, to be called *Antonini*, till the most unfavourable conditions of *Heliogabalus*, made his successors forbear the name.

Here it may be objected, that the Dynasties (as appears by this particular) took name from the Kings; that the Kings also did administer the government themselves, and therefore I am deceived in ascribing to much unto the Viceroyes. But it is to be considered, that what is said of these *Larthes*, depends only upon conjecture, and that the authority of the Regents, or Viceroyes, might be great enough, though some few Kings took the conduct of Armies into their own hands. For to we find in *John Leo*, that the Soldan of *Egypt* (after such time as the Soldan *Saladine*, murdering the Caliph, got the Sovereignty to himself) had under him a Viceroy, styled *Eddagnadare*, who had authority to place, or displace, any Magistrates, or Officers; and that this mans Familie was almost as great as the Soldans own. Yet was there also the *Amir Cabir*, or Lord Generall of the Soldans forces, who had the charge of defending the Land, and might, as he thought good, spend of the Soldans treasure. So might the office of the Viceroyes continue, though the Kings themselves, taking the charge, or title of Generals upon them, did somewhat abridge the greatness of that second place. As for the names of the Dynasties, it skils not whence they were drawn; whether from their Countie, as thole of the *Thebans* and *Diapolisans*; or from some eminent men, or man, who ruled in that time; as many think, that the seventeenth Dynastie was called of the Shepherds, because *Joseph* governed in part thereof; or from the Kings themselves that reigned; as this was said to be of the *Larthes* or Generals. The next, as *Manetho* (but *Annius* his *Manetha*) hath it, was without any *Larthes* or Generals, yet was it not without Kings, so much as *Vaphres*, and *Sesac*, reigned therein, if many others did not. But let us now return to the business which we left.

*Rameses* was King after *Zethus*, or *Sethosis*, three score and six years. He is mistaken for that second *Sesoftris*, of whom I have spoken in the first book. I find nothing worth rehearsal of this *Rameses*, or of *Amenophis* and *Annemeses*, that followed him in order, the former of which reigned fortie, the latter six and twenty years. Wherefore it may very well be, that the name which *Zethus* had from valour, was taken by these as hereditary.

*Thorus*, the last of the *Larthes*, reigned only seven years; yet is he thought to have bin that *Proteus*, of whom *Herodotus* hath mention, saying, That he took *Helena* from *Paris*, and after the sack of *Troy*, restored her to *Menelaus*. I need say no more in refutation of this, than that the time of *Thorus* his reign lasted not so long as from the Rape of *Helena* to her restitution.

This

This *Proteus* or *Cetes* (as he is named by some) together with *Thon*, and others, mentioned by Greek Writers in this business, or in other such matters, may seem to be under-Officers: for such only are like to have had their residence about *Pharos*, and the sea-coast where *Menelaus* arrived.

Of *Proteus*, who detained *Helen*, it is said that he could foretell things to come, and that he could change himself into all shapes: whereby is signified his crafty head, for which he is grown into a Proverb. The Poets feigned him a Sea-God, and keeper of *Nepheus* Seal-fishes, for belike he was some under-Officer to the Admirall, having charge of the Fishing about the Isle of *Pharos*, as was said before.

*Rameses* the son of *Proteus* is reckoned the next King, by *Diodorus*, as also by *Herodotus*, who calls him *Ramphinitus*, and tells a long tale fit to please children, of his covetousness, and how his treasure-house was robbed by a cunning thief, that at last married his Daughter. But of this a man may believe what he list. How long this King reigned I know not, nor think that either he or his father did reign at all.

S. V.

of the Egyptian Kings, whose names are found scattering in sundry Authors, their times being not recorded. The Kings of Egypt, according to Cedrenus, of Vaphres, and Sesac.

**M**any other names of Egyptian Kings are found scattered here and there; as *Tomephobis*, of whom *Suidas* delivers onely the bare name and title, *Senemures*, or *Senepes*, mentioned in *Macrobius*, who perhaps was the same that by *Suidas* is called *Senyes*, or *Euener*, noted by occasion of a great Physician that lived under him; *Bachyras*, recorded by the same *Suidas* for his great justice; and *Thulis*, of whom *Suidas* tells great matters; as, that his Empire extended to the Ocean Sea; that he gave name to the Isle of *Thule*, which some take to be *Iceland*; and that he consulted with the Devil, or (which is all one) with *Seraphis*, desiring to know, who before him had been, or after him should be so mighty as himself. The answer or confession of the Devil was remarkable; which I find Englished in the translation of *Pleſius* his work *Of the trueſſe of Christian Religion*. The Greek Verses are somewhat otherwise, and much more imperfect in those Copies that I have of *Cedrenus* and *Suidas*, but the sense is all one; which is this:

First God, and next The Word, and then The Spirit,  
Which Three be One, and join in One all Three:  
Whose force is endlesse. Get thee hence frail wight,  
The man of Life unknown excelleth thee.

I should have thought that *Suidas* had borrowed all this of *Cedrenus*, had I not found somewhat more in *Suidas* than *Cedrenus* hath hereof; as the form of invocation which *Thulis* used, and that clause of his giving name to the Island: though in this last point I hold *Suidas* to be deceived; as also *Cedrenus* is, or (at least) seems to me, in giving to this King such profound antiquity of reign. Indeed the very name of that book, cited often by *Cedrenus*, which he calls *Little Genesis*, is alone enough to breed suspicion of some imposture: but the Friery stuffe that he allegeth out of it, is such as would serve to discredit himself, were it not otherwise apparent that he was a man both devout, and of good judgement in matters that fell within his compass. I will here set down the list of old Egyptian Kings delivered by him, and leave the censure to others.

The first King of Egypt that he sets down, is *Mizraim* the son of *Cham*. After him he finds many of a new race, deriving their pedigree thus: *Nimrod* the son of *Chus* was also called *Orion*, and further took upon him the name of the Planet *Saturn*, had to wife *Semiramis*, who was of his own Linage, and by her three sons: *Picus*, surnamed *Jupiter*, *Belus*, and *Ninus*. *Picus* chasing his father out of *Assyria* into *Italie*, reigned in his stead thirtie years, and then gave up that Kingdom to *Jumbo* his sister and wife, and to *Belus* his son: after which *Belus*, who reigned onely two years, *Ninus* had the Kingdom; and married his own Mother *Semiramis*. But *Picus* went into *Italie* to visit his old Father *Saturn*; *Saturn* forth-with resigned the Kingdom unto him. *Picus* *Jupiter* reigned in *Italie* three score and two years, had three score and ten Wives or Concubines, and about as many children: finally dyed, and lyes buried in the Isle of *Crete*.

¶¶¶

The

The Principall of *Jupiters* sons were *Fannus*, *Perseus*, and *Apollo*. *Fannus* was called by the name of the Planet *Mercurie*: hee reigned in *Italia*, after his Father, five and thirty years, and then (finding that all his brethren conspired against him) he went into *Egypt*, with abundance of Treasure, where, after the death of *Misram*, hee got the Kingdome, and held it nine and thirty years. After *Mercurie*, *Vulcan* reigned in *Egypt*, four years and a half. Then *Sol*, the son of *Vulcan*, reigned twenty years and a half. There followed in order *Sesfi*, *Osiri*, *Orus*, and *Thules*, of whom we spake before: the length of their severall reigns is not set down. After *Thules*, was the great *Sespha* King twenty years. His successor was *Pharaoh*, called *Narecho*, that held the Crown fifty years, with which there passed from him the surname of *Pharaoh*, to a very long posteritie.

These reports of *Cedrenus* I hold it enough to set down as I find them: let their credit rest upon the Author.

Others yet we find, that are said to have reigned in *Egypt*, without any certain note, when, or how long: about whom I will not labour, as fearing more to be reprehended of vain curiositie, in the search made after these already rehearsed, than of negligence, in omitting such as might have been added.

*Vaphres*, the father in law to *Salomon*, and *Sesac*, the afflicter of *Rehoboam*, lead us again into fair way, but not far. The name of *Vaphres* is not found in the Scriptures; but we are beholding to *Clemens Alexandrinus* and *Eusebius* for it. These give us not the length of his reign; but we know that he lived in the times of *David* and of *Salomon*. He came into *Palestina* with an Armie, took *Gozar* from the *Canaanites*, and gave it to his daughter, *Salomons* wife: though for her sake perhaps it was, that in time following either he, or (as I rather take it) *Sesac* his son did favour the enemies of *Salomon*, who kept to many Wives and Concubines, besides this *Egyptian* Princesse. In the life of *Rehoboam* all hath been written that I find of *Sesac*, excepting the length of his reign, which must have been fix and twenty years, if he were that *Smendis* with whom *Eusebius* begins the one and twentieth *Dynastie*.

Now forasmuch as it would serve to no great purpose, that we knew the length of *Sesac* his reign, and of theirs that followed him, unless therewithall we knew the beginning of *Sesac*, upon which the rest have dependance; this course I take. From the fourth year of *Jebojakim* king of *Juda*, in which *Phurao Neco* was slain, I reckon upwards the years of the same *Neco*, and of his Predecessors, unto the beginning of *Sesac*: by which account, the first year of *Sesac* is found concurrent with the twentieth of *Salomons* reign, and the twenty sixt of *Sesac* with the fift of *Rehoboam*, wherein *Sesac* spoyled the Temple, and dyed, enjoying the fruits of his Sacrilege no longer than *Joshua* the *Israelite*, and *Crispus* the *Roman* did; who after him spoyled the Temple of *Jerusalem*.

To fill up the time between *Sesac* and *Neco*, I have rather taken those kings that I find in the *Greek* Historians, than them which are in *Eusebius* his Catalogue. For of those that are delivered by *Eusebius*, we find no Name nor Act recorded elsewhere, save only of *Bocchoris*, who is remembered by *Diodore*, *Plutarch*, and others, much being spoken of him, that makes him appear to have been a King. Hereunto I may adde, that the succession is often interrupted in *Eusebius* by *Ethiopian*s, which got the kingdome often, and held it long: whereas contrariwise it appears by the Prophet *Ezay*, that the Counsellors of *Pharaoh* did vaunt of the long and flourishing continuance of that house, inasmuch that they said of *Pharaoh*; *I am the son of the wife, I am the son of the ancient King*. But that which overthrows the reckoning of *Eusebius*, is the good agreement of it with his mistaken times of the Kings of *Juda*. For though it please him well to see how the reigns of *Joshua* and *Neco* meet by his computation, yet this indeed mars all, the reign of *Joshua* being misplaced. This error grows from his omitting to compare the reigns of the Kings of *Juda* with theirs of *Israel*: by which occasion *Foram* King of *Israel*, is made to reign three years after *Abazias* of *Juda*; *Samarita* is taken by *Salmanassar* before *Hezechia* was King: and in a word, all, or most of the Kings have their beginnings placed in some other year of their collaterals than the Scriptures have determined.

s. VI. of

s. VI.

of *Chemmis*, *Cheops*, *Cephrenes*, and other Kings visited by *Herodotus* and *Diodorus Siculus*, which reigned between the times of *Rehoboam* and *Ezechia*.

Following therefore the *Greek* Historians, I place *Chemmis*, or (according to *Diodore*) *Chembi*, first in the ranke of those that were Kings after *Sesac*. Hee reigned fiftie yeares, and built the greatest of the three Pyramides, which was accounted one of this worlds Wonders. The Pyramid hath his name from the shape, in that it resembleth a flame of fire, growing from the bottome upwards narrower and narrower to the top. This of *Chemmis* being foure-square, had a Base of seven acres every way, and was about six acres high. It was of a very hard and durable stone, which had lasted, when *Diodore* saw it, about a thousand yeares, without complaining of any injurie that it had suffered by weather in so long space. From the reign of *Chemmis*, unto the age of *Augustus Caesar*, wherein *Diodore* lived, are indeed a thousand yeares, which doth give the better likelihood unto this time wherein *Chemmis* is placed. As for this and other Pyramides, late Writers doe testifie, that they have seen them yet standing.

After *Chemmis*, *Diodore* placeth *Cephrenes* his brother, but doubtfully, and enclining rather to the opinion, that his son *Chabrens* succeeded, *Herodotus* hath *Cheops* (who might be *Chabrens*) and *Cephrenes* after him. These are said to have been brethren; but the length of their reignes may argue the latter to have been sonne to the former: for *Cheops* reigned fiftie yeares; *Cephrenes* fiftie fixe. These were, as *Chemmis* had been, builders of Pyramides, whereby they purchased great hatred of their people, who already had over-laboured themselves in erecting the first. These Pyramides were ordained to be Tombs for those that raised them; but the malice of the *Egyptians* is said to have cast out their bodies, & to have called their Monuments by the name of an Heardsman that kept his Beasts thereabouts. It may be, that the robbing them of their honour, and entailing a poore fellow to their works, was held to be the casting out of their bodies; otherwise it is hard to conceive how it might be, that they, who had not power to avoyd the like slavery laid upon them by the younger brother or sonne, should have power or leisure to take such revenge upon his Predecessor. To the like malice may be ascribed the tale devised against *Cheops* his Daughter; That her Father wanting money, did prostitute her, & that the getting of every man that accompanied her, one stone, did build with them a fourth Pyramid, that stood in the midst of the other three. Belike he was an insolent Lady, and made them follow their druggery for her sake, longer a while than they thought to have done, in raising a Monument with the superfluity of her Father provisions.

*Mycerinus* the son of *Cephrenes* reigned after his Father six yeares. He would have built as his fore-goers did, but prevented by death, finished not what he had begun. The people thought him a good King, for that he did set open the Temples, which *Cheops* and *Cephrenes* had kept shut. But an Oracle threatened him with a short life of six yeares only, because of this his devotion; For (said the Oracle) *Egypt should have been afflicted an hundred and fiftie yeares, which thy Predecessors knew, and performed for their parts, but thou hast released it, therefore shalt thou live but six yeares*. It is very strange, that the gods should be offended with a King for his piety; or that they should decree to make a Countrey impious, when the people were desirous to serve them; or that they having so decreed, it should lye in the power of a King to alter destinie, and make the ordinance of the gods to fall in taking full effect. But these were *Egyptian* gods. The true God was doubtlesse more offended with the institution of such Idolatry, than with the interruption. And who knowes whether *Chemmis* did not learn somewhat at *Jerusalem* in the last year of his Father *Sesac*, that made him perceive, and deliver to those that followed him, the vanity of his *Egyptian* superstition? Most sure it is, that his reign, and the reignes of *Cheops* and *Cephrenes* were more long and more happy than that of *Mycerinus*, who, to delude the Oracle, revelled away both dayes and nights, as if by keeping candles lighted, he had changed his nights into dayes, and so doubled the time appointed: a service more pleasing to the Devil, than the restitution of Idolatry durst then seem, when it could speed no better. I find in *Reineccius* fiftie

Ecc 2

yeares

years assigned to this King; which I verily beleeve to have bin some errour of the print, though I find it not corrected among other such oversights: For I know no Author that gives him so many years, and *Reimeccius* himself takes notice of the Oracle, that threatened *Mycerinus* with a short life, as is before shewed.

*Bocchorus* is placed next unto *Mycerinus*, by *Diodore*, who speaks no more of him than this, that he was a strong man of body, & excelling his predecessors in wit. He is spoken of by divers Authors, as one that loved justice; and may be taken for that *Banchymis* whom *Strabo* commends in that kind: *Eusebius* reckons 44. years of his reign.

After *Bocchorus*, one *Sabacus* an *Ethiopian* follows in the Catalogue of *Diodore*; but certain ages after him. *Herodotus* quit omitting *Bocchorus*, hath *Alychis*; who made a sharp law (as it was then held) against bad debtors, that their dead bodies should be in the creditors disposition, till the debt were paid. This *Alychis* made a Pyramid of brick, more costly and faire, in his own judgement, than any of those that the former Kings had raised. Besides this *Alychis*, *Herodotus* placeth one *Anysis*, a blind man, before the *Ethiopian*. The reignes of these two are perhaps those many ages which the *Egyptians*, to magnifie their antiquities, accounted between *Bocchorus* and him that followed them. But all this could make but six yeares; and so long doth *Function*, so long doth *Reimeccius* hold, that these two Kings between them both did govern. If any man would lengthen this time, holding it improbable that the reignes of two Kings should have bin so soon spent; he may doe it by taking some yeares from *Sethon* or *Psammiticus*, and adding them to either of these. To adde unto these without subtracting from some other, would breed a manifest inconvenience: forasmuch as part of *Sesac* his reign, must have been in the fifth of *Rehobam*, as also the last of *Pharao Neco* was the fourth of *Jehoiakim*, and the first of *Nebuchadnezzar*. For mine own part, I like it better to allow six yeares only to these two Kings, than to lose the witness of *Herodotus*, who, concurring herein with the Scriptures, doth speak of *Sennacherib* his war, at which time *Sethon* was King of *Egypt*. I will not therefore adde yeares unto these obscure names; for by adding unto these men three yeares, we shall thrust the beginning of *Sethon* out of place, and make it later than the death of *Sennacherib*. In regard of this agreement of *Herodotus* with the Scriptures, I am the more willing to hold with him in his *Egyptian* Kings. Otherwise it were a matter of no great envie to leave both *Alychis* and *Anysis* out of the roll; which were easily done, by placing *Sesac* lower, and extending his life yet six yeares further, or more (if the like abridgement shall be required of *Psammiticus* his reign) into the yeares of *Rehobam*.

Of *Sabacus* the *Ethiopian*, who took the Kingdome from *Anysis*, it is agreed by the most, that he reigned fiftie yeares. He was a mercifull Prince, not punishing all capitall offences with death, but imposing bondage and bodily labour upon malefactors; by whose toile he both got much wealth into his own hands, letting out their service to hire, and performed many works of more use than pomp, to the singular benefit of the Country. *Zonaras* calls this King *Sua*; the Scriptures call him *So*. *Hosea*, the last King of *Israel*, made a league with him against *Salmanassar*, little to his good: for the *Egyptian* was more rich than warlike, and therefore his friendship could not preserve the *Israelite* from destruction.

It seems, that the encroaching power of the *Assyrian* grew terrible to *Egypt* about these times; the victories of *Tiglath Phulassar* and *Salmanassar* having eaten to farre into *Syria*, in the reign of this one King *So* or *Sabacus*. Yea, perhaps it was in his daies (for his reign began in the fourth of *Menahem*) that *Phul* himself did make the first entrance into *Palestina*. This caused *So* to animate the half-subdued people against their Conquerors; but the help which he and his Successor gave them was so faint, that *Sennacherib* his Embassador compared the *Egyptian* succour to a broken staff of Reed. So indeed had *Hosea* found it, and such *Ezechias* might have found it, had he not been supported by the strong staff of him that ruleth all Nations with a rod of yron. It appeareth by the words of *Rabshake*, that the opinion was great in *Juda*, of the *Egyptian* forces, for Chariots and Horse-men; but this power, whatsoever it was, grew needfull, within a little while, for the defence of *Egypt* it selfe, which *So* left unto *Sethon* his Successor, having now fulfilled the fiftie yeares of his reign. *Herodotus* and *Diodorus* have both one tale, from the relation of *Egyptian* Priests, concerning the departure of this King; saying, that he left the Country, and willingly retired into *Ethiopia*, because

because it was often signified unto him in his dreams, by the god which was worshipped at *Thebes*, that his reign should be neither long nor prosperous, unless he flew all the Priests in *Egypt*; which rather than to do, he resigned his Kingdome. Surely, these *Egyptian* gods were of a strange quality, that so ill rewarded their servants, and invited Kings to doe them wrong. Well might the *Egyptians* (as they likewise did) worship Dogs as gods, when their chief gods had the property of Dogs, which love their Masters the better for beating them. Yet to what end the Priests should have feigned this tale, I cannot tell; and therefore I think that it might be some device of the fearful old man, who seeing his Realm in danger of an invasion, sought an honest excuse for his departure out of it, and with-drawing himself into *Ethiopia*, where he had bin bred in his youth. What if I should say, that the *Ethiopia* into which he went, was none other than *Arabia*, whereof *Tirbaka* the King (perhaps at the instigation of this man) raised an Armie against *Sennacherib*, when he meant to invade *Egypt* within two or three yeares after: but I will not trouble my self with such enquire. This I hold, that *So*, or *Sabacus* was not indeed an *Ethiopian* (for in his time lived the Prophet *Esay*, who mentioneth the antiquity of *Pharaohs* house) but only so surnamed for his education, and because issuing from thence, he got the kingdome from *Anysis*, who was his opposite. The quiet and mild form of his government, his holding the kingdome so long without an Army, and many other circumstances argue no lesse. But whether finally he betook a private life, or whether he fore-went his life and kingdome at once being now very old, it is time that we leave him, and speak of *Sethon* his next Successor, who is omitted by *Diodore*, but remembered by *Herodotus*, by a sure token of his having been King.

## s. VII.

of *Sethon* who reigned with *Ezechias*, and sided with him against *Sennacherib*.

The first year of *Sethon* his reign falls into the twelfth of *Ezechias*, which was the fift of *Sennacherib*. It was a troublesome age, and full of danger, the two great Kingdoms of *Assyria* and *Egypt*, being then engaged in a War, the issue whereof was to determine, whether of them should rule or serve. The *Assyrians* had the better men of War, the *Egyptians* better provision of necessaries: the *Assyrians* more Subjects; the *Egyptians* more Friends; and among the new conquered half Subjects of *Assyria*, many that were *Egyptian* in heart, though *Assyrian* in outward shew.

Of this last sort were *Ezechias* and his people, who knowing how much it concerned *Pharao*, to protect them against his own great Enemy, preferred the friendship of so near and mighty a Neighbour, before the service of a terrible, yet far removed King. But herein was great difference between *Ezechias* and his Subjects: For the good King buying his speciall confidence in God, held that course of policy, which he thought most likely to turn to the benefit of his Country; the multitude of *Juda* looking into the fair hopes which this *Egyptian* league promised, were puffed up with vain conceits, thinking that all was safe, and that now they should not need to fear any more of those injuries which they had suffered by the *Assyrians*, and so became forgetfull of God, saying themselves, but not of him. The Prophet *Esay* complained much of this presumption, giving the people of *Juda* to understand, That the *Egyptians* were men, and not God, and their horses flesh, and not spirit; that God himself should defend *Israel* upon repentance, and that *Assyria* should fall by the sword, but not of men. As soon the *Egyptians* said the Prophet, they are vanishing, and they shall help in vain, their strength is to sit still.

According to the Prophets words it came to passe. For in the treaty of Confederacy so that was holden at *Zion*, all manner of contentment and assurance was given to the Jews by *Sethon*, or his Agents, who filled them with such reports of Horles and Chariots, that they did not look (as *Esay* saith) unto the holy One of *Israel*, nor seek unto the Lord: but the

After a while came *Sennacherib* with his Army, & wakened them out of these dreams; for *Sethon* their good Neighbour, as near as he was, did seem far off, being unready, when his help was most needfull. It may seem that he purposed rather to make *Palestina*, than *Egypt*, the stage whereon this great War should be acted, and was not without hope, that the *Assyrians* and *Jews*, weakening one another, should yeeld unto him a



Esay 30.6.

Esay 31.9.

But advantage over both. Yet he fought with money; for he sent Horses and Camels laden with treasure, to hire the *Arabians*, whom *Esay* calleth a people that cannot profit. These *Arabians* did not profit indeed; for (besides that it seems by the same place of *Esay*, that the rich treasures miscarried, and fell into the enemies hands before any help appeared from *Tirhaca*;) all the strong Cities of *Juda* were taken by *Senacherib*, except *Libna*, *Lachis*, and *Jerusalem* it self, which were in fore distresse, till the sword of God and not of Man, defeated the *Assyrian*, who did go, for fear, to his Tower; that is, he fled to *Nineve*, where he was slain.

Concerning this expedition of *Senacherib*, *Herodotus* takes this notice of it: That it was purposed against *Egypt*, where the men of War, being offended with *Seton* their King, who had taken away their allowance, refused to bear arms in defence of him and to their Countie; that *Seton* being *Vulcan's* Priest bemoaned himself to his god, who by dreams promised to send him helpers; that hereupon *Seton*, with such as would follow him, (which were craft-men, shop-keepers, and the like) marched towards *Pelafium* and that a great multitude of field-mice entering the Camp of *Senacherib* by night, did so gnaw the bows, quivers, and straps of his mens armour, that they were faine the next day to lie away in all haste, finding themselves disarmed. In memory hereof (saith *Herodotus*) the statue of this King is set up in the Temple of *Vulcan*, holding a Mouse in his hand, with this inscription, Let him that holds me serve God. Such was the relation of the *Egyptian* Priests, wherein how far they swayed from the truth, being desirous to magnifie their own King, it may easily be perceived. It seems that this Image of *Seton* was fallen down, and the tale forgotten in *Diodorus* his time; or else perhaps, the Priests did forbear to tell it him (which caused him to omit it) for that the nation of the *Jews* was then well known to the world; whereof every child could have told how much falsehood had been mingled with the truth.

We find this history agreeable to the Scriptures, thus far forth: That *Senacherib* King of the *Assyrians* and *Arabians*, (so *Herodotus* calleth him: the *Syrians*, or peradventure some borderers upon *Syria*, being meant by the name of *Arabians* lived in this age) made War upon *Egypt*, and was miraculously driven home. As for that exploit of the Mice; and the great pleasure that *Vulcan* did unto his Priest, happy it was (if *Seton* were a Priest) that he took his god now in so good a mood: For within three or four years before this, all the Priests in *Egypt* should have been slain, if a mercifull King had not spared their lives; as it were half against the gods will. Therefore this last good turnp was not enough to serve as an example, that might stir up the *Egyptians* to piety, seeing that their devotion, which had lasted so long before, did bring all the Priests into danger of such a bad reward. Rather I think, that this Image did represent *Senacherib* himself, and that the Mouse in his hand, signified Hieroglyphically (as was the *Egyptian* manner of expressing things) the shamefull issue of his terrible expedition, or the destruction of his Armie, by means which came; no man knew from whence. For the vengeance of God, shewed upon this ungodly King, was indeed a very good motive to piety. But the Embleme, together with the Temple of *Vulcan* (being perhaps the chief Temple in that Town where this Image was erected) might give occasion to such a fable, the Devil helping to change the truth into a lie, that God might be robbed of his honour. Yet that we may not belie the Devil, I hold it very likely, that *Seton* finding himself in danger, did call upon his gods, that is, upon *Vulcan*, *Serapis*, or any to whom he had most devotion: But to had other of his predecessors done in the like need; yet which of them had obtained succour by the like miracle? Surely the *Jews* (even such of them as most were given to Idolatry) would have bin ashamed of the confidence which they reposed in the *Chariots* of *Egypt*, because they were manly in the *Hors-men*; because they were very strong; had it bin told them, that *Seton*, in stead of sending those *Hors-men* and *Chariots*, was beseeching *Vulcan* to send him and them good luck, or else (for the same were *Egyptian* gods) addressing his prayers to some Onyon or Cat. Howsoever it was, doubtlesse the Prophecie of *Esay* took effect; which said, They shall be all ashamed of the people that cannot profit them, nor help: nor do they good; but shall be a shame and also a reproach. Such is commonly the issue of humane wickedness, when resting secure upon provisions that it self hath made, it will no longer seem to stand in need of Gods assistance.

House there are who take *Seton* to have bin (set down by *Eusebius* under the name of *Tarachus*

*Tarachus* the *Aethiopian*; and therefore the twenty years which are given to *Tarachus*, they allow to the reign of *Seton*. These have well observed that *Tarachus* the *Aethiopian* is mentioned in the Scriptures, not as a King of *Egypt*, but as a friend to that Country, or at least an enemy to *Sennacherib*, in the War last spoken of; the *Aethiopians* (as they are englished) over which he reigned, being indeed *Chusites* or *Arabians*. Hereupon they suppose aright, that *Eusebius* hath mistaken one King for another. But whereas they think that this *Tarachus* or *Tirhaca* is placed in the room of *Seton*, and therefore give to *Seton* the twenty years of *Tarachus*, I hold them to have erred on the other hand. For this *Aethiopian* (as he is called) began his reign over *Egypt*, by *Eusebius* his account, after the death of *Sennacherib* and of *Ezechia*, in the first year of *Manasses* King of *Juda*. Therefore he or his years have no reference to *Seton*.

*Herodotus* forgets to tell how long *Seton* reigned; *Functius* peremptorily citing no author, nor alleging reason for it, sets him down thirty three years; many omit him quite; and they that name him, are not carefull to examine his continuance. In this case, I follow that rule which I propounded unto my self at the first, for measuring the reigns of these *Egyptian* Kings. The years which passed from the fifth of *Rehoboam*, unto the fourth of *Jehojakim*, I do divide among the *Egyptians*, that giving to every one the proportion allowed unto him by the Author in whom he is found, the rest is to be conferred upon him whose length of reign is uncertain; that is, upon this *Seton*. By this account I find the thirty three years that are set down by *Functius*, to agree very nearly, if not precisely, with the time of *Seton's* reign; therefore I conform my own reckoning to his, though I could be content to have it one year less. The reason of this computation I shall render more at large, when I arrive at the time of *Psammiticus*, whereupon it hath much dependance, and whereinto the course of this History will shortly bring me, the *Egyptian* affairs growing now to be interlarded with the matters of *Juda*, to which it is meet that I return.

## CHAP. XXVII.

## Of Manasses and his Contemporaries.

## S. I.

The wickednesse of Manasses. His imprisonment, repentance, and death.



*Anasse* the Son of *Ezechias*, forgetting the piety of his Father, and the prosperity which followed him, set up, repaired, adorned and furnished all the Altars, Temples and high Places, in which the Devil was by the Heathen worshipped. Besides, he himself esteemed the Sun, the Moon, and the Stars, with all the Host of heaven, as gods, and worshipped them: and of all his acts the most abominable was, that he burnt his sons for a Sacrifice to the Devil *Moloch* or *Melchor*, in the Valley of *Hinnon*, or *Benhinnon*: wherein was kindled the fire of Sacrifice to the Devils.

He also gave himself to all kind of Witchcraft and Sorcery, accompanied and maintained those that had familiar Spirits, and all sorts of Enchanters: besides, he shed so much innocent blood, as *Jerusalem* was replenished therewith, from corner to corner. In all his vices and abominations, when he was reprehended by that aged and reverent Prophet *Esay* (who was also of the Kings race; and as the *Jews* affirm, the Father-in-law of the King) he caused the Prophet near unto the Fountain of *Siloa*, to be sawn in sunder, with a wooden Saw, in the eightieth year of his life: a cruelty more barbarous and monstrous than hath been heard of. The Scriptures indeed are silent hereof, yet the same is confirmed by *Epiphanius*, *Isidore*, *Eusebius*, and others, too many to rehearse, and too good to be suspected. Therefore the Lord brought upon them the Captains of the Host of the Kings of *Assur*, which took *Manasse*, and put him in fetters, and bound him in chains, and carried him to *Babel*: Where, after he had lyen twenty years as a captive, and disappointed of all honour and hope; yet to his hearty repentance and continual prayer, the

1. sup. Martyr.  
Cedrenus c. 97.  
Gyldenst. p. 275.  
Tertull. de Pat.

Chr. 33. 11.

God



God of infinite mercy had respect, and moved the *Assyrians* heart to deliver him.

It is also likely that *Merodach*, because he loved his father *Ezechias*, was the easier perswaded to restore *Manasse* to his liberty and estate. After which, and when he was again established, remembering the miseries which followed his wickedness, and Gods great mercies toward him, he changed form, detested his former foolish and devilish Idolatry, and cast down the Idols of his own erecting, prepared the Altar of God, and sacrificed thereon. He repaired a great part of *Jerusalem*: and dyed after the long reign of fiftie five years. *Glycas* and *Suidas* report, that *Manasse* was held in a cage of yron by the *Assyrians*: and therein fed with bread of bran and water, which men may believe as it shall please their fancies.

§. II.

of troubles in Egypt following the death of Sethon. The reign of Psammiticus.

That the wickedness of King *Manasses* was the cause of the evill which fell upon his Kingdome and Person, any Christian must needs beleve: for it is affirmed in the Scriptures. Yet was the state of things in those parts of the World such, at that time, as would have invited any Prince (and did perhaps invite *Merodach*, who fulfilled Gods pleasure: upon respect born to his own ends, desirous to enlarge his Empire) to make attempt upon *Juda*. For the kingdom of *Egypt*, which was become the pillar whereon the state of *Juda* leaned, about these times was miserably distracted with civill dissention, and after two years ill amended by a division of the government between twelve Princes. After some good agreement between these; eleven of them fell out with the twelfth of their colleagues, and were all finally subdued by him, who made himself absolute King of all. This *Inter-regnum*, or meer *Anarchie* that was in *Egypt*, with the division of the Kingdome following it, is placed by *Diodore*, who omitteth *Sethon*, between the reign of *Sabacus* and *Psammiticus*: but *Herodotus* doth setle *Aristocratie*, or twelve Governours immediately before *Psammiticus*, who was one of them, and after *Sethon*.

The occasion of this dissention seems to have bin the uncertainty of title to that Kingdome (for that the crown of *Egypt* passed by succession of blood, I have often shewed) which ended for a while, by the partition of all among twelve, though things werenot settled untill one had obtained the Sovereignty.

These twelve Rulers governed fifteen years in good seeming agreement, which to preserve, they made strait covenant & alliances one with another, being jealous of their estate, because an Oracle had foretold, that one of them should depose all the rest, minding him by this token, that he should make a drink-offering in *Vulcans* Temple, out of a Copper goblet. Whilist this unity lasted, they joyned together in raising a Monument of their Dominion, which was a Labyrinth, built near unto the Lake of *Meris*; a work so admirable, that (as *Herodotus*, who beholding it, affirms) no words could give it commendation answerable to the stateliness of the work it self; I will not here set down that unperfect description which *Herodotus* makes of it, but think enough to say, that he prefers it far before the *Pyramids*, one of which (as he saith) excelled the Temple of *Diana* at *Ephesus*, or any of the fairest works in *Greece*. *Diodorus* reports this Labyrinth to have bin the work of *Marus* or *Menides*, a King which lived five generations before *Protus*; that is, before the War of *Troy*, and from this Labyrinth (saith he) *Dadalus* took the pattern of that which he made for *Minos* in *Crete*. Who this *Marus*, or *Menides* was, I cannot tell. *Reineccius* takes him to have bin *Amnemes*, which reigned immediately before *Thooris*. But this agrees not with *Diodore*: for *Dadalus* & *Minos* were both dead long before *Amnemes* was King. Belike *Reineccius*, desiring to accommodate to the fabulous relations of *Manethon*, *Charman*, & others, that are found in *Josephus*, touching *Amenophis* & his children, to the story of *Amasis* & *Atsifanes* the *Ethiopian* mentioned by *Diodore*; held it consequent, that he had conjectured *Manethons* *Amenophis* to be *Diodorus* his *Amasis*, that *Sethon* should be *Atsifanes*, and that *Amnemes* should be *Marus*. If in this case I might intrude a conjecture, the times which we now handle are those about which *Reineccius* hath cried in making search; *Amasis* was *Amasis*, *Atsifanes* was *Sabacus*, & *Marus* was one of these twelve Princes to whom *Herodotus* gives the

the honour of building this famous Labyrinth. For *Atsifanes* the *Ethiopian* deposed *Amasis*, *Sabacus* the *Ethiopian* deposed *Amasis*; *Atsifanes* governed well, and was mild in punishing offenders; so likewise was *Sabacus*; *Marus* the next King after *Atsifanes* built this Labyrinth; and the next (saying *Sethon*, whom *Diodore* omits, as having not heard of him) that ruled after *Sabacus*, performed the same work, according to *Herodotus*, who was more likely to hear the truth, as living nearer to the Age wherein it was performed. The variety of names, and difference of times wherein *Diodore* beleved the Priests, might be a part of the *Egyptian* vanity, which was familiar with them in multiplying their Kings, and boasting of their antiquities. Here I might adde, that the twelve great Halls, Parlours, and other circumstances remembered by *Herodotus*, in speaking of this building, do help to prove that it was the work of these twelve Princes. But I hasten to their end.

At a solemn feast in *Vulcans* Temple, when they were to make their drink-offerings, the Priest, forgetting himself, brought forth no more than eleven Cuppes. Hereupon, *Psammiticus*, who standing last, had not a Cup, took off his brazen Helmet, and therewith supplied the want. This caused all the rest to remember the Oracle, and to suspect him as a Traytor; yet, when they found that it was not done by him upon set purpose or ill intent, they forbore to kill him, but being jealous of their estate, they banished him into the marsh Countries by the Sea side. This Oracle, and the event is held by *Diodore* as so a fable, which I beleve to have bin none other: In the rest *Herodotus* and *Diodore* agree, saying, that *Psammiticus* hired Souldiers out of *Caria* and *Ionis*, by whose aid he vanquished his Companions, and made himself sole King.

The years of his reign, according to *Herodotus*, were fiftie four; according to *Eusebius*, forty four; *Mercator*, to reconcile these two, gives forty four years to his single reign, and ten to his ruling jointly with the Princes before spoken of. Indeed, he was admitted; being a man grown (for he cannot in reason be supposed to have been then a young fellow) into the number of the twelve Governours, must be thought to have lived unto extreme age, if he ruled partly with others, partly alone, threescore and nine years. I therefore yeeld rather to *Eusebius*; but will not adventure to cut five years from the *Aristocratie*: though peradventure *Psammiticus* was not at first one of the twelve, but succeeded (either by election, or as next of blood) into the place of some Prince that dyed, and was ten years companion in that government.

Another scruple there is, though not great, which troubles this reckoning. The years of the *Egyptians*, as we find them set down, are more by one, than serve to fill up the time between the first of *Rhoboom* & the fourth of *Jehojakim*. This may not be. Wherefore either we must abate one year from *Sethons* reign, that was of uncertain length, or else (which I had rather doe, because *Funtinus* may have followed better authority than I know, or than himself allegeth, in giving to *Sethon* a time so nearly agreeing with the truth) we must confound the last year of one reign with the first of another. Such a supposition were not insolent. For no man can suppose, that all the Kings, or any great part of them, which are set down in Chronological tables, reigned precisely so many years as are ascribed unto them, without any fractions: it is enough to think that the surplusage of one mans time supplied the defect of others. Wherefore I confound the last year of those fifteen, wherein the twelve Princes ruled, with the first of *Psammiticus*; who surely did not fall out with his Companions, fight with them, and make himself Lord alone all in one day.

Concerning this King, it is recorded, that he was the first in *Egypt* who entertained any strait amity with the *Greekes*; that he retained in pay his Mercenaries of *Caria*, *Ionis*, and *Arabia*, to whom he gave large rewards and possessions; and that he greatly offended his *Egyptian* Souldiers, by bestowing them in the left wing of his Armie, whilst his Mercenaries held the right wing (which was the more honourable place) in an expedition that he made into *Syria*. Upon this disgrace it is said, that his Souldiers, to the number of two hundred thousand, forsook their naturall Countrey of *Egypt*, and went into *Ethiopia*, to dwell there: neither could they be revoked by kind Messages, nor by the King himself; who over-took them on the way; but when he told them of their Countrey, their Wives and Children, they answered, that their weapons should get them a Countrey, and that nature had enabled them to get other Wives and Children.

It is also reported of him, That he caused two Infants to be brought up in such sort, as they might not hear any word spoken; by which means, he hoped to find out what Nation or Language was most ancient; forasmuch as it seemed likely, that nature would teach the children to speak that Language which men spake at the first. The issue hereof was, that the children cried, *Beccus, Beccus*, which word being found to signifie Bread in the Phrygian tongue, served greatly to magnifie the Phrygian antiquity. *Goropius Becanus* makes no small matter of this, for the honour of his *Low-Dutch*; in which the word *Becker* signifies (as Baker in English) a maker of bread. He that will turne over any part of *Goropius* his works, may find enough of this kind, to perswade a willing man, that *A-dam* and all the Patriarchs used none other tongue than the *Low-Dutch*, before the confusion of Languages at *Babel*; the name it self of *Babel* being also *Dutch*; and given by occasion of this confusion; for that there they began to babble and talke one knew not what.

But I will not insist upon all that is written of *Psammis*. The most regardable of his acts was the siege of *Azotus* in *Palestina*, about which he spent nine & twenty years. Never have we heard (saith *Herodotus*) that any City endured so long a siege as this; yet *Psammis* carried it at the last. This Town of *Azotus* had been won by *Tartan* a Captain of *Sennacherib*, and was now, as it seemeth, relieved, but in vaine, by the *Babylonian*, which made it hold out so well.

## s. III.

What reference these Egyptian matters might have to the imprisonment and enlargement of Manasses. In what part of his reign Manasses was taken prisoner.

WERE it certainly known, in what year of his reign *Manasses* was taken prisoner, and how long it was before he obtained liberty, I think we should find these Egyptian troubles to have been no small occasion both of his captivity and enlargement: God so disposing of humane actions, that even they, who intended onely their own business, fulfilled onely his high pleasure. For either the civill Warres in *Egypt* that followed upon the death of *Setbon*, or the renting of the Kingdom, as it were, into twelve pieces, or the Warre betweene *Psammis* and his Collegues, or the expedition of *Psammis* into *Syria*, and the siege of *Azotus*, might minister unto the *Babylonian*, either such cause of hope to enlarge his Dominion in the South parts, or such necessity of sending an Armie into those parts, to defend his own, as would greatly tempt him to make sure worke with the King of *Juda*. The same occasion sufficed also, to procure the deliverie of *Manasses*, after he was taken. For he was taken (as *Josephus* hath it) by subtilty, not by open force, neither did they that apprehended him, winne his Country, but onely waste it. So that the *Jewes*, having learned wit by the ill success of their folly, in redeeming *Amaxias*, were like to be more circumspect, in making their bargain upon such another accident: and the *Babylonian* (to whom the Egyptian matters presented more weighty arguments of hope and feare, than the little Kingdom of *Juda* could afford) had no reason to spend his forces in pursuing a small conquest, but as full of difficulty as a greater, whereby he should compell his mightiest enemies to come to some good agreement; when by quitting his present advantage over the *Jewes*, he might make his way the easier into *Egypt*.

Now concerning the year of *Manasses* his reign, wherein he was taken prisoner; or concerning his captivity it self, how long it lasted, the Scriptures are silent, and *Josephus* gives no information. Yet I find cited by *Tornielius* three opinions; the one of *Bellarmino*, who thinks that *Manasses* was taken in the fiftieth year of his reign; the other of the Author of the greater *Hebrew Chronologie*, who affirms, that it was in his twenty seventh year; the third of *Rabbi Kimki* upon *Ezekiel*, who saith, that he was forty years an Idolater, and lived fifteen years after his repentance. The first of these conjectures is upheld by *Tornielius*, who rejects the second, as more improbable, and condemns the third as most false. Yet the reasons alleged by *Tornielius* in defence of the first, and refutation of the last opinion, are such, as may rather prove him to favour the *Cardinal* as farre as he may, (for where need requires, hee doth freely dissent from him) than to have used his accustomed diligence in examining the matter,

before

before he gave his judgement. Two arguments he brings to maintain the opinion of *Bellarmino*: the one, that *Ammon* the son of *Manasses*, is said by *Josephus* to have followed the works of his fathers youth; the other, that had *Manasses* grown old in his sins, it is like that hee should have continued, as hee did, in his amendment unto the end of his life. Touching the former of these arguments, I see no reason why the sins of *Manasses* might not be distinguished from his repentance in his old age, by calling them works of his youth, which appeared when he was twelve years old; though it were granted that he continued in them (according to that of *Rabbi Kimki*) until he was but fifteen years from death. Touching the second; howsoever it be a feirfull thing, to cast off unto the last those good motions unto repentance, which we know not whether ever God will offer unto us again, yet were it a terrible hearing, That the sins which are not forsaken before the age of two and fifty years, shall be punished with small impunience. But against these two collections of *Tornielius*, I will lay two places of Scripture, whence it may be inferred, as not unlikely, That *Manasses* continued longer in his wickedness than *Bellarmino* hath intimated, if not as long as *Rabbi Kimki* hath affirmed. In the second book of *Kings*, the evil which *Manasses* did, is remembered at large, and his repentance utterly omitted; so that his amendment may seem to have taken up no great part of his life; the storie of him being thus concluded in the one and twentieth Chapter: Concerning the rest of the Acts of *Manasses*, and all that hee did, and his sin that hee sinned, are they not written in the book of the Chronicles of the Kings of *Juda*? The other place is in the four and twentieth Chapter of the same Book, where, in rehearsing the calamities with which that Nation was punished in the time of *Jeioiakim*, the great Grand-child of this *Manasses*, it is said, Surely by the commandment of the Lord came this upon *Juda*, that he might put them out of his sight, for the sins of *Manasses*, according to all that hee did, and for the innocent blood that he shed (for hee filled *Jerusalem* with innocent blood) therefore the Lord would not pardon him. Who so considers well these places, may find small cause to pronounce it most false; That the repentance and amendment of *Manasses* was no earlier than fifteen years before his death; or most probable, That when he was twenty seven years old, he repented; and becoming a new man, lived in the fear of God forty years after. I will no longer dispute about this matter, seeing that the truth cannot be discovered. It sufficeth to say, that two years of civil division in *Egypt* fourteen, or fifteen years following, wherein that Kingdom was weakened by partition of the Sovereignty: the warre of *Psammis* against his Associates: and four and twenty years of the nine and twenty, wherein the siege of *Azotus* continued, being all within the time of *Manasses*, did leave no one part of his reign (after the first fifteen years) free from the danger of being oppressed by the *Babylonian*, whose men of warre had continuall occasions of visiting his Country: All which I will adde hereto, is this, that the fiftieth of *Manasses* was the last year of *Setbon* in *Egypt*, and the one and fortieth of *Meredach* his reign, or (accounting from the death of *Asarhaddon*) the twentieth: The seven and twentieth of *Manasses* was the tenth of the twelve Princes, and the three and fortieth of *Meredach*: his fortieth, was the twenty third of *Psammis*, and the fift of *Nabulassar*, the son of *Meredach*, in *Babylon*: but which of these was the year of his imprisonment, or whether any other, I forbear to shew mine opinion, lest I should thereby seem to draw all matters over-violently to mine own computation.

This was the first great masterie that the *Babylonians* had of the kingdom of *Juda*. For though *Achaz* promised Tribute to *Salmassar*, yet *Ezechias* never payed it. True it is, that he hoped to stay *Sennacherib*s enterprise against him, by presenting him with three hundred talents of silver, and thirty of gold, besides the plate which covered the doors and pillars of the Temple.

But *Manasses* being pressed with great necessities, could refuse no tolerable conditions; that the *Babylonian* would impose upon him; among which it seems that this was one (which was indeed a point of servitude) that he might not hold peace with the *Egyptians*, whilst they were enemies to *Babylon*. This appears not onely by his fortifying with men of war all the strong Cities of *Juda* after his return (which was rather against *Psammis*, whose party he had forsaken, than against the *Babylonian*, with whom he had thenceforth no more controversie) but likewise by that opposition, which *Josias* made afterwards to *Pharao Neco*, in favour of *Nabulassar*, which had been against all

reason

reason and policie, if it had not been his dutie by covenant. Of this I will speak more in convenient place.

## s. IV.

Of the first and second Messenian Wars, which were in the reigns of Ezechia and Manasse, Kings of Juda.

Now concerning such actions as were performed abroad in the world, about these times of Manasse, the most remarkable were the Messenian Wars; which happened in this age, and being the greatest action performed in Greece, between the Trojan and Persian Wars, deserve not to be passed over with silence.

The first Messenian War began and ended in the daies of Ezechia; the second in the reign of Manasse: but to avoid the trouble of interrupting our Historie, I have thought it best to rehearse them both in this place. Other introduction is needlesse, than to say, that the posteritie of Hercules, driving the issue of Pelops and the Achaeans out of their seats, divided their lands between themselves, and erected the kingdomes of Lacedaemon, Argos, Messene, and Corinth; all which agreeing well together a while, did afterwards forget the bond of kindred, and fought one anothers ruine with bloody wars; whereof these Messenian were the greatest.

The pretended grounds of the Messenian war are scarce worth remembrance, they were so slight. Ambition was the true cause of it: wherewith the Lacedaemonians were so transported, that any thing served them as a colour to accomplish their greedy desires. Yet other matter was alleged; namely, that one Polycharus a Messenian had slain many Lacedaemonians, for which the Magistrates of Sparta desiring to have him yielded in to their hands, could not obtain it. The Messenians on the other side, excused Polycharus, for that he was grown frantick, through injuries received from Euphones a Lacedaemonian. This Euphones had bargained to give pasture to the Cattell of Polycharus, and was therefore to receive part of the increase: but not contented with the gain appointed, he sold the Cattell, and slaves that kept them, to Merchants; which done, he came with a fair tale to his friend, saying, that they were stolen. Whilst the lye was yet scarce out of his mouth, one of the slaves that had escaped from the Merchants came in with a true report of all. The Lacedaemonian being thus reprehended, confessed all, and promised large amends; which to receive he carried the son of Polycharus home with him; but having him at home, he villanously slew him. Wherefore the Lacedaemonians having refused, after long sute made by the wretched Father, to do him right against this Thefe and Murderer, ought not to pick matter of quarrell out of those things which he did in that madnesse, whereinto they themselvss had cast him. So said the Messenians, and further offered to put the matter to compromise, or to stand unto the judgement of the Amphidryones, who were as the generall Counsell of Greece, or to any other fair course. But the Lacedaemonians, who had a great desire to occupie the fair Countrie of Messene, that lay close by them, were not content with such allegations. They thought it enough to have some shew for their doings, which the better to colour, they reckoned up many old injuries, and so without sending any defiance, secretly took an oath to hold war with Messene till they had mastered it: which done, they seized upon Amphipia, a frontier Town of that Province, wherein they put all to the Sword without mercy, very few escaped.

Hereupon the Messenians took Arms, and were met by the Enemy. A furious battell was fought between them, which ended not untill dark night, with uncertain victory. The Messenians did strongly encamp themselves; The Lacedaemonians, unable to force their Camp, returned home. This War began in the second year of the ninth Olympiad, and ended in the first of the fourteenth Olympiad, having lasted twenty years. The two enemy Nations tried the matter, for a while, with their proper forces; the Lacedaemonians wasting the inland parts of Messene; and the Messenians, the Sea-coast of Laconia. But it was not long ere friends, on both sides, were called in to help. The Arcadians, Argives, and Sicyonians, took part with Messene; the Spartans had besides many Subjects of their own, aid from Corinth, and hired Souldiers out of Crete. So the second, third, and fourth battell were fought, with as great obstinacie as the first; saving that in the fourth battell the

Laceda.

Lacedaemonians were enforced to turn their backs; in the other fights, the victory was still uncertain, though in one of them the Messenians lost Euphates their King, in whose stead they chose Aristodemus.

Many years were spent ere all this blood was shed; for pestilent diseases, and want of money to entertain Souldiers, caused the war to linger. And for the same reasons, did the Messenians forsake all their inland towns, excepting Ithome, which was a Mountain with a Town upon it, able to endure more than the enemies were likely to do. But, as some Authors tell us, the Lacedaemonians were so obstinate in this War, because of their vow, that having ablated themselves ten years from Sparta, their wives sent them word, that their City would grow unpeopled, by reason that no children had been born them in all that time: Whereupon they sent back all their ablest young men, promiscuously to accompany the young women, who got so many of them with child, as they became a great part of their Nation, and were called Parthenians. Diodorus refers the begetting of these Parthenians to a former time. But in proceesse of this Messenian War, when the Devil in an Oracle had advised the Messenians to sacrifice a Virgin of the stock of \* Aegyptus, that so they might be victorious against the Lacedaemonians; the lot falling upon the Daughter of one Lyciscus, Epibolus the Priest, willing to save her, said, shee was the only fostered child, and not born of the wife of Lyciscus: which answer giving delay to the execution of the Maid, Lyciscus secretly fled away with her into Sparta. Then Aristodemus, which afterwards was King, voluntarily offered his own Daughter: but a young Nobleman, being in love with the Maid, when otherwise he could not prevail, said openly that she was no Virgin, but that he had deflowered her, and got her with child: whereupon the Father in a rage ripped up his innocent Daughters belly, to disprove the Lovers slander: at the grave of which Daughter of his, afterwards falling, by other superstitions, into despair of prevailing against the Lacedaemonians, he slew himself, to the great hurt of his Countrey, which he loved most dearly. For after his death the Messenians lost their courage, and finding themselves distressed by many wants, especially of victuals, they craved peace, which they obtained with most rigorous conditions. Half the yearly fruits of their Land they were bound to send unto Sparta; and they, with their Wives, to make solemn lamentations at the death of every Spartan King; they were also sworn to live in true subjection to the Lacedaemonians; and part of their Territorie was taken from them, which was given to the Aeginai, and such as had followed the Spartans in this Warre.

This peace being made upon so uneven termes, was not like to hold long. Yet nine and thirty years it continued (the Messenians not finding how to help themselves) and then brake out into a new and more furious Warre than the former. The able young men, that were grown up in the room of those Messenians whom the former Warre had consumed, began to consider their own strength and multitude, thinking themselves equall to the Lacedaemonians, and therefore scorned to serve such Masters as had against all right, oppressed their Fathers. The chief of these was Aristomenes, a Noble Gentleman of the house of Aegyptus; who perceiving the uniform desires of his Countrymen, adventured to become their Leader. He therefore fouding the affections of the Argives and Arcadians, which he found thoroughly answerable to his purpose, began open warre upon the State of Lacedaemon. This was in the fourth year of the three and twentieth Olympiad; when the Lacedaemonians hasted to quench the fire before it should grow too hot, with such forces as they could raise of their own, without troubling their friends, meaning to deal with their enemies, ere any succour were lent them. So a strong battell was fought between them, and a doubtfull; save that the Messenians were pleased with the issue, forasmuch as they had thereby taught their late proud Lords, to think them their equalls. Particularly, the valour of Aristomenes appeared such in this fight, that his people would have made him their King: but he, refusing the honour of that name, accepted of the burthen, and became their Generall. Within one year another battell was fought, whereunto each part came better provided: The Lacedaemonians brought with them the Corinthians, and some other friends to help: the Messenians had the Argives, Arcadians, and Sicyonians. This also was a long and bloody fight, but Aristomenes did to behave himselfe, that finally he made the Enemies run for their lives. Of such importance was this victorie, that the Lacedaemonians began to bethinke themselves of making some good agreement.

F f f

But







*ebodonosor*, found out by *Tornellus*, are the children of meer fantasie, it is so plain that it needs no proof at all. Wherefore we may truly say, that they, which have contended about the time of this Historie, being well furnished of matter, wherewith to confute each other, but wanting wherewith to defend themselves (like naked men in a Roman field) have chased *Holofernes* out of all parts of time, and left him and his great expedition, *Extra anni solisque viuis*, in an age that never was, and in places that were never known.

Judic. 1. 2. & 25. Surely, to find out the borders of *Japheth*, which were towards the South, and over against Arabia; or the Countries of *Phul* and *Lud*, that lay in *Holofernes* his way; I think it would as much trouble Cosmographers, as the former question hath done Chronologers. But I will not buse my self herewith; having already so far digressed, in shewing who lived not with *Manasses*, that I think it high time to return unto mine own work, and rehearse what others I find, to have had their part, in the long time of his Reign.

## §. VI.

Of other Princes and actions that were in these times.

THE first year of *Manasses* was the last of *Romulus*; after whose death, one year the Romans wanted a King. Then was *Numa Pompilius* a *Sabyn*e chosen, a peaceable man, and seeming very religious in his kind. He brought the rude people, which *Romulus* had employed only in Wars, to some good civilitie, and a more orderly fashion of life. This he effected by filling their heads with superstition; as perswading them, that he had familiaritie with a Nymph called *Egeria*, who taught him a many of Ceremonies which he delivered unto the Romans as things of great importance. But all these devices of *Numa* were, in his own judgement, no better than meer delusions, that served only as rudiments to bring the savage multitude of thieves and out-laws, gathered into one body by *Romulus*, to some form of milder discipline, than their boisterous and wild natures were otherwise apt to entertain. This appeared by the Books that were found in his grave, almost six hundred years after his death, wherein the Superstition taught by himself was condemned as vain. His grave was opened by chance, in digging a piece of ground that belonged to one *L. Petilius* a Scribe. Two Coffins or Chests of stone were in it, with an inscription in Greek and Latine letters, which said, that *Numa Pompilius*, the son of *Pompo*, King of the Romans, lay there. In the one Coffin was nothing found; his body being utterly consumed. In the other were his Books, wrapped up in two bundles of wax; of his own constitutions seven, and other seven of Philosophie. They were not only uncorrupted, but in a manner fresh and new. The Pretour of the Citie desiring to have a fight of these Books, when he perceived whereunto they tended, refused to deliver them back to the owner, and offered to take a solemn oath that they were against the Religion then in use. Hereupon the Senate, without more ado, commanded them to be openly burnt. It seems that *Numa* did mean to acquit himself unto wiser ages, which he thought would follow, as one that had not been so foolish as to beleve the Doctrine wherein he instructed his own barbarous times. But the poison wherewith he had infected *Rome*, when he sat in his Throne, had not left working, when he ministred the Antidote out of his grave. Had these Books not come to light, untill the days of *Tully* and *Cesar*, when the mist of ignorance was somewhat better disscussed; likely it is that they had not only escaped the fire, but wrought some good (and peradventure generally) effect. Being as it was, they served as a confutation, without remedie, of Idolatrie that was inveterate.

*Numa* reigned three and fortie years in continuall peace. After him *Tullus Hostilius* the third King was chosen, in the six and fortieth of *Manasses*, and reigned two and thirtie years, busied, for the most part, in War. He quarrelled with the *Albanes*, who met him in the field; but in regard of the danger, which both parts had cause to fear, that might grow unto them from the *Thulcanes*, caused them to bethink themselves of a course, whereby without effusion of so much blood, as might make them too weak for a common enemy, it might be decided, who should command, and who obey.

There

There were in each Camp three Brethren, Twins, born at one birth (*Dionysius* sayes that they were Cousin Germans) of equal years and strength, who were appointed to fight for their severall Countries. The end was, that the *Horatii*, Champions for the Romans, got the victory, though two of them first lost their lives. The three *Curatii* that fought for *Alba* (as *Livie* tels it) were all alive, and able to fight, yet wounded, when two of their opposites were slain; but the third *Horatius*, pretending fear, did run away, and thereby drew the others, who by reason of their hurts, could not follow him with equal speed, to follow him at such distance one from another, that returning upon them, he flew them, as it had been in single fight, man after man, ere they could joyn together and set upon him all at once. *Dionysius* reports it somewhat otherwise, telling very particularly, what wounds were given and taken, and saying, that first one of the *Horatii* was slain, then one of the *Curatii*, then a second *Horatius*, and lastly the two *Curatii*, whom the third *Horatius* did cunningly sever the one from the other, as is shewed before.

This is one of the most memorable things in the old Roman Historie, both in regard of the action it self, wherein *Rome* was laid, as it were, in a wager, against *Alba*; and in respect of the great increase which thereby the Roman State obtained. For the Citie of *Alba* did immediately become subject unto her own Colonie, and was shortly after; upon some treacherous dealing of their Governour, utterly razed, the people being removed unto *Rome*, where they were made Citizens. The strong Nation of the *Latines*, whereof *Alba*, as the mother Citie, had been chief, became ere long dependent upon *Rome*, though not subject unto it, and divers petty States adjacent, were by little and little taken in: which additions, that were small, yet many, I will forbear to rehearse (as being the works of sundry ages, and few of them remarkable considered apart by themselves) untill such time as this fourth Empire, that is now in the infancie, shall grow to be the main subject of this History.

The seventh year of *Hippomenes* in *Athens*, was current with the first of *Manasses*. All the three last Governours for ten years, who followed *Hippomenes*, were in the same Kings time. Of these I find only names, *Leocrates*, *Abfander*, and *Erizias*. After *Erizias* yearly Rulers were elected.

These Governours for ten years were also of the race of *Medon* and *Codrus*, but their time of rule was shortened, and from term of life reduced unto ten years; it being thought likely that they would govern the better, when they knew that they were afterwards to live private men under the command of others. I follow *Dionysius* of *Halicarnassus*, in applying their times unto those years of the *Olympiads*, wherein the Chronologicall Table, following this work, doth set them. For he not only professeth himself to have taken great care in ordering the reckoning of times; but hath noted always the years of the Greeks, how they did answer unto the things of *Rome*, throughout all the continuance of this Historie. Whereas therefore he placeth the building of *Rome*, in the first year of the seventh *Olympiad*, and affirmeth, that the same was the first year of *Charops* government of *Athens*; I hope I shall not need excuse, for varying from *Pausanias*, who less the beginning of these *Athenians* somewhat sooner.

In the reign of *Manasses* it was, that *Midas*, whom the Poets feigned to have had *Asses* ears, held the kingdome of *Phrygia*. Many fables were devised of him; especially that he obtained of *Bacchus*, as a great gift, that all things which he should touch might immediately be changed into Gold: by which means he had like to have been starved (his meat and drink being subject to the same transformation) had not *Bacchus* delivered him from this miserable facultie, by causing him to wash himself in the River *Pactolus*, the stream whereof hath ever since, forsooth, abounded in that precious metall. Finally, it is said he dyed by drinking Bulls blood; being invaded by the *Scythians*.

In this age flourished that *Antimachus*, who (saith *Plutarch* in the life of *Romulus*) observed the Moons Eclipse at the foundation of *Rome*.

The *Milesians*, or, (as *Eusebius* hath it) the *Athenians* having obtained some power by Sea, founded *Macedotis* a Citie on the East of *Egypt*. *Plammiticus* herein seems to have assisted them, who used all means of drawing the Greeks into *Egypt*, accounting them his surest strength. For neither *Miletus* nor *Athens* were now of power sufficient to plant a Colonie in *Egypt* by force.

About



Plut. & Euseb. About this time *Archias* with his companion *Miscellus*, and other *Corinthians*, founded *Syracusa* in *Sicilie*, a Citie in after times exceeding famous.

\*Whence in Strabo there is found *Archias* a native of *Thrace*, *Sybilla* of *Samus*, according to *Pausanias*, lived much about this time.

The Citie of *Nicodemia*, sometime \* *Astacus*, was enlarged and beautified in this age by *Zipartes* native of *Thrace*. *Sybilla* of *Samus*, according to *Pausanias*, lived much about this time.

About these times also was *Croton* founded upon the Bay of *Tarentum* by *Miscellus*, the companion of *Archias* that built *Syracusa*. *Strabo* makes it somewhat more ancient, and so doth *Pausanias*.

About the same time the *Parthenians* being of age, and banished *Lacedamon*, were conducted by *Phalantus* into *Italie*, where it is said they founded *Tarentum*; but *Juliane* and *Pausanias* find it built before, and by them conquered and amplified: and about the same time, *Manasse* yet living, the Citie *Phaselis* was founded in *Pamphylia*, *Cela* in *Sicilie*, *Interamne* in the Region of the *Umbrii*, now *Urbini* in *Italie*. About which time also the *Chalcedon* in *Asia*, over against *Byzantium* (now *Constantinople*) was founded by the *Megarenses*, who therefore were upbraided as blind, because they chose not the other side *Megarenses*, who therefore were upbraided as blind, because they chose not the other side of *Bosphorus*. It were a long work to rehearse all that is said to have bin done in the five and fiftie years of *Manasses*: that which already hath been told is enough; the rest being not greatly worth remembrance, may well be omitted, reserving only *Ben Merodach*, and *Nabulassar*, to the business that will shortly require more mention of them.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the times from the death of *Manasses* to the destruction of *Jerusalem*.

S. I.

of Ammon and *Josias*.

1 Kin. 17.  
2 Chron. 33.



1 Kin. 22.  
2 Chron. 34.

1 Kin. 13.

2 Chron. 34. 24

*Ammon* the son of *Manasse*, a man no lesse wicked than was his Father before his conversion, restored the exercise of all sorts of Idolatry: for which God hardened the hearts of his own servants against him, who slew him after he had reigned two years. *Phili*, *Eusebius*, and *Nicephorus* give him ten years, following the Septuagint.

*Josias* succeeded unto *Ammon*, being but a child of 8. years old, he began to seek after the God of *David* his Father; and in his twelfth year he purged *Juda* and *Jerusalem* from the high places, and the groves, and the carved and molten Images: and they brake down in his sight the Altars of *Baalim*: He caused all the Images, as well those which were graven, as molten, to be stamped to powder, and strewed on their graves that had erected them; and this he commanded to be done throughout all his dominions. He also slew those that sacrificed to the Sun and Moon, and caused the Chariots and horses of the Sun to be burnt. Of *Josias* it was prophesied in the time of *Jeroboam* the first, when he erected the Golden Calf at *Bethel*, that a child should be born unto the house of *David*, *Josias* by name, and upon thee (said the Prophet, speaking to the Altar) shall he sacrifice the Priests of the high places, that burn incense upon thee: a prophetic very remarkable.

In the eighteenth year of his reign, he re-built and repaired the Temple, at which 50 time *Helkiah* the Priest found the Book of *Moses*, called *Deuteronomie*, or, of the Law, which he sent to the King: which when he had caused to be read before him, and considered of the severe commandments therein written, the prosperitie promised to those that observe them, and the sorrow and extirpation to the rest, he rent his garments, and that observe them, and the sorrow and extirpation to the rest, he rent his garments, and commanded *Helkiah*, and others, to aske counsell of the Prophetesse *Huldah*, or, *Olda*, concerning the Book, who answered the messengers in these words: Thus saith the Lord, Behold, I will bring evil upon this place, and upon the inhabitants thereof, even all the curses that are written in the Book which they have read before the King of *Juda*, because they have forsaken

forsaken mee, and burnt incense to other gods. Only for the King himself, because he was a lover of God and his Lawes, it was promised that this evil should not fall on *Juda* and *Jerusalem* in his dayes, but that he himself should inherit his grave in peace.

*Josias* assembled the Elders, caused the Book to be read unto them, made a covenant with the Lord, and caused all that were found in *Jerusalem* and *Benjamin* to doe the like, promising thereby to observe the Lawes and Commandments in the Book contained.

The execution done by *Josias* upon the Altar, idols, monuments, and bones of the false Prophets at *Bethel*, argueth his Dominion to have extended unto those Countries, that had been part of the Kingdome of the ten Tribes. Yet I doe not think, that any victory of *Josias* in war got possession of these places; but rather that *Ezechias*, after the flight & death of *Sennacherib*, when *Merodach* opposed himself against *Asurbaddon*, did use the advantage which the faction in the North presented unto him, and laid hold upon so much of the Kingdome of *Israel*, as he was able to people. Otherwise also it is not improbable, that the *Babylonian* finding himself unable to deal with *Psammiticus* in *Syria* (as wanting power to raise the siege of *Azotus*, though the Town held out nine & twenty years) did give unto *Manasses*, together with his liberty, as much in *Israel* as himself could not easily defend. This was a good way to break the amity that the Kings of *Juda* had so long held with those of *Egypt*, by casting a bone between them, & withall by this benefit of enlarging their Territories with addition of more than they could challenge, to redeem the friendship of the Jewes, which had been lost by injuries done, in seeking to bereave them of their own. When it is said, that *Manasses* did after his deliverance from imprisonment, put Captaines of War in all the strong Cities of *Juda*, it may be that some such business was intimated, as the taking possession, and fortifying of places delivered into his hands. For though it be manifest that he took much paines, in making *Jerusalem* itself more defensible; yet I should rather beleve, that he, having already compounded with the *Babylonian*, did fortifie himself against the *Egyptians*, whose side he had forsaken, than that he travelled in making such provisions only for his mindes sake. The earnestnesse of *Josias* in the King of *Babel* his quarrell, doth argue, that the composition which *Manasses* had made with that King or his Ancestor, was upon such friendly termes, as required not onely a faithfull observation, but a thankfull requital. For no persuasions could suffice to make *Josias* sit still, and hold himself quiet in good neutrality, when *Pharao Necho* King of *Egypt* passed along by him, to war upon the Countries about the River of *Euphrates*.

The last year of *Josias* his reign it was, when as *Necho* the son of *Psammiticus*, came with a powerfull Army towards the border of *Judea*, determining to passe that way, being the nearest toward *Euphrates*, either to strengthen the passages of that River about *Carchemish*, or *Cercussum*, for the defence of *Syria* (as long after this, *Dioeclesian* is said by *Ammianus Marcellinus* to have done,) or perhaps to invade *Syria* itself. For it seemeth that the travail of *Psammiticus* had not been idly consumed about that one Town of *Azotus*, but had put the *Egyptians* in possession of no small part of *Syria*, especially in those quarters that had formerly belonged unto the *Adades* Kings of *Damasco*.

Neither was the industry of *Necho* lesse than his Fathers had bin, in pursuing the war against *Babel*. In which warre, two things may greatly have availed the *Egyptians*, and advanced their affaires and hopes: the extraordinary valour of the mercenary *Greekes*, that were far better Souldiers than *Egypt* of it self could afford; & the danger wherein *Assria* stood, by the force of the *Medes*, which under the command of more absolute Princes, began to feel it self better, and to shew what it could doe. These were great helpes, but of shorter endurance than was the warre; as in place more convenient shall be noted. At the present it seems, that either some preparation of the *Chaldeans* to reconquer, did enforce, or some disability of theirs to make resistance, did invite the King of *Egypt* into the Countries bordering upon *Euphrates*; whither *Pharao Necho* accompanied with a mighty Army.

These two great Monarchs, having their swords drawn, and contending for the Empire of that part of the World, *Josias* advised with himself to which of these he might adhere, having his Territory set in the mid-way between both, so as the one could not invade the other, but that they must of necessity tread upon the very face and body of his Country. Now though it were so that *Necho* himselfe desired, by his Embassadors, leave

leave to passe along by *Judea*, protesting that he directed himself against the *Assyrians* only, without all harmfull purpose against *Josias*; yet all sufficed not, but the King of *Israel* would needs fight with him.

Many examples there were, which taught, what little good the friendship of *Egypt* could bring to those that had affiance therein: as that of *Hosea* the last King of *Israel*, who when he fell from the dependance of the *Assyrian*, and wholly trusted to *Sabazus* or *Sous* King of *Egypt*, was utterly disappointed of his hopes, and in conclusion lost both his life and estate, which the *Assyrian* so rooted up and tare in pieces, as it could never after be gathered together or replanted. The calamities also that fell upon *Juda* in the thirteenth and fourteenth years of *Ezechia*, whilst that good king and his people relied upon *Setbon*; and more lately, the imprisonment of *Manasses*, were documents of sufficient proof, to shew the ill assurance that was in the help of the *Egyptians*, who (near neighbors though they were) were alwaies unreadie, when the necessities of their friends required their assistance. The remembrance hereof might be the reason why *Neco* did not seek to have the *Jewes* renew their ancient league with him, but only craved that they would be contented to sit still, and behold the pastime between him and the *Assyrians*. This was an easie thing to grant; seeing that the countenance of such an Armie as did, soon after this, out-face *Nabulassar* upon his own borders, left unto the *Jewes* a lawfull excuse of fear, had they forborne to give it any check upon the way. Wherefore I beleve that this religious and vertuous Prince *Josias*, was not stirred up only by politick respects, to stop the way of *Neco*; but thought himself bound in faith and honor, to doe his best in defence of the *Babylonian* Crown; whereunto his Kingdom was obliged, either by covenant made at the enlargement of *Manasses*, or by the gift of such part as he held in the Kingdom of the ten Tribes. As for the Princes and people of *Juda*, they had now a good occasion to shew, both unto the *Babylonians*, of what importance their friendship was, and to the *Egyptians* what a valiant Nation they had abandoned, and thereby made their enemie.

Some think that this action of *Josias* was contrary to the advice of *Jeremy* the Prophet, which I doe not find in the Prophecie of *Jeremy*, nor can find reason to beleve. Others hold opinion that he forgot to ask the counsell of God: and this is very likely; seeing he might beleve that an enterprize grounded upon fidelitie and thankfulness due to the King of *Babel*, could not but be displeasing unto the Lord. But the wickedness of the people (in whom the corruptions of former times had taken such root, as all the care of *Josias* in reforming the Land, could not pluck up) was questionlesse far from hearkening how the matter would stand with Gods pleasure, and much farther from enquiring into his secret will, wherein it was determined that their good king, whose life stood between them and their punishment, should now be taken from among them, and that in such sort, as his death should give an entrance to the miseries ensuing. So *Josias* levying all the strength he could make, near unto *Megiddo*, in the half Tribe of *Manasses*, encountered *Neco*; and there he received the stroak of death, which lingring about him till he came to *Jerusalem*, brought him to the Sepulchres of his Ancestors. His losse was greatly bewailed of all the people and Princes of *Juda*, especially of *Jeremy* the Prophet, who inserted a sorrowfull remembrance thereof in his Book of Lamentations.

Lam. 4. 20.

## 5. II.

Of Pharaoh Neco that fought with *Josias*: Of Jehoahaz and Jehojakim Kings of *Israel*.

OF these warres, and particularly of this victorie, *Herodotus* hath mention among the acts of *Neco*. He tels us of this King, that he went about to make a channell, whereby Ships might passe out of *Nilus* into the Red Sea. It should have reached above an hundred miles in length, and been wide enough for two Gallies to row in front. But in the midst of the work, an Oracle foretold that the *Barbarians* should have the benefit of it, which caused *Neco* to desist when half was done. There were consumed in this toyle some businesse twelve hundred thousand *Egyptians*; a losse great enough to make the King forsake his enterprize, without troubling the Oracle for admonition. Howsoever it were, he was not a man to be idle; therefore he built a Fleet,

and levied a great Armie, wherewith he marched against the King of *Babel*. In this expedition, he used the service, as well of his Navie, as of his land-forces; but no particular exploits of his therein are found recorded, save only this victory against *Josias*, where *Herodotus* calls the place *Magdolu*, and the *Jewes* *Syrians*; which is a small error, seeing that *Judea* was a Province of *Syria*, and *Magdalu* or *Magdala* is taken to have been the same place (though diversly named) in which this battell was fought. After this, *Neco* took the Citie of *Cadytis*, which was perhaps *Charchemish*, by *Euphrates*, and made himself Lord, in a manner, of all *Syria*, as *Josephus* witnesseth.

Particularly we find, that the *Phenicians*, one of the most powerfull Nations in *Syria*, were his Subjects, and that by his command they surrounded all *Africa*, setting sail from the gulf of *Arabia*, and so passing along all the coast, whereto they both landed, as need required, and sowed corn for their sustenance in that long voyage, which lasted three years. This was the first Navigation about *Africa*, wherein that great Cape, now called of good hope, was discovered, which after was forgotten, until *Vasco de Gama* the *Portingall* found it out, following a contrary course to that which the *Phenicians* held; for they, beginning in the East, ran the way of the Sun, South and then Westward, after which they returned home by the pillars and streights of *Hercules* (as the name was then) called now the streights of *Gibraltar*, having *Africa* still on the right hand, but the *Portingalls*, beginning their voyage not far from the same streights, leave *Africa* on the Larboard, and bend their course unto the East. That report of the *Phenicians*, which *Herodotus* durst not believe, how the Sun in this journey was on their right hand, that is, on the North side of them, is a matter of necessary truth; and the observation then made hereof, makes me the better to believe, that such a voyage was indeed performed. But leaving these discourses of *Neco* his magnificence, let us tell what he did, in matters more importing his estate. The people of *Juda*, while the *Egyptians* were busie at *Charchemish*, had made *Jehoahaz* their King, in the room of his father *Josias*. The Prophet *Jeremy* calls this new King *Shallum*, by the name of his younger brother; alluding perhaps to the short reign of *Shallum* King of the ten Tribes: for *Shallum* of *Israel* reigned but one month; *Jehoahaz* no more than three. He was not the eldest son of *Josias*: Wherefore it may seem that he was set up as the best affected unto the King of *Babel*; the rest of his house being more inclined to the *Egyptian*, as appears by the sequel. He was an idolater he was, and thrived accordingly. For when *Neco* had dispatched his businesse in the North parts of *Syria*, then did he take order for the affairs of *Judea*. This Countie was now so far from making any resistance, that the King himself came from *Riblah* in the land of *Hamath*, where the matter went so ill on his side; that *Neco* did cast him into bonds, and carry him prisoner into *Egypt*, giving away his Kingdom to *Eliakim* his elder brother, to whom of right it did belong. The Citie of *Riblah*, in after times called *Antiochia*, was a place unhappy to the Kings and Princes of *Juda*, as may be observed in divers examples. Yet here *Jehojakim*, together with his new name, got his Kingdom; an ill gain, since he could no better use it. But how-ever *Jehojakim* thrived by the bargain, *Pharao* sped well, making that Kingdom Tributarie, without any stroke stricken; which three moneths before was too stout to give him peace, when he desired it. Certain it is, that in his march outward, *Neco* had a greater task lying upon his hands, than would permit him to wait his forces upon *Judea*: but now the reputation of his good successe at *Megiddo*, and *Charchemish*, together with the diffention of the Princes *Josias* his sons (of whom the eldest is probably thought to have stormed at the preferment of his younger brother) gave him power to do even what should please himself. Yet he did forbear to make a conquest of the Land, perhaps upon the same reason, which had made him so earnest in seeking to hold peace with it. For the *Jewes* had suffered much in the *Egyptians* quarrell, and being left by these their friends, in time of need, unto all extremities, were driven of necessity to forsake that partie, and to joyn with the enemies; to whom if they shewed themselves faithfull, who could blame them? It was therefore enough to reclaim them; seeing they were such a people as would not upon every occasion shift side, but endure more than *Pharao*, in the pride of his victories, thought that any henceforth should lay upon them: so good a Patron did he mean to be unto them. Nevertheless, he laid upon them a Tribute, of an hundred Talents of silver; and one Talent of gold; that so he might both reap at the present some fruit of his pains taken, and leave unto them some document in the future, of greater

Jer. 22. 32.  
1 Kin. 34. 33.

greater punishment than verball anger, due to them, if they should rebell. So he departed, carrying along with him into *Egypt* the unfortunate King *Jehoaabaz*, who died in his Captivité.

The reign of *Jehoaabaz* was included in the end of his Fathers last year; otherwise it would hardly be found, that *Jehojakim* his successor did reign ten whole years; whereas the Scriptures give him eleven, that are current and incomplete. If any man will rather cast the three monthes of this short reign, into the first year of the brother, than into the fathers last, the same arguments that shall maintain his opinion, will also prove the matter to be unworthy of disputation; and so I leave it.

*Jehojakim* in impietie was like his brother, in faction he was altogether *Egyptian*, as having received his Crown at the hand of *Pharao*. The wickednesse of these last Kings, being expressed in Scriptures none otherwise, than by generall words, with reference to all the evill that their Fathers had done, makes it apparent, that the poyson wherewith *Ahaz* and *Manasses* had infected the Land, was not so expelled by the zealous goodnesse of *Josias*, but that it still cleaved unto the chief of the people, *Tee, unto the Priests also*, and therefore it was not strange, that the Kings had their parts therein. The Royall authoritie was much abated by the dangers wherein the Countrey stood, in this troublesome age: the Princes did in a manner what they listed; neither would the Kings forbear to professe, that they could deny them nothing. Yet the beginning of *Jehojakim* had the countenance of the *Egyptian* to grace it, which made him insolent and cruel; as we find by that example of his dealing with *Uria* the Prophet: though herein also the Princes do appear to have been instigators. This holy man denounced Gods judgments against the Citie and Temple, in like sort as other Prophets had formerly done, and did in the same age. The King with all the men of power, and all the Princes, hearing of this, determined to put him to death. Hereupon the poor man fled into *Egypt*: but such regard was had unto *Jehojakim*, that *Uria* was delivered unto his Embassadour, and sent back to the death; contrary to the custome used, both in those dayes, and since among all civill Nations, of giving refuge unto strangers, that are not held guilty of such inhumane crimes, as for the generall good of mankind should be exempted from all privilege.

It concerned *Pharao* to give all contentment possible to *Jehojakim*: for the *Assyrian* Lyon, that had not stirred in many years, began about these times to roar so loud upon the banks of *Euphrates*, that his voice was heard unto *Nilus*, threatening to make himself Lord of all the Forrest. The causes that hitherto had withdrawn the houle of *Merodach* from opposing the *Egyptian* in his conquest of *Syria*, require our consideration in this place, before we proceed to commit them together at *Carchemish*, where shortly after this the glory of *Egypt* is to fall.

### s. III.

*Of the Kings of Babylon and Media. How it came to passe that the Kings of Babel could not give attendance on their businesse in Syria, which caused them to lose that Province.*

**M**erodach the son of *Baladan*, who taking the advantage that *Senacherib* misadventure and death, together with the disention between his children, presented, made himself King of *Babylon*, was eleven years troubled with a powerfull Enemy, *Asarhaddon* the son of *Senacherib*, reigning over the *Assyrians* in *Nineve*; from whom whilst he could not any other way divert his cares, hee was faine to omit all businesse in *Syria*, and (as hath been formerly shewed) to make over unto *Ezechias* some part of the Kingdome of the ten Tribes. From this molestation, the death of *Asarhaddon* did not only set him free, but gave unto him some part of *Assyria*, if not (as is commonly, but lesse probably thought) the whole Kingdome. How greatly this was to the liking of the *Assyrians*, I will not here stand to enquire: his long reign following, and his little intermeddling in matters of *Syria*, make it plain, that he had work enough at home, either in defending or establishing that which he had gotten. *Jesephus* gives him the honour of having won *Nineve* it self, which we may believe; but surely he did not hold it long. For in the times soon following, that great Citie was free, and vanquished *Phraortes* the *Median*. Perhaps it yielded upon some capitulation;

and

and refused afterwards to continue subject, when the Kings, being of the *Chaldean* race, preferred *Babylon* before it.

Some think that this was the *Assyrian* King; whose Captains took *Manasses* prisoner, but I rather believe those that hold the contrary, for which I have given my reasons in due place. To say trath, I find little cause why *Merodach* should have looked into those parts, as long as the *Femes* were his friends, and the *Egyptians*, that maligned the Northern Empire; held themselves quiet at home, which was untill the time of *Psammiticus*, about the end of this Kings Reign, or the beginning of his son.

*Ben Merodach* the son and successeur of this King, is not mentioned in the Scriptures, yet is he named by good consent of Authors, and that speak little of his doings. The length of his Reign is gathered by inference to have been one and twenty years; for so much remaineth of the time that passed between the beginning of his Fathers and his Nephews Reigns (which is a known summe) deducting the years of his Father, and of his son *Nabulassar*. This (as I take it) was he that had *Manasses* Prisoner, and released him. Hee sped ill in *Syria*; where *Psammiticus*, by the vertue of his Mercenary *Greeks*, did much prevail. This may have been some cause that he released *Manasses*, and did put into his hands some part more of the Kingdome of *Samaria*: which is made probable by circumstances alleged before.

*Nabulassar* that reigned in *Babylon* after his father *Ben Merodach*, had greater businesse in his own Kingdome, than would permit him to look abroad: inso much as it may be thought to have been a great negligence or over-sight of *Psammiticus* and *Nacho*, that they did not occupy some good part of his Dominions beyond *Euphrates*: For it was in his time, that *Phraortes* King of the *Medes* invaded *Assyria*, and besieged *Nineve*; from whence he was not repelled by any force of *Nabulassar*, but constrained to remove by the coming of the *Scythians*, who in these ages did overflow those parts of the world, laying hold upon all that they could master by strong hand. Of these *Scythians*, and the Lordship that they held in *Asia*, it is convenient that I speak in this place, shewing briefly afore-hand, how the *Medes*, upon whom they first fell, were buised in the same times with hopes of conquering *Assyria*.

*Phraortes*, the Sonne of *Deiages*, King of the *Medes*, having by many victories enlarged his Dominions, conceived at length a fair possibility of making himself Lord of *Nineve*.

That Citie (as *Herodotus* reports it) having been a Sovereign Lady, was not forsaken of all her dependants; yet remained in such case, that of her self she was well enough.

This makes it plain, that howsoever *Merodach* had gotten possession of this imperiall seat, and made it subject as was the rest of the Countrey; yet it found the means to set it self at liberty: as after this again it did, when it had been regained by *Nabulassar* his Grand-child.

Sharp warre, and the very novelty of sudden violence, use to dismay any State or Countrey, not inured to the like: but custome of danger hardeneth even those that are unwearlike. *Nineve* had been the Palace of many valiant Kings lately reigning therein; it had suffered, and resisted, all the fury, wherewith either Domestick tumults between the sons of *Senacherib*, or forreign war of the *Babylonians*, could afflict it: and therefore it is the lesse wonderfull, that *Phraortes* did speed so ill in his journey against it. Hee and the most of his Armie perished in that expedition: whereof I find no particular circumstances (perhaps they undervalued their forces, and brought a lesse power than was needfull.) It is enough, that herein we may believe *Herodotus*.

*Cyaxares* the son of *Phraortes*, a braver man of war than his Father, wan as much of *Assyria* the lesse, as lay Eastward, from the River of *Halyz*; he sought revenge upon the *Assyrians* for the death of his father, and besieged *Nineve* it self, having a purpose to destroy it. I rather believe *Eusebius*, That he took the Citie, and fulfilled his displeasure upon it, than *Herodotus*, That the *Scythian* Army came upon him whilst he lay before it. For where equall authorities are contradictory (as *Eusebius*, though far later than *Herodotus*, yet having seen other Authors that are now lost, it is to be valued according to his great reading) there do I hold it best, to yield unto the best likelihoods.

To think that the *Scythians* came upon *Cyaxares*, whilst he lay before *Nineve*, were to accuse him of greater improvidence than ought to be suspected in one commended as a good Souldier. But to suppose that he was faine to leave the Town, when a Warre

Ggg

so

so dangerous fell upon his own Country, doth well agree both with the condition of such business as that *Scythian* expedition brought into those parts, and with the State of the *Chaldean* and *Assyrian* affairs ensuing.

The destruction of this great City is both foretold in the Book of *Tobit*, and there set down as happening about these times, of which book whosoever was the Author, he was ancient enough to know the story of those ages, and hath committed no such error in reckoning of times, as should cause us to distrust him in this. As for the Prophecy of *Nabum*, though it be not limited unto any certain term, yet it appears to have taken effect, in the final destruction of *Nineve* by *Nabuchodonosor*, according to the common opinion. For the Prophet hath mention of a conquest of *Egypt*, foregoing this calamity, whereof we will speak in due place. Some that ascribe more authority than the reformed Churches yield, to the book of *Tobit*, are careful, as in a matter of necessity, to affirm, that about these times, *Nineve* was taken; but they attribute (conjecturally) the victory over it to *Ben Merodach*: a needless conjecture, if the place of *Eusebius* be well considered. Yet I hold it probable, that *Nabulassar* the son of *Ben Merodach* did seize upon it, and place a King or Viceroy therein, about such time as the Country of *Assyria* was abandoned by *Cyaxares*, when the *Scythian* Warre over-whelmed *Media*. For then was the Conquest wrought out ready to his hand, the swelling spirits of the *Ninevites* were abated, and their malice to *Babylon* so much abated, that it might be thought a great favour, if *Nabulassar*, appointing unto them a peculiar King, took him and them in protection: though afterwards to their confusion, this unthankfull People and their King rebelled again, as shall be shewed in the Reign of *Nabuchodonosor*.

## S. IV.

The great expedition of the Scythians, who ruled in Asia eight and twenty years.

## †. I.

The time of his expedition.

NOW that I have shewed what impediment was given by the *Assyrians* and the *Medes*, to the *Babylonians*, who thereby were much disabled to performe any action of worth upon the *Egyptians* in *Syria*; it is time that I speak of this great *Scythian* expedition, which grievously afflicted not only the *Babylonians*, but the *Medes* and *Lydians*, with the Countries adjacent, in such wise, that part of the trouble redounded even to the *Egyptians* themselves. Of the *Scythian* people in general, *Herodotus* makes very large discourse, but interlaced, as of matter ill known, with many Fables; of this expedition he tells many particulars, but ill agreeing with consent of time. Concerning his fabulous reports, it will be needlesse to recite them; for they are far enough distant from the business in hand. The computation of times which by inference out of his relations, may seem very strange, needeth some answer in this place: lest otherwise I should either seem to make my self too bold with an Author, in citing him after a manner different from his own tale; or else to be too forgetfull of my self, in bringing to act upon the Stage, those persons, which I had already buried. Eight and twenty years, hee saith, that the *Scythians* reigned in *Asia*, before *Cyaxares* delivered the Country from them. Yet hee reports a warre between *Cyaxares* and *Haliastres* the *Lydian*, as foregoing the siege of *Nineve*; the siege of *Nineve* being ere the *Scythians* came. And further he tells, how the *Scythians*, having vanquished the *Medes*, did passe into *Syria*, and were encountered in *Palestina* by *Psammiticus* King of *Egypt*, who by gifts and entreaty procured them to depart from him. These narrations of *Herodotus* may, every one of them, be true; though not in such order of time, as he hath marshalled them. For *Psammiticus* was dead before *Cyaxares* began to reign: and *Cyaxares* had spent half of his forty years, ere *Haliastres* was King of *Lydia*, so that hee could not, after those *Lydian* Warres, reign eight and twenty years together with the *Scythians*. It is true, that *Eusebius* doth also call *Psammitis* the sonne of *Phrao Neco*, by the name of *Psammiticus*; and this King *Psammitis* may, by some strained conjecture, be thought to have been he that met with the *Scythians*: for hee lived

30

40

with

with both *Cyaxares* and *Haliastres*. But *Eusebius* himself referres all that business of the *Scythian* irruption into *Palestina*, to *Psammiticus* the Father of *Necho*, whom he leaves dead before the Reign of *Haliastres*. Therefore I dare not rely upon *Herodotus*, in this matter, otherwise than to believe him, that such things were in these ages, though not in such order as he sets them down.

It remains, that I collect as well as I can, those memorials which I find of this expedition scattered in divers places: a work necessary, for that the greatnesse of this action was such, as ought not to be omitted in generall History; yet not easie, the consent of those that have written thereof, being nothing neer to uniformity.

I have noted before, that in the reign of *Arads* King of *Lydia*, the *Cimmerians* overran that Kingdome, and were not expelled, untill *Haliastres* the Nephew of *Arads* got the upper hand of them. In these times therefore of *Arads*, *Sadiastres*, and *Haliastres*, are we to find the eight and twenty years, wherein the *Scythians* reigned over *Asia*. Now *Psammiticus* the *Egyptian* had some dealings with the *Scythians*, even in the height of their prosperity, we must needs allow more than one or two of his last years unto this their Dominion. But the beginning of *Haliastres* his Reign in *Lydia*, being three and twenty years compleat after the death of *Psammiticus*, leaves the space very scant, either for the great victories of the *Scythians*, necessarily supposed before they could meet the *Egyptian* in *Syria*; or for those many losses, which they must have received ere they could be driven quite away. To increase this difficulty, the victorious Reigne of *Nabuchodonosor* in *Babylon*, is of no small moment. For how may we think it possible, that hee should have adventured the strength of the Kingdome against the *Egyptians* and *Fewes*, had he stood in daily fear of losing his own, to a more mighty Nation, that lay upon his neck? To speak simply as it appears to me, the victories ascribed to *Cyaxares* and *Haliastres* over these warlike people, were not obtained against the whole body of their Army, but were the defeatures of some troopes that infected their severall Kingdomes; other Princes, and among these *Nabulassar*, having the like success, when the pleasures of *Asia* had mollified the courages of this hardy Northern Laddes. Wherefore we may probably annex the eight and twenty years of the *Scythians* rule, to as many almost the last of *Nabulassars* Reign, in compasse whereof their power was at the greatest. This is all that I can lay of the time, wherein *Asia* suffered the violence of their oppressors.

## †. II.

What Nations they were that brake into Asia; with the cause of their Journey.

Touching the expedition it self, *Herodotus* tells us, that the *Cimmerians* being driven out of their Country by the *Scythians*, invaded and wasted some part of *Asia*; and that the *Scythians*, not contented with having won the land of the *Cimmerians*, did follow them, I know not why, into far removed quarters of the world, so (as it were by chance) falling upon *Media* and *Egypt*, in this pursuit of men that were gone another way into *Lydia*. Hereby we may gather that the *Cimmerians* were an odious and base people; the *Scythians*, as mischievous and foolish; or else *Herodotus*, and some other of his Country-men, great slanderers of those, by whom their Nation had been beaten and *Ania*, more than once, grievously ranfack. The great valour of the *Cimmerians* or *Cimbrians* is so well known, and their many Conquests so well testified in Histories of divers Nations, that the malice of the *Greekes* is insufficient to stain them with the note of Cowards. These were the posterity of *Gomer*, who peopled the greatest part of our Western World; and whose re-flow did overwhelm no small portion of *Greece* and *Asia*, as well before and after, as in the age whereof we do now entreat. He that would more largely informe himself of their originall and actions; may peruse *Goropius* because his *Amazonica*; of many things in which Book, that may be verified, which the learned *Orellius* is said to have spoken of all *Goropius* his works, that it is easie to laugh at them, but hard to confute them: There we find it proved, by such arguments and authorities as are not lightly to be regarded; that the *Cimmerians*, *Scythians* and *Sarmatians*, were all of one Linage and Nation; howsoever distinguished in name, by reason of their divers tribes, professions, or perhaps dialect of speech. *Herodotus* indeed hath mention of the *Cimmerians*; whose Country whether he placeth in the West, as neer unto the

Ocean and bounds of the Earth, or in the North, as being farre from the Sun, and covered with eternall darknesse; certain it is that he would have them neer neighbours to Hell; for hee had the same quarrrell to them which *Herodotus* had, and therefore belike would have made them seem a kind of Goblins. It was the manner of this great Poet (as *Herodotus* writing his life affirms) to insert into his works the names of such as lived in his own time, making such mention of them, as the good or ill done by them to himself, deserved. And for this reason it is proved by *Eusebius*, that the *Cimmerians* were so disgraced by him, because they had wasted his Country. Perhaps that invasion of *Phrygia* by the *Amazons*, whereof *Homer* puts a remembrance into *Priamus* his discourse with *Helen*, was the very same, which *Eusebius* noteth to have happened somewhat before the age of *Homer*, at what time the *Cimmerians* with the *Amazons*, together invaded *Asia*.

This is certain, that both the *Amazons* and the *Cimmerii* (who in after-times were called *Cimbri*) did often break into *Greece* and *Asia*, which though it be not in expresse termes written, that they did with joyned-forces, yet seeing they invaded the self-same places, it may well be gathered, that they were companions. One journey of the *Amazons* into *Greece*, mentioned also by *Eusebius*, was by the streights of the *Cimmerians*, as we find in *Diodore*, who further telleth us, that the *Scythians* therein gave them assistance. The same Authour, before his entry into those discourses of the *Amazons*, 10 which himself acknowledgeth to be fabulous, doth report them to have been wives of the *Scythians*, and no lesse Warre-like than their Husbands; alleging the example of that Queen who is said to have slain the great *Persian*, *Cyrus*. That it was the manner of the *Cimbri* to carry their wives along with them to the warres; and how desperate the courage was of those Women; the terrible descent of them into *Italy*, when *Marine* the *Roman* overthrew them, gives prooffe sufficient. I will not here enter into a discourse of the *Amazons*; another place will give me better leisure to speak of them; but seeing that they are noted by divers Historians to have belonged unto the *Cimmerians*, to the *Scythians*, and to the *Sarmatians*, we may therefore the better approve *Goropius* his conclusion, That these three Nations were one, at least that they were neer allies.

Now as concerning the expulsion of the *Cimmerians* by the *Scythians*, it appears to have been none other than the sending a Colony of them forth into *Asia*, with an Army of *Scythians* to help them, in purchasing a new seat, and establishing the Plantation.

The *Sarmatians* also were companions in this journey. For the City of *Novograd* in *Russia* (which Country is the same that was called *Sarmatia*) stood in their way home-wards, as shall anon bee further shewed. So that all the North was up in Armes: and therefore it is no marvell though many Countries felt the weight of this great inundation. Such another voyage was that, which the same people made five hundred years and more after this, when they were encountered by the *Romans*. For they issued from the parts about the Lake *Maotus*; they were then likewise assisted (saith *Plutarch* in the 10 most likely report of them) by the *Scythians* their neighbours; they had in their Army above three hundred thousand fighting men, besides a huge multitude of women and children; they wandered over many Countries, beating all down before them; and finally, thinking to have settled themselves in *Italy*, they divided their Company, for the more easie passage thither, and were consumed in three terrible battells by the *Roman* Consuls. Meere necessity enforced these poor Nations to trouble the World, in following such hard adventures. For their Countrey being more fruitfull of men than of sustenance, and shut up on the North side with intollerable cold, which denied issue that way to their over-swelling multitudes; they were compelled to discharge upon the South, and by right or wrong to drive others out of possession, as having use to all that they had power to get, because they wanted all, that weaker, but more civil, people had. Their sturdy bodies, patient of hunger, cold, and all hardnesse, gave them great advantage over such as were accustomed unto a more delicate life, and could not be without a thousand superfluities. Wherefore most commonly they prevailed very farre; their next neighbours giving them free passage, that they might the sooner be rid of them; others giving them, besides passage, victuals and guides to conduct them to more wealthy places; others hiring them to depart with great presents; so as

the farther they went on, the more pleasant Lands they found, and the more effeminate people.

### III. of the Cimmerians warre in Lydia.

The first Company of these, consisting for the most part of *Cimmerians*, held the way of the *Euxine* Seas, which they had still on the right hand, leaving on the other side, & behind them, the great Mountains of *Gaulcaus*. These having passed through the Land of *Colchis*, that is now called *Mengrells*, entered the Country of *Troas*, & being arrived in *Ephragoria*, fortified the *Promontory*, whereon *Synope*, a famous Haven Town of the *Greeks*, was after built. Here it seemes that they bestowed the weakest and most unserviceable of their traine, together with the heaviest part of their carriages, under some good guard; as drawing near to those Regions, in conquest whereof they were to trie the utmost hazzard. For in like sort afterwards did the *Cimbri* (of whom I spak even now) dispose of their impediments, leaving them in a place of strength, where, *Antwerp* now stands, when they drew neare unto *Gaulle*, upon which they determined to adventure themselves in the purchase of. From *Sinop*, the way unto *Phrygia*, *Lydia*, and *Ionis*, was faire and open to the *Cimmerians*, without any ladg of Mountains, or any deep Rivers at all to stay their march: for *Iris* and *Haly* (the) had already passed.

What battels were fought between these invaders and the *Lydians*, & with what variable successe the one or other part wanne and lost, I find not written, nor am able to conjecture. This I find that in the time of *Ardis*, the *Cimmerians* got possession of *Sardis* the capital Citie of *Lydia*; only the Castle holding out against them. Further I observe, that whereas *Herodotus* tells of the acts performed by *Gyges* and *Ardis* Kings of *Lydia*, before this invasion, and by *Halyattes* and *Croesus* in the times following, all that *Ardis* did against the *Cimmerians*, and all save burning the *Milesians* Corn fields, that was done in twelve years by *Sadyattes* his Son (who perhaps had his hands so full of this businesse, that he could turn them to nothing else) is quite omitted: whereby it may be thought, that neither of the two did any thing worthy of remembrance in those wars, but were glad enough that they did lose all.

Certainly the miseries of war are never so bitter and many, as when a whole Nation, or great part of it, forsaking their own seats, labour to root out the established possessor of another Land, making room for themselves; their wives and children. They that fight for the mastery, are pained with tribute, or with some other services and acknowledgements; which had they been yielded at the first, all had been quiet, and no more bloodied. But in these migrations, the assailants bring so little with them, that they need all which the defendants have; their Lands and Castell, their houses and their goods, even to the cradles of the sucking infants. The mercilesse termes of this controversy, arme both sides with desperate resolution: seeing the one part must either winne, or perish by famine; the other defend their goods, or lose their lives without redemption. Most of the Countries in *Europe* have felt examples thereof; and the mighty Empire of *Rome* was overthrown by such invasions. But our Isle of *Britaine* can boast witness to the diversity of Conquests, having by the happy victory of the *Romans* gotten the knowledge of all Civil Arts, in exchange of liberty, that was but seditiously inducted therein before; whereas the issue of the *Saxon* and *Danish* Wars, was, as were the causes, quite contrary. For these did not seeke after the Dominion only, but the entire possession of the Country, which the *Saxons* obtained, but with horrible cruelty, enacting all of the British Race, & despoiling all memorial of the ancient inhabitants through the greater part of the Land. But the *Danes* (who are also of the *Cimmerian* blood) found such end of their enterprize, as it may seeme, that the *Cimmerians* in *Lydia*, & *Scythians* in the higher *Asia*, did arrive unto. So that by considering the proffesse of the one, we shall the better conceive the fortune of the other. Many battels the *Danes* wonne, yet none of such importance, as sufficed to make them absolute Conquerours: Many the *Saxons* won upon the *Danes*, yet not so great, as could drive them quite away, and back from hence, after they had gotten firme footing. But in course of time, the long continuance even of their enmity, had bred such acquaintance



between them, as bowing the natures of both these people, made the one more pliant unto the other. So their disagreeable qualities, both ill and good, being reduced in one mild temper, no small number of the *Danes* became peaceable cohabitants with the *Saxons* in *England*, where great slaughter had made large room; others returning home, found their own Country wide enough to receive them, as having disburthened it self of many thousands, that were sent to seek their graves abroad. And such (as I think) was the end of the *Cimmerian* warre in *Lydia*; whereunto though some victory of *Halyattes* may have hastened the conclusion, yet the wearisome length of time seems to have done most, in compelling them to desire of rest. I know not why I should care to adde hereunto my further conjecture, which is, that the matter was so compounded between the *Cimmerians* & *Halyattes*, that the River of *Haly* should divide their Territories. For *Haly* was henceforth the border of the *Lydians*, and on the Eastern side of the River was the Country of the *Amazons*, that is indeed, of the *Cimmerians*, and other *Scythian* people; whose wives and daughters these warlike women are supposed to have been.

And hereunto the quarrell ensuing between *Halyattes* and *Cyaxares* the *Mede*, hath very good reference. For *Halyattes* (as is said) fought in defence of certain *Scythians*, upon whom the *Medes* sought revenge. And it stands with reason, that the *Lydians* and *Cimmerians*, being much weakened with mutuall slaughters, should have joynd in a league of mutual defence for their common safety: though otherwise it had been dangerous to *Halyattes*, if hee had permitted the *Medes* to extend his Kingdome so farre Westward, whatsoever the pretences might be, of taking revenge upon such as had spoiled each of their Countries. As for that occasion of the Warre between these two Kings, which *Herodotus* relates, I find it of little waight, and lesse probability. He tells of *Scythians*, that being chased out of their Country by faction, came unto *Cyaxares*, who committed unto them certain Boyes, to be instructed in the *Scythian* tongue, and fear of *Archery*. Now it so fell out (saith he) that these *Scythians* using much to hunt, & commonly bringing home somewhat with them, did nevertheless other-whiles misse of their game, and came home as they went. Hereupon the King being froward & cholericke, bitterly reviled them; & they, as impatient as he, killed one of the Boyes that was under their charge, whom, dressing like Venison, they presented unto him; which done, they fledde unto *Halyattes*. This *Herodotus* delivers, as the ground of a war that lasted six yeeres between the *Medes* and *Lydians*; the one King demanding the Fugitives to be delivered into his hand; the other refusing to betray such men as were become his suppliants. To this I will say no more, than that I see no cause that might induce the *Scythians* to betake themselves to either of these Kings, unto whom their Nation had wrought so much displeasure. Particularly, they had reason to distrust *Cyaxares*, for the treachery that he shewed in the massacring of their Country-men that were in his Kingdome, of whom it is now meet that we should speak.

#### IV.

#### The Warre of the *Scythians* in the higher Asia.

As the *Cimmerians* held their course westerly, along the shores of the *Euxine* sea, so the *Scythians* and *Sarmatians* took the other way, and having the *Caspian* sea on their left hand, passed between it and *Caucasus*, through *Albania*, *Colchene*, and other obscure Nations, where now are the Countries of *Servan* and *Georgia*, and so they entered into *Media*. The *Medes* encountered them in Armes, but were beaten, and thereupon glad to come to any agreement with them. This was in the time of *Phraortes*, whilst *Psammiticus* reigned in *Egypt*. If it were in the sixt yeere of *Nabuchadonassors* Reign over *Babylon* (supposing him to have reigned five and thirty; otherwise we must allow to *Ben Merodach* what we take from him) then doe the eight and twenty yeeres of their Dominion end, one year before the great *Nabuchadonassor* was King; so giving him good leave to provide securely for the invasion of *Syria*; which expedition hee began while his Father yet lived, as *Josephus* out of *Berosus* relates the History.

Now the *Medes*, desirous to save themselves as well as they might, from this terrible nation, which when they had no lust to a second triall of the sword, refused not to under-

goe the burthen of a Tribute, but thought nothing dishonourable, that yvould serve to remove these troublesome guests into some other lodging. On the other part, the *Scythians* finding still the Countries pleasanter & better, the further that they marched into the South, did suffer themselves to be perswaded, that a little more travail yvould adde a great deal more to their content. For they relied so much upon their own valour, that they feared no resistance, & being the bravest men, they thought it reason that they should dwell in the best Region. That *Phraortes* perswaded them into *Egypt*, I doe not think: *Babylon* was near enough; whether if he could find these Locusts to graze, then should not his unfriendly Neighbours have cause to laugh at his misfortune. What thist *Nabuchadonassor* made with them, or that at all he had any dealings with them, I doe not read. But it is well known that his Dominions lay in the midst between *Media* & *Egypt*; as also, that they made all those parts of *Asia* Tributary; wherefore we may very well believe, that they watered their horses in his Rivers, and that he also was content to give them provender.

*Psammiticus* hearing of their progresse (like the jealous Husband of a fair Wife) took care that they might not look upon *Egypt*; lest the sight thereof should more easily detain them there, than any force or perswasion that hee could use would send them going. Therefore hee met them in *Syria*, presuming more on the great gifts which he meant to bestow upon them, than on his Army that should keep them back. *Egypt* was rich; and half the riches had not been ill spent in saving all. Yet *Psammiticus* took the most likely course, whereby to make his part good against them, by strong hand, in case they had been so obstinate as to refuse all indifferent composition. For he lay close upon the edge of the Wildernesse in *Gaza* (as I take it) the Southermost border of *Palestine*: whence he never advanced to meet with the *Scythians*, but gave them leave to feel as much of the scalding Sunne-beames, all agreeing with their temper, as all the length of *Syria* could bear upon them. When they were come as farre as *Ascalon*, the next City to *Gaza*, then did he assay them with goodly words, accompanied with gifts, which were likely to work so much the better, by how much the worse they were pleased with the heat of a Climate so farre different from their own. *Psammiticus* had a his back a vast wildernesse, over the scorching sands whereof, the *Scythians* more patient of cold and wet, than of the contrary distempers, could ill have endured to pursue him through unknown wayes, had they fought with him and prevailed, especially the Kingdome of *Egypt* being ready to entertaine him with relief, and them with new trouble at the end of their weary journey. Wherefore they were content to be intreated, & taking in good part his courteous offers, returned back to visit their acquaintance in the high Countries. The *Egyptian* King (besides that hee preserved his own Estate from a dangerous adventure, by hying this great Army to depart from him) found all his Coast well repayed in the proceesse of his wars in *Syria*, where the Nations beyond *Euphrates* had no power to molest him; being more than ever troubled themselves with the return of their oppressors. For the *Scythians*, resolving now to seek no further, began to demand more than the Tribute formerly imposed. And not contented to fleece the Naturals vith grievous exactions, they presumed to live at discretion upon the Country, taking what they listed from the Owners; and many times (as it were to save the labour of taking often) taking all at once. This Tyrannous Dominion they long used over the higher Asia, that is, over the Country lying between the *Caspian* sea and *Red Seas*; and between *India* and *Asia* the lesse. Happy it was for the poor people, that in so large a space of ground, there was room enough for these new comers; otherwise the calamity that fell, as it were by chance, upon thole private men, to whose wealth any *Scythian* did bear a fancy, would have lighted in generall upon all at one clap, leaving few alive, and none able to relieve their fellows. Yet it seems that the heaviest burthen lay upon *Media*; for it was a fruitful Country, not farre from their own home, and lay under a Climate well agreeing with the constitution of their bodies; there also it was that they had the fatall blow, by which their insolent Rule was taken from them.

*Cyaxares* King of the *Medes*, who in this extremity was no better than a Rent-gatherer for the *Scythians*, perceiving that his Land lay unmanured and waste, through the negligence of his people, that were out of heart by daily oppressions, and that the matter could not be remedied by open force, resolved to prove what might be done by stratagem.



stratagem. The mangling of the businesse is thus delivered in brief; That he, and his Medes, feasted the better part of the Scythians, made them drunk, and slew them; recovering hereby the possession of all that they had lost.

Such another slaughter was committed upon the Danes in England; but it was revealed by their Countermen, with greater cruelty than ever they had practised before. That the Scythians which escaped this bloody feast, made any stirre in Media, I do not find; neither do I read that either in reveng hereof, or upon other pretence, the Medes were troubled by invasion from Scythia in time following.

Goodly.

This is the more strang, for that the Army returning home out of Medi, was very strong, & encountered with opposition (as Herodotus reports it) no lesse than it had found abroad. Wherefore it may be, that the device of Cyaxares to free his Country, took good effect, with lesse blood-shed than hath been supposed. For if he surpris'd all the chief of them, it was no hard matter to make a good composition. Many of them doubtlesse in eight and twenty years had so well fedd themselves, that they were desirous of rest, and might be permitted, without any danger, to remaine in the Country; many (of whom I shall speak anon) having done what they could in the businesse, for which they came forth, were willing to return home with what they had gotten; such as were not pleased with either of these two courses, might goe joyn with the Cimmerians in Lydia, or seeke their fortunes in other Provinces among their own Companions. Whereas all the Families of the North are said to have bin with Nabuchadnezzar, it may be understood, that a great part of the Scythians, upon hope of gain, or desire to keepe what they had already gained, were content to become subject unto Nabuchadnezzar: mens love of their wealth being most effectuall, in taming the more unquiet love of inordinate liberty. This is certaine, that Nabuchadnezzar, as ever after, so in his first beginning of warre, did beat the Egyptians, who in ages forgoing had been accustomed to deal with the Babylonians after another fashion: & this new successe of that King may be imputed, in regard of human meanes, to such addition as this of new forces.

Jerem. 35.9.

Of the Scythian Army returning out of Media, divers Authors report a Story, which confirmes me in the opinion, that this Company went forth to assist their kinned and friends, in acquiring a new seat, and establishing their plantation. For these had left their wives behind them; a good argument to prove that they meant to come again. The Scythian women, to comfort themselves in their husbands absence, became bed-fellows to their slaves. These got a lusty brood of youths, that were loth to be troubled with Fathers-in-Law, & therefore prepared to fight with them at their return. If they were onely the children of slaves, which compounded an Army (as Herodotus would have it, who tels us, that the Scythians were wont to pull out all their bond-mens eyes) it must needs be that they were very boyes, or else that the Women did very little while continuing chaste. Wherefore I rather beleeye that tale as it is told by the Rasses themselves, who agreeing in the rest with the consent of Histories, make that report of their Ancestors returning homewards, which I will set down, as I find it in Master Doctor Fleischer his exact discourse of the Russe Common-wealth. They understood by the way, that their Cherokees, or Bond-slaves, whom they left at home, had in their absence possessed their towns, lands, houses, Wives, and all. At which news being somewhat amazed, and yet disdaining the Villany of their servants, they made the more speed home: and so not farre from Novograd met them in warlike manner marching against them. Whereupon advising what was best to be done, they agreed also to set upon them with neither shew of weapon but with their horse-whips (which, as their manner is, every man rideth with all) so put them in remembrance of their servile condition, thereby to terrifie them, and abate their courage. And so marching on, & lashing all together with their whips in their hands, they gave the onset: which seemed so terrible so in the eyes of their Villaines, & strook such a sense into them of the smart of the whip, which they had felt before, that they fled altogether like Sheep before the Drivers. In memory of this victory, the Novogradians ever since have stamped their Coin (which they call a Dingo Novogradskoy, current through all Russia) with the figure of a Horseman shaking a whip aloft in his hand. It may seeme, that all the women of that Country have faced the worst ever since, in regard of the universall fault: For such a Pudkey or whip, as terried those slaves, curiously wrought by her self, is the first present that the Moscovian wife, even in time of wooing, sends to him that shall be her husband, in token of subjection; being

Rus. Common-wealth. Cap. 4.

well assured to feel it often on her own loines. But this was a Document unto the Scythians, or rather Sarmatians (for Novograd stands in the Country that was called Sarmatia) to beware of absenting themselves any more so long from their wives; which after this, I find not that they did.

Thus much I thought good to set down of the Scythian expedition; not only because it is the most memorable act performed abroad by that Nation, famous in Histories, and terrible to many Countries; but for that it appears to have been a great cause of the Egyptians prevailing hitherto in Syria, and about Judaea, which continues yet a while the center of our discourse.

10

S. V.

#### Of Princes living in divers Countries, in these ages.

HAVING thus far digressed from the matters of Judaea, to avoide all further occasion of doing the like, I will here insert a note of such Kings, and men of mark, as were between the death of Manasse, and the ruine of Jerusalem. Of the Egyptians, Babylonians, Medes, and Lydians, I have spoken as much as I thought needfull. In Rome, Tullus Hostilius held the Kingdome, untill the one and twentieth year of his age; at which time Ancus Martius succeeding, reigned four and twenty years. After him L. Tarquinius Priscus, a new-come stranger, but very rich, prevailed so far, by his graciousnesse among the people, that he got the Kingdome to himself, disappointing the hopes of Ancus, over whom he was Tutor. He began in the fourth year of Zedekia, and reigned eight and thirty years. In this time it was, namely, in the second year of the thirtieth Olympiad, that the Lacedemonians bethinking them how to be avenged of the Arcadians, who gave succour to the Messenians against them in the former war, entred their Territory, took the City of Phigalia or Phialia, from whence their Garrisons were soon after beaten out. Cypselus expelling the race of the Bacidae, made himself Lord of Corinth about these times, and governed it in peace thirty years, leaving for successeur his sonne Periander, one of the seven Sages, but acruell Tyrant: who among other vile acts, slew his own wife, and afterwards, as in her honour, stripped all the Corinthian women stark naked, burning their apparell, as an acceptable offering to her Ghost. Hereby we may perceive, that the wisdome of the Greeks was not excellent in those dayes, when such a one as this could bee admired as excelling all the Country.

In these times also were Zaleucus and Draco, famous Lawgivers, the one among the Lucians in Italy, the other in the City of Athens. The Lawes of Draco were so rigorous, that he was said to have written them with blood: for he rewarded every small offence with death. Wherefore his Constitutions were soon abrogated, and power given to Solon by the Athenians, to make new in their stead. But the Lawes of Zaleucus were very mild. He forbade any Gentlewoman to walk abroad with more than one Bond-woman attending on her, unless it were when she was drunk; or to goe forth of the Town by night, unless it were to some sweet-hearts bed; or to dresse her self up in immodest bravery, unless it were to inveigle a lover. By which pleasant Ordinances he effected his desire; for none would seem, in breaking the Statutes, to be in such case as challenging the dispensation. It is noted in this man as a singular example of justice, that when his own son had committed adultery, and was therefore to lose both his eyes, hee did not cause him to be pardoned, but gave one eye of his own to save the young man (who also lost one) from utter blindness.

I shall not henceforth need so farre to wander, as hitherto I often have done, in pursuing of actions collateral to the History, for inserting them in their order of time. The Chaldeans will soon fall under the Persians; ere long, encounter with the Greeks; the Greeks, with the Romans; the Romans, with many Nations. Concerning all these, as they shall successively present themselves, in their flourishing Estate, it will be enough to recapitulate the most memorable accidents, that befell them in their Minority. But in the long space of more than thirteen hundred years, which passed between the calling of Abraham, and the destruction of Jerusalem, wee find little matter, wherein the History of Israel had any dealing with other Nations, than the very neere borders. Yet read wee of many Kingdomes, that in these many ages were erected, and

vvel

and thrown down; as likewise, many memorable acts were performed in Greece and elsewhere, though not following one another at any neer distance; all which must have been quite omitted, or else reserved unto a very unreasonable rehearsal, had they not been disposed in this method, whereof he that will not allow the conveniency, may pardon the necessity.

## VI.

## The oppression of Judaea, and destruction of Jerusalem by the Chaldeans.

**N**OW to return to the Jewish Story, from whence we have so far digressed. In the third year of *Jeiojakim*, *Nabuchodonosor* the second, his Father yet living, entred *Judea* with a great Army, who besieging and forcing *Jerusalem*, made *Jeiojakim* his Vassall in despite of *Necho*, that had established him King, and took with him for pledges *Daniel*; being as yet a child, with *Aranias*, *Misael*, and *Azarias*. Also he took a part of the Church treasures; but stayed not to search them thoroughly; for *Necho* hastened to the succour of *Jeiojakim*, hoping to find *Nabuchodonosor* in *Judea*: wherein this great *Babylonian* had no disposition to hazard himself: and his Army, it being a Country of an evil affection towards him, as also far off from any secure or sure place of retreat. If he had, as may be supposed, any great strength of *Scythian* horsemen in his Army, it was the more wisely done of him, to fall back, out of the tough, so mountainous, and over-hot Country, into places that were more even and temperate. But besides all these reasons, the death of his father happening at the same time, gave him just occasion to return home, and take possession of his own Kingdome; before he proceeded further in the second care, of adding more unto it. This he did at reasonable good leisure: for the *Egyptian* was not ready to follow him so far, and to bid him battle, until the new year came in; which was the fourth of *Jeiojakim*; the first of *Nabuchodonosor*, and the last of *Necho*. In this year the *Babylonian* lying upon the Bank *Euphrates* (his own Territory bounding it on the North-side) attended the arrivall of *Necho*. There, after a resolute contention for victory, *Necho* was slain, and his Army remaining forced to save it selves, which full ill it did, by a violent retreat. This victory so *Nabuchodonosor* so well pursued, as he recovered all *Syria*; and whatsoever the *Egyptians* held out of their proper Territory towards the North. The *Egyptians* being in this conflict beaten, & altogether for the present discouraged, *Jeiojakim* held himself quiet, as being friend in heart unto the *Egyptian*, yet having made his peace with the *Chaldean* the year before; who contented with such profit as hee could then readily make, had forborn to lay any Tribute upon *Juda*. But this cool reservednesse of *Jeiojakim*, was on both sides, taken in ill part. The *Egyptian* King *Psummis*, who succeeded unto *Necho*, began to think upon restoring *Jeiojakim*, taken prisoner by his Father, and letting him up as a Domestickall Enemy, against his ungratefull brother. Against all such accidents, the *Judean* had prepared the usual remedy practised by his forefathers: for he had made his own son *Jeochania* King with him long before, in the second year of his own Reign, when the Boy was but eight years old. As for this rumour of *Jeiojakim*'s return, the Prophet *Jeremy* foretold; that it should prove idle, saying: *Hee shall not return thither, but he shall die in the place whither they have led him captive, and shall see this Land no more.* The *Egyptians* indeed, having spent all their Mercenary forces, and received that heavy blow at *Carchemish*, had not remaining such proportion of sharp steel, as of far gold, which without other help, is of little effect. The valour of *Necho* was not in *Psummis* *Apries*, who reigning after *Psummis*, did once adventure to shew his face in *Syria*; but after a big look, hee was glad to retire, without adventuring the hazard of a battell. Wherefore this decaying Nation fought onely with so brave words, telling such frivolous tales, as men that mean to doe nothing, use, of their glorious acts fore-past, against *Iosias* & *Jeioabaz*. In this case it was easie for *Jeiojakim* to give them satisfaction, by letting them understand the sincerity of his affection towards them, which appeared in time following. But *Nabuchodonosor* went to work more roundly. He sent a peremptory message to *Jeiojakim*, willing him not to stand upon any nice points, but acknowledge himself a Subject; and pay him Tribute: adding hereunto such fearfull threats, as made the poor *Judean* lay aside all thought of *Pharaoh*, and yeeld to doe, as the more mighty would have him. So hee continued in the

Joseph. Antiq. lib. 10. c. 7.

the obedience of *Nabuchodonosor* for three years. At this time *Jeremy* the Prophet cried out against the *Jenes*, putting them in mind that he had now three and twenty years exhorted them to repentance, but because they had stoped their ears against him, and the rest of the Prophets, hee now pronounced their captivity at hand; and that they should endure the yoke of bondage full seventy years. The same calamity he threatened to all the neighbouring Nations, to the *Egyptians*, *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Idumeans*, and the rest; foretelling that they should all drink out of the *Babylonian* Pitcher, the wine of his fury, whom they had forsaken; and after the seventy years expired, that the *Babylonians* themselves should taste of the same Cup, and be utterly subverted by the *Medes*, and *Jerem. 25.*

10 The *Judeans* permitted to return again into their own Fields and Cities. The first imprisonment of the Prophet *Jeremy* seems to have been in the fourth year of this *Jeiojakim*, at which time *Baruch* the Scribe wrote all his Prophecies out of his mouth, whom he sent to read them unto the People, and afterward to the Princes, who offered them to the King: but fearing the Kings fury, they had first set *Jeremy* at liberty, and advised him and *Baruch* to hide themselves.

*Jeiojakim*, after he heard a part of it, and perceived the ill newes therein delivered, made no more ado, but did cut the Book in pieces and cast it into the fire. All which *Jeremy* caused to be new written with this addition; that the dead body of *Jeiojakim* should be cast out, exposed in the day to the heat, and in the night to the frost, and there should be none of his seed to sit on the Throne of *David*.

Time thus running on, while *Jeiojakim* rested secure of all danger, as Tributary to the *Babylonian*, yet well thought of by the *Egyptian*; the mighty City of *Tyre* opposed itself against the *Chaldean* forces, and upon just confidence of her own strength, despised all preparation that could be made against her. Now so far as the term of seventy years was prescribed unto the desolation, as well of *Tyre*, as of *Jerusalem*, and other towns and countries; it is apparent, that they which referre the expugnation of this City unto the nineteenth year of *Nabuchodonosor*, have fure authority for their warrant. Whereupon likewise it followes of necessity, that the siege thereof began in the seventh of his Reign; as having lasted thirteen years.

10 Here I will take leave to intrude a brief note, concerning the severall beginnings that are reckoned of this great Prince his Rule, whereupon hath risen much disputation. The third year of *Jeiojakim*, was the last of *Nabulassar*, who being delivered from other cares, took notice of such as had revolted from him unto *Pharao Necho*, and sent this Noble Prince his son, with an Army into *Syria*, to reclaim them. In this expedition was *Daniel* carried away, who therefore makes mention of the same year. The year next following, being the fourth of *Jeiojakim*, was the first of *Nebuchadnezzar*; which *Jerem. 25. 1.* I affirmeth in expresse words; and from this we reckon all his time and actions that follow. In his three and twentieth year he conquered *Egypt*; and then began to reign as a great Monarch, finding none that durst offend him. The second from this year it was, wherein hee saw that vision, of the Image consisting of sundry Metals; which did prefigure the succession of great Kingdomes, that should rule the Earth, before the coming of Christ. I will not stand to dispute about this, which is the best conclusion that I find, of long disputations: but return unto the siege of *Tyre*, which began in the seventh of his Reign.

The City of *Tyre* covered all the ground of an Island, that was divided from the main, by a deep and broad channell of the Sea. The *Chaldeans* had no Fleet, and were no Sea-men; the *Tyrians*, in multitude of goodly Sips, and skill to use them, excelled all other Nations; and every wind, from one part or other, brought needfull provisions into the City. Wherefore neither force, nor famine could greatly hurt the place; wherefore nevertheless the judgements of God denounced against it by *Esay*, *Jeremy*, *Ezechiel* had threatened the destruction; and the obstinate resolution of *Nabuchodonosor* had fully determined to performe it. This high-minded King, impatient of resistance, undertook a vast piece of work, even to fill up the Sea that parted the Island from the Continent. The City of old *Tyrus*, that stood opposite to the new, upon the firm Land, and the mountain of *Libanus* neer adjoining that was laden with Cedars, and abundance of other trees, might furnish him with materials. Thirteen years were spent in this laborious, and almost hopelesse business. Which needeth not seem strange: for *Alexander* working upon that foundation which was remaining of *Nabuchodonosors* Peere, and being

Esay 23.  
Jerem. 25.  
Ezek. 26.

being withall assisted by a strong Fleet, was yet seven moneths ere he could make way into the City. Wherefore, if the raging of the Sea was able to carry away that which *Alexander* laboured to cover a thebes; with much more violence could it overturn, and as it were consume, the work of *Nabuchodonosor*, who laid his foundations in the bottom of the deep; striving as it were, to fill the empty belly of this Comorant, whereas the *Macedonian* did only stop the throat of it. Every man knows, God could have furthered the accomplishment of his own threats, against this place (though it had not pleased him to use, either Miracle, or such of his more immediate weapons, as are Earthquakes, and the like) by making at least the Seas calm, and adding the favourable concurrence of all second helps. But to it, please him oftentimes, in chastising the pride of man, to use the hand of man; even the hand of man striving, as may seem, against all resistance of nature and fortune. So in this excessive labour of the *Chaldeans*, every head was made bald, and every shoulder was made bare. Yet *Nabuchodonosor* would not give over till he was master of the Town.

Ezek. 19.

Joseph. Antiq.  
Jud. l. 10. c. 7.

When he was entered upon this desperate service, whether it were so, that some should receive, some mutiny in his Army, or (which is most likely, and so *Josephus* reports) some glorious rumour of the *Egyptians*, gave courage to his evil willers; *Jehojakim* renounced his subjection, and began to hope for the contrary of that which quickly fell out. For *Nabuchodonosor* gave him no leisure to do much hurt: but with part of his Army marched directly into *Judea*, where the amazed King made so little resistance (the *Egyptians* having left him, as it were, in a dream) that he entered *Jerusalem*, and layed hands on *Jehojakim*, whom he first bound and determined to send to *Babylon*; but changing counsell, he caused him to be slain in the place, and gave him the Sepulchre of an Ass, to be devoured by beasts and ravenous birds, according to the former Prophecies: leaving in his place *Jehojakim* or *Jechonias* his son; whom, after three moneths and ten dayes, *Nabuchodonosor* removed, and sent prisoner to *Babylon*, with *Ezekiel*, *Mardocheus* and *Jedech*, the high Priest. The mother of *Jechonias*, together with his servants *Eunuchs*, and all the ablest men, and best Artificers of the Land, were also then carried away Captives. This *Jechonias*, following the counsell of *Jeremy* the Prophet, made no resistance; but submitted himself to the Kings will: wherein he both pleased God, and did that which was best for himself; though at the present it might seem otherwise, to such as considered the evil that befell him; rather than the greater evil that he thereby avoided. This only particular act of his is recorded, which was good. But it seems that he was partaker, at least of his Fathers faults, if not an instigator, which was the cause, that his submitting himself to Gods pleasure did not preserve his Estate: for so we read in generall words, that he did evil in the sight of the Lord, according to all that his Father had done. In his stead *Nabuchodonosor* established *Mathania* his Uncle in the Kingdom of *Judea*, and called him *Zedechias*, which is as much to say, as the justice of God. For like as *Neco* King of *Egypt* had formerly displaced *Jehoaahas*, after his Father *Josias* was slain, and set up *Jehojakim*, the son of another mother; so *Nabuchodonosor* slew *Jehojakim*, who depended on the *Egyptians*, and carrying his son *Jechonias* Prisoner to *Babel*, gave the Kingdom to this *Zedechias*, that was whole Brother to that *Jehoaahas*, whom *Neco* took with him into *Egypt*. From *Zedechias* he required an oath for his faithfull obedience, which *Zedechias* gave him, and called the living God to witness in the same, that he would remain assured to the Kings of *Chaldea*.

In the first year of *Zedechias*, *Jeremy* saw and expounded the Vision of the ripe and rotten Grapes, the one signifying those *Judeans* that were carried away captive, the other those that stayed and were destroyed.

In the fourth of *Zedechias*, *Jeremy* wrote in a book all the evil that should fall upon *Babylon*, which book or scroll he gave to *Sherais*, when he went with the King *Zedechias* to *Babylon*, to visit *Nabuchodonosor*, willing him first to read it to the Captive *Jewes*, and then to bind it to a stone, and cast it into *Euphrates*, pronouncing these words: *This shall Babel be drowned, and shall not rise from the evil that I will bring upon her*. This journey of *Zedechias* to *Babel* is probably thought to have been in way of visitation, carrying some presents. But I further think, that he had some sure there to make, which his Lordly Master refused to grant, and sent him away discontented. For at his return all the bordering Princes sent Messengers to him, inciting him (as it seems) to those unquiet countries, from which *Jeremy* debatted both him and them. The Prophet, by Gods

appoint-

appointment, made bonds and yokes, one of which he wore about his own neck, others he sent unto the five Kings, of *Edom*, *Moab*, *Ammon*, *Tyre* and *Zidon* by those Messengers which came to visit *Zedechias*: making them know, that if they and the Kings of *Judea* abode in the obedience of *Babylon*, they should then possess and enjoy their own countries; if not, they should assuredly perish by the sword, by fire, and by pestilence.

He also foretold them, that those Vessels which as yet remained in *Jerusalem*, should also travell after the rest, and at length they should be restored again.

The same year *Ananias*, the false Prophet, took off the wooden Chain which *Jeremy* wore in sign of the Captivity of the *Jewes*, and brake it: saying; that in like manner, after two years God would break the strength of *Babel*, and the yoke which he layd on all Nations; restore *Jechonias* and all the *Jewes*, with the Vessels and riches of the Temple, and give an end to all these troubles. But *Jeremy*, in stead of his wooden yoke, wore a Coller of yron: and in sign that *Ananias* had given a deceitfull and fallie hope to the people, he foretold the death of this cold Prophet, which seized upon him in the second Moneth. After this, when *Zedechias* had wavered long enough between Faith and Passion, in the eighth year of his reign, he practised more seriously against *Nabuchodonosor*, with his Neighbours the *Edomites*, *Ammonites*, *Moabites*, *Tyrrians*, and others that were promised great aydes of the *Egyptians*: in confidence of whose resistance, he determined to shake off the *Babylonian* yoke. Hereof when *Nabuchodonosor* had knowledge, he marched with his Army in the dead of Winter, toward *Jerusalem*, and besieged it. *Jeremy* perswaded *Zedechias* to render the City and himself; but being confident of the help from *Egypt*, and being perswaded by his Counsellors and false Prophets, that it was impossible that the Kingdom of *Judea* should be extirpate, untill the coming of *Silo* (according to the Prophecy of *Jacob*) he despised the words of *Jeremy*, and imprisoned him. For *Jeremy* had told the King that the City should be taken and burnt; that the King should not escape, but be taken prisoner, and brought to the presence of *Nabuchodonosor*; that he should not perish by the sword, but being carried to *Babel*, die his naturall death.

*Jerusalem* being the following year surrounded by *Nabuchodonosors* Armie; the King of *Egypt*, *Pharao Hophra*, according to *Jeremy*, (*Herodotus* calleth him *Apries*) entered the border of *Judea* with his Army to succour *Zedechias*, of whose revolt he had been the principall Author. But *Jeremy* gave the *Jewes* faithfull counsell, willing them not to have any trust in the succours of *Egypt*: for he assured them that they should return again, and in no sort relieve them. And it fell out accordingly. For when the *Chaldeans* removed from *Jerusalem* to encounter the *Egyptians*, these vaunting Parons abandoned their enterprise, and taking *Gaza* in their way homeward, returned into *Egypt*, as if they had already done enough; leaving the poor people of *Jerusalem* to their destined miseries.

In the mean while the *Jewes*, who in their first extremity had manumised their Hebrew Bond-men (as Gods Law required at the year of Jubile) and made them free, thereby the better to encourage them to fight; did now upon the breaking up of the *Chaldee* Army, repent them of their Charity: and thinking all had been at an end, held them perforce to their former slavery. But the *Chaldee*s being returned to the siege, the Prophet *Jeremy*, when the State of *Jerusalem* began now to grow to extremity, counselled *Zedechias* to render himself unto them; assuring him of his own life, and the safety of the Citie, if he would so do. But his obstinate heart conducted him to that wretched end, which his neglect of God, and his infidelitie and perjurie, had provided for him.

Three and twenty Moneths (as some do reckon it) or, according to *Josephus*, eighteen, the *Babylonian* Army lay before *Jerusalem*, and held it exceeding straitly besieged. For they built Forts against it round about, or (as *P. Martyr* hath it) *extruxerunt contra eam turres ligneam per circumitum*: They surrounded the City with wooden Towers, so as the besieged could neither fall out, nor receive into the City any supply of men or victuals. *Josephus* reports, that they over-topped the Walls with high Towers raised upon Mounts; from which they did so beat upon the Wall with their engines, that the defendants were compelled to forsake their Stations. Now although it were so that the besieged also raised Counter-buildings, like unto these, yet the great King of *Babel*, who commanded all the Regions thereabouts, and had the Woods and Rivers

H h h

to

to obey him, found means to overthrow all the Citizens endeavours; and to beat down as fast from without, as they raised from within; the body and foundation of his own workes being guarded by the Walls of *Jerusalem* interposed; and theirs within, layd open to their enemies disturbance. Besides, both Famine and Pestilence (which commonly accompany men straightly besieged) grew on fast upon them, whereby, when the number, strength, and courage of the *Jewes* failed, the *Chaldeans* made a breach, and forcing an entry, their Princes did feat themselves, as Lords of the Town, in the middle gate. *Zedechias* beholding this uncomfortable sight, and finding no remedy of the danger present, lost both his courage and his hope at once; and shifted himself, together with his Wives, Children, Princes, and principall servants, out of the Citie, by to a way under ground; leaving his amazed and guidelesse people, to the mercilesse sword of their enemies. Thus he, who, when *Jeremy* the Prophet perswaded him to render himself, despised both the counsell of God, and the force of *Nabuchodonosor*, used now that remedy, which *Wolphius* truly termeth, *Triste, turpe, & infelix*: *Wofull, shamefull, and unfortunate*.

By this secret subterranean vault, *Zedechias* making his stealth, recovered (by the help of the dark night) the Plains or Desarts of *Fericho*: but by reason of the trait that followed him and his (every one leading with him those whom they held most dear unto them) he was easily traced and pursued. How great soever the company was that attended on him, yet, as *Josephus* reports it, they, on whose fidelity he most reposed himself, no sooner beheld the *Chaldeans* approach, but they all abandoned his defence, and shifted themselves into the Desarts, as they could. For whom God had forsaken, no man followed, but the ministers of his vengeance; by whom *Zedechias* being made Prisoner, with his Children and Princes, he was conveyed to *Rebla* or *Reblash*, a City (as some think) of *Nephthalim*, where *Nabuchodonosor* then lay, as a place indifferent between *Jerusalem* and *Tyre*, with both which at once he had to doe.

Now after *Nabuchodonosor* had layd before *Zedechias* the many graces and benefits conferred upon him, together with the notable fallhood and perjury, wherewith he had requited them; he commanded his Children, Princes and Friends to be slain before his face. This being done, to the end that so lamentable a spectacle should be the last that e-  
ver he should behold in the World, he caused his eyes to be torn out of his head, and carried him in a slavish manner to *Babel*, where he consumed the rest of his wretched life in perpetuall imprisonment. Herein this most marvellous Prophecy of *Ezechiel* was performed; *Adducam eum in Babyloniam, & isam non videbit*: I will bring him into Babylon, and he shall not see it.

Thus in the eleventh and last year of *Zedechias*, which was the eighteenth of *Nabuchodonosor*, the *Chaldeans* entred the City by force, where sparing no sex nor age, they committed all to the sword that they therein found.

In the year next following, *Nabuzaradan* Generall of the Army, burnt the Kings Palace, and the rest of *Jerusalem*: and after this fire had lasted from the seventh to the tenth day, he also burnt the Temple of God to the ground, when it had stood four hundred thirty and one years.

After this, upon a second search, *Nabuzaradan* (not yet satiated with blood) commanded seventy and two others to be slaughtered, which had hidden themselves from the first fury, to wit, the chief, and the second Priest, two Commanders of *Zedechias* his men of Warre, five of his House-hold servants, and others to that number; carrying away to *Babylon* the ablest of the people throughout all *Judea*; and leaving the poorest labouring soules, with some that followed the party of *Nabuchodonosor*, to till the ground: over whom he left Governour, *Godolia* the Nephew of that *Saphan*, whom *Josias* had formerly employed in the reformation of Religion, who is, for his justice and equity, by *Josephus* highly commended. This man, a Jew by Nation, left *Zedechias*, as it seemeth, in the beginning of the Warre: and by *Jeremies* desire to live with him, it appeareth that he had embraced the same advice which the Prophet gave unto *Zedechias*; which was, to submit himself altogether to the *Babylonians*; who being ordained by God to exercise his justice, was therefore resistlesse. The Prophet *Jeremy* being left to his own choice, either to live in *Chaldea*, or elsewhere, he made election of *Godolia*, to whom he was recommended; who not only embraced *Jeremy*, but gave comfort to all the other *Jewes* that were left under his charge, promising them favour & liberty.

so long as they remained obedient subjects to *Nabuchodonosor*, by whom he was established Provinciall Governour of his own Nation.

But ere that year was expired, a Prince of the late Kings house (who during the siege of *Jerusalem*, had kept himself out of the form, with *Baalis* King of the *Amonites*) being followed by ten other chosen men, while *Godolia* feasted them in *Maspha* or *Mispha*, the City of his residence, trayterously slew him, together with divers *Chaldeans* and others that accompanied him. This done, he made an escape, and in his way encountering with eighty persons, repairing towards *Godolia* with presents, he slew the most of them, and spared the rest, because they promised to discover unto him some Treasures hidden in the fields during the war. He also took with him a Daughter of *Zedechias*, committed to the care of *Godolia* by *Nabuchodonosor*. This practice and intent of *Ismael* had been formerly discovered unto *Godolia* by *Johanan*, one of the Leaders of the few remaining *Jewes*; but *Godolia* was incredulous.

*Judea* being now left without a Governour (for *Ismael* durst not take it upon him, but retired himself, or rather fled as fast as he could to the *Amonites*) the residue of the *Jewes*, fearing the revenge of the *Chaldeans*, resolved to fly away into *Egypt*, and brought *Jeremy* to ask counsell of God for them: who readily made them answer, that if they remained in *Judea*, God would provide for them, and shew them mercy; but if they sought to save themselves in *Egypt*, that they should then undoubtedly perish. Notwithstanding this advice, the *Jewes* held their determination; and despising the Oracle of God, and constraining *Jeremy* and *Baruch* to accompany them, they travelled into *Egypt*, and inhabited by the permission of *Pharao*, neer unto *Taphnes*: where when *Jeremy* often reprehended them for their Idolatry, foretelling both the destruction of themselves, and the *Egyptians*, also, he was by these his own hard-hearted and ungratefull Country-men, stoned to death; and by the *Egyptians*, who greatly revenged him, buried neer the Sepulchre of their own Kings.

*Finis Libri secundi.*

Hhh 2

THE



# THE FIRST PART OF THE HISTORIE OF THE WORLD:

Intreating of the Times from the destruction of *Jerusalem* to the time of *PHILIP* of  
MACEDON.

## THE THIRD BOOK.

### CHAP. I.

*Of the time passing between the destruction of Jerusalem, and the fall  
of the Assyrian Empire.*

#### S. I.

*Of the connexion of sacred and prophane Historie.*



THE course of Time, which in profane Histories might rather be discerned through the greatest part of his way hitherto passed, in some out-worn footsteps, than in any beaten path, having once in Greece by the *Olympiads*, and in the Eastern countries by the accompt from *Nabonassar*, left surer marks, and more applicable to actions concurrent, than were the War of *Troy*, or any other token of former date; begins at length in the ruin of *Jerusalem* to discover the connexion of antiquity fore-spent, with the story of succeeding ages. Manifest it is, that the originall and progresse of things could ill be sought in those that were ignorant of the first creation: as likewise that the affairs of Kingdoms and Empire

afterwards grown up, are not to be found among those that have now no state nor policy remaining of their own. Having therefore pursued the story of the World unto that age, from whence the memory of succeeding accidents is with little interruption of fabulous discourse derived unto us, I hold it now convenient briefly to shew by what means and circumstances the History of the *Hebrews*, which of all other is the most ancient, may be conjoynd with the following times, wherein that Image of sundry metals, discovered by God unto *Nebuchadnezzar*, did reign over the earth, when *Israel* was either none, or an unregarded Nation.

Herein I doe not hold it needfull to insist upon those authorities which give, as it were by heare-say, a certain year of some old *Assyrian* King unto some action or event, whereof the time is found expressed in Scripture: for together with the end of *Ninus* his

line

line in *Sardanapalus*, if not before, all such computations were blotted out; the succession of *Belochus* and his issue that occupied the kingdom afterwards, depending upon the uncertain relations of such as were neither constant in assigning the years of his beginning, nor of credit enough for others to rely upon. Let it therefore suffice that the consent and harmony which some have found in the years of those over-worn Monarchs, doth preserve their names, which otherwise might have been forgotten. Now concerning the later Kings of that Nation, howsoever it be true that we find the names of all or most of them in Scriptures, which are recorded by prophane Historians, yet hereby could we only learn in what age each of them lived; but not in what year his reign began or ended, were it not that the reign of *Nebuchadnezzar* is more precisely applied to the times of *Jehojakim* and *Zedechia*. Hence have we the first light whereby to discover the means of connecting the sacred and prophane Histories. For under *Nabuchadnezzar* was the beginning of the captivity of *Juda*, which ended when 70. years were expired; and these 70. years took end at the first of *Cyrus*, whose time being well known, affords us means of looking back into the ages past, and forwards into the race of men succeeding. The first year of *Cyrus* his reign in *Persia*, by generall consent, is joynd with the first year of the 55. *Olympiad*, where, that he reigned three and twenty years before his Monarchy, and seven years afterwards, it is apparent, and almost out of controversy. Giving therefore four hundred and eight years unto the distance between the fall of *Troy*, and the instauration of the *Olympiad*, by *Iphitus*; we may easily arrive unto those antiquities of Greece, which were not merely fabulous. As for Princes ruling the whilst in sundry parts of the world, *S. Augustine* and others may be trusted in setting down their times, which they had by Tradition from Authors of well-approved faith and industry.

From *Cyrus* forwards, how the times are reckoned unto *Alexander*, and from him to the battell of *Actium*, it were (peradventure) in this place impertinent to set down. But seeing that the beginning and end of the *Babylonian* captivity are marks whereby we are chiefly directed, in passing from the first unto the latest years of the world, though any story, with least interruption; it is very expedient that we take some pains to inform our selves truly of the 70. years during which it continued, even from *Nabuchadnezzar* unto *Cyrus*.

#### S. II.

*A brief rehearall of two opinions touching the beginning of the captivity: with an answer to the cavils of Porphyrie, inveighing against S. Matthew and Daniel, upon whom the later of these opinions is founded.*

Many Commentators, and other Historians and Chronologers find that the captivity then began when *Jechonias* was carried prisoner into *Babylon*, eleven years before the final destruction of *Jerusalem* under *Zedechias*. This they prove out of divers places in *Ezechiel*, especially out of the fourteenth chapter, where he makes a plain distinction between the beginning of the Captivity, and utter destruction of *Jerusalem* by *Nabuzaradan*, in these words, *In the five and twentieth year of our being in Captivitie, in the beginning of the year, in the tenth day of the month, in the fourteenth year after that the Citie was smitten.* In which words he beginneth the captivity in plain terms, eleven years before the City was destroyed. *Beroaldus* is of opinion that it began in the first of *Nabuchodonosor*, and the fourth of *Joakim*; which he endeavours to prove out of the second of *Chronicles*, but more especially out of Saint *Matthew*, and *Daniel*, whose words afford matter of disputation, but serve not to make good so much as *Beroaldus* would enforce. That place of *S. Matthew*, and the whole book of *Daniel* have ministred occasion of scoffing and railing at the Christian Religion to that wretched man *Porphyrie*, who, not understanding how the sons of King *Jesus* were called by divers names, as *Epiphanius* hath shewed at large, thought that the Apostle had spoken he knew not what in reckoning the sons, or, according to some Translations, the Sonne and Nephews of that good King, begotten about the time of the Captivity. Upon *Daniel* also the same *Porphyrie* doth spend the twelfth of his malicious books written against the Christians, affirming, that these prophecies and visions remembered by *Daniel*, were written long after his death, and at, or near the time

H h h 3

of

Mac. 11.

Jos. ant. 11.

of *Antiochus Epiphanes*. This fond supposition of his, *Ensebius*, *Apollonius*, and others, have sufficiently answered. For the seventy Interpreters, who converted the old Testament about an hundred years before *Epiphanes*, did also turn this book of *Daniel* out of Hebrew into Greek, as a part of Scripture received. And were there no other argument to confound *Porphyrie*, than that of *Alexander Macedon*, it was sufficient, who lived divers years before *Antiochus Epiphanes*. For *Faddus* the high Priest shewed that great Conquerour, when he came towards *Jerusalem* to have destroyed it, this book of *Daniel*, wherein he beheld his own glory foretold, as the same was plainly expounded unto him; which not only stayed his hand from the haime of that City and people, but his assurance and resolution was so confirmed and strengthened thereby, so as despising all future perill and resistance, he conquered *Darius*, and the Eastern Empire, in a shorter time than *Nabuchodonosor* had done one City, to wit, *Tyre* in *Phoenicia*.

It is true indeed that the *Jews* themselves give lesse authority to *Daniel*, than to *Moses* and the *Prophets*, accomping his book among those which they call *Cetaphim*, or *Hagiographa*, or holy Writings, which they say *Esdras* and the Seniors of the Synagogue compiled after their return from *Babylon*. But first, that the book of *Daniel* (I mean so much as is found in the Hebrew) is Canonically: secondly, that it was written by *Daniel* himself, and not by *Esdras* and the Seniors, we may assure our selves by testimony of Councils and Fathers. For in the Councell of *Laodicea* held about the year of our Lord 368. after the death of *Justinian* the Emperour, and after the *Nicene* Councell three and forty years, this book of *Daniel* was received, verified and confirmed among the other Canonically Scriptures, as in the *Epitomy* of the same Councell it may be seen; and so doth *Meliton* the most ancient Bishop of *Sardis* number it, witness *Ensebius* in his Ecclesiasticall History, the fourth book, and five and twentieth chapter: so doth the same Author in the Catalogue of Canonically books upon *Origen*: so doth *Hilarius* in his Preface upon the *Psalms*, and *Epiphanius* in his book of *Weights and Measures*, &c. To these I may adde *Saint Hierome*, *Gregorie Nazianzene*, and others: for the *Hagiographa* books or holy Writings, the *Jews* and *Rabbines* reckon to be these: *Daniel*, *Psalms*, *Proverbs*, *Job*, *Canticles*, *Ruth*, *Lamentations*, *Ecclesiastes*, *Hester*, *Ezra*, *Nehemiah*, and the *Chronicles*. And that it was *Daniel*, and not *Esdras*, that wrote this book, Gods commandment unto him by his Angell, to seal up the same to the time appointed, is an unanswerable testimony. Yea, that which exceedeth all strength of other proof, our Saviour Christ, who citeth no Apocryphall Scripture, in *Matthew* and *Mark* allegeth *Daniel* the Prophet, to wit, the last verse of his ninth chapter. Further, in the fifth of *John*, Christ distributeth the risen from the dead, as in *Daniel* the twelfth, verse the second, *Saint Paul* describeth *Antichrist* out of *Daniel*, and the Revelation is wholly an interpretation of *Daniel's* visions.

Mar. 24. 15.  
Mark 13. 14.

Dan. 12.

## §. III.

That the 70. years of captivity are to be numbred from the destruction of *Jerusalem*; not from the migration of *Jechonia*.

**H**AVING thus far digressed in maintaining that authority which must often be cited in the present argument, it is now convenient, that we return unto the differences of opinion concerning the beginning of these 70. years. Neither will I stand to trouble my self and others with laying open the grounds or weakness of that which *Ensebius* and some few namelesse Authors have sometimes held in this point, which is lately revived by *Beroaldus*; but will forth-with enter into consideration of that opinion, which many both ancient and late Writers have so earnestly maintained, that it wants not much of being common.

Four Kings of *Juda* were carried away captives to *Babylon*: First, *Manasses*; then *Jehojakim*, and with him among others, *Daniel* the Prophet: thirdly, *Jechonias*, and with him *Ezechiel*: lastly, *Zedechias*, at which time the city & temple were destroyed. To the first of these captivities the beginning of the 70. years is referred by none that I have read; to the second, by few, and with weak proof; to the third, by very many, and with much confidence. For besides those places of *Ezechiel* already cited, there is a strong argument gathered

gathered out of *Jeremy*, which may seem to make the matter plain. For the Prophet, in comforting the people that were carried away with *Jechonias*, useth these words: *Thus saith the Lord, After 70. years be accomplished at Babel, I will visit you, and perform my good promise towards you, and cause you to return to this place.*

But it stands indeed with little reason that we should seek the interpretation of a prophecy out of circumstances, when the prophecy is such as doth sufficiently expound it self. *Jeremy* hath already, in the fourth year of *Jehojakim*, denounced the judgement of God against the Land, for the fins and impiety of that obstinate people, in these words: *Behold, I will send and take to me all the families of the North, saith the Lord, and Nebuchadnezzar the King of Babel, my servant, and will bring them against this Land, and against the Inhabitants thereof, and against all these Nations round about, and I will destroy them, and make them an astonishment, and an hissing, and a continual desolation. Moreover, I will take from them the voice of mirth, and the voice of gladnesse, the voice of the Bridegroom, and the voice of the Bride, the noise of the mill-stones, and the light of the candle, and this whole Land shall be desolate, and an astonishment, and these Nations shall serve the King of Babel 70. years. And when 70. years are expired, I will visit the King of Babel. Here we see prescribed unto the captivity the terme of 70. years; which were to commence, neither when the prophecy was uttered, nor when *Jehojakim*, who then reigned, was taken by *Nebuchadnezzar*; nor yet in the time of *Jechonias*, but with the utter desolation of the City, whereof *Jeremy* did again give notice to those that were already in *Babylon*, at such time as he sent them the comfort of deliverance before rehearsed. And so did the people understand this prophecy, in those times when they saw it accomplished, beginning the 70. years at the time of the desolation, as manifestly appears in the end of the History of *Juda*, where it is said thus: *They burnt the house of God, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem, and burnt all the Palaces thereof with fire, and all the precious vessels thereof to destroy all: And they that were left by the sword, carried be away to Babel, and they were servants to him and to his sons, until the kingdome of the Persians, had rule, to fulfill the word of the Lord by the mouth of Jeremias, until the Land had her fill of her Sabbath: for all the days that she lay desolate, she kept Sabbath, to fulfill 70. years. But in the first year of Cyrus King of Persia (when the word of the Lord spoken by the mouth of Jeremias, was finished) the Lord stirred up the spirit of Cyrus. We seldom find one piece of Scripture so precisely and plainly expounded by another, as in this prophecy, to have afterwards been the subject of altercation. For one can hardly devise how, either the desolation could have been expressed more sensibly, than it was by the Prophet, or the event of the prophecy have been more exactly set down, than it was in the place now last of all cited. If it be requisite that we bring more proof in so evident a case, the ninth Chapter of *Daniel* yeelds testimony sufficient, unto this expedition of *Jeremias* his prophecy, that *Jerusalem* was to lye waste 70. years. For in the first year of *Darius* the *Mede*, which was the last of the 70. *Daniel* obtained of God, the deliverance that had been promised, by prayer, which he made upon consideration of the time that was expired: as he telleth in these words: *In the first year of his reign, I Daniel understood by books the number of the years whereof the Lord had spoken unto Jeremias the Prophet, that he would accomplish 70. years in the desolation of Jerusalem.* So that howsoever the time of *Daniel* his own captivity be reckoned from the taking of *Jehojakim*, and that the people carried away with *Jechonias*, did accompt, as well they might, the years of their own captivity, yet with the generall desolation of the Country, wherein were few or none of the *Israelites* left remaining to inhabite, began in the nineteenth year of *Nabuchodonosor* the great captivity, which by Gods appointment continued unto the end of seventy years.**

This I will not further seek to prove, by the authority of *Josephus* and others affirming the same; forasmuch as that which already hath been produced, is enough to satisfy any man that hath not fully determined to hold the contrary.

## §. IV.



## §. IV.

*Sundry opinions of the Kings which reigned in Babylon during the 70. years.*

**V** Hat Kings reigned in *Babylon*, during these seventy years of the Captivity, and how long each of them did wear the Diademe, it is a matter of no great importance to know, forasmuch as neither their acts were notable in the age wherein they lived, nor the length of their reigns any way helpful to the concordance of times, foregoing or succeeding. The conquests recounted by *Xenophon* of *Syria*, *Arabia* (or rather some part of it) *Hircania*, *Bactria*, and perhaps of some other Countries, may seem fruits of the victories obtained by *Nebuchadnezzar* the Great (or by some of his Ancestors) in the former part of his life, before he betook himself to ease, and to the sumptuous building of his great *Babel*, for the house of his Kingdom, and for the honour of his Majesty, where it may seem that he and his Heirs kept a great state, and did very little. The idle behaviour of the *Assyrian* Souldiers, in such skirmishes as afterwards they had with the *Medes*, doth argue no lesse. For whereas under *Nebuchadnezzar*, they were so stout and industrious, that (to omit other proofs) they attempted, and finished that hardy piece of work, of winning the strong City of *Tyre*, by joyning unto it the continent, filling up the deep and broad channell of the Sea, dividing it from the main with a mole or piece of earth, and other matter; the reparation whereof when the Sea had washed it away, was the very greatest of *Alexanders* works: in the times following, they became timorous, that they durst not approach nearer to the enemy than their bows would carry, but were ready to turn their backs, as soon as any, though inferior in numbers, adventuring within the distance, offered to charge them.

Now as their actions from the end of *Nebuchadnezzars* wars, till the ruin of their Empire, were not worthy to be recorded; so was the distinction of their times, and reign of their severall Kings, unworthy of the great labour that hath in vain been taken in that business. For when it is granted, that the captivity of *Juda*, ending with that Empire, lasted 70. years, we may as reasonably forbear to search into the particular continuance of two or three flouthfull Kings, as we are contented to be ignorant of the ages of the *Patriarchs*, and their children living in the *Egyptians* servitude; resting satisfied in both with the generall assured sum.

Yet forasmuch as many have travelled in this business, upon desire (as I take it) to approve the beginning and end of the 70. years, not only by the reigns of other Princes, ruling elsewhere, but by the times of the *Assyrians* themselves; I will not refuse to take a little pains in collecting their opinions, and shewing what I think may best be held for likely, if the certain truth cannot be found.

The opinions are many, and greatly repugnant, both in recounting the Kings themselves, and in setting down the years of their severall reigns. The first (as I take it) the surest, is theirs, who meely follow the authority of the Scriptures, without borrowing any help from others. These name only three Kings, *Nabuchadnezzar*, *Evilmerodach*, and *Balthasar*. Neither have they only the silence of *Daniel*, who names none other, to be their warrant, but the prophecy of *Jeremy* precisely, and in a manner purposely teaching the very same. For God, by the mouth of that Prophet, shewing that he being absolute Lord of all, would dispose of all according to his own will, and making it known that he had put some Countries here named, into the hands of the King of *Babel*, saith thus: *And all Nations shall serve him, and his Son, and his Sons Son, until the very time of his land come also; then many Nations and great Kings shall serve themselves of him.* These words, expressing the continuance of the *Chaldean* Empire, and number of the Kings, will hardly be qualified with any distinction. But indeed I find no other necessity of qualification to be used herein, than such as may grow out of mens desire to reconcile the Scriptures unto profane Authors. And this desire were not unjust, if the consent of all histories were on the one side, and the letter of the holy Text were single on the other side.

But contrariwise, the Authors which are cited in this case, are so repugnant one to the other, & the proofs of their different reports are so slender & insufficient, that the succession of these Princes, had it not bin thus delivered in Scriptures, but only set down by

some

some Author of equal credit with the rest, might very well have found and deserved as good belief, as any of those things which they have delivered in this point. For some there are, who following *Josephus*, derive that Empire, as by descent, from father to son, through five generations; beginning with *Nabuchodonosor* the great, and giving to him 43. years, to *Evilmerodach* 18. to *Niglissar* the son of *Evilmerodach*. 40. to *Labofardach* the son of *Niglissar* 9. months, and lastly, to *Balthasar* (whom *Josephus* intimates to be of the race of *Nabuchodonosor*, without naming his father) 17. years. And this opinion (save that he forbears to reckon the years, and plainly calls *Balthasar* the son of *Labofardach*) Saint *Hierome* doth follow, alleging *Berosus* and *Josephus* as a testator of *Berosus*, for his Authors; though *Berosus*, as he is cited by *Josephus*, report the matter far otherwise. For he tells us that *Evilmerodach* the son of *Nabuchodonosor* did reign but two years, for his wickedness and lust, slain by his sisters husband *Niglissar*, who occupied the kingdom after him four years, and left it to his own son *Labofardach*; who being an ill-conditioned boy, was at the end of nine months slain by such as were about him, and the kingdom given to one *Nabonidus*, who held it by the election of the Conspirators, and left it unto *Cyrus* after 17. years. This relation ill agrees with that of *Josephus*, and both of them as bad with the Scriptures, in number either of years, or of generations; yet the particularities which they handle, have procured unto them some authority, so that the names which they have inserted, are taken as it were upon trust. There is a third opinion which makes the three last Kings brethren, and sons of *Evilmerodach*; and this may well enough agree with the Scripture: though I had rather believe *Xenophon*, who saith that the last King of *Babylon* was immediate successor to his father. But whereas the Author of the Scholasticall History, who is founder of this opinion, placeth between him that took *Jerusalem*, and *Evilmerodach*, another *Nabuchodonosor*: plain enough it is that he hath, out of any History sacred or profane, as little warrant to guide him, as we have reason to follow him. *Eusebius*, *Sulpitius*, *Severus* and *Theodoret*, upon better ground have supposed, that *Evilmerodach* and *Balthasar* were brethren and sons of the great *Nabuchodonosor*. This is built on the fifth Chapter of *Daniel*, wherein *Balthasar* (for of *Evilmerodach* there is none that ever doubted) is often called *Nabuchodonosor* his son. And so common grew this explication, that *S. Hierome* called it the vulgar opinion. But the place of *Jeremy* before cited, proves that *Balthasar* was not the son indeed, but the grand-child of that great Conqueror, though by the phrase very common in Scriptures, and familiar in those *Eastern* languages, he was called the son.

*Ammius* his *Metasthenes* hits very rightly the seventy years of captivity, giving to *Nabuchodonosor* 45. years, to *Evilmerodach* 30. years, and to the three sons of *Evilmerodach*, Nephews of *Nabuchodonosor*, fourteen years; that is to *Reg-Assar* the eldest son, three years, to *Lab-Assar* the second son, six years, and to *Balthasar* the third son, five.

To this account agreeing with the Scriptures, both in the whole sum of years, and in the number of generations, I have sometime subscribed, as not daring to reject an appearance of truth, upon no greater reason than because the Author was of *Ammius* his edition. Yet could I not satisfy my self herein; both for that none of the Ancient, and few such of the modern Writers as deserve to be regarded, have consented with this *Metasthenes*; and for that in making *Balthasar* succeed unto his brother in the kingdom, and not unto his father, he is wholly against *Xenophon*, whose History of the elder *Cyrus* in his *Assyrian* war I cannot slightly value in many respects, and especially because it is very agreeable to the Scriptures, in the taking of *Babylon*; while the King was at his drunken feast.

Seeking therefore diligently into all circumstances that might give any light in this obscurity, I found manifest proof, that the time allotted unto *Balthasar* by *Ammius* his *Metasthenes*, was far short of the truth, which is enough to render all suspected that he hath said in distributing what part of the 70. years he pleased among the rest. For in the third year of *Balthasar*, *Daniel* saw a vision, after which he was sick certain days, but when he rose up, he did the Kings business: from which business, that he did afterwards withdraw himself, and live retired, so long, that he was forgotten in the Court, it appears plainly, both by the many words which the old Queen used to set out his infirmity, and by the Kings asking of him, when he came into his presence, whether he

were

Don. 5. 11, 12, were *Daniel*. Now to think that a man of such account and place as *Daniel* had held, could in two years have been worn out of remembrance, were in my judgement a very strange conceit, which rather than I would entertain, I can well be contented to think the whole story (thus related) a part of *Annius* his impostures.

Out of these reports of *Josephus*, *Berosus*, and others, many new opinions are framed; by conjectures of late Writers. For the endurance of the captivity being 70. years, and these years extending unto the first of *Cyrus*, in which course of time *Nabuchadnezzar*, his son and grand-child, must have reigned; it hath seemed needfull to supply the years of these three descents, by inserting some, whose reigns might fill up the whole continuance of the captivity; with which the time allotted by *Berosus* and others, to *Evilmerodach* and *Balthasar*, joyned unto the years following the nineteen of *Nabuchadnezzar*, 10 (wherein *Jerusalem* was laid desolate) are nothing even.

Therefore *Mercator* and others following him, fashion the years of *Evilmerodach* in this sort. They say, that the 18. years given to him by *Josephus* in the tenth of his Antiquities, should be read and numbered 28. years, and the two years that *Berosus* hath allowed to *Evilmerodach* should be written 23. in the first number the figure of (1) is mistaken for the figure of (2.) and in the latter there should have bin added the figure of (3.) to that of (2.) this granted (to wit) that *Evilmerodach* reigned 28. years, whereof five together with his father, and 23. after his death, and the same number of 23. added to the 25. which *Nabuchodonosor* lived after the destruction of *Jerusalem*, make 48. then 4. years of *Niglissar* according to *Berosus*, 9. months of *Labassardach* his son, and 17. years of *Nabonidus* or *Balthasar*, make up the number of 70. years to the first of *Cyrus*. But whether by error in figures, or in words, the numbers be utterly mistaken in all copies extant; upon how weak a foundation do they build, who having nothing to help them, save only the bare names of two unknown Kings, found in authors manifestly corrupted, and such as if they had been entirely extant, were not worthy to have the place of *Jeremy* called into dispute, in regard of their authority.

#### S. V.

A more particular examination of one opinion touching the number, persons, and reigns of the Babylonian Kings.

Other suppositions, little different in substance from this of *Mercator*, I purposely forbear to rehearse, as falling under the same answer. That of *Joseph Scaliger* I may not forget, as deserving to be considered apart from the rest. He giveth to *Nabuchadnezzar* 44. years, to *Evilmerodach* two, to *Belsazer* five: and to *Nabonidus* 17. So that from the 19. of *Nabuchadnezzar*, in which *Jerusalem* was destroyed, unto the time of *Cyrus*, he accounteth only 59. years; beginning (as many do) the captivity 11. years sooner from the transportation of *Jechonia*. But hereof enough hath bin said already. That which we are now to consider, is his distribution of the time running between the 19. of *Nabuchadnezzar*, and the fall of the Chaldaean Empire: wherein if he have erred, then is all further inquisition frivolous.

Concerning the length of *Nabuchadnezzar*'s reign, I shall hereafter upon better occasion deliver my opinion. The time which he gives to *Evilmerodach* is very short, and more precisely agreeing with *Berosus* than with the Scriptures. For we find in *Jeremy*, that this *Evilmerodach* in the first of his reign, shewing all favour to *Jechonia*, did, among other things, take order for him at his table; and that he did continually eat bread before him all the dayes of his life. His portion was a continuall portion given him of the King of *Babel*, every day a certain, all the dayes of his life until he died. The very found of these words (which is more to be esteemed than the authority of *Berosus*, were he perfectly extant) imports a farre longer time than two years, wherein *Jechonia*, under this gentle Prince, enjoyed the comfort sent by God, whose commandment he had obeyed in yielding himself to *Nabuchadnezzar*. Indeed how long *Jechonia* did live, it cannot be proved; but plain it is hereby, that all his remaining dayes he did eat bread before this King. Now that he lived not so short a while after this as 2. years, it is more than likely, for he was but 55. years old when he was set at liberty, having bin 37. years in the prison, whereinto he was cast at the age of 18. years; after which time it seems plain that he begat *Salathiel*, as well by the age of *Zorobabel*, who is said to have been

but a young man, and one of *Darius* his Pages three score years after this, as by other circumstances of his imprisonment it self.

Of *Belsazer*, to whom *Scaliger* gives the next five years, naming him also *Laborsardach*, I should wonder why he calls him *Nebuchadnezzar*'s daughters son, were it not that herein I find him very carefull to help out *Berosus*, by shifting in his *Niriglisaroor*, as husband to *Nebuchadnezzar*'s daughter, and Protector of his son four of these years; by which means there remains about one year to *Belsazer* alone, agreeing neatly with the nine months assigned by *Berosus* to the son of *Niglissar*. But *Jeremy* hath told us that it was to *Nebuchadnezzar*, and to his son, and to his sons son (not to his daughters son) that the Empire was promised: which difficulty, if *Scaliger* could not help, it was well done of him to passe it over with silence.

*Nabonidus* the last of these, whom others (desirous to reconcile *Berosus* to the Scriptures) have judged to be all one with *Balthasar*, is by *Scaliger* thought to be *Darius* of the *Medes*. But herein *Scaliger* is no firm *Berosian*: for *Berosus* makes him of the same stock or race, a *Babylonian*. I speak not this to disgrace the travell of that most learned man (for it highly commends his diligence and judgement, that he was not so wedded to any author, as affected with the love of truth) but to shew that he himself, having in some points disliked those Writers, whom in general he approveth, might with greater reason have wholly reformed them by the Scriptures, wherein can be no error. Two things there are which chiefly did breed or confirm this opinion in *Scaliger*, that he whom *Berosus* calls *Nabonidus*, was the same whom *Daniel* had called *Darius* of the *Medes*: First, the phrase of Scripture, which signifies unto us, that *Darius* took the Kingdom, not saying that he wanne it by force of arms: Secondly, a fragment of *Megasthenes* found in *Eusebius*, wherein this *Nabonidus* is called the *Median*. Touching the word of the Original, or of the Greek translation, which expressing no force of arms, doth only signifie that *Darius* took or received the Kingdom, I see no reason why we should thereupon infer, that the next king entred by Election; seeing *Daniel* relateth not the means and circumstances of *Balthasar*'s death, but only the swift accomplishment of his own prophecy. Neither could it indeed have properly been said (if *Daniel* had caught up use the most expressive termes) that *Darius* of the *Medes*, breaking into the City, did win the Kingdom; seeing this was performed by *Cyrus* in the absence of *Darius*, though by his forces, and to his use. Now concerning the fragment of *Megasthenes*, true it is, that in *Eusebius* his works printed at *Basil*, in the year 1559. I find only thus much of *Megasthenes*, cited out of *Alpheus*; That *Nabuchodonosor* was more valiant than *Hercules*; that he subdued all *Lybia*, and the rest of *Asia*, as far as to the *Armenians*; and that, as the *Chaldeans* report, being returned into his Kingdom, and rapt with a divine fury, he cryed with a loud voyce: O *Babylonians*, I foretell ye of a great calamity that shall come upon you, which neither *Bel*, nor any of the gods shall avert: There will come a Persian, halfe an *Asse*, that shall bring slavery upon ye: and that, this and the like when he had spoken, he vanished. Of all this I believe little or nothing, saving that *Nabuchodonosor* knew before-hand, that his Empire should be translated, as *Daniel* had foretold, from the golden head, to the silver breast. But that he wan all *Africa* or *Lybia*, I doe hold it neither true nor probable.

If *Scaliger*'s copy of *Eusebius* were the more perfect, out of which *Megasthenes* tells us that *Nabuchodonosor* wanne both *Africa* and *Spain*, I believe the fragment so much the lesse: and am as little moved with the authority of it, where it calls a *Median* the pride and confidence of the *Assyrians*; as where it tels of *Nebuchadnezzar* his own vanishing away. Indeed that same title of half an *Asse*, by which he calleth *Cyrus*, makes me to suspect the fable, as cunningly forged out of *Apollo* his Oracle, wherein he termeth him a *Mule*, because his parentage was more noble on the mothers side than on the fathers; as *Mules* are begotten by *Asses* upon *Mares*. And thus much in answer of the two principall foundations whereon this opinion is built. As for the concinnity and coherence which it had within it self, I easily allow it. But this proves nothing; for meere fictions have not wanted these commendations: neither can any man believe that one so judicious, industrious, and deeply learned as *Joseph Scaliger*, would overshoot himself, in setting down repugnancies.

It now remaineth to examine the agreement of this with the Scriptures, from which there is no appeal. And herein it seems that *Scaliger*, well knowing his own sufficiency, hath

Dan. 8. 20.

hath been little carefull to satisfie men that would frame Arguments against him. For if the prophecy of *Daniel* were true, that the Kingdome of *Balthazar* was divided, and given to the *Medes* and *Persians*, either we must think that *Darius* of the *Medes* was not *Nabonidus*, or else we must bethink our selves what *Persian* it might be that shared the Kingdome with him. For it is not more certain that *Balthazar* lost his life and Kingdome, than that his Kingdome was divided and given to the *Medes* and *Persians*. Neither did the *Medes* and *Persians* fall out and fight for it, as by supposing *Nabonidus* to have been *Darius*, they should be thought to have done; but these two Nations did compound the body of that Empire, and were accounted as Lords over all the subject Provinces, inso much that the *Greek* Historians did commonly call those warres which *Darius*, and after him *Xerxes*, made upon *Greece*, The Warres of the *Medes*. Yea, to clear this point, even *Daniel* himself resembles that King, with whom *Alexander* fought, unto a Ramme with two horns, calling him the King of the *Medes* and *Persians*. Wherefore the whole Nation of *Chronologers* were not to have been condemned by *Joseph Scaliger*, for maintaining upon such good grounds, that *Darius* of the *Medes* was partner with *Cyrus*, in his victories, and not a *Chaldaean* King by him subdued. Neither was *Iosephus* to be the lesse regarded, for affirming that *Balthazar* was destroyed by *Darius* of the *Medes*, and his Nephew *Cyrus*, though herein he varied from *Berosus* and others, whose authority elsewhere he gladly citeth. For *Iosephus* had no reason to believe any mans faith or knowledge of those times half so well as *Daniels*, whom I believe that he understood as farre as was needfull in this case. Lawfull it was for him to allege all Authors that had any mention, though imperfect, of the same things that were contained in the writings of the *Jewes*, to whose Histories thereby he procured reputation in the *Roman* world, where they were strangers, and might seem fabulous. Even so doe *Eusebius* and other Writers willingly embrace the testimonies of Heathen books making for the truth in some particulars; yet will they not therefore be tyed in general by the self-same *Ethnick* Philosophers, but leave them where they are against the truth; as *Iosephus* in this case hath left *Berosus*. And thus much I thought it meet to say of *Scaligers* opinion in this point; holding nevertheless in due regard his learning and judgement, which if in some things it had not failed, the miracle had then been very great.

## S. VI.

What may be held as probable of the Persons and Times of Nabuchodonosor his successors.

IT now remains that I freely acknowledge mine own weaknesse, who cannot find how the 70. years of captivity are to be divided among them which reigned in *Babylon*, though I find that the distribution made of them, in such wise as already is rehearsed, be ill agreeable to the holy Scriptures. Wherefore I may truly say with *Pererius*, that we ought liberally to pardon those whose feet have failed them in the slippery waies of *Chronology*, wherein both learning and diligence are subject to take a fall at one time or other, by ignorance, forgetfulness, or heedlesse reckoning. Yet will I adventure to deliver my opinion, wherein the judgement of *Lyra* and others (holding those only to have reigned over the *Chaldeans*, whose names are found in the Scriptures) appears more conformable to reason and account of time, than any of the other Sentences or Conjectures before rehearsed. Not that I will take upon me to defend *Lyra* his Conjectures, when he supposeth by *Niglisar* and *Labosardach* to be meant the same persons which are called in Scriptures *Evilmerodach* and *Balthazar* (for this can by no good colour be maintained) but only to shew that the Kings by him cited, are likely to have occupied the whole time of seventy years. First therefore let us consider the reign of *Nabuchadnezzar*, in whose eighteenth year *Jerusalem* was taken and sacked, but in his nineteenth laid utterly desolate.

Most of Writers have given to him 43. years of reign, following therein *Berosus*. There are who have added one year more; and some have made it up 45. To dispute about the certainty were needlesse: for in shewing by what length of time the Scriptures measure him, we shall shew the certain truth.

Manifest

Manifest it is, that the 19. year of *Nabuchadnezzar*, is joyned with the 11. of *Zedechias*; as also that his eighteenth year, was the first year of *Jeconiah* his captivity; the reign of *Zedechias* occupied all the mean space, being of 11. years. This is generally agreed upon, so that it needs no further proofes: As for the beginning of his successor *Evilmerodach*, it was in the seven and thirtieth year of *Jeconiah* his captivity; so that *Nabuchadnezzar* after his 8. year (which was the first of *Jeconiah* his bondage) reigned 35. whole years, and peradventure a good part of the six and thirtieth, forasmuch as *Jeconiah* was enlarged with so great favour, not untill the end of the year. Subtracting therefore out of these four and forty, which *Nabuchadnezzar* reigned did well-neer occupy, those eighteen years of his which passed away before the captivity of *Juda*, and ruin of the City, we have remaining six and twenty years of the seventy, that were almost wholly spent when his son began to reign.

It is now to be considered how the remainder of the seventie years were divided between the Kings ruling in *Babylon* untill the first of *Cyrus*. A question more difficult (as I said before) than greatly needfull: the whole sum being certain, and the distinction of times affording no benefit in knowledge of their actions, who were slothfull Princes, Neither can any man the more justly suspect the beginning or end of the whole 70. years, for that the distribution of some part of them is only conjectural; seeing that none who gives any other termes to their beginning or end, hath refused to follow both unlikely and desperate conjectures in dividing them. I will therefore be bold to doe as others have done; knowing well before-hand, that whosoever shall discover my error, must do me the pleasure (which I could rather wish in a case more materiall) of making me to understand the truth.

Of the four and forty years remaining in accompt of *Nabuchadnezzars* death, wee are to take away the last, which was the first of *Darius* the *Mede*, & then having authority good enough to warrant us from blame of presumption, in giving us seventeen years to *Balthazar*, we find left in our hands to bestow upon *Evilmerodach* six & twenty years. Of the year belonging unto *Darius* the *Mede*, I have already spoken what I thought sufficient, in delivering my opinion of the beginning and continuance of this captivity. That *Balthazar* did reign seventeen years, we have the authority of *Iosephus*, before cited in expresse words; Wee have also the generall consent of all, or the most late Writers, interpreting *Berosus* his *Nabonidus*, who reigned so long; & *Balthazar* to have been one. But nothing moveth me so much to beleve this Tradition, as first those evident places in *Daniel*, shewing that in the third year of *Balthazar* hee followed the Kings business, and yet was forgotten ere the end of his reign; (a proof sufficient of no few years, passing under this man, especially seeing it is no where found that *Daniels* employments took end either that year or the next.) Secondly, the consideration of *Cyrus* his warres against the *Assyrians*, which beginning with the death of this mans father, & being alwaies prosperous, could hardly have occupied any longer time; though yet we make large allowance to his deeds in the lower *Asia*, which fell out in the mideway: I have already shewed, that there appears in the Scriptures likelihood enough to make it credible, that the reign of *Evilmerodach* was not short, and that men of great judgement have found it most probable, that he was a King three and twenty years. More, I think; they would have allowed him, had not the desire of satisfying *Berosus* quickened them to rest content with this. And surely it were greatly to bee wished, that books of such antiquitie, as those of *Berosus*, were extant without corruption; a great light (no doubt) they would yeeld in many dark passages of Antiquitie. I will yet confesse, that were his works never so excellent, and in all things else unquestionably true, I would not therefore condescend unto him in some one point, wherein the Scriptures were his open enemy: How much lesse ought I obey a broken fragment of his, containing onely seven or eight lines, and part even of the title corrupted, as they beleve that follow him in the rest? The Scriptures have told us that God gave the Empire to *Nabuchadnezzar*, to his sonne, and to his sonnes sonne: How long each of them held it, wee find not expresse, yet would we gladly know it of *Berosus*; or of any other, that would teach us, provided alwaies, that helping us in a particularity, hee destroyed not thereby the generall truth. More words are needlesse. It is enough to say with others, that *Berosus*, or *Iosephus* who cited him, hath been wronged by the carelesse of Scribes; and that it was as easie for those Scribes to erre in writing two

Iii

for

for six and twenty, as for three & twenty, or perhaps more ease. For, the omission of the second figure, was as likely the one way as the other; and the Character 5. signifying 6. hath a neerer resemblance of 2. than hath 3. which is used for 3. So that the numerall notes 5. expressing 26. were not safe enough from being mistaken in the true copie, and might bee altered, as ill written, if some crooked hand, or other mischance not usuall, had omitted the first strok of the former letter, or added a dash to the latter, which might cause them to seem not two different figures, but the one a correction of the other, which how it could bee supposed in 27. standing for 23. I doe not well perceive. As for the Arithmetical figures now in use, they were long after the time of *Josephus* brought in by the *Arabians*, and therefore doe not appertain unto this businesse; unless wee should ghesse that his works were corrupted in that unlearned age, which following the *Saracen* conquest, was little occupied in the studies of humanity, but in a sort wholly given over to the doctrine of *Aristotle*. If this vvill serve to make *Berosus* our friend, so let it be; if not, I vvill not purchase the favour of his authority, by forsaking *Jeremy* and *Daniel* vvhen they seem to be his opposites.

## s. VII.

Of the victories which Nabuchodonosor obtained between the destruction of Jerusalem and conquest of Egypt.

**W**ITH vvhat actions this time of 70. years vvvas entertained by the *Babylonian* Kings, fevv have vvritten, or little is remaining in record. Which may peradventure have been some cause that the time it self vvvas, and is yet sought to bee abridged, as not having left sufficient matter to vvittnesse the length of it. But by such an argument vve might as vvell deny to many people even their being. For every Nation (I know not whom I should except) between the beginning and last end of it, hath in some slothfull age rather dreamt away the time, than spent it. It is therefore no marvell, if the posterity of *Nabuchodonosor*, finding all things ready to their hand, which their hearts could have desired, betook themselves to their ease and pleasures, thinking perhaps, like the prodigall sons of greedy fathers, their own wisdom greater, which knew how to enjoy, than that of their Ancestors, which wearied away their days in the restless travell of purchasing: Though indeed the reign of *Nabuchodonosor* was so divided, that his youthfull and stronger years having been exercised in victorious armes, no small part of his life was remaining to be spent in establishing what was gotten, and gathering the fruit of his worthie labours past. The nineteenth year of his reign it was, when destroying utterly the great and mighty Citie of *Jerusalem*, hee enriched himself with abundance of spoils, and terrified all that would offer to resist him, by that fearfull example. From that time forward, he, untill his three and twentieth year, laboured in the conquest of those adjoining Regions, which God had exposed unto his sword, and commanded to wear his yoke; namely, the *Edomites*, *Mobabites*, *Ammonites*, *Tyrians*, *Sydonians*, and *Egyptians*, though some of these were already become his followers, and served under him, when *Jerusalem* was beaten down and burnt. But the *Tyrians*, whose Citie was founded on an Island, safe enough from any danger of a Land-army, & whose fleet was so strong, that they needed not to fear any enemy at sea, were neither daunted with the fall of their neighbour cities, nor with the obstinate resolution of this mighty Prince, employing all his power to their subversion.

Ezech. 26. 2.

Jerem. 25. 13. 55.

That the Citie of *Tyre* was rather well pleased, than any way discouraged with the fall of *Jerusalem* (which had held the same course that *Tyre* did, and endured all that might bee in the same quarrell against the common enemy) it appears by the words which *Ezekiel* condemneth as the common voice of *Tyre*; *Aha, the gate of the people is broken, it is turned unto me; for seeing she is desolate, I shall be replenished*. Yet at length, even in the nineteenth year of *Nabuchodonosor*, that great work of his, whereof we have already spoken, began to appear: above the vvaters, and threaten them vvith inevitable mischief.

But those prophecies of *Jeremy* & of *Esay*, vvwhich appoint unto this desolation of *Tyre* the same terme of 70. years, that vv as prescribed unto the reign of the *Chaldeans*, doe plainly

plainly shew, that she followed *Jerusalem*, the same nineteenth year of *Nabuchodonosor*, in the same, or a very like fortune. The particularities, which doubtlesse were memorable in the issue of so great and laborious a siege, are in a manner utterly lost. Thus much we find, That the Citizens perceiving the Town unable to hold out, embarked themselves, and fled into the Isle of *Cyprus*. Nevertheless it seems that this evasion served only the principall men, who escaping with their goods, abandoned the poorer sort unto the enemies fury. For, not only such people of *Tyre* as dwelt on the Continent, (who are Called her Daughters in the field) were put to the sword; but the like execution was done in the streets, into which, with excessive labour, the *Affyrrian* made way for his Horses and Chariots. Thus *Nabuchodonosor* caused his Armie to serve a great service against *Tyre*, wherein every head was made bald, and every shoulder was made bare, yet had hee no wages, nor his Armie; but was faine to rest contented with the Honour of having destroyed that Citie, which in all mens judgements had been held invincible.

The destruction of these two great and powerfull Cities, having made the name of the *Chaldeans* dreadfull in the ears of all the Nations thereabout, *Nabuchodonosor* used the advantage of that reputation which he had obtained by victories already gotten, to the getting of more, and more profitable, with lesse pain. The Kingdome of *Egypt* was the mark at which he aimed; a Country so abounding in all riches and pleasures, that it might well have tempted any Prince, finding himself strong enough, to seek occasion of quarrell against it; and so farre an enemy to the Crown of *Babylon*, that had it been poorer, yet either it must have been subdued, or the conquest of *Syria* could ill have been established. Nevertheless it was needfull, that before he entered into this businesse, the Countries adjacent should bee reduced into such termes, that either they should wholly stand at his devotion, or at least be unable to work him any displeasure. And herein the decree of God concurred, as in all prosperous enterprises, with reason of state. For, the people of *Moab*, *Ammon*, *Edom*, *Damascus*, *Kedar*, *Hazar*, and other adjoining Regions, whom God for their sins had condemned to fall under the *Babylonian* swords, were such, as regarding only their own gain, had some of them, like Ravens, followed the *Chaldean* Armie, to feed upon the carcasses that fell by the cruelty thereof; others taking advantage of their neighbours miseries, occupied the Countries which were by his victories belonging to *Nabuchodonosor*: all of them thinking, that when the *Affyrrian* had satisfied his fury, he should be faine to forsake those desolate parts, and leave the possession to those that could lay hand upon it. Particularly the *Edomites* and *Philistims* had shewed much malice to the *Jewes* when their City was taken. What good service they had done to the *Chaldeans*, I find not; if they did any, it is likely to have been with reference to their own purposes, wherein they were disappointed. The *Ammonites* were not contented to rejoyce at the fall of *Jerusalem*, but presently they entered upon the Country of *Gad*, and took possession; as if not the *Affyrrians*, but they, had subdued *Israel*. Neither can I perceive what other ground that practice had of *Baalus* King of the *Ammonites*, when he sent *Ismael*, a Prince of the blood of *Judah*, to murder *Gedalia*, whom the King of *Babel* had left Governour over those that remained in *Israel*, and to carry captive into the *Ammonites* Countrey the people that abode in *Mizpah*, than a desire of embroiling *Nabuchodonosor* with so many labours at once, as should make him retire into his own Countrey, and abandon those wasted lands to himself and others, for whom they lay conveniently. Such or the like policy the *Moabites* did exercise, whose pride and wrath were made frustrate by God, and their dissimulation condemned, as not doing right.

All these nations had the art of ravening, which is familiar to such as live or border upon deserts; and now the time afforded them occasion to shew the uttermost cunning of their treacherous wits. But *Nebuchadnezzar* did cut asunder all their devices by sharp and sudden warre, over-whelming them with unexpected ruine, as it were in one night; according to the prophecies of *Esay*, *Jeremy*, and *Ezekiel*, who foretold, with little difference of words, the greatnesse and swiftnesse of the miserie that should come upon them. With which of them he first began, I find not; it seems that *Moab* was the last which felt his hand: for so doe many good Authors interpret the prophecies of *Esay*, threatening *Moab* with destruction after three years, as having reference to the third year following the ruine of *Jerusalem*; the next year after it being spent in the *Egyptian* expedition.

expedition. This is manifest, that all the principall towns in these Regions were burnt, and the people slain, or made slaves, few excepted, who being preserved by flight, had not the courage to return to their habitations over hastily, much lesse to attempt any thing against *Nabuchodonosor*, but lived as miserable out-laws, or at least oppressed wretches, untill the end of the seventy years, which God had prescribed unto the desolation of their Countreies, as well as of the Land of *Juda*.

## §. VIII.

That Egypt was conquered, and the King therein reigning slain by *Nabuchodonosor*, contrarie to the opinion of most Authors : who, following *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*, relate it otherwise.

When by a long course of victory *Nabuchodonosor* had brought into subjection all the Nations of *Syria*, and the bordering *Arabians*, in such wise, that no enemy to himself, nor friend to the *Egyptian*, was left at his back, that might give impediment unto his proceeding, or take advantage of any misfortune; then did he forth-with take in hand the conquest of *Egypt* himself, upon which those other Nations had formerly bin depending. Of this expedition, and the victorious issue thereof, the three great Prophets, *Ezay*, *Jeremy*, and *Ezekiel*, have written so plainly, that I hold it altogether needlesse to look after more authoritie, or to cite for proof halfe of that which may be alleged out of these. Nevertheless, wee find many and good Authors, who following *Herodotus*, and *Diodorus Siculus*, are well contented to strain these Prophecies with unreasonable diligence unto such a sense, as gives to *Nabuchodonosor* little more than the honour of having done some spoile in *Egypt*, omitting the conquest of that Land by the *Babylonian*, and referring the death of *Apries* or *Hophra* to a chance long after following, which had no coherence with these times or affairs. So preposterous is the delight which many men take in the means and second helps conducing to their purpose, that oftentimes they doe preferre the Commentator before the Author; and to uphold a sentence, giving testimony to one clause, doe carelesly overthrow the history it self, which thereby they sought to have maintained. The reports of *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*, concerning the Kings of *Egypt*, which reigned about these times, are already rehearsed in the former book : but that which they have spoken of *Apries*, was purposely reserved unto this place. *Herodotus* doth affirm that he was a very fortunate King, but wherein he telleth not; (unless we should understand that he was victorious in the Warre, which he is said to have made upon *Syrus* and *Sidon*) that he reigned five and twenty years, and was finally taken and put to death by his own Subjects; who did set up *Amasis*, as King, which prevailed against him. The rebellion of the *Egyptians* hee imputeth to a great losse which they received in an expedition against the *Cyrenians*, by whom almost their whole army was destroyed. This calamity the people of *Egypt* thought to be well pleasing to their King, who had sent them on this dangerous expedition, with a purpose to have them consumed, that so he might with greater securitie reign over such as staid at home. So they who escaped, and the friends of such as were slain, rebelled against *Apries*, who sent *Amasis* to appease the tumult; but *Amasis* became Captain of the rebels, and was by them chosen King. Finally, the whole Land consented unto this new Election; whereby *Apries* was driven to trust unto his forraign Mercenaries, the *Ionians* and *Carians*, of whom he kept continually in readinesse thirty thousand good Souldiers that fought valiantly for him, but were at length vanquished by the great number of the *Egyptian* forces, amounting unto two hundred and fifty thousand, which were all by birth and education, men of Warre. *Apries* himself being taken prisoner, was gently intreated by *Amasis* for a while, untill the *Egyptians*, exclaiming upon him, as an extreme enemy to the Land, got him delivered into their hands, and strangled him, yet they gave him honourable buriall. Such is the report of *Herodotus*, with whom *Diodorus Siculus* doth neerly agree, telling us that *Apries* did vanquish the *Cyprians* and *Phenicians* in battell at Sea, took by force and demolished *Sidon*, wanne the other Towns of *Phenicia*, and the Isle of *Cyprus*, and finally perished, as is before rehearsed, when hee

Heed. 1. 3.  
C. 1. 4.

Diod. Sic. l. 3.  
c. 4.

had reigned two and twenty years. This authority were enough (yet not more than enough) to inform us of *Apries* his history, if greater authority did not contradict it. But the destruction of *Egypt* by the *Babylonian*, foretold by the Prophets, which hath no coherence with these relations, hath greater force to compell our belief, than have the traditions of *Egyptian* Priests (which the Greek Historians followed) and greater probabilities to perswade those that look only into humane reasons. For *Ezay* prophesied long before of the shamefull captivity of the *Egyptians*, whom the King of *Assur* & 6. should carry away naked, young and old; in such wise, that the *Fews*, who fled unto them for deliverance from the *Assyrian*, should be ashamed of their own vain confidence in men so unable to defend themselves.

But *Ezekiel* and *Jeremy*, as their prophecies were needier to the time of execution, so they handled this argument more precisely. For *Ezekiel* telleth plainly, that *Egypt* should be given to *Nabuchadnezzar*, as wages for the service which he had done at *Tyre*: Also he recounteth particularly all the chief Cities in *Egypt*, saying, That these by name should be destroyed, and go into captivity, yea that *Pharao* and all his Army should be slain by the sword. Wherefore it must needs be a violent exposition of these Prophecies, which by applying the issue of such threatnings to an insurrection and rebellion concludes all, without any other alteration in *Egypt*, than change of the Kings person, wherein *Amasis* did succeed unto *Apries*, by force indeed, but by the uniforme consent of all the people. Certainly, if that notable place of *Jeremy*, wherein he foretelleth how the *Fews* in *Egypt* should see *Pharao* *Hophra* delivered into the hand of his enemies, as *Zedekia* had been, were to be referred unto the time of that rebellion, whereof *Herodotus* hath spoken, as the generall opinion hath over-ruled it; then was it vainly done of the same Prophet (which God forbid that any Christian should think, seeing he did it by the appointment of God himself) to hide in the clay of a Brick-hill, those very stones, upon which the Throne of *Nabuchodonosor* should be set, and his Pavilion spread. Yea then was that prophecy no other than false, which expressed the end of *Pharao* thus: Behold, I will visit the common people of No. & *Pharao*, and *Egypt*, with their gods, and their Kings, even *Pharao*, and all that trust in him: and I will deliver them into the hands of those that seek their lives, and into the hand of *Nabuchadnezzar*, King of *Babel*, and into the hands of his servants. The clearnesse of this prophecy being such as could not but refuse that interpretation of many other places, which referred all to the rebellion of *Amasis*, it caused me to wonder what those Commentators would say to it, who are elsewhere so diligent in fitting all to the Greek Historians. Wherefore looking upon *Junius*, who had in another place taken the enemies of *Pharao* *Hophra* to be *Amasis* and his followers, I found him here acknowledging that the *Egyptian* Priests had notably deluded *Herodotus* with lies, coyned upon a vain-glorious purpose of hiding their own disgrace and bondage. And surely it may well be thought, that the history of *Nabuchadnezzar* was better known to the *Fews*, whom it concerned, than to the Greeks; that scarcely at any time heard of his name. Therefore I see no cause why we should not rather beleieve *Josephus*, reporting that *Nabuchodonosor* in the three and twentieth year of his reign, and the fifth year of the destruction of *Jerusalem*, did conquer *Egypt*, kill the King thereof, and appoint another in his stead, than *Herodotus* or *Diodore*; who being meer strangers to this businesse, had no great reason to labour in searching out the truth, but might rest contented with any thing that the Priests would tell them. Now if setting aside all advantage of authority, we should only consider the relations of *Josephus*, and of the Greek Historians, as either of them might be verified of it self by apparent circumstances, without reflecting upon the Hebrew Prophets, or *Egyptian* Priests; me thinks the death of *Apries* can no way be approved, as having been wrought by consent of the people, but affords great matter of suspicion; yea, though no man had opposed the reports of *Herodotus* and *Diodore*. For the great love & honor which the *Egyptians* did bear unto their Kings, is notorious by the uniform testimony of all others that have handled the matters of that Country, as well as by the report of *Diodore* himself. How then can we think it probable, that *Apries* having won great victories, did for one only losse fall into the hatred of all his people; or which may serve to perswade us, that a King of *Egypt* would seek, or to demean himself, that he might be thought to seek the destruction of his naturall subjects: As for that Army of thirty thousand souldiers, *Carians* and *Ionians*, which the King



of Egypt, whom Amasis took prisoner, is said to have kept for his defence: doth it not argue that he was a forrainer, and one that armed himself against the Egyptians, withing them few and weak; rather than any of the Pharaohs, who accounted the force of the Country, as assuredly their own, as the strength of their own bodies? It were more tedious than any way needfull to use all Arguments that might be alleged in this case. The very death of this supposed Apries, which the clamours of the people obtained of Amasis, who fought to have kept him alive, doth intimate that he was some forraign Governour, not a naturall Prince; otherwise the people would have desired to save his life, and Amasis to take it quickly from him. I will not labour any further to disprove that opinion, whereunto I should not have yeelded, though it had stood upon great appearance of truth, considering that the voice of truth it self cries out against it; but leave the circumstances, proving the Conquest of Egypt by Nabuchodonosor, to be observed where due occasion in course of the story following shall present them.

## s. IX.

How Egypt was subdued and held by Nabuchadnezzar.

IT is a great losse, that the generall History of the World hath suffered, by the spoil and waste which Time hath made of those Monuments that should have preserved the memory of such famous actions as were accomplished by this mighty Prince Nabuchodonosor; wherein, whether his Vertue, or Fortune were greater, it is now uncertain. That his Victories following the Conquest of Syria, and the Neighbour-Provinces, were such as did more enlarge his Dominion, than all the former Wars had done, it may easily be gathered out of Ezekiel, who reckoneth up in his thirtieth Chapter (besides the whole Country of Egypt) Phut and Lud, with other Nations, that may seem to have reached out into Mauritania, as people subdued by this great Babylonian. The circumstances of these Wars are in a manner utterly lost; but that the victory was easie and swift, any man shall find, who will take the pains to conferre the places, wherein the three great Prophets touch this Argument. Thus much I think worthy of more particular observation; that Pharaoh, who (as is already noted in the former Book) thought himself most safe in Egypt by the well defended situation of his Country, did very unwisely in suffering his enemies to sweep the way clean unto his own doors, by confining all his friends and adherents in Syria. For as the labour of this businesse did more harden than weary the Chaldean Army, so the confidence and vain security of the Egyptians, relying upon the difficult passages which the enemy was to make thorow the Arabian deserts, and the much advantage which the great river of Nilus would afford unto themselves, did little avail them in provision for the war, and much astonish them (as may justly be thought) in the time of execution: it being usually seen, that the hearts of men fail, when those helps fail, in which they had reposed more confidence than in their own vertue. Hitherto the Kingdom of Egypt had flourished under the rule of the Pharaohs, about a thousand five hundred and fourscore years; but from this time forward it remained forty years without a King, under the subjection of the Babylonians; and then at length it began to recover by little and little the former greatness, yet so, that it was never dreadfull unto others, God having said of that people, *I will diminish them, that they shall no more rule the Nations*. For whereas it hath been said of Pharaoh: *I am the son of the wife, I am the son of the ancient Kings; and whereas he had vaunted, The River is mine, and I have made it*; the Princes of Egypt now became fools, the river failed them, the King himself was taken and slain, and that ancient lineage quite extinguished. This came to passe in the first year after the destruction of Jerusalem, and the three and twentieth of Nabuchadnezzar, at which time (saith Josephus) *He slew the King then reigning, placed another in his room, and carried captives thence to Babylon the Jews whom he found in that Country*. Now concerning the time which Josephus gives unto this businesse, and the businesse it self, I have already shewed, that it is warranted by all the prophecies which intimate the same. As likewise the last destruction of Jerusalem, and carrying away those unto Babel, who inhabited the miserable ruins of that great city, which was in the same three and twentieth year of Nabuchadnezzar, is not unprobably thought by

Ezek. 29. 13.  
14. & 15.  
Ezra 19. 11.  
Ezek. 29. 9.

Jos. Ant. Jud.  
lib. 10. c. 11.

Jer. 44. 30.

good authors to have been at the return from this Egyptian expedition. But whereas Josephus tells us, that there was another King put in the room of Apries by Nabuchadnezzar, we must understand, that he was only a Vice-roy, and not (as some have mistaken it) think that this was Amasis. For to place the beginning of Amasis his reign in the three and twentieth of Nabuchadnezzar, were as well repugnant unto the prophecies before alleged, as to all Chronology and History. Some therefore, which to help this inconvenience, imagine that there were two successively bearing the name of Amasis; others, that there were two Apries, the one slain by Nabuchadnezzar, the other by Amasis; a question of small importance, because the difference is only about a name, it being once granted that the person mentioned in Scriptures, was deprived of life & Kingdom by the Assyrians. Yet for anything that I can perceive, that Apries; of whom the Greek Historians wrote, could not be the Deputy of Nabuchadnezzar, seeing that he was the Grand-child of Pharo Necho, and made war (as they report) upon the Phoenicians, who were, before the Egyptians, become subject unto the Crown of Babylon. I might adde, perhaps, that he whom Nabuchadnezzar left as Governour of Egypt, was more likely to have had some Chaldean or Assyrian, than Egyptian name; unless we should think that he had been a traitor to his naturall Prince, and so rewarded by the Conquerour with Lieutenantship of the Country: about which it were but frivolous to dispute. Thus much in brief we ought to believe, that Nabuchodonosor made an absolute Conquest of Egypt; that he was not so foolish as to give it away, any man may guess, that he appointed one to rule the Country, it is consequent unto the former, and hath authority of Josephus, that his Governour (or some Successour of his) was afterwards taken and slain by Amasis, I see probability enough to perswade my self, and yet can well be content, that others use their liberty, and believe what they list. As for the army which this Egyptian King Apries is supposed to have kept of Ionians and Carians, I hold them to be none other than the garrisons of mercenary soldiers which were left by the Assyrian for the guard of his Viceroy, and custody of the new subdued Province: as likewise the company returning from Cyrene & Barca, who together with the friends of such as were slain in that expedition, remembered before out of the Greek Historians, deposed and slew Apries, I take them to have been the Egyptian fugitives, which then recovered their own Country. Sure it is that this Prophecy of Ezekiel was verified, *At the end of forty years will I gather the Egyptians from the people where they were scattered, and I will bring again the captivity of Egypt, and will cause them to return into the land of Pachtos, into the land of their habitation, and they shall be there a small Kingdom*. If the Egyptian Priests alluded hereto in the tale which they made of Amasis his obtaining the Kingdom, then are they to be helped with this or the like interpretation; if they devised matter that had no shadow of truth, only to keep the Greeks from knowledge of their Countries disgrace, then are they little to be regarded, since we know the truth with them.

## s. X.

Of the sundry accounts drawn from sundry acts of Nabuchadnezzar, and of the destruction of Nineve, by him; the time of which action is uncertain.

THESE victories brought the greatness of the Assyrian Empire to the full, & from thence was reckoned the time of Nabuchadnezzars reign in sundry places of Scripture. To speak any more of the questions arising about the supputation of Nabuchadnezzar his times, might seem to be the over-handling of one Argument: Yet thus much I will note, that whereas Daniel was carried captive in the third year of Nebuchadnezzars reign (which ran along with some part of Nabuchadnezzars first year) and was kept in diet three years more, before he was brought into the Kings presence; it could not be the second of Nabuchadnezzars Kingdom, wherein he interpreted the forgotten dream of the great Image, foreshewing the successe of Monarchies, but the second of his Empire. The same or the like may be said of divers places, which refer sundry matters unto their set years, as that of Ezekiel before cited, where he foretells, that Egypt should be given in reward for the service done before Tyre, dating his prophecy in the seven and twentieth year; and that of Daniel, placing the erection of the golden Image in the eighteenth year: for these years held no dependence upon either the beginning of Nabuchad-

Ezek. 30. 19.  
& 14.

Dan. 1. & 2.



*Nabuchadnezzar's* Kingdome, or of his Empire, nor yet upon any of the captivities, but had reference to some memorable actions, omitted in Scripture, and therefore not ealie to be found; nor worth the labour of uncertain search.

Nahum 3. 8.

Of any War made by *Nabuchadnezzar*, after such time as he returned from the Conquest of *Egypt*, I doe not read: excepting that against *Nineve*, the destruction whereof was fore-told by the Prophet *Nahum*. *Nineve* had long before been taken by *Merodach* (as in due place hath been shewed) and together with the rest of *Assyria* made subject to *Babylon*. Yet was it left under a peculiar King, who rebelling against the *Chaldean*, as *Jehojakim* and *Zedechias*, tributary Kings of *Juda*, had done, tasted likewise of the same fortune. That the destruction of *Nineve* followed the Conquest of *Egypt*, it appeareth by the comparison which *Nahum* the Prophet made between this City, that was to fall, and the City of *No* in *Egypt*, that was fallen already. But how long after this came to passe, it is (me thinks) impossible to find out. For whereas it is found in an Hebrew Chronology, that it was in the first of *Nabuchadnezzar's* reign, the place of *Nahum* last cited is enough to disprove it. Whereas it is referred by some unto the first of his Monarchy, which began at the end of the *Egyptian* Wars; the whole Prophecy of *Nahum* which went between the one and the other, argueth strongly, that there was a longer space of time intercurrent. So that to enquire into the very year of this destruction, or other circumstances of the War, whether managed by *Nabuchodonosor* in person, or by his Lieutenants, were somewhat like unto the vain curiosity of *Tyberius Caesar*, enquiring who was the Mother of *Hecuba*, or to the like idle pains which he should take, who would seek to learn what woman that *Huzzab* Queen of *Nineve* was; whose wofull captivity the same Prophet *Nahum* likewise did fore-tell.

## s. XI.

Of the latter time of *Nabuchadnezzar*; his buildings, madnesse, and death.

Dan. 4. 17.

OF the time which this great Monarch spent in quiet, I think there are no monuments extant, save those which we find among the prophecies of *Daniel*. Among these we may reckon his great works of *Babylon*, wherewith he pleased himself so well, that he brake out into these glorious words: *Is not this great Babel that I have built for the house of the Kingdom, by the might of my power, & for the honour of my Majesty?* Surely if those things be true that are by *Josephus* rehearsed of him out of *Serapion* and *Megasthenes*, he might well delight himself with the contemplation of such goodly and magnificent buildings. For it is said, That he fortified *Babylon* with a triple wall; that besides other stately works, he raised those huge arches wherewith were born up the high Orchards, hanging as it were in the air, and equalling the tops of Mountains, which most sumptuous frame, that out-lasteth all the remainder of the *Assyrian*, and all the *Persian* Empire, is said to have been reared, and finished in fifteen days.

But of all this, and other his magnificence, we find little else recorded, than that (which also indeed is most profitable for us to consider) his over-valuing of his own greatness abased him unto a condition inferior to the poorest of men. And not undeservedly fell these judgements of God upon him. For whereas God had honoured him, not only with many victories, and much happiness in his own life, but with a discovery of things to come after him, yea and had approved the certainty of his dream, by the miraculous reducing of it into his memory, and interpretation thereof by *Daniel* the Prophet; he nevertheless became so forgetfull of God, whose wonderful power he had seen and acknowledged, that he caused a golden Image to be set up and worshipped; ordaining a cruell death as reward unto them that should dare to disobey his Kingly will and pleasure, which was utterly repugnant to the law of him that is the Kings of Kings. Herofore *S. Hierome* hath well noted; *Felix oblivio veritatis, ut qui dudum servum Dei quasi Deum adoraverat, nunc statum sibi fieri jubeat, ut ipse quasi Deus in statua adoraretur*: A happy forgetfulness of the truth, that he who so lately had worshipped *Daniel* the servant of God, as if he had been God himself, should now command a statua to be erected unto himself, wherein himself might be worshipped as God. From this impiety it pleased God to reclaim him, by the strange and wonderful delivery of those blessed Saints out of the fiery furnace; who being thrown into it bound, for refusing to commit Idolatry, were

afflicted

afflicted by an Angell; preserved from all harm of the fire; loosened from their bands; and finally called out with gracious words, and restored to their former honour, by the King: who amazed at the miracle, made a decree tending to the honour of God, which by erection of his Image he had violated. Yet this devotion of *Nabuchadnezzar* was not so rooted in him, that it could bring forth fruit answerable to his hasty zeal. Therefore was he forewarned by God in a dream of the terrible judgement hanging over his head, which *Daniel* expounded, advised him to break off his sin by righteousness, and his iniquity by mercy towards the poor; that there might be an healing of his error: Hereby it seems that his injustice and cruelty were the faults, for which he was threatened: but this threatening sufficed not unto his information. For, that so great a Monarch should be driven from among men; (according to the tenor of the dream and interpretation) yea, compelled to dwell with the beasts of the field, and made to eat grasse as the Oxen, was a thing so incredible in mans judgement, that easily it might be thought an idle dream; and much more easily be forgotten at the years end. One whole years leisure to repent was given to this haughty Prince: which respite of the execution may seem to have bred in him a forgetfulness of Gods sentence. For at the end of twelve moneths, walking in the royall Palace of *Babel*, he was so over-joyed and transported with a vain contemplation of his own seeming happiness, that without all fear of Gods heavey judgement pronounced against him, he uttered those loose words before rehearsed, in 10 vaunting of the Majestickall works which he had reared, as well becomming his majesticall person. But his high speeches were not fully ended, when a voyce from heaven, telling him that his Kingdome was departed from him, rehearsed over unto him the sentence again, which was fulfilled upon him the very same hour.

That *Salomon*, and many other Princes, and great ones, have taken delight in their own buildings, it cannot any way be doubted; yet I doe not remember that ever I have read of any, that were punished for rejoicing in works of this kind (though it is hard in joy, or any passion of the mind, to keep a just measure) excepting onely this *Nabuchadnezzar*.

The like may be said of *David*: for other (and some very godly) Kings have mustred 30 all their forces to the very last man; but few or none have been known to have been punished as *David* was. Surely I not only hold it lawful to rejoice in those good things wherewith God hath blessed us, but a note of much unthankfulness to entertain them with a sullen and unfeeling disposition. Yet as all humane affections, wherein due reference to God is wanting, are no better than obscure clouds, hindring the influence of that blessed light, which clarifies the soule of man, and predisposeth it unto the brightness of eternall felicity; so that insolent joy, which man in the pride of his vain imagination conceiveth of his own worth, doth above all other passions blast our minds, as it were with lightning, and make us to reflect our thoughts upon our seeming inherent greatness, forgetting the whilest him, to whom we are indebted for our very being. Wherefore these *Mala mentis gaudia*; *The evil joyes of the minds*: were not unaptly, by the Prince of Latine Poets, bestowed in the entrance of hell, and placed further inward than sorrows, cares, and fear: not far from the yron Cabbins of the Furies. And certainly it is so unlikely token of vengeance neer at hand, when these unreasonable flushes of proud and vain joy, doe rage in a mind; that should have been humbled with a just repentance, and acknowledgement of ill deserving;

This was verified upon *Nabuchadnezzar*; whose punishment was singular and unexampled. For he ran among beasts in the fields and woods, where for seven years he lived, not onely as a salvage man, but as a salvage beast; for a beast he thought himself, *secundum suam imaginationem*, as *Thomas* noteth; and therefore fed himself in the same manner, and with the same food that beasts do; Not that he was changed in figure externally, according to *Mediana*, inasmuch as he appeared a beast to other mens eyes, as *S. Hierome* Med. l. 2. de Re- in the life of *Hilarius* (how true God knows) speaks of a woman that appeared to all other mens sight a Cow, but to *Hilarius* onely a woman; neither was hee changed as *Iphigenia* the daughter of *Agamemnon* was said to be, into a Hind; nor made a Monster, as *Dorotheus* and *Epiphanius* dreamed: but according to *S. Hieromes* exposition of these words: *As the same time was my understanding restored unto me, &c. Quando dicit* (saith *S. Hierome*) *sensum sibi redditum, ostendit non formam se amisisse, sed mentem*; When hee 10 both that his sense was restored unto him, he shewed that he had not lost his humane shape; but

but

DAN. 4. 3. 34.

but his understanding. Seven years expired, it pleased God to restore *Nabuchodonosor*, both to his understanding, and his estate, for which he acknowledged and praised God all the rest of his life, confessing his power, and everlasting being; that he was the Lord of heaven and earth, and wrought without resistance what he pleased in both; that his works were all truth, and his ways righteous. Which gave argument to many of the Fathers, and others, not to doubt of his salvation; namely, *S. Augustine, Theodoret, Lysius, Carthusianus*, and others. And for that place of *Ezay* the fourteenth, out of which his perdition may be gathered, the aforesaid Authors apply the same to *Balthasar*, because *Ezay*, both in the thirteenth and fourteenth Chapters, speaketh of the King, and the destruction of *Babylon* jointly.

### 5. XII. of Evilmerodach.

**H**AVING already spoken what I could of the succession and years of *Nebuchadnezzar's* posterity; the most that may be said of him, is said of *Evilmerodach*, which I will not here again rehearse.

He lost some part of that which his father had gotten; and left his Kingdom burning in a warre that consumed it to ashes. Hee lost *Egypt* by rebellion of the people, in the nineteenth year of his reign, which was forty years after his Father had conquered it. But this agrees neither with the account of *Herodotus*, who allows to *Amasis* four and forty years of reign; nor with that of *Diodorus*, who gives him five and fifty, saying, 20 that he died in the third year of the threescore and third Olympiad, when *Cambyses* did conquer *Egypt*. There were indeed but seven and thirty years, which passed between the second year of the four and fiftieth Olympiad, (which was the nineteenth of *Evilmerodach*, and the first *Amasis*) and the six of *Cambyses* his reign, wherein he vanquished *Egypt*; of which seven and thirty years it is credibly held, that *Psammis*, the son of *Amasis*, reigned three: so that *Amasis* could be no longer King than four and thirty years. But seeing that these two Greek Historians have been abused by Egyptian Priests, in the substance of that which was spoken of *Amasis*, it is no marvell though they were also deceived in the length of his reign. This is the plain answer to this objection. For 30 to say either that the numbers were mis-written, and four and forty set down in stead of four and thirty, or that *Amasis* did temporise a while with the Assyrians, and not bear himself as absolute King of *Egypt*, untill the nineteenth of *Evilmerodach* (at which time, and not before, it hath been proved, out of *Ezechiel*, that *Egypt* became again a Kingdom) I hold it a superfluous excuse.

Whether these Egyptian troubles did animate the King of the *Medes* to deal with *Evilmerodach*, as with a Prince greater in fame and reputation, gotten by the decayed valour of his people, than in present forces; or whether (as I rather think) some foil received by the Assyrian invading *Media*, emboldened the Egyptians to rebel against him; I will neither undertake, nor seek to define. *Xenophon* tells that the first service of young 40 *Cyrus* in warre, was under *Astyages* King of the *Medes*, his Grand-father, in a prosperous fight against the Assyrian Prince, who did set upon him; at which time *Cyrus* was fifteen or sixteen years old. If therefore *Cyrus* lived threescore and three years (as he is said to have died well stricken in years) which is held to be the ordinary term of no short life, then was this encounter in the third year of *Evilmerodach* his reign. Yet by the same reckoning it should follow, that the warre began more early between these Nations, for as much as the manner of their fight in former times, with other circumstances insinuating as much, are found in the same place of *Xenophon*. And it may well be, that the death or destruction of *Nabuchodonosor* gave courage unto those that had felt him a troublesome neighbour, to stand upon prouder termes with the Assyrians, 50 than in his flourishing estate they durst have used. Howsoever the quarrell began, we find that it ended not before the last ruine of the Assyrian Monarchie. For the Babylonian, being too proud to digest the losses which he received by the *Medes* and their Allies the Persians, drew unto his partie the Lydians, and all the people of the lesser Asia, with gifts and strong persuasions, hoping so to over-whelm his enemies with a strong Invasion, whom in vain hee had sought to wearie out with a lingering Warre.

10

X. eph. Cy-  
pad. lib. 1.X. eph. Cy-  
pad. lib. 8.

This

This happened after the death of *Astyages*, who left the world in the nineteenth year of *Evilmerodach*, at which time *Amasis* took possession of *Egypt*. So that the Assyrian having his hands already full of business, which more earnestly did affect him, seemed thereby to have given the better means unto the Egyptians, of new erecting their Kingdom, which by long distance of place did sundry times find occasion to rebell in after-ages, and set up a King within in self, against the far more mighty Persian.

The issue of these great preparations made by *Evilmerodach* against the *Medes*, was such as opened the way unto the fulfilling of those prophecies, which were many years before uttered against *Babel*, by *Ezay* and *Jeremy*.

10 For, the Assyrians and their Confederates, who, trusting in their numbers, thought to have buried the *Medes* and *Persians* under their thick showers of arrows and darts, were encountered with an army of stout and well-trained men, weightily armed for close fight, by whom they were beaten in open battell, wherein *Evilmerodach* was slain. So that great frame of Empire which *Nabuchodonosor* had raised and up-held, being shaken and grievously cracked under his unfortunate son, was left to be sustained by his unworthy Nephew; a man more likely to have overthrown it, when it was greatest and strongest, than to repair it, when it was in way of falling.

### 6. XIII.

10 A private conjecture of the Author; serving to make good those things, which are cited out of *Berosus*, concerning the Successors of *Evilmerodach*, without wrong to the truth. The quality, and death of *Balthasar*.

**T**HOUGH I have already (as it seemes to me) sufficiently proved that *Balthasar* was the Son, and immediate Successor to *Evilmerodach*, yet considering earnestly the conjectures of those Writers, which following *Berosus*, insert *Niglissar*, or *Niglissorod*, and his son *Labassardach* between them; as also that which I find in *Herodotus* of *Nitocris*, a famous Queen of *Babylon*, who greatly adorned and fortified that City, I have thought it not superfluous here in this place to shew, by what means it 30 was possible that some error might have crept into the Historie of those times, and thereby have brought us to a needless trouble of searching out the truth; as it were by candle-light, in the uncertain fragments of lost Authors, which we might have found by day-light, had we adhered only to the Scriptures. First therefore I observe, that the time which *Berosus* divides betwixt *Evilmerodach*, and the two next Kings, agrees with the years in which *Nebuchadnezzar* lived vild among brute beasts in the open field: Secondly, that the suddenness of this accident, which came in one hour, could not but work much perturbation in that State, wherein doubtlesse the honour of so noble a Prince was highly regarded, his calamity pitied, and his restitution hoped; the prediction of *Daniel* finding reputation in that clause which promised his recoverie, as being ve- 40 nished in that which had bin more incredible. Now if we doe in common reason judge, what course was like to be taken by the great ones of the Kingdom, for settling the government, whilst the King was thus distracted, wee shall find it most likely, that his Son and Heir did occupie the Royall Throne, with condition to restore it unto his Father, when God should enable him to repossesse it. In this his rule *Evilmerodach* being to supply the utter want of understanding in his Father, as Protectors doe the unripe- 50 ness of young, but reasonable Kings, might easily either commit the insolences, or fall into the troubles, incident to such an office. That he had in him very small abilitie of government, it appears by his ill maintaining the Empire, when hee held it in his own right; that his sister *Nitocris* (if *Nitocris* were his sister) was a woman of an high spirit, who appears by that which *Herodotus* reports of her, saying, that shee was more cunning than *Semiramis*, as appeared in her magnificent and usefull works about the River of *Euphrates*, and her fortification of *Babylon* against the *Medes*, who had gotten many Towns from the Assyrians, and amongst them *Ninive*. Wherefore it were not unreasonable to think, that such a woman, seeing how the Empire went to decay through her brothers misgovernment, used practices to get the rule into her own hands, and afterwards, as a mother, to leave it unto her ungracious son. Other time this, where- 60 in *Nitocris* should have reigned, wee doe not find; but wee find in *Berosus* (as *Josephus* hath cited him) that *Niglissar*, who got the Kingdom from *Evilmerodach*, was his sisters husband;

Herod. lib. 1.

usband; which argues this to have been the same woman. As for *Labassardach* the son of *Niglissar*, if at the end of nine months reign he were for his lewd conditions slain by the Nobility, as the same *Berosus* reporteth, it seemes that God prepared hereby the way for *Nebuchadnezzars* restitution (whose term of punishment was then expired) by raising such trouble, as should make him the more desired, both of the Princes and the people. I will not here use many words to confute that which *Berosus* hath further set down of *Evilmerodach*, telling us that he was slain by his sisters husband: for the plain words of the Scripture, naming the year wherein he gave liberty to *Jechonia*, do plainly testify that he out-lived the three or four and fortieth year of his Fathers reign, which was the last of his life.

This may suffice to shew, that they who are said to have succeeded *Evilmerodach* in the Kingdom, might indeed have so done, though not when he held it in his own right. Of *Balthasar*, who was his Son and Heir, we find, that he had such conditions, as God permitted to be in a King for the ruin of the people. Hee was from his young years of a mischievous nature, having in his Fathers time slain a Noble young-man that should have married his sister, only for spight and envie to see him kill two wild beasts in hunting, at which himself having thrown his Javeline had missed them. Another great Lord he had gelded, because a Gentlewoman commending his beauty, said it were a happy woman that should be his wife. Such barbarous villanies caused many which had loved his Father (as a good and gracious, though unfortunate Prince) to revolt from him unto the enemy as soon as hee was King. Neither doe I find that hee performed any thing worthy of record, but as a coward and a fool he lost all; sitting still, and not once daring to give battell to them that daily took somewhat from him. Yet carelessly feasting when danger had hemmed him in on every side, and when death arrested him by the hands of those whom he had wronged in his Fathers life. So the end of him was bale and miserable; for he died as a fool taken in unexcusable security, yet had not that happiness, such as it is, of a death free from apprehension of fear, but was terrified with a dreadful vision; which had shewed his ruin not in many houres before, even whilst he was drinking in that wine, which the swords of his insulting enemies drew out of him, together with his latest blood. It is therefore in this place enough to say of him, That after a dishonourable reign of seventeen years, he perished like a beast, and was slain as he deserved. The rest that concerneth him in question of his time, hath been spoken heretofore, in matter of his affairs, shall be handled among the acts of *Cyrus*, to whose story, that of *Balthasar* is but an appendix.

## CHAP. II.

Of the originall and first greatnesse of the Persians.

§. I.

That the Medes were chief actors in the subversion of the Babylonian Empire.



THE Line of *Belochus* being now extinguished in *Balthasar*, the Empire of *Babylon*, and of *Assyria*, was joined first to that of *Media*, which then was governed by *Cyaxares* or *Darius Medus*, after whom *Cyrus* became Lord and Monarch, both of *Assyria* and of *Media* it self.

Of the race of *Phul Belochus* there were ten Kings besides himself, and of *Arbaces* as many are found by *Metasthenes*. These two Provinciall Governours having cut down the last branch of *Ninus* in *Sardanapalus*, divided between them the Eastern Empire. *Cyaxares* (whom the Scriptures call *Darius Medus*) the last of the race of *Arbaces*, dying about two years after that the line of *Belochus* was ended in *Balthasar*; the Dominions awell of the Conquerour; as of the conquered, fell to a third Family, namely, to *Cyrus* of the house of *Achamenes* the Princes of which blood reigning in *Persia*, had formerly

formerly been dependants on the *Medes*, and were of as little power at home, as of fame abroad in the world.

Of the Familie of the *Achamenes*, and Line of the *Persian* Kings, we shall hereafter find occasion in due place to intreat.

The Nation of the *Medes* descended from *Madai* the third son of *Japhet*; that they had Kings soon after the Flood, *Lathanius* and *Diodorus* have found record; For *Lathanius* remembreth an ancient King of the *Medes* called *Hydaspes*, and *Diodore* speaketh of *Pharnus* with his seven sons, slain by the *Assyrians* in the beginning of their Empire.

But of these who succeeded *Arbaces* the first, that freed his Nation from the *Assyrians*, I take the list and number from *Eusebius*, adding *Darius Medus*: of whom I have spoken in their proper places heretofore; and they are these;

<i>Arbaces</i>	28. years.
<i>Solarmus</i>	30. years.
<i>Medidus</i>	40. years.
<i>Cardiceas</i>	13. years.
<i>Diocles</i>	53. years.
<i>Phraortes</i>	24. years.
<i>Cyaxares</i>	32. years.
<i>Asthyages</i>	38. years.
<i>Darius Medus.</i>	

And though the *Greeks* ascribe the conquest of *Babylon* to *Cyrus* alone, yet the Scriptures teach us that *Darius* was not only King of *Media*, and had the *Persians* his followers, but that the Armie victorious over *Balthasar* was his; as the *Assyrian* and *Babylonian* Empire also was during his own life. For we find in *Daniel*, that *Darius* of the *Medes* took the Kingdome being threescore and two years old: And further, what Officers it pleased him to set over the Kingdome. And so was it prophesied by *Isay* long before: Behold, I will stir up the *Medes* against them, &c. And by *Jeremie*, The Lord hath raised up the spirit of the King of the *Medes*: for his purpose is against *Babel* to destroy it; and in the eight and twentieth Verse, Prepare against her the Nations, with the King of the *Medes*, the Dukes thereof, the Princes thereof, and all the Land of his Dominion. These Scriptures *Julius Africanus* doth well open, who taking authority from *Diodore*, *Castor*, *Thallus*, and others, delivereth that *Babylon* was taken before *Cyrus* began to reign; which also agreeth with *Strabo*, where he saith, That as the *Medes* were subjugated by the *Persians*, so before that, both the *Babylonians* and *Assyrians* were mastered by the *Medes*. And therefore the reports of *Justin* and *Herodotus* are not to be received, who attribute the taking of *Babylon* to *Cyrus* alone.

§. II.

By what means the Empire was translated from the Medes to the Persians.

How the Kingdome of the *Medes* fell into the hands of *Cyrus*, it is a doubt not sufficiently cleared by Historians, but rather their different relations of his beginnings have bred the former opinion of those who give the conquest of *Babel* to the *Persians* only. For some there are who deny that *Asthyages* had any other Successor than *Cyrus* his grand-child by *Mandane*. Whereas *Ctesius* on the contrary side affirmeth, that *Cyrus* was no way descended from *Asthyages* (whom he calleth *Astign* or *Apania*) but only that having vanquished him in battell, and confined him to *Bactria*, he married his Daughter *Amysis*. But I find the relations of *Ctesius* often cited, and seldom followed, and himself sometimes very justly reproved of wilfull untruth.

*Viginius*, a diligent and learned historian of this age, produceth many probable reasons that *Asthyages* had no such son as *Cyaxares*, or *Darius Medus*; and to confirm this opinion the more, he citeth *Diodore*, *Justin*, *Strabo*, *Plato*, *Aristotle*, *Isocrates*, and before them *Castor*, *Thallus*, and *Phlegon*; who do not find any such successor. Neither do *Tatianus*, *Theophilus Antiochenus*, *Julius Africanus*, *Clemens Alexandrinus*, *Justin Martyr*, *Lactantius*, *Eusebius*, *S. Hierome*, or *S. Augustine*, make report out of any faithfull Author by them read, that hath given other Son or Successor to *Asthyages* than *Cyrus*.

K k k

Yet

Zen. l. 1. c. 19.  
Jes. an. l. 10.  
c. 11.  
Xen. l. 8. Fed.

Yet seeing that this manner of argument *ab autoritate negativa*, doth never inforce consent; we may be the bolder (all this great list of noble Writers by him alleged notwithstanding) to affirm, that either *Affages* himself must have been *Darius* of the *Medes*, which cannot agree with his place in the course of time; Or else to give him some other Successor, according to *Josephus* and *Xenophon*, the same whom *Daniel* calleth *Darius*. For it is manifest and without dispute, that the King of the *Medes* commanded in chief, and was absolute Lord of that Conquest, *Cyrus* during his life, being no other than the Lieutenant of his Armie, and subject to his authoritie; The strength of both Nations, to wit, the *Medes* and *Persians*; with other the Vassals of *Darius*, being joyned together to compound it.

But it is very certain that the honour of that great victorie over *Babylon* was wholly given to *Cyrus*, who was the instrument preordained and forenamed by God himself for this action, but for the deliverie of his Church; a greater work not only in the eyes of God, than the subversion of any State or Monarchie how powerfull soever.

And it may well be thought, that the Souldiers employed in that service did rather ascribe the glory to him that was the best man of war, than to the *Median*, who was greatest in riches and power. All which also falling upon *Cyrus* by succession, and continuing in his posteritie, did much augment the fame of his vertue; which among prophane Historians overgrew altogether the honour due to *Cyaxares*, both because he was old, and did nothing in person; as also because he soon after quitted the world, and left all to *Cyrus*, who was possessor of whatsoever belonged to *Darius*, before the fame of any such King or Conqueror was carried far off.

And for the *Greek* Historians, they took all things from the relation of the *Persians*, who gave to *Cyrus* all the praise of a most excellent Prince, making none his equal. Only *Daniel* in the first, sixth, and sixth Chapters of his Prophecie, makes it plain, that himselfe not only lived a great Officer under King *Darius*, but that he continued in that estate to the first of *Cyrus*; which being the year of *Daniels* Death, could not have been distinguished from the reign of *Darius*, if they had begun together and reigned jointly: Neither can it be imagined that *Darius* held the Kingdome by *Cyrus* permission, considering that *Cyrus* began after him.

### §. III.

*Xenophons relation of the Warre with the Medes and Persians, made with joynt forces upon the Assyrians and others.*

These Testimonies of the Scriptures, which need no other confirmation, yet made more open to our understanding, by that which *Xenophon* hath written of these wars: The cause whereof, according to his report, was this.

When the *Assyrian* had enlarged his Empire with victories, and was become Lord of all *Syria*, and many other Countries, he began to hope that if the *Medes* could be brought under his subjection, there should not then be left any Nation adjoining able to make head against him. For the King of the *Medes* was able to bring into the field three score thousand foot, and ten thousand horse, to which the forces of *Persia* being joyned, made an exceeding strong Armie.

The *Assyrian* considering the strength of such a Neighbour, invited *Cresus* King of *Lydia*, a Prince very mighty both in men and treasure, and with him other Lords of *Asia* the lesse, to his assistance, alleging, that those Eastern Nations were very powerfull, and so firmly conjoynd by league and many alliances, that it would not be easie, no not possible, for any one Nation to resist them. With these incitements, and strengthened with great presents, he drew to himself so many adherents, as he compounded an Armie of two hundred thousand foot, and three score thousand horse; of which, ten thousand horse and forty thousand foot were led by *Cresus*, who had great cause of enmitie with the *Medes*, in regard of the Warre made by them against his Father *Alyattes*. But this great Armie was by *Cyaxares* King of the *Medes*, and by *Cyrus* General of the *Persian* forces, utterly broken; Upon which defeat the *Assyrian* King being also slain, so many of the *Assyrians* revolted, as *Babylon* it self could not longer be assured without the succours of Mercenaries, waged with great summes of money out of *Asia* the lesse, *Egypt*, and elsewhere. Which new gathered forces

were

were also scattered by *Cyrus*, who following his advantage, possessed himself of a great part of the lesser *Asia*; at which time it was, as I take it, that *Cresus* himself was also made prisoner.

The attempt of *Babylon* following soon after, the Armie lying before it being paid by *Darius*, whom *Xenophon* calleth *Cyaxares*, and led by *Cyrus* his sisters son, prevailed against *Balthasar*, as in due time shall be set down.

Those *Persians* which followed *Cyrus*, and by him levied, are numbered thirty thousand foot-men, of which a thousand were armed Gentlemen, the rest of the common sort were Archers, or such as used the Dart or Sling. So far *Xenophon*. Of whom in this argument, as it is true, that he described in *Cyrus* the pattern of a most Heroicall Prince, with much Poeticall addition: so it cannot be denied, but that the bulk and grosse of his Narration was founded upon meer Historical truth.

Neither can it indeed be affirmed of any the like writers, that in every speech and circumstance he hath precisely tyed himself to the phrase of the speaker, or nature of the occasion, but borrowed in each out of his own invention, appropriating the same to the times and persons of whom he treated. Putting therefore apart the Morall and Politick discourse, and examining but the Historie of things done, it will easily appear, that *Xenophon* hath handled his under-taken subject in such sort, that by beautifying the face thereof, he hath not in any sort corrupted the body.

### §. IV.

*The estate of the Medes and Persians intimes fore-going this great War.*

For it is commonly agreed upon, that *Achamenes* the sonne of *Perse* being Governour of *Persia*, did associate himself with *Arbaces*, who commanded in *Media*, in that rebellion against *Sardanapalus*, and that each of them after the victorie obtained, held for himself the Dominion of those Countries, which he had formerly ruled for the *Assyrians*; as also that they conveyed over the same honour and power to their posteritie; which in *Media* was not absolutely Regall, but with some restraint limited, until such time as *Deiocrates* took upon him the full authoritie and majestie of a King. From the death of *Sardanapalus* to the reign of *Deiocrates*, are usually accounted about an hundred and forty years, in the last sixty whereof there reigned in *Assyria* mighty Princes, namely, *Salmanassar* and his Successors; whose great achievements in *Syria* and elsewhere; witnesseth, that the *Medes* and *Persians* found it not for their advantage to undertake any offensive war against those victorious Kings, it being also probable that the league continued as yet between these the successors of *Belochus* and *Arbaces*, who had formerly shared the Empire.

Now from the beginning of *Deiocrates* to the first of *Astiyages*, there past above ninetie years, in which, if *Herodotus* have written truly, that *Phraortes* conquered *Persia*, and how he and other Kings of *Media* by many victories greatly enlarged their Dominions, and commanded many parts of *Asia*, it had been but an unadvised enterprize of the *Assyrians* and *Babylonians*, to have wasted themselves against the *Syrians* and *Egyptians*, leaving so able and victorious a Nation on their backs. But that the *Medes* had done nothing upon the South parts of *Persia*; and that the *Persians* themselves were not masters of *Sassiana* in *Nabuchodonosors* time, it is manifest in *Daniel*, who was then Governour for the *Babylonian* in *Susa*, or *Susan*, the chief City thereof. It is true indeed, that the *Medians*, either under *Cyaxares* or *Astiyages*, or both, had quarrell with *Halyattes* the father of *Cresus*, which after some six years dispute was compounded.

How the affairs of *Persia* stood in so many ages, I doe not find any memorie. It seemeth that the roughnesse of the mountainous Countrey which they then possessed, with the confederacie which they continued with the *Medes*, gave them more securitie than fame: For if their Kings, being the posteritie of *Achamenes*, had done any memorable acts, the greatnesse which they afterward obtained would not have suffered any forgetfulness thereof. But as we find all *Xenophons* reports, both of these Warres and the state of those countries to be very consonant and agreeable to the relation of many other good Authors, so it appears, that the race of *Achamenes* held the Principallie of *Persia* from Father to Son for many descents. And therefore we may better give credit

K k k 2

to

to Xenophon, who affirmeth, That *Cambyſes* the father of *Cyrus* was King of *Perſia*; than to thoſe that make him a mean man, and ſay, that *Aſtyages* gave him his daughter *Madane* in marriage, to the end that her ſon (whoſe nativitie he feared) might be diſabled from any great undertaking by his fathers inabilitytie.

For what cauſe of grief could it be to *Aſtyages*, that the ſon of his daughter ſhould become Lord of the beſt part of *Aſia*? No, it was more likely, that upon ſuch a Prophecie his love to his grand-child ſhould have encreaſed, and his care been the greater to have married her to ſome Prince of ſtrength and eminent vertue.

Yea, the ſame *Herodotus*, who is the firſt Author, and as I think the deviſer of the miſchief intended againſt *Cyrus* by his Grandfather, doth confeſſe, That the line of the *Achemenide* was ſo renowned, that the great King *Xerxes* in the height of his proſperitie did thence derive himſelf, and vaunt of it: which he would never have done, had they been ignoble, or had they been the vaſſals of any other King or Monarch.

For in this ſort *Xerxes* in the ſeventh of *Herodotus* deriveth himſelf.

{ <i>Achamenes.</i>	{ <i>Teiſpens.</i>	{ <i>Hyſtaſpes.</i>
{ <i>Cambyſes.</i>	{ <i>Ariaſarmenes.</i>	{ <i>Darius.</i>
{ <i>Cyrus.</i>	{ <i>Ariaſarmes.</i>	{ <i>Xerxes.</i>

Of the *Achemenide* there were two races: of the firſt was *Cyrus* the great, whoſe iſſue ſo male failed in his two ſons, *Cambyſes* and *Smerdis*. This royall familie is thus ſet down by the learned *Reineccius*.

*Achamenes*, the ſon of *Perſes*, firſt King of *Perſia*.

*Darius*.

*Cyrus*, the firſt of that name, had *Cambyſes*, and *Atoſſa*, who married to *Pharnaces*, King of *Cappadocia*, had *Artystona* and other daughters.

*Cambyſes* had

*Cyrus* the Great: *Cyrus* had

*Cambyſes*, who ſucceeded him, and *Smerdis*, ſlain by his brother *Cambyſes*.

Of the ſecond were thoſe ſeven great Princes of *Perſia*, who having overthrowne the uſurped royaltie of the *Magi*, choſe from among themſelves *Darius*, the ſon of *Hyſtaſpes*, King.

This Kingdome of *Perſia* was firſt known by the name of *Elam*, ſo called after *Elam* the ſon of *Sem*, and the people therein inhabiting, *Elamita*; by *Elianus*, *Elyma*; by *Jeſephus*, *Elymi*.

*Suidas* derives this Nation ſometimes from *Aſſur*, ſometimes from *Magog*, of whom they were called *Maguſei*; which *Maguſei*, according to *Eusebius*, are not to be taken for the Nation in generall, but for thoſe that were afterward called the *Magi* or Wiſemen.

So doe the *Greeks*, among many other their ſayings of them, affirm, That the *Perſians* were anciently written *Artai*, and that they called themſelves *Cepheneſes*. But that they were *Elamita*, *Mofes* and the Prophets, *Eſay*, *Jeremie*, *Ezekiel*, *Daniel* and *Eſdras*, in many places confirm: Which alſo *S. Hierome* upon *Jeremie* the five and twentieth, upon *Daniel* the eighth, and alſo in his *Hebrew* queſtions, approveth, ſaying: *Elam*, a quo *Elamita Principis Perſidus*; *Elam*, of whom were the *Elamites* Princes of *Perſia*.

And that Citie which the Author of the ſecond booke of the *Maccabees* calleth *Perſepolis*, is by the Author of the firſt called *Elemaſ*, but is now called *Siras*, being the ſame which *Antiochus*, for the great riches thereof, twice attempted in vain, and to his great diſhonour. And yet this Citie, now called *Siras*, was not the old *Perſepolis*; for *Alexander* at the requeſt of *Thais* the Harlot, burnt it.

The firſt King of *Perſia* to us known, if we follow the current of Authors interpreting the fourteenth chapter of *Geneſis*, was *Chedorlaomer*, who lived with *Amraphel* or *Nimrod*, and joyned with him in the war againſt thoſe *Arabians*; who was afterward extinguished by the forces of *Abraham*.

CHAP.

## CHAP. III.

Of *Cyrus*.

## §. I.

Of *Cyrus* his name, and firſt actions.

Touching the name of *Cyrus*, *Strabo* ſaith, That the ſame was taken from a river which watereth *Perſia*; this great Prince having *Agradatus* for his proper name. But the great *Cyrus* was not the firſt of that name. *Herodotus* otherwiſe, and that *Cyrus* ſignifieth a father in the *Perſian* Tongue, and therefore ſo intituled by the people.

It is true, that for his Juſtice and other excellent vertues he was indeed called a Father; but that the name of *Cyrus* had any ſuch ſignification, I think it be miſtaken.

*Plutarch* hath a third opinion, affirming, That *Cyrus* is as much to ſay as the Sun, in the ſame Language. Howſoever it be, yet the Prophet *Eſay*, almoſt two hundred years before *Cyrus* was born, gives him that name, Thus ſaith the Lord unto *Cyrus* his Anointed, &c.

Before the Conqueſt of *Babylon*, the victories which *Cyrus* obtained were many and great: among which, the Conqueſt of *Lydia*, and other Provinces thereto ſubject, together with the taking of *Craſus* himſelf, are not recounted by *Eusebius*, *Oroſius*, and others, but placed among his latter achievements: whoſe opinion for this difference of time is founded upon two reaſons, namely, That of the *Median* there is no mention in that laſt war againſt *Craſus*; and that the obtaining of *Sardis* is referred to the eight and fiftieth Olympiad, and the glorious victorie which *Cyrus* had over *Babylon*, to the five and fiftieth Olympiad.

The former of which might have bin uſed (and was by the *Greeks*) to exclude the *Medes* from the honour of having won *Babylon* it ſelf, which in due place I have answered. The latter ſeems to have reference to the ſecond War which *Cyrus* made upon *Lydia*, when it rebelled; at which time he fo eſtabliſhed his former Conqueſt, as after that time theſe Nations never offered to revolt. Wherefore I like better in this particular to beleve with *Herodotus*, whom the moſt of Chronologers follow, and find the enterprife of *Sardis* to precede that of *Babylon*.

## §. II.

Of *Craſus* the King of *Lydia*, who made War upon *Cyrus*.

I Have in the laſt Book ſpoken ſomewhat of *Craſus*, of his race and predeceſſors, as alſo of thoſe Kings which governed *Lydia* in more ancient times: of which the firſt (to prophane Authors known) was *Lydus* the ſon of *Atys*: which Familie extinguished, the kingdom was by an Oracle conferred upon *Argon*, deſcended from *Hercules*, whereof there were two and twentie generations, *Candaules* being the laſt, who by thewring his fair wife naked to *Gyges* his favorite, he was by the ſame *Gyges* (thereto urged upon perill of his own life by the Queen) the next day ſlain. Which done, *Gyges* enjoyed both the Queen and the Kingdom of *Lydia*, and left the ſame to *Atys* his ſon, who was father to *Sadyattes*, the father of *Halyattes* (who thruſt the *Cimmerians* out of *Aſia*) and *Halyattes* begat *Craſus*. Which five Kings, of a third race, enjoyed that kingdom an hundred and ſeventie years. *Halyattes* the father of *Craſus* was an undertaking Prince, and after he had continued a war againſt *Cyaxares* the *Median*, a Prince very powerfull, and maintained it fix years, a peace was concluded upon equal conditions between them.

*Aſtyages*, the ſon of *Cyaxares*, and grandfather to *Cyrus*, thought himſelf greatly honoured by obtaining *Aryenes*, *Craſus* ſiſter, whom he married.

Kkk 3

But

But *Cresus* so far enlarged his dominions after his fathers death, as he was nothing inferior in territory to a y King or Monarch of that age: Of which, about that time there were four in effect of equall strength, to wit, the *Median*, the *Babylonian*, the *Egyptian*, and the *Lydian*: only *Nabuchodonosor*, after he had joyned *Phoenicia*, *Palaestina*, and *Egypt* to his Empire, had thence-forward no Competitor during his own life.

But *Cresus*, notwithstanding the men and treasure spent in the quarrell of the *Babylonians*, he yet mastered *Eolia*, *Doris*, and *Ionia*, Provinces posselt by the *Greeks* in *Asia* the lesse, adjoining to *Lydia*; gave law to the *Phrygians*, *Bithynians*, *Carians*, *Myrians*, *Paphlagonians*, and other Nations. And that he also intore'd the *Ephesians* to acknowledge him, notwithstanding they compassed their Citie with *Diana's* girdle, *Herodotus* to witnesse. Moreover, *Athenaus* out of *Berosus* (which also *Strabo* confirmeth) makes report of a Signall victorie which *Cresus* obtained against the *Sacians*, a Nation of the *Sythians*, in memory whereof the *Babylonians* his allies did yearly celebrate a Feast, which they called *Sacae*: All which he performed in fourteen years.

And being now confident in the continuance of his good fortune, and envious of *Cyrus* fame, doubting also, that his prosperous undertakings might in the end grow perillous to himself, he consulted with the Oracle of *Apollo*, whom he presented with marvellous rich gifts, what successe he might hope for against *Cyrus*, if he undertook him: from whom he received this riddle; *Cresus*, passing over the River *Halys*, shall dissolve a great Dominion. For the devil being doubtfull of the successe, payed him with merchandize of both sides alike, and might be inverted either way, to the ruin of *Persia*, or of his own *Lydia*.

## s. III.

*Cresus his Expedition against Cyrus.*

**H**ereupon *Cresus* being resolved to stop the course of *Cyrus* fortunes, if he could, despised all the arguments used by *Sandanes* to the contrary, who desired him to fore-think, That he urged a Nation inhabiting a barren and mountainous region; a people not covered with the soft silk of worms, but with the hard skins of beasts; not fed with such meat as they fancied, but content with what they found; drinkers of water, not of wine: and in a word, a Nation warlike, enduring, valiant and prosperous; over whom if he became victorious, he could thereby enrich himself in nothing but fame, in which he already excelled; and if by them beaten, and subjected, so great would his losse appear of all things which the world hath in account, as the fame could neither hastily be told, nor readily conceived.

Notwithstanding this solid counsel, *Cresus* having prepared a powerful army, he led the same toward *Media*, but in his passage he was arrested at *Pterium*, a City of great strength in *Cappadocia*, which while he fought by all means to surprize or to force, *Cyrus* came on, & found the *Lydians* encamped before it. That each was inferior to other in strength or opinion, I do not find: for out of doubt, *Cresus*, as he excelled any Prince of that age in riches and abilitie, so was he not under any in territorie and fame that then lived.

But as *Craissippus* of *Mitylene* answered *Pompey* when he complained against the gods, because they favoured a disturber and usurper of the Common-weale against him who fought for the *Romane* libertie, That Kingdoms and Common-weals had their encrease and period from divine Ordinance: so at this time was the winter of *Cresus* prosperitie at hand, the leaves of his flourishing fortune ready to fall, and that of *Cyrus* but in the flower and first spring. The God of all power, and not *Admetis* Herdman, *Apollo*, had given a date to the one, and a beginning of glory to the other.

When these two Armies were in view of each other, after the entertainment of divers skirmishes, the *Persians* and *Lydians* began to joyn in grosse troops: supplies from both Kings thrust on upon the falling off, and advancement of either Nations; and as the *Persians* had somewhat the better of the day, so when the dark vaile of night had hidden each Armie from the others view, *Cresus* doubting what successe the rising Sun would bring with it, quitted the field to *Cyrus*, and with all speed possible retired, and taking the next way into *Lydia*, recovered *Sardis* his first Citie and Regall Seat, without any pursuit made by *Cyrus* to retard him. Where being arrived, and nothing suspecting

suspecting *Cyrus* approach, or any other War for that Winter, he dismissed the Soldiers, and sent the troops of his sundrie Nations to their own Provinces, appointing them to re-assemble at the end of five months, acquainting his Commanders with his intents for the renewing of the War at the time appointed.

## s. IV.

*The Conquest of Lydia by Cyrus.*

**C***Cyrus* in the following morning finding the *Lydians* departed, put his Armie in order to pursue them, yet not so hastily, and at their heels, as to be discovered. But having good intelligence of *Cresus* his proceeding, he so measured his marches, as he presented not himself before *Sardis*, till such time as *Cresus* had disposed his Armie to their wintring garrisons: which being altogether unlooked for, and unfear'd, he surrounded *Sardis* with his Armie; Wherein *Cresus* having no other Companies than his Citizens and ordinary Guards, after fourteen days siege the same was entered by assault, and all executed that resisted. *Cresus* having now neither arms to fight, nor wings to flee, *Sardis* being on all parts strongly encompassed, thrust himself into the heap and miserable multitude of his vassals, and had undergone the common fortune of common persons vanquished, had not a son of his, who had been dumb all his life (by extreme of passion and fear enabled) cried out to the Souldiers to spare *Cresus*. Who thereupon being taken and imprisoned, despoiled of all things but the expectation of death, he was forthwith tied in fetters, and set on the top of a great and high heap of wood, to be consumed to ashes thereon. To which when the fire was set and kindled, remembering the discourse which he had with the *Athenian* Law-giver, he thrice cried out on his name, *Salon, Salon, Salon*: and being demanded what he meant by that invocation, he first used silence; but urged again, he told them. That he had now found it true which *Salon* had long since told them, That many men in the race and couries of their lives might well be accounted fortunate, but no man could discern himself for happy indeed, till his end.

Of which answer *Cyrus* being speedily informed, remembering the changes of fortune, and his own mortallitie, he commanded his ministers of Justice to withdraw the fire with all diligence, to save *Cresus*, and to conduct him to his presence: Which done, *Cyrus* demanded of him, Who it was that had perswaded him? or what self reason had conducted him to invade his territory, and to make him of a friend an enemy? To whom he thus answered; It was thy prosperous, and my unprosperous destiny (the *Grecian* god flattering therewithall my ambition) that were the inventers and conductors of *Cresus* War against *Cyrus*.

*Cyrus* being pierc'd with *Cresus* answer, & bewailing his estate, though victorious over it, did not only spare his life, but entertained him ever after as a King and his companion, shewing therein a true effect of mercy indeed, *Qua non causam, sed fortunam speit.*

And herein is the real difference discerned between that behaviour which we call *beneficium laetivis*, and *gratum Principis*: A thief sometime sparing the life of him which is in his power, but unjustly: A King that giveth breath, and a continuance of being, to him that was the cause and author of his own evil.

The report made by *Xenophon*, is, That *Cyrus* did friendly entertain *Cresus* at the first fight, not mentioning that which *Herodotus* delivers, and is here already set down, that he should have bin burnt alive. It may very well be, that *Xenophon* portraying (in *Cyrus*) an heroical Prince, thought an intent so cruell, fitter to be forgotten than rehearsed, as too much mis-becoming a generous nature. And it is very likely, that needesse of alliance might with-hold *Cyrus* (had he bin otherwise vicious) from so cruell a purpose against his grandmothers brother. Howsoever it was, the morall part of the storie hath given much credit and reputation to the report of *Herodotus* (as to many the like it often doth) and made it passe for currant, though the trust reposed in *Cresus* afterwards may seem to argue, that *Cyrus* did not use him inhumanly at the first.

For as *Herodotus* himself telleth us, when *Cyrus* past with his Armie over *Araxes* into *Syria*, he left *Cresus* to accompany and advise his son *Cambyzes*, Governour of the Empire in his absence, with whom he lived all the time of *Cyrus*, & did afterward follow *Cambyzes*



*Cambyses* into *Egypt*, where he hardly escaped his tyrannous hand. What his end was, I do not find.

But in this time the races of three of the greatest Kings in that part of the world took end, to wit, of the *Babylonians*, *Medians*, and *Lydians*, in *Balthasar*, *Cyaxares*, and *Craesus*.

S. V.

How *Cyrus* won *Babylon*.

**A**fter this *Lydian* War ensued the great Conquest of *Babylon*, which gave unto *Cyrus* an Empire so large and mightie, that he was justly reputed the greatest Monarch then living upon earth. How long time the preparations for this great action took up, it is uncertain; only it seems, that ten whole years did passe between his taking those two Cities of *Sardis* and *Babylon*; which nevertheless I doe not think to have bin wholly occupied in provision for the *Assyrian* war, but rather to have bin spent in settling the Estate which he had already purchased. And hereunto perhaps may be referred that which *Ctesias* hath in his fragments, of a war made by *Cyrus* upon the *Scythians*, though related as foregoing the victory obtained against *Craesus*. He telleth us, That *Cyrus* invaded *Scythia*, and being victorious over that Nation, took *Amorges* their King prisoner: but being in a second battell overthrowen by the wife of *Amorges*, *Spartho*, and therein taken, the one King was delivered for the other.

Likewise it may be thought, that no small part of those troubles which arose in the lower *Asia*, grew soon after the departure of the victorious armie, before the Conquest was fully established.

For after *Cyrus* was returned out of *Asia* the lesse, many Nations, conquered formerly by *Craesus*, and now by *Cyrus*, revolted from him; against whom he employed *Pactius*, and then *Harpagus*, who first reduced the *Phocians* under their former obedience, and then the rest of the *Greeks* inhabiting *Asia* the lesse, as the *Ionians*, *Carians*, *Æolians*, and *Lycians*, who resolutely (according to the strength they had) defended themselves. But in the attempt upon *Babylon* it self, it is not to be doubted, that *Cyrus* employed all his forces, having taken order before-hand, that nothing should be able to divert him, or to raise that siege, and make frustrate the work upon which he did set all his rest. And great reason there was, that he should bend all his care and strength unto the taking of that citie, which beside the fame and reputation that it held, as being head of an Empire thereon depending, was so strongly fenced with a treble wall of great height, and surrounded with waters unfordable, so plentifully victualled for many years, that the inhabitants were not only free from all doubt and fear of their estate, but despised and derided all purposes and power of their besiegers.

The only hope of the *Medes* and *Persians*, who despaired of carrying by assault a Citie so well fortified and manned, was in cutting off all supplies of victuals and other necessities whereof though the Town was said to be stored sufficiently for more than 30. years, yet might it well be deemed, that in such a world of people as dwelt within those gates, one great want or other would soon appear, & vanquish the resolution of that unwearied multitude. In expecting the success of this course, the besiegers were likely to endure much travel, & all in vain, if they did not keep streight watch & strong guards upon all quarters.

This was hard to doe, in regard of the vast circuit of those walls which they were to gird in, with numbers neither great enough, nor of men sufficiently assured unto their commander: The consideration whereof mislited unto the *Babylonians* matter of good pastime, when they saw the *Lydians*, *Phrygians*, *Cappadocians*, and others, quartered about their Town to keep them in, who having bin their ancient friends and allies, were more likely to joyne with them, if occasion were offered, than to use much diligence on the behalf of *Cyrus*, who had, as it were, yesterday layd upon their necks the galling yoke of servitude. Whilst the besieged were pleasing themselves in this deceitfull and vain gladnesse, that is the ordinary fore-runner of sudden calamitie, *Cyrus*, whom the Ordinance of God made strong, constant, and inventive, devised by so many channels and trenches as were sufficient and capable of *Euphrates*, to draw the same from the walls of *Babylon*, thereby to make his approach the more facile and assured: which when by the labour of many hands he had performed,

*Herodotus* lib. 7.

he stayed the time of his advantage for the execution: for he had left certain bankes or heads un-cut, between the main river which surrounded the Citie, and his own Trenches.

Now *Balthasar*, finding neither any want or weaknes within, nor any possibilitie of approach for his enemies without, prepared an exceeding sumptuous feast, publike Playes, and other Pastimes, and thereto invited a thousand of his Princes or Nobilitie, besides his wives, courtizans, and others of that trade. This he did either to let the besiegers know, that his provisions were either sufficient, not onely for all needfull uses, but even for jollitie and excesse; or because he hoped that his enemies, under the burthen of many distresses were well neere broken; or in honour of *Bel* his most reverenced Idoll; or that it was his birth or coronation day; or for many or all these respects. And he was not contented with such magnificence as no Prince else could equall, but (using *Daniels* words) He lifted himself up against the Lord of Heaven: for he and his Princes, wives and concubines, made carowing cups of the Vessels of God, in contempt of whom he praised his own puppets, made of Silver and Gold, of Brasse, Iron, Wood, and Stone; *Quæque fuit subtrita in vasibus aureis bibentes, liquores & lapideas deos laudare? How great a foolishness was it (saith S. Hierome) drinking in golden Cups, to praise gods of Wood and Stone? While Balthasar was in this sort triumphing; and his brains well filled with vapors, he beheld a hand, which by divine power wrote on the wall opposite unto him, certain words which he understood not: wherewith so great a fear and amazement seized him, as the ioynts of his loynes were loosed, and his knees smote one against the other. Which passion when he had in some part recovered, he cried out for his *Chaldeans*, *Astrologians*, and *Soothsayers*, promising them great rewards, and the third place of honour in the kingdom to him that could read and expound the writing: but it exceeded their Art. In this disturbance and astonishment, the Queen hearing what had past, and of the Kings amazement, after reverence done, used this speech: *There is a man in thy Kingdom, in whom is the spirit of the holy Gods, and in the dayes of thy father, light, and understanding, and wisdom, like the wisdom of the Gods, was found in him, whom the King Nabuchodonosor, thy father, the King (I say) thy father made chief of the Interpreters, Astrologians, Chaldeans, and Soothsayers, because a more excellent spirit, and knowledge, and understanding, &c. were found in him, even in Daniel, &c. Now let Daniel be called, and he will declare the interpretation.**

This Queen, *Josephus* takes for the grandmother; *Origen* and *Theodoret* for the mother of *Balthasar*, either of which may be true: for it appeareth, that she was not any of the Kings wives, because absent from the feast; and being past the age of dancing and banquetting, she came in upon the beuit of the miracle, and to comfort the King in his distraction. And whereas *Daniel* was forgotten and neglected by others both of younger years and times, this old Queen remembered well what he had done in the dayes of *Nabuchodonosor*, grandfather to this *Balthasar*, and kept in mind both his religion and divine gifts.

When *Daniel* was brought to the Kings presence, who acknowledged those excellent graces wherewith God had enriched him, he prayed him, together with promises of reward and honour, to read and interpret those words miraculously written; to whom *Daniel* made answer in a farre different style from that hee used towards his Grandfather: for the evil which he foretold *Nabuchodonosor*, he wished that the same might befall his enemies; but to this King (whose neglect of God, and vice, he hated) he answered in these words, *Keep thy reward, to thy self, and give thy gifts to another, yet will I read the writing unto the King, and show him the interpretation.* Which before he had performed, he gave him first the cause of Gods just judgement against him, and the reason of this terrible sentence, wherof the King and all his Wife-men were utterly ignorant. Which being written at large in *Daniel*, hath this effect, That forgetting Gods goodness to his Father, whom all Nations feared and obeyed, and that for his pride and neglect of those benefites, as hee deprived him of his estate and understanding, so upon the acknowledgement of Gods infinite power he restored him to both. This King notwithstanding lifted himself up against the same God, and presuming both to abuse those vessels dedicated to holy uses, and neglecting the Lord of all power, praised and worshipped the dead Idols of Gold, Silver, Brasse, Iron, Stone, and Wood: and therefore those words, from the Oracle of a true God delivered, (to wit) *Mene, Tekel, Upharjain*, gave

*Orig. & Theod. in D. m. Joseph. Ant. 10.*

*Dan. 5. 18. 19; 20.*

gave the King knowledge, that God had numbred the time of his kingdome, and finished it; That he was weighed in the ballance of Gods justice, and found too light; and that his Empire was divided and given to the *Medes and Persians*.

The very evening or night of this day, wherein *Balthazar* feasted and perished, *Cyrus*, either by his espiall, according to *Xenophon*, or inspired by God himself, whose ensigne he followed in this warre, found the time and opportunitie to invite him: and therefore while the Kings head, and the heads of his Nobilitie were no lesse filled with the vapors of wine, than their hearts with the fear of Gods judgement, he caused all the banks and heads of his trenches to be opened and cut down with that diligence, as by them he drew the great River of *Euphrates* dry for the present, by whole channell running, his Armie made their entrance, finding none to disturb them. All the Town lay buried (as the Poet saith) in sleep and wine: such as came in the *Persians* way, were put to the sword, unlesse they saved themselves by flight, as some did, who ran away crying, and filling the streets with an uncertain tumult.

Such *Assyrian* Lords as had revolted from *Balthazar*, and betaken themselves to the party of *Cyrus*, did now conduct a selected companie to the Kings Palace, which having easily forced, they rushed into the chamber where the King with his Princes were banquetting, slew both him and them without any mercie, who struggled in vain to keep those lives which God had newly threatned to take away. And now was the prophetic of *Jeremie* fulfilled, and that of *Esay*, two hundred years before this subversion, who in his seven and fortieth Chapter, and elsewhere, writeth this destruction fo feelingly and lively, as if he had been present both at the terrible slaughter there committed, and had seen the great and unfear'd change and calamitie of this great Empire; yea, and had also heard the sorrows and bewailings of every surviving soul thereunto subject. His Prophecie of this place he beginneth in these words; *Come down, and sit in the dust, O virgin daughter of Babel: sit on the ground, there is no Throne, &c.* And again, *Sit still and get thee into darkness, O daughter of the Chaldeans, for thou shalt no more be called the Lady of Kingdomes.* For though it cannot be doubted, that God used *Nabuchodonosor* and the *Chaldeans*, to punish the Idolatrie of the *Judaans*, yet *Esay* teacheth us in this place, That he did not yet forget, that the execution of his judgements was mixt with a rigorous extremite. For (saith *Esay*) in the person of God, *I was wroth with my people, I have polluted mine inheritance, and given them into thine hand: thou didst shew them no mercy, but thou didst lay thy very heavy yoke upon the antient. I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of Hosts, and will cut off from Babel the name and the remnant, and the son and the nephew. And in the thirteenth, Every one that is found, shall be stricken thorow: and whosoever joyneth himself, shall fall by the sword, their children also shall be broken in pieces before their eyes, their houses spoiled, and their wives ravished.* So as there is no Historian who was either present at this victory of *Cyrus*, or that received the report from others truly as it was, that could better leave the same to posteritie after it happened, than *Esay* hath done in many places of his Prophecies, which were written two hundred years before any thing attempted.

The greatnesse and magnificence of *Babylon*, were it not by divers grave Authors set down, might seem altogether fabulous: for, besides the reports of *Saint Hierome*, *Salinus*, and *Orosius*, *Aristotle* in the third of his *Politicks*, the second Chapter, received the report for true, That one part of the Citie knew not that the rest was taken three dayes after. Which is not impossible, if the testimonie of *Diodorus Siculus* may be taken, who finds the compass thereof at three hundred and threescore Stadia or Furlongs, which makes five and forty miles: the walls whereof had so great a breadth, that six Chariots might passe in front thereon. And of height, according to *Ctesias* and *Clitarchus*, three hundred threescore and five foot, garnished with an hundred and fiftie Towers. *Strabo* in the beginning of his sixteenth Book of Geographie gives it a greater circuit, adding five and twenty furlongs more to the former compass, reckoning the same at three hundred fourscore and five furlongs, which makes eight and fortie mile and one furlong, but finds the wall farre under that which *Diodore* reports: and so doth *Curtius* measure their thicknesse but at two and thirtie foot, and their height at an hundred cubits, which is also very much; every cubit containing a foot and half of the large measure, though to the whole circuit of the Citie he gives the same with *Siculus*, and eight furlongs more. *Herodotus* finds a greater content than *Strabo* doth, namely, foure hun-

Jer. 47.  
Esay 47.

Cap. 47.

Isa. 14.  
Towit, Evil-  
moredah and  
Balthazar.

Diod. l. 3.

dred and fourscore furlongs circle; the thicknesse of the wall he measures at fiftie cubits, and the height at two hundred of the same regall cubit. For entrance it had an hundred gates of Braile, with posts and hooks to hang them on of the same metall: and therefore did the Prophet *Esay* rightly intide *Babylon*, The Princeesse and Glory of *Elia* 47. & 13. Kingdomes.

But when *Cyrus* had wonne her, he stript her out of her Princely Robes, and made her a slave; dividing not onely all her goodly houses, and her whole Territorie, with all the riches therein contained, among his Souldiers; but bestowing the inhabitants themselves as bond-slaves upon those that had taken possession of their goods.

Touching the reign of *Cyrus*, and the time which he enjoyed in rest and pleasure, I can say no more of it, than that it is generally agreed by all Chronologers to have lasted only seven years: in which time he made such Constitutions as differ little from the Ordinances of all wise Kings that are desirous to establish a Royall power to themselves and their posteritie.

## s. VI.

### The end of Cyrus.

THE last warre, and the end of this great King *Cyrus*, is diversly written. *Herodotus* and *Justin* deliver, That after the Conquest of *Asia* the lesse, *Cyrus* invaded the *Massagetes*, a very warlike Nation of the *Scythians*, governed by *Tomyris* their Queen: and that in an encounter between the *Persians* and these Northern *Nomades*, *Tomyris* lost her Armie, and her Son *Spargapises* that commanded it: In revenge whereof, this Queen making new levies of men of War, and following the War against *Cyrus*, in a second battell beat the *Persian* Armie, and taking *Cyrus* prisoner, cut off his head from his body, and cast the same into a boule of bloud, using these words; *Thou hast hast all thy life time thirsted for bloud, now drink thy fill, and satiate thy self.*

It should hereby seem, that *Cyrus* knowing the strength and multitude of those frozen Nations, was perswaded to abate their furie by some forcible invasion and depopulation, because in the time of *Cyaxares*, father to *Ahyages*, those *Scythians* invaded *Media* and *Asia* the lesse, and held the same in a servile subjection eight and twenty years.

This war which *Metasthenes* calleth *Tomyrique*, lasted (saith he) six years, and took end at the end of *Cyrus*.

But in this particular I believe with *Viginier*, that this *Scythian* War was rather the same which *Cyrus* made against the *Sacians*, before the conquest of *Lydia*, according to *Ctesias* before cited, who calleth *Tomyris*, *Sparetha*, though he deliver the successe of that war otherwise than *Herodotus* doth: The rather (saith *Viginier*) because *Strabo* in his eleventh book reciteth, that *Cyrus* surprized the *Sacians* by the same stratagem by which *Justin* saith he defeated the son of *Tomyris*. And the same *Ctesias* also reporteth, That the last war which *Cyrus* was against *Amorrrhaus* king of the *Debericians*, a Nation (as the rest) of *Scythia*; whom though he overcame, yet he then received the wound of his death, which he suffered three dayes after.

*Strabo* also affirmeth, That he was buried in his own Citie of *Pasagardes*, which himself had built, and where his Epitaph was to be read in his time, which is said to have bin this: *O vir, quicumque es, & undecumque advenis, neque enim te adventurum ignoravi: Ego sum Cyrus qui Persis imperium constitui, pusillum hoc terra quo meum tegitur corpus mihi ne invideas; O thou man, whosoever thou art, or whencesoever thou comest; for I was not ignorant that thou shouldst come: I am Cyrus that founded the Persian Empire, doe not envie unto me this little earth, with which my body is covered.*

This Tombe was opened by *Alexander*, as *Qu. Curtius* reporteth, either upon hope of treasure, supposed to have been buried with him, or upon desire to honour his dead body with certain ceremonies; in which there was found an old rotten Target, two *Scythian* Bowes, and a sword. The Coffin wherein his body lay, *Alexander* caused to be covered with his own garment, and a Crown of gold to be set upon it. These things well considered, as they give credit to the reports of *Xenophon* and *Zonar*, so they derogate much from *Herodotus*, who leaves his body in the hands of *Tomyris*.

And

Xen. ped. 8.  
Zon. l. 1. c. 20.

And surely, had *Cyrus* lost the Armie of *Persia* in *Scythia*, it is not likely, that his son would so soon have transported all his remaining forces into *Egypt*, so faire off from that quarter; the *Scythian* Nation then victorious, and bordering *Media*: neither had *Cambyses* been able in such haste to have undertaken and performed so great a Conquest. Wherefore I rather believe *Xenophon*, laying, That *Cyrus* died aged and in peace: and that finding in himself that he could not long enjoy the world, he called unto him his Nobilitie, with his two sons, *Cambyses* and *Smerdis*; or after *Xenophon*, *Tamoxares*: and after a long Oration, wherein he assured himself, and taught others of the immortality of the Soul, and of the punishments and rewards following the good and ill deserving of every man in this life; he exhorted his sons by the strongest arguments he had, to a perpetuall concord and agreement. Many other things he uttered, which make it probable, that he received the knowledge of the true God from *Daniel*, when he governed *Susa* in *Persia*; and that *Cyrus* himself had read the Prophecie of *Esaie*, wherein he was expressly named, and by God (for the delivery of his people) preordained. Which act of delivering the *Jewes* from their Captivitie, and of restoring the holy Temple and Citie of *Hierusalem*, was in true consideration the noblest work that ever *Cyrus* performed. For in other actions he was an instrument of Gods power, used for the chastising of many Nations, and the establishing of a government in those parts of the world, which was not long to continue. But herein he had the grace to be an instrument of Gods goodnesse, and a willing advancer of his Kingdome upon earth; which must last for ever, though heaven and earth shall perish.

## S. VII.

of *Cyrus* his Decree for building the Temple of God in *Jerusalem*.

HAVING therefore spoken of his great victories, mentioned by sundrie Historians, the glory of all which was a reward of this his service done unto him that was Author of them and of all goodnesse: I hold it meet at length to speak of the Decree made in the first of his Reign, being perhaps the first that ever hee made after his possession of the *Babylonian* Empire: That the captive *Jewes* should return again into their own Territorie, and re-build the House of God in *Jerusalem*, having now endured and finished the threescore and ten years captivitie, by the Prophets foretold. For the accomplishing whereof, hee gave order to his Treasurers to furnish them with all things necessary and wanting. He also restored unto them five thousand four hundred threescore and nine Vessels of Gold and Silver, whereof *Nabuchodonosor*, the grandfather of *Balthazar*, had formerly robbed the Temple.

The number of the *Jewes* which returned out of *Chaldea* under their Leader *Zorobabel*, the son of *Salathiel*, and Nephew to King *Jeconias*, and *Jesus* or *Josias* the son of *Josadak*, were about fifty thousand; where, as soon as they arrived, they built an Altar to the living God, and sacrificed thereon, according to their own law, and afterward began to thought themselves how to prepare materials for the rebuilding of the Temple.

But no sooner did the *Jewes* begin to lay any one stone, than the *Samaritians* and other idolatrous Nations adjoining, gave all the impediment they could. So did the Governours of those Provinces under *Cyrus* altogether countenance the disturbers, and in no sort favoured the *Jewes*, nor the labours nor purposes they had in hand. And not onely those which were but Provincial Lieutenants, and other officers of lesse place, but *Cambyses* himself; who having the charge of the whole Empire, while *Cyrus* was builded otherwise, countermanded the building begun. And whereas some Authors make doubt, that whatsoever *Cambyses* did when himself had obtained the Empire, yet during the life of *Cyrus* there was no such impediment or prohibition: they may herein relolve themselves out of *Esdra*s, That by the conspiracies of the neighbouring Nations, the building was hindered all the time of King *Cyrus* life, &c. And therefore it is true, that the *Jewes* themselves affirm, as it is written in the second of *John*, That the Temple was 46. years in setting up, having received so many hinderances from the first foundation to the second of *Darius*.

And if we seek the naturall and politique courses which moved *Cambyses* to withstand his fathers decree, as well while he governed under him, as when himself became sole

10

and Sovereign Monarch, we shall find them in that Epistle, remembered by *Esdra*s, written by *Belshazzar*, *Mithridates*, and the rest, Presidents and Counsellors in *Phenicia*, wherein they complain that the *Jewes* were evermore rebellious and troublers of Kings; that their City being once built, they would then refuse to pay tribute, and fall from the obedience of the Empire, as they had formerly done in the times of other Kings.

But that which for that present seemed the most forcible impediment, was, that *Cambyses* having it in his resolution to invade *Egypt*, and that it was a common opinion, That the *Jewes* were defended of those Nations, because they issued thence under *Moses*, when they conquered *Judaea*, their Citie being once repaired and fortified, they might return to their old vomit, and give the same disturbance to *Cambyses* Conquest, which they did to *Sennacherib*, *Nabuchodonosor*, and other Kings of *Babylon*. For as it is written in *Ezechiel*, *Egypt was the confidence of the house of Israel*.

But it is to be understood, as *Codoman* and others have observed, that *Artaxerxes*, to whom the Counsellors and Governours of *Phenicia* complained against the *Jewes*, did not precede, but succeed *Darius Hystaspes*, as in the sixth and seventh chapters of *Esdra*s it is made plain: and also that those Governours (whose Epistle sheweth as much) did not withstand the building of the Temple, but the fortifying and enclosing of the City, as by the reasons given in the said Epistle, and by the Kings answer, it is evident.

Also in the first of *Ezra*, the fourteenth verse, the kings are named in order as they governed, and *Artaxerxes* written after *Darius*; as: And they built and finished it (to wit the Temple) by the appointment of the God of Israel, and by the commandment of *Cyrus* and *Darius*, and *Artahastae* Kings of *Persia*. Lastly, in the seventh of *Ezra* it is written; Now after these things, in the reign of *Artahastae* King of *Persia*: which was as much as to say, after the finishing of the Temple in *Darius* time. And therefore *Artaxerxes* in the second of *Esdra*s is there named by anticipation, not in his own time and place.

And thus much concerning the rebuilding of the Citie and Temple of *Hierusalem*. Which action though prospered by the hand of God, was very slowly pursued by the men whom it most concerned, but first set on foot by *Cyrus*. The other ordinances of *Cyrus*, with his forme and manner of government, are to be found in *Xenophon*. At his death he bequeathed the Empire unto his eldest son *Cambyses*, appointing *Smerdis* or *Tamoxares* his younger son to be *Satrapa*, or Lieutenant of *Media*, *Armenia*, and *Cadusias*; and then died, after he had reigned (saith *Herodotus*) one and thirty years, or (according to *Justin*) but thirty.

## S. VIII.

of *Cyrus* his issue: and whether *Atossa* were his daughter, or (as some think) were the same with *Queen Hester*.

*Cyrus* had issue two sons, *Cambyses* and *Smerdis*, with three daughters, *Atossa*, *Meroe*, and *Artystona*: *Ctesias* addeth to these, *Amysis*. *Atossa* and *Meroe* their brother *Cambyses* married; *Artystona*, *Darius Hystaspes* obtained; so did hee *Atossa*, *Cambyses* being dead: who (as some Writers have supposed) inflamed both her husbands, *Darius*, and *Xerxes* after him, to invade *Greece*, to be avenged of the whole Nation for the cruel intent that *Aman* (whom the old Translation calleth a *Macadonian*) had against the *Jewes*, though the opinion of *Josephus* be more probable, who finds *Aman* to be an *Amalekite*. But it is hard to be understood, how *Atossa*, the daughter of *Cyrus*, should have been *Esther*, whose History seemes rather to appertain to the time of *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, than of *Darius* the son of *Hystaspes*, or of *Xerxes*. The desire of *Atossa* to have *Greece* brought under the yoke of *Persia*, was partly grounded upon the honour which thereby she thought her husband might obtaine, partly upon a feminine humour of getting many brave Dames, *Corinthians*, *Athenians*, and others of that Nation to bee her bond-women. Wherefore I cannot give assent to the opinion of *Codoman*, who upon the near sound of the two names, *Atossa* and *Hadassa*, (by the latter of which *Esther* was also called) makes them to have been one person. For though it bee true that *Esther* concerning her parentage, a while might bee taken for a great Lady; yet *Codoman*s inference is nothing probable, that she should therefore, and

L II

for

1 Efd. 2.  
2 Efd. 7.  
Philaon ver.

1 Efd. 3. 3.  
Efd. 5.  
Efd. 4. & 5.  
Jof. d. an. 11.

1 Efd. 1. 16.

Efd. 2. 16.

1 Efd. 1. 33.  
1 Efd. 4. 5.

for the great affection which the King bare unto her, he thought the daughter of *Cyrus*. Certain it is, that *Esther* did at length discover her Kindred and Nation; whereby, if Histories could be kept free from this error, yet the people, and especially the Nobility, must needs have understood the truth: who nevertheless did so well know the parentage of *Atossa*, that for her sake, as being daughter of *Cyrus*, her son *Xerxes* was preferred to the kingdom before his elder brother, against whom also he could have pretended a very weak claim. But of these things more hereafter in fitter place.



## CHAP. IV.

The estate of things from the death of *CYRUS* to  
the reign of *DARIUS*.

## S. I.

Of the number and names of the Persian Kings.



F the successors of *Cyrus*, and the continuance of the *Persian Empire*, there are many opinions; As that of *Metasthenes*, who hath numbered the *Persian Kings*, and their times as followeth.

<i>Darius Medus</i> , and <i>Cyrus</i> jointly.	2
<i>Cyrus</i> alone.	22
<i>Priscus Artaxerxes</i> .	20
<i>Darius Longimanus</i> .	37
<i>Darius Nothus</i> .	19
<i>Artaxerxes Mnemon</i> .	55
<i>Artaxerxes Ochus</i> .	26
<i>Artes</i> , or <i>Arfames</i> .	4
<i>Darius</i> the last, conquered by <i>Alexander</i> .	6

years.

To which *Philo* agreeth; which number of years added, make in all an hundred ninety and one. But in this Catalogue *Metasthenes* hath left out *Cambyfes* and *Xerxes*, and names *Artaxerxes Assuerus* for the immediate successor of *Cyrus*; in place (saith *Melancton*) of *Darius* the son of *Hystaspes*: for *Metasthenes*, as *Melancton* conjectureth, doth not account *Cambyfes* in the Catalogue, because his reign was confounded with that of *Cyrus*.

There is a second opinion, though ridiculous, of *Sedar Olam*, who finds but foure *Persian Kings* from the beginning to the end of that Empire.

*Genebrard*, *Schubert*, and *Beroaldus* have also a differing account from the *Greeks*; whom nevertheless *Ensebius* and most of the *Latines* follow, and so doth *Krentzheim*, who hath fully answered, and, as I take it, refuted all the former Authors varying from that account. For in this sort doe the *Greekes* marshall the *Persian Kings* with the times of their reigns.

<i>Cyrus</i> in all.	30
<i>Cambyfes</i> with the <i>Magi</i> .	8
<i>Darius Hystaspes</i> .	36
<i>Xerxes</i> .	21
<i>Artaxerxes Longimanus</i> .	40
<i>Darius Nothus</i> .	19
<i>Artaxerxes Mnemon</i> .	43
<i>Artaxerxes Ochus</i> .	23
<i>Arfames</i> .	3
<i>Darius</i> the last.	6

years.

Which numbers put together, make in all two hundred and thirty.

This account (as I have said) the most Chronologers, and the best learned approve. These *Persian Princes*, being all warranted by the authority of the Scriptures, as *Peuce* in his historical Animadversions hath gathered the places; finding first *Cyrus* in the second of *Chronicles*. ch. 36. ver. 22, 23. *Ezra*. 1. ch. 1. ver. 1. and often elsewhere.

Secondly, *Cambyfes* in the eleventh of *Daniel*, who may indeed be well esteemed for one of those three Kings in the second verse named, and so the marginall Commentator upon the *Geneva* understands that place; but, under correction, mistakes the matter greatly, when he saith in the same note, that *Darius Hystaspes* was an enemy to the people of God, and stood against them: his great favour and liberality to the *Jews* being elsewhere proved.

Thirdly, is *Darius Hystaspes* found in *Ezra* the first. c. 4. v. 5. who in the first verse is also named *Ahasuerus*.

Fourthly, in the eleventh of *Daniel* verse the second, *Xerxes* is plainly foretold and described, and the great War which he should make against the *Greeks* by *Daniel* remembered.

Fifthly, *Artaxerxes Longimanus* in *Ezra* the fourth, verse seven, who is also called *Aribasasta*. c. 4. l. 1. *Ezra*. v. 7. and cap. 7. v. 7.

Sixthly, *Darius Nothus*, *Ezra* cap. 4. verse 24. and cap. 5. verse 6. *Nehem*. cap. 12. v. 22.

Seventhly, *Artaxerxes Mnemon* in *Nehem*. c. 2. v. 1. who was father to *Artaxerxes Ochus*, and *Arfames*: for *Darius* the last, he was of another Family, the Line of *Cyrus* the Great ending in *Ochus*, who descended from *Xerxes* the son of *Atossa*, *Cyrus* his daughter; and the issue male of *Cyrus* failing with his own sons.

But to proceed, *Ensebius* with the *Latines*, following the *Greeks*, apply the beginnings and ends of every *Persian King* with their Acts, to some certain *Olympiads*; As the War of *Assyages* (*Cyrus* his maternall Grand-father) and *Ahyattes* (*Craus* his father) to the nine and fortieth *Olympiad*; The beginning of *Cyrus* reign to the beginning of the five and fiftieth *Olympiad*; The taking of *Sardis* by *Cyrus* to the eight and fiftieth *Olympiad*; The invasion of *Egypt* by *Cambyfes* to the third year of the threescore and third *Olympiad*, and so of the rest. Which reference with good agreement between severall forms of computation, adde the more credit unto both.

Again, this historical demonstration is confirmed by the Astronomical computation of *Ptolome*, who refers the death of *Alexander* the Great, who died the 12. of November, in the beginning of the hundred and fortieth *Olympiad*, to the four hundred and four and twentieth year after *Nabonassar*. And the *Era* of *Nabonassar* began on the six and twentieth of February: which conferred with the *Olympiad*, was in the ninth Month of the first year of the eighth *Olympiad*; So that whether we follow the accounts of the *Olympiads*, as doe the *Greek* Historians, or that of *Nabonassar* with *Ptolome*, we shall find every memorable accident to fall out right with each computation.

For *Ptolome* reckons the time answerable to two hundred and four and twenty *Julian* years, and an hundred and forty days from *Nabonassar* to the sixteenth of July in the seventh year of *Cambyfes*.

The *Greeks*, and namely, *Diodorus Siculus*, place the taking of *Egypt* by *Cambyfes* in the second or third year of the threescore and third *Olympiad*, and the beginning of *Cambyfes* seventh year, in the first of the threescore and fourth *Olympiad*: which first of the threescore and fourth *Olympiad* runs along with part of the two and twentieth of *Nabonassar*. The like agreement is consequently found about the beginning and end of *Cyrus*.

Likewise the twentieth of *Darius*, who succeeded *Cambyfes*, is according to *Ptolome* the two hundred and six and fortieth of *Nabonassar*, which (observing the differences of *Nabonassari Era* and the *Olympiad*, viz. eight and twenty years) agrees with the third of the threescore and ninth *Olympiad*, wherein it is placed by the *Greeks*. In this *Josephus* agrees with the *Greeks* throughout, saying that he joyneth *Darius Medus*, whom *Xenophon* calleth *Cyaxares*, with *Cyrus* in the destruction of *Babylon*; which is true, and not contrary to the *Greek* computation, but may very well stand with it.

Lastly, the disagreements and confused accompts of those that follow the other Catalogue of the *Persian Kings* formerly rehearsed, doth give the greater credit to this of the

Greeks, which being constant in it self, accordeth also with the computation of other Historians, and Astronomers, and likewise with the holy Scriptures.

## s. II.

Of Cambyfes, and the conquering of Egypt by him.

**W**ill therefore according to the truth give the Empire of Persia to Cambyfes, the son of Cyrus, though degenerate in all things, saving the desire to increase the greatness of his Empire: whereof he was posselt in his Fathers time while Cyrus made war in the North. Cresias with others give him a longer reign than agreeth with the Grecian account before received.

In the fifth year of his sole reign, and in the third year of the threescore and third Olympiad, according to Diodore and Eusebius, he invaded Egypt, and having overthrown the King thereof, Psammetichus, he not only caused him to be slain, but also did put to death all his kindred and dependants, with the most of his children.

Herodotus and Cresias give for cause of this war (being no other indeed than the Ambition of Cambyfes) that when he sent to Amasis King of Egypt, to have his daughter in marriage, Amasis presented him with Nitetis the daughter of Apries his predecessor, which Cambyfes disdaind.

Howsoever it were; true it is, that Cambyfes gathered an Armie fit for such an enterprise, and caused the same to march. But before they entred Egypt, Amasis died, and left Psammetichus, whom Cresias called Amyrteus, his successor; who enjoyed Egypt after his father (according to the best copies of Herodotus) but six Months, though other Chronologers give him six years.

But how long soever he held the Crown, in one battell he lost it, and was himself taken prisoner.

It is said that Cambyfes, following therein the example of Cyrus, did not only spare life to the conquered King, but that he also trusted him with the government of Egypt, and that upon some revolt, or suspicion thereof, he caused him to be slaughtered. But the race of this King was not so extirpated, if we may beleve Herodotus and Thucydides, but that he left a son called Inarus, who caused the Egyptians to revolt both from Xerxes and Artaxerxes.

That Psammetichus was at the first entreated gently by Cambyfes, I hold it very improbable, if it be true which is also written of him, That he so much hated Amasis the King of Egypt, who died before his arrivall, that he caused his body to be drawn out of the grave, and after divers indignities used, commanded the same to be burnt, contrary to the custome both of the Egyptians and Persians. For the Egyptians used to powder their dead bodies with salt, and other drugs, to the end the worms might not devour them. The Persians durst not consume them with fire, which they esteemed as a God, and therefore feared to feed it with Carrion.

## s. III.

The rest of Cambyfes his Acts.

**A**fter this victory obtained in Egypt, Cambyfes sent an Army into Cyprus, and constrained Evelthon King thereof to acknowledge him, who before held that Island of the Egyptians.

While Cambyfes yet busied himself in Egypt, he so much detested the Idolatry of that Nation, as he caused the images themselves, with the Temples wherein they were worshipped, to be torn down and defaced. This done, he directed a part of his Armie into Libya, to overturne the Temple of Jupiter Ammon; but the Devill in defence of his Oracle raised such a Tempest of Sand, wherewith the greatest part of that Country is covered, as the Persians were therewith choked and overwhelmed.

Notwithstanding which misadventure, Herodotus and Seneca report, that disdaind to be resisted, he prepared the rest of his Army, which himself meant to conduict into those parts, but that finding a beginning of those incommodities, which his first sent troupe had tryed, he changed his purpose. For though conquering Kings have power over men, yet the elements doe not obey them, according to that old English proverb, Go, saith the King; Stay, saith the Tide.

After

After his return from the attempt of Ethiopia, he caused Apis the Egyptian Bull, worshipped by that Nation as God, to be slain: a deed very commendable, had it proceeded from true zeal, and been executed as in service of him that only is, and liveth. But soon afterwards, when in a dream it seemed unto him that Smerdis did sit in the royal throne of Persia (which apparition was verified in Smerdis the Magus) he gave in charge to his favorite Praxaspes, to murder Smerdis his brother. And having married his own sisters, contrary to the Persian Lawes, he committed a most causeless and most detestable murder upon the one of them called Meroe; then by himself with child, because she bewailed the death of her brother Smerdis. I find it written of this Cambyfes, That because his Predecessors observed religiously the ordinances of their Empire, he assembled his Judges, and enquired of them whether there were any Law among the Persians that did permit the brother to marry his own sister; it being his own intent so to doe: The Judges (who had always either lawes or in distinctions thereto satisfied Kings and times) made answer, That there was not any thing written allowing any such conjunction, but they notwithstanding found it in their customes that it was always left to the will of the Persian Kings to doe what best pleased themselves; and so as Mamelus termes it, *invenirent occasionem*: That is as much to say, as the Judges found a time to please the King, and to secure themselves. And yet, where it concerned not the Kings private satisfaction, he caused Sisamnes one of his Judges, and perchance one of those which favoured his incestuous match, to be slayed alive, for an unjust judgement given; and the same his hide to be hung up over the judgement seat. After which, bestowing the fathers office on his son, he willed him to remember that the same partiality deserved the same punishment.

Among other his cruelties, that which he exercised against the son of his beloved Praxaspes was very strange and ungrateful. For when he desired to be truly informed by him what the Persians thought of his conditions, Praxaspes answered, That his vertues were followed with abundant praise from all men; only it was by many observed, that he took more than usual delight in the taste of Wine: With which taxation inflamed, he used this replication; And are the Persians double-tongued, who also tell me that I have in all things excelled my father Cyrus? Thou Praxaspes shalt then witnesse, whether in this report they have done me right: for if at the first shot I pierce thy sons heart with an arrow, then is it false that hath been spoken; but if I misse the mark, I am then pleased that the same be accounted true, and my subjects believed. This being spoken, he immediately directed an arrow towards the innocent child, who falling down dead with the stroke, Cambyfes commanded his body to be opened, and his heart being broched on the arrow, this monstrous Tyrant greatly rejoycing, shewed it to the Father, with this saying in stead of an Epitaph: Now Praxaspes, thou maist resolve thy selfe, that I have not lost my wits with Wine, but the Persians theirs, who make such report.

Many other barbarous cruelties he exercised; till at the last, according to the phrase of our Law, he became *selon de soy*. For when he was informed that Parisites, and Smerdis the Magi (Cedareus writeth them Sphendanes and Cimerdus) Ministers of his domesticall affairs, taking advantage of the great resemblance between Smerdis the Kings brother, and Smerdis the Magus, posselt themselves of the Empire, he made all haste towards Persia, and in mounting hastily on horseback, his sword disheathing, pierced his own thigh, where-with deadly wounded, falling into an over-late and remediless repentance of the slaughter which he had executed upon his own brother, he soon after gave up his wicked ghost; when he had reigned eight years, accounting therein those seven Months in which the Magi governed, while he was absent.

In Cambyfes the Male Line of Cyrus failed. For he had no issue either by Atossa or Meroe: yet Zonas out of Hierome gives him a daughter called Pantaspes, and a son called Orontes, who being drowned in the river Ophites by Antioch, the same was afterward in memory of the Princes death called Orontes.

He built the Citie of Babylon in Egypt, in the place where Latopolis was formerly seated, and that of Meroe in the Island of Nilus, calling it by the name of his sister Meroe.

## s. III.

of the inter-regnum between Cambyles and Darius.

**C**YRUS and his two sons being now dead, and the Kingdome in the possession of one of the *Magi*, the counterfeit of *Smerdis*, the Princes, or *Satrapes*, or Provincial Governors of the Empire (to wit, *Otanes*, *Intaphernes*, *Gobrias*, *Megabyfus*, *Aspathines*, *Hidarnes*, and *Darius*, who were all descended from *Achemenes* the first *Persian King*) having discovered the fraud of this imposture, joyned their forces together, surpris'd and rooted out the Conspirator with his Companions and Assistants. In which action (saith *Justine*) *Intaphernes* and *Aspathines* were slain: but *Herodotus* otherwise, that they were onely wounded; for he avoweth that all the seven Princes were present at the election following.

For the Empire being now without a Governour, these Princes grew into a consultation how the same might be ordered from thenceforth. *Otanes* one of the seven did not fancie any election of Kings, but that the Nobilitie and Cities should confederate, and by just lawes defend their liberty in equality, giving divers reasons for his opinion, being as it seemed greatly terrified by the cruelties of *Cambyles*; As first, that it was not safe to give all power to any one, seeing greatnesse it self, even in good men, doth often infect the mind with many vices, and the liberty and freedom in all things is most apt to insult, and to commit all manner of wicked outrage. Again, that tyrants do commonly use the service of wicked men, and favour them most; they usurp upon the lawes of their Country; take other mens wives by force, and destroy whom they please without judgement.

*Megabyfus* was of another opinion, affirming that the tyrannie of a multitude was thrice more intolerable than that of one. For the multitude doe all things without judgement, runne into businesse and affairs with precipitation, like raging and overbearing floods.

He therefore thought it safest to make election of a few, and those of the best, wisest, and most vertuous; because it is ever found, that excellent Counsels are ever had from excellent men.

*Darius* gave the third judgement, who perswaded the creation of a King, because even among few diuturnity of concord is seldome found, and in great Empires it doth ever happen that the discord of many Rulers hath enforced the election of one Supreme. It were therefore, saith *Darius*, far safer to observe the lawes of our Country, by which Kingly government hath been ordained.

The other four Princes adhered to *Darius*, and agreed to continue the same Imperial government by God established, and made prosperous. And to avoyd partiality, it was accorded, that the morning following these seven Princes should mount on Horseback, and on him the kingdome should be conferred, whose Horse after the Sun-rising should first ney or bray. In the evening after this appointment was made, it is said that *Darius* consulted with the Master of his Horse *Ozbarus*, who in the Suburbs of the City where the election was resolved of, caused the same Horse, whereon in the morning *Darius* was mounted, to cover a Mare, who as soon as he came into the same place, was the first Horse that brayed. Whereupon the other six Princes descended from their Horses, and acknowledged *Darius* for their Lord and King.

*Plato* in the third of his *Laws* affirmeth, that in memory of the seven Princes, whereof *Darius* himself was one, that delivered the Empire from the usurpation of the *Magi*, he divided the whole into seven governments; *Herodotus* saith, into twenty *Satrapies*.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. V.

Of Darius the sonne of Hytaspes.

## s. I.

Of Darius his Linage.



*Darius* was descended of the ancient *Persian Kings*, to wit, of the *Achemenide*, of which, *Cyrus* the Great was the lineall successor. For in this sort *Herodotus* derives him as before;

*Cyrus* the first, who had  
*Tespis*, who begat  
*Ariaramnes*, who was father of  
*Arfames*, the father of  
*Hytaspes*, the father of  
*Darius*, surnamed *Celes*, the father of *Xerxes*.

Cut. 14.

*Hytaspes* accompanied *Cyrus* the Great, in the wars against the *Scythians*, at which time *Cyrus* being made jealous of *Darius* by a dream of his own, caused him to be sent into *Persia*, others say to be imprisoned, from whence by the death of *Cyrus* he was delivered, and made Governour of the *Persian Magi*. He afterward followed *Cambyles* into *Egypt*; he then joyned with the rest of the Princes against the *Magi*, and either by the neyng of his horse, or, as others affirm, by strong hand he obtained the Empire, which he the more assured to himself by taking two of *Cyrus* Daughters, and as many of his Neeces for his wives.

*Hytaspes*, according to \* *Herodotus*, had besides *Darius*, these three sons, who were great Commanders in the war which *Darius* made in *Asia* the lesse, *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Greece*. *Atarnes*, *Artabernes*, and *Artabanus*, who dissuaded *Xerxes* from the second *Grecian* warre, *Hytaspes* had also a Daughter married to *Gobryas* the Father of *Marodon*, who commanded the Army of *Darius* in *Macedon*, and married the Daughter of *Darius*, *Artostoffre* his Cousen germane. *Reineccius* gives to *Hytaspes* five sons, *Darius* who succeeded *Cambyles*, *Artabanus*, *Intaphernes*, *Otanes*, and *Atarnes*, with two daughters.

Her. pag. 137.  
Pag. 154.  
Pag. 130.  
P. 101. & 203.  
Pag. 184. 190.  
He. 1.6. p. 180.  
Pag. 186. 190.  
Pag. 179.  
Pag. 210. 204.  
Pag. 213.  
285. 286.  
Pag. 214. 254.  
De Reg. Persar.  
Fol. 32.

## s. II.

Of Darius his Government, and suppressing the rebellion of Babylon.

**D***Arius* devised equall lawes whereby his subjects might be governed, the same being formerly promised by *Cyrus*. He gave access to all his subjects, and behaved himself so mildly to all men, that many Nations desired and offered themselves to become his Vassals: Only he layd divers payments and taxes on the people, which had not been accustomed in *Cyrus* time, to the value of fourteen thousand five hundred and threcore talents, saith *Herodotus*.

The war which *Cambyles* made a far off in *Egypt*, and the contention between the *Magi* and the Princes of *Persia*, for the Empire, gave heart to the *Babylonians* to recover their liberty, and to shake off the *Persian* yoke; whereof *Darius* being advertised, he prepared an Army to recover that City and State revolted. But finding the same a difficult work, he used the service of *Zopirus*, who for the love he bare *Darius*, did cut off his own Ears and Nose, and with other wounds yet fresh bleeding, he seemed to fly to the *Babylonians* for succour, to whom he accused the cruelty of *Darius*: who for having given him advice to give over the siege of their City, had in this sort dismembred and deformed him; whereupon the *Babylonians* gave him that credit, as they trusted him with the disposition and commandment of their greatest forces: which when *Zopirus* had obtained, after some small colourable over-throwes given to the *Persians* upon sallies, he delivered the Citie into *Darius* his hands, who had lyen before it twenty moneths.

s. III. of



## §. IIII.

of Darius his favour to the Jewes in building the Temple.

Ezra. 6. 6.

**I**N the second year of *Darius*, he gave order, that the building of the Temple at *Hiernsalem* should goe on, and commanded that the same should be finished at his own charge, and out of the revenues of the Crown. And whereas the Governours of those Provinces which are situate between *Euphrates* and the *Phanician*, and midland Sea (whom *Ezra* calleth the Captains beyond the River) had hindered the work in *Cambyses* his time, *Darius* gave commandement that they should not thenceforth come nearer unto *Jerusalem*, to give any impediment to the building, but that they should withdraw themselves, and get them far off till all were finished, and at an end. In the old *Latine* it is written, *Procul recedite ab illis; With-draw your selves far from them; In our English, Be ye far from thence*, to wit, from the City and Temple now in building.

Ezra. 6. 11.

He also made a decree which concerned his own Subjects, That whosoever should thenceforth hinder the setting up of the Temple of God, that his house should be torn down, and the disturber hanged on the Gallows made of the timber thereof. He also in the same decree maketh invocation to God; *That hath caused his Name to dwell there (to destroy all Kings and People that put their hands to alter, and to destroy this house of God which is in Jerusalem, &c.* In four years after which decree (the Jewes being really so furnished with money and all things necessary from *Darius*) the Temple was in all finished; to wit, in the beginning of the Spring, in the sixth year of *Darius Hystaspes*, and in the two and fortieth after their first return.

Ezra. 6.

## §. IV.

of Darius his Scythian Warre.

Her. 1. 4. 1.

Diod. 1. 11.

**A**FTER the recovery of *Babylon* he invaded the *Scythians*, whose King *Justine* calleth *Laethinus*; and saith, that *Darius* undertook this warre against him, because he refused him his daughter in marriage. The better to convey his Army into *Scythia*, he built a bridge of small Vessels over the River *Ister* or *Danubius*, and gave the custody of the same in charge (among others of *Asia* the lesse) to the *Ionians* and *Aolians*, among whom was *Miltiades*, who persuaded the *Asian Grecians* to break down the bridge, to the end *Darius* might not return thereby, and if by any other way, then not without great difficulty; but the same was resisted by *Hystians* Prince of *Milet*, a Citie of *Ionis*, which Nation being a Colonie of the *Greeks*, *Diodorus* calleth Traytors to their Country, because they joyned themselves to *Darius*. But the *Scythians* more elegantly termed them good slaves, for as much as they would not runne away from their Master, but were more mindfull of doing their duties, than of shaking off their bondage, when they were presented with as fair an occasion of liberty as could have been desired. For the great Armie of *Darius* entering the desert Country called *Bessarabia*, found in it neither people to resist them, nor any succourance to relieve them. For the *Scythians* were then, as are the *Chim Tartars*, their posteritie, at this day, all horse-men, using the Bow and Sword. They were not Plough-men, but Grasiere, driving their Heards from one place to another, as opportunity of Pasture led them. Standing Towns they had none; but used for Houses the Waggon wherein they carried their wives and children. These Waggon they place at every Station in very good order, making Streets and Lanes in the manner of a great Town, removeable at their pleasure. Neither hath the Emperour himself, called now the great *Chim*, any other Citie than such as *Agora*, (as they name it) or Town of Carts. When as therefore *Darius* had wearied himself, and wasted his provision in those desolate Regions, wherein he found neither wayes to direct him, victuals to refresh him, nor any houses, fruitfull trees, or living creatures, nor any thing at all, which either he himself might make use of, or by destroying it might grieve his enemies, he began to perceive his own folly, and the danger into which he had brought him. Yet setting a good face upon a bad game, he sent brave messagers to the *Scythian*, bidding him to cease his flight, and either to make triall of his valour and fortune in plain battell; Or, if he acknowledged himself the weaker, then to yeeld

by

by fair means, and become his Subject, giving him Earth and Water, which the *Perians* used to demand as a sign that all was yeelded unto them. To this challenge the *Scythian* returned an Hieroglyphicall answer, sending a Bird, a Frog, a Mouse, and five Arrows: which dumb shew *Darius* interpreting by his own will, thought that he did yeeld all the Elements wherein those creatures live, and his weapons withall into his hands. But *Gobryas*, one of the seven Princes, who had slain the *Magi*, construed their meaning aright, which was thus; *O ye Perians, get ye wings like Birds, or dive under the water, or creep into holes in the earth, for else ye shall not escape our arrows.* And this interpretation was soon verified by the *Scythians* themselves, who assailed the *Persian* camp, drave the horsemen into the trenches, and vexed the Armie with continuall Alarums day and night; were so fearlesse of this great Monarch, and so little regarded him, that within his hearing, and even in his sight, they did not forbear the pastime of coursing a Hare, which they had started by chance. By this boldnesse of theirs, *Darius* was so discouraged, that he forsook his Camp by night, making many fires, and leaving all that were sick and weak behind him, and so with all speed marched away towards the River *Ister*. He was pursued hardly by the *Scythians*, who mist him; yet arriving at the Bridge before him, persuaded the *Ionians* to depart, assuring them that the *Persian* king should never more be able to do them either good or harm. Which words had certainly been proved true, had not *Hystians* the *Milesian* prevailed with his people, to attend the coming of *Darius*, whom the *Scythians* did likewise fail to meet, when they returned from *Ister* to seek him out.

## §. V.

Some actions of the Persians in Europe, after the Scythian War.

**D**arius having thus escaped out of *Scythia*, determined the invasion of *Thrace* and *Macedon*, in which War he employed *Megabazus*, who mastered the *Paonians*, and transplanted them, and posselt *Perinthus*, *Chalcedon*, *Byzantium*, and other places, being also soon after subiected, and added to the *Persian* Empire by *Otares*, the son of *Sisyamnes*, whom *Cambyses* had excoiorated for false judgement. So were the Cities of *Selybria*, and *Cardia* likewise taken in from the *Persian*, who having now reduced under his obeylance the best part of *Thrace*, did send his Embassadors to *Aminias* King of *Macedon* adjoining, demanding of him by the Earth and Water, the Sovereignty over that kingdom. *Aminias* doubting his own strength, entertained the Embassadors with gentle words, and afterwards invited them to a solemne and magnificent feast; the *Persians* greatly desired that the *Macedonian* Ladies might be present: which being granted, the Embassadors, who were well filled with wine, and presumed upon their greatnesse and many victories, began to use such embracing, and other lastivious behaviour towards those Noble Ladies, as *Alexander* the Kings son, great Grandfather to *Alexander* the Great, disdaining the *Persians* barbarous presumption, besought his father to with-draw himself from the assembly, continuing notwithstanding all honourable respect towards the Embassadors, whom withall he entreated that the Ladies might refresh themselves for a while; promising their speedy return. This being obtained, *Alexander* caused the like number of well-favoured yong men to clothe themselves in the same garments, and to use the same attires which the Ladies had worn at the feast, giving them in charge, That when the *Persians* offered to abuse them, they should forthwith transpierce them with their long knives, of which they were provided for that purpose, which was accordingly performed. Charge was soon after given by *Darius* for a severe revenge of this murder. But *Alexander* somewhat before the death of *Aminias*, gave his sister *Gygis* in marriage to *Bubaris*, a principall Commander of *Darius* forces on that side, who persuading her husband how helpfull the Alliance of *Macedon* would prove for the invasion of *Attica* intended, so prevailed, as *Alexander* escaped that tempest, which threatened to fall upon him very suddenly; the war of *Asia* the lesse, called *Ionick*, falling out at the same time.

Her. 1. 5. 1.  
\* A maritime City of *Thrace* to the South of *Constantinople*.  
† *Cardia*, a City upon the Chersonesus of *Thrace*, afterward *Lysimachia*, *Pto.* *Paul.*

## 5. VI.

The first occasion of the War which Darius made upon Greece, with a rehearsal of the government in Athens, whence the quarrell grew.

Now the better to understand the reason and motives of that great War, which followed soon after, between the *Persians* and *Grecians*, it is necessary to make a short repetition of the state of *Athens*; which Citie endured the hardest and worst brunt of *Darius* invasion on that side the Sea, with admirable success. Neither doe I hold it any impertinency to be large in unfolding every circumstance of so great a business as gave fire to those wars, which never could be thoroughly quenched, until in the ruin of this great *Persian* Monarchy, *Persepolis* the capittall City of the Empire, was at the request of an *Athenian* Harlot consumed with a flame, as dreadful, as in the pride of their greatnesse, the *Persians* hath raised in *Athens*.

Now therefore as out of the former books it may be gathered, how *Athens* and other parts of *Greece*, were anciently governed, the same being already set down, though scatteringly, and in severall times, among other the Contemporary occurrents of the Eastern Emperors, and the Kings of *Judea*; so I thought it very pertinent in this place to remember again the two last changes in the State of *Athens*. As for the *Lacedaemonians*, they maintained still their ancient policy under Kings, though these also after some fifteen descents were bridled by the *Ephori*.

*Codrus* King of the *Athenians*, in the former books remembred, who willingly died for the safety of his people, was therefore so honoured by them, as (thinking none worthy to succeed him) they changed their former government from Monarchical to Princes for time of life, of which *Medon* the Son of *Codrus* was the first, after whom they were called *Medontidae*; and of these there were twelve Generations besides *Medon*, to wit,

*Agestus*.

*Archippus*, in whose times the *Greeks* transported themselves into *Ionis*, after *Troy* an hundred and fourcore years, according to *Eusebius*: which migration all other Cronologers (such as follow *Eusebius* herein excepted) find in the time after *Troy* fallen one hundred and forty.

*Tberippus*.

*Phorbas*.

*Alcades*.

*Diogenetus*, in whose time *Lycurgus* gave Laws to the *Spartans*.

*Pheredus*.

*Arifbron*.

*Thespius*, in whose time the *Assyrian* Empire was overthrown by *Belochus* and *Arbaces*.

*Agamnestor*.

*Achylus*, in whose time the *Ephori* (according to *Eusebius*) were erected in *Lacedaemon*.

*Alcamenon*, the last Prince for life, after whose death the *Athenians* elected Decenniall Governours: the former Princes

for life having continued in all three hundred and sixteen years. The first of those that governed for ten years, or the first *Archon*, was

*Charops*, then

*Alsymedes*.

*Elydicus*.

*Hippomenes*.

*Leocrates*.

*Alxander*.

*Erixias* was the last *Archon* of the decennial Governours, which form continuing threecore and ten years, was then changed into annuall Magistrates, Maiors, or Burg-masters, of which *Thesius* was the first, according to *Pausanias*: who find *Leocrates*; and then

*Ambothesenes*.

*Archimedes*.

*Miliades*.

*Damafias*.

*Draco*.

*Megacles*.

*Solon*, & others, who are the lesse to be regarded, by reason of the yearly change.

This *Solon* being a man of excellent wisdom, gave Laws to the *Athenians*, which were published, according to *Gellius*, in the three and thirtieth year of *Tarquinius Priscus*, and were in after ages derived unto the *Romanes*, and by the *Decem-viri* (Magistrates in *Rome* created for that purpose) reduced into Twelve Tables, which were the ground of the *Roman* laws. But these goodly ordinances of *Solon*, were in his own days violated, and for a while almost quite extinguished. For whereas they were framed unto the

practice and maintenance of a popular government; the state of *Athens* was very soon changed into a Monarchie by *Pisistratus* the son of *Hippocrates*: who finding the Citizens distracted into two factions, whereof *Megacles* and *Lycurgus*, two Citizens of noble Families, were become the heads, took occasion by their contention and infoleny to raise a third faction more powerfull than the other two, and more plausible, for that he seemed a Protector of the Citizens in generall. Having by this meanes obtained love and credit, he wounded himself, and feigned that by malice of his enemies he had like to have been slain for his love to the good Citizens; he procured a guard for his defence, and with that band of men surprising the State-house, or Cittadell of *Athens*, he made himself Lord of the town; *Hegesistratus* being then Governor. But the Citizens, who in every change of government had fought to remove themselves further and further from the form of a Monarchie, could so ill brook this usurpation of *Pisistratus*, that he was driven for lack of help, to fly the town, as soon as *Megacles* and *Lycurgus* (joyning their forces) attempted his expulsion. Yet as the building of his tyranny, founded upon the dissention of the Citizens, was ruined by their good agreement; so was it soon after well rectified by the new breaking out of the old factions. For when *Megacles* found the power of *Lycurgus* to grow greater than his own; he did (as is the usuall practice of the weaker side) call in the common enemy *Pisistratus*, to whom he gave his Daughter in marriage, by which alliance the Family of the *Alcmaonide*, whereof *Megacles* was chief, became very powerfull, yet so, that *Pisistratus* by their power was made Master both of them and all the rest. But this agreement held not long; the *Alcmaonide*, and especially *Megacles* being incensed against *Pisistratus* for his unmeanour towards his Wife, Wherefore they practised with the Souldiers of the Town, proceeding in their treason secretly, and so farre, that *Pisistratus* upon the first discovery of their intent, perceived no other remedy for his affaires, than to with-draw himself to *Eretria*, where he remained eleven years. Which time being expired; having hired Souldiers out of many parts of *Greece*, he againe recovered the principality of *Athens*: after which third obtaining his estate, he governed *Athens* seventeen years, according to *Aristotle*, and reigned in all thirty and three years, saith *Elianus*, but as *Justin* hath it, four and thirty, accounting the time belike as well before as after his severall expulsions; *Herodotus* gives the Father and the Son six and thirty years; *Aristotle* five and thirty. *Thucidides* affirmeth, that he died very old, leaving for his Successors, his two Sons, *Hippias* and *Hipparchus*, who governed the *Athenians* with such moderation; as they rather seemed the lineall Successors of a naturall Prince than of a Tyrant. But in the end, & some three years before *Hippias* was expelled out of *Athens*, his brother *Hipparchus* was murdered by *Harmodius* and *Aristogiton*. The cause why, and the manner how performed, *Thucidides* hath written at large. And though *Hipparchus* were charged with unnatural lust, after *Harmodius*, yet *Plato* in his Dialogue, intituled *Hipparchus*, doth greatly magnifie him, affirming that he was a Prince of as many eminent vertues as that Age had any, altogether condemning the murderers, & authors of that scandall. *Hippias* fearing that this enterprise upon his brother had more and deeper roots than were apparent, first sought to discover the further intents of *Harmodius* and *Aristogiton*, by a Harlot of theirs called *Lamnia*: who because she would not reveale her Companions, did cut out her own tongue. Then did *Hippias*, the better to strengthen himself, enter into a strait amity with *Antides*, Tyrant of the City *Lampascus*, whom he knew to be greatly favoured by *Darius*, to whose son *Hypocleus* he gave one of his Daughters in marriage. But some three years after the death of his brother, doubting I know not what strong practice against himself, he began to use the Citizens with great severity, which neither *Pisistratus* the Father, nor *Hippias* himself had ever exercised, during their usurpation till this time. And therefore the *Athenians* fearing lest that this disease might rather increase, than diminish in *Hippias*, they stirred up *Clistenes* one of the noblest and best able of their City, to practise their delivery: who calling to his assistance the banished *Alcmaonide*, together with an Army of the *Lacedaemonians* led by *Cleomenes* their King, so affrighted *Hippias*, as by composition he gave over his estate, and the possession of *Athens*; and from thence imbarcking himself, took land at *Sigenn*, whence he went to *Lampascus* in *Mysia* governed by *Antides*, who presented him to *Darius*. He was deprived of his estate, as *Herodotus* and *Thucidides* agree, twenty years before the battell of *Marathon*: all which while *Darius* he continued, partly with *Antides*, at other times with *Artaphernes* Lieutenant for *Darius*.

Her. 1. 12.  
Eretria a City of Euboea, by others called Melians, by Strabo Phoeni Eretria.  
Pol. 5.  
Heratid. apud Elian pag. 162.  
Just. pag. 28.  
Her. 1. 6.  
Thucid. 1. 6. c. 10.

Lampascus a city of Mysia upon the Hellespont.  
Thucid. 1. 6. c. 11.

Sigenn a promontory opposite to the Hellespont, as the Animal calls it in antiquorum.

*Darius* in *Sardis*, the Metropolis of *Lydia*; perswading and practising the enterprise upon *Athens*, which *Darius* in the end to his great dishonour undertook, twenty years after *Hippias* had resigned his estate.

Thus farre I have digressed from *Darius*, to the end the Reader may conceive the better the causes and motives of this warre: whereof the hope that *Hippias* had to be restored to *Athens* by the help of *Darius*, which made him sollicite and perswade the *Persians* to conquer *Greece*, was one, but not the most urgent.

## S. VII.

Of the Ionian Rebellion, which was the principall cause of the wars ensuing between *Greece* and *Persia*.

ANother, and a strong motive to this expedition, was the Ionick war, breaking out in *Asia* about the same time. The Colonies transported out of *Greece* into *Asia*, which occupied the greatest part of the Sea-coast, having enjoyed their liberty about 500. years, even from the Ionick migration, to the time of *Cresus*, were by this *Lydian* King made Tributaries, and afterwards as parcell of his Dominions, were taken in by *Cyrus*, and left as hereditary Servants to the Crown of *Persia*.

But as it is the custome of Nations half conquered (witness *Ireland*) to rebel again upon every advantage and opportunity: so did the *Ionians*, and other *Grecians*, both in *Cyrus* his life, and after him, seek by all meanes possible to free themselves,

At this time they found such men ready to spurre them into Rebellion, as had by the *Persian* been given unto them for bridles to hold them in subjection. Every one of those Towns had a Lord to rule it, whom they (abhorring the government of one man) called their Tyrants. These Lords were very true to the *Persian*, by whose onely might they held the people in subjection. And this their dutifull affection they had well declared, when, *Darius* being in great extremity, they used all meanes to deliver him and his Armie (that otherwise had been lost) out of the *Scythians* hand, Of this great piece of service *Hippias* the tyrant of *Miletus* expected the chief thanks, as having been chief Author of their expecting *Darius*, when the rest, either perswaded by the *Scythians*, or carried away with their own desires, were ready to have abandoned him. But it came to passe, that *Darius* being more fearefull of the harm that *Hippias* (being powerful and crafty) might do to him in the future, than mindfull of the good which he had already received at his hand, found meanes to carry him along to *Susa*, where he detained him with all kind usage of a friend, yet kept such good espial upon him, as an enemy he could not start away. *Hippias* had subtilty enough to discover the kings purpose, which ill agreed with his own desires. For he thought it more pleasant, and more honourable to rule as Prince in one faire Citie, having a small Territory, than to sit and feast at the great Kings table, and hear the counsels by which a large Empire was managed; being himself an idle beholder, and enjoying with much restraint of liberty, none other pleasures than a private man might bestow upon himself.

Wherefore he bethought himself of raising of some tumults in the lower *Asia* to pacifie which, if he might be sent, as one that had great experience and authority in those quarters, it would afterwards be in his power to stay at home, and either satisfie the King with excuses, or deal as occasion shall require. Resolving upon this course, he sent very secret instructions to *Aristagoras* his kinsman, whom he had left his Deputy at *Miletus*, advising him to stirre up some Rebellion. These directions came seasonably to *Aristagoras*, who having failed in an enterprise upon the Isle of *Naxos*, through the false dealing of a *Persian* his Associate, stood in fear of disgrace, if not of some further ill that might befall him, as one that had wasted the Kings treasures to no good purpose.

Therefore he readily embraced the counsell: and the better to draw the whole Country of *Ionis* into the same course which he determined to run, he abandoned his tyranny, and did set *Miletus* at liberty. This plausible beginning wan unto him the hearts of the *Milesians*: and his proceeding with other *Ionian* Tyrants (of whom some he took and sold as slaves to their Citizens, others he chased away) caused the whole Nation to be at his command. The *Persian* Fleet, whereof he lately had been Admiral in the enterprise of *Naxos*, he had surpris'd in his first breaking out, together with the principall Officers,

Officers and Captains, so that now he thought himself able to deal with the great Kings forces, lying thereabout, either by Land or Sea. But likely it was that the power of all *Asia* would shortly be upon his neck, and crush both him and his assistants to pieces, unless he were able to raise an Armie that might hold the field; which the *Ionians* alone were insufficient to perform. Therefore he took a journey to *Sparta*, where having assayed in vain with many arguments, and the offer of fiftie Talents, to win to his party *Cleomenes* King of the *Lacedemonians*: he went from thence to *Athens*, and with better success he sought the people to lend him their assistance. The *Athenian* Embassadors which had been sent to the *Persian* Kings Lieutenant in the lower *Asia*, desiring to win not to give countenance to *Hippias*, now a banished man, and lately their Tyrant, were a while before this returned with ill answers, having found very churlish entertainment. So that the evil which they were to expect in all likelihood from the *Persian*, made them willing to begin with him. To which purpose, their consanguinitie with the *Ionians*, and the perswasions of *Aristagoras*, drew them on a pace, if perhaps his treasure were not helping. Twenty ships the *Athenians* furnished for this voyage; to which the *Erarians* furnished five more, in regard of the ancient kindeesse that had passed between the *Ionians* and them. With these and their own forces joynd, the *Ionians* entred the River *Caistrus*, which falleth into the Sea by *Ephesus*: by which advantage they surpris'd *Sardis* when no enemy was heard of or suspected; in so much, as *Artaphernes*, who was ruled as Vice-roy in those parts, had no other hope of safetie, than by retreating himself into the Castle, which the *Grecians* could not force: from whence he beheld the slaughter of the Citizens, and the Citie flaming.

The *Persians*, at length, mixt with the *Burgers*, began to encourage them to defence, and recovered the Market place, strengthened by the river *Pasias*, which ran through it, and borrowing courage from desperation, they both defended themselves, and charged their enemies; who well advising themselves, made all the haste they could toward the sea side. But *Artaphernes* having gathered all the strength he could, pursued the *Grecians*, and found them neer *Ephesus*; where setting resolutely upon them, he slaughtered a great part of their Armie, the rest saving themselves in *Ephesus*. In this fight *Eubolus*, Captain of the *Erarians* perished: but his fame and memorie was by that excellent Poet *Simonides* preserved. After this overthrow, the *Athenians*, which were before sent unto *Aristagoras* and to the *Ionians*, could by no arguments of theirs, no not by their tears, be perswaded to make any second triall of their fortunes on that side the Sea.

Yet the burning of *Sardis* made a greater noise in the world, than the late good success which the *Persians* had in one or two skirmishes, could raise. Wherefore the *Ionians* bravely proceeded, won a great part of *Caria*; and sending their Fleet into the *Hellespont*, got *Bizantium* and other Towns into their hands. Yea, the *Cyprians*, lately subdued by *Cambyses*, began hereupon to take heart; and entering into confederacie with the *Ionians*, who were able to give them aide by Sea, rebelled against the *Persians*.

These newes coming to the ear of *Darius*, filled him with great indignation, and with an extreme hatred of the *Athenians*, upon whom he vowed to take sharp revenge. As for the *Ionians*, his contempt of them, and their knowledge of his power, made him to think, that they would not have dared to attempt such things, but by the instigation of those, to whom the ignorance of his great might had afforded the courage to provoke him. This was the main ground of the Warre commenced by *Darius*, and pursued by *Xerxes* against *Athens*: To which the solicitation of *Hippias*, before remembered, gave onely some form and assistance: the businesse, when once it was thus far on foot, being like enough to have proceeded, though he had perished ere it were advanced any further.

Some other occurrents in this *Ionian* commotion extended the quarrell of *Darius* against many of the *Ilanders*, if not against the whole Nation of the *Grecs*; for all of them gave to his Rebels free harbour: the *Ilanders* moreover did help to furnish out a Navie of three hundred and sixty sail against him. These provocations did rather breed in him a desire to abate their pride, than any fear of harm that they were like to do him. For what they had done at *Sardis*, was but by surprize. In every fight they were beaten by the *Persians*, who had not yet lost the fruits of their discipline,

wherein *Cyrus* had trained them, nor all their ancient Captains. In one Sea-fight by the Isle of *Cyprus*, the *Ionians* indeed had the upper hand; but they were *Phenicians*, *Egyptians*, and *Cilicians*, whom they vanquished: neither was that victorie of any use to them; the *Cyprians*, in whose aide they came, being utterly beaten by the *Persian* Armie at Land, and reduced into their old subjection. So had the *Persians* likewise by open warre and fair force overthrowne the *Carians* in two battels, and reclaimed that Nation; as also they had recovered the Towns upon *Hellepont*, with some *Eolian* and *Ionian* Cities, when *Aristagoras* with his friends quitting *Mileus*, fled into *Thrace*, desirous to tear himself in *Amphipolis*, a Colonie of the *Athenians*. But the *Edonians*, on whose Territorie belike he landed, overthrew him, and cut his troops in pieces.

About the same time, *Hystians*, the first mover of this insurrection, came down into those quarters; who having undertaken the performance of great matters to *Darius*, was glad to flye from his Lieutenants, by whom his double dealing was detected.

But this evasion preserved him not long. And after many vain attempts that he made, he was taken in fight by the *Persians*, and hastily beheaded, lest the King should pardon him upon remembrance of old good turns; as it seems that he would have done, by the buriall which he commanded to be given to his dead body that was crucified, and by his heavie taking of his death.

*Hystians* had sought to put himself into *Mileus*; but the Citizens doubting his conditions, chose rather to keep him out, and make shift for themselves, without his help. The strength of their Citie by land, which had in old time withstood the *Lydian* Kings, and their good Fleet, which promised unto them the liberty of an open Sea, emboldened them to trie the uttermost, when very few friends were left upon that Continent to take their part. But their Navie was broken as much by threatnings as by force; many of their companions and fellow-rebels forsaking them upon hope of pardon; and many being daunted with the causelesse flight of those that should have assisted them. Neither was it long before the Town it self, being assaulted both by Land and Sea, was taken by force, the Citizens slain, their wives and children made slaves, and their goods a bootie to the *Persians*, whom for six years space they had put to so much trouble.

## S. VIII.

The warre which *Darius* made upon Greece, with the battell of Marathon, and *Darius* his death.

**T**His Warre with good successe finished by the *Persians*, and some attempts made on Europe side with variable successe; *Darius* obstinate in the enterprise and Conquest of Greece (though at first he pretended to make the Warre but against the *Athenians* and *Eretrians*, who joyntly assisted the *Ionians* against him, and burnt *Sardis* in *Lydia*) did now by his Embassadors demand an acknowledgement from them all: among whom, some of them not so well resolved as the rest, submitted themselves; as the *Aeginets* and others. Against these, the *Athenians* being inflamed, (by the assistance of the *Lacedemonians*) after divers encounters forced them to give pledges, and to relinquish the partie of the *Persians*. *Cleomenes* led the *Lacedemonians* in this warre, and caused his companion-King *Demetrius* to be deposed: who thereupon fled to *Darius*, farre the more confident of victorie, by reason of these discords, alienations, and civill warres among the *Greeks*. He therefore gave order to *Hippagoras* to prepare a Fleet of ships fit to transport his Armie over the *Hellepont*: the same consisting of an hundred thousand foot, and ten thousand horse. The charge in chief of his Armie he committed to *Datis*, accompanied and assisted by *Hippias*, the son of *Pisistratus*, expelled out of *Athens* twentie years before, and by *Artaphernes* his brother, Governour of *Sardis*, and the Sea-coast of *Asia* the lesse: These Commanders having their Companies brought down to the Sea-side, embarked

Head. 16.  
Whether this  
City or People  
were of Persians  
in Syria, or of  
Egypt, between  
Hystians and  
Macedonians.  
I do not know:  
but those borders  
decided, and  
next the enemy,  
were more likely  
to compound than  
the rest far off.  
There is also  
a City called  
Agium, not far  
from the  
Sea, Livie, 33.  
33, 34.

embarked themselves in six hundred Gallies and other Vessels; and first of all attempted the Islands called *Cyclades*, which lay in the mid-way between *Asia* the lesse, and *Greece*. For (obtaining those places) the *Persians* had then nothing to hinder the transportation of their forces over the *Aegean* Sea; but on the contrary they might alwaies both relieve themselves in their passage, and shroud themselves from all sudden tempests and out-raze.

To this end they first possessed themselves of *Samos*; secondly, they attempted *Naxos*: Which Island, the inhabitants despairing of their own forces, abandoned. So did the people of *Delos*, of which *Apollo* was native: Which Island *Darius* did not only forbear to sack, but recalling the inhabitants, he gave order to beautifie the places and Altars of *Apollo* erected. And having recovered these and other Islands, the *Persians* directed their course for *Eretria* in *Euboea*: for that Citie (as already hath been shewed) had assisted the *Ionians* at the taking and firing of *Sardis*. In this Island the *Persians* took ground, and besieged *Eretria* very straitly, and after six daies assault, partly by force, and in part by the treason of *Euphobus* and *Philagius*, they took it, sacked it, and burnt it to the ground. Thus far the winds of prosperous fortune filled their sayls. From *Euboea* the *Persians* past their Armie into *Attica*, conducted and guided by *Hippias*, late Prince of *Athens*, and marching towards it, they encamped at *Marathon*, in the way from the Sea, where they landed, towards *Athens*.

The *Athenians* finding the time arrived, wherein they were to dispute with their own virtues against Fortune, and to cast lots for their libertie, for their wives, their children, and their lives, put themselves in the best order they could to make resistance, and withall sent away with speed to the *Lacedemonians* for succour, imploying in that Negotiation one *Phidippides*; who passing through *Arcadia*, encountered in the way a familiar Devil, which he supposed to be *Pan*, who willed him to assure the *Athenians* of victorie, promising that some one of the gods should be present at the battell, to assist them and defend them against the multitude of their enemies. *Phidippides* at his return seeing he could not bring with him any present succours from *Sparta*, yet he thought it greatly availing to bring news from the gods, and promise of assistance from Heaven, which no doubt (though the device was somewhat likely to be his own, yet) it greatly encouraged the multitude and common people, who in all ages have bin more stirred up with fond Prophecies and other like superstitious fooleries, than by any just cause or solide reason.

The *Athenians* being now left to themselves, with one thousand only of the *Plataeans* (who having been formerly defended by the *Athenians* against the *Thebans*, did in this extremitie witness their thankfulness and gratefull disposition), began to dispute. Whether it were most for their advantage to defend the walls of *Athens*, or to put themselves into the field with such forces as they had, the same confiding of ten thousand *Athenians*, and one thousand of the *Plataeans*. In the end, and after great diversitie of opinions, *Miltiades*, who perswaded the trial by battell, prevailed.

The Armies being now in view, and within a mile of each other, the *Athenians* disposed themselves into three troupes: two wings or horns, as they terme them, and the bodie of a battell. The *Persians* when they perceived so small a troupe advancing towards them, thought the *Athenians* rather dispossessed of their understandings, than possessed with the resolution wherof they made shew. So invincible and resistlesse the *Persians* esteemed their own numbers to be, and that small troupe of their enemies then in view, rather to be despised than to be fought withall: But in conclusion, the victorie being doubtfully balanced for a while, sometime the vertue of the *Grecians*, and sometimes the number of the *Persians* prevailed, the *Grecians* fighting for all that they had, the *Persians* for that they needed not, these great forces of *Darius* were disordered and put in rout; the *Athenians* following their victorie even to the Sea-shore; where the *Persians*, so many of them as lost not their wits with their courage, saved themselves in their ships.

The *Persian* Armie consisted of an hundred thousand foot and ten thousand horse; of which there were slain in the place six thousand three hundred, and of the *Grecians* an hundred fourscore and twelve. For howsoever it came to passe, either by strange visions, which were afterward called *Panick* terrores, or by some other affright,

It seemeth that the invading Armie, after the first encounter, fought with their backs towards their enemy, and lost that number, by *Herodotus* set down, in their disorderly retreat, or rather in their flat running away. As for *Justinus* report, That two hundred thousand of the *Persian* armie were slain, the same hath no appearance nor possibility of truth. In this fight *Hippias* the persuader of the enterprise was slain, saith *Justinus* and *Cicero*; but *Suidas* tells us, That he escaped, and died most miserably in *Lemnos*.

Ad. At.

The greatest honour of this victory was cast upon *Miltiades*, who both persuaded the triall by battell, and behaved himself therein answerably to the counsell which he gave. *Themistocles* had his first reputation in this fight, being but young and of the first becard. Those of the *Grecians*, of mark and commandement, that fell in the first encounter, were *Callimachus* and *Stesileus*. It is also said, That *Cynegyrus* following the *Persians* to their embarking, laid hands on one of their Gallies, to have held it from putting off the shore, and having his right hand cut off, he yet offered to arrest it with his left; of which also being deprived, he took hold of it with his teeth. This encounter happened in the first year of the threescore and twelfth *Olympiad*, about the time of the war made by *Coriolanus* against his fellow-Romans: *Alexander* the son of *Amynias* being then King of *Macedon*, and *Phanippus* then Governour of *Athens*, according to *Plutarch*, or *Hyblides*, after *Halcarnassaeus*.

in vita Arist.

This great fray thus parted, and the *Persians* returned back into the lesser *Asia*, *Miltiades* fought and obtained an employment against the *landers* of *Paros*, one of the *Cyclades*, and passing over his Companies in threescore and ten Gallies, after fix and twentie days assault he brake his thigh, in seeking to enter it by the Temple of *Ceres*,<sup>40</sup> wherewith himself being made unable, and his companies discouraged, he returned to *Athens*; where those ungratefull Citizens forgetting all his services past, and that of all other the most renowned at the battell of *Marathon*, did by the persuasion of *Xanthippus*, the father of *Pericles* (who envied his fame) cast him into prison, and set on him a fine of fiftie Talents; where his weak and wounded body being not able to endure the one, nor his estate to pay the other, he after a few days ended his life.

Which envie of the better sort to each other, with their private Factions, assisted by the unthankfull and wileless people, brought them, not many years after, from a glorious and famous Nation, to base subjection and slavery. *Miltiades* left behind him one son called *Cymon* begotten on *Hegestipila*, daughter of *Olorus* King of *Thrace*, who (saith *Plutarch*) was neither inferior to his father in valour, nor to *Themistocles* in understanding, but exceeded them both in justice and good government.

Now *Darius* taking greater care how to recover his honour, than sorrow for the losse received in *Greece*, gave order for new levies of men, and all other warlike provisions. But the *Egyptians* revolting from his obedience (a Kingdome of great strength and revenue) greatly distracted his resolution for the re-invasion of *Greece*. The dissention also among his sons, of whom the younger being born after he was king, and by so great a mother as *Atossa*, disdaining to give place to his elder brother, born before *Darius* obtained the Empire, greatly vexed him. And lastly, death, who hath no respect of any mans affairs, gave end to all his consultations and enterprises, and joynd him to the earth of his ancestors, about a year after the battell of *Marathon*, and after that he had reigned fix and thirty years. He left behind him five sons, namely, *Artabanes*, born before he obtained the kingdom, *Xerxes* who succeeded him, *Achamenes* Governour of *Egypt*, *Masistes* and *Anabignes*.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of Xerxes.

§. I.

The preparation of Xerxes against Greece.



*Xerxes* received from his father, as hereditary, a double Warre, one to be made against the *Egyptians*, which he finished so speedily, that there is nothing remaining in writing how the same was performed: the other against the *Grecians*, of which it is hard to judge, whether the preparations were more terrible, or the successe ridiculous. In the consultation for the prosecution of this Warre, which was chiefly bent against the *Athenians*, the Princes of *Persia* were divided in opinion. *Mardonius*, who had formerly commanded in *Thrace* and *Macedon*, under *Darius*, and had also *Hippias* for his grandfather, as *Xerxes* had; and married *Xerxes* his sister *Artaxostres*,<sup>40</sup> persuaded by many arguments the *Eurepaean* warre. But *Artabanes*, brother to the late *Darius*, and uncle to *Xerxes*, maintained the contrary counsell, laying before *Xerxes* the lamentable and ridiculous successe of the two late invasions, which *Darius* had made contrary to his counsell: The one in person upon the *Scythians*, the other by his Lieutenants upon the *Greeks*; in each of which *Darius* left to his enemies both his Armie and his Honour.

He therefore besought *Xerxes* to be right well advised before he did too far imbarke himself in this businesse. For whatsoever undertaking hath deliberate and sound counsell for conductor, though the successe doe not alwaies answer the probability, yet hath Fortune nothing else thereof to vaunt, than the variableness of his own nature, which only the divine Providence, and not any humane power, can constrain.

But to obstatine was the resolution of *Xerxes* in prosecution of his former intent, that *Artabanes*, whether terrified by Visions (as it is written of him) or fearing the Kings hatred, which he made known to all those that opposed his desire to this Warre (changing opinion and counsell) assisted the *Grecian* Expedition with all the power hee had.

After the war of *Egypt* was ended, four years were consumed in describing and gathering an Army for this Invasion: which being compounded of all Nations subject to the *Persian* Empire, consisted of seventeen hundred thousand foot, and eighty thousand horsemen, besides Chariots, Camels, and other Beasts of Carriage, if wee may believe *Herodotus*: for of this multitude, *Trogus* finds the number lesse by seven hundred thousand footmen.

The Commanders of the severall Nations were the Princes of the blood of *Persia*, either by marriage in the Kings house, or otherwise: for to these were all commandements of this nature given, some few people excepted, who had of their own Leaders.

The charge of the whole Armie was bestowed on *Mardonius*, the son of *Gobrias* by a sister of *Darius*, to whom were joynd some others of *Xerxes* his nearest kindred, as Generalls over all; saying that the charge of ten thousand select *Persians*, called the immortal Regiment (because if any one of the whole number died, or were slain, there was another presently chosen in his stead) was given to *Hydarnes*; the eightie thousand horsemen were led by the sons of *Darius*, who commanded the late Armie of *Darius* in *Greece*.

The Fleet of Gallies were 2200. and eight, furnished by the *Phenicians*, who had Commanders of their own Nation, and by the *Cypriotes*, *Cilicians*, *Pamphilians*, *Lycians*, *Dorians*, *Carians*, *Ionians*, *Aeolians*, and *Hellespontines*; who were trusted with the furnishing of their own Vessels, though commanded by the Princes of *Persia*, as by *Artabanes*, the son of *Darius*, and others. The rest of the Vessels for transportation were three thousand. There were also certain Gallies furnished by *Artabanes*, the daughter of *Lygdamis*, Princess of *Halcarnassaeus*, and the Ilands adjoyning, which hee self commanded. Those Gallies by her prepared and furnished, exceeded

all the rest of the Fleet, excepting those of *Zidon*, in which *Xerxes* himself was embarked.

## §. II.

*Xerxes* Armie entertained by *Pythius*: his cutting off *Mount Athos* from the Continent: his bridge of Boats over the *Hellepont*: and the discourse between him and *Artabanus* upon the view of the Armie.

When this world of an Armie was thoroughly furnished, he caused all the nations of which it was compounded, to make their *Rendez-vous*, and repair at *Sardis* in *Lydia*. And when he had assembled to the number of seventeen hundred thousand foot, as he entered the body of *Celanus*, he was by one *Pythius* the *Lydian* entertained, who out of his Flocks and Herds of Cattel gave food to *Xerxes* and his whole Armie. The feast ended, he also presented him with two thousand Talents of silver, and in Gold four Millions, wanting seven thousand of the *Persian Darici*; which make so many of our Marks.

The King overcome with the exceeding liberalitie of *Pythius*, did not only refuse his treasure offered, but commanded that seven thousand *Darici* should be given him to make up his four Millions; of which, so many thousands were wanting when hee made the present. But soon after, when *Pythius* besought him to spare one of his five sons from his attendance into *Greece* (because himself was old, and had none whom he could so well trust as his own son) *Xerxes* most barbarously caused the young man, for whom his father sought exemption, to be sundered into two parts, commanding that the one half of his carcasie should be layed on the right, and the other half on the left hand of the common way by which the Armie marched.

Two things he commanded to be done before he came to the Sea-side. The one was a passage for Gallies to be cut behind *Mount Athos*, making the same (with the half Island or Headland, whereon it stood) to be an entire Island, sundring thereby from the Continent of *Thrace* five Cities, besides the Mountain and the *Chersonesus* or Neck of Land it self: a work of more ostentation than of use, and yet an enterprise of no great wonder, the Valley which held it to the Continent having but twelve furlongs (which make about a mile and a half) to cut through, and the ditch being broad enough only for two Gallies to passe in front. The Cities so severed from the main, were *Dionopolis*, *Acrothoon*, *Thylus* and *Cleone*.

He also gave order, that a Bridge upon Boats should be made over the *Hellepont* between *Abidus* and *Sestos*, the Sea there having a mile of breadth, wanting an eighth part, which after the finishing, was by a Tempest torn alunder and dislevered: wherewith *Xerxes* being more enraged than discouraged, commanded those to be slain that were masters of the work, and caused six hundred threecore and fourteen Gallies to be coupled together, thereon to frame a new Bridge; which by the art and industrie of the *Phenicians* was so well anchored to resist both winds blowing into and from the *Euxine* Sea, as the same being well boorded and rayled, the whole Army of seventeen hundred thousand Foot, and fourscore thousand Horse, with all the Moyles and Carriages, past over it into *Europe* in seven dayes and seven nights, without intermission. This transportation of Armies did *Caesar* afterward use. And *Caligula* that mad Emperour, in imitation of *Xerxes* his Bridge, did build the like.

The Bridge finished, and the Armie brought neer to the Sea-side, *Xerxes* took a view of all his Troupes, assembled in the Plains of *Abidus*, being carried up, and seated on a place over-topping the Land round about it, and the Sea adjoining: and after he had gloried in his own happinesse, to behold and command so many Nations, and so powerfull an Armie and Fleet, hee suddenly (notwithstanding) burst out into tears, moved with this contemplation, That in one hundred yeas there should not any one survive of that marvellous multitude: the cause of which sudden change of passion when he uttered to *Artabanus* his Uncle, *Artabanus* spake to the King to this effect: That which is more lamentable than the dissolution of this great Troup within that number of yeas by the King remembered, is, That the life it self which we enjoy is yet more miserable than the end thereof: for in those few dayes given us in the world,

there is no man among all these, or elsewhere, that ever found himself to be accompanied with happinesse, but that he oftentimes pleased himself better with the desire and hope of death, than of living; the incident calamities, diseases, and sorrows whereto mankind is subject, being so many and inevitable, that the shortest life doth oftentimes appear unto us over-long; to avoid all which, there is neither refuge nor rest, but in desired alone.

With this melancholy discourse, *Xerxes* being not much pleased, prayed *Artabanus* not to overcast those joyes which they had now in pursuit with sad remembrances. And holding still a doubtfull conceit, that *Artabanus* utterly condemned the invasion of *Greece*, against which he had formerly given many strong reasons, desired him to deal freely with him, Whether he were returned to his first resolution, that the enterprise of *Greece* could not be prosperous; Or whether, according to the change of mind put into him by his late Vision, he was confident of good successe? *Artabanus*, notwithstanding that he assured himself of the Kings resolution to goe on, and dared not by any new arguments to batter the great purpose it self, yet he told the King, That there were two things which marvellously affrighted him, and which this King should find, as he feared, to be most adverse; to wit, the Sea and the Land: The Sea, because it had no where in that part of the world any Port capable of so great a Fleet; inso much, as if any tempest should arise, all the Continent of *Greece* could hardly receive them, nor all the Havens thereof afford them any safety: and therefore when any such shelter shall be wanting unto them, he prayed him to understand, that in such a case of extremitie, men are left to the will and disposition of Fortune, and not Fortune to the will and disposition of men. The Land, besides other incommodities, will be found by so much the more an enemy, by how much the unsatiate desire of man to obtain more and more thereof, doth lead him forward: for were there no man found to give resistance, yet the want of means to feed such an Armie, and the Famiae, which cannot be prevented, will, without any other violence offered, dis-inable and consume it. By these arguments *Artabanus* hoped to have diverted *Xerxes*, not daring perchance to utter what indeed he most feared, to wit, the overthrow of the Armie it self both by Sea and Land, which soon after followed. These cautions were exceeding weighty, if *Xerxes* his obstinacie had not mis-prised them. For, to invade by Sea upon a perillous Coast, being neither in possession of any Port, nor succoured by any party, may better fit a Prince presuming on his fortune, than enriched with understanding. Such was the enterprise of *Philip* the second upon *England* in the year 1588. who had belike never heard of this Counsell of *Artabanus* to *Xerxes*, or forgotten it.

Now concerning the second point, it is very likely, that *Xerxes* his Armie; which could not have in it lesse than two millions of Soules, besides his beasts for Service and Carriage, should after a few dayes suffer famine, and using *Machiavels* words, *Mourir sans cuseco*, die without a knife. For it was impossible for *Greece*, being a ragged, strait, and mountainous Countrey, to yeeld food (besides what served themselves) for twenty hundred thousand strangers, whom they never meant to entertain, but with the sharpened points of their weapons, destroying withall whatsoever they could not well inclose and defend. Nay, if we may believe *Herodotus*, the Army of *Xerxes*, being reviewed at *Thermopylae*, consisted of five millions, two hundred eighty three thousand, two hundred twenty men, besides Laundresses, Harlots, and Horfes, and was therefore likely to endure a speedy famine.

The effect of *Xerxes* his answer was, That it was impossible to provide for all things; and that whosoever should enterprise any great matter, if he gave the hearing to all that could be objected of accidental inconveniences, he should never pursue the same farther than the dispute and consultation: which if his Predecessors, the *Persian* Kings; had done, they had never grown to that greatesse, or possesse so many Kingdomes and Nations as they now did; and therefore concluded, That great enterprises were never undertaken without great perils. Which resolution of *Xerxes* was not to be condemned, if any necessity had enforced him to that warre. But seeing the many Nations newly conquered; which he already commanded, were more than could be constrained to obedience any longer than the powerfull prosperitie of the *Persians* endured; and that *Greece* was separated by the Sea from the rest of *Xerxes* his Dominions (of whose resolution his Father *Darius* had made a dear experience) the fruit of this Warre

answe-



answerable to the plantation, and the success and end agreeable to the weak council whereon it was grounded. Furthermore, those millions of men which he transported, and yet in his own judgement not sufficient, (for he gathered in marching on, all the strength of *Thrace* and *Macedon*) were an argument, that he rather hoped to fear the *Greeks* by the fame of his numbers, than that he had any confidence in their valour and resolution, whom he conducted. For it is wisely said of those uncountable multitudes: *Non viri habent, sed pandus, & impedimenta potius sunt quàm auxilium*; They are great in bulk but weak in forces, and rather a laggage than an aide.

Besides, as it was impossible to marshall such a world of men in one Army, so the divers Nations, speaking divers languages, bred the same confusion among the *Persians* as commanders when they came to fight, as it did to the builders of *Babel*, when they came to work. Whereas if *Xerxes* had of his five millions compounded ten Armies of fiftie thousand chosen Souldiers in each, and sent them yearly into *Greece* well victualled and furnished, he had either prevailed by the sword, or forced them to forsake their territory, or brought them into obedience by necessity and famine, which cannot be resisted. But while *Xerxes* resolved to cut down the banks of *Greece*, and to let in a sea of men upon them, he was deceived both of his own hopes, and in their hearts whom he employed, and beaten by the *Greeks*, both by Land and Sea; yea, he himself, conducted by his fear, fled shamefully into *Asia*. A great part of his Army was buried in *Greece*: the remainder whereof, which wintered in *Thessaly*, and led by *Mardonius*, who persuaded the enterprise, was in the summer following utterly defeated, and himself slain.

## S. III.

## of the fights at Thermopylae and Artemisium.

**A**fter such time as *Xerxes* had transported the Armie over the *Hellaspont*, and landed in *Thrace*, (leaving the description of his passage alongst that Coast, and how the River of *Lissus* was drunk dry by his multitudes, and the lake near to *Pisirus* by his cattell, with other accidents in his marches towards *Greece*) I will speak of the encounters he had, and the shamefull and incredible overthrowes which he received. As first at *Thermopyla*, a narrow passage of half an acre of ground, lying between the Mountains which divide *Thessalie* from *Greece*, where sometime the *Phocians* had raised a wall with gates, which was then for the most part ruined. At this entrance *Leonidas*, one of the Kings of *Sparta*, with three hundred *Lacedaemonians*, assisted with one thousand *Tegeates* and *Marineans*, one thousand *Arcadians*, and other *Peloponnesians*, to the number of three thousand one hundred in the whole; besides one thousand *Phocians*, four hundred *Thébans*, seven hundred *Thebians*, and all the forces (such as they were) of the bordering *Locrians*, defended the passage two whole dayes together against that huge Armie of the *Persians*. The valour of the *Greeks* appeared so excellent in this defence, that in the first dayes fight, *Xerxes* is said to have three times leaped out of his Throne, fearing the destruction of his Armie by one handfull of those men, whom so not long before he had utterly despised: and when the second dayes attempt upon the *Greeks* had proved vain, he was altogether ignorant how to proceed further, and so might have continued, had not a runnagate *Grecian* taught him a secret way, by which part of his Armie might ascend the ledge of mountains, and set upon the backs of those who kept the Straits. But when the most valiant of the *Persian* Armie had almost inclosed the small forces of the *Greeks*, then did *Leonidas*, King of the *Lacedaemonians*, with his three hundred, and seven hundred *Thebians*, which were all that abode by him, refuse to quit the place which they had undertaken to make good, and with admirable courage not onely resist that world of men which charged them on all sides; but issuing out of their strength, made so great a slaughter of their enemies, that they might well be called vanquishers, though all of them were slain upon the place. *Xerxes* having lost in this last fight, together with twenty thousand other Souldiers and Captains, two of his own brethren, began to doubt what inconvenience might befall him by the vertue of such as had not been present at these battels, with whom he knew that he shortly was to deal. Especially of the *Spartans* he stood in great fear, whose manhood had appeared singular in this triall, which caused him very carefully to enquire what numbers they could bring

bring into the field. It is reported of *Dieneces* the *Spartan*, that when one thought to have terrified him by saying, That the flight of the *Persian* arrows was so thick as would hide the sun: he answered thus; It is very good news: for then shall we fight in the cool shade.

Such notable resolution having as freely been expressed in deeds, as it was uttered in words, caused the *Persian* to stand in great doubt, when he heard that the Citie of *Sparta* could arm well-nigh eight thousand men of the like temper, and that the other *Lacedaemonians*, though inferior to those, were very valiant men. Wherefore he asked counsell of *Demaratus*, a banished King of the *Spartans*, who had alwaies well advised and instructed him in the things of *Greece*, what course were fittest to be taken in his further proceedings. The opinion of *Demaratus* was, That all the Land-forces should assemble together to defend the *Isthmus*, that streight neck of ground which joyneth *Peloponnesus* to the Continent. For which cause he advised, That three hundred ships well manned should be sent unto the Coast of *Laconia*, to spoile his country, and to hold the *Lacedaemonians* and their neighbours busied at home, whilst *Xerxes* at his leisure having subdued the rest, might afterward bring his whole power upon them, who remaining destitute of succour, would be too weak alone to make resistance. To this purpose also the same *Demaratus* further advised, That the said Fleet of three hundred ships should seize upon the Island then called *Cythera*, now *Cérigo*, which lying near to the Coast of *Laconia*, might serve as a fit place of Rendezvous upon all occasions, either of their own defence, or endamaging the enemy: whereby that ancient speech of *Chilon* the *Lacedaemonian* should be verified, that it were better for his Countrymen to have that Ile drowned in the sea, than stand so inconveniently as for them it did. What effect this counsell might have taken, had it bin followed, it is not easie to ghesse. But a contrarie opinion of *Achemenes* brother to King *Xerxes* was preferred as the safer. For the *Persian* fleet had bin sorely vexed with a grievous tempest, which continued three whole dayes together, wherein were lost upon the Coast of *Magnesia*, four hundred ships of war, besides other vessels innumerable, accordingly as *Artabanus* had foreseen, that if any such calamitie should overtake them, there would not be found any Harbor wide enough to give them succour. Therefore *Achemenes* persuaded his brother not to disperse his fleet; for if (said he) after the losse of four hundred ships we shall send away other three hundred to seek adventures, then will the *Greeks* be strong enough by sea to encounter the rest of the Navie, which holding all together is invincible. To this counsell *Xerxes* yeelded, hoping that his Land-armie and fleet should each of them stand the other in good stead, whilst both held one course, and lay not far asunder. But herein he was far deceived; for about the same time that his armie had felt the valour of the *Greeks* by land, his Navie likewise made a sorrowfull proof of their skill and courage at sea. The *Grecians* fleet lay at that time at *Artemisium* in the straits of *Eubœa*, where the *Persians* thinking to incompass them, sent two hundred sayl about the Island to fall upon them behind, using a like stratagem to that which their King did practise against *Leonidas* in a case not unlike, but with far different successe. For that narrow channell of the sea which divideth *Eubœa* from the main, was in the same sort held by a Navie of two hundred threescore and eleven sail against the huge *Persian* Armado, as the straits of *Thermopyla* had formerly bin maintained by *Leonidas*, till he was circumvented, as this Navie might have bin, but was not. The departure of those two hundred ships that were sent about the Island, and the cause of their voyage, was too well known in the *Persian* fleet, and soon enough disclosed to the *Greeks*, who setting sail by night, met them with a counter-prisile, taking and sinking thirty vessels, enforcing the rest to take the Sea, where being over-taken with foul weather, they were driven upon the rocks and cast all away. Contrariwise, the Navie of the *Greeks* was increased by the arrivall of fiftie three *Athenian* ships, and one *Lemnian*, which came to their partie in the last fight. As these new forces encouraged the one side, so the fear of *Xerxes* his displeasure stirred up the other to redeem their losse with some notable exploit. Wherefore setting aside their unfortunate policie, they resolved in plain fight to repair their honour, and casting themselves into the form of a Crescent, thought so to inclose the *Greeks*, who readily did present them battell at *Artemisium*.

The fight endured from noon till night, and ended with equall losse to both parts. For though more of the *Persian* ships were sunk and taken, yet the lesser losse fell altogether

gether as heaue, upon the *Greekish* fleet, which being small could worse bear it. Herein only the *Barbarians* may seem to have had the worse, that they forsook the place of fight, leaving the wrack and spoils to the enemy, who nevertheless were faine to abandon presently even the passage which they had undertaken to defend; both for that many of their ships were sorely cruelt in the battell, and especially because they had received advertisement of the death of *Leonidas* at *Thermopyla*. Before they wayed anchors, *Themistocles*, Generall of the *Athenians*, engraving upon stone at the watering place an exhortation to the *Ionians*, that either they should revolt unto the *Greeks*, or stand neuterall; which perswasion, he hoped would either take some place with them, or at the least make them suspected by the *Perfians*.

## §. IV.

*The attempt of Xerxes upon Apollo's Temple: and his taking of Athens.*

**V**Hen *Xerxes* had past the straits of *Thermopyla*, he wasted the country of the *Phocians*, and the regions adjoining: as for the inhabitants, they chose rather to flie, and reserve themselves to a day of battell, than to adventure their lives into his hands, upon hope of saving their wealth, by making proffer unto him of their service. Part of his armie he sent to spoil the Temple of *Delphi*, which was exceeding rich by means of many offerings that hath bin made by divers Kings and great personages; of all which riches it was thought that *Xerxes* had a better Inventory than of the goods left in his own Palace. To make relation of a great astonishment that fell upon the companies which arrived at the Temple to have sacked it, and of two Rocks that breaking from the Mount *Parnassus*, overwhelmed many of the *Barbarians*, it were peradventure somewhat superfluous. Yet *Herodotus*, who lived not long after, saith, That the broken Rocks remained even to his memory in the Temple of *Minerva*, whither they rowled in their fall. And surely this attempt of *Xerxes* was impious; for seeing he beleeveth that *Apollo* was a god, he should not have dared to entertain a covetous desire of enriching himself by committing sacrilege upon his Temple. Wherefore it may possibly be true, that licence to chastise his impietie, in such manner as is reported, was granted unto the devil, by that Holy One, who saith, *Will a man spoil his gods? and elsewhere; Hath any Nation changed their gods, which yet are no gods? Goen the Iles of Kittim, and behold, and send to Kedar, and take diligent heed, and see whether there be any such things.* Now this impietie of *Xerxes* was the more excusable, for that the *Perfians* alleged the burning of *Cybele's* Temple by the *Athenians*, when they set fire on the Citie of *Sardis* in *Asia*, to be the ground and cause of the waste which they made in burning of Cities and Temples in *Greece*. Whereas indeed, in the enterprise against *Delphos*, this vizzor of holy and zealous revenge falling off, discovered the face of covetousnesse so much the more ugly, by how much the more themselves had professed a detestation of the offence which the *Athenians* had committed in that kind by meer mischance.

The remainder of that which *Xerxes* did, may be expressed briefly thus: *He cometh Athens, which finding forsaken, he took and burnt the Cittadel and Temple which was therein.* The Cittadel indeed was defended a while by some of more courage than wisdom, who literally interpreting *Apollo's* Oracle; that Athens should be safe in walled walls, had fortified that place with Boords and Pallisadoes: too weak to hold out long, though by their desperate valour so well maintained at the first assault, that they might have yeelded it upon tolerable conditions, had they not vainly relied upon the prophecie: whereof (being somewhat obscure) it was wisely done of *Themistocles*, to make discretion the interpreter, applying rather the words to the present need, than fashioning the business to words.

## §. V.

*How Themistocles the Athenian drew the Greeks to fight at Salamis.*

**T**He *Athenians* had before the coming of *Xerxes* removed their wives and children into *Trazene*, *Agina*, and *Salamis*, not so highly prizing their houses and lands, as their freedom, and the common libertie of *Greece*. Nevertheless, this

Mal. 3. 8.  
Jer. 2. 9, 10.

great zeal, which the *Athenians* did shew for the generall good of their Countrey, was required by the other *Greeks*, who with much labour were hardly intreated to stay for them at *Salamis*, whilst they removed their wives and children out of the Citie. But when the City of *Athens* was taken, it was presently resolved upon, that they should forsake the Iles of *Salamis*, and withdraw the fleet to *Isthmus*: which neck of land they did purpose to fortifie against the *Perfians*, and so to defend *Peloponnesus* by land and sea, leaving the rest of *Greece* as indefensible, to the furie of the enemy. So should the Ilands of *Salamis* and *Agina* have been abandoned, and the Families of the *Athenians* (which were there bestowed as in places of securitie) have been given over into mercelike bondage. Against his resolution *Themistocles*, Admirall of the *Athenian* Fleet, very strongly made opposition; but in vain. For the *Peloponnesians* were so possessed with fear of losing their own, which they would not hazzard, that no perswasions could obtain of them to regard the estate of their distressed Friends and Allies. Many remonstrances *Themistocles* made unto them, to allure them to abide the enemy at *Salamis*; As first in private unto *Eurybiades* the *Lacedemonian*; Admirall of the whole fleet; That the self same fear which made them forsake those coasts of *Greece*, upon which they then anchored, would afterward (if it found no check at the first) cause them also to disserve the Fleet, and every one of the Confederates to withdraw himself to the defence of his own City and Estate: Then to the Councell of War, which *Eurybiades* upon this motion did call together (forbearing to object what want of courage might work in them hereafter;) he shewed that the fight at *Isthmus* would be in an open Sea, whereas it was more expedient for them, having the fewer ships, to determine the matter in the streights; and that, besides the safeguard of *Agina*, *Megara* and *Salamis*, they should by abiding where they then were, sufficiently defend *Isthmus*; which the *Barbarians* should not so much as once look upon, if the *Greeks* obtained victory by sea, which they could not so well hope for elsewhere, as in that present place which gave him so good advantage. All this would not serve to retain the *Peloponnesians*, of whom one, unworthy of memorie, upbraided *Themistocles* with the losse of *Athens*, blaming *Eurybiades* for suffering one to speak in the Councell, that had no Countrey of his own to inhabit. A base and shamefull objection it was, to lay as a reproach that losse, which being voluntarily sustained for the common good, was in true estimation by so much the more honourable, by how much it was the greater. But this indignitie did exasperate *Themistocles*, and put into his mouth a replie so sharp, as availed more than all his former perswasions. He told them all plainly, That the *Athenians* wanted not a fairer Citie than any Nation of *Greece* could boast of; having well-neer two hundred good ships of Warre, the better part of the *Grecian* Fleet, with which it was easie for them to transport their Families and substance into any part of the World, and settle themselves in a more secure habitation, leaving those to shift as well as they might, who in their extremity had refused to stand by them. Herewithall he mentioned a Town in *Italie* belonging of old to the State of *Athens*, of which Town he said an Oracle had foretold, That the *Athenians* in proceesse of time should build it a-new, and there (quoth he) will we plant our selves, leaving unto you a sorrowfull remembrance of my words, and of your own unthankfulness. The *Peloponnesians* hearing thus much, began to enter into better consideration of the *Athenians*, whose affairs depended not, as they well perceived, upon so weak termes, that they should be driven to crouch to others; but rather were such, as might enforce the rest to yeeld to them, and condescend even to the uttermost of their own demands.

For the *Athenians*, when they first embraced that Heroicall resolution of leaving their grounds and houses to fire and ruine, if necessitie should enforce them so farre, for the preservation of their liberty, did employ the most of their private wealth, and all the common treasure, in building a great Navie. By these means they hoped (which accordingly fell out) that no such calamitie should befall them by Land, as might not well be counterpoised by great advantages at Sea: Knowing well that a strong fleet would either procure victory at home, or a secure passage to any other Countrey. The other States of *Greece* held it sufficient, if building a few new ships, they did somewhat amend their Navie. Whereby it came to pass, that had they bin vanquished, they could not have expected any other fortune than either present death, or perpetual slavery; neither could they hope to be victorious without the assistance of the *Athenians*, whose forces by

Sea

sea did equall all theirs together; the whole consisting of more than three hundred and fourscore bottomes. Wherefore these *Peloponnesians* beginning to suspect their own condition, which would have stood upon desperate points, if the Fleet of *Athen* had forsaken them, were soon perswaded, by the greater fear of such a bad event, to forget the lesser, which they had conceived of the *Persians*: and laying aside their insolent braverie, they yeelded to that most profitable counsell of abiding at *Salamis*.

## §. VI.

*How the Persians consulted about giving battell: and how Themistocles by policie held the Greeks to their resolution; with the victorie at Salamis thereupon ensuing.*

**I**N the mean season the *Persians* had entred into consultation, whether it were convenient to offer battell to the *Greekes*, or no. The rest of the Captains giving such advice as they thought would best please the King their Master, had soon agreed upon the fight; but *Artemisia* Queen of *Halicarnassus*, who followed *Xerxes* to this warre in person, was of contrary opinion: Her counsell was, that the King himself directly should march toward *Peloponnesus*, whereby it would come to passe, that the *Greek* Navie (unable otherwise to continue long at *Salamis* for want of provision) should presently be dislevered, and every one seeking to preserve his own Citie and goods, they should, being divided, prove unable to resist him, who had won so far upon them when they held together. And as the profit will be great in forbearing to give battell; so on the other side, the danger will be more (said she) which we shall undergoe, than any need requireth us to adventure upon; and the losse in case it fall upon us, greater than the profit of the victorie which we desire. For if we compell the enemies to fight, it is more than they would have done, we sitting still: but if they, as better Sea-men than ours, put us to the worst, the journey to *Peloponnesus* is utterly dashed, and many that now declare for us, will soon revolt unto the *Greekes*. *Mardonius*, whom *Xerxes* had sent for that purpose to the Fleet, related unto his Master the common consent of the other Captains, and withall this disagreeing opinion of *Artemisia*. The King well pleased with her advice, yet resolved upon following the more generall, but far-worse counsell of the rest; which would questionlesse have been the same which *Artemisia* gave, had not fear and flatterie made all the Captains utter that, as out of their own judgement, which they thought to be most conformable to their Princes determination. So it was indeed that *Xerxes* had entertained a vain perswasion of much good, that his own presence upon the shore to behold the conflict, would work among the Souldiers. Therefore he encamped upon the Sea-side; pitching his own Tent on the Mount *Agalaw*, which is opposite unto the Isle of *Salamis*, whence at ease he might safely view all which might happen in that action, having Scribes about him to write down the acts and behaviour of every Captain. The neer approach of the *Barbarians*, together with the newes of that timorous diligence which their Countrymen shewed in fortifying the *Isthmus*, and of a *Persian* Armie, marching a-pace thither, did now again so terrifie and amaze the *Peloponnesians*, that no intreatie nor contestation would suffice to hold them together. For they thought it meer madnesse to fight for a Country already lost, when they rather should endeavour to save that which remained unconquered; propounding chiefly to themselves what miserie would befall them, if losing the victorie, they should be driven into *Salamis*, there to be shut up, and besieged round in a poor desolate Island.

Hereupon they resolved forth-with to set sail for *Isthmus*: which had presently been done, if the wisdom of *Themistocles* had not prevented it. For he perceiving what a violent fear had stopp'd up their ears against all good counsell, did practise another course, and forth-with labour to prevent the execution of this unwhollome decree; not suffering the very hour of performance to find him busie in wrangling alteration. As soon as the Councell brake up, he dispatched secretly a trustie Gentleman to the *Persian* Captains, informing them truly of the intended flight, and exhorting them to send part of their Navie about the Island, which encompassing the *Greekes*, might prevent their escape; giving them withall false hope of his assistance. The *Persians* no sooner heard than beleaved these good newes, well knowing that the victorie was their own assured,

assured, if the *Athenian* fleet joyned with them; which they might easily hope, considering what ability their Master had to recompence for so doing, both the Captains with rich rewards, and the People with restitution of their City, and Territories. By these means in fell out, that when the *Greekes* very early in the morning were about to weigh Anchor, they found themselves inclosed round with *Persians*, who had laboured hard all that night, sending many of their ships about the Isle of *Salamis*, to charge the enemy in rear, and landing many of their men in the Isle of *Psittalea*, which lyeth over against *Salamis*, to save such of their own, and kill such of the *Grecian* party, as by any misfortune should be cast upon the shore. Thus did meer necessitie enforce the *Greekes* to undertake the battell in the Straights of *Salamis*, where they obtained a memorable victory, stemming the foremost of their enemies, and chasing the rest, who falling foul one upon another, could neither conveniently fight nor flee. I doe not find any particular occurrences in this great battell to be much remarkable. Sure it is, that the Scribes of *Xerxes* had a wearisome task of writing down many disasters that befell the *Persian* Fleet, which ill acquitted it self that day, doing no one piece of service worthy the presence of their King, or the registing of his Notaries. As for the *Greekes*, they might well seem to have wrought out that victory with equall courage, were it not that the principall honour of that day was ascribed to those of *Aegina*, and to the *Athenians*, of whom it is recorded, That when the *Barbarians* did flee towards *Phalerus*, where the Land-army of *Xerxes* lay, the ships of *Aegina* having possessed the Straights, did sinke or take them, whilst the *Athenians* did valiantly give charge upon those that kept the Sea, and made any countenance of resisting.

## §. VII.

*Of things following after the battell of Salamis: and of the flight of Xerxes.*

**A**Fter the victory, this *Greekes* intending by way of Scrutinie, to determine which of the Captains had best merited of them, in all this great service; every Captain, being ambitious of that honour, did in the first place write down his own name, but in the second place, as best deserving next unto himself, almost every Sufferer did concur upon *Themistocles*. Thus private affection yeilded unto vertue, as soon as their own turn was served. The *Persian* King, as not amazed with this calamity, began to make new preparation for continuance of warre; but in such fashion, that they which were best acquainted with his temper, might easily discern his faint heart through his painted looks. Especially *Mardonius*, Author of the warre, began to cast a wary eye upon his Master, fearing lest his counsell should be rewarded according to the event. Wherefore purposing rather to adventure his life in pursuit of the victory, than to cast it away by undergoing his Princes indignation, hee advised the King to leave unto him three hundred thousand men, with which forces hee promised to reduce all *Greece* under the subjection of the *Persian* Scepter. Herewithall hee forgot not to sooth *Xerxes* with many fair words, telling him, That the cowardice of those *Egyptians*, *Phonicians*, and *Cilicians*, with others of the like metall, nothing better than slaves, who had so ill behaved themselves in the late Sea-service, did not concern his honour, who had alwayes been victorious, and had already subdued the better part of *Greece*, yea taken *Athen* it self, against which the War was principally intended. These words found very good acceptance in the Kings ear, who presently betook himself to his journey homewards, making the more haste, for that he understood, how the *Greekes* had a purpose to saile to *Hellepont*, and there to break down his bridge, and intercept his passage. True it was that the *Greekes* had no such intent, but rather wished his hasty departure, knowing that hee would leave his Armie not so strong, as it should have been, had he in person remained with it. And for this cause did *Eurybiades* give counsell, that by no means they should attempt the breaking of that bridge, lest necessity should enforce the *Persians* to take more courage, and rather to fight like men, than die like beasts. Wherefore *Themistocles* did, under pretence of friendship, send a false advertisement unto this timorous Prince, advising him to convey himself into *Asia* with all speed, before his bridge were dissolved: which counsell *Xerxes* took very kindly, and hastily followed, as before is shewed. Whether it were so that hee found the bridge whole, and thereby repassed into *Asia*; or whether it were torn in sunder by tempests,

and he thereby driven to imbarke himself in some obscure vessell, it is not greatly material; though the *Greeks* did most willingly embrace the latter of these reports. Howsoever it were, this sight of his did well ease the Country, that was thereby disburdened of that huge throng of people, which, as *Locusts*, had before overwhelmed it.

## 5. VIII.

*The negotiations between Mardonius and the Athenians, as also between the Athenians and the Lacedæmonians, after the flight of Xerxes.*

**M**ardonius with his three hundred thousand had withdrawn himself into *Thessalie*, whence he sent *Alexander*, the son of *Amyntus* King of *Macedon*, as Embassador to the *Athenians*, with promise of large amends for all their losses received; and of extending their Territories as farre as their own desires; allowing them to retain their libertie and lawes, if they would make peace with *Xerxes*, and assist him in that warre.

The *Athenians* had now re-entred their City, but not as yet brought back their wives and children; for as much as they well perceived that the place could not be secure, till the Army of *Mardonius* was broken and defeated. Wherefore the *Lacedæmonians*, understanding what fair conditions this Embassadour would propound, were perplexed with very great fear, lest he should find good and ready acceptance. Hereupon, they likewise very speedily dispatched their Embassadors for *Athens*, who arriving before the *Macedonian* had audience, used the best of their perswasion to retain the *Athenians* firm. They alleged, that neither *Xerxes* nor *Darius* had any pretence of Warre against the rest of *Greece*, but had onely threatned the subversion of *Athens*, till they and all their Confederates arming themselves in defence of that City, were drawn into the quarrell, wherein the *Athenians* without much cruelty of injustice could not leave them. Wee know, said they, that yee have endured great calamities, losing the fruit of the grounds, and being driven to forsake the Town, the houses thereof be ruined, and unfit for your habitation; in regard whereof, wee undertake to maintain as our own, your wives and children amongst us, as long as the warre shall continue, hoping that yee, who have alwaies procured libertie to others, will not now goe about to bring all *Greece* into slavery and bondage. As for the *Barbarians*, their promises are large, but their words and oathes are of no assurance. It was needlesse to use many arguments to the *Athenians*, who gave answer to *Alexander* in presence of the *Spartan* Embassadors; That whilst the Sunne continued his course, they would be enemies to *Xerxes*, regarding neither Gold nor any riches, with which hee might seek to make purchase of their libertie. Concerning the maintenance of their wives and children, it was a burden which they promised to sustain themselves, only desiring the *Lacedæmonians*, that with all speed they would cause their Armie to march, forasmuch as it was not likely, that *Mardonius* would long sit still in *Thessalie*, having once received such a peremptorie answer. In this their opinion of *Mardonius* his readinesse to invade *Attica*, they found themselves nothing deceived. For hee, as soon as *Alexander* had returned their oblique purpose of resistance, did forthwith lead his Army towards them, and their City: they having now the second time quitted it, and conveyed themselves into places of more security abroad in the Countrey, where they expected the arrivall of their confederates. From *Athens* he sent his Agent unto them, with instructions, not only to perswade them to acceptance of the conditions before to them propounded, but with great promises to allure the principall of them to his party. His hope was, that either the people, wearied with forsaking their houses so often, would be desirous to preserve them from fire, and to have those which were already laid waste, re-edified at the Kings charges: Or if this affection took no place with them, but that needs they would rely upon their old confederates, whose succors did very slowly advance forwards, yet perhaps the leaders might be wonne with great rewards, to draw them to this purpose; all which projects, if they should fail, the destruction of *Athens* would be a good mean to please his Master, King *Xerxes*, who must thereby needs understand, that *Mardonius* kept his ground, and feared not to confront the whole power of *Greece*, in the strongest part of their own Countrey. But his expectation was beguiled in all these. For the *Athenians* so little regarded his offers, that when one *Lyseidas*, or (as *Demosthenes* calls him) *Cyrillus*

*Cyrillus*, advised the *Senate* to accept the conditions, and propounded them to the people; all the *Senators*, &c. as many as abiding without the Counsaile-house, heard what he had said, immediately set upon him, and stoned him to death; not examining whether it were fear or money, that had moved him to utter such a vile sentence. Yea, the women of *Athens*, and in the Ile of *Salamis*, hearing of his bad counsaile, and bad end, assembling together did enter his house there, and put his wife and children to the like execution. All this bravery notwithstanding, when they perceived the slacknesse of the *Peloponnesians* in giving them aid, they were faine to betake themselves to *Salamis* again, the old place of their security. Remaining there, and seeing little forwardnes in those whom it most concerned to assist them, they sent very severe messages to *Sparta*, complaining of their slacknes, and threatening withall, to take such course as might stand best with their own good, seeing that the common estate of all was so little regarded. These messengers were at the first entertained with dilatory answers, which every day grew colder, when as the *Peloponnesian* Wall, builded athwart the *Isthmus*, was almost finished. But as the *Lacedæmonians* waxed careless and dull, so the *Athenians* hotly pressed them to a quick resolution, giving them plainly to understand, that if they should hold on in those dilatory courses, it would not be long ere the City of *Athens* took a new course, that should little please them. All this while the *Persian* fleet lay upon the coast of *Asia*, not daring to draw nearer unto *Greece*, as being now too weak at Sea. Likewise the *Greekish* Navie contained it self within the Harbours upon *Ewrope* side; both to doe service where need should require at home; and withall to shun the danger which might have befallen any part of it, that (being distracted from the rest) had adventured over-sea. So mutuall fear preserved in quiet the Ilands lying in the midst of the *Aegean* Seas. But it was well and seasonably observed by a Counsellor of *Sparta*, that the Wall upon *Isthmus* would serve to little purpose for the defence of *Peloponnesus*, if once the *Athenians* gave ear to *Mardonius*: considering that many doors would be opened into that *Demic* Iland, as soon as the Enemy should by winning the friendship of *Athens*, become the Master of the Seas about it. The *Lacedæmonians* upon this admonition, making better perusall of their own dangers, were very careful to give satisfaction to the *Athenian* Embassadors, who not brooking their delays, were upon point of taking leave, yea, as it seemed, of renouncing their alliance. Wherefore dispatching away five thousand *Spartans* in the evening, under conduct of *Pausanis*, they gave audience the next day to the Embassadors, whose complaints they answered with vehement protestations of their readinesse; deeply swearing that the Army of *Sparta* was already far upon the journey; and giving them leave to take up other five thousand *Lacedæmonians*, out of the Region adjoining, to follow after them.

The *Athenians*, though distasting such want of gravity, in a matter so important, were nevertheless contented with the final conclusion; and levying the number appointed of *Lacedæmonian* Souldiers, made what haste they could to incamp in *Attica*. The other *Grecians* were nothing slack in sending forth Companies, whose near approach caused *Mardonius* to forsake *Attica* as a rough Country, and therefore of much disadvantage to Horse, wherein consisted the best of his power. Before his departure he burnt the City of *Athens*, beating down the Walls of it, and ruining all that had formerly escaped the fury of War.

## 5. IX.

*The great battail of Plataea.*

**I**t were too long a rehearsal to shew all that happened in many skirmishes between the *Greeks* and him, in the Country of *Boeotia*, which *Mardonius* had chosen to be the seat of that War. Much time was spent before the quarrell was decided by the trial of one main battail: for both parties did stand upon their guard, each expecting when the other should assault them.

The Army of *Mardonius* contained about three hundred thousand, which were by him chosen out of *Xerxes* his Armies, to whom were adjoynd the Forces of *Thebes*, *Macedony*, *Thessaly*, and other parts of *Greece*, that now siding with the *Persian*, furnished his Camp with fifty thousand men. Against these the *Lacedæmonians*, *Athenians*, and their Confederates, had leaved an Army of one hundred and ten thousand, of which forty thou-

land were weightily armed, the rest were only assistants to these forty thousand, being armed more slightly, as rather to make excursions and give chase, than to sustain any strong charges.

These two armies having eleven daies confronted one the other, without performing any memorable piece of service; *Mardonius*, whose victuals began to faile, resolved to begin the fray. The *Greeks* were promised victory by an Oracle, if they fought in the Land of the *Athenians*, and in the plain of *Ceres* and *Proserpina*, making prayers unto certain gods, Demi-gods, and Nymphs. But it was hard to find the certain place which the Oracle designed. For the plain of *Ceres* was indeed in the Territory of *Athens*; but there was also an old Temple of *Ceres* and *Proserpina*, near unto the place where they lay at that time encamped, as likewise the memorials of those Nymphs and Demi-gods, were in the same place, upon Mount *Citheron*, and the ground served well for foot-men against horse; only the Land belonged unto the *Plataeans*, and not unto the *Athenians*.

Whilst the *Greeks* were perplexed about the interpretation of this doubtfull Oracle, the *Plataeans* to make all cleer, did freely bestow their land on that side the Town upon the *Athenians*.

This magnificence of the *Plataeans* caused *Alexander* the Great, many ages after, to re-edifie their City, which was ruined in the *Peloponnesian* wars.

All things being ready for battaile, the *Lacedemonian* Generall thought it most meet, that the *Athenians* should stand opposite that day to the *Medes* and *Persians*, whom they had formerly vanquished at *Marathon*; and that he, with his *Spartans*, should entertain the *Thebans* and other *Greeks* which followed *Mardonius*, as better acquainted with their fight, and having beaten them often-times before. This being agreed upon, the *Athenians* changed place with the *Lacedemonians*: which *Mardonius* understanding (whether fearing the *Athenians*, of whose valour the *Medes* & *Persians* had felt heave proof, or desiring to encounter the *Spartans*, as thinking them the bravest Souldiers in *Greece*) he did also change the order of his battaile, and oppose himself to *Pausanias*. All the *Greeks* might well perceive how the Enemy did shift his wings, and *Pausanias* thereupon returned to his former Station; which *Mardonius* noting, did also the like. So one whole day was spent in changing to and fro. Some attempt the *Persians* made that day with their Archers on horse-back, who did so molest the *Greeks* at their watering place, that they were faine to enter into consultation of retiring; because they could not without much losse to themselves, and none to the enemy, lye near to that fountain which did serve all the Camp. Having therefore concluded among themselves to dislodge; and part of the Army being sent away before day-light: *Mardonius* perceived their departure in the morning, and thereupon being encouraged by their flight, (which to him seemed to proceed out of meer cowardise) he charged them in the reare with great violence. It may well be recorded as a notable example of patient valour, That the *Lacedemonians* being over-taken by the enemies horse, and over-whelmed with great flights of Arrows, did quietly sit still, not making any resistance or defence, till the Sacrifices for victory were happily ended, though many of them were hurt and slain, and some of especial mark lost, before any sign of good successe appeared in the entrails.

But as soon as *Pausanias* had found in the Sacrifice those tokens, which the superstition of that Age and Country accounted fortunate; he gave the Signall of battaile: and thereupon the Souldiers, who till then did sit upon the ground, as was their manner, arose altogether, and with excellent courage received the charge of the *Barbarians*, that came thronging upon them without any fear of such notable resistance. The rest of the *Greek* Army that was in march, being revoked by *Pausanias*, came in a pace to succour the *Lacedemonians*: only that part of the Army which was led by the *Athenians*, could not arrive unto the place of the great battaile, because the *Thebans*, and others *Greeks* confederated with the *Persians*, gave them check by the way. Nevertheless, the *Spartans* with other their assistants, did so well acquit themselves, that the *Persians* were vanquished, and *Mardonius* with many thousands more slain in the field; the rest fled into the Camp, which they had fortified with wooden Walls, and there defended themselves with such courage as desperate necessity enforced them unto, holding out the longer, because the *Lacedemonians* were not acquainted with the manner of assaulting Fortresses, and Walls. In the mean time the *Athenians* having found strong opposition

of the *Thebans* and *Thessalians*, did with much labour and courage obtain victory, which having not long pursued, they came to help the *Lacedemonians*, whom they found nearly busied in assaulting the Camp, with more valour than skill. Wherefore they themselves under-took it, and in short space forced a passage through the Wall; at which breach first, and then on all sides, the *Greeks* entered with such fury, and just desire of vengeance, that of three hundred thousand they are said not to have left three thousand alive, excepting those who fled away with *Artabazus*, when as the *Persian* Army first fell to rout.

If the execution were so great, as is reported, an especial cause of it was the foolish retreat, or rather flight into the Camp. For though it were so, that the place was well fortified, and the number of those who cast themselves into it greater than any of the Assaultants; yet they being of severall Nations and Languages, and having lost their Generall with other principall Commanders, it was impossible that they in such a terror and astonishment should make good that piece of ground, lying in the heart of an Enemy Country, against an Army of men, farre more valiant than themselves, and enflamed with present victory. Therefore the same wall which for a few hours had preserved their lives, by holding out the enemy, did now impale them, and leave them to the slaughtering fury of unpitifull Victors. *Artabazus* fled into *Thrace*, telling the people of *Thessaly*, and other Countries in his way, that he was sent by *Mardonius* upon some piece of service: For he well knew, that had they understood any thing of that great discomfiture, all places would have been hostile unto him, and fought with his ruine to purchase favour of the vanquishers. Therefore making so large marches, that many of his Souldiers being feeble were left behind and lost, he came to *Byzantium*, whence he shipped his men over into *Asia*. Such was the end of the vain-glorious expedition, undertaken by *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, upon hope of Honour, and Conquest, though costing otherwise, accordingly as *Artabazus* had fore-seen, and rather worse, for as much as it began the quarrell, which never ended before the ruine of the *Persian* Empire was effected by that Nation of the *Greeks*, despised and fought to have been brought into slavery. Hereby it may seem, that the vision appearing to *Xerxes*, was from God himself, who had formerly disposed of those things, ordaining the subversion of the *Persian* Monarchie by the *Greeks*, who thus provoked, entered into greater consideration of their own strength, and the weakness of their Enemies.

## S. X.

The battell of Mycale, with a strange accident that fell out in the beginning: and examples of the like.

THE same day on which the battell was fought at *Plataea*, there was another battell fought at *Mycale*, a Promontory, or Head-land in *Asia*, where the *Persian* fleet rode.

*Leutichides* the *Spartan*, with *Xantippus* the *Athenian*, Admirals of the *Greek* Navie, at the request of some *Ilanders* and *Ionians*, did sail into those parts, to deliver the *Samiens*, and procure the *Ionians* to revolt from the *Persian*. *Xerxes* himself at this time lay at *Sadus*, a City in *Lidia*, not far from the Sea-side, having left threecore thousand under the command of *Tigranes*, for defence of *Ionis* and the Sea-coast. Therefore when *Artabazus* and *Itramires*, Admirals of the *Persian* fleet, understood that the *Greeks* bent their course towards them, they did forth-with draw their ships aground, fortifying with *Palisades* and otherwise, as much ground as was needfull for the encamping of all their land and sea-forces. *Leutichides* at his arrivall, perceiving that they meant to keep within their strength, & resolving to force them out of it, rowed with his gally close aboard the shore, and called upon the *Ionians* (who more for fear than good will were encamped among the *Persians*) exhorting them in the *Greek* tongue to remember liberty, and use the fair occasion which they now had to recover it. Herein he did imitate *Themistocles*, who had done the like at *Salamis*, trusting that either these persuasions would prevail, or if the *Persians* did happen to understand them, that it would breed some jealousy in them, causing them to fight in fear of their own companions. It need not seem strange, that this

very same stratagem, which little or nothing availed *Themistocles*, did now very happily succeed. For *Xerxes* being in his full strength, it was a matter of much difficulty, to persuade those inhabitants of *Asia* to revolt; who now in his declining estate, gave a willing ear to the sweet sound of liberty. The *Persians* likewise, who in their former bravery, little regarded, and less feared, any treason to be contrived by their subjects, were now so wary, that from the *Samiens* which were amongst them, they took away their arms; the *Milesians* whom they did suspect, but would not seem to mistrust, they placed far from them, as it were for defence of the freight passages of *Mycalé*; pretending that these *Milesians* did best of all others know those places. But these devices little availed them. For the *Samiens* perceiving that they were held as Traitors, took courage in the heat of the fight, and laying hold upon such weapons as came to hand, assailed the *Persians* manfully within the Camp; which examples the *Ionians* presently followed, being very glad to have found some that durst begin. It is said that while the *Greekes* were yet in a march toward the Enemies Camp, a rumour suddenly ranne in the Army, that *Mardonius* was overthrowen in *Greece*, which (though perhaps it was given out by the Captains to encourage the Souldiers) was very true. For the battell of *Plataa* was fought in the morning, and this of *Mycalé* in the evening of the same day.

The like report of that great battell, wherein *Paulus Amilius* overthrowen *Perseus* the last King of *Macedon*, was brought to *Rome* in four dayes, as *Livie* with others do record. And *Plutarch* hath many other examples of this kind. As that of the battell by the River *Sagra* in *Italy*, which was heard of the same day in *Peloponnesus*: That of the battell against the *Tarquiniens* and the *Latines*, presently naoid at *Rome*: And (which is most remarkable) the victory obtained against *Lucius Antonius*, who was Rebel to *Domitian* the Emperour. This *Lucius Antonius* being Lieutenant of the higher *Germanie*, had corrupted his Armie with gifts and promises, drawing the barbarous people to follow him, with great hope to make himself Emperour; which newes much troubling the City of *Rome*, with fear of a dangerous Warre, it was suddenly reported that *Antonius* was slain, and his Armie defeated.

Hereupon many did offer sacrifice to the gods, and shew all manner of publike joy, as in such cases was accustomed. But when better inquiry was made, and the Author of these tydings could not be found, the Emperour *Domitian* betook himself to his journey against the Rebel: and being now with his Armie in march, he received advertisement by Post, of the Victory obtained, and the death of *Antonius*: whereupon remembering the rumour noised before in *Rome*, of the self-same victory, he found that the report and victory were born upon one day, though twenty thousand furlongs (which make above five and twenty hundred miles) a-sunder. It is truly said of *Plutarch*, that this last example gives credit unto many the like. And indeed it were very strange, if among so many rumours, begotten by forgery or mistakings, and fostered by credulous imagination there should not be found (as happens in dreams among many thousand vain and frivolous) a few precisely true. Howbeit wee may find, that God himself doth sometimes use to terrifie those who presume upon their own strength, by these light means of tumultuous noises, as he raised the siege of *Samaría*, by causing a found of Horses and Chariots to affright the *Aramites*; and as he threatened *Senacherib*, saying, *Behold, I will send a blast upon him, and he shall hear a noise, and return to his own land*. Wherefore it may well have been true, that God was pleased by such means as this, to animate the *Greekes*; who (as *Herodotus* notes) went towards the Enemies with heavie hearts, being in great fear, lest their own adventure should by no means fall out well; considering in what danger they had left their own Countrey of *Greece*, which was ready to be subdued by *Mardonius* whilst they went wandring to seek out enemies a-far-off, upon the coast of *Asia*. But the same of the battell fought at *Plataa* being noised among them, every man desired that his own valour in the present fight, might be some help to work out the full deliverance of *Greece*. In this alacrity of spirit, they divided themselves into two Battalions, whereof the *Athenians* led the one, by the way of the plain, directly towards the enemies Camp; the *Lacedaemonians* concluded the other, by the Mountains and freight passages, to winne the higher ground. The *Athenians* did first set upon the Campe (ere the *Lacedaemonians* could arrive on the other part) and being desirous to get all the honour of the day to themselves, did so

forcibly

forcibly assault it, that they brake way through the *Palissadoes* and *Gabions*, and made themselves Masters of the place, slaying all that could not save themselves by flight. In this fight the *Samiens* did good service, as is formerly mentioned.

But the *Milesians*, who upon the like jealousy, were placed by the *Persians* on the tops of *Mycalé*, to defend the passages, did now (as if they had bin set of purpose to keep them from running away) put as many to the sword as fell into their hands, letting none escape, except very few, that fled through by-paths. The *Lacedaemonians* that day did little service, for the business was dispatched ere they came in: Only they broke such companies as retired in whole troops; making them flee dispersed in very much disorder, whereby the *Milesians* were enabled to doe the greater execution upon them. This was the last fight of that huge Army leaved against *Greece*, which was now utterly broken, and had no means left to make offensive Warre.

### §. XI.

Of the barbarous qualities of *Xerxes*: with a transition from the Persian affairs to matters of *Greece*, which from this time grew more worthy of regard.

**X** *Xerxes* lay at *Sardis*, not farre from the place of this battell; but little mind had he to revenge either this or other his great losses, being wholly given over to the love of his Brothers Wife: with whom hee could not prevail by intreaty, nor would obtain his desire by force, because he respected much his Brother her husband: hee thought it best to make a match between his own Son *Darius*, and the Daughter of this Woman; hoping by that means to find occasion of such familiarity as might work out his desire. But whether it were so, that the chastity of the Mother did still reject him, or the beauty of the Daughter allure him, hee soon after fell in love with his own sonnes wife, being a vicious Prince, and as ill able to govern himself in peace, as to guide his Armie in warre. This young Lady having once desired the King to give her the Garment which hee then wore, being wrought by his own Wife; shee caused the Queen thereby to perceive her husbands conversation with her, which shee imputed not so much to the beauty of her Daughter-in-law, as to the cunning of the Mother, against whom thereupon she conceived extreme hatred. Therefore at a Royall feast, wherein the custome was that the King should grant their request, shee crayed that the Wife of *Massites*, her husbands brother, the young Ladies Mother, might be given in to her disposition. The barbarous King, who might either have reformed the abuse of such a custome, or have deluded the importunate cruelty of his Wife, by threatening her self with the like, to whatsoever he should inflict upon the innocent Lady, granted the request; and sending for his brother, persuaded him to put away the Wife which he had, and take one of his Daughters in her stead. Hereby it seems; that he understood how villainously that poor Lady should be intreated, whom hee knew to be vertuous, and whom himself had loved. *Massites* refused to put her away; alleging his own love, her deserving, and their common Children, one of which was married to the Kings Sonne, as reasons important to move him to keep her. But in most wicked manner *Xerxes* reviled him, saying, That hee now should neither keep the Wife which he had, nor have his Daughter whom he had promised unto him. *Massites* was much grieved with these words, but much more, when he returned home, hee found his Wife most butcherly mangled by the Queen *Amestris*, who had caused her Nose, Lips, Ears, and Tongue to be cut off, and her Breasts in like manner, which were cast unto Dogs. *Massites* enraged with this villany, took his way with his children, and some Friends, towards *Bactria*, of which Province he was Governour, intending to rebell and avenge himself: But *Xerxes* understanding his purpose, caused an army to be levied, which cut him off by the way, putting him and all his Company to the sword. Such was the Tyrannicall condition of the Persian Government; and such are generally the effects of Luxury, when it is joyned with absolute power.

Yet of *Xerxes* it is noted, that hee was a Prince of much vertue. And therefore *Alexander* the Great, finding an image of his over-thrown, and lying upon the ground, said, That hee doubted, whether in regard of his vertue, hee should again erect it, or, for the mischief done by him to *Greece*, should let it lye. But surely whatsoever his other



other good qualities were, he was foolish, and was a coward, and consequently mercelless.

Therefore we may firmly believe, that the vertue of *Cyrus* was very great, upon which the foundation of the *Persian* Empire was so surely laid, that all the wickedness and vanities of *Xerxes*, and other worse Princes, could not overthrow it, until it was broken by a vertue almost equal to that which did establish it. In wars against the *Egyptians*, the fortune of *Xerxes* did continue, as at the first it had been, very good; but against the generall estate of *Greece*, neither he, or any of his posterity, did ever make offensive warre, but received many losses in *Asia*, to which the last at *Mycale* served as an introduction; teaching the *Greeks*, and especially the *Athenians*, that the *Persian* was no better Souldier at his own doors, than in a forraign Country: whereof good triall was made forth-with, and much better proof as soon as the affairs of *Athens* were quickly settled and assured.

From this time forward I will therefore pursue the Historie of *Greece*, taking in the matters of *Persia*, as also the estate of other Countries, collaterally, when the order of time shall present them. True it is, that the *Persian* estate continued in her greatness, many ages following, in such wise that the known parts of the world had no other Kingdome, representing the Majesty of a great Empire.

But this greatness depended onely upon the riches and power that had formerly bin acquired, yielding few actions or none that were worthy of remembrance, excepting some Tragedies of the Court, and examples of that excessive Luxury, where-with both it, and all, or the most of Empires that ever were, have been enervated, made unwieldy, and (as it were) fattened for the hungry swords of poor and hardy Enemies. Hereby it came to passe, that *Xerxes* and his successors were faine to defend their Crowns with money and base policies; very seldome or never (unlesse it were with great advantage) daring to adventure the triall of plain battell with that little Nation of *Greece*; which would soon have ruined the foundations laid by *Cyrus*, had not private malice and jealousy urged every City to envie the height of her neighbours wals, and thereby diverted the swords of the *Greeks* into their own bowels, which after the departure of *Xerxes* began very well, and might better have continued, to hew out the way of conquest, on the side of *Asia*.



## CHAP. VII.

*Of things that passed in Greece from the end of the Persian Warre, to the beginning of the Peloponnesian.*

### §. I.

*How Athens was rebuilt and fortified.*



FROM that the *Medes* and *Persians* had received their last blow, and were utterly beaten at *Mycale*: *Leutybides*, who then commanded the *Grecian* Army, leaving the pursuit of the warre to the *Athenians*, assisted by the revolted *Ionians*, returned with the *Lacedamonians* and other *Peloponnesians* to *Sparta* and other places, out of which they had been leaved. The *Athenians* in the mean while besieged *Sessa*, a City on the strait of the *Hellepont*, between which and *Cyprus*, *Xerxes* had lately fastned his Bridge of Boats: where the Inhabitants, desperate of succour, did not long dispute the defence thereof, but quitted it to the *Greeks*, who entertained themselves the Winter following on that side the *Hellepont*. In the Spring they drew homeward, and having left their wives and children, since the invasion of *Attica*, and the abandoning of *Athens*, in divers Islands; and at *Troezen*, they now found them out, and returned with them to their own places.

And though the most part of all their houses in *Athens* were burnt and broken down,

and the walls of the City over-turned, yet they resolved first on their common defence, and to fortifie their City, before they cared to cover themselves, their wives and children, with any private buildings. Whereof the *Lacedamonians* being advertised, and mistaking the fortifying of *Athens*, both in respect that their own City of *Sparta* was unwall'd, as also because the *Athenians* were grown more powerfull by Sea, than either themselves, or any other State of *Greece*, they dispatched messengers to the *Athenians* to dissuade them; not acknowledging any private dislike or jealousy, but pretending, that if the *Persians* should return to invade *Greece* a third time, the *Athenians* being in no better state to defend themselves than heretofore, the same would serve to receive their enemies, and to be made a Seat for the War, as *Thebes* had lately bin. To this the *Athenians* promised to give them satisfaction by their own Embassadors very speedily. But being resolved to goe on with their works by the advice of *Themistocles*, they held the *Lacedamonians* in hope of the contrary, till they had raised their walls to that height, as they cared not for their dislikes, nor doubted their disturbance; and therefore (to gain time) they dispatched *Themistocles* towards *Lacedemon*, giving him for excuse, that he could not deliver the *Athenians* resolutions, till the arrival of his fellow-Commissioners, who were of purpose retarded. But after a while, the *Lacedamonians* expectation being converted into jealousy (for by the arrivall of divers persons out of *Attica*, they were told for certain, That the walls of *Athens* were speedily grown up beyond expectation) *Themistocles* prayed them not to beleve reports and vain rumors, but that they would be pleased to send some of their own trusty Citizens to *Athens*, from whose relation they might resolve themselves, and determine accordingly. Which request being granted, and Commissioners sent, *Themistocles* dispatched one of his own, by whom he advised the *Athenians*, first to entertain the *Lacedamonians* with some such discourse as might retain them a few daies, and in conclusion to hold them among them, till himself, & the other *Athenian* Embassadors, then at *Sparta*, had their liberty also to return. Which done, and being also assured by his associates and *Aristides*, that *Athens* was already defensible on all parts, *Themistocles* demanding audience, made the *Lacedamonians* know, That it was true that the walls of *Athens* were now raised to that height, as the *Athenians* doubted not the defence of their City; praying the *Lacedamonians* to beleve, That whensoever it pleased them to treat with the *Athenians* they would know them for such as right well understood what appertained to a Common-weale and their own safety, without direction & advice from any other: That they had in the war of *Xerxes* abandoned their City, and committed themselves to the wooden Walls of their ships, from the resolution of their own counsels and courage, and not thereto taught or perswaded by others: and finally, in all that perillous war against the *Persians* they found their own judgements and the execution thereof in nothing inferiour, or lesse fortunate, than that of any other Nation, State, or Common-weale among the *Greeks*. And therefore concluded, that they determined to be Masters and Judges of their own affairs, and thought it good reason, that either all the Cities confedered within *Greece* should be left open, or else that the Walls of *Athens* should be finished and maintained.

The *Lacedamonians* finding the time unfit for quarrell, dissembled their dislike, both of the fortifying of *Athens*, and of the division; and so suffered the *Athenians* to depart, and received back from them their own Embassadors.

The Walls of *Athens* finished, they also fortified the Port *Pireus*, by which they might under covert imbarke themselves upon all occasions.

### §. II.

*The beginning of the Athenian greatness, and prosperous war made by that State upon the Persian.*

THE *Athenians* having settled things in good order at home, prepared thirty Gallies for the pursuit of the war against the *Persians*, to which the *Lacedamonians* added other twenty, and with this Fleet, strengthened by the rest of the Cities of *Greece* confederated, they set sail for *Cyprus*, under the conduct of *Pausanias* the *Lacedamonian*, where, after their landing having posselt themselves of many principal places, they imbarked the Army again, and took land in *Thrace*, recovering from

the *Persians* by force the City *Bizantium*, now *Constantinople*: from whence *Pausanias*, behaving himself more like a Tyrant than a Captain, especially towards the *Ionians* lately revolted from *Xerxes*, was called back by the Council of *Lacedæmon*, and not only accused of many insolent behaviours, but of Intelligence with the *Medes*, and Treason against his Country. In his stead they employed *Decres*, who either gave the same cause of offence, or else the *Athenians*, who affected the first commandement in that war, practised the Souldiers to complain; though indeed the wise and virtuous behaviour of *Aristides*, Generall of the *Athenian* forces, a man of rare & incomparable sincerity, had been able to make a good Commander seem ill in comparison of himself; & therefore was much more available, in rendering those detested, whose vices afforded to little matter of excuse. Howsoever it were, the *Lacedæmonians* being no lesse wearied of the war, than the *Athenians* were eager to pursue it, the one obtained their ease, and the other the execution and honour which they desired: for all the *Greeks* (those of *Peloponnesus* excepted) willingly subjected themselves to the commandement of the *Athenians*, which was both the beginning of their greatness in that present age, and of their ruin in the next succeeding. For the charge of the war being now committed unto them, they began to rate the confederated Cities; they appointed Receivers and Treasurers, and began to levie money, according to their discretion, for the maintenance of the generall defence of *Greece*, & for the recovering of those places on *Europe* side, in *Asia* the lesse, and the Islands, from the *Persians*. This tribute (the first that was ever payed by the *Greeks*)<sup>10</sup> amounted to four hundred and threescore Talents; which was raised easily by the honest care of that just man *Aristides*, to whose discretion all the confederates referred themselves, and no one man found occasion to complain of him. But as the virtue of *Aristides*, & other worthy Citizens, brought unto the *Athenians* great commodity; so the desire which they conceived of encreasing their commodity, corrupted their virtue, and robbing them of the generall love, which had made them powerfull, abandoned their City to the defence of her treasure, which with her in the next age perished. For it was not long ere these four hundred and threescore Talents were railed to six hundred, nor long after that, ere their covetous tyranny had covered their followers into slaves, and extorted from them yearly thirteen hundred Talents. The Isle of *Delos* was at<sup>10</sup> the first appointed for the Treasure-house wherein these sums were laid up, and where, at the generall Assembly, the Captains of those forces, sent by the confederates, were for form sake called to consultation. But the *Athenians*, who were stronger by sea than all *Greece* besides, had lockt up the common treasure in an Island, under their own protection, from whence they might transport it at their pleasure, as afterward they did.

The generall Commander in this War was *Cimon*, the son of *Miltiades*, who first took *Eion*, upon the River *Strimon*; then the Isle of *Sciros*, inhabited by the *Dolopes*: they mastered the *Caristii*, and brought into servitude the *Naxii*, contrary to the form of the confederacy: So did the other the inhabitants of *Greece*, if at any time they failed of their contribution, or disobeyed their commandements; taking upon them & usurping a kind of sovereign authority over the rest: which they exercised the more assuredly, because they were now become Lords of the Sea, and could not be resisted. For many of the confederated Cities and Nations, weary of the war in their own persons, and given up altogether to their ease, made choice rather to pay their parts in money, than either in men of war, or in ships; leaving the provision of both to the *Athenians*. Hereby the one grew weak in all their Sea-defences, and in the exercise of the Wars; the other greatly strengthened their Navie and their experiences, being always armed and employed in honorable Services, at the cost of those, who having lifted them into their Saddles, were now enforced to become their footmen. Yet was the Tribute-money, levied upon these their confederates, employed so well by the *Athenians* at the first (as all proceedings are often founded upon good beginnings) that no great cause of repining was given. For they rigged out a great Fleet of Gallies, very well manned, wherewith *Cimon* the Admirall scouring the Asiatic Seas, took in the City of *Phaselis*, which having formerly pretended neutrality, and refused to relieve, or any way assist the *Greeks*, were enforced to pay ten Talents for a fine, and so to become followers of the *Athenians*, paying yearly contribution.

From thence he set sail for the River *Eurymedon* in *Pamphylia*, where the *Persian* Fleet

Fleet rode, being of six hundred sayl, or (according to the most sparing report) three hundred and fifty, and having a great Land-Army, encamped upon the shoar; all which forces having been provided for advancing the Kings affairs in *Greece*, where utterly defeated in one day, and two hundred ships taken by the *Athenians*; the rest being broken to pieces, or sunk, ere ever they had swom in the *Greekish* Seas, *Cimon* having in one day obtained two great victories, the one by Sea, and the other by Land, was very soon presented with a third. For fourscore sayl of *Phenicians* (who were the best of all Sea-men, under the *Persian* command) thinking to have joyned themselves with the Fleet before destroyed, arrived upon the same Coast, ignorant of what had passed, and<sup>10</sup> fearing nothing lesse than what ensued: Upon the first notice of their approach, *Cimon* weighed anchor, and meeting them at an head-land, called *Hydra*, did so amaze them, that they onely fought to run themselves on ground; by which mean preserving few of their men, they lost all their ships. These losses did so break the courage of the *Persian*, that omitting all hope of prevailing upon *Greece*, he condescended to whatsoever Articles it pleased the *Athenians* to propound, granting liberty unto all the *Greeks* inhabiting *Asia*; and further covenanting, That none of his ships of War should sayl to the Westward of the Isles, called *Canea* and *Chelidonia*.

This was the most honourable peace that ever the *Greeks* made; neither did they in effect, after this time, make any war that redounded to the profit or glory of the whole<sup>10</sup> Nation, till such time as under *Alexander*, they overthrew the Empire of *Persia*; in which war, few, or perhaps none of them, had any place of great command, but served altogether under the *Macædonians*.

## §. III.

The death of *Xerxes* by the treason of *Artabanius*.

**B**esides these losses, which could not easily have been repaired, the troubles of the Empire were at this time such, as gave just cause to the *Persian* of seeking peace upon any termes not altogether intolerable. For *Artabanius*, the Uncle of *Xerxes*,<sup>10</sup> perceiving, that the King his Master did easily take small occasions to shed the blood of such, as in kindred or place were near unto him, began to repose lesse hope of a safetie in remaining faithfull, than of obtaining the Sovereignty, by destroying a Prince that was so hated for his cruelty, and despised for his cowardise and misfortunes. Having conceived this Treason, he found means to execute it by *Mithridates* an Eunuch, in such close manner, that (as if he himself had been innocent) he accused *Darius* the son of *Xerxes*, and caused him to suffer death as a Parricide. Whether it be true, that by this great wickednesse hee got the Kingdome, and held it seven moneths; or whether intending the like evill to *Artaxerxes* the son of *Xerxes*, he was by him prevented and surprised, were hard to affirm any certainty. But all Writers agree upon this, That taken<sup>10</sup> hee was; and with his whole family put to death by extreme torments, according to the sentence whereof the truth is more ancient than the Verse;

*Rarus antecedentem scelus sumi*

*Deseruit pede pena claudo.*

Seldome the villain, though much haste he make,  
Lame-footed Vengeance fails to over take.

## §. IV.

The banishment of *Themistocles*: his flight to *Artaxerxes* newly reigning in *Persia*; and his death.

**A**rtaxerxes being established in his Kingdome, and having so compounded with the *Athenians*, as the present necessity of his affairs required, began to conceive new hopes of better fortune against the *Greeks*, than hee or his predecessors had ever hitherto found. For the people of *Athen*, when the *Persians* were chased out of *Greece*, did so highly value their own merits in that service, that they not onely thought it fit for themselves to become the Commanders over many Towns and Islands of the *Greeks*, but even within their own walls, they would admit none other forme of Government than merely *Democratike*. Herein they were so insolent, that no integrity

nor

not good desert was able to preserve the estate of any such as had born great office, longer than by flattering the rascall multitude, he was contented to frame all his words and deeds to their good liking.

This their intolerable demeanour much offended *Themistocles*; who, though in former times he had layed the foundations of his greatness upon popularity, yet now presuming upon his good services done to the State, he thought that with great reason they might grant him the liberty to check their inordinate proceedings. But contrariwise, they were so highly offended with his often rehearsing the benefits which they had received from him, that they laid upon him the punishment of *ostracisme*, whereby hee was banished for ten years, as a man over-burthensome to the Common-wealth.

Before the time of his return was half expired, a new accusation was brought against him by the *Lacedamonians*, who charged him of consulting with *Pausanias*, about betraying the whole Countrey of *Greece* unto *Xerxes*. Hereupon *Themistocles*, finding no place of security against the malice of two such mighty cities, was driven, after many troublesome flights, and dangerous removings, to adventure himself into *Persia*, where he found *Artaxerxes* newly settled, & was by him very honourably entertained. But the great hope which *Artaxerxes* had conceived of advancing his affairs by the counsell and assistance of *Themistocles*, proved altogether fruitlesse. For when the *Athenians*, in favour of *Inarus* the *Zybian*, (who infested *Egypt*, causing it to rebel against the *Persian*) had sent a Fleet to Sea, landing an Army in *Egypt*, and scouring those Eastern Seas, to the manifest breach of that peace, which to their great honour they had concluded with *Xerxes*; then did the King send his Letters to *Themistocles*, requiring him to make good the hopes which he had given, of assuring the *Persian* estate against the *Greeks*.

But whether *Themistocles* perceived much unlikeliness of good successe, in leading a great army of daftardly *Persians* against the warlike people of *Greece*; or else (as in favour of his vertue it is more commonly reported) the love of his Countrey would not permit him to seek honour by the ruine of it, sure it is, that being appointed by *Artaxerxes* to undertake the conduct of great forces against the *Athenians*, he decided the great conflict between thankfulness to his well-deserving Prince, and naturall affection to his own ill-deserving people, by finishing his life with a cup of poyson.

## S. V.

Now the Athenians, breaking the peace, which to their great honour they had made with the Persian, were shamefully beaten in Egypt.

Then was *Artaxerxes* driven to use the service of his own Captains in the *Egyptian* warre, wherein it appeared well, That a just cause is a good defence against a strong enemy. An *Athenian* Fleet of two hundred saile strong was sent forth under *Cimon*, to take-in the Isle of *Cyprus*: which conquest seemed easie both to make and to maintain, the *Persian* being utterly broken at Sea, and thereby unable to relieve the Island. Now although it were so, that a peace had been concluded, which was likely to have been kept sincerely by the *Persian*, who had made so good proofe of the *Gracian* valour, that he was nothing desirous to build any ships of Warre (without which the *Greeks* could receive no harm from him) whereof if any one should be found saying towards *Greece*, the peace was immediately broken, and if not, his whole estate; yet all the Sea-coast (no small part of his Dominions) exposed to the waste of an enemy too far over-marching him. Yet whether the *Athenians* were in doubt, lest the league which in his own worser fortunes he had made with them, he would break in theirs; and therefore sought to get such assurance into their hands, as might utterly disable him from attempting ought against them; or whether the increase of their revenues and power, by adding that rich and great Island to their Empire, caused them to measure honour by profit; they thought it the wisest way, to take whilest they might, whatsoever they were able to get and hold, and he unable to defend.

The Isle of *Cyprus* lying in the bottome of the streights between *Cilicia*, *Syria* and *Egypt*, is very fitly seated for any Prince of State, that being mighty at Sea, doth either seek to enrich himself by trade with those Countreys, or to infest one or more of them

them when they are his enemies. And this being the purpose of the *Athenians*, their Ambition which had already devoured, in conceit, this Island, was on the sudden well-nigh choaked with a greater morsell, to snatch at which they let *Cyprus* alone, which they might easily have swallowed and digested. For *Tharbis* King of the *Zybian*, confining *Egypt*, having found how greatly the Countrey was exhalted by the late Warres, and how weakly defended by very slender *Persian* Garrisons, conceived rightly, that if such small forces as the *Satrapa* or *Viceroy* could make on the sudden of his own Guards, or levie out of the ordinary Garrisons, were by him defeated, the naturalls of the Countrey not long since oppressed by *Cambyses*, and after a revolt very lately subdued by *Xerxes*, would soon break faith with him, who had no other due to that Kingdome than a good sword. Further, he perswaded himself that the people, unable to defend themselves against the *Persian* without his assistance, would easily be drawn to accept him, the author of their deliverance, for King. Neither did this hope deceive him. For having taken and cruelly slain *Achamenes* the *Viceroy*, and Cities forthwith declared themselves for him, and proclaiming him King, they set at the most of their endeavour for prosecution of the Warre. But he considering his own weakness, and that the means of the *Egyptians* his adherents were not unwearyable to their desires, perceived well, that to reuint the power of *Artaxerxes*, farre greater forces than his and theirs were to be procured, at what price soever hee obtained them. Therefore hearing of the great *Athenian* fleet, and knowing well the vertue of the Souldiers therein embarked; he invited the Commanders to share with him the Kingdome of *Egypt*, as a farre greater reward of their adventures than such an addition as that of *Cyprus* could be to their estate. Whether he or they (if things had wholly sorted according to their expectation) would have been contented with an equall share, and not have fallen out in the partition, were perhaps a divination; unnecessary. He was possessed of the peoples love, they were of most power. But the issue of those affairs was such as left them nothing to communicate but misfortunes, which they shared somewhat equally.

Yet had the beginnings of their enterprise very good and hopeful successe. For they counted the Land as farre as to *Memphis*, the principall Citie, and of the Citie it self they took two parts: to the third part, which was called the White wall, they laid such hard siege, that neither those forces of the *Persians*, which then were in *Egypt*, were strong enough to remove them; neither could *Artaxerxes* well advise what means to use for the recovery of that which was lost, or for the preservation of the remainder. The best of his hope was by setting the *Lacedamonians* upon *Athen*, to enforce the *Athenians* to look homewards to their own defence. This was the first time that the *Persian* sought to procure the assistance of the *Greeks* one against the other, by stirring them up with gold, to the entertainment of private quarrels, for the good of their common enemy. To this purpose he sent *Megabazus* to *Sparta* with much Treasure; who after great expence, finding that the *Lacedamonians* were nothing forward in employing their whole force against the *Athenians*; whom in many consistings of great importance they had found to be their marches; notwithstanding the absence of their Army in *Egypt*; he thought it his wisest way to employ the rest of his money and means to their relief, who had now the space of six years defended his matters tight in *Egypt*. Therefore he hastily dispatched another of his name, the son of *Zopyrus*, who arriving in *Egypt*, was first encountered by the revolted people; over whom hee obtained victory; which made him master of the Countrey, whilest the *Athenians* lay busied about *Memphis* the great Citie.

It cannot be doubted, that long abode in a strange ayre, and want of supply, had much enfeebled the *Athenians*: sure it is, that when *Megabazus*, having reduced the Countrey to obedience, attempted the Citie it self, whether his former successe had amended the courage of the *Persians*, or want of necessities made the *Athenians* industrious to themselves, he chased them out of *Memphis*, and pursued them so neer, as they were forced to fortifie themselves in the Isle of *Prosopites*, where *Megabazus*, after eighteen months siege, turning away one part of the River by divers Trenches, assaulted the *Athenians* without impediment of waters, took their Gallies, and put all to the sword, save a few that saved themselves by flight into *Zybia*; the same evening had fiftie other Gallies which they sent to the succour of the first two hundred

*Prosopites* an Island between the rivers of *Taly* and *Phrygians*, two of the out-lets of *Nilus* towards *Alexandria*.

*Medinpolis* an Island in the mouth of *Nilus*, between the out-let called *Bulphitis*, and *Dielcos*: But the branch of *Nilus*, called *Mendesum* runneth into the sea by the City *Panephysis*.

hundred. For those *Athenians* having heard nothing that their Fleet and Armie was consumed, entred by the branch of *Nilus*, called *Mendesum*, and fell unawares among the *Phenician* Gallies, and the *Persian* Armie; so as the *Persians* recovered all *Egypt*, but that part held by *Amyrteus*, and *Inarus* the King of *Lybia*, being by them taken and hanged. This was the end of the *Athenians* six years Warre in *Egypt*, and the reward of their vanity and indiscretion to undertake many enterprises at once.

§. V.

Of other Warres made by the *Athenians* for the most part with good successe, about the same time.

Notwithstanding these overthrowes in *Egypt*, yet the *Athenians* in their homewarres waded through many difficulties, and held the reputation of their forces against the *Lacedemonians*, *Corinthians*, and others, rather to their advantage than otherwise. For as they were beaten neer unto *Halia* by the *Corinthians* and *Epidaurians*, so they obtained two great Victories soon after; the one over the *Peloponnesians*, neer unto *Cecryphalia*; the other over the *Aeginets*, neer unto *Agina*; where they sunk and carried away threefore and ten Gallies of their enemies. Furthermore, they landed their forces on the sudden, and besieged *Agina*, from whence they could not be moved, notwithstanding that the *Corinthians*, who divert them, invaded *Megara*; where, after a great fight, with equal losse, the *Corinthians*, when they returned again to set up their *Trophia*, as Victors in the former battell, were utterly broken and slaughtered by the *Athenian* Garrisons and *Megarians*, to their great losse and dishonour.

Again, as the *Athenians* were discomfited neer to *Tangra*, by the *Lacedemonians*, who returned from the succour of the *Dorians* against the *Phocians* (at which time the *Thessalian* horse-men turned from their Allies the *Athenians*, and fought against them) so about threefore daies after, the *Athenians* entred *Bootia* under the conduct of *Myrtilides*, where beating that Nation, they won *Phocis* on the gulfes of *Oetoeus*, and evened the walls of *Tanagra* to the ground. Finally, they enforced *Agina* to render upon most hable conditions; as to beat down the walls of their City, and to give them hostages for Tribute; the siege whereof they had continued, notwithstanding all their other brabbles and attempts elsewhere. Besides these victories, they sackt and spoiled many places upon the Sea-coast of *Peloponnesus*, belonging to the *Lacedemonians*, wan upon the *Corinthians*, and overthrowed the *Sicyonians* that came to their succour. These were the undertakings of the *Athenians*, and their Allies, during the time of those six years that a part of their forces made war in *Egypt*. In the end whereof they attempted *Thessalie*, periwaded thereunto by *Orestes*, but were resisted by the king *Pharsalus*, who had chased *Orestes* out of his Dominions. They also landed in *Sicyonia*, and had victory over those that resisted, after which they made truce with the *Peloponnesians* for five years, and sent *Cimon* into *Cyprus* with two hundred ships; but they were again allured by *Amyrteus* one of the race of their former Kings, who held the Marsh and Wooddy parts of *Egypt* from the *Persians*, to whom they sent sixty of their ships. The rest of their Armie failing in their enterprize at *Cyprus*, and their fortunate and victorious Leader *Cimon* dying there, as they coasted the Island, incountred a fleet of the *Phenicians* and *Cilicians*, over both which Nations they returned victorious into *Greece*: as also those returned safe which were sent into *Egypt*.

§. VI.

Of Artaxerxes Longimanus, that he was Ahashuerosh the husband of Queen Hester.

These *Egyptian* troubles being ended, the reign of *Artaxerxes* continued peaceable; whereof the length is by some restrained unto twenty years, but the more and better Authors give him forty, some allow unto him four and forty.

He was a Prince of much humanity, and noted for many examples of gentleness. His favour was exceeding great to the *Jews*; as appeareth by the Historics of *Esdras* and *Nehemias*, which fell in his time.

To prove that this was the King who gave countenance and ayd to that great work of building the Temple, it were a needlesse travell, considering that all the late Divines have taken very much pains to shew that those two Prophets were licensed by him, and favoured in that building, in such sort as appears in their writings.

This was likewise that King *Ahashuerosh* who married *Hester*. Whereof if it be needfull to give proof, it may suffice, That *Ahashuerosh* lived in *Susa*, reigning from *India* to *Aethiopia*, and therefore must have been a *Persian*; That he lived in peace, as appears by the circumstances of the Historie, and used the counsell of the seven Princes, the authority of which Princes began under *Darius* the son of *Hystaspes*; wherefore he could be neither *Cyrus* nor *Cambyses*.

The continuall Wars which exercised King *Darius* the Son of *Hystaspes*, together with the certainty of his marriages with sundry wives, from none of whom he was divorced, but left his first wife *Arosh*, the daughter of *Cyrus*, alive in great honour, the being mother to *Xerxes* the succeeding King, do manifestly prove that *Hester* was not his. Whereunto is added by *Philo* the *Jew*, That at the perswasion of *Mardochaius*, *Jochachim* the high Priest the son of *Jesua*, caused the feast of *Purim* to be instituted in memory of that deliverance. Now the time of *Jochachim* was in the reign of *Artaxerxes*, at the coming of *Esdras* and *Nehemias*: *Jesua* his father dying about the end of *Darius*.

The same continuance of wars, with other his furious and tragicall loves wherewith *Xerxes* did consume such little time as he had free from war, are enough to prove, that the story of *Hester* pertained not unto the time of *Xerxes*, who lived but one and twenty years, whereas the two and thirtieth of *Ahashuerus* or *Ariafastha* is expressed by *Nehemias*. Again, it is well known that *Xerxes* in the seventh year of his reign (wherein this marriage must have bin celebrated) came not neer to *Susa*. Of the Princes that succeeded *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, to prove that none of them could be *Ahashuerosh*, it is enough to say, that *Mardochaius* having been carried from *Hierusalem* captive, with *Jechania*, by *Itabuchadnezzar*, was unlikely to have lived untill their times.

But of this *Artaxerxes* it is true, that he lived in *Susa*, reigned from *India* to *Aethiopia*, lived in peace, was contemporary with *Jochachim* the high Priest, and further he had happily by his Lieutenants reclaimed the rebellious *Egyptians* in that seventh year of his reign; which good fortune might well give occasion to such a Royall Feast, as is described in the beginning of *Hester*. This is the sum of the arguments, brought to prove the age of *Hester* storie by the learned and diligent *Krentzhemius*, who adds the authorities of *Josephus*, affirming the same, and of *Philo* giving to *Mardochaius* eighteen years more than *Isaac* the Patriarch lived; namely, one hundred fourscore and eighteen years in all, which expire in the five and thirtieth year of this *Artaxerxes*, if we suppose him to have been carried away captive, being a Boy of ten years old.

§. VIII.

Of the troubles in Greece, foregoing the Peloponnesian War.

But it is fit that we now return to the affairs of the *Greeks*, who from this time forward, more vehemently prosecuting their civil wars, suffered the *Persians* for many ages to rest in peace: this *Egyptian* expedition being come to nought. Soon after this, the *Lacedemonians* undertook the war called *Sacred*, recovered the Temple and Ile of *Delphos*, and delivered both to the inhabitants; but the *Athenians* regained the same, and gave it in charge to the *Phocians*. In the mean while the banished *Boeotians* re-entred their own Land, and mastered two of their own Towns posselt by the *Athenians*, which they soon recovered again from them; but in their return towards *Athens*, the *Boeotians*, *Euboeans*, and *Locrians*, (Nations oppressd by the *Athenians*) set upon them with such resolution, as the *Athenians* were in that fight all slain of taken,

taken, whereby the *Bæotians* recovered their former liberty, restoring to the *Athenians* their prisoners. The Ilanders of *Eubæa* took such courage upon this, that they revolted wholly from the *Athenians*, whom when *Pericles* intended to reconquer, he was advertised that the *Megarians* (who first left the *Lacedæmonians*, and submitted themselves to *Athens*) being now weary of their yoke, had slain the *Athenians* Garrison, and joined themselves with the *Corinthians*, *Sicyonians*, and *Epidaurians*. These news hastened *Pericles* homeward with all possible speed; but ere he could recover *Attica*, the *Peloponnesians*, led by *Plistonax* the son of *Panlanius*, had invaded it, pillaged and burnt many parts thereof, after whose return *Pericles* went on with his first intent, and recovered *Eubæa*. Finally, the *Athenians* began to treat of peace with the *Peloponnesians*, and yielded to deliver up all the places which they held in the Country of *Peloponnesus*: and this truce was made for thirty years.

After six of these years were expired, the *Athenians* (favouring the *Mylefians* against the *Samians*) invaded *Samos* by *Pericles*, and after many repulses, and some great losses, both by Sea and Land, the Citizens were forced to yield themselves upon most lamentable conditions; Namely, to deliver up all their ships, to break down their own walls, to pay the charge of the war, and to restore whatsoever had been taken by themselves, or by their practice from the *Athenians*. In the neck of which followed that long and cruel *Peloponnesian War*, whereof I have gathered this brief following: the same contention taking beginning fiftie years after the flight of *Xerxes* out of *Greece*. But because there was no Citie thereof, which either in the beginning of this war, or in the continuance of it, was not drawn into the quarrell; I hold it convenient now at the first to shew briefly the estate of the Country at that time, and especially the condition of those two great Cities, *Athens* and *Sparta*, upon which all the rest had most dependance.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of the Peloponnesian War.

## §. I.

Upon what terms the two principal Cities of Greece, Athens and Sparta, stood at the beginning of the Peloponnesian War.



*Greece* was never united under the government of any one Prince or Estate, untill *Philip* of *Macedon*, and after him *Alexander*, brought them rather to a Union and League against the *Persians*, whereof they were Captains, than into any absolute subjection. For every Estate held their own, and were governed by Laws, far different, and by their own Magistrates, notwithstanding the power of the *Macedonians*, to whom they did yield obedience no otherwise than as to such, who were (perforce) their leaders in the *Persian war* (deemed the Generall quarrel of *Greece*) and took the profit and honour of the victory, to their own use and increase of greatness. But the Kings which afterward reigned in *Macedonia*,

did so far enlarge their authority, that all *Greece* was by them brought under such obedience, as differed little from servitude; very few excepted, who could hardly, sometimes with arms, and sometimes with gifts, preserve their liberty; of whom the *Lacedæmonians* and *Athenians* were chief: which two people deserved best the plague of tyranny, having first given occasion thereunto by their great ambition, which wearied and weakened all the Country by perpetual War. For untill these two Cities of *Athens* and *Sparta* distracted all *Greece*, drawing every State into the quarrell, on the one or other side, and to gave beginning to the *Peloponnesian War* (the effects whereof in true estimation ceased not, before the time that *Philip* had over-mastered all; forasmuch as every

conclusion

conclusion of one war afforded henceforth matter of some new distraction of the whole Country; the wars, commenced between one Citie of *Greece* and another, were neither great, nor of long continuance. All controversies were soon decided, either by the authority of the *Amphictiones*, who were the generall Councill of *Greece*, or by the power of the *Lacedæmonians*, whose aid was commonly held as good as the assurance of victory.

These *Lacedæmonians* had lived about four hundred years under one forme of Government, when the *Peloponnesian War* began. Their education was only to practise feats of Arms; wherein they so excelled, that a very few of them were thought equal to very great numbers of any other people. They were poor, and cared not much for wealth; every one had an equal portion of the common field, which sufficed to maintain him in such manner as they used. For bravery they had none, and curious building or apparel they regarded not. Their diet was simple, their feasts and ordinary meals being in common Halls, where all fared alike. They used money of yron, whereof they could not be covetous nor great hoarders. Briefly, they lived *Utopian*-like, save that they used no other occupation than War, placing all their felicity in the glory of their valour. Herby it came to passe that in all enterprises, whereof they were partakers, the leading and high command was granted to them, and all *Greece* followed their conduct. But the *Athenians* were in all points contrary to this. For they sought wealth, and measured the honours of their victories by the profits, they used mercenary Souldiers in their wars, and exacted great tribute of their Subjects, which were for the most part Ilanders, compelled to obey them, because the *Athenian* fleet was great.

As in form of policy, and in course of life, so in conditions naturall, the difference between these two people was very much. The *Athenians* were eager and violent, sudden in their conclusions, and as hasty in the execution. The *Lacedæmonians* very slow in their deliberations, full of gravity, but very resolute, and such as would in cold blood perform what the *Athenians* did usually in flagrant. Whereby it came to passe, that the *Lacedæmonians* had all the Estates of *Greece* depending upon them, as on men firm and assured, that sought honour and not riches; whereas the *Athenians* were followed by such as obeyed them perforce, being held in streight subjection. But the Signory of the *Athenians* was nothing large, untill such time as the *Persian Xerxes* had invaded *Greece*, pretending only a quarrell to *Athens*: For then the Citizens perceiving well, that the Town of *Athens* could not be defended against his great Army of seventeen hundred thousand men, bestowed all their wealth upon a Navie, and (assisted by the other *Grecians*) overthrew the fleet of *Xerxes*, whose Land-forces were soon after discomfited by them, and the *Greeks*, who all served under conduct of the *Spartans*. After these victories, the *Athenians* being now very mighty in fleet, reduced all the Ilands of the *Greekish* Seas under their obedience; imposing upon them a hard tribute for maintenance (as they pretended) of War against the *Persians*; though indeed they employed their forces chiefly, to the conquest of such Ilands and haven-Towns of their Country-men, as stood out against them. All which was easily suffered by the *Lacedæmonians*, who were In-landers, and men that delighted not in expeditions to be made far from home. But afterwards perceiving the power of the *Athenians* to grow great, they held them in much jealousy, and were very apt to quarrell with them; but much more willing to breed contention between them and other Estates. Wherefore at such time as the *Thebans* would have oppressed the *Plataeans*, when they of *Plataea* repaired to *Sparta* for succour, they found there no other aid, than this advice, That they should seek help at *Athens*. Herby it was thought, that the *Athenians* should be intrangled in a long and tedious War with their neighbours of *Thebes*. But it proved otherwise; for their force was now so great, that all such occasions did only serve to increase their honour and puissance.

## §. II.

## How Sparta and Athens entred into Warre.

Neverthelesse many Estates of *Greece* were very ill-affected to *Athens*, because that Citie grew very insolent upon sudden prosperitie, and maintaining the weaker Towns against the stronger, inchoated apace upon their Neighbours, taking their

their dependants from them. Especially the *Corinthians* were much enraged, because the people of the Iland *Corcyra*, their Colonie which had rebelled against them, and given them a great overthrow by Sea, was by the *Athenians* (who desired to increase their fleet by adjoining that of *Corcyra* unto it) taken into protection, and the *Corinthians* thereby impeached of that revenge which else they would have taken. Now howsoever it were so that these dealings of the *Athenians* were not directly against the conditions of peace agreed upon among the *Greeks*, yet were the complaints made at *Sparta* so vehement, that (though with much ado) they concluded to redresse by war the injuries done to their Allies.

First therefore, seeking religious pretences, they required the *Athenians* to expiate certain offences committed against the gods; whereto having for answer, That they themselves should expiate other the like offences, committed in *Sparta*, they began to deal plainly, and required that the people of some Towns, oppressed by the State of *Athens*, should be set at liberty; and that a decree made against those of *Megara*, whereby they were forbidden to enter any Port of the *Athenians*, should be reversed. This last point they so earnestly presse, that if they might obtain it, they promised to abstain from their purpose of making War.

This they desired, not as a matter of any great importance (for it was a trifle) but only that by seeming to have obtained somewhat, they might preserve their reputation without entering into a war, which threatened them with greater difficulties apparent, than they were very willing to undergoe.

But the *Athenians* would yeeld to nothing; for it was their whole desire that all *Greece* should take notice how farre they were from fear of any other Citie. Hereupon they prepared on both sides very strongly, all that was needfull to the War; wherein the *Lacedemonians* were Superiour, both in number and quality, being assisted by most of the Cities in *Greece*, and having the generall favour, as men that pretended to set at liberty such as were oppressed: but the *Athenians* did as far exceed them in all provisions of money, shipping, engines, and absolute power of command among their Subjects; which they held, and afterward found of greater use in such need, than the willing readinesse of friends, who soon grow weary, and are not easily assembled.

## S. III.

## The beginning of the Peloponnesian Warre.

THE first and second years expedition was very grievous to the Citie of *Athens*. For the Fields were wasted, the Trees cut down, the Countrey people driven to flye, with Wives, Children, and Cattell, into the Town; whereby a most furious pestilence grew in the City, such as before they had never felt, nor heard of. Hereunto was added the revolt of the *Mysitians*, in the Ile of *Lesbos*, and the siege of *Plataea* their confederated City; which they durst not adventure to raise; besides some small overthrows received. The *Lacedemonians* assembling as great forces as they could raise out of *Peloponnesus*, did in the beginning of Summer enter the Countrey of *Attica*, and therein abide, untill victuals began to fail, wasting and destroying all things round about. The Governours of the *Athenians* would not suffer the people to issue into the field against them; for they knew the valour of their enemies: but used to send a fleet into *Peloponnesus*, which wasted as fast all the Sea-coast of their enemies, whilst they were making war in *Attica*. So the *Peloponnesians* being the stronger by Land, wanted the Town of *Plataea*, which wanted rescue; the *Athenians* likewise being more mighty by Sea, did subdue *Mysilene* which had rebelled, but could not be succoured from *Sparta*. By these proceedings in that Warre, the *Lacedemonians* began to perceive how unfit they were to deal with such enemies. For after that *Attica* was thoroughly wasted, it lay not greatly in their power to doe any offence equall to such harm as they themselves might, and did receive. The Confederates began to set forward very slowly in their expeditions into *Attica*; perceiving well that *Athens* was plentifully relieved with all necessaries, which came by the Sea from the Ilands that were subject unto that Estate; and therefore these invaders took but small pleasure in beholding the Walls of that mighty City, or in wasting a forsaken field, which was to them a pattern of the calamities with which their own Territorie was the while afflicted. Wherefore they began

began to set their care to build a strong Navie, wherein they had little good success, being easily vanquished by the *Athenians*, who both had more and better ships, and were fittest in Sea-fights, that a few Vessels of theirs durst undertake a great number of the *Peloponnesians*.

## S. III.

## Of the great losse which the Spartans received at Pylus.

AMONG other losses which the *Spartans* had felt by Sea, they received at *Pylus* a very sore blow, that compelled them to sue for peace. A fleet of *Athenian* ships bound for *Corcyra*, wasting in that passage, as their manner was, the coast of *Laconia*, and all the half-Ile of *Peloponnesus*, was by contrary windes detained at *Pylus*, which is a ragged Promontory, joyning to the Main, by a strange neck of Land. Before it there lies a small barren Iland of lesse than two miles compasse, and within that a creek, which is a good harbour for ships, the force of weather being born off by the head-Land and Isle. This Promontorie the *Athenians* fortified as well as in haste they might; and what was wanting in their artificial fortification, was supplied by the natural strength and site of the place. By holding this piece of ground; and haven, they in reason expected many advantages against their enemies. For the Countrey adjoining was inhabited by the *Messinians*, who in ancient times had held very strong and cruell warre with *Sparta*; and (though quite subdued) they were held in streight subjection; yet was not the old hatred so extinguished, that by the neer neighbourhood and assistance of the *Athenians*, it might not be revived. Furthermore it was thought, that many ill-willers to the *Lacedemonians*, and as many of their bond-slaves as could escape from them, would repair to *Pylus*, and from thence make daily incursions into *Laconia*; which was not far off: Or if other hopes failed, yet would the benefit of this haven, lying almost in the mid-way between them and *Corcyra*, make them able to furround all *Peloponnesus*, and waste it at their pleasure. The newes of these doings at *Pylus* drew the *Peloponnesians* thither in all haste out of *Attica*, which they had entered, a few dayes before with their whole Army: but now they brought not only their Land-forces, but all their Navie to recover this piece, which how bad a neighbour it might prove in time, they well for saw, little fearing the grievous losse at hand, which they there in few daies received. For when they in vain made a generall assault on all sides, both by Sea and Land, finding that small Garrison which the *Athenians* had left, very resolute in the defence, they occupied the haven, placing four hundred and twenty choyce men, all of them Citizens of *Sparta*, in the Iland before mentioned, at each end whereof is a channell that leads into the Port; but so narrow, that onely two ships in front could enter between the Ile and *Pylus*; likewise but seven or eight ships could enter at once by the further channell, between the Iland and the Main. Having thus taken order to shut up this new Town by Sea, they sent part of their fleet to fetch wood; and other stuffe, wherewith to fortifie round about, and block up the piece on all sides. But in the mean season the *Athenian* fleet hearing of their danger that were left at *Pylus*, returned thither, and with great courage entering the haven, did break and sink many of their enemies vessels; took five, and so enforced the residue to run themselves a-ground.

Now was the Town secure, and the *Spartans* abiding in the Iland as good as lost. Wherefore the Magistrats were sent from *Sparta* to the camp (as was their custome in great dangers) to advise what were best for the publike safety; who when they did perceive that there was no other way to rescue their Citizens out of the Ile, than by composition with their enemies; they agreed to entreat with the *Athenians* about peace, taking truce in the mean while with the Captains at *Pylus*. The conditions of the truce were, That the *Lacedemonians* should deliver up all the ships which were in the coast, and that they should attempt nothing against the town, nor the *Athenians* against the camp: That a certain quantitie of Bread, Wine, and Fleish, should be daily carried into the Ile, but thence no ships should passe into the Iland secretly: That the *Athenians* should carry the *Lacedemonian* Embassadors to *Athens*, there to treat of peace, and should bring them back, at whose return the truce should end, which if in the mean time it were broken in any one point, should be held utterly voyd in all; That when the truce was expired, the

*Athenians*



*Athenians* should restore the *Peloponnesian* ships, in as good case as they received them. The *Embassadors* coming to *Athens*, were of opinion, that as they themselves had begun the warre, so might they end it when they pleased. Wherefore they told the *Athenians* how great an honour it was that the *Lacedæmonians* did sue to them for peace, advising them to make an end of War, whilst with such reputation they might. But they found all contrary to their expectation: For in stead of concluding upon even termes, or desiring of meet recompence for losse sustained, the *Athenians* demanded certain Cities to be restored to them, which had bin taken from them by the *Lacedæmonians* long before this warre began, refusing likewise to continuë the treaty of peace, unlessse the *Spartans* which were in the Isle, were first rendred unto them as prisoners. Thus were the *Embassadors* returned without effect; at which time the truce being ended, it was desired from the *Athenian* Captains, that they should, according to their Covenant, restore the ships which had been put into their hands. Whereto answer was made, that the condition of the truce was, that if any one article were broken, all should be held void; now (said the *Athenians*) ye have assaulted our Garrisons, and thereby are we acquitted of our promise to restore the ships. This and the like frivolous allegations which they made, were but meer shifts; yet profit so far overweighed honour, that better answer none could be got. Then were the *Lacedæmonians* driven to use many hard means, for conveyance of victuals into the Isle, which finally was taken by force, and the men that were in it carried prisoners to *Athens*, where it was decreed that when the *Peloponnesians* next invaded *Attica*, these prisoners should all be slain. Whether fearing the death of these men, or with-held by the troubles, which (according to the *Athenians* hope) fell upon them, the *Lacedæmonians* were so far from wasting *Attica*, that they suffered their own Country to be continually over-run, both by the *Athenians*, who landed on all parts of their coast, and by those which issued out of *Pylus*; which became the Readevous of all that were ill-affected unto them.

## §. V.

How the *Lacedæmonians* hardly, and to their great disadvantage, obtained a peace that was not well kept.

Therefore they endeavoured greatly to obtain peace, which the *Athenians* would not hearken unto. For they were so puffed up with continuance of good success, that having sent a few bands of men into *Sicilie*, to hold up a faction there, and make what profit they might of the *Sicilians* quarrels; when afterward they heard that the differences in that Isle were taken away, and their bands returned without either gain or losse, they banished the Captains, as if it had been merely through their default, that the Ile of *Sicilie* was not conquered; which (besides the longer distance) was in power to offend others, or defend it self, no whit inferiour unto *Peloponnesus*. Yet was this their over-weening much abated shortly after, by some disasters received, especially in *Thrace*, where in a battell which they lost at *Amphipolis*, *Cleon* and *Brasidas*, Generals of the *Athenian* and *Lacedæmonian* forces, were both slain; which two had most bin adversaries to the peace. As the *Athenians* by their losses were taught moderation; so the *Lacedæmonians*, who not only felt the like wounds, but through the great Navy which they had received at *Pylus*, were faine to proceed lamely in the war, against such as, through commodiousness of their good fleet, had all advantage that could be found in expedition, were fervently desirous to conclude the business, ere Fortune by any new favour should revive the insolence, which was at this time well mortified in their Enemies. Neither was it only a consideration of their present estate, that urged them to bring the treaty of peace to a good and speedy effect; but other dangers hanging over their heads, and ready to fall on them, which unlessse they compounded with the *Athenians*, they knew not how to avoid. The estate of *Argos*, which had antient enmity with them, was now after a truce of thirty years well-nigh expired, ready to take the benefit of their present troubles, by joyning with those who alone found them work enough. *Argos* was a rich and strong Citie, which though inferiour to *Sparta* in valour, yet was not so unwarlike, nor held such ill correspondence with the neighbouring Estates, that the *Lacedæmonians* could ever farre prevail upon it, when they had little else to do.

This

This was a thing that in the beginning of this War had not been regarded. For it was then thought that by wasting the Territory of *Athens* with sword and fire, the quarrell should easily and in short time have been ended, whereby not only the *Athenians* should have bin brought to good order, but the *Corinthians*, and others, for whose sake the war was undertaken, have bin so firmly knit to the *Lacedæmonians*, that they should for love of them have abandoned the *Argives* to their own fortunes. But now the vanity of those hopes appeared, in that the *Athenians* abounding in ready money, & means to raise more, were able to secure themselves by a strong fleet, from any great harme that the *Peloponnesians*, wanting wherewith to maintain a Navy, could doe unto them; yea, as Masters of the Sea, to weary them out, as in effect already they had done. As for the Confederates of *Sparta*, they could now endure neither war nor peace; their daily travels, and many losses had so wearied and incensed them. Wherefore the *Lacedæmonians* were glad to use the occasion, which the inclination of their enemies did then afford, of making a small peace, which with much adoë they procured, as seemed equall and easie; but was indeed impossible to be performed, and therefore all their travell was little effectuall.

The restitution of prisoners and places taken being agreed upon, it fell out by lot, that the *Lacedæmonians* should restore first. These had won more Towns upon the continent from the *Athenians*, than the *Athenians* had from them; but what they had won, they had not won absolutely. For they had restored some Towns to such of their Allies, from whom the State of *Athens* had taken them, some, and those the most, they had set at liberty (as reason required) which had opened their gates unto them as to their friends and deliverers, and not compelled them to break in as enemies. Now concerning the Towns which were not in their own hands, but had bin rendred unto their Confederates, the *Spartans* found means to give some satisfaction, by permitting the *Athenians* to retain others, which they had gotten in the War; as for the rest, they promised more than afterwards they could performe. The Cities which they had taken into protection, could not endure to hear of being abandoned, neither would they by any means yeeld themselves into the hands of their old Lords the *Athenians*, whom they had offended by revolting, notwithstanding whatsoever articles were drawn, and concluded, for their security, and betterance in time to come. This dull performance of conditions on the side of the *Spartans*, made the *Athenians* become as backward in doing those things which on their part were required; so that restoring only the prisoners which they had, they deferred the rest, untill such time as they might receive the full satisfaction, according to the agreement. But before such time as these difficulties brake out into matter of open quarrell, the *Lacedæmonians* entred into a more streight alliance with the *Athenians*, making a league offensive and defensive with them. Hereunto they were moved by the backwardness of the *Argives*, who being (as they thought) likely to have sued for peace at their hands, as soon as things were once compounded between *Athens* and *Sparta*, did shew themselves plainly unwilling to give eare to any such motion. Thinking therefore, that by cutting from *Argos* all hope of *Athenian* succour, they should make sure work, the *Spartans* regarded not the affections of other States, whom they had either bound unto them by well-deserving in the late war, or found so troublesome, that their enmity (if perhaps they durst let it appear) was little worse than friendship. It bred great jealousie in all the Cities of *Greece*, to perceive such a conjunction between two so powerful Signiories: especially one clause threatening every one, that was any thing apt to fear, with a secret intent that might be harboured in their proud conceits, of subduing the whole Country, and taking each what they could lay hold on. For besides the other articles, it was agreed, That they might by mutual consent adde new conditions, or alter the old at their own pleasures. This impression wrought so strongly in the *Corinthians*, *Thebans*, and other ancient Confederates of *Sparta*, that the hate which they had born to the *Athenians* their professed enemies, was violently thrown upon the *Lacedæmonians* their unjust friends: whereby it came to passe, that they who lately had borne chief sway in *Greece*, might have been abandoned to the discretion of their enemies; as already in effect they were, had the enemies wisely used the advantage.

§. VI.

## S. VI.

*Of the negotiations and practices held between many States of Greece, by occasion of the Peace that was concluded.*

**T**He admiration wherein all Greece held the valour of *Sparta* as irresistible, and able to make way through all impediments, had bin so excessive, that when by some sinister accidents, that Citie was compelled to take and seek peace, upon terms not finding very honourable, this common opinion was not only abated, but (as happens usually in things extreme) was changed into much contempt. For it was never thought that any *Lacedæmonian* would have endured to lay down his weapons, and yeeld himself prisoner, nor that any misfortune should have bin so great, as should have drawn that Citie to relieve it self otherwise than by force of Armes. But when once it had appeared that many of their Citizens, among whom were some of especial mark, being overlaid by enemies, in the Island before *Pylus*, had rather chosen to live in captivity, than to die in fight; and that *Pylus* it self, sticking as a thorne in the foot of *Laconia*, had bred such anguish in that Estate, as utterly wearying the accustomed *Spartan* resolution, had made it sit down, and seek to refresh it self by dishonourable ease: then did not only the *Corinthians* and *Thebans* begin to conceive basely of those men which were vertuous, though unfortunate; but other lesse Cities joyning with these in the same opinion, did cast their eyes upon the rich and great Citie of *Argos*, of whose ability to doe much, they conceived a strong belief, because of long time it had done nothing. Such is the base condition, which through foolish envie is become almost naturall in the greater part of mankind. We curiously search into their vices, in whom, had they kept some distance, we should have discerned only the vertues; and comparing injuriously our best parts with their worst, are justly plagued with a false opinion of the good in strangers, which we know to be wanting in our selves.

The first that published their dislike of *Sparta* were the *Corinthians*, at whose vehement entreaty (though moved rather by envie at the greatness of *Athens* daily encreasing) the *Lacedæmonians* had entered into the present War. But these *Corinthians* did only murmur at the peace, alleging as grievances, that some towns of theirs were left in the *Athenians* hands. The *Maninæans*, who during the time of War, had procured some part of the *Arcadians* to become their followers, and forsake their dependancy upon the State of *Sparta*, did more freely and readily discover themselves; fear of revenge to come, working more effectually than indignation at things already past. The *Argives* feeling the gale of prosperous fortune that began to fill their sails, prepared themselves to take as much of it as they could stand under; giving for that purpose unto twelve of their Citizens a full and absolute commission to make alliance between them and any free Cities of Greece (*Athens* & *Sparta* excepted) without any further trouble of propounding every particular businesse to the multitude. When the gates of *Argos* were let thus open to all comers; the *Maninæans* began to lead the way, and many Cities of *Peloponnesus* following them, entered into this new confederacy; some incited by private respects, others thinking it the wisest way to doe as the most did. What inconveniences might arise unto them by these courses, the *Lacedæmonians* easily discerned, & therefore sent Embassadors to stop the matter at *Corinth*, where they well perceived that the mischief had bin hatched. These Embassadors found in the *Corinthians* a very rough disposition, with a gravity expressing the opinion which they had conceived of their present advantage over *Sparta*. They had caused all Cities which had not entered yet into alliance with *Argos*, to send their Agents to them, in whose presence they gave audience to the *Lacedæmonians*; the purport of whose Embassie was this: That the *Corinthians*, without breach of their oath, could not forsake the alliance which they had long since made with *Sparta*; and that reason did as well bind them to hold themselves contented with the peace lately made, as religion enforced them to continue in their ancient confederacy, forasmuch as it had bin agreed between the *Spartans* and their associates, that the consent of the greater part (which had yeelded unto peace with *Athens*) should bind the lesser number to performe what was concluded, if no divine impediment withstood them. Hereunto the *Corinthians* made answer, that the *Spartans* had first begun to doe them open wrong; in concluding the War wherein they had lost many places, without

provision of restitution; and that the very clause alleged by the Embassadors, did acquit them from any necessity of subscribing to the late peace, forasmuch as they had sworn unto those people whom they perswaded to rebell against *Athens*, that they would never abandon them, nor willingly suffer them to fall again into the tyrannous hands of the *Athenians*. Wherefore they held themselves bound both in reason and religion to use all means of upholding those, whom by common consent they had taken into protection; for that an oath was no lesse to be accounted a divine impediment, than were pestilence, tempest, or any the like accident, hindring the performance of things undertaken. As for the alliance with *Argos*, they said that they would do as they should find cause. Having dismissed the Embassadors with this answer, they made haste to joyn themselves with *Argos*, and caused other States to do the like; so that *Sparta* and *Athens* were in a manner left to themselves, the *Thebans* and *Megarians* being also upon the point to have entered into this new confederacy. But as the affections were divers which caused this hasty confluence of sudden friends to *Argos*, it so likewise came to passe that the friendship it self, such as it was, had much diversity both of sincerity and of continuance. For some there were that hated or feared the *Lacedæmonians*, as the *Maninæans* and *Eleans*; these did firmly betake themselves to the *Argives*, in whom they knew the same affection to be inveterate; others did only hate the peace concluded; and these would rather have followed the *Spartans* than the *Argives* in war, yet rather the *Argives* in war than the *Lacedæmonians* in peace. Of this number were the *Corinthians*, who knowing that the *Thebans* were affected like unto themselves, dealt with them to enter into the society of the *Argives*, as they had done: but the different formes of government, used in *Thebes* and *Argos*, caused the *Thebans* to hold rather with *Sparta*, that was ruled by the principall men, than to incur the danger of innovation, by joyning with such as committed the whole rule to the multitude.

This businesse having ill succeeded, the *Corinthians* began to bethink themselves of their own danger, who had not so much as any truce with *Athens*, and yet were unprepared for War. They sought therefore to come to some temporary agreement with the *Athenians*, and hardly obtained it. For the *Athenians*, who had dealt with all Greece at one time, did not greatly care to come to any appointment with one Citie that had shewed against them more stomack than force; but gave them to understand, that they might be safe enough from them, if they would claim the benefit of that alliance, which *Athens* had lately made with *Sparta* and her dependants; yet finally they granted unto these *Corinthians* (which were loth to acknowledge themselves dependants of *Sparta*) the truce that they desired; but into private confederacie they would not admit them, being an article of the league between them and the *Spartans*, That the one should not make peace nor war without the other.

Herein, as in many other passages, may clearly be seen the great advantage which absolute Lords have, as well in Peace as in War, over such as are served by voluntaries. Wee shall hardly find any Signiorie, that hath been so constantly followed as *Sparta* was by so many States, and some of them little inferior to it self, being all as free: whereas contrariwise, the *Athenians* had lately, and by compulsive means gotten their Dominion, wherein they demeaned themselves as Tyrants. But in performance of conditions agreed upon, the *Athenians* were able to make their words good, by excluding any State out of their Confederacie, and giving up such places as were agreed upon: of which the *Lacedæmonians* could do neither the one nor the other. For such Towns as their old Allies had gotten by their means in the late War, could not be restored without their consent, which had them in present possession; and particularly the Town of *Panaſſe*, which the *Thebans* held, could by no means be obtained from them by the *Lacedæmonians* (who earnestly desired it, that by restitution thereof unto the *Athenians*, earnestly demanding it, themselves might recover *Pylus*) unless that they would agree to make a private alliance with *Thebes*; which thereupon they were constrained to doe, though knowing it to be contrary to the last agreement between them and *Athens*.

The *Lacedæmonians* having broken one article of the league made between them and the *Athenians*, that by so doing they might enable themselves to the performance of another, were shamefully disappointed of their hopes by the *Thebans*, who did not give up the town of *Panaſſe*, till first they had utterly demolished it, and made it of no worth to

the *Athenians*. This was sought to have been excused by the *Lacedæmonian* Embassadors, who comming to *Athens* (whither they had sent home all prisoners that had been detained at *Thebes*) hoping with gentle words to save the matter, saying, That from henceforth no enemy of *Athens* should nestle in *Paralissæ*; for it was destroyed. But these Embassadors had not to deal with tame fools. For the *Athenians* told them in plain termes, That of three principall conditions agreed upon in their late League, they had not performed any one, but used such base conclusions as stood not with their honour: having made private alliance with the *Thebans*; having destroyed a Town that they should have restored; and not having forced their dependants by Warre, to make good the Covenants of the late concluded peace. Hereupon they distressed the Embassadors with rough words, meaning with as rough deeds to anger those that sent them.

There were at that time both in *Athens* and *Sparta*, many that were ill-contented with the peace: among whom were the *Ephori*, chosen for that year in *Sparta*; and *Alcibiades*, a powerfull young Gentleman in *Athens*. But the *Ephori*, though desiring to renew the War, yet wished that first they might get from the *Athenians* as much as was to be redred to them by Covenant, especially *Pylus* that had so sorely troubled them, *Alcibiades*, whose Nobility, riches and favour with the people, made him desire War, as the mean whereby himself might procure some honourable employment; used all means to stir the quarrel on foot, whilst the *Athenians* had yet both advantage enough, as not having rendered ought save their prisoners, and pretence enough to use that advantage of breaking the peace, by reason that the *Lacedæmonians* (though indeed against their wills) had broken all Covenants with them. Now the State of *Athens* had fully determined to detain *Pylus*, and to perform nothing that the *Lacedæmonians* should, and might require, untill they had first, without any longer halting, fulfilled all articles whereto they were bound, even to the utmost point. This was enough to make them sweat, who having already done the most that they could, had as yet got nothing in recompence, except the delivery of their Citizens, which were prisoners. But *Alcibiades* wishing a speedy beginning of open war, sent privily to the *Argives*, and gave them to understand how fully the time served for them to associate themselves with *Athens*, which was enough to give them security against all enemies.

The *Argives*, upon the first confluence of many Estates unto their society, had embraced great hopes of working wonders, as if they should have had the conduct of all Greece against the *Athenians*, robbing *Sparta* of that honour, as having ill used it, and thereby leaving their old enemies in case of much contempt and disability. But these sudden apprehensions of vain joy, were suddenly changed into as vain fear; which ill agreed with the great opinion that had lately bin conceived of *Argos*. For when the *Thebans* had refused their alliance; when the *Corinthians* had sought security from *Athens*; and when a false rumour was noyed abroad, *Athens*, *Thebes* and *Sparta*, were come to a full agreement upon all points of difference; then began the *Argives* to let fall their crests, and sue for peace unto the *Lacedæmonians*, who needing it as much as they, or more, yet held their gravity, and were not over-hasty to accept it. At this time, and in this perturbation, the message of *Alcibiades* came very welcome to the *Argives*, which were now consulting how to become the chief of all others, but how to save themselves. Wherefore they sent away presently to *Athens*, their own Embassadors, accompanied with the *Maninæans* and *Eleans*, to make a league offensive and defensive between their Estates and the *Athenians*.

Of this business the *Lacedæmonians* knew not what to think: for well they saw, that such a combination tended to their great hurt, and therefore were desirous to prevent it, but to keep the love of the *Athenians*, the new *Ephori* thought that more was already done, than stood with their honour or profit; others held it the wisest way, having done so much, not to stick upon a little more, but rather by giving full satisfaction, to retain the friendship of that State, which was more to be valued than all the rest of Greece. This resolution prevailing, they sent away such of their Citizens as were best affected to the peace, who comming to *Athens*, with full commission to make an end of all controversies, did earnestly labour in the Councell-house, to make the truth of things appear, saying; That their Confederacy with the *Thebans* had tended to none other end than the recovery of *Paralissæ*: concerning which Town, or any other business, that it might give

ved the *Lacedæmonians* to see things fall out in such wise as might give to the *Athenians* cause of displeasure; but that all should be done which in reason might be required for making matters even between them; to which purpose they shewed that themselves had absolute commission. Wherefore they desired that *Pylus* might be restored to them, and especially for the present, that the negotiation with the *Argives* might be called aside. Favourable audience was given to this proposition, the rather, because they which promised amends, had power to make their words good. But all this fair likelihood of good agreement was dashed on the sudden, by the practice of *Alcibiades*, who, secretly dealing with the *Lacedæmonian* Embassadors, perswaded them well of his friendship towards their Citie, and advised them to take all care that their absolute power to conclude what they pleased in the name of *Sparta*, might not be known to the Commonwealth of *Athens*, lest the insolent multitude should thereupon grow peremptorie and yield to nothing, unless they could draw them to unreasonable conditions. The Embassadors beleaved him, and fashioned their tale in the assembly of the people, as he had advised them. Hereupon the same *Alcibiades* taking presently the advantage, which their double dealing afforded, inveighed openly against them, as men of no sincerity, that were come to *Athens* for no other purpose, than to hinder the people from strengthening themselves with friends, meaning to draw the *Argives* and their Adherents to their own alliance, as (contrary to their own Oath) already they had the *Thebans*. The people of *Athens*, whom a pleasing errand would very hardly have satisfied, or brought into a good opinion of the *Lacedæmonians*; (whose honest meanings had so ill been seconded, with good performance) were now so much incensed with the double dealing of the Embassadors, and the strong persuasions of *Alcibiades*, that little wanted of concluding the league with *Argos*. Yet for the present so farre did *Nicias*, an honourable Citizen, and great friend to the peace, prevail with them, that the business was put off, untill he himself, with other Embassadors, might fetch a better answer from *Sparta*.

It may also seem a great wonder, how so poor a trick of *Alcibiades* was able to carry a matter of so great importance, when the *Spartan* Embassadors might have cast the load upon his own shoulders, by discovering the truth: But the gravitie which was usually found in the *Lacedæmonians*, hindered them (perhaps) from playing their game handsomely against so nimble a wit; and they might well have been thought untrusty men, had they professed themselves such as would say and un-say for their most advantage.

*Nicias* and his Companions had a sov're message to deliver at *Sparta*, being peremptory to require performance of all conditions; and among the rest, that the *Lacedæmonians* should take the pains to re-build *Paralissæ*, and should immediately renounce their Alliance made with the *Thebans*; letting them understand, that otherwise the *Athenians*, without further delay, would enter into confederacie with the *Argives*, and their adherents. The *Ephori* at *Sparta* had no mind to forsake the *Thebans*, assured friends to their State; but wrought so hard, that the anger of the *Athenians* was suffered to break out what way it could, which to mitigate, they would doe no more, than only (at the request of *Nicias* their honourable friend, who would not seem to have minded nothing) swear a-new to keep the Articles of the league between him and *Athens*. Immediately therefore upon return of the Embassadors, a new league was made between the *Athenians*, *Argives*, *Maninæans*, and *Eleans*, with very ample provision for holding the same common friends and enemies; wherein, though the *Lacedæmonians* were passed over with silence, yet was it manifest that the whole intent of this confederacie did bend it self chiefly against them, as in short while after was proved by effect.

At this time the *Lacedæmonians* were in ill case, who having restored all that they could unto the *Athenians*, and procured others to doe the like, had themselves recovered nothing of their own (prisoners excepted) for default of restoring all that they should. But that which did most of all disabie them, was the losse of reputation, which they had not more impaired in the late Warre by misfortunes, than in sundry passages between them and the *Athenians*: to procure and keep whose Amity, they had bin sundry of their own friends to shift for themselves. Contrariwise, the *Athenians* by the treatie of peace, had recovered the most part of that which they lost in warre;

all their gettings they had retained; and were strengthened by the access of new Confederates.

## s. VII.

*How the peace between Athens and Sparta was ill kept, though not openly broken.*

IT was not long ere the *Argives* and their fellows had found business wherewith to set the *Athenians* on work, and make use of this conjunction. For, presuming upon the strength of their side, they began to meddle with the *Epidaurians*, whom it concerned the State of *Sparta* to defend. So, many acts of hostility were committed, wherein *Athens* and *Sparta* did (as principals) infest each the other; but came in collaterally, as to the aid of their severall friends.

By these occasions the *Corinthians*, *Boeotians*, *Phocians*, *Locrians*, and other people of *Greece*, began a new to range themselves under the *Lacedemonians*, and follow their ensignes. One victorie which the *Lacedemonians* obtained by their meer valour in a battell, neer to *Mantineia*, against the *Argive* side, helped well to repair their decayed reputation, though otherwise it yielded them no great profit. The civill dissention arising shortly after within *Argos* it self, between the principall Citizens and the Commonions, had almost thrown down the whole frame of the new combination. For the chief Citizens getting the upper hand, made a league with *Sparta*, wherein they proceeded so farre as to renounce the amitie of the *Athenians* in expresse words, and forced the *Mantineans* to the like. But in short space of time the multitude prevailing, reversed all this, and having chased away their ambitious Nobilitie applied themselves to the *Athenians* as closely as before.

Besides these uprores in *Peloponnesus*, many assaies were made to raise up troubles in all parts of *Greece*, and likewise in *Macedon*, to the *Athenians*, whose forces and readines for execution, prevented some things, revenged other, and required all with some prosperous attempts. Finally, the *Athenians* wanting matter of quarrell, and the *Lacedemonians* growing wearie, they began to be quiet; retaining still that enmitie in their hearts, which they had sufficiently discovered in effects, though not yet breaking out into terms of open Warre.

## s. VIII.

*The Athenians sending two Fleets to sack Siracuse, are put to flight, and utterly discomfited.*

DURING this intermission of open War, the *Athenians* re-entertained their hopes of subduing *Sicily*, whither they sent a Fleet so mightie, as never was set forth by *Greece* in any Age before or after.

This Fleet was very well manned, and furnished with all necessaries to so great an expedition, All which came to nought, partly by the factions in *Athens*, whence *Alcibiades*, Author of that voyage, and one of the Generalls of their Fleet, was driven to banish himself, for fear of such judgement, as else he was like to have undergone among the incensed people; partly by the invasion which the *Lacedemonians* made upon *Attica*, whilst the forces of that State were so far from home. Hereunto was added the aid of the King of *Persia*, who supplied the *Peloponnesians* with money.

Neither was the successe of things in *Sicilia* such, as without help from *Athens*, could give any likelihood of a good end in that war. For although in the beginning, the enterprise had so well succeeded, that they besieged *Siracuse*, the chief Citie of all the Island, and one of the fairest Towns which the *Greeks* inhabited, obtaining the better in sundrie battels by Land and Sea; yet when the Town was relieved with strong aid from *Peloponnesus*, it came to pass that the *Athenians* were put to the worke on all sides, in such wise that their Fleet was shut up into the haven of *Siracuse*, and could not issue out.

As the *Athenian* affairs went very ill in *Sicily*, so did they at home stand upon her terms, for that the *Lacedemonians*, who had been formerly accustomed to make wearisome yearly journeys into *Attica*, which having pilld and foraged, they returned home; did

now by counsell of *Alcibiades* (who seeking revenge upon his own Citizens, was fled unto them) fortifie the Town of *Decelia*, which was near to *Athens*, whence they ceased not with daily excursions to harry all the Country round about, and sometimes give alarme unto the City it self. In these extremities, the perverse obstinacy of the *Athenians* was very strange, who leaving at their backs, and at their own doores, an enemy little lesse mighty than themselves, did yet send forth another Fleet into *Sicily*, to invade a people no lesse puissant, which had never offended them.

It often happens, that a prosperous event makes foolish counsell seem wiser than it was, which came to passe many times among the *Athenians*, whose vain conceits *Pallas* was to turn unto the best. But where unfound advice, finding bad proof, is obstinately pursued, neither *Pallas* nor *Fortune* can be justly blamed for a miserable issue. This second Fleet of the *Athenians*, which better might have served to convey home the former that was defeated, after some attempts made to small purpose against the *Siracusians*, was finally (together with the other part of the Navie, which was there before) quite vanquished, and bared up into the haven of *Siracuse*, whereby the camp of the *Athenians*, utterly deprived of all benefit by Sea, either for succour or departure, was driven to break up, and flye away by land; in which flight they were overtaken, routed, and quite overthrowen, in such wise that scarce any man escaped.

This mischief well deserved fell upon the *Athenians*, who had wickedly condemned to exile *Sophocles* and *Phidias* Generalls, formerly sent into that Ile; pretending that they had taken money for making peace in *Sicily*, whereas indeed there was not any means or possibility to have made War. Hereby it came to passe, that *Nicias*, who had the chief command in this unhappy enterprise, did rather choose to hazard the ruin of his Company by the losse of that Army, wherein consisted little lesse than all the power of *Athens*; than to adventure his own estate, his life, and his honour, upon the tongues of shamelesse accusers, and the sentence of Judges before his tryall resolved to condemn him; by retiring from *Siracuse*, when wisdom and necessity required it. For (said he) they shall give sentence upon me, who know not the reason of our doing, nor would give ear to any that would speak in our behalf; but altogether hearken to suspicious and vain rumors, which shall be brought against us; who these our soldiers who now are so desirous to returne in safety, will in our danger be well contented to frame their votes to the pleasure of the lawd and insolent multitude.

This resolution of *Nicias*, though it cannot be commended (for it is the part of an honest and valiant man to doe what reason willet, not what opinion expecteth; and to value honour or dishonour by the assurance of his well-informed conscience, rather than by the malicious report and censure of others) yet it may be excused, since he had before he says the injustice of his people, and had well understood that a wicked sentence is infinitely worse than a wicked face; as being held a president and pattern whereby oppression beginning upon one, is extended as warrantable upon all. Therefore his fear of wrongfull condemnation was such, as a constant man could, not easily have overmastered; but when afterwards the Army, having no other expectation of safety than the faint hope of a secret flight, he was so terrified with an Eclipse of the Moon, happening when they were about to dislodge, that he would not consent to have the camp break up till eleven and twenty daies were past. His timoroufnesse was even as foolish and ridiculous, as the issue of it was lamentable. For he should not have thought that the power of the Heavens, and the course of Nature would be as unjust as his *Athenians*, or might pretend lesse evill to the slothfull, than to such as did their best. Neither doe I think that any Astrologer can allege this Eclipse, as either a cause or prognostication of that Armes destruction, otherwise than as the folly of men did, by application, turn it to their own confusion. Had *C. Cassius* the Roman, he who slew *Julius Caesar*, imagined this superstition of *Nicias*, he had surely found the same fortune in a case very like. But when, he retrying, the broken remainder of *Cassius* his Army defeated by the *Parthian* Archers, was advised, upon such an accident as this, to continue where he then was, till the Sun were past the sign of *Scorpio*; he made answer, that he stood not in such fear of *Scorpio*, as of *Sagittarius*. So adventuring rather to abide the frowning of the Heavens, than the nearer danger of Enemies upon earth, he made such a safe and honourable retreat, as did both shew his noble resolution, and give a fair example to that good rule,

—*Sapiens dominabitur astris.*

Thus we see that God, who ordinarily works by a concatenation of means, deprives the Governours of understanding, when he intends evil to the multitude; and that the wickedness of unjust men is the ready mean to weaken the virtue of those who might have done them good.

§. IX.

*Of the troubles wherewith the State of Athens fell, after the great losse of the Fleet, and Armie in Sicilia.*

THE losse of this Armie was the ruin of the Athenian Dominion; and may be well accounted a very little lesse calamitie to that Estate, than was the subversion of the walls, when the Citie about seaven years after was taken by *Zylindrus*. For now began the subjects of the Athenian Estate to rebell, of whom, some they reduced under their obedience, others held out; some for fear of greater inconvenience were set at libertie, promising only to be their good friends, as formerly they had been their Subjects; others having a kind of libertie offered by the Athenians, were not therewith contented, but obtained a true and perfect libertie by force. Among these troubles it fell out very unseasonably, that the principall men of Athens, being wearied with the peoples insolencie, took upon them to change the forme of that Estate; and bring the government into the hands of a few. To which purpose conspiring with the Captains which were abroad, they caused them to set up the forme of an Aristocracie in the Towns of their Confederates; and in the mean time, some that were most likely to withstand this innovation, being slain at Athens, the Commonaltie were so dismayed, that none durst speak against the Conspirators, whose number they knew not, but every man was afraid of his neighbour, lest he should be a member of the league. In this generall fear the Majestie of Athens was usurped by four hundred men, who observing in shew the ancient form of proceeding, did cause all matters to be propounded unto the people, and concluded upon by the greater part of voices; but the things propounded were only such as were first allowed in private among themselves; neither had the Commonaltie any other libertie, than only to approve and give consent: for whosoever presumed any further, was quickly dispatched out of the way, and no inquisite made of the murder. By these means were many Decrees made, all tending to the establishment of this new authoritie, which nevertheless endured not long. For the Fleet and Armie which then, was in the Isle of *Samos* did altogether detest these dealings of the four hundred usurpers, and held them as Enemies; whereupon they revok'd *Alcibiades* out of banishment, and by his assistance procured that the supplies which the Persian King had promised to the Lacedemonians, were by *Tissaphernes* his Lieutenant, made unprofitable, through the slow and bad performance. *Alcibiades* had at the first been very well entertained in *Sparta*, whilst his service done unto that State was not grown to be the object of envie. But when it appeared that in Counsell and good performance he so far excelled all the Lacedemonians, that all their good success was attributed to his wit and valour, then were all the principall Citizens wearie of his vertue; especially *Agis* one of their Kings, whose wife had so far yeelded her self to the love of this Athenian, that among her inward friends she could not forbear to call her young child by his name. Hereupon order was taken, that *Alcibiades* should be killed out of the way. But he discovering the Spartan treacherie, conveyed himself unto *Tissaphernes*; whom he so bewitched with his great beautie, sweet conversation, and found wit, that he soon became the Master of that barbarous Vice-roys affections, who had free power to dispose the great Kings Treasures and Forces in those parts. Then began he to advise *Tissaphernes*, not so far forth to assist the Lacedemonians, that they should quite overthrow the State of Athens, but rather to help the weaker side, and let them one consume another, whereby all should fall at length into the hands of the Persian. By this counsell he made way to other practices, wherein by strength of his reputation (as the only Favourite of so great a Potentate) he played his own game, procuring his restitution. At length his banishment being repealed by the Armie, but not by the Citizens (who then were oppressed by the four hundred) he laboured greatly to recon-

recom-

reconcile the Souldiers to the Governours; or at least to divert their heat another way, and turn it upon the common Enemy. Some of the four hundred approved his motion, as being wearie of the tyrannie whereof they were partakers, partly because they saw it could not long endure, and partly for that themselves, being lesse regarded by the rest of their companions, than stood with their good liking, sought to acquit themselves of it as honestly as they might. But the most of that Faction laboured to obtain peace of the Lacedemonians, desiring chiefly to maintain both their own authoritie, and the greatness of their Citie, if they might: but if this could not be, they did rather wish to preserve their own power, or at least, than the good Estate of the Common-wealth. Therefore they made sundry overtures of peace to the Lacedemonians, desiring to compound in as good termes as they might, and affirming that they were fitter to be trusted than the warring multitude, especially considering that the Citie of *Sparta* was governed by an Aristocracie, to which form they had now reduced Athens. All these passages between the four hundred (or the most and chiefe of them) and the Lacedemonians, were kept as secret as might be. For the Citie of Athens, hoping, without any great cause, to repair their losses, was not inclined to make composition, from which upon juster ground the Enemy was much more averse, trusting well that the discord of the Athenians (not unknown abroad) might yeeld some fair opportunitie to the destruction of it self, which in effect (though not then presently) came to passe. And upon this hope King *Agis* did sometimes bring his forces from *Decelea* to Athens, where doing no good; he received some small losses. Likewise the Navie of *Peloponnesus* made shew of attempting the Citie, but seeing no likelihood of success, they bent their course from thence to other places, where they obtained victories, which in the better fortune of the Athenians might more lightly have bin regarded, than in this their decayed estate. Yet it seems, without any disparagement to their wisdom, they should rather have forbore to present unto the Citie, or to the countries neer adjoining, any terror of the war. For the dissention within the walls might soon have done more good than could be received from the fleet or army without, which indeed gave occasion to set the Citizens at unity, though it lasted not very long. The four hundred, by means of these troubles, were faine to resign their authority, which they could not now hold, when the people, having taken arms to repell foreign Enemies, would not lay them down, till they had freed themselves from such as oppressed the State at home. Yet was not this alteration of government a full restitution of the sovereign command unto the people, or whole body of the Citie, but only to five thousand; which company the four hundred (when their authoritie began) had pretended to take unto them as assistants: herein seeming to do little wrong or note to the commonalty, who seldom assembled in greater number. But now when the highest power was come indeed into the hands of so many, it was soon agreed, that *Alcibiades* and his companions should be recalled from exile, and that the army at *Samos* should be requested to undertake the government: which was forthwith reformed according to the Souldiers desire.

§. X.

*How Alcibiades won many important victories for the Athenians; was recalled from exile; made their Generall, and again deposed.*

THE establishment of things in the Citie, was accompanied with some good success in the wars. For the Lacedemonians were about the same time overthrowen at Sea, in a great battell, by the Athenian Fleet, which had remained at *Samos*, to which *Alcibiades* afterwards joyning such forces as he could raise, obtained many victories. Before the Town of *Abydos*, his arrivall with eighteen ships, gave the honour of a great battell to the Athenians; he overthrowen and utterly destroyed the fleet of the Lacedemonians, commanded by *Mindarus*; took the Towns of *Cyzicus* and *Perinthus*, made the *Selymbrians* ransome their Citie, and fortified *Chrysopolis*. Hereupon letters were sent to *Sparta*, which the Athenians intercepting, found to contain the distresse of the Armie, in these few words: *All is lost; Mindarus is slain; the Souldiers want victuals; we know not what to doe.*

Shortly after this, *Alcibiades* overthrowen the Lacedemonians in fight by land at *Chalcedon*, took *Selymbria*, besieged and won *Byzantium*, now called *Constantinople*, which even

in those dayes was a goodly, rich, and very strong City. Hereupon he returned home with very great welcome, and was made high Admirall of all the Navie.

But this his honour continued not long, for it was taken from him, and he driven to banish himself again, only because his Lieutenant, contrary to the expresse command of *Alcibiades*, fighting with the enemies in his absence, had lost a great part of the Fleet.

The second banishment of *Alcibiades* was to the *Athenians* more harmful than the first, and the losse which thereupon they received, was (though more heavy to them, yet) lesse to be pitied of others, than that which ensued upon his former exile. For whereas at the first, he had sought revenge upon his own Citie; now, as inured to adversity, he rather pitied their furie, who in time of such danger had cast out him that should have repaired to their weak estate, than sought by procuring or beholding the calamitie of his people, to comfort himself after injurie received. Before they, who were instituted in the place of *Alcibiades*, arrived at the Fleet, he presented battel to *Lyfander* the *Lacedemonian* Admirall, who was not so confident upon his former victorie, as to undertake *Alcibiades* himself, bringing ships more in number (notwithstanding the former losse of fifteen) than his enemies had, and better ordered than they had been under his Lieutenant. But when the decree of the people was published in the Navie, then did *Alcibiades* withdraw himself to a Town upon *Hellefpont*, called *Bizantse*, where he had built a Castle.

## s. XI.

The battell at Arginusæ, and condemnation of the victorious Athenian Captains by the people.

AFTER this time, the *Athenians* receiving many losses and discomfitures, were driven to flye into the Haven of *Myletus*, where they were straitly besieged both by Land and Sea. For the raising of this siege necessitie inforced them to man all their vessels, and to put the uttermost of their forces into the hazzard of one battel. This battell was fought at *Arginusæ*, where *Callieraditus*, Admirall of the *Lacedemonians*, losing the honour of the day, preserved his own reputation by dying valiantly in the fight. It might well have bin expected, that the ten Captains, who joyntly had command in chief over the *Athenian* fleet, should for that good daies service, and so happy a victory, have received great honour of their Citizens. But contrariwise, they were forthwith called home, and accused, as if wilfully they had suffered many of the Citizens, whose ships were broken and sunk, to be cast away, when by appointing some Vessels to take them up, they might have saved them from being drowned. Hereto the Captains readily made a very just answer, That they pursuing the victorie, had left part of the fleet, under sufficient men, to save those that were wrackt; which if it were not well accomplished, it was, because a tempest arising about the end of the fight, had hindred the performance of that, and other their intendments. This excuse availed not: For a lewd fellow was brought forth, who said, That he himself escaping in a meal-tub, had bin intreated by those who were in perill of drowning, to desire of the people revenge of their deaths upon the Captains. It was very strange, that upon such an accusation maintained with so slender evidence, men that had well deserved of their Countrey should be overthrown. But their enemies had so incensed the rascall multitude, that no man durst absolve them, save onely *Socrates* the wife and vertuous Philosopher, whose voice in this judgement was not regarded. Six of them were put to death, of whom one had hardly escaped drowning, and was with much ado relieved by other vessels in the storm: but the Captains which were absent escaped; for when the furie of the people was overpast, this judgement was reversed, and the accusers called into question for having deceived and perverted the Citizens. Thus the *Athenians* went about to free themselves from the infamie of injustice, but the divine Justice was not a-sleepe, nor would be so deluded.

## s. XII.

## s. XII.

The battell at *Egos-Potamos*, wherein the whole State of Athens was ruined, with the end of the Peloponnesian war,

THE *Peloponnesian* Fleet under *Lyfander* the year next following, having scoured the *Egean* Seas, entered *Hellefpont*, where (landing souldiers) it besieged and took the town of *Lampfacus*. Hereupon all the navie of *Athens*, being an hundred and four score sail, made thither in haste, but finding *Lampfacus* taken before their coming, they put in at *Sestos*, where having refreshed themselves, they sailed to the river called *Egos-Potamos*, which is (as we might name it) *Goats-Brook*, or the river of the *Goat*, being on the continent opposite to *Lampfacus*: and there they cast Anchors, not one whole league off from *Lyfander*, who rode at *Lampfacus* in the harbor. The next day after their arrival they presented fight unto the *Peloponnesians*, who refused it, whereupon the *Athenians* returned again to *Egos-Potamos*; and thus they continued five daies, braving every day the Enemy, and returning to their own harbor when it drew towards evening.

The Castle of *Alcibiades* was not far from the Navie, and his power in those places was such as might have greatly availed his countreymen, if they could have made use of it. For he had waged mercenaries, and making war in his own name upon some people of the *Thracians*, had gathered much wealth, and obtained much reputation among them. He perceiving the disorderly course of the *Athenian* Commanders, repaired unto them, and shewed what great inconvenience might grow, if they did not soon fore-see and prevent it. For they lay in a rode subject to every weather, neither neer enough to any town where they might furnish themselves with necessaries, nor so far off as had bin more expedient. *Sestos* was the next Market-town; thither both Souldiers and Mariners resorted, flocking away from the Navie every day, as soon as they were returned from braving the Enemy. Therefore *Alcibiades* willed them either to lie at *Sestos*, which was not far off, or at least to consider how neer their Enemy was, whose fear proceeded rather from obedience to their Generall, than from any cowardise. This admonition was so far despised, that some of the Commanders willed him to meddle with his own matters, and to remember that his authoritie was out of date. Had it not bin for these opprobrious words, he could (as he told his familiars) have compelled the *Lacedemonians*, either to fight upon unequal terms, or utterly to quit their Fleet. And like enough it was that he might to have done by transporting the light-armed *Thracians*, his confederates, and others his Followers, over the Streights, who assaulting the *Peloponnesians* by Land, would either have compelled them to put to Sea, or else to leave their ships to the mercy of the *Athenians*. But finding their acceptance of his good counsell no better than hath bin rehearsed, he left them to their fortune, which how evill it would be he did prognosticate.

*Lyfander* all this while defending himself by the advantage of his Haven, was not carelesse in looking into the demeanour of the *Athenians*. When they departed, his manner was to send forth some of his swiftest Vessels after them, who observing their doings, related unto him what they had seen. Therefore understanding in what carelesse fashion they romed up and down the country; he kept all his men a-board after their departure, and the first day gave especial charge to his Scouts, that when they perceived the *Athenians* dis-imbarking, as their custome was, and walking towards *Sestos*, they should forthwith return, and hang up a brazen shield in the Prow, as a token for him to weigh Anchor.

The Scouts performed their charge, and *Lyfander* being in a readinesse, made all speed that strength of Oars could give, to *Egos-Potamos*, where he found very few of his enemies aboard their ships, nor many neer them, and all in great confusion upon the newes of his approach.

Inomuch that the greatest industrie which the *Athenians* then shewed, was in the escape of eight or nine ships, which knowing how much that losse imported, gave over *Athens* as desperate, and made a long flight into the Isle of *Cyprus*; all the rest were taken, and such of the Souldiers as came in to the rescue cut in pieces. Thus was the war which had lasted seven and twenty years, with variable successe, concluded in one hour, and the glory of *Athens* in such wise eclipsed, that the never afterward shone in her perfect light.

Immediately upon this victory, *Lyfander*, having taken such Towns as readily did

yeeld



yeeld upon the first fame of his exploit, set sail for *Athens*, and joyning his forces with those of *Agis* and *Pausanias*, Kings of *Sparta*, summoned the City; which finding too stubborn to yeeld, and too strong to be won on the sudden, he put forth again to Sea; and rather by terror than violence, compelling all the Ilands, and such Towns of the *Ionians* as had formerly held of the *Athenians*, to submit themselves to *Sparta*, he did thereby cut off all provision of victuals, and other necessities, from the City, & enforced the people by meer famine to yeeld to these conditions: That the long walls, leading from the Town to the Port, should be thrown down; That all Cities subject to their Empire, should be set at libertie; That the *Athenians* should be Masters only of their own Territories, and the fields adjoining to their Town; And that they should keep no more than twelve Ships; That they should hold as Friends or Enemies, the same, whom the *Lacedaemonians* did, and follow the *Lacedaemonians* as Leaders in the wars.

These Articles being agreed upon, the walls were thrown down with great rejoicing of those who had born displeasure to *Athens*; and not without some consultation of destroying the City, and laying waste the Land about it. Which advice, although it was not entertained, yet were thirty Governours, or rather cruell Tyrants, appointed over the people, who recompensed their former insolence and injustice over their Captains by oppressing them with all bale and intolerable slavery.

The only small hope then remaining to the *Athenians*, was, that *Alcibiades* might perhaps repair what their own folly had ruined. But the thirtie Tyrants perceiving this, advertised the *Lacedaemonians* thereof, who contrived, and (as now domineering in every quarter) soon effected his sudden death.

Such end had the *Peloponnesian* war. After which the *Lacedaemonians* abusing the reputation, and great power, which therein they had obtained, grew very odious to *Greece*, and by combination of many Cities against them, were dispossessed of their high authority, even in that very age in which they had subdued *Athens*. The greatest foil that they took was of the *Thebans* led by *Epaminondas*, under whom *Philip* of *Macedon*, father to *Alexander* the Great, had the best of his education. By these *Thebans*, the City of *Sparta* (besides other great losses received) was sundrie times in danger of being taken. But these haughtie attempts of the *Thebans* came finally to nothing; for the several Estates and Signories of *Greece*, were grown so jealous one of anothers greatness, that the *Lacedaemonians*, *Athenians*, *Argives* and *Thebans*, which were the mightiest, associating themselves with the weaker partie, did so counterpoize the stronger, that no one City could extend the limits of her jurisdiction so far as might make her terrible to her neighbours. And thus all parts of the Country remained rather evenly balanced, than well agreeing, till such time as *Philip*, and after him *Alexander*, Kings of *Macedon*, (whose forefathers had been dependants, and followers, yea almost meer Vassals to the Estates of *Athens* and *Sparta*) found means, by making use of their factions, to bring them all into servitude, from which they never could be free, till the *Romans* presenting them with a shew of libertie, did themselves indeed become their Masters.

## CHAP. IX.

Of matters concurring with the *Peloponnesian* Warre, or shortly following it.

### S. I.

How the affairs of *Perfia* stood in those times.



During the times of this *Peloponnesian* War, and those other leste expeditions foregoing it, *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, having peaceably enjoyed a long reign over the *Persians*, left it by his death either to *Darius*, who was called *Darius Nothus*, or the Bastard, whom the *Greek* Historians (lightly passing over *Xerxes* the second, and *Sogdianus*, as usurpers, and for their short reign little to be regarded) place next unto them, or to *Xerxes* the second; who, and his brother *Sogdianus* after him (seeming to have

have bin the sons of *Hesper* held the Kingdom but one year between them, the younger succeeding his elder brother. It is not my purpose (as I have said before) to pursue the historie of the *Persians* from henceforth, by rehearsal of all the particulars, otherwise than as they shall be incident to the affairs of *Greece*. It may therefore suffice to say, That *Xerxes* the second, being a vicious Prince, did perish after a month or two, if not by surfeit, then by the trecherie of his riotous brother *Sogdianus*. Likewise of *Sogdianus*, it is found that being as ill as his brother, and more cruell, he slew unjustly *Bagoas*, a principall Eunuch, and would have done as much to his brother *Darius* the Bastard, had not he fore-seen it, and by raising a stronger army than this hated King *Sogdianus* could leave, seized at once upon the King and Kingdom. *Darius* having slain his brother, held the Empire nineteen years. *Amyrtaeus* of *Sais* an *Egyptian* rebelled against him, and having partly slain, partly chased out of the Land the *Persian* Garrisons, allied himself lastly with the *Greeks*, that by their aid he maintained the Kingdom, and delivered it over to his posteritie; who (notwithstanding the fury of their civill Wars) maintained it against the *Persian*, all the days of this *Darius*, and of his son *Artaxerxes*. *Amyrtaeus* Likewise *Amorges*, a Subject of his own, and of the Royall blood, being Lieutenant of *Caria*, rebelled against him; confederating himself with the *Athenians*. But the great calamitie, before spoken of, which fell upon the *Athenians* in *Sicily*, having put new life into the *Spartans*, and given courage to the Ilanders and others, subject to the State of *Athens*, to shake off the yoke of their long continued bondage, it fell out well for *Darius*, that the *Lacedaemonians* being destitute of money, wherewith to defray the charge of a great navy, without which it was impossible to advance the war against the State of *Athens*, that remained powerfull by sea, were driven to crave his assistance, which he granted unto them, first upon what conditions best pleased himself, though afterwards the Articles of the league between him and them were set down in more precise termes, wherein it was concluded, That he and they should make war jointly upon the *Athenians*, and upon all that should rebel from either of them; and (which was highly to the Kings honour and profit) that all the Cities of *Asia*, which had formerly bin his, or his Predecessours, should return to his obedience. By this Treatie, and the war ensuing (of which I have already spoken) he recovered all that his grandfather and father had lost in *Asia*. Likewise by assistance of the *Lacedaemonians*, he got *Amorges* alive into his hands, who was taken in the City of *Jalus*, the *Athenians* wanting either force or courage to succumb him. Nevertheless *Egypt* still held out against him; the cause whereof cannot be the impoiment of the *Persian* forces on the parts of *Greece*; for he abounded in men, of whom he had enough for all occasions, but they wanted manhood, which caused him to fight with gold; which effected for him by Souldiers of other nations, and his naturall enemies, whose valour of his own Subjects was insufficient to perform. *Darius* had in marriage *Parissatis* his own sister, who bare unto him (besides other children) *Artaxerxes* called *Manicus*; that is to say, the Mindfull, or the Remembere, who succeeded him in the Kingdom; and *Cyrus* the younger, a Prince of singular vertue, and accounted by all that knew him, the most excellent man that ever *Persia* bred after *Cyrus* the Great. But the old King *Darius*, intending to leave unto his elder son *Artaxerxes* the inheritance of that great Empire, did cast a jealous eye upon the doings of young *Cyrus*, who being Lieutenant of the lower *Asia*, took more upon him than befitted a Subject: for which cause his father sent for him, with intent to have taken some very sharp course with him, had not his own death prevented the coming of his younger son, and placed the elder in his Throne. Of the war between these brethren, and summarily of *Artaxerxes*, we shall have occasion to speak somewhat in more convenient place.

### S. II.

How the thirtie Tyrants got their Dominion in *Athens*.

Hold it in this place very convenient to shew the proceedings of the *Greeks*, after the subversion of the walls of *Athens*, which gave end to that war called the *Peloponnesian* war, but could not free the unhappy Country of *Greece* from civill broils. The thirtie Governours, commonly called the thirtie Tyrants of *Athens*, were chosen at the first by the people to compile a body of their law, and make a collection of such

such ancient Statutes, as were meet to be put in practice; the condition of the City depending as it did in that so sudden alteration. To this charge was annexed the supreme authority, either as a recompence of their labours, or because the necessity of the times did so require it, wherein the Law being uncertain, it was fit that such men should give judgment in particular causes, to whose judgment the Laws themselves, by which the City was to be ordered, were become subject. But these thirty, having so great power in their hands, were more carefull to hold it, than to deserve it by faithful execution of that which was committed to them in trust.

Therefore apprehending such troublesome fellows as were odious to the City, though not punishable therefore by law, they condemned them to death; which proceeding was by all men highly approved, who considered their low conditions, but did not without bethink themselves, how easie a thing it would be unto these thirty men, to take away the lives of Innocents, by calling them perturbors of the peace; or when they listed, when condemnation without true trial and proof had been once well allowed. Having thus plausibly entered into a wicked course of government, they thought it best to fortifie themselves with a sure guard, ere they brake out into those disorders, which they must needs commit for the establishing of their authority. Wherefore dispatching two of their own companie to Sparta, they informed the Lacedæmonians, that it was the full intent of the thirty, to keep the City free from all rebellious motions; to which purpose it behoved them to cut off such as were seditious; and therefore desired the Lacedæmonians to send them a Garrison, which they promised at their own cost to maintain. This motion was well approved, and a Guard sent, the Captain of which was so well entertained by the thirty, that none of their misdeeds could want his high commendations at Sparta. Hereupon the Tyrants began to take heart, and looking no more after bafe and deserv'd persons, invaded the principall men of the City, sending armed men from house to house, who drew out such as were of great reputation, and likely, or able to make any head against this wicked forme of government: whereby there was such effusion of blood, as to Theramenes (one of the thirty) seemed very horrible, and unable to escape vengeance. His dislike of their proceedings being openly discovered, caused his fellows to bethink themselves, and provide for their own security, and his destruction, lest he should make himself a Captain of the discontented, which were almost the whole City, and redeem his own peace with their ruin. Wherefore they selected three thousand of the Citizens, whom they thought meetest, and gave unto them some part of publicke authority, the rest they disarmed; and having thus increased their own strength, and weakened their opposites, they began a-fresh to shed the blood, not only of their private enemies, but of such whose money or goods might enrich them, and enable them for the payment of their guard. And to this purpose they concluded, that every one of them should name one man, upon whose goods he should seize, putting the owner to death. But when Theramenes uttered his detestation of so wicked intent, then did Critias, who of all the thirty was most tyrannicall, accuse him to the Councell, as a treacherous man, & (whereas one main privilege of the three thousand was, that none of them should suffer death at the appointment of the thirty, but have the accustomed trial) he took upon him, to strike out of that number the name of Theramenes, & so reduced him under the trial & sentence of that order. It was well alleged by Theramenes, that his name was not more easie to be blotted out of the catalogue, than any other mans; upon which consideration, he advised them all to conceive no otherwise of his case, than as of their own, who were liable to the same form of proceeding: but every man choosing rather to preserve his own life by silence, than presently to draw upon himself the danger, which as yet concerned him little, & perhaps would never come near him; the Tyrants interpreting silence as consent, condemned him forthwith, and compelled him to drink poyson.

## §. III.

## The Conspiracie against the thirty Tyrants, and their deposing.

After the death of Theramenes, the thirty began to use such out-rage, as excelled their former villanies. For, having three thousand (as they thought) firm unto them, they robbed all others without fear or shame, depoyling them of lands and

and goods, & caused them to flie into banishment, for safeguard of their lives. This slight of the Citizens procured their liberty, and the general good of the City. For the banished citizens, who were fled to Thebes, entered into consultation, and resolved to hazzard their lives in setting free the City of Athens. The very thought of such a practice had bin treason at home, which had no other danger abroad, than might be found in the execution. Seventie men, or thereabout, were the first undertakers, who with their Captain Thrasybulus took Phyla, a place of strength in the Territorie of Athens. No sooner did the thirty hear of their exploit, than seek means to prevent further danger; assembling the three thousand, and their Lacedæmonian guard, with which force they attempted Phyla, but were with some losse of their men repelled. Finding the place too strong to be taken by assault, they intended to besiege it; which purpose came to nought by means of snow that fell, and other stormie weather, against which they had not made provision. Resting therefore to the City, which above all they were to make good, they left the most of their guard, and two companies of Horse, to wearie out them which lay in Phyla, with a dying siege. But it was not long ere the followers of Thrasybulus were increased from seventie to seven hundred, which adventured to give charge upon those guards, of whom they cut off above an hundred and twentie. These small, but prosperous beginnings, added more to the number of those in Phyla, who now with a thousand men got entrance into Piræus, the suburb of Athens, lying on the Port. Before their coming the thirty had resolved to fortifie the Town of Eleusine, to their own use, wherein they might make an easie retreat, and save themselves from any sudden perill. It may well seem strange, that whereas their barbarous manner of government had brought them into such danger, they were so far from seeking to obtain mens good will, that contrariwise, to assure themselves of Eleusine, they got all of the place who could bear arms into their hands by a train, and wickedly (though under form of Justice) murdered them all. But, *Sceleribus tutum per scelera est iter*, the mischiefs which they had already done were such, as left them no hope of going backward, nor any other apparent likelihood of safetie, than by extending their crueltie unto all, seeing few or none were left, whom they could trust. When Thrasybulus and his fellowes, who as yet were termed conspirators, had taken the Piræus, then were the three thousand raised again by the Tyrants, and brought to assault it; but in this enterprise Thrasybulus had the better; and repelled his enemies, of whom though there were slain to the number of seventie only, yet the victorie seemed the greater, because Critias, and one other of the thirty, perished in that fight. The death of Critias, and the stout defence of Piræus, together with some exhortations used by Thrasybulus to the Citizens, wrought such effect, that the thirty were deposed. Nevertheless there were so many of the three thousand, who having communicated with the thirty in their misdeeds, feared to be called to a sharp account, that no peace, nor quiet form of government could be established. For Embassadors were sent to Sparta, who craving aid against Thrasybulus and his followers, had favourable audience, and a power was sent to their assistance, both by land and sea, under the conduct of Lyfander, and his Brother, whom Pausanias the Spartan King did follow, raising an Armie of the Cities confederate with the Lacedæmonians. And here appeared first the jealousie, wherein some people held the State of Sparta. The Babylonians and Corinthians, who in the late wars had bin the most bitter enemies to Athens, refused to follow Pausanias in this expedition; alleging that it stood not with their oathes, to make war against that people, who had hitherto broken any one article of the league; but fearing indeed, lest the Lacedæmonians should annex the Territorie of Athens to their own Demains. It is not to be doubted, that Pausanias took this answer in good part. For it was not his purpose to destroy those against whom he went, but only to crosse the proceedings of Lyfander, whom he soothed. Therefore having in some small skirmishes against them of Thrasybulus his party, made a shew of war, finally wrought such means, that all things were compounded quietly: the thirty men, and such others, as were like to give cause of tumults, being sent to Sparta. The remainder of that tyrannicall faction, having withdrawn themselves to Eleusine, were shortly after found to attempt some innovation; whereupon the whole City rising against them, took their Captains, as they were coming to Parly, and slew them; which done, to avoid further inconvenience, a law was made, that all injuries past should be forgotten, and no man called into question for wrongs committed. By which order, wisely made, and carefully observed, the City returned to her former quietness.

## CHAP. X.

Of the expedition of Cyrus the younger.

## §. I.

The grounds of Cyrus his attempt against his brother.



The matters of Greece standing upon such terms, that no one estate durst oppose it self against that of *Lacedaemon*; young *Cyrus*, Brother to *Artaxerxes* King of *Persia*, having in his fathers life-time very carefully prosecuted the war against *Athens*, did send his messengers to *Sparta*, requesting that their love might appear no less to him, than that which he had shewed towards them in their dangerous war against the *Athensians*. To this request, being generally, the *Lacedaemonians* gave a suitable answer, commanding their Admirall to perform unto *Cyrus* all service that he should require of him. If *Cyrus* had plainly discovered himself, and the *Lacedaemonians* bent their whole power to his assistance, very like it is, that either the kingdom of *Persia* should have bin the recompence of his deserts; or that he perishing in battell, as after he did, the subversion of that Empire had forthwith ensued. But it pleased God, rather to shew unto the *Greeks* the wais, which under the *Maccedonian* Ensigns, the victorious foot-steps of their posteritie should measure; and opening unto them the riches, and withall the weaknesse of the *Persian*, to kindle in them both desire and hope of that conquest, which he reserved to another generation; than to give into their hands that mighty kingdom, whose hour was not yet come. The love which *Parysatis* the Queen mother of *Persia* bare unto *Cyrus* her younger son, being seconded by the earnest favour of the people, & ready desires of many principall men, had moved this young Prince, in his fathers old age, to aspire after the succession. But being sent for by his Father (as hath before bin shewed) whose meaning was to curb this ambitious youth; he found his elder brother *Artaxerxes* established so surely by the old Kings favour, that it were not safe to attempt any means of displanting him, by whose disfavour himself might easily lose the place of a Vice-roy, which he held in *Asia* the lesse, and hardly be able to maintain his own life. The nearest neighbour to *Cyrus* of all the Kings Deputies in the lower *Asia*, was *Tissaphernes*, a man compounded of cowardise, trechery, craft, & all vices which accustomably branch out of these. This man accompanied *Cyrus* to his Father, using by the way all fair shewes of friendship, as to a Prince, for whom it might wel be thought, that Queen *Parysatis* had obtained the inheritance of that mighty Empire. And it was very true, that *Parysatis* had used the best of her endeavour to that purpose, alleging that (which in former ages had bin much available to *Xerxes*, in the like disceparation with his elder brother) *Artaxerxes* was born whilest his 40 father was a private man, but *Cyrus*, when he was crowned king. All which not sufficing; when the most that could be obtained for *Cyrus*, was the pardon of some presumptuous demeanour, and confirmation of his place in *Lydia*, and the parts adjoining; then did this *Tissaphernes* discover his nature, and accuse his friend *Cyrus* to the new King *Artaxerxes*, of a dangerous treason intended against his person. Upon this accusation, whether true or false, very easily beleaved, *Cyrus* was arrested, and by the most vehement intreatie of his Mother very hardly delivered, and sent back into his own Province:

## §. II.

The preparations of Cyrus, and his first entrie into the War.

The form of government which the *Persian* Lieutenants used in their severall Provinces, was in many points almost Regall. For they made war and peace, as they thought it meet, not only for the Kings behoofe, but for their own reputation; usually indeed with the Kings enemies, yet sometimes one with another: which was the more easily tolerated, because their own heads were held onely at

at the Kings pleasure, which caused them to frame all their doings to his wil, whatsoever it were, or they could conjecture it to be. *Cyrus* therefore being settled in *Lydia*, began to consider with himself, the interest that he had in the Kingdom; the small assurance of his brothers love, held only by his Mothers intercession; the disgrace endured by his late imprisonment; and the means which he had by love of his own people, and that good neighbourhood of the *Lacedaemonians*, whom he had bound unto him, to obtain the Crown for himself. Neither was it expedient that he should long sit idle, as waiting all occasion should present it self: but rather enterprise somewhat whilest yet his Mother lived, who could procure a good interpretation to all his actions, if they were no worse than onely questionable. Hereupon he first began to quarrell with *Tissaphernes*, and seized upon many Towns of his jurisdiction, annexing them to his own Province, which displeased not *Artaxerxes* at all, who (besides that he was of condition somewhat simple) being truly paid by *Cyrus* the accustomable Tributes out of those places, was well contented to see his brothers hot spirit exercised in private quarrels. But *Tissaphernes*, whose base conditions were hated, & cowardize despised, although he durst not adventure to take armes against *Cyrus*, yet perceiving that the *Milesians* were about to give up themselves into the hands of that young Prince, as many other towns of the *Ionians* had done, thought by terrour to preserve his reputation, and keep the town in his own hands. Wherefore he slew many, and many he banished, who flying to *Cyrus*, were gently entertained, as bringing fair occasion to take armes, which was no small part of his desire. In levying Souldiers he used great policie; for he took not only the men of his own Province, or of the Countries adjoining, whose lives were ready at his will; but secretly he furnished some *Grecian* Captains with money, who being very good men of war, entertained Souldiers therewith, some of them warring in *Thrace*, others in *Thessalie*, others elsewhere in *Greece*; but all of them ready to crosse the Seas, at the first call of *Cyrus*, till which time they had secret instructions to prolong their severall wars, that the Souldiers might be held in continuall exercise, and ready in arms upon the sudden. *Cyrus* having sent a power of men to besiege *Miletus*, forthwith summoned these bands of the *Greeks*, who very readily came over to his assistance, being thirteen thousand very firm Souldiers, and able to make head (which is almost incredible) against the whole power of *Artaxerxes*. With this Army, and that which he had levied before, he could very easily have forced *Miletus*, and chased away *Tissaphernes* out of *Asia* the lesse: but his purpose was not for to lose time in small matters, that was to be employed in the accomplishment of higher designs. Pretending therefore that the *Pisidians*, a people of *Asia* the lesse, not subject to the *Persian*, had invaded his Territories, he raised the siege of *Miletus*, and with all speed marched Eastward, leaving *Tissaphernes* much amazed, who had no leisure to rejoyce that *Cyrus* had left him to himself, when he considered, that so great an Army, and so strong, was never levied against the Rovers of *Pisidia*, but rather against the great King his Master. For which cause taking a band of five hundred horse, he posted away to carry tidings to the Court, of this great preparation.

## §. III.

How Cyrus took his journey into the higher Asia, and came up close to his Brother.

The tumult which his coming brought was very great, and great the exclamations of the Queen *Statira*, against *Parysatis*, the Queen-Mother, whom she called the Author and occasioner of the war. But whilest the King in great fear was arming the high Countries in his defence, the danger hastened upon him very fast. For *Cyrus* made great marches, having his number much increased by the repair of his Countrymen, though most strengthened by the access of seven hundred *Greeks*, and of other four hundred of the same Nation, who revolted unto him from the King. How terrible the *Greeks* were to the *Barbarians*, he found by trial in a Muster, which (to please the Queen of *Cilicia*, who had brought him aid) he made in *Phrygia*; where the *Greeks* by his direction making offer of a charge upon the rest of his Army, which contained a hundred thousand men, the whole Camp (not perceiving that this was but a bravery) fled again, the victuallers and baggagers forsaking their cabbins, & running all away for very fear. This was to *Cyrus* a joyfull spectacle, who knew very well, that his brother was followed

by men of the same temper, and the more unlikely to make resistance, because they were preft to the war against their will and dispositions, whereas his Army was drawn along by meer affection and good will. Nevertheless he found it a very hard matter to perswade the *Greeks* to passe the River of *Euphrates*. For the very length of the way which they had troden, wearied them with the conceit of the tedious return. Therefore he was driven, being yet in *Cilicia*, to seek excuses, telling them, that *Abrocomus*, one of the Kings principall Captains, and his own great enemy, lay by the River, against whom he requested them to assist him. By such devices, and excessive promise of reward, he brought them to *Euphrates*; where some of the *Greeks* considering, That who so passed the River first, should have the most thanks, and might safely return if the rest should refuse to follow them; they entred the Foords, whereby were all finally perswaded to do as some had begun: and being allured by great hopes, they resolved to seek out *Artaxerxes*, wherefoever he was to be found. The King in the mean time having raised an army of nine hundred thousand men, was not so confident upon this huge multitude, as to adventure them in trial of a plain battail. *Abrocomus*, who with three hundred thousand men, had under-taken to make good the Streights of *Syria*, which were very narrow, and fortified with a strong wall, and other defences of nature and art, which made the place to seem impregnable, had quitted the passage, and retired himself toward the Kings forces, not daring to look *Cyrus* in the face, who despairing to find any way by Land, had procured the *Lacedaemonian* fleet, by the benefit whereof to have transported to his Army. I doe not find that this cowardise of *Abrocomus*, or his Souldiers, who arrived not at the Camp, till five dayes were past after the battail, received either punishment, or disgrace; for they, toward whom he withdrew himself, were all made of the same metall.

Therefore *Artaxerxes* was upon the point of returing to the uttermost bounds of his Kingdom, untill by *Teribazus*, one of his Captains, he was perswaded not to abandon so many goodly Provinces to the enemy, who would thereby have gathered addition of strength, and (which in the sharp disputation of Title to a Kingdom is most available) would have grown superior in reputation. By such advice, the King resolved upon meeting with his brother, who now began to be secure, being fully perswaded that *Artaxerxes* would never dare to abide him in the field. For the King having cast up a Trench of almost fortie miles in length, about thirty foot broad, and eighteen foot deep, intended there to have encamped: but his courage failing him, he abandoned that place, thinking nothing so safe, as to be far distant from his enemies.

## S. III.

## The battail between Cyrus and Artaxerxes.

THE Armie of *Cyrus* having overcome many difficulties of evill wayes, and scarcity of victuals, was much encouraged by perceiving this great fear of *Artaxerxes*; and being past this trench, marched carelessly in great disorder, having bestowed their Arms in Carts, and upon Beasts of carriage; when on the sudden one of their Vaunt-currors, brought news of the Kings approach. Hereupon with great tumult they armed themselves, and had ranged their battails in good order upon the side of the river *Euphrates*, where they waited for the comming of their enemies, whom they saw not till it was after noon. But when they saw the cloud of dust raised by the feet of that huge multitude, which the King drew after him, and perceived by their neer approach how well they were marshalled, comming on very orderly in silence, whereas it had bin expected, that rushing violently with loud clamours, they should have spent all their force upon the first brunt; and when it appeared that the fronts of the two Armies were so unequal in distent, being all embattailed in one body and square, that *Cyrus* taking his place (as was the *Persian* manner) in the midst of his own, did not with the corner, and utmost point thereof, reach to the half breadth of *Artaxerxes* his battail, who carried a front proportionable to his number, exceeding nine times that of *Cyrus*: then did the *Greeks* begin to distrust their own manhood, which was not accustomed to make proof of it self, upon such excessive odds. It was almost incredible, that so great an Armie should be so easily chafed. Nevertheless, it quickly appeared, that these *Persians*, having learned (contrary to their custome) to give charge upon their

their enemies with silence, had not learned (for it was contrary to their nature) to receive charge with courage. Upon the very first offer of onsets, made by the *Greeks*, all that beastly rabble of cowards fled again, without abiding the stroke, or staying till they were within reach of a Dart. The Chariots armed with hooks and fitches (whereof *Artaxerxes* had two hundred, and *Cyrus* not twenty) did small hurt that day; because the drivers of them leaping down, fled away on foot. This base demeanour of his engines gave so much confidence to *Cyrus* and his Followers, that such as were about him forth with adored him as King. And certainly, the Title had bin assured unto him that day, had not he sought how to declare himself worthy of it, ere yet he had obtained it. For, perceiving that *Artaxerxes*, who found that part of the field which lay before him void, was about to encompass the *Greeks*, and to set upon them in the rear, he advanced with six hundred Horse, and gave so valiant a charge upon a Squadron of six thousand, which lay before the King; that he brake it, slaying the Captain thereof *Artaxerxes* with his own hands, and putting all the rest to flight. Hereupon his whole company of six hundred, very few excepted, began to follow the chase, leaving *Cyrus* well attended, who perceiving where the King stood in troop, uncertain whether to fight, or leave the field, could not contain himself, but said, *Behold the man*: and presently with a small handful of men about him ran upon his brother, whom he strake through the Curace, and wounded in the breast. Having given this stroke, which was his last, he received immediately the fatal blow, which gave period at once to his ambition and life, being wounded under the eye with a dart, thrown by a base fellow, whereunto astonished, he fell dead from his horse, or so hurt, that it was impossible to have recovered him, though all which were with him, did their best for his lasteie, nor caring afterwards for their own lives, when once they perceived that *Cyrus* their Master was slain. *Artaxerxes* caused the head and right hand of his brother to be forthwith stricken off, and shewed to his people, who now pursuing them, fled apace, calling upon the name of *Cyrus*, and desiring him to pardon them. But when this great accident had breathed new courage into the Kings troops, and utterly dismayed such *Persian* Captains as were now, even in their own eyes, no better than rebels; it was not long ere the Camp of *Cyrus* was taken, being quite abandoned; from whence *Artaxerxes* making all speed, arrived quickly at the quarter of the *Greeks*, which was about three miles from the place where *Cyrus* fell. There he met with *Tissaphernes*, who having made way through the battail of the *Greeks*, was ready now to joyn with his Master in spoiling their Tents. Had not the news, which *Artaxerxes* brought with him of his brothers death, bin sufficient to countervail all disasters received, the exploit of *Tissaphernes* in breaking through the *Greeks* would have yielded little comfort. For *Tissaphernes* had not slain any one man of the *Greeks*; but contrariwise, when he gave upon them, they opening their battail, drave him with great slaughter through them, in such wise, that he rather escaped as out of an hard passage, than forced his way through the Squadron of the *Greeks*. Hereof the King being informed by him, and that the *Greeks*, as Masters of the field, gave chase to all that came in their fight, they ranged their Companies into good order, and followed after these *Greeks*, intending to set upon them in the rear. But these good Souldiers perceiving the Kings approach, turned their faces, and made head against him; who not intending to seek honour with danger of his life, wheeled about and fled, being pursued unto a certain Village, that lay under a Hill, on the top whereof he made a stand, rather in a bravery, than with purpose to attempt upon these bold fellows any further. For he knew well that his brothers death had secured his estate, whom he would seem to have slain with his own hand, thinking that fact alone sufficient to give reputation to his valour; and this reputation so he thought that he might now preserve well enough, shewing a manly look half a mile off. On the top of this Hill therefore he advanced his Standard, a golden Eagle displayed on the top of a Spear. This ensign might have encouraged his people, had not some of the *Greeks* espied it, who not meaning that he should abide so neer them, with all their power marched toward him. The King discovering their approach, fled upon the spur; so that none remained in the place of battail, save only the *Greeks*, who had lost that day not one man, nor taken any other harme, than that one of them was hurt with an arrow. Much they wondered that they heard no news of *Cyrus*, but thinking that he was pursuing the Army, they thought it was fittest for them,

having that day done enough, to return to their quarter, and take their Supper, to while in they had good appetite, because the expectation of the Kings comming had given them no leisure to dine.

## §. V.

*The hard estate of the Greeks after the fight; and how Artaxerxes in vain sought to have made them yeeld unto him.*

**I**T was now about the setting of the Sun, and they bringing home darke night with them, found their Camp spoiled, little or nothing being left that might serve for food: so that wanting victuals to satisfie their hunger, they refreshed their weary bodies with sleep. In the mean season Artaxerxes returning to his Camp, which he entered by Torch-light, could not enjoy the pleasure of his good fortune entire, because he perceived that the balencesse of his people, and weaknesse of his Empire, was now plainly discovered to the Greeks: which gave him assurance, that if any of these who had beheld the shamefull demeanor of his Army, should live to carry tidings home, it would not be long, ere with greater forces they dispaired with him for his whole Signory. Wherefore he resolved, to try all means, whereby he might bring them to defestation, and not let one escape to carry tidings of that which he had seen: to which purpose he sent them a brave message the next morning; charging them to deliver up their Arms, and come to his Gates, to await there upon his Meicic. It seems that he was in good hope to have found their high courages broken, upon report of his brothers death: but he was greatly deceived in that thought. For the Greeks being advertised that morning from Arius, a principall Commander under Cyrus, that his Master being slain, he had retired himself to the place of their last encamping, about eight miles from thence, whence intending to return into Ionia, his meaning was to dislodge the next day, awaiting for them so long if they would joyn with him, but resolving to stay no longer: they sent answer back to Arius, that having beaten the King out of the field, and finding none that durst resist them, they would place Arius himself in the Kings Throne, if he would joyn with them, and pursue the victory. Before they received any reply to this answer, the Messengers of Artaxerxes arrived at the Camp, whole errand declared to the Captains very insolent: One told them, that it was not for the Vanquishers to yield their Weapons; another, that he would dye ere he yeelded to such a motion; a third asked, whether the King, as having the victory, required their Weapons; if so, why did he not fetch them? or, whether he desired them in way of friendship: for then would they first know, with what courtesie he meant to requite their kindnesse. To this question Phalimus a Grecian, waiting upon Tissaphernes, answered; That the King having slain Cyrus, knew no man that could pretend any Title to his Kingdom, in the middle of whereof he held them fast enclosed with great Rivers, being able to bring against them such numbers of men, as they wanted strength to kill if they would hold up their throats; for which cause he accounted them his prisoners. These words, to them, who knew themselves to be free, were nothing pleasant. Therefore, one told Phalimus, that having nothing left, but their Arms and Valour, whilst they kept their Armes, their Valour would be serviceable; but should they yeeld them, it was to be doubted, that their bodies would not long remain their own. Hereat Phalimus laughed, saying; This young man did seem a Philosopher, and made a pretty speech; but that his deep speculation shewed his wits to be very shallow, if he thought with his Arms and Valour to prevail against the great King. It seems that Phalimus being a Courtier, and employed in a businesse of importance, thought himself too profound a States-man, to be checkt in his Embassage by a bookish discourser. But his wisdom herein failed him. For whatsoever he himself was (of whom no more is known than that he brought an unhoneest message to his own Countrymen, perswading them basely to surrender their Weapons, and Lives, to the mercilesse Barbarians) this young Scholar by him despised, was that great Xenophon, who, when all the principall Commanders were surpris'd by treachery of the Persians, being a private Gentleman, and having never seen the war before, undertook the conduct of the Army, which he brought safe into Greece, freeing it from all those, and from greater dangers than Phalimus could propound. Some there were who promised to be faithfull to the King, as they had bin to Cyrus, offering their

their service in Egypt, where they thought Artaxerxes might have use of them. But the small answer was, That without Weapons they could neither doe the King good as Friends, nor defend themselves from him as Enemies. Hereupon Phalimus delivered the Kings further pleasure, which was to grant them Truce, whilst they abode where they then were, denouncing Warre if they stirred thence; Whereunto he required their answer. Clearchus the Generall told him, they liked it. How, (saith Phalimus) must I understand you? As choosing peace if we stay, or otherwise war, said Clearchus. But whether warre or peace, quoth this polittique Embassadour: To whom Clearchus (not willing to acquaint him with their purpose,) Let our doings tell you; and so dismissed him, no less wiser than he came. All that day the Greeks were faine to feed upon their Horses, Ases, and other Beasts, which they rosted with Arrowes, darts, and wooden targets, thrown away by the Enemies.

## §. VI.

*How the Greeks began to return home-wards.*

**A**T night they took their way towards Arius, to whom they came at mid-night; being forsaken by four hundred foot, and forty horse, all Thracians, who fled over to the King, by whom how they were entertained, I doe not find. Like enough it is that they were cut in pieces; for had they been kindly used, it may well be thought that some of them should have accompanied Tissaphernes, & served as Stales to draw in the rest. Arius being of too base a temper, and birth, to think upon seeking the Kingdome for himself, with such assistance as might have given it unto Cyrus, was very well pleased to make covenant with them for mutuall assistance unto the last: Whereunto both parts having sworn, he advised them to take another way homeward, which should be somewhat longer, yet safer and fitter to relieve them with victuals, than that by which they came. The next day, having made a sweatifome march, and tyred the Soldiers, they found the Kings Army which had coasted them, lodged in certain Villages, where they purposed themselves to have encamped: towards which Clearchus made directly, because he would not seem by declining them to shew fear, or weaknesse. That the Kings men were contented to remove, and give place to their betters, it cannot be strange to any that hath considered their former behaviour; Nor strange, that the Grecians, being weary and hungry, and lying among enemies in an unknown Country, should be very fearefull: but it is almost past beliefe, that the noise which was heard of these poor men, calling one to another tumultuously, as the present condition enforced them to do, should make the Persians shie out of their Camp, and so affright the great King, that in stead of demanding their Arms, he should crave peace of them. The next day very early, came messengers from Artaxerxes, desiring free access for Embassadours, to treat of peace. Were it not that such particulars doe best open the quality of the persons, by whom things were managed, I should hold it fitter, to run over the generall remarks of those times, than to dwell among circumstances. But surely it is a point very remarkable, That when Clearchus had willed the Messengers to bid the King prepare for battell, because the Greeks (as he said) wanting whereupon to dine, could not endure to hear of truce till their bellies were full; Artaxerxes dissembling the indignity, was contented sweetly to swallow down this pill, sending them guides, who conducted them to a place where was plenty of victuals to relieve them.

## §. VII.

*How Tissaphernes, under colour of peace, betrayed all the Captains of the Greeks.*

**H**itherto the Greeks, relying upon their own vertue, had rather advanced their affairs, than brought themselves into any straights or termes of disadvantage. But now came unto them the subtle Fox Tissaphernes, who, circumventing the Chief Commanders by fine sleights, did mischievously entrap them, to the extreme danger of the Army. He told them, that his Province, lying neer unto Greece, had caused him greatly to desire, that their deliverance might be wrought by his procurement; knowing well that in time to come, both they, and their Countrymen at home, would not be unthankfull for such a benefit. Herewithall hee forgot not to rehearse



the great service that he had done to his Master, being the first that advertised him of *Cyrus* his intent, and having not onely brought him a good strength of men, but in the day of battell shewed his face to the *Greekes*, when all others turned their backs: that he, together with the King, did enter their Camp, and gave chase to the *Barbarians* that stood on the part of *Cyrus*. All this (quoth he) did I allege to the King, entreating that he would give me leave to conduct you safe into *Greece*, in which sure I have good hope to speed, if you will send a milde answer to him, who hath willed me to ask you, for what cause ye have borne Arms against him: The Captains hearing this, were contented to give gentle words, which *Tissaphernes* relating to the King, procured (though very hardly, as he said) that peace should be granted: the conditions whereof were, That they should passe freely through all the Kings Dominions, paying for that they took, and committing no spoil: yet that it should be lawfull for them to take victuals by force, in any place that refused to afford them an open Market. Hereupon both parties having sworn, the League was concluded, and *Tissaphernes* returning to the King to take leave, and end all businesse, came unto them again after twenty dayes, and then they set forward: This interim of twenty dayes, which *Tissaphernes* did spend at the Court, ministered great occasion of mistrust to his new Confederates. For besides his long absence, which alone sufficed to breed doubt, the Brethren, and Kindred of *Arius*, repairing daily to him, and other *Persians* to his Souldiers, did work him and them so with assurance of pardon, and other allurements, that he daily grew more strange to the *Greeks* than formerly he had bin. This caused many to advise *Clearchus*, rather to passe forward as well as he might, than to rely upon covenants; and sit still whilest the King layd snares to entrap them. But he on the contrary perswaded them, to rest contented whilest they were well, and not to cast themselves again into those difficulties, out of which they were newly freed by the late Treatie; reciting withall their own wants, and the Kings means, but especially the Oathes mutually given and taken, wherewith he saw no reason why the enemy should have clogged himself if hee meant mischief, having power enough to do them harm by a fair and open Warre.

*Tissaphernes* was a very honourable man (if honour may be valued by greatnesse and place in Court) which caused his Oath to be the more esteemed; for as much as noisome force, or base respect, was like to have drawn it from him. But his falshood was such, both in substance and in successe, as may fitly expound that saying, which proceeded from the fountain of Truth, *I hate a rich man a lyer*. A lyer may find excuse when it grows out of fear: for that passion hath his originall from weaknesse. But when Power, which is a Character of the Almighty, shall be made the supporter of untruth, the falshood is most abominable; for the offender, like proud *Lusifer*, advancing his own strength against the divine Justice, doth commit that sinne with an high hand, which commonly produceth lamentable effects, and is followed with sure vengeance. It was not long ere *Tissaphernes* found means to destroy all the Captains, whom he subtilly got into his power by a train; making the Generall *Clearchus* himself the mean to draw in all the rest. The businesse was contrived thus: Having travelled some dayes together in such wise, that the *Persians* did not encamp with the *Greeks*, who were very jealous of the great familiarity appearing between *Tissaphernes* and *Arius*; *Clearchus* thought it convenient to rooke out of *Tissaphernes* his brains all causes of distrust, whereof many had grown in that short time. To which purpose obtaining private conference with him; he rehearsed the oath of Confederacie, which had past between them, shewing how religiously he would keep it; and repeating the benefits, which the *Greeks* did receive by the help of *Tissaphernes*, he promised that their love should appear to him not unfruitfull, if he would make use of their service against the *Myrians* or *Pisidians*, who were accustomed to infest his Provinces; or against the *Egyptians*, who were then Rebels to the great King. For which cause hee desired him, that whereas all divine and humane respects had linked them together, hee would not give place to any close accusation or suspicion, whereby might grow sudden inconvenience to either of them, upon no just ground. The faithlesse *Persian* was very much delighted with this speech, which ministered fair occasion to the execution of his purpose. Therefore hee told *Clearchus*, that all this was by him wisely considered, wishing him further to call to mind how many wayes hee could have used to bring them to confusion, without perill to himself, especially by burning the Country, through which they were to passe, whereby they must needs

needs have perished by meer famine. For which cause he said that it had bin great folly, to seek by perjurie, odious to God and Man, the destruction of such as were already in his hands. But the truth was, that his own love to them had moved him to work their safety, not onely for those ends which *Clearchus* had recounted, of pleasures that might redound to himself, and the King, by their assistance; but for that hee might by their friendship, hope to obtain what *Cyrus* had mist. Finally, he invited the credulous Gentlemen to Supper, and sent him away so well assured of his good will, that he promised to bring all the Captains with him to the same place, where, in presence of them all, *Tissaphernes* likewise promised to tell openly, which of them had by secret information sought to raise dissention between them. *Clearchus* himself being thus deceived, with great importunity drew all the chief Commanders, and many of the inferiour Leaders, to repair with him to the Camp of *Tissaphernes*, whither followed them about two hundred of the common Souldiers, as it had been to some common Fair. But being there arrived, *Clearchus* with other the five principall Colonels, were called into the Tent, the rest staying without, where they had not waited long ere a signe was given, upon which they within were apprehended, and the residue slain. Forth-with certain bands of *Persian* Horsemen scoured the field, killing as many *Greeks* as they met, and riding up to the very Camp of the *Gracians*, who wondered much at the tumult, whereof they knew not the cause, till one, escaping sorely wounded, informed them of all that had been done. Hereupon the *Greeks* took Arms in haste, thinking that the enemy would forth-with have assailed their Camp. Anon they might perceive the Embassadors of *Tissaphernes*, among whom were his own brother, and *Arius*, followed with three hundred Horse, who called for the principall men in the Army, saying, that they brought a message from the King, which *Arius* delivered to this effect: That *Clearchus* having broken his faith, and the league made, was justly rewarded with death; that *Menon* and *Proxenus*, two other of the five Colonels; for detecting his treacherie, were highly honoured; and finally, that the King required them to surrender their Arms, which were due to him, as having belonged unto his servant *Cyrus*. When some altercation had followed upon this message, *Xenophon* told the Embassadors, that if *Clearchus* had in such sort offended, it was well that hee was in such sort punished: but he willed them to send back *Menon* and *Proxenus*, whom they had so greatly honoured, that by them, as by common friends to both Nations, the *Greeks* might be advised how to answer the *Persian*. Hereunto the Embassadors knew not how to frame any reply, and therefore departed without speaking one word more. *Clearchus*, and the other four, were sent to *Artaxerxes*, by whose commandment their heads were stricken off. I hold it not amisse to prevent the order of time, annexing to this perfidioussnesse of *Tissaphernes*, the reward which he afterward received. He saw his Province wasted by the *Greeks*, against whom receiving from his Master convenient aid of men and money, he did so ill manage his affairs, that neither subtiltie, nor perjury (to which he failed not to have recourse) availed him; finally, the King was jealous of his cunning head, and sent a new Lieutenant into those parts, who took it from his shoulders. Such was the recompence of his treacherie, which made him so mistrusted at home, that the service which he could not doe, he was thought upon private ends to neglect; and so hated abroad, that he knew not which way to flee from the stroke, all the world being shut against him. But now let us return to the prosperity, wherein he triumphed without great cause, having betrayed braver men than himself, and intending to bring the like mischief upon the whole Armie.

## s. VIII.

How *Xenophon* heartened the *Greeks*, and in despite of *Tissaphernes* went off safely.

Great was the heaviness of the Souldiers, being now left destitute of Leaders; and no lesse their fear of the evil hanging over their heads, which they knew not well how to avoid. Among the rest, *Xenophon*, whose learning supplied his want of experience, finding the deep sadnesse of the whole Army to be such as hindered them from taking any course of preventing the danger at hand, began to advise the under-



under-officers of *Proxenus* his companies, whose familiar friend he had been, to behead themselves of some mean, whereby their safety might be wrought, and the Soldiers encouraged: setting before their eyes whatsoever might serve for to give them hope, and above all, persuading them in no wise to yeeld to the mercy of their barbarous enemies.

Hereupon they desired him to take upon him the charge of that Regiment; and so together with him, the same night calling up such as were remaining of any account, they made choice of the fittest men to succeed in the places of those who were slain, or taken. This being done, and order set down for disburdening the Armie of all superfluous impediments, they easily comforted themselves for the losse of *Tissaphernes* his assistance, hoping to take victuals by force better cheap than he had been wont to sell them; to which purpose they intended to take up their lodging two or three miles further, among some plentiful Villages, and so to proceed, marching towards the heads of those great Rivers, which lay in their way, and to passe them where they were foordable. Many attempts were made upon them by *Tissaphernes*, whom they, serving all on foot, were not able to requite for the harm which they received by the *Persian* Archers, who shot at a farther distance than the *Greeks* could reach. For this cause did *Xenophon* provide slings, wherewith he over-reached the enemy; and finding some Horses fit for service, they were employed among the carriages, he set men upon them; training likewise his Archers to shoot compass, who had been accustomed to the point blank. By these means did he bear off the *Persians* who assailed him; and sometimes gave them chase with that band of fifty Horses, which being well backt with a firm body of footmen, and seconded with troupes of the light-armed-foot and slingers, compelled the enemy to lie aloof. *Tissaphernes* not daring to come to handy-gripes with these resolute men, did possesse the tops of mountains, and places of advantage, by which they were to passe. But finally, when their valour made way through all such difficulties, he betook himself to the course, which was indeed the surest, of burning the Countrey. With great sorrow did the *Greeks* behold the Villages on fire, and thereby all hope of victuals cut off. Some advised to defend the Countrey, as granted by the enemy himself to be theirs; others to make more fires, if so perhaps the *Persians* might be ashamed to doe that which was the desire of such as made passage in hostile manner; But these were faint comforts. The best counsell was, that being near unto the *Carduchi*, a people enemy to the *Persian*, they should enter into their Countrey, passing over some high mountains which lay between them. This course they followed, which could not have availed them, if *Tissaphernes* had begun sooner to cut off their victuals, rather than to seek to force, or to circumvent them by his fine wit.

## §. IX.

The difficulties which the Greek Armie found in passing through the Land of the *Carduchi*.

Entering upon the Land of the *Carduchi*, they were encountered with many difficulties of ways, but much more afflicted by the fierce Inhabitants, who, accustomed by force to defend themselves against the huge Armies of the *Persian*, were no way inferior to the *Greeks* in daring, but only in the Art of Warre. They were very light of foot, skilfull Archers, and used the Sling well; which weapons in that mountainous Countrey were of much use against these poor travellers, afflicting them in seven dayes which they spent in that passage, farre more than all the power of the great King had done. Between the Territorie of these *Carduchi*, and the parts of *Armenia* confining them, ran *Centrites* a great River, upon which the *Greeks* refused themselves one day, rejoicing that they had so well escaped these dangers, and hoping that the remainder would prove easie. But the next morning they saw certain troops of Horse, that lay to forbid their passage. These were levied by the Kings detroups in those parts, *Tissaphernes* and his Companies having taken their way towards *Ionia*. The River was broad and deep, so that it was not possible for such as would enter it, to make resistance against those which kept the opposite bankes. To increase these dangers, the *Carduchi*, following upon them, lay on the side of a Mountain, within lesse than a mile of the water. But it was their good hap to discover a Foord, by which the

greatest

greater number of them passing over, did easily chase away the Subjects of the *Persian*, and then sending back the most expedite men, gave succour to the Rear-ward, against which the *Carduchi* being slightly armed, could not on plain ground make resistance hand to hand. These *Carduchi* seem to have inhabited the Mountains of *Niphates*, which are not far from the Spring of *Tygris*, though *Proxenus* place them far more to the East upon the River of *Cyrrus* in *Media*; wherein he differs much from *Xenophon*, whose relation being grounded upon his own knowledge, doth best in this case deserve credit. Of the River *Centrites* (as of many other Rivers, Towns, and Places, mentioned by *Xenophon*) I will not make a conjecture, which may endure the severity of a Critique. For *Proxenus*, and the whole Nation of Geographers, adde small light to this expedition: only of this last, I think it the same which falleth into *Tygris*, not much above *Artasigoria*, springing out of *Niphates*, and running by the Town of *Sardena* in *Gordene*, a Province of *Armenia* the Great, wherein the *Greeks* having passed *Centrites* did arrive.

## §. X.

*Ant* Teribazus Governor of *Armenia*, seeking to entrap the *Greeks* with termes of feined peace, was disappointed, and shamefully beaten.

The Army finding in *Armenia* good provision, marched without any disturbance about fifty or threescore miles to the heads of the River *Tygris*, and passing over them, travailed as far further without resistance, till they were encountered by *Teribazus* at the River *Teleboia*, which *Xenophon* commends as a goodly water, though small, but *Proxenus* and others omit it. *Teribazus* governed that Countrey for the *Persian*, and was in great favour with *Ariaxerxes*, whose Court may seem to have bin a School, where the Art of fallhood was taught as wisdom. He desired peace of the *Greeks*, which was made upon this condition, That they should take what they pleased, but not burn down the Towns and Villages in their way. As soon as he had made this league, he levied an Army, and besetting the Streights of certain Mountains which they were to passe, hoped well to make such benefit of their security, as might give him the commendation of being no lesse craftily dishonest than *Tissaphernes*. Yet his cunning failed of success. For a great snow fell, which caused the *Greeks* to make many fires, and scatter themselves abroad in the Villages. *Teribazus* also made many fires, and some of his men wandered about seeking relief. By the fires he was discovered, and by a Soldier of his that was taken prisoner, the whole plot was revealed. Hereupon the *Greeks*, taking this captive with them for a guide, fought him out; and coming upon his Camp, did so affright him, that before the whole Army could arrive there, the shout which was raised by the Vant-currors, chased him away. They took his Pavillion, wherein (besides many slaves, that were Artificers of voluptuousnesse) very rich furniture was left by the treacherous coward, who returned no more to challenge it. From hence the Army went Northward, and passing *Euphrates*, nor far below the springs thereof, travailed with much difficulty through deep snow, being followed aloof by the enemy, who durst not approach them, but did cut off such as they found straggling behind. The Inhabitants of the Countrey, through which they marched, had their wintering houses under ground, wherein was found great plenty of victuals, and of Cattail, which likewise did winter in the same Cellars with the owners. Having refreshed themselves in those parts, & taken sufficient ease after the miserable journey, which had consumed many of them with extreme cold, they departed, leading with them many bond-slaves, & taking away (besides other Horses and Cattail) some Colts that were bred up for the great King.

## §. XI.

The passage of the Army to *Trabyzonde*, through the Countreies bordering upon the River of *Phasis*, and other obscure Nations.

SO without impediment they came to the River *Phasis*, neer whereunto the people called *Phasiani*, *Tacchi*, and *Chalybes* were seated. These Nations joyned together, and occupying the tops of a ledge of Mountains, which the *Greeks* were

were to passe, made countenance of war: but some companies being sent by night to seize upon a place of equal height to that whereon the enemies lay, making good the piece of ground which they had taken, secured the ascent of the rest, which caused the people to flye, every one retiring to the defence of his own. The first upon whose Countreie the *Greeks* did enter were the *Tacchi*, who conveying all their provision of victuals into strong holds, brought the Army into much want; untill with hard labour one place was forced, wherein great store of Cattail were taken; the people, to avoid captivity, threw themselves head-long down the rocks, the very women throwing down first their own children, and then casting themselves upon them. Here was taken a great bootie of Cattail, which served to feed them, travelling through the land of the *Chalybes*, of whom they got nothing but strokes. The *Chalybes* were a very stout Nation, well armed at all points, and exceeding fierce. They encountered the *Greeks* hand to hand, killing as many as they took prisoners, and cutting off their heads; which they carried away, singing and dancing, to the great grief of their companions living; who were glad, when after seven dayes journey they escaped from those continual skirmishes, wherewith they had bin vexed by these *Barbarians*. Hence travelling through a good corn-Country, inhabited by an obscure Nation called the *Seythini*, they came to a rich Town, the Lord whereof, and of the Region adjoining, used them friendly, and promised to guide them to a Mountain, whence they might discover the *Euxine* Sea. From *Gymnias* (which was the name of his Town) he led them through the Territories of his enemies, desiring them to waste it with sword and fire. After five dayes march, they came to a Mountain called *Teches*, being (as I think) a part of the Mountains called *Moschici*, whence their guide shewed them the Sea; towards which they bent their course: and passing friendly through the Region of the *Macrones*, (with whom by means of an interpreter, found among themselves, who born in that place had bin sold into *Greece*, they made a good peace) they arrived in the Land of *Colchos*, wherewith they made the Citie of *Trabizond*, called then *Trapezus*, a Colonie of the *Greeks*. The *Colchi* entreating them with hostility, were requited with the like; for the Army having now good leisure to repose themselves among their friends the *Trapezuntians*, did spoyle the Country thirty dayes together, forbearing onely the Borderers upon *Trabizonde*, at the Citizens request.

## §. XI.

How the Army began at Trabizond to provide a Fleet, wherewith to return home by Sea: how it came into the Territorie of Synope, and there prosecuted the same purpose.

Having now found an Haven Town, the Souldiers were desirous to take shipping, & change their tedious Land-journeys into an easie Navigation. To which purpose *Cherisophus* a *Lacedaemonian* Admirall, who was his friend, that he would provide Vessels to embark them. Having thus concluded, they likewise took order for the staying of such ships as should passe that way, meaning to use them for their navigation. Left all this provision should be found insufficient for the transportation of the whole Army, *Xenophon* perswaded the Cities adjoining to clear the wayes, and make an easie passage for them by Land, wherunto the Souldiers were utterly unwilling to give care, being desirous to return by Sea: but the Countreie, fearing what inconvenience might grow by their long stay, did readily condescend to *Xenophons* request. Two ships they borrowed of the *Trapezuntians*, which they manned and sent to Sea: the one of them sailed directly into *Greece*, forsaking their Companions, who had put them in trust to bring ships into the Port of *Trabizonde*: the other took Merchants and passengers, whose goods were safely kept for the owners, but the Vessels were stayed to increase the fleet. After long aboad, when victuals began to fail, by reason that all the Land of the *Colchi*, neer unto the Camp, was already quite wasted, they were faine to embark their sick men, with the women, children, and such of the baggage as might be spared, in those few ships which they had already provided. The rest of the Army took their way by Land to *Cerasus*, a Greek Town, where the fleet likewise arrived. Here the Army being mustered, was found to consist of eight thousand & six hundred men. From hence they passed through the Country of the *Mosynaci*, who were

<sup>a</sup> Mosynaci a Nation of Pontus Cap. 2. de iud.

divided into factions. The stronger partie despising their friendships, caused them to join them with the weaker whom they left Masters of all.

The next place of their abode was *Cotyora*, a Greek Town likewise, and a Colonie of the *Synopians*, as *Trapezus* and *Cerasus* were; but the entertainment which here they found was very churlish, having neither an open Market afforded to them, nor the sick men that were among them admitted into any house. Hereupon the Souldiers entered the Town by force, and (committing no outrage) bestowed those which were sick in convenient lodgings, taking into their own hands the custody of the Gates. Provision for the Army they made by strong hand, partly out of the Territorie of the *Paphlagonians*, partly out of the Lands belonging to the Town. These news were unwelcome to *Sinope*, whence Embassadors were sent to the Camp, who complaining of these dealings, and threatening to joyn with the *Paphlagonians*, if redresse could nor otherwise be had, were roundly answered by *Xenophon*, That meer necessity had enforced the Army to teach those of *Cotyora* good manners in so bad a method: letting them know, that he feared not to deal with them and the *Paphlagonians* at once, though perhaps the *Paphlagonians* would be glad to take *Sinope* it self, to which, if cause were given, they would lend assistance. Upon this answer the Embassadors grew better advised, promising all friendship that the State of *Sinope* could shew, and commanding the Town of *Cotyora* to relieve the Souldiers as well as they might. Further, they promised to assist them with shipping, letting them understand how difficult the passage by Land would prove, in regard of the many and great Rivers, as *Thermodon*, *Iris*, *Halys*, and *Parthenius*, which crossed their way. This good counsaile, and the fair promises accompanying it, were kindly accepted by the Army, which well perceived, that the City of *Sinope* would spare no cost, to be freed from such a neighbourhood. It was therefore decreed that they would passe the rest of the way by Sea; provided that if there should want such number of Vessels as might serve to imbarke every one of them, then would they not put from the shore.

## §. XIII.

Of dissention which arose in the Army, and how it was embarked.

Hitherto the danger of enemies, and miseries of weather and wants, had kept the companie in firm unity; which now began to dissolve and to thaw, by the neighbouring air of *Greece*, warming their heads with private respects to their severall ends and purposes. Whilest they, who were sent as Agents from the Camp, remained at *Sinope*, *Xenophon* considering the strength and valour of his men, & the opportunity of the coast whereon they lay, thought it would be an honourable work to build a City in those parts, which were soon like to prove great and wealthie, in regard both of their own puissance, and of the great repair of the *Greeks* into that quarter. For this cause he made sacrifice, according to the superstition of his time and Countreie, divining of his success by the entrails of beasts. The Sooth-sayer whom he employed had received a great reward of *Cyrus*, for conjecturing aright, that *Artaxerxes* would not give battail in ten dayes: he therefore, having preserved his money carefully, was desirous to be soon at home, that he might freely enjoy his gettings. By him the purpose of *Xenophon* was divulged, which was interpreted according to the diversitie of mens opinions, some approving the motion, but the greater part rejecting it. They of *Sinope* and *Heraclea*, being informed of this consultation, were fore afraid, lest the poverty of the Souldiers, who had not wherewith to maintain themselves at home, should give successe to the project. Which to prevent, they promised to supply the Army with a sufficient fleet, and likewise offered money to some of the Captains, who thereupon undertook to give the Souldiers pay, if they would presently set sail for *Greece*. One of these Captains being a banished man, desired them to follow him into *Troas*; another offered to lead them into *Cherronesus*: *Xenophon*, who desired only the common good, was pleased greatly with these propositions, and professed openly that he would have them to set forward, & hold together in any case, punishing him as a traitor that should forsake the Army, before such time as they were arrived at their journeyes end. *Silanus* the Sooth-sayer, who had uttered *Xenophons* purpose, was hereby staied from outrunning his fellows, and driven to abide with his wealth among poor men, longer than stood

<sup>a</sup> Cotyora a Port-Town in the same Region.

<sup>c</sup> Sinope a Port-Town in *Lucania*, a Colonie of the *Mysians*.

stood with his good liking. Also the other Captains were much troubled and afraid, when they perceived, that ships were prepared sufficient for their Navigation, but that the money promised to them, and by them to the Souldiers, came not. For the people of *Sinope*, and *Heraclea*, knowing that the Armie was now resolved for the voyage, and that *Xenophon*, whom they feared, had perswaded them to this resolution, thought it the wisest way to furnish them with a Navie, whilest they were in good readinesse, to depart, but to keep the money to themselves. The Captains therefore, who being disappointed by these towns, found themselves in great danger of their men, whom they had deceived with fair hopes, repented much of their fair offers, and signifying as much to *Xenophon*, prayed him to make proposition to the Armie, of taking the ships, & saying to *Phasis*, where they might seize upon Lands, and plant themselves in such wise as should stand best with their good liking. But finding him cold in the businesse, they began to work the principall of their own followers, hoping by them to draw in all the rest. These news becoming publicke, bred a suspicion of *Xenophon*, as if he had won the rest of the Captains to his purpose, and meant now to carry the Army quite another way from their own home. Wherefore assembling the Companies, he gave them satisfaction, and withall complained of some disorders, which he caused them to redresse. A general inquisition was likewise made of offences committed since the death of *Cyrus*, which being punished, all things were in quiet. Shortly after came Embassadors from *Carpus*, Lord of the *Paphlagonians*, who sending presents, desired peace of the *Greeks*: the Embassadors were friendly entertained, and peace concluded, which needed not to have bin sought, for that the *Greeks*, having now their fleet in a readines, did soon weigh Anchors, and set sail for *Harmene* the Port of *Sinope*, whither *Cherisophus* came, bringing with him a few Gallies from the Admiral *Anaxibius*, who promised to give the Army pay as soon as they came into the parts of *Greece*.

## s. XIV.

Another great dissension and distraction of the Army. How the mutiners were beaten by the Barbarians, and rescued by *Xenophon*.

THE neerer that they approached to *Greece*, the greater was their desire to make provision for themselves, that they might not return home empty-handed. Wherefore trusting well that if the charge of the Armie were absolutely committed to one sufficient man, he might the more conveniently procure the good of them all, they determined to make *Xenophon* sole Commander of all, in whose favour as well the Captains as the common Souldiers were very earnest and violent. But he, either fearing to displease the *Lacedemonians*, who were jealous of him already (being incensed by that fugitive who forsook the army at *Trabizond*, flying with one of their two ships) or moved by some tokens appearing to him in the entrails that threatned ill successe to his government, procured wvith vehement contention, that this honour vvvas laid upon *Cherisophus*, a *Lacedemonian*. It seems that *Xenophon*, considering the vexation incident to the conduct of a voluntary Army, wanting pay, did wisely in yeelding to such tokens as forbad him to accept it: especially, knowing lo well their desire, which was, by right or by wrong, to get wealth whosoever it might be found, without all regard of friend or foe. *Cherisophus* had bin Generall but six or seven dayes, when he was depofed, for having bin unwilling to rob the Town of *Heraclea*, which had sent presents to the Camp, and bin very beneficiall unto them in lending ships to their transportation. Two dayes they had sailed by the coast of *Asia*, when being past those great rivers, which would have given impediment to their journey by Land, they touched at *Heraclea*, where consulting how to take their way onwards, whether by Land or Sea, one seditious man began to put them in mind of seeking to get somewhat for themselves, telling them that all their provision would be spent in three dayes, and that being now come out of the enemies Countrey, victuals and other necessaries could not be had without money; for which cause he gave advice to send messengers into the Town of *Heraclea*, giving the Citizens to understand what their wants were, and demanding of them three thousand pieces of money, called *Cyzicene*, which sum amounteth to two thousand and five hundred pound sterling, or thereabout. This motion was greatly applauded, and the sum raised to ten thousand *Cyzicene* at least: which to require, they thought *Cherisophus*,

as being General, the fittest man; others had more desire to send *Xenophon*; but in vain, for they had refused him, and renounced the action as dishonest. Left therefore either of these should fail in managing the businesse which agreed not with his disposition, others of more impudency and lesse discretion were sent, who in such wise delivered their insolent message, that the Citizens taking time so deliberate upon their request, brought what they could out of the fields into the Town, and shutting the Gates, did forthwith man the Walls. When the Souldiers perceived themselves to be disappointed of their rapacious purpose, they fell to mutiny, saying, that their Leaders had betrayed them; and being for the more part of them *Arcadians* and *Achaens*, they forsook immediately *Cherisophus* and *Xenophon*, chusing new Leaders out of their own number. Above ten thousand and five hundred they were; all heavily armed; who electing ten Captains, marched into the Port of *Calphas*, which is in the mid-way between *Heraclea* and *Synopis*; with purpose to assault the *Byzantians* on the sudden. With *Cherisophus* there were two thousand and one hundred, of whom one thousand and four hundred were armed weightily: *Xenophon* had two thousand four, three hundred whereof were lightly armed and forty horse; which small band had done good service already, and could not have bin spared now. *Cherisophus* had agreed with *Cleander* Governour of *Byzantium*, to meet him at the mouth of the River *Calphas*, whither *Cleander* promised to bring some Gallies to convey him over into *Greece*; for which cause he took his way thither by Land, leaving to *Xenophon* such shipping as he had; who passing some part of the way by Sea, landed upon the confines of *Heraclea*, and *Thracia Asiatica*, intending to make a cut through the mid-land Countrey to the *Propontis*. The Mutiners who had landed at *Calphas* by night, with purpose to take spoiles in *Byzania*, divided themselves into ten Companies, every Capitaine leading his own Regiment into some Village, five or six miles from the Sea; in the greater Towns were two Regiments quartered: and so was that part of the Countrey surprized on the sudden, and sacked all at one time. The place of Rendezvous was an high piece of Ground, where some of them arrived, finding no disturbance, others, not without much trouble and danger: two Companies were broken and defeated, only eight men escaped, the rest were all put to the sword. For the *Thracians* which had slipped at first out of the Souldiers hands, did raise the Countrey, and finding the *Greeks* laden with booty, took the advantage of their disorder, cutting in pieces those two Regiments: which done, they attempted the rest, encompassing the hill where they encamped. One great advantage the *Thracians* had; that being all light armed, they could at pleasure make retreat from these *Arcadians* and *Achaens*, who wanting the assistance of horse, and having neither Archers nor Slingers among them, were driven to stand meekly upon their defence, bearing off with greater danger, & many wounds received, the Darts and Arrows of the *Barbarians*, till finally they were driven fro their watering place, and enforced to crave parley. Whatsoever the Articles of composition were, the *Thracians* yeelded to all, but pledges for assurance they would give none, without which the *Greeks* well knew, that all promises of such people, especially so incensed, were nothing worth. In the mean time *Xenophon* holding his way quietly through the In-land Region, did enquire of some Travellers, whether they knew ought of any *Grecian* Army, passing along those parts: & receiving by them true information of the desperate case into which these Gallants had foolishly thrown themselves, he marched directly towards the place where they lay, taking with him for guides, them who gave him the intelligence. His horse-men he sent before to discover, & to scow the waies; the light armed foot-men took the hill tops on either hand, all of them setting fire on whatsoever they found combustible: whereby the whole Countrey seemed to be on a light flame, to the great terror of the enemies, who thought that some huge Army had approached. That night he encamped on a hill, within five mile of the *Arcadians*, encreasing still the number of his fires, which he caused hastily to be quenched soon after Supper. The enemies perceiving this, thought certainly that he would have fallen upon them in the dark, which caused them in all haste to dislodge. Early in the next morning *Xenophon* comming thither in very good order, to have given battell, found that his device, to affright the *Thracians*, had taken full effect; but he marvelled that the *Greeks* were also departed, concerning whom he learned by enquiry, that they removed at break of day, & perceived by signes that they had taken the way to the Port of *Calphas*, in which journey he overtook them. They embraced him and his, with great joy: confessing that they themselves had

thought the same which the enemies did, looking that he should have come by night; wherein finding themselves deceived, they were afraid lest he had forsaken them, and therefore hastened away to overtake him, and joyn with him. So they arrived at the Haven of *Calphas*, where it was decreed, That whosoever from thenceforth made any motion to dis-joyn the Army, should suffer death.

## §. XV.

Of divers pieces of service done by *Xenophon*; and how the Army returned into Greece. The occasions of the War between the *Lacedæmonians* and the *Persians*.

**T**HE Haven of *Calphas* lay under a goodly head-land, that was very strong, and abounding with all kind of Grain and Fruits, except Olives. There was also Timber for building and shipping, and a very convenient Sea for a great City. All which commodities that might have allured the Souldiers to stay there, and to plant, caused them to haste away, fearing lest *Xenophon* should find some device to have settled himself and them in that place. For the greater part of them had good means to live at home; neither did they so much for hope of gain follow *Cyrus* in that War, as in regard of his Honour, and the love which they bare unto him: the poorer fort were such as left their Parents, Wives, and Children, to whom (though failing of the riches which they had hoped to purchase) they were now desirous to return. But whether it were so that *Xenophon* found advantage by their own superstition, to make them fly, which they greatly suspected; or whether the signes appearing in the entrails, did indeed forbid their departure; so long they were forced to abide in the place till victuals failed; neither would the Captaines lead them forth to forrage the Country, untill the Sacrifices should promise good successe. *Cherisophus* was dead of an Ague, and his followers were joyned to the rest of the Armie, which the greater it was, the more provision it needed, and the sooner felt want. For which cause, he that was chosen Corone into the place of *Cherisophus*, would needs adventure to grautifie the Souldiers with the spoil of some Villages that stood near at hand, in which enterprize he found ill successe, the whole Country lying in wait to intrap him, and an Army of Horse being sent by *Pharnabazus* the *Satrap*, or Vice-roy of *Phrygia*, to the assistance of these *Bythinian Thracians*, which troupes falling upon the *Greeks* that were scattered abroad in seeking booty, slew five hundred of them, and chased the rest to a certain Mountain there by. The news of this overthrow comming to *Xenophon*, he led forth a part of the Army to the rescue of those that survived, and brought them safe to the Camp; upon which the *Bythinians* made an offer that night, and breaking a *Corps du garde*, slew some, pursuing the rest to the very Tents. This new courage of the enemy, together with the present condition of the Army, so disheartened and unfurnished of necessaries, caused the *Greeks* to remove their Camp to a place of more strength; which having intrenched, and committed to the defence of such as were least able to endure travell, *Xenophon* with the firmest and best able men went forth, both to bury those which were lately slain, and to abate the pride of the *Thracians*, and their assistance. In this journey his demeanour was very honourable. For having given buriall to the dead, the Enemy was discovered, lying on the tops of the hills adjoining, to whom (notwithstanding that the way was very rough and trouble some, so that some thought it a matter of too great danger, to leave at their backs a wood scarce passable) he marched directly, telling his men plainly that he had rather follow the enemy with half the number, than turn his back to them with twice as many; & letting them further know, that if they did not charge the *Barbarians*, he would not fail with the greater resolution to pursue them; from whom if they could safely retire to the camp, yet what should they do there, wanting victuals to sustain them in the place, and ships to carry them away? Wherefore he willed them rather to fight well that day, having eaten their dinners, than another day fasting; and not regard the uneasie return, which might serve to stay Cowards from running away, but to with unto the Enemy a fair and easie way, by which he might flye from them. These persuasions were followed with so valiant execution, that both *Persians* and *Bythinians* being chased out of the field, abandoned the Country forthwith, removing their Families, and leaving all that could not suddenly be conveyed away,

to the discretion of the *Greeks*, who at good leisure gathered the Harvest of these bad Neighbour fields. This was the last fight which they had on the side of *Asia*. For they were not only suffered quietly to enjoy the spoyle of the Country, but when the opinion grew common in those parts, that it was the intent of *Xenophon* to plant a Colony on the Port of *Calpas*, Embassadors were sent from the Neighbour people, to desire friendship, and make offer of their best assistance. But the Souldiers had no mind to stay. Wherefore entering further into *Bythinia*, they took a great booty, which they carried away unto *Chrysopolis*, a city near unto *Chalcedon*, where they sold it. *Pharnabazus*, Lieutenant in *Phrygia* to *Artaxerxes*, did greatly fear, lest their long stay in that Country might breed in them a desire to visite his Province; where they might have found great wealth, and little power to guard it. Therefore he sent to the *Lacedæmonian* Admirall, entreating him with much instance and large promises to waite them over into *Europe*; to whom *Anaxibius* the Admirall condescending, promised to give the Souldiers pay, as soon as they arrived at *Byzantium*. So were they carried out of *Asia* at the intreaty of the *Persian*, who in the height of his pride had thought them so surely imprisoned with mighty Rivers, that he not only denied to permit their quiet departure, but willed them to surrender their Armes into his hands, and so to yeeld their lives to his discretion. How discourteously they were intreated by *Anaxibius*, and how to requite his injurious dealings, they seized upon *Byzantium*, which by *Xenophon* was taken from them, they forbore to sack; I hold it superfluous to relate. For the residue of their doings appertain little to the generall course of things. But this expedition, as in all ages it was glorious, so did it both discover the secrets of *Asia*, and stir up the *Greeks* to think upon greater enterprizes, than ever their forefathers had undertaken. Likewise it was the only remarkable action which the time afforded. For the *Roman* Wars did hitherto extend no further than to the next neighbouring Towns of *Italy*; and in Greece all things were quiet, the *Lacedæmonians* ruling insolently, but without disturbance. True it is, that the seeds of the War shortly following, which the *Lacedæmonians* made upon *Artaxerxes*, were already sown, before these companies returned out of the high Countries of *Asia*. For the Towns of *Ionis* which had sided with young *Cyrus* against *Tissaphernes*, if not against the great King, prepared to rebel, which they thought safer, than to fall into the hands of *Tissaphernes*, who was now appointed Lieutenant, both of his old Province, and of all that had belonged to *Cyrus*. Wherefore the *Ionians* besought the *Lacedæmonians* to send them ayd, whereby to recover their liberty; and obtained their request. For a power was sent over, under conduct of *Timotheus* a *Spartan*, who bestowed his men in such Towns as had already revolted, to secure the Cities and their Fields, but not to make any offensive War.

## CHAP. XI.

Of the affairs of Greece, whilst they were managed by the *Lacedæmonians*.

## §. I.

How the *Lacedæmonians* took courage by example of *Xenophon's* Army, to make War upon *Artaxerxes*.

**I**T seems that the *Lacedæmonians* did well perceive in how ill part *Artaxerxes* took their favour shewed unto his brother, and yet were timorous in beginning an open war against him, thinking it sufficient to take all care that no advantage might slip, which could serve to strengthen their Estate, by finding the *Persian* work beyond the Sea. But when *Xenophon's* Army had revealed the baseness of those effeminate *Asiaticques*, and rehearsed the many victories which they themselves had gotten, upon termes of extreme disadvantage; then was all Greece filled with desire of undertaking upon this huge unwieldy Empire, thinking it no hard matter for the joyned forces

forces of that whole Nation, to hew out the way to *Susa*, whereof one handfull had opened the passage to *Babylon*; and further, finding no power that was able to give them resistance, in all that long journey of four and thirty thousand two hundred and fifty five furlongs, spent in going and returning, which make of English miles about four thousand two hundred fourscore and one, a very painfull march of one year and three months; Nevertheless, the civill distraction wherewith *Greece* was miserably torn, and especially that hot fire of the *Theban* war, which kindled with *Persian* gold, brake forth suddenly into a great flame, drew back out of *Asia* the power of the *Lacedaemonians*, to the defence of their own Estate; leaving it questionable, whether *Agessilaus* having both the same and far greater forces, could have wrought proportionable effects. Sure it is, that in the whole space of two years, which he spent in *Asia*, his deeds procured more commendation of magnanimity and fair behaviour, than of stout courage, and great, or profitable achievements. For how highly soever it pleased *Xenophon*, who was his friend, and follower in this, and in other wars, to extoll his virtue; his exploits being only a few incursions into the Countries lying near the Sea, carrying no proportion to *Xenophon*'s own journey, which I know not whether any Age hath paralleled: the famous retreat of *Canon* the *Briton* with six thousand men from *Aquileia*, to his own Country, through all the breadth of *Italy*, and length of *France*, in despite of the Emperour *Theodosius*, being rather like it than equall. But of *Agessilaus* and his wars in *Asia* and *Greece*, we shall speak more in due place.

## §. II.

The prosperous beginnings of the War in Asia.

**T**himbro receiving *Xenophon*'s men, began to take in Towns, and to entertain all such as were willing to revolt from the *Persian*, who were many, and some of them such, as had been highly beholding to the King; who seem to have had no other cause of discontent, than that they were to live under the government of *Tissaphernes*, whom all others did as vehemently hate, as the King his Master did love him. The managing of the war begun by *Thimbro*, was for his oppressions taken out of his hands, and committed to *Dercyllidas* a *Spartan*, who behaved himself as a good man of War, and a wise Commander. For whereas the rule of the low Countries of *Asia* was divided between *Pharnabazus* and *Tissaphernes*, who did ill agree, *Pharnabazus* being the worthier man, but the other by his Princes favour the greater, and having the chief command in those Wars against the *Greeks*, *Dercyllidas*, who did bear a private hatred to *Pharnabazus* (knowing well that *Tissaphernes* was of a mischievous nature, and would not be sorry to see his Country all thoroughly beaten, though to the Kings losse) made an appointment with *Tissaphernes*, and forthwith entred *Aolis*, which was under the jurisdiction of *Pharnabazus*, which Province in few dayes, he brought into his own power.

That Country of *Aolis* had about the same time suffered a violent alteration, which gave easie successe to the attempts of *Dercyllidas*. *Zenis* a *Dardanian* had bin Deputy to *Pharnabazus* in those parts; after whose death his wife *Mania* procured his Office, wherein she behaved her self so well, that she not only was beloved of the people under her government; but enlarged her Territory, by the conquest of certain Towns adjoining; and sundry times gave assistance to *Pharnabazus* in his Wars against the *Assyrians* and *Persians*. For she had in pay some Companies of *Greeks*, whose valour by her good usage, did her great service. But somewhat before the arrival of *Dercyllidas* in those parts, a Son-in-law of hers, called *Midias*, whom she trusted and loved much, being blinded with ambition, found means to fluster her, and kill her son of seventeen years old; which done, he seized upon two of her principall Towns, wherein her treasure lay, hoping to have been admitted into possession of her whole estate. Being denied entrance by her Souldiers that lay in Garrison, he sent Messengers with presents to *Pharnabazus*, desiring him to make him Governour in the place of *Mania*. His presents were not only rejected by *Pharnabazus*, but revenge of his foul treason threatned, whereby the wicked villain was driven into termes of almost utter desperation. In the mean time came *Dercyllidas*, to whom the Towns of *Mania*, that held against *Midias*, did quickly open their Gates. One onely Town stood out four dayes (against the will

will of the Citizens, who were covetous of liberty) the Governour striving in vain to have kept it to the use of *Pharnabazus*. Now remained only two Cities, *Gergethe* and *Scepsis*, which the Traytor held, who fearing all men, as being loved of none, sent Embassadors to *Dercyllidas*, desiring leave to speak with him, and pledges for his security: upon the delivery of which, he issued out of *Scepsis*, and coming into the Camp, made offer to joyn with the *Greeks* upon such conditions as might seem reasonable. But he was plainly told by *Dercyllidas*, that other condition there was none, than to set the Citizens freely at liberty. And presently upon these words they marched toward *Scepsis*. When *Midias* perceived that it was in vain to strive against the Army, and the Towns-men, who were all of one mind; he quietly went along with *Dercyllidas*, who remaining but a few hours in the City, did a sacrifice to *Minerva*, and then leading away the Garrison of *Midias*, he left the City free, and departed toward *Gergethe*. *Midias* did not forsake his Company, but followed him, earnestly intreating that he might be suffered to retain *Gergethe*: but comming to the Gates, he was bidden to command his Souldiers that they should be opened; for (quoth *Dercyllidas*) I must here likewise doe a sacrifice to *Minerva*. The Traytor, not daring to make deniall, caused his Mercenaries to open the Gates, whereby *Dercyllidas*, taking possession of the place, tendered pay to the Garrison, who did not refuse to serve under his Ensignes. This done, all the goods of *Mania* were seized upon, as belonging to one that had been subject to *Pharnabazus*, who was enemy to the *Greeks*: and so the murderous wretch was sent away naked, not knowing in what part of the World he might find any place to hide his distressed head. *Dercyllidas* having in eight dayes taken nine Cities, purposed for the ease of his Confederates to winter in *Bythinia*, to which end he took Truce with *Pharnabazus*, who had not any desire of Warre. That Winter, and the Summer ensuing, the truce being continued, held; in which time, besides the wasting of *Bythinia*, the neck of Land joyning *Cherronia* to the Main, was fortified, being four or five miles in breadth; by which means eleven Towns, with much good Land belonging to them, were freed from the incursions of the wilde *Thracians*, and made fit and able to victual the Camp. Likewise the Citie of *Atarne* was taken, which was of great strength, and very well stocked with provision. After this, *Dercyllidas* had command from *Sparta*, to divert the Warre into *Caria*, where was the seat of *Tissaphernes*; for that hereby it was thought not uncase to recover all the Towns of *Ionis*; *Pharax* the Admirall of the fleet (which was a yearly office, being appointed to joyn with him. Though it was manifest that *Tissaphernes* had neglected *Pharnabazus* in time of necessity, yet was he not in his own danger required with the like. For *Pharnabazus* having respect to the Kings service, came to assist his private enemy *Tissaphernes*, and so passing into *Caria*, they thrust Garrisons into all places of strength; which done, they marched towards *Ionis*, hoping to find the Towns ill manned for resistance. As these *Persians* were desirous to keep the Warre from their own dores, so was *Dercyllidas* willing to free his Confederates from the spoil and danger of the War, by transferring it into *Caria*. For which cause he passed the River of *Meander*, and not looking to have been so soon encountered, marched carelessly through the Country: when on the very sudden the whole Army of *Tissaphernes* and *Pharnabazus* was discovered, consisting of *Persians*, *Carians*, and some Mercenary *Greeks*, who were all marshalled in very good order to present battell. The odds was too apparent, both in numbers of men, and in readinesse, as also in advantage of ground: for the *Persian* had a great multitude of Horse, the *Greek* very few and feeble, being to fight in an open plain. Therefore all the *Ionians*, together with the handiers and others, of such places as bordered upon the Kings Dominions, did either betake themselves to present flight; or abiding a while for shame, did plainly discover by their looks, that they meant not to be more bold than wise. Onely *Dercyllidas* with his *Peloponnesians*, regarding their honour, prepared to endure the fight, which must needs have brought them to destruction, if the counsell of *Pharnabazus* had been followed, who perceiving the opportunity of so great a victory, was not willing to let it slip. But *Tissaphernes*, who naturally was a coward, seeing that countenance of resistance was made, began to consider what strange defence the Souldiers of *Xenophon* had shewed, and thinking that all the *Greeks* were of the like resolution, held it the wisest way to crave parley; the conclusion of which was, That a Truce should be made, to last untill *Tissaphernes* might receive answer from the King, and *Dercyllidas* from

*Sparta*, concerning the demands propounded in the Treaty; which were on the one part, That all the *Greeks* in *Asia* might enjoy their own liberty and lawes; but contrariwise on the other side, That the *Lacedæmonians* should depart *Asia*, and leave the Towns to the *Greeks* pleasure. This Treaty was of none effect; only it served to free the *Greeks* from the present danger, and to gain time unto *Tissaphernes*, who desired to avoid the War by procrastination, which he durst not adventure to finish by tryall of a battell.

## §. III.

*How the Lacedæmonians took revenge upon the Eleans for old displeasure. The discontent of the Corinthians and Thebans, conceived against the State of Sparta.*

**I**N the mean season the *Lacedæmonians*, who found none able to withstand them in *Greece*, began to call the *Eleans* to account for some disgraces received by them during the late Warres, when leisure was wanting to the requital of such petty injuries. These *Eleans* being Presidents of the *Olympique* games, had set a fine upon the City of *Sparta*, for Non-payment of which, they forbade them to come to the solemnity; and publicly whipt one of them that was of note, for presuming to contend against their decree. Likewise they hindred *Agis* King of *Sparta* from doing sacrifice to *Jupiter*; and in all points used great contempt toward the *Spartans*, who now had no business that could hinder them from taking revenge: and therefore sent a peremptory message to the *Eleans*, commanding them to set at liberty the Cities which they held in subjection. This was the usuall pretence which they made the ground of all their Wars: though little they cared for the liberty of such Towns, which they caused afterwards to become followers, and little better than meer Vassals of the *Lacedæmonians*. In their late Wars with *Athens*, the strong opposition which they found, caused this goodly Title of liberty to work very slowly: but having now to doe with a State of great spirit and small force, it gave present successe to their desires. Two years together they sent an Army into the Country of the *Eleans*: the first year an Earth-quake (held in those times a prodigious sign, and which did alwayes forbid the prosecution of any enterprise in hand) caused them to retire: the second year, all the Towns of the *Eleans* did hastily revolt, and the City it self was driven to submission; consenting both to suffer their old subjects freely to enjoy their liberty, and to have her own Walls thrown down. Only the Presidentship of the *Olympian* games was left unto them, which it was not to be doubted that they would in time comming use modestly, finding themselves to stand at the mercy of *Sparta*. In this expedition all the *Greeks* were assitant to the *Lacedæmonians*, excepting the *Corinthians* and *Boeotians*, whose ayd having been of as much importance in the late *Peloponnesian* War, as the force of *Sparta* it self, they could not smother their dislike of their unequal division following the victory; which gave to *Sparta* the command of all *Greece*; to *Thebes* and *Corinth*, onely security against *Athens*, but such a security as was worse than the danger. For when the equal greatness of two mighty Estates did counterpoise each the other, it was in the power of these Neutrall Common-wealths to adhere to either, as the condition of their affairs required; but when to revenge injuries, they had by mortall hatred prosecuted the Warre to extremity, leaving the one City naked of power and friends, the other mightily increased in both; it was then (if not necessary to obey the greatness which themselves had made, yet) foolish and dangerous to provoke it. Nevertheless, it was not the purpose of the *Spartans* to take occasion of any quarrell, which they could not finish at pleasure, till such time as they had by victory or composition made some good end with the *Persian*, toward whom they bent all their care and forces.

## §. IV. The

## §. IV.

*The passage of Agesilaus into Asia. His Warre with Tissaphernes. How Tissaphernes was put to death; and the Warre diverted into another Province, through perswasion and gifts of Tithraustes his successor. How carelesse the Persian Lieutenants were of the Kings good.*

**A**GESILAUS newly made King of *Sparta*, was desirous to have the honour of the victory, which not without cause, he expected upon those of *Asia*; and therefore procuring a great Army to joyn with that of *Dercyllidus*, he took his way in great pomp to *Aulis* in *Boeotia*, a Haven lying opposite to the Island of *Eubæa*; in which place *Agamemnon* (leading the power of all *Greece* to the War against *Troy*, many Ages before) had embarked his men. In imitation of *Agamemnon*, he meant also to do sacrifice in *Aulis*, which the *Thebans*, Lords of that Country, would not permit, but saying, that the performance of such ceremonies in that place, belonged unto their Officers; they were so unable to conceal their malice, that sending some Companies of horse, they threw down his sacrifice from the Altar. It was not then convenient time for *Agesilaus* to entangle himself and his Country in a new Warre; therefore waiting better opportunity of revenge, he quietly swallowed the contumely, and followed his main intendment. Having landed his men at *Ephesus*, he was entertained by *Tissaphernes* with a Treaty of peace, wherein *Agesilaus* peremptorily requiring that the *Persian* should restore to liberty all the *Greek* Towns in *Asia*, was promised that the King, being first informed of his demand, should send answer to his good liking, if he would in the mean while make Truce. Truce was therefore made, which *Tissaphernes* had fought, only to win time of making provision for the War, and getting supply of men and money from *Artaxerxes*, whilest *Agesilaus* was busie in settling the estates of his confederate Cities on that side of the Sea. The end of this long vacation from war was at the comming down of these forces which *Artaxerxes* had sent: at what time *Agesilaus* received a plain message from *Tissaphernes*, that either he must forthwith depart out of *Asia*, or make good his abode by strong hand. *Agesilaus* returning word, that hee was glad to hear that his enemies had by perjury deserved vengeance from heaven, prepared to invade them; and sending word to all the Towns which lay between him and *Caria*, that they should provide victuals & other necessaries for his Army, did easily make *Tissaphernes* beleieve, that his intent was to invade that Province wherein *Tissaphernes* dwelt, and which was unfit for Horse, in which part of his forces the *Persian* had most confidence. Therefore *Tissaphernes* bestowing all his Companies of foot in *Caria*, entred with his Horse into the plains of *Maander*, hoping thereby to stop the passage of a heavy foot-army, not suffering them to passe into that Country which was fittest for their service. But the *Greeks* left him waiting there in vain, and marched directly into *Phrygia*, where they took great spoyle without resistance, till such time as the Horse-men of *Pharnabazus* met him, who in a small skirmish having the better of the *Greeks*, were the occasion that *Agesilaus* returned to *Ephesus*. Although in this last fight only twelve men were lost, yet *Agesilaus* perceiving by that tryall how hard it would be to prevail, and hold the mastery of the field, without a greater strength of Horse, took all possible care to increase that part of his forces. By which means having enabled himself, whilest Winter lasted, he entred upon the Country of *Tissaphernes*, as soon as the season of the year would permit, and not only took a great booty, but finding the Horse-men of *Tissaphernes* in the plain of *Maander*, without assistance of their infantry, he gave them battell, and had a great victory, taking their Camp, in which he found great riches. The blame of this losse fell heave upon *Tissaphernes*, who either upon cowardise had absented himself from the battell, or following some other business, was then at *Sardinia*. For which cause his Master having him in distrust, and thinking that peace might be the sooner had, which he much desired, if the man, so odious to the whole Nation of the *Greeks*, were taken out of the way, he sent into those parts *Tithraustes* a *Persian*, to cut off the head of *Tissaphernes*, and succeed him in the government. Such was the end of this base and cowardly Politician, who little caring to offend Heaven, when by perjury he could advance his purposes on Earth, failed at the last, through too much over-weening of his own wisdom, even in that part of cunning wherein he thought himself most perfect; for supposing



*Sparta*, concerning the demands propounded in the Treaty; which were on the one part. That all the *Greeks* in *Asia* might enjoy their own liberty and lawes; but contrariwise on the other side, That the *Lacedæmonians* should depart *Asia*, and leave the Towns to the Kings pleasure. This Treaty was of none effect; only it served to free the *Greeks* from the present danger, and to gain time unto *Tissaphernes*, who desired to avoid the War by procrastination, which he durst not adventure to finish by tryall of a battell.

## §. III.

*How the Lacedæmonians took revenge upon the Eleans for old displeasure. The discontent of the Corinthians and Thebans, conceived against the State of Sparta.*

IN the mean season the *Lacedæmonians*, who found none able to withstand them in *Greece*, began to call the *Eleans* to account for some disgraces received by them during the late Warres, when leisure was wanting to the requital of such petty injuries. These *Eleans* being Presidents of the *Olympique* games, had set a fine upon the City of *Sparta*, for Non-payment of which, they forbade them to come to the solemnity; and publicly whipt one of them that was of note, for presuming to contend against their decree. Likewise they hindered *Agis* King of *Sparta* from doing sacrifice to *Jupiter*; and in all points used great contempt toward the *Spartans*, who now had no business that could hinder them from taking revenge: and therefore sent a peremptory message to the *Eleans*, commanding them to set at liberty the Cities which they held in subjection. This was the usual pretence which they made the ground of all their Wars: though little they cared for the liberty of such Towns, which they caused afterwards to become followers, and little better than meer Vassals of the *Lacedæmonians*. In their late Wars with *Athens*, the strong opposition which they found, caused this goodly Title of liberty to work very slowly: but having now to doe with a State of great spirit and small force, it gave present successe to their desires. Two years together they sent an Army into the Country of the *Eleans*: the first year an Earth-quake (held in those times a prodigious sign, and which did always forbid the prosecution of any enterprize in hand) caused them to retire: the second year, all the Towns of the *Eleans* did hastily revolt, and the City it self was driven to submission; consenting both to suffer their old subjects freely to enjoy their liberty, and to have her own Walls thrown down. Only the Presidentship of the *Olympian* games was left unto them, which it was not to be doubted that they would in time coming use modestly, finding themselves to stand at the mercy of *Sparta*. In this expedition all the *Greeks* were assitant to the *Lacedæmonians*, excepting the *Corinthians* and *Boeotians*, whose ayd having been of as much importance in the late *Peloponnesian* War, as the force of *Sparta* it self, they could not smother their dislike of their unequal division following the victory; which gave to *Sparta* the command of all *Greece*; to *Thebes* and *Corinth*, onely security against *Athens*, but such a security as was worse than the danger. For when the equal greatness of two mighty Estates did counterpoise each the other, it was in the power of these Neutral Common-weals to adhere to either, as the condition of their affairs required; but when to revenge injuries, they had by mortall hatred prosecuted the Warre to extremity, leaving the one City naked of power and friends, the other mightily increased in both; it was then (if not necessary to obey the greatness which themselves had made, yet) foolish and dangerous to provoke it. Nevertheless, it was not the purpose of the *Spartans* to take occasion of any quarrell, which they could not finish at pleasure, till such time as they had by victory or composition made some good end with the *Persian*, toward whom they bent all their care and forces.

## §. IV. The

## §. IV.

*The passage of Agesilaus into Asia. His Warre with Tissaphernes. How Tissaphernes was put to death; and the Warre diverted into another Province, through perswasion and gifts of Tithraustes his successor. How carelesse the Persian Lieutenants were of the Kings good.*

AGESILAUS newly made King of *Sparta*, was desirous to have the honour of the victory, which not without cause, he expected upon those of *Asia*; and therefore procuring a great Army to joyn with that of *Dercyllidus*, he took his way in great pomp to *Aulis* in *Boeotia*, a Haven lying opposite to the Island of *Eubæa*; in which place *Agamemnon* (leading the power of all *Greece* to the War against *Troy*, many Ages before) had imbarcked his men. In imitation of *Agamemnon*, he meant also to do sacrifice in *Aulis*, which the *Thebans*, Lords of that Country, would not permit, but saying, that the performance of such ceremonies in that place, belonged unto their Officers; they were so unable to conceal their malice, that sending some Companies of horse, they threw down his sacrifice from the Altar. It was not then convenient time for *Agesilaus* to entangle himself and his Country in a new Warre; therefore waiting better opportunity of revenge, he quietly swallowed the contumely, and followed his main intentment. Having landed his men at *Ephesus*, he was entertained by *Tissaphernes* with a Treaty of peace, wherein *Agesilaus* peremptorily requiring that the *Persian* should restore to liberty all the *Greek* Towns in *Asia*, was promised that the King, being first informed of his demand, should send answer to his good liking, if he would in the mean while make Truce. Truce was therefore made, which *Tissaphernes* had sought, only to win time of making provision for the War, and getting supply of men and money from *Artaxerxes*, whilst *Agesilaus* was busie in settling the estates of his confederate Cities on that side of the Sea. The end of this long vacation from war was at the coming down of these forces which *Artaxerxes* had sent: at what time *Agesilaus* received a plain message from *Tissaphernes*, that either he must forthwith depart out of *Asia*, or make good his abode by strong hand. *Agesilaus* returning word, that hee was glad to hear that his enemies had by perjury deserved vengeance from heaven, prepared to invade them; and sending word to all the Towns which lay between him and *Caria*, that they should provide victuals & other necessaries for his Army, did easily make *Tissaphernes* beleve, that his intent was to invade that Province wherein *Tissaphernes* dwelt, and which was unsafe for Horse, in which part of his forces the *Persian* had most confidence. Therefore *Tissaphernes* bestowing all his Companies of foot in *Caria*, entred with his Horse into the plains of *Maander*, hoping thereby to stop the passage of a heave foot-army, not suffering them to passe into that Country which was fittest for their service. But the *Greeks* left him waiting there in vain, and marched directly into *Phrygia*, where they took great spoil without resistance, till such time as the Horse-men of *Pharnabazus* met him, who in a small skirmish having the better of the *Greeks*, were the occasion that *Agesilaus* returned to *Ephesus*. Although in this last fight only twelve men were lost, yet *Agesilaus* perceiving by that tryall how hard it would be to prevail, and hold the mastery of the field, without a greater strength of Horse, took all possible care to increase that part of his forces. By which means having enabled himself, whilst Winter lasted, he entred upon the Country of *Tissaphernes*, as soon as the season of the year would permit, and not only took a great booty, but finding the Horse-men of *Tissaphernes* in the plain of *Maander*, without assistance of their infantry, he gave them battell, and had a great victory, taking their Camp, in which he found great riches. The blame of this losse fell heave upon *Tissaphernes*, who either upon cowardise had absented himself from the battell, or following some other business, was then at *Sardis*. For which cause his Master having him in distrust, and thinking that peace might be the sooner had, which he much desired, if the man, so odious to the whole Nation of the *Greeks*, were taken out of the way, he sent into those parts *Tithraustes* a *Persian*, to cut off the head of *Tissaphernes*, and succeed him in the government. Such was the end of this base and cowardly Politician, who little caring to offend Heaven, when by perjury he could advance his purposes on Earth, failed at the last, through too much over-weening of his own wisdom, even in that part of cunning wherein he thought himself most perfect; for supposing

posing, that by his great skill in subtle negotiation he should one way or other circumvent the *Greeks*, and make them wearie of *Asia*; he did not seek to finish the war, and according to his Masters will, bring all things speedily to quiet, but rather to temporize, till he might find some opportunitie of making such end as best might stand with rize, till he might find some opportunitie of making such end as best might stand with the Kings honour and his own. Wherein it seems that he much mistook his Princes disposition, who though he had highly rewarded him for the aid which he did bring in time of danger, yet would he much more gladly have taken it, if he could have found such means whereby the danger it self might have been avoided: as not loving to such means whereby the danger it self might have been avoided: as not loving to have war, whilst by any conditions (honourable or not) he might obtain peace. And for he sent Embassadors to *Agesilaus* in very friendly sort, letting him know, that the man who had been Author of the warre, was now taken out of the way; and that it was the Kings pleasure to let the *Greeks* enjoy their own lawes and liberties, upon condition, that they should pay him the tribute accustomed, and the Armie be forthwith dismissed. The answer to this proposition, was by *Agesilaus* referred to the Council of *Sparta*; in the mean season he was content to transerre the war into the Province of *Pharnabazus*, at the request of *Tithraustes*, who bought his departure with thirty Talents.

This was a strange manner of War, both on the offensive, and on the defensive part. For *Agesilaus* having entertained great hopes of vanquishing the great King, was contented to forbear his several Provinces, at the entreaty of the Lieutenants: and those Lieutenants being employed by the King to maintain his Estates against all enemies (wherein if they failed, they knew that their heads might easily be taken from their shoulders) were little offended at any losse that fell on their next Neighbour-Princes, which were subject likewise to the same Crown of *Persia*, so long as their own government could be preserved from waste and danger. The cause of this disorder on the *Persian* side, I can ascribe to nothing so deservedly, as to the corrupted estate of the Court, wherein Eunuchs, Concubines, and ministers of pleasure, were able, by partiall construction, to countenance, or disgrace, the actions of such as had the managing of things abroad; and to that foolish manner of the Kings (which was so usuall that it might be called a rule) to reward or punish the Provinciaill Governour, according to the benefit or losse, which the Country, given in charge unto each of them, received, during the time of his rule. Whereby it came to passe, that as every one was desirous to make his own Territorie yield a large increase to the Kings treasure, so no man was carefull to assist his borderers, if losse or danger might thereby grow to himself and his; but sat still as an idle beholder, when perhaps by joyning their forces, it had not been uneasie to recompence the spoyl of one Countreie, by conquering another, or defending a third from far greater miseries.

## §. V.

The War and Treatie between *Agesilaus* and *Pharnabazus*.

*Agesilaus* having thus compounded with *Tithraustes*, entred *Phrygia*, burning and wasting the Country without resistance. He took the Palace of *Pharnabazus*, and by his Lieutenant drave him out of the Camp. These Actions, together with his honourable behaviour, which added much to their lustre, were more glorious than profitable. For he did not win Cities and Places of strength, which might have increased his power, and given assurance to the rest of his proceedings: but purchased fame and high reputation, by which he drew unto him some that were discontented and stood upon bad termes with the great King; whom he lost again as easily, by means of some sleight injury done to them by his under-Captains. *Pharnabazus* did not enclose himself in any Town, for fear of being besieged, but kept the field, lying as neer as he could safely to the enemies, with whom it was not his purpose to fight, but to make some good end by composition, which he found not uneasie to doe. For the pleasures, by him formerly done to the State of *Sparta*, in the times of their most necessity, had been so great, that when he (obtaining parley) did set before their eyes his bounty towards them, and his love, which had been such, that besides many other hazzards of his person, he had for the rescue of their fleet when it was driven to run a-shore at *Abydos*, adven-

adventured to ride into the Seas as far as he could find any ground, and fight on horse-back against the *Athenians* together with his faith which had never been violated in word or deed: they knew not how to excuse their ingratitude, otherwise than by telling him, That having War with his Master, they were enforced against their will, to offend him. *Agesilaus* did make a fair offer to him, that if he would revolt from the King to them, they would maintain him against the *Persian*, and establish him free Prince of the Country wherein he was at that time only Deputy to *Artaxerxes*. But *Pharnabazus* told him plainly, That if the King his Master did put him in trust to make war against them, he would not fail to do the best that he could as their enemy; if the charge were taken out of his hand, and he commanded to obey another, he would then shift side, and betake himself to their alliance. The issue of this parley was, That the Armie should no longer abide in *Phrygia*, nor again return into it, whilst employment could be found elsewhere. The excuse made by *Agesilaus* and the withdrawing of his forces out of those parts, were not sufficient to appease *Pharnabazus*, whom he had not invaded for want of more necessary businesse elsewhere; but because his Country would yield great booty, and for the hire of thirty Talents. By this means the *Lacedemonians* changed an honourable Friend into a hot Enemy, who afterwards required their unthankfulness with full revenge.

## §. VI.

The great commotions raised in Greece by the Thebans and others, that were hired with gold from the Persian.

IN the mean while *Tithraustes*, perceiving that *Agesilaus* meant nothing lesse than to return into Greece, and let *Artaxerxes* rest quietly in *Asia*, took a wise course, whereby the Citie of *Sparta* was not only driven to look to her own, and give over her great hopes of subverting the Empire, but was beaten out of all that had been gotten by many late victories, and saw her Dominion restrained unto the narrow bounds of her own Territory. He sent into Greece fifty talents of silver, to be employed in raising war against the *Lacedemonians*; which treasure was by the subtle practice of him that was put in trust with it, in such wise dispersed among the principall men of the *Thebans*, *Argives* and *Corinthians*, that all those Estates having formerly borne fecer hate to that of *Sparta*, were now desirous of nothing so much, as of open war. And lest this great heat of the incensed multitude should, for want of present exercise, begin to faint and vanish away in idle words, occasion was found out to thrust the *Lacedemonians* into Armes, that they themselves might seem Authors of the quarrell. Some land there was in the tenure of the *Locrians*, to which the *Thebans* had in former time layd claim; but the *Phocians* either having the better title, or finding the greater favour, had it adjudged unto them, and received yearly money for it. This money the *Locrians* were either hired or persuaded to pay now to the *Thebans*, who readily accepted it. The *Phocians* not meaning so to lose their Rent, made a distresse by strong hand, recovering a great deal more than their own; which the *Thebans* (as in protection of their new Tenants) requited with an invasion made upon *Phocis*, wasting that Country in the manner of open war. Such were the beginnings of professed hostility between *Thebes* & *Sparta*, & the first breaking out of their close enmity, that had long time, though hardly, bin concealed. For when the *Phocian* Embassadors came to *Sparta* complaining of the violence done by the *Thebans*, & requesting succour, they had very favourable audience, & ready consent to their sute; it being the manner of the *Lacedemonians* to defer the acknowledgement of injuries received, until occasion of revenge were offered, & then to discover their indignation in cold blood. At this time they had very good opportunity to work to their own wils, having no other war to disturbe them in Greece, and hearing out of *Asia* no news that could offend or trouble them. Wherefore they sent *Lyfander* to raise all the Countries about *Phocis*, and with such forces as he could levie, to attend the coming of *Pausanias* King of *Sparta* (for *Sparta*, as hath bin shewed before, had two Kings) who should follow him with the strength of *Peloponnesus*. *Lyfander* did as he was appointed, & being of great reputation in those parts he drew the *Orchomenians* to revolt from *Thebes*. *Pausanias* likewise raised all *Peloponnesus*, except the *Corinthians* (who refused to assist him in that enterprize) meaning to joyn with *Lyfander*, & make a speedy end

of the war. The consideration of so great a danger, approaching so swiftly, caused the *Thebans* to seek what help they could abroad, for as much as their own strength was far too little to make resistance against such mightie preparations. It was not unknown to them, that many followers of the *Lacedæmonians* were otherwise affected in heart than they durst utter in countenance; but the good wilhes of such people were little available, considering that the most which could be expected from them, was, that they should do as little hurt as they could; by which manner of tergiversation, the *Corinthians* did at that present cast themselves into the displeasure of the *Spartans*, to the no great benefit of *Thebes*. Wherefore it was thought the safest course to procure the assistance of some Estate that might presently declare it self on their side, which would cause many others to follow the example, and make their party strong. To this end they sent 10 Embassadors to *Athens*, excusing old offences, as either not committed by public allowance, or done in time of the generall war, and recompensed with friendship lately shown in their refusal of assisting *Pausanias*, when he came in behalf of the thirtie Tyrants against the good Citizens of *Athens*. In regard of which, and for their own Honour sake, they requested them of aid in the present war, offering to doe the best that they could for the restoring of *Athens* to her former estate and dignitie. *Thrasylus* and his Friends, who persecuted by the thirtie, had been well entertained at *Thebes*, procured now the Citie to make a large requittall of the courtesie which they had received. For it was decreed, that the State of *Athens* should not only refuse to aid the *Lacedæmonians* in this War; but that it should assist the *Thebans*, and engage it self in their cause. Whilst *Pausanias* lay still, waiting the arrivall of his Confederates, *Lysander* be- 20 ing desirous to doe somewhat that might advance the businesse in hand, came to *Halictus*, where though *Pausanias* did not meet him, as had been appointed, yet he attempted the Town, and was slain in fight by the *Thebans*, who came hastily to the rescue. As this victorie did encourage the *Thebans*, so the coming of *Pausanias* with his great Armie did again amaze them, with presentation of extreme danger; but their spirits were soon revived by the strong succour which was brought from *Athens*, in consideration of which, and of the late battell, *Pausanias* durst not hazzard a new fight with them, but receiving the bodies of those that were slain, by composition, departed out of their Territorie; for which, either cowardise or indiscretion, he was at his return to *Sparta* 30 condemned as a Traitor, and driven to flie into *Tegea*, where he ended his daies in banishment.

## s. VII.

*How Agefilas was called out of Asia to help his Country. A victory of the Spartans. Conon the Athenian assisted by Pharnabazus, overcomes the Lacedæmonian Fleet; recovers the mastery of the Seas, and rebuilds the walls of Athens.*

His good successe, and the confederacy made with *Athens*, gave such reputation to the *Thebans*, that the *Argives*, *Corinthians*, *Eubæans*, *Locrians*, and *Acarnanians*, did forthwith side with them, and raising a strong Army, determined to give battell to the *Lacedæmonians* as near as they might, to their own dores; considering that the force of *Sparta* it self was not great, but grew more and more by the ad- 40 junction of their Confederates. The Magistrates of *Sparta* perceiving the danger, sent for *Agefilas*, who readily obeyed them, and promising his friends in *Asia* to return speedily to their assistance, passed the Streights of *Hellepont* into *Europe*. In the mean time the Cities of the new league had given battell to the *Lacedæmonians*, and the remainder of their Associates; but with ill successe. For when the right wing of each part had gotten the better hand, the *Argives* and *Thebans* returning from the chase in some disorder, were broken and defeated by the *Lacedæmonians*, who meeting them in good order, won 50 from them the Honour which they had gotten by forcing the left wing of the *Lacedæmonians*, and made the victory of that day entirely their own. The reporters of this battell meeting *Agefilas* at *Amphipolis*, were by him sent over into *Asia*, wherein it is not likely that they brought much comfort unto his friend, who had since his departure seen the *Spartan* Fleet beaten, and *Lysander* the Admirall slain. The same man, whose endeavour had brought the *Athenians* into order by advancing the Sea-forces of the *Lacedæmonians* with money, and all manner of supplies, was now the occasion that the power

power of *Athens* grew strong at Sea, when the Citie was dispoyled of her old reputation, & scarcely able to maintain an Army by Land for her defence. *Pharnabazus* considering how much it imported the king his Master, to have the *Greeks* divided into such factions as might utterly disable them from undertaking abroad, thought it the safest way for himself, during these broiles, to take such order, that he should not need any more to seek peace by intreaty and commemoration of old benefits, at their hands, who unprompted, had sold his love for thirty Talents. To which purpose he furnished Conon the *Athenian* with eight ships, who had escaped when the Fleet of *Athens* was surprized by *Lysander* at *Ægos-Potamos*; giving him the command of a great Navie, wherewith he 10 requested the losse received at *Ægos-Potamos*, by repaying the *Lacedæmonians* with the like destruction of their fleet at *Cnidus*. After this victory Conon sailed to *Athens*, bringing with him, partly as the liberality of *Pharnabazus*, partly as the fruit of his victory, so strong a Navie, and so much Gold, as encouraged the *Athenians* to rebuild their Walls, and think more hopefully upon recovering the Signiory which they had lost.

## s. VIII.

*of sundry small victories gotten on each part. The Lacedæmonians lose all in Asia; the Athenians recover some part of their old Dominion.*

Nevertheless, the *Lacedæmonians*, by many victories at Land, maintained for some years the honour of their Estate, endangered very greatly by this losse at Sea. For *Agefilas* obtained the better with his horse-men from the *Thebans*, who were accounted the best riders in *Greece*. He waiked *Bœotia*, and fought a great battell at *Coronea* against the *Thebans* and their Allies, whom he overthrew; and by his Marshall *Gylis* foraged the Country of *Locris*: which done, he returned home.

The gain of these victories was not great, & the reputation of them was, by many losses much defaced. For the *Thebans* did in the battell of *Coronea* vanquish the *Orchomenians*, who stood opposite unto them, and retired unbroken to Mount *Helicon*, opening way perforce when *Agefilas* charged them in the return from the pursuit. Like- 30 while *Gylis* was slain with a great part of his Army by the *Locrians*; and some other exploits by the *Lacedæmonians* performed against the *Corinthians*, were repayed with equal damage received in the parts adjoining; many Towns being easily taken, and as easily recovered. The variety of which enterfeats was such, that the *Thebans* themselves were drawn by the losse of the haven of *Corinth*, to sue for peace, but could not get audience, till such time as the newes came of a great victory obtained by *Iphicrates*, General of the *Athenian* forces at *Lechaum*; whereupon the *Theban* Embassadors being sent for, and willed to doe their message, required only in scorn, to have a safe conduct given them, that they might enter into *Corinth*. From this time forward the War was 40 made for a while only by incurfions, wherein the *Achaans*, Confederates of *Sparta*, felt most losse, their whole State being endangered by the *Acarnanians*, who held with the contrary side, untill *Agefilas* repayed these invaders with equal, or greater calamities, brought upon their own Lands, which did so affright the *Acarnanians*, that they were driven to sue for peace. But the affaires at Sea were of most consequence, upon which the successe of all depended. For when the Towns of *Asia* perceived that the *Lacedæmonians* were not only intangled in a hard War at home, but almost disabled to passe the Seas, having lost their Fleet at *Cnidus*; they soon gave ear to *Pharnabazus*, who promised to allow that they should use their own lawes, if they would expell the *Spartan* Governours. Only the City of *Abydus* did stand firm, wherein *Dercyllidas* lay, who did his 50 best to contain all the Towns about *Hellepont*, in the Alliance of the *Lacedæmonians*; which he could not do, because the *Athenian* Fleet under *Thrasylus*, took in *Byzantium*, *Chalcedon*, and other places thereabout, reducing the Ile of *Lesbos* to their ancient acknowledgement of *Athens*.

## IX.

The base conditions offered unto the Persian by the Lacedæmonian. Of sundry fights and other passages in the Warre. The peace of Antalcidas.

About this time the *Spartans* began to perceive how uneasy a thing it would be, to maintain the War against men as good as themselves, assisted with the treasures of *Persia*: wherefore they craved peace of *Artaxerxes*, most basely offering not only to renounce the *Greeks* inhabiting *Asia*, and to leave them to the Kings disposition, but withall to let the *Slaves*, and every Town in *Greece*, as well the little as the great, at full and absolute liberty, whereby they said that all the principall Estates of their Country would be so weakened, that no one, nor all of them should be able to stir against the great King. And sure it was, that the power of the Country being so broken and rent into many small pieces, could neither have disquieted the *Persian*, by an offensive War, nor have made any good defence against him, but would have left it easie for him in continuance of time to have taken the Cities one after another, till he had made himself Master of all. The *Spartans* were not ignorant of this, but were so carried with envy, that perceiving how the dominion of the Seas was like to return to *Athens*, they chose rather to give all from themselves and others, and make all alike weak, than to permit that any of their own Nation should grow stronger than themselves, who so lately had commanded all. Yet this great offer was not at the first accepted, both in regard that the other Estates of *Greece*, who had in the Kings behalf joyned together against the *Lacedæmonians*, did by their severall Embassadors oppose themselves unto it, and for that it was thought safest for *Artaxerxes* rather to weaken the *Lacedæmonians* yet more, than by interposing himself to bring friends and foes, on the sudden to an equality. Especially *Struthas*, whom *Artaxerxes* had sent as his Lieutenant into the low Countries, did seek to repay the harm done by *Agesslaus* in those parts: which his intent appearing plain, and all hope of the peace being thereby cut off, *Thimbro* was sent into *Asia* to make Warre upon *Struthas*; and others were appointed to other places, whereby the War being scattered about, all the Isles and Towns on the firm Land, grew almost to the manner of Pyracie and Robbery, affording many skirmishes, but few great actions worthy of remembrance. *Thimbro* was slain by *Struthas*; & in his place *Diphridas* was sent, who demeaned himself more warily. *Dercyllidas* was removed from his charge at *Abydos*, because he had not impeached *Thrasylulus* in his enterprises about *Hellepont*; *Anaxibius*, who succeeded him, was surpris'd and slain in a skirmish by *Iphicrates* the *Athenian*. *Thrasylulus* departing from *Lesbos* toward *Rhodes*, was slain by the way at *Apendus*. The City of *Rhodes* had long before joyned with the *Lacedæmonians*, who erected there (as was their manner) an Aristocratie, or the Government of a few the principall Citizens; whereas contrariwise the *Athenians* were accustomed to put the Sovereignty into the hands of the people, each of them seeking to assure themselves, by erecting in the town of their Confederates a government like unto their own: which doing (where more elsicall cause did not hinder) caused the Nobility to favour *Sparta*, and the Commons to incline to *Athens*. The people of *Egina* roved upon the coast of *Attica*, which caused the *Athenians* to land an Army in *Egina*, and besiege their Town: but this siege being raised by the assistance of the *Lacedæmonian* fleet, the Islanders began a new to molest *Attica*, which caused the *Athenians* to man their ships again, that returned beaten, having lost four of thirteen. The loss of these ships was soon recompensed by a victory which *Chabrias* the *Athenian* Generall had in *Egina*, whereupon the Islanders were faine to keep home, and leave to the *Athenians* the Seas free. It may well seem strange that the City of *Athens*, having but newly raised her wals, having not by any fortunate and important battell secured her estate from dangers by land; but only depending upon the assistance of such Confederates, as carried unto different ends, had often discovered themselves irresolute in the common cause, would send a fleet and an army to *Cyprus*, in defence of *Eugoras*, when the mastery of the Seas was so ill assured, that an Island in the eie of *Pyræus*, had ability to vex the coast of *Attica*. But as the over-weening of that City did cause it usually to embrace more than it could compass; so the infolency and shamelesse injustice of the people, had now bred in the chief Commanders, a desire to keep themselves far out of fight, and to seek employments at such distance

distance as might secure them from the rics of the envious, and from publike judgments, out of which few or none escaped. For which cause *Timotheus* did passe away much part of his time in the Ile of *Lesbos*; *Iphicrates* in *Thrace*; and *Chabrias*, now did carry away into *Cyprus* a greater force than his Country could well spare: with which he returned not when the business in *Cyprus* came to an end, but sought new adventures in *Egypt*, whereby arose neither thanks to himself, nor profit to his Citie, though honour both to him and it. The *Athenians* being thus careless of things at hand, had a notable blow given unto them, shortly after that *Chabrias* was gone to *Cyprus*, even within their own Haven. For *Telamis*, a *Lacedæmonian*, being made Governour of *Argina*, conceived a strong hope of surprizing the Navie of *Athens*, as it lay in *Strani*; thinking a right that it was an harder matter to encounter with men ships prepared for the fight, than with twentie lying in harbour, whose Mariners were asleep in their Cabbins, or drinking in Taverns. Wherefore he sailed by night into the mouth of the Port, which cutting at the break of day, he found (according to his expectation) most of the men on shore, and few or none left aboard to make resistance: by which means he took many ships laden with merchandizes, many sister-men, passengers, and other Vessels, also three or four Gallies, having sunk or broken, and made unserviceable, as many of the rest as the time would suffer. About this time *Pharabazus*, the Lieutenant of *Phrygia*, had one of the Kings daughters given to him in marriage, with whom he lived: as also the Court; and many officers that favoured the *Lacedæmonians* were placed in the lower *Asias*, by whose assistance the Fleet of *Sparta* grew victorious about *Hellepont*; in such wise, that perhaps they should not have needed the peace, which they themselves procured by *Antalcidas*, from the great King; the conditions whereof were such as are mentioned before, giving freedom to all the Cities of *Greece*, and dividing the Countie into as many severall States as were petite Boroughs in it. Thus *Artaxerxes* having bought his own peace with money, did likewise by his money become Arbitrator and decider of Controversies between the *Greeks*, disposing of their business in such wise as stood best with his own good. The Tenor of *Artaxerxes* his decree was, That all *Asia* and *Cyprus* should be his own; the Isles of *Lemnos*, *Imbros*, and *Sirius* be subject to *Athens*; all other *Greek* Towns, as well the little as the great, be set at libertie; and that whosoever should refuse this peace, upon them the approvers of it should make war, the King assisting them by Land and Sea, with men, and ships, and treasure: The *Athenians* were so discouraged by their losses at Sea; the *Lacedæmonians* by revolt of their confederates, and the necessity of maintaining many Garrisons, for which they wanted money, and other States by the miseries of the war, whereof they saw no end; that all (excepting the *Thians*) did consent unto these Articles. This was called the peace of *Antalcidas*: whereof the *Lacedæmonians* taking upon themselves the execution, did not only compell the *Argives* to depart out of *Corinth* (which under pretence of defending they held by Garrisons, lately thrust into it, not as Patrons, but as Lords) and the *Thebans* to leave *Boeotia*, one of which Province *Thibes* had alwaies held the government, the *Thebans* themselves being also comprehended under the name of the *Boeotians*; but caused the *Mantians* to throw down their own Citie, and to dwell in villages: alleging that they had formerly bin accustomed so to do, though purposing indeed to chastise them, as having bin affected to *Sparta* in the late War. By these courses the *Lacedæmonians* did hope that all the small towns in *Greece* would, when occasion should require it, willingly follow them in their wars, as Authors of their libertie; and that the great Cities having lost all their dependants, would be unable to make opposition.

## X.

The war which the Lacedæmonians made upon Olynthus. They take Thebes by treason; and Olynthus by famine.

W Hilst these wars, which ended without either victory or profit, consumed the riches and power of *Greece*, the Citie of *Olynthus* in *Thrace* was grown so mighty, that she did not only command her neighbour Towns, but was also become terrible to places far removed, and to *Sparta* it self. Great part of *Macedonia*, together with *Pella*, the principall Citie of that Kingdome, was taken by the *Olynthians*.



Greece, by renewing that form of peace which *Antalcidas* had brought from the *Persians*. Wherefore they sent Messengers to *Thebes*, peremptorily signifying, That it was their intent to finish the War, to which purpose they willed the *Thebans* to send Embassadors along with them to *Sparta*, who readily condescended, fearing otherwise that they should be left out of the Treatie of peace: which came to passe, being so wrought by the courageous wilddom of *Epaminondas*, who understood far better than his Countymen, what was to be feared or hoped. In this Treatie the *Lacedæmonians* and *Athenians* did soon agree, but when the *Thebans* offered to swear to the Articles in the name of the *Bæotians*, *Agessilaus* required them to swear in their own name; and to leave the *Bæotians* free, whom they had lately reduced under their obedience. Whereunto *Epaminondas* made answer, That the Citie of *Sparta* should give example to *Thebes* by setting the *Lacæmonians* free, for that the Signorie of *Bæotia* did by as good right appertain to the *Thebans*, as that of *Laconia* to the *Spartans*. This was well and truly spoken; but was heard with no patience: For *Agessilaus* bearing a vehement hatred unto those of *Thebes*, by whom he was drawn back out of *Missa* into *Greece*, and disappointed of all the glory which he had hoped to achieve by the *Persian* war, did now passionately urge that point of setting the *Bæotians* at libertie; and finding it as obstinately refused, he dashed the name of the *Thebans* out of the league. At the same time *Cleombrotus* the other King of *Sparta*, lay in *Phœcie*, who received command from the Governours of *Sparta* forthwith to enter upon the Land of the *Thebans* with all his power; which he did, and was there slain at *Leuctra*, and with him the flower of his Armie. This battell of *Leuctra*, being one of the most famous that ever were fought between the *Greeks*, was not so notable for any circumstance foregoing it, or for the managing of the fight it self, as for the death of the King, and many Citizens of *Sparta*, but especially, for that after this battell (between which and the conclusion of the generall peace there passed but twenty daies) the *Lacedæmonians* were never able to recover the strength and reputation which had formerly made them redoubted far and neer; whereas contrariwise the *Thebans*, whose greatest ambition had in former times confined it self unto the little Region of *Bæotia*, did now begin to undertake the leading and command of many people and estates, in such wise, that soon after they brought an Armie of threescore and ten thousand strong unto the Gates of *Sparta*. So much doe the afflictions of an hard war, valiantly endured, advance the affairs of the distressed, and guide them into the way of conquest, by stiffening that resolution with a manly temper, which wealth and ease had through luxurie, rechiefnesse, and many other vices or vanities, made rustie and effeminate.

## §. II.

*How the Athenians took upon them to maintain the peace of Greece. New troubles hence arising. Epaminondas invadeth and wasteth the Territories of Lacedæmon.*

The *Athenians* refusing to take advantage of this overthrow fallen upon their old Enemies, and new Confederates the *Lacedæmonians*; did nevertheless finely give them to understand, that their Dominion was expired, and therefore their pride might well be laid away. For taking upon themselves the maintenance of the peace lately concluded, which *Agessilaus* (perhaps of purpose to make benefit of quarrels that might arise) had left imperfect, they assembled the Deputies of all the *Ælides* confederated at *Athens*; where the generall libertie of all Towns, as well small as great, was ratified under the stile of the *Athenians*, and their associates. Hereupon began fresh garboiles. The *Mantineans*, claiming power by this decree to order their affairs at their own pleasure, did (as it were) in despite of the *Spartans*, who had enforced them to raze their Town, re-edifie it, and allie themselves with such of the *Arcadians* as stood worst affected to *Sparta*. The *Arcadians*, a strong Nation, consisting of many Cities, were distracted with factions, some desiring to hold good correspondency with the *Lacedæmonians*, some to weaken & keep them low; yet all pretending other ends. The *Lacedæmonians* durst not give impeachment to the *Mantineans*, nor take upon them to correct their ill-willers among the *Arcadians*, till such time as the factions brake out into violence, & each partie called in forraign help. Then was an Armie sent from *Sparta*, as it were in defence of the people of *Tegæa*, against the *Mantineans*, but indeed against them both. *Agessilaus* had the leading of it, but effected nothing. The *Thebans* had by this time subdued the

the *Phocians*, and were become head of the *Locrians*, *Acarnanians*, *Eubæans*, and many others; with the power of which Countries they entred *Peloponnesus* in favour of the *Arcadians*, who had, upon expectation of their coming, abstained from giving battell to *Agessilaus*. The Armie of the *Spartans* being dismissed, and *Epaminondas* joyned with the *Arcadians*, the Region of *Laconia* was invaded and spoiled: a thing so strange, that no Oracle could have found belief if any had foretold it. Almost 600. years were spent, since the *Dorians*, under the posteritie of *Hercules*, had seized upon *Laconia*, in all which time the sound of an enemies trumpet was not heard in that Countrie. Ten years were not fully past, since all *Greece* was at the devotion of the *Spartans*: but now the Region to which neither *Xerxes* with his huge Armie could once look upon, nor the mightie forces of *Athens*, and other enemy-States had dared to set foot on, saving by stealth, was all on a light fire, the very smoak whereof the women of *Sparta* were alarmed to behold. All which indignitie notwithstanding, the *Lacedæmonians* did not issue out of *Sparta* to fight, but sought how to preserve the Town, setting at libertie as many of their *Heilotes* or Slaves as were willing to bear Arms in defence of the State, and somewhat pitifully created the *Athenians* to give them succour. From *Corinth* and some towns of *Peloponnesus* they received speedie assistance; the *Athenians* came forward more slowly, so that *Epaminondas* returned without battell, having re-built the Citie of *Messene*, and peopled it a-new by calling home the ancient *Inhabitants*, whom the *Lacedæmonians* many ages before had chased away to other Countries, possessing their Territories themselves.

## §. III.

*The Composition between Athens and Sparta for command in War against the Thebans; who again invade and spoil Peloponnesus. The unfortunate presumption of the Arcadians.*

His journey therefore utterly defaced the reputation of the *Spartans*, in such wise, that they did no longer demand the conduct of the Armie, which was to be raised, nor any manner of precedence: but sending Embassadors from *Sparta*, and from all the Cities which held league with it, unto *Athens*, they offered to yeeld the Admiraltie to the *Athenians*, requesting that they themselves might be Generals by Land. This had been a composition well agreeing with the situation and qualitie of those two Cities; but it was rejected, because the Mariners and others that were to be employed at Sea, were men of no mark or estimation, in regard of those companies of horse and foot, whereof the Land-Armie was compounded, who being all Gentlemen or Citizens of *Athens*, were to have served under the *Lacedæmonians*. Wherefore it was agreed that the Authoritie should be divided by time, the *Athenians* ruling five daies, the *Lacedæmonians* other five, and so successively that each of them should have command of all both by Land and by Sea. It is manifest, that in this conclusion vain ambition was more regarded than the common profit; which must of necessitie be very slowly advanced, where consultation, resolution, and performance are so often to change hands. This appeared by a second invasion of *Peloponnesus*, wherein the *Thebans* found their enemies so unable to impeach them, that having fortified *Isthmus* from Sea to Sea, as in former times they had done against *Xerxes*, they were driven out of their strength by *Epaminondas*, who foraged the Countrie without resistance. But as the Articles of this league between *Athens* and *Sparta* did, by dividing the conduct in such manner, disable the societie, and make it insufficient to those ends for which it was concluded, so the example of it wrought their good, by filling the enemies heads with the like vanitie. For the *Arcadians* considering their own numbers which they brought into the field, and having found by many trials that their people were not inferior to others in strength of body, in courage, or in good Souldieriship, thought it good reason that they should in like manner share the government, with their friends the *Thebans*; and not alwaies continue followers of others, by increasing whose greatnesse they should strengthen their own yoke. Hereupon they began to demean themselves very insolently, vvhereby they grew hateful to their Neighbours, and suspected of the *Thebans* in an ill time. For a motion of generall peace having been made (which took not effect, because the Citie of *Messene* was not abandoned to the *Lacedæmonians*) the next enterprise of the *Spartans* and their friends was upon the *Arcadians*, who relying too much upon their own vvorth,



were overthrowen in a great battell, their calamitie being as pleasing to their Confederates, as to their Enemies.

## §. IV.

*The great growth of the Theban Estate. Embassages of the Greeks to the Persian; with the reasons why he most favoured the Thebans. Troubles in the Persian Empire. The fruitlesse issue of the Embassages.*

**T**He Thebans especially rejoiced at the Arcadians misfortune, considering, that without their aid, the successe of all enterprises proved so ill; whereas they themselves had by their own power accomplished very well whatsoever they took in hand, and were become not only victorious over the Lacedemonians, but patrons over the Thessalonians, and moderators of great quarrels that had risen in Macedonia; where compounding the differences about that Kingdome, as pleased them best, they carried Philip the son of Amyntas, and father of Alexander the Great, as a Hostage unto Thebes. Having therefore obtained such reputation, that little seemed wanting to make them absolute Commanders of all Greece, they sought means of alliance with the Persian King, to whom they sent Embassadours the great and famous Captain Pelopidas, whose reputation drew Artaxerxes to grant unto the Thebans all that they desired; whereof two especiall points were, That Messene should remain free from the Lacedemonians; and that the Athenians should forbear to send their ships of warre to Sea; only the latter of these two was somewhat qualified with reference to further advice. The other States of Greece did also send their Embassadours at the same time, of whom few or none received much contentment. For the king having found by long experience, how farre it concerned him to maintain a sure partie in Greece, did upon many weighty considerations resolve to bind the Thebans firmly unto him; justly expecting, that their greatnesse should be on that side his own securitie. The Athenians had been ancient enemies to his Crown; and having turned the profit of their victories upon the Persians to the purchase of a great Estate in Greece, maintained their Signorie in such suppliant manner, that sundrie grievous misfortunes notwithstanding they had endured a terrible warre, wherein the Lacedemonians being followed by most of the Greeks, and supplied with treasure, and all sorts of aid by Darius Nothus, were not able to vanquish them till their own indiscretion brought them on their knees. The Lacedemonians being victorious over Athens, had no sooner established their Dominion at home, than they undertook the conquest of Asia, from which though by the commotion raised in Greece with Persian gold, they were called back, yet having renewed their power, and settled things in Greece, it was not unlikely, that they should upon the next advantage have pursued the same enterprize, had not they been impeached by this Theban Warre. But the Thebans contrariwise had alwayes discovered a good affection to the Crown of Persia. They had sided with Xerxes in his invasion of Greece; with Darius and the Lacedemonians against Athens: And finally, having offered much contumelie to Agesilaus when he put to Sea, they drew him home by making warre on the Confederates of Sparta. Besides all these their good deservings, they were no Sea-men, and therefore unlikely to look abroad; whereupon if perchance they should have any desire, yet were they disabled by the want of good haven towns; which they could not seize upon without open breach of that peace, whereof they intended to become the Executors, giving libertie to all Cities that had at any time been free. Wherefore Artaxerxes did wholly condescend unto the requests of Pelopidas, as farre forth as he might, without giving open defiance to the rest of Greece; and by that mean he purchased his own quiet, being never afterward molested by that Nation in the lower Asia. The ill means which the Greeks had to disturb Artaxerxes, was very beneficiall to the Estate of Persia shortly after these times, in that great rebellion of all the Maritime Provinces. For had then the affairs of Greece been so composed, that any one Citie might without impeachment of the rest have transported an Army to assist the revolting Satrapes, or Viceroyes of Caria, Phrygia, Lydia, Mysia, Lycia, Pisidia, Pamphilia, Cilicia, Syria, and Phoenicia; humane reason can hardly find the means, by which the Empire could have been preserved from that ruine, which the divine Counsell had deferred unto the dayes of Alexander. But this great conspiracie of so many large and wealthy Provinces, wanting

ting a firm body of good and hardy Souldiers, was in short space dissolved; and vanished like a mist, without effect: these effeminate Asiaticques wearied quickly with the travells and dangers incident to War, forsaking the common cause, and each man striving to be the first, that by treason to his company should both redeem the former treason to his Prince, and purchase with all his own promotion with encrease of riches. Of this commotion, which in course of time followed some actions not as yet related, I have rather chosen to make short mention in this place, than hereafter to interrupt the Narration of things more important; but for that it was like a sudden storm, rashly commenced, idly followed, and foolishly layd down, having made a great noyle without effect, and having small reference to any other action agreeable; as also because in the whole reign of Artaxerxes, from the War of Cyrus to the invasion of Egypt, I find nothing (this insurrection, and a fruitlesse journey against the Cadusians excepted) worthy of any mention, much lesse of digression from the course of the businesse in Greece. All, or the most of his time passed away so quietly, that he enjoyed the pleasures which an Empire so great and wealthy could afford unto so absolute a Lord, with little disturbance. The troubles which he found were only, or chiefly Domestickall; growing out of the hatred which Parysatis the Queen-Mother bare unto his wife Statira, and to such as had been the greatest enemies to her sonne Cyrus, or gloried in his death: upon whom, when by poyson and mischievous practices she had satisfied her feminine appetite of revenge, thenceforth she wholly applied her self to the Kings disposition, cherishing in him the lewd desire of marrying his own Daughter, and filling him with the perswasion, which Princes not endued with an especiall grace, do readily entertain; That his own will was the supreme law of his subjects, and the rule by which all things were to be measured and adjudged to be good or evil. In this imaginary happinesse Pelopidas, and the other Embassadors of Greece, both found and left him; but left him by so much more assured than they found him, by how much the conclusion of this Treaty with them, being altogether to his own advantage, did seem to promise, if not the perpetuity, a long endurance of the same felicity to him and his, or at the least a full security of danger from Greece, whence only could any danger be feared. But such foundations of eternitie layd by mortall men in this transitory world, like the Tower of Babel, are either shaken from heaven, or made vain and unprofitable, ere the frame can be raised to full height; by confusion of tongues among the builders. Hereof was found a good example in the Thebans, & other Estates of Greece that had sent Embassadours to the Persian. For whereas it had been concluded, that all Towns, as well the little as the great, should be set at liberty, and the Thebans made Producers of this common peace, who thereby should become the judges of all controversies that might arise, and Leaders in War of all that would enter into this Confederacy; the Kings letters being solemnly published at Thebes, in the presence of Embassadours drawn thither from all parts of Greece; when an oath was required for observation of the form of peace therein set down, a dilatory answer was made by the Embassadours, who said, that they were sent to hear the articles; not to swear unto them. Hereby the Thebans were driven to send unto each of the Cities to require the Oath: But in vain. For when the Corinthians had boldly refused it, saying, that they did not need it, others took courage by their example to do the like, disappointing the Thebans of their glorious hopes, to whom this negotiation with Artaxerxes gave neither addition nor confirmation of greatnesse, but left them as it found them to relye upon their own swords.

## §. V.

*All Greece was divided between the Athenians and Lacedemonians on the one side, and Thebans on the other. Of the great tumults rising in Arcadia.*

**T**He condition of things in Greece at that time did stand thus: Athens and Sparta, which in former times had commanded all that Nation, and each upon envie of the others greatnesse drawn all their followers into a cruell intestine Warre, by which the whole Countrey, and especially the Estates of these two Cities, was brought very low, did now conjoyn their forces against the Thebans, who sought to make themselves Lords of all. The Eleans, Corinthians, and Achaïans, followed the party of these ancient governing Cities; either for the old reputation of them, & benefits received, or in dislike

dislike of those, who by strong hand were ready to become Rulers, to which authority they could not suddenly aspire without some injurie and much envie. The Citie of *Thebes* abounding with men, whom necessity had made warlike, and many victories in few years had filled with great spirits; and being so mighty independants, that she had reduced all the continent of *Greece* without *Peloponnesus* (the Region of *Attica*, and very little part beside excepted) under such acknowledgement, as wanted not much of meer Vassallage, did hope to bring all *Peloponnesus* to the like obedience, wherein already she had set good footing by her conjunction with the States of *Argos*, and of *Arcadia*. The *Argives* had been always bad Neighbours to the *Spartans*, to whom they thought themselves in ancient Nobilitie Superiours, but were farre under them in valour, having been often beaten out of the field by them, and put in danger of losing all: which to caused them to suspect and envie nothing more than the greatness and honour of *Sparta*, taking truce with her when she was at rest, and had leisure to bend her whole force against them; but firmly joyning with her enemies whensoever they found her entangled in a difficult warre. As the *Argives* were, in hatred of *Sparta*, sure friends of *Thebes*, so the *Arcadians*, transported with a great opinion of their own worthinesse, had formerly renounced and provoked against them their old Confederates and Leaders, the *Lacedaemonians*, and were now become very doubtfull adherents to the *Thebans*. In which regard it was thought convenient by *Epaminondas*, and the State of *Thebes*, to send an Armie into *Peloponnesus*, before such time as these wavering friends should fall further off, and become either Neutrall, or, which was to be feared, open enemies. And surely great cause there was to suspect the worst of them, considering that without consent of the *Thebans*, they had made peace with *Athens*; which was very strange, and seemed no lesse to the *Athenians* themselves, who holding a firm league with *Sparta* at the same time when the *Arcadians* treated with them, did nevertheless accept this new Confederacie, not relinquishing the old, because they found that howsoever these *Arcadians* were enemies to the *Lacedaemonians*, they should hereby be drawn somewhat further from their alliance with *Thebes*, which without them was unlikely to invade *Peloponnesus* with a strong Armie. But this did rather hasten, than by any means stay the coming of *Epaminondas*; who finding the way somewhat more clear for him (because the Citie of *Cezini*, which lay upon the *Isthmus*, and had been adverse to *Thebes*, was now, by miseries of this grievous warre, driven to become Neutrall) took occasion hereby, and by some disorders among the *Arcadians*, to visit *Peloponnesus* with an Armie, consisting of all the power of *Thebes*. A great tumult had risen in *Arcadia* about consecrated money, which many principall men among them had laid hands on, under pretence of employing it to publike uses. In compounding the differences grown upon this occasion, such as had least will to render account of the money which had come into their hands, procured the Captain of some *Theban* Souldiers, lying in *Tegea*, to take prisoners many of their Country-men, as people desirous of innovation. This was done: but the up-roar thereby caused was so great, that the prisoners were forth-with enlarged, and the *Arcadians*, who had in great numbers taken Arms, with much a-doe scarce pacified. When complaint of the Captains proceedings came to *Thebes*, *Epaminondas* turned all the blame upon them, who had made the peace with *Athens*, letting them know, that he would be shortly among them, to judge of their fidelity, by the assistance which they should give him, in that war which he intended to make in *Peloponnesus*. These Lordly words did greatly amaze the *Arcadians*; who needing not the aid of so mighty a power as he drew along with him, did vehemently suspect that great preparation to be made against themselves. Hereupon such of them as had before sought means to settle the affairs of their Countrey, by drawing things to some good conclusion of peace, did now forth-with send to *Athens* for help, and withall dispatched some of the principall among them as Embassadors to *Sparta*, by whom they offered themselves to the common defence of *Peloponnesus*, now ready to be invaded. This Embassage brought much comfort to the *Lacedaemonians*, who feared nothing more than the coming of *Epaminondas*, against whom they well knew, that all their forces, and best provisions, would be no more than very hardly sufficient. Forbearing therefore to dispute about prerogatives, they (who had been accustomed unto such a supremacie, as they would in no wise communicate with the powerfull Citie of *Athens*, till other hope of securing their own estate could not be thought upon) did now very gently yield to the *Arcadians*, that

the command of the Armie in chief, should be given for the time, to that Citie in whose Territorie it lay.

## §. VI.

A terrible invasion of Peloponnesus by Epaminondas.

Certain it is, that the condition of things did at that time require a very firm consent, and uniform care of the common safety. For, beside the great forces raised out of the other parts of *Greece*, the *Argives* & *Messenians* prepared with all their strength to joyn with *Epaminondas*; who having lien a while at *Nemea*, to intercept the *Athenians*, received there intelligence, that the Army coming from *Athens* would passe by *Sea*, whereupon he dislodged, and came to *Tegea*, which Citie, and the most of all *Arcadia* besides, forthwith declared themselves his. The common opinion was, that the first attempt of the *Thebans*, would be upon such of the *Arcadians* as had revolted, which quelled the *Lacedaemonian* Captains to fortifie *Manitinae* with all diligence, and to send for *Agessilaus* to *Sparta*, that he bringing with him all that small force of able men which remained in the Town, they might be strong enough to abide *Epaminondas* there. But *Epaminondas* held so good espial upon his Enemies, that had not an unknow fellow brought hasty advertisement of his purpose to *Agessilaus*, who was then well onward in the way to *Manitinae*, the Citie of *Sparta* had suddenly bin taken. For thither with all speed and secrecie did the *Thebans* march, who had surely carried the Citie, notwithstanding any defence that could have bin made by that handful of men remaining within it, but that *Agessilaus* in all flying haste got into it with his companies, whom the Armie of his Confederates followed thither to the rescue as fast as it was able. The arrival of the *Lacedaemonians* and their friends, as it cut off all hope from *Epaminondas* of taking *Sparta*, so it presented him with a fair advantage upon *Manitinae*. It was the time of Harvest, which made it very likely, that the *Manitinaeans*, finding the war to be carried from their walls into another quarter, would use the commodity of that vacation, by fetching in their corn, and turning out their cattell into the fields, whilst no enemy was near that might impeach them. Wherefore he turned away from *Sparta* to *Manitinae*, sending his horse-men before him, to seize upon all that might be found without the Citie. The *Manitinaeans* (according to the expectation of *Epaminondas*) were scattered abroad in the country, far more intent upon their harvest businesse, than upon the war, whereof they were secure, as thinking themselves out of distance. By which presumption it fell out, that great numbers of them, and all their Cattell, being unable to recover the Town, were in a desperate case; and the town it self in no great likelihood of holding out, when the enemy should have taken all their provision of victuals, with so many of the people as had not over-deerly bin redeemed, by that Cities returning to societie with *Thebes*. But at the same time, the *Athenians* coming to the succour of their Confederates, whom they thought to have found at *Manitinae*, were very earnestly entreated by the Citizens to rescue their goods, and people, from the danger wherinto they were fallen; if it were possible by any courageous adventure to deliver those who otherwise were given as lost. The *Thebans* were known at that time to be the best Souldiers of all the *Greeks*, and the commendation of good horsemanship had always bin given to the *Thebans*, as excelling in that qualitie all other Nations; yet the regard of honour so wrought upon the *Athenians*, that for the reputation of their Citie, which had entred into this war upon no necessity of her own, but only in desire of relieving her distressed friends, they issued forth of *Manitinae*, not abiding so long as to refresh themselves, or their horses with meat; and giving a lustie charge upon the enemy, who as bravely received them, after a long and hot fight, they remained masters of the field, giving by this victory a safe and easie retreat to all that were without the walls. The whole power of the *Berrians* arrived in the place soon after this battell, whom the *Lacedaemonians* and their assistants were not far behind.

## §. VII.

## s. VII.

The great battell of Mantinea. The honourable death of Epaminondas, with his commendation.

**E**paminondas, considering that his Commission was almost now expired, and that his attempts of surprizing Sparta and Mantinea having failed, the impression of terror which his name had wrought in the Peloponnesians, would soon vanishing, less by some notable act he should abate their courage in their first growth, & leave some memorable character of his expedition, resolved to give them battell, whereby he reasonably hoped both to settle the doubtfull affections of his own Associates, and to leave the Spartans as weak in spirit and ability, as he found them, if not wholly to bring them into subjection. Having therefore warned his men to prepare for that battell, wherein his Glorie should be rewarded with Lordship of all Greece; and finding the alacrity of his Soldiers to be such as promised the accomplishment of his own desire; he made them of declining the enemy, and intrenching himself in a place of more advantage, that by taking from them all expectation of fighting that day, he might allay the heat of their valour, and afterward strike their senses with amazement, when he should come upon them unexpected. This opinion deceived him not. For with very much tumult, as in the great & sudden danger, the enemy ran to Arms, necessity enforcing their resolution, & the consequence of that daies service urging them to do as well as they might. The Theban Army consisted of thirty thousand foot, & three thousand horse; the Lacedaemonians and their friends were short of this number, both in horse and in foot, by a third part. The Mantinians (because the war was in their Countrey) stood in the right wing, with them the Lacedaemonians; the Athenians had the left wing; the Achaans, Eleans, and others of lesse account, filled the bodie of the Armie. The Thebans stood in the left wing of their own battell, opposite to the Lacedaemonians, having by them the Argives, the Boeotians, Locrians, Sicyonians, Messenians, and Thessalians with others, compounding the main battell; the Argives held the right wing; the horse-men on each part were placed in the flanks, only a troupe of the Eleans were in rear. Before the footmen could joyn, the encounter of the horse on both sides was very rough, wherein finally the Thebans prevailed, notwithstanding the valiant resistance of the Athenians: who not yielding to the enemy either in courage or skill, were overlayd with numbers, and so beate upon by Thessalian slings, that they were driven to forsake the place, and leave their infanterie naked. But this retreat was the lesse disgracefull, because they kept themselves together, and did not fall back upon their own foot-men; but finding the Thebans horse to have given them over, and withall discovering some Companies of foot, which had bin sent about by Epaminondas, to charge their battell in the rear, they brake upon them, routed them, and hewed them all in pieces. In the mean season the battell of the Athenians had not only to doe with the Argives, but was hardly pressed by the Theban Horsemen, in such wise that it began to open, & was ready to turn back, when the Elean Squadron of Horse came up to the relief of it, and restored all on that part. With far greater violence did the Lacedaemonians and Thebans meet, these contending for Dominion, the other for the maintenance of their ancient honour; so that equall courage and equall losse on both sides made the hope and appearance of victorie to either equally doubtfull: unless perhaps the Lacedaemonians being very firm abiders, might seem the more likely to prevail, as having borne the first brunt and furie of the on-set, which was not hitherto remitted; and being framed by discipline, as it were by Nature, to excell in patience, whereof the Thebans, by practice of a few years, cannot be thought to have gotten a habite so sure and generall. But Epaminondas perceiving the obstinate stiffnesse of the Enemies to be such, as neither the bad successe of their own one foot of ground; taking a choice companie of the most able men, whom he cast into the forme of a Wedge, or Diamond, by the advantage of that figure against a Squadron, and by his own exceeding vertue, accompanied with the great strength and resolution of them which followed him, did open their ranks, and cleave the whole battell in despite of all resistance. Thus was the honour of that day won by the Thebans, who may justly be said to have carried the victorie, seeing that they remained Masters of the

the ground whereon the battell was fought, having driven the Enemy to lodge farther off. For that which was alleged by the Athenians, as a token that the victorie was partly theirs, the slaughter of those Mercenaries upon whom they lighted by chance in their own flight, finding them behind their Army, & the retaining of their dead bodies, it was a ceremony regardable only among the Greeks, and served merely for ostentation, shewing that by the fight they had obtained somewhat, which the enemy could not get from them otherwise than by request. But the Thebans arrived at the generall immediate sight of battell, none daring to abide them in the field: whereof a manifest confession is expressed from them, who forsake the place which they had chosen or accepted, as indifferent for trial of their ability and prowess. This was the last work of the incomparable vertue of Epaminondas, who being in the head of that Warlike troupe of men, which broke the Lacedaemonian Squadron, and forced it to give back in disorder, was furiously charged out the sudden, by a desperate Company of the Spartans, who all at once threw their Darts at him alone; whereby receiving many wounds, he nevertheless with a singular courage maintained the fight, using against the enemies many of their Darts, which he drew out of his own body; till at length by a Spartan, called Anticrates, he received so violent a stroke with a Dart, that the wood of it brake, leaving the yron and a peece of the crumblion in his breast. Hereupon he sunk down, and was soon conveyed out of the fight by his friends, having by his fall somewhat animated the Spartans (who fain would have got his bodie;) but much more inflamed with revengefull indignation, the Thebans, who raging at this heavy mischance, did with great slaughter compell their disordered enemies to leave the field, though long they followed not the chase, being wearied more with the sadnesse of this disaster, than with all the travell of the day. Epaminondas being brought into his Tent, was told by the Physicians, that when the head of the Dart should be drawn out of his Body, he must needs dye. Hearing this he called for his shield, which to have lost, was held a great dishonour: It was brought unto him. He had them tell him which part had the victorie, answer was made, that the Argives and Diophantes, two principall men of War, that were both slain, which being told him, He advised the Thebans to make peace, whilst with advantage they might, for that they had none left that was able to discharge the office of a General: Herewithall he willed, that the head of the weapon should be drawn out of his body, comforting his friends that lamented his death; and want of issue, by telling them, that the victories of Leuctra and Mantinea were two fair daughters, in whom his memory should live.

So died Epaminondas, the worthiest man that ever was bred in that Nation of Greece, and hardly to be matched in any Age or Countrey: for he equalled all others in the severall vertues, which in each of them were singular. His Justice and Sinceritie, his Temperance, Wisdom, and high Magnanimities, were no way inferior to his Military vertue: In every part whereof he so excelled, that he could not properly be called a Warrior, a Valiant, a Politique, a Bountifull, or an Industrious, and a Provident Captain. Neither was his private Conversation unanswerable to those high parts, which gave him praise abroad. For he was Grave, and yet very Affable and Courteous; resolute in publicke businesse, but in his own particular easie, and of much mildnesse: a lover of his People, bearing with mens infirmities, wittie and pleasant in speech, far from insolence, Master of his own affections, and furnished with all qualities that might win and keep love. To these graces were added great ability of body, much Eloquence, and very deep knowledge in all parts of Philosophie and Learning, wherewith his mind being enlightened; rested not in the sweetnesse of Contemplation, but brake forth into such effects as gave unto Thebes, which had ever more bin an underling, a dreadfull reputation among all people adjoining; and the highest command in Greece.

## S. VIII.

*Of the peace concluded in Greece after the battell of Mantinea. The voyage of Agesilaus into Egypt. His death, and qualities, with an examination of the comparison made between him and Pompey the Roman.*

**T**HE battell of Mantinea was the greatest that had ever been fought in that Country between the Naturals; and the last. For at Marathon, and Plataea, the populous Armies of the barbarous Nations gave rather a great fame, than a hard trial to the Grecian valour; neither were the practice of Armes and Art Militaire so perfect in the beginnings of the Peloponnesian War, as long continuance and daily exercise had now made them. The times following produced no actions of worth or moment; those excepted which were undertaken against forraign enemies, proving for the most part unfortunate. But in this last fight all Greece was interested, which never had more able Soldiers, and brave Commanders, nor ever contended for victory with greater care of the success, or more obstinate resolution. All which notwithstanding the issue being such as hath bin related, it was found best for every particular Estate, that a general peace should be established, every one retaining what he presently had, and none being forced to depend upon another. The Messenians were by name comprised in this new league; which could the Lacedaemonians not enter into it. Their standing out hundred not the least from proceeding to conclusion, considering that Sparta was now too weak to offend her Neighbours, and therefore might well be allowed to shew that anger in ceremonies, which had no power to declare it self in execution. This peace, as it gave some breath and refreshing to all the Country, so to the Cities of Athens and Argos it afforded leave to seek after wealth by forraign employment in Egypt, whither Agesilaus was sent with some small forces to assist, or indeed, as a Mercenary, to serve under Tachos King of Egypt in his War upon Syria. Chabrias the Athenian, who had before commanded under Arcus King of Egypt, went now as a volunteer, with such forces as he could raise, by entreatie, and offer of good pay, to the same service. These Egyptian Kings descended from Amyrtas of Sais, who rebelled against Darius the Great, having retained the Country, notwithstanding all intestine dissensions, and forraign invasions, during three Generations of their own race, were so well acquainted with the valour of the Greeks, that by their help (easily procured with gold) they conceived great hope, not onely to assure themselves, but to become Lords of the Provinces adjoining, which were held by the Persian. What the issue of this great enterprise might have been, had it not fallen by Domestick rebellion, it is uncertain. But very likely it is, that the rebellion it self had soon come to nothing, if Agesilaus had not proved a false Traitor, joyning with Nectanebus, who rose against his Prince, and helping the Rebel with that Army which the money of Tachos had waged. This falshood Agesilaus excused, as tending to the good of his own Country, though it seem rather, that he grudged because the King took upon himself the conduct of the Armie, using his service onely as Lieutenant, who had made full account of being appointed the General. Howsoever it came to passe, Tachos being shamefully betrayed by them, in whom he had reposed his chief confidence, fled unto the Persian, who upon his submission gave him gentle entertainment; and Nectanebus (who seems to have been the Nephew of Tachos) reigned in his stead. At the same time the Citizens of Mendes had set up another King; to whom all, or most of the Egyptians yielded their obedience. But Agesilaus fighting with him in places of advantage, prevailed so far, that he left Nectanebus in quiet possession of the Kingdome; who in recompence of his treason to the former King Tachos, and good service done to himself, rewarded him with two hundred and thirtie Talents of silver, with which bootie sailing homewards, he died by the way. He was a Prince very temperate, and valiant, and a good Leader in War, free from covetousnesse, and not reproached with any blemish of lust; which praises are the lesse admirable in him, for that the discipline of Sparta was such as did endue every one of the Citizens (not carried away by the violent stream of an ill nature) with all, or the chief of these good qualities. He was nevertheless very arrogant, perverse, unjust and vain-glorious, measuring all things by his own will, and obstinately prosecuting those courses, whose ends were beyond hope. The expedition of Xenophon had filled him

him with an opinion, that by his hand the Empire of Persia should be overthrowne; with which conceit being transported, and finding his proceedings interrupted by the Thebans and their Allies, he did ever after bear such hatred unto Thebes, as compelled that Estate to be necessitate to grow war-like, and able to the utter dishonour of Sparta, and the irreparable loss of all her former greatness. The Commonwealths given to him by Xenophon his good friend, have caused Plutarch to lay his narrative in the balance against Pompey the Great, whose actions (the solemn gravitie of carriage excepted) are very disproportionate. Yet we may truly say, that as Pompey made great wages underundry Climates and in all the Provinces of the Roman Empire, exceeding in the multitude of imployments all that were before him; so Agesilaus had at one time or other some quarrell with every Town in Greece, had made a Warre in Asia, and meddled in the busines of the Egyptians, in which variety he went beyond all his Predecessors; yet not wianing any Countries, as Pompey did many, but obtaining large wages, which Pompey never took. Herein also they were very like. Each of them was the last great Captain which his Nation brought forth in time of libertie, and each of them ruined the libertie of his Countie by his own Lordly wilfulness. We may therefore well say, *Similia magis amia quam paria*; The resemblance was neerer than the equalitie. Indeed the freedome of Rome was lost with Pompey, falling into the hands of Caesar, whom he had inforced to take Armes; yet the Roman Empire stood, the form of Government onely being changed: But the libertie of Greece, or of Sparta it self, was not forfeited unto the Thebans, whom Agesilaus had compelled to enter into a victorious Warre; yet the

Signorie, and ancient renown of Sparta was presently lost; and the freedome of all Greece

being wounded in this Theban warre, and after much bloud lost, ill healed by the peace ensuing, did very soon, upon the death of Agesilaus, give up the ghost; and the Lordship of the whole Countie was seized by

Philip King of Macedon, whose

actions are now on foot,

and more.

to be regarded than the Contemporarie passages of things, in any other Nation.

Fins Libri Tertii.

T t t

THE



THE  
FIRST PART  
OF THE HISTORIE  
OF THE WORLD;

Intreating of the times from the reign  
of Philip of Macedon, to the establishing of that  
Kingdome, in the race of  
ANTIGONUS.

THE FOURTH BOOK.

CHAP. I.

Of Philip the father of Alexander the Great, King of Macedon.

§ I.

What Kings reigned in Macedon before Philip.



He Greeks, of whom we have already made large discourse, not as yet wearied with intestine War, nor made wise by their vain contention for superiority, doe still, as in former times, continue the invasion and vastation of each other.

Against Xerxes, the greatest Monarch of that part of the world, they defended their libertie, with as happy success as ever Nation had, and with no less honour, than hath ever been acquired by deeds of Arms. And having had a triall and experience, more than fortunate, against those nations, they so little regarded what might come from them, who had so often forfeited the reputation of their forces, as

whatsoever could be spared from their own distraction at home, they transported over the Hellespont, as sufficient, to entertain and busie them withall.

But, as it commonly falleth out with every man of mark in the world, that they underfall, and perish by the hands and harmes which they least fear; so fared it at this time, with the Greeks. For of Philip of Macedon (of whom we are now to speak) they had so little regard, as they grew even then more violent in devouring each other, when the fast-growing greatness of such a Neighbour-King, should, in regard of their own safeties, have served them for a strong argument of union and accord. But the glorie of their Persian victories, wherewith they were pampered and made proud, taught them to neglect all Nations but themselves, and the rather to value at little the power and purposes of the Macedonians, because those Kings and States, which late nearer them than they did, had in the time of Amyntas, the father of Philip, so much weakened them, and won upon them, that they were not (as the Grecians periwaded themselves) in any one age, likely to recover

recover their own, much lesse to work any wonders against their borderers. And, indeed, it was not in their Philosophie to consider, That all great alterations are storm-like, sudden, and violent; and that it is then over-late to repair the decayed and broken banks, when great rivers are once swollen, fast-running, and intaged. No, the Greeks did rather employ themselves, in breaking down those defences which stood between them and this inundation, than seek to rampire and re-enforce their own fields, which by the Levell of reason they might have found to have lien under it. It was therefore well concluded by Orosius: *Græcia Civitates imperare singule cupiunt, imperium omnes perdidit*; The Cities of Greece lost their command, by striving each of them to command all.

The Kingdom of Macedon, so called of Macedon, the son of Osiris, or, as other Authors affirm, of Jupiter and Ashra, is the next Region towards the North which bordereth Greece; It hath to the East, the *Ægean Sea*; it is bounded on the North and North-west, by the *Thracians* and *Illyrians*; and on the South and South-west by *Thessalians* and *Epirus*.

Their Kings were of the familie of *Temenus*, of the race of *Hercules*, and by nation *Argives*, who are listed as followeth. About some six years after the translation of the *Assyrian Empire*, *Arbaces* then governing *Media*, *Caranus* of *Argos*, commanded by an Oracle, to lead a Colonie into *Macedon*, departed thence with many people, and as he was marching through that Countie, the weather being raytie and tempestuous, he espied a great herd of Goats, which fled the storm as fast as they could, halting them to their known place of covert. Whereupon *Caranus*, calling to mind, that he had also by another Oracle bin directed, to follow the first troupe of beasts, that should either lead him, or lie before him, He pursued these Goats to the Gates of *Edessa*, and being undiscovered by the Inhabitants, by reason of the darknesse of the air, he entered their Citie without resistance, and possessed it. Soon after this, by the overthrow of *Cisseus*, *Caranus* became Lord of the rest of *Macedon*, and held it eight and twenty years. *Cæneus* succeeded *Caranus*, and reigned twelve years. *Tyrinus* followed *Cæneus*, and ruled eight and twenty years.

*Perdiccas* the first, the son of *Tyrinus*, governed one and fifty years: a Prince, for his great valour, and many other vertues, much renowned. *Solinus*, *Plinie*, *Jussine*, *Euze-*  
*bius*, *Theophrastus*, *Antiochenus*, and others, affirm, that he appointed a place of buriall for himself, and for all the Kings of *Macedon* his Successors, at *Æge*: assuring them, that the Kingdome should so long continue in his Line and Race, as they continued to lay up their bodies in that Sepulchre; wherein it is said, that because *Alexander* the Great failed, therefore the posteritie of the *Temenide* failed in him: a thing rather deviled after the effect, as I conceive, than foretold by *Perdiccas*.

*Argæus* succeeded unto *Perdiccas*, and ruled eight and twenty years.

*Philip* the first, his successor, reigned eight and twentie years.

*Europus* followed *Philip*, and governed six and twenty years: in whose infancie the *Thracians* invaded *Macedon*, and having obtained a great victory, they pursued the same, to the great danger of that State. Whereupon the *Macedonians*, gathering new forces, and resolving either to recover their former losse, or to lose at once both their Kingdome and their King, they carried him with them in his cradle into the field, and returned victorious; for they were either confident that their Nation could not be beaten (their King being present) or rather they periwaded themselves that there was no man so void of honour and compassion, as to abandon their naturall Lord, being an infant, and no way (but by the hands of his servants) able to defend himself from destruction. The like is reported by *Aimontius* of *Clotarius*, the son of *Fredegunda*.

*Aleas* succeeded *Europus*, and ruled nine and twenty years.

*Amyntas* the first succeeded *Aleas*, and reigned fifty years; He lived at such time as *Darius Hystaspes*, after his unprosperous return out of *Syria*, sent *Megabazus* with an Armie into *Europe*, who in *Xerxes* name required *Amyntas* to acknowledge him for his Supreme Lord, by yielding unto him Earth and Water. But his Embassadors, as you have heard before, were, for their insolent behaviour towards the *Macedonian* Ladies, slain by the direction of *Alexander*, who was the son of *Amyntas*, and his Successor.

*Alexander* surnamed the Rich, the son of *Amyntas*, governed *Macedon* three and fortie



fortie years. He did not only appease the wrath of *Megabazus*, for the slaughter of the *Persian* Embassadors, by giving *Gygæa* his Sister, to *Bubares* of the bloud of *Persia*, but by that match he grew to great in *Xerxes* grace, as he obtained all that Region betwixt the Mountains of *Olympus* and *Hemus*, to be united to the Kingdome of *Macedon*. Yet could not these benefices buy his affection from the *Greeks*. For *Xerxes* being returned into *Asia*, and *Mardonius* made Generall of the *Persian* Armie, *Alexander* acquainted the *Greeks* with all his intents and purposes against them. He had three sons, *Perdiccas*, *Alcetas*, and *Philip*.

*Perdiccas* the second, the son of *Alexander*, lived in the time of the *Peloponnesian* war, and reigned in all eight and twenty years. The wars which he made were not much remarkable: the storie of them is found here and there by pieces in *Thucydides* his first six Books. He left behind him two sons, *Perdiccas*, who was very young; and *Archelaus*, who was base borne.

*Perdiccas* the third, being delivered to the custodie and care of *Archelaus*, was at seven years of age cast into a Well and drowned by his false Guardian: who excusing this fact to *Cleopatra* the mother of the young King, said, That the child in following a Goose hastily, fell thereinto by misadventure. But *Archelaus* stayed not here: for having thus dispatched his brother, he slew both his Uncle *Alcetas* the son of *Alexander* the Rich, and *Alexander* the son of this *Alcetas*, his Cousin Germain, and enjoyed the Kingdome of *Macedon* himself four and twentie years.

This *Archelaus*, of whom both *Plato* and *Aristotle* make mention, though he made himself King by wicked murder, yet he performed many things greatly to the profit of his Nation. It is said, That he sought by all means to draw *Socrates* unto him, and that he greatly loved and honoured *Eurypides* the Tragedian. He had two sons, *Archelaus* and *Orestes*.

*Archelaus* the second succeeded his father, and having reigned seven years, he was slain in hunting, either by chance, or of purpose, by *Crataus*.

*Orestes* his younger son was committed to the education of *Eropus*, of the royall bloud of *Macedon*, and had the same measure which *Archelaus* had measured to his Pupill; for *Eropus* murdered him and usurped the Kingdome, which he held some six years: the same who denied passage to *Agessilaus* King of *Sparta*, who desired after his return from the *Asian* expedition, to passe by the way of *Macedon* into *Greece*.

This Usurper left three sons, *Pausanias*, *Argæus*, and *Alexander*. *Pausanias* succeeded his father *Eropus*, and having reigned one year, he was driven out by *Amyntas* the son of *Philip*, the son of the first *Perdiccas*, the son of *Alexander* the Rich; which *Philip* was then preserved, when *Archelaus* the Bastard slew his brother *Perdiccas*, his uncle *Alcetas*, and his son *Alexander*. This *Amyntas* reigned (though very quietly) four and twentie years; for he was not only infested by *Pausanias*, assisted by the *Thracians*, and by his brother *Argæus*, encouraged by the *Illyrians*; and by the said *Thracians*, for two years dispossest of *Macedon*: but on the other side, the *Olynthians*, his Neighbours near the *Egean* Sea, made themselves for a while Masters of *Pella*, the chief Citie of *Macedon*.

*Amyntas* the second had by his wife *Eurydice* the *Illyrian*, three sons; *Alexander* the second, *Perdiccas* the third, and *Philip* the second, Father of *Alexander* the Great; and one Daughter called *Euryone* of *Exione*. He had also by his second Wife *Gygæa*, three Sons, *Archelaus*, *Argæus*, and *Menelaus*, afterward slain by their brother *Philip*. He had more by a Concubine, *Ptolomie* surnamed *Alorites*, of the Citie of *Alorus*, where, in he was born.

*Alexander* the second reigned not much above one year, in which time he was invaded by *Pausanias*, the son of *Eropus*, but defended by *Iphicrates* the *Athenian*, while he was at that time about *Amphipolis*. He was also constrained (for the payment of a great sum of money) to leave his youngest brother *Philip* in Hostage with the *Illyrians*, who had subjected his father *Amyntas* to the payment of tribute. After this, *Alexander* being invited by the *Alevade* against *Alexander* the tyrant of *Pheres* in *Thessalie*, having redeemed his brother *Philip*; to draw the *Thebans* to his assistance, entred into Confederacie with *Pelopidas*, being at that time in the same Countrie, with whom he also left *Philip* with divers other principall persons, for the gage of his promises to *Pelopidas*. But *Eurydice* his mother falling in love with her Son-in-law, who had married her Daughter

Daughter *Euryone* or *Exione*, practised the death of *Alexander* her son, with a purpose to conferre the Kingdome on her Paramour, which *Ptolomy Alorites* did put in execution: by means whereof he held *Macedon* for three years, but was soon after slain by *Perdiccas* the brother of *Alexander*. *Diedone* hath in otherwise of *Philip* being made pledge of faith, That *Amyntas* his father delivered him for hostage to the *Illyrians*, by whom he was conveyed to *Thebes*, there to be kept: others report that *Philip* (while his father was yet living) was first ingaged to the *Thebans*, and delivered for hostage a second time by *Alexander* his brother.

*Perdiccas* the third, after he had slain *Alorites* his base brother, governed *Macedon* five years, and was then slain in a battell against the *Illyrians*, according to *Diedone*, but *Philiste* affirmeth that he perished by the practice of *Eurydice* his mother, as *Alexander* full.

## S. II.

The beginning of Philip's reign: and how he delivered Macedon from the troubles wherein hee found it imaged.

**P**hilip the second, the youngest son of *Amyntas* by *Eurydice*, having bin instructed in all knowledge requisite unto the government of a Kingdome, in that excellent education which he had under *Epaminondas*, making an escape from *Thebes*, returned into *Macedon*, in the first year of the hundred and fifth *Olympiad*, which was after the building of *Rome* three hundred fourscore and thirteen years; and finding the many enemies and dangers wherewith the Kingdome was invironed, he took on him, not as a King (for *Perdiccas* left a son, though but an infant) but as the Protector of his Nephew, and Commander of the men of war. Yet his fruitfull ambition soon over-grew his modestie, and he was easily perswaded by the people to accept both the title of King, and withall the absolute rule of the Kingdome. And to say the truth, the necessity of the State of *Macedon* at that time required a King both prudent and active. For, besides the incursions of the *Illyrians* and *Pannonians*, the King of *Thrace* did set up in opposition *Pausanias*, the *Athenians*, *Argæus*, sons of the late Usurper *Eropus*: each of these labouring to place in *Macedon* a King of their own election. These heave burdens when *Philip* could not well bear, he bought off the weightiest by money; and by fair promises unloaded himself of so many of the rest, as he ran under the remainder happily enough. For, notwithstanding that his brother *Perdiccas* had his death accompanied with four thousand *Macedonians*, beside those that were wounded and taken prisoners; and that the *Pannonians* were destroying all before them in *Macedon*; and that the *Athenians* with a Fleet by Sea, and three thousand Souldiers by Land under *Mastius*, did beat upon him on all sides & quarters of his Countrie: yet after he had practised the men of war of *Pannonia*, and corrupted them with gifts; and had also bought the King of *Thrace* from *Pausanias*, he forthwith made head against the *Athenians* his stiffest enemies; and, for the first, he prevented their recovery of *Amphipolis*, a Citie on the frontier of *Macedon*: and did then pursue *Argæus* the son of *Eropus*, set against him by the *Athenians*, and followed him so hard at the heels, in his retreat from *Agæa*, that he forced him to abide the battell: which *Argæus* lost, having the greatest part of his Armie slain in the place. Those of the *Athenians*, and others which remained unbroken, took the advantage of a strong peece of ground at hand, which though they could not long defend, yet avoyding thereby the present furie of the Souldiers, they obtained of the vanquishers life and libertie to return into *Attica*. Whereupon a peace was concluded between him and the *Athenians* for that present, and for this clemencie he was greatly renowned and honoured by all the *Greeks*.

## S. III.

The good success which Philip had in many enterprises.

**N**ow had *Philip* leisure to look Northward, and to attend the *Illyrians* and *Pannonians*, his irreconcilable enemies and borderers: both which hee invaded with



so prosperous successe, as he slew *Barbillus*, King of the *Illyrians*, with seven thousand of his Nation, and thereby recovered all those places which the *Illyrians* held in *Macedon*, and withall upon the death of the King of *Pannonia*, he pierc'd that Country, and after a main victory obtained, he enforc'd them to pay him tribute. This was no sooner done, than (without staying to take longer breath) he hastned speedily towards *Larissa*, upon the river *Peneus* in *Thessaly*, of which Town he soon made himself master, and thereby he got good footing in that Country, whereof he made use in time following. Now although he resolv'd either to subdue the *Thessalians*, or to make them his own against all others, because the horse-men of that Country were the best, and most feared in that part of *Europe*; yet he thought it most for his safety to close up the entrances out of *Thrace*, lest while he invaded *Thessaly* and *Greece* towards the South, those ample Nations, lying towards the North, should either withdraw him, or over-run *Macedon*, as in former times. He therefore attempted *Amphipolis*, seated on the famous river of *Strimon*, which parteth *Thrace* from *Macedon*, and won it. He also recovered *Pydna*; and (to the North of *Amphipolis*) the City of *Crenides* (sometime *Datus*) and called it after his name *Philippi*: to the people whereof *Saint Paul* afterward directed one of his Epistles. This place, wherein *Philippi* stood, is very rich in mines of gold, out of which, greatly to the advancement of *Philips* affairs, he drew yearly a thousand talents, which make six hundred thousand French Crowns.

And that he might with the more ease disburden the *Thracian* shores of the *Athenian* Garrisons, to which he had given a great blow by the taking in of *Amphipolis*, he entered into league with his fathers malicious enemies, the *Olynthians*; whom the better to fasten unto him, he gave them the City of *Pydna* with the territory, meaning nothing less than that they should enjoy it, or their own Estate, many years.

Now that he might by degrees win ground upon the *Greeks*, hee took the fair occasion to deliver the City of *Pheres* in *Thessaly*, from the tyrants *Lycophron* and *Tisiphonus*, who, after they had conspired with *Thebe* the wife of *Alexander*, who usurped upon the liberty of that State, they themselves (*Alexander* being murdered) held it also by the same strong hand and oppression that *Alexander* did, till by the assistance of *Philip* they were beaten out, and *Pheres* restored to her former liberty. Which act of *Philip* did for ever after fasten the *Thessalians* unto him, and, to his exceeding great advantage, binde them to his service.

## S. IV.

Of the Phocian War which first drew Philip into Greece.

About this time, to wit, in the second year of the hundred and sixth *Olympiad*, eight years after the battell of *Mantineaa*, and about the eighth year of *Artaxerxes Ochus*, began that War, called *Sacred*. Now, as all occasions concur towards the execution of eternal providence, and of every great alteration in the World, there is some preceding preparation, though not at the first easily discerned; so did this revengefull hatred by the *Thebans*, *Thessalians*, and *Locrians*, conceived against the *Phocians*, not only teach *Philip* how he might with half a hand wrest the sword out of their fingers; but the *Greeks* themselves, beating down their own defences, to give him an easy passage; and beating themselves, to give him victory without perill, left nothing unperformed towards their own slavery, saving the title and imposition. Of this War the *Thebans* (made over-proud by their victory at *Leuctres*) were the inflamers. For at the Councell of the *Amphyctious*, or of the generall Estates of *Greece*, in which at that time they sway'd most, they caus'd both the *Lacedemonians* and *Phocians* to be condemn'd in greater summes of money than they could well bear; the one for surprizing the Castle of *Cadmea* in the time of peace, the other for ploughing up a piece of ground belonging to the Temple of *Delphos*. The *Phocians* being resolv'd not to obey this Edict, were secretly set on, and encouraged by the *Lacedemonians*; and for refusal were expos'd as Sacrileggers, and accus'd to all their neighbour-Nations, for whom it was then lawfull to invade, and destroy them at their pleasures.

The *Phocians* perswaded thereunto by *Philomelus*, a Captain of their own, cast the same dice of hazzard that *Cæsar* after many Ages following did; but had not the same chance

chance. Yet they dealt well enough with all the enemies of their own Nation. And the better to bear out an ungracious quarrell, of which there was left no hope of composition; they resolv'd to sack the Temple it self. For seeing that for the ploughing of a piece of *Apollo's* ground, they had so much offended their Neighbour-God, and their Neighbour-Nations; as worse could not befall them than already was intended; they resolv'd to take the gold with the ground, and either to perish for all, or to prevail against all that had commission to call them to account. The treasure which they took out of the Temple in the beginning of the Warre, was ten thousand talents, which in those dayes serv'd them to wage a great many men; and such was their successe in the beginning of the war, as they won three great battels against the *Thebans*, *Thessalians* and *Locrians*; but being beaten in the fourth, their Leader *Philomelus* cast himself headlong over the Rocks.

In the mean while the Cities of *Chersonesus*, both to defend themselves against their bad neighbour *Philip*, who encroached upon them, and to draw others into their quarrell, rendred themselves to the *Athenians*. *Philip* prepar'd to get them into his hands, and at the siege of *Methone* lost one of his eyes. It is said, That he that shot him, did purposely direct his arrow toward him, and that it was written on the shaft thereof: *After Philip; After to Philip*: for so he was called that gave him the wound. This Cite he even'd with the soil.

Plut. in *Vitium*  
Strab. l. 8.

The Tyrant *Lycophron* before mentioned, while *Philip* was buied on the border of *Thrace*, and the *Thessalians* engaged in the holy war, enter'd *Thessaly* with new forces, being assisted by *Onomarchus*, Commander of the *Phocian* Armie, in place of *Philomelus*. For hereby the *Phocians* hop'd so to entertain the *Thessalians* at home, as they should not find leisure to invade them. Hereupon was *Philip* the second time called into *Thessaly*; but both the *Thessalians* and *Macedonians* (*Philip* being present) were utterly overthrowen by *Onomarchus*, and great numbers of both Nations lost. From *Thessaly*, *Onomarchus* drew speedily towards *Boeotia*, and with the same victorious Armie brake the forces of the *Boeotians*, and took from them their Cite of *Coronea*. But *Philip*, impatient of his late misadventure, after he had re-enforc'd his Armie, return'd with all speed into *Thessaly*, there to find again the honour which he lately lost: and was the second time encountred by *Onomarchus*, who brought into the field twentie thousand foot, and five hundred horse. All this great preparation suffic'd not; for *Onomarchus* was by *Philip* surmount'd, both in numbers and in good fortune, his Armie overrun, six thousand slain, and three thousand taken: of which number himself being one, was among others hanged by *Philip*. Those that fled, were in part received by the *Athenian* Gallies, which sail'd alongst the coast, commanded by *Chares*; but the greatest number of those that took the Sea, were therein devour'd ere they recovered them. *Lycophron* was now again driven out of *Thessaly*, and *Pheres* made free as before.

## S. V.

Of the Olynthian war. The ambitious practices of Philip.

From hence *Philip* resolv'd to invade *Phocia* it self, but the *Athenians* did not favour his entrance into those parts; and therefore with the help of the *Lacedemonians*; they retrench'd his passage at the Straits of *Thermopylis*. Whereupon he return'd into *Macedon*; and after the taking of *Micyberne*, *Torone*, and other Towns, he quarrell'd with the *Olynthians*, whom not long before he had woo'd to his alliance, and bought his peace of them. For the *Olynthians* were very strong; and had evermore both brav'd and beaten the *Macedonians*. It is said, that *Philip* having put to death *Archelaus* his half brother (for *Amyntas* had three sons by *Eurydice* the Mother of *Philip*, and three other sons by *Gygæa*: but *Philip's* elder brother by the same Mother being dead, he determin'd to rid himself also of the rest) the two younger held themselves within *Olynthus*; and that the receiving of them by the *Olynthians* was the cause of the war, *Justine* affirmeth. But just quarrels are ballanc'd by just Princes, for to this King all things were lawfull that might serve his turn; all his affections, and passions, how divers soever in other men, were in his ambition swallowed up; and thereinto converted.

For

For he neither forbore the murder of his own brothers, the breach of faith, the buying of other mens fidelitie: he esteemed no place strong where his Asse laden with gold might enter; nor any Citie or State unconquerable, where a few of the greatest, to be made greater, could lose the sense of other mens sorrow and subjection. And because he thought it vain to practise the winning of *Olynthus*, till he had inclosed all the power they had within their own Walls, he entred their Territorie, and by the advantage of a well-compounded and trained Armie, he gave them two overthrowes ere he late down before the Citie it self: which done, he bought *Euthicrates* and *Lasphenes* from their people, and from the service of their Countrey and common-weale, by whose treason he entred the Town, slew his brothers therein, sackt it, and sold the Inhabitants for slaves by the drumme. By the spoil of this place he greedily enriched himself, and had treasure sufficient to buy-in other Cities withall, which he daily did. For so was he assisted by the Oracle in the beginning of his undertaking, That he should make his assault with silver speares: Whereupon *Horace* well and truly said,

FR. COM.  
OD. 16.

— Diffidit Urbium  
Paras vir Macedo, & subruit emulos  
Reges muneribus. —

By gifts the Macedon clave Gates asunder,  
And Kings envying his estate brought under.

And it is true that he won more by corruption and fraud, than he did by force. For as he had in all the principall Cities of Greece his secret workers (which way of Conquest was well followed by *Philip* the second of Spain:) So when in the contention between the Competitors for the Kingdome of *Thrace*, he was chosen the Arbitrator; he came not to the Councell accompanied with Pietie and Justice, but with a powerfull Armie, and having beaten and slain both Kings, gave sentence for himself, and made the Kingdome his own.

#### S. VI.

How Philip ended the Phocian warre.

THE war still continued between the *Phocians* and the Associates of the holy war: the *Boeotians*, finding themselves unable to subsist without some present aid, sent unto *Philip* for succour, who willingly yeelded to their necessities, and sent them such a proportion of men, as were neither sufficient to master their enemies, nor to assist themselves; but yet to enable them to continue the war, and to waste the strength of Greece. They also sent to *Artaxerxes Ochus* for supply of treasure, who lent them thirty talents, which makes a hundred and fourscore thousand crowns; but when with their supplies they had still the worst against the *Phocians*, who held from them three of the strongest Cities within *Boeotia* it self, they then besought *Philip* of Macedon that he would assist them in person, to whom they would give an entrance into their Territorie, and in all things obey his commandements in war.

Now had *Philip* what he longed for; for he knew himself in state to give the law to both, and so quitting all his other purposes towards the North, he marched with a speedy pace towards *Boeotia*, where being arrived, *Phalcechus* who commanded the *Phocian* Armie, fearing to shock with this victorious King, made his own peace, and withdrew himself with a Regiment of eight thousand Souldiers into *Peloponnesus*, leaving the *Phocians* to the mercie of the Conqueror; and for conclusion he had the glory of that war called *Sacred*, which the *Grecians* with so many mutuall slaughters had continued for ten years; and besides the glory, he posselt himself of *Orchomene*, *Coronea*, and *Cessa*, in the Countrey of the *Boeotians*, who invited him to be victorious over themselves. He brought the *Phocians* into servitude, and wasted their Cities, and gave them but their Villages to inhabit, reserving unto himself the yearly tribute of threecore talents, which make six and thirty thousand French Crowns. He also hereby (besides the same of pietie for service of the gods) obtained the same double voice in the Councell of the *Amphyctims*,

*Amphyctims* which the *Phocians* had, with the superintendencie of the *Pythian* games, forfeited by the *Corinthians*, by being partakers in the *Phocian* sacrilege.

#### S. VII.

How Philip with ill successe attempted upon Perinthus, Byzantium, and the Scythians.

*Philip*, after his triumphant return into Macedon, by the Lieutenant of his Armie *Parmenio*, slaughtered many thousands of the *Illyrians* and *Dardarians*, and brought the *Thracians* to pay him the tenth part of all their revenues. But his next enterprise against the *Perinthians* stayed his furie. *Perinthus* was a Citie of *Thrace*, seated upon *Propontis*, in the mid-way between *Sestos* and *Byzantium*, a place of great strength, and a people resolved to defend their libertie against *Philip*, where the *Athenians* encouraged and assisted them. *Philip* late down before it with a puissant Armie, made many fair breaches, gave many furious assaults, built many over-topping and commanding Towers about it. But he was repelled with equall violence. For whereas *Philip* thought by his continuall assaults to weary them, and waste both their men and munition, they were supplied, not only from the *Persian* with men and money, and succoured from *Byzantium*, which stood upon the same sea-coast, but they were relieved from *Athens*, *Chios*, and *Rhodes*, by the conduction of *Phocion*, with whatsoever was wanting to their necessity. But because those of *Byzantium*, by reason of their neighbourhood, and easie passage by water, gave them often and ready help, *Philip* removed the one half of his Armie, and besieged it, leaving fifteen thousand foot before *Perinthus*, to force it if they could: But to be short, he failed in both attempts, (as all Princes commonly doe that undertake divers enterprises at one time) and returned into Macedon with no lesse dishonour than losse: whereupon he made an overture of peace with the *Athenians*, and greatly desired into which though *Phocion* perswaded them in all he could, and that by the occasion offered they might greatly advantage their conditions; yet *Demosphenes* with his eloquence prevailed in the refusal. In the mean while, *Philip* having digested his late affront, and supplied his expence, by the taking of an hundred threecore and ten Merchants ships, he gathered new forces, and being accompanied with his son *Alexander*, led them into *Sophia*; but he was also unprosperous in that enterprise: For the *Triballi*, a people of *Moesia*, set on him in his return, wounded him, and took from him the greatest part of the spoils which he had gathered.

#### S. VIII.

How Philip overthrowing the Greeks in the battell of Chæronæa, was chosen Captain-Generall of Greece. The death of Philip.

AMONG these Northern Nations (part of which he suppressed, and part quieted) he spent some eight yeares; and in the ninth year, after the end of the holy War, he was by his great advantage invited again by the *Grecians* to their assistance. For the Citizens of *Amphissa* having disobeyed the decree of the *Amphyctims*, in which *Philip* had a double voice, and who by reason that the *Thebans* and *Locrans* gave countenance and aid to the *Amphissionians*, the rest were not of themselves able to constrain them, they besought *Philip* to come in person to their assistance. Now you must think that *Philip* was not long in resolving upon this enterprise; he needed no drawing on, whom nothing could keep back; nor other dissuasion than a mastering power could hold thence. He therefore commanded his Armie forthwith to march, the same being compounded of thirty thousand Foot, and two thousand Horse; and with as much expedition as could be made, he entred *Phocis*, won *Plataea*, and brought into subjection all that Region.

The rest, and especially the *Athenians*, although they had good cause to fear that a great part of this storm would fall on themselves, yet were they dissuaded by *Demosphenes* from accepting such reasonable conditions of peace as *Philip* offered, and rather made choice (having drawn the *Thebans* to joyn with them) to leave the enjoying of their cities

states and their freedom to the chance of one battell, than to hold it either by composition, or by the grace of *Philip*. But this their Oratours eloquence cost them dear. It is true, that he could far more easily mind them of the vertue of their Ancestors, than make them such as they were. He might repeat unto them (with words moving passion) the wonders they wrought at *Marathon*, but he could not transform the *Macedonians* into *Perians*, nor draw from the dead, a *Miltiades*, an *Aristides*, a *Themistocles*, or a *Cimon*, or any of those famous Commanders, whose great vertues they had payed with the greatest ingratitude that ever Nation did. A *Phocion* they had, but by the strength of a contrary faction was at this time in disgrace, and not employed: in so much as when the Armies of *Philip* and the Confederates incourtered, although some thousand of the *Athepians* did abide the killing, and the like number well-near of the *Thebans* died with them; yet the want of the worthy men on that side to hold up the rest, and to draw them on, and the many choice Captains of the *Macedonians*, incouraged by a King of a growing fortune, as it gave to *Philip* to shining a victory, that *Alexander* by the light thereof found his way (in despite of all the Nations interjacent) into *Persia*, *India*, and *Egypt*; so it cut to the ground, and gave end and date to all the *Grecian* glory: Yea their liberty (saith *Curtius*) with their large Dominion won with so many difficulties, continued for so many Ages, and so often defended against the greatest Kings, was now lost in a moment, and for ever lost.

Now this advised King (never passionate to his disadvantage) to the end he might obtain the Sovereignty over all *Greece*, and be acknowledged for their Captain-Generall against the *Perians*, without any further hazzard or trouble, was content to let go those *Athenians* that were taken at this battell of *Cheronea*, as he also forbore to attempt any thing against their Citie: but in *Thebes* (which lately by the vertue of *Epaminondas* triumphed over the rest) he lodged a Garrison of *Macedonians*. And being soon after according unto the long desire which he had nourished of this Sovereignty by the general States at *Corinth*, stiled the first Commander of all the *Grecians*, and contribution of men and money granted him, he compounded an Army of great strength, and under the Commandement of *Attalus* and *Parmentio*, transported the same over the *Hellspont* into *Asia*, to begin the War. Of his enterprise against *Persia*, he sought the successe from the Oracle at *Delphos*, from whence he received such another convertible riddle, as *Cræsus* did when he attempted *Cyrus*; and was in like sort mistaken in the exposition.

But as it is hard to discern and withstand the flatteries of our own appetites, so did *Philip* ambitious desire to invade *Persia*, abuse his judgement; so far, that the death, wherewith himself was threatened, he understood to be delivered of his enemy, whom he intended presently to invade. Before his purposed departure into *Asia*, he prepared for the marriage of his Daughter *Cleopatra*, with *Alexander* King of *Epirus*; to which feast and pastimes thereto appointed, he invited all his Friends and Allies, with the principall persons of the *Grecian* Cities, from whom he received much honour and many rich presents: but this was indeed the feast of his Funerall. For having refused to doe justice to one *Pausanias*, a Gentleman of his Guard, whom *Attalus* (greatly favoured by *Philip*) had first made drunk, and then left to be carnally abused by divers base persons: this *Pausanias* grew into to great a detestation of the Kings partiality in so foul a fact, as when *Philip* was passing towards the Theater, he drew a sword from under his long garment and wounded him to death, when he had lived six and forty years, and reigned five and twenty. *Justine* reports it, that *Olympias* incouraged *Pausanias* to murder the King her husband, which after his death she boldly avowed, by the honour she did unto *Pausanias*, in crowning his dead body, in consecrating his sword unto *Apollo*, by building for him a monument, and other like Graces.

## §. IX.

What good foundations of Alexanders greatnesse were laid by *Philip*. Of his laudable qualities and issue.

Now although he were then taken from the World, when he had mastered all opposition on that side of the Sea, and had seen the fruits of his hopes, and labours, changing colour towards ripenesse and perfection; yet hee was

herein happy, that he lived to see his son *Alexander* at mans estate, and had himself bin an eye-witnesse of his resolution and singular valour in this last battell.

The foundation of whose future greatnesse he had laid so soundly for him, with so plain a pattern of the buildings which himself meant to erect, as the performance and finishing was farre more easie to *Alexander*, though more glorious, than the beginnings unto *Philip*, though lesse famous. For, besides the recovery of *Macedon* it self in competition between him and the sonnes of *Aeropus*, the one assisted by the *Thracians*, the other by the *Athenians*, and besides the regaining of many places posselt by the *Illyrians*, the crushing of all those Northern Kings his Neighbours, the over-throw of *Olinthus*, a State that despised the power of his Father, the many Maritime Cities taken, of great strength and ancient freedom, and the subjection of that famous Nation of *Greece*, which for so many ages had defended it self against the greatest Kings of the World, and won upon them; He left unto his son, and had bred up for him so many choice Commanders, as the most of them, both for their valour and judgement in the Warre, were no lesse worthy of Crowns, than himself was that wore a Crown: For it was said of *Parmentio* (whom *Alexander*, ungratefull to so great vertue, impiously murdered) That *Parmentio* had performed many things challenging eternall fame, without the King; but the King without *Parmentio* never did any thing worthy of renowne: as for the rest of his Captaines, though content to obey the Son of such a Father, yet to did they not after *Alexanders* death endure to acknowledge any man Superiour to themselves.

Of this Prince it is hard to judge, whether his ambition had taught him the exercise of more vices, than Nature and his excellent education had enriched him with vertues. For besides that he was Valiant, Wise, Learned, and Master of his Affections, he had this favour of Piety, that he rather laboured to satisfie those that were grieved, than to suppress them. Whereof (among many other) we find a good example in his dealing with *Archeus* and *Nicanor*, whom, when for their evill speech of *Philip*, his familiars perswaded him to put to death, he answered them, That first it ought to be considered, whether the fault were in them that gave him ill languages, or in himself: Secondly; that it was in every mans own power to be well spoken of; and this was shortly proved, for after *Philip* relieved their necessities, there were none within his Kingdome that did him more honour than they did: Whereupon he told those that had perswaded him to use violence, that he was a better Physician for evill speech than they were.

His Epistles to *Alexander* his son are remembred by *Cicero* and *Gellius*, and by *Dion* and *Crisostome* exceedingly commended. His Stratagems are gathered by *Polyanius* and *Erastinus*, his wife layings by *Plutarch*. And albeit he held *Macedon* as in his own right, all the time of his reign, yet was he not the true and next Heire thereof; for *Amyntas* the son of his brother *Perdiccas* (of whom he had the Protection during his infancy) had the right. This *Amyntas* he married to his daughter *Cyna*, who had by him a daughter called *Eurydice*, who was married to *Philip* his base son *Aridas*, her Uncle by the Mothers side: both which *Olympias*, *Philip* first Wife, and Mother to *Alexander* the Great, put to death: *Aridas* by extreme torments, *Eurydice* the strangled.

*Philip* had by this *Olympias*, the daughter of *Neoptolemus*, King of the *Molossians* (of the race of *Achilles*) *Alexander* the Great, and *Cleopatra*. *Cleopatra* was married to her Uncle *Alexander*, King of *Epirus*, and was after her brother *Alexanders* death slain at *Sardis*, by the commandement of *Antigonus*.

By *Audata*, an *Illyrian*, his second Wife, he had *Cyna*, married as is shewed before. By *Nicaspolis*, the Sister of *Jason*, Tyrant of *Phæres*, he had *TheSalonica*, whom *Cassander*, after he had taken *Pidna*, married; but she was afterward by her father-in-law to *Antipater* put to death.

By *Cleopatra* the Niece of *Attalus*, he had *Caranus*, whom others call *Philip*: him *Olympias*, the Mother of *Alexander* the Great, caused to be roasted to death in a copper Pan. Others lay this murder to *Alexander* himself. By the same *Cleopatra* he had likewise a daughter called *Europa*, whom *Olympias* also murdered at the Mothers brest.

By *Phila* and *Meda* he had no issue. He had also two Concubines, *Arfinoe*, whom after he had gotten with child, he married to an obscure man, called *Lagus*, who bare *Ptolomie* King of *Egypt*; called the Son of *Lagus*, but esteemed the Son of *Philip*: By *Philinna*, his second Concubine,

a pub.

a publike Dancer, he had *Arion*, of whom we shall have much occasion to speak hereafter.



## CHAP. II.

ALEXANDER the Great.

## S. I.

*A brief rehearsal of Alexanders doings, before he invaded Asia.*



*A*lexander, afterwards called the Great, succeeded unto *Philip* his Father, being a Prince no lesse valiant by Nature, than by Education, well instructed, and enriched in all sorts of Learning and good Arts. He began his reign over the *Macedonians* four hundred and seven-  
 teen years after *Rome* was built, and after his own birth twenty years. The strange dreams of *Philip* his father, and that one of the gods, in the shape of a Snake, begat him on *Olympias* his Mother; I omit as foolish tales; but that the Temple of *Diana* (a work the most magnificent of the world) was burnt upon the day of his birth, and that so strange an accident was accompanied with the newes of three severall victories, obtained by the *Macedonians*, it was very remarkable; and might with the reason of those times be interpreted for ominous, & shewing the great things by *Alexander* afterward performed. Upon the change of the King, the Neighbour Nations, whom *Philip* had oppressed, began to consult about the recovery of their former libertie, and to adventure it by force of arms. *Alexanders* young years gave them hope of prevailing, and his suspected severitie increased courage in those, who could better resolve to die, than to live slavishly. But *Alexander* gave no time to those swelling humours, which might speedily have endangered the health of his Estate. For after revenge taken upon the Conspirators against his Father, whom he slew upon his Tombe, and the celebration of his Funeralls, he first fastened unto him his own nation, by freeing them from all exactions and bodily slavery, other than their service in his Wars; and used such Kingly austeritie towards those that contemned his young years, and such clemencie to the rest that perwaded themselves of the crueltie of his disposition, as all affections being passed at home, he made a present journe into *Peloponnesus*, and so well exercised his spirits among them, as by the Counsell of the States of *Greece*, he was according to the great desire of his heart, elected Captain-Generall against the *Per-  
 sians*, upon which war *Philip* had not only resolved, (who had obtained the same title of Generall Commander) but had transported under the leading of *Parmenio* and *Antimach*, a part of his Armie, to recover some places on *Asia*-side, for the safe descent of the rest. This enterprise against the *Per-  
 sian* occupied all *Alexanders* affections; those fair marks of Riches, Honour, and large Dominion, he now shot at both sleeping and waking; all other thoughts & imaginations were either grievous or hateful. But a contrary wind an-  
 neth; for he receiveth advertisement, that the *Athenians*, *Thebans*, and *Lacedemonians*, had united themselves against him, and by assistance from the *Per-  
 sian*, hoped for the recovery of their former freedome. Hereto they were perwaded by *Demosthenes*, himself being thereto perwaded by the gold of *Persia*: the device he used was more subtle than profitable; for hee caused it to be bruited that *Alexander* was slain in a battail against the *Triballes*, and brought into the assembly a companion whom hee had corrupted, to affirm, that himself was present, and wounded in the battail. There is indeed a certain Doctrine of Politie (as Politie is now a daies defined by falshood and knaverie) that devised rumors & lies, if they serve the turn but for a day or two, are greatly available. It is true that common people are sometimes mockt by them, as Souldiers are by false alarms in the Wars; but in all that I have observed, I have found the success as ridiculous as the invention. For as those that find themselves at one time abused by such like brayes, doe at other times neglect their duties, when they are upon true reports, and

in occasions perillous, summoned to assemble; so doe all men in generall condemn the Veners of such trumpery, and for them, fear upon necessary occasions to enter into the truth it self. This labour unlooked for, and losse of time, was not onely very grievous to *Alexander*, but by turning his sword from the ignoble and effeminate *Per-  
 sians*, against which he had directed it, towards the manly and famous *Graecians*, of whose assistance he thought himself assured, his present undertaking was greatly disordered. But he that cannot endure to strive against the wind, shall hardly attain the Port which he purpo-  
 seth to recover: and it no lesse becommeth the worthiest men to oppose misfortunes, than it doth the weakest children to bewail them.

He therefore made such expedition towards these Revolters, as that himself, with the Army that followed him, brought them the first newes of his preparation. Hereupon all stagger, and the *Athenians*, as they were the first that moved, so were they the first that fainted, seeking by their Embassadours to pacifie the King, and to be received again into his grace. *Alexander* was not long in resolving; for the *Per-  
 sians* perwaded him to pardon the *Graecians*. Wise men are not easily drawn from great purposes by such occasions as may easily be taken off, neither hath any King ever brought to effect any great matter, who hath intangled himself in many enterprises at once, not tending to one and the same certain end.

And having now quieted his borderers towards the South, he resolved to assure those Nations which lay on the North-side of *Macedon*, to wit, the *Thracians*, *Triballes*, *Pon-  
 ges*, *Getes*, *Agrians*, and other salvage people, which had greatly vexed with incursions, not onely other of his Predecessors, but even *Philip* his Father: with all which, after divers overthrowes given them, he made peace, or else brought them into subjection. Notwith-  
 standing this good successe, hee could not yet find the way out of *Eurppe*. There is nothing more natural to man than libertie; the *Greeks* had enjoyed it over-long, and lost it too late to forget it; they therefore shake off the yoke once again. The *Thebans*, who had in their Citadell a Garrison of a thousand *Macedons*, attempt to force it, *Alex-  
 ander* hastneth to their succour, and presents himself with thirty thousand foot, all old Souldiers, and three thousand horse, before the City, and gave the Inhabitants some daies to resolve, being even heart-sick with the desire of passing into *Asia*. So unwilling, indeed, he was to draw blood of the *Graecians*, by whom he hoped to serve himself elsewhere, that he offered the *Thebans* remission, if they would only deliver into his hands *Phanias* and *Praxibates*, the stirrers up of the Rebellion. But they, opposing the mounting fortune of *Alexander*, (which bare all resistance before it, like the breaking in of the Ocean Sea) in stead of such an answer, as men besieged and abandoned should have made, demanded *Philotas* and *Antipater* to be delivered unto them; as if *Thebes* alone, then layed in the balance of Fortune with the Kingdome of *Macedon*, and many other Provin-  
 ces, could either have evened the scale or swayed it. Therefore in the end they per-  
 sisted in their obstinacy. For while the *Thebans* oppose the Army assailing, they are charged at the back by the *Macedonian* Garrison, their Citie taken and razed to the ground, six thousand slain, and thirty thousand sold for slaves; at the price of four hundred and forty talents. This the King did to the terrour of the other *Graecian* Cities.

Many arguments were used by *Cleades* one of the prisoners, to perswade *Alexander* to forbear the destruction of *Thebes*. He prayed the King to believe that they were rather mis-  
 led by giving hasty credit to false reports, than any way malicious; for being perwaded of *Alexanders* death, they rebelled but against his successor. He also be-  
 sought the King to remember, that his father *Philip* had his education in that City; yea, that his Ancestour *Hercules* was born therein: but all persuasions were fruitlesse, the more wherein offences are committed do greatly aggravate them. Yet for the honour be-  
 hove to learning, he pardoned all the race of *Phanias* the Poet, and spared, and set at liberty *Timoclea*, the sister of *Theagenes*, who died in defence of the liberty of *Greece* against his father *Philip*. This noble woman being taken by a *Thracian*, and by him r-  
 vided, he threatened to take her life unless she would confesse her treasure: she led that *Thracian* to a Well, and told him that she had therein cast it: and when the *Thracian* hoped to look into the Well, she suddenly thrust him into the mouth thereof; and st-  
 rove him to death.

Now because the *Athenians* had received into their City so many of the *Thebans*, as

had escaped and fled unto them for succour, *Alexander* would not grant them peace, but upon condition to deliver into his hands both their Orators which perswaded this second revolt, and their Captains; yet in the end, it being a torment unto him to retard the enterprise of *Persia*, he was content that the Orators should remain, and accepted of the banishment of the Captains; wherein he was exceeding ill advised, had not his fortune, or rather the providence of God, made all the resistance against him unprofitable: for these good Leaders of the *Gracians* betook themselves to the service of the *Persian*, whom after a few dayes be invaded.

## §. II.

*How Alexander passing into Asia, fought with the Persians upon the River of Granicus.*

**V**hen all was now quieted at home, *Alexander*, committing to the trust of *Antipater* both *Greece* and *Macedon*, in the first of the Spring did passe the *Hellspont*, and being ready to disembark, he threw a Dart towards the *Asian* shore, as a token of defiance, commanding his Souldiers not to make any waste in their own Territorie, or to burn, or deface those buildings which themselves were presently, and in the future to possesse. He landed his Armie, consisting of two and thirty thousand foot, and five thousand horse, all old Souldiers, neer unto *Troy*, where he offered a solemn sacrifice upon *Achilles* Tombe, his maternall Ancestor.

But before he left his own coast, he put to death without any offence given him, all his Mother-in-lawes Kinsmen, whom *Philip* his Father had greatly advanced, not sparing such of his own as he suspected. He also took with him many of his tributary Princes, of whose fidelity he doubted; thinking by unjust cruelty to assure all things, both in the present and future. Yet the end of all fell out contrary to the policy which his Ambition had commended unto him, though agreeing very well with the justice of God; for all that he had planted, was soon after withered, and rooted up; those, whom he most trusted, were the most traitorous; his mother, friends and children, fell by such another mercilesse sword as his own, and all manner of confusion followed his dead body to the grave, and left him there.

When the knowledge of *Alexander*'s landing on *Asia* side was brought to *Darius*, he so much scorned the Army of *Macedon*, and had so contemptible an opinion of *Alexander* himself, as having stiled him his servant on a letter which he wrote unto him, reprehending his disloyaltie and audacie (for *Darius* intituled himself King of Kings, and the Kinsman of the gods) he gave order withall to his Lieutenants of the lesser *Asia*, that they should take *Alexander* alive, whip him with rods, and then convey him to his presence: that they should sink his ships, and send the *Macedons* taken prisoners beyond the Red-Sea; belike into *Ethiopia*, or some other unhealthfull part of *Africa*.

In this sort did this glorious King, confident in the glittering, but heartlesse multitude which he commanded, dispose of the already-vanquished *Macedonians*: But the ill destinies of men bear them to the ground, by what strong confidence soever armed. The great numbers which he gathered together and brought in one heap into the field, gave rather an exceeding advantage to his enemies, than any discouragement at all. For besides that they were men utterly unacquainted with dangers, men who by the name and countenance of their King were wont to prevail against those of lesse courage than themselves, men that took more care how to embroder with gold and silver their upper garments, as if they attended the invasion but of the Sun-beams, than they did to arm themselves with yron and steel against the sharp pikes, swords and darts of the hardie *Macedonians*; I say, besides all these, even the opinion they had of their own numbers, of which every one in particular hoped that it would not fall to his turn to fight, filled every of them with the care of their own safetie, without any intent at all to hazard any thing but their own breath, and that of their horses, in running away. The *Macedonians*, as they came to fight, and thereby to enrich themselves with the gold and jewels of *Persia*, both which they needed; so the *Persians*, who expected nothing in that Warre but blows and wounds, which they needed not, obeyed the King, who had power to constrain them in assembling themselves for his service; but their own fears and cowardise, which in time of danger had most power over them, they

they only then obeyed; when their rebellion against so servile a passion did justly and violently require it. For, saith *Vegatius*: *Quemadmodum bene exercitatus miles praelium capit, ita formidat indoctus; nam sciendum est in pugna usum amplius prodesse quam vires; as the well-practised Souldier desires to come to battail, so the raw one fears it: for we must understand, that in fight it more avails to have been accustomed unto the like, than only to have rude strength.* What manner of men the *Persians* were, *Alexander* discovered in the first encounter, before which time it is said, by those that write his story, that it was hard to judge, whether his daring to undertake the conquest of an Empire so well peopled, with a handfull of men, or the successe he had, were more to be wondred at. For at the River of *Granicus*, which severeth the Territory of *Troy* from *Propontis*, the *Persians* fought to stop his passage, taking the higher ground and bank of the River to defend, which *Alexander* was forced (as it were) to clime up unto, and scale from the Level of the water. Great resistance (saith *Cassius*) was made by the *Persians*, yet in the end *Alexander* prevailed. But it seems to me, that the victory then gotten was exceeding easie, and that the twenty thousand *Persian* foot-men, said to be slain, were rather kill'd in the back, in running away, than hurt in the bosoms; by resisting. For had those twenty thousand foot, and two hundred and fiftie horsemen, or after *Plutarch*, two thousand and five hundred horse-men, dyed with their faces towards the *Macedonians*, *Alexander* could not have bought their lives at so small a rate, as with the losse of four and thirty of all sorts of his own. And if it were also true, that *Plutarch* doth report, how *Alexander* encountered two of the *Persian* Commanders, *Spithridates* and *Rhaphanes*, and that the *Persian* horse-men fought with great fury, though in the end scattered; and lastly, how those *Gracians* in *Darius* his pay, holding themselves in one body upon a piece of ground of advantage, did (after mercy was refused them) fight it out to the last; how much it then resembleth truth, that such resistance having been made, yet of *Alexander*'s Army there fell but twelve Footmen, and two and twenty Horsemen:

## §. III.

*A digression concerning the defence of hard passages. Of things following the battail of Granicus.*

**T**he winning of this passage did greatly encourage the *Macedonians*, and brought such terrour upon all those of the lesser *Asia*, as he obtained all the Kingdoms thereof without a blow, some one or two Towns excepted. For in all invasions, where the Nations invaded have once been beaten upon a great advantage of the place, as in defence of Rivers, Streights, and Mountains, they will soon have perswaded themselves, that such an enemy upon equal termes and even ground, can hardly be resisted. It was therefore *Machiavels* counsell, That he which resolveth to defend a passage, should with his ablest force oppose the Assailant. And to say truth, few Regions of any great circuit are so well fenced, that Armies of such force as may be thought sufficient to conquer them, can be debarred all entrance, by the naturall difficultie of the wayes. One passage or other is commonly left unguarded: if all be defended, then must the forces of the Country be distracted; and yet lightly some one place will be found that is defended very weakly. How often have the *Alpes* given way to Armies, breaking into *Italy*? Yea, where shall we find that ever they kept out an invader? Yet are they such as (to speak briefly) assault with all difficulties those that travaill over them; but they give no security to those that lye behind them: for they are of too large extent. The towns of *Lombardy* perswaded themselves that they might enjoy their quiet, when the Warlike Nation of the *Suiters* had undertaken to hinder *Francis* the French King from descending into the Duchy of *Milan*: but whilst these Patrons of *Milan*, whom their own dwelling in those Mountains had made stiffe of all other for such a service, were busied in custody of the *Alpes*, *Francis* appeared in *Lombardy*, to so much the greater terrour of the Inhabitants, by how much the lesse they had expected his arrival. What shall we say of those Mountains, which lock up whole Regions in such sort, as they leave but one gate open? The Streights, or (as they were called) the gates of *Taurus* in *Cilicia*, and those of *Thermopylae*, have seldom been attempted, perhaps because they were thought impregnable: but how seldom (if ever) have they been attempted in vain? *Xerxes*, and long after him, the *Romans*, forced the entrance of



*Thermopylae*, *Cyrus* the yonger, and after him *Alexander*, found the Gates of *Cilicia* wide open; how strongly loever they had bin locked and barred, yet were those Countries open enough to a fleet that should enter on the back-side. The defence of Rivers how hard a thing it is, we finde examples in all histories that bear good witness. The deepest have many Foords; the swiftest and broadest may be passed by Boats, in case it be found a matter of difficulty to make a bridge. He that hath men enow to defend all the length of his own bank, hath also enow to bear his enemy; and may therefore doe better to let him come over, to his losse, than by striving in vain to hinder the passage, as a matter tending to his own disadvantage, fill the heads of his Souldiers with an opinion, that they are in ill case, having their means of safeguard taken from them, by the skill or valour of such as are too good for them. Certainly, if a River were sufficient defence against an Army, the Isle of *Mona*, now called *Anglesey*, which is divided from North-Wales by an armie of the Sea, had been safe enough against the *Romans* invading it under conduct of *Julius Agricola*. But he wanting, and not meanning to spend the time in making vessels to transport his forces, did assay the foords. Whereby he so amazed the enemies attending for ships and such like provision by Sea, that surely believing nothing could be hard or invincible to men, which came so minded to War, they humbly intreated for peace, and yielded the Island. Yet the *Britaines* were men stout enough, the *Persians* were very dastards.

It was therefore wisely done of *Alexander*, to passe the River of *Granick* in face of the enemy; not marching higher to seek an easier way, nor labouring to convey his men over it by some safer means. For, having beaten them upon their own ground, he did thereby cut off no lesse of their reputation, than of their strength, leaving no hope of succour to the partakers and followers of such unlabie Protectors.

Soon after this victory he recovered *Sardis*, *Ephesus*, the Cities of the *Trallians*, and *Magnesias*, which were rendred unto him. The inhabitants of which, with the people of the Countrie, he received with great grace, suffering them to be governed by their own laws. For he observed it well; *Novum Imperium inchoantibus utilis clementia forma*; It is commodious unto such as lay the foundations of a new Sovereignty, to have the same of being mercifull. He then by *Parmenio* van *Atileas*, and by force mastered *Helicarnassus*, which because it resisted obstinately, he razed to the ground. From whence he entred into *Caria*, where *Ada* the Queen, who had been cast out of all that she held (except the City of *Alinda*) by *Darius* his Lieutenants, presented her self unto him, and adopted him her son and successour; which *Alexander* accepted in so gracious part, as he left the whole Kingdome to her disposing. He then entred into *Lycia*, and *Pamphylia*, and obtained all the Sea coasts, and subjecting unto him *Psidia*, he directed himself towards *Darius* (who was said to be advanced towards him with a marvellous Army) by the way of *Phrygia*: For all the Province of *Asia* the lesse, bordering upon the Sea, his first victory layed under his feet.

While he gave order for the government and settling of *Lycia*, and *Pamphylia*, they sent *Cleander* to raise some new Captains in *Peloponnesus*, and marching towards the North, he entred *Celenas*, seated on the River *Meander*, which was abandoned unto him, the Castle onely holding out, which also after forty dayes was given up: for so long time he gave them to attend succour from *Darius*. From *Celenas* he past on through *Phrygia* towards the *Euxine* Sea, till he came to a city called *Gordium*, the Regall seat, in former times, of King *Midas*. In this City it was, that he found the *Gordian* knot, which when he knew not how to undoe, he cut it afunder with his sword. For there was an ancient prophetic did promise to him that could untie it, the Lordship of all *Asia*; whereupon *Alexander*, not respecting the manner how, so it were done, assumed to himself the fulfilling of the prophetic, by hewing it in pieces.

But before he turned from this part of *Asia* the lesse towards the east, he took care to clear the Sea coast on his back, and to thrust the *Persians* out of the Ilands of *Lebos*, *Chio*, and *Coos*: the charge whereof he committed unto two of his Captains, giving them such order as he thought to be most convenient for that service; and delivering unto them fifty Talents to defray the charge; and withall out of his first spoyle gotten, he sent threefore Talents more to *Antipater* his Lieutenant in *Greece* and *Macedon*. From *Celenas* he removed to *Ancira*, now called *Anguori*, standing on the same River of *Sangarius*, which runneth through *Gordium*: there he mustered his Army, and then

then entred *Paplagania*, whose people submitted themselves unto him, and obtained freedome of tribute: where he left *Catus* Governor, with one Regiment of *Macedonians* lately arrived.

Here he understood of the death of *Memnon*, *Darius* Lieutenant, which heartned him greatly to passe on towards him; for of this only Captain he had more respect than of all the multitude by *Darius* assembled, and of all the Commanders he had besides. For so much hath the spirit of some one man excelled, as it hath undertaken and effected the alteration of the greatest States and Common-weals, the erection of Monarchies, the conquest of Kingdomes and Empires, guided handfulls of men against multitudes of equall bodily strength, contrived victories beyond all hope and discourse of reason, converted the fearfull passions of his own followers into magnanimity, and the valour of his enemies into cowardize; such spirits have been stirred up in sundry Ages of the world, and in divers parts thereof, to erect and cast down again, to establish and to destroy, and to bring all things, Persons and States, to the same certain ends, which the infinite Spirit of the *Universall*, piercing, moving, and governing all things, hath ordained. Certainly the things that this King did, were marvellous, and would hardly have been undertaken by any man else: and though his Father had determined to have invaded the lesser *Asia*, it is like enough that he would have contented himself with some part thereof, and not have discovered the River of *Andus*, as this man did. The swift recourse of victory, wherewith he ran over so large a portion of the World, in so short a space, may justly be imputed unto this, that he was never encountered by an equall spirit, concurring with equall power against him. Hereby it came to passe that his actions being limited by no greater opposition, than desert places, and the meer length of tedious journeyes could make, were like the *Golossus* of *Rhodes*, not so much to be admired for the workmanship, though therein also praise-worthy, as for the huge bulk. For certainly the things performed by *Xenophon*, discover as brave a spirit as *Alexanders*, and working no lesse exquisitely, though the effects were lesse materiall, as were also the forces and power of command, by which it wrought. But he that would find the exact pattern of a soble Commander, must look upon such as *Epaninondas*, that encountering worthy Captains, and those better followed than themselves, have by their singular vertue over-topped their valiant enemies; and still prevailed over those, that would not have yielded one foot to any other. Such as these are, doo seldome live to obtain great Empires. For it is a work of more labour and longer time, to master the equall forces of one hardy and well-ordered State, than to tread down and utterly subdue a multitude of feeble Nations, compounding the body of a grosse unwieldy Empire. Wherefore these *Borgo Potentes*, men that with little have done much upon enemies of like ability, are to be regarded as choise examples of worth; but great Conquerors, to be rather admired for the substance of their actions, than the exquisite managing; exactnesse and gracesse concurring so seldome, that I can find no instance of both in one, save onely that brave Roman, *Cesar*.

Having thus farre digressed, it is now time that wee return unto our Eastern Conqueror; who is travelling hastily towards *Cilicia*, with a desire to recover the Streights thereof before *Darius* should arrive there. But first making a dispatch into *Greece*, he sent to those Cities, in which he reposed most trust, some of the *Persian* Targets, which hee had recovered in his first battell, upon which, by certain inscriptions, he made them partakers of his victory. Herein he well advised himself; for he that doth not as well impart of the honour which he gains in the Wars, as he doth of the spoils, shall never be long followed of those of the better sort. For men which are either well born, or well bred, and have more of wealth than of reputation, do as often flatter themselves with the purchase of glory, as the weak in fortune, and strong in courage, do with the gain of gold and silver.

The Governour of *Cilicia* hearing of *Alexanders* coming on, left some Companies to keep the Streights, which were indeed very defensible; and withall, as *Carius* noverth, hee began overlate to prise and put in execution the Counsell of *Memnon*: who in the beginning of the Wars advised him to waste all the provisions for Men and Horse, that could not be lodged in strong places, and awayes to give ground to the Invader, till he found some such notable advantage as might assuredly promise him the obtaining of victory. For the fury of an invading Army is best broken, by delays, change



of diet, and want, eating sometimes too little, and sometimes too much, sometimes reposing themselves in beds, and more often on the cold ground. These and the like sudden alterations bring many diseases upon all Nations out of their own Countries. Therefore if *Darius* had kept the *Macedonians* but a while from meat and sleep, and refusing to give or take battell, had wearied them with his light horse, as the *Parthians* afterward did the *Romans*, he might perchance have saved his own life, and his estate. For it was did the one of the greatest encouragements given by *Alexander*, to the *Macedonians* in the third and last fatal battell, that they were to fight with all the strength of *Persia* at once.

*Xerxes*, when he invaded *Greece* and fought abroad, in being beaten, lost only his men; but *Darius* being invaded by the *Greeks*, and fighting at home, by being beaten, lost his Kingdome. *Pericles* though the *Lacedamonians* burnt all in *Attica* to the Gates of *Athens*, yet could not be drawn to hazard a battell: for the invaded ought evermore to fight upon the advantage of time and place. Because we read Histories to inform us out understanding by the examples therein found, we will give some instances of those that have perished by adventuring in their own Countries, to charge an invading Armie. The *Romans*, by fighting with *Hannibal*, were brought to the brink of their destruction.

*Pompey* was well advised for a while, when he gave *Cæsar* ground, but when by the importunity of his Captains he adventured to fight at *Pharsalia*, he lost the battell, lost the freedome of *Rome*, and his own life.

*Ferdinand*, in the Conquest of *Naples*, would needs fight a battell with the *French* to his confusion, though it was told him by a man of sound judgement, that those Counsellors which promise surety in all things, are honourable enough.

The Constable of *France* made frustrate the mighty preparation of *Charles* the Fifth, when he invaded *Provence*, by wasting the Countie, and forbearing to fight; so did the Duke of *Alva* wearie the *French* in *Naples*, and dissolve the boistrous Army of the Prince of *Orange* in the *Low-Countries*.

The *Leigers*, contrary to the advice of their Generall, would needs fight a battell with the *Bourgonians*, invading their Countie, and could not be persuaded to linger the time, and stay their advantage; but they lost eight and twenty thousand upon the place. *Philip of Valois* set upon King *Edward* at *Cheslie*; and King *John* (when the *English* were well-near tired out, and would in short time by an orderly pursuit have been wasted to nothing) constrained the black Prince with great fury, near *Poitiers*, to joyn battell with him: But all men know what lamentable successe these two *French* Kings found. *Charles* the fifth of *France* made another kind of *Fabian*-Warfare; and though the *English* burnt and wasted many places, yet this King held his resolution to forbear blows, and followed his advice, which told him, That the *English* could never get his inheritance by smock; and it is reported by *Belloy* and *Herrault*, that King *Edward* was wont to say of this *Charles*, that he wan from him the Dutchy of *Guyen* without ever putting on his Armour.

But where God hath a purpose to destroy, wise men grow short-lived, and the charge of things is committed unto such as either cannot see what is for their good, or know not how to put in execution any sound advice. The course which *Memnon* had propounded, must in all appearance of reason have brought the *Macedonian* to a great perplexity, and made him stand still a while at the Straights of *Cilicia*, doubting whether it were more shamefull to return, or dangerous to proceed. For, had *Cappadocia* and *Paphlagonia* been wasted whilst *Alexander* was far off; and the Straights of *Cilicia* been defended by *Armenes*, Governour of that Province, with the best of his forces; hunger would not have suffered the enemy, to stay the triall of all means that might be thought upon, of forcing that passage: or if the place could not have been maintained, yet might *Cilicia*, at better leisure have been so thoroughly spoiled, that the heart of his Army should have been broken, by seeking out miseries by painfull travell.

But *Armenes* leaving a small number to defend the Straights, took the best of his Armie with him, to waste and spoil the Countie; or rather, as may seem, to find himself some work, by pretence of which he might honestly run further away from *Alexander*. Hee should rather have adventured his person in custody of the Straights, whereby he might perhaps have saved the Province; and in the mean time, all that was in the fields, would have been conveyed into strong Towns. So should his Army, if it were

driven from the place of advantage, have found good entertainment within walled Cities, and himself with his horse-men have had the lesse work in destroying that little which was left abroad. Handling the matter as he did, he gave the *Cilicians* cause to wish for *Alexanders* coming, and as great cause to the Keepers of the passage not to hinder it. For cowards are wise in apprehending all formes of danger. These Guardians of the Straights, hearing that *Armenes* made all haste to joyn himself with *Darius*, burning down all as he went, like one despairing of the defence, began to grow circumpect, and to think that surely their Generall, who gave as lost the Countie behind their backs, had exposed themselves unto certain death, as men that were good for nothing else but to dull the *Macedonian* swords. Wherefore, not affecting to die for their Prince and Countie (which honour they saw that *Armenes* himself could well forbeare) they speedily followed the foot-steps of their Generall, gleaning after his Harvest. Thus *Alexander* without labour got both the entrance of *Cilicia*, abandoned by the cowardise of his Enemies, and the whole Province that had been alienated from the *Persian* side by their indiscretion.

## §. IIII.

Of the unwarlike Army levied by *Darius* against *Alexander*. The unadvised courses which *Darius* took in this expedition. He is vanquished at *Iffus*; where his Mother, Wife, and Children are made prisoners: of some things following the battell of *Iffus*.

IN the mean season *Darius* approached; who (as *Curtius* reports) had compounded an Army of more than two hundred and ninety thousand Souldiers, out of divers Nations; *Justinus* musters them at three hundred thousand Foot, and a hundred thousand Horse; *Plutarch* at six hundred thousand.

The manner of his coming on, as *Curtius* describes it, was rather like a masker than a man of War, and like one that took more care to set out his glory and riches, than to provide for his own safety, persuading himself, as it seemed, to beat *Alexander* with pomp and sumptuous Pageants. For, before the Armie there was carried the holy fire, which the *Persians* worshipped, attended by their Priests; and after them three hundred and threescore and five young-men, answering the number of the dayes of the year, covered with Scarlet; then the Chariot of *Jupiter* drawn with white Horses, with their Riders clothed in the same colour, with rods of gold in their hands; And after it, the Horse of the Sun: Next after these follow ten sumptuous Chariots; in-layed and garnished with silver and gold; and then the Vanguard of their horse; compounded of twelve severall Nations, which the better to avoid confusion, did hardly understand each others language; and these marshalled in the head of the rest, being beaten, might serve very fitly to disorder all that followed them: in the tail of these Horses the Regiment of foot marched, with the *Persians* called immortal, because if any died, the number was presently supplied: and these were armed with chains of gold, and their coats with the same metal embroidered, whereof the sleeves were garnished with pearl; baits, either to catch the hungry *Macedonians* withall, or to persuade them that it were great incivility to cut, and to deface such glorious garments. But it was well said; *Sumptus inducit miles, se virtute superiorem aliis non existimet, cum in preliis oporteat fortitudine animi, et non vestimentis muniri, quoniam hostes vestibus non debellantur*; Let no man think that he exceedeth those in valour, whom he exceedeth in gay garments; for it is by men armed with fortitude of mind, and not by the apparell they put on, that enemies are beaten. And it was perchance from the *Roman* Papyrius that this advice was borrowed, who when he fought against the *Sannites* in that fatal battell, wherein they all swore either to prevail or dye, thirty thousand of them having apparelled themselves in white garments, with high crests, and great plumes of feathers, bade the *Roman* Souldiers to lay aside all fear: *Non enim cristas vulnera facere, et per picta atque aurata scuta transire Romanum pilum; for these plumed crests would wound no body, and the Roman pike would bore holes in painted and gilded shields*.

To second this Court-like company, fifteen thousand were appointed more rich and glittering than the former, but apparelled like Women (belike to breed the more terror) and these were honoured with the Title of the Kings Kinsmen. Then came *Darius* himself,

himself, the Gentle-men of his Guard-robe, riding before his Chariot, which was supported by the gods of his Nation, cast and cut in pure gold; these the *Macedonians* did not serve, but they served their turns of these, by changing their massie-bodies into thin, portable and currant coyn. The head of this Chariot was set with precious stones, with two little golden Idols, covered with an open-winged-Eagle of the same metall: The hinder part being raised high whereon *Darius* sat, had a covering of inestimable value. This Chariot of the King was followed with ten thousand Horse-men, their Lances plated with silver, and their heads gilt; which they meant not to imbrue in the *Macedonian* blood, for fear of marring their beauty. Hee had for the proper Guard of his own person, two hundred of the blood Royall; bloud too Royall and precious to be spilt by any valorous adventure, (I am of opinion that two hundred sturdy fellows, like the *Switzers*, would have done him more service) and these were backt with thirty thousand foot-men, after whom again were led four hundred spare horses for the King, which if he had meant to have used, he would have marshalled somewhat neerer him.

Now followed the Rearward, the same being led by *Sisygambis* the Kings Mother, and by his wife, drawn in glorious Chariots, followed by a great train of Ladies their attendants on horse-back, with fifteen Wagons of the Kings children, and the wives of the Nobility, waited on by two hundred and fiftie Concubines, and a world of Nurses and Eunuchs, most sumptuously appareled. By which it should seem that *Darius* thought that the *Macedonians* had been *Comedians* or *Tumblers*; for this troop was far less comfiter to behold those sports than to be present at battells. Between these and a company of slight-armed slaves, with a world of Varlets, was the Kings treasure, charged on six hundred Mules, and three hundred Camels, brought, as it proved, to pay the *Macedonians*. In this sort came the *May-game-King* into the field, incumbered with a most unnecessary train of Strumpets, attended with troupes of divers Nations, speaking divers languages, and for their numbers impossible to be marshalled; and for the most part so effeminate, and so rich in gold and in garments, as the same could not but have encouraged the naked it Nation of the world against them. Wee find it in daily experience, that all discourse of magnanimity, of Nationall Vertue, of Religion, of Liberty, and whatsoever else hath been wont to move and incourage vertuous men, hath no force at all with the common Souldier, in comparison of spoil and riches. The rich ships are boarded upon all disadvantage, the rich Towns are furiously assaulted, and the plentiful Countries willingly invaded. Our *English* nation have attempted many places in the *Indies*, and run upon the *Spaniards* head-long, in hope of their Royalls of plate, and *Pistoles*; which, had they bin put to it upon the like disadvantages in *Ireland*, or in any poor Country, they would have turned their Peeces and Pikes against their Commanders, contesting that they had bin brought without reason to the Butchery and slaughter. It is true that the warre is made willingly, and for the most part with good success, that is ordained against the richest Nations; for as the needy are always adventurous, so plenty is wont to shun perill, and men that have well to live, do rather studie how to live well, I mean wealthily, than care to die (as they call it) honourably. *Car où il y a rien à gagner que des coups, volontiers il n'y va pas. No man makes haste to the market, where there is nothing to be bought but blows.*

Now if *Alexander* had beheld this preparation before his consultation with his Souldiers, he would have satisfied himself by the out-sides of the *Persians*, and never have looked into the intrales of Beasts for successe. For leaving the description of this second battell (which is indeed no where well described, neither for the confusion and hasty running away of the *Asians* could it be) we have enough by the slaughter that was made of them, and by the few that fell of the *Macedonians*, to inform us what manner of resistance was made. For if it be true that threecore thousand *Persian* footmen were slain in this battell, with ten thousand of their horsemen; Or (as *Curtius* saith) an hundred thousand footmen, with the same number of horsemen, and besides this slaughter, forty thousand taken prisoners, while of *Alexanders* Armie there miscarried but two hundred and four-score of all sorts, of which numbers *Arrianus* and other Historians cut off almost the one half; I do verily beleeve, that this small number rather died with the over-travell and pains-taking in killing their enemies, than by any strokes received from them. And surely if the *Persian* Nation (at this time degenerate and the basest of the World) had any

any favour remaining of the ancient valour of their fore-fathers, they would never have sold so good cheap, and at so vile a price, the Mother, the Wife, the Daughters, and other the Kings children; had their own honour been valued by them at nothing, and the Kings safetie and his estate at lesse. *Darius* by this time found it true, that *Charidemus* a banished *Grecian* of *Athens* had told him, when he made a view of his Army about *Babylon*, to wit, That the multitude which he had assembled of divers Nations, richly attired, but poorly armed, would be found more terrible to the Inhabitants of the country, whom in passing by they would devote than to the *Macedonians*, whom they meant to assail; who being all old and obedient Souldiers, imbattailed in grosse squadrons, which they call their *Phalanx*, well covered with Armour for defence, and furnished with weapons for offence of great advantage, would make so little accompt of his delicate *Persians*, loving their ease and their palat, being withall ill armed and worse disciplined, as except it would please him to entertain (having so great abundance of treasure to do it withall) a sufficient number of the same *Grecians*, and so to encounter the *Macedonians* with men of equall courage; he would repent him overlate, as taught by the miserable successe like to follow.

But this discourse was so displeasing to *Darius* (who had bin accustomed to nothing so much as his own praises, and to nothing so little as to hear truth,) as he commanded that this poor *Grecian* should be presently slain: who while he was a sundring in the Tormentors hand, used this speech to the King, That *Alexander*, against whom he had given this good counsell, should assuredly revenge his death, and lay deserved punishment upon *Darius* for despising his advice.

It was the saying of a Wise man: *Desperata est Principis salus est, cujus aures ita formate sunt, ut aspera quae utilia, nec quicquam nisi jucundum accipiat; That Princes suffer in a desperate case, whose ears judge all that is profitable to be too sharp, and will entertain nothing that is unpleasant.*

For liberty in counsell is the life and essence of counsell; *Libertas consilii est ejus vita, & essentia, qua erepta consilium evanescit.*

*Darius* did likewise value at nothing the advice given him by the *Grecian* Souldiers that served him, who intreated him not to fight in the Streights: But had they been Counsellors and directors in that War, as they were underlings; and commanded by others, they had with the help of a good troupe of horse-men bin able to have opposed the fury of *Alexanders*, without any assistance of the *Persian* foot-men. For when *Darius* was overthrown with all his cowardly and confused rabble, those *Grecians*, under their Captain *Amyntas*, held firm; and marched away in order, in despite of the vanquishers. Old Souldiers are not easily dismayed: we read in Histories ancient and modern, what brave retreats have bin made by them, though the rest of the Army in which they have served, hath bin broken.

At the battall of *Ravenna*, where the Imperials were beaten by the *French*, a Squadron of *Spaniards*, old Souldiers, came off unbroken and undismayed; whom when *Gaston de Foix*, Duke of *Nemours*, and Nephew to *Lewis* the twelfth, charged, as holding the victory not entire by their escape, he was overturned and slain in the place. For it is truly said of those men, who, by being acquainted with dangers, fear them not; *That, Neglecto periculo imminenti mali, opus ipsum quantumvis difficile aggrediantur; They goe about the business it self, how hard soever it be, not standing to consider of the danger, which the mischief hanging over their heads may bring: and as truly of those that know the wars but by hear-say; Quod valentes sunt & prevalentes ante pericula, in instantibus periculis discedunt; They have ability enough, and to spare, till dangers appear, but when perill indeed comes, they get them gone.*

These *Grecians* also that made the retreat, advised *Darius* to retire his Army into the plain of *Mesopotamia*, to the end that *Alexander* being entred into those large fields and great Champains, he might have invironed the *Macedonians* on all sides with his multitude, and withall they counselled him to divide that his huge Army into parts, not committing the whole to one stroke of Fortune, whereby he might have fought many battails, and have brought no greater numbers at once than might have been well marshalled & conducted. But this counsell was so contrary to the cowardly affections of the *Persians*, as they perswaded *Darius* to inviron the *Grecians* which gave the advice, and cut them in pieces as Traitors. The infinite wisdom of God doth not work always by

by one and the same way, but very often in the alteration of Kingdoms and Estates, by taking understanding from the Governours, so as they can neither give nor discern of Counsels. For *Darius* that would needs fight with *Alexander* upon a streightned piece of ground, neer unto the City of *Issus*, where he could bring no more hands to fight than *Alexander* could, (who by the advice of *Parmenio* staid there, as in a place of best advantage) was utterly overthrowne, his Treasure lost, his Wife, Mother, and Children (whom the *Grecians* his followets had perswaded him to leave in *Babylon*; or elsewhere) taken prisoners, and all their train of Ladies spoiled of their rich Garments, Jewels, and Honour. It is true, that both the Queen, with her Daughters, who had the good hap to be brought to *Alexanders* presence, were entertained with all respect due unto their birth, their Monours preserved, and their Jewels and rich Garments restored unto them; and though *Darius* Wife was a most beautiful Lady, and his Daughters of excellent form, yet *Alexander* mastered his affections towards them all: only it is reported out of *Aristobulus* the Historian, that he embraced the wife of the valiant *Memnon*, her Husband lately dead, who was taken flying from *Damascus* by *Parmenio*, at which time the Daughters of *Ochus*, who reigned before *Darius*, and the Wives and Children of all the Nobility of *Persia* in effect, fell into captivity; at which time also *Darius* Treasure (not lost at *Issus*) was seized, amounting to fix thousand and two hundred talents of coin, and of Bullion five hundred talents, with a world of riches besides.

*Darius* himself leaving his brother dead, with divers other of his chief Captains, (casting the Crown from his head) hardly escaped.

After this overthrow given unto *Darius*, all *Phenicia* (the City of *Tyre* excepted) was yielded to *Alexander*, of which *Parmenio* was made Governour.

*Aradus*, *Zidon*, and *Biblos*, maritime Cities of great importance, of which one *Strato* was King (but hated of the people) acknowledged *Alexander*. Good fortune followed him so fast that it trod on his heels; for *Antigonus*, *Alexanders* Lieutenant in *Asia* the lesse, overthrowne the *Cappadocians*, *Paphlagonians*, and others lately revolted; *Aristobolus*, *Darius* Admirall, had his Fleet partly taken, and in part drowned by the *Macedonians* newly levied, the *Lacedaemonians* that warred against *Antipater* were beaten, four thousand of those *Greeks* which made the retreat at the last battail, forsaking both the party of *Darius* and of *Alexander*, and led by *Amyntas* into *Egypt*, to hold it for themselves, were buried there; for the time was not yet come to divide Kingdoms.

*Alexander* to honour *Ephesius*, whom he loved most, gave him power to dispose of the Kingdom of *Zidon*. A man of a most poor estate, that laboured to sustain his life being of the Royall bloud, was commended by the people unto him, who changed his Scepter into a Scepter, so as he was beheld both a Beggar and a King in one and the same hour.

It was a good desire of this new King, when speaking to *Alexander*, he wisht that he could bear his prosperity with the same moderation, and quietnesse of heart, that he had done his adversity; but ill done of *Alexander*, in that he would not perform in himself that which he commended in another mans desire: for it was a sign that he did but accompany, and could not govern his felicity.

While he made some stay in those parts, he received a letter from *Darius*, importing the ransom of his Wife, his Mother, and his Children, with some other conditions of peace, but such as rather became a Conqueror, than one that had now been twice shamefully beaten, not vouchsafing in his direction, to stile *Alexander* King. It is true, that the *Romans*, after that they had received an overthrow by *Pyrrhus*, returned him a most scornfull answer upon the offer of peace, than they did before the triall of his force. But as their fortunes were then in the Spring, so that of *Darius* had already cast lease the one a resolved, well armed and disciplined Nation, the other cowardly and effeminate. *Alexander* disdaind the offers of *Darius*, and sent him word, that he not onely directed his letter to a King, but to the King of *Darius* himself.

## §. V.

How *Alexander* beseged and won the Citie of *Tyre*.

**A** *Alexander* comming neer to the City of *Tyre*, received from them the present of a golden Crown, with great store of victuals, and other presents, which he took very thankfully, returning them answer, That he desired to offer a sacrifice

sacrifice to *Hercules*, the Protector of their Citie, from whom he was descended. But the *Tyrians* like not his companie within their Walls, but tell him that the Temple of *Hercules* was seated in the old City adjoining, now abandoned and desolate. To be short, *Alexander* resolved to enter it by force: and though it were a place in all mens opinion impregnable, because the Island whereon it was built, was eight hundred furlongs from the Main, yet with the labour of many hands, having great store of stone from the old *Tyre*, and timber sufficient from *Lybanus*, hee filled the passage of the Sea between the Island and the Main, which being more than once carried away by the strength of the Sea upon a storm of wind, sometime by the *Tyrians* fired, and sometime torn asunder, yet with the help of his Navie which arrived (during the siege) from *Cyprus*, he overcame all difficulties and prevailed, after he had spent seven moneths in that attempt. The *Tyrians* in the beginning of the siege had barbarously drowned the messengers sent by *Alexander*, perswading them to render the City, in respect whereof, and of the great loss of time and men, he put eight thousand to the sword, and caused two thousand of those that escaped the first fury, to bee hanged on Crosses on the Sea-shore, and reserved for slaves (saith *Diodore*) thirteen thousand, *Arrianus* reckons them at thirty thousand. Many more had died, had not the *Zidonians*, that served *Alexander*, conveyed great numbers away by shipping unto their own Citie.

Happy it was for *Apoll* that the Town was taken: for one of the *Tyrians* having dreamed, that this god meant to forsake the City, they bound him fast with a golden chain to the Idoll of *Hercules*, but *Alexander*, like a gracious Prince, loosened him again. It is true, that it was a notable enterprise and a difficult, but great things are made greater. For *Nabuchodonosor* had taken it before, and filled up the channell that lay between the Island and the Main.

The government of this Territory he gave to *Philotas*, the Son of *Parmenio*; *Cilicia*, he committed to *Socrates*, and *Andromachus* Lieutenant under *Parmenio*; *Ephesius* had charge of the Fleet, and was directed to find *Alexander* at *Gaza* towards *Egypt*.

## §. VI.

How *Darius* offered conditions of peace to *Alexander*. *Alexander* wins *Gaza*; and deals graciously with the Jewes.

**I**N the mean while *Darius* sends again to *Alexander*, sets before him all the difficulties of passing on towards the East, and layeth the losse of the last battell to the strenghtnesse of the place: he hoped to terrifie him by threatening to encompass him in the plain Countries, he bids him to consider, how impossible it was to passe the Rivers of *Euphrates*, *Tigris*, *Araxes*, and the rest with all such other fearfull things: for he that was now filled with nothing but fear, had arguments enovv of that nature to prevent unto another. All the Kingdomes between the River of *Alys*, and the *Hellepont*, he offered him in Dowry with his beloved daughter. But *Alexander* answered, That he offered him nothing but his own, and that which victory and his own vertue had possessed him of, That he was to give conditions, and not to receive any, and that he having passed the Sea it self, disdaind to think of resistance in transporting himself over Rivers. It is said, that *Parmenio*, who was now old and full of honour and riches, told the King; That were he *Alexander*, he would accept of *Darius* his offers, to which *Alexander* answered, That so would he, if he were *Parmenio*.

But he goes on towards *Egypt*, and comming before *Gaza*, *Getis* a faithfull servant to *Darius*, shuts the Gate against him, and defends the Town with an obstinate resolution; so at the siege whereof *Alexander* received a wound in the shoulder, which was dangerous, and a blow on his legge with a stone. Hee found better men in this place than he did at the former battells, for he left so many of his *Macedonians* buried in the lands of *Gaza*, that he was forced to send for a new supply into *Greece*. Here it was that *Alexander* first began to change condition, and to exercise cruelty. For after that he had entred *Gaza* by assault, and taken *Bethus*, (whom *Josephus* calleth *Babemesis*) that was weakened with many wounds, and who never gave ground to the Assailants, he bored holes through his feet, and caused him to be drawn about the street, whilst he was as yet alive; who being as valiant a man as himself, disdaind to ask him either life or remission of his torments.

And

And what had he to countenance this tyranny, but the imitation of his Ancestor Achilles, who did the like to Hector? It is true, that cruelty hath alwayes somewhat to cover her deformity.

Tab. 11. cap. ult.

From *Gaza* (saith *Josephus*) he led his Army towards *Jerusalem*, a City, for the antiquity and great fame thereof, well known unto him while he lay before *Tyre*; He had sent for some supply thither, which *Jaddus* the high Priest, being subject and sworn to *Darius*, had refused him. The *Jews* therefore fearing his revenge, and unable to resist, committed the care of their estates and safety to *Jaddus*, who, being taught by God, issued out of the City covered with his Pontificall Robes, to wit, an upper garment of purple, embroidered with gold, with his Miter, and the plate of gold wherein the name of God was written, the Priests and Levites in their rich ornaments, and the people in white garments, in a manner so unusuall, stately and grave, as *Alexander* greatly admired it. *Josephus* reports it, that he fell to the ground before the high Priest, as reverencing the name of God, and that *Parmenio* reprehended him for it. Howsoever it was, I am of opinion, that he became so confident in his enterprise, and so assured of the success, after the prophetic of *Daniel* had been read unto him, wherein he saw himself, and the conquest of *Persia* so directly pointed at, as nothing thenceforth could discourage him or fear him. He confessed to *Parmenio* (saith *Josephus*) that in *Dida* City of *Macedon*, when his mind laboured the conquest of *Asia*, he saw in his sleep such a person as *Jaddus*, and so appalled, professing one and the same God; by whom he was encouraged to pursue the purpose he had in hand, with assurance of victory. This apparition, formerly apprehended only by the light of his fantasie, he now beheld with his bodily eyes, wherewith he was so exceedingly pleased and imboldened, as contrary to the practice of the *Phenicians*, (who hoped to have sack'd and destroyed *Jerusalem*) he gave the *Jews* all, and more than they desired, both of liberty and immunity, with permission to live under their own lawes, and to exercise and enjoy their own religion.

## S. VII.

*Alexander wins Egypt: and makes a journey to the Temple of Hammon.*

From *Jerusalem*, *Alexander* turned again towards *Egypt*, and entered it, where *Darius* his Lieutenant, *Astaces*, received him, and delivered into his hand the City of *Memphis*, with eight hundred talents of treasure, and all other the Kings riches. By this we see that the King of *Persia*, who had more of affection than of judgment, gave to the valiantest man he had, but the command of one City, and to the weakest toward the government of all *Egypt*. When he had set things in order in *Egypt*, he began to travell after God-head, towards *Jupiter Hammon*, so foolishly had prosperity made him. He was to passe over the dangerous and drie sands, where, when the water which he brought on his Camels back was spent, he could not but have perished, had not a marvellous shoure of rain fallen upon him, when his Army was in extreme despair. All men that know *Egypt*, and have written thereof, affirme, That it never rains there: but the purposes of the Almighty God are secret, and he bringeth to passe what it pleaseth him; for it is also said, That when he had lost his way in those vast deserts, that a sight of Crowing flew before the Army, who making faster wing when they were followed, and crossing slowly when the Army was cast back, guided them over those pathlesse sands to *Jupiter's* Temple.

Arrian lib. 3.

*Arrianus* from the report of *Ptolemy*, the son of *Lagus*, says, That he was led by two Dragons, both which reports may be a-like true. But many of those wonders and things prodigious, are fained by those that have written the Story of *Alexander*; as, That an Eagle lay hovering directly over his head at the battell of *Issus*; That a Swallow flew about his head when he slept; and could not be feared from him, till it had wakened him at *Halicarnassus*, fore-shewing the treason of *Aropus*, practised by *Darius* to have slain him; That from the yron barres of which the *Tyrians* made their defensive engine, when *Alexander* besieged them, there fell drops of bloud; and that the like drops were found in a loafe of bread, broken by a *Macedonian* Souldier, at the same time; That a Furze of earth fell on his shoulder, when he lay before *Gaza*, out of which there flew a Bird into the air. The *Spaniards* in the conquest of the *West Indies* have many such pretty

pretty

pretty tales; telling how they have been assisted in battell by the presence of our Lady, and by Angels riding on white horses with the like Romish miracles, which I think themselves do hardly beleve. The strangest thing that I have read of in this kind being certainly true, was, That the night before the battell at *Novara*, all the Dogs which followed the *French* Army, ran from them to the *Swissers*, leaping and fawning upon them, as if they had been bred and fed by them all their lives, and in the morning following, *Triepoli* and *Tremouille*, Generals for *Lewis* the twelfth, were by these imperiall *Swissers* utterly broken and put to ruine.

The place of this Idoll of *Jupiter Hammon* is ill described by *Curtius*, for he bounds it by the *Arabian Troglodites* on the South, between whom and the Territory of *Hammon*, the Region *Thebais*, or the superiour *Egypt*, with the Mountains of *Lybia*, and the River of *Nilus*, are interjacent; and on the North he joyns it to a Nation called *Nassamur*, who bordering the Sea-shore, live (saith he) upon the spoiles of shipwrack: whereas the temple or grove of this Idoll hath no Sea near it by two hundred miles and more, being found on the South part of *Lybia*, these *Nassamones* being due West from *Ptol. A. Tab. 3.* in the South part of *Marmarica*.

When *Alexander* came near the place, he sent some of his Parasites before him to praise the Priests attending the Oracle, That their answer might be given in all things agreeable to his mad ambition; who affected the title of *Jupiter's* son. And so he was said to be the Son of *Jupiter*, by the Devils Prophet, whether prepared before to flatter him, or rather (as some think) detestive in the *Greek* tongue; For whereas he meant to say *O pater*, he said *O pai dios*; that is, *O Son of Jupiter*, in stead of *O dear Son*: for which Grammaticall error he was richly rewarded, and a rumour presently spread, that the great *Jupiter* had acknowledged *Alexander* for his own.

He had heard that *Persus* and *Hercules* had formerly consulted with this Oracle, The one when he was employed against *Gorgon*, The other against *Anteus* and *Busiris*; and seeing these men had derived themselves from the gods, why might not he? By this it seems, that he hoped to make his followers and the world fools, though indeed he made himself one; by thinking to cover from the worlds knowledge his vanities and vices; and the better to confirm his followers in the belief of his Deity, he had practised the Priests to give answer to such as consulted with the Oracle, that it should be pleasing to *Jupiter* to honour *Alexander* as his Son.

Whothis *Hammon* was, and how represented, either by a Bosse carried in a Boat, or by a Ram, or a Rams head, I see that many wise men have troubled themselves to find out; but as *Arrianus* speaks of *Dionysius*, or *Liber Pater* (who lived saith *S. Augustine*, in *Asterium*) *Ea qua de diu veteres fabulis suis conscripserunt, non sunt nimium curiosè investiganda; We must not over-curiously search into the fables which the Antients have written of their gods.*

But this is certain and notable, that after the Gospel began to be preached in the World, the Devill in this and all other Idols became speechlesse. For, that this *Hammon* was neglected in the time of *Iberius Caesar*, and in the time of *Trajan* altogether forgotten, *Strabo* and *Plutarch* witness.

There is found near his Temple a Fountain called *Fons solis* (though *Ptolemy* in his third *African* Table sets it further off) that at Mid-night is as hot as boiling water, and at Noon as cold as any yce: to which I cannot but give credit, because I have heard of many other Wells of like nature, and because it is reported by *S. Augustine*, by *Diodore*, *Herodotus*, *Pliny*, *Mela*, *Solinus*, *Arrianus*, *Curtius*, and others; and indeed our Bathes in *England* are much warmer in the night than in the day.

## S. VIII.

*How Alexander marching against Darius, was opposed very unskilfully by the Enemy.*

From the Temple of *Hammon* he returned to *Memphis*, where among many other learned men, he heard the Philosopher *Plammanes*, who, belike understanding that he affected the title of *Jupiter's* Son, told him that God was the Father-King of all men generally; and refining the pride of this haughty King, brought him to say, That God was the Father of all mortall men, but that he acknowledged none for his children but good men.

Aaaa

Hec





thousand talents, and that for the performance thereof, he would leave his son *Orcus* in hostage: To this they sought to perswade *Alexander* by such arguments as they had. *Alexander* causing the Embassadors to be removed, advised with his Councell, but heard no man speak but *Parmentio*, the very right hand of his good fortune; who perswaded him to accept of these fair conditions. He told him, that the Empire between *Euphrates* and *Hellefpont* was a fair addition to *Macedon*; that the retaining of the *Persian* prisoners was a great cumber, and the treasure offered for them of far better use than their persons, with divers other arguments; all which *Alexander* rejected. And yet it is probable that if he had followed his advice, and bounded his ambition within those limits, he might have lived as famous for vertue as for fortune, and left himself a Successor of able age to have enjoyed his estate, which afterward indeed he much enlarged, rather to the greating of others than himself: who to assure themselves of what they had usurped upon his issues, left not one of them to draw breath in the world within a few years after. The truth is, That *Alexander* in going so far into the East, left behind him the reputation which he brought out of *Macedon*, the reputation of a just and prudent Prince, a Prince temperate, advised and gratefull: and being taught new lessons by abundance of prosperity, became a lover of wine, of his own flattery, and of extreme cruelty. Yea, as *Seneca* hath observed, the taint of one unjust slaughter, amongst many, defaced and withered the flourishing beauty of all his great acts and glorious victories obtained. But the *Persian* Embassadors stay his answer, which was to this effect, That whatsoever he had bestowed on the wife and children of *Darius*, proceeded from his own naturall clemency and magnanimity, without all respect to their Master; but thanks to an enemy was improper: that he made no Wars against adversity, but against those that resisted him; not against Women and Children, but against armed enemies: and although by the reiterated practice of *Darius*, to corrupt his Souldiers, and by great summes of money to perswade his friends to attempt upon his person, he had reason to doubt that the peace offered was rather pretended than meant, yet he could not (were it otherwise and faithfull) resolve in haste to accept the same, seeing *Darius* had made Warre against him, not as a King with Royall and overt force, but as a Traytor by secret and base practice: That for the Territory offered him, it was already his own, and if *Darius* could beat him back again over *Euphrates*, which he had already past, he would then beleve that he offered him somewhat in his own power: Otherwise he propounded to himself for the reward of the War which he had made, all those kingdomes as yet in *Darius* possession; wherein, whether he were abused by his own hopes or no, the battell which he meant to fight in the day following should determine. For in conclusion, he told them, that he came into *Asia* to give, & not to receive; That the heavens could not hold two Suns: and therefore if *Darius* would be content to acknowledge *Alexander* for his Superiour, he might perchance be perswaded to give him conditions fit for a second Person, and his Inferiour.

## s. X.

The battell of Arbela: and that it could not be so strongly fought as reports hath made it.

With this answer the Embassadors return; *Darius* prepares to fight, and sends *Mazens* to defend a passage, which he never dared yet so much as to hazard. *Alexander* consults with his Captains, *Parmentio* perswades him to force *Darius* his Camp by night; so that the multitude of enemies might not move terror in the *Macedonians* being but few. *Alexander* disdains to steal the victory, and resolves to bring with him the day-light to witnesse his valour. But it was the success that made good *Alexander's* resolution, though the counsell given by *Parmentio* was more sound: For it is a ground in War, *Si pauci necessarii cum multitudine pugnare cogantur, consilium est noctis tempore belli fortunam tentare*. Notwithstanding upon the view of the multitude at hand, he staggers and trenches himself upon a ground of advantage, which the *Persian* had abandoned: And whereas *Darius* for fear of surprize had stood with his Army in armour all the day, and forborn sleep all the night, *Alexander* gave his men rest and store of food; for reason had taught him this Rule in the Warre, *In pugna Milites validius resistent, si cibo potuque refecti fuerint, nam fames intrinsecus*

40

*magis pugnat, quam ferrum exterius*; Souldiers do the better stand so in fight, if they have their bellies full of meat and drink; for hunger within, fights more eagerly than steel without.

The numbers which *Alexander* had, saith *Arrianus*, were forty thousand foot, and seven thousand horse; these belike were of the *European* Army: for he had besides both *Syrans*, *Indians*, *Egyptians*, and *Arabians*, that followed him out of those Regions. He used but a short speech to his Souldiers to encourage them, And I think that he needed little Rhetorick; for by the two former battels upon the River of *Granick*, and in *Cilicia*, the *Macedonians* were best taught with what men they were to encounter. And it is a good saying, *Victoria victoriam parat, animusque victoriam arguit*. Or *adversarius adversi, out victory begets another, and this courage into those that have already had the better, taking first away from those that have been beaten.*

*Arrianus* and *Curtius* make large descriptions of this battell, fought at *Gangamela*: They tell us of many charges and re-charges: That the victory inclined sometime to the *Persians*, sometime to the *Macedonians*; That *Parmentio* was in danger of being overthrown, who led the left wing; That *Alexander's* Rear-guard was broken, and his carriage lost: That for the fierce and valorous encounters on both sides, Fortune herself was long unresolved on whom to bestow the Garland: And lastly, that *Alexander* in person wrought wonders, being charged in his retreat. But in conclusion, *Curtius* delivers us in account but three hundred dead *Macedonians*, in all this terrible dayes work, saying, That *Ephesion*, *Perdiccas*, and others of name were wounded. *Arrianus* finds not a third part of this number slain; of the *Persians* there fell forty thousand (saith *Curtius*) thirty thousand according to *Arrianus*; Ninety thousand, if we beleve *Dionysius*. But what can we judge of this great encounter, other than that, as in the two former battels, the *Persians* upon the first charge ran away, and that the *Macedonians* pursued: For if of those four or five hundred thousand *Asians* brought into the field by *Darius*, every man had cast but a dart or a stone, the *Macedonians* could not have brough the Empire of the East to so easie a rate, as six or seven hundred men in three notorious battels. Certainly, if *Darius* had fought with *Alexander* upon the banks of *Euphrates*, he had armed but fifty or threescore thousand of this great multitude, only with Spades, (for the most of all, he had were fit for no other weapon) it had been impossible for *Alexander* to have past that River so easily, much less the River of *Tigris*. But as a man whose Empire God in his providence had determined, he abandoned all places of advantage, and suffered *Alexander* to enter so far into the bowels of his Kingdome, as all hope and possibility of escape by retreat being taken from the *Macedonians*, they had presented unto them the choice, either of death or victory, to which election *Darius* could no way constrain his own, seeing they had many large Regions to run into from those that invaded them.

## s. XI.

Of things following the battell of Arbela. The sieiding of Babylon and Sufa.

*Darius* after the rout of his Army recovered *Arbela* the same night, better followed in his flight, than in the fight. He propounded unto them that ran after him his purpose of making a retreat into *Media*, perswading them that the *Macedonians*, greedy of spoyle and riches, would rather attempt *Babylon*, *Sufa*, and other Cities filled with treasure, than pursue the vanquished. This miserable resolution his Nobility rather obeyed than approved.

*Alexander* soon after *Darius* his departure arrives at *Arbela*, which with a great masse of treasure, and Princely ornaments, was rendered to him: for the fear which conducted *Darius*, took nothing with it but shame and dishonour. He that had been twice beaten, should rather have sent his treasure into *Media*, than brought it to *Arbela*, so near the place where he abid the coming of his enemies; if he had been victorious, he might have brought it after him at leisure; but being overcome, he knew it impossible to drive Mules and Camels laden with gold from the pursuing Enemy, seeing himself, at the overthrow he had in *Cilicia*, cast the Crown from his head, to run away with the more speed. But errors are then best discerned when most incurable. *Ex praeiis magis reprehensum quam corrigi*. It is easier to reprehend than amend what is past.

Aaaa 3

From



From *Arbela* Alexander took his way towards *Babylon*, where *Mazeus*, in whom *Darius* had most confidence, rendered himself, his Children and the Citie. Also the Captain of the Castle, who was keeper of the treasure, strewed the streets with flowers, burnt Frankincense upon Altars of silver as *Alexander* passed by, and delivered unto him whatsoever was committed to his trust. The *Magi* (the *Chaldean* Astrologers) followed this Captain in great solemnitie to entertain their new King: after these came the *Babylonian* horsemen, infinite rich in attire, but exceeding poor in warlike furniture. Between these (though not greatly to be feared) and himself, *Alexander* caused his *Macedonian* foot-men to march. When he entered the Castle, he admired the glorie thereof, and the abundance of treasure therein found, amounting to fifty thousand talents of silver uncoyned. The Citie it self I have elswhere described, with the Walls, the Towers, the Gates and Circuit, with the wonderfull place of pleasure about two miles in Circuit, surrounded with a wall of fourscore foot high, and on the top thereof (being under-born with Pillars) a Grove of beautiful and fruitful trees, which it is said that one of the Kings of *Babylon* caused to be built; that the Queen and other Princesses might walk privately therein. In this Citie, rich in all things, but most of all in voluptuous pleasures, the King rested himself and the whole Army four and thirty dayes, consuming that time in banquetting, and in all sorts of effeminate exercise; which so much softened the minds of the *Macedonians*, not acquainted till now with the like delicacies, as the severe discipline of war, which taught them the sufferances of hunger and thirst, of painfull travell, and hard lodging, began rather to be forgotten, than neglected.

An. Alex.

Here it was that those bands of a thousand Souldiers were erected, and Commanders appointed over them, who thereupon were stiled *Chiliarchi*. This new order *Alexander* brought in, was to honour those Captains which were found by certain selected Judges to have deserved best in the late warre. For before this time the *Macedonian* companies consisted but of five hundred. Certainly the drawing down of the foot-bands in this latter age hath been the cause (saith the *Mistral Monist*) that the title and charge of a Captain hath been bestowed on every *Picque-Bauf* or Spurn-Cow; for when the Captains of foot had a thousand Souldiers under one Ensigne, and after that five hundred, as in the time of *Francis* the first, the title was honourable, and the kings were lesse charged, and far better served. King *Henry* the eighth of *England* never gave the commandement of any of his good ships, but to men of known valour, and of great estate, nay sometime he made two Gentlemen of qualitie Commanders in one ship: but all orders and degrees are fallen from the reputation they had.

While *Alexander* was yet in *Babylon*, there came to him a great supply out of *Eusepi*, for *Antipater* sent him six thousand foot, and five hundred horse out of *Macedon*; of *Thracians* three thousand foot, and the like number of horse; and out of *Greece* four thousand and four hundred horse, by which his Armie was greatly strengthened: for those that were infected with the pleasures of *Babylon*, could hardly be brought again, *De quitter la plume pour dormir sur la dure; To change from soft beds to hard boords.*

He left the Castle and Citie of *Babylon*, with the Territories about it, in charge with three of his own Captains, to wit, *Agathon*, *Minetus*, and *Appollonius*; to supply all wants, a thousand talents: but to grace *Mazeus*, who rendered the Citie unto him, he gave him the title of his Lieutenant over all, and took with him *Bagifines* that gave up the Castle, and having distributed to every Souldier a part of the Treasure, he left *Babylon*, and entered into the Province *Satrapene*: from thence he went on toward *Susa* in *Persia*, the same which *Ptolomy*, *Herodotus*, and *Elianus* call *Memnonia*, situate on the river *Euleus*, a Citie sometime governed by *Daniel* the Prophet. *Abulites* also, Governor of this famous Citie, gave it up to the Conqueror, with fiftie thousand talents of silver in bullion, and twelve Elephants for the warre, with all other the treasures of *Darius*. In this sort did those Vassals of fortune, lovers of the Kings prosperitie, not of his person, (for so all ambitious men are) purchase their own peace and safetie with the Kings treasures. And herein was *Alexander* well advised, that whatsoever titles he gave to the *Persians*, yet he left all places of importance in trust with his own Captains, to wit, *Babylon*, *Susa*, and *Persepolis*, with other Cities and Provinces by him conquered; for if *Darius* (as yet living) had beaten the *Macedonians* but in one battell, all the Nobles of *Persia* would have returned unto their naturall Lord. Those that are Traitors

Diodor. speak-  
eth of more  
than forty  
thousand ta-  
lents in bulli-  
on, and of nine  
millions of  
gold, sub dicit  
causam exequi

to their own Kings, are never to be used alone in great enterprises by those Princes that entertain them, nor ever to be trusted with the defences of any frontier-Town, or Fortresse of weight, by the rendering whereof they may redeem their liberty and estates lost. Hereof the *French* had experience, when *Don Pedro de Navarra*, being banished out of *Spain*, was trusted with *Fonterabe*, in the year 1523.

While *Alexander* spoiled *Arbela*, *Mazeus* might have furnish'd the King from *Babylon*; and while he stayed four and thirty dayes at *Babylon*, *Abulites* might have holpen him; and while he feasted there, *Tiridates* from *Persepolis* might have relieved him, for the great masse of Treasure was layd up in this Citie. But who hath sought out and friended sad adversity? It is certain, that benefits bind not the ambitious; but the honest: for those that are but greedy of themselves, do in all changes of fortune only consult the conservation of their own greatnesse.

The government of *Susa*, with the Castle and Treasure, he committed to his own *Macedonians*, making *Abulites*, who rendered it unto him, his Lieutenant, as he had done *Mazeus* and others in giving them titles, but neither trust nor power; for he left three thousand old Souldiers in Garrison to assure the place; and *Darius* mother and her children to repose themselves.

It is said that *Charles* the fifth, having promised *Charles of Bourbon* the government of *Marilles*, if he could have forc'd it, and whereof he made sure accompt, told some of his nearest Counsellors, that he meant nothing lesse than the performance of that promise, because he should thereby have left the Duke (revolted from his Master) very well wherewithall to have recovered his favour.

## §. XII.

How Alexander came to Persepolis and burnt it.

From *Susa* Alexander leadeth his Army toward *Persepolis*, and when he sought to passe those Mountains which under *Susiana* and *Persia*, he was soundly beaten by *Ariobarzanes*, who defended against him those Streights, called *Pyle Persidis*, or *Susidis*, and after the losse of many Companies of his *Macedonians*, he was forc'd to save himself by retreat, causing his Foot to march close together, and to cover themselves with their Targets from the stones tumbled on them from the Mountain top. Yet in the end he found out another path, which a *Lycian*, living in that Country, discovered unto him; and came thereby suddenly in view of *Ariobarzanes*, who being inforc'd to fight upon even ground, was by *Alexander* broken, whereupon he fled to *Persepolis*, but (after that they of *Persepolis* had refused to receive him) he returned and gave a second charge upon the *Macedonians*, wherein he was slain. In like manner did King *Francis* the first, in the year 1515, find a way over the *Alpes*, the *Switzers* undertaking to defend all the passages, who, if their footmanship had not saved them upon the Kings descent on the other side, they had been ill payd for their hard lodging on those Hills.

Four thousand *Greeks*, saith *Curtius* (*Justin* numbers them but at eight hundred) having bin taken prisoners by the *Persians*, presented themselves to *Alexander* now in sight of *Persepolis*. These had the barbarous *Persians* so maimed and defaced, by cutting off their hands, noses, ears, and other members, as they could no way have been known to their Country-men, but by their voyces; to each of these *Alexander* gave three hundred Crowns, with new garments, and such Lands as they liked to live upon.

*Tiridates*, one of *Darius* his false-hearted Grandes, hearing of *Alexanders* approach, made him know that *Persepolis* was ready to receive him, and prayed him to double his pace, because there was a determination in the people to spoyl the Kings treasure: This City was abandoned by many of her Inhabitants upon *Alexanders* arrivall, and they that stayed followed the worst counsell; for all was left to the liberty of the souldiers, to spoyl and kill at their pleasure. There was no place in the world at that time, which, if it had been laid in the ballance with *Persepolis*, would have weighed it down. *Babylon* indeed, and *Susa*, were very rich; but in *Persepolis* lay the bulk and main store of the *Persians*. For after the spoyl that had been made of money, curious plate, bullion, Images of gold and silver, and other Jewels, there remained to *Alexander* himself one hundred and twenty thousand talents. He left the same number of three thousand

*Macedonians*

*Macedonians* in *Persepolis*, which he had done in *Susa*, and gave the same formall honour to the traitor *Tiridates*, that he had done to *Abulives*; but he that had the trust of the place was *Nicarides*, a creature of his own. The body of his Army he left here for thirty daies, of which the Commanders were *Farmenio* and *Craterus*, and with a thousand horse, and certain troupes of chosen foot, he would needs view in the Winter-time those parts of *Persia*, which the Snow had covered; a fruitlesse and foolish enterprise, but as *Seneca* saies, *Non ille ire vult, sed non posse stare: He hath not a will to goe, but he is unable to stand still.* It is said and spoken in his praise, That when his Souldiers cryed out against him, because they could not endure the extreme frost, and make way, but with extreme difficulty, through the snow, that *Alexander* forsook his horse, and led them the way. But what can be more ridiculous than to bring other men into extremity, thereby to shew how well himself can endure it? His walking on foot did no otherwise take off their wearinesse that followed him, than his sometime forbearing to drink, did quench their thirst, that could lesse endure it. For mine own little judgement, I shall rather commend that Captain that makes careful provision for those that follow him, and that seeks wisely to prevent extreme necessitie, than those wilesse arrogant fools, that make the vaunt of having endured equally with the common Souldier, as if that were a matter of great glory and importance.

We find in all the Wars that *Cæsar* made, or the best of the *Roman* Commanders, that the provision of victuals was their first care. For it was true saying of *Coligni*, Admirall of *France*, *That who so will shape that Beast (meaning War) must begin with his belly.*

But *Alexander* is now returned to *Persepolis*, where those Historians that were most amorous of his vertues, complain, that the opinion of his valour, of his liberality, of his clemency towards the vanquished, and all other his Kingly conditions, were drowned in drink; That he smothered in carousing cups all the reputation of his actions past, and that by descending, as it were, from the reverend Throne of the greatest King, into the company and familiarity of base Harlots, he began to be despised both of his own and all other Nations. For being perswaded, when he was inflamed with wine, by the infamous Strumpet *Thais*, he caused the most sumptuous and goodly Castle and Citie of *Persepolis* to be consumed with fire, notwithstanding all the arguments of *Farmenio* to the contrary, who told him that it was a dishonour to destroy those things by the persuasions of others, which by his proper vertue and force he had obtained; and that it would be a most strong perswasion to the *Asians* to think hardly of him, and thereby alien their hearts; for they might well believe that he which demolished the goodliest Ornaments they had, meant nothing lesse than (after such vastation) to hold their possession. *Per vinolentiam crudelitas sequitur: Cruelty doth commonly follow drunkenness.* For it so fell out soon after, and often, in *Alexander*.

## s. XIII.

## The Treason of Bessus against Darius. Darius his death.

About this time he received a new supply of Souldiers out of *Cilicia*, and goes on to find *Darius* in *Media*. *Darius* had there compounded his fourth and last Army, which he meant to have increased in *Bactria*, had he not heard of *Alexander*'s coming on, with whom (trusting to such companies as he had, which was numbered at thirty or forty thousand) he determined once again to try his fortune. He therefore calls together his Captains and Commanders, and propounds unto them his resolution, who being desperate of good successe, used silence for a while. *Artabazus*, one of his eldest men of War, who had sometime lived with *Philip* of *Macedon*, brake the yce, and protesting that he could never be beaten by any adversity of the Kings, from the faith which he had ever ought him, with firm confidence, that all the rest were of the same condition (whereof they likewise assured *Darius* by the like protestation) hee approved the Kings resolution. Two only, and those the greatest, to wit, *Naburzanes* and *Bessus*, whereof the later was governour of *Bactria*, had conspired against their Master, and therefore advised the King to lay a new foundation for the Warre, and to pursue it by some such person for the present, against whom neither the gods nor fortune had in all things declared themselves to be an enemy: this preamble *Naburzanes* used, and

and in conclusion advised the election of his fellow Traitor *Bessus*, with promise that the warres ended, the Empire should again be restored to *Darius*: The King swollen with disdain, prest towards *Naburzanes* to have slain him, but *Bessus* and the *Bactrians* whom he commanded, being more in number than the rest, withheld him. In the mean while *Naburzanes* with-drew himself, and *Bessus* followed him, making their quatter a-part from the rest of the Army. *Artabazus*, the Kings faithfull servant, perswaded him to be advised and serve the time, seeing *Alexander* was at hand, and that he would at least make shew of forgetting the offence made; which the King being of a gentle disposition, willingly yielded unto. *Bessus* makes his submission, and attends the King, who removes his Army. *Patron*, who commanded a Regiment of four thousand *Greeks*, which had in all the former battels served *Darius* with great fidelity, and alwayes made the retreat in spite of the *Macedonians*, offered himself to guard his person, protesting against the Treason of *Bessus*; but it was not his destiny to follow their advice who from the beginning of the Warre gave him faithfull counsell, but hee inclined still to *Bessus*, who told him, that the *Greeks*, with *Patron* their Captain, were corrupted by *Alexander*, and practised the division of his faithfull servants. *Bessus* had drawn unto him thirty thousand of the Army, promising them all those things, by which the lovers of the World and themselves are wont to be allured; to wit, riches, safety, and honour.

Now the day following *Darius* plainly discovered the purposes of *Bessus*, and being overcome with passion, as thinking himself unable to make head against these ungratefull and unnaturall Traytors, he prayed *Artabazus* his faithfull servant to depart from him, and to provide for himself. In like sort he discharged the rest of his attendants, all save a few of his Eunuchs; for his Guards had voluntarily abandoned him: His *Persians* being most base cowards, durst not undertake his defence against the *Bactrians*, notwithstanding that they had four thousand *Greeks* to joyn with him, who had been able to have beaten both Nations. But it is true, that him, which forsaakes himself, no man follows. It had been far more Man-like, and King-like, to have dyed in the head of those four thousand *Greeks*, which offered him the disposition of their lives, (to which *Artabazus* perswaded him) than to have lyen bewailing himself on the ground, and suffering himself to be bound like a slave by those ambitious Monsters that laid hand on him, whom neither the consideration of his former great estate, nor the honour he had given them, nor the trust reposed in them, nor the world of benefits bestowed on them, could move to pity: no, nor his present adversity, which above all things should have moved them, could pierce their viperous and ungratefull hearts. Vain it was indeed to hope it; for infidelity hath no compassion.

Now *Darius*, thus forsaken, was bound and laid in a Cart, covered with hides of Beasts, to the end that by any other ornament he might not be discovered; and to adde despight and derision to his adversity, they fastned him with Chains of Gold, and so drew him among their ordinarie Carriages and Carts. For *Bessus* and *Naburzanes* perswaded themselves to redeem their lives and the Provinces they held, either by delivering him a prisoner to *Alexander*, or, if that hope failed, to make themselves kings by his slaughter; and then to defend themselves by force of Arms. But they failed in both: For it was against the nature of God, who is most just, to pardon so strange villanie, yea, though against a Prince purely Heathenish and an Idolater.

*Alexander* having knowledge that *Darius* was retired towards *Bactria*, and durst not abide his coming, hastened after him with a violent speed, and because he would not force his footmen beyond their powers, he mounted on horse-back certain selected companies of them, and best armed, and with six thousand other horse, rather ran than marched after *Darius*. Such as hated the Treason of *Bessus*, and secretly forsook him, gave knowledge to *Alexander* of all that had happened, informing him of the way that *Bessus* took, and how neer he was at hand: for many men of worth daily ran from him. Hereupon *Alexander* again doubled his pace, and his Vant-guard being discovered by *Bessus* his Rear, *Bessus* brought a Horse to the Cart, where *Darius* lay bound, perswading him to mount thereon, and to save himself. But the unfortunate King refusing to follow those that had betrayed him, they cast Darts at him, wounded him to death; and wounded the Beasts that drew him; and slew two poor Servants that attended his person. This done, they all fled that could, leaving the rest to the mercie of the *Macedonian* swords.

Polystratus

*Polystratus a Macedonian*, being by pursuit of the vanquished prest with thirst, as hee was refreshing himself with some water that he had discovered, espying a Cart with a Team of wounded beasts breathing for life, and not able to move, searched the same, and therein found *Darius* bathing in his own blood; And by a *Persian* Captive which followed this *Polystratus*, he understood that it was *Darius*, and was informed of his barbarous Tragedy. *Darius* also seemed greatly comforted (if dying men ignorant of the living God can be comforted) that he cast not out his last sorrowes unheard, but that by this *Macedonian*, *Alexander* might know and take vengeance on those Traytors, which had dealt no lesse unworthily than cruelly with him, recommending their revenge to *Alexander* by this messenger, which he besought him to pursue, not because *Darius* had desired it, but for his own honour, and for the safety of all that did, or should after wear Crowns. He also having nothing else to present, rendred thanks to *Alexander* for the Kings grace, used towards his Wife, Mother, and Children, desiring the immortal gods to submit unto him the Empire of the whole World. As he was thus speaking impatient death pressing out his few remaining spirits, he desired water, which *Polystratus* presented him, after which he lived but to tell him, that of all the best things that the world had, which were lately in his power, he had nothing remaining but his last breath, wherewith to desire the gods to reward his compassion.

## s. XIV.

*How Alexander pursued Bessus, and took into his grace Darius his Captains.*

I was now hoped by the *Macedonians*, that their travels were neer an end, every man preparing for his return. Hereof when *Alexander* had knowledge, he was greatly grieved, for the boundless earth sufficed not his boundlesse Ambition. Many arguments he therefore used to draw on his Army farther into the East, but that which had most strength, was, that *Bessus*, a most cruell traytor to his Master *Darius*, having at his devotion the *Hircanians* and *Bactrians*, would in short time (if the *Macedonians* should return) make himself Lord of the *Persian* Empire, and enjoy the fruits of all their former travels. In conclusion he wan their consents to go on: which done, leaving *Ceretus* with certain Regiments of foot, and *Amyntus* with six thousand horse in *Parthia*, he enters not without some opposition into *Hircania*; for the *Mardons*, and other barbarous Nations, defended certain passages for a while. He passeth the river of *Zoborus*, which taking beginning in *Parthia*, dissolves it self in the *Caspian* Sea: it runneth under the ledge of Mountains, which bound *Parthia* & *Hircania*, where hiding it self under ground for three hundred furlongs, it then riseth again, and followeth its former course. In *Zadracarta*, or *Zendracarta*, the same City which *Ptolemy* writes *Hircania*, the Metropolis of that Region, he rested fifteen dayes, banquetting and feasting therein.

*Phataspernes*, one of *Darius* his greatest Commanders, with others of his best followers, submit themselves to *Alexander*, and were restored to their places and governments. But of all other he graced *Artabazus* most highly for his approved and constant faith to his master *Darius*. *Artabazus* brought with him ten thousand and five hundred *Greeks*, the remainder of all those that had served *Darius*; he treats with *Alexander* for their pardon, before they were yet arrived, but in the end, they render themselves simply without promise or composition: he pardons all but the *Lacedaemonians*, whom he imprisoned, their Leader having slain himself. He was also wrought (though to his great dishonour) to receive *Nabarzanes* that had joyned with *Bessus* to murder *Darius*.

## s. XV.

*Of Thalestris Queen of the Amazons; where, by way of digression, it is shewed, that such Amazons have been and are.*

Here it is said that *Thalestris* or *Minothea*, a Queen of the *Amazons*, came to visit him, and her suite was, (which she easily obtained) that she might accompany him till she were made with child by him: which done (refusing to follow him into *India*) she returned into her own Country.

*Plutarch*

*Plutarch* citeth many Historians, reporting this meeting of *Thalestris* with *Alexander*, and some contradicting it: But indeed, the letters of *Alexander* himself to *Antipater*, recounting all that befell him in those parts, and yet omitting to make mention of this *Amazonian* businesse, may justly breed suspicion of the whole matter as forged. Much more justly may we suspect it as a vain tale, because an Historian of the same time reading one of his books to *Lysimachus* (then King of *Thrace*) who had followed *Alexander* in all his voyage, was laught at by the King for inserting such newes of the *Amazons*; and *Lysimachus* himself had never heard of. One that accompanied *Alexander*, took upon him to write his acts, which to amplify, He told how the King had fought single with an Elephant, and slain it. The King hearing such stuff, caught the book, and threw it into the river of *Indus*, saying, That it were well done to throw the writer after it, who by inserting such fables, disparaged the truth of his great exploits. Yet as we believe & know that there are Elephants, though it were false that *Alexander* fought with one; so may we give credit unto writers making mention of such *Amazons*; whether it were true or false that they met with *Alexander*, as *Plutarch* leaves the matter undetermined. Therefore I will here take leave to make digression, as well to shew the opinions of the ancient Historians, Cosmographers, and others, as also of some modern discoverers touching these warlike Women, because not only *Strabo*, but many others of these our times make doubt, whether or no there were any such kind of people. *Julius Solinus* seats them in the North parts of *Asia* the lesse. *Pom. Mela* finds two Regions filled with them; the one on the River *Thermodoon*, the other neer the *Caspian* Sea; *Quas* (saith he) *Sauromatidae* appellant; Which the people call *Sauromatidae*. *Lib. 1.* The former of these two had the *Cimerians* for their Neighbours, *Certum est* (saith *Vadianus*, who hath commented upon *Mela*) *illos proximor. Amazonibus fuisse*; It is certain that the *Cimerians* were the next Nations to the *Amazons*. *Ptolemy* sets them farther into the Land North-wards, neer the Mountains *Hippaci*, not far from the Pillars of *Alexander*. And that they had Dominion in *Asia* it self toward *India*, *Solinus* and *Pliny* tell us, Where they governed a people called the *Pandani*, or *Pidani*, so called after *Pandae* the Daughter of *Hercules*, from whom all the rest derive themselves. *Claudian* affirms, That they commanded many Nations: For he speaks (largely perhaps as a Poet) thus:

*Medis levibusque Sabais  
Imperat hic sexus: Reginarumque sub armis,  
Barbaria pars magna jacet.*

*Claud. de cog.  
Trojopolim.*

Over the *Medes*, and light *Sabaean* reigns  
This female sex: and under arms of Queen,  
Great part of the *Barbarian* Land remains.

*Diodorus Siculus* hath heard of them in *Lybia*, who were more ancient (saith he) than those which kept the banks of *Thermodoon*, a River falling into the *Euxine* Sea, neer *Heracleum*.

*Herodotus* doth also make report of these *Amazons*, whom he tells us that the *Scythians* call *Corymbae*, which is as much as *Viricidae*, or men-killers. And that they made incursion into *Asia* the lesse, sackt *Ephesus*, and burnt the Temple of *Diana*, *Manethon*, and *Aveninus* report, which they performed forty years after *Troy* was taken. At the siege of *Troy* it self we read of *Penthesilea*, That she came to the succour of *Priamus*.

*Am. Marcellinus* gives the cause of their inhabiting upon the River of *Thermodoon*, speaking confidently of the wars they made with divers Nations, & of their overthrow. *Plutarch* in the life of *Theseus*, out of *Philochorus*, *Hellenicus*, and other ancient Historians, reports the taking of *Antiope* Queen of the *Amazons* by *Hercules*, and by him given to *Theseus*, though some affirm, That *Theseus* himself got her by stealth, when she came to visit him aboard his ship. But in substance there is little difference, all confessing, That such *Amazons* there were. The same Author in the life of *Pompey* speaks of certain companies of the *Amazons*, that came to ayd the *Albanians* against the *Romans*, by whom after the battell, many Targets and Buskins of theirs were taken up: and he saith farther, That these women entertain the *Gela* and *Lelages* once a year, Nations inhabiting between them and the *Albanians*.

But

Hist. Ind.  
part. 1. c. 3.

But to omit the many Authors, making mention of *Amazons* that were in the old times, *Fran Lopez*, who hath written the navigation of *Orellana*, which he made down the river of *Amazons* from *Peru*, in the year 1542. (upon which river, for the divers turnings, he is said to have failed six thousand miles) reports from the relation of the *Indians*, to the Council of the *Indies*, That he both saw those women, and fought with them, where they fought to impeach his passage towards the East-Sea.

It is also reported by *Ulrichus Schmidel*, that in the year 1542. when he sailed up the Rivers of *Parana* and *Paradol*, that he came to a King of that Country, called *Scherreo*, inhabiting under the Tropick of *Capricorn*, who gave his Captain *Ernando Rieffero*, a Crown of silver, which he had gotten in fight from a Queen of the *Amazons* in those parts.

*Ed Lopez*, in his description of the Kingdome of *Congo*, makes relation of such *Amazons*, telling us, That (agreeable to the reports of elder times) they burn off their right breasts, and live apart from men, save at one time of the year, when they feast and accompany them for one month. These (saith he) possesse a part of the Kingdome of *Monomota* in *Africa*, nineteen degrees to the Southward of the line: and that these women are the strongest Guards of this Emperours, all the East-Indian *Portugals* know.

I have produced these authorities in part, to justify mine own relation of these *Amazons*, because that which was delivered me for truth by an ancient *Catique* of *Guiana*, how upon the River of *Papamena* (since the *Spanish* discoveries called *Amazons*) that these women still live and govern, was held for a vain and unprobable report.

## §. XVI.

How Alexander fell into the Persian Luxurie: and how he further perjured Bessus.

NOW as *Alexander* had begun to change his conditions after the taking of *Persia*: so at this time his prosperitie had so much over-wrought his vertue, as he accounted clemencie to be but baseness, and the temperance which he had used all his life-time, but a poor and dejected humour, rather becoming the instructors of his youth, than the condition and state of so mighty a King as the World could not equall. For he perswaded himself that he now represented the greatnesse of the gods; he was pleased that those that came before him, should fall to the ground and adore him, he wore the robes and garments of the *Persians*, and commanded that his Nobilitie should do the like: he entertained in his Court and Camp, the same shamelesse rabble of Curtians, and Sodomiticall Eunuchs, that *Darius* had done, and imitated in all things the proud, voluptuous, and detested manners of the *Persians*, whom he had vanquished. So licentious is felicity, as notwithstanding that he was fully perswaded, that the gods whom he served (defeating the vices of the invaded) assisted him in all attempts against them, he himself, contrary to the Religion he profest (which how Idolatrous soever it were, could not be but fearful unto him by neglecting it) became by imitation, & not by ignorance or education, a more foul and fearful Monster than *Darius*, from whose tyrannie he vaunted to have delivered so many Nations. Yea those that were dearest and nearest unto him, began to be ashamed of him, entertaining each other with this, and the like scornfull discourse. That *Alexander* of *Macedon* was become one of *Darius* his licentious Courtiers. That by his example, the *Macedonians* were in the end of so many travels, more impoverished in their vertues, than enriched by their victories; and that it was hard to judge whether the Conquerors, or the Conquered were the baser slaves. Neither were these opinions so reserved, but that the noise of them came to his ears. He therefore with great gift sought to pacifie the better sort, and those of whose judgements he was most jealous; and making it known to the Armie, that *Bessus* had assumed the title of a King, and called himself *Artaxerxes*, and that he had compounded a great Armie of the *Bactrians*, and other Nations, he had arguments enow to perswade them to goe on, to the end that all already gotten, might not with themselves (so farre engaged) be cast away. And because they were pestered with the spoiles of so many Cities, as the whole armie seemed but the guard of their carriages, (not much unlike the warfare of the *French*) having commanded every mans fardels to be brought into the Market-place, he, together with his own, caused all to be consumed with fire. Certainly, this could not but have proved

most

most dangerous unto him, seeing the common Souldiers had more interest in these things which they had bought with their painfull travells, and with their blood, than in the Kings ambition; had not (as *Seneca* often observed) his happy temerity overcome all things. As he was in his way, newes came to him, that *Satibarzanes*, whom he had established in his former government over the *Arrians*, was revolted; whereupon leaving the way of *Bactria*, he sought him out; but the Rebelle, hearing of his coming, fled to *Bessus*, with two thousand Horse. He then went on towards *Bessus*, and by setting a great pile of wood on fire, with the advantage of a strong wind, won the passage over an high and unaccessible Rock, which was defended against him with thirteen thousand foot. For the extremity of the Flame and smoak forced them from the place, otherwise invincible. I saw in the third civil warre of *France*, certain Caves in *Languedoc*, which had but one entrance, and that very narrow, cut out in the mid-way of high Rocks, which we knew not how to enter by any ladder or engine, till at last, by certain bundles of straw, let down by an yron chain, and a weighty stone in the midst, these that defended it, were so smothered, as they rendred themselves, with their plate, money, and other goods therein hidden. There were also some three years before my arrival in *Guiana*, three hundred *Spaniards* well mounted, smothered to death, together with their Horses, by the Countrey-people, who did set the long dry grasse on fire to the Eastward of them, (the wind in those parts being alwayes East) so as notwithstanding their flying from the smoak, there was not any one that escaped. Sir *John Burrows* also, with a hundred *English*, was in great danger of being lost at *Margarita*, in the *West-Indies*, by having the grasse fired behind him; but the smoak being timely discovered, he recovered the Sea-shore with the losse of sixteen of his men. I remember these things, but to give caution to those that shall in times to come invade any part of those Countries, that they alwayes, before they passe into the Land, burn down the grasse and siege to the East of them; they may otherwise, without any other enemy than a handfull of straw set one fire, dye the death of honey-Bees, burnt out of the Hive.

## §. XVII.

A Conspiracie against Alexander. The death of Philotas and Parmenio.

Alexander was, after he parted hence, no where resisted, till he came into *Aria*, to the East of *Bactria*, where the chief City of that Province, called *Artacoana*, was a while defended against him, by the revolt of *Satibarzanes*, but in the end he received the Inhabitants to mercie. At this place his Army was re-enforced with a new supply of five thousand and five hundred foot, and neer five hundred Horse, out of *Græce*, *Thessalie*, and other places. His journey out of *Persia* into these parts, is very considerably described. For having (as all his Historians tell us) a determination to find *Bessus* in *Bactria*, he leaves it at the very entrance, and takes the way of *Hyrcania*, from thence he wanders Northwards towards the obscure *Mardi*, upon the *Caspian*-Sea, and thence over the Mountain *Caucasus* into *Aria* and *Drangiana*. At this time it was that the treason of *Dimnaus* brake out, of which *Philotas* the sonne of *Parmenio* was accused, as accessory, if not principall. This *Dimnaus*, having (I know not upon what ground) conspired with some others against the life of *Alexander*, went about to draw *Nichomachus*, a young man whom he loved, into the same treason. The Youth, although he was first bound by oath to secrecy, when he heard so foul a matter uttered, began to protest against it so vehemently, that his friend was like to have slain him for security of his own life. So, constrained by fear, he made shew as if hee had been won by perswasion; and by seeming at length to like well of the businesse, he was told more at large what they were that had undertaken it. There were nine or ten of them, all men of rank, whose names *Dimnaus* (to countenance the enterprise) reckoned up to *Nichomachus*. *Nichomachus* had no sooner freed himself from the company of this traitor *Dimnaus*, than he acquainted his own brother *Ceballinus* with the whole History: whereupon it was agreed between them, that *Ceballinus* (who might with least suspicion) should go to the Court, and utter all. *Ceballinus*, meeting with *Philotas*, told him the whole businesse, desiring him to acquaint the King therewith: which he promised

Bbb

10

to do, but did not. Two dayes passed, and *Philotas* never brake with the King about the matter; but still excused himself to *Ceballinus* by the Kings want of leisure. This his coldnesse bred suspition, and caused *Ceballinus* to addresse himself to another, one *Melpan*, Keeper of the Kings Armorie, who forth-with brought him to *Alexanders* presence. *Alexander*, finding by examination what had passed between *Ceballinus* and *Philotas*, did fully perswade himself that this concealment of the treason, argued his hand to have been in the businesse. Therefore when *Dimpus* was brought before him, he asked the Traitor no other question than this: *Wherein have I so offended thee, that thou shouldst think Philotas more worthy to be King than I? Dimpus* perceiving when he was apprehended, how the matter went, had so wounded himself, that he lived no longer, than to give his last groan in the Kings presence. Then was *Philotas* called, and charged with the suspition, which his silence might justly breed. His answer was, That when the practice was revealed unto him by *Nicomachus*, he judging it to bee but frivolous, did forbear to acquaint *Alexander* therewithall, untill hee might have better information. This error of his, (if it were only an error) although *Alexander*, for the notorious services of his Father *Parmenio*, of his brother *Nicanor* lately dead, and of *Philotas* himself, had freely pardoned and given him his hand for assurance; yet by the iustigation of self, had freely pardoned and given him his hand for assurance, and made his enemies his Judges. *Craterus*, he again (swallowed his Princely promise, and made his enemies his Judges. *Curtius* gives a note of *Craterus* in this businesse. How he perswaded himself, that he could never find a better occasion so oppress his private enemy, than by pretending piety, and due to the King. Hereof a Poet of our own hath given a note as much better, as it is more generall in his *Philotas*.

*See how these great men cloathe their private hate,  
In these fair colours of the publike good,  
And, to effect their ends, pretend the State,  
As if the State by their affection stood:  
And, arm'd with power and Princes jealousies,  
Will put the least conceit of discontent  
Into the greatest rank of treacheries,  
That no one action shall seem innocent;  
Trea. valour, honour, bounty, shall be made  
As accessaries unto ends unjust:  
And even the service of the State must lade  
The needfull ft. undertaking with distrust;  
So that base violence, idle Luxurie,  
Seem safer farre, than to doe worthily, &c.*

Now although it were so, that the King, following the advice of *Craterus*, had resolved the next day to put *Philotas* to torment, yet in the very evening of the same night in which he was apprehended, he called him to a banquet, and discoursed: as familiarly with him as at any other time. But when in the dead of the night *Philotas* was taken in his lodging, and that they which hated him began to bind him; he cryed out upon the King in these words, O *Alexander*, the malice of mine Enemies hath surmounted thy mercy, and their hatred is farre more constant than the word of a King. Many circumstances were urged against him by *Alexander* himself (for the Kings of *Macedon* did in person examine the accusations of treason) & this was not the least (not the least offence, indeed, against the Kings humour, who desired to be glorified as a God) That when *Alexander* wrote unto him concerning the title given him by *Jupiter Hammon*; He answered, That he could not but rejoyce that he was admitted into that sacred Fellowship of the gods, and yet he could not but withall grieve for those that should live under such a onerous, and would exceed the nature of man. This was (saith *Alexander*) a firm perswasion unto me, that his heart was changed, and that he held my glory in despite. See what a strange Monster Flattery is, that can perswade Kingsto kill those that doe not praise and allow those things in them, which are of all other most to be abhorred. *Philotas* was brought before the multitude, to hear the Kings Oration against him: hee was brought forth in vile garments, and bound like a Theefe, where he heard himself, and his abient Father, the greatest Captain of the World, accused; his two other Brothers, *Helior* and *Antipater*, having been lost in the present Warre. Hee was so greatly oppress with grief,

as for a while he could utter nothing but tears; and sorrow had so wastid his spirits, as he sunk under those that led him. In the end, the King asked him, In what language he would make his defence, he answered, In the same wherein he had pleaded the King to accuse him; which he did, to the end that the *Perfians*, as well as the *Macedonians*, might understand him. But hereof the King made his advantage, perceiving the assembly, that he desired the language of his own Country, and so with drawing himself, left him to his merced enemies.

The proceeding of the Kings, *Philotas* greatly lamented; seeing the King, who had so sharply inveighed against him, would not vouchsafe to hear his excuse. For not his end, but his enemy were emboldened thereby against him, but all the rest, having discovered the Kings disposition and resolution, contended among themselves, which of them should exceed in hatred towards him. Among many other arguments, which hee used in his defence, this was not the weakest, That when *Nicomachus* desired to know of *Dimpus*, what men of mark and power were his partners in the conspiracy (as seeming unwilling to adventure himself with mean and base Compositions) *Dimpus* named unto him *Demetrius* of the Kings Chamber, *Nicanor*, *Antipater*, and some others; but spake not a word of *Philotas*, who by being Commander of the Horse, would greatly have valued the party, and have encouraged *Nicomachus*. Indeed, as *Philotas* said well for himself; it is likely that *Demetrius* thereby the better to have hearted *Nicomachus*, would have named him, though he had never dealt with him in any such practice. And for more certain proof, that he knew nothing of their intents that practised against the King, there was not any one of the Conspirators, being many, infested by torments, or otherwise, that could accuse him; and it is true, that adversity being seldom able to beat her own burden, is for the most part found so malicious, as she rather desires to draw others (not always deserving it) into the same danger, than to spare any that it can accuse. Yet at this last, however it were, to avoid the extremity of restless and unnaturall torments, devised by his profest enemies, *Craterus*, *Census*, *Ephesian*, and others, *Philotas* accused his confeder, being perswaded that they would have than him forthwith. But hee failed in that miserable hope, and suffering all that could be laid on flesh and blood, he was forced to deliver, not what he knew, but whatsoever best pleased their ears, that were farre more mercilesse than death it self.

Of this kind of iudicial proceeding *S. Augustine* greatly complaineth, as a matter to be bewailed, saith he, with Fountains of tears: *Quid enim in sua causa quisque torquetur; & conqueritur utrum sit nocens, cruciatur; & innocens luto pro incerto scelere certissimam penam: non quia illud commississe desigatur, sed quia non commississe nescitur? What shall we say to it, when one is put to torture in his own cause, and tormented whilst yet it is in question whether he be guilty; and being innocent, suffers assured punishment for a fault, of which there is no certaintie: not because he is known to have committed the offence, but because others doe not know that he hath not committed it?*

It had been enough for *Alexanders* safety; if *Philotas* had been put to death without torment; the rest would not much have grieved thereat, because he was greatly suspected. But *Helios*, who afterward conspired against him, made the Kings cruelty and delight in blood, the greatest motive of his own ill intent. Therefore, *Seneca*, speaking of *Alexander*, saith thus: *Crudelitas minime humanum malum est, indignum sum missi animo; strike ista rabies est sanguine gaudere & vulneribus, & abjecto homine in silvestre animal. Sen. de Clem. l. 1.* *Crueity is not a humane vice, it is unworthy of so milde a spirit: It is even a brutish rage to delight in blood and wounds, and casting away the nature of man, to become a savage Monster.*

For the conclusion of this Tragedie, *Curtius* makes a doubt, whether the confession that *Philotas* made were to give end to the torments which he could not any longer endure, or that the same was true indeed; For (saith he) in this case, they that speak truly, or they that deny falsely, come to one and the same end. Now, while the Kings hands were yet wet in blood, he commanded that *Lynceus*, son-in-Law to *Antipater*, who had been three years in prison, should be slain: The same dispatch had all those that *Nicomachus* had accused: others there were that were suspected because they had followed *Philotas*; but when they had answered for themselves that they knew no way so direct to win the Kings favour, as by loving those whom the King favoured, they were dismissed. But *Parmenio* was yet living; *Parmenio*, who had served



with great fidelity as well Philip of Macedon the Kings Father, as himself; *Parmenio*, that first opened the way into *Asia*; that had deposed *Astages* the Kings enemy; that had always, and in all hazards, the leading of the Kings Vant-guard; that was no less prudent in counsell, than fortunate in all attempts; A man beloved of the men of War, and, to say the truth, he that had made the purchase for the King of the Empire of the East, and of all the glory and fame he had; That he might not therefore revenge the death of his Son, though not upon the King, (for it was unlikely that he would have dishonoured his fidelity in his eldest age, having now lived threescore and ten years) yet upon those that, by the witchcraft of flattery had possessed themselves of his affection, it was resolved that he should be dispatched. *Polydamus* was employed in this business, a man whom of all others *Parmenio* trusted most, and loved best, who (to be short) finding him in *Media*; and having *Cleander* and other murderers with him, slew him walking in his Garden, while he was reading the Kings letters. *Hic exitus Parmenionis fuit, militia domique clari viri, Mulus sine Rege prospero, Rex sine illo nihil magna rei gestas; This was the end of Parmenio (saith Curtius) who had performed many notable things without the King, but the King, without him, did never effect any thing worthy of praise.*

## s. XVIII.

How Alexander subdued the Bactrians, Sogdians, and other people. How Bessus was delivered into his hands: How he fought with the Scythians.

**W**hen these things had end, Alexander went on with his Army, and brought under his obedience the *Arasians* or *Evergians*; he made *Armenides* (sometime *Darius* his Secretary) their Governour, then he subdued the *Arachosians*; and left *Memon* to command over them. Here the Army, sometimes led by *Parmenio*, finds him, consisting of twelve thousand *Macedons* and *Greeks*, with whom he passeth through some cold Regions with difficulty enough. At length he came to the foot of the Mountain *Taurus*, towards the East, where he built a City, which he honoured with his own name, and peopled it with seven thousand of his old *Macedons*, worn with age and with travells of the war. The *Arians*, who since he left them were revolted, he subdued again by the industrie and valour of *Caranus* and *Erigius*. And now he resolves to find out the new King *Bessus* in *Bactria*. *Bessus*, hearing of his coming, prepares to pass over the great River of *Oxus*, which divides *Bactria* from *Sogdiana*; *Aribazus* is made Governour of *Bactria* abandoned by *Bessus*; The *Macedonian* Army suffereth for want of Water, inasmuch as when they came to the River of *Oxus*, there died more of them by drinking inordinately, than Alexander had lost in any one battell against the *Persians*. And it may well be, for (as *Clytus* did after object unto him) he fought against women, not against men, and not against their persons, but their shadowes. He found on the banks of this great River no manner of Timber or other materials, to make either boats, bridges, or rafts, but was forc'd to sew together the Hides that covered his carriages, and stuffe them with straw, and on them in six dayes to pass over his Army, which *Bessus* might easily have distressed, if he had dared but to behold the *Macedonian* Army afar off. He had formerly complained against *Darius* for neglecting to defend the banks of *Tigris*, and other passages, and yet now, when this traitorous slave had styled himself a King, he durst not perform any thing worthy of a slave. And therefore those that were nearest unto him, and whom he most trusted, to wit, *Spitamenes*, *Dataphernes*, *Catanes*, and others the Commanders of his Army, moved both by the care of their own safety, and by the memory of *Bessus* his Treason and cruelty against *Darius*, bound him in the like manner that he had done his Master, but with this difference, that he had the chain closed about his neck like a mansife Dog, and so was dragged along to be presented to his enemy.

In the mean while Alexander was arrived at a certain Town inhabited with *Greeks* of *Miletum*, brought thither by *Xerxes*, when long before hee returned out of *Greece*; whose issues had well-near forgotten their Country language. These most cruelly after they had received him with great joy he put to the sword, and destroyed their City. At this place he received *Bessus*, and having rewarded *Spitamenes* with the rest that he delivered him, he gave the Traitor into the hands of *Oxatres*, *Darius* his brother, to be tormented.

But

But while he now thought himself secure, some twenty thousand Mountaineers assaulted his Camp; in repelling whom he received a shot in the leg, the arrow head sticking in the flesh, so as he was carried in a Horse-litter, sometime by the horsemen, sometime by the foot.

Soon after he came unto *Maracanda*; which *Petrus Perodinus* takes to be *Samar*, and the regal City of the great *Tamurlibeg*. It had in compass three score and ten furlongs (*Carlius* saith.) Here he received the Embassadors of the *Scythians* (called *Araxians*) who offered to serve him.

The *Bactrians* are shortly again with the *Sogdians* stirred to rebellion; by the same *Araxians* and *Cathians*, who had lately delivered into his hands the traitor *Bessus*. Many Cities were resolutely defended against him, all which, after victory, hee defaced and razed; killing all therein. At one of these he received a blow on the neck, which struck him to the ground, and much disabled him for many dayes after. In the meant while *Araxians* had recovered *Maracanda*, against whom he employed *Menechmus* with three thousand foot, and eight hundred horse.

In the heat of these tumults Alexander marched on; if we may believe *Carlius* and others till he came to the river of *Tanus*, upon whose bank he built another *Alexandria* (three score furlongs in compass, which he beautified with houses within seven dayes after the walls built. The building of this City is said to have his occasion of a wide debate between him and the *Scythians*; the *Scythian* King persuading himself, that this new Town was fortified of purpose to keep him under: I doe not well understand, why the *Scythians*, offering war in such terrible manner, that Alexander was judged by his own Soldiers to counterfeite sickness for very fear, should nevertheless make sure for his richer kind; the reason why Alexander (not intending the conquest of those Northern parts, but only the defence of his own bank) should refuse to let them pass, with whom he could not meddle further than they would agree to suffer him. For hereof is made a greater matter; and a victory described in pursuit of which the *Scythians* were beyond the bounds and inducements of *Bartho* his expectation.

The truth is, That *Carlius* and *Plinius* doe greatly misinterpret this River, which they call *Tanus*; For it was the River of *Aras*, that runs between *Sogdiana* and *Scythia*, which Alexander pass over, while *Menechmus* was employed in the recovery of *Samar*; that *Plinius* which divides *Asia* from *Europe*, is near two thousand miles distant from any part of *Bactria* and *Sogdiana*, and the way desert and unknown. So that Alexander (wonder *Strabo* the great River of *Persia* and many others to swim over, hee could not get over *Tanus*, which from the place where he was he could hardly have discovered with the Army that followed him; if he had employed all the time that hee had left him with that doyle.

Wherefore it is thought to be true, that the *Araxians* or *Scythians*, making some offence to the building of his new City, which was like to give some hindrance to their motions, were driven away by the *Macedonians*; and being made of defensive Army, were chased some thirty or twelve miles; which is the substance of *Carlius* his report. As for the fables of *Plinius*, his journey, like enough it is that *Aras* (if in the time hee were to cross a man, as after his death he was held a drunken god) went in very little that waste Country, where he could find nothing but trees and flowers, neither sufficient to set up a Monument.

Three score of the *Macedonians* hee said to have bin slain, and one thousand one hurt; and in this fight, which might easily be in passing a great River, defended against thirty good Archers. Of *Scythian* horses one thousand eight hundred were brought into the Camp, and many prisoners. It is forbidden by some Historians; and indeed it is hardly possible to set down the numbers of such as perish in battell; yet *Caesar* commonly did it. And where the diligence of the victors hath been so inquisitive into the greatness of their own success, the writers have been able to deliver such particulars by credible report, I hold it not unlawfull to set down what we find, especially when it leads us to the light to the business in hand. The small number which the *Macedonians* lost, the omission of the number which they new (a thing not what in *Cassius*, who forbears nothing that may set out the greatness of *Alexander*) and the little bootie that was gotten, doe make it probable, that this war was no better than the reputation of a victory; (the like being yearly performed by the *Araxians*, without



any boast) and therefore better omitted by some Historians, than so highly extolled as a great exploit, by others.

While *Alexander* was affuring himself of those *Scythians* bordering upon *Jaccaria*, he received the ill newes that *Menedemus* was slain by *Spitamenes*, the Army (by him) led broken, and the greatest numbers slain, to wit, two thousand foot, and three hundred horse, and the greatest numbers rebellion, and to take revenge of *Spitamenes*, dreed horrible. He therefore, to appease the rebellion, and to take revenge of *Spitamenes*, makes all the haste he can; but *Spitamenes* flies into *Bactria*, *Alexander* kills, burns, and layes waste all before him, not sparing the innocent children, and so departs, leaving a new Government in that Province.

new Governour in that Province.

To repair this losse he received a great supply of nineteen thousand Souldiers out of *Greece, Lycia, and Syria*, with all which, and the old Army, he returns towards the South, and passeth the River of *Orontes*; on the South-side whereof hee built six Towns; and each other for mutual succour. But he findes a new start-up Rebel, called *Arimazes*, (a *Sagadian*) followed with thirty thousand Souldiers, that defended against him a strong piece of ground on the top of a high Hill; whom when *Alexander* had fought in vain to win by fair words, he made choice of three hundred young men, and promised ten talents to the first, nine to the second, and so in proportion to the rest, that could finda way to creep up to the top thereof. This they performed, with the losse of some two and thirty of their men, and then made a sign to *Alexander*, that they had performed his commandement. Hereupon he sent one *Cophes* to perswade *Arimazes* to yeeld the place, who being threatned by *Cophes* that the Army of *Macedon* was already mounted up, yeelded himself to *Alexanders* mercy, and was (with all his kindred) scourged and crucified to death; which punishment they well deserved for neglecting to keep good watch in so dangerous a time. For the place, as seems by the description, might easily have been defended against all the Armies of the World. But, what strength cannot doe, *Mans* wit, being the most forcible engine, hath often effected: Of which I will give you an example in a place of our own.

example in a place of our own.

The Island of *Sark*, joyning to *Garnsey*, and of that government, was in Queen *Maria*'s time surpris'd by the *French*, and could never have been recovered again by *three* hands, having cartell and corn enough upon the place to feed to many men as will live to defend it, and being every way so inaccessible, that it might be held against the *French*. Yet by the industry of a Gentleman of the *Netherland*, it was in this fort recovered. He anchored in the road with one Ship of small burden, and pretending the death of his Merchant, belougth the *French*, being some thirty in number, that they might bury their Merchant in hallowed Ground, and in the Chappell of that Isle, offering a present to the *French* of such Commodities as they had aboard; whereto (with condition that they should not come a fowle with any weapon, no not so much as with a Knife) the *French men* yielded. Then did the *Flemings* put a Coffin into their Boat, filled with a dead carcass, but with Swords, Targets, and Harquebusses. The *French* men ceyed them at their Landings, and searching every of them so narrowly as they could find, a Pen-knife gave them leave to draw their Coffin up the Rocks with great difficulty. As some part of the *French* took the *Flemish* Boat, & rowed aboard their Ship to looke at the commodities promised, and whar els they pleased; but being entred, they were taken and bound. The *Flemings* on the Land, when they had carried their Coffin into the Chappell, shut the door to them, and taking their weapons out of the Coffin, set upon the *French*, they run to the Cliff, and cry to their Company aboard the *Fleming* to come to their succour, but finding the Boat charged with *Flemings*, yielded themselves and the place. Thus a Fox kill doth sometimes help well to piece out the Lions skin, that else would be too short.

How Alexander flew his own friends.

After these Sogdian and Scythian Wars, we read of *Alexander's* killing of a King and one of his Frivolous matters, and that he committed the Government of *Paracanda*, and the Country about it, to *Clytus*, and how he flew him soon after, for valuing the virtue of *Philip* the father before that of *Alexander* the son, or rather because he objected to the King the death of *Parmenio*, & derided the Oracle of *Phoebus* for

for therein he taught him to the quick, the same being delivered in publike, and at a drunken Banquet. *Clytus*, indeed, had deserved as much at the Kings hands, as any man living had done, and had in particular saved his life, which the King well remembered when he came to himself, and when it was too late. Yet to fay the truth, *Clytus* his infidelity was intolerable. As he in his Cups forgot whom he offended, so the King in his (for neither of them were themselves) forgot whom he went about to flay, for the grief whereof he tare his own face, and sorrowed to inordinately, as, but for the persuasions of *Calisthenes*, it is thought he would have slain himself.

Wine beget Furie, Furie matter of Repentance : but preceding mischiefs are not amended by succeeding bewailing : *Omne vitium ebrietas & incendit, & deiecit : quædam malis convulsione veredundum : remouet, ubi possedit animum nimis : vi vitia, quæquid male latet, apergit : non facit ebrietas vitia, sed probat ibi.* Drunkenness both kindles & lays open every vice, it removes out of the way that flame which gives impediment unto all attempts ; where wine gets the mastery, all the ill that before lay hidden breaks out : drunkenness indeede rather discouers vices, than makes them.

Soon after this, *Spatamenes*, who flew before him and had lately revolted from *Alexander*, was murdered by his Wife, and his head presented to *Alexander*. *Spatamenes* being taken away, the *Rhans* also seized upon his fellow-confiscator *Dataphernes*, and delivered him up. So *Alexander* being now freed from all these pertie-Rebels; disposed of the Provinces which he past over, and went on with his Army into *Gubzia*, where it suffered much Hunger, Cold, Lightning, Thunder, and Storm, as he lost in one Tempest a thousand of his Train. From hence he invaded the *Sacari*, and destroyed their Country. Then came he into the Territory of *Cobonaxes*, who submitted himself unto him; fearing him greatly, and presented him with thirty beautiful Virgins, among whom *Roxana*, afterwards his Wife, was one: which although all the *Mazadenians* disdained, yet none could refuse any freedom of speech after *Clytus* his death. From hence he directed his Course towards *India*, having so increased his numbers, as they amounted to an hundred and twenty thousand armed men.

in the mean while he would needs be honoured as a god : whereto: that he might al-  
lowe the *Maccedonians*, he employed two pernicious Parafides, *Hazis* and *Chaz*, whom  
*Calisthenes* opposed : For among many other honest arguments used to the assembly, he  
told *Chaz*, That he thought, that *Alexander* would disdain the gift of God-head from  
his Vassals : & that the opinion of *Sanchus*, though it did sometime follow the death of  
kings, who in their life-time had done the greatest things, yet it never accompanied any  
that are yet living in the world. He further told him, That neither *Histechus* nor *Bacchus*  
were deified at a Banquet, and upon drink (for this matter was propounded by *Clearchus*  
knowing feare, but that for the more than manly acts by them performed while they  
lived, they were in future and succeeding Ages numbered among the gods. *Alexander*  
had behind a paragon, and heard all that was spoken, waiting but an opportunity to  
interrupted on *Calisthenes*, who being a man of free speech, honest, learned, and a lover  
of the Kings honour, was yet soon after tormented to death : not for that he had be-  
trayed the King to others, but because he never would condescend to betray the King to  
himself, as all his detestable flatterers did. For in a conspiracy against the King made  
by one *Hermolus* and others, which they confest he caused *Calisthenes* without confes-  
sion, accusation, or trial, to be torn asunder upon the rack : This deed unworthy of a  
King, Seneca thus censureth. *Hec est Alexandri crimen aeternum, quod nulla virtus, nulla*  
*ultra sum felicitas redimet; Nam quoties quis, dixerit, Occidit Perfarum multa milia;*  
*peritque Calisthenem; Quoties dictum erit, Occidit Marium, peritque Calisthenem.*  
*Quoties dictum erit, Omnia Oceano reme uicist, ipsum quoque sententis, novis claudibus;*  
*et* *interitum est, angustis Thraciae, sed ad orientis terminos peratulus; dicentibus Calisthenem*  
*occidit. Omnia tunc antiqua Regumque exempla transferis, et his quae fecit nihil*  
*semper innumeris quam sceler Calisthenis: This is the eternal crime of Alexander, which*  
*endures nor felicity of his in War shall ever be able to redeem: For as often as any man*  
*shall say he slew many thousand; or Persians; it shall be replied, he did so, & he slew Calisthenes:*  
*When it shall be said, he slew Marius; it shall be replied, and Calisthenes: When it shall*  
*be said, he quaine all our age, the very Ocean, there on also adventured with unshaken*  
*power, & extended his Empire from a corner of Thrace, to the utmost bounds of the Ori-*  
*ent; it shall be said withall, But he killed Calisthenes. Let him have none all the ancient*  
*examples*

examples of Captains and Kings; none of all his acts make so much to his glory, as his  
fidelity in his report.

## §. XX.

Of Alexanders journey into India. The battell between him and Porus.

**V**hen the Army before remembered, of one hundred and twenty thousand foot  
and horse, *Alexander* did enter the borders of *India*, where such of the Prin-  
ces, as submitted themselves unto him, he entertained lovingly, the rest he  
constrained, killing Man, Woman, and Child, where they resisted. He then came before  
*Nisa* built by *Bacchos*, which after a few daies was rendred unto him. From thence he re-  
moved to a Hill at hand, which on the top had goodly Gardens, filled with delicate fruit  
and Vines, dedicated to *Bacchos*, to whom he made feasts for ten dayes together. Now  
when he had drunk his fill, hee went on towards *Dadula*, and from thence to *Ataxia*,  
Countries spoiled and abandoned by the Inhabitants; by reason whereof, victuals fail-  
ing, he divides his Army: *Ptolemy* led one part, *Cenon* another, and himself the rest.  
They take many Towns, whereof that of greatest fame was *Mazaga*, which had in it  
three hundred thousand men; but after some resistance, it was yielded unto him by the  
Queen, to whom again he restored it, at the siege of this City he received a  
wound in the legge. After this, *Nora* was taken by *Polyperchon*, and a Rock of great  
strength by himself: he wanted also a passage upon one *Eryx*, who was slain by his  
company, and his head presented to *Alexander*. This is the summe of *Alexanders* doing  
in those parts, before such time as he arrived at the River of *Indus*. Comming to *Indus*,  
he found there *Ephistion*, who (being sent before) had prepared boats for the transpor-  
tation of his Army, and ere *Alexander* arrivall, had perswaded *Omphile* King of that part  
of the Country, to submit himself to this great Conqueror. Therefore, soon upon  
*Alexanders* comming, *Omphile* presented himself with all the strength of his Country,  
and six and fifty Elephants, unto him; offering him his service and assistance. He made *Alexander*  
know, that he was an Enemy to the next two great Kings of that part of *India*,  
named *Abisares* and *Porus*; whereby *Alexander* was not a little pleased, hoping by  
this distinction to make his own victory by far the more easie. He presented *Alexander*  
with a Crown of gold, so did he the rest of his Commanders, and withall fourscore  
talents of silver eyn; which *Alexander* not only refused, but to shew that he was cov-  
etous of glory, not of gold, he gave *Omphile* a thousand talents of his own treasure;  
besides other Persian rarities. *Abisares*, having heard that *Alexander* had received his  
enemy *Omphile* into his protection, resolved to make his own peace also: For, knowing  
that his own strength did but equall that of *Omphile*, and that there was no other differ-  
ence between them, than that which the chance of Warre gave, hee thought it an ill  
match, when *Alexander*, who had already beaten under foot all the greatest Princes of  
*Asia*, should make himself a Party and Head of the querrell. So had *Alexander* no  
need to stand in his way but *Porus*, to whom he sent a commandement, that hee should  
attend him at the border of his Kingdoms, there to doe him homage. But from *Porus* he  
received this manly answer: That he would satisfie him in his first demand, which was  
to attend him on his borders, and that well accompanied; but for any other acknow-  
ledgement he was resolved to take counsell of his Sword. To be short, *Alexander* re-  
solved to passe over the River *Hidaspes*, and to find *Porus* at his own home. *Porus* at-  
tended him on the farther bank with thirty thousand foot, fourscore and ten Elephants,  
and three hundred armed Chariots, and a great troop of Horse. If *Darius* had done the  
like on *Dionis*, *Alexander* had surely staid somewhat longer ere he had seen *India*. The  
River was four furlongs broad, which makes half a mile, and withall deep and swift;  
he had in it many Islands, among which there was one well shadowed with wood, and  
of good capacity. *Alexander* sent *Ptolemy* up the River with a great part of the Army,  
showing the rest from the view of *Porus*: who by this device being drawn from his  
first encamping, set himself down opposite to *Ptolemy*, supposing that the whole Ar-  
my of *Alexander* meant to force their passage there. In the mean while *Alexander* re-  
ceived the farther news without resistance. He orders his troops, and advanceth toward  
*Porus*, who at first rather believes, that *Abisares* his Confederat (but now the Confe-  
derat of fortune) had bin come over *Hidaspes* to his aid, than that *Alexander* had past it.

But

But he finds it otherwise, and sends his Brother *Hages* with four thousand horse, and a  
hundred armed Waggon to entertain him. Each Waggon had in it four to fight, and  
two to guide it; but they were at this time of little use: for there had fallen so much rain,  
and thereby the fields were so moistned, as the horse could hardly trot. The *Scythians*  
and *Dahans* had the Vant-guard, who so galled the *Indians*, as they brake their rains,  
and other furniture, overturning the Waggon, and those in them. *Perdiccas* also gave up  
the *Indian* horse-men, and the one and the other were forc'd to recoile. *Porus* moves for-  
ward with grosse of his Army, that those of his Vant-guard scattered might recover his  
Rear; *Alexander* being followed with *Ephistion*, and *Perdiccas* took on him to  
charge the *Indian* horse-men on the left wing, commanding *Citus* or *Canon* to invade  
the right; *Antigonus* and *Leonatus*, he directed to break upon *Porus* his battell of foot,  
strengthened with Elephants. *Porus* himself being carried upon one of the great  
elephant. By these beasts the *Macedonian* foot were most offended; but the Archers  
and Darters, being well guarded with the long and strong pikes of the *Macedonians*, so-  
called them, as being enraged, they turned head, and ran over the foot that followed  
them. In the end, and after a long and doubtfull fight, by the advantage of weapon, and  
by the courage and skilfulnesse of the *Macedonian* Captains, the victory fell to *Alexander*,  
who also far exceeded *Porus* in number: for besides the *Macedonians* and other Bar-  
barian and Northern Nations, *Porus* was assailed by his own Confederat and Countrie  
people. Yet for his own person he never gave ground otherwise than with his sword to-  
wards his enemies, till being weakened with many wounds, and abandoned by his Ar-  
my, he became a prisoner to the Conqueror, from whom again he received his estate,  
with a great enlargement.

## §. XXI.

How Alexander finished his expedition; and returned out of India.

Forbear to trouble my self and others with a frivolous discourse of Serpents, Apes,  
and Peacocks, which the *Macedonians* found in these their travels: or of those pettie  
Warres which *Alexander* made between the overthrow of *Porus*, and his sailing  
down the River of *Indus*: The descriptions of places about the head and branches there-  
of are better known unto us in this Age; by means of our late Navigations into those  
parts, than they were in any former times. The magnificence and riches of those Kings  
we could in no sort be perswaded to believe, till our own experience had taught us, that  
there were many stranger things in the World, than are to be seen between *London*  
and *Siam*.

Our great traveller *Mandeville*, who died in the year 1372, and had seen so much of  
the World, and of the East *India*, we accounted the greatest fabler of the World; yet  
had he another reputation among other Nations, as well able to judge as we. Witnesse  
the Monument made of him in the Convent of the Friers *Guillimius* in *Liege*, where the  
religious of that place keep some things of his, *Comme pour honorable memoire de son*  
*Excellence; Pour un honorable memoire of his Excellencie, saith Gauchardin*.

The Countries towards the Springs of *Indus*, and where those many Rivers of *Hyda-  
spes*, *Paradise*, *Acissus*, and the rest fall into the main stream, are now possesed by the  
great *Mogor*, the ninth from *Tamberlain*, who commands all the tract between *Persia*  
and *Indus* towards the West, as also a great extent of Countie towards *Ganges*. In the  
mouth of *Indus*, the *Ascension*, a Ship of *London*, suffered shipwrack, in the year  
1609, and some of the company travelled over Land till they came to *Agra*; the same  
great Citie (as I take it) which our later Cosmographers call *Nagra*, being named of  
the *Queen of Sheba*.

The story in the life of *Apollonius Tyanicus*, speaking of the expedition of *Bacchos* and  
*Heracles* into the East *India*, tells us, that those two great Captains (whom *Alexander*  
bought by all means to out-fame) when they endeavoured to subiect to them the *Oxidrace*,  
a people inhabiting between the Rivers of *Hyphasis* and *Ganges*; they were beaten from  
the assault of their Cities with thunder and lightnings. This may well be understood by  
the great Ordnance that those people had then in use. For it is now certainly known,  
that the great Kings of the uttermost East, have had the use of the canon many hundreds  
of years since, and even since their first civillie and greatnesse, which was long before  
*Alexanders*

Guic. in Dist. of  
the Low coun-  
tries.

*Alexander's time.* But *Alexander* pierc'd not so far into the East. It suffic'd that having already overwearied his Army, he discover'd the rest of *India* by fable. The *Indians* Kings whom he had subdued, inform'd him that a Prince call'd *Agarumenes*, who commanded many Nations beyond the River *Ganges*, was the powerfullst King of all those Regions: and that he was able to bring into the field two hundred thousand Foot, three thousand Elephants, twenty thousand Horse, and two thousand armed Chariots. With this report though *Alexander* grew more inflam'd than ever to proceed in this discovery and conquest, yet all the art he had could not persuade the Soldiers to wander over those great Desarts beyond *Indus* & *Ganges*, more terrible unto them than the greatest Army that the East could gather. Yet at the last contented they were, after many persuasive Oration, to follow him towards the South, to discover such part of the Ocean Sea, as was nearer at hand, wherunto the River of *Indus* was their infallible guide. *Alexander* seeing that it would be no otherwife, devised a pretty trick, wherewith he hoped to beguile posterity, and make himself seem greater than he was. He enlarg'd his Camp, in the greater trenches, greater cabins for Souldiers, greater Horse-Halls, and higher mangers than Horses could feed in. He caus'd all furniture of men and horse to be made larger than would serve for use, and scatter'd these Armour and Bridle about his Camp, to be kept as reliques, and wonder'd at by the Savages. Proportionably to these he rais'd up twelve great Altars to be the monument of his journey's end. This<sup>10</sup> was a ready way to encrease the fame of his bignoise; to his greatnoise it could add nothing save a Insipition, that it was lesse than is thought, seeing he strove so earnestly to make it thought more than it was.

This done, he returned again to the bank of *Acefines*, and there determined to ferry his fleet, where *Acefines* and *Hydafes* encounter; where to testify by a surer monument, how far he had past towards the East, he buik by those rivers two Cities: the one hee called *Nicaea*, and the other *Bucephalon*, after the name of his beloved Horse *Bucephalus*. Here againe he received a fourth supply of fix thousand *Thracian* Horse-men, seven thousand Foot; and from his Lieutenant at *Babylon* five and twenty thousand Armour, garnished with silver and gold, which he distributed among his Soldiers. About these Rivers he wau many Towns, and committed great slaughter on those that resisted; It is then written of him, that assailing a Citie of the *Oxydracans*, he leapt from the top of the wall into it, and fought, I know not how long, against all the Inhabitants; tales like those of *Bevis of Southampton*, frivolous and incredible. Finally, he past down the River with his fleet, at which time also the news came unto him of a rebellion in *Bactria*, and then of the arrivall of an hundred Embassadors from a King of *India*, who submitted himself unto him. He feasted these Embassadors upon a hundred beds of gold, with all the sumptuosity that could be devised, who soon after their dispatch, returned again with a present of three hundred Horses, one hundred and thirty Waggon, and to each of them four Horses, a Thousand Targets, with many other things rare and rich:

Their entertainments ended, he failed towards the South, passed through many obscure Nations, which did all yield unto him either quietly, or compelled by force: among these he builded another *Alexandria*. Of many places which he took in this passage, *Samus* was one, the Inhabitants whereof fought against him with poisoned fowls, with one of which *Pselomy* (afterward King of *Egypt*) was wounded, and cured by an herb which *Alexander* dreamt he had seen in the mouth of a Serpent.

When he came near the out-let of *Indus* (being ignorant of the tides of the Sea) his Gallies, as they were on a sudden bluffed one upon another by the Flood, fo on the Ebbe they were left on the drie ground, and on the sandie banks of the River, wherewith the *Macedonians* were much amazed; but after he had a few daies observed well the course of the Sea, he past out of the rivers mouth some few miles, and after Sacrifices offered to *Neptune*, returned: and the better to inform himself, he sent *Nearchus* and *Oenobrotus*, to discover the coast towards the mouth of *Euphrates*. *Arrianus* in the beginning of his sixt Book hath written this passage down the River of *Indus* at length, with the manner of the Vessels in which he transported his Army, the Commanders that were used therein, and other the marvellous provisions made.

Near the out-lets of this River, he spent some part of the Winter, and in eighteen daies march from thence recovered *Gedrosia*, in vvhich passage his Army suffered such

miserie for want of food, that of a hundred and twenty thousand foot; and twelve thousand horse, which he carried into *India*, not the fourth part returned alive.

§. XXII.

of Alexander's Riot, Cruelty, and death,

**F**rom Gedrosia, Alexander led his Army into Carmania, and so drawing near to Persia, he gave himself wholly to feasting and drinking, imitating the triumphs of Bacchus. And though this Swinish vice be hateful enough in it self, yet it always inclined this King to Cruelty. For (saith Curtius) the Hang-man followed the feast, for as often as he was invited to sup, he commanded him to be slain, for neither did the Kings of Persia, nor those of Macedon, ever make use of executioners. And therefore, if Alexander were now alive, we might easily qualifie his cruelty, nor his cruelty binder in ought his voluptuousness.

While he refreshed his Army in these parts, a new supply of five thousand foot and a thousand horse, was brought him by *Cleander*, and his fellows; that had bin employed in the killing of *Parmentio*. Against these Murderers great complaint was made by the Deputies of the Provinces, in which they had commanded; and their offences were so outrageous, as *Alexander* was perswaded, that, had they not altogether despaired of his return out of *India*, they durst not have committed them. All men were glad of the occasion, remembering the virtue of him, whom they had slaughtered: The end was, That *Cleander*, and the other chief, with six hundred Souldiers by them employed, were delivered over to the Hang-man: every one rejoycing that the Ire of the King was at last executed on the ministers of his Ire.

land rich in gold, and of other strange things; whereupon they were commanded to make some farther discoverie: which done, that they should enter the mouth of *Euphrates*, and find the King at *Babylon*.

As he drew neere to *Babylon*, he visited the Sepulchre of *Cyrus* in *Pafargada*, now called *Chagaria*; where he was presented with many rich gifts by *Oristes*, one of the Princes of *Persia*, of the race of *Cyrus*. But because *Bagoas*, an *Eunuch* in special favour with the King, was neglected, he not only practised certain loose fellows to witness against *Cassius* that he had robbed *Cyrus* tombs; for which hee was condemned to die; but hee also the King-mas with his own hands in tormenting him! At which time also *Alexander* called *Pharistes* to be slain; suspecting his treachery. *Casperus* (saith *Curtius*) offered to repay *Alexander* suppliant, *si rem ad deteriora credenda*; He began head-longly to be head, and so heliow fall in repaies. It is true; that he took a way to make all men weary of his government, feeling cruelty is more fearfulfull than all adventures that can be made against it.

At this time it is said, that *Cadmus*, the Philosopher burnt himself, when he had lived threecore and thirteen years. Whether therein he followed the custom of his Country, being an *Indian*, or sought to prevent the grief, and incommode of elder age, is uncertain: but in this the Historians agree, that fore-seeing and fore-shewing *Alexander's* death, he promised to meet him shortly after at *Babylon*.

her death, he promised to meet him shortly after at *Babylon*.  
 From *Pasargada* he came to *Susa*, where he married *Statira*, *Darius* his eldest Daughter, giving her younger sister to his beloved *Ephthalion*, and fourscore other *Persian* Ladies to his Captains. There were six thousand guests invited to the feast: to each of which he gave a cup of gold. Here there came unto him three thousand young footsouldiers, out of his conquered Provinces; whereas the *Macedonians* greatly murmured. *Harpagus*, his Treasurer in *Babylon*, having lavishly consumed the monies in his keeping, got him going with five thousand Talents; and six thousand hired Souldiers; but he was re-  
 joined in *Greece*, and there slain. *Alexander* greatly rejoiced at the fidelity of the *Greeks*, whom *Harpagus* with the like force and treasures could not stir: yet he sent command-  
 ments that they should again receive their banished men; whereunto (fearfull of his indignation) all submitted themselves (except the *Athenians*) though they resolved, that it was a manifest preparation towards their bondage: After this there followed a  
 marvelous discontentment in his Army, because he had resolved to send into *Macedon* all his old Souldiers which could no longer endure the travel of Warre; and to keep  
 the rest in *Asia*. He used many Orations to pacifie them, but it was in vain during the tempest

tempest of their fury. But afterward, as Whales are drawn to the Land with a tempest, when they have tumbled a while, so are the unconsiderate multitude easily conducted when their first passions are evaporate. With such as were licenced to depose, he sent *Craterus*, to whom he gave the Lieutenantship of *Macedon*, *Thessaly*, and *Thraci*, which *Antipater* had held from his first departure out of *Europe*, who had beaten the rebellious *Greeks* in his absence, discharged the trust committed unto him with great fidelity, and sent him so many strong supplies into *Asia* from time to time. Certainly if *Alexander* had not taken counsell of his cups, he would have cast some better colour on this alteration, and given *Antipater* a stronger reason for his remove, than to have employed him in the conduction of a new supply to be brought him to *Babylon*, the Warre being now at an end. For *Antipater* saw nothing in this remove, but the Kings disposition to end him after *Parmenio* and the rest. With this *Antipater*, the King, notwithstanding his great courage, had no great appetite to grapple: Princes, though jealous, doe not stand in doubt of every man ill affected, though valiant: but there is a kind of kindly courage, compounded of hardiness and understanding, which is many times so fatal unto them, as they take leave both of Law and Religion, to free themselves thereof.

After he had sent for *Antipater*, he made a journey into *Media* to settle things there, where *Ephesus*, whom he favoured most of all men, dies. The King according to the greatness of his love, laments his losse, hangs his Physician, and bestowes upon his Monument twelve thousand talents: After which he returns to *Babylon*. Thither *Antipater* came not, but sent, and not to excuse himself, but to free himself. For if we believe *Curtius* (whom *Plutarch* and others gain-say). *Antipater* by his sons, *Cassander*, *Philip*, and *Tolla*, who waited on *Alexanders* cup, gave him poyson; *Thessalus* (who was of the conspiracie) having invited him to a drinking feast of purpose. For after he had taken a carouse in *Hercules* his cup, a draught of drink stronger than *Hercules* himself, he quitted the World within a few daies.

Certainly the Princes of the World have seldome found good, by making their Masters over-great, and thereby suspicious to themselves. For he that doth not acknowledge fidelity to be a debt, but is perswaded, that Kings ought to purchase it from their Vassals, will never please himself with the price given. The only restorative, indeed, that strengthens it, is the goodness and virtue of the Prince, & his liberality makes it more diligent, so as proportion and distance be observed. It may be that *Antipater*, having commanded two or three Kingdoms ten or twelve years, knew not how to play any other part, no more than *Cesar* did, after he had so long a time governed the *Gauls*, where he utterly forgot the art of obedience. A most cruell and ungratefull traitor *Antipater* was, if *Curtius* do not belie him: For though he feared some ill measure upon his remove (the Tragedies of *Parmenio*, *Clytus*, and *Calisthenes*, having bin so lately acted) yet he knew nothing to the contrary, but that the King had resolved to have given him some other great government in *Asia*: The old Souldiers thence returned, having per chance desired to be governed by *Craterus*, whom they had followed in all the former Warre.

## S. XXIII.

Of *Alexanders* person and qualities.

Howsoever it were, *Alexanders* former cruelties cannot be excused, no more than his vanitie to be esteemed the son of *Jupiter*, with his excessive delight in drink and drunkenness, which others make the cause of his fever and death. In that he languished his want of enterprising, and grieved to consider what he should do when he had conquered the World, *Augustus Caesar* found just cause to deride him, as if the well-governing of so many Nations and Kingdoms, as he had already conquered, could not have offered him matter more than abundant, to busie his brains withall. That he was both learned and a lover of learning, it cannot be doubted. Sir *Philip Bacon*, in his first book of the Advancement of Learning, hath proved it sufficiently. His liberality I know not how to praise, because it exceeded proportion. It is said, That when he gave a whole Citie to one of his servants, He, to whom it was given, did out of modesty refuse it, as disproportionate to his fortune: to whom *Alexander* replied, That he did not enquire what became him to accept, but the King to give: of which *Seneca* Animus

*animosa vox videtur & regia, cum sit stultissima. Nihil enim per se sequens decet. Refert quid, cui, quando, quare, ubi, &c. sine quibus facti ratio non constabit; habeatur per se animam & dignitatem proportionem, & cum sit ubique, virtutis modus, a quo peccat quod excedit, quam quod deficit; it seems a brave and Royal speech, whereas indeed it is very foolish. For nothing simply considered by it self befits a man. We must regard what, to whom, when, why, where, and the like; without which considerations no act can be approved. Let honour be proportioned unto the persons: for whereas vertue is ever limited by measure, the excess is as faulty as the defect.*

For his Person, it is very apparent, That he was as valiant as any man, a disposition taken by it self, not much to be admired; For I am resolved that he had ten thousand in his Army as daring as himself. Surely, if adventurous natures were to be commended simply, we should confound that vertue with the hardiness of Thieves, Ruffians, and mastiff Dogs. For certainly it is no way praise-worthy but in daring good things, and in the performance of those lawfull enterprises, in which we are employed for the service of our Kings and Common-weales.

If we compare this great Conquerour with other troublers of the world, who have bought their glory with so great destruction and effusion of blood, I think him far inferior to *Cesar*, & many other that lived after him, seeing he never undertook any warlike Nation, the naked *Sythians* excepted; nor was ever encountered with any Army of which he had not a most mastering advantage, both of Weapons & Commanders, every one of his Fathers old Captains by far exceeding the best of his Enemies. But it seems Fortune and Destiny (if we may use those termes) had found out and prepared for him, without any care of his own, both heaps of Men, that willingly offered their necks to the yoke; and Kingdomes that invited and called in their own Conquerours. For conclusion, we will agree with *Seneca*, who speaking of *Philip* the Father, and *Alexander* the Son, gives this judgement of them: *Quod non minores fuisse pestes mortalium, quam inundatio aqua planum omnino persusum est, quam conflagratio, qua magna pars animantium exaruit; They were, no lesse plagues to mankind, than an overflow of waters, drowning all the lands, or some burning drought, whereby a great part of living creatures are scorched up.*

## CHAP. III.

The reign of *Aridæus*.

## S. I.

Of the question about succession to *Alexander*.

THE death of *Alexander* left his Army (as *Demades* the Athenian then compared it) in such case, as was that monstrous Giant *polyphemus*, having lost his only eye. For that which is reported in fables of that great *Cyclops*, might well be verified of the *Macedonians*: their force was intolerable, but for want of good guidance uneffectual, and harmful chiefly to themselves. The causes whereof (under the divine ordinance) were partly the uncertainty of Title to succession in the Kingdome of *Macedon*, partly the stubborn pride of *Alexander* himself, who thinking none worthy to be his heir, did refuse to establish the right in any one, leaving every one to his own fortune; but especially the great ambition of his followers, who all had learned of their Master to suffer no equals; a lesson soon taught unto spirits reflecting upon their own worth when the reverence of a greater object faileth.

It hath formerly been shewed, That *Philip* (the Father of *Alexander*) governing in *Macedon* as Protector, assumed unto himself the Kingdome, not rendering it unto *Arrybas*, (the Son of his elder brother *Perdicas*) when he grew to mans estate; but only bestowing upon him in marriage a Daughter of his own: by which bond, and much more by his own proper strength, hee assured the Crown unto himself: *Arrybas* never attempting ought against *Philip*, though (with price of his life) he did against

Cccc

against

against *Alexander* in the beginning of his reign. Wherefore *Eurydice*, the sole issue of this marriage, ought in reason to have been acknowledged Queen after *Alexander*; as having better Title thereto, than either *He* or *Philip* had, when they lived, unless (peradventure) some Law of that Nation forbade the reign of Women. But the excellent vertue of these two Princes had utterly defaced the right of all Pretenders, not claiming from their own bodies: and so great were their conquests, that *Macedon* it self was (in regard of them) a very small Appendix, and no way deserving to be laid in ballance against the demand of their posterity, had they left any able to make challenge of the Royall seat.

*Alexander* having taken many wives, had issue by none of the principall of them. *Roxane* the Daughter of *Artabazus* a *Persian*, had born unto him a young Son: and *Roxane* the Daughter of *Oxyartes* (whom he had more solemnly married) was left by him great with child. But the baseness of the Mothers, and contempt of the conquered Nations, was generally alleged in Barre of Plea made for them, by some that would (perhaps) have wrought out their own ends, under the name of *Alexanders* children.

*Cleopatra* a sister of *Alexander*, widow to the King of *Epirus*, and *Aridem* his base brother (son to *Philip* by a Concubine of no account) who had married the Lady *Eurydice* before mentioned, were next in course. Of *Cleopatra* there was no speech, which may give suspicion, that either Law or Custome had made that sex incapable of the Sovereignty: *Aridem* (besides his bastardy) was neither for person nor quality fit to rule as King; yet upon him the election fell, but slowly, and (as happeneth often) for lack of a better: when the Counsellors having over-laboured their disagreeing was in devising what was best, were content for very weariness to take what comes next to hand.

*Ptolomy* (soon after King of *Egypt*) concurring with them who rejected all mention of the half-*Persian* brood, King *Alexanders* children, was of opinion, that the rule of all should be given to the Captains; that going for law which by the greater part of them should be decreed: so farre was he from acknowledging any one as true Heir to the Crown.

This *Ptolomy* was called the sonne of *Lagus*, but reputed of *Philip*: who having used the company of *Arifinot* *Ptolomee's* mother, delivered her in marriage to *Lagus*, being great with child. Therefore, whether it were so that he hoped well to work his own fortune out of those diffentions, which are incident unto the consultations of many ambitious men, equall in place, forcing them at length to redeem their quiet with subjection to one, deserving regard by his blood, and trust for his, even carriage; or whether he desired only to get a share to himself, which could not have come to passe, had all been given to one: plain enough it is, that he thought not on preferring *Aridem* before himself; and therefore gave such counsell as fitted his own and other mens purposes. Yea, this device of his took place indeed, though not in form as he had propounded it; For, it was in effect all one, to have assembled at *Alexanders* empty chair, as *Ptolomy* had conceived the form of their consultations, or to set in the chair such a King as *Aridem*, no wiser than the chair it self. Also the controversies arising were determined by the greater part of the Captains; by the greater part, if not in number, yet in puissance.

But as these counterfeit shewes of dissembling aspirers doe often take check by the plain-dealing of them who dare to go more directly to work: so was it like to have fared with *Ptolomy* and the rest, when *Arifinotus* another of the Captains, interpreted the very words of *Alexander*, saying, That he left his Kingdom to the worthiest, as designing *Perdiccus*, to whom (lying at the point of death) he delivered his ring. It seemed good in reason, that *Alexander* should be disposer of his own purchases: and those tokens of *Alexanders* purpose appeared plain enough, so long as no man would interpose another construction: every one being uncertain how the secret affections of the rest might be inclined. Many therefore, either out of their love, or because they would not be of the least, urged *Perdiccus* to take upon him the estate Royall. He was no stranger to the Royall blood; yet his birth gave him not such reputation, as the great favour of his dead King, with whom he had bin very inward, & that especially since the death of *Ephestum* (a powerful Minion) into whose place he was chosen. For his own worth he might well be commended, as a good man of War, and one that had given much proof of his private valour. But very surly he was; which quality (joynd with good fortune) carried a shew of Majesty:

Majesty: being checkt with misadventure, it was called by a true name, Pride; and rewarded with death.

In the present businesse a foolish over-weening did him as great harm, as it had been great happinesse to have succeeded *Alexander*. For, not content to have the acclamation of the Souldiers, approving the sentence of *Arifinotus*, he would needs counterfeit modesty; thinking that every one of the Princes would have intreated him to take the weighty burden of an Empire, which would be the lesse envious, the more solemnity he used in the acceptance. It is truly said, He that feigneth himself a Sheep, may chance to be eaten by a Wolf. *Melager*, (a man by nature envious, and bearing a particular hatred to *Perdiccus*) took advantage of his irresolute behaviour, and very bitterly envied against him. In conclusion, hee pronounced, That whosoever was Heir to the Crown, the Souldiers ought to be Heirs to the Treasure; and therefore he invited them, who were nothing slow, to share it. This disturbed all the Consultation. The Captains were left alone, farre enough from agreeing, and not able to have brought any conclusion to good effect without consent of the Souldiers, who greedy of spoyl, thronged about *Melager*.

## §. 11.

The Election of *Aridem*, which she troubles there-about arising; the first division of the Empire.

During this up-roar, mention was made of *Aridem* by some one, and entertained with good liking of many. untill at last it grew to the voyce of the Army. *Melager* having with-drawn himself tumultuously from the company of the Lords, was glad of so fair an occasion to make himself great: therefore hee produced *Aridem*, recommended him to the Souldiers, who called him by his Fathers name *Philip*; and brought him into the Palace, involving him in *Alexander's* robes, and proclaiming him King. Many of the Nobles withstood this election, but in vain: for they could not resist what course to follow, rejecting this. Only *Pythias*, a hot-headed man, took upon him to proclaim the Son of *Alexander* by *Roxane*, according to the counsell which *Arifinotus* first had given, appointing *Perdiccus* and *Acemius* his Protectors. But while he was not yett born, which made that attempt of *Pythias* vain. Finally, *Perdiccus* with six hundred men, and *Ptolomy* with the Kings Pages, took upon them to determine the place where *Alexander's* body lay: but the Army conducted by *Melager*, who carried the new King about whether he liked, easily brake in upon them, and enforced them to accept *Aridem* for their Sovereign Lord. Then by the intercession of the ancient Captains, a reconciliation was propounded and admitted; but on neither side faithfully sworn.

*Antiochus*, who was of Royall blood, a goodly Gentleman and valiant, issued out of *Antioch*, being followed by all the horse, which consisted (for the most part) of the Nobles: *Arifinotus* abode in the City (but standing upon his guard) that he might be ready to take the opportunity of any commotion that should happen among the infantry. The King, who was governed by *Melager's* command, or gave leave to have *Perdiccus* made away; which attempt succeeded like being neither secretly carried, nor committed to sure execution. Their coming was not unexpected; and they were by *Antiochus* rebuked with such gravity, that they departed howler than they came, being sorry for their had success. Upon the news of this attempt, the Camp was in some way, which the King seeking to pacify, wanted authority, as having newly got good supplies; and his proclamation made the worse. He said that no harm was done; but *Perdiccus* was alive; but their exclamations were against the tyrannous enterprise, and by *Antiochus* *Melager's* shewdowing the furies of his friends to the rage of the multitude, who were not appeased, untill the King by offering to resign his estate unto them, renewed out of their pity that favourable affection, which had moved them to set him up at the first.

*Perdiccus* having now joynd himself with *Leonatus*, kept the fields, intending to cut off all provision of victuals from the Citie. But after sundry Embassies passing between the



the King and the Nobles, (they requiring to have the Authors of sedition given up into their hands; the King, that *Meleager* might be joyned with *Leonatus* and *Perdiccas*, as a Third in government of the Army) things were compounded according to the Kings desire. *Meleager* should have done well to consider, That such men as had one day demanded his head, were not like the day following to give him a principall place among them without any new occasion offered, had not some purpose of treachery lurked under their great facility. Generall peace was renewed, and much love protested where little was intended. The face of the Court was the same which it had been in *Alexanders* time: but no longer now did the same heart give it life; and windy Spirits they were which moved in the arteries. False reports were given out by appointment of *Perdiccas*, tending to his own disgrace, but in such termes as might seem to have proceeded from *Meleager*: who finding part of the drift, but not all, took it as an injury done to himself; and (as desirous of a true friendship) desired of *Perdiccas*, that such authors of discord might be punished. *Perdiccas* (as a lover of peace) did well approve the motion, and therefore agreed that a generall Muster should be made, at which time the disturbers of the common quiet should receive their punishment (as was the manner for Souldiers offending) in presence of the Army. The plot was mischievously layd. Had *Meleager* given way to seditious rumours, he must needs have incurred the general hatred of all, as a sower of dissention, & thereby with a publike approbation might have bin cut off, as having often offended in that kind: his Prince being too weak a Patron. Now seeking redresse of these disorders, he hastened his own ruine, by a lesse formall, but more speedy way. This kind of Muster was very solemn, and practised with many ceremonies, as for cleansing of the Army. The Horse-men, the Elephants, the Macedonian foot, the Mercenaries were each according to their quality set in array, apart from others, as if they had bin of sundry sorts, met at adventure: which done, the manner was to skirmish (as by way of exercise) according to the direction of their severall Captains. But at that time the great battell of Macedonian Pikes, which they called the *Phalanx*, led by *Meleager*, was of purpose bestowed in a ground of disadvantage; and the countenance of the Horse and Elephants beginning to give charge upon them, was such, as discovered no jesting pastime nor good intent. Kings were alwayes wont to fight among the horse-men: of which custome *Perdiccas* made great use that day, to the utter confusion of his enemies. For *Antipater* was alwayes governed by him, which for the present had him in possession. Two or three dayes before, he sought the death of *Perdiccas* at the instigation of *Meleager*: now he rides with *Perdiccas* up and down about the foot-men, commanding them to deliver unto the death all such as *Perdiccas* required: Three hundred they were who were cast unto the Elephants, and by them slain, in the presence of the King (who should have defended them) and of their affrighted companions. But these three hundred were not the men whose punishment *Meleager* had expected: they were such as had followed him, when he disturbed the first consultation that was held about the election of a new King; and some of them his especial friends. Having therefore kept himself quiet a while, as unwilling to give offence to them which had the advantage; when he saw their proceedings tend very manifestly to his destruction, he fled away into a temple, which he found no Sanctuary: for thither they sent and slew him.

The Army being thus corrected, was led into the City, where a new Councell of the Princes was held, who finding what manner of man their King was, divided all the Provinces of the Empire among themselves; leaving to *Arideus* the office of a Visitor, and yet making *Perdiccas* his Protector, and Commander of the forces remaining with him. Then were the funerals of *Alexander* thought upon; whose body having bin seven dayes neglected, was opened, and embalmed by the Egyptians: no sign of poyson appearing, how great soever the suspicion might be. The charge of his buriall was committed to *Arideus*: one of the Captains, who was two years preparing of a great and costly hearse, making a stately Chariot in which the corps was laid; many coarces of his friends being layd in the ground before that of *Alexander* was bestowed in *Alexandria*, a City of his own building, in Egypt.

5. III.

## 5. III.

*The beginning of the Lamian Warre.*

Whilest these things were in doing, or presently after, *Antipater* and *Craterus*, two principall Noble-men, and inferiour to none of *Alexanders* followers, if not greater than any of the rest, were busied in Greece with a war, which the Athenians more bravely than wisely had begun in *Alexanders* life, but now did prosecute more boldly than before, upon the courage which they had taken by his death. *Alexander* not long before he died, had commanded that all the banished Greeks (few excepted) should be restored unto their former places. He knew the factious quality of the Grecian Estates, & therefore thought so to provide, that in every City he would have a sure party. But it fell out otherwise: For he lost the hearts of many more than he won by this proud injunction. His pleasure indeed was fulfilled; yet not without great murmuring of the whole Nation, as being against all order of Law, and a beginning of open tyranny. The Athenians greatly decayed in estate, but retaining more than was needfull of their ancient spirits, forbade the execution of this decree in their Dominions; so did also the *Ætians*, who were valiant men, and inhabited a Region well fortified by nature: yet neither of them took Armes, but seemed to bear themselves, as men that had done no more than they might well justify by reason: nevertheless to prevent the worst, the Athenians gave secret instructions to *Leophanes*, a Captain of theirs, willing him to levie an Army, but in his own name, and to keep it in a readinesse for their use. This was no hard thing for *Leophanes* to doe: great numbers of Greek Souldiers being lately returned from the Asian War in poor estate, as defrauded of their pay by the Capitaines. Of these he had gathered up eight thousand, when the certain newes were brought of *Alexanders* death: at which the City of Athens declared it self, and more honourably than wisely, proclaimed open War against the Macedonians for the liberty of Greece. Hereupon *Leophanes* drew in the *Ætians* and some other Estates, gave battell to the *Bacians*, who sided with *Antipater*, and overthrew them; growing so fast in reputation, and so strong in adherents, that *Antipater* (arming in all haste, yet suspecting his own strength) was faine to send into Asia to *Craterus* for succour.

Nothing is more vain than the feares and hopes of men, shunning or pursuing their destinies a farre off, which deceive all mortall wisdom, even when they seem near at hand. One month was scarcely past, since nothing so heavily burthened the thoughts of *Antipater* as the return of *Craterus* into Macedon; which he then feared as death, but now desired as the most likely assurance of his life. *Craterus*, whom *Alexander* held as of all men the most assured unto him, was sent into Macedon to convey home the old Souldiers (that was the pretence) & to succeed *Antipater* in the government of Macedon and Greece. The suspicions were strong that he had a privie charge to put *Antipater* to death: neither did that which was commonly published sound much better; which was, That *Antipater* should be sent unto the King, as Captain of the young Souldiers, newly to be levied in Europe. For *Alexander* was much incensed against him by his Mother *Olympias*: and would sometimes give out speeches, testifying his own jealousie and hatred of him; but yet he strove to smother it, which in a cruell Prince betokeneth little good. Few of *Alexanders* Lieutenants had escaped with life: most of them indeed were mean persons in regard of those who followed him in his Indian expedition, and were therefore (perhaps) removed to make place for their betters. But if the Kings rigour was such, as could find rebellious purposes (for so hee interpreted even lewd government) in base persons; little might *Antipater* hope for, who having sitten Vice-roy ten years in the strongest part of the Empire, was called away to the presence of so fell a Master, and the envie of a Court, wherein they had been his inferiours, which would now repine to see him their equal. Therefore whether his fear drew him to prevention, working first the Kings death by poyson, given by his son *Iolantus*, *Alexanders* Cup-bearer; or whether it brake not forth untill opportunity had changed it into the passion of revenge, which was cruelly performed by his son *Cassander*: great cause of much fear he had; which I note in this place, as the ground of effects to be produced in very few years.

At the present *Craterus* was sent for, and all the Capitaines of companies lying near, solicited

Cccc 3



solicited to make haste. Not without cause: For in *Macedon* there could not at that time be raised more than thirteen thousand foot, and six hundred horse; which *Muster* was of raw Souldiers, all the force of the Country being emptied into *Asia*. The *Thessalians* indeed who had long stood firm for *Philip & Alexander*, who also were the best horsemen of *Greece*, furnished him with very brave troops, that might have done great service, had their faith held out, which they changed for the liberty of *Greece*. With these forces did *Antipater* in *Thessaly* try the fortune of a battell with *Leosthenes*; rather (as may seem) fearing the increase of his enemies power, and rebellion of the *Greeks*, (were they not checkt at the first) than presuming on his strength. For *Leosthenes* had of *Athenians*, *Etolians*, and Mercenaries, two and twenty thousand foot, besides the assistance of many petty Signories, and of some *Illyrians* and *Thracians*: of horse he brought into the field about two thousand and five hundred; but over-strong he was that way also, when once the *Thessalians* had revolted unto him. So *Antipater* lost the day; and his losse was such, that he neither was able to keep the field, nor to make a safe retreat into his own Country: therefore he fled into the Town of *Lamia*, which was well fortified, and well provided of all things necessary to bear out a siege. Thither did *Leosthenes* follow him, present him battell again, and upon refusal close up the Town with earth-works, and a wall. There will we leave him for a while, travelling in the last honourable enterprise that ever was undertaken by that great City of *Athens*.

## S. IV.

How *Perdiccas* employed his Army.

**K**ing *Aridans* living under the rule of *Perdiccas*, when all the Princes were gone each to his own Province, kept a naked Court: all his greatnesse consisting in a bare title, supported by the strength of his Protector, who cared not for him otherwise than to make use of him. *Perdiccas* had no Province of his own peculiar, neither was he like to be welcome to any whom he should visit in his government. A stronger Army that any of the rest he had, which he might easily hope in that unsettled condition of things to make better worth to him than many Provinces could have bin. The better to accomplish his desires, he closely sought the marriage of *Cleopatra*, the sister of *Alexander*; yet about the same time he either married *Nicæa* the daughter of *Antipater*, or made such love to her as blinded their eyes, who did not somewhat narrowly search into his doings.

*Ariarathes* the *Cappadocian*, the second of that name, and tenth king of that Country, had continued faithfull to the *Persian* Empire as long as it stood: following the example of his forefathers, even from *Pharnaces* the first that reigned in *Cappadocia*, who married *Atossa* sister to the great *Cyrus*. Some of his Ancestors had (indeed) been oppressed by the *Persian*: but what Fortune took from them at one time, Vertue restored at another, and their faithfull Princes had much increased all. But now in the fatal Period of so great an Empire, with much wisdom, and (*Darius* being slain) with sufficient honour, he might have acknowledged the *Macedonian* in the *Persians* room. This he did not; neither did *Alexander* call him to account, being occupied with great cares. But *Perdiccas*, who had no greater business wherein to entertain his Army, found it expedient both for the honour of the Empire, to take that in-land Kingdome, surrounded with Provinces of the *Macedonian* conquest, and for his own particular, to have one opportune place of sure retreat, under the government of a stedfast friend. Therefore he entred *Cappadocia*, fought with *Ariarathes*, who drew into the field thirty thousand foot, and fifteen thousand horse (a strong Army, had it not encountered a stronger, and better trained) won the victory, and thereby the whole Kingdome. But with much cruelty did he use the victory: for having taken *Ariarathes* prisoner, with many others, he crucified him, and as many of his Kindred as he could light upon; and so delivered that Province to *Eumenes*, whom of all men living he trusted most.

Another part of his forces he had committed to *Pythion*, rather as to the most honourable of such as remained about him, than as to the most assured. *Pythion* was to subdue the *Greeks* rebelling in the high Countries of *Asia*. About twenty thousand foot, and three thousand horse they were, (all old Souldiers) who, planted in Colonies by *Alexander*, to bridle the barbarous nations, were soon weary of their unpleasant habitations, & the rude

people

people, among whom they lived: and therefore took advantage of the present troubles to seek unto themselves a better fortune. Against these *Pythion* went, more desirous to make them his own, than to destroy them: which intent of his, *Perdiccas* discovering, did both give him in charge to put all those Rebels to the sword, giving the spoyle of them to his Souldiers, and further enjoined it unto *Pythion's* Captaines (his own creatures) that they should see this commandement executed. These directions for use of the victory, might have proved needlesse; so uncertain was the victory itself. A Captain of the Rebels commanding over three thousand, corrupted by *Pythion*, did in the heat of the fight (which was very doubtfull) retire without necessity to a hill not farre off; so this dismayed the rest, and gave the day to *Pythion*: who being far enough from *Perdiccas*, offered composition to the vanquished, granting unto them their lives and liberty, under condition of laying down their armes; and hereupon he gave them his faith. Being master of these Companies, he might well have a good opinion of his own power: all power being then valued by strength in followers, when as none could vaunt himself as free Lord of any Territory. He had thirteen thousand foot, and eight thousand eight hundred horse, besides these new Companions, whom needlesse fear without great losse had caused to leave the field: but in true estimation all the greatnesse whereof *Pythion* might think himself assured, was (and soon appeared to be) inherent in *Perdiccas*. For by his command were ten thousand foot, and eight thousand horse, of those which followed *Pythion*, levied; the Rulers of the Provinces carefully obeying the letters of *Perdiccas*, by which they were enjoined to give assistance to that business: and by vertue of the precept given unto them by *Perdiccas*, did the *Macedonians* cut in pieces all those poor men who had yielded themselves; leaving *Pythion* as naked as he came forth to return unto his great Master.

Now was *Perdiccas* mighty above the mighty, and had fair leisure to pursue his hopes of marriage with *Cleopatra*, and thereby to make himself Lord of all: but this must be secretly carryed for fear of opposition. How it succeeded, will appear when the *Lamian* War taketh ending.

## S. V.

The proceesse of the *Lamian* War.

**W**e left *Antipater* hardly besieged, wanting means to free himself without succours from his friends in *Asia*. Those helps not appearing so soon as he expected, he came to parley with *Leosthenes*, and would have yielded unto any termes of reason, wherewith men possessed with hope of victory, do seldom limit their desires. *Leosthenes* willed him without further circumstance to submit himself to discretion. This was too much for him that had once commanded over them, who now required of him such a dishonourable composition. Wherefore knowing that the extreme, from which as yet he was farre enough, could bring no worse with it, *Antipater* prepared for the defence; and the other for winning the Town, which felt great want of victuals.

In this lingering War the *Etolians* (whether weary of sitting still at a siege, or having business which they pretended at home) took their leave, and returned into their own Country. Their departure left the trenches so thinly manned, that *Antipater* found means to fallly out upon his enemies to their great losse: for many were slain, and *Leosthenes* himself among them, ere he could be repulsed into the Town. Yet hereby the *Macedonians* were nothing relieved, their victuals wasted, and they were not strong enough to deal with the *Greeks* in open fight. *Craterus* was long in coming. *Lysimachus*, who was nearest at hand in *Thrace*, had work too much of his own, leading no more than four thousand foot, and two thousand horse, against *Seuthas* the *Thracian* King, who brought into the field above four times that number; and though *Lysimachus*, not without losse had gotten one victory, yet the enemy abounding in multitude, felt not the blow so much as might abate his courage. Therefore *Leonatus* was earnestly solicited by *Antipater's* friends, to make all haste to the rescue. He had the government of *Phrygia* the lesse, and was able to raise an Army of more than twenty thousand foot, and two thousand five hundred horse, whether levied out of his province, or appointed unto him out of the main Army, it is uncertain. Certain it is, that he was more willing



cease to procure, when the *Persians* were no longer able to give him recompence. Such as in tender contemplation of his death can endure no honourable, though true, mention of *Antipater*, may (if they can) beleeye *Lucian*, who tells us, That it was *Antipaters* purpose to have done him great honour. Sure it is, that he was a stedfast enemy to the *Macedonians*; therefore discretion required that he should be cut off.

The matters of *Albens* being thus ordered, the chief command was left in the hands of *Phocion*, a vertuous man, and lover of his Countrey, yet applying himself to the necessity of the times; by which commendations he had both at other times done the State much good, and now procured this peace, which (though grievous to free-men, yet favourable to the vanquished) he endeavoured carefully to preserve.

## S. VII.

*How Craterus and Antipater were drawn from their Aetolian wars into Asia. The grounds of the first civill war between the Macedonian Lords.*

**S**O *Antipater* with *Craterus* returned into *Macedonia*, where they strengthened their friendship with a new alliance; *Craterus* taking *Phila*, the Daughter of *Antipater*, to Wife.

Shortly after they went against the *Aetolians*, whose povertie was not so easily damaged; as the luxurious wealth of the more powerfull State of *Athens* had bin. Their Countrey was rough and mountainous, having many places of great fastness, into which they conveyed such of their goods as they most esteemed, and of their people, as were least fit for war: with the rest they fortified the strongest of their Cities, and so abode the coming of the *Macedonians*, whom they manfully resisted. With great obstinacie did the *Macedonians* contend against the difficulties of the places, which the *Aetolians* made good as long as their victuals held out. But when *Craterus* had shut up all passages, and utterly debarr'd them of relief, then were they put to a miserable choice; either to defend from their strong holds, and fight upon equal ground, with unequal numbers, or to endure the miseries of hunger and cold, against which they could make no long resistance, or to yeeld themselves to the *Macedonians*, who, incensed by the losse of many good Souldiers, were not like to leave so stubborn enemies in places which might give confidence to rebellion. In cases of extremity, much fineness of wit apprehending all circumstances of danger, commonly doth more hurt than a blunt consideration of that only, which at the present is in hand. These *Aetolians* did not as yet want meat; but their enemies daily molested them: wherefore as yet they thought upon nothing but fighting. Fortune was gracious to their courage. For such newes came out of *Asie* into the *Macedonian* Countrey, as made *Antipater* and *Craterus* think every hour a month, till they had rid their hands of these *Aetolians*, giving them whatsoever conditions they would ask: yet with purpose to call them to severe account; yea, to root them out of *Greece* by death, or by captivity; when once they should have settled the affairs of *Asia*; as they hoped and desired. But of mens purposes God is disposer: in whose high counsell it was ordained, that this poor Nation should continue a troublesome bar to the proceedings of *Macedon* and *Greece*, and (when time had ripened the next Monarchie) an open gate to let the *Roman* Conquerors into those and other Provinces. Likewise concerning the matters of *Asia*, the information intended by *Antipater* and *Craterus*, was so far from taking effect; that it served merely as an introduction to all the civill wars ensuing.

The grounds of the *Asiaticke* expedition, which did set the world in an uproar, were these. *Antipater* and *Craterus* were of *Alexanders* Captains the mightiest in reputation; The one, in regard of his ancient precdence, and the present rule which he bore in the parts of *Europe*. The other, as of all men the best beloved, and most respected, both of *Alexander* and of the whole Army. Next unto these had *Perdiccas* been; whom the advantage of his presence at the Kings death did make equall, or superiour, to either of these, if not to both together. The first intents of *Perdiccas* were, to have consorted with these two, and to have been with them a third partner in the government of all, to which purpose hee entertained the discourse of marriage with one of *Antipaters* Daughters. But feeling in short space the strength of that gale of wind which bore him up, he began to take wing and soar quite another way. *Antipater* was a very simple man,

yet served well enough to wear the title of that Majestic, whereof *Perdiccas* being Administrator, and hoping to become proprietary, the practice was more severe than had been in the dayes of *Alexander*: the desire to seem terrible, being very familiar with weak Princes, and their ambitious officers, who know no other means of preserving themselves from contempt, and of giving such a fiery lustre to their actions, as may dazzle the eyes of the beholders. How cruelly the poor *Greeks* in the higher *Asia* were all put to the sword; and how tyrannously the King and Princes of *Cappadocia* were crucified, hath already been shewed. The *Pisidians* were the next who felt the wrath of these counterfeit *Alexanders*. One City of theirs was utterly razed; the children sold for slaves, and all the rest massacred. The *Isaurians*; by this example grown desperate, when after two or three dayes triall they found themselves unable to continue the defence, lockt themselves into their houses, and set the Town on fire, into the flame whereof the young men did throw themselves, after that they had a while repelled the *Macedonians* from the walls.

These exploits being performed, the Army had no other work than to sift the ashes of the burnt City for gold and silver; but *Perdiccas* had businesse of greater importance, troubling his brains. Nothing was more contrary to his ends, than to sit still without employment, letting his Souldiers grow idle about him, whilst others grew great, and took deep root in their severall Provinces. He purposed therefore to transport his forces into *Europe*, under pretence of bringing the King into *Macedonia*, the seat of his Ancestors, and head of the Empire. The Kings presence would make the Offices of his Vice-Kings (during the time) actually voyd; *Antipater* with *Craterus* being once in case of private men, and only *Perdiccas* holding authority, the match with *Cleopatra* might easily be made. So should greatness meet with a good tide; and what more could be wished? Some impediment the power of *Ptolomy* might give, who held *Egypt* well fortified with men, but much better with love of the people; yet if the businesse prospered in *Macedonia*, like enough it was that either *Ptolomy* would follow of himself, or be driven to come to reason. *Antigonus* likewise then governing in *Phrygia*, a buisie-headed man, and affected to the side, was to be looked into and made away, for fear of further trouble.

So thought *Perdiccas*, and was deceived in so thinking. *Antigonus* was as good a man of War, as of deep judgement, as high a spirit, and as great undertaking, as any of *Alexanders* Captains. His employments had been lesse than some of theirs, which made him all the lesse respected. But his thoughts were as proud as theirs: for he valued himself by his own worth, not by the opinions of other men; with carefull attention had hee watched *Perdiccas*, and founded the depth of his purposes, which it was now high time to discover. For *Perdiccas* having with a jealous eye pryed into the demeanour of *Antigonus*, and finding him no way fit for his turn, caused him to be charged with such accusations, as might suffice to take away his life, especially by a Judge that sought his death. This device *Antigonus* would not seem to perceive, but prepared himself in shew to make answer, indeed, to make escape; which easily he did, putting himself and his Son *Demetrius* aboard of some *Athenian* Gallies, that carried him to *Antipater*, laden with such tidings as finished the *Aetolian* War before mentioned.

As the coming of *Antigonus* made *Craterus* and *Antipater* manifestly perceive their own danger: so his flight gave *Perdiccas* to understand that his intentions were layd open, and must now be justified by the sword. Therefore he prepared as fast as he could, not onely for defence, but (as having on his side the Kings name) to meet with them at home, who were nothing slack in providing to encounter him. *Ptolomy* being advertised of these proceedings, and considering how neerly they concerned him, sided with *Antipater*. To his government of *Egypt* he had annexed the Dominion of *Cyrene*, not without content of the chiefe Citizens; and now in the midst of these garboyles he celebrated the funeral of *Alexander* with great solemnity, purchasing thereby to himself much good will and many partakers, notwithstanding the terrible report of the Kings Army coming against him.

## S. VIII.

## VIII.

*Perdiccas his voyage into Egypt, and his death.*

**P**erdiccas; uncertain which way to bend his main power, at length resolved to go upon *Ptolemy*, leaving *Eumenes* to keep to his use, against *Craterus* and *Antipater*, the parts of *Asia* bordering upon *Europe*.

It may seem strange, that he did not rather make head against those who were to come out of *Greece* with a great number, and of more able men than *Ptolemy* could bring; perhaps he thought to make a quick end with *Ptolemy*, or believed that *Craterus* would not be ready for him soon enough. Sure it is, that he took a bad counsel, and made worse with ill handling.

*Ptolemy* by his sweet behaviour allured many to his party, without help of arts. *Perdiccas* contrariwise was full of insolence, which never failed to be rewarded with hatred, that is truly defined, An affection founded upon opinion of an unjust contempt. The whole storie of his proceedings in *Egypt* is not worth relation: for he did nothing of importance; but (as a full man) tired his followers, and wasted their hard enterprises without success. His most forcible attempt was upon a little Town called the *Camels Wall*: thither he marched by night, with more haste than good speed; for *Ptolemy* preventing him, did put himself into the place, where behaving himself not only as a good Commander, but as a stout Soldier, he gave the foil to *Perdiccas*, causing him to retire with losse, after a vehement, but vain, assault continued one whole day. The night following, *Perdiccas* made another journey, (which was his last) and came to the divisions of *Nilus*, over against *Memphis*. There with much difficulty he began to passe over his Armie into an Island, where he meant to incamp. The current was like the water deep, and hardly fordable. Wherefore he placed his Elephants above the passage, to break the violence of the stream, and his horse-men beneath it, to take such as were carried away by swiftnesse of water. A great part of his Armie being saved on the further bank, the channell began to wax deep, so that whereas the former companies had waded up to the chin, they who should have followed could find nothing. Whether this came by the rising of the water, or stirring away of the ground, the earth being broken with the feet of so many Men, Horses, & Elephants) no remedy was; but such as had passed must repasse again, as well as they might: for they were weak for the enimie, and could not be relieved by their fellows. With great confusion therefore they committed themselves to the river, wherein above two thousand of them perished; a thousand were devoured by Crocodiles, a miserable spectacle even to such were out of danger; such as were strong and could swim, recovered the Camp, many were carried down the stream, and driven to the contrary bank, whereby they fell into the hands of their enemies.

This misfortune exasperated the Souldiers against their Generall, giving liberty to their tongues, which long time had concealed the evill thoughts of their hearts. What they were thus murmuring, newes came from *Ptolemy*, which did set them in an uproar. *Ptolemy* had not only shewed much compassion on those who fell into his hands alive, but performed all rights of funerrall to the dead carcases, which the river had cast upon his side: and finally, sent their bones and ashes to be interred by their Kinsmen & Friends. This did not only move the common Souldiers, but made the Captains fit to mutinie, thinking it unreasonable to make warre upon so vertuous and honourable a person, to fulfill the pleasure of a Lordly ambitious man, using them like slaves. The faction growing strong, wanted only a head, which it quickly found. *Pythion* was that who inwardly hated *Perdiccas*, for the disgrace which he had suffered by his proceeding after the victory upon the rebellious *Greeks*. *Pythion* had lived in honourable place about *Alexander*; he was in the division of the Provinces made Governour of *Macedonia*, he had followed *Perdiccas*, and being in all things (the Protectorship excepted) equal to him, had nevertheless been scornfully used by him, which now he required. Drawing together a hundred of the Captains, and a good part of the Horse, which consisted of the Gentrie, (the footmen having declared themselves before) he entered the Tent of *Perdiccas*, where without further circumstance they all ranne upon him, and slew him. Such end had the proud mis-governing authoritie of *Perdiccas*. Hee might have lived

as great as any, could he have suffered any as great as himself; yea, peradventure master of all, had he not been too masterly over those which were already his.

The next day *Ptolemy* came into the Camp, where he was joyfully received; he exacted himself of things past, as not having been Author, or given cause of the warre, and was easily beleaved: the favour of the Armie being such toward him, that needs they would have made him Protector in the room of *Perdiccas*. But this hee refused, as was an Office fit for one that would seek to increase his greatness with his trouble. *Ptolemy* was well enough a steady; wherefore, for his own quiet he forbore to accept it, and for their well-defending of him, he procured that honourable charge to *Pythion*, and *Antipater*, the Captain, who having had some companks of Souldiers, to furnish with their attendance the solemnities of *Alexanders* Funerals, did with them adhere to him against *Perdiccas*.

In the middle of these busineses came newes of two great victories obtained by *Eumenes*, which newes, had they arrived two or three dayes sooner, had been entertained with joyfull acclamations; and would have given such reputation to *Perdiccas*, as had costed both his private maligners to continue his open flatterers, and his open enemies to have accepted any tolerable composition. But these good tidings coming in ill time, when death had stopped the ears which would have given them welcome, found had no entrance, as shall be shewed hereafter.

## IX.

*Victories of Eumenes in the lower Asia.*

**B**efore we proceed in the relation of things happening about the person of the King, it is meet that we speak of those busineses in the lower *Asia*, which were handled by *Eumenes* with notable dexterity, whilst *Perdiccas* was occupied in *Egyptian* Wars. *Alcetas* the brother of *Perdiccas*, and *Neoptolemus*, had received command from *Perdiccas* to be assistant to *Eumenes*, and to follow his directions. But *Alcetas* gave him answer that he would not, alleging the backwardnesse of his own to bear arms against so great a person as *Antipater*, and a man to much honoured as *Craterus*. *Neoptolemus* was content to make fair show, but inwardly he repined at the precedence given to *Eumenes*, as thinking himself the better man. *Eumenes* discovering through the disaffected looks of *Neoptolemus*, the mischief lurking in his heart, wisely dissembled with him, in hope to win him by gentle behaviour, and sweet language, that commonly he lost when bestowed upon arrogant creatures. Yet the better to fortifie himself, than might stand upon his own strength, he raised out of the Countreies under his jurisdiction about six thousand horse, giving many privileges to such as were serviceable, and training them well up. Not without great need. For when upon advertisement of the great preparations made by *Craterus* and *Antipater* (who had newly passed the *Hellaspont*) for the invasion of his Provinces, he willed *Neoptolemus* to come to him with all his power, *Neoptolemus* did (indeed) advance, but in hostile manner, though unprovoked, presented him battell. *Neoptolemus* had secretly covenanted with *Antipater* to lay open the way for him to the conquest of *Asia*, which now intending to perform, hee was heartily disappointed. For though his footmen, being all *Macedonians*, had much the better, and prevailed far upon *Eumenes* his battels; yet were his horse driven out of the field, and himself compelled, with a few of them, to run away, leaving naked the backs of his *Macedonian* foot-men to be charged by *Eumenes*, who forced them in such wise, that casting down their Pikes, they cryed for mercy, and gladly took their oath to doe him faithful service. *Antipater* and *Craterus* endeavoured with many goodly promises to draw *Eumenes* into their society, who contrariwise offered himself as a mean of reconciliation, between *Perdiccas* and *Craterus*, whom he dearly loved, professing himself his hatred to *Antipater*, and constant faith to the cause which he had undertaken to maintain.

Whilst these negotiations were on foot, *Neoptolemus* came with his broken crue to *Antipater*, and his Associates, visiting *Eumenes*, & calling him a Scribe (at which foolish thing they laughed) but extolling the vertue of *Craterus* (as well he might) with high commendations; assuring them, that if *Craterus* did but once appear, or that his voyce was but heard by any *Macedonian* in *Eumenes* his Camp, the victory was wonne; for they

they would all forthwith revolt unto him. Earnestly therefore he desired them to join him against *Eumenes*; and especially requested that *Craterus* might have the leading of the Army to be sent. Their own affections did easily lead them to condescend to his motion; and good hope there was, that the reputation of *Craterus* might prevail as much as the force which he drew along. For he had in the midst of *Alexander's* vanities, when others (imitating their King) betook themselves to the *Persian* fashions of garments and customs, retained the ancient *Macedonian* form of behaviour, and apparel, whereby he became very gracious with the common Soldiers, who beheld the new tricks of *Asia* with discontented eyes, as reproachfull and derogatory to the manners of their native Country. So *Antipater* took the way toward *Cilicia*, to hold *Perdiccas* at bay, and to joyn with *Ptolomy*. *Craterus* used great celerity, to have taken *Eumenes* revelling (as hee hoped) according to the common fashion of Captains, after a great victory. But he had a wary and well-adviced enemy to encounter, who kept good espiall upon him, and with much wisdom fore-saw all that was to be feared, and the means of prevention, which his courage did not fail to execute. *Eumenes* was not ignorant that *Craterus* was able to defeat him without battell, yea without stroke; him therefore he feared more than the Army following him: (yet the Army following him was such as much exceeded his own in foot-men, but was inferiour in horse-men) and thought it more uneasy to keep the *Macedonians* from revolting to him, than from knowing him. Hereupon he took in hand a strange piece of work, which desperation of all courtesie taught him, and wife managing prosperously accomplished. He gave out reports, that *Neoptolemus* was returned with such company as he could gather together, & had gotten *Phlegon* (a Captain of no great estimation, who lay not far off) to joyn with him. Having animated his men against *Neoptolemus*, whom he knew to be despised & hated among them, (as having bin vanquished by some of them, and forsaken others in plain field, whilst they valiantly fought in his quarrel) he took great care to keep them from receiving any intelligence of the enemies matters. Peremptorily he commanded that no messenger nor trumpet should be admitted, & not herewith satisfied, he placed against *Craterus* no one *Macedonian*, nor any other that much would have regarded him had he bin known: but *Thracians*, *Cappadocians* and *Persians*, under the leading of such, as thought more highly of none, than of *Perdiccas* and himself. To these also he gave in charge, that without speaking or hearkning to any word, they should run upon the enemy, and give him no leisure to say, or do any thing but fight. The directions which he gave to others, he did not fail to execute in his own person: but placing himself in the right wing of his battell, opposite to *Neoptolemus*, who (as he understood) conducted the left wing on the contrary side, he held the *Macedonians* arranged in good order, and ready to charge the enemy as soon as the distance would give leave. A rising piece of ground lay between them, which having ascended, the Armies discovered each other: but that of *Eumenes* every way prepared for the fight, the other wearied with long journeys, which over-hastily they had made, seeking the deceitfull issue of frivolous hopes. Then was it high time for *Craterus* (having failed in surprising them as enemies) to discover himself to his old friends, and fellow soldiers, of whom he could see none. *Phlegon* a *Tenidian*, & *Aribabacus* a *Persian*, had the leading of that side, who mindfull of their instructions, began to give upon him, with such countenance as told him his error, which to redeem, he bad his men fight, and redeem the day, and take the spoyle to themselves; but the Bear whose skin he felt, is not yet caught. The ground whereon the battell was fought gave most advantage to the horse, who encountered very roughly on all parts: especially about *Eumenes* and *Neoptolemus*, who as soon as they had discovered one another, could not contain themselves, but with great rage met body to body, & letting loose their bridles, grappled so violently together, that their horses ran from under them, leaving both of them tumbling on the ground. *Neoptolemus* rose first up, but *Eumenes* had his sword first drawn, wherewith he houghed the other, causing him to fall down & fight upon one knee. In this conflict he received many wounds, but *Neoptolemus* giving slight ones, took such as were deadly, by which he dyed in the place, and was there (being half dead, half alive) stripped by his mortal enemy, whose revellings he required, lying even at the last gasp, with one wound in the groin, dangerous had it not wanted force. The death of *Neoptolemus* caused his followers to run away upon the spur, and seek shelter behind the battels of their foot. They were nothing hotly pursued. For *Eumenes* pained himself to carry

succour

to his left wing, which he suspected much to be distressed, but found accompanie on the same fortune, that had assisted him when he fought in person. *Craterus* had bin some himself a while, and sustained the impression of *Arrianus* and *Arrianus* more courage than force, holding it nothing agreeable, with his honour, to retire and retreat the fight, when he was charged by men of his estimation or more. *Craterus* was not unlikely, that he might have either carried the day, or preserved himself by a brave adventure by giving ground, as the rest (when he and *Neoptolemus* were slain) did. But whilst he fought to preserve his reputation, he lost his life by the fall of his horse, or his falling from his horse, through a wound received upon which he was so much as he was trampled under foot by many that ran him over, and so perished unknown, till it was too late to know it. *Eumenes* coming to the place where he lay, made great lamentation, as having alwaies loved and honoured *Craterus*, of whose death he was now become the instrument. The vanquished Army entertained a treaty of peace with *Eumenes*, making shew of willingness to become his followers, but their intent was only to reach themselves, which (by his permission) having done they sold away by night, and fled toward *Antipater*.

This battell fought within ten dayes of the former, was so *Eumenes* more reputation than good will: for his own Soldiers took the death of *Craterus* heavily; and the Army lying further off were enraged with the news. But other matters there were which incited men against him, besides the death of *Craterus*, wherof it manifestly appeared, that he was as sorry as any that pretended greater heaviness. His Army wanted pay, this was a great fault, which he wisely amended by giving to them the spoyle of such Towns as were ill-affected to him. So he redeemed the love of his own men, who of their meer motion appointed unto him a Guard for defence of his person. Others were not so easie to be reconciled. They who had bin Traitors to *Perdiccas*, hated him for his faithfulness, as greatly, as they thought he would hate them for their faithfulness. He therefore found they any fairer way of excusing their late revolt, than by denying and condemning the side which they had forsaken. Wherfore they proclaimed *Eumenes* a Traitor, and condemned him to die, but it was an easier matter to give than execute, than to put in execution.

S. X.

Quarrel between Eurydice the Queen, and Python the Protector. Python resigns his office, into which Antipater is chosen.

**P**ython and *Arideus* being chosen Protectors of King *Arideus*, and the children of *Alexander*, took the way to *Asia* the less, conducting the Army through *Syria*. Of these two, *Python* was the greater in reputation, yet far too weak to sustain so important a charge. For *Eurydice* wife to King *Arideus*, was come to her husband, a Lady of a malicious spirit, well understanding what she was or should be, and thinking herself able to support the weight which fortune layd upon her foolish husband, being due to her own rule. Her Mother *Cyna*, sister to *Alexander*, by her Father King *Philip*, was married (as hath been shewed) to *Amyntas*, who was the right Heir to the Kingdom of *Macedon*, being the only son of King *Perdiccas*, *Philip's* elder brother.

This *Cyna* was a warlike woman, she had led Armies, and (as a true sister of *Alexander*) being hand to hand with *Caria* Queen of the *Phrygians*, a *Virago* like unto her self, had slain her. She brought up this *Eurydice* in the same unwomanly Art of Warre, who now among the Soldiers began to put in practice the rudiments of her education, to the small contentment of *Python*, that could not brook her too curious interference in his charge. Whether it were so, that *Python* had some purpose to advance the son of *Alexander* by *Roxane*, to the Kingdom, (as once he had sought to do so) or whether the Queen did suspect him of some such intent, or whether only desire of rule caused her to quarrell with him, quarrell she did, which disturbed the proceeding against *Eumenes*. The Army having shaken off such a rank-rider as *Perdiccas*, would not afterward be reigned with a twined thread. *Python* bearing himself upon his office, took upon him to give directions in the Kings name, which the Queen did sometimes countermand, using the same name, with more authority, and better liking of the Soldiers.

Dddd 1

Python,



seeing this, would needs resign his office, whether upon wearinesse of the contentions daily growing, or on purpose to bring the Queen into envie, it is uncertain. Perhaps he thought, that now being the far worthiest man in the Camp, he should be intrusted to retain the place, and have his authority confirmed, or (as might be meant) were it but for want of a fit Successor. *Eurydice* was nothing sorry at this counsel, but she thought to manage the affairs of the Empire at her own will, being freed from the troublesome assistance of a Protector. But the souldiers disappointed both her & him of their contrary expectations, choosing *Antipater*, the only powerful man of the Army, then living, into the room of *Pythion*. Here the Queen entered exceedingly, and began to deal earnestly with the *Macedonians* that they should acknowledge no Lord save only the King their Sovereign. Yet she failed of her purpose, being hindered (as may seem) by three things: the apparent weaknesse of her husband, the growth of *Antigonus*' children, who (though born of our landish women) were bred in the *Macedonian* Camp; and the mightinesse of *Antipater*, who commanding a great Army year by year, arrived in few daies at the Camp, and enforced *Eurydice* to hold her self content. *Antipater* was of such power, that he needed not to work by any close devices, as *Perdiccas* had done; he had no concurrents; all the Governors of Provinces that remained alive, acknowledged him their better; yea many of them he displaced out of hand, putting others in their rooms. This done, he took the King, Queen, and Princes along with him into *Macedonia*, leaving *Antigonus* General of the Royall Army: to whom for his good services done, and to be done against *Eumenes*, he gave the rule of *Susiana*, besides his former Provinces; and committed into his hands the government of *Asia* during that War.

## S. XI.

*Antigonus Lieutenant of Asia, wins a battell of Eumenes, and besiegeth him in Nora: He conquers other followers of Perdiccas.*

Here begins the greatness of *Antigonus*, whose power in few years overgrowing the rest, wanted little of spreading it self over the whole Monarchie. He was to make War upon *Eumenes*, *Alcetes* the brother, and *Attalus* the brother-in-law to *Perdiccas*: work enough to keep his Army employed in the publique service, till such time as he might find occasion to make use of it in his own business. The first of these which he undertook was *Eumenes*, with whom *Alcetes* and *Attalus* refused to joyn, having unreasonably contended with him in time of common danger about the chief place. *Eumenes* had an Army strong in number, courage, and all needfull provisions, but obedient only at discretion. Therefore *Antigonus* tryed all ways of corrupting his Souldiers, tempting first the whole Army with letters: which practice failing by the cunning of *Eumenes* (who made shew as if he himself had scattered abroad those letters to try the faith of his men) he dealt apart with such Captains as he thought most easie to be won. Of these Captains one rebelled, breaking out too hastily before any help was near him, yet looking so carelessly to himself, that he and his were surprised; when he thought his enemies far off. Another follower of *Eumenes* (or rather of good fortune, which he thought now to be in company with *Antigonus*) kept his treachery secret, reserving it for the time of execution. Upon confidence of the treason which this false man *Apollonides* had undertaken, *Antigonus* presented battell to *Eumenes*, in the heart whereof *Apollonides*, General of the horse to *Eumenes*, fled over to the contrary side, with such as he could get to follow him: but was closely followed by some, whose company he desired not. *Eumenes* perceiving the irrecoverable mischief which this traitorous practice had brought upon him, pursued the villain, & cut him off before he could thrust himself into the troups of *Antigonus*, and boast of his treachery. This was some comfort to *Eumenes* in the losse of that battell, which disabled him utterly to keep the field, & left it very hard for him to make a safe retreat. Yet one thing he did which much amazed his enemies, and (though a matter of small importance) caused *Antigonus* himself to admire his high resolution. It was held no small part of the victory to get possession of the dead bodies: *Eumenes*, whilst *Antigonus* held him in chase, turned out of the way, and fetching a compass, returned to the place where the battell had been fought, there he burned (according to the manner of the time) the bodies of his own men,

and interred the bones and ashes of the Captains and common Souldiers apart, raising up heaps of earth as mountains over them, and so went his way. As this bold adventure by the *Macedonians* (returned to their Camp) great admiration of his brave spirit: so the newes which *Menander* (who was set to look unto their carriages) brought and published among them, enticed them to love him as their honourable friend. He had found *Menander* in an open Plain, carelesse, as after an assured victory, and laden with the spoyles of many Nations, the rewards of their long service; all which he might have taken: but fearing lest such a purchase should prove a heavy burden to him, whose chief hope consisted in swift expedition, he gave secret warning to *Menander* to flee to the mountains, whilst he detained his men (whom authority could not have restrained) by this sleight, setting them to bait their horses. The *Macedonians* extolled him for this courtesie, as a noble Gentleman, that had forborn when it lay in his power to flit them out of all their wealth, and make their children slaves, and to ravish their wives: but *Antigonus* told them, that he had not forborn to do this out of any good will to them; but out of meer subtilty had avoyded those precious fetters, which would have hindered his speedy flight. He told them true. For *Eumenes* did not only think all carriages to be over-burdenome, but the number of his men to be more troubleosome than available in his intended course. Wherefore he sent them from him as fast as he could, willing them to shift for themselves, and retaining only five hundred horse, and two hundred foot. When he had wearied *Antigonus* a while in following him up and down, he came to *Nora*: where again keeping no more about him than necessitie required to make good the place, he lovingly dismissed all the rest. *Nora* was a little fortresse in the borders of *Lycania* and *Cappadocia*, so strongly situated, that it seemed impregnable, and so well victualled and stored with all necessaries, that it might hold out for many years. Thither did *Antigonus* follow him, with more desire to make him his friend, than to vanquish him in War. To this purpose he entertained parley with him, but in vain. For whereas *Antigonus* offered him pardon and his love; *Eumenes* required restitution of his Provinces, which could not be granted without *Antipaters* consent. Then was *Nora* closed up; where *Antigonus* leaving sufficient strength for continuance of the siege, took his journey into *Pisidia*, against *Alcetes* and *Attalus*, with whom he made short work. He came upon them unexpected, and seized on passages, which wanted not men, but such a Captain as *Eumenes* to have defended them. *Alcetes* and *Attalus*, as they had been too secure before his coming, so were they too adventurous, in fighting at the first sight, upon all disadvantages: and their folly was attended with suitable event. *Attalus* with many principall Captains was taken; *Alcetes* fled to the City of *Termessus*, where the love of the younger sort toward him was so vehement, that stopping their ears against all persuasions of the ancient men, they needs would hazard their lives and their Country in his defence. Yet this availed him nothing: for the Governors of the Town having secretly compounded with *Antigonus*, caused the young men to fall out; and using the time of advantage, they with their servants did set upon *Alcetes*, who unable to resist, slew himself. His dead body was conveyed to *Antigonus*, and by him barbarously torn, was cast forth without buriall. When *Antigonus* was gone, the young men interred the carcass with solemn funerals, having once been minded to set on fire their own town in revenge of his death. Such favour had he purchased with courteous liberality: but to make an able General, one vertue, how great soever, is insufficient.

## S. XII.

*Ptolomie wins Syria and Phoenicia. The death of Antipater.*

Whilst these things were in doing, the rest of the Princes lay idle, rather seeking to enjoy their Governments for the present, than to confirm or enlarge them. Only *Ptolomie* looking abroad; wan all *Syria* and *Phenicia*: a nation of great importance, but not remarkable for any circumstance in the managing. He sent a Lieutenant with an Army who quickly took *Laomedon* prisoner, that ruled there by appointment of *Antipater*, and formerly of *Perdiccas*; but (as may seem) without any great strength of Souldiers, far from assistants, and vainly relying upon the authority which had given him that Province, and was now occupied with greater cares, than with seeking to maintain him in his Office.



*Antipater* was old and sickly, desirous of rest, and therefore contented to let *Antigonus* pursue the dispatch of those businesses in *Asia*. He had with him *Polysperchon*, one of the most ancient of *Alexanders* Captains, that had lately suppressed a dangerous insurrection of the *Ætolians*, which Nation had stirred in the quarrell of *Perdiccas*, prevailing far at the first, but soon losing all that they had gained, whilst *Antipater* was abroad in his *Cilician* expedition. In this *Polysperchon* *Antipater* did repose great confidence; so far forth, that (suspecting the youth of his own Son *Cassander* of insufficiency in so great a charge) he bequeathed unto him on his death-bed the government of *Macedon* and *Greece*, together with his office of Protectorship. So *Antipater* died, being fourscore years old, having alwayes travelled in the great affairs of mighty Princes, with such reputation, that *Alexander* in all his greatness was jealous of him, and the successors of *Alexander* did either quietly give place unto him, or were unfortunate in making oppositions. In his private qualities he was a subtle man, temperate, frugal, and of a Philosophicall behaviour, not unlearned, as having been Scholar to *Aristotle*, and written some Histories. He had been much molested by *Olympias*, *Alexanders* mother, whom after the death of her Son, he compelled to abstain from coming into *Macedonia*, or entermeddling in matters of Estate: yea, at his own death he gave especiall direction, that no woman should be permitted to deal in the administration of the Empire. But this precept was soon forgotten; and yet ere long, by sorrowfull experience approved to have been sound and good.

## §. XIII.

Of *Polysperchon*, who succeeded unto *Antipater* in the Protectorship. The insurrection of *Cassander* against him.

*Polysperchon* was very skilfull in the Art of Warre, having long time been Apprentice in that occupation; other qualities, requisite in so high an Office as hee under-went, either Nature had not given to him, or Time had robbed him of them. He managed his business more formally than wisely, as a man of a second wit, fitter to assist, than command in chief. At the first entrance upon the stage, he called to counsell all his friends, wherein for weighty considerations (as they who weighed not the contrary reasons held them) the Queen *Olympias* was revoked out of *Epyrus* into *Macedon*, that the presence of *Alexanders* mother might countenance and strengthen their proceedings. For, the condition of the times requiring, that the Governours of Provinces abroad should keep greater Armies, than were needfull or easie to be retained about the person of the King in *Macedonia*; it seemed expedient, that the face of the Court should be filled with all Majesty, that might give authority to the Injunctions from thence proceeding, and by an awfull regard contain within the limited bounds of dutie such as could not by force have been kept in order, being strong, and lying too farre off.

Such care was taken for prevention of imaginary dangers and out of sight, whilst present mischiefs lay unregarded in their bosomes. *Cassander*, the Sonne of *Antipater*, was not able to discover that great sufficiency in *Polysperchon*, for which his father had reposed in him so much confidence: neither could he discern such odds in the quality of himself and *Polysperchon*, as was in their fortune. Hee was left Captain of one thousand; which Office by practice of those times was of more importance, than the title now seems to imply. Hee should thereby have been as Camp-master, or Lieutenant general to the other: a place no way satisfying his ambition, that thought himself the better man. Therefore hee began to examine his own power, and compare with the forces likely to oppose him. All that had relied on his father, were his own assured, especially such as commanded the Garrisons bestowed in the principall Cities of *Greece*. The like hope was of the Magistrates, and others of principall authority, in those Common-weals, whose forms had been corrected by *Antipater*, that they would follow the side, and draw in many partakers: it concerned these men in their own particular to adhere unto the Captains, by whom their faction was up-held; and by whom the rascall multitude, covetous of re-gaining the tyrannous power which they had formerly exercised over the principall Citizens, were kept in order, obeying their betters perforce. Besides all these helps, *Cassander* had the secret love of Queen *Eurydice*,

*Eurydice*, who had in private rendred him such curtesie, as was due onely to her husband. But neither the Queens favour, nor all his other possibilities, gave him confidence to break out into open rebellion; because he saw *Polysperchon* much revered among the *Macedonians*, and strong enough to suppress him, before he could have made head. Therefore he made shew of following his pleasures in the Countrey, and calling many of his friends about him, under pretence of hunting, advised with them upon the safest course, and most free from all suspicion. The necessitie was apparent of raising an Armie, before the business was set on foot; and to doe this, opportunitie presented him with fair means. *Ptolomie* had by fine force, without any commission, annexed *Syria* to his government of *Egypt* and *Cyrene*: this was too much either for the King to trust him with, or for him to part with. *Antigonus* upon the first newes of *Antipaters* death, began to lay hold upon all that he could get, in such sort, that he manifestly discovered his intent of making himself Lord of all *Asia*. These two therefore stood in need of a civill war; which *Cassander* well noted, & presumed withall, That the friendship which had passed between his father and them, would avail him somewhat. Whereupon he secretly dispatched messengers to them both; and within a little while conveyed himself on a sudden over the *Helaspont*, that he might in person advance the business with greater speed. Much perswasion is needlesse in winning a man to what he desireth. *Antigonus* coveting nothing more, than to find *Polysperchon* weak, by raising some commotion in *Greece*. Yet (as formalities must not be neglected) *Cassander* did very earnestly presse him, by the memorie of his Father, and all requisite conjurations, to assist him in this enterprize; telling him, that *Ptolomie* was ready to declare for them, and urging him to a speedy dispatch. *Antigonus* on the other side repaid him with the same coin, saying, That for his own sake, and his dead Fathers, whom he had very dearly loved, he would not fail to give him all manner of succour. Having thus feasted one another with words, they were nothing slack in preparing the common means, leading to their severall ends.

## §. XIV.

The unworthy courses held by *Polysperchon*, for the keeping down of *Cassander*.

Great necessitie there was of timely provision. For, *Polysperchon* needed no other instructions to inform him of *Cassanders* drift, than the newes of his departure. He was not ignorant of the ready disposition, which might be found in *Antigonus* and *Ptolomie*, to the strengthening of rebellion; and well he knew that one principall hope of *Cassander* was reposed in the confidence of such as ruled in the *Grecian* Estate. Therefore (loving to work circumspectly) he called another Councell, where-in it was concluded, That the Popular form of Government should be erected in all the Cities of *Greece*; the Garrisons withdrawn; and that all Magistrates and principall Men, into whose hands *Antipater* had committed the supreme authorities, should forthwith be either slain or banished. This was a sure way to diminish the number of *Cassanders* friends, and to raise up many enemies to him in all quarters. Yet hereby was disclosed both an unthankfull nature in *Polysperchon*, and a factious malice in his adherents. For, how could he be excused of extreme ingratitude, that for hatred of the son went about to dishonour the Fathers actions, whose onely bountie had enabled him to doe it? Or what could be faid in their defence, who sought to destroy many worthe men, friends to the State, by whom the *Greeks* were held restrained from stirring against the *Macedonians*? and in opposition to their private enemy, gave the rule of things to base Companions, and such as naturally malign'd the Empire? But as in mans body, through sinewes newly issuing from one branch, a finger is more vexed by inflammation of his next neighbour, than by any distemper in the contrary hand: so in bodies politique, the humours of men, subdivided in faction, are more enraged by the disagreeable qualities of such as curb them in their neereft purposes, than they are exasperated by the generall opposition of such as are divided from them in the main trunk. Hereby it comes to passe, that contrary religions are invited to help against neighbour Princes; bordering enemies drawn-in, to the part in civill warres; and ancient hatred called to counsell against injurious friends. Of this fault nature is not guiltie; shee hath taught the art to offer it self unto manifest losse in defence of the head: They are depraved affections

affections, which render men sensible of their own particular, and forgetfull of the more generall good, for which they were created.

The decree, whereby the *Greeks* were presented with a vain shew of libertie, ran under the Kings name; but so, as one might easily discern, that *Polysperchon* had guided his pen. For the main point was, That they should follow such directions, as *Polysperchon* gave, and treat with him about all difficulties. In the rest it contained such a deal of kindnesse, as proceeding on a sudden from those who had kept them in hard subjection, might well appear to have some other root than the pretended good will; and was of itself too base and unfit for a King to use toward his conquered Subjects, and often subdued Rebels.

## s. XV.

*Of the great commotions raised in Athens by Polysperchons decree. The death of Phocion.*

**N**Evertheless the *Athenians* with immoderate joy entertained this happy-seeming Proclamation, and fought how to put it in execution without further delay. But *Nicanor*, Captain of the Garrison, which kept one of their Havens, called *Munychia*, in the lower part of the Town, would needs take longer time of deliberation, than was pleasing to their hasty desires.

*Nicanor*, as a trustie follower of *Cassander*, was by him shifted into the place, and *Munichus* (that was Captain there before) discharged, when *Antipater* was newly dead. His coming to *Athens* was no way gratefull to the Citizens, who soon after hearing the newes of *Antipater*'s death, cried out upon *Phocion*, saying, That he had sufficient intelligence of that accident, and might, by advertising them in due time, have put into their hands a fair opportunitie of thrusting out the *Macedonians*. But these exclamations argued no more than a desire to shake off the *Macedonian* yoke. Farre more grievously would they have been offended, had they known the instructions which *Cassander* had given to *Nicanor*, and his resolution to follow them. It was concluded, That he should not onely retain *Munychia*, any injunction to the contrary notwithstanding; but that hee should find means to thrust some companies into *Piræus*, and fortifie that also, which was the principall haven, against the high-town. How to accomplish this, he rather wanted some reasonable pretence, than good abilitie. But the *Athenians* were not long in giving him sufficient cause to do that, which he would have done without any cause given. They desired him to come unto their Councell, assembled in the *Piræus*, there to consider of the Kings Proclamation: whither upon *Phocion*'s word and safe conduct he came, and earnestly pressed them to hold with *Cassander* in the war which was ready to break forth. Contrariwise, they urged him first of all, to make them masters of their own, which how to use, they might consult afterwards. Each of them refusing to condescend unto the others demand; the *Athenians* (who did alwayes measure justice by profit, yet seldom thrived by that course) practised with *Dercillus*, a Captain following *Polysperchon*, and then lying neer at hand; that he should enter into the Town, and take *Nicanor* prisoner. But *Phocion*, who then governed in *Athens*, a man very unlike to the rest of the Citizens, being nothing pleased with such a trick of politick dishonestie, did quietly suffer him to depart and save himself.

*Nicanor* hereupon began to devise upon taking *Piræus*; not as following now the project of *Cassander*, but prosecuting his own just revenge. He levied as many Souldiers as he could, and drew them closely into *Munychia*; which done, he issued into *Piræus*, took it, and intrenched himself therein, to the exceeding discomfort of the *Athenians*, who lately impatient of his keeping the one Haven, saw him now Master of both. *Alexander*, the son of *Polysperchon*, came thither shortly after with an Armie. Then were the Citizens in great hope of recovering all, and addressed themselves unto him; who made fair shewes, intending meer mischief, which they perceived not, being blinded with the vain Epistles of his Father, and of *Olympias* the old Queen, *Olympias*, taking upon her to command, before the durst well adventure to return into *Macedon*, had peremptorily charged *Nicanor* to restore to the *Athenians* the places which hee held: but hee would first consider more of the matter. *Polysperchon* had further ordained, that the Isle of *Samos* should be rendred unto them: a goodly offer, had it accorded with his power and

and meaning. He was (indeed) so far from purposing to let them have *Samos*, that as yet he did not thoroughly intend to let them have themselves. The commoditie of their Havens was such, as he would rather get into his own hands, than leave in theirs; yet rather wished in theirs, than in *Cassander*'s. His Son *Alexander*, not ignorant of this, made fair shew to the *Athenians*, and spent much labour in communing with *Nicanor*, but suffered not them; for whom he seemed to labour, to intermeddle with the businesse. Hereupon the Citizens grew jealous, and the displeasure they conceived against him, they poured out upon *Phocion*, depriving him of his office. This was done with much tumult; banished men and strangers thrusting themselves into the assembly of the Citizens, who so distracted with sundrie passions, growing out of their present misfortunes, thought every one that best could inveigh against things past, a most likely man to find some remedie for the evil threatening them. In this hurly-burly was *Alexander* devising how he might come to some good point of composition with *Nicanor*, & held much privie conference with him, which he could not so secretly carry, but that his negotiation was discovered, whereby the uproare in the Town was so far increased, that *Phocion* with many of his friends were accused, and driven to seek safeguard of their lives by flight. So they came to *Alexander*, who entertained them gently, and gave them his letters of commendation to his Father, desiring him to take them into his protection.

*Polysperchon* was in the Countrey of *Phociæ*, ready to enter with an Armie into *Attica*; Thither came *Phocion* with his companions, hoping well that the letters which they brought, and their own deserts; (having alwayes been friends to the *Macedonians*, as far as the good of their Countrey gave leave) should be enough to get patronage to their intromission. Besides all this, *Dinarchus* a *Corinthian*, *Polysperchon*'s familiar friend, went along with them (in an evil hour) who promised to himself and them great favour, by means of his acquaintance. But *Polysperchon* was an unstable man; very earnest in what he took in hand; yet, either for want of judgement in following them, or of honesty in taking the best of them, easily changing his intended courses, and doing things by the leaves, which made him commonly fail of good success. For fear of *Cassander* he had offered wonderfull kindnesse to the *Athenians*, this had caused them to love him: out of their love hee gathered hope of deceiving them, which made him to change his mind, and seek how to get into his own hands those keys, with which *Cassander* held them fast lockt up; finding himself disappointed of this purpose, and suspected as a false dishonourable man, he stood wavering between the contrary allurments of profit and reputation. To keep the *Athenians* perforce at his devotion, would indeed have done well; but the effecting of this began to grow desperate; and many Towns of importance in *Greece* began to cast their eyes upon his proceeding in that action. Wherefore hee thought it the wisest way to redeem their good opinion, by giving all contentment unto the popular faction, which was then grown to be Master of that Citie. And in good time for this purpose were the *Athenian* Embassadors come, treading (as one may say) upon *Phocion*'s heels, whom they were sent to accuse. These had so lemm audience given to them in the Kings presence, who was attended by many great Lords, and for ostentations sake was glorified with all exteriour shewes of Majestie; yet all too little to change *Arideus* into *Alexander*: for he did nothing there, but either laugh or chafe, as he saw others doe. For beginning of the businesse, *Polysperchon* commanded that *Dinarchus* should be tortured and slain. This was enough to testifie his heartie affection to the Commonaltie of *Athens*, in that he spared not his old acquaintance for their sake; whose Embassadors he then bad to speak. When their errand was done, and answer to it made by the accused, who had no indifferent hearing, *Phocion* and the rest were pronounced guilty of treason; but to give sentence, and doe the execution upon them, was (for honours sake) referred unto the Citie of *Athens*, because they were Burgeses. Then were they sent away to *Athens*; where the recall multitude, not suffering them to speak for themselves, condemned them to dye. So they perished being innocent. But the death of *Phocion* being very conspicuous, made the fortune of the rest to be of the lesse regard. Five and fortie times had he been chosen Governour of the Citie, never suing for the place, but sent for when he was absent, so well was his integritie known, and so highly valued; even of such as were no pretenders to the same vertue. He was a good Commander in War, wherein though his actions were not very great, yet were they of good importance, and

and never unfortunate. Never did the Citee repent of having followed his counsell: nor any private man of having trusted his word. *Philip of Macedon* highly esteemed him, so, and much more did *Alexander*, who (besides other signs of his love) sent him two hundred talents of silver, and offered to bestow upon him of four Cities in *Asia* any one which he would choose. But *Phocion* refused these and other gifts, howsoever importunately thrust upon him, resting well contented with his honest poverty: wherein he lived above fourscore years, and then was compelled by the unjust judgment of wicked men, to drink that poison, which by just judgment of the righteous God, is infected the Citee of *Athens*, as from that day forwards it never brought forth any worthy man resembling the vertue of their Ancestors.

## s. XVI.

of *Polyperchon* his vain expedition against *Cassander*.

Nor long after these things were done, *Cassander*, with such forces as *Antigonus* lent him, entered into *Piræus*; which newes drew *Polyperchon* headlong into *Attica*, with a great Armie, but so ill victualled, that he was faine to depart without any thing done. Only he had given some impediment to the enemy, who, not contented with defending what he held, began to look out, and make new purchases abroad. Finding therefore himself unable to drive *Cassander* out of *Athens*, he left his son *Alexander*, with such number of men as exceeded not the proportion of victuals, to withstand his further incroaching. The greatest part of his Armie he carried into *Peloponnesus*, to make the Countrie sure to himself, wherein *Cassander* had many Friends.

His doings in *Peloponnesus* were such, as they had been in other parts of *Greece*. First he began to fight with Edicts, restoring the Democratic, or Popular form of government. He commanded that the principall Citizens, that had by *Antipater* been made Rulers, should be either slain, or driven into exile. This decree took immediate effect in most places: The vulgar sort being very readie to seal the Charter of their freedom, and authority, with the blood of those who had kept them in subjection. Yet many Cities there were, which delighted in the rule of the chief Citizens; and many which wished well to *Cassander*, especially they of *Megalopolis*, on whom *Polyperchon* meant to inflict an exemplary punishment of disobedience to him, which he termed Rebellion. *Megalopolis* had in it fifteen thousand serviceable men, well furnished of necessaries, and resolved to endure the worst. And need there was of such resolution. For *Polyperchon* coming thither with all his power, did so much, that he overthrew, by a Mint, three of their Bulwarks, and all the space of wall between them. But the Defendants manfully repelled the *Macedonians* which came up to the breach; and at the same time with great labour they raised up an inner wall, to bear out the next assault. The Assailants having failed to carry the Town at the first attempt, took much pain to clear the ground, and make fair way for their Elephants, whose violence was likely to overthrow all that came in their way. But the Townsmen perceiving their drift, prepared boords driven through with long nails, which they used as gal-throps, bestowing them sleightly covered, with the points upwards, in the way by which the beasts were to passe. Neither did they let any to encounter them in front, but appointed certain light-armed men to beat upon their sides with arrows and Darts, as they were instructed by some that had learned the manner of that fight in the *Asian Wars*. Of these provisions they made happy use in the next assault. For, by them were the Elephants (wherein the enemy chiefly trusted) either sorely hurt, or driven back upon the *Macedonians*, whom they trampled under feet. *Polyperchon* came as ill furnished for long abode to *Megalopolis* as before to *Athens*. Therefore being neither able to dispatch the businesse quickly, nor to take such leisure as was requisite, he forsook the siege, with some losse, and much dishonour, leaving some part of his Army to lye before the Town for his credit.

After this he sent *Clitus*, his Admirall, to Sea, to joyn with *Arideus* that was come out of *Phrygia*, and to cut off all succour which might come to the enemy out of *Asia*. *Cassander* also sent his whole fleet under *Nicanor*, who taking along with him some ships of *Antigonus*, came to the *Propontis*, where he fought with *Clitus*, and was beaten. But *Antigonus* hearing of the over-throw, gathered together the ships that were escaped,

and manning them very well, sent out *Nicanor* again, assuring him of the victorie, as well he might. For he sent out sufficient numbers of light-armed men, whom he caused to be wafted over the streights in small Vessels by night; these before day-light setting upon *Clitus*, drove his men, that lay securely on the land, head-long into their ships; in which tumult *Nicanor* arriving did assail them so lustily, that few or none escaped him.

This losse at Sea, together with his bad successe by Land, brought *Polyperchon* into great contempt. He had a good facultie in penning bloudie decrees, but when the execution was referred to his own sword, he could find the matter more difficult. Wherefore the *Athenians*, perceiving that he had left them to shift for themselves, and was not able to give them protection against the enemy which lay in their bosomes, came to agreement with *Cassander*; accepting a governour of his appointment; and restoring all things to the same state wherein *Antipater* had left them. The like inclination to the partie of *Cassander*, was found in very many Cities of *Greece*, which daily and willingly revolted unto him, as to an industrious man, and likely to prevail in the end. Thus was the whole Countrie set in a combustion, uncapable to be quenched; which presented unto *Antigonus* an opportunitie, that he neglected not, of making himself Lord of *Asia*.

## s. XVII.

*Antigonus* seeks to make himself an absolute Lord: and thereupon treats with *Eumenes*, who disappointeth him, *Phrygia* and *Lydia* won by *Antigonus*.

*Antigonus* had in *Antipaters* life-time a firm resolution, to make unto himself the utmost benefit that he might of the Armie committed to his charge. And in fair season for advancement of his purposes came the newes of *Antipaters* death; even then, when all the businesse in *Pisidia* was dispatched, and no more employment for the Armie remaining, save onely the continuance of the siege of *Nora*, a small thing of it self, but as hard as a greater matter; and requiring few men, but much time; when time of all things was most precious. *Eumenes* lay in that Fort of *Nora*, able to make the place good, and hoping that the mutabilitie, to which the present Estate was manifestly subject, would in continuance of some years (which he might abide) work more for him, than his enemies in that space could work against him. His most fear was, that for want of exercise in that narrow Castle, his men & hories might grow sickly and unserviceable: which made him to practise many devices of keeping them in health and lustie. But when he had continued shut up in this manner about a year, his hopes came to good passe, and he was eased of his cares by *Antigonus* himself, whose forces held him besieged.

*Antigonus* knowing the great sufficiencie of *Eumenes*, and considering his fidelity shewed unto *Perdiccas*, thought that he could not find in all the world a fitter man than him, to employ in managing those high designs, wherein he doubted not that he should be withstood by the mightiest Princes of the Empire. He sent therefore to *Eumenes* by one that was friend to them both, acquainting him with some part of his intent, and promising to make him a better Lord than ever he had bin, and the next man to himself, if things fell out as he desired: in regard whereof he required only his friendship, & therupon sent him an oath to take, which done, he might at his good pleasure issue safely out of *Nora*, and enjoy his perfect libertie. *Eumenes* perusing the form of the oath, did perceive the meaning of *Antigonus*; which was, rather to make him his follower than his fellow. For whereas in a few words, it mentioned the King and Princes of the bloud, rather to keep the *Decorum*, than upon any loyall intent; the binding words and sum of all were such, as tied him fast only to *Antigonus*, omitting all reservation of duty to the King or any other. This he liked not, holding it unseemly to become a sworn man to him, with whom he had fought for the macterie; and being assured that his voluntarie assistance, which way soever he gave, would be more acceptable, and farre more honourable, than the course propounded. Yet would he not therefore break off the negotiation, and wait for some better occasion of enlargement, which might perhaps be long in coming: but seeming to be well agreed with *Antigonus*, he prepared to give up his Hold and depart. As for the oath itself, when he came to take it, he made shew of dislike, in that it was not solemn enough

enough for such personages as they were, who could not be too ceremonious in testifying their allegiance. The Macedonians which lay incamped before *Nora*, liked his words, and gave him leave to put in *Olympias*, and the children of *Alexander*, binding himself to them and their adherents, as well as to *Antigonus*; and so he departed.

*Antigonus* had taken upon him, as soon as he came down to the Sea-side, to remove some of the Governours of the Provinces, behaving himself according to the authority which he had received of *Antipater*, to exercise in the time of war. Neither did he want sufficient pretence whereby to justify his proceedings. For if *Polysperchon* might lawfully hold the Protectorship, which the old man dying on his death-bed bequeathed unto him, as a legacie, without consent of the Princes and Souldiers; why might not he himself as well retain the Lieutenantship of *Asia*, that was granted unto him for the generall good of the State, in presence of the whole Armie, by the King, and by *Antipater*, who had power to ordain what should seem convenient whilst he lived, not to dispose of things that should happen after his death? To give a fair colour to his ambition, this was enough: if any were not herewith satisfied, hee had three thousand footmen, ten thousand horse, and thirtie Elephants in a readinesse to answer them.

The first that perceived his drift, and provided to resist him, was *Aridæus* Governor of *Phrygia*; who fortified the Towns of his own Province, and fought to have won *Cyzicus*, a fair Haven Town, and seated very conveniently for him, but was faine to goe away without it. Hereupon *Antigonus* took occasion to command him out of the countrey. *Aridæus* was so far from obeying him; that he sent forces to relieve *Eumenes*. Nevertheless finding that he was unable of himself to make long resistance, he took such companies as he could draw along with him, and so passed over into *Europe*, to complain at the Court. The like fortune had *Clitus*, who ruled in *Lydia*, and fought the like remedy of his fortune, with some hope at the first (for both of them were entertained with very good words) which quickly vanished, and grew desperate, when they were beaten at Sea, as hath already been declared.

## §. XVIII.

*Antigonus pursues Eumenes. Eumenes having authority from the Court, raiseth great war against Antigonus in defence of the Royall house.*

*Antigonus* having thus gotten into his hands all, or most of all *Asia* the lesse, was able to have entred *Macedon*, and seized upon the Court; which that he forbore to doe, it proceeded (as may seem) from some of these reasons. It would have bred as much jealousy in *Cassander*, as fear in *Polysperchon*, which might have brought them to termes of reconciliation; It would ask more time than he could spare; and the envie which followed the Protectorship was such, as he that had power enough without the office, ought rather to shun, than to pursue. Besides all this, it was manifest that *Eumenes* would not only refuse to take his part, but would make war upon him in defence of the Royall house, to which it was found that *Antigonus* did not stand well-affected. Against him therefore he bent his course, and with an Armie of twenty thousand foot, and four thousand horse, made great haste toward *Cilicia*, hoping to suppress him before he should be able to make head.

*Eumenes* was one of those few that continued faithfull to their dead master, which being well known in the Court, he had commission sent unto him from thence to raise an Armie, and make war upon *Antigonus*, taking of the Kings treasure as much as he should need. Other letters also there were directed to all the Governours of Provinces, requiring them to give assistance to *Eumenes*, and be ordered by his direction: especially to the Captains of the old Souldiers, called the *Argyrasides*, or silver-shielded bands, commandment was given to be at his appointment. He had of his old followers gathered together two thousand foot, and five hundred horse, before this authority was given him: but now he purposed with all the strength which he could make, to fight with *Antigonus* in defence of the Royall blood. *Olympias* had written to him, desiring him to bring help to her, and her Nephew the son of *Alexander*; and in the mean time to give her his advice in that which *Polysperchon* required of her: for she was desirous

desirous to return into *Macedon*, but suspected his ambition, as not contained within lawfull bounds. *Eumenes* therefore counselled her to remain in *Epirus*, till such time as he could bring the warre to a good issue; which done, he promised that his faith and care should not be wanting to the seed of *Alexander*.

Strange it is to consider, that in all the Empire, scarce any one could be found among the Noble-men, in whom *Alexander's* mother, wives, and children, might repose firm confidence, saving onely this *Eumenes*, a stranger to the *Macedonian* blood, born at *Cardia*, a Citie of *Thrace*. His reputation was no more than his own vertue had made it; his followers obeyed at their own discretion; and compelled he was to travail as farre as *Persia*, to gather together an Armie sufficient to resist the enemies that pursued his heels.

## §. XIX.

*How the Princes of Macedon stood affected mutually. Olympias takes Aridæus and Eurydice, whom she cruelly puts to death.*

Now, forasmuch as in this present Warre all the Rulers of the Provinces did entermiddle; and great alterations happened, not onely in the parts of *Asia*, but *Macedon* it self, which brought a new face unto the State, by the extirpation of the Royall house of *Philip* and *Alexander*: I hold it convenient in this place, before we enter into the particulars of the Warre it self, to shew briefly how the great ones did mutually stand affected; and by what passions they were drawn into those courses, which over-threw most of them; and out of their ruines built the greatness of a few: as likewise to what extremity the faction brake out in *Macedon* it self; about the main controversie of the title to the Crown, whereupon all other quarrels were or should have been depending.

*Aridæus* the King, being simple and fearfull, did onely what he was bidden.

*Polysperchon*, desirous to continue long in Office, had a purpose to advance the son of *Alexander* by *Romane* to the Kingdome, and become Governour to a King of his own making.

*Eurydice* the Queen discovering plainly this intent, and meaning nothing lesse than to let her husband serve as a Stale, keeping the throne warm till another were grown old enough to fit in it, grew acquainted with *Cassander*, who hated the memory of *Alexander*, and was therefore the fitter for her turn.

*Cassander* held fresh in mind the danger wherein his family had been through *Alexander's* malice, together with the indignity offered to himself by *Alexander*, who knocked his head against a wall for deriding one that adored him after the *Persian* manner. The displeasure hereof, and the pleasure which he took in the amorous Queen, made him to resolve, both to suppress the lineage which he hated, and to maintain his beloved mistress, either by supporting her weak husband; or by taking her to be his own wife.

The rest of the Lords held it a thing indifferent who reigned over all, so as they might reign in their severall Countries, and establish their authority in such wise, that it might not be taken from them.

Among these, *Ptolemy* and *Antigonus* were well enough already, if their ambition would have suffered them to see it.

*Bitho* and *Seleucus* lying farre off; and being strong, had some good hope to encroach upon their neighbours. Against these, *Ptolemy*, and some others, which much adoe hardly made resistance, untill such time as *Eumenes* came to them; who propounded unto himself great matters; which he lived not to accomplish.

*Olympias* the old Queen (as it is common with step-dames) hated the children of her husband by his other wives. It was thought that she had given poison to *Aridæus*, which failing to take away his life, had much impaired both his body and wits. Now she considering, that *Eumenes* was too full of boldness to come home so soon as she wished that he should; and that *Cassander* daily prevailed in *Greece*; thought it the best way to joyne with *Polysperchon*; & set up, as King, her Nephew *Alexander*, the son of *Romane*, removing *Aridæus* before *Cassander* were able to defend him. To this intent the persuaded men among her kindred in *Epirus*; and so took her way towards *Polysperchon*,

who joyning with her, entred into *Macedon*.

*Eurydice* hearing these news, wrote very earnestly to *Cassander*, praying him to set aside all other businesse, and come to succour her. She her self by entreaty, gifts, and promises, drew to her partie as many of the *Macedonians* as she could, until she thought her own side strong enough; and then taking her husband with her, went boldly forth against *Olympias*, and the Traitor *Polyperchon*.

These two Queens met armed, as if the matter should have been determined by their own hands, which ended without any stroke Stricken, by the revolt of those who followed *Eurydice*. For as soon as the *Macedonians* beheld *Olympias*; calling to mind her former Estate, and the victorious reigns of her husband and son, they refused to lift any weapon against her. *Eurydice* finding her self thus forsaken, fled towards *Amphipolis*, but was intercepted, and made prisoner with her husband.

*Olympias* having obtained this victory without blood, thought that all things would succeed as easily, and upon the same considerations for which they had refused to bear Arms against her, the *Macedonians* would not stick to maintain her, whatsoever her proceedings were. Having therefore shut up *Aridaus* and his wife in a close room, where they could scarce turn round, she fed them through a little hole, till after a while it came in her head (for fear lest the people should have commiseration of him; that had reigned almost six years and a half) to put them to death. So she delivered *Aridaus* to some barbarous *Thracians*; who took away his life by cruell torments: to *Eurydice* she sent a sword, a halter, and a cup of poison, willing her to choose the instrument of her own death; who praying that the like presents might one day be sent to *Olympias*, yielded her neck to the halter, having spent her last curses not in vain. *Nicanor* the brother of *Cassander*, and a hundred the chief of his friends, did *Olympias* then choose out, all whom she commanded to be slain. His brother *Iolans* that was already dead and buried, she accused of poison given to *Alexander*, and thereupon caused his Tomb to be thrown down, and his bones to be scattered abroad. The *Macedonians* wondering at this fury, began to condemn themselves, and the folly of *Polyperchon*, who had, quite contrary to *Antipaters* charge given on his death bed, called this outrageous woman to the government of the Empire.

## §. XX.

*How Cassander was revenged upon Olympias.*

## †. I.

*The great expedition of Cassander. Olympias shuts her self into Pydna, where Cassander besieged her. Bacides King of Epirus, coming to succour Olympias, is forsaken, and banished by his own Subjects.*

**C**assander at that time lay before *Tegea*, in *Peloponnesus*; whither when all these tidings were brought to him, he never staid to take the City, nor to give order for the State of things in that Countrey, (though *Alexander* the son of *Polyperchon* were there with an Armie) but compounding with them of *Tegea*, he willed his associats to look to themselves as well as they could, till his return; and so in all haste he took his journey towards *Macedon*, carried headlong with the greedie desire of just revenge. The *Aetolians* had taken the *Streights of Thermopylae*, in favour of the Queen & *Polyperchon*, to hinder his passage, but he, not willing to mispend any time in dealing with them, got together as many ships as he could, great and small, with which he transported his Army into *Thessaly*. There he divided his companies, appointing some under *Callas*, a subtile Captain, to hold *Polyperchon* busied, who then lay incamped neere to *Perrebia*; with the rest he marched directly against *Olympias*. She, having once prevailed by the respect given to her dignity, took more care how to appear Majestically, than to make her self strong. To this end she made a solemn progresse to *Pydna*, a Sea-town, and well fenced, having in her company all the flower of the Court, especially the great Ladies, among whom was *Roxane*, and her young son *Alexander*; but to the great *Alexander*, by his grand-mothers designment: who during his minority kept

kept his Sovereign power in her own hands. But all this pomp served to little use, against the violence of the enemy, that soon presented himself before the walls; only it fed the besieged with a vain hope of succour, that would from all parts arrive, to rescue persons of their quality. And hereof there soon appeared fair likelihood, which as soon vanished, and went away in smoke.

For *Bacides* King of *Epirus*, made great haste to bring succour to *Olympias* his cousin, with whom *Deodamia* his daughter was also shut up. Nevertheless, his Subjects were nothing forward in his expedition; but finding certain passages taken in the way by *Cassanders* men, they called upon him to retire, & quit the enterprise. The Kings importunities urging them to proceed, and the obstinate refusal of the Army, brake out at length into such terms, that when he had raged in vain against the multitude, his authority, with which he thought to have prevailed upon them, was by them taken from him, and he compelled to forsake his Kingdom, and to wander up and down in forrain Countries a banished man, his people joyning with the enemy, against whom he had led them forth to war.

*Pydna* in the mean time was closed up streightly, both by Sea and Land, so that neither any could issue out of the City, nor any relief be conveyed into it, but it held out as long as any food was left, no memorable service being done there, whilst great actions were managed abroad.

## †. II.

*A continuation of Olympias her story. Polyperchon defeated. Extreme famine in Pydna. Olympias yields to Cassander.*

**N**ow, though order of time require it, that we should rehearse the doings of *Eumenes* & *Antigonus* in this place, leaving *Olympias* yet a while to the hour of her destiny; which grows the faster upon her, because she may discern it coming; yet that we may not be compelled to interrupt the course of our narration, by inserting her Tragedie in the midst of things not manifestly coherent with it; we will here (as elsewhere we have done, and elsewhere must) continue to an end one History, that we may not be therewith distracted, when we shall come to the relation of another. All the hope of the besieged, remaining in *Polyperchon*, was in like manner disappointed, as their former trust had bin, which was reposed in the succours of the *Epirus*. For *Callas*, who was sent against him, found the means to corrupt the greatest part of his Army with money, leaving him within a little while to slenderly accompanied, that he was fit for no other businesse of war, than a swift retreat. When *famine* had so far prevailed in the City, that the horses were killed as a precious food, many men, feeding on the dead carcases of their fellows, and lawdust being given up the Elephants for provender; some of the Souldiers obtaining the Queens leave, (who could not deny it) others, without asking leave, yielded themselves to the enemy, and were by him gently relieved, and sent abroad into the Country. The news of the Queens affairs, dispersed by these men, did so affright her well-willers, that such as had reserved themselves to the event, came in space, and submitted them to *Cassander*. At length, when the mortality was so great in the Town, that the living were even poisoned with the noysome sent of the dead, *Olympias* bethought her self of stealing away by Sea in a Galley that she had; wherewith her successe was as bad as in the rest. For God had appointed this Town, by her chosen as a place of refuge, to be unto her as a house of torment, and a Jail, out of which she should not be delivered; but, unto an evil death. Being therefore utterly broken with miserie, which daily afflicted her, and the other Ladies, unaccustomed to so wretched a kind of life, she offered composition, & with much labor hardly obtained of *Cassander* (who having fetcht her Gally out of the Haven, accounted himself as good as master of her body) a grant of her own life. Immediately upon her apprehension, *Pella*, the chief City of the Kingdome, was yielded to *Cassander*. *Amphipolis* did stand out: for *Arifonius* (to whom *Olympias* had given charge of such forces as were left abroad in the Country, taking courage from the successe of some petty services wherein he had prevailed) began to promise himself great unlikelihoods. But *Olympias*, to win *Cassanders* favour, very earnestly required him up-



on his faith to her, that he should give it up. He did so; and presently after was killed by his private enemies, that were set on by *Cassander*, who partly hated him upon old respects, partly doubted him, as a man likely to seek innovation.

### III.

*The death of Olympias, and her conditions.*

**V**hen *Olympias* had now heard sorrowfull tidings of all her friends, she herself was called into question, & accused in an assembly of the *Macedonians*, for the murders (they were so styled in her affliction, which in time of prosperity she called justice) by her committed. There was she (being not heard, nor called to speak) condemned to die. The site was commenced and prosecuted against her, by the kindred of those whom she had slain. But it was at *Cassander's* instigation, who (to hasten the execution) sent her word, that he would furnish her with a ship, and other necessaries, to save her self by flight: which when she refused, saying, that she would plead for her self, and tell her own tale; he dissembled no longer, but sent unto her such men, as hated her most, who took away her miserable life. She was daughter, and sister, unto two Kings of *Epirus*; wife, and mother, unto two the mightiest Kings, of that, or many other ages; a stout Lady, and of unprovable chastity; but her ambition was boundless, her hatred unappealable, and her fury in revenge most unwomanly. Her perverse conditions made her husband seek other wives and Concubines, which caused her to hate both him, and them. She was thought privy to her husbands death; after which, very cruelly she slew his late wife *Gleopatra*, having first murdered one of her two children in her arms, and with a beastly fury broiled the other alive in fire, in a copper basin. For these things, her son *Alexander* (otherwise loving her well) forbade her to meddle in the government of *Macedon*. But God more severe unto cruel Tyrants, than only to hinder them of their wis, permitted her to live, and fulfill the rest of her wickedness, (which was his justice upon the adulteries of *Philip*; and the oppression done by him and others;) after all which, He rewarded her malice, by returning it upon her own head.

### IV.

*Cassander celebrates the funeral of Arideus and Eurydice; and seeks to make himself King of Macedon.*

**A**fter her death, *Cassander* gave honourable buriall to *Arideus* and *Eurydice*, among their Progenitors, Kings of *Macedon*. And looking further into his own possibilities of greatness, he married the Lady *Thessalonica*, whom he had taken at *Pydna*, being the daughter of King *Philip*, by another of his wives; that by her he might have some title to the Crown. For the same end he committed *Boxane*, and her young son to close prison, removing thereby some part of his impediment. And, the better to increase his fame, and purchase love, built a City, called by his own name *Cassandria*, that soon grew to be very great and powerfull. He re-edified likewise *Thebes* in *Greece*, and restored it unto the old inhabitants, after it had lain twenty years waste, being utterly razed by *Alexander*. By these means, especially by the restoration of *Thebes*, whereunto all *Greece* voluntarily contributed, he grew so strong, that few remained enemies unto him; and they, with much labour, hardly could resist him. Leaving him therefore daily prevailing in *Greece*, we will return to them, who contended in *Asia*, for less titles, but larger Provinces, with greater forces.

### CHAP. III.

*Of the great Lordship which ANTIGONUS got in Asia.*

#### S. I.

*The journey of Eumenes into Persia. His wife dealing with those that joyned with him.*



**E**UMENES, having joyned unto his company the *Argyraspides*, made haste into the Eastern parts, to take possession of those Countries, according to his commission, and strengthen himself against *Antigonus*. He took his journey through *Callosyria* and *Phoenicia*, hoping to reclaim those Provinces, usurped with the rest of *Syria* (as hath been shewed) by *Seleucus*, to the Kings obedience. But to effect this, his hand of his passing toward was too great, his Army too little, and the headiness of the people, to submit their due obedience, none at all. Besides all which impediments, one inconvenience troubled him in all his proceedings, making them the less effectual. The Captains of the *Argyraspides* were so forward, that they scorned to repair to him, attribute his directions; and, their loyalty was so unsure, that he might more easily have dealt with open soldiers. It was not expedient, that he, being General, should weaken his authority by touching them; rather lay it in his power to keep them in order by punishment. Therefore he resigned that *Alexander* had appointed unto him, in a desert place for their meeting, namely, in a high position, where an empty throne was placed; as if *Alexander* himself had been present at their consultations. Thus he freed himself from their vain pride; but of their faith he could have no assurance. Yet when *Phrygians* requested them, and *Antigonus* bribed them to forsake him, they continued (though not without considering of the matter) to take his part. So he marched on, sending before him the Kings warrant; which *Pytho* and *Seleucus* refused to obey; not as rejecting the Kings authority; but excepting the person of *Eumenes*, as a man condemned to die by the *Macedonian* Army, for the death of *Craerus*. *Eumenes*, knowing well that he was not to rely upon their assistance, who stood otherwise affected than his affairs required, and were not to be dealt with by persuasion, sought passage by strong hand through the Country of *Libani*, in such wise that *Seleucus*, having in vain assailed to hinder him, by opening the fluxes of *Euphrates*, was glad at length to grant him friendly way, as desirous to be rid of him. Thus he came to *Persepolis* and the rest of the Eastern Lords, who were glad of his company, because of the differences between *Pytho*, *Seleucus*, and themselves. Yet the contention about superiority grew very hot among them, every one finding matter enough to feed his own humour of self-worthiness. But the former device of assembling in one pavilion, made all quiet, the conclusion ever being first to follow that which *Eumenes* propounded, who was both wisest in giving advice, and best able to reward, by means of the authority given him, to take what he pleased of the Kings treasures. By these means he won to himself many of those, who had most power to do good or hurt.

#### S. II.

*How Antigonus, coming to set upon Eumenes, was driven off with loss.*

**A**NTIGONUS, hearing that *Eumenes* lay in the Province of *Susa*, had an earnest desire to follow him, and drive him further from the Kings treasures, which were kept there. To which end, as soon as he had made himself strong enough, he removed out of *Mesopotamia*, where he had wintered; and taking to him *Pytho* and *Seleucus*, with their men, he marched directly against the enemies, with intent to give them battell. *Eumenes* had fortified the Castle of *Susa*, and was retired back toward *Persia*, keeping the River of *Tigris* between him and his pursuers. The passages of the River were well guarded, and good espial kept upon *Antigonus*, to observe which way he took.



Before he came to *Tigris* it self, he was to passe over *Coprates*, a great River, and not foorthable, which he sought to doe by small vessels, whereof he had no great store. A great part of his Army had gotten over, when *Eumenes*, who kept a bridge upon *Tigris*, came with a thousand horse, and four thousand foot, to see their demeanour: and finding them out of order, charged them, brake them, and drave them headlong back into *Coprates*, wherein most of them were drowned; very few escaping with life, except four thousand that yielded themselves prisoners in sight of *Antigonus*, that was not able to relieve them. This losse made *Antigonus* glad to fall off; and the heat of that Countre in the dog-dayes, breeding diseases in his Army, by which many perished, caused him to remove as farre as into *Media*. So he took *Pythou* with him; (leaving *Selencus* to besiege the Castle of *Susa*) and seeking to go the neereft way, passed through savage Nations, that continually vexing him with skirmishes, slew great numbers of his men; before he could arrive in *Media*, with his troups that were quite heart-broken.

## S. III.

Of *Eumenes* his cunning. A battell between him and *Antigonus*.

**A**fter his departure, *Eumenes* with his associates fell into consultation; about the remainder of their business. Fain he would have had them to enter upon those Provinces, which *Antigonus* had left behind him; to which also the Captains of the *Argyresides* or *Silvershields* were very inclinable, as desiring to draw neerer to *Greece*. But *Pentestes*, and the rest, whose dominions lay in the high Countries, had more care of their own particular Estates, and would needs march Eastward. This carried it, for the Army was not strong enough to divide it self into parts.

When they came into *Persia*, *Pentestes*, ruling there, sealed them royally, and fought by all means to win the Souldiers love to himself. *Eumenes* perceiving whereunto those doings tended, suffered him a while to keep good cheer, till the time of war drew neerer. Then did he feign an Epistle, directed, as from *Orantes* Governor of *Armenia*, to *Pentestes* himself: The purport whereof was, that *Olympius* had vanquished *Cassander*, and late over a great Army under *Polyperchon*, to joyn with *Eumenes*. These newes, as they filled the Camp with vain joy, so they wrought in all mens minds a great willingness to obey *Eumenes*, by whom was the likeliest appearance of their preferment; wherein they dealt wisely, hee being farre the most sufficient Commander, as they found soon after. For when *Antigonus*, coming out of *Media*, drew neer unto them, *Eumenes* by some mischance was fallen sick, and fain to be carried in a Litter; the Army marched in very bad array, and was likely to have been forced to take battell in that disorder. But *Eumenes*, when the rest of the Captains were amazed, was carried about the Army in his Litter, and upon the sudden did cast his men into so good form, that *Antigonus*, perceiving him a far off, could not refrain from giving him deserved commendations. Yet he did not cease to promise great rewards to the Captains, and all sorts of men, if they would forsake *Eumenes*: which hopes deceiving him, he came to the triall of a battell. *Eumenes* had more Elephants than *Antigonus*; otherwise, he was inferior in number both of horse and foot by a third part. The battell was fought with variable success, and great losse on both sides, continuing a great part of the day, and of the night following. Yet the victory was uncertain. For *Eumenes* could not force his men to lye faine from their carriages; by which means *Antigonus* (who had a more absolute command over his) incamping on the ground whereon they fought, had in his power the dead bodies; which was accounted the sign of victory; for he buried his own, and gave leave to his enemies craving it, to do the like. But a greater sign of victory had *Eumenes*. For he abode still in the same place, and not only buried his men very honourably, at great leisure, but held the Countre round about; whereas *Antigonus* was glad (having tarried but one day) to steal away by night, and return into *Media*, from whence he came.

## S. IV. of

## S. IV.

Of divers stratagems practised by *Antigonus*, and *Eumenes*, one against the other.

**T**hus did the Warre continue doubtfull; and was protracted to a greater length, each part having stout Souldiers, and skillfull Generalls: but the side which had hitherto prevailed, being hindered by the equal authority of many, from putting all advantages to the best, *Antigonus* grew daily weaker, in men and reputation, so that to repair himself he could find no way safer, than to put all to adventure. He knew that his enemies lay in their wintering places, quartered far asunder, so that if hee could suddenly come among them, he was likely to put them in great distresse. Between him and them, the way was not long, being only nine daies journey, but very bad through a rough drie wilderness, hardly passable. Another way, fairer and leading through a Countre well peopled, but requiring 25. daies journey, he forsook, partly for the length, partly and chiefly because he would come undiscovered. So therefore taking his journey in the dead of winter, he forbade unto his men the use of fire by night, because he would not have them detected a farre off. This commandment had been well observed four or five daies, when continuance of time (as commonly breeding negligence, and the cold weather pinching them, they were bold to cherish themselves, being neer to their waies) the light of these fires gave notice of their coming, which being reported to *Pentestes*, and other Captains, they were so astonished with the sudden danger, that in all haste they betook themselves to flight. But *Eumenes*, meeting with the newes, began to hearken his affrighted companions, promising to make *Antigonus* march leisurely, and willing them to abide; and draw up their men together. They could scarce believe him; yet they were content to be ruled, and did as he appointed, who failed not in making his word good. He took with him some companies of the readiest men, wherewith hee occupied certain tops of mountains, looking toward the Camp of *Antigonus*: there he chose a convenient ground to incamp upon, and made great store of fires in sundry places, as if the whole Armie had been present. This was a sorrowfull spectacle to *Antigonus*, who thought himself prevented of his purpose, and began to fear lest he should be compelled to fight, whilst his men were tired with a long and painful journey. Therefore he resolved to turn aside, and take the way to such places, as might better serve to refresh his Army. This he did with great care and circumspection, at the first, as knowing how ready *Eumenes* would be upon all advantages. But after a while, considering that *Eumenes* stirred about him, he began to pause, and think in himself, that somewhat or other was not fallen out according to his opinion. To be the better informed in the matter, he caused some Inhabitants of that desert to be taken, and brought before him; of whom hee learned, that they had seen no other Army than his thereabout, but onely a few men that kept fires on the hill tops. It vexed him exceedingly to find that hee had been so deluded. Therefore he went against these troups with great fury, meaning to take sharp vengeance on them, for having so deceived him. But by this time, sufficient strength was arrived there, which could not be forced without much business, and long stay. All the Army was come, save onely *Eudamus*, Captain of the Elephants, who, besides those beasts, had no more than four hundred horsemen in his company. *Antigonus* hearing of this supply coming to his enemies, sent above two thousand horse, and all his light-armed foot-men, to cut it off by the way. *Eudamus*, being fallen into this danger, was faine to place his Elephants round about his carriages, and so to defend himself as well as he could; for his horsemen, overlaid with multitudes, were quickly broken, and driven to run away upon the spur. Neither knew they, who fate upon the Elephants, which way to turn them; for on all sides they received wounds, and were not able to requite them with the like. In this extremity there appeared brave troups of horse and foot, that came unexpected to the rescue, and charging the assailants upon the back, drave them to seek their own safety by speedy flight. These were sent by *Eumenes*, who though he knew not what his adversary meant to do, yet he knew very well what was fittest for him to doe; and therefore, playing both games himself, provided the remedy.

## S. V. The

## S. V.

*The conspiracy of Peucestes and others, against Eumenes his life.*

**B**Y these means Eumenes wonne great honour, and was by the whole Army acknowledged a most expert Generall; and well worthy of the chief command. But Peucestes, and the other Captains, guilty of their own much insufficiency, were so transported with envy, that they could no longer contain their vile thoughts, but held communication, as upon a necessary point, how they might find means to murder him.

Surely, it is great injustice to impute the mischief contrived against worthy men, to their own proud carriage, or some other ill deserving: For, though it often happen, that small vices do serve to counterpoise great virtues; (the loss of evil being more quick and lasting than of good) yet he shall bewray a very foolish malice, that, wanting other testimonie, will think it a part of wisdom, to find good reason of the evils done to virtuous men, which oftentimes have no other cause than virtue itself. Eumenes, among many excellent qualities, was noted to be of singular courtesie, of a very sweet conversation among his friends, and careful by all gentle means to win their love, that seemed to bear him any secret ill affection. It was his meere virtue that overthrew him; which even they that sought his life acknowledged. For they concluded that he should not be slain, before the battell were fought with Antigonus, wherein they confessed that it stood best with their safety, to be governed by his direction. Of this reason he was quickly adverted by Budamus, to whom he had done many pleasures, and by some others of whom he used to borrow money when he needed not, to the end that they should be careful of his good, for fear of losing their own. Considering therefore, and discoursing with himself of the villany intended against him, he made his last Will, and burnt all his Writings that contained any matter of secret: which done, he revolved many things in his mind; being doubtfull what course he were best to follow. All the Nobles of the Empire stood ill affected to the Royall blood, excepting those which were with him, that were more in number than in worth. How things at that time stood in Macedonia and Greece, either he knew not, or, knowing the truth, knew nothing that might encourage him to seek their help, that needed his. To make his own peace with Antigonus, had been against his faith to Olympias, and the Princes, that had committed this great power into his hands. For which cause also it may be thought, that he forbore either to lose the battell willingly, or to flee into Cappadocia, and make shift for himself among his old friends. At length he resolved to do his best against the common enemy, and afterwards to look to himself as well as he might.

## S. VI.

*The last battell between Antigonus and Eumenes.*

**T**HE Souldiers, especially those old bands of the Silver-shields, finding Eumenes perplexed, and not knowing the cause, entreated him not to doubt of the victory, but only to bring them into the field, and set them in array; for the rest, they alone would take sufficient order. The like alacrity was generally found in the common Souldiers faces; but the chief Commanders were so mischievously bent against him, that they could not endure to think of being beholding to him for the victory. Yet he ordered the battell so well, that, without their own great fault, they could hardly fall of getting the upper hand.

Before the Armies came to joyning, a horse-man from the side of Eumenes, proclaimed with a loud voice unto the followers of Antigonus, That their wickedness in fighting against their own Fathers, would now be punished, as it well deserved. This was not spoken in vain. For the Silver-shields were men of threescore or seventy years old, and strengthened more by continuall exercise, than decayed by age, and excelling in courage, as having passed through greater dangers, than any like to be presented in that fight.

Therefore Antigonus his men (who had often been beaten by them, and were now to try their last hope with these resolute warriors, the most Ancient and best regarded of all

all Alexander's Souldiers) grew very pensive, and advanced heavily, suspecting their own cause, and fearing that the threatnings uttered would prove true.

Antigonus was now again far the stronger in horse; which gave him cause of great hope, the ground, on which they were to fight, being a plain levelled field. Placing therefore himself and his son Demetrius in the right wing, and committing the left wing to Pythion, he did set forward courageously against the Enemies; that were ready to give him a sharp entertainment.

Eumenes took unto him Peucestes, with the rest of the Lords, and stood in the left wing of his battail, in the face of Antigonus; meaning both to prevent the Traitors, his Companions, of all means to make head against him on the sudden; and (withall) to give proof of his own valour, which perhaps he should no more doe, in the face of all his Enemies. In the right wing, opposite unto Pythion, he bestowed the weakest of his horse and Elephants, under one Philip, an honest man, and (which was enough at such a time) obedient: commanding him to protract the fight, and make a reasonable retreat, expecting the event of the other side.

So they joynd very fiercely; Antigonus, labouring to make himself master of all; Eumenes, to die an honourable death, or to win such a victory upon his open enemies, as might give him leisure and opportunity to deal with his false friends.

The footmen of Antigonus, being even in their own opinions, far inferior to those whom they must encounter, were at the first brunt presently defeated by the Silver-shields, who slew above five thousand of them, losing of their own not one man. But in Horse, Eumenes was so over-matched, that he could not repell Antigonus; who pressed him very hard, but was faine to stand wholly upon defence. Yet his courage wrought so well by example, among his followers; that the Enemy could not win one foot of ground upon him, untill such time as Peucestes, with one thousand five hundred Horse, withdrew himself out of the battell; leaving his companions fighting, to defend his back.

Then did Eumenes desperately rush amongst his Enemies; labouring to break open the way unto Antigonus himself. And though he failed of his purpose, yet with great slaughter he did so beat upon them which came in his way, that the victory hung a long time in suspense, uncertain which way to incline.

The ground whereon they fought, being of a slight kind of mould, through the trampling of horses, men, and Elephants, did cast up such a cloud of dust, as hindered the prospect, so that no man could see what was done a little from him. Antigonus finding this advantage, dispatched away some companies of horse, that passed undiscovered beyond Eumenes his battails, and came to his carriages, which lay about half a mile from the place of fight, slenderly guarded; (for that the whole body of the Army lay between them and danger) and therefore easily taken. Had Peucestes retired himself no further than unto the carriages, he might not onely have defended them, but peradventure have surprised those which came to surprise them; and so have done as good a piece of service as a better man. But he was gotten somewhat further, to a place, where out of danger he might expect the event; and Eumenes was so over-laboured both in body and mind, that he could not possibly give an eye to every place; being not well able to continue where he was.

It happened so, that the Elephants meeting together, those of Antigonus had the better hand; whereupon Eumenes, finding himself every way over-charged, began to give back, and withdrew himself and his companies in good order, to the other side of the battail, where Philip (as he was directed) had by fighting and retiring together, kept that wing from losse. The Antigonusians had felt so much of Eumenes that day, that they were well content to let him depart quietly, and wished not to see him come again; as if he would have done.

The losse of the carriages was reported unto him, as soon as he had any leisure to hear how things went: whereupon he presently ordered his men for a fresh charge, and sent for Peucestes: that was not far off, requesting him to bring in his men, and renew the fight, whereby he trusted, not only to recover his own goods, but to enrich themselves with the spoils of the enemies. Peucestes did onely pretend to joyn with him, but immediately withdrew himself into a safer place, where he might be further from such dangerous temptations.

By this the night grew on, and both Armies, wearied with fighting, were desirous to return into their Camps. Yet *Antigonus* conceived hope of doing somewhat more, and therefore taking half his horsemen, he waited upon *Eumenes* a part of his way home-wards, but found no opportunity to offend him: the other half he committed to *Python*, who, willing him to set upon the *Silver-shields* in their retreat, which yet he forbore to do, because it appeared too full of danger. So the battail ended; wherein *Antigonus* had not so much the better in horse, as the worse in foot: but the spoil which he got, by surprising his enemies' carriages, made amends for all his other losses.

## s. VII.

*How Eumenes was betrayed to Antigonus, and slain.*

*Eumenes*, coming into his Camp, and finding the *Silver-shields* extremely discontented with their misfortune, began to cheer them up, and put them in hope of recovering all with advantage. For their brave demeanour that day had so cruell'd the enemy, that he had no power left, wherewith to abide them in open field, and was much lesse able to draw their Carts after him, through that great wilderness, over the high mountains.

But these persuasions availed nothing. *Peucestes* was gone, the other Captains would needs return into the high Countries; and the Souldiers had no desire either to fight, but only to recover their goods. Wherefore *Tetramus*, one of the two Captains of the *Silver-shields*, (who had in former times readily consented unto traitorous motions, in hope of gain, but was letted by his partner *Antigenes* finding, as he thought, an occasion of making himself great, and winning the love of those bands, dealt secretly with *Antigonus*, requesting him to restore unto those old Souldiers their goods, which he had taken, being the onely reward of their services, in the wars of *Philip* and *Alexander*.

*Antigonus*, as a subtle man, knew very well, that they which requested more than they had reason to expect, would also with little entreatie, perform a great deal more than they promised; and therefore he lovingly entertained the messengers, filling them with hopes of far greater matter than they desired, if they would put *Eumenes* into his hands, by whom they were seduced to make war against him. This answer pleased them so well, that they forthwith devised how to deliver him alive. Wherefore coming about him, as at other times, to do their dutie, and pretending more joy of their victory, than sorrow of their losse, which they said they would redeem by another fight; in the midst of this goodly talk, they leapt upon him, caught hold of his sword, and bound him fast. So they haled him away, and stopping their ears against all persuasions, would not yeeld so far as to loosen one of his hands, and let him kill himself, but brought him alive (that was their own Generall, under whom they had obtained many victories) as it had been in triumph, into the Camp of their enemies.

The presse of men, running out of the Camp to see him, was so great, that *Antigonus* was faine to send a guard of horse-men and Elephants, to keep him from being mobbed; whom he could not suddenly resolve, either to kill or save. Very few there were that sued for his life, but of these, *Demetrius* the son of *Antigonus* was one, the rest were desirous to be rid of him quickly; thinking belike, that if he were saved, he would soon be the chief in reputation, for his great ability. So after long deliberation, *Antigonus* concluded that it was the safest way to put him to death; which intending to have done by famine (perhaps because he would keep it a while in his own power, to reverse the sentence, as desiring, if it might be, to have him live his friend) haile of other businesse made him doe it by the sword.

To this end came all the travails of that worthy Generall *Eumenes*; who had with great wisdom, fidelity, and patience, laboured in vain to uphold the family which God had purposed to cast down. He is reckoned among the notable examples of Fortunes mutability, but more notable was his government of himself, in all her changes. Adversities never lessened his courage, nor prosperity his circumspection. But all his vertues, industrie, and wit, were cast away, in leading an Army, without full power, to keep it in due obedience. Therefore it was not ill answered by *Gaspard de Coligny*, Admirall of France in our daies, to one that foretold his death, which ensued soon after in the same

facte of *Paris*; That rather than to lead again an Army of Voluntaries, he would die a thousand times.

*Antigonus* himself gave to the body of *Eumenes* honourable Funerall; and rewarded the Treason, wrought against him, with deserved vengeance. One chief Captain of the *Silver-shields* he burnt alive; many of the other Captains he slew; and to the whole multitude of the *Silver-shields*, that had betrayed so worthy a Commander, he appointed a Leader that should carry them into far Countries, under pretence of wars; but with a privie charge, to consume them all, as perjured wretches, letting none of them return alive unto his friends and kindred, or so much as once behold the Seas that beat upon the shores of Greece and Macedonia.

## s. VIII.

*How Antigonus slew Python, and occupied Media. How he removed Governours of Provinces, and made himself Lord of Persia, carrying away Peucestes.*

The two Armies being joyned thus in one, were carried into *Media*, where they spent the rest of the Winter: the common Souldier idly, the principall men intently bent unto the businesse ensuing. *Python* began to consider his own deservings; for the whole war had been chiefly maintained by the strength and riches of his Province. Besides, he thought himself as good a man as *Antigonus*; unlesse it were in the Souldiers opinion, which he judged easie to be purchased with gifts, and therefore spared not to assay them with great liberality. But in following this course he was driven by necessity to trust many, of whom he stumbled upon some, that were unsecret, and others, bearing him no sincere affection. Thus was his purpose discovered to *Antigonus*, who (nothing like to *Python*) dissembled his indignation, and rebuked the informers, as breeders of dissention between him, and his honourable friend, unto whom he meant to commit the Government of all those Countries: his own businesse calling him into the lower Asia. These reports, coming daily to his ears, did finely conclude *Python*. By his greatnesse with *Alexander*, his authority in that Province where they lay, whereof he was Governour; and the love of the Souldiers which he had bought with money; he was strong enough to maintain, even an offensive war. But what need had he to use the sword, when he was likely without contention, to obtain more than his own asking? Therefore he came as soon as he was sent for, to take his farewell of *Antigonus*, and to divide the Provinces with him, that meant nothing lesse than to yeeld to any such division. As soon as he came, he was taken, and accused, condemned to die, and slain out of hand. For *Antigonus*, having begun with *Eumenes* his ancient friend, was not afterward restrained by any consideration of old acquaintance, from cutting down indifferently all that stood in his way: but swam carelesly through the blood, wherein at the first he doubtfully waded.

When this businesse was ended, he appointed a new Governour in *Media*, to order the Province, and a Captain, to suppress all commotions: thinking belike, that the power and authority, so divided, would hardly agree in one against him, from whom both were derived.

After this he marched into *Persia*, where he was entertained as absolute Lord of Asia. There began he to shew how well he understood his own mightinesse. For he placed and displaced at his own pleasure, Governours in all Provinces, leaving none in Office, that were not his own creatures, except such as lay too far off to bee dislodged easily.

*Peucestes*, who ruled in *Persia*, thought with good cheer to redeem old offences, but was deceived, having to doe with one that could not be taken with such baits: hee was carried away, and feasted with goodly words of promise, that never after took effect. Thus he, that envied the vertue of his friend, was driven to flatter (in vain) the fortune of his enemy, after which he led a most contemptible life, till he died obscurely and forgotten.

## s. IX. How

## §. IX.

*How Seleucus was chased out of Babylon by Antigonus. The great riches of Antigonus.*

**S**eleucus was the next in this visitation; one that had from time to time continued in the same tenor of good will to Antigonus, and now gave proof of his hearty affection toward him, by making the Captain of the Castle of *Susa* to meet him on the way, rendering unto him that strong Peece, and all the treasures therein bestowed. This offer was so great, that Antigonus (though having in his hands the Keeper of the place) could hardly believe it, but used him with excessive kindness, for fear so good a mood should change. In that Castle he found all the treasures of Alexander, with the Jewels of the Persian Kings, which, added to his former store of money, made up as thousand talents. Having all this, he might well account himself a happy man, if riches were sufficient to happiness. But large dominion was the mark at which he aimed; therefore he proceeded, with intent to leave no Country behind his back, that should not acknowledge him for Sovereign Lord. Coming to *Babylon*, he was entertained by Seleucus with all possible demonstration of love, and honoured with presents befitting the Majesty of a King. All this he accepted with great gravity, as being due to him; and began to require an account of the revenues of that Province. This demand Seleucus held unreasonable, saying, That it was not deedfull for him to render unto any man an account of that Province, which was given unto him, in respect of his many good services to the State. But whether he spake reason or no, it sufficed, that Antigonus was powerful, who urged him daily to come to a reckoning. Manifest it was, that neither want of money, nor any other necessity, moved Antigonus to presse him thus, but only the desire to pick matter of quarrell against him, whereof it was likely that he should find such issue, as *Pytho* and *Penthes* had done. Therefore taking with him only fifty horse, he conveyed himself away, and fled into *Ptolemies* Dominions; desiring him to protect him from such a man as went about to oppress all, that in former times had been his betters, or at least his equals. Antigonus was glad of his flight; for now all those Countries were yielded unto him without battail, whereas to fight with Seleucus for them, he wanted all pretence, and to kill him it was not his desire, having received many benefits of him, and those not intermixed, as commonly it happens, with any injuries. Yet it is reported, that the *Chaldeans* brought a strange Prophecie to Antigonus, bidding him look well to himself, and know, that if Seleucus did escape his hands, he should recover *Babylon*, yea, win all *Asia*, and kill Antigonus in battail. Easie beleivers may give credit to this tale. Had it been true, methinks, Antigonus rather should have hanged those *Chaldeans*, for giving him no warning till it was too late, than sent pursuers (as they say that he did) after him, whom the destinies preserved for so great purposes. When he had settled things at *Babylon*, he took his journey into *Cilicia*, where he wintered. There he took up ten thousand talents more of the Kings treasures, and casting his accounts, found his yearly in-come to amount unto eleven thousand Talents.

CHAP. V.

*Of the great War between ALEXANDERS Captains; and how they affected the name and state of Kings.*

*The combination of Ptolemy, Cassander, and others against Antigonus. Their demands, and the answer.*

**T**his great riches, and the rest of his power, made Antigonus dreaded, envied, and suspected, whereby he quickly was embarked in a new War. *Ptolemy*, *Cassander*, and *Lysimachus*, had privily combined themselves together, intending to hinder his further growth, and bring him to more reason than of his own accord he seemed like to yeeld unto. Of their practices he had some notice; the good

good entertainment given unto Seleucus, giving him sufficient cause of mistrust. Therefore he sent Embassadors to them severally, entreating them to continue firm in their love toward him; that would be ready to requite them with the like. The cold answers which they made, occasioned his hasty preparation against the most forward of them, which was *Ptolemy*, it being likely that a good Army should prevail more than a fair message. Therefore, as soon as the season of the year would permit, he took the way toward *Syria*, & was encountered by Embassage from them all. These told him, that their Lords did much rejoyce at his victory, obtained against *Eumenes* their common enemy, and the honour that he had thereby gotten. In which war, so far as they as they being his Confederates, must have endured great losse, with hazard of their whole Estates, if the contrary faction had prevailed; they held it very just, that all should be partakers in the fruits of that voyage, wherein they had been all adventurers. Wherefore they desired him, that making between them all an equall division of the treasures that were in his hands, (a thing easie to be done) he would also take some convenient order for enlarging their Dominions, according to the rate of his new purchases. This might best be to every ones liking, if he would make over *Cappadocia*, with *Lycia*, to *Cassander*; and *Phrygia*, bordering upon the *Hellepont*, to *Lysimachus*; for whereas his own Dominions were so much extended Eastward by his late victory, he might well spare some of those Western Provinces, to those that were seated in the West. As for *Ptolemy*, he would not crave any new addition, but rest contented within his own Territories. Provided always, that Seleucus their common friend, and partner in the late warre, might be restored to his power, out of which he had been driven to injuriously, that all of them were forced to take it deeply to heart; requiring amends, with his friendly consent unto their demands, which otherwise they must labour to obtain with armed hands.

Antigonus knew, that after many losses received, he should yet be able to redeem peace whensoever he listed, with these, or perhaps with easier conditions. Neither was he so weak, to give away quietly any part of his strength into the hands of such bad friends, for fear only, lest it should be taken from him perforce. Rather he hoped that he should be able to find them work, more than enough to defend their own. Therefore he roundly answered the Embassadors, that it was no part of his meaning to communicate with other men the profit of that victory, which he alone without other mens help had obtained. Though indeed they had already sufficiently gained by him, if they could see it, having by his means kept their governments, whereof they were like to be dispossessed by *Polisperchon*, and the councill of estate in *Macedoni*. But what marvell was it, if they considered not how he had saved them, seeing one of them had forgotten the time, when coming to him as a fugitive, and begging succour, he was by his meere bounty relieved, and enabled to get all that he now held? *Cassander* did not (said he) in those dayes command me to surrender Provinces, and give him his equall share of my treasures; but (for his Fathers sake) desired me to pity him, and help him against his enemies: which I did; by lending him an army, and Fleet, on confidence whereof he now presumes to threaten me. As for Seleucus, how can he complain of wrong, that durst not stay to plead his right? I did use him well; but his conscience told him that he had deserved ill: else he would not have fled. Let them that so curiously search into my doings, consider well their own, which some of them can hardly justify. I am now in the way to *Syria*, meaning to examine *Ptolemies* proceedings, and after him to deal with others, if they continue to provoke me.

## §. II.

*The preparation and beginnings of the Wars.*

**V**hen the Embassadors were dismissed with this answer, nothing was thought upon but Warre. Antigonus perceiving that he should be invaded from *Europe*, as soon as he was entred into *Syria*, left his Nephew *Ptolemy* to guard the Sea coast, and hinder *Cassander* from landing in *Asia*; giving him also charge, to drive out of *Cappadocia* some that were already sent over to molest him. Likewise he dispatched Messengers into *Greece* and *Cyprus*, not unfurnished of money; to draw friends to his side, and raise up troubles to his enemies. Especially, he laboured to make

FFFF

make himself the strongest by Sea; to which purpose he rather hastened, than forebore his journey into *Syria*, that he might get possession of Mount *Libanus*, which afforded many excellent commodities for building of a Navie. Therefore, having erected Beacons, & laid post-horses throughout all *Asia*, to give swift advertisement of all occurrences, he invaded *Syria*, that was not held against him by any power sufficient to maintain the field.

*Ptolomy* lay in *Egypt*, the strength and heart of his Dominion, where he was beloved and honoured of the people as their natural Lord: his other Provinces he kept with a few Garrisons, better serving to contain the people within obedience, than to confront a foreign enemy. So *Antigonus* took many Cities and Places of that Country, and began to set great numbers of Artificers on work in making ships, which was one of his most earnest cares. In these businesses he consumed a year and three moneths; not idly. For he took *Foppe*, and *Gaza*, which were yielded unto his discretion, and well used. The strong City of *Tyrus* held out long, but was compelled in the end by famine, to render it self upon composition, that *Ptolomies* Souldiers might depart with their Arms, which was permitted.

*Ptolomy* was not asleep, whilest these things were in doing, though he kept himself within the bounds of *Egypt*, as indeed it behooved him to doe. His forces were not able to stand against *Antigonus* in plain field, but likely they were to increase, which made him willing to protract the time. Nevertheless by Sea (where his enemy was as yet unread) he sent his Fleet into all quarters, whereof *Selencus* had the chief command.

*Selencus* passed with an hundred sail along the coast of *Syria*, in the full view of *Antigonus*, and his Army, to their no little discomfort. He landed in *Cyprus*, which was then governed by many petty Lords; of whom the greatest adhered to *Ptolomy*, the rest were by the Factors of *Antigonus*, bought for him with gold, but now redeemed by the *Egyptian* with sharp steel.

The same commodity of aid by Sea encouraged the President of *Caria* (called also *Cassander*, but not the son of *Antipater*, howsoever by the painfull and learned writer *Reinerus Reineccius*, he is, by some oversight, counted for the same) to declare for *Ptolomy* and his Confederates, and busily employ in their quarrell all his forces, which he had hitherto kept in good neutrality, and thereby enjoyed rest; but now he threw himself into dangerous war, choosing rather to undergoe trouble at hand, than to fall under certain ruine, though somewhat further distant, which would have overwhelmed him, if *Antigonus* had beaten all the rest.

### §. III.

*How each party sought to win the assistance of Greece, Antigonus his declaration against Cassander. Alexander the son of Polyperchon revolteth from Antigonus who had set him up.*

IN the mean season all care possible was taken on both sides, to assure unto them the people of *Greece*, whose aid, which way soever inclined, was of great importance. Herein at the first, *Antigonus* sped so well by large effusion of his treasure, that he drew to him the *Lacedaemonians*, and other *Peloponnesians*, of whom he waged eight thousand, and caused *Polyperchon* (who had a good while made hard shifts) to rowle himself again, and taking upon him the title of Captain of *Peloponnesus*, to make head against *Cassander*.

These hopefull beginnings encouraged him to proceed further in the same kind. Wherefore to make *Cassander* the more odious, he called together both his own Souldiers, and all the *Greeks* and *Macedonians* that were to be found thereabouts. To these he declared, that *Cassander* had very cruelly slain *Olympias*, mother to the great *Alexander*, and not herewith contented, had shut up in close prison the poor Lady *Roxane*, *Alexanders* wife, and his sonne begotten on her body. That all this proceeded from a desire to make himself King over the *Macedonians*; which well appeared by his enforcing the Lady *Thessalonica*, Daughter to King *Philip*, a match unfit for a man of no greater parentage than he, to joyn with him in marriage. That in meer despight of those dead Princes, *Philip* and *Alexander*, he had planted the *Olynthians*, rooted out by *Philip*, in a new City by him built, and called by his own name *Cassandria*; and had re-edified the City of *Thebes*, which for the great treason of the Inhabitants, was levelled with the ground by

by the victorious hand of *Alexander*. For these reasons he required them to make a decree, that *Cassander* should restore to absolute liberty the Lady *Roxane*, and her son; and should yeeld obedience to the Lord-Lieutenant General of the Empire, (by which name *Antigonus* himself was understood) or else should be reputed a Traitor, and open Enemy to the State. Furthermore he propounded, that all the Cities of *Greece* should be restored into freedome: this hee did, not because he was carefull of their good, but for the need which he had of their assistance.

These things being decreed, *Antigonus* was perswaded, that not onely the *Greeks* would adhere unto him, as to their loving Patron, and fall off from *Cassander*; but that the rulers of Provinces, who had hitherto suspected him as a man regardfull of nothing but his own benefit, would correct their opinion, and think him the most faithfull of all others to the Royall blood. But concerning his loyalty to the young Prince, the world was too wise to be deceived with vain shews. His undertaking for the liberty of the *Greeks* was more effectually, and got easie belief, in regard of his present hatred to *Cassander*. Yet herein also *Ptolomee* strove to be as earnest as he, making the like decree, in hope to win to himself that valiant Nation, which afforded men far more servicable in war, than were to be found in any Province of the Empire.

And this indeed was the point at which both sides aimed. Wherein *Antigonus* thinking to make all sure, deceived himself, not without great cost. For he gave to *Alexander* the son of *Polyperchon* five hundred talents, willing him to set the war on foot in *Peloponnesus*; whereby it might appear, that on his side was meant nothing else, than what was openly pretended.

In *Peloponnesus*, *Cassanders* men had with much blood-shed, grievously afflicted the contrary faction; and he himself perceiving, that they were more easily spoiled as enemies, than retained as friends, thought it the best way to make what use he could of them, that were not long like to continue his. Finally, perceiving that *Alexander* came furnished with plenty of gold, wherewith he was able, not onely to win the doubtful, but to corrupt such as might seem best assured; he thought it a part of wisdom, to surrender upon fair conditions, that which he could not assure himself to hold any long time. Therefore he sent one to deal with *Alexander* about the matters in controversy, telling him, that *Antigonus* was very skilfull in setting men together by the ears, not caring who prevailed, but only desiring to have them weary themselves, whilest he was busied elsewhere; that so at length he might find opportunity to set upon the stronger. If therefore *Alexander* were so wise, as to keep in his purse the five hundred talents which he had, and without stroke stricken, to receive the whole Lordship of *Peloponnesus*, it should be freely put into his hands by *Cassander*; provided, that he should from thenceforth renounce all confederacy made with *Antigonus*, and enter into a sure and faithfull league with *Ptolomee*, *Cassander*, and the rest of the Confederates. Otherwise he might well perswade himself, that the Country which his Father could not keep, when he was indeed the Lieutenant of the Empire, should not in haste be won by him, that was onely the Factor of a proud injurious man, so stiling himself, but not acknowledged by others.

*Alexander* had lived a while with *Antigonus* since the beginning of these wars, among whom: followers it was not hard to discover the intent, (which he did not carry very secretly) of making himself absolute Lord of all. Therefore he was soon entreated to accept to good an offer, and did not stick to enter into that league, whereby he was to become a free Lord, and subject unto no mans controll.

Howbeit, this his honour continued not long, ere he lost both it and his life together, by treason of the *Sicyonians*, who thinking thereby to have made themselves free, were soon after vanquished in battail by *Cratesipolis*, *Alexanders* wife, a discreet and valiant Lady. She in revenge of her husbands death, crucified thirty of the Citizens taken in fight, and having by severity taught them obedience, did afterwards continue her Army in good order, and governed those places that she held, with the commendation of her Subjects and Neighbours.



## S. IIII.

The *Aeolians* rise against *Cassander* in favour of *Antigonus*, and are beaten. A sea and land army of *Antigonus* utterly defeated by *Ptolomies* Lieutenant. In what terms the war stood at this time, *Antigonus* draws nearer to *Greece*.

**A** *Antigonus*, when he found, that with so much money he had only bought an enemy, began to raise troubles to *Cassander* and his other adversaries in *Greece*; by stirring up the *Aeolians* against them: Likewise he laboured to win to his party the *Ilands* in the *Greek Seas*, by whose assistance he might be the better able to deal with *Ptolomy*, that greatly prevailed by reason of his strong Fleet. But neither of these attempts had the success which he expected. The *Aeolians*, a factious Nation, and always envying the greatness of their Neighbours, were often in commotion, but so, that commonly their gains equalled not their losses. *Cassander* won some of their own Country, fortified the *Acarnanians* against them; and compelled *Glaucias*, King of the *Thyrians*, whom he vanquished in battail, to forsake their side; and bind himself to bear an Army against *Cassander's* friends.

On the other side, as many petty *Ilands* were drawn to joyn with *Antigonus*: so the Fleet of the *Rhodians* under *Theodatus*, who was Admiral to *Antigonus*, passing along the coast of *Asia* towards *Cyprus*, with an Army under conduct of *Perillus* marching on the shore for mutual assistance, was quite overthrown by *Ptolomies* Navy. *Polychymus*, who in *Ptolomies* behalf had been sent into *Peloponnesus* against *Alexander*, finding no need of his service in that Country, because *Alexander* was come over to their side, returned homewards; and by the way heard of the course which these *Antigonians* held, whom he very cunningly surprised. He rode with his Fleet behind a Cape, which the enemies were to double; his Land forces he placed in ambush, wherinto *Perillus* falling was taken prisoner, with many of his men, and many were slain making little resistance. *Theodatus* the Admiral perceiving this, made all haste to help his fellows that were on Land, but whilst he with all his Fleet were intentive onely to that business, *Polychymus* appeared at their backs; who as soon as he perceived their disorder, hastened about the Cape, and charging them behind, suffered not one of them to escape him. These ill tidings caused *Antigonus* to deal with *Ptolomy* about some composition. First, he sent Embassadors, afterwards they met in person. But *Antigonus* would not yeeld unto the demands of *Ptolomy*: so the party was vain.

Hitherto each part seemed to have indifferently sped in the war, and thereby to have equal cause of hope and fear. This late victory, with the good success of his affairs in *Cyprus*, did seem to make amends to *Ptolomy* for his losses in *Syria*. Likewise the revolt of *Alexander* from *Antigonus* did equal the confederacy made between the *Aeolians* and him; as also those petty skirmishes, that had been in *Asia* the lesse, to *Antigonus* his advantage, were sufficiently recompensed by others of like regard, but adverse to him, and by the troubles brought upon his estates in those parts by the two *Cassanders*.

Contrariwise, *Antigonus* valued the losse of his men, money, and ships, no otherwise than as the paring of his nails, that were left long enough, and would easily grow again; but the enlargement of his Territory by addition of *Syria*, he prized at a higher rate, as if thereby he had fed upon a limb of *Ptolomy* his enemy, and strengthened the body of his own Empire. Concerning other accidents, whereof the good were hitherto sufficient to counterpoize the bad, he meant to proceed as occasion should direct, which commonly is not long wanting to them, that want no money.

That which most molested him, was the attempts of his enemies upon *Asia* the lesse, wherein though as yet they had gotten little, yet had he cause to fear, lest the people being tied unto him by no bond of allegiance, might upon small occasion revolt from him, to men of as honourable reputation as he himself. To prevent this, and to be nearer to *Greece*, he held it expedient for him to be there in person, where his affairs did seem to prosper the worse, by reason of his absence. Therefore he left part of his Army in *Syria* under his son *Demetrius*, to whom, being then but two and twenty years old, he appointed many ancient Captains as assistants, or rather as Directors: the rest he carried with him into *Phrygia*, where he meant to winter.

S. V. How

## S. V.

How *Lysimachus* and *Cassander* vanquished some cities, raised against them by *Antigonus*. The good success of *Antigonus* in *Asia* and *Greece*: with the rebellion of many Cities against *Cassander*.

**T**HE coming of *Antigonus* into those parts, wrought a great alteration in the proesse of his business thereabouts. For his enemies had thought but to think upon molesting him in *Asia*; they themselves were held over hardly to their own work on *Europe* side. *Seuthes* a King of the *Thracians*, joyning with some Towns that rebelled against *Lysimachus*, brought also the bordering *Scythians* into his quarrell. All these relied upon *Antigonus*, who was to help them with money, and to be aid. The *Aeolians* likewise took courage, and rose against *Cassander*, having *Exciderus* lately restored to the Kingdom of *Epirus*, their assistance. But *Lysimachus* gave unto his Rebels no time to confirm themselves. He suddenly presented himself before two of the Cities that had rebelled, and compelled them by fear to returne unto their former duty. He fought a battell with the *Scythians*, and wilde *Thracians*, and drove them out of the Country. Finally, hee overcame *Seuthes*; and following the heat of his victory, slew *Polichimus* in battell, whom *Antigonus* had sent over with an Army; and all his men hee did either put to ranfome, or fill up with them his own Bands. The like success had *Philip*, *Cassander's* Lieutenant, against the *Aeolians*. For hee wasted their Country; fought with the *Epirotes*, that came to help them; and after the victory, fought again with their forces joyned in one, overthrowing them, and killing *Exciderus* that unfortunate King. Finally, hee drove the *Aeolians* out of most of their Country; and forced them to seek their safety among the wilde Mountains. Of the *Epirotes* hee sent as prisoners to *Cassander*, the principall authors of the Kings restitution, and of the present War.

Yet these actions required some time, and wearied *Antigonus* his admiraries with painfull travell; after which they remained onely favers. *Antigonus* himselfe as far as possible won all *Caria* the whilst, and sent Armies into *Peloponnesus*, and other parts of *Greece*, bestowing liberty upon all the Cities hee took out of *Cassander's* hands. The whole Country of *Peloponnesus* (excepting *Sicyon* and *Corinth*); with the Isle of *Euboea*, and many places of the firm Land, were by those means won to be his in true and vehement affection, ready to doe or suffer any thing for him that had made so evident a demonstration of his readiness, to give them the liberty indeed, which others had promised in idle words. Many States desirous of the same benefit, would faine have shewed their good will; but they were kept in by *Cassander's* Garrisons, who was too wise to trust them loose. Therefore *Antigonus* made shew as if hee would passe over into *Macedon*: by which terrour he forced *Cassander* to repair thither in all haste, with the best 40 of his strength, leaving many good Towns of *Greece* so weakly guarded, that well they might take courage to help themselves; if any foreign succour appeared. The aid which they desired was not long wanting. The Lieutenant of *Antigonus*, taking the advantage of *Cassander's* departure, entred the Country, drove his Garrisons out of divers Cities; forced the Governour of *Athens* to enter into league with their Lord; wanne the Castell of *Thebes*; and set the people at liberty. This last action was somewhat remarkable. For *Thebes* had not long before been raised out of her old ruines by the meer power of *Cassander*; of which act hee was accused by *Antigonus*, as if it had been some heinous crime. Yet now the same *Antigonus* winneth the City, and the love of the Inhabitants, onely by expelling him that was their Founder. So much are men readier to thank the Increaser, than the Author of their good; and rather to look forward upon those hopes, which vainly they extend beyond all measure, than backward upon their miserable nullity, that held them incapable of being any thing.

Ffff 3

S. VI. How



## §. VI.

*Victories of Ptolomy by Sea. A great battell at Gaza, which Ptolomy and Seleucus  
wore, against Demetrius the sonne of Antigonus.*

**A**S the presence or absence of *Antigonus* gave life to his affairs in the lower *Asia* and *Greece*; so the designs of his enemies, taking advantage of his absence, ruined the very foundations of those great works in the Eastern parts, wherewith in the year preceding he had over-topped them. The Isle of *Cyprus*, whose Princes wavered between contrary affections, inclining one while to *Antigonus*, another while faintly regarding their covenant with *Ptolomy*, was visited by an Egyptian Fleet, wherewith *Ptolomy*, in his own person easily reduced them to a more settled order, putting some to death, carrying others away prisoners, and leaving a Lieutenant of his own appointment, Governour of the whole Country. With the same Fleet he ran along the Sea-coasts, wasting a great part of *Caria* and *Cilicia*, with the spoiles of which he enriched his followers, and returned laden to *Cyprus*. *Demetrius* the son of *Antigonus*, hearing frequent reports of the miseries, wherewith his Fathers subjects were oppressed, made all haste out of *Syria* to the rescue, taking only his Horses and light-armed Foot with him; because the business required expedition. But in vain did hee dire himself and his followers, in hasty seeking of one, that by lanching out into the deep, could in a few minutes delude the labour of so many dayes; if need had so required. Unanswerable to the vanity of this expedition was the success. For *Ptolomy* was gone, before *Demetrius* came into *Cilicia*. Neither was it certain, whether having lightened his ships of their burthen in *Cyprus*, hee would return upon those maritime Countries, or make towards *Syria*, where his coming was expected. He was indeed gone into *Egypt*, and there with *Seleucus* was deservising a Royall Army, which he levied with all convenient speed, for the recovery of *Syria*. This was more than *Demetrius* knew. Therefore he was faine to choose out of uncertainties the most likelihood, and return the way that he came, with all his companies, which were fitter for service in the open field, than to be bestowed in Garrisons among the *Cilicians*. Hee had scarce refreshed his men and Horses in *Syria*, when the newes arrived of *Ptolomy's* coming with a puissant Army, to give him battell. Hereupon he called to counsell his principall friends, who advised him to give way to the time, and expect some better opportunity in the future, being a young man, and weakly furnished with means to resist such ancient and famous Generalls, as *Ptolomy* and *Seleucus*. This counsell seemed rather to proceed from the cold temper of those aged men that gave it, than from any necessity growing out of the present business. For *Demetrius* considering himself to be the son of *Antigonus*, and now Generall of his Fathers Army, thought his own title weightie enough to be laid in ballance against the bare names of those two great Commanders. Neither found hee much reason that should move him to distrust his forces, as insufficient. His men were better exercised than the enemies, and promised as much as could be required. Therefore perswading himself, that such odds of number, and of great fame, would rather serve to adorn his victory, than hinder him in obtaining it, he resolved to put the matter to triall, without expecting the advantage of more help. So animating his Souldiers with hope of spoil and rewards, hee abode the coming of the Enemies at *Gaza*; with purpose to encounter them, as soon as they had finished their wearisome journey over the Desarts of *Arabia*.

*Ptolomy* and *Seleucus* issuing out of so rich a Province as *Egypt*, came so well provided of all necessities, that their Army felt not any great grievance of the evill way, when battell was presented them, which confidently they undertook. In all things else they had the odds of *Demetrius*; of Elephants they were utterly unprovided. But how to deal with those beasts they were not ignorant. They had prepared a kind of Palisado, fastened strongly together with chains, and sharpened in such a manner, that the Elephants could not seek to break upon it, without receiving much hurt. The rest of their forces (which besides that they had advantage in multitude) were heartened with many fortunate services, by them performed that year, whilst the enemies had wearied themselves, either with vain journeys, or long and dulling expectation; they disposed in such order, as best answered to the form, wherein *Demetrius* was embattelled. The fight began, and was maintained with equall courage, for a long time; each part striving

striving more to win honour, than to satisfie any other passion, as having little cause of hatred, or revenge. But after some continuance, the greater number holding better out, the error of *Demetrius*, who upon no necessity would needs fight a battell with disadvantage, began to appear by his losses. He had committed himself to Fortune, having more to lose by her than he could get: but in this fight hee was idle, and left all to be decided by strong hands; unless it may be said, that the terror brought upon his men, by the losse of his Elephants, was bad luck. Those beasts were in that kind of warre hardly to be resisted on plain ground; and therefore at the first they made great spoil amongst *Ptolomy's* men. Afterward seeking to break through the Palisado, they were sorely hurt, and every one of them taken. This disaster caused the Horses-men of *Demetrius* to faint. They had laboured hard, and prevailed little, till now perceiving that all multie upon their hands, who were ill able to make their own places good, they began to shrink, and many of them to provide for their safety by timely flight, which example the rest quickly followed. When *Demetrius* had stroven so long in vain to make his men abide, that he himself was likely to be lost; he was faine to give place to the stronger, making a violent retreat as far as to *Azotus*, which was about thirty miles from the place of battell. A great part of his carriages was in *Gaza*, whither some of his company turned aside, hoping to save such goods, as in haste they could pack up. This foolish covetousness was their destruction, and the losse of the Town. For whilst they, forgetfull of the danger, had filled the streets with sumpter-Horses, and cloyed up the gates, thronging, some to get in and fetch; others, to carry out what they had already laden, *Ptolomy's* Army brake in without resistance, taking them with their goods and the City altogether.

This victory restored unto *Ptolomy* the best part of *Syria*, a Province more easie in those times to get, than to keep; and opened the way unto all the greatness of *Seleucus*. For between *Gaza* and *Phœnicia* no place offered resistance. In *Calydonia* and *Phœnicia*, some Towns held out a while, but were soon taken in by *Ptolomy*. Among these were the great Cities of *Tyrus* and *Sidon*; of which *Sidon* was given up by the Inhabitants; *Tyrus* by the Garrison, falling to mutiny against their Captain, who trusting to the strength of it, had made great vaunts, but was pardoned by *Ptolomy*, and honourably entertained in respect of his fidelity.

## §. VII.

*How Seleucus recovered Babylon, and made himself Lord of many Countries in the highest Asia. The Era of the Kingdom of the Greeks, which began with the Dominion of Seleucus.*

**W**HILE *Ptolomy* followed his business with such prosperity, *Seleucus* took leave of him, and went up to *Babylon*, to try his own fortune; which he found so favourable, that recovering first his own Province, he became at length master of the better part of *Alexanders* purchases.

This expedition of *Seleucus* was very strange, and full of unlikelyhoods. His train consisted of no more than eighteen hundred foot, and two hundred horse, a number too small to have been placed as Garrison, in some one of those main great Cities, against which he carried it into the higher *Asia*. But little force is needfull, to make way into strong places, for him that already stands possessed of their hearts, which dwell within the walls. The name of *Seleucus* was enough; whom the *Babylonians* had found so good a Governour, that none of them would find courage to resist him; but left that work to *Antigonus* his own men, wishing them ill to speed. Some of the *Macedonians* that were in those Countries, had the like affection; others made a countenance of warre, which by easie compulsion they left off, and followed new Ensignes. This added courage to the people, who came in apace, and submitted themselves joyfully to *Seleucus*. In a defection so general, it was not a safe course for the *Antigonians*, to thrust themselves into the Towns of most importance: for every man of them should have been troubled with daily enemies in his own lodging. It remained that they should issue forth into the field, and try the matter by fight. But the treason of one principall man, who revolted to the enemy, with more than a thousand Souldiers following him, so dismayed the rest, that

country did no more than seek to make good one strong place, wherein were kept the Hostages and Prisoners, that *Antigonus* held for his security in those quarters. This Castle belike they had not fortified in times of leisure, against dangers, that were not then apparent. *Selucus* quickly took it, and lo got the entire possession of *Mesopotamia* and *Babylon*, both which were in *Media* and *Persia*, forces convenient for defence of those Provinces, that were the utmost of his Dominion. In the Countries about *Euphrates* he had not done the like, for his own great Army lay between them and all enemies. Therefore when the victory at *Gaza* had opened unto *Selucus* the way into those parts, he found little impediment in the rest of his business. Having now gotten what he sought, he began to seek how he might keep his getting: for his own forces were too small, and his friends were ill able to lend him any more. That which his friends could do for him, his enemies did. *Nicanor*, to whom *Antigonus* had committed his Army in *Media*, joining unto himself, out of *Persia* and other Countries, all needfull help came, with ten thousand Foot, and seven thousand Horse, either to save all from being lost, or to drive *Selucus* out of that which he had won.

Against this power, *Selucus* had only four hundred Horse, and somewhat above three thousand Foot, wherewith to oppose himself: his large Conquest of unwarlike Nations having yielded him many loving Subjects, but few Souldiers. Therefore when his enemies were near to the River of *Tigris*, he withdrew himself from the place where his resistance was expected, into certain marshes not farre off, where he lay secretly waiting for some advantage. *Nicanor* thought that he had been fled, and was the less careful in fortifying his Camp. In recompence of this vain security, his Camp was taken by surprise, the first night of his arrival; the *Satrapa*, or Lieutenant, of *Persia*, together with sundry of the Captains, were slain; he himself was driven to flee for his life into the deserts, and the whole Army yielded unto *Selucus*: whose gentle demeanour, after the victory, drew all *Media*, *Sassana*, and the Neighbour Provinces, to acknowledge him their Lord without any further stroke stricken.

His victory of *Selucus* gave beginning unto the new stile, of *The Kingdome of the Greeks*; an account much used by the *Jews*, *Chaldeans*, *Syrians*, and other Nations, in those parts. I will not make any long disputation about the first year of this *Era*. The authority of that great Astrologer *Ptolomy*, from which there is no appeal, makes it plain, that the five hundred and nineteenth year of Nabonassar, was the fourscore and second year of this account. Other inference hereupon is needlesse, than that note of the learned *Gauricus*. That the first of these years was reckoned compleat, at *Babylon*, together with the end of four hundred thirty and eight years after Nabonassar. With the observation of the *Saturn*, recorded by *Ptolomy*, agrees (as it ought) the calculation of *Bunting*, finding the same Planet to have been so placed in the sign of *Virgo*, as the *Chaldeans* had observed it, in the same year; which was from Nabonassar the five hundred and nineteenth, from *Selucus* the fourscore & second year, and the last of the hundred thirty and seventh Olympiad. These observations of the celestiall bodies, are the surest marks of time: from which he that wilfully varies, is inexcusable. As for such occurrences in History, and the years of succeeding Princes (that are not seldom ambiguous, by reason of unremembered fractions) if they seem to be here-against, it is not greatly materiall. Yet thus much is worthy of note; that these years of the *Greeks* were not reckoned in all Countries from one beginning; as plainly appears in the difference of one year, that is found between actions, related by the severall Authors of the two Books of the *Maccabees*, who follow divers accounts. He that shall adhere to the time defined by *Ptolomy*, may apply the other supputations thereunto, as being no farther from it, than a years distance.

## s. VIII.

*How Ptolomy lost all he won in Syria. What the causes were of the quiet obedience, performed unto the Macedonians, by those that had been subject unto the Persian Empire. Of divers petty enterprizes, taken in hand by Antigonus and Demetrius, with ill successe.*

IN a happy hour did *Selucus* adventure to goe up to *Babylon*, with so few men as his friend could then well spare: for had he staid longer upon hope of getting more Souldiers, *Ptolomy* could have spared him none at all. *Demetrius* the son of *Antigonus*, having lost the battail at *Gaza*, received from *Ptolomy* all his own goods, his Pages, and Servants, in free gift, and therewithall a courteous message, to this effect: That no personal hatred was the ground of this War, which he and his Confederates held with *Antigonus*; but only termes of honour, wherein they would seek to right themselves after such manner, that other friendly Offices, without reference to the quarrell, should not be forgotten.

This Noble dealing of *Ptolomy*, did kindle in *Demetrius* an earnest desire of requiting him with some as brave liberality. Which to effect, he gathered together the remainder of his broken troups; drew as many as could be spared, out of the Garrisons in *Cilicia*, or other Provinces thereabouts, and advertising his Father of his misfortune, begged him to send a new supply, wherewith he might redeem his honour lost. *Antigonus* upon the first news of this overthrow, had said, That the victory which *Ptolomy* won upon a beardless Boy, should be taken from him by bearded men: yet upon desire that his son, whom he tenderly loved, should amend his own reputation, he was content to make a stand in *Phrygia*. *Ptolomy* hearing of *Demetrius* his preparations, did nevertheless follow his own business in *Callosyria*, thinking it enough to spend part of his Army under *Cilles* his Lieutenant, against the remnant of those that had been already vanquished, when *Cilles* too much undervalued the power of such an Enemy. Hee thought that this young Gallant, having lately saved his life by flight, would now be more careful of having a fair way at his back, than adventurous in setting further forward, than urgent reason should provoke him. In this confidence he passed on without all fear, as one that were already Master of the field, and should meet with none, that would issue out of their places of strength, to make resistance. When *Demetrius* was informed of this carelesse march; he took the lightest of his Army, and made his journey with such diligence, one whole night, that early in the morning, he came upon *Cilles* unexpected, and was on the suddain, without any battail, Master of his Camp: taking him alive, with his Souldiers, and their carriages all at once.

This exploit served not only to repair the credit of *Demetrius*, which his losse at *Gaza* had almost ruined: but further it enabled him, to recompence the bounty of *Ptolomy*, with equall favour, in restoring to him *Cilles*, with many other of his friends, accompanied with rich presents. But neither was *Ptolomy* so weakened by this losse, nor *Demetrius* so emboldened by his victory, that any matter of consequence thereupon ensued. For *Demetrius* feared the coming of *Ptolomy*, and therefore he fortified himself in places of advantage: *Ptolomy* on the other side was loth to engage himself in an enterprize, wherein he might perceive, that if the coming of *Antigonus* found him entangled, he should either be driven to make a shamefull retreat, or a dangerous adventure of his whole estate, in hope of not much more than already he possessed.

*Antigonus*, indeed, was nothing slow in his way towards *Syria*; whither hee made all haste, not so much to relieve his son, as to embrace him. For he rejoiced exceedingly, that the young man had so well acquitted himself, and being left to his own advice, performed the office of a good Commander. Wherefore to increase the reputation of this late victory, he brought such forces, as might serve to re-conquer all *Syria*; meaning, that the honour of all should be referred unto the good foundation laid by his son, whom from this time forwards, he imploied in matters of greatest importance.

*Ptolomy* had now lesse reason to encounter with *Antigonus*, than before his coming to have assailed the Camp of *Demetrius*. Yet he made it a matter of consultation; as if he

he had dared more than he meant. But all his Captains advised him to retire into *Egypt*, alleging many good arguments to that purpose: which they might well perceive to be agreeable to his own intent, by his propounding that course; not without remembrance of the good success against *Perdiccas*, in the like defensive war. So he departed out of *Syria*, preserving his honour, as being rather led by mature deliberation, than any sudden passion of fear: and he departed at fair leisure, not onely carrying his treasures along with him, but staying to dismantle some principal Cities, that he thought most likely to trouble him in the future. All the Country that he left at his back, fell precisely to *Antigonus*, without putting him to the trouble of winning it by pieces: so easie was it in those times, for the Captain of a strong Army, to make himself Lord of a great Province.

We may justly wonder, that these Kingdoms of *Syria*, *Media*, *Babylon*, and many other Nations, (which the victory of *Alexander* had over-run with so hasty a course, as gave him not leisure to take any good view of them) were so easily held not onely by himself, but by the Captains of his Army after him. The hot contentions for superiority between the King of *Israel*, and those of *Damascus*; between *Egypt*, and *Babylon*, *Babylon* and *Nineve*; the *Persians* and many Countries; argue a more impatient temper, to have once been in those people; which are now so patient of a foreign yoke, that like Sheep or Oxen, they suffer themselves to be distributed, fought for, won, lost, and again recovered by contentious Masters; as if they had no title to their own heads, but were born to follow the fortune of the *Macedonians*. This will appear the more strange, if we shall consider, how the severall States of *Greece* (many of which had never possessed so large Dominion, as might cause their spirits to swell beyond their ability) did greedily embrace all occasions of liberty: and how these proud Conquerours were glad to offer it, desiring to have them rather friends than servants, for fear of further inconvenience.

It must therefore be noted, that most of these Countries had alwayes been subject unto the rule of Kings, or petty Lords, whom the *Babylonians* and *Persians* long since had rooted out, and held them in such bondage, that few of them knew any other Law, than the command of forraign Masters. This had utterly taken from them all remembrance of home-born Princes, and incorporated them into the great body of the *Persian* Empire: so that wanting within themselves all sovereign power, or high authority, the life and spirit of every Estate; they lay as dead, and were bereaved of motion, when that Kingdom fell, whereof they lately had been members.

Why the *Persian* Satraps, or Princes of that Empire, did not when *Darius* was taken from them, as the *Macedonian* Captains, after the death of *Alexander*, strive to lay hold upon those Provinces, which had many ages bin subject unto them, and scarce four years in quiet possession of their enemies; or why at least they contended not (when the terrible name of that great Conquerour did cease to affright them) to get their shares among his followers, if not wholly to dispossesse them of their new purchases: it is a question wherein, who is not satisfied, may find no lesse reason to suspect the History, than authority to confirm it. For we seldome read, that any small Kingdom, prevailing against a far greater, hath made so entire a conquest, in the compass of ten years, as left unto the vanquished no hope of recovery, nor means to rebell; especially when such disorders, or rather utter confusion hath ensued, by the fury of civill war among the Viders.

The cause why the *Macedonians* held so quietly the *Persian* Empire, is well set down by *Machiavell*, and concerns all other Kingdoms, that are subject unto the like form of Government: the sum whereof is this; Wheresoever the Prince doth hold all his Subjects under the condition of slaves, there is the conquest easie, and soon assured: Where ancient Nobility is had in due regard, there is it hard to win all, and harder to keep that which is won. Examples of this are the Turkish Empire, and the Kingdom of *France*. If any invader should prevail so far upon Turkie, that the great *Sultan* and his Children (for Brethren he useth not to suffer alive) were taken or slain: the whole Empire would quickly bee wonne, and easily kept, without any danger of rebellion. For the Basses, how great soever they may seem, are meer slaves: neither is there in all that large Dominion, any one man, whose personall regard could get the people to follow him in such an attempt, wherein hope of private gain should not

countervail

countervail all apparent matter of fear. Contrariwise, in *France*, it were not enough for him that would make a conquest, to get into his hands the King and his Children; though he further got the better part of the Country, and were by farre the strongest in the field. For, besides the Princes of the Royall blood, there are in that Kingdom store of great men, who are mighty in their severall Countries, and having certain Royalties and Principalities of their own, are able to raise Warre in all quarters of the Realm; whereunto the remembrance of their own ancient Families, and long continued Nobility, will always stirre up and inflame them: so that untill every one piece were won, and every one (an endlessse work) of the chief Nobility brought under or destroyed, the victory were not compleat, nor well assured. It is true, that such power of the Nobility, doth often-times make way for an Invader; to whom the discontentments of a few can easily make a fair entrance. But such assistants are not so easily kept, as they are gotten; for they look to be satisfied at full, in all their demands; and having what they would, they soon return to their old allegiance, upon condition to keep what they have, unlesse they be daily hired with new rewards: wherein it is hard to please one man, without offending another as good as himself. The *Turk*, on the other side, needs not to fear any peril, that might arise from the discontented spirits of his principall men. The greatest mischief that any of them could work against him, were the betraying of some frontier Town, or the wilfull losse of a battail: which done, the Traitor hath spent his sting, and must either fly to the enemy, whereby he loseth all that hee formerly did hold; or else, in hope of doing some further harm, he must adventure to excuse himself unto his Master, who seldome forgives the Captain, that hath not striven by desperate valour against misfortune. As for making head, or arming their followers against the great *Sultan*, and so joyning themselves unto any Invader; it is a matter not to be doubted: for none of them have any followers or dependants at all, other than such as are subject unto them, by vertue of their Offices and Commissions. Now as this base condition of the principall men, doth leave unto them no means, whereby to oppose themselves against the flourishing estate of their Prince; so would it weaken both their power and their courage in giving him assistance, if adversity should make him stand in need of them. For there is scarce any one among the *Turks* Basses, or Provinciall Governours, that knows either from whence he was brought, or from whom descended, nor any one among them, that by the losse and utter ruin of the *Turkish* Empire, can lose any foot of his proper inheritance; and it is the proper inheritance of the subject, which is also a Kingdom unto him, which makes him fight with an armed heart against the Conquerour, who hath no other device painted on his Ensigne, than the picture of slavery.

As in the *Turkish* Empire, so was the *Persian*, void of liberty in the Subjects, and utterly destitute of other Nobility, than such as depended upon meer favour of the Prince. Some indeed there were of the Royall blood, and others, descended from the Princes that joynd with *Darius*, the Son of *Hystaspes*, in oppressing the *Magi*; these were men of reputation in *Persia*, but their reputation consisted onely in their Pedigree, and their safety in not meddling with affaires of State, which made them little esteemed. In what small account these *Persian* Princes were held, it may appear by this, that the Kings Uncles, Cousin Germans, and Brethren, were called by the Kings, *Their Slaves*, and so did stile themselves, in speaking unto these great Monarchs. That upon every light occasion of displeasure they were handled as Slaves, it is easie to bee discerned, in that example of cruelty, practised by *Xerxes* upon his own brother *Mastizes*; which hath been formerly noted, in place more convenient. As for the *Satraps*, or Governours of the Provinces, it is needlesse to cite examples, proving them to have been meer slaves: it may suffice, that their heads were taken from them at the Kings will; that is, at the will of those Women and Eunuchs, by whom the King was governed.

To this want of Nobility in *Persia*, may be added the generall want of liberty convenient among the people: a matter no lesse available, in making easie and sure the conquest of a Nation, than is the cause assigned by *Machiavell*. For as *Asiops* his Asse did not care to run from the enemies, because it was not possible, that they should load him with heavier burthens, than his Master caused him daily to bear: so the Nations, that endure the worst under their own Princes, are not greatly fearfull of a forraign yoke;

Not

Nor will be hasty to shake it off, if by experience they find it more light, than was that whereunto they had been long accustomed. This was it that made the *Gauls* conquer Britain faithful ally to the Kings of England; for that they governed more mildly than the *French*: this enlarged the *Venetian* jurisdiction in *Lombardy*; for the Towns that they won, they won out of the hands of Tyrannous oppressors: & this did cause the *Macedonians*, with other Nations, that had been subject unto the posterity of *Alexander's* followers, to serve the *Romans* patiently, if not willingly; for that by their Kings were eased of many burthens, which had been imposed upon them by their own Kings.

So that of this tameness, which we find in those that had been subjects of the *Persian* Kings, the reasons are apparent. Yet some of these there were, that could not easily be captained in good order by the *Macedonians*: for they had not indeed been absolutely conquered by the *Persian*. Such were the *Sogdians*, *Bactrians*, and other Nations about the *Caspian* Sea. Such also were the *Arabians*, bordering upon *Syria*: against whom *Antigonus* sent part of his Army, thinking therewith to bring them under, rather to get a rich booty. The Captains that he sent, fell upon the *Nabathians*, at such time as they were busied in a great Mart; wherein they traded with the more remote *Arabians*, for Mirrh, Frankincense, & other such commodities. All or most of these rich wares, together with five hundred talents of silver, and many prisoners, the *Macedonians* laid hold upon: for their coming was sudden & unexpected. But ere they could recover *Syria*, the *Nabathians* overtook them; & finding them weary with long marches, made such a slaughter, that of four thousand foot, and six hundred horse, only fifty horse escaped. To revenge this losse, *Demetrius* was set out with a great power: yet all in vain; for he was not resisted by any Army, but by the naturall defence of a vast Wilderness; lack of water, and of all things necessary. Therefore he was glad to make peace with them; wherein hee lost not much honour: for they craved it, and gave him presents. Returning from the *Nabathians*, he viewed the Lake *Asphaltites*, whence hee conceived hope of great profit that might be raised, by gathering the Sulphure. With this good husbandry of his son, *Antigonus* was well pleased, and appointed mento the work: but they were slain by the *Arabians*, and so that hope vanished.

These petty enterprises, with the ill successe accompanying them, had much impaired the good advantage against *Ptolemy*: when the news of *Seleucus* his victories in the high Countries, married all together. For neither was the losse of those great and wealthy Provinces, a matter to be neglected, neither was it safe to transport the warre into the parts beyond *Euphrates*, whereby *Syria* and the lower *Asia* should have been exposed to the danger of ill-affected Neighbours. A middle course was thought the best; and *Demetrius* with fifteen thousand foot, and three thousand horse, was sent against *Seleucus*. These forces being sent away, *Antigonus* did nothing, and his son did lesse. For *Seleucus* was then in *Media*, his Lieutenants about *Babylon* withdrew themselves from necessity of fight; some places they fortified and kept; *Demetrius* could hold nothing that he got, without setting in Garrison more men than hee could spare, neither did he get much; and therefore was faine to set out the bravery of his expedition, by burning and spoiling the Country; which he did thereby the more alienate, and as it were acknowledge to belong unto his enemy, who therewith held it as his own assured.

*Antigonus* had laid upon his son a peremptory commandement, to return unto him at a time prefixed: reasonably thinking (as may seem) that in such an unsettled state of things, either the Warre might be ended, by the fury of the first brunt; or else it would be vain to strive against all difficulties likely to arise, where want of necessities should frustrate the valour, that by strength of time was like to become lesse terrible to the Enemy. *Demetrius* therefore leaving behind him five thousand foot, and a thousand horse, rather to make shew of continuing the warre, than to effect much, where himself with greater forces could do little more than nothing, forsook the enterprise, and went back to his Father.

## S. IX.

A generall peace made and broken. How all the house of Alexander was destroyed.

THESE ambitious heads, having thus wearied themselves with unseasonable travel, in seeking to get more than any one of them could hold; were contented at length to come to an agreement: wherein it was concluded, that each of them should hold quietly, that which at the present he had in possession. As no private hatred, but meer desire of Empire, had moved them to enter into the war; so was it no friendly reconciliation, but only a dulnesse growing upon the slow advancement of their severall hopes, that made them willing to breathe awhile, till occasion might better serve to fight again.

Besides that main point, Of retaining the Provinces which every man held, there were two Articles of the peace, that gave a fair, but a false colour, to the business. That the son of Alexander by Roxane, should be made King when he came to full age; and, That all the Estates of Greece should be set at libertie. The advancement of young Alexander to his Fathers kingdom, seems to have been a matter forcibly extorted from *Antigonus*, in whom was discovered a purpose, to make himself Lord of all. But this indeed, most nearly touched *Cassander*. For in his custodie was the young Prince and his Mother; neither did he keep them in a sort answerable to their degree; but as close prisoners, taken in that warre, wherein they had seen the old Queen *Olympias* taken and murdered, that sought to put them in possession of the Empire. The mutuall hatred and fear between them, rooted in these grounds, of injuries done, and revenge expected; upon this conclusion of peace, grew up faster than any time before, in the heart of *Cassander*: who saw the *Macedonians* turn their favourable expectation, towards the son of their late renowned King.

All this either little concerned *Antigonus*; or tended greatly to his good. The young Prince must first have possession of *Macedon*: whereby *Cassander* should be reduced to his poor office of Captain over a thousand men, if not left in worse case. As for them that held Provinces abroad, they might either do as they had done under *Antigonus*; or better, as being better acquainted with their own strength. He in the mean time, by his readiness to acknowledge the true Heir, had freed himself from that ill-favoured imputation, of seeking to make himself Lord of all that *Alexander* had gotten.

The like advantage had he in that Article, of restoring the Greeks to their libertie. This libertie had hitherto been the subject of much idle discourse; but it never took effect. *Antigonus* held scarce any Town of theirs, *Cassander* occupied most of the Countries: which if he should set free, he must be a poor Prince; if not, there was matter enough of quarrell against him, as against a Disturber of the common peace.

In the mean season, the Countries lying between *Euphrates* and the *Greek* seas, together with a great Armie, and money enough to entertain a greater, might serve to hold up the credit of *Antigonus*, and to raise his hopes as high as ever they had been.

With much disadvantage doe many men contend against one that is equal to them all in puissance. *Cassander's* friends had left him in an ill case; but he could not doe without all: for where every one mans help is necessary to the warre, there may any one make his own peace; but no one can stand out alone, when all the rest are weary. The best way, that he knew all their affections: which tended to no such end as the becoming Subjects unto any man, much less to the son of an *Asiatic* woman, of whom they had long since refused to hear mention. Therefore he took a short course, and caused both the child and his Mother to be slain: freeing thereby himself in a trice, from the dangerous necessity of yielding up his government, which he must have done when the child had come to age. Roxane was a Lady of singular beauty, which was perhaps the cause why *Perdiccas* desired to have her son; being as yet unborn, proclaimed Heir to the great Alexander. Immediately upon the death of Alexander, she had used the favour (if it were not love) of *Perdiccas*, to the satisfying of her own bloody make, upon *Stratonice*, the Daughter of King *Darius*, whom Alexander had likewise married, according to the custome of those Countries, wherein pluralitie of wives is held no crime. For having by a counterfeit Letter, in Alexander's name, gotten his poor Lady into her hands, shee did, by assistance of *Perdiccas*, murder her and her Sister; and threw their bodies

bodies into a Well, causing it to be filled up with earth. But now, by Gods just vengeance, were she and her son made away, in the like secret fashion; even at such time as the neerer approaching hope of a great Empire had made her life, after a wearisome imprisonment, grow dearer unto her than it was before.

The fact of *Cassander* was not so much detested in outward shew; as inwardly it was pleasing unto all the rest of the Princes. For now they held themselves free Lords of all that they had under them; fearing none other change of their estates, than such as might arise by chance of warre; wherein every one perswaded himself of successe, rather better than worse. Hereupon all of them (except *Lysimachus* and *Seleucus*, that had work enough at home) began to rowze themselves: as if now the time were come, for each man to improve his own stock. *Antigonus* his Lieutenants were busie in *Peloponnesus*, and about *Hellepont*: while their Master was careful in following other, and some greater matters that were more secretly to be handled. He pretended the libertie of *Greece*: yet did the same argument minister unto *Ptolemy* matter of quarrell, against both him and *Cassander*; *Ptolemy* complaining (as if he had taken the matter deeply to heart) that *Antigonus* had put Garrisons into some Towns, which ought, in fair dealing, to be set at liberty. Under colour of redressing this enormitie, he sent an Army into *Asia*, where he won four Towns, and soon after lost them, without much labour of his own or his enemies.

After this, putting to sea with a strong Fleet, he ran along the coast of *Asia*, winning many places: and in that voyage allured unto him a nephew of *Antigonus* (a good Commander, but discontented with the ill requitall of his services) whom finding shortly, as false to himself as he had been to his own Uncle, he was faine to put to death. But in doing these things; his desire to set the *Greeks* at libertie, appeared not so plain, as he wished that it should: for their cause was no way bettered by his molesting *Antigonus* in *Asia*. Therefore to get the love of that valiant Nation, he made at the last an expedition into *Greece*: it self: where having set free some little Ilands, and landed in *Peloponnesus*, he raised so great an expectation of finishing the long-desired work, that *Crateipolis*, the Widow of *Alexander*, *Polyperchon* his son, gave up into his hands the Towns of *Sicyon* and *Corinth*.

*Ptolemy* had conceived a vain belief, that the *Greeks*, emboldened by his countenance and assistance, would all of them take heart and rise up in arms; whereby with little labour their libertie might be gotten, and he be acknowledged as Author of this immortal Benefit. But long servitude had well-near extinguished the ancient valour of that Nation: and their ill fortune, in many likely attempts to recover freedome, had so tired their spirits, that they would no more stir in pursueth thereof; but sat idly still, as wishing it to fall into their mouths.

The *Lacedamonians*, about these times, began to fortifie their Town with walls; trusting no longer in their vertue (for both it, and the discipline that upheld it, were too much impaired) that had been a wall to their Town and Territorie.

The *Athenians* were become as humble servants, as they had been in times past insolent Masters: erecting as many statues in honour of *Demetrius Phalerus*, as there were daies in the year. This *Demetrius* was now their Governour; and he governed them with much moderation: but in spite of their hearts, as being set over them by *Cassander*. By this base temper of the principall Cities, it is easie to gather, how the rest of the Country stood affected. *Ptolemy* could not get them to set their helping hands to their own good, and to furnish him with the promised supplies of money and victuals. Credible it is, that he had a true meaning to deliver them from thralldome; as judging the commoditie that would arise by annexing them to his partie, a matter of more weight than the losse that *Cassander* should receive thereby, who could hardly retain them, if once *Antigonus* took the work in hand. But when he found such difficultie in the businesse, hee changed his purpose: and renewing his former friendship with *Cassander*, he retained *Sicyon* and *Corinth* in his own possession.

Before the coming of *Ptolemy* into *Greece*, *Cassander* had been held occupied with every much work. For (besides his pains taken in warres among barbarous Princes) hee found means to allure unto himself the Lieutenants of *Antigonus*, that were in *Peloponnesus*, and about *Hellepont*: making his own advantage of their discontentments. By the like skillfull practice hee freed himself from a greater danger, and made

those murthers which he had committed seeme the lesse odious, by teaching his enemies to doe the like. Old *Polyperchon*, that had made to great a stir in the reign of *Aridans*, did after the death of *Roxane* and her child, enter again upon the Stage: leading in his hand another son of the great *Alexander*, and meaning to place him in his Fathers Throne.

The name of this young Prince was *Heracles*: he was begotten on *Barine* the daughter of *Artabazus* a *Persian*, but had been lesse esteemed than the son of *Roxane*, either for that his Mother was held no better than a Concubine, or else perhaps, in regard of the favour which *Perdiccas*, and after him *Olympias*, did bear unto *Roxane*. At this time the death of his brother had moved such compassion, and regard of his being *Alexander* only living child, had procured unto him such good will; that the demand which *Polyperchon* made in his behalf, was deemed very just and honourable. There were indeed more hearts than hands, that joyed with this young Prince: yet wanted he not sufficient strength of hands, if the heart of him that least ought, had not been most false. *Cassander* had raised an Armie to withstand his entrie into *Macedonia*; but hee could hee repose in that Armie, whose wilhes he perceived to be with *Hetæra*. Therefore hee allured *Polyperchon* himself with gifts and promises; whereby at length he prevailed so far, that the old Villain was consented to murder his Popill; choosing rather with many carkes and foul dishonour, to take the offered Lordship of *Peloponnesus*, and Commander of an Armie, than to purchase a noble fame with dangerous travell, in maintaining his faith, unto both his dead and living Sovereigns.

*Antigonus* had not all this while bin asleep; though his losses were hitherto the chief wretchedness of his having been a stirrer in these commotions. He thought it enough for him at the present to retain his own: and therefore took order for the recovery of those places which *Ptolemy* had taken pains to win. As for the rest, it was now grievous unto him to see *Cassander* incur the generall hatred of men by committing those injuries of which the profit was like to redound unto him that was the most powerful; or to see *Polyperchon* and *Ptolemy* sweat in a busie war against *Cassander*. If they would have composed their quarrels, he could well have afforded them leisure; and have thought the time well spent in beholding their contentions. For he was thoroughly perswaded, that when the rest had wearied themselves in vain with long strife, his armies and treasures, wherein he excelled them all, would bring all under. According to these haughtie conceits, he demeaned himself among his followers; looking big upon them, and like a King before his time. This was it that caused so many of them to revolt from him: but it was no great losse to be forsaken by those that looked with envious eyes upon that fortune whereto their own should have depended. Against this envy of his men, and the malice of others, *Antigonus* busily sought a remedie, such as was like to give him a goodly title to the whole Empire.

*Glæpatra*, Sister unto the great *Alexander* lay for the most part in *Sardis*; whom he had a great desire to take to wife. This his desire was not without good hope; for howsoever she discovered much unwillingnesse thereunto; yet was she in his power, and might therefore be entreated, were it only for fear of being enforced. But it was not his purpose to get her by compulsive means: either because his fancy, being an old man, was not over-violent; or rather because his ambition, whereunto all his affections had reference, could have made small use of her, by doing such apparent wrong. She had been married unto *Alexander* King of *Epirus*, after whose death she came to her brother in *Asia*, hoping belike to find a new husband in his Camp. But neither any of those brave Captains, that were, in times following, so hot in love with her, durst then aspire unto her marriage: nor did her brother, full of other cares, trouble himself providing her of a husband. She therefore, being a lustie widow, suffered her blood to far to prevail against her honour, that she supplied the want of an husband by entertainement of Paramours. *Alexander* hearing of this, turned it to a jest, saying, That she was his sister, and must be allowed this libertie, as her portion of the Empire. When by his death the Empire lay in a manner void; and the portion due to her therein grew, in mens opinion, greater than it had been: then did many seek to obtaine her, while shee her self desired only a proper man, with whom shee might lead a merry life. To this purpose did she invite *Demetrius* unto her; who made great haste, but was cut off by death ere he came to her presence. Now at the last, after long







the great victory of Demetrius against Ptolemie in Cyprus. How Antigonus and Demetrius took upon them the rule of Kings; wherein others followed their example.

For this his glorious work, Antigonus called away Demetrius, unto a businesse of greater difficultie; meaning to employ his service against Ptolemie, in Cyprus. Before his departure out of Greece, he was willing to establish a generall Council, that should treat of matters concerning the common good of the Countrey. About the same time Antigonus withdrew his own Garrison out of Imbros, committing their liberty into the peoples hands; whereby it might appear, that as he would not permit any other to oppress the Greeks, so would he be farre from doing it himselfe. This was enough to hold his reputation high, among these new purchased Friends; it followed, that he should convert his forces, to the winning of ground upon his Enemies.

A Tragical Tragedie had lately hapned in Cyprus, through the indiscretion of Menelaus, Ptolemies brother, and his Lieutenant in that Isle. Nicoteles, King of Paphos, was entered into some practice with Antigonus: yet not so far that he thought himself past excuse, by which confidence, he was perhaps the more easily detected. To cut off this occasion, and the full-hearted King of Paphos at one blow, Menelaus was sent thither, who surrounding Nicoteles his house with Souldiers, required in Ptolemies name, to have him delivered to the death. Nicoteles offered to clear himself; but Menelaus told him, that he he must, and bad him come forth quietly. This desperate necessitie caused the unhappy King to rid himself of life: and his death strook such an impression into his wives mind, that she not onely slew her self, but perswaded the wives of her husbands brethren to do the like. Also those brethren of Nicoteles, unto whom Ptolemie had intended no ill, being amazed with the suddenness of this calamitie, did hur up the Palace, and setting on fire, consumed it, with all that was in it, and themselves together.

Whatsoever the crime objected was, Nicoteles perished as a man innocent, because he was not suffered to make his answer. Of this sad accident, though Menelaus deserved the blame, for his rigorous proceeding; yet it is to be thought, that much dislike fell also upon Ptolemie: as men that are grieved, cast an ill affection even upon those that gave the first ill removed occasion.

Not long after this, Demetrius came into Cyprus, with a power sufficient, against any opposition that Ptolemie was like to make. The Cypriots did little or nothing against him, either because they had small strength, or for that they held it a matter indifferent, whom they acknowledged as their Lord, being sure that they should not themselves have the rule of their own Countrey. Menelaus therefore, out of his Garrisons, drew forth an Armie, and fought with Demetrius. But he was beaten, and driven to save himself within the walls of Salamis, where he was so hardly besieged, that without strong succour, he had no likelihood to make good the place, much lesse to retain possession of the whole Island. His greatest help at the present was the fidelitie of his Souldiers, whom no rewards could win from him, nor good usage (when any of them were taken prisoners, and inrolled in the enemies bands) keep from returning to him, with the first opportunity. Most of them were Mercenaries: but all their goods were in Egypt, which was enough to keep them faithfull. Yet could not this their resolution have stood long against the odds of number, which Demetrius had of men as resolute, and against his terrible Engines of batterie, if Ptolemie had not hastied to the rescue.

Ptolemie brought with him a hundred and forty Gallies, besides two hundred ships of burden, for transporting his Armie and Carriages. This Fleet made a terrible show, when it was descried a-farre; though more than half of it was unfit for service in fight at Sea. Wherefore to make the opinion of his forces the more dreadful, Ptolemie sent unto Demetrius a threatening message: willing him to be gone, unless he would be overwhelmed with multitudes, and trampled to death in a throng. But this young gallant repaid him with words of as much braverie; promising to let him escape, upon condition, that he should withdraw his Garrisons out of Sydon and Corinib.

Demetrius had no more than one hundred and eighteen Gallies; but they were, for the most part, greater than those of Ptolemie, better stored with weapons fit for that service;

vice; and very well furnished with Engines in the prows, to beat upon the enemy. Nevertheless he stood in great doubt of threefold Gallies that lay in the Haven of Salamis, with Menelaus with them should set upon his back; in which case, it was very likely that all would goe very ill with him. Against this mischief, he bestowed ten of his own Gallies in the mouth of that Haven, to keep Menelaus from issuing forth; and setting his men on the shore, to give what assistance they could, he with the rest of the Fleet, went to Sea against Ptolemie.

The fight began early in the morning, and continued long, with doubtfull successe. The generals were not ranged opposite one to the other, but held each of them the left wing of his own fleet. Each of them prevailed against the squadron where with he encountered; but the successe of Demetrius was to better purpose. For his victory in one part was such, as caused others to fall out of order, and finally drove all to break themselves unto speedy flight. As for Ptolemie, he was faine to leave his advantage upon the enemy in one part of the fight, that he might relieve and animate those of his own which needed him in another: wherein he found his losse over-great to be repaired, by continuing any longer against the fortune of that day; and therefore he laboured busily to get himself, in hope of better event, that might follow some other time.

There fell out in this battell an unusual accident, yet was the victory greater than had been expected. The occasions whereof were partly the great skill in Sea-arts, which the Greeks and Phœnicians, that were with Demetrius, had, above those which followed Ptolemie: partly the good furniture of the Ships, wherein consisted no less than in the qualitie of those with whom they were manned. Further, we may easily judge, that the two hundred ships of burthen, carrying the strength of Ptolemies Army, did not more encourage his own men, and terrifie his enemies the day before the fight, than breed in each part the contrarie affections, when in the beginning of the fight they fell off, and stood aloof. For though it were fitting that they should so doe; yet a multitude, prepossessed with vain conceits, will commonly apprehend very slight occasions to think themselves abandoned. Besides all this, the expectation that Menelaus, issuing with his fleet out of Salamis, should charge the enemies in stern, was utterly frustrated. He was kept in perforce, by the ten ships appointed to bar up the mouth of the Haven; which they manfully performed, as great necessity required.

Such disappointment of expectation doth much abate the courage of men in fight; especially of the assailants: whereas on the contrary, they that find some part of their fears vain, doe easily gather hopefull spirits, and conceive an opinion of their own ability, to doe more than they thought upon, out of their not suffering the harm that they had imagined.

Whatsoever the causes of this victorie were, the fruit was very great. For Ptolemie had no more than eight Gallies that accompanied him in his flight: all the rest of his fleet was either taken or sunk. Neither did Menelaus any longer strive against the violence of forty ships; but yielded up all that he held in Cyprus, together with his Armie, consisting of twelve thousand foot, and a thousand and two hundred horse, and those Gallies in the Haven of Salamis. The same dejection of spirit was found in the common Souldier, as well that was taken at Sea, as that had served the Egyptian by Land; none of them repelling any more confidence in Ptolemie, but willingly becoming followers of a new Lord, whose Armie they now increased.

It was generally believed, that much more depended on the event of this fight, than the Ile of Cyprus, for which they contended. Wherefore the common expectation was great; especially Antigonus, whom it most concerned, was deeply perplexed with cares, thinking every day a year, till he were advertised of the issue. In this mood Aristodemus found him, a noble flatterer, whom Demetrius had honoured with the Message of these good newes. Aristodemus had bethought himself of a trick, whereby to double the welcome of his joyfull errand: Hee caused his ships to ride at Anchor, a good distance from the shore; he himself landed in a Cock-boar, which he sent immediately back to the ship; and so all alone he went forward, looking very sadly, that no part of his tidings might appear in his countenance. Report of his arrivall (for it was not known where he had been) came presently to Antigonus, who sent Messenger after Messenger to meet him on the way, and bring speedy word how all went. But neither any answer, nor so much of a look, as might intimate the purport of his errand, could be won from this de mure



the Tree it self with the more facility. To effect which, he resolved (leaving the great ones to grow awhile) to root up the Dependants of his Enemies: Dependants, whom the fore-named Confederates should be forc't either to relieve, or to lose; and hereby he doubted not to draw them into the field, where the advantage of power, and of all other warlike provision promised him victory.

At this time the Cite of *Rhodes* was very mighty, being well governed, and having long held it (in good Neutrality); it drew the better part of all the trade of those parts, and therein a great deal of riches to it self; to maintain which, and to increase it, it furnished and kept on the Seas a Fleet of well armed Ships, by which it not only bore off all Pyrates and petty Thieves, but the reputation of their strength was thereby so much increased, as all the neighbour Princes sought their alliance and confederacy.

It is so dangerous a time (in which they must either refuse all that sought them, and so stand friendlesse and apart; or joyn themselves to some one, and thereby forgoe the peace, by which their greatness had grown) their affections carried them to the *Egyptians*; both because the greatest part of their trade lay that way, as also for that *Antigonus* his disposition, greatness, and neighbourhood was feartfull unto them. This affection of theirs, with some other passages more apparent, gave argument of quarrel to *Antigonus*, who began to cleave himself against them by petty injuries, of taking some of their ships, with such other grievances; while he made a more weighty preparation, to pursue the War against them openly and strongly. All things soon after ordered according to the greatness of the enterprise, he employed his Son *Demetrius* against them in their own Land, who brought such terror upon the Citizens, that laying aside all respect of friendship and honour, they offered him their assistance and service against whomsoever *Demetrius* would have them; whence this change came, and that the alteration was perswaded by fear, and not by love, raised his demands to an intolerable height, requiring a hundred Hostages to be delivered him, and liberty to lodge in their Port as many ships of War as himself pleased. These conditions more properly to be imposed upon a State already conquered, than on those who as yet had heard of nothing but a confirmed assistance, restored unto the *Rhodians* their lost courage; & made them resolve to defend their liberty to the last man: this taught them to infranchise all their able bond-men, and wisely rather to make them their fellow-Citizens, than to make themselves fellow-slaves with them.

*Demetrius* having refused the fair conditions offered (as the *Rhodians* the fearfull ones propounded unto them) makes preparation for a long siege, and finding no appearance to carry the place in furie, he set in hand with his Engines of battery, in the invention and use of which, he did never shew himself a greater Artisan, than in this War. But in conclusion, after the Citizens had sustained all the assaults given them for a whole year, after many brave sallies out of the Town, and the famine which they endured within the Town, which had proved far more extreme, if *Ptolemy* had not with many hazzards relieved them, *Demetrius* by mediation of the *Grecian* Embassadors, gave over the siege; a hundred hostages they gave him for performance of the peace made, but with exception of all the Magistrates and Officers of the Cite.

Hereunto *Demetrius* was brought by the usual policie of War, and state: for while with the flower of all his fathers forces he lay before *Rhodes*, *Cassander* recovered many of those places in *Greece*, which *Demetrius* had formerly taken from him; neither did *Cassander* make the War as in former times, by practice and surprize, but by a strong and well compounded army, which he himself led as far as into *Attica*, and therewith greatly distressed and endangered *Athens* it self. On the other side (though, with lesse success) did *Polyperchon* invade *Peloponnesus*. These dangerous undertakings upon *Greece*, advised the *Athenians* and *Acadians* to dispatch their Embassadors towards *Demetrius*, and advised *Demetrius* rather to abandon the enterprise of *Rhodes*, than to abandon the great honour which he had formerly gotten by setting all *Greece* at liberty.

*Demetrius* was no sooner out of the Land, than that the *Rhodians* erected statues in honour of *Lysimachus* and *Cassander*; but for *Ptolemy*, whom they most affected, and from whom they received their most relief, they consulted with the Oracle of *Jupiter*, whether it were not lawfull to call him a god. The Priests which attended in the Temple of *Hamm*, gave the same fair answer for *Ptolemy*, which they had formerly done for *Alexander* his

his Master; for as *Alexander* consulted the Oracle with an Army at his heels, so was *Ptolemy* at this time Lord of the soil: and yet was this a far more cleanly creation than that done by the *Athenians*, who deified *Antigonus* and *Demetrius* by decree of the people. A mad age it was, when so many of *Alexander's* Captains could not content themselves with the stile of Kings, but that they would needs be called gods:

## S. III.

How *Demetrius* prevailed in *Greece*. *Cassander* desires peace of *Antigonus*, and cannot obtain it. Great preparations of War against *Antigonus*.

*Demetrius* comming with a strong Fleet and Armie into *Greece*, quickly drove *Cassander* out of *Attica*; and pursuing his fortune, chased him beyond the straits of *Thermopylae*. Herein his reputation did much avail him; which was so great, that six thousand of his enemies Souldiers revolted unto him. So, partly by the greatness of his name, partly by force, he recovered in short space all that *Cassander* held in those straits, and giving libertie unto the people, he bestowed upon the *Athenians* those pieces, which had been fortified against them, to block them up. Then went hee into *Peloponnesus*, where hee found the like, or more easie successe: for he suddenly took *Aegina*, *Corinth*, *Sicyon*, and the most of the Country, bestowing liberty upon such as needed it. The Town of *Sicyon* he translated by consent of the Citizens, from the old seat into another place, and called it after his own name, *Demetrius*. This done, he betook himself to his pleasure. At the *Isthman* games, hee caused himself to be proclaimed Captain General of *Greece*, as *Philip* and *Alexander* had been in former times: whereupon (as if he were now become as great as *Alexander*) hee despised all others, making it a matter of jest, that any, save himself or his father, should usurp the Name of King. But in his behaviour hee was so farre unlike to a King, that in all the time of his leaseure, hee deserved none other name than of a drunken Palliard. Yet were the *Athenians* as ready as ever to devise new honours for him: among which they made one Decree, That whatsoever King *Demetrius* should command, ought to be held sacred with the gods, and just with men.

All *Greece* being now at the disposition of *Antigonus*, *Cassander* stood in great fear, lest the war should fall heavily upon him in *Macedon*: which to avoyd; he knew no better way than to make peace with his enemies betimes. And to that purpose he sent *Emballadors*; but had no better answer from *Antigonus*, than that he should submit his whole estate to his discretion. This proud demand made him look about him, and labour hard in solliciting his friends, both to assist him, and take heed to themselves; neither found he them slow in apprehending the common danger: for *Lysimachus* knew that if once *Cassander* had lost *Macedon*, *Demetrius* would soon be Master of *Thrace*. Neither were *Petolomie* and *Selencus* ignorant of that which was like to befall them, if *Antigonus* were suffered to put himself in quiet possession of those Provinces in *Europe*. Wherefore it was agreed, that with joynt forces they should all together set upon the common enemy.

Hereof *Antigonus* had notice; but scorned all their preparations, saying, That he would easily scatter them, as a flock of birds are driven away with a stone. With these conceits he pleased himself, and no way hindred the proceedings of his Enemy. He lay at that time in his Town of *Antigonia* (a name that it must shortly lose) where he was carefully providing to set out some stately game and Pageants, in ostentation of his glory. But when was brought unto him the tumultuous newes of *Lysimachus* his victories about *Hellepont*; For *Cassander* had committed unto *Lysimachus* part of his forces, wherewith to passe over into *Asia*, while he himself with the rest should oppose *Demetrius* on *Europe* side. So *Lysimachus* passing the *Hellepont*, began to make hot War upon the Subjects of *Antigonus*; getting some of the Cities in those parts, to joyn with him by fair means: winning others by force, and wasting the Country round about.

To repress this unexpected boldnesse, *Antigonus* made hasty journeyes, and came soon enough to recover his losses, but not strong enough to drive *Lysimachus* home, or compell him to come to battell. *Lysimachus* waited for the coming of *Selencus*; keeping



Princes than worse his adversary, despised by those whom he had thought his friends. Yet was he fain to give good words. For he had left many of his ships in the Haven, of which he now stood in great need; and therefore was fain to speak thus: that sometimes had grossly distressed him. But he shall live to read them their old language, and speak thus again in another time. When he had gotten his ships, he sailed to the *Hellespont*, where he found nothing, but matter of discomfort. His Gallies were every where broken up, the Souldiers having betaken themselves to his enemies. So that he was King only of a small Army and Fleet, without money or means whereby to raise up him and his followers any long time. All the rest, or the greater part of his Father's large Dominion, was now in dividing among the Conquerors, and those few parts, which as yet he held for him (having not per chance heard the worst of what had happened) he no way knew how to relieve, nor to put himself into the field on that side of the Sea, he had no power, and to inclose himself in any of them, how strong soever, were but to impale his fortune, and his hopes, or therein indeed to bury himself in his estate. He therefore creeping thorow those bushes that had fewen briars, fell upon a corner of *Lyfismachus's* Kingdom, whereof he gave all the spoile that was gotten, to his Souldiers, his own losses having been too great to be repayed again by small prizes.

In the meane while the Confederate Princes had wherewithall to busie themselves, in the partition of those Provinces, of which their late victory had made them Lords. Wherein *Seleucus* had a notable advantage by being present, and Master of the field; in neither *Ptolomy* nor *Cassander* were at the overthrow given, having onely sent certain troopes to reinforce the army, which *Seleucus* led, who took hold of a part of *Seleucus's* labors, and all Syria, being on the other side divided from his own Territory, than by the force of *Antigonus*. For there had not any order been taken by the Confederates, for the division of all those Lands; because they did not expect so prosperous an issue of that war; which they made onely in their own common defence. It was therefore lawful for *Seleucus* to make his best benefit that he could of the victory, at which nevertheless others did rejoyce, and though they neither could nor durst accuse him of ill dealing for the present, yet seeing the over greatness of *Seleucus's* brought no lesse danger to the rest of the new Kingdome, than that of *Antigonus* had done, they consulted upon the same reason of State as before, how to oppose it in time. Neither was *Seleucus* ignorant of what they had determined, for he read it in the Law universall of Kingdomes and States, needing no other intelligence. Hereupon they forget friendships on all sides, and cure themselves of all unprofitable passion, the hatred of each to other, and their loves being laid on the one side against their profits on the other, were found so far too light, as *Seleucus*, who had so long slain *Antigonus* the father, and driven *Demetrius* the son out of Asia, sought to marry his daughter to match himself with *Stratonice*, *Demetrius's* Daughter, and so by *Dyogenes* to leave his turne against *Lyfismachus*.

The story of this *Stratonice*, with whom young *Antigonus*, the son of *Seleucus* fell so passionately in love, and so disordered, as *Seleucus* his father, to save his sons life, gave her (though she were his wife) unto him; and how his passion was discovered by his pulse, is generally noted by all Writers. But neither did this alliance between *Seleucus* and *Demetrius*; between *Ptolomy* and *Lyfismachus*; between *Demetrius* and *Cassander*; between *Demetrius* and *Ptolomy*; though for the present it brought him again into the rank of Kings; otherwise eye any of them to each other, than the marriages between Christian Kings have done in latter times, namely between the *Aragonians*, the *French*, and other Princes; neither have the Leagues of those elder times been found more faithfull, than those of the same latter times have been, as in the stories of *Charles* the eighth of *France*, and of *Charles* the Emperor, of *France* the first, and of the Kings of *Naples*, *Dukes of Milan*; and others, the Reader may observe; between whom from the year of our Lord, one thousand four hundred ninety and five, when *Charles* the eighth undertook the Conquest of *Naples*, to the year one thousand five hundred fifty and eight, when *Henry* the second died; the Histories of those times tell us, that all the bonds; either by the Bed or by the Book; either by Weddings, or Sacramentall Oaths, had neither faithfull purpose nor performance. Yet did *Demetrius* reap this profit by giving his daughter to his enemy *Seleucus*, that he recovered *Silicia* from *Ptolomy*, the brother of *Cassander*, who had gotten it as

his share in the division of *Antigonus's* his possessions; for the Intuder was not strong enough to hold it by his proper forces from him, that entred upon it as a lawfull heire, neither would *Seleucus* lend him any help, as by the rule of Confederacy he should have done against the common enemy. So *Plisarchus* with very angry complaint, as well against *Seleucus* as *Demetrius*, went unto *Cassander*; whither *Phila*, their sister, followed him shortly, to pacifie them both, and keep all quiblers being sent for that purpose by *Demetrius* her husband, that was not strong enough to deal with *Cassander*; & there was glad to make use of that bond of alliance betwixt them, whereof in his own propriety, he never took notice to the others good. About the same time he took to wife a daughter of *Ptolomy* (plurality of wives being familiar with these *Macedonians*, that had learned it in their Eastern conquests) and so was he by two marriages rather freed from two enemies, than strengthened with two friends; for neither of them wished him any good, otherwise than might seem to advance their own ambitious desires.

*Seleucus* and *Ptolomy* could both of them have been contented better, that *Demetrius*, with help of their countenance, should seek his fortune somewhat farther off, than (till his estate under their noses. Particularly, *Seleucus* thought that *Cilicia* lay very fit for himself; and *Ptolomy* had a great appetite (which yet he concealed a while) to the West *Cyprus*. Now whether it were so, that *Seleucus* would faine have set his new father-in-law upon the neck of *Lyfismachus*; or whether he were indeed greedy of the bargain; he offered to buy of *Demetrius* for ready money, his late purchase of *Cilicia*. But unto *Demetrius* would not hearken, but meant to keep as much land as he could, having already found in *Cilicia* twelve thousand talents of his fathers treasure, that would serve him to make sport a while. This refusal so displeased *Seleucus*, that in arguments he demanded the Cities of *Tyre* and *Sidon*, to be surrendered unto him; which were the only places in *Syria*, that had not followed the fortune of the late great battle. In stead of giving them up, *Demetrius* took present order to have them better man-handled, & take it stoutly. That were he overcome a thousand times, yet would he not let *Seleucus* to become his Son-in-law. In this quarrell *Seleucus* was generally reprehended, as one of a malignant disposition, that would break friendship with his Father-in-law for two Towns, from whom he had already taken more than well he knew how to govern. But the fire consumed it self in words, which had it fastened upon any like it is that the weaker should have found friends out of envie to the stronger.

## §. V.I.

How *Demetrius* won the City of *Athens*, and prevailed in *Greece*, but lost in *Asia*. Of troubles in *Macedon* following the death of *Cassander*.

In the meane while, the *Athenians*, not knowing how to use the liberty which *Demetrius* had bestowed on them, were fallen by sedition, under the Tyranny of *Lachares*. Through which alteration their disaffected City was so weakened, that it seemed able to keep off the punishment due to their late ingratitude. This advantage tempted him, whom they had once called their God and Saviour, to present himself unto them, in the habit of a revenging fury. He brought against them all the force that could well spare from other employments, which were at that time perhaps the more because his doubtfull Eastern friends, were unwilling to give him aid, to any thing, that might entangle him in *Greece*. His first enterprise in *Athens* had ill success; a great part of his fleet, perishing in a tempest. But he soon repaired the losse; and after some victories in *Peloponnesus*, where he was divers Towns that had fallen from him) returning to the enterprise, wasted the Country of *Attica*; and cut off all retreat from the City, both by Land and Sea.

*Athens* was not able to feed the great multitude within it any long time; for it stood in barren soil, and wanted now the command of those Ilands and places abroad, from whence it was wont to be stored with richials; being also destitute of means to keep in a Navie, as might bring in supply, or dare to do any thing at Sea, against that of *Demetrius*. Yet was there some hope of succour from *Ptolomy*, who (trusting thereby to win the love of *Greece*) had loaden an 150. ships with corn, and sent them to relieve the hungry City. But these hundred and fifty were unable to deal with three hundred

H h h h 2

good







other, than to doe what a King listeth. He gave himself over to Women and Wine, laughing openly at those which offered to trouble him with supplications, and the tedious discourse of doing justice. He had more skill in getting a Kingdom, than in ruling a war being his recreation, and luxury his nature. By long rest (as six years more is long to him, that knows not how to reign one year) he discovered so much of his worst conditions, as made the people both weary of his idleness; and the Souldiers of his vanity. He was freed from care of matters in *Asia*, by hearing that all was lost; though more especially, by hearing that *Ptolome* had with great honour, entertained and dismissed his mother and children. This afforded him the better leisure, of making war in *Greece*; where he vanquished the *Thebans*, and won their City twice in short space, but used his victory with mercy. Against *Lysimachus* he would faine have done somewhat (the peace between them notwithstanding) at such time as he was taken by the *Thracians*; but *Lysimachus* was freely dismissed, and in good case to make resistance. *Demetrius* came to as this journey purchased nothing but enmity. Another expedition he took in hand against *Pyrrhus*, with no better, or rather with worse event. *Pyrrhus* held somewhat belonging to *Macedon*, which he had indeed as honestly gotten; as *Demetrius* the whole Kingdom; he had also made excursions into *Thessaly*. But there needed not any handsome pretence of quarrell, seeing *Demetrius* thought himself strong enough, to over-run his enemies Country, with two great Armies. It is a common fault to men, to despise the virtue of those; whom they have known raw Novices in that faculty, wherein themselves are noted as extraordinary. *Pyrrhus* was a Captain, whom latter ages, and particularly the great *Hannibal*, placed higher in the rank of Generals; than either *Demetrius*, or any of *Alexanders* followers. At this time, he missed that part of the Army, which *Demetrius* led, and fell upon the other half: which he overthrew, not with more commendations of his good conduct, than of his private valour, shewed in single combat against *Pantauchus*, *Demetrius* his Lieutenant; who being a strong man of body, challenged this young Prince to fight hand to hand, and was utterly beaten. The loss of this battell did not so much offend the *Macedonians*, as the gallant behaviour of *Pyrrhus* delighted them. For in him they seemed to behold the lively figure of *Alexander* in his best quality. Other Kings did imitate, in a counterfeit manner, some of *Alexanders* graces, and had good skill in wearing Princely vestures: but (said they) none, save *Pyrrhus*, is like him in deed, in performing the office of a Captain.

These rumours were not more nourished by the virtue of the *Epirot*, than by dislike of their own King; whom they began to dis-esteem, not so much in regard of his unprofitable journey into *Epirus* (for he had wasted much of the Country, and brought home his Army in good case) as of his insolence, that grew daily more and more intolerable. His apparrell seemed, in the eyes of the *Macedons*, not only too sumptuous and new-fangled, but very unmanly; and serving chiefly to bee a daily witness, how much he contemned them and their good opinions. Of his souldiers lives he was stretchless; and suffered unwisely this un-princely sentence to escape out of his mouth: That the more of them died, the fewer he was to pay. He made a mockery of justice; and (as it were, to publish unto all his Subjects, how little he esteemed it or them) having by a shew of popularity invited Petitioners, and with a gracious countenance entertained their Supplications, he led the poor suiters after him in great hope, till coming to a bridge, he threw all their writings into a River; pleasing himself, in that he could so easily and so boldly delude the cares of other men. By these courses he grew so odious, that *Pyrrhus* gathered audacity, and invading *Macedon*, had almost won it all with little resistance. *Demetrius* lay then sick in his bed: who recovering health, and taking the field, had such great odds of strength, as made *Pyrrhus* glad to forsake his winnings, and be gone.

At length he began to have some feeling of the generall hate; which to redresse, he did not (for he could not) alter his own conditions; but purposed to alter their idle discourses of him, by setting them on work in such an action, wherein his best qualities might appeare; that is, in a great War. His intent was to invade *Asia*, with a Royal Army: wherein the fortune of one battell might give him as much, as the fortune of another had taken from him. To this end, he first made peace with *Pyrrhus*; that so he might leave all safe and quiet at home. Then did he compose a mighty Army,

of almost a hundred thousand foot, and twelve thousand horses with a Navie of five hundred saile; wherein were many ships, far exceeding the greatnesse of any that had been before; yet so swift and usefull withall, that the greatnesse was least part of their commendation.

The terrible fame of these preparations, made *Seleucus* and *Ptolomey* suspect their own forces, and labour hard with *Lysimachus* and *Pyrrhus*; to joyn against this ambitious son of *Antigonus*, that was like to prove more dangerous to them all, than ever was his father. It was easily discerned; that if *Demetrius* once prevailed in *Asia*, there could be no security for his friends in *Europe*; what league soever were of old concluded. Therefore they resolved to begin with him betimes, and each to invade that quarter of *Asia*, that lay next his own Kingdom. *Lysimachus* came first; and against him went *Demetrius*, that lay next his own Kingdom: but whilst he was yet on the way, newes were brought into his Camp; that *Pyrrhus* had won *Berbera*. The matter was not over great; yet not that minds prepared with long discontent, are ready to lay hold upon small occasions of dislike. All the camp was in uproar: some wept, others raged, few or none were able to utter sedition words, and many desired leave of *Demetrius*, to goe to their own houses, meaning indeed to have gone to *Lysimachus*.

When *Demetrius* perceived the bad affection of his Army, he thought it the wisest way to lead the *Macedonians* further off from *Lysimachus* their own countrein, against *Pyrrhus*; that was a stranger: hoping by victory against the *Epirot*, to recover the love of his followers, in such sort that he might afterwards at leisure deale with the other. But *Pyrrhus* his wisdom beguiled him. For the Souldiers were as hasty as he, to meet with him his wisdom beguiled him, but longing to see that noble Prince, of whom they had heard the honourable fame. Some spake of his valour; some enquired others answered, of his person; his armour; and other tokens whereby he might be known; as particularly, by a paire of Goats horns, that he wore on his crest. It was not likely, that these men should hurt him. Divers of them stole away, and ran over into *Pyrrhus* his camp: where the newes that they brought, were better welcome than their persons. For they said, and it was true, that if the *Macedonians* might once get sight of *Pyrrhus*, they would all salute him King. To trie this, *Pyrrhus* rode forth; and presented himself bareheaded in view of the camp, whither some were sent before to prepare his welcome. The newes of his arrivall found a general applause, and every one began to look out, with desire to set eye on him. His face was not so well known as his Helmet; therefore he was admonished to put it on: which done, all came about him; and proffered their service; neither were there any, that spake for *Demetrius*; only some (and they the most moderate of tongue) bade him be gone betimes, and shift for himself. So *Demetrius* threw aside his makers habit, and attyring himself poorly, did fearfully steal away out of his own camp, deserving well this calamity: whether it were so, that he would not hearken to the good counsel of his friends, or whether his behaviour deprived him of such friends, as would dare to let him heare the unpleasant sound of necessary truth.

Whilst *Pyrrhus* was making this triumphant entry into the Kingdom of *Macedon*; *Lysimachus* came upon him very unseasonably, and would needs have half: saying, that he had done as much as *Pyrrhus* in the war; and therefore had reason to challenge his part of the gain. The bargain was quickly made, and the division agreed upon: each of them being rather desirous to take his part quietly, than to fight for the whole; as hoping each of them, to work his fellow quite out of all, upon better opportunity.

#### §. VIII.

How *Demetrius* gathering forces, enterprised many things with ill successe, in *Greece* and *Asia*. How he was driven upon *Seleucus*, and compelled to yield himself. His imprisonment and death

The *Athenians* were as unthankfull to *Demetrius* in this his adversity, as they had been in former times. For they presently forsook his friendship, and called *Pyrrhus* out of *Macedon* to bee their Patron. *Demetrius*, when he went against *Lysimachus*, had left a great part of his forces in *Greece*, under his son *Antigonus*. Therefore it is like, that he had soon gotten an Army, though *Phila* his wife (who

(who is highly commended for a wife and vertuous Lady) did poyson her self, upon desperate grief for his misfortune. The first, upon whom he attempted to shew his anger, were the *Athenians* that had well deserved it. He began to lay siege to their Town: but was pacified by *Crates* the Philosopher, whom they had made their spoked-man; and taking fair words in stead of satisfaction, passed over into *Asia*, with eleven thousand Souldiers, meaning to trie his fortune against *Lyfimachus*, for the Provinces of *Lydia* and *Caria*.

At his first coming into those parts, fortune seemed to smile upon him. For many good Towns, willingly, or by compulsion, yielded to his obedience. There were also some Captains that fell from *Lyfimachus* to him, with their companies and treasures. But it was not longer ere *Agathocles* the son of *Lyfimachus*, came upon him with an Army so strong, that it was not for *Demetrius* his good, to hazard his last stock against him. Wherefore, he resolved to passe through *Phrygia* and *Armenia*, into *Media*, and the Provinces of the higher *Asia*: trusting to finde a Kingdom somewhere in those remote quarters. The execution of this counsell was grievously impeached by *Agathocles*, who pursued him close, and cut off all his provisions, driving him to take which way he could, without following his intended course. In many skirmishes *Demetrius* vanquished this troublesome enemy: nevertheless, he could not be shaken off, but continued afflicting the poor titular King, with extreme famine. At length, in passing the river *Lycus*, so many of *Demetrius* his men were lost, that the rest could no longer make resistance: but were driven to travell with such speed as might well be called a plain flight. So that with famine, pestilent diseases following famine, and other accidents of war, eight thousand of them were consumed: the rest, with their Captain, escaped into *Cilicia*. *Seleucus* had gotten possession of *Cilicia*, whilst *Demetrius* was occupied in Greece: yet was it no part of *Demetrius* his errand, to lay claime to the Country; but with vehemence and humble letters he besought his Son-in-law, to call to mind their alliance, and to pity him in his great misery. These letters, at the first wrought well with *Seleucus*; and he condescended to the request: yet considering further how *Demetrius* had carried himself, when he recovered strength after the battell at *Ipsus*, he changed his purpose, and went against him with an Army.

Many treaties were held between them; of which none took effect, through the jealousy of *Seleucus*. Therefore, meer desperation enforced *Demetrius* to fight like a mad man, and his furies got him some victories, though of small importance. At length sickness rook and held him forty dayes, in which time, a great number of his few men, ran to the enemy. This notwithstanding he still held out, and once had like to have taken *Seleucus* in his bed, had not his coming been discovered by fugitives, that gave alarme. Finally, when all his Army had forsaken him, and left him with a few of his friends to shift for himself, he was compelled by the last of those adherents (for even some of those few forsook him) to yeeld unto *Seleucus*.

*Seleucus* hearing this, was exceeding glad, and sent him very comfortable messages. But the approbation of his own humanity, by his followers, was such, as renewed his jealous thoughts; and hindered him from admitting *Demetrius* to his presence, though otherwise he used him with as much favour, as any prisoner could wish. He was kept under sure guard in a demy-Island, wherein were goodly Walkes, Orchards, and Parkes for hunting. He had all that he asked royally, and friends allowed to visit him, at his, and their pleasure. Only his liberty was reserved unto the coming of young *Antiochus* and *Stratonice*, out of the high countries. In this sort he spent three years, living merrily all the while (as one that now enjoyed the happinesse, which with so much travell and blood-shed, he had sought in vain) and then dyed, leaving to his son *Antigonus*, the same which his father had left unto himself; that is, friends and hope. His ashes were honourably buried in *Corinth*; his qualities have appeared in his actions, and the fortune of his House will shew it self hereafter, in times and places convenient.

## §. IX.

The death of Ptolomy, of Lyfimachus, and of Seleucus, that was last of Alexanders Captains; with other occurrences.

About the same time that *Demetrius* died, died also *Ptolomy* King of *Egypt*, a vertuous Prince, war-like, gentle, bountifull, and (which in those times was a rare commendation) regardfull of his word. He had by many Wives and Concubines many children, out of whom he selected *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, and caused him to reign together with himself, two or three years before he died, that so he might confirm him in the inheritance of the Kingdom. At this *Ptolomy Ceramus* (for all of that house assumed the name of *Ptolomy*) was grievously incensed. But no man cared for his anger. Therefore he went to *Seleucus*, who gave him loving entertainment. There were now only two of *Alexanders* Captains left, *Seleucus* and *Lyfimachus*. These two needs would fight for it, who should be the longest liver of that brave Company. The true ground of their quarrell, was their neer equality or strength, and want of one to part them. The pretence was the murders which *Lyfimachus* had committed upon many of the Nobles, together with his poysoning *Agathocles* his eldest son: whose wife and children fled unto *Seleucus* for aid.

The *Macedons*, after seven moneths pause, having spent their first heat of admiration, began to hearken so well to *Lyfimachus*; their naturall Country-man, that they forsook *Ptolemy*, upon none other ground than because he was an Alien. This they had learnt well enough before; but they did him no great wrong in taking lightly from him, that they lightly gave him. *Lyfimachus* had reigned about five years alone, when the City of *Lysimachia* (built by him, and called after his name) falling by an earthquake, appeared, by events, to have fore-shewed the fall of his house. His own jealousy, and the instigation of a mother-in-law, caused him, to poyson his son *Agathocles*; and drew upon him that War, wherein (after the losse of all his fifteen children that were taken away by divers accidents) he perished himself.

*Seleucus* was encountered by *Lyfimachus* on *Asia* side, where one battell concluded the war, with *Lyfimachus* his death. It pleased *Seleucus* more than the victory, that he was victor of all the great Heroes that followed *Alexander*. For now he seemed to himself alone and Heir of all the conquered World. So he passed over into *Macedon*, to take possession of *Europe*, where there was none to withstand him. But there he ended his dayes, and within seven moneths followed *Lyfimachus*, and others of his fellows, by a violent death, being treacherously slain by *Ptolomy Ceramus*, whose friend and Patron he had been. Seventy and seven yeer old he was, when he fought with *Lyfimachus*, and *Seleucus* was seventy and foure. With them ended the generation of old Captains, who had seen the dayes as it were of another World under the *Persian*: yet was there none equal to any of them in the Art of War: even *Ptolemy* the Epirot, of whom we have heard before; that is now ready to enter into war with the *Romans*, a more warlike people than *Alexander* himself did ever encounter. Of which war, and of which more it is needfull that we here make mention, as of a story more important, than any to enquire in Greece, or in the great Kingdoms that were held by *Alexanders* Captains, with lesse (and still decreasing) vertue, than was that, by which they were purchased.

## CHAP. VII.

## The growth of Rome : and settling of the Eastern Kingdoms.

## §. I.

How the Romans enlarged their Dominions in Italy, from the death of Tullus Hostilius, unto such time as they were assailed by Pyrrhus.

**H**OW Rome was founded by Romulus; settled in good order by Numa Pompilius; and by many (though small) victories, it gathered strength, unto such time as it became the head of Latium, by the conquest of Alba, in the reign of Tullus Hostilius: it hath been already noted, in due order of time. But whereas now the Roman greatnesse beginneth to encounter the power of Greece; and extending it self out of Italy, to overwhelm the Dominions of other States and Princes: I hold it convenient (as in like cases I have done) briefly to set down the growth of this mighty City, in a compendious relation of those many actions, which could not have been delivered in the ages, wherein they were severally performed, without much interruption of the History, that was then occupied in matter more important.

After the death of Tullus Hostilius (who when he had reigned two and thirty years, was burnt together with his house by lightning) Ancus Martius, Grand-child to Numa Pompilius by his daughter, and not much unlike him in disposition, succeeded in the Kingdom of Rome. He walled the City about; enlarged it with the Hill Aventine, which he enclosed; built a bridge over Tybris, and the City of Ostia upon the Sea, fifteen miles distant from Rome. Finally, having reigned 24. years, he died, and by his last Will he left his children in charge with one Lucumon, the son of Damaratus, Ætæminian, who avoiding Cypselus King of Corinth his tyranny, had fled into Hetruria, and dwelt in Tarquinii, by the name of which Town he was afterwards called Tarquinus. From that City in Hetruria coming to Rome, and encouraged by some ominous occurrences, together with his wife Tanaquil's prophecy, he grew a favorite of Ancus Martius; by his Grecian wit humouring the factions of the Romans Court, inasmuch, that after his decease he became not only Protector to the children, but Governour to the State. He doubled the number of Senators, and enlarged the Centurions of Horsemen: neither was he lesse eminent in war, than in peace: for he prevailed often against the Tuscan, and from his victories, the chiefest ornaments of triumph took their originall. When this Lucius Tarquinus had reigned 38. years, he was slain by the sons of Anus Martius, to whom he had been left Guardian. But Tanaquil his wife, perceiving what was done, informed the people, from out of an high Turret, that her Husband was wounded, and sick, but not dangerously. And withall signified unto them, that in the interim of his sickness, one Servus Tullius, whom from his birth she always prophesied to be born to great hopes (the son of P. Corniculamus and Orestis, a well descended, but captive woman) brought up in her house, and husband unto her daughter, should supply her husbands place, in governing the State, untill his recovery: which government being thus at first obtained by cunning, he afterwards usurped as his right. He first ordained Ratements, Subsidies, and Valuations of the peoples wealth; among whom, at that time, fourscore thousand were mustered, of which number consisted their whole corporation; and by distinction of Dignities, Ages, Trades, and Offices, he managed the Kingdom in as good sort, as if it had been a private household. At length, having two daughters of different natures, the one milde and gentle, the other fierce and outrageous: and finding also that the two sons of Tarquinus Priscus, Sextus and Aruns, which had been committed unto his tuition, were of different dispositions, proportionably answering to his daughters; he (willing to adde water, not oile, to fire) gave the milde daughter to Sextus the hot-headed son, and the violent, to Aruns the gentle in marriage. But whether by intended courses, or by accident, it hapned; the two milde ones being made away, the furious natures were readily joyed in marriage:

who

and concurring, and calling the Senate together, began to lay claim to the Kingdom. This tumult, Servus Tullius harkning to the Senate, (where he thought by his quality to have bridled infolency) was thrown down the stairs, and going home, was slain by the way: when he had reigned 24. years. Then Tullus his daughter first procuring her likly hand: Tarquinus Superus King, returning home, commanded Bochasman to drive his Chariot over her fathers corpse; whereupon the King had the denudation of wicked spirits. This Tarquinus, exercising cruelty without pity, and without mercy, upon the people and Senators; having tired them at home, and at the same time of treachery upon his borders. He took the cities of Veii, Fostoria, and the Cæcili. The siege of besieging Ardea a town eighteen miles distant from Rome, was of bad successe. In the heat of which war, his son Sextus violently assailed his chaste Lady Lucretia, his kinsman Collatines wife: who in expectation of her honour being dead, thought good to wash out those spots of infamy with her own blood; so having first bequeathed the revenge unto her father Sp. Tarquinus, her husband Collatinus, and Junius Brutus, the kill'd her self, whereupon she was deposited and buried; and fled to Porfenna King of Hetruria for shelter. In the year and twentyeth year of his reign, and the two hundred forty and fourth from the building of the City: in which space Rome had scarce gotten possession of fifteen thousand above her first growth. This she did by the help of Collatine, having expelled Tarquinus, and freed his Country from that heavy yoke of bondage, informed the people by solemn oath, never to be governed by Kings among themselves; whereupon they renounced their Kings, and consecrated their fields to Mars, and conferred the government of the State upon the Senate and Collatine. But because the name of King was odious in their eares, they changed the manner of their government, from perpetual to annual; and from a single government to a double; left perpetuall or sole dominion might be some motive to ambition; and in stead of King's they called them Consuls, signifying, as it may be interpreted, Providers: that their titles might remember them of their place, which was alwayes mindfull of their Citizens welfare. And yet was it hard settling in troubled waters, that the people, after this innovation of State, scarce daring to assure themselves of their own security, enforced Tarquinus Collatine to resign up his authority, fearing that tyranny would be hereditary, and supposing that the very name of monarchy with the house of Tarquinus, favoured already of their condition: In his room was substitute Valerius Publicola, who that he might (as his name importeth) be known in the peoples eyes, gave liberty, in matters of controversie, to appeale from the Consuls to the people: and that he might as well in goods as in person, avoid occasion of suspicion, caused his own house to be pulled down, because it was building in an insupportable, as if it had been a Cittadell. Neither was Brutus any wayes deficient in matters of greater moment; which concerned as well the peoples safety, as their having got intelligence, that some greener wit, and in the first rank his own son, were itching after innovations, hoping to restore the banished Kings; he caused to be publicly in the Market place, to be whipt, and then to be brought all unpardoned to the block.

As to the Romans, having by the unblemished integrity of Brutus, well appeased their quarrels at home, now hereafter employed their military designements against their neighbours first, for their liberty; secondly, for enlarging of their possessions, and finally, for defending their confederate Provinces, and extending their Empire. For as long as it were in the mid-way between Latins and the Tuscan, having as yet narrow bounds, being in her minority, could not but give occasion of offence to her neighbours; untill by main opposition, having prevailed against her borderers, she put them as instruments, whereby to obtain the rest.

In the first year of the Consuls, was against Porfenna King of Hetruria, who being over-persuaded by Tarquinus lamentation, came to Rome, together with the banished King, and with great forces, to set him again in his Kingdom. In the first conflict, Horatius Codes, having long time born the main brunt of his enemies, on the bridge over Tybris, at length, feeling himself too faint to stand against so many, caused the bridge behind him to be broken down; and with his armour leaping

into

into the River, like a hunted Stagge, refreshed his hot spirits, and returned to his fellows, with the like resolution to fight in a new charge. *Porjenna*, although by this deed, well might won the hill, *Janiculum*, which is the very entrance into the City, and stand the victory, in a space, assuredly his own: yet admiring their valour, and moved by the constant celebration of *Aminio Scavola* (who having by error slain *Porjenna* as if he were the King himself, did in ignorance of some men's dread, and off his own head, he thought no easy what prejudiciall either to his safety, or to enter league with them at the worst hand. And yet the edge of *Tarquinius*, his Son, was not quite obliterated, though *Anna* his Son, and *Brutus*, his enemy, in single combat had slain each other. And here the *Romans*, although they lost *Anna* got the field, and their Ladies, whose Champion he was, for their chastity, not for beauty, mourned the loss of him one whole year. Into his place, for the residue of his year, was substituted *Sp. Lucretius Tricipitinus*, surnamed *Lutratius*: and in his room (deceasing naturally before the year expired) *Horatius Pulvillus*.

*Tarquinius* upon this overthrow, feeling the fates distrow, thought it no boot to strive against the Gods; but to leave the residue of his time, which was about fourteen years, privately at rest. Yet his Son-in-law *Mantilius Tullianus*, stooping a little to those old passions, because *Porjenna* had made peace with the *Romans*, and desired further success, rather than *Argemone*, mastered up his *Latines*, and gave battell to the *Romans*, at the Lake *Regillum*; where the conflict was fierce, and the issue uncertain. *Aulus Postumius*, the *Roman* Dictator (for they had created this Magistracy greater than Consuls, purposely for this war, when first it was expected) no exasperate his Souldiers courage, threw down his Engagers amidst the Enemies; and *Cassius*, or *Spurius Cassius* (Master of the Horse, men, assistant Officer to the Dictator) commanded to charge their bridle, that they might run with free violence, to recover again their *Regillum*. This fight was so well performed, that a report went of *Cassius* and *Postum*, two men, who came on milk-white Steeds, to be eye-witness of their valour, and fellow-labourers of their victory; for the General consecrated a Temple to them, as a stipend to their paines. After this the *Romans* fierce spirits, having no object of valour abroad, reflected upon themselves at home; and the thirteenth year after the Kings expulsion, on inflation of some desperate bankrupt, thinking themselves wrongfully oppressed by the Senate and Consuls, they made an uproare in the holy Mount; until by *Mucius Scaevola*, his discreet allusion, of the inconvenience in the head and better discord, to that present occasion, they were reconciled to the Senate; with condition, that they might have some new Magistrates created, to whom they might appeal in cases of variance, and make them Solicitors in all their controversies, the Consuls authority not withstanding. This was enacted, and they were called the Tribunes of the people. After this agreement among themselves, they had continuall War with the *Latines*, concerning their bounds and limits, and with other neighbouring Towns. Among these, the *Volsci* and *Equi* held them longest; who made War of themselves upon the *Romans*; whereby they lost the best City in their whole Jurisdiction, *Corioli*.

In this conquest, *Laetantius* got the surname of *Coriolanus*; a name honorable then, as driven from a great victory; although, by reason of the poverty of the Town, *Roman* General, in after times, would have been ashamed of that title. But yet the great had him, no occasion of disparagement, had he not afterwards in a great time of dearth, advised to sell grain, which they procured from *Sicily*, at too high a rate, to the people, whereupon *Publius Arde*, their Tribune, in their behalf, accused him, & after judgement banished him. *Coriolanus* flying to the *Volsci*, whom lately before he had vanquished, incensed them to recover their forces again; which being committed unto him, & to *Antony Tullus*, he prevailed in field, so far forth, that he was come within four or five miles of the City. Incamping there, he made so sharp war, and was at such defiance with his Country, that he would not release by any supplication of Embassadors, untill his brother *Volumnius* and *Volumnia* his wife, with a pitifull tune of deprecation, shewing themselves better Subjects to their Country than friends to their Son and Husband, were more available to *Rome*, than was any force of Armes. Hereupon *Coriolanus* dismissing his Army, was after put to death among the *Volsci*, as a Traitor, for neglecting such opportunity: or (as others surmise) living with them untill old age, he died naturally.

Not

Not long after this the *Veii* in *Hetruria*, provoked the *Romans*; against whom the *Fabii*, three hundred and six in number, all of one Family, intreated and obtained, that they only might be employed, as it had been in a private quarrell. These *Fabii*, after some good services, lying incamped at *Cremera*, were circumvented, and all slain: one only of that whole house had been left, by reason of infancy, at home; from whom afterward sprang *Fabius Maximus*, who vanquished *Hannibal*.

In procelle of time, the *Romans* were also troubled with the *Volsci*, at the hill of *Algidum*, two miles from *Rome*; where *Lucius Minutius* their Consul, with his whole army, had been discomfited, had not *L. Quintius Cincinnatus* chosen Dictator, and taken from the plough to the highest honour in *Rome*, with successe answerable to his expedition, dispersed his enemies, and freed his country in the space of sixteen dayes. In the continuance of this *Volscian* war, it was that *Appius Claudius*, one of the ten men, whom they had two years before chosen Governours of the State, and Inactors of *Solons* laws among them, procured from *Athens* (abrogating in the mean while the Consuls, and all other Magistrates) would have ravished *Virginia*, the daughter of *T. Virginus*, Captain of a company, and lying then in a camp at *Algidum*. Hereupon the people in an uproare took the Hill *Aventine*, and after much variance, enforced the ten men to resign up their authority again to new Consuls.

After this, either new quarrels, or desire to revenge old losses drew the *Romans* into a new war against the *Veientes* and their adherents, upon whom, having tried their forces with diversity of Captaines, and variety of event, they vanquished the *Falisci*, and the *Fidenates*, and utterly subdued the *Veientes*. In conquering the *Falisci*, *Furius Camillus* shewed no lesse integrity than fortitude. For when a Schoolmaster, by training forth into the *Roman* camp, many children of the principall Citizens, thought to betray the Town, yielding them all up as hostages: *Camillus* delivered this Traitor bound unto his Souldiers, willing them to whip him back into the City; which forthwith yielded unto him in reverence of his justice. The siege of *Veii* was ten years, and formidable, that the *Romans* were there first enforced to winter abroad under bear-skins (to which they were the more easily induced, because then first they received pay) and to make vowes never to return without victory.

At length winning the City by a Mine, they got so large spoils, that they consecrated tenths to *Apollo Pythius*: and the whole people in general were called to the ransacking of the City. But yet they were no lesse unthankfull to *Camillus* for his service, than before they had been to *Coriolanus*; for they banished him the City, upon some occasion of inequality in dividing the spoils: yet he required their unkindness with a new peece of service against the fury of the *Gauls*; who being a populous Country, and very healthfull, the fathers (as sometimes now) lived so long, that the sons, destitute of means, were enforced to roave abroad, seeking some place where to set up their self: and withall being a Nation vaste in body, rude by nature, and barbarous in conditions, wandered as Rovers over many Countries. Some of them lighting on *Italy*, set upon *Clusium* a Town in *Hetruria*: whereof *Rome* having information, (and being envious of her Confederate Towns) sent Embassadors, warning them to desist from such injurious enterprises. But the barbarous people, not regarding the message, upon some injury offered by the *Roman* Embassadors, converted their forces from *Clusium* towards *Rome*; and giving a great overthrow unto the *Romans*, by the River *Alia*, upon the sixteenth day before the Calends of *August* (which day was after branded for unlucky, and called *Alibis* in the *Roman* Kalendar) they halted towards the City. Then was *Rome* the true map of misery and desolation. For some leaving the City, some creeping into holes; Priests hiding their reliques; and every one shifting for himself ere the enemy came; *Rome* was abandoned as indefensible. The Vestall Virgins, in this tumult, were safely conveyed away; the Ancients of the City, gathering boldnesse out of desperate fear, did put on their Robes, and taking their leave of the world, did set themselves in Thrones, in their severall houses, hourly expecting the messengers of death and meaning to dye, as they had lived, in State. The younger sort, with *M. Manlius* their Captain, took upon them to make good the Capitall.

By this the *Gauls* were entred the City, who seeing all quiet, at first suspected some ambush; afterward finding all secure, they fell to the spoile, committing all to the fire and sword. As for the old Senatours, they fate in their Majesty with a grave resolution,

having first revered them as gods; anon they tried whether they would die like men. When the City was thoroughly rifled, they attempted the Capitall: which held them work for the space of seven months. Once they were like to have surprised it by night, but being descried by the gabling of Geefe, *M. Manlius* did awaken, and kept them from entrance. At length a compulsion was agreed upon: that the *Gauls* being weary, and the *Romans* hungry. The bargain was, that the *Gauls* should take a thousand pound weight in gold, to desist from their siege. Whilst the gold was in weighing, the *Gauls*, with open insolency, made their weights too heave: *Brennus* their Captain, casting his sword into the ballance, and with a proud exprobration, saying, that the vanquished must be patient perforce. But in the midst of this cavilling came *Furius Camillus* with an Army from *Ardea*, (where he had lived in his banishment) and fell upon the *Gauls* with such violence, that he dispersed their troupes, quenched the fire of the City with their blood, forcing them to restore the spoiles with advantage, and forbear the gold, in accepting which they had lately been so nice. Further, having rid the City of them, he so hotly pursued them thorow a great part of *Italy*, that the remainder of their Army which escaped from him, was very small. Other Armies of the *Gauls*, which followed this first, had the like ill success. They were often beaten by the *Romans*, especially the victories of *M. Torquatus*, and of *M. Valerius Corvinus* (each of which in single fight slew a severall Champion of the *Gauls*) abated their presumption, and restored courage to the *Romans*. *Camillus*, for his notable service, was afterwards accounted a second *Romulus*.

The people, after this destruction of their City, were earnestly bent to go to the *Vei* to inhabit; but *Camillus* dissuaded them.

About the same time, somewhat before the siege of *Vei* they changed their government from Consuls to military Tribunes. The government of these also, after some years, was by civill dissention interrupted: so that one while Consuls ruled, another while there was an Anarchy. Then the Tribunes were restored and ruled again, till after many years expired, the Consular authority was established, it being enacted, that one of the Consuls should alwaies be a Plebeian. This was after the building of the City 265. years. And now *Rome*, by suppression of her neighbour Countries, creeping well forward out of her Minority, dares set forth against the warlike *Samnites*, who dwelt almost one hundred and thirty miles off: situated between *Campania* and *Apulia*. These did so strongly invade the *Campanians* their neighbours, that they forced them to yeeld themselves subjects to *Rome*, and undergoe any conditions of Tribute, or whatsoever else to obtain protection: which the *Romans*, although both Countries had been their Confederates, yet not willing that the greater, like fish, should devour the lesse, easily allowed of; aiming themselves at the good situation of *Campania*, the abundance of Corne and Wine, pleasant Cities and Towns, but especially *Capua* it self, the fairest City then in all *Italy*.

The families of the *Papyrii* and *Fabii* were most employed in the managing of this War, which endured the space of fifty yeers. And in this season were the *Romans* oftentimes dangerously encountered by the *Samnites*, as when *T. Vetruius* and *Sp. Posthumus* were Consuls, and discomfited by *Pontius* at *Caudium*, with no small ignominy: and when *Q. Fabius Gurgus* lost the field with three thousand men. But for those losses, many great victories made large amends: The greatest whereof were gotten by *L. Pyrrhus*, and by *Quintus Fabius Maximus*.

The *Samnites* drew the *Hetrurians* into their quarrell. But the force of the *Samnites* was well broken, ere the *Hetrurians* (the greater and richer, but lesse warlike Nation) began to stir. So the one and the other of these two Countries, became at length tributary to *Rome*. In the continuance of this long war it was, (though in time of truce between the *Romans* and *Samnites*) that the *Latines* began to challenge equal freedom in the Corporation of *Rome*, and right in bearing office, so that they required to have one of the Consuls yearly chosen out of them.

This demand of the *Latines* was not unreasonable. For the *Romans* themselves were a Latine Colony; besides all which, they made offer to change their name, and to be all called *Romans*. But the *Romans* were too proud to admit any such capitulation. So a great battell was fought between them: wherein the fortune of *Rome* prevailed, by the vertue of the Consuls.

*Manlius*

*Manlius Torquatus* and the elder *Decius* were then Consuls, whom the Soothsayers advertised, that the side should be victorious which lost the Generall in fight. Hereupon *Decius* the Consull exposed his life to the enemy, and purchased victory (as was beleev'd) by his death. In which kind of devoting himself for his Army, the son of this *Decius* being after Consull, did imitate his father in the *Hetrurian* war. But (as *Tully* well notes) it was rather the desperate resolution of these *Decii*, that purchased victory, by rushing into the midst of the enemies, wherein their Souldiers followed them, than any great commendation of such a religion, as required the lives of so worthy Citizens, to be sacrificed for their Country. The discipline of *Manlius* was no lesse resolute, than the valour of *Decius*. He forbade any one to forsake his place, and fight single with an enemy. For breach of which order he caused his own son to be put to death, who had slain a Captain of the *Latines*, being challenged in single fight.

When the *Latines*, the *Equi*, *Volsci*, *Hernici*, *Campani*, *Samnites*, and *Hetrurians*, with some other people, were brought under obedience; it was a vain labour for any people of *Italy* to contend against the *Romans*.

Yet the *Sabines* adventured to try their fortune, and found it bad. For *Curius Dentatus*, the *Roman* Consull, waisting all their Country with fire and sword, from the River *Ner* and *Velis*, to the *Adriatique* Sea, brought them into quiet subjection.

The last of the *Italians* that made triall of the *Roman* arms, were the *Tarentines* and their adherents. These had interposed themselves as mediators between the *Romans* and *Samnites*; with a peremptory denunciation of War, unto that party which should dare to refuse peace by them tendered. These threats which discovered their bad affection unto *Rome*, ended in words; but when the *Samnites* were utterly subdued, matter enough of quarrell was found to examine their ability of performance.

The *Romans* complained that certain ships of theirs were robbed, and sent Embassadors unto *Tarentum*, to require amends. Upon some wrong done to these Embassadors, was laid the foundation of that War, wherein the *Lucans*, *Messapians*, *Brutians*, and *Apulians*, joyning with the *Tarentines*, procured the *Samnites*, and other Subjects of *Rome* to rebell and take their part. But some experience of the *Roman* strength, taught all these people to know their own weakesse. Wherefore they agreed to send for *Pyrrhus*, by whose aid (being a *Grecian*, as the *Tarentines* also were) great hope was conceived, that the Dominion of *Rome* should be confined unto more narrow bounds than all *Italy*, which already in a manner it did over-spread.

## §. II.

*How Pyrrhus warred upon the Romans, and vanquished them in two battells.*

*Pyrrhus*, forsaken by the *Macedonians*, and unable to deal with *Lysimachus*, was compelled a while to live in rest: which he abhorred no lesse than a wiser Prince would have desired. He had a strong Army, and a good Fleet, which in that unsettled estate of things, was enough to purchase a Kingdom: but the fall of *Demetrius* had so increased the power of *Lysimachus*, that it was no point of wisdom to make an offensive war upon him, without far greater forces. *Antigonus*, the son of *Demetrius*, held *Corinth* at the same time, and some other Towns, with the remainder of his Fathers Army and treasures, left in his hand. Upon him it is like that *Pyrrhus* might have won; but it was better to let him alone, that he might serve to give some hindrance to *Lysimachus*.

In this want of employment, and covetous desire of finding it, the *Tarentine* Embassadors came very fitly to *Pyrrhus*: and they came with brave offers, as needing no other aid than his good conduct, which to obtain, they would cast themselves under his protection. They had in their companie some of the *Samnites*, *Lucanians*, *Messapians*, and others, which promised, in behalf of their severall Nations, as much as could be desired. This encouraged *Pyrrhus*, and filled him with hopes of goodly conquests; that he might enlarge his Empire to the West, as far as *Alexander* had gotten Eastward; and still by one victory open the gate unto another. To which effect it is said, that once he answered *Cyneus* his chief Counsellour, asking what he meant to doe after every of the victories which he hoped to get: that having won *Rome*, he would soon be Master of all *Italy*; that, after *Italy* he would quickly get the Isle of *Sicily*; that,



out of *Sicill*, he would passe over into *Africk*, and win *Carthage*, with all the rest of the Country; and being strengthened with the force of all these Provinces, he would be too hard for any of those that were now so proud and troublesome. But *Cyneas* enquired yet further, what they should doe, when they were Lords of all. Whereunto *Pyrrhus* (finding his drift) answered pleasantly, that they would live merrily; a thing *Cyneas* then told him that they presently might doe, without any trouble, if he could be contented with his own.

Nevertheless, this *Italian* expedition seemed unto *Pyrrhus* a matter of such consequence, as was not to be omitted, in regard of any scholasticall disputation. Wherefore he prepared his Army, of almost thirty thousand men, well sorted, and well trained soldiers: part of which he sent over before him under *Cyneas*, with the rest he followed in person. At his coming, he found the *Tarentines*, very prompt of tongue, but in matter of execution, utterly careless to provide for the war. Wherefore he was faine to shut up their Theater, and other places of pleasure and resort, enforcing them to take armes, and making such a strict muster, as was to them very displeasing, though greatly behooving to their estate.

Whilest he was occupied with these cares, *Levinus* the *Roman* Consul drew neer, and began to waste *Lucania*, a Province confederate with the *Tarentines* in this War.

The *Lucanians* were not ready to defend their own Country: the *Sannites* were careless of the harm, that fell not (as yet) upon themselves; the *Tarentines* were better prepared than they would have been, but their valour was little: all of these had been accustomed to shrink for feare of the *Roman* fortitude: and therefore it fell out happily, that *Pyrrhus* relied more upon his own forces, than the issue of their vaunting promises. He was now driven either to set forward with those that himself had brought into *Italy*, and the assistance of the *Tarentines*, wherein little was to be repaid; or else to weaken the reputation of his own sufficiency, which by all means he was careful to uphold. In good time a great part of his forces, that had been scattered by foule weather at Sea, were safely come to him: with which he resolved to assay the valour of the *Romans*, against whom he proudly marched.

*Levinus* the Consul was not affrighted with the terrible name of a great King; but came on confidently to meet him, and give him battell ere all his adherents should be ready to joyne with him. This boldnesse of the *Roman*, and the slacknesse of the *Messapians*, *Lucanians*, *Sannites*, and others, whom the danger most concerned, caused *Pyrrhus* to offer a treaty of peace: requiring to have the quarrell between the *Romans* and his *Italian* friends, referred to his arbitrement. Whether he did this to win time, that the *Sannites* and their fellows might arrive at his Camp; or whether, considering better at neer distance, the weight of the business which he had taken in hand, he were desirous to quit it with his honour; the short answer that was returned to his proposition, gave him no means of either the one or the other: for the *Romans* sent him this word, that they had neither chosen him their Judge, nor feared him their enemy.

Hereupon both Armies halstined their march unto the River of *Siris*: *Levinus* intending to fight before the arrival of the *Sannites*; *Pyrrhus*, to hinder him from passing that River, untill his own Army were full. Upon the first view of the *Roman* Camp, it was readily conceived by *Pyrrhus*, that he had not now to doe with barbarous people, but with men well trained in a brave discipline of War: which caused him to set a strong Corps de garde upon the passage of the river, that he might not be compelled to fight, untill he saw his best advantage. But he quickly found, that this new enemy was not only skilfull in the Art of War, but courageous in execution. For the *Roman* Army entred the Ford, in face of his Corps de garde; and their horse, at the same time began to passe the River in sundry places: which caused the *Greeks* to forsake the defence of their bank, and speedily retire unto their Camp.

This audacity forced *Pyrrhus* to battell; wherewith he thought it best to present them, ere the whole Army had recovered firme footing, and were in order. So directing his Captaines how to marshal his battels; himself with the horse, charged upon the *Romans*: who stoutly received him as men well exercised in sustaining furious impressions. In this fight, neither did his courage transport him beyond the duty of a careful General; nor his providence in directing others, hinder the manifestation of his personal valour. It behooved him indeed to do his best; for he never met with better

opposers.

opposers. Once, and shortly after the fight began, his horse was slain under him: afterwards, he changed armour with a friend; but that friend paid his life for the use of his Kings armour, which was torne from his back. This accident had almost lost him the battell: but he perceiving it, discovered his face, and thereby restored courage to his men, and took from the *Romans* their vain joy. The fight was obstinate, and with the greater losse (at least of more eminent men) on *Pyrrhus* his side, as long as onely speer and sword were used. But when the Elephants were brought into the wings, whose unusual form and terrible aspect, the horses of the *Romans* (unaccustomed to the like) were not able to sustain; then was the victory quickly gotten. For the *Roman* battels, perceiving their horse put to the rout, and driven out of the field; finding also themselves both charged in flanke, and over-borne, by the force and huge bulke of those strange beasts; gave way to necessity, and saved themselves, as well as they could, by halfe flight: in which consternation, they were so forgetfull of their discipline, that they tarried not to defend their Camp, but ran quite beyond it, leaving both it, and the honour of the day, entirely to *Pyrrhus*.

The fame of this victory was soon spread over *Italy*; and the reputation was no lesse than the fame. For it was a matter very rare to be heard, that a *Roman* Consul, with a select Army, should lose in plain battell, not onely the Field, but the Camp it self, being so notably fortified as they alwaies were. And this honour was the more bravely won by *Pyrrhus*, for that he had with him none of his *Italian* friends, save the unwelcome *Tarentines*. Neither could he well dissemble his content that he took, in having the glory of this action peculiarly his own, at such time as he blamed the *Lucans* and *Sannites*, for coming (as we say) a day after the Faire. Nevertheless he wisely considered the strength of the *Romans*, which was such, as would better endure many such losses, than he could many such victories. Therefore he thought it good to compound with them, whilst with his honour he might; and to that purpose he sent unto them *Cyneas* his Embassadour, demanding only to have the *Tarentines* permitted to live at rest, and himself accepted as their especial friend. This did *Cyneas*, with all his cunning, and with liberal gifts labour to effect: but neither man nor woman could be found in *Rome*, that would take any bribe of him; neither did their desire of recovering their captives, or their danger, by the rising of many States in *Italy* against them, so incline them to peace, as the vehement exhortation of *Appius Claudius*, an old and blinde Senatour, did stirre them up to make good their honour by war. So they returned answer, that whilst *Pyrrhus* abode in *Italy*, they would come to no agreement with him.

Such was the report that *Cyneas* made at his return, of the *Roman* puissance and verine, as kindled in *Pyrrhus* a great desire of confederacie with that gallant City. Hereupon many kind Offices passed between them: but still when he urged his motion of peace, the answer was; He must first depart out of *Italy*, and then treat of peace.

In the meane season, each part made provision for war; the *Romans* levying a more mighty army than the former; and *Pyrrhus* being strengthened with access to his forces of all the East parts of *Italy*. So they came to triall of a second battell, wherein (though after long and cruell fight) the boisterous violence of the Elephants gave to *Pyrrhus* a second victory. But this was not altogether so joyfull as the former had been: rather it gave him cause to say, that such another victory would be his utter undoing. For he had lost the flower of his Army in this battell; and though he drave the *Romans* into their Camp, yet he could not force them out of it, nor saw any likelihood of prevailing against them, that were like to be relieved with daily supplies, whilst he should be driven to spend upon his old stock. Neither could he expect that his Elephants should alwaies stand him in stead. A little knowledge of their manner in fight would soon reach the *Romans*, that were apt Schollers in such learning, how to make them unserviceable. Wherefore he desired nothing more, than how to carry his honour safe out of *Italy*: which to doe (seeing the *Romans* would not help him, by offering or accepting any fair conditions of peace, or of truce) he took a sleight occasion, presented by fortune, that followeth to be related.



## §. III.

The great troubles in Macedon and Sicill. How Pyrrhus, being invited into Sicill, forsook Italy, was the most of the Isle; and lost it in short space. Pyrrhus returns into Italy, where he is beaten by the Romans, and so goes back to his own Kingdom.

WHEN *Ptolomie Ceraunus* had traiterously murdered his Benefactor and Patron *Seleucus*, he presently seized upon all the Dominions of *Lyfsmachus* in Europe, as if they had been the due reward unto him, that had slain the Conqueror. The houses of *Cassander* and *Lyfsmachus* were then fallen to the ground: neither was there in *Macedon* any man of strength and reputation enough to advance himself against *Ceraunus*. The friends of *Lyfsmachus* were rather pleased to have him their King, that had (as he professed) revenged their Lords death; than any way offended with the odiousness of his fact, by which they were freed from subjection, to one, against whom they had stood in opposition. Many there were, that upon remembrance of his fathers great virtue, gathered hope of finding the like in *Ceraunus*: perswading themselves that his reign might prove good, though his entrance had been wicked. These affections of the *Macedonians* did serve to defeat *Antigonus* the son of *Demetrius*, that made an attempt upon the Kingdom. As for *Antigonus* the son of *Seleucus*, he was far off, and might be questioned about some part of *Asia*, ere he should be able to bring an Army neer unto Europe. Yet he made great shew of meaning to revenge his Fathers death: but being stronger in money than in armes, he was content, after a while, to take fair words, and make peace with the murderer. While these three strove about the Kingdom, *Pyrrhus*, who thought his claim as good as any of theirs, made use of their dissention: threatening war, or promising his assistance to every one of them. By these means he strengthened himself, and greatly advantaged his Italian voyage, which he had then in hand: requesting money of *Antiochus*, ships of *Antigonus*, and souldiers of *Ptolomie*, who gave him his daughter in marriage, and lent him a strong power of *Macedonian* Souldiers, and of Elephants (covenanting to have them restored at two yeeres end) more for fear than for love: that so he might free himself from trouble, and quietly enjoy his Kingdom.

Thus *Ptolomie* grew mighty on the sudden; and the power that by wicked means he had gotten, by means as wicked he encreased.

All *Macedon* and *Thrace* being his, the strong City of *Cassandria* was held by *Aspin* his sister, the widow of *Lyfsmachus*, who lay therein with her young children. Here he circumvented by making love to her, and (according to the fashion of those times, wherein Princes regarded no degree of consanguinity) taking her to wife, with promise to adopt her children: a promise that he meant not to performe; for it was not long, ere he slew them, and drove her into exile.

In the pride of this good successe, which his villanie found, vengeance came upon him from a far, by the furie of a Nation that he never heard of. *Belgius* a Captain of the *Gauls*, having forced his passage through many Countries, unto the confines of *Macedon*, sent a proud message to *Ceraunus*, commanding him to buy peace with money, or otherwise, to look for all the miseries of war. These *Gauls* were the race of those, that issued out of their Country, to seek new seats in that great expedition, wherein *Brennus* took and burnt the City of *Rome*. They had divided themselves, at their setting forth, into two companies; of which the one fell upon *Italy*; the other, passing through the Countries that lye on the Northerne side of the *Adriatick* Sea, made long abode in *Pannonia*, and the Regions adjoining, where they forced all the neighbour Princes to redeem peace with tribute, as now they would have compelled *Ceraunus* to doe: unto whom whose borders they came about an hundred and eight yeeres after such time as their fellows had taken *Rome*.

When their Embassadors came to *Ptolomie*, asking what he would give: his answer was, that he would be contented to give them peace, but it must be with condition, that they should put into his hands their Princes as hostages, and yeeld up their armes; for otherwise, he would neither pardon their boldness, nor give any credit to their words. At this answer, when it was returned, the *Gauls* did laugh; saying, That they would soon confute with deeds, the vanitie of such proud words. It may seem strange, that

that he, who had given away part of his Army unto *Pyrrhus*, for very feare; should be so confident in undertaking more mighty enemies. The King of the *Dardaniars* offered to lend him twenty thousand men against the *Gauls*: but he scorned the offer, saying, That he had the children of those, which under the conduct of *Alexander* had subdued all the East. Thus he issued forth against all the barbarous people with his famous *Macedonians*, as if the victory must needs have followed the reputation of a great name. But he soon found his great error when it was too late. For the Enemies were not only equal in strength of body, and fierceness of courage, but so far superiour to the *Macedonians* in number, that few or none escaped their furie. *Ptolomie* himself grievously wounded, fell into their hands, whilest the battell continued; and they presently brook off his head, which they shewed to his men, on the top of a Lance, to their utter astonishment.

The report of this great overthrow filled all *Macedon* with such desperation, that the people fled into walled Towns, and abandoned the whole Country as lost. Onely *Softhenes*, a valiant Captain, animating as many as he could, gathered a small Army, with which he many times got the upper hand, and hindered *Belgius* from using the victory at his whole pleasure. In regard of this his vertue, the Souldiers would have made him King; which title he refused, and was contented with the name of a General. But (as mischiefs doe seldom come alone) the good successe of *Belgius* drew into *Macedon*, *Brennus*, another Captain of the *Gauls*, with an hundred and fifty thousand foot, and fifteen thousand horse; against which mighty Army, when *Softhenes* with his weak troups made opposition, he was easily beaten, and the *Macedonians* again compelled to hide themselves within their wals, leaving all their Country to the spoil of the *Barbarians*.

Thus were the *Macedonians* destitute of a King, and trodden down by a Nation that they had not heard of, in lesse than fifty yeeres after the death of *Alexander*, who sought to discover and subdue unknown Countries, as if all *Greece*, and the Empire of *Persia* had been too little for a King of *Macedon*.

Very seasonably had these newes been carried to *Pyrrhus* in *Italy*, who sought a faire pretence of relinquishing his War with the *Romans*; had not other tidings out of *Sicill* distressed him, and carried him away in pursuit of nearer hopes. For after the death of *Agathicles*, who reigned over the whole Island, the *Carthaginians* sent an Army to conquer *Sicill*, out of which, by him, they had been expelled. This Army did so fast prevail, that the *Sicilians* had no other hope to avoid slavery, then in submitting themselves to the rule of *Pyrrhus*; whom, being a *Grecian*, and a noble Prince, they thought it more for their good to obey, than to live under the well known heave yoke of *Carthage*. To him therefore the *Syracusans*, *Leontines*, and *Agraguntines*, principall Estates of the Isle; sent Embassadors, earnestly desiring him to take them into his protection.

It grieved *Pyrrhus* exceedingly, that two such notable occasions of enlarging his Dominions should fall out so unluckily, both at one time. Yet whether he thought the business of *Sicill* more important, or more full of likelihood; or whether perhaps he believed (as came after to passe) that his advantage upon *Macedon* would not so hastily passe away, but that he might find some occasion to lay hold on it at better leisure; over into *Sicill* he transported his army, leaving the *Tarentines* to shift for themselves; yet not leaving them free as he found them, but with a Garrison in their town to hold them in subjection.

As his departure out of *Italy* was rather grounded on head-long passion, than mature advice; so were his actions following, untill his returne unto *Epirus*, rather many and tumultuous, than well ordered or note-worthy. The Army which he carried into that Isle, consisted of thirty thousand foot, and two thousand five hundred horse: with which, soon after his descent into *Sicill*, he forced the *Carthaginians* out of all, in effect; that they had therein. He also won the strong City of *Eryx*, and having beaten the *Martines* in battell; he began to change condition, and turne Tyrant. For he drove *Softhenes* to whom his cruelty was suspected out of the Island, & put *Brenon* of *Syracuse* to death, being jealous of his greatness; which two persons had faithfully served him, and delivered the great and rich City of *Syracuse* into his hands. After this, his fortunes declined so fast, as he served himself, and saved the dis-reputation of his leaving *Sicill*, by an Embassage sent him from the *Tarentines*, and *Samnites*, imploring his present help against

against the *Romans*, who since his leaving *Italy*, had well-neer dispossest them of all that they had.

Taking this fair occasion, he embarked for *Italy*; but was first beaten by the *Carthaginian* Gallies in his passage, and secondly assailed in *Italy* it self, by eighteen hundred *Mamertines*, that attended him in the straits of the Country. Lastly, after he had recovered *Tarentum*, he fought a third battell with the *Romans*, led by *M. Curius*, who was victorious over him, and foret him out of *Italy* into his own *Epirus*.

A Prince he was far more valiant than constant, and had been but a General of an Army for some other great King or State, and had been directed to have conquered any one Country or Kingdom, it is to be thought, that he would have purchased no less honour than any man of war, either preceeding or succeeding him; for a greater Captain, or a valiant man, hath been no where found. But he never stayed upon any enterprize; which was, indeed, the disease he had, whereof not long after he died in *Argos*.

## §. IV.

How Antigonus, the son of Demetrius, delivered Macedon from the Gauls. How Pyrrhus won the Kingdom of macedon from Antigonus.

THE vertue of *Sophanes* being too weak to defend the kingdom of *Macedon*; and the fortune which had accompanied him against *Belgius*, failing him in his attempts against *Brennus*: the *Macedonians* were no lesse glad to submit themselves unto the government of *Antigonus*, than they had been formerly desirous to free themselves from the impotent rule of his father *Demetrius*. His coming into the Country with an Army, Navie, and Treasure becomming a King, did rather breed good hope in the people, than fill them with much confidence: for he was driven to use against the *Barbarians*, only those forces which he brought with him, having none other than good willes of the *Macedons* to take his part. *Brennus* with the main strength of his Army, was gone to spoil the Temple of *Apollo* at *Delfos*, having left no more behind him, than he thought necessary to guard the borders of *Macedon* and *Pannonia*; which were about fifteen thousand foot, and three thousand horse. These could not be idle, but thought to get somewhat for themselves, in the absence of their fellows: and therefore sent unto *Antigonus*, offering to sell him peace, if he would pay well for it; which by the example of *Ceraunus*, he had learnt (as they thought) not to refuse. *Antigonus* was unwilling to weaken his reputation by condescending to their proud demands: yet he judged it unfit to exaspate their furious choler, by un courteous words or usage, as *Ceraunus* had overfondly done. Wherefore he entertained their Embassadors in very loving and sumptuous manner, with a royall feast: wherein he exposed to their view such abundance of massie gold and silver, that they were not so much delighted with the meat, as with sight of the vessels, wherein it was served. He thought hereby to make them understand how great a Prince he was, & how able if need required, to wage a mighty army.

To which end, he likewise did shew unto them his Camp and Navy, but especially his Elephants. But all this bravery served onely to kindle their greedy appetites; who seeing his ships heavy loaden, his Camp full of wealth, and ill fortified, (himself as it seemed) secure, and his men, both in strength and courage, inferior unto the *Gauls*, thought all time lost, wherein they suffered the present possessors to spend the riches which they accounted assuredly their own. They returned therefore to their companions with none other news in their mouths than of spoile and purchase: which tale carried the *Gauls* head-long to *Antigonus* his Camp, where they expected a greater booty, than the victory over *Ceraunus* had given to *Belgius*. Their coming was terrible and sudden; yet not so sudden, but that *Antigonus* had notice of it, who distrustful the courage of his own men, dislodged somewhat before their arrivall, and conveyed himself, with his whole army and carriage, into certain woods adjoining, where he lay close.

The *Gauls*, finding his Camp forsaken, were not hasty to pursue him but fell to ransacking the empty Cabbins of the Souldiers; in hope of finding all that was either lost or hidden. At length, when they had searched every place in vaine, angry at their

lost labour, they marched with all speed towards the Sea-side; that they might fall upon him, whilst he was busie in getting his men and carriages a ship-board. But the success was no way answerable to their expectation. For being proud of the terror which they had brought upon *Antigonus*, they were so careless of the Sea-men, that without all order, they fell to the spoile of what they found on the shore, and in such ships as lay on ground.

Part of the Army had left *Antigonus*, where he lay in covert; and had saved it self by getting aboard the fleet: in which number were some well experienced men of war: who discovering the much advantage offered unto them, by the desperate presumption of their enemies, took courage, and encouraged others to lay manly hold upon the opportunity. So the whole number, both of Souldiers and Mariners, landing together, with great resolution, gave so brave a charge upon the disordered *Gauls*, that their contemptuous boldnesse was thereby changed into sudden fear, and they, after a great laughter, driven to cast themselves into the service of *Antigonus*.

The fame of this victory caused all the barbarous Nations in those quarters to entertain their ancient beleef of the *Macedonian* valour: by which the terrible and restless oppressors of so many Countries were overthrown.

To speak more of the *Gauls* in this place, and to shew how, about these times, three Tribes of men passed over into *Asia* the lesse, with their wars and conquests there; I hold it needlesse: the victorious Armies of the *Romans* taming them hereafter in the Countries which now they wan, shall give better occasion to rehearse these matters briefly.

Howsoever the good success of *Antigonus* got him reputation among the barbarous people, yet his own Souldiers, that without his leading had won this victory, could not thereupon be perswaded to think him a good man of war: knowing that he had no interest in the honour of the service, wherein his conduct was no better than creeping into a wood.

This (as presently will appear) was greatly helpfull unto *Pyrrhus*: though as yet he knew not so much. For *Pyrrhus*, when his affairs in *Italy* stood upon hard termes, had sent unto *Antigonus* for help: not without threats, in case it were denied. So was he faine to get either a supply, wherewith to continue his war against the *Romans*, or some seeming honourable pretence, to forsake *Italy*, under colour of making his word good, in seeking revenge. The threats which he had used in bravery, meer necessity forced him at his return into *Epirus*, to put in practise.

He brought home with him eight thousand foot, and five hundred horse: an Army too little to be employed, by his restless nature, in any action of importance; yet greater than he had meanes to keep in pay. Therefore he fell upon *Macedon*; intending to take what spoile he could get, and make *Antigonus* compound with him, to be freed from trouble. At his first entrance into this business, two thousand of *Antigonus* his souldiers revolted unto *Pyrrhus*; and many Cities, either willingly or perforce, received him. Such fair beginnings easily perswaded the courage of this daring Prince to set upon *Antigonus* himself, and to hazzard his fortune, in triall of a battell, for the whole Kingdom of *Macedon*.

It appeares that *Antigonus* had no desire to fight with this hot warrior; but thought it the wisest way, by protracting of time, to weary him out of the country. For *Pyrrhus* overtook him in a streight passage, and charged him in the reare; wherein were the *Gauls* and the Elephants, which were thought the best of his strength: a manifest proof that he was in retrait. The *Gauls* very bravely sustained *Pyrrhus* his impression; yet were broken at length (when most of them were slain) after a sharp fight: wherein it seems that *Antigonus* keeping his *Macedonian* Phalanx within the streight, and not advancing to their succour, took away their courage by deceiving their expectation. The Captaines of the Elephants were taken soon after, who finding themselves exposed to the same violence that had consumed so many of the *Gauls*, yielded themselves and the beasts. All this was done in full view of *Antigonus* & his *Macedonians*, to their great discomfort; which emboldned *Pyrrhus* to charge them where they lay in their strength. Where the Phalanx could be charged onely in a front, it was a matter of extreme difficulty (if not impossible) to force it. But the *Macedonians* had seen so much, that they had no desire to fight against *Pyrrhus*; who discovered so well their affections, that he adventured

adventured to draw neer in person, and exhort them to yeeld. Neither the common Souldier nor any Leader refused to become his follower. All forooke *Antigonus*, a few horsemen excepted, that fled along with him to *Theſſalonia*; where he had some small forces left, and money enough to entertain a greater power, had he known where to levie it. But whilest he was thinking how to allure a sufficient number of the *Gauls* into his service; whereby he might repaire his losse: *Ptolomie*, the son of *Pyrrhus*, came upon him, and easily defeating his weak forces, drave him to flee from the parts about *Macedon*, to those Towns afar off in *Peloponnesus*, in which he had formerly lurked, before such time as he looked abroad into the world, and made himself a King.

This good successe revived the spirits of the *Epirot*, and caused him to forget all sorrow of his late mis-fortunes in the *Roman* War: so that he sent for his son *Helenus* (whom he had left with a Garrison, in the Castle of *Tarentum*) willing him to come over into *Greece*, where was more matter of conquest, and let the *Italians* thift for themselves.

## §. V.

*How Pyrrhus assailed Sparta without successe. His enterprize upon Argos, and his death.*

*Pyrrhus* had now conceived a great hope that nothing should be able to withstand him; seeing that in open fight he had vanquished the *Gauls*, and beaten *Antigonus*, and won the Kingdome of *Macedon*. There was not in all *Greece*, nor, indeed, in all the Lands that *Alexander* had won, any Leader of such name and worth, as deserved to be set up against him: which filled him with the opinion that he might doe what he pleased. He raised therefore an Army, consisting of five and twenty thousand foot, two thousand horse, and four and twenty Elephants; pretending war against *Antigonus*, and the giving liberty to those Towns in *Peloponnesus*, which the same *Antigonus* held in subjection; though it was easily discovered, that such great preparations were made, for accomplishment of some designe more important than war against a Prince already vanquished, and almost utterly dejected. Especially the *Lacedemonians* feared this expedition, as made against their State. For *Cleonymus*, one of their Kings, being expelled out of his Country, had betaken himself to *Pyrrhus*: who readily entertained him, and promised to restore him to his Kingdom. This promise was made in secret; neither would *Pyrrhus* make shew of any displeasure that he bare unto *Sparta*; but contrariwise professed, that it was his intent, to have two of his own younger sons trained up in that City, as in a place of noble discipline. With such colours he deluded men, even till he entred upon *Laconia*; where presently he demeaned himself as an open enemy; excusing himself and his former dissembling words with a jest; That he followed herein the *Lacedemonian* custome, of concealing what was truly proposed. It had been, indeed, the manner of the *Lacedemonians*, to deale in like sort with others, whom, in the time of their greatnesse, they sought to oppress: but now they complained of that, as falshood, in *Pyrrhus*, which they always practised in wisdom, till it made them distrustful, forsaken, and almost contemptible. Nevertheless, they were not wanting to themselves in this dangerous extremity. For the old men and women laboured in fortifying the Town; causing such as could beare armes to reſerre themselves fresh against the assault: which *Pyrrhus* had unwisely deferred, upon assurance of prevailing.

*Sparta* was never fortified, before this time, otherwise than with armed Citizens: soon after this (it being built upon uneven ground, and, for the most part, hard to approach) the lower & more accessible places, were fenced with walls, at the present only trenches were cast, & barricadoes made with carts, where the entrance seemed most easie. Three dayes together it was assailed by *Pyrrhus* exceeding fiercely; and no lesse stoutly defended. The desperate courage of the Citizens preserved the town the first day; whereinto the violence of *Pyrrhus* had forced entrance the second day, but that his wounded horse threw him to the ground, which made his Souldiers more mindfull of saving the person of their King, than of breaking into the City, though already they had come

soon in sunder the Barricadoes. Presently after this, one of *Antigonus* his Captains got into *Sparta* with a good strength of men; and *Arenus* the King returned out of *Crete* (where he had been helping his friends in war) with two thousand men, little knowing the danger, in which his own Country stood, untill he was almost at home. These succours did not more animate the *Spartans*, than kindle in *Pyrrhus* a desire to prevail against all impediments. But the third dayes work shewed how great his error had been, in forbearing to assault the Town at his first coming. For he was so manfully repelled, that he saw no likelihood of getting the place, otherwise than by a long siege: in which tedious course he had no desire to spend his time.

*Antigonus* had now raised an Army, though not strong enough to meet the Enemy in plain field, yet able to hinder all his purposes. This made *Pyrrhus* doubtful what way to take; being diversly affected, by the difficulty of his enterprize in hand, and the shame of taking a repulse in his first attempt. Whilest he was thus perplexed, letters came from *Argos*, inviting him thither; with promise to deliver that City into his hands.

Civil dissention raging then hotly in *Argos*, caused the heads of severall factions to call in *Pyrrhus* and *Antigonus*; but the coming of these two Princes taught the Citizens wit, and made them desirous to rid their hands of such powerfull assistants, as each of the two Kings pretended himself to be. *Antigonus* told the *Argives*, that he came to free them from the tyrannie of *Pyrrhus*: and that he would be gone, if they needed not his help. On the other side, *Pyrrhus* would needs persuade them, that he had none other errand, than to make them safe from *Antigonus*; offering in like manner, to depart, if they so desired.

The *Argives* took small pleasure in hearing the Fox and Kite at strife, which of them should keep the Chickens from his enemy: and therefore prayed them both to divert their powers some other way. Hereunto *Antigonus* readily condescended, and gave hostages to assure his word: for he was the weaker, and stood in need of good will. But *Pyrrhus* thought it enough to promise: Hostages he would give none to his inferiours; especially meaning deceit. This made them suspect his purpose to be such, as indeed it was. Yet he lesse regarded their opinions, than to hold them worthy of assurance, by giving such a bond, as he intended to break ere the next morning.

It was concluded, that a Gate of the City should be opened by night unto *Pyrrhus*, by his Complices within *Argos*: which was accordingly performed. So his Army without any tumult entred the City: till the Elephants, with Towers on their backs, cloyed the way, being too high to passe the Gate. The taking off, and setting on again of those Towers, with the trouble thereto belonging, did both give alarme to the Citie, and some leasure to take order for defence, before so many were entred, as could fully master it. *Argos* was full of ditches, which greatly hindered the *Gauls* (that had the Vantguard) being ignorant of the wayes in the dark night. The Citizens, on the other side, had much advantage, by their knowledge of every by-passage: and setting upon the enemies on all sides, did put them to great losse and more trouble.

*Pyrrhus* therefore understanding by the confused noise, and unequall shoutings of his own men, that they were in distresse, entred the City in person, to take order for their relief, and assurance of the place. But the darknesse, the throng, and many other impediments, kept him from doing any thing of moment, untill break of day. Then began he to make his passage by force, and so far prevailed, that he got into the Market-place. It is said, that seeing in that place the Image of a Wolfe and a Bull, in such posture as if they had been combatant, he called to minde an Oracle, which threatened him with death, when he should behold a Bull fighting with a Wolfe: and that hereupon he made retreat.

Indeed, the coming of *Antigonus* to the rescue, the disorder and confusion of his own men, with divers ill accidents, gave him reasonable cause to have retired out of the City, though the Wolfe and Bull had been away. The tumult was such, that no directions could be heard; but as some gave back, so did others thrust forward, and the *Argives* pressing hard upon him, forced *Pyrrhus* to make good his retreat with his

own

own sword. The tops of the houses were covered with women, that stood looking on the fight. Among these was one, that saw her own son in dangerous case, fighting with Pyrrhus. Wherefore she took a tile-stone, or slate, and threw it so violently down on the head of Pyrrhus, that he fell to ground astonished with the blow; and lying in that case, had his head cut off.

Thus ended the restless ambition of Pyrrhus, together with his life: and thus returned the Kingdome of Macedonia to Antigonus; who forthwith possessed the Army, the body and the children of his Enemy. The body of Pyrrhus had honourable buriall, and was given by Antigonus unto Eleemus his son; which young Prince he graciously sent home into his fathers Kingdome of Epirus. From this time forwards, the race of Antigonus held the Kingdome of Macedonia; the posterity of Seleucus reigned over Asia and Syria; and the house of Ptolomy had quiet possession of Egypt: untill such time as the Citie of Rome, swallowing all up, digested these, among other Countries, into the body of her owne Empire.

Finis Libri quarti.



THE



## THE FIRST PART OF THE HISTORY OF THE WORLD;

Beginning of the times from the settled rule of ALEXANDERS Successors in the East, untill the ROMANS, prevailing over all, made Conquest of ASIA and MACEDON.

### THE FIFTH BOOK.

#### CHAP. I.

#### Of the first Punic War.

Whether the Romans could have resisted the great Alexander. That neither the Macedonian nor the Roman Soldier, was of equal value to the English.

That question handled by Livie. Whether the great Alexander could have prevailed against the Romans, if after his Eastern conquest, he had bent all his forces against them, hath been, and is the subject of much dispute, which (as it seems to me) the arguments on both sides do not so well explain, as doth the experience that Pyrrhus hath given of the Roman power in his dayes. For if he, a Commander (in Hannibals judgement) inferior to Alexander, though to none else, could with small strength of men, and little store of money, or of other needfull helps in war, win them in two battels, and endanger their Empire, when it was well settled, and the best part of Italy, under a confirmed obedience: what would Alexander have done, that was abundantly provided of all, which is needfull to a Conquerour, wanting the matter of employment, coming upon them before their Dominion was half so settled? It is easie to say, that Alexander had no more than thirty thousand foot, and four thousand horse (as indeed, at his first passage into Asia, he carried over not more), and that the rest of his followers, were no better than half effeminate Africans, but he that considers the Arms of Persians, Antipater, Craterus, Eumenes, Phileas, Antiochus, and Lysimachus, with the actions by them performed, every one of them to omit others, commanded only some fragment of this dead Emperors power, shall easily finde, that such a reckoning is far short of the truth. And were needfull to speak of Treasure, Horses, Elephants, Engines of Artillery, and the

K k k k

the like of all which the *Macedonians* had abundance; the *Roman* having sought, rare men and arms. As for *Sea* forces; he that shall confider after what force the *Romans*, in their first *Marine* War, were trained in the rudiments of Navigation; sitting upon the shore, and beating the vessels with poles, to practice the stroke of the Oars, as not daring to launch their ill-built *Fleets* into the *Sea*; will easily conceive how far too weak they would have proved in such services.

Now for *Helpers in War*; I do not see why all *Greece* and *Macedon*, being absolutely compassed by *Alexander*, might not well deserve to be laid in balance against those parts of *Italy*, which the *Romans* held in well-affured subjection. To omit therefore all benefit that the Eastern world, more wealthy, indeed, than valiant, could have afforded us, the *Macedonians* let us only conjecture, how the States of *Sicily* and *Cambrige* and their neighbours to such a quarrel (which happened) would have stood affected. The *Sicilians* were for the most part *Grecians*; neither is it to be doubted, that they would readily have submitted themselves unto him, that ruled all *Greece* besides them. It what terms they commonly stood, and how ill they were able to defend themselves, it shall appear anon. Sure it is, that *Alexanders* coming into those parts, would have brought excessive joy to them, that they had seen the help of *Pyrhus*, by coming to become his subjects. As for the *Cathaginians*, if *Agathocles* the Tyrant of *Syracuse* had of his people, and fit able to defend his own benighted City, could by adventuring to faile into *Africk*, put their Dominion yet, and *Cathage* it self, in extreme hazard; shall we think that they would have been able to withstand *Alexander*? But why do I question their ability, seeing that they sent Embassadors, with their submission, as far as *Babylon*, ere the War drew neerer them? Wherefore it is manifest, that the *Roman* mult, without other succour, than perhaps of some other few *Italian* friends (of which yet there were none that forsook them not, at some time, both before and after this) have opposed their valour and good military discipline, against the power of all Countries to them known, if they would have made resistance. How they could have so well, in undertaking such a match; it is unseafie to finde in discourse of humane reason. It is true, that virtue and fortune *work* wonders; but it is against cowardly fooles, and the unfortunate: for whoever contends with one too mighty for him; either mult excell in these, as much as his enemy goes beyond him in power; or else mult looke both to be overcome, and to be cast down so much the lower, by how much the opinion of his fortune and vertue renders him suspected, as likely to make head another time against the vanquisher. Whether the *Roman* or the *Macedonian* were in those dayes the better Souldier, I will not take upon me to determine: though I might without partiality, deliver mine own opinion, and preferre that Army, which followed not only *Pyrrhus* and *Alexander*, but also *Alexanders* Princes after him, in the great dangers of all forts of War, before any, that *Rome* either had, or in long time after had form. Concerning fortune, who can give a rule that shall always hold? *Alexander* was victorious in a very battell that he fought, and the *Romans* in the issue of the war. But both finish as *Livie* hath judged this matter worthy of consideration; that it is a great part of *Romans* good fortune, that *Alexander* came not into *Italy*; where in many years after his death he wrought many confusions, together with all the powers of the Sea were subjoynt by the *Spaniards*, and enforced to yeeld up their arms. We may therefore perceive how to admire his own *Romans*, and to compare with *Alexander* the *Capitane* soldiers, which were honoured sufficiently, in being thought equal to his followers that the same conscript should bind our judgement, we cannot permit without much vanity.

Now in deciding such a controversy, he thinks it were not amiss for an English  
to give such a sentence between the *Indians* and *Romans*, as the *Romans* gave  
(being chosen *Arbitrators*) between the *Arcturi* and *Aricani*, that strove about a piece  
of land, saying that it belonged unto neither of them, but unto the *Romans* themselves.  
If therefore it be demanded, whether the *Indo-European*, or the *Romans* were the best  
Warriors? I will answer, The *Indo-European*. For it will soon appear to any that will  
examine the noble acts of our Nation in war, that they were performed by no advantage  
of weapon; and no force of manly people, the enemy being in inferior  
unto us in number, and no need of provocation, yet as well trained as we, or commonly  
by cetry, in the exercise of War.

In what sort *Philip* wan his Dominion in *Greece*; what manner of men the *Persians* and *Indians* were, whom *Alexander* vanquished; as likewise of what force the *Macedonian Phalanx* was, and how well appointed, against such armes as it commonly encountered any man, that hath taken paines to reade the foregoing story of them, doth sufficiently understand. Yet was this *Phalanx* never, or very seldom, able to stand against the Roman armies which were embattelled in so excellent a forme, as I know not whether any Nation besides them have used, either before or since. The *Roman* weapons likewise both offensive and defensive, were of greater use than those with which any other Nation hath served, before the fiery instruments of Gun-powder were known. As for the enemies with which *Rome* had to doe, we finde, that they which did over-match her in numbers, were as far over-matched by her in weapons; and that they, of whom she had little advantage in arms, had as little advantage of her in multitude. This also (as *Plutarch* well observeth) was a part of her happinesse; that she was never over-laid with two great wars at once.

with two great wars at once. Hereby it came to passe, that having at first increased her strength by accession of the *Sabines*; having won the State of *Alba*, against which she adventured her own self, she was in wagger, upon the heads of three Champions; and having thereby made her self Princeesse of *Latium*, shee did afterwards by long war, in many ages, extend her Dominion over all *Italy*. The *Carthaginians* had well-neer oppressed her: but her Soldiers were Mercenary; so that for want of proper strength, they were easily beaten out their own doores. The *Etolians*, and with them all, or the most of *Greece*, assisted her against *Philip* the *Macedonian*: he being beaten, did lend her his help to beat the same *Etolians*. The wars against *Antiochus*, and other *Asiatiques*, were such as gave to Rome small cause of boast, though much of joy: for those opposites were as bafe of courage, as the lands which they held were abundant of riches. *Sicily*, *Spain*, and all *Greece*, fell into her hands, by using her aide to protect them against the *Carthaginians* and *Macedonians*.

I shall not need to speak of her other conquests: it was easie to get more when they had gotten all this. It is not my purpose to disgrace the *Roman* valour (which was very noble) or to blemish the reputation of so many famous victories: I am not foile. This is *Pliny*. That among all their wars, I finde not any, wherein their valour hath appeared comparable to the *English*. If my judgement seem over-partiall, our wars in *France* may help to make it good.

happ to make it good.  
first therefore it is well known, that *Rome* (or perhaps all the world besides) had ne-  
ver any so brave a Commander in war as *Julius Caesar*: and that no *Roman* army was  
comparable unto that which served under the same *Caesar*. Likewise, it is apparent, that  
the gallant *Army*, which had given faire proof of the *Roman* courage, in good perfor-  
mance of the *Helvetian* war, when it first entred into *Gaul*; was neverthelesse utterly  
disheartned, when *Caesar* led it against the *Germans*. So that we may justly impute all  
that was extraordinary in the valour of *Caesar*'s men, to their long exercise, under so good  
a Leader, in so great a war. Now let us in generall compare with the deeds done by  
these best of *Roman* Souldiers, in their principall service; the things performed in the  
same Country, by our common *English* Souldiers, levied in haste, from following the  
Que, or sitting on the shop-stall: so shall we see the difference. Herein will we deale  
simply, and beleve *Caesar* in relating the acts of the *Romans*: but will call the *French* Hi-  
storians to witness, what actions were performed by the *English*. In *Caesar*'s time *France*  
was inhabited by the *Gauls*, a stout people, but inferior to the *French*, by whom they  
were subdued; even when the *Romans* gave them assistance. The Country of *Gaul* was  
rent in funder (as *Caesar* witnesseth) into many Lordships: some of which were governed  
by petty kings, others by the multitude, none ordered in such sort as might make it ap-  
peale to the neereff Neighbour. The factions were many, and violent: not only in  
general through the whole Country, but between the petty States, yea in every City,  
and almost in every house. What greater advantage could a Conquerour desire? Yet  
there was a greater. *Arminius*, with his *Germans*, had over-run the Country, and held  
much part of it in subjection, little different from meer slavery: yea, so often had the  
*Germans* prevailed in war upon the *Gauls*, that the *Gauls*, (who had sometimes been  
the better Souldiers) did hold themselves no way equall to those daily Invaders. Had  
*France* been so prepared unto our *English* Kings, *Rome* it self by this time, and long ere

a The Dol-  
phin of Vic-  
nois.  
b The King of  
Majorca.

J. hn de Serres.

JEAN avoit  
scu l'avantage  
par desor E. D.  
O. V. A. R. D.  
le nombre, la  
force, le la-  
sue, le pay, le  
preiuge (qui  
n'est pas com-  
munelement une  
consideration de  
peu d'impor-  
tance aux affai-  
res du monde)  
En avoy luy  
dite de la Ca-  
valerie, lors  
estime la meri-  
te de tout son  
Royaume.

this time, would have been ours. But when King Edward the third began his war upon France, he found the whole Country settled in obedience to one mighty King; a King whose reputation abroad, was no less than his puissance at home; under whose ensigne, the King of Bohemia did serve in person; at whose call the *Genoways*, and other Neighbour States, were ready to take arms; finally, a King unto whom one (a) Prince gave away his Dominion, for love; (b) another sold away a goodly City and Territory for money. The Country lying open to the *Romans* and being so well fenced against the *English*; it is note-worthy, not who prevailed most therein (for it were meer vanity to match the *English* purchases with the *Roman* conquest) but whether of the two gave the greater proof of military vertue. *Cesar* himself doth witness, that the *Gauls* com-  
plained of their own ignorance in the Art of war, and that their own hardnesse was overmastered by the skill of their enemies. Poor men, they admired the *Roman* Towers, and Engines of battery, raised and planted against their walles, as more than humane workes. What greater wonder is it, that such a people was beaten by the *Romans*; than that the *Garibers*, a naked people, but valiant, as any under the skie, are commonly put to the worke by small numbers of *Spaniards*? Besides all this, we are to have regard of the great difficulty that was found, in drawing all the *Gauls*, or any great part of them, to one head, that with joynt forces they might oppose their assailants: as also the much more difficulty of holding them long together. For hereby it came to passe, that they were never able to make use of opportunity: but sometimes compelled to stay for their fellows; and sometimes driven to give or take battell upon extreme disadvantages, for fear lest their companies should fall asunder: as indeed, upon any little disaster, they were ready to break, and return every one to the defence of his own. All this, and (which was little lesse than all this) great oddes in weapon gave to the *Romans* the honour of many gallant victories. What such help, or what other worldly help, than the golden mettle of their Souldiers, had our *English* Kings against the *French*? Were not the *French* as well experienced in feats of war? Yea, did they not think themselves therein our superiours? Were they not in arms, in horse, and in all provision, exceedingly beyond us? Let us heare what a *French* writer saith of the inequality that was between the *French* and *English*, when their King *John* was ready to give the on-set upon the *Black Prince*, at the battell of *Poitiers*. *John* had all advantages over Edward, both of number, force, shew, Country and conceit (the which is commonly consideration of no small importance in worldly affaires) and withall, the choice of all his best men (esteemed then the best in Europe) with the greatest and wisest Captaines of his whole Realme. And what could he more?

I think it would trouble a *Roman* antiquary to finde the like example in their Histories; the example I say, of a King, brought prisoner to Rome, by an army of eight thousand, which he had surrounded with forty thousand, better appointed, and no lesse expert Warriours. This I am sure of, that neither *Syphax* the *Numidian*, followed by a rabble of half Scullions, as *Livie* rightly termes them, nor those cowardly Kings, *Perseus* and *Genius*, are worthy patternes. All that have read of *Cressi* and *Agincourt*, will beare me witness, that I do not alledge the battell of *Poitiers*, for lack of other, as good examples of the *English* vertue: the proof whereof hath left many a hundred better marks in all quarters of France, then ever did the valour of the *Romans*. If any man impute these victories of ours to the long bow, as carrying farther, piercing more strongly, and quicker of discharge than the *French* Crosse-bow: my answer is ready; That in all these respects, it is also (being drawn with a strong arme) superiour to the Musket; yet is the Musket a weapon of more use. The Gun and the Crosse-bow are of like force, when discharged by a Boy or Woman, as when by a strong Man: weaknesse or sicknesse, or a sore finger makes the long Bow unserviceable. More particularly, I say, that it was the custome of our Ancestors, to shoot, for the most part, point blank; and so shall he perceive, that will note the circumstances of almost any one battell. This takes away all objection: for when two Armies are within the distance of a Butts length, one flight of arrowes, or two at the most can be delivered before they close. Neither is it in generall true, that the long Bow reacheth farther, or that it pierceth more strongly than the Crosse-bow: but this is the rare effect of an extraordinary arme; whereupon can be grounded no common rule. If any man shall aske, How then came it to passe, that the *English* won so many great battels, having no advantage

to help him? I may, with best commendation of modesty, referre him to the *French* Historian: who relating the victory of our men at *Crecant*, where they passed a bridge, in face of the enemy, useth these words: *The English comes with a conquering bravery, as he that was accustomed to gain every-where, without any stay; he forceth our guard placed upon the bridge to keep the passage.* Or I may cite another place of the same Author, where he tells how the *Brittons*, being invaded by *Charles* the eighth, King of France, thought it good policy to apparell a thousand and five hundred of their own men in *English* Caskes; hoping that the very sight of the *English* red crosse, would be enough to terrifie the *French*. But I will not stand to borrow of the *French* Historians (all which, excepting *De Serres*, and *Paulus Amylius*, report wonders of our Nation:) the proposition which first I undertook to maintain; That the military vertue of the *English*, prevailing against all manner of difficulties, ought to be preferred before that of the *Romans*, which was assisted with all advantages that could be desired. If it be demanded, why then did not our Kings finish the conquest, as *Cesar* had done? my answer may be (I hope without offence) that our Kings were like to the race of the *Macidae*, of whom the old Poet *Ennius* gave this note: *Bellipotentes sunt magis quam sapientis potentes*; They were more warlike than politick. Who so notes their proceedings, may finde, that none of them went to work like a Conquerour, save onely King *Henry* the fifth; the course of whose victories it pleased God to interrupt by his death. But this question is the more easily answered, if another be first made. Why did not the *Romans* attempt the conquest of *Gaul* before the time of *Cesar*? why not after the *Macedonian* war? why not after the third *Punic*, or after the *Numanian*? At all these times they had good leisure: and then especially had they both leisure & fit opportunity, when under the conduct of *Marius*, they had newly vanquished the *Cimbri*, and *Teutones*, by whom the country of *Gaul* had been piteously wasted. Surely the words of *Tully* were true; That with other Nations the *Romans* fought for Dominion, with the *Gauls* for preservation of their own safety.

Therefore they attempted not the conquest of *Gaul*, until they were Lords of all other Countries, to them known. We on the other side, held onely the one half of our own Island; the other half being inhabited by a Nation (unless perhaps in wealth and numbers of men somewhat inferiour) every way equal to our selves; a Nation anciently and strongly allied to our enemies the *French*, and in that regard enemy to us. So that our danger lay both before and behinde us: and the greater danger at our backs; where commonly we felt, alwayes we feared, a stronger invasion by land, than we could make upon France, transporting our forces over Sea.

It is usual with men, that have pleased themselves in admiring the matters which they find in ancient Histories; to hold it a great injury done to their judgement, if any take upon him, by way of comparison, to extoll the things of later ages. But I am well perswaded, that as the divided vertue of this our Island, hath given more noble proof of itself, than under so worthy a Leade; that *Roman* Army could do, which afterwards could win Rome, and all her Empire, making *Cesar* a Monarch; so hereafter, by Gods blessing, who hath converted our greatest hinderance, into our greatest help, the enemy that shall dare to try our forces, will finde cause to wish, that avoiding us, he had rather encountered as great a puissance as was that of the *Roman* Empire. But it is now high time, that, laying aside comparisons, we return to the rehearsal of deeds done: wherein we shall finde, how Rome began, after *Pyrrhus* had left Italy, to strive with Carthage for Dominion, in the first *Punic* War.

## §. II.

The estate of Carthage before it entred into war with Rome.

THE City of Carthage had stood above fix hundred yeers, when first it began to contend with Rome for the mastery of *Sicil*. It fore-went Rome one hundred and fifty yeers in antiquity of foundation: but in the honour of great achievements, it excelled far beyond this advantage of time. For Carthage had extended her Dominion *Africa* it self, from the West part of *Cyrene*, to the Streights of *Hercules*, about one thousand and five hundred miles in length, wherein stood three hundred Cities. It had subjected all *Spain*, even to the *Pyrenean* Mountains, together with all the

Kkkk 3



Islands in the Mediterranean Sea, to the West of Sicily; and of Sicily the better part. It flourished about seven hundred and thirty years, before the destruction thereof by Scipio: who, besides other spoiles, and all that the Souldiers reserved, carried thence four hundred and seventy thousand weight of silver, which make of our money (four pounds differ not) fourteen hundred and ten thousand pound sterling. So as this glorious City ran the same fortune, which many other great ones have done, both before and since. The ruine of the goodliest pieces of the world fore-shews the dissolution of the whole.

a In Pol. Arist.  
1.2. c. 9.

b The Tarky,  
at this day, do

also take the  
one half of the

poor mans  
corn, that la-

bour the  
earth: yet,

there is the tri-

bute both of  
the bodies, &

of the souls of  
the Christians

their Vallies,  
by bereaving

them of their  
ablest chil-

dren, & bring-

ing them up in  
the Mahometan

Religion. The

Jish take the

fourth share &

were wont to

eat up with  
their horse-

men, footmen,

& dogs, what  
they pleased,

of the other  
three parts re-

maining. The

husbandman

and the yeo-

man of Eng-

land, are the

freest of all  
the World:

And reason

good: for of

them have the

bodies of our

victorious Ar-

mies been

compounded.

And it is the

free-man, and

not the slave,

that hath cou-

rage and the

sense of shame

deserved by

cowardice.

How free the

English yo-

About one hundred years after such time as it was cast down, the Senate of Rome caused it to be re-built; and by Gracchus it was called Junonia: it was again and again abandoned and re-peopled, taken and re-taken; by Gensericus the Vandal, by Belisarius under Justinian, by the Persians, by the Egyptians, and by the Mahometans. It is now nothing. The seat thereof was exceeding strong: and while the Carthaginians commanded the Sea, invincible. For the Sea compassed it about, saving that it was tied to the main by a neck of land; which passage had two miles and more of breadth (Appian saith, three miles and one furlong) by which we may be induced to beleieve the common report, that the City it self was above twenty miles in compass; if not that of Strabo, affirming the circuit to have been twice as great.

It had three walls without the wall of the City; and between each of those, three or four streets, with vaults under ground, of thirty foot deep, in which they had place for three hundred Elephants, and all their food: over these they had stables for four thousand horse, and Granaries for their provender. They had also lodgings in these streets, between these out-walls, for four thousand horse-men, and twenty thousand foot-men, which (according to the discipline used now by those of China) never pestered the City. It had towards the South part, the Castle of Byrsa; to which Scipio gives two and twenty furlongs in compass, that make two miles and a half. This was the same piece of ground which Dido obtained of the Libyans, when she got leave to buy only so much Land of them, as she could compass with an Ox-hide. On the West side it had also the salt Sea, but in the nature of a standing pool; for a certain arm of Land, fastened to the ground, on which the City stood, stretched it self towards the West continent, and left but seventy foot open for the Sea to enter. Over this standing Sea was built a most sumptuous Arsenal, having their Ships and Gallies riding under it.

The form of their Common-weal resembled that of Sparta; for they had titular Kings, and the Aristocratical power of Senators. But (as Regius well observeth) the people in later times usurped too great authority in their Councils. This confusion in government, together with the trust that they reposed in hired Souldiers, were helping causes of their destruction in the end. Two other more forcible causes of their ruine, were their avarice and their cruelty. Their avarice was shewed both in exacting from their Vallies (besides ordinary tributes) the one half of the fruits of the earth; and in conferring of great offices, not upon gentle & mercifull persons, but upon those who could best tyrannize over the people, to augment their treasures. Their cruelty appeared, in putting them to death without mercy, that had offended through ignorance: the one of these rendred them odious to their Vallies, whom it made ready upon all occasions, to revolt from them: the other did break the spirits of their Generals, by presenting in the heat of their actions abroad, the fear of a cruell death at home. Hereby it came to passe, that many good Commanders of the Carthaginian forces, after some great losse received, have desperately cast themselves, with all that remained under their charge, into the throat of destruction; holding it necessary, either to repaire their losses quickly, or to ruine all together: and few of them have dared to manage their own best projects, after that good form, wherein they first conceived them, for fear lest the manner of their proceeding should be mis-interpreted: It being the Carthaginian rule, to crucifie, not only the unhappy Captain, but even him, whose bad counsell had prospered event. The faults, wherewith in generall, they of Carthage are taxed, by Roman Historians, I finde to be these; lust, cruelty, avarice, craft, unfaithful-

ness, and perjury. Whether the Romans themselves were free from the same crimes, let the trial be referred unto their actions. The first league between Carthage and Rome, was very ancient: having been made the year following the expulsion of Tarquins. In that league the Carthaginians had the superiority, as imposing upon the Romans the more strict conditions. For it was agreed, that the Romans should not so much as have trade in some part of Africa, nor suffer any ship of theirs to passe beyond the headland, or cape, then called the fair Promontory, unless it were by force of tempest: whereas on the other side, no Haven in Italy was forbidden to the Carthaginians. A second league was made long after, which (howsoever it hath pleased Livie to say, that the Romans granted it, at the Carthaginians intreaty) was more strict than the former: prohibiting the Romans to have trade in any part of Africa, or in the Island of Sardinia.

By these two treaties it may appear, that the Carthaginians had an intent not only to keep the Romans (as perhaps they did other people) from getting any knowledge of the state of Africa; but to countenance & uphold them, in their troubling all Italy, whereby they themselves might have the better means to occupy all Sicily, whilst that Island should be destitute of Italian succours. Hereupon we finde good cause of the joy that was in Carthage, and of the Crown of gold, weighing twenty and five pound, sent from thence to Rome, when the Samnites were overthrown. But the little state of Rome prevailed faster in Italy, than the great power of Carthage did in Sicily. For that mighty Army of three hundred thousand men, which Hannibal conducted out of Africa into Sicily, was only two Cities therein: many great fleets were devoured by tempests; and howsoever the Carthaginians prevailed at one time, the Sicilians, either by their own valour, or by the assistance of their good friends out of Greece, did at some other time repaire their own losses, and take revenge upon those Invaders. But never were the people of Carthage in better hope of getting all Sicily, than when the death of Agathocles the Tyrant, had left the whole Island in combustion; the estate of Greece being such, at the same time, that it seemed impossible for any succour to be sent from thence. But whilst the Carthaginians were busie in making their advantage of this good opportunity; Pyrrhus, invited by the Tarentines and their fellows, came into Italy, where he made a short war upon the Romans. These news were unpleasing to the Carthaginians, who, being a subtle Nation, easily fore-saw, that the same busie disposition which had brought this Prince out of Greece into Italy, would as easily transport him over into Sicily, as soon as he could finish his Roman war. To prevent this danger, they sent Mago Embassadour to Rome; who declared in their name, that they were sorry to hear what misadventure had befallen the Romans, their good friends, in this war with Pyrrhus; and that the people of Carthage were very willing to assist the state of Rome, by sending an Army into Italy; if their help were thought needfull, against the Epirots.

It was indeed the main desire of the Carthaginians, to hold Pyrrhus so hardly to his work in Italy, that they might, at good leisure, pursue their business in Sicily: which caused them to make such a goodly offer. But the Romans were too high-minded: and refused to accept any such aid of their friends, lest it should blemish their reputation, and make them seem unable to stand by their own strength. Yet the message was taken lovingly, as it ought; and the former league between Rome and Carthage renewed; with covenants added, concerning the present business; That if either of the two Cities made peace with Pyrrhus, it should be with reservation of liberty, to assist the other, in case that Pyrrhus should invade either of their Dominions. All this notwithstanding, and notwithstanding that the same Mago went and treated with Pyrrhus, using all means to sound his intentions (a matter very difficult; where one upon every new occasion, changeth his own purposes) yet Pyrrhus found leisure to make a step into Sicily: where, although in fine he was neither getter nor savor, yet he clean defeated the purposes of Carthage, leaving them, at his departure from thence, as far from any end, as when they first began.

So many disasters in an enterprise; that from the first undertaking had been so strongly pursued, through the length of many generations, might well have induced the Carthaginians to beleieve, that an higher providence resisted their intentment. But their desire of winning that fruitful Island, was so inveterate, that with unwearied patience, they still continued in hope of so much the greater an harvest, by how much their cost and pains therein buried had been the more. Wherefore they re-continued their

ness, and perjury. Whether the Romans themselves were free from the same crimes, let the trial be referred unto their actions. The first league between Carthage and Rome, was very ancient: having been made the year following the expulsion of Tarquins. In that league the Carthaginians had the superiority, as imposing upon the Romans the more strict conditions. For it was agreed, that the Romans should not so much as have trade in some part of Africa, nor suffer any ship of theirs to passe beyond the headland, or cape, then called the fair Promontory, unless it were by force of tempest: whereas on the other side, no Haven in Italy was forbidden to the Carthaginians. A second league was made long after, which (howsoever it hath pleased Livie to say, that the Romans granted it, at the Carthaginians intreaty) was more strict than the former: prohibiting the Romans to have trade in any part of Africa, or in the Island of Sardinia.

By these two treaties it may appear, that the Carthaginians had an intent not only to keep the Romans (as perhaps they did other people) from getting any knowledge of the state of Africa; but to countenance & uphold them, in their troubling all Italy, whereby they themselves might have the better means to occupy all Sicily, whilst that Island should be destitute of Italian succours. Hereupon we finde good cause of the joy that was in Carthage, and of the Crown of gold, weighing twenty and five pound, sent from thence to Rome, when the Samnites were overthrown. But the little state of Rome prevailed faster in Italy, than the great power of Carthage did in Sicily. For that mighty Army of three hundred thousand men, which Hannibal conducted out of Africa into Sicily, was only two Cities therein: many great fleets were devoured by tempests; and howsoever the Carthaginians prevailed at one time, the Sicilians, either by their own valour, or by the assistance of their good friends out of Greece, did at some other time repaire their own losses, and take revenge upon those Invaders. But never were the people of Carthage in better hope of getting all Sicily, than when the death of Agathocles the Tyrant, had left the whole Island in combustion; the estate of Greece being such, at the same time, that it seemed impossible for any succour to be sent from thence. But whilst the Carthaginians were busie in making their advantage of this good opportunity; Pyrrhus, invited by the Tarentines and their fellows, came into Italy, where he made a short war upon the Romans. These news were unpleasing to the Carthaginians, who, being a subtle Nation, easily fore-saw, that the same busie disposition which had brought this Prince out of Greece into Italy, would as easily transport him over into Sicily, as soon as he could finish his Roman war. To prevent this danger, they sent Mago Embassadour to Rome; who declared in their name, that they were sorry to hear what misadventure had befallen the Romans, their good friends, in this war with Pyrrhus; and that the people of Carthage were very willing to assist the state of Rome, by sending an Army into Italy; if their help were thought needfull, against the Epirots.

It was indeed the main desire of the Carthaginians, to hold Pyrrhus so hardly to his work in Italy, that they might, at good leisure, pursue their business in Sicily: which caused them to make such a goodly offer. But the Romans were too high-minded: and refused to accept any such aid of their friends, lest it should blemish their reputation, and make them seem unable to stand by their own strength. Yet the message was taken lovingly, as it ought; and the former league between Rome and Carthage renewed; with covenants added, concerning the present business; That if either of the two Cities made peace with Pyrrhus, it should be with reservation of liberty, to assist the other, in case that Pyrrhus should invade either of their Dominions. All this notwithstanding, and notwithstanding that the same Mago went and treated with Pyrrhus, using all means to sound his intentions (a matter very difficult; where one upon every new occasion, changeth his own purposes) yet Pyrrhus found leisure to make a step into Sicily: where, although in fine he was neither getter nor savor, yet he clean defeated the purposes of Carthage, leaving them, at his departure from thence, as far from any end, as when they first began.

So many disasters in an enterprise; that from the first undertaking had been so strongly pursued, through the length of many generations, might well have induced the Carthaginians to beleieve, that an higher providence resisted their intentment. But their desire of winning that fruitful Island, was so inveterate, that with unwearied patience, they still continued in hope of so much the greater an harvest, by how much their cost and pains therein buried had been the more. Wherefore they re-continued their

their former courses; and by force or practice, recovered in few yeeres all their old possessions: making peace with *Syracuse*, the chief City of the Island, that so they might the better enable themselves to deal with the rest.

Somewhat before this time, a troupe of *Campanian* Souldiers, that had served under *Agathocles*, being entertained within *Messana* as friends, and finding themselves too strong for the Citizens, took advantage of the power that they had to do wrong; and with perfidious cruelty, slew those that had trusted them; which done, they occupied the City, Lands, Goods, and Wives of those whom they had murdered. These Mercenaries called themselves *Mamertines*. Good Souldiers they were: and like enough it is, that meer desperation of finding any that would approve their barbarous treachery, added rage unto their stoutness. Having therefore not any other colour of their proceedings, than the law of the stronger, they over-ran all the Country round about them.

In this course, at first, they sped so well, that they did not onely defend *Messana* against the Cities of *Sicil* Confederate; so wit, against the *Syracusians*, and others, but they rather wan upon them; yea, and upon the *Carthaginians*, exacting tribute from many Neighbour places. But it was not long, ere fortune turning her back to these *Mamertines*, the *Syracusians* was fast upon them, and finally, confining them within the walls of *Messana*, they also with a powerfull Army besieged the City. It hapned ill, that about the same time a contention began between the *Syracusian* Souldiers, then lying at *Megara*, and the Citizens of *Syracuse*, and Governours of the Common-wealth; which proceeded so far, that the Army elected two Governours among themselves, to wit, *Artemidorus* and *Hieron*, that was afterward King. *Hieron*, being for his yeeres excellently adorned with many vertues, although it was contrary to the policy of that State, to approve any election made by the Souldiers; yet for the great clemency he used at his first entrance, was by generall consent established and made Governour. This office he rather used as a Scale, thereby to climb to some higher degree, than red content with his present preferment.

In brief, there was somewhat wanting, whereby to strengthen himself within the City; and somewhat without it, that gave impediment to his obtaining, and last keeping of the place he sought; to wit, a powerfull party within the Town, and certain mutinous troupes of Souldiers without, often and easily moved to sedition and tumult. For the first, whereby to strengthen himself, he took to Wife the daughter of *Leptines*, a man of the greatest estimation and authority among the *Syracusians*. For the second, leading out the Army to besiege *Messana*, he quartered all those companies, which he held suspected, on the one side of the City, and leading the rest of his Horse and Foot unto the other side, as if he would have assaulted it in two severall parts, he marched away under the covert of the Town walls, and left the Mutiners to be cut in pieces by the assieged: So returning home, and levying an Army of his own Citizens, well trained and obedient, he halted again towards *Messana*, and was by the *Mamertines* (grown proud by their former victory over the Mutiners) encountered in the plains of *Mylaum*, where he obtained a most signall victory, and leading with him their Commander captive into *Syracuse*, himself by common consent was elected and saluted King. Hereupon the *Mamertines*, finding themselves utterly enfeebled, some of them resolved to give themselves to the *Carthaginians*, others to crave assistance of the *Romans*: to each of whom the severall factions dispatched Embassadors for the very same purpose.

The *Carthaginians* were soon ready to lay hold upon the good offer: so that a Captain of theirs got into the Castle of *Messana*, whereof they that had sent for him gave him possession. But within a little while, they that were more inclinable to the *Romans*, had brought their Companions to so good agreement, that this Captain, either by force, or by cunning, was turned out of doores, and the Town reserved for other Masters.

These news did much offend the people of *Carthage*; who crucified their Captain, as both a Traitor and Coward; and sent a Fleet and Army to besiege *Messana*, as a Town that rebelled, having once been theirs. *Hieron* the new-made King of *Syracuse* (to gratifie his people, incensed with the smart of injuries lately received) added his forces to the *Carthaginians*, with whom he entred into a league, for exterminating the

*Mamertines*

*Mamertines* out of *Sicil*. So the *Mamertines* on all sides were closed up within *Messana*: the *Carthaginians* lying with a Navie at Sea, and with an Army on the one side of the Town, whilst *Hieron* with his *Syracusians*, lay before it on the other side.

In this their great danger came *Appius Claudius* the Roman Consul, with an Army to the streights of *Sicil*: which passing by night with notable audacity, he put himselfe into the Town, and sending Messengers to the *Carthaginians*, and to *Hieron*, required them to depart; signifying unto them that the *Mamertines* were now become confederate with the people of *Rome*, and that therefore he was come to give them protection, even by force of War, if reason would not prevail.

This message was utterly neglected; And so began the War between *Rome* and *Carthage*; wherein it will then be time to shew on which part was the justice of the quarrell, when some actions of the *Romans* lately foregoing this, have been first considered.

### §. III.

The beginning of the first Punick war. That it was unjustly undertaken by the *Romans*.

When *Pyrrhus* began his wars in *Italy*, the City of *Rhegium*, being well affected to *Rome*, and not onely fearing to be taken by the *Epirots*, but much more detesting the *Carthaginians*, as likely to seize upon it in that buisie time, sought aide from the *Romans*, and obtained from them a Legion, consisting of foure thousand souldiers, under the conduct of *Decius Campanus*, a Roman Prefect; by whom they were defended and assured for the present. But after a while, this Roman Garrison, considering at good leisure, the fact of the *Mamertines*, committed in *Messana* (a City in *Sicil*, situate almost opposite to *Rhegium*, and no otherwise divided than by a narrow Sea, which severeth it from *Italy*) and rather weighing the greatnesse of the booty, than the odiousness of the villany, by which it was gotten; resolved finally, to make the like purchase, by taking the like wicked course. Confederating therefore themselves with the *Mamertines*, they entertained their Hosts of *Rhegium*, after the same manner; dividing the spoil, and all which that State had among themselves.

When complaint was made to the Senate and people of *Rome*, of this outrage; they finding their honour thereby greatly stained (for no Nation in the world made a more severe profession of justice, than they did during all the time of their growing greatness) resolved, after a while, to take revenge upon the offenders. And this they performed shortly after, when they had quenched the fires, kindled in *Italy* by *Pyrrhus*. For, notwithstanding that those *Romans* in *Rhegium* (as men for the foulness of their fact, hopelesse of pardon) defended themselves with an obstinate resolution; yet in the end, the assailants forced them; and those which escaped the present fury, were brought bound to *Rome*, where, after the usuall torments by whipping inflicted, according to the custome of the country, they had their heads stricken from their shoulders, and the people of *Rhegium* were again restored to their former liberty and estates.

This execution of justice being newly performed, and the same thereof sounding honourably through all quarters of *Italy*: messengers came to *Rome* from *Messana*, desiring help against the *Carthaginians*, and *Syracusians*, that were in a readinesse to inflict the like punishment upon the *Mamertines*, for the like offence. A very impudent request it was, which they made: who having both given example of that villanny to the *Roman* Souldiers, and helped them with joynt forces to make it good, doe intreat the Judges to give them that assistance, which they were wont to receive from their fellow-citizens.

The *Romans* could not suddenly resolve, whether the way of honesty or of profit were to be followed; they evermore pretended the one, but they many times walked in the other. They considered, how contrary the course of succouring the *Mamertines* was to their former counsels and actions: seeing for the same offences they had lately put to torment, and to the sword, their own Souldiers, and restored the oppressed to their liberty. Yet when they beheld the description of the *Carthaginian* Dominion, and that they were already Lords of the best part of *Africa*, of the *Mediterran* Islands, of a great part of *Spain*, and some part of *Sicil* itself, whilst also they feared, that *Syracuse* therein

therein seated (a City in beauty and riches, little at that time inferior to Carthage and far superior to Rome itself) might become theirs; the safety of their own estate spake for these Mamertines: who, if they (driven to despair by the Romans) should deliver up Messana, with those other holds that they had, into the hands of the Carthaginians, then would nothing stand between Carthage and the Lordship of Sicily: for which itself could not, for want of succour, any long time subsist, if once the Carthaginians that were Masters of the Sea, did fasten upon that passage from the maine Land. It was further considered; that the opportunity of Messana was such, as would not only debarre all succours out of the continent, from arrivall in Sicily; but would serve as a bridge, whereby the Carthaginians might have entrance into Italy, at their own pleasure.

These considerations of profit at hand, and of preventing dangers, that threatened from a far, did so prevail above all regard of honesty, that the Mamertines were admitted into Confederacy with the Romans, and Ap. Claudius the Consull, presently dispatched away for Messana: into which he entred, and undertook the protection of it, as is shewed before. The besiegers were little troubled with his arrivall; and less moved, with his requiring them to desist from their attempt. For they did far exceed him in number of men; the whole Island was ready to relieve them in their wants; and they were strong enough at Sea, to hinder any supply from getting into the Town. All this Appius himself well understood: and against all this he thought the stiffe metal of his Roman Souldiers a sufficient remedy. Therefore he resolved to issue out into the field, and to let the enemies know, that his coming was to send them away from the Town; not to be besieged by them within it.

In executing this determination, it was very beneficiall to him, that the enemy lay encamped in such sort, as one quarter was not well able to relieve another in distresse. Hieron was now exposed to the same danger, wherinto he had wilfully cast his own mutinous followers not long before: onely he was strong enough (or thought so) to make good his own quarter, without help of others. Against him Ap. Claudius issued forth, and (not attempting, by unexpected fallies, to surpris his trenches) arranged his men in order of battell, wherewith he presented him. The Syracusan wanted not courage to fight; but surely he wanted good advice: else would he not have hazarded all his power against an enemy of whom he had made no triall; when it had been easie, and as much as was requisite, to defend his own Camp. It may be, that he thought to get honour, wherewith to adorne the beginning of his reign. But he was well taught, and driven to save himself within his trenches: by which losse, he learned a point of wisdom, that stood him and his Kingdom in good stead all the dayes of his life. It was a foolish desire of revenge, that had made the Syracusians so buisie, in helping those of Carthage, against the Mamertines.

Had Messana been taken by the Carthaginians, Syracuse itself must have sought help from Rome, against those friends which it now so diligently assisted. Hieron had (in respect of those two mighty Cities) but a small stock, which it behooved him to govern well: such another losse would have made him almost bankrupt. Therefore he quietly brake up his Camp, and retired home: intending to let them stand to their adventures, that had hope to be gainers by the bargain. The next day, Claudius perceiving the Sicilian Army gone, did with great courage, and with much alacrity of his Souldiers, give charge upon the Carthaginians: wherein he sped so well, that the enemy forsook both field and camp, leaving all the Country open to the Romans; who having spoiled all round, without resistance, intended to lay siege unto the great City of Syracuse.

These prosperous beginnings, howsoever they animated the Romans, and filled them with hopes of attaining to greater matters, than at the first they had expected: Yet did they not imprint any forme of terror in the City of Carthage, that had well enough repaired greater losses than this; in which no more was lost than what had been prepared against the Mamertines alone, without any suspicion of War from Rome.

Now in this place I hold it seasonable, to consider of those grounds, whereupon the Romans entred into this war: not how profitable they were, nor how agreeable to rules of honesty (for questionless the enterprize was much to their benefit, though as much to their shame) but how allowable in strict termes of lawfulness; whereupon they built

all their allegations in maintenance thereof. That the Mamertines did yeeld themselves, and all that they had, into the Romans hands (as the Campanians, distressed by the Samnites, had done) I cannot finde; neither can I finde how the messengers of those folk, whom one part had already admitted the Carthaginians, could be enabled to make any such surrendry in the publick name of all.

Therefore the Mamertines, by no lawfull surrendry of themselves and their possessions, were become subject unto Rome, by what better title could the Romans assist the Mamertines, against their most ancient friends the Carthaginians, than they might have had against the Campanians, against the Samnites, without the same condition? which (as they themselves confessed) by none at all. But let it be supposed, that some way serving to clear this doubt, is lost in all Histories. Doubtlesse it is, that no company of Pyrates, Theeves, Out-laws, Murderers, or such other Malefactors, can by any good successe of their villany, obtain the privileged of civil societies, to make league of amities, or to require fair war: but are by all means, as most pernicious vermine, to be rooted out of the world. I will not take upon me to maintain that opinion of some Writers, that a Prince is not bound to hold his faith with one of these; it were a Possession of ill consequence: This I hold; that no one Prince or State can give protection to such these, as long as any other is using the sword of vengeance against them, without becoming accessory to their crimes. Wherefore we may esteeme this action of the Romans so far from being justifiable, by any pretence of Confederacy made with them, as contrariwise, by admitting this nest of Murderers and Theeves into their protection, they justly deserved to be warred upon themselves, by the people of Sicily; yea, though Messana had been taken, and the Mamertines all slain, ere any newes of the Confederacy had been brought unto the besiegers. The great Alexander was so far persecuted herein; that he did put to sword all the Brachians (a people in Sogdiana) and their City, notwithstanding that they joyfully entertained him as their Lord and King; because they were descended from a company of Mithians, who to gratifie King Xerxes, had robbed a Temple, and were by him rewarded with the Town and Country, which these of their posterity enjoyed. Neverthelesse, in course of humane time, long and peaceable possession gives jus acquiritum, a kinde of right by prescription, unto that which was first obtained by wicked means: and doth free the descendants from the crime of their Ancestors, whose villanies they do not exercise. But in the same generation of Theeves, which by a detestable fact hath purchased a rich Town, should beacknowledged a lawfull company of Citizens, there is no shew of justice. For even the Conqueror that by open War obtaineth a Kingdom, doth not continue his title, by those victories which gave him first possession: but length of time is requisite to establish him, unlesse by some alliance with the ancient inhabitants, he can remove the violence of his claime, as did our King Henry the first, by his marriage with Matilda that was daughter of Malcolm, King of the Scots, by Margaret, the Niece of Edward the first. Wherefore I conclude, that the Romans had no better ground (if they had regard of justice, in this quarrell, than had the Gothes, Hunnes, Vandalls, and other Nations, of the wars that they made upon the Roman Empire, wherein Rome her self, in the time of her visitation, was burnt to the ground.

#### Of the Island of Sicily.

I. The quality of the Island, and the first inhabitants thereof. The defence of the Mamertines, or the possession of Messana, being now no longer the first victories of Appius Claudius, the objects of the Roman hopes, but the Dominion of all Sicily being the prize, for which Rome and Carthage are about to contend, it will be agreeable unto the order, which in the like cases we have observed to use, a brief collection of things concerning that noble Island, which hath been the scene of many great acts, performed as well before and after, as in this present War.

That

Plin. l. 2. c. 91.  
Sill. 5.

That *Sicil* was sometimes a *Peninsula*, or *Demie-Ile*, adjoining to *Italy*, as a part *Bruttium* in *Calabria*, neer unto *Rhegium*, and afterward by violence of tempest severed from the same: it is a generall opinion of all antiquity. But at what certain time this division happened; there is no memoriall remaining in any ancient writer. *Strabo* 7. 1. and *Dionysius* affirme, that it was caused by an earth-quake; *Silius* and *Cassiodorus* think it to have beene done by the rage and violence of the tide, and surges of the sea. Either of these opinions may be true; for so was *Euboea* severed from *Grecia*; *Andros* and *Myeris* from *Euboea*; *Silbe* here in *England*, from the *Cape of Cornwall*; and *Malta* it selfe (as may seem by *Verfigans* arguments) from the opposite continent of *Greece*. But for *Sicil*, they which lend their eares to fables, doe attribute the cause of it to *Minos* (as *Eusebius* witnesseth), who with his three-forked Mace, in favour of *Zeus*, the son of *Jupiter*, divided it from the maine land, and so made it an Island, whereas before was but a *Demie-Ile*; that by that means he might the more safely inhabite, and possesse the same. *Diodorus Siculus* moved by the authority of *Hesiodus*, attributeth labour of sundring it from *Italy*, to *Orion*: who that he might be compared to *Hercules* (cutting through the rocks and mountaines) first opened the *Sicilian* streights, and entred into those of *Gibraltar*.

Orion. l. 4. c. 14.  
Diod. l. 6.  
Ovid. de Fast. 4.

They which value the Islands of the mid-land Sea, according to their quantity and content, doe make this the greatest; as *Eustathius* and *Strabo*, who affirme this not only to excell the rest for bignesse, but also for goodnesse of soile. As concerning the forme of this Island, *Pomponius Mela* saith, it is like that Capitall letter of the Greek, which they call *Delta*; namely, that it hath the figure of a triangle; which is generally known to be true. That the whole Island was consecrated to *Ceres* and *Proserpina*, all old writers with one consent affirme. To *Ceres* it was dedicated, because it first taught the use of setting and sowing of Corn; to *Proserpina*, not so much for that she was from hence violently taken by *Pluto*, as because (which *Plutarch* and *Diodorus* do report for truth) that *Pluto*, as soon as she, uncovering her selfe, first shewed her selfe to be seen of him, gave her the Dominion thereof.

Of the fertility and riches of this Country, there is a famous testimonie written by *Cicero*, in his second *Oracion* against *Verres*, where he saith, that *Marcus Cato* did call it the *Granary* and *Store-house* of the Common-wealth, and the *Nurse* of the vulgar sort. The same *Cicero* doth adden this place; that it was not only the Store-house of the people of *Rome*; but also that it was a well-furnished treasure. For without any cost or charge of ours (saith he) it hath usually clothed, maintained and furnished our greatest armies with leather, apparell and coines. *Strabo* repeateth almost the same thing of it. Whatsoever *Sicilie* doth yeeld (saith *Silius*) wither by the sun, and temperature of the air, or by the industry and labour of man; is accommed neer unto those things that are of best estimation: where it is not that such things as the earth first putteth forth, are extremely over-grown with siffon. *Diodorus Siculus* saith; that in the fields neer unto *Leontium*, and in divers other places of this Island, wheat doth grow of it selfe without any labour or looking to of the husbandman. *Martianus* sheweth, that there were six Colonies, and sixty Cities; these are the sections more, whereof the names are found scatteringly in many good Authors.

Now besides many famous acts, done by the people of this Island, as well in peace as War, there be many other things which have made it very renowned, as the birth of *Ceres*; the ravishing of *Proserpina*; the Giant *Encelladus*; the mount *Etna*, *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, with other antiquities and rarities; besides those learned men, the noble Mathematician, *Archimedes*, the famous Geometrician, *Euclides*, the painfull Historian *Diodorus*, and *Empedocles*, the deep Philosopher.

That *Sicil* was at first possessed and inhabited by Giants, *Lasriogones* and *Cyclopes*, barbarous people, and uncivilly all histories and fables do jointly with one consent averre. Yet *Thucydides* saith, that these savage people dwelt onely in one part of the Island. Afterward the *Phoenicians*, a people of *Spain*, possessed it. That these men were not bred in the Isle (although some do think) *Thucydides* and *Diodorus* doe very constantly avouch.

Of these it was named *Sicania*. These *Sicani* were invaded by the *Siculi*, who inhabiting that part of *Lutania*, whereon *Rome* was afterward built, were driven by the *Siculi* from their own seats; so finding no place upon the Continent, which they were able to

master

master and inhabite, passed over into this Island, three hundred years before the *Greeks* gave any Colonies thither: and (saith *Philistus*) eighty years before the fall of *Troy*. These *Siculi* gave the name of *Sicilia*, to the Island; and making war upon the *Sicani*, drove them from the East and Northerne part thereof, into the West and South. At their landing, they first built the City *Zancle*, afterward called *Messana*; and after that, *Catana*, *Leontine*, and *Syracuse* it selfe, bearing from thence the *Acollans*, who long before had set up a Town in that place. As for the name of *Syracuse*, it was not known, till such time as *Archius* of *Cornith* (long after) won that part of the Island from the *Siculi*; neither did the *Siculi* at their first arrivall dispossesse the *Acollans* thereof, but some hundred years after their descent, and after such time as they had founded the Cities before named with *Nee*, *Hybla*, *Trinacria*, and divers others.

After these *Siculi* came another nation out of *Italy*, called *Morgetes*, who were thence driven by the *Oenotrians*. These sat down in that part of *Sicil*, where they afterward called the Cities of *Morgantium* and *Leontium*. For at this time the *Siculi* were divided, and by a civil war greatly infeebled. Among these ancient stories, we find the last voyage, and the death of *Minos*, King of *Crete*. *Thucydides*, an Historian of unquestionable integrity, reports of *Minos*, that he made conquest of many Islands: and some such business, perhaps, drew him into *Sicil*; But the common report is, that he came thither in pursuit of *Dadalus*. The tale goes thus: *Dadalus* fleeing the revenge of *Minos*, came to *Sicil*, to *Cocalus*, King of the *Sicani*; and during his abode there, he built a place of great strength, neer unto *Megara*; for *Cocalus* to lay up his treasure in; together with many notable works, for which he was greatly admired and honoured.

Among the rest, he cast a Ram in gold, that was set up in the Temple of *Venus Erycin*, which he did with so great Art, as those that beheld it, thought it rather to be living than counterfeit.

Now *Minos*, hearing that *Cocalus* had entertained *Dadalus*, prepares to invade the Territory of *Cocalus*; but when he was arrived, *Cocalus* doubting his own strength, promised to deliver *Dadalus*. This he performs not, but in the mean while, kills *Minos* by treason and periwades the *Cretans*, *Minos* his followers, to inhabit a part of *Sicilia*, the more (as it seems) to strengthen himself against the *Siculi*. Hereunto the *Cretans* (being dead) gave their consent, and builded for themselves the City of *Minos* at the name of the King *Minos*. After, they likewise built the Town of *Engium*, now called *Gange*: and these were the first Cities, built by the *Greeks* in *Sicil*, about two ages before the war of *Troy*; for the grand-children of *Minos* served with the *Greeks* at the siege thereof.

But after such time as the *Cretans* understood, that their King had by treason beene made away, they gathered together a great Army, to invade *Cocalus*; and landing neer unto *Camicus*, they besieged the same five years, but in vain. In the end (being forced to returne, without any revenge taken) they were rackt on the coast of *Italy*, and having no means to repair their ships, nor the honour they had lost, they made good the place whereon they fell, and built *Hyria*, or *Hyrium*, between the two famous Ports of *Brundisium* and *Tarentum*. Of these *Cretans* came those Nations, afterward called *Lagyr* and *Messapii*.

After the taking of *Troy*, *Egefas* and *Elymus*, brought with them certain troups into *Sicil*, and seated themselves among the *Sicani*; where they built the Cities of *Egefa* and *Elyma*.

It is said, that *Aeneas* visited these places in his passage into *Italy*: and that some of the *Trojans*, his followers, were left behind him, in these Towns of *Sicil*: whereof there want not good Authors, that make *Aeneas* himself the founder.

About the same time, the *Phanicians* seized upon the Promontories of *Pachinus*, and *Aliphaum*, and upon certain small Isles adjoining to the main Island: which they fortified, to secure the trades that they had with the *Sicilians*; like as the *Portugals* have done at the East-India, at *Goa*, *Ormuz*, *Mosambique*, & other places. But the *Phanicians* stayed not there; for after they had once assured their descents, they built the goodly City of *Canorus*, now called *Palerma*.

These we finde, were the Nations that inhabited the Isle of *Sicil*, before the warre of *Troy*, and ere the *Greeks* in any numbers began to straggle in those parts.

It may perchance seem strange to the Reader, that in all ancient stories, he findes one

Saxo G. in praefat. lib.

Tertul de Resur. Angulst. Civit. Di. lib. 15. Et quod in Gen. Nic. lib. 2. 37. P. 8. 7. lib. 2. de Belli. Geth. Plin. lib. 7. cap. 2.

and the same beginning of Nations, after the Flood; & that the first planters of all parts of the World were said to be mighty and Giant-like men; and that, as Phœnicia, Egypt, Libya and Greece, had Hercules, Orestes, Antæus, Typhon, and the like; as Denmark had Starchatus, remembered by Saxo Grammaticus; as Scythia, Britannie, and other Regions had Giants for their first inhabitants; so this Isle of Sicily had her *Leirigones* & *Cyclope*. This discourse I could also reject for fained and fabulous, did not *Moses* make us know, that the *Zamzummims*, *Emims*, *Anakims*, and *Og of Basin*, with others, which sometime inhabited the Mountains and Defarts of *Moab*, *Ammou*, and Mount *Seir*, were men of exceeding strength and stature, and of the races of Giants: and were it not, that *Tertulian*, *S. Angustine*, *Nicephorus*, *Procopius*, *Isidore*, *Plinie*, *Diodore*, *Herodotus*, *Solinus*, to *Plinarch*, and many other Authors, have confirmed the opinion. Yea, *Vesputius*, in his second Navigation in *America*, hath reported that himself hath seen the like men in those parts. Again, whereas the self-same is written of all Nations, that is written of any one; as touching their simplicity of life, their mean fare, their feeding on acorns and roots, their poor cottages, the covering of their bodies with the skins of beasts, their hunting, their armes, and weapons, and their warfare, their first passages over great Rivers and Arms of the Sea, upon rafts of trees tied together; and afterward, their making boats first of twigs and leather, then of wood; first with Oares, and then with Sails; that they esteemed as gods, the first finders out of Arts; as of Husbandry, of Lawes, and of Policy: it is a matter, that makes me neither to wonder at, nor to doubt of it. For they so all lived in the same newness of time, which we call *Ola time*, and had all the same want of his instruction; which (as if the Creator of all things) hath by degrees taught all Mankind. For other teaching had they none, that were removed far off from the *Hibrenes*, (who inherited the knowledge of the first Patriarchs) than that from variable effects they began, by time and degrees, to finde out the causes: from whence came Philosophy Natural, as the Morall did from disorder and confusion; and the Law from cruelty and oppression.

But it is certain, that the Age of *Time* hath brought forth stranger and more incredible things, than the Infancy. For we have now greater Giants for vice and injustice, than the World had in those days, for bodily strength; for cottages, and houses of clay and timber, we have raised Palaces of stones; we carve them, we paint them, and adorn them with gold, inasmuch as men are rather known by their houses, than their houses by them; we are fallen from two dishes, to two hundred; from water, to wine and drunkenness: from the covering of our bodies with the skins of beasts, not only to silk and gold, but to the very skins of men. But to conclude this digression, *Time* will also take revenge of the excess, which it hath brought forth; *Quam longa dies peperit, longiorque auit, longissima subruet: Long time brought forth, longer time increased it, and a time, longer than the rest, shall overthrow it.*

## † II.

## The plantation of the Greeks in Sicily.

When the first inhabitants had contended long enough about the Dominion of all Sicily: it happened, that one *Theocles*, a Greek, being driven upon that coast by an Easterly wind, and finding true the commendations thereof, which had been thought fabulous, being delivered only by Poets, gave information to the *Athenians* of this his discovery, & proposed unto them the benefit of this easie conquest offering to become their guide. But *Theocles* was as little regarded by the *Athenians*, as *Columbus*, in our Grand-fathers times, was by the *English*. Wherefore he took the same course that *Columbus* afterwards did. He over-laboured not himself in perswading the Noble *Athenians* (who thought themselves to be well enough already) to their own profit; but went to the *Chalcidians*, that were needy and industrious, by whom his project was gladly entertained. By these was built the City of *Naxos*, and a Colony planted of *Eubœans*.

But the rest of the *Greeks* were wiser than our Western Princes of Europe: for they had no Pope, that should forbid them to occupy the void places of the World. *Archias* of *Corinth* followed the *Eubœans*, and landed in Sicily, neer unto that City, called

called afterward \* *Syracuse*: of which, that part only was then compassed with a wall, which the *Italians* called *Homothermon*; the *Greeks*, *Nafos*; the *Latines* *Isula*. He with his *Corinthians* having overcome the *Siculi*, drave them up into the Country; and after a few years, their multitude increasing, they added unto the City of the Island, that of *Aradilla*, *Tycha*, and *Neapola*. So as well by the commodity of the double Port, capable fit for as many ships, as any Haven of that part of Europe, as by the fertility of the soyle, *Syracuse* grew up in great haste, to be one of the goodliest Towns of the world. In short time the *Greeks* did possess the better part of all the Sea-coast; forcing the *Sicilians* to withdraw themselves into the fast and mountainous parts of the Island, making their 10. Royall residence in *Trinacia*.

Some seven years after the arrival of *Archias*, the *Chalcidians*, encouraged by the success of the *Corinthians*, did assail, & obtain the city of *Leontium*, built and possessed by the *Siculi*. In brief, the *Greeks* win from the *Siculi*, and their Associates, the cities of *Catana* and *Hybla*, which in honour of the *Megarians* that forced it, they called *Megara*.

About 45. years after *Archias* had taken *Syracuse*, *Antiphemus*, and *Entimus*, the one from *Rhodes*, the other from *Crete*, brought an Army into *Sicily*, and built *Gela*, whose Citizens, one hundred and eight year after, did erect that magnificent and renowned city of *Agrigentum*, governed according to the Lawes of the *Dorians*.

The *Syracusians* also, in the seventieth year after their plantation, did set up the city of *Arca*, in the Mountains; and in the ninetieth year *Casmenia*, in the Plains adjoining; and again in the hundred and thirtieth year of their dwelling in *Syracuse*, they built *Came*, and soon after that, *Enna*, in the very Center of the Island. So did the *Cumani* about the same time, recover from the *Siculi* the city of *Zancle*, which they had founded in the strait between *Sicily* and *Italy*. They of *Zancle* had been the founders of *Himera*.

Not long after this, *Doriaus* the *Lacedæmonian* built *Heraclea*, which the *Phœnicians* and *Carthaginians*, fearing the neighbourhood of the *Spartans*, soon after invaded and razed; though the same were again ere long re-edified. *Gela* also was built by a Colony of *Megarians*, and *Zancle* was taken by the *Messinians*, who having lost their own Country, gave the name thereof unto this their new purchase. Such were the beginnings of the greatest cities in this Island.

Of the Government and Affairs of Sicily before Dionysius his tyranny.

The most part of the cities in Sicily, were governed by the rule of the people, till such time as *Phalaris* began to usurp the Rule of *Agrigentum*, and to exercise all manner of tyranny therein.

This was that *Phalaris*, to whom *Perillus*, the cunning, Artificer of a detestable Engine, gave a hollow Bull of brass, into which he made men, and scorched them to death, praising the device with this commendation; That the noise of one tormented therein should be like unto the bellowing of a Bull. The Tyrant gave due reward to the Inventor, by causing the first sacrifice to be made upon himself. He reigned one and thirty years, slain *Bucchus*, his conqueror gave him but six hundred *Talentum* were, one *Telamachus*, the elder, fell upon him with the whole multitude of *Agrigentum*, and stoned him to death; being thereto animated by *Zeno*, even whilest the Tyrant was tormenting the same *Zeno*, so make him contented some matter of conspiracy.

After the death of *Phalaris*, the Citizens recovered their liberty, and enjoyed it long till *Therastus* disturbed the government of the Common weale: at which time also *Panastus* Dionis the first, made himself Lord of *Leontium*, & *Cleander* of *Gela*; but *Cleander* having ruled seven years, was slain by one of the Citizens. *Cleander* being dead, his brother *Hippocrates*, succeeded in his room, and greatly afflicted the people of *Naxos*, of *Zancle*, or *Messina*, and of *Leontium*; whom with divers others of the ancient inhabitants, he forced to acknowledge him their Lord. He also made war with the *Syracusians*, and, in the end, was slain by him by composition, the City of *Catharina*. But when he had reigned seven years, he was slain in a battell against the *Siculi*, before *Hybla*.

At this time did the *Syracusians* change their form of government, from Popular to Aristocratical; a preparation towards a principality, whereinto it was soon after changed.



After the death of *Hippocrates*, *Gelon* (descended from the *Rhodians*, which together with the *Cretans* had long before, among other of the *Greeks*, seated themselves in *Sicily*) that had commanded the forces of *Hippocrates*, in the former war, with notable success, became Lord of *Gela*. He, after his Masters death, breaking the trust committed unto him by *Hippocrates* over his children, and being in possession of *Gela*, took the occasion and advantage of a contention in *Syracuse*, between the Magistrates and the People. For comming with a strong Army to the succour of the governours, driven out by the multitude, they elected him their Prince, being the first, and (indeed) the most famous, that ever governed the *Syracusians*. This change happened in the second year of the three-score and twelfth Olympiad; wherein the better to establish himself, he took to wife the Daughter of *Thero*, who had also usurped the State of *Agrigentum*.

Paus. lib. 6.

Now this *Gelon*, the son of *Dinomene*, had three brethren; *Hiero*, *Polyzelus*, and *Thrasylulus*: to the first of which he gave up the City of *Gela*, when he had obtained the Principality of *Syracuse*. For, after that time, all his thoughts travelled in the strengthening, beautifying, and amplifying of *Syracuse*. He defaced *Camerina*, that a little before was fallen from the obedience of the *Syracusians* who built it, and brought the Citizens to *Syracuse*. The *Megarians* that had moved a war against him, he overcame, the richer sort he brought unto *Syracuse*, and the people he sold for slaves. In like manner dealt he with other places upon the like occasion. Not long after this, *Thero*, a Prince of the *Agrentines*, having dispossessed *Terrillus* of his City *Himera*, the *Carthaginians* were drawn into the quarrell by *Anaxilus*, Lord of *Messina*, Father-in-law to *Terrillus*: and *Gelon* was also solicited by his Father-in-law, *Thero*. *Gelon* was content, and in fine, after divers conflicts, the *Carthaginians*, and other *Africans*, led by *Amilcar*, were overthrown by *Gelon*: and an hundred and fifty thousand of them left their bodies in *Sicily*.

Herod. lib. 4.

This *Gelon* it was, to whom the *Athenians* and *Lacedaemonians* sent for succour, when *Xerxes* with his huge army past the *Hellepont*. He, for their relief having armed thirty thousand Souldiers, and two hundred ships, refused nevertheless to lend them into *Greece*, because they refused him the commandement of one of their Armies, either by Sea, or Land. So he used to their Embassadors only this saying, *That their Spring was withered*; accounting the Army, by him prepared, to be the very flower of the *Greek* Nation.

The *Carthaginians*, after this great loss received, fearing the invasion of their owne Country, sent to *Gelon* by their Embassadors, to desire peace, who grants it them on these conditions: That from thenceforth they should not sacrifice their children to *Saturne*; That they should pay him 2000 talents of silver, and present him with two armed ships, in sign of amity. These conditions the *Carthaginians*, not only willingly accepted, but with the two thousand talents, and the ships for war, they sent unto *Demarata*, *Gelons* wife, a crown, valued at an hundred talents of gold, with other presents. Whereby we see, that some Nations, and some Natures, are much the better for being well beaten. The wars ended, & *Sicily* in peace, *Gelon* beautified the Temples of the gods, and erected others in honour of them. So being exceedingly beloved and honoured of his Subjects, he left the World, and left for his successeur, his brother *Hiero*. *Philistru* and *Pliny* report, That, when his body was burnt, according to the custome of that Age, a Dog of his, which always waited on him, ran into the fire, and suffered himself to be burnt with him.

To *Gelon*, *Hiero* his brother succeeded; a man rude, cruel, covetous, and so suspicious of his brethren *Polyzelus*, and *Thrasylulus*, as he sought by all means to destroy them. Notwithstanding all this, by the conversation which he had with *Simonides*, he became of better condition, and greatly delighted with the study of good Arts. Divers quarrels he had, as well with *Theron* of *Agrigentum*, as with other Cities: all which he shortly after compounded, and gave a notable overthrow to the *Carthaginians*, whom *Xerxes* had incited to invade *Sicily*, fearing the succours which *Gelon* had prepared, to aid the *Greeks*, against him. He also overthrew in battail *Thrasylulus*, the son of *Theron*, and thereby restored the *Agrentines* to their former liberty. But in the end, he lost the love of the *Syracusians*, and after he had reigned eleven years, he left the Kingdom to his brother *Thrasylulus*, who became a most unjust and bloody Tyrant. *Thrasylulus* enjoyed his Principality no longer than ten moneths. For, notwithstanding the force

force

force of mercenary Souldiers; which he entertained for his guards, he was beaten out of *Syracuse* by the Citizens; to whom, being besieged in *Acradina*, he restored the government, and was banished the Island. From whence he sailed into *Greece*, where he died a private man, among the *Locrians*.

And now had the *Syracusians* recovered again their former liberty, as all the rest of the Cities did, after which they had never fought, had the Successors of *Gelon* inherited his virtue, as they did the Principality of *Syracuse*. For in all changes of Estates, the preservation ought to answer the acquisition. Where a liberal, valiant, and advised Prince, hath obtained any new Signiory, and added it to that of his owne, or exalted himselfe from being a private man, to the dignity of a Prince, it becometh the Successor to maintain it by the same way and art, by which it was gotten.

To conclude, *Syracuse* (though not without blowes, ere that she could cleanse her selfe of the creatures and loves of *Gelon*) was now againe become Mistress of her selfe, and held her selfe free, well-near threecore years, to the time of *Dionysius*, though she were in the mean while greatly endangered by a Citizen of her owne, called *Tindarus*.

Now, to prevent the greatnesse of any one among them, for the future, they devised a kind of banishment of such among them, as were suspected; taking patterne from the *Athenian Ostracisme*. They called this their new devised judgement of exile, *Petalisme*, wherein every one wrote upon an Olive leafe (as at *Athens* they wrote upon shels) the name of him, whom he would have expelled the City. He that had most suffrages against him, was banished for five years. Hereby in a short time, it came to passe that those of judgement, and best able to governe the Common-weale, were by the worst able, either supprest, or thrust out of the City. Yea, such as feared this Law, though they had not yet felt it, withdrew themselves as secretly as they could, seeking some place of more security, wherein to maintain themselves. And good reason they had so to do; seeing that there is nothing so terrible in any State, as a powerfull and authorized ignorance. But this Law lasted not very long. For their necessity taught them to abolish it, and restore againe the wiser sort unto the Government; from which the Nobility having practised to banish one another, the State became altogether Popular. But after a while, being invaded by *Duceius*, King of the *Sicilians*, that inhabited the inner part of the Island (who had already taken *Enna*, and some other of the *Grecian* Cities, and overthrowne the Army of the *Agrentines*) the *Syracusians* sent forces against him, commanded by an unworthy Citizen of theirs, called *Iscon*. This their captain made nothing so much hast to finde out *Duceius*, against whom he was employed, as he did to flee from the Army, he led, as soone as *Duceius* presented him battell. So for want of conduct, the greatest number of the *Syracusians* perished.

But making better choice among those whom they had banished, they levie other troops: by whom, in conclusion, *Duceius* being beaten, submitte himselfe, and is constrained to leave the Island for a time. Yet it was not long ere he returned again, and beleit the City *Collatina* on the Sea-side.

*Duceius* being dead, all the *Greek* Cities did in a sort acknowledge *Syracuse*: *Trinacria* excepted; which also by force of armes, in the fourscore and fift Olympiad, they brought to reason.

But they do not long enjoy this their Superintendency. For the Citizens of *Leontium*, being oppress by them, seek aid from the *Athenians*, about the first year of the *Peloponnesian* Warre. In this suit they prevailed by the eloquence of *Gorgias*, their Orator; and got an hundred *Athenian* Gallies to succour them, under the leading of *Lamachus* and *Charades*. To this fleet, the *Leontines*, and their partners, added one hundred more; with which forces, and with some supplies brought by *Sophocles*, *Pythodorus*, *Euclydon* and other *Athenian* Captains, they invaded the Territories of the *Syracusians*, and their parafians; wanne and lost divers places; took *Messina*; and, in the seventh year of the *Peloponnesian* Warre, lost it again. They also at the same time, attempted *Himera*, but in vain. The fire of this quarrell took hold upon many Cities, which did invade each others Territory with great violence: But when they had wearied themselves on all hands, and yet could see none issue of the war, the *Leontines*, without the advice of the *Athenians*, came to an accord with the *Syracusians*, and were

LIII 3

admitted



After the death of *Hippocrates*, *Gelon* descended from the *Rhodians*, which together with the *Cretans* had long before, among other of the *Greeks*, seated themselves in *Sicily*; that had commanded the forces of *Hippocrates*, in the former war, with notable success, became Lord of *Gela*. He, after his Masters death, breaking the trust committed unto him by *Hippocrates* over his children, and being in possession of *Gela*, took the occasion and advantage of a contention in *Syracuse*, between the Magistrates and the People. For comming with a strong Army to the succour of the governours, driven out by the multitude, they elected him their Prince, being the first, and (indeed) the most famous, that ever governed the *Syracusians*. This change happened in the second year of the threescore and twelfth Olympiad; wherein the better to establish himself, he took to wife the Daughter of *Thero*, who had also usurped the State of *Agrigentum*.

Paus. lib. 6.

Now this *Gelon*, the son of *Dinomene*, had three brethren; *Hiero*, *Polyzelus*, and *Thrasibulus*: to the first of which he gave up the City of *Gela*, when he had obtained the Principality of *Syracuse*. For, after that time, all his thoughts travelled in the strengthening, beautifying, and amplifying of *Syracuse*. He defaced *Camerina*, that a little before was fallen from the obedience of the *Syracusians* who built it, and brought the Citizens to *Syracuse*. The *Megarians* that had moved a war against him, he overcame; the richer sort he brought unto *Syracuse*, and the people he sold for slaves. In like manner dealt he with other places upon the like occasion. Not long after this, *Thero*, a Prince of the *Agrigentines*, having disposed *Terillus* of his City *Himera*; the *Carthaginians* were drawn into the quarrell by *Anaxilus*, Lord of *Messina*, Father-in-law to *Terillus*; and *Gelon* was also solicited by his Father-in-law, *Thero*. *Gelon* was content, and in fine, after divers conflicts, the *Carthaginians*, and other *Africans*, led by *Amilcar*, were overthrown by *Gelon*: and an hundred and fifty thousand of them left their bodies in *Sicily*.

Herod. lib. 1.

This *Gelon* it was, to whom the *Athenians* and *Lacedaemonians* sent for succour, when *Xerxes* with his huge army past the *Hellepont*. He, for their relief having armed thirty thousand Souldiers, and two hundred ships, refused nevertheless to send them into *Greece*, because they refused him the commandement of one of their Armies, either by Sea, or Land. So he used to their Embassadors only this saying, *That their Spring was withered*; accounting the Army, by him prepared, to be the very flower of the *Greek* Nation.

The *Carthaginians*, after this great loss received, fearing the invasion of their owne Country, sent to *Gelon* by their Embassadors, to desire peace, who grants it them on these conditions: That from thenceforth they should not sacrifice their children to *Saturne*; That they should pay him 2000. talents of silver, and present him with two armed ships, in sign of amity: These conditions the *Carthaginians*, not only willingly accepted, but with the two thousand talents, and the ships for war, they sent unto *Damarata*, *Gelons* wife; a crown, valued at an hundred talents of gold, with other presents. Whereby we see, that some Nations, and some Natures, are much the better for being well beaten. The wars ended, *Sicily* in peace, *Gelon* beautified the Temples of the gods, and erected others in honour of them. So being exceedingly beloved and honoured of his Subjects, he left the World; and left for his Successour his brother *Hiero*. *Plinius* and *Pliny* report, That when his body was burnt, according to the custome of that Age, a Dog of his, which always waited on him, ran into the fire, and suffered himself to be burnt with him.

To *Gelon*, *Hiero* his brother succeeded; a man rude, cruell, covetous, and so suspicious of his brethren *Polyzelus*, and *Thrasibulus*, as he fought by all means to destroy them. Notwithstanding all this, by the conversation which he had with *Simonides*, he became of better condition, and greatly delighted with the study of good Arts. Divers quarrels he had, as well with *Theron* of *Agrigentum*, as with other Cities: all which he shortly after compounded, and gave a notable overthrow to the *Carthaginians*, whom *Xerxes* had incited to invade *Sicily*, fearing the succours which *Gelon* had prepared, to aid the *Greeks*, against him. He also overthrew in battail *Thrasibulus*, the son of *Theron*, and thereby restored the *Agrigentines* to their former liberty. But in the end, he lost the love of the *Syracusians*; and after he had reigned eleven years, he left the Kingdom to his brother *Thrasibulus*, who became a most unjust and bloody Tyrant. *Thrasibulus* enjoyed his Principality no longer than ten moneths. For, notwithstanding the force

force of mercenary Souldiers; which he entertained for his guards, he was beaten out of *Syracuse* by the Citizens; to whom, being besieged in *Acradina*, he restored the government, and was banished the Island. From whence he sailed into *Greece*, where he died a private man, among the *Locrians*.

And now had the *Syracusians* recovered again their former liberty, as all the rest of the Cities did, after which they had never fought, had the Successors of *Gelon* inherited his virtue, as they did the Principality of *Syracuse*. For in all changes of Estates, the preservation ought to answer the acquisition. Where a liberal, valiant, and advised Prince, hath obtained any new Signory, and added it to that of his owne, or exalted himselfe to from being a private man, to the dignity of a Prince, it becometh the Successour to maintain it by the same way and art, by which it was gotten.

To conclude, *Syracuse* (though not without blowes, ere that she could cleanse her selfe of the creatures and loves of *Gelon*) was now againe become Mistress of her selfe, and held her selfe free, well-near threescore years, to the time of *Dionysius*, though she were in the mean while greatly endangered by a Citizen of her owne, called *Tindario*.

Now, to prevent the greatnesse of any one among them, for the future, they devised a kind of banishment of such among them, as were suspected, taking patterne from the *Athenian Ostracisme*. They called this their new devised judgement of exile, *Petalisme*, wherein every one wrote upon an Olive leafe (as at *Athens* they wrote upon shels) the name of him, whom he would have expelled the City. He that had most suffrages against him, was banished for five years. Hereby in a short time, it came to passe that those of judgement, and best able to govern the Common-weale, were by the worst able, either supprest, or thrust out of the City. Yea, such as feared this Law, though they had not yet felt it, withdrew themselves as secretly as they could, seeking some place of more security, wherein to maintain themselves. And good reason they had to do; seeing that there is nothing so terrible in any State, as a powerfull and authorized ignorance. But this Law lasted not very long. For their necessity taught them to abolish it, and restore againe the wiser sort unto the Government; from which, the Nobility having practised to banish one another, the State became altogether Popular. But after a while, being invaded by *Duceius*, King of the *Sicilians*, that inhabited the inner part of the Island (who had already taken *Enna*, and some other of the *Grecian* Cities, and overthrown the Army of the *Agrigentines*) the *Syracusians* sent forces against him, commanded by an unworthy Citizen of theirs, called *Iscon*. This their captain made nothing so much hast to finde out *Duceius*, against whom he was employed, as he did to flee from the Army, he led, as soone as *Duceius* presented him battell. So for want of conduct, the greatest number of the *Syracusians* perished.

But making better choice among those whom they had banished, they levie other troops: by whom, in conclusion, *Duceius* being beaten, submiteth himselfe, and is constrained to leave the Island for a time. Yet it was not long ere he returned again, and built the City *Collatina* on the Sea-side.

*Duceius* being dead, all the *Greek* Cities did in a sort acknowledge *Syracuse*: *Trinacria* excepted; which also by force of armes, in the fourscore and fift Olympiad, they brought to reason.

But they do not long enjoy this their Superintendency. For the Citizens of *Leontina*, being oppressed by them, seek aid from the *Athenians*, about the first year of the *Peloponnesian* Warre. In this suit they prevailed by the eloquence of *Gorgias*, their Orator; and got an hundred *Athenian* Gallies to succour them, under the leading of *Lamachus*, and *Charades*. To this fleet, the *Leontines*, and their partners, added one hundred more; with which forces, and with some supplies brought by *Sophocles*, *Pythodorus*, *Euaenides* and other *Athenian* Captains, they invaded the Territories of the *Syracusians*, and their partisans; wanne and lost divers places; took *Messana*; and, in the seventh year of the *Peloponnesian* Warre, lost it again. They also at the same time, attempted *Himera*, but in vain. The fire of this quarrell took hold upon many Cities, which did invade each others Territory with great violence. But when they had wearied themselves on all hands, and yet could see none issue of the war, the *Leontines*, without the advice of the *Athenians*, came to an accord with the *Syracusians*, and were

admitted into their society, with equall freedom. So the *Athenians*, who hoped to have greatened themselves in *Sicily*, by the division and civil war, were disappointed of their expectation, by the good agreement of the *Sicilians*, and fain to be gone with the broken remainder of their fleet. This they knew not how to amend; but (according to the custome of popular Estates) by taking revenge upon their own Commanders. So they banished *Pythodorus*, and *Sophocles*, & laid an heavy fine upon *Eurymedon*. Shortly after this, followed the most memorable war, that ever was made by the *Greeks* in *Sicily*: which was that of the *Athenians*, against the *Selinuntines*, and *Syracusians*, in favour of the Cities of *Egesta*, *Leontium*, and *Catana*. They of *Selinus* had oppress'd the *Egestians*, and they of *Syracuse* the *Leontines*, and the *Catanians*: which was the ground of the war. For the *Athenians* undertook the protection of their old friends: and, in hatred of the *Athenians*, aid from *Lacedemon* was sent to the *Syracusians*. The *Lacedemonians* dealt plainly, having none other end, than that which they pretended, namely, to help a people of their own Tribe, that craved their succour, being in distresse. The *Athenians* scarce knew what to pretend: for their preparations were so great, as discovered their intent to be none other, than the conquest of the whole Island. Yet they which had call'd them in, were so blinded with their own passions, that they would not believe their own eyes; which presented unto them a Fleet and Army, far greater, than the terrible report of fame had made it.

In this expedition, the City of *Athens* had engaged all her power; as regarding, not only the greatness of the enterprise, but the necessity of finishing it in a short space of time. For the *Lacedemonians* (as hath already been shewed in due place) stood at that time in such broken terms of peace with *Athens*, as differed not much from open war: wherefore it was thought necessary, either to spare cost in this great expedition, or altogether to forbear it: which was likely to be hindered by wars at home, if their proceedings were slack abroad. And surely, had not the desire of the *Athenians* been overpassionate, the arguments of *Nicias* had caus'd them to abstain from so chargeable a business, and to reserve their forces for a more needfull use. But young counsels prevailed against the authority of ancient men, that were more regardfull of safety than of honour.

Of this business, mention hath been already made, in that which we have written of the *Peloponnesian* war. But what was there delivered in generall termes, as not concerning the affairs of *Greece*, otherwise than by consequence, doth in this place require a more perfect relation, as a matter, wherein the whole State of *Sicily* was like to have felt a great conversion.

Though *Alcibiades* had prevailed against *Nicias*, in exhorting the people to this great voyage; yet *Nicias* together with *Alcibiades* and *Lamachus*, was appointed to be one of the chief Commanders therein.

These had commission and direction, as wel to succour the *Segestians*, & to re-establish the *Leontines*, cast out of their places by the *Syracusians*; as also by force of armes, to subject the *Syracusians*, and all their adherents in *Sicily*, and compell them by tribute, to acknowledge the *Athenians* for their supream Lords. To effect which, the fore-named Captains were sent off, with an hundred and thirty Gallies, and five thousand an hundred Souldiers, besides the thirty ships of burden, which transported their victuals, engines, and other munitions for the war: and these were *Athenians*, *Maninians*, *Rhodiens*, and *Candians*: there were, besides these, six thousand *Megarians* light-armed, with thirty horsemen.

Thucyd. l. 6. c. 9. With these troupes & fleets they arrive at *Rhegium*, where the *Rhegiens* refuse to give them entry; but sell them victuals for their money. From thence they sent to the *Egestians*, to know what treasure they would contribute towards the war, seeing for their sakes they had entred therinto. But they found by their answers, that these *Egestians* were poor, and that they had abused the *Athenian* Embassadors with false shewes of gold, having in all but 30. talents. The *Athenians* further were discouraged, when they found that the *Rhegiens*, their ancient friends, and allied unto the *Leontines*, refused to trust them within their Walls. Hereupon *Nicias* adviseth to depart towards the *Selinuntines*, and to force them, or perswade them to an agreement with the *Egestians*; so likewise to see what disbursements the *Egestians* could make; and so returne again into *Greece*, and not to waste *Athens* in a needlesse way. *Alcibiades*, on the other side, would sollicite

solicite the Cities of *Sicily* to confederacy against the *Syracusians* & *Selinuntines*, whereby to force them unto restitution of all that they had taken from the *Leontines*. *Lamachus*, he perswades them to assail *Syracuse* it self, before it were prepared against them. But in the end (being excluded out of divers Cities) they surpris'd *Catana*; and there they take new counsell how to proceed. Thence they employed *Nicias*, to those of *Egesta*, who received from them thirty talents towards his charges; and one hundred and twenty talents more there were of the spoiles they had gotten in the Island. Thus the Summer being spent in idle consultations, and vain attempts, the *Athenians* prepare to assail *Syracuse*. But *Alcibiades* having been accused at home, in his absence, was sent for 10 back by the *Athenians* to make his answer: and the Army was left to the conduct of *Nicias* and *Lamachus*. These Commanders obtain a landing place very neer unto *Syracuse*, by this device.

They employ to *Syracuse* an Inhabitant of *Catana*, whom they trust; and instruct him; to promise unto the *Syracusians*, that he would deliver into their hands all the *Athenians* within *Catana*. Hereupon the *Syracusians* draw thitherward with their best forces. But in the mean while, the *Athenians*, setting sail from *Catana*, arrive at *Syracuse*, where they land at fair ease, and fortifie themselves against the Town. Shortly after this, they fight, and the *Syracusians* had the loss; but the *Athenians*, wanting horse, could not pursue their victory to any great effect. They then retire themselves, with a resolution to refresh 20 their Army at *Catana*, for the winter-season. From thence they made an attempt upon *Messana*, hoping to have taken it by an intelligence, but in vain. For *Alcibiades* had discovered such as were Traitors within the City to the *Messanians*. This he now did, in despite of his own Citizens, the *Athenians*, because they had recalled him from his command, with a purpose either to have put him to death, or to have banished him; whereof being assured by his friends, he took his way towards the *Lacedemonians*, and to them he gave mischievous counsell against his country. While this winter yet lasted, the *Syracusians* send Embassadors to *Lacedemon*, and *Corinth*, for aid; as likewise the *Athenian* Captains in *Sicily*, send to *Athens* for supplies. Which both the one and the other obtained.

10 In the spring following (which was the beginning of the eighteenth year of the *Peloponnesian* war) the *Athenians* in *Sicily* sail from the Port of *Catana* to *Megara*, forsaken of the Inhabitants; from whence, for raging the Country, they obtain some small victories over the straggling *Syracusians*; and at their return to *Catana*, they receive a supply of two hundred men at arms, but without horse, which they hoped to furnish in the Island from the *Segestians*, and other their adherents: they were also strengthened with a company of Archers, and with three hundred talents in money.

Hereupon they take courage, and incampe neer *Syracuse*, upon the banks of the great Port, repelling the *Syracusians*, that sallied to impeach their intrenchments. They also received from their Confederates four hundred horse-men, with two hundred other 40 horse, to mount their men at arms. *Syracuse* was now in effect blockt up, so as hardly any succours could enter, but such as were able to force their passage: yet the *Athenians* receive divers losses; among which it was not the least, that *Lamachus*, one of their best Commanders, was slain.

In the mean while, *Gylippus* and *Pythos*, with the *Lacedemonian* & *Corinthian* forces, arrive, and take land at *Hymera*. The Citizens of *Hymera*, and of *Gela*, together with the *Selinuntines*, joyne with them; so that with these and his own troupes, *Gylippus* adventured to march over-land toward *Syracuse*. The *Syracusians* send a part of their forces to meet him and conduct him. The *Athenians* prepare to encounter them, expecting his arrival neer unto the City upon a place of advantage. At the first encounter they had 10 the better of their enemies; by reason that the *Syracusan* horse-men could not come to fight in those straits: but soon after, *Gylippus* charging, them again, brake them, and constrained *Nicias* to fortifie himselfe within his Campe. Whereupon *Nicias* made the state of his affairs known, by his letters to the *Athenians*, shewing, that without great supplies by Sea and Land, the enterprise would be lost, together with the small Army remaining. These letters received, the *Athenians* appoint two other Generals, *Eurymedon* and *Demosthenes*, to joyne with *Nicias*: the one they dispatch presently with some supplies; the other they send after him in the Spring following.

In the mean while, *Gylippus* at *Syracuse*, fights with the *Athenians* both by Sea and Land,

Land, sometimes with ill, and at other times with good success: but in conclusion, he took from their Port, near unto *Syracuse*, the Promontory called *Phymyrum*; where, in the *Athenians* lost their treasure, and a great part of all their provisions. Notwithstanding which loss, and that the *Athenians* themselves, in *Greece*, were (in effect) besieged within *Athens*, by the *Lacedaemonians*; yet were they most obstinate in prosecuting the War in *Sicily*, and dispatched away *Demosthenes* with new succours. *Demosthenes*, in his way towards *Sicily*, encountered with *Polyanthes* the *Corinthian*, with his fleet: both the Captains being bound for *Sicily*, the one to succour *Nicias*, the other *Gylippus*. The loss between them was in effect equal; and neither so broken, but that each of them prosecuted the enterprise they had in hand. But before the succours arrived to either, *Gylippus* and *Arifson* had assailed the *Athenians* in the great Port of *Syracuse*, and in a Sea fight put them to the worst, to the great discouragement of the *Athenians*. On the neck of this, *Demosthenes* arrived with three score and thirteen Gallies, charged with footmen; and (blaming the sloath of *Nicias*) he invaded the *Syracusians* the same day that he arrived. But he made more haste than he had good speed, being shamefully beaten, and repulsed with great loss. Hereupon *Demosthenes* and *Eurymedon* determine to rise up from before *Syracuse*, and returne to the succour of *Athens*: but *Nicias* disputed to the contrary, pretending that he had good intelligence within *Syracuse*, whereby he learned, that the towne could not long hold out.

Whatsoever *Nicias* his intelligence was; upon the arrivall of a new supply into the towne, the *Athenians* had all consented to depart, and to lodge at *Catana*: had not an Eclipse of the Moone; boding (as was thought) ill success caused them to defer their departure. But this superstition cost them dear. For the *Syracusians*, *Lacedaemonians*, and *Corinthians*, with three score and seventeen saile of Gallies, entered the great Port of *Syracuse*, wherein the *Athenians* kept their fleet, & whereon they had fortified themselves. The *Athenians*, in the same Port encountered them with four score and six Gallies, commanded by *Eurymedon*: in which the *Athenian* fleet was beaten, by the lesser number, and *Eurymedon* slain. Now, though it were so, that the *Syracusians* received the more loss by land; for the fight was generally yet when the *Athenians* were beaten by sea, in which kinde they thought themselves invincible, they were wonderfully cast downe. For it was well said of *Gylippus*, to the *Syracusians*: *When any people doe finde themselves vanquished in that manner of fight, and with those weapons, in which they persuade themselves that they exceed all others, they not only lose their reputation, but their courage.* The *Athenians*, besides the Gallies sunk and wrackt, had seventeen taken, and posselt by the enemy: and with great labour and loss they defended the rest from being fired, having drawn them within a *Palisado*, in one corner of the port, unadvisedly: for it is as contrary to a Sea-war, to thrust ships into a straight room and corner, as it is to scatter foot in a plain field against horse; the one subsisting by being at large, the other by close imballtailing.

The *Syracusians*, having now weakened the *Athenian* fleet, resolve to imprison them within the Port: And to that purpose they range all their Gallies in the mouth of the Haven, being about a mile over, and there they came to Anchor, filling the out-let with all manner of Vessels, which they man most strongly, because the *Athenians*, being now made desperate, should not with double ranks of Gallies break through the *Syracusan* fleet; which lay but single, because they were forced to range themselves over all the Out-let of the Port. They therefore, not only mored themselves strongly by their Anchors, but chained the sides of their Gallies together, and laid behind them again certain ships, which served in the former warre for victuallers: to the end, that if any of their Gallies were sunk, or the chain, which joyned them to their fellows, broken, the *Athenians* might yet finde themselves a second time, intangled and arrested. To disorder also those *Athenian* Gallies, which came on in forme of a wedge, to break through, and force a passage, the *Syracusians* had left within these Gallies and Ships, inclosed together, a certain number of loose ones: to stop their course and fury. For where the way of any vessell, using oare or sailes, is broken, and their speed forelloved, they cannot force with any weight and violence, the resistance opposing.

On the other side, the *Athenians* knew that they were utterly lost, except with an invincible resolution they could make their way, and break downe this great bridge of Boats; or (at least) force a passage through them in some part or other: which they re-

solved

solve to hazard, with all their shipping (to the number of one hundred & ten, of all sorts) and with all the strength of their Land-army, in them imbarqued. But the Gallies, which were within the bridge of boats, did so disorder the *Athenian* fleet, ere they came to force the bridge, as albeit some few of them had broken through the chains, yet being stoppt with the ships without, and assailed by other loose Gallies of the *Syracusians*, which were purposely left at large in the sea, they were either taken or sunk. Three great disadvantages the *Athenians* had: the first, that fighting within a Haven, and (as it were) in a straight, they had no room to turn themselves, nor to free themselves one from another, being intangled; the second, that having overpestered their Gallies with Souldiers, who used offensive arms of darts and slings, they had not place upon the decks to stretch their arms; the third was, the discomfortable end for which they fought, namely, to force a passage, by which they might save themselves by running away. To be short, the fight was no less terrible than the confusion: the slaughter great on all sides, and the noise and the cries, so lowd and lamentable, as that no direction could be heard. But in the end, the *Athenians*, as many as survived, were beaten back to the Land, with loss of three score of their Gallies, broken, sunk, or abandoned. The *Syracusians* did also lose twenty of theirs, with *Pythor*, Commander of the *Corinthians*. The rest of the *Athenian* Gallies, running themselves into the bottome of the Port, saved themselves by the help and countenance of the Land-army there fortified. In this desperate estate, the *Athenian* Commanders go to counsell. *Demosthenes* perswades them to furnish with fresh Souldiers those few Gallies which remained; and while the *Syracusians* were triumphing, and made secure by their present victory, to set upon them, and forcing their way out of the Port, to return to *Athens*. This was no ill counsell. For, as we have heard of many great Captains (yea, the greatest number of all that have been victorious) that have neglected the speedy prosecution of a beaten enemy; so might we produce many examples of those, who, having slept securely in the bosome of good success, have been suddenly awaked, by the re-allied Companies of a broken Army, and have thereby lost again all the honour and advantage formerly gotten. But *Nicias* opposeth the advice of *Demosthenes*: Others say, that the Sea-men were against it. Whereupon abandoning their Gallies, they all resolve to march over land to the Cities of their Confederates, till some more favourable fortune should call them thence. On the other side, *Gylippus* and other the *Lacedaemonian* and *Corinthian* captains, with *Hermocrates*, exhort the *Syracusians* to put themselves presently into the field, and to stop all the passages, leading to those Cities of their enemies, to which the *Athenians* might make retreat. But they were weary, and many were wounded, and many of them thought that they had done enough for the present. Which humour in some of our Commanders at *Cadix*, lost us both the *Indian* fleet, and the spoiles of many other neighbour places. *Hermocrates*, the *Syracusan*, finding it a lost labour, to perswade his Countermen to any hasty prosecution, devised this good stratagem, whereby to gain time; not doubting, but that after a day or two, he should draw them willingly out. He sent two or three horse-men out of *Syracuse* by night, willing them to find *Nicias*, and (after they had assured him, that they were of the *Athenians* faction) to give him advice not to march away over-hastily from the place, wherein he was fortified; alledging that the *Syracusians* had lodged their Army, which could not long stay there, upon the passages and places of advantage, leading towards the cities of their Allies. These tidings *Nicias* easily beleaved, and put off his journey to the third day. For men newly beaten, are (for the most part) more fearfull than wise; and to them, every thistle in the field, appears, by night, a man to arms.

The third day (leaving all their Gallies, and all their baggage) they remove; being pursued and pursued with the lamentable out-cries of those that were sick and hurt: whom they abandon to the cure of their enemies swords. The rest march away, to the number of forty thousand, and make their first passage by force, over the River of *Anapus*, notwithstanding the opposition of their enemies. But being every day charged in their marches, and by the *Syracusan* horse men, beaten in from foraging and provision of food, they grow weak and heartless. The *Syracusians* also possess the Mountain *Lepas*, by which they were to pass towards *Camerina*, and thereby force them to fall back again towards the Sea-coast; and to take what way they could: being unable to proceed in their journey intended. Many hard shifts they made, in difficult passages;

and

and blinde marches by night; which they were fain to endure, as having none other means to escape from the enemy that pursued them, and held them waking with continuall skirmishing. To keep all in order, *Nicias* undertook the leading of the Vanguard, and *Demosthenes* conducted the Rear. At the River *Erimeus*, *Nicias* takes the start of a whole nights march, leaving *Demosthenes* to make the retreat: who being incompeised, and overprest with numbers, in the end renders himself. The conditions he obtained, were far better than he could have hoped for, and the faith of his enemies far worse than he suspected. For he was afterward, with *Nicias*, murdered in prison. The Army of *Demosthenes* being dissolved, they pursue *Nicias* with the greater courage: who being utterly broken, upon the passage of the River *Assinarus*, rendered himself to *Gylippus*, upon honest conditions. *Gylippus* sought to preserve him, and to have had the honour to have brought these two to *Sparta*; *Nicias*, as a Noble Enemy to the *Lacedemonians*, and who, at the overthrow which they received at *Pylus* by the *Athenians*, had saved the lives of the vanquished; *Demosthenes*, as one that had done to *Lacedemon* the greatest hurt. *Hermocrates* also, the Commander of the *Syracusan* Army, disswaded the rest, by all the art he had, for using any barbarous violence, after to noble a victory. But the cruel and cowardly sort, (cowardise and cruelly being inseparable passions) prevailed, and caused these brave Captains to be miserably murdered; one part of their Souldiers to be starved in loathsome prisons, and the rest, sold for slaves. This was the successe of the *Sicilian* warre: which took end at the River *Assinarus*, the four and twentieth day of *May*, in the fourscore and eleventh Olympiad.

The *Athenians* being beaten out of *Sicily*, the *Egeftians* (for whose defence, against the *Selinuntines*, this late war had been taken in hand) fearing the victorious *Syracusans*, sought help from the *Carthaginians*; to whom they offered themselves, and their City, as their vassals. The *Carthagians*, though ambitious enough of enlarging their Dominion in *Sicily*, yet considering the prosperity of the *Syracusans*, and their late victories over the *Athenians*, they stayed a while to dispute of the matter, whether they should refuse or accept the offer made unto them: for the *Selinuntines* were straightly allied to the *Syracusans*, as may appear by what is past. In the end the *Senators of Carthage* solve upon the enterprise, and (by a trick of their *Punic* wit) to separate the *Syracusans* from the *Selinuntines*, they send Embassadors to *Syracuse*: praying that City, as in the behalf of the *Egeftians*, to compell the *Selinuntines* to take reason, and to rest content with so much of the lands in question, as they of *Syracuse* should think meet to allow them. The *Syracusans* approved the motion; for it tended to their own honour. But the *Selinuntines* would make no such appointment: rather they took it ill, that the *Syracusans*, with whom they had run one course of fortune, in the *Athenian* war, should offer to trouble them, by interposing as Arbitrators, in a business that themselves could end by force. This was right as the *Carthaginians* would have it. For now could they of *Selinus* with an ill grace crave aid of *Syracuse*; and the *Syracusans* as ill grant it unto those, that had refused to stand to the Arbitrement, which the *Carthaginians* would have put into their hands. Hereupon, an Army of three hundred thousand men is sent out from *Carthage*, under the conduct of *Hannibal*, Nephew to that *Amilcar*, who (as you have heard before) was overthrown with the great *Carthaginian* Army at *Himeraby Gela*. *Hannibal* was exceeding greedy of this employment, that he might take revenge as well of his Uncles, as of his Fathers death; the one of them having been slain by the *Himerans*, the other by those of *Selinus*. Both the Cities, *Hannibal*, in this war, won by force of arms, sackt them, and burnt them; and having taken three thousand of the *Himerans* prisoners, he caused them to be led unto the place, where *Amilcar* was slain, and buried them there.

After this followed some trouble at *Syracuse*, occasioned by the banishment of *Hermocrates*, who had lately been General of the *Syracusan* forces, against the *Athenians*. The malice of his enemies had so far prevailed, with the ingratefull multitude, that he was condemned to exile for his meere virtue, at such time as he was aiding the *Lacedemonians*, in their war against *Athens*; wherein he did great service. All the honest sort within *Syracuse* were sorry for their injury done unto him, and fought to have him repealed. *Hermocrates* himself, returning into *Sicily*, gathered an Army of six thousand, with which he began to repair *Selinus*; & by many noble actions laboured to win the

the love of his Citizens. But the faction that opposed him was the stronger. Wherefore he was advised to seize upon a Gate of *Syracuse*, with some strength of men; whereby his friends, within the Towne, might have the better means to rise against the adverse party. This he did: but presently the multitude fell to arms, and set upon him; in which conflict he was slain. But his Son-in-law, *Dionysius*, shall make them with *Hermocrates* alive again.

## †. IV.

Of *Dionysius* the Tyrant: and others, following him, in *Syracuse*.

The *Syracusans* had enjoyed their liberty about threescore years, from the death of *Thrasibulus*, to the death of *Hermocrates*: at which time *Dionysius* was raised up by God, to take revenge, as well of their cruelty toward strangers, as of their ingratitude towards their own best Citizens. For before the time of *Dionysius*, they had made it their pastime, to reward the virtue of their worthiest Commanders with death, or disgrace: which custome they must now be taught to amend.

*Dionysius* obtained the principality of *Syracuse*, by the same degrees, that many others, before him, had made themselves masters of other Cities, and of *Syracuse* it self. For being made *Prator*, and commanding their Armies against the *Carthaginians*, and other their enemies, he behaved himself so well, that he got a generall love among the people, and men of war. Then began he to follow the example of *Pisistratus*, that made himself Lord of *Athens*; obtaining a band of six hundred men, to defend his person: under pretence, that his private enemies, being traitorously affected to the State of *Syracuse*, had layed plots how to murder him, because of his good services. He doubled the pay of his Souldiers; alledging, that it would encourage them to fight manfully: but intending thereby to assure them to himself. He perswaded the Citizens, to call home, or of exile, those that had been banished, which were the best men of *Syracuse*; and they were afterwards, at his devotion, as obliged unto him by so great a benefit. His first favour, among the *Syracusans*, grew from his accusation of the principall men. It is the delight of bane people to reign over their betters: wherefore, gladly did he help them to break down, as fetters imprisoning their liberty, the bars that held it under safe custody. Long it was not, ere the chief Citizens had found whereat he aimed. But what they law, the people would not see: and some that were needy, and knew not how to sue Offices without his help, were willing to help him, though they knew his purposes to be such, as would make all the City to smart. He began early to hunt after the tyranny; being but five and twenty years of age when he obtained it: belike it was his desire to reign long. His first work, of making himself absolute Lord in *Syracuse*, was, the possession of the Citadel, wherein was much good provision, and under it the Gallies were moored. This he obtained by allowance of the people; and having obtained this, he cared for no more, but declared himself without all shame or fear. The Army, the chief Citizens, restored by him from banishment; all the needy sort within *Syracuse*, that could not thrive by honest courses; and some neighbour-towns, bound unto him, either for his help in war, or for establishing the faction; reigning at that present, were wholly affected to his assistance. Having therefore gotten the Cittadell into his hands, he needed no more, save to assure what he had already. He strengthened himself by divers marriages; taking first to wife the daughter of *Hermocrates*; and after her, two at once, the one a *Locrian*, *Doris*, by whom he had *Dionysius*, his Successor; the other, *Arifomache*, the daughter of *Hipparchus*, and sister to *Dion*, honourable men in *Syracuse*; which bare unto him many children, that served to fortifie him with new alliances.

Yet it was not long, ere some of the *Syracusans* (envying his prosperity) incited the multitude, and took armes against him, even in the novelty of his Rule. But their enterprise was more passionately, than wisely governed. He had shamefully been beaten by the *Carthaginians* at *Gela*: which, as it vexed the *Sicilian* men at armes, making them suspect that it was his purpose to let the *Carthaginians* waite all, that he might afterwards take possession of the desolate places; so it inflamed them with a desire to free themselves from his tyranny. They departed therefore from him, and marched hastily to *Syracuse*, where they found friends to help them: there they forced his Palace, ransacked





and certainly, it belongs to those that have warrant from God; to apprehend Princes; and to none else, especially in publick.

It is said, that *Henry* the fourth of *France*, had his heart more inflamed against the Duke of *Biron*, for his over-bold and biting taunts, that he used against him before *Amiens*, than for his conspiracy with the *Spaniard* or *Savoyan*: for he had pardoned ten thousand of such as had gone farther, & drawn their swords against him. The contemptuous words that Sir *John Perret* used of our late Queen *Elizabeth*, were his ruine; and not the counterfeit letter of the *Romish* Priest produced against him. So fared it with some other, greater than he, that thereby ran the same, and a worse fortune, soon after.

To be short, he made them know new bread from old. He assaulted their Town on all sides, which he continued to doe eleven moneths, till he won it by force. He used his victory without mercy, specially against *Phyton*, who had commanded within it.

Some other wars he made with the *Carthaginians*, after the taking and razing of this City; and those with variable success. For, as in one encounter he slue *Mago*, with ten thousand *Africans*: so the son of *Mago* beat him, and slue his brother *Lepidus*, with fourteen thousand of his Souldiers. After which he bought his peace of the *Carthaginians*, as they had formerly done of him; following therein the advice of Prosperity and Adversity, as all Kings and States doe.

When he had reigned eight and thirty years, he died: some say in his bed, peaceably, which is the most likely, though others report it otherwise. A cruell man he was, and a faithlesse; a great Poet, but a foolish one. He entertained *Plato* a while, but afterward, for speaking against his tyranny, he gave order to have him slain, or sold for a slave. For he could endure no man that flattered him not beyond measure. His Parasites therefore liked his cruelty: *The hate of evil men*; and his lawless slaughters, *The ornaments and effects of his justice*. True it is, that flatterers are a kind of vermine, which poison all the Princes of the World; and yet they prosper better than the worthiest and valiantest men doe: and I wonder not at it, for it is a world; and as our *Saviour Christ* hath told us, *The World will love her own*.

To this *Dionysius* his son of the same name succeeded, and inherited both his Kingdom and his Vices. To win the love of the People, he pardoned, and released out of prison, a great number of persons; by his Father locked up and condemned. Withall he remitted unto his Citizens divers payments, by his Father imposed upon them. Which done, and thereby hoping that he had fastned unto himself the peoples affections, he cast off the sheeps skin, and put on that of the wolf. For being jealous of his own brethren, as men of more vertue than himself, he caused them all to be slain; and all the kindred that they had by their Mothers side. For *Dionysius* his Father (as hath been said) had two Wives; *Doris* of *Locris*, and *Arifomache* a *Syracusan*, the sister of *Dion*, which Brother-in-law of his he greatly enriched.

By *Doris* he had this *Dionysius*, who succeeded unto him: and by *Arifomache* he had two Sons and two Daughters, of which the elder, called *Seprosine*, he gave in marriage to his eldest son, and her half-brother *Dionysius*; the younger, called *Arete*, he bestowed on his Brother *Theurides*: after whose death *Dion* took her to wife, being his Niece.

This *Dion*, a just and valiant man, finding that *Dionysius* had abandoned all exercise of vertue, and that he was wholly given over to sensuality, prevailed so much with *Plato*, whose Disciple he had been, as he drew him into *Sicily*, to instruct the young King. And having perswaded the King to entertain him, he wrought so well with him, as *Dionysius* began to change condition: to change Tyranny into Monarchy, and to hold the Principality that he had, rather by the love of his People, and his Nationall Laws, than by the violence of his Guards and Garbisons. But this goodnesse of his lasted not long. For *Philistus* the Historian; and other his Parasites, that hated *Dionysius* severity, wrought him out of the Tyrants favour, and caused him soon after, to be banished out of *Sicily*, to the great grief of the whole Nation. For whereas *Dion* had made offer to the King, either to compound the quarrels between him and the *Carthaginians*, of whom *Dionysius* stood in great fear; or (at least) if they refused it to furnish him with fifty Gallies at his own charge, during the war against them: his enemies found

found means, by sinister interpretation, to convert his good will into matters of occasion. They told *Dionysius*, that all the great commendations, given of *Plato*, had tended to none other end, than to soften his mind, and to make him neglect his owne affairs, by the study of Philosophy; whilst *Dion* in the mean time having furnished fifty Gallies, under colour of the Kings service, had it in his own power either to deliver to the *Syracusians* their former liberty, or to make himself Lord and Sovereign of their State.

It is likely, that the honest and liberall offer which he made, to serve the King with so great a preparation, at his own charge, begot him many enemies. For they that had served the King for none other end than to raise and enrich themselves, and had already been raised and enriched, thought themselves bound to make the same offer that *Dion* had made, if the King had had the grace to conceive it aright. But the covetous and ignorant cowards, that had neither the knowledge, nor the daring that *Dion* had, were bold to stile his Love and Liberality, Pride and Presumption; and heartned the young King in his oppressing, and eating up his own people, of whose spoiles they themselves shared no small portion: I have heard it, That when *Charles* the fifth had the repulse at *Algier*, in *Africa*, *Ferdinando Cortese*, one of the bravest men that ever Spain brought forth, offered unto the Emperour, to continue the siege at his owne charge. But he had never good day after it. For they that envied his victories; and his conquest of *Mexico* in the *West-Indies*, perswaded the Emperour, that *Cortese* sought to value himself above him; and to have it said, that what the Emperour could not, *Cortese* had effected, and was therefore more worthy of the Empire, than he that had it.

When *Dion* was newly banished, the Tyrant was contented, at first to send him the revenues of his Lands, and permit him to dispose of his movables, at his own pleasure: not without giving hope to recall him in short time. Had he continued in this good mood, like enough it is, that *Dion* would have been well pleased to live well, as he did, at *Athens*. But after some time, *Dionysius* made Port-sale of this Noble-mans goods, and thereby urged him to take another course, even to seek the restitution of his Countrey to liberty. The virtues of *Dion*, especially his great liberality, had purchased much love in *Greece*: This love made him suspected and hated of the Tyrant: but it stood him in good stead, when he sought to raise men, with whose help he might returne into *Sicily*. Yet he got not above eight hundred (for he carried the matter close) to follow him in his adventures: But many of them were men of quality, and fit to be Leaders. Neither did he doubt of finding in *Syracuse*, as many as should be useful, that would readily assist him. Therefore he landed boldly in *Sicily*, marched to *Marusa*; entered the City without resistance; armed the multitude, and won all, save the Citadel.

*Dionysius* was then absent in *Italy*, but he quickly had advertisement of this dangerous accident. Wherefore he returned hastily to *Syracuse*: whence, after many vain treaties of peace, and some forcible attempts to recover the Town, he was faine to depart, leaving yet the Castle to the Custody of *Apollonides*: his eldest Sonne. Yet ere he went, his Minion *Philistus*, comming with a strength of men to assist him, was beate, taken, and put to death by torment. But *Dion*, for the recovery of his Countreys liberty, had the same reward that all worthy-men have had from popular Estates. He was disgraced, assaulted, and forced to abandon the City. He retired himselfe to the *Leontines*, who received him with great joy. Soon after his departure from *Syracuse*, new troupes enter the Castle: they fall out, assaile, spoyle, and burn a great part of the City. *Dion* is sent for, with humble request: yet ere he could arrive, *Philistus* his Souldiers were retired; and the Towns-men thinking themselves secured from the gates against *Dion*. But the next night they of the Castle fall again, with greater fury than ever; they kill Man, Woman, and Child; and set fire in all parts of the Town. In this their extremity *Dion* comes the second time to their succour; the love of his Countrey surmounting all the injuries that he had received. He sets upon the Garrison of the Castle, with the one part of his Army; and quenched the fire every where kindled, with the other part. In conclusion, after he had conquered both the fire and the sword, that had well-near burnt to ashes, and depopulated *Syracuse*, he recovered the Castle, with the munition and furniture thereof; and sent *Apollonides*



after *Dionysius* his Father, into *Italy*. But their malice, of whom he had best deserved, and whom he had loved most, gave an untimely end to his days. For he was soon after his victory, murdered by *Gylippus*; who after he had, with ill success, a while governed *Syracuse*, was slain with the same Dagger, with which he had murdered *Dion*.

Ten years after the death of *Dion*, *Dionysius*, with the assistance of his friends in *Italy*, recovers his estate, and returns to *Syracuse*, driving *Nysaus* thence, whom he found Governour therein. The better sort of the Citizens, fearing more than ever, his cruelty, flee to *Icetes*, a *Syracusan* borne, and then ruling the *Leontines*. *Icetes* enters into confederacy with the *Carthaginians*, hoping by their assistance, not only to prevail against *Dionysius*, but by the hatred of the *Syracusians* towards *Dionysius*, to make him also Lord of their City. The *Syracusians*, being deliriously afflicted on all sides, send to the *Carthaginians* for succour. *Icetes* also sends thither, and dissuades the *Carthaginians*, as well as he can, from intermeddling in the business. He tells them, by his Messengers, That he had entered into league with the *Carthaginians*, who were so strong by Sea, that it was not in the power of *Corinth*, to land an Army in *Sicil*. But the *Corinthians*, being by this treason of *Icetes*, more enraged than dissuaded, sent *Timoleon* with nineteen Gallies, to deliver *Syracuse* from tyranny. In the mean while, *Icetes* had entered *Syracuse*, and with the help of the *Carthaginians*, driven *Dionysius* into the Castle, where he besieged him.

*Icetes*, being himself a Tyrant in *Leontium*, rather sought how to enlarge his power, than how to deliver his Country. Therefore, hearing that *Timoleon* was arrived at *Rhegium*, he sent to persuade him, to return his fleet; for that all things were (in effect) established in *Sicil*. The *Carthaginian* Gallies were also in the same Port of *Rhegium*, whose Captains advised *Timoleon* to get him gone in peace. They had far more Gallies there than he had, and were like to compel him, if he would not be persuaded. *Timoleon*, finding himself over-mastered, makes request to the *Carthaginian* Captains, that they would be pleased to enter into *Rhegium*, and there, in an open assembly of the people, to deliver unto him those arguments, for his return, which they had used to him in private; that he might, by publick testimony, discharge himself to the Senate of *Corinth*.

The *Carthaginians*, persuading themselves, that a victory obtained by a few fair words, was without loss, and far more easie, than that of many blowes, and wounds, yielded to *Timoleon's* desire. But while the Orations were delivering, *Timoleon*, favoured by the *Rhegians*, stole out of the press; and having set sail, before the Gates were opened to the *Carthaginians*, he recovered the Port of *Tauromenium*, where he was joyfully received by *Andromachus* the Governor. From thence he marched toward *Adranum*, where surprising *Icetes* his Army, he slew a part thereof, and put the rest to run. It is the nature of victory to beget friends. The *Adranians* joyned with him, and so did *Mamercus*, the Tyrant of *Catana*. *Dionysius* also sent to *Timoleon*, offering to surrender the Castle of *Syracuse* into his hands, as thinking it better to yeeld up himself, and the places which he could not defend, unto the *Corinthians*, than either to *Icetes*, whom he did disdain, or to the *Carthaginians*, whom he hated. Now *Timoleon*, who, within fifty daies after his arrivall, had recovered the Castle of *Syracuse*, and sent *Dionysius* to *Corinth*, to live there a private man, was still invaded by the armies, and molested by the practices of *Icetes*. For he besieged the *Corinthians* within the castle of *Syracuse*, and attempted (but in vain) the murder of *Timoleon*.

The *Corinthians* send unto *Timoleon* a supply of two thousand foot, and two hundred horse, which are stayed in *Italy* by fowle weather. *Icetes* is strengthened with threecore thousand *Africans*, brought unto him by *Mago* (all which he lodgeth within *Syracuse*) and with an hundred and fifty Gallies, to keep the Port. This was the first time that ever the *Carthaginians* had dominion within the walls of that City. With this great Army *Icetes* assaileth the Castle. *Timoleon* sends them viuals, and succour, in small boats, by night, from *Catana*. *Mago* and *Icetes* do therefore resolve to besiege *Catana*; but they were no sooner on their way towards it, with part of their forces, than *Leon*, Captain of the *Corinthians*, sallied out of the Castle, and took that part of *Syracuse*, called *Acadina*, which he fortified.

In the mean while, the two thousand *Corinthians* arrive: with whom, and two thousand other Souldiers, *Timoleon* marched toward *Syracuse*. *Mago* abandoneth *Icetes* being

being frighted out of *Sicil* (which he might easily have conquered) with an idle rumour of treason. This made him returne to *Carthage*; where the generall exclamation against his cowardize, did so much affright him, that for fear of further punishment he hanged himself. *Timoleon* enters the City, and beats down the Castle (which he called the nest of Tyrants) to the ground. But he found the City, when the strangers were fled, in effect desolate; so as their horses did feed on the grafs growing in the market-place. Therefore he writes to *Corinth* for people to re-inhabit it. Ten thousand are sent out of *Greece*, many come from *Italy*; others from other parts of the Iland.

But a new storm ariseth. *Asdrubal* and *Amilcar*, *Carthaginians*, arrive about *Lilybaeum*, with threecore and ten thousand Souldiers, transported (with all their provisions) in a thousand ships of burden, and two hundred Gallies. *Timoleon* marcheth thither, and chargeth this great Army upon the passage of a River.

A tempest of rain, hail, and lightning, with boysterous windes, beating upon the faces of the *Carthaginians*, they are utterly broken, ten thousand slain, five thousand taken, with all their carriages and provisions: among which there were found a thousand couriers guilt and graven. After this, *Timoleon* gave an overthrow to *Icetes*, & following his victory, took him, with his son *Eupolemus*, and the Generall of his horse, prisoners, whom he caused all to be slain: and afterwards (which was imputed to him for great cruelty) he suffered *Icetes* his wives & daughters to be put to death. But this was the revenge of God upon *Icetes*, who (after the murder of *Dion*) had caused *Arete*, *Dion's* wife, and a young child of his, with *Arystomache* his sister, to be cast into the Sea.

He again prevailed against *Mamercus* Tyrant of *Catana*, and won *Catana* it self. *Mamercus* fled to *Hippon* Tyrant of *Messena*: but *Timoleon*, pursuing him, won the town; delivering *Hippon* to his Citizens, who tormented him to death: The same end had *Mamercus*, and all other the Tyrants in *Sicil*.

Finally, he made peace with the *Carthaginians*, on condition that they should not passe the River of *Lycus*. After this, he lived in great honour among the *Syracusians*, till his death; and was solemnly buried by them in the Market-place of their City: the day of his Funerals being for ever ordained to be kept holy among them.

After such time as *Timoleon* had delivered *Syracuse* from the tyranny of *Dionysius*, and brought peace to the whole Iland, the Inhabitants enjoyed their liberty in peace, about twenty years. The Cities and Temples were repaired; the Trade renewed; the Merchant sailed in safety; and the Labouring men enjoyed the fruits of the earth in quiet. But it was impossible that a Nation which neither knew how to govern, nor how to obey; which could neither endure Kings, nor men worthy to be Kings, to govern them; should any long time subsist.

Twenty years after the death of *Timoleon*, there started up one *Agathocles* among them, a man of base birth, and of baser condition, who from a Begger, to a common Souldier; from a Souldier to a Captain; and so from degree to degree, rising to be a Pretor; finally, became Lord and Sovereigne of the *Syracusians*. Many fortunes he ran, and under-went as many dangers, ere he obtained the principality. For he had more than once attempted it, and was therein both beaten and banished. A passing valiant man he was, and did notable service, as well for those by whom he was employed, as also for the *Syracusians*, and against them. For in their wars against those of *Finna*, and the *Campanes*, he did them memorable service: and on the contrary, as memorable service for the *Murgantines* against the *Syracusians*. For being entertained by the people of *Murgantia*, and made Generall of their forces, he sackt *Leontium*, and besieged *Syracuse* so straitly, that the Citizens were driven to crave aid, even from their ancient and herrell enemies, the *Carthaginians*. *Amilcar* was sent by the *Carthaginians* to relieve *Syracuse*. With him *Agathocles* wrought so well, that he got him to make peace between himself and the *Syracusians*; binding himself by promise and oath to remain a friend and servant to the State of *Carthage*, for ever after. *Amilcar* entertained the business, and compounded the quarrels between *Agathocles* and the *Syracusians*. *Agathocles* is chosen Pretor; he entertains five thousand *Africans*, and divers old Souldiers of the *Murgantines*, under colour of a purpose to besiege *Herbita*. With these, and with the assistance of the poor and discontented *Syracusians* (the City also being divided into many factions) he assails the Senators, kills all his enemies and opposites; divides

divides the spoile of the rich among the poor; and gives liberty to his Souldiers, to rob, to ravish, and to murder, for two whole dayes and nights, without controulement: the third day, when they had blunted their barbarous appetites, and strewed the streets with ten thousand dead carcases, besides those that had broken their necks over the walls, their fury had no further subject to work on.

*Agathocles*, in an assembly of the people (being an eloquent knave) perswaded them, that, for the violent sickness, by which the commonwealth was utterly consumed, he found no better, than the violent remedies which he had administred; and that he affected no other thing than the reducing of the state from an Oligarchy, or the rule of a few tyrannous Magistrates, to the ancient and indifferent Democracy, by which it had been governed, from the first institution, with so great glory and prosperity. This he did, to have the Crown clapt on his head (as it were) perforce. For, as he knew that he had left none living, within the City, fit, nor able, to exercise the office of a Magistrate: so knew he right well, that all they which had assisted in the murder and spoil of their fellow Citizens, had no other hope of defence, than the support of a lawless Lord, who had been partaker with them in their villanies and cruelties committed. So as this rabble, his Oration ended, proclaimed him King: again and again saluting and adoring him, by that name, as if it had been given to him by some lawfull election. Hence had our King *Richard* the third a piece of his pattern; but the one was of base, the other of Kingly parents; the one took liberty from a common-weal, the other sought only to succeed in a Monarchy; the one continued his cruelty to the end, the other, after he had obtained the Crown, fought, by making good lawes, to recover the love of his people.

The life of this Tyrant is briefly written by *Justin*, more largely and particularly by *Diodorus Siculus*: the summe whereof is this. The same *Amilcar* that had brought him into *Syracuse*, and that had lent him five thousand men to help in the massacre of the Citizens, was also content to wink at many wrongs, that he did unto the Confederates of the *Carthaginians*. It was the purpose of *Amilcar*, to settle *Agathocles* in his tyranny, and to let him vex and waste the whole Iland; because it was thereby like to come to pass, that he should reduce all *Sicily* into such terms as would make it become an easie prey to *Carthage*. But when the Cities, confederate with the *Carthaginians*, sent their Embassadors, with complaint of this ill dealing to *Carthage*; the *Punic* faith (so much taunted by the *Romans*, as no better than meer falshood) shewed it self very honourable in taking order for the redress. Embassadors were sent to comfort the *Sicilians*, and to put *Agathocles* in mind of his covenants; *Amilcar* was recalled home into *Africa*, and a new Captain appointed to succeed in his charge, with such forces, as might compell *Agathocles* to reason, if otherwise he would not hearken to it. All this tended to save their Confederates, from suffering such injuries in the future. For that which was past (since it could not be recalled) they took order to have it severely punished. *Amilcar* was accused secretly, and by way of scrutiny: the suffrages being given, but not calculated; and so reserved untill he should return. This was not so closely handled, as but that *Amilcar* had soon notice of it. In managing his business with *Agathocles*, it is likely that he had an eye to his own profit, as well as to the publick benefit of his Country. For he had made such a composition with the *Syracusan*, as gave him not only means to weaken others, but to strengthen himself, both in power and authority, even against the *Carthaginians*: Such is commonly the custome of those, that hope to work their own ends by cunning practices, thinking to deal subtly and finely, they spin their threads so small, that they are broken with the very wind. *Amilcar* saw, that his *Carthaginians* had a purpose to deal substantially; and that therefore it would be hard for him, to make them follow his crooked devices: which if he could not do, it was to be expected; that their anger would break out into so much the greater extremity, by how much the more they had concealed it. Therefore he followed the example, which some of his foregoers had taught him; and, for fear of such a death as the Judges might award him, he ended his own life in what sort he thought best. This desperation of *Amilcar* served to inform *Agathocles* of the *Carthaginians* intent. He saw they would not be deluded with words, and therefore resolved to get the start of them in action. He dissembled no longer; but, in stead of spoile and robbery, made open war upon all their Adherents. He had made the better part of *Sicily* his own, except

*Carthaginian*

*Carthaginian* forces arrived: which thinking to have encountered an ill-established Tyrant, found him ready, as a King, to defend his own, and give them sharp entertainment. They were beaten by him; and their Navie was so Tempest-beaten, that they could neither doe good by Land, nor Sea, but were glad to leave their business undone, and returne into *Africa*.

The *Carthaginians* prepare a new fleet, which being very gallantly manned and furnished, was broken by foule weather, and the best part of it cast away, even whilst it was yet within kenning of their City. But *Amilcar*, the son of *Gisco*, gathering together the remainders of his ship-wreck, was bold to passe over into *Sicily*, and landed not far from *Gela*; where *Agathocles* was soon ready to overthrow the cause of their coming. Many skirmishes passed between them, in which (commonly) the *Syracusan* had the better. But his good success begat presumption; whereby he lost a battell more important than all the other fights. One adverse chance is enough to overthrow the state of a Tyrant, if it be not upheld by great circumspection. The war was soon transferred to the walls of *Syracuse*, within which *Agathocles* was closed up, and driven to make his last defence by their help, who may be judged to have loved him not very greatly. But the Inhabitants of *Syracuse*, after that great Massacre of the principall men, made in the beginning of this new Tyranny, were (for the most part) such, as had been either mercenary Souldiers, enfranchised slaves, or base and needy people; helpers in establishing the present Government, and Executioners of the murders, and spoyle committed in that change. If there were any other (as some there were) they were so well observed, and (withall) so fearful, that they durst not stir. But it was enough that they all agreed in the common defence of themselves and their City. Famine was likely to grow upon them, and inforce them to change their resolution. In this necessity *Agathocles* adventured upon a strange course, which the event commended as wise. He imbarqued as many as he thought meet, in those vessels that rode in the Haven; and committing the government of the City to his brother *Antander*, willed the people to be of good courage, for that (as he told them) he had thought himself of a mean, both to raise the siege, and to repair all other losses. A *Carthaginian* fleet lay in the mouth of the Haven, both to hinder the entrance of victuallers, and to keep the besieged from issuing forth.

Now, at such time as *Agathocles* was ready to depart, advertisement came, that many ships of burden, laden with corn, and other provisions, were drawing near unto *Syracuse*. To intercept these the *Carthaginians* hoise sail, and lauch forth into the deep. They were not far gone, when they might behold *Agathocles*, issuing forth of the Port, with purpose (as they thought) to give convoy unto his victuallers. Hereupon they wheele about, and make amain toward him, as thinking him the better booty. He nevertheless abode their coming, not fled back into the City, but made all speed towards *Africa*; and was pursued by the *Carthaginians*, as long as the day would give them light. In the mean season the victuallers were gotten to *Syracuse*, which was the more plentifully relieved by their coming, for that *Agathocles* had unburdened the place of no small number. When the *Carthaginian* admiral perceived, first, that by pursuing two fleets at once, he had missed of them both; and secondly, that *Agathocles* returned not again, but was gone to seek his fortune elsewhere, he thought it good to pursue those that were fled, and to attend so well upon them, that they should not have leisure to do mischief in some other part.

The *Carthaginian* Navie followed *Agathocles* (whether by chance, or by relation of such as had met with him at Sea) directly towards *Africa*; and overtook him after sixe dayes. He had (at the first) a great start of them; so that (belike) they rowed hard, and wearied themselves in seeking their own misfortune: for he fought with them, and beat them; and, having sunk or taken many, craved the rest to flye, which way they could, with such strange tidings of his voyage.

When *Agathocles* had landed his men in *Africa*, there did he discover unto them his project, letting them understand, that there was no better way to divert the *Carthaginians*, not only from *Syracuse*, but from all the Ile of *Sicily*, than by bringing the war to their own doors. For here (said he) they have many that hate them, and that will readily take arms against them; as soon as they perceive that there is an Army on foot, which dares to look upon their walls. Their Townes are ill fortified, their people untrained, and

and experienced in dangers, the mercenary forces, that they levy in these parts, will rather follow us than them, if we offer greater wages than they can give: which we may better promise and make good, by letting him have some share with us in all the wealth of the *Carthaginians*, than our enemies can do, by making some addition to their stipends. Thus he talked, as one already Master of all the riches in *Africk*; and with many brave words encouraged his men so well, that they were contented to set fire on all their ships (reserving one or two to use as Messengers) to the end that no hope should remain, save only in victory. In this heat of resolution, they win by force two Cities; which after they had thoroughly sacked, they burnt to the ground as a mark of terror to all that should make resistance. The *Carthaginians* hearing this, are amazed; thinking that *Amilcar* is broken, and his whole Army destroyed in *Sicil*. This impression so dismaies them, that when they know the truth of all, by such as had escaped in the late Sea fight, yet still they fear, and know not what. They suspect *Amilcar's* faith, who had suffered *Agathocles* to land in *Africk*; they suspected their principal Citizens at home, of a meaning to betray *Carthage* unto the enemy; they raise a great Army, and know not to whose charge they may safely commit it.

There were at that time two famous Captains in the City, *Hanno* and *Bomilcar*, great enemies, and therefore the more unlikely to conspire against the common wealth. These are made Generals of the Army levied, which far exceeded the forces of *Agathocles*. But it seldom happens, that dissension between Commanders produceth any so fortunate event. Necessity drove *Agathocles* to fight: and the courage of his men, resolved to deal with the whole multitude of the *Carthaginians*, made easie the victory against the one halfe of them. For *Bomilcar* would not stir, but suffered *Hanno* to be cut in pieces.

The reputation of this great victory, brought over a King of the *Africans*, from the *Carthaginian* Society, to take part with *Agathocles*: who pursuing his victory, winneth many Towns, and sends word to *Syracuse* of his good success. The *Carthaginians* also send into *Sicil*, willing *Amilcar*, their General, to succour the State of *Africk*, which was in danger to be lost, whilst he was travelling in the conquest of *Sicil*. *Amilcar* sends them five thousand men: all his forces he thought it not needfull to transport; as hoping rather to draw *Agathocles* back into *Sicil*, than to be drawn home by one, that could scarce retain his own Kingdome. But these good hopes had a bad issue. He spent some time in winning a few Towns that adhered unto the *Syracusians*: and having brought his matters to some good order, he conceived a sudden hope of taking *Syracuse* by surprise. It was a pretty (though tragically) accident, if it were true, as *Tullie* relates it, *Amilcar* had a dream which told him that he should stop the next day within *Syracuse*. His fancy begot this dream, and he verily believed it. He made more haste than good speed toward the City: and coming upon it on the sudden, had good hope to carry it. But his enemies were prepared for him, and had laid an ambush to intrap him, whereinto he fell. So he was carried prisoner into the City, in which it was likely that he had no great cheer to his supper: for they struck off his head, and sent it into *Africk* (a welcome present) to *Agathocles*.

This good success of things at home, did put such courage into the *Sicilian* Army, that *Agathocles* was bold to wear a Crown, and stile himself King of *Africk*. He had allured *Ophellus*, King of the *Cyrenians*, to take his part, by promises to deliver the Country into his hands: for that (as he said) it was sufficient unto himself to have diverted the *Carthaginians* from *Sicil*, wherein (after this war ended) he might reign quietly. *Ophellus* came with a great Army, and was friendly entertained. But the traitorous *Sicilian*, taking an advantage, did murder this his assistant; and afterwards by good words, and great promises, drew all the *Cyrenian* Army to follow him in his War. Thus his villany found good success; and he so prevailed in *Africk*, that he got leave to make a step into *Sicil*. Many Towns in *Sicil* had embraced a desire of recovering their liberty; thinking it high time to fight at length for their own freedom, after that they had so long been exposed, (as a reward of victory) either unto Aliens, or to Tyrants of their owne country. These had prevailed far, and gotten many to take their parts, as in a common cause: when the coming of *Agathocles* abated their high spirits, and his good success in many fights, compelled them to Obedience. Out of

*Sicil* he returned into *Africk*, where his affairs stood in very bad terms. *Archagathus*, his sonne had lost a battell; and (which was worse) had ill means to help himself: his Army being in mutiny for lack of pay. But *Agathocles* pacified the tumult, by the accustomed promises of great booty and spoyle. It had now been time for him to offer peace to the *Carthaginians*: which to obtain, they would (questionlesse) have given to him, both money enough to pay his army, and all that they then held in *Sicil*. For their City had been distressed, not only by this his war, but by the treason of *Bomilcar*, who failed not much of making himself Tyrant over them. But ambition is blind; *Agathocles* had all his thoughts fixed upon the conquest of *Carthage* it self: out of which dream he was awaked, by the losse of a battell, not so memorable in regard of any accident therein, as of the strange events following it. The *Carthaginians*, after their great misfortunes in this war, had renewed their old sacrifices of children to *Saturne*: from which they had abstained ever since they made peace with *Gelon*. And now they made choice of some, the goodliest of their prisoners, taken in the battell, to offer unto the said Idoll, in way of thankfulness for their victory. The fire, with which these unhappy men were consumed, caught hold upon the lodgings nearest unto the Altar; and spreading it self farther through the Campe, with the destruction of many men, caused such a tumult as is usuall in the like cases. At the same time, the like accident of fire burnt up the Pavilion of *Agathocles*. Hereupon both the Armies fled away; each of them believing, that the noyse in the adverse Campe, was a signe of the enemies coming to invade it. But the *Carthaginians* had a safe retreat: *Agathocles*, by a second error, fell into a new calamity. In the beginning of this his flight in the dark, he met with his own *African* Souldiers; and thinking them to be enemies, (as indeed the one halfe of them had revolted from him, to the *Carthaginians*, in the last battell) he began to assail them, and was so stoutly resisted, that he lost in this blinde fight above four thousand of his men. This did so discourage his proud heart, that, being fallen from the neer hope of taking the City of *Carthage*, unto some distrust of his own safety, he knew no more how to moderate his present weak fears, than lately he had known how to govern his ambition. Therefore he took the way that came next into his head; which was, to steal closely aboard his ships, with his younger son (the elder he suspected of Incest, and of Ambition) and so to flye into *Sicil*; thinking it the best course to shift for himself, as wanting vessels wherein to transport his Army. His elder son *Archagathus*, perceiving his drift, arrested him and put him under custody: but by means of a sudden tumult, he was let loose, escaped, and fled alone, leaving both his sonnes behind him. His flight being noysed through the Army, all was in uproar; and extremity of rage caused not only the common Souldier, but even such as had been friends to the Tyrant, to lay hold upon his two sons, and kill them. That this flight of *Agathocles* was extremely base, I need not use words to prove: That his fear was truly, as all fear is said to be, a passion, depriving him of the succours which reason offered, the sequell doth manifest. His forsaken Souldiers, being now a headless company, and no longer an Army to be feared, obtained nevertheless a reasonable composition from the *Carthaginians*: to whom they sold those places, whereof they had possession, for nineteen talents. Likewise, *Agathocles* himself, having lost his Army, did nevertheless, by the reputation of this late war, make peace with *Carthage* upon equal termes.

After this, the Tyrant being delivered from forain enemies, discovered his bloody nature, in most abominable cruelties, among the *Sicilians*. His wants and his fears, urged him so violently, that he was not satisfied with the spoiles of the rich, or the death of those whom he held suspected: but in a beastly rage depopulated whole Cities. He devised new engines of torment; wherein striving to exceed the Bull of *Phalaris*, he made a frame of brass, that should serve to scorch mens bodies, and withall give him leave to behold them in their misery. So devilish is the nature of man, when reason is thus should be his guide, is become a slave to his brutish affections. In these mischiefs he was so outrageous, that he neither spared Sex, nor Age, especially when he was informed of the slaughter of his children in *Africk*. But this was not the way to preserve his estate; it threw him into new dangers. They whom he had chafed out of their Country took arms against him, and drove him into such fear, that he was faine to seek the love at *Carthage*, which by ruling well he might have had in *Sicil*. He freely de-







clipping into the wind, and laying, they may give them the other; and so the weaker ships batter them in pieces with a perpetuall volley; whereas those, that fight in a troupe, have no room to turn, and can always lie but one and the same beaten side. If the fleet of a hundred sail give themselves any distance, then shall the lesser fleet prevail either against those that are a-rear and hindmost, or against those, that by advantage of over-laying their fellows keep the winds; and if upon a Lee-shore, the ships next the wind be constrained to fall back into their own Squadron, then it is all to nothing; the whole fleet must suffer shipwrack, or render it selfe. That such advantage may be taken upon a fleet of unequal speed, it hath been well enough conceived in old time, as by that Oracle of *Hermocrates*, in *Thucydides*, which he made to the *Syracuzans*, when the *Athenians* invaded them, it may easily be observed.

Of the Act of War by Sea, I had written a Treatise, for the Lord Henry, Prince of Wales, a subject, to my knowledge, never handled by any man, ancient or modern: but God hath spared me the labour of finishing it, by his loss; by the loss of that brave Prince, of which like an Eclipse of the Sun, we shall find the effects hereafter. Impossible it is to equal words and sorrows; I will therefore leave him in the hands of God that hath him. Cure leaves logarithms, ingenuities, &c.

— But it is now time to return to the beaten Carthaginians, who by losing their advantage of swift boats, and boarding the Romans, have lost fifty sail of their Gallies: as on the other side their enemies by commanding the Seas, have gotten liberty to sail about the West part of Sicily, where they raised the siege layed unto Segesta by the Carthaginians, and won the Town of Melite, with some other places.

Diogenes enters the lists of war, between the Romans and Carthaginians, with variable success. The Romans prepare to invade Africa: and obtain a great victory at sea.

**T**he victory of *Durazzo*, as it was honoured at *Rome*, with the first Navall Tri-  
umph, that was ever seen in that City; To gave it unto the *Romans* a great in-  
couragement, to proceed in their wars by Sea; whereby they hoped, not  
only to get *Sicily*, but all the other Iles between *Italy* and *Africk*, beginning with *Sar-*  
*dinia*, whither soon after they sent a fleet for that purpose. On the contrary side, *Amilcar*  
the *Carthaginian*, lying in *Panormus*, carefully waited for all occasions, that might help  
to recompence the late misfortune; and being advertized, that some quarrell was grown  
between the *Roman* Souldiers, and their Auxiliaries, being such as caused them to in-  
campe apart; he sent forth *Hanno* to set upon them; who taking them unawares, buried  
four thousand of them in the place. Now during the continuance of the Land-war in  
*Sicily*, *Hannibal*, who had lately been beaten by Sea, but escaped unto *Carthage*, meaning  
to make matters for his former error, obtained the trust of a new fleet, wherewith he  
arrived at *Sardinia*; the conquest of which Iland, the *Romans* had entertained for their  
next enterprise. Now it so fell out, that the *Romans*, crossing the Sea from *Sicily*, arrived  
in the port where *Hannibal* with his new fleet anchored. They set upon him unawares,  
and took the better part of the fleet which he conducted; himself hardly escaping the  
danger. But it little availed him to have escaped from the *Romans*. His good friends the  
*Carthaginians*, were so ill pleased with this his second unfortunate voyage, that they  
hanged him up for his diligence: for (as it hath been said of old) *Non est vis in bello pe-*  
*sumo loco, quem cayo. In war it is too much to offend twice.*

[illegible]

gians into the field; being unable to force that great City, because of the strong Garrison therein bestowed: they then departed from thence, and took certain In-land Towns, as *Myistratum*, *Enna*, *Camerina*, *Hippana*, and others; between *Panormus* and *Messana*.

The year following, *C. Atilius* the Consul who commanded the *Roman* fleet, discovered a company of the *Carthaginian* Gallies, ranging the coast: &c. not staying for his whole number, pursued them with ten of his. But he was well beaten for the hault he made, and lost all, save the Gally which transported him: wherein himself escaped with great labour. But ere all was done, the rest of *Atilius* his fleet was gotten up, who renewing the fight, recovered from the *Carthaginians* a double number of theirs; by which the victory remaining doubtful, both challenge it. Now to try at once, which of these two Nations should command the Seas, they both prepare all they can. The *Romans* make a fleet of three hundred and thirty Gallies; the *Carthaginians*, of three hundred and fifty.

The *Romans* resolve to transport the war into *Africa*, the *Carthaginians*, to arrest them on the coast of *Seil*. The numbers, with which each of them filled their fleet, was (perhaps) the greatest that ever fought on the waters. By *Polybius* his estimation, there were in the *Roman* Gallies an hundred and forty thousand men; and in those of *Carthage*, an hundred and fifty thousand: reckoning one hundred and twenty Souldiers, and three hundred rowers to every Gally, one with the other. The *Roman* fleet was divided into four parts, of which the three first made the form of a Wedge or Triangle; the two first squadrons making the Flanks, and the third Squadron, the Base: the point thereof (wherein were the two Consuls as Admirals) looking toward the enemy, and the middle space lying empty. Their Vessels of carriage were towed by the third squadron. After all came up the fourth, in forme of a *Crescent*; very well manned, but exceeding thin: so that the hornes of it inclosed all the third Squadron, together with the corner of the first and second. The order of the *Carthaginian* fleet I cannot conceive by relation; but, by the manner of the fight afterwards, I conjecture, that the front of their fleet was thin, and stretched in a great length, much like to that which the *French* call *Combat en haye*, a long front of horse, and thin: which forme, since the *Pilfort* prevailed over the Lance, they have changed. Behinde this first outstretched front, their Battalions were more solid: for *Amilcar*, Admirall of the *Carthaginians* had thus ordered them, of purpose, (his Gallies having the speed of the *Romans*) that, when the first fleet of the *Romans* halted to breake through the first Gallies, they should all turn tail, and the *Romans* pursuing them (as after a victory) disorder themselves, and, for eagerneesse of taking the Run-aways, leave their own three squadrons far behind them. For so it muſt needs fall out; seeing that the third Squadron towed their horse boats, and victuallers; and the fourth had the Rearward of all. According to *Amilcars* direction it succeeded. For when the *Romans* had charged, and broken the point front of the *Carthaginian* first fleet, which ran away, they forthwith gave after them with all speed possible, not so much as looking behind them for the second Squadron. Hereby the *Romans* were drawn near unto the body of the *Carthaginian* fleet, led by *Amilcar*, and by him (at the first) received a great losse, untill their second Squadron came up, which forced *Amilcar* to betake him to his Oares. *Hanno* also who commanded the right wing of the *Carthaginian* fleet, invaded the *Roman* Rearward, and prevailed against them. But *Amilcar* being beaten off, *Marcus Atilius* fell back to their succour, and put the *Carthaginians* to their heels; as not able to sustain both squadrons. The Rear being relieved, the Consuls came to the aid of their third Battalion, which towed the victuallers, which was also in great danger of being beaten by the *Africans*: but the Consuls, joining their squadrons to it, put the *Carthaginians* on that part also to running.

1 This victory fell vnto the *Romans*, partly by the hardinesse of their Souldiers; but principally, for that *Amilcar*, being first beaten, could neuer after joyne himselfe vnto any of his other Squadrons, that remained, as yet in a fair likelihood of preuailling, so long as they fought vpon equall termes, and but Squadron to Squadron. But *Amilcar*, foraking the fight, thereby left a full fourth part of the *Romane* fleet vnengaged, ready to giue succour to any of the other parts that were opprest. So as in conclusion, the *Romans* got the honour of the day: for they lost but four and twenty of theirs; whereas the *Carthaginians* lost more then three hundred.

[illegible]





fell upon the *Carthaginian* Army, that met them in very good array. It was no even match. The one were a disordered Company, weary'd with labour and hurt; the other, fresh, and well prepared, to have dealt with the enemy upon equal terms. Here was therefore a greater slaughter with little fight; the *Romans* hastily recoyled to the body of their Army, which being surrounded with the enemy, and spent with travail, fell all to rout, upon the defeat of these troops, that open the way to a general overthrow. So the *Carthaginians* obtained a full victory, destroying the whole *Roman* Army, save two thousand, and taking five hundred prisoners, together with *Atilius* the Consul. Of their own they lost no more than eight hundred Mercenaries, which were slain, when the fight began, by two thousand of the *Romans*: that wheeling about to avoid the Elephants, bare down all before them; and made way even to the *Carthaginian* trenches. These were the two thousand that escap'd, when the whole Army behinde them was routed. All the rest were either taken or slain. Hereby fortune made the *Romans* know, that they were no less her vassals, than were the *Carthaginians*: how insolent soever they had been in their proposition of peace, as if they had purchased from her the inheritance of their prosperity, which she never gave nor sold to any mortal man. With what joy these newes were welcomed, when they came to *Carthage*, we may easily conjecture; and what great things the virtue of one man hath often brought to pass in the world, there are many examples to prove, no less than this of *Xantippus*: all of them confirming that sentence of *Eurypides*, *Mens una sapiens, plurimum vincit manus*; Many mens hands equal not one wise mind.

After this great service done to the *Carthaginians*, *Xantippus*, returned into *Greece*, whether for that he was more envied than honoured, or for what other cause, it is unknown.

The death of *Atilius Regulus* the Consul, was very memorable. He was sent from *Carthage* to *Rome*, about the exchange & ransom of prisoners on both sides: giving his faith to return if the business were not effected. When he came to *Rome*, and plainly saw that his Country should lose by the bargain: so far was he from urging the Senate unto compassion of his own misery, that he earnestly perswaded to have the prisoners in *Africa* left to their ill destinies. This done, he returned to *Carthage*: where for his painstaken, he was rewarded with an horrible death. For this his constancy and faith, all Writers highly extoll him. But the *Carthaginians* seem to have judged him an obstinate and malicious enemy, that neither in his prosperity would hearken to reason, nor yet in his calamity would have the naturall care, to preserve himself and others, by yielding to such an office of humanity, as is common in all wars (not grounded upon deadly hatred) only in regard of some small advantage. Whatsoever the *Carthaginians* thought of him; sure it is, that his faithfull observance of his word given, cannot be too much commended. But that grave speech, which he made in the Senate, against the exchange of prisoners, appears, in all reason, to have proceeded from vain-glorious forwardnesse, rather than from any necessity of State. For the Exchange was made soon after his death; wherein the *Romans* had the worse bargain, by as much as *Regulus* himself was worth. As for the authority of all Historians, that magnifie him in this point; we are to consider, that they lived under the *Roman* Empire: *Eutolius*, the *Carthaginian*, perhaps did censure it otherwise. Yet the death which he suffered with extreme torments, could not be more grievous to him than it was dishonourable to *Carthage*. Neither do I think that the *Carthaginians* could excuse themselves herein; otherwise than by recrimination: saying, That the *Romans* deserved to be no better intreated, for as much as it was their ordinary practice to use others in the like sort. Cruelty doth not become more warrantable, but rather more odious, by being customary. It was the *Roman* fashion, to whip almost to death, and then to behead, the Captains of their enemies whom they took, yea although they were such as had always made fair wars, with them. Wherefore it seems not meet, in reason, that they should cry out against the like tyrannicall insolency in others, as if it were lawfull only in themselves.

The consideration both of this misfortune, that rewarded the pride of *Atilius* his intolerable demands; and of the sudden valour, wherinto the *Carthaginians* fear was changed by meer desperation; calls to remembrance, the like insolency of others in prosperity, that hath bred the like resolution in those, to whom all reasonable grace hath been

been denied. In such cases I never hold it impertinent, to adde unto one, more testimonies; approving the true rules, from which our passions carry us away.

In the year 1378. the *Genovais* won so fast upon the *Venetians*, as they not only drove their Gallies out of the Sea, but they brought their own fleet within two miles of *Venice* itself. This bred such an amazement in the Cities of *Venice*, that they offered unto the *Genovais* (their state reserved) whatsoever they would demand. But *Peter Doria*, blown up with many former victories, would hearken to no composition; save the yielding of their City and State to his discretion. Hereupon the *Venetians*, being filled with disdain, thrust out to Sea with all their remaining power, and assail *Doria* with such desperate fury, that they break his fleet, kill *Doria* himself, take nineteen of his Gallies, fourscore boats of *Padua*, and four thousand prisoners, recover *Chioggia*, and all the places taken from them; and following their victory, enter the Port of *Genoa*, enforcing the *Genovais* basely to beg peace, to their extreame dishonour and disadvantage, being beaten; which, being victorious, they might have commanded, to their greatest honour and advantage. The like hapned to the Earl of *Flanders*, in the year 1380. when having taken a notable, and withall an over-cruell revenge upon the *Gantois*, he refused mercy to the rest, who in all humility, submitting themselves to his obedience, offered their City, goods, and estates, to be disposed at his pleasure. This when he had unadvisedly refused, and was resolved to extinguish them utterly, they stole out of their City with five thousand chosen men, and armed with a desperate resolution, they charge the Earl, break his Army, enter *Bruges* (pell-mell) with his vanquished followers; and enforce him to hide himself under an heap of straw, in a poor cottage; out of which with great difficulty he escaped, and saved himself. Such are the fruits of Insolency.

## §. IX.

How the affairs of *Carthage* prospered after the victory against *Atilius*: How the *Romans*, having lost their fleet by tempest, resolve to forsake the Seas: The great advantages of a good fleet in warre, between Nations divided by the Sea.

BY the reputation of this late victory, all places that had been lost in *Africa*, re-burne to the obedience of *Carthage*. Only *Chyrea* stands out, before which the *Carthaginians* sit down, and assail it, but in vain: For the *Romans*, hearing of the losse of *Atilius*, with their forces in *Africa*, and withall that *Chyrea* was besieged, make ready a gross Army, and transport it in a fleet of three hundred and fifty Gallies, commanded by *M. Amilius*, and *Ser. Fulvius*, their Consuls. At the *Promontory* of *Mercurie*, two hundred *Carthaginian* Gallies, set out of purpose, upon the bruit of their coming, encounter them: but greatly to their cost. For the *Romans* took by force an hundred and fourteen of their fleet, and drew them after them to *Chyrea*, wherethy they staid no longer, than to take in their own men that had been besieged; and thence, they made amain toward *Sicily*, in hope to recover all that the *Carthaginians* had therein. In this hasty voyage they despise the advice of the Pilots, who pray them to find harbour in time, for that the season threatened some violent storms, which ever hapned between the rising of *Orion*, and of the *Dog-starre*. Now although the Pilots of the *Roman* fleet had thus fore-warned them of the weather at hand, and certified them withall, that the South coast of *Sicily* had no good Ports, wherein to save themselves upon such an accident: yet this victorious Nation was perswaded, that the wind and seas feared them no lesse, than did the *Africans*, and that they were able to conquer the Elements themselves. So refusing to stay within some Port, as they were advised, they would needs put out to Sea; thinking a matter much helping their reputation, after this victory against the *Carthaginian* fleet, to take a few worthless Towns upon the coast. The merciless winds in the mean while overtake them, and neer unto *Camerina*, overturn and thrust headlong on the rocks, all but four score

There is no part of the World, which hath not some certain times of outrageous weather beside their accidental storms. Wee have upon our coast a Michaelmas flow that seldom or never failes: In the west Indies, in the months of August and September, those most forcible winds, which the Spaniards call the *Nortes*, or North windings, are so full: and therefore they that navigate in those parts, take heed all these months the end. *Charles* the first being as ill advised, in passing the Seas towards *Algiers* in the Winter quarter contrary to the counsel of *Admirals*, he was in like unseasonable times to continue his siege, before *Martin* in *Lorraine*, lost an hundred and twenty ships by tempest, and fifteen Gallies, with all in effect in them of men, victuals, horses, and munition: a losse no less great, than his death, both from before the one and the other, was extreme dishonourable.

of three hundred and forty ships: so as their former great victory was devoured by the Seas, before the same thereof recovered *Rome*.

The *Carthaginians*, hearing what had hapned, repair all their warlike vessels hoping once again to command the Seas: they are also as confident of their land-forces since the overthrow of *Attilius*. They send *Asdrubal* into *Sicily* with all their old Souldiers, and an hundred and forty Elephants imbarqued in two hundred Gallies. With this Army and fleet he arrives at *Lilybaeum*; where he begins to vex the *Parthians* of *Rome*. But adversity doth not discourage the *Romans*: They build in three moneths (a matter of great note) one hundred and twenty ships; with which, & the remainder of their late shipwreck, they row to *Panormus*, or *Palerma*, the chief City of the *Africans* in *Sicily*, and surround it by Land and Water: after a while they take it, and leaving a Garrison therein, return to *Rome*.

Very delicious the *Romans* were to be doing in *Africa*: to which purpose they employed *C. Servilius*, and *C. Sempronius*, their Consuls. But these wrought no wonders. Some spoil they made upon the coasts of *Africa*: but Fortune robbed them of all their gettings. For in their return, they were first let upon the sands, and like to have perished, near unto the lesser *Syrtis*, where they were fain to heave all over-board, that so they might get off: then, having with much ado doubled the Cape of *Lilybaeum*, in their passage from *Panormus* towards *Italy*, they lost an hundred and fifty of their ships by foul weather. A greater discouragement never Nation had; the god of the seas favoured them no more, than the god of the waters afflicted them. Of all that *Mars* enrich them with upon the Land, *Neptune* robbed them upon the Seas. For they had now lost, besides what they lost in fight, four hundred and six Ships and Gallies, with all the munition and Souldiers transported in them.

The exceeding damage hereby received, perswaded them to give over their Navigation, and their fight by Sea, and to send only a Land-army into *Sicily*, under *L. Caecilius*, and *F. Furius*, their Consuls. These they transport in some threecore ordinary passage-boats, by the straits of *Messana*, that are not above a mile and a half broad from land to land. In like sort, the overthrow which *Attilius* received in *Africa*, occasioned chiefly by the Elephants, made them lesse cholerick against the *Carthaginians*; than before; so that for two years after, they kept the high and woody grounds, not daring to fight in the fair and champion Countries. But this late resolution of forsaking the Seas lasted not long. For it was impossible for them to succour those places which they held in *Sicily*, without a Navie, much lesse to maintain the war in *Africa*. For whereas the *Romans* were to send forces from *Messana* to *Egesta*, to *Lilybaeum*, and to other places in the extreme West parts of *Sicily*, making sometimes a march of above an hundred and forty *English* mile by land, which could not be performed without an Army, & the provisions that follow it, in lesse than fourteen dayes, the *Carthaginians* would passe it with their Gallies, in eight and forty hours.

An old example we have, of that great advantage of transporting Armies by water, between *Caninus*, and *Edmond Ironside*. For *Caninus*, when he had entred the *Thames* with his Navie and Army, and could not prevail against *London*, suddenly imbarqued; and failed to the West, landed in *Dorset-shire*, so drawing *Edmond* and his Army thither. There finding ill entertainment, he again thipt his men, and entred the *Severne*, making *Edmond* to march after him, to the succour of *Worcester-shire*, by him greatly spoiled. But when he had *Edmond* there, he failed back again to *London*: by means whereof, he both wearied the King, and spoiled where he pleased, ere succour could arrive. And this was not the least help, which the *Netherland's* have had against the *Spaniards*, in the defence of their liberty, that being Masters of the Sea; they could passe their Army from place to place, unwearied, and entire, with all the Munition and Artillery belonging to it, in the tenth part of the time, wherein their enemies have been able to do it. Of this, an instance or two. The Count *Maurice* of *Nassau*, now living, one of the greatest Captains, and of the worthiest Princes, that either the present or preceding Ages have brought forth in the year 1590. carried his Army by Sea, with forty Canons, to *Brada*: making countenance either to besiege *Boisleduc*, or *Gertreviden Berg*; which the enemy (in prevention) filled with Souldiers, and victuals. But as soon as the wind served, he suddenly set sail, arriving in the mouth of the *Meuse*, turned up the *Rhine*, and thence to *Tijssel*, and lay down before *Zutphen*. So before the *Spaniards* could

could march over-land round about *Holland*, above fourscore mile, and over many great Rivers, with their Cannon and carriage, *Zutphen* was taken. Again, when the *Spanish* Army had overcome this wearisome march, and were now far from home, the Prince *Maurice*, making countenance to sail up the *Rhine*, changed his course in the night, and sailing down the stream, he was set down before *Hulst* in *Brabant*, ere the *Spaniards* had knowledge what was become of him. So this Town he also took, before the *Spanish* Army could return. Lastly, the *Spanish* Army was no sooner arrived in *Brabant*, than the Prince *Maurice*, well attended by his good fleet, having fortified *Hulst*, set sail again, and presented himself before *Nymegen* in *Gelders*, a City of notable importance, and mastered it.

And to say the truth, it is impossible for any maritime Countrey, not having the coasts admirably fortified, to defend it self against a powerfull enemy, that is master of the Sea. Hence I had rather, that *Spain* than *England* should be an example. Let it therefore be supposed, that King *Philip* the second had fully resolved to hinder Sir *John Norris* in the year 1589, from presenting *Don Antonio*, King of *Portugale*, before the gates of *Lisborne*; and that he would have kept off the *English*, by power of his land-forces; as being too weak at Sea, through the great overthrow of his mighty Armado, by the fleet of Queen *Elizabeth*, in the year foregoing. Surely, it had not been hard for him, to prepare an Army, that should be able to resist our eleven thousand. But where should this his Army have been bestowed? If about *Lisborne*; then would it have been easie unto the *English*, to take, ransack, and burn the Town of *Croin*, and to waste the Countrey round about it. For the great and threatening preparations of the Earle of *Almonera*, the Marquess of *Seralba*, and others, did not hinder them from performing all this. Neither did the hasty levy of eight thousand under the Earle of *Ambrado*, serve to more effect, than the increase of honour to Sir *John Norris*, and his Associates: considering that the *English* charged these, at *Puente de Burgos*, and passing the great Bridge, behind which they lay, that was flanked with shot, and barricadoed at the further end, routed them, took their campe, took their Generals standard with the Kings Armes, and pursued them over all the Countrey, which they fired. If a Royal Army, and not (as this was) a Company of private adventurers, had thus begun the war in *Galicia*, I think it would have made the *Spaniards* to quit the guard of *Portugale*, and make halt to the defence of their *S. Jago*, whose Temple was not far from his danger. But, had they held their first resolution; as knowing, that Sir *John Norris* his main intent was, to bring *Don Antonio*, with an Army into his Kingdome, whether commanding strong, he expected to be readily and joyfully welcomed: could they have hindered his landing in *Portugale*? Did not he land and *Pepicha*, and march over the Countrey to *Lisborne*, six dayes journey? Did not he (when all *Don Antonio* his promises failed) passe along by the River of *Lisborne* to *Casali*, and there, having won the Fort, quietly imbarque his men, and depart? But these, though no more than an handful, yet were they *Englishmen*. Let us consider of the matter it self; what another Nation might doe, even against *England*, in landing an Army, by advantage of a fleet, if we had none. This, whether an invading Army may be resisted at their landing upon the coast of *England*, were there no fleet of ours at the Sea to impeach it; is already handled by a learned Gentleman of our Nation, in his observations upon *Cæsar's* Commentaries, that maintain the affirmative. This he holds only upon supposition; in absence of our shipping; and comparatively, as that it is a more safe and easie course, to defend all the coast of *England*, than to suffer any enemy to land, and afterwards to fight with him. Surely I hold with him, that it is the best way, to keep our enemy from treading upon our grounds; wherein if we fail, then must we seek to make him wish, that he had stayed at his owne home. In such a case, if it should happen, our judgements are to weigh many particular circumstances, that belong not unto this discourse. But making the question generally, and positive, whether *England*, without help of her fleet, be able to deterre an enemy from landing; I hold that it is unable so to do: and therefore I think it most dangerous to make the adventure. For the encouragement of a first victory to an enemy; and the discouragement of being beaten to the invaded; may draw after it a most perillous consequence.

It is true, that the Marshall *Monluc*, in his Commentaries, doth greatly complain, that by his wanting forces, whereunto to have kept the frontier of *Guyenne*, they of the

Protestants

*Protestant Religion*, after the battail of *Monconour*, entred that Country, and gathered great strength and relief thence; for if the King (saith he) would have given me but reasonable means, *j'usse bien gardé à Monsieur l'Admiral de faire boire ses Chevaux en la Gironne*; I would have kept the Admiral from watering his horses in the River of *Garonne*; Monsieur de *Langey*, on the contrary side, prefers the not fighting upon a frontier with an invading enemy, & commends the delay; which course the Constable of *France* held against the Emperour *Charles*, when he invaded *Provence*. Great difference I know there is, and a diverse consideration to be had, between such a country as *France*, strengthened with many fortified places; and this of ours, where our Rampars are but of the bodies of men. And it was of invasions upon firm land, that these great Captains spake: whose entrances cannot be uncertain. But our question is of an Army to be transported over Sea, and to be landed again in an enemies country, and the place left to the choice of the invader. Hereunto I say, That such an Army cannot be resisted on the coast of *England*, without a fleet to impeach it; no, nor on the coast of *France*, or any other Country: except every Creek, Port, or sandy Bay, had a powerful Army, in each of them, to make opposition. For let his whole supposition be granted; That *Kent* is able to furnish twelve thousand foot, and that those twelve thousand be layed in the three best landing places within that Country, to wit, three thousand at *Margat*, three thousand at the *Nesse*; and six thousand at *Foulkston*, that is somewhat equally distant from them both; as also that two of these troupes (unlesse some other order be thought more fit) be directed to strengthen the third, when they shall see the enemies fleet to bend towards it: I say, that notwithstanding this provision, if the enemy, setting sail from the *Isle of Wight*, in the first watch of the night, and towing their long boats at their sterns, shall arrive by dawne of day at the *Nesse*, and thrust their Army on shore there; it will be hard for those three thousand that are at *Margat*; (twenty and four long miles from thence) to come time enough to re-enforce their fellows at the *Nesse*. Nay, how shall they at *Foulkston* be able to do it, who are nearer by more than half the way? seeing that the enemy, at his first arrivall, will either make his entrance by force, with three or four hundred shot of great Artillery, and quickly put the first three thousand, that were intrenched at the *Nesse*, to run; or else give them so much to doe, that they shall be glad to fend for help to *Foulkston*, and perhaps to *Margat*; whereby those places will be left bare. Now let us suppose, that all the twelve thousand *Kentish* Souldiers arrive at the *Nesse*, ere the enemy can be ready to disembarque his Army, so that he shall finde it unsafe, to land in the face of so many prepared to withstand him; yet must we believe, that he will play the best of his own game; and (having liberty to go which way he list) under covert of the night, set sail towards the East, where what shall hinder him to take ground, either at *Margat*, the *Dowries*, or elsewhere, before they at the *Nesse* can be well aware of his departure? Certainly, there is nothing more easie than to do it. Yea the like may be said of *Weymouth*, *Nybecke*, *Poole*, and of all landing places on the South Coast. For there is no man ignorant, that ships, without putting themselves out of breath, will easily out-run the Souldiers that coast them. *Les Armees ne volent point en poste*; *Armes n'iront ny par post*, saith a Marshall of *France*. And I know it to be true, that a fleet of ships may be seen at Sun-set, and after it, at the *Lisard*; yet by the next morning they may recover *Portland*, whereas an Army of foot shall not be able to march it in fix dayes. Again, when those troupes lodged on the Sea-shores, shall be forced to run from place to place in vain, after a fleet of ships; they will at length fit down in the mid-way; & leave all at adventure. But say it were otherwise; that the invading enemy will offer to land in some such place, where there shall be an Army of ours ready to receive him; yet it cannot be doubted, but that when the choice of all our trained bands, and the choice of our Commanders and Captains, shall be drawn together (as they were at *Tilbury* in the year 1588.) to attend the person of the Prince, and for the defence of the City of *London*: they that remain to guard the coast, can be of no such force, as to encounter an Army like unto that, wherewith it was intended that the Prince of *Perms* should have landed in *England*.

The *Isle of Tercera* hath taught us by experience, what to think in such a case. There are not many Ilands in the world, better fenced by nature, and strengthened by art: it being every where hard of access; having no good harbour wherein to shelter a Navie

of friends, and upon every cove or watering place a Fort erected, to forbid the approach of enemies boat. Yet when *Emanuel de Sylva*, and *Monsieur de Chaites*, that held it for the use of *Don Antonio*, with five or six thousand men, thought to have kept the *Marquisse of Santa Cruz*, from setting foot on ground therein; the *Marquisse* having shew himself in the Road of *Agra*, did set sail, ere any was aware of it, and arrived at the *Isle of Moles*, far distant from thence; where he won a Fort, and landed, ere *Monsieur de Sylva* could come to hinder him. The example of *Philip Sirois*, slay the year before, without all regard of his worth, and of three hundred French prisoners murdered in cold blood, had instructed *de Chaites*, and his followers, that they might expect at that *Marquisse* his hands. Therefore it is not like, that they were slow in carrying relief to *Port des Moles*. Whether our *English* would be perswaded to make such diligent haste, from *Margat* to the *Nesse*, and back again, it may be doubted. Sure I am, that it were a greater march than all the length of *Tercera*; whereof the French-men had not measured the one half when they found themselves prevented by the more nimble ships of *Spain*.

This may suffice to prove, that a strong Army, in a good fleet, which neither foot, nor horse is able to follow, cannot be denied to land where it list, in *England*, *France*, or elsewhere, unlesse it be hindered, encountered, and shuffled together, by a fleet of equall, or answerable strength.

The difficult landing of our *English*, at *Fayal* in the year 1597, is alledged against this; which example moves me no way to think, that a large coast may be defended against a strong fleet. I landed those *English* in *Fayal* myself, and therefore ought to take notice of this instance. For whereas I find an action of mine cited, with omission of my name; I may by a civill interpretation, think, that there was no purpose to defraud me of any honour, but rather an opinion, that the enterprize was such, or so ill managed, as that no labour could be due unto it. There were indeed some which were in that voyage, who advised me not to undertake it: and I hearkened unto them somewhat longer than was requisite, especially, whilst they desired me to reserve the title of such an exploit (though it were not great) for a greater person. But when they began to tell me of difficulty: I gave them to understand, the same which I now maintain, that it was more difficult to defend a coast, than to invade it. The truth is, that I could have landed my men with more ease than I did; yea without finding any resistance, if I would have taken more company to help me. But, without fearing any imputation of rashnesse, I may say, that I had more regard of reputation, in that businesse, than of safety. For I thought it to belong unto the honour of our Prince and Nation, that a few Ilanders should not think any advantage great enough, against a fleet set forth by *Q. Elizabeth*; and further, I was unwilling, that some *Low-Country* Captains, and others, not of mine own Squadron, whose assistance I had desired, should please themselves with a sweet conceit (though it would have been short, when I had landed in some other place). That for want of their help I was driven to turn tail. Therefore I took with me none, but men assured, Commanders of mine owne Squadron, with some of their followers, and a few other Gentlemen, voluntaries, whom I could not refuse, as, *Sir William Brook*, *Sir William Harvey*, *Sir Arthur Gorges*, *Sir John Aker*, *Sir Thomas Ridgeway*, *Sir Henry Timmes*, *Sir Charles Morgan*, *Sir Walter Chute*, *Marcellus Throckmorton*, Captain *Laurence Kemis*, Captain *William Morgan*, and others such as well understood themselves and the enemy: by whose help, with Gods favour, I made good the enterprize I undertook. As for the working of the Sea, the steepnesse of the Cliffs, and other troubles, that were not new to us, we overcame them well enough. And these (notwithstanding) made five or sixe companies of the enemies, that sought to impeach our landing, abandon the wall, wherupon their Musketers lay on the Rest for us, and won the place of them without any great losse. This I could have done with lesse danger, so that it should not have served for example of a rule, that failed even in this example: but the reasons before alledged, (together with other reasons well known to some of the Gentlemen above named, though more private, than to be here laid down) made me rather follow the way of bravery, and take the shorter course; halting it still in mine own power to fall off when I should think it meet. It is easily said, that the Enemy was more than a Coward; (which yet was more than we knew) neither will I magnifie such a small piece of service, by seeking to prove him better: whom had I thought

thought equal to mine own followers. I would otherwise have dealt with. But for as much as concerns the proposition in hand, he that beheld this, may well remember that the same enemy troubled us more in our march towards *Fayal*, than in our taking the shore, that he fought how to stop us in place of his advantage, that many of our men were slain or hurt by him, among whom Sir *Arthar Gorges* was shot in that march; and such, as (thinking all danger to be past, when he had won good footing) would follow us to the Town, were driven by him, to forsake the pace of a man of war, and to take themselves to an hasty trot.

For end of this digression, I hope that this question shall never come to try all his Justies many movable Forts will forbid the experience. And although the English will no lesse disdain, than any Nation under heaven can do, to be beaten upon their own ground, or elsewhere by a foreign enemy; yet to certain those that shall assaile us with their own beef in their bellies, and before they eat of our *Kentish* Capons, I take it to be the wisest way To do which, his Majesty, after God, will employ his good hands on the Sea, and not trust to any intrenchment upon the shore.

## S. X.

*How the Romans attempt again to get the mastery of the Seas. The victory of Cæcilius over the Roman Consul at Panormus. The siege of Lilybæum. How a Rhodian Gally saved Lilybæum at pleasure, in despite of the Roman fleet. That it is a matter of great difficulty to stop the passage of good ships. The Romans by reason of grievous losses received under Claudius and Junius their Consuls, abandon the Seas again.*

WHEN, without a strong Navy, the Romans found it altogether impossible, either to keep what they had already gotten in *Sicily*, or to enlarge their Dominions in *Africa* or elsewhere; they resolved once again, notwithstanding their late misadventures, to strengthen their fleet and ships of war. So causing fifty new Gallies to be built, & the old to be repaired, they gave them in charge (together with certain Legions of Souldiers) to the new Consuls, *C. Atilius*, & *L. Manlius*. On the other side, *Asdrubal* perceiving that the Romans, partly by reason of the shipwreck which they had lately suffered, partly by reason of the overthrow which they received by *Santippus* in *Africa* were less daring than they had been in the beginning of the war; & withall, that one of the Consuls was returned into *Italy*, with the one half of the Army, & that *Cæcilius*, with only the other half, remained at *Panormus*: he removed with the *Carthaginian* forces from *Lilybæum* towards it, hoping to provoke *Cæcilius* to fight. But the Consul was better advised. For when *Asdrubal* had made his approaches somewhat near the Town, *Cæcilius* caused a deep trench to be cut, a good distance without the ditch of the City; between which and his trench he left ground sufficient, to embattle a Legion of his Souldiers. To these he gave order that they should advance themselves, and passe over the new trench, till such time as the *African* Elephants were thrust upon them. From those beasts he commanded them to retire, by slow degrees till they had drawn on the Elephants to the brink of the new trench, which they could by no means passe. This they performed accordingly. For when the Elephants were at a stand, they were so gawled & beaten, both by those Souldiers that were on the inside of the trench, and by those that lay in the trench it self, that being enraged by their many wounds they brake back furiously upon their own foot-men, and utterly disordered them. *Cæcilius* espying his advantage, sallied with all the force he had; and charging the other troops, that stood embattailed, he utterly brake them, and put them to their heels; making a great slaughter of them, and taking all their Elephants.

The report of this victory being brought to *Rome*, the whole state, filled with courage, prepared a new fleet of two hundred sail, which they sent into *Sicily*, to give end to that war, that had now lasted fourteen years. With this fleet and Army the Romans resolve to attempt *Lilybæum*, the only place of importance which the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicily*; and all (indeed) save *Drepanum*, that was near adjoining. They set down before it, and possesse themselves of all the places of advantage near unto it, especially of such as command the haven, which had a very difficult entrance. They also beat to the ground

the Towers of defence; and by forcible engines weaken'd many other parts of the City, as the defendants begin to despair. Yet *Himilco*, Commander of the place, sailerth not, in all that belongs to a man of War. All that is broken, he repairerth with admirable diligence; he maketh many furious sallies, and giveth to the Romans all the affronts that possibly could be made. He hath in Garrison (besides the Citizens) ten thousand Souldiers; among which there are certain Lieutenants, and other petty officers; that conspire to render and betray the Town. But the matter is revealed by an *Achean*, called *Alexon*, who had formerly in danger of the like treason, saved *Agrirentum*. *Himilco* with the help of *Alexon*, to assure the hired Souldiers, & employeth *Hannibal* to appease the troops of the *Gauls*, which did waver, and had sent their agents to the enemy. All promisc constancy and truth; so that the Traitors, being unable to perform what they had undertaken, are faine to live in the Roman campe as fugitives, that had wrought no good whereby to deserve their bread. In the mean while a supply of ten thousand Souldiers is sent from *Carthage* to their relief, having *Hannibal* the son of *Amilcar* for their Conductor: who, in despite of all resistance, entered the Port and City, to the incredible joy of the besieged. The old Souldiers, together with the new Companies, (thereto persuaded by *Himilco* with hope of great reward) resolve to set upon the Romans in their trenches, and either force them to abandon the siege, or (at least) to take from them, or set on fire, their engines of battery. The attempt is presently made, and pursued to the uttermost, with great slaughter on both sides. But the Romans, being more in number, and having the advantage of the ground, hold still their places, and with extreme difficulty defend their engines.

They of *Carthage* desire greatly to understand the state of things at *Lilybæum*; but know not how to send into the Town. A certain *Rhodian* undertakes the service, and having received his dispatch, sails with one Gally, to *Agylia*, a little Island near *Lilybæum*. Thence, taking his time he steered directly with the Port; and having a passing swift Gally, he past through the best of the Channel, and recovered the water-gate, ere any of those, which the Romans had to guard the Port, could thrust from the shores on either side.

The next day, neither attending the covert of the dark night, nor dreading to be boorded by the Roman Gallies, who waited his returne, he set sail; and shipped his Oares (the Gally being exceeding quick of steage, and himself expert in all parts of the channel) recovered the Havens mouth, and the Sea, in despite of all the pursuit made after him. Then, finding himself out of danger of being encompassed by many, he turned again towards the mouth of the Haven, challenging any one, if any one durst come forth, to undertake him. This enterprise, and the well performing of it, was very remarkable, and much wondered at in those dayes: and yet, where there was no great Artillery, nor any other weapons of fire, to kill a farre off, the adventure which this *Rhodian* made was not greatly hazardous. For in this Age, a valiant and judicious man of war will not fear to passe by the best appointed Fort of *Europe*, with the help of a good Tide, and a leading gale of wind; no, though forty pieces of great Artillery open their moutches against him, and threaten to tear him in pieces.

In the beginning of our late Queens time, when *Denmark* and *Sueden* were at Warre, one *Leif* Land Beer, bound for *Leif* land, was forbidden by the King of *Denmark* to trade with the Subjects of his enemies, and he threatned to sink their ships if they came through the straits of *Elseneur*. Notwithstanding this, our Merchants (having a ship of her Majesties called the *Minion*, to defend them) made the adventure, and sustaining some Volleys of shot, kept on their course. The King made all the provision he could, to stop them, or sink them, at their return. But the *Minion*, commanded (as I take it) by *William Burroughs*, leading the way, did not only passe out with little losse, but did beat down, with Artillery, a great part of the Fort of *Elseneur*, which at that time was not so well rampard, as now perhaps it is: and the fleet of Merchants that followed him, went through without any wound received. Neither was it long since, that the Duke of *Farmia*, besieging *Antwerp*, and finding no possibility to master it, otherwise than by famine, laid his Cannon on the banke of the River, so well to purpose, that he even with the face of the water, that he thought it impossible for the least boat to passe by. Yet the Hollanders and Zelanders, not blown up by any wind of glory, but coming to find a good market for their Butter and Cheese, even the poor



men, attending their profit-when all things were extrem dear in *Antwerp* passed in boats of ten or twelve Tonne, by the mouth of the Dukes Cannon, in despite of it, when a strong Westerly winde, and a Tide of flood favoured them; as also with a contrary wind, and an ebbing water, they turned back again: so as he was forced, in the end, to build his Stockado overthwart the River, to his marvellous trouble and charge.

The Fort Saint Philip terrified not us in the year 1596. when we entered the Port of *Calix*, neither did the Fort at *Punta*, when we were entred beat us from our anchoring by it; though it plaid upon us with four demi-cannons within point blanche from six in the morning till twelve at noon. The siege of *Ofend*, and of many other places, may be given for prooffe, how hard a matter it is to stop the passage of a good ship, without another as good to encounter it. Yet this is true, that where a Fort is so set, as that of *Angra in Terceira*, that there is no passage along beside it, or that the ships are driven to turne upon a bow-line towards it, wanting all help of wind and tide; there, and in such places, is it of gratefull, and fearful: otherwise not.

But to returne to our adventurous *Rhodian*: He arrives in safety at *Carthage*, and makes them know the estate of *Lilybæum*. Others also, after this, take upon themselves the like, and performe it with the same success. The *Romans* therefore labour to choke the channell, and, for that purpose, fill many Merchants ships with great stones, and sink them therein. The force of the *Tides* clears it again in part: but they grounded so many of those great bellied boats in the belt of the entrance, as it laid it made a manifest rising and heap, like a ragged Island, in the passage. Hereby it came to passe, that a *Carthaginian* Gally, taking her course by night, and not suspecting any such impediment, ran her self aground thereon, and was taken. Now comes that brave *Rhodian*, thinking to enter, as he had done before: but this *Carthaginian* Gally, a little before taken, gave him chase, and gathered upon him; he finds what she is, both by her form, and by her swiftness: and being not able to run from her, resolved to fight with her. But she is too well manned for him, so that he is beaten and taken.

*Lilybæum*, after this, is greatly distressed; the Souldiers being worn with labour and watching. But in this despair there rose so violent a tempest, as some of the *Roman* wooden Towers, by which they over-top the walls of *Lilybæum*, were over-turned. A *Greek* Souldier undertakes to fire those that were fallen, and performs it: for the fire was no sooner kindled, but being blown unto, by the bellows of a tempest, it increased so fast, as it became resistless, and in the end burned all to ashes, and melted the brazen heads of the battering Rams. Hereupon, despair and weariness hinder the *Romans* from repairing their Engines: so that they resolve, by a long siege, to starve the defendants.

Upon relation of what had past, a supply of ten thousand souldiers is sent from *Rome*, under *M. Claudius*, the Consull. He arrives at *Messana*, and marcheth over land to *Lilybæum*: where having re-inforced the Army, and supplied the Gallies with new Rowers, he propounds the surprisall of *Drepanum*, a City on the other side of the Bay of *Lilybæum*. This service the Captains and Souldiers willingly embrace. So the Consull embarks his troups, and arrives on the sudden in the mouth of the Port. *Adherbal* is Governour of the Town, a valiant and prudent man of war, who being ignorant of the new supply arrived at *Lilybæum*, was at first amazed at their sudden approach; but having recovered his spirits, he perswades the Souldiers, rather to fight abroad, than to be enclosed. Herewithin he promiseth great rewards to such, as by their valour shall deserve them; offering to lead them himself, and to fight in the head of his fleet. Having sufficiently encouraged his men, he thrust into the Sea towards the *Romans*. The Consull, deceived of his expectation, calls back the foremost Gallies, that he might now marshall them for defence. Hereupon some row backward, some forward, in great confusion. *Adherbal* finds and follows his advantage, and forceth the Consull into a Bay at hand, wherein he rangeth himself, having the land on his back: hoping thereby to keep himself from being incompassed. But he was thereby, and for want of Sea-room, so straightened, as he could not turn himself any way from his enemies, nor range himself in any order. Therefore when he found no hope of resistance, keeping the shore on his left hand, he thrust out of the Bay with thirty

thirty Gallies, besides his own, and so fled away: all the rest of his fleet to the number of sixty and four ships, were taken or sunk by the *Carthaginians*. *Adherbal* for this service is greatly honoured at *Carthage*; and *Claudian*, for his indiscretion and flight, as much disgraced at *Rome*.

The *Romans*, notwithstanding this great losse, arme three score Gallies, with which they send away *L. Junius*, their Consull, to take charge of their businesse in *Sicily*. *Junius* arrives at *Messana*, where he meets with the whole remainder of the *Roman* fleet, whose excepting which rode in the Port of *Lilybæum*. One hundred and twenty Gallies he had, and besides these, he had gotten together almost eight hundred ships of burthen, which were laden with all necessary provisions for the Army. With this great fleet he arrives at *Syracuse*, where he staves a while; partly to take in corn, partly to wait for some, that were too slow of sail, to keep company with him along from *Messana*. In the mean time he dispatcheth away towards *Lilybæum* his Quicks or Treasures, to whom he commits the one half of his victuallers, with some Gallies for their conveyance.

*Adherbal* was not carelesse after his late victory, but studied how to use it to the best advantage. The ships and prisoners that he had taken, he sent to *Carthage*. Of his own Gallies he delivered thirty to *Carthalo*, who had three score and ten more under his own charge, and sent him to try what good might be done against the *Roman* fleet in the Harbour of *Lilybæum*. According to his direction, *Carthalo* suddenly enters the mouth of that Haven, where he finds the *Romans* more attentive to the keeping in of the besieged *Carthaginians*, than to the defence of their own against another fleet. So he chargeth them, boards, and takes some, and fires the rest. The *Roman* Camp takes alarm, and hastens to the rescue. But *Himilco*, Governour of the Town, is not behind hand, who sallies out at the same time, and putting the *Romans* to great distresse, gives *Carthalo* good leisure to go through with his enterprise.

After this exploit, *Carthalo* ran all along the South coast of *Sicily*, devising how to work mischief to the enemy; wherein Fortune presented him with a fair occasion, which he wisely managed. He was advertised by his Scouts, that they had discovered, near at hand, a great fleet, consisting of all manner of Vessels. These were the victuallers, which the Consull *Junius*, more hastily then providently, had sent before him towards *Lilybæum*; *Carthalo* was glad to hear of their coming: for he and his men were full of courage, by reason of their late victories. Accompanying therefore the great multitude of *Roman* Hulks approaching, to be rather a prey than a fleet likely to make strong opposition, he hastens to encounter them. It fell out according to his expectation. The *Romans* had no mind to fight: but were glad to seek shelter in an open Road, full of rocks under a covert of a poor Town, belonging to their party, that could help to save them only from the present danger, by lending them engines and other aid, where-with to beat off the *Carthaginians* that assailed them. *Carthalo* therefore, having taken a few of them, lay waiting for the rest, that could not long ride, under those rocks, or to would be forced by any great change of wind, either to put out into the deep, or to save their men, how they could, by taking land, with the loss of all their shipping. Whilst he was busied in this care, the Consull *Junius* drew near, and was discovered. Against him *Carthalo* makes out, and finds him altogether unprepared to fight, as being wholly ignorant of that which had hapned. The Consull had neither means to flee, nor ability to fight. Therefore he likewise ran into a very dangerous Creek, thinking no danger so great as that of the enemy. The *Carthaginian* seeing this, betakes himself to a Station between the two *Roman* fleets; where he watcheth, to see which of them would first stir, with a resolution to assault that, which should first dare to put it self into the Sea. So as now all the three fleets were on the South coast of *Sicily*, between the Promontory of *Pachinus* and *Lilybæum*; a Tract exceeding dangerous, when the wind blowed at South. The *Carthaginians*, who knew the times of tempest, and their signes, finding (belike) some swelling billow (for so we do in the West of *England*, before a Southerly storm) hastened to double the Cape of *Pachinus*, thereby to cover themselves from the rage at hand. But the *Romans*, who knew better how to fight than how to Navigate, and never found any foul weather in the entrailes of their beasts, their Sooth-sayers being all land-prophets, were suddenly overtaken with a boisterous South wind, and all the Gallies forced against the rocks, and utterly wrackt.



This calamity so discouraged the *Romans*, that they resolved again to forsake the Seas, and trust only to the service of their Legions upon firm ground. But such a resolution cannot long hold. Either they must be strong at sea, or else they must not make war in an Island, against those that have a mightier fleet. Yet are they to be excused, in regard of the many great calamities which they had suffered through their want of skill. Here I cannot forbear to commend the patient virtue of the *Spaniards*. We seldom or never find, that any Nation hath endured so many misadventures and miseries, as the *Spaniards* have done, in their *Indian Discoveries*. Yet persisting in their enterprises with an invincible constancy, they have annexed to their Kingdom so many goodly Provinces, as bury the remembrance of all dangers past. Tempests and shipwracks, famine, overthrows, mutinies, heat & cold, pestilence, and all manner of diseases both old and new, together with extreme poverty and want of all things needfull, have been the enemies' wherewith every one of their most noble discoverers, at one time or other, hath encountered. Many years have passed over some of their heads in the search of not so many leagues; yea more than one or two have spent their labour, their wealth and their lives, in search of a golden kingdom, without getting further notice of it, than what they had at their first setting forth. All which notwithstanding, the third, fourth, and fifth undertakers, have not been disheartened. Surely, they are worthily rewarded with those Treasures and Paradises which they enjoy; and well they deserve to hold them quietly, if they hinder not the like virtue in others, which (perhaps) will not be found.

## s. XI.

*The City of Eryx is surpris'd by the Romans, & recovered by Amilcar, who stoutly holds war with them five years. The Romans, having emptied their common treasury, build a new fleet at the charges of private men. The great victory at Sea of Lucatius the Consul; whereby the Carthaginians are forced to crave peace. The conditions of the peace between Rome and Carthage.*

**T**HE *Romans* were carefull to supply with all industry, by land, the want of strength at sea. Therefore they continue the siege of *Lilybæum*, and seek to make sure to themselves all places, whither the enemies ships could not bring relief. The Consul *Junius*, to cure the wound of dishonour, which he had received, bethought him what enterprises to undertake. In the end he resolved to attempt the Mountain and City of *Eryx*, with the Temple of *Venus Erycina*: which was the fairest and richest of all the Island; and of these, by cunning or reason, he got possession. *Eryx* was commodiously seated between *Drepanum* and *Panormus*; so that it seemed a fit place for a Garrison, that should restrain the *Carthaginians* from making roads into the country. Wherefore *Junius* fortified both the top of the Mountain, and the first entrance of the passage from the bottom, (both of which places were very defensible) with a good strength of men. But shortly after, in the eighteenth year of this war, the *Carthaginians* set forth *Amilcar*, surnamed *Barcas*, Father of the great *Hannibal*, with a fleet and Army, who sailing to the coasts of *Italy*, did thoroughly repay the spoiles which the *Romans* made in *Africa*. For he first of all wasted and destroyed the Territories of the *Locrians*, and of the *Brutians*, that were dependants of *Rome*. Then entered he into *Sicily*, and finding there no walled City in the *Carthaginians* power, that served fitly to infect the *Romans*, he occupied a piece of ground of great advantage, and lodged his Army thereon; to conform as well the *Romans*, that were in *Panormus*, as those that kept about *Eryx*, putting himself between both Armies with admirable resolution.

The place that *Amilcar* had seized upon, was not only very strong by situation, but had the command of a Port: whereby it gave him opportunity to scour all the coast of *Italy* with his fleet, wasting all along as far as *Cuma*. In the Isle of *Sicily* he held the *Romans* to hard work: lying near unto *Panormus*, where in three years abode he did many notable acts, though not of much consequence, for that the enemy could never be drawn to hazard the main chance. Having wearied himself and the *Romans* long enough about *Panormus*, he undertook a strange piece of work at *Eryx*. The *Roman* Garrisons, placed there by *Junius*, on the top, and at the bottom of the Mountain,

were very strongly lodged. Nevertheless *Amilcar* found a way, lying towards the Sea-side, by which he conveyed his men into the City of *Eryx*, that was about the midst of the ascent, ere the enemy knew of it. By this it came to passe, that the *Romans* which kept the top of the mountain, were straightly held (as it were) besieged. And no less was *Amilcar* himself restrained, by both of these Garrisons, and such as came to relieve them. There he found them pastime about two years more; hoping still to weary out those that lay over his head, as they on the contrary did their best, to thrust him out of those quarters.

At this time, all the care, both of the *Romans* and of the *Carthaginians*, was bent unto the prosecuting of this business at *Eryx*. Wherein it seems true (as *Hannibal*, in *Livy*, Liv. Dec. 3. l. 10. spake unto *Scipio*) that the affairs of *Carthage* never stood in better terms, since the beginning of the war, than now they did. For whereas the *Romans* had utterly forsaken the Seas, partly by reason of their great losses, partly upon confidence of their land-forces, which they held resolute; *Amilcar*, with a small Army, had so well acquitted himself, to the honour of his country, that by the tryall of five years war, the *Carthaginian* Soldier was judged equal, if not superior to the *Roman*. Finally, when all, that might be, had been devised and done, for the dislodging of this obstinate Warriour: no way seemed better to the Senate of *Rome*, than once again to build a fleet, whereby, if the mastery of the Sea could once be gotten, it was likely that *Amilcar*, for lack of supply, should not long be able to hold out. But in performing this, extreme difficulty was found. The common treasury was exhausted: and the cost was not little, that was requisite unto such an enterprise. Wherefore there was none other way left, than to lay the burden upon private purses. Divers of the principall Citizens undertook to build (each at his own charges) one *Quinquereme*, which example wrought so well, that they, whose ability would not serve to doe the like, joyed with some others, and laying their money together, concurred two or three of them, in building of another; with condition to be repayed, when the war was finished. By this voluntary contribution, they made and finished two hundred new *Quinqueremes*, taking for their pattern, that excellent swift rowing Gally which they had gotten from the *Æthiopian*, in the Port of *Lilybæum*, as was shewed before. The charge of this fleet was committed to *C. Lucatius Catulus*; who past with the same into *Sicily* the Spring following, and entered the Port of *Drepanum*, endeavouring by all means to have forced the City. But being advertised that the *Carthaginian* fleet was at hand, and being mindfull of the late losses which his Predecessors had received, he was carefull to put himself in order, against their arrival.

*Hanno* was Admiral of the *Carthaginian* fleet, a man (as his actions declare him) wise in picture, exceedingly formall, and skilfull in the art of seeming reverend. How his reputation was first bred, I do not find; but it was upheld by a famous contradiction, of things undertaken by men more worthy than himself. This quality procured unto him (as it hath done to many others) both good liking among the ancient sort, whose cold temper is adverse from new enterprises, and therewithall an opinion of great force, confirmed by every loss received. More particularly, he was gracious among the people, for that he was one of the most grievous oppressors of their subject Provinces; whereby he procured unto the *Carthaginians* much wealth, but therewithall such hatred, as turned it all to their great loss. He had ere this being employed against the *Naxians* and wild *Africans*, that were more like to *Rovers* than to Soldiers, in making War: Of those fugitive Nations he learned to neglect more manly enemies, to his own great dishonour, and to the great hurt of *Carthage*; which lost not more by his bad conduct, than by his malicious counsel, when, having shewed himself an unworthy Captain, he betook himself to the long Robe: Yet is he much commended in *Roman* Histories, as a temperate man, and one that studied how to preserve the League between *Carthage* and *Rome*. In which regard, how well he deserved of his own Country, it will appear hereafter: how beneficial he was to the *Romans*, it will appear, both hereafter, and in his present voyage; wherein he reduced the *Carthaginians* to a miserable necessity of accepting, upon hard conditions, that peace which he thenceforth commended.

*Hanno* had very well furnished his Navie, with all needfull provisions for the Soldiers at *Eryx*: (for dexterity in making preparation was the best of his qualities) but he

had neither been carefull in training his Mariners, to the practice of Sea-fight, nor in manning his Gallies with stout fellows. He thought, that the fame of a *Carthaginian* fleet was enough, to make the unexpt *Romans* give way: forgetting, that rather the resistance force of tempests, than any other strength of opposition, had made them to forsake the sea. Yet in one thing he had either conceived aright, or else was sent forth well instructed. It was his purpose, first of all to sail to *Eryx*, and there to discharge his ships of their lading: and having thus lightened himself, he meant to take aboard some part of the Land-army, together with *Amilcar* himself, by whose help he doubted not, but that he should be able to make his enemy repent of his new adventure to Sea. This was a good course, if it could have been performed. But *Catulus* used all possible diligence, to prevent the execution of this design: not because he was informed of the enemies purpose, but that he knew it to be the best for them, & for that he feared no danger so greatly, as to encounter with *Amilcar*. Wherefore although the weather was very rough, and the seas went high, when the *Carthaginian* fleet was discried; yet he rather chose to fight with the enemy, that had the wind of him, than to suffer his convoy to passe along to *Eryx*, upon unlikely hope of better opportunity in the future. All that *Hanno* should have done, *Catulus* had performed. He had carefully exercised his men in Rowing; he had lightened his Gallies of all unnecessary burthens; and he had taken aboard the choyce men of the *Roman* Land-souldiers. The *Carthaginians* therefore, at the first encounter were utterly broken and defeated, having fifty of their Gallies stemmed and sunk, and seventy taken, wherein were few less than ten thousand men, that were all made prisoners: the rest, by a sudden change of wind, escaping to the Ile of *Hieronefus*.

The state of *Carthage*, utterly discouraged by this change of fortune, knew not whereon to resolve. Means to repair their fleet in any time there were none left; their best men of war by Sea were consumed; and *Amilcar*, upon whose valour and judgement the honour and safety of the Common-weal rested, was now surrounded by his enemies in *Sicily*, where he could not be relieved. In this extremity, they make dispatch unto *Amilcar* himself, and authorized him to take what course should seem best unto his excellent wisdom, leaving all conclusions to his election and sole counsaile.

*Amilcar*, whom no adversity, accompanied with the least hope or possibility of recovery, had ever vanquished, looking over every promise, true or false, that the present time could make him, (for to attend anything from the future he was not able) resolved to make trial, whether his necessity might be compounded upon any reasonable termes. He therefore sent to *Lustatius* the Consull an overture of peace: who considering it well, gathered so many arguments from the present poverty of the *Roman* State, wasted beyond expectation in the former war, that he formerly hearkened unto it. So, in conclusion, an accord was made, but with provision, That it should hold none otherwise, than if the Senate and People of *Rome* would ratifie it with their allowance.

The conditions were: First, that the *Carthaginians* should clearly abandon the Ile of *Sicily*. Secondly, that they should never undertake upon *Hieron* King of *Syracuse*, nor invade any part of his Territories, nor the Territories of any of his Friends and Allies. Thirdly, that they should set at liberty, and send back into *Italy*, all the *Romans*, whom they held prisoners, without ransom. Lastly, that they should pay unto the *Romans* two thousand and two hundred talents; which make, as the *French* reckon the talent, thirteen hundred and twenty thousand crowns: the same to be delivered within twenty years next following.

These Articles were sent to *Rome*, where they were not thoroughly approved: but ten Commissioners were sent unto *Sicily*, to make perfect the agreement. These Commissioners added a thousand talents to the former sum, and required a shorter time of payment. Further also they took order, that the *Carthaginians* should not only depart out of *Sicily* itself, but should also withdraw their Companies out of all other Islands between it and *Italy*, renouncing their whole interest therein.

Such was the end of the first *Punic* Warre, that had lasted about twenty four years without intermission; in which time the *Romans* had lost, by fight or shipwrack, about seven hundred *Quinquaginta*; & the *Carthaginians* about five hundred: the greatness of which losses, doth serve to prove the greatness both of these two Cities, and of

of the War it self; wherein I hold good the judgement of *Polybins*, That the *Romans*, ingenerall, did shew themselves the braver Nation; and *Amilcar*, the most worthy Captain.

## CHAP. II.

## Of divers actions passing between the first and second Punic Warres.

## §. I.

Of the cruell Warre begun between the *Carthaginians* and their owne Mercenaries.

He *Romans* having partly by force, and partly by composition, thrust the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicily*, & all the little Islands thereunto adjacent, gave them rather means and leisure to help themselves in a following war, than cause to hold themselves contented with the present peace. It is an ancient and true rule, *Quod leges à victoribus dicuntur, accipiuntur à victis*; That lawes are given by the Conquerors, and received of the conquered. But the *Romans* had either forgotten the answer that was made unto them, by one of the *Privernates*; or else had forgotten to follow it in this weighty business. For when one of *Privernum*, after a rebellion, defending in the Senate the cause of his City, was demanded by a Senator, What peace the *Romans* might hope for, or assure themselves of, if they quitted their present advantage over them; he answered in these words, *Si bonam dederitis, & fidem & perpetuam, si malam, haud durturam*. If the peace be good and faithful, that you give us, it will be perpetuall; if it be ill, then of little continuance. To this answer the Senate, at that time, gave such approbation, that it was said, *Viri & liberi vocem audiamus, an credi possent, nullum potestum; aut hominem denique, in ea conditione, cuius cum peniteat, durtius quam necesse sit, infirmum*; & that it was the speech of a manly, and free man; for who could beleieve that any people, or indeed any one man, would continue longer in an over-burdened estate, than meer necessity did enforce. Now, if the *Romans* themselves could make this judgement of those Nations, who had little else besides their manly resolutions, to defend their liberty; surely, they grossly flattered themselves, in presuming that the *Carthaginians*, who neither in power nor in pride, were any way inferior unto themselves, would sit down any longer by the losse and dishonour received, than until they could recover their legs, and the strength which had a while failed them, to take revenge. But occasion, by whom (while well entertained) not only private men, but Kings and publick States, have more prevailed, than by any proper prowess or vertue, with-held the scruple from the *Romans* for a time, and turned it most fearfully upon *Africa*, and the *Carthaginians* themselves.

For after the first *Punic* war was ended, *Amilcar*, leaving *Eryx*, went to *Lilybaeum*, from whence: most conveniently the Army might be transported into *Africa*: the care of which business he committed unto *Gisco*, to whom as to a man of approved sufficiency, he delivered over his charge. *Gisco* had an especiall consideration of the great sum, wherein *Carthage* was indebted unto these Mercenaries; and withally, of the great disability to make payment. Therefore he thought it the wisest way, to send them over (as it were) by handfulls a few at a time; that so the first might have their dispatch, and be gone, ere the second or third Companies arrived. Herein he dealt providently. For it had not been hard to perswade any small number, lodged within so great a City as *Carthage*, unto some such reasonable composition, as the present emptiness of the common Treasury did require: so that the first might have been friendly discharged, and a good president left unto the second and third, whilst their disjunction had made them

them unable to recover their whole due by force. But the *Carthaginians* were of a contrary opinion. They thought to find, in the whole Army, some that would be contented to gratifie the Publique State, by remitting a great part of their owne due: and hoped, by such an example, to draw all the multitude to the like agreement and capitulation. So they detained the first and second commers, telling them, that they would make an even reckoning with all together. Thus every day the number increased, and many disorders (a thing incident among Souldiers) were committed; which much disquieted the City, not accustomed unto the like. In this regard it was thought fit, to remove them all to some other place, where they might be less troublesome. This must be done by some colourable words of perswasion: for their number was already too great, so that it was not safe to offend them too far. Wherefore it is devised, that they should all attend the comming of their fellowes, at *Sicca*: receiving every one a piece of gold, to bear his charges in the mean while.

This motion is accepted, and the Souldiers began to dislodge; leaving behind them their wives, their children, and all their baggage, as meaning shortly to fetch away all, when they came back for their pay. But the *Carthaginians* have no fancy to their returning into the Town; and therefore compell them to trust up their fardels, that they might have none occasion left to make any errands thither. So to *Sicca* they removed, with all their goods, and there lay waiting for newes of their fellowes arrivall, and their own pay. But first they had none to do, and therefore might easily be drawn to mutiny: the whole argument of their discourse inclining them to nothing else. Their daily talk was, how rich they should be, when all their money came in; how much would fall to every single there: and for how long time the City was behind hand with them in reckoning. They were all grown Arithmeticians; and he was thought a man of worth, that could find most reason to increase their demands, to the very highest, even beyond their due. No part of their long service was forgotten; but the comfortable words and promises of their Captains, leading them forth to any dangerous fight, were called to mind, and so many obligations, not to be cancelled, without satisfying their expectation by some unordinary largesse.

Thus the time passeth away, untill the whole army being arrived, and lodged in *Sicca*, *Hanno* comes thither to clear the accompt. Now is the day come, wherein they shall all be made rich; especially if they can hold together, in maintaining stoutly the common cause. So think they all; and assemble themselves to hear what good newes this messenger had brought: with a full resolution to help his memory, in case he should happen to forget any part of the many promises made to them; all which were to be considered in their Donative. *Hanno* begins a very formal Oration; wherein he bewails the poverty of *Carthage*; tells them how great a sum of money is to be paid unto the *Romans*; reckons up the excessive charges wherewith the Common-wealth had been in the late war; and finally desires them to hold themselves contented with part of their pay; and out of the love which they bare unto the City, to remit the rest. Few of them understood his discourse: for the *Carthaginian* Army was composed of sundry Nations, as *Greeks*; *Africans*; *Gauls*; *Ligurians*; *Spaniards*; and others; all of different languages. Yet they staid upon him; and were (as I think) little pleased with his very gesture. But when such as conceived the whole tenor of his speech, had informed the rest what cold comfort he brought; they were all enraged, and fared like mad-men, so that nothing would serve to appease them.

*Hanno* would fain have allswaged their fury, but he knew not how: for he less understood their dissonant loud noises, than they did his Oration. An Army collected out of so many Countries, that have no one language common to all, or to the greater part of them, is neither easily stirred up to mutiny, nor easily pacified, when once it is broken into outrage. The best that *Hanno* can do, is to use the help of Interpreters and Messengers. But these Interpreters mistake his meaning; some for want of skill, others of set purpose; and such as deliver his errands in the worst sense, are best believed. Finally, they think themselves much abused by the *Carthaginians*, and resolve to demand their own in peremptory terms, at a nearer distance. In this mood they leave *Sicca*, and march as far as *Tunis*, that is within a very little of *Carthage*, and there they incampe.

Now begin the *Carthaginians* to find their own error. It is a good rule,

*Curandum*

*Curandum imprimis, ne magna injuria fiat  
Fortibus & miseris.*

Have speciall care, that valiant poverty  
Be not oppressed with too great injury.

But this proud City, having neglected the rule, hath also been careless in providing to secure her self against the inconvenience that might follow. She had suffered the whole multitude, whereunto she was like to give cause of discontent, to joyne it self into one body, when the severall troupes might easily have been dispersed: she hath turned out of her gates the wives, children, and goods of these poor men, which had she retained in shew of kindness, she might have used them as Hostages for her own safety; and by employing a miserable penni-father, in her negotiation with men of War, she hath weakened the reputation of her bravest Captains, that might best have served to free her from the threatening danger. Yet likely it is, that *Amilcar* had no desire to be used as an instrument in defrauding his own Souldiers of their wages: especially considering, that as he best could bear witness of their merits, so was he not ignorant, that means to content them were not wanting, if the Citizens had been willing thereunto. Hereunto may be added a probable conjecture, that *Hanno*, with his complices, who at this very time was a bitter enemy to *Amilcar*, had the boldness to impose the blame of his own wretched counsell, upon the liberrall promises made by the Captains. *Amilcar* therefore did wisely, in suffering those that malign'd him, to have the managing of their own plot, and to deal the cards which themselves had shuffled. This they continue to do as foolishly as they had at first begun. They furnish a market at *Tunis* for the Souldiers, whom they suffer to buy what they list, and at what price they list. They send ever and anon some of their Senators into the Campe; who promise to satisfie all demands, as far forth as it should be possible. And thus by shifting from one extreme to another, they make the Souldiers understand, into what fear the City was driven; which cannot choose but add much insolency to the passions already stirred up.

This sudden change of weather, & the true cause of it, is quickly found by the Army, which thereupon grows wile, and finding the season fit, laboursto make a great harvest. Money must be had, and without any abatement. This is granted. Many have lost their horses in publike service of the State. The State shall pay for them. They had lived some years, by making hard shift, without receiving their allowance of victuals from *Carthage*. If they had lived, they wanted not meat; therefore what was this to the *Carthaginians*? Was it not all one, whether the ships did bring in provision, or their Captain direct them where to fetch it? But this would not serve. They said that they had been sometimes driven to buy; and that (since they could not remember how much, or at what rate they bought) they would be paid for their provision during the whole time, and according to the dearest price that wheat had borne, whilst the War lasted. Such are now the demands of these Mutiners; who might easily have been satisfied with far less charges, and far more honour, by receiving their due at the first. But now they make no end of craving. For whilst the *Carthaginians* are perplexed, about this Corn-money, the Souldiers have devised many more tricks, whereby to extort a greater sum of money, without all regard of shame. Since therefore no good end could be found of these controversies which daily did multiply, it was thought convenient, that one of the *Carthaginians*, which had commanded in *Sicily*, should be chosen by the Souldiers, to reconcile all differences. Hereunto the Army consented, and made choise of *Gisco*: partly out of good liking to him, who had shewed himself at all times a friendly man to them, and careful of their good, especially when they were to be transported into *Africa*: partly out of a dislike which they had conceived of *Amilcar*; for that he had not visited them in all this busie time. So *Gisco* comes among them; and to please them the better, comes not without money: which might give better countenance to his proceedings, than barren eloquence had done to the negotiation of *Hanno*. He calls unto him first of all the Captains, and then the severall Nations apart; rebuking them gently for that which had passed; advising them temperately concerning the present; and exhorting them to continue their love unto the State, which had long entertained

red them, and would needs alwaies be mindfull of their good services. After this he began to put had to his purse, offering to give them their whole pay in hand; and then after to consider of other reckonings at a more convenient time. This had been well accepted, and might have served to bring all to a quiet pass, if two seditious ring-leaders of the multitude had not stood against it.

There was in the Camp one *Spendius*, a sturdy fellow, and audacious, but a slave; that in the late war had fled from a *Roman*, whom he served, and therefore stood in fear, lest he should be delivered back to his Master; at whose hands he could expect no less, than to be whipt and crucified. This wretch could find no better way to prolong his own life, than by raising such troubles as might serve to withdraw men from care of private matters, and make his own restitution impossible, were his Master never so importunate. With *Spendius* there associated himself one *Matho*, an hot-headed man, that had been so forward in stirring up the tumult, as he could not chooseth but fear, lest his own death should be made an example, to deterre others from the like seditious behaviour. This *Matho* deals with his Countermen the *Africans*; telling them, that they were in far worse condition, than either the *Gauls*, the *Greeks*, the *Spaniards*, or any forreign mercenaries. For (saith he) *These our companions have no more to do, than to receive their wages, and so get them gone: but we that are to stay behinde in Africa, shall be called to another manner of accompt, when we are left alone; so that we shall have cause to wish that we had returned home beggers, rather then laden with the money, which (as it is though it be) shall break our backs. Ye are not ignorant, how tyrannically those our haughty masters of Carthage doe reign over us. They think it reasonable, that our lives and goods should be as their disposition; which they have at other times been accustomed to take from us even without apparent cause; as it were to declare their sovereignty: what will they now doe, seeing that we have demeaned our selves as freemen, and been bold to set a good face on the matter, demanding our own, as others have done? Ye all do know, that it were a very shame for us, if having been as forward in every danger of war, as any other men, we should now stand quaking like slaves, and not dare to open our mouths, when others take liberty to require their due. This notwithstanding, ye may assure your selves, that we are like to be taught better manners, as soon as our fellows are gone: in regard of whom they are content to shadow their indignation with a good, but a forced countenance. Let us therefore be wise, and consider that they hate and fear us: their hatred will shew it self when their fear is once past: unlesse we now take our time, and whilst we are the stronger, enfeeble them so greatly, that their hatred shall not be able to do us wrong. All their strength consisteth in money, wherewithall they have hired others against us, and us against others. At the present they have neither money nor friends. The best army that ever served them, whercof we are no small part, lies at their gates, ready to help us if we be men. A better opportunity cannot be expected: for were our swords once drawn, all Africk would rise on our side. As for the Carthaginians, whither can they send for help? The case it self is plain. But we must quickly resolve. Either we must prevent the diligence of *Gisco*, by incensing those *Gauls* and *Spaniards*, and procuring them to draw blood; or else it behoveth us to please our good Masters, by joyning with them against our fellows, yea by offering to forgive unto them all our wages, if so (per adventure) they may be won to forgive us, or not over cruelly to punish our faults committed. He is most worthy a wretched slave, that neither hath care to win his Masters love, nor the courage to attempt his own liberty.*

By such persuasions *Matho* wins the *African* Souldiers to his own purpose. They are not now so greedy of money, as of quarrell; which he that seeketh will not misse to find. When *Gisco* therefore offered to pay them their whole stipend presently, but referred their other demands, for horses and victuals, to some other more convenient time; they break into great outrage, and say, that they will have all, even all at once and that out of hand. In this tumult, the whole Army flock together about *Matho* and *Spendius*; whose diligence is not wanting to add more fuell to the fire already blazing. *Matho* and *Spendius* are the only men to whom the Souldiers will hearken: if any other stand up to make a speech, a shower of stones, flying about his ears, puts him to silence, that he shall never afterwards speak word more. Neither stay they to consider what it is that any man would say: enough hath been said already by those good spokesmen, so that no other word (though perhaps to the same purpose) can be heard, save only *Thun, throw.*

Now

Now the rebellion begins to take forme. *Matho* and *Spendius* are chosen Captains; who, followed by a desperate crew of *Russians*, will suffer no man to make his own peace, but pursue their own ends, under fair pretence of the common cause. All which notwithstanding, *Gisco* is not wanting to the good of his Country, but adventures himself upon their fury. One while he deals with the Captains, and other principall men; taking them by the hand, and giving gentle words: another while he works with the severall Nations; putting them all in hope of their own hearts desire, if any reason would content them. None of them are so fullen as the *Africans*: indeed none of them had so good cause. They require him peremptorily to give them their own, and not to feed them with words. The truth is, that they are not so covetous as they seem: but will be more glad of an ill answer, than of a good payment. This is more than *Gisco* knows: he sees not that *Matho* hath any more than bare words to bestow upon them. Wherefore, as rebuking their inconsiderate heat, he tels them, That they may do well, if they stand in want of money, to seek it of their Captain *Matho*. This is enough. Shall he both defraud them and deride them? They stay no longer, but lay violent hands upon the treasure that he had brought; yea upon him also, and all that are with him: as intending to take this in part of payment, and for the rest, to take another course. *Matho* and *Spendius* are glad of this. It had little pleased them to see their fellows begin to grow calme, by his fair language: wherefore they cast into bonds both him, and all the *Carthaginians* that they can find; that so the Army may be freed from danger of good admonition, which they call Treason. After this follows open war. *Matho* solicites all *Africk*, and his Embassadors are every where well entertained. Neither is it needfull to us persuasion: the very fame of this rebellion sufficeth to draw the whole country into it. Now insult the *Carthaginians* be plagued for those oppressions, with which they have plagued others. It is true that adversity hath never been untold of her errors: and as she is ever assured to hear her own, so commonly with her own she undergoes those of other men. The *Africans* finding the *Carthaginians* hang under the wheele, tell them boldly, that their Impositions were mercilesse; that they took from them the one half of their corn; that they doubled their tributes in all things else; and that they inflicted upon their vassals the greatest punishment for the least offences. These cruelties the *Carthaginians* themselves have forgotten: but the people, that have suffered so much, retain all in perfect memory. Wherefore not only such as can bear Arms are ready to doe service in this great commotion, but the very women bring forth their Jewels, and other ornaments, offering all to sale for the maintenance of so just a quarrell. By this great forwardnesse, and liberrall contribution, *Matho* and *Spendius* are supplied with a strong aid of threecore and ten thousand *Africans*: and are moreover furnished with money, not only to satise the present appetite of their men; but sufficient to continue the war begun, though it should be of long endurance.

## §. II.

*Divers observations upon this war with the Mercenaries.*

## † I.

*Of Tyranny, and how Tyrants are faine to use the help of Mercenaries.*

Here let us rest a while, as in a convenient place, whence we may take a prospect of the subject, over which we travell. Behold a tyrannicall City, persecuted by her own Mercenaries with a deadly war. It is a common thing, as being almost necessary, that a tyranny should be upheld by Mercenarie forces: it is common that Mercenaries should be false: and it is common that all war made against Tyrants, should be exceeding full of hate and cruelty. Yet we seldome hear, that ever the ruine of a tyranny is procured or fought by those that were hired to maintain the power of it: and seldome or never do we read of any war that hath been prosecuted with such inexorable hatred, as this that is now in hand.

That which we properly call tyranny, is, *A violent form of government, not respecting the good of the subject, but only the pleasure of the Commander.* I purposely forbear to say, that it is the unjust rule of one over many: for very truly doth *Cleon* in *Thucydides* tell the

the *Athenians*, that their dominion over their Subjects, was none other, than a meer Tyranny; though it were so; that they themselves were a great City, and a popular State. Neither is it peradventure greatly needfull, that I should call this form of commanding, *violent*: since it may well and easily be conceived, that no man willingly performs obedience to one regardless of his life and welfare; unless himself be either a mad man, or (which is little better) wholly possessed with some extreme passion of love. The practice of tyranny, is not always of a like extremity: for some Lords are more gentle towards others, though it be but for his own advantage. Nevertheless, in large Dominions, wherein the Rulers discretion cannot extend it self unto notice of the difference which might be found between the worth of severall men, it is commonly seen, that the taste of sweetnes, drawn out of oppression, hath so good a relish, as continually inflames the Tyrants appetite, and will not suffer it to be restrained with any limits of respect. Why should he seek out bounds to prescribe unto his desires, who cannot endure the face of one so honest, as may put him in remembrance of any moderation? Is much that he hath gotten by extorting from some few: by sparing none, he should have riches in goodly abundance. He hath taken a great deal from every one: but every one could have spared more. He hath wrung all their purses, & now he hath enough; but (as Covetousness is never satisfied) he thinks that all this is too little for a stock, though it were indeed a good yearly Income. Therefore he deviseth new tricks of robbery, and is not better pleased with the gains, than with the Art of getting. He is hated for this, & he knows it well: but he thinks by cruelty to change hatred into fear. So he makes his exercise, to torment and murder all whom he suspecteth in which course, if he suspect none unjustly, he may be said to deal craftily; but if Innocency be not safe, how can all this make any conspirator to stand in fear, since the Traitor is no worse rewarded, than the quiet man? Wherefore he can think upon none other security, than to disarm all his Subjects; to fortifie himself within some strong place; and, for defence of his Person and State, to hire as many lusty Souldiers as shall be thought sufficient. These must not be of his own Country: for if not every one, yet some, one or other may chance to have a feeling of the publick misery. This considered, he allures unto him a desperate rabble of strangers, the most dishonest that can be found; such as have neither wealth nor credit at home, and will therefore be careful to support him, by whose only favour they are maintained. Now left any of these, either by detestation of his wickedness, or (which in wicked men is most likely) by promise of greater reward than he doth give, should be drawn to turn his sword against the Tyrant himself: they shall all be permitted to do as he doth; to rob, to ravish, to murder, and to satisfy their own appetites, in most outrageous manner: being thought so much the more assured to their Master, by how much the more he sees them grow hateful to all men else. Considering in what age, and in what language I write, I must be faine to say, that these are not dreams: though some *Englishman* perhaps that were unacquainted with History, lighting upon this leaf, might suppose this discourse to be but little better. This is to shew, both how tyranny grows to stand in need of mercenary Souldiers, and how those mercenaries are, by mutual obligation, firmly assured unto the Tyrant.

† II.

*That the Tyranny of a City over her Subjects is worse, than the tyranny of one man: and that a tyrannicall City must likewise use mercenary Souldiers.*

**N**OW concerning the tyranny wherewith a City or State oppresseth her Subjects; it may appear some waies to be more moderate, than that of one man: but in many things it is more intolerable. A City is jealous of her Dominions; but not (as is one man) fearful of her life: the less need hath she therefore to secure her self by cruelty. A City is not luxurious in consuming her treasures, and therefore needs the less to pluck from her Subjects. If war, or any other great occasion, drive her to necessity of taking from her Subjects more than ordinary summes of money; the same necessity makes either the contribution easie, or the taking excusable. Indeed no wrongs are so grievous & hateful, as those that are insolent. Remember (saith *Caligula* the Emperor,

to his Grand-mother *Antonia* that I may doe what I list, and to whom I list: these words were accounted horrible, though he did her no harm. And *Juvenal* reckons it, as the compellment of all torments, inflicted by a cruel *Roman* Dame upon her slaves, that whilst she was whipping them, she painted her face, talked with her Gossips, and used all signs of neglecting what those wretches felt. Now seeing that the greatest grievances wherewith a domineering State offendeth her Subjects, are free from all sense of indignity: likely it is, that they will not extremely hate her, although desire of liberty make them weary of her Empire. In these respects it is not needfull, that she should keep a Guard of licentious cut-throats, and maintain them in all villany, as a *Dionysius* or *Agathocles* must do: her own Citizens are able to terrifie, and to hold in perfect obedience, all male-contents. These things, considered alone by themselves, may serve to prove, That a City is scarce able to deserve the name of a Tyrannesse, in the proper signification.

All this notwithstanding, it shall appear, that the miseries, wherewith a Tyrant loadeth his people, are not so heavy, as the burdens imposed by a cruell City. Not without some appearance of truth, it may be said, that Lust, and many other private passions, are no way incident to a City or Corporation. But to make this good, we shall have need to use the help of such distinctions, as the Argument in hand doth not require. Was not *Rome* lascivious, when *Cato* was faine to rise and leave the Theater, to the end, that the reverend regard of his gravity might not hinder the people, from calling for a shew of naked Courtisans, that were to be brought upon the open stage? By common practice, and generall approved custome, we are to censure the quality of a whole State; not by the private vertue or vice of any one man, nor by metaphysicall abstraction of the universall from the singular; or of the Corporation, from those of whom it is compounded. I say therefore, (as I have said elsewhere) That it were better to live under one pernicious Tyrant, than under many thousands. The reasons proving this, are too many to set down, but few may suffice. The desires of one man, how inordinate soever, if they cannot be satisfied, yet they may be wearied; he is not able to search all corners; his humour may be found, and soothed; age or good advice, yea, or some unexpected accident may reform him; all which failing, yet is there hope, that his successour may prove better.

Many Tyrants have been changed into worthy Kings: and many have ill used their ill-gotten Dominion, which, becoming hereditary to their posterity, hath grown into the most excellent form of Government, even a lawfull Monarchy. But they that live under a tyrannicall City, have no such hope: their Mistress is immortal, and will not slacken the reins, untill they be pulled out of her hands, and her own mouth receive the bridle of a more mightier Chariotter. This is wofull: yet their present sufferings make them lesse mindfull of the future. New flies, and hungry ones, fall upon the same sore, out of which others had already sucked their fill. A new Governour comes yearly among them, attended by all his poor kindred and friends, who mean not to return home empty to their hives, without a good lading of wax and honey. These sit into all quarters, and are quickly acquainted with every mans wealth, or whatsoever else, in all the Province, is worthy to be desired. They know all a mans enemies, and all his fears: becoming themselves, within a little space, the enemies that he feareth most. To grow into acquaintance with these masterfull guests, in hope to win their friendship, were an endless labour, (yet it must be undergone) and such as every one hath not means to go about: but were this effected, what availeth it? The love of one Governour is purchased with gifts: the Successour of this man, he is more loving than could be wished in respect of a fair Wife or Daughter: then comes the third, perhaps of the contrary faction at home, a bitter enemy to both his fore-goers, who seeks the ruine of all that have been inward with them. So the miseries of this tyranny are not simple, but interlaced (as it were) with the calamities of civil war. The *Romans* had a Law *De Repetundis*, or, *Of Recovery*, against extorting Magistrates: yet we finde, that it served not wholly to restrain their provinciall Governours; who presuming on the favour of their own Citizens, and of their kindred and friends at home, were bold in their Provinces, to work all these enormities rehearsed; though somewhat the more sparingly, for fear of judgement. If the Subjects of *Rome* groaned under such oppressions, what must we think of those that were Vassals unto *Carthage*? The *Romans* imposed no burthen some tributes,

tributes; they loved not to hear, that their Empire was grievous; they condemned many noble Citizens for having been ill Governours. At Carthage all went quite contrary: the rapines newly divided by one Magistrate, served as presidents to instruct another; every man resolved to doe the like, when it should fall to his turne; and he was held a notable Statesman, whose robberies had been such, as might afford a good share to the common treasure. Particular examples of this Carthaginian practice are not wanting: the government of *Verres* the Roman in Sicily, that is lively set out by *Tullie*, may serve to inform us, what was the demeanour of these *Punick* Rulers, who stood in fear of no such condemnation, as *Verres* underwent. By prosecuting this discourse, I might infer a more generall proposition; That a City cannot govern her subject Provinces so mildly as a King: but it is enough to have shewed, That the tyranny of a City is far more intolerable, than that of any one most wicked man.

Sutable to the cruelty of such Lords, is the hatred of their subjects: and again, sutable to the hatred of the subjects, is the jealousy of their Lords. Hence it followed, that, in wars abroad, the Carthaginians durst use the service of African souldiers; in Africa itself they had rather be beholding to others, than were farther fetcht. For the same purpose did *Hannibal*, in the second *Punick* war, shift his Mercenaries out of their own countries; *Pi. Afric* in Hispania, Hispani in Africa, *melior procul ab domo futurus: uterq; miles, velut mutui pignoris obligati stipendia facerent*; that the Africans might serve in Spain, the Spaniards in Africa, being each of them like to prove the better Souldiers, the farther they were from home, as if they were obliged by mutuall pledges. It is disputable, I confesse, whether these African and Spanish hirelings, could properly be termed Mercenarii: for they were subject unto Carthage, & carried into the field, not only by reward, but by duty. Yet seeing their duty was no better than enforced, and that it was not any love to the State, but meer desire of gain, that made them fight; I will not nicely stand upon propriety of a word, but hold them, as *Polybius* also doth, no better than Mercenaries.

### †. III.

*The dangers growing from the use of mercenary Souldiers, and forraign Auxiliaries.*

THE extreme danger, growing from the employment of such Souldiers, is well observed by *Machiavel*: who sheweth, that they are more terrible to those whom they serve, than to those against whom they serve. They are seditious, unfairfull, disobedient, devourers, and destroyers of all places and Countries, whereinto they are drawn, as being held by no other bond, than their own commodity. Yea, that which is most fearful among such hirelings, is, that they have often, and in time of greatest extremity, not only refused to fight, in their defence, who have entertained them, but revolted unto the contrary part; to the utter ruine of those Princes and States that have trusted to them. Those mercenaries (saith *Machiavel*) which filled all Italy when *Charles* the eighth of France did passe the *Alpes*, were the cause that the said French King won the Realm of Naples with his Buckler without a Sword. Notable was the example of *Sforza*, the Father of *Francis Sforza*, Duke of *Millan*, who being entertained by *Queen Joane* of Naples, abandoned her service on the sudden, and forced her to put her self into the hands of the King of *Aragon*. Like unto his father was *Francis Sforza*, the first of that race, Duke of *Millan*, who being entertained by the *Millanois*, forced them to become his slaves, even with the very same army which themselves had levied for their own defence. But *Lodowick Sforza*, the son of this *Francis*, by the just judgement of God, was made a memorable example unto posterity, in losing his whole estate by the treachery of such faithless Mercenaries, as his own father had been. For, having waged an army of *Switzers*, and committed his Duchy, together with his person, into their hands, he was by them delivered up unto his enemy the French King, by whom he was inclosed in the Castle of *Laches* unto his dying day.

The like inconvenience is found, in using the help of forraign Auxiliaries. We see, that when the Emperor of *Constantinople* had hired ten thousand *Turks* against his neighbour Princes; he could never, either by perswasion or force, set them again over the sea upon *Asia* side; which gave beginning to the Christian servitude, that soon after followed.

followed. *Alexander* the son of *Cassander*, sought aid of the great *Demetrius*: but *Demetrius*, being entred into his Kingdome, shue the same *Alexander*, who had invited him, and made himself King of *Macedon*. *Syracus* the *Turke* was called into Egypt by *Sultan* the *Saldan*, against his opposit: but this *Turke* did settle himself so surely in Egypt, that *Saladine* his successor became Lord thereof; and of all the holy Land, soon after. What need we look about for examples of this kind? Every Kingdome, in effect, gaineth thus. The Britains drew the Saxons into this our Country; & *Mac Murrough* drew the English into *Ireland*; but the one and the other soon became Lords of those two kingdomes.

Against all this may be alledged, the good successe of the united Provinces of the Netherlands, using none other than such kinde of Souldiers, in their late war. Indeed these Low-countries have many goodly & strong Cities, filled with Inhabitants that are wealthy, industrious, and valiant in their kind. They are stout Sea-men, and therein is their excellency; neither are they bad at the defence of a place well fortified: but in open field they have seldom been able to stand against the Spaniard. Necessity therefore compelled them to seek help abroad: and the like necessity made them forbear to arm any great numbers of their own. For, with money raised by their Trade, they maintained the War: and therefore could ill spare unto the Pike and Musket, those hands, that were of more use in helping to fill the common purse. Yet what of this? they sped well. Surely they sped as ill as might be, whilst they had none other than mercenary Souldiers. Many fruitless attempts, made by the Prince of Orange, can witness in; and that brave Commander Count *Lodowick of Nassau*, felt, to his grief, in his retreat from *Gravingham*, when, in the very instant that required their service in fight, his Mercenaries cried out aloud for money, and so ran away. This was not the only time, when the hired Souldiers of the States, have either sought to hide their cowardize under a shew of greediness, or at least, by meer covetousness, have ruined in one hour the labour of many moneths. I will not stand to prove this by many examples: for they themselves will not deny it. Neither would I touch the honour of *Monsieur* the Duke of *Anjou*, brother to the French King, save that it is folly to conceal what all the world knowes. He that would lay open the danger of forraign Auxiliaries, needeth no better pattern. It is commonly found, that such Aiders make themselves Lords over those, to whom they lend their succour: but where shall we meet with such another as this *Monsieur*, who, for his protection promised, being rewarded with the Lordship of the Country, made it his first work, to thrust by violence a galling yoke upon the peoples neck? Well, he lived to repent it, with grief enough. Even whilst he was counterfeiting unto those about him, that were ignorant of his plot, an imaginary sorrow for the poor Burghers of *Amsterpe*, as verily beleeving the Town to be surprised, and won; the death of the Count *S. Aignas*, who fell over the wall, and the Cannon of the City, discharged against his own troops, informed him better what had hapned; shewing, that they were his own French who stood in need of pity. Then was his feigned passion changed into a very bitter anguish of mind; wherein, twining his breast, and wringing his hands, he exclaimed, *Helas! mon dieu, que venez vous faire de moy? Alas, my God, what wilt thou doe with me?* So the affairs of the *Netherlands* will not serve to prove, that there is little danger in using Mercenary Souldiers, or the help of forraign Auxiliaries. This notwithstanding, they were obedient unto necessity, and sought help of the English, Scots, and French: wherein they did wisely, and prospered. For when there was in France a King, partaker with them in the same danger, when the Queen of England refused to accept the Sovereignty of their Country, which they offered, yet being provoked by the Spaniard their enemy, pursued him with continual war; when the heir of England reigned in Scotland, a King too just & wise (though not engaged in any quarrell) either to make profit of his neighbours miseries, or to help those that had attempted the conquest of his own inheritance: then might the Neighbourers very safely repose confidence in the forces of these their Neighbour Countries. The Souldiers that came unto them from hence, were (to omit any other commendations) not only regardfull of the pay that they should receive, but well affected unto the cause that they took in hand: or, if any were cold in his devotion unto the side whereon he fought, yet was he kept in order, by remembrance of his own home, where the English would have rewarded him with death, if that his faith had been corrupted by



by the *Spaniards*. They were therefore trusted with the custody of Cities; they were held as friends, and patrons; the necessity of the poorer sort was relieved, before the pay-day came, with *lendings* and other helps, as well as the ability of the States could permit. When three such Princes, reigning at one time, shall agree so well, to maintain against the power of a fourth, injurious (or at least so seeming) to them all, a Neighbour-Country of the same religion, and to which they all are lovingly affected; then may such a Country be secure of her Auxiliaries; and quietly intend her Trade, or other business, in hope of like success. But these circumstances meet so seldom, as it may well hold true in general: That mercenary and foreign auxiliary forces are no less dangerous, than the enemy against whom they are entertained.

## †. III.

That the moderate government of the Romans gave them assurance to use the service of their own Subjects in their wars. That in mans nature there is an affection breeding Tyranny, which hindreth the use and benefit of the like moderation.

Here it may be demanded, whether also the *Romans* were not compelled to use service of other souldiers in their many great wars, but performed all by their own Citizens; for if it were their manner to arm their own Subjects, how should it be, that they feared no rebellion; if strangers, how then could they avoid the inconveniences above rehearsed? The answer is, that their Armies were compounded usually of their own Citizens, and of the *Latines* in equal number: to which they added, as occasion required, some companies of *Campanes*, *Hetrurians*, *Sannites*, or other of their Subjects, as were either interessed in the quarrell, or might best be trusted. They had, about these times, (though seldom they did employ so many) ten *Roman* Legions; a good strength, if all other help had been wanting; which served to keep in good order their Subjects, that were always fewer in the army than themselves. As for the *Latines*, if constanguinity were not a sufficient obligation; yet many privileges and immunities, which they enjoyed, made them assured unto the State of *Rome*: under which they lived almost at liberty, as being bound to little else, than to serve it in war. It is true, that a yoke, how easie soever, seems troublesome to the neck that hath bin accustomed to freedom. Therefore many people of *Italy* have taken occasion of severall advantages, to deliver themselves from the *Roman* subjection. But still they have bin reclaimed by war, the Attempts of rebellion hath sharply bin punished, and the people by degrees have obtained such liberty, as made them esteem none other wise of *Rome*, than as the common city of all *Italy*. Yea, in proesse of time it was granted unto many Cities, and those far off removed, even to *Tuscan* in *Cilicia*; where *S. Paul* was born, that all the Burgeses should be freed *Rome* it self. This favour was conferred absolutely upon some; upon some, with restriction of giving voyce in election of Magistrates, or with other such limitation as was thought fit. Hereunto may be added, that it was their manner, after a great conquest, to reduce unto their new Subjects half of their tribute which they had bin wont to pay to their former Lords, which was a ready way to bring the multitude into good liking of their present condition; when the review of harder times past, should rather teach them to fear a relapse, than to hope for better in the future, by seeking innovation. Neither would it be forgotten, as a speciall note of the *Romans* good government, That when some, for their well-deserving, have had the offer to be made Citizens of *Rome*, they have refused it, and held themselves better contented with their own present estate. Wherefore it is no marvell, that *Petelia*, a City of the *Bruttians* in *Italy*, chose rather to endure all extremity of war, than, upon any condition, to forsake the *Romans*; even when the *Romans* themselves had confessed, that they were unable to help these their Subjects, and therefore willed them to look to their own good, as having been faithfull to the utmost. Such love purchased these mild Governours, without impairing their Majesty thereby. The sum of all is; they had, of their own, a strong army; they doubled it by adjoining therunto the *Latines*; and they further increased it, as need required, with other help of their own Subjects; all, or the most of their followers, accounting the prosperity of *Rome* to be the common good.

The moderate use of sovereign power being so effectually, in assuring the people unto

unto their Lords, and consequently in the establishment or enlargement of Dominion: it may seem strange, that the practice of tyranny, whose effects are contrary, hath been so common in all ages. The like, I know, may be said of all Vice and Irregularity, whatsoever. For it is lesse difficult, (whosever think otherwise) and more safe, to keep the way of Justice and Honesty, than to turn aside from it; yet commonly our passions do lead us into by-paths. But where Lust, Anger, Fear, or any the like Affection, seduceth our reason; the same unruly appetite, either bringeth with it an excuse, or, at least, wile, taketh away all cause of wonder. In tyranny it is not so: for as much as we can hardly desery the passion, that is of force to insinuate it self into the whole tenour of a Government, It must be confessed, that lawlesse desires have bred many Tyrants: yet so that these desires have seldom been hereditary, or long-lasting; but have ended commonly with the tyrants life, sometimes before his death; by which means the government hath been reduced to a better forme. In such cases, the saying of *Aristotle* holds, That tyrannies are of a short continuance. But this doth not satisfie the question in hand. Why did the *Carthaginians* exercise tyranny? Why did the *Athenians*? Why have many other Cities done the like? If in respect of their generall good; how could they be ignorant, that this was an ill course for the safety of the Weal publick? If they were led hereunto by any affection; what was that affection wherein so many thousand Citizens, divided and subdivided within themselves by factions, did all concur, notwithstanding the much diversity of temper, and the vehemency of private hatred among them? Doubtlesse, we must be fain to say, That Tyranny is, by it self, a vice distinct from others. A Man, we know, is *Animal politicum*, apt even by Nature, to command or to obey; every one in his proper degree. Other desires of Mankind, are common likewise unto brute beasts; and some of them, to bodies wanting sense: but the desire of rule belongeth unto the nobler part of reason; whereunto is also answerable an aptnesse to yeeld obedience. Now as hunger and thirst are given by nature not only to Man and Beast, but unto all sorts of Vegetables, for the sustentation of their life: as Fear, Anger, Lust, and other affections are likewise natural, in convenient measure, both unto Mankind, and to all creatures that have sense, for the shunning or repelling of harm, and seeking after that which is requisite: even so is this desire of ruling or obeying, ingrafted by Nature in the race of Man, and in Man only as a reasonable creature, for the ordering of his life, in a civil form of Justice. All these in-bred qualities are good and usefull. Nevertheless, Hunger and Thirst are the Parents of Gluttony and Drunkenness, which, in reproach, are called beastly, by an improper terme: since they grow from appetites, found in lesse worthy creatures than beasts, and are yet not so common in beasts, as in men. The effects of Anger, and of such other Passions as descend no lower than unto brute beasts, are held lesse vile, and perhaps not without good reason: yet are the more pernicious. But as no corruption is worse by sharper Lawes, as being in generall more horrible, and punished more grievously, than of that which is best; there is not any Passion, that nourisheth a vice more hurtfull unto Mankind, than that which issueth from the most noble root, even the depraved Affection of ruling. Hence arise those two great mischiefs, of which hath been an old question in dispute, whether be the worse; That all things, or that nothing should be lawful. Of these, a dull spirit, and overladen by fortune, with power, whereof is not capable; occasioneth the one; the other proceedeth from a contrary distemper, whose vehemency the bounds of Reason cannot limit. Under the extremity of either, no Country is able to subsist: yet the defective dullness, that permitteeth any thing, will also permit the execution of Law, to which meer necessity doth enforce the ordinary Magistrate; whereas tyranny is more active, and pleaseeth it self in the excess, with a false colour of justice. Examples of stupidity, and unaptnesse to rule, are not very frequent, though such natures are every where to be found: for this quality troubles not it self in seeking Empire; or if by some error of fortune, it encounter therewithall, (as when *Clandius*, hiding himself in a corner, found the Empire of *Rome*) some friend, or else a wife, is not wanting to supply the defect, which also cruelty doth help to shadow. Therefore this Vice, as a thing unknown, is without a name. Tyranny is more bold, and feareth not to be known, but would be reputed honourable: for it is *prosumum & felix scelus, a fortunate mischief*; as long as it can subsist. There is no reward or honour (saith *Peter Charron*) assigned unto those, that know

how to increase, or preserve humane nature: all honours, greatness, riches, dignities, Empire, triumphs, trophies, are appointed for these, that know how to afflict, trouble, or destroy it. *Cæsar* and *Alexander*, have un-made and slain, each of them; more than a million of men: but they made none, nor left none behind them. Such is the error of mans judgement in valuing things according to the common opinion. But the true name of Tyranny, when it grows to ripeness, is none other than *Feritie*: the same that *Aristotle* saith to be worse than any vice. It exceedeth indeed all other vices, arising from the passions incident both to Man and Beast; no less than Perjury, Murder, Treason, and the like horrible crimes, exceed in villany, the faults of Gluttony and Drunkenness, that grow from more ignoble appetites. Hereof *Sciron*, *Procrustes*, and *Phylax* are not better examples, than *Phalaris*, *Dionysius*, and *Agathocles*, whose mischievous heads were afflicted by the hands of detestable Ruffians. The same barbarous desire of Lordship, transported those old examples of *Feritie*, and these latter Tyrants, beyond the bounds of reason: neither of them knew the use of Rule, nor the difference between Freeman and slaves.

The rule of the husband over the wife, and of parents over their children, is natural, and appointed by God himself; so that it is always, and simply, allowable and good. The former of these, is as the dominion of Reason over Appetite; the latter is the whole authority, which one Freeman can have over another. The rule of a King is no more, nor none other, than of a common Father over his whole country: which he that knows what the power of a Father is, or ought to be, knows to be enough. But there is a greater and more Masterly rule, which God gave unto *Adam*, when he said; *Have dominion over the fish of the Sea, and over the fowle of the aire, and every living thing that moveth upon the earth*: which also he continueth unto *Noah* and his children, saying, *The fear of you (and the dread of you) shall be upon every beast of the earth, and upon every fowle of the aire, upon all that moveth upon the earth, and upon all the fishes of the Sea: into your hands are they delivered*. He who gave this dominion unto Man, did give also an aptitude to use it. The execution of this power hath since extended it self, over a very great part of Mankind. There are indeed no small numbers of men, whose disability to govern themselves, proves them, according to *Aristotles* doctrine, to be naturally slaves.

Yet find I not in Scripture any warrant to oppress men with bondage: unless the lawfulness thereof be sufficiently intimated, where it is said, That a man shall not be punished for the death of a servant, whom he hath slain by correction, if the servant live a day or two, because he is his money: or else by the captivity of the *Midianitish* girls, which were made bond-slaves, and the Sanctuary had a part of them for the *Lords tribute*. Doubtlesse the custome hath been very ancient: for *Noah* laid this curse upon *Canaan*, that he should be a servant of servants; and *Abraham* had of *Pharaoh*, among other gifts, *men-servants and maid-servants*, which were none other than slaves. Christ an Religion is said to have abrogated this old kinde of servility: but surely they are deceived that think so. *Saint Paul* desired the liberty of *Onesimus*, whom he had won unto Christ: yet wrote for this unto *Philemon* by way of request, craving it as a benefit, not urging it as a duty. Agreeable hereto is the direction, which the same *Saint Paul* giveth unto servants: *Let every man abide in the same calling wherein he was called: as thou called being a servant: care not for it, but if thou mayst be made free, use it rather*. It is true, that Christian Religion hath procured liberty unto many; not only in regard of piety; but for that the Christian Masters stood in fear of being discovered by their slaves, unto the persecutors of religion. *Mahomet* likewise, by giving liberty to his followers, drew many unto his impiety: but whether he forbade it, as unlawfull, unto his sectators, to hold one another of them in bondage, I cannot tell; save that by the practice of the *Turks* and *Moors*, it seems he did not. In *England* we had many bond-servants, untill the time of our last civil wars; and I think that the Laws concerning Villenage are still in force, of which the latest are the sharpest. And now, since slaves were made free, which were of great use and service, there are grown up a rabble of Rogues, Cutpurises, and other the like trades; slaves in Nature, though not in Law.

But whether this kinde of dominion be lawfull, or not; *Aristotle* hath well proved, that it is unnatural. And certainly, we finde not such a latitude of difference in any creature,

creature, as in the nature of man; wherein (to omit the infinite distance in estate of the elect & reprobate) the wisest excel the most foolish, by far greater degree, than the most foolish of men doth surpass the wisest of beasts. Therefore when Commiseration hath given way to Reason, we shall find, that nature is the ground even of Masterly power; and of servile obedience, which is thereto correspondent. But it may be truly said, that some countries have subsisted long without the use of any servility; as also it is true, that some countries have not the use of any tame cattell. Indeed the affections which uphold civil rule, are (though more noble) not so simply needfull, unto the sustentation either of our kind, as are Lust, and the like; or of every one, as are hunger and thirst; which notwithstanding are the lowest in degree. But where most vile and servile dispositions have liberty to shew themselves begging in the streets, there may we more justly wonder, how the dangerous toyle of Sea-faring men can find enough to undertake them, than how the swarms of idle vagabonds should increase, by access of those, that are weary of their own more painfull condition. This may suffice to prove, that in Mankind there is found, ingrafted even by Nature, a desire of absolute dominion: whereunto the general custome of Nations doth subscribe; together with the pleasure which most men take in flatteries, that are the basest of slaves.

This being so, we find no cause to marvell, how Tyranny hath been so rise in all ages, & practised, not only in the single rule of some vicious Prince, but ever by consent of whole Cities and Estates: since other vices have likewise gotten head, and born a general sway, notwithstanding that the way of vertue be more honourable, and commodious. Few there are that have used well the inferior Passions: how then can we expect, that the most noble affections should not be disordered? in the government of wife and children, some are utterly careless, and corrupt all by their dull connivency: others, by masterly rigour, hold their own blood under condition of slavery. To be a good Governour is a rare commendation: and to prefer the Weal publick above all respects whatsoever, is the Vertue justly termed *Heroicall*. Of this Vertue many ages afford not many examples. *Hector* is named by *Aristotle* as one of them; & deservedly, if this praise be due to extraordinary height of fortitude, used in defence of a mans own Country. But if we consider, that a love of the general good cannot be perfect, without reference unto the fountain of all goodness: we shall find, that no morall vertue, how great soever, can by it self, deserve the commendation of more than Vertue, as the *Heroicall* doth. Wherefore we must search the Scriptures, for patterns hereof; such as *David*, *Josaphat*, and *Jesse* were. Of Christian Kings, if there were many such, the world would soon be happy. It is not my purpose to wrong the worth of any, by denying the praise where it is due, or by preferring a lesse excellent. But he that can find a King religious, and zealous in Gods cause, without enforcement, either of adversity, or of some regard of state; a procurer of a general peace and quiet; who not only useth his authority; but adds the travell of his eloquence, in admonishing his Judges to do justice; by the vigorous influence of whose Government, civility is infused, even into those places, that have been the dens of savage Robbers and Cut-throats; one that hath quite abolished a slavish *Brehon* Law, by which a whole Nation of his subjects were held in bondage; and one, whose higher vertue and wisdom doth make the praise not only of Nobility and other ornaments, but of abstinence from the blood, the wives, and the goods of those that are under his power, together with a world of chief commendations; belonging unto some good princes, to appear lesse regardable: he, I say, that can find such a King, findeth an example, worthy to adde unto vertue an honourable title; it is were formerly wanting. Under such a King, it is likely, by Gods blessing, that a Land shall flourish, with increase of Trade, in Countries before unknown; that Civility and Religion shall be propagated, into barbarous and heathen Countries; and that the happiness of his subjects, shall cause the Nations far off removed, to wish him their Sovereign. I need not adde herunto, that all the actions of such a King, even his bodily exercises, do partake of vertue; since all things tending to the preservation of his life and health, or to the mollifying of his cares, (who fixing his contemplation upon God, seeketh how to imitate the unspeakable goodness, rather than the inaccessible majesty, with both of which himself is indued, as far as humane nature is capable) do also belong to the furtherance of that common good, which he procureth. Left any man should think me transported with admiration, or other affection, beyond the bounds of reason, I adde hereunto,

hereunto, that such a King is nevertheless a man, must dye, and may erre: yet wisdom and fame shall set him free, from error, and from death, both with and without the help of time. One thing I may not omit, as a singular benefit (though there be many other besides redounding unto this King, as the fruit of his goodness. The people that live under a pleasant yoke, are not only loving to their Sovereign Lord, but free of courage, and no greater in muster of men, than of stout fighters, if need require: whereas on the contrary, he that ruleth as over slaves, shall be attended in time of necessity, by slavish minds, neither loving his person, nor regarding his or their own honour. Cowards may be furious, & slaves outrageous, for a time: but among spirits that have once yielded unto slavery, universally it is found true, that *Homer* saith, *God bereaveth a man of half his virtue, that day when he casteth him into bondage.*

Hom. Odys. l. 19.

Of these things, I might perhaps more seasonably have spoken, in the general discourse of Government: but where so lively an example of the calamity following a tyrannical rule, and the use of Mercenaries, thereupon depending, did offer it self, as it is this present business of the *Carthaginians*; I thought that the note would be more effectually, than being barely delivered, as out of a common place.

### S. III.

*How the war against the Mercenaries was diversely managed by Hanno and Amilcar, with variable success. The bloody counsels of the Mercenaries; and their final destruction.*

\* *Utica* is seated in the great bay that enters towards Carthage, not far within the Promontory of Apollon. At this time it is called *Porto Ferina*, or *Biferia*, and by the Africans themselves, *Genetalia*. *Niger* saith, that the town itself is ruined, and the place whereon it stood, now called *Margachares*. It was very ancient, & built before Carthage, saith *Silius*. As it flourished before Carthage was it up, so did it after Carthage was thrown down by the Romans in the third Punic war. Famous it was by the death of *Cato* the younger, who held it against *Cæsar*. *Victor* that worthy Divine, was *Bishop* thereof in the time of *Guise*. The *African*, who lived all the time of that tyrant, and hath written the story of his cruelties,

Being now to return unto those Mercenaries, from whom I have thus far digressed, I cannot readily finde, by what name henceforth I should call them. They are no longer in pay with the *Carthaginians*; neither care they to pretend, that they seek their wages already due; so that they are neither Mercenaries, nor Mutiners. Had they all been subjects unto Carthage, then might they justly have been termed Rebels: but *Spentius*, and others, that were the principal part of them, ought none allegiance to that State, which they endeavoured to subvert. Wherefore I will borrow the name of their late occupation, and still call them Mercenaries, as *Polybius* doth.

These, using the advantage of their present strength, besieged \* *Utica* and *Hippagretæ*, Cities of great importance, as being seated upon the western Haven of Carthage, where it is divided by a neck of land; *Hippagretæ* standing inwards upon the great Lake, *Utica* further out upon the Sea. Neither was the Campe at *Tunis* abandoned, which lay so to hinder the *Carthaginians* from passing up into the country: for *Matho* and *Spentius* wanted not men to follow the war in all parts at once.

How the *Carthaginians* were amazed with this unexpected perill, any man may conceive. But the business it self awakes them hastily. They are hardly prest on all sides; and therefore travelled their brains to the uttermost, how to shake off these furious dogs, from their shoulders, who, sometimes by night, sometimes by day, came unto the very walls of their City. In this exigent, *Hanno* was made their General: who failed not in his accustomed diligence of making all good preparation: but had gotten together whatsoever was needfull, as well to relieve a Town besieged, as to barter and assail any place defended against him. With these provisions, and with an hundred Elephants, he came to *Utica*, so suddenly, that the enemies as men surprised, forsook their Trenches, and retired themselves unto a rising piece of woody ground, where they might be safe against the violence of his beasts. *Hanno*, thinking that he had to doe with *Numidians*, whose custome was, after any loss, to flee two or three whole days journey off: presented the Town; to shew himself after this his victory. But these good fellows, against whom he was toward, had learned of *Amilcar*, to retire and to fight again, many times in one day, as need required. Therefore as soon as they perceived, that he knew not how to use a victory; they assailed their own camp, and with great slaughter, drove the *Carthaginians* out of it, forcing them to hide themselves within *Utica*; and got possession of all the store that *Hanno* had brought for the relief of the Town. This bad beginning *Hanno* followed with futable indiscretion: losing the benefit of many fair opportunities, and suffering the enemies to take possession of all the entrance from Carthage to the firm land.

The

The *Carthaginians* perceiving this, were exceedingly troubled, and did therefore let fall their shore anchor; sending to the field their great Captain *Amilcar*, whom they furnished with ten thousand foot of supply, and seventy elephants. *Amilcar* had work enough to do, before he should be able to meet with the enemy upon equal ground. For besides other places of advantage that the Mercenaries had occupied, *Hanno* had suffered them to win the only bridge, by which the River *Mato*, or *Bagradas*, was passable unto these, that were to travel into the Continent. This River had not many floods; nor those easie for a single man to get over: but upon them all was kept such guard, as gave to *Amilcar* little hope of prevailing in seeking way by force. As for the Bridge it self, *Matho* and his followers were there lodged: and had there built a town, wherein to lye commodiously, intentive only to the custody thereof. But *Amilcar* observed, that the very mouth of *Bagradas* used to be sometimes cloyed with sand and gravel, that was driven in by certain customary winds; and could not be driven out again, by force of that slow river, till the wind failing, or changing, suffered the weight of the waters, to disburden their channell. Hereof he made use, and taking his opportunity passed the River, contrary to all expectation, either of the enemy, or of his own Carvans.

There was no need to bid *Spentius* look about him, when once it was heard, that *Amilcar* was come over *Bagradas*: all the Mercenaries were troubled with the news; knowing that they were no longer to deal with the improvident gravity of *Hanno*, but with an able spirit, even with their own Master in the Art of War, whom they admired, though they hated him. But this fear was soon changed into presumption: when more than fifteen thousand of their own society, were come from *Utica*, and other ten thousand from the guard of the Bridge. Their Army was far greater, than that of *Amilcar*; and they were, in their own judgement, the better men; upon which confidence, they resolved to charge him on all sides, and beat him down, in despite of his worth and reputation. With this resolution they attend upon him, watching for some advantage, and still exhorting one another to play the men, and give the onset. Especially they that followed him in the Rear, had a great mind to begin the fight; whereunto their promptness was such, as took from them their former circumspection. *Amilcar* held his way toward the Bridge, keeping himself on plain grounds, that were fittest for the service of his Elephants, which he placed in front of his Army. Neither made he shew of any desire to fight, but suffered the rashness of his enemies to encrease, till it should break into some disorder. At length perceiving, that with more boldness than good heed, they followed him so near, as would be little for their good, if he should run unto them, he hastened his march, even to such a pace, as made a shew little difference from plain flight. The Mercenaries presently fell upon his skirts; believing, that for fear of them he was ready to run away. But whilst they confusedly, as in sudden opinion of victory, were driven at the heels of those that had the Rear, *Amilcar* wheeled about, and met them in the face, charging them hotly, but in very good order, so that amazed with the apprehension of unexpected danger, they fled without making any resistance. In this overthrow there were six thousand of the Mercenaries slain, and about two thousand taken, the rest fled, some to the Campe at *Utica*, others to the town at the Bridge, whither *Amilcar* followed them so fast, that he won the place easily; the enemies being thence also fled unto *Tunes*, as not having recollected their spirits to make it good.

The fame of this victory, together with the diligence of *Amilcar* in pursuing it, caused many townes revolted, partly by fear, partly by force, to return to their former obedience. Yet was not *Matho* wanting to himself in this dangerous time. He sent about *Numidia* and *Africa*, for new supplies; admonishing the people, now or never, to do their best for the recovery of their freedom, he persuaded *Spentius*, and *Autaritus*, that was a Captain of the *Gauls*, to wait upon *Amilcar*, and always to keep the higher grounds, or at least, the foot of some hill, where they might be safe from the Elephants; and he himself continued to press the Town of *Hippagretæ* with an hard siege. It was necessary for *Amilcar*, in passing from place to place, as his business required, to take such wayes as there were: for all the Country lay not level. Therefore *Spentius*, who still coasted him, and once gotten a notable advantage of ground; the *Carthaginians* lying in a plain, surrounded with hills, that were occupied by the Mercenaries, with their

Numidian

*Numidian and African succours.* In this difficulty, the fame of *Amilcar* his personal worth did greatly benefit his Country. For *Naravafus*, a young gentleman commanding over the *Numidians*, was glad of this occasion, serving to get the acquaintance and love of so brave a man, which he much desired: and therefore came unto *Amilcar* signifying his good affection to him, with offer to do him all service. *Amilcar* joyfully entertained this friend, promised unto him his own daughter in marriage, and so wan from the enemies two thousand horse, that following *Naravafus* turned unto the *Carthaginians* side. With this help he gave battell unto *Spendius*: wherein the *Numidian* laboured to improve his own valour to his new friend. So the victory was great: for there were slain ten thousand of *Spendius* his fellows, and four thousand taken prisoners; but *Spendius* himself with *Autarius* the Gentle, escaped to do more mischief. *Amilcar* dealt very gently with his prisoners: pardoning all offences past, and dismissing as many as were unwilling to become his followers; yet with condition, that they should never more bear arms against the *Carthaginians*; threatening to take sharp revenge upon all that should break this Covenant.

This humanity was vehemently suspected by *Matho*, *Spendius*, and *Autarius*, according to win from them the hearts of their Souldiers. Wherefore they resolved to take such order, that no man among them should dare to trust in the good nature of *Amilcar*, nor to hope for any safety whilst *Carthage* was able to do him hurt. They counterfeited letters of advertisement, wherein was contained, that some of their company, respective only of their private benefit, and careless of the generall good, had a purpose to betray them all unto the *Carthaginians*, with whom they held intelligence; and that it was needfull to look well unto *Gesco*, and his companions, whom these traitors had a purpose to indarge. Upon this Theme *Spendius* makes an oration to the Souldiers, exhorting them to fidelity; and shewing with many words, that the seeming humanity of *Amilcar*, toward some, was none other than a bait, wherewith to intrap them all at once together; as also telling them what a dangerous enemy *Gesco* would prove, if he might escape their hands. Whilst he is yet in the midst of his tale, were letters come to the same purpose. Then steps forth *Autarius*, and speaks his mind plainly: saying, that it were the best, yea, the only way, for the common safety, to cut off all hope of reconciliation with *Carthage*; that if some were devising to make their own peace, it would go hard with those that had a care of the war; that it were better to make an end of *Gesco* his life, than to trouble themselves with looking to his custody; that by such a course every one should be engaged in the present Action, as having none other hope left, than in victory alone; finally, that such as would speak here-against, were worthy to be reputed Traitors. This *Autarius* was in great credit with the Souldiers, & could speak sundry languages, in such sort, that he was understood by all. According to his motion therefore it was agreed, that *Gesco*, and all the other prisoners, should forthwith be put to horrible death, by torments. Nevertheless there were some, that for love of *Gesco* sought to alter his intended cruelty; but they were forthwith stoned to death, as a Document unto others; and so the Decree was put in execution. Neither were they therewith all contented, but further ordained, that all *Carthaginian* prisoners which they took, should be served in like sort: and that the subjects or friends of *Carthage*, should lose their hands, and so be sent home: which rule they observed ever afterwards.

Of this cruelty I need say no more, than that it was most execrable ferity. As for the counsell of using it, it was like unto the counsell of *Achitophel*; All Israel shall hear, that thou art abhorred of thy father; then shall the hands of all that are with thee be strong. Such are the fruits of desperation. He that is past all hope of pardon, is afraid of his own fellows, if they be more innocent; and to avoid the punishment of less offences, committeth greater. The cowardize of offenders, and the revengefull spirits of those that have been wronged, are breeders of this desperation: to which may be added some deficiency of Lawes, in distinguishing the punishments of malefactors; according to the decree of their severall crimes. A coward thinks all provision too little for his own security. If *Phocas* be a coward (said the Emperour *Mauritius*) thou art he murderer. To be steadfast and sure, in taking revenge, is thought a point of honour, and a defensive against new injuries. But wrongfully: for it is opposite to the rule of Christianity; and such a quality discovered, makes them deadly enemies, who other-

wife would have repented, and sought to make amends, for the wrong done in passion. This was it which wrought so much woe to the *Carthaginians*, teaching *Matho*, and his *Africans*, to suspect even their gentleness, as the introduction to extreme rigour. Like unto the errors of Princes and Governours, are the errors of Lawes. Where one and the same punishment is awarded unto the lesse offence, and unto the greater, he that hath adventured to rob a man, is easily tempted to kill him, for his own security.

Against these inconveniences, Mercy and Severity, used with due respect, are the best remedies. In neither of which *Amilcar* failed. For as long as these his old souldiers were any way likely to be reclaimed by gentle courses, his humanity was ready to invite them. But when they were transported with beastly outrage, beyond all regard of honesty and shame, he rewarded their villany with answerable vengeance, casting them unto wilde beasts to be devoured.

Untill this time *Hanno*, with the Army under his command, had kept himself apart from *Amilcar*, and done little as may seem, for that nothing is remembered of him since his late losses. Neither was *Amilcar* sorry to want his help; as being able to do better without him. But when the war grew to such extremity, as threatened utter ruine to the one or the other side: then was *Hanno* sent for, and came to *Amilcar*, with whom he joyed his forces. By this access of strength *Amilcar* was not enabled to do more than in former times; rather he could now perform nothing: such was the hatred between him and his unworthy Colleague. The Towns of *Ptica* and *Hippagreta*, that had stood always firm to the *Carthaginian* party, did now revolt unto the enemy, murdering all the Souldiers that they had in Garrison, and casting their bodies forth, without suffering them to be buried. The provisions brought by sea, for maintenance of the Army, were lost in foul weather; and *Carthage* it self stood in danger of being besieged, about which *Matho* and *Spendius* consulted, whilst one of the *Carthaginian* Generals did (as it were) bind the others hands.

It hath in all Ages been used as the safest course, to send forth, in great Expeditions, two generals of one Army. This was the common practice of those two mighty Cities *Athens* and *Rome*, which other States and Princes have often imitated; perswading themselves, that great Armies are not so well conducted by one, as by two: who out of emulation to excell each other, will use the greater diligence. They have also joyned two chief Commanders in equall commission, upon this further consideration, the better to restrain the ambition of any one, that should be trusted with so great a strength. For hereof all common-weals have been jealous, having been taught by their examples that have made themselves Tyrants over those Cities and States that have employed them. In this point the *Venetians* have been so circumspect, as they have, for the most part, trusted strangers, & not their own in all the wars which they have made. It is true, that the equall authority of two commanding in chief, serveth well to bridle the ambition of one or both, from turning upon the Prince or State that hath given them trust: but in managing the war it self, it is commonly the cause of ill successe. In wars made near unto *Rome* it self, when two good friends were Consuls, or such two at least, as concurred in one desire of Triumph, which honour (the greatest of any that *Rome* could give) was to be obtained by that one years service; it is no marvell, though each of the Consuls did his best, and referred all his thoughts unto none other end than victory. Yet in all dangerous cases, when the Consuls proceeded otherwise than was desired, one Dictator was appointed, whose power was neither hindered by any partner, nor by any great limitation. Neither was it indeed the manner, to send forth both the Consuls to one war; but each went whither his lot called him, to his own Province; unless one business seemed to require them both, and they also seemed fit to be joyned in the administration. Now although it was so, that the *Romans* did many times prevail with their joyned Generals: yet was this never so seldom, without as much concord, as any other vertue of the Commanders: For their modesty hath often been such, that the lesse able Captain, though of equall authority, hath willingly submitted himself to the other, and obeyed his directions: This notwithstanding, they have many times, by obtaining two Commanders of one Army, received great and most dangerous overthrowes; whereof in the second *Punick* war we shall finde examples. On the contrary side, in their wars most remote, that were always managed by one, they seldom

failed to win exceeding honour, as hereafter shall appear. Now of those ten Generals, which served the Athenians at the battell of *Marathon*, it may truly be said, that had not their temper been better, than the judgement of the people that sent them forth, and had not they submitted themselves to the conduct of *Miltiades*; their affairs had found the same success which they found at other times, when they coupled *Nicias* and *Alcibiades* together in *Sicily*: the one being so over-wary, and the other so hasty, as all came to nought that they undertook; whereas *Cimon* alone, as also *Aristides*, and others, having sole charge of all, did their Country and Common-weal most remarkable service. For it is hard to find two great Captains of equall discretion and valour; but that the one hath more of fury than of judgement, and so the contrary, by which the best occasions are as often overslipped, as at other times many actions are unseasonably undertaken. I remember it well, that when the prince of *Conde* was slain after the Battell of *Jarnac*, (which Prince, together with the admiral *Chastillon*, had the conduct of the Protestant Army) the Protestants did greatly bewail the losse of the said Prince, in respect of his Religion, person, and birth; yet comforting themselves, they thought it rather an advancement, than an hindrance to their affairs. For so much did the valour of the one out-reach the advisednesse of the other, as whatsoever the Admirall intended to win by attending the advantage, the Prince adventured to lose, by being over-confident in his own courage.

But we need no better example, than of the *Carthaginians* in this present businesse: who, though they were still sick of their ill grounded love to *Hanno*, and were unwilling to disgrace him; yet seeing that all ran towards ruine, through the discord of the Generals, committed the decision of their controversies, unto the Army that served under them. The judgement of the Army was, that *Hanno* should depart the Camp: which he did, and *Hannibal* was sent in his stead, one that would be directed by *Amilcar*, and that was enough.

After this, the affairs of *Carthage* began to prosper somewhat better. *Matho* and *Spendius* had brought their Army neer unto the City; and lay before it, as in a siege. They might well be bold to hope and adventure much, having in their Campe above fifty thousand, besides those that lay abroad in Garrisons. Nevertheless, the City was too strong for them to win by assault: and the entrance of victuals they could not hinder, if any should be sent in by friends from abroad.

*Hieron*, King of *Syracuse*, though during the wars in *Sicily* he assisted the *Romans*, and still continued in their alliance, yet now sent succours to the *Carthaginians*: fearing their fall, and consequently his own; because if no other State gave the *Romans* somewhat to trouble their digestion, the Principality of *Syracuse* would soon be devoured by them. The *Romans* also gave them some slender assistance, and, for the present, refused good offers made unto them by the Mercenaries. This they did to shew a kinde of noble disposition; which was indeed but counterfeit, as the sequell manifestly proved.

Whilest *Matho* and his followers were busily pressing the City, *Amilcar* was as diligent in waiting at their backs, and cutting off all that came to their supply: so that finding themselves more straightly besieged by him, than *Carthage* was by them, they purposed to desist from their vain attempt, and try some other course. Hereupon they issue into the field: when *Spendius*, and one *Zarcas* an African Captain assisting the rebellion, take upon them to find *Amilcar* work; leaving *Matho* in *Tunis*, to negotiate with their friends and take a generall care of the businesse. The Elephants of *Carthage*, and horse of *Naravusus*, made *Spendius* fearfull to descend into the Plains. Wherefore he betook himself to his former method of war, keeping the mountains, and rough grounds, or occupying the straightest passages, wherein the desperate courage of his men might shew itself, with little disadvantage. But *Amilcar* had more skill in this Art, than could be matched by the labour of *Spendius*. He drew the enemy to many skirmishes; in all which the success was such, as added courage to his own men, and abated the strength and spirit of the Rebels. Thus he continued, provoking them night and day: still intrapping some of them, and sometimes giving them the overthrow in plain battell: untill at length he got them into a straight, whence ere they should get out, he meant to take of them a good account. Their judgement was enough to perceive their own disadvantage; and therefore they had the lesse stomach to fight:

fight; but a waiting for help from *Tunis*. *Amilcar* prudently foreseeing, that necessity might teach them to dare impossibilities, used the benefit of their present fear, and shut them close up with Trench and Rampart. There they waited miserably, for succour that came not: and having spent all their victuals, were so pinched with hunger, that they fed upon the bodies of their prisoners. This they suffered patiently, as knowing that they had not deserved any favour from *Carthage*: and hoping, that their friends at *Tunis* would not be unmindfull of them. But when they were driven to such extremity, that they were faine to devour their own companions, and yet saw none appearance or likelihood of relief: their obstinacy was broken, and they threatened their Captains with 10 what they deserved, unless they would go forth to *Amilcar*, and seek such peace as might be gotten. So *Spendius*, *Zarcas*, and *Autarius*, fell to consultation, wherein it was resolved to obey the multitude, and yield themselves, if it were so required, unto the death, rather then perish by the hands of their own Companions. Hereupon they send to crave parley, which is granted; and these three come forth to talk with *Amilcar* in person. What they could say unto him, it is hard to conjecture: yet by the conditions which *Amilcar* granted, it seems that they took the blame upon themselves, and craved pardon for the multitude. The conditions were, that the *Carthaginians* should choose, out of the whole number of these enemies, any ten whom they pleased, to remain at their discretion; and that the rest should all be dismissed, each in his shirt, or in 10 one single coat. When the peace was thus concluded, *Amilcar* told these Ringleaders, that he chose them presently, as part of the ten, and so commanded to lay hands on them: the rest he forthwith went to fetch with his whole Army in order. The Rebels, who knew not that peace was concluded upon so gentle Articles, thought themselves betrayed: and therefore amazedly ran to arms. But they wanted Captains to order them: and the same astonishment, that made them break the Covenants of peace, whereof they were ignorant, gave unto *Amilcar* both colour of justice, in accomplishing revenge, and ease in doing the execution. They were all slain: being forty thousand, or more, in number.

This was a famous exploit: and the news thereof exceeding welcome to *Carthage*; 20 and terrible to the revolted Cities of *Africk*. Henceforward *Amilcar*, with his *Naravusus*, and *Hannibal*, carried the war from Town to Town, and found all places ready to yield: *Utica* and *Hippagreta* only standing out, upon fear of deserved vengeance; and *Tunis*, being held by *Matho*, with the remainder of his Army. It was thought fit to begia with *Tunis*, wherein lay the chief strength of the enemy. Coming before this Town, they brought forth *Spendius*, with his fellows, in view of the defendants, and crucified them under the wals, to terrifie those of his old companions, that were still in arms. With this rigour the siege began; as if speedy victory had been assured. *Hannibal* quartered on that part of *Tunis*, which lay toward *Carthage*; *Amilcar* on the opposite side: too far asunder to help one another in sudden accidents; and therefore it behoved 40 each to be the more circumspect.

*Matho* from the wals beheld his own destiny, in the misery of his companion, and knew not how to avoid it otherwise than by a cast at dice with fortune. So he brake out upon that part of the *Carthaginian* Army, that lay secure, as if all danger were past, under the command of *Hannibal*: and with so great and unexpected fury he sallied, that after an exceeding slaughter, he took *Hannibal* prisoner; on whom, and thirty the most poble of the *Carthaginian* prisoners, he presently revenged the death of *Spendius* by the same torture. Of this *Amilcar* knew nothing, till it was too late; neither had he strength enough remaining, after this great losse, to continue the siege; but was faine to break it up, and remove unto the mouth of the River *Bagradas*, where he incamped.

The terror was no less within *Carthage*, upon the same of this losse, than had been the joy of the late great victory. All that could bear arms, were sent into the field, under *Hanno*, whom, it seems, they thought the most able of their Captains surviving the late accidents of War. If there were any Law among them forbidding the employment of one sole Generall near unto their City (for they are known to have trusted one man abroad) the time did not permit, in this hasty exigent, to devise about repelling it. But thirty principall men are chosen by the Senat, to bring *Hanno* to *Amilcar's* camp; and by all good persuasions to reconcile them. This could not be effected in one day. It nearly touched *Amilcar* in his honour, that the carelesse of *Hannibal* seemed



to be imputed unto him, by lending his enemy to moderate his proceedings. Nevertheless after many conferences, the authority of the Senators prevailed; *Amilcar* & *Hanno* were made friends; and thenceforth, whilst this war lasted, *Hanno* took warning by *Hannibal's* calamities, to follow good directions, though afterwards he returned to his old and deadly hatred.

In the mean season *Matho* was come abroad, as meaning to use the reputation of his late success, whilst it gave some life unto his business. He had reason to do as he did: but he wanted skill to deal with *Amilcar*. The skirmishes, and light exercises of war, wherein *Amilcar* trained his *Carthaginians*, did so far abate the strength, and withal diminish the credit of *Matho*; that he resolved to try the fortune of one battle: wherein either his own desire should be accomplished, or his cares ended. To this conclusion the *Carthaginians* were no less prone, than *Matho*: as being weary of these long troubles, and insupportable expences; confident in the valour of their own men, which had approved itself in many trials; and well assured of *Amilcar's* great worth, whereunto the enemy hath not what to oppose. According to this determination, each part was diligent in making provision: inviting their friends to help; and drawing forth into the field, all that lay in Garrison.

The issue of this battle might have been foretold, without help of witchcraft. *Matho*, and his followers, had nothing whereon to presume, save their daring spirits, which had been well cooled by the many late skirmishes, wherein they had learned how to run away. The *Carthaginians* had reason to dare, as having been often victorious; and in all points else they had the better of their enemies; especially (which is worth all the rest) they had such a Commander, as was not easily to be matched in that Age. Neither was it likely that the desire of liberty should work too much, in men accustomed to servitude, as the honour of their State would, in citizens, whose future & present good lay all at once engaged in that adventure. So the *Carthaginians* won a great victory, wherein most of the *Africans* their enemies were slain; the rest fled into a Town, which was not to be defended; & therefore they all yielded; and *Matho* himself was taken alive. Immediately upon this victory, all the *Africans* that had rebelled, made submission to their old masters: *Utica* only, and *Hippagreta* stood out, as knowing how little they deserved favour. But they were soon forced, to take what conditions best pleased the victors. *Matho* and his fellows were led to *Carthage* in triumph; where they suffered all torments that could be devised, in recompence of the mischiefs which they had wrought in this war. The war had lasted three years, and about four months, when it came to this good end: which the *Carthaginians*, whose subjects did not love them, should with less expence, by contenting their Mercenaries, have prevented in the beginning.

### §. IIII.

*How the Mercenaries of the Carthaginians, that were in Sardinia, rebelled: and were afterwards driven out by the Islanders. The faithlesse dealing of the Romans with the Carthaginians, in taking from them Sardinia, contrary to the peace.*

WHILEST *Matho* and *Spendius* were making terrible combustion in *Africa*; other Mercenaries of the *Carthaginians* had kindled the like fire in *Sardinia*: where murdering *Bostar* the Governour, and other *Carthaginians*, they were in hope to get, and hold that Island to their own use. Against these, one *Hanno* was sent with a small Army (such as could be spared in that busie time) consisting likewise of Mercenaries, levied on the sudden. But these companies that followed *Hanno*, finding it more for their safety, & present profit, to joyn themselves with those that were already revolted, than to endanger themselves by battail, for the good of that common-weal, of which they had no care; began to enter into practice with the *Sardinian* Rebels, offering to run one course of fortune with them in their enterprise. This their offer was kindly taken; but their faith was suspected. Wherefore to take away all jealousie and distrust, they resolved to hang up their Commander *Hanno*, and performed it. A common practice it hath been in all Ages, with those that have undertaken the quarrell of an unjust war, to enjoyne the performance of some notorious and villainous act,

to those that come in to them as seconds, with offer to partake, and to assist the impious purposes which they have in hand. It is indeed the best pawn; that desperate men can deliver to each other, to performe some such actions, as are equally unpardonable to all.

By such a kinde of cruelty did the ungratefull *Mantineans* murder a Garrison of *Achians*, sent unto them for their defence against the *Lacedaemonians*, by *Aratus*; who, when he had formerly possessed himself of their City, by right of war, did not only spare the sack and spoil thereof, but gave them equal freedom, with the rest of the Cities united. These *Revolts* are also common in our Court wars; where, in the conquests of new fortunes, and making of new parties, and factions, without the destruction or destruction of old friends, we cannot be received and trusted by old enemies. *Cesont les coups de vieille escrime. These* (say the *French*) be the blowes of the old art of fencing.

These Mercenaries in *Sardinia* were no whit less violent in their purpose; than were *Spendius*, and his associates: only they wanted a *Matho* among them, to negotiate with the inhabitants of the Province. The Islanders were no less glad, than the souldiers, that the *Carthaginians* were expelled the Country: but they could not agree about the profit of the victory. The *Sardinians* thought that it was enough, if they rewarded the souldiers for their pains taken. Contrariwise, the souldiers were of opinion, that the title of the *Carthaginians* to that Ile, was devolved unto themselves, by right of conquest. The same quarrell would (in likelihood) have risen between *Spendius* with his Mercenaries, & their *African* friends; if the common desire of both had once taken effect: unless the riches of *Carthage* had served to content them all. But in *Sardinia*, where there was none other valuable reward, than possession and rule of the Country; the matter was not easily taken up. So they fell to blowes; which how they were dealt, I know not; but finally the Mercenaries were driven out, and compelled to save themselves in *Italy*. Before their departure out of *Sardinia*, they had invited the *Romans* into it, with as good right, as the *Mamertines* had called them into *Sicily*. Yet this offer was refused, upon reasons that follow.

Some *Italian* Merchants had relieved *Matho* and *Spendius* with corn: of whom the *Carthaginians* took almost five hundred, and held them in prison. Hereof was made a great complaint: so that the *Romans* sent Embassadors to *Carthage*, requiring satisfaction. It was no time for the *Carthaginians* to dispute: they quietly yielded to release them all. This was so kindly taken, that they forbade all their Merchants, to trade thenceforth with the Rebels; admonishing them to carry all provisions to *Carthage*. And upon the same reason, did they forbear to meddle with *Sardinia*, or to accept the City of *Utica*, offering it self unto their subjection. This might have served, as a notable example of the *Roman* faith, to all posterity: had not the issue proved, that it was meer regard of greater profit, which kept them so temperate, no longer than the hope lasted of thriving better thereby, than they should have done by open breach of faith. The whole estate of *Carthage* depended at that time, upon the virtue of *Amilcar*; who, had he been overthrown by *Spendius* or *Matho*, in one main battail, that mighty City must either have fallen into the barbarous hands of mercilesse villains, or have humbled her self under protection of the *Romans*, with whom she had lately striven for superiority. That extreme necessity, whereinto *Matho* reduced the City, by the fortune of one fall made out of *Tunis*, is enough to prove, that *Carthage* was not far from such a miserable choice. Wherefore it was not unwisely done of the *Romans*, to make such demonstration of kindnesse, and honourable dealing; as might invite a rich, but sinking ship, to run her self aground upon their shore. But when all was well ended in *Africa*, and the *Carthaginians* began to prepare for the recovery of *Sardinia*; then did Ambition put off her goodly vizour. The *Romans* perceiving that *Carthage*, beyond their hope, had recovered her feet again; began to strike at her head. They entertained the proffer of those Mercenaries, that were fled out of *Sardinia*; and they denounced war against the enfeebled and impoverished City, under a shamelesse pretence, that the preparas. *As made for Sardinia, were made indeed against Rome itself.* The *Carthaginians* knew themselves unable to resist; and therefore yielded to the *Romans* demand; renouncing unto them all their right in *Sardinia*. But this was not enough. They would have twelve hundred talents, in recompence belike (for I see



not what reason they could alledge) of the great fear which they had endured, of an invasion from *Carthage*. It is indeed plain, that they impudently sought occasion of war. But necessity taught the *Carthaginians* patience; and the money was payed, how hardly soever it was raised. From this time forward, let not *Rome* complain of the *Punic* faith, in breach of Covenants: she her self hath broken the peace already, which *Amilcar* purposeth to make her dearly repent; but what *Amilcar* lives not to perform, shall be accomplished by *Hannibal* his renowned sonne.

## S. V.

*How the affairs of Carthage went between the African Rebellion, and the second Punic Warre.*

**T**He injurious dealing of the *Romans*, expressing their desire to pick a quarrell, served to instruct the *Carthaginians* in a necessary lesson; That either they must make themselves the stronger, or else resolve to be obedient unto those that were more mighty. In a City long accustomed to rule, the braver determination easily took place; and the best means were thought upon, for the increase of puissance and Empire. The strength, and the jealousie of the *Romans*, forbade all attempts upon the *Mediterranean* Seas; but the riches of *Spain*, that lay upon the *Ocean*, were unknown to *Rome*: wherefore that Province might serve, both to exercise the *Carthaginians* in war, and to repair their decayed forces, with all needfull supplies. Of the *Spanish* Expedition, the charge and sovereign trust was committed unto *Amilcar*: upon whom his Country did wholly repose it self; in hope to recover strength by his means, that had saved it from ruine.

*Hanno*, with some other envious men that were of his faction, took little pleasure in the generall love and honour, which daily increased towards *Amilcar* and his friends. Yet could they not deny him to be the most worthy of command in all the City: only they commended peace and quietnesse; advising men to beware of provoking the *Romans*, in whose amity they said, that the felicity of *Carthage* did consist. By such discourses, harsh to the ears of good Citizens, who had feeling of the wrong done to their Common-weal, they got none other reputation, than of singularity: which the ignorant sort suspected to be wisdom.

But the glory of *Amilcar* was continually upheld and enlarged, by many notable services that he did, to the singular benefit of his Country. He passed the Straights of *Hercules*, (now called the Straights of *Gibraltar*) and landed on the western coasts of *Spain*, in which Country, during nine years that he lived there, he subjected unto the State of *Carthage* the better part of all those Provinces. But finally in a battell that he fought with a Nation in *Portugale*, called the *Vettones*, (defending himself along time with an admirable resolution) he was invironed and slain: carrying with him to the grave the same great honour and fame, by which in many signall victories, he had acquired the name of a second *Mars*.

After the death of *Amilcar*, *Asdrubal* his son in law was made Generall of the *Carthaginian* forces in *Spain*. This was a good man of war; but far better in practice and cunning than in deeds of armes. By his notable dexterity in matter of negotiation, he greatly enlarged the Dominion of *Carthage*: adding so many subjects and confederates thereunto, that the *Romans* began to grow jealous again of this hasty increase. He built a goodly City, upon a commodious Haven, in the Kingdome of *Granada*, opposite to that of *Oran* in *Africa*, and gave it the name of *New Carthage*, which to this day it nearly retaineth, being called now *Carthagena*. With this successe of the *Carthaginians* in *Spain*, the *Romans* were not a little troubled; but began to accuse their own negligence. For whereas they had formerly taken so much pains to beat them out of the Isle of *Sicily*, as suspecting their neighbourhood there; they had now, by cumbering themselves in a war of far lesse importance, (whereof I shall speak anon) given them leisure without interruption, to recover upon their own Continent, a Dominion by far exceeding, both in the bodies of men and in revenue, that which the *Romans* had taken from them. But how to help this, at the present they know not; for they daily expected to be invaded by the *Gauls*, their ancient enemies, and nearest neighbours to the West. But he needeth little help of force, that knoweth himself to be feared: it is enough to be request,

\* The Spaniards have since built a City of the same name in the West Indies: which being peopled by them in the year 1533, was taken by the English in the year 1585.

request, since his request shall have the vertue of a command.

Yet were the *Romans* utterly destitute of all good colour, that might help them to intermeddle in *Spain*. The *Spaniards* were then unacquainted with *Rome*; whereof (in probability) they scarce had heard the name: so that there were no *Mamertines*, nor other such Rebels, to call in *Roman* succours, but in the enterprise of *Sardania*, the *Romans* had learned an impudent pretence, that might also serve their turn in *Spain*. For though it were apparent, that the *Spanish* affairs had no relation to the peace between these two Cities; and though it were nothing likely, that *Asdrubal* had any purpose, to extend his victories unto the gates of *Rome*, or to any of the *Roman* frontiers: yet (as if some such matter had been suspected) they sent unto him, requiring that he should forbear to proceed any further, than to the River of *Iberus*. In addressing their messengers, rather to *Asdrubal*, than to the City of *Carthage*; they seem to have hoped, that howsoever the generality of the *Carthaginians* had sweetly swallowed many bitter pills, to avoid all occasion of war with *Rome*, yet the bravery of one man might prove more salutious, and relenting the injury, return such answer, as would inangle his whole Country in the quarrell, that they too much desired; and might embrace at leisure, when once they had found apparent cause. But *Asdrubal* finely deluded their expectation. He pretended no manner of dislike at all: and whereas they would have this insolent covenant inserted into the Articles of peace, he took upon him to do it, of his own power, with such appearance of conformity to their will, that they went their wayes contented, and sought no further.

It had been so, that the State of *Carthage*, thereunto pressed by the *Romans*, for fear of present war, had ratified this new composition made by *Asdrubal*; yet should it not have stood bound in honour, to observe the same carefully, unless an oath had also been extorted, to make all sure. But since all passed quietly, under the bare authority of *Asdrubal*, this Capitulation was none other in effect than a second breach of peace; whereof the *Romans* might be accused more justly, than they could accuse the *Carthaginians* of perjury, (as they after did) for refusing to stand to it.

By this Treaty with *Asdrubal*, the *Romans* won some reputation in *Spain*. For when it was once conceived by the *Spaniards*, that the City which would needs be mistress over them, stood in fear her self, of receiving blowes from a flouter Dame; there were soon found some, that by offering themselves to the protection of *Rome*, became (as they thought) fellow-servants with *Carthage*. But the *Carthaginians* will shortly teach them another lesson. The *Saguntines*, a people on the South-side of *Iberus*, entered into confederacy with the *Romans*, and were gladly accepted. Surely it was lawful unto the *Romans*, to admit the *Saguntines*, or any other people (neither subject, nor open enemy in war to the *Carthaginians*) into their society: and unlawful it was unto the *Carthaginians*, to use violence towards any that should thus once become confederate with *Rome*. Nevertheless, if we consider the late agreement made with *Asdrubal*, we shall find that the *Romans* could have none other honest color of requiring it, than an implicit covenant of making the River *Iberus* a bound, over which they themselves would not pass, in any Discovery or Conquest by them intended to be made upon *Spain* in which regard, they might have some honest pretence to require the like of the *Carthaginians*; though time as yet had no foot, on the one side of *Iberus*, whereas *Carthage*, on the other side of that River, held almost all the Country. Howsoever it were, this indignity was not so easily digested, as former injuries had been. For it was a matter of ill consequence, that the Nations which had heard of no greater power than the *Carthaginians*, should behold *Saguntum* resting securely among them, upon confidence of help from a more mighty City. Wherefore either in this respect, or for that the sense is most feeling of the latest injuries, or rather for that now the *Carthaginians* were of power to do themselves right: war against *Saguntum* was generally thought upon, let the *Romans* take it how they list. In such termes were the *Carthaginians*, when *Asdrubal* died, after he had commanded in *Spain* eight years: (being slain by a slave, whose master he had put to death) and the Great *Hannibal*, son of the Great *Amilcar*, was chosen Generall in his stead.

## §. VI.

*The estate of Greece from the death of Pyrrhus, to the reign of Philip the sonne of Demetrius in Macedon.*

IN the long term of the first Punick war; and the vacation following, between it and the second; the estate of Greece, after the death of Pyrrhus, was grown somewhat like unto that, wherein Philip of Macedon had found it; though far weaker, as in an after-spring. The whole Country had recovered by degrees, a form of liberty: in petty tyrannies (bred of those inferiour Captains, which in the times of generall combustion, had seized each upon such towns as he could get) were, by force or accident, extirpated, and reformed; & some States were risen to such greatness, as not only served to defend themselves, but to give protection to others. This conversion to the better, proceeded from the like dissensions and tumults in Macedon, as had been in Greece, when Philip first began to encroach upon it. For after many quarrels and great wars, about the Kingdome of Macedon, between Antigonus the elder, Cassander, Demetrius, Lysimachus, Seleucus, Pyrrhus, and the Gauls: Antigonus the son of Demetrius, finally got and held it, reigning six and thirty years; yet so, that he was divers times thence expelled, not only by the Gauls, and by Pyrrhus, as hath been already shewed, but by Alexander the son of Pyrrhus the Epirot, from whose father he had hardly won it. This hapned unto him, by the revolt of his souldiers, even at such time, as having overthrowen with great slaughter an Army of the Gauls, he was converting his forces against the Athenians, whom he compelled to receive his Garrisons. But his young son Demetrius raised an Army, wherewith he chased Alexander, not only out of Macedon, but out of his own Epirus, and restored his father to the Kingdome.

By the help of this young Prince Demetrius (though in another kind) Antigonus got into his possession the Citadell of Corinth; which was justly termed the fetter of Greece. The Citadell called *Acrorinthus*, stood upon a steep rocky hill on the North side of the town, and was by nature and art so strong, that it seemed impregnable. It commanded the town; which was of much importance, as occupying the whole breadth of the *Isthmus*, that running between the *Ægean* and *Jonique* Seas, joyneth *Peloponnesus* to the main of Greece. Wherefore he that held possession of this Castle was able to cut off all passage by land, from one half of Greece unto the other; besides the commodity of the two Seas, upon both of which, this rich and goodly City had commodious havens. Alexander, the son of *Polyperchon*; and after his death, *Cratesipolis* his wife, had gotten Corinth in the great shuffling of Provinces and Towns, that was made between Alexanders Princes. Afterwards it passed from hand to hand, untill it came, I know not how, to one Alexander, of whom I finde nothing else, than that he was thought to be poisoned by this Antigonus, who deceived his wife *Nicæa* thereof, and got it from her by a trick. The device was this. Antigonus sent his young Demetrius to Corinth, willing him to court *Nicæa*, and seek her marriage. The foolish old widow perceived not how unfit a match she was for the young Prince, but entertained the fancy of marriage; whereto the old King was even as ready to consent, as was his son to desire, and came thither in person to solemnize it. Hereupon all Corinth was filled with sacrifices, feasts, plaies, and all sorts of games: in the midst of which, Antigonus watched his time, and got into the Castle, beguiling the poor Lady, whose jealousy had been exceeding diligent in keeping it. Of this purchase he was so glad, that he could not contain himself within the gravity becoming his old age. But as he had stolen it; so was it again stollen from him: neither lived he to revenge the losse of it, being already spent with age.

Demetrius, the son of this Antigonus, succeeding unto his father, reigned ten years. He made greater proof of his vertue before he was King, than after. The *Dardanians*, *Ætolians*, and *Achaïans*, held him continually busied in war; wherein his fortune was variable, and for the more part ill. About these times the power of the Macedonians began to decay: and the *Græcians* to cast off their yoke.

Philip, the only son of Demetrius, was a young child when his father died; and therefore Antigonus, his uncle, had the charge of the Kingdome, during the minority of the Prince;

Prince; but he assumed the name and power of a King, though he respected Philip as his own son, to whom he left the Crown at his death; This Antigonus, was called the Tutor, in regard of his protectorship; and was also called *Dofon*, that is as much as, *Will-giver*, because he was slow in his liberality. He repressed the *Dardanians* and *Thesalians*, which molested his Kingdome, in the beginning of his reign. Upon confidence of this good service, he took state upon him, as one that rather were King in his own right, than only a Protector. Hereupon the people fell to mutiny; but were soon appeased by fair words, and a seeming unwillingness of his to meddle any more with the Government. The *Achaïans* took from him the city of *Athens*, soon after Demetrius his death; and likely they were to have wrought him out of all, or most that he held in Greece, if his own estate had not been endangered by a neerer enemy. But civill dissension, which had overthrowen the power of Greece, when it flourished most; overthrow it easily now again, when it had scarcely recovered strength after a long sickness; and gave to this Antigonus no lesse authority therein, than Philip the father of Alexander, got by the like advantage.

These *Achaïans* from small beginnings, had increased in short time to great strength and fame: so that they grew the most redoubted Nation of all the *Greeks*. By the equality of their Lawes, and by their clemency (notwithstanding that they were a long time held under by the *Macedonians* and *Spartans*) they did not only draw all others by their love and alliance, but induced, through their example, the rest of the Cities of *Peloponnesus*, to be governed by one Law, and to use one and the same sort of weights, measure, and money.

*Aratus*, the *Sicyonian*, was the first that united them again; and gave them courage, after that they had been by the *Macedonian* Captains divided into many Principalities. In elder times they were governed by Kings, as most of the great Cities of Greece were; to which kind of rule they first subjected themselves, after the descent of the *Heracida*, when *Tisamenus* the son of *Orestes* possessed the Territory of *Achaia*. In this estate they continued to the time of *Gyges*, after whom, when his sons sought to change the Legall government of their Predecessors into Tyranny, they expelled them, and made their State popular; as seeming most equall. This form of Common-weal had continuance, with some small changes according to the diversity of times, till the reign of Philip and Alexander Kings of Macedon: who tempest-like overturned all things in that part of the world. For those twelve Cities, called the Cities of alliance, wherof *Helice*, and *Dona* or *Olenus*, the Sea had eaten up a little before the Battail of *Leutres*; were, by disturbance of the *Macedonians*, divided from each other, and trained into a war, no lesse foolish than cruell, among themselves. But in the one hundred and four and twentieth *Olympiad*, in which, or near it, *Ptolemy* the son of *Lagus*, *Lysimachus*, *Seleucus*, and *Ptolemy Ceraunus*, left the world; two of ten remaining Cities and people, namely, the *Patenses* and the *Dimeis*, united themselves, and laid the foundation of that generall accord, and re-union, which after followed. For having been, some of them *Partisans* with sundry *Macedonian* Captains, and others having been governed by petty Kings; they began to fasten themselves in a strong league of amity, partly, in the *Olympiad* before spoken of, and partly, at such time as Pyrrhus made his first voyage into Italy. Now after the uniting of the *Patenses* and *Dimeis*, to whom also the Cities of *Tiræa*, and *Phars*, joyned themselves; *Agira* chased out her Garrisons: and the *Burians*, killing their Kings, entred with the *Ceraunians* into the same Confederacy. These Cities, for twenty and five years, used the same form of Government with the *Achaïans*; who by a Senator and two Prætors, ordered all things in their Common-weal; and soon after by one Prætor, or Commander: of which, *Marcus Carynensis* was the first, and *Aratus* the second.

This *Aratus* was a noble young Gentleman of *Sicyon*, who living at *Argos* in exile, whilst his Country was oppressed by Tyrants, found means, through the help of other banished men, to enter their own city by night, with ladders; whence they chased the Tyrant, and restored the people to liberty. This was in the time of Antigonus *Gonatas* King of Macedon, a Prince more busie in watching what to get among the *Greeks*, than wise in looking to his own. For fear of Antigonus, the *Sicyonians* enter into the *Achaïan* league: which though at that time it received more increase by their accession than it added strength to them; yet the benefit of this conjunction served well enough against

against *Antigonus*, whose subtilty was somewhat greater than his valour. As the industry and counsaile of *Aratus* delivered his Country from bondage, and fortified it by the *Achaian* league; so further, by his great liberality, with the exceeding great cost of 150. talents, he pacified the inexplicable controversies, which the banished *Sicyonians*, which returned with him, & the other Citizens that had possession of these mens Lands, as also with the same money he drew many others to assist him in those enterprizes following, that redounded to the singular good of all *Achaia*. The money he obtained of *Ptolemy Evergettes* King of *Egypt*, who partly had a desire to hold some strong & sure friendship in *Greece*, partly was delighted with the conversation of *Aratus* himself, that made a dangerous voyage to him into *Egypt*, and fed his pleasure in goodly pictures, with the gift of many curious pieces, wherein the workmen of *Sicyon* excelled.

The first of *Aratus* his great attempts, was the surprize of the *Acrocorinthus* or Citadel of *Corinth*; which he wan by night, being thereto guided by some thieves that he had hired for the purpose, who living in the place, had practised to rob *Antigonus* his treasury, passing in and out by a secret path among the rocks. Yet was he fainto fight for it, ere he could get it: though indeed *Antigonus* his souldiers were rather overcome by their own fear, than by any force of the assailants; as mistrusting lest the *Achaians* were more in number, than in truth they were, and having lost the advantages of the place already, upon which they had presumed, before they were aware of any enemy.

In these kind of night-services, ambushments, surprizes, and practices, *Aratus* was very cunning, adventurous, and valiant: in open field, and plain battail, he was untimorous. By this strange mixture of cowardize and courage, he ministred argument of disputation, to Philosphers and others; Whether a valiant man (as he was esteemed, and in some cases approved) might look pale and tremble, when he began battail; and whether the vertue of Fortitude were diversified, by the sundry natures of men, & in a manner confined unto severall sorts of action. In resolving which doubts it may be said, that all vertue is perfected in men by exercise, wherein they are trained by occasion: though a naturall inclination standeth in need of little practice; whereas the defect hereof must be supplied with much instruction, life, good successe, and other help, yet hardly shall grow absolute in generall. Such was *Aratus* in matter of Warre. In sincere affection to his Country he was unreprouable, and so acknowledged: as his following actions will truly testifie.

When *Acrocorinthus* was taken, and joyned unto the Common-wealth of *Achaia* the *Megarians* revolted soon after from *Antigonus*, and entred into the same Corporation. So did the *Traxenians*, and the *Epidaurians*: whereby this new erected State grew to powerfull, that it adventured to take *Athens*, from the *Macedonians*, & *Argos* & *Megapolis*, from tyrants that held them. The enterprize upon the *Athenians* was of none effect. For though *Aratus* wasted the Ile of *Salamis*, to shew his strength, and sent home the *Athenian* prisoners, without ranfome, to allure the City by shew of love; yet the *Athenians* stirred neither against him, nor for him, as being now grown honest slaves to the *Macedonians*. Upon *Argos* the adventure was carried more strongly. The *Achaians* came sometimes to the gates of the City, but the people stirred not: once they entered it, and might have won it, if the Citizens would have lent any help to the recovery of their own freedome; sundry times, and with diverse events, they fought with the Tyrants, (who rose up one after another in *Argos*) in open field, and slue one of them in battail; but all sufficed not: untill at length *Aristomachus* the Tyrant was terrified, perswaded, and hired by *Aratus*, that he consented to resigne his Estate. The like did *Xenon* the Tyrant of *Hermione*, and *Cleonymus*, that had oppressed the *Phisians*.

Whilest this business with the *Argives* was on foot, *Lyfias* the Tyrant of *Megalopolis*, was so well handled by *Aratus*, that, without compulsion, he gave liberty to his City, and annexed it to the Councell of *Achaia*: whereby he got such credit, that he was chosen Generall of their forces (which was a yearly Office, and might not be held two years together by one man): every second year, for a certain while, he and *Aratus* succeeded one another by turnes. But those late Tyrants, and new Citizens, *Lyfias* and *Aristomachus*, were carried with private passion from care of the generall good, in which courtes they opposed *Aratus*, to the great hurt of *Achaia*, as shall appear in due time.

The

The *Achaens* having obtained so much puissance and reputation, that *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt* was become Patron of their Alliance, and (in title of honour) Generall of their forces by Sea and Land; made open War upon *Demetrius* the son of *Antigonus Gonatas*, for the liberty of *Athens*. It is strange and worthy of noting, That when *Aratus* in this quarrell had lost a battail, the *Athenians* wore Garlands, in sign of joy, to flatter their good Lords the *Macedonians*, that had won the victory. Such were now the *Athenians* become; in whom the rule was verified, that holds true in generall of the multitude, *Aut humiliter servit, aut superbe dominatur*; It is either base in service, or insolent in command. Nevertheless when *Demetrius* was dead, *Aratus* performed that by money, which he could not by force; and corrupting the Captain of the *Macedonian* Garrison, purchased liberty to the *Athenians*, who thenceforth held good correspondence with the *Achaens*, loving them, and speaking well of them, which was all that they could do: but into their Corporation they entred not, scorning it belike, in regard of their own out-worn glory.

Now as the Common-wealth of *Achaia* daily increased within *Peloponnesus*, by justice and honesty; so did the *Aetolians*, in the utter part of *Greece*, yea and within *Peloponnesus* it self, wax very powerfull, by sturdiness of body, and rude courage in fight, without help of any other vertue. They had stoutly defended themselves against *Antipater* and *Cyrtus*, partly by daring to do and suffer much, partly by the natural strength and fastness of their Country; but especially by the benefit of the time, which called away these famous Captains to other business, as hath been related. They had molested *Alexander*, in favour of *Antigonus*, & were themselves as much plagued by him, & by the *Acarnanians*, a little, but a stout Nation, that took his part. Afterwards they had to do with *Demetrius*, the son of the first *Antigonus*, and more or lesse with all the Kings of *Macedon* succeeding him. They likewise held often war with the *Acarnanians*, *Atbamanians*, *Epirots*, and many Cities in *Peloponnesus*: so that they were hardned with perpetual travail; seldom putting off their Armour. But their hardiness ill deserved the name of valour, seeing they had no regard of honesty or friendship, measuring all things by their own inolent wils, and thinking all people base-minded, that were not as fierce and outrageous as themselves.

These *Aetolians* had lately made great spoils in *Peloponnesus*, and occupied a good part of the Country. They had invaded the friends of the *Achaens*; taken and sacked *Fallene*; where although they were foundly beaten by *Aratus*, yet their desire of gain made them make a new voyage thither, as to a Country wherin somewhat was to be gotten. But they were forced to look another way, by *Demetrius* the son of *Antigonus Gonatas*: who pressed them so hardly, that they were driven to seek help of the *Achaens*; which they obtained. The war which the *Achaens* made upon *Demetrius*, without *Peloponnesus*, in *Attica*, though it tended to expelling the *Macedons* out of *Greece*, yet the benefit thereof redounded chiefly unto the *Aetolians*, at whose instance it was let on foot: for thereby were the *Macedonian* forces diverted from them. Neither was this good turn unacknowledged; though very basely the *Aetolians*, giving thanks in words, devised how to requite the benefit with some great mischief. They saw that the *Achaens* were desirous to bring all *Peloponnesus* into their Alliance & Corporation: of which intent, the *Lacedamonians* were very jealous. Wherefore these *Aetolians* laboured earnestly, to set the *Lacedamonians* and *Achaens* together by the ears: hoping that if this might come to passe, they themselves should be called in to help (it skilled not on what side) and so get no small share, both in booty and Territory. Neither did they forbear to communicate this their device unto *Antigonus*, offering to make him partaker of their gain, whom they knew to be offended with the many losses, that this Kingdom had sustained by the *Achaens*. Of this plot *Aratus* was aware: who therefore determined to suffer many indignities, rather than to give the *Lacedamonians* cause to take Arms. But this resolution was taken somewhat too late: & not altogether in his own power to hold. He had been meddling with the *Arcadians*, that were dependants of *Lacedamon*: and thereby had provoked the *Lacedamonians* to look about them; seeing that all *Peloponnesus*, excepting themselves, the *Eleans*, and a few *Arcadians* their friends (who also were attempted) was already become *Achaean*.

The City of *Sparta* was in ill case about these times; and subject to the injuries of any stronger neighbour, *Pyrrhus* had greatly weakened it; The *Aetolians* entering *Laconia* with

an Army, had carryed away fifty thousand slaves; and, which was worse, their discipline was corrupted, Avarice and Luxury reigned among them, the poor was oppressed by the rich, and the generosity of spirit, that had sometime been their general virtue, was hardly now to be found among the best of them. There were left in *Sparta* no more than seven hundred natural Citizens, of whom not above one hundred had Lands; all the rest were needy people, and desirous of innovation. Hereupon followed intestine sedition; which endangered the City most of all. *Agis* a good King, who sought to reform the disorders of the State, exhorted the people to a strict observation of *Lycurgus*'s lawes. To which purpose he caused them to passe an Act, for the abolishing of all debts, and equall division of Lands. All the younger, and poorer sort were glad of this: but the rich men opposed it. These had recourse unto *Leonidas* the other King, (for in *Sparta* were two Kings) who took their part: being himself a dissolute man, as one trained up in the Court of *Syria*, whence also he had his wife. In this contention *Leonidas* was expelled the City, and a new King chosen in his stead. But *Agis* his friends & Counsellors in this enterprise, abused his good meaning to their own private commodity. They were hasty to take away all debts, and cancell all bonds, for they themselves were deeply indebted: but the division of Lands they afterwards hindered, because their own possessions were great. Hence arose a tumult in *Sparta*, which these men increased by their foul oppression of the poorer Citizens. So that in fine, *Leonidas* was brought home, and restored to his Kingdom, and the two adverse Kings driven to take Sanctuary, out of which, *Cleombrotus*, the late-made King, was dismissed into exile: but *Agis* was trained forth, drawn into prison, and there by his enemies condemned and strangled, together with his Mother, and his old Grand-mother. The like to this was never known in *Sparta*: and (which is the more odious) this cruelty proceeded from the *Ephori*, Magistrates that should have given Patronage to the lawes, using their power, and more power than to them belonged, against a King, that had proceeded orderly in reforming the City as the law required.

The death of *Agis* was much lamented by all good Citizens; and served to establish the impotent rule of a few tyrannicall oppressors. In which case *Aratus* might well hope to adjoin *Lacedæmon* to the *Achaens* Common-wealth: though it were great injustice to take such advantages, and attempt by force, that which would have redounded to the generall good of *Peloponnesus*, and to the benefit of *Sparta* it self, if it could have been wrought by perswasion.

But the same man who redressed the disorders of *Sparta*, and revenged the death of *Agis*, did also requite the unjust attempts of the *Achaens*, even in their own kinde: obtruding upon them by force an union of all *Peloponnesus*, though little to their good liking, for that the *Lacedæmonians* and their King, should have been the principall; not they and their Prætor. *Leonidas* having thus caused *Agis* to be slain, took his wife that was very rich and beautifull, and gave her in marriage (perforce) to his own son *Cleomenes*. This young prince fell greatly enamoured on his wife, and sought to win her affection, as well as he had her person. He discoursed much with her about the purpose of her former husband *Agis*, and by pitying his misfortune, began to entertain a desire of accomplishing that, wherein *Agis* had failed. So comming himself to be King, whilst he was very young, he gladly embraced all occasions of War: for that he hoped by strong hand to effect that, which *Agis* by proceeding formally, in so corrupt an estate of the City, had attempted to his own ruine. Therefore when the *Ephori* gave him in charge, to take and fortifie *Atheneum*, a Temple on the marches of *Laconia*, to which both they and the *Megalopolitans* pretended title, he readily performed it. Hereof *Aratus* made no complaint, but fought to take by surprize *Tæga* & *Orchomenus*, Cities then confederate with the *Lacedæmonians*; wherein, his intelligence failing, he lost the labor of a painful nights travel, & discovered his enmity to *Sparta*; of which *Cleomenes* was nothing sorry. By these degrees the war began. In the entrance whereto *Aratus* had discovered the *Ætolian* practice, and therefore would have stayed the quarrel from proceeding too far. But *Lyfidas* and *Aristomachus* would needs fight, and he could do none other than be ruled by them; especially seeing *Cleomenes* was so urgent. *Aristomachus* was at that time Generall of the *Achaens*, (He and *Lyfidas* being of great account, since they had abandoned their tyranny) who sent unto *Aratus*, lying then in *Athens*, and required his assistance in a journey to be made into *Laconia*. No dissuasions of *Aratus* would serve,

therefore

therefore he came in person, and took part of a businesse, little pleasing him in the present, and less in the future. When he met with *Cleomenes*, he durst not fight; but opposed himself against *Aristomachus*, who desired to give battail. Yet had the *Achaens* twenty thousand horse, and one thousand horse, in their Army: whereas *Cleomenes* had no more than five thousand in all. This gave reputation to the *Lacedæmonians*, & raised an ill report upon *Aratus*, which *Lyfidas* helped to make worse, by accusing his cowardice. Nevertheless the *Achaens* would not fall out with *Aratus* their Benefactor, but chose him their Generall the year following; against *Lyfidas* his accuser that sued for the place. Being Generall himself, it behoved him to confute, with deeds, the slanderous words of *Lyfidas*. Therefore he purposed to set upon the *Æleans*: but was met withall on the way, near unto the Mount *Lycaeus*, by *Cleomenes*, who vanquished him in a great battail, and drave him to hide himself all night for fear, so that he was thought to have been slain. This misadventure *Aratus* recovered by a trick of his own more naturall occupation: performing with his broken Army, that which could hardly have been expected, had he been victorious. For whilst there was no suspicion of any great matter that he could undertake; he suddenly wrought with some of the *Mantiniens*, who did let him into their city. These *Mantiniens*, (whom he had thus brought to his purpose) had once before joyned themselves with the *Achaens*; but shortly upon fear, or some other passion, they gave themselves to the *Ætolians*; and from the *Ætolians*, presently after this victory, to *Cleomenes*, from whom immediately they were thus won. For this their levity they were not punished, but freely admitted now again into the *Achaen* Society. As this good success repaired the credit of *Aratus*; so another battail almost ruined it. *Cleomenes* and he encountered near unto *Megalopolis*; where the *Achaens* had somewhat the better at the first, but their Generall durst not follow his advantage. Thereupon *Lyfidas*, of whom we spake before, grew somewhat impatient with anger; & taking with him all the horse, brake upon the *Lacedæmonians*, whom he routed at the beginning, but pursuing them too far into places of hard passage, he was slain by them and his followers driven back upon their own Companions; in such sort, that finally all the Army was disordered and put to flight. This was a great losse and incensed the *Achaens* against *Aratus*: yet their indignation proceeded no further, than that they refused to make any longer contribution, towards the pay of those Mercenaries which he had waged. This *Aratus* took patiently, and followed the war nevertheless; where, although *Cleomenes* wan some Towns, and *Aratus* got the better in one small fight, yet little of importance was done; the *Achaens* being weary, and the *Spartan* King intensive in another businesse.

*Cleomenes* having led into the field all that were like to hinder his purpose, and tired them with painfull journeyes, forsook the *Achaen* war on a sudden, and came unexpected home to *Sparta*, where he slew the *Ephori*, and restored by force the ancient discipline of *Lycurgus*. Then gave he an account of his doings: and shewing by what degrees the *Ephori* had incroched upon the power of Kings, & many disorders had grown in the City; he justified his proceedings, and forthwith began to make equal division of the Lands, reducing all to the first institution. He also supplied the defect of Citizens, by choosing new, out of such as were friends to the State, and valiant men: so that henceforth his Country might not altogether stand in need of Mercenary help, as he lately had done, to save it self from the *Ætolians*, *Illyrians*, and such other enemies. All this was dispatched in great haste; the *Spartans* well satisfied, and *Cleomenes* himself ready in the field, ere his enemies could take any advantage of these his domestick troubles.

The *Achaens* hearing of this great alteration in *Sparta*, thought that it would be long ere *Cleomenes* durst issue forth of the City, for fear of some rebellion. But it was not long ere they heard, that he had wasted all the Country of *Megalopolis*, had ranged over all *Argolis* at his pleasure; and was admitted into *Mantinea*; and ready to take other places, even of *Æchia*. These newes displeased them not a little: but they must patiently endure to hear worse. For when *Cleomenes* had shaken off the power of the *Ephori*, that curbed his authority, he proceeded more roundly in his works, being better obeyed and by better men. His *Lacedæmonians* resumed their ancient courage; and he himself had the heart to demand the Principality of *Greece*. He did not therefore henceforth contend about the possession of a few Towns: but adventured to win or lose all.

all. The *Aetolians*, in favour of his attempt, declared themselves on his side : and whereas as he had gotten *Mantineæ*, *Tegen*, and other places, to which they had some title, they willingly renounced all their interest unto him.

*Aratus* did apprehend the danger of his Country, and saw that *Antigonus*, with the *Aetolians*, or perhaps without them, would shortly make an end of that, which *Cleomenes* had thus begun. Therefore he advised how to provide against the worst, and either to repair all, or (if it could not be) to save all from utter ruin. The office of General, when it was next put upon him, he refused, fearing to be so far prest, as to hazard in one battail all the force of his Country, to which as he had never any affection; nor perchance courage, so was his manner of warfare otherwise. For he commonly attempted by surprise, and defended upon the advantage of place, after the manner of the *Irish*, and of all other Nations, overcharged with numbers of men. Yet did he not forsake the care of the Weal publique, though in aiming at the generall good, it seems that private passion drew him into an ill course. He saw, that *Megalopolis* could not be defended without making a dangerous hazard of battail; that *Mantineæ* had not only opened her gates unto *Cleomenes*, but slain the *Achaean* Garrison that lay therein; that other Towns had yielded unto him, without compulsion; and that *Arifomachus*, once Tyrant of *Argos*, and since General of the *Achaens*, was now revolted unto the enemy, following the fortune of *Cleomenes*. *Ptolemy* was too far of to help, and the nearness of *Antigonus* was very dangerous; yet might be usefull, if this King would (as *Polybius* saith) like others, be friend or enemy, as should best agree with his own profit. To make triall hereof, *Aratus* practised with some of *Megalopolis*, whom he found apt unto his purpose; and instructed them how to deal both with *Antigonus*, and the *Achaens*.

The City of *Megalopolis* had been well affected to the *Macedonians*, ever since the time of *Philip* the Father of *Alexander*, who had obliged it unto him by some especial benefits. At this time it lay nearest unto the danger; was very faithfull, and therefore deserved succour; yet could not well be relieved by the *Achaens*, with their own proper strength. Wherefore it was thought meet, that Embassadours should be sent unto the Generall Council of *Achaia*, requesting leave and good allowance, to try the favour of *Antigonus* in their necessity. This was granted, for lack of what else to answer; and the same Embassadours dispatched away to *Antigonus*. They did their own errand briefly, telling him of the good will and respect which their City had of long time borne unto him and his Predecessors; of their present need; and how it would agree with his honour to give them aid. But when they delivered the more generall matter, wherein *Aratus* had given them instruction; shewing how the ambition of *Cleomenes*, and violence of the *Aetolians*, might redound to his own great loss or danger, if the one and the other were not in time prevented; how *Aratus* himself did stand affected; and what good likelihood there was of reducing the *Achaens* under the Patronage of *Macedon*: then began *Antigonus* to lend a more attentive ear to their discourse. He embraced the motion: and to give it the more life, he wrote unto the *Megalopolitans*, that his help should not be wanting, so far forth, as it might stand with the *Achaens* good liking. Particularly he commended himself by these Messengers to *Aratus*; assuring them, that he thought himself highly bound to this honourable man, whose former actions be now perceived, not to have been grounded upon any hatred to the *Macedonians*, but only upon a just and worthy love to his own Nation. With this answer they returned to *Megalopolis*: & are presently sent away to the Council of *Achaia*; there to make some speedy conclusion, as the necessity of the time required. The *Achaens* were glad to hear, that *Antigonus* was so inclinable to their desire; and therefore were ready to entertain his favour, with all good correspondence. Hereunto *Aratus* gave his consent; and praised the wisdom of his Countrimen, that so well discerned the best and likeliest means of their common safety: adding nevertheless, that it were not amiss, first of all to try their own ability, which if it failed, then should they do well to call in this gracious Prince, and make him their Patron and Protector. Thus he shewed himself moderate; in that which himself of all others did most wish: to the end, that he might not afterward sustain the common reprehension, if any thing fell out amiss; since it might appear, that he had not been Author of this Decree, but only followed, and that leisurely, the generall consent.

Nevertheless

Nevertheless, in true estimation, this fineness of *Aratus* might have been used, with his greater commendation, in a contrary course. For it had bin more honourable to make an end of the war, by yielding unto *Cleomenes* that power which they gave unto *Antigonus*: since thereby he should both have freed his country from all further trouble, and withal, should have restored unto the universall state of *Greece*, that honourable condition, whereof the *Macedonians* had bereft it. But it is commonly found, (which is greatly that Virtue, having risen to honour by degrees, and confirmed it self, (as it were) in the fear of principality, by length of time, and success of many actions, can ill endure the hasty growth of any others reputation, wherewith it sees it self likely to be overtopped. Other cause to despise the *Lacedaemonians* there was none, than that they lately had been in dangerous case: neither could any reason be found, why *Aratus* should prefer *Antigonus* before *Cleomenes*, than that he had stood in doubt of the one, when he thought himself more mighty than the other. Wherefore he was justly plagued, when he saw his own honours reversed by the insolent *Macedonians*: and in stead of living as a companion with *Cleomenes*, that was descended of a long race of Kings; the posterity of *Heracles*, was faine to do sacrifice unto *Antigonus*; as unto a god, and was finally poisoned by *Philip*, whose Nobility was but of five descents, and whom perhaps he might have seen his fellowes, if he had not made them his Lords. By this inclination to the *Macedonians*, the love of *Ptolemy* was lost: who forthwith took part with *Cleomenes*, though he did not supply him with such liberality, as he had used to the *Achaens*; being warned, as may seem, by their example, to be more wary both in trusting and disburfing. *Cleomenes* himself, whilest this business with *Antigonus* was a-foot, passed through *Acadia* with an Army, and laboured by all means to draw the *Achaens* to battell. At the City of *Dymes* in *Achaia* were assembled all the remaining forces of the Nation; with which it was concluded to make triall, whether perhaps they might amend their estate, without seeking help of the *Macedonian*. Thither went *Cleomenes*, & there fought with them; where he had so great a victory, that the enemy was no longer able to keep the open field. The calamity was such, that *Aratus* himself durst not take upon him to betheir General, when his turn came in the next election. Wherefore the *Achaens* were compelled to sue for peace, which was granted upon this easie condition: That they should not arrogate unto themselves the command of *Peloponnesus*; but suffer the *Lacedaemonians* (as in former ages) to be their Leaders in war. Hereunto if they would condescend, he promised unto them, that he would presently restore all places taken from them, and all his prisoners ransom-free: also that they should enjoy their own Laws and Liberties without molestation. This gentle offer of *Cleomenes* was very pleasing to the *Achaens*: who desired him to come to the City of *Lerna*, where a Parliament should be held, for the conclusion of the War.

Now seemed the affairs of *Greece* likely to be settled in better order, than they had ever been since the beginning of the *Peloponnesian* Wars, yea, or since the *Persian* invasion: when God, who had otherwise disposed of these matters, hindered all with a draught of cold water, which *Cleomenes* drank in great heat, and thereupon fell extreme sick, and so could not be present at *Lerna*, but caused the Parliament to be deferred to another time. Nevertheless he sent home the chief of his prisoners, to shew that he meant none other than good faith. By this fair dealing he confirmed the *Achaens* in their desire of his friendship: who assembled again at *Argos*, there to establish the League. But *Aratus* was violently bent against it, and fought by great words, and terrible threats, to make his Countrimen afraid of resolving. When all would not serve turn, he betook himself to his cunning; and sent word to *Cleomenes*, that he should do well to leave his Army behind him, and come alone into *Argos*, receiving hostages for safety of his person. *Cleomenes* was already far on his way, when he met with this advertisement; and took it in ill part, that he should be thus deluded. For it had been an easie matter, to have told him so much at the first, and not have made him come so far with an Army, which afterwards he must dismiss. Yet that which chiefly seems to have troubled him, was the drift of his oppugners, who fought thereby, either to make him wait without the gates, and deal only with themselves and their Messengers; or if he would adventure himself into the City, then to deprive him of all Royall shew, that might breed respect of him in the multitude. This was that indeed which *Aratus* feared, & for which he sought to hinder his coming thither in person; lest the people, hearing the promises

R r r r

of

of *Cleomenes* ratified by his own mouth, should presently be won with his gentle words, and finish the bargain without more ado. Therefore *Cleomenes* wrote unto the whole Councell, bitterly complaining against these juggling tricks: and *Aratus* was not far behinde with him, in as bitter an Oration. So between fear of the one, and reverence of the other, the Assembly knew not how to proceed, but abruptly brake up, leaving all, as it were to fortune. *Cleomenes* took his advantage of their present weakness, and renewed the War. Many Cities yielded unto him willingly; many he forced; and partly by force, partly by terror, he wan *Argos*, which never King of *Sparta* before him could do. In this case *Aratus* sent his own sonne to *Antigonus*, intreating him to defer no time, but come presently to relieve the distressed *Achaens*. *Antigonus* gave good words as could be wished: saving that he utterly refused to doe anything, unless he might first have *Acrocorinthus* put into his hands. This demand was somewhat like unto that of the Hunter, who promised to help the horse against his enemy the Stagge: but with condition, that the horse should suffer himself to be saddled and bridled. *Aratus* was herewithall contented, but wanted all honest colour to do it: seeing the *Corinthians* had no way deserved to be thus given away to the *Macedonians*. Yet at length an occasion was found, for that the *Corinthians*, perceiving what he intended, were minded to arrest him. So he withdrew himself out of their City, and sent word to *Antigonus*, that their Castle should be ready to let him in. The *Corinthians* on the other side ran to *Cleomenes*, who lost no time, but made haste with them to *Corinth*, where he sought how to get possession of their Castle, or at least to save it from *Antigonus*, by surrounding it within Trenches, that none might issue nor enter without his leave. Whilst this was doing, he took special order, that *Aratus* his house and goods, within the Town, should be kept for the Owner; to whom he sent Messenger after Messenger, desiring him to come to agreement, and not to bring in the barbarous *Macedonians*, and *Illyrians*, to *Peloponnesus*; promising, that if he would hearken to these persuasions, then would he give him double the same pension, which he had been wont to receive of King *Ptolemy*. As for the Castle of *Corinth*, which was the gate of *Peloponnesus*, and without which none could hold assured sovereignty of the Country; he desired that it might not be committed unto his own disposition, but be joyntly kept by the *Lacedemonians* and *Achaens*. All this entreaty served to no purpose. For *Aratus*, rejecting utterly the motion, sent his own son as an Hostage to *Antigonus*; and laboured with the *Achaens*, to put *Acrocorinthus* into his hands. Which when *Cleomenes* understood, he seized upon the goods of *Aratus* in *Corinth*, and wasted all the Countrey of *Sicyon*, whereof this his Adversary was native.

*Antigonus* in the mean time drew near to the *Isthmus*; having passed with his Army through *Eubœa*, because the *Ætolians* held the straights of *Thermopyla* against him. Thus they did, either in favour of *Cleomenes*, which they pretended; or in doubt of the greatness, whereunto the *Macedonians* might attain by the good success of this journey. At his coming thither he found the *Lacedemonians* ready to forbid his entrance: and that with sufficient strength; yet with no purpose to hazzard battell, but rather to weary him thence with hunger, against which he came not well provided. *Antigonus* therefore laboured hard to make his way by force; but he was not able for to doe: he secretly got into the *Corinthian* Haven; but was violently driven out again, with great loss of men; finally he resolved to turn aside, and seek a passage over the gulf of *Corinth*, to *Sicyon*, or some other part of *Achaia*; but this required much time, and great preparation, which was not easily made.

In this perplexity, newes from *Argos* came by Sea, that greatly comforted *Antigonus*, and no less troubled his enemies. The *Achaens* were gotten into that City; and the Garrison which *Cleomenes* had left therein, though it was not driven out of the Citadel, yet was hardly distressed, and stood in need of present help. *Argos* had always been enemy to *Sparta*, and well affected to the Kings of *Macedon*. When *Cleomenes* took it, he forbore to chase out those whom he most suspected; partly at the entreaty of friends, and partly for that they all made shew to be glad of his prosperity. They were glad indeed of *Cleomenes* his victories, both in *Argos* and elsewhere, as many as hoped that he would cause all debtors to be discharged from their creditors, as he had lately done in *Sparta*. But that which *Cleomenes* had done in *Sparta*, was agreeable to the *Spartan* institution: in other places, where it would have been tyrannicall, he did it not. Thereupon,

such as were disappointed of their unjust hopes, began to turn good Common-wealths men; and called him Tyrant for his doings at home, because he would not do the like abroad. So they took their time, invited the *Achaens*, assailed his Garrison, cut in pieces the rescue that he sent, and compelled him at length to forsake the defence of *Corinth*, and look unto the enemies that were behind his back. For when he understood by continual messengers, that his men which held the Citadell at *Argos* were almost lost: he began to fear lest his labour in guarding the entry should grow frivolous; the *Achaens* in the mean while spoiling all that lay within. Therefore he forsook his custody of the *Isthmus*, and made all haste towards *Argos*: which if he could save, he meant to trust fortune with the rest. And so far he prevailed at his coming to *Argos*, that both *Argives* and *Achaens* were glad to house themselves, leaving him Master of the streets: when the horsemen of *Antigonus* were discovered atar off, hastening to relieve the Citizens; and *Antigonus* himself (to whom *Corinth* was yielded, as soon as the *Spartan* had turned his back) following apace with the body of his Army. *Cleomenes* therefore had no more to do, then to make a safe retreat. This he did, and got him home into *Laconia*: losing in short space all, or most of that which he had been long in getting.

*Antigonus* having shewed himself at *Argos*, and commended the Citizens, went into *Arcadia*; where he wan such Castles as were held for *Cleomenes*, and restored them to the old Possessors. This done, he took his way to *Ægium*, where was held a Parliament by the *Achaens*; to whom he declared the cause of his coming, and spake brave words, that filled them with hope. The *Achaens* were not behind with him; but made him Captain-Generall over them and their Confederates: and further entered into covenant with him, That they would not deal with any Prince or State, either by writing or Embassadour, without his consent. All this while and somewhat longer, *Aratus* was the only man, that seemed to rule the Kings heart: carrying him to *Sicyon* his own Town, (for Winter was come on) where he not only feasted him as a great Prince, but suffered more than humane honours, as sacrifices and the like, to be done unto him. This example of *Aratus* and his *Sicyonians*, was followed by the rest of *Achaia*: which had made (forsooth) a very wise bargain, if in stead of *Cleomenes*, that would have been a King, he had obtained the protection of a God. But this God was poor, and wanting wherewith to pay his *Macedonians*, imposed the burthen upon the *Achaens*. This was hardly taken: yet worse must be endured in hope of better. Neither was *Aratus* himself over-carefully respected; when the statues of those Tyrants, which he had thrown down in *Argos*, were again erected by *Antigonus*; or when the statues which he had erected, of those that had taken *Acrocorinthus* with him, were all thrown down by the same King, and one only left unto himself at his earnest intreaty. It might therefore appear, that this God was also spitefull. Nevertheless in taking revenge upon those that offended him, *Aratus* did satiate his own passion by the aid of these *Macedonians*. For with extreme torments he did put *Aristomachus* to death, who had been once Tyrant of *Argos*: afterwards Generall of the *Achaens*, and from them revolving unto *Cleomenes*, did fall at length into their hands. In like sort handled he (though not as yet) the *Mantineans*, for their ingratitude and cruelty shewed to the *Achaens*. For he slew all the principall Citizens, and sold the rest, men, women, and children, all for bond-slaves: dividing the spoyle, two parts to the *Macedonians*, and the third to the *Achaens*. The Town itself was given by *Antigonus* to the *Argives*; who peopled it with a Colony of their own; and *Aratus* having charge of this business, caused it to be new-named *Antigonia*. Surely of this cruelty there can be no better excuse, than even the flattery, which *Aratus* was driven to use to *Antigonus*: forasmuch as it was a token of servility, wherinto they had urged and brought him, whom he, as in revenge thereof, did thus requite. But leaving to speak of this change, which the coming in of the *Macedonians* wrought in the Civil State of the *Achaens*, let us return unto this war against the *Lacedemonians*.

The next Summer *Antigonus* wan *Tigæa*, *Mantineæ*, *Orchomenus*, *Heræa*, & *Telphusa*: *Mantineæ* he dispeopled, as was said before; in *Orchomenus* he placed a Garrison of his *Macedonians*; the rest he restored to the *Achaens*, with whom he wintered at *Ægium*, where they held a Parliament. Once only *Cleomenes* had met him this year; & that was on the borders of *Laconia*, where he lay ready to defend his own Territory. The



reason why he stirred no further, nor followed *Antigonus* to *Mantineæ*, & to those other Towns that he wan, was this: He had few Souldiers, and had not money enough to wage more. *Ptolemy* the Egyptian promised much, but would perform nothing, unless he might have *Cleomenes* his own Mother, and his children in pledge. These were sent into Egypt, yet the attempt came not. For *Ptolemy* was slow, as dealing in the business of Greece, rather for his mindes sake, than upon any apprehension of necessity. *Cleomenes* therefore provided for himself, as well as his own ability would serve. He manumitted all the *Heilotes*, which were the *Lacedæmonian* slaves: taking money for their liberty, and arming two thousand of them after the *Macedonian* fashion. Having thus increased his forces, he came on the sudden to *Megalopolis*, that lay secure, as having defended it self in more dangerous times, and having now *Antigonus* near at hand in *Ægium*. The town he wan: but after he was entred, all that were fit to bear Arms rose hastily against him; and though they could not drive him out, yet saved the multitude, to whom they gave a Port free for their escape. He sent after the Citizens, offering their Town and goods to them again, if they would be of his party. But they bravely refused his offer: wherefore he sacked and ruined it, carrying with him to *Sparta* a great booty that he found therein. These newes astonished the *Acheans* at *Ægium*: who thereupon brake up their Parliament. *Antigonus* sent hastily for his *Macedonians*, out of their wintering places: but they were so long in coming, that *Cleomenes* was safely gone home. Therefore he returned them back to their lodgings, and went himself to *Argos*, there to pass the rest of his unlucky winter, somewhat further from the eyes of the grieved *Acheans*. When he had lain a while at *Argos*, *Cleomenes* was at the gates, with no great number of men, yet with more than *Antigonus* had then about him. The *Argives* perceiving that their Country would be spoiled, if *Antigonus* did not issue into the field, were very earnest with him to go forth and fight. But he was wiser than to be moved with their clamors and suffered them to see their villages burnt; to bid him resign his Office of Protector unto some that were more valiant; and to satisfy their passions with foolish words; rather than he would be overcome in fight, and thereby lose more honour than could easily be repaired. By this *Cleomenes* had his desire, in weakening the reputation of his enemy: though he thereby added neither followers, nor 30 other strength unto *Lacedæmon*.

Afterwards, when the season was more fit for war, *Antigonus* gathered together all his troops, meaning to requite these bravadoes of his enemy, with the conquest of *Sparta*. *Cleomenes*, on the other side, laboured to keep the war from his own gates; and therefore entred upon the Country of *Argos*, where he made such havock, as drew *Antigonus* thither, from his intended invasion of *Laconia*. Many great affronts the *Macedonian* was fain to endure, in coasting of the *Spartan* King, that ranging over the Country of the *Argives*, *Phliansians*, and *Orchomenians*, drave a Garrison of his out of *Oligyria*, and did sacrifice, as it were before his face, in the suburbs of *Argos*, without the Temple of *Juno*, that was shut up; sending unto him in scorn, to borrow the keys. These were 40 light things; yet served to dishearten the *Achaean* side, and to fill the enemy with courage, which was no matter of light importance. Therefore he concluded to lay apart all other regard of things abroad, and to put all to hazard; by setting up his reit, without any more delay, upon *Sparta* it self. He had in his Army eight and twenty thousand foot, and twelve hundred horse, collected out of sundry Nations, as *Macedonians*, *Illyrians*, *Gauls*, *Epirots*, *Bæotians*, *Acarnanians*, and others; together with the *Acheans*, and their friends of *Peloponnesus*. *Cleomenes* had of all sorts twenty thousand, with which he lay at *Selasia*: fortifying slightly the outer passages into *Laconia*, through which the *Macedonians* were not likely to seek entrance. *Antigonus*, coming unto *Selasia*, found his enemy so strongly encamped, upon and between the hills of *Eva* and 50 *Olympus*, that he was constrained to spend much time there, before he could advance any one foot: neither lay it in his power to come hastily to blows, which he greatly desired, without the hazard of his whole Army, in assailing their well defended Camp. But at length (as it happens, when men are weary both of their hopes and fears) both Kings being resolved to make an end one way or other; *Antigonus* attempted with his *Illyrians*, to force that part which lay on the hill *Eva*. But his *Illyrians* were so ill seconded by the *Achaean* foot, that the *Spartan* horse, and light-armed foot, incamped in the straight valley between those hills; issuing forth, fell upon their skirts, and not only

disordered

disordered them, but were like to have endangered all the rest. If *Cleomenes* himself had stood in that part of the battail, he would have made great use of such a fair beginning; But *Euclydas*, his brother, a more valiant than skillful Souldier, commanded in that wing; who neither followed this advantage, nor took such benefit as the ground afforded, whereon he lay. *Philopamen* the *Arcadian* of *Megalopolis*, who afterwards proved a famous Captain, served then on horse, as a private young man, among the *Acheans*. Hee seeing that all was like to goe to rout, if their *Illyrians* were driven to fall back upon the Army following them; perswaded the Captains of the *Achaean* horse, to break upon the *Spartan* Mercenaries. But they would not: partly despising his youth and want of 10 charge; partly, for that *Antigonus* had given order, that they should keep their places, untill they received a sign from him, which was not as yet. *Philopamen* perceiving them to be more orderly than well advised, intreated some of his own Countymen to follow him, gave a charge on the *Spartans*, and forced them, not only to leave the *Illyrians*, but seek how to save themselves. Being so far advanced, he found the place which the *Illyrians* had attempted, like enough to be won, through the unskillfulness of him that held it. Wherefore he alighted, and perswaded the men at Arms, his Companions to do the like: the folly of *Euclydas* being manifest, who kept the top of the hill, and stirred not to hinder those that ascended; but waited for them in a Plain, where they might fight upon even termes. So he recovered the Hill top; where though he was fore hurt, 20 yet he made good the place that he had gotten, untill the whole Army came up to him; by which the *Lacedæmonians* were beaten from it, with great slaughter of them in their descent. This overthrow, and death of *Euclydas*, made *Cleomenes* lose the day: who fighting bravely on the other side, upon *Olympus*, against *Antigonus* himself, was like to have been surrounded and lost, if he had not withdrawn himself with an extraordinary speed. In this battel ended the glory of *Lacedæmon*, which, as a light ready to go out, had with a great, but not long blaze, shined more brightly of late, than in many ages past.

*Cleomenes* fled unto *Sparta*; where he had no desire to stay, finding only two hundred left, of six thousand *Spartans* that he had led unto this battail, and most of his hired Souldiers dead, or gone away. So he perswaded his people to yeeld themselves unto *Antigonus*; and promising to do all that should at any time lye in his own power, for their good, he hasted away to the Sea-side (where he had shipping long before provided against all that might happen) and imbarqued himself for Egypt. He was lovingly entertained by *Ptolemy Evergetes*, who undertook to restore him to his Kingdom; and (perhaps) meant no less, as being much delighted with his gallant behaviour, and qualities: In the mean season, he had a pension allowed him, of four and twenty Talents, yearly. But this *Ptolemy* died; and his son *Ptolemy Philopater* succeeded him: a vicious young Prince, wholly governed by lewd Women, and base Men, unmindful of all vertue, and hating any in whom it was found. When therefore *Cleomenes* 30 was desirous to return into Greece, whither the troubles in *Peloponnesus* did seem to invite him; *Ptolemy* and his Minions, would neither give him aid; nor yet dared to displease him (as he desired) to try his own friends in Greece, because he was too well acquainted with the weakness of Egypt: nor well knew how to detain him against his will. At length they devised matter against him, and made him prisoner. The last act of him was, that with thirty of his Countrymen, he undertook a desperate enterprise: breaking out of the prison, and provoking the *Alexandrians* to rebell and seek their liberty: In which attempt he slew some enemies, of his that he met; and having walked up and down the streets without resistance (no man offering to take his part, or which is very strange, to fight against him on the Kings behalf) he, and his Companions, agreed together to be ministers of their own death. Upon his dead body *Ptolemy* was bold to shew his indignation: and slue his Mother and Children, that had been 40 faithful: as Hostages, together with the wives of his Adherents; as many as were there, attending upon the old Queen. Such was the end of *Cleomenes*; a generous Prince, but Son of *Leonidas*, who had caused *Agis*, with his Mother and Grand-mother, to come to such a bloody end, as now befell his owne Wife, Son, and Grand-children.

After the victory at *Selasia*, *Antigonus* without resistance entred *Sparta*: wherein, to never the force of any Enemy, before him, could make way. He kindly intreated

Rrr3

the Citizens, and left them to their own laws and Government: tarrying there no longer than two or three dayes; after which he hastned out of *Peloponnesus*, and never returned. The cause of his speedy departure was, an advertisement that he received out of *Macedon*; how the *Illyrians* over-ran, and destroyed the Country. Had these newes come a little sooner, or had *Cleomenes* either deferred the fight, a few dayes longer, or at least-wile tarried a few dayes after the fight, in *Sparta*; the Kingdome of *Lacedaemon* would have stood, and perhaps have extended it self over all *Greece*. But God had otherwise determined.

*Antigonos* fought a great battell with the *Illyrians*, and overcame them. Yet therein he caught his bane: not by any wound, but by over-straining his voyce; wherewith he brake a vein that bled inwardly, and in short space finished his life, who was troubled before with a consumption of the lungs. His Kingdom descended unto *Philip* the son of *Demetrius*, being then a boy, as also about the same time it was, that *Antiochus*, surnamed (I know not why) *the Great*, and *Ptolemy Philopater*, began to reign in *Asia* and *Egypt*. Boyes all. Of these, *Ptolemy*, though old enough to love Harlots, when he first was King, yet continued a Boy all the seventeen years of his reign. The unripe age of *Philip* & *Antiochus*, bred such intestine inconvenience to their Kingdomes, as is usual in the minority of Princes: but their elder years brought them acquainted with the *Romans*, upon which occasion, when it comes, we shal more seasonably speak of them, and of their Kingdomes, more at large.

## S. VII.

*How the Illyrians infested the coast of Greece, and how they were subdued by the Romans.*

Whilest things thus passed in *Greece*, and whilest the *Carthaginians* were buile in their conquest of *Spain*, the *Romans* had found themselves work among the *Sardinians* and *Corficans*, that were easily subdued at first, and easily vanquished again, when they rebelled. They made also war with the *Illyrians*, wherein they got much honour with little pain. With the *Gauls* they had much ado, that lasted not long; being rather, as *Livy* saith, a tumult than a war. So that by all these light exercises their valour was hardly kept from rust. How the got the Islands in the *Mediterran Sea*, hath been shewed before: of their dealings with the *Illyrians* and *Gauls*, it is not meet to be utterly silent.

The *Illyrians* inhabited the Country now called *Slavonia*; a troublesome Nation, impatient of rest, and continually making war for gain, without either regard of friend or foe. They were invited by *Demetrius*, king of *Macedon*, to help the *Mydionians* his friends, that were besieged by the *Ætoliens*; for that they refused to be of their society. Before the *Illyrians* succours came, the *Mydionians* were so far spent, that the *Ætoliens* contented about the booty: the old Prætor, or chief Magistrate of their Nation, who was going out of his office, claiming to have the honour of the victory, and the division of the spoyle to be referred unto him; for that he had in a manner brought the siege to an end, and won the town: others, that were in hope to be chosen into the Office, contradicting this, and desiring that old orders might be kept. It was a pretty strife, and somewhat like to that of the *French* in later ages, who thought upon dividing the prey, before they had won the victories, which anon they lost, at *Pentiers* and *Agincourt*. The *Ætoliens* wisely compounded the difference, ordering it thus, That the old, and the new Prætor should be jointly intitled in the victory, and have equal authority in distribution of the getings. But the *Illyrians* finished the strife much more elegantly, and after another fashion. They arrived and landed ere any was aware of them; they fell upon the *Ætoliens*, and though good resistance was made, yet got the victory, partly by force of their multitude, partly by the help of the *Mydionians*, that were not idle in their own business, but stoutly sallied out of the town. Many of the *Ætoliens* were slain, more were taken, their camp and all their baggage was lost: the *Illyrians* took the spoyle, and went their way; the *Mydionians* erected a Trophy, inscribing the names both of their old and new Magistrate (for they also chose new officers at the same time) as the *Ætoliens* had directed them by example.

The successe of this voyage highly pleased *Agroon* King of the *Illyrians*: not only in

regard

regard of the money, wherewith *Demetrius* had hired his assistance, or of the booty that was gotten; but for that having vanquished the stoutest of the *Greeks*, he found it not unthank to enrich himself by setting upon the lesse warlike. For joy of this he feasted, and drank so immoderately, that he fell into a *Pleurisie*, which in few dayes ended his life. His Kingdom, together with his great hopes, he left unto *Tentia* his wife.

*Tentia* gave her people free liberty to rob all sorts at Sea, making no difference between friend and foe; as if she had been sole Mistress of the salt Waters. She armed a fleet and sent it into *Greece*, willing her Captains to make war where they found advantage, without any further respect. These fell on the western coast of *Peloponnesus*; where they invaded the *Eleans*, and *Messonians*. Afterwards they returned along by *Epirus*, and stayed at the City of *Phanice*, to take in victuals and other necessities. There by in *Phanice* eight hundred *Gauls*, that having been Mercenaries of the *Carthaginians*, went about to betray, first *Agigentum*, then *Eryx*, to the *Romans*; but failing to do either, they nevertheless revolted, and were for their misdeeds disarmed and sent to sea by the *Romans*, yet entertained by these *Epirots*, and trusted to lye in Garrison within their Town. The *Gauls* were soon grown acquainted with the *Illyrians*, to whom they betrayed *Phanice*, which deserved none other, in trusting them. All *Epirus* was presently in arms, and hastned to drive out these unwelcome guests. But whilest the *Epirots* lay before the Town, there came news into their Camp, of another *Illyrian* Army, that was marching thitherward by land, under one *Scerdilaidas*, whom *Queen Tentia* had sent to help his fellowes. Upon this advertisement, a part of them is sent away towards *Antigonis*, to make good that Town, and the straights adjoining, by which these new commers must enter into their Countrey; another part of them remains at *Phanice*, to continue the siege. Neither the one nor the other sped well in their business. For *Scerdilaidas* found means to joyn with his fellowes; and they that were besieged within *Phanice*, sallied out of the Town, and gave such an overthrow to the *Epirots*, as made them despair of saving their Countrey, without great and speedy help from abroad. Wherefore Embassadors were sent to the *Achaens* and *Ætoliens*: craving their help, with very pitifull terms of intreaty. They obtained their suit; neither was it long, before an Army, sent by these two Nations, was ready in *Epirus*, to present battail unto *Scerdilaidas*. But *Scerdilaidas* was called home by letters from *Tentia* the Queen, that signified a rebellion of some *Illyrians* against her: so that he had no mind to put his fortunes to hazard, but offered composition, which was accepted. The agreement was, That the *Epirots* might ransom their Town, and all their people that were prisoners; and that the *Illyrians* should quietly depart with all their booty and slaves. Having made this profitable and honourable bargain, the *Illyrians* returned into their own country by land, loading their booty away by Sea.

At their coming home, they found no such great trouble, as that which they brought, or had occasioned in this voyage. For, in fulfilling the commandement of their Queen, they had taken many *Italian* Merchants, whiles they lay at *Phanice*; and made them good prize. Hereof the complaints, made unto the *Roman* Senate, were so frequent, that Embassadors were sent to require of *Tentia*, that she should abstain from doing such injuries. These Embassadors found her very jolly; both for the riches which her fleet had brought in; and for that she had, in short space, tamed her rebels, and brought all to good order, save only the town *Issa*, which her forces held straightly besieged. Swelling with this prosperity, she could hardly afford a good look to the *Romans*, that found fault with her doings; and calling them by a true name, *Piracy*, required amends. Yet when their speech was ended, she vouchsafed to tell them, That injury in publick she would do them none: as for private matters, no account was to be made of them; neither was it the manner of Kings to forbid their subjects to get commodity, how they best could by Sea. But (said the younger of the two Embassadors) we *Romans* have a manner, and a very laudable one, to take revenge in publick, of those private wrongs that are born out by publick authority: therefore we shal teach you, God willing, to reform your Kingly manners, and learn better of us. These words the Queen took so impatiently, that no revenge could satisfie her, but the death of him that had spoken them. Wherefore, without all regard of the common Law of Nations, she caused him to be slain: as if that had been the way to set her heart at rest; which was indeed the mean to disquiet and vex it ever after.

The

The Romans, provoked by this outrage, prepare two great Armies; the one by Sea, consisting of two hundred sail, commanded by C. Fulvius, the other by Land, led by A. Posthumus. They trouble not themselves any more with requiring satisfaction: for this injury is of such nature, as must be required with mortal war. It is indeed contrary to all humane Law, to use violence towards Embassadors: the reason and ground whereof, seems to be this; that since without mediation, there would never be an end of war and destruction, therefore it was equally received by all Nations, as a lesson taught by Nature, that Embassadors should passe freely, and in safety, between enemies. Nevertheless, as I take it, this generall Law is not without limitation. For if any King or State lay hold upon Embassadors sent by their enemies, not unto themselves, but unto some third, whom they should draw into the quarrell; then it is as lawfull to use violence to those Embassadors (thus employed to make the war more terrible) as it is to kill the men of war, & subjects of an enemy. And so might the Athenians have answered it when they slew the Lacedæmonian Embassadors, that were sent to Xerxes, to draw him into a war upon the Athenians. Neither are those Embassadors, which practice against the person of that Prince, in whose Countries they reside, warranted by any law whatsoever. For whereas the true office of an Embassador residing, is the maintenance of amity; if it be not lawfull for one Prince to practice against the life of another, much less may an Embassador do it without incurring justly the same danger of punishment, with other Traitors; in which case, his place gives him no privilege at all. But we will leave this dispute to the Civilians, and go on with the revenge, taken by the Romans, for the slaughter of their Embassador Coruncanius.

The Illyrian Queen was secure of the Romans, as if they would not dare to stir against her. She was indeed in an error, that hath undone many of all sorts, greater and less than she, both before and since: Having more regard unto fame, than unto the substance of things. The Greeks were at that time more famous than the Romans; the Ætolians and Epirotes had the name of the most warlike people in Greece; these had the easily vanquished, and therefore thought, that with the Romans she should be little troubled. Had she considered that her whole Army, which wrought such wonders in Greece, was not much greater than of ten thousand men; and that nevertheless, it prevailed as much by odds of number, as by valour, or skill in armes; she would have continued to use her advantage against those that were of more fame than strength, with such good caution, that she should not have needed to oppose her late-gotten reputation, against those that were more mighty than her self. But she was a woman, and did what she listed. She sent forth a greater fleet than before, under Demetrius of Pharos; with the like ample commission to take all that could be gotten. This fleet divided it self, and one part of it fell upon Dyrrachium, the other with Corcyra. Dyrrachium was almost surpris'd by the Illyrians; yet was it rescued by the stout Citizens. In Corcyra the Illyrians landed, waited the Ille, and besieged the Town. Hereupon the Ætolians and Achæans were called in to help; who came, and were beaten in a fight at Sea: losing, besides others of less note, Marcus Curyneus, the first Prætor of Achæa, whom Aratus succeeded. The Town of Corcyra, dismayed with this overthrow, opened the gates unto Demetrius Pharius, who took possession of it with an Illyrian Garrison: sending the rest of his forces to besiege Dyrrachium. In the mean season, Tenta was angry with her Captain Demetrius: I know not why; but so, as he resolved to try any other course, rather than to trust her.

The Romans were even ready to put to Sea, though uncertain which way to take, when advertisement was brought to C. Fulvius the Consul, of Demetrius his fear and discontent. Likely it was that such an occasion might greatly help to advance the business in hand. Wherefore the Consul failed thither; where he found the Town of Corcyra so well prepared to his hand by Demetrius, that it not only received him willingly, but delivered into his power the Illyrian Garrison, and submitted it self unto the Roman protection.

After this good beginning, the Consul sailed along the coast to Apollonia, accompanied with Demetrius, whom he used thenceforth as his counsellor and guide. To Apollonia came also Posthumus, the other Consul, with the Land-Army, numbred at twenty thousand foot, and two thousand horse. Thence they hasten towards Dyrrachium, which the Illyrians had besieged; but upon news of the Roman army they disperse themselves

From thence the Romans enter Illyria, and take Parthenia; beat the Illyrians, by sea, take twenty of their ships, and enforce the Queen Tenta to forsake the coast, and to cover her self in Rifon far within the Land. In the end, part of the Romans hast them homeward, and leave the best places of Illyria in the hands of D. metrius, another part sties behind, and prosecutes the war in such sort, that Tenta was forced to beg peace, which she obtained upon miserable conditions; to wit, That she should quit the better part of Illyria, and pay tribute for the rest; and from thenceforth never send any of her ships of war towards the coasts of Greece, beyond the Island of Lissa: except it were some one or two vessels unarmed, and by way of Trade.

After this Illyrian war, the Romans sent Embassadors into divers parts of Greece, signifying their love to their country, and how, for good will thereunto, they had made war with good success upon Tenta, and her people. They hoped, belike, that some distressed Cities would take this occasion, to desire their patronage: which if it hapned, they were wise enough to play their own games. But no such matter fell out. The Embassadors were only rewarded with thanks; and a decree made at Corinth, That the Romans thenceforth might be partakers of the Æstian pastimes. This was an idle courtship, but well meant by the vain Greeks, & therefore well taken by the Romans: who by this Illyrian expedition got nothing in Greece, save a little acquaintance, that shall be more hereafter.

## S. VIII.

Of the war between the Romans and Gauls, somewhat before the coming of Hannibal into Italy.

The Gauls that dwelt in Lombardy, were the next, against whom the Romans took Armes. These were a populous Nation, and often molested Rome; sometimes with their own forces, and sometimes with the assistance of those that inhabited France. Once their fortune was good, when they took Rome and burnt it: though the issue of that war proved not answerable to the beginning, if we may give credit unto Roman Historians. In following times their success was variable, and commonly bad. Many overthrowes they received; and if they got any victory, it yielded them no profit, but was soon extorted out of their hands. They were indeed more force than well advised: lightly stirred up to war, and lightly giving over. At the first heat, they were said to be more than men; but when that was past, less than women. The Romans were acquainted with their temper, by long experience, and knew how to handle them: yet gave always careful heed to their approach, were it only bruited. For the danger of them was sudden, and uncertain; by reason of their neighbourhood and want of intelligence among them. Few of their attempts upon Rome were called vain, but tumultus Gallici, tumults of the Gauls: and rightly. For they gave many alarms to Italy, and used to rise with great Armies: but after a few dayes march, and sometimes before their setting forth, any small occasion served to disperse them. Having received overthrow, they would rest ten or twelve years; sometimes twenty or thirty: till they were stirred up again, by younger heads, unacquainted with the danger. Whilest they rested, the state of Rome, that against these made only defensive war, had leisure to grow, by setting upon others. Herein God provided, for that Monarchy, which he intended to raise: that the Gauls never fell upon Italy with a mighty power, in the time of any other great and dangerous war. Had they attempted to conquer it, whilest Rome was travelling in the same enterprise; or in either of the two former Punick wars: it may be doubted what would have become of this Imperial City. But it seems that the Gauls had no better intelligence in the affairs of Italy, than strangers had. At least, they knew not how to use their times: & were therefore like to smart, whenever the enemies, whom they had much provoked, and little hurt, should finde leisure to visit them at their own home: which was now after the first Punick War. Once before this, the Romans had broken hold, to sit upon the Gauls in their own Country: and that was three years before the coming of Pyrrhus into Italy. At that time Brennus, a Tribe of the Gauls, invading Hæthria, and besieging Arretium, had won great booty, and slain L. Cæcilius, with the most of his Army: Mannius Curius the Consul, sent Embassadors to them, to treat about ransom of prisoners. But these

Embassa-

<sup>a</sup> Dyrrachium, sometime called Epidamnus, and now Dyrrachio, situated upon the Adriatick sea, between the Islands of Pharos and Corcyra. <sup>b</sup> Corcyra, an Island of the Adriatick sea, not far from Dyrrachio, called now Corfu, and in the possession of the Venetians.

<sup>c</sup> Apollonia, a City near Dyrrachium, or Dyrrachio, upon the Sea-coast. Ptolemy calls it Sissipolis.

a There were divers nations of the Boji, in Pannonia, Thracia, Germany, in Bourdeaux, in France, and in Aquitain; but these Boji were of French race, and dwelt at this time about mouth of the river Po.

Embassadours they flew. Therefore when fortune turned to the better, the Romans followed it so well, that they expelled these Senones out of their Country, and sent a colony of their own to inhabit it. This caused the Boji, another people of Gauls, to fear the like measure: who thereupon took arms, and drew the Helvetians to their side. But the Romans overthrew them in two great battles; and thereby made them sue for peace, which lasted until the end of this Illyrian war.

It vexed the Gauls to see a Roman colony planted in their Country; who had been accustomed to enlarge their bounds, by driving out their neighbours perforce. Wherefore they laboured with the Transalpinos (so the Romans called those in France, as lying from them beyond the Alpes, though to us they were nearer, like as they called Cisalpinos, or by-hither the Alpes, those who dwelt between them and the Mountains) to draw them to their party: reasonably presuming, that as their disjunction had caused their loss, so their union might recompence it, with large amends. But the business was so foolishly carried, that the Cisalpinos and Transalpinos fell together by the ears, putting the Romans only to a tumult, without further trouble of war. Soon after, they were urged by a greater indignity, to go more substantially to work. For C. Flaminius, a popular man in Rome, proposed a Decree, which was ratified by the people; That, besides one Colony already planted in the territory of the Senones, as many more should be carried thither, as would suffice to people the whole Country between Ancona and Ariminum: exterminating utterly those Gauls. Such an offer, were it made in England, concerning either Virginia, or in Giana it self, would not over-joy the Multitude. But the commonality of Rome took this in so good part, notwithstanding all danger joyned with the benefit, that Flaminius had ever after their good will.

This dreadful President extremely displeased the Boji; who being neighbours to Ariminum, feared the like displacement. And because the rest of the Gauls had reason to resolve, that themselves also should be rooted out by degrees; the great Nation of the Insubrians, which inhabited the Duchy of Milan, joyned with the Boji, & upon a common purse entertained the Gessates, nations about Rhodanus, wageable as the Swiss in these times. The Gessates having received a great impress, come to the field under the conduct of their Kings Concolitanus and Aneroestus: who with the Boji and Insubrians, compounded an Army of fifty thousand foot, and twenty thousand horse, and those of the best men, and best appointed, that ever invaded the Roman Territory; to whom the Senogalli, that had been beaten out of their possessions, gave a great increase of strength. On the contrary side, the Venetians, and the Cenomanni, adhered to the Romans: as better believing in their prosperity and rising fortune. For fear of whole incursions therefore, the Gauls were forced to leave a good part of their Army, on the frontier of Milan: with the rest of their forces they entered into Tuscan. The Romans hearing of this danger, send Amilius to Rimini, to stop their passage, and in the place of C. Atilius their other Consul, who then was in Sardinia, they employ one of their Prætors; for the defence of Tuscan.

Being at this time greatly troubled with the consideration of this powerfull Army, which the Gauls had assembled, they caused a view to be taken, as well of all their own forces, as of those of their Allies: who were no less willing than themselves, to oppose the incursions of the barbarous people; fearing, as they had cause, that their own destruction could not be prevented otherwise, than by the good fortune of Rome. The numbers, found in this Muster, deserve to be recorded: because they set out the power of the Romans in those dayes. With the Consuls they sent forth to the war four Legions of their own: every Legion consisting of five thousand two hundred foot, and three hundred horse; and of their Allies, thirteen thousand foot, and two hundred horse. There were also appointed for supplies (if any misadventure came to these) of the Salians and Helvetians: fifty thousand foot, and four thousand horse, which Army was to be lodged in the border of Helvetia. Of the Umbri and Sarsinaes, which inhabited the Apennines, there were twenty thousand; and of the Venetians and Cenomanni, other twenty thousand: which latter Armies were directed to invade the Boji, that forcing them to defend their own Territories, the General Army of the Gauls should be thereby greatly diminished. There were besides these, so be ready against all uncertain chances of war, thirty thousand foot, and fifteen hundred horse, garrisoned in Rome it self, of their own people; and of their Allies, thirty thousand foot, and two thousand horse. Over above

b Cenomanni are the people about Bergamo, on the North side of the river Po in Italy. There were also of these Cenomanni in France, and inhabited the Country of Chaux.

above these great troops; in the Roll of the Latines, that was sent unto the Senate, there were numbered fourscore thousand foot, and five thousand horse; in that of the Samnites, seventy thousand foot, and of horse seven thousand; in that of the Sappiges & Messappiges, fifty thousand foot, and sixteen thousand horse; the Lucans sent a list of thirty thousand foot, and three thousand horse; the Marsi, Marrusini, Ferentani, and the Vestini, of twenty thousand foot and four thousand horse. The Romans had also two Legions in Sicily, and about Tarcentum, containing eight thousand four hundred foot, and four hundred horse. So as of the Romans and Campanians jointly, reckoning men armed, and fit to bear arms, there were registred two hundred and fifty thousand foot; and of horse three and twenty thousand: of which, reckoning the Romans apart, there were an hundred and fifty thousand foot, and about six thousand horse. Calling up the whole forces of all the Provinces in Italy, both of the Romans and their confederates, it amounted to seven hundred thousand foot, & seventy thousand horse. But the number is somewhat mis-cast by Polybius; not with a purpose to enrich himself by the dead payes: for where he reckons nine hundred horse too many, he falls short nine thousand two hundred of the foot.

How great soever this muster was, it seems to have been like unto that, which Lodowick Sforza made, when Lewis the twelfth invaded Milan: at what time, the better to encourage himself and his subjects, he took a Roll of all persons able to bear arms, within the Duchy, though indeed he were never able to bring a tenth part of them into the field. Certain it is, that the battels of Trebia, Thralymene, and Cannæ, did not consume any such proportion, as was answerable to this large account. Yet were the Romans fain to arme their slaves, even for want of other Souldiers, after their overthrow at Cannæ. Wherefore the marvell is not great, that the Carthaginians and others were little terrified with report of such a multitude. For all heads are not fit for Helms: though the Roman Citizens were, in general, as good fighting men, as elsewhere might be found.

Notwithstanding all these counter preparations, the Gauls keep on their way: and entering into Tuscan, destroy, and put to fire and sword, all that lay before them. From thence they march directly towards Rome, hoping to finde the Romans rather in deliberation, than in the field. But their intelligence fails them. For the Roman Army, sent into Tuscan, having taken some other way than they did, and finding that it had missed of them, came again fast after them, to arrest them in their journey. Hereof when they heard the rumour, fearing to be charged on their backs, they turned head and in the same evening discovered the Roman Army, by whom they incamped. It was now a matter of apparent necessity, that fight they must. Wherefore they helped themselves with a stratagem, that shewed no great fineness of wit, but such as wel becomed those that had none other occupation than war, and stood them in good stead at the present. In the dead of the night, they cause their foot to march away, but not far, leaving their horse in guard; to whom they give order to come off at the first light of day, with such a speed, as might rather argue a running away, than a retreat; as if they had not dared to abide battell. The Romans, interpreting this their hasty departure as the Gauls desired they should, follow them in disorder. The Gauls return, charge them, and kill six thousand upon the place; the rest take a piece of ground of advantage, & defend themselves, till L. Emilius, being at Ariminum, comes to their succour. Upon the coming of the Consul, the Gauls consult, whether they should give the Romans battell, or forbear. In which dispute, Aneroestus, one of their Kings, perswades them, rather to return into their own Countries; where, after they had disposed of the great spoils and riches which they had gotten, they should then renew the war, being without carriage, pester, or other impediment. This advice they all embrace, for seeing they that were Mercenaries, had obtained what they came for, to wit, the spoils of their enemies, they thought it wisdom, to hazzard neither it, nor themselves any further.

This indeed had been a good resolution, if they had taken it, before the enemy had been in sight. But as well in the wars of these later ages, as in former times, it hath ever been found extreme dangerous, to make a retreat in the Head of an Enemies Army. For although they that retire, do often turn head; yet in alwayes going on from the pursuing enemy, they find, within a few miles, either straight, hedge, ditch, or place of disadvantage, which they are forced to passe in disorder. In such cases, the Souldier knows

g. Sappiges and Messappiges seem to be one Nation, who were also called Sappentes, Pueri, Apulians, and Celsians. The Country is now Apulia, containing the Northernmost head-land of Calabria. b A people of the kingdom of Naples. i Ptolemy calls them a people of Italy. k A people of Campania, called to this day Ferentines, sixth Leander.

knowes it as well as the Captain, that he which forsakes the field, perceives and fears some advantage of the Enemies. Fear, which is the betrayer of those succours that reason offereth, when it hath once possesseth the heart of man, it casteth thence both courage and understanding. They that make the retrait, are always in fear to be abandoned; they that lead the way, fear to be engaged: and so the hindmost treads on his heels that is foremost, and consequently, all disband, run, and perish, if those that favour the retrait be not held to it by men of great courage. The miserable overthrow that the *French* received in *Naples*, in the year 1503. upon a retrait made by the *Marques of Sal*, doth testify no lesse. For although a great troupe of *French* horse sustained the pursuing Enemy a long time, and gave the foot leisure to trot away; yet being retarded by oft turnings, the *Spanish* foot overtook, and defeated them utterly. During the wars between the *Imperials* and the *French*, *Bossard* and *Mont* were lost at *Brignolles*, who in a bravery would needs see the enemy, before they left the field. So was *Strofi* overthrown by the *Marques of Marignan*, because he could not be persuaded to dislodge the night before the *Marques* his arrivall. Therefore did the *French* King *Francis* the first wisely: when without respect of point of honour, he dislodged from before *Landersey*, by night, as many other the most advised Captains, (not finding themselves in case to give battell) have done. *Je ne trouve point* (saith the Marshall *Montluc*) *au fait des armes chose si difficile, qu'une retraite; j'en trouve rien en l'art de la guerre si difficile, as to make a safe retrain.* A sure rule it is, that there is les dishonour to dislodge in the dark, than to be beaten in the light. And hereof *M. de la Noue* gives this judgement of a dayes retrain, made in *France*, presently before the battell at *Mouconcourt*. For (saith he) staying upon our reputation, in shew, not to dislodge by night; we lost our reputation indeed, by dislodging by day: whereby we were forced to fight upon our disadvantage, and to our ruin. And yet did that worthy Gentleman Count *Lodowick of Nassau*, brother to the late famous *Prince of Orange*, make the retrain at *Moncouscourt* with so great resolution, as he saved the one half of the *Protestant* Army, then broken and disbanded; of which my self was an eye-witnesse, and was one of them that had cause to thank him for it.

Now the *Gaules*, embracing the safe advice (as they take it) of one of their Kings, turn their backs to the enemy, and their faces homeward. *Emilius* followes them as near as he can, without engaging himself, attending his advantage. In the mean while, *C. Atilius* the other Consull, with the Legions of *Sardinia*, lands at *Pisa*; so as the *Gaules* inclosed between two Armies, are forced to fight. They therefore equally strengthen their Rear and Front. To sustain *Emilius*, they appoint the *Gessates*, and the *Milanois*; in the Front they range the *Piemontois*, and the rest of the *Gaules* inhabiting upon the River of *Po*. The manner of the fight *Polybins* describeth at large: which was well fought of all hands. But in the end the *Gaules* fell; and so did *Atilius* the Consull: who died in the place, accompanied with the two Kings of the *Gaules*, *Concolitanus* and *Aneroesus*, with forty thousand of their Vassals.

After this fatal overthrow, the *Gaules* lost courage; and ere long, all that they held in *Italy*. For they were invaded the year following this overthrow, by the new *Consuls*, *Fulvius* and *Manlius*. The *Romans* knew well how to use their victory: they gave not ten, twenty, or thirty years time to the *Gaules*, to repair their forces, as the *Gaules* had done to them. These new Consuls bear the *Boii*; but by reason of the great rains that fell, and the great pestilence that reigned, they were compelled for that present to surcease. In the second year, *Furinus* and *Flamininus* invade the *Milanois*; and prevail very far, being strongly assisted by the *Centomanni* and the *Venetians*. Nevertheless these Consuls were revoked out of their Province, by the Senate of *Rome*, and compelled to resign their Office: because the *Augures*, or *Soothsayers*, had found, that some token or other of the Birds (in which, and all sorts of their divination, the *Romans* were extremely superstitious) had not only foreshewed little good, when they were chosen, but had also nullified the election. *C. Flamininus*, receiving letters of this revocation from the Senate, and being otherwise advertised of the contents, was not hasty to open them: but first gave battell unto the enemies, vanquished them, and spoiled their Country; then perused the letters; and returning home obtained a triumph, for against the will of the Senate, and not altogether with good liking of the people, who yet bare him out, for that he sided in faction with the Commonalty, though a man of great Nobility.

This

This was that *Flamininus*, who had propounded the Decree for dividing the Country of the *Provincia* among the people of *Rome*. He was the first, or one of the first, that understanding the Majesty of *Rome* to be indeed wholly in the people, and no otherwise in the Senate, than by a way of Delegacy, or grand Commission; did not stand highly upon his birth and degree, but courted the multitude, and taught them to know and use their power, over himself and his fellow Senators, in reforming their disorders. For this, the Commons highly esteemed him, and the Senators as deeply hated him. But he had the suter side, and found imitators, that rose by the same art, which in proceesse of time, grew the only or chief way to preferment.

*Flamininus* and his Colleague, being disposed, *M. Claudius Marcellus*, & *Cn. Drusus Sulpicius*, were chosen Consuls, for the rest of that year. The *Gaules* about this time desired peace, & were like to have obtained it: though the new Consuls were against it; as fearing to want work. But when thirty thousand of the *Gessates*, following their King *Briannus*, were come over the *Alpes*, and joyned with the *Insubrians*: all other discourse of peace or war, was at an end. So the Consuls hastened into their Province, where they besieged *Acerra*, a town not far from *Nodaro* (so far had the *Romans* pierced already) in the Duchy of *Milan*. To divert them from this siege, *Bittomarus* sat down before *Clasidium*, a town in the same Tract, with a great part of his forces: leaving the rest, with the *Insubrians*, to attend upon the Consuls at *Acerra*; and to look to the defence of *Milan*. But this would not suffice, to make the *Romans* break up their siege. *Marcellus*, taking with him the greater part of the horse, and six hundred foot lightly armed, thought to deal well enough with those at *Clasidium*. *Briannus* heard of the Consuls coming, and met them upon the way: so suddenly, that the *Romans* had no leisure to rest themselves after their journey, but were compelled instantly to fight. Herein *Briannus* had done well, if he had not forthwith, in a rash bravery, lost his game at a cast. He had advantage enough in number, both of horse and foot: but he thought so well of his own personal valour, that he rode out single before his Army, provoking any one to fight with him. *Marcellus* was no less daring, than the barbarous King: whether more wise in this action, I will not dispute; he was more fortunate, and that sufficed to commend him. He slew and disarmed *Briannus*, in the presence of both Armies: whereby his own men took such courage, and his enemies were so dismayed, that without much trouble of fight, the *Romans* obtained a great victory.

This was the third and last time, that ever any *Roman* Generall slew the Generall of the Enemies, with his own hand: To this kinde of victory, belonged a peculiar triumph; whereof only *Romulus*, *Cossus*, and this *Marcellus*, had the honour: yet I dare say, that the two *Scipios*, and divers of the *Roman* Captains, especially *Caesar*, were better men of war than any of these three; though they never offered up to *Jupiter*, *Opimius* India, The Armour of a Generall slain by themselves when they were Generals, nor perhaps indeed so to do.

After this victory, *Acerra* was yielded to the *Romans*; and *Milan* soon after: with all that belonged to the *Cisalpine*, or *Gaules*, that dwelt in *Lombardie*. Thus was that valiant and mighty Nation, that had so many years vexed the State of *Rome*, and in former times taken the City itself brought to nothing in a short time; their pleasant and fertile Territory possessed by the *Romans*; and the remainder of their Nation, inhabiting *Italy*, so many as would not subject their necks to the *Roman* yoke, either forced to abandon their Countreys, or to hide themselves in the cold and barren Mountains, like *Ourens* and *Theves*. And thus did the *Romans* spend the three and twenty years, following the peace made with *Carthage*. In part of which time, they were at such leisure, that they closed up the Temple of *Janus*: which they never did before, (it standing always open, when they had any war) save once, in the reign of *Numa*; nor in long time after, until the reign of *Augustus*. But this their present happiness was not to last long: a dangerous war, and perhaps the greatest that had ever been, was to come upon their gates; which being well ended, they might boldly undertake, to extend their Monarchy as far as their ambition could reach.

SIII

CHAP.



## CHAP. III.

## Of the second Punic War.

S. I.

The Wars of Hannibal in Spain. Quarrels between the Romans and Carthaginians, Hannibal besiegeth and taketh Saguntum, whilst the Romans are busied with the Illyrian War proclaimed between Rome and Carthage.



HANNIBAL, the son of Amilcar, was about six and twenty years old; when he was chosen General of the Carthaginian forces in Spain. He was elected by the Army, as soon as Asdrubal was dead: & the election was ratified by the State of Carthage, where with Hanno & his Complices were nothing pleased. This was now the third of the *Barchine* family (so called of Amilcar, whose name was *Barche*) that had commanded in chief, over the men of war: Which honour would perhaps have been less envied, by these domesticall enemies, if the Allies and Friends of the *Barchine* house, had not also borne the whole sway in government, and been the only men regarded, both by the Senate and the people. This general good will, as it was first purchased by the most worthy deserts of Amilcar in saving his Country from imminent ruine, enlarging the Dominion thereof, and enriching it with treasures and great revenues, so was it retained by the same good arts, among his friends and followers. Hanno therefore, and his Partizans, being neither able to tax the virtue of their enemies, that was unreprouable, nor to performe the like services unto the Common weal, had nothing left, whereby to value themselves, excepting the generall reprehension of War, and cautious advice of not provoking the Romans. This they seasoned other-whiles with detraction, saying, that the *Barchine* faction went about to oppress the liberty of the City. But their malicious words were unregarded; and if it were factious, to hear ill will to Rome, then were all the Citizens (very few excepted) no lesse *Barchine*, than Hannibal himself. For it was long since apparent, that the oath of the Romans, to the articles of peace, afforded no security to Carthage, were the never so quiet, and officious; unless the would yeeld to become their subject. Since therefore the peace was like to hold no longer, than until the Romans could finde some good advantage, to renew the war: it was rather desired by the Carthaginians, that whilst their own state was in good case, the war should begin, than that in some unhappy time of famine or pestilence, or after some great loss of Army or Fleet, they should be driven to yeeld unto the impudent demands of their enemies; and to give away basely their lands and treasures, as they had lately done, or miserably fight, upon termes of disadvantage.

This disposition of his countrimen, Hannibal well understood. Neither was he ignorant (for his father, and other friends, had long time devised of this business) that in making war with the Romans, it was no small advantage to get the state of them, if once he could bring an Army into Italy, without molestation; there was good hope, that he should finde friends and assistance, even of those people, that helped to increase the Roman armies in forrain wars. But this could never be effected, if the matter were openly disputed at Carthage. For it was to be doubted, that the Carthaginians, how glad so ever they would be, to hear that he had set the war on foot, would nevertheless be slow and timorous, as commonly men are in the beginning of great enterprises; if the matter were referred to their deliberation. Which if it should happen, then were the Romans like to be made acquainted, not only with the generalities of his purpose, but with such particulars as must be discoursed of, in procuring allowance to his design. This might suffice to disorder the whole Project. Wherefore, he resolved to lay siege unto Saguntum, which might seem not greatly to concern the Romans, and would highly please the Carthaginians, that had fresh in mind the indignity of that Spanish Towns alliance with her half friends. So should he assay both the patience of his enemies, and the disposition of his own Citizens.

Having

Having thus concluded, he nevertheless went fair and orderly to work: and beginning with those that lay next in his way, approaching unto Saguntum by degrees. This he did (saith Livie) to give some colour to his proceedings, as if he had not principally intended the war against Saguntum, but had been drawn thither by course of business. Yet reason teacheth plainly, that without regard of such formalities, it was needfull to finish the conquest of the rest, before he did any thing that should provoke the Romans. First therefore he entered upon the Territory of the *Oleades*; and having besieged *Alibea* (Livie calleth it *Carcia*) their chief City, he became, in a few dayes, Master not only thereof, but of all the other Towns of their Country. This Nation which he first undertook, being subdued, and the winter at hand, he rested his Army in new Carthage, or Carthagena; and imparted liberally to the Souldiers, the spoils he had gotten in his late Conquest.

In the Spring following, he pursued the war against the *Yacceti*: and without any great difficulty, wan first *Salmantica*, now called *Salamanca*; and after it, *Arbucala*, by assault: though not without a long siege, and great difficulty. But in his return, he was put to the height, both of his courage, and of his Martiall judgement. For all such of the *Yacceti*, as were able to bear armes, being made desperate, by the spoil of their country, with those of *Salamanca*, and of the *Oleades*, that had escaped in the late overthrow, joyning themselves with the *Toletans*, compounded an Army of an hundred thousand able men: and stayed Hannibal on the banks of the River *Tagus*, which runneth to the Sea by *Lisborne* in Portugale. These four Nations, having had experience of Hannibals invincible courage, and that he never saw enemy, upon whom he durst not give charge; were thoroughly resolved, that his naturall valour would at this time no less neglect the cold advice of discretion, than at other times it had seemed to doe, when the like great occasion perswaded him to use it. But he that makes himself a body of Cryall, that all men may look through him, and discern all the parts of his disposition, makes himself (withall) an Asse: and thereby teacheth others, either how to ride, or drive him. Wise men, though they have single hearts in all that is just & vertuous; yet they are like Coffers with double bottomes: which when others look into being opened, they see not all that they hold, on the sudden, and at once. It is true, that this subtle Carthaginian, when he served under Asdrubal, was, of all the men of mark in the Army, the most adventurous, but that which may becom a Captain, or inferiour Commander, doth not alwayes become a Chief; though it hath sometime succeeded well with such great ones, as have been found more fortunate, than wise. At this time, our great Man of war knew as well how to dissemble his courage, as at other times to make it good. For he with-drew himself from the River-side, as if fearfull to foord it, thereby to draw over that great multitude, from their banks of advantage. The Spaniards, apprehending this in such sort, as Hannibal desired that they should; thrust themselves in fury and disorder, into the swift stream, with a purpose to charge the Carthaginians, abandoning (as they thought for fear) the defences on the contrary side. But when Hannibal saw them in their way, and well near over; he turned back his Elephants to entertain them at their landing: and thrust over his Horse-men, both above and beneath them, into the River. These carrying a kinde of *Lance de Gay*, sharp at both ends, which they held in the midst of the flasse; had such an advantage over the foot, that were in the River, under their strokes, clattered together, and unable to move or shift their bodies, as on firme ground: that they flue all those, (in a manner) without resistance, which were already entred into the water; and pursued the rest, that fled like men amazed, with so great a slaughter, as from that day forward, there was not any Spaniard, on that side the River of *Iber*, (the Saguntines excepted) that had the daring to lift up their hands against the Carthaginians.

The Saguntines, perceiving the danger towards them; cryed before they were hurt. They sent Embassadors to Rome, and bemoaned themselves, as likely to suffer that, which afterwards they suffered indeed, onely because of their alliance and friendship with this honourable City, which the Carthaginians hated. This tale moved the Senate, but much more a report, that Saguntum was already besieged. Hereupon some cry out, that War should be proclaimed by Land and Sea; as also that the two Consuls should be sent with Armies, the one into Spain, the other into Africk. But others went

S fff 2

more

A people (saith Stephano) near the River of *Iber*, but in the old description of Spain, in Orelus, they are found near *Tagus*, and by *Sudica*, not far from New Carthage. A people of Castile the old *Arbucala*, on *Abricela*, an Inland City of the *Yacceti* in *Aragon*.



more *Roman*-like to work, and carry it. So it was only concluded; that Embassadours should be sent into *Spain*, to view the state of their confederates: which were indeed none other, than the *Saguntines*. For if *Hannibal* intended war against *Rome*, it was likely, that he would give them, ere it were long, a more plausible occasion to take armes against him: if he had no such purpose, yet would it be in their power, to determine what they listed themselves, upon the report of these Embassadours; and this their gravity, in being not too rash at first, would serve to countenance their following Decree. Of these Embassadours *Livie* reports, that they found *Hannibal* before *Saguntum*, but could not get audience of him, and therefore went to *Carthage*, where also they were not regarded, nor heard. But *Polybius* an Historian of sincerity less questionable; tells, that they found him at *Carthage*, & had conference with him, though such as left them doubtfull. This is more agreeable to the rest of *Hannibal* his whole course. And surely we might wonder, why the *Carthaginians* should afterwards admit a more peremptory Embassage (as *Livie* confesseth) and fall to disputation about the covenants of peace; if they had rejected that which was sent upon none other pretence, than prevention of war.

Whilst the Embassadours passed to and fro, *Hannibal* prepared not only his forces, but some *Roman* pretences, against *Saguntum*. He found out *Mamertines*; or people that should do as the *Mamertines* in *Sicil* had done for the *Romans*; and implore his help against the *Saguntines*. These were the *Turdetani*, a Nation adjoining to *Saguntum*, & having many quarrels with them: (as happens commonly among neighbours) of which, *Hannibal* himself had hatched some. Finding therefore such an occasion, whatsoever it was, as made him able to say, that the *Saguntines* had first provoked him, ere he meddled with them; he made no more ado, but sat down with his whole power before their Town. He was now more secure, than he had formerly been of his own Citizens: for that they had not entertained the *Roman* Embassadours, with any trembling reverence, as of late years they had been wont. Nevertheless, he was glad of any handsome colour, to shadow his actions, not only because the War, which he so much desired, was not proclaimed; but that he might not be checked in his course, as an open enemy, before he could set foot in *Italy*. The *Romans* had the like, though contrary design. They were glad of the quarrell: as hoping, that *Carthage*, with all thereto belonging, should thereby in short space become their own. Yet were they not hasty to threaten, before they were ready to strike; but meant to temporize, until they had an Army in readiness to be sent into *Spain*, where they thought to make *Saguntum*, the seat of the War.

In the mean while, *Demetrius Pharius*, whom the *Romans* had made King over a great part of *Illyria*, rebelled against them: either for that he found himself over-straitened by them, with hard conditions, or rather because he was of an unthankfull disposition. The commotion of the *Gauls*, and afterward the fame of the *Carthaginian* war, emboldened him to despise his Benefactors and Patrons: whom he ought to have defended and aided; in all perils, even with the hazzard of his whole estate, which he had received of their gift. But he was a Traitor to his own Queen; and therefore dealt according to his kinde, with those that had rewarded him for being such. First, he built Ships, and spoiled the Isles of *Greece*; against the covenants to which he was bound. Then he adventured further; and seized upon some places, that the *Romans* kept in their own hands. If he had begun sooner, or rather if he had stayed somewhat longer, he might have sped better. For the business with the *Gauls*, was ended; with *Hannibal*, not throughly begun, when he declared himself, by his doings, an enemy, and was vanquished. The *Roman* Consul, *Emilius*, was sent against him: who in seven days won the strong town of *Diniam*; and thereby brought such terror upon the Country round about, that Embassadours were sent from all places, to yeeld themselves, without putting him to further pains. Only the City of *Pharus*, in which *Demetrius* lay, prepared to resist: which he might have done long, if the hot-headed Rebell had not been too foolish. *Emilius* landed a great part of his Army, in the Isle of *Pharus*, by night; and bestowed them in covert, presenting himself the next morning, with twenty Ships before the town, and offering to force the Haven. *Demetrius* with all his power issued out against the Consul, and was soon intercluded from the town, by those that lay in ambush. Wherefore he fled away through by-paths to a creek, where he had shipping ready

ready for him, and imbarqued himself: leaving all his estate unto them, of whose liberty he first had it.

This business, though it were soon dispatched, yet prevented it not the siege of *Saguntum*; before which *Hannibal* sat down, ere *Emilius* was landed in *Illyria*. In the beginning of the siege, the *Carthaginians* were much discouraged, by reason of the brave sallies made by the *Saguntines*, in one of which, their Generall received a dangerous wound in the thigh, that caused him to lye many days unable to move. Nevertheless he was not unmindfull of his work in the mean while; but gave order to raise certain movable Towers, that might equal those which were built on the walls of the City; and to prepare to batter the curtains, and make a breach. These being finished and applied, had soon wrought their effect. A great and large breach was made, by the fall of divers Towers, and a great length of wall; whereat an hot assault was given: but it was so well sustained by the *Saguntines*, as the *Carthaginians* were not only beaten from the breach, and out of some ground within the Town, which upon the first fury they had won; but they were pursued even to their own trenches and camp. Nevertheless the *Carthaginian* Army, who were about an hundred and fifty thousand men, did so weary the Townsmen with continuall travail, that at length it got within the walls; and was only hindered from taking full possession of the City, by some counter-works of the *Saguntines*, that were also ready to be won. In this extremity there was one *Alcon* of the *Saguntines*, that conveyed himself out of the Town, to treat with *Hannibal* for some accord. But the conditions which the *Carthaginian* offered were so severe, and without all compass of honour, as *Alcon* durst not return to propound them to his Countrymen. For *Hannibal* demanded all that they had; gold, silver, plate, and other riches within the City: yea, the City it self to be abandoned by the Citizens; promising, that he would assign some other place for their habitation: not allowing them, to carry out with them any other thing, wherewith to sustain themselves, than the clothes on their backs or other armes, to defend them, than their nailes and teeth. Yet might they far better have submitted themselves unto this miserable appointment, (seeing thereby they might have enjoyed their lives, and saved the honour of their wives and daughters) then to have rested at the discretion of the Conquerour, as soon after they did: by whom their wives and daughters were defouled before their own faces, and all put to sword, that were above fourteen years of age. For it was a poor comfort, which a great number of them took; when not daring to fight, and sell their blood at the dearest rate, they shut themselves up like most wretched creatures in their own houses, and therein burnt themselves with all that they had: so dying unrevenged. The treasures found in *Saguntum*, which were very great, *Hannibal* kept, therewith to pay his Army: the slaves, and other booty, he divided among his Soldiers, reserving some things of choice, wherewith to present his friends at *Carthage*, and to animate them unto the War.

These tidings exceedingly vexed the *Romans*, who had good cause to be angry at their own slowness, in forbearing to send help unto the *Saguntines*, that held out eight moneths, looking still for succour, but in vain. Wherefore they determined to repair their honour, by taking sharp revenge. To this end they sent Embassadours again to *Carthage*: demanding only, Whether it were by generall consent and allowance of the *Carthaginians*, that *Hannibal* had made warre upon *Saguntum*: which if they granted (as it seemed they would) then to give them defiance. Hereunto answer was made, in the Senate of *Carthage*, to this effect; That this their second Embassage, howsoever qualified with mild words, was indeed more insolent than the former. For in that, they only required justice against *Hannibal*, but in this, the very State and Commonwealth of *Carthage*, was urged to plead guilty, or not guilty. But (said the *Carthaginian* speaker) whether the generall of our Army in *Spain*, in besieging *Saguntum*, have only followed his own counsaill; or whether he did it, by direction from us: it is not the question which the *Romans* ought to aske us. That which is indeed worthy examination or dispute, is; Whether it were lawfull or unlawfull for *Hannibal* to do as he hath done. For it belongs to us, to call our own Commanders in question, and to punish them according to their faults & errors; to you, to challenge us, if we have done any thing contrary to our late League and contract. It is true, that in our negotiation with *Lutatius* the Consul, the Allies of both Nations were comprehended: but the *Saguntines* were

not then of your Allies, and therefore no parties to the peace then made; for of your Allies in the future, or of ours, there was no dispute. As touching the last agreement, between you and *Asdrubal*, wherein you will say, that the *Saguntines* were comprehended by name; it is you that have taught us how to answer that particular. For whatsoever you found in the Treaty between us and *Lustatius*, to your own disadvantage, you call it upon your Consuls presumption as promising those things, for which he had no warrant from the Senate and people of *Rome*. If then it be lawfull for the *Romans*, to disavow the actions of their Consuls and Commanders, concluding any thing without punctual and precise warrant; the same liberty may we also assume, and hold our selves no way bound in honour, to performe those bargains, which *Asdrubal* hath made for us, 10 without our commandement and consent.

This was an impertinent answer, and little better than a meer cavill. For *Lustatius* the Consul, in his Treaty of peace with the *Carthaginians*, had expressly referred the allowance thereof to the people of *Rome*. It had been therefore much better, to have dealt plainly; and to have alledged, That after this League was made, and confirmed on both parts, it was broken by the *Romans*, in robbing the *Carthaginians* of the Isle of *Sardinia*, and withall of twelve hundred talents: which perjury the State of *Carthage*, being now grown able, would revenge with open War. As for the *Saguntines*, it little skilled that the *Romans* had admitted them into confederacy, and forthwith inserted their names into the Treaty of peace with *Asdrubal*: seeing that the Treaty with *Asdrubal*, and all other business between *Rome* and *Carthage*, following the violence and breach of peace, in taking away *Sardinia*, were no better than *Roman* injuries, as implying this commination, *Do whatsover we require, else will we make War, without regard of our oath, which we have already broken.*

But this the *Carthaginians* did not alledge, forgetting, in heat of contention (as *Polybius* takes it) the best of their Plea. Yet since *Livie* himself doth remember and acknowledge, that the taking of *Sardinia* from the *Carthaginians*, did inflame the spirit of *Amilcar* with desire of revenge: we may reasonably think, that the mention of this injury was omitted, not so much upon forgetfulness, as for that it was not thought convenient, by ripping up such ancient matter of quarrell, to shew that the war, now towards, had long been thought upon, and like to be made with extraordinary force, in other manner than heretofore. In conclusion, the *Carthaginian* Senate moved the *Roman* Embassadors, to deliver unto them in plain termes the purposes of those that sent them, and the worst of that, which they had long determined against them: as for the *Saguntines*, and the confining of their Armies within *Iberus*; those were but their pretences. Whereupon *Q. Fabius* gathering up the skirt of his gown, as if somewhat had been laid in the hollow thereof, made this short reply: I have here (quoth he) in my Gown skirt both Peace and War: make you (my Masters of the Senate) election of these two, which of them you like best, and purpose to embrace. Hereat all cried out at once; Even which of them you your self have a fancy to offer us. Marry then (quoth *Fabius*) take the War, and 40 share it among you. Which the assembly willingly accepted.

This was plain dealing. To wrangle about pretences, when each part had resolved to make War, it was merely frivolous. For all these disputes of breach of peace, have ever been maintained by the party unwilling, or unable to sustain the War. The rusty sword, and the empty purse, do alwayes plead performance of covenants. There have been few Kings or States in the World, that have otherwise understood the obligation of a Treaty, than with the condition of their own advantage: and commonly (seeing peace between ambitious Princes and States, is but a kinde of breathing) the best advised have rather begun with the sword, than with the trumpet. So dealt the *Arragonians* with the *French* in *Naples*; *Henry* the second of *France*, with the *Imperials*, when he wrote to *Brissac*, to surprise as many places as he could, ere the war brake out; *Dona John* with the *Netherlands*, and *Philip* the second of *Spain*, with the *English*, when in the great *Imbargo* he took all our ships and goods in his Ports.

But *Hannibal*, besides the present strength of *Carthage*, and the common feeling of injuries received from these enemies, had another private and hereditary desire, that violently carried him against the *Romans*. His father *Amilcar*, at what time he did sacrifice, being ready to take his journey into *Spain*, had solemnly bound himself by oath, to pursue them with immortall hatred, and to work them all possible mischief, as soon as he

he should be a man, and able. *Hannibal* was then about nine years old, when his father caused him to lay his hand upon the Altar, and make this vow: so that it was no marvel, if the impression were strong in him.

That it is inhumane, to bequeath hatred in this sort, as it were by Legacy, it cannot be denied. Yet for mine own part, I do not much doubt, but that some of those Kings, with whom we are now in peace, have received the like charge from their Predecessors, that as soon as their coffers shall be full, they shall declare themselves enemies to the people of *England*.

## S. II.

*Hannibal takes order for the defence of Spain, and Africk. His journey into Italy.*

WARRE being thus proclaimed, *Hannibal* resolved not to put up his sword which he had drawn against the *Saguntines*, until he had therewith opened his passage unto the gates of *Rome*. So began the second Punick War; second to none, that ever the Senate and people of *Rome* sustained. *Hannibal* wintered at *Carthage*, where he licensed his *Spanish* Souldiers to visit their friends, and refresh themselves against the Spring. In the mean while, he gave instructions to his brother *Asdrubal*, for the government of *Spain* in his absence. He also took order, to send a great many troupes of *Spaniards* into *Africk*, to equall the number of *Africans* formerly drawn thence into *Spain*; to the end, that so the one Nation might remain as pledges and gages for the other. Of the *Spaniards*, he transported into *Africk* thirteen thousand; eight hundred and fifty foot, and twelve hundred horse; also eight hundred slingers of the *Baleares*. Besides these he selected four thousand foot, all 10 young men, and of quality, out of the best Cities of *Spain*; which he appointed to be garrisoned in *Carthage* it self, not so much in regard of their forces, as that they might serve for hostages: for among those four thousand, the best of the *Spanish* Citizens, and those that swayed most in their severall States, had their Sons or Kinmen. He also left with his brother, to guard the coasts and Ports, fifty and seven Gallies; whereof thirty seven were presently armed, and appointed for the war. Of *Africans* and other Nations, strangers, he left with him above twelve thousand foot, and two thousand horse, besides one and twenty Elephants.

Having in this sort taken order for the defence of *Spain* and *Africk*; he sent discoverers before him, to view the Passages of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, and of the *Alpes*. He also sent Embassadours to the Mountainers of the *Pyrenes*, and to the *Gauls*, to obtain a quiet passage: that he might bring his Army entire into *Italy*, and not be compelled to diminish his forces, by any War in the way, till he came to encounter the *Romans*. His Embassadours and Discoverers being returned with good satisfaction; in the beginning of the Spring, he past over the River of *Iberus*, with an Army consisting of four- 20 fore and ten thousand foot, and twelve thousand horse. All those parts of *Spain*, into which he had not entered before, he now subdued; and appointed *Hanno* (not that old enemy of his house, who late sat at *Carthage*) to govern *Spain* on the East side of *Iberus*; to whom he left an Army of ten thousand foot and one thousand horse. Being arrived at the borders of *Spain*, some of his *Spanish* Souldiers returned home, without asking leave: which that others might not also do, or attempt, he courteously dismissed many more that seemed willing to be gone. Hereby it came to passe, that the journey seemed the lesse tedious unto those, that accompanied him; as being not enforced by compulsion. With the rest of his Army, consisting now but, of fifty thousand foot, and 30 nine thousand horse, he past the *Pyrenes*, and entered into *Gaul*. He found the *Gauls* that bordered upon *Spain*, ready in Armes, to forbid his entrance into their Country: but won them, with gentle speech, and rich presents that he bestowed upon their Leaders, to favour his Expedition. So without any molestation, he came to the bank of *Rhodanus*; where dwelt, on each side of the River, a people called *Volca*. These were unacquainted with the cause of his coming; and therefore sought to keep him from passing over the river. But he was greatly assisted by some of those *Gauls*, that inhabited on the West side of *Rhodanus*, to wit, by those of *Vivaraux* and *Lyonnois*. For although many of them had transported themselves & their goods, into the Country of *Dauphine* thinking

thinking to defend the further bank against him: yet such as remained, being very desirous to free their country of so many ill guests, were better pleased to have their Countrymen well beaten, which had abandoned them, than to have their own store of corn and cattell wasted, by the long stay of so great an Army, as lay upon them. For which reason, they helped him to make boats: informed him of another more easie passage, higher up the River: & lent him guides. When the Vessels for transportation of his Army were in readinesse; he sent *Hanno*, the son of *Bomilcar*, up the River: himself in the mean while making countenance to enter the Foord below. The end of this labour, was: that *Hanno* charging the *Gauls* unawares upon their own side, and *Hannibal*, at the same time, passing the River in their faces, the further bank was won. though with some difficulty; and the enemies dispersed. Yet was he greatly troubled in conveying over his Elephants; who marvellously feared the water. He was therefore driven to make rasses of trees, and cover them with earth and Turfe; whereof he fastned one to each bank, that might serve as a bridge, to and from another of the same sort, but look upon which the beasts were towed over.

Having past this first burnt, and overcome both the rage of the River, and of those that defend it, he was visited by the Princes of the *Gauls Cisalpinæ*, that inhabited *Pimont* and *Milan*, who lately had revolted from the *Romans*. These informed him of the passages of the *Alpes*; that they were not so difficult, as common report made them; and from these he received guides, with many other encouragements. All which notwithstanding, he found himself extremely incumbered by the *Suevians*; and lost, both of his carriages, and of his *Carthaginians*, more than willingly he would, or had formerly thought that he should. For he was twice mainly assailed by them, before he could recover the plain Countreys on the other side. And whereas his journey over the Mountains cost him fifteen dayes travail, he was every day, more or less, not only charged by those Mountainers, but withall extremely beaten with grievous weather and snow: it being the beginning of Winter, when he began, and overcame this passage. But the fair and fertile Plains, which were now ready to receive them; with the assistance and conduct of the *Cisalpine Gauls*, who by their proper forces had so often invaded the *Roman* Territory: gave them great comfort and encouragement to go on: having nothing else of difficulty remaining, but that which from the beginning they made accompt to overcome, by their proper valour and resolution; namely, the *Roman* Armies, and resistance.

## §. III.

*How the Romans in vain solicited the Spaniards and Gauls to take their part. The rebellion of the Cisalpine Gauls against the Romans.*

THE Countries of *Spain* and *Gaul*, through which the *Carthaginians* marched, thus far, had been solicited before, by the same *Roman* Embassadors, who had denounced the war at *Carthage*. These, as they were instructed by the Senate, took *Spain* in their way homeward from *Carthage*, with a purpose to draw into the *Roman* Alliance, as many of the Cities and Princes as they could; at least to dissuade them from contracting any friendship with the *Carthaginians*. The first which they attempted, were the *Volcians*, a people in *Spain*; from whom, in open assembly, they received by one that spake for the rest, this uncomfortable answer: With what face (saith he) can ye *Romans* persuade us to value your Alliance, or to prefer it before the friendship of the *Carthaginians*; seeing we are taught by the example of the *Saguntines*, to be more wise than so; For they, relying on your faith and promised assistance, have been utterly rooted out, & destroyed by the *Carthaginians*; whom they might else have held their assured friends, and good neighbours, as we, and other the people of *Spain* have found them. Ye may therefore be gone, with this resolution from us; That for our parts (and so I think, I may answer for the rest of our Country-men) the *Romans* henceforth are not to expect any kindness at our hands; who are resolved, never to make account of their protection, nor amity. From the *Volcians*, the Embassadors took their way towards the *Gauls*; using their best arguments to persuade them not to suffer the *Carthaginians* to pass into *Italy*, through their Territory: and withall greatly glorifying themselves,

themselves; their strength, and large Dominion. But the *Gauls* laugh them to scorn, and had hardly the patience, to hear them speak. For shall we (saith one of their Princes) by resisting *Hannibal's* passage into *Italy*, entertain a war which is not meant to be made against us? Shall we hold the war among our selves, and in our own Territory, by force which marcheth with a speedy pace from us, toward our ancient enemies? Have the *Romans* deserved to well of us, and the *Carthaginians* so ill, that we should set fire on our own houses, to save theirs from burning? No, we know it well, that the *Romans* have already forced some Nations of ours, out of their proper Territory and inheritance: and constrained others, as free as themselves, to pay them tribute. We will not therefore make the *Carthaginians*, our enemies; who have no way as yet offended us, nor we them.

With this displeasing answer the Embassadors returned home: carrying no good news, of friends likely to help them; but rather some assurance from the people of *Massilia*, which were confederates with *Rome*, that the *Gauls* were determined to take part with their enemy. Of this inclination, the *Cisalpine Gauls* gave hasty proof. For when the news was brought into *Italy*, that the *Carthaginians* had passed *Iberrus*; and were on the way towards *Rome*; this alone sufficed to stirre up the *Boji*, and *Isabarni*, against the *Romans*. These people were lately offended at the plantation of new *Roman* Colonies, at *Cremona*, and *Placentia*, within their Territories. Relying therefore upon the *Carthaginian* succour, which they supposed to be now at hand; they laid aside all regard of those hostages, which they had given to the *Romans*, and fell upon the new Colonies. The Towns it seems they could not win; for *Hannibal* shortly after failed to get them. But they forced the *Roman* Commissioners, (who belike were abroad in the Country) to flee to *Modena*: where they besieged them. The siege of *Modena* had continued some small time; when the *Gauls*, having little skill in assaulting Cities, waxed weary, and seemed desirous to have peace; and to come to some good accord with the *Romans*. This they did of purpose, to draw on some meeting; that they might thereby hand upon the *Roman* Deputies, thereby to redeem their hostages, in way of exchange. And it fell out, in part, according to their wish. For the *Romans* sent out Embassadors to treat with them, and to conclude a peace; whom they detained. *Manlius* the Prætor, who lay in these quarters with an Army, hearing this outrage; marched in all haste to the relief of the besieged. But the *Gauls*, having laid a strong ambush in a wood joyning to the way, fell upon the Prætor so opportunely, as he was utterly overthrown, and all his followers left dead in the place; a few excepted, that recovered, by fast running, a little village, but defensible; upon the River of *Po*. When this was heard at *Rome*, *C. Atilius*, another of the Prætors, was hastily sent, to relieve the besieged, with a Legion, and five thousand of the *Roman* associates: which forces were taken out of the Consul's Army, and supplied by a new levy.

As the *Gauls* were too rash and hasty; so were the *Romans* too slow, and indeed too ill-advised, in the beginning of this war. They were not persuaded, that *Carthage*, which had almost servilely endured so many indignities, in time of the late peace, would be so brave and courageous, on the sudden, as to attempt the conquest of *Italy* itself. Wherefore they appointed one of their Consuls, to make wars in *Spain*, the other indiffrict: resting secure of all danger at home. *Titus Sempronius* took his way toward *Hispania*, with an hundred and sixty *Quingueremes*, or Gallies of five to ten oars; which preparation may seem to threaten even the City of *Carthage*, to which it shall not come near. *P. Cornélius Scipio*, the other Consul, made all possible haste, by the way of *Gallia*, to *Provençe*; and used such diligence, having the wind also favourable, as in five dayes he recovered *Massilia*. There he was advertised, of *Hannibal's* his having passed the River of *Rhodanus*, whom he thought to have found but yet a while in *Spain*. *Hannibal* had also newes of the Consul's arrival; whereof he was neither glad, nor sorry; as not meaning to have to do with him. Each of them sent forth Scouts to discover the others number and doings: *Hannibal*, about five hundred *Numidians*; *Scipio*, three hundred of his better appointed *Roman* horse. These met and fought, and the *Numidians* were beaten: yet could not the *Romans* greatly brag, having slain only two hundred, and lost of their own, one hundred and forty. But when *Scipio* drew near, to have met with the *Carthaginians*; he found, that they were gone three dayes before; and that (as he then found assuredly true) with an intent to look upon the walls of *Rome*.

This

This interrupted his intended voyage into *Spain*. Nevertheless he sent away thicker his brother *Cn. Cornelius Scipio*, with the greatest part of his Fleet and Army, to try what might be done against *Asdrubal* & the other *Carthaginian* Lieutenants in the Country. He himself, taking with him a few choice bands, returned by Sea to *Pisa*; and so passing through *Tuscany* into *Lumbardy*, drew together the broken troops of *Manlius* & *Attilius*, that lately had been beaten by the *Gauls*: with which forces he made head against the enemy, thinking to find him over-laboured, with travail of his painful journey.

## §. IV.

*Scipio the Roman Consul overcome by Hannibal at Ticinum. Both of the Roman Consuls beaten by Hannibal, in a great battell at Trebia.*

**F**IVE Moneths *Hannibal* had spent in his tedious journey from *Carthage*; what great muster he could make, when he had passed the *Alpes*, it is not easily found. Some reckon his foot at an hundred thousand, and his horse at twenty thousand; others report them to have been only twenty thousand foot, and six hundred horse. *Hannibal* himself in his Monument which he raised, in the Temple of *Juno Lucina*, agreeth with the latter summe. Yet the *Gauls*, *Ligurians*, and others that joyned with him, are likely to have mightily increased his Army, in short space. But when he marched Eastward from the banks of *Rhodanus*, he had with him eight and thirty thousand foot, & eight thousand horse; of which, all save those remembered by himself in the inscription of his Altar in *Juno's* Temple, are like to have perished by diseases, enemies, Rivers, and Mountains; which mischiefs had devoured, each their severall shares.

Having newly passed the *Alpes*, and scarce refreshed his wearied Army in the Country of *Piemont*; he sought to win the friendship of the *Taurini*, who lay next in his way. But the *Taurini* held war at that time with the *Insubrians*, which were his good friends; and refused (perhaps for the same cause) his amity. Wherefore he assaulted their Town; and wan it by force in three daies. Their spoil served well to hearten his Army; and their calamity, to terrifie the Neighbour places. So the *Gauls*, without more ado, fell unto his side: many for fear, many also for good-will, according to their former inclination. This disposition ran through the whole Country: which joyned, or was all in readines to joyn with the *Carthaginians*; when the newes of *Scipio* the Consul his arrivall, made some to be more advised, than the rest. The name of the *Romans* was terrible in those quarters; what was in the *Carthaginians*, experience had not yet laid open. Since therefore the Roman Consul was already gotten through the most defensible passages, ere any speech had been heard of his approach: many for still for very fear, who else would fain have concluded a League with these new-come friends; and some, for greater fear, offered their service against the *Carthaginians*, whom nevertheless they had wished well to speed.

This wavering affection of the Province, whereinto they were entred, made the two Generals hasten to the tryall of a battail. Their meeting was at *Ticinum*, now called *Pavia*, where each of them wondred at the others expedition: *Hannibal* thinking it strange that the Consul, whom he had left behinde him on the other side of the *Alpes*, could meet him in the face, before he had well warmed himself in the Plains; *Scipio* admiring the strange adventure of passing those Mountains, and the great spirit of his Army. Neither were the Senate at *Rome* little amazed at *Hannibal's* success, and sudden arrivall. Wherefore they dispatched a Messenger in all haste unto *Sempronius*, the other Consul, that was then in *Scyllia*, giving him to understand hercof: & letting him further know, that whereas he had been directed to make the war in *Africa*, it was now their pleasure that he should forbear to prosecute any such attempt, but that he should return the Army under his charge, with all possible speed, to save *Italy* it self. According to this order, *Sempronius* sent off his Fleet from *Lilybaeum*; with direction to land the Army at *Ariminum*, a Port Town not far from *Ravenna*: quite another way from *Carthage*, whither he was making haste. In the mean while, *Scipio* and *Hannibal* were come so near, that fight they must: ere they could part asunder. Hereupon both of them prepared the mindes of their Souldiers, by the best arguments they had: unto which *Hannibal* added the Rhetorick of a present example, that he shewed upon certain prisoners

a These dwell about Turin, a goodly City now subject unto the Duke of Savoy, which from them took the name of Augusta Taurinorum.

10

prisoners of the *Sempronians*, which he brought along with him, fitted for the purpose, in order to shew, having been no less miserably fettered, and chained, than sparingly sold, and withall so often scourged on their naked bodies, as nothing was more in their desire, than to be delivered from their miseries, by any kinde of present death; were brought into the middle of the Army, where it was openly demanded; which of them would fight hand to hand with some other of his Companions, till the one of them were slayd with condition, being the Victor, to receive his liberty, and some small reward. This was no sooner propounded; than all of them together accepted the offer. Then did *Hannibal* cause lots to be cast, which of them should entertaine the lot, with such weapons; as the Champions of the *Gauls* were wont to use in single combats. Every one of these misapprehensions wished, that his own lot might speed in whereby, it should at least be his good fortune, to end his miseries by death, if not to get a reward by victory. That court, whose good hap it was to be chosen, fought resolutely; as rather desiring, than fearing death; and having none other hope, than in vanquishing. Thus were some few combats, so skilful, nor how equally; for all the *Sempronians* were willing, upon what severall uneven termes, to ridde themselves out of slavery. The same affection, this was in these Combatants, and in their fellows which beheld them, brought also upon the *Carthaginians*, for whom the spectacle was ordained. For they deemed happy, not only him, that by winning the victory had gotten his liberty together with an horse, and armour; but even him also, who being slain in fight, had escaped that miserable captivity, unto which his Companions were returned. A beir General, perceiving what emotion the dumbes they had wrought in them, began to admonish them of their condition, speaking to this effect: That he had laid before them an example of their own estates: seeing the time was at hand, wherein they were all to runne the same fortune; that these slaves had done, all to live victorious and rich; or all to die, or (which these prisoners esteemed far more grievous) to live in a perpetual slavery; that none of them all, in whom was common sense, could promise to himself any piece of life by flight; since the Mountains, the Rivers, the great distance from their own Countries, and the pursuit of merciless Enemies, must needs retrench all such imaginations. He therefore prayed them to remember, that they, who had even now praised the fortune both of the Victor, and of the vanquished, would make it their complaint; seeing that there was never any in the world, appointed with such a resolution, that had ever been broken, or beaten by their enemies. On the contrary, he told them that the *Romans*, who were to fight upon their own soil, and in view of their own towns, who knew as many ways to save themselves by flight, as they had bodies of men to fight withall, could no way entertaine such a resolution as theirs: seeing the same necessity (to which nothing seems impossible) did no way press them, or constrain them; in this sort did *Hannibal*, with one substantiall argument, That there was no mean between victory and death, encourage his Companions. For, (saith a great Captain of France) *La commodité de la retraite avance la fuite*; The commodity of a retreat, doth greatly advance a running away.

*Scipio* on the other side, after that he had given order for the laying out of a bridge over the River of *Ticinus*, did not neglect to use the best arguments and reasons, he could, to encourage the Army he led: putting them in mind of the great conquests, and victories of their Ancestors; against how many Nations they had prevailed; and over how many Enemies, their Enemies, they had triumphed. As for this Army, commanded by *Hannibal*, who although it were enough to tell them, that it was no better than of *Carthaginians*, whom in their late war they had so often beaten by Land and Sea; yet he prayed them to consider, that at this time it was not only so diminished in numbers, as it seemed a troupe of Brigands and Thieves, than an Army likely to encounter the *Romans*, but so weather-beaten, and starved, as neither the men, nor horses, had strength or courage to sustain the first charge that should be given upon them. Nay, (said he) yet your selves may make judgement what daring they have now remaining after so many travails and miseries; seeing when they were in their best strength, after they had past the *Roads*, their horse-men were not only beaten by ours, and driven back to the very trenches of their Camp, but *Hannibal* himself, fearing our approach, ran head-long towards the *Alpes*; thinking it a lesse dishonour, to die there by frost, famine, and precipitation, than by the sharp swords of the *Romans*, which had so often cut down his people,

people, both in *Africa* and in *Sicily*. It was not long after this, ere the two Generals, each being far advanced before the gross of his Army, with his Horse, and the *Romans* having also with him some light-armed foot, to view the ground, and the enemies' intrenchment. When they discovered the approach one of the other, *Scipio* sent before him his horsemen of the *Winds*, to begin the fight, and bestowing his Darters in the ground between their groups, to assist them: himself with his *Roman* men at arms, followed softly in good order. The *Gauls* (whether desirous to try the metal of the *Carthaginians*, or hoping thereby to get favour of the *Romans*) behaved themselves courageously, & were as courageously opposed. Yet their foot that should have aided them, shrunk at the first blunts, or rather fled cowardly away, without casting a Dart, for fear of being trodden down by the enemies' horse. This notwithstanding, the *Gauls* maintained the fight, and did more hurt than they received, as presuming that they were well backed. Neither was the Consul unmindful to relieve them: their hardness deserving his aid; and the hasty flight of those that should have stood by them, admonishing him that it was needfull. Wherefore he adventured himself so far, that he received a dangerous wound, and had been killed in the place, if his son (afterward furnished *Africanus*) had not brought himself off, though others give the honour of this rescue to a *Libyan* slave. While the *Romans* were busied in helping their Consul, an unexpected storme came driving at their backs, and made them look about how to help themselves. *Hannibal* had appointed his *Numidian* light-horse, to give upon the *Roman* flank, and to compass them about, while he with his main Armies sustained the charge, and met them in the face. The *Numidians* performed this very well, scattering the scattered foot that ran away at the first encounter, and then falling on the backs of those, whose looks were fastened upon *Hannibal* and *Scipio*. By this unexpected stroke the *Romans* were shuffed together, and routed: so that they all betook them to their speed, and left unto their enemies the honour of the day.

When *Scipio* saw his horsemen thus beaten, and the rest of his Army thereby greatly discouraged, he thought it a point of wisdom, having lost so many of his Fleet upon the first puffe of the wind, to take Post with the rest, before the extremest of the tempest overtook him. For he saw by the following morning what manner of day it was like to prove. Therefore his battail of foot being yet unbroken, he in a manner stole the retreat; and recovered the bridge over *Ticinus*, which he had formerly built. But notwithstanding all the haste that he made, he left six hundred of his Rear behinde him: who were the last that should have passed, and failed to break the bridge. He then followed this rule of a good man of war, *Sicetrumen quandoque dubium, videatur, talion Miles arripit fugam: fuga enim aliquando laudanda*: which must be understood in this sort: If a Generall of an Army, by some unsuspicious beginnings doubt the success, or finde his Army fearfull or wavering, it is more profitable to steal a safe retreat, than to abide the uncertain event of battail.

It was two dayes after, ere *Hannibal* could pass the River, *Scipio* the whilest refreshing his men, and easing himself of his wound in *Placentia*. But as soon as *Hannibal* presented his Army before the Town, offering battail to the *Romans*, who durst not accept it, nor issue forth of their Camp, the *Gauls*, that hitherto had followed *Scipio* for fear, gathered out of his fear, courage to forsake him. They thought that now the long-dreaded time was come, in which better Chieftains and Souldiers, than *Anerothis*, *Britomachus*, and *Assar*, were come to help them: if they had the heares to help themselves. Wherefore the same night they fell upon the *Roman* Camp, wounded and slue many, especially of those guards that kept watch at the gate, with whose heads in their hands, they fled over to the *Carthaginians*, and presented their service. *Hannibal* received them exceeding courteously, and dismissed them to their own places: as men likely to be of more use to him, in perswading the rest of their Nation to become his Confederates, than in any other service at the present.

About the fourth watch of the night following, the Consul stole a retreat, as he had done before, but not with the like ease and security. *Hannibal* had a good eye upon him, and ere he could get far, sent the *Numidians* after him: following himself with all his Army. That night the *Romans* had received a great blow, if the *Numidians*, greedy of spoil, had not staid to ransack their camp, and thereby given time to all, save some few in Rear, that were slain or taken, to pass the River of *Trebia*, and save themselves.

*Scipio*,

being both unable to travel by reason of his wound, and withall, finding it expedient to attend the coming of his fellow-Consul, incamps himself strongly upon the banks of *Trebia*. Necessity required that he should so doe; yet this diminished his reputation. For every day more and more of the *Gauls* fell to the *Carthaginian* side; among whom came in the *Boji*, that brought with them the *Roman* Commissioners, which they had taken in the late Insurrection. They had hitherto kept them as pledges, to redeem their own hostages: but now they deliver them up to *Hannibal*, as tokens & pledges of their affections towards him; by whose help they conceived better hope of recovering their own men and lands. In the mean while, *Hannibal*, being in great scarcity of victuals, attempted the taking of *Clasidium*, a Town wherein the *Romans* had laid up all their store and munition. But there needed no force; a *Brundisian*, whom the *Romans* had trusted with keeping it, sold it for a little money.

The newes of these disasters, brought to *Rome*, filled the Senate and People, rather with a desire of hasty revenge, than any great sorrow for their loss received; seeing that in manner, all their foot, wherein their strength and hope consisted, were as yet entire. They therefore hastened away *Sempronius*, that was newly arrived, towards *Ariminum*, where the Army, by him sent out of *Sicily*, awaited his coming. He therefore halted thither, and from thence he marched speedily towards his Colleague: who attended him upon the banks of *Trebia*. Both the Armies being joyed in one, the Consuls devised about that which remained to be done: *Sempronius* receiving from *Scipio* the relation of what had passed since *Hannibal's* arrival, the fortune of the late fight; and by what error of misadventure the *Romans* were therein foiled: which *Scipio* chiefly laid on the revolt and treason of the *Gauls*.

*Sempronius*, having received from *Scipio* the state of the affairs in those parts, sought by all means to try his fortune with *Hannibal*, before *Scipio* were recovered of his wounds, that thereby he might purchase to himself the sole glory of the victory, which he had already, in his imagination, certainly obtained. He also feared the election of the new Consul: his own time being well-near expired. But *Scipio* perswaded the contrary, objecting the unskillfulness of the new-come souldiers: and withall gave him good reason, to assure him that the *Gauls*, naturally unconstant, were upon terms of abandoning the party of the *Carthaginians*; those of them inhabiting between the rivers of *Trebia* and *Po*, being already revolted. *Sempronius* knew all this as well as *Scipio*: but being hath guided and blinded by his ambition, he made haste to finde out the dishonour which he might otherwise easily have avoided. This resolution of *Sempronius* was exceeding pleasing to *Hannibal*: who feared nothing so much as delay and loss of time. For the strength of his Army, consisting in strangers, to wit, in *Spaniards* and *Gauls*; he no less feared the change of affection in the one, than the impatience of the other: who being far from their own home, had many passions moving them to turn their faces towards it. To further the desire of *Sempronius*, it fell out so, that about the same time, the *Gauls*, inhabiting near unto *Trebia*, complained of injuries done by the *Carthaginians*. They did not supply *Hannibal* with necessaries, as he supposed that they might have done; although he daily reprehended their negligence, telling them, that for their sakes, and to set them at liberty, he had undertaken this Expedition. Seeing therefore how little they regarded his words, he was bold to be his own Carver, and took from them by force, as much as he needed of that which they had. Hereupon they fly to the *Romans* for help: and, to make their tale the better, say that this wrong is done them, because they refused to joyn with *Hannibal*. *Scipio* cared not much for this: he suspected their falsehood, and was assured of their mutability. But *Sempronius* affirmed, that it stood with the honour of *Rome*, to preserve their Confederates from suffering injury: and that hereby might be won the friendship of all the *Gauls*. Therefore he sent out a thousand horse: which coming unlooked for upon *Hannibal's* foragers, and finding them heavy laden, cut many of them in pieces, and chased the rest even into their own camp. This indignity made the *Carthaginians* rally out against them: who caused them to retire faster than they came. *Sempronius* was ready to back his own men; and expelled the enemies, *Hannibal* did the like. So that at length all the *Roman* Army was drawn forth; and a battell ready to be fought, if the *Carthaginians* had not retreated.

This victory (for so the Consul would have it called) made the *Romans* in general desirous

That

desirous



desirous to try the main chance in open field: all the persuasions of *Scipio* to the contrary notwithstanding. Of this disposition *Hannibal* was advertised by the *Gauls*, his spies, that were in the *Roman* Camp. Therefore he bethought himself how to help forward the victory by adding some stratagem to his forces: he found in the hollow of a water-course, over-grown with high reed, a fit trench to cover an ambush. Therein he cast his brother *Mago* with a thousand choise horse, and as many foot. The rest of his Army, after they had well waded, and well fed themselves in their camp, he led into the field, and marched towards the Consul. Early in the morning, he had sent over *Trebia* some companies of *Numidian* light-horse, to brave the enemy, and draw him forth to a bad dinner, ere he had broken his fast. *Sempronius* was ready to take any opportunity to fight: and therefore not only issued out of his Camp, but forded the River of *Trebia*, in a most cold and miserable day; his foot being wet almost to the arme-holes: which, together with the want of food, did so enfeeble and cool their courages, as they wanted force to handle the armes they bare. Strong they were in foot, as well of their own Nation, as of the *Latins*: having of the one sixteen, of the other twenty thousand. The masse of these they ranged in a grosse Battalion, guarded on the flanks with three thousand horse, thrusting their light-armed, & Darters, in loose troupes in the head of the rest, in the nature of a Vanguard. The *Carthaginian* numbers of foot were in a manner equal to their enemies, in horse they had by far the better, both in number and goodness. When therefore the *Roman* horse, ranged on the flanks of their foot, were broken by the *Numidians*; so when their foot were charged both in front and flank, by the *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, and Elephants; when finally the whole Army was unwares preft in the Rear, by *Mago* and his two thousand, that rose out of their place of ambush; then fell the *Romans*, by heaps, under the enemies swords: & being beaten down, as well fighting in disorder, as flying towards the River, by the horsemen that pursued them, there escaped no more of six and thirty thousand, than ten thousand of all sorts, Horse and Foot.

Three great errors *Sempronius* committed, of which every one deserved to be compensated with the loss that followed. The first was, that he fought with *Hannibal* in a Champain, being by far inferiour in horse, and withall, ther by subject to the *African* Elephants, which in inclosed or uneven grounds and wood-lands, would have bin of no use. His second error was, that he made no discovery of the place upon which he fought, whereby he was grossly over-reach, and insnared, by the ambush which *Hannibal* had laid for him. The third was, that he drencht his footmen with empty stomachs, in the River of *Trebia*, even in a most cold and frosty day, whereby, in effect, they lost the use of their limbs. For, as one saith well, *There is nothing more inconvenient and perillous, than to present an army tyred with travel, to an enemy fresh and fed, since where the strength of body faileth, the generosity of minde is but as an unprofitable vapour.*

The broken remainder of the *Roman* Army, was collected by *Scipio*, who got there with into *Placentia*, stealing away the same night, which was exceeding rainy, from the *Carthaginians*, who either perceived him not, because of the showres, or would not perceive him, because they were over wearied. *Sempronius* escaped with extreme danger, flying through the Country that was over-run by the enemies horse. He was attended by more, than were requisite in a secret flight; yet by fewer, than could have made resistance, if the enemy had met with him: Nevertheless he got away, and came to *Rome*, where he did his office in choosing new Consuls for the year following: and then returned into his Province, with a fresh supply against *Hannibal*.

## s. V.

*The departure of Hannibal from the Cisalpine Gauls into Hetruria. Flaminius the Roman Consul slain, and his Army destroyed by the Carthaginians, at the Lake of Trasymene.*

THE Winter growing on apace, was very sharp, and unfit for service: to the great contentment of the *Romans*, who, being not able to keep the field, lay warme in *Placentia*, and *Cremona*. Yet *Hannibal* did not suffer them to rest very quiet; but vexed them with continuall Alarms: assailed divers places, and taking some; beating the *Gauls* their adherents, and winning the *Ligurians* to his party, who presented him, in token of their faithfull love, with two *Roman* Questors, or

Treasurers,

Treasurers, two Colonels, and five Gentlemen, the Sons of Senators, which they had intercepted. These, and in generall all such prisoners as he had of the *Romans*, he held in straight places, loaden with irons, and miserably fed: those of their followers he not only well intreated, but sent them to their Counties without ranfome; with this proclamation, That he therefore undertook the War in *Italy*, to free them from the oppression of the *Romans*. By these means he hoped, and not in vain, to draw many of them to his party and assistance. But the *Gauls* were not capable of such persuasions. They stood in fear, lest he should make their Country the seat of War, and perhaps take it from them. They were also more grieved than reason willed them, at his seeing upon them, and wasting their territory. Wherefore some of them conspired against his life; others admonished him of the danger: and these that gave him the advice, were ready soon after to practice against him; but were in like sort detected. He was therefore glad to use Periwigs of hair, and false beards of divers colours, to the end that he might not be decryed, nor known, to those that should undertake to make him away. Fain he would have passed the *Appenines*, upon the first appearance of Springs; but was compelled by the violence of weather, to carry among the *Gauls*, till he had seen more swallows than one. At length, when the year was somewhat better opened, he resolved to take his leave of these giddy companions, & bring the war neerer to the gates of *Rome*. So away he went, having his Armie greatly increased with *Ligurians* and *Gauls*, more serviceable friends abroad, than in their own Countie. That the passage of the *Appenine* Mountains was troublesome, I hold it needlesse to make any doubt. Yet since the *Roman* Armies found no memorable impediment, in their marches that way: the great vexation, which fell upon *Hannibal*, when he was travelling through and over them, ought in reason to be imputed rather to the extremity of Winter, that makes all ways foule, than to any intolerable difficultie in that journey. Nevertheless, to avoid the length of way, together with the resistance and fortifications, which may not improbably be thought to have been erected upon the ordinary passages towards *Rome*: he chose at this time, though it were with much trouble, to travell through the Fens and rotten grounds of *Tuscan*. In those Marishes and bogs, he lost all his Elephants, save one, together with the use of one of his eyes; by the moistness of the air, and by lodging on the cold ground, and wading through deep mire and water. In brief, after he had with much ado recovered the firme and fertile Plaines, he lodged about *Arretium*, where he somewhat refreshed his wearied followers; and heard newes of the *Roman* Consuls.

*C. Flaminius*, and *Cn. Servilius* had of late been chosen Consuls for this year: *Servilius* a tractable man, and wholly governed by advice of the Senate; *Flaminius* an hot-headed popular Orator; who having once been robbed (as he thought) of his Consulship, by a device of the Senators, was afraid to be served so again, unless he quickly finished the war. This jealous Consul thought it not best for him to be at *Rome*, when he entered into his Office, lest his adversaries, by faining some religious impediment, should detain him within the City, or find other business for him at home, to disappoint him of the honour that he hoped to get in the war. Wherefore he departed secretly out of the Town; and meant to take possession of his Office, when the day came, at *Ariminum*. The fathers (so the Senators were called) highly displeased with this, revoked him by Embassadors; but he neglected their injunction, and hasting to meet with the *Carthaginians*, took his way to *Arretium*, where he shortly found them.

The fiery disposition of this Consul, promised unto *Hannibal* great assurance of victory. Therefore he provoked, with many indignities, the vehement nature of the *Roman*: hoping thereby to draw him unto fight, ere *Servilius* came with the rest of the Army. All the Country between *Fesule* and *Arretium* he put to fire and sword, even under the Consuls nose; which was enough to make him stir, that would not have sitten still, though *Hannibal* had been quiet. It is true that a great Captain of *France* hath said, *Plus gaste n'est pas perdu; A wasted Country is not thereby lost.* But by this waste of the Country, *Flaminius* thought his own honour to be much impaired; and therefore advanced towards the Enemy. Many advised him (which had indeed been best) to have patience a while, and stay for his Colleague. But of this he could not abide to hear: saying, that he came not to defend *Arretium*, whilst the *Carthaginians* went burning down all *Italy* before them, to the gates of *Rome*. Therefore he took horse,

T t t t

and



and commanded the Army to march. It is reported as ominous, that one of their Ensigns stuck so fast in the ground, as it could not be plucked up by the Ensign-bearer. Of this tale, whether true or false, *Tully* makes a jest; saying, that the cowardly *hannibal* did faintly pull at it (as going now to fight) having hardly puched it into the earth. Neither was the answer of *Flaminius* (if it were true) disagreeable hereto: for he commanded that it should be digged up, if fear had made the hands too weak to lift it: asking withall, whether letters were not come from the Senate, to hinder his proceedings. Of this their jealousy, both he and the Senate that did give him cause, are likely to repent.

All the Territory of *Cortona*, as far as to the Lake of *Thrasymene*, was on a light fire, to which whilst the Consul thought to quench with his enemies blood, he pursued *Hannibal* so unadvisedly, that he fell with his whole Army into an ambush cunningly laid for him, between the Mountains of *Cortona* and the Lake. There was he charged unawares, on all sides, (save only where that great Lake of *Persia* permitted neither his enemies to come at him, nor him to flye from them) knowing not which way to turn, or make resistance. So was he slain in the place, accompanied with fifteen thousand dead carkasses of his Countrymen. About six thousand of his men, that had the Vanguard, took courage, as for the most part it happens, out of desperation; and breaking through the enemies, that stood in their way, recovered the tops of the Mountains. If these had returned, and given charge upon the *Carthaginians* backs, it was thought that they might to have greatly amended, if not wholly altered, the fortune of the day. But that violence of their fear, which, kindled by necessity, had wrought the effects of hardiness, was well asswaged, when they ceased to despair of saving their lives by flight. They stood still, in a cold sweat, upon the Hill-top, hearing under them a terrible noise, but not any way discovering how things went, because of the great fogge that held all that morning. When it grew toward noon the ayre was cleared, and they might plainly discern the lamentable slaughter of their fellows. But they staid not to lament it: for it was high time, they thought, to be gone ere they were decryed and attached by the enemies horse. This they should have thought upon sooner, since they had no minde to return unto the fight. For decryed they were, and *Maharbal* sent after them; who over-took them by night in a Village, which he surrounded with his horse: and so they yielded the next day, rendring up their armes, upon his promise of their lives and liberties.

This accord *Hannibal* refused to confirm; saying, That it was made by *Maharbal* without sufficient warrant, as wanting his authority to make it good. Herein he taught them (yet little to his own honour) what it was to keep no faith: and fitted them with a trick of their own. For if it were lawfull unto the *Romans*, to alter covenants, or adde unto them what they listed; if the *Carthaginians* must be faine to pay certain hundreds, and yet more hundreds of talents, besides their first bargain; as also to renounce their interest in *Sardinia*, and be limited in their *Spanish* Conquests, according to the good pleasure of the *Romans*, whose present advantage is more ample, than the conditions of the late concluded peace: then can *Hannibal* be as a *Roman*, as themselves; and make them know, that perfidiousness gaineth no more in prosperity, than it loseth in the change of fortune. Fifteen thousand *Italian* prisoners, or thereabout, he had in his hands: of which, all that were not *Romans*, he set free without ranfome; protesting, as he had done before, that it was for their sakes, and to free them and others from the *Roman* tyranny, that he had undertaken this war. But the *Romans* he kept in straight prison, and in fetters, making them learn to eat hard meat. This was a good way to breed in the people of *Italy*, if not a love of *Carthage*, yet a contempt of *Rome*: as if this war had not concerned the generall safety, but only the preserving of her own neck from the yoke of slavery, which her over-strong enemies would thrust upon her in revenge of her oppressions. But an ancient reputation, confirmed by successe of many ages, is not lost in one or two battels. Wherefore more is to be done, ere the *Carthaginians* can get any *Italian* Partisans.

Presently after the battell of *Thrasymene*, *C. Centronius*, with four thousand *Roman* horse, drew near unto the Camp of *Hannibal*. He was sent from *Ariminum* by *Servilius* the other Consul, to increase the strength of *Flaminius*: but, coming too late, he increased only the misadventure. *Maharbal* was employed by *Hannibal*, to intercept this company;

company; who finding them amazed with report which they had newly heard of the great overthrow, charged them; and brake them: and killing almost half of them, drove the rest unto an high piece of ground, whence they came down, and simply yielded to mercy the next day. *Servilius* himself was in the mean while skirmishing with the *Gauls*; against whom he had wrought no matter of importance, when the newes was brought him of his Colleagues overthrow and death in *Thrasymene*; that made him hasten back to the defence of *Rome*.

In these passages, it is easie to discern the fruits of popular jealousy, which perswaded the *Romans* to the yearly change of their Commanders in the wars; which greatly endangered, and retarded the growth of that Empire. Certain it is, that all men are far better taught by their own errors, than by the examples of their foregoers. *Flaminius* had heard, in what a trap *Sempronius* had been taken up but the year before, by this subtle *Carthaginian*; yet suffered he himself to be caught soon after in the same manner. He had also belike forgotten, how *Sempronius*, fearing to be prevented by a new Consul, and ambitious of the sole honour of beating *Hannibal* in battell, without help of his companion *Scipio*, had been rewarded with shame and losse; else would he not, contrary to all good advice, have been so hasty to fight, before the arrivall of *Servilius*. If *Sempronius* had been continued in his charge, it is probable that he would have taken his companion with him the second time, and have searched all suspected places, to proper to have shadowed an ambush: both which this new Consul *Flaminius* neglected. We may boldly avow it, that by being continued in his government of France ten years, *Cesar* brought that mighty Nation, together with the *Helvetians* and many of the *Germanians*, under the *Roman* yoke; into which parts had there been every year a new Lieutenant sent, they would hardly, if ever, have been subdued. For it is more than the best wit in the World can doe, to inform it self, within one years compasse, of the nature of a great Nation, of the Factions of the Places, Rivers, and of all good helps, whereby to prosecute a War to the best effect. Our Princes have commonly left their Deputies in *Ireland* three years; whence by reason of the shortness of that their time, many of them have returned as wise as they went out; others have profited more, and yet when they began but to know the first rudiments of War, and government, suting the Country, they have bin called home, & new Apprentices sent in their places, to the great prejudice both of this and that Estate. But it hath ever been the course of the World rather to follow old errors than to examine them: and of Princes and Governours to uphold their slothfull ignorance, by the old examples and policy of other ages and people; though neither felicity of time, of occasion, or of any other circumstance, have perswaded the imitation.

## s. VI.

*How Q. Fabius the Roman Dictator, sought to consume the force of Hannibal, by lingering War. Minutius the Master of the Horse honoured and advanced by the People, for bold and successfull attempting; adventures rashly upon Hannibal, and is like to perish with his Army, but rescued by Fabius.*

Greatly were the *Romans* amazed at this their ill successe, and at the danger apparent; which threatened them in more terrible manner, than ever did war since *Rome* it self was taken. They were good Souldiers; and so little accustomed to receive an overthrow, that when *Pyrhus* had beaten them, once and again, in open field, all *Italy* was strangely affected with his successe, and held him in admiration, as one that could work wonders. But *Pyrhus* his quarrell was not grounded upon hate: he only sought honour, and fought (as it were) upon a bravery; demeaning himself like a courteous enemy. This *Carthaginian* detested the whole *Roman* name, against which he burned with desire of revenge. *Ticinum*, *Trebia*, and *Thrasymene*, witnessed his purpose, & his ability, which to withstand, they fled unto a remedy that had long been out of use, and created a Dictator. The Dictators power was greater than the Consuls, and scarcely subject unto controll of the whole City. Wherefore this Officer was seldom chosen, but upon some extremity, and for no longer time than six moneths: He was to be named by one of the Consuls, at the appointment of the Senate: though it were so, that the Consul (if he stood upon his prerogative) might name whom he pleased. At this time the

one Consul being dead, and the other too far off, the People took upon them, as having supreme authority, to give the Dignity by their election, to *Q. Fabius Maximus*, the best reputed man of war in the City. *Novum factum novum consilium exiit. Contrary winds, contrary counsels. Q. Fabius chose M. Minutius Rufus* Master of the horse: which officer was customarily as the Dictators Lieutenant; though this *Minutius* grew afterwards famous, by taking more upon him.

Liv. lib. 22.

The first act of *Fabius*, was the reformation of somewhat amiss in matter of Religion: a good beginning, and commendable; had the Religion been also good. But if it were true (as *Livie* reports it) that the Books of *Sibyl* were consulted, and gave direction in this business of devotion; then must we believe, that those books of *Sibyl*, preserved in *Rome*, were dictated by an evil spirit. For it was ordained, that some Vow, made in the beginning of this war to *Mars*, should be made anew, and amplified; as having not been rightly made before: also that great plays should be vowed unto *Jupiter*, and a Temple to *Venus*; with such other trumpery. This vehemency of superstition, proceeds always from vehemency of fear. And surely this was a time, when *Rome* was exceedingly distempered with passion: whereof that memorable accident, of two women that suddenly died, when they saw their sons return alive from *Trasymene*, may serve to bear witness though it be more properly an example of mortally love. The walls and towers of the City were now repaired and fortified; the bridges upon Rivers were broken down; and all care taken for defence of *Rome* it self. In this tumult, when the Dictator was newly set forth against *Hannibal*, word was brought that the *Carthaginian* fleet had intercepted all the supply, that was going to *Cn. Scipio* in *Spain*. Against these *Carthaginians*, *F. Fabius* commanded *Servilius* the Consul to put to Sea; and taking up all the ships about *Rome* and *Ostia* to pursue them: whilest he, with the Legions, attended upon *Hannibal*. Four Legions he had levied in haste: and from *Ariminum* he received the Army which *Servilius* the Consul had conducted thither.

With these forthwith he followed apace after *Hannibal*, not to fight, but to affront him. And knowing well, what advantage the *Numidian* horse had over the *Romans*, he always lodged himself on high grounds, and of hard access. *Hannibal* in the mean while, pursuing his victory, had ranged over all the Country, and used all manner of cruelty towards the inhabitants; especially to those of the *Roman* Nation, of whom he did put to the sword, all that were able to bear arms. Passing by *Spoleum* and *Ancona*, he incamped upon the *Adriatick* shores; refreshed his diseased, and over-travelled Companies, armed his *Africans* after the manner of the *Romans*, and made his dispatches for *Carthage*; presenting his friends, which were in effect all the Citizens, with part of the spoils that he had gotten. Having refreshed his army, fed his horses, cured his wounded Soldiers, and (as *Polybius* hath it) healed his horse heels of the scratches, by washing their pasterns in old wine: he followed the coast of the *Adriatick* Sea towards *Apulia*, a Northern Province of the Kingdom of *Naples*; spoiling the *Marrucini*, and all other Nations lying in his way. In all this ground that he over-ran, he had not taken any one City: only he had assailed *Spoleum*, a Colony of the *Romans*; and finding it well defended, presently gave it over. The malice of a great Army is broken, and the force of it spent in a great siege. This the *Protestant* Army found true at *Poitiers*, a little before the battel of *Morcombourg*; and their victorious enemies, anon after, at *S. Jean d'Angely*. But *Hannibal* was more wise. He would not engage himself in any such enterprise, as should detain him, and give the *Romans* leave to take breath. All his care was to weaken them in force and reputation: knowing, that when once he was absolute Master of the field, it would not be long ere the walled Cities would open their gates, without expecting any engine of battery. To this end he presented *Fabius* with battell, as soon as he saw him; and provoked him with all manner of bravadoes. But *Fabius* would not bite. He well knew the differences between soldiers bred up, ever since they were boys, in war and in blood, trained & hardened in *Spain*, made proud and adventurous by many victories there, and of late by some notable acts against the *Romans*; and such, as had no sooner seen the enemy, than bin vanquished by him. Therefore he attended the *Carthaginian* so near, as he kept him from stragling too far; and preserved the country from utter spoil. He injured his men by little and little, and made them acquainted with dangers by degrees, and he brought them first to look on the *Lyon* afar off; that in the end he might sit on his tail.

NOW

Now *Minutius* had a contrary disposition, and was as fiery as *Flaminius*; taxing *Fabius* with cowardize and fear. But all stirred not this well-advised Commander. For wise men are no more moved with such noise, than with wind bruised out of a bladder. There is nothing of more indiscretion and danger, than to pursue misfortune: it wasteth it self sooner by surffurance, than by opposition. It is the invading Army that desires battell: and this of *Hannibal*, was both the invading and victorious. *Fabius* therefore suffered *Hannibal* to cross the *Apennines*, and to fall upon the most rich and pleasant Territory of *Campania*; neither could he by any arguments be persuaded, to adventure the *Roman* Army in battell: but being far too weak in horse, he always kept the Hills and fast grounds. When *Hannibal* saw he could by no means draw this wary Dictator to fight, that the Winter came on, and that the Towns stood firm for the *Romans*, whose Legions were in sight, though afar off; he resolved to rest his Army, that was loaded with spoil, in some plentiful and assured place, till the following spring. But ere this can be done he must pass along by the Dictators camp, that hung over his head upon the hills of *Collinella*, and *Casilinum*: for other way there was none, by which he might issue out of that goodly garden-country, which he had already wasted, into places more abundant of provision for his wintering. It was by meer error of his guide, that he first entered within these straits. For he would have been directed unto *Casilinum*, whence he might both assuage the fair City of *Capua*, which had made him friendly promises under band, and hinder the *Romans* from coming near it to prevent him. But his guide misunderstood the *Carthaginian* pronuntiation, and conducted him awry another way; from *Casilinum* to *Casilinum*, whence *Fabius* hoped that he should not easily escape. Now began the wisdom of *Fabius* to grow into credit; as if he had taken the *Carthaginians* in a trap, and won the victory without blowes. But *Hannibal* reformed this opinion, and freed himself, by a sleight invention, yet serving the turn as well as a better. In driving the country, he had gotten about two thousand Kine, whose horns he dressed with dry faggots, and setting fire to them in the dark night, caused them to be driven up the hills. The spectacle was strange, and therefore terrible; especially to those that knew it to be a work of a terrible enemy. What it should mean, *Fabius* could not tell, but thought it a device to circumvent him, and therefore kept within his Trenches. They that kept the hill tops were horribly afraid, when some of these fiery Monsters were gotten beyond them, and ran therefore hastily away, thinking that the enemies were behind their backs; and fell among the light-armed *Carthaginians*, that were no less afraid of them. So *Hannibal*, with his whole Army, recovered sure ground without molestation: where he staid till the next morning, and then brought off his light footmen, with some slaughter of the *Romans*, that began to hold them in skirmish. After this, *Hannibal* made semblance of taking his journey towards *Rome*: and the Dictator coasted him in the wonted manner, keeping still on high grounds, between him & the City, whilest the *Carthaginian* wasted all the Plains. The *Carthaginian* took *Geryon*, an old ruinous Town in *Apulia*, forsaken by the Inhabitants, which he turned into Barnes and Store houses for winter, and incamped under the broken wall. Other matter of importance he did none: but the time passed idly, till the Dictator was called away to *Rome*, about some business of Religion, and left the Army in charge with *Minutius* the Master of the horse.

*Minutius* was glad of this good occasion to shew his own sufficiency. He was fully persuaded, that his *Romans*, in plain field would be too hard for the *Africans* and *Spaniards*: by whom if they had been foiled already twice or thrice, it was not by open force, but by subtilty and ambush, which he thought himself wise enough to prevent. All the Army was of his opinion; and that so earnestly, as he was preferred, by judgement of the Soldiers, in worthynesse to command, before the cold and wary *Fabius*. In this jollity of conceit, he determined to fight. Yet had he been peremptorily forbidden so to do, by the Dictator; the breach of whose command was extreme perill of death. But the honour of the victory, which he held undoubtedly his own; and the love of the Army, and the friends that he had at home bearing office in *Rome*, were enough to save him from the Dictators rods and axes, took he the matter never so haughtily. *Hannibal* on the other side was no less glad, that he should play with a more adventurous gamester. Therefore he drew near, & to provoke the *Romans*, sent forth a third

part

part of his Army to waste the Country. This was boldly done, seeing that *Minutius* incamped hard by him: but it seems, that he now despised those whom he had so often vanquished. There was a piece of high ground between the two Camps; which because it would be commodious to him that could occupy it, the *Carthaginians* seized upon by night with two thousand of their light armed. But *Minutius*, by plain force, won it from them the next day, and intrenching himself thereupon, became their nearer neighbour.

The main business of *Hannibal* at this time was, to provide abundantly, not only for his men, but for his horses, which he knew to be the chief of his strength; that he might keep them in good heart against the next summer: if besides this he could give to the *Romans* another blow, it would increase his reputation, encourage his own men, terrifie his enemies, and give him leave to forrage the Country at will. Since therefore *Minutius* did not in many dayes issue forth of his Camp, the *Carthaginian* sent out (as before) a great number of his men, to fetch in harvest. This advantage *Minutius* wisely espied, and took. For he led forth his Army, and setting it in order, presented battail to *Hannibal*, that was not in case to accept it, even at his own Trenches. His horses, and all his light Armature, divided into many companies, he sent abroad against the forragers; who being dispersed over all the fields, and loaden with booty, could make no resistance. This angered *Hannibal*, that was not able to help them; but worse did it anger him, when the *Romans* took heart to assail his Trenches. They perceived that it was meer weakness, which held him within his Campe, and therefore were bold to despise his great name, that could not resist their present strength. But in the heat of the business, *Asarbal* came from *Geryon* with four thousand men, being informed of the danger, by those that had escaped the *Roman* horse. This imboldned *Hannibal* to issue forth against the *Romans*; to whom nevertheless he did not such hurt, as he had received.

For this piece of service *Minutius* was highly esteemed by the Army, and more highly by the people at *Rome*, to whom he sent the newes, with somewhat greater bold than truth. It seemed no small matter, that the *Roman* Army had recovered spirit, so far forth that it dared to set upon *Hannibal* in his own camp; and that in so doing, it came off so with the better. Every man therefore praised the Master of the Horse, that had wrought this great alteration; and consequently, they grew as far out of liking with *Fabius*, and his timorous proceedings, thinking that he had not done any thing wisely, in all his Dictatorship: having that he chose such a worthy Lieutenant; whereas indeed in no other thing he had so greatly erred. But the Dictator was not so joyfull of a little good luck, as angry with the breach of discipline, and fearfull of greater danger, thereon likely to ensue. He said that he knew his own place, and what was to be done; that he would teach the Master of the horse to do so likewise; and make him give account of what he had done, if he were Dictator: speaking it openly, That good successe issuing from bad counsell was more to be feared, than calamity; for as much as the one bred a foolish confidence, the other taught men to be wary. Against these sermons every one cried out, especially *Metellus*, a Tribune of the people: which office warranted him to speak, and do what he list, without fear of the Dictator. Is it not enough (said he) that this our only Man, chosen to be Generall, and Lord of the Town, in our greatest necessity, hath done no manner of good, but suffered all *Italy* to be wasted before his eyes, to the utter shame of our State; unless he also hinder others, from doing better than himself can, or dares? It were good to consider what he means by this. Into the place of *C. Flaminius* he hath not chosen any new Consul all this while; *Servilius* is sent away to *Sea*, I know not why; *Hannibal* and he, have as it were taken Truce; *Hannibal* sparing the Dictators grounds: (for *Hannibal* had indeed forbore to spoil some grounds of *Fabius*, that so he might bring him into envy and suspicion) and the Dictator giving him leave to spoil all others, without impeachment. Sure'y his drift is even this: he would have the war to last long, that he himself might be long in office, and have the sole Government both of our City and Armies. But this must not be so. It were better, that the Commonalty of *Rome*, which gave him this authority, should again take it from him and conferre it upon one more worthy. But lest, in moving the people hereto, I should seem to doe him injury; thus far forth I will regard his honour: I will

only

only propound, That the Master of the Horse may be joyned in equall authority with the Dictator; a thing not more new, nor lesse necessary, than was the election of this Dictator, by the People.

Though all men, even the Senators, were ill perswaded of the course which *Fabius* had taken against *Hannibal*, as being neither plausible, nor seeming beneficiall at the present; yet was there none so injurious, as to think that his generall intent, and care of the Weal publike, was less than very honourable. Whereas therefore it was the manner, if of finding of any act, that some man of credit and authority, besides the propounder, should stand up, and formally deliver his approbation; not one of the principall Citizens was found so impudent, as to offer that open disgrace, both unto a worthy Personage, and (therewithall) unto that dignity, whose great power had freed the State at severall times, from the greatest dangers. Only *C. Terentius Varro*, who the year before had been Praetor, was glad of such an opportunity, to win the favour of the Multitude. This fellow was the son of a Butcher, afterwards became a Shop-keeper; and being of a contentious spirit, grew by often brabbling, to take upon him as a Pleader, dealing in poor mens causes. Thus by little and little he got into Office, and rose by degrees, being advanced by those, who in hatred of the Nobility favoured his very baseness. And now he thought the time was come, for him to give a hard push at the Consulship; by doing that, which none of the great men, fearing or favouring one another, either durst or would. So he made an hot invective, not only against *Fabius*, but against all the Nobility; saying, That it grieved them to see the people doe well, and take upon them what belonged unto them, in matter of Government; That they sought to humble the Commons by poverty, and to impoverish them by Warre; especially by war at their own doors, which would soon consume every poor mans living, and finde him other work to think upon, than matter of State. Therefore he bade them to be wise; and since they had found one (this worthy Master of the Horse) that was better affected unto them and his Country, to reward him according to his good deserts; and give him authority, according as was propounded by the Tribune, that so he might be encouraged and enabled to proceed as he had begun. So the Act passed.

Before this busie day of contention, *Fabius* had disprched the election of a new Consul, which was *M. Atilius Regulus*, in the room of *C. Flaminius*: and, having finished all requisite business, went out of Town, perceiving well, that he should not be able to withstand the multitude in hindering the decree. The newes of *Minutius* his advancement, was at the carpe as soon as *Fabius*: so that his old Lieutenant, and new Colleague, began to treat with him as a Companion; asking him at the first, in what sort he thought it best to divide their authority: whether that one, one day; and the other, the next; or each of them successively, for some longer time, should command in chief. *Fabius* briefly told him, That it was the pleasure of the Citizens, to make the Master of the horse equall to the Dictator, but that he should never be his superior: He would therefore divide the Legions with him, by lot according to the custome. *Minutius* was not herewith greatly pleased; for that with half of the Army he could not work such wonders as other wise he hoped to accomplish. Nevertheless he meant to do his best, and forsaking his part of the Army, incamped about a mile, and a half from the Dictator. Needfull it was (though *Livie* seems to taxe him for it) that he should so doe. For where two severall Commanders are not subordinate one unto another, nor joyned in Commission, but have each intire and absolute charge of his own followers, there are the forces (though belonging to one Prince or State) not one, but two distinct Armies: in which regard, one Camp shall not hold them both, without great inconvenience. *Polybius* neither findes fault with this distinction, nor yet reports, that *Fabius* was unwilling to command in chief successively (as the two Consuls used) with *Minutius*; by turns. He saith that *Minutius* was very refractary; and so proud of his advancement, that continually he opposed the Dictator: who thereupon referred it to his choise, either to divide the forces between them, as is said before, or else to have command over all by course. This is likely to be true. For Natures impatient of subjection, when once they have broken loose from the rigour of authority, love nothing more, than to contest with it: as if herein consisted the proof and assurance of their liberty.

10

It behoved the Master of the horse to make good the opinion which had thus advanced him. Therefore he was no less careful of getting occasion to fight than was *Fabius* of avoiding the necessity. That which *Minutius* and *Hannibal* equally desired, could not long be wanting. The country lying between them was open and bare; yet as fit for ambush, as could be wished for that the sides of a naked valley adjoining, had many & spacious caves; able, some one of them, to hide two or three hundred men. In these lurking places *Hannibal* bestowed five hundred horse, and five thousand foot; thrusting them to close together, that they could not be discovered. But left by any misadventure they should be found out, and buried in their holes; he made offer betimes in the morning, to seize upon a piece of ground that lay on the other hand: whereby he drew the eyes and the thoughts of the *Romans*, from their more needfull care, to business little concerning them. Like unto this was the occasion, which not long before had provoked *Minutius* to adventure upon the *Carthaginians*. Hoping therefore to increase his honour, in like sort as he got it, he sent first his light armature, then his horse, and at length (seeing that *Hannibal* seconded his own troops with fresh companies) he followed in person with the Legions. He was soon caught, & so hotly charged on all sides, that he knew neither how to make resistance, nor any safe retreat. In this dangerous case, whilst the *Romans* defended themselves losing many, and those of their best men: *Fabius* drew near, in very good order to relieve them. For this old Captain, perceiving afar off, into what extremity his new Colleague had rashly thrown himself and his followers, did the office of a good Citizen; and regarding more the benefit of his Country, than the disgrace which he had wrongfully sustained, fought rather to approve himself by halting to do good, than by suffering his enemy to feel the reward of doing ill. Upon *Fabius* his approach, *Hannibal* retired: fearing to be well wetted with a shower, from the cloud (as he termed the Dictator) that had hung so long on the Hill-tops. *Minutius* forthwith submitted himself to *Fabius*; by whose benefit he confessed his life to have been saved. So from this time forwards the war proceeded coldly, as the Dictator would have it; both whilst his Office lasted which was not long, and likewise afterwards, when he delivered up his charge unto the Consuls, that followed his instructions.

*Servilius* the Consul had pursued in vain a *Carthaginian* fleet, to which he came never within kenning. He ran along all the coast of *Italy*; took hostages of the *Sardinians* and *Corficans*; passed over into *Africa*; and there negligently falling to spoil the country, was shamefully beaten aboard his ships, with the loss of a thousand men. Weighing anchor therefore in all haste, he returned home by *Sicily*; and (being so required by the Dictators letters) repaired to the camp, with his fellow-Consul, where they took charge of the Army.

## S. VII.

The Roman people, desirous to finish the war quickly, choose a rash and unworthy Consul. Great forces levied against Hannibal. Hannibal taketh the Romans provisions in the Castle of Cannæ. The new Consuls set forth against Hannibal.

With little pleasure did they of the poorer sort in *Rome* hear the great commendations that were given to *Fabius* by the principall Citizens. He had indeed preserved them from receiving a great overthrow; but he had neither finished the war, nor done any thing in appearance thereto tending. Rather it might seem that the reputation of this his one worthy act, was likely to countenance the slow proceedings or perhaps the cowardize (if it were no worse) of those that followed him, in protracting the work to a great length. Else, what meant the Consuls to sit idle the whole winter, contrary to all former custome; since it was never heard before, that any *Roman* Generall had willingly suffered the time of his command to run away without any performance: as if it were honourable to do just nothing? Thus they suspected they knew not what; and were ready every man to discharge the grief and anger of his own private losse, upon the ill administration of the publick.

This affection of the people, was very helpfull to *C. Terentius Varro*, in his suit for the Consulship. It behoved him to strike, whilst the Iron was hot: his own worth being little or none, and his credit over-weak, to make way into that high Dignity. But the Commi-

Commonalty were then in such a mood, as abundantly supplied all his defects. Wherein to help, he had a kinsman, *Bibius Herennius*, then Tribune of the People; who spared not to use the liberty of his place, in saying what he listed, without all regard of truth, or modesty. This bold Orator stuck not to affirm, that *Hannibal* was drawn into *Italy*, and suffered therein to range at his pleasure, by the Noblemen; That *Minutius* indeed with his two Legions, was likely to have been overthrown, and was rescued by *Fabius* with the other two: but, had all been joynted together, what they might have done, it was apparent, by the victory of *Minutius* when he commanded over all as Master of the horse; That without a *Plebeian* Consul, the war would never be brought to an end; That such of the *Plebeians* as had long since been advanced to honour by the people, were grown as proud as the old Nobility, and contemned the meaner sort, ever since themselves were freed from contempt of the more mighty; That therefore it was needfull to choose a Consul, who should be altogether a *Plebeian*, a meere new man, one that could boast of nothing but the Peoples love, nor could wish more, than to keep it, by well deserving of them. By such persuasions the Multitude was won, to be wholly for *Terentius*: to the great vexation of the Nobles, who could not endure to see a man raised for none other vertue, than his detracting from their honour; and therefore opposed him with all their might. To hinder the desire of the People, it fell out, or at least was alledged, that neither of the two present Consuls could well be spared from attending upon *Hannibal*, to hold the Election. Wherefore a Dictator was named for that purpose; and he again depoliced: either (as was pretended) for some religious impediment, or because the Fathers desired an *Inter-regnum*, wherein they might better hope to prevail in choice of the new Consuls. This *Inter-regnum* took name and being in *Rome*, at the death of *Romulus*; and was in use at the death of other Kings. The order of it was this. All the Fathers, or Senators, who at the first were an hundred parted themselves into *Tens* or *Decuries*, and governed successively, by the space of five dayes, one *Decurie* after another in order: yet to, that the *Lictors*, or *Vigilars*, carrying the *Fasces*, or bundles of rods and axes, waited only upon the chief of them with these Ensigns of power. This custome was retained in times of the Consuls; and put in use, when by death, or any casualty, there wanted ordinary Magistrates of the old year, to substitute new for the year following. The advantage of the Fathers herein was, that if the election were not like to go as they would have it, there needed no more, than to slip five dayes, and then was all to begin a new: by which interruption, the heat of the Multitude was commonly well asswaged. Upon such change of those, that were Presidents of the election, it was also lawfull unto new Petitioners, to sue for the Magistracies that lay void: which otherwise was not allowed; but a time limited, wherein they should publicly declare themselves to seek those offices. But no device would serve against the generall favour borne unto *Terentius*. One *Inter-regnum* passed over, and the malice of the Fathers, against the vertue (as it was beleaved) of this mean, but worthy man, seemed to manifest, that when the People had urged the business to dispatch, only *Terentius* was chosen Consul: in whose hand it was left, to hold the election of his Colleague. Hereupon all the former Petitioners gave over. For whereas men of ordinary mark had stood for the place before, it was now thought meet, that, both to supply the defect, and to bridle the violence of this unexpert, and hot-headed man, one of great sufficiency, and reputation, should be joynted with him, as both Companion and opposite. So *L. Æmilius Paulus*, he who few years since had overcome the *Thyrians*, and chased *Demetrius Pharius* out of his Kingdome, was urged by the Nobility to stand for the place; which he easily obtained, having no Competitor. It was not the desire of this honourable man, to trouble himself any more in such great business of the Common-wealth. For, notwithstanding his late good service, he, and *M. Livius* that had been his companion in office, where afterwards injuriously vexed by the people, and called unto judgement: wherein *Livius* was condemned, and *Æmilius* hardly escaped. But of this injustice they shall put the *Romans* well in minde each of them in his second Consulship, wherein they shall honourably approve their worth; the one of them nobly dying, in the most grievous losse; the other bravely winning, in the most happy victory that ever befell that Common-wealth.

These new Consuls, *Varro* and *Paulus*, omitted no part of their diligence in preparing for the war: wherein though *Varro* made the greater noise, by telling what wonders he

he would work, and that he would aske no more, than once to have a sight of *Hannibal*, whom he promised to vanquish the very first day: yet the providence and care of *Paulus* travelled more earnestly toward the accomplishment of that, whereof his fellow vainly boasted. He wrote unto the two old Consuls *Servilius* and *Attilius*, desiring them to abstain from hazard of the main chance; but nevertheless, to ply the *Carthaginians* with daily skirmish, and weaken them by degrees: that when he and his Colleague should take the field, with the great Army which they were now levying, they might finde the four old Legions well accustomed to the enemy, and the enemy well weakened to their hands. He was also very strict in his Musters, wherein the whole Senate assist him to carefully, as if in this Action they meant to refute the slanders, with which *Terentius* and his adherents had burdened them. What number of men they raised, it is uncertain. Four score thousand foot, at the least, and six thousand horse, they were strong in the field, when the day came, which *Varro* had so greatly desired, of looking upon *Hannibal*.

*Hiero* the old King of *Syracuse*, as he had relieved the *Carthaginians*, when they were distressed by their own Mercenaries; so did he now send help to *Rome*, a thousand Archers, and Slingers, with great quantity of Wheat, Barly, and other provisions: fearing nothing more, than that one of these two mighty Cities should destroy the other, whereby his own estate would fall to ruine, that stood upright, by having them some what evenly ballanced. He gave them also counsell, to send forces into *Africa*; if perhaps, by that means they might divert the war from home. His gifts, and good advice were lovingly accepted; and instructions were given to *Titus Otacilius* the Praetor, which was to goe into *Sicily*, that he should accordingly pass over into *Africa*, if he found it expedient.

The great Levies, which the *Romans* made at this time, do much more serve to declare their puissance, than any, though larger accompt by Poll, of such as were not called drawn into the field, and fitted for service. For, besides these Armies of the Consuls, and that which went into *Sicily*, twenty five thousand, with *L. Posthumus Albinus*, another of the Praetors, went against the *Gauls*, to reclaim that Province, which the passage of *Hannibal* through it, had taken from them. The contemplation of this their present strength might well embolden them to doe as they did. They sent Embassadors to *Philip*, the son of *Demetrius*, King of *Macedon*, requiring him to deliver into their hands *Demetrius Pharius*: who, having been their subject, and rebell, was fled into his Kingdom. They also sent to the *Illyrians*, to demand their tribute; whereof the day of payment was already past. What answer they received, it is not known: only this is known, that *Demetrius Pharius* was not sent unto them; and that *Philip* henceforth began to have an eye upon them, little to their good. As for the *Illyrian* money, by the shifts that they were driven soon after to make, it will appear, that the one half of it (how little so ever) would have been welcome to *Rome*, and accepted, without any cavill about forfeiture for non-payment of the whole.

Whilst the City was busied in these cares, the old Consuls lay as near unto *Hannibal* as possibly they could without incurring the necessity of a battell. Many skirmishes they had with him; wherein their success, for the most part, was rather good than great. Yet one mischance not only blemished the honour of their other services, but was indeed the occasion to draw on the misery following. *Hannibal* for the most part of that time, made his abode at *Geryon*; where lay all his store for the Winter. The *Romans* were to be near him, lodged about *Cannusium*; and, that they might not be driven to turn aside for all necessities, to the loss of good opportunities, they bestowed much of their provisions in the Castle of *Canna*: for the town was razed the year before. This place *Hannibal* wan, and thereby not only furnished himself, but compelled his enemies to want many needfull things, unless they would be troubled with far carrying. Besides this, and more to his advantage, he enabled himself to abide in that open Country, fit for the service of his horse, longer than the *Romans*, having so many mounthes to lead, could well endure to tarry; without offering battell, which he most desired. Of this mishap when *Servilius* had informed the Senate, letting them understand how this Peace taken by *Hannibal*, would serve him to command no small part of the Country adjacent; it then seemed needfull, even unto the Fathers themselves, to adventure a battell with the *Carthaginian*, rather than suffer him thus to take root in the ground

Nevertheless, answer was returned unto *Servilius*, that he should have patience yet awhile: for that the Consuls would shortly be there; with a power sufficient to be needed required.

When all things were ready in the City, and the season of the year commodious to take the field; the two Consuls, with their Army, set forth against *Hannibal*. This way was done with great solemnity: especially, whatsoever they went forth to warre against any noble or redoubted Enemy: For Sacrifices, and solemn Vowes, were made to the Gods, and the rest of their gods, for good success and victory: which being performed, the Generals in warlike attire, with an honourable train of the principall men (not only such as were of their kindred and alliance, or followed them to the war, as Voluntaries for love, but a great number of others that meant to abide at home) were accompanied on their way; and dismissed with friendly leave-taking, and good wishes. At this time, all the Fathers, and the whole Nobility, waited upon *Emilius Paulus*; as the only Man, whom they thought either worthy of this honour, or likely to doe his Country remarkable service. *Terentius* his Attendants were the whole multitude of the poorer Citizens; a troop no lesse in greatness, than the other was in dignity. At the going, *Paulus*, the late Dictator, is said to have exhorted the Consul *Paulus*, with many good words, to shew his magnanimity, not only in dealing with the *Carthaginians*; but which he thought harder, in bridling the outrageous folly of his fellow-Consul: the answer of *Paulus* was, That he meant not again to run into danger of condemnation by offending the multitude, that he would doe his best for his Country: but if he was best likely to be ill taken, he would think it less business to adventure upon the Enemies sword, than upon the malice of his own Citizens.

The great battell of *Canna*: The new Generals, arriving at the Camp, dismissed *M. Arrius*, one of the last year's Consuls, requesting it because of his age and weakness: *Servilius* they retained with them, as their Assistant. The first thing that *Emilius* thought necessary, was, to hearten his Souldiers with good words; who out of their bad success hitherto, had gathered more cause of feary than of courage. He willed them to consider not only now, their victories in time past against the *Carthaginians*, and other more warlike Nations than were the *Carthaginians*, but even their own great numbers: which were no less than all that *Rome* at the present was able to see forth. He told them in what danger their Country stood; how the state and safety thereof rested upon their hands; using some such other common matter of persuasion. But the most of small part of this Oracion was, That *Hannibal* with this his terrible Army, had not yet obtained one victory by plain force and valour: but that only by deceit and ambush he had stolne the honour, which he had gotten at *Tricina* & *Thassymene*. Herewith he razed the inconsiderate rashness of *Sempronius* and *Flaminius*; of whom the one loved his enemies, until he was surrounded by them; the other scarce saw them, when they struck off his head, by reason of the thick mist, through the darkness whereof went groping (as it were blinde-fold) into their snres. Finally, declaring what advantages they had against the Enemy; and how destitute the Enemy was of those helps, by which he had hitherto prevailed against them; he exhorted them to play the Men, and do their best. They were easily persuaded: for the contemplation of their own multitude, and confidence of the Roman virtue in matter of Armes, gave them cause to think; that under a Captin so well experienced, and every way sufficient, *Emilius* was known to be, they should easily prevail against the *Carthaginians*; the same short of them in all things else, save craft, which would not always thrive. Thus one thing they mistook the meaning of their Generall: It was his desire that they should have heart to fight; not that they should lose the patience of a waiting a convenient reason: But they, having pre-conceived a victory, thought all delays to be impediments; and thereby sought to robbe themselves of their best help; which



was, good conduct. They remembered what talk they had heard at Rome; and were themselves affected with the vulgar desire, of ending the war quickly; wherein since *Amilius* had acknowledged, that the advantage was theirs, why did he make them so bear to use it: Thus thought the common Souldier: and thus also thought the Consul *Terentius*, who was no less popular in the Camp, than he had been in the City. Expectation is always tedious; and never more, than when the Event is of most importance. All men longed, both at Rome, and in the Army, to be freed from the doubtful passions of Hope and Fear; therefore *Terentius*, who hastened their desire in effect, was likely to win more thanks, than should his Colleague, though greater in performance.

Thus while the Romans think themselves to have the better of their enemies, they fall into an inconvenience, than which few are more dangerous; Dissension of their chief Commanders. *Varro* would fight; *Amilius* would, too, but said that it was not yet time, why? because the enemy must shortly dislodge, and remove hence, into places less fit for his horse. But shall the Romans wait, till *Hannibal*, having eaten up his last years provisions, return into *Campania* to gather a second Harvest? This would (said *Varro*) favour too much of *Q. Fabius*. And your haste (said *Paulus*) doth favour too much of *C. Flaminius*. Their deeds were like their words: for they commanded by turns interchangeably every day. *Amilius* lodged six miles from *Hannibal*, where the ground was somewhat uneven. Thither if the *Carthaginians* would take pains to come, he doubted not to find them away in such haste, as they should not leave running if they were out of Italy. But they came not. *Terentius* therefore the next day, defended into the Plains, his Colleague holding him, and beseeching him to stay. Nevertheless he sat down close by *Hannibal*: who, as an unbidden guest, gave him but arduous welcome and entertainment. The *Carthaginian* Horse, and light armature, fell upon the Roman Vant-couriers; and put the whole Army in tumult, whilst it was yet in march: but they were beaten off, not without loss, for that the Romans had among their *Velites*, some troops weightily armed, whereas the *Carthaginians* had none. The day following, *Amilius*, who could not handsomely withdraw the Army out of that level ground, incamped upon the River *Ansidus*; sending a third part of his forces over the water, to lye upon the Easterne bank, where they entrenched themselves. He never was more unwilling to fight, than at this present: because the ground served wholly for the advantage of his enemy, with whom he meant to deal, when occasion should draw him to more equal terms. Therefore he stirred not out of his Trenches; but fortified himself, expecting when *Hannibal* should dislodge, and remove towards *Grignon*, *Canna*, or some other place, where his store lay, for want of necessaries: whereof an Army foraging the Country was not likely to carry about with it sufficient quantity, for any long time.

Here it would not be passed over with silence, That *Livie* differeth much in his Relation from *Polybius*: telling many strange tales, of the misery into which *Hannibal* had been driven; and of base courses that he devised to take, if the Romans could have retained their patience a little longer. He had (saith *Livie*), but ten dayes provision of meat. He had not money to pay his souldiers. They were an unruly Rabble, gathered out of several Nations, so that he knew not how to keep them in order; but that from murmuring, they fell to flat exclamations, first, about their Pay, and Provant, and afterwards for very famine. Especially the *Spaniards* were ready to forsake him, and run over to the Roman side. Yea *Hannibal* himself was once upon the point, to have ston away into *Gaul* with all his horse, and left his foot unto their miserable destinies. At length for lack of all other counsel, he resolved to get him as far as he could from the Romans, into the Southernmost parts of *Apulia*; to the end, that both his unfaithful Souldiers might finde the more difficulty in running from him; and that his hunger might be relieved with the more early harvest. But whilst he was about to put this device in execution, the Romans pressed him so hard, that they even forced him to that, which he most desired, even to fight a battail upon open Champain ground: wherein he was victorious. It was not uncommendable in *Livie*, to speak the best of his own Citizens; and, where they did ill, to say, That, without their own great folly, they had done passing well. Further also he may be excused, as writing only by report. For thus he saith, *Hannibal de fuga in Galliam (dicitur) agiasse*, *Hannibal (is said) to have*

have brought himself of flying into *Gaul*: where he makes it no more than a matter of bear-lay; as perhaps was all the rest of this Relation: As for the process it self, it is very incredible. For if *Hannibal*, coming out of *Gaul*, through the *Marishes*, and *Bogs* of *Hurtia*, could finde victuals enough, and all things needfull unto his Army, the Summer foregoing: what should hinder him to do the like this year, especially seeing he had plaid the carefull husband in making a great harvest; since he had long been Master of the open field; and besides, had gotten, by surprise, no small part of the Romans provisions? Surable hereunto is all the rest. If *Hannibal* had taken nothing but corn and cattell, his Souldiers might perhaps have fallen into mutiny for pay. But he brought gold with him into Italy: and had so well increased his stock, since he came into that Country, that he had armed his African Souldiers, all Roman-like, and loaded his followers with spoil: having left wherewith to redeem as many of his own, as were taken by the enemy; when the Romans were not willing, as finding it not easie, to do the like. In this point therefore, we are to attend the general agreement of Historians: who give it as a principall commendation unto *Hannibal*, That he always kept his Army free from sedition, though it were composed of sundry Nations, no lesse different in Manners, Religion, and almost in Nature, than they were in languages: and well might he to do, having not only pronounced, That which of his men soever fought bravely with an Enemy, was thereby a *Carthaginian*, but solemnly protested and sworn, (besides other rewards) to make as many of them, as should deserve and seek it, free Citizens of *Carthage*. The running away into *Gaul*, was a senseless device. *Hannibal*, being there with his whole Army, took so little pleasure in the Country and People, that he made all haste to get him out of it. And what should he now do there with his horse, or how could he be trusted, either there or elsewhere? yea, how could he desire to live, having betrayed all his Army, and relinquished his miserable foot, to the butchery of their enemies? This tale therefore *Plutarch* omitteth, who in writing the life of *Hannibal* takes in a manner all his directions from *Livie*. But of this & the like it is enough to say, That all Historians love to extoll their own Country-men, and where a loss cannot be dissembled, nor the honour of the victory taken from the Enemy, & given unto blind Fortune, there to lay all the blame on some strange misgovernment of their own forces: as if they might easily have won all, but lost all through such folly, as no Enemy can hope to finde in them another time.

Now let us return back to the two Armies, where they lye encamped on the River *Ansidus*. *Varro* was perswaded, that it concerned him in honour, to make good his word unto the people of Rome: and since he had thus long waited in vain, to get the consent of *Paulus*, now at length to use his own authority; and, without any more disputing of the matter, to fight when his own day came. When therefore it was his turn to command; at the first break of the day he began to passe the River, without staying to bid his Colleague good morrow. But *Paulus* came to him, and sought, as in former times, to have dissuaded him from putting the estate of his Country to a needless hazard. Against whose words and substantiall arguments, *Terentius* could alledge none other than point of Honour. *Hannibal* had presented them battell at their Trenches: should they endure this Bravado? He had sent his *Numidians* over the River but even the day before, who fell upon the Romans that were fetching water to the lesser Camp; and drave them shamefully to run within their defences, which also they made offer to assail: must this also be suffered? He would not endure it: for it could not but weaken the spirit of the Roman Souldier, which as yet was lively, and full of such courage, as promised assured victory. When *Amilius* perceived, that he could not hinder the obstinate resolution of his Companion, he took all care, that what he saw must be done, might be done well. Ten thousand Roman foot he caused to be left behind, in the greater camp opposite unto the *Carthaginians*; to the intent, that either *Hannibal* might be compelled to leave behind him some answerable number, for defence of his Trenches: (which out of his paucity he was less able to spare from the battail, than were the Romans) or that these ten thousand, falling upon the *Carthaginian* Camp, when the fight began, and taking it with all the wealth therein, might thereby (as commonly do such accidents) terrifie and distract the Enemies in the heat of fight. This done, the two Consuls went over the water with their Army to the lesser Camp, whence also they drew forth their men, and ranged them in order of battail: the ground on



on the East part of the River, seeming perhaps more fit for marshalling of their Army. *Hannibal* was glad of this, as he had great cause; and without any delay, passed likewise over, somewhat higher up the stream, which ran from the South; leaving in his own camp so many, as he thought would serve to defend it, and no more. To encourage his men; He had them look about them; and view the ground well, upon which they were to fight. They did so. And could you (said he) pray for any greater fortune than to joyn battail with the *Romans* upon such a level ground, where the stronger horse are sure to prevail? They all assented to him; and shewed by their countenances, that they were very glad of it. Well then (said he further) ye are first of all to thank the gods, that have brought them hither; and then Us, that have trained them to along; and drawn them into necessity of playing for their lives; where they are sure to rise them. As for these *Romans*; I was fain to encourage you against them, when ye met them first: but now ye may even encourage your selves, by calling to minde that they are the men, whom ye have as often beaten as seen. Of one thing only I will put you in minde: That whereas hitherto you fought for other respects, as, to drive them before you out of *Gauls*; and to win the open Country, and fields of *Italy*; both of which ye have obtained: now are ye to fight for the Towns themselves, and all the riches within them; which this victory shall make yours. Therefore play the stout Souldiers: and ere many hours passe, ye shall be Lords of all that the *Romans* hold.

When he had said this; his brother *Mago* came to him, whom he had sent to view the countenance of the enemy. *Hannibal* asked him, what newes; and what work they were likely to have with these *Romans*? Work enough (answered *Mago*) for they are an horrible many! As horrible a many as they are (thus *Hannibal* replied.) I tell thee, brother, that among them all, I search them never so diligently, thou shalt not find one man, whose name is *Mago*. With that he fell a laughing, and so did all that stood about him: which gladdened the souldiers, who thought their General would not be so merry, without great assurance. Whether it were so, that *Hannibal*, in the pride of his victories already gotten, believed one *Mago* above many thousand *Romans*; or whether he intimated, that the *Romans* were no less troubled with thinking upon *Mago* and his Companions, than was *Mago* with beholding their huge multitude; or whether he meant only to correct the sad mood of his brother with a jest, and shew himself merry unto the Souldiers: this his answer was more manly, than was the relation of his discoverer. But if *Hannibal* himself had been sent forth by *Mago*, to view the *Romans*; he could not have returned with a more gallant report in his mouth, than that which Captain *Gams*, before the battail of *Argincourt*, made unto our King *Henry* the first: saying, that of the *Frenchmen*, there were now to be killed, now to be taken prisoners, and now to run away. Even such words as these, of such pleasant jests as this of *Hannibal*, are not without their moment; but serve many times, when battail is at hand, to work upon such passions, as must govern more of the businesse: especially; where other needfull care is wanting; without which they are but vain boasts.

In this great day, the *Carthaginian* excelled himself; expressing no lesse perfection of his military skill, than was greatness in his spirit and undertakings. For to omit the commendable use of the place, into which he had long before conceived the means to draw his enemies to battail; He marshalled his Army in such convenient order, that all hands were brought to fight; where every one might doe best service. His Darters, and Slingers of the *Balaers*, he sent off before him, to encounter with the *Roman Velites*. These were loose troops, answerable in a manner to those, which we call now by a French name, *Enfans Perdus*; but when we use our own termes, the former hope. The grose of his Army following them, he ordered thus. His *Africans*, armed after the *Roman* manner, with the spoils which they had gotten at *Trebia*, *Thrasymene*, or elsewhere; and well trained in the use of those weapons that were of more advantage, than those wherewith they had formerly served; made the two wings, very deep in file. Between these he ranged his *Gauls* and *Spaniards*, armed each after their own Country manner; their shields alike; but the *Gauls* using long broad swords, that were forcible in a down-right stroke; the *Spaniards*, short and well pointed blades, either to strike or thrust; the *Gauls*, naked from their navell upwards, as confident in their own fierceness: the *Spaniards*, wearing white cassocks embroidered with purple.

This

This medley of two Nations, differing as well in habit and furniture, as in quality, made a gallant shew; and terrible, because strange. The *Gauls* were strong of body, and furious in giving charge, but soon wearied, as accustomed to spend their violence at the first brunt, which disposition all that come of them have inherited to this day. The *Spaniards* were lesse eager, but more wary; neither ashamed to give ground, when they were over-pressed; nor afraid to return, and renew the fight, upon any small encouragement. As the roughness of the one, and patience of the other, served mutually to redde each of them to a good and firm temper; for the place which they held in this battail, added confidence joyntly unto them both. For they say themselves well and strongly flanked with *Carthaginians* and other *Africans*; whose name was grown terrible in *Spain*, by their Conquests; and in *Gauls*, by this their present war. Since therefore it could not be feared, that any great calamity should fall upon them, whilst the wings on either side stood fast: these *Barbarians* had no cause to shrink, or forbear to employ the uttermost of their hardiness, as knowing that the enemy could not press far upon them, without further ingaging himself than discretion would allow. Hereunto may be added that great advantage, which the *Carthaginian* had in horse; by which he was able, if the worst had hapned, to make a good retreat. The effect of contraries is many times alike. Desperation begetteth courage; but not greater, nor so lively, as doth assured Confidence. *Hannibal* therefore caused these *Gauls* and *Spaniards* to advance, leaving void the place wherein they had stood, and into which they might fall back, when they should be overhardly pressed. So, casting them into the form of a Crescent, He made them as it were his Vant-guard: the two points of this great half Moon, that looked toward the empty space from which he had drawn it, being narrow and thin, as serving only to guide it orderly back, when need should require; the foremost part of the Ring, swelling out toward the enemies, being well strengthened and thickened against all impression. The circle hereof seemeth to have been so great, that it shadowed the *Africans*, who stood behind it: though such figures, cut in brass, as I have seen of this Battail, present it more narrow; with little reason, as shall anon appear: as also in the same figures it is omitted, That any Companies of *Africans*, or others, were left in the Rear, to second the *Gauls* and *Spaniards*, when they were driven to retreat; though it be manifest, that *Hannibal* in person stood between the last ranks of his long Battalions, and in the head of his Rear, doubtlesse well accompanied with the choice of his own Nation. Between the left Battalion and the River *Aufus*, were the *Gauls* and *Spanish* horse, under the command of *Asdrubal*: On the right wing, toward the wide Plains, was *Hanno* (*Livie* saith *Mabarbal*) with the *Numidian* light-horse. *Hannibal* himself, with his brother *Mago*, had the leading of the Rear. The whole summe of *Hannibals* Army in the field this day, was ten thousand horse, and forty thousand foot, his enemies having two to one against him in foot; and He, five to three against them in horse.

The *Roman* Army was marshalled in the usuall forme: but somewhat more narrow, and deep than was accustomed; perhaps, because this had been found convenient against the *Carthaginians*, in the former war. It was indeed no bad way of resistance against Elephants, to make the Ranks thick and short, but the Files long; as also to strengthen well the Rear, that it might stand fast compacted as a wall, under shelter whereof the disordered troups might rally themselves. Thus much it seems, that *Terentius* had learned of some old Souldiers; and therefore he now ordered his Battalies accordingly, as meaning to show more skill, than was in his understanding. But the *Carthaginians* had here no Elephants with them in the field: their advantage was in Horse; against which, this manner of imbatailing was very unprofitable, forasmuch as their charge is better sustained in front, than upon a long flank. As for *Emilius* it was not his day of command: He was but an Assistant; and in such cases it happens often, that wise men yield for very weariness unto the more contentious. Upon the right hand, and toward the River, were the *Roman* horse-men, under the Consul *Paulus*: On the left wing, was *C. Terentius Varro* the other Consul, with the rest of the horse, which were of the *Latins*, and other associates: *Cn. Servilius* the former years Consul, had the leading of the battail. The Sun was newly risen, and offended neither part; the *Carthaginians* having their faces Northward, the *Romans* toward the South.

After some light skirmish, between the *Roman Velites*, and *Hannibal* his Darters and Slingers

Uuuu 3

flingers of the Baleares: *Asdrubal* brake upon the Consul *Paulus*, and was roughly encountered, not after the manner of service on horse-back, used in those times, wheeling about *Almain-like*; but each giving on in a right line. Pouldron to Pouldron, as having the River on the one hand, and the shoulder of the foot on the other hand; so that there was no way left, but to pierce and break thorow. Wherefore they not only used their Lances and Swords; but rushing violently amongst the Enemies, grasped one another: and to their horses running from under them, fell many to the ground; where starting up again, they began to deal blows like foot-men. In conclusion, the *Roman* horse were over-born, and driven by plain force to a staggering recoil. This the Consul *Paulus* could not remedy. For *Asdrubal*, with his boisterous *Gauls* and *Spaniards*, was not to be resisted by these *Roman* Gentlemen, unequal both in number, and in horsemanship. When the battails came to joining, the *Roman* Legionaries found work enough, and somewhat more than enough, to break that great *Crescent*, upon which they first fell: so strongly for the while, did the *Gauls* and *Spanish* foot make resistance. Wherefore the two points of their battail drew towards the midst; by whose aid, these opposites were forced to disband, and flye back to their first place. This they did in great haste and fear: and were with no lesse haste, and folly pursued. Upon the *Africans* that stood behinde them, they needed not to fall foul; both for that there was void room enough; and forasmuch as the Rear, or Hornes of this Moon, pointed into the safe retreat, where *Hannibal* with his *Carthaginians* was ready to re-enforce them, so when time should require. In this hasty retreat, or flight of the *Gauls* and *Spaniards*, it hapned, as was necessary, that they who had stood in the limb or utter compass of the half Moon, made the innermost or concave surface thereof (disordered and broken though it were) when it was forced to turn the inside outward: the horns or points thereof, as yet, untouched, only turning round, & recoiling very little. So the *Romans*, in pursuing them, were inclosed in an half circle; which they should not have needed greatly to regard, (for that the sides of it were exceeding thin and broken; and the bottom of it, none other than a throng of men routed, and seeming unable to make resistance) had all the enemies foot been cast into this one great body, that was in a manner dissolved. But whilst the Legions, following their supposed victory, rushed on upon those that stood before them, and thereby unwittingly engaged themselves deeply within the principall strength of the Enemies, hedging them in on both hands, the two *African* Battalions on either side advanced so far, that getting beyond the Rear of them, they inclosed them, in a manner, behind: and forward they could not pass far, without removing *Hannibal* and *Mago*; which made that way the least easie. Hereby it is apparent, That the great *Crescent*, before spoken of, was of such extent, as covered the *Africans*, who lay behind it undiscovered, untill now. For it is agreed, that the *Romans* were thus empaled *unawares*; and that they behaved themselves, as men that thought upon no other work, than what was found to them by the *Gauls*. Neither is it credible, that they would have been so mad, as to run head-long, with the whole bulk of their Army, into the throat of slaughter; had they seen those weapons bent against them at the first, which when they did see, they had little hope to escape. Much might be imputed to their heat of fight, and rashness of inferiour Captains: but since the Consul *Paulus*, a man so expert in war, being vanquished in horse, had put himself among the Legions; it cannot be supposed, that he and they did wilfully thus engage themselves: *Asdrubal*, having broken the troupes of *Roman* horse, that were led by the Consul *Paulus*, followed upon them along the River side, beating down and killing, as many as he could, (which were almost all of them) without regard of taking prisoners. The Consul himself was either driven upon his own Legions, or willingly did cast himself among them; as hoping by them to make good the day, notwithstanding the defeat of his horse. But he failed of this his expectation. Nevertheless he cheered up his men as well as he could, both with comfortable words, and with the example of his own stout behaviour: beating down and killing many of the enemies with his own hand. The like did *Hannibal* among his *Carthaginians*, in the same part of the battail, and with better success. For the Consul received a blow from a sling, that did him great hurt: and though a troupe of *Roman* Gentlemen, riding about him, did their best to save him from further harme; yet was he so hardly laid at, that he was compelled, by wounds and weakness, to forsake his horse. Hereupon all his company

company alighted, thinking that the Consul had given order, so to do: as in many battails, the *Roman* men at armes had left their horses, to help their foot in distress. When *Hannibal* (for he was near at hand) perceived this, and understood that the Consul had willed his horse men to dismount; He was very glad of it, and pleasantly said, *I had rather he would have delivered them unto my bound hand & foot*: meaning that he had them now almost as safe, as if they were so bound. All this while *C. Terentius Varro*, with the horse of his associates, in the left wing, was marvelously troubled by *Hanno* (or *Muhannibal*) and the *Numidians*: who beating up and down about that great sandy Plain, raised a foul dust; which a strong South wind, blowing there accustomedly, drove in to the eyes and mouthes of the *Romans*. These, using their advantage both of number and of lightness, wearied the Consul and his followers exceedingly: neither giving, nor sustaining any charge, but continually making offers, and wheeling about. Yet at the first they seemed to promise him a happy day of it. For when the battails were even ready to joyn; five hundred of these *Numidians* came pricking away from their fellows, with their shields cast behind their backs, (as was the manner of those which yielded) and, throwing down their armes, rendred themselves. This was good luck to begin withall, if there had been good meaning. *Varro* had not leisure to examine them; but caused them, unweaponed as they were, to get them behind the Army, where he bade them rest quietly till all was done. These crafty adventurers did as he bade them, for a while; till they found opportunity to put in execution the purpose, for which they had thus yielded. Under their jackets they had short swords and poniards; besides which, they found other scattered weapons about the field of such as were slain, and therewithall flew upon the hindmost of the *Romans*, whilst all eyes and thoughts were bent another way: so that they did great mischief, and raised yet a greater terror. Thus *Hannibal*, in a plain level ground, found means to lay an ambush at the back of his enemies. The last blow, that ended all fight and resistance, was given by the same hand which gave the first. *Asdrubal*, having in short space broken the *Roman* troupes of horse, and cut in pieces all, save the Company of *Emilius* that rushed into the grove of his foot, and a very few besides, that recovered some narrow passage, between the River and their own Battalions; did not stay to charge upon the face of the Legions, but fell quick behind the Rear of his own, and fetching about, came up to the *Numidians*: with whom he joyned, and gave upon *Terentius*.

This fearful cloud, as it shewed at the first appearance what weather it had left behind it, on the other side: so did it prognosticate a dismal storme unto those upon whom it was ready now to fall. Wherefore *Terentius* his followers, having wearied themselves much in doing little, and seeing more work toward, than they could hope to sustain; thought it the best way, to avoid the danger by present flight. The Consul was no lesse wise than they, in apprehending the greatness of his own perill; nor more desperate, in striving to work impossibilities: it being impossible, when so many shrank from him, to sustain the impression alone, which he could not have indured with their assistance. Now he found that it was one thing to talk of *Hannibal* at Rome; and another, to encounter him. But of this, or of ought else, excepting hasty flight, his present leisure would not serve him to consider. Close at the heels of him and his flying troupes, followed the light *Numidians*, appointed by *Asdrubal* unto the pursuit, as first-aid for that service. *Asdrubal* himself, with the *Gauls* and *Spanish* horse, compacted about, fell upon the backs of the *Romans*; that were ere this hardly distressed, and in a manner surrounded on all parts else: He brake them easily, who before made resistance, being inclosed, and laid at on every side; not knowing which way to turn. Here began a pitifull slaughter: the vanquished multitude thronging up and down, where they knew not whither or which way, whilst every one sought to avoid those enemies, whom he saw nearest. Some of the *Roman* Gentlemen that were about *Emilius*, got up to horse, and saved themselves: which though it is hardly understood how they could do; yet I will rather belevee it, than suppose that *Livius* to reporteth so grace thereby his History with this following tale. *Cn. Cornelius Lentulus*, galloping along by a place where he saw the Consul sitting all bloudied upon a stone, interrupted him to rise and save himself, offering him his assistance and horse. But *Paulus* refused it; willing *Lentulus* to shift for himself, and not to lose time: saying, *That it was not his purpose to be brought again into judgement by the People, either as an accuser of his Colleague, or as guilty himself*

self of that dayes losse. Further, he willed *Lentulus* to commend him to the Senate, and in particular to *Fabius*: willing them to fortifie Rome, as fast as well they could, and telling *Fabius*, that he lived and died mindfull of his wholesome counsaile. These words (peradventure) or some to like purpose, the Consul uttered to *Lentulus*, either when against his will he was drawn to that Battail, or when he beheld the first defeat of his Horse; at what time he put himself in the head of his Legions. For I doubt not, but *Hannibal* knew what he said a good while before this; when he thought the Consul and his troupe, in little better case than if they had been bound. The whole Grosse of the Romans, was inclosed indeed as within a sack; whereof the African Battalions made the sides, the *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, and *Hannibal* with his *Carthaginians*, the bottome; and *Asdrubal* with his horse, closed up the mouth: in which part, they first of all were shuffled together, and began the Rout, wherein all the rest followed. *Emilius* therefore, who could not sit his horse, whilst the battail yet lasted, and whilst the spaces were somewhat open, by which he might have withdrawn himself, was now (had he never so well been mounted) unable to flye, having in his way so close a throng of his own miserable followers, and so many heaps of bodies, as fell apace in that great Carnage. It sufficed unto his honour, That in the Battail he fought no lesse valiantly, than he had warily before, both abstained himself, and dissuaded his fellow-Consul, from fighting at all. If, when the day was utterly lost, it had liien in his power to save his own life unto the good of his country, never more needing it; I should think, that he either too much esteemed himself; or being too faintly minded, was weary of the World, and his unthankfull Citizens. But if such a resolution were praise-worthy in *Emilius*, as proceeding out of Roman valour, then was the English vertue of the Lord *John Talbot*, Viscount *Lisle*, son to that famous Earle of *Shrewsbury*, who died in the Battell of *Chastillon*, more highly to be honoured. For *Emilius* was old, grievously, if not mortally, wounded, and accomptable for the overthrow received: *Talbot* was in the flower of his youth, unhurt, easily able to have escaped, and not answerable for that dayes misfortune, when he refused to forsake his Father, who foreseeing the losse of the battail, and not meaning to stain his actions past by flying in his old age, exhorted this his noble son to be gone and leave him.

In this terrible overthrow died all the Roman foot, save two or three thousand, who (as *Livie* saith) escaped into the lesser camp; whence the same night, about six hundred of them brake forth, and joyning with such of those in the greater camp, as were willing to try their fortune, conveyed themselves away ere morning, about four thousand foot, and two hundred horse, partly in whole troupes, partly dispersed, into *Cannusium*: the next day the Roman camps, both lesse and greater, were yielded unto *Hannibal* by those that remained in them. *Polybius* hath no mention of this escape: only he reports, that the ten thousand, whom *Emilius* had left on the West side of *Aufidus* (as was shewed before) to set upon the camp of *Hannibal*, did as they were appointed; but ere they could effect their desire, which they had well-near done, the battail was lost: and *Hannibal*, comming over the water to them, drave them into their own camp, which they quickly yielded, having lost two thousand of their number. Like enough it is, that at the first sight of *Hannibal*, comming upon them with his victorious Army, a greater number of these did flie; and thereby escaped, whilst their fellows, making defence in vain, retired into their camp, and held the enemy busied. For about two Legions they were (perhaps not half full, but made up by addition of others, whose fault or fortune was like) that having served at *Canna*, were afterwards extremely disgraced by the State of Rome, for that they had abandoned their companions fighting. Of the Roman horse what numbers escaped, it is uncertain: but very few they were that saved themselves in the first charge, by getting behinde the River, and *Terentius* the Consul recovered *Plausia*, with threecore and ten at the most in his company. That he was so ill attended, it is no marvel: for *Venusia* lay many miles off to the Southward; so that his nearest way thither, had been through the midst of *Hannibals* Army, if the passage had been open. Therefore it must needs be, that when once he got out of fight, he turned up some by-way; so disappointing the *Numidians* that hunted centre. Of such as could not hold pace with the Consul, but took other ways, and were scattered over the fields, two thousand, or thereabout, were gathered up by the *Numidians*, and made prisoners: the rest were slain, all save three hundred; who dispersed themselves in flight, as chance

Liv. lib. 19.

led them, and got into sundry Towns. There died in this great Battail of *Canna*, besides *Emilius Paulus* the Consul, two of the Roman *Questors* or Treasurers; and one and twenty Colonels or Tribunes of the Souldiers, fourscore Senators, or such as had borne office, out of which they were to be chosen into the Senate. Many of these were of especiall mark, as having been *Adiles*, Prators or Consuls: among whom was *Gn. Servilius*, the last years Consul, and *Minnius*, late Master of the horse. The number of prisoners, taken in this battail, *Livie* makes no greater than three thousand foot, & three hundred horse: too few to have defended for the space of one half hour, both the Roman Camps; which yet the same *Livie* saith, to have been over-cowardly yielded up. We may therefore do better, to give credit unto one of the prisoners, whom the same Historian shortly after introduceth, speaking in the Senate, and saying, That they were no less than eight thousand. It may therefore be, that these three thousand were only such as the Enemy spared, when the fury of Execution was past: but to these must be added about five thousand more, who yielded in the greater camp, when their company were either slain or dead. So the reckoning falls out right: which the Romans, especially the Consul *Varro*, had before cast up (as we say) without their Host; nothing so chargeable, as now they finde it. On the side of *Hannibal* there died some four thousand *Gauls*, fifteen hundred *Spaniards* and *Africans*, and two hundred horse, or thereabouts: a losse not sensible, in the joy of so great a victory, which if he had pursued, as *Mahabul* advised him, and forthwith marched away towards Rome, it is little doubted, but that the war had presently been at an end. But he beleevved not so far in his own prosperity; and was therefore told, That he knew how to get, not how to use a victory.

## §. IX.

Of things following the battail at *Canna*.

NOT without good cause, doth *Polybius* reprehend those two Historians, *Fabius* the Roman, and *Philius* the *Carthagian*: who regarding more the pleasure of them, unto whose honour they consecrated their travails, than the truth of things, and information of posterity, magnified indifferently, whether good or bad, all actions and proceedings, the one of his *Carthaginians*, the other of his Roman *Quirites*, and Fathers conscript. No man of sound judgement will condemn this liberty of censure, which *Polybius* hath used. For, to recompence his juniority (such as it was) he proceeth with substantiall arguments, to justifie his own Relation, and confuteth the vanity of those former authors, out of their own writings, by conference of places ill cohoring; which pains is to be suspected, that he would not have taken, had he been born in either of these two Cities, but have spared some part of his diligence, and been contented to have all men think better and more honourably than he deserved, of his owne Country. The like disease it is to be feared, that we shall hereafter finde in others; and shall have some cause to wish, that either they were somewhat lesse Roman, or else, that some works of their opposite Writers were extant, that so we might at least hear both sides speak: being henceforth destitute of *Polybius* his help, that was a man indifferent. Since this cannot be, we must be sometimes bold, to observe the coherence of things; and believe so much only to be true, as dependeth upon good reason, or (at least) the probability. This attentive circumspection is needfull at the present: such is the redundancy, or forgetfulness, which we find in the best Narration of things following the Battail of *Canna*. For it is said, that four thousand foot and horse gathered together about the Consul *Terentius* at *Venusia*; that others to the number of ten thousand got unto *Cannusium*, choosing for their Captains, young *P. Scipio*, and *Ap. Glandius*; yet that the Consul *Terentius Varro*, joyning his company unto those of *Scipio* at *Cannusium*, more unto the Senate, that he had now well-near ten thousand men about him; that the letters of the Consul were brought to Rome, when the Senate was newly risen, and had been taking order for pacifying those tumults in the City, which grew upon the first bruit of the overthrow; and yet, that Embassadors from *Capua* (after some consultation, whether it were meet to send any, or without further circumstance, to side with *Hannibal*) were sent unto *Terentius*, and found him at *Venusia*, a pretty while before he wrote those letters, which overtook (in a manner) at Rome the first newes of the overthrow.

overthrow. Among such incoherences, I hold it the best way, to omit so much as had not some particular connexion with matter ensuing: mutuall dependency in things of this nature, being no small argument of truth.

When *Hannibal* had sacked the *Roman* camp, and trussed up the spoils, forthwith he dislodged, and marched away into *Samnium*; finding a disposition in the *Hirpines*, and many other people thereabout, to forsake the *Roman* party, and make alliance with *Carthage*. The first town that opened the gates unto him, was *Cassi*, where he laid up his baggage: and leaving his brother *Mago* to take in other places. He hastened into *Campania*. The generall affection of the multitude in all the Cities of *Italy*, was inclinable unto him; not only in regard of their grievous losses, sustained abroad in the fields, which the *Romans* themselves, who could not hinder him from spoiling the Country, especially the poorer sort of them, did hardly indure; but in a loving respect unto that great courtesie (as it seemed) which he used unto such of them as became his prisoners. For as at other times, so now after this great victory at *Canna*, He had lovingly dismissed as many of the *Italian* Confederates of *Rome*, as fell into his hands: rebuking them gently for being so obstinate against him that had fought to deliver them from bondage. Neither spared he to win their love by gifts; pretending to admire their valour; but seeking indeed, by all wayes and means, to make them his, whilest all other motives were concurrent. At this time also he began to deal kindly (though against his nature) with the *Roman* prisoners; telling them, that he bore no mortall hatred unto their Estate; but being provoked by injuries, sought to right himself and his Country; and fought with them to try which of these two Cities, *Rome* or *Carthage*, should bear sovereign Rule, not which of them should be destroyed. So he gave them leave to chooe ten of their number, that should be sent home to treat with the Fathers about their ransom: and together with these, he sent *Carthalo* a Noble man of *Carthage*, and Generall of his Horse, to feel the disposition of the Senate; whether it were bowed as yet by so much adversity, and could stoop unto desire of peace. But with the *Romans* these arts prevailed not, as shall be shewed in due place. The people of *Italy*, all, or most of them, save the *Roman* Colonies, or the *Latines*, were not only weary of their losses past; but entertained a deceivable hope, of changing their old Society for a better. Wherefore not only the *Samnites*, *Lucans*, *Brutians*, and *Apulians*, ancient enemies of *Rome*, and not until the former generation utterly subdued, began to re-assume their wonted spirits: but the *Campanians*, a Nation of all other in *Italy* most bound unto the State of *Rome*, and by many mutuall affinities therewith as straightly conjoynd, as were any save the *Latines*, changed on a sudden their love into hatred; without any other cause found, than change of fortune.

*Campania*, is the most goodly and fruitfull Province of *Italy*, if not (as some then thought) of all the Earth: and the City of *Capua*, answerable unto the country, whereof it was Head, so great, fair, and wealthy, that it seemed no lesse convenient a seat of the Empire, than was either *Rome* or *Carthage*. But of all qualities, bravery is the least requisite unto sovereign command. The *Campanians* were luxurious, idle, and proud: and valuing themselves like Jays by their feathers, despised the unfortunate vertue of the *Romans* their Patrons and Benefactors. Yet were there some of the principall among them, as in other Cities, that bore especiall regard unto the Majesty of *Rome*, and could not indure to hear of Innovation. But the *Plebeian* faction had lately so prevailed within *Capua*, that all was governed by the pleasure of the Multitude; which wholly followed the direction of *Pacuvius Calavrus* an ambitious Noble-man, whose credit grew, and was up-held by furthering all popular desires: whereof, the conjunction with *Hannibal* was not the least. Some of the *Capuans* had offered their city to the *Carthaginians* shortly after the battail of *Thrasymene*: whereupon chieftly it was, that *Hannibal* made his journey into *Campania*: the Dictator *Fabius* waiting upon him. At that time, either the needernesse of the *Roman* Army, or some other fear of the *Capuans*, hindred them from breaking into actual rebellion. They had indeed no leisure to treat about any article of new Confederacy: or had leisure served, yet were the multitude (whose inconstant love *Hannibal* had won from the *Romans*, by gentle usage, and free dismissing of some prisoners in good account among them) unable to hold any such negotiation, without advice of the Senate; which mainly impugned it. So they that had promised to yeeld up their town to *Hannibal*, & meet him on the way, with some of their nobility that should assure

him of all faithful meaning, were driven to sit still in a great perplexity: as having failed to let in this their new friend, yet sufficiently discovered themselves, to draw upon them the hatred of the *Romans*. In this case were no small number of the Citizens: who thereupon grew the more incensed against their Senate, on whom they cast all the blame, easily pardoning their own cowardize. The people holding so tender a regard of liberty, that even the lawful government of Magistrates grieved them, with an imaginary oppression; had now good cause to fear lest the Senators would become their Lords indeed; and by help of the *Romans* bring them under a more straight subjection, than ever they had endured. This fear being ready to break into some outrage, *Pacuvius* made use of, to serve his own ambition. He discoursed unto the Senate, as they sate in Council, about these motions troubling the city: and said, That he himself had both married a *Roman* Lady, and given his Daughter in marriage to a *Roman*: but that the danger of forsaking of the *Roman* party was not now the greatest: for that the people were violently bent to murder all the Senate, and after to joyn themselves with *Hannibal*, who should countenance the fact, and save them harmless. This he spake, as a man well known to be beloved himself by the People, and privie unto their designs. Having thoroughly terrified the Senate, by laying open the danger hanging over them: He promised nevertheless to deliver them all, and to set things in quiet, if they would freely put themselves into his hands, offering his oath, or any other assurance that they should demand for his faithful meaning. They all agreed. Then shutting up the Court, and placing a guard of his own followers about it, that none might enter, nor issue forth, without his leave; He called the people to assembly: and speaking as much ill of the Senate, as he knew they would be glad to hear, he told them, that these wicked Governments were surprised by his policy, and all fast, ready to abide what sentence they would lay upon them. Only thus much he advised them, as a thing which necessity required, that they should chooe a new Senate, before they satisfied their anger upon the old. So rehearsing unto them the names of one or two Senators; he asked what their judgement was of those. All cried out, that they were worthy of death. Chooseth then (said he) first of all some new ones into their places. Hereat the multitude, unprovided for such an election, was silent; until at last, some one or other adventured to name whom he thought fit. The men so nominated, were utterly disliked by the whole Assembly; either for some known fault, baseness and insufficiency; or else even because they were unknown, and therefore held unworthy. This difficulty in the new Election appearing more and more, whilest more were to be chosen; (the fittest man to be substituted, having been named among the first, and not thought fit enough) *Pacuvius* intreated, and easily prevailed with the people, that the present Senate might for this time be spared, in hope of amends hereafter; which (doubtless) they would make, having thus obtained pardon of all offences past. Henceforth, not only the people, as in former times, honoured *Pacuvius*, and esteemed him their Patron; but the Senators also were governed by him, to whom they acknowledged themselves indebted, for saving all their lives. Neither did the Senate fail after this by all obsequiousness, to court the People; giving the reins unto their lawless Will, who else were likely to cast them down. All the city being thus of one mind; only fear of the *Romans* kept them from opening their gates to *Hannibal*. But after the Battail at *Canna*, this impediment was removed: and few there were that would open their mouths to speak against the Rebellion. Yet forasmuch as three hundred principall Gentlemen of the *Campanians*, did then serve the *Romans* in the Ile of *Sicily*: the Parents and Kinsmen of these prevailed so far, that Embassadors were sent unto *Terentius* the Consul, to see his present case, and what it could minister of Hope or Fear. These, wheresoever they found him, found him weakly attended, and as weak in spirit, as in followers. Yet they offered him formally the service of their State; and desired to know what he would command them. But he most basely lamented unto them the greatness of the *Roman* misfortune: saying, that all was lost; and that the *Campanians* must now, not help the *Romans*, who had nothing left wherewith to help themselves, but make war in their defence against the *Carthaginians*; as the *Romans* had sometimes done for the *Campanians* against the *Samnites*. Hereunto he is said to have added a foolish Inveective against *Hannibal* and his *Carthaginians*: telling, How he had taught them to make bridges of slaughtered carcases, & to feed upon mans flesh; with such other stuffe, as only bewrayed his own fear. As for the *Campanians* themselves,

He put them in mind of their present strength: they having thirty thousand foot, and four thousand horse; with money, and all provisions, in abundance. Thus he dissuaded them, prouder than they came, and filled them with conceit of getting a great Lordship; whereas before they were somewhat timorous in adventuring to seek their own liberty. Having reported this at *Capua*: the same Embassadors were dispatched away to *Hannibal*, with whom they easily made alliance, upon these conditions; that the *Campanians* should be absolutely free, and ruled by their own Lawes; That no Citizens of them should be subject unto any *Carthaginian* Magistrate, in what case soever, whether in War or Peace; and that *Hannibal* should deliver unto the *Campanians* three hundred *Roman* prisoners, such as themselves would chose, whom they might exchange for their Gentlemen which were in *Sicily*.

Against all this Negotiation, *Decius Magius*, an honourable Citizen, opposed himself earnestly: using, in vain, many persuasions, to the wilfull and head-strong Multitude; whom he put in minde of *Pyrrhus* and the *Tarentines*, wishing them not to change old friends for new acquaintance. This did he, when they were sending Embassadors unto *Hannibal*, and this also did he, when the new alliance was concluded; but earnestly, when a *Carthaginian* Garrison was entering the town: at which time he gave advice, either to keep it out, or to fall upon it, and to cut it in pieces, that by such notable piece of service, they might make amends unto the *Romans*, whom they had forsaken.

Advertisement hereof was given to *Hannibal*: who lying about *Naples* not farre off, sent for *Magius* to come speak with him in the camp. This *Magius* refused: alledging that he was, by the late concluded Articles, free from subjection unto any *Carthaginian*, and therefore would not condescend. *Hannibal* thereupon halted himself towards *Capua*: forbearing to attempt any further upon *Naples*; which he thought to have taken in his way by *Scalade*, but found the walls too high, and was not well provided to lay siege unto it. At *Capua* he was entertained with great solemnity and pomp: all the people flocked forth of the town, to behold that great Commander, which had won so many noble victories. Having taken his pleasure in the sight of that goodly City, and passed over his first entertainments; He came into their Senate: where he commended their resolution, in shaking off the *Roman* yoke; promising, that ere long all *Italy* and *Rome* it self, should be driven to acknowledge *Capua* as chief, and receive Law from thence. As for *Decius Magius*, who openly took part with the *Romans* their enemies; He prayed them, that they would not think him a *Campanian*, but a traitor to the State, and use him accordingly, giving sentence out of hand upon him, as he deserved. This was ignorant; and *Magius* delivered unto *Hannibal*: who unwilling to offend the *Capuans*, at his first coming, by putting to great a man to death, yet fearing that they might sue for his liberty, if he kept him alive, thought it best to send him away to *Carthage*. Thus *Hannibal* sealed his friendship with the *Campanians*: among whom, only this *Decius Magius* had openly dared to speak against him; being assisted by *Perolla* the sonne of *Pacuvius*. This *Perolla* would have murdered *Hannibal*, whilst he was at supper, the first night of his coming; but not his fathers authority kept him from attempting any such attempt. All the town (besides) were so earnest in the love of their new Society, that they are said to have murdered all the *Romans*, upon whom at the present they could lay hand; or, (which is all one) to have smothered them to death in an hot Bath.

The same course of fortune, with those of *Capua*, ran some other towns thereabouts, which depended on this, as their Mother-City. *Nola*, *Nuceria*, *Naples*, *Casertine*, and *Stabiae*, were the Cities next adjoining, that stood out for the *Romans*. Against these *Hannibal* went, thinking to finde them weakly manned; as they were indeed, though stoutly defended.

The *Romans* at this time were not in case, to put Garrisons into all their walled towns; but were faine to leave all places, except a few of the most suspected, unto the faith and courage of the inhabitants. *Rome* it self was in extreme fear of *Hannibals* coming, at the first report of the overthrow at *Canna*: and the grief of that losse was so general, and immoderate, that it much disturbed the provision against apparent danger. It was hard to judge, whether the losse already received, or the fear of destruction presently threatening, were the more terrible. All the Senators found work enough, to stint the noise and lamentable bewailings, whereof the streets were full. Courtiers were

sent forth, to bring assured tidings how all went: whereof when Letters from the Consul *Furro* had thoroughly informed them, they were so amazed, that they ran into barbarous superstition; and taking direction (as was said) from their fatal books buried alive two men and women, *Gauls* and *Greeks*, in their Ox-market. If the books of *Sibyl* gave them such instructions; we may justly think that *Sibyl* her self was instructed by the Divel. Yet is it not improbable, that extremity of fear caused them to hearken to wicked Sooth-sayers; whose detestable counsels they afterwards for their own honour (as ashamed of such Authors) imputed to the books of *Sibyl*. An Embassador was sent to *Delphi*, to consult with the oracle of *Apollo*; & enquire with what prayers and supplications they might pacifie the gods, and obtain an end of these calamities. This is enough to discover the greatnes of their fear; though not serving to give remedy. At that time came Letters out of *Sicily*, from the Prætor *Octavius*, whom the Senate had appointed, if he found it meet, to pass over into *Africk*. In these were contained newes of one *Carthaginian* fleet that waited the kingdom of *Hieron* their good friend & confederate; & of another fleet, riding among the Isles *Agætes*, which was in readines to set upon *Lilybæum*, and the rest of the *Roman* Province, if the Prætor stirred aside to the rescue of *Hieron*.

In the midst of these extremities, it was thought needfull to call home *Terentius* the Consul, that he might name a Dictator, to take sovereign charge of the Weal publique, with absolute power, as necessity required. It must needs seem strange, that all sorts of people went forth to meet the Consul, and bid him welcome home, giving him thanks for that he had not despaired of the Weal-publick. But this was done (as may seem) by order from the Senate: which therein (doubtless) provided wisely for upholding the general reputation. If this coming into the City had restored the lamentations and outcries of the people: what else would have followed, than a contempt of their wretchedness, among those that were subject unto their Dominion? Now in finding this occasion (though indeed he gave it not) of bestowing upon him their welcome, and thanks; they noised abroad a fame, which came perhaps unto the ears of *Hannibal*, of their Magnanimity and Confidence: that might seem grounded on their remaining strength. This generosity was wisely done. But whereas *Livie* would have us think, that it was done fearfully, and out of great spirit; let me be pardoned, if I beleeve him not. It was done fearfully, and to cover their grief: had they dared to shew their indignation, they would have struck off his head; as in few years after, *Cn. Fulvius* had his life brought into question, and was banished by them, being less blame-worthy, for a smaller offence. *M. Junius*, by appointment of the Senate, was nominated Dictator, and *T. Sempronius*, Master of the horse. These fell presently to mustering of Souldiers, of whom they raised four new Legions, and 1000. horse: though with much difficulty; as being faine to take up some that were very boyes. These four Legions are elsewhere forgotten in account of the forces levied by this Dictator; and two Legions only set down, that had been enrolled in the beginning of the year for custody of the City. So it may be, that these two Legions being drawn into the field; four new ones of *Prætextati*, or striplings were left in their places. In such raw Souldiers, and so few, little confidence was to be reposed; for which reason they increased their number, by adding unto them 8000. sturdy slaves, that were put in hope of liberty, if they should deserve it by manfull service. This not sufficing, the Dictator proclaimed, That whosoever ought money & could not pay it, or had committed any capitall offence, should forthwith be discharged of his debt or punishment, if he would serve in the War. To arme these Companies, they were faine to take down out of their Temples and Porches, the spoils of their enemies that had been there set up; among which, were 6000. Armour of the *Gauls*, that had been carryed in the Triumph of *C. Flaminius*, a little before the beginning of this War. To such mockery had God brought to the pride of the *Romans*, as a due reward of their insolent oppressions; that they were faine to issue forth of their own gates, in the habit of strangers; when *Hannibal* was ready to encounter them with his *Africans*, armed *Roman-like*.

About the same time it was that *Carthalo* with the Agents of the prisoners taken at *Canna*, came to *Rome*. *Carthalo* was not admitted into the City, but commanded, whilst he was on the way, to be gone ere night out of the *Roman* Territory. To the messengers of the captives audience was given by the Senate. They made earnest Petition to be ransomed at the publick charge; not only the tears and lamentation of their poor kinfolk, but the great need, wherein the City then stood, of able Souldiers, commending



their suit; which yet they obtained not. Besides the generall custome of the *Romans* (held by long Tradition, and strengthened by a notable Precedent, when *Regulus* was overthrowen, and taken prisoner in the former War) not to be too tender of such as had yielded to the enemy; much was alledged against these who now craved ranfome: but the special point was, that they were wilfully lost since they might have saved themselves, as others did. It sufficed not unto these poor men, to say, that their offence was no greater than the Consuls; they were told, that this was great presumption. The truth was, the State wanted money; and therefore could not want excuses, whereby to avoid the disburment: whether it were so, or not, that any such Plea was held about this matter of redemption, as we finde recorded. Neither must we regard it, that the slaves which were armed for the war, are said to have cost more, than the summd amount unto, that would have ranfomed these prisoners. For this is but a tale, devised to countenance the *Roman* proceedings, as if they had been severe; when as indeed they were suitable to the present fortune, poor and somewhat beggarly. Hereof it is notable proofe, That *Hannibal* valued those *Roman* slaves, whom he had taken in the Camp among their Masters, at no more, than every one the third part of a common Souldiers ranfome: and likely it is, that he offered them at the price, whereat he thought them current. But if we should suppose, that by trading with *Hannibal*, a better bargain for slaves might have been made, than was by the State at home, in dealing with private men; yet must we withall consider, that these private men did only lend these slaves for 20 a while unto the Common-wealth, and were afterwards contented to forbeare the price of them (when by order of the Senate they were enfranchised) untill the War should be ended. If *Hannibal* would have given such long day of payment, it is likely that the *Romans* would have been his Chapmen: but, seeing he dealt only for ready money, they chose rather to say, We will not give, than, We cannot. The like austeritie, upon the same reason, but contrary pretence, was used toward the Souldiers that escaped from that great Battell. These were charged for having fled: as the prisoners were, for not flying, when they might have done so. True it is, that in such cases (if ever) that which they call *Ragione del Stato*, may serve for an excuse: when the Common-wealth, being driven to a miserable exigent, is faine to help it self, by doing injuries to private men. 30 And so dealt the *Romans* now: condemning all those that had served at *Canna*, to be transported into *Sicily*; and there to serve, not as others did, untill they had fulfilled twenty years in the Wars, or else were fifty years of age, but untill this War should be ended, how long soever it lasted, and that without reward. The same thrifty censure was afterwards laid upon others, for their mis-behaviour: but never upon any man of quality, save only (a good while after this, at better leisure) upon *Cecilius Metellus*, and a few other hare brain'd fooles his companions; who, being frightened out of their wits, with the terror of so great a losse, were devising, after the battell, which way to run out of *Italy*, when *Hannibal* as yet had scarce one town within it. The inequality of this rigour grew shortly distastfull to the Commonalty: and was openly blamed 40 by a Tribune of the people; nevertheless it was quietly digested, the excuse being no lesse apparent than the fault.

*M. Junius* the Dictator, having dispatched all needfull businesse within the Citie, took the field with five and twenty thousand men. What he did with this Army, I cannot finde: nor more of him than this, That he spent the time about *Campania*; where (as may be presumed) he was not idle. To him therefore perhaps it may be ascribed, that *Hannibal* did no greater evill: for of any evill done to *Hannibal*, by the *Romans*, in this their weak estate, only *Marcellus* had the honour. *Marcellus*, being then one of the Prators, lay at *Ostia*, with a Fleet ready to set sail for *Sicily*, having one Legion aboard his ships; and fifteen hundred other Souldiers newly taken up: with which forces he was to defend that Iland, and do what harm he could in *Africa*. But hearing of the overthrow at *Canna*, he sent these of his new Levie to *Rome*, for defence of the City; and marched hastily with his Legion toward *Cannusinus*: delivering the Fleet, empty of Souldiers, to *P. Furius* his Colleague. Thence was he called by the Magistrates, and chief Citizens of *Nola*, to help them: who were like to be forced by the multitude 50 (affected, as were the rest of the *Campanes*) to let in the *Carthaginians*; and knew not how to avoid this otherwise, than by seeming to deliberate about the articles of this new confederacy. Wherefore he made great journeys thitherward; and arrived even time enough

enough to prevent the Enemy. Many idle walks *Hannibal* made betwixt *Nola* and *Neapolis*, adorning by fair words and terrible threats the one and the other City. *Neapolis* was strong, and not infected with any the least touch of disloyalty: had also a sure haven, whereby it stood in the less fear of sustaining much inconvenience, by spooll of the Lands and Villages abroad in the Country. But at *Nola* it was thought a valuable consideration, That *Hannibal* was Master of the field: which if he laid with all the poor people were utterly undone. So thought the Multitude: & such talk used some, that had little fear of their own private want or poverty; but a great desire to gratifie the *Carthaginians*. Of these, one *L. Bantius* was chief; a stout young Gentleman; and Souldier of 10 speciall mark, well beloved in the City, and one that had done good service to the *Romans*; but was found by *Hannibal*, hurt dead at *Canna*; and after much gentle usage, good attendance, and cure of his wounds, & friendly dismissal with liberrall gifts, he therefore thought, that it concerned him in honour, to requite the greatest thanks he could unto so courteous an enemy. *Marcellus*, perceiving this, wrought upon the same easie nature of the Gentleman, and taking notice of him, as if it had been by chance, 20 he was so wondrously why one that had so well deserved of the *Roman* State had not repaired unto him the Prator, who desired nothing more than such acquaintance. So with many commendations, gifts, and loving entertainments, being himself also a man highly reputed for his personal valour, he made this *Bantius* so fast to love with him, that nothing could be attempted within *Nola*, against the *Romans*, whose of he had not presently 30 agreement. At the coming of *Marcellus*, *Hannibal* removed, from about *Nola*, and layed, as formerly he had done, the *Neapolitans*; whom they had lately taken in a *Roman* Garrison; upon confidence whereof they gave him a peremptory answer, to his discontent. Thence went he to *Nuceria*, which he took by composition; and so returned back again to *Nola*. He was not ignorant, what good affection the common people of *Nola* bore unto him: who although they durst not stir in his quarrell, being over-awed by the *Roman* Garrison; yet if they saw *Marcellus* hardly beset, and forced 40 towards his care from watching them, within a few dayes the enemies assailing him without, like enough it seemed; that they would not be wanting unto, the accomplishment of their own desires. He therefore brought his Army close to the Town, and skirmished often with *Marcellus*: not in hope thereby to do much good, but only to take shew of a meaning to force the Town; which he sought in the mean while to 50 take by intelligence. In the night time there passed messages between him and the Citizens, his partakers; whereby it was concluded, That if once *Marcellus*, with all his forces, could be trained into the field, the multitude within the Town should presently die; and seizing upon the gates, exclude him as an Enemy. Of this Negotiation *Marcellus* was advertised; and fearing lest the Conspirators would shortly adventure, even to find him busied within the City; whilst the *Carthaginians* should scale the walls; he thought it the surest way, to cut off the Enemies hope, and send him away betimes. 60 Wherefore ordering his men in three companies, within three severall gates, looking towards the enemy: he gave a straight command; that all the Citizens should keep their houses. Thus he lay close a good part of the day, to the enemies great wond'ring against whom he had customarily issued forth before more early every day, to skirmish. But when it was further noted, that the walls were bare, and not a man appearing on them; then thought *Hannibal*, that surely all was discovered, and *Marcellus* now busied with the Citizens. Whereupon he had his men bring ladders, and make ready for the assault: which was done in all haste. But when the *Carthaginians* were at the very walls, and thought nothing less, than that the *Romans* would meet them in the field: suddenly the middle gate was opened, whereat *Marcellus*, with the best and oldest of his Souldiers, brake forth upon them, with a great noise, to make his unexpected fall the more terrible. Whilst the *Carthaginians*, much out of order, were some of them 70 flying before *Marcellus*, the rest making head against him: the other two gates opened, whereat in like sort issued they of the new levied Companies, upon the enemies backs. The sudden terrour was more available unto the *Romans*, than their force; yet the Execution was so great, that this was accounted as a victory, and reputed one of the bravest Acts performed in all that War, so far as much as hereby it was first proved, that *Hannibal* might be overcome. After this *Marcellus*, being freed from his enemies: that were departed, took a strict account of the Citizens of *Nola*; condemning above 80 A a a a a three score



in selfe and ten of high Treason, whose heads he struck off; and so leaving the town in quiet obedience unto their Senate, went and incamped hard by about *Suffula*. *Hannibal* in the mean season was gone to *Acerra*: where being excluded, he thought it no wisdom to lose time in persuasions, but laid siege unto it, and began on all sides to raise it up. This terrified the People, who knew themselves unable to hold out. Therefore, before his Works were finished, and they quite surrounded; they stole out by night, and left him the Town empty: which he lacked and burnt. Then hearing news of the Dictator, that he was about *Casiline*, thither went *Hannibal*; as being unwilling that an enemy so near should disquiet him at *Capua*: where he meant to Winter. It seems, or rather indeed it is plain, that the late victory of *M. Caelius* had nothing abated the spirit of the *Carthaginian*: who durst with a small part of his Army seek out the Dictator, that had with him the heart of the *Roman* strength. Wherefore the joy of his Enemies, upon so slight an occasion as the death of some two thousand of his men, at the most, and those not slain in plain battail, but by a sudden eruption; witnessed chiefly, in what great fear they stood of *Hannibal*, and how Crest-fallen they were: that having three years since demanded at *Carthage* the body of *Hannibal*, to be delivered unto their pleasure, by his own Citizens: could now please themselves, as with good newes, to hear, That in a skirmish not far from *Rome*, he appeared to be a man; and not so feeble. At *Casiline* the Dictator was not: but many Companies of *Italians*, Considerates of *Rome*, were gotten into the Town, and held it. Five hundred of the *Prætorians* there were, and about four hundred of *Parusia*, with some of the *Latines*. All these had the good hap, to come too late to the battail at *Canus*, being sent by their several States to the Camp: whither whilst they were marching the tidings of the great misfortune encountered them, and sent them back sorrowfull, for they loved well their Lords the *Romans*, under whose government they lived happily. So came they all, one after another, to *Casiline*, where they met and staid. Neither had they staid there long, ere they heard newes from *Capua*. How that great City became the Ring-leader of all the *Campanes* into rebellion. The people of *Casiline* were affected as they of *Capua*; and therefore fought how to rid their hands of those *Prætorians* and their fellows; but the Souldiers were too hard for them, and after many trains laid one for another, at last they slew all the Townsmen in a night, and fortified the Western part of the Town (for it was divided by the River *Fulturnus*) against the Enemy. If they had run away with the goods, and pretended, that these of *Casiline* were as the rest of the *Campanes*, all Traitors; they themselves might have been reputed, as no better than the *Mamertines*. But their constancy in defence of the place winneth, upon what honest reasons they surprised it: *Hannibal* came thither, thinking to have encountered with greater forces: but these few found him more work than he expected. Divers assaults he gave, but was still repelled with losse: and many sallies they made, with variable event. The Enemy mined; and they countermined: opposing to much industry to his force, that he was driven to close them up, and seek to win them by famine. *T. Sempronius Gracchus*, that was Master of the horse, lay with the *Roman* Army higher up the River: who fain would have relieved *Casiline*, but that the Dictator being gone to *Rome* about some matters of Religion, had given him an expresse charge not to fight till his return. *Marcellus* from *Suffula* could not come: his way being stopped by the overlooming of *Pulturnus*; the *Nalans* also beseeching him not to leave them, who were in danger of the *Campanes*, if he departed. Thus it is reported: but if the water stayed his journey, such entreaties were needless. Neither is it like that the Dictator tarried at *Rome* so long: as till extrem famine had consumed the Garrison in *Casiline*. Wherefore it may be thought, that the Town was lost, because the *Romans* durst not adventure to raise the siege. Barrels of corn were sent by night, floating down the River; and when some of these, being carried awry by an Eddie of water, stuck among the Willows on the bank, whereby this manner of relief was discovered and prevented; *Gracchus* cast a great quantity of Nuts into the stream, which faintly sustained the poor besieged men. At length when all food was spent, and whatsoever grew green under the Walls was gathered for Sallers, the *Carthaginians* ploughed up the ground; whereon the besieged profently sowed Rape-seed. *Hannibal* seeing this, admired their patience; and said, That he meant not to stay at *Casiline* until the Rapes were grown. Wherefore though hitherto he had refused to hearken unto any Compulsion,

as intending to make them an example to all others, by punishing their obstinacy; yet now he was content, to grant them their lives at an indifferent ransom, which when they had paid, he quietly dismissed them, according to his promise. Seven hundred *Carthaginians* he placed in *Casiline*, as a Garrison for defence of the *Campanes*, unto whom he restored it. To the *Prætorian* Souldiers great thanks were given, and loving rewards; among which they had offer, in regard of their vertue, to be made Citizens of *Rome*. But their present condition pleased them so well, that they chose rather to continue, as they were in *Prætorie*: which is no weak proof, of the good estate, where in the Cities flourished, that were subject to the *Roman* Government. This siege of *Casiline* was not a little beneficiall to the *Romans*; as having long detained *Hannibal*; and consumed much of his time, that might otherwise have been better spent. For winter overtook him long before he could dispatch the business; which how to quit with his honour, he knew not, when he was once engaged. Therefore he wintered at *Capua*: where he refreshed his Army, or rather corrupted it, as all Historians report, and made it effeminate; though, effeminate as it was, He therewithall did often beat the *Romans* in following times, as shall appear hereafter.

S. X.

Of the great supply that was decreed at *Carthage* to be sent to *Hannibal* into *Italic*. How by the malice of *Hanno*, and sloth or parsimony of the *Carthaginians*, the supply was too long deferred. That the riches of the *Carthaginians* grew faster, than of the *Romans*. Of *Fabius* and other old *Roman* Historians, how partiall they were in their writings.

When *Mago*, the son of *Amilcar*, had spent some time about the taking in of such *Italians*, as fell from the *Romans* after the battail at *Canus*; his brother *Hannibal* sent for him to *Capua*, and thence dispatched him away to *Carthage*, with the joyfull message of Victory. He told the *Carthaginian* Senate with how many *Roman* Generals his brother had fought, what Consuls he had chased, wounded or slain, how the stout *Romans*, that in the former war never shunned any occasion of fight, were now grown so calm, that they thought their Dictator *Rabius* the only good Captain, because he never durst adventure to come to battail. That not without reason their spirits were thus abated, since *Hannibal* had slain of them above two hundred thousand, and taken above fifty thousand prisoners. He further told them of the *Britians*, *Apulians*, *Samnites*, *Ætians*, and other people of *Italy*, that followed the fortune of those great victories, had revolted unto the *Carthaginians*. Among the rest he magnified *Capua*, as a goodly City, and fit to be not only (as already it was) Head of all the *Capuans*, but the chief seat of their Dominion in *Italy*: and there he informed them, how lovingly his brother had been entertained, where he meant to rest that winter attending their supply. As for the war, He said it was even at an end, if they would now pursue it closely, and not give the *Romans* any breathing time, wherein to re-collect themselves, and repair their broken forces. He willed them to consider, that the war was far from home, in the Enemies Country: that so many battels had much diminished his brothers Army: that the Souldiers, who had so well deserved, ought to be considered with liberrall rewards; and that it was not good to burden their new *Italian* friends, with traditions of money, corn, and other necessities; but that these things must be sent from *Carthage*; which the victory would require with large amends. Finally, he cauled the golden rings, taken from the fingers of the *Roman* Knights that were slain, to be poured out openly in the Court: which being measured, filled (as some say) three tubs; (as others would rather have it) no more than one, adding, that by this might be seen the greatness of the *Roman* calamity, for as much as none but the principal of that order, were accustomed to wear that ornament.

Who so considers the former *Punic* Warre, may easily find, that the State of *Carthage* never did receive, in all the duration thereof, any such hopeful advertisements from their Captains abroad. Wherefore it is no marvell, if the errand of *Mago* found extraordinary welcome. In the vehemency of this joy, *Himilco*, a Senator adverse to the faction of *Hanno*, is said to have demanded of that great persvader unto peace with *Rome*, whether

A a a a a 3

Whether

\* Thus Livie reports it; and credible it is, that while *Rome* was poor, the bravery of private men was not altogether so great, as the Law would have permitted though otherwise. *Just Annals* of the *Romans* the generall priviledge of the *Roman* is quite.

Whether he were still of opinion, that *Hannibal* should be yielded up unto the *Romans*; or whether he would forbid them to give thanks unto the gods, for this their good success: Hereunto though it be not likely that *Hanno* made the same formal answer, which *Livie* puts into his mouth, calling the *Carthaginian* Senators *Paves conscripti*, by a term proper to the *Romans*; and putting them in minde of his own shamefull overthrow received at the Ilands *Agates*: yet the summe of his speech appears to have been no lesse malicious than it is set down, forasmuch as *Hannibal* himself, at his departure out of *Italy*, proclaimed against the wickedness of this *Hanno*, saying, that his hatred against the *Bardhines*, had oppressed their Family, when otherwise it could not, with the ruine of *Carthage*. Therefore it may well be, that he made such a jest of these victories, as is reported, saying, It ill befecmed him, who had vanquished the *Romans* to call for more help as if he had been beaten; or him, that had taken their camp, filled forthwith with spoils, make request for meat & money. To these cavils, if answer were needful, it might be said, That other booty than of horses and slaves, little was to be found in the *Roman* camps: the best of the Souldiers carrying no other wealth into the field, than a few \* silver studs in the bridles and trappings of their horses. If *Hannibal* had taken any main convoy of money and provisions, going to supply all wants of a great army in some other Province, (as the two *Scipio's* are afterwards said to have done, when they won the camp of *Asdrubal*, that carried along with him all the wealth of *Spain*, in his journey towards *Italy*) then might such an objection more justly have bin made unto his demand of a supply. But the most likely part of *Hanno's* his Oration, and wherein he best might hope to prevail, contained a persuasion to use their fortune with moderation; and now to seek peace, whilst they had so much the better in war.

What would have been the issue of this counsell, if it had bin followed, it were not easy to say. For though it be likely, that the *Roman* pride would have brooked much indignity, in freeing *Italy* from the danger of war; yet it is not likely, that the faith, so often broken to the *Carthaginians* in former times, would have bin kept entire, when any opinion of good advantage had called for revenge of so many shamefull overthrows, since after this war ended, and a new league concluded, no submissive behaviour could preserve *Carthage* from ruine, longer, than untill such time as *Rome* was at leisure from all other wars. This counsell therefore of *Hanno*, though it might seem temperate, was indeed very pestilent; and served only to hinder the performance of a noble resolution. For it was concluded by a main consent of the Senate, that forty thousand *Numidians*, forty Elephants, and great abundance of silver, should be sent over to *Hannibal*: and that, besides these, twenty thousand foot, and four thousand horse, should be levied in *Spain*; not only to supply, as need should require, the Armies in their Province, but to be transported into *Italy*.

This great aid, had it been as carefully sent, as it was readily decreed, the *Roman* Historians would not have found cause, to tax the retchlesse improvidence of *Hannibal*, in forbearing to march directly from *Canna* to *Rome*, or in refreshing his Army among the delights of *Capua*: the next years work would have finished the business, with lesse dangerous adventure; and the pleasures, which his men enjoyed among the *Campuses*, would have been commended, as rewards by him well thought upon, wherewith to animate both them and others, that were to be employed in the following Warre. But either the too much carelesse of those, that were loth to make haste in laying out their money, before extreme necessity required it; or the crafty malice of *Hanno*; and his fellows, working upon the private humours of men, that had more feeling of their own commodity, than sense of the publick need; utterly perverted, and made unprofitable in the performance, the order that had been so well set down. The \* Elephants were sent: and some money peradventure, uncertain it is how long after. But those great forces of threecore thousand foot, and four thousand horse, came not into *Italy*, till much was lost of that which already had been gotten, and a great part of the old *Carthaginian* Army, was first consumed by time, and sundry accidents of warre. Only some small numbers, no way answering unto the proportion decreed, were sent into *Spain*; and the journey of *Asdrubal* thence through *France* into *Italy* much talked of, but he not enabled thereunto, till many years were past, and the *Romans* had recovered their strength.

Here we may note, what great riches the *Carthaginians* drew into their City, both

by the Tributes received from their subjects, and by their wealthy Trade of Merchandise. For it is not long, since the Warre of the Mercenaries, and the perfidious tyranny of the *Romans*, extorting in time of greatest necessity twelve hundred talents; had exceedingly impoverished *Carthage*: which was before brought into great want, even by the expence of so much money, as was to be disbursed for redeeming of peace, after the losse of *Agates*. Yet we see, what great Armies of *Numidians*, and *Spaniards*; besides those already on foot, are appointed to the service in *Italy*, and how little the *Carthaginians* fear the want of money in these chargeable undertakings: whereas the *Romans* on the other side, having three or four years together been forced to some extraordinary cost, are faine to go upon credit, even for the price of those slaves; which they bought of their own Citizens to arme for their defence. Such advantage in means to enrich their Treasury, had the wealthy Merchants of *Carthage*, trading in all parts of the *Mediterranean* Sea, even from *Tyrrus* their Mother-City in the bottome of the Straights unto the great Ocean, above the *Romans*: who lived on the fruits of their ground, and received their Tributes from people following the same course of life. When time therefore was come, that the hatred of *Rome* found leisure to shew it selfe, in the destruction of *Carthage*; the impudence of *Roman* fallshood, in seeking an honest colour wherewith to shadow the intended breach of faith, discovered plainly whence the jealousy was bred, that this mighty City would againe rebell. For the *Carthaginians*, having given up hostages, even before the *Roman* Army did set forth, to performe whatsoever should be enjoyned them, with condition, that their City might not be destroyed; and having accordingly, when they were so required, yielded up all their weapons, and engines of Warre; the *Romans*, told them plainly, That the City of *Carthage*, which was the body of the Citizens, should be friendly dealt withall, but the Town must needs be demolished, and removed into some other place, that should be twelve miles distant from the Sea. For (said the *Romans*) This Trade of Merchandise, by which ye now live, is not so fit, for peaceable men, such as ye promise to become hereafter, as is the Trade of Husbandry; an wholesome kind of life, and ending with many laudable qualities which enable their bodies, and make them very apt for conversation. This villainous dealing of the *Romans*, though sugred with glossing words, plainly shewes, what good observation the elder *Cato* had made of the hasty growth of *Carthage* in riches. For, when being demanded his opinion in the Senate, about any matter whatsoever it were, he added still this conclusion, *Thus I think, and that Carthage should be destroyed*. He may seem, not only to have had regard unto that present wealth, which at his being there he had found in the City, but much more unto these times, and the great height whereunto it rose, even suddenly as we see, out of many calamities, whilst the *Romans* thought, that it had not been in case to dare so terrible a Warre.

But as the *Carthaginians*, in gathering wealth, were more industrious and skilfull than the *Romans*; so came they far short of them in the honourable care of the publick good: having every one, or most of them, a more principall regard of his own private benefit. This made them (besides the negligence commonly found in victors) when the first heat of their affection (wherein they concluded to pursue the war strongly) was over-past, go more leisurely to work, than had been requisite in the execution. It was easie for *Hanno* to persuade covetous men, that they should first of all defend their own in *Spain*. This might be done with little charges. Afterwards, when that Province was secured, they might send an Army into *Italy*; so going to work orderly by degrees. For it were no wisdom to commit all the strength of the Common-wealth to one hazzard of fortune, against the enemies; or (which perhaps were worse) to the government of an ambitious man, and his brethren, who having once (if they could so do) finished the war, might easily make

*Hannibal* a King, and subdue *Carthage*, with the forces that he had given him to the conquest of *Rome*. By such malicious working of *Hanno*, and by their own slacknesse, incredulity, dulness, or nigardize, the *Carthaginians* were periwaded rather to make small disbursements in *Spain*, than to set up all their rest at once in *Italy*. Yet was it indeed impossible to hold a Country of so large extent, and so open a coast as that of *Spain*, free from all incursions of the Enemy: especially the affection of the Naturals being (as in a new conquest) so other way to make himself a King, *Liv. l. 34.*

\* Of such ambition *Hanno*, directly accused *Hannibal*, saying, that he made war, that he might live compassed with Legions, as knowing no other way to make himself a King, *Liv. l. 34.*

which the *Romans* might have been found occupied, even with the ordinary *Carthaginian* Garrisons or some little addition thereunto. For if it were thought meet, to defer the prosecution of their main intendment against *Rome* it self, untill such time as every little thorne were pulled out of the sides of so great a Province, then must *Emporia* have been besieged and forced: which, by reason of alliance with the *Mussilians*, gave unto the *Romans*, at all times when they pleaded, a ready and secure Harbour. But the town of *Emporia*, was too strong to be wonne in haste: it had long defended it self against the *Barbarians*, having not above four hundred paces of wall to the main Land, and exceedingly well fortified: a great *Spanish* Town of the same name, lying without it, that was three miles in compass, very strong likewise, and friend unto the *Gracians*, though not over much trusted. Wherefore to force this town of *Emporia*, that was, besides the proper strength, like to be so well assisted by the *Mussilians*, *Romans*, and some *Spaniards*, would have been a work of little lesse difficulty, than was the *Roman* warre (in appearance) after the battell at *Canna*: yea, it had been in effect none other, than to alter the seat of the war, which *Hannibal* had already fixed, with better judgement, near unto the gates of *Rome*. The difficulty of this attempt, being such as caused it altogether to be forborn, great folly it was, to be much troubled about expelling the *Romans* utterly out of *Spain*: whom they might more easily have diverted thence, and drawn home to their own doors, by making strong war upon their City. For even so the *Romans* afterwards removed *Hannibal* into *Africk*, by sending an Army to *Carthage*; and by taking the like course, they now endeavoured to change the seat of the war transferring it out of *Italy* into *Spain*. But the private affections of men, regarding the common good no otherwise, than as it is accessory to their own purposes, did make them easily wink at opportunities, and hope, that somewhat would fall out well of it self, though they set not to their helping hands. *Hanno* was a malicious wretch: yet they that thought him so, were well enough contented to hearken unto his discourses, as long as they were plausible, and tended to keep the purse full. In the mean while they suffered *Hannibal*, and all the noble house of *Amilcar*, to weary themselves in travell for the Common wealth: which all *Carthage* in general highly commended, but weakly assisted; as if the industry of these *Barchines* had bin somewhat more than needful. Surely the *Carthaginians*, in general, were far less honourable than the people of *Rome*: not only in government of their subject Provinces, but in administration of their own affairs, few of them preferring the respect of the Weal publick above their private interest. But as they thrived little in the end, by their parsimony used toward their own Mercenaries, when the former *Roman* war was finished: so the conclusion of this war present, will make them complain, with feeling sighes, of their negligence in supplying *Hannibal*, after the victory at *Canna*; when gladly they would give all their Treasures, to redeem the opportunity, that now they let passe, as if it were cost enough to send a few handfuls into *Spain*.

That both the *Spanish* businesse, and the state of *Africk* it self, depended wholly, or for the most part, upon successe of things in *Italy*, the course of actions following will make manifest. Particularly, how matters were ordered in *Spain* by the *Carthaginian* Governours, it is very hard, and almost impossible to set down. For, though we must not reprehend, in that worthy Historian *Livie*, the tender love of his own Country, which made him give credit unto *Fabius* and others; yet must we not, for his sake, believe those lyes, which the unpartial judgement of *Polibius* hath condemned, in the Writers that gave them original. It were needlesse to rehearse all that may be found in *Polibius*, concerning the untruth of that *Roman* Historian *Fabius*. One example may suffice. He saith of *Amilcar* and his men at *Eryx*, in the former war, That, having clean spent their strength, and being even broken with many miseries, they were glad to submit themselves unto the *Romans*. Contrary hereunto we finde in the life of *Amilcar*, set down by *Amilius Probus*, That *Eryx* was in such sort held by the *Carthaginians*, that it seemed to be in as good condition, as if in those parts there had not been any war. These words, being referred to the brave resolution of the *Carthaginian* Souldiers, and the singular vertue of their Generall, infusing such spirit into them, may be taken as not over liberal. For in the treaty of peace between *Amilcar* and *Carulus* when the *Roman* first of all required, that this Garrison of *Eryx* should lay down their Arms and forsake *Sicil*, threatening, that otherwise he would not talk of any composition:

*Amilcar*

*Amilcar* boldly bad him chuse, whether he would talk of it or no; for that the Armes which his Country had put into his hands to use against her enemies, it was not his purpose to yield up unto them. Now since the *Romans*, contrary to their custome upon like advantages, were content to let *Amilcar* have his will, & not to stand with him upon point of honour, whilst otherwise they might quietly rid their hands of him; plain enough it is, that they were farre from thinking him a man consumed with miseries, as *Fabius* would have him seem. Hereunto agrees the relation of *Polibius*: who flatly and by name, charged *Fabius* with untruth, saying, that howsoever *Amilcar* and his Souldiers had endured all extremity, yet they behaved themselves as men that had no sense thereof; and were as far from being either vanquished or yrry, as were their Enemies. Such being the difference between *Fabius* (as also perhaps between other old Writers of the *Roman* story) & those that had more regard of truth, than of flattering the mighty city of *Rome*, we must take it in good party, that howsoever *Livie* introduced *Hanno* in one place, joyning very foolishly his own shamefull overthrow at the Islands *Egates*, with the great services of *Amilcar* at *Eryx*, as if both of them had had a like event; yet elsewhere he forsooth, to put a more likely tale (though with as impudent a commendation of his own unhappy conduct) into the same *Hanno* his mouth, making him say, That the affairs of *Carthage* went never better, than a little before the losse of their Fleet in their battell at *Sea*: wherein himself was Generall. Now, concerning the doings of the *Scipios* in *Spain*, there is cause to wish, that this *Fabius*, with *Val. Antius*, & others of the like stamp, had either written (if they could not write more temperately) nothing at all; or that the tender affection of *Livie* to his *Rome*, had not caused him to think too well of their relations, which are such as follow.

# §. XI.

Strange reports of the Roman victories in Spain, before Asdrubal the son of *Amilcar* followed thence his brother *Hannibal* into *Italy*.

It hath been shewed already, how *P. Cornelius Scipio* the Consul returning from *Gaul* into *Italy*, to encounter with *Hannibal* at his descent from the *Alpes*, sent before him his brother *Cn.* with part of his Fleet and Army into *Spain*. Two *Roman* Legions, with fourteen thousand foot of the Confederates, and twelve hundred horse, had been allotted unto the Consul, therewith to make war in *Spain* against *Hannibal*: who since he was marching into *Italy* with the strength of his Army, *P. Scipio* believed, that a good part of these his own forces might well be spared from the *Spanish* Expedition; & therefore made bold to carry some of the number back with him, sending on his brother with the rest, as his Lieutenant. *Publius* himself remained in *Italy* all the time of his Consulship: which being expired, he was sent Proconsul into *Spain* by the Senate, with an Army of eight thousand men, and a Fleet of thirty Gallies.

The Acts of these two Brethren in their Province, were very great; and as they are reported, somewhat marvellous. For they continually prevailed in *Spain*, against the *Carthaginians*: whom they vanquished in so many battails, and withdrew from their Alliance so many of the *Spaniards* to their Confederates; that we have cause to wonder, how the enemy could so often finde means to repair his forces, and return strobg into the field. But as the *Romans*, by pretending to deliver the Country from the tyranny of *Carthage*, might easily win unto their Confederacy, as many as were galled with the *African* yoke, and durst adventure to break it: so the ancient reputation of the first Conquerors might serve to arme the Naturals against these Invaders; and to reclaim those, that had revolted unto the *Romans*, were it only by the memory of such ill success, as the like rebellions in former times had found. Here to may be added the *Carthaginian* Treasure: which easily raised Souldiers, among those valiant, but (in that Age) poor, and gold-thirsty Nations. Neither was it of small importance, that so many of the *Spaniards* had their children, kinsmen, and friends, abroad with *Hannibal* in his Italian Wars; or serving the *Carthaginians* in *Africk*. And peradventure, if we durst be bold to say it, the victories of the *Scipios* were neither so many, nor so great, as they are set out by *Livie*. This we may be bold to say, that the great Captain *Fabius*, of *Livie* in his person, maketh an objection unto *Scipio*, which neither *Scipio*, nor *Livie* for him, doth

doth answer, That if Asdrubal were vanquished, as Scipio would say, by him in Spain, strange it was, and as little to his honour, as it had been extremely dangerous to Rome, if the same vanquished man should invade Italy. And it is indeed an incredible narration, That Asdrubal, being enclosed on all sides, and not knowing how to escape out of the straits, save only by the steep descent of Rocks, over a great River that lay, at his back, ran away with all his money, Elephants, and broken troops, over *Jagus*, directly towards the *Pyrenees*, and so toward Italy, upon which he fell with more than three score thousand armed Soldiers. Neither do I see, how it hangs well together, That he chose a piece of ground very defensible, but most incommodious for his retreat, if he should happen to be vanquished; and yet, that he sent all his money and Elephants away before him, as not intending to abide the enemy: Or how it could be true, that these Elephants, being so sent before, could hinder the Romans (for so have they said to have done in the last battell between him and Scipio) from breaking into his Camp. Wherefore we can no more than be sorry, that all *Carthaginian* records of this War, and Spanish, (if there were any) being utterly lost, we can know no more thereof, than what hath pleased the Romans to tell us: unto whom it were no wildome to give too much credit. In this regard, I will summarily run over the doings of the Scipio's in Spain, not greatly insisting on particulars, whereof there is no great certainty.

Cn. Cornelius landed at *Emporia*, an Haven town, not far within the *Pyrenees*, retaining still the same name with little inflexion. That by the fame of his clemency he won many Nations to become subject unto Rome, as the story begins of him, I could easily believe, if I understood by what occasion they had need to use his clemency: he to give such famous example thereof, being a meer stranger, and having no jurisdiction in the Country. Yet it is certain, that he was a man very courteous, and one that could well insinuate himself into the love of the *Barbarians*; among whom, his dexterity in practice had the better success, for that he seemed to have none other errand, than setting them at liberty. This pretext availed with some: others were to be hired with money: and some he compelled to yield by force or fear; especially when he had won a battail against *Hanno*. Into all Treaties of accord, made with these people, likely it is, that he remembered to insert this Article, which the Romans in their Alliances never forgoe, unless in long times past, and when they dealt with the *Carthaginians*, of their Superiors; *Majestatem Pop. Rom. comiter conservent*, which is, as *Tullie* interprets it, That they should gently (or kindly) uphold the Majesty of the People of Rome. This was in appearance nothing troublesome: yet implied it indeed an oblique covenant of subjection. And in this respect it may be true, That the Spaniards became *ditionis Romanæ*, of the Roman jurisdiction; though hereafter they will say, they had no such meaning. That part of the Country wherein Scipio landed, was newly subdued by *Hannibal* in his passage toward Italy; and therefore the more easily shaken out of obedience. Particularly in the *Barguntians*; *Hannibal* had found at his coming among them such an apprehension of the Roman greatness, as made him suspect, that any light occasion would make them start from the *Carthaginians*. Wherefore he not only appointed *Hanno* Governour over them, as over the rest of the Province between *Iberus* and the *Pyrenees*, but made him also their Lord; that is, (as I conceive it; for I do not think he gave the Principality of their Country unto *Hanno* and his Heirs,) He made him not only Lieutenant-generall over them, in matters of War, and things concerning the holding them in obedience to *Carthage*; but took from them all inferior Officers of their own, leaving them to be governed by *Hanno* at his discretion. These therefore had good cause to rejoyce at the coming of Scipio: with whom, others also (no doubt) found reasons to joyn; it being the custome of all conquered Nations in hatred of their present Lords, to throw themselves indiscreetly into the protection of others, that many times prove worse than the former. So were the *Neapolitans*, and *Milanens*, in the age of our Grand-fathers, weary by turns of the Spaniards and French; as more sensible still of the present evil which they felt, then regardfull of the greater mischief, whereinto they ran by seeking to avoid it. This bad affection of this Province, would not suffer *Hanno* to temporize. Ten thousand foot, and a thousand horse, *Hannibal* had left unto him: besides which, it is like, that some forces he was able to raise out of his Province. Therefore he adventured a battail with Scipio, wherein he was overthrown and taken. Following this victory, Scipio besieged *Stisum*, a town hard by, and won it,

it. But Asdrubal having passed *Iberus*, and coming too late to the relief of *Hanno*, with eight thousand foot, and a thousand horse, fell upon the Roman Sea-forces, that lay not far from *Tarracon*, whom he found careless, as after a victory, roaving abroad in the country; and with great slaughter drave them aboard their ships. This done, he ran up into the Country, where he withdrew the *Ilergetes* from the Roman party, though they had given hostages to Scipio. Scipio in the mean season was gone to visit and aide his Fleet: where having set things in order, he returned back, and made toward Asdrubal, who durst not abide his coming, but withdrew himself again over *Iberus*. So the *Ilergetes* were compelled by force; having lost *Athanasia* their chief City, to pay a fine to the Romans, and increase the number of their hostages. The *Antistiani* likewise, Confederates of the *Carthaginians*, were besieged in their chief Town: which they defended thirty dayes; hoping, in vain, that the sharp Winter, and great abundance of Snow that fell, would have made the Romans to dislodge. But they were slain at length to yeeld: and for this their obstinacy, they were amerced twenty talents of silver. During the siege, the *Lactani* came to help their distressed Neighbours, and were beaten home by Scipio, leaving twelve thousand of their Company dead behind them. I cannot but wonder, how these *Lactani*, that are said to be the first which embraced the friendship of Scipio, should, without any cause remembered, become *Carthaginians* on the sudden, in the next newes that we hear of them. As also it is strange, that all the Sea-coast Northward of *Iberus*, having lately become voluntarily *ditionis Romanæ*, should, in continuance of the Story, after a few lines, hold War against Scipio, without any resistance of the *Carthaginians*. Neither can I believe, that Asdrubal, as it were by a charme, stirred up the *Ilergetes*, making them lay aside all care of their hostages, and take Armes in his quarrell; whilst himself had not the daring to stand against Scipio, but ran away, and saved himself beyond *Iberus*. *Philinus* perhaps, or some *Carthaginian* Writer, would have told it thus: That Scipio adventuring too far into the Country, was beaten by Asdrubal back to his ships, whence he durst not stir, untill Winter came on: at what time the *Carthaginian* returned into the heart of his Province, leaving some few Garrisons to defend those places, that after Scipio won, by returning upon them, unlooked for through a deep snow. As for the *Lactani*, *Ilergetes*, and the rest, we may reasonably think, that they fought their own benefit: helping themselves one while by the Romans against the *Carthaginians*; and contrariwise, upon sense of injuries received, or apprehension of more grievous tyranny, under which they feared to be brought by these new Masters, hearkening again unto the comfortable promises of those, that had ruled them before. For that it was their intent to live under their own Country Lawes, and not under Governours sent from Rome or *Carthage*, their demeanour in all Ages following may testify: even from henceforth unto the dayes of *Augustus Caesar*, till when they were never throughly conquered.

The year following this, Cn. Scipio had a victory against the *Carthaginians* in fight at *Sea*; or rather came upon them unlooked for, while they rode at Anchor, moit of their men being on shore. All their ships, that ran not too farre on ground, he took: and thereby grew Master of the whole coast; landing at pleasure, and doing great hurt in all places that were not well defended. After this victory, above one hundred and twenty Nations, or petty Estates in Spain, are said to have submitted themselves unto the Romans, or given hostages: whereby Asdrubal was compelled to flye into the utmost corners of the land, and hide himself in *Lucitania*. Yet it follows, that the *Ilergetes* did again rebell; that Asdrubal hereupon came over *Iberus*; and that Scipio (though having easily vanquished the *Ilergetes*) went not forth to meet him, but stirred up against him the *Celiberians*, that lately were become his subjects, and had given him hostages. These took from the *Carthaginian* three Towns, and vanquished him in two battails; where in they flew fifteen thousand of his men, and took four thousand prisoners. Then arrived P. Scipio, with the supply before mentioned: and hence forward the two brethren joyntly administrated the business in Spain.

The *Carthaginians* being occupied in the *Celiberian* Warre; the two Scipio's did hand overhand, without both fear or doubt, passe over *Iberus*, and besieged *Saguntum*. Little cause of doubt had they, if Cn. had already subdued many Nations beyond it, and among many others, the same *Celiberians*, that with their proper forces were able to vanquish Asdrubal.

*Asdrubal*, *Bostar*, the Governor of *Saguntum*, a simple man, suffered himself to be persuaded by one *Acedux* a *Spaniard*, that the only way to get the favour and hearty good will of the country, was by freely restoring unto them their hostages; as resting without any pledge, assured of their faith. But the crafty *Spaniard*, being trusted with this message and restitution of the hostages, carried them all to the *Roman* Generals: persuading them, as he had done *Bostar*, to make the Liberality their own. Hereby the *Romans* purchased much love, if the tale were true; and if it were not rather true, as afterward, and ere this we finde that all the *Spanish* Hostages were left in new *Carthage*. I am weary of rehearsing so many particularities, whereof I can believe so few. But since we find no better certainties, we must content our selves with these.

The year following was like unto this: *Asdrubal* must be beaten again. The two *Scipio's* divide their forces: *Cn.* makes war by Land, *P.* by Sea. *Asdrubal*, with much labour and entreaty, hath gotten four thousand foot, and five hundred horse out of *Africk*: He repairs his Fleet, and provides every way to make resistance. But all his chief Sea-men, and Masters of his Ships, revolt unto the *Romans*: because they had been chidden the last year for their negligence, which had betrayed the Navie. Thereof these ship-masters animates to rebellion the *Carpetians*, or *Carpetani*, an In-land people about *Toledo*, in the very Center of *Spain*. These do much mischief, so that *Asdrubal* is faine to make a journey to them. His sudden coming cuts off some of them, that were found scattered abroad in the fields. But they, making head, go valiantly against him, that they drive him for very fear, to encamp himself strongly on an high piece of ground; whence he dares not come forth to give them battail. So they take Town by force, wherein he had laid up all his provisions; and shortly make themselves Masters of the Country round about. This good success breeds negligence; for which they dearly pay. *Asdrubal* comes upon them, takes them unprepared, beats them, kills the most of them, and dispereth the rest; so that the whole Nation yeeldeth to him the next day. Then come directions from *Carthage*, that *Asdrubal* should lead his Army forth into *Italy*, which we may wonder, why the *Carthaginians* would appoint him to do, if they had been informed by his letters in what hard case he was; and had so weakly supplied him, as is shewed before. But thus we find it reported: and that upon the very rumour of this his journey, almost all *Spain* was ready to fall to the *Romans*. *Asdrubal* therefore sends word presently to *Carthage*, That this must not be so; or if they will needs have it so, that then they must send him a successor, and well attended with a strong Army, which to employ they should finde work more than enough; such notable men were the *Roman* Generals. But the Senate of *Carthage* is not much moved with this excuse; *Asdrubal* must needs be gone: *Himilco*, with such forces as are thought expedient for that service, both by land and sea, is sent to take the charge of *Spain*. Wherefore *Asdrubal* hath now no more to do, than to furnish himself with store of money, that he might have wherewithall to win the friendship of the *Gauls*; through whole Countries he must passe, as *Hannibal* had done before him. The *Carthaginians* were greatly to blame, for not remembering to ease him of his care. But since it can be no better, he layes great Impositions upon all the *Spaniards* his subjects: and having gotten together as much treasure as he could, onward he marcheth toward *Iberus*. The *Scipio's* hearing these newes, are careful how to arrest him on the way. They besiege *Hera* (so called of the Rivers name running by it) the richest town in all those quarters, that was confederate with *Asdrubal*: who thereupon steps aside to relieve it. The *Romans* meet him and fight a battell with him: which they win the more easily, for that the *Spaniards*, his followers, had rather be vanquished at home, than get the victory, & afterwards be haled into *Italy*. Great numbers are slain: and few should have escaped, but that the *Spaniards* ran away ere the battails were fully joyned. Their Campe so the *Romans* take and spoil: whereby (questionlesse) they are marvellously enriched; all the money that could be raked together in *Spain* being carried along in this Italian expedition. This dayes event joynes all *Spain* to the *Romans*, if any part of the Country stood in doubt before, and puts *Asdrubal* so far from all thought of travelling into *Italy*, that it leaves him small hope of keeping himself safe in *Spain*. Of these exploits advertisements is sent to *Rome*, and Letters to the Senate, from *P.* and *Cn. Scipio*, whereof the Contents are; That they have neither money, apparell, nor bread, wherewith to sustain their Army and Fleet; That all is wanting: so as unlesse they may be supplied from

*Rome*, they can neither hold their forces together, nor tarry any longer in the Province. These Letters come to *Rome* in an evil season; the State being scarcely able, after the losse at *Cannæ*, to help it self at home. Yet relief is sent: how hardly, and how much to the commendations of that love and care, which the private Citizens of *Rome* bare unto the Common-wealth, shall be inserted elswhere, into the relation of things whereof the truth is less questionable. At the coming of this supply, the two *Scipio's* pursue *Asdrubal*, and hunt him out of his lurking holes. What else can we think, that remember the last newes of him, and how fearfully he mistrusted his own safety? They find him, and *Mago* and *Amilcar* the son of *Bomilcar*, with an Army of threecore thousand men, besieging *Illiturgi*: (which the learned *Orellius*, and others, probably conjecture to have stood, where *Carinena* is now in the Kingdome of *Aragon*; for there was *Illiturgi*, afterwards called *Forum Julii*, quite another way) a Town of the *Ilergetes*, their nearest Neighbour, for having revolted unto the *Romans*. The town is greatly distressed; but most of all, for want of victuals. The *Romans* therefore brake through between the Enemies Camps, with terrible slaughter of all that resist them: and having victualled the place, encourage the town-men to defend their walls as stoutly, as they should anon behold them fighting manfully with the besiegers, in their behalf. So they issue forth, about sixteen thousand against threecore thousand: and killing more of the enemies, than themselves were in number, drave all the three *Carthaginian* Commanders, every one out of his quarter; and took that day, besides prisoners and other booty, fifty and eight Ensignes.

The *Carthaginian* Army, being thus beaten from *Illiturgi*, fall upon *Incibilis*, that stood a little Southward from the mouth of *Iberus*. The *Spaniards* are blamed, as too greedy of earning money by war, for thus re-inforcing the broken *Carthaginians*. But it may be wondered, whence the *Carthaginians* had money to pay them: since *Asdrubal* was lately driven to poll the Country, wanting money of his own; and being beaten in his journey, had lost his wealthy carriages, when his Camp was taken after the battell by *Ibera*. Howsoever it happens, the *Carthaginians* (according to their custome) are beaten again at *Incibilis*: where there were of them above thirteen thousand slain, and above three thousand taken; besides two and forty Ensigns, and nine Elephants. After this, (in a manner) all the people of *Spain* fell from them unto the *Romans*. Thus could *Fabius*, *Valerius*, *Antius*, or some other Historian, to whom *Livie* gave credit, conquer all *Spain* twice in one year, by winning famous victories; whereof these good Captains, *P.* and *Cn. Scipio*, perhaps were not aware.

The *Romans* notwithstanding this large access of Dominion, winter on their own side of *Iberus*. In the beginning of the next year, great Armies of the *Spaniards* rise against *Asdrubal*; and are overthrowen by him. *P. Scipio*, to help these his friends, is forced to make great haste over the River. At *Castrum Alinum*, a place in the midway between new *Carthage* and *Saguntum*, famous by the death of the great *Amilcar*, *Publius Scipio* incampeth: and stores the place with victuals, being strong and defensible; as intending to make it his seat for a while. But the Country round about is too full of Enemies: the *Carthaginian* horse have charged the *Romans* in their march, and are gone off clear; falling also upon some stragglers, or such as lagged behind their fellows in march, they have cut off two thousand of them. Hereupon it is thought behoofull, to retire unto some place more assured. So *Publ.* withdraws himself unto *Mons victoria*: that rising somewhat Eastward from *Incibilis*, overlooketh the Southerne Out-let of *Iberus*. Thither the *Carthaginians* pursue him: His brother *Cn.* repairs unto him; and *Asdrubal* the son of *Gesco*, with a full Army, arrives to help his Companions. As they lie thus near incamp together, *P. Scipio* with some light-armed, going closely to view the places thereabouts, is discovered by the enemies: who are like to take him, but that he withdraws himself to an high piece of ground; where they besiege him, untill his brother *Cn.* fetch him off. After this (but I know not why) *Castulo*, a great city of *Spain*, whence *Hannibal* had taken him a wife, joyneth with the *Romans*; though being farre distant from them, and seated on the head of the River *Bætis*. Nevertheless the *Carthaginians* passe over *Iberus*, to besiege *Illiturgi* again, wherein lodgeth a *Roman* garrison; hoping to win it by famine. We may justly wonder, what should move them to neglect the rebellion of *Castulo*, yea and the *Roman* Army lying so close by them, and to seek adventures further off, in that very place, wherein they had been so grievously beaten



the year before. But thither they goe: and thither follows them *Cn. Scipio* with one Legion: who enters the Town by force, breaks out upon them the next day, and in two battels kills above twelve thousand, and takes more than a thousand of them prisoners, with six and thirty Ensigns. This victory (doubtlesse) is remarkable: considering that the greatest *Roman* Legion at this time, consisted of no more than five thousand men. The vanquished *Carthaginians* besiege *Bigarra*: but that siege is also raised by *Cn. Scipio*. Thence the *Carthaginians* remove to *Manda*; where the *Romans* are soon at their heels. There is a great battail fought, that lasteth four hours, wherein the *Romans* get a notable victory; and a more notable would have gotten, had not *Cn. Scipio* been wounded. Thirty nine Elephants are killed, and twelve thousand men; three thousand prisoners taken, and seven and fifty Ensigns. The *Carthaginians* flee to *Auginges*; and the *Romans* pursue them. *Cn. Scipio* in a Litter is carryed into the field, and vanquished the *Carthaginians* again: but kills not half so many of them, as before, good cause why, for there are fewer of them left to fight. Notwithstanding all these overthrowes, the *Spaniards*, a people framed even by nature to let war on foot, quickly fill up the broken troupes of *Asdrubal*, who having also hired some of the *Gauls*, adventures once more to try his fortune with the *Romans*. But he is beaten again: and loseth eight thousand of his men, besides Prisoners, Elephants, Ensignes, and other appurtenances. After so many victories, the *Romans* are even ashamed to leave *Saguntum* enthralled unto the *Carthaginians*, since, in behalf of that City, they had at first endured into this war. And well may we think it strange, that they had not recovered it long before, since we may remember, that long before this they had won all the Country once and again. But it must not be forgotten, that they had ere now besieged *Saguntum*; and were faine (as appears) to go their way without it: so as they need not to blush, for having so long forbore to do that, which ere now they had attempted, but were unable to performe. At the present they won *Saguntum*: and restored the possession thereof unto such of the poor dispersed Citizens, as they can finde out. They also waste and destroy the Country of the *Turdetani*, that had ministered unto *Hannibal* matter of quarrel against the *Saguntines*. This last action (questionlesse) was much to their honour; and wherein we may be assured, that the *Carthaginians* would have disturbed so them if they had been able.

But overlooking now this long continuance of great victories, which the *Romans* have gotten in *Spain*, other print or token of all their brave exploits, we can perceive none, than this recovery of *Saguntum*: excepting the stopping of *Asdrubal's* journey, which was indeed of greatest importance, but appertaining to their own defence. For they have landed at *Emporia*, an Haven town, built and peopled by a Colony of the *Phoenicians*, kin to the *Masilians*, friends to the *Romans*; They have easily wome to their party, lost, recovered, and lost again, some petty bordering Nations of the *Spaniards*, that are carried one while by perswasion, other-whiles by force, and sometimes by their own unheld passions; and now finally they have won a Town, whereof the *Carthaginians* held intire possession, who had rooted out the old inhabitants. Wherefore we may easily beleve, that when they took *Saguntum* (if they took it not by surprise, which is to be suspected, since in this Action we finde no particulars remembered, as when the same place was taken by *Hannibal*) they had gotten the better of their Enemies in some notable fight. In like sort also must we think, that all those battails lately remembered, after every one of which *Asdrubal* fate down before some place, that had rebelled, or seemed ready to rebel, were prosperous unto the *Carthaginians*. For it is not the custome of Armies vanquished, to carry the war from Town to Town, and beleaguer Cities of their Enemies; but to fortifie themselves within their own places of strength, and therein to attend the levy and arrivall of new supplies. And surely, if the *Romans* had been absolute Masters of the field, when they won *Saguntum*, they would not have consumed a whole year following, in practising only with the *Celiberians* the next adjoining people. Yet made they this, little lesse than two years business. Of these *Celiberians* we hear before, That they have yielded up themselves unto the *Romans*; for security of their faith, given Hostages to *Scipio*; and, at his appointment, made warre against the *Carthaginians*, with their proper forces. Wherefore it is strange, that they are now thus hardly wrought; and not without expresse condition of a great summe, hired to serve in the *Roman* camp. How this may hold together I cannot perceive;

Liv. lib. 14.

perceive; unless perhaps in those daies it were the *Roman* custome, or rather the custome of some bad Author whom *Livie* followes, to call every messenger, or straggler, that enters their camp, an Hostage of that people from whom he came.

The *Celiberians* at length, hired with great rewards, send an Army of thirty thousand to help the *Romans*: out of which, three hundred the fittest men are chosen, and carryed into *Italy*, there to deal with their Countrymen that follow *Hannibal* in his years. But if any of these three hundred return back into *Spain*, it is to be feared, that he brings with him such newes of the riches and welfare of *Hannibal's* men, that all his fellows at home are the less unwilling to follow *Asdrubal*, when he shall next have a desire to lead them into *Italy*. Hereof we finde more than probability, when these mercenary *Celiberians* meet the *Carthaginian* Army in the field. The two *Scipio's*, presuming on this access of strength, divide their forces; and seek out the Enemies, who is not far off with three Armies. *Asdrubal* the sonne of *Amilcar*, is nearest at hand; even among the *Celiberians*, at *Antorgis*. With him *Cn. Scipio* doubts not to take good order: but the fear is, that this one part of the *Carthaginian* forces being destroyed, *Mago* the son of *Gefeo*, fearing the newes, will make use of their distance, which is five dayes march, and, by running into the furthest parts of the Country, save themselves from being overtaken. *Publius* therefore must make the more haste, and take with him the better souldiers, that is, two parts of the old *Roman* Army, leaving the third part, and all the *Celiberians*, to his brother. He that hath the longer journey to make, comes somewhat the sooner to his lives end, *Mago*, and *Asdrubal* the son of *Gefeo*, are not studying how to run away: they finde no such necessity. They joyne their forces together; meet with *Publius Scipio*; and lay at him so hardly, that hee is driven to keep himself close within his Trenches: wherein he thinks himself not well assured. Especially he is vexed by *Masaniassa*, Prince of the *Masseyli*, *Numidians*, bordering upon *Mauritania*, in the Region called now *Tremis*: to whom the chief honour of this service is ascribed, for that he becomes afterward, Confederate with the *Romans*. In this dangerous case, *P. Scipio* gets intelligence, that *Indibilis* a Spanish Prince, is coming with seven thousand and five hundred of the *Sussetani*, to joyn with his Enemies. Fearing therefore to be straight shut up, and besieged, he issues forth by night, to meet with *Indibilis* upon the way, leaving *T. Pontius* his Lieytenant, with a small company to defend the camp. He meets with *Indibilis*, but is not able, according to his hope, to defeat him at the first encounter. The fight continues so long, that the *Numidian* horse appear (whom he thought to have been ignorant of his departure) and fall upon the *Romans* on all sides: neither are the *Carthaginians* far behinde; but come so fast upon him in Rear, that *P. Scipio*, uncertain which way to turne, yet fighting and animating his men, where need most requieth, is struck through with a lance, and slain: very few of his Army escaping the same destiny, through benefit of the dark night. The like end hath *Cn. Scipio* within nine and twenty dayes after. At his meeting with *Asdrubal*, the *Celiberian* Mercenaries all forsake him; pretending that they had war in their owne Country. At *Antorgis*, where *Asdrubal* then lay, were, as *Orellius* following *Buterius* takes it, a *Celiberian* town; this was no vain pretence, but an apparent truth. But we may justly beleve, that they were won by *Asdrubal*, and easily perswaded to take as much money for not fighting, as they should have had for mazzarding their lives. *Cn. Scipio* therefore being unable to stay them, and no less unable, without their help, either to resist the enemy, or to joyn with his brother, maketh a very violent retreat, herein only differing from plain flight, that he keeps his men together. *Asdrubal* presseth hard upon him: and *Mago*, with *Asdrubal* the sonne of *Gefeo*, having made an end of *Publius*, hasten to dispatch his brother after him. *Scipio* steals from them all by night, but is overtaken the next day by their horse, and arrested, in an open place of hard stony ground, where growes not so much as a shrub, unfit for defence of his Legions against such enemies. Yet a little Hill he findes of easie ascent on every side; which he takes for want of a more commodious place, and fortifies with pack-saddles, and other luggage, for default of a better Palliade. These weak defences the *Carthaginians* soon tear in sunder: and, breaking in on all hands, leave very few of them alive; that saving themselves, I know not how, within some woods adjoining, escape unto *T. Pontius*, whom *Publius* had left in his camp, as is before said. It is a terrible overthrow, they say, out of which no man escapes. Yet, how they that were thus hemmed in on

B b b b b 2

every



every side, in so bare a ground as afforded not a shrub to cover them, could break out, and shrowd themselves within woods adjoining, I should much wonder, did not a greater miracle following call away mine attention. *T. Fonteius* is in *P. Scipio's* camp, on the North side of *Iberus*, fearfull (as may be supposed) of his own life; since his General, with two parts of the *Roman* Army, had little hope to remain long safe within it. Thither comes *L. Martius*, a young *Roman* Gentleman of a notable spirit: who having gathered together the scattered Souldiers, and drawn some Companies out of their Garrisons, makes a pretty Army. The Souldiers, being to chuse a General by most voices, prefer this *L. Martius* before *Fonteius* the Lieutenant, as well they may. For *Asdrubal*, the sonne of *Gisco*, coming upon them; this *L. Martius* so encourageth his men, (boldly weeping when he led them forth, upon remembrance of their more honourable Generals lately slain) and admonisheth them of their present necessity, that he beat the *Carthaginians* into their Trenches. A notable victory perhaps he might have gotten, but that he wisely sounds the retreat, reserving the fury of his Souldiers to a greater occasion. The *Carthaginians* are at first amazed, and wonder whence this new boldness growes; in enemies lately vanquished, and now again little better than taken: but when they see, that the *Roman* dares not follow his advantage, they returne to their former security; and utterly despising him, let neither Corps de garde nor Sentinell, but rest secure, as if no enemy were near. *Martius* therefore animates his Souldiers with lively words; and tels them, That there is no adventure more safe, than that which is free from suspicion of being undertaken. They are soon perswaded to follow him, in any desperate piece of service. So he leads them forth by night, and steals upon the Camp of *Asdrubal*: where finding no guard, but the enemies fast asleep, or very drowsie, He enters without resistance, fires their Cablines, and gives a terrible alarm; so that all affrighted the *Carthaginians* runne head-long one upon another, they know not which way. All passages out of their Camp, *Martius* hath preposseled, so that there is no way to escape, save by leaping down the Rampart: which as many do, as can think upon it, and run away toward the Camp of *Asdrubal* the sonne of *Amilcar*, that lay six miles off. But *Martius* hath way-laid them. In a Valley between their two camps he hath beset a *Roman* cohort, and I know not what number of Horse; so that into this Ambush they fall every one, and are cut in pieces. But lest perchance any should have escaped, and give the alarm before his coming; *Martius* hastens to be there as soon as they. By which diligent speed, He comes early in the morning upon this further camp: which with no great difficulty he enters, and partly by apprehension of danger which the Enemies conceived, when they beheld the *Roman* shields, soule, and obscured with their former execution, He drives head-long into flight, all that can save themselves from the fury of the sword. Thirty seven thousand of the enemies perish in this nights work; besides a thousand eight hundred and thirty taken prisoners. Hereunto *Valerius Antius* adds, that the camp of *Mago* was also taken, and seven thousand slain: and that in another battail with *Asdrubal*, there were slain ten thousand more; besides four thousand three hundred and thirty taken prisoners. Such is the power of some Historians. *Livie* therefore hath elsewhere well observed, That there is none so intemperate, as *Valerius Antius*, in multiplying the numbers that have fallen in battails. That, whilst *Martius* was making an Oration to his Souldiers, a flame of fire shone about his head, *Livie* reporteth as a common tale, notwithstanding thereto any credit: and temperately concludeth, That this Captain *Martius* got a great name; which he might well doe, if with so small forces, and in such distress, He could clearly get off from the Enemies, and give them any passing blow, though it were far less than that which is here set down.

Of these occurrences *L. Martius* sent word to *Rome*, not forgetting his own good service, whatsoever it was, but setting it out in such wise, as the Senate might judge him worthy to hold the place of their Vice-gerent in *Spain*: which the better to intimate unto them, He styled himself Propretor. The Fathers were no less moved with the tidings than the case required: and therefore took such careful order, for supplying their forces in *Spain*, that although *Hannibal* came to the gates of *Rome*, ere the companies levied to serve that Province, could be sent away; yet could they not stay a tide for defence of the City it self, but shipped them in all haste for *Spain*. As for the title of Propretor, which *Martius* had assumed, they thought it too great for him, and were offended

offended at his presumption in usurping it: foreseeing well, that it was a matter of ill consequence, to have the Souldiers abroad make choice, among themselves, of those that should command Armies and Provinces. Therefore *C. Claudius Nero* was dispatched away, with all convenient haste, into *Spain*: carrying with him about six thousand of the *Roman* foot, and as many of the *Latines*, with three hundred *Roman* horse, and of the *Latines* eight hundred.

It happened well, that about these times, the affairs of *Rome* began to prosper in *Italy*, and afforded means of sending abroad such a strong supply: otherwise the victories of *Martius* would ill have served, either to keep footing in *Spain*, or to stop the *Carthaginian* Armies from marching towards the *Alpes*. For when *Claudius*, landing with his new forces, took charge of that remainder of the Army, which was under *Martius* and *Fonteius*; he found surer tokens of the overthrowes received, than of those miraculous victories, whereof *Martius* had made his vaunts unto the Senate. The *Roman* party was forsaken by most of the *Spanish* friends: whom how to reclaim, it would not easily be devised. Yet *Claudius* advanced boldly towards *Asdrubal* the brother of *Hannibal*: whom he found among the *Ausetani*, near enough at hand, incamped in a place called *Isapides arri*, out of which there was no issue, but only through a straight; whereon the *Romans* seized at his first coming. What should have tempted any man of understanding to incamp in such a place, I do not find: and as little reason can I find in that which followed. For it is said, That *Asdrubal*, seeing himself thus lockt up, made offer to depart forthwith out of all *Spain*, and quit the Province to the *Spaniards*; upon condition that he and his Army might be thence dismissed. That he spent many dayes, in entertaining parley with *Claudius* about this business; That night by night he conveyed his footmen (a few at a time) through very difficult passages, out of the danger; and that finally taking advantage of a misty day, He stole away with all his Horse and Elephants, leaving his Camp empty. If we consider, that there were at the same time besides this *Asdrubal*, two other *Carthaginian* Generals in *Spain*; we shall find no less cause to wonder at the simplicity of *Claudius*, who hoped to conclude a bargain for so great a Country, with one of these three Chieftains, than at the strange nature of those passages, through which the footmen could hardly creep our by night, the Horse and Elephants easily following them in a dark misty day. Wherefore in giving belief to such a tale, it is needfull that we suppose, both the danger wherein the *Carthaginians* were, and the conditions offered for their safe departure, to have been of far less value. Howsoever it was; neither this, nor ought else the *Romans* could do; served to purchase any new friends in *Spain*, or to recover the old, which they had lost. Like enough was, that the old Souldiers, which had chosen *Martius* their Propretor, took it not well, that the Senate, regardless of their good deserts, had repeated their election, and chose a Propretor whom they fancied not so well. Some such occasion may have moved them to desire a Proconsul (and perhaps young *Scipio* by name, as if a title of greater dignity were needfull to work regard in the *Barbarians*), and the beloved manny of *Ono* and *Asinius* likely to do good, were revived in one of the same family. Whether upon these, or upon other reasons, *C. Claudius* was recalled out of the Province; and *Publius* the son of *P. Scipio* sent Proconsul into *Spain*. He was a man of goodly presence, and singularly well conditioned: especially he excelled in Temperance, Gravity, Bounty, and other virtues that purchase love; of which qualities what great use he made, shall appear in the remembrance of his Actions following. As for those things that are reported of him, favouring a little too much of the great *Alexanders* vanity; how he used to walk alone in the Capitoll, as one that had some secret conference with *Jupiter*; how a Dragon (which must have been one of the gods, and in likelihood, *Jupiter* himself) was thought to have conversed with his Mother, entering her Chamber often, and vanishing away at the coming in of any man; and how of these matters he was filled the humour, by doubtful answers; I hold them no better than fables, devised by Historians, who thought thereby to add unto the glory of *Rome*: that this noble City might seem, not only to have surpassed other Nations in virtue, of the generality, but also in great worth of one single man. To this end nothing is left out, that might serve to adorne this *Roman* Champion. For it is confidently written, as many

of unquestionable truth, That when a Proconsul was to be chosen for *Spain*, there durst not any Captain of the principall Citizens offer himself as Petitioner for that honourable, but dangerous charge; That the people of *Rome* were much astonished thereat; That when the day of Election came, all the Princes of the City stood looking one another in the face, not one of them having the heart to adventure himself in such a desperate service; and finally, that this *P. Cornelius Scipio*, being then about four and twenty years of age, getting up on an high place where he might be seen of all the multitude, requested and obtained, that the office might be conferred upon him. If this were true, then were all the victories of *L. Martius* no better than dreams: and either very unreasonable was the fear of all the *Roman* Captains, who durst not follow *Clodius Nere*, that not long before was gone into *Spain* Propretor; or very bad intelligence they had out of the Province, which *Asdrubal* the *Carthaginian*, as we heard even now, was ready to abandon. But upon these incoherencies, which I find in the too partial *Roman* Historians, I do not willingly insist.

*P. Scipio* was sent Proconsul into *Spain*, & with him was joyned *M. Junius Silanus*, as Propretor, and his Coadjutor. They carried with them ten thousand foot, and a thousand horse, in thirty *Quingentene* Gallies. With these they landed at *Emporia*, and marched from thence to *Tarracon* along the Sea-coast. At the same of *Scipio's* arrival, it is said, that Embassages came to him apace from all quarters of the Province: which he entertained with such a majesty, as bred a wonderfull opinion of him. As for the enemies, they were greatly afraid of him: and so much the greater was their fear, by how much the lesse they could give any reason of it. If we must believe this, then must we needs believe, that their fear was even as great as could be: for very little cause there was, to be terrified with the fame of so young a man, which had as yet performed nothing. All the Winter following (or, as some think, all the next year) he did nothing: but spent the time perhaps, as his foregoers had done, in treating with the *Spaniards*. His first enterprize was against new *Carthage*: upon which he came unexpected, with five and twenty thousand foot, and two thousand five hundred horse; his Sea-forces encompassing him, and moderating their course in such wise, that they arrived there together with him: He assailed the Town by Land and Sea; and won it by assault the 30 first day. The *Carthaginians* lost it, by their too much confidence upon the strength of it, which caused them to make it more slenderly, than was requisite. Yet it might have been well enough defended, if some Fisher-men of *Tarracon* had not discovered unto *Scipio*, a secret passage unto the wals; whereof the Townsmen themselves were either ignorant, or thought (at least) that their enemies could have no notice. This City of new *Carthage*, resembled the old and great *Carthage* in situation; standing upon a desmy-Iland, between an Haven and a great Lake. All the Western side of the wals, and somewhat of the North, was fenced with this Lake: which the Fisher-men of *Tarracon* had founded; and finding some part thereof a shelf, whereon at low-water men might passe knee-deep, or (at most) wading up to the Navill, *Scipio* thrust thereinto some companies of his men; who recovered the top of the wals without resistance: the place being left without guard; as able to defend it self by the naturall strength. These falling suddenly upon the backs of the *Carthaginians* within the City, easily forced a gate, and gave free entrance to the *Roman* Army. What booty was found within the Town, *Scipio* himself cannot certainly affirm; but is fain to say, That some *Roman* Historians told lies without measure, in way of amplification. By that small proportion of riches, which was afterward carried by *Scipio* into the *Roman* Treasury, we may easily perceive how great a fancy it was to say, That all the wealth of *Africa* and *Spain* was heaped up in that one Town. But therein were bestowed all the *Spanish* Hostages (for at least of the adjoining Provinces) whom *Scipio* intreated with singular courtesie; restoring them unto their kindred and friends, in such gracious manner, as doubled the thanks due to so great a benefic. Herupon a Prince of the *Celiberians*, and two petty Kings of the *Ilergetes* and *Lucetani*, nearest Neighbours to *Tarracon*, and dwelling on the North-side of *Iberus*, forsook the *Carthaginian* party, and joyned with the *Romans*. The speech of *Indibilis*, King of the *Ilergetes*, is much commended; for that he did not vaunt himself, as commonly ingivives use, of the pleasure, which he did unto the *Romans*, in revoluing from their enemies, but rather excused this his changing side, as being there-to compelled by injuries of the *Carthaginians*, and invited by the honourable dealing of

Scipio

*Scipio*. This temperate estimation of his new professed friendship, was indeed no unsure token, that it should be long-lasting. But if the *Ilergetes* had long ere this (as we have heard before) forsaken the *Carthaginian* party, and itouly held themselves as friends to *Scipio*: then could nothing have been devised more vain, than this Oration of *Indibilis* to their King; excusing, as new, his taking part with the same, when he should have rather craved pardon for his breach of alliance, formerly contracted with the Father and the Uncle. Most likely therefore it is, that howsoever the two elder *Scipio's* had gotten some few places among their Neighbours, and held them by strength, yet were the *Romans* never masters of the Country, till this worthy Commander, by recovering their Hostages from the *Carthaginians*, and by his great munificence in sending them home, won unto himself the assured love and assistance of these Princes. The *Carthaginian* Generals, when they heard of this losse, were very sorry: yet nevertheless they for a good face on the matter, saying, That a young man, having stoln a Town by surprise, was too far transported, and over-joyed, but that shortly they would meet with him, and put him in mind of his Father and Uncle; which would alter his mood, and bring him to a more convenient temper.

Now if I should here interpose mine own conjecture; I should be bold to say, That the *Carthaginians* were at this time busie, in setting forth towards *Italy*; and that *Scipio*, to divert them, undertook new *Carthage*, as his Father and Uncle, upon the like occasions, late down before *Ibera*. And in this respect I would suppose, that it had not been much amiss, if the passage over the Lake had been undiscovered, and the Town held out some longer while. For howsoever that particular Action was the more fortunate, in comming to such good issue upon the first day: yet in the generality of the business, between *Rome* and *Carthage*, it was more to be wished, that *Asdrubal* should be stayed from going into *Italy*, than that half of *Spain* should be taken from him. Whereas therefore he had nothing left to do, that should hinder his journey; *Mago*, and *Asdrubal*, the sonne of *Gese*, were thought sufficient to hold *Scipio* work, in that lingering War of taking and retaking Towns, whilst the main of the *Carthaginian* forces, under *Asdrubal*, the son of *Amilcar*, went to a greater enterprize: even to fight in tryall of the Empire. But the *Roman* Historians tell this after another fashion; and say, That *Asdrubal* was beaten into *Italy*: whether he ran for fear, as thinking himself ill assured of the *Spaniards*, as long as they might but hear the name of *Scipio*. *Scipio*, say they, comming upon *Asdrubal*, his Vant-curers charged so lustily the *Carthaginian* horie, that they drove them into their Trenches: and made it apparent, even by that small piece of service, how full of spirit the *Roman* Army was; and how dejected the Enemy. *Asdrubal* therefore by night retired out of that even ground, and occupied an Hill, compassed on three sides with the River, very steep of ascent, and not easie of access on the fore-side; by which himself got up, and was to be followed by the *Romans*. On the top of it there was a Plain, wherton he strongly encamped himself: and in the mid-way, between the top and root of the Hill, was also another Plain into which he descended, more upon a levity, that he might not seem to hide himself within the Trenches, than for that he durst adventure his Army to the hazzard of a battail, for which this was no equal ground. But such advantage of place could not save him from the *Romans*. They climbed up the Hill to him; they recovered even footing with him; drove him out of this lower Plain, up into his Camp on the Hill top: whether although the ascent were very difficult, and his Elephants bestowed in the smoothest places to hinder their approach; yet compassing about, and seeking passage where it was hardest to be found; but much more strongly breaking their way, where the *Carthaginians* had got up before them, they drove both men and Elephants head-long. I know not whether: for it is said, that there was no way to flye. Out of such a battell, wherein he had lost eight thousand men, *Asdrubal* is said to have escaped; and gathering together his dispersed troupes, to have marched toward the *Pyrenees*, having sent away his Elephants ere the fight began. Nevertheless, *Mago*, and *Asdrubal* the son of *Gese*, are reported after this to have consulted with him about this War; and finally to have concluded, that go he needs must, were it but to carry all the *Spaniards*; as far as might be, from the name of *Scipio*. How likely this was to have been true, it shall appear at his comming into *Italy*; whence these incoherent relations of the *Spanish* affairs have too long detained us.

The great troubles that Hannibal raised in all quarters, to the City of Rome. Posthumus the Roman General, with his whole Army, is slain by the Gauls. Philip King of Macedonia enters into a League with Hannibal, against the Romans. The Romans joining with the Aetolians, make war upon Philip in Greece: and afterwards conclude a peace with him, the better to intend their business against the Carthaginians.

WE left Hannibal wintering at Capua: where he and his new Confederates rejoiced (as may be thought) not a little, to hear the good news from Carthage of such mighty aide, as was decreed to be sent thence unto him. In former times he had found work enough, to carry the Romans corn into his own barns, and to drive away their Cattell to Geryon: his victories affording him little other profit, than sustenance for his Army, by making him master of the open field. He might perhaps have forced some walled towns in like sort as he did Geryon, and the Castle of Canna: but had he spent much time, about the getting of any one place well defended; the hunger, that his Army must have endured the Winter and Spring following, untill corn were ripe, would have grievously punished him for such employment of the Summer. This may have been the reason, why he forbore to adventure upon Rome, after his victory at Canna. For had he failed (as it was a matter of uncertainty) to carry the City at his first coming; want of victuals would have compelled him to quit the enterprise. Yea many of the people that opened so hastily their gates unto him, upon the fresh bruit of his glorious success would have taken time of deliberation, and waited perhaps the event of another battail; if being, either for want of means to force the City, or of necessities to continue a siege before it, repelled (as might seem) from the walls of Rome, he had presented himself unto them with a lessened reputation, somewhat later in the year, when time to force their obedience was wanting, unless they would freely yield it. But this great part of the care and travel was past, when so many States of Italy were become his the year following, the Samnites, and other old enemies of Rome, were like to receive a notable pleasure of their new alliance with Carthage, by helping to lay siege unto that proud City, which so long had held them in subjection. Thus the winter was passed over joyfully, saying that there came not any tidings of the preparations, to second the welcome report of those mighty forces, that were decreed and expected. The Spring grew on: and of the promised supply there arrived no more, than only the Elephants. How late it was ere these came, I finde not: onely we finde, that after this he had above thirty of them; whereas all, save one, that he brought over the Alpes, had been lost in his journey through the Marishes of Hetruria. Very bad excuse of this exceeding negligence, they that brought the Elephants could make unto Hannibal. If they were his friends, they told him truly, what mischiefs the perswasion of Hanno wrought among the too niggardly Carthaginians. Otherwise, they might perhaps informe him, that it was thought a safer, though a farther way about, to passe along through Spain and Gaul, as he himself had done; and increase the Army, by hyring the Barbarians in the journey; than to commit the main strength of their City, to the hazzard of the Seas: especially wanting a commodious Haven, to receive the Fleet that should carry such a number of Men, Horses, and Elephants, with all needfull provisions. With these allegations Hannibal must rest content; and seek, as well as he can, to satisfie his Italian Confederates. Therefore when time of the year served, he took the field: and having finished what rested to be done at Cassilinum, sought to make himself Master of some good Haven-town thereabout; that might serve to entertain the Carthaginian Fleet, or take from his Enemies at home all excuse, which they might pretend by want thereof. To the same purpose, and to do what else was needfull, he sent Himilco unto the Lucrains, and Hanno to the Lucans: not forgetting at once to assay all quarters of Italy, yea, the Isles of Sicily and Sardinia; since the siege of Rome must needs be deferred unto another year. Hanno made an ill journey of it, being met, or overtaken, by T. Sempronius Longus: who slew above two thousand of his men; with the loss of fewer than three hundred Romans. But Himilco sped far better. By help of the Brutians, his good friends, he won Petelia, or Petilia by force; after it had held out some months. He won likewise Cassientia, and Croton, that was forsaken by the Inhabitants. Also the City of Locri, which

was of great importance, yielded unto him: as did all other places thereabout; except only the Town of Rhegium, over against Sicily.

The great faith of the Petilians is worthy to be recorded, as a notable testimony of the good government, under which the Roman Subjects lived. As for the Samnites, Campanians and others, whose earnestnesse in rebellion may seem to prove the contrary; we are to consider, That they had lately contended with Rome for Sovereignty, and were now transported with ambition: which reason can hardly moderate, or benefit allay. The Petilians, in the very beginning of their danger, did send to Rome for help: where their messengers received answer from the Senate, That the publick misfortunes had not left means, to relieve their Associates that were so far distant. The Petilian Messengers (Embassadours they are termed; as were all others, publicly sent from Cities of the Roman Subjection, that had a private jurisdiction within themselves) fell down to the ground, and humbly besought the Fathers, not to give them away: promising to do and suffer whatsoever was possible, in defence of their Town, against the Carthaginians. Hereupon the Senate fell to consultation again: and having thoroughly considered all their forces remaining, plainly confessed, that it was not in their power to give any relief. Wherefore these Embassadours were willed to return home; and to bid their Citizens provide hereafter for their own safety, as having already discharged their faith to the utmost. All this notwithstanding, the Petilians (as was said) held out some months: and having striven in vain to defend themselves, when there was no apparent possibility gave to the Carthaginians a bloody victory over them; being vanquished as much by famine, as by any violence of the Assailants.

The Romans at this time were indeed in such ill case, that Hannibal with a little help from Carthage, might have reduced them unto terms of great extremity. For whereas, in a great bravery, before their loss at Canna, they had shewed their high minds; by entertaining the care of things far off, notwithstanding the great war that lay upon them so near at hand: it now fell out miserably all at once, that their fortune abroad was no whit better than at home. L. Posthumus Albinus their Praetor they had sent, with an Army of five and twenty thousand, into Gaul; to the Illyrian King Pinus they had sent for their tribute due, whereof the pay-day was past; willing him, if he desired subsistence, to deliver Hostages for his performance of what was due; and to Philip King of Macedon they had sent, to require, that he should deliver up unto them Demetrius Phourus their Subject and Rebel, whom he had received. But now from all quarters they hear tidings, little suitable to their former glorious contents. Posthumus with all his Army was cut in pieces by the Gauls, in such sort, that scarce ten men escaped. The manner of his overthrow was very strange. There was a great Wood, called by the Gauls, Luvum; through which he was to pass. Against his coming, the Enemies had felled the trees so far, that a little force would serve to cast them down. When therefore Posthumus, with his whole Army, was entred into this dangerous passage, the Gauls that lay about the wood, began to cast down the trees: which falling one against another, bore all down to fast; that the Romans were overwhelmed, Men and Horses, in such wise, that no more escaped, than is said before. How this tedious work of felling so many trees, could take desired effect, and neither be perceived, nor made frustrate, either by some winde, that might have blown all down before the Romans were tired, or by some other of those many accidents, whereto the device was subject; I do not well conceive. Yet some such thing may have been done: and what failed, in the straggle, supplied with the Enemies sword. It is not perhaps worthy to be omitted, as a monument of the savage condition, wherewith Lombardy, a Country now so Civil, was infected in elder times. That of Posthumus his skull, being cleaned and trimmed up with gold, a drinking cup was made; and consecrated in their principall Temple, as a holy vessel for the use of the Priest in their solemnities. Of this great overthrow, when word was brought to Rome, the amazement was no less than the calamity. But sorrow could give no remedy to the mischief: and anger was vain, where there wanted forces to revenge. Tribute from the Illyrians there came none: neither do I find, that any was a second time demanded; this we find, That with Pleuratus, and Scerdileus Illyrian Kings, as also with Gentius, who reigned within a few years following, the Romans dealt upon even termes, entreating their assistance against Philip and Perseus; not committing their duty, as Vassals. The Macedonian troubled them yet a little further, before

having assured his affairs in *Greece*, and enjoying leisure to look into the doings abroad, He sent Embassadors to *Hannibal*: with whom he made a league, upon these conditions, That the King in person should come into *Italy*, and with all his forces, by Land and Sea, assist the *Carthaginians* in the *Roman* war, until it were finished; That *Rome*, and all *Italy*, together with all the spoil therein to be gotten, should be left entire unto the State of *Carthage*; and that afterwards *Hannibal*, with his Army should passe into *Greece*, and there assist *Philip*, until he had subdued all his enemies: (which were the *Ætolians*, *Thracians*, King *Antiochus*, and others) leaving sensibly unto him the full possession of that country. But such predisposition of Kingdoms and Provinces, is lightly controlled by the divine Providence, which therein shews <sup>10</sup> It self; nor (as *Herodotus* falsely termes it, and like an *Atheist*) envious or malicious, but very just and majestically, in upholding that unspeakable greatness of Sovereignty, by which it rules the whole World; and all that therein is.

The first Embassadors that *Philip* sent, fell into the *Romans* hands, in their journey towards *Hannibal*: and being examined what they were, adventured upon a bold lie, saying, That they were sent from the King of *Macedon* to *Rome*, there to make a League with the Senate and people, and offer his help in this time of great necessity. These newes were so welcome, that the joy thereof took away all care of making better inquiry. So they were lovingly feasted, and freely dismissed with guides that should lead them the way, and shew them how to avoid the *Carthaginians*. But they being thus instructed concerning their journey, fell wilfully into the camp of *Hannibal*: who entertained them after a better fashion; and concluded the business, about which they came, upon the points before remembered. In their return homeward, they happened again unluckily to be decried by the *Roman* Fleet; which mistrusting them to be of the *Carthaginian* party, gave them chase. They did their best to have escaped: but being overtaken, they suffered the *Romans* to come aboard; and trusting to the lie that once had served them, said it again, That having been sent from King *Philip*, to make a league with the People of *Rome*, they were not able by reason of the *Carthaginians* lying between, to get any farther than to *M. Valerius* the Prætor, unto whom they had signified the good affection of the King, their Master. The tale was now less credible than <sup>30</sup> before: and (which marred all) *Gelco*, *Boslar*, and *Mago*, with their followers, *Carthaginians* that were sent with them from *Hannibal* to ratify the agreement, being presently detected, made the matter apparent. Wherefore a little inquisition served to finde all out: so that at length *Hannibal's* own letters to King *Philip* were delivered up, and the whole business confected. The Embassadors and their followers were sent close prisoners to *Rome*, where the chief of them were cast into prison; and the rest sold for bond-slaves. Yet one of their ships that escaped, carried word into *Macedon* of all that had happened. Whereupon new Embassy was sent, that went and returned with better speed; concluding, as was agreed before; only with some losse of time.

The *Romans* were exceedingly perplexed: thinking with what heavy weight this *Macedonian* war, in an evil hour, was likely to fall upon them, when their shoulders were over-burdened with the load of the *Carthaginian*. Yet they took a noble resolution, and sutable unto that, whereby they kept off the storm, that else would have beaten upon them from *Spain*. They judged it more easie, with small forces to detain *Philip* in *Greece*, than with all their strength to resist him in *Italy*. And herein they were in the right. For, that the very reputation of a King of *Macedon*, joyning with *Hannibal* in such a time, would have sufficed to shake the allegiance, not only of the *Latines*, and other, their most faithfull Subjects, but even of the *Roman* Colonies, that held all privileges of the City, it will appear by the following successe of things. *M. Valerius* the Prætor, with twenty *Quinquereme* Gallies, was appointed to attend upon the *Macedonian*, and <sup>50</sup> to let on foot some commotion in *Greece*; or to nourish the troubles already therein begun. *Philip* was busie about the Sea towns, that looked towards *Italy*, setting upon *Apollonia*; and thence falling upon *Oricum*; which he won, and so returned to *Apollonia* again. The *Epirotes* craved help of *M. Valerius*: or rather accepted his kinde offers; who had none other business to do. The Garrison that *Philip* had left in *Oricum*, was strong enough to hold the Town-men in good order; but not to keep out the *Romans*: of whose daring to attempt any thing against him, on that side the Sea, *Philip* as then had no suspicion. *Valerius* therefore easily regained the Town; and sent thence a thousand

thousand men, under *Nevius Crispus*, an undertaking and expert Captain; which got by night into *Apollonia*. These made a notable sallie, and brake into *Philip's* Trenches with so great slaughter, that they forced him to forsake his camp, and raise the siege. The King purposed (as it is said, to have departed thence by Sea: but *Valerius*, comming with his fleet from *Oricum*, stopped up the mouth of the River, so that he was faine to burn his ships, (which belike were no better than long boats) and depart ill furnished of carriages, by Land. After this *Valerius* dealt with the *Ætolians*, a Nation alwayes enemy to the Crown of *Macedon*: and easily persuaded them (being so affected, as hath else where been shewed) to make strong war on *Philip*: wherein he promised them <sup>10</sup> great assistance from the *Romans*. That which most moved the troublesome spirits of the *Ætolians*, was the hope of getting *Acarnania*: after which they had gaped long; and whereof the *Roman* was as liberrall in making promise, as if already it had been his own. So a league was made between them: and afterward solemnly published at *Olympia*, by the *Ætolians*; and by the *Romans*, in their *Capitol*. The conditions were, that from *Ætolia* to *Corcyra*, in which space *Acarnania* was contained, all the Country should be subdued, and left unto the *Ætolians*; the pillage only to be given to the *Romans*. And that if the *Ætolians* made peace with *Philip*, it should be with Provision, to hold no longer than whilst he obtained from doing injurie to the *Romans*, or their Associates. This was indeed the only point, whereat *Valerius* aimed, who promised as <sup>20</sup> much on the *Romans* behalf, That they should not make peace with the *Macedonian*, unless it were with like condition of including the *Ætolians*. Into this league was place reserved for the *Lacedæmonians* and *Eleans*, as to those that had made or favoured the side of *Cleomenes* against the *Macedonian*, to enter at their pleasure. The like regard was had of *Attalus*, *Plenratus*, and *Scerdiletus*: the first of which reigned at *Pergamus*, in *Asia* the lesse, a Prince hereafter much to be spoken of; the other two held some part of *Illyria*, about which the *Romans* were so far from contending with them, that gladly they sought to get their friendly acquaintance. But the names of these Associates are thrust into the Treaty, rather to give it countenance, than for any readines which they dis- <sup>30</sup> close to enter thereinto. The *Ætolians* alone, & chiefly *Scopas* their Prætor, with *Dorymachus* and others, are yet a while the only men, of whom the *Roman* Generals must make much; as the late *French* King, *Henry* the fourth, when he had only the title of *Norvre*, was said to court the Majors of *Rechel*. *Philip* was not idle, when he heard whereunto the *Ætolians* tended. He repaired his Army; made a countenance of war upon the *Illyrians*, and other his borderers, that were wont in times of danger to infect the Kingdom of *Macedon*; wasted the Country about *Oricum* and *Apollonia*; and over- <sup>40</sup> running the *Pelagonians*, *Dardaniens*, and others, whom he held suspected, came down into *Thessaly*, whence he made shew as if he would invade *Ætolia*. By the fame of this Expedition, He thought to stir up all the *Greeks* adjoining, against the *Ætolians*, whom they generally detested as a nest of Robbers, troublesome to all the Country. To which purpose, and to hinder the *Ætolians* from breaking into *Greece*, He left *Persens*, his son and heir, with four thousand men, upon their borders: with the rest of his Army, before greater business should overtake and entangle him. He made a long journey into *Thrace*, against a people called the *Medes*, that were wont to fall upon *Macedon*, when- <sup>50</sup> soever the King was absent. The *Ætolians* hearing of his departure, armed as many as they could against the *Asarnians*; in hope to subdue those their daily enemies, and win their little Country, ere he should be able to return. Hereto it much availed, that the *Romans* had already taken *Oeniade* and *Naxos*, *Acarnanian* Towns, conveniently situated to let in an Army; and consigned them unto the *Ætolians*, according to the tenor of the contract lately made with them. But the stout resolution of the *Acarnians*, to die (as we say) every mothers son of them, in defence of their Country; together with the great haste of the *Macedonian* (who layed aside all other business) to succour these his friends, caused the *Ætolians* to forsake their enterprize. When this Expedition was given over, the *Romans* and *Ætolians* fell upon *Ancyra*, which they took: the *Romans* assailed by Sea, the *Ætolians* by Land. The *Ætolians* had the Town, and the *Romans* the spoil.

For these good services *M. Valerius* was chosen Consul at *Rome*; and *P. Sulpitius* sent in his stead, to keep the war on foot in *Greece*. But besides the *Roman* help, *Attalus* out of *Asia* came over to assist the *Ætolians*. He was chiefly moved by his own jealousy





of his Army, or to free his coast from the Roman and *Ætolian* Piracies. Onely once they came to his help, which was at his last journey into *Achæia*. But they were gone again before his arrivall: having done nothing, and pretending fear of being taken by the *Romans*, even at such time as *Philip*, with his own Navie, durst boldly pass by Sea; and found none that durst oppose him. This retchless dealing of the *Carthaginians*; may therefore seem to have been one of *Hanno* his tricks, whereof *Hannibal* so bitterly complained. For it could not but grieve this malicious man exceedingly, to hear that so great a King made offer to serve in person under *Hannibal*, and required the assistance of the same *Hannibal*, as of a man likely to make Monarchs, and alter the affairs of the world at pleasure. Therefore he had reason, such as envie could suggest, to perswade the to *Carthaginians* unto a sale and thirity course: which was, not to admit into the fellowship of their *Italian* was so mighty a Prince; whom change of affection might make dangerous to their Empire; or his much affection unto *Hannibal*, more dangerous to their liberty. Rather they should do well to save charges, and feed the *Macedonian* with hopes; by making many promises of sending a fleet and some other succours. This would cost nothing, yet would it serve to terrifie the *Romans*, and compell them to send part of their forces from home, that might finde this Enemy work abroad. So should the *Roman* Armies be lessened in *Italy*; and *Philip*, when once he was engaged in the warre, be urged unto the prosecution, by his own necessity: putting the *Carthaginians* to little or no charges; yea, scarce to the labour of giving him thanks. Now if it might come to pass, as *Hannibal* every day did promise, that *Rome*, and all *Italy* should within a while be at the devotion of *Carthage*: better it were, that the City should be free, so as the troublesome *Greeks* might address their complaints unto the *Carthaginians*; as competent Judges between them and the *Macedonian*, than that *Hannibal*, with the power of *Africa*, should wait upon *Philip*, as his Executioner, to fulfill his will and pleasure; in doing such injuries, as would both make the name of a *Carthaginian* hateful in *Greece*, and oblige *Philip* to be no less impudent, in fulfilling all requests of *Hannibal*. Whether the counsell of *Hanno* and his fellows were such as this, or whether the *Carthaginians*, of their own disposition, without his advice, were too sparing, and careless, the matter (as farre as concerned *Philip*) came to one reckoning. For they did him no manner of good, but rather dodged with him, even in their little countie which they most pretended: And this perhaps was part of the reason, why he began the building of an hundred Gallies, as if he would let them and others know, whereto his proper strength would have reached, had he not vainly given credit to faithlesse promises. When therefore the *Ætolians* had submitted themselves already: and when the *Romans* desired his friendship, as might be thought, for very fear of him, with reputation enough, and not as a forsaken Client of the *Carthaginians*, but a Prince able to have succoured them in their necessity, he might give over the warre, and, without reprehension, leave them to themselves. For he had wilfully entred into trouble for their sakes; but they despised him, as if the quarrell were merely his own, and he unable to manage it.

The vanity of which their conceits would appear unto them, when they should see, that with his proper strength he had finished the warre; and concluded it highly to his honour. So the year following it was agreed, by the mediation of the *Epirots*, *Acarnanians*, and others, That the *Romans* should retain three or four Towns of *Illyria*, which they had recovered in this war, being part of their old *Illyrian* conquest: Places no way belonging to the *Macedonian*; and therefore perhaps inserted into the covenants, that somewhat might seem to have been gotten. On the other side, the *Atinians* were appointed to return under the obedience of *Philip*: who, if they were (as *Ortelius* probably conjectures) the people of the Countrey about *Apollonia*, then did the *Romans* abandon part of their gettings; whereby it appears, that they did not give peace, as they would seem to have done, but accepted it, upon conditions somewhat to their losse.

The Confederates and Dependants of the *Macedonian*, comprehended in this Peace, were *Prusias* King of *Bithynia*, the *Acheans*, *Boeotians*, *Theſſalians*, *Acarnanians*, and *Epirots*. On the *Roman* side were named, first, the people of *Ilium*, as an honourable remembrance of the *Romans* descent from *Troy*; then, *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*; *Pleuranus* an *Illyrian* Prince; and *Nabis* the tyrant of *Æthemon*; together with the *Eleans*, *Messenians*, and

and *Athenians*. The *Ætolians* were omitted, belike, as having agreed for themselves before. But the *Eleans* and *Messenians*, followers of the *Ætolians*, (and by them, as is most likely, comprised in their league with *Philip*) were also inserted by the *Romans*; that were never slow in offering their friendship to small and feeble Nations. As for the *Athenians* they stood much upon their old honour; and loved to bear a part, though they did nothing, in all great actions. Yet the setting down of their names in this Treaty, served the *Romans* to good purpose: forasmuch as they were a buſie people, and ministred occasion to renew the War, when means did better serve to follow it.

## §. XIII.

How the Romans began to recover their strength by degrees. The noble affection of the Romans, in relieving the publick necessities of their Common-weal.

IT was a great fault in the *Carthaginians*, that embracing so many Enterprises at once, they followed all by the halves: and wasted more men and money to no purpose, than would have served (if good order had been taken) to finish the whole Warre, in ſure shorter space; and make themselves Lords of all that the *Romans* held. This error had become the less harmfull, if their care of *Italy* had been such as it ought. But they suffered *Hannibal* to weary himself with expectation of their promised supplies: which being still deferred from year to year, caused as great opportunities to be lost, as a Conquerour could have desired. The death of *Posthumus*, and destruction of his whole Army in *Gaul*; the begun rebellion of the *Sardinians*; the death of *Hiero* their friend in *Spain*; with great alterations, much to their prejudice, in the whole Isle of *Sicily*; as also that War of which we last spake, threatned from *Macedon*; happening all at one time, and that so nearly after their terrible overthrow at *Cannæ*, among so many revolts of their *Italian* Confederates; would utterly have sunk the *Roman* State; had the *Carthaginians*, if not the first year, yet at least the second, sent over to *Hannibal* the forces that were decreed. It is not to be doubted, that even this diversity of great hopes, appearing from all parts, administered matter unto *Hanno*, or such as *Hanno* was, whereupon to work. For though it were in the power of *Carthage*, to performe all that was decreed for *Italy*: yet could not that proportion hold, when to many new concurrences brought each along with them their new care; and required their severall Armies. This had not been a very bad excuse, if any one of the many occasions offered had been thoroughly prosecuted: though it stood with best reason, that the foundation of all other hopes and comforts, which was the prosperity of *Hannibal* in his *Italian* War, should have been strengthened; whatsoever had become of the rest. But the slender Troups, wherewith the *Carthaginians* fed the Warre in *Spain*; the lingring aide which they sent to uphold the *Sardinian* rebellion, when it was already well-near beaten down; their rising with *Philip*; and (amongst all these their attempts) their hasty catching at *Sicily*: little deserved to be thought good reasons of neglecting the main point, whereto all the rest had reference. Rather every one of these Actions, considered a part by it self, was no other-wise to be allowed, as discreetly undertaken, or substantially followed; than by making supposition. That the care of *Italy* made the *Carthaginians* more negligent in all things else. Yet if these allegations would not serve to content *Hannibal*, then must he patiently endure to know, that his own Citizens were jealous of his Greatnesse, and durst not trust him with so much power, as should enable him to wrong the State at home.

Whatsoever he heard or thought, *Hannibal* was glad to apply himself to Necessity; to feed his *Italian* friends with hopes; and to trifle away the time about *Nola*, *Naples*, *Cumæ*, and other places: being loth to spend his Army in an hard siege, that was to be reserved for a work of more importance. Many offers he made upon *Nola*, but alwayes with bad sadnesse. Once *Marcellus* fought a battell with him there: yet under the very Walls of the Town, having the assistance of the Citizens, that were grown better affected to the *Roman* side, since the Heads that inclined them to rebellion, were cut off. About a thousand men *Hannibal* in that fight lost: which was no great marvel, his forces being then divided, and employed in sundry parts of *Italy* at once. *Naples* was even in those dayes, a strong City; and required a years work to have taken it by force.

Cccccc 2

Where



Wherefore the earnest desire of *Hannibal* to get it, was always frustrate. Upon the town of *Cuma* they of *Capua* had their plot, and were in hope to take it by cunning. They sent to the chief Magistrates of the *Cumans*, desiring them (as being also *Capuans*) to be present at a solemn sacrifice of the Nation, where they would consult about their general good: promising to bring thither a sufficient guard, to assure the whole Assembly from any danger that might come by the *Romans*. This motion the *Cumans* made shew to entertain; but privily sent word of all to *T. Sempronius Gracchus* the *Roman* Consul.

*Gracchus* was a very good man of war, and happily chosen Consul in so dangerous a time. His Colleague had been *Postumius Albinus*, that was lately slain by the *Gauls*: after whose death *Marcellus* was chosen, as being judged the fittest man to encounter with *Hannibal*. But the *Roman* Angures either found some religious impediment that nullified the election of *Marcellus*; or at least they failed so to have done, because this was the first time, that ever two *Plebeian* Consuls were chosen together. *Marcellus* therefore gave over the place; and *L. Fabius Maximus*, the late famous Dictator, was substituted in his room. But *Fabius* was detained in the City, about matters of religion or superstition: wherewith *Rome* was commonly, especially in times of danger, very much troubled. So *Gracchus* alone, with a Consular Army, waited upon *Hannibal* among the *Campains*: not able to meet the enemy in field; yet intentive to all occasions, that should be presented. The *Volentes*, or Slaves, that lately had been armed, were no small part of his followers. These and the rest of his men, he continually trained: and had not a greater care, to make his Army skilfull in the exercises of war, than to keep it from quarrels that might arise by upbraiding one another with their base conditions.

Whilst the Consul was thus busied at *Linternum*, the Senators of *Cuma* sent him word of all that had passed between them and the *Capuans*. It was a good occasion to flesh his men, and make them confident against the Enemy; of whom hitherto they had bad experience. *Gracchus* therefore put himself into *Cuma*: whence he issued at such time, as the Magistrates of that City were expected by the *Capuans*. The Sacrifice was to be performed by night, at a place called *Hama*: three miles from *Cuma*. There lay *Marius Alpinus* the chief Magistrate of *Capua*, with fourteen thousand men; not wholly intent either to the Sacrifice, or to any danger that might interrupt it; but rather desiring how to surprise others, than fearing himself to be assailed. The Consul therefore, suffering none to goe forth of *Cuma*, that might bear word of him to the Enemies, issued out of the town when it grew dark: his men being well refreshed with meat and sleep, the day before, that they might hold out the better in this nights service. So he came upon the *Capuans* unawares, and slew more than two thousand of them, together with their Commander, losing not above a hundred of his own men. Their camp he took; but tarried not long to rife it, for fear of *Hannibal*, who lay not farre off. By this his providence, he escaped a greater loss, than he had brought upon the Enemies. For when *Hannibal* was informed how things went at *Hama*, forthwith he marched thither: hoping to finde those young souldiers, and slaves, busied in making spoile, and loading themselves with the booty. But they were all gotten safe within *Cuma*, which partly for anger, partly for desire of gaining it, and partly at the urgent entreaty of the *Capuans*, *Hannibal* assailed the next day. Much labour, and with ill successe, the *Carthaginians* and their followers spent about this town. They raised a wooden Tower against it, which they brought close unto the wals; thinking thereby to force an Entry. But the Defendants, on the inside of the wall, raised against this an high Tower; whence they made resistance, and found means at length to consume with fire the work of their Enemies. While the *Carthaginians* were busied in quenching the fire, the *Romans*, fallying out of the town at two gates, charged them valiantly, and drove them to their Trenches, with the slaughter of about fourteen hundred. The Consul wisely sounded the Retreat, ere his men were too far engaged, and *Hannibal* in a readiness to requite their service. Neither would he, in the pride of his good success, adventure forth against the Enemy, who presented him battell the day following, near unto the wals. *Hannibal* therefore, seeing no likelihood to prevail in that which he had taken in hand, brake up the siege, and returned to his old camp at *Tifana*. About these times, and shortly after, when *Fabius* the other Consul had taken the field; some small towns were recovered by the *Romans*, and the people severely punished for their revolt. The

The *Carthaginian* Army was too small, to fill with garrisons all places that had yeelded; and withall to abide (as it must do) strong in the field. Wherefore *Hannibal*, attending the supply from home, that should enable him to strike at *Rome* it self, was driven in the mean time to alter his course of war: and instead of making (as formerly he had done) a general invasion upon the whole Country, to passe from place to place; and wait upon occasions, that grew dayly more commodious to the enemy, than to him. The Country of the *Hirpines* and *Samnites* was grievously wasted by *Marcellus*, in the absence of *Hannibal*: as also was *Campania*, by *Fabius* the Consul, when *Hannibal* having followed *Marcellus* to *Nola*, and received there the losse before mentioned, was gone to winter in *Apulia*. These people shewed not the like spirit in defending their lands; and fighting for the *Carthaginian* Empire, as in former times they had done, when they contended with the *Romans*, in their own behalf, to get the Sovereignty. They held it reason, that they should be protected by such as thought to have dominion over them; where by at once they overburdened their new Lords; and gave unto their old, the more easie means to take revenge of their defection.

The people of *Rome* were very intentive, as necessity constrained them; to the work that they had in hand. They continued *Fabius* in his Consulship; and joyned with him *Marcus Claudius Marcellus*; whom they had appointed unto that honour the year before. Of these two, *Fabius* was called the *Shield*; and *Marcellus* the *Roman* Sword. In *Fabius* it was highly, and upon just reason, commended: That being himself Consul, and holding the Election, he did not stand upon nice points of formality; or regard what men might think of his ambition, but caused himself to be chosen with *Marcellus*; knowing in what need the City stood of able Commanders. The great name of these Consuls, and the great preparations which the *Romans* made, served to put the *Capuans* in fear, that *Capua* it self should be besieged. To prevent this, *Hannibal*, at their earnest entreaty, came from *Arpi*: (where he lay, hearkening after newes from *Tarentum*) and, having with his presence comforted their friends, fell on the sudden upon *Puteoli*; a Sea-town of *Campania*; about which he spent three dayes in vain, hoping to have wonne it. The garrison in *Puteoli* was six thousand strong; and did their duty to well, so that the *Carthaginian*, finding no hope of good successe, could only shew his anger upon the fields there; and about *Naples*, which, having done, and once more (with as ill successe as before) assailed *Nola*, he bent his course to *Tarentum*: wherein he had very great intelligence. Whilst he was in his progresse thither, *Hanno* made a journey against *Beneventum*; and *T. Gracchus*, the last years Consul; halting from *Nikeia* met him there; and fought with him a battell. *Hanno* had with him about seventeen thousand foot, *Brutians* and *Lucans* for the most part; besides twelve hundred horse, very few of which were *Italians*, all the rest, *Numidian* and *Moorish*. He held the *Roman* work four hours, ere it could be perceived to which side the victory would incline. But *Gracchus* his souldiers, which were all (in a manner) the late armed Slaves, had received from their Generall a peremptory denunciation: That this day or never they must purchase their liberty, bringing every man for price the head of an enemies head. The sweet reward of liberty was so greatly desired, that none of them feared any danger in cutting it howbeit that pain labour, imposed by their Generall, of carrying off the slain enemies heads, troubled them exceedingly; and kindred the service by employment of so many hands in a work so little concerning the victory. *Gracchus* therefore finding his own error, was quickly corrected: proclaiming aloud, That they should cast away the heads, and spare the trouble of cutting off any more; for that all should have liberty immediately after the battell; if they wonne the day. This encouragement made them run headlong upon the Enemy, whom their desperate fury had soon overthrowne, if the Roman horse could have made their pure good against the *Numidian*. But though *Hanno* did what he could, and pressed so hard upon the *Romans*, that he had slain four thousand of the Slaves; (for fear either of him; or of the punishment which *Gracchus* had threatened before the battell unto those that should not valiantly behave themselves) retired unto a ground of strength; yet was he glad at length to save himself by flight, when the *Romans* of his Army was broken; being unable to remedy the loss. Leaving the field, he was accompanied by no more than two thousand; most of which were horse; all the rest were either slain or taken. The *Roman* Generall gave unto all his souldiers that reward of liberty which he had promised; but unto those four thousand, which had recoyled unto

unto the Hill, he added this light punishment; That as long as they served in the wars, they should neither eat nor drink otherwise than standing, unless sickness forced them to break his order. So the victorious army returned to *Beneventum*: where the newly enfranchised Soldiers were feasted in publick by the town-men; some sitting, some standing, and all of them having their heads covered (as was the custom of slaves manumitted) with caps of white wooll. The picture of this Feast (as a thing worthy of remembrance) was afterward hung up in a Table by *Gracchus*, in the Temple of Liberty, which his father had built and dedicated. This was indeed the first battell, worthy of great note, which the *Carthaginians* had lost since the coming of *Hannibal* into *Italy*: the victories of *Marcellus* at *Nola*, and of this *Gracchus* before at *Hama*, being things of small importance.

Thus the *Romans* through industry, by little and little, repaired the great Breach in their Estate, which *Hannibal* had made at *Canna*. But all this while, and long after this, their Treasury was so poor, that no industry nor art could serve to help it. The fruits of their grounds did only (and perhaps hardly) serve to feed their Towns and Armies, without any surplusage; that might be exchanged for other needfull commodities. Few they were in *Italy* that continued to pay them tribute: which also they could worse do than before; as living upon the same trade, and subject to the same inconveniencies, which enfeebled *Rome* it self. *Sicil* and *Sardinia*, that were wont to yeeld great profit, hardly now maintained the *Roman* Armies, that lay in those Provinces, to hold them safe, and in good order. As for the Citizens of *Rome*, every one of them suffered his part of the detriment, which the Common-wealth sustained, and could now do least for his Countrey, when most need was: as also the number of them was much decreased; so as if money should be raised upon them by the *Poll*, yet must it be farre lesse, than in former times. The Senate therefore diligently considering the greatnesse of the warre within the bowels of *Italy*, that could not be thence expelled, without the exceeding charge of many good Armies; the perill, wherein *Sicil* and *Sardinia* stood; both of the *Carthaginians*, and of many among the Naturals declining from the friendship or subjection of *Rome*; the threats of the *Macedonian*, ready to land in the Eastern parts of *Italy*, if they were not at the cost to finde him work at home; the greater threats of *Alibi*, to follow his brother over the *Alpes*, as soon as he could rid himself of the *Scipio*'s in *Spain*; and the poverty of the Common-wealth, which had not money for any one of these mortall dangers; were driven almost even to extream want of counsell. But being urged by the violence of swift necessity, signified in the letters of the two *Scipio*'s from *Spain*; they resolved upon the only course, without the which the City could not have subsisted.

They called the people to assembly, wherein *Quintus Fulvius* the Prætor laid open the publick wants; and plainly said, That in this exigent, there must be no taking of money for victual, weapons, apparell, or the like things needfull to the Souldiers; but that such as had stoffe, or were Artificers, must trust the Common-wealth with the Loan of their commodities and labours, untill the warre were ended. Hereunto he so effectually exhorted all men, especially the Publicans or customers, and those which in former times had lived upon their dealing in the common Revenues, that the charge was undertaken by private men; and the Army in *Spain*, as well supplied, as if the Treasury had been full. Shortly after this, *Marcus Atilius Regulus*, and *Publius Furius Philus*, the *Roman* Censors, taking in hand the redresse of disorders within the City, were chiefly incentive to the correction of those, that had misbehaved themselves in this present warre. They began with *L. Cæcilius Metellus*, who after the battell at *Canna*, had held discourse with some of his Companions, about flying beyond the Seas; as if *Rome*, and all *Italy*, had been no better than lost. After him they took in hand those, that having brought to *Rome* the message of their fellowes made prisoners at *Canna*, returned not back to *Hannibal*, as they were bound by oath; but thought themselves thereof sufficiently discharged, in that they had stepped once back into his Camp; with pretence of taking better notice of the Captives names. All these were now pronounced infamous by the Censors: as also were a great many more; even who never had not served in the warres, after the terme which the Lawes appointed. Neither was the note of the Censors at this time (as otherwise it had used to be) hurtfull only in reputation: but greater weight was added; therunto, by this Decree of the Senate,

Senate, following; That all such as were noted with infamy by these Censors, should be transported into *Sicil*, there to serve untill the end of the Warre, under the same hard conditions, that were imposed upon the Remainder of the Army beaten at *Canna*. The office of the Censors was, to take the List and account of the Citizens; to choose or displace the Senators; and to set notes of disgrace (without further punishment) upon those, whose dishonest or unseemly behaviour fell not within the compas of the Law. They took also an account of the *Roman* Gentlemen: amongst whom they distributed the publick Horles of service, unto such as they thought meet; or took their away for their misbehaviour. Generally, they had the oversight of mens lives and manners; and their censure was much revered and feared; though it extended no further, than to putting men out of rank; or making them change their Tribe; or (which was the most that they could doe) causing them to pay some Duties to the Treasury, from which others were exempted. But besides the care of this generall Taxe, and matters of Morality, they had the charge of all publick Works; as mending of High-ways, Bridges, and Water-courses; the reparations of Temples, Porches, and such other buildings. If any man incroached upon the Streets, High-ways, or other places that ought to be common; the Censors compelled him to make amends. They had also the letting out of Lands, Customes, and other publick Revenues to farme: so that most of the Citizens of *Rome* were beholden unto this Office; as maintaining themselves by some of the Trades thereto belonging. And this was no small help to conserve the dignity of the Senate: the commonality being obnoxious unto the Censors, which were always of that Order, and carefull to uphold the reputation thereof. But the Common-wealth being now impoverished by Warre, and having small store of Lands to let, or of customes that were worth the farming; *Regulus* & *Philus* troubled not themselves much with perusing the Temples, or other decayed places, that needed reparations: or if they took a view of what was requisite to be done in this kinde; yet forbore they to set any thing in hand, because they had not wherewith to pay. Herein again appeared a notable generosity of the *Romans*. They that had been accustomed in more happy times, to undertake such pieces of work, offered now themselves as willingly to the Censors, as if there had been no such want: promising liberally their cost and travel; without expectation of any payment, before the end of the Warre. In like sort, the Masters of whole slaves, that lately had been enfranchised by *Gracchus*, were very well contented to forbear the price of them, untill the City were in better case to pay. In this generall inclination of the Multitude, to relieve, as farre forth as every one was able, the common necessity; all the goods of Orphans, and of Widows living under Patronage, were brought into the Treasury; and there the Quæstor kept a Book of all that was laid out for the sustenance of these Widows and Orphans: whilst the whole stock was used by the City. This good example of those which remained in the Town, prevailed with the Souldiers abroad: so that (the poorer sort excepted) they refused to take pay; and called those *Mercenaries*, that did accept it, when their Country was in so great want.

The twelve hundred Talents, wrongfully extorted from the *Carthaginians*, nor any summes following, done by the *Romans* in the height of their pride; yeeked half so much commodity, as might be laid in ballance against these miseries, whereinto their Estate was now reduced. Nevertheless if we consider things aright, the calamities of this Warre did rather inable *Rome* to deal with those Enemies, whom the forthwith undertook, than abate or slacken the growth of that large Dominion, whereto they attained, ere the youngest of those men was dead, whose names we have already mentioned. For by this hammering, the *Roman* metall grew more hard and solide; and by paring the branches of private fortunes, the Root and Heart of the Common-wealth was corroborated. So grew the City of *Athens*, when *Xerxes* had burnt the Town to ashes, and taken from every particular Citizen, all hope of other felicity, that which rested in the common happinesse of the universality. Certain it is, (as *Sir Francis Bacon* hath judiciously observed) That a State, whose dimension or scope is small, may aptly serve to be foundation of a great Monarchy: which chiefly comes to passe, where all regard of domestick prosperity is laid aside; and every man once addressed to, the benefit of his Country. Hereof I might say, that our Age hath been a great example, in the united Provinces in the Netherlands; whose present riches,

and strength grew chiefly from that ill assurance, which each of their Towns, or almost of their Families, perceived it self to hold, whilst the generality was oppressed by the Duke of *Alva*; were it so, that the people had thereby grown as warlike, as by extreme industry, and training themselves to fill their publick Treasury, they are all grown wealthy, strong at Sea, & able to wage great Armies for their services by Land. Wherefore if we value at such a rate as we ought, the patient resolution, conformity to good Order; obedience to Magistrates, with many other Vertues, and above all other, the great love of the Common-weal, which was found in *Rome* in these dangerous times: we may truly say, That the City was never in greater likelihood to prosper. Neither can it be deemed otherwise, than that if the same affections of the people had lasted, when their Empire, being grown more large and beautifull, should in all reason have been more dear unto them; if the riches and delicacies of *Asia* had not infected them with sensuality, and carryed their appetites mainly to those pleasures, wherein they thought their well-being to consist; if all the Citizens and Subjects of *Rome* could have beleev'd their own interest to be as great, in those wars which these latter Emperours made for their defence, as in these which were managed by the Consuls: the Empire, founded upon so great vertue, could not have been thrown down by the hands of rude *Barbarians*, were they never so many. But unto all Dominions God hath set their periods: Who though he hath given unto Man the knowledge of those waies, by which Kingdomes rise and fall; yet hath left him subject unto the affections, which draw on to these fatal changes, in their times appointed.

## S. XIII.

*The Romans win some Towns back from Hannibal. Hannibal wins Tarentum. The siege of Capua. Two victories of Hannibal. The journey of Hannibal to the gates of Rome. Capua taken by the Romans.*

AS the people of *Rome* strained themselves to the utmost, for maintaining the Waite: so their Generals abroad omitted no part of industry, in seeking to recover what had been lost. The Town of *Casiline*, *Fabius* besieged. It was well defended by the *Carthaginian* garrison, and likely to have been relieved by those of *Capua*; if *Marcellus* from *Nola*, had not come to the assistance of his Colleague. Nevertheless, the place held out so obstinately, that *Fabius* was purposed to give it over: saying, that the enterprize was not great; yet as difficult, as a thing of more importance. But *Marcellus* was of a contrary opinion. He said: That many such things as were not at first to have been undertaken by great Commanders, ought yet, when once they were taken in hand, to be prosecuted unto the best effect. So the siege held on: and the Town was pressed so hard, that the *Campans* dwelling therein grew fearful, and craved parlee; offering to give it up, so as all might have leave to depart in safety, whither they pleased. Whilst they were thus treating of conditions: or whilst they were issuing forth, according to the composition already made, (for it is diversly reported) *Marcellus* seizing upon a Gate, entred with his Army, and put all to sword that came in their way. Fifty of those that were first gotten out, ran to *Fabius* the Consul, who saved them; and sent them to *Capua* in safety; all the rest were either slain, or made prisoners. If *Fabius* deserved Commendations, by holding his word good unto these fifty, I know not how the slaughter of the rest, or imprisonment afterward of such as escaped the heat of execution, could be excused by *Marcellus*. It may be that he helped himself, after the *Roman* fashion, with some equivocation, but he shall pay for it hereafter. In like sort was *Momus Marsum* in *Gasconne* taken by the Marshall *Monte*; when I was a young man in *France*. For whilst he entertained parlee about composition: the besieged ranne all from their several guards, upon hasty desire of being acquainted with the conditions proposed. The Marshall therefore discovering a part of the Walls unguarded; entred by *Scalado*, and put all save the Governour unto the sword. Herein that Governour of *Momus Marsum* committed two gross errors; the one, in that he gave no order for the Captains and Companies; to hold themselves in their places; the other, in that he was content to parlee without Pledges for assurance given and received. Some such oversight the Governour of *Casiline* seemeth to have committed; yet neither the advantage taken by *Marcellus*, or by *Monte*; was very honorable.

table. When this Work was ended, many small Towns of the *Samites*, and some of the *Lucans* and *Apulians*, were recovered: wherein were taken, or slain about five and twenty thousand of the Enemies; and the Country grievously wasted by *Fabius*, *Marcellus* lying sick at *Nola*.

*Hannibal* in the mean while was about *Tarentum*; waiting to hear from those, that had promised to give up the Town. But *M. Valerius* the *Roman* Propretor had thrust so many men into it, that the Traitors durst not stir. Wherefore the *Carthaginian* was faine to depart, having wearied himself in vain with expectation. Yet he wasted not the Countrey, but contented himself with hope, that they would please him better in time following. So he departed thence toward *Salapia*; which he chose for his wintering place; and began to victual it when Summer was but half past. It is said, that he was in love with a young Wench in that Town, in which regard if he began his winter more timely than otherwise he required, He did not like the *Romans*; whom necessity enforced, to make their Summer last as long as they were able to travell up and down the Countrey.

About this time began great troubles in *Sicily*, whither *Marcellus* the Consul was sent; to take such order for the Province, as need should require. Of the doings there, which were out more time than his Consulship, we will speak hereafter.

The new Consuls, chosen at *Rome*, were *Q. Fabius* the sonne of the present Consul; and *T. Sempronius Gracchus* the second time. The *Romans* found it needfull for the publique service, to employ oftentimes their best able men: and therefore made it lawfull, during the war, to recontinue their Officers, and choose such as had lately held their places before; without regarding any distance of time, which was otherwise required. The old *Fabius* became Lieutenant unto his son: which was perhaps the respect, that most commended his sonne unto the place. It is noted, That when the old man came into the Camp, and his sonne rode forth to meet him: eleven of the twelve Lictors, which carried an axe with a bundle of rods before the Consul, suffered him, in regard of due reverence, to passe by them on horse-back, which was against the custome. But the son perceiving this, commanded the last of his Lictors to note it: who thereupon bade the old *Fabius* alight, and come to the Consul on his feet. The father cheerfully did so; saying, *It was my mind, sonne, to make tryall, whether thou diddest understand thy self to be Consul.* *Cassius Albinus* a wealthy Citizen of *Arpi*, who after the battell at *Cannae*, had holpen the *Carthaginian* into that Town, seeing now the fortune of the *Romans* to amend; came privily to this Consul *Fabius*, and offered to render it back unto him; if he might be therefore well rewarded. The Consul purposed to follow old examples; and to make this *Albinus* a pattern to all traitors; using him as *Camillus* and *Fabritius* had done those that offered their faithfull service against the *Falisci*; and King *Pyrhus*. But *Q. Fabius* the father, was of another opinion; and said, it was a matter of dangerous consequence, That it should be thought more safe to revolt from the *Romans*, than to turn unto them. Wherefore it was concluded, that he should be sent to the Town of *Cales*, and there kept as prisoner; untill they could better resolve, what to do with him, or what use to make of him. *Hannibal*, understanding that *Albinus* was gone and among the *Romans*, took it not sorrowfully; but thought this a good occasion to seize upon all the mans riches, which were great. Yet that he might seem rather severe, than covetous, he sent for the wife and children of *Albinus* into his camp; where having examined them by torment, partly concerning the departure and intentions of this fugitive, partly, and more strictly, about his riches, what they were, and where they lay, He condemned them, as partakers of the treason, to be burnt alive; and took all his goods unto himself. *Fabius* the Consul shortly after came to *Arpi*; which he wonne by *Scalado*, in a stormy and rainy night. Five thousand of *Hannibals* Souldiers lay in the town; and of the *Arpines* themselves, there were about three thousand. These were thrust foremost by the *Carthaginian* Garrison; when it was understood, that the *Romans* had gotten over the Wall, and broken open a Gate. For the Souldiers held the townsmen suspected; and therefore thought it no wisdom to trust them at their backs. But after some little resistance, the *Arpines* gave over fight, and entertained parley with the *Romans*: professing, that they had been betrayed by their Princes; and were become subject to the *Carthaginians*, against their wills. In proesse of this discourse, the *Arpine* Prator went unto the *Roman* Consul: and receiving his faithfull security of the Town,

presently made head against the garrison. This notwithstanding, like it is that *Hannibal* men continued to make good resistance. For when almost a thousand of them, that were *Spaniards*, offered to leave their companions, and serve on the *Romans* side, it was yet covenanted, that the *Carthaginians* should be suffered to passe forth quietly, and return to *Hannibal*. This was performed: and so *Arpi* became *Roman* again, with little other losse, than of him that had betrayed it. About the same time *Claternum* was taken by *Sempronius Tuditanus*, one of the Prætors: and unto *Chens Fulvius*, another of the Prætors, an hundred & twelve Gentlemen of *Capua* offered their service, upon no other condition, than to have their goods restored unto them, when their City should be recovered by the *Romans*. This was a thing of small importance: but considering the general hatred of the *Campanians* towards *Rome*, it served to discover the inclination of the *Italians* in those times; and how their affections recoyled from *Hannibal*, when there was no appearance of those mighty succours, that had been promised from *Carthage*. The *Consentines* also, and the *Tovinians*, people of the *Bruttians*, which had yielded themselves to *Hannibal*, returned again to their old allegiance. Others would have followed their example, but that one *L. Pomponius*, who of a Publican had made himself a Captain, and gotten reputation by some petty exploits in foraging the Countrey, was slain by *Hanno*, with a great multitude of those that followed him. *Hannibal* in the mean while had all his care bent upon *Tarentum*, which if he could take, it seemed that it would stand him in good stead, for drawing over that help out of *Macedon*, to which his *Carthaginians* failed to send. Long he waited, ere he could bring his desire to pass: and being loth to hazard his forces, where he hoped to prevail by intelligence, he contented himself with taking in some poor Towns of the *Salentines*. At length, his Agents within *Tarentum*, found means to accomplish their purpose, and his will. One *Philas*, that was of their conspiracy, who lay at *Rome* as Embassadour, practising with the Hostages of the *Tarentines*, and such as had the keeping of them, conveyed them by night out of the City. But he and his company the next day were so closely pursued, that all of them were taken, and brought back to *Rome*, where they suffered death as traitors. By reason of this cruelty, or severity, the people of *Tarentum* grew to hate the *Romans* more generally and earnestly than before. As for the Conspirators, they followed their business the more diligently, as knowing what reward they were to expect, if their intention should happen to be discovered. Wherefore they lent again to *Hannibal*: and acquainting him with the manner of their plot, made the same composition with him for the *Tarentines*, which they of *Capua* had made before. *Nico* and *Philomenes*, two the chief among them, used much to goe forth of the Town on hunting by night, as if they durst not take their pleasure by day, for fear of the *Carthaginians*. Seldome or never they missed of their game: for the *Carthaginians* prepared it ready for their hands, that they might not seem to have been abroad upon other occasion. From the camp of *Hannibal*, it was about three daies journey to *Tarentum*, if it should have marched thither with his whole Army. This caused his long abode in one place, the less to be suspected: as also to make his enemies the more secure. He caused it to be given out, that he was sick. But when the *Romans* within *Tarentum*, were grown careless of such his neighbourhood, and the Conspirators had set their business in order; he took with him ten thousand the most expedite of his horse and foot, and long before break of day, made all speed thitherward. Fourscore light horse of the *Numidians* ran a great way before him, beating all the wayes, and killing any that they met, for fear lest he, and his troupe following him, should be discovered. It had been often the manner of some few *Numidian* horse, to do the like in former times. Wherefore the *Roman* Governour, when he heard tell in the evening, that some *Numidians* were abroad in the fields, took it for a sign, that *Hannibal* was not as yet dislodged; and gave order, that some companies should be sent out the next morning, to strip them of their booty, and send them gone. But when it grew dark night, *Hannibal* guided by *Philomenes*, came close to the town: where according to the tokens agreed upon, making a light to shew his arrivall, *Nico*, that was within the town, answered him with another light, in sign that he was ready. Presently *Nico* began to set upon one of the Gates, and to kill the watchmen. *Philomenes* went toward another gate: and whistling (as was his manner) called up the Porter, bidding him make hast, for that he had killed a great Bore, so heavy, that scarce two men could stand under it. So the Porter opened the wicket, and

forthwith

forthwith entered two young men, loaden with the Bore; which *Hannibal* had prepared large enough, to be worthy the looking on. While the Porter stood wondering at the largeness of the beast, *Philomenes* ran him through with his Bore-spear: and letting in some thirty armed men, fell upon all the watch; whom when he had slain, he entered the great gate. So the Army of *Hannibal* entering *Tarentum* at two Gates, went directly toward the Market place, where both parts met. Thence they were distributed by their Generall, and sent into all quarters of the City, with *Tarentines* to be their guides. They were commanded to kill all the *Romans*, and not to hurt the Citizens. For better performance hereof, *Hannibal* willed the Conspirators, that when any of their friends appeared in sight, they should bid him be quiet, and of good cheer. All the Town was in an uproar: but few could tell what the matter meant. A *Roman* trumpeter was unskillfully sounded by a *Greek* in the Theater: which helped the suspicion, both of the *Tarentines*, that the *Romans* were about to spoil the Town; and of the *Romans*, that the *Citizens* were in commotion. The Governour fled into the Port: and taking boat, got into the Citadell, that stood in the mouth of the Haven; whence he might easily perceive the next morning, how all had passed. *Hannibal* assembling the *Tarentines*, gave them to understand, what good affection he bore them; inveighed bitterly against the *Romans*, as tyrannous oppressours; and spake what else he thought fit for the present. This done, and having gotten such spoil as was to be had of the Souldiers goods in the Town, he addressed himself against the Citadell, hoping that if the Garrison would fall out, he might give them such a blow, as should make them unable to defend the Piece. According to his expectation it partly fell out. For when he began to make his approaches, the *Romans* in a bravery sallying forth, gave charge upon his men: who fell back of purpose according to direction, till they had drawn on as many as they could, and so far from their strength, as they durst adventure. Then gave *Hannibal* a sign to his *Carthaginians*, who lay prepared ready for the purpose: and fiercely setting upon the Enemy, drave him back with great slaughter, as fast as he could runne; so that afterwards he durst not issue forth. The Citadell stood up on a Demi-land, that was plain ground; and fortified only with a Ditch and Wall against the Town, whereunto it was joyned by a cawley. This cawley *Hannibal* intended to fortifie in like sort against the Citadell; to the end that the *Tarentines* might be able, without his help, to keep themselves from all danger thence. His work in few dayes went so well forward, without impediment from the besieged, that he conceived hope of winning the piece it self, by taking a little more pains. Wherefore he made ready all sorts of engines, to force the place; but whilest he was busied in his works, there came by sea a strong supply from *Metapontum*: which took away all hope of prevailing; and made him return to his former council. Now forasmuch as the *Tarentine* fleet lay within the haven, and could not pass forth, whilest the *Romans* held the Citadell: it seemed likely that the Town would suffer want, being debarred of accustomed trade and provisions by Sea: whilest the *Roman* garrison by help of their shipping, might easily be relieved, and enabled to hold out. Against this inconvenience, it was rather wished by the *Tarentines*, than any way hoped, that their fleet could get out of the haven; to guard the mouth of it, and cut off all supply from the Enemy. *Hannibal* told them, that this might well be done: for that their Town standing in plain ground, and their streets being fair and broad, it would be no hard matter to draw the Gallies over land, and lanch them into the Sea without. This he undertook, and effected: whereby the *Roman* garrison was reduced into great necessity; though with much patience it held out, and found *Hannibal* oftentimes otherwise busied, than his affairs required.

Thus with mutual losse on both sides, the time passed: and the *Roman* forces, growing daily stronger, *Q. Fulvius Flaccus*, with *Appius Claudius*, lately chosen Consuls, prepared to besiege the great City of *Capua*. Three and twenty Legions the *Romans* had now armed. This was a great and hasty growth from that want of men, and of all necessities, whereinto the losse at *Canna* had reduced them. But to fill up these Legions, they were faine to take up young Boyes that were under seventeen years of age: and to send Commissioners above fifty miles round, for the seeking out of such Lads: as might appear serviceable, and pressing them to the Wars; making yet a Law, that their years of service, whereinto they were bound by order of the City, should be reckoned, for their benefit, from this their beginning so young, as if they had been of lawfull age. Before

Before the *Roman* Army drew near, the *Campans* felt great want of victuals, as if they had already been besieged. This happened partly by sloth of the Nation, partly by the great waste and spoil, which the *Romans* had in fore-going years made upon their grounds. They sent therefore Embassadors to *Hannibal*, desiring him to succour them as they were closed up, as they feared to be shortly. He gave them comfortable words, and sent *Hanno* with an Army to supply their wants. *Hanno* appointed them a day, against which they should be ready with all manner of carriages, to store themselves with victuals, that he would provide. Neither did he promise more than he performed. For he caused great quantity of grain, that had been laid up in Cities round about, to be brought into his Camp, three miles from *Beneventum*. Thither at the time appointed, came no more than forty Carts or Wagons, with a few pack-horses, as if this had been enough to victual *Capua*. Such was the retchlessness of the *Campans*. *Hanno* was exceeding angry hereat: and told them they were worse than very beasts, since hunger could not teach them to have greater care. Wherefore he gave them no longer day; against which he made provision to store them throughly. Of all these doings word was sent to the *Roman* Consuls, from the Citizens of *Beneventum*. Therefore *Q. Fulvius* the Consul, taking with him such strength as he thought needful for the service, came into *Beneventum* by night; where with diligence he made inquiry into the behaviour of the Enemy. He learned, that *Hanno* with part of his Army was gone abroad to make provisions; that some two thousand Wagons, with a great rabble of Carts and other Varrlets, lay among the *Carthaginians* in their Camp; so that little good order was kept: all thought being set upon a great harvest. Hereupon the Consul bade his men prepare themselves to assail the enemies camp: and leaving all his impediments within *Beneventum*, he marched thitherward so early in the morning, that he was there with the first break of day. By coming so unexpected, he had well near forced the camp on the sudden. But it was very strong, and very well defended: so that the longer the fight continued, the less desire had *Fulvius* to lose more of his men in the attempt; seeing many of them cast away, and yet little hope of doing good. Therefore he said, that it were better to go more leisurely and substantially to work; to send for his fellow-Consul, with the rest of their Army; and to lye between *Hanno* and home; that neither the *Campans* should depart thence, nor the *Carthaginians* be able to relieve them. Being thus discoursing, and about to found the retreat; he saw that some of his men had gotten over the enemies Rampart. There was great booty, or (which was all one to the Souldier) an opinion of much that might be gotten in that Camp. Wherefore some Ensign-bearers threw their Ensignes over the Rampart, willing their men to fetch them out, unless they would endure the shame and dishonour following such a losse. Fear of such ignominie, than which nothing could be greater, made the Souldiers adventure so desperately; that *Fulvius*, perceiving the heat of his men, changed his purpose, and encouraged those that were somewhat backward, to follow the example of them that had already gotten over the Trenches. Thus the camp was wonne: in which were slain above fixe thousand; and taken above seven thousand, besides all the store of victuals, and carriages, with abundance of booty, that *Hanno* had lately gotten from the *Roman* Confederates. This misadventure, and the nearer approach of both the Consuls, made them of *Capua* send a pitifull Embassage to *Hannibal*: putting him in minde of all the love that he was wont to proce unto their City; and how he had made shew to affect it no lesse than *Carthage*. But now, they said it would be lost, as *Arpi* was lately, if he gave not strong and speedy succour. *Hannibal* answered with comfortable words: and sent away two thousand horse, to keep their grounds from spoil, whilst he himself was detained about *Tarentum*, partly by hope of winning the Citadell, partly by the disposition, which he saw in so many Towns adjoining, to yeeld unto him. Among the Hostages of the *Tarentines*, that lately had fled out of *Rome*, and being overtaken, suffered death for their attempts, were some of the *Metapontines*, and other Cities of the *Greeks*, inhabiting that Eastern part of *Italy*, which was called of old, *Magna Gracia*. These people took to heart the death of their Hostages, and thought the punishment greater than the offence. Wherefore the *Metapontines*, as soon as the *Roman* garrison was taken from them to defend the Citadell of *Tarentum*, made no more ado, but opened their gates to *Hannibal*. The *Thurians* would have done the like, upon the like reason, had not some companies lye in their Town;

Town; which they feared that they should not be able to master. Nevertheless, they helped themselves by cunning: inviting to their gates *Hanno* and *Mago*, that were near at hand: against whom whilst they proffered their service to *Atinius* the *Roman* Captain, they drew him forth to fight, and recoyling from him, closed up their gates. A little familiarity they used in pretending fear, lest the enemy should break in together with the *Romans*, in saving *Atinius* himself, and sending him away by Sea; as also in consulting a small while (because perhaps many of their chief men were unacquainted with the practice) whether they should yeeld to the *Carthaginians* or no. But this disposition lasted not long: for they that had removed the chief impediment, easily prevailed in the rest, and delivered up the Town to *Hanno* and *Mago*. This good successe, and hope of the like, detained *Hannibal* in those quarters, whilst the Consuls fortifying *Beneventum* to secure their backs, addressed themselves to the siege of *Capua*.

Many disasters befell the *Romans*, in the beginning of this great enterprise. *T. Sempronius Gracchus*, a very good man of War, that had of late been twice Consul, was slain; either by treachery of some *Lucans*, that drew him into ambush, or by some *Carthaginian* stragglers, among whom he fell unawares. His body, or his head, was very honourably interred, either by *Hannibal* himself, or (for the reports agree not) by the *Romans*, to whom *Hannibal* sent it. He was appointed to lie in *Beneventum*; there to secure the back of the Army that should besiege *Capua*. But his death hapned in an ill time, to the great hinderance of that business. The Volones or Slaves lately manumitted, forsook their Ensigns, and went every one whither he thought good, as if they had been discharged by the decease of their Leader; so that it asked some labour to seek them out, and bring them back into their Camp. Nevertheless, the Consuls went forward with their work, & drawing near to *Capua*, did all acts of hostility, which they could. *Mago* the *Carthaginian*, and the Citizens of *Capua* gave them an hard welcome, wherein above fifteen hundred *Romans* were lost. Neither was it long ere *Hannibal* came thither, who fought with the Consuls, and had the better; inso much, that he caused them to dislodge. They removed by night, and went severall waies: *Fulvius* towards *Canna*, *Claudius* into *Lucania*. *Hannibal* followed after *Claudius*, who having led him a great walk, fetcht a compass about, and returned to *Capua*. It so fell out, that one *Marcus Centenius Penula*, a stout man, & one that with good commendations had discharged the place of a Centurion, lay with an Army not far from thence, where *Hannibal* rested, when he was weary of hunting after *Claudius*. This *Penula* had made great vaunts to the *Roman* Senate, of wonders which he would work, if he might be trusted with the leading of five thousand men. The Fathers were unwilling in such a time, to reject the virtue of any good Souldier, how mean soever his condition were. Wherefore they gave him the charge of eight thousand: and he himself being a proper man, and talking bravely, gathered up so many volunteers, as almost doubled his number. But meeting thus with *Hannibal*, he gave proof of the difference between a stout Centurion, and one able to command in chief. He and his fellows were all (in a manner) slain, scarce a thousand of them escaping. Soon after this, *Hannibal* had word, that *Cneus Fulvius* a *Roman* Prætor with eighteen thousand men was in *Apulia*, very careless, and a man insufficient for the charge which he held. Thither therefore he hastened to visit him: hoping to deal the better with the main strength of *Rome*, which pointed at *Capua*, when he should have cut off those forces, that lay in the Provinces about, under men of small ability. Comming upon *Fulvius*, he found him and his men so jolly, that needs they would have fought the first night. Wherefore it was not to be doubted, what would happen the day following. So he bestowed *Mago* with three thousand of his lightest armed, in places thereabout most fit for ambush. Then offering battell to *Fulvius*, he soon had him in the trap: whence he made him glad to escape alive; leaving all, save two thousand of his followers, dead behind him.

These two great blowes, received the one presently after the other, much astonished the *Romans*. Nevertheless, all care was taken, to gather up the small reliques of the broken Armies: and that the Consuls should go substantially forwards with the siege of *Capua*: which was of great consequence, both in matter of reputation, and in many other respects. The two Consuls sat down before the Town, and *C. Claudius Nero*, one of the Prætors, came with his Army from *Suessula*, to their assistance. They made Proclamation, That whosoever would shue out of *Capua* before a certain day prefixed, should



have his pardon, and be suffered to enjoy all that unto him belonged: which day being past, there should be no grace expected. This offer was contumeliously rejected; the *Capuans* relying on their own strength, and the succours attended from *Hannibal*. Before the City was closed up, they sent messengers to the *Carthaginians*; which found him at *Brundisium*. He had made a long journey in hope of gaining the *Tarentine* Citadell: of which expectation failing, he turned to *Brundisium*, upon advertisement that he should be let in. There the *Capuans* met him, told him of their danger with earnest words; and were with words as bravely re-comforted. He bade them consider, how a few dayes since he had chased the Consuls out of their fields; and told them, that he would presently come thither again, and send the *Romans* going as fast as before. With this good answer to the Messengers returned, and hardly could get back into the City, which the *Romans* had almost intrenched round. As for *Hannibal* himself, he was of opinion, that *Capua*, being very well manned, and heartily devoted unto his friendship, would hold out a long time, and thereby give him leisure to do what he thought requisite among the *Tarentines*, and in those Eastern parts of *Italy*; whilst the *Roman* Army spent it self in a tedious siege. Thus he lingered, & thereby gave the Consuls time, both to fortifie themselves at *Capua*, and to dispatch the election of new Magistrates in *Rome*; whilst he himself pursued hopes that never found success.

*Claudius* and *Fulvius*, when their terme of office was expired, were appointed to continue the siege at *Capua*; retaining the same Armies as Proconsuls. The Towns-men of it ten sallied out; rather in a bravery, than likelihood to work any matter of effect; the Enemy lying close within his Trenches, as intending without other violence, to subdue them by famine. Yet against the *Campan* horse (for their foot was easily beaten) the *Romans* used to thrust out some troops, that should hold them skirmish. In these exercises the *Campan*s usually had the better, to the great grief of their proud Enemy; who scorned to take foile at the hands of such Rebels. It was therefore devised, that some active and courageous young men should learn to ride behinde the *Roman* men at arms; leaping up, and again dismounting lightly, as occasion served. These were furnished like the *Felices*, having each of them three or four small darts: which alighting in time of conflict, they discharged thick upon the Enemies horse; whom vanquishing in this kind of service, they much disheartened in the main. The time thus passing, and famine daily increasing within the City, *Hannibal* came at length, not expected by the *Romans*; and taking a Fort of theirs, called *Galatin*, fell upon their Camp. At the same time the *Capuans* issued with their whole power, in as terrible manner as they could devise: setting all their multitude of unserviceable people by the walls, which with a loud noise of Pans and Basons, troubled those that were occupied in fight. *Appius Claudius* opposing himself to the *Campan*s, easily defended his Trenches against them; and so well represted them, that he drove them at length back into their City. Nevertheless, in pursuing them to their gates, He received a wound that accompanied him in short space after to his grave. *Q. Fulvius* was held harder to his task by *Hannibal*, and the *Carthaginian* Army. The *Roman* camp was even at point to have been lost; and *Hannibal* his Elephants, of which he brought three and thirty, were either gotten within the rampart, or else (for the report varies) being some of them slain upon it, fell into the ditch; & filled it up in such sort, that their bodies served as a bridge unto the Assailants. It is said, that *Hannibal* in this tumult caused some fugitives that could speak Latine well, to proclaim aloud as it were in the Consuls name, That every one of the Souldiers should shift for himself, and lie betimes unto the next hills, for as much as the Camp was already lost. But all would not serve. The fraud was detected: and the Army having sitten there so long, had at good leisure strongly intrenched it self, so as little hope there was to raise the siege by force.

This did extremely perplex the *Carthaginian*. The purchase of *Capua* had (as was thought) with-held him from taking *Rome* it self: and now his desire of winning the *Tarentine* Citadell, had well-near lost *Capua*; in respect of which, neither the Citadell, nor the City of *Tarentum* were to have been much regarded. Falling therefore into a desperate anger with himself and his hard fortune, that of so many great victories he had made no greater use: on the sudden he entertained an haughty resolution, even to set upon *Rome*; and carry to the walls of that proud City, the danger of Warre that threatened *Capua*. This he thought would be a mean, to draw the *Roman* Generals, or

one

one of them at least, unto the defence of their owne home. If they rose from the siege with their whole Army, then had he his desire: If they divided their forces, then was it likely, that either he or the *Campan*s, should well enough deal with them apart. Neither did he despair, that the terror of his coming might to astonish the multitude within *Rome*, as he might enter some part or other of the City. His only fear was, left the *Campan*s, being ignorant of his purpose, should think he had forsaken them; and thereupon forthwith yield themselves to the Enemy. To prevent this danger, he sent letters to *Capua* by a subtle *Nuimidian*: who running as a fugitive into the *Roman* Camp, conveyed himself thence over the innermost Trenches into the City. The journey to *Rome* was to be performed with great celerity: no small hope of good success resting in the suddenesse of his arrivall there. Wherefore he caused his men, to have in a readinesse ten dayes victuals; and prepared as many boats, as might in one night transport his Army over the River *Fulturnus*. This could not be done so closely, but that the *Roman* Generals, by some fugitives, had notice of his purpose: With this danger therefore they acquainted the Senate; which was therewith affected, according to the diversity of mens opinions, in a case of such importance. Some gave counsell to let alone *Capua*, yea, and all places else, rather then to put the Town of *Rome* into perill of being taken by the enemy. Others were so far from allowing of this, as they wondered how any man could think, that *Hannibal*, being unable to relieve *Capua*, should judge himself strong enough to towne *Rome*; and therefore stoutly said, That those Legions, which were kept at home for defence of the City, would serve the turn well enough, to keep him out and send him thence, if he were so unwise as to come thither. But it was finally concluded, that Letters should be sent to *Fulvius* & *Claudius*, acquainting them perfectly with the forces, that at the present were in *Rome*: who, since they knew best what the strength was which *Hannibal* could bring along with him, were best able to judge, what was needfull to oppose him. So it was referred unto the discretion of these Generals at *Capua*, to do as they thought behoovefull: and if it might conveniently be, neither to raise their siege, nor yet to put the City of *Rome* into much adventure. According to this Decree of the Senate, *Q. Fulvius* took fifteen thousand foot, and a thousand horse, the choice of his whole Army: with which he hastened toward *Rome*, leaving *App. Claudius*, who could not travel by reason of his wound, to continue the siege at *Capua*.

*Hannibal* having passed over *Fulturnus*, burnt up all his boats; and left nothing that might transport the Enemy, in case he should offer to pursue or coast him. Then hastened he away toward *Rome*, staying no longer in any one place, than he needs must. Yet found he the Bridges over *Liris* broken down by the people of *Fregella*: which as it stopped him a little on his way; so it made him the more grievously to spoyle their lands, while the Bridges were in mending. The nearer that he drew to *Rome*, the greater waste he made: his *Nuimilians* running before him: driving the Country, and killing or taking multitudes of all sorts and ages, that fled out of all parts round about. The messengers of these newes came apace, one after another into the City, some few bringing true advertisements; but the most of them reporting the conceits of their own fear. All the streets and Temples in *Rome* were pestered with women, crying, and praying, and rubbing the Altars with their hair, because they could do none other good. The Senators were all in the great Market, or place of Assembly, ready to give their advice, if it were asked, or to take directions given by the Magistrates. All places of most importance were stuffed with souldiers: it being uncertain, upon which part *Hannibal* would fall. In the midst of this trepidation, there came newes that *Quintus Fulvius*, with part of the Army from *Capua*, was hastening to the defence of the City. The Office of a Proconsull did expire, at his returne home, and entry into the Gates of *Rome*. Wherefore, that *Fulvius* might lose nothing by coming into the City in time of such need, an Act was passed, That he should have equal power with the Consuls during his abode there. He and *Hannibal* arrived at *Rome*, one soon after another: *Fulvius* having been long held occupied in passing over *Fulturnus*; and *Hannibal* receiving impediment in his journey, as much as the Country was able to give. The Consuls, and *Fulvius*, incamped without the gates of *Rome*, attending the *Carthaginian*. Thither they called the Senate: and as the danger grew nearer and greater; so took they more carefull and especiall order against all occurrences. *Hannibal* came to the River *Anio* or *Anien*, three miles from the Town; whence he advanced with two thousand horse,

D d d d 2

and



and rode along a great way under the Walls, viewing the site thereof, and considering how he might best approach it. But he either went, or (as the *Roman* Story saith) was driven away, without doing or receiving any hurt. Many tumults rose in this while among the people; but were suppressed by care and diligence of the Senators. Above the rest one accident was both troublesome, and not without peril. Of *Numidians* that had shifted aside, and fallen upon some displeasures from *Hannibal* to the *Romans*, there were some twelve hundred then in *Rome*: which were appointed by the Consuls, to pass through the Town, from the Mount *Aventine*, to the Gate *Collina*, where it was thought that their service might be useful, among broken ways, and Garden was lying in the suburbs. The faces of these men, and their furniture, wherein they differed not from the followers of *Hannibal*; bred such mistaking, as caused a great uproar among the people: all crying out that *Aventine* was taken, and the Enemy gotten within the walls. The noise was such, that men could not be informed of the truth: and the streets were so full of cattell, and husbandmen, which were fled thither out of the Villages adjoining, that the passage was stopp'd up: and the poor *Numidians* pitifully beaten from the house tops, with stones and other weapons that came next to hand, by the desperate multitude, that would have run out at the Gates, had it not been certain who lay under the Walls. To remedy the like inconveniences, it was ordained, That all which had been Dictators, Consuls, or Censors, should have authority as Magistrates, till the Enemy departed. The day following *Hannibal* passed over *Avien*, and presented battle to the *Romans*, who did not wisely if they undertook it. It is said, that a terrible shewre of rain, caused both *Romans* and *Carthaginians* to return into their severall Camps: and that this happened two dayes together, the weather breaking up and clearing as soon as they were departed asunder: certain it is, that *Hannibal*, who had brought along with him no more than ten dayes provision, could not indure to stay there, until his victuals were all spent. In which regard the *Romans*, if they suffered him to waste his time and provisions, knowing that he could not abide there long, did as became well advised men: if they offered to fight with him, and either had the better or were parted (as is said) by some accident of weather, the commendations must be given to their fortune. The terror of *Hannibal's* coming to the City, how great so ever it was at the first, yet after some leisure, and better notice taken of their forces, which appeared lesse than the first apprehension had formed them, was much and soon abated. Hereunto it helped well, that at the same time the supply appointed for *Spain*, after the death of the two *Scipios*, were sent out of the Town, & went forth at the gate, whilst one *Carthaginian* lay before another. In all *Panick terrors*, as they are called, whereof there is either no cause known, or no cause answerable to the greatness of the sudden consternation; it is a good remedy to do somewhat quite contrary to that which the danger would require, were it such as men have fashioned it in their amazed conceits. Thus did *Alexander* cause his souldiers to disarm themselves, when they were all on a sudden in a great fear of they wist not what. And thus did *Clearchus* pacifie a foolish uproar in his Army, by proclaiming a reward unto him that could tell who had sent the Ass into the Camp. But in this present example of the *Romans*, appears withall a great magnanimity: whereby they sustained their reputation, and augmented it no less, than by this bold attempt of *Hannibal* it might seem to have been diminished. Neither could they more finely have checked the glorious conceits of their enemies, and taken away the disgrace of that fear, which clouded their valour at his first coming: than by making such demonstrations, when once they had recovered spirit, how little they esteemed him. To this purpose therefore that very piece of ground, on which the *Carthaginian* lay encamped, was sold in *Rome*: and sold it was nothing under the value, but at as good a rate, as if it had been in time of peace. This indignity coming to his ear, incited *Hannibal* so much, that he made sport-sale of the Silver-smithes shops, which were near about the Market or Common place in *Rome*; as if his own title to the houses within the Town were no wiser, than any *Roman* Citizens could be unto that piece of ground, whereon he raised his Tent. But this counter-practise was nothing worth. The *Romans* did seek to manifest that assurance which they justly had conceived; *Hannibal*, to make shew of continuing in an hope, which was already past. His victuals were almost spent: and of those vents, that he had proposed unto himself, this journey had brought forth none other, than the shame of his much daring. Wherefore he brake up his Camp: and doing what

spoil

spoil he could of the *Roman* Territory, without sparing religious places, wherein wealth was to be gotten, he passed like a tempest over the Country; and ran toward the Eastern Sea so fast, that he had almost taken the City of *Rhegium* before his arrivall was feared or suspected: As for *Capua*, he gave it lost: and is likely to have cursed the whole faction of *Hanno*, which thus disabled him to relieve that fair City, since he had no other way to vent his grief.

*Q. Fabius* returning back to *Capua*, made Proclamation a now, that who so would yield, before a certain day; might safely do it. This, and the very return of *Fulvius*, without any more appearance of *Hannibal*, gave the *Capuans* to understand, that they were abandoned; and their case desperate. To trust the *Roman* pardon proclaimed, every mans conscience of his own evil desert, told him; that it was a vanity: and some faint hope was given, by *Hanno* and *Boissar*, Captains of the *Carthaginian* Garrison within the Town, that *Hannibal* should come again; if means could only be found, how to convey such Letters unto him: as they would write. The carriage of the Letters was undertaken by some *Numidians*: who running as fugitives, out of the Town into the *Roman* camp, waited fit opportunity to make an escape thence with their packets. But it hapned ere they could convey themselves away; that one of them was detected by an harlot following him out of the Town; and the Letters of *Boissar* and *Hanno* were taken and opened, containing a vehement intreaty unto *Hannibal*, that he would not so forsake the *Capuans* and them: For (said they) we came not hither to make Warre against *Rhegium* and *Tarentum*; but against the *Romans*: whose Legions, wherebeit they lie; there also should the *Carthaginian* Army be ready to attend them; and by railing of such course, have we gotten those victories at *Trebia*, *Thrasymene*, and *Cannae*. In fine, they besought him; that he would not dishonour himself, and betray them to their enemies; by turning another way; as if it were his only care; that the City should not be taken in his full view: promising to make a desperate fall, if he would once more adventure to set upon the *Roman* Camp. Such were the hopes of *Boissar* and his fellow.

But *Hannibal* had already done his best: and now began to faint under the burden of that Warre, wherein as afterward he protested he was vanquished by *Han-Liv. lib. 30.* and his Partisans in the *Carthaginian* Senate; rather than by any force of *Rome*. It may well be, as a thing incident in like cases, that some of those which were besieged in *Capua*, had been sent over by the *Hannibonians*, to observe the doings of *Hannibal*, and to check his proceedings. It this were so, justly might they curse their own malice, which had cast them into this remediless necessity. Howsoever it were, the Letters directed unto *Hannibal*, fell (as is shewed) into the *Roman* Proconsuls hands; who cutting off the hands of all such counterfeit fugitives, as carried such messages; whipt them back into the Town. This miserable spectacle brake the hearts of the *Capuans*, so that the multitude crying out upon the Senate, with menacing termes, caused them to assemble and consult, about the yeelding up of *Capua* unto the *Romans*. The bravest of the Senators and such as a few years since, had been most forward in joyning with *Hannibal*, understood well enough whereunto the matter tended. Wherefore one of them invited the rest home to supper: telling them, that when they had made good cheer, he would drink to them such an health, as should set them free from that cruel revenge, which the Enemies sought upon their Bodies. About seven and twenty of the Senators there were, that liking well of this motion, ended their lives together, by drinking poison. All the rest hoping for more mercy, than they had deserved, yeilded simply to discretion. So one of the Town-gates was set open, whereto a *Roman* Legion, with some other Companies; entring, disarmed the Citizens; apprehended the *Carthaginian* Garrison; and commanded all the Senators of *Capua* to go forth into the *Roman* camp. At their coming thither, the Proconsuls laid yrons upon them all, and commanding them to tell what store of gold and silver they had at home, sent them into safe custody; some to *Cales*, others to *Therhann*. Touching the generall multitude, they were referred unto the discretion of the Senate: yet so hardly used by *Fulvius* in the meane while, that they had little cause of hope or comfort in this adversity. *Ap. Claudius* was brought even to the point of death, by the wound which he had lately received: yet was he not inexorable to the *Capuans*; as having loved them well in former times, & having given his daughter in marriage to that *Pacuvius*, of whom we spake before. But this facility

D d d d 3

of

of his Colleague, made *Fulvius* the more hasty in taking vengeance: for fear, left upon the like respects, the *Roman* Senate might prove more gentle, than he thought behoveful to the common safety, and honour of their State. Wherefore he took the pains to ride by night unto *Theanum*, and from thence to *Cales*: where he caused all the *Campan* prisoners to suffer death; binding them to stakes, and scourging them first a good while with rods; after which he struck off their heads.

This terrible example of vengeance, which the *Carthaginians* could not hinder, made all towns of *Italy* the less apt to follow the vain hope of the *Campan*: and bred a general inclination, to return upon good conditions to the *Roman* side. The *Atellans*, *Calatines* and *Subastines*, people of the *Campan*, that in the former change had followed to the fortune of *Capua*, made also now the like submission, for very fear and want of ability to resist. They were therefore used with the like rigour, by *Fulvius*: who dealt so extremely with them all, that he brought them into desperation. Wherefore some of their young gentlemen burning with fire of revenge, got into *Rome*: where they found means by night-time, to set on fire so many houses, that a great part of the City was like to have been consumed. The beginning of the fire in diverse places at once, argued that it was no casualty. Wherefore liberty was proclaimed unto any slave, and other sufficient reward to any free man, that should discover who those Incendiaries were. Thus all came out, and the *Campan* being detected by a slave of their own (to whom, above his liberty promised, was given about the sum of an hundred marks) had the punishment answered so able to their delicts. *Fulvius* hereby being more and more incensed against this wretched people, held them in a manner as prisoners within their Walls: and this extreme severity caused them at length to become Suppliants unto the *Roman* Senate; that some period might be set unto their miseries. That whereupon the Senators resolved in the end, was worse than all that which they had suffered before. Only two poor women in *Capua* (of which one had been a harlot) were found not guilty of the late rebellion. The rest were, some of them, with their wives and children sold for slaves, and their goods confiscated; others laid in prison, and referred to further deliberation: but the generality of them, commanded to depart out of *Campania* by a certain day, and confined unto several places, as best liked the angry victors. As for the town of *Capua*, it was suffered to stand, in regard of the beauty and commodious site: but no corporation or form of polity was allowed to be therein; only a *Roman* Provost was every year sent to govern over those that should inhabit it, and to do justice. This was the greatest act, and most important, hitherto done by the people of *Rome*, after many great losses in the present war. After this, the glory of *Hannibal* began to shine with a more dim light than before: his oil being far spent; and that which should have revived his flame, being unfortunately shed; as shall be told in place convenient.

#### §. XV.

How the Carthaginians, making a party in Sardinia and Sicil, held War against the Romans in those Islands, and were overcome.

WHILEST things passed thus in *Italy*, the commotions raised in *Sardinia* and *Sicil* by the *Carthaginians* and their friends, were brought to a quiet and happy end by the industrious valour of the *Romans*. The *Sardinian* rebellion was great and sudden: above thirty thousand being up in arms, ere the *Roman* forces could arrive there to suppress it. One *Harfcoras* with his son *Hyestus*, mighty men in that Island, were the Ring leaders, being incited by *Hanno* a *Carthaginian*, that promised the assistance of his country. Neither were the *Carthaginians* in this enterprise so careless, as in the rest of their main undertakings, about the same time. Yet it had been better if their care had been directed unto the prosecution of that main business in *Italy*; whereon this and all other hopes depended. For it would have sufficed, if they could have hindered the *Romans* from sending an Army into *Sardinia*. *Harfcoras* with his followers might well enough have served to drive out *Quintus Mutius* the Prætor: who lay sick in the Province, and not more weak in his own body, than in his train. But whilst they fought revenge of that particular injury, whereof the sense was most grievous; they neglected the opportunity of requiring those that had done them wrong, and of securing themselves from all injuries in the future. Their fortune also in this enter-

enter-

enterprise was such, as may seem to have encouraged them from being at the like charge, in cases of more importance. For whereas they sent over *Asdrubal*, surnamed the Bald, with a competent fleet and Army, assisted in this expedition by *Hanno* the Author of the rebellion, and by *Mago* a Gentleman of the *Barbim* house, and near kinsman to *Hannibal*: it so fell out, that the whole fleet, by extremity of foul weather, was cast upon the *Baleares*; so beaten, and in such evil plight, that the *Sardinians* had even spent their hearts, and were in a manner quite vanquished, ere these their friends could arrive to succour them.

*Titus Manlius* was sent from *Rome* with two and twenty thousand foot, and twelve hundred horse, to settle the estate of that Island, which he had taken in, and annexed unto the *Roman* dominion, long before this, in his Consulship. It was a laudable custom of the *Romans*, to preserve and uphold, in their several provinces, the greatness and reputation of those men, and their families, by whom each Province had been first subdued unto their Empire. If any injury were done unto the Provincials, if any grace were to be obtained from the Senate, or whatsoever accident required the assistance of a Patron, the first Conquerour, and his race after him, were the most ready and best approved means, to procure the benefit of the people subdued. Hereby the *Romans* held very sure intelligence, in every Province, and had always in readiness for men to reclaim their Subjects, if they fell into any such disorder, as would otherwise have required a greater charge and trouble. The coming of *Manlius* retained in obedience all that were not already broken too far out. Yet was *Harfcoras* so strong in his pride, that *Manlius* was compelled to arm his Mariners: without whom he could not have made up that number of two and twenty thousand, whereof we have spoken before: he landed at *Calari*, or *Carallia*, where mooring his ships, he passed up into the Countrey, and sought out the Enemy. *Hyestus*, the sonne of *Harfcoras*, had then the command of the *Sardinian* Army left unto him by his father, who was gone abroad into the Countrey, to draw in more friends to their side. This young gentleman would needs adventure upon honour, by giving battell to the *Romans* at his own discretion. So he rashly adventured to fight with an old Souldier: by whom he received a terrible overthrow, and lost in one day above thirty thousand of his followers; *Hyestus* himself, with the rest of his broken troups, got into *Cornus*, the chief Town of the Island: whither *Manlius* pursued them. Very soon after this defeat came *Asdrubal* with his *Carthaginians*; too late to win all *Sardinia* in such haste as he might have done, if the tempest had not hindered his voyage: yet soon enough, and strong enough to save the Town of *Cornus*, and to put a new spirit into the Rebels. *Manlius* hereupon withdrew himself back to *Calari*: where he had not stayed long, ere the *Sardinians* (such of them as adhered to the *Roman* party) craved his assistance, their Countrey being wasted by the *Carthaginians*, and the rebels, with whom they had refused to joyn. This drew *Manlius* forth of *Calari*: where, if he had stayed a little longer, *Asdrubal* would have fought him out with some blemish to his reputation. But the fame of *Asdrubal* and his company, appears to have been greater than was their strength. For after some triall made of them in few skirmishes, *Manlius* adventured all to the hazzard of a battell; wherein he slew twelve thousand of the enemies, and took of the *Sardinians*, and *Carthaginians* three thousand. Four hours the battell lasted; and victory at length fell to the *Romans*, by the flight of the Islanders, whose courages had been broken in their unprosperous fight, not many dayes before. The death of young *Hyestus*, and of his father *Harfcoras*, that slew himself for grief, together with the captivity of *Asdrubal* himself, with *Mago* and *Hanno* the *Carthaginians*, made the victory the more famous. The vanquished Army fled into *Cornus*; whither *Manlius* followed them, and in short space won the Town. All other Cities of the Isle that had rebelled, followed the example of *Cornus*, and yielded unto the *Romans*, who imposing upon them such increase of tribute, or other punishment, as best suited with the nature of their several offences, or their ability to pay, returned back to *Calari* with a great booty, and from thence to *Rome* leaving *Sardinia* in quiet.

The war in *Sicil* was of greater length, and every way more burdensome to *Rome*; as also the victory brought more honour and profit, for that the *Romans* became thereby, not only saviors of their own, as in *Sardinia*; but Lords of the whole Countrey, by annexing the City and dominion of *Syracuse*, to that which they enjoyed before. Soon after

after the battell of *Canna*, the old King of *Syracuse* died, who had continued long a faithful friend unto the *Romans*; and greatly relieved them in this present war. He left his Kingdome to *Hieronymus* his grand-child; that was about fifteen years of age. *Gelo* his sonne, that should have been his heir, being dead before. To this young King his successour, *Hiero* appointed fifteen tutors: of which the principall were *Andronodorus*, *Zoilus*, and *Themistius*; who had married his daughters; or the daughters of *Gelo*: The rest were such, as he judged most likely to preserve the Kingdome, by the same art, whereby himself had gotten and so long kept it. But within a little while, *Andronodorus* waxing weary of so many coadjutors, began to contemne the sufficiency of the young Prince, as extraordinary in one of his years; and said, that he was able to rule the Kingdome without help of any Protector. Thus by giving over his own charge, he caused others to do the like: hoping thereby to get the King wholly into his hands; which came to passe in a fort, as he desired. For *Hieronymus*, laying aside all care of government, gave himself wholly over to his pleasures; or, if he had any regard of his Royall dignity, it was only in matter of exterior show; as wearing a Diadem, with ornaments of purple, and being attended by an armed guard. Hereby he offended the eyes of his people; that had never seen the like in *Hiero*, or in *Gelo* his sonne. But much more he offended them, when by his insolent behaviour, fitable to his outward pompe, he gave proof, that in course of life, he would revive the memory of *Tyrants* dead long since, from whom he took the pattern of his habit. He grew proud, lustfull, cruell, and dangerous to all that were about him: so that such of his late tutors as could escape him by flight, were glad to live in banishment: the rest, being most of them put to death by the Tyrant; many of them dying by their own hands, to avoid the danger of his displeasure, that seemed worse than death it self. Only *Andronodorus*, *Zoilus*, and one *Thraso* continued in grace with him; and were his Counsellors, but not of his Cabinet. These, howsoever they agreed in other points, were at some dissension about the main point of adhering, either to the *Romans*, or to the *Carthaginians*. The two former of them were wholly for the Kings pleasure, which was set on change: but *Thraso*, having more regard of his honour and profit, was very earnest to continue the amity with *Rome*. Whilst as yet it remained somewhat doubtfull which way the King would incline, a conspiracy against his person was detected: by a Groom of his; to whom one *Theodorus* had broken the matter. *Theodorus* hereupon was apprehended, and tormented; thereby to wring out of him the whole practice, and the names of the undertakers. Long it was ere he would speak anything: but yielding (as it seemed) in the end, unto the extremity of the torture, he confessed, that he had been set on by *Thraso*; whom he appeached of the treason, together with many more, that were near in love or place unto *Hieronymus*. All these therefore were put to death, being innocent of the crime: wherewith they were charged. But they that were indeed the Conspirators, walked boldly in the streets, and never shrunk for the matter: assuring themselves, that the resolution of *Theodorus* would yeeld to no extremity. Thus they all elapsed, and soon after found means to execute their purpose. The King himself, when *Thraso* was taken out of the way, quickly resolved upon siding with the *Carthaginians*, whereto he was very inclinable before. Young men, when first they grow Masters of themselves, love to seem wiser than their fathers, by taking different courses. And the Liberality of *Hiero* to the *Romans*, in their great necessity, had of late been such, as might have been termed excessive, were it not in regard of his providence; wherein he took order for his own Estate, that depended upon theirs. But the young *Nephew* taking little heed of dangers farre off, regarded only the things present; the weaknesse of *Rome*, the prevalent fortunes of *Carthage*, and the much money that his grand-father had layed out in vain, to shoulder up a falling house. Wherefore he dealt with *Hannibal*: who readily entred into good correspondence with him; that was maintained by *Hippocrates* and *Epicides*; *Carthaginians* borne, but grand-children of a banished *Syracusan*. These grew into such favour with *Hieronymus*, that they drew him whither they listed. So that when *App. Claudius* the Roman Prætor, hearing what was towards, made a motion of renewing the Confederacy, between the people of *Rome*, and the King of *Syracuse*; his messengers were dismissed with an open scoffe. For *Hieronymus* would needs have them tell him the order of the fight at *Canna*, that he might thereby learn how to accommodate himself; saying, that he could hardly beleeve the *Carthaginians*

so wonderfull was the victory as they reported it. Having thus dismissed the *Romans*, he sent Embassadors to *Carthage*, where he concluded a league: with condition, at first, that a great part of the Island should be annexed to his Dominion; but afterward, that he should reign over all *Sicily*; and the *Carthaginians* rest satisfied with what they could get in *Italy*. At these doings *Appius Claudius* did not greatly stir: partly for the indignities that were offered; partly for that it beloveth not the *Romans* to entertain more quarrels, than were enforced upon them by necessity; and partly (as may seem) for that the reputation, both of himself, and of his City, had received such blemish, by that which hapned unto him in his journey, as much discouraged him when he came into *Sicily*, and forbade him to look big. The money that *Hiero* had bestowed formerly upon the *Romans*, wherewith to relieve them in their necessity, this *Appius* was to carry back unto him: it being refused by the Roman Senat, with greater bravery than their present fortune would allow. But in stead of returning the money, with thanks, as he had been directed, and as it had been noised abroad that he should do: the war against *Philip* King of *Macedon* (whereof we have spoken before) compelled the *Romans* to lay aside their vain-glory, and send word after him, that he should consign that money over to *Marcus Valerius*; of whose voyage into *Greece*, the City had not otherwise wherewith to bear the charge. This was done accordingly, and hereby *Claudius* (which name in the whole continuance of that Family is taxed with pride) his errand was changed, from a glorious ostentation of the Roman magnanimity, into such a pitfull tune of thank-giving, as must needs have bred sorrow and commiseration in so true a friend as *Hiero*; or if it were delivered after his death, matter of paffime and scorn, in *Hieronymus* the new King.

But whilst *Hieronymus* was more desirous of war, than well resolved how to begin it: his own death changed the form of things, and bred a great innovation in the state of *Syracuse*; which thereby might have prospered more than ever, had it been wisely governed. *Hippocrates* and *Epicides*, of whom we spake before, were sent about the Countrey with two thousand men, to solicit the Towns, and persuade them to shake off their obedience to the *Romans*. The King himself with an Army of fifteen thousand horse and foot, went to *Leontium*, a City of his own Dominion: hoping that the time of his preparation, would make the whole Island fall to him in all haste, and accept him for Sovereign. There the Conspirators took him on the sudden, as he was passing through a narrow street: and rubbing between him and his guard, strook him dead. Forthwith liberty was proclaimed: and the sound of that word so joyfully answered by the *Leontines*, that the guard of *Hieronymus* had little courage to revenge their Masters death. Yet, for fear of the worst, a great largesse was promised unto the Souldiers, with rewards unto their Captains; which wrought so effectually, that when many wicked acts of the murdered King were reckoned up, the Army, as in detestation of his bad life, suffered his carkasse to lie unburied. These newes ran quickly to *Syracuse*; whither some of the Conspirators, taking also of the Kings horses, posted away; to signify that all that had passed, to stirre up the people to liberty, and to prevent *Andronodorus*, if he or his followers would make offer to usurp a tyranny. The *Syracusians* hereupon presently took armes, and made themselves masters of their own City. *Andronodorus* on the other side fortified the Palace, and the Island; being yet uncertain whereto do: between desire of making himself a sovereign Lord, and fear of suffering punishment as a Tyrant, if his enterprise mis-carried. His wife *Demarata*, that was the daughter of *Hiero*, cherished him in his hopes: putting him in minde of that well-known Proverb, which *Dionysius* had used; That a Tyrant should keep his place, till he were haled out of it by the heels, and not ride away from it on horse-back. But fear, and better counsell, so prevailed so far, that *Andronodorus*, having slept upon the matter, dissembled his affections, and deferred his hope unto better opportunity. The next day he came forth, and made a speech unto the people; telling them, that he was glad to see, how prudently they behaved themselves in so great a change; that he had stood in fear, lest they would not have contained themselves within the bounds of discretion; but rather have sought to murder all without difference, that any way belonged to the Tyrant; and that, since he beheld their orderly proceeding, and their care, not to ravish their liberty perforce, but to wed it unto them for ever, he was willingly come to them forth of his strength, and surrendered up the charge committed unto him, by one that had bin an

evil master both to him and them. Hereupon great joy was made, and Prætors chosen (as in former times) to govern the City, of which *Andronodorus* was one, and the chief. But such was his desire of Sovereignty, and so vehement were the instigations of his wife, that shortly he began to practise with *Hippocrates*, *Epicles*, and other Captains of the Mercenaries; hoping to make himself strong by their help, that were least pleased with the change. *Hippocrates* and *Epicles* had been with the *Syracusan* Prætors, and told them, that being sent from *Hannibal* to *Hieronymus*, they according to instructions of their Captain, had done him, whilst he lived, what service they could; and that now they were desirous to return home. They requested therefore that they might be friendly dismissed, and with a convoy, that might keep them from falling into the hands of the *Romans*, and set them safe at *Loeri*. This was easily granted, both for that the *Syracusan* Magistrates were well contented to earn thanks of *Hannibal*, with such a little courtesie; and for that they thought it expedient, to rid their Town quickly of this troublesome couple, which were good souldiers, and gracious with the Army, but otherwise lewd men. It was not the desire of these two *Sicilians*, to be gone so hastily as they made shew; they were more mindfull of the business for which *Hannibal* had sent them. Wherefore they insinuated themselves into the bosomes of such as were most likely to fill the Army with tumult, especially of the *Roman* fugitives, and those that had cause to mistrust what should become of themselves, when the *Romans* and *Syracusians* were come to agreement. Such instruments as these, *Andronodorus* had so great need of: as also of many other, to help him in his dangerous attempt. He found *Themisius*, that had married *Harmonia*, the sister of *Hieronymus*, ready to take his part, as being carryed with the like passions of his own, and of his wife. But in seeking to increase the number of his adherents, he revealed the matter to one, that revealed all to the rest of the Prætors. Hereupon it followed, that he, and *Themisius*, entering into the Senate, were slain out of hand: and afterward accused to the people, of all the evil which they had done, whilst *Hieronymus* lived, as by his authority; and now since attempted, in seeking to usurp the tyranny themselves. It was also declared, that the daughters of *Hiero* and *Gelo* were accessory to this dangerous treason: and that the unquiet spirits of these women would never cease to work, until they had recovered those royal ornaments and Sovereign power, whereof their family was now dispossessed. These daughters therefore of *Hiero* and *Gelo* were also condemned to die, and executioners presently sent by the enraged people, to take away their lives. *Demarata* and *Harmonia* had perhaps deserved this heavy sentence: but *Heraclea*, the daughter of *Hiero*, and wife of *Sosippus*, being altogether innocent, was murdered together with her two young daughters, in the hasty execution of this rash judgement. Her husband *Sosippus* was a lover of the Common-wealth; and in that respect so hated by *Hieronymus*, that being sent Embassadour to King *Ptolemy*, &c. he durst not return home, but stayed in *Egypt* as a banished man. This consideration, when it was too late, together with some pitifull accidents accompanying the slaughter, so affected the multitude, that (pardoning themselves) all cried out upon the Authors of so foule a butchery. Being thus incensed against the Senate; and knowing not otherwise how to satisfy their anger, they called for an election of new prætors, in the room of *Andronodorus* and *Themisius*, that were lately slain: meaning to substitute such in their places, as the Senators should have little cause to like. At the election were present a great rout, not only of the poorer Citizens, but of souldiers that pressed into the throng. One of these, named *Epicles* Prætor; another named *Hippocrates*: and the lesse that the old Prætors and Senators approved this nomination, the more eager was the multitude; and by a generally cry forced them to be accepted. These being made Prætors did what they could to hinder the agreement that was in hand, between the *Syracusians* and the *Romans*. But having striven in vain, and seeing that the people stood in fear of *Ap. Claudius*, and of *Marcellus* that was lately come into *Sicily*, they gave way unto the time, and suffered the old league of *Hiero* to be reconfirmed, which afterward they purposed to dissolve by practise. The *Leontines* had some need of a garrison; and to them was sent *Hippocrates* the Prætor, attended by such fugitives, and mercenary souldiers, as were most burdensome to *Syracuse*. Thither when he came, he began to do many acts of hostility against the *Romans*: first in secret, afterward more openly & boldly. *Marcellus*, rightly understanding the purpose of these two brethren, sent word unto the *Syracusians*, that they had already broken

the league; and that the peace would never be kept sincerely, until this turbulent pair of brethren were expelled the Island. *Epicles*, fearing to sustain the blame of his brothers proceedings, and more desirous to set forward the war, than to excuse any breach of peace; went himself unto the *Leontines*, whom he persuaded to rebell against the *Syracusians*. For he said, that since they had all of late served one Master, there was little reason why the *Leontines* should not be enfranchised by his death, as well as the *Syracusians*; yea or much rather, all things considered; since in their breets the Tyrant was slain, and liberty first proclaimed. Wherefore, since they of *Syracuse* were not contented to enjoy the freedom purchased among the *Leontines*; but thought it good reason, that they should bear Dominion over those that had broken the Chain, wherewith both the one and the other were bound: his advice was, that such their arrogancy should be checked betimes, ere it could get any colour of right by prescription. Hereunto occasion was given by one article of the League, made of late by the *Romans* and *Syracusians*. For it was agreed, That all which had been subject to *Hiero* and *Hieronymus*, should henceforth be Passals unto the State of *Syracuse*. Against this article, if the *Leontines* would take exception, and thereby challenge their own due; *Epicles* told them, that in this novelty of change, they had fit opportunity to recover the freedom, which their fathers had lost not many ages before. Neither was it unreasonable, which this crafty *Carthaginian* propounded; if the *Leontines* had been subdued by the same hand, which took liberty from the *Syracusians*. But seeing they had long since yielded unto *Syracuse*, and been subjected unto that City, by what forme soever it was governed; this claim of liberty was rather seasonable, than just. Nevertheless, the motion of *Epicles* was highly approved: insomuch that when messengers came soon after from *Syracuse*, to rebuke the *Leontines*, for that which they had done against the *Romans*, and to denounce unto *Hippocrates* and *Epicles*, that they should get them gone, either to *Loeri*, or whither else they listed, so that they stayed not in *Sicily*: word was returned, That they of *Leontium* had not requested the *Syracusians*, to make any bargains for them with the *Romans*, nor thought themselves bound to observe the covenants, which others without warrant had made in their names. This peremptory answer was forthwith reported unto *Marcellus* by the *Syracusians*; who offered him their assistance in doing justice upon the *Leontines* their Rebels; with condition, That when the Town was taken, it might be theirs again. *Marcellus* required no better satisfaction: but forthwith took the business in hand, which he dispatched in one day. At the first assault *Leontium* was taken, all save the Castle, wherinto *Hippocrates* and *Epicles* fled: and stealing thence away by night, conveyed themselves into the towne of *Herbesus*. The first thing that *Marcellus* did, when he had wonne the Towne, was the same, which other *Roman* Captains used after victory, to seek out the fugitive *Roman* slaves and renegado's, whom he caused all to die: the rest both of the Town-men and Souldiers, he took to mercy, forbearing also to strip or spoyle them. But the fame of his doings was bruited after a contrary sort. It was said, that he had slain Man, Woman, and Child, and put the Town to sack. These newes met the *Syracusan* Army upon the way, as it was going to joyne with *Marcellus*, who had ended his business before. About eight thousand Mercenaries there were, that had been sent forth of *Syracuse*, under *Sosius* and *Diomedes*, two of the Prætors, to serve against the *Leontines* and other rebels. These Captains were honest men, and well affected to their Countrey: but the Souldiers that followed them, had chose diseases, with which all mercenaries are commonly infected. They took the matter deeply to heart, that their fellow souldiers (as now they termed those against whom they went) had been so cruelly butchered: and hereupon they fell to mutiny; though what to demand, or with whom to be angry, they could not tell. The Prætors therefore thought it best, to turne their unquiet thoughts another way, and set them to work in some place else: for as much as at *Leontium* there was no need of their service. So towards *Herbesus* they marched; where lay *Hippocrates* and *Epicles*, the architects of all this mischief, devising what further harme they might doe; but now so weakly accompanied, that they seemed unable to escape the punishments belonging to their offences past. Hereof the two brethren were no lesse well aware: and therefore adventured upon a remedy little lesse desperate than their present case. They issued forth of *Herbesus* unarmed, with Olive branches in their hands, in manner of Suppliants; and so presented themselves to the Army. Six hundred men of *Crete* were in the vanguard; that

that had been well used by *Hieronymus*: and some of them greatly bound unto *Hannibal*, who had taken them prisoners in the *Italian* war, and lovingly dismissed them. These *Cretians* therefore welcomed the two brethren, and bade them be of good cheer, saying, That no man should do them harme, as long as they could use their weapons. Herewithall the Army was at a stand; and the rumour of this accident, ran swiftly from man to man, with generall approbation. The Prætors thought to help the matter by severity, which would not serve. For when they commanded these two traitors to be laid in Irons, the exclamation was so violent against them, that fain they were to let all alone, and return, uncertain what course to take, unto *Megara*, where they were lodged the night before. Thither when they came, *Hippocrates* devised a trick, whereby to help himself, and better the uncertain case wherein he stood. He caused Letters, of his own penning, to be intercepted by some of his most trusty *Cretians*, directed (as they made shew) from the *Syracusan* Prætors to *Marcellus*. The contents hereof were, That *Marcellus* had well done, in committing all to the sword among the *Leontines*: but that if further behoved him, to make the like dispatch of all the mercenaries belonging to *Syracuse*; which were offensive, all of them in generall, to the liberty of the City, and the peace with *Rome*. When this counterfeit Epistle was openly rehearsed, the uproar was such, that *Sofis* and his fellow Prætor, were glad to forsake the Camp, and flee for their lives. All the *Syracusians* remaining behind, had been cut in pieces by the enraged Souldiers, if the two Artificers of the sedition had not saved their lives; rather to keep them as pledges, and by them, to win their friends within the Town, than for any good will. They perswaded also a mischievous knave, that had served amongst the *Leontines*, to justify the bruit of *Marcellus* cruelty, and to carry home the newest to *Syracuse*, as an eye-witness. This incensed not only the multitude, but some of the Senate; and filled the whole town with causeless indignation. In good time (said some) 'was the avarice and cruelty of the *Romans* detected: who, had they in like sort gotten into *Syracuse*, would have dealt much worse, where their greedy appetites might have been tempted with a far greater booty. Whilest they were thus discoursing, and devising how to keep out the wicked *Romans*, *Hippocrates* with his Army came to the gates, exhorting the Citizens to let him in, unless for want of help, they would be betrayed to their enemies. The Prætors, with the best and wisest of the Senate, would fain have kept him out: but the violence of the souldiers to force a gate, was no whit greater, than the head-strong fury of those within the Town, that laboured to break it open. So he entered, and immediately fell upon the Prætors, whom (being forsaken by all men) he put to the sword, and made slaughter of them and their followers untill night. The next day he went openly to work: and, after the common example of Tyrants, gave liberty unto all slaves and prisoners; and being fortified with adherents of the worst and basest sort, made himself and his brother Prætors, in Title, but in effect, Lords of *Syracuse*.

When *Marcellus* was advertised of this great alteration, he thought it no time for him to sit still, and attend the further issue. He sent Embassadours to *Syracuse*, that were not admitted into the Haven, but chased out as enemies. Then drew he near with his Army: and lodging within a mile and a half of the Town, sent before him, some to require a parlee. These were entertained without the wals by the two new Prætors: to whom they declared, That the *Romans* were come thither, not with purpose to do hurt, but in favour of the *Syracusians*, which were oppressed by Tyrants; and to punish those that had murdered and banished so many of the principall Citizens. Wherefore they required, that those worthy men, their Confederates, which were chased out of the Town, might be suffered to returne and enjoy their own; as also that the Authors of the great slaughter lately committed, might be delivered up. Hereto *Epicles* briefly answered, that if their errand had been to him, he could have told what to say to them: but since it was directed unto others, they should doe well to return, when those to whom they were sent, had the government in their hands. As for the war which they threatned, he told them, they should finde by experience, That to besiege *Syracuse* was another manner of work, than to take *Leontium*. Thus he sent them gone; and returned back into the City, immediately began the siege, which endured longer than the *Romans* had expected. The quick and easie winning of *Leontium*, did put *Marcellus* in hope, that so long a circuit of wals as compassed *Syracuse*, being manned

with no better kinde of Souldiers, than those with whom he had lately dealt, would in some part or other, be taken at the first assault. Wherefore he omitted no violence or terror in the very beginning; but did it best both by Land and Sea. Nevertheless all his labour was disappointed, and his hope of prevailing by open force, taken from him by the ill success of two or three of the first assaults. Yet was it not the vertue of the Defendants, or any strength of the City, that bred such despair of hasty victory. But there lived at that time in *Syracuse* *Archimedes* the noble Mathematician: who at the request of *Hiero* the late King, that was his kintman, had framed such engines of War, as being in this extremity put in use, did more mischief to the *Romans* than could have been wrought by the Canon, or any instruments of Gun-powder; had they in that age been knowne. This *Archimedes* discoursing once with *Hiero*, maintained that it were possible to remove the whole earth out of the place wherein it is, if there were some other earth, or place of sure footing, whereon a man might stand. For proof of this bold assertion, he performed some strange works, which made the King entreat him to convert his study unto things of use: that might preserve the City from danger of enemies. To such Mechanicall works, *Archimedes*, and the Philosophers of those times, had little affection. They held it an injury done unto the liberrall sciences, to subvert learned Propositions, unto the workmanship, and gain, of base handy-crafts men. And of this opinion *Plato* was an author: who greatly blamed some Geometricians, that seemed unto him to prophane their science, by making it vulgar. Neither must we so easily task a man to wise as *Plato*, with the imputation of supercilious austerity, or affectually singularity in his reprehension. For it hath begn the unhappy fate of great inventions to be vilified, as idle fancies, or dreams, before they were published: and being once made known, to be under-valued; as falling within compass of the meanest wits, and things that every one could well have performed. Heretofore (to omit that memorable example of *Columbus* his discovery, with the much different sorts of neglect, which he underwent before and after it) in a familiar and most homely example, we may see most apparent proof. He that looks upon our *English* Brewers, and their Servants, that are daily exercised in the Trade; will think it ridiculous to hear one say, that the making of *Ale*, was an invention, proceeding from some of an extraordinary knowledge in the naturall Philosophy. Yet is not the skill of the inventors any whit the less, for that the labour of workmanship growes to be the trade of ignorant men. The like may be said of many handy-crafts: and particularly in the Printing of Books, which being devised, and bettered, by great scholars and wise men, grew afterward, corrupted by those, to whom the practice fell; that is, by such, as could slubber things easily over, and feed their workmen at the cheapest rate. In this respect therefore, the Alchymists, and all others that have, or would seem to have any secret skill, whereof the publication might do good unto mankind; are not without excuse of their close concealing. For it is a kinde of injustice, that the long travels of an understanding brain, beside the losse of time, and other expence, should be cast away upon men of no worth; yeld less benefit unto the Author of a great work, than to meer strangers; and perhaps his enenies. And surely, if the passion of Envie have in it any thing allowable and naturall, as having Anger, Fear, and other like Affections: it is in some such case as this; and serveth against those, which would usurp the knowledge, wherewith God hath denied to indue them. Nevertheless, if we have regard unto common charity, and the great affection that every own ought to bear unto the generality of mankind, after the example of him, that suffereth his Sunne to shine upon the just, and unjust: it will appear more commendable in wise men, to enlarge themselves, and to publish unto the world, those good things that lye buried in their own bosomes. This ought specially to be done, when a profitable knowledge hath not annexed to it some dangerous cunning, that may be perverted by evill men to a mischievous use. For if the secret of any rare Antidote, contained in it the skill of giving some deadly and irrecoverable poison: much better it were, that such a Jewell remain close in the hands of a wife and honest man; than being made common, binde all men to use the remedy, by teaching the worst men how to do mischief. But the works which *Archimedes* published, were such as tended unto very comendable ends. They were Engines, serving unto the defence of *Syracuse*, not fit for the *Syracusians* to carry abroad, to the hurt & oppression of others. Neither did he altogether publish the knowledge, how to use them, but reserved so much to his own direction,



direction; that after his death more of the same kinde were not made, nor those of his own making were employed by the *Romans*. It sufficed unto this worthy man, that he had approved unto the vulgar, the dignity of his Science; and done especiall benefit to his Country. For to enrich a Mechanicall trade, or teach the Art of murdering men, it was besides his purpose.

*Marcellus* had caused certain of his *Quinquereme* Gallies to be fastned together, and Towers erected on them to beat the defendants from the wall. Against these *Archimedes* had sundry devices; of which any one fort might have repelled the assailants: but all of them together shewed the multiplicity of his great wit. He shot heavy stones & long pieces of timber, like unto the yards of ships, which brake some of the Gallies by their force and weight. These afflicted such as lay farre off. They that were come nearer the wals, lay open to a continuall volly of shot, which they could not endure. Some with an yron grapple were taken by the prow and hoysed up, shaking out all the men, and afterwards falling down into the water. Some by strange Engines were lifted up into the ayre, where turning round a while, they were broken against the wals or cast upon the rocks: and all of them were so beate that they durst never come to any second assault. In the like sort was the Land Army handled. Stones and timber, falling upon it like hail, did not only over-whelme the men, but brake down the *Roman* engines of battery; and forced *Marcellus* to give over the assault. For the remedy hereof it was conceived, that if the *Romans* could early before day get near unto the wals, they should be (as it were) under the point blank, and receive no hurt by these terrible Instruments; which were woound up hard to shoot a great compasse. But this vain hope cost many of the assailants lives: For the shot came down right upon them: and beating them from all parts of the wall, made a great slaughter of them, all the way as they fled, (for they were unable to tarry by it) even till they were gotten very farre off. This did so terrifie the *Romans*, that if they perceived any piece of timber, or a ropes end, upon the wals, they ranne away, crying out, that *Archimedes* his engines were ready to discharge. Neither knew *Marcellus* how to overcome these difficulties, or to take away from his men, that fear, against the cause whereof he knew no remedy. If the engines had stood upon the wals, subject to firing, or any such annoyance from without, he might have holpen it by some device, to make them unserviceable. But all, or the most of them were out of sight, being erected in the streets behind the wals, where *Archimedes* gave directions how to use them. Wherefore the *Roman* had no other way left, than to cut off from the Town all provision of victuals, both by Land and by Sea.

This was a very desperate piece of work. For the enemies having so goodly an Haven; the Sea in a manner free; and the *Carthaginians* that were strong by Sea, willing to supply them: were not likely so soon to be consumed with famine, as the besiegers to be wearied out, by lying in Leaguer before so strong a City, having no probability to carry it. Yet, for want of better counsell to follow, this was thought the best, and most honourable course.

In the mean while, *Himilco*, Admirall of a *Carthaginian* Fleet, that had waited long about *Sicily*, being by *Hippocrates* advertised of these passages, went home to *Carthage*, and there so dealt with the Senate, that five and twenty thousand Foot, three thousand Horse, and twelve Elephants, were committed unto his charge, wherewith to make war upon the *Comans* in *Sicily* by Land. He took many Towns; and many that had anciently belonged unto the *Carthaginians*, did yeeld unto him. To remedy this mischief and to stay the inclination of men, which following the current of Fortune, beganne to turn unto the *Carthaginians*; *Marcellus* with a great part of his Army, rofe from *Syracuse*, and went from place to place about the Island. He took *Pelorus* and *Herbesus*, which yeelded unto him. He took also *Megara* by force and sackt it: either to terrifie others that were obdurate, especially the *Syracusians*, or else because *Rome* was at this time poor, and his Army must have somewhat to keep it in heart. His especiall desire was to have saved *Agirigentum*: whither he came too late; for *Himilco* had gotten it before. Therefore he returned back toward *Syracuse*, carefully, and in as good order as he could, for fear of the *Carthaginian* that was too strong for him. The Circumpection that he used, in regard of *Himilco*, stood him in good stead against a danger that he had not mistusted. For *Hippocrates*, leaving the charge of *Syracuse* unto his brother, had lately issued out of the City, with ten thousand Foot, and five hundred horse,

horse, intending to joyne his forces with *Himilco*. *Marcellus* tell upon him, ere either was aware of the other: and the *Romans*, being in good order, got an easie victory against the dispersed and half unarmed *Syracusians*. The reputation hereof helped a little to keep the *Sicilians* from rebellion. Yet it was not long, ere *Himilco*, joyning with *Hippocrates*, ranne over all the Island at his pleasure, and presented battail to *Marcellus*; even at his Trenches; but the *Roman* wisely refused it. *Bomilcar* also a *Carthaginian*, entered with a great fleet into the Haven of *Syracuse*, and victualled the City. After this, the disposition of the Islanders changed so again, that although another Legion was come from *Rome*, which escaped from *Himilco*, and safely arrived at *Marcellus* his Campe; yet many places revolted unto the *Carthaginians*, and flew or betrayed the *Roman* Gations.

In the midst of these troubles, Winter enforced both parts to take breath a while: and *Marcellus*, leaving some of his Army before *Syracuse*, that he might not seem to have given over the siege, went unto *Leontium*, where he lay intensive to all occasions. In the beginning of the Spring he stood in doubt, whether it were better to continue the laborious work of besieging *Syracuse*, or to turn all his forces to *Agirigentum*, against *Himilco* and *Hippocrates*. But it would greatly have impaired his reputation, if he had gone from *Syracuse*, as unable to prevail: and he himself was of an eager disposition, ever unwilling to give ground, or to quit, as not feasible, an enterprise that he had once taken in hand. He came therefore to *Syracuse*: where though he found all the difficulties remaining as before, and no likelihood to take the City by force or famine; yet was he not without hope, that continuance of time would bring forth somewhat, which might fulfill his desire. Especially he assayed to prevail by treason, against which no place can hold out. And to this end he dealt with the *Syracusian* Gentlemen that were in his Camp; exhorting them to practise with their friends that remained in the City. This was not easie for them to do, because the Town would hearken to no parole. At length a slave unto one of these banished men, making shew to runne away from his Master, got into *Syracuse*; where he talked in private, with some few, as he had been instructed. Thus began *Marcellus* to have intelligence within the City: whence the Conspirators used to send him advertisement of their proceedings, by a fisher-boat that passed forth in the night: but when they were grown to the number of fourscore, and thought themselves able to effect somewhat of importance, all was discovered; and they like Traitors, put to death. In the mean while, one *Damasippus* a *Lacedemonian*, that had been sent out of the Town as an Embassadour to *Philip* King of *Macedon*, was fallen into the hands of *Marcellus*. *Epicides* was very desirous to ransom him: and many meetings were appointed for that purpose, not farre from the wals. There, one of the *Romans* looking upon the wall, and wanting the more compendious Art of Geometry, fell to numbering the stones: and making an estimate of the height, judged it less than it had been formerly deemed. Herewith he acquainted *Marcellus*: who causing better notice to be taken of the place; and finding that ladders of no extraordinary length would reach it; made all thing ready, and waited a convenient time. It was the weakest part of the Town, and therefore the most strongly guarded: neither was there hope to prevail by force against *Archimedes*, if they failed to take it by surprize. But a fugitive out of the Town brought word, that a great feast was to be held unto *Diana*, which was to last three dayes: and that, because other good cheer was not so plentifull within the City, as in former times, *Epicides*, to gratifie the people, had made the more large distribution of wine. A better opportunity could not be wished. Wherefore *Marcellus* in the dead of the Festivall night, came unto the wals, which he took by *Scala*. *Syracuse* was divided into four parts (or five, if *Epipole* were reckoned as one) each of which were fortified as distinct Cities. When therefore *Marcellus* had gotten some pieces, he had the commodity of a better and safe lodging, with good store of booty; and better opportunity than before, to deal with the rest. For there were now a great many, as well of those in *Acradina* & the Island, inner parts of the Town, as of those that were already in the hands of *Marcellus*, that began to hearken unto composition, as being much terrified by the losse of those parts, which the *Romans* had taken and sackt. As for the weapons of *Archimedes*, little harme, or none they did, unto those that were sheltered under strong houses: although it may seem, that the inner wals were not altogether unfurnished of his help; since they held out a good while, and were not taken by



by force. The *Roman* fugitives and Renegado's, were more carefull than ever to defend the rest of the City: being sure to be rewarded with cruell death, if *Marcellus* could prevail. *Hippocrates* and *Himilco*, were daily expected; and *Bomilcar* was sent away to *Carthage*, to bring help from thence. It was not long ere *Hippocrates* and *Himilco* came, who fell upon the old Camp of the *Romans*, whilst *Epicides* sallied out of *Acradina* upon *Marcellus*. But the *Romans* made such defence in each part, that the Assailants were repelled. Nevertheless, they continued to beset *Marcellus*: whom they held in a manner as straightly besieged, as he himself did besiege the Town. But the pestilence at length continued, together with the two Captains, a great part of the Army, and caused the rest to dislodge. The *Romans* were (though somewhat less) afflicted with the same pestilence, inasmuch that *Bomilcar* did put the City of *Carthage* in hope, that he might be taken where he lay, if any great forces were sent thither. This *Bomilcar* wanted no desire to do his Country service: but his courage was not answerable to his good will. He arrived at *Pachynus* with a strong fleet: where he staid; being loth to double the Captains for that the winds did better serve the enemy than him. Thither sailed *Epicides* out of *Syracuse*: to acquaint him with the necessities of the City, and to draw him on. With much intreaty at length he came forward: but meeting with the *Roman* fleet, that was ready for him, he stood off into the deep, and sailed away to *Tarentum*, bidding *Hisftrax* well. Then durst not *Epicides* return into *Syracuse*, but went to *Agrirentum*, where he expected the issue, with a very faint hope of hearing any good newes.

The *Sicilian* Souldiers that remained alive of *Hippocrates* his Army, lay as near as they could safely, unto *Marcellus*, and some of them, in a strong town three miles off. These had done what good they could to *Syracuse*, by doing what hurt they could unto the *Romans*. But when they were informed, that the State of *Sicily* was given as desperate by the *Carthaginians*: they sent Embassadours to treat of peace; and made offer to compound, both for themselves, and for the Town. Hereunto *Marcellus* willingly gave ear: for he had stayed there long enough; and had cause to fear, that after a little while, the *Carthaginians* might come thither strong again. He therefore agreed, both with the Citizens, and with the Souldiers that lay abroad; That they should be Masters of their own, enjoying their liberty and proper lawes; yet suffering the *Romans* to possess whatsoever had belonged unto the Kings. Hereupon they, to whom *Epicides* had left his charge, were put to death; new Prætors chosen; and the gates even ready to be opened unto *Marcellus*: when suddenly the *Roman* fugitives disturbed all. These perceiving their own condition to be desperate, perswading the other Mercenary Souldiers, That the Citizens had bargained only for themselves, and betrayed the Army to the *Romans*. Wherefore they presently took Armes, and fell upon the new chosen Prætors; whom they slew, and made election of six Captains that should command over all. But shortly it was found out, that there was no danger at all to the Souldiers, excepting only the fugitives. The Treaty was therefore again set on foot, and wanted little of conclusion: which yet was delayed; either by some fear of the Citizens, that had seen (as they thought) proof of the *Roman* avarice in the sack of *Epipola*, *Tyche*, and *Neapolis*, the parts already taken; or by some desire of *Marcellus* to get the Town by force, that he might use the liberty of a Conqueror, & make it wholly subject to *Rome*. *Mericus* a *Spaniard* was one of the six Captains that had been chosen in the last commotion: a man of such faith, as usually is found in Mercenaries; holding his own particular benefit above all other respects. With this Captain, *Marcellus* dealt secretly: having a fit instrument of the same Nation, one *Belligenes*, that went in company with the *Roman* Embassadours, daily passing to and fro. This crafty Agent perswaded *Mericus*, That the *Romans* had already gotten all *Spain*: and that if ever he purposed to make his own fortune good, either at home in *Spain*, or any where else; it was now the only time to do it, by conforming himself to the will of the *Roman* Generall. By such hopes the *Spanish* Captain was easily won, and sent forth his own brother among the *Syracusan* Embassadours to ratifie the covenant with *Marcellus*.

This under-hand dealing of *Marcellus* against the *Syracusians*, cannot well be commended as honest: neither was it afterwards thoroughly approved at his coming to *Rome*. For the benefits of *Hiero* to the *Romans* had been such, as deserved not to be requited with the ruine of his Country: much less, that the miseries of his people, oppressed (though partly through their own folly) by an Army of Mercenaries, should minister

unto

into the people of *Rome*, advantage against them. The poor Citizens could not make good their parts against the hired Souldiers; and therefore were faine to yeeld unto the time, and obey those Ministers of *Hannibal*, that ruled the Army. But as long as they were free after the death of *Hieronymus*; and now at last, when they had gathered courage by the flight of *Epicides*: it had been their chief care to maintain amity with the people of *Rome*. They had lately slain many the principall of *Epicides* his followers, and many of themselves had also been slain, both lately and in former times, because of this their desire unto the peace. What though it were true, that the Rascality, and some ill advised persons, joynd with the souldiers in hatred of the *Romans*, by occasion of the slaughter which they heard to be done at *Leontium*, and afterward beheld in those parts of their own City which was taken: Ought therefore the *Roman* Generall, in a treaty of peace held with the *Syracusians*, to make a bargain under-hand against them, with a Captain of the Mercenaries? These things were objected against *Marcellus*, at his return home: but the Senators thought it a great deal better, to comfort the *Syracusians* with gentle words, and promise of good usage in time to come; than to restore the booty, and give over the Dominion of a City, so great, wealthy, strong, and many ways important. Nevertheless if we consider the many inconveniences, and great mischiefs whereunto *Syracuse* was obnoxious; both by evil neighbours; and by that very form of policy, after which it was governed: we may truly affirme, That it received no small benefit, by becoming subject unto *Rome*. For thereby it was not only assured against all forraign enemies, domesticall conspiracies, and such Tyrants as of old had reigned therein: but freed from the necessity of banishing, or murdering, the most worthy Citizens; as also from all factions, intestine seditions, and a thousand the like miseries, that were wont to grow out of the jealousy, wherein they held their liberty in vain. Neither enjoyed that City, from her first foundation, any such long time of happiness, as that wherein it flourished, when it rested secure under the protection of *Rome*; and was no more molested, by the disease of ambition; wherewith by *Marcellus* his victory it was thoroughly cured. But such benefit, arising from wrongs done, serves not to make injustice the more excusable: unless we should approve the answer of that Thief, who being found to have stolen a silver cup from a sick man, said, *How never leaves drinking*.

By the treachery of *Mericus*, the *Roman* Army was let into possession of all *Syracuse*: wherein the booty that it found, was said to have been no less, than could be hoped for, if they had taken *Carthage* it self; that maintained war by Land and Sea against them. All the goodly works and Imageries, wherewith *Syracuse* was marvellously adorned, were carried away to *Rome*; and nothing left untouched; save only the houses of those banished men, that had escaped from *Hippocratus* and *Epicides* unto the *Roman* Camp. Among other pitifull accidents; the death of *Archimedes* was greatly lamented, even by *Marcellus* himself. He was so busie about his Geometry, in drawing figures; that he hearkened not to the noyse, and uproar in the City; no, nor greatly attended the rude Souldier that was about to kill him. *Marcellus* took heavily the death of him; and caused his body to be honourably buried. Upon his Tomb (as he had ordained in his lifetime) was placed a Cylinder and a Sphere, with an inscription of the proportion between them; which he first found out. An invention of so little use, as this may seem, pleased that great Artist better, than the devising of all those engines, that made him so famous. Such difference is in the judgement of learned men, and of the vulgar sort. For many are one would think the money lost, that had been spent upon a son, whose studies in the University had brought forth such fruit, as the proportion between a Sphere and a Cylinder.

After the taking of *Syracuse*, all the Towns in *Sicily* yeelded unto the *Romans*, except *Agrirentum* and a few places therabouts. At *Agrirentum* lay *Epicides* with one *Hanna* a *Carthaginian*, and *Murmes* an *African*; that was lately sent from *Hannibal*. This *Murmes* by many good pieces of service, had added some credit to the beaten *Carthaginian* side; and withall made his own name great. By his perswasions, *Hanna* and *Epicides* adventured to meet *Marcellus* without the Town, and not behave themselves as men exposed to be besieged. Neither was he more valiant in counsell, than in execution. Once and again he let upon the *Romans*, wherewith they lay encamped, and drove them fearfully into their Trenches. This bred civie in *Epicides* & *Hanna*; especially in *Hanna*, that

that having been lately sent from *Carthage*, with commission and authority from the State, thought himself wronged greatly by *Hannibal*; in that he had sent unto him this *Mutines*, to be his companion, and to take upon him, like as good a man as himself. The indignity seemed the greater, when *Mutines* being to step aside unto *Heraclæ*, for the pacifying of some troubles there among the *Numidians*; advised (as directing *Hanno* and *Epicles*) not to meddle with the enemy, untill his return. So much therefore the rather would *Hanno* fight: and offered battell unto *Marcellus*, before he fought it. It is like, that a great part of the *Roman* Army was left behinde in *Syracuse*, as need required: which made the *Carthaginians* the better able to deal with those that came against them. But whatsoever disproportion was between the two Armies; far greater were the odds between the Captains. For howsoever the people of *Carthage* would give authority by favour; yet could they not give worth and ability, in matter of war. The *Numidians*, having before conceived some displeasure against their Captains: and being therefore some of them gone away to *Heraclæ*, were much more offended, when they saw that the vain-glorious envie of *Hanno* carried him unto the fight, upon a foolish desire to get victory, without the help of *Mutines* their Countryman. Wherefore they sent unto the *Roman* General, and bade him be confident; for that it was not their purpose to shew themselves his enemies that day, but only look on, and see the proud *Carthaginians* well beaten, by whom they had been misused. They made good their promise, and had their desire. For *Marcellus*, finding likelihood of truth in their message, did foolishly set upon the enemies, that he brake them at the first charge; and with the slaughter of many thousands, drove them back into *Agrigentum*.

If *Hanno* could have been contented, to follow the directions of one, that was a better man of War than himself, and not have hazarded a battell without need; the *Romans* would shortly have been reduced into termes of great difficulty in their *Sicilian* War. For *Marcellus* was shortly after to leave the Province; and soon upon his departure, there landed in the Island a supply of eight thousand foot, and three thousand *Numidian* horse, that were sent from *Carthage*. The fame of this new Army drew many of the *Sicilians* into rebellion. The *Roman* Army consisting (for the most part) of the Legions of *Canna*, took it very hainously, that no good service done, could bring them into the favour of the Senate; but that, as banished men, they were sent far from home, and not suffered to return back to *Rome* with their Generall. *Mutines* had pacified his countrymen the *Numidians*, &c. like an honest man, did what he could for those whom he served, without contending against the foolish pride of *Hanno*; finding that there was a great alteration; and a greater might have been, if the Army lately overthrown had been entire. *M. Cornelius* the *Roman* Prætor, used all diligence, both to pacifie his own men, and to hinder the *Carthaginians*. He recovered those In-land Towns that had rebelled: and though he could not hinder *Mutines* from over-running all the Country, yet he hindered the Country from revolting unto *Mutines*. Above threescore Towns, great and small, the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicily*: of which *Agrigentum* was the principall, and far bigger than any of the rest. Thence issued *Mutines* as often as he pleased, in despite of the *Romans*: not only to the succour of his own adherents, but to the great waste of those that followed the contrary part. But *Hanno*, in stead of being pleased with all these good services, was filled more and more with envie, against the man that performed them. He had (belike) received instruction from old *Hanno* at *Carthage*; not to suffer *Hannibal*, or any *Hannibalian*, to have share in the honour of these *Sicilian* Wars: which were therefore perhaps the more diligently supplied; whilst *Italy* was neglected, that should have been regarded more than all the rest. Wherefore to shew his authority, and that it was not in the power of *Hannibal*, to appoint unto him an Assistant, or Director: He took away from *Mutines* his charge, and gave it to his own Sonne; thinking thereby to discountenance the man, and make him little esteemed; as one out of Office, among the *Numidians*. But it fell out quite contrary: and this spitefull dealing occasioned the losse of whatsoever the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicily*. For the *Numidians* were so incensed by the indignity offered unto their Countryman, being such a brave commander, that they offered him their service to requite the wrong; and were thenceforth absolutely at his own disposition. *M. Valerius* *Levinus*, the *Roman* Consul, was newly come into the Province, when this fell out: and with him did *Mutines* enter into intelligence. For he could no longer brook these

these indignities; but being neither a *Carthaginian*, nor favoured by those that bore all the sway in *Carthage*: He thought it the wisest way, to play the best of his owne game, and forsake that City, which was likely to perish by the evill counsell that governed it. He did not therefore, as his Countrymen had lately done, content himself to see his Adversaries reap the bitter fruits of their owne malicious over-weening: and to suffer that harme, in doing whereof he would not bear a part; but conspired against them to deliver up *Agrigentum*, and to help to expell them utterly out of *Sicily*. The Consul was glad of his friendship; and carefully followed his advertisements. Neither was there much cunning needfull, to the performance of that which *Mutines* had undertaken: For he with his *Numidians* did forcibly sieze upon a gate; whereat they let in some *Roman* Companies, that lay near in a readinesse for the purpose. *Hanno*, when first he heard the noise, thought it had been no worse matter, than some such tumult of the *Numidians*, as he had been well acquainted with of late. But when, making haste to pacifie the trouble, he saw and heard, the *Romans* intermixed, among those discontented followers of *Mutines*, forthwith he betook himself to flight: and leaving himself, with *Epicles*, in a small Bark, set sail for *Africk*; leaving all his Army and Adherents in *Sicily*, to the mercy of the *Romans*, that henceforward continued masters of the whole Island.

*Levinus* the Consul having taken *Agrigentum*, did sharp execution of justice upon all the Citizens. The principall of them he scourged with rods, and afterwards beheaded, as was the manner of the *Romans*: all the rest of them he sold for slaves, and confiscated their goods; sending home to *Rome* the money that was raised of the booty. This was indeed a time, wherein *Rome* stood in no lesse necessity of gold, than of Steele: which may have been the reason, why *Levinus* dealt so cruelly with the *Agrigentines*. Nevertheless the fame of such severity bred a terror among all the Dependants of the *Carthaginians*, so that in great haste they sought to make their peace. About forty Towns yielded themselves quickly unto the *Romans*; twenty were delivered up by Treason; and sixe only stayed to be wonne by force. These things done, *Levinus* returned home to *Rome*; carrying with him about four thousand men from *Agathina*; that were a company of out-laws, bankrupts, and banished men, accustomed to live by spoile of others in these troublesome times. He bestowed them about *Rhegium* in *Italy*, where they might exercise their own occupation against the *Britians*; a theevish kinde of people, that were enemies unto those of *Rhegium*, and to the *Romans*. As for *Mutines*, he was well rewarded, and made Citizen of *Rome*: where he lived in good accompt; accompanying the two *Scipios* in their journey against *Antiochus*, and therein doing (as it is said) very especial service. So by this enterprise of *Sicily*, the *Carthaginians* wasted much of their forces, that with greater profit might have been employed in *Italy*: leaving yet unto the *Romans*, in the end of this warre, the entire possession of this Island; which they wanted when it began.

## §. XVI.

How the war passed between the Romans and Hannibal in Italy from the taking of Capua to the great victory at Metauris.

Shortly after the winning of *Capua*, *Marcellus* came to *Rome*: where for his good services done in the Island of *Sicily*, he had granted unto him the honour of the lesser Triumph, which was called *Ovation*. The greater Triumph was denied him; because he had not finished the warre, but was faine to leave his Army behinde him in the Province. He stayed not long in *Rome*, before he was again chosen Consul together with *M. Valerius* *Levinus*, who succeeded him in the government of *Sicily*, and was, at the time of his election, making war against King *Philip* in *Greece*. Great Complaints were made against the Consul *Marcellus*, by the *Syracusians*, for that which he had done unto them: they alledging their great friendship to the people of *Rome*, in the time of their late King *Hiero*; and affirming, that their City did never willingly break the alliance, excepting when it was oppressed by such Tyrants, as were not greater enemies to *Rome* than to all good men that lived in *Syracuse*. The Consul, on the other side, reckoned the labours and dangers whereunto they had put him: willing them to bestow themselves to the *Carthaginians* that had holpen them in their necessity; and not unto the

the *Romans* whom they had kept out. Thus each part having some good matter to allege; the Senate made such an end of the controversie, as best agreed with the benefit of their own Common-wealth: blaming the too much rigour of *Marcellus*; yet not restoring the booty that he had taken; nor making the *Syracusians* free from their subjection; but comforting them with gentle words, and hopefull promises, as hath been shewed before. The two new Consuls *Marcellus* and *Laevinus*, were appointed to make war, as their lots should fall out; the one in *Italy*, the other in *Sicil*. The Isle of *Sicil* fell unto *Marcellus*; which Province he willingly changed with his Colleague, to the end that the *Syracusians* (whose cause had not as yet been heard in the Senate) might not seem hindered by fear, from uttering their grievances freely. Afterwards, when his business with them was dispatched, he gently undertook the patronage of them: which he maintained long in his Family, to the great benefit of their Country in times following. *Scil. Valerius*, the other Consul, was sent into *Sicil*, whose doing there have been already rehearsed: but *Marcellus* was employed against *Hannibal*.

Before the Consuls departed out of *Rome*, they were much troubled with pressing of Souldiers to the war, and most of all, with getting Mariners for their Navie. They were all of the poorer sort, that used to be employed in Sea-services, especially in rowing. These could not live without present wages: neither was there money enough in the Treasury to give them pay. Wherefore it was ordained, that they should be set out at the expence of private men; who in this necessity of the State, were driven to sustain all publick charges. Hereat the people murmured, and were ready to fall into seditions; had not the Consuls deferred the matter unto further consideration. The Senate could ill tell, what to determine or doe, in a case of such extremity. For manifest it was, that the multitude had already endured so much, as well it could undergoe; and somewhat more; than could with honesty have been imposed upon it. Nevertheless it was impossible to maintain the war against the *Carthaginians*, or to keep the *Macedonian* out of *Italy* without a strong fleet. Wherefore, some were of opinion; That since the common Treasury was so empty, the people must be forced, by right or wrong, to take the burden upon them. At last the Consuls began to say, That no persuasions would be so effectual with the people, as good examples: and that if the Senators would follow the Consuls, like it was that the people also would follow the Senate. Wherefore they propounded, and it was immediately concluded, That every one of them should bring forth, and put into the Treasury, all the money that he had; and that no Senator should keep any vessel of gold, or plate whatsoever; excepting one Salt-seller, and a Bowe wherewith to make their offerings unto the gods; as also a Ring for himself, with such other tokens of ingenuity for his wife and children, as every one did use, and those of as small value as might be. This advice of the Consuls was not more thankfully accepted by the Senate, than the ready performance thereof by the Senate was highly applauded, and hastily followed by the Gentlemen of *Rome*. Neither did the Commonalty refuse to do that, which their betters had openly done before them. For since the publick necessity could no otherwise be holpen; every one was contented, that his private estate should run the same fortune with the Common-wealth, which if it suffered wrack, in rain could any particular man hope to enjoy the benefit of his proper substance. This magnanimity deserved well that greatness of Empire, whereof it was the foundation.

Convenient order being thus taken for an Army and Fleet: *Marcellus* went forth to the City against *Hannibal*; & *Laevinus* toward *Sicil*. The Army of *Hannibal* was greatly diminished, by long and hard service: neither did his *Carthaginians* seem to remember him; and think upon sending the promised supply, or any such proportion as he needed. His credit also among his *Italian* friends, was much weakened, by the loss of *Capua*, which gave them cause to look unto themselves; as if in his help there were little trust to be reported, when they should stand in need. This he well perceived; yet could not tell how to remedy. Either he must thrust Garrisons into all Towns that he suspected; and thereby to diminish his Army; that he should not be able to keep the field: or else he must leave them to their own fidelity; which now began to waver. At length his jealousy grew so outrageous; that he sacked and wasted those places that he was unable to defend: thinking that the best way to enrich himself, and make unprofitable to his enemies, the purchase from which he could not hinder them. But by this example, many were quite alienated from him; and some of those, whom before he had least cause

to doubt. The town of *Salapia* yeelded unto *Marcellus*; and betrayed unto him a gallant Regiment of *Numidian* horse, the best of all that served under *Hannibal*; which was a greater loss, than the Town it self. *Blasius* the author of this rebellion, could not bring his desire to effect; without getting the consent of one *Dafnus*, that was his bitter enemy. Wherefore he brake the matter to this *Dafnus* in private; and was by him accused unto *Hannibal*. But when he was convened and charged of Treason, he so stoutly denied it; and by way of redermination, so vehemently pressed his accuser with the same, that *Hannibal* thought it a matter devised out of meer malice; knowing well what enemies they were; and seeing that neither of them could bring any proof of what he affirmed. This notwithstanding, *Blasius* did not cease to presse his adversary anew, and urged him from time to time, with such lively reasons; that he who could not be believed by *Hannibal*, was contented at length to win the favour of *Marcellus*. Presently after this, the Consul took by force, *Maronea* and *Melis*, Towns of the *Samnit*; wherein he slew about three thousand, of *Hannibal* his men.

*Hannibal* could not look to all at once; but was faine to catch advantages; where he might get them; the *Romans* now being grown stronger in the field than he. The best was, that his *Carthaginians*, having wearied themselves with ill speed in many petty enterprises; and laid aside all this while the care of *Italy*, to follow business of far less importance; had now at length resolved, to send presently the great supply, that had been so long promised and expected. This if they had done in better season, *Rome* it self might have been stricken down, the next year after that great blow received at *Capua*. But since that which is past cannot be amended, *Hannibal* must force himself to make a good countenance; and tell his followers; that this mighty succour would come time enough. For *Asdrubal* was at *Carthage* with five thousand *Numidians*, ready to set sail for *Spain*; whither when he came, it was appointed that *Asdrubal* should forthwith take his journey into *Italy*, of which there had been so much talk. These newes did not more comfort *Hannibal* & his followers, than terrifie the *Romans*. Wherefore each did their best; the *Romans* to prevent the threatening mischief, and win as much as they could upon *Hannibal*, before the coming of his brother; *Hannibal*, on the contrary, to hold his Town, and weaken the *Romans* as much as he was able. He had intelligence, that *Cn. Fulvius*, a *Roman* Prætor, lay near unto *Herdonia* to get the Town by practice. It was not long since, near unto the same place, another *Cn. Fulvius* had lost his Army. Therefore *Hannibal* made great marches thitherward; & came to *Herdonia* ere *Fulvius* heard news of his approach. As soon as he came, he offered battail to the *Roman* Prætor; who accepted it with more haste than good speed. The *Roman* Legions made good resistance a while, till they were compassed round with the *Carthaginian* horse. Then fell they to rout; and great slaughter was made of them. *Fulvius* himself, with twelve *Tribunes* or *Centurions*, were lost: of the common Souldiers, that were slain, the number is uncertain; some reporting seven, others thirteen thousand. The Town of *Herdonia*, because it was at point to have yeelded unto *Fulvius*, *Hannibal* did set on fire; and putting those to death that had practised with the Enemy, carried away the multitude, whom he bestowed among the *Thurians* and *Metapontines*. The Consul *Marcellus* hearing of this, wrote unto the Senate: and exhorted them to be of good cheer, for that he would shortly laybate the enemies pride. He followed the *Carthaginian* apace; and overtaking him at *Novispro* in the Country of the *Lucans*, fought with him a battell: which beginning at nine of the clock in the morning, lasted untill night; & ended, by reason of the darkness, with uncertain victory. Afterward *Hannibal* departed thence into *Apulia*, whither *Marcellus* followed him. At *Venusia* they met, and had many skirmishes; but none of importance. *Hannibal* removed often; and sought to bring the enemy within danger of some ambush. But *Marcellus*, though he was very eager of battail, would yet adventure nothing but by open day-light, and upon fair ground.

Thus passed the time away, untill *Q. Fabius Maximus*, and *Q. Fulvius*, he that lately had taken *Capua*, were chosen Consuls. *Fabius* considering how much the *Roman* affairs were bettered by the taking of *Capua*, purposed that year to besiege *Tarentum*; which if he could win; like it was, that scarce one good City would afterwards remain true to *Hannibal*. Wherefore he vehemently exhorted his Colleague, and *Marcellus*, (to whom was continued the command of those Legions that served under him the year before) to presse the *Carthaginian* so hard, as he might have no leisure to help

*Tarentum*.

*Tarentum*. *Marcellus* was very glad of this charge: for he thought no *Roman* fitter than himself, to deal with *Hannibal* in open field. He followed him therefore to *Cannibum*, and thence from place to place: desiring ever to come to battail, but upon equal termes. The *Carthaginian* had not minde to hazzard much in fight: but thought it enough to entertain his enemy with skirmish, as being desirous to keep his Army strong untill the coming of *Ashubal*. Yet could he not avoid the importunity of *Marcellus*, nor brook the indignity of being daily braved. He therefore bade his men to be lusty, and to bat soundly this hot-spirited *Roman* Captain, that would never suffer them to be at quiet; untill they once had cooled well his courage, by letting him bleed. Hereupon followed a battail, wherein *Hannibal* had the victory, took sixe Ensignes, and slew of the *Romans* almost three thousand, among which were some of mark. *Marcellus* was so impatient of this dishonour, that he rated his men, as *Pesants*, and bade co-wards: telling them, that they were the first of the *Roman* Legions, which had been beaten by *Hannibal*, by plain force and manhood, without being circumvented by any stratagem. With these, and many other the like words, which they were assuaged to hear, he did so vex them; that thinking themselves better able to endure any violence of the enemy, than such displeasure of their Generall; they besought him to pardon them, and lead them forth once again to fight. He did so: and placing those Companies formost, that had lost their Ensignes the day before, bade them be careful to winne a victory, whereof the newes might be at *Rome*, before the report of their shamefull overthrow. *Hannibal* was angry, to see that nothing could make this Enemy quiet: and therefore was ready to fight again; since all other motives continued the same, and his men had been heartened by the late victory. But the *Romans* were stirred up with desire of revenge, and of repairing their honour lost, which affections gave a sharp edge unto their valour: whereas the *Carthaginians* were grown dull, and weary by seeing themselves disappointed of their hope; and the enemy, notwithstanding their late victory, as ready to molest them as before. In this second battail *Marcellus* got the victory: which he purchased at so dear a rate; that neither he, nor *Hannibal*, had great cause to vaunt, the second night. For if eight thousand of the *Carthaginians* were slain, and three thousand of the *Roman* side, in this next battail, the difference was no greater, so than even to recompence the late received overthrow: especially since the number of the *Romans* that were wounded, was so great, as disabled *Marcellus* from pursuing *Hannibal*, who dislodged by night. Nevertheless it sufficed, that *Fabius* the Consul hereby got leisure, to follow his business at *Tarentum* without any disturbance. *Q. Fulvius* the other Consul about the same time, took in many of the *Hirpines*, *Lucans*, and *Volscians*, that willingly yielded themselves, and betrayed the Garrisons of *Hannibal* that lay in their Towns: whom *Fulvius* entertained in loving sort; gently rebuking them for their errors past, without punishing those that had been authors, or busie doers in the rebellion. That rabble of *Sicilian* thieves, which *Lavinus* had lately brought from *Agatema*, was then also set on work to besiege *Caulonia*, a Towne of the *Bruttians*: and nothing was omitted, that might serve to divert *Hannibal*, from the succour of *Tarentum*.

*Q. Fabius* the Consul, having taken *Manduria* a Town of the *Salentines*, sat down before *Tarentum*: making all preparation that seemed needfull to carry it either by assault or long siege. Of the Garrisons in the Town, a good part were *Bruttians*, placed there by *Hannibal*, under a Captain of their own Nation. This Captain fell in love with a *Tarentine* wench; whose brother served under *Fabius*. Hereof she gave notice by letters to her brother, as thinking belike to draw him from the *Roman* side; by telling him how rich, and of what great accompt her lover was. But her brother made the Consul acquainted with these newes: and said, that if the *Bruttian* were faire in love, he might perhaps be wonne, by intreaty of his Mistris, to doe what she would have him. The Consul hearing this, and finding likelihood in the matter, willed his souldier to convey himself into the Town as a fugitive, and try what good might be done. It fell out according to his desire. The Souldier grew acquainted with this *Bruttian* Captain: and partly by his own persuasions, partly by the flattering entreaty of his sister, wanne him to betray the Town to the *Romans*. When they had agreed upon the business, and resolved how to order it, the same Souldier got out of the Town by night, and acquainted the Consul with his proceedings: telling him in which part

that *Bruttian* kept watch, and what might conveniently be done. So in the night time, *Fabius* gave an alarm to the City; especially about those parts of the wall, which were farthest from the place where he meant to enter. The Captains in the Town, prepared to make resistance in those places, where the noise did threaten them with greatest likelihood of danger. But *Fabius* himself with the choice of his men, came in great silence to the quarter of the *Bruttians*: who being wrought by their Captain, helped the *Romans* to get up, and break open the next gate, whereat the Army was let in. The *Tarentines* and *Carthaginian* Souldiers, made head against *Fabius* in the Market place: but (as hapneth in like cases, where the main confidence is already taken away) nor very obstinately. *Nico*, *Democrates*, and *Philomenes*, with those that before had let in *Hannibal*, used now the last of their courage in dying against the *Romans*. *Carthalo*, who commanded the Garrison within the Town, offered himself prisoner: hoping to be well used, because of his hospitality that had passed between his Father and the Consul. But he was slain by the way, ere he could come at *Fabius*. The *Romans* did put all indifferently to the sword, in such sort, that they spared few of the *Bruttians*. This slaughter of the *Bruttians*, was thought to have been made by appointment of the Consul, to the end that he might seem to have wonne the Town by force and not by treason: though he thereby failed of his purpose; and neither had the glory which he expected, nor preserved his reputation of faithfull dealing, and keeping his word. The booty found in *Tarentum* was very great: whereof the *Roman* Treasury, whither it was carried, had great need. As for the Imageries, and other curiosities that were in the City, *Fabius* was contented to let them alone: and being told of some Idols that seemed worthy to be carryed away, being very goodly pieces, in such habit & posture as if they were fighting: he said, Let us leave unto the *Tarentines* their angry gods.

*Hannibal* being gotten clear from *Marcellus*, fell upon those that besieged *Caulonia*. They fled at his coming: but he was so near, that they were faine to betake them to a hill, which served to no other purpose, than to hear off the first brunt. There they defended themselves a little while, and then they yielded. When this business was done, he basted away to relieve *Tarentum*. But when he came within five miles of the City, he had news that it was lost. This grieved him: yet he said no more than this, The *Romans* have also their *Hannibals*; we have lost *Tarentum* in such sort as we got it. That he might not seem to turn back amazed, or in any fear of the victorious Consul; he incamped a few dayes together, so near as he was unto *Tarentum*: and thence departing to *Metapontum*, bethought himself how to take *Fabius* in a trap. He caused the chief of the *Metapontines* to write unto *Fabius*, and offer to betray into his hands, the *Carthaginian* Garrison: with condition, that he should in that respect, forgive them all offences past. These letters were sent by two young men of the same city, who did their errand so well, that the Consul wrote back by them unto the *Metapontines*, and appointed the day, when they should expect him. Hereof *Hannibal* was exceeding glad: and at good leisure made ready his ambushes for the wary *Fabius*. But wherefore some secreter notice of the plot were given; or whether indeed (as it is related) some tokens in sacrificing, terrified the superstitious *Roman*; the journey to *Metapontum* was deferred. Hereupon the same two Messengers were employed again: but being apprehended, and threatened with torture, they discovered all.

This year was happy to the *Romans*, in all their warres: for they got every where; save only at *Caulonia*, where they lost a company of such lewd fellows, that it may seem good fortune, to have so been rid of them. But their common poverty, and disability to maintain their charge, continued; and grew greater than it was before. Thirty *Roman* Colonies were then in *Italy*: of which, twelve refused to contribute any longer to the Wars. For it was considered; that the Legions of *Canne*, and those unhappy Companies that had been beaten under the one and the other *Cn. Fulvius*, were transported into *Sicily*, where they lived, in a sort, as banished men. This grieved their friends at home, and made them reckon up the more diligently those other miseries which they daily felt. Ten years together they had been exhausted with levies of men, and impositions of money: in every of which years they had received some notable overthrow. In this case the least that they could fear; or rather the best that they could hope; was to fall into the hands of the enemy to be made prisoners. For *Hannibal* did gently send some their people that was taken by him: whereas the *Romans* did banish from their homes

homes, those that had escaped. It was therefore likely to come to passe within a while, that they should be all consumed: since new souldiers were daily pressed forth of their Towns; and the old ones never returned. Such talk was frequent among those of the Colonies: especially where they that were transported into *Sicily*, had most compassionate friends. Wherefore it was concluded by the people of *Ardea*, *Sutrium*, *Alba*, and other good Towns, to the number of twelve, That they should boldly deny unto the *Romans* their farther help. This was thought the likeliest way to obtain peace: whereof otherwise they saw little hope, as long as *Hannibal* lived. When the Consuls heard of the Embassadours of these Towns make such declaration, and protest their disability of giving any farther help; they were much amazed. They willed the Embassadours to returne home, and bring a better answer, forasmuch as this was none other than treason: they bade them to consider, that the people were not *Campanians* or *Tarentines*, but the off-spring of the *Romans*; and no lesse partakers of the Empire, than they that inhabited the Mother-City. But all would not serve, the Embassadours continuing to protest, that they had already done what they could; and that they had remaining, neither men, nor money. It was well for the *Romans*, that the other eighteen Colonies did not imitate these twelve; but shewed themselves willing to undergo whatsoever should be layed upon them, without thinking under the burden. This their offer was so highly pleasing to the Consuls, that the Embassadours of those faithfull Colonies, were brought unto the Senate, and produced into the Assembly of the people: where, with commemoration of all their former good services, this their present love unto the State was magnified, and thanks accordingly bestowed upon them; with promise, that it should not be forgotten. As for the Embassadours of those twelve Colonies, that refused to contribute, it was thought best, neither to retain them in the City, nor yet to dismiss them, nor take any notice of them at all; but leave them to their own consideration, of their ill deserving.

It may greatly be doubted, what the example of these twelve people would have wrought in those that were so willing to help the State, if *Asdrubal* had been then coming into *Italy*. For then must the *Romans* have betaken themselves wholly to their own defence; whereas now, to the great comfort of their subjects, they employed their forces in the conquest of *Italy*, with hopefull and fortunate successe. Nevertheless, they were faine to open their most privie treasury; and thence take out the gold that had been laid up to serve them in cases of greatest extremity. Of the money thus extracted, one quarter was delivered to *Fabius* the Consull, to set him well out against the *Tarentines*; all the rest was sent into *Spain* to *Scipio*, for the maintenance of his Army; and to provide that *Asdrubal* might not passe from thence into *Italy*. It is likely that *Fabius* did not spend all his money; finding such easie successe at *Tarentum*, as was shewed before. But to stop the journey of *Asdrubal*; neither the money sent into *Spain*, nor any victories won by *Scipio* could suffice. Nevertheless it fell out happily for the people of *Rome*, that this year, and the next were spent, before his coming; and they better prepared, than at less warning they could have been, to entertain him. Here it were not amiss to note, That since the *Romans*, being in so great necessity of money, were driven to furnish the Army in *Spain*, with the greatest part of all their stock that was left: it must needs be, that either the booty taken in new *Carthage*, was far less than fame had reported it; or else that *Scipio* had not as yet won it: howsoever *Livie* rather inclines to those, who say that he got it soon after his arrivall.

*M. Claudius Marcellus*, & *T. Quintus Crispinus*, were chosen Consuls after *Fabius* and *Fulvius*. In their year it was, that *Asdrubal* took his journey out of *Spain*, though he came not into *Italy* until the year following. After the great battell at *Canna*, *Hannibal* had lost much time about *Cume* and *Naples*, in seeking to make himself Master of a good Haven; for the landing of those succours that were promised from *Carthage*. The hope that he reposed in *Philip*, caused him to turn his principall care to the Eastern parts of *Italy*; wher he made ready a fair entrance for the *Macedonian*, if he had been ready to come; but since his hope was vanished, and the long promised succour of *Asdrubal* was (though farre later than had been expedient) ready to arrive: he began to deal with the people of *Hetruria*, through whose Countries his brother was to passe, that therein he might make a party against the *Romans*. The loss of *Capua*, *Tarentum*, and many other towns, might have terrified all other of the *Italian* towns, from bearkening

to any solicitation of the *Carthaginians*. Yet the poverty of the *Romans*, & the weariness of their adherents, together with the fame of a greater Army coming than that which *Hannibal* brought into *Italy*, did imbolden many of the *Hetrurians*, especially the *Arretines*, to take such counsell as they thought most expedient for themselves; without regard of their fidelity to *Rome*. The *Roman* Senate, hearing the rumour of their conspiracy, sent *Marcellus* the new chosen Consull into *Hetruria*: whose coming did so terrifye them, that they rested quiet for a while. All the year following they were devising how to break out: as contrariwise the *Roman* Propretors, partly by terrour of severe judgements and inquisitions; and partly by the force of two or three Legions, with which they visited all suspected places, kept them honest against their wils, and took many Hostages for better assurance. The two Consuls had an earnest desire, to make strong War upon *Hannibal* without more temporising: perswading themselves, that in battell they should be too strong for him. *Crispinus* had further his particular desire, to make his Consulship notable by the winning of some good Town: as *Fulvius* and *Fabius* had gotten honour by *Capua* and *Tarentum*. Therefore he went about the siege of *Locri*, one of the best Cities which the *Carthaginian* then held in *Italy*: and brought thither all sorts of engines, sending for a Fleet out of *Sicily* to help him. But *Hannibal* was not slow to relieve the City: the fame of whose approach, made *Crispinus* desist from his enterprise, and retire unto his Colleague, that lay at *Vonesta*. Thither followed *Hannibal* to whom the Consuls daily offered battell. This great man of War had no need to stand upon his reputation: which was already so confirmed, that his refusing to fight, was not likely to be ascribed unto fear; but rather deemed as part of his wisdom. He entertained the Consuls with many light skirmishes, and fought to take them at some advantage; reserving his own numbers as full as he could, unto a time of greater employment. In this lingering manner of War, *Marcellus* took no pleasure: but sought to command the Enemy to battell, whether he would or no. The Admirall of the *Roman* Fleet about *Sicily*, *L. Cincius*, was commanded again to assail the Town of *Locri*: which might well enough be forced, if *Hannibal* continued as he began, to trifle away the time at *Vonesta*. To the same purpose a part of the Garrison that lay in *Tarentum*, was appointed to go by land to the assistance of *Cincius*. But *Hannibal* had an eye behinde him. He laid an ambush in the way, between *Tarentum* and *Locri*, wherinto the *Romans* fell: and having lost above three thousand of their Company, were well glad, the rest of them, to quit their enterprise, and save their own lives within *Tarentum*. As for the Consuls, it was the desire of *Hannibal* to waste their Army by little and little: which to doe, he neglected no advantage. There lay between him and them an Hillock, overgrown with wood, that seemed fit to cover a number of men: who lying there undiscerned, might fall upon such as should straggle from the *Roman* camp; and cut them off. Therefore he sent thither by night some companies of *Numidians*: whom he willed to keep themselves close, and attend their best advantage. To this piece of ground the Consuls thought it fit to remove their camp: *Marcellus* thinking that he never lay near enough unto *Hannibal*. Thither therefore both of them rode to view the place, accompanied with the son of *Marcellus*, a few Colonels, and other principall men: and not many more than two hundred horse, most of them *Hetrurians*. The *Numidian* Centinel gave warning of their approach to his fellows who discovered not themselves, until they had surrounded the Consuls and their train. The Consuls, as necessity compelled them, defended themselves: hoping to be quickly relieved from their camp that was near at hand. But the *Hetrurians* ran away from them, at the first: and left them in that great danger, to the weak assistance of no more than forty horse-men, that were of the Colony of *Fregella*. These *Fregellans* abode by the Consuls, and did what they could to have brought them safe off. But when *Marcellus* the Consull, and did what they could to have brought them safe off. But when *Marcellus* the Consull, was stricken thorow with a Lance, and fell down dead; then began every one to shift for himself, and escape as they might. *Crispinus* the other Consull, had his death wound, being stricken with two Darts; and young *Marcellus* was likewise wounded; yet these two recovered their camp: The rest of the Colonels and Officers, together with the Lighters that carried the bundles of Rods and Axes before the Consuls, were all slain. To the dead body of the Consull *Marcellus*, *Hannibal* gave honourable Funerall, or taken. To the dead body of the Consull *Marcellus*, *Hannibal* gave honourable Funerall, according to the custome of those times: and bestowing his ashes in a silver pot, covered it with a crown of gold; and so sent them to young *Marcellus*, to be by him interred, where he thought good.



Presently after this, *Crispinus* bethought himself, how that the signet Ring of *Marcellus* was fallen into the custody of *Hannibal*, who might use it to his own purposes, ere that which had hapned were well known abroad. Wherefore he sent word unto all the Towns about, that his Colleague was slain, and that *Hannibal* had gotten his Ring, wishing them in that regard, to give no credit unto any letters therewithall signed. This providence of *Crispinus* was not more than requisite. For his messenger was but a little before come to *Salapia*, when another Messenger arrived there sent from *Hannibal*, bringing letters in the name of *Marcellus*, and sealed with the captive Ring, whereof the contents were: That it was his purpose to come the same night unto *Salapia*; where he would, that the Souldiers of the Garrison should be in a readinesse, for such employment as he should think needfull. The device was plain, and no lesse plain was the revengeful minde which he bare against that City; because of his brave *Numidian* companies that had therein been betrayed. The *Salapians* hereupon bethought themselves, how to take their enemy in his own snare. They sent back the Messenger, which was a *Roman* fugitive, without letting him perceive any sign of distrust in them. This done, they prepared all things in a readinesse, for the entertainment of such a friend. Late in the night he came thither; with a troupe of *Roman* fugitives armed *Roman*-like, leading the way. These all talking Laine together, called unto the Watch, and bade open the gate, for the Consul was there. The gate was opened fair and leisurely, and the Port-cullis drawn up no higher than needs it must be, to let them enter. But when sixe hundred of them were gotten in, down fell the Port-cullis again: and they that thought to have taken others, were taken themselves; being laid at on all hands by the *Salapians*, that quickly made an end with them.

*Hannibal* being thus over-reached with this stratagem, hasted away to *Locri*, where unto *Cinicus* the Admiral of the *Roman* fleet about *Ciul*, did lay hard siege. The first appearance of the *Numidians*, *Hannibal* his Vantecurors, made the *Romans* in all consulted flight, run to their ships: leaving all their engines, and whatsoever was in their Camp, to the enemies disposition.

The *Roman* Senate hearing of these accidents, sent unto *Crispinus* the surviving Consul, and requested him to name a Dictator that might take charge of the Common-wealth, and dispatch the election of new Magistrates, with other businesse; whereunto himself was disabled by his hurts. He did so: and soon after died. Then was it thought needfull, that new Consuls should be chosen out of hand: forasmuch as two *Roman* Armies lay so near unto the Enemy, without any General. Especially it was desired, that Election should be made of such men as were not only valiant, but well advised: since the best, and most fortunate of their great Darers, *M. Marcellus*, by losing himself so strangely, had given them a fair warning, not to commit their Army unto rash heads. Among those that stood for the Consulship, *C. Claudius Nero*, was the most eminent. He was of great Nobility; a good Souldier, and one, whose many services in this present War, did forcibly commend unto the place. Yet he seemed a little too violent; and one, whose temper needed the alloy of a more stayed wit. The Fathers therefore endeavoured to joyn unto him in the Consulship, *M. Livius*: one that had borne the same Office long before. This *M. Livius* had been Consul with *L. Amilius Paulus*, in the year foregoing the beginning of this Warre. After their Consulship, wherein they did good service, they had both of them been called into judgement by the people: and this *Livius* condemned; *Amilius* hardly escaping. Though it hath been once already noted; yet I cannot forbear to remember it again: how it pleased God to upbraid the unthankfull *Romans*, with the malicious judgement, given by their multitude upon honourable men. For in the battel of *Cannæ*, it was apparent, what lamentable effects the memory of their injustice wrought: when *L. Amilius* rather chose to yeeld to the froward ignorance of his Colleague; and afterward to die in the greatest overthrow that ever fell upon the State of *Rome*, than by resisting the pernicious courses of *Terentius Varro*, to cast himself anew upon the danger of the popular fury. As for *M. Livius*, he is even now ready, and will so continue, to tell the people of their faults in a divers manner. Eight years together after his condemnation, had he been absent out of the city, had lived in his country Grange: still vexing himself with the indignity of his condemnation. *Marcellus* and *Lavinus*, being Consuls two or three years agoe, had brought him into *Rome*: where he lived private in discontented sort, as might appear,

both

both by his carelesnes in apparell, and by the wearing of his long hair and beard, which in that time were the badges of men afflicted. Very lately he was compelled by the Censors, to poll his hair, and come into the Senate: where he used to sit silent, and signifie his assent or dislike to what was proposed, either in short formal words, or in passing from side to side, when the house was divided. At length it hapned, that in some business whereby he drew all the Fathers to attention; and bade them enquire of him, and take better notice, what he was, and what he had been. The Senate was much altered since he had left it; many brave men were lost; new ones were chosen; such as rather served to fill up the number, than to answer to the dignity of the place: and they that were left of ancient standing, had even spent their Vertues to no great effect. Wherefore all began to say; that it was great pity, so worthy and able a man as this *Livius*, had been all this while forgotten; one of whom the Common-wealth stood in great need, yet had not used in this dangerous war. Now seeing that the Consuls ought, one of them, to be chosen a *Patrician*, the other of necessity a *Plebeian*: and since neither *Fabius*, nor *Valerius Lavinus*, being both of them *Patricians*, could be joyned with *Claudius Nero*; every one was of opinion, that there could not be chosen and coupled together, two sifter men than *C. Claudius*, and this *Marcius Livius*. But *Livius* would not endure to hear of this. He said it was unreasonable, that one condemned as a dishonest man, should afterwards be chosen Ruler of the City. If they had done ill to trust him with one Consulship, what meant they then to offer him another? With these, and the like phrases he resisted their desires: till by perswasions, and examples rehearsed, of such as had patiently digested injuries done by the people, and repayed good for evil, he was contented to accept the honour.

Here we may behold a true figure of that Embleme, with which *Themistocles* checked the ingratitude of the *Athenians*: resembling himself to a Plane-tree, the branches and boughs whereof men break in fair weather; but run under it for shelter in a storme. Such unthankfulness, to well-deserving men, is not rarely found in the outrageous multitude. Neither was the late example hereto much unlike, of *Philip* the second King of *Spain* his dealing with the Duke of *Alva*. For although he had committed the Duke to prison, upon some small offence conceived, without all regard of his former deserts: yet when his intended conquest of *Portugal*, required the service of a man, more than ordinarily sufficient, he stood no longer upon the scanning of late displeasures, but employed the same Duke, whom he had newly disgraced. Thus is wisdom often taught by necessity.

It was a dangerous year toward, when *C. Claudius Nero*, and *M. Livius* were chosen Consuls. *Asdrubal* was already come into *France*, and waited only, to have the wayes of the Alpes thawed by warm weather, for his passage into *Italy*. The *Romans* used at this time the service of three and twenty Legions: and wanted not employment for many more, if they had known how to levie and maintain them. Of these which they had, four served in *Spain*, two in *Sicily*, and two in *Sardinia*: the rest were so disposed, in several parts of *Italy*, where need seemed to require, that only two Legions were left to each of the Consuls. But the Consuls were men of execution, and would not be tied to the punctuall observance of what the Senate thought fit. *M. Livius* would not stirre out of *Rome*, against so mighty a power as followed *Asdrubal*, until he had first obtained, that he might carry with him as many as could well be spared from other employments; and those, of the most of them, chosen Companies. It was true, that two Legions appointed to serve under *Lucius Porcius* a Praetor of that year, among the *Cisalpine Gauls*, might be reckoned as an additament to the forces of *Livius*, to whom this War against *Asdrubal* was allotted. So might also two other Legions, that were among the *Salerni*, near unto *Tarentum*, under another of the Praetors, be accounted a part of *Claudius* his Army, that was sent against *Hannibal*. Nevertheless, the Consuls by the eloquence of *Livius*, did obtain, that all might be left to their own discretion. For now came, that *Asdrubal* was already passing the Alpes; the *Ligurians*, who dwell in the Country about *Genoa*, with their neighbour people, were in readinesse, to joyn with him; and *L. Porcius* sent word, that he would adventure no further, than he safely might. When all was ordered as themselves thought best, the two Consuls went forth into the City, each his severall way. The people of *Rome* were now quite affected,

FIFTE



affected, than they had been, when *L. Amilius Paulus* and *C. Terentius Varro*, were sent against *Hannibal*. They did no longer take upon them, to direct their Generals, or bid them dispatch, and win the victory betimes: but rather they stood in fear, left all diligence, wisdom and valour should prove too little. For since few years had passed, wherein some one of their Generals had not been slain; and since it was manifest, that if either of these present Consuls were defeated, or put to the worst: the two *Carthaginians* would forthwith joyne, and make short work with the other: it seemed a greater happiness than could be expected, that each of them should returne home Victors; and come off with honour, from such mighty opposition, as he was like to finde. With extreme difficulty had *Rome* held up her head, ever since the battell of *Cannæ*: though it were so, that *Hannibal* alone, with little help from *Carthage*, had continued the War in *Italy*. But there was now arrived another sonne of *Amilcar*; and one, that in his present Expedition, had seemed a man of more sufficiency than *Hannibal* himself. For whereas in that long and dangerous march, through barbarous Nations, over great Rivers and Mountains, that were thought unpassable, *Hannibal* had lost a great part of his Army: this *Asdrubal* in the same places, had multiplied his numbers; and gathering the people, that he found in the way, descended from the Alps like a rowling Snow-ball, far greater than he came over the Pyrenees at his first setting out of *Spain*. These considerations, and the like, of which fear presented many unto them; caused the people of *Rome*, to wait upon their Consuls out of the Town, like a pensive train of Mounts: thinking upon *Marcellus* and *Crispinus*, upon whom in the like sort they had given attendance the last year; but saw neither of them returne alive, from a lesse dangerous War. Particularly, old *Q. Fabius* gave his accustomed advice to *M. Livius*, that he should abstain from giving, or taking battell, until he well understood the Enemies condition. But the Consul made him a forward answer, and said, that he would fight the very first day: for that he thought it long, till he should either recover his honour by victory; or by seeing the overthrow of his own unjust Citizens; satisfie himself with the joy of a great, though not an honest revenge. But his meaning was better than his words.

Of the overthrow that *Asdrubal* received in *Spain* by *Scipio*, a little before he took his journey into *Italy*; such mention hath already been made, as agreed with the report of that noble Historian *Livie*. Yet I think it not amiss to add in this place; what may be gathered out of the remaining fragments of *Polibius* his History concerning that accident: *Asdrubal* had wrestled with many difficulties in *Spain*; by reason of those Captains that were sent from the City of *Carthage*, to joyn with him in the administration of that Province: they bring, as it may seem, of the *Hannonian* faction; which is to say, thus far forth Traytors, that they preferred the advantage of their own side, before the good of their Common-wealth. In what particulars they wronged this worthy sonne of *Amilcar*, and how they hindered his courtes undertaken, it cannot be known: since of those books, wherein *Polibius* hath exactly handled these matters, there are to us remaining only a few broken pieces. But by the spitefull dealing of *Hannibal* in *Sicily* with *Mutines*, a better man of War than himself, whom *Hannibal* had sent into the Land: we may conceive, that against the brother of *Hannibal* it was thought needfull, by these mischievous Partizans of *Hanno*, to use the violent opposition of more earnest malice. Nevertheless, *Asdrubal* was a good Patriot: and therefore endured patiently such indignities, as *Mutines* could not long digest. His journey into *Italy* being resolved upon: he lay with part of the Army at *Perula*, not far from the Mines of Silver; whence he was to furnish his Expeditions. Thither came *Scipio*: and drove him out of his Camp, though he were strongly lodged, before the other *Carthaginian* Captains could, or would come to his assistance. The overthrow seems not to have been so great, as it must have been supposed, if no way lay open to those that fled. Rather it appears, that *Asdrubal* dealt like a provident man, and seeing that his Camp was likely to be forced, sent away all his money with his Elephants before him: but still he hind himself to sustain the *Romans* a while, until his carriages might be off of danger. Herein he had his desire. Afterwards, he gathered his broken troops together, and retired in such sort, that *Scipio* thought it not good to pursue him, and so passed over the *Pyrenees*. Then taking unto him the forces assigned for his expedition, he marched away toward the *Pyrenees*: leaving the care of *Spain* unto his brother *Mago*; and to *Asdrubal* the

the sonne of *Asco*; that thought himself the fittest man for the administration thereof. Pain would *Scipio* have stopped him on his journey; by sending to defend against him the ordinary way of the mountains. But whether *Asdrubal* took another way, or whether he forced the guards that *Scipio* had set to keep the Pyrenees (as the defence of hard passages commonly sorts to no good effect) he was not letted in his voyage by any such impediment. Comming into *Gaul*, and following the steps of his brother *Hannibal*: he found the Nations that lay in his way, so well affected, either to him or to his money that no passages were defended against him, nor any fort of resistance made; but he, and his Army well entertained, and their number much increased, by access of such as were desirous to take his pay. Of these he had the better choice: for that he was driven to winter in their Country; whilst that the passages of the Alps were closed up with Ice and Snow. The Mountainers likewise, that had so greatly molested *Hannibal* in his journey over the Alps, were easily won to take part with *Asdrubal*, when he travelled thorow their Country. For these poor men, at the first comming of *Hannibal*, were verily persuaded, that it was his purpose to rob them of their cattell; and to make spoil of that little wealth which they had painfully scraped together out of the desolate rocks. But now in process of time, they were better informed. Therefore understanding, that there were two mighty Cities, far distoynd asunder, which made War upon each other, by Land and Sea; and that the Alps did only lye in the way: they gladly consented to take their part in the fortune of the Invaders. The like affection upon greater cause, was afterward found in the *Cisalpine Gauls*. The *Ligurians* also joynd with *Asdrubal*; and so would the *Hetrurians* have done, if he had arrived in their Country. There was no other Roman Army near, than *L. Postumus* with his two Legions, of whom there was no great fear. Therefore did *Asdrubal* besiege *Placentia*, a Roman Colony: in hope to make his comming the more terrible, by the destruction of that Town. But there he lost a great deal of time, and finally was driven to quit the enterprise: by undertaking which, he gave the Roman Consuls leisure to make ready for him; and caused his brother *Hannibal* (who upon the first bruit of *Asdrubal*'s his so timely, and easily passing the Alps, was about to leave his wintering Camps, and go forth to meet with him) to sit still a while, as well aware, that *Placentia* would not be taken in haste.

*Claudius Nero* the Roman Consul, made what speed he could to meet with *Hannibal*, and stop him from joyning with his brother. He had about forty thousand foot, and five hundred horse: with which he daily offered battell to the *Carthaginians*; and had of him the better in many skirmishes. *Hannibal* was once driven to make a tedious march from the borders of the *Salernines* and *Apulians*, into the Country of the *Bruttians*; there to increase his forces; which were otherwise too weak for the journey intended. Afterward comming to *Grumentum*, a Town of the *Lucanis*, he there fought unprofitably with *Nero* the Consul. Nevertheless, he got off, and marched away to *Venusia*. But *Nero* followed him, and had there again the better of him. Wherefore he was driven to return to *Metapontum*: where joyning with *Hanno*, that had made ready a good Army, he assayed again to make way by force to his brother. So he passed onward, and came unto *Venusia*, having *Nero* still at his heels. Thence went he over the River *Asinus* to *Casertum*, where he lay down, not far from the place, in which he had obtained his most memorable victory. There also did *Nero* sit down by him: and both of them rested, without making offer to fight. It seemed perhaps unto *Hannibal*, who knew the Country very well, that his brother might with little impediment, overcome the way to *Casertum*: where if he could once again deal with both the Consuls, and all the Roman forces together, he had reason to hope for such another victory, as once he had gotten in the same open Country. If this had so fallen out, *Rome* would have been undone for ever. But the *Carthaginians* should not have needed to wish any second victory, in the naked Camps about *Cannæ*; if such an Army as this which *Asdrubal* now brings, had come to second *Hannibal*, when he was in his full strength; and the Romans not able to keep the field. Wherefore this worthy General had good reason afterward to say that *Hanno* was the man, who by delaying the supply, did bear him out of *Italy*; which else no power of the Romans could have done.

Whilst *Nero* waited upon the *Carthaginians*, and thought it enough to hinder them from meeting with the Army that was comming to their succour: he was advertised of

*Asdrubal* his approach, by Letters and Messengers intercepted, as they were going to *Hannibal*. These gave notice, that *Asdrubal* had left the siege of *Placentia*, and drew onwards apace: being already come within two hundred miles of his brother; notwithstanding all opposition that could be made by *Livie* the Consul. Of these news *Claudian Nero* was nothing joyfull. For if *Hannibal* could once be joyned as head, unto that great body of an Army, which *Asdrubal* brought with him: it was most apparent, that howsoever the fortune of *Rome* should avoid, for the present, any great calamity; yet the very continuance of so strong a war at home, would enforce the *Latines*, and other faithful Associates, to faint under the burden; as twelve of the thirty *Roman* Colonies had already done. Wherefore he resolved, that it were better to make any desperate adventure, than so suffer the conjunction of two such malevolent Planets: whose pestilential influence, if not on the sudden, yet within few years, was like to work most lamentable effects. It seemed apparent, that his Colleague was unable to stay the progress of *Asdrubal*: neither were there any good Legions in a readiness, that could do service in such needfull cases; excepting those, that were already employed under the two Consuls. Hereupon he concluded, that it was not expedient for him to tye himself to his own charge, which was the warre against *Hannibal*; but rather that it behoved him, to help where more necessity required; and to carry part of his forces unto his Colleague. This could not be without much danger. Yet since the meeting of the two *Carthaginian* brethren, was farre more dangerous to the *Roman* Common-wealth: it seemed the best way to put Fortune in trust, with that which was of the lesse importance. Six thousand foot, and a thousand horse he therefore took, that were the very choice of his Army; and making shew, as if he would only step aside, to do some small piece of service near at hand; away he posted as fast as he could, to assist his fellow Consul. His Messengers ran before him, to give warning to all Towns by which he was to passe, that they should be ready to meet him with victuals, and all other necessaries for his Army. *Livius* the other Consul, at that time, lay encamped near unto *Sena Gallica*; and *Asdrubal* within half a mile of him. In five dayes *Nero* had finished his journey thither; and when he drew near, sent Messengers before him, to give notice of his coming. *Livie* thought it fittest that he should stay in some place of covert until dark night, and then enter secretly into the Camp: lest the Enemy, perceiving this access of strength, should accordingly frame his counsels. This was done: and a token given, that the Colonels, Captains, and all Souldiers, as well horse as foot, that *Nero* had brought with him, should be lodged and entertained by men of their own fort. Their Company was somewhat increased by Voluntaries that joyned with him on the way. Nevertheless it was, not needfull, that the Quarter which received them, should be enlarged; since they had brought with them nothing but their armes. The next day they held a Councell of Warre: wherein some were of opinion, that it was best for the newly arrived Companies to refresh themselves a few dayes after their weary journey, before they should be drawn forth to battell. But against this, *Nero* was very earnest; and besought his Colleague, to make use of him out of hand; that he might be able to return to his own camp, ere *Hannibal* should have notice of his absence. The Souldiers also of *Nero* were full of spirit, perceiving that the honour of the victory was due to be theirs; so much as the battell would not have been undertaken, without their coming to help. Finally, it was agreed when the Councell brake up, that the sign of battell should be hung out, which was commonly a purple coat over the General's Pavilion.

*Asdrubal* was no less willing than the *Romans* to come to battell, having long desired it, and hitherto not found occasion before. But when he had put his men in order, and was riding before the head of his Army, to behold the Enemies countenance; it seemed to him, that they were more than they had been; and some of their armes and horses looked as though they had wanted dressing, after a long journey. Hereupon he began to withdraw his Army back into the camp, and gave order, that if offerers could be taken, by whom he might be certified of the truth; yet should there good observation be made, whether the Enemies camp were enlarged, or no; or what other alteration could be noted, that might shew their forces to be increased. The camp, as hath been said was not extended; but the trumpet, that sounded only once in the Quarter of *L. Porcius* the Praetor, did now, contrary to former custome, sound twice in the

the quarter of *Livius* the Consul. Hereat *Asdrubal* greatly mused: and being well acquainted with the *Roman* orders, held this for a sure token, that the other Consul was there arrived. How this might be, if *Hannibal* were alive, and in good case, he was not able to conjecture: but thought it the best way, to go leisurely to work; till he might be better informed. Upon confidence in his own forces, he had not cared hitherto, how near he lay to the *Romans*; nor troubled himself perhaps with over-strongly fortifying his own camp. Yet when he now perceived, that somewhat was fallen out beside his expectation, he changed his resolution; and held it no dishonour to remove a little further off. So he dislodged secretly by night, intending to get over the River *Metaurus*; whereby to keep himself as long as he could; from necessity of battell. But whether it were so, that his guides did steal away from him in the dark; so that he could not find the way to the Forde; or whether his carriages were too heave, and hindered his speed: far he had not gone, ere the Consul *Nero* was at his heels with all the *Roman* horse, and stayed him from passing any further. Soon after came *L. Porcius* with the light armature: whom the other Consul followed anon with all the Legions; in good order, and ready for battell. *Asdrubal*, seeing himself overtaken with necessity to fight, omitted no care and circumspection. His Guides, in whom he reposed least confidence, he placed in his left wing upon a Hill, which the Enemy should not, without much difficulty, be able to climbe: in the right wing he stood himself with his *African* and *Spaniards*; his *Ligurians* he placed in the middle; and his Elephants he bestowed in the front of his battels. On the *Roman* side, *Nero* had the leading of the right wing, *Livius* of the left, and *Porcius* of the battell. Both *Romans* and *Carthaginians* well understood, how much depended upon the fortune of this day; and how little hope of safety there was unto the vanquished. Only the *Romans* herein seemed to have had the better in conceit and opinion; that they were to fight with men desirous to have died from them. And according to this presumption, came *Livius* the Consul with a proud bravery, to give charge on the *Africans*, by whom he was so sharply entertained, that the victory seemed very doubtful. The *Africans* and *Spaniards* were stout Souldiers, and well acquainted with the manner of the *Roman* fight. The *Ligurians* also were a hardy Nation, and not accustomed to give ground; which they needed the less, or were able now to doe, being placed in the midst. *Livius* therefore, and *Porcius* found strong opposition: and with great slaughter on both sides, prevailed little or nothing. Besides difficulties they were exceedingly troubled by the Elephants, that brake their first ranks; and put them in such disorder, as the *Roman* Ensigns were driven to fall back. At this while *Claudian Nero*, labouring much in vain against a steep Hill, was unable to come to blowes with the *Gauls*; that stood opposite unto him, but out of danger. This made *Asdrubal* the more confident; who, seeing his own left wing safe, did the more boldly and fiercely make impression on the other side, upon the left wing of the *Romans*. But *Nero* perceiving that the place wherein he stood, was such as would compel him to remain idle till the fight were ended; took a part of his forces, and led them round behind the forces of *Porcius* and *Livius*: which having compassed, he fell upon *Asdrubal*, and charged him in the flank. Here began the victory to be manifest on the *Roman* side. For *Nero*, finding none to resist him in front; ran all along the length of *Asdrubal* his battell: and falling upon the skirts thereof, disturbed the Elephants, and put all to rout. Of the *Spaniards* therefore and *Africans*, that were laid anon mes, and put all to rout. Of the *Ligurians* and *Gauls* escaped as they could; every side, the greatest part was slain. The Elephants four were taken alive: the rest and saved themselves by timely flight. Of the Elephants four were taken alive: the rest were slain: some by the Enemies weapons, others by their own guides that rode them. For when any of them, being sore wounded, began to waver untruly, and rush back upon their own battell following them, the guide had his readiness as a Mallet, and a Chizel, wherewith he gave them a stroke between the ears, in the joint of the neck, next unto the head, wherewith he killed the beasts upon a sudden. This speedy way of preventing such harme as the Elephants, being hurt, were wont to do to the Squadrons following them, is said to have been the device of *Asdrubal* himself; who dyed in this battell.

Great commendations are given to *Asdrubal* both by *Ralphus* and by *Livie*. He is said at all times to have shewed himself worthy of *Amilcar* his father, and *Hannibal* his brother: to have driven with great patience against many difficulties, wherein he fell

fell by the means of thole Captains that were sent from *Carthage* into *Spain*; to have performed in this last battell all duties of a worthy General; and finally, when he saw the losse irreparable, to have ridden manfully into the thickest of his Enemies; where, fighting bravely, he was slain. Of the number that died with him in this battell, the report of *Livie*, and of *Polybius* do very much disagree. For *Livie* saith that the *Carthaginians* had no lesse an overthrow, than was that which they gave to the *Romans* at *Cannae*; that fifty five thousand of them were slain, five thousand and four hundred taken prisoners, and above four thousand *Roman* citizens, whom they had captives with them, delivered, and set at liberty. He saith also, that of the *Romans* and their Associates there were slain eight thousand; and of the booty, that it was exceeding great; not only in other kinds, but in gold and silver. Concerning the booty, *Polybius* hath no mention of it. Likely it is to have bin as rich as *Livie* reporteth it; for *Asdrubal* came well stored with money. But *Polybius* (who had no desire to make this battell of *Metanrus*, a parallel unto that of *Cannae*) reports no more than about ten thousand of the *Carthaginian* sleyde; & two thousand of the *Roman*, to have bin slain. The number of the prisoners he doth not mention: but only saith, That some of the *Carthaginian* Princes were taken alive; and that all the rest died in the battell. Whereby it may seem that they were all *Barchinians*: forasmuch as they preferred the honour of themselves, and of their country, above their lives.

The joy of this victory was no lesse in *Rome*, than had been the fear of the event. For ever since it was known in what fort *Nero* had left his Army, the whole City was troubled, as much as lately at *Hannibal* his coming thither. Men thought it strange, that the Consul should make such a great adventure, as thus to put the one half of all the *Roman* forces unto hazard of the Dice. For what if *Hannibal* should chance to have notice of this his departure, & either pursue him, or set upon the Army that staid behind, much weakened, and without a General? Thus did they talk; yet reserving their censure unto the success, with liberty to approve or condemn, according to the issue. In the meantime the people filled the Market-place, the Women ran to the temples, with Vowes and Prayers; and the Senators were daily in counsell, waiting still ready at hand upon the Magistrates, as if some great matter were likely to fall out, that would aske every ones help. In brief, they were all so full of melancholy, that when the first newes of victory came, there were not many that would believe it. Afterwards, when Messengers arrived from the Consuls, with Letters containing all that had passed, there was not only great and joyfull concourse of all sorts of men unto the Temples, but the very face of the City was altered; and men from thenceforth began to follow their private business; making contracts one with another (which they had long forborne to do) and attending their own affairs in such wise, as if *Hannibal* were already driven out of *Italy*.

*Nero* returning to his camp, threw forth openly the head of *Asdrubal* before the *Carthaginians*; and producing his *African* prisoners bound, sent two of them loose to give *Hannibal* notice of what had happened. These two prisoners might have served well enough to certifye *Hannibal* of the misadventure, without doing wrong to the dead body of *Asdrubal*; especially since *Hannibal*, in honourable, and far different manner, had given buriall to *Gracchus* and *Marcellus*; yea, to all the *Roman* Generals, whose carcases fell into his hands. But it may seem, that howsoever the People of *Carthage* wanted much of the generous disposition, which was found among the *Achians*; in their love unto the Common-weal; yet in dealing with enemies, they were fit more civilly and less prone to the insolvency of revenge. The best excuse of this outrage done by *Nero*, is, that he hoped much more by the sudden terror of such a spectacle, than by the simple relation of that which had passed, to make a deep impression of fear into the *Carthaginians*. It may also be said, That he forgot himself, being overjoyed with the greatness of his prosperity. For it was the battell of *Metanrus* that weighed down the balance, and turned the Tide of the *Roman* fortune: which being at the lowest ebbe, needed not afterwards, to flow, till it could not be contained within any banks. *Hannibal* having lost in this unhappy fight (besides the worthy Gentleman his brother) all the hope that so long sustained him in *Italy*, withdrew himself into the Country of the *Bruttians*; and thither he caused all the *Lucians*, that were of his party, to remove; as likewise all that dwell in *Metapontum*. For he wanted men to defend so many places as he held at this present, because they lay too far asunder.

Where

Wherefore he drew them all into a lesser compass in the utmost corner of *Italy*, it being a country of much fastness, and the people exceedingly devoted to his service. In this lastness *Nero* gave him no memorable impediment: either because *Hannibal* was too strong for him, having all his forces united; or because it is likely that this remove of the *Lucians* and *Metapontines*, was not before the end of Summer, when their harvest was gathered in: at what time the Senate called him home to *Rome*. *M. Livius* the other Consul tarried among the *Cisalpine Gauls* until the end of summer; there to set things in such order as he thought requisite: which done, he wrote unto the Senate, that there was no more need of him and his Army in that Province, but that *L. Porcius*, with the two Legions that were there before, might very well discharge the place. For this cause, he desired leave to returne home; and that he might bring his Army with him. The Senate well understood his meaning: which was, to have the honour of triumph as he well deserved. But forasmuch as it was well known, what interest *Nero* had in the late victory: order was so given, that not only *Livie* with his Army should come home; but likewise *Nero*, though leaving his Army behind him to confront *Hannibal*. So the honour of triumph was granted to them both: in the pomp whereof, *Livie* made the greater shew, as riding in a Chariot, and followed by his Souldiers; because in his Province, and upon his day of command, the victory was gotten: his Army also being present at the triumph. But *Nero*, that rode on horse back, and without such attendance, was the more extolled by the People and Souldiers; by whom the victory was in a manner wholly ascribed unto his great worth. Neither wanted *L. Furius Philo*, and *Q. Caelius Metellus*, Lieutenants to the Generals, the due acknowledgement of their good service. For they were commended unto the People, as men worthy to be chosen Consuls: and Consuls they were chosen for the year following. But nothing was done by them, worthy of memory in their Consulship. Neither indeed from this year, which was the thirteenth of the present war; until the eighteenth year wherein it ended; was there any maker of importance wrought in *Italy*, save only the taking of *Loeri* from the *Carthaginians* by surprise. For *Hannibal* wanted strength, wherewith to make any great offer; and the *Romans* had little minds to provoke him; but thought it well that he was kept. Such opinion had they conceived of him; that though all about him went to ruin, yet in him alone they thought there was force enough to hold himself upright. And surely, very notable are the commendations given unto him by *Polybius*, whom *Livie* therein follows. That making war upon a People of all other the most warlike, he obtained so many victories by his own good conduct: & that leading an Army, compounded of so many sundry nations, *Africans*, *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, *Carthaginians*, *Italians*, & *Greeks*, which were neither in Language, Lawes, Conditions or any other thing, one like to another; he held them all in such good order, that they never fell to sedition among themselves, or against their General. But that which *Livie* adds hereto, is yet perhaps of greater admiration: That he sustained his Army, without help from other places; from this time forward, upon the hungry soile of the *Bruttians*; which, when it was best thinned in time of peace, could hardly suffice to nourish the inhabitants. It is therefore apparent, that by his proper worth and vertue, he kept his Army in such order and obedience; rather than by any greatness of reward and booty: since after the death of *Asdrubal*, he made no invasion upon the wealthier parts of *Italy*, but held himself still among the poor *Bruttians*. Where we must leave him, until he be drawn into *Africa* by *Scipio*; whose doings will henceforth entertain, and lead us unto the end of this War.

¶ *Scipio* being now returned to *Rome*, he was received with great honour, and was made Consul for the year following, which was the fourteenth of the present war. In the year following, he was made Consul again, which was the fifteenth year.

¶ *Scipio* being now returned to *Rome*, he was received with great honour, and was made Consul for the year following, which was the fourteenth of the present war. In the year following, he was made Consul again, which was the fifteenth year.

men: and *Asdrubal* with-draw himself into *Lusitania* (which is now *Portugal*) whither the *Romans* had ill means to follow; being altogether unacquainted in those parts. *Mago* had soon ended his business, and returned into *Spain*: where he met with *one Hanno* (the same perhaps that had lately been employed in *Sicily*) who brought new forces out of *Africa*, and came to succeed in place of *Asdrubal* the *Barchine*. It is not unlikely that *Spain* was now the better, and more readily furnished with men, and all things needfull from *Carthage*; when that son of *Amilcar*, whose authority had been greatly was thence departed. For hereby might the factious diligence of old *Hanno* approve itself, against that noble race of Warriors; when it should appear, that things did prosper much the better by being left unto the handling of other men. Whether it were upon desire to make good some such opinion raised of him at home, or whether upon confidence in the forces that he brought over: *Hanno* took the field, and led *Mago* with him; as purposing assuredly to set upon the *Romans*. So he entered into the country of the *Celiberians*, not very far from new *Carthage*: where, by money, and over persuasions, he levied above nine thousand men.

*P. Scipio* in the mean while contained himself in the Eastern parts of *Spain*: attentive, as it may seem, to the proceedings of *Asdrubal*, the sonne of *Amilcar*, against whom, he is reported by some Writers to have sent part of his forces into *Italy*, to the assistance of *C. Claudius Nero*, and *M. Livius* the Consuls. But hearing of the levie made by *Hanno* and *Mago* among the *Celiberians*, he sent *M. Syllanus* the Proprætor, with ten thousand foot, and five hundred horse. *Syllanus* got intelligence by some fugitive *Celiberians*, who became his guides, that their Countymen incamped apart from the *Carthaginians* in great disorder: as men fearing no danger, because they were at home. Wherefore as closely as he was able, he drew near to these *Celiberians*; and falling upon them on the sudden, gave them such an overthrow, that *Hanno* and *Mago* coming to their succour, instead of heartening and re-inforcing them, became parakeets of the loss. *Mago* layed himself with all the horse, and old Companies of foot, which were about two thousand; and in ten dayes journey brought them safe to *Asdrubal*. The rest of the *Africans* were either slain or taken: among whom *Hanno* had the ill luck to be taken prisoner, though he kept himself out of the fight until all was lost. As for the *Celiberians*, they knew better how to make shifts, and saved most of themselves by running into the woods.

It could no otherwise be, but that *Scipio* was much troubled with the danger wherein *Italy* stood, by the coming thither of *Asdrubal*. Ten thousand foot, and eighteen hundred horse he did therefore send out of *Spain* (as it is reported by some Authors) to the defence of his own Country; or was perhaps, about to send them: and thereupon remained at new *Carthage*, intire to the necessity and successe of his Countymen at home. But when he had word of the great victory at *Metarrus*, which fell out long before the end of the Summer, then might he well adventure, to take in hand the conquest of *Spain*; which must needs be much alienated from the *Carthaginians*, by the report of such an overthrow. The *Spanish* Souldiers that served under *Hannibal*, and those that had been sent over into *Africa*, were as pledges heretofore, by whom their Country was held obnoxious to the *Carthaginians*. But when it was noised abroad, that all which had followed *Asdrubal* into *Italy*, were fallen into the hands of the *Romans*; and that *Hannibal* with his army was closed up in a strait, whence he could not get out: then did it greatly behove the *Spaniards* to conform themselves unto the will of the Victors. That it was the succels of things in *Italy*, which gave such confidence unto *Scipio*; it was the more probable, because he took not this great enterprise in hand, until the summer was almost spent. *Asdrubal* therefore used the benefit of the season; and by disposing his Army into many Garrisons, hindered the Enemy from doing any great exploit before winter. So the very length of way, and the time of the year, caused *Scipio* to return back: without any other matter performed, than that his brother *L. Scipio* took by assault the Town of *Oringia*.

Against the next years danger, *Asdrubal* prepared a great Army: and spared not cost, nor travell, in strengthening himself, for the tryall of his last fortune in *Spain*. With seventy thousand foot, four thousand horse, and two and thirty Elephants; he took the field: which number I believe, that he could hardly have raised, without boldly denying the truth of those reports that came from *Italy*. *Scipio* thought his *Roman* Legions

too weak to encounter with such a multitude. Wherefore he judged it needfull to use the help of his *Spanish* friends. But the death of his Father and Uncle, that were cast away by the treason of such false Auxiliaries, made him on the other side very doubtful, of relying upon those, that might perhaps betray him in his greatest need. Yet since *one Calchus*, that was Lord of eight and twenty towns, had promised him the last Winter, to raise three thousand foot, and five hundred horse for his service: he resolved to make use of those, and some few others; that might help to make a shew, and yet not be able to do any great haime, if they would revolt. So with five and forty thousand foot, and three thousand horse, he sought out the Enemy, near unto whom he incamped. At his first coming, *Mago* and *Masimissa* fell upon him; with hope to take him unprepared, whilst he was making his lodgings. But he laid certain troops of horse in covert: which, breaking upon them unexpected, caused them to fall off. They made at first an orderly retreat; but being more hardly pressed, they shortly brook themselves to plain flight. After this encounter, which added some courage to the *Romans*, and abated the presumption of the *Carthaginians*, there were daily skirmishes between the horse and light armature, on both sides; wherein was nothing done of importance. *Asdrubal* drew forth his Army, and arranged it before his Trenches: like did *Scipio*, each of them to shew that he durst fight, yet not proceeding any farther. Thus they continued many daies: *Asdrubal* being still the first that issued forth in the morning, and the first that, in the evening, withdrew himself into his Trenches. The *Spanish* Auxiliaries were placed on both sides in the wings; the *Carthaginians* were in the midst, with their Elephants before them; and opposite to these on the other side were the *Roman* Legions. When they had in this order confronted one another, though at some distance, many dayes together: it grew to be the common opinion, that they should shortly meet in the same form; and be matched on each part, with the enemies long before designed. But *Scipio*, when he purposed indeed to fight, altered the form of his Army; and withall, came forth earlier than he had been wont. He caused his men and horses to be well fed: betimes in the morning, before day; and then sent forth his horse and light armature, to train out the *Carthaginians* with their bellies empty: using herein the same trick, whereby he might remember that *Hannibal* had beaten his father in the battell of *Trebia*. His *Roman* Legions he bestowed in the wings; his *Spaniards* in the midst. *Asdrubal* sent forth his horse in all haste, to entertain the *Romans*; whilst he himself arranged his men, in their wonted order at the Hill foot, upon which he incamped. In the skirmishes of the horse it could not be discerned which part had the better; since, being over-pressed on either side, they had a safe retreat unto their foot; and one troop succouring another by course, returned to charge. This fight was protracted by *Scipio* to a great length: because his men, having well fed themselves, were like to hold out better than the enemy. But about noone he caused his wings to advance a good pace; leaving their battell of *Spaniards* far behind them; that came on leisurely, according to direction. The *Spanish* Mercenaries that stood in *Asdrubal* his wings, were no way comparable, save only in number, to the *Latine* and *Roman* Souldiers that came against them; for they were fresh Souldiers, levied in haste; and fighting only in respect of their pay. Being therefore charged in front by the Legions, and in flank, at the same time, by the *Roman Velites*, and by some cohorts, that were appointed to wheel about for the same purpose, they were sorely pressed; and with much difficulty made resistance. The *Carthaginians* would fain have succoured them; but that they durst not stir out of their places, because of the *Spanish* battell which was coming against them; though it were as yet far off. Thus the best part of *Asdrubal* his Army stood idle, until the wings were broken. For, had he adventured to meet with the *Spaniards*, he must have cast himself into the open space that lay before him between the *Roman* wings: to the depth whereof when he had arrived, he should have found himself enclosed in such sort, as was the Consul *Paulus* at the battell of *Cannæ*. Wherefore he did only employ his Elephants; which did, according to their manner, no greater harm to his Enemies, than to his friends. When they were chased with wounds, they could no longer be ruled by their guides: but ran, as chance led them, and troubled both parts; or those perhaps the more, that were the more unwilling to kill them. In process of the fight, the *Romans*, who had well refreshed their bodies in the morning, endured lusty; when the others began to faint with travell and heat of the day.

Wherefore perceiving their advantage, they followed it the more hotly; and gave not over, till they had forced the enemy to change his place, and run from him. *Asdrubal* did his best to have made an orderly retreat; and afterward again, to have caused his men turn head at the Hill foot. But the *Romans* would not suffer the victory to be so extended from them: neither was it easy to put fresh courage into the vanquished, led by the obstinate passion of fear, which hearkens on no persuasion. The Camp of *Asdrubal* had that day been taken, if a storm of rain, which fell violently on the sudden, and bred some superstitution in the *Romans*, had not caused them to give over.

The same night *Asdrubal* gave no rest to his men: but caused them, hungry, and over-laboured as they were, to take pains in fortifying the camp; wherein he feared to be assaulted. But little assurance could he have in the strength of his Trenches, when he had lost the hearts of his *Spanish* Souldiers. One *Attanes*, that was Lord of the *Turdiani*, fled from him to the *Romans*, with a great Band of his subjects: many followed this example; and soon after two strong Towns were yielded up to *Scipio*, and the *Garrisons* betrayed. It seems that the perverse fortune of this late battell, whereupon *Asdrubal* had set his rest, bred in the *Spaniards* a disposition, to beleve the more easily those reports which they heard from *Italy*. For henceforward, they never did good office to the *Carthaginians*. *Asdrubal*, perceiving this, withdrew himself, and marched away faster than an ordinary pace, toward the Ocean Sea. *Scipio* followed the next morning, and overtaking the *Carthaginians* with his horse, caused them so often to make stand, that they were at length attacked by the *Roman* Legions. Here began a cruell slaughter: for there was no resistance made, but all fell to rout, save only seven thousand that with *Asdrubal* himself recovered a very strong piece of ground, which they fortified in haste.

The place he made shift a while to defend: but wanting there necessities to sustain himself long, he was forsaken by some of those few, that continued hitherto partakers of his fortune. Wherefore he resolved to make shift for one; and stealing from his Company by night away to the Sea side, that was not farre thence, he took shipping, and set sail for *Gades*. When *Scipio* understood that *Asdrubal* was thus gone, he left *Syllanus* with ten thousand foot, and a thousand horse, to besiege their camp (which was not taken in haste, for *Mago* and *Masaniassa* staid in it) whilst he with the rest of the Army did what was needfull in the Country abroad. It was not long ere *Mago* and *Masaniassa* followed *Asdrubal* to *Gades*: and their Army dispersed it self; some flying over tottle *Romans*, others taking what way they liked. So upon all the Continent of *Spain*, there were only three Towns left, *Iliturgi*, *Castulo*, and *Astapa*, that made continuance of war against the *Romans*: of which only *Castulo* had a *Carthaginian* garrison, consisting of such as had saved themselves by flight in the late overthrowes. Hereby it seems that the report of those Historians was ill grounded, who said, that *Castulo* yielded long since unto the *Romans*; though *Hannibal* took a wife in that City. For this was one of the last three towns that held out on the *Carthaginian* side. *Iliturgi* had sometimes bin inclinable to the *Romans*, if not altogether at their devotion. Yet after the death of the two elder *Scipio's*, following too earnestly the *Carthaginian* fortune, it not only rebelled, but with great cruelty betrayed and slew the poor men that escaped thither from the overthrowes. *Astapa* was a town that still adhered to the *Carthaginians*; and, which was worse, had thence been by the spoyle of the *Romans* and their Confederates. Wherefore (though not until the next year) *Scipio* went against these, and took himself *Iliturgi*, and *Castulo*: *Iliturgi* by assault, and with a general slaughter of the Inhabitants; *Castulo*, by treason of one *Cardubellus*. *Astapa* was taken by *Lucius Marcius*; or rather destroyed by the Inhabitants. For a great pile of wood was raised in the Market-place: whereinto was thrown all the gold, and silver, with whatsoever else was precious; the women and children standing by it under a sure guard, that should kill and burn them if the *Romans* got into the Town. This provision being made, all the Inhabitants that could bear Armes, rushed forth desperately, and fell upon the *Roman* Camp; where striving beyond their power, they were every one slain. Then was the Town forthwith set on fire, by those that had taken charge to do it: and many of the *Romans* consumed with the flame; whilst they rushed over-hastily to catch the gold and silver, which they saw lying on the pile ready to melt.

*Asdrubal* being beaten into the Iland of *Gades*, found no cause of long stay there: but returned home to *Carthage*, with seven Gallies: leaving *Mago* behind him, to wait upon occasion,

occasion, if any should be offered. He visited in his way home, *Syphax*, King of the *Masassia*, a people of the *Numidians*, hoping to win him to the friendship of the *Carthaginians*. But he met with *Scipio*, as it were with his evil Angel, in the Kings port: who landing at the same time, carried *Syphax* quite another way. For *Scipio* having driven the *Carthaginians* out of *Spain*, did forthwith bethink himself, how to finish the war, by putting them to the like distresse in *Africa*. Hereunto it seemed that the help of *Syphax* would be much available: a King that had many times fallen out with the *Carthaginians*, and sustained much hurt by their procurement; of which in all likelihood he might easily be moved to seek revenge. He had also bin beholding to *P. & Cn. Scipio*, that sent him over a Captain into *Africa*, who instructed him so well in marshalling his forces, as he thereby often became victorious. Upon these reasons, the *Numidian* King sent Embassadors to *Rome*, and made league with the city in time of great extremity. So that hereby *P. Scipio* conceived hope of laying a good foundation to the War, which he intended in *Africa*, upon the friendship of this ill neighbour to the *Carthaginians*. For which cause he sent over *C. Laelius* his Embassador, to deal with *Syphax*: who declaring that the *Carthaginians* did verily ill in *Italy*, and had nothing now at all to doe in *Spain*, easily persuaded the King to take part with those that had the better and were without question his better friends. Only *Syphax* requested that the *Roman* Generall should visit him in person, to conclude the League; by which he was to enter into conditions of more importance, than in any former Treaty. Hereto *Scipio* condescended; thinking the friendship of so great a King, that was neighbour to *Carthage*, and not far distant from *Spain*, well worthy of the adventure. So with two *Quinquereme* Gallies he took Sea, and arrived in the Kings Port, at the same time with *Asdrubal*. This would have bin very dangerous unto him, had he bin descreyed by his enemies further at Sea: but in the Haven they forbore to make offer one upon the other. *Syphax* might well be proud; seeing at one time, two such Captains of two most powerfull Cities, came to desire his friendship. He would have brought them to treat of peace: but the *Roman* excused himself, by want of such Commission from the Senate. He feasted them together: and shortly dismissed *Scipio*, with whom he readily entered into Covenant; which in time of performance, he as readily brake.

## † II.

Funerall games held by *Scipio*. A Duell between two *Spanish* Princes. A digression concerning Duels.

*Scipio* returning into *Spain*, and resting that Winter, took vengeance the next year, upon those of *Iliturgi*, *Castulo*, & *Astapa*, as hath been said before. The conquest of the Country being then in a manner at an end, he performed at new *Carthage*, with great solemnity, some Vowes that he had made, and honoured the memory of his Father and Uncle, with funerall games, especially of those that fought at sharp, according to the manner of the times. Neither was it needfull: that he should trouble himself with preparing slaves for that spectacle, to hazard their lives, as was used in the City of *Rome*: for there were now, that either offered themselves as Voluntaries, or were sent from their Princes, to give proof in single combat, of the valour that was in their several Countreys. Some also there were, that being in contention, which they could not, or would not otherwise end, agreed to refer the decision of their Controversies, to tryall of the sword, in single fight. Among these, the most eminent, were *Corbis* and *Orsus*, of the *Cosen-germans*: that contended for the principality of a Town called *Ibes*. *Corbis* was the elder, and the elder brothers son: wherefore he claimed the Lordship, as eldest of the house, after the manner of our *Irish* *Tanistry*. But the father of *Orsus* stood lately seized of the principality: which, though himself received by the death of his elder brother, yet this his son would not let it go back, but claimed to hold it as heir unto his father, and old enough to rule. Fain would *Scipio* have compounded the matter. But they answered peremptorily, That all their friends and kindred had already laboured in vain, to take up that quarrel; and that neither God nor Man, but only *Mars*, their god of battell, should be Umpire between them. So they had their wils: and the elder, who was also the stronger, and more skillfull at his weapon, easily vanquished the fool-hardinesse of the younger.

G g g g

Such



Such combats have been very ancient; and perhaps more ancient, than any other kinde of fight. We read of many performed before the Warre of *Troy*; by *Thetew*, *Hercules*, *Pollux*, and others: as also of two more at the Warre of *Troy*, the one between *Paris* and *Meneclaus*; the other between *Heclor* and *Ajax*. Neither want there examples of them among the *Hebrewes*: whereof that between *David* and *Goliath*, and others performed by some of *David's* Worthies, against those that challenged them, are greatly celebrated. Unto the same kinde appertains the fight between twelve of the Tribe of *Juda*, and as many of the *Benjamites*. The *Romans* had many of them: whereof that was principal, in which they ventured their Dominion upon the heads of three brethren the *Horatii*, against the three brethren *Curatii*, that were *Albans*. The combat of *Manlius Torquatus*, and shortly after, of *Valerius Corvinus*, with two Champions of the *Gauls*, which challenged any *Roman*, were of less importance, as having only reference to bravery. In *England* there was a great Combat fought between *Edmond Ironside*, and *Cannius the Dane*, for no lesse matter than the Kingdome. The use of them was very frequent in the *Saxon* times, almost upon every occasion, great or small. In the reign of *Edward* the third, who sustained the party of *Mountfort*, against the Earle of *Blois*, contending for the Duchy of *Brittain*, there was a fight for honor of the Nations, between thirty of the *Britons*, and thirty *English*: two of which *English*, were *Calverley*, a brave Captain; and that Sir *Robert Knolles*, who afterwards became a renowned Commander in the *French* wars, & did highly honour his blood, whereof the Lord *Knolles* is descended. It were infinite to reckon the examples of the like, found in *English*, *French*, and *Italian* Histories. Most of them have been combats of bravery, and of *gayeté de cœur*, as the *French* term it; for honour of severall Nations; for love of Mistresses; or whatsoever else gave occasion unto men, desirous to set out themselves. But besides those of this sort, there are two other natures of combats; which are, either upon accusation for life, or upon triall of Title and Inheritance, as in *Writ of right*. And of this latter kind, was that, of which we spake even now, between *Corbis* and *Orsua*. Unto these (we thinke) may be added, as of different condition from the rest, the combat upon Wage; such as were that between *David* and *Goliath*, or that between the *Horatii* and *Curatii*: in which without regard of Title, the Dominion of Nations, one over the other, is adventured upon the head of Champions. Upon an accusation for life, there was a combat appointed between the Lord *Henry of Boulbrooke*, Duke of *Heresford*, and *Mowbray* Duke of *Norfolk*. There was a combat performed by Sir *John Anley* and one *Catrington*: whom *Anley* charged with treason: and proved it upon him, by being victorious. The like was fought between *Robert of Mountfort*, and *Henry of Essex*. The like also, between a *Navarrois*, and one *Welsh* of *Grimsbey*, whom the *Navarrois* accused of treason: but, being beaten in fight, confessed that he had belyed him, and was therefore drawn and hanged. Whether our tryall by battell do determine, that the false accuser, if he be vanquished, shall suffer the punishment which had been due to the offender, if the accusation had been proved; I cannot affirm. But we every where find, That if he which is accused of treason, or according to the customes of *Normandy*, of Murder, Rape, or burning of places (offences punished by death) be overcome, He shall suffer the pains appointed for those crimes. In combats for tryall of right, it is not so: neither is the Appellant or Defendant bound to fight in person, but he may try it by his Champion, as did *Paramour* and *Lov*, or offered to do, in the reign of Queen *Elizabeth*. And in this case, he that is beaten or yeeldeth, loseth only his cause, not his life. Neither are the combats upon accusation, or tryall of right, fought in open field, as are those of bravery; but in *Camp close*, that is, within rails. Now this tryall by combat was so ordinary in *France*, before the time of *S. Lewis* and *Philip the fair* his grand-child, as every Lord of Fee, Ecclesiastical or Temporal, had power to grant it within his own Jurisdiction. And it seemeth, that the *French* Kings, and other Lords, made their profit hereby. For in the \* *Memorials of the Chamber of Accounts*, is found an Article to this effect: That if a Combat were once accepted, and after, by consent of the Lord, were taken up, each of the parties should pay two shillings six pence; but if it were performed, then should the party vanquished forfeit an hundred and twelve skillings. And upon this custome grew the *French* Proverbe, which they use when as any man hath had an hard and unjust judgement; saying, That *He was tryed by the Law of Lora*, or *Bern*; *ou le bastu paye l'amende*, where he that is beaten gives the recompence. Of these frequent

An. 22. Ric. 2.

An. 3. Ric. 2.

An. 9. Hen. 2.

Si homines de  
Loracio vadit  
Ducis temere  
delictum, &c.

trials by battell that great learned man *Tve*, Bishop of *Chartres*, did often complain, and specially against the *French* Church-men: as appears by \* his Letters to the Bishop of \* *Clerici vestri* *Orleans*, to the Arch-deacon of *Paris*, to *Rembert* Archbishop of *Sens*, and to others, wherein he rebukes the judgement of their Churches, that had ratified such challenges of combat. But this liberty and kinde of tryall, save the King himself, it hath since been *faux*; so that no man could decree or graunt it, save the King himself. It hath since been granted, though more sparingly, by the *French* King, as to the Lord of *Carogues*, against *Jacques le Gris*; and to *Julian Romero* the *Spaniard*, against *Moro* his countiman: wherein *Sir Henry Knevet*, Father to the Lord *Knevet* now living, was Patron to *Romero* that had the victory; and lastly to the Lord of *Chiff*. Now in those challenges, upon accusation of Treason, Murder, or other offence deserving death (and in those only) the rule held, That *le défendeur estoit tenu de proposer ces défences par un dementir*, The defendant was bound to plead not guilty, by giving the accuser the Lie: otherwise it was concluded, that the Defendant did *faiblement* confesse the crime, silently confesse the crime. But after such time as *Francis* the *French* King, upon some dispute about breach of Faith, had sent the Lie unto the Emperor *Charles* the first, thereby to draw him to a personall combat: every petty companion in *France*, in imitation of their Master, made giving of the Lie mortally it self, holding it a matter of no small glory, so have it said, That the meanest Gentleman in *France* would not put up, what the great Emperor *Charles* the first had patiently endured.

From this beginning is derived a challenge of combat, grounded upon none of those occasions that were known to the Ancient. For, the Honour of Nations, the Tryall of Right, the Wager upon Champions, or the Objection and Refutation of capital offences, are none of them, nor all of them together, the argument of half so many Duels, as are founded upon meer private Anger, yea, or upon matter seeming worthy of anger in the opinion of the Duellists. So that in these dayes, wherein every man takes unto himself a Kingly liberty, to offer, accept, and appoint personall combats, the giving of the Lie, which ought to be the Negation only in accusations for life, is become the most fruitfull root of deadly quarrels. This is held a word so terrible, and a wrong so unparadonable, as will admit no other recompence, than the blood of him that gives it. Thus the fashion, taken up in haste by the *French* Gentlemen, after the pattern of their King, is grown to be a custome: whence we have derived a kind of Art and Philosophy of quarrell; with certain grounds and rules, from whence the points of honour, and the dependencies thereof, are deduced. Yea there are (among many no less ridiculous) some to mysticall curiosities herein, as that it is held a far greater dishonour, to receive from an enemy a slight touch with a Cane, than a sound blow with a Sword: the one having relation to a slave, the other to a souldier. I confess that the difference is pretty: though for my own part, if I had had any such Italianated enemy in former times, I should willingly have made with him such an exchange; and have given him the point of honour to boot.

But let us examine indifferently the offence of this terrible word, the Lie; with their conditions who are commonly of all other the most tender in receiving it. I say, that the most of these, who present death on the points of their swords to all that give it them; use nothing so much in their conversation and course of life, as to speak and swear falsely. Yea it is thereby, that they shift and shuffle in the World, and abuse it. For how few are there among them, which, having assumed and sworn to pay the monies & other things they borrow, do not break their word and promise as often as they ingage it? Nay, how few are there among them, that are not *Liers by Record*, by being sued intome Court or other of Justice, upon breach of word or bond? For he which hath promised that he will pay money by a day, or promised anything else, wherein he faileth; hath directly lyed to him to whom the promise hath been made. Nay, what is the profession of love that men make now-a-dayes? What is the vowing of their service, and of all they have, used in their ordinary complements, and (in effect) to every man whom they bid not good morrow, or salute, other than a courteous and Court-like kinde of lying? It is (saith a wise *French* man, deriding therein the Apish custome of his Countrey) *un marché de complots fait ensemble, sembler, mentir, & piper les uns les autres*: a kind of merchandise, and complots made among them, to mock, belie, and deride each other: and so far now-a-dayes in fashion, and in use; as he that useth it nor, is accounted either

dull or Cynicall. True it is notwithstanding (omitting the old distinction) that there is great difference between these mannerly and complementall lies, with those which are sometime perswaded by necessity upon breach of promise, and those which men use out of cowardize and fear: the latter confessing themselves to be in greater awe of men, than of God; a vice of all other stiled the most villanous. But now for the *Lie* it self, as it is made the subject of all our deadly quarrells in effect: to it I say, That whosoever giveth another man the *Lie*, when it is manifest that he hath lied, doth him no wrong at all; neither ought it to be more hainously taken, than to tell him, he hath broken any promise which he hath otherwise made. For he that promiseth any thing, tels him, to whom he hath promised, that he will perform it; and, in not performing it, he had made himself a Lier. On the other side, He that gives any man the *Lie*, when he himself knows that he, to whom it is given, hath not lied; doth therein give the *Lie* directly to himself. And what cause have I, if I say that the Sun shines when it doth shine, and that another fellow tels me I lie, for it's midnight; to prosecute such an one to death, for making himself a foolish Ruffian, and a lyer in his own knowledge? For he that gives the *Lie* in any other dispute, than in defence of his Loyalty, or Life, gives it impertinently, and Ruffian-like. I will not deny but it is an extream rudenesse to taxe any man in publick with an untruth (if it be not pernicious, and to his prejudice against whom the untruth is uttered): But all that is rude, ought not to be civilized with death. That were more to admire and imitate a *French* custome, and a wicked one, than to admire and to follow the counsell of God. But you will say, that these discourses favour of cowardize. It is true; if you call it cowardize to fear God or hell: whereas he that is truly wise, and truly valiant, knows that there is nothing else to be feared. For against an Enemies sword, we shall find ten thousand seven-penny-men (waged at that price in the wars) that fear it as little, or perchance lesse, than any profest Sword-man in the world. *Diligentissima in tutela sui Fortitudo; Fortitudo is a diligent preserver of it self.* It is (saith Aristotle) a mediocrity between doubting and daring. *Sicut non Martyrem perdat: sic nec fortem pugna; sed causa: As it is not the punishment that makes the Martyr; so it is not fighting that declares a valiant man; but fighting in a good cause.* In which, whosoever shall resolutely end his life, resolutely in respect of the cause, to wit, in defence of his Prince, Religion, or Country: as he may justly be numbred among the Martyrs of God; so may those that die with malicious hearts, in private combats, be called the Martyrs of the Devill. Neither do we indeed take our own revenge, or punish the injuries offered us, by the death of the injurious. For the true conquest of revenge is, to give him, of whom we would be revenged, cause to repent him: and not to lay the repentance of another mans death upon our own consciences; *Animasq; in vulnere ponere; And to drown our souls in the wounds and blood of our enemies.* Hereupon you will again ask me, if I condemn, in generous and noble spirits, the defence of their honours, being prest with injuries? I say that I do not, if the injuries be violent. For the Law of Nature, which is a branch of the Eternal Law: & the Lawes of all Christian Kings and States; do favour him that is assailed, in the slaughter of the assailant. You will secondly aske me, Whether a Noble-man, or a Gentleman, being challenged by *Cartel* by one of like quality, be not bound in point of honour to satisfie the challenger in private combat? I answer, that he is not because (omitting the greatest, which is the point of Religion) the point of the Law is directly contrary and opposite to that, which they call the point of honour; The Law which hath dominion over it, which can judge it, which can destroy it; except you will stile those AEs honourable, where the Hang-man gives the Garland. For, seeing the Lawes of this Land have appointed the Hang-man to second the Conqueror, and the Lawes of God appointed the Devill to second the Conquered, dying in malice: I say, that he is both base & a fool, that accepts of any *Cartel* to accompany. To this perchance it will be answered, That the Kings of England, & other Christian Kings, have seldome taken any such advantage over men of quality, who upon even terms have slain their private enemies. It is true, that as in times of trouble and combustion they have not often done it; so did our Noble-men and Gentlemen in former ages, in all important injuries, sue unto the King, to approve themselves by battell and publique combat. For as they dared not to brave the Law; so did they disdain to submit themselves unto the shamefull revenge thereof; the same revenge (because it detesteth murder) that hath declared against a common Cut-purse or other Theeves;

Nay

May let it be granted that a pardon, be procured for such offenders: yet is not the man-slayer freed from his pardon. For these two remedie, hath the party grieved notwithstanding; that is, to require justice by Grand Assize, or by battell, upon his appeal, which (saith Sir Thomas Smith) is not denied; and he further saith (for I use his own words) That if the Defendant (to wit, the man-slayer) be convinced either by great Assize or by Battell, upon that appeal; the man-slayer shall dye notwithstanding the Princes pardon. So favourable (saith the same learned Gentleman) are our Princes, and the law of our Realme, to justice and to the punishment of blood violently shed. It may further be demanded, how our Noble-men and Gentlemen shall be repaired in honour, where an enemy, taking the start either in words or blowes, shall lay on them an infamy unsufferable? I say, that a Marshalls Court will easily give satisfaction in both. And if we hold it no disgrace to submit our selves for the recovery of our Debts, Goods, and Lands; & for all things else by which the lives of our selves, our wives, and children are sustained to the Judges of the Law; because it may be felony to take by violence even that which is our own: why should we not submit our selves unto the Judges of honour in cases of honour; because to recover our reputation by strong hand, may be murder? But yet again, it may be objected, That the losse of honour ought to be much more fearful unto us, than either the losse of our goods, of our lands, or of our lives; and I say so too. But what is this honour, I mean honour indeed, and that which ought to be so dear unto us, other than a kind of History, or fame following actions of vertue, actions accompanied with difficulty or danger, and undertaken for the publick good? In these, he that is employed and trusted, if he fail in the performance, either through cowardize, or any other base affection; it is true that he loseth his honour. But the acting of a private combat, for a private respect, and most commonly a frivolous one, is not an action of vertue, because it is contrary to the Law of God, and of all Christian Kings: neither is it difficult, because even and equall in persons and armes; neither for a publick good, but tending to the contrary; because the losse or mutilation of an able man, is also a losse to the Common-weal.

Now that a Marshall of England hath power to save every mans fame and reputation, so far as reputation may sustain injury by words, I think no man doubteth. For so repent us of any evil words that we have given, and to confesse that we have done him wrong, unto whom we have given them, is a sufficient satisfaction; and as it may fall out, more than sufficient. For he that gives ill words in colour, and suddenly denies them, or repents himself of them upon advisement hath the disadvantage in point of reputation. Concerning blowes, which are indeed not to be given but to those that are servile, whether sufficient recompence will be made for them, it shall appear by a notable example of a most worthy Gentleman *Monsieur de Pleſiſ*, that was stricken in France not long since by a Baron of the same Nation. The satisfaction which was given him by a judgement of the Constable and Marshalls of France, was this. In the open Court, wherein the Constable gave judgement, *M. de Pleſiſ* was set in a chair under the degrees where the Constable and Marshalls sate: the Baron, who had given him the blow, did kneel before him on both his knees, holding in his right hand a sword with the point towards himself, and in his left hand the like cudgel or bastinado, where-with he had stricken *M. de Pleſiſ*; both which weapons he delivered into *Plesiſ* hands, submitting himself to such revenge, as it should please him to take with either of those weapons; the Constable and Marshalls having formerly left it to the will of *Plesiſ*, to use his own discretion in the revenge of his own wrongs. Now whether the Baron had reason to please himself, as one beforehand in point of honour, (who struck *M. de Pleſiſ* like a Ruffian coming behind him, and having the advantage of company, and his horses ready, shifted himself away on the sudden; but being afterwards taken, was taught to repent himself in this shamefull manner:) or whether *Monsieur de Pleſiſ* (of whose valour no man doubted) had not far juster cause to rest satisfied, since he might at his pleasure have beaten or wounded his enemy, but forgave him: let any wise man judge. To this, if it be said, That the Baron was constrained to make his submission, that his repentance was enforced, and not voluntary, and therefore no disgrace unto him: I answer, that one may say as well, that it is no disgrace to a Thief, when he is brought to the Gallowes, to repent him of the Robberies by him committed, because his repentance also is constrained. And it is true, that enforced repentance is

G g g g g 3

no

no grace in respect of a force, but in respect of the fact: which (but for our sins to God) makes all repentance shamefull; because all forced repentance is inflicted upon us somewhat unworthy of a Gentleman, and of an honest man. Nay, voluntary repentance is itself, as it hath relation to men, as it is either out of the fear of the ill that may befall us; or out of the acknowledgement of our own weaknes. Certainly, as wise men, and valiant men do rather denide petty injuries or sudden injuries, that are not offered from malice for thought, than revenge them: so men apt to quarrell, do commonly suspect their own valour; and rather desire, that thereby the world should believe them to be of great daring; than know any such resolution in themselves. For he that knowes himself indeed to be an honest man, scornes to hunt after opinion.

Now the faule power which the Constable and Marshals of France have, hath alwaies Marshall of England, or his Deputies; by whose judgement in all disputes of honour every mans reputation may be preserved, we may therefore as well submit our selves to the Judge of honour in all disputes of honour, as we do submit our selves in all controversies of livelihood and life, to the Judges of the Law. And, out of doubt, the institution of this Court of Chevalerie in England, in France, and elsewhere, was no lesse obnoxious to politick. For the blood of man, violently spilt, doth not bring forth *henshees*, as that of Bulls doth, which sting but the fingers or the face; but it produceth that monstrous Beast, *Revenge*, which hath stung to death, and eaten up, of severall nations, many noble personages; as there is nothing more lamentable, nor more threatening the wrath of God upon supreme Governours, than the permission.

His Majesty therefore (which *Henry* the fourth of France also endeavoured) hath done a most Kingly and Christian-like deed in Scotland, which the most renowned of all his Predecessors could never do: in beating down and extinguishing that hereditary prosecution of malice, called the *deadly feud*; a conquest, which shall give him the honour of Prudence and Kingly power for evermore. And we have cause to hope, that his royall care shall be no lesse happy in preventing the like mischief, which threatens England, by the audacious, common, and brave, yet outrageous vanity of Duellists.

Unto this that I have spoken of lying, and of man-slaughter, it must be added, That each of these are of great Latitude; and worthy of reproof and vengeance proportionably; more or lesse, in their severall degrees. There is much difference between Lies of necessity upon breach of promise, or complementall lies, and such pernicious lies, as proceed from fear and cowardize, or are uttered by false witnesses: the former for being excusable by weaknesse of levity, the latter being altogether detestable. No lesse, if not more, difference there is, between killing of a man in open field, with even weapons, & that killing, which the Scriptures call *killing by guile, dolo, or per insidiam*; though our Lawes do not much distinguish them in punishment. For in the latter, God, forsaking his own privilege; commandeth that the *guiltfull* murderer be drawn by force, from the protection of his Altar. Neither is every guilefull murder performed by the sword, nor by *poor* violence: but there is a guilefull murder also, by poysoning; and by the pen, or by practice. For such distinction is found, between committing presumptuously upon a man, to *slay him with guile, and lying in wait for blood, privily, for the instant, without a cause*, upon hope of spoile, after such manner as the *net* is spread before the eyes of the birds, France the first, Queen *Mary* of England, and the Kings Majesty now reigning, have given notable testimony of their justice, upon three Noble men, who committed *guiltfull murder*. Of the first kind, King *Francis* upon the Lord of *Talard*: who being (saith the French Historian) *de haute & ancienne lignee, & supporteur de plusieurs grandes alliances, who being of high and ancient lineage, and supported by divers great alliances*, of which the Cardinal of *Bellay* (in especiall favour with the King) was one, was notwithstanding delivered over into the hands of the Hangman. Queen *Mary*, upon a Noble man of her own Religion, and in many other respects very dear unto his Majesty, upon a Baron of Scotland; whose house was no lesse ancient and faithfull, than himself valiant, and greatly friended both at home and abroad. Of killing *guiltfully* by poyson, and of punishment following such wicked Artisans, every age hath had too many examples. Of killing *guiltfully* by the pen (that I may not spake of any English Judge) the Author of the French *Recherches* gives unto us two notable instances: the one of *des Eclairs*, who (saith *Palsgrave*) *fit mourir Montaignu grand Maistre de France*; *pour contenter l'opinion d'un d'iceux* lors idolatre; & Dieu permit que depuis il fut

Exod. 21.

Exod. 21. 14.  
Prov. 1. 11.Lib. 5. cap. 18.  
Cap. 11.

*il fut pendu & estranglé; Who caused Montaignu great Master of France to die to content his mind (so wrote the Duke of Burgoyne) whom at that time Elhim worshipped as his Idol* the God permitted, & his himself was soon after hanged and strangled. The other was of the Great *Francis* the first, upon his Chancellor *Pojan*; who, to satisfy the Kings passion, procured the destruction of the Admirall *Chabot*; a man most nobly defended, and of great service. For as in other men, so in Kings, the passion of love grows old, and wears out by times. So the Kings affection being changed towards the Admirall, he charged him with some offences which he had formerly committed. The Admirall precluding upon the great good service which he had done the King in *Premont*, upon the defence of *Mars*, against the Emperour, gave the King other language than became him; and desired nothing so much, as a publike triall. Hereupon the King (in his rage) to provoke an ill disposition) gave commission to the Chancelor, as President, and other Judges, upon an information of the Kings advocate, to question the Admirall's life. The Chancelor, an ambitious man, and of a large conscience, (which is not rare in men towards the law) began highly to content the King; wrought with some of the Judges with so great cunning, with others, with so sharp threats; and with the rest, with so faire promises, as alwaies nothing could be proved against the Admirall; worthy of the Kings displeasure, yet the Chancelor subscribed, and got others to subscribe to the forfeiture of his Estate, Offices, and Liberty, though notable to prevail against his life. But what was the Chancelors reward? the King hating falsehood in so good a Magistrate other than his own degradation, arraignment, and condemnation; *Bulle en cressis* (saith *Palsgrave*) *ton sang pur des mours de foy, & no lasser flaccuer* (saith *Constance*) *dehors les ruyens d'une imagination, qui pour fin de jeu le submerge*. A fair lesson to all Judges, to dwell alwaies in the truth, and not to suffer their consciences to float upon the waves of imaginary favours, which in the end overwelms them. And as for the Admirall, though he might have bin assisted with his friends, if any bewail his calamity as undeserved; That he was eyed according to his own desire, by the Lawes of his Country, and by the Judges of Parliament, yet the Kings justice, surmounting all other his passions, gave back unto him his Honour, his Offices, his Liberty, and his Estate.

The last Acts of Scipio in Spain. His return to Rome, where he is chosen Consul.

The last business that troubled Scipio in Spain, grew by the rebellion of the people, and mutiny of his Souldiers. He fell dangerously sick, in such sort, that the rumor of his death ran current throughout Spain. This encouraged *Mandonius* and *Andriscus*, petty kings, that had forsaken the Carthaginians, & followed Scipio a while before, to take arms against the Romans. They were vainly persuaded, that after the Carthaginians were driven out, they themselves should become the mightiest in all Spain. But being now, that things were no way answerable to the greatness of their hopes; they thought it best, to take the present advantage, and hammer out their own fortunes. So they rashly fell upon the *Buestani* and *Sedatani*, Confederates of the Romans; and waded their Country. Part of the Roman Army lying at *Sucto*, instead of making head against these Rebels, grew to be affected with the like distemper. They had not reaped the profit of the Roman conquests, as might satisfy their desires; or as they thought to be gotten, if they might be their own Conquerors. Wherefore, when the death of Scipio was reported, they thought that the time served very well, to enrich themselves with the spoyle of the Country. Many outrages they committed; and, which was greater of all, driving away their Colonels, that should have bridled their fury; they chose out of their own number two base fellows, *Albinus*, *Galenus*, and *Arrius* Ambros to their Commanders. These took upon them all the Ensigns of Proconsuls, or Proprietors; and this their election had been like to that, wherein *Lucius Murena* was chosen by the Souldiers, after the death of the two Scipios. But whilst they were devising what exploits they might do, for the enriching of themselves, in a time of such combustion as was expected, there arrived more certain news, that Scipio was both alive, and in good health. There came also new Colonels, sent unto them from their Generall: who mildly rebuking their want of consideration, and seeming to be glad that they had no further

over-

over-shot themselves, led them to *Carthage*, there to receive their pay. Before their coming, *Scipio* had resolved to do exemplary justice on the principal offenders; and put the whole multitude of them in fear of what they had deserved. Therefore he caused *Syllanus* to make ready the Companies which lay before in the Town, as it were to make an Expedition against *Mandonius* and *Indibilis*: he caused *Albins* and *Atrius* with thirty other of their Complices, to be secretly apprehended in their lodgings; he called the Mutiners to Assembly; and having them unarm'd as they were, encircled roundly *Syllanus* and his companies, prepared for the purpose; he bitterly inveighed against them all as Traitors. This done, *Albins* and *Atrius*, with the other prisoners were haled to the stake, where they were whipt and beheaded, as was the Roman custom toward such offenders. The rest of the Souldiers, to the number of eight thousand, were caused to take their oath of obedience anew; and received every man his pay when he was sworn.

*Mandonius* & *Indibilis* continued in arms; notwithstanding that they had certain word of *Scipio* his life and health. Well they could have been contented to be quiet: but by the severity used to the Roman Souldiers, they stood in fear, as being Spaniards, and greater offenders, of harder measure. *Scipio* went against them, and found them in a valley, that was scarce large enough to hold all their Army. In the entrance thereof he fought with them: and sending *Lalinus* with all his horse to fetch a compass about the hills, and charge them in rear, he overthrew them. *Indibilis* and *Mandonius* had after this, no hope remaining to preserve themselves and their estates, otherwise than by making submission. *Mandonius* therefore came to *Scipio*: and humbly craving pardon, both for himself and for his brother *Indibilis*, obtained his request; yet so, that they were taught to acknowledge themselves lesse free Princes, than formerly they had been.

Afterwards *Scipio* went toward *Gades*: and was met on the way by *Masanissa*, who secretly promised to do him all service, if the people of *Rome* would send him to make war in *Africk*. Unto *Mago* that lay in *Gades*, came directions from *Carthage*, that letting all care of *Spain* alone, he should thence depart from his Fleet into *Italy*; and there wage an Army of *Gauls* and *Ligurians*, to joyn with *Hannibal*. For this purpose, was money sent unto him from *Carthage*, and he himself laid hold upon all that he could find in the town of *Gades*; without sparing either private men, the common treasury, or the Temples. In his voyage thence, he landed at *Carthage*, hoping to have taken it by surpris. But he failed in the attempt, and was so beaten to his ships, that he returned back to repose himself a while at *Gades*. The *Gaditanes*, offended with the robberies and spoil that he had made at his taking leave of them, would not suffer him again to enter into their City. By this he foresaw, that it would not be long ere they became Roman. Wherefore sending Messengers into the Town, to complain of this uncourteous dealing, he allured their Magistrates forth unto him; whom, notwithstanding all the excuse that they could make, he whipt and crucified. This done, he followed his former intended voyage; bidding *Spain* farewell for ever.

The Isle and City of *Gades*, was yielded to the Romans, presently after the departure of *Mago*. Then did *Scipio* deliver up the Province, to those that were sent from *Rome* to succeed him therein: & himself with ten ships returned home. At his coming to *Rome*, he made suit for the honour of a triumph. But it was denied him: for that it had as yet bin granted unto no Proconsul, excepting to such, as received that dignity after a Consulship, as it were by prorogation. But, to make amends for this repulse, the election of new Consuls being then in hand, by general voice of the city *P. Cornelius Scipio* was chosen Consul; and *P. Licinius Crassus* joyned with him. This *Crassus*, being high Priest, or Bishop of the Romans, might not, by the custom of those times, go far from the City; as being to intend the matters of their superstition: though *Cesar*, and others, who in ages following held the same office, were stay'd by no such religious impediment, from being far & long absent. Hereby it came to passe, that *Scipio*, desiring to have the war transferred into *Africk*, was in no danger to lose that honourable charge, by any mischance of lot, in the division of Provinces; for that his Colleague was not capable of employment so far off.

## §. XVIII.

*Scipio obtains leave to make war in Africk. His preparations. Of Masanissa who was joyned with Scipio. The victories against Aldrubal and Syphax.*

*P. Cornelius Scipio*, and *P. Licinius Crassus*, entering into their Consulship, held a meeting of the Senate in the Capitol: wherein it was decreed, that *Scipio* should be allowed, to bestow part of the money which he had brought out of *Spain* into the treasury; upon the setting forth of solemn plays, that he had vowed to make, whilst he was busied in his Spanish wars. This helped well to revive the memory of his victories already gotten; and to give hope unto the People of greater victories in the war, which he intended to make in *Africk*. To the same purpose, did the Spanish Embassages avail much in the Senate; especially that of the *Saguntines*: who magnified his actions highly and deservedly; saying, That they were the most happy of all their countermen, since they being present, had seen him chosen Consul, and should carry home such joyful news. The *Saguntine* Embassadors were lovingly entertained by the Senate; as their faith to *Rome* (though costly it were both to them and to the Romans) had well deserved. Nevertheless, when *Scipio* proposed, that *Africk* might be decreed unto him for his Province, there wanted not many, even of the principal men, that vehemently gain'd him. Of these was *P. Fabius Maximus* the chief: who seems to have been troubled with that disease, which too often caused men, renowned for long approved vertue, to look askint upon the actions of those, that follow them in the same kinde. He alleged many reasons against the purpose of the Consul: whereof the chief were, That the Treasury was unable to sustain the charges of a war in *Africk*; and that it was extremely perillous to hazard so great forces where they could not at pleasure be recalled unto the defence of *Rome* it self; if need required. Hereunto he added many words concerning the danger wherein *Italy* stood, not only of *Hannibal*, but of *Mago* his brother, that was arming the *Ligurians*: as also concerning the honour of the Consul, which would (he said) be greater in letting *Italy* free from enemies, than it could be in doing any harm to *Africk*. Neither did he forget, both to elevate the Spanish wars, as of less moment than the intended voyage against *Carthage*, nor withall to lay great blame upon *Scipio*, for having suffered *Aldrubal* to pass into *Italy*: shewing, that it was greatly to be feared, lest the like might happen again; and that a new Army, notwithstanding the good succels of *Scipio*, (if it hapned to be good) might be sent from *Carthage*, to the utter endangering of *Rome*, whilst the Roman forces were employed abroad. But the main point which he urged, was, That neither the Senate had ordained, nor the People commanded, *Africk* to be that year a Province: which the Consul nevertheless propounded in such wise, as if it were a matter already concluded, and no longer to be argued. *Scipio* on the other side, insisted upon this one point; That it was better to make an offensive, than a defensive war: especially against such as the *Carthaginians*, who being ill provided of able men at home, did furnish themselves, by help of money, with levies made abroad. As for the care of *Italy*, he doubted not, but *P. Licinius* his Colleague would be as well able to discharge it now, as others had done in times of greater danger. So promising to draw *Hannibal* into *Africk*, for defence of his own homes; & taxing as civilly as he could, the envy of *Fabius*, which withstood such a gallant enterprise, he proposed the matter again to the Senate. Much altercation there was about the manner of his proceeding: forasmuch as it was noised abroad, that if he could not bring the Senate to his mind, he would carry it by the people. This offended many of the ancients: who reſented in this honourable man, a little spice of that arrogancy, which in following ages grew to be much hotter, in those that had commanded long abroad. But in conclusion, *Scipio* refered himself wholly to the Senates good will and pleasure, whereby he obtained thus much, That the Ile of *Sicil* might be appointed unto him for his Province; with leave to passe over into *Africk*, if he found it expedient.

Want of money, and no great liking to his voyage, made the Roman Senate have little care to furnish out *Scipio* to the war, by him intended upon *Africk*. Herewithall it fell out, that *Mago*, coming on the sudden from the *Baleares* to *Genna*, and winning the Town, bred a fear of no lesse terrible invasion upon *Italy*, than that which *Aldrubal* had lately made. He could not indeed raise any great Army of the *Ligurians*: for that he found them distracted with civil wars. Therefore he was driven to make choise of his

his party; and to help those whom he thought fittest for his turn, against the others. This troublesome business, though it occupied more of his time than he could willingly have spared: yet it got him reputation by his victories, and made the unsteady Gauls ready to enter into his pay. Hereupon the dispersed Legions of the Romans, under Proconsuls, and Prætors, lay ready to be employed where need should require; were directed unto the borders of *Lombardie* and *Liguria*, there to make head against *Mago*. But all his menaces passed away in vapour. For a fleet, either comming to his aid from *Carthage*, or by him sent thither (the report is uncertain) laden with the booty that he had taken, fell into the hands of the Roman Prætor, that governed in *Sardinia*. This did much trouble him: and though after a while, there came letters from *Carthage*, together with store of money, heartning him in his proceedings; yet some impediments which he found, and that fatal voyage of *Scipio* into *Africk* disturbed all; and made him be recalled home.

Against *Hannibal* was nothing done this year. Neither was any thing done by him, of which the Roman Historians have been pleased to take notice. Only it is said, that he spent the Summer by the Temple of *Juno Lacinia*, where he raised an Altar, with a huge Title of all that he had performed, graven in *Punick* and *Greek* letters. Such an account of winnings past, is commonly in Gamesters that are at the height of their fortune, a cause of remission and carelessness; in those that are upon the losing hand, a cause both of the same for the present, and shortly after of dejection, when they finde a notable change. A great pestilence, infecting both the *Carthaginian* and the *Roman* Camp, is said to have been the occasion of this years idleness; which fell out not much amiss for the City of *Rome*, that was marvellously impoverished by this war; and had already tried the utmost way to defray the charges, which grew insupportable. To relieve the present necessity, it was well thought upon, that a great part of *Campania* (not many years since confiscated) should be sold, or let out: in which bargain, that the City might receive no losse, the tenth part of the fine was ordained as a reward unto the detectors of lands concealed.

Of this, or other money, none was given to *Scipio*. Neither was he allowed to make preesse of Souldiers for his *African* voyage; neither did he over-much labour to obtain it. That which the Senate refused, the people did for him: or rather they did it for themselves; that were therein wiser than the Senate. It is usually found in Councils of estate, that the busie, or obtinate heads of a few, do carry all the rest. And many times men make a surrender of their own judgements, to the wisdom that hath gotten it self a name, by giving happy direction in troubles forepast. Therefore, he that reposeth himself upon the advice of many, shall often finde himself deceived: the counsell of those many being wholly directed by the Empire of a few, that over-sway the rest. *Q. Fabius* was accounted the Oracle of his time: for his wary nature sorted well with the business, that fell out in the chief of his employment. Unto him therefore *Q. Fulvius* adhered, with other of the Senators, that were grown old in following one course; from which they could not shift, as the change of times required. But the People (who though they could not well advise, and deliberate, yet could well apprehend) embraced the needfull resolution of *Scipio*: in such sort, that besides his *Roman* forces, he had from divers parts of *Italy* about seven thousand Voluntaries. He had also provision from the severall Towns: Corn, Iron, Canvas for sails, Axes, Beed-hocks, Hand-mills, and the like implements; Fire for building of ships, many thousands of Targets, Helmets, and Spears of all kinds: every place furnished him with that commodity, which it best could afford.

Unto this willingness of the People, the diligence of *Scipio* was correspondent. In the compass of five and forty dayes, he had both fell'd his Timber, built, and lanch'd so twenty *Triremes*, and ten *Quinquereme* Gallies; wherewith he transported his Army into *Sicily*. In *Sicily* he found, besides other forces, two Legions, that had served at *Cannæ*: which were old Souldiers, and (as he himself well knew) not guilty of the overthrow; for which they had long undergone a heavy censure. They had served under *Marcellus* and *Levinus*, at the taking of many Cities and strong pieces: in which regard, they were like to be of good use to him in *Africk*, where would be store of such employment. For increasing the number of his horse, he pressed three hundred *Sicilians*, all wealthy young men, and such as loved well their ease. These he afterward discharged from the War highly,

highly to their contentment: but with condition, that they should deliver their Horse and Arms, to as many *Roman* Gentlemen, which he brought over with him for the purpose. Whilest he was providing to have things in a readines for *Africk*, the banished *Locrians*, that followed the *Roman* side, made him acquainted with an intelligence, whereby they hoped to recover their City. Some handicrafts-men, that wrought for the *Carthaginians* in one of the Citadels of *Locri*, (for there were two in the Town) being taken prisoners by the *Romans*, promised to betray the place, if they might be ransom'd and rewarded. *Scipio* being advertised of this, gave order to have the attempt made by night: which happily succeeded; & that Citadel was surpris'd. The other Citadel was strongly defended by the *Carthaginian* Garrison, which sent to *Hannibal* for aide. The *Romans* in like sort, fearing lest their own paucity should make them too weak for *Hannibal*, craved help of the Consul *Scipio*. The Towns-men were doubtfully affected: but the best, and most of them inclining to the *Romans*, kept *Hannibal* out, whom the coming of *Scipio* caus'd thence to depart; and caus'd likewise the *Carthaginian* Garrison to abandon the other Citadel. Many outrages were committed by the *Roman* Souldiers, that were left by *Scipio* in custody of the Town. Wherefore a vehement complaint was made by the *Locrians* unto the *Roman* Senate: not only against those of the Garrison: but much more against *Pleminius* the Captain, who gave bad example, and was worse than all the rest. Besides many Murders, Robberies, Rapes, and other villanies, the Temple of *Proserpina*, that had a great fame of sanctity, was spoiled by these barbarous Thieves. The *Locrians* therefore advis'd the Senate to make present amends to the Goddess for this sacrilege: saying, that the like had never been committed, without notorious revenge by her taken upon the Authors. The Senate gave good ear to this complaint, comforted the *Locrians*, and redress'd the injuries done unto them; sent for *Pleminius*, with other principall offenders; whom they cast into prison, and us'd according to their desires: as also they restored unto *Proserpina* her money twice told. But old *Q. Fabius* was not herewithall contented. He laid much of the blame upon *Scipio*, that had placed such a man in *Locri*; and had not carefully hearkened to the complaints made against him, but suffer'd him to runne on in these his wicked courses. By the sharp invective that *Fabius* made, others took courage to speak what they pleas'd, as well against the demeanour of *Scipio*, as against the dissoluteness of his Army, which lay, as they said, idle in *Sicily*, neither mindfull of any service toward, nor fit for it if need should require. Finally, things were so far urg'd, that ten Legats were sent over into *Sicily*, together with the Prætor appointed for that Island; two of the Tribunes, and one of the *Ædiles*; who should examine these matters; and either cause the General to return into *Italy*, or continue him in his charge, as they thought fit. The end of all was, they found him so well prepared against *Carthage*, as that they hastned him on his journey, and gave him high commendations at their return.

*Scipio* had already employ'd *Lalins* in *Africk*, rather to make discovery, than to work any other great effect of war. He took a great booty: and struck no little terror into the *Carthaginians*; who saw their Affairs to be upon tearms of change. But the greatest fruit of his journey was. That speaking with *Masaniissa*, he well inform'd himself of the state of *Africk*; and knew what was to be expected of those two Kings, that had promised to joyn with the *Romans* at their landing.

Concerning *Masaniissa* his revolt from the *Carthaginians*, and his compact made under-hand with the *Romans*, *Livie* doth professe, That there was no such evident cause thereof at the present; but that the long continuance of his faith and constancy, in following times, must help to prove, that this his change, was not without some good cause. But *Appianus* (an Historian far inferior to *Livie*, both in worth and time) gives one reason so probable of this, and many accidents thereto belonging, as that it carries with it a great appearance of necessary truth. Only the doubt is, How it could any way come to passe, that the knowledge of such a matter should have escap'd the diligence of *Livie*, if it had been true: unless we should believe, that he wilfully forbore to rehearse a Tragedie; the sorrow whereof would cause men to think amiss of *Scipio*. Howsoever it was thus, *Appian* tells it: and many circumstances of things done, confirm it. *Asdrubal*, the son of *Gisco*, had a fair daughter, whom both King *Syphax* and *Masaniissa* loved. *Masaniissa*, being brought up at *Carthage*, and being withall a goodly Gentleman of person, and excellent in qualities, was chosen by *Asdrubal* to be his son-in-law.

When



When the virgin was betrothed unto him, he went into *Spain*, and there did great service. But afterwards, the *Carthaginian* Senate thought the marriage of *Asdrubal's* daughter to be a matter of State: and bestowed her upon *Syphax*, without standing to acquaint her father or *Masanissa* therewithall. This they did, for that *Syphax* was the more mighty Prince; and for that the indignity of the repulse, had made him become their enemy. Hereof *Masanissa* was advertised; and forthwith entred into intelligence with *Scipio*, secretly as he thought; yet not so secretly, but some notice was taken of it: which would have cost him his life, had he not with great circumspection conveyed himself home into his fathers Kingdom. Thus far forth we may believe *Appianus*: all the narration well cohering with things past, and following. Only it seems, that howsoever *Sophonisba*, the daughter of *Asdrubal*, was promised by the *Carthaginians* unto *Syphax*: yet since this their courtship proceeded from fear, he thought it wilcome to continue and increase the same their fear, by making fair promises to the *Romans*, untill *Asdrubal* had sent for his daughter from *Carthage*, & the marriage was consummated. In other matters concerning the war it self, wherein *Appian* differs much from *Livie*, and from *Polybius*, whom (as appears by the broken pieces of his works remaining) *Livie* did follow; it will be no offence, to take little heed unto his reports.

*Masanissa* was the sonne of *Gala*, a King of the *Numidians*: whose father dying, the Crown descended, by order of the Country, unto *Desalces* the brother, not unto *Masanissa* the son. But this Uncle of *Masanissa* shortly dyed: and his elder sonne, who took possession of the kingdom, was vanquished, and slaine in battell by a Rebel, that made himself Protector over the younger which was a childe. The Traitor fortified himself against *Masanissa*, whose returne he feared, by Alliances with the *Carthaginians* and *Syphax*. But all would not serve: He and his Pupill, were dispossessed of their Estates by *Masanissa*: that was a skillfull Warriour, and well beloved for the memory of his father *Gala*. The *Carthaginians* in reason would have been glad, that *Masanissa*, who had done them notable service, was thus confirmed in his Estate, had they not been guilty of the injury by them done unto him; whilst his Uncle or Cousin reigned, and he seemed unlikely to stand them in any stead. But *Syphax*, by their procurement, and perhaps by his own malice, towards his Corival, warred upon him; and over-charging him with numbers, drave him out of his Kingdom. Nevertheless *Masanissa* still retained the hearts of his people; & thereby remained strong enough, to resist both *Syphax* and the *Carthaginians*; though he was often put in distresse, by great forces that were sent against him. He therefore keeping much about the lesser *Syrtis*, between the borders of the *Carthaginians* and the Nation of the *Garamantians*, expected the coming of the *Romans*: yeto, as he made long roads over all the Country, even as far as *Hippo*; and when *Lalius* arrived thereabouts, exhorted and encouraged him to hasten on *Scipio* to the invasion of *Africk*.

But *Syphax*, in whose great aide and succour was reposed more hope of good success, than could be expected from the good will of poor *Masanissa*, sent an Embassage into *Sicil* about the same time, which was little pleasing unto *Scipio*. He excused himself of his promise lately made: and signified his alliance with the *Carthaginians*; adding, That he could not chooseth but fight for the defence of *Africk*, wherein he was born and reigned; and for the defence of his beloved wives Country, if it were invaded. Nevertheless he promised to remain a Neuter, so long as the *Romans* and *Carthaginians* held war abroad, far enough from *Africk*, as hitherto they had done. This message hastened *Scipio* in his expedition, much more than any perswasion could have done. For the promised assistance of *Syphax* had not a little advanced his enterprise; in procuring both the assent of the Senate, and the forwardness of many Adventurers. Left therefore the falling of this hope, should work too great a change in common opinion, He thought it the best way, to prevent all discourse, and set the war undertaken immediately on foot. The Embassadors he dismissed in haste, with letters to their King: wherein he willed him to consider, that what he had promised, he had also sworn; and therefore should do well to make it good. Having sent them away, He called his Souldiers together; and bade them make ready for the voyage, which he intended no longer to defer. For, said he, *Masanissa* hath been with *Lalius*: and *Syphax* hath newly sent to mee; greatly wondering upon what I should thus stay; and saying, That they will provide for themselves, if I fail their expectation by tarrying any longer. This fine tale

tale prevented all further inquisition, that might else have been made concerning the message of these Embassadors: whose followers had been seen walking up and down *Syracuse*. And lest any thing should afterwards break out, that might hinder the business, *Scipio* immediately sent about his fleet unto *Lilybeum*: and requesting by letters *M. Pomponius*, that was Prætor in *Sicil*, to meet him there; & hasted thither with his Army. At *Lilybeum* he agreed with the Prætor, about the division of the Legions between them, which to leave behinde for defence of the Iland; and which to carry with him into *Africk*. What numbers he transported, it is not certain: some Historians reckoning only ten thousand foot, and two and twenty hundred horse; others increasing them to five and thirty thousand, horse and foot. Concerning his directions for embarking, and other matters belonging to their course, I hold it needlesse to set them down: since they were points of ordinary care, and which it is like that neither he, when he took his voyage into *Spain*, nor others upon like occasions, have omitted; they being also word for word set down by an Historian, who borrowed them from *Livie*, and fitted them to a Prince of later age.

This Roman Army landed in *Africk*, near to a fore-land then called the fair Promontorie: which how far it was from *Carthage*, or toward what point of the Compass, I cannot precisely affirm; because it is uncertain, whether it were that Cape or Head-land which bore the name of *Mercurie*, and lay to the North-east of *Carthage*; or whether that of *Apollo*, which lay Northerly from *Carthage*, and by West. The coming of *Masanissa* unto *Scipio* at his first arrivall, help to confirm the opinion of *Xylander*, who thinks the fair Promontorie to have been the same, that was also called *Mercuries Cape*, since with little difficulty *Masanissa* might come thither from the lesser *Syrtis*, whereabout was his common abiding. But forasmuch as without any memorable impediment soon after his arrivall, *Scipio* encamped before *Utica*, that stood Westward from *Carthage* beyond the River *Bagradas*: it may rather seem, that he landed within the Promontorie of *Apollo*, whence the way to *Utica* was not long. This is also strongly proved, for that out of *Carthage* were sent the next day, five hundred horse to trouble him in his disembarking. Neither was it so hard for *Masanissa*, that roved about the Country with a troupe of horse, to finde out the *Romans*, though they landed far from the place to the which he usually resorted, like as before he had met with *Lalius* at *Hippo*: that was farther off; as it would have been for *Scipio*, with his Army and Carriages, to overcome the trouble of a long journey, and fetch a great compass to *Utica*, by Land; when he might have disembarked nearer unto it. Nevertheless it may pass as a consequence, That *Scipio* came first of all to *Emporia*, a plentiful Region about the lesser *Syrtis*; since he gave charge to the Masters of his ships, at the setting forth from *Lilybeum*, to shape their course for that coast. The Country thereabout was very rich, and fit for sustentance of an Army: neither were the Inhabitants warlike, or well provided to make resistance. Thus much perhaps *Masanissa* had signified to *Lalius*, when he spake with him at *Hippo*: thinking that the *Romans*, howsoever they made brave promises, would not come strong enough to fight at head. But when he saw their Fleet and Army to be such, as not only served to invade the lands of *Carthage*, but threatened a conquest of the City and whole Estate: then might he better advise them to set sail for *Utica*, and make war upon the Enemies at their own doors.

The *Carthaginians* had at that time neither any Captain of great worth at home, nor better Army than of raw Souldiers; that were levied, or to be levied in haste. *Asdrubal* the son of *Gisco*, the same that had lately been chased out of *Spain* by *Scipio*, was their best man of war. And good enough perhaps he was thought by *Hannoa* his fellowes; of whose faction he was: or if ought were wanting in him, yet his Riches and Nobility, together with the affinity of King *Syphax*, made him passable. He was then with the King his son-in-law, working him no doubt against the *Romans*: when letters were brought from *Carthage*, both to *Syphax* and to him, informing them of the Invasion: entreating the one of them to give assistance, and commanding the other to make his repair unto the City, where he was chosen Generall. But ere these could be ready, *Scipio* had beaten the troupe of *Carthaginian* horse, that were sent out of the City to disturb his landings; and slaine *Hannoa* young Gentleman, that was their Leader. He had also taken and sacked a Town of the *Carthaginians*: wherein, besides other booty, he took eight thousand prisoners; all which he conveyed aboard his Hulks or Ships of burden.

burden, and sent them back laden into *Sicil*. He took likewise a Town called *Salera*; which he held and fortified. In *Salera* lay another *Hanno*, with four thousand *Numidian* horse: whose service being fitter for the field, than for defence of walled places, made *Scipio* to perceive the unskilfulness of their Leader, that had thus housed them. Wherefore he sent *Masanissa* before him: who rode up to the gates; and, by making a bravado, trained out the imprudent *Hanno* so far, that he drew him unto a place, where the *Romans* lay in wait for him. The victory was easily gotten, and *Hanno* either taken, or slain. With those that fled, the *Romans* entered pell-mell into the town, which presently they made their own. Thence went *Scipio* to *Vtica*, a City of great importance, of which mention hath been formerly made, and sat down before it. Forty days he spent about it, assailing it both by Land and Sea, and using all his engines of battery, whereof he had plenty, yet was in no likelihood of prevailing. And now the Summer was quite spent: so that it was time for him to choose a place, and fortify his Winter-Camp, which must be well stored against the year following. Whilst this necessity urged him to leave *Vtica*: and shame of taking the repulse in his first great enterprise, rather than any hope of better success, caused him to stay there: *Asdrubal* and *Syphax* gave him the honour of a fair pretence to leave the siege. *Asdrubal* had made a Levie of thirty thousand foot, and three thousand horse: yet adventured not with this ill-trained Army to draw near unto the *Romans*, before the coming of *Syphax*. *Syphax* brought with him unto *Carthage* fifty thousand foot, and ten thousand horse: so joyning unto the forces of *Asdrubal*, they marched bravely toward *Scipio*; who thereby took occasion to dislodge. He chose for his Winter-Camp the banks of an Inlet, that had good harbour for his Navie. His foot-men he lodged on a Promontory, joyning to the Continent by an arme of Land: his horse-men he bestowed upon lower ground, on the other shoar: in the bottome of the Creek he moored his ships; and there he quartered the Mariners, with all that belonged unto the Fleet. The whole camp he strongly fortified, and so attended the season of the year, when it should serve him again to fight. Of cattell and other booty *Masanissa* had brought in great store, by driving the Countrey, before the coming of *Asdrubal* and *Syphax*. Corn also he had gotten some: and great store was sent him from *Sicil* and *Sardinia*. Likewise apparell for his Souldiers, was sent from home, or from *Sardinia*: though scarce enough to serve turne, for that it was a matter of more cost. The ships that brought these things, he freighted homewards with such part of his booty, as he could best spare; especially with captives to be sold for Slaves. *Asdrubal* and *Syphax* encamped near unto *Scipio*: not so strongly fortifying themselves, as did the *Romans*, either for that they wanted the severe institution, which the *Romans* used in the discipline of war, or for that they presumed upon their multitude, against which they found in *Scipio* no disposition to issue forth of his strength, and fight. So the Winter passed without action.

When Spring drew near, *Scipio* thought it good to assay his old friend the *Numidian* King, if perhaps he might be won by persuasions to forsake the *Carthaginians*. It was considered, that those *Barbarians* were naturally unconstant; and particularly, that *Syphax* had given proof before this of his much levity. It might therefore be hoped, That having wearyed himself, by lodging a whole Winter in the Camp: and being peradventure no less weary with satiety of his wife, who had caused him to enter into this war: he might be moved with a little entreaty to withdraw himself home into his Kingdome, and rest a *Neuter*. But it is not unlikely, that such a friend as this King, had been highly entertained and honoured in the City of *Carthage*, which was near at hand, as often as during this Winter it had pleased him, or as he had been invited, to make a step thither and repose himself a while: his wife Queen *Sophoniba* lying also there at the same time, to cherish him in his resolution. Howsoever it were, *Syphax* did only make an overture of peace: propounding it as reasonable, That *Hannibal* should be recalled out of *Italy* by the *Carthaginians*: and that the *Romans* in like sort should quietly depart out of *Africk*, and so make an end of the war: wherewith now both *Africk* and *Europe* were disquieted. Unto this would not *Scipio* at the first give ear: yet being pressed earnestly by many messages from *Syphax*, and desiring to continue the innercourse of Embassadors; he began to make shew, as if he would consider of the motion. He was given to understand by those whom he had sent unto the King, That the Enemies had their camps without any great defence of earth, full of wooden Cab-

bins,

bins, and covered with boughs: and that the *Numidians*, such of them as came first with *Syphax*, used coverings of Mats and Reeds; others, that came later, had thatched their lodgings with drie boughs and leaves: under which they lay carefully without their Trenches. Upon this advertisement he bethought himself, That it would not be hard for him to set their camps on fire, and thereby give them a notable overthrow. Without help of some such stratagem, he foresaw that it would be a work of great difficulty for him, to proceed in his wars when time should serve. It was a plain open Countrey wherein he lay: and the Enemies had great advantage of him in number, especially in horse; which, upon such ground, could not be resisted by the *Roman* Legions. The longer therefore that he thought upon the matter, the more needfull he found it for himself, to make some sudden attempt upon their Camp. To this end he sent many Embassadors, under pretence of treating about the Peace; but indeed of purpose to discover all that might concern the intended surprize. With these Embassadors he sent, as Attendants, many old Souldiers, disguised like slaves; that wandering (as it were) idle up and down the Camp, might observe the waies and entrances, with whatsoever else was needfull. When he had learned as much as he desired: upon the sudden he sent word to *Syphax*, that it was vain to hold any longer Treaty, forasmuch as he could not get the consent of his Councell of war; without whose approbation, all that himself could do, was no more, than the good will of one man. Thus he did, to the end that, without any breach of faith, he might put his design in execution. The Truce being thus cut off, *Asdrubal* and *Syphax* were very penitive: as having lately persuaded themselves, that their trouble was almost at an end. But since it could be no better, they began to devise, by what art they might draw *Scipio* out of his Camp, and provoke him to battail in those Plains. This if they could do, they hoped to make his Councell of war repent as greatly the refusal of peace, as did *Marcus Attilius* after the like presumption. But if he should refuse to come forth of his Trenches, what else remained than to besiege him? Which they themselves were well able to do by land; and the *Carthaginian* Fleet should do by Sea, that was making ready for the purpose. By such discourses these two comforted themselves; recompencing (in conceipt) the loss of their hopes past, with that of victory to come. But herein they were extremely and worthily disappointed: for that consulting about the future, they provided not against present danger; but continued in the same negligence, which was grown upon them by the long discourse of peace. As for *Scipio*, he was not idle, but made preparation out of hand, as it were to do somewhat against *Vtica*. Two thousand Souldiers he had made ready, and appointed to take the same piece of ground, whereon he lay against *Vtica* before. This he did, partly to keep secret that which he had in hand, lest being suspected by his own Souldiers, the Enemy might happen to have notice of it, partly to hinder those of *Vtica* from setting upon the few, that he purposed to leave behinde him in his Camp. He caused his men that night to sup well, and betimes; that they might be ready for the journey. After supper, he appointed such Companies as he thought fit, to the defence of his Camp; all the rest of the Army he led forth, about nine of the clock at night. The *Carthaginians* lay from him seven miles and an halfe: whom he purposed to undertake himself with the one half of his army; the other half he committed to *Lalius* and *Masanissa*, whom he sent before him to set upon the camp of *Syphax*; that was farther off. It was his meaning, that the camp of *Syphax* should be on a light fire, ere he would meddle with the *Carthaginians*. For the fire might seem to have taken hold by casualty upon the *Numidians*, that lay farther off: whereas if it first appeared in the camp of *Asdrubal*, it would be suspected as the doing of enemies, and give *Syphax* warning to look to himself. To this end therefore *Scipio* marched fair and softly; that *Lalius* & *Masanissa*, who had a longer journey, and were to fetch a compass about for fear of being discovered, might have time to get before him, and do their feat. It was about two or three of the clock in the morning, when the camp of *Syphax* began to blaze: which not only the *Numidians*, but their King himself, imputed unto casualty; as thinking themselves safe enough from enemies, for that the *Carthaginians* lay interposed between them and the danger. Wherefore as if there were no more to doe, some, starting half asleep; and others, that had sitten up late at drinking, ranne out of their Cabbins to quench the fire. But so great was the tumult, that they neither could rightly understand in what case they were, nor give any remedy to the mischance; as it

H h h h h 2

was

was supposed. Many were smothered and burnt in the flame, which grew greater and greater: many leaping into the Trenches for fear of the sudden mischief, were trampled to death by the multitude that followed them. They that escaped the fire, fell upon the enemies sword, which was ready to receive them. Especially *Masaniſſa*, that best knew the Country, did great execution upon them; having laid all the waies, by which he foresaw that they would seek to escape. The *Carthaginians* perceiving this fire, thought none other than that it was a pitifull mischance: so that some ran out to help the poor *Numidians*; carrying only what would serve to quench the fire. Others ran up to the Rampart: where, fearful of any danger toward themselves, they stood beholding the greatness of the flame, and lamenting the misfortune. This fell out right as *Scipio* would have it. He therefore lost no time: but setting upon those that were running towards the *Numidians*, he killed some, and pursued the rest back into their camp, which in a little while he made to burn as bright, as did that of *Syphax*. *Asdrubal* seeing this, and knowing that the *Romans* were there, did not stand to make resistance, but shuted only for himself, and escaped with a few of his horse about him. If *Hannibal*, or any of the *Barchine* faction, had been taken in such a manner: it is more than probable, that old *Hanno* would have judged him worthy to be crucified. It would then have been said, that with less than one half of thirty thousand men, he might at least have given some bad recompence, to them that were taking pains in kindling these fires, had he not been only careful, how to save his own fearful head. Nevertheless *Polybius* acknowledged, and it is most likely to have been true, That if *Asdrubal*, or any of those about him, would have striven to shew valour, when the Camp was once on fire: He should not thereby have done any manner of good; because of the tumult and confusion. I shall not need to tell what a fearful thing it was, to hear the cries of so many thousands that perished by fire and sword, or to behold the cruel flame that consumed them; which (as *Polybius* affirms) none that hath been is able to describe. It is enough to say, That of those many thousands, very few did escape, which accompanied *Asdrubal* and *Syphax* in their severall wayes of flight. Besides these also there were some scatterers, especially of the *Numidians*, that saved themselves in the dark: but they were not many, as after shall appear. Surely it must needs have been very hard to tell, how many were burnt or otherwise made away, and what numbers escaped in the dark of night. Wherefore *Livie*, who in the rest of this Relation, as often elsewhere, doth follow *Polybius*, may seem to have followed some lesse worthy Author, and him no good Arithmetician, in casting up the summe. For he reckons only two thousand foot, and five hundred horse, to have escaped; forty thousand to have perished by sword or fire: and above six thousand to have been taken prisoners: the whole number of all which together, is far short of fourscore and thirteen thousand, which were in these two Camps.

*Asdrubal*, putting himself into the next town that was very strongly fortified, thought there to find the *Romans* work, untill the *Carthaginians* at good leisure might repair their Army. He had with him no more than two thousand foot, and five hundred horse: which he thought sufficient to defend the Town; if the Towns-men would not be wanting to themselves. But he found the Inhabitants of the place very earnest in contention, whether it were better to fight, or to yeeld. Unto this disputation, he well foresaw, that the arrivall of *Scipio* would soon give an end. Wherefore, lest they should lay hold upon him, and seek the Victors favour by delivering him up; he shrunk away betimes, and made all hast to *Carthage*. As for the town which he left; it opened the gates to *Scipio*, at his first coming: and thereby preserved it self from all manner of losse. The two next Towns adjoining would needs be valiant, and make countenance of war: but their strength not being answerable, they were soon taken by *Scipio*, who abandoned them to the pleasure of his Souldiers. This being done, he returned to the siege of *Vtica*.

The *Carthaginians* were sore troubled, as they had good reason, when, in stead of either Peace or Victory, which they lately hoped for, they heard newes of such a lamentable overthrow. Necessity enforced them to make hasty provision for the future: but how to doe it, few of them saw any means. Some gave advice to crave peace of *Scipio*: others, to send for *Hannibal* out of *Italy*; but the most, and they which finally prevailed, were of opinion, That notwithstanding the losse of this Army, they might well defend

defend themselves against the *Romans*, by raising new forces: especially, if *Syphax* would not leave them. It was therefore concluded, That they should bend all their care this way, levying in all hast another Army; and sending Embassadors to deal with *Syphax*, who lay then at a Town called *Abba*, not passing eight miles from *Carthage*. Immediately the same their unfortunate Commander, *Asdrubal* the son of *Gisco*, was employed to make new levies of men: and Queen *Sophoniba* went forth with Embassadors to her husband *Syphax*; who having gathered together as many as he could of his subjects that had escaped from the late slaughter, was thinking to return into his own Kingdome. *Sophoniba* laboured to with her husband, that at length she won him to her own desire. And it fell out at the same time, that four thousand *Spaniards*, waged by the *Carthaginians*, were brought over to serve in *Africa*. Of these were made such brave reports, as if their courage, and the Armes which they used, were not to be resisted. Even the multitude within *Carthage* beleaved these tales, and were more glad than they had cause to be; which is great wonder, since in one Age, the whole country of *Spain* had been twice conquered; first by the *Carthaginians* themselves, and after by the *Romans*. But with *Syphax* these tales prevailed much: which the *Carthaginian* Embassadors helped with a lye; saying, That there were come ten thousand of these terrible *Spaniards*. Upon this confidence, the people of *Carthage* and their friends gathered such spirit, that in thirty dayes they made up an Army, consisting well near of thirty thousand men, reckoning the *Spaniards*, and *Syphax* with his *Numidians* in the number. So they incamped in a Region called, *The great Fields*, about five dayes journey from *Vtica*. *Scipio* hearing of this, came from *Vtica* thither, to visit them: leaving behinde him his impediments, with some part of his Army, to make a shew of continuing the siege. Two or three dayes, after the meeting of both armies, passed away in skirmish, without any great thing done. It had now been time for *Asdrubal* to follow the example of the *Roman Fabius*, and seek to weary out the Enemy by delays. But either (which is likely) he was a farre worse Commander, or else, it was not in his power to give such directions as best pleased himself. The fourth day the Armies met in battail: wherein the *Romans* were marshalled by *Scipio* after their wonted manner, having 40 their *Italian* horse in the right wing; and *Masaniſſa* with his *Numidians* in the left. On the contrary side, *Asdrubal* and his *Carthaginians* had the right wing; *Syphax*, the left; and the *Spaniards*, the battail. The victory was gotten without many blows: for the untained followers of *Syphax* and *Asdrubal*, could not sustain the first charge of the *Italians*, or of *Masaniſſa*. Only the *Spaniards* fought a long time, even untill they were all in a manner slain: rather as men desperate, and not hoping for mercy, since they were thus come over to fight against *Scipio*, who had otherwise deserved of them, than upon any likelihood or conceit of victory. This their obstinacy was beneficial to those that fled; for that it hindered the *Romans* from making any great pursuit. Hereby *Asdrubal*, and *Syphax* escaped: *Asdrubal*, to *Carthage*; and *Syphax* home to his owne Kingdome: whither his wife was either gone before, or immediately followed him.

*Scipio* having thus gotten the mastery of the field, took counsaile about the prosecution of the war. It was resolved upon as the best course, That he himself, with part of the Army, should attempt the Cities round about him: and that *Masaniſſa*, with his *Numidians*, and *Lelius*, with some of the *Roman* Legions, should follow after *Syphax*; not permitting him to take rest within his own Kingdome, where easily else he might repair his forces, and put them to new trouble. This advice, it seems that *Masaniſſa* gave: who knew best the quality of the *Numidians*; and what good might be done among them, by the reputation of a victory. The least that could be expected, was his restitution into his own Kingdome, usurped by *Syphax*: which so accomplished, it no lesse 50 concerned the *Romans* at the present, than it did himself. According to this order concluded, *Lelius* was sent away with *Masaniſſa*: and *Scipio* stayed behinde, carrying the war from town to town. Many places yeelded for fear; many were taken by force; and all the subjects of *Carthage* wavered in their fidelity, as if the time were now come, wherein they might take notice of those unreasonable burdens, which their proud Masters had laid upon them for maintenance of the war in *Spain* and *Italy*. What to doe in this case, the *Carthaginians* could hardly resolve. Fortune was their enemy; they had lost their Armies, and many of their Towns: neither durst they make bold to trouble their own subjects with any violent exaction of men or money; who nevertheless of these

their own tree will were likely to give little help. Very much it grieved them to send for *Hannibal* out of *Italy*: yet since there was no other hope remaining, than in him and his good Army; it was decreed, That Embassadors should be forthwith sent to call him home. Some there were that gave advice, to set out a fleet against that of *Scipio*, that rode before *Vtica*, weakly manned, and easie to be taken, whilst *Scipio* himself was busied in the Island Countreys. Some were of opinion, That it should be their principall care, to fortifie by all means the City of *Carthage*: upon the safety whereof they said all depended: adding, that whilst they were true, and at unity among themselves, they might well enough subsist, and expect those opportunities, with which Fortune (doubtlesse) would present them: These counsels were not rejected; but order was forthwith taken, both for all things concerning the defence of the City, and for the attempt upon the *Roman* fleet at *Vtica*. Nevertheless, it was considered, that thereby they should only protract the warre; without any advancing their own affairs towards likelihood of victory, no, though it should fall out, that all the ships at *Vtica* might be taken or destroyed. Wherefore the determination held concerning *Hannibal*, That he should immediately come over into *Africa*, as the last refuge of *Carthage*. The Councell was no sooner broken up, than all the Senators betook themselves to the execution of that which was decreed: some, to the fortification of the Town: some, to make ready the Fleet; and some, appointed therunto, forthwith to imbarque themselves for *Italy*.

In this their trepidation *Scipio* came to *Tunes*, a City in those dayes very strong, and standing in prospect almost of every part of *Carthage*. This place, or rather some defensible piece adjoining, he easily took, the garrison forsaking it, and running away as soon as he drew near. But whilst he was about there to incamp, and fortifie himself against the City, he might perceive the *Carthaginian* Fleet setting forth, and making towards *Vtica*: What this meant, he readily conceived; and stood in great fear, lest his own ships that were very ill prepared for Sea-fight (as being heavily laden with engines of battery, and wholly disposed in such order, as was most convenient for assailing the town) should make bad resistance, against a fleet appointed for that special service. Wherefore he hasted away towards *Vtica*, to assist with his presence in this needfull case. It fell out well, that he had sent his carriages, and all the great boory which he drew along with him, thither before, at his going to *Tunes*. For had not he now made great expedition, he should have come too late. Neither could he indeed have been there in due time, if the *Carthaginians* had used such diligence as was convenient. But they rested one night in harbour by the way: and at their comming to *Vtica*, they tarried awhile to make a bravado; presenting themselves in order of battell, as if the *Romans* would have put forth to Sea against them. But *Scipio* had no such intent: he thought it would be sufficient, if he could preserve his Gallies. As for the pleasure of their bravery at Sea, it should little avail the *Carthaginians*, if they got nothing by it, and lost their whole estate by Land. Wherefore he took his ships of burden, and fastning them together with cables, in four ranks, one behind another, made a four-fold bridge over the Channell of the Haven; whereon he placed a thousand of his choice men, with store of Darts, and other casting weapons, to make defence. Some open spaces he left, whereas his Frigots, and other small Vessels, might run out and back again upon any advantage or need: but these he covered with planks, using the masts and yards of his ships in stead of rafters, to joine all together, that his men might help one another, and the bridge it self not be torne asunder. Scarce was this work finished, when the *Carthaginians*, seeing none issue forth against them, came into the Haven. The fight between them and the *Romans* that were in the Hulks, was rather like to the assailing of a wall, than to any Sea-fight. For they that stood upon the bridge, had sure footing, and threw their weapons downwards, with their whole strength and violence; which the *Carthaginians* out of their Gallies, that were lower and unsteady, could not do. But the *Roman* Frigots & long boats, adventuring forth from behind the bridge, were greatly over-born by the force of the Gallies; and were one occasion of that small loss which followed. They that stood upon the Bridge were neither able to relieve them, nor yet could freely bestow their weapons among the *Carthaginians*, as before; for fear of hurting these their friends, that were intrangled and mixed among the enemies. The *Carthaginians* had brought with them grappling hooks, hanging at Iron chains. These they threw upon the masts and yards which served as arches to joyn the bridge together: then rowing

ing backwards, they tore all asunder, in such sort, that one ship followed another, and all the first rank was broken, or defaced. The Defendants had no other way, than to save themselves as hastily as they could, by shifting into the next rank of ships, that lay behind them untouched. Neither did the *Carthaginians* trouble themselves any further in this laborious work: but having haled away fixe ships of burden, and towed them out of the Haven, returned home to *Carthage*. Their welcome was greater than their victory: because among so many grievous losses, only this exploit had succeeded well, though it were of small importance.

Whilst things thus passed about *Carthage*, *Lelius* and *Masinissa*, in their journey against *Syphax*, found as good success as could be desired. The fame of the victories already gotten, restored *Masinissa* to his Kingdome, without further contention: the *Masafyli*, his subjects, joyfully receiving him, & forsaking the usurpers. But here they stayed not: neither indeed would *Syphax* permit them to be quier. He had such abundance of men and horses, that he felt not greatly the losses past: and therefore being solicited by *Adrabal* and *Sophoniba*, he prepared again for warre. But beside the instigation of his beloved wife, the losse of the *Masafyli* would let him take no rest: neither was it the purpose of *Lelius* and *Masinissa*, to give him any breathing time. It is common in men, to depart no lesse unwillingly from that which they have gotten by extortion, than from their proper inheritance; but to think all alike their own, whereof they are in firm possession, be the title unto some part never so unjust. Hercunto alludes the fable of the young Kite, which thought that she had vomited up her own guts, when it was only the garbage of some other fowle, that she had hastily swallowed, and was not able to digest. But whether or no, *Syphax*, like the young Kite, beleaved the Kingdome of the *Masafyli* to be part of his entrails: *Lelius* and *Masinissa* will shortly give him somewhat that shall make him cast his gorge. For to this purpose chiefly are they come so farre. It concerned the *Romans* to dispossesse (if it might be) the King, whose false and hollow friendship towards them, had been converted into strong enmity; as also to set in his place another, who might do them such good offices, as *Syphax* had lately done unto the *Carthaginians*. How easily this might be effected, *Masinissa* knew best; as being well acquainted with the nature of those Countries, wherein, even to this day though there be many strong Towns, yet the fortune of a battail is enough, to translate the Kingdome from one Competitor to another. So they met with *Syphax*, who came against them with no lesse an Army, than his former, and marshalled in the *Roman* order, according to the skill, which he had learned of the *Roman* Centurion, long agoe sent unto him out of *Spain* from *Cn. Scipio*. But though he could teach his men how to march in order; yet could he not teach them to fight courageously. They were a rabble of all sorts, gathered up in haste: and few of them had seen warre before. Encamping neer unto the *Romans*, it fell out, as commonly, that some small troupes of horse on both sides, encountered one another in the mid-way: and they that had the worst, were seconded by other of their fellows. By continuance of the skirmish, more and more were drawn out from either Camp: so that at length *Syphax*, unwilling to dishearten his men by taking any foil at their first meeting with the Enemy, came up with all his horse, which were the best part of his forces, and therewith over-charged *Masinissa*, whose numbers were farre lesse. But whilst he was prosecuting his hope of victory: some *Roman* Squadrons of Foot came against him through their own troupes of horse; which fell to the sides, and made a lane for them. So their battail standing now more firm, than a little before; *Syphax* was unable, though he laboured much in vain, to make them give ground. *Masinissa* likewise, and his troupes grew confident upon this assistance: and charging afresh the Enemy, that could not make way forward, caused him to give back. Herewithall the Legions came in sight: which terrified so the *Numidian* horse, that they began presently to disband. Fain would *Syphax* have stayed them from flight: and to that end made head in person against the *Romans*; with hope, that his men would be ashamed to leave him. But it fell out unhappily, that he was cast from his horse, which received a wound, and so taken prisoner. Of others that were slain or taken, the multitude was not great. It sufficed, that they forsook the place; and fled, and that their King, upon whom all depended, was in the *Romans* hand. *Masinissa* told *Lelius*, that this victory should make an end of the *Numidian* war, if presently they hasted away to *Cirta* the chief City of the Kingdome; whither he himself desired

to be sent before with the Horse, carrying *Syphax* along with him. Hereunto *Lelius* agreed. *Masanissa* coming to *Cirta*, before any newes of the Kings mischance was there arrived, called out the chief of the City to parlee: wherein by many fair promises and threats, but especially by shewing unto them *Syphax* bound, he prevailed so farre, that the gates were forthwith opened unto him; and every one strove to get his favour, that was like to be their King hereafter. Among the rest, Queen *Sophonisba* yielded her self into his hands, and vehemently besought him, that the might not be delivered up unto the *Romans*: Her youth, and excellent beauty, so commended her suit, that *Masanissa* forthwith granted it; & to make good his promise, married her himself that very day: thereby to prevent *Lelius* and *Scipio* from determining otherwise of her, since she was his wife. But *Lelius*, when he came thither, took the matter hainously, so that at first he would have haled her away, together with *Syphax* and other prisoners, and have sent her unto *Scipio*. But being over intreated by *Masanissa*, he suffered the matter to rest a while as he found it, and referred all to *Scipio's* discretion: to whom he sent away *Syphax* and other captives immediately, following shortly after himself with *Masanissa*, when they had done what was needfull in the Kingdome.

At the coming of *Syphax*, there was great joy in the *Roman* Camp: the mighty Armies which he had lately brought into the field; and his entertainment of *Scipio* and *Asdrubal*, both at one time, when *Rome* and *Carthage* together sought his friendship, with such other commemoration of his past and present fortune, ministring to every one a large argument of discourse. *Scipio* demanded of him, what had moved him, not only to forsake the *Roman* friendship, but to make war upon them, unprovoked. He briefly answered, That his wife had moved him to do so; calling her a Fury, and a pestilent creature: and saying, that *Masanissa* was no wiser than himself, since he had now taken the same woman to his wife, who would shortly draw him to the same courses. Hereat *Scipio* was greatly troubled: and stood in great doubt, lest this perillous woman should deprive him of *Masanissa*, as he had done of *Syphax*. It was not long, ere *Masanissa* and *Lelius* came unto him: both of whom together he lovingly welcomed; and highly commended in publick, for their notable service in this Expedition. Then taking *Masanissa* apart, he brake with him, as touching *Sophonisba*: letting him understand, that the *Romans* had title to her head, and that she was a mischievous enemy of theirs. Wherefore he intreated him to moderate his affections: and not to deface the memory of his great services already done (for which he should be highly rewarded to his own contentment) by committing a great offence upon little reason, *Masanissa* blusht, and wept: and finally promised to be governed by *Scipio*, whom he nevertheless intreated, to think upon his faith given to *Sophonisba*, that she should not be delivered into the *Romans* power. So he departed to his own Tent, where, after some time spent in agony, he called unto him a servant of his that had the custody of his poyson (which Princes used then to have in a readinesse, against all mischances that might make them unwilling to live:) and tempering a potion for *Sophonisba*, sent it unto her with this message, That gladly he would have had her to live with him as his wife: but since they who had power to hinder him of his desire, would not yeeld thereto, he sent her a cup, that should preserve her from falling alive into the hands of the *Romans*, willing her to remember her birth and estate, and accordingly to take order for her self.

At the receipt of this Message and Present, the only said; That if her husband had no better token to send unto his new wife, she must accept of this; adding, That the might have dyed more honourably, if she had not wedded so lately before her funeral. And herewithall she boldly drank off the poyson. Thus *Livie* reporteth. But *Appian* varies from this; and sets it down agreeably to that which hath been spoken before, concerning the præcontract between *Masanissa* and *Sophonisba*. He saith, That after the taking of *Syphax*, Embassadors from *Cirta* met with *Lelius* and *Masanissa* upon their way thither, yielding up their City, and the Kings Palace: and that *Sophonisba*, for her own private, sent messengers to excuse her marriage with *Syphax*, as made against her will, by compulsion of those in whose power she was. *Masanissa* readily admitted this excuse; and accepted her to wife. But when *Scipio* had received information from *Syphax*, how cunning in perswasion *Sophonisba* was; and that all her thoughts laboured for the good of *Carthage*, he fell out about her with *Masanissa* at his returne, and challenged her, as a part of the booty belonging to the *Romans*. *Masanissa* said, the

was his own wife, and unto him betrothed many years before. But *Scipio* would not hear of this: or if it were true, yet he said it was no reason, that *Masanissa* should keep her in possession, as long as it was disputable, unto whom the might appertain. Wherefore he willed him first of all to produce her, and then afterwards to make his claim unto her, wherein he should have no wrong. Herewithall he sent to fetch her away: and *Masanissa* accompanied the messengers, as it were to deliver her: but making her acquainted with the necessity, gave unto her a cup of poyson, wherewith she ended her life, before they came that should have apprehended her. So he shewed unto the *Romans* her dead body, which he royally interred. The sudden violence of *Masanissa* his love, and the ready content of *Sophonisba* to marry with him: added not so much credit unto this relation of *Appian*, as doth the want of all other evident cause (which *Livie* notes) of the sudden falling out between him and the *Carthaginians*; under whom he had been trained up, and done them great service. Howsoever it were, *Scipio*, hearing of this tragical accident, sent for *Masanissa*, and comforted him as well as he could, lest his melancholy should lead him to some inconvenience. Having therefore gently rebuked him for his rashness, he brought him forth in presence of the Army: where extolling his noble acts, and shewing how highly he had deserved of the City of *Rome*, he proclaimed him King, and gave unto him a Crown of gold, with other Royall ornaments. This was indeed the ready way to divert his thoughts from the sad remembrance of that which was past, unto the more cheerful contemplation of good fortune, that be can to smile upon him.

This was the first time that the *Romans* took upon them to create or proclaim a King. Which honour though *Masanissa* well deserved; yet would not the Title have redounded unto his great benefit; neither should he have been much beholding to them for it, if he had not by their means recovered possession of his Country, together with the greatest part of *Syphax* his Dominions. It seemeth not unlikely, that had he remained a *Numer* in these wars, and sustained himself with his troupe of horse, in such sort as he did before the coming of the *Romans*; he might nevertheless have recovered his proper inheritance, by the love of his own subjects without other help, when *Syphax* had once or twice been vanquished. As for the enlargement of his Kingdome, it was not more than he deserved: neither were the *Romans* then in case, to make a conquest of *Numidia* for themselves; neither could they have wished a fitter opportunity, than of such a man, upon whom to bestow it, that was their assured friend, and passable wishall among the *Numidians*, as being (for the *Masajls* were a *Numidian* Tribe) a great Prince of the same Nation. Yet this liberality of the *Romans*, was noised abroad as very glorious: & the *Romans* themselves, in a politick sort of gravity, took highly upon them; as if even their saluting him by the name of King, had been a matter of great consequence. He thrived indeed well after it: and by their maintenance waxed mighty in times following, incoaching upon his neighbours on all sides; but most of all upon the State of *Carthage*, whereat they were little displeased. Hence it grew that *Vermis* the son of *Syphax* (of whom we shall shortly speak more) which held some pieces of his fathers Kingdome, desiring friendship of the *Romans*, & promising by all means to deserve their love, requested therewithall, that they would call him King. But though it were so, that never any before him had made this a matter of suit: yet the *Roman* Senate was puntious herein, and answered very gravely, That it was not their custome to give the honour of that appellation, save only unto such Kings, as had greatly deserved of their City. Thus they made it a matter of State; and in process of time grew so proud of this their imaginary prerogative, that they imputed as a singular benefit unto Kings, that no way depended upon them, the salutation by *that* <sup>\* Cæsar Comm.</sup> name, though it were not accompanied with any other favour or profitthence redounding.

## §. XIX.

The Carthaginians desire Truce, and break it.

THE *Carthaginians* were extremely dismayed, when they heard of the great calamity, that was befallen their good friend *Syphax*, and understood that *Masanissa* their mortall enemy, had got possession of his Kingdome. To increase their fear, *Scipio* returned again to *Tunes* in view of their City: where he made an end of that Fortification, which he had begun at his last being there. The *Carthagi-*



\* Excerpt. 8 Po.  
lib. 15.  
liv. lib. 30.

mans had neither forces, nor courage, to withstand him: but their hearts so failed them, that they sent forth unto them thirty Embassadors, Princes of the city, which were their Privie Council, to make suit for peace. These being admitted into the presence of *Scipio*, did not only prostrate themselves on the ground; but kissed the \* feet of him, and of those that sat in Council with him.

Answerable to this base adoration was their speech that followed. They confessed themselves to have unjustly broken the Peace between them and *Rome*; and to have deserved whatsoever punishment it should please the *Romans* to inflict upon them. Yet they humbly besought *Scipio* and the rest, that in common regard of those misfortunes, whereto all men are subject, they would shew mercy unto the City of *Carthage*, and let it remain, as a monument of their clemency; which, by the folly of her Citizens, had now twice deserved to be overthrown. Herewithall they did not forget, to lay the blame upon *Hannibal*: who without their appointment had begun the War; and was maintained in his doings by a Faction, without the good liking of the whole City. By this it appears, that these Embassadors were no *Barchines*: but rather, that they were *Hanno*, and the choice of his company, who had now their long desired work in hand, of suing unto the *Romans* for peace. Whatsoever they were, it must needs be that they were most insolent men over those that were subject unto their power, for they would not have made such adoration to the *Romans* in their own necessity unless they themselves had expected the like, where they had the advantage.

It was not unknown to *Scipio*, or to his assistants, in what poor case the city of *Rome* then was; and how unable to defray the charges of continuing the war. Neither were the *Carthaginians*, notwithstanding the losse of so many Armies, in such ill case, as the *Romans* themselves had very lately been. For they had money enough, wherewith to wage more men: they had a City far stronger than *Rome*; and they had the Sea free. But they wanted the *Roman* resolution: and therefore distrusted the walls of *Carthage*, though *Vica*, a weaker City; had all this while held out against *Scipio*, and could not yet be forced by him and his army, though so often victorious in the field. *Scipio* therefore accepted their submission, and told them, That though he came into *Africk*, to make a conquest, and not Peace: yet having the Conquest as it were in his hand, he would not deny to grant them the Peace which they desired; for thereby should all Nations understand, that the people of *Rome* did follow the rule of Justice, both in making war, and in concluding it. The Conditions which he imposed upon them, were these: That they should render up unto him all the prisoners that they had taken, together with all *Renegadoes* and fugitive slaves: That they should withdraw their Armies out of *Italy* and *Gaul*: That they should not meddle in *Spain*, nor yet in any Iland between *Italy* and *Africk*: That they should deliver up all their ships of war, save twenty; and that they should pay a great summe of money, with certain hundred thousand bushels of wheat and barley. To consider of these Articles, he gave them three dayes: and when they had approved them, he granted a Truce; that they might send Embassadors unto the *Roman* Senate.

This done, *Masaniissa* was dismissed, and went home into his Kingdome, as if the war had been already at an end. *Syphax* was a little before sent with *Lalius* unto *Rome*: whereto the fame of these victories filled men with joy, and gave hope, that the long endured miseries would be shortly at an end. Wherefore all the Temples were set open; and an holy day appointed for thanksgiving and supplication to their gods. *Lalius* was accompanied with Embassadors from King *Masaniissa*: who gratulating the happy successe of the *Romans* in their *African* war, and giving thanks unto the Senate for the beneficence done by *Scipio* unto their Master, made request for the *Numidians*, such as were now his subjects and prisoners in *Rome*, that they might be bestowed upon him, who by rendering them to liberty, should do an act very plausible, that would make him gracious among his people in the beginning of his reign. The *Roman* Senate were not behind with *Masaniissa* in complement: but shewing themselves to be highly pleased with all that *Scipio* had done, and should do for him, they called him King again; released his *Numidians* that were captives; and sent him two purple Cassocks, that had each of them one gold button, with such other presents, as in time of their poverty might serve to stifie their good will. Scarcely were these and *Lalius* gone from *Rome*, when the news came, that Embassadors from *Carthage* were arrived to desire peace. These Embassadors

were

were not admitted into the City, but were lodged without: untill *Lalius* being sent for, came back from *Ostia*, to be present when their demands were to be heard. Then was audience given them in the Temple of *Bellona*; that stood in the Suburbs. The errand of these Embassadors, was peace, but the meaning of them and of their City, was only to win time, and get respite for war; untill *Hannibal* and *Mago* should come out of *Italy*, either to chase the *Romans* out of *Africk*, or to obtain peace for *Carthage*, by terror of their great names and Armies, upon more easie conditions. Wherefore they made an idle discourse of the League, that was concluded between them and *Lutatus Catulus*, at the end of the former war. This League they said, all things well considered, did still remain in force: neither had there since been any war at all, between the people of *Rome* and the *Carthaginians*. For it was only *Hannibal*, that without any leave from *Carthage*, had of his own head besieged and razed the Town of *Saguntum*: and after that adventured in like sort, without Commission, to pass the *Alpes*, and trouble (as he had done) the quiet of *Italy*. This being so, their Message was none other, than to desire, that the League before spoken of, made in the time of *Catulus*, might hereafter stand in force; as indeed it hitherto did, and ought to do. The Senators had cause to wonder at this tale, hearing these Embassadors make (as it were) a jest of a warre, that had been so terrible. Wherefore they asked them a great many questions, concerning that peace made by *Lutatus*, and other passages following between the two Cities. But they excused themselves, by their age: (for they were all young men) and said, That those things were beyond their knowledge and remembrance. Forthwith it appeared, That all was but collusion, and that they sought no other than to gain time, untill they might repair the war. Wherefore they were sent home in company of *Lalius*, without any conclusion at all of peace; and, in effect, without answer. This notwithstanding, we find in *Polybius*, That the Senate received advertisement from *Scipio*, of that which had passed between him and the *Carthaginians* in this Treaty of peace; approved the Conditions by him propounded, and gave him licence thereupon, to proceed unto conclusion. This may with good reason be believed, since it was not unknown, that if the war continued, all these goodly hopes must rest upon the most uncertain issue of one battel between *Hannibal* and *Scipio*: wherein if fortune should be adverse to them, their forces in *Africk* were no better than quite lost.

Matters thus hanging in suspense, before the *Carthaginian* Embassadors came back from *Rome*, a Fleet out of *Sicily*, wherein were two hundred ships of burden, and thirty Gallies, being bound for *Africk*, to victual the *Roman* Camp, was overtaken by foul weather at Sea, and hardly escaping wrack, was dispersed, and driven aground in divers parts of the Bay of *Carthage*, even in view, and under command of the City: There was at that time, as we find in *Appian*, and may gather out of *Polybius*, a great dearth of victuals in *Carthage*; which caused the people to cry out upon their Magistrate, that they should not let such a booty escape them, saying, that the danger of famine was greater and worse, than of breaking Truce. Whether it were so that hunger urged them, or that they yielded to their own greedy desires: the multitude in *Carthage* understood (as it seems) that all this discourse of Peace in hand, was no better than meer mockery, and therefore cared not for observation of particular points, when they mock deceit in the whole. It was the manner in *Carthage*, as likewise in *Alexandria*, for all the rascality, together with women and boyes, to be meddling in upstarts: the clamors of the boyes being in such tumults no lesse violent than of the men. Wherefore it is no marvel, if little regard were had of reason, or of honour, in any such commotion. A Fleet was sent out under *Asdrubal*, to gather up the dispersed *Roman* ships of burden (for the Gallies, by force of Oars, recovered the station whereto their camp adjoynd) and bring them into *Carthage*; which was done. *Scipio* was heretofore much offended: not only for the loss; and for that the Town was thereby relieved; but for that by this breach of Truce, he foresaw the intention of the *Carthaginians* to renew the war, and put him to more trouble. Wherefore he sent Embassadors unto them, both to require satisfaction for the injury done; and to deterre them from entertaining any other hope, than in the peace which they had so much desired. These gave the *Carthaginians* to understand, That Letters were come from *Rome* unto *Scipio*, with allowance to conclude the Peace; upon those conditions which he had propounded. But (say they) we hold it strange, That ye, who so lately have cast your selves to the ground before us, & kissed our feet

after

\* Excerpt. 8 Po.  
lib. 15.

App. de bell.  
lib. 15.

\* Excerpt. 8 Po.  
lib. 15.

after an unuisuall manner of humility, confessing your selves to have perfidiously broken the League that was between us, and thereby to have deserved such punishment as is due unto Rebels; should so soon forget what ye then uttered, and run headlong again into the same crimes, for which ye acknowledged your selves worthy to be destroyed, having only recourse unto our mercy. We are not ignorant, that it is the confidence which ye repose in Hannibal, that thus emboldens you. Yet were it not amiss, that ye should consider, how long he hath been pent up in a corner of Italy, among the Brutians, where he is in a manner besieged, and unable to stir; so that ye are like to find his help wanting in your greatest need. Or let it be supposed, that he were now in Africk, and ready to give us battail: yet should it well agree with your wisdom, to doubt what might befall, remembering that he is a man, and not invincible. Now if it should happen that he were overcome, what refuge have ye left unto your selves against hereafter? What gods will ye either swear by, to be believed, or call upon in your misery? What words, and lamentable gesture will ye henceforth use, to move compassion? Surely ye have already wasted all your force of persuasion, and shall not again deceive me, if ye refuse the grace, whereof at this present ye are capable. It is no marvell though the Carthaginians were angry, when they heard themselves upbraided with the base denaour of their Embassadors. For it was not the general opinion of the city, that the Tux was broken by themselves: though it had pleased Hanno, or such as were of his faction, to graivie the Romans with all manner of submission; and to renounce not only their hope of the future, but all justification of matters past. And indeed it seems, that the Roman Embassadors were very much delighted, in the rehearsal of that point which was yielded unto them, as knowing that thereon depended the justice of the quarrell. But the Carthaginians took this in foill part, that hardly they could refrain from doing violence unto the men, who had used unto them such insolent speeches. Yet the fury of the multitude was in some sort appeased; either by Hanno, whom Appian, (I know not why) calls Hanno the Great: or by the very reverence, due unto the place of those that had uttered such liberrall words. So they were dismissed in friendly sort, although it were without answer to their Proposition. There were also two gallies appointed for their safe convey home; though with little intent of good unto their persons. Asdrubal was then in the mid-way, as men sailed from Carthage towards Muz. He, whether only desirous to please the multitude, of whose disposition he was informed; or whether directed by publick order to cut off these Embassadors in their way homeward, lay waiting for them behind a Cape, that was a little beyond the mouth of the river Bagradas. Their Convoy having brought them on the way, as farre as to the mouth of Bagradas, wished them a good voyage; and so took leave of them, as if they had been then in safety, since the Roman Camp was even in sight. The Embassadors took this in ill part; not as fearing any danger toward, but thinking themselves too much neglected, forasmuch as their attendants did so abruptly leave them. But no sooner had they doubled the Cape, than Asdrubal fell upon them, in such manner, as they might well discern his purpose; that was to have stemmed them. They rowed hard therefore; and being in a Quinquageme, that had more banks of Oares, than had any Gallie of Asdrubal, they slipped away, and made him over-shoot himself. Yet he gave them chase, and had well-near surpris'd them. But they discovered some Roman Companies on the shoar over against them, and therefore adventured to runne their Vessell aground: whereby they saved their own lives, though a great part of their company were slain, or hurt. This practice of the Carthaginians was inexcusable: and for the same cause perhaps were the Citizens heartned in such a dishonourable attempt, by those that were desirous to continue the war; that thereby they might be driven to studie nothing else, than how to get the victory, as having none other hope remaining. Yet likely it is, that the same fear, which had caused them to make such earnest suit for peace, would also have caused them to be better advised, than thus to abandon all hope of Treaty; had they not been given to understand, that Hannibal was already landed in Africk, in whom they reposed no small confidence, but verily perswaded themselves, that he would change their fortune, and teach the Romans to hold themselves contented with more easie conditions, than were those that Scipio, in the pride of his fortune, had of late propounded.

S. XX.

In what sort Hannibal spent the time after the battel of Metarrus: The Aduines of Mago in Italy, Hannibal and Mago called out of Italy, from the Romans were diversely affected in Hannibals departure.

Ever since the loss of that battell at Metarrus, Hannibal remained in the Country of the Brutians, waiting for another supply from Carthage. The Roman Consuls that succeeded unto Claudius and Livius, by whom Asdrubal was overcome and slain, were contented to be quiet all their year. Neither did Licinius the Colleague of Scipio, ought worthy of remembrance against Hannibal, being hindered by the illness that was in his Army. Sempronius the Consul, who followed Licinius, and his Sergilius Caelio, who followed Sempronius, were earnestly bent to have done some way, but their diligence was in a manner fruitless. In some skirmishes with Hannibal, they had the better; in some the worse; and a few poor Towns they got from him, as it were by stealth; his care being more to preserve his Army, than to keep those places that were weak.

The Romans had at this time so many great pieces of work in hand, that their chief care was become not the chief part of their care. Their thoughts were mainly bent upon Africk, wherein they were at up small charges to maintain the Army, which (as was hoped) should bring the War to a short and happy conclusion. They stood nevertheless in much fear of Mago, the brother of Hannibal: who took exceeding pains among the Ligurians and Gauls, to raise an Army, wherewith to kindle anew the War in Italy, that began to wax cold. Mago solicited also the Hebricans, and found them so ready to fit in his behalf, that if he could have entered their Country strong, it might have proved no less needfull for Scipio to: returne home out of Africk, than shortly it was for Hannibal to make speed unto the defence of Carthage. These dangers caused the Romans to employ one of their Consuls or Proconsuls, with an Army, among the Hebricans; another among the Gauls; and a third among the Ligurians; forasmuch as it was uncertain, upon which side Mago would break out. Being thus busied, it is no wonder though they forgot to overcharge Hannibal with any great power.

As for Mago, when things were in some readines for his setting forwards, he met in the Country of the Tesabrians, which is about Milan, with M. Cornelius the Roman Proconsul, and P. Quintilius Varro, one of the Prætors. With these he fought a battell, where though his verue shewed it self worthy of his Father and Brethren; yet his fortune was Carthaginian. The fight continued a long while doubtfull; in such sort that the Roman Commanders began to distrust the issue. Wherefore Quintilius the Prætor, taking unto him all the Roman Horse, thought to have shaken the Enemies to pieces. The Legions at the same time gave a loud shout: & strained themselves hard, as if at that bright victory should have been carried before them. But Mago opposed his Elephants to the Horse: the service of those beasts being fitter for such use, than against the squadrons of foot. The figure, sent, and braying of these Elephants, did so affright the Horse, that they started aside, and were scattered over the field; their Riders being unable to manage them. Hereby the Numidians got advantage upon them: whose manner of fight was more available against those that were loose, than against the troups that were close and thick. Then fell the Elephants upon the Legions: which entertained them after the accustomed manner, with a shower of darts, and killed four of them, causing all the rest to give back. This notwithstanding the same Legions were so vehemently pressed by the Enemy, that more for shame of running away, than by any great force to make resistance, they held their ground. The Proconsul therefore brought up those forces, which he had kept unto the last, to succour where need should most require. Against these, Mago employed some of his Gauls, whom he had in readines for the like occasion. But the Gauls discharged their parts very ill. They were soon beaten off, and recalled so hastily, that they brought fear upon all the rest. When Mago saw that his men began to shrink, He put himself in the head of his Army; and held them so well to it, that keeping their order, they made a fair Retreat, with their faces toward the Enemy. But at length he received a grievous wound in his thigh, whereof shortly after he dyed. He was taken up, and carryed out of danger by some of his own men.

men: the rest of them, after little further resistance, provided every one for himself: So the *Romans* obtained victory, not without great cost: as purchasing the death of about five thousand Enemies, with the loss of two thousand and three hundred of the *Prætor's* Army, besides those that dyed of the *Proconsuls* Legions; also besides divers Colonels, Captains, and Gentlemen of mark that fell in this hot piece of service. Neither were there any prisoners taken; whereby it may seem that the Enemies did not fall to fight before they had recovered some ground that might assure them from pursuit. However it were, this victory would have much import'd for the assistance of *Italy*. The State of *Carthage* could longer have permitted these valiant sonnes of *Amilcar* to abide abroad. But *Hannibal* with admiration himself thy castle journey, because of his wounds, and the pleasure of their City, which was, That both he and *Hannibal* should incessantly repair home with all their forces; not staying any longer to think upon the conquest of *Italy*, since *Carthage* it self was ready to be lost. He obeyed this Commandment, and imbarqued shortly his Army, but dyed of his wound about *Sardinia*, in the way homeward.

About the same time *Hannibal* received the like command from *Carthage*, to return into *Africa*. He heard it with great impatience; gnashing his teeth, and groaning, and sadly keeping in the tears; that were ready to burst out, whilst the Embassadors were delivering their errand. When their message was done, He told them, That *thou art plain dealing*. For, said He, *they that now directly bid me come home; have long since done their best to hinder me out of Italy; though more closely and crookedly they went to work, by stopping the supply that should have enabled me to manage the War here. Scipio therefore hath not need to brag, that he hath drawn me home by the heels: it is Hanno that hath wrong'd this noble feat; who hath belm'd the house of the Barchines, for lack of other means, to do it with the force of Carthage. He had before prepared a Fleet in readines, doubting that which after came to pass: wherein he imbarqued, besides his own men, as many of the *Italians* as were content to be partakers of his fortune. Many there were, that link back from him, and refused to do service in this expedition: of whom such as he could take; he flew, not sparing those that fled into the Temple of *Juno Lacinia*, which had been held an inviolable Sanctuary unto that day. He was indeed then wholly transported with rage; and departed out of *Italy* no less passionate, than men are wont to be, when they leave their own Countreys to go into exile. He looked back unto the shore: accusing both gods and men; and cursing his own dullness, in that he had not led his Army from *Cannæ*, hot and bloudy as it was, directly unto the walls of *Rome*. With such vexation of spirit He quitted the possession of *Italy*; wherein he had lived almost half his life.*

As it could have been foretold unto the *Romans*, in the first beginning of this War, With what exceeding joy in times following they should entertain the news of *Hannibal's* departure out of *Italy*; they would (I think) less earnestly have pressed the *Carthaginians* to send him over thither. When sure advertisement was brought unto the City, that *Hannibal* was gone with all his Army: an Holy-day was appointed for thanksgiving unto their gods; and extraordinary great sacrifices publicly made, for joy of such happy tidings. Yet old *Q. Fabius* was of opinion, That the danger did still remain the same, though the place were changed: for that *Hannibal* at his coming into *Africa*, would find *P. Scipio* another manner of work, than he had been troubled with at any time before; and would do greater matters in his own Country, than ever he was able to performe abroad in a land of strangers. The remove of the War from their own doors; and the conceit of that victory for which they hoped; was enough to make them presume further, than at other times they would have done. When therefore the *Saguntine* Embassadors brought unto them a great mass of Gold and Silver, together with some Agents of the *Carthaginians* taken by them in *Spain*: only the *Carthaginian* prisoners were accepted, the treasure was rendred back unto the *Saguntines* that had surprised it. Upon like confidence of the future, a little before this, order was taken for the repayment of those moneys that had been borrowed in time of more necessity from private men. Hence also proceeded the severe chastisement laid upon those 12. Colonies, that for want either of means or of good will, had refused to give aid to the *Romans*. They were commanded, and enforced to give double the number of Foot to that which they

had been wont to set out for the War, with a proportion of Horse answerable to the very most of their ability. So confident were the *Romans* grown, though their wealth were not as yet suitable to the greatness of their spirit; upon the good success of the battell at *Meturus*, and the hopes which they reported in *Scipio*. All this notwithstanding, when they considered more nearly of that which might happen; and were informed that the terrible Army, whereof *Italy* had been few daies since discharging, was landed safe in *Africa*; they began to revolve a thousand fearfull notions in their heads; and to stand in doubt, lest *Q. Fabius* (who died about the same time) would be found a true Prophet. For, bethinking themselves of that which might comfort them in their hopes: they found in the victories against *Syphax* & *Adrabal* no speciality of such great worth, as might promise the like success against another manner of Generall, followed by other manner of men, than were either of those two. The *Nimidian* King had been wont to bring into the field a vast multitude of half skellions; that were good for nothing, being himself the Captain for such Souldiers. Likewise *Asdrubal* the son of *Scipio* was a Commander well thought of by the *Carthaginians* Sonate, but otherwise one, that in the field was only good at saving himself by a swift retreat. But now there came an Army of men, hardened from their childhood with invincible patience, fleshed many hundred times in *Roman* blood, and wearing the spoils, not only of good Souldiers, but of brave Captains, by them slain. Such talk'd the people of *Rome*, saying, That *Scipio* was like to meet him in battell with many that had slain *Roman* Prætors; yea, and Consuls with their own hands; with many that had been first in getting over the Trenches of severall *Roman* Camps, or in winning the tops of walls at the siege of towns, &c. &c. that he should now be opposed by an Army as good as ever had served in war, and following the dreadful name of *Hannibal*.

*Hannibal* in *Africa* prepares to fight with *Scipio*; & with *Asdrubal* peace in vain; & lo-  
seth a battell at *Nedogata*, and persuades the *Carthaginians* to the purpose. Of the peace  
granted from *Rome* to *Carthage*.

**H**annibal disembarked his Army at *Leptis*, almost an hundred miles from *Carthage*, Eastward from the Headland of *Mercure*, and somewhat more than one degree to the South. He was ill provided of Horse; which it was not ealie for him to transport out of *Italy*. Therefore it behoved him to find, as he did, somewhat farre from the enemy, that he might furnish himself of these, and the like needfull helps against the day of battell. From *Leptis* he passed on to *Adrumetum*, and so along through the In-land Country gathering friends unto him by the way. *Tychæus* a *Nimidian* Prince, and familiar friend of *Syphax*, was laid to have in those dayes the best hopes of service, that were to be found in *Africa*. Him therefore did *Hannibal* allure unto his party: making him understand, that if the *Romans* got the victory, it should be ealie for *Masaniassa*, by their countenance and help to oppress both him, and as many other of the neighbour Princes as hindred his prospect. This argument, and the fame of him that used it, prevailed with *Tychæus*, who shortly after brought unto the *Carthaginian* two thousand Horse. *Appian* further adds, That *Mazæus* (the same who had made himself Protector over *Masaniassa* his Cousins, and was Head of a Family, and adverse to the *Nimidian* Kings of that race) brought to *Hannibal* another thousand Horse: as likewise that *Perminæ* the Son of *Syphax*, holding a great part of his Fathers Kingdome, began at the same time to assail the places that yielded obedience to *Masaniassa*. This *Perminæ*, as we find in *Livie*, came with more than 16. thousand men (for he lost more than 10. many) to succour *Hannibal* when it was too late.

The *Carthaginians* were at this time in such hard estate, or (at least) so impatient of the state wherein they were: that they could not attend the leisure of those preparations, which would have made the victory assured. When they considered the worth of *Hannibal*, and the greatness of his Aids: it offended them to think, that they had been so base as to make humble suit unto the *Romans* for peace; whilst they had such a brave Champion alive, to maintain their cause by Warre. But when as they bethought themselves of their own sufferings, which, for want of *Roman* magnanimity to endure

them appeared greater than indeed they were: then cryed they out earnestly that it was no time to linger, but presently to fight; that so they might see an end of these troubles, either good or bad: and to this purpose they sent their Mandates to *Hannibal*: requiring him without any further protraction, to do what he could doe out of hand. *Hannibal* made answer, That they were his good Lords, and had power to dispose of him and his Army: but since he was General of their forces, He thought it reasonable that they should suffer him to do as a General ought to do; and to choose his own times, Nevertheless to give them satisfaction, He made great marches to *Zama*; and there encamped.

The breach of Truce made by the *Carthaginians*: The violence done to his Embassadors: and the news of *Hannibal* his being landed in *Africa*, made *Scipio* to understand the resolution of the *Carthaginians*, which was, not to yield unto any conditions unreasonable for themselves, as long as they were able to make resistance. Wherefore, he sent unto *Masani*: and informed him what that was fallen out, praying him to come away with speed, and lay all other business apart. Ten *Roman* Companies, of Horse and Foot together, *Masani* had with him: what was lent unto him by *Scipio*, to do him service in the establishing and enlarging of his Kingdom: But he well understood, that those and many more besides all his own forces, would but little avail him; if *Hannibal* should drive the *Romans* out of *Africa*. Wherefore taking such orders as he could upon the sudden, for the safety of his own kingdom, with four thousand Horse, and six thousand Foot, he made all haste unto *Scipio*.

Soon after the beginning of these new troubles, the *Carthaginian* Embassadors that had been at *Rome*, returned back under the conduct of *Lalius* and *Fulvius*, who brought them safe into the *Roman* Camp. There when they arrived & understood what had lately passed, especially how their Citizens had behaved themselves towards the *Roman* Embassadors: they made little doubt, how their own heads should answer for such notorious outrage. To confirm them in this opinion:

*M. Balus* one of the late Embassadors that had bin in *Carthage*, being left by *Scipio* to take charge of the Camp, laid hands upon them and detained them; sending word unto his General, who was gone abroad to make War in the Countrey, that he had them in his power, and that now the *Carthaginians* might be repaid in their own Coyn, for the injury by them lately done. *Scipio* was very glad to hear of this, and commanded *Balus* to use them with all possible civility, and send them safe home. By thus doing, He brake the hearts of his enemies, & caused them to acknowledge themselves (which was a great victory far less honourable than the *Romans*. This notwithstanding, he made more cruel War upon them than before: taking their Towns by force; and putting them to sack, without hearkning to any Composition. It was the manner of the *Romans*, as often as they took a Town by assault, to put all that came in their way, to the sword, whatsoever they were without regard. This they did, to make themselves terrible: and the better to work such impression in the minds of those, with whom they had to do, they used oftentimes to kill the very Dogs, and other Beasts, that ran athwart them in the streets; beweing their bodies under as men delighted in shedding of blood. This being their practice at other times: it is likely that now they omitted no piece of cruelty; when they meant to give proof of their vehement indignation, and revengefull minds, for the injuries received. Hence it partly grew, that the *Carthaginians* were so earnest in pressing *Hannibal* to fight.

*Hannibal* being incamped at *Zama*, sent forth his Scouts and Spies, to discover where the *Romans* lay, what they were doing, and as much as might be, of their demeanour. Some of these were taken & brought unto *Scipio*: who in stead of trusting them up, gave them free leave to view his Camp at pleasure, appointing one to conduct them up and down, and shew them whatsoever they desired. This done, He gave them leave to depart, & sent them away safe unto their General. *Hannibal* understanding this, admired the bravery and courage of his enemy: with whom on the sudden he grew desirous to have an Enter-view, and personall conference; and signified so much unto him by a messenger sent of purpose. Of this motion the *Roman* liked well: and returned answer, that He would meet him shortly in a place convenient. The next day *Masani* came with his Army: whom *Scipio* taking with him, removed unto a Town called *Nedagara*; near unto which he sat down, in a place otherwise commodious, and close

by a water that might opportunely serve his Camp. Thence he sent word unto the *Carthaginian*, That the time and place did fitly serve, if he had ought to say to him. *Hannibal* thereupon removed from *Zama*, and came within four miles of the enemy: where he incamped well to his own good liking in all things else; excepting that his men were driven to take much pains, in fetching their water somewhat farre off. Then was order taken for their meeting: and the two Generals each of them with a troop of Horse, rode forth of their Camps, till they came unto a piece of ground; which was before well searched for fear of ambush. There they will their followers to stand off: and themselves with each of them one Interpreter, encountered each other in the mid-way to between their Companies. They remained a while silent, viewing one the other with mutual admiration. Then began the *Carthaginian*, saluting the *Roman*, to deliver his minde to this effect: That it had been better both for *Carthage*, and *Rome*, if they could have limited & contained their ambition within the shores of *Africa* and of *Italy*; for that the Countreys of *Sicil* and of *Spain*, about which their fathers ar'd themselves had striven, were no sufficient recompence for so many Fleets as had been lost, and of so much blood as had been shed, in making those costly purchases. But since things past could not be recalled: He said, That it was meet for them to consider, unto what extreme dangers their own Cities had been exposed, by the greedy desire of extending their Empires abroad; and that it was even time for them now at length to make an end of their obstinate contention, and pray the gods to endue them with greater wisdom hereafter. And to such peaceable disposition, He affirmed that his own years, and long tryall of Fortune, both good and evil, had made him inclinable. But much he feared, that *Scipio*, by want of the like experience, might rather fixe his minde upon uncertain hopes, than upon a contemplation of that mutability, whereto all humane affairs are subject. Yet (said he) mine own example may peradventure suffice to teach thee moderation. For I am that same *Hannibal*, who after my victory at *Cannæ*, won the greatest part of *Italy*: and devised with my self, what I should do with your City of *Rome*, which I hoped verily to have taken. Once I brought mine army to your walls, as thou hast since brought thine to ours of *Carthage*: but now, see the change! I stand here entreating thee to grant us peace. This may serve as a document of Fortunes instability. I have fought with thy father *Scipio*: He was the first of the *Roman* Generals that ever met me in the field. I did then little think, that the time would come, that I should have such business, as now at the present, with his son. But this is even one of Fortunes pageants, wherof she hath many. And thou must have experience of the like in thy self, who knowest how soon? Think upon *M. Atilius*: If he would have hearkned unto such persuasions, as I now use to thee, he might have returned home to *Rome* as happy man, and so must thou doe now, if any reasonable offer will give thee satisfaction. How hast thou? Canst thou be contented, that all *Spain*, *Sicil*, *Sardinia*, and whatsoever Islands else are situate between *Italy* and *Africa* be abandoned by the *Carthaginians* for ever, and left unto the *Romans*, to bear dominion therein? Thou shalt have glory enough by effecting thus much: and the *Romans* may well be glad of such a bargain. As for us, our own quiet shall henceforth give us contentment. And the same contentment of ours, shall make us faithfully observe the peace with you. But if thou thinkest all too little, I must desire thee to ponder well how great an hazard thou must undergoe for obtaining a very little more, than that which thou must have without contention. It is now in thine own power to lay hold upon good fortune, if it please thee: stay but untill to morrow night, and thou must take such fortune as it pleases the gods. The issue of battail is uncertain, and many times beguileth expectation. Men and Beel we shall each of us bring into the field; but of the victory neither of us hath assurance. Let us therefore wish one more adoe make peace. And do not tell me that some false-hearted Citizens of ours dealt fraudulently of late in the like treaty: It is I *Hannibal* that now desire peace with thee, which I would never do, if I thought it not expedient for my countrey. And thinking it expedient, I will always maintain it, like as I have maintained, unto my power, as long as the gods did not envie me, the war by me begun.

Hercunto *Scipio* made answer, That it was no ambitious desire of ruling in *Sicil* and in *Spain* which had moved the *Romans* to enter into this or the former War: but that the defence of the *Mamertines*, and afterwards of the *Saguntines*, their confederates, had caused them to put on those armes; which the gods by the final issue of the Wars had approved, and would approve to be most just. As for the mutability of Fortune,

he said, that he was not thereof ignorant, and that without any note of insolence or overweening, he might well refuse the conditions offered. For was it not plain that all these Countries, with which the Carthaginians now so willingly departed, were already won from the Romans? If, said he, these conditions had bin propounded whilst as yet ye detained some part of Italy, they might peradventure not have been rejected. But as the case now stands, I see no reason why I should remit unto you any one piece of these my former demands, to which the Carthaginians have yielded already, and thought me to be gracious in dealing so moderately. Rather I say, that the injuries which they have done me since, have made them unworthy of obtaining peace upon so friendly terms. But I cannot blame thee, Hannibal, though thou wouldst be glad to make thy Citizens understand, from how much of thy burden they are by thy means eased. Only thou must think, that in like sort it concerns me in honour not to let them be gainers or savers by the wrongs which they have done of late. Thou knowest well, that besides these offers which thou here hast made, they were well contented to restore unto us ransome-free, all prisoners that they have of ours, to pay us five thousand talents, to deliver up their Gallies, and to deliver hostages for assurance of fair dealing. And must they now be discharged of all this by their breach of truce, their spoiling of our fleet, and their violating our embassadours? Not so. But if they can be contented, besides all this, to make such amends as I shall require, for these injuries newly done, then will I take advice with my counsell what answer to give you; otherwise you may even prepare for war, and blame your own selves for that I have denied you peace.

Hereupon they brake off: and returned each to his own Camp, with no other newes than war; bidding their Souldiers prepare for a battell, wherein should be decided the quarrell between Rome and Carthage. The next morning at break of day they issued into the field: a notable march, and such as hath very seldom been found; whether we regard the Generals, their Armies, the two Cities that contended, or the great importance of the battell at hand. Scipio ordered his men after the Roman manner: placing first the *Hastati*, divided into their Maniples, or small Battalions, with a reasonable distance between them: Not far behind these followed the *Principes*, likewise divided; and so after them the *Triarii*. But herein Scipio altered a little the ordinary custome of the Romans: He placed not the Maniples of his *Principes* opposite unto the void spaces between the *Hastati*, that so the *Hastati*, as was usual, might fall back between the *Principes*; but he placed them directly one behind another, as it were, in File. This he did, because of the Elephants, whereof Hannibal had many. For of those beasts the danger was lesse whilst there was open way to let them through. Therefore he took such order, that when they had passed through the spaces between the first Battalions, they should not come upon the *Principes* in Front. Unto his *Velites*, or those of the light armature that were to begin the fight, he gave direction, that when they found themselves to be overcharged, either by the Enemies, or (which was most to be feared) by the Elephants, they should run back through those lanes that were between the Maniples; and that those which were swiftest, or otherwise best able, should continue on their flight, until they were got behind all their own Army; thereby leaving room enough unto those that were wounded, or cast behind, to save themselves on the void ground, that was betwixt the first and second, or the second and third battels, without cloying up the way between the Maniples, which he desired to keep open. His Italian horse he placed in the left wing, under C. *Laelius*. In the right wing was *Masanissa* with his *Numidians*. He himself riding up and down, exhorted his men to do valiantly; using words, not many, but forcible. He bade them remember what they had achieved, since their coming into *Africk*. He told them, that if this day were theirs, the Warre was at an end: and that their victory in this War, should make them Lords of all the World; for that afterwards, none would be found able to resist them. On the contrary, if they were beaten, he asked them whither they would flee. They were far from home, yea, and far from their own standing Camp: neither was there any place in *Africk*, that would give them shelter: if they fell into the *Carthaginians* hands, they knew what to expect. And therefore there was none other way, but death or victory: unless they would live like wretched slaves under most merclesse enemies. In such necessity, he said, that they which consider themselves to be, and take resolution answerable thereunto, have never been known to fail of getting victory.

Hannibal on the other side placed his Elephants, that were more than fourscore, in Front

Front of his Battell. Next behind these, he made his Vanguard all of Mercenaries, *Ligurians*, *Gauls*, *Balaers*, and *Moors*. Then followed his Battell, which was of *Carthaginians* & *Africans*, more interested in the quarrel than were those Mercenaries; though not so good souldiers: but to help (if it might be) their want of courage, they had with them four thousand *Macedonians*, lately sent from King *Philip*. More than the space of a furlong behind these came his Rereward, consisting of those brave Souldiers which had served him in his Italian wars; and were the only men, in whom he reposed any confidence. Opposite to *Laelius*, in his own right wing he bestowed the *Carthaginian* Horse, *Tycheus* and the *Numidians* he placed in his left wing against *Masanissa*. He was indeed far too weak for the Enemy in Horse, both in number and in goodnesse. For *Tycheus* and *Mezentius* had no more than three thousand; and those not so well exercised, as were the four thousand of *Masanissa*. The *Carthaginians* also were no more, nor none other than such as could be levied in the halt of a few dayes; and the remainder of those, that had of late been often vanquished; and accustomed to flye. But it was no time for Hannibal, neither had he perhaps authority, to make these his companions alight and serve on foot, setting better men in their saddles. All that he could have done, was to stay a little longer, and expect more help. Had *Vermina* the son of *Syphax* come thither, as he did in few dayes after, with sixteen thousand and upwards, the most of them Horse, the advantage of number might have served well to supply all other defect. Yet since the Lords of *Carthage* would brook no delay, Hannibal must be faine to comfort himself with the hope that he reposed in his old Italian souldiers, whose vertue had wrought greater wonders, when it was more strongly opposed. He encouraged therefore his men, with words agreeable to their severall conditions: promising unto the Mercenaries bountifull rewards; threatening the *Carthaginians* with inevitable servitude if they lost that day: but especially animating his old fellow-souldiers, by the many victories which they had obtained against far greater numbers. He bade them to look upon the Enemies, and make an estimate, whether they were any thing like so many as that huge Army which they had slaughtered at *Canna*. He willed them to remember, That it was one *P. Scipio*, even the father of this man, whom they had first of all compelled to run away. He told them, that these Legions, which they yonder beheld, were for the most part of them, the very worst of the Roman Souldiers; even such as for their dastardly flight out of sundry battels, could no longer be trusted to bear Armes in their own Countrey. As for the rest, they were young men, the sons of Cowards, and bred up in the continuall fear of those weapons, by which their fathers were daily slain or chased. Wherefore he intreated these his old companions, upon whose vertue he meant wholly to repose himself, that they would this day strive to make good their honour, and to purchase the fame of men invincible.

Such exhortations used the two Generals before the fight. When they drew near together, the *Numidian* horsemen on both sides began to skirmish. The Trumpets, and other instruments of war, sounded to battell: and Hannibal commanded his Elephants to break upon the Romans. Of these Elephants (as they were always an uncertain kinde of help) those that stood near unto the point of the left wing, turned back for fear: and ran upon their own *Numidian* horse; which they affrighted and disordered. *Masanissa* espying this, gave charge upon the same *Numidians*; and not suffering them to re-ally themselves, drove them quite out of the field. The rest of those beasts made a great spoil of the Roman *Velites*, whom they followed into the spaces between the Maniples: but without any harme to the Battalions themselves; which gave them open way according to as Scipio had well provided. Divers of them receiving many wounds, and growing therewith furious, could no longer be governed; but ran back upon the right point of their own battell, and beyond that into the open field. Herewithall they disordered the *Carthaginian* Horse which were in that wing: against whom they gave to *Laelius* the same advantage that *Masanissa* had against the *Numidians*; which he used in like sort. In the mean while, the battels of foot advanced, and drew near together with a slow and stately pace, till they were almost within a weapons cast: at what time they gave a shout, and ran one at the other. The Mercenaries for a time seemed both in audacity, and in quicknesse to have the better of the Romans; wounding many, and doing more harme, than they took. But the Roman discipline after a while prevailed against the boisterous violence of these untrained Barbarians. Whereunto it helped not a little, that the battell



of the *Principes*, following somewhat near after the *Hastati*, encouraged their fellows; and shewed themselves ready, if need were, to relieve them. Contrariwise, the Mercenaries, received no manner of help or comfort, from those that should have seconded them. For the new-leaved *Carthaginians* and *Africans*, when they saw their hired Souldiers give back, did also themselves retire. This caused the *Ligurians*, *Gauls*, and the rest, to think themselves betrayed: whereupon they inclined unto flight. The *Carthaginian* Battell was herewith more terrified than before, so as it refused to give way unto the Mercenaries for their safe retreat; and yet withall forbore to make head against the Enemies, that pursued them. It was no time to aske them what they meant by this: Fear and Indignation caused those that were at once chased by the *Romans*, and betrayed, as it they thought, by their own fellows, to turne their armes with an heedlesse fury against both the one and the other. Thus were many of the *Carthaginians* beaten down and slain, through their own indiscretion, by their own Mercenaries. The *Roman Hastati* in like sort, fighting with desperate men in a throng, had their hands so full of work, that the *Principes* were faine to come up unto them, and help to over-bear this great medley of enemies, that were together by the ea's among themselves. In this place was made a great slaughter, both of the Mercenaries and of the *Carthaginians*; which, hindering one another, could neither fight, nor easily flye. Such of them as escaped, ran towards *Hannibal*: who kept his ground, and would not stir one foot, to help or save these Run-awaies. He caused his men to bend their Pikes at those of his own side, that would have rushed upon him: whom he thereby compelled to turn aside beyond his battell, and save themselves in the open field. The ground, over which the *Romans* were now to march, ere they could meet with *Hannibal*, was covered with heaps of dead bodies and weapons; and so slippery with blood, that *Scipio* began to stand in great doubt, lest the orders of his Battalions should be dissolved in passing that way. In such case, if he should fight with that warlike Army, which he saw before him, remaining yet entire, and without fear expecting him; He might be well assured to receive a notable overthrow. He caused therefore the *Hastati* to make a stand there where they were, opposite to the main battell of the *Hannibilians*. Then drawing up his *Principes* and *Triarii*, he placed them, when they had overcome the bad way, all in one front with the *Hastati*, and made of them his two Cornets. This done, he advanced towards *Hannibal*: who entertained him after another manner, than ever he had been received in his life before. All the dayes work till now, seemed to have been a matter of pastime, in regard of the sharp Conflict, that was maintained between these notable Souldiers. The *Romans* were encouraged by their having prevailed all the day before: they were also far the more in number. But these old Souldiers of *Hannibal* were fresh; (and perhaps the better men.) They fought with such obstinate resolution, that no man gave back one foot; but rather chose to die on the ground whereon he stood. So that, after a long time, it was uncertain which part had the worse: unless it may seem, that the *Romans* were beginning to shrink; for as much as the return of *Masaniissa* and *Lalio* from pursuit of the Enemies Horse, is said to have been most happy and in a needfull time. There upon a sudden charged the *Hannibilians* in Rere; and over-bearing them by meer violence, compelled them to fall to Rout.

In this battell there eyed of the *Romans* fifteen hundred and upwards: on the *Carthaginian* side, above twenty thousand; besides as many that were taken; of whom, *Sopater* Captain of the *Macedonians* was one. The singular skill that *Hannibal* shewed in this his last fight, is highly commended by *Polybius*; and was acknowledged, as *Livie* reports, by *Scipio* himself. But the the Enemies were too strong for him in Horse; and being enjoyed, as he was, by the State of *Carthage*, to take battell with such disadvantage, he could work no marvels. He saved himself with a few horse, and stayed not in his journey, till he came to *Adrumetum*. Thence he was sent for to *Carthage*; from which he had been absent six and thirty years. At his coming into the Senate, He said plainly; That there was none other way left, than to take such peace as could be gotten. Wherefore the *Carthaginians* not knowing what other course to take, resolved to send Embassadors again, and try the favour of *Scipio*, whose Armes they could not now resist.

*Scipio* having spoiled the Enemies Camp, returned back to *Vtica*: where he found *P. Lentulus* newly arrived, with fifty Gallies and an hundred Ships of burden. With this

this Fleet, and that which he had before. He thought it best to make towards *Carthage*: rather of purpose to terrifie the City, than with any hope to take it. His Legions he committed unto *Cn. Octavius*; whom he willed to meet him there by land. Then sending *Lalio* away to *Rome* with newes of the victory, set sail from *Vtica* towards *Carthage*. He was encountered on the way by ten Embassadors from the City: who bearing up with the admirall Gally, began to use the pitfull gesture of Suppliants. But they received none other answer, than that they should meet him at *Tunes*, where he would give them audience. So rowing along before the City, and viewing it more in bravery, than with meaning to attempt it, he returned back to *Vtica*, and called back *Octavius* thither, with whom in person He set forwards to *Tunes*. As they were in their journey thither, they heard the newes, that *Vermina* the son of *Sypfax*, was coming with an Army of more horse than Foot, to the succour of those that were already vanquished. This *Vermina* seems to have been both carelesse of getting intelligence how things passed, and very deservive in all other duties requisite in the Commander of an Army. Part of the *Roman* foot, with all their power of Horse, was sent against him: which did not only beat him, but so compass him in, that he hardly escaped himself with a few; leaving fifteen thousand of his followers dead behinde him, and twelve hundred taken prisoners. If this good company had been with *Hannibal* at *Nadagara*, they should have been far better conducted, and might well have changed the Fortune of the day; which the *Carthaginian* lost by default of Horse. But God had otherwise determined. It is not to be doubted, that this victory, though it were no great access unto the former, yet served well to daunt the *Carthaginians*, and imprint in them the greater fear of *Scipio*. When he came to *Tunes*, there met him thirty Embassadors from *Carthage*: whose behaviour, though it was more pitfull than it had been before, yet procured it less commiseration, by reason of their late false dealing, after they had in like sort humbled themselves. Nevertheless it was considered, what a long and laborious work it would prove, to besiege the mighty City of *Carthage*. And particularly, *Scipio* stood in great doubt, lest the honour of this war, if it were protracted, should be taken out of his hands, and given to one of the Consuls. *Cn. Servilius Capiz*, that Consul who had charge of the war against *Hannibal* at such time as he departed out of *Italy*: was bold to pass over into the Ile of *Sicil* (as it were in chase of *Hannibal* by him terrified and driven away) with a purpose thence to have proceeded into *Africk* and taken from *Scipio* the command of the Army there. But a Dictator was chosen of purpose, to restrain the ambition of this Consul *Servilius*. After him followed *Tiberius Claudius*, who made suit for the same Province of *Africk*: and was therein so earnest, that though neither the Senate, nor People, would grant him his desire; yet he needs would be going, procuring only leave of the Senate, that he being Consul might joyn with *Scipio*, were it with no more than equall authority. But ere he could have his Fleet, and all things in a readines for the journey, where in no man cared to further him, Winter came on, and he was only tost at Sea with foul weather; first upon the Coast of *Hetruria*, and afterwards by *Sardinia*; where his Consulship expired, and so he returned home a private man. Then came the joyfull newes to *Rome*, of the victory obtained against *Hannibal*, and that the war was now even at an end. Yet was *Lentulus* the new Consul so passionate, in desiring *Africk* for his Province, That he said he would suffer nothing to pass in the Senate, until he had first his will. Much ado there was about this: and after many contentions, both in the Senate, and before the people, at last it was ordered, That if peace were granted, it should be granted by *Scipio*; if the war continued, *Scipio* should have command therein by Land, and the Consul at Sea. The ambition of these men, caused *Scipio* to give the more favourable answer unto the *Carthaginian* Embassadors. He willed them to consider what they had deserved: and in regard thereof, to think themselves well dealt withal; in that he was contented to leave unto them their liberty and their own Lawes, without appointing any Governour over them, or Garrison to hold them in subjection, leaving also unto them their possessions in *Africk*, such as they were at the beginning of this war. As touching the rest he was at a point, that before he either granted them peace or truce, they should make satisfaction for wrongs which they had done, whilst the late Treaty was in dependence. Hereunto if they would yeeld, then required He, That immediately they should deliver up to the Romans all prisoners, fugitives, & renegado's; that they had of theirs; likewise all their Gallies, excepting ten: & all their Elephants. That they should make

no warre at all thenceforth out of *Africk*, neither yet within *Africk*, without licence of the *Romans*: That the Countreies, Towns, goods whatsoever, belonging any wise unto *Malaniffa*, or to any of his Ancestors, which were in their possession, should be all by them restored unto him: That they should finde cora for the Roman Army, and wages for their Auxiliaries, during the time of Truce, untill the Peace were fully concluded: that they should pay ten thousand Talents of Silver, in the term of fifty years, by two hundred Talents a year, and that for observance of Conditions, they should give an hundred hostages: such as *Scipio* would choofe, be: none of them under fourteen years of age, nor above thirty.

With these conditions the Embassadors returned home, and reported them unto the City. They were very displeasing; and therefore one *Gelso* stood up to speak against them: and exhorted the people, who gave good attention, that they should not condescend unto such intolerable demands. But *Hannibal* perceiving this, and noting withall what favourable audience was given to this vain Orator, by the unquiet, unwearlike Multitude, was bold to pull him down from his standing, by plain force. Hereat all the people murmured, as if their common liberty were too much wronged, by such insolence of this presumptuous Captain: Which *Hannibal* perceiving, rose up and spake unto them, saying: That they ought to pardon him, if he had done otherwise than the customes of the City would allow; forasmuch as he had been thence absent ever since he was a Boy of nine years old, untill he was now a man of five and forty. Having thus excused himself of the disorder, he discoursed unto them concerning the Peace: and perswaded them to accept it, as wanting ability to defend themselves, had the Demands of the Enemy been yet more rigorous. Finally, upon good advice, they resolved to yield unto the Conditions propounded by *Scipio*: to whom they paid out of hand five and twenty thousand pounds weight in Silver, in recompence of damages, and injuries by them done to his Fleet and Embassadors. *Scipio* granted them Truce for three monthes, in which time they might negotiate with the State of *Rome*, about confirmation of the League. But herewithall he gave injunction, that they should neither in the mean while send Embassadors any whither else, nor yet dismiss any Embassadors to them sent, without first making him acquainted what they were, and what their errand was.

At this time *Hanno*, and they of his Faction, were become wise and honourable men, by the miseries wherein *Carthage* was fallen through their malicious counsels. *Asdrubal*, surnamed the Kid, a venerable man, and a great friend of *Hanno*, was chief of the Embassages which they sent to *Rome* for obtaining peace. They went thither in company of *Scipio* his Embassadors, who related unto the Senate and People those joyfull newes. About the same time arrived at *Rome* Embassadors from *Philip* King of *Macedon*: who, together with the *Carthaginians*, were faine to wait a while for audience, till the election of new Consuls then in hand was finished; and order taken, for the provinces of them, and the new Prætors. Then were the *Macedonian* Embassadors called into the Senate: who first answering unto some points, wherein the *Romans* had lately signified unto their King, that they found themselves grieved; returned the blame upon those *Greeks* themselves, that had made their complaint at *Rome*. Then accused they *Marcus Aurelius*: who being one of the three Embassadors, that had lately been sent from *Rome* unto King *Philip*, tarried in *Greece* behind his fellows, and there levelling men, made war upon the King, without any regard at all of the League, that was between him and the *Romans*. Further they desired of the Senate, That one *Sopater*, a *Macedonian* Gentleman, with other of their Country-men, that had lately served *Hannibal* for Pay, and being taken prisoners in *Africk*, were kept in bonds by *Scipio*, might be released and delivered unto them. Unto all this *M. Furius*, whom *Aurelius* had sent to *Rome* for that purpose, made a sharp answer. He said, that the *Greeks* which were confederate with *Rome*, endured so many injuries at the hands of *Philip*, that *M. Aurelius* was faine to stay behinde, to help them as he might; which else were like to be brought under the Kings subjection. As for *Sopater*, he affirmed him to be one of the Kings Counsell, and very inward with him: one that served not for money, but carried money with him, and four thousand men, sent from the King to the aid of *Hannibal*. About these points, when the *Macedonian* Embassadors could make unto the Senate no good answer, they were willed to return, and tell their Master, That war he sought, and

and war he should find, if he proceeded as he had begun. For in two main points He had broken the League, that was between him and the *Romans*: first, in that he had wronged their Confederates; and secondly, in that he had aided their Enemies against them with men and money. These quarrels with *Philip* that promised to open away into *Greece* and the Eastern Countreys, helped well the *Carthaginian* Embassadors in their solicitation of Peace. They appeared a very reverend company, when they entered into the Senate and *Asdrubal* above the rest was much respected, as one, whose good offices had kept the *Romans* from necessity of sending Embassadors to *Carthage*, upon the like errand. He was also liberally gramed, that the justice of the quarrell had been wholly on the *Romans* side; saying that it was the fault of some violent men, through which the Peace was broken. He could he not altogether excuse the City that had been too vehement in the prosecution of bad counsell. But if *Hanno* and himself might have had their wills, the *Carthaginians*, even at the best of their Fortune, should have granted the peace, which they now desired. Herewithall he commended the moderation of the *Romans*, as no small argument of their valour; by which alwaies they had been victorious. To the same effect spake the rest of the Embassadors: all of them entreating to have the peace ratified, though some with more lamentable words than others, according to the diversity of their title. They had patience enough to endure such reproof of Perjury, as they themselves might have laid upon the *Romans*, if their diligence and fortune had been such as the *Romans* was. Among the rest, when one of the Senators demanded, by what gods they would swear to keep the peace hereafter, *Asdrubal* made answer: Even by the same gods, that are as severe unto those that violate their Leagues. *Asdrubal* thus interposing the authority of his office, would have hindered the Senate from proceeding unto conclusion of peace; for that hereby he was like to lose the honour which he purposed to get by making war in *Africk*. But the matter was propounded unto the people, in whom rested the Sovereign Command of *Rome*; and by them referred wholly unto the pleasure of the Senate. So it was decreed, That *Scipio*, with ten Delegates, sent unto him from *Rome* of purpose, should make a League with the *Carthaginians*, upon such Conditions as seemed best, which were none other, than the same which he had already propounded: For this favour the *Carthaginian* Embassadors humbly thanked the Senate; and craved licence, that they might visit their Countrymen, which were prisoners in *Rome*: afterwards, that they might ransom and carry home with them some that were their especial friends; of whom they gave in writing almost two hundred names. Whereupon the Senate ordained, that two hundred of those Prisoners, which the Embassadors would choofe, should be sent over into *Africk*, and be freely restored to liberty by *Scipio*, when the peace was fully concluded. So they took leave, and returned home, in company of the ten Delegates, that were appointed by the Senate to joyn with *Scipio* in commission.

At their coming into *Africk*, the peace was given, and accepted, without any controversy or disputation. The Prisoners, Fugitives, and Renegado's, were delivered up to *Scipio*: likewise the Gallies, and the Elephants. *Scipio* took more vengeance upon the Renegado's than upon the Fugitives; and upon those of the *Romans*, than upon the *Latines* or other *Italians*. The *Latines* he beheaded: the *Romans* he crucified. About the first payment of their money, the *Carthaginians* were somewhat troubled. For though perhaps their common Treasury could have spared two hundred Talents for the presents, yet since the pension was annuall, and to continue fifty years: it was thought meer to lay the burden upon the Citizens. At the collection of the sum there was piteous lamentation, as if now the *Roman* yoke had begun to pinch them: so as many, even of the Senators, could not forbear weeping. Contrariwise, *Hannibal* could not refrain from laughter. For which when he was checked by *Asdrubal* *Hædus*, and told: That it worst of all befel him to laugh, since he had been the cause why all others did weep. He answered, That laughter did not alwaies proceed from joy; but sometimes from excess of indignation: For said He; My laughter is more reasonable, and lesse absurd, than your tears. For ye should have wept when ye gave up your ships and Elephants, and when ye bound your own hands from the use of armes, without the goodleave of the *Romans*, first obtained. This miserable condition keeps us under, and holds us in assured servitude. But if these matters ye had no feeling: Now when a little money is wrung out of your private purses,

purser, ye have thereof some sense. God grant that the time come not hereafter, wherein ye shall acknowledge, that it was the very least part of your misery for which ye have shed these tears. Thus discoursed Hannibal unto those, who tasting the bitter fruits of their own malicious counsell, repented when it was too late; and instead of cursing their own disorders, which had bred this grievous disease, accused the Physician, whose noble endeavours had been employed in procuring the remedy.

Scipio being torak leave of *Africk*, produced *Masaniissa*, and magnified him in presence of the Army, with high commendations not undeservedly. To him also he commended over those towns of King *Syphax*, which the *Romans* at that present held: wherein to say with he gave him but his due; and that which otherwise he knew not well how to bestow. But the love of the *Romans*, and friendship of *Scipio*, was fully answerable, and hereafter, to all the deservings of this *Numidian* King. About *Carthage* there rested no more to be done. Wherefore the *Romans* embarked themselves for *Sicily*, where when they arrived at *Lilybæum*, *Scipio* with some part of his Army, took his way home to *Rome* by land, and sent the rest before him thither by Sea. His journey through *Italy* was no less glorious than any triumph: all the people thronging out of the Towns and Villages, to do him honour as he passed along. He entered the City in Triumph: neither was there ever before, or after, any triumph celebrated with so great joy of the people, as was this of *Scipio*; though in bravery of the pomp, there were others in time shortly following, that exceeded this. Whether *Syphax* were carried through the City in this Triumph, and dyed soon after in prison; or whether he were dead a while before; it cannot be affirmed. Thus much may be avowed, That it was a barbarous custom of the *Romans*, to insult over the calamities of mighty Princes, by leading them contemptuously in Triumph; yea, though they were such, as had always made fair and courteous war. But hereof we shall have better example ere the same age passe. It was neither the person of *Syphax*, nor any other glory of the spectacle, that so much beautified the Triumph of *Scipio*: as did the contemplation of that grievous war past, whereof the *Romans* had bin in a manner without hopes, as ever they should set *Italy* free. This made them look cheerfully upon the Author of so great a conversion; and filled them with more joy, than they well could moderate. Wherefore they gave to *Scipio* the Title of the *African*: styling him by the name of that Province which he had subdued. This honourable kinde of surname, taken from a conquered Province, grew afterwards more common, and was usurped by men of less desert: especially by many of the *Cæsars*, who sometimes arrogated unto themselves the title of Countreys, wherein they had performed little or nothing; as if such glorious Attributes could have made them like in vertue unto *Scipio* the *African*.

Excerpt. 2. Pe.  
Chap. 16.

#### CHAP. IV.

Of Philip the father of *Perseus* King of *Macedon*: his first Acts and War with the *Romans*, by whom he was subdued.

##### §. I.

How the *Romans* grew acquainted in the East-Countries, and desirous of War there. The beginning of many Princes, with great Wars, at one time. The *Ætolians* over-run *Loponnesus*. Philip and his Associates make war against the *Ætolians*. Alteration of the State in *Sparta*. The *Ætolians* invade *Greece* and *Macedon*, and are invaded at home by Philip.

Plut. in vita  
Scipii.



IF the great similitude found in worldly events, the limitation of matter, hath been assigned as a probable cause. For since Nature is confined unto a subject that is not unbounded; the works of Nature must needs be finite, and many of them resemble one the other. Now in those actions, that seem to have their whole dependance upon the will of man, we are less to wonder, if we finde lesse variety: since it is no great portion of things which is obnoxious

obnoxious unto humane power; and since they are the same affections, by which the wills of sundry men are over-ruled, in managing the affairs of our daily life. It may be observed in the change of Empires, before those times whereof we now write, how the *Assyrians*, or *Chaldeans* invaded the kingdom of the *Medes*, with two hundred thousand Foot, and three score thousand Horse: but failing in their intended conquest, they became subject within a while themselves unto the *Medes* and *Persians*. In like manner *Darius*, and after him *Xerxes*, fell upon the *Greeks* with such number of men, as might have seemed resistlesse. But after that the *Persians* were beaten home again, their Empire was never secure of the *Greeks*: who at all times of leisure from intestine Warre, devised upon that conquest thereof, which finally they made under the great *Alexander*. If *Nabuchodonosor* with his rough old Souldiers, had undertaken the *Medes*; or *Cyrus*, with his well-trained Army, had made attempt upon *Greece*, the issue might, in humane reason, have been farre different. Yet would it then have been expedient, for them to employ the travell and vertue of their men, rather than the greatness of their names against those people; that were no lesse valiant, though lesse renowned, than their own. For the menacing words used by *Cyrus*, and some small displeasures done to the *Greeks* (in which kinde it may be, that *Nabuchodonosor* likewise offended the *Medes* and *Persians*) were not so available to victory, as to draw on revenge in the future. Great Kingdoms, when they decay in strength, suffer as did the old Lion, for the oppression done in his youth; being pinched by the Wolfe, gored by the Bull, yea and kicked by the Ass. But Princes are often carried away from reason, by mis-understanding the language of Fame; and despising the vertue that makes little noise, adventure to provoke it against themselves; as if it were not possible that their own glory should be foiled by any of lesse noted excellence. Against the time stone, whereat *Xerxes*, and before him (as I take it) *Erimedochus*, had stumbled, *Pyrhus* the *Epirot* hath dashed his foot. He was not indeed the King of all *Greece*; though most of mark, and a better Souldier than any other *Greekish* King, when he entered into war against the *Romans*. This war he undertook as it were for his minds sake: having received no injury; but hoping by the glory of his name, and of the *Greeks* that served under him, to prevail powerfully against the barbarous *Romans*, that they should only serve as a step to his further intended conquests, of *Sicily* and *Africk*. But when the *Romans* by their victory against *Pyrhus*, had found their own vertue to be of richer metall, than was the more shining valour of the *Greeks*; then did all the bravery of the *Epirot* (his Elephants and whatsoever else had served to make him terrible) serve only to make the *Romans* in time following, to think more highly of themselves. For since they had overcome the best Warriour in *Greece*, even Him, that being thus beaten by them, could in a year after make himself Lord of *Greece*, and *Macedon*: what should hinder them from the conquest of all those unwartlike Provinces, which in compass of 12. years a *Macedonian* King of late memory had won? Certainly there was he unto requite no more, than to bring to their own devotion by some good means, the whole Country of *Greece*: all the rest, this done, would follow of it self. How to deal with the *Greeks*, *Philip* and *Alexander* had shewed away, which, or perhaps a better, they might learn by getting more acquaintance with the Nation.

When therefore the first Punick war was ended, which followed soon after the wars of *Pyrhus* and of the *Tarentines*; then were the *Romans* at good leisure to hearken after newes in *Greece*; and to entertain any good occasion, that should be on that side presented. They had also then a strong Fleet: and were become, though not otherwise very skilfull Mariners, yet good fighters at Sea. So it fell out as happily as could be wished, that the *Illyrian* Queen *Tentà* made at the same time cruell war upon the *Greeks*: not waiting their Country, and lacking their Towns; only because they were unable to resist, though they had done her none offence. Into this quarrell if the *Romans* were desirous to enter; the Queen was not slow to give them cause. And their happy accomplishing of that war which they made with Her, was, in their own opinion, a matter not unworthy to make their Patronage to be desired by the *Greeks*. But no such thing happened; though they sent Embassadours, as it were to offer themselves, by signifying, that for love of *Greece* they had undertaken this *Illyrian* war. Thus began the first acquaintance betwixt the *Greeks* and *Romans*; which afterwards encreased very hastily, through the indiscretion of King *Philip* the *Macedonian*, whose business

\* The King of Spain pretended invincible Navie, being beaten out of the British Seas, invited us to those of the rest, this done, would follow of it self. How to deal with the Greeks, Philip and Alexander had shewed away, which, or perhaps a better, they might learn by getting more acquaintance with the Nation.

Lib. 6. §. 7.

K k k k

with them, being now the subject of our story, it is meet that we should relate (though somewhat briefly) the beginning of his reign, and his first Actions. It was like to prove a busie time in the world, when, within the space of 4. years, new Kings began to reign in the most of all Countries known; and 3. of them young boies, in 3. of the greatest kingdomes. This hapned from the third year of the hundred thirty ninth Olympiad, unto the third of the Olympiad following. For in this time died *Seleucus Ceraunus* King of *Asia* and *Syria* in whose room succeeded his brother *Antiochus*, afterwards called the Great. *Ptolemy Philopater* succeeded in the Kingdome of *Egypt* unto his father *Euergetes*. And *Philip* the son of *Demetrius*, being 16. or 17. years old, received the Kingdome of *Macedon*, together with the Patronage of the *Achaens* and most of the *Greeks*, by the de- cease of his Uncle *Antigonus Doson*, that was called the Tutor or Protector. About the same time a fo was the like change in *Cappadocia*, *Lacedamon*, and the Countries about Mount *Taurus*. For *Ariarathes* then began his reign in *Cappadocia*. *Lycurgus* found means to make himself King over the *Lacedamonians*, whose Common-weal, since the flight of *Cleomenes*, had continued in a manner headlesse; and *Acheus*, a kinsman of *Antiochus*, but a Rebell unto him, occupied the Regions near unto Mount *Taurus*, and kept a while the State of a mighty King. Lastly, in the second and third years of the 100. and fortieth Olympiad it was, that open war brake out between *Rome* and *Carthage*; and that *Hannibal* began his great Invasion upon *Italy*. Those troubles of the Western world, which were indeed the greatest, we have already followed unto an end: Of *Antiochus*, *Ptolemy*, 20 and the rest, we shall speak hereafter, when the *Romans* find them out.

*Philip*, soon after the beginning of his reign, came into *Peloponnesus*; greatly desired of the *Achaens*, and many others his dependants. That Country, having freed it self by the help of *Antigonus* from the danger (accounted great) of an easie subjection unto *Cleomenes*, was now become no lesse obnoxious to the *Macedonian*, than it should have been to the *Spartan*; and therewithall it lay open unto the violence of the *Ætolians*; who despised even the *Macedonian* Kings, that were Patrons thereof. The *Ætolians* were no men to beidle, nor were much addicted unto any other Art than war. Therefore wanting employment, they fell upon the *Messenians* that were their own Clients, and (excepting the *Eleans*, that were anciently of their consanguinity) the only good friends which 30 they had at the present in *Peloponnesus*. Their invasion was no lesse unexpected, than it was unjust: whereby with greater ease they made spoil of the Country; finding none prepared to make resistance. The *Achaens*, were called by the *Messenians* to help: which they did the more willingly; because the *Ætolians* passing without leave through their Territory, had (as was their manner) done what harm they listed. Old *Aratus* could hardly abide these *Ætolians*; as both knowing well their nature, and remembering the injuries, wherewith most ingratfully they had requited no small benefits done to them by the *Achaens*. He was therefore so hasty to fall upon this their Army, that he could hardly endure to stay few daies untill the time of his own Office came; being chosen Prætor of the *Achaens* for the year following. But his anger was greater 40 than his courage: and he shewed himself a man fitter (as hath been already noted of him) for any other service, than leading of an Army. He suffered them to passe quietly along with their booty, through a part of the Country, wherein he might very easily have distressed them; and afterwards pressed them to near, when they had repared ground of advantage, that they easily defeated all his Army. So they departed home rich, and well animated to return again. As for the *Achaens*, they got here by only the friendship of the *Messenians*: with whom, by licence of King *Philip*, they made Confederacy. Shortly after, the *Ætolians* invaded *Peloponnesus* again; having no more to do, than to passe over the narrow Straights of the *Corinthian* Bay, called now the Gulph of *Lepanto*, where they might land in the Countrey of the *Eleans*. 50 There joyned with them, in this their second invasion, a great number of the *Illyrians*: who neglecting that Condition imposed upon them by the *Romans*, of setting out no ships of war unto the coast of *Greece*: made bold to seek adventures again, and did great mischief. *Demetrius Pharius*, a creature of the *Romans*, commanded a part of these *Illyrians*: who shortly repented him of this his voyage; which caused him to lose his Kingdome, as is shewed before. But this *Demetrius* went another way, & fell upon the Ilands of the *Cyclades* in the *Ægean* sea: whence returning, he did some good offices for King *Philip*, or his friends. The rest of the *Illyrians* under *Scerdilaidus*, or *Scerdiletus*, having

gotten what they could else-where by roving at Sea, accompanied the *Ætolians* into *Peloponnesus*: who made greater havock in the Country now, than in their former Expedition, and returned home without finding any resistance.

Of these things great complaint was made unto *Philip*, when he came to *Corinth*. And because men were desirous to satisfie themselves with some speedy revenge: there were that urged to have some grievous punishment laid upon the *Lacedemonians*; who were thought underhand to have favoured the *Ætolians*, in meer despite of the *Achaens* and *Macedonians*, by whom themselves had lately been subdued. It is true, that the *Lacedemonians* had been so affected: and (which was worse) at the arrivall of *Philip*, 10 they slew such friends of his, as having checked their inclination, seemed likely to appeach them of the intended rebellion. Neither durst they well commit themselves to judgement: but intreated the Kings, that he would abstain from coming to them with an Army: since their Town was lately much disquieted with civil discord, which they hoped soon to appease, and meant alwayes to remain at his devotion. *Philip* was easily satisfied with this: not for that he (or rather old *Aratus*, who then wholly governed him) did mis- understand the *Lacedemonians*: but for that a greater work was in hand, which ought not to be interrupted. There met at *Corinth* in presence of the King, the Embas- 20 sadours of the *Achaens*, *Beotians*, *Epirots*, and *Acarnanians*: all complaining upon the *Ætolians*: and desiring to have war decreed against them, by common assent. *Philip* sent his letters unto the *Ætolians*, requiring them to make ready their answer in some convenient time: if they could alledge any thing in excuse of that which they had done. They returned word, that a Diet should be holden at *Rhium* for that purpose: whither if it pleased him to come, or send, he should be well informed of them and their whole meaning. The King prepared to have been there at the day; but when the *Ætolians* under- stood this for certain, they adjourned the Councill unto a further time: saying, That 30 such weighty matters ought not to be handled, save in the great Parliament of all *Ætolia*. This trick of Law notwithstanding, open war was proclaimed against them. And they, as it were to shew how well they had deserved it, made election of *Scopas* to be their Prætor, that was Author of these Invasions made on *Peloponnesus*, and the only man, in 40 a sort, upon whom they must have laid the blame of these actions, if they would have shifted it from the publick.

After this, *Philip* went into *Macedon*, where he prepared busily for the war against the year following. He also assayed the *Illyrian*, *Scerdilaidus*, with fair words and promises; whom he easily won from the *Ætolian* side, so far much as the *Ætolians* had cou- 50 raged him of his share, when he was partner with them in their late robberies. In like sort the *Achaens*, who had first of all others proclaimed the war in their own Countrey, sent unto the *Acarnanians*, *Epirots*, *Messenians*, and *Lacedemonians*: requesting them forthwith to declare themselves, and to denounce war unto the *Ætolians*; without stay- ing (as it were) to await the event. Hereunto they received divers answers according to the qualities of those with whom they dealt. The *Acarnanians*, a free-hearted and vali- 10 ant, though a small Nation, and bordering upon the *Ætolians*, of whom they stood in continuall danger: said, that they could not honestly refuse to shew their faithful mea- ning in that war, which was concluded by general assent. The *Epirots* that were more mighty, were nevertheless more cunning and reserved: so that they stood upon a need- less point, and desired to be held excused, untill *Philip* (of whose meaning they needed 20 not to have made any doubt) should first proclaim the war. The *Messenians*, for whose cause the war was undertaken, excused themselves, by reason of a Town which the *Ætolians* held upon their borders, and said, that they durst not be over-bold, untill that bndle were taken out of their mouths. As for the *Lacedemonians*, the chief of them 30 studied only, how to manage the treason for which their City had been so lately pardoned: and therefore dismissed the Embassadors of, the Confederates, without any answer at all. They had three years together continued object against their wils to the *Macedonians*, expecting still when *Cleomenes* should return out of *Egypt* to reign over them again, and maintain, as he was wont, the honour of their City. In this regard they chose not any Kings, but were contented with the rule of *Ephori*. Of these there were some, that thought the publique safety to consist, in holding their faith 40 with the *Macedonian* that had preserved them. And hereto they referred all their coun- sels: bring perhaps a little moved with respect of the benefit, which might redound unto

unto themselves, by adhering firmly to those which at the present bore rule over them. Others, and those the greater part, were still devising, how to make all ready for *Cleomenes* against his return; and sought to joyn with the *Ætolians*, which were the most likely to give him strong assistance. The *Macedonian* faction had the more authority, and durst more freely speak their minds: but the contrary side was the more passionate, & spared not by murders or any other violent courses, to set forward their desire. Neither did it suffice, that about these times there came certain report of *Cleomenes*'s death. For it was the liberty and honour of *Sparta*, which these intended: fancying unto themselves the glory of their Ancestors in such Ages past, as were not like to come again. *Cleomenes* was, they knew, the most able man to restore them unto their greatness and lustre, to which once he had in a manner performed: But since he was dead, and that, without injury to his well-deserving virtue, they might proceed to the election of new Kings: Kings they should have, and those of the race of *Hercules*, as in former times; for that without such helps, they must continue little better than subjects unto the *Macedonian*, and far less by him respected, than were the *Achaans*. Thus were they transported by contemplation of their old Nobility and fame. Some of the most working spirits among them, procured the *Ætolians* to send an Embassie to *Sparta*: which propounded the matter openly unto the people, whereof no one of the Citizens durst have made himself the Author. Much disputation, and hot, there was, between those of the *Macedonian* party, and these their opposites: in such wise that nothing could be concluded; untill by massacre or banishment of all, or the chief, that spake against the *Ætolians*, the diversity of opinion was taken quite away. Then forthwith a League was concluded between the *Lacedæmonians* and *Ætolians*: without all regard of the *Macedonians* or *Achaans*, who had spared the City, when they might have destroyed it. Then also they went in hand with the election of new Kings: wherein their diligence was so nice, and so regardfull of their ancient Lawes, as touching the choosing of the one King, that we may justly wonder, how they grew so careless in making choice of the other. In the one of their Royall Families they found *Agessipolis*, the son of *Agessipolis*, the son of King *Cleombrotus*: and him they admitted to reign over them, as heir apparent to his grandfather. This *Agessipolis* was a young Boy, standing in need of a Guardian: & had an Uncle, his Fathers brother, that was fit for the Government. Yet because the Law required, that the son, how young soever, should have his fathers whole right and title: the *Lacedæmonians*, though standing in need of a man, were so punctuall in observation of the Law, that they made this childe their King, and appointed his Uncle *Cleomenes* to be his Protector. But in the other branch of the Royall Family, though there was no want of heirs: yet would not the people trouble themselves about any of them, to examine the goodness of his Claim, but made election of one *Lycurgus*, who having no manner of title to the Kingdom, bestowed upon each of the *Ephori*, a Talent, and thereby made himself be saluted King of *Sparta*, and a Gentleman of the race of *Hercules*. This *Lycurgus*, to gratifie his Partisans, and to approve his worth by action, invaded the Countrey of the *Argives*: which lay open and unguarded, as in a time of peace. There he did great spoil, and won divers Towns; whereof two he retained, and annexed unto the State of *Lacedæmon*. After such open hostility, the *Lacedæmonians* declared themselves on the *Ætolian* side; and proclaimed war against the *Achaans*.

Thus the beginnings of the war fell out much otherwise, than the *Achaans* and their Confederates had expected, when they first made preparation. *Philip* was not ready: the *Epirots* gave uncertain answer: the *Messenians* would not stir: all the burden must lye upon themselves and the poor *Acarnanians*, whom the *Ætolians*, by favour of the *Eleans*, could invade at pleasure, as they were like to do; and by help of the *Lacedæmonians*, could assault on all parts at once. It was not long ere the *Ætolians*, passing over the Bay of *Orinth*, surpris'd the Town of *Ægira*: which if they could have held, they should thereby grievously have molested the *Achaans*, for that it stood in the mid-way between *Ægira* and *Sicyon*, two of their principall Cities, and gave open way into the heart of all their Countrey. But as *Ægira* was taken by surpris: so was it presently lost again, through greedinesse of spoile; whilst they that should have made it their first care, to assure the place unto themselves, by occupying the citadell and other pieces of strength, fell heedlessly to ransack private houses, and thereby gave

the Citizens leave to make head, by whom they were driven with great slaughter back into their Fleet. About the same time, another *Ætolian* Army landing among the *Eleans*, fell upon the Western Coast of *Achaia*, wasting all the Territory of the *Dymeans* and other people, that were first beginners of the *Achaean* Confederacy. The *Dymeans* and their neighbours made head against these Invaders; but were so well beaten, that the enemy grew bolder with them than before. They sent for help unto their Prætor, and to all the Towns of their Society in vain. For the *Achaans*, having lately been much weakened by *Cleomenes*, were now able to do little of themselves: neither could they get any strength of Mercenaries; forasmuch as at the end of *Cleomenes*'s war, they had covetously withheld part of their due from those that served them therein. So through this disability of the *Achaans*, and insufficiency of their Prætor, the *Dymeans*, with others, were driven to withhold their contribution heretofore made for the publick service, & to convert the money to their own defence. *Lycurgus* also with his *Lacedæmonians*, began to win upon the *Acadians*, that were confederate with *Philip* & the *Achaans*. *Philip* came to the borders of the *Ætolians*, whilst their Army was thus employed a far off upon *Peloponnesus*. The *Epirots* joyned all their forces with him: and by such their willing readinesse, drew him to the siege of a Frontier piece, which they desired to get into their own hands; for that, by commodity thereof, they hoped shortly to make themselves Masters of *Ambracia*. There he spent forty dayes, ere he could end the business, which tended only to the benefit of the *Epirots*. Had he entered into the heart of *Ætolia* at his first coming in; it was thought that he might have had an end of the war. But it happens oft, that the violence of great Armies is broken upon small Towns or Forts: and not seldome, that the importunity of Associates, to have their own desires fulfilled, converts the preparations of great Kings to those uses for which they never were intended; thereby hindering the prosecution of their main designs. Thus was our King *Henry* the eighth led aside, and quite out of his way, by *Maximilian* the Emperor to the siege of *Tournaie*: at such time as the French King *Lewis* the twelfth, hearing that the strong City of *Tervin* was lost, and that his Cavallery, wherein rested his chief confidence, two thousand were beaten by the Earl of *Essex* with seven hundred English, was thinking to withdraw himself into *Britain*, in fear that *Henry* would have come to *Paris*.

The stay that *Philip* made at *Ambracia*, did wondrously embolden the *Ætolians*: in such sort, as their Prætor *Scopas* adventured to lead all their forces out of the Countrey; and therewith not only to over-run *Thessalie*, but to make impression into *Macedonia*. Herein, as far as to *Dium*, a City of *Macedon* upon the *Ægean* Sea; which, being forsaken by the Inhabitants at his coming, he took, and razed to the ground. He spared neither Temple, nor any other of the goodly buildings therein, but overturned all: and among the rest, he threw down the Statues that were there erected, of the *Macedonian* Kings. For this he was highly honoured by his Country-men at his return; forasmuch as they, for they thought their Nation to be grown terrible, not only (as before) unto *Peloponnesus*, but even to *Macedonia* itself. But this their pride was soon abated; and they rewarded shortly at home in their own Countrey, for their pains taken at *Dium*. *Philip* having dispatched his work at *Ambracia*, made a strong invasion upon *Ætolia*. He took *Phœcia*, *Metropolis*, *Oeniade*, *Panion*, *Eldia*, and divers other Towns and Castles of theirs: of which he burnt some, and fortified others. He also beat the *Ætolians* in sundry skirmishes; and wasted all the Countrey over, without receiving any damage. This done, while he was about to make a cut over the Straights unto *Peloponnesus*, and to do the like spoil in the Countrey of the *Eleans*, whereto he was violently solicited by the *Achaean* Embassadors; news came out of *Macedonia*, that the *Dardaniens* were ready with a great Army to fall upon the Countrey. These *Dardaniens* were a barbarous people, divided by Mount *Hæmus* from the Northern part of *Macedonia*; and were accustomed to seek booty in that wealthy Kingdome; when they found their own want. Having therefore intelligence, that *Philip* was about to make a journey into *Peloponnesus*, as they purposed in his absence; which they thought would be long, to get what they could for themselves in his Countrey, as had been their manner upon the like adventures. This made the King to dismiss the *Achaean* Embassadors, (whom he should have accompanied home with his Army) and to bid them have patience until another year. So he took his way homewards; and as he was passing out of *Acarnania*, the *Epirots*, there repaired unto him, *Demetrius*, *Rharius*, with no more than



sons ship; that was newly chased out of his Kingdome by the *Romans*. This *Demetrius* had lately shewed himself a friend to *Antigonus*: *Dofon* in the wars of *Cleomatus*; and returning in his last Voyage from the *Cyclades*; was ready at their first request, to take part with *Philips* Captains. These, or the like considerations, made him welcome unto the *Macedonian* King: whose Counsellor he was ever after. The *Dardanians* hearing of the Kings return, brake up their Army, and gave over for the present their invasion of *Macedon*, towards which they were already on their way.

All that summer following the King rested at *Larissa* in *Thessalie*, whilst his people gathered in their Harvest. But the *Ætolians* rested not. They avenged themselves upon the *Epirots*: whom for the harms by them and *Philip* done in *Ætolia*, they required to with all extremities of War, among which, the most notable was the ruine of the most famous Temple of *Dodona*. When Winter grew on, & all thought of war, until another year, was laid aside: *Philip* stole a journey into *Peloponnesus*, with five thousand Foot, & about four hundred Horse. As soon as he was within *Corinth*, He commanded the gates to be shut, that no word should be carried forth of his arrivall. He sent privily for old *Aratus* to come thither unto him: with whom he took order, when, and in what places, he would have the *Achaean* Souldiers ready to meet him. The enemies were then abroad in the Countrey, with somewhat more than two thousand Foot, and an hundred Horse; little thinking to meet with such opposition. Indeed they had little cause to fear: since the *Achaean* themselves were not aware that the King was in their Land with his *Macedonians*: untill they heard, that these two thousand *Eleans*, *Ætolians*, and their fellows, were by him surpris'd, and all made prisoners, or slain. By this exploit which he did at his first coming, *Philip* got very much reputation, and likewise he purchas'd both reputation and love, by divers actions immediately following. He won *Plophie*, an exceeding strong Town, in the borders of *Arcadia*, which the *Eleans* and *Ætolians* then held. He won it by assault at his first coming: wherein it much availed him, that the Enemy, not believing that he would undertake such a piece of work at such an unseasonable time of the year, was carelesse of providing even such store of weapons, as might have served to defend it. The Town was preserved by the King from sack, and given to the *Achaean*s, of his own meer motion, before they requested it. Thence went he to *Leson*, which yielded for very fear, hearing how easily he had taken *Plophie*. This Town also he gave to the *Achaean*s. The like liberality he us'd towards others, that had ancient title unto places by him recovered. Then fell he upon the Countrey of *Elis*, where was much wealth to be gotten: for that the people were addicted to husbandry, and lived abroad in Villages, even such as were of the wealthier sort among them. So he came to the City of *Olympia*: where having done sacrifice to *Jupiter*, feasted his Captains, and refreshed his Army three dayes; He proceeded on to the spoil of those, that had taken pleasure to share with the *Ætolians*, in the spoils of their otherwise-deferving neighbours: Great abundance of Cattell he took, with great numbers of slaves, and much wealth of all sorts, such as could be found in rich villages. Then fell he in hand with the Towns, whereinto a great multitude of the Countrey people were fled. Some of these were taken at the first assault. Some yielded for fear. Some prevented the labour of his journey, by sending Embassadors to yield before he came. And some that were held with Garrisons against their wils, took courage to set themselves at liberty, by seeing the King so near: to whose Patronage thenceforth they betook themselves. And many places were spoiled by the *Ætolian* Captains; because they distrusted their ability to hold them. So the King won more Towns in the Countrey, than the sharpness of winter would suffer him to stay there dayes. Fain he would have fought with the *Ætolians*: but they made such hast from him, that he could not overtake them; till they had covered themselves within the Town of *Samium*, where they thought to have been safe. But *Philip* assaulted them therein so forcibly, that he made them glad to yield the place; obtaining license to depart with their lives and armies. Having performed so much in this expedition, the King reposed himself a while in *Megalopoli*; and then removed to *Argos*, where he spent all the rest of the winter.

Before the Kings arrivall in *Peloponnesus*, the *Lacedaemonians*, with *Lycurgus* their new King, had gotten somewhat in *Arcadia*, & threatened to do greater matters. But when they were admonished, by the calamity that fell upon the *Eleans*, of the danger hanging over their own heads; they quitted their winnings, and withdrew themselves home.

This

th his *Lycurgus* as he had no other right to the Kingdome of *Sparta*, than that which he should buy with money, so was he neither free from danger of conspiracies made against him; nor from those jealousies, with which Usurpers are commonly perplexed. There was one *Chilon*, of the Royall blood, that thinking himself to have best right unto the Kingdome, purposed to make way thereunto by massacre of his opposites; & afterwards to confirm himself by propounding unto the multitude such reformation of the State as was most popular: namely, by making an equal distribution of all the lands among the whole number of the Citizens, according to the ancient institution of that Commonwealth: to won to his party some two hundred men, with whom he fell upon the *Ephori*, as they were together at supper, and slew them all. Then went he to *Lycurgus* his house: who perceiving the danger, stole away and fled: It remained that he should give account of these doings to the people, and procure them to take part with him. But their minds being not harto predisposed; they so little regarded his goodly offers, as even whilst he was using his best persuasions, they were consulting how to apprehend him. *Chilon* perceived whereabout they went, and shifted presently away. So he lived afterwards among the *Achaean*s a banished man, & hated of his own people. As for *Lycurgus*, he returned home: & suspecting thenceforth all those of *Heracles* his race, found means to drive out his fellow-King young *Agepolis*; whereby he made himself Lord alone. His doings grew to be suspected in such sort, as once he should have been apprehended by the *Ephori*. But though his actions hitherto might have been defended; yet rather than to adventure himself into judgement, he chose to flee for a time, and sojourn among his friends the *Ætolians*. His well-known vehemency in opposition to the *Macedonians*, had procured unto him such good liking among the people, that in his absence they began to consider the weakness of their own fortunes against him; and pronouncing him innocent, recalled him home to his Estate. But in time following, he took better heed unto himself: not by amending his condition (for he grew a Tyrant, and was so acknowledged) but by taking order, that it should not be in the power of the Citizens to expell him when they listed. By what actions he got the name of a Tyrant, or at what time it was, that he chased *Agepolis* out of the City; I do not certainly find. Like enough it is, that his being the first of three Usurpers, which followed in order one after another, made him to be placed in the rank of Tyrants; which the last of the three very justly deserved. Whatsoever he was toward some private Citizens; in the war against *Philip*, he behaved himself as a provident man, and carefull of his Countreys good.

## S. II.

How *Philip* was misadvised by ill Counsellors; who afterwards wrought treason against him; and were justly punished. He invades the *Ætolians* a second time: and forceth them to sue for peace: which is granted unto them.

WHILEST the King lay at *Argos* devising upon his businessse for the year following, some ambitious men that were about him, studied so diligently for their own greatness, as they were like to have spoiled all that he took in hand. *Antigonus* *Dofon* had left unto *Philip* such Counsellors, as to him did seem the fittest men for governing of his youth. The chief of these was *Apelles*; that had the charge of his person, & also the ordering of his Treasures. This man, seeming to himself a great Politician, thought that he should do a notable piece of service to his Prince, if he could reduce the *Achaean*s unto the same degree of subjection, wherein the *Macedonians* lived: To bring this to passe; during the late Expedition he had caused some of the *Macedonians* to thrust the *Achaean*s out of their lodgings, and to strip them of the booty that they had gotten. Proceeding further, as occasion fell out, he was bold to chastise some of that Nation, causing his Ministers to take and whip them. If any of them offered (as there were some of them that could not refrain) to help their fellows; then he laid by the heels, and punished as Mutiners. Hereby he thought to bring it to passe by little and little, that they should be qualified with an habite of blind obedience; and shall nothing unjust that pleased the King. But these *Achaean*s were tenderly sensible in matters of liberty: whereof if they could have been contented to suffer any

little

little diminution, they needed not have troubled the *Macedonians* to help them in the war against *Cleomenes*. They bemoaned themselves unto old *Aratus*; and besought him to think upon some good order; that they might not be oppressed by degrees. *Aratus* forthwith dealt earnestly with the King; as in a matter more weighty than that itself might seem. The King bestowed gracious words upon those that had been avowed, and forbade *Apelles* to follow the course begun. Hereat *Apelles* was inwardly vexed; though he dissembled his choler for a time. He thought so well of his own Project, that he could not endure to lay it aside; being perhaps unable to do the King any valuable service; in business of other nature. He purposed therefore hereafter to begin at the head; since in biting at the tail, the fish had shot away from his mouth. It could not otherwise be than that among the *Achaens* there were some, who bore no hearty affection to *Aratus*. These he enquired out, and sending for them, entertained them with words of Court; promising to become their especial friend, and commend them unto the King. Then brake he his purpose with the King himself: letting him know, that as long as he continued to make much of *Aratus*, he must be silent to deal precisely with the *Achaens*, and as it were by Indenture, according to the letter of the Contract: whereas if he would be pleased, to give countenance unto those others whom he himself commended, then should the *Achaens*, and all other *Peloponnesians*, be quickly brought to conform themselves unto the duty of obedient Subjects. By such persuasions, he drew the King to be present at *Argium*, where the *Achaens* were to hold election of a new Prætor. There with much more labour, than would have been necessary in a business of more importance, the King by fair words and threatenings together, obtained so much, that *Eperatus*, a very insufficient man, but one of *Apelles* his new favourites, was chosen Prætor, in stead of one more worthy, for whom *Aratus* had laboured. This was thought a good introduction unto greater matters that should follow. The King from thence passed along by *Puræ* and *Dyma*, to a very strong Castle hold by the *Elæans*, which was called *Tichæ*. The garrison yielded it up for fear, at his first coming: whereof he was glad, for that he had an earnest desire to bestow it upon the *Dymæans*; as he presently did.

The King thought it strange, that all this while he heard of no messengers from the *Elæans*, to sue for peace. For at his departure out of their Countrey the last Winter, he had let loose one *Amphidamus* a Captain of theirs, that was his prisoner; because he found him an intelligent man, and one that undertook to make them forsake their alliance with the *Stoliens*, and joyne with him upon reasonable termes. This if they could be contented to do, he willed *Amphidamus* to let them understand, that he would render unto them freely all prisoners which he had of theirs; that he would defend them from all foreign invasion; and that they should hold their liberty entire, living after their own laws, without paying any manner of Tribute, or being kept under by any garrison. These conditions were not to be despised, if they had found credit as they might have done. But when *Philip* came to the Castle of *Tichæ*, and made a new invasion upon their Countrey: then began the *Elæans*, (that were not before over-hasty to believe such fair promises) to suspect *Amphidamus* as a Traitor; and one that was set on work for no other end, than to breed a mutual diffidence between them and the *Stoliens*. Wherefore they proposed to lay hands upon him, and send him prisoner into *Corinth*. But he perceived their intent, and got away to *Dyma*: in good time for himself, in better for *Aratus*. For the King (as was said) marvelling what should be the cause, that he heard no news from the *Elæans*, concerning the officers which he had made unto them by *Amphidamus*: *Apelles* his Counsellor thereby took occasion to supplant *Aratus*. He said that old *Aratus*, and his son together, had such devices in their heads, as tended little to the Kings good: And long of them he said it was, that the *Elæans* did thus hold out. For when *Amphidamus* was dismissed home, the two *Stoli* (the father and the son) had taken him aside and given him to understand, that so would be very prejudicial to all *Peloponnesians*, if the *Elæans* once became at the devotion of the *Macedonians*: And this was the true cause, why neither *Amphidamus* was very careful in doing this message, nor the *Elæans* in hearkning to the Kings offers. All this was a tale layd by *Apelles* himself, upon no other ground than his own malice: *Philip* had no sooner heard this tale, but in a great rage he sent for the two *Stoli*, and bid *Apelles* rehearse it over again to their faces. *Apelles* did so, and with a bold countenance

taking

talking to them as to men already convicted. And when he had said all the rest, ere either *Philip* or they spoke any word, He added this clause as it were in the Kings name: Since the King hath found you such ungratefull wretches; it is his meaning to hold a Parliament of the *Achaens*; and therein having made it known what ye are, to depart into *Macedon*, and leave you to your selves. Old *Aratus* gravely admonished the King; That whensoever he heard any accusation, especially against a friend of his own, or a man of worth, He should forbear a while to give credit, untill he had diligently examined the business. For such deliberation was Kingly, and he should never thereof repent him. At the present he said there needed no more, than to call in those that had heard his talk with *Amphidamus*, and especially him that had brought this goodly tale to *Apelles*. For it would be a very absurd thing, That the King should make himself the Author of a report in the open Parliament of *Achaia*, whereof there was none other evidence, than one mans *yes*, and anothers *no*. Hereof the King liked well; and said that he would make sufficient inquiry. So passed a few daies; wherein whilist *Apelles* delayed to bring in the proof which indeed he wanted, *Amphidamus* came from *Elis*, and told what had befallen him there. The King was not forgetfull, to examine him about the conspiracy of the *Stoli*; which when he found no better than a meer device against his honourable friends; he entered need them in joyning manner as before. As for his love to *Apelles*, though it was hereby somewhat cooled, yet by means of long acquaintance and daily employment, no remission therein could be discerned.

The unrefracted temper of *Apelles*, having with much vehemency brought nothing to pass, began (as commonly Ambition useth) to swell and grow venomous for want of his free motion. He betakes himself to his cunning again; and as before, being checkt in his doings with those of the vulgar, he had prepared a snare for the *Arati*: so failing of them, he thinks it wisdom to lay for the King himself, and for all at once which were about him. In such manner sometime, the spider thought to have taken the Swallow which drave away flies out of the chimney; but was carryed (we sayd all) into the Aire by the bird, that was too strong to be caught and held by the subtle workmanship of a Cob-web. Of the four that next unto *Apelles* were left by *Antigonus* in chief place about *Philip*, *Taurion*, his Lieutenant in *Peloponnesus*, and *Alexander* Captain of the Guard, were faithfull men, and such as would not be corrupted. The other two, *Leontius* Captain of the *Targessiers*, and *Megalæus* chief of the Secretaries, were easily won to be at *Apelles* his disposition. This politician therefore studied how to remove the other two from their places, and put some Creatures of his own into their rooms: Against *Alexander* he went to work the ordinary way, by calumination and privy detraction. But for the supplanting of *Taurion* he used more fineness; loading him with daily commendations, as a notable man of war, and one, whom for his many virtues the King might ill spare from being always in his presence. By such Art he thought to have removed him, as we say, out of Gods blessing into a narrow snare. In the mean season *Aratus* retired himself, and sought to avoid the dangerous friendship of the King by forbearing to meddle in affairs of State. As for the new Prætor of *Achaia*, lately chosen by such vehement instance of the King, He was a man of no dispatch, and one that had no grace with the people. Wherefore a great deal of time was lost, whilist *Philip* wanted both the money and the Corn; whereby he should have been furnished by the *Achaens*. This made the King understand his own error; which he wisely sought to reform betimes. He persuaded the *Achaens* to rejoin their Parliament from *Argium*, to *Sicyon*, the Town of *Aratus*. There he dealt with shrewd man and his persuading them to forget what was past; and laying all the blame upon *Apelles*, on whom therefore he intended to keep a more diligent eye. So by the travel of these worthy men, he easily obtained what he would of the *Achaens*: fifty talents they gave him out of hand, with great store of Souldiers and munition reserved. That so long as he himself in person followed the wars in *Peloponnesus*, he should receive ten talents a month. Being thus enabled, he began to provide shipping, that he might invade the *Stoliens*, *Elæans*, and *Lacedæmonians*, that were maritime people, at his pleasure; and hinder their excursions by Sea. He was not contented with this, but he sought to do more. He vexed *Apelles* beyond measure, to see things go forward so well without his help; even by the ministry of those whom he most hated. Wherefore he entered into conspiracy with *Leontius* and *Megalæus*: binding himself and them by Oath, to do and bring

bring to nought, as well as they were able, all that the King should take in hand. By so doing, they thought to bring it to passe, that very want of ability to do any thing without them; should make him speak them fair, and be glad to submit himself to their directions. The King it is like had stood in some awe of them whilest he was a child; and therefore their wife men perswaded themselves, that by looking big upon him; and imputing unto him all that fell out ill through their own misgovernment of his affairs, they might rule him as a child. Still, *Apelles* would needs go to *Chalcis*, there to take order for the provisions, which were to come that way out of *Macedon*: The other two staid behinde with the King, to play their parts; all more mindfull of their wicked oath, than of their duty.

His Fleet and Army being in a readinesse: *Philip* made countenance, as if he would have bent all his forces against the *Eleans*, to whose aid therefore the *Aetolians* sent men, little fearing that the mischief would have fallen, as soon after it did, upon themselves. But against the *Eleans* and those that came to help them, *Philip* thought it enough to leave the *Acheans*, with some part of his and their Mercenaries. He himself with the body of his Army putting to Sea, landed in the Ile of *Cephalonia*: whence the *Aetolians*, dwelling over against it, used to furnish themselves of shipping, when they went to rove abroad. There he besieged the Town of *Palau*, that had been very serviceable to the Enemy against him and his Confederates; and might be very usefull to him, if he could get it. Whilest he lay before this Town, there came unto him fifteen ships of war from *Serrailaidas*; and many good Souldiers, from the *Epirots*, *Acarnanians*, and *Messenians*. But the Town was oblate; and would not be terrified with numbers: It was naturally fenced on all parts save one, on which side *Philip* carryed a Mine to the wall, wherewith he overthrow two hundred foot thereof. *Leontius* Captain of the *Targetiers*, was appointed by the King to make the assault. But he, remembering his covenant with *Apelles*, did both wilfully forbear to do his best; and caused others to do the like. So the *Macedonians* were put to foile, and many slain, not of the worst Souldiers; but such as had gotten over the breach, and would have carried the Town: If the Treason of their Captain, and some by him corrupted, had not hindered the victory. The King was angry with this, but there was no remedy; and therefore he thought upon breaking up the siege. For it was easier unto the Towns-men to make up the gap in their wall, than for him to make it wider. Whilest he stood thus perplexed, and in vain what courie to take the *Messenians* and *Acarnanians* lay hard upon him, each of them industrious to draw him into their own Countrey. The *Messenians* alleged, that *Ulysses* was busie in wasting their Countrey: upon whom the King might come unawares in one day; the *Eleans* windes which then blew, serving fitly for his Navigation. Hereto also *Leontius* perswaded; who considered that those windes, as they would easily carry him thither, so would they detain him there perforce (blowing all the Dog-days); and make him spend the Summer to small or no purpose. But *Ulysses* gave better counsel, and prevailed: he shewed how unfitting it were, to let the *Aetolians* over-run all *Thessaly* again; and some part of *Macedon*, whilest the King withheld his Army farre off to seek small adventures. Rather, he said that the time now served well to carry the war into *Aetolia*: since the Prætor was gone thence labouring on roving, with the one half of their strength. As for *Ulysses*, he was not strong enough to do much harm in *Peloponnesus*; and it might suffice, if the *Acheans* were appointed to make head against them. According to this advice, the King set sail for *Corinth*, and enters the Bay of *Ambracia*, which divided the *Aetolians* from *Acarnania*. The *Acarnanians* were glad to see him on their borders; and joynd with him as many of them as could bear arms, to help in taking vengeance upon their bad neighbours. He marched up into the in-land Countreys, and taking some places by the way, which he filled with Garrisons to assure his Retreat; he pushed on to *Thermum*, which was the Receptacle of the *Aetolians*, and fittest place of defence in all extremities. The Countrey round about was a barren fastness, environed with rocky Mountains of very narrow steep, and difficult ascent. There did the *Aetolians* use to hold all their chief meetings, their Fairs, their election of Magistrates, and their solemn Games. There also they used to be how the most precious of their goods; as in a place of greatest security. This opinion of the natural strength, had made them careless in looking unto it. When *Philip* therefore had overcome the bad way, there was nothing else to do than to take spoil

whereof

whereof he found such plenty, that he thought the pains of his journey well recompensed. So he loaded his Army: and consuming all that could not be carried away, forgot not to raze a goodly Temple, the chief of all belonging unto the *Aetolians*; in remembrance of their like courtesie, shewed upon the Temples of *Dium* and *Dadona*. This burning of the Temple, might (questionlesse) more for the Kings honour have been forborne. But perhaps he thought, as *Monsieur du Gourgues* the French Captain told the *Spaniards* in *Florida*, That they which had no faith, needed no Church. At his return from *Thermum*, the *Aetolians* laid for him: which that they would do, he beleevd before; and therefore was not taken unawares. Three thousand of them there were that lying in ambush, fell upon his skirts: but he laid a Counter-ambush for them, of his *Illyrians*, who staying behinde the rest, did set upon the backs of the *Aetolians*, whilest they were busily charging in Rear the Army that went before. So with slaughter of the enemy, he returned the same way that he came: and burning down those places that he had taken before, as also wasting the Countrey round about him, he safely carried all that he had gotten aboard his fleet. Once the *Aetolians* made countenance of fight, issuing out of *Straits* in great bravery. But they were beaten home faster than they came, and followed to their very gates.

The joy of this victorie's expedition being every way compleat, and not deformed (as commonly happens) by any sinister accident, it pleased the King to make a great feast unto all his friends and Captains. Thither were invited among the rest *Leontius*, with his fellow *Megalas*. They came because they could not choole: but their heavy looks argued, what little pleasure they took in the Kings prosperity. It grieved them to think, that they should be able to give no better account unto *Apelles*, of their hindering the Kings businesse; since *Apelles* himself, as will be shewed anon, had played his own part with a most mischievous dexterity. Finding *Aratus* on the way home to his Tent: they fell to reviling him, throwing stones at him, so that they caused a great uprore; many running in (as happens in such cases) to take part with the one or the other. The King sending to inquire of the matter, was truly informed of all that had passed. Which made him send for *Leontius* and his fellows. But *Leontius* was gotten out of the way: *Megalas*, and another with him, came. The King began to rate them for their disorder: and they, to give him froward answers: in so much, as they said at length, That they would never give over, till they had rewarded *Aratus* with a mischief as he deserved. Hereupon the King committed them to ward. *Leontius* hearing of this, comes boldly to the King, with his *Targetiers* at his heels: and with a proud grace demanded, who it was that had dared to lay hands upon *Megalas*, yea and to cast him into prison? Why said the King, it was even I. This resolute answer, which *Leontius* had not expected, made him depart both sad and angry; seeing himself out-frowned, and not knowing how to remedy the matter. Shortly after *Megalas* was called forth to his answer, and was charged by *Aratus* with many great crimes. Among which were, The hinderance of the Kings victory at *Piles*, and the Compact made with *Apelles*: matters no lesse touching *Leontius*, that stood by as a looker on, than *Megalas* that was accused. In conclusion, the presumptions against him were so strong, and his answers thereto so weak, that he, and *Crinon* one of his fellows, were condemned in twenty Talents: *Crinon* being remanded back to prison; and *Leontius* becoming Bail for *Megalas*. This was done upon the way home-wards, as the King was returning to *Corinth*.

*Philip* dispatched well a great deal of businesse this year. For as soon as he was at *Corinth*, he took in hand an Expedition against the *Lacedæmonians*. These and the *Eleans* had done what harm they could in *Peloponnesus*, whilest the King was absent. The *Acheans* had opposed them as well as they could; with ill successe, yet so as, they hindered them from doing such harm as else they would have done. But when *Philip* came, he over-ran the countrey about *Lacedæmon*: & was in a manner at the gates of *Sparta*, ere men could well believe that he was returned out of *Aetolia*. He took not in this Expedition any Cities, but made great waste in the fields: and having beaten the enemy in some skirmishes, carried back with him to *Corinth* a rich booty of cattell, slaves, and other Countrey spoil. At *Corinth* he found attending him, Embassadors from the *Rhodians* and *Chians*, that requested him to set *Greece* at quiet, by granting peace unto the *Aetolians*. They had gracious audience: and he willed them to deal first with the *Aetolians*, who if they would make the same request, should not finde him unreasonable. The

*Aetolians*

*Ætoli*ans had sped ill that year: neither saw they any likely hopes for the years following. The Army that they had sent forth to waste *Thessaly* and *Macedon*, found such opposition on the way; that not daring to proceed, it returned home without bringing anything to effect. In the mean season they had been grievously afflicted, as before it shewed, by *Philip* in the centre of their own Country. All *Greece* and *Macedon* was up in arms against them, and their weak Allies the *Eleans* and *Lacedæmonians*. Neither was it certain, how long the one or other of these their *Peloponnesian* friends should be able to hold out, since they were not strong enough to keep the field, but had already suffered those miseries of war, which by a little continuance would make them glad, each to seek their own peace, without regard of their Confederates. Wherefore the *Ætoli*ans readily entertained this negotiation of Peace: and taking truce for thirty daies with the King, dealt with him by intercession of the same Embassadors, to intreat his presence at a Diet of their nation, that should be held at *Rhimm*; whither if he would vouchsafe to come, they promised that he should finde them conformable to any good reason.

While these things were in hand, *Leontius* and *Megalæas* thought to have terrified the King, by raising sedition against him in the Army. But this device proved to no good effect. The souldiers were easily & quickly incensed against many of the Kings friends, who were said to be the cause, why they were not rewarded with so much of the booty, as they thought to belong of right unto them. But their anger spent it self in a noise, and breaking open of doors, without further harm done. This was enough to inform the King (who easily pacified his men with gentle words) that some about him were very false. Yea the Souldiers themselves, repenting of their intolence, desired to have the Authors of the tumult sought out, and punished according to their deserts. The King made shew as if he had not cared to make such inquisition. But *Leontius* and *Megalæas* were afraid, lest the matter would soon come out of it self to their extrem danger. Wherefore they sent unto *Apelles*, the Head and Architect of their treason; requesting him speedily to repair unto *Corinth*, where he might stand between them and the Kings displeasure. *Apelles* had not all this while been wanting to the business, undertaken by him and his treacherous companions. He had taken upon him, as a man that had the Kings heart in his own hand: and thereby was he grown in such credit, that all the Kings Officers in *Macedon* and *Thessaly* addressed themselves unto him, and received from him their dispatch in every business. Likewise the *Greeks* in all their flattering Decrees, took occasion to magnifie the vertue of *Apelles*, making slight mention (only for fashion sake) of the King: who seemed no better than the Minister and Executioner of *Apelles* his will and pleasure. Such was the arrogance of this great man, in setting himself out unto the people: but in managing the Kings affairs, he made it his special care, that money and all things needfull for the publique service, should be wanting. Yea he enforced the King, for very need; to sell his own Plate and household vessels: thinking to resolve these and all other difficulties, by only saying, *Sir, he ruled wholly by me, and all shall be as you would wish.* Hereinto if the King would give assent, then had this Politician obtained his hearts desire. Now taking his journey from *Chalcis* in the Isle of *Eubœa*, to the City of *Corinth* where *Philip* then lay: he was fetched in with great pomp and royalty, by a great number of the Captains and Souldiers; which *Leontius* and *Megalæas* drew forth to meet him on the way. So entering the City with a goodly train, he went directly to the Court, and towards the Kings chamber. But *Philip* was well aware of his pride, and had vehement suspicion of his falshood. Wherefore one was sent to tell him, that he should wait a while, or come another time, for the King was not now at leisure to be spoken with. It was a pretty thing, that such a check as this made all his attendants forsake him, as a man in disgrace; in such sort, that going thence to his lodging, he had none to follow him save his own Pages. After this, the King vouchsafed him now and then some slender graces: but in consultations, or other matters of privacy, he used him not at all. This taught *Megalæas* to look to himself, and run away betimes. Hereupon the King sent forth *Taurion* his Lieutenant of *Peloponnesus*, with all the King's force to some piece of service, but indeed of purpose to apprehend *Leontius* in the absence of his followers. *Leontius* being taken, dispatched away a messenger presently to his Targettiers, to signify what was befallen him: and they forthwith sent unto the King in his behalf. They made request, That if any other thing were objected against him, he might not be called

called forth to triall before their return: as for the debt of *Megalæas*, if that were all the matter, they said they were ready to make a purse for his discharge. This affection of the souldiers made *Philip* more hasty then else he would have been, to take away the Traitors life. Neither was it long, ere letters of *Megalæas* were intercepted, which he wrote unto the *Ætoli*ans; vilifying the King with opprobrious words, and bidding them not to hearken after peace, but to hold out a while, for that *Philip* was even ready to sink under the burden of his own poverty. By this the King understood more perfectly the falshood, not onely of *Megalæas*, but of *Apelles*; whose cunning head had laboured all this while to keep him so poor. Wherefore he sent one to pursue *Megalæas* that was fled to *Thebes*. As for *Apelles*, he committed both him, his son, and another that was in ward with him, to prison; wherein all of them shortly ended their lives. *Megalæas* also, neither daring to stand to triall, nor knowing whither to flee, was weary of his own life; and slew himself about the same time.

The *Ætoli*ans, as they had begun this war upon hope of accomplishing what they listed in the Nonage of *Philip*: so finding that the vigour of this young Prince tempered with the cold advice of *Aratus*, wrought very effectually toward their overthrow; they grew very desirous to make an end of it. Nevertheless, being a turbulent Nation, and ready to lay hold upon all advantages, when they heard what was happened in the Court, the death of *Apelles*, *Leontius*, and *Megalæas*, together with some indignation thereupon conceived by some of the Kings Targettiers, they began to hope anew, that these troubles would be long lasting, and thereupon brake the day appointed for the meeting at *Rhimm*. Of this was *Philip* nothing sorry. For being in good hope thoroughly to tame this unquiet Nation; he thought it much to concern his own honour, that all the blame of the beginning and continuing the War should rest upon themselves. Wherefore he willed his Confederates to lay aside all thought of peace, and to prepare for War against the year following; wherein he hoped to bring it to an end. Then gratified he his *Macedonian* Souldiers, by yielding to let them winter in their own Country. In his return homeward, he called into judgement one *Ptolomy*, a companion with *Apelles* and *Leontius* in their Treasons: who was therefore condemned by the *Macedonians*; and suffered death. These were the same *Macedonians*, that lately could not endure to hear of *Leontius* his imprisonment; yet now they think the man worthy to die that was but his adherent. So vain is the confidence, on which Rebels use to build, in their favour with the Multitude.

During his abode in *Macedon*, *Philip* won some bordering Towns, from which the *Dardani*ans, *Ætoli*ans, and other his ill neighbours, were accustomed to make rodes into his Kingdome: when he had thus provided for safety of his own; the *Ætoli*ans might well know what they were to expect. But there came again Embassadors from the *Rhodi*ans and *Chians*, with others from *Ptolomy* King of *Egypt*, and from the City of *Bizantium*, re-continuing the former solicitation about the peace. This fashion had been taken up in matters of *Greece*, ever since the Kings that reigned after *Alexander*, had taken upon them to set the whole Country at liberty. No sooner was any Province or City in danger to be oppressed and subdued by force of war, but presently there were found Intercessors, who pitying the effusion of *Greekish* blood, would importune the stronger to relinquish his advantage. By doing such friendly offices in time of need, the Princes and States abroad sought to bind unto them those people, that were howsoever weak in numbers, yet very good souldiers. But hereby it came to passe, that the more forward sort, especially the *Ætoli*ans, whose whole Nation was addicted to falshood and robbery, durst enter boldly into quarrels with all their neighbours: being well assured that if they had the worst, the *Love of Greece*, would be sufficient to redeem their quiet. They had, since the late Treaty of Peace, done what harm they could in *Peloponnesus*: but being beaten by the *Acheans*, and standing in fear to be more soundly beaten at home, they desired now, more earnestly than before, to make an end of the War as soon as they might. *Philip* made such answer unto the Embassadors, as he had done the former year; That he gave not occasion to the beginning of this War, nor was at the present afraid to continue it, or unwilling to end it: But that the *Ætoli*ans, if they had a desire to live in rest, must first be dealt withall, to signify plainly their determination, whereto himself would return such answer as he should think fit.

Philip had at this time no great liking unto the Peace, being a young Prince, and in hope to increase the honour which he daily got by the War. But it happened in the midst of this Negotiation, that he was advertised by letters out of Macedonia, what a notable victory Hannibal had obtained against the Romans in the battell at Thrasymene. These letters he communicated unto Demetrius Pharius: who greatly encouraged him to take part with Hannibal: and not to sit still, as an idle beholder of the Italian War. Hereby he grew more inclinable than before unto Peace with the Ætolians: which was concluded shortly in a meeting at Napaetus. There did Agelans an Ætolian make a great Oration: telling, how happy it was for the Greeks, that they might at their own pleasure dispute about finishing War between themselves, without being molested by the Barbarians. For when once either the Romans or Carthaginians had subdued one the other; it was not to be doubted, that they would forthwith look Eastward, and seek by all means to set footing in Greece. For this cause he said it were good, that their Country should be at peace within it self: and that Philip, if he were desirous of War, should lay hold on the opportunity, now fitly serving to enlarge his Dominion, by winning somewhat in Italy.

Such advice could the Ætolians then give, when they stood in fear of danger threatening them at hand: but being soon after weary of rest, as being accustomed to enrich themselves by pillage, they were so far from observing and following their own good counsell, that they invited the Romans into Greece, whereby they brought themselves and the whole Country (but themselves before any other part of the Country) under servitude of strangers. The Condition of this Peace was simple, That every one should keep what they held at the present, without making restitution, or any amends for dammages past.

## §. III.

Philip, at the persuasion of Demetrius Pharius, enters into League with Hannibal against the Romans. The tenour of the League between Hannibal and Philip.

THIS being agreed upon: the Greeks betook themselves to quiet courses of life; and Philip to prepare for the business of Italy, about which he consulted with Demetrius Pharius. And thus passed the time away, till the great battell of Canne: after which he joyned in league with Hannibal, as hath been shewed before. Demetrius Pharius bore great malice unto the Romans; and knew no other way to be avenged upon them, or to recover his own lost Kingdom, than by procuring the Macedonians under him, in a manner wholly guided by his counsell, to take part with their enemies. It had otherwise been far more expedient for Philip, to have supported the weaker of those two great Cities against the more mighty. For by so doing, he should perhaps have brought them to peace upon some equal terms; and thereby, as did Hiero, a far weaker Prince, have both secured his own Estate, and caused each of them to be desirous of chief place in his friendship. The issue of the counsell which he followed, will appear soon after this. His first quarrell with the Romans; the trouble which they and the Ætolians did put him to in Greece; and the Peace which they made with him for a time, upon such Conditions that might easily be broken, have been related in another place, as belonging unto the second Punick War. Wherefore I will onely here set down the tenour of the League between Him and Carthage; which may seem not unworthy to be read, if onely in regard of the form it self then used: though it had been over-long to have been inserted into a more busie piece.

THE

# The Oath and Covenants between HANNIBAL General of the Carthaginians, and XENOPHONES, Embassadour of PHILIP King of Macedon.

THIS is the League ratified by oath, which Hannibal the General, and with him Mago, Myrcal, and Barmocal, as also the Senators of Carthage that are present, and all the Carthaginians that are in his Army, have made with Xenophanes the son of Cleomachus Athenian, whom King Philip the son of Demetrius hath sent unto us, for himself, and the Macedonians, and his Associates: Before Jupiter, and Juno, and Apollo: before the Gods of the Carthaginians, Hercules and Tolous: before Mars, Triton, Neptune: before the Gods accompanying Arms, the Sun, the Moon, and the Earth: before Rivers and Meadows, and Waters: before all the Gods that have power over Carthage: before all the Gods that rule over Macedonia, and the rest of Greece: before all the Gods that are Presidents of War, and present at the making of this League. Hannibal the General hath said, and all the Senators that are with him, and all the Carthaginians in his Army: Be it agreed between Us and Us, that this Oath stand for friendship and loving affection, that We become friends, familiar, and brethren; Upon Covenant, that the safety of the Lords the Carthaginians, and of Hannibal the General, and those that are with him, and of the Rulers of Provinces of the Carthaginians, using the same Laws, and of the Uticans, and as many Cities, and Nations: as obey the Carthaginians, and of the Soldiers & Associates, and of all Towns and Nations, with which we hold friendship in Italy, Gaul, and Liguria, & with whom we shall hold friendship, or make alliance hereafter in this Region; be preserved by King Philip and the Macedonians, and such of the Greeks as are their Associates. In like manner shall King Philip and the Macedonians, and other the Greeks his Associates, be saved and preserved by the Carthaginians, Armies, and by the Uticans, and by all Cities and Nations that obey the Carthaginians, and by their Associates and Soldiers; and by all Nations and Cities in Italy, Gaul, and Liguria, that shall give Alliance, or shall hereafter joyn with Us in Italy. We shall not take Counsell one against the other, nor deal fraudulently one with the other. With all readinesse and good will, without deceit or subtlety, We shall be enemies unto the enemies of the Carthaginians, excepting those Kings, Towns, and Havens; with which We have already league and friendship: We shall be enemies to the enemies of King Philip, excepting those Kings, Cities, and Nations, with which we have already league and friendship: The War that We have with the Romans, have it also with them, untill the Gods shall give Us a new and happy end. We shall aid, and assist those things whereof we have need, and shall do according to the Covenants between Us and the Gods shall not give unto Tow and Us their help in this War against the Romans, and their Associates; then if the Romans offer friendship, We shall make friendship: We shall give them to be partakers of the same friendship, With Condition, That they shall not bring us any War upon Tow: Neither shall the Romans be Lords over the Centaurs, nor over those of Apollonia, nor Dyrrhachium, nor over Pharus, nor Dimally, nor the Rhetians, nor over any of the Romans Dominions. But if the Romans (after such peace made) shall make War upon Tow or Us, We will succour one another in that War, as neither shall have need. The same shall be observed in War made by any other, excepting those Kings, Cities, and Nations, with whom we hold already league and friendship. To this League if We or they shall add or detract, such addition or detraction shall be made by our common consent.



## §. III.

How Philip yielded to his naturall vices, being therein soothed by Demetrius Pharius. His desire to tyrannize upon the free States his Associates: With the troubles into which he thereby fell, whilst he bore a part in the second Punic War. He poisoneth Aratus: and great hateful in the Achæans:

Hitherto Philip had carried himself as a vertuous Prince. And though with more commendation of his wisdom, he might have offered his friendship to the Romans, that were like to be oppressed, than to the Carthaginians, who had the better to hand: yet this his meddling in the Punic War, proceeded from a royall greediness of minde, with a desire to secure and increase his own estate, adding therewithall reputation to his Country. But in this business he was guided (as hath been said) by Demetrius Pharius: who, looking thoroughly into his nature, did accommodate himself to his desires: and thereby shortly governed him as he listed. For the vertues of Philip were not indeed such as they seemed. He was lustfull, bloody, and tyrannicall: desirous of power to do what he listed, and not otherwise listening to do what he ought, than so far forth, as by making a fair shew he might breed in men such good opinion of him, as should help to serve his turn in all that he took in hand. Before he should buse himself in Italy, he thought it requisite in good policy, to bring the Greeks that were his Associates, under a more absolute form of subjection. Hereunto Apelles had advised him before: and he had liked reasonably well of the course. But Apelles was a boyishorous Counsellor, and one that referring all to his own glory, thought himself deeply wronged, if he might not wholly have his own way, but were driven to await the Kings opportunity at other times. Demetrius Pharius could well be contented to observe the Kings humours, and guided, like a Coach-man, with the reins in his hand, those affections which himself did only seem to follow. Therefore he grew daily more and more in credit: so as, without any manner of contention, he supplanted Aratus, which the violence of Apelles could never do.

There arose about these times a very hot Faction among the Messenians, between the Nobility and Commons: their vehement thoughts being rather diverted (as happens often after a forreign War) unto domestick objects, than allayed and reduced unto a more quiet temper. In proceſse of no long time, the contention among them grew so violent, that Aratus was irritated to compound the differences. He was glad of this; resolving to settle the matter, that they should not henceforth strive any more about their Government: for that he would assume it wholly to himself. At his coming thither, he found them busied among them to make all friends, after a better manner than agreed with his own secret purpose. Wherefore he consulted not with this reverend old man, but talked in private with such of the Messenians as teared unto him. He asked the Governors, what they meant to stand thus disputing: and whether they had not Laws to bind the insolence of the unruly Rabble. Contrariwise, in talking with the heads of the popular Faction, he said it was strange, that they being so many, would suffer themselves to be opposed by a few; as if they had not hands to defend themselves from Tyrants. Thus whilst each of them presumed on the Kings assistance, they thought it best to go boundly to work: that he were gone that should countenance their divisions. The Governors therefore would have apprehended some seditionous Citizens, that were they said, the stirres up of the multitude unto sedition. Upon that occasion, the people took arms: and running upon the Nobility and Magistrates killed or maimed, almost two hundred. Philip thought, it seems, that it would be easier to win the obedience, when the Dogs their guardians were slain. But his falsehood and double dealing was immediately found out. Neither did the younger Aratus forbear to tell him of it in publick, with very bitter and disgracefull words. The King was angry at this. But having already done more than was commendable, or excusable, and yet further intending to take other things in hand wherein he should need the help and countenance of his best friends; he was content to smother his displeasure, and make as fair weather as he could. He led old Aratus aside by the hands, and went up into the Castle of Ithome, that was over Messene. There he pretended to do sacrifice: and sacrifice he did. But it was his purpose to keep the place to his own use:

use; for that it was of notable strength; and would serve to command the further parts of Peloponnesus, as the Citadel of Carinith, which he had already, commanded the entrance into that Country. Whilst he was therefore sacrificing, and had the entrance of the beast delivered into his hands, as was the manner, he showed them to Aratus, and gently asked him, whether the tokens that he saw therein did signify, that he being now in possession of this place, he should quietly go out of it, or rather keep it to himself. He thought perhaps, that the old man would have soothed him a little; were it only for desire to make amends for the angry words newly spoken by his son. But as Aratus would doubtfull what to answer, Demetrius Pharius gave this yardstick: *If thou be a Soothsayer, thou mayst go thy wayes; and let slip this good advantage, as thou be a King, thou must not neglect the opportunity, but hold the Ox by both his horns.* Thus he spake; resembling Ithome and Acrocorinth unto the two horns of Peloponnesus. Yet would Philip needs hear the opinion of Aratus: who told him plainly, That it were well done to keep this place, if it might be kept without breach of his faith unto the Messenians. But if by leaving upon Ithome, he must lose all the other Castles that he held, and especially the strongest Castle of all that was left unto him by Antigonus, which was his credit; then were it far better to depart with his souldiers, and keep men in duty, as he had done hitherto, by their own good wills, than by fortifying any strong places against them, to make them of his friends become his enemies.

To this good advice, Philip yielded at the present: but not without some dislike, henceforth growing between him and the Aratis, whom he thought more forward than befemed them, in contradicting his will. Neither was the old man desirous at all to deal any longer in the Kings affairs, or be inward with him. For as he plainly discovered his tyrannous purposes, so likewise he perceived, that in referring to his house, he had been dishonest with his sons wife. He therefore staid at home: where a good leisure he might repent, that in despite of Cleomenes, his own Country-man, and a temperate Prince, he had brought the Macedonians into Peloponnesus. But Philip made a Voyage out of Peloponnesus into Epirus, wherein Aratus refused to bear him company. In this journey he found by experience, what Aratus had lately told him. That dishonest counsells are not so profitable in deed, as in appearance. The Aratis were his followers and dependants; and so they purposed to continue. But he would needs have them so to remain, whether they purposed it or not. Wherefore to make them the more obnoxious unto his will, he seized upon their Town of Oricum, and laid siege to Apollonia; having no good colour of these doings; but thinking himself strong enough to do what he listed, and not seeing whence they should procure friends to help them. Thus in stead of settling the Country, as his intended Voyage into Italy required; he kindled a fire in it which he could never quench, until it had laid hold on his own Palace. Whilst he was thus labouring to binde the hands that should have fought for him in Italy, M. Valerius the Roman came unto those parts; who not only maintained the Epirots against him, but procured the Aratis to break the Peace, which they had lately made with him.

Thus began that War; the occurrences whereof we have related before, in the place whereto it belonged. In managing whereof, though Philip did the offices of a good Captain: yet when leisure served, he made it apparent that he was a vicious King. He had not quite left his former desire, of oppressing the liberty of the Messenians; but made another journey into their Country, with hope to deceive them as before. They understood him better now than before; and therefore were not hasty to trust him too far. When he saw that his cunning would not serve, he went to work by force; and calling them his enemies, invaded them with open War. But in that War he could do little good; perhaps, because none of his Confederates were desirous to help him in such an enterprise. In this attempt upon Messene, he lost Demetrius Pharius; that was his Counsellor and Flatterer, not his Perverter, as appears by his growing daily more naught in following times. The worse that he sped, the more angry he waxed against those that seemed not to favour his injurious doings. Wherefore, by the ministry of Taurion, his Lievtenant, he poisoned old Aratus; and shortly after that, he poisoned also the younger Aratus: hoping that these things would never have been known, because they were done secretly, and the poisoners themselves were more sure than manifest in operation. The Sicyonians, and all the people of Achæia, decreed unto

*Aratus* more than humane honours, as *Sacrifices*, *Hymns*, and *Processions*, to be celebrated every year twice, with a *Priest* ordained unto him for that purpose; as was accustomed unto the *Herææ*, or men, whom they thought to be translated into the number of the gods: Hereunto they are said to have been encouraged by an Oracle of *Apollon*; which is like enough to have been true, since the help of the *Divell* is never failing to the increase of *Idolatry*.

The loving memory of *Aratus* their Patron; and singular Benefactor, could not but work in the *Acheans* a marvellous dislike of that wicked King which had made him thus away. He shall therefore hear of this hereafter, when they better dare to take compass for themselves. At the present, the murder was not generally known or believed: so neither were they in case of subsist, without his help that had committed it. The *Ætolians* were a most outrageous people, great darers, and shamelesse robbers. With these the *Romans* made a league whereof the Conditions were soon divulged, especially that main point, concerning the division of the purchase which they should make, namely, That the *Ætolians* should have the Country and Towns; but the *Romans* the Spoil, and carry away the people to sell for slaves. The *Acheans*, who in times of greater quiet, could not endure to make straight alliance with the *Ætolians*, as knowing their unenvill disposition; were much the more averse from them, when they perceived how they had called in the *Barbarians* (for such did the *Greeks* account all other Nations except their own) to make havoc of the Country. The same consideration moved also the *Lacedæmonians* to stand off a while, before they would declare themselves for the *Ætolians*, whose friendship they had embraced in the late war. The industry therefore of *Philip*, and the great care which he seemed to take of the *Acheans* his Confederates, sufficed to retain them: especially, at such time, as their own necessity was thereto concurrent. More particularly he obliged unto himself the *Dymeans* by an inestimable benefit: recovering their Town, after it had been taken by the *Romans* and *Ætolians*; and redeeming their people wheresoever they might be found, that had been carried away captive, and sold abroad for slaves. Thus might he have blotted out the memory of offences past; if the malignity of his naturall condition had not otherwhiles broken out, and given men to understand, that it was the Time, and not his Vertue, which caused him to make such a show of goodnesse. Among other foule acts, whereof he was not ashamed; He took *Polycratia* the wife of the younger *Aratus*, and carried her into *Macedon*; little regarding how this might serve to confirm in the people their opinion, that he was guilty of the old mans death. But of such faults he shall be told, when the *Romans* make war upon him the second time: for, of that which happened in this their first Invasion; I hold it superfluous to make repetition.

## §. V.

Of *Philopœmen* General of the *Acheans*; and *Machanidas*, Tyrant of *Lacedæmon*. A battell between them, wherein *Machanidas* is slain.

IT happens often, that the decease of one eminent man discovers the vertue of another. In this place of *Aratus* there stood up *Philopœmen*: whose notable valour, and great skill in Arms, made the Nation of the *Acheans* redoubtable among all the *Greeks*; and careless of such protection, as in former times they had needed against the violence of their neighbours. This is that *Philopœmen*: who being then a young man, and having no command, did especiall service to *Antigonus* at the battell of *Sellasia* against *Cleomenes*. Thence forward untill now he had spent the most part of his time in the Isle of *Crete*: the Inhabitants whereof being a valiant people, and seldom or never at peace between themselves; he bettered among them his knowledge, and practice in the Art of War. At his return home, he had charge of the Horse: wherein he carried himself so strictly, travelling with all the Cities of the Confederacy to have his followers well mounted, and armed at all pieces: as also he so diligently trained them up in all exercise of service, that he made the *Acheans* very strong in that part of their forces. Being afterward chosen *Prætor* or General of the Nation, he had no lesse care to reform their military discipline throughout, whereby his Country might be strong enough to defend itself, and not any longer (as in former times) need to depend upon the help of others. He perswaded the *Acheans* to cut off their vain

expende

expense of bravery, in apparell, household-stuffe, and curious fare, and to bestow that cost upon their Armes: wherein by how much they were the more gallant, by so much were they like to prove the better Souldiers, and futable in behaviour, unto the pride of their furniture. They had served hitherto with little light Bucklers, and slender Darts, to cast afar off: that were usefull in skirmishing at some distance, or for surprises, or sudden and hasty Expeditions, whereto *Aratus* had been most accustomed. But when they came to handle strokes, they were good for nothing, so long as they were wholly driven to rely upon the courage of their Mercenaries. *Philopœmen* altered this: causing them to arme themselves more weightily, to use a larger kind of shield, with good swords, and strong pikes, fit for service at hand. He taught them also to fight in close order, and altered the form of their embattelling: not making the Files so deep as had been accustomed, but extending the Front, that he might use the service of many hands.

Eight moneths were spent of that year, in which he first was *Prætor* of the *Acheans*; when *Machanidas* the Tyrant of *Lacedæmon* caused him to make trial, how his souldiers had profited by his discipline. This *Machanidas* was the successor unto *Lycorgus*, a man more violent than his fore-goer. He kept in pay a strong Army of Mercenaries: and he kept them not only to fight for *Sparta*, but to hold the City in obedience to himselfe. Wherefore it behoved him not to take part with the *Acheans*, that were favourers of liberty; but to strengthen himself by friendship of the *Ætolians*: who, in making alliances, took no further notice of vice or vertue, than as it had reference to their own profit. The people also of *Lacedæmon*, through their inveterate hatred unto the *Argives*, *Acheans*, and *Macedonians*; were in like sort (all or most of them) inclinable to the *Ætolian* Faction. Very unwisely. For in seeking to take revenge upon those, that had lately hindered them from getting the Lordship of *Peloponnesus*; they hindered themselves thereby from recovering the Mastery of their own City. This affection of the *Spartans*, together with the regard of his own security, and no small hope of good that would follow, suffered not *Machanidas* to be idle; but alwaies made him ready to fall upon his neighbours backs, and take of theirs what he could, whilst they were enforced, by the greater necessity, to turne face another way. Thus had he often done, especially in the presence of *Philip*: whose sudden coming into those parts, or some other opposition made against him, had usually made him faile of his attempts. At the present he was stronger in men, than were the *Acheans*, and though his own men better Souldiers than were theirs.

Whilst *Philip* therefore was busied else-where, he entred the Country of the *Man-tinians*: being not without hope to doe as *Cleomenes* had done before him; yea and perhaps to get the \* Lordship of *Peloponnesus*, as having stronger friends and weaker opposition, than *Cleomenes* had found. But *Philopœmen* was ready to entertain him at *Man-tinea*; where was fought between them a great battell. The Tyrant had brought into the field upon Carts a great many of engines, wherewith to beat upon the Squadrons of his enemies, and put them in disorder. To prevent this danger, *Philopœmen* sent forth his light armature a good way before him; so as *Machanidas* was faine to doe the like. To second these, from the one and the other side came in continuall supply till at length all the Mercenaries, both of the *Acheans* and of *Machanidas*, were drawn up to the fight: being so far advanced, each before their own Phalanx, that it could no other-wise be discerned which pressed forward, or which recoyled, than by rising of the dust. Thus were *Machanidas* his engines made unserviceable, by the interposition of his own men; in such manner as the Cannon is hindered from doing execution, in most of the battels fought in these our times. The Mercenaries of the Tyrant prevailed at length: not only by their advantage of number, but (as *Polybius* well observeth) by surmounting their opposites in degree of courage; wherein usually the hired Souldiers of Tyrants exceed those that are waged by free States. For as it is true, that a free people are much more valiant than they which live oppressed by Tyranny, since the one, by doing their best in fight, have hope to acquire somewhat beneficiall to themselves, whereas the other do fight (as it were) to assure their own servitude: so the Mercenaries of a Tyrant, being made partakers with him in the fruits of his prosperity, have as good cause to maintain his quarrell as their own; whereas they that serve under a free State, have no other motive to doe manfully, than their bare stipend. Farther than this, when a free State hath gotten the victory, many companies (if not all) of foreign Auxiliaries are

\* Excerpt. d  
Polyb. lib. 11.  
Plut. in vita  
Philopœmen.

Polyb. lib. 11.

are presently cast; & therefore such good fellows, will not take much pains to bring the war to an end. But the victory of a Tyrant, makes him stand in need of more such helpers; because that after it he doth wrong to more, as having more subjects; and therefore stands in fear of more, that should seek to take revenge upon him. The stipendiaries therefore of the *Acheans*, being forced to give ground, were urged so violently in their retreat by those of *Machanidas*, that shortly they betook themselves to flight; & could not be staid by any persuasions of *Philopemen*, but ran away quite beyond the battell of the *Acheans*. This disaster had been sufficient to take from *Philopemen* the honour of the day; had he not wisely observed the demeanour of *Machanidas*, and found in him that error which might restore the victory. The Tyrant with his Mercenaries gave chase to unto those that fled: leaving behind him in good order of battell his *Lacedemonians*; whom he thought sufficient to deal with the *Acheans*, that were already disheartened by the flight of their companions. But when this his rashness had carried him out of sight, *Philopemen* advanced towards the *Lacedemonians* that stood before him. There lay between them athwart the Country a long ditch, without water at that time; and therefore passable (as it seemed) without much difficulty, especially for Foot. The *Lacedemonians* adventured over it, as thinking themselves better fouldiers than the *Acheans*; who had in a manner already lost the day. But hereby they greatly disordered their own Battell; and had no sooner the foremost of them recovered the further bank, than they were stoutly charged by the *Acheans*, who drave them headlong into the ditch again. Their first ranks being broken, all the rest began to shrink: so as *Philopemen* getting over the ditch, easily chased them out of the Field. *Philopemen* knew better how to use his advantage, than *Machanidas* had done. He suffered not all his Army to disband and follow the chase, but retained with him a sufficient strength, for the custody of a bridge that was over the ditch, by which he knew, that the Tyrant must come back. The Tyrant with his Mercenaries returning from the chase, looked very heavily when he saw what was fallen out. Yet, with a lusty troupe of Horse about him, he made towards the bridge: hoping to find the *Acheans* in disorder; and to set upon their backs as they were carelessly pursuing their Victory. But when he and his Company saw *Philopemen* ready to make good the bridge against them, then began every one to look, which way he might shift for himself. The Tyrant, with no more than two in his company, rode along the ditch side; and searched for an easie passage over. He was easily discovered by his purple Cassock, and the costly trappings of his Horse. *Philopemen* therefore leaving the charge of the bridge unto another, coasted him all the way as he rode; and falling upon him at length in the ditch it self, as he was getting over it, slew him there with his own hand. There died in this Battell on the *Lacedemonians* side about four thousand: and more than four thousand were taken prisoners. Of the *Achean* Mercenaries, probable it is, that the losse was not greatly cared for; since that War was at an end, and for their money they might hire more when they should have need.

## §. VI.

Philip having peace with Rome, and with all Greece, prepares against Asia. Of the Kings of Pergamus, Cappadocia, Pontus, Paphlagonia, Bithynia, and their Lingers. Of the Galatians.

BY this victory the *Acheans* learned to think well of themselves. Neither needed they indeed after a while (such was their discipline and continuall exercise) to account themselves in matter of war inferior to any, that should have brought against them no great odds of number. As for the *Macedonian*, he made no great use of them. But when he had once concluded peace with the *Romans* and *Etolians*, he studied how to enlarge his Dominion Eastward; since the fortune of his friends the *Carthaginians* declined in the West. He took in hand many matters together, or very nearly together, and some of them not honest: wherein if the *Acheans* would have done him service, they must, by helping him to oppress others that never had wronged him, have taught him the way how to deal with themselves. He greatly hated *Attalus* King of Pergamus, who had joyned with the *Romans* and *Etolians* in war against him.

This

This *Attalus*, though a King, was scarce yet a Nobleman, otherwise than as he was ennobled by his own, and by his Fathers vertue. His fortune began in *Phileterus* his Uncle: who being grieved by reason of a mishap which he had when he was a child, grew afterwards thereby to be the more esteemed: as great men in those times repoted much confidence in Eunuchs, whose affections could not be obliged unto wives or children. He was entertained into the family of *Docimus*, a Captain following *Antigonus* the first; and after the death of *Antigonus*, he accompanied his Master, that betook himself to *Lysimachus* King of Thrace. *Lysimachus* had a good opinion of him; and put him in trust with his money and accounts: But when at length he stood in fear of this King, that grew a bloody Tyrant; he fled into *Asia*, where he seized upon the Town of *Pergamus*, and nine thousand talents belonging to *Lysimachus*. The town and money, together with his own service, he offered unto *Selucus* the first, that then was ready to give *Lysimachus* battell. His offer was kindly accepted, but never performed; for that *Selucus*, having slain *Lysimachus*, died shortly after himself, before he made use of *Phileterus* or his money: So this Eunuch still retained *Pergamus*, with the Country round about it; and reigned therein twenty years as an absolute King. He had two brethren: of which the elder is said to have been a poor Carter; and the younger perhaps not much better, before such time they were raised by the fortune of this Eunuch. *Phileterus* left his Kingdom to the elder of these, or to the son of the elder, called *Eumenes*. This *Eumenes* enlarged his Kingdom; making his advantage of the diffention between *Seleucus*, *Calpurnius* and *Antiochus Hierax*, the sons of the second *Antiochus*. He fought a battell with *Hierax*, near unto *Sardes*, and won the victory. At which time, to animate his men against the *Gauls* that served under his Enemy, he used a pretty device. He wrote the word "Victory" upon the hand of his Soothsayer, in such colours as would easily come off; and when the hot liver of the beast that was sacrificed, had clearly taken the print of the letters, He published this unto his Army as a Miracle, plainly shewing that the gods would be assistant in that Battell.

After this Victory, he grew a dreadful enemy to *Selucus*; who never durst attempt to recover from him, by War, the Territory that he had gotten and held. Finally, when he had reigned two and twenty years, he died by a surfeit of over-much drink, and left his Kingdom to *Attalus*, of whom we now treat; that was son unto *Attalus* the youngest brother of *Phileterus*. *Attalus* was an undertaking Prince, very bountifull, and no less valiant. By his own proper forces he restored his friend *Ariarathes* the Cappadocian into his Kingdom, whence he had been expelled. He was grievously molested by *Acheans*: who setting up himself as King against *Antiochus the Great*, reigned in the West of *Asia*. He was besieged in his own City of *Pergamus*; but by the help of the *Romans*, a Nation of the *Gauls*, whom he called over out of *Thrace*, he recovered all that he had lost. When these *Gauls* had once gotten footing in *Asia*, they never wanted employment; but were either entertained by some of the Princes reigning in those quarters, or interposed themselves, without invitation; and found themselves work in quarrels of their own making. They caused *Prusias* King of *Bithynia* to cease from his war against *Bizantium*. Whereunto when he had consented; they nevertheless within a while after invaded his Kingdom. He obtained against them a great victory; and used it with great cruelty, sparing neither age nor sex. But the swarm of them increasing, they occupied the Region about *Hellepont*: where, in seating themselves, they were much beholding unto *Attalus*. Nevertheless, presuming afterwards upon their strength, they forced their Neighbour Princes and Cities to pay them tribute: in the sharp exaction whereof, they had no more respect unto *Attalus*, than to any that was otherwise deserv'd of them. By this they compelled him to fight against them: and being victorious, compelled them to contain themselves within the bounds of that Province, which took name from them in time following, and was called *Galatia*. Yet continued they still to oppress the weakest of their neighbours; and to fill up the Arms of those that could best hire them.

The Kings reigning in those parts, were the posterity of such, as had saved themselves and their Provinces in the foolish reign of the *Perseus*; or in the busy times of *Alexander*, and his *Macedonian* followers. The *Cappadocians* were very ancient. For the first of their line had married with *Atissa*, after unto the great King *Cyrus*. Their Country was taken from them by *Petiscos*; as is shewed before. But the son of that King,

\* Jul. Front. Stat. l. i. c. ii.

King, whom *Perdiccas* crucified, espying his time while the *Macedonians* were at civil wars among themselves; recovered his Dominion, and passed it over to his off-spring. The Kings of *Pontus* had also their beginning from the *Persian* Empire; and are said to have issued from the royall house of *Achæmenes*. The *Paphlagonians* derived themselves from *Pylæmenes*, a King that assisted *Priamus* at the war of *Troy*. These, applying themselves unto the times, were alwayes conformable unto the strongest. The Ancestors of *Prusias* had begun to reign in *Bythinia*, some few generations before that of the great *Alexander*. They lay somewhat in the *Macedonians* way: by whom therefore, having other employment, they were the lesse molested. *Calanus*, one of *Alexander's* Captains, made an expedition into their Country, where he was vanquished. They had afterwards, to do with a Lievtenant of *Antigonus*, that made them somewhat more humble. And thus they shuffled, as did the rest, untill the reign of *Prusias*, whom we have already sometimes mentioned.

## §. VII.

The Town of *Cios* taken by Philip, at the instance of *Prusias*, King of *Bythinia*, and cruelly destroyed. By this and the like actions, Philip grows hateful to many of the Greeks; and is warred upon by *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, and by the *Rhodians*.

*Prusias*, as a neighbour King, had many quarrels with *Attalus*; whose greatness he suspected. He therefore strengthened himself, by taking to wife the daughter of *Philip*; as *Attalus*, on the contrary side, entred into a strict Confederacy with the *Ælians*: *Rhodians*, and other of the *Greeks*. But when *Philip* had ended his *Æolian* war, and was devising with *Antiochus* about sharing between them two the Kingdoms of *Egypt*, wherein *Ptolomy Philopater*, a friend unto them both, was newly dead; and had left his son *Ptol. Epiphanes*, a young child, his heir: the *Bythinian* entreated this his Father-in-law to come over into *Asia*, there to win the Town of the *Ciani*, and bestow it upon him. *Prusias* had no right unto the Town, nor just matter of quarrel against it: but it was fitly feared for him, and therewithall rich. *Philip* came, as one that could not well deny to help his Son-in-law. But hereby he mightily offended no small part of *Greece*. Embassadors came to him whilst he lay at the siege, from the *Rhodians*, and divers other States: intreating him to forsake the enterprise. He gave dilatory, but otherwise gentle answers: making shew as if he would condescend to their request, when he intended nothing lesse. At length he got the Town: where, even in presence of the Embassadors, of whose sollicitation he had seemed so regardfull, he omitted no part of cruelty. Hereby he rendered himself odious to his neighbours, as perfidious and cruell Prince. Especially his fact was detested of the *Rhodians*, who had made vehement intercession for the poor *Ciani*: and were advertised by Embassadors of purpose sent unto them from *Philip*, that, howsoever it were in his power to win the Town as soon as he listed, yet in regard of his love to the *Rhodians*, he was contented to give it over. And by this his clemency, the Embassadors said, that he would manifest unto the world what slanderous tongues they were, which noised abroad such reports, as went of his fallhood and oppression. Whilst the Embassadors were declaiming at *Rhodes* in the Theater to this effect; there came some that made a true relation of what had hapned: shewing that *Philip* had sacked and destroyed the Town of *Cios*, and, after a cruell slaughter of the Inhabitants, had made slaves of all that escaped the sword. If the *Rhodians* took this in great despight, no lesse were the *Ælians* inflamed against him: since they had sent a Captain to take charge of the Town, being warned before by his doings at *Lyfsmachia* and *Chalcedon* (which he had withdrawn from their Confederacy to his own) what little trust was to be repoted in the faith of this King. But most of all others was *Attalus* moved, with consideration of the *Macedonians* violent ambition, and of his own estate. He had much to lose; and was not without hope of getting much, if he could make a strong party in *Greece*. He had already, as a new King, followed the example of *Alexander's* Captains, in purchasing with much liberality the love of the *Athenians*; which were notable Trumpeters of other mens vertue, having lost their own. On the friendship of the *Ælians* he had cause to presume; having bound them unto him by good offices, many and great, in their late

war

war with *Philip*. The *Rhodians* that were mighty at Sea, and held very good intelligence with the *Egyptians*, *Syrians*, and many other Princes and States, he easily drew into a streight alliance with him, by their hatred newly conceived against *Philip*.

Upon confidence in these his friends, but most of all, in the ready assistance of the *Rhodians*, *Attalus* prepared to deal with the *Macedonian* by open war. It had been unseasonable to procrastinate, and expect whereto the doings of the enemy tended; since his desire to fasten upon *Asia* was manifest, and his fallhood no lesse manifest, than was such his desire. They met with him shortly not far from *Chios*, and fought with him a battell at Sea: wherein though *Attalus* was driven to run his own ship on ground, hardly escaping to land: though the Admirall of the *Rhodians* took his deaths wound: and though *Philip* after the battell took harbor under a Promontory, by which they had sought, so that he had the gathering of the wracks upon the shore: Yet forasmuch as he had suffered far greater losse of ships and men, than had the enemy; and since he durst not in few dayes after put forth to Sea, when *Attalus* and the *Rhodians* came to brave him in his Port; the honour of the victory was adjudged to his enemies. This notwithstanding, *Philip* afterwards besieged and won some towns in *Caria*: whether only in a bravery, and to despight his opposites: or whether upon any hopeful desire of conquest, it is uncertain. The stratagem, by which he won *Prinassians*, is worthy of noting. He attempted it by a mine: and finding the earth so stony, that it resisted his work, he neverthelesse commanded the Pioners to make a noise under ground; and secretly in the night time he raised great mounds about the entrance of the mine, to breed an opinion in the besieged, that the work went marvellously forward. At length he sent word to the Town-men, that by his undermining, two acres of their wall stood only upon wooden props, to which if he gave fire, and entred by a Breach, they should expect no mercy. The *Prinassians* little thought, that he had fetcht all his earth and rubbish by night a great way off, to raise up those heaps which they saw; but rather that all had been extracted out of the mine. Wherefore they suffered themselves to be out-faced, and gave up the Town as lost, which the enemy had no hope to win by force. But *Philip* could not stay to settle himself in those parts. *Attalus* and the *Rhodians* were too strong for him at Sea, and compelled him to make haste back into *Macedon*; whither they followed him all the way in manner of pursuit.

## §. VIII.

The Romans, after their Carthaginian war, seek matter of quarrell against Philip. The Athenians upon slight cause, proclaim war against Philip; moved thereto by *Attalus*; whom they flatter. *Philip* wins divers Towns; and makes peremptory answer to the Roman Embassadors. The furious resolution of the *Abydeni*.

These *Asiaticque* matters, which no way concerned the Romans, yet served well to make a noise in *Rome*; and fill the peoples heads, if not with a desire of making war in *Macedon*, at least with a conceit that it were expedient so to doe. The Roman Senate was perfectly informed of the state of those Eastern Countries; and knew that there was none other Nation than the *Greeks*, which lay between them and the Lordship of *Asia*. These *Greeks* were factious, and seldom or never at peace. As for the *Macedonians*; though length of time, and continuall dealings in *Greece* ever since the reigns of *Philip* and *Alexander*, had left no difference between him and the Naturalls: yet most of them abhorred his Dominion, because he was originally forsooth a *Barbarian*: many of them hated him upon ancient quarrels: and they that had been most beholding unto him, were neverthelesse weary of him, by reason of his personall faults. All this gave hope, that the affaires of *Greece* would not long detain the Roman Armies: especially since the divisions of the Country were such, that every petty Estate was apt to take counsell apart for it self, without much regarding the generality. But the poore Commonalty of *Rome* had no great affection to such a chargeable enterprise. They were already quite exhausted, by that grievous war with *Hannibal*, where in they had given by Loan to the Republike, all their mony: neither had they as yet received, neither did they receive untill fifteene or sixteene years after this, their whole sum back again. That part of payment also which was already made, being not in present mony, but much of it in Land: it behoved them to rest a while; and bestow the more

more diligence in tilling their grounds, by how much they were the less able to bestow cost. Wherefore they took no pleasure to hear, that *Attalus* and the *Rhodiens* had sent Embassadors to sollicite them against *Philip*, with report of his bold attempts in *Asia*; or that *M. Aurelius*, their Agent in *Greece*, had sent Letters of the same tenour to the Senate, and magnified his intelligence, by setting out the preparations of this dangerous enemy, that solicited not only the Towns upon the Continent, but all the Islands in those Seas, visiting them in person, or sending Embassadors, as one that meant shortly to hold war with the *Romans* upon their own ground. *Philip* had indeed no such intent: neither was he much too strong, either of himself, or by his alliance in *Greece*, to be resisted by *Attalus* and the *Rhodiens*; especially with the help of the *Ætolians* their good friends, and (in a manner) his own professed enemies. But such things must be published abroad, if onely to predispose men unto the war, and give it the more honest colour.

*Philip* was a man of ill condition; and therefore could not thrive by intermeddling in the affaires of those that were more mighty than himself. He was too unskillful, or otherwise too unapt, to retain his old friends: yet would he needs be seeking new enemies. And he found them such, as he deserved to have them: for he offered his help to their destruction, when they were in misery, and had done him no harm. It behoved him therefore, either to have strained his forces to the utmost in making war upon them; or in desisting from that injurious course, to have made amends for the wrongs so past, by doing friendly offices of his own accord. But he, having broken that League of peace, which is of all other the most naturall, binding all men to offer no violence willingly, unless they thinke themselves justly provoked; was afterwards too fondly perswaded, that he might well be secure of the *Romans*, because of the written Covenants of peace between him and them. There is not any forme of oath, whereby such Articles of peace can be held inviolable, save onely \* by the water of *Styx*, that is, by necessity: which whilst it binds one party, or both unto performance making it appear, that he shall be a loser who starts from the Conditions; it may so long (and so long onely) be presumed, that there shall be no breach. Till *Hannibal* was vanquished, the *Romans* never hearkened after *Philip*: for necessity made them let him alone. But so when once they had peace with *Carthage*; then was the River of *Styx* dried up: and then could they swear as \* *Mercurie* did in the Comedy, by their own selves, even by their good swords, that they had good reason to make war upon him. The voyage of *Sopater* into *Africa*, and the present war against *Attalus*, were matter of quarrell as much as needed: or if this were not enough; the *Athenians* helped to furnish them with more.

The *Athenians*, being at this time Lords of no more than their own barren Territory, took state upon them nevertheless, as in their ancient fortune. Two young Gentlemen of *Acaruania* entering into the Temple of *Ceres*, in the dayes of Initiation, (wherein were delivered the mysteries of Religion, or rather of idolatrous superstition, vainly said to be available unto felicity after this life) discovered themselves by some impertinent questions, to be none of those that were initiated. Hereupon they were brought before the officers: and though it was apparent, that they came into the place by meer error, not thinking to have therein done amiss; yet, as it had been for some haynous crime, they were put to death. All their Country-men at home took this in ill part; and sought to revenge it as a publike injury, by war upon the *Athenians*. Procuring therefore of *Philip* some *Macedonians* to help them, they entred into *Attica*: who wasted it with fire and sword; & carried thence a great booty. This indignity stirred up the high-minded *Athenians*; and made them thinke upon doing more, than they had ability to performe. All which at the present they could doe, was to send Embassadors to king *Attalus*; gratulating his happy success against *Philip*, and intreating him to visit their City. *Attalus* was hereto the more willing, because he understood that the *Roman* Embassadors, having over *Greece* for matter of intelligence, had a purpose to be there at the same time. So he went thither, accompanied, besides his own followers, with some of the *Rhodiens*. Landing in the *Piræus*, he found the *Romans* there, with whom he had much friendly conference: they rejoicing that he continued enemy to *Philip*; and he being no less glad, when he heard of their purpose to renew the war. The *Athenians* came out of their City, all the Magistrates, Priests, and Citizens, with their wives and children, in as solemne a pomp as they could devise, to meet and honour the King. They enter-

\* Sir Francis Bacon de Jey. Vetreum.

\* Plaut. Amphitr.

thanked the *Romans* that were with him, in very loving manner: but towards *Attalus* himself they omitted no point of observance, which their flattery could suggest. At his first coming into the City, they called the people to Assembly: where they desired him to honour them with his presence, and let them hear him speak. But he excused himself, saying, That with an evil grace he should recount unto them those many benefits, which he studied to make them know what joye he bore them. Wherefore it was thought, that he should deliver in writing, what he would have to be pronounced: He did so. The points of his Declaration were; first, what he had willingly done for their sake; then, what had lately passed between him and *Philip*: lastly, an exhortation unto them, to declare themselves against the *Macedonians*, whilst he with the *Rhodiens* and the *Romans* were willing and ready to take their part: which if they now refused to do; he protested, that afterwards it would be vain to crave his help. There needed little intreaty: for they were as willing to proclaim the war, as he to desire it. As for other matters, they loaded him with immoderate honours: and obtained, That unto the ten Tribes, whereof the body of their Citizens consisted, should be added another, and called after his name; as if he were in part one of their Founders. To the *Rhodiens* they also decreed a Crown of Gold, in reward of their vertue; and made all the *Rhodiens* free Citizens of *Athen*.

Thus began a great noise of war, wherein little was left unto the *Romans* for their part; *Attalus* and the *Rhodiens* taking all upon them. But while these were vainly mispending the time, in seeking to draw the *Ætolians* to their party; that contrary to their old manner were glad to be at quiet; *Philip* won the Towns of *Maronea* and *Hellepont*; he laid siege unto *Abydos*; and won it, though he was faine to stay there long. The Town held out, rather upon an obstinate resolution; and hope of succour from *Attalus* and the *Rhodiens*, than any great ability to defend it self against so mighty an Enemy. But the *Rhodiens* sent thither onely one *Quadrivene* Gallio; and *Attalus* no more than three hundred men, far too weak an aid to make good the place. The *Roman* Embassadors wondered much at this great negligence of them that had taken so much upon them.

These Embassadors, *C. Claudius*, *M. Emilius*, and *P. Sempronius*, were sent unto *Ptolemy* Epiphane King of *Egypt*, to acquaint him with their victory against *Hannibal* and the *Carthaginians*; as also to thank him for his favour unto them shewed in that war; and to desire the continuance thereof, if they should need it against *Philip*. This *Egyptian* King was now in the third or fourth year of his reign, which (as his father *Philopater* had done before him) he began a very young boy. The courtier for which the *Romans* were to thank him; was, that out of *Egypt* they had lately been supplied with corn, in a time of extreme dearth; when the miseries of War had made all their own Provinces unable to relieve them. This message could not but be welcome to the *Egyptian*: since it was well known, how *Philip* and *Antiochus* had combined themselves against him, conspiring to take away his Kingdom. And therefore it might in reason be hoped, that he, or his Councell for him, should offer to supply the *Romans* with corn: since this their *Macedonian* Expedition concerned his Estate no less than theirs.

But as the errand was for the most part complementall; so had the Embassadors both leisure and direction from the Senate, to look unto the things of *Greece* by the way. Wherefore they agreed, that *M. Emilius* the youngest of them should step aside, and visit *Philip*, to trie if he could make him leave the siege of *Abydos*; which else he was like to carry. *Emilius*, coming to *Philip*, tells him, that his doings are contrary to the League that he had made with the *Romans*. For *Attalus* and the *Rhodiens*, upon whom he made war, were Confederate with *Rome*: and the Town of *Abydos*, which he was now besieging, had a kinde of dependancy upon *Attalus*. Hereto *Philip* answered, That *Attalus* and the *Rhodiens* had made war upon him: and that he did onely requite them with the like. Do you also (said *Emilius*) requite these poor *Abydens* with such sort of war, for any the like invasion by them first made upon you? The King was angry to hear himself thus taken short: and therefore he roundly made answer to *Emilius*, to his youth, Sir, and your beauty, and (above all,) your being a *Roman*, that *Abydos* shall not be unpunished. But I would wish ye to remember the League that ye have made with me, and to keep it: If ye do otherwise, I will make ye understand, that the Kingdom, and Name of *Macedon*



*Macedon* in matter of War, no lesse noble than the Roman. So he dismissed the Embassadors, and had the Town immediately yielded to his discretion. The people had entertained a resolution, to have died every one of them, and set their Town on fire; binding themselves hereto by a fearful oath, when *Philip* denied to accept them upon reasonable conditions. But having in desperate fight, once repelling him from the Breach, lost the greatest number of their Youth: it was thought meet by the Governors and Ancients of the City to change this resolution; and take such peace as could be gotten. So they carried out their Gold and Silver to *Philip*: about which whilst they were busie, the memory of their oath wrought so effectually in the younger sort; that, by exhortation of the Priests, they fell to murdering their women, children, and to themselves. Hereof the King had so little compassion, that he said, he would grant the *Abydeni* three dayes leisure to die: and to that end forbade his men to enter the town; or hazzard themselves in interrupting the violence of those mad fools.

## §. IX.

The Romans decree war against *Philip*, and send one of their Consuls into Greece, as it were in defence of the Athenians their Confederates. How poor the Athenians were at this time both in quality and estate.

His calamity of the *Abydeni*, was likened by the Romans unto that of the *Saguntines*: which indeed it neerly resembled; though Rome was not alike interested in the quarrell. But to help themselves with pretence for the War, they had found out another *Saguntum*, even the Citie of *Athens*: which if the *Macedonian* should win, then rested there no more to do, than that he should presently embarque himself for *Italy*, whither he would come, not as *Hannibal* from *Saguntum*, in five moneths, but in the short space of five dayes sailing. Thus *P. Sulpitius* the Consul told the multitude, when he exhorted them to make War upon *Philip*; which at his first propounding they had denied. The example of *Pyrrhus* was by him alledged; to shew, what *Philip*, with the power of a greater Kingdom, might dare to undertake: as also the fortunate voyage of *Scipio* into *Africa*; to shew the difference of making War abroad, and admitting it into the bowels of their own Country. By such arguments was the Commonalty of Rome induced to believe, that this War with the *Macedonian* was both just and necessary. So it was decreed: and immediately the same Consul halted away towards *Macedon*, having that Province allotted unto him before, and all things in a readinesse, by order from the Senate; who followed other Motives than the people must be acquainted with. Great thanks were given to the *Athenian* Embassadors, of their constancy (as was said) in not changing their faith at such times as they stood in danger of being besieged. And indeed great thanks were due to them, though not upon the same occasion. For the people of Rome had no cause to think it a benefit unto themselves; that any *Greek* Town, refusing to sue unto the *Macedonian* for peace, requested their help against him. But the Senate, intending to take in hand the Conquest of the Eastern parts, had reason to give thanks unto those, that ministered the occasion. Since therefore it was an untrue suggestion, That *Philip* was making ready for *Italy*: and since neither *Attalus*, the *Rhodians*, nor any other State in those quarters, desired the Romans to give them protection: these busie-headed *Athenians*, who falling out with the *Acarnanians*, and consequently with *Philip*, a matter of May-game, (as was shewed before) sent Embassadors into all parts of the World, even to *Italy* of Egypt, and to the Romans, as well as to *Attalus* and others their neighbours; must be accepted as cause of the War, and Authors of the benefit thence redounding.

Nevertheless as it loveth to fall out where the meaning differs from the pretence the doings of *P. Sulpitius* the Consul were such, as might have argued *Athens* to be the least part of his care. He failed not about *Peloponnesus*, but took the ready way to *Macedon*, and landing about the River of *Apfus*, between *Dyrrhacium* and *Apollonia*, there began the War. Soon upon his coming, the *Athenian* Embassadors were with him, and craved his help: whereof they could make no benefit whilst he was far from them. They bemoaned themselves as men besieged, and intreated him to deliver them.

them. For which cause he sent unto them *C. Claudius* with twenty Gallies, and a competent number of men: but the main of his forces he retained with him, for the prosecution of a greater designe. The *Athenians* were not indeed besieged: only some Ravens from *Chalcis*, in the Isle of *Eubœa*, and some bands of adventurers out of *Corinth*, used to take their ships, and spoil their fields, because they had declared themselves against King *Philip*, that was Lord of these two Towns. The robberies done by these Pyrats and Free-booters, were by the more eloquent than war-like *Athenians*, in this declining Age of their Fortune and Vertue, called a Siege. From such detriment the arrival of *Claudius*, and shortly after of three *Rhodian* Gallies, easily preserved them. As for the *Athenians* themselves, they that had been wont in ancient times to undertake the conquests of *Egypt*, *Cyprus*, and *Cicilia*; to make war upon the great *Persian* King, and to hold so much of *Greece* in subjection, as made them redoubtable unto all the rest; had now no more than three ships, and those open ones, not much better than long boats. Yet thought they not themselves a whit the worse men, but stood as highly upon the glory and vertue of their Ancestors, as if it had been still their own.

## §. X.

The Town of *Chalcis* in *Eubœa* taken and sacked by the Romans and their Associates, that lay in Garrison at *Athens*. *Philip* attempteth to take *Athens* by surprise: wasteth the Countrey about, and makes a journey into *Peloponnesus*. Of *Nabis* the Tyrant of *Lacedæmon*, and his wife. *Philip* offers to make war against *Nabis* for the *Acheans*. He returneth home through *Attica*, which he spoileth again: and provides against the Enemies. Some exploits of the Romans. Divers Princes joyn with them. Great labouring to draw the *Ætolians* into the war.

*Philip* returning home from *Abydos*, heard news of the Roman Consul his being about *Apollonia*. But ere he stirred forth to give him entertainment, or perhaps before he had well resolved, whether it were best a while to sit still, and trie what might be done for obtaining of peace, or whether to make opposition, and resist the Invaders with all his forces: he received advertisement from *Chalcis* of a grievous mishap there befallen him, by procurement of the *Athenians*. For *C. Claudius* with his Romans, finding no such work at *Athens* as they had expected, or was answerable to the fame that went abroad, purposed to do somewhat that might quicken the war; and make his own employment better. He grew soon weary of sitting as a Scar-crow, to save the *Athenians* grounds from spoile; and therefore gladly took in hand a business of more importance. The Town of *Chalcis* was very negligently guarded by the *Macedonian* Souldiers therein, for that there was no Enemy at hand: and more negligently by the Townsmen, who reposed themselves upon their Garrison. Hereof *Claudius* having advertisement, failed thither by night, for fear of being descried: and arriving there a little before break of day, took it by Scalado. He used no mercy: but slew all that came in his way: and wanting men to keep it, (unless he should have left the heartlesse *Athenians* to their own defence) he set it on fire; consuming the Kings Magazines of Corn, and all provisions for War, which were plentifully filled. Neither were he and his Associates contented with the great abundance of spoil which they carried aboard their ships, and with enlarging all those, whom *Philip*, as in a place of most security, kept there imprisoned: but to shew their despight and hatred unto the King, they overthrew and brake in pieces the Statues to him there erected. This done, they hasted away towards *Athens*: where the news of their exploit was like to be joyfully welcomed. The King lay then at *Demetrias*, about forty miles thence; whither when these tidings, or part of them, were brought him, though he saw what it was too late to remedy the matter; yet he made all haste to take revenge. He thought to have taken the *Athenians*, with their trusty friends, busie at work in ransacking the Town, and loading themselves with spoil: but they were gone before his coming. Five thousand light-armed foot he had with him, and three hundred horse; whereof leaving *Chalcis* onely a few to bury the dead, he marched from thence away speedily towards *Athens*: thinking it not impossible to take his enemies in the joy of their Victory, as full of negligence, as they had taken *Chalcis*. Neither had he much failed of his expectation, if a Foot-post that stood Scout for the City upon the borders, had not descried him.

him afar off, and swiftly carried word of his approach to *Athens*. It was mid-night when this Post came thither : who found all the Town asleep, as fearless of any danger. But the Magistrates, hearing his report, caused a trumpet out of their Citadell to sound the Alarm, and with all speed made ready for defence. Within a few hours *Philip* was there : who seeing the many lights, and other signes of busie preparation usall in such a case, understood that they had news of his coming ; and therefore willed his men to repose themselves till it were day. It is like, that the paucity of his followers did help well to animate the Citizens, which beheld them from the walls. Wherefore though *Claudius* were not yet returned (who was to fetch a compass about by sea, and had no cause of haste) yet having in the Town some mercenary Souldiers, which they kept off their own, besides the great multitude of Citizens ; they adventured to issue forth at a gate, whereto they saw *Philip* make approach. The King was glad of this ; reckoning all those his own, that were thus hardy. He therefore onely willed his men to follow his example, and presently gave charge upon them. In that night he gave singular proof of his valour : and beating down many of the Enemies with his own hands, drew them with great slaughter back into the City. The heat of his courage transported him further than discretion would have allowed, even to the very gate. But he retired without harm taking ; for that they which were upon the Towers over the gate, could not use their casting weapons against him, without much endangering their own people that were thronging before him into the City. There was a temple of *Hercules*, a 20 place of exercise, with a Grove, and many goodly Monuments besides, neer adjoining unto *Athens* : of which he spared none ; but suffered the rage of his anger to extend, even unto the sepulchres of the dead. The next day came the *Romans*, and some Companies of *Attalus* his men from *Egeus* ; too late in regard of what was already past : but in good time to prevent him of satisfying his anger to the full, which as yet he had not done. So he departed from thence to *Corinth*, and hearing that the *Achaeans* held a Parliament at *Aegoe*, he came thither to them unexpected.

The *Acheans* were devoting upon war : which they intended to make against *Nab* the Tyrant of *Lacedæmon* : who being started up in the room of *Macbanidas*, did greater mischief than that what went before. This Tyrant relied wholly upon his mercenaries : and of his subjects had no regard. He was a cruel oppressor ; a greedy extortioner upon those that lived under him ; and one that in his natural condition fell rankly of the Hangman. In these qualities, his wife *Apega* was very fitly matched with him, since his dexterity was no greater in spoiling the men, than hers in fleecing their wives ; whom the would never suffer to be at quiet, till they had presented her with all their jewels and apparel. Her husband was so delighted with her property, that he caused an Image to be made, lively representing her ; and apparelled it with such costly garments as she used to wear. But it was indeed an Engine, serving to torment men. Hereto he made use, when he meant to trie the virtue of his Rhetoric. For calling unto him some rich man, of whose money he was desirous, he would bring him into the room where this counterfeit *Apega* stood, and there use all his art of perswasion, to get what he desired, as it were by good will. If he could not so speed, was answered with excuses ; then took he the refractory denier by the hand, and told him, that perhaps his Wife *Apega* (who fate by in a Chair) could perswade more effectually. So he led him to the Image, that rose up and opened the arms, as it were for imbracement. Those arms were full of sharp iron nails, the like whereof was also sticking in the breasts, though hidden with her clothes : and herewith the griped the poor wretch, to the pleasure of the Tyrant, that laughed at his cruel death. Such, and worse (for he were long to tell all here that is spoken of him) was *Nab* in his government. In his dealings abroad he combined with the *Etolians*, as *Macbanidas* and *Lycorgus* had done so before him. By these he grew into acquaintance with the *Romans* : and was comprehended in the League which they made with *Philip*, at the end of their former War. Of *Philopemen* vertue he stood in fear ; and therefore durst not provoke the *Acheans*, as long as they had such an able Commander. But when *Cycliades*, a far worse Captain, was their Prætor, and all, or the greatest part of their Mercenaries were discharged ; *Philopemen* being also gone into *Crete*, to follow his beloved occupation of War ; then did *Nab* fall upon their Territory ; and waisting all the fields, made them distrust their own safety in the Towns.

### Against

Against this Tyrant the *Acheans* were preparing for War, when *Philip* came among them; and had let down what proportion of Souldiers every City of their Corporation should furnish out. But *Philip* willed them not to trouble themselves with the care of this business; forasmuch as he alone would ease them of this War, & take the burden upon himself. With exceeding joy and thanks they accepted of this kind offer. But then he told them, That, whilst he made War upon *Lacedaemon*, he ought not to leave his own Towns ungarded. In which respect he thought they would be pleased to send a few men to *Corinth*, and some Companies into the Isle of *Euboea*; that he might securely pursue the War against *Nabis*. Immediately they found out his device; in which was none other, than to engage their Nation in his War against the *Romans*. Wherefore their Prator *Cycliadas* made him answer, That their Laws forbade them to conclude any other matters in their Parliament, than those for which it was assembled. So passing the Decree, upon which they had agreed before, for preparing War against *Nabis*, he brake up the Assembly, with every mans good liking; whereas in former times, he had been thought no better than one of the Kings Parasites.

times, he had been thought no better than one of the Kings of Athens. Nevertheless he gathered up among them a few Voluntaryes; and so returned by Corinth back into Attica. There he met with *Philocrates* one of his Captains, that with two thousand men had been doing what harm he might unto the Countreie. With this addition of strength, he attempted the Caste of *Eleusine*, the Haven of *Pyræus*, and even the City of *Athens*. But the *Romans* made such haste after him by Sea, thrusting themselves into every of these places; that he could no more than wreak his anger upon those goodly Temples, with which the Land of *Attica* was at that time singularly beautified. So he destroyed all the works of their notable Artificers, wrought in excellent Marble; which they had in plenty of their own; or, having long ago been Masters of the Sea, had brought from other places, where best choice was found. Neither did he onely pull all down; but caused his men to break the very stones, that they might be unserviceable to their reparation. His losse at *Chalcis* being thus revenged upon *Athens*, he went home into *Macedon*; and there made provision, both against the *Roman* Conspott that lay about *Apollonia*; and against the *Dardaniens*, with other his bad neighbours, which were likely to infect him. Among his other cares he forgot not the *Attolians*; to whose Parliament, shortly to be held at *Nauplæus*, he sent an Embassage, requesting them to continue in his friendship. Thus was *Philip* occupied.

questing them to continue in his friendship. Thus was Philip occupied,  
*Sulpicius* the Roman Consul encamped upon the River of *Aplys*. Thence he sent  
forth *Apyllus* his Lieutenant, with part of the Army, to waste the borders of Macedonia.  
*Apyllus* took fundry Cattles and Towns; using such extremity of sword and fire at  
*Anipatria*, the first good Town which he won by force, that none durst afterwards  
make resistance, unless they knew themselves able to hold out. Returning towards  
the Consul with his spoil, he was charged in the Reer, upon the passage of a brook, by  
*Athenagoras* a Macedonian Captain: but the Romans had the better, and killing many  
of these enemies, took prisoners many more, to the increase of their booty, with  
which they arrived in safety at their Camp. The success of this Expedition, though  
it were not great, yet served to draw into the Roman friendship those that had for-  
merly no good inclination to the Macedonian. These were *Pleuratus*, the son of *Scerdilaidas*  
the Illyrian: *Aminander* King of the *Atbamanians*; and *Bato* the son of *Lougaris*, a  
Prince of the *Dardanians*. They offered their assistance unto the Consul, who thanked  
them: and said, That he would shortly make use of *Pleuratus* and *Bato*, when he entered  
into Macedonia: but that the friendship of *Aminander*, whose Country lay between the  
*Etolians* and *Theffaly*, might be perhaps available with the *Etolians*, to stir them up a-  
gainst Philip.

so joint *Philip*. So the present care was wholly set upon the *Ætolian* Parliament at hand. Thither came Embassadors from the *Macedonian, Roman, and Athenians*. Of which, the *Macedonian* spake first, and said: That as there was nothing fallen out, which should occasion the breach of peace between his Master and the *Ætolians*; so was it to be hoped, that they would not fuffer themselves, without good cause, to be carried away after other mens fancies. He prayed them to consider, how the *Romans* heretofore had made shew, as if their war in *Greece* tended only to the defence of the *Ætolians*, and yet notwithstanding had been angry, that the *Ætolians*, by making peace with *Philip*, had no longer

M m m m m 3

need of such their Patronage. What might it be that made them so busie, in obtruding their protection upon those that needed it not? Surely it was even the generall hatred, which these *Barbarians* bore unto the *Greeks*. For even after the same sort had they lent their help to the *Mamertines*; and afterwards delivered *Syracuse*, when it was oppressed by *Carthaginian* Tyrants, but now both *Syracuse* & *Messana*, were subject unto the *Rods* and Axes of the *Romans*. To the same effect he alledged many examples, adding, That in like sort it would happen to the *Ætoli*ans: who if they drew such masters into *Greece*, must not look hereafter to hold, as now, free Parliaments of their own, wherein to consult about War and Peace: the *Romans* would ease them of this care, and fend them such a Moderator, as went every year from *Rome* to *Syracuse*. Wherefore he concluded, that it was best for them, whilst as yet they might, and whilst one of them as yet could help the other, to continue in their League with *Philip*: with whom if at any time, upon light occasion, they hapned to fall out, they might as lightly be reconciled: and with whom they had three years ago made the peace which still continued; although that the very same *Romans* were then against it, who fought to break it now. It would have troubled the *Romans*, to frame a good answer to these objections. For the *Macedonian* had spoken the very truth, in shewing whereunto this their Patronage, which they offered with such importunity, did tend. Wherefore the *Athenians* were let on by them to speak next: who had store of eloquence, and matter of recrimination enough, to make *Philip* odious. These affirmed, that it was a great impudence in the *Macedonian* Embassadour, to call the *Romans* by the name of *Barbarians*: knowing in what barbarous manner his own King had, in few dayes past, made War upon the gods themselves, by destroying all their Temples in *Attica*. Herewithall they made a pitifull rehearsal of their own calamities: and said, that if *Philip* might have his will, *Ætolia*, and all the rest of *Greece*, should feel the same that *Attica* had felt; yea, that *Athen* itself, together with *Minerva*, *Jupiter*, *Ceres*, and other of the gods, were like to have felt, if the Walls and the *Roman* arms had not defended them.

Then spake the *Romans*: who excusing, as well as they could, their own oppression of all those, in whose defence they had heretofore taken Arms, went roundly to the point in hand. They said, that they had of late made War in the *Ætoli*ans behalf, and so that the *Ætoli*ans had without their consent made peace: whereof since the *Ætoli*ans must excuse themselves, by alledging that the *Romans*, being busied with *Carthage*, wanted leisure to give them aid convenient; so this excuse being now taken away, and the *Romans* wholly bent against their common Enemy, it concerned the *Ætoli*ans to take part with them in their war and victory, unless they had rather perish with *Philip*.

It might easily be perceived, that they which were so vehement, in offering their help ere it was desired, were themselves carried unto the War by more earnest motives, than a simple desire to help those friends, with whom they had no great acquaintance. This may have been the cause, why *Dorymachus* the *Ætoli*an Prætor shifted them off a while with a dilatory answer: though he told his Country-men, That, by reserving themselves, till the matter were inclined one way or other, they might afterwards take part with those that had the better fortune. His answer was, first, in general terms; That over-much haste was an enemy to good counsel: for which cause they must further deliberate, ere they concluded. But coming neerer to the matter in hand, he passed a Decree, That the Prætor might at any time call an Assembly of the States, and therein conclude upon this business; any Law to the contrary notwithstanding: whereas otherwise it was unlawful to treat of such affaires, excepting two of their great Parliaments, that were held at set times.

## §. XI.

The meeting of Philip with the Romans, and skirmishing with them on his borders. The *Ætoli*ans invade his Dominions, and are beaten home. Some doings of Attalus and the Roman Fleet.

*Philip* was glad to hear, that the *Romans* had sped no better in their sollicitation of the *Ætoli*ans. He thought them hereby disappointed in the very beginning, of one great help; and meant himself to disappoint them of another. His son *Perseus*, a very boy, was sent to keep the Streights of *Pelagonia* against the *Dardani*ans; having with him

him some of the Kings Councill, to govern both him and his Army. It was judged, as may seem, that the presence of the Kings son, how young soever, would both encourage his Followers, and terrifie the Enemies, by making them at least beleve, that he was not weakly attended. And this may have been the reason, why the same *Perseus*, a few years before this, was in like manner left upon the borders of *Ætolia* by his father; whom earnest business called thence another way. No danger of enemies being left on either hand: it was thought that the *Macedonian* Fleet under *Heraclides*, would serve to keep *Attalus*, with the *Rhodians* and *Romans*, from doing harm by Sea, when the Kings back was turned: who took his journey Westward against *Sulpicius* the Consul.

The Armies met in the Country of the *Deffaretii*, a people in the utmost borders of *Macedon* towards *Illyria*, about the Mountains of *Candavia*; that running along from *Hemus* in the North, untill they joyn in the South with *Pindus*, inclose the Western parts of *Macedon*. Two or three dayes they lay in sight the one of the other, without making offer of battell. The Consul was the first that issued forth of his Camp into the open field. But *Philip* was not confident in the strength which he had then about him; and therefore thought it better to send forth some of his light-armed Mercenaries, and some part of his horse, to entertain them with skirmish. These were easily vanquished by the *Romans*, and driven back into their Camp. Now although it was so, that the King was unwilling to hazard all at first upon a Cast, and therefore sent for *Perseus* with his Companies, to increase his own forces; yet being no less unwilling to lose too much in reputation; he made shew a day after, as if he would have fought. He had found the advantage of a place fit for ambush, wherein he bestowed as many as he thought meet of his Targettiers: and so gave charge to *Athenagoras*, one of his Captains, to provoke out the *Romans* to fight; infracting both him and the Targettiers, how to behave themselves respectively, as opportunity should fall out. The *Romans* had no mistrust of any ambush, having fought upon the same ground a day before. Wherefore perhaps they might have sustained some notable detriment, if the Kings directions had been well followed. For when *Athenagoras* began to fall back, they charged him so hotly, that they drave him to an hasty flight, and pursued him as hard as they were able. But the Captains of the Targettiers, not staying to let them run into the danger, discovered themselves before it was time; and thereby made frustrate the work, to which they were appointed. The Consul hereby gathered, that the King had some desire to trie the fortune of a battell: which he therefore presented the second time; leading forth his Army, and setting it in order, with Elephants in the front: a kinde of help which the *Romans* had never used before, but had taken these of late from the *Carthaginians*. Such are the alterations wrought by Time. It was scarce above fourscore yeers ere this, that *Pyrrhus* carried Elephants out of *Greece* into *Italy*, to affright the *Romans*, who had never seen any of those beasts before. But now the same *Romans* (whilst possibly some were yet alive, which had known that Expedition of *Pyrrhus*) come into *Macedon*, bringing Elephants with them: whereof the *Macedonians* and *Greeks* have none. *Philip* had patience to let the Consul brave him at his Trenches: wherein he did wisely; for the *Roman* had greater need to fight, than he. *Sulpicius* was unwilling to loose time: neither could he without great danger, lying so neer the Enemy, that was strong in horse, send his men to fetch in corn out of the fields. Wherefore he removed 8. miles off: presuming that *Philip* would not adventure to meet him on even ground; and so the more boldly he suffered his Forragers to over-run the Country. The King was nothing sorry of this; but permitted the *Romans* to take their good pleasure: even till their presumption, and his own supposed fear, should make them carelesse. When this was come to passe, he took all his horse, and light-armed foot, with which he occupied a place in the mid-way, between the Forragers and their Camp. There he stayed in covert with part of his forces, to keep the passages that none should escape. The rest he sent abroad the Country, to fall upon the stragglers: willing them to put all to the sword, and let none run home with news to the Camp. The slaughter was great: and those which escaped the hands of them that were sent abroad to scowre the fields, lighted all or most of them upon the King and his companies in their flight: so as they were cut off by the way. Long it was ere the Camp had news of this. But in the end there escaped some: who though they could not make any

any perfect relation how the matter went: yet by telling what had hapned to themselves, raised a great multitude. *Sulpicius* hereupon sends forth all his horse, and bids them help their fellows where they saw it needfull: He himself with the Legions followed. The companies of horse divided themselves accordingly as they met with advertisements upon the way, into many parts: not knowing where was most of the danger. Such of them as lighted upon *Philips* Troops, that were canvassing the field, took their task where they found it: But the main bulk of them fell upon the King himself. They had the disadvantage; as coming fewer, and unprepared, to one that was ready for them. So they were beaten away; as their fellows also might have been, if the King had well berthought himself, and given over in time. But while, not contented with such an harvest, he was too greedy about a poor gleaning; the Roman Legions appeared in sight: which emboldened their horse to make a re-charge. Then the danger apparent, enforced the *Macedonians* to look to their own safety. They ran which way they could: and (as men that lie in wait for others, are seldom heedfull of that which may befall themselves) to escape the Enemy, they declined the fairest way; so as they were plunged in Marishes and Bogs, wherein many of them were lost. The Kings horse was slain under him: and there had he been cast away, if a loving subject of his had not alighted, mounted him upon his own horse; and delivered him out of perill, at the expence of his own life, that running on foot was overtaken and killed.

In the common opinion *Philip* was charged with improvident rashness; & the Consul, with as much dulness, for his dayes service. A little longer stay would have delivered the King from these enemies without any blow: since when all the fields about them were wasted, they must needs have retired back to the Sea. On the other side, it was not thought unlikely, That if the *Romans* following the King, had set upon his Camp, at such time as he fled thither, half amazed with fear of being either slain or taken, they might have won it. But that noble Historian, *Livie*, (as is commonly his manner) hath judiciously observed, That neither the one, nor the other, were much to blame in this dayes work. For the main body of the Kings Army lay safe in his Camp; and could not be so astonished with the losse of two or three hundred horse, that it should therefore have abandoned the defence of the Trenches. And as for the King himself, he was so verified, that *Pleuratus* the *Illyrian*, and the *Dardaniens*, were fallen upon his Country; when they found the passage thereto open, after *Perseus* was called away from custody of the Streights. This was it which made him adventure to do somewhat betimes; that he might let the *Romans* going the sooner, and afterwards look unto his troublesome neighbours. In consideration of this, *Philip* was desirous to cleer himself of the *Romans*, as soon as he might. And to that purpose he sent unto the Consul; requesting a day of truce for buriall of the dead. But in stead of so doing, he marched away by night, and left fires in his Camp to beguile the enemy, as if he had not stirred out of the place. *Sulpicius*, when he heard of the Kings departure, was not slow to follow him. He overtook the *Macedonians* in a place of strength, which they had fenced (for it was a woody ground) by cutting down trees, and laying them athwart the way where it was most open. In making of such places good, the *Macedonian Phalanx* was of little use; being a square battell of pikes, not fit for every ground. The Archers of *Crete* were judged, and were indeed, more serviceable in that case. But they were few; and their arrows were of small force against the *Roman* shields. The *Macedonians* therefore helped them by flinging of stones. But to no purpose. For the *Romans* got within them, and forced them to quit the place. This victory (such as it was) laid open unto the Consul some poor Towns thereabout; which partly were taken by strong hand, partly yielded for fear. But the spoil of these, and of the fields adjoining, was not sufficient to maintain his Army; and therefore he returned back to *Apollonia*.

The *Dardaniens*, hearing that *Philip* was come back, withdrew themselves apace out of the Country. The King sent *Athenagoras* to wait upon them home; whilst he himself went against the *Etolians*. For *Damocritus* the Prator of the *Etolians*, who had reserved himself and his Nation unto the event of things, hearing report, that *Philip* was beaten once and again; as also that *Pleuratus* and the *Dardaniens* were fallen upon *Macedon*; grew no lesse buisie on the sudden, than before he had been wife. He perswaded his Nation to take their time: and so, not staying to proclaim War, joyned his forces with *Antimander* the *Atbamian*; and made invasion upon *Theffaly*. They took, and

cruelly

cruelly sacked a few Towns: whereby they grew confident; as if, without any danger, they might do what they listed. But *Philip* came upon them ere they looked for him: and killing them as they lay dispersed, was like to have taken their Camp, if *Aminander* more warie than the *Etolians*, had not helped at need, and made the Retreat through his own mountainous Country.

About the same time the Roman Fleet, assisted by *Attalus* and the *Rhodians*, had taken some small Islands in the *Egean* Sea. They took likewise the Town of *Oreum* in the Ile of *Euboea*; and some other places thereabout. The Towns were given unto *Attalus*, after the same Compact that had formerly been made with the *Etolians*: the goods therein found were given unto the *Romans*; and the people, for slaves. Other attempts on that side were hindered; either by foul weather at Sea; or by want of daring, and of means.

## §. XII

*Villius* the Roman Consul wastes a year to no effect. War of the Gauls in Italy. An Embassage of the *Romans* to *Carthage*, *Masinissa*, and *Vermine*: The *Macedonian* prepares for defence of his Kingdom: and *T. Quintius Flaminius* is sent against him.

Thus the time ran away: and *P. Villius* a new Consul, took charge of the War in *Macedon*. He was troubled with a mutiny of his oldest Souldiers: whereof two thousand, having served long in *Sicil* and *Africk*, thought themselves much wronged, in that they could not be suffered to look unto their own estates at home. They were (belike) of the Legions that had served at *Canna*: as may seem by their complaint, of having been long absent from *Italy*; whither faine they would have returned, when by their Colonels they were shipped for *Macedon*. How *Villius* dealt with them, it is uncertaine. For the History of his year is lost: whereof the misse is not great, since he did nothing memorable. *Valerius Antius*, as we finde in *Livie*, hath adorned this *Villius* with a great exploit against *Philip*. Yet since *Livie* himself, an Historian to whom few of the best are matchable, could finde no such thing recorded in any good Author; we may reasonably believe, that *Villius* his year was idle.

In the beginning of this *Macedonian* war, the *Romans* found more trouble than could have been expected with the *Gauls*. Their Colony of *Placentia*, a goodly and strong Town, which neither *Hannibal*, nor after him *Asdrubal*, had been able to force; was taken by these *Barbarians*, and burnt in a manner to the ground. In like sort *Cremona* was attempted; but saved herself, taking warning by her neighbours calamity. *Amilcar* a *Carthaginian*, that stayed behinde *Asdrubal*, or *Mago* in those parts; was now become Captain of the *Gauls*, in these their enterprises. This when the *Romans* heard, they sent Embassadors to the *Carthaginians*: giving them to understand, That if they were not weary of the peace, it behoved them to call home, and deliver up, this their Citizen *Amilcar*, who made war in *Italy*. Hereunto it was added (perhaps lest the message might seem otherwise to have favoured a little of some feare) That of the fugitive slaves belonging to the *Romans*, there were some reported to walk up and down in *Carthage*: which if it were so, then ought they to be restored back to their Masters: as was conditioned in the late peace. The Embassadors that were sent on this errand, had further charge to treat with *Masinissa*, as also with *Vermine* the son of *Syphax*. Unto *Masinissa*, besides matter of complement, they were to signifie what pleasure he might doe them, by lending them some of his *Numidian* Horse, to serve in their war against the *Macedonian*. *Vermine* had entreated the Senate, to vouchsafe unto him the name of King: and promised thereafter to deserve it, by his readinesse in doing them all good offices. But they were somewhat scrupulous in the matter: and said, That having been, and being still (as they took it) their Enemy, He ought first of all to desire peace; for that the name of King, was an honour which they used not to conferre upon any, save one: upon such as had royally deserved it at their hands. The authority to make peace with him; was wholly committed unto these Embassadors, upon such termes as they should think fit; without further relation to the Senate and People. For they were then busied with greater cares. The *Carthaginians* made a gentle answer. That they wholly disclaimed *Amilcar*: banishing him, and confiscating his goods. As for the Fugitives they had restored as many as they could finde; and would in that point, as far as was requisite,

requisite, give satisfaction to the Senate. Herewithall they sent a great proportion of Corn to Rome; and the like unto the Army that was in Macedonia. King Masaniſſa would have lent unto the Romans two thousand of his Numidian horse: but they were contented with half the number; and would accept no more. *Vermine* met with the Embassadors, to give them entertainments, on the borders of his Kingdom; and without any dispute, agreed with them upon terms of peace.

Thus were the Romans buſied in taking order for their Macedonian War, that they might pursue it strongly, and without interruption. As for *Amilcar* and his *Gauls*; they laid siege unto *Cremona*; where *L. Furius* a Roman Prætor came upon them, fought a battell with them, and overcame them. *Amilcar* the Carthaginian died in this battell: so the fruit of the victory was such, as both made amends for losses past, and left the worke easie to those, that afterwards should have the managing of war among those *Gauls*. So was there good leisure to think upon the business of Macedonia: where *Philip* was carefully providing to give contentment unto his Subjects, by punishing a bad Counsellour whom they hated; as also to assure unto himself the *Achaans*, by rendering unto them some Towns that he held of theirs; and finally to strengthen his Kingdom, not only by exercising and training his people, but by fortifying the passages that led thereinto out of *Epirus*. This was in doing, when *Villius*, having unprofitably laboured to finde way into Macedonia, taking a journey (as *Sulpicius* had done before him) wherein he could not be supplied with victuals, determined at length to trie a new course. But then came advertisement, that *T. Quintius Flaminius* was chosen Consul, and had Macedonia allotted him for his Province; whose coming was expected; and he very shortly arrived at the Army.

## §. XIII.

The Romans begin to make war by negotiation. T. Quintius wins a passage against Philip. Theſſaly waſted by Philip, the Romans, and Ætolians. The Achaans forsaking the Macedonian, take part with the Romans. A treaty of peace, that was vaine. Philip delivers Argos to Nabis the Tyrant, who presently enters into League with the Romans.

The Romans had not been wont in former times, to make War after such a trifling manner. It was their use, to give battell to the Enemy, as soon as they met with him. If he refused it, they besieged his Towns: and so forced him to trie the fortune of a day, with his disadvantage in reputation, when he had long forborne it (as it would be interpreted) upon knowledge of his own weaknesse. But in this their War with *Philip*, they began to learne of the subtle *Greeks*, the art of Negotiation: wherein hitherto they were not grown so fine, as within a little while they proved. Their Treasury was poor, and stood indebted, \* many yeers after this unto private men, for part of those monies that had been borrowed in the second Punick War. This had made the Commonalty averse from the Macedonian War; and had thereby driven the Senators, greedy of the enterprize, to make use of their cunning. Yet being weary of the slow pace wherewith their business went forward, they determined to increase their Army, that they might have the lesse need to rely upon their Confederates. So they levied eight thousand Foot, and eight hundred Horse: the greater part of them of the *Latines*, which they sent with *T. Quintius Flaminius*, the new Consul, into Macedonia. Their Navie, and other means could well have served, for the setting forth and transportation of a greater Army: but by straining themselves to the most of their ability, they should (besides other difficulties incident unto the sustenance of those that are too many and too far from home) have bred some jealousy in their friends of Greece, and thereby have lost some friends, yea, perhaps have increased the number of their enemies, more than of their own Souldiers. This present augmentation of the forces was very requisite; for that *Amalrus*, about the same time, excused himself unto them, by his Embassadors; requesting that either they would undertake the defence of his Kingdom against *Antiochus*, who invaded it; or else that they would not take it uncourtously, that he quitted the War with *Philip*, and returned home, to look unto that which more concerned him. Their answer was remarkable. They said, That it was not their manner to use the aide of their friends, longer than their friends had good opportunity, and could also be well contented to afford it; That they could

not honestly take part with *Attalus*, their good friend though he were, against *Antiochus*, whom they held in the like account; but, That they would deal with *Antiochus* by Embassadors, and (as common friends unto both of the kings) do their best to perswade an atonement between them. In such loving fashion did they now carry themselves, towards their good friend the King *Antiochus*; who reciprocally at their intreaty, withdrew his Army from the kingdom of *Attalus*. But how little they regarded these terms of friendship, after that once they had made an end with *Philip*, it will very soon appear. *T. Quintius* halting away from Rome, came betimes into his Province, with the supply decreed unto him; which consisted, for the most part, of old Souldiers, that had served in *Spain* and *Africa*. He found *Villius* the old Consul, (whom at his coming he presently discharged) and King *Philip* of Macedonia, encamped one against the other, in the Straights of *Epirus*; by the river of *Apſus*, or *Aous*. It was manifest, that either the Romans must fetch a compass about, and seek their way into Macedonia, through the poor Country of the *Disseretians*; or else win, by force, that passage which the King defended. In taking the former way, they had already two yeers together mis-spent their time, and been forced to returne back without profit, for want of victuals: whereof they could neither carry with them store sufficient, nor finde it on the way. But if they could once get over these Mountains, which divided the South of *Epirus* from *Thessaly*, then should they enter into a plentiful Country; and, which by long dependance on the Macedonian, was become (in a manner) part of his Kingdom, whereof it made the South border. Nevertheless, the desire of winning this passage, was greater than the likelihood. For the river of *Apſus*, running along through that valley which alone was open between the Mountains, made it all a deep Marſh and unpassable Bogge: a very narrow way excepted, and a path cut out of the maine rock by mans hand. Wherefore *Quintius* assailed to climb in the Mountains: but finding himself disappointed of this hope, through the diligence of his enemy, who neglected not the guard of them that was very easie; he was compelled to sit still, without doing any thing for the space of forty dayes.

This long time of rest gave hope unto *Philip*, that the war might be ended by composition upon some reasonable terms. He therefore so dealt with some of the *Epirots*, (among whom he had many friends) that He and the Consul had a meeting together, but nothing was effected. The Consul would have him to set all Towns of Greece at liberty; and make amends for the injuries, which he had done to many people in his late Wars. *Philip* was contented to give liberty to those whom he had subdued of late: but unto such, as had been long subject unto him and his Ancestors, He thought it against all reason, that he should relinquish his claime and dominion over them. He also said, That as far forth as it should appear that he had done wrong unto any Town or people whatsoever, He could well be pleased to make such amends, as might seem convenient in the judgement of some free State, that had not been interested in those quarrells. But herewithall *Quintius* was not satisfied. There needed (he said) no judgement or compromise; forasmuch as it was apparent, that *Philip* had always been the invader; and had not made War, as one provoked, in his own defence. After this altercation, when they should come to particulars: and when the Consul was required to name those Towns, that he would have to be set at liberty; the first that he named were the *Thessalians*: These had been subjects (though conditionally) unto the Macedonian Kings; ever since the dayes of *Alexander* the Great, and of *Philip* his Father. Wherefore, as soon as *Flaminius* had named the *Thessalians*; the King in a rage demanded what sharper condition He would have laid upon him, had he been but vanquished. And herewithall abruptly he flang away; refusing to heare any more of such discourse.

After this the Consul strove in vaine two or three dayes together, to have prevailed against the difficulties of that passage which *Philip* kept. When he had well wearied himself, and could not resolve what course to take: there came to him an Herd-man sent from *Charopus* a Prince of the *Epirots* that favoured the Romans, who having long kept beasts in those Mountains, was thoroughly acquainted with all by-paths, &c. therefore undertook to guide the Romans, without any danger, to a place where they should have advantage of the Enemy. This guide, for fear of treacherous dealing, was fast bound: and being promised a great reward, in case he made good his word, had such

Com-



Companies as was thought fit, appointed to follow his directions. They travelled by night (it being then about the full of the Moon) and rested in the day-time, for fear of being discovered. When they had recovered the hill-tops, and were above the *Macedonians*, (though undiscovered by them, because at their banks) they raised a great smoke, whereby they gave notice of their successe unto the Consul. Some skirmished, whilest these were on their journey, *T. Quintius* had held with the *Macedonians*; thereby to avert him from thought of that which was intended. But when on the third morning he saw the smoke arise more and more plainly, and thereby knew that his men had attained unto the place whither they were sent, he pressed as neer as he could unto the Enemies Camp, and assailed them in their strength. He prevailed as little as in former times, untill the shoutings of those that ran down the hill, & charged *Philip* on the back, astonished so the *Macedonians*, that they betook themselves to flight. The King, upon first apprehension of the danger, made all speed away to save himself. Yet anon considering, that the difficulty of the passage must needs hinder the *Romans* from pursuing him: he made a stand at the end of five miles, and gathered there together his broken troupes, of whom he found wanting no more than two thousand men. The greatest losse was of his Camp and provisions: if not rather perhaps of his reputation; for that now the *Macedonians* began to stand in fear, lest being driven from a place of such advantage, they should hardly make good their party against the Enemy, upon equall ground. Neither was *Philip* himself much better perswaded. Wherefore he caused the *Thessalians*, as many of them as in his hasty retreat he could visit, to forsake their Towns and Country, carrying away with them as much as they were able, and spoiling all the rest. But all of them could not be perswaded, thus to abandon (for the pleasure of their King) their ancient habitations, and all the substance which they had gotten. Some there were that forcibly resisted him; which they might the better doe, for that he could not stay to use any great compulsion. He also himself took it very grievously, that he was driven to make such waste of a most pleasant and fruitful Country, which had ever been well affected unto him: so that a little hinderance did serve, to make him break off his purpose, and withdraw himselfe home into his Kingdome of *Macedon*.

The *Ætolians* and *Athamanians*, when this fell out, were even in a readinesse to invade *Thessaly*; whereinto the wayes lay more open, out of their severall Countries. When therefore they heard for certainty, that *Philip* was beaten by the *Romans*: they fore-slowed not the occasion, but made all speed, each of them to lay hold upon what they might. *T. Quintius* followed them within a little while: but they had gotten so much before his coming, that he, in gleaming after their harvest, could not finde enough to maintain his Army. Thus were the poore *Thessalians*, of whose liberty the *Romans* a few dayes since had made shew to be very desirous, wasted by the same *Romans* and their Confederates; not knowing which way to turne themselves, or whom to avoid. *T. Quintius* won *Phaleria* by assault: *Metropolis* and *Piera* yielded unto him. *Rhage* he besieged: and having made a faire breach, yet was unable to force it; so stoutly it was defended both by the Inhabitants, and by a *Macedonian* garrison therein. *Philip* also at the same time, having somewhat recolected his spirits, hovered about *Tempe* with his Army, thrusting men into all places, that were like to be distressed. So the Consul, having well-neer spent his victuals, and seeing no hope to prevaile at *Rhage*; brake up his siege, and departed out of *Thessaly*. He had appointed his ships of burden to meet him at *Anticyra*, an Haven Town of *Phocis*, on the Gulph of *Corinth*: which Country being friend to the *Macedonian*, he presently invaded; not so much for hatred unto the people, as because it lay conveniently seated between *Thessaly* and other regions, where-in he had business, or was shortly like to have. Many Towns in *Phocis* he won by assault: many were yielded up unto him for feare; and within short space he had (in effect) mastered it all.

In the meane time *L. Quintius* the Consuls brother, being then Admirall for the *Romans* in this war, joyned with King *Attalus* and the *Rhodian* Fleet. They won two Cities in *Euboea*; and afterward laid siege unto *Cenchree*, an Haven and Arceall of the *Corinthians* on their Easterne Sea. This enterprise did somewhat help forward the *Achaens*, in their desire to leave the part of *Philip*; since it might come to passe, that *Corinth* it self, ere long time were spent; and that *Cenchree*, with other places appertaining

to *Corinth*, now very shortly should be rendred unto their Nation, by favour of the *Romans*.

But there were other motives, inducing the *Achaens* to preferre the friendship of the *Romans*, before the patronage of *Philip*; whereto they had been long accustomed. For this King had so many waies offended them in time of peace, that they thought it the best course to rid their hands of him; whilest being intangled in a dangerous War, he wanted means to hinder the execution of such counsell as they should hold the safest. His tyrannous practises to make himselfe their absolute Lord: his poisoning of *Aratus* their old Governour: his false dealing with the *Messenians*, *Epirots*, and other people their Confederates, and his own dependants: together with many particular outrages by him committed; and caused them long since to hold him as a necessary evill, even whilest they were unable to be without his assistance. But since by the vertue of *Philip*, they were grown somewhat confident in their own strength, so as without the *Macedonians* help they could as well subsist, as having him as a necessary evill, even ly think how evill he was; and thereupon rejoyce the more, in that he was become no longer necessary. It angered him to perceive how they stood affected: and therefore he sent murderers to take away the life of *Philopemen*. But failing in this enterprise; and being detected, he did thereby onely set fire to the Wood, which was thoroughly dry. He was more familiar with them, than what great cause they had to withdraw themselves from the *Macedonian* *Cycliadas*, a principal man among them, and lately their Prator, was expelled by them, for shewing himselfe passionate in the cause of *Philip*; and *Driscus* chosen Prator, who laboured to joyne them in society with the *Romans*.

These news were very welcome to *T. Quintius*. Embassadors were sent from the *Romans* and their Confederates, King *Attalus*, the *Rhodians* and *Athenians*, to treat with the *Achaens*, making promise, that they should have *Corinth* restored unto them, if they would forsake the *Macedonian*. A Parliament of the *Achaens* was held at *Syeion*, to deliberate and resolve in this weighty case. Therein the *Romans* and their adherents desired the *Achaens* to joyne with them in making War upon *Philip*. Contrariwise, the Embassadors of *Philip*, whom he had also sent for this business, admonishing the *Achaens* of their Alliance with the King, and of their faith due unto him; requested them, that they would be contented to remain as Neuters. This moderate request of *Philip* Embassadors did no way advance their Masters cause. Rather it gave the *Achaens* to understand, That he, who could be satisfied with so little at their hands, knew himselfe unable to gratifie them in any reciprocall demand. Yet were there many in that great Councell, who remembering the benefites of *Philip* and *Antigonus*, laboured earnestly for the preservation of the ancient League. But in fine, the sense of late injuries, and expectation of like or worse from him in the future, prevailed against the memory of those old good turns, which he (and *Antigonus* before him) had partly sold unto them, & partly had used as baits, whereby to allure them into absolute subjection. Neither was it perhaps of the least importance; That the *Romans* were strong, and likely to prevail in the end. So after much altercation, the Decree passed, That they should thence-forward renounce the *Macedonians*, and take part with his enemies in this War. With *Attalus* and the *Rhodians* they forthwith entred into society: with the *Romans* (because no League would be of force, until the Senate and people had approved it) they forbore to decree any society at the present, until the return of those Embassadors from *Rome*, which they determined to send thither of purpose. The *Metropolitans*, *Dymeans*, and *Argives*, having done their best for the *Macedonians*, as by many respects they were bound, rose up out of the Councell, and departed before the passing of the Decree; which they could not resist, nor yet with honesty thereto give assent. For this their good will, and greater, which they shortly manifested, the *Argives* had so little thank; that all the rest of the *Achaens* may be the better held excused, for escaping how they might, out of the hands of so fell a Prince.

Soon after this, upon a solemn day at *Argos*, the affection of the Citizens discovered it self so plainly, in the behalf of *Philip*, that they which were his Partisans within the Town, made no doubt of putting the City into his hands; if they might have any small assistance. *Philocles* a Lieutenant of the Kings, lay then in *Corinth*, which he had manfully defended against the *Romans* and *Attalus*. Him the Conspirators drew to



the King had given them no direction or commission what to say or do. This was enough. The Senate would no longer hearken to *Philips* desire of peace; wherein they said he did no better than trifle. Yet might his Embassadors have truly said, That neither the *Ætoliens*, *Acheans*, nor any of their fellows, had in the late Treaty required by name, that *Chalcis* and *Demetrias* should be yielded up. For which of them indeed could make any claim to either of these Towns? As for *Corinth*, whereto the *Acheans* had some right; (though their right were no better, than that, having stoln it from one *Macedonian* King in a night, they had, after mature deliberation, made it away by bargain unto another) *Philip* had already condescended to give it back unto them. And this perhaps would have been alledged, even against the *Greeks*, in excuse to the King, by some of *T. Quintius* his friends; that so he might have had honour to conclude the war, if a successor had been decreed unto him. But since he was appointed to continue General: neither his friends at *Rome*, nor he himself, after the returne of the Embassadors unto *Greece*, cared to give care unto any talk of peace.

*Philip* seeing that his *Acheans* had forsaken him, and joyned with their common enemies; thought even to deal with them in the like manner, by reconciling himself unto *Nabis*, whom they hated most. There were not many yeeres past, since the *Lacedemonians* under *Cleomenes*, with little other help than their own strength, had been almost strong enough both for the *Macedonians* and *Acheans* together. But now the condition of things was altered. *Nabis* his force consisted, in a manner, wholly in his Mercenaries: for he was a Tyrant, though styling himself King. Yet he forely vexed the *Acheans*: and therefore seemed to *Philip* one likely to stand him in great stead, if he could be won. To this purpose it was thought meet, that the Town of *Argos*, which could not otherwise be easily defended, should be assigned over into his hands; in hope, that such a benefit would serve to tie him fast unto the *Macedonian*. *Philocles* the Kings Lieutenant, who was appointed to deal with *Nabis*, added further, That it was his Masters purpose to make a streight alliance with the *Lacedemonian*, by giving some daughters of his own in marriage unto *Nabis* his sons. This could not but be well taken. Yet *Nabis* made some scruple in accepting the Town of *Argos*; unless by decree of the Citizens themselves he might be called into it. Hereabout *Philocles* dealt with the *Argives*: but found them so averse, that in open assembly of the people, they detested the very name of the Tyrant, with many railing words. *Nabis* hearing of this, thought he had thereby a good occasion to rob and fleece them. So he willed *Philocles*, without more ado, to make over the Town which he was ready to receive. *Philocles* accordingly did let him with his Army into it by night; and gave him possession of the strongest places therein. Thus dealt *Philip* with the *Argives*: who for very love had forsaken the *Acheans*, to take his part. Early in the morning, the Tyrant made himself master of all the gates. A few of the principall men, understanding how things went, fled out of the City at the first tumult. Wherefore they were all banished, and their goods confiscated. The rest of the chief Citizens that stayed behind, were commanded to bring forth, out of hand, all their Gold and Silver. Also a great imposition of money was laid upon all those that were thought able to pay it. Such as made their contribution readily, were dismissed without more ado. But if any stood long upon the matter: or played the thieves in purloining their own goods; they were put to the whip, and besides losse of their wealth, had their torments to boot. This done, the Tyrant began to make popular laws; namely, such as might serve to make him gracious with the rascall multitude: abrogating all debts, and dividing the Lands of the rich among the poor. By such art of oppressing the great ones, it hath been an old custome of Tyrants, to assure themselves of the Vulgar for a time.

As soon as *Nabis* had gotten *Argos*, He sent the newes to *T. Quintius*; and offered to joyn with him against *Philip*. *Titus* was glad of it: so as he took the paines to crosse over the Straights into *Peloponnesus*, there to meet with *Nabis*. They had soon agreed (though King *Attalus*, who was present with the Consul, made some cavill touching *Argos*) and the Tyrant lent unto the *Roman*, six hundred of his Mercenaries of *Crete*: as also he agreed with the *Acheans*, upon a Truce for four moneths, reserving the final conclusion of peace between them untill the War of *Philip* should be ended; which after this continued not long,

§. XIII.

## §. XIII.

The battell at *Cynoscephale*, wherein *Philip* was vanquished by *T. Quintius*.

*Titus Quintius*, as soon as he understood that he was appointed to have command of the Army, without any other limitation of time, than during the pleasure of the Senate; made all things ready for diligent pursuit of the War. The like did *Philip*: who having failed in his negotiation of peace, and no lesse failed in his hopes of getting *Nabis* to friend in that War; meant afterwards wholly to rely upon himself.

*Titus* had in his Army about six and twenty thousand: and *Philip* a proportionable number. But neither of them knew the others strength, or what his Enemy intended to do. Onely *Titus* heard that *Philip* was in *Thessaly*, and thereupon addressed himself to seek him out. They had like to have met unawares, neer unto the City of *Phere*: where the vantage-grounds on both sides discovered each other; and sent word thereof unto their severall Captains. But neither of them were over hasty to commit all to hazard upon so short warning. The day following each of them sent out three hundred Horse, with as many light-armed Foot, to make a better discovery. These met, and fought a long while: returning finally back into their severall Camps, with little advantage unto either side. The Country about *Phere* was thick set with trees: and otherwise full of gardens and mud-walls; which make it improper for the service of the *Macedonian Phalanx*. Wherefore the King dislodged, intending to remove back into *Scotsia*, in the Frontier of *Macedon*; where he might be plentifully served with all necessaries. *Titus* conceived aright his meaning; and therefore purposed also to march thitherwards; were it onely to waste the Country. There lay between them a great ledge of hills, which hindered the one from knowing what course the other took. Nevertheless they encamped not far asunder, both the first and the second night; though neither of them understood what was become of the other. The third day was very tempestuous; and forced each of them to take up his lodging where he found it by chance. Then sent they forth discoverers again, in greater number than before. These meeting together, held a long fight, wherein at first the *Macedonians* had the worle. But *Philip* anon sent in such strong supply; that if the resistance of the *Ætoliens* had not been desperate, the *Romans* their fellows had been driven back into their Camp. Yet all resistance notwithstanding, the *Macedonians* prevailed: so that *Titus* himself was faine to bring forth his Legions, that were not a little discouraged, by the defeat of all their Horse, to animate those which were in flight.

It was altogether besides the Kings purpose to put the fortune of a battell in trust that day, with so much of his Estate as might thereon depend. But the newes came to him thick and tumultuously, how the enemies fled, and how the day was his own; if he could use an occasion, the like whereof he should not often finde. This caused him to alter his purpose: inasmuch as he embattelled his men; & climbed up those hills, which, for that the knops thereon had some resemblance unto Dogs heads, were called, by a word signifying as much, *Cynoscephale*. As soon as he was on the hill-top; it did him very good to see that they of his own light armature were busie in fight, almost at the very Camp of the Enemies; whom they had repelled so far. He had also liberty to choose his ground, as might serve best his advantage; forasmuch as the *Romans* were quite driven from all parts of the Hill. But of this commodity he could make no great use: the roughnesse of the place among those Dogs heads, as they were called, serving nothing aptly for his *Phalanx*. Nevertheless he found convenient roome, wherein to marshal the one part of his Army: and gave order unto his Captains, to follow with the rest; embattelling them as they might. Whilest he was doing this: He perceived that his Horsemen and light armature began to shrink, as being fallen upon the *Roman* Legions; by force whereof they were driven to recolve. He sets forward to help them: and they no lesse hastily draw unto him for succour; having the *Romans* not far behind them.

As the Legions began to climbe the Hill; *Philip* commanded those of his *Phalanx* to charge their pikes, and entertain them. Here *Titus* found an extreme difficult piece

N n n n 3

of

of work. For this *Phalanx* being a great square battell of armed pikes, like in all points to those which are now used in our modern Wars: and being in like manner used, as are ours; was not to be refitted by the *Roman* Targettiers, as long as the *Phalanx* itself held together undissolved. The *Macedonians* were embattell'd in very close order: so that two of them stood opposite to one of the *Romans*; as also the pikes of the first rank had their points advanced two or three foot before their fore-man. Wherefore it is no marvel if the *Romans* gave back: every one of them being troubled (as it were) with ten enemies at once; and not able to come nearer to the next of them, than the length of a dozen foot, or thereabout. *Titus* finding this, and not knowing how to remedy it, was greatly troubled: for that still the *Phalanx* bare down all which came in to the way. But in the mean while he observed, That they which were appointed by *Philip* to make his left wing, were not able through the much unevenness of the ground, to put themselves in order: so as either they kept their places on the Hills, tops; or else (which was worse) upon desire either of beholding the pastime, or of seeming to be partakers in the work, ran foolishly along by the side of their fellows, which were occupied in fight.

Of this their disorder he made great and present use. He caused the right wing of his battell to march up the Hill against these ill-ordered troops: his Elephants leading the way, to increase the terrour. The *Macedonians* were readier to dispute what should be done in such a case, than well advised what to do; as having no one man appointed to command that part in chief. Indeed if they should have done their best, it could not have served; since the ground whereon they stood, made their weapons unusefull. For let it be supposed, that *Philip* having six and twenty thousand in his Army (as he is said to have been equal to the Enemy in number) had four thousand Horse, four thousand Targettiers, and four thousand light-armed: so shall there remain fourteen thousand Pikes; whereof himself had embattell'd the one half in a *Phalanx*; the other half in the left wing, are they whom *Quintius* is ready now to charge. The *Phalanx* having usually sixteen in File, must, when it consisted of seven thousand, have well-near four hundred and forty in rank: but four hundred would serve, to make a Front long enough; the other forty or seven and thirty Files might be cut off, and reckoned in the number of the Targettiers, or light-armed. Allowing therefore, as *Polybius* doth, to every man of them three foot of ground: this Front must have occupied twelve hundred foot, or two hundred and forty paces; that is, very near a quarter of a mile in length. Such a space of open Champain, free from incumbrance of Trees, Ditches, Hillocks, or the like impediments, that must of necessity disjoin this close battell of the *Phalanx*; was not every-where to be found. Here at *Cynosephale* *Philip* had so much room, as would onely suffice for the one half of his men; the rest were fain to stand still and look about them, being hindered from putting themselves in order, by the roughness of the *Dogs heads*. But the *Romans*, to whom all grounds were much alike, were not hinder'd from coming up unto them; nor found any difficulty in mastering those Enemies, whose feet were in a manner bound by the discommodity of the place. The very first impression of the Elephants, caused them to give back; and the coming on of the Legions, to betake themselves to flight. A *Roman* Tribune or Colonel, seeing the victory on that part assured, left the prosecution of it unto others: and being followed by twenty Ensignes or Maniples, that is, (as they might fall out) by some two thousand men, took in hand a notable piece of work; and mainly helpfull to making of the victory complete. He considered that *Philip*, in pursuing the right wing of the *Romans*, was run on so far, as that himself with his fellows, in mounting the Hill to charge the left wing of the *Macedonians*, was already gotten above the Kings head. Wherefore he turned to the left hand, and making down the Hill after the Kings *Phalanx*, fell upon it in the Rear. The hindermost ranks of the *Phalanx*; all of them indeed save the first five, were accustomed, when the battels came to joyning, to carry their pikes upright; and with the whole weight of their bodies to thrust on their fore-men: and so were they doing at the present. This was another great inconvenience in the *Macedonian Phalanx*. That it served neither for offence nor defence, except onely in Front. For though it were so, that *Alexander*, when he was to fight with *Darius* in *Mesopotamia*, arranged his *Phalanx* in such order, that all the four sides of it were as so many Fronts looking sundry ways,

Excerpt: Polybius, lib. 5, 7.

ways, because he expected that he should be encompassed round: yet is it to be understood, that herein he altered the usual form; as also at the same time he embattell'd his men in loose order, that so with ease they might turn their weapons which way need should require. Likewise it is to be considered, That *Alexander's* men being thus disposed, were fit onely to keep their own ground; not being able to follow upon the enemy, unless their hindmost ranks could have marched backwards. But in this present case of *Philip*, there was no such provision for resistance. Therefore his men, being otherwise unable to help themselves, threw down their weapons & fled. The King himself had thought until now, that the fortune of the battell was every where alike, & the day his own. But hearing the noise behind him, and turning a little aside with a troop of horse, to see how all went; when he beheld his men casting down their weapons, and the *Romans* at his back on the higher ground; he presently betook himself to flight. Neither staid he afterwards in any place (except onely a small while about *Tempe*, there to collect such as were dispersed in this overthrow) until he was gotten into his own kingdom of *Macedon*.

There died of the *Roman* Army in this battell, about seven hundred: of the *Macedonians* about eight thousand were slain; and five thousand taken prisoners.

### §. XV.

*T. Quintius* falleth out with the *Ætolians*, and grants truce unto *Philip*, with conditions upon which the peace is ratified. Liberty proclaimed unto the *Greeks*. The *Romans* quarrell with *Antiochus*.

The *Ætolians* wonderfully vaunted themselves; and desired to have it noised through all *Greece*, that the victory at *Cynosephale* was gotten (in a manner) wholly by their valour. They had gotten indeed the most of the booty by sacking the *Macedonian* Camp, whilst the *Romans* were busied in the chase. *Titus* therefore being offended both at their vain-glory, and at their ravenous condition; purposed to teach them better manners, by regarding them as slightly, as they thought highly of themselves. He also well perceived, That by using them with any extraordinary favour, he should greatly offend the rest of his confederates in *Greece*; who detested the *Ætolians* much more vehemently, than ever they had done the *Macedonians*. But this displeasure brake not forth yet a while.

After the battell, *Titus* made haste unto *Larissa*, a City in the *Thessaly*, which he presently took. Before his coming, *Philip* had sent thither one of his Courtiers to burn all his letters, and passages whatsoever in writing, betwixt him and others: of which many were there kept. It was well done of the King, that among the cares of so much adversity, he forgot not to provide for the safety of his friends. Yet by thus doing, they of *Larissa* might well perceive, that he gave them as already lost. Wherefore we finde not that they, or any of their neighbours, did make delay of opening their gates to *Titus*. At the same time, the Town of *Lencas*, bordering upon *Acarmania*, was taken by the *Roman* Fleet, and very soon after, all the *Acarnanians*, a warlike Nation, and in hatred of the *Ætolians* ever true to *Philip*, gave up themselves unto the *Romans*, hearing of the victory at *Cynosephale*. The *Rhodiens* also were then in hand with the conquest of *Peræa*, a Region of the Continent over against the Islands; whereof they had demanded restitution in the late Treaty of Peace. They did herein more manly, than any other of the *Greeks*; forasmuch as they awaited not the good leisure of the *Romans*; but with an Army of their own, and some help which they borrowed of the *Acheans* and other their friends, gave battell to *Dinocrates* the Kings Lieutenant, wherein they had the victory, and consequently recovered the whole Province. It angered *Philip* worse than all this, that the *Dardaniens* gathered courage out of his affliction, to invade his Kingdom; wasting and spoiling, as if all had been abandoned to their discretion. This made him gather an Army in all haste of 6000 Foot, and 500 horse: wherewith coming upon them, he drave them, with little or no losse of his own; and great slaughter of theirs, hastily out of the Kingdom. Which done, he returned to *Thessalonica*.

In this one enterprise he had successe answerable to his desire: but seeing what bad fortune accompanied his affaires, in all other parts at the same time, he thought it wisdom to yeeld unto necessity; and therefore sent in all haste *Limnius* and *Demosthenes* with

with *Cycliadas* the banished *Achean*, in whom he reposed much confidence, Embassadors unto *Titus*. These had conference a long while in private, which *Titus* and some of his *Roman* Colonels: by whom they were gently entertained, and in very friendly wise dismissed. It seems that they had Commission, to refer all unto *Titus* his own discretion; as *Philip* himself in few daies after did. There was granted unto him a Truce for fifteen daies: in which time, the King himself might come and speak with the *Roman* Generall. In the mean season, many suspicious rumours went of *Titus*, as if he had been corrupted with great rewards from the King, to betray the *Greeks* his Confederates. Of these bruits the *Ætolians* were chief authors: who being wont to regard neither friendship nor honestie, where profit led them a wrong way, judged alike of all men else. But against the day appointed for the meeting betwixt him and *Philip*, *Titus* had sent letters unto his Associates; willing them to have their Agents ready by a time appointed, at the entrance of *Tempe*, where the treaty should be held. There when they were all assembled, they entered into consultation before the kings arrival, what should be most expedient for the common benefit of them all, and for every state in particular. The poor king *Aminander* besought them all, and especially the *Romans*, that they would think upon him; and, considering his weaknesse which he confessed, make such provision, that after the *Romans* had turned their backs, and were gone home, *Philip* might not wreak his anger upon him who was not able to resist. Then spake *Alexander*, one of the *Ætolians*: who commending *Titus* so far as he had thus assembled the Confederates to advise upon their own good, and had willed them to deliver their minds freely: added, That in the main of the purpose which he had in hand, he was utterly deceived: for that by making peace with *Philip*, he could neither assure the *Romans* of their quiet, nor the *Greeks* of their liberty. There was, he said, none other end to be made of the war, which could agree either with the purpose of the Senate and people of *Rome*, or with the fair promises made by *Titus* himself unto the *Greeks*, than the chasing of *Philip* quite out of his kingdom. And to this effect he made a long discourse. But *Titus* answered, That this *Ætolian* was ill acquainted, either with the good pleasure of the Senate and people of *Rome*, or with the laudable customs which they generally held: for that it was not the manner of the *Romans*, to seek the utter destruction of any King or Nation, at such time as they first made war with them; untill by some rebellion they found it a matter of necessity, to take such a rigorous course. And hereof he alledged the *Carthaginians* as a notable example: adding, That victory, to generous minds, was onely an inducement to moderation. As concerning the publick benefit of *Greece*, it was (he said) expedient, that the kingdom of *Macedon* should be greatly weakened and brought low; not that it should be utterly destroyed: forasmuch as it served as a bar to the *Thracians*, *Gauls*, and a multitude of other salvage Nations, which would soon overflow the whole continent of *Greece*, if this kingdom were not interposed. Wherefore he concluded, that if *Philip* would yeeld unto those demands, wherewith he had pressed him in the former Treaty; then was there no reason to deny him peace. As for the *Ætolians*: if they thought otherwise, it should be at their own pleasure, to take counsell apart for themselves as they thought good. Then began *Phanac*, another of the *Ætolians*, to say, that all was come to nothing; for that ere long, *Philip* would trouble all the *Greeks*, no lesse than he had done in time before. But *Titus* interrupted him, and bade him leave his babblings; saying, That himself would take such order, as that *Philip*, were he never so desirous, should thenceforth not have it in his power to molest the *Greeks*.

The next day King *Philip* came thither: whom *Titus* used friendly: and suffering him to repose himself that night, held a Councell the day following; wherein the King yeelded unto all that had bin required at his hands; offering yet further to stand to the good pleasure of the Senate, if they would have more added to the Conditions. *Phanac* the *Ætolian*, insulting over him, said, It was to be hoped, that he would then at length give up to the *Ætolians* a many of Towns, (which he there named) bidding him speak whether he would or no. His answer was, that they might take them all. But *Titus* interposing himself, said it should be otherwise. These were *Thessalian* Towns, and should be all free: one of them onely excepted, which not long ago had refused to commit it self to the faith of the *Romans*, & therefore should now be given to the *Ætolians*. Hereat *Phanac* cried out, that it was too great an injury, thus to be defrauded of the

Towns

Towns that had sometime belonged unto their Common-weale. Rather he willed *Titus* to consider, that by an ancient Covenant between him and the *Romans*, all the towns taken ought to be their own, and the *Romans* to have nothing save the pillage and captives. It is true, that there had been such a condition in the former war: but it ceased to be of any validity, as soon as the *Ætolians* made peace with *Philip*. And thus much *Titus* gave them to understand; asking them whether they thought it reasonable, that all the towns in *Greece*, which had let in the *Romans* by compulsion, should be delivered into subjection of the *Ætolians*. The rest of the Confederates were very much delighted with these angry passages between the *Romans* and the *Ætolians*: neither had they great reason to fear any hard measure; since *Titus* was so earnest in behalf of those *Thessalians*, to give them liberty, though they had stood out against him, even till very fear made them open their gates. Wherefore they opposed not themselves; but gave their consent willingly unto a Truce for four Moneths.

The chief cause that moved *Titus* to grant peace so readily to the *Macedonians*, besides that laudable custom by him before alledged, was, the fame of *Antiochus* his coming with an army from *Syria*, and drawing near toward *Europe*. He had also perhaps yet a greater motive; even the consideration that his successor might happen to defraud him of the honour, if the war should happen to be protracted. And he was in the night. For when his letters, together with Embassadors from the *Macedonian*, and sundry States of *Greece*, came unto *Rome*, new Consuls were chosen: who (especially the one of them) stood very earnestly against the peace; alledging frivolous matter of their own suspicion, in hope to get the honour of concluding the war. The Senate began to be doubtfully affected, between the Embassadors of *Philip*, offering to stand to whatsoever was demanded; and the letters of *Titus*, pressing them to accept this offer, on the one side, and the importunity of the Consul on the other; who said, that all these goodly shewes were fraudulent, and that the King would rebell, as soon as the Army was called out of *Greece*. But the matter was taken out of the Senators hands by two of the Tribunes, that referred it to an Assembly of the People; by whose sovereign authority it was concluded, that peace should be granted to the King. So ten Embassadors were sent from *Rome*, over into *Greece*: in which number were they that had been Consuls before *Titus*: and it was ordained by their advice, that *Titus* should go through with the business of Peace. These would very fain have retained those three important Cities of *Corinth*, *Chalcis*, and *Demetrias*, untill the estate of *Greece* were somewhat better settled. But finally, *Titus* prevailed so, that *Corinth* was (though not immediately) rendered unto the *Acheans*; and all the other *Greek* towns which *Philip* held, as well in *Asia* as in *Greece*, restored unto liberty.

The Conditions of the Peace granted unto *Philip*, were, That before the celebration of the next \* *Isthmian Games*, he should withdraw his Garrisons out of all the *Greek* towns which he held, and confine them over to the *Romans*: That he should deliver up unto them all Captives that he had of theirs, and all Renegado's: Likewise all his ships of war, reserving to himself onely five of the lesser sort, and one of extraordinary greatness, wherein sixteen men laboured at every oare: Further, that he should pay a thousand talents, the one half in hand; the other in ten years following, by even portions. Hereto \* *Livie* adds, That he was forbidden to make war out of *Macedon*, without permission of the Senate. But I finde not that he observed this Article, or was at any time charged with the breach of it. Four hundred talents he had already delivered to *Titus*, together with his younger son *Demetrius*, to remain as hostage for his true dealing in this matter of peace, at such time as he lately sent his Embassadors to *Rome*: when it was promised, that the money, and his son, should be restored back unto him; if the Senate were not pleased with the agreement. Whether this money were reckoned as part of the thousand talents, I cannot finde: and it seemeth otherwise, forasmuch as young *Demetrius*, who, together with those four hundred talents, was given for hostage, remained still in custody of the *Romans*, as a part of the bargain which *Titus* formerly had made. Letters also were then sent by *Titus* unto *Prusias* King of *Bithynia*: giving him to understand, what agreement was made with *Philip* in behalf of the *Greeks*; and how the Senate held it reasonable, that the *Ciani*, most miserably spoiled and oppressed by *Philip*, to gratifie this *Bithynian* his son-in-law, should be restored to liberty, and permitted to enjoy the same benefit of the *Romans*, which other of their Nation did.



did. What effect these letters wrought, it was not greatly material; since the *Romans* were shortly busied with *Antiochus*, in such wise, that they had not leisure to examine the conformity of *Prusias* to their will.

All *Greece* rejoiced at the good bargain which *Titus* had made with *Philip*. Only the *Ætolians* found themselves aggrieved that they were utterly neglected: which was to the rest no small part of their contentment. The *Ætolians* continued to favour the *Macedonian*; and thereby occasioned much trouble unto themselves. There were some among them well-affected to the *Romans*: who, seeing how things were like to go, made their complaint unto *Titus*; saying, that they were no better than lost, for the good will which they had borne unto him; unless at this time, when he lay close by them, with his Army, their Prator, which was head of the opposite Faction, might be made away. *Titus* refused to have a hand in the execution, yet nevertheless did animate them in their purpose. So they committed the fact, and hoped to have kept themselves undiscovered. But when the murder came out, and somewhat was confessed by those which were put to torture; the hatred of the people brake out violently against the *Romans*; in such wise, that howsoever they durst not take Arms against them, yet such of them as they found stragling from their Camp, they murdered in all parts of the country. This was detested within a while, and many of the dead bodies found. Hereupon *Titus* requires of the *Ætolians*, to have the murderers delivered into his hands; and for five hundred fouldiers, which he had lost by them, to have paid unto him five hundred talents. In stead of making any such amends, they paid him with excuses; which he would not take as good satisfaction. He sends Embassadors to the *Acheans* and *Athenians*, informing them what had hapned: and requested them not to take it amiss, though he dealt with these their friends as they had deserved. Herewithall he falls to wasting their country; and besiegeth two such towns of theirs, as did seem to be most culpable of the murders lately done. But the Embassadors of the *Acheans* and *Athenians* (especially of the *Acheans*, who offered, if he needed them, to help him in this war; yet besought him rather to grant peace unto the *Ætolians*) prevailed so far with him, that he was pacified with 30. talents, and the punishment of such as were known offenders.

In like sort, though not so violently, were many States of *Greece* distracted: some among them rejoicing that they were free from the *Macedonians*; others greatly doubting, that the *Roman* would prove a worse neighbour. The *Ætolian* would have been glad of any Commotion; and therefore published rumours abroad, That it was the purpose of the *Romans*, to keep in their own hands all those places, wherein *Philip* lately had his Garrisons. Little did they, or the rest of the *Greeks*, conceive, that this *Macedonian* war served as an introduction to the war to be made in *Asia* against King *Antiochus*; where grew the fruit, that was to be reaped of this and many other victories. Wherefore to stay the progreffe of bad rumors, when the *Isthmian* games were held, which in time of peace were never without great solemnity and concourse; *Titus* in that great assembly of all *Greece*, caused proclamation to be made by sound of Trumpet to this effect, That the Senate and people of *Rome*, and *Titus Quintius Flamininus* the Generall, having vanquished King *Philip* and the *Macedonians*, did will to beat liberty, free from Impositions, free from Garrisons, and living at their own Laws, the *Corinthians*, *Phocians*, *Locrians*, *Eubœans*, *Acheans* of *Phthiotis*, *Magnesiens*, *Thessalians*, and *Peræbiens*. The suddenness of this Proclamation astonished men: so as though they applauded it with a great shout, yet presently they cried out to hear it again, as if they durst scarce credit their own ears. The *Greeks* were Craft-masters in the Art of giving thanks, which they rendered now to *T. Quintius* with so great affection, as that they had well-near smothered him, by thronging officiously about him.

This good will of the *Greeks*, was like to be much more available unto the *Romans*; so in their war against *Antiochus*, than could have been the possession of a few Towns, yea, or of all those Provinces which were named in the Proclamation. Upon confidence hereof, no sooner were the *Isthmian* games at an end, than *Titus*, with the *Roman* that were of his Councell, gave audience to *Hagesanax* and *Lysias*, King *Antiochus*'s Embassadors: whom they willed to signifie unto their Lord, That he should do well to abstain from the free cities in *Asia*, and not vex them with war: as also to restore whatsoever he had occupied, belonging to the Kings, *Ptolomy* or *Philip*. Moreover they willed him by these his Embassadors, that he should not passe over his Army into *Europe*; adding,

saying, That some of them would visit him in person ere it were long, to talk with him further concerning these points. This done, they fell to accomplishing their promises unto the *Greeks*; to the rest they gave what they had promised. But the *Phocians* and *Locrians* they gave unto the *Ætolians*; whom they thought it no wisdom to offend overmuch, being shortly to take a greater work in hand. The *Acheans* of *Phthiotis* they annexed unto the *Thessalians*; all save the town of *Thebes* in *Phthiotis*, the same which had been abandoned by *T. Quintius* to the *Ætolians* in the last Treaty with *Philip*. The *Ætolians* contended very earnestly about *Pharsalus* and *Leucas*. But they were put off with a dilatory answer, and rejected unto the Senate: for howsoever somewhat the Councell might favour them, yet was it not meet that they should have their will, as it were in despite of *Titus*. So the *Acheans* were restored *Corinth*, *Triphylia*, and *Heræa*. So the *Corinthians* were made free indeed, (though the *Romans* yet a while kept the *Acronintus*) for that all which were partakers of the *Achean* common-wealth, enjoyed their liberty in as absolute manner as they could desire. To *Pleurtas* the *Illyrian* were given one or two places, taken by the *Romans* from *Philip*: and upon *Aminander* were bestowed those Castles, which he had gotten from *Philip* during this war; to reign in them, and the grounds which they commanded, as he did among his *Athamanians*. The *Rhodians* had been their own Carvers. *Attalus* was dead a little before the Victory; and therefore lost his share. Yet many that were with *Titus* in Councell, would have given the towns of *Oreum* and *Eretria*, in the Isle of *Eubœa*, to his son and successor King *Eumenes*. But finally it was concluded, that these as well as the rest of the *Eubœans*, should be suffered to enjoy their liberty. *Orestis*, a little Province of the Kingdom of *Macedon*, bordering on *Epirus*, and lying towards the *Ionian* Sea, had yielded unto the *Romans* long ere this, and since continued true to them: for which cause it was also set at liberty, and made a free estate by it self.

These businesses being dispatched, it remained, that all care should be used, not how to avoid the war with King *Antiochus*, but how to accomplish it with most ease and prosperity. Wherefore Embassadors were sent, both to *Antiochus* himself, to pick matter of quarrell; and about unto others, to pre-dispose them unto the assisting of the *Romans* therein. What ground and matter of War against this King, the *Romans* now had, or shortly after found: as also how their Embassadors and Agents dealt and sped abroad; I refer unto another place.

## CHAP. V.

The Wars of the Romans with Antiochus the Great, and his Adherents.

### §. I.

How Kings of the races of Seleucus and Ptolomie reigned in Asia and Egypt before Antiochus the Great.

**S**eleucus Nicator, the first of his race, King of *Asia* and *Syria*, died in the end of the hundred twenty and fourth Olympiad. He was treacherously slain by *Ptolomy Ceramus*, at an Altar called *Argos*; having (as is said) been warned before by an Oracle, to beware of *Argos*, as the fatal place of his death. But I never have read that any mans life hath been preserved, or any mischance avoided by the predictions of such Divellish Oracles. Rather I beleieve, that many such predictions of the Heathen gods, have been ante-dated by their Priests; or by others, which devised them after the event.

*Antiochus Soter*, the son and heir of this *Seleucus*, was dearly beloved of his father: who surrendered unto him his own wife *Stratonica*, when he understood how much the young Prince was enamoured on her. Wherefore *Ptolomy Ceramus* had great cause to fear, that the death of *Seleucus* would not be unrevengeed by this his Successor. But *Antiochus* was contented to be pacified, either with gifts, or perhaps only with faire words, containing himself within *Asia*; and letting *Ceramus* enjoy that quietly, which he

Genebrard. l. 2.  
J. J. Mart. in  
Paran.

Dim. 11. 6.

\* Aug. de civit.  
Dei. lib. 18. c. 42.

a J. J. Mart. l. 12.  
cap. 2.  
Concerning  
that Book  
which now  
goes under  
the name of  
Arrianus; many  
learned  
men, & among  
the rest, Lado-  
vick Viner,  
hold suspicion  
that it is  
counterfeit;  
& the invention  
of some late  
Author. Surely  
if it were to  
be suspected in  
the time of  
Viner; it may  
be now much  
more justly  
suspected:  
since a new Edition of it is come forth, purged from faults, (as the Papists term those Books, wherein they have changed what they  
please) and set forth by Millendropius at Cologne, An. Dom. 1598.

he had purchased in Europe, with the blood of Seleucus. It is said of this Antiochus, that although he married with the Queen Stratonice in his fathers life, yet out of modesty he forbore to embrace her, till his father was dead. So that perhaps his incestuous love was partly, if not chiefly, the cause of his not prosecuting that revenge, whereunto Nature should have urged him. Afterwards he had wars with Antigonus Gonatas, and with Nicomedes King of Bithynia. Also Lutarus and Leonorius, Kings or Captains of the Gauls, were set upon him by the same Nicomedes. With these he fought a great battell, wherein, though otherwise the enemies had all advantage against him, yet by the terror of his Elephants, which affrighted both their horses and them, he won the victory. He took in hand an enterprise against Ptolomy Philadelphus: but finding ill success in the beginning, he soon gave it over. To this King Antiochus Soter it was, that Berenice the Chaldean dedicated his History of Assyria; the same which hath since been excellently falsified by the Friar Amnius. He left behind him one son, called Antiochus Theos; and one daughter, called Apame, that was married unto the King of Cyrene. So he died about the end of the hundred twenty and ninth Olympiad, or the beginning of the Olympiad following, in the fiftieth or one and fiftieth year of the Kingdom of the Greeks, when he had reigned nineteen years.

Antiochus, surnamed Theos, or the god, had this vain and impious title given to him, by flattery of the Milesians; whom he delivered from Timarchus, a Tyrant that oppressed them. He held long and difficult, but fruitless war with Ptolomy Philadelphus King of Egypt; which finally he compounded, by taking to wife Berenice the daughter of Ptolomy.

Of these two Kings, and of this Lady Berenice, S. Hierom and other Interpreters have understood that Prophecy of Daniel: The Kings daughter of the South shall come to the King of the North to make an agreement; and that which followeth.

Ptolomy Philadelphus was a great lover of Peace and Learning; and (setting apart his incestuous marriage with his own sister Arsinoe) a very excellent Prince; howsoever, the worst of all that race. It was he that built, and furnished with Books, that famous Library in Alexandria: which to adorn, and to honour the more, he sent unto Eleazar, then high Priest of the Jews, for the Books of Moses and other Scriptures. The benefits of this King unto the Jews had formerly been very great: for he had set at liberty as many of them, as his father held in slavery throughout all Egypt; and he had sent unto the Temple of God in Jerusalem very rich Presents. Wherefore Eleazar, yielding to the Kings desire, presented him with an Hebrew copie: which Ptolomy caused to be translated into Greek, by seventy two of the most grave and learned persons that could be found among all the Tribes. In this number of the 72. Interpreters, or (as they are commonly called) the Seventy, Jesus the son of Syrach, is thought by Genebrard to have been one: who that he lived in this Age, it seems to me very sufficiently proved by Jansenius, in his Preface unto Ecclesiasticus. The whole passage of this business between Philadelphus and the high Priest, was written (as Josephus affirms) by Arrianus, that was employed therein. Forty years Ptolomy Philadelphus was King; reckoning the time wherein he jointly reigned with his father. He was exceedingly beloved of his people; and highly magnified by Poets, and other Writers. Towards his end he grew more voluptuous, than he had been in his former years: in which time he boasted, that he alone had found out the way how to live for ever. If this had been referred unto his honourable deeds, it might have stood with reason: otherwise, the Court, with which he was often troubled, was enough to teach him his own error. He was the first of the Kings, derived from Alexanders Successors, that entered into League with the Romans: as also his off-spring was the last among those Royall Families, which by them was rooted up.

Antiochus Theos had another wife, called Laodice, at such time as he married with Berenice the daughter of this Ptolomy. After his second marriage, he used his first wife with no better regard, than if she had been his Concubine. Laodice hated him for this: yet adventured not to seek revenge, until her own son Seleucus Callinicus was of ability to be King. This was two or three years after the death of Ptolomy Philadelphus: at what time she poisoned her husband Theos; and, by permission of Seleucus her son, murdered

Berenice,

Berenice, together with a sonne that she had borne to Antiochus. Josephus reports, that Berenice saved her selfe, together with the young Prince her child, a while in the Sanctuary at Daphne: and that not only some Cities of Asia prepared to succour her, but her brother Ptolomy Evergetes, King of Egypt, came to rescue her with an Army, though too late, for she was slain before.

With such cruelties Seleucus Callinicus, succeeding unto his Father, that had fifteen years been King, began his reign. His subjects were highly offended at his wicked nature; which they discovered in his first entrance. Wherefore it was like, that his Estate would have been much endangered, if Ptolomy Evergetes, who came against him, had not been drawn backe into his owne Countrey, by some Commotions there in hand. For there were none that would beare armes against Ptolomy, in defence of their owne King: but rather they sided with the Egyptians, who tooke Laodice the Kings mother, and rewarded her with death as she had well deserved. Wherefore Seleucus, being freed from this invasion, by occasion of those domestical troubles which recalled Evergetes home into Egypt, went about a dangerous piece of worke, even to make Warre upon his owne subjects, because of their bad affection towards him; when as it had bin much better, by well deserving, to have changed their hatred into love. A great Fleet he prepared: in furnishing and manning whereof he was at such charges, that he scarce left putting to Sea, did meet with such a tempest, as devoured all save himselfe, and a very few of his friends that hardly escaped. This calamity, having left him nothing else in a manner than this naked body, turned nevertheless to his great good; as anon after it seemed. For when his subjects understood in what sort the gods (as they conceived it) had punished him for his offences: they had commiseration of his Estate; and had punished him for his offences: they had commiseration of his Estate; and had presumed that he would thenceforth become a new man, offered unto him their service with great alacrity. This revived him, and filled him with such spirit; as thinking himselfe well enough able to deale with the Egyptians, he made ready a mighty Army for that purpose. But his fortune was no better at Land, than it had beene at Sea. Hee was vanquished by Ptolomy in a great battell: whence he escaped hardly; no better attended, than after his late shipwracke. Hastening therefore backe to Antioch, and fearing that the enemy would soone be at his heeles, He wrote unto his brother Antiochus Hierax, who lay then in Asia, praying him to bring succour with all speed; and promising, in recompence of his faith and diligence, the Dominion of a great part of Asia. Antiochus was then but fourteen years old, but extremely ambitious; and therefore glad of such an occasion to make himselfe great. Hee levied a mighty Army of the Gauls; wherewith he set forward to help his brother, or rather to get what he could for himselfe. Hereof Ptolomy being advertised: and having no desire to put himselfe in danger more than he needed; tooke Truce with Seleucus for tenne years. No sooner was Seleucus freed from this care of the Egyptian War, but his brother Antiochus came upon him, and needs would fight with him, as knowing himselfe to have the better Army. So Seleucus was vanquished againe; and saved himselfe with so few about him, that he was verily supposed to have perished in the battell. Thus did Gods Justice take revenge of those murders by which the Crowne was purchased; and setled (as might have beene thought) on the head of this bloody King. Antiochus was very glad to heare of his brothers death, as if thereby he had purchased his hearts desire. But the Gauls, his Mercenaries, were gladder then hee. For when he led them against Eumenes King of Pergamus, being in hope to get honour by making a Conquest in the beginning of his Reigne: these perfidious Barbarians tooke counsell against him, and devised how to snuffe him of all that he had. They thought it very likely, that if there were none of the Royall house to make head against them; it would be in their power, to doe what should be best pleasing to themselves, in the lower Asia. Wherefore they laid hands on Antiochus, and enforced him to ransom himselfe with money; as if he had beene their lawfull Prisoner. Neither were they so contented; but made him enter into such Composition with them, as tended but little to his honour. In the meane while Seleucus had gathered a new Armie; and prepared once more to try his fortune against his brother. Eumenes hearing of this, thought the season fit for himselfe, to make his profit of their discord. Antiochus fought with him, and was beaten: which is no great marvel, since he had great reason to stand in no lesse feare of the Gauls, his own souldiers, well, since he had great reason to stand in no lesse feare of the Gauls, his own souldiers, than

O o o o o

than of the enemy with whom he had to deal. After this, *Bumenes* won much in *Asia*, whilst *Antiochus* went against his brother. In the second battell, fought between the brethren, *Seleucus* had the upper hand: and *Antiochus Hierax* or the Hawk, (which surname was given him, because he sought his prey upon every one, without care whether he were provoked or not) soared away as far as he could, both from his brother, and from his own *Gaules*. Having fetcht a great compassse through *Meopotamia* and *Armenia*, He fell at length in *Cappadocia*; where his father-in-law King *Artamenes* took him up. He was entertained very lovingly in outward shew, but with a meaning to betray him. This he soon perceived: and therefore betook him to his wings again, though he knew not well, which way to bend his flight. At length he resolved to bestow upon himself upon *Ptolemy*; his own conscience telling him, what evil he had meant unto *Seleucus* his brother, and therefore what little good he was reciprocally to expect at his hands. Infidelity can finde no sure harbour. *Ptolemy* well understood the perfidious and turbulent nature of this *Hierax*. Wherefore he laid him up in close prison: whence though by means of an harlot, he got out; yet flying from his keepers, he fell into the hands of thieves, by whom he was murdered. Near about the same time died *Seleucus*. The *Parthians* and *Bactrians* had rebelled against him, during his wars with his brother. He therefore made a journey against *Asaces* founder of the *Parthian* Kingdom: where in his evil fortune, or rather Gods vengeance, adhered so closely to him, that he was taken prisoner. *Asaces* dealt friendly with him, and dismissed him, having every way given him royall entertainment: but in returning home, he brake his neck by a fall from his horse, and so ended his unhappy reign of twenty years. He had to wife *Laodice* the sister of *Andromachus*, one of his most trusty Captains: which was father unto that *Achæus*, who making his advantage of this affinity, became shortly after (as he styled himself) a King; though rather indeed, a great troubler of the world in those parts. By *Laodice* he had two sons; *Seleucus* the third, surnamed *Ceraunus*; and *Antiochus* the third, called afterwards the Great.

*Seleucus Ceraunus* reigned only three years; in which time he made War upon *Attalus* the first, that was King of *Pergamus*. Being weak of body through sickness, and in want of money, he could not keep his men of War in good order: and finally he was slain by treason of *Nicanor* and *Apaturus* a *Gaul*. His death was revenged by *Achæus*, who slew the Traitors, and took charge of the Army: which he ruled very wisely, and faithfully a while; *Antiochus* the brother of *Seleucus* being a Child.

## §. II.

The beginning of the Great *Antiochus* his reign. Of *Ptolemy* *Euergetes*, and *Philopater*, Kings of *Egypt*. War between *Antiochus* and *Philopater*. The rebellion of *Molo*: an expedition of *Antiochus* against him. The recontinuance of *Antiochus* his Egyptian war: with the passages between the two Kings: the victory of *Ptolemy*, and peace concluded. Of *Achæus*, and his rebellion; his greatness, and his fall. *Antiochus* his expedition against the *Parthians*, *Bactrians*, and *Indians*. Somewhat of the Kings reigning in *India*, after the death of the Great *Alexander*.

*Antiochus* was scarcely fifteen years old, when he began his reign, which lasted five and thirty years. In his minority, he was wholly governed by one *Hermias*, an ambitious man, and one which maligned all vertue, that he found in any of the Kings faithful servants. This vile quality in a Counsellor of such great place, how harmful it was unto his Lord, and finally unto himself; the successe of things will shortly discover.

Soon after the beginning of *Antiochus* his reign, *Ptolemy* *Euergetes* King of *Egypt* died, and left his heir *Ptolemy* *Philopater*, a young Boy likewise, as hath elsewhere been remembered. This was that *Euergetes*, who relieved *Artatus* & the *Achæans*: who afterwards took part with *Cleomenes*; & lovingly entertained him, when he was chased out of *Greece* by *Antigonus* *Genatas*. He annexed unto his Dominion the Kingdom of *Cyrene* by taking to wife *Berenice*, the daughter of King *Magus*. He was the third of the *Ptolemies*; and the last good king of that race. The name of *Euergetes*, or the doer of good, was given to him by the *Egyptians*; not so much for the great spoils which he brought home, after his victories

stories in *Syria*; as for that he recovered some of those Images or Idols, which *Cambyses*, when he conquered *Egypt*, had carried into *Persia*. He was ready to have made War upon the *Jews*, for that *Onias* their high Priest, out of meer covetousness of money, refused to pay unto him his yearly tribute of 20. talents: but he was pacified by the wisdom of *Josephus* a *Jew*, to whom afterwards he let in farm the Tributes and customes that belonged unto him in those parts of *Syria* which he held. For *Calosyria*, with *Palestina*, and all those parts of the Country that lay nearest unto *Egypt*, were held by the *Egyptians*; either as having fallen to the share of *Ptolemy* the first, at such time as the great *Antigonus* was vanquished and slain in the battell at *Ipsus*; or as being won by this *Euergetes*, in the troublesome and unhappy reign of *Seleucus* *Cabanicus*. The victories of this *Euergetes* in *Syria*, with the contentions that lasted for many succeeding ages between the *Ptolemies* and the *Seleucids*; were all foretold by *Daniel* in the Prophecie before cited, which is expounded by *S. Hierome*. This *Ptolemy* *Euergetes* reigned six & twenty years; and died towards the end of the hundred thirty and ninth Olympiad. It may seem by that which we find in the Prologue unto *Jesús* the son of *Syrach* his book, that he should have reigned a much longer time. For *Syrach* there saith that he came into *Egypt* in the eight and thirtieth year, when *Euergetes* was King: it may therefore be, That either this King reigned long together with his father: or that those eight and thirty years were the years of *Jesús* his own age; if not perhaps reckoned (as the *Jews* did otherwhiles reckon) from some notable accident that had befallen them.

Not long after the death of *Euergetes*, *Hermias* the Counsellor, and in a manner the Protector of King *Antiochus*, incited his Lord unto war against the *Egyptians*; for the recovery of *Calosyria* and the Countries adjoining. This counsell was very unseasonably given, when *Molo*, the Kings Lieutenant in *Media*, was broken out into rebellion, and sought to make himself absolute Lord of that rich Country: Nevertheless *Hermias*, being more forward than wise, maintained stiffly, that it was most expedient and agreeable with the Kings honour, to send forth against a rebellious Captain, other Captains that were faithfull; whilst he in person made War upon one that was like him; a King. No man durst gain-say the resolution of *Hermias*; who therefore sent *Xenetas* an *Achæan*, with such forces as he thought expedient, against the Rebel; whilst in the mean season an Army was preparing for the Kings expedition into *Calosyria*. The King having marched from *Amases* to *Laodicea*, and so over the Defaits into the Vally of *Massia*, between the Mountains of *Libanus* and *Anti-libanus*; found his way there stopped by *Theodorus* an *Ætolian*, that served under *Ptolemy*. So he consumed the time there a while to none effect: and then came news, that *Xenetas* his Captain, was destroyed with his whole Army; and *Molo* thereby become Lord of all the Country, as far as unto *Babylon*.

*Xenetas*, whilst he was yet on his journey, and drew near to the River of *Tygris*; received many advertisements, by such as fled over unto him from the Enemy, That the followers of *Molo* were, for the most part, against their wils drawn by their Commander to bear arms against their King. This report was not altogether false; but *Molo* himself stood in some doubt lest his followers would leave him in times of necessity. *Xenetas* therefore making shew, as if he had prepared to pass the River by Boats in face of his enemy; left in the night time such as he thought meet to defend his Camp; and with all the flour of his Army went over *Tygris*, in a place ten miles lower than *Molo* his Camp. *Molo* heard of this, and sent forth his horse to give impediment: but hearing that *Xenetas* could not so be stopped, He himself dislodged, and took his journey towards *Media*, leaving all his baggage behind him in his Camp. Whether he did this, as distrustful the faith of his own souldiers; or whether thereby to deceive his Enemy; the great folly of *Xenetas* made his stratagem prosperous. For *Xenetas*, having born himself proudly before, upon the countenance of *Hermias*, by whom he was advanced unto this charge; did now presume that all should give way to his authority, without putting him to much trouble of using the sword. Wherefore he suffered his without least with the provisions which they found ready in the forsaken Camp: or rather he commanded them so to do, by making Proclamation, That they should cherish themselves against the journey, which he intended to take the next day; in pursuit of the Rebels that fled. And to the same purpose he busied himself, in transporting the remainder of his Army, which he had left on the other side of *Tygris*. But *Molo* went

no further that day, than he could easily return the same night. Wherefore understanding what good rule the Kings men kept: he made such haste back unto them, that he came upon them early in the morning; whilst they were yet heavy with the Wine and other good cheer that they had spent at supper. So *Xenetas* and a very few with him, died fighting in defence of the Camp: the rest were slaughtered without making resistance; and many of them ere they were perfectly awake. Likewise the Camp on the other side of Tygris, was easily taken by *Molo*: the Captains flying thence, to save their own lives. In the heat of this victory, the Rebel marched unto *Seleucia*, which he presently took: and, mastering within a little while the Province of *Babylonia*, and all the Countrey down to the red Sea, or Bay of *Persia*, He hastened unto *Susa*; where at his first coming, he won the City: but failing to take the Castle that was exceeding strong, returned back to *Seleucia*, there to give order concerning this business.

The report of these things coming to *Antiochus*, whilst he lay (as is said before) in the Vale of *Musyras*; filled him with great sorrow, and his Camp with trouble. He took counsell what to do in this needfull case; and was well advised by *Epigenes*, the best man of War he had about him, to let alone this enterprise of *Callosyria*, and bend his forces thither, where more need required them. This counsell was put in execution with all convenient haste. Yet was *Epigenes* dismissed by the way, and soon after slain, by the practice of *Hermias*; who could not endure to hear good counsell given contrary to his own good liking and allowance. In the journey against *Molo*, the name and presence of the King was more available, than any odds which he had of the Rebel in strength. *Molo* distrusted his own followers: and thought, that neither his late good success, nor any other consideration, would serve to hold them from returning to the Kings obedience, if once they beheld his person. Wherefore he thought it safest for him to assail the Kings Camp in the night time. But going in hand with this, He was discovered by some that fled over from him to the King. This caused him to return back to his Camp: which by some error, took alarm at his return; and was hardly quiered, when *Antiochus* appeared in fight. The King was thus forward in giving battell to *Molo*, upon confidence which he had that many would revolt unto him. Neither was he deceived in this his belief. For not a few men or Ensignes: but all the left wing of the enemy which was opposite unto the King, changed side forthwith as soon as ever they had sight of the Kings person; and were ready to do him service against *Molo*. This was enough to have won the victory: but *Molo* shortened the work, by killing himself; as did also divers of his friends, who for fear of torments, prevented the Hang-man with their own swords.

After this Victory came joyfull newes, that the Queen *Laudice* daughter of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, which was married unto *Antiochus* a while before, had brought forth a son. Fortune seemed bountifull unto the King: and therefore he purposed to make what use he could, of her friendly disposition while it lasted. Being now in the Eastern parts of his kingdom, He judged it convenient to visit his frontiers, were it only to terrifie the Barbarians, that bordered upon him. Herunto his Counsellor *Hermias* gave assent: not so much respecting the Kings honour, as considering what good might thereby happen to himself. For if it should come to passe, that the King were taken out of the world by any casualty: then made he no doubt of becoming Protector to the young Prince; and thereby of lengthning his own Government. *Antiochus* therefore went againk *Arbaces*, who reigned among the *Atropatians*; having the greatest part of his kingdom situate between the *Caspian* and *Euxine* Sea. This barbarous King was very old and fearfull; and therefore yielded unto whatsoever conditions it pleased *Antiochus* to lay upon him. So in this journey *Antiochus* got honour, such as well contented him; and then returned homewards. Upon the way, a Physician of his brake with him as concerning *Hermias*; informing him truly how odious he was to the people; and how dangerous he would be shortly unto the Kings own life. *Antiochus* beleaved this, as having long suspected the same *Hermias*, but not daring for fear of him to utter his suspicions. It was therefore agreed; that he should be made away on the sudden: which was done, he being trained forth by a sleight, a good way out of the Camp, and there killed without warning or dispute. The King needed not to have used so much art in riding his hands of a man so much detested. For howsoever he seemed gracious whilst he was alive: yet they that for fear had been most obsequious to him

him; whilst he was in case to do them hurt, was as ready as the foremost, to speak of him as he had deserved, when once they were secure of him; yea, his wife and children, lying then at *Apamea*, were stoned to death by the wives and children of the Citizens; whose indignation brake forth the more outrageously, the longer that it had been concealed.

About these times, *Achæus* (of whom we spake before) thinking that *Antiochus* might happen to perish in some of these expeditions which he took in hand; was bold to set a Diademe upon his own head, and take upon him as a King. His purpose was to have invaded *Syria*: but the fame of *Antiochus* his returning thitherwards, made him quit the enterprise; and study to set some handsome colour on his former presumption. It is very strange that *Antiochus* neither went against *Achæus*, nor yet dissembled the notice which he had taken of these his traitorous purposes: but wrote unto him, signifying that he knew all, and upbraiding him with such infidelity, as any offender might know to be unpardonable. By these means he emboldened the Traitor: who being already detected, might better hope to maintain his former actions by strong hand, than to excuse them or get pardon by submission. *Antiochus* had at that time a vehement desire to recover *Callosyria*, or what else he could, of the Dominions of *Ptolemy Philopater* in those parts. He began with *Seleucia*, a very strong City near to the mouth of the River *Orontes*; which ere long he won, partly by force, partly by corrupting to win bribes the Captains that lay therein. This was that *Seleucia*, whereto *Antigonus the Great*, who founded it, gave the name of *Antigonia*: but *Seleucus* getting it shortly after, called it *Seleucia*; and *Ptolemy Evergettes* having lately won it, might if it had pleased him, have changed the name into *Ptolemais*. Such is the vanity of men, that hope to purchase an endless memoriall unto their names, by works proceeding rather from their greatness, than from their virtue; which therefore no longer are their own, than the same greatness hath continuance. *Theodorus* the *Ætolian*, he that before had opposed himself to *Antiochus*, and defended *Callosyria* in the behalf of *Ptolemy*, was now grown sorry, that he had used so much faith & diligence, in service of an unthankful and luxurious Prince. Wherefore as a Mercenary, he began to have regard to his own profit: which thinking to find greater, by applying himself unto him that was (questionlesse) the more worthy of these two Kings, he offered to deliver up unto *Antiochus*, the Cities of *Tyrus* and *Ptolemais*. Whilst he was devising about this treason, and had already sent messengers to King *Antiochus*: his practice was detected, and he besieged in *Ptolemais* by one of *Ptolemies* Captains, that was more faithfull than himself. But *Antiochus* halting to his rescue, vanquished this Captain who met him on the way: and afterwards got possession, not only of *Tyrus* and *Ptolemais*, with a good Fleet of the Egyptian Kings that was in those Havens: but of so many other Towns in that Countrey, as emboldened him to think upon making a journey into *Egypt* it self. *Agathocles* and *Sosibius* bore all the sway in *Egypt* at that time: *Ptolemy* himself being loth to have his pleasures interrupted, with business of so small importance, as the safety of his Kingdom. Wherefore these two agreed together, to make provision as hastily; and yet as secretly as might be for the War: and nevertheless at the same time, to presse *Antiochus* with daily Embassadours to some good agreement. There came in the heat of this business, Embassadors from *Rhodes*, *Byzantium*, and *Cyzicus*, as likewise from the *Ætolians*; according to the usuall courtesie of the *Greeks*, desiring to take up the quarrell.

These were all entertained in *Memphis*, by *Agathocles* and *Sosibius*: who intreated them to deal effectually with *Antiochus*. But whilst this treaty lasted, great preparations were made at *Alexandria* for the War: wherein these two Counsellors periwaded to themselves reasonably, that the victory would be their own; if they could get for money, a sufficient number of the *Greeks* to take their parts. *Antiochus* heard only what was done at *Memphis*, and how desirous the Governours of *Egypt* were to be at quiet: wherunto he gave the readier belief, not only for that he knew the disposition of *Ptolemy*, but because the *Rhodiens*, and other Embassadors, coming from *Memphis*, discoursed unto him all after one manner, as being all deceived by the cunning of *Agathocles* & his fellow: *Antiochus* therefore having wearied himself, at the long siege of a Town called *Dara*, which he could not win: and being desirous to refresh himself and his Army in *Selucia*, during the winter which then came on; granted to the Egyptian a Truce for four months;

moneths, with promise that he would be ready to hearken unto equal Conditions, when they should be offered. It was not his meaning to be so courteous, as he would fain have seemed, but only to lull his enemies asleep, whilst he took time to refresh himself; and to bring *Achens* to some good order, whose treason daily grew more open and violent. The same negligence which he thought the *Egyptian* would have used, He used himself; as presuming, that when time of the year better served, little force would be needfull; for that the Towns would voluntarily yeeld unto him, since *Ptolemy* provided not for their defence. Nevertheless, he gave audience to the Embassadors, and had often conference with those that were sent out of *Egypt*: pleasing himself well, to dispute about the justice of his quarrell; which he purposed shortly to make good by the sword, whether it were just or no. He said, that it was agreed between *Selencus* his Ancestor, and *Ptolemy* the son of *Lagi*, That all *Syria*, if they could win it from *Antigonus*, should be given in possession to *Selencus*; and that this bargain was afterwards ratified, by generall consent of all the Confederates, after the battell at *Ipsus*. But *Ptolemies* men would acknowledge no such bargain. They said that *Ptolemy* the son of *Lagi*, had won *Calefryia*, and the Provinces adjoining, for himself: as also that he had sufficiently gratified *Selencus*, by lending him forces to recover his Province of *Babylon*, and the Countreys about the River of *Euphrates*. Thus whilst neither of them greatly cared for peace; they were in the end of their disposition, as far from concluding, as at the beginning. *Ptolemy* demanded restitution; *Antiochus* thought, that he had not as yet gotten all that was his own: Also *Ptolemy* would needs have *Achens* comprehended in the League between them, as one of their Confederates; But *Antiochus* would not endure to hear of this, exclaiming against it as a shameful thing, that one King should offer to deal with another, as to take his rebell into protection, and seek to joyn him in Confederacy with his own Sovereign Lord. When the Truce was expired, and *Antiochus* prepared to take the field again: contrary to his expectation, he was informed, That *Ptolemy*, with a very puissant Army, was coming up against him out of *Egypt*. Setting forward therefore to meet with the Enemy, he was encountered on the way by those Captains of *Ptolemy*, that had resisted him the year before. They held against him the passages of *Libanus*, whence nevertheless he drave them: and proceeding onward in his journey, won so many places, that he greatly encreased his reputation; and thereby drew the *Arabians*, with divers of the bordering people, to become his followers. As the two Kings drew near together: many Captains of *Ptolemy* forsook his pay, and fled over to *Antiochus*. This notwithstanding, the *Egyptian* had the courage to meet his enemy in the field. The battell was fought at *Raphia*: where it was not to be decided, whether the *Egyptians* or *Asiatiques* were the better Souldiers, (for that the strength of both Armies consisted in Mercenaries, chiefly of the *Greeks*, *Thracians*, and *Gaulers*;) but whether of the Kings was the more fortunate. *Ptolemy*, with *Arjinoe* his Sister and Wife, rode up and down encouraging his men; the like did *Antiochus* on the other side: each of them rehearsing the brave deeds of his Ancestors; as not having of their own, whereby to value themselves. *Antiochus* had the more Elephants, as also his being of *Asia*, had they been fewer, would have beaten those of *Africa*. Wherefore by the advantage of those beasts, He drave the Enemies before him, in that part of the battell wherein he fought himself. But *Ptolemy* had the better men by whose valour he brake the Grosse of his enemies battell, and won the victory; whilst *Antiochus* was heedlessly following upon those, whom he had compelled to retire. *Antiochus* had brought into the field above seventy thousand foot, and six thousand horse; whereof though he lost scarce ten thousand foot, and not four hundred horse; yet the fame of his overthrow took from him all those places which he had lately won. When therefore he was returned home to *Antioch*: He began to stand in fear, lest *Ptolemy* and *Achens*, setting upon him both at once, should put him in danger of his whole Estate. This caused him to send Embassadors to the *Egyptian*, to treat of peace; which was readily granted; it being much against the nature of *Ptolemy* to vex himself thus with the tedious businesse of War. So *Ptolemy* having staid three moneths in *Syria*, returned home into *Egypt*, clad with the reputation of a Conqueror; to the great admiration of his subjects and of all those that were acquainted with his voluptuous and slothfull condition.

*Achens* was not comprised in the league between these two Kings: or if he had been

been included therein; yet would not the *Egyptian* have taken the pains, of making a second expedition for his sake. The best was, that he thought himself strong enough, if fortune were not too much against him, to deal with *Antiochus*. Neither was he confident without great reason: for besides his many victories, whereby he had gotten all that belonged unto *Antiochus* on this side of *Taurus*, he had also good successe: gainst *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*; that was an able man of war, and commanded a strong Army. Neither was he, as *Molo* the Rebell had been, one of mean regard otherwise, and carried beyond himself by apprehending the vantage of some opportunity: but Cousin-german to the King, as hath been shewed before; and now lately the Kings brother-in-law, by taking to wife a younger daughter of the same *Antiochus* King of *Pontus*, which was also called *Laodice*, as was her sister the Queen, *Antiochus* his wife. These things had added Majesty unto him; and had made his followers greatly to respect him, even as one to whom a Kingdom was belonging. Neither made it a little for him, That King *Ptolemy* of *Egypt* held him in the nature of a friend; and that King *Antiochus* was now lately vanquished in the battell at *Raphia*, and had thereby lost all his gettings in *Syria*. But all these hopes and likelihoods came to nothing: for the King of *Pontus*, if he would meddle in that quarrell between sons-in-law, had no reason to take part against the more honourable. As for the *Egyptian*, he was not only slothfull, but hindered by a rebellion of his own subjects, from helping his friends abroad. For the people of *Egypt*, of whom *Ptolemy*, contrary to the manner of his Progenitors, had armed a great number to serve in the late expedition; began to entertain a good opinion of their own valour, thinking it not inferior to the *Macedonian*. Hereupon they refused to suffer as much as formerly they had done: since they less esteemed, than they had done, the force of the Kings mercenary *Greeks*; which had hitherto kept them in straight subjection. Thus brake out a war between the King and his subjects: wherein though the ill-guided force of the multitude was finally broken; yet King *Ptolemy* thereby wasted much of his strength, and much of his time, that might have been spent, as he thought, much better in revelling; or, as others thought, in succouring *Achens*. As for *Antiochus*, He had no sooner made his peace with the *Egyptian*, than he turned all his care to the preparation of war against *Achens*. To this purpose he entered into League with *Attalus*; that so he might distract the forces of his Rebell, and find him work on all sides. Finally, his diligence and fortune were such, that within a while he had pent up *Achens* into the City of *Sardes*; where he held him about two years besieged. The City was very strong, and well vidualled: so as there appeared not, when the second year came, any greater likelihood of taking it, than in the first years siege. In the end, one *Lagoras* a *Cretan* found means how to enter the Town. The Castle itself was upon a very high rock, and in a manner impregnable; as also the Town-wall adjoining to the Castle, in that part which was called the *Sarre*, was in like manner situate upon steep Rocks, and almost inaccessible; that hung over a deep bottom, whereto the dead carcasses of Horses, and other beasts, yea, and sometimes of men, used to be thrown. Now it was observed by *Lagoras*, that the Ravens and other birds of prey, which haunted that place by reason of their food which was there never wanting, used to fly up unto the top of the Rocks, and to pitch upon the walls, where they rested without any disturbance. Observing this often, he reasoned with himself, and concluded that those parts of the wall were left unguarded, as being thought unapproachable. Hereof he informed the King: who approved his judgement, and gave unto him the leading of such men, as he desired for the accomplishing of the enterprise. The successe was agreeable to that which *Lagoras* had afore conceived: and though with much labour, yet without resistance, he scaled those rocks, and whilst a general assault was made) entered the town in that part, which was at other times unguarded; then unthought upon. In the same place had the *Persians*, under *Cyrus*, gotten into *Sardes*; when *Croesus* thought himself secure on that side. But the Citizens took not warning by the example of a losse many ages past: and therefore out of memory. *Achens* held still the Castle: which not only seemed by nature impregnable, but was very well stored with all necessaries, & manned with a sufficient number of such as were to him well assured. *Antiochus* therefore was constrained to waste much time about it: having none other hope to prevail, than by famishing the inclosed. Besides the usuall tediousnesse of expectation, his businesse called him thence away into the higher *Asia*, where the *Bactrians*



*Brians*, and *Parthians* with the *Hyrcanians*, had erected kingdoms taken out of his Dominions, upon which they still incroached. But he thought it not safe, to let *Achaus* break loose again. On the other side there were some Agents of *Ptolemy* the Egyptian, and good friends unto *Achaus*; that made it their whole study, how to deliver this besieged Prince. If they could rescue his person, they cared for no more: but presumed that when he should appear in the Countries under *Taurus*, he would soon have an Army at command, and be strong enough to hold *Antiochus* as hardly to work as at any time before. Wherefore they dealt with one *Bolis* a *Cretan*, that was acquainted well with all the waies in the Countrey, and particularly with the by-paths and exceeding difficult passages among those Rocks, whereon the Castle of *Sardes* stood. Him they tempted with great rewards, which he should receive at the hands of *Ptolemy*, as well as of *Achaus*; to do his best for performance of their desire. He undertook the business: and gave such likely reasons of bringing all to good effect, that they wrote unto *Achaus*, by one *Ariannus*, a trusty messenger, whom *Bolis* found means to convey into the Castle. The faith of these Negotiators *Achaus* held most assured. They also wrote unto him in privie Characters, or Ciphers, wherewith none save he and they were acquainted: whereby he knew, that it was no fained device of his Enemies, in the name of his friends. As for the messenger, he was a trusty fellow, and one whom *Achaus* found by examination, heartily affected unto their side. But the Contents of the Epistle, which were, that he should be confident in the faith of *Bolis*, and of one *Cambylus* whom *Bolis* had won unto the business, did somewhat trouble him. They were men to him unknown: and *Cambylus* was a follower of *Antiochus*; under whom he had the

Among these few I do not except one, calling himself *Eudaman*. *John Andrew* *Cretan*, who is one of his late shameless li-bels, wherein he traduced our King, Religion, & Countrey, with all the good and worthy men of whom he could learn the names, shall by inferring my name, be belied in calling me a *Parthian*, and one that hath been dangerous unto my Sovereign. It is an honour to be ill spoken of by so diligent a supporter of Treasons, and Architect of Lies in regard whereof I may not deny him the commendation of *Creticisme* no less voluminous, than the immultiplicity of names beyond any the *Cretians* in elder times, there were alwayes Lyars, evil beasts, and flow bellies, as *Polybius* li.

command of those *Cretans*, which held one of the Forts that blocked up the Castle of *Sardes*. Never theles other wayes to escape he saw none, than by putting himself to some adventure. When the messenger had therefore passed often to and fro, it was at length concluded, That *Bolis* himself should come speak with *Achaus*, and conduct him forth. There was none other than good faith meant by any of the rest, save only by *Bolis* and *Cambylus*, which were *Cretans*, and (as all their Countermen, I same few excepted, have been, and still are,) false knaves. These two held a consultation together, that was, as a *Polybius* observes it, rightly *Cretical*: neither concerning the safety of him whose deliverance they undertook, nor touching the discharge of their own faith: but only how to get most with least ado, and danger to themselves. Briefly they concluded, That first of all they would equally share between them ten Talents, which they had already received in hand: and then, That they would reveal the matter to *Antiochus*, offering to deliver *Achaus* unto him, if they might be well rewarded both with present money, and with promise of consideration answerable to the greatnesse of such a service, when it should be dispatched. *Antiochus* hearing this promise of *Cambylus*, was no lesse glad, than were the friends of *Achaus* well pleased with the comfortable promises of *Bolis*. At length when all things were in readines on both sides, and that *Bolis* with *Ariannus* was to get up into the Castle, and convey *Achaus* thence: He first went with *Cambylus* to speak with the King, who gave him very private audience; and confirmed unto him by word of mouth the assurance of his liberrall promises. And after that, putting on the countenance of an honest man, and of one that was faithfull unto *Ptolemy*, whom he had long served, he accompanied *Ariannus* up into the Castle. At his coming thither, he was lovingly entertained, yet questioned at large by *Achaus*, touching all the weight of the business in hand. But he discoursed so well, and with such gravity, that there appeared no reason of distrusting either his faith or judgement. He was an old Souldier, had long been a Captain under *Ptolemy*, and did not thrust himself into this business, but was invited by honourable and faithful men. He had also taken a safe course, in winning (as it seemed) the other Counterman of his, who kept a Fort that stood in their way; and thereby had already sundry times given safe passage and repassage unto *Ariannus*. But against all these comfortable hopes, the importance of so great an adventure stirred up some diffidence: *Achaus* therefore dealt wisely, and said, that he would yet stay in the Castle a little longer: but that he meant to send away with *Bolis* three or four of his friends; from whom when he received better advertisement, concerning the likelihood of the enterprise, then would he issue forth himself. Hereby he took order, not to commit himself wholly unto the faith of a man unknown. But as *Polybius* well notes, he did not consider that

he played the *Cretian* with a man of *Cross*; which is to say, that he had to do with one, whose knavery could not be avoided by circumspection. *Bolis* and *Cambylus* had laid their plots thus, That if *Achaus* came forth alone, then should he easily be taken by the ambush prepared for him: if he were accompanied with many of his friends, then should *Ariannus* be appointed to lead the way, as one that of late had trodden it oft; & *Bolis* following behinde, should have an eye upon *Achaus* to prevent him, not only from escaping in the tumult, but from breaking his own neck, or otherwise killing himself: to the end that being taken alive, he might be to *Antiochus* the more welcome Present. And in such order came they now forth: *Ariannus* going before as Guide; the rest following as the way served, and *Bolis* in the Rear. *Achaus* made none acquainted with his purpose, till the very instant of his departure. Then signified he the matter to his Wife *Laodice*, and comforting her with hope as well as he could, appointed four of his special friends to bear him company. They were all disguised: and one of them alone took upon him to have knowledge of the *Greek* tongue, speaking and answering as need should require for all, as if the rest had been *Barbarians*. *Bolis* followed them, craftily desiring upon his business, and much perplexed. For (saith *Polybius*) though he were of *Ciete*, and prone to surmise any thing to the mischief of another; yet could he not see in the dark, or know which of them was *Achaus*, or whether *Achaus* himself were there. The way was very uneasie, and in some places dangerous, especially to those that knew it not. Wherefore they were faine to stay in divers places, and help one another up or down. But upon every occasion they were all of them very officious towards *Achaus*, leading him their hands, and taking such care of him, as assailely gave *Bolis* to understand, that he was the man: and so by their unseasonable duty, they undid their Lord. When they came to the place where *Cambylus* lay in wait, *Bolis* whistled, and presently clasped *Achaus* about the middle, holding him fast that he could not stir. So they were all taken by the Ambush, and carryed forth with to *Antiochus*, who sat up watching in his Pavilion, expecting the event. The sight of *Achaus*, brought in bound unto him, did so astonish the King that he was unable to speak a word, and soon brake out into weeping. Yet was he before informed of the plot, which might have kept him from admiration: as also the next morning betimes, assembling his friends together, he condemned *Achaus* to a cruel death: which argues, that he was not moved with pity towards this unhappy man. Wherefore it was the general regard of calamities, incident unto great fortunes, that wrought from him these tears; as also the rarity of the accident, that made both him and his friends to wonder: though it be so, that such a course as this of his, in employing two mischievous knaves against one Traitor, doth not rarely succeed well; according to that Spanish Proverb, *A un traydor dos allevos*. The death of *Achaus*, brought such astonishment upon those which held the castle, that after a while they gave up the place and themselves unto the King, whereby he got entire possession of all to him belonging in the lesser *Asia*.

Some years passed after this, ere *Antiochus* was ready for his expedition against the *Parthians* and *Hyrcanians*. The *Parthians* were a little Nation of obscure beginnings, and commonly subject unto those that ruled in *Media*. In the great shuffling for Provinces after the death of *Alexander*, the Government over them was committed by *Antiochus* to one *Philip*, a man of small regard: shortly they fell to *Eumenes*; then to *Antigon*; and from him, together with the *Medes*, to *Seleucus*; under whose posterity they continued untill the Reign of *Seleucus Callinicus*, being ruled by Lieutenants of the Syrian Kings. The lustful insolvency of one of these Lieutenants, together with the misfortune of *Callinicus*, that was vanquished and thought to be slain by the *Gauls*; did stir up *Asiaces*, a noble man of the Countrey, to seek revenge of injuries done; and to animate them to rebell. So he slew the Kings Lieutenant, made himself king of the *Parthians*, and Lord of *Hyrcania*; fought prosperously with those that disturbed him in his beginnings; and took *Seleucus Callinicus* prisoner in battell, whom he royally entertained and dismissed. Hereby he won reputation as a lawfull king: and by good government of his Countrey procured unto himself such love of his Subjects, that his name was continued unto his successors, like as that of the *Ptolemies* in *Egypt*, and that of the *Caesars* afterwards in *Rome*. Much about the same time the *Bactrians* rebelled: though there at length, and all belonging unto the *Seleucids*, beyond *Asiaces*, increased the *Parthians* dominion. Now *Antiochus* went against them with so strong an army, that

that they durst not meet him in plain field; but kept themselves in woods or places of strength, and defended the Straights, and passages of mountains. The resistances they made availed them not. For *Antiochus* had with him so great a multitude, and so well sorted, as he needed not to turn out of the way, from those that lay fortified against him, in Woods and Straights between their mountains; it being easie to spare out of so great a number, as many as fetching a compass about, might either get above the enemies heads; or come behinde, and charge them on the back. Thus did he often employ against them his light armature: wherewith he caused them to dislodge, and give way unto his Phalanx, upon which they durst not adventure themselves in open ground. *Arfaces*, the second of the name, (for his father was dead before this) was then King of *Parthia*: who though he was confident in the fidelity of his own subjects; yet feared to encounter with so mighty an Invader. His hope was, that the bad waies and Desarts would have caused *Antiochus*, when he was at *Ecbatane* in *Media*, to give over the journey, without proceeding much further. This not so falling out: He caused the Wells and Springs in the Wilderness, through which his Enemy must pass, to be dammed up and spoiled. By which means, and the resistance before spoken of, when he could not prevail, He withdrew himself out of the way, suffering the Enemy to take his pleasure for a time, in wasting the Country: wherein without some victory obtained, he could make no long abode. *Antiochus* hereby found, That *Arfaces* was nothing strongly provided for the War. Wherefore he marched through the heart of *Parthia*: and then forward into *Hyrkania* where he wan *Tambrace*, the chief City of that Province. This indignity and many other losses, caused *Arfaces* at length, when he had gathered an Army that seemed strong enough, to adventure a battell. The issue thereof was such as gave together of the Kings hope of accomplishing his desires, without exceeding difficulty. Wherefore *Arfaces* craved peace, and at length obtained it: *Antiochus* thinking it not amiss, to make him a friend, whom he could not make a subject.

The next expedition of *Antiochus*, was against *Euthydemus* King of the *Bactrians*; one that indeed had not rebelled against him or his Ancestors: but having gotten the Kingdome from those that had rebelled, kept it himself. With *Euthydemus* he fought a battell by the River *Arins*, where he had the victory. But the victory was not so greatly to his honour, as was the testimony which he gave of his own private valour, in obtaining it. He was thought that day to have demeaned him more courageously, than did any one man in all his Army. His horse was slain under him; and he himself received a wound in his mouth, whereby he lost some of his teeth. As for *Euthydemus*, He withdrew himself back unto the furthest most parts of his Kingdome, and afterwards protracted the War, seeking how to end it by composition. So Embassadors passed between the Kings: *Antiochus* complaining, That a Country of his was unjustly usurped from him: *Euthydemus* answering, That he had won it from the children of the Usurpers; and further, That the *Bactrians*, a wilde Nation, could hardly be retained in order, save by a King of their own; for that they bordered upon the *Scythians*, with whom if they should join, it would be greatly to the danger of all the Provinces that lay behinde them. These allegations, together with his own weariness, pacified *Antiochus*, and made him willing to grant Peace, upon reasonable Conditions. *Demetrius*, the son of *Euthydemus*, being a goodly gentleman, and employed by his father, as Embassador in this Treaty of Peace, was not a little available unto a good conclusion: for *Antiochus* liked him so well, that he promised to give him in marriage, one of his own daughters; and therewithall permitted *Euthydemus* to retain the Kingdome, causing him nevertheless to deliver up all his Elephants; as also to bind himself by oath, to such Covenants as he thought requisite.

So *Antiochus* leaving the *Bactrian* in quiet, made a journey over *Caucasus*, and came to the borders of *India*, where he renewed with *Sophagisenus*, King of the *Indians*; the society that had been between their Ancestors. The *Indians* had remained subject unto the *Macedonians*: for a little while, after *Alexanders* death. *Eumenes* in his War against *Antigonus*, raised part of his forces out of their Country. But when *Antigonus* (after his victory) turned Westward, and was overbusied in a great civill War: then did one *Sandrocottus*, an *Indian*, stir up his Country men to rebellion: making himself their Captain, and taking upon him, as protector of their liberty. This Of-

fice

fee and Title he soon changed; though not without some contention, into the Name and Majesty of a King. Finally he got unto himself (having an Army of six hundred thousand men) if not all *India*, yet as much of it as had bin *Alexanders*. In this estate, he had well confirmed himself, ere *Selencus Nicator* could find leisure to call him to account. Neither did he faint, or humble himself at the coming of *Selencus*: but met him in the field, as ready to defend his own, so strongly and well appointed, that the *Macedonians* was contented to make both peace and affinity with him; taking only a reward of fifty Elephants. This League, made by the Founders of the *Indian* and *Syrian* kingdoms, was continued by some Offices of love between their children; and now renewed by *Antiochus*: whose number of Elephants were increased thereupon, by the *Indian* king, to an hundred & fifty: as also he was promised, to have some treasure sent after him; which he left one to receive. Thus parted these two great kings. Neither had the *Indians*, from this time forwards in many generations; any business worthy of remembrance with the western countries. The posterity of *Sandrocottus* is thought to have retained that kingdome unto the dayes of *Augustus Caesar*: to whom *Porus*, then reigning in *India*, sent Embassadors with presents, and an Epistle written in *Greek*, wherein among other things, he said; That he had command over six hundred Kings! There is also found, scattered in sundry Authors, the mention of some which held that kingdome: in divers Ages, even unto the time of *Constantine the Great*: being all peradventure of the same race. But *Antiochus*, who in this Treaty with *Sophagisenus* carried himself as the worthy person, receiving presents, and after marching home through *Drangiana* and *Carmania*; with such reputation, that all the Potentates, not only in the higher *Asia*, but on the hither side of *Taurus*, humbled themselves unto him, and called him *The Great*: saw an end of his own greatness within few years ensuing, by presuming to stand upon points with the *Romans*, whose Greatnesse was the same in deed; that his was only in seeming.

## S. III.

The last reign of Ptolemy Philopater in Egypt: with the tragicall end of his favorites, when he was dead. Antiochus prepares to war on the young Ptolemy Epiphanes, the son of Philopater. His irresolution in preparing for divers wars at once. His voyage towards the Hellespont. He seeks to hold amity with the Romans, who make friendly shew to him, intending nevertheless to have war with him. His doings against the Hellespont; which the Romans made the first ground of their quarrell to him.

His expedition being finished, *Antiochus* had leisure to repose himself a while; and study which way to convert the terror of his puissance, for the enlargement of his Empire. Within two or three years *Ptolemy Philopater* died: leaving his son *Ptolemy Epiphanes*, a young Boy, his successor in the kingdome; unlikely by him to be well defended against a neighbour so mighty and ambitious. This *Ptolemy* furnished *Philopater*, there is to say, a lover of his Father, is thought to have had that surname given him in meer derision; as having made away both his Father and Mother. His young years being newly past, his childhood when he began to reign, may seem to discharge him of so horrible a crime, as his Fathers death: yet the beastliness of all his following life, makes him not unlike to have done any mischief, whereof he could be accused. Having won the battell at *Raphiah*, He gave himself over to sensuality; and was wholly governed by a Strumpet called *Agathocles*. At her instigation He murdered his own wife and sister, which had adventured her self with him, in that only dangerous action by him undertaken and performed with honour. The Lieutenant-ships of his Provinces, with all Commands in his Army, and Offices whatsoever, were wholly referred unto the disposition of this *Agathocles*, and her brother *Agathocles*, and *Penanthe* a filthy bawd that was mother unto them both. So these three governed the Realm at their pleasure, to the great grief of all the Country, till *Philopater* died: who having reigned seventeen years, left none other son than *Ptolemy Epiphanes*, a child of five years old, begotten on *Arfinoe* that was his sister and wife. After the Kings death *Agathocles* began to take upon him, as protector of young *Epiphanes*, and Governor of the Land. He assembled the *Macedons* (which were the kings ordinary forces in pay, not all born in *Macedonia*, but the race of those that abode in *Egypt* with *Ptolemy* the first, and

and would not be accounted Egyptians; as neither would the Kings themselves; and bringing forth unto them his sister *Agathocles*, with the young King in her arms; began a solemn oration. He told them, That the deceased father of this their King, had committed the illside into the arms of his sister; but unto the faith of them: on whose valiant right hands, the whole fate of the kingdom did how relye. He besought them therefore that they would be faithful, and, as great need was, defend their King against the treason of one *Tlepolemus*, an ambitious man, who traitorously went about to take the Diademe upon his owne head, being a mere stranger to the Royall blood. Herewithall he produced before them a witness, that should justifie his accusation against *Tlepolemus*. Now though it were so, that he delivered all this with a fained passion of sorrow, and countering teares; yet the *Macedons* that heard him, regarded not any word that he spake; but stood laughing; and talking one to another, what a shamelesse dissembler he was to take so much upon him, as if he knew not how greatly he was hated. And so brake up the Assembly: he that had called it, being scarce aware how *Agathocles* therefore, whom the old Kings favour had made mighty, but neither wise nor well qualified, thought to goe to worke, as had formerly been his manners, by using his authority, to the suppression of those that he distrusted. He halted out of a Temple the mother-in-law of *Tlepolemus*; and cast her into prison. This filled *Alexandria* with rumors, and made the people (though accustomed to suffer greater things, whilst they were committed in the old Kings name) to meet in knots together, and utter one to another their mindes; whereunto they had conceived extreme hate, against these three pernicious Mis-governours of the old King. Besides their consideration of the present injurie done to *Tlepolemus*, they were somewhat also moved with feare of harme, which in way of requirall, *Tlepolemus* was likely to doe unto the Citie. For he was thought a man most unapt for Government, as afterwards he proved, yet no bad Souldier, and well beloved of the Armie. It was also then in his power, to stop the provision of victuals which was to come into *Alexandria*. As these motives wrought with the people, so by the remedy which *Agathocles* used, were the *Macedons* more hastily, and more violently stirred unto uproare. He secretly apprehended one of their number, whom he suspected of conspiracy against him; & delivered him unto a follower of his own, to be examined by torture. This poore Souldier was carried into an inner room of the Palace, and there stripped out of all his apparell to be tormented. But whilst the whippes were brought forth, and all things even in a readinesse for that purpose, there was brought unto the minister of *Agathocles*, a sad report of *Tlepolemus* his being at hand. Hereupon the Examiner, and his Torturers, one after another, went out of the room; leaving *Moeragenes* the Souldier alone by himselfe, and the doors open. He perceiving this, naked as he was, conveyed himselfe out of the Palace, and got unto the *Macedonians* of whom he found some in a Temple there by at dinner. The *Macedonians* were as fierce in maintenance of their Priviledges, as are the *Turkes Janizars*. Being assured therefore that one of their fellows had thus beene used, they fell to Armes in a great rage, and began to force the Palace crying out; That they would see the King, and not leave him in possession of such a dangerous man. The whole multitude in the City, with lowd clamours, made no lesse ado than the Souldiers, though to lesse effect. So the old Bawd *Oenanthe* fled into a Temple: her Sonne and Daughter stayed in the Court, until the King was taken from them; and they, by his permission which he easily gave, and by appointment of those that now had him in their hands, delivered up to the furie of the people. *Agathocles* himselfe was stubbled to death, by some which therein did the office of friends; though in manner of enemies. His sister was dragged naked up and downe the streets; as was also his mother, with all to them belonging: the enraged multitude committed upon them a barbarous execution of justice; biring them, pulling out their eyes, and tearing them in pieces.

These troubles in *Egypt*, served well to stir up King *Antiochus*, who had very good leisure, though he wanted all pretence, to make war upon young *Ptolemy*. *Philip* of *Macedon* had the same desire to get what part he could of the childes estate. But it happened well, that *Ptolemy Philopater* in the *Punicke* Warre, which was now newly ended, had done many good offices unto the *Romans*. Unto them therefore the *Egyptians* addressed themselves, and craved helpe against these two Kings; who though they secretly maligned one the other; yet had entered into covenant to divide betwene them all

all that belonged unto this *Orphan*; whose Father had been Confederate with them both. So \* *M. Lepidus* was sent from *Rome*, to protect from all violence the King of *Egypt*, especially against *Antiochus*. As for the *Macedonian*; He was very soon found bulled, with war at his own doors. *Allo Scopus* the *Atolian*, being a Pensioner to the *Egyptians*, was sent into *Greece* to raise an Army of Mercenaries. What *Lepidus* did in *Egypt*, I do not finde: and therefore think it not improbable, that he was sent thither only one of the three Embassadors, in the beginning of the War with *Philip*, as hath been shewed before. As for *Scopus*; he shortly after went up into *Syria* with his Army; where winning many places, among the rest of his Acts, he subdued the *Jewes*; who seem to have yielded themselves a little before unto *Antiochus*, at such time as they saw him prepare for his War, & despaired of receiving help from *Egypt*. But it was not long, ere all these victories of *Scopus* came to nothing. For the very next year following, which was (according to *Eusebius*) the same year that *Philip* was beaten at *Cynosephala*, *Antiochus* vanquished *Scopus* in battail, and recovered all that had been lost. Among the rest the *Jewes* with great willingness returned under his obedience; and were therefore by him very gently entreated.

The Land of *Egypt* this great King did forbear to invade; and gave it out, that he meant to bestow a daughter of his own in marriage unto *Ptolemy*; either hoping, as may seem, that the Country would willingly submit it self unto him, if this young child should happen to miscarry; or else that greater purchase might be made in the Western parts of *Asia*, whilst *Philip* was held over-laboured by the *Romans*. It appears that he was very much distracted; hunting (as we say) two Hares at once with one Hound. The quarrells between *Attalus*, *Philip* and the *Greeks*, promised to afford him great advantage, if he should bring his Army to the *Hellepont*. On the other side, the state of *Egypt* being such as hath been declared, seemed easily to be swallowed up at once. One while therefore he took what he could get in *Syria*; where all were willing (and the *Jewes* among the rest, though hitherto they had kept faith with the *Egyptians*) to yield him obedience. Another while, letting *Egypt* alone, He was about to make invasion upon *Attalus* his Kingdom; yet suffered himself easily to be perswaded by the *Roman* Embassadors, and desisted from that enterprise. Having thus far gratified the *Romans* He sends Embassadors to the Senate, to conclude a perfect amity betwene him and them. It is not lightly to be overpassed, That these his Embassadours were lovingly entertained at *Rome*; and dismissed, with a Decree and answer of the Senate, altogether to the honour of King *Antiochus*. But this answer of the *Romans* was not sincere; being rather framed according to regard of the Kings good liking, than of their own interest. They had not yet made an end with *Philip*: neither would they gladly be troubled with two great wars at once. Wherefore, not standing much upon the nice examination of what belonged unto their honour, they were content to give good words for the present. In the mean time *Antiochus* fights with *Scopus* in *Syria*, and shortly prepares to win some Towns elsewhere, belonging unto *Ptolemy*; yet withall he sends an Army Westward, intending to make what profit he can of the distractions in *Greece*. Likewise it is considerable, as an argument of his much irresolution, How notwithstanding his attempts upon both of their Kingdoms, he offered one of his daughters to *Ptolemy*, and another to *Eumenes* the son of *Attalus*, newly King of *Pergams*: seeking each of their friendships, at one and the same time, when he sought to make each of them a spoile. Thus was he acting and deliberating at once; being carried with an inexplicable desire of repugnancies, which is a disease of great, and overruling fortunes. Howsoever it was, He sent an Army to *Sardis* by Land; under two of his sons: willing them there to stay for him; whilst he himself with a Fleet of an hundred Gallies, and two hundred other vessels, intended to pass along by the Coasts of *Cilicia* and *Caria*, taking in such places as held for the *Egyptians*. It was a notable act of the *Rhodians*, that, whilst the war of *Philip* lay yet upon their hands, they adventured upon this great *Antiochus*. They sent unto him a proud Embassage: whereby they gave him to understand, That if he passed forward beyond a certain Promontory in *Cilicia*; they would meet him and fight with him; not for any quarrell of theirs unto him; but because he should not joyne with *Philip* their enemy, and help him against the *Romans*. It was insolently done of them, neither seemed it otherwise, to prescribe such limits unto the King: yet he tempered himself, and without any shew of indignation gave a gentle answer; partly himself to their Embassadors;

fadors, partly unto their whole city, by Embassadors which he thither sent. He shewed his desire to renew the ancient Confederacies between his Ancestors and them: & willed them not to be afraid, lest his coming should tend unto any hurt, either of them, or of their confederates. As touching the *Romans* whom they thought that he would molest: they were (he said) his very good friends; whereof, he thought there needed no better proof, than the entertainment and answer by them newly given to his Embassadors.

The *Rhodiens* appear to have been a cunning people, and such as could foresee what weather was like to happen. This answer of the King, and the relation of what had passed between his Embassadors and the Senate, moved them not a whit, when they were informed shortly after, that the *Macedonian* war was ended at the battail of *Cynoscephale*. They knew that *Antiochus* his turn would be next; and prepared to be forward on the stronger side: Wherefore they would not be contented to sit still; unless the towns on the South coast of *Asia*, belonging to *Ptolemy* their friend and Confederate were suffered to be at quiet. Herein also they did well, for that they had ever been greatly beholding to all the race of the *Ptolemies*. They therefore in this time of necessity, gave what aid they could unto all the subjects of the *Egyptian* in those parts. In like manner did King *Eumenes*, the son of *Attalus*, prognosticate as concerning the war that followed, between *Antiochus* and the *Romans*. For when King *Antiochus* made a friendly offer, to bestow one of his daughters upon him in marriage: He excused himself, and would not have her. *Attalus* and *Philetarus*, his brethren, wondered at this, But he told them, that the *Romans* would surely make war upon *Antiochus*; and therein finally prevail. Wherefore he said, that by abstaining from this affinity, it should be in his power to joyn with the *Romans*, and strengthen himself greatly with their friendship. Contrariwise, if he leaned to *Antiochus*: he must be partaker in his overthrow; so was he sure to be oppressed by him, as by an over-mighty neighbour, if he hapned to win the victory.

*Antiochus* himself wintred about *Ephefus*; where he took such order as he thought convenient for reducing of *Smyrna* and *Lampsacus* to obedience; that had usurped their liberty, and obtrusively strove to maintain it, in hope that the *Romans* would protect them. In the beginning of the Spring he sailed unto the *Hellepont*: where having won some Towns that *Philip* had gotten not long before this, he passed over into *Europe* side; and in short space mastered the *Chersonesus*. Thence went he to *Lyfismachia*: which the *Thracians* had gotten & destroyed, when *Philip* withdrew his garrison thence, to employ it in the *Roman* war. The *Ætolians* objected as a crime unto *Philip*, in the conference before *T. Quintius*, that he had oppressed *Lyfismachia*, by thrusting thereinto a garrison. Hereupon *Philip* made answer, that his garrison did not oppress the town but save it from the *Barbarians*: who took and sacked it, as soon as the *Macedonians* were gone. That this answer was good and substantiall, though it were not acceptable as such, might appear by the miserable case, in which *Antiochus* found *Lyfismachia* at his coming thither. For the town was utterly razed by the *Barbarians*; and the people carried away into slavery. Wherefore the King took order to have it re-edified: as also to redeem those that were in bondage; and to recollect as many of the Citizens, as were dispersed in the Country thereabout. Likewise he was carefull to allure thither, by hopeful promises, new inhabitants, and to replenish the City with the wonted frequency. Now to the end that men should not be terrified from coming thither to dwell by any fear of the neighbour *Thracians*: he took a journey in hand against those barbarous people, with the one half of his Army; leaving the other half to repair the City. These pains he took; partly in regard of the convenient situation, and former glory of *Lyfismachia*, partly for that he thought it highly redounding unto his own honour, to recover and establish the dominion in those parts which his fore-father *Seleucus Nicator* had won from *Lyfismachus*, & thereby made his Kingdome of greater extent, than it occupied in any following time. But for this ambition he shal dearly pay: and as after that victory against *Lyfismachus*, the death of King *Seleucus* followed shortly, so shal a deadly wound of the Kingdome founded by *Seleucus* ensue very speedily, after the reconquest of the same Country, which was the last of *Seleucus* his purchases.

§. IIII.

§. IIII.

The *Romans* hold friendly correspondence with *Antiochus*, during their war with *Philip*: after which they quarrell with him. The doings of Hannibal at Carthage: whence he is chased by his enemies, and by the *Romans*: His flight unto the King *Antiochus*. The *Ætolians* murmur against the *Romans* in Greece. The war of the *Romans* and *Achaens*, with Nabis the Tyrant of *Lacedæmon*. The departure of the *Romans* out of Greece. *T. Quintius* his Triumph. Peace denied to *Antiochus* by the *Romans*.

For the *Romans*, though they were unable to smother their desire of war with *Antiochus*, whereof notice was already taken both by their friends and by their enemies: yet was it much against their will to keep the rumour on foot, which they meant shortly to make good, of this intended war, so long as they wanted matter of quarrell; whereof they were furnished, by this enterprise of the Kings about *Lyfismachia*. It was not long, since King *Attalus*, a friend and a helper of the *Romans* in their war with *Philip*, could obtain of them none other help against *Antiochus*, than Embassadors to speak for him, because the one of these Kings was held no less a friend than the other. Neither did there afterwards pass between them any other offices, than very friendly. *Antiochus* at the request of their Embassadors, withdrew his Invasion from the Kingdome of *Pergamus*: also very shortly after he sent Embassadors to them, to make a perfect League of amity between them. This was whilest as yet they were busied with *Philip*, and therefore had reason to answer his good will with good acceptance: as they did in outward shew. But when the *Macedonian* war was at an end, and all, or most of all the States in Greece, were become little better than Clients unto the *Romans*: then was all this good correspondence changed into terms of worke, but more plain meaning. For *T. Quintius*, with his ten counsellors sent from *Rome*, required (as hath bin shewed Chap. 4. §. 2. before) with a commination of war, this Kings gratulation of their victory; as also his long-proffered amity, and desire to continue in the same.

These ten Counsellors were able to inform *T. Quintius*, and acquaint him with the purpose of the Senate: whereof yet it seems that he was not ignorant before; since, in regard of *Antiochus*, he was the more inclinable unto peace with *Philip*. It was therefore agreed, when they divided themselves to make progress through divers quarters of Greece for the execution of their late Decree, that two of them should visit King *Antiochus*; and the rest, where occasion served, use diligence to make a party strong against him. Neither was the Senate at *Rome* unmindfull of the business: wherein lest *T. Quintius*, with his ten Assistants, should happen to forget any thing to their parts belonging, *L. Cornelius* was sent from *Rome*, of purpose to deal with the King about those controversies, that were between him and *Ptolemy*. What other private instructions *Cornelius* had, we may conjecture by the managing of this his Embassy. For coming to *Selymbria*: and there understanding that *P. Villius* and *L. Terentius*, having bin sent by *Titus*, were at *Lyfismachia*, He hastned thither; whither also came *P. Lentulus* (another of the ten Counsellors) from *Bargilla*, to be present at the Conference. *Hegesimachus* and *Lyfias* were also there; the same, who had lately brought from *Titus* those peremptory Conditions, which the Embassadors present shal expound unto their Master. After a few dayes *Antiochus* returned from his *Thracian* Expedition: The meeting and entertainment between him and these *Romans*, was in appearance full of love. But when they came to treat of the business in hand; this good mood was quite altered. *L. Cornelius*, in two or three words, briefly delivered his errand from *Rome*: which was, That *Antiochus* had reason to deliver back unto *Ptolemy* those Towns of his, whereof he had lately gotten possession. Hereunto he added, and that very earnestly, That he must also give up the Towns of late belonging unto *Philip*; and by him newly occupied. For war could be more absurd, than such folly in the *Romans*, as to let *Antiochus* enjoy the profit of that war, wherein they had laboured so much, and he done nothing. Further he warned the King, that he should not molest those Cities that were free: and finally he demanded of him, upon what reason he was come over with so great an Army into *Europe*; for that other cause of his journey there was none probable, than a purpose to make war upon the *Romans*. To this the King made answer, That he wondered why the *Romans* should so trouble themselves, with thinking upon

Pppppz

upon

upon the matters of *Asia*: wherewith he prayed them to let him alone; even as he, without such curiosity, suffered them to do in *Italy* what they thought good. As for his coming over into *Europe*: they saw well enough what business had drawn him thither; namely the war against the barbarous *Thracians*: the rebuilding of *Lysimachia*, and the recovery of Towns to him belonging, in *Thrace*, & *Chersonesus*. Now concerning his title unto that country, He derived it from *Selenus*: who made conquest thereof, by his victory against *Lysimachus*. Neither was it so, that any of the places in controversy between him and the other Kings, had been still of old belonging to the *Macedonians* or *Egyptians*; but had been seized on by them, or by others from whom they received them, at such time as his Ancestors, being Lords of those Countries, were hindered by multiplicity of business, from looking unto all that was their own. Finally he willed them, neither to stand in fear of him, as if he intended ought against them from *Lysimachia*; since it was his purpose to bestow this city upon one of his sons, that should reign therein: nor yet to be grieved with his proceedings in *Asia*; either against the free cities, or against the King of *Egypt*; since it was his meaning to make the free Cities beholden unto himself, and to joyne ere long with *Ptolemy*, not only in friendship, but in a bond of near affinity. *Cornelius* having heard this, and being perhaps unable to refuse it, would needs hear further, what the Embassadors of *Smyrna* and of *Lampiscus*, whom he had there with him, could say for themselves. The Embassadors of *Lampiscus* being called in, began a tale, wherein they seemed to accuse the King before the *Romans*, as it were before competent Judges. *Antiochus* therefore interrupted them, and bade them hold their peace, forasmuch as he had not chosen the *Romans*, but would rather take the Citizens of *Rhodes*, to be Arbitrators between him and them.

Thus the Treaty held some few daies, without any likelihood of effect. The *Romans*, having not laid their complaints in such sort, as they might be a convenient foundation of the war by them intended: nor yet having purpose to depart well satisfied, and thereby to corroborate the present peace, were doubtful how to order the matter, in such wise as they might neither too rudely, like boistrous *Galla-Greeks*, pretend only the goodness of their swords; nor yet over-modestly, to retain among the *Greeks* an opinion of their justice, forbear the occasion of making themselves great. The King on the other side was weary of these tedious guests; that would take none answer, and yet scarce knew what to say. At length came news, without any certain author, That *Ptolemy* was dead. Hereof neither the King, nor the *Romans*, would take notice, though each of them were desirous to hasten into *Egypt*: *Antiochus*, to take possession of the Kingdom, and *L. Cornelius*, to prevent him thereof, and set the Country in good order. *Cornelius* was sent from *Rome* Embassador both to *Antiochus* and to *Ptolemy*: which gave him occasion to take leave, and prepare for his *Egyptian* voyage. Both he, and his fellow Embassadors, had good leave to depart all together: and the King, forthwith made ready, to be in *Egypt* with the first. To his son *Selenus* he committed his Army, and left him to oversee the building of *Lysimachia*: but all his Sea-forces he took along with him, and sailed unto *Ephesus*. Thence he sent Embassadors to *T. Quintus*: whom he requested to deal with him in this matter of peace, after such sort as might stand with honesty and good faith. But as he was further proceeding on his voyage, he was perfectly informed that *Ptolemy* was alive. This made him bear another way from *Egypt*: and afterwards a tempest, with a grievous shipwreck, made him without any further attempt on the way, glad to have safely recovered his Port of *Selenus*. Thence went he to *Antiochia*, where he wintred: secure as might appear, of the *Roman* war.

But the *Romans* had not so done with him. During the Treaty at *Lysimachia*, (at least so wife not long before or after it) one of their Embassadors that had been sent unto the *Macedonian*, gave him counsell, as in a point highly tending to his good; not to rest contented with the peace which was granted unto him by the *Romans*, but to desire society with them, whereby they should be bound to have the same friends and enemies. And this he advised him to do quickly, before the War brake out with *Antiochus*; lest otherwise he might seem, to have awaited some fit occasion of taking Arms again. They who dealt thus plainly, did not mean to be satisfied with weak excuses. In like manner some of the *Greeks*, were solicited; and particularly the *Asians*. That

That constantly and faithfully they should abide in the friendship of the people of *Rome*: It was needless to say plainly, whereto this entreaty tended: the froward answer made by the *Asians*, declares them to have well understood the purpose. They complained, that they were not alike honoured by the *Romans* after the victory, as they had been during the War. They that so complained were the most moderate of them. Others cried out that they had been wronged, and defrauded of what was promised unto them: upbraiding withall the *Romans*, as men to them beholding; not only for their victory over *Philip*, but even for helping them to set foot in *Greece*, which else they never could have done. Hereto the *Roman* gave gentle answers: telling them that there was no more to do, than to send Embassadors to the Senate, and utter their griefs; and then should all be well.

Such care took the *Romans* in *Greece*, for their War intended against *Antiochus*. The same hereof arriving at *Carthage*, gave matter unto the enemies of *Hannibal*, wherewith both to pick a thank of the *Roman* Senate, and to chafe out of their city this honourable man, whom they so greatly hated. He had of late exercised his virtue against them in the Civill administration; and given them an overthrow, or two, in the long Robe. The Judges at that time bore all the sway in *Carthage*: holding their places during life; and having subject unto them, the lives, goods, and fame of all the rest. Neither did they use this their power with moderation: but conspired in such wise together, that who so offended any one of them, should have them all to be his enemies; which being once known, He was sure to be soon accused and condemned. In this their impotent rule of the city, *Hannibal* was chosen Prætor. By vertue of which Office, though he was superior unto them during that year: yet had it not been their manner to bear much regard unto such an annuall Magistrate, as at the years end must be accountable to them, if ought were laid unto his charge. *Hannibal* therefore sending for one of the Quæstors, or Officers of the Treasury, to come and speak with him: the proud Quæstor set lightly thereby, and would not come. For he was of the adverse Faction to *Hannibal*; and men of his place were to be chosen into the Order of Judges: in contemplation whereof, he was filled already with the spirit of future Greatness. But he had not to do with such a tame Prætor, as were they that had occupied the place before. *Hannibal* sent for him by a Purfivant, and having thus apprehended him, brought him into judgement before a publique assembly of the people. There he not only shewed what the undutifull stubbornness of this Quæstor had been; but how unsufferable the insolency of all the Judges at the present was: whose unbridled power made them to regard neither Lawes nor Magistrates. To this Oration when he perceived that all the Citizens were attentive and favourable; He forthwith propounded a Law; which passed with the generall good liking; That the Judges should be chosen from year to year, and no one man be continued in that Office two years together: If this Law had been passed, before he passed over *Iberus*: it would not perhaps have been in the power of *Hanno*, to have brought him unto necessity of reforming another grievance, concerning the *Roman* Tribute. This Tribute the *Carthaginians* were faine to levie by Taxation laid upon the whole Commonalty; as wanting money in their publique Treasury; wherewith to defray either that, or divers other needfull charges. *Hannibal* considering this, began to examine the publique Revenues, and to take a perfect note, both how much came into the Treasury, by wayes and means whatsoever; and in what sort it was thence laid out. So he found, That the ordinary charges of the Common-wealth did not exhaust the Treasury: but that wicked Magistrates, and corrupt Officers, turning the greatest part of the monies to their own use, were thereby faine to load the people with needles burdens. Hereof he made such plain demonstration, That these Robbers of the common Treasury were compelled to restore, with shame, what they had gotten by knavery: and so the *Carthaginians* were freed from the necessity of making such poor shifts, as formerly they had used, when they knew not the value of their own Estate. But as the vertue of *Hannibal* was highly commended by all that were good Citizens: so they of the *Roman* Faction, which had, since the making of the peace until now, little regarded him, began to rage extremely; as being by him stripped of their ill-gotten goods, and thus employed authority, both at once; even when they thought themselves to have been in full possession of the vanquished *Carthage*. Wherefore they sent letters to their friends





*Hannibal*. For the present, the business with *Nabis* was referred unto *Titus*; to deal with him as he thought good. This would be a fair colour of his longer tarriance in *Greece*. Therefore he was glad of the employment: whereof also he knew that many of the *Greeks* would not be sorry; though for his own part, he wanted all good presence of taking it in hand. For *Nabis* had entered into friendship with him, two or three years before this, as is already shewed, whilst he had war with *Philip*: and had further been contented for the *Romans* sake to be at peace with the *Achaens*; neither since that time had he done any thing, whereby he should draw upon himself this War. He was indeed a detestable Tyrant, and hated of the *Achaens*; as one, that besides his own wicked Conditions, had formerly done to them great mischief. *Titus* therefore had a plausible Theme, whereon to discourse before the Embassages of all the Confederate Cities; which he caused to meet for that purpose at *Corinth*. He told them, That in the war with *Philip*, not only the *Greeks*, but the *Romans* themselves, had each their motives apart (which he there briefly rehearsed): that should stir them up and cause them to be earnest. But in this which he now propounded to them concerning *Nabis*, the *Romans* had none other interest, than only the making perfect of their honour, in setting all *Greece* at liberty: which noble action was in some sort maimed, or incomplete, whilst the noble City of *Argos* was left in subjection to a Tyrant, that had lately occupied it. It therefore belonged unto them, the *Greeks*, duly to consider, whether they thought the deliverance of *Argos* a matter worthy to be undertaken; or whether otherwise to avoid all further trouble, they could be well contented to leave it as it was. This concerned them, and not the *Romans*: who in taking this work in hand, or letting it alone, would wholly be ruled by the *Greeks* themselves. The *Athenian* Embassadors made answer hereunto very eloquently, and as pleasing as he could devise. He gave thanks to the *Romans* for what was past; extolled their virtues at large; and magnified them highly in regard of this their proposition: wherein unrequested they freely made offer to continue that bounty, which at the vehement request of their poor Associates, they had already of late extended unto the *Greeks*. To this he added, That great pity it was to hear, such notable virtue and high deserts ill spoken of by some, which took upon them, out of their own imagination, to foretell what harm these their Benefactors meant to do hereafter: when as Thankfulness rather would have required an acknowledgement of the benefits and pleasures already received. Every one found the meaning of this last clause, which was directly against the *Aetolians*. Wherefore *Alexander* the *Aetolian* rose up, and told the *Athenians* their own: putting them in mind of their ancient glory, in those times when their City had been the Leader of all *Greece*, for defence and recovery of the liberty generall: from which honour they were now so far fallen, that they became Parasites unto those whom they thought most mighty; and by their base assentation, would lead all the rest into servitude. Then spake he against the *Achaens*, Clients that had been along time unto the *Macedonian*; and Souldiers of *Philip*, untill they ran away from his adversity. These, he said, had gotten *Corinth*, and must now have war be made for their sakes, to the end that they might also be Lords of *Argos*: whereas the *Aetolians*, that had first made war with *Philip*, and always been friends unto the *Romans*, were now defrauded of some places, anciently to them belonging. Neither did he thus contain himself, but objected unto the *Romans*, fraudulent dealing: so far as much as they kept their Garrisons in *Demetrias*, *Chalcis*, and the *Acorcorinth*; having been always wont to profess, That *Greece* could never be at liberty, whilst those places were not free. Also now at last, what else did they seek by this discourse of war with *Nabis*, than business; wherewith to find themselves occupied, that so they might have some seeming cause of abiding longer in the Country? But they should do well if they meant as they spake, to carry their Legions home out of *Greece*: which could not indeed be free, till their departure. As for *Nabis*, the *Aetolians* themselves did promise, & would undertake, That they would either cause him to yield to reason, and relinquish *Argos* freely, withdrawing thence his Garrison; or else compel him by force of Arms, to submit himself to the good pleasure of all *Greece*, that was now at unity. These words had been reasonable, if they had proceeded from better men. But it was apparent, that no regard of the common liberty wrought so much with these *Aetolians*; as did their own ravenous desire of oppressing others, and getting unto themselves, that worse would use it, the whole Dominion in *Greece*, which *Philip* had

had lost. Neither could they well dissemble this: making no small part of their grievance, That the old League was forgotten: wherein it had been covenanted, That the *Romans* should enjoy the spoil of all, but leave the Towns and Lands in possession of the *Aetolians*. This, and the remembrance of a thousand mischiefs by them done in former times, made the whole assembly, especially the *Achaens*, cry out upon them: entreating the *Romans* to take such order before they went, that not only *Nabis* might be compelled to do right; but the *Aetolian* thieves be enforced to keep home, and leave their neighbours in quiet. All this was highly to the pleasure of *Titus*: who saw, that by discountenancing the *Aetolians*, he was become the more gracious with all the rest. But whether it pleased him so well that *Antiochus* his Embassadors did presently after lie hard upon him, to draw the peace to some good conclusion, it may be greatly doubted. He cast them off with a sleight answer: telling them, that the ten Embassadors or Counsellors which had been sent unto him from *Rome*, to be his assistants in these matters of weight, were now returned home; and that, without them, it was not in his power to conclude upon any thing.

Now concerning the *Lacedaemonian* war: it was very soon ended. For *Titus* used the help of all his confederates; and made as great preparation against *Nabis*, both by Land and Sea, as if he should have had to do with *Philip*. Besides the *Roman* forces, King *Eumenes* with a Navie, and the *Rhodian* Fleet, were invited to the service: as also *Philip* of *Macedon* sent aid by Land; doing therein poorly, whether it were to get favour of the *Romans*; or whether to make one among the number, in seeking revenge upon *Nabis*, that had done him injury. But the most forward in this Expedition were the *Achaens*, who set out ten thousand Foot, and a thousand Horse. As for the *Aetolians*: rather to hold good fashion, and sound their dispositions, than in hope to speed, their help was required; whereof they excused themselves as well as they thought best. These are the *Achaens* now become the prime friends of the *Romans* in *Greece*; having relieved the *Aetolians* from that degree of favour: like as they themselves hereafter (though not in all haste) shall be supplanted of the same *Lacedaemonians*, against whom they are now marching.

Some of the *Argives*, more bold than wise, began a conspiracy against the *Lacedaemonians*: that held their Town; meaning to open their gates unto the *Romans*. But ere it drew near, they were all detected and slain: excepting a very few, that escaped out of the Town. The same of this Commotion, caused the Army to march apace toward *Argos*; with hope to be there, before things were at quiet. But there was no stir within the Walls: the execution done upon the first movers, having terrified all the rest of the Citizens. *Titus* then thought it better, to assail *Nabis* in the head of his strength at *Lacedaemon*, than to consume time about other places; especially at *Argos*: for the freedom whereof since the War was made, pity it were, that the calamities of the war should thereon fall most heavily.

*Nabis* had in readines an Army of fifteen thousand; wherewith to defend himself against these Invaders. Five thousand of them were Mercenaries: the rest, of his own Country; but such as were of all others the worst, as maimed slaves, miscalcators and base peasants, unto whom his Tyranny was beneficiall. Of the good and worthy Citizens he stood in doubt: and since he could not hope to win their love, his meaning was to hold them quiet by fear. He called them all to an assembly: and compassing them round in with his Army, told them of the danger that was toward him and them. If they could agree within themselves; they might, he said, hope the better to withstand the common Enemy. But so far as much as turbulent heads were invited by light occasions, to raise tumults, and work dangerous treason: it seemed unto him the safest, and (withall) the mildest course, to arrest before-hand, and put in wardy all those whom he found most reason to suspect. So should he keep them innocent persons; and thereby preserve not only the City and his own person from danger, but them also from the punishment, which else they might have incurred. Hereupon he cites and apprehends about fourscore of them; whom he leads away to prison; and the next night putteth them all to death. Thus was it sure that they neither should offend, nor yet break loose. As for the death of them, it should happen to be noised abroad: what could it else do than terrify the people; who most thereby understand, that it was a mortal crime to be suspected? And to the same purpose his cruelty extended it self unto

some poor wretches: whom he accused of a meaning to flee to the Enemy. These were openly whipt through all the streets, and slain. Having thus affrighted the Citizens: He turned the more freely, all his thoughts toward the Enemy, that came on apace. He welcomed them with a sally: wherein, as commonly happens, the Souldiers of the Town had the better at first; but were at length repelled with loss. *Titus* abode not many days before *Sparta*; but over-ran the Countrey; hoping belike to provoke the Tyrant forth to battail. The *Roman* Fleet at the same time with King *Eumenes* and the *Rhodiens*, laid siege unto *Gythium*, the only or principall Town that *Nabis* had. Likewise they were taken at by force, when there appeared hope of getting it by treason. There were two Governours within the Town: equall in authority: whereof the one, either for fear, or desire of reward, had a purpose to let in the *Romans*. But the other finding what was in hand, and being somewhat more faithfull, slue the Traitor after whose death, he himself alone made the better defence. Yet when *T. Quintus* with part of his Army came thither to *Gythium*: this Captain of the Town had not the heart to abide the uttermost, and await what either Time or his Master might do for him, but was contented to give up the place: yet upon Condition, to depart in safety to *Sparta* with his Garrison. *Pythagoras*, the son-in-law of *Nabis*, and brother unto his wife, was come from *Argos*, whereof he had the Government, with a thousand Souldier-Mercenaries and two thousand *Argives*: it being (as may seem) the Tyrants purpose, to relieve *Gythium*: which he thought would have held longer out. But when they heard that it was lost, then began they to think upon finishing the war, by some reasonable Composition. *Pythagoras* therefore was sent his Embassadour to *Titus*: requesting only that he would appoint a time and place for *Nabis* to meet and speak with him. This was granted. In that Parlee the Tyrant spoke very reasonably for himself: proving, that he suffered wrong, and had done none, and that by many good arguments: whereof the sum was, That whatsoever they now did, or could object unto him, was of older date than the League which they had made with him. Whereupon he inferred, That neither for his keeping the town of *Argos*, nor for any other cause by them alledged, they ought to make war upon him; since *Argos*, and all other their allegations whatsoever, had not hindered them, in time of their more need of him, from entering into that League with him; which was never broken on his part, nor ought to be on theirs. But *Quintus* was not herewith satisfied. He charged him with tyranny, & gave instance, as easily he might, of divers barbarous cruelties by him committed. In all which points forasmuch as they knew this *Nabis* to be guilty, before they made Peace and Confederacy with him; it was expedient, that some other cause of this Invasion should be alledged. Whereof he said further, That this tyrant had occupied *Messene*, a town Conceded to the *Romans*: That he had bargained to joyn with *Philip*; when he was their enemy, not only in League, but also in affinity: and that his Fleet had robbed many of their ships, about the Cape of *Malea*. Now touching this Piracy, since in the Articles by *Titus* propounded unto *Nabis*, there was no restitution mentioned, other than of ships by him taken from the *Greeks* his neighbours, with whom he had long held war; it may seem to have been objected, only by way of Complement, and to enlarge the volume of those complaints, that were otherwise very frivolous. As for *Messene*, and the bargain of Alliance made with *Philip*: they were matters foregoing the League, that was made between the *Romans* and this tyrant; and therefore not to have been mentioned. All this it seems that *Ariflanus*, the Praeior of the *Achaens*, very well perceived: who therefore doubting lest the *Romans*, (that were wont to take so much of their own justice, honour, and faithfull dealing) should now relent, and forbear to molest him, who, though a wicked man, was yet their Confederate, and had never done them wrong; framed his discourse to another end. He entreated *Nabis* to consider well of his own estate, and to settle his fortunes, whilst he might do it without hazard: alledging the examples of many tyrants that had ruled in the neighbourhoods, and therein committed great outrages; yet were afterwards contented to surrender their Estates, and lived in great security, honour, and happiness, as private men. Thus they discouraged until night. The next day *Nabis* was contented to relinquish *Argos*; and requested them, to deliver unto him in writing their other demands, that he might take counsell with his friends. The issue of all was, that, in regard of the charge, whereat the Confederates must be, for maintenance of an Army to lie in League all

that

that Winter (as there was no hope of making short work) before the City of *Sparta*: they were contented to make peace with the Tyrant, upon such Conditions as *Titus* should think meet. Besides the restitution of *Argos*, and all the places thereon depending; *Titus* propounded many other Conditions to *Nabis*, and some of them very grievous. He would not suffer the *Lacedaemonians* to have ought to do in the Ile of *Crete*; nor, nor to make any Confederacies, nor wars, either in that Island or elsewhere; nor to build any Town or Castle upon his own Lands; nor to keep any other shipping, than two small Barks; besides many other troublesome injunctions; with imposition of an hundred talents in silver to be paid out of hand, and fifty talents yearly, for eight years next ensuing. For observance of these Covenants he demanded five hostages; such as he himself should name; and one of them to be the Tyrants own son. If it had been the meaning of *Titus*, to withdraw the war from *Nabis*, because it was not grounded upon justice: then had it been enough, if not more than enough, to take *Argos* from him; which he himself did offer, though it were for fear, to deliver up. But if it were thought reasonable, to dispense a little with the *Roman* faith, in regard of the great benefit which thereby might redound unto the state of their best friends in *Greece*, by the extirpation of this tyranny: then should this enterprise, when once it was taken in hand, have bin prosecuted unto the very utmost. As for this middle course which the *Romans* held: as it was not honourable unto them, to enrich themselves by the spoil of one that had not offended them; nor pleasing to the *Achaens*, who judged it ever after a great blemish to the noble acts of *Titus*: so did it minister unto the *Ætolians*, and to such as curiously pried into the faults, of those which took upon them to be Patrons of *Greece*, no barren subject of malicious discourse. For since *Philip*, a King, and descended of many famous Kings, might not be suffered by these Masterly *Romans*, to hold any one of those Countries or Towns in *Greece*, that had belonged unto his Ancestors: it was thought very strange, that *Lacedamon*, once the most famous City among all the *Greeks*, was by the same *Romans* left in possession of a tyrant, that had usurped it but yesterday: and he therein rooted by their authority, as their friend and Confederate. *Nabis* on the other side thought himself unmercifully dealt withall; by the self-same *Romans*, whose amity he had preferred in time of a doubtfull war, before the love and affinity of the *Macedonian* King, that had committed the City of *Argos* into his hands. But finally he dealt with the *Macedonian*; and sally was he dealt with by those, to whom he did betake himself. Among these Articles propounded, there was nothing that pleased him, save only that for the banished *Lacedaemonians*, (of whom a great number were in the *Roman* Camp; having among them *Agessipolis* the natural King of *Sparta*, that being a young childe was driven out by *Lycurgus* the first of the Tyrants) there was made no provision, to have them restored unto their City and Estates; but only leave required for as many of their wives, as would be so contented, to live abroad with them in banishment. Wherefore he forbore to give consent unto these demands: and sustained an assault or two, hoping belike that the enemies would soon be weary. But his fearful nature shortly overcame the resolution, which the sense of these injuries had put into him. So yielding unto all that had been propounded, He delivered the hostages; and thereupon obtained peace, that was confirmed afterwards at *Rome* by the Senate and People. From this time forward, He thought the *Romans* far more wicked than himself; and was ready upon the first advantage, to do them all the mischief that he could.

The *Argives* had heard newes, that *Lacedamon* was even at point of being taken. This excited them, and gave them heart to think upon their own good. So they adventured to set upon the Garrison, which was much weakened; by the remove of the three thousand carryed thence by *Pythagoras* to help the tyrant at *Sparta*. There needed nothing to their liberty no more, than that all of them joyntly should set their hands to the getting of it; which no sooner they did than they obtained it. Presently after this came *Quintus* to *Argos*, where he was joyfully welcomed. He was deservedly acknowledged as author of that benefit, whereon the Citizens had layed hold without staying for him; and that he might the better entitle himself thereto, he caused the liberty of the *Argives* to be proclaimed at the *Nemean* games, as ratifying it by his authority. The City was annexed again to the Councell of *Achaia*; whereby the *Achaens* were not more strengthened, than the *Argives* themselves were secured from danger of relapse into

into the same extremities out of which they had newly escaped.

After this, *Titus* found little business or none wherewith to set on work his Army in Greece. *Antiochus* was about to send another Embassy to *Rome*, desiring peace and friendship of the Senate. Things being therefore in appearance wholly disposed unto quiet, *Scipio* the African, that was chosen Consul at *Rome*, could not have his desire, of being sent Commander into Greece. The un-syncre meaning of *Antiochus*, and the tumultuous disposition of the *Atolians*, were held as considerations worthy of regard: yet not sufficient causes of making war. Neither appeared there any more honest way, of consulting the *Atolians*, and of thoroughly periwading all the *Greeks* (which was not to be neglected, by those that meant to assure unto themselves the patronage of Greece) that to the good of the Country was their sole intent: than by withdrawing thence their Legions, and leaving the Nation to itself, till occasion should be ripe, and call them over again. Wherefore after *Titus* had spent a Winter there, without any matter of employment, either found, or at any near distance appearing, he called an Assembly of Delegates from all parts of Greece to Corinth: where he meant to bid them farewell. There he recounted unto them all that had passed since his coming into those parts; and willed them to value the Roman friendship, according to the difference of estate, wherein the Romans stand and left them. Hereto he added some wholesome counsel; touching the moderate use of their liberty, & the care which they ought to have of living peaceably and without faction. Lastly he gave up *Acrocorinthum* to the *Achaens*; withdrawing thence the Roman Garrison, and promising to do the like (which very soon he did) at *Chalcis* and *Demetrias*; that so it might be known, what lyers the *Atolians* were; who had accused the Romans, of a purpose to retain those places. With joyfull exclamations did the *Greeks* esteem their good-lucking of that which *Titus* had said and done: as also (at his request) they agreed, to ransom and enlarge all Romans, that had been sold into their Country by *Hannibal*.

This *Titus* crowned his actions in Greece with an happy end: and by leaving the Country before his departure was urged, left therein behind him the memory of his virtue and benefit unstained by jealousy and suspicion of any evil meaning. At his coming into the City, he had the honour of a Triumph; which was the goodliest of all that *Rome* had as yet that day beheld. Three dayes together the show of his pomp continued: as being set out with the spoils of a Country, more abundant in things worthy of such a show, than any wherein the Romans had before made War. All sorts of Armes, with Statues and curious pieces of Brasse or Marble, taken from the Enemy, were brought in the first day as Pageant. The second day, was brought in, all the treasure of Gold and Silver: Some in the rude Masse unwrought; some in divers sorts of Coins, and some in Vessels of sundry kinds, that were the more highly prized by the workmanship. Among these were ten shields, all of Silver; and one of pure Gold. The third day, *Titus* himself entered the City in his Triumphant Chariot: Before him were carried an hundred and fourteen Crowns of Gold, bestowed upon him by divers Cities. There were also led the beasts for Sacrifice; the Prisoners; and the hostages; among which, *Idmon* the son of King *Philip*, and *Armenes* the son of *Nabis* were principals. After him followed his Army: and (which added much grace, and good-living to the show) the Roman Captives, by his procurement redeemed from slavery in Greece.

Not long after this triumph, He procured audience of the Senate for many Embassadors, that were come out of Greece and *Asia*. They had all very favourable answers; excepting those of King *Antiochus*: whom the Senate would not hear, but referred over to *Quintus*; and the ten that had bin his Counsellors; because their business was said to be somewhat intricate. Hereto the Kings Embassadors wondred. They said unto *Titus* and his Associates, that they could not discern wherein consisted any perplexity of their message. For all treaties of peace and friendship, were either between the Victor and the vanquished; between those, that having warred together, were upon equal terms of advantage; or between those that had lived alwaies in good agreement, without any quarrell. Unto the Victor, they said, that the vanquished must yield; and patiently endure the imposition of some Covenants, that else might seem unreasonable. Where War had been made, and no advantage gotten: there was it usual to demand and make restitution of things and places claimed gotten or lost; accordingly as both parts could

could agree. But between those which had never fallen out, there ought no Conditions of establishing friendship to be proposed: since it was reasonable, that each part should hold their own; and neither carry it self as superiour to the other, in prescribing ought that might be troublesome. Now of this last kind, was the league and friendship that had been so long in conclusion, betwixt *Antiochus* and the Romans. Which being so: they held it strange, that the Romans should thus insist on points no way concerning them, and take upon them to prescribe unto the King, what Cities of *Asia* he should set at liberty, from what cities they would give him leave to exact his wonted Tributes; either putting or not putting his Garrisons into them, as the Senate should think fit. Hereto *Quintus* answered, that since they went so distinctly to work, He would also do the like. Wherefore he propounded unto them two Conditions, and gave them their choice whether to accept: Either that it should be lawful for the Romans to take part in *Asia* with any that would seek their friendship; Or if King *Antiochus* misliked this, and would have them forbear to meddle in *Asia*, that then he should abandon whatsoever he had gotten in *Europe*. This was plain dealing, but no reasonable nor pertinent answer, to that which the Kings Embassadors had propounded. For if the Romans might be hired to obtain from *Asia*, by the gift of all that *Antiochus* had lately won in *Europe*: then did not the affairs of *Smyrna*, *Lampsacus*, or any other *Asiaticque*, whom they were pleased to reckon as their Confederates, binde them in honour to make War with a King that sought their love, and had never done them injury. But they knew very well, that *Antiochus* could not without great shame be so base, as to deliver up unto them the City of *Lysimachia*, whereon he had of late been as so much cost; in building it up even from the foundation, and repopling it with Inhabitants, that had all been dispersed, or captive to the Barbarians. And so much the Embassadors with great indignation alledged: saying, That *Antiochus* desired friendship of the Romans; but so, as it might stand with his honour. Now in point of honour, the Romans took upon them as it their cause were far the superiour. For it was, they said, their purpose to set at liberty those towns which the King would oppress and hold in subjection: especially since those towns were of *Greekish* blood and languages, and fell, in that regard, under the patronage which *Rome* had afforded unto all *Greekes* besides. By this colour they might soon have left *Antiochus* King of not many subjects on the higher side of *Euphrates*. Neither did they for- bear to say, That unless he would quit what he held in *Europe*, it was their meaning not only to protect those which relye upon them in *Asia*, but therein to make new Alliances: namely (as might be understood) with such as were his subjects. Wherefore they urged his Embassadors to come to a point, and tell them plainly, which of these two Conditions their King would accept. For lack of a pleasing answer, which the Embassadors could not hereto make, little wanted of giving presently defiance to the King. But they suffered themselves to be entreated, & were contented once again to send over *P. Villius*, & others that had bin already with the king at *Lysimachia*, by whom they might receive a final answer, whether these demands made by *Quintus* and his Associates would be accepted, yea, or no. By this respite of time, and the fruitless Treaties ensuing, *Antiochus* got the leisure of two years, or thereabouts, to prepare for War; finding in the Romans all that while, no disposition to let him live in peace.

## S. V.

Of the long Wars which the Romans had with the Gauls, Ligurians, and Spaniards. Of M. Porcius Cato. Injuries done by M. Anisilla to the Carthaginians, that sue to the Romans for justice in vain.

THE *Insubrians*, *Bojians*, and other of the *Alpine* Gauls, together with the *Ligurians* made often and (in a manner) continuall war upon the Romans in Italy, even from such time as *Hannibal* and his brother *Mago* departed thence, until such time as they subdued: which was not, before the Romans were almost at the very height of their Empire. These Nations, having served under *Mago* for wages, and afterwards having gotten *Amilcar* a Carthaginian, to be Leader unto them all, as hath been already shewed; by this their fellowship in

Ch. 5. §. 8.  
of this Book.

Arms, grew to be such willing partakers each of others fortune, that seldom afterwards either the *Gauls* or *Ligurians* did stir alone; but that their Companions, hearing it, were ready to second them. How the *Romans* first prevailed, and got large possessions in *Gallia Cisalpinus*, now called *Lumbardie*; it hath been long since rehearsed between the first and second *Punic Wars*. As also it hath since appeared, how they lost the greatest part of their hold in that Country, by means of *Hannibal* his passage there-through. Neither is it likely that the re-conquest would have been more difficult or tedious unto the *Romans*, than was the first purchase: if, besides the greater employments which they had of their Armies abroad, their forces appointed unto this war, had not been distracted by the *Ligurians*; that always made them to proceed warily, having an eye to the danger at their backs. The *Ligurians* were a stout Nation, light and swift of body, well practised in laying ambushes, and not discouraged with any overthrow, but forthwith ready to fight again. Their Country was mountainous, rough, woody, and full of fright and dangerous passages. Few good Towns they had; but many Castles, exceedingly well fortified by nature: so as without much labour, they could neither be taken or besieged. They were also very poor, and had little or nothing that might give contentment unto a victorious Army that should spoyle their Land. In these respects, they served excellently well to train up the *Roman* Souldiers to hardness and military patience: reaching them (besides other exercises of War) to endure much, and live contented with a little. Their quarrel to *Rome*, grew partly from their love unto the *Gauls*, their neighbours and companions; partly from their delight in robbing and spoiling the Territory of their borderers, that were subject unto *Rome*. But their obstinate continuance in the war which they had begun, seems to have been grounded upon the Condition of all Salvages; To be friends or foes, by custome, rather than by Judgement: and to acknowledge no such virtue in Leagues, or formal conclusions of peace, as ought to hinder them from using their advantage, or taking revenge of injuries when they return to minde. This quality is found in a ll, or most of the West-Indians: who, if they be demanded a reason of the Wars between them and any of their neighbours, do use commonly this answer; *It hath still been the custome for us and them, so fight one against the other.*

Divers overthrowes, though none that were great, these *Ligurians* gave unto the *Romans*; but many more, and greater, they received. Often they sought peace, when they found themselves in distress, and brake it again as often, when they thought it profitable so to do. The best was, that as their Country was a good place of exercise unto the *Romans*, so out of their own Country they did little harm: not sending any great Armies far from home; perhaps, because they knew not how to make war, save on their own ground.

The Country of *Spain*, as it was the first part of the Continent out of *Italy* that became subject unto the *Romans*: so was it the last of all their provinces, which was wholly and thoroughly by them subdued. It is likened in figure by some Geographers unto an Ox-hide: & the *Romans* found in it the property of that Ox-hide which *Calanus* the *Indian* shewed unto the Great *Alexander*, as an Embleme of his large Dominions. For treading upon any side of it, the further parts would rise from the ground. And thus was it with *Spain*. Seldom did it happen that those parts from which the *Roman* Armies lay farthest, were not up in rebellion. The *Spaniards* were a very hard Nation, and easily stirred up to arms; but had not much knowledge in the art of war, nor any good Captains. They wanted also (which was their principal hinderance) good intelligence among themselves: and being divided into many small Signiorities, that had little other communion than of language, they seldom or never provided in general for the common good of their Country; but made it their chief care, each of them to look unto their own Territory. Such private respects made them often to fall asunder, when many had united themselves together, for chasing out of the *Romans*. And these were the causes of their often overthrowes: as desire of liberty, rather than complaint of any wrong done to them, was the cause of their often taking arms.

The *Carthaginians* had been accustomed, to make evacuation of this Cholerick *Spanish* humour, by employing, as Mercenaries in their wars abroad, those that were most likely to be unquiet at home. They had also taken Souldiers from one part of the Country, and used them in another: finding means to pay them all, out of the profits which

which they raised upon the whole Country; as being far better husbands, and of more dexterity than were the *Romans*, in that kinde. But contrariwise, the *Romans*, using the service of their own Legions, and of their sure friends the *Latinas*, had little business for the *Spaniards*; and therefore were faine to have much business with them. *Spain* was too far distant, and withal too great for them to send over Colonies thither, whereby to hold it in good order, according to the course that they took in *Italy*. Wherefore it remained, that they should always maintain such Armies in the Country, as might serve to hold it in obedience perforce; and such heedfull Captains as might be still ready to oppose the *Barbarians* in their first Commotion. This they did; and thereby held the Country; so though seldom in peace.

Very soon after the departure of *Scipio*, there was raised War in *Spain* against the *Romans*, even upon the same generall ground, that was the foundation of all the *Spanish* Wars following. It was thought unreasonable, that the *Spaniards* should one while help the *Carthaginians* against the *Romans*, and another while the *Romans* against the *Carthaginians*; basely forgetting to help themselves against those that were strangers, yet usurped the Dominion over them. But the forces which *Scipio* had left behinde him in that Country, being well acquainted with the manner of War in those parts, suppressed this rebellion by many victories: and, together with subjection, brought peace upon the Country; which lasted five years. This Victory of the *Romans*, though it happily ended the War: yet left it still remaining the cause of the War; which after five years brake out again. The *Spaniards* fought a battell with the *Roman* Proconsull, whom they slew; and had a great Victory, that filled them with greater hopes. Yet the happy success of their Wars in *Greece*, made the *Romans* think it enough to send thither two Prators, and with each of them some two Legions. These did somewhat: yet not so much, but that *M. Porcius Cato*, who was Consull the year following, and sent into that Province; found at his coming little left to do, than the reconquering of all *Spain*. But it fell out happily, that all the *Spaniards* were not of one minde: some were faithfull to *Rome*; and some were idle beholders of the pains that others took. Yet when *Cato* had won a great Victory upon the chieftest of them; they rose against him in many parts of the Country, and put him unto much new trouble. Whilest he was about to make a journey against those that were as yet unsubdued: some of the lately vanquished, were even ready to rebell. He therefore disarmed them: which they took so heavily, that many of them slew themselves for very grief. Hearing of this; and well understanding, that such desperation might work dangerous effects; He called unto him the principall among them: and commending unto them peace and quietness, which they never had disturbed but unto their own great losse, He prayed them to devise what course might be taken for holding them assured unto *Rome*, without further trouble. None of them could, or would give counsell in a matter of this nature. Having therefore talked with them once or twice, and finding their invention barren in this kinde of Subject; He gave expresse charge, That upon a day appointed they should throw down the wals of all their Towns. Afterwards he carryed the war about from place to place; and with singular industry finished it in short time. Neither thought he it any disgrace to him or to *Rome*, in this time of danger, to imitate the *Carthaginians*, and hire an Army of the *Celtiberians*, against other of their Countreimen: excusing the indignity, such as it seemed, with a jest, That if he were vanquished and slain, then should he need, to pay them nothing; whereas if he had the Victory, He could pay them with the enemies money. Finally, He brought the War to good end, that in long time after, though *Spain* were often troublesome, yet was it in no danger of being lost. He increased also the publique Revenues in that Province, by causing some Mines of Iron and Silver to be wrought, that had before lain unregarded. Herein he did benefit the Common-wealth by a vertue much agreeable to his own peculiar disposition.

For this *M. Cato* was not only very notable in the Art of War, which might well be then termed the occupation of the *Romans*; but so well furnished with all other useful qualities, that very little was wanting in him, which might seem requisite to the accomplishment of a perfect man. He was very skilful in the *Roman* Lawes, a man of great Eloquence, and not unprofitable in any business either private or publique. Many books he wrote: whereof the principall were, of the *Roman* antiquities, & of husbandry. In matter



of husbandry he was notable, and thereby most increased his substance; being of mean birth, and the first of his house. Strong of body he was, and exceeding temperate: so as he lived in perfect health to very old age. But that which most commended him unto the better sort of the *Romans*, was his great sincerity of life, abstinence from bribes, and fashioning himself to the ancient laudable Customes of the City. Herein he had merited singular commendations; if the vehemency of his nature had not caused him to malign the virtue of that noble *Scipio the African*, and some other worthy men; that were no lesse honest than himself, though far less rigid, and more gallant in behaviour. Otherwise, he was every good Citizen, and one of such temper, that he could fashion himself to all occasions; as if he were never out of his Element. He loved business so well, or rather hated vice so earnestly, that even unto the end of his life, he was exercised in defending himself or accusing others. For at the age of fourscore and six years, he pleaded in his own defence: and four years after, he accused *Sergius Galba* unto the people. So began the Nobility of *Cato* his family; which ended in his great grand-child *M. Cato the African*: one that being of like virtue and fervency, had all his good purposes dash, and was finally wearied out of his life, by men of such nobility and greatness as this his Ancestor had continually vexed.

The *Spanish Wars*, after *Cato* his departure out of the Country, though they were not very dangerous, yet were they many; and the Country seldom free from insurrection, in one part or other. The *Roman* Prætors therefore, of which two every year were sent over Commanders into *Spain* (that was divided into Governments) did rarely fail of such work, as might afford the honour of Triumph. One slew thirteen thousand *Spaniards* in a battell; another took fifty Towns; and a third enforced many States of the Country to sue for peace. Thus every one of them, or most of them, did some laudable service; and yet so, that commonly there were of men, towns, and people, new that rebelled, in stead of the old that were slain, taken, or reclaimed. At the causes hereof, I have already pointed; and therefore think it enough to say, That the business in *Spain* required not the employment of a *Roman* Consul, from such time as *Cato* thence departed, untill the *Numantian War* broke out, which was very long after.

In all other Countries to the West of the *Ionian Seas*, the *Romans* had peace; but so had not the *Carthaginians*. For when *Hannibal* was gone from them, and that the enemies of the *Barchine* House promised all felicity which *Rome* could grant, unto themselves and their obedient City: *Masaniissa* fell to disputing with the sword, about the title to the best part of their Lands. He began with *Emporia*, a fruitful Region about the lesser *Syrus*; wherein, among other Cities, was that of *Leptis*, which daily paid a Talent unto *Carthage* for Tribute. This Country the *Numidian* challenged; and by winning some part of it, seemed to better his claim unto the whole. He had a great advantage: for that the *Carthaginians* might not make any War, without leave obtained from their Masters the *Romans*. They had none other way of redress, than by sending to *Rome* 40 their Complaint of his doings. And surely they wanted not good matter to alledge, if the Judges had been impartial. For besides that *Scipio*, in limiting out to them their bounds, had left them the possession of this Country: *Masaniissa* himself, now very lately pursuing a Rebel that fled out of his Kingdom, desired leave of the *Carthaginians*, for himself to passe through it in his way to *Cyrene*: thereby acknowledging (had it otherwise been questionable) that the Country was theirs. This notwithstanding, *Masaniissa* had wherewith to justify his proceedings, especially unto the *Roman* Senate. He gave the *Fathers* to understand by his Embassadors, what faithlesse people the *Carthaginians* were, and how ill affected to the State of *Rome*. There had lately been sent unto them from *Hannibal*, one that should perswade them to take part with *Antiochus*. 50 This man they had examined upon some suspicion of his errand; yet neither arresting him nor his ship, had thereby afforded him means to escape. Hence the *Numidian* concluded, that certainly it was their purpose to rebell; and therefore good policy to keep them down.

As for the Country of *Emporia*: it had alwaies, he said, been theirs that were able to hold it by strong hand: and so belonged sometime unto the *Numidian* Kings; though now of late it was in possession of the *Carthaginians*. But if the truth were known, the Citizens of *Carthage* had not any very warrantable title unto any more ground, than that

that whereon their City stood; or scarcely to so much. For they were no better than strangers in *Africa*, that had gotten leave there to build upon so much ground, as they could encompass with an Ox-hide cut into small thongs. Whatsoever they held without such a compals, was purchased by fraud, and wrongfull encroachments. This considered, *Masaniissa* requested of the Senate, that they would not adjudge unto such usurpers, the Country sometimes appertaining to the Ancestors of him their assured friend. The *Romans* having heard these allegations on both sides, found the matter so doubtfull, that they could not on the sudden tell what to determine. Wherefore, because they would do nothing rashly; they sent over three Embassadors, of whom *P. Scipio the African* was one and the chief, to decide the controversy: yet secretly giving them instructions, to leave all as they found it, without making any end one way or other. The Embassadors followed their directions, and left all doubtfull. So was it likely, that *Masaniissa* with a strong army should quickly prevail against those that could no more than talk of their right, and exclaim against the wrong. By such Arts were the *Carthaginians* held, not only from stirring in favour of King *Antiochus*, if they had there to any disposition; but were prepared by little and little, unto their final destruction: that came upon them, when the *Romans* had leisure to express the utmost of their hatred.

## §. VI.

The *Ætoli*ans labour to provoke *Antiochus*, *Philip*, and *Nabis*, to war upon the *Romans*, by whom they hold themselves wronged and disgraced; *Nabis* besiegeth *Gythium*, and wasteth some part of *Achæa*. The exact skill of *Philopœmen* in advantage of ground: whereby he utterly vanquisheth *Nabis*. *Antiochus* being denied peace by the *Romans*, joyns with the *Ætoli*ans. The *Ætoli*ans surprize *Demetrius*; and by killing *Nabis*, their Confederates, seize upon *Sparta*. But they are driven out by the *Citizens*: who as *Philopœmen* his persuasions annex themselves to the *Achæans*.

ALL Greece being at peace, and the *Roman* Armies thence departed: it grieved much the *Ætoli*ans to think, that they who had promised unto themselves the whole spoil of *Philip*, and the highest reputation among the *Greeks*; were not only disappointed of their covetous hopes, but quite forsaken by their ancient dependants; and of all other the most unregarded. Yet was there made a great access to their Estate; by adding much unto them, of that which had been taken from the *Macedonian*. This might well have sufficed them, if their desires had not been immoderate; and their indignation more vehement, than their desire. But they were not so pleased with that which they had, since they thought it no more than part of their due: as they were vexed with the denial of that which they claimed, and with finding themselves to be wholly disappointed, wherein they thought that they had unsufferable wrong. Wherefore they devised, in a Parliament which they shortly held, by what means they best might right themselves, and give the *Romans* a forrowfull knowledge of the difference between their enmity and friendship. To this purpose they soon agreed, as concurring all in one affection; That they would not only perswade *Antiochus* to make war upon the *Romans*, as one to whom the *Romans* had long refused peace; but that they would deal with the King of *Macedon* their ancient enemy, and with *Nabis* the Tyrant of *Lacedæmon*, to joyn all together in a new Confederacy: whose joyned forces could not in all likelihood, but far surmount those of the *Romans*, *Achæans*, *Rhodi*ans, and King *Bumenes*, with all that were of their Faction. This was a great enterprise, which the *Ætoli*ans took in hand; and well 50 befitting them, for they were great dârsers. They sent Embassadors to all these Kings, with persuasions, as they thought most forcible. But *Philip* was irresolute; and *Antiochus* willing to try first all other courses. *Nabis* the *Lacedæmonian*, who neither (as *Philip*) had lost much; nor (as *Antiochus*) was in fear of any War; yet shewed himself of all other the most forward: and not staying so much as to seek any good pretence, began immediately to lay siege unto *Gythium*, that had been lately taken from him by the *Romans*. The *Achæans*, to whose care chiefly *Titus* at his departure had commended the affairs of *Peloponnesus*, were not slow to admonish *Nabis* of his duty: neither would they have staid long from repressing his violence by open war; had not some of them thought

it wisdom to ask Counsell of the *Romans*, and particularly of *T. Quintius*, before they engaged themselves in a business of such importance. Whilst thus they spent the time in sending Embassadors, and were advised by *Quintius* to let all alone and to wait for the coming of the *Roman* forces, that would shortly be amongst them: *Nabis* was bold to give them juster cause of complaint, by waisting their own Territory.

*Philopamen* was then Pretor of the *Achaens*, who had long been absent in *Crete*, making War there for his minds sake and recreation. Unto him the *Achaens* referred themselves, giving him leave to order the War at his pleasure; either staying till the *Romans* came, or doing otherwise, as he should think best. He made all haste to relieve *Gythium* by Sea; fearing lest the Town, and the *Achaen* Garrison within it, should be lost, if he used any delay. But *Philopamen* was so bad a Sea-man, that he knew not a strong Ship from a rotten. He made a *Quadrirème* Gally his Admirall, that had fourscore years agoe been counted a gallant Vessell, in the Navie of *Antigonus Gonatas*. Neither was the rest of his Fleet so good, as might encounter with that of the *Lacedaemonian*. Only it fell out well, that he committed himself to a light Pinnace or Brigandine, that fought better with her wings, than with her talons. For his admirall Gally was stemmed at the first; and being rotten with age, sprang so many leaks, and took in water so fast, that she was faine to yeeld without further resistance. When the rest of the Fleet saw what was become of their Admirall, all were presently discouraged, and saved themselves, with what speed they could. But *Philopamen* was not herewith daunted. If he had failed in Sea-service, which was none of his Occupation, He said, that he would make amends by Land. The Tyrant withdrew part of his Army from the siege of *Gythium*, to stop the *Achaens*, if they should invade his Countrey. But upon these which were placed in guard of *Laconia*, *Philopamen* came unexpected; fired their Camp, and put all, save a very few of them, to the sword. Then marched he with all his Army towards *Lacedaemon*; within ten miles wherof he was when the tyrant met him, that had already taken *Gythium*. It was not expected that *Nabis* would have been ready for them so soon. Or if he should come from *Gythium*, with any part of his forces: yet was it thought that he must overtake them, and charge them in *Rere*. They marched therefore almost securely, in a long troupe reaching some five miles; having their Horse, and the greatest part of their Auxiliaries at their backs, to bear off any sudden impression. But *Nabis*, who formerly understood, or at least suspected, what course they would take, appeared in the front of them with all his Army; encamped there where they meant to have lodged. It was the custome of *Philopamen*, when he walked or travelled abroad with his friends, to mark the situation of the Countrey about him; and to discourse what might befall an Army marching the same way. He would suppose, that having with him there such a number of Souldiers, ordered and sorted in such manner, and marching towards such a place; he were upon that ground encountered by a greater Army, or better prepared to the fight. Then would he put the question, Whether it were fit for him to hold on his way, retire, or make a stand: What piece of ground it were meet for him to seize upon; and in what manner he might best do it: in what sort he should order his men: where bestow his carriages, and under what Guard in what sort encamp himself: and which way march the day following? By such continuall meditation, He was grown so perfect, that he did never meet with any difficulty, whence he could not explicate himself and his followers. At this time he made a stand: and having drawn up his *Rere*, He encamped near unto the place where he was; within half a mile of the Enemy. His baggage with all thereto belonging, he bestowed on a Rock; encompassing them round with his Souldiers. The ground was rough, the wayes bad, and the day almost quite spent: so as *Nabis* could not at the present greatly molest him. Both Armies were to water at one Brook; whereto the *Achaens* lay the nearer. This watering therefore was first to minister the like occasion of skirmish. *Philopamen* understood this; and laid an ambush in place convenient; wherein the Mercenaries of *Nabis* fell, and were slaughtered in great numbers. Presently after this, he caused one of his own Auxiliaries to go to the Tyrant, as a fugitive, and tell him, that the *Achaens* had a purpose to get between him and *Lacedaemon*; whereby they would both debar his return into the City, and withall encourage the people to take Armes for the recovery of their freedome. The Tyrant hearing this, marched hastily away; and left his Camp, which hardly otherwise would have been forced.

Some

Some companies he made to stay behind, and shew themselves upon the Rampart, thereby to conceal his departure. But *Philopamen* was not so to be beguiled. He easily won the Camp, and gave chase to *Nabis*: whose followers being overtaken, had no courage to turn about & make head. The enemies being thus dispersed, & fled into woods where they lay in covert all that day: *Philopamen* conceived a right, that their fear & necessity would teach them to creep homewards, and save themselves, when it grew dark. Wherefore in the evening, when he had gathered together all those of his light-armature, which had followed the chase whilst it was day, he led forth the rest that had well refreshed themselves, and occupied the two most ordinary passages unto *Lacedaemon*. So *Nabis* his men, when it was dark night, perceiving in *Philopamen* Camp great store of lights, thought that all had been at rest: and therefore adventured to make an escape home: But they were so way-laid, that hardly one quarter of them got into *Sparta*. Thirty daies together after this, did *Philopamen* waste the Countrey round about, whilst *Nabis* durst not issue forth of his town; and then returned home, leaving the tyrant in a manner without forces.

The *Roman* Embassadors were then in *Greece*, and *T. Quintius* among them, labouring to make their party strong against *Antiochus* and *Nabis*, whom they knew to be solicited by the *Atolians*. Very fair countenance they also made unto *Philip*; and with comfortable promises drew him to make shew, whatsoever he thought, of good correspondence. They promised to restore unto him his son: and were contented to let him hope, that he should receive other favours at their hands; and regain possession of many places, by them taken from him. Thus did the *Romans* prepare for war against *Antiochus* in *Greece*, whilst their Embassadors that were with him in *Asia*, denied otherwise to grant him Peace, than if he would yeeld unto one of the Conditions, by them so often propounded. The long absence of this King in *Syria*, where he had accomplished the marriage between *Ptolemy* and his daughter; together with the death of young *Antiochus* the Kings son, which hapened during the Treaty, and hindered, or seemed to hinder the King from giving audience in person to the Embassadors, caused them to return home to *Rome*; as uncertain of their answer as at their setting forth. One thing that might have been, and partly was, beneficial unto them, they brought to passe during their abode at *Ephesus*; either by cunning, or (as *Livie* rather thinks) by chance. Finding *Hannibal* there, they discoursed often with him, and blamed him for having thus fled unto *Antiochus*, upon a causeless suspicion wherein he held the *Romans*; that honoured his vertue, and intended him no harm. Many have affirmed that *P. Scipio* was one of these Embassadors; and that he, among other discourses with *Hannibal*, demanded once, Which of all the famous Captains that had lived, *Hannibal* judged the most worthy? So *Hannibal* gave to *Alexander* of *Macedon* the first place: to *Pyrrhus* the second: and the third he challenged unto himself. But *Scipio*, who thought his own title better, than that it ought to be so forgotten, asked yet further, What wouldst thou have said then, *Hannibal*, if thou hadst vanquished me? To whom the *Carthaginian* replied, Then would not I have given the first place to *Alexander*, but have claimed it as due unto my self. Now whether this were so, or otherwise, the often and friendly conference of *Hannibal* with the *Roman* Embassadors, made him suspected of *Antiochus*; who therefore did forbear a while to use his counsell. Yet afterwards, when *Hannibal* perceived this change in the King, and plainly desired him to tell the cause thereof, heard what it was; he easily recovered his former grace and credit. For he told how his Father had caused him to swear at the Altars, when he was a little boy; that he never should be friend unto the *Romans*. Wherefore he willed the King not to regard any vain surmises: but to know thus much, that so long as he thought upon war with *Rome*, so long would *Hannibal* do him all good service: whereas contrariwise, if he intended to make peace, then should it behove him to use the counsell of some other man.

The *Atolians*, and their friends, were no less busie all this while, in making their party strong against the *Romans*, than were the *Romans* in mustering up their friends in *Greece*. They had so often dealt with *Antiochus*, vaunting much of their own forces, and arrogating to themselves the honour of the victory against *Philip*, that finally they prevailed with him; especially when the *Roman* Embassadors had left him without hope of peace, unless he would buy it at too dear a rate. They dealt in like sort with the *Macedonians*.

But

But in vain. He understood the *Romans*, and himself, too well. Wherefore it concerned them to improve their own forces to the uttermost: as knowing that all the burden must lie upon *Antiochus* and themselves, without help from any, save only from some few that were discontented in *Greece*. Whilst they were about this, and had with them an Ambassador of the King *Antiochus*, that animated them to resolution, the *Athenian* Embassadors, whom *Titus* had requested to be at their meeting, stayed their vehemency a little, by exhorting them, not to conclude rashly, without first hearing the *Romans*, that lay near at hand. For want of a ready answer hereto, they were contented to approve the motion. *Titus*, hearing this, thought the business worthy of his presence. For since *Antiochus* had now declared himself against the *Romans*, it would be no small piece of service, to withdraw from his friendship, those by whose encouragement he had made the adventure. Wherefore he came to their *Panatholium*, or great Assembly of the Nation; where he forgot nothing that might serve to appeale them. He willed them to consider the weight of the enterprise which they took in hand; whereby *Greece* was like to become a Champaign-field, on which to the ruine of the Country, the *Romans* and King *Antiochus*, that commanded no small part of the World, should fight for the Mastery: the *Ætolians*, as Masters in that kinde of Fence, setting them on, and becoming the *Sticklers*. As for those grievances which did thus exasperate them, and urge them to such violent courses, he willed them to consider how slight they were, and how much better they might do, to send Embassadors to *Rome*, that should either plead their right in the Senate, or (if their right unto the places which they claimed, were not good) make request to have what they desired: than thus to set the world in an uproar, and be afterwards the first that should repent it. But what he said, or could say, it skilled not much. They had already done ill, to make the Ambassador of the King, whose help they had sought, wait so long for an answer, and stay doubting what good end they should make with the *Romans*. Neither was it newes unto them, to hear those comfortable words, that, by sending to *Rome*, they might happen to obtain what they desired, either as their right, or else by way of favour. For with such Terms had they been satisfied once already; and were by the Senate rejected unto *Titus*: who having it in his own power, gave them no satisfaction; yet would now again refer them to the Senate. This was only loss of time, and might abate their credit with *Antiochus*. Wherefore without more ado they made a Decree, That King *Antiochus the Great* should be intreated to come over into *Greece*, as well to set the Countrey at liberty, as also to decide the controversies depending between the *Romans* and *Ætolians*. Such a Decree they would not have made, had they not understood the Kings minde before. Having made it, they forgot no point of bravery, whereby to vaunt themselves to the Kings Embassadors, and against the *Romans*. *Titus* desired of their Prætor, to let him see a Copy of this new Decree. The Prætor answered, That then he had other things to do: but that this Decree, and their further answer, they would shortly let him know, if he came to their Camp in *Italy* upon the river of *Tibris*. Gentler words would have done better, as the *Ætolians* are like to understand hereafter. But having thus begun, they meant henceforth to go roundly to work. The care of the war they referred unto the more private Councell of their Nation: that no occasion might slip, in waiting for the Authority of a general assembly. The *Apocleri* (so were the privie Councell of *Ætolia* called) went as hotly to work as any of the youngest heads could have done. They laid a plot, how to get into their hands at one time the Towns of *Chalcis*, *Demetrias*, and *Sparta*: to each of which they sent men for the purpose. *Demetrias* they took upon the sudden, entring some of them as friends, to conduct home a principall man of the City: who for speaking words against *T. Quintius*, had been driven to flee thence; but was, by intercession of those that loved him, again recalled. His *Ætolian* companions, that were not many, seized upon a Gate; whereas they let in a troupe which they had left not far behind them: and so fell to murdering the chief of the *Roman* Faction. At *Chalcis* they sped not so well. Thither also they had a banished man to bring home: but they came so strong, that their purpose was discovered, and the Town prepared to defend it self against them. Being therefore demanded the cause of this hostility, they gave a gentle answer, saying, That they came not thither as enemies, but only to deliver the Town from the *Romans*; who more insensibly domineered over it, than ever the *Macedonians* had done. By which Rhetorick they prevailed no more, than they could do by plain force.

\* Liv. l. 35.

force. For the Towns-men replied, That they neither found any abridgement of their liberty, nor needed any Garrison to keep them from the *Romans*, from whom they neither feared any danger, nor received injury. So this business was dashed. The attempt upon *Sparta* was more strange and desperate. *Nabis* their good friend, was Lord of the Town, styling himself King: but more truly by all men called Tyrant. He had well-near lost all, by means of the overthrow which *Philopamen* had lately given him: since he durst not stir abroad; and daily expected the mischief, that on all sides threatened him. Wherefore he sent messengers, one after another, to the *Ætolians*; requesting them, That as he had not been slow to stir in their behalf, but adventured himself upon the utmost of danger, when all others were backward; so they would be pleased to send him what help they might, since his bad fortune had caused him presently to need it. It hath been often said, That the ravenous *Ætolians* were only true to themselves, and regarded neither faith nor friendship, otherwise, than as it might conduce to their own ends. And so dealt they now. For since *Nabis* his mercenary forces, which upheld his Tyranny, were in a manner consumed: they thought it expedient for their Estate, to put him out of the way; and, by so doing, to assure *Lacedæmon* unto themselves. To this purpose, they sent thither *Alexamenus*, one whom they thought a man fit for such a work. To him they gave a thousand Foot, and thirty Horse, choien for the purpose. These thirty were by *Demetrius* the Prætor brought into the Councell of the *Apocleri*, where they were commanded to be no wiser than they should be, nor to think that they were sent to make war with the *Acheans*, or to do ought else, save only what *Alexamenus* should command them; which were it never so desperate, and in seeming against all reason; yet must they understand, that unless they performed it, they should have no good welcome home. So *Alexamenus* came to the Tyrant, whom he encouraged with brave words: telling him that *Antiochus* was already in *Europe*, and would be anon in *Greece*, meaning to cover all the Land and Sea with his mighty Armies; and that the *Romans* were like to finde other manner of work, than of late with *Philip*: since the Elephants of this great King, without other help, would suffice to tread them down. As for the *Ætolians*, he said, that if need should so require, they would presently send away to *Lacedæmon* all the forces that they could raise: But that they were very desirous at the present, to make as goodly a muster as they could, before the great king; which caused them to send him thither afore with no greater company. Hereupon he willed *Nabis* to take heart, bring forth his men, that had bin long pent up in the City; and train them without the walls: as if shortly he should employ them in work of conquest, rather than defence. *Nabis* was glad of this: and daily exercised his men in the field: riding up and down with this *Alexamenus*, and no more than three or four horse about him, from one point to another, to order and behold them. During this time of exercise, *Alexamenus* made it his fashion, to step aside alone to his *Ætolians*, and say somewhat as he thought fit: which done, he still returned again to *Nabis*. But when he saw time for the great work which he had in hand, he then went aside to his thirty horsemen, and bade them remember the task enjoyned them at their setting forth; telling them, that they were all in case of banished men, unless they would anon come up to him, and help him to finish that which they should see him take in hand. Herewithall the Tyrant began to draw near them: and *Alexamenus* making towards him, charged him on the sudden, and struck him down. The thirty *Ætolians* never stood to deliberate upon the matter, but all flew in; and, before any succour could arrive, had made an end of this wretched *Nabis*. Presently upon the fact committed, the Tyrant his Mercenaries ran unto the dead body: where in stead of seeking revenge, they stood foolishly gazing as beholders. *Alexamenus* with his *Ætolians* hastened into the City, and seized upon the Palace: where he fell to ransacking the Treasure; and troubled himself with none other care, as though all were already done. Such of his followers as were dispersed in the Town, did also the like; with the greater indignation of the Citizens: who seeing themselves free by the death of the Tyrant, could not indure to see those that had slain him, begin to tyrannize anew. Wherefore all the town was shortly in arms: and for lack of another Captain, they took a little Boy of the Royall stock, that had been brought up with *Nabis* his children; whom they mounted upon a good Horse, and made him their Chief. So they fell upon the *Ætolians* that were idly straggling about; and put them all to the sword. *Alexamenus* with

with not many of his Company, were slain in keeping the Citadel: and those few that escaped thence into *Arcadia*, were taken by the Magistrates, who sold them all as bond-slaves. In this doubtful Estate of things at *Lacedæmon*, *Philopæmen* came thither: who calling out the chief of the City, and speaking such words unto them, as *Alexamenes* should have done after he had slain the Tyrant, easily persuaded them for their own good and safety, to incorporate themselves with the *Achaans*. Thus by the enterprise, no lesse dishonourable than difficult, of the *Ætolians*; and the small, but effectually, travell of *Philopæmen*, the *Achaans* made a notable purchase: and *Lacedæmon*, that had hitherto bin governed either by Kings, or by Tyrants that called themselves Kings, became the member of a Common-wealth, whereof the name had scarce any reputation, when *Sparta* ruled over all *Greece*.

## S. VII.

*Antiochus*, persuaded by *Thoas* the *Ætolian*, comes over into *Greece* ill attended. Sundry passages between him, the *Ætolians*, *Chalcidians*, and others. He wins *Chalcis*, and thereby the whole Ile of *Eubœa*. The vanity of the Kings Embassadors and the *Ætolians*, with the civill answer of *Titus* to their discourse, before the *Achaans*. That it concerned the *Greeks* to have desired peace between the *Romans* and *Antiochus*, as the best assurance of their own liberty. Of many petty Estates that fell to the King. Of *Aminander*, and an idle vanity, by which King *Philip* was lost. *Hannibal* gives good counsell in vain. Some Towns won in *Thessaly*. The King retires to *Chalcis*, where he marrieth a young wife, and revels away the rest of Winter. Upon the coming of the Roman Consul all forsake *Antiochus*. He with two thousand *Ætolians* keeps the Straights of *Thermopyla*. He is beaten, and flees into *Asia*: leaving all in *Greece* unto the victors.

**A**ntiochus was troubled much in *Asia* with *Smyrna* and *Lampsacus*, that would not hearken to any Composition. He thought it neither safe nor honourable, to leave them Enemies behind him, and to win them by force, was more than hitherto he was able. Yet was he desirous, with all speed convenient, to shew himself in *Greece*, where he had bin told, that his presence would effect wonders. It was said, that in all the country there was a very small number, which bore hearty affection unto the *Romans*: That *Nabis* was already up in arms: That *Philip* was like a Bandog in a chain, desiring nothing more, than to break loose; and that the *Ætolians*, without whom the *Romans* had done nothing, nor nothing could have done, were ready to confer upon him the greatness, which they had unworthily bestowed upon insolent *Barbarians*. Of all this the least part was true. Yet that which was true made such a noise, as added credit unto all the rest. Whilst therefore the king was thinking to send *Hannibal* into *Africa*, there to molest the *Romans*, & so give him the better leisure of using his own opportunities in *Greece*: That the *Ætolian* came over to him, and bad him lay all other care aside; for that his countrymen had already taken *Demetrias*, a Town of main importance, that should give him entertainment, where he might proceed as became the greatness of his virtue & fortune. This did serve to cut off all deliberation. As for *Hannibal*, *Thoas* was bold to tell the king, first, that it was not expedient for him to divide his forces at such a time, when the very reputation of his numbers, brought into *Greece*, might serve to lay open unto him all places, without need of using violence; and secondly, That in any such great enterprise there could not be chosen a more unfit man to be employed in the kings service, than was that famous *Hannibal* the *Carthaginian*. For he said, that the king should as greatly feel the losse of a fleet or Army, perishing under such a notable commander if his fortune were bad; as if the same had miscarried under one of meaner quality: whereas nevertheless if *Hannibal* prevailed, *Hannibal* alone should have all the honour, & not *Antiochus*. In this regard he was of opinion, that such a renowned Warriour should be always near unto the Kings person, to give advice: which being followed as often as it was found commodious, the good success would wholly redound unto the honour of him that had the sovereign Command; even of the King himself. *Antiochus* gladly hearkned unto this admonition; being jealous of the virtue, that shined brighter than the Majesty of his own fortune. And thereupon he laid aside the determination, which tended more to the advancement of his desires, than did any thing else by him then or after thought upon. Presently

Presently after this, He made ready for *Greece*. Before his setting forth, in a frivolous pomp of ceremony, he went up from the Sea-side to *Ilium*, there to do sacrifice to *Minaerva* of *Troy*. Thence passing over the *Ægean* Sea, He came to *Demetrias*, *Eurylochus* the *Magnesian*, the same whom the *Ætolians* had lately waited on home, when by that pretext they won *Demetrias*; was now the chief man, and ruler of his Nation. He therefore with his Countymen, in great frequency, came to do their duties to the King *Antiochus*, and bid him welcome. The King was glad of this: and took it as a sign of good luck, to be so entertained at the beginning. But it may be suspected, that the *Magnesian* found not the like cause of joy. For whereas they had expected a Fleet and Army somewhat like to that of *Xerxes*: they saw three hundred ships; of which, no more than forty were serviceable for the Wars, with an Army of ten thousand Foot, five hundred Horse, and six Elephants. The *Ætolians* no sooner heard of his coming than they called a Parliament, and made a Decree, whereby they invited him into their country. He knew before that they would so do; and was therefore well onward on his way towards them, when they met him that brought the Decree. At his coming to *Lamia*, the *Ætolians* gave him as joyfull entertainment as they could devise. Being brought into their Council, he made an Oration: wherein he desired them to hold him excused, that he came not followed with a greater Army. This was, he said, in true estimation, a sign of his good will: in that he staid not to make all things ready, but hasted unto their side, even whilst the season was unfit for Navigation. Yet it should not be long ere the hope of all those which had expected him, would be satisfied unto the full. For it was his meaning to fill all *Greece* with Armies, and all the Sea-coast with his Fleets. Neither would he spare for any charge, travel, or danger, to follow the business which he had undertaken: even to drive the *Romans* and their authority out of *Greece*; leaving the Country free indeed, and the *Ætolians* therein the chief. Now as the Armies that were following him, should be very great; so was it his meaning, that all provisions to them belonging should be correspondent; because he would not be any way burdensome unto his Confederates. But at the present he must needs intreat them, having thus hastily come over unto their aid, unprovided of many necessities; that they would help him with Corn and other victuals, whereof he stood in need. So he left them to their consultation: the conclusion whereof was, after a little dispute, (for a vain motion was made by some, that the differences between the *Romans* and them, should be put by Compromise to the decision of *Antiochus*) that they would yield unto the Kings desire, and assist him with all their forces. Here we may observe, how vain a thing it is for an absolute Prince to engage himself, as did *Antiochus*, in a business of dangerous importance upon the promised assurance of a State that is merely popular. For if the vehemency of *Thoas*, and some other of that Faction, had not prevailed in this Council, the *Ætolians*, for gain of two or three Towns, yea, for hope of such gain that might have deceived them, were like to have abandoned this King their friend, unto the discretion of the *Romans*. And what remedy had there been, if this had so fallen out? He could have bemoaned himself to *Thoas*, and complained of the wrong: but he must have been contented with this answer, That the fault was in those of the opposite side; whom *Thoas* would therefore have pronounced to be very wicked men. It happened much better for the present, though in the future it proved much worse, both for him, and for the *Ætolians*. He was chosen Generall of all their forces: and thirty Commissioners were appointed to be about him, as a Council of War for the Nation. These armed such as readily they could, whilst it was in dispute where they should begin the War. *Chalcis* was thought the meetest place to be first undertaken: whether if they came suddenly, they should not peradventure need to use much force. The King had brought with him into *Ætolia* but a thousand Foot, leaving the rest behind him at *Demetrias*. With these he hasted away directly toward *Chalcis*; being overtaken by no great number of the *Ætolians*, which accompanied him thither. At his coming, the Magistrates, and some of the chief Citizens, issued forth to parle with him. There the *Ætolians* began, as they had lately done before, to tell, how the *Romans* had only in words and false semblance, set *Greece* at liberty. But such liberty as might be true and usefull, they said, would never be obtained; untill by removing the necessity of obeying their pleasure that were most mighty, every severall estate had where to finde redress of any pressure. And to this end was the great *Antiochus* come thither; a King well

well able to counterpoise, yea to overweigh the *Romans*: who nevertheless desired them only, so to joyn with him in League, as that if either the *Romans* or he should offer them wrong, they might keep it in their power, to seek redresse at the others hands. The *Chalcidians* made hereto the same answer, which, to the like allegations, they had made not long before: That their freedom was not imaginary, but absolute; for which they were to thank the *Romans*; without whose good liking, they would enter into no new confederacy. That which they spake of themselves, they could likewise affirm of all the *Greeks*: forasmuch as none of them paid any tribute, was kept under by any Garrison, or lived otherwise than by their own *Laws*, and without being tied unto conditions which displeased them. Wherefore they wondered, why the King should thus trouble himself to deliver Cities that were already free. But since he, and the *Atolians*, requested their friendship; they besought both him and the *Atolians*, to do a friendly Office, in departing from them quietly, and leaving them in such good case as they were. With this answer the King departed: for he was not, as then, strong enough to force them. But very soon after, he brought in either a greater power, which terrified them, and made them yield: before all the succours could arrive, which *Titus* had sent for their defence.

The chief City of *Euboea* being thus gotten, all the rest of the Island shortly yielded to *Antiochus*. Four or five hundred *Roman* Souldiers, that came over late to have defended *Chalcis*, reposed themselves at *Delium*, a little town of *Boeotia*, lying over against the Island; where was a Temple and Grove, consecrated unto *Apollo*, that had the privilege of an inviolable Sanctuary. In this place were some of them walking, & beholding the things there to be seen, whilst others were busied as they found cause, without fear of any danger, as being in such a place, and no war hitherto proclaimed. But *Menippus* one of *Antiochus* his Captains, that had wearied himself in many vain Treaties of peace took advantage of their carelessness, and used them with all extremity of war. Very few of them escaped: fifty were taken, and the rest slain. Hereat *Quintus* was grieved: yet so, as it pleased him well to consider, that his *Romans* had now more just cause than before, to make war upon the King.

*Antiochus* liked well these beginnings, and sent Embassadors into all quarters of *Greece*, in hope, that his reputation should perswade very many to take his part. The wifer sort returned such answer, as the *Chalcidians* had done. Some reserved themselves until he should come among them: knowing that either, if he came not, he must hold them excused for not daring to stir; or if he came, the *Romans* must pardon their just fear, in yielding to the stronger. None of those that lay far off, joyned with him in true meaning, save the *Eleans*, that always favoured the *Atolians*, and now feared the *Achaens*. Little reason there was, that he should think to draw the *Achaens* to his party. Nevertheless he assayed them, upon a vain hope, that the envie which *Titus* was said to bear unto *Philopemens* virtue, had bred a secret dislike between that Nation and the *Romans*. Wherefore both he and the *Atolians* sent Embassadors to the Councell at *Egium*, that spared not brave words, if the *Achaens* would have been so taken. The Kings Embassador told of great Armies and fleets that were coming; reckoning up the *Dahans*, *Medians*, *Elimeans*, and *Caducians*, names that were not every day heard of, and therefore as he thought, the more terrible. Then told he them what notable men at Sea, the *Sydians*, *Tyrrians*, *Aradians*, and *Pamphilians* were; such indeed as could not be resisted. Now concerning money and all warlike furniture: it was, he said, well known, that the Kingdomes of *Asia* had alwaies thereof great plenty. So as they were much deceived: who considering the late war made against *Philip*, did think that this which *Antiochus* would prove the like: the case was too far different. Yet this most powerfull King, that for the liberty of *Greece* was come from the utmost parts of the East; requested no more of the *Achaens*, than that they would hold themselves as neutrall, and quietly look on, whilst he took order with the *Romans*. To the same effect spake the *Atolian* Embassador, and further added, that in the battell at *Cynoscephale*, neither *Titus* had done the part of a General, nor the *Romans* of good Souldiers: but that both he and his Army had bin there destroyed, had they not been protected by virtue of the *Atolians*, which carried the day. *Titus* was present at the Councell, and heard all this: to which he made as fit answer, as could have been desired. He told the *Achaens*, That neither the Kings Embassador, nor the *Atolian*, did so greatly labour to perswade those unto whom they addressed

addressed their Orations; as to vaunt themselves the one unto the other. So as a man might well discern, what good correspondence in vanity it was, that had thus linked the King, and the *Atolians* together. For even such brags as here they made before the *Achaens*, who knew them to be liars, had the *Atolians* also made unto King *Antiochus*: proclaiming the victory over *Philip* to be merely their Act: and the whole Countrey of *Greece* to be dependent on them. Interchangeably had they been feared by the King, with such tales as his Embassador told even now; of *Dahans*, and *Aradians*, and *Elimeans*, and a many others: that were all but a company of *Syrrians*, such as were wont to be sold about for bond-slaves, and good for little else. These divers names of rascall people were, he said, like to the diversity of *Venifon*, wherewith a friend of his at *Chalcis* (no such vaunter as were these Embassadors) had sometime feasted him. For all that variety, wherewith he wondered, was none other, as his Host then merrily told him; than so many pieces of one tame swine, drest after severall fashions, with variety of sauces. Setting therefore aside this vanity of idle pomp: it were good to make judgement of the great King, by his present doings. He had notwithstanding all this great noise, no more than ten thousand men about him: for which little Army he was fain in a manner to beg victuals of the *Atolians*; and take up money at usury, to defray his charges. And thus he ran up and down the Countrey; from *Demetrias* to *Marina*; thence back to *Chalcis*; and being there shut out, to *Demetrias* again. These were the fruits of lies: wherewith, since both *Antiochus* and the *Atolians* had each deluded other; meet it was that they should, as perhaps already they did, repent, whilst wiser men took heed by their example. To a favourable Auditory much persuasion is needful. The *Achaens* did not love to wel the *Atolians*, as to desire that they should become Princes of *Greece*: but rather wished to see them, of all other, made the veriest abjects. Wherefore they stood not to hearken after newes, what *Antiochus* did, how he sped in *Euboea*, or what other Cities were like to take his part: but readily proclaimed War against him, and against the *Atolians*.

How the hatred between these two Nations grew inveterate; sufficiently appears in the story foregoing. Now have they gotten each their Patrons; the one, the *Romans*; the other, King *Antiochus*. Herein did each of them unwisely: though far the greater blame ought to be laid on the turbulent spirits of the *Atolians*. For when the *Romans* departed out of *Greece*, and left the Countrey at rest: there was nothing more greatly to have been desired, than that they might never finde occasion to return with an Army thither again. And in this respect ought the *Greeks* to have sought, not how *Smyrna* and *Lampiscus* might recover their liberty (which had never been held a matter worth regarding, untill now of late) but how the powers of the East and West, divided and kept asunder by their Countrey, as two Seas by an *Isthmus*, or neck of land, might be kept from overflowing the bar that parted them. Neither had the *Romans* any better pretence for their seeking to make free those base *Asiatiques*, who originally were *Greeks*; than the general applause, wherewith all the nation entertained this their loving offer. Yet were *Lysimachia*, and the Towns in *Thrace*, lately gotten by *Antiochus*, pretended as a very great cause of fear, that should move them to take arms even in their own defence. But if all *Greece* would have made intercession, and requested that things might continue as they were, promising jointly to assist the *Romans*, with their whole forces both by Land and Sea, whensoever King *Antiochus* should make the least offer to stir against them: then had not only this quarrell been at an end; but the *Roman* Patronage over the Countrey, had been far from growing; as soon after it did, into a Lordly rule.

The *Achaens* were at this time, in a manner the only Nation of *Greece*, that freely and generally declared themselves altogether for the *Romans*; their friends and benefactors. All the rest gave doubtful answers of hope unto both sides: or if some few, as did the *Thessalians*, were firm against *Antiochus*; yet helped they not one another in the quarrel, nor shewed themselves his enemies, till he pressed them with open force. The *Boeotians* willingly received him, as soon as he entred upon their borders, not so much for fear of his power, as in hatred of *Titus* and the *Romans*, by whom they had been somewhat hardly used. *Aminander* the *Athamanian*, besides his old friendship with the *Atolians*, was caught with a bait, which it may be doubted, whether he did more foolishly swallow, or *Antiochus* cast out. He had married the daughter of an *Arcadian*, that was at



idle-headed man, and vaunted himself to be defended from Alexander the Great: naming his two sons, in that regard, *Philip & Alexander*. *Philip*, the elder of these brethren, accompanied his sister to the poor Court of *Atthamania*: where having made his folly known, by talking of his Pedegree, He was judged by *Antiochus* and the *Atolians*, a man fit for their turns. They made him believe, that in regard of his high parentage, and the famous memory of *Alexander* his forefather; it was their purpose, to do their best for the conquest of *Macedon* to his behoof: since no man had thereto so good title as he. But for the enabling of him hereunto, it behoved him to draw *Alexander* to their party, that for they might the sooner have done with the *Romans*. *Philip* was highly pleased herewith; and by persuasions of himself, or of his sister, effected as much as they desired. But the first piece of service done by this imaginary King (whether it proceeded from his own phrenzic in hope to get love of the *Macedonians* that should be his subjects: or whether from some vanity in King *Antiochus* that employed him) wrought more harm to his friends, than he and *Alexander* were able to good. There were two thousand men committed to his leading: with which he marched unto *Cynosephale*, there to gather up the bones of the slaughtered *Macedonians*; whom their King had suffered all this while to lie unburied. The *Macedons* troubled not themselves to think on this charitable act, as if it were to them any benefit at all: but King *Philip* took it in high indignation, as intended merely unto his despoil. Wherefore he presently sent unto the *Romans*; and gave them to understand, that he was ready with all his power to aid them whereinsoever they should be pleased to use him.

The *Atolians*, *Magnetians*, *Enbaeans*, *Bavians*, and *Atthamians*, having now all joined with him; *Antiochus* took counsel of them about the prosecution of the War in hand. The chief question was, Whether it were meet for him to invade *Thessaly*, that would not hearken to his persuasions; or whetherto let all alone untill the Spring: because it was now mid-winter. Some thought one thing, and some another; confirming each his own sentence, with the weightiest reasons which he could alledge; as in a matter of great importance. *Hannibal* was at this meeting: who had long been cast aside, as a vessel of no use, but was now required to deliver his opinion. He freely told the King, That what he should now utter, was even the same which he would have spoken, had his counsel at any time before been asked since their coming into *Greece*. For the *Magnetians*, *Bavians*, and other their good friends, which now so willingly took their parts: what were they else than so many poor estates, that wanting force of their own, did adjoin themselves for fear unto him, that was strongest for the present; and would afterwards, when they saw it expedient, be as ready to fall to the contrary side, alledging the same fear for their excuse? Wherefore he thought it most behoovefull to win King *Philip* of *Macedon* unto their party: who (besides that being once engaged, he should not afterwards have power to recolve and forsake them at his pleasure) was a mighty Prince; and one that had means to sustain the *Roman* War with his proper forces. Now that *Philip* might be easily persuaded to join with them; the benefit likely to rebound unto himself, by their society, was a very strong Argument: though indeed what need was there, of proving by inference the likelihood of this hope: For, said Hee, These *Atolians* here present, and namely, this *Thoas*, being lately Ambassador from them into *Asia*, among other Motives which he then used to excite the King unto this Expedition, insisted mainly on the same point. He told us that *Philip* was moved beyond all patience, with the Lordly insolence of the *Romans*; likening that King to some wild beast, that was chained or locked up within some grate, and would fain break loose. If this be so: let us break his chain, and pull down the grate, that he may regain his liberty, and satisfy his angry stomack, upon those that are common enemies to us and him. But if it prove otherwise, and that his fear be greater than his indignation: then shall it behoove us to look unto him, that he may not seek to please his good masters the *Romans*, by offending us. Now for *Seleucus* is now at *Lysimachia*, with part of your Army: if *Philip* will not hearken to your Embassages, let *Seleucus* be in readinesse to fall upon *Macedon*, and find him work to defend his own on the other side, without putting us here to trouble. Thus much concerning *Philip*, and the present war in *Greece*. But more generally for the managing of this great enterprise, wherein you are now embarked against the *Romans*, I told you my opinion at the beginning: whereto had you then given ear, the *Romans* by this time should have heard other news, than that *Chalcis* in *Euboea* was become ours. *Italy & Gaul* should have bin on fire with wars; and little

little to their comfort, they should have understood, that *Hannibal* was again come into *Italy*. Neither do I see what should hinder us even now from taking the same course. Send for all your Fleet & Army hither (but in any case let ships of burden come along with them, laden with store of vittuals: For as the case now stands, we have here too few hands, and too many mouths). Wherefore let the one half be employed against *Italy*; whilst you in person with the other half, standing on this side the *Ionian* Sea, may both take order for the affairs of *Greece*, and therewithall make countenance, as if you were even ready to follow us into *Italy*: yet, and be ready to follow us indeed, if it shall be requisite. This is my advice; who though perhaps I am not very skilfull in all sorts of war, yet how to war with the *Romans*, I have been instructed by long experience, both to their cost and mine own. Of this Counsel which I give, I promise you my faithfull and diligent service for the execution: but what counselsoever you please to follow, I wish it may be prosperous. Many were pleased with the great spirit of the man, and said he had spoken bravely; but of all this was nothing done, save only that one was sent into *Asia*, to make all things ready there. In the mean while they went in hand with *Thessaly*; about which they had before disputed. There when they had won one Town by force, many other places, doubting their own strength, were glad to make submission. But *Larissæ*, that was chief of the Country, stood out: not regarding any terrible threats of the King, that lay before the walls with his whole Army. This their faith and courage was rewarded by good fortune. For *M. Balbus*, a *Roman* Proprietor, did send help thither. Likewise *Philip* of *Macedon* professed himself enemy unto *Antiochus*; whereby the fame of the succour coming to *Larissæ*, grew such, as wrought more than the succour could have done, had it arrived. For *Antiochus* perceiving many fires on the Mountains tops afar off; thought that a great Army of *Romans* and *Macedonians* had been coming upon him. Therefore excusing himself by the time of the year: He brake up his siege, and marched away to *Chalcis*. At *Chalcis* he fell in love with a young Maiden, daughter unto a Citizen of the Town; whom without regard of the much disproportion that was between them, both in years and fortune, he shortly married; and so spent the winter following as delightfully as he could, without thinking upon the War in hand. His great men and Captains followed his example; and the souldiers as readily imitated their Captains; in such wise, that when he took the fields, he might evidently perceive in what loose manner of discipline his Army had passed the winter. But *M. Atilius Glabrio*, the *Roman* Consul, that met him very shortly, and help him to reclaim them from this looseness of nuptial Revels, by setting them to harder exercise.

*M. Atilius* was chosen Consul with *P. Cornelius Scipio Nasica*. The war against *Antiochus* fell to him by lot; whereas otherwise He was no way so honourable, as *Nasica*, his Colleague: unto whom fell a charge, of far less credit and importance. *Nasica*, besides the great Nobility of his Family, had bin long since, in time of the *Punic* War, crowned with the title of *The best man in Rome*: when the Senate, for very fear and superstition, durst not have so pronounced him, had they not sorrowed him, as being commanded by Oracle, that none other man than the very best, should entertain an old stone, which they Devil then taught them to call *The Mother of the gods*. But no prerogative of Birth, Verme, or good Opinion, gave such advantage to the better man, as to make choice of his own Province; or arrogate more unto himself, than his lot should afford him. This impartial distribution of employments, helped well to maintain peace and concord. *P. Scipio* therefore was appointed to make War against the *Boians*; wherein he purchased the honour of a Triumph, nothing so glorious as was that of his Colleague, who had purchased with harder service, requiring the more ability in matter of War. But *M. Atilius* went over into *Greece*, with ten thousand foot, two thousand horse, and fifteen Elephants. *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt*, notwithstanding his late Alliance with King *Antiochus*, and *Philip* King of *Macedon*; had lately sent Embassadors to *Rome*, making offer to come each of them in person with all his forces into *Atolia*, there to assist the Consul in this War. *Ptolemy* lent also gold and silver, toward the defraying of charges; as one that meant none other than good earnest. But he was too young and dwelt too far off. So his money was returned unto him with thanks; and his loving offer lovingly refused. Unto *Philip's* Embassadors answer was made, that this his friendly offer was gratefully accepted: and that the Senate and People of *Rome* would think themselves beholding to him, for the assistance that he should give to *Atolia*, the Consul.

Consul, *Masani* likewise, and the *Carthaginians*, did strive, which of them should be most forward in gratifying the *Romans*. Each of them promised a great quantity of grain; which they would send partly to *Rome*, partly to the Army in *Greece*. And herein *Masani* far out-went the poor City of *Carthage*, as also in that he offered to lend the Consul five hundred horse, and twenty Elephants. On the other side, the *Carthaginians* undertook to set out a Fleet at their own charges: and to bring in at one payment, all the Tribute-money which was behind, & ought to be discharged by many yearly pensions. But the *Romans* did neither think it good, to let them arm a Fleet, nor would let them redeem themselves out of Tribute, by paying all at once. As for the Corn, it was accepted, with condition, that they should be contented to receive the price of it.

The hasty and ridiculous Issue of this War, that began with such noise and preparations, were hardly credible: were not the difference exceeding great between the *Roman* and the *Asiatic* souldier. *Antiochus* had gotten this Spring, a few towns of *Acarnania*, after the same manner as he had prevailed in other parts of *Greece*, partly by fair words, and treason of the Rulers; partly by terror, that was like to prove their excuse, when they should again forsake him. But King *Philip* and *Babius* having recovered many places; and the *Roman* Consul being arrived, against whom none made resistance; he was glad to withdraw himself. *Aminander* fled out of his *Athamania*: which the *Macedonian* took and enjoyed; as in recompence of his good service to the *Romans*. *Philip* the brother of *Aminanders* wife, was taken by the Consul, made a mocking-stock, and sent away prisoner to *Rome*. The *Thessalians* used much more diligence in returning to their old friends, than they had done in yielding to the King. All their Cities one after another, gave up themselves: the Garrisons of *Antiochus*, compounding only for their own lives, and departing unarmed: yet so, that a thousand of them stayed behinde, and took pay of the *Romans*. This did wonderfully perplex *Antiochus*, who having withdrawn himself to *Chalcis*, and hearing how things went, tried out upon his friends: and said, That they had betrayed him. He had taken a great deal of toyle during one half of a winter, and spent the other half in such Nuptials, as were little to his honour: after which in time of need, he found all the promises of the *Asiatics* merely verbally; and himself reduced into terms of great extremity. He therefore admired *Hannibal* as a wise man, yea, a very Prophet, that had foreseen all this long before. Nevertheless, he sent word to the *Asiatics*, that they should now make ready all their forces: as considering their own need to be no less than his. But the *Asiatics* had cause to think, that they themselves were shamefully disappointed by *Antiochus*, who having promised to do great wonders, was in all this while seconded by no greater numbers out of *Asia*, than to many as would fill up the same ten thousand which he first brought over. Yet came there some of them, though fewer than at any time before, which joyned with him. Hereat the King was angry: and could get no better satisfaction, than that *Thous* and his fellows had done their best in vain, to have made all the Nation take Arms. Since therefore neither his own men came over to him out of *Asia*, nor his friends of *Greece* would appear in this time of danger: He seized upon the Straights of *Thermopylae*; as meaning to defend them against the *Romans*, until more help should come. Of the Straights of *Thermopylae*, there hath been spoken enough before, upon many occasions: and then chiefly, when they were defended by *Leonidas* against the huge Army of *Xerxes*. Wherefore it may easily be conceived, how the *Romans*, that landed about *Apollonia*, and so came onwards into *Thessaly*, were unable to passe that Ledge of Mountains, dividing the one half of *Greece*; unless they could win this difficult entrance. But there was great difference between *Leonidas* and *Antiochus*. The former of these, with an handful of men, defended this passage two or three daies together, against a World of men continuing to invade the Country. The latter, having taken upon him to do great miracles; and effect what he lifted himself in *Greece*: did commit himself unto the safety of this place, when he was charged by not many more than he had in his own Army. There whilst he lay, He sent earnest messengers one after another to the *Asiatics*, entreating them not to forsake him thus; but at least wise now to help, and keep the tops of the mountains, lest the *Romans*, finding any by-path, should come down upon him. By this importunity, he got of them two thousand, that undertook to make good the few passages: by which only and not without extreme difficulty, it was possible for the Enemy to ascend. The *Roman* Consul in like sort prepared to force the

L. 3. c. 6 §. 3.

the Straights; without staying to expect King *Philip*: that was hindered by sickness from accompanying him. He had with him *M. Porcius Cato*, and *L. Valerius Flaccus*, that had both of them been Consuls. These he sent forth by night with two thousand men, to try whether by any means they could get up to the *Asiatics*. He himself encouraged his Army: not only by telling them with what base conditioned enemies they had to deal: but what rich kingdoms *Antiochus* held, that should bountifully reward them if they were victors. This was on the day before the battell. All that night *Cato* had a fore journey (for what hapned unto *L. Valerius* it is uncertain, save only that he failed in his intent) and so much the worse, for that he had no skillfull guide. Seeing therefore his men exceedingly tyred, with climbing up steepy Rocks and crooked wyes: He commanded them to repose themselves; whilst he, being a very able man of body, took in hand the discovery, accompanied with no more than one of like mettle to himself. After a great deal of trouble, he found at length a path: which he took to be, as indeed it was, the best way leading unto the Enemies. So thither he brought his men, and held on the same path till toward break of day. It was a place not hanted, because in time of peace, there was a fair way through the Straights below, that required no such trouble of climbing; neither had this entrance of the *Thermopylae* been so often the Seat of War, as might cause any travellers to search out the passages of those desolate Mountains. Wherefore the way that *Cato* followed, though it were the best: yet did it lead him to a bog at the end, which would suffer him to pass no further. So he staid there untill day-light: by which he discovered both the Camp of the *Greeks* underneath him, and some of the *Asiatics* very near unto him, that were keeping watch. He therefore feat forth a lusty Crue of his men, whom he thought fittest for that service, and willed them by any means to get him some prisoners. This was effected: and he thereby understood that these *Asiatics* were no more than six hundred; as also that King *Antiochus* lay beneath in the Valley. So he presently set upon the *Asiatics*, overthrew them, slew a great part of them, and chased the rest, that by flying to their Camp, guided him unto it. The fight was already begun between the Armies below; and the *Romans*, that had easily repelled the Kings men, and driven them into their Camp, found it in a manner a desperate piece of work to assault the Camp it self, which occupied the whole breadth of the Straights; was notably fortified; and not only defended by *Antiochus* his long Pikes, which were belt at that kinde of service, but by Archers & Slingers that were placed over them on the Hill-side, and poured down a shoure of weapons on their heads. But *Cato* his approach determined the matter. It was thought at first that the *Asiatics* had been coming to help the Kings men: but when the *Roman* armes and ensigns were discovered, such was the terror, that none made offer of resistance; but all of them forsook the camp, and fled. The slaughter was not great: for that the badness of the way did hinder the *Roman* Army from making pursuit. Yet this daies losse drove *Antiochus* out of *Greece*, who directly fled to *Chalcis*; and from thence with the first opportunity, got him back into *Asia*.

All the Cities that had imbraced the friendship of *Antiochus*, prepared forthwith to entertain the *Romans*, and intreat for pardon: setting open their gates; and presenting themselves unto the Consul, in manner of suppliants. Briefly in few dayes all was recovered that *Antiochus* had gained: the *Asiatics* only standing out, because they knew not what else to do. Neither did the Consul give them any respite. At his returne from *Chalcis*, he met with King *Philip*, that having recovered health, came to joyn with him against *Antiochus*: over whom since the victory was already gotten, He did grautise unto the *Romans* their good successe; and offered to take part with them in the *Asiatic* War. So it was agreed, That the Consul should besiege *Heraclea*; and *Philip* *Lamia*; at the same time. Each of them plied his work hard; especially *Philip*, who fain would have taken *Lamia* before the Consul should come to help him. But it could not be. For his *Macedonians* that used to work by Myne, were overmuch hindered by the stony ground. Yet was *Lamia* even ready to be taken, when the Consul having won *Heraclea*, came thither; and told *Philip*, that the spoil of these towns was a reward unto those that had fought at *Thermopylae*. Herewith *Philip* must be contented; and therefore went his way quietly. But *Acilius* that could so ill indure to see *Philip* in likelihood of thriving by the *Romans* victory got not *Lamia* himself: untill such time as another Consul was ready to ease him of his charge.

Rrrr 3

The

The loss of *Heraclus* did so affright the *Ætolians*, that they thought no way safer than to desire peace. Yet had they sent unto King *Antiochus* presently after his flight: intreating him not to forsake them utterly, but either to return with all those forces which he had purposed to bring into *Greece*, or if any thing withheld him from coming in person, at least wise to help them with money and other aid. They prayed him to consider, that this did not only concern him in honour, but appertained unto his own safety: since it would be much to his hurt, if the *Ætolians* being wholly subdued, the *Romans*, without any enemies at their backs, might set upon him in *Asia*. He considered well of this, and found their words true. Therefore he delivered unto *Nicanor*, one of their Embassadors, a sum of money, that might serve to defray the charges of the War: promising that ere long he would send them strong aid, both by Land and Sea. *Thum*, another of their Embassadors, He retained with him: who willingly stayed, that he might urge the King to make his word good. But when *Heraclus* was taken from them, then did the *Ætolians* lay aside all hope of attending their fortune, by the help of *Antiochus*, and made suit unto the Consul to obtain peace, upon any reasonable Condition. The Consul would scarce vouchsafe to give them audience, but said, He had other business in hand; only he granted them ten daies of Truce, and sent *L. Valerius Placens* with them to *Hypata*, willing them to make him acquainted with as much as they would have delivered unto himself. At their coming to *Hypata*, they began, as men favouring their own cause, to alledge how well they had deserved of the *Romans*. Whereunto *Placens* would not hearken. He told them plainly, That the memory of such good offices past, was quite obliterated by the malice which they had shewed of late. Wherefore he willed them to acknowledge their fault, and to entreat pardon. Better they thought to do so even betimes, than to stay till they were reduced into terms of more extremity. Hereupon they agreed to commit themselves unto the faith of the *Romans*, and to that effect sent Embassadors to the Consul. This phrase of committing unto the faith, signified, in their use of it, little else than the acknowledgement of a fault done, and the craving of pardon. But the *Romans* used those words in another sense; and counted them all one, as *yielding to discretion*. Wherefore when the Consul heard them speak in this manner: He asked them whether their meaning were agreeable to their words. They answered that it was: and shewed him the decree of their Nation, lately made to this purpose. Then said he, I command you first of all, That none of you presume to go into *Asia*, upon any business private or publick: then, That you deliver up unto me *Dicarchus* the *Ætolian*, *Menestrasus* the *Epirot*, *Aminander* the *Carthmanian*, and such of his Countrymen as have followed him in revolting from us. Whilst he was yet speaking: *Phameas* the Embassador interrupted him; and prayed him not to mistake the custome of the *Greeks*, who had yielded themselves unto his Faith; not unto slavery. What? (said the Consul) Do ye stand to plead Custome without being won at my discretion? Bring thither a chain. With that, chains were brought, and an iron collar by his appointment fitted unto every one of their necks. This did so affright them, that they stood dumb and knew not what to say. But *Valerius* and some others entreated the Consul, not to deal thus hardly with them, since they came as Embassadors; though strict, their Condition was altered. *Phameas* also spake for himself: and said, That neither he, nor yet the *Apoletii* or ordinary Councill for the Nation, were able to fulfill these injunctions, without approbation of the generall Assembly. For which cause he entreated yet further ten daies respite; and had granted unto him Truce for so long.

This truce of ten daies, and other ten daies together, began presently after the taking of *Heraclus*; when *Philip* had been commanded away from *Lamia*, that he might have won. Now because of the indignity herein offered unto that King, and to the end that he might not return home with his Army, like one that could not be trusted in employment: Especially the *Romans* being like hereafter to have further need of him in the continuance of this War: He was desired to set upon the *Armenians*, and some other petty Nations their borderers, whilst the Consul was busied with the *Ætolians*, taking for his reward, all that he could get. And he got in that space all *Armenia*, *Parthia*, *Hyrcania*, and *Dolopia*. For the *Ætolians*, hearing what had befallen their Embassadors, were so enraged, That although they were very ill provided for War, yet they could not endure to hear more talk of Peace. And it happened, that

that *Alexander* about the same time was come back from *Antiochus*, with money & hopeful promises: the *Romans* abiding still about *Heraclus*, & *Philip* having lately risen from before *Lamia*, yet not being fargone thence. His money *Nicanor* conveyed into *Lamia* by very unusual dexterity. But he himself being to passe further to the Assembly of the *Ætolians*, there to make report of his Embassy: was very much perplexed about this his journey, which lay between the *Roman* and *Macedonian* Camps. Yet he made the adventure: and keeping as far as he could from the *Roman* side, fell upon a Station of *Macedonians*; by whom he was taken, and led unto their King. He expected no good; but either to be delivered unto the *Romans*, or used ill enough by *Philip*. But it seems, that the King had not hitherto concocted well the indignity, of his being sent away from *Lamia*. For he commanded his servants to entreat *Nicanor* friendly: and he himself being then at supper, did visit him as soon as he rose up: giving him to understand, That the *Ætolians* did now reap the fruits of their own madnesse; forasmuch as they could never hold themselves contented, but would needs be calling strangers into *Greece*: They had pleased themselves well, in their acquaintance first with the *Romans*, and then with King *Antiochus*; but himself, being their neighbour, they could never well endure. It was now therefore, he said, high time for them to have regard unto his friendship; whereas hitherto they never made any trial: for surely their good affection, one unto the other, would be much more available unto each of them, than their mutual catching of advantages; whereby they had wrought themselves much displeasure. Thus much the King willed *Nicanor* to signify unto his Countrymen; and privately to hold in mind the courtesy which he then did him, in sending him safe home. So giving him a Convoy to guard him to *Hypata*, he lovingly dismissed him. For this benefit, *Nicanor* was always after dutifully affected to the crown of *Macedon*: so as in the war of *Perseus* he made himself suspected unto the *Romans*, and therefore was had away to *Rome*, where he ended his life.

When the Consul understood, that the *Ætolians* refused to make their submission in such wise as he required it: he forthwith meant to prosecute the war against them, without any longer forbearance. They were preparing to make head against him at *Naupactus*; which he therefore directly marched, to try what they could or durst. The siege of *Naupactus* was of greater length, than the *Romans* had preconceived it. For it was a strong City, and well manned. But *Acilius* stood upon point of honour, wherein he thought that he should have been a loser, by rising from before it without Victory. So he held there well-near all the following time of his Consulship; whilst the *Macedonian* king and the *Achaans* made far better use of the *Roman* Victory. *Philip*, as is said before, being allowed to take in such places as had revolted unto *Antiochus*, and were not hitherto reclaimed, as on the strong City of *Demetrius*; and with an easy course of Victory, subdued the *Armenians* and others. The *Achaans* called to account the *Eleans* and *Messenians*; which had long been addicted to the *Ætolian* side; and followed it, in although paper with *Antiochus*. The *Eleans* gave good words; whereby they saved themselves from trouble a while. The *Messenians* being more stout, before they were invaded, had done other help when the *Achaan* Praetor waited their Country; than to offer themselves unto the *Roman* Arms. Thus was then at *Gastib*: to whom they sent word, That at his Commandment their gates should be opened; but that unto the *Romans* it was neither meaning to yield. A message from *Thum* to the *Achaan* Praetor, did suffice to call together the Army, and finish the War; as also the presumptuous Command of the same *Thum*, caused the *Messenians* to annex themselves unto the *Achaans*, and become part of their Common-wealth. Such was now the Majesty of a *Roman* Embassador. He did not sit out the *Armenians*, yet could not let like it, whether either they or any other should take too much upon them. He thought it enough, that they had their liberty, and were strong enough to defend it against any of their neighbours. That they should make themselves great Lords, and able to dispute with the *Romans* upon even terms, it was no part of his desire. They had lately sought the Ile of *Zagabrus*, which had once bin *Philip's*, and was afterwards given by *Antiochus* unto *Aminander*, who sent a Governor thither. But when *Aminander* in this present war, was driven out of his own Kingdom by *Philip*; then did the Governor of *Zagabrus* offer to sell the Land to the *Achaans*; whom he found ready Champions. Thus liked not of this that plainly told them, That the *Romans* would be their own Carvers; and take what they thought good, of the Lands belonging to their

their Enemies, as a reward of the victory which they had obtained. It was bootlesse to dispute. Wherefore the *Acheans* referred themselves unto his discretion. So he told them, that their Commonwealth was like a Torioise, whereof *Peloponnesus* was the shell and that, holding themselves within that compass, they were out of danger; but if they would needs be looking abroad, they should lie open to blowes, which might greatly hurt them. Having seiled things thus in *Peloponnesus*, he went over to *Naupactus*: where *Glabrio* the Consul had lain two moneths; that might have been far better spent. There, whether out of compassion which he had upon the *Ætolians*, or out of dislike of King *Philip* thriving so fast: he perswaded the Consul to grant unto the besieged, and to the whole Nation, so long truce, that they might send Embassadors to *Rome*; and submitting themselves, crave pardon of the Senate. Most like it is, that *Naupactus* was in great danger: else would not the *Ætolians* have made such earnest suit as they did unto *Trius*, for procuring of this favour. But if *Glabrio* had bin sure to carry it in any short space, it may well be thought he would not have gone away without it, since the winning of that Town, wherein was then the whole flour of the Nation, would have made the promised submission much more humble and sincere. When they came unto *Rome*, no treaty could help them to better Conditions, than one of these two: That either they should wholly submit themselves to the good pleasure of the Senate; Or else pay a thousand talents, and make neither peace nor war with any, further than as the *Romans* should give approbation. They had not so much money: neither could they well hope to be gently dealt withall, if they should give themselves away unto discretion; which what it signified, they now understood. Wherefore they desired to have it set down, in what points, and how far forth they should yield unto the good pleasure of the Senate. But hereof they could get no certain answer: so that they were dismissed as enemies, after long and vain attendance.

Whilest the *Ætolians* were pursuing their hopes of peace, the Consul had little to do in *Greece*, & therefore took upon him gravely to set things in order among the tractable *Acheans*. He would have had them to restore the banished *Lacedæmonians* home into their Country; and to take the *Eleans* into the fellowship of their Commonwealth. This the *Acheans* liked well enough: but they did not like it, that the *Romans* should be meddling in all occurrences. Wherefore they deferred the restitution of the banished *Lacedæmonians*: intending to make it an Act of their own meer grace. As for the *Eleans*, they were loth to be beholding to the *Romans*, and thereby to disparage the *Acheans*: into whose Corporation they were desirous to be admitted, and saw that they should have their desire, without such compulsive mediation.

The *Roman* Admirall *C. Livius*, much about the same time, fought a battell at Sea with *Polyxenidas*, Admirall to the King *Antiochus*. King *Eumenes* brought help to the *Romans*, though it was not great: and five and twenty sail of *Rhodians* came after the battell, when they were following the Chase. The Kings Fleet was the better of sail; but that of the *Romans* the better manned: Wherefore *Polyxenidas* being vanquished in fight, was yet out of danger: as soon as he betook himself to a speedy retreat.

And such end had the first years war between King *Antiochus* and the *Romans*. After this, as many of the *Greeks* as had followed the vain hopes of the *Ætolians*, were glad to excuse themselves by fear, & thinking themselves happy when by Embassadors they had obtained pardon. On the contrary side, *Philip* of *Macedon*, Arch-enemy of late unto the *Romans*, did now send to gratulate their victory: and in recompence of his good affection, had restored unto him *Demetrius* his younger son, whom some few years they had kept as an hostage. Also King *Ptolemy* of *Egypt*, gratulating the *Roman* Victory, sent word how greatly all *Asia* and *Syria* were thereby terrified. In which regard he desired the Senate, not to foresew time, but to send an Army, as soon as might be, into *Asia*: promising that his assistance, wherein soever it pleased them to use it, should not be wanting. This *Ptolemy* was the son-in-law of King *Antiochus*: but he was the friend of fortune. He understood long before, as did all that were indifferent beholders of the contention, that the *Romans* were like to have the upper hand. The same did *Antiochus* now begin to suspect, who had thought himself awhile as safe at *Ephesus*, as if he had been in another world: but was told by *Hannibal*, that it was not so far out of *Greece* into *Asia*, as out of *Mach* into *Greece*; and that there was no doubt, but the *Romans* would soon be there, and make him vie the chance of a battell for his kingdom.

## §. VIII.

*Lucius Scipio*, having with him *Publius* the *African* his elder brother, for his Lieutenant, is sent into *Greece*. He grants long Truce to the *Ætolians*; that so he might as leisure passe into *Asia*. Much trouble some businesse by Sea, and divers fights. An invasion upon *Eumenes* his Kingdom, with the siege of *Pergamum*, raised by an handful of the *Acheans*. *L. Scipio* the Consul comes into *Asia*: where *Antiochus* most earnestly desireth peace, and is denied it. The battell of *Magnesia*: wherein *Antiochus* being vanquished, yieldeth to the *Romans* good pleasure. The conditions of the peace. In what sort the *Romans* used their victory. *L. Cornelius Scipio*, after a most sumptuous triumph over *Antiochus*, is surnamed *The Asiaticque*; and his brother was stiled *The African*.

*Lucius Cornelius Scipio*, the brother of *P. Scipio* the *African*, was chosen Consul at *Rome* with *C. Laelius*. *Laelius* was very gracious in the Senate; and therefore being desirous (as generally all Consuls were) of the more honourable employment, offered to refer to the judgement of the Senate, if *L. Cornelius* would be so pleased, the disposition of their Provinces, without putting it to the hazard of a Lottery. *Laelius* having talked with his brother *Publius*, approved well of the motion. Such a question had not of long time bin put unto the Fathers: who therefore were the more desirous to make an unblamable Decree. But the matter being otherwise somewhat indifferent, *P. Scipio* the *African* laid openly thus much: That if the Senate would appoint his brother, to the war against *Antiochus*, He himself would follow his brother in that war, as his Lieutenant. These words were heard with such approbation, that the controversy was forthwith at an end. For if *Antiochus* relied upon *Hannibal*, and should happen to be directed wholly by that great Captain, what better man could they oppose, than *Scipio*; that had bin victorious against that same great Worthy: But indeed a wiser man might have served well enough the turn. For *Hannibal* had no absolute command, nor scarce any trust of great importance: excepting now and then in consultation: where his wisdom was much approved, but his liberty and high spirit as much disliked. It is worthy of remembrance, as a sign of the freedom that he used in his censures, even whilest he lived in such a Court: *Antiochus* mustered his Army in presence of this famous Captain: thinking, as may seem, to have made him with, that he had bin served by such brave men in *Italy*. For they were gallantly decked, both Men, Horses, and Elephants, with such costly furniture of gold, silver, and purple, as glittered with a terrible bravery on a Sun-shine day. Whereupon the King, well pleasing himself with that goodly spectacle, asked *Hannibal* what he thought, and whether all this were not enough for the *Romans*. Enough (said *Hannibal*) were the *Romans* the most covetous men in all the world: meaning that all his cost upon the backs of cowardly *Asiaticques*, was no better than a spoil to animate good Souldiers.

How little this answer pleased the king, it is easie to guess. The little use that he made of this *Carthaginian*, testifies that his dislike of the man, caused him to lose the use of his service, when he stood in greatest necessity thereof.

The *Scipio*'s made all haste away from *Rome* as soon as they could. They carried with them, besides other Souldiers newly prest to the war, about five thousand Voluntes, that had served under *P. Africanus*. There was also a Fleet of thirty *Quinquereme* Gallies, and twenty *Triremes* newly built, appointed unto *L. Scipio*, that was chosen Admirall the same year for that voyage. At their coming into *Greece*, they found the old Consul *Glabrio* besieging *Amphissa* a City of the *Ætolians*. The *Ætolians*, after that they were denied peace, had expected him once again at *Naupactus*. Wherefore they not only fortified that Town, but kept all the passages thereto leading; which he did easily, as in a time of confusion, they had left unregarded the last year. *Glabrio* knowing this, deceived their expectation, and fell upon *Lamia*; which being not long since much weakened by *Philip*, and now by him attempted on the sudden, was carried by the second assault. Thence went he to *Amphissa*: which he had almost gotten, when *L. Scipio*, his successor, came with thirteen thousand Foot, and five hundred Horse, took charge of the Army. The Town of *Amphissa* was presently forsaken by the Inhabitants: but they had a Castle, of higher Town, that was impregnable, whereinto they all retired. The *Asienian* Embassadors had dealt with *P. Scipio*, in behalf of the *Ætolians*:

lians: entreating him to stand their friend, and help them in obtaining some tolerable condition of peace. He gave them gentle words, and willed them to perswade the *Aetolians*, that they should faithfully and with true meaning desire it. This was gladly taken. But many messages passing to and fro: though *Publius* continued to put them in good hope; yet the Consul made still the same answer, with which they had bin chased from *Rome*. The Conclusion was, That they should sue for a longer time of respite from war: whereby at more leisure they might attend some better disposition of the Senate; or any helpful commodity which time should afford. So they obtained half a years truce: after which, the winter was like to afford them another half years leisure of breathing. Hereof were they not more glad, than was *P. Scipio*: who thought all time lost, which with-held the War from passing over into *Asia*.

The business of *Aetolia* being thus laid aside, and the old Consul *Glabrio* sent home into *Italy*, the *Scipio's* marched into *Thessaly*, intending thence to take their way by Land, through *Macedon* and *Thrace* unto the *Hellspont*. Yet they considered, that here by they must commit themselves unto the loyalty of King *Philip*: who might either do them some mischief by the way, if he were disposed to watch a notable advantage: or at the least, would be unfaithful; though he were not so courageous, yet might he take such order with the *Thracians*, that even for want of victuals, if by no greater inconvenience, they should be disgracefully forced to return. He had promised them the utmost of his furtherance: wherein, whether he meant sincerely, they thought to make some trial, by causing a Gentleman to ride Post unto him, and observe his doings as he should take him on the sudden. The King was merry at a feast, and drinking when the Messenger came: whom he lovingly bade welcome; and shewed him the next day, not only what provision of victuals he had made for the Army, but how he had made bridges over the rivers, and mended the bad waies by which they were to passe. With these good newes *Gracchus* returned back in haste unto the *Scipio's*: who entering into *Macedon*, found all things in a readiness, that might help to advance their journey. The King entertained them royally, and brought them on their way, even to the *Hellspont*: where they stayed a good while, untill their Navie was in readiness to transport them into *Asia*.

Much was done at Sea in the beginning of this year, though, for the most part, little of importance. *Polyxenidas*, the Admirall of *Antiochus*, was a banished *Rhodian*: tructo the King; and desirous of revenge upon his Countrymen, that had expelled him. He, hearing that the *Rhodian* Fleet was at *Samos*, the *Romans* and *Eumenes* having not as yet put to Sea, thought to do somewhat upon those that were so early in their diligence, before their fellows should arrive to help them. Yet went he craftily to work, and sent word, as in great secrecy, to the *Rhodian* Admirall, That if the sentence of his banishment might be repealed, He would, in requitall thereof, betray all the Kings Fleet. After many passages to and fro, this was beleev'd: and the *Rhodian* Admirall grew so careless, expecting still when he should receive a watch-word from *Polyxenidas*: that he himself was taken by *Polyxenidas* in his own Haven. The Kings Fleet setting forth from *Ephesus* by night; and, for fear of being discovered, resting one day in harbour by the way, came the second night to *Samos*: where, by morning it was ready to enter the Haven. *Pausistratus*, the *Rhodian* Admirall seeing this, thought it his best way of resistance to bestow his men on the two head-lands or points of the Haven; so to guard the mouth of it: for that he saw no likelihood of defending himself by Sea. But *Polyxenidas* had already landed some Companies in another part of the Island: which falling upon the back of *Pausistratus*, compelled him to alter his directions, and command his men aboard. This could not be without great confusion: so as the enemies took him out of all order, and sunk or boarded all his Navie, five excepted, that by a sudden device made shift to escape. Each of them hung out a burning Crescent upon two poles, at the Beak-head; and then rowed forwards directly upon the enemy: who having not bethought himself what shift to make against such unexpected danger of firing, was content to give way unto these desperate Gallies, for fear lest they should burn, together with themselves, a part of the Kings fleet.

Not long after this, the *Romans* had some loss by tempest: whereof *Polyxenidas* could not take such advantage as he had hoped; because, putting to Sea for that purpose, he was driven back again by the like foul weather. But the *Rhodians*, to shew that they

they were not discouraged, set forth twenty other Gallies: the *Romans* also with King *Eumenes*, repaired their fleet, and all of them together, in great bravery, presented battell to *Polyxenidas* before the Haven of *Ephesus*. When he durst not accept it: they went from place to place, attempting many things, as either they were entreated by the *Rhodians*, or perswaded by some appearing hopes of doing good. Yet performed they little or nothing: for that one while they were hindered by Stormes at Sea; and another while by strong resistance made against them at Land.

*Eumenes* with his Fleet was compelled to forsake them; and return home to the defence of his own Kingdome. For *Antiochus* waited all the grounds about *Elea* and *Pergamus*: and leaving his son *Seleucus* to besiege the royal City of *Pergamus*, did with the rest of his Army, spoile the whole Country, thereabout. *Attalus* the brother of King *Eumenes*, was then in *Pergamus*, having with him no better men to defend the City, than were they that lay against it. Wherefore he had reason to stand in fear; being too much inferior in number. There came to his aid a thousand foot, and an hundred horse of the *Achaens*: old souldiers all, and trained up under *Philopamen*, whose Scholar, in the art of war, *Diophanes* their commander was. This *Diophanes*, beholding from the walls of *Pergamus*, which was an high town, the demeanour of the enemy, began to disdain that such men as they should hold them besieged. For *Seleucus* his army which was encamped at the hill-foot, seeing that none durst sallie forth upon them, grew so careless: as otherwise than by spoiling all behind their backs, they seemed to forget that they were in an enemies country. *Diophanes* therefore spake with *Attalus*: and told him that he would go forth to visit them. *Attalus* had no liking to this adventure; for he said, that the match was nothing equal. But the *Achaen* would needs have his wil: & issuing forth, encamped not far from the enemy. They of *Pergamus* thought him little better than mad. As for the besiegers, they wondered at first what his meaning was: but when they saw that he held himself quiet, they made a jest of his boldnes; & laughed to see with what an handful of men he looked so stoutly. So they returned unto their former negligence & disorders: Which *Diophanes* perceiving, He commanded all his men to follow him, even as fast as they wel might: and he himself, with the hundred horse, brake out on the sudden upon the station that was next at hand. Very few of the enemies had their horses ready saddled, but more few, or none had the hearts to make resistance: so as he drave them all out of their Camp; & chased them as far as he might safely adventure, with great slaughter of them, and no loss of his own. Hereat all the Citizens of *Pergamus* (who had covered the walls of the town, men and women, to behold this spectacle) were very joyfull; and highly magnified the virtue of these *Achaens*. Yet would they not therefore issue forth of their gates, to help the *Achaens* in doing what remained to be done. The next day *Seleucus* encamped half a mile further from the Town, than he had done before: and against him went forth *Diophanes* the second time; who quietly rested a while in his old Station. When they had stayed many hours, looking who should begin: *Seleucus*, in fair order as he came, withdrew himself toward his lodging that was further off. *Diophanes* moved not whilst the enemy was in sight: but as soon as the ground between them hindered the prospect, he followed them in all haste, and soon overtaking them with his horse, charged them in Rere; so as he brake them; and with all his forces pursued them at the heels, to their very Trenches. This boldnes of the *Achaens*, and the baseness of his own men, caused *Seleucus* to quit the siege, little to his honour. Such being the quality of these *Asiatiques*, *Philopamen* had cause to tell the *Romans*, That he envied their victory. For when *Antiochus* lay feasting at *Chalcedon* after his marriage, and his souldiers betook themselves to Riot, as it had bin in a time of great security: a good man of war might have cut all their throats, even as they were tipping in their viualling houses; so *Philopamen* said that he would have done, had he bin Generall of the *Achaens*; and not as he then was, a private man.

*Antiochus* was full of business: and turning his care from one thing to another, with a great deal of travell, brought almost nothing to passe. He had been at *Pergamus*: into which *Eumenes*, leaving the *Romans*, did put himself with a few of his Horse and light armature. Before *Pergamus* he left his son, as before hath been shewed, and went to *Elea*: whither he heard that *Amylius* the *Roman* Admirall was come to bring succour to *Eumenes*. There he made an Overture of peace: about which to consult, *Eumenes* was sent for by *Amylius*, and came from *Pergamus*. But when it was considered, that no conclusion could be made without the Consul: this Treaty brake off. Then followed the



the overthrow newly mentioned; which caused *Selenus* to give over the siege of *Peri-gamus*. Afterwards, four or five Towns of scarce any worth or note were taken by the King; and the *Syrian* Fleet, being of seven and thirty Saile, was beaten by the *Rhodian* which was of like number. But of this victory the *Rhadians* had no great cause to rejoyce: for that *Hannibal*, the *Garthaginian*, who, together with *Apollonius*, a Courier of *Antiochus*, was Admiral of the *Syrians*, did them in a manner as great hurt as they could do to *Apollonius*; and having the victory taken out of his hands, by *Apollonius* his flight, yet made such a retreat; that the *Rhadians* durst not far adventure upon him. Now of these Actions which were but as Prefaces unto the war, the last and greatest was a Victory of the *Romans* by Sea, against *Polyxenidas*, the Kings Admiral. The battell was fought by *Myonessus*, a Promontory in *Asia*: where *Polyxenidas* had with him forty score and nine Gallies; and five of them greater than any of the *Romans*. This being all the strength which he could make by Sea: we may note the vanity of those brags, where, with *Antiochus* vaunted, the last year. That his Armada should cover all the shores of *Greece*. The *Romans* had eight and fifty Gallies; the *Rhadians* two and twenty: the *Roman* being the stronger built, and more stoutly manned; the *Rhadians* more light-bred and thin-planked, having all advantage of speed, and good Seamen. Neither forgot they to help themselves by the same device, with which five of their Gallies had barely escaped from *Samos*. For with fire in their prowes they ran upon the enemy: who declining them for fear, laid open his side: and was thereby in greater danger of being stemmed. After no long fight, the Kings Navy hoysed sail: and, having a fair wind, bore away toward *Ephesus* as fast as they could. Yet forty of their Gallies they left behind them: whereof thirteen were taken, all the rest burnt or sunk. The *Romans* and their fellows lost only two or three ships: but got hereby the absolute Mastery of the Sea.

The report of this misadventure, may seem to have taken from *Antiochus* all use of reason. For as if no hope had bin remaining to defend those places that he held in *Europe*, he presently with-drew his Garrisons from *Lyfmachia*: which might easily have been kept even till the end of Winter following, and having reduced the besiegers (if the siege had been continued oblatinly) unto termes of great extremity. He also gave over the siege of *Coleophon*: and laying aside all thought save only of defence, drew together all his Army, and sent for help to his Father-in-law, King *Ariarathes* the *Cappadocian*.

Thus the *Roman* Consull, without impediment, not only came to the *Hellespont*, but had yielded unto him all places there, belonging to *Antiochus* on *Europe* side. The Fleet was also then in a readiness to transport him over into *Asia*: where *Eumenes* had taken such care before, that he landed quietly at his own good ease; even as if the Country had been his already. The first newes that he heard of the enemy, was by an Embassadour that came to sue for peace. This Embassadour declared in his Masters name, That the same things which had hindered him from obtaining peace of the *Romans* heretofore; did now perswade him, that he should easily come to good agreement with them. For in all dispartions heretofore, *Smyrna*, *Lampsacus*, and *Lyfmachia*, had been the places about which they varied. Seeing therefore the King had now already given over *Lyfmachia*; and was further purposed, not to strive with the *Romans* about *Lampsacus* and *Smyrna*: what reason was there, why they should need to trouble him with war? If it was their desire, that any other Towns upon the Coast of *Asia*, not mentioned by them in any former Treaties, should be also set at liberty, or otherwise delivered into their hands: the King would not refuse to gratifie them therein. Briefly, let them take some part of *Asia*: so as the bounds, dividing them from the King, might not be uncertain; and it should be quietly put into their hands. If all this were not enough, the King would likewise bear half the charges, whereat they had been in this War. So praying the *Romans* to hold themselves contented with these good offers, and not to be too insolent upon confidence of their fortune, he expected their answer. These offers which to the Embassadour seemed so great, were judged by the *Romans* to be very little. For they thought it reasonable, that the King should bear all the charges of the war, since it began through his own fault: and that he should not only depart out of those few Towns, which he held in *Æolia* and *Ionis*, but quite out of *Asia* the less, and keep himself on the other side of Mount *Taurus*. When the Embassadour therefore saw, that

that no better bargain could be made, He dealt with *P. Scipio* in private: and to him he promised a great quantity of gold, together with the free restitution of his son: who (it is uncertain by what mischance) was taken prisoner; and most honourably entertained by the King. *Scipio* would not hearken to the offer of gold: nor otherwise to the restitution of his son, than upon Condition, That it might be with making such amends for the benefit, as became a privyeman. As for the publique business: He only said thus much, That since *Antiochus* had already forsaken *Lyfmachia*, and suffered the war to take hold on his own Kingdom, there was now none other way for him, than either to fight, or yield to that which was required at his hands. Wherefore, said he, tell your

King in my name; that I would advise him to refuse no Condition whereby he may have peace.

The King was not a whit moved with his advice. For seeing that the Consull demanded of him nothing, than if he had been already subdued, little reason there was that he should fear to come to battell; wherein he could looke as he thought, no more, than by seeking to avoid it he must give way. He had with him three score and ten thousand Foot, and twelve thousand Horse, besides two and fifty Indian Elephants; and many Charlots armed with hooks or syches, according to the manner of the *Eastern* Countreies. Yet was he nothing pleased, to hear that the Consull drew near him: apace, as one hastening to fight. But howsoever he was affected: He made so little shew of fear, that hearing *P. Scipio* to be sick at *Elée*, He sent thither unto him his son without ransom: as one both desirous to comfort this noble Warrour in his sickness, and wishing all not desirous to retain the young Gentleman for a pledge of his own safety. Thus ought his bounty to be constant. Otherwise it might be suspected, That therein he dealt craftily. For since he could have none other ransom of *Scipio*, than such an honourable man, that had no great store of wealth, might pay better it was to do such a courtesie before the battell, as would afterwards have been little worth, than to stay until the *Romans*, perhaps victorious, should exact it at his hands. *P. Scipio* was greatly comforted with the recovery of his son: so as the joy thereof was thought, to have been much available unto his health. In recompence of the Kings humanity, He did only thus much unto those that brought him this acceptable present, *I am*

able to make your King none other amends, than by advising him not to fight, until he shall hear that I am in the Camp. What he meant by this, it is hard to conjecture. *Antiochus* resolved to follow his counsell: and therefore withdrew himself from about *Thyatira*, beyond the River of *Phrygia* or *Hyllus*, unto *Magnesia* by *Synnis*: where encamping, he fortified himself as strongly as he could. Thence he followed him: and the Consull, and sat down within four miles of him. About a thousand of the Kings Horse, most of them *Gallo-Greeks*, came to bid the *Romans* welcome: of whom at first they slew some; and were anon, with some loss, driven back over the River. Two dayes were quietly spent, whilst neither the King nor the *Romans* would passe the

water. The third day the *Romans* made the adventure: wherein they found no difficulty, nor were at all opposed, until they came within two miles and a half of *Antiochus* his Camp. There as they were taking up their lodging, they were charged by three thousand Horse and Foot: whom the ordinary Corps de garde repelled. Four dayes together after this, each of them brought forth their Armies, and set them in order before the Trenches, without advancing any further. The fifth day the *Romans* came half way forward; and presented battail, which the King would not accept. Thereupon the Consull took advice what was to be done. For either they must fight upon whatsoever disadvantage; or else resolve to abide by it all winter, far from any Country of their friends, and therefore subjected unto many difficulties: unless they

should wait their honour by returning far back, to winter in a more convenient place, and so defer the war until the next Spring. The *Roman* Souldier was thoroughly perswaded of that Enemies base temper. Wherefore it was the generall Cry, That this great Army should be assailed, even in the Camp where it lay: as if rather there were so many beasts to be slaughtered, than men to be fought with. Yet a day or two passed, in discovering the fortifications of *Antiochus*, and the safest way to set upon him. All this while *P. Scipio* came not. Wherefore the King, being loth to dishearten his men, by seeming to stand in fear of the Enemy, resolved to put the matter to trial. So when the *Romans* took the field again, and ordered their battels:

He also did the like, and advanced so far, that they might understand his meaning, to fight.

The Roman Army consisted of four Legions, two Roman and two Latine: in each of which were five thousand and four hundred men. The Latines, as usually, were in the points; the Romans, in the mean battell: All of them, according to their wonted form, were divided into *Maniples*. The *Hastati* had the leading: after them followed the *Principes*, at such distance as was usual, and last of all, the *Triarii*. Now beside these, there were about three thousand *Auxiliaries*, partly *Achaens*, and partly such as belonged to *Bumenes*: which were placed in an equal Front beyond the Latines in the right wing. Utmost of all (save some five hundred *Cretians*, and of the *Trallians*) were almost three thousand Horse: of which, *Eumenes* had brought thither eight hundred; the rest being Roman. The left wing was fenced by the bank of the River: yet four troops of Horse were placed there, though such help framed in a manner needlesse. Two thousand Voluntaries, *Macedonians* and *Trojanians*, were left to guard the Camp. The Consul had with him sixteen *African* Elephants, which he bestowed in his Rere: forasmuch as had they come to fight with those of *Antiochus*, they only would have served to discourage his men; as being sure to be beaten: the *Indian* being far the greater, and more courageous beasts: whereof *Antiochus* had likewise much advantage in number.

The Kings Army being compounded of many Nations, diversly appointed, and not all accustomed to one manner of fight, was ordered according to the severall kinds, in such wise as each might be of most use. The main strength of his Foot consisted in sixteen thousand, armed all *Macedonian*-like, and called *Phalangiers*. These he placed in the midst, and divided into ten Battalions: every one having two and thirty in File, and fifty in Front. Between every Battalio were two Elephants, goodly beasts, and such as being adorned with Frontals, high Crests, Towers on their backs, and besides him that governed the Elephant, four men in every Tower, made a gallant and terrible shew. On the right hand of these were fifteen hundred horse of the *Gallo-Greeks*; then, three thousand Barb'd Horse: and a Regiment of almost a thousand Horse, called the *Agema*, that were all *Medians*, the choice of the Countrey, and accompanied by some others. All which Troops of Horse, divided in their severall kinds, do seem to have followed one another in depth, rather than to have been stretched out in Front. Adjoining unto these, were sixteen Elephants together in one flock. A little further to the right hand, was the Kings own Regiment, called the *Argyaspides*, or *Silver Shields*, by a name borrowed from their furniture, but nothing like so valiant as those of the same name, that had served under Great *Alexander*: then, twelve hundred Archers on horseback, three thousand light-armed Foot, two thousand and five hundred Archers of *Myfia*, with four thousand slingers and Archers of the *Citians*, and *Elymaans*. On the left hand of the *Phalangiers*, were placed the like numbers of *Gallo-Greeks*, and Barb'd Horse: as also two thousand horse that were sent from *Ariarathes*, with two thousand and seven hundred of divers Nations; and a Regiment of a thousand Horse more lightly armed, that were called *The Kings Troop*, being *Syrians*, *Ephraimians*, and *Lydians*. In Front of all these Horse were the Chariots armed with hooks or lynes, and the *Dromedaries*, whereon sat *Arabians* with long Rapiers, that would serve to reach from those high Camels. Beyond these were, as in the right wing; a rabble of many Nations, *Carians*, *Cilicians*, *Pamphylians*, *Ephraimians*, *Cyrtians*, *Elymaans*, and many others, having also with them sixteen Elephants. *Antiochus* himself commanded in the right wing; *Selenus* in the left: and three of his principall Captains commanded over the *Phalangiers*.

The first onset was given by the *Dromedaries*, and armed Chariots: of which the one being like to terrifie the Horse, the other, to break the Squadrons of the Foot; *Eumenes* with a few light-armed *Cretians*, Archers, Darters, and Slingers, easily made frustrate the danger threatened by them both. For with shoutings, and noises, and some wounds, they were driven out of the field, and running back upon their own men, did the same harm which they had intended to the Enemies. Wherefore the Roman Horse following this advantage, charged upon the left wing: whereas they found no resistance, some being out of order, others being without courage. It is famous full to rehearse, and so strange, that it may hardly seem credible: that the *Phalangiers*, with

with such variety of *Auxiliaries*, made little or no resistance, but all of them fled, in a manner, as soon as they were charged. Only the King, *Antiochus* himself, being in the left wing of his own battall: and seeing the Latines, that stood opposite unto him, weakly flanked with Horse: gave upon them courageously, and forced them to retire. But *M. Emilius*, that had the Guard of the Roman Camp, issued forth with all his power to help his fellows: and, what by perswasion, what by threats, made them renew the fight. Succour also came from the right wing, where the Romans were already victorious: whereof when *Antiochus* discovered the approach, He not only turned his Horse about, but ran away upon the spur without further tardiance. The Camp was defended a little while; and with no great valour, though by a great multitude that were fled into it. *Antiochus* is said to have lost in this battell fifty thousand Foot, and four thousand Horse, besides those that were taken. Of the Romans, there were not slain above three hundred Foot, and four, and twenty Horse: of *Eumenes* his followers five and twenty.

*Antiochus* fled to *Sardes*, and from thence to *Apamea*, the same night, hearing that *Selenus* was gone thither before. He left the custody of *Sardes*, and the Castle there, to one whom he thought faithfull. But the Towns-men and Souldiers were so dismayed with the greatness of the Overthrow, that one mans faith was worth nothing. All the Towns in those parts, without expecting summons, yielded up themselves by Embassage: whom they sent to the Romans, whilest they were on the way. Neither were many dayes spent, ere *Antiochus* his Embassage was in the Camp: having none other errand, than to know what it would please the Romans to impose upon the King his Master. *P. Scipio* was now come to his brother, who obtained leave to make the answer, because it should be gentle. They required no more than they had lately done: which was, that he should quite abandon his Dominions on this side *Taurus*. For their charges in that War, they required fifteen thousand Talents: five hundred in hand, two thousand and five hundred, when the Senate and people of Rome should have confirmed the peace; and the other twelve thousand, in twelve years next ensuing, by even portions. Likewise they demanded four hundred talents for *Eumenes*; and some sort of Corn, that was due to him upon a reckoning. Now, besides twenty hostages which they required, very earnest they were to have *Hannibal* the *Carthaginian*, and *Antiochus* the *Asiatian*, with some others who had stirred up the King to this war, delivered into their hands. But any wise man might so easily have perceived, that it would be their purpose to make this one of their principall demands, as no great art was needful to beguile their malice. The Kings Embassage had full communion, to refuse nothing that should be enjoyed. Wherefore there was no more to do, than to send immediately to Rome for the ratification of the Peace.

There were new Consuls chosen in the mean while at Rome, *M. Fulvius*, & *Cn. Manlius*. The *Asiatians* desired peace, but could not obtain it: because they would accept neither of the two Conditions to them before propounded. So it was decreed, that one of the Consuls should make war upon the *Asiatians*, the other upon *Antiochus* in Asia. Now though shortly there came news that *Antiochus* was already vanquished in battell, and had submitted himself unto all that could be required at his hands: yet since the State of Asia was not like to be so thoroughly settled by one Victory, but that many things might fall out worthy of the Romans care, *Cn. Manlius*, to whom Asia fell by lot, had not his Province changed.

Soon after this, came the Embassadors of King *Antiochus* to Rome, accompanied with the *Asiatians* and some others: yet, by King *Eumenes* in person, whose presence was about the distribution of the purchase. King *Eumenes* reckoned up his own deserts, and comparing himself with *Masanissa* hoped that the Romans would be more bountiful to him than they had been to the *Numidian*, since they had found him a King in deed, whereas *Masanissa* was only such in title; and since both he and his Father had always been their friends, even in the worst of the Roman fortune. Yet was there much ado to make him tell what he would have: He still referring himself to their courtesie, and they desiring him to speak plain. At length he craved that they would bestow upon him, as much of the Countrey by them taken from *Antiochus*, as they

had no purpose to keep in their own hands. Neither thought he it needfull, that they should trouble themselves with the care of giving liberty to many of the *Greek Towns*, that were on *Asia* side. For since the most of those *Towns* had been partakers with the King in his War, it was no reason that they should be gainers by his overthrow. The *Rhodiens* did not like of this: They desired the Senate to be truly Patrons of the *Grecian* liberty; and to call to mind, that no small part of *Greece* it self had been subject unto *Philip*, and served him in his War: which was not alledged against them as a cause why they should not be made free, after that *Philip* was overcome. But the main point whereon they insisted, was this, That the Victory of the *Romans* against King *Antiochus* was so great, as easily might satisfie the desires of all their friends. The Senate was glad to hear of this; and very bountifullly gave away so much, that every one had cause to be well pleased.

Such end had the war against King *Antiochus*; after which *L. Cornelius Scipio*, returning home, had granted unto him the honour of a Triumph: the pomp whereof exceeded in riches, not only that of *Titus Quintus Flaminius*, but of any ten that *Rome* had beheld until that day. Now so far as the surname of *The African* had been given unto *P. Scipio*, it was thought convenient by some, to reward *L. Scipio* with the title of *The Asiaticus*: which the fortune of his Victory had no lesse deserved, though the virtue, requisite to the purchase thereof, was no way correspondent.

### §. IX.

*The Aetolians, and the Gallo-Greeks, vanquished by the Roman Consuls Fulvius and Manlius. Manlius hardly obtains a Triumph: being charged (among other objections) with attempting to have passed the bounds appointed as fatal to the Romans by Sibyl. Of Sibyl's Prophecies: The Books of Heracles; and that Inscription, Simoni Deo Sancio. The ingratitude of Rome to the new Scipios: and that beginning and faction among the Roman Nobility.*

**M**AN *Fulvius* and *Cn. Manlius* had the same charge divided between them, which *L. Cornelius Scipio*, now stiled *Asiaticus*, had lately undergone. It was found more than one mans work, to look at once to *Greece* and to *Asia*. And for this reason was it apparent, that *L. Scipio* had granted so long a Truce to the *Aetolians*. But since, in this long Truce, that haughty little Nation had not sought to humble it self to the *Roman Nobility*, it was now to be brought unto more lowly terms than any other of the *Greeks*. The best was that so great a storm fell not unexpected upon the *Aetolians*. They had foreseen the danger, when their Embassadors were intently denied peace at *Rome*; and they had provided the last remedy, which was, to entreat the *Rhodiens* and *Athenians* to become intercessors for them. Neither were they so dejected, with any terrible apprehensions, that they could not well be vile, even upon helping themselves, by repurchase of Countries lost, where they stood advantage.

Poor King *Antiochus* lived in exile among them, whilst *Philip* of *Macedon* kept for him, possession of his Lands and Castles. But the *Athamanians* (besides that many of them bore a natural affection to their own Prince) having been long accustomed to serve a Mountain Lord, that conversed with them after an homely manner, could not endure the proud and insolent manner of command, used by the Captains of *Philip* his Garrison. They sent therefore some few of them to their King, & offered their service towards his restitution. At the first there were only four of them: neither grew they at length, to more than two and fifty; which undertook the work. Yet, since it was feared, that all the rest would follow, made *Antiochus* willing to try his fortune. He was at the borders with a thousand *Aetolians*, upon the day appointed, at what time his two and fifty Adventurers, having divided themselves into four parts, occupied, by the ready assistance of the multitude, four of the chief Towns in the Country, to his use. The same of this good success at the first; with divers letters running from place to place, whereby men were exhorted to do their best in helping forward the Action, made the Lieutenants of *Philip* unable to think upon resistance. One of them held the Town of *Thetium* a few dayes, giving thereby some leisure unto his King to pro-

provide for the rescue. But when he had done his best, he was forced thence and could only tell *Philip*, whom he met on the way, that all was lost. *Philip* had brought from home six thousand men; of whom, when the greater part could not hold out, in such a running march, he left all save two thousand behinde him; and so came to *Atheniam*, a little *Athamanian* Castle, that still was his, as being on the frontier of *Macedon*. Thence he sent *Zeno*, who had kept *Thetium* a while, to take a place lying over *Argitheia*, that was chief of the Country. *Zeno* did as he was appointed: yet neither he, nor the King had the boldness to descend upon *Argitheia*, for that they might perceive the *Athamanians*, all along the hill sides, ready to come down upon them, when they should be busie. Wherefore nothing was thought more honourable than a safe retreat: especially when *Aminander* came in fight with his thousand *Aetolians*. The *Macedonians* were called back, from wards *Argitheia*, and presently withdrawn by their King towards his own borders. But they were not suffered to depart in quiet at their pleasure. The *Athamanians* and *Aetolians* way-laid them, and pursued them so closely, that their retreat was in manner of a plain flight, with great losse of men and armies, few of those cleaving, that were left behinde, as to make a countenance of holding somewhat in the Country, until *Philip* his return.

The *Aetolians* having found the business of *Athamania* so easie, made an attempt in their own behalf, upon the *Amphilochians* and *Apertanians*. These had belonged unto their Nation, and were lately taken by *Philip*, from whom they diligently revolted, and became *Aetolians* again. The *Dolopians* lay next; that had been ever belonging to the *Macedonian*, and so did still purpose to continue. These took Arms at first: but soon laid them away; seeing their neighbours ready to fight with them in the *Aetolian* quarrell, and seeing their own King so hastily goe, as if he meant not to return.

Of these victories the joy was the lesse, for that newes came of *Antiochus* his last overthrow, and of *M. Fulvius* the new Consul his halting with an Army into *Greece*. *Aminander* sent his excuses to *Rome*, praying the Senate not to take it in despite, that he had recovered his own from *Philip* with such help as he could get. Neither seems it that the *Romans* were much offended to hear of *Philip* his losses: for of this fault they neither were sharp correctors, nor earnest reprovers. *Fulvius* went in hand with the business, about which he came, and layed siege to *Ambracia*, a goodly City, that had been the chief seat of *Pyrhus* his Kingdome. With this he began, for that it was of too great importance to be abandoned by the *Aetolians*; yet could not by them be relieved, unless they would adventure to fight upon equal ground. To help the *Ambracians*, it was not in the *Aetolians* power: for they were, at the same time, vexed by the *Thyrians* at sea, and ready to be driven from their new conquest, by *Perseus* the son of *Philip*, who invaded the Counties of the *Amphilochians* and *Dolopians*. They were unable to deal with so many at once; and therefore as earnestly sought peace with the *Romans*, as they stoutly made head against the rest. In the mean while the *Athenian* and *Rhodian* Embassadors came, who besought the Consul to grant them peace. It helped well that *Ambracia* made strong resistance, and would not be terrified, by any violence of the Assailants, or danger that might seem to threaten. The Consul had no desire to spend half his time about one City, and so be driven to leave unto his successor the honour of finishing the War. Wherefore he gladly hearkened unto the *Aetolians*, and bade them seek peace, with faithfull Intent, without thinking it over-dear, at a reasonable price; considering with how great a part of his Kingdome their friend *Antiochus* had made the same purchase. He also gave leave to *Aminander*, offering his service as a mediator, to put himself into *Ambracia*, and try what good his persuasions might do with the Citizens. So after many demands and excuses, the conclusion was such as was grievous to the weaker, but not unsufferable. The same Embassadors of the *Athenians* and *Rhodiens*, accompanied those of the *Aetolians* to *Rome*, for procuring the confirmation of Peace. Their eloquence and credit was the more needfull in this intercession, for that *Philip* had made a very grievous complaint about the losse of those Countries, which they had lately taken from him. Hereof the Senate could not but take notice; though it did not hinder the peace, which those good Mediatours of *Rhodes* and *Athens* did earnestly sollicit. The *Aetolians* were bound to uphold the Majesty of the people of *Rome*, and to observe divers Articles, which made them the lesse free, and more obnoxious to the *Romans*, than

any people of *Greece*; they having been the first that called these their Masters into the Country. The Ile of *Cephalenia* was taken from them by the *Romans*: who kept it for themselves (as not long since they had gotten *Zacynthus* from the *Achaens*, by stiffly pressing their own right) that so they might have possession along the coast of *Greece*, whilst they seemed to forbear the Country. But concerning those places, whereto *Philip*, or others might lay claim, there was set down an order so perplexed, as would necessarily require to have the *Romans* Judges of their controversies, when they should arise. And hercof good use will be shortly made: when want of employment elsewhere, shall cause a more Lordly Inquisition to be held, upon the affairs of *Macedon* and *Greece*.

*Cn. Manlius*, the other Confull, had at the same time war in *Asia*, with the *Gallo-Greeks* and others. His Army was the same that had followed *L. Scipio*, of whose victory, his acts were the consummation. He visited those Countries on the hither side of *Taurus*, that had scarce heard of the *Romans*; to whom they were abandoned by *Antiochus*. Among these there were some petty Lords, or Tyrants, some free Cities, and some that were together at wars, without regard of the great alteration that hapned in *Asia*. From every of these he got somewhat; and by their quarrels found occasion to visit those Provinces, into which he should else have wanted an errand. He was even laden with booty, when, having fetcht a compass about *Asia*, he came at length upon the *Gallo-Greeks*. These had long domineered over the Country: though of late times, it was rather the fame & terror of their fore-passed acts, than any present virtue of theirs, which held them up in reputation. Of the *Romans* they had lately such trial, when they served under King *Antiochus*, as made them to acknowledge themselves far the worse men. Wherefore they thought it no small part of their safety, that they dwelt upon the River *Haly*, in an In-land Country, where those enemies were not very like to search them out. But when such hopes failed; and when some Princes of their own Nation, that had been friends of *Eumenes*, exhorted the rest to yield: then was no counsell thought for good, as to forsake their houses and Country, and, with all that they could carry or drive, to betake themselves unto the high mountains of *Olympus* and *Margana*. These mountains were exceeding hard of ascent, though none should undertake the custody. Being therefore well manned and victualled for a long time; as also the natural strength being helpt by such fortification as promised greatest assurance: it was thought, that the Confull would either forbear the attempt of forcing them, or easily be repelled, and that finally, when he had stayed there a while, winter, and much want, should force him to dislodge. Yet all this availed not. For, whereas the *Gallo-Greeks* had been careless of furnishing themselves with casting weapons, as if stones would have served well enough for that purpose: the *Romans*, who came far otherwise appointed, found greater advantage in the difference of Armes than impediment in disadvantage of ground. Archers and Slingers did easily prevail against casters of stones; especially being such as were these *Gallo-Greeks*, neither exercised in that manner of fight, nor having prepared their stones before-hand, but catching up what lay next, the too great, and the too little, oftner than those of a fit size. Finally the *Barbarians*, wanting defensive Armes, could not hold out against the Arrows and the weapons of the *Roman* light armature: but were driven from a piece of ground, which they had undertaken to make good, up into their Camp on the top of the mountain; and being forced out of their Camp, had none other way left, than to cast themselves headlong down the steep rocks. Few of the men escaped alive: all their wives, children and goods became a prey unto the *Romans*. In the very like manner, were the rest of that Nation overcome soon after, at the other mountain: only more of them saved themselves by flight, as having fairer way at their backs.

These wars being ended: *Fulvius* and *Manlius* were appointed by the Senate, each of them to retain as Proconfull, his Province for another year. *Fulvius*, in his second year, did little or nothing. *Manlius* gave peace to those whom he had vanquished; as likewise to *Ariarathes* the *Cappadocian*, and some others, not by him vanquished, but submitting themselves for fear of the *Roman* armies. He drew from them all, what profit he could: and laid upon them such conditions, as he thought expedient. He also did finish the league of peace with *Antiochus*; whereto he swore, and received the Kings oath

oath by Embassadors, whom he sent for that purpose. Finally, having set in order the matters of *Asia*, he took his way toward the *Hellespont*, laden with spoil, as carrying with him (besides other treasures) all that the *Gallo-Greeks* had in so many years extorted from the wealthy Provinces that lay round about them. Neither did this Army of *Manlius* return home, rich in money alone, or cartell, or things of needfull use, which the *Roman* Souldier had been wont to take as the only good purchase; but furnished with sumptuous household-stuffe, and slaves of price, excellent Cooks, and Musicians for banquets, and in a word, with the seeds of that luxury, which finally over-grew and choked the *Roman* virtue.

The Country of *Thrace* lay between *Hellespont* and the Kingdome of *Macedon*, which way *Manlius* was to take his journey homeward. *L. Scipio* had found no impediment among the *Thracians*: either for that he passed through them, without any such booty as might provoke them; or perhaps rather, because *Philip* of *Macedon* had taken order, that the *Barbarians* should not stir. But when *Manlius* came along with a huge train of baggage, the *Thracians* could not so well contain themselves. Neither was it thought, that *Philip* took it otherwise than very pleasantly, to have this *Roman* Army robbed, & well beaten on the way. He had cause to be angry, seeing how little himself was regarded, and what great rewards were given to *Eumenes*. For he understood, and afterwards gave the *Romans* to understand, that *Eumenes* could not have abidden in his own Kingdome, if the people of *Rome* had not made war in *Asia*: whereas contrariwise, *Antiochus* had offered unto himself three thousand talents, and fifty ships of war, to take part with him and the *Atolians*, promising moreover to restore unto him all the *Greek* Cities, that had been taken from him by the *Romans*. Such being the difference between him and *Eumenes*, when the war began: he thought it no even dealing of the *Romans*, after their victory, to give away not only the half of *Asia*; but *Chersonesus*, and *Lysimachia* in *Europe*, to *Eumenes*; whereas upon himself they bestowed not any one Town. It agreed not indeed with his Nobility to go to *Rome* and beg Provinces in the Senate, as *Eumenes* and the *Rhodiens* had lately done. He had entertained lovingly the two *Scipios*, whom he thought the most honourable men in *Rome*; and was grown into near acquaintance with *Publius*, holding correspondence with him by letters, whereby he made himself acquainted with the wars in *Spain* and *Africa*. This perhaps he deemed sufficient, to breed in the *Romans* a due respect of him. But *Eumenes* took a surer way. For the *Scipios* had not the disposing of that which they won from *Antiochus*: as neither indeed had *Manlius*, nor the ten Delegates assisting him; but the Senate of *Rome*, by which those Delegates were chosen, and instructed how to proceed. When *Philip* therefore saw these upstart Kings of *Pergamus*, whom he accounted as base companions, advanced so highly, and made greater than himself; yea himself unregarded, contemned, and exposed to many wrongs: then found he great cause to wish, that he had not so hastily declared himself against *Antiochus*, or rather that he had joyned with *Antiochus* and the *Atolians*, by whom he might have been freed from his insolent Masters. But what great argument of such discontentedness the *Macedonian* had, we shall very shortly be urged to discourse more at large. At the present it was believed, that the *Thracians* were by him set on, to assail the *Romans* passing through their Country. They knew all advantages; & they fell, unexpected, upon the carriages that were bestowed in the midst of the Army; whereof part had already passed a dangerous wood through which the baggage followed; part was not yet so far advanced. There was enough to get, and enough to leave behinde: though both the getting and the saving, did cost many lives, as well of the *Barbarians*, as of the *Romans*. They fought untill it grew night: and then the *Thracians* withdrew themselves; not without as much of the booty, as was to their full content. And of such trouble there was more, though lesse dangerous, before the Army could get out of *Thrace* into *Macedon*. Through the Kingdome they had a fair march into *Epirus*, and so to *Apokonia*, which was their handle of *Greece*.

To *Manlius*, and to *Fulvius*, when each of them returned to the City, was granted the honour of Triumph. Yet not without contradiction: especially to *Manlius*, whom some of the ten Delegates, appointed to assist him, did very bitterly take, as an unworthy commander. Touching the rest of their accusation; it sufficeth that he made good answer, and was approved by the chief of the Senate. One clause is worthy of more particular consideration. Reprehending his desire to have hindred the peace with *Antiochus*; they

Ludib. 38.

Tull. de Divin.  
lib. 2.Istac. Calaub.  
Exercitia. 1. ad  
Annal. Baron. 10.  
Cp. 11.Eufeb. Eccl. lib.  
cap. 13.

they said, *That with much ado he was kept from leading his army over Taurus, and adventuring upon the calamity threatened by Sibyls verses, unto those that should passe the small bounds.* What calamity or overthrow this was, wherewith *Sibyls* prophecy threatened the Roman Captain or Army, that should passe over *Taurus*, I do not conceive. *Pompey* was the first that marched with an Army beyond those limits: though the victories of *Antiochus* had opened unto him the way and had before hand won in a sort, the Countries on the other side of the Mount, which *Lucullus* gave to one of *Antiochus* his race, though *Pompey* occupied the a for the *Romans*. But we finde not, that either *Lucullus* or *Pompey* suffered any losse, in presuming to neglect the bounds appointed by *Sibyl*. Indeed the accomplishment of this prophecy, fell out near about one time, with the restoration of *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt*, that was forbidden unto the *Romans* by the same *Sibyl*. It may therefore seem to have had reference unto the same things, that were denounced, as like to happen upon the reduction of the *Egyptian* King. Whether the Oracles of *Sibyl* had in them any truth, and were not, as *Tullius* noeth, sowed at random in the large field of *Fime*; there to take root, and get credit by event; I will not here dispute. But I hold this more probably, than that the restitution of *Ptolemy* to his Kingdom by *Gabinus* the Roman, should have any way betokened the coming of our Saviour: as some both ancient and modern Christian Writers have been well pleased to interpret *Sibyl* in that prophecy. Of the *Sibylline* predictions, I have sometimes thought reverently: though not knowing what they were (as I think few men know) yet following the common belief and good authority. But observation of the shamefull Idolatry, that upon all occasions was advanced in *Rome* by the books of *Sibyl*, had well prevailed upon my credulity, and made me suspect, though not the faith and pious meaning, yet the judgement of *Eusebius*: when that learned and excellent work of Master *Casaubon* upon the *Annales* of *Cardinall Baronius*, did altogether free me from mine error; making it apparent, That not only those prophecies of *Sibyl*, wherein Christ plainly was shewed, but even the books of *Hermes*, which have born such reputation, were no better than counterfeited pieces, and at first entertained (whoever devised them) by the undifferent zeal of such, as delighted in seeing the Christian Religion strengthened with foreign proofs. And in the same rank, I think, we ought to place that notable History, so reported by *Eusebius* from no mean Authors. Of the honour which was done to *Simon Magus* in *Rome*, namely of an Altar to him erected, with an inscription, *Simoni Deo Sancto*, that is, *To Simon the holy god*. For what can be more strange, than that a thing so memorable, and so publike, should have been quite omitted by *Tacitus*; by *Suetonius*, by *Dion*, and by all which wrote of those times? Philosophers and Poets would not have suffered the matter to escape in silence, had it been true; neither can it be thought that *Seneca*, who then lived and flourished, would have obtained from speaking any word of an argument so famous. Wherefore I am persuaded, that this inscription, *Simoni Deo Sancto*, was, by some bad Criticisme, taken amiss in place of *Simoni Sango*: a title four hundred years older than the time of *Simon Magus*. For the goods of one *Viruvius* a Rebel, had many ages before been consecrated *Semoti Sango*, that is, *To the Spirit or Demi-god Sangus*, in whose Chappell they were bestowed. So as either by the ill shape of the old *Roman* letters, or by some spoil that time had wrought upon them, it might easily come to passe, that the words should be misse-read, *Simoni Sancto*, and that some Christian who had heard of *Simon Magus*, but not of *Sangus*, thereupon should frame the conjecture, which now passeth for a true History. Such conjectures, being entertained without examination, find credit by Tradition, whereby also many times, their fashion is amended, and made more Historical, than was conceived by the Author. But it cannot be safe, to let our faith (which ought to stand firm upon a sure foundation) lean over-hardly on a well painted, yet so rotten post.

Now concerning the Triumph of *Cn. Manlius*, it may be numbred among a few of the richest, which ever the City beheld. Out of that which he brought into the Treasury, was made the last payment of those monies which the common-wealth had borrowed from private men, in the second *Punic* War. So long was it, that *Rome* had still some feeling of *Hannibal*: which being past, there was remaining neither care, nor memory, of any danger. This Triumph of *Manlius* was deferred by him, even so long as he well could: for that he thought it not safe; to make his entrance into the City, until the

the heat of an Inquisition, then raging therein, should be allayed. The two *Scipios* were called one after other, into judgement, by two Tribunes of the people, men, only by this accusation, known to Posterity, *P. Scipio* the African, with whom they began, could not endure that such unworthy men should question him, of purloining from the Common Treasury, or of being hired with bribes by *Antiochus*, to make an ill bargain for his Country. When therefore his day of answer came, he appeared before the Tribunes, not humbly as one accused, but followed by a great train of his friends and Clients, with which he passed through the midst of the Assembly, and offered himself to speak. Having audience, he told the people, That upon the same day of the year he had fought a great battell with *Hannibal*, and finished the *Punic* War by a signal victory. In memory whereof, he thought it no fit season to babble at the Law; but intended to visit the Capitol, and there give thanks to *Jupiter*, and the rest of the gods, by whose grace both on that day and at other times, he had well and happily discharged the most weighty businesse of the Common-wealth. And hereto he invited with him all the Citizens: requesting them, That if ever since the seventeenth year of his life, he had been in any old, or dishonourable places by them conferred upon him, had prevented the capacity of his age, and yet his desert had exceeded the greatness of those honourable places, then would they pray, that the Prince and great ones of their City might still be like in him. These words were heard with great approbation: so as all the people, even the Officers of the court followed *Scipio*, leaving the Tribunes alone, with none about them, excepting their own slaves and a Cryer; by whom ridiculously they cited him to judgement, until for very shame, and not knowing what else to do, they granted him, unrequested, a further day. After this, when the African perceived that the Tribunes would not let fall their suit, but enforce him to submit himself to a disgracefull trial: he willingly relinquished the City, and his unthankfull Romans, that could suffer him to undergo so much indignity. The rest of his time he spent at *Livernum*: quietly with a few of his inward friends, and without any desire of seeing *Rome* again. How many years he lived, or whether he lived one whole year, in this voluntary banishment, is uncertain. The report of his dying in the same year, with *Hannibal* and *Philopemen*, as also of his private behaviour at *Livernum*, render it probable, that he out-lived the Tribuneship of his accusers; who meant to have drawn him back to his answer, if one of their Colleagues (as one of them had power to hinder all the rest from proceeding) had not caused them to desist. Howsoever it was, the same Tribunes went more sharply to work with *L. Scipio* the Asiaticke. They propounded a Decree unto the People, touching money received of *Antiochus*, &c. not brought into the common Treasury; that the Senate should give charge unto one of the *Prætors*, to inquire, and judicially determine thereof. In favour of this Decree, an Oration was made by *Cato*, the supposed author of these contentions, & instigator of the Tribunes. He was a man of great, but not perfect, verue; temperate, valiant, and of singular industry; frugal also both of the publicke, and of his own; so as in this kind he was even faulty: for though he would not be corrupted with bribes, yet was he unmercifull and uncomfionable, in seeking to increase his own wealth, by such means as the Law did warrant. Ambition was his vice, which being polished with service, troubled both himself and the whole City, which he lived. His mean birth caused him to value the Nobility, especially those that were in chief estimation. Neither did he spare to treat such as were of his own rank, men raised by desert, if their advancement were like to hinder his: but lately before this, when *Glabrio*, whose *Livertie* he had been at *Therapolye*, was his Competitor for the Consulship, and likely to carry it, he sought an Oath against him, which was counted as no better than malicious perjury. That he had not brought into the common Treasury some vessels of gold and silver, gotten in the Camp of *Antiochus*. Now the hatred which he bore unto the *Scipios* grew partly, besides his generall spite at the Nobility from his own birth, wherein he was countenanced by *Fabius Maximus*, who brooked not the African, partly from some check, that was given unto himself in the African voyage, by *P. Scipio*, whose Treasurer he then was. For when *Cato* did utter his dislike of the Consuls bad husbandry (judging it magnificence to be not better) in some peevish manner, *Scipio* plainly told him, That he had indeed of such double diligence in his Treasurer. Wherefore, either not caring what lies he published, or for want of judgement, thinking unworthily of the virtue that was far above him, *Cato* filled *Rome* with untrue reports against his Generall, whose noble



noble deeds confuted sufficiently the author of such false tales. And thus began the hatred: which being not regarded nor thought upon by the *Scipios*, whilst it was nourished by their enemy, brake out upon advantage, especially against *L. Scipio*: his brother being dead, or out of the way. A severe inquiry and judgement being appointed of purpose against *Scipio*, matters were so carried, that he was soon condemned in a sum of money, far exceeding his ability to pay. For non-payment, his body should have been laid up in prison: but from this rigour of the Law he was freed by *Tiberius Gracchus*, the same Tribune who had caused the suit against the *African* to be let fall. In his estate, which was confiscated to the use of the City, when there neither appeared any sign of his having been beholding to *Antiochus*, nor was found so much as what he had been condemned to pay, then fell his accusers, and all whose hands had been against him, into the indignation of the People. But for this was *L. Scipio* no whit the better: His kindred, friends, and Clients, made such a Collection for him, as would have set him in better estate than before, if he had accepted it. He took no more than such of his own goods, as were of necessary use, being redeemed for him by his nearest friends.

And thus began the civil war of the *Tongue*, in the Roman pleadings: which had either not been, or not been much regardable, untill now, since the Punick War. Security of danger from abroad; and some want of sufficient employment, were especial helps to the kindling of this fire: which first caught hold upon that great Worthy, to whose virtue *Rome* was indebted, for changing into so great security her extreme danger. But these factious contentions did no long while contain themselves within heat of words, and cunning practice. For when the Art of leading the multitude, in such quarrelsome business, grew to perfection: they that found themselves overmatched by their adversaries at this kind of weapon, began to make opposition, first, with clubs and stones; afterward with swords, and finally, proceeded from frays and murders in the streets, unto battail in the open field. *Cornelia*, daughter of *Scipio the African*, a Lady of rare virtue, that in honour of her two sons was more commonly named *Mother of the Gracchi*, saw those her two sons whilst they were but young, slaughtered in *Rome*, together with some of their friends, by those whom they opposed, and their death not revenged by order of Law, but rather approved by the Senate. At these times the Senators began to take upon them Authority, more than was to them belonging. They conferred upon the Consuls all the whole power of the City, under this form, *Let the Consuls provide, that the Commonwealth receive no detriment*. By this decree of theirs, and by their proclaiming any Citizen enemy to the State, they thought to have won a great advantage over the multitude. But after the death of *C. Gracchus*, and of *Saturnius* a popular man, whom by such authority they did put out of the way, it was not long ere *Marius* a famous Captain of theirs, was so condemned, who by force of armes returned into the City, and murdered all the principall Senators: whereupon began the civil wars, which giving unto *Sylla*, who prevailed therein, means to make himself absolute Lord of *Rome*, taught *Cæsar*, a man of higher spirit, to affect and obtain the like sovereign power, when by the like Decree of the Senate he was provoked. It is true, that never any Consul had finally came to joyce, of his having put in execution such authority to him committed by the Senate. But as the fury of the multitude, in passing their Lawes, by hurling of stones, and other violence, made the City stand in need of a Sovereign Lord: so the vehemency of the Senate, in condemning as enemies those that would not submit themselves, when they were over-topped by voices in the House, did compell *Cæsar*, or give him at least pretence, to right himself by arms: wherewith prevailing against his adversaries, he took such order, that neither Senate nor people, should thenceforth be able to do him wrong. So by intestine discord, the Romans consuming all or most of their principall Citizens, lost their own freedom, and became subjects unto the arbitrary government of one: suffering this change in three generations, after this beginning of their insolent rule, wherein they took upon them as the highest Lords on earth, to do even what they listed. Yet had not *Rome* indeed attained hitherto unto complete greatness, nor believed of her self as if she had; whilst a King late crowned on the Throne of *Alexander*, continuing and upholding the reputation of a former Empire, Wherefore this consummation of her honour was thought upon betimes. How it was effected, the sequel will discover.

## CHAP. VI.

## The second Macedonian Warre.

## §. III.

The Condition wherein those Princes and Estates remained, which were associates of the Romans, when the warre with *Antiochus* was finished. The Romans quarrell with Philip. They deal insensibly with the Achæans; The Macedonian, being already for war, obtains peace at *Rome*, by his son Demetrius; of whom thenceforth he becomes jealous.

THE overthrow of *Antiochus*, although *Philip* of *Macedon*, *Eumenes* King of *Perge*, the Commonwealth of the *Achæans*, and all other the States of *Greece*, were governed by the same Lawes and Magistrates, as they formerly had been, before the arrivall of the Romans in those parts; yet in very truth (the publique declaration excepted) they were none other than absolute vassalls to the People of *Rome*. For of those five Prerogatives belonging to a Monarch, of who Sovereign power, in whomsoever it fell; namely, To make Law, To create Magistrats, To arbitrate Peace and War, To beat Money, and to reserve (as the French call it)  *dernier Recours*, or the last Appeal, the Romans had assumed four; and the greatest of them so absolutely, that is, The Appeal, or last resort, as every petty injury offered to each other by the forenamed Kings or States, was heard and determined either by the Roman Embassadors, or Commissioners, in those places whence the Complaint came, or otherwise by the Senators themselves within *Rome*, from whose arbitrement, or direction, if either King or Common-weals declined, He or they were hearen, and informed to obedience, or had their Estates and Regalities utterly dissolved. Nevertheless it was true, that they had their own Lawes, and Officers of their own ordaining: yet so, as under the Lawes were of force, when the Romans interposed their will to the contrary, neither was their election of Magistrats so free, as that they had not therein especially regard unto the good pleasure of these their Masters.

And to such degree of servitude the severall Estates of *Greece* did bow very gently: either as being thankfull for their deliverance from a yoke more sensibly grievous, or, as being skilfull in the Art of flattery, and therein taking delight, since therein consisted their chief hope of thriving; or, as being more fearfull of displeasing the strongest, than mindful of their own honour. But *Eumenes* living further off, & being most obsequious unto the Romans, was not of long time, questioned about any of his doings: his conformity unto them in matter of war & peace, together with the diversion of their thoughts another way giving him leave to use his own even as he listed, untill they should otherwise dispose of him. Neither was it a little available to him, that his Kingdome bordered upon the Nations, by them not thoroughly subdued. For upon the same reason (as well as upon his own high deserts) were they very loving unto *Masani*, and to his House, untill *Carthago* was ruined, and their Dominion settled in *Africk*: as likewise afterwards to the Kings of *Numidia*, *Cappadocia*, and others: holding people in subjection unto themselves, by the Ministry of Kings; especially of such Kings, as were well and obsequious unto them.

Now the Macedonian was of a more noble temper, and shewed himself not forgetfull of his own former greatness, the honour of his race, or the high reputation of his Kingdome. But such magnanimity was none otherwise construed by the Romans, than as want of due reverence to their estate, and a valuation of himself against them: which in the pride of their fortune, they could not indure. Wherefore notwithstanding that he had lately given passage to their Armies through his Country, prepared the waies for them, and furnished them both with victuals, and other things needfull, to transport them over the *Hellepont* into *Asia*, against *Antiochus*: yet upon the complaint of *Eumenes* and the States of *Thessaly* and *Thrace*, he was commanded to abandon the Cities of *Bithonia*, and *Macedonia*.

*Macedonia*, with all pieces and places demanded by any of his neighbours; whereof many of them he had lately conquered, by direction or licence, given from the *Romans* themselves.

These Towns of *Enus* and *Maronea* had been part of *Lysimachus* his Kingdom: who from *Thrace* Northwards, and to the Northwest, extended his Dominion very far. He is thought to have made himself Lord of *Thraciæ*: in which Province it is said, \* That innumerable Medals of gold have been found, in the age of our Grand-fathers, each of them weighing two or three Crowns, and stamped with his Image on the one side, on the other side with *Victoria*. Of all these Lordships, the possession, or rather the title (for he lived not to settle his estate in *Europe*) fell to *Selenus* *Nicator* by right of war; wherein he vanquished and slew *Lysimachus*; as also, by the like right, *Ptolemy Cerinthus* thought them his own, when he had murdered *Selenus*. But the inundation of the *Gauls*, which the Kingdom of *Macedon* could not sustain, did shortly and easily wash away from that crown, together with the more part of *Thrace*, all those heaps of land newly thereby annexed. Somewhat of this was afterwards regained by *Antigonos* son of *Demetrius*; and his successors: though not much for they were otherwise employed. The fury of the *Gauls* being over past, those Countreys which had been oppressed by them, recovered their liberty, and not only held it, but found themselves, especially the *Dardanians* and wilde *Thracians*, to find their advantages, and make use of them, even upon *Macedon*. Against the mischiefs commonly done by these, King *Philip* did provide the most convenient remedies: by shutting up the waies, where by the *Dardanians* might enter into his Kingdom; and by occupying *Byzanchia*, with some other Towns in *Thrace*, which he fortified, as Bulwarks of his own Countrey, against the *Barbarians*. Now, although it behoved him thus to do, for the defence of his own estate: yet forasmuch as these Towns were, in a manner, at absolute liberty, his possession of them was thought to partake more of violence than of justice. And in this respect he was formerly accused by the *Ætolians*, of wrongfull usurpation and oppression, in his having occupied *Lysimachia*. Hereto he made a good answer. That his Garrison did only laye it from the *Thracians*: who as soon as he thence withdrew his men, did seize upon the Town, and ruiue it. The like perhaps he might have said, touching *Enus* and *Maronea*. That they were places unable to defend themselves, and Gates, by which the *Barbarians* might have entrance into his Kingdom: But this Plea had not availed him, in the disputation about *Lysimachia*; and in the present question, the *Romans* were not without their own title, since *Antiochus* had gotten all the Countrey thereabout, whilst *Philip* was busied in his former war: and since they, by their victory, had gotten unto themselves all the title, which *Antiochus* thereto could pretend. Wherefore he only submitted his right unto the good pleasure of the Senate: referring it unto their disposition, Whether *Enus* and *Maronea* should be set at liberty: whether left in his hand, or whether bestowed upon *Eumenes*, who begged them, as an appendage to *Lysimachia* and *Chersonesus*, that were already his by their gift. What they would determine, he might easily perceive, by the demeanour of their Embassadors towards him; who sitting as Judges between him and all that made complaint upon him, gave sentence against him in every controversy. Nevertheless, he sent Embassadors to *Rome*, there to maintain his right unto these Towns; wherein he thought, that equity (if it might prevail) was wholly on his side. For he had holpen their Consuls in the war against *Antiochus* and the *Ætolians*: wherein whatsoever he had gotten for himself, was now taken from him by their Embassadors: and would they now deprive him of those two towns, lying so fitly for the guard of his kingdom, which he had gotten to himself out of the ruins of *Antiochus*, like as out of his own ruins *Antiochus* had gotten in those quarters a great deal more? By such allegations either he was likely to prevail, or at leastwise to gain time, wherein he might berhink himself what he had to do. It was not long ere he had word from *Rome*; That the Senate were no more equal to him, than had been their Embassadors. Wherefore, considering how insolently the *Maronites* had behaved themselves, in pleading against him for their liberty, he took counsell of his own passions; and (as by nature he was very cruell) gave order to *Onomastus*, that was Warden of the Sea-coasts, to handle these *Maronites* in such sort, as they might have little joy of the liberty by them so earnestly desired. *Onomastus* employed *Cassander*, one of the Kings men dwelling in *Macedonia*, and willed him to let in the *Thracians*

\* Hist. of Hungary by Astruc. P. m. c. lib. 5.

*ians* by night, that they might sack the Town, and use all cruelties of war. This was done: but so ill taken by the *Roman* Embassadors who had better notice, than could have been feared, of these proceedings; that the King was by them directly charged with the crime, and called more strictly, than became his Majesty, to an account. He would have removed the blame from himself, and layed it even upon the *Maronites*: affirming, that they, in heat of their Factions, being some inclinable to him, other some to *Eumenes*, had fallen into such outrage, that they had cut one anothers throats. And hereof he willed the Embassadors to enquire among the *Maronites* themselves: as well knowing, that they who survived, were either his own friends; or so terrified and amazed by the late execution of his vengeance among them, that they durst not utter an offensive word. But he found the *Romans* more severe, and more thoroughly informed in the business, than to rest contented with such an answer. He was plainly told, That if he would discharge himself of the crime objected; he must send *Onomastus* and *Cassander* to *Rome*, there to be examined as the Senate should think fit. This did not a little trouble him. Yet he collected his spirits, and said, that *Cassander* should be at their disposition: but concerning *Onomastus*, who had not been at *Macedonia*, nor near to it, he requested them not to presse him; since it stood not with his honour so lightly to give away his friends. As for *Cassander*, because he should tell no tales; He took order to have him poisoned by the way. By this we see, that the doctrine, which *Machiavel* taught unto *Cesar Borgia*, to employ men in mischievous actions, and afterwards to destroy them when they have performed the mischief, was not of his own invention. All ages have given us examples of this goodly policy, the latter having been apt scholars in this lesson to the more ancient: as the reign of *Henry* the eighth, here in England, can bear good witness; and therein especially the Lord *Cromwell*, who perished by the same unjust Law that himself had devised, for the taking away of another mans life.

Such actions of *Philip* made an unpleasant noise at *Rome*, & were like to have brought upon him the war which he feared, before he was ready to entertain it. Wherefore he employed his younger son *Demetrius* as Embassador unto the Senate: giving him instructions, how to make answer to all complaints, and withall to deliver his own grievances in such wise, that it ought were amiss, yet might it appear that he had been strongly urged to take such courses. The sum of his Embassy was, to pacifie the *Romans*, and make all even for the present. *Demetrius* himself was known to be very acceptable unto the Senate; as having been well approved by them, when he was Hostage in *Rome*: and therefore seemed the more likely to prevail somewhat; were it only in regard that would be born unto his person.

Whilst this business with the *Macedonian* hung in suspense, and whilst he, by his readinesse to make submission, seemed likely to divert from himself some other way the *Roman* armes: the same Embassadors, that had been Judges between him and his neighbours, made their progresse through the rest of *Greece*; and took notice of the controversies, which they found between some Estates in the Countrey. The greatest cause that was heard before them, was the complaint of the banished *Lacedæmonians* against the *Acheans*. It was objected unto the *Acheans*, That they had committed a grievous slaughter upon many Citizens of *Lacedæmon*: That unto this cruelty they had added a greater, in throwing down the wals of the City: as also further, in changing the Lawes, and abrogating the famous Institutions of *Lycurgus*. Hereto *Lyortus*, the Prætor of the *Acheans*, made answer, That these banished *Lacedæmonians*, who now took upon them to accuse the Nation that had once protected them, were notoriously known to be the men, who had themselves committed that murder; whereof shamefully they laid the blame upon others: the *Acheans* having not only called those unto judgement, that were supposed to be chief Authors of a Rebellion against both them and the *Romans*: and these Plaintiffs having slain them, upon private, though just hatred, as they were comming to make answer for themselves. Concerning their throwing down the Wals of *Lacedæmon*, he said it was most agreeable to *Lycurgus* his Ordinance: who, having perswaded his Citizens to defend their Town and liberty by their proper vertue, did inhibit unto them all kinds of fortifications: as the Retrains and Nests either of Cowards, or (whereof *Lacedæmon* had wofull experience) of Tyrants and Usurpers. Further he shewed, how the same Tyrants that had built these wals

T T T T

and

and hemmed in the *Spartans*, had also quite abolished *Lycurgus* his ordinances; and governed the City by their own lawless Will. As for the *Acheans*; they communicated their own Lawes, which they held for the best; or else would soon change them and take better; unto the *Lacedaemonians*; whom they found without Lawes, or any tolerable forme of policy. For conclusion, *Lycortas* plainly told *App. Claudius*, the chief of the Embassadors, That he and his Countrymen held it strange, being friends and faithfull Allies of the *Romans*, to see themselves thus constrained, to answer and give account of their actions, as vassals & slaves unto the people of *Rome*. For if they were indeed at liberty: why might not the *Acheans* as well require to be satisfied about that which the *Romans* had done at *Capna*, as the *Romans* did busie themselves, to take account how things went at *Lacedaemon*? for if the *Romans* would stand upon their greatness; and intimate as they begun, that the liberty of their friends was nothing worth, longer than should please themselves to ratifie it: then must the *Acheans* have recourse unto those Agreements that were confirmed by oath, and which without perjury could not be violated; as everencing, and indeed fearing the *Romans*, but much more, the immortal gods. To this bold answer of *Lycortas Appius* found little to reply. Yet taking state upon him; he pronounced more like a Master than a Judge, that if the *Acheans* would not be ruled by fair means, and earn thanks whilst they might; they should be compelled with mischief, to do what was required at their hands, whether they would or no. This altercation was in the Parliament of the *Acheans*, which groned to hear the Lordly words of *Appius*. Yet fear prevailed above indignation: and it was permitted unto the *Romans* to do as they listed. Hereupon the Embassadors restored some banished and condemned men: but the *Roman Senate*, very soon after, did make void all judgements of death or banishment, that had been laid by the *Acheans*, upon any Citizen of *Lacedaemon*; as likewise they made it a matter of disputation, whether or no the City and Territory of *Lacedaemon* should be suffered to continue a member of the *Achean* Common-wealth; or, taken from them and made as it had been an Estate by it self. By bringing such a matter into question, the *Romans* well declared, that they held it to depend upon their own will, how much or how little any of their Confederates should be suffered to enjoy: though by contributing *Sparta* to the councill of *Achaia*, they discovered no lesse, as to them seemed, the love which they bare unto the *Achaians*, than the power which they had over them.

Into such slavery had the *Greeks*, and all Kings and Common-wealths whatsoever, bordering upon any part of the Mediterranean Seas, reduced themselves, by calling in the *Romans* to their succour. They wanted not the good counsel and perswasions of many wise and temperate men among them; they had also the examples of the *Italians*, *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, and *Africans*, all subdued by the *Romans*; and, by seeking Patronage, made meet Vassals; to instruct them, what in the like case they should expect: yet could not the true reasons of Estate and Policy so prevail with them, but their private passions, and neighbouring hatred, which hath evermore bought revenge at the price of self-ruine, brought them from the honour which they enjoyed, of being free Princes and cities, into most base and fearfull servility.

All this made well for *Philip of Macedon*: who though he saw the *Greeks* very far from daring to stir against those, by whom both he and they were kept in awe; yet was he not without hope, that (few of them excepted, whom the *Romans* by freeing from his subjection, had made his implacable enemies) in hearty affection all the country would be his, whensoever he should take Armes, as shortly he was like to do. Young *Demetrius*, coming home from *Rome*, brought with him the desired ratification of peace; though qualified with much indignity soon following. He had been long peaceably used at *Rome*, and heard with great favour in the Senate. There, being confounded with the multitude of objections, whereto his youth, unskillfull in the Art of wrangling, could not readily make answer: it was permitted unto him, to read such brief notes as he had received from his Father, and out of those the Senate were contented to gather satisfaction; more for *Demetrius* his own sake, as they then said, and wrote unto *Macedon*, than for any goodnesse in the defence. Such pride of theirs, in remitting his faults at the intreaty of his son, together with some insolence of his son, growing (as appeared) from this favour of the *Romans*; did increase in *Philip* his

his hatred unto *Rome*, and breed in him a jealousie of his too forward son. To set him forward in these passions, there came daily new Embassadors from *Rome*, some bringing one commandment, some another; and some requiring him to fulfill those things, which had been imposed upon him by their fore-goers. Neither were there wanting that observed his countenance: and when he had fulfilled all that was required at his hands; yet laid it to his charge, that he had done things unwillingly, and would be obedient no longer than he needs must. With these Embassadors young *Demetrius* was conversant: rather perhaps out of simplicity, and for that they made much of him, than for any ambitious respect; yet a great deal more than was pleasing to his father. So the rumour grew current through all *Macedon*, That *Perseus*, the elder son of the King, should not succeed unto his father; but that the Diademe should be conferred upon *Demetrius*, if not by some other pretence, yet by meer favour of the *Romans*. This offended not only *Perseus*, but *Philip* himself: who suspected his younger son, as more *Roman* than his own; and accordingly mis-constructed all his doings. But ere we proceed unto the bitter fruits of this jealousie; it will not be amisse to speak of some memorable accidents that were in the mean time.

## §. II.

10 The death of *Philopœmen*, *Hannibal*, and *Scipio*. That the Military profession is of all other the most unhappy: notwithstanding some examples, which may seem to prove the contrary.

THE *Romans* wanting other matter of quarrell in the Continent of *Greece*, had of late been so peremptory with the *Acheans*; that they seemed not unlikely to take part against them, in any controverisie that should be mov'd. Hereupon the *Messenians*, who against their will were annexed unto the *Achean* Common-wealth, having long been of a contrary Faction thereto; grew bold to withdraw themselves from that Society, with purpose to set up againe the Estate of their own, severed from communion with any other. This was the device of some that were powerful in their City; who finding the multitude only inclinable to their purpose, and not overstrongly affected in the business; were careful to seek occasion of reducing things to such passe, that all their Citizens might be entangled in a necessity of standing out, and of not returning to the *Achean* League. And hereupon they began to do some acts of hostility; whereby it was probable that blood should be drawn, and either side so far exasperated, that little hope of agreement would be left. Upon the fame of their commotion and proceedings; *Philopœmen*, then Prætor of the *Acheans*, levied such forces as he could in haste, and went against them. Many principal Gentlemen of the *Acheans*, especially of the *Megalopolitans*, were soon in readiness to wait upon him. Besides these, which were all, or for the most part, horse; he had some Auxiliaries out of *Thrace* and *Crete*, that usually were kept in pay. Thus accompanied, he met with *Dinocrates*, Captain of the *Messenians*: whom he charged, and forced to run. But whilst his horsemen were too earnest in following the chase; there arrived by chance a supply of five hundred from *Messene*, which gave new courage unto those that fled. So the Enemies began to make head again: and with the help of those, who very seasonably came to their aide, compelled *Philopœmen's* horsemen to turn back. *Philopœmen* himself had long been sick of an Ague, and was then very weak: yet the greatness of his courage would not suffer him to be negligent of their safety, which had so willingly adventured themselves under his conduct. He took upon him to make the Retreat: and suffering his horsemen to passe along by him in a narrow lane, he often turned about against the *Messenians*; whom the reputation, and the knowledge of his great worth, did terrifie from approaching over near to him. But it fell out unhappily, that being cast to ground by a fall off his horse, and being withall in very weak plight of body, he was unable to get up again. So the Enemies came upon him, and took him; yet scarce believed their fortune to be so good, although their eyes were witnesses. The first messenger that brought these newes to *Messene*, was so far from being beleaved, that he was hardly thought to be in his right wits. But when the truth was affirmed by many reports, all the City ran forth to meet him,

him, and behold the spectacle seeming so incredible. They caused him to be brought into the Theater, that there they might satisfy themselves with beholding him. The greatest part of them had compassion on his misfortune: and in commemoration both of his virtue, and of the singular benefits by him done unto them, especially in delivering them from *Nabis* the Tyrant: began to manifest their good will for his delivery. Contrariwise, *Dinocrates* and his faction were desirous hastily to take away his life: because they held him a man implacable, and one that would never leave any disgrace, or injury, done to him, unrevenge'd. They durst not one trust another with the keeping of him: but committed him into a strong vault under ground, that had been made for the custody of their Treasure. So thither they let him down fast bound, and with an engine laid an heavy stone upon the mouth of the Vault. There he had not stayed long, ere his enemies had concluded his present death. The Hangman of the City was let down unto him, with a cup of poyson, which *Philopamen* took in his hand: and asking no more than whether the Horsemen were escaped, and particularly whether *Lycortas* was safe, when he heard an answer to his minde, he said it was well: and so with a chearfull countenance, drank his last draught. He was seventy years old, and weakened with long sicknesse, whereby the poyson wrought the sooner, and easily took away his life. The *Acheans*, when they missed him in their flight, were marvellously offended with themselves, for that they had been more mindfull to preserve their own lives, than to look unto the safety of so excellent a Commander. Whilest they were devising what to do in such a case: they got advertisement of his being taken. All *Achaea* was by this report vehemently afflicted: so as Embassadors were forthwith dispatched unto *Messene*, craving his enlargement: and yet preparation made withall, to obtain it by force, in case that fair means would not serve. *Lycortas* was chosen Generall of the Army against *Messene*: who comming thither, and laying siege to the Town, enforced it in short space to yeeld. Then *Dinocrates* knowing what he was to expect, laid hands upon himself, and made an end of his own life. The rest of those that had been partakers in the murder, were compelled to wait in bonds upon the ashes of *Philopamen* that were carryed home in solemn pomp to *Megalopolis*: where they were all of them slain at his funeral, as sacrifices to his Ghost whom they had offended. *Q. Martius*, a Roman Embassador, was then in *Greece*; whence, upon one occasion or other, the Roman Embassadors were seldom absent. He would have enteredmeddled in this businesse of *Messene*, had not *Lycortas* made short work, and left him nothing to do.

About the same time was *T. Quintius Flaminius* sent Embassador to *Prusias* King of *Bithynia*: not so much to withdraw him from prosecuting the war against *Eumenes*, as to entreat him that he would deliver *Hannibal*, the most spitefull enemy in all the world unto the Senat: and People of *Rome*, into his hands. *Prusias* (therein unworthy of the Crown he wore) did readily condescend: or rather (as *Livie* thinks) to gratifie the Romans, he determined either to kill *Hannibal*, or to deliver him alive to *Flaminius*. For upon the first conference between the King and *Flaminius*, a troupe of Souldiers were directed to guard and environ the lodging where *Hannibal* lay. That famous Captain having found cause before this to suspect the faith of *Prusias*, had devised some secret sallies underground to save himself from any treasonable and sudden assault. But finding now that all parts about him were fore-closed, he had recourse to his last remedy: which he then was constrained to practise, as well to frustrate his enemies of their triumphing over him, as to save himself from their torture and mercilesse hands; who, as he well knew, would neither respect his famous enterprises, his honour, nor his age. When therefore he saw no way to escape, nor counsell to resort unto, he took the poyson into his hand, which he alwaies preserved for a sure Antidote against the sharpest diseases of adverse fortune; which being ready to swallow down, he uttered these words: *I will now* (said he) *deliver the Romans of that fear which hath so many years possessed them; that fear, which makes them impatient to attend the death of an old man. This victory of Flaminius, over me, which am disarmed, and betrayed into his hands, shall never be numbered among the rest of his hericall deeds: No, it shall make it manifest to all the Nations of the world, how far the ancient Roman vertue is degenerate and corrupted. For such was the noblenesse of their forefathers, as when Pyrrhus invaded them in Italy, & was ready to give them battle at their own doors, they gave him knowledge of the treason intended against him by poyson:*

son; whereas these of a latter race, have employed *Flaminius*, a man who hath heretofore been one of their consuls, to practise with *Prusias*, contrary to the honor of a King, contrary to his Faith given, and contrary to the Eaws of Hospitality, to slaughter or deliver up his own Guest. He then cursing the person of *Prusias*, and all his kind desiring the immortal gods to revenge his fidelity, drank off the poyson, and dyed.

In this year *Asolus* goe'n Authors have reported to accompany *Philopamen* and *Hannibal*, died *Scipio* the African; these being all of them, as great Captains as ever the world had, but not more famous than unfortunate. Certainly, for *Hannibal*, whose Tragedy we have now finished, had he been Prince of the *Carthaginians*, and one who by his authority might have commanded such supplies, as the War which he undertook, required; it is probable, that he had torn up the Roman Empire by the roots. But he was so strongly crost by a cowardly and envious Faction at home, as his proper vertue, wanting publicke force to sustaine it, did lastly dissolve it self in his own, and in the Common misery of his Country and Common-weale.

Hence it comes, to wit, from the envy of our equals, and jealousie of our Masters, be they Kings or Common-weales, that there is no profession more unprosperous than that of men of war, and great captaines, being no Kings. For besides the envy and jealousie of men, the spoyle, rapes, famine, slaughter of the innocent, vastation and burnings, with a world of miseries laid on the labouring man, are so hateful to God, as with good reason did *Monius* the Marshal of France contest, That, were not the mercies of God infinite, & without restriction, it were in vain for those of his profession to hope for any portion of them; seeing the cruelties, by them permitted and committed, were also infinite. Howsoever, this is true, That the victories which are obtained by many of the greatest Commanders, are commonly either ascribed to those that serve under them, to Fortune, or the cowardise of the Nation against whom they serve. For the most of others, whose vertues have raised them above the level of their inferiours, and have surmounted their envy: yet have they been rewarded in the end, either with disgrace, banishment, or death. Among the Romans, we finde many examples hereof; as *Coriolanus*, *M. Livius*, *L. Emilius*, and this our *Scipio*, whom we have lately buried. Among the Greeks we read of not many, that escaped these rewards. Yea long before these times, it was a Legacie that *David* bequeathed unto his victorious Captaine *Joab*. With this fare *Alexander* feasted *Permenio*, *Philotas*, and others; and prepared it for *Antipater* and *Cassander*. Hereunto *Valentinian* the Emperour invited *Ætius*: who, after many other victories; overthrow *Attila* of the *Hunnes*, in the greatest battel for the well fighting and resolution of both Armies, that ever was stricken in the world; for there fell of those that fought, beside run-aways, an hundred and fourscore thousand. Hereupon it was well and boldly told unto the Emperour by *Proximus*, That in killing of *Ætius*, he had cut off his own right hand with his left: for it was not long after, that *Maximus* (by whose perswasion *Valentinian* slew *Ætius*) murdered the Emperour; which hee never durst attempt *Ætius* living. And besides the the loss of that Emperour, it is true, That with *Ætius*, the glory of the Western Empire was rather dissolved, than obscured. The same unworthy destiny, or a far worse, had *Bellisarius*; whose undertakings and victories were so difficult and glorious, as after-ages suspected them for fabulous. For he had his eyes torne out of his head by *Justinian*: and he died ablinde begger. *Narses* also, to the great prejudice of Christian Religion, was disgraced by *Justin*. That rule of *Cato* against *Scipio*, hath been well observed in every age since then; to wit, That the Common-weale cannot be accounted free, which standeth in awe of any one man. And hence have the *Turkes* drawne another Principle, and indeed, a Turkish one, That every warlike Prince should rather destroy his greatest men of war, than suffer his own glory to be obscured by them. For this caule did *Bajazet* the second dispatch *Bassa Acemas*, *Selim* strangle *Bassa Mustapha*; and most of those Princes bring to ruine the most of their Vissers. Of the Spanish Nation, the great *Gonsalvo*, who drave the French out of Naples: and *Ferdinando Cortese*, who conquered Mexico; were crowned with nettles, not with Lawrel. The Earles of *Edmond* and *Horn* had no heads left them to wear garlands on. And that the great Captaines of all Nations have been paid with this copper Coine; there are examples more than too many. On the contrary, it may be said, That many have acquired the State of Princes, Kings, and Emperours, by their great ability in matter of War. This I confesse. Yet must it be had withall

in consideration, that these high places have been given or offered unto very few, as rewards of their military virtue; though many have usurped them, by the help and favour of those Armies which they commanded. Neither is it unregardable, That the Tyrants which have oppressed the liberty of free Cities: and the Lieutenants of Kings or Emperours, which have traitorously cast down their Masters, and stepped up into their seats; were not all of them good men of war: but have eiled the advantage of some commotion, or many of them by base and cowardly practices, have obtained those dignities, which undeservedly were ascribed to their personal worth. So that the number of those that have purchased absolute greatness by the greatness of their warlike virtue, is farre more in seeming than in deed. *Phocas* was a souldier, and by the help of the Souldiers he got the Empire from his Lord *Mauritius*: but he was a coward; and with a barbarous cruelty, seldome found in any other then cowards, he slew first the children of *Mauritius*, a Prince that never had done him wrong, before his face, and after them *Mauritius* himself. This his bloody aspiring was but as a debt, which was paid unto him again by *Heraclius*: who took from him the Imperial Crown, unjustly gotten, and set it on his own head. *Leontius* laid hold upon the Emperour *Jusline*, cut off his nose and eares, and sent him into banishment: but Gods vengeance rewarded him with the same punishment, by the hands of *Tiberius*; to whose charge he had left his own men of war. *Jusline*, having recovered forces, lighted on *Tiberius*, and barbed him after the same fashion, *Philippicus* commanding the forces of *Jusline*, murdered both the Emperour and his son. *Anastasius*, the vassal of this new Tyrant, surprised his Master *Philippicus*, and thrust out both his eyes. But with *Anastasius*, *Theodosius* dealt more gently: for having wrested the Scepter out of his hands, he enforced him to become a Priest. It were an endless and a needles work to tell, how *Leo* rewarded this *Theodosius*, how many others have been repaid with their own cruelty, by men alike ambitious and cruel; or how many hundreds, or rather thousands, hoping of Capitaines to make themselves Kings, have by Gods justice miserably perished in the attempt. The ordinary, and perhaps the best way of thriving by the practice of Armes, is to take what may be gotten by the spoyle of Enemies, and the liberality of those Princes and Cities, in whose service one hath well deserved. But scarce one of a thousand have prospered by this course. For that observation, made by *Salomon*, of unthankfulness in this kinde, hath been found belonging to all Countries and Ages: *A little City, and a few men in it, and a great King came against it, and compassed it about, and builded Forts against it: And there was found a poor and wiseman therein, and he delivered the City by his wisdom: but none remembered this poor man.* Great Monarchs are unwilling to pay great thanks, lest thereby they should acknowledge themselves to have been indebted for great benefits: which the unwiser sort of them think to favour of some impotency in themselves. But in this respect they are oftentimes coufened and abused; which proves that weakness to be in them indeed, whereof they so gladly shun the opinion. Contrariwise, free Estates are bountiful in giving thanks, yet so, as those thanks are not of long endurance. But concerning other profit which their Capitaines have made, by enriching themselves with the spoyle of the Enemy, they are very inquisitive to search into it, and to strip the well-deservers out of their gettings: yea most injuriously to rob them of their own, upon a false supposition: that even they whose hands are most cleane from such offences, have purloined somewhat from the common Treasury. Hereof I need not to produce examples: that of the two *Scipio's* being so lately rected,

In my late Sovereignes time, although for the wars, which for her own safety, she was constrained to undertake, her Majesty had no less cause to use the service of Martial men both by Sea and Land, then any of her Predecessors for many years had: yet according to the destiny of that profession, I do not remember that any of hers, the Lord Admiral excepted, her eldest, and most prosperous Commander, were either enriched, or otherwise honoured, for any service by them performed. And that her Majesty had many advised, valiant, and faithful men, the prosperitie of her affaires did well witness, who in all her dayes never received dishonor, by the cowardise or infidelity of any Commander, by her self chosen and employed.

For as all her old Capitaines by Land died poor men, as *Malbey*, *Randol*, *Drewry*, *Reade*, *Wilford*, *Layton*, *Pellam*, *Gilbert*, *Constable*, *Bonchier*, *Barkeley*, *Bingham*, &c. others:

fo

to those of a later and more dangerous imployment, whereof *Norrice* and *Vere* were the most famous, and who have done as great honor to our Nation (for the means they had) as ever any did; those (I say) with many other brave Colonels, have left behind them (besides the reputation which they purchased with many travels and wounds) no title nor estate to their posterity. As for the *L. Thomas Burrough*, and *Peregrine Bertie*, *L. Willoughby of Erby*, two very worthy and exceeding valliant Commanders, they brought with them into the world their Titles and Estates.

That her Majesty in the advancement of her Men of war did sooner believe other men than her self, a disease unto which many wise Princes, besides her self, have been subject, I say that that such a confidence, although it may seem altogether to excuse her Noble Nature, yet can it not but in some sort accuse her of weakness. And exceeding strange it were, were not the cause manifest enough, that where the prosperous actions are so exceedingly prized, the Actors are so unprosperous and so generally neglected. The cause, I say, which hath wrought one and the same effect in all times, and among all Nations, is this, that those which are nearest the person of Princes (which Martial men seldome are) can with no good grace commend, or at least magnifie a profession far more noble than their own, seeing therein they should only mind their Masters of the wrong they did unto others, in giving less honor and reward to men of far greater deserving, and of far greater use than themselves.

But his Majesty hath already paid the greatest part of that debt. For besides the relieving by Pensions all the poorer sort, he hath honored more Martial men than all the Kings of England have done for this hundred years.

He hath given a Coronet to the Lord *Thomas Howard* for his chargeable and remarkable service, as well in the year 1588. as at *Calix*, the Islands, and in our own Sea; having first commanded as a Captain, twice admiral of a Squadron, and twice Admiral in chief. His Majesty hath changed the Baronies of *Monjoy* and *Burley* into Earldomes; and created *Sidney* Vicount, *Knolles*, *Ruffel*, *Carew*, *Danvers*, *Arundel* of Warder, *Gerald*, and *Chichester*, Barons, for their governments and services in the *Netherlands*, *France*, *Ireland*, and elsewhere.

30

## §. III.

*Philip making provision for war against the Romans, deals hardly with many of his own subjects. His negotiation with the Bassarne. His cruelty. He suspecteth his son Demetrius. Demetrius accused by his brother Perseus, and shortly after slain by his fathers appointment. Philip repenteth him of his sons death, whom he findeth to have been innocent: and intending to revenge it on Perseus, he dieth.*

**Q**uintius Marius the Roman Ambassador, who travelled up and down, seeking what work might be found about *Greece*, had received instruction from the Senate, to use the utmost of his diligence in looking into the Estate of *Macedon*. At his return home, that he might not seem to have discovered nothing, he told the Fathers, That *Philip* had done whatsoever they enjoyed him, yet so, as it might appear, that such his obedience would last no longer, than meer necessity should enforce him thereunto. He added further, That all the doings and sayings of that King did wholly tend unto rebellion, about which he was devising. Now it was so indeed, that *Philip* much repented him of his faithful obsequiousness to the *Romans*, and foresaw their intent, which was, to get his Kingdome into their own hands; with safety of their honour, if they could finde convenient means; or otherwise (as to him seemed apparent) by what means soever. He was in an ill case: as having been already vanquished by them; having lost exceedingly both in strength and reputation; having subjects that abhorred to hear of War with *Rome*; and having neither neighbour nor friend, that if he were thereto urged, would adventure to take his part: yet he provided as well as he could devise, against the necessity which he daily feared. Such of his own people as dwelt in the maritime Towns, and gave him cause to suspect that they would do but bad service against the *Romans*, he compelled to forsake their dwellings, and removed them all into *Emathia*. The Cities and Country, whence these were transplanted, hee filled with a multitude of *Thracians*, whose faith he thought a great deal more assured against



against those enemies that were terrible to the *Macedonians*. Further, he devised upon alluring the *Bastarnæ*, a strong and hardy Nation, that dwelt beyond the river of *Danubius*, to abandon their fear, and come to him with all their multitude: who besides other great rewards, would help them to root out the *Dardaniæ*, and take possession of their Country. These were like to do him notable service against the *Romans*; being not only stout fighting men, but such, as being planted in those quarters by him, would bear respect unto him alone. The least benefit that could be hoped by their arrival, must be the utter extirpation of the *Dardaniæ*; a People always troublesome to the Kingdom of *Macedon*, whensoever they found advantage. Neither was it judged any hard matter, to persuade those *Bastarnæ*; by hope of spoyle, and other incitements, <sup>10</sup> unto a more desperate Expedition, through *Illyria*, and the Countries upon the *Adriaticke* Sea, into *Italy* it self. It was not known who should withstand them upon the way: rather it was thought, that the *Sordisci*, and peradventure some others, through whose Country they were to pass, would accompany them against the *Romans*; were it only in hope of spoyle. Now to facilitate the remove of these *Bastarnæ* from their own habitations, into the Land of the *Dardaniæ*, upon the border of *Macedon*, a long and tedious journey unto them, that carried with them their wives and children: *Philip* with gifts did purchase the good will of some *Thracian* Princes, Lords of the Countries through which they were to pass. And thus he sought means to strengthen himself, with help of the wilde Nations, which neither knew the *Romans*, nor were known unto them, since he was not like to finde assistance from any civil Nation, about the whole compass of the *Mediterranean* Seas. But these devices were long ere they took effect: so as the *Bastarnæ* came not before such time as he was dead; his death being the overthrow of that purpose. In the mean time he neglected not the training of his men to war, and the exercise of them in some small Expeditions against those wilde people that bordered upon him, and stood worst affected toward him.

But these his counsels and proceedings were miserably disturbed by the calamities that fell upon him, both in his Kingdom, and in his own house. The Families and whole Townships, which he had caused much against their wils to forsake their ancient dwellings, and betake themselves to such new habitations, as he in his discretion thought meet for them, were vehemently offended at the change. Yet their anger at first contained it self within words: he having done them no great wrong in that alteration, otherwise than by neglecting their affection to the places wherein they had long lived: which also he did unwillingly, being himself over-ruled by necessity, that seemed apparent. This evil therefore, would soon have been determined, had not his cruel and vindictive nature made it worse. He could not pardon words proceeding from just sorrow: but imputed all to traitorous malice; and accordingly sought revenge where it was needless. In his rage, he caused many to die: among whom were some eminent men; and few or none of them deservedly. This increased the hatred of the people, and turned their former exclamations into bitter curses. Which grew the more general, when the King in a barbarous and base fury, mistrusting all alike whom hee had injured, thought himself unlike to be safe, untill he should have massacred all the children of those parents, whom tyrannically he had put to death. In the execution of this his unmanly pleasure, some accidents, more tragical than perhaps he could have desired, gave men cause to think (as they could not in reason think otherwise) that, not without vengeance poured on him from Heaven, he felt the like misery in his own children. It is hard to say what the *Romans* intended, in the extraordinary favour which they shewed unto *Demetrius*, the Kings younger son. It may well be (though it may be also suspected) that they had no purpose to make and nourish dissention between the brethren, but only to cherish the vertue and towardliness of *Demetrius*; like as we find it in their Histories. But their notable favour towards this young Prince, and his mutual respect of them, bred extreame jealousy in the fathers head. If any custome of the *Romans*, the manner of their life, the fashion of their apparel, or the unsightly contriving and building (as then it was) of the Town of *Rome*, were jest at in ordinary discourse and table-talk; *Demetrius* was sure to be presently on fire, defending and praising them, even in such points as rather needed excuse. This, and his daily conversation with their Embassadours as often as they came, gave his father cause.

cause to think, that he was no fit partaker of any counsell held against them. Wherefore he communicated all his devices with his elder son *Perseus*: who fearing so much lest his brother should step between him and the succession, converted wholly unto his destruction, that grace which he had with his father. *Perseus* was then thirty years old; of a stirring spirit, though much defective in valour. *Demetrius* was younger by five years, more open and unwary in his actions, yet thought old and crafty enough, to entertain more dangerous practises, than his free speeches discovered. The jealous head of the King having entertained such suspensions, that were much increased by the cunning practice of his elder son, a slight occasion made the fire break out, that had long lain smothered. A Muster and ceremonious lustration of the Army, was wont to be made at certain times with great solemnity. The manner of it at the present was thus: They cleft in twain a bitch, and threw the head and forepart, with the entrails, on the right hand, and the hinder part on the left hand of the way which the Army was to passe. This done the armes of all the Kings of *Macedon*, from the very first original, were born before the Army. Then followed the King between his two sons: after him came his own band, and they of his guard; whom all the rest of the *Macedonians* followed. Having performed other ceremonies, the Army was divided into two parts: which under the Kings two sons, charged each other in manner of a true fight, using poles, and the like, in stead of their pikes and accustomed weapons. But in this present skirmish there appeared some extraordinary contention for the victory: whether happening by chance, or whether the two Captains did over-earnestly seek each to get the upper hand, as a betokening of their good successe in a greater trial. Some small hurt there was done, and wounds given, even with those stakes, untill *Perseus* his side at length recoyled. *Perseus* himself was sorry for this, as it had been some bad presage: but his friends were glad, and thought, that hereof might be made good use. They were of the craftier sort: who, perceiving which way the Kings favour bent, and how all the courtes of *Demetrius* led unto his own ruine, addressed their services to the more malicious and crafty head. And now they said, that this victory of *Demetrius* would afford matter of complaint against him; as if the heat of his ambition had carried him beyond the rules of that solemn pastime. Each of the brethren was that day to feast his own companions, and each of them had spies in the others lodging, to observe what was said and done. One of *Perseus* his Intelligencers behaved himself so indifferently, that he was taken & well beaten by three or four of *Demetrius* his men, who turned him out of doors. After some store of wine, *Demetrius* told his companions, that he would go visit his brother, and see what cheer he kept. They agreed to his motion, excepting such of them as had ill handled his brothers man: yet he would leave none of his train behinde, but forced them all to bear him company. They, fearing to be ill rewarded for their late diligence, armed themselves secretly to prevent all danger. Yet was there such good espial kept, that this their coming armed was forthwith made known to *Perseus*: who thereupon tumultuously locked up his doors, as if he stood in fear to be assaulted in his house. *Demetrius* wondered to see himself excluded, and feared very angrily with his brother. But *Perseus* bidding him be gone as an enemy, and one whose murderous purpose was detected, sent him away with an entertainment no better than defiance. The next day the matter was brought before the King. The elder brother accused the younger unto the father of them both. Much there was alledged, & in effect the same that hath been here recited, save that by misconstruction all was made worse. But the main point of the accusation, and which did aggravate all the rest, was, That *Demetrius* had undertaken this murder, and would perhaps also dare to undertake a greater, upon confidence of the *Romans*; by whom he knew that he should be defended and born out. For *Perseus* made shew, as if the *Romans* did hate him; because he bore a due respect unto his father, and was sorry to see him spoiled, and daily robbed of somewhat by them. And for this cause he said it was, that they did animate his brother against him: as also that they sought how to win unto *Demetrius* the love of the *Macedonians*. For proof hereof he cited a letter, sent of late from *Titus Quintius* to the King himself: whereof the contents were, That he had done wisely in sending *Demetrius* to *Rome*; and that he should yet further do well to send him thither again, accompanied with a greater and more honourable train of *Macedonian* Lords. Hence he enforced, That this counsell was given by *Titus*, of purpose to shake the allegiance of those, that should

should wait upon his brother to *Rome*; and make them, forgetting their duties to their old King, become servants to this young traitor *Demetrius*. Hereto *Demetrius* made answer, by rehearsing all passages of the day and night foregoing, in such manner as he remembered them, and had conceived of them: bitterly reprehending *Perseus*, that converted matters of pastime, and what was done or spoken in wine, to such an accusation, whereby he fought his innocent brothers death. As for the love which the *Romans* did bear him, he said that it grew, if not by his own virtue, at leastwise from their opinion thereof: so as by any impious practice, he were more like to lose it wholly, than to increase it. In this wretched pleading there wanted no such passions, as are incident to fathers, children, and brethren, besides those that are common to all Plaintiffs and Defendants, before ordinary Judges. The King pronounced like a father, though a jealous father, That he would conclude nothing upon the excess or error, whatsoever it were, of one day and night, nor upon one hours audience of the matter, but upon better observation of their lives, manners, and whole carriage of themselves both in word and deed. And herein he may seem to have dealt both justly and compassionately. But from this time forward he gave himself over wholly to *Perseus*: using so little conference with his younger son, that when he had matters of weight in hand, such especially as concerned the *Romans*, he liked neither to have him present, nor near unto him. Above all, he had especial care, to learn out what had passed between *Demetrius* and *T. Quintus*, or any other of the *Roman* great ones. And to this purpose he sent Embassadors to *Rome*, *Philotes* & *Apelles*: men whom he thought no way interested in the quarrels between the brethren, though indeed they altogether depended on the elder, whom they saw the more in grace. These brought home with them a letter, said to be written by *Titus* (whose seal they had counterfeited) unto the King. The contents whereof were, A deprecation for the young Prince, with an intimation, as by way of granting it, That his youthful and ambitious desires had caused him to enter into practices unjustifiable, against his elder brother, which yet should never take effect: for that *Titus* himself would not be author, or abettor of any impious device. This manner of excuse did forcibly persuade the king to think his son a dangerous Traytor. To strengthen him in this opinion, one *Didas*, to whom he gave *Demetrius* in custody, made shew as if he had pited the estate of the unhappy Prince, and so wrung out of him his secret intentions, which he shortly discovered unto *Philip*. It was the purpose of *Demetrius* to fly secretly to *Rome*; where he might hope not only to live in safety, from his father and brother, but in greater likelihood, than he could finde at home, of bettering such claim as he had in reversion unto the Crown of *Macedon*. Whatsoever his hopes and meanings were, all came to nought through the falshood of *Didas*; who, playing on both hands, offered unto the Prince his help for making the escape, and in the mean while revealed the whole matter to the King. So *Philip* resolved to put his son to death, without further expence of time. It was thought behoofull to make him away privily, for fear lest the *Romans* should take the matter to heart, and hold it as a proof sufficient, at least, of the Kings despight against them, if not of his meaning to renew the war. *Didas* therefore was commanded to rid the unhappy Prince out of his life. This accursed Minister of his Kings unadvised sentence, first gave payson to *Demetrius*: which wrought neither so hastily, nor so secretly, as was desired. Hereupon he sent a couple of Russians, to finish the tragedy: who villainously accomplished their work, by smothering that Prince, in whose life consisted the greatest hope of *Macedon*.

In all the race of *Antigonus* there had not been found a King, that had thus cruelly dealt with any Prince of his own blood. The houses of *Lysimachus* and *Cassander* fell either with themselves, or even upon their heels; by intestine discord and jealousies, grounded on desire of sovereign rule, or fear of losing it. By the like unnatural hatred, had almost bin cut off the lines of *Ptolemy* and of *Seleucus*: which, though narrowly they escaped the danger, yet were their kingdoms thereby grievously distempered. Contrariwise, it was worthy of extraordinary note, how that upstart family of the Kings of *Pergamus* had raised it self to marvellous greatness, in very short space, from the condition of meer slavery: whereof a principall cause was, the brotherly love maintained by them, with singular commendation of their piety. Neither was *Philip* ignorant of these examples; but is said to have propounded the last of them to his own children, as a pattern for them to imitate. Certainly he had reason so to do: not more

more in regard of the benefit which his enemies reaped by their concord, than in remembrance of the tender fosterage, wherewith King *Antigonus* his Tutor had faithfully cherished him in his minority. But he was himself of an unmercifull nature; and therefore unmeet to be a good persuader unto kindly affection. The murders by him done upon many of his friends, together with the barbarous outrages, which for the satiating of his blood-thirsty appetite, he delightfully had committed upon many innocents, both strangers, and subjects of his own; did now procure vengeance down from Heaven, that rewarded him with a draught of his own payion. After the death of his son, he too late began to examine the crimes that had been objected; and to weigh them in a more equall balance. Then found he nothing that could give him satisfaction, or by good probability induce him to think, that malice had not been contriver of the whole process. His only remaining son *Perseus* could so ill dissemble the pleasure which he took in being freed from all danger of competition; as there might easily be perceived in him a notable change, proceeding from some other cause, than the remove of those dangers which he had lately pretended. The *Romans* were now no lesse to be feared than at other times; when he, as having accomplished the most of his desires, left off his usual trouble of minde, and carefulnesse of making provision against them. He was more diligently courted, than in former times, by those that well understood the difference between a rising and a setting Sun. As for old *Philip*, he was left in a manner desolate, some expecting his death, and some scarce enduring the tediousnesse of such expectation. This bred in the King a deep melancholy; and filled his head with suspicious imaginations; the like whereof he had never been slow to apprehend. He was much vexed: and so much the more, for that he knew neither well to whom, nor perfectly whereof to complain. One honourable man, a Cousin of his, named *Antigonus*, continued so true to *Philip*, that he grew thereby hateful to *Perseus*: and thus becoming subject unto the same jealous impressions which troubled the King, became also partaker of his secrets. This Counsellor, when he found that the anger conceived against *Perseus* would not vent it self, and give ease to the King, untill the truth were known whether *Demetrius* were guilty or no of the treason objected; as also that *Philotes* and *Apelles*, (the Embassadors which had brought from *Rome* that Epistle of *Flaminius* that served as the greatest evidence against *Demetrius*) were suspected of forgery in the businesse: made diligent inquiry after the truth. In thus doing, he found one *Xyechus*, a man most likely to have understood what false dealing was used by those Embassadors. Him he apprehended, brought to the Court; and presented unto the King: saying, that this fellow knew all, and must therefore be made to utter what he knew. *Xyechus* for fear of torture, uttered as much as was before suspected: confessing against himself, that he had been employed by the Embassadors in that wicked piece of businesse. No marvel, if the Fathers passions were extreme, when he understood that by the unnatural practice of one son, he had so wretchedly cast away another, far more virtuous and innocent. He raged exceedingly against himself; and withall against the Authors of the mischief. Upon the first newes of this discovery, *Apelles* fled away, and got into *Italy*; *Philotes* was taken: and either forasmuch as he could not deny it when *Xyechus* confronted him, yielded himself guilty; or else was put to torture. *Perseus* was now grown stronger, than that he should need to flye the country: yet not so stout as to adventure himself into his fathers presence. He kept on the borders of the Kingdome towards *Thrace*, whilst his father wintered at *Demetrius*. *Philip* therefore, not hoping to get into his power, this his ungracious son, took a resolution, to aliene the Kingdome from him, and confer it upon *Antigonus*. But his weak body, and excessive grief of minde, so disabled him in the travell thereto belonging, that ere he could bring his purpose to effect, he was constrained to yeeld to nature. He had reigned about two and forty years: alwayes full of trouble; as vexed by others, and vexing himself with continual wars, of which that with the *Romans* was most unhappy, and few or none of the rest found the conclusion, which a wise Prince would have desired, of bringing forth together both honour and profit. But for all the evil that befell him, he might thank his own perverse condition: since his Uncle, King *Antigonus*, had left unto him an estate, so great, and so well settled, as made it easie for him, to accomplish any moderate desires, if he had not abhorred all good counsell. Wherefore he was justly punished by feeling the difference between the imaginary happinesse of a Tyrant; which he affected, and the

the life of a King, whereof he little cared to perform the duty. His death, even whilest yet it was only drawing near, was fore-signified unto *Perseus*, by *Caligenes* the Physician, who also concealed it a while from those that were about the Court. So *Perseus* came thither on the sudden, and took possession of the Kingdom: which in fine he no lesse improvidently lost, than he had wickedly gotten.

## §. IV.

*How the Bastarna fell upon Dardania. The behaviour of Perseus in the beginning of his reign. Some wars of the Romans: and how they suffered Masaniissa cruelly to oppress the Carthaginians. They quarrelled with Perseus. They allow not their Confederates to make war without their leave obtained. The Treason of Callicrates, whereby all Greece became more obnoxious to Rome, than in former times. Further quarrels to Perseus. He seeks friendship of the Achæans, and is withstood by Callicrates. The Romans discover their intent of warring upon him.*

Immediately upon the death of *Philip*, came the *Bastarna* into *Thrace*; where order had been taken, long before, both for the free passage, and for the indemnity of the Country. This compact was friendly observed, as long as no other was known than that *Philip* did live to recompense all that should be done, or sustained, for his service. But when it was heard, that a new King reigned in *Macedon*, and not heard withal, that he took any care what became of the enterprize: then was all dash and confounded. The *Thracians* would no longer afford so good markets unto these strangers, as formerly they had done. On the other side, the *Bastarna* would not be contented with reason, but became their own carvers. Thus each part having lost the rich hopes reposed in *Philip*, grew carefull of thriving in the present; with little regard of right or wrong. Within a while they fell to blows; and the *Bastarna* had the upper hand, so as they chased the *Thracians* out of the plain Countries. But the victors made little use of their good fortune. For whether by reason of some overthrow, received by them in assaulting a place of strength; or whether because of extreme bad weather, which is said to have afflicted them as it were miraculously: all of them returned home, save thirty thousand, which pierced on into *Dardania*. How these thirty thousand sped in their voyage, I do not finde. It seems that by the careless using of some victories, they drew loss upon themselves: and finally took that occasion, to follow their companions back into their own Country.

As for *Perseus*, he thought it not expedient, in the novelty of his reign, to embroile himself in a war so dangerous, as that with the *Romans* was likely to prove. Wherefore he wholly gave his minde to the settling of his Estate, which well done, he might afterwards accommodate himself, as the condition of his affairs should require, either for war or peace. To prevent all danger of rebellion, he quickly took away the life of *Antigonum*. To win love of his people, he sat personally to hear their causes in judgement, (though herein he was so over-diligent; and curious, that one might have perceived this his virtue of justice to be no better than feigned) as also he gratified them with many delightful spectacles, magnificently by him set forth. Above all, he had care to avoid all necessity of war with *Rome*; and therefore made it his first work, to send Embassadors thither, to renew the league; which he obtained, and was by the Senate saluted King, and friend unto the State. Neither was he negligent in seeking to purchase good will of the *Greeks*, and other his neighbours: but was rather herein so excessively bountifull, that it may seem a wonder how in few years, to his utter ruine, he became so griping and tenacious. His fear was indeed the mastering passion, which over-ruled him, and changed him into so many shapés, as made it hard to discern which of his other qualities were naturally his own. For proof of this, there is requisite no more, than the relation of his actions past and following.

The *Romans* continued, as they had long, busie in wars against the *Spaniards* and *Ligurians*; people often vanquished, and as often breaking forth into new rebellion. They also conquered *Istria*, subdued the rebelling *Sardinians*; and had some quarrels, though to little effect, with the *Illyrians* and others. Over the *Carthaginians* they bore (as ever since the victory) a heavy hand; and suffered *Masaniissa* to take from them what he listed.

listed. The *Carthaginians*, like obedient Vassals to *Rome*, were afraid; though in defence of their own; to take aimes: from which they were bound by an Article of peace, except it were with leave of the *Romans*. *Masaniissa* therefore had great advantage over them; and was not ignorant how to use it. He could get possession by force, of whatsoever he desired, ere their complaining Embassadors could be at *Rome*; and then were the *Romans* not hardly entreated to leave things as they found them.

So had he once dealt before, in taking from them the Country of *Emporia*; and so did he use them again and again; with pretence of title, where he had any; otherwise, *Masaniissa* had wonne some land from the *Carthaginians*, without it. *Gala* the Father of *Masaniissa* had wonne some land from the *Carthaginians*, which afterward *Syphax* wanted from *Gala*, and within a while, restored to the right owners, for love of his wife *Sophonisba*, and of *Asdrubal* his father-in-law. This did *Masaniissa* take from them by force; and by the *Romans* (to whose judgement the case was referred) was permitted quietly to hold it. The *Carthaginians* had now good experience, how beneficial it was for their Estate, to use all manner of submissive obedience to *Rome*. They had scarcely digested this injury, when *Masaniissa* came upon them againe, and took from them above seventy Towns and Castles, without any colour of right. Hereof by their Embassadors, they made lamentable complaint unto the *Roman* Senate. They shewed how grievously they were oppressed by reason of two Articles in their League: That they should not make war out of their own Lands; nor with any Confederates of the *Romans*. Now although it were so that they might lawfully withstand the violence of *Masaniissa*, invading their Country; howsoever he was pleased to call it his: yet since he was Confederate with the *Romans*, they durst not presume to bear defensive armes against him, but suffered themselves to be eaten up, for fear of incurring the *Romans* indignation. Wherefore they intreated, that they might have fairer justice; or be suffered to defend their own by strong hand; or at least if right must wholly give place to favor; That the *Romans* yet would be pleased to determine, how far forth *Masaniissa* should be allowed to proceed in these outrages. If none of these petitions could be obtained, then desired they, that the *Romans* would let them understand, wherein they had offended since the time that *Scipio* gave them peace; and vouchsafe to inflict on them such punishment as they themselves in honour should think meet: for that better and more to their comfort it were, to suffer at once what should be appointed by such Judges; than continually to live in fear; and none otherwise draw breath, than at the mercy of this *Numidian* Hangman. And hereafter the Embassadors threw themselves prostrate on the ground, weeping: in hope to move compassion.

Here may we behold the fruits of their envy to that valiant house of the *Barcines*; of their irresolution in prosecuting a war so important, as *Hannibal* made for them in *Italy*; and of their half-penny-worthing in matter of expence when they had adventured their whole estate in the purchase of a great Empire. Now are they servants, even to the servants of those men; whose fathers they have often chased, slain, taken & sold as bondslaves in the streets of *Carthage*, and in all cities of *Africa* & *Greece*. Now have they enough of that *Roman* peace, which *Hanno* so often and so earnestly desired. Only they want peace with *Masaniissa*, once their mercenary; and now their master, or rather their tormentor; out of whose cruel hands, they beseech their masters to take the office of correcting them. In such case are they, and adore the *Romans*, whom they see flourishing in such prosperity as might have been their owne. But the *Romans* had far better entreated *Varro*, who lost the battel at *Canna*, than *Hannibal* that wan it was used by the *Carthaginians*: they had freely bestowed, every man of them; all his private riches upon the Commonwealth, and employed their labours for the publicke, without craving recompence: as also they had not thought it much, though being in extreame want, to set out an Army into *Spain*, at what time the enemy lay under their own walls. These were no *Carthaginian* virtues: and therefore the *Carthaginians*, having fought against their betters, must patiently endure the miseries belonging to the vanquished. Their pitifull behaviour bred peradventure some commiseration; yet their tears may seem to have been mistrusted, as proceeding no less from envy to the *Romans*, than from any feeling of their own calamity. They thought themselves able to fight with *Masaniissa*: which estimation of their forces was able to make them, after a little while, enter into comparisons with *Rome*. Wherefore they obtained not such leave as they sought.

of defending their own right by arms; but contrariwise, when without leave obtained, they presumed to far, the destruction of *Carthage* was thought an easy punishment of that offence. At the present, they received a gentle answer; though they had otherwise little amends. *Galsissa* the son of *Masaniissa* was then in *Rome*; and had not as yet craved audience. He therefore was called before the Senate; where he was demanded the reason of his coming, and had related unto him the complaint made by the *Carthaginians* against his father. He answered, That his Father not being thoroughly aware of any Embassadors thither sent from *Carthage*, had therefore not given him instructions, how to deal in that business. Only it was known, that the *Carthaginians* had held Council divers nights, in the Temple of *Esculapinus*; whereupon he himself was 10 dispatched away to *Rome*, there to intreat the Senate, that these common enemies of the *Romans*, and of his Father, might not be overmuch trusted; especially against his Father, whom they hated most maliciously, for his constant faith to the people of *Rome*. This answer gave little satisfaction. Wherefore the Senate replied, that for *Masaniissa* his sake, they had done, and would do, whatsoever was reasonable; but that it stood not with their justice, to allow of this his violence, in taking from the *Carthaginians* those Lands, which by the covenants of the League, were granted unto them freely to enjoy. With this mild rebuke they dismissed *Galsissa*, bestowing on him friendly presents (as also they did on the *Carthaginians*) and willed him to tell his Father, that he should do well to send Embassadors, more fully instructed in this matter. This happened when 26 the *Macedonian* war was even ready to begin: at which time the *Romans* were not willing too much to offend, either the *Carthaginians* (for fear of urging them unseasonably to rebellion) or *Masaniissa*, at whose hands they expected no little help. So were they aided both by the *Carthaginians*, and *Masaniissa*: by the *Carthaginians*, partly for fear, partly for hope of better usage in the future; by *Masaniissa*, in way of thankfulness, though it it had happened (which was unlikely) that they should be vanquished, he made none other account, than that all *Africa* round about him, and *Carthage* therewithal, should be his own.

In the midst of all these cares, the *Romans* had not been unmindful of *Perseus*. They visited him daily with Embassadors, that is, with honourable spies to observe his behaviour. These he entertained kindly at first, until (which fell out ere long) he perceived whereto their diligence tended. First they quarrelled with him about the troubles in *Dardania*: neither would they take any satisfaction, until the *Bastarne* were thence gone; though he protested, that he had not sent for them. Afterward they pried narrowly into his doings; and were no less ill contented with good offices, by him done, to sundry of his neighbours, than with those wrongs, which (they said) that he did unto other some. Where he did harm to any, they called it, making war upon their friends: Where he did good, they called such his bounty, seeking friends to take his part against them. The *Drelopians*, his subjects, (upon what occasion it is uncertain) rebelled, and with exquisite torments slew *Euphranor*, whom he had appointed their Governour. It seems that *Euphranor* 40 had played the Tyrant among them. For they were a people without strength to resist the *Macedonian*: and therefore unlikely to have presumed far, unless either they had been extremely provoked, or else were secretly animated by the *Romans*. Whatsoever it was that bred this courage in them, *Perseus* did soon allay it, and reclaim them by strong hand. But the *Romans* took very angrily this presumption of the King: even as if he had invaded some Country of their Italian Confederates, and not corrected his own rebels at home. Faine they would have had him to draw in the same yoke with the *Carthaginians*; whereunto had he humbled once his neck, they could themselves have done the part of *Masaniissa*, though *Eumenes*, or some other fit for that purpose, had been wanting. And to this effect, they told him, That the Conditions of the League between 50 them were such as made it unlawful, both to his Father heretofore, and now to him, to take arms without their licence first obtained.

To the same pass they would also faine have reduced the *Greeks*, and generally all their adherents, even such as had entered into league with them upon equal terms: whom usually they rewarded with a frown, whenever they presumed to right themselves by force of Arms, without seeking first the Oracle at *Rome*. Hereof the *Acheans* had good experience: whose confidence in their proper strength, made them otherwise bold to be their own carvers, and whose hope of extraordinary favour at *Rome* caused them

them the more willingly to refer their causes to arbitrament. For when they were about to have obtained the *Messianian* by war, *T. Quintius* rebuked them, as 1900 Attorneys: making such a work in hand, without his authority: yet by his authority, he ended the matter, wholly to their good liking. Semblably at other times were they reprehended, even with Lordly threats, when they took upon them to carry any business of importance, by their own power, without standing unto the good grace of the *Romans*. Who nevertheless upon submission, were apt enough to do them right. Thus were they moved by hints and litle, and taught to forget their absolute liberty, as by which they were 10 to like to thrive especially in usurping the practice of Arms, which belonged only to the Imperial City. In learning this hard lesson, they were such untoward scholars, that they needed, and not long after felt, very sharp correction. Yet was there no small part of blame to be imputed unto their Masters. For the *Roman* Senate, being desirous to humble the *Acheans*, refused not only to give them such aid as they requested, and as they charged by the tenor of the League between them; but further, with a careless insolence, rejected this honest and reasonable petition, That the Enemy might not be supplied from Italy, with victuals or arms. Herewith not content, the Fathers, as wearied with dealing in the affairs of *Greece*, pronounced openly, That if the *Argives*, *Lacedaemonians*, or *Corinthians* would revolt from the *Acheans*; they themselves would think it a business no way concerning them.

This was presently after the death of *Philopamen* at what time it was believed, that the Common-wealth of *Achaia* was like to fall into much distress; were it not upheld by countenance of the *Romans*. All this notwithstanding; when *Lykortas* Praetor of the *Acheans* had utterly subdued the *Messianians* farre sooner than was expected; and when as not only no town rebelled from the *Acheans*, but many entered into their cooperation; then did the *Romans* with an ill-favoured grace, tell the same Embassadors, to whose petition they had made such bad answer (and who as yet were not gone out of the City). That they had straightly forbidden all manner of succour to be carried to *Messians*. Thus thinking, by a famed gravity, to have served their own turn, they manifested their condition, both to set on the weaker against the stronger and more suspected, and also to assume unto themselves a Sovereign power, in directing all 30 matters of war, which dissemblingly they would have seemed to neglect. In like manner dealt they with all their Confederates: not permitting any of them to make war, whether offensive or defensive, though it were against meer dangers; without interpoling the authority of the Senate, and people of *Rome*: unless peradventure, sometimes they winked at such violence, as did help towards the accomplishment of their own secret malice. Now these *Roman* Arts, howsoever many (for gainful or timorous respects) would seem to understand them, yet were generally displeasing unto all men endued with free spirits. Only the *Athenians*, once the most turbulent City in *Greece*, having neither subjects of their own that might rebel, nor power where- 40 with to bring any into subjection; for want of more noble argument whereto to practise their eloquence that was become the whole remainder of their ancient commendations, were much delighted in flattering the most mighty. So they kept themselves in grace with the *Romans*, remained free from all trouble, until the war of *Mithridates*: being men unfit for action, and thereby innocent; yet bearing a part in many great actions, as Gratiulators of the *Roman* victories, and Pardon-cravers for the vanquished. Such were the *Athenians* become. As for those other Common-wealths and Kingdoms that with over-nice diligence, strove to preserve their Liberties and Lands, from consuming by piece-meale: they were to be devoured whole, and swallowed up at once. Especially the *Macedonian*, as the most unpliant, and wherein many of the *Greeks* began to have 50 confidence, was necessarily to be made an example, how much better it were to bow, than to break.

Neither *Perseus* nor the *Romans* were ignorant, how the *Greeks* at this time stood affected: *Perseus*, by reason of his near neighbourhood, and of the daily commerce between them and his subjects, could not want good information of all that might concern him, in their affairs. He well knew, that all of them now apprehended the danger, which *Philopamen* had long since foretold, of the miserable subjection, whereto *Greece* was likely to be reduced, by the *Roman* Patronage. Indeed they not only perceived the approaching danger, but as being tenderly sensible of their liberty, felt themselves

themselves grieved with the present subjection, whereto already they were become obnoxious. Wherefore though none of them had the courage, in matters of the publicke to fall out with the *Romans*; yet all of them had the care to choole among themselves none other Magistrates, than such as affected the good of their Country; and would for no ambition, or other servile respect, be flatterers of the greatness which kept all in fear. This it seems likely, that all domesticall conspiracies would soon be at an end; when honestie, and love of the Common-wealth, became the fairest way to preferment. Of this earnest provision for the safety of *Greece*, the *Romans* were not thoroughly advertised; either because things were diligently concealed from their Embassadors, whom all men knew to be little better than spies; or because little account was made of their intelligence, which was brought in by such Traitors (of whom every Citie in *Greece* had too many) as were then unregarded among their own people, and therefore more like to speak maliciously than truly; or perhaps because the Embassadors themselves, being all Senators; and capable of the greatest Office or charge, had no will to finde out other means of trouble, than was fitting to their own desires of employments. But it is hard to conceive that which many know, from those that are feared or flattered by many. The *Achaans* being to send Embassadors to *Rome*, that should both excuse them, as touching some point wherein they refused to obey the Senate; and inform the Senate better in the same business; choole one *Callistrates*, among others, to go in that Embassage. By this making choice of such a man, one may perceive the advantage, which mischievous flatterers, who commonly are forward in pursuing their vile desires, have against the plain sort of honest men, that least earnestly thrust themselves into the troublesome business of the state publicke. For this *Callistrates* was in such wise transported with ambition, that he chose much rather to betray his Country, than to let any other be of more authority than himself therein. Wherefore in stead of well discharging his credence, and alledging what was merited in justification of his people, he uttered a quite contrary tale, and strongly encouraged the *Romans*, to oppress both the *Achaans*, and all the rest of *Greece*, with a far more heavy hand. He told the Senate, that it was high time for them to look unto the settling of their authority among his forward Countrimen, if they meant not wholly to forget it. For now there was taken up a consome, to stand upon points of confederacie and laws; as if these were principally to be had in regard, any injunction from *Rome* not withstanding.

Hence grew it, that the *Achaans*, both now, and at other times, did what best pleased themselves, and answered the *Romans* with excuses: as if it were enough to say, That by some condition of League, or by force of some Law, they were discharged or hindered from obeying the decrees of the Senate. This would not be so, if hee, and some other of his opinion, might have their will: who ceased not to affirme, That no Columns, or Monuments erected, nor no solemn oath of the whole Nation, to ratifie the observance of Confederacie or statute, ought to be of force, when the *Romans* willed the contrary. But it was even the fault of the *Romans* themselves; that the multitude refused to give ear unto such persuasions. For howsoever in popular Estates, the sound of libertie used to be more plausible, than any discourse tending against it; yet if they which undertook the maintenance of an argument, seeming never to bad, were sure by their so doing, to procure their own good, the number of them would increase apace, and they become the prevalent faction. It was therefore strange how the *Fathers* could so neglect the advancement of those, that sought wholly to enlarge the amplitude of the *Roman* majesty. More wisely, though with seditious and rebellious purpose, did the *Greeks*; who many times, yea and ordinarily, conferred great honours, upon men otherwise of little account or desert; only for having uttered some brave words against the *Romans*. The *Fathers* hearing these and the like reasons, wherewith he exhorted them to handle roughly those that were obnoxious, and by cherishing their friends, to make their party strong; resolved to follow this good counsel, in every point; yea to despise all those that held with the right, and to set up their own followers, were it by right or by wrong. And to this end, they not only dealt thenceforth more peremptorily with the *Achaans*, than had been their manner in former times; but wrote at the present unto all Cities of *Greece*, requiring them to see that their mandate (which was concerning the restitution of those that were banished out of *Lacedaemon*) should be fulfilled. Particularly in behalf of *Callistrates*, they advised all men to be such, and

and so affected, as he was, in their several common-wealths. With this dispatch, *Callistrates* returned home a joyfull man: having brought his Country into the way of ruine; but himself into the way of preferment. Nevertheless he forbore to vaunt himself of his eloquence used in the Senate. Onely he so reported his Embassage, that all men became fearful of the danger, wherewith he threatened those that should presume to oppose the *Romans*. By such Arts he obtained to be made Praetor of the *Achaans*: in which Magistracy, as in all his courses following, he omitted nothing, that might serve to manifest his ready obsequiousness unto those whom he had made his Patrons.

Now as the *Romans* by threatening termes was many flatterers, and lost as many true friends; so *Perseus* on the other side, thinking by liberal gifts, and hopeful promises, to assure unto himself those that ill could brook his enemies, got indeed a multitude of partakers, though little honestier than his enemies had. Thus were all the Cities of *Greece* distracted with factions: some holding with the *Romans*, some with the *Macedonians*, and some few, respecting onely the good of the Estates wherein they lived. Hereat the Lords of the Senate were highly offended; and thought it an indignity not sufferable, That a King, no better than their vassal, should dare to become head of a faction against them. This therefore must be reckoned in the number of his trespasses: wherof if not one on a longer, yet all of them together, shall assure them just occasion to make war upon him. *Perseus* having finished his business among the *Dolopians*, made a journey to *Apollo* his Temple at *Delphi*. He took his Army along with him: yet went, and returned in such peaceable and friendly wise, that no place was the worse for his journey, but the good affection towards him generally increased thereby. With those that were in his way, he dealt himself, to such as lay further off, he sent Embassadors or letters: praying them, That the memory of all wrongs whatsoever, done by his father, might be buried with his father: since his own meaning was to hold friendship sincerely with all his neighbours. The *Romans* perhaps could have been pleased better, if he had behaved himself after a contrary fashion, and done some acts of hostility in his passage. Yet as if he ought not to have taken such a journey, without their licence; this also was made a valuable matter, and cast into the heap of his faults. He labored greatly to recover the love of the *Achaans*: which his father had so lost; that by a solemn decree, they forbade any *Macedonian* to enter their territories. It was jealousy perhaps, no less than hatred, which caused them, at the first, to make such a decree. For howsoever *Philip* had by many vile acts, especially by the death of the two *Archi*, given them cause to abhor him; yet in the publicke administration of their estate, he had, for the more part, been to them beneficial, that not without much ado, and at length, without any general consent, they resolve to forsake him. Wherefore it was needfull, even for preservation of concord among them, to use all circumspection, that he might not, by his agents, negotiate, and hold intelligence with any, in a country towards him, so doubtfully affected: especially when by hearkening to his messages, they might make themselves suspected by their new friends. But the continuance of this decree, beyond the time of War; and when all danger of innovation was past, was uncivil, if not inhumane; as nourishing deadly hatred, without leaving means of reconciliation. And hereof the *Achaans* reaped no good fruit. For although they were not, in like sort, forbidden the kingdom of *Macedon*: yet understanding what would be due to them, if they should adventure thither, none of them durst set foot therein. Hence it came to pass, that their bondmen, knowing a safe harbour, out of which their masters could not fetch them, ran daily away in great numbers: exceedingly to the loss of such, as made of their slaves very profitable use. But *Perseus* took hold upon this occasion: as fitly serving to pacifie those, whose enmity saime he would have changed into love. He therefore apprehended all these fugitives, to send them home againe: and wrote unto the *Achaans*, That as for good will unto them, he had taken paines to restore back their servants, so should they do very well to take order for keeping them, that hereafter they might not run away again. His meaning was readily understood, and his letters kindly accepted by the greater part, being openly rehearsed by the Praetor, before the Councell. But *Callistrates* took the matter very angrily, and bade them be advised what they did: for that this was none other, than a plain device, to make them depart from the friendship of the *Romans*. Herewithal he took upon him, somewhat liberally, to make the *Achaans* before-hand acquainted with the War, that was coming up on *Perseus* from *Rome*. He told



old them how *Philip* had made preparations for the same war; how *Demetrius* had been made away, because of his good affection to the *Romans*; and how *Perseus* had since his being King, done many things, tending to the breach of peace. Briefly, He rehearsed all those matters, which were afterwards alleged by the *Romans*; the invasion of the *Bastarnæ* upon the *Dardanians*; the Kings journey against the *Dolopians* in his voyage to *Delphi*; and finally, his peaceable behavior, which was (he said) a dangerous temptation of men to his party. Wherefore he advised them to expect the event of things, and not over-hastily to enter into any degree of friendship with the *Macedonians*; Hereto good answer was made by the Pretors brother: That *Calliocrates* was too earnest in so light a matter, and that being neither one of the Kings Cabinet, nor of the *Roman* Senate, he made himself too well acquainted with all that had passed, or was like to follow. For it was well known, that *Perseus* had renewed his League with the *Romans*; that he was by them saluted King, and friend to the Estate; and that he had lovingly entertained their Embassadors: This being so, why might not the *Achaans*; as well as the *Aetolians*, *Thessalians*, *Epirots*, and all the *Greeks*, hold with him such correspondence, as common humanity required? Mevorthels *Calliocrates* was grown a man to terrible, by his *Roman* acquaintances, that they durst not over-stiffly gainesay him. Therefore the matter was referred unto further deliberation and answer made the whilst, That since the King had only sent a letter without an Embassador, they knew not how to resolve. Better it was to say thus, than that they were afraid to do as they thought most reasonable and convenient. But when *Perseus* herewith not contented, would needs urge them further, and send Embassadors: then were they faine, without any good pretence, to put on a countenance of anger, and deny to give audience: which was proof sufficient (to one that could understand) of the condition wherein they lived. For harkening to this advice of *Calliocrates*, they were soon after highly commended by a *Roman* Embassador: whereby it became apparent, that the *Romans* intended War upon the *Macedonian*; though hitherto no cause of War was given.

Liv. lib. 45.

## §. V.

How *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus* was vexed with *Pharnaces*, the *Rhodians*, and others. His hatred to the *Macedonian*: whom he accuseth to the *Roman* Senate. The Senate honours him greatly, and condemnes his enemies the *Rhodians* with the causes thereof. The unsuccessfulness of the *Macedonian* Embassadors. *Perseus* his attempt upon *Eumenes*. The brotherly love between *Eumenes* and *Attalus*. *Perseus* his devise to poison some of the *Roman* Senators: whereupon they decree war against him, and send him defiance. Other things concerning the justice of this war.

*Eumenes* King of *Pergamus* had been troubled about these times, by the Kings *Pharnaces* and *Mithridates*, his neighbours. He had taken the right course, in making first his complaint to the *Romans*: by whom he was animated with comfortable words, and promise. That they, by their authority, would end the business to his content. But in conclusion, by the help of the Kings, *Prusias*, and *Attalus*, he ended the war himself; and brought his Enemies to seek and accept peace, on such conditions as pleased him to give them. After this, being at good leisure, he began to consider how the affairs of *Macedon* stood under *Perseus*. His hatred to *Perseus*, was very great: and therefore he was glad to understand, that the hatred of the *Romans*, to the same his Enemy was as great, and withal notorious. Now, besides his ancient and hereditary quarrel with the *Macedonians*, it vexed him exceedingly, That his own honors (whereof the *Greeks*, prodigal in that kind, had heaped immoderate store on his father and him) began to wax every where stale: whilst *Perseus*, either by his currying favour or by the envy born to the *Romans*, had gotten their best liking and wishes. For despite of this indignity, He stirred up the *Lycians* against the *Rhodians* his old friends: and in helping these rebels was so violent, that he proceeded, in a manner, open War. But final pleasure found he in these poor and indirect courses of revenge. The *Lycians* could not be saved by his Patronage from severe and cruel chastisement, given to them by the *Rhodians*. This rendered him contemptible: as likewise, his acts of hostility, little different from robberies, made him hateful to those which loved him before. As for his honours in the Cities of *Greece*; they not onely continued falling

Pol. Leg. 56. 59.

Polyb. Leg. 74.

falling into neglect; but were abrogated by a decree of the *Achaans*, as too unmeasured, misbecoming them to give, and affected by him beyond the proportion of his deservings. All this (which he needed not to have regarded, had he not been too vainly ambitious) beset him; especially for his being over-servicable to the *Romans*; and for his malice to that notable Kingdom; which if it fell, the liberty of *Greece* was not like to stand. Now for the redress hereto, he thought it vaine to strive any longer with bounty, against such an Adversary, as by hopeful promises alone, without any great performance, had over-topped him in the general favour. And therefore he resolv'd even to overturn the foundations of this popularity, by insulting the *Romans* utterly to take away from the eyes of men this Idol, the *Macedonian* Kingdom, which all so vainly worshipped. Neither would it prove a difficult matter, to persuade those that were already desirous, rather he was like to be highly thanked, for setting forward their wishes; and perhaps to be recompensed with some piece of the kingdom, as he had been rewarded for the like service, when *Antiochus* was vanquished.

To this end he made a second voyage to *Rome*: where though he had little to say, which they knew not before, yet his words were heard with such attention, as if they had contained some strange novelty, and so pondered by the Fathers, as if the weight of them were to turn the balance, that before was equal. The death of *Demetrius*, the expedition of the *Bastarnæ* into *Dardania*, that of *Perseus* himself against the *Dolopians*; and to *Delphi*, the greatest estimation of the *Macedonian* in *Greece*, his intermeddling in businesses of his neighbours, his riches and his great provisions, were all the material points of *Eumenes* his discourse. Only he descended unto particulars, having searched into all (as he professed) like unto a Spie. He said, that *Perseus* had thirty thousand foot, and five thousand horse, of his own money in a readiness to entertain ten thousand Mercenaries for ten years, armed to furnish a number thrice as great. The *Thracians* his friends at hand, ready at a call, to bring him Soldiers as many as he should require; and that he prepared victuals for ten years, because he would not be driven, either to live upon spoyle, or to take from his own Subjects. Herewithall he prayed them to consider, that King *Seleucus*, the son and successour of *Antiochus* the Great, had given his daughter *Laudie* in marriage to *Perseus*; *Perseus* nor wooing, but *Seleucus* offering the match; That King *Prusias* of *Bithynia*, by earnest suite, had gotten to wife the sister of *Perseus*; and that these marriages were solemnized with great concourse of Embassadors from all quarters. Neither spared he to tell them, (though seeming loth to utter it plainly) That even the envy to their Estate was the cause, why many that could not endure to bear of amity with *Philip*, were now grown matvellously well affected to his son. All this, and some facts of *Perseus*, which might either be denied or justified, (as that he had procured the death of some which were friends to the *Romans*, and that he had expelled *Abrypolis* the *Ulyrian*, who invaded *Macedon*, out of his kingdom, or Lordship) *Eumenes* failed not to amplify unto the most: saying, that he thought it his duty to forewarn them: since it would be to himself a great shame, if *Perseus* got the start of him, and were in *Italy* making war upon the *Romans*, ere *Eumenes* could come thither to tell them of the danger.

It were too great folly, to believe that the *Romans* stood in fear of *Perseus*, lest he should set upon them in *Italy*. Nevertheless, so far much as they loved not to make war without faire pretence, not onely of wrong done to them or their associates; but of further hurt intended: great thanks were given to *Eumenes*; who had every way furnished them with such goodly colour, to beautifie their intendment. Now though it were so that he told them little else than what they knew before: yet his person, and the manner of his coming, made all seem greater: For if upon any relation made by their own Embassadors, or upon tales deviled by their flatterers and spies; they had warred against *Perseus*, ere he had committed any open act of hostility against them; their injustice and oppression would have been most manifest. But when the wrongs to them done were so notorious, and the danger threatening them so terrible, that such a Prince as *Eumenes* came out of his own kingdom, as far as from *Asia*, to bid them look to themselves; who could blame them, if they took the speediest order to obtaine their own right and security? Toward this justification of the war, and magnifying the necessity that enforced them thereto, their more than usual curiosity, in concealing what *Eumenes* had uttered in the Senate, when they could not but understand that his errand was

was well known; helped not a little. The Macedonian and Rhodian Embassadors were at Rome, provided of answers to the words, which they knew before-hand that he would speak; and with matter of recrimination. The vanity, either of him, or of some about him, seems to have disclosed all: when the weariness of the Fathers, in hiding that which all men knew, made a notable shew of some fearful apprehension; against which, it behoved their wisdom to neglect no possible remedy. Wherefore careless audience was given to the Rhodian Embassadors; who accused Eumenes, as one most troublesome to Asia, than Antiochus had ever been, and a provoker of the Lycians to rebellion. The Rhodians had with great pompe conveyed by sea unto Persus, his bride Laodice, which friendly office, as the Macedonian bountifully required, so the Romans despatchfully accepted. Hence it grew, that when the Lycians, as already vanquished, were settling themselves in their obedience to the people of Rhodes, Embassadors came from Rome with strange news, which gave new life to the rebellion. For the Senate pronounced, That it stood not with the manner of the Romans, to alien quite from their own protection any people or Nation by them vanquished: and that the Lycians were by them assigned unto those of Rhodes, not as meer vassals, but as dependants and associates. For proof hereof, they referred themselves unto the commentaries of the ten Embassadors; whom they had sent to dispose of things in Asia, after the victory against King Antiochus. Hereat Eumenes, Maspianissus, the Etolians and all other Kings or Estates that were beholding to Rome for increasing the number of their subjects, had cause to finde themselves aggrieved, if they well considered the matter: since by force of this or the like decree, those their subjects might easily be made their fellows, whensoever it should please the Senate: though it were so, that all men knew the present meaning of the Senate: which was only to plague the Rhodians for their good will to Persus, by setting them and the Lycians together by the ears. The Fathers could therefore see no reason to dislike Eumenes, upon this complaint made by the Rhodian Embassadors, which indeed more nearly touched themselves. Rather they honoured the King so much the more: for that others (as they would needs take it) conspired against him, because of his love to Rome.

But the Macedonian Embassage they heard not so carelessly as angrily: though peradventure it well contented them to finde cause of anger. For whereas at other times all care had been taken, to pacifie them with gentle words and excuses: now heard they plainer language, and were told, That King Persus desired much to give them satisfaction, concerning any deed or word of his, that might savour of hostility; but that, if his travel in this kinde proved vaine, then would he be ready to defend himself by armes, and stand to the chance of war, which often falls out contrary to expectation. These big words may seem to have proceeded from the vehemency of Harpalus, that was chief of the Embassadors; rather than from instruction given by the King, with whose faint heart they agreed not. Yet was there good reason, why Persus himself might, at this time, think to speed better by a shew of daring, than he was like to do by any submission. For the eyes of all Greece being cast upon him, as on the greatest hope of deliverance from the Roman servitude; it was not expedient, that he should lessen, or perhaps utterly cut off, the general expectation, and the good affection born to him, which thereon depended, by discovering his too much weakness of spirit, unanswerable to a work of such importance. Wherefore he, or his Ambassador for him, was bold to set a good countenance on a game not very bad, but subject (in appearance) to fortune; which might have been his, had he known how to use it.

Now that this bravery (as better it may be termed than courage) proceeded from the Kings own heart, it appears by his daring to adventure soon after, on a practice that more justly might anger the Romans, and give them fairer shew of reason to make war upon him. It was known that Eumenes, in returning home, would take Delphi in his way, and there do sacrifice to Apollo. Persus deadly hating him, and thirsting after his blood, resolved to way-lay him, and by making there of him a sacrifice, to rid his own hands of a most mischievous enemy. So there were appointed three or four stout ruffians to do the murder: who placing themselves behind a broken mud-wall, on the side of a very narrow path leading up from the Sea to the Temple, did thence assault the King; whom they sorely bruited with great stones, and left for dead. They might have finished their work, such was the opportunity of the place which they had chosen; but fear of

being apprehended, made them, without staying to see all sure, flee in such hast, that they killed one of their own companions, who could not hold pace with them; because he should not discover them. Eumenes was conveyed away to the little Ile of Arginus, where he was cured: being all the while kept so secretly, that the fame of his death was current in Asia. Hence it came, that his brother Attalus took upon him as King, and either took or would have taken to wife (supposing it belike a matter of State) Stratonice, the daughter of king Ariarabes, whom he then thought the widow of Eumenes. It may well be numbered among the rare examples of brotherly love; That when the king turned alive home, Attalus going forth to meet him and do his duty, as in former times, received none other check than, *that he should forbear to marry with the Queen: until he were well assured of the Kings death.* More than this, Eumenes never speak of these matters, but bewailed at his death, unto the same brother, both his wife and kingdom. As likewise Attalus forbore to attempt any thing to the prejudice of the king his brother, though the Romans (with whom he continued and grew in special favour; when Eumenes fell into their hatred) were in good readines, to have transferred the kingdom from his brother to him. By such concord of Brethren was the kingdom of Pergamus raised and upheld, as might also that of Macedon have been, if Demetrius had lived and employed his grace with the Romans, to the benefit of Persus.

It is likely that Persus was very glad, when he understood that his ministers had both accomplished his will, and had saved all from discovery. But as he was deceived in that main point, and heard shortly after, that Eumenes lived, so was he beguiled in that other hope, of the concealment; which he vainly esteemed the less material. For he had written to one Praxas, a Gentlewoman of Delphi, to entertain the men whom he sent about this business; and she, being apprehended by C. Valerius, a Roman Embassador, then attending upon the matters of Greece, was carried to Rome. Thus all came to light: Valerius also brought with him to Rome, out of Greece one Raminus, a Citizen of Brundisium; who coming newly from the Court of Macedon, laden with a dangerous secret, had presently sought out the Embassador, and thereof discharged himself. Brundisium was the ordinary Port for ships passing between Italy and Greece. There had Raminus a faire house; wherein he gave entertainment, being a wealthy man, to Kings Embassadors, and other honourable personages; both Romans and Macedonians, journeying to and fro. By occasion of such his hospitality, he was commended to Persus, and invited into Macedonia with friendly letters, as one whose many courtesies to his Embassadors, the King was studious to requite. At his coming he was much made off, and shortly, with more familiarity than he expected, desired, made partaker of the Kings secret. The summe of all was, That he must needs do a turn, in giving to such of the Romans, as the King should hereafter haire, a poyson of rare quality: sure in operation, yet not to be perceived either in the taking or afterward. He durst not refuse to accept this employment: for fear lest the vertue of this medicine should be tryed upon himself. But being once at liberty, he discovered all. Raminus was but one man; and one whom the King had never seen before, nor was like to see againe: and therefore, besides that the Kings denial ought to be as good as such a fellows affirmation, the accusation was improbable. Thus did Persus, in time storidly following answer for himself, and in like sort concerning the attempt upon Eumenes: denying to have had any hand, either in the one or other: yet withal confessing, That such objections were not to be made unto a King, to prove the rightfulness of making war upon him; but rather unto a subject pleading for his life in judgement. But howsoever the Romans neglected the getting of stronger proof (which might have been easie) than any that we finde by them produced: yet the Senate greatly stand to dispute the matter with him: these his treacheries being held inexcusable. And as for his Royal Estate, wherein he supposed that they ought not to be inexcusable. And as for his Royal Estate, wherein he supposed that they ought not to be inexcusable. And as for his Royal Estate, wherein he supposed that they ought not to be inexcusable. And as for his Royal Estate, wherein he supposed that they ought not to be inexcusable.

doctr to denounce it unto him, unless he would yield to make such amends as they should require. He seemed at this time to have been so confident in the general favour of Greece, and other comfortable appearances, that if he desired not war, yet he did not fear it: or at least he thought by shew of courage, to make his enemies more calm. He caused the Embassadors to dance attendance, till being weary, they departed without audience. Then called he them back, and bade them do their errand. They made a tedious rehearsal of all matters, which they had long bin collecting against him, and wherewith Eumenes had charged him: adding thereto, that he had entertained long and secret conference in the Ile of Samothrace, with Embassadors sent to him out of Asia, about some ill purpose. In regard of all which they peremptorily required satisfaction; as was their manner when they intended to give defiance. Better they might have stood upon the evidence, brought against him by *Romains* and *Praxo*. For if those accusations could be verified, then wanted they not good ground whereon to build: of which otherwise they were destitute; it being no fault in a King, to be strong, well-beloved, and well-armed. *Perseus* answered, for the present, in a rage, calling the *Romans*, greedy, proud, insolent, and underminers of him by their daily Embassadors, that were no better than meer spies. Finally, he promised to give them in writing their full answer: which was to this effect. That he would no longer stand to the league made between them and his father, and renewed by himself indeed only for fear, but wished them to descend to more equal conditions; whereupon he, for his part, would advise, as they might also do for theirs.

Polyb. Leg. 9.

Liv. lib. 33.

In the form of the league between *Philip* and the *Romans*, as is set down by *Polybius*, we find no condition binding the *Macedonian* to any inconvenience in the future; excepting those which he immediately performed. But *Livy* inserts a clause, whereby he was expressly forbidden to make any war abroad, without leave of the *Romans*. It is most likely, that all the *Roman* confederates were included in this peace; whereby every one of the neighbours round about *Macedon*, entering shortly into league with *Rome*, did so bind the Kings hands, that he could no more make war abroad, then if he had been restrained by plain covenant. And thus might that seem an article of the peace, which never was agreed upon, but only was inferred by consequence. Now if the *Romans* would urge this point further, and say, that the *Macedonian* might not bear defensive arms, without their permission; then had *Perseus* very just reason to find himself aggrieved. For since they had allowed his father, without controul, to make war in *Thrace*, (whilest they themselves were unacquainted with the *Thracians*) and elsewhere abroad, though he asked not their licence: why should they now interpret the bargain after another fashion? Was it now become lawful for him to chastise his own Rebels, or to repay an *Illyrian* that invaded *Macedon*? By such allegations he maintained the right of his cause, in very milde sort, when it was too late. At the present, by disclaiming the league as unjust, he ministered occasion unto the Embassadors, to give him defiance. Having heard the worst of their message, he commanded them to be gone out of his Kingdom in three dayes. But either he should have been less vehement, or more constant in his resolution. For if his heart could serve him to undertake the war, he should courageously have managed it, and have slain to work immediately, whilest the *Enemies* was unprepared; not have lost opportunities, as now and often he did, in hope of obtaining a worse peace than the former.

§. VI.

## §. VI.

The *Romans* solicit the *Greeks*, to join with them in the war against *Perseus*. How the *Greeks* stood affected in that war. The timorousness of *Perseus*. *Marcus* a *Roman* Embassador desires him with hope of peace. His forces. He takes the field, and wins part of *Thessaly*. The forces of *Licinius* the *Roman* Consul: and what assistants the *Romans* had in this war. Of *Tempe* in *Thessaly*, and what advantages the *Macedonian* had, or might have had, but lost by his fear. *Perseus* braves the *Romans*, fights with them, knows not how to use his victory, sues for peace, and is denied it by the vanquished. *Perseus* having the worse in a skirmish, forsakes all the Countrey lying without *Tempe*. The *Bacotians* rebel against the *Romans*, and are rigorously punished. The *Roman* Commanders unfortunate in the war against *Perseus*. The vex the *Greeks* their friends; for whose ease the *Senate* makes provision, having heard their complaints. The flustering *Alibanders*.

So long had the *Romans* been seeking occasion to take in hand this *Macedonian* war, that well they might have been ready for it, when it came; and not (as they were) behinde hand in provisions. But it was on a sudden that they met with a confidence of good pretences to make the war: whereof, if no one alone had weight enough, yet all of them together seemed more than sufficient. This opportunity of making their cause honest in common opinion, was not to be neglected: though otherwise they were unprepared for the action. Wherefore knowing, or having reason to believe, that their own strength was such as would prevail in the end; they hastily embraced the faire occasion of beginnings, and referred other cares to the diligence of Time. Neither was this their unreadiness a smal help, towards examining the disposition of the *Greeks* and others; who must afterwards dearly pay for any backwardness found in their good will. There was not indeed any cause to fear, that all of the *Greeks* or other Eastern people should conspire together, and take part with the *Macedonian*: such was the diffention between their several Estates, howsoever the generality of them were inclined the same way. Nevertheless Embassadors were sent to deal with them all; and to crave their help against *Perseus*, or rather to demand it, in no less ample manner, than heretofore they had yielded it against *Philip* and *Antiochus*, in wars pretending the liberty of *Greece*. The Embassadors used as gentle words for fashions sake, as if they had stood in doubt that their request might happen to be denied. But the *Greeks* were now grown well acquainted with such *Roman* courtesie: and understood that not only such as made refusal, but even they who might seem to have granted half unwillingly, were like to hear other manner of words, when once this business was ended. Wherefore none of them were scrupulous in promising the best of their help to the *Romans*: the *Achaens* and *Rhodians*, which were chief among them, being rather doubtful, even when they had done their best, lest it should be ill taken, as if they had faltered in some part of their duty. It is strange, that men could be so earnest to set up the side, whereof they gladly would have seen the ruine. The vulgar sort was every where addicted to *Perseus*, of the Nobles and Rulers, if some were vehemently *Roman*, they waited not opposers, that were wholly *Macedonian*; yea, the wisest and most honest, who regarded only the benefit of their Country, wished better to *Perseus* than to the *Romans*. And of this number *Polybius* the chief of Historians was one: who though he judged the victory of *Perseus*, like to prove hurtful unto *Greece*, yet wished he the *Romans* ill to thrive, that to the *Greeks* might recover perfect liberty: for his endeavours in which course, he was at length tyrannically handled, as shall be shewed hereafter. This considered, it appears, that an extraordinary fear, and not only reverence of the Imperial City, made the *Achaens*, and other Estates of *Greece*, thus conformable to the *Romans*. The occasion of this their fear, may be justly imputed unto the timorous demeanor of *Perseus* himself. He had undertaken a war, whereof the benefit should redound, not only to his own Kingdome, but unto all that were oppressed by the *Romans*. Yet no sooner were some few companies brought over-sea, to make a countenance of meaning somewhat against him, than he began to speak the enemy faire, and sue for Peace at *Rome*. Since therefore it was known, that every smal thing would serve to terrifie him: and consequently, that it should at all times be in the *Romans* power, by

Polyb. Leg. 7.

by giving him any tolerable conditions of peace, to take revenge at leisure upon those which had assisted him: little cause was there why any should adventure to partake with him. He made indeed a great noise; leading about his army; taking by force or composition some few Towns, and soliciting all to joyn with him. But wise men could not be so beguiled. For at the same time, he sought all means of pacification: and to that end, made humble suit unto the *Roman* Embassadors. *Q. Martins*, the chief of those Embassadors, and a man of more fineness in cunning than was usual among the *Romans*, made shew of inclination to the Kings desire; and gave out such comfortable words, that the King entreated, and obtained a meeting at the River *Peneus*. There did *Martius* very gently rebuke the King, and charge him with those crimes that are before mentioned. Where though *Perseus* made none other answer, than the same which they could have made for him, yet the Embassadors, and especially *Martius*, took it in good part, as therewith satisfied: and advised him to give the like satisfaction to the Senate. That this might conveniently be done, a truce was agreed upon. Thus had *Martius* his desire; which was, to make the King lose time. For *Perseus* had all things then in readines, and might have done much, ere the *Roman* Army could have been in *Greece*. But by the interposition of this truce, he no way increased his forces; he suffered a most convenient season, of winning upon the enemy to slip away; and obtained in recompence nothing else, than leisure and vaine hope. Yet was he pleased herewith, as it had bin with some victory: publishing a copy of the disputation between him and the *Romans*, whereby he gave men to understand, how much he had the better, and what great hope there was of peace. He sent Embassadors also to the *Rhodians*, of whose good will to him he was best perswaded; not only to let them know how much he was superiour in cause; but to intreat them, that they would take upon them, as Moderators, to compound the differences between him and the *Romans*, if perhaps, notwithstanding the goodness of his cause, he should be denied peace. These were poor helps. For hereby it appeared, that his late standing upon point of Honour, was no better than meervanity, his own safety being the utmost of his ambition. This his fearfulness might seem excusable, and the blame thereof to appertaine unto the *Greeks*, who deceived his expectation, by being wanting to him in time of a necessity, that was partly 30 their own: had it not been his office, who took upon him as their Champion, to give such a manly beginning to the war, as might encourage all others to follow him. But his timorous quality being found, men grew daily more and more averse from him, and he had many stout partizans, desired him not to crave any thing at their hands, in which they might seem to do against the good liking of the *Romans*. The *Bacotians* also, who had entered of late into a strict society with the *Macedonians*; renounced it now, and made the like with the *Romans*: to whom further, in a fort, they yielded themselves as vassals. Neither was *Martius* contented to accept their submission under a general form; but caused their several Towns to make covenant apart, each for it self: to the end, that be- 40 ing thus distracted into many little Common-weales, they might not (were they never so desirous to rebel) have such force to do hurt, as when they agreed, and were incorporated in one, under the Citie of *Thebes*. This work, of separating the *Bacotians* from *Thebes* their head, was more than *Aegileus* could effect, or *Epaminondas* would suffer, then when all *Greece* followed the *Lacedemonians*. So far more available to *Thebes*, being destitute of help from abroad, was the virtue of *Epaminondas* and a few brave Citizens, than was the society with King *Perseus*, against a number not so great as followed the *Lacedemonians*.

*Martius* brought this to effect, whilst the King sat still, as being bound by the truce: and having done this, he returned to the City; where vaunting what he had wrought by 50 his craft, he was commended, and (though some reproved it as dishonest) employed againe by the Senate, with commission to deale as he should think expedient. Touching the Embassadors which *Perseus* had sent, audience was given to them, for that they should not plainly see how their master was deluded: but neither excuse, nor intreaty, would serve their turn: the Senate being resolved before hand what to do. It was enough that they were admitted into the City, and had thirty daies respite allowed them to depart out of *Italy*: whereas they, who came last on the same errand, did their message without the wals, in the Temple of *Bellona* (the usual place of giving audience to open

open enemies, or to such Commanders, as might not, by reason of some custome enter the City) and had only the short warning of eleven daies, to be gone out of *Italy*. Neither did this poor courtesie serve alone to hide the craft of *Martius*, as if he had meant none other than good earnest: but it was a likely mean, both to keep a long while from *Perseus* the knowledge of his businesse, and to stagger his resolution, when he should need it most firm.

And accordingly it fell out, For *Licinius* the *Roman* Consul was at *Apollonia*, in a manner as soon, as the *Macedonian* Embassadors were with their King at *Pella*, Which, though it were enough to have rouzed *Perseus*, and have made him lay aside all coward- 10 ly hope of getting pardon, yet was he content to deliberate a while, Whether it were not better to offer himself tributary to the *Romans*, and to redeem their good will with some part of his Kingdome, that so he might enjoy the rest; than to put all at once to hazard. But finally, the stoutest counsell prevailed; which also was the wisest, and so would have proved, had it been stoutly and wisely followed. He now began, as if the war had not begun untill now, to do what should have been done long afore. He caused all his forces to be drawn together; and appointed their Rendezvous at *Citium*, a Town in *Macedon*. All being in readinesse, he did royall sacrifice; with an hun- 20 dred beasts, to I know not what *Minerva*, that was peculiarly honoured in his Country: he found consisting of nine and thirty thousand foot, and four thousand horse, where- of about twelve thousand foot, and a thousand horse were strangers, of sundry nations, most part *Thracians*; the rest of his own *Macedonians*. These he animated with lively speeches; laying before them the glory of their ancestors, the insolency of the *Romans*, the goodness of his cause, the greatness of his provisions, and the many advan- 30 tages which they had of the Enemy, especially in numbers. They answered him cheer- fully, with loud acclamations, and bade him be of good courage. From all cities of *Macedon* there came likewise messengers, offering to help him with money and victuals, according to their severall abilities. He gave them thanks: but answered, That his own provisions would abundantly suffice, willing them only to furnish him with carts, for his engines and munition.

Out of his own Kingdome he issued forth into *Thessaly*: knowing that the *Romans* were to pass through that Countrey, in their journey towards him. Some Towns of *Thessaly* opened their gates unto him, without making offer to defend themselves; some he balked, thinking them too strong or well manned; and some he won by force. Of these last was *Nyle*, a Town thought impregnable, and therefore, not more stoutly than proudly defended by the inhabitants, who gave contumelious language to the assaillants. It was taken by reason of a fall; which the Townsmen rashly made, and being driven 40 back, received the *Macedonians*, that entred pell mell with them at the gate. All cruelty of war was practised here: to the greater terror of the obstinate. So *Velasia* and *Con- ossa*, (townes of much importance, especially *Connus*, which stood in the straights of *ossa*, leading into *Tempe*) yielded at the first. Having well fortified this passage, the King marched onwards to *Sicurius*, a towne seated on the foot of mount *ossa*; where he rested a while, expecting news of the Enemy.

*Licinius* the Consul brought with him only two *Roman* Legions: being promised other strength of auxiliaries, which was thought sufficient. *Eumenes* and *Attalus* his brother came to him in *Thessaly*, with four thousand foot, and a thousand horse. Thither also came, from every part of *Greece*, such aid as the severall Estates could afford, or thought expedient to send: which from the most of them was very little. Of the Kings abroad, *Misauissa* sent thither his son *Misageneus*, with a thousand foot, as ma- 50 ny horse, and two and twenty Elephants. *Ariarathes* the *Cappadocian*, by reason of his affinity with *Eumenes*, was friend to the *Romans*, and had sent to *Rome*: his young son, there to be brought up: yet he did little or nothing in this war; perhaps because *Eumenes* himself began within a while, but when it was too late, to be otherwise advised than he had been in the beginning. *Prusias* was content to be a looker on: as being allied to *Perseus*, and yet fearing the *Romans*. *Antiochus* and *Ptolemy* (though *Ptolemy* was then young, and under Tutors) had businesse of their own; the *Syrian* meaning to invade the *Egyptian*: yet each of them promised help to the *Romans*, which they cared not to perform. *Genusus* the *Illyrian* was inclinable to the *Macedonian*, yet

X x x x x

yet made good countenance to the *Romans*, for fear. It was a pretty trick, wherewith *M. Lucerius*, the *Roman* Admirals brother, served him, for this his counterfeit good will. This King had four and fifty ships, riding in the haven of *Dyrachium*, uncertain to what purpose: all which *Lucerius* took away, after a very kinde sort; making shew to believe, That for none other end than to serve the *Romans*; their good friend *Gentius* had sent thither this fleet, but whatsoever *Gentius* thought in the beginning; he foolishly lost both his Kingdome and himself, in the end of this war; by offering, rather than giving, his help to *Perseus*.

With none other company than what he brought over the sea, *Licinius* came into *Thessaly*: so tyred with a painfull journey, through the mountainous country of *A. 10* *thamania*, which stood in his way from *Epirus*; that if *Perseus* had been ready, attending his descent into the Plains, the *Romans* must needs have taken a great overthrow. He refreshed himself and his wearied army, by the River *Peneus*; where he encamped, attending his auxiliaries, that came in as fast as they could. It was not any slender help, that could enable him to deal with *Perseus*. Therefore he resolved, to abide where he then was, and keep his trenches, until his numbers were sufficiently increased: contenting himself in the mean while, to have gotten quiet entrance into the Country. The Land of *Thessaly*, in which these two armies lay, was better affected to the *Romans*, than any part of *Greece* besides: as having been freed by them from a more heavy yoke of bondage to the *Macedonians*, when there was little hope or expectation of such a benefit. It was generally rich, fruitfull, and abounding in all things needfull to mans life. In the midst of it, but somewhat more to the East, was that beautifull valley of *Tempe*, so exceedingly full of all delights, that the name was often used at large, to signifie the most pleasant and goodly places. This valley of it self was not great; but adding to it those huge mountains *Ossa* and *Olympus* (famous in Poësie) with their Spurs or Branches, by which it was on all sides enclosed; it occupied the better part of *Thessaly*. And this way were the *Romans* to enter into *Macedon*; unless they would make an hungry journey, through the country of the *Dassaretians*; as in the former war with *Philip*, they had long, in vain, attempted to do. *Perseus* therefore had no small advantage, by being master of the straights leading into *Tempe*: though far greater he might have had, if by 30 mis-spending of time he had not lost it. For if in defending the ragged passages of these mountains, he were able to put the *Romans* often to the work; yeato win upon them (for a while) every year more than other, both in strength and reputation: questionless he might have done far greater things, had he seized upon the straights of *Aons*, which his father once kept, and defended all the Country behinde the mountains of *Pindus*. Surely not without extreme difficulty, must the *Romans* have either travelled by land, with all their carriages and impediments, through places wherein was no relief to be found; or else have committed their Armies, and all things thereto needfull, unto the mercy of Seas that were very dangerous; if they would have sought other way into *Macedon*, than through the heart of *Greece*: upon neither of which courses 40 they once devised, notwithstanding any trouble which they found in this present war. It may perhaps be said, that the *Greeks*, and others whom the King must have left on his back, would have made him unable to defend any places too far from his own home. But they were all, excepting the *Thessalians*, better affected now to him, than they had been to his father in the former war. The *Asolians*, upon whom the *Albanians* depended, grew into suspicion with the *Romans* (as we shall finde anon) even as soon as they met with *Perseus*. The *Boeotians*, how politically forever *Marius* had wrought with them, adventured themselves desperately in the *Macedonian* quarrell: what would they have done, if he at first had done his best? The *Rhodi- 50* ans, *Ilyrians*, yea and *Eumenes* himself, after a while began to waver, when they saw things go better with *Perseus*, than they had expected. So that if in stead of discouraging his friends, by suing basely for peace, he had raised their hopes, by any brave performance in the beginning, and increased the number of his well-willers, yea and bought down with money (as he might have done) some of his enemies, and among them, *Eumenes*, who offered for good recompence, to forget his broken head: then might the *Romans* perhaps have bin compelled to forsake their imperious patronage over *Greece*, and to render the liberty, by them given, entire; which otherwise was but imaginary. Such benefit of this war, since it was hoped for afterwards, might with greater reason have bin expected

expected at first, from greater advantages. But as a fearfull company running from their enemies, till some river stay their flight, are there compelled by meer desperation, onto do such acts, as done, while the battell lasted, would have won the victory: so fell it out with *Perseus*. In seeking to avoid the danger of that war, whereof he should have sought the honour, he left his friends that it would have stood by him, and gave them cause to provide for their own safety: yet being overtaken by necessity, he chose rather to set his back to the mountains of *Tempe*, and defend himself with his proper forces, than to be driven into such misery, as was inevitable, if he gave a little further ground. What was performed by him or the *Romans*, all the while that he kept his footing in *Thessaly*, 10 it is hard to shew particularly, for that the history of those things is much perished. Wherefore we must be contented with the sum.

The Consul having no desire to fight, untill such time as all his forces were arrived, kept within his trenches, & lay still encamped by the River of *Peneus*, about three miles from *Larissa*. That which perswaded the Consul to protract the time, did contrariwise incite the King, to put the matter unto a hasty trial. Wherefore he invited the *Romans* into the field; by waisting the land of the *Phereans* their confederates. Finding them patient of this indignity; he grew bold to adventure even unto their trenches: out of which if they issued, it was likely, that his advantage in horse wou'd make the victory his own. At his coming they were troubled; for that it was sudden: yet no way terrified; as knowing themselves to be safely lodged. They sent out a few of King *Eumenes* 20 his horse, and with them some light armed foot, to entertain skirmish. The Captain, and some other of these were slain: but no matter of importance done; for that neither *Licinius*, nor *Eumenes*, found it reasonable to hazard battel. Thus day after day, a while together, *Perseus* continued offering battel: which they still refused. Hereby his boldness much increased; and much more his reputation: to the grief of those who being so far come to make a Conquest, could ill digest the shame, that fell upon them by their enduring these bravadoes. The Town of *Seycurium*, where *Perseus* then lay, was twelve miles from the *Romans*: neither was there any convenient watering in that long march, which used to take up four hours of the morning; but he 30 was faine to bring water along with him in cars, that his men might not be both weary and thirsty when they came to fight. For remedy of these inconveniences, he found out a lodging, seven miles nearer to the enemy: whom he visited the next day by the Sun rising. His coming at such an unusual hour, filled the Camp with tumult: in so much as though he brought with him only his horse and light armature, that were unfit to assail the trenches, yet the Consul thought it necessary, and resolved to give check to his pride. Wherefore he sent forth his brother *C. Licinius*, King *Eumenes*, *Attalus*, and many brave Captains, with all his power of horse, his Velites, and all the rest of his light armature, to try their fortune: he himself remaining in the Camp, with his Legions in readinesse. The honour of this morning, was the *Macedo- 40* nian Kings; for he obtained the victory in a manner entire (though the *Thessalians* made a good retreat) with little losse of his own. But he discovered his weaknesse ere night, by hearkening, as Princes commonly do, to counsel given by one of his own temper. For whereas the *Romans* were in great fear lest he should assault their camp, and to that purpose, upon the first newes of his successe, his Phalanx was brought unto him by the Captains, though unsent for: he nevertheless took it for sound advice, which indeed was timorous and base, To work warily, and moderate his victory; by which means it was said, that either he should get honest conditions of peace, or at leastwise many companions of his fortune. Certainly it was like, that his good fortune would ex- 50 alt the hope and courage of his friends. Yet had it been greater, and had he won the *Roman* Camp, his friends would have been the more, and the bolder. But over-great was his folly, in hoping then for peace: and in suing for it, even when he had the victory, what else did he, than proclaim unto all which would become his partakers, that neither good nor bad fortune should keep him from yielding to the *Romans*, whensoever they would be pleased to accept him? At this time the joy of his victory would admit none of these considerations. He had slain of the *Roman* horse two hundred, and taken of them prisoners the like number. Of their foot he had slain about two thousand: losing of his own no more than twenty horse and forty foot. The *Roman* Camp, after this disaster, was full of heavinesse and fear: it being much doubted that



the enemy would set upon it. *Eumenes* gave counsell to dislodge by night, and remove to a safer place beyond the River *Peneus*. The Consul, though alhamed to professe by so doing, in what fear he stood; yet thought it better to acknowledge the lesse pain, than by standing on proud termes, to draw upon himself a greater calamity. So he passed the River in the dead of the night, and encamped more strongly on the further side. The *Ætolians* were sorely blamed for this losse: as if rather a traiterous meaning, than any true fear, had occasioned their flight, wherein the rest of the *Greeks* followed them. Five of them that were men of especiall mark, had been observed to be the first which turned their backs: an observation likely to cost them dear, at a time of better leisure. As for the *Thessalians*, their vertue was honoured with reward: so as the *Greeks* might learn, by examples of either kinde, that if they would shun indignation, or incur favour, then must they adventure no lesse for their Lords the *Romans*, than gladly they would do for their own liberty. Thus fared it with the Consul and his Army. *Perseus* came the next day to correct the former dayes error, which how great it was, he not untill then found. The *Romans* were gotten into a place of safety; whither they could never have attained, if the King had either pressed his victory, or given better heed to them that night: his light armature alone being sufficient to have routed them whilst they were conveying themselves to the other side of *Peneus*. But it was vain to tell what might have been done, since there was no remedy. The *Romans* were beaten, even the flower of their City, The Gentlemen of *Rome*; out of whom were chosen their Senators, and consequently the Generals themselves, *Prætors*, *Consuls*, and all that bore office or command among them; yea, they were beaten so shamefully, that they stole away by night, and suffered him to gather up the spoils of them without resistance, as yielding themselves overcome. With such brave words did the King set out the glory of his actions; dividing the spoils among his followers. But there was much wanting within him, to have made his honour found. He came nearer to the *Romans*, and encamped at *Mopselus*, a place in the mid-way between *Tempe* and *Larissa*: as if it were his meaning to presse them somewhat harder. Nevertheless he was easily perswaded to use the occasion, which he seemed to have, of obtaining peace. Therefore he sent unto the Consul, and offered to yeeld unto the same Conditions, where his Father had been bound to the *Romans*; if the war might so take end. It were needlesse here again to shew the folly of this his course. Towards the accomplishment of this desired peace, there was in the Consul no greater power than to grant a truce; whilst Embassadors might go to *Rome*: it resting in the Senate and People to approve the conditions and ratifie the league. And of such a truce granted by *Martius*, he had lately found no small discommodity redounding. But *Licinius* dealt plainly, and returned answer, That other hope of peace there was none: save that *Perseus* would yeeld both his Kingdome and person, simply and absolutely, to discretion of the Senate. A manly part it was of *Licinius* to be so resolute in adversity. On the other side, it argued a very faint heart in *Perseus*, that having received an answer so peremptory, he still persisted, making vain offers of greater tribute. Finding that the peace which he sought desired, could not be purchased with money, the King withdrew himself back to *Sycaricum*. There he lay hearkening what the Enemy did; whose forces were well repaired by the coming of *Masagene* the son of *Masaniassa*, with the aide before mentioned. This distance between the King and them, caused the *Romans* to wax the more bold in making their harvest about which businesse they ranged over all the fields. Their carelesse demeanour gave him hope to do some notable exploit: which he attempted, both upon their Camp, and upon those that were abroad. The Camp he thought to have fired on the sudden: but the alarm being taken in good season, he failed in the enterprize. As for the forrageis; he had a good hand upon them, if he could have with-drawn it, and given over in time. But whilst he strove to force a guard, he was visited by the Consul, by whom either in a skirmish of horse, or (for the report is divers) in a great battell, he was overcome. This misadventure, whether great or small, caused *Perseus*, after a few dayes, to fall back into *Macedon*; as being naturally given to fear danger, even where none was; whereby what losse he felt, will appear hereafter. He left all behinde him, save only *Tempe*, weakly guarded, and consequently an easie prey to the *Romans*.

After the Kings departure, *Licinius* went straight unto *Connus*, hoping to have taken

it,

it, and so to have gotten entrance into *Tempe*. But finding the work too hard, he returned back unto the *Perrabians* and others; from whom he won some towns; and among the rest, *Larissa*. There were sundry towns thereabout, bearing the same name of *Larissa*: so that this which the Consul took, may seem not to have belonged unto the *Thessalians*, unless, perhaps, after his victory, *Perseus* did greater acts than we find recorded, and got some part of *Thessaly*.

Of matters happening in *Greece* at this time, it is hard to give a precise account; for that the histories of them are greatly defective. One may think it strange, that the *Bœotians*, whom a *Roman* Embassadour could terrifie, and bring altogether to his own will, should not be afraid of a *Roman* Army, then on foot in *Greece*, and a Navie on their coast. But more strange it is, that the *Thebans*, from whom their dependants were taken by the Art of *Martius*, were more true to *Rome*, than other petty towns, which by that same distraction of the *Bœotians*, became within themselves more absolute, than formerly they had been. The causes hereof were to have been fought among the changes happening in their variable factions: whereof the knowledge is now lost. Some of them rebelled, and were thoroughly punished by *Lucius* the *Roman* Admiral: who got so much by spoyling them, that he would have brought others to rebel in like sort, if by extreme oppression he could have driven them to so far. Neither was *Licinius* the Consul undiligent in the same kinde. What his doings were, after such time as he was at leisure from *Perseus*, I finde no where mentioned. Only this is said in generall, That in the war which he made, he cruelly and covetously demeaned himself.

After the same fashion dealt they, that commanded in the year following; *Hofilius* the Consul, and *Hortensius* the Admiral, or Prætor of the Fleet. *Hofilius* shewed more of his industry, in picking quarrels with the Confederates of *Rome*, than in prosecuting the war against the *Macedonian*. For concerning the *Roman* war upon his Kingdome, after that the Consul had fought passage in vain over certain mountains, *Perseus* seemed, in a manner, free from it. He was troubled indeed on that side which looked towards *Illyria*, by *Ap. Claudius*, whom the Consul sent thither with an Army of four thousand, and who, by levies made upon the Confederates, doubled this his Army. But *Claudius* thinking to have taken *Psiana*, a border town of *Illyria*, by treason, came thither in such carelesse order, that the inhabitants which had made shew of treason, with purpose only to train him into danger, sallied forth upon him; overthrew him, and chased him so far, that hardly he escaped with the fourth part of his company. Yet this town of *Psiana*, shortly after became *Roman*: which howsoever it happened, *Perseus* very soon recovered it, and many other places therewithall: *Corys* a *Thracian* King, securing him on the one side of *Macedon*, and *Cephalus* an *Epirot*, revolted from the *Romans*, on the other. *Perseus* likewise made a painfull journey into *Ætolia*; where he was promised to be admitted into *Stratus*, that was the strongest City in that Region. Of this hope though he were disappointed by those of the *Romans* faction, yet in his return home, he took in *Aperantia*; and shortly heard good newes, that *Ap. Claudius* was again thoroughly beaten by *Glebas*, one of his Lieutenants. Such success had the *Macedonian* war under *Hofilius*. The same Consul offended much the *Greeks*, by the strict inquisition which his Embassadours made into mens affection towards *Rome*. For these Embassadours travelling thorow all the Cities of *Peloponnesus*, gave out speeches tending to shew, That they liked no better of those who sought not by might and main to advance their businesse, than of those which were of the *Macedonian* faction. Their meaning was, to have accused by name, in the Parliament of *Achaia*, *Lyrtius* that worthy Commander, who nobly followed the steps of *Philopater*, and together with him, his son *Polybius*, who soon after was General of the *Achaean* horie, but more notable by that excellent history which he wrote, than by his great employments, which he well and honourably discharged. The sum of the accusation should have been; That these were not hearty friends unto the *Romans*, but such as obtained from raising troubles, more for lack of opportunity than for any love to the common quiet. But since no colour of truth could be found, that might give countenance to such a tale; it was thought better, for the present, to let it alone, & give gentle words; as if all were well. In like manner dealt they among the *Ætolians*: They demanded hostages; and found some in the Council that approved the motion: as also among the

X x x x x 3

tho

the *Macedonians*, there were that entreated to have *Roman* garrisons bestowed in their towns. But neither the one nor the other of these propositions took effect. They of the *Roman* faction, accused not only such as were inclinable to the *Macedonian*, but also the good Patriots, making it no less than a matter of treason to be a *Grecian* in *Greece*. On the contrary side, there wanted not some, who roundly told these pick-thanks of their base flattery, rating them openly, in such sort, that one of them hardly escaped being stoned, even in presence of the Embassadors. Thus was all full of accusations, and exiles: among which the Embassadors carried themselves, as men that could believe none ill; though it were well enough known what they thought. The best was, that an order from the Senate was brought into *Greece*, and published, to this effect: That it should be free for all men, to refuse obedience to any *Roman* Magistrate, imposing any burthen for the present war, unless it were such, as the Senate had likewise thought meet. Of this decree the whole Country was glad: for it was, or seemed, a good remedy of many inconveniences. But they that standing on privilege hereof, refused to fulfill every commandment, were numbered among the Patriots; which in the end of this war proved little better, if not worse, than to have been Traitors. The Senate was driven to set down this order, by reason of many & vehement complaints brought to *Rome*, concerning the wrongs done by *Roman* Magistrates; and especially by the Admirals, *Lucretius* and *Hortensius*. *Lucretius* was condemned in a great sum of money, for the wrongs by him done: highly to the commendation of the *Romans*, in that they loved not to have their subjects oppressed. *Hortensius* being still in office, had warning to amend.

Among the great number of Embassages that came to *Rome* about this time, either to seek redress of injuries, or to offer their services: it is note-worthy, that from *Alabanda*, a town of the lesser *Asia*, there was presented unto the Senate, and well accepted, a most base piece of flattery. These *Alabanders* brought three hundred horsemen targets, and a crown of gold, to bestow upon *Jupiter* in the Capitol. But having a desire to gratifie the *Romans* with some exquisite token of their dutifull obedience, wherein they would be singular, and being not able to reach unto any great performance: they built a Temple unto the town *Rome*, and appointed anniversary games to be celebrated among them, in honour of that goddess. Now who can wonder at the arrogant folly of *Alexander*, *Antigonus*, *Ptolemy*, and the like vain men, that would be thought gods, or at the shameful flattery of such as bestowed upon men, and not the most virtuous of men, divine honours; when he sees a town of houses, wherein powerfull men dwell, worshipped as a goddess; and receiving (without scorn of the givers, or shame of the Present) the title of *Deity*, at the gift of such a rascall City as *Alabanda*?

## §. VII.

Q. *Martius* the *Roman* Consul, with extreme difficulty and danger, enters into *Tempe*. The cowardice of *Perseus* in abandoning *Tempe*. The town of *Dium* quitted by *Martius*, repaired and fortified by the King. The *Romans* attempt many places, with ill success. Their affairs in hard estate. *Martius* a cunning and a bad man. *Polybius* sent Embassador to *Martius* from the *Acheans*. *Polybius* his honest wisdom beneficial to the *Acheans*. King *Eutimenes* grows worse from the *Romans*. *Perseus* negotiates with *Antiochus*, and *Eutimenes*. His fall dealing with *Centius* King of *Illyria*, whom he draws into the *Roman* war. He sends Embassadors to the *Rhodians*; who vainly take upon them to be arbiters between him and the *Romans*. *Perseus* seizes a mighty succour of the *Bastarnae*, by his wretched passion.

**A**FTER two years of the *Macedonian* war, things were further out of tune in *Greece*, than when the war began; which had been thought likely to reform all those Countries, and bring them to what passe the *Romans* desired; as it did in the end. *Perseus* had hitherto the better, and was stronger now, than when he lived in peace. He had enlarged his borders on the *Illyrian* side; his friends in all parts of *Greece*, took courage daily; and his reputation grew such, as caused those that were before wholly *Roman*, to suspect what the issue of the war might prove, and thereupon to become wise for themselves. Contrariwise, *Licinius*, & *Hofilius* the Consuls, had one after the

the other spent their time in vain, seeking way into *Macedon*, and delayed the glorious enterprise of conquest, by many losses received. The *Roman* Admirals had so straitly meant themselves, that many towns even of the best affected to *Rome*, kept them but by force. Generally, the fear was great on the *Roman* side, and the Army much lessened, not only by casualties of war, but by the facility of the Tribunes or Colonels, or else of the Consul himself (for they laid the blame one upon the other) in licensing the souldiers to depart. *Quintius Martius* the new Consul, who succeeded unto *Hofilius*, was to amend all this: which nevertheless was more than he knew how to do; though he brought with him a strong supply of men. He began hardy to set the war on foot, which a long time had slept. And he began the right way, not seeking to force the straights that were surely guarded, but taking pains to climb the mountains which were thought able to forbid all passage over them, without help or need of any custody. The King heard of his approach; and being uncertain what way he meant to take, distributed his own forces, to the defence of all places which might give entrance, or permit assault. But the Consul proceeded in his journey, with hope, either not to be discovered by the Enemy, or to break through all opposition, or at leastwise, to fight on as convenient ground, as they should have that lay to stop him, and at length, if all failed, to make a safe retreat. He sent before him four thousand of his most experienced foot, to discover the waies. Two daies was this company troubled in overcoming the difficulty of no more than fifteen miles: after which they had sight of the Enemy, that lay to deny their passage. They occupied therefore a safe piece of ground, and sent back word to the Consul, where they were, inviting him to hasten unto them: which he did. The *Macedonians* were not a whit dismayed at his arrival, but met him, and fought with him, two or three daies together, each returning to their own Camp at night, with little losse on either side. This bickering was on the narrow ridge of a mountain, which gave scarcely room unto three to march in front. So that very few hands came to be employed: all the rest were beholders. In this case it was impossible to get forwards: yet a shame to return. Wherefore *Martius* took the only course remaining; and indeed the best: Part of his men he left with *Papilius*, to attend upon the *Macedonians*: whilst he, with the rest, sought a compass about, and sought out wayes that never had been troden. Herein he found extreme difficulty: which notwithstanding he overcame. Besides the troubles commonly incident to such journeys, through places unfit for habitation: he was compelled, by labour of hand, to make paths where none were, yea, where Nature might seem to have intended, that none should be. So steep he found the descent of the mountains, in this way which he took: that of seven miles, which they travelled the first day, his men were compelled, for the more part, to rowle themselves down, as not daring to trust their feet. Neither was this the worst. For they met with rocks, that stood one over another, so upright, and cumbersome to get down, that their Elephants were afraid of that giddy prospect, and casting their governours, made a terrible noise, which affrighted the horses, and bred great confusion. Having therefore gone, or wallowed, four miles of this grievous journey, there was nothing more desired by the souldiers, than that they might be suffered to creep back again, the same way which they had come. But shift was made to let down the Elephants, by a kinde of bridges, like unto falling draw-bridges whereof the one end was joyned to the edge of the cliffe; the other sustained by two long posts, fastened in the ground below. Upon these two posts, or poles, (which indeed, not being very strong, since it was intended that they should be either cut or broken) were fastened two gaffers, answerable in length to the distance, between the higher and the lower fall: so as the end of one bridge might reach to the beginning of another. These were covered with planks and turfe, that they might seem continent with the ground; so to make the beasts adventurous to go upon them. If there were a plain of any good extent from the foot of a rock, to the next downfall, then might the bridge be shorter. When an Elephant was gone a pretty way, upon one of these, the posts upholding the frame were cut asunder, thereby causing him to sink down, unto the next bridge; whence he was conveyed in like manner, to the third, and onward still to the very bottom. Thus went they down sliding, some on their feet, others on their buttocks, till they came to an even valley. By this it appears, how thoroughly provided the

*Romans* used to be in their journeys, of things needfull in all occasions: as also what insupportable pains they took in this descent, about the conveyance of themselves and all their carriages down the mountains. The next day they rested; staying for *Popilius* and his company, who hardly or perhaps never, should have overtaken them, if the Enemy had followed, and set upon him from aloft. The third and fourth dayes' journeys were like unto the first: save that custom, and the nearness to their wayes end without meeting enemy, caused them the better to endure the labour.

*Perseus* could not be ignorant of the *Romans* coming towards him: since they fought with his men upon the passage, three dayes together; he lying so nigh that he might well hear the noise: Yet was he so possessed with fear; that he neither stirred to help his own men, or to hinder the Consul, nor made any provision for that which might fall out; but as one void of counsell, sat hearkening after the event. Four only passages there were, leading into *Tempe*: the first by *Connus*; which the *Romans* were unable to force: the second and third were the same which *Marius* had attempted in vain, and another like unto it: the last, by the City of *Dium* out of *Macedonia*. All these were sufficiently guarded: and whosoever would seek any other way, must be faine to take such pains as *Marius* had undergone. The entrance by *Dium* was fairer than any of the rest: whereof only the King had benefit; for that his enemies, could not get thither, save through the valley it self, into which they must first pierce, another way. *Dium* stood upon the foot of the huge mountain *Olympus*; about a mile from the sea: of which mile, the River *Helicon* becoming the sea lake, and called *Baphyrus*, took up the one half: the rest being such as might easily have been fortified. Besides all these, there was in the midst of *Tempe*, a passage which ten men might easily keep: where the spurs of the mountains, reaching far into the valley; drew near to the very banks of *Peneus*, a goodly and deep river which ran through it. Wherefore nothing had been more easie, than to make the Consul repent him of his troublesome journey: if *Perseus* could have seen his own advantages. For the *Roman Army* was not only in ill case to fight, after the vexation of that miserable travell: but must needs have either perished for want of victuals, or been enforced to return the same way that he came, if the King had made good the straight of *Dium*. To have returned, and climbed up with their Elephants and carriages, against those rocks, from which, with extreme labour, they could hardly get down, it seems a matter of impossibility: especially considering how the enemy from above their heads, would have beaten upon them; being now aware of the path which they had taken, though he knew it not when they stole away from him. It may therefore be thought strange, that the *Romans* did not rather take their journey into *Macedonia*, from the side of *Illyria*, whence that Kingdome had often been invaded, as lying open on that part: than put themselves to the trouble of breaking into *Tempe*, whence, after that they were arrived, there was no means to escape, without forcing one of those passages, which they despaired to win. But the cowardize of *Perseus* did command the counsell by them followed, as wise. For he no sooner heard that the Enemy was come over the Mountains into *Tempe*; than he fared like one out of his wits; saying, That he was vanquished, and had lost all without battail. Herewithall he began to take out of *Dium*, what he could carry away in haste; and straightwaies abandoned the Town. In the same vehemency of amazement, he sent a strait commandment to *Thessalonica*, that the Arsenal there should be set on fire, and to *Pella*, that his treasures there should be cast into the sea: as if the *Romans* were like presently to be masters of these two Cities. *Nicias*, who was appointed to drown the treasure, performed it as hastily as well as he could: though soon after, his master grew sorry for the losse; and it was all, in a manner, recovered by Divers from under the water. But *Andronicus*, who had charge to set fire on the Kings Arsenal, deferred the execution; foreseeing that repentance might follow: and so he prevented the damage. Whether *Nicias*, for his absolute and blinde obedience, or *Andronicus*, for his careful providence, merited the greater commendation, or more easie pardon, it rested in the King to interpret. The reward of their service, was this. *Perseus* growing ashamed of his mad cowardize, that appeared in this hasty direction; caused them both to be slain. Also those poor men, which had fetcht his treasure out of the Sea by their diving, were payed their wages after the same sort: that so there might be no witness of the Kings base folly. Such end must they fear, who are

prive

prive to dishonourable actions of great Princes. If *Perseus* would have gone surely to work, for the hiding of his fault; then must he so royally have behaved himself, that no man might beleve him to be the author of any unworthy act or counsell. But his vertue was of no such capacity. He thought it enough to lay the blame upon others. And therefore, having called *Hippias* away (the Captain which had stopped the Consul on the top of the mountain) and *Asclepiodatus* from defence of the passages; whereto they were by him appointed: he rated them openly, saying, that they had betrayed unto the Enemy the gates and bars of *Macedonia*. Of this reproach, if they would discharge themselves, by laying it upon him, to whom of right it belonged: then might they have sped as did *Nicias* and *Andronicus*.

The Consul *Marius* had great cause to rejoyce, for that the King so hastily relinquished his possession of *Tempe*, and all the passages leading thereinto: since the *Roman Army*, thus notwithstanding, was hardly able to subsist, for want of victuals. He took *Dium* without resistance, and thence went forward into *Macedonia*: wherein having travelled about a dayes journey, and gotten one town that yielded, he was compelled by meer lack of food for his men, to return back towards *Thessaly*. His fleet came to him, in this time of necessity, well appointed to have holpen him in the war: but having left behinde, at *Magnesi*, the ships of burthen, which carried the provisions. Wherefore it fell out happily, that one of his Lieutenants had been careful to occupy the Castles about *Tempe*, which were forsaken by the *Macedonians*: for by those wayes only might corn be brought into the Army. To meet the foe with this corn, which was most desirously expected, he forsook *Dium*, and went to *Phila*; by which foolish journey (if not worse than foolish) he lost more, than a little the longer fasting had been worth. It is probable that his carts, with all or the most of his store, were lost among the mountains: for otherwife it had been madnesse to put himself on such an enterprise, so slenderly provided, as that without enforcement, or fight of the Enemy, he should be faine to quit it. Howsoever it was: men thought him a coward, or at least a bad man of war: since he thus recoyled and gave off, when it most behooved him to have profured the action.

By understanding the folly, or cowardize of *Marius*; the King recollected himself, understood his own error; sought to hide it by such poor means as have been shewed, and laboured to make what amends he could. He quickly repossessed the town of *Dium*, which he hastily repaired, finding it dismantled by the *Romans*. This done, he encamped strongly by the River of *Empeus*: meaning there to stop the Enemies proceeding all that Summer. Lesse diligence, more timely used, would have been enough, not only to have delivered *Marius* into his hand, who had beguiled him with an idle hope of peace, but to have given him such a noble victory, as might cause the *Romans* to seek a good end of the war upon fair conditions, and not to begin again in haste. Yet this recovery and fortification of *Dium*, was to the Consul an exceeding hinderance. For little or nothing could afterward be done toward the conquest in hand, in all the continuance of his office. Only the town of *Heraclea*, standing on the River of *Peneus*, five miles from *Dium*, was taken by force, or rather by a trick of climbing upon mens heads, somewhat after the manner of our tumblers. But it made such defence as it could, and was not given up for fear. After this, *Marius* did set a bold face towards *Dium*; as if he would have taken it again, and have driven the King further off: though his intent or hope was nothing like so great: his chief care, being to provide for his wintering. He sent the Admirall to make attempt upon the Sea-towns, *Thessalonica*, *Cassandrea*, *Demetrias*, and others. All these were assayed: but in vain. The fields about *Thessalonica* were wasted, and some companies, that sundry times adventured forth of the Town, were still put to the worke. As for the Town it self; there was danger in coming near it, either by land or Sea, by reason of the engines, which shot from the walls, and reached unto the fleet. Wherefore the Admirall letting fall from thence, ran along by *Amis*, and *Antigonae*, (landing near to each of them, and both doing and receiving hurt) untill he came to *Pallente* in the territory of *Cassandrea*. There King *Eumenes* joyned with him, bringing twenty ships of War: and five other were sent thither from King *Prusias*. With this assistance of strength, the Admirall was bold to try his fortune at *Cassandrea*: which was bad. There was a new ditch lately cast by *Perseus*, before the town: which while the *Romans* were filling up, question was made, what became of the earth taken

thence

thence, for that it lay not upon the bank: By this occasion, it was learned, that there were arches in the town-wall filled up with that earth, & covered with one single row of brick. Hence the Admirall gathered hope of making way into the town, by tapping the walls. To this work he appointed such as he thought meetest: giving an alarm to the other side of the town, thereby to shadow his attempt. The breach was soon made. But whilst the Romans were shouting for joy, & ordering themselves for the assault, the Captains within the town perceived what was done, & sallying forth unexpected, gave a fierce charge on the companies that were between the ditch & the wall, of whom they slew about six hundred, and suffered few to escape unwounded. This disaster, and the want of good successe on that part of the town which King *Eumenes* assailed, a supply to the mean while entering the town by sea) caused the siege to break up. *Torone* was the next place which the Admirall thought meet to attempt: and thence likewise he was repelled. Finding this too well manned; he made way towards *Demetrias*: whereinto *Euphranor*, a Macedonian Captain, was gotten before his coming, with such forces, as were not only sufficient to have defended the Town, if the Admirall had laid siege to it, but to keep the land about it from spoil, or at least (as they did) to make the enemy pay dear for all that he there got. This *Euphranor* had taken his journey to *Demetrias*, by *Melibaea*, whither the Consul (that he might not be quite without work) had sent his Lieutenant to besiege it: and by the terror of his appearing suddenly over their heads, caused the besiegers to dislodge in all haste, setting their Camp on fire.

Such fortune attended on the Romans; or rather, so far was their ability short of their Enterprises; ever since their Consul (whether dastardly, or carelessly) most unlike a good Commander, had let go his hold of *Macedon*, by forsaking *Dium*: Yea, it is to be suspected, that some greater harm befell them, or at least, that they were in some greater danger, than is expressed in the broken remaining History of this war. For *Martius* persuaded the *Rhodians* by *Agessipolis* their Ambassador, who came to him at *Heraclia* about other business of less importance, That they should do well to interpose themselves as mediators, and seek to finish the War. Now, although *Polybius* do most probably conjecture, that this was rather a malicious device of *Martius*, craftily seeking to bring the *Rhodians* in danger (as anon it fell out) by their opposing the resolution of the Senate; than that it proceeded from any true fear in him, either of *Persius*, or of *Antiochus*, who had then an Army on foot: yet since he made shew of fear, it is like withall, that somewhat had happened, which might make his fear seem not counterfeited. And so were the *Rhodians* moved to think of him; not only for that the extraordinary courtesie, both of him and of the Admirall, towards their Embassadour, coming from proud natures, did argue diffidence, where there was no ambition to cause it; but much more, for that shortly after the Embassadors of *Persius*, and of *Gentius* the *Illyrian*, did set out their business at *Rhodes*, not more with the strength of a good fleet, which the *Macedonian* had gotten, than with the honour of some victory, wherein he had lately slain great numbers of the Roman horse. Thus much we finde intimated; though at the time, place, or other circumstances of the fight, be not specified. And hereto may be referred, the report of those that were sent from *Rome* to view the estate of *Martius* his Army. For they found the Consul wanting men; the Admiral wanting men; and, for those few that he had, wanting both money and clothes: and *Ap. Claudius* the Prætor, who lay on the frontier of *Illyria*, so unable to invade *Macedon*, that contrariwise, he was in extreme danger, so either he must quickly be sent for thence, or a new army be sent thither to him. Wherefore it may seem, that some blow had been taken on the *Illyrian* side, which made all to halt; or at least, that the Romans with greater loss, than is before spoken of, had been driven from some of the Towns which they besieged.

Now although it were so, that *Martius* in very few of his actions, behaved himself like a man of war: yet in exercise of cunning, which one hath most aptly termed, a crooked or sinister kind of wisdom, he dealt as a craft-master, with a restless working diligence. This indeed neither proved his sufficiency, nor commended his honesty: since thereby he effected nothing to his own benefit; and nevertheless out of envie, vain-glory, or such delight as weak and busie headed men take, in creating inexplicable troubles, he directly made opposition to the good of his Country. At such time as *Persius*, by the successe of his doings against *Hoplus*, had gotten much reputation, and

was

was thought likely to invade *Thessaly*, *Archo*, *Lycortas*, and other good Patriots among the *Achaans*, judged it expedient for their Nation to help the Romans, as in a time of adversity, whom in prosperity they loved not to flatter. Wherefore *Archo* proposed a decree, which passed: That the *Achaans* should lend their whole power into *Thessaly*, and participate with the Romans in all danger. So the Army was levied: and *Polybius*, with others, sent Embassadors unto *Martius*, to certify him thereof, and know his pleasure. *Polybius* found the Consul busie in finding passage through *Tempe* into *Macedon*. He went along with the Army; and awaited the Consul's leisure till they came to *Heraclia*, where finding the time convenient, he presented the Decree, and offered the service of his Nation, whereinsoever it should be commanded. *Martius* took this very kindly; but said, That he needed now no manner of help. Forthwith *Polybius* dispatched home his companions, to signify thus much: tarrying himself behind in the Camp. After a while, word was brought to *Martius*, that *Ap. Claudius* desired, or rather imperiously required, of the *Achaans*, five thousand men; to be sent him into *Epirus*. It was manifest, that *Appius* had need of these men; and that if he were strong in field, he might do notable service, by distracting the forces of *Persius*. But the *Labyrinthian* head of *Martius* could not allow of such plain reason. He called unto him *Polybius*, to whom he declared, that *Appius* had no need of such aide, and therefore would him so return home, and in any wise take order that the men might not be sent, nor the *Achaans* be put to such needless charges. Away went *Polybius*, musing, and unable to resolve, whether it were for love to the *Achaans*, that the Consul was so earnest in this business; or rather for envie, and to hinder *Ap. Claudius* from doing any thing, since himself could do nothing. But when *Polybius* was to deliver his opinion in the Council touching this matter; then found he a new doubt, that more nearly concerned his own self, and those of his party. For as he was sure to incur the great indignation of the Consul, if he should neglect what was given him in charge; so was it manifest on the other side, that the words by *Martius* uttered to him in private, would prove no good warrant for him and his friends, if openly they should refuse to help *Claudius*, alleging that he had no need: In this case therefore, he had recourse unto the Decree of the Senate: which exempted men from necessity, of doing what the Roman Commanders should require, unless by speciall order from the Senate, the same were likewise appointed. So for lack of warrant from the Senate, this demand of *Appius* was referred unto the advice of the Consul: by whom it was sure to be made frustrate. Hereby the *Achaans* were favers, of more than an hundred and twenty Talents: though *Polybius* himself ran into danger of *Appius* his displeasure; and for such honest dealing in his countries behalf, was afterwards rewarded by the Romans with many a long years imprisonment.

Whether it were by the like policy of *Martius*, that King *Eumenes* grew cold in his affection to the Romans; or whether this King began when it was too late, to stand in fear of the fire, which he himself had helped to kindle, would shortly take hold on his own lodging; or whether the regard of money were able to overweigh all other passions: it is hard to determine: since they that had better means to know the truth, have not precisely affirmed any certainty. One report is, that *Eumenes* did not so much as give any help to *Martius*: but coming to have joyned with him, in such friendly manner as he did with the former Consul, was not entertained according to his liking, and thereupon returned home in such anger, that he refused to leave behind him certain horse of the *Gallo-Greeks*, being requested to have done it. If this were true, and that his brother *Antiochus* tarrying behind with the Consul, did the Romans good service: then is the reason apparent, of the hatred, borne afterwards by the Senate to *Eumenes*, and the love to *Antiochus*. But it is more generally received, that *Eumenes* gave a willing ear to *Persius* his desire of accord, for meer desire of gain. And it might well be, that covetousness drew him on, in the course, whereinto indignation first led him. Howsoever it befell, *Persius* caused *Eumenes* to be founded, and found him so tractable, that he was bold to solicit him by an Embassage. The tenour of his advertisements, both to *Eumenes* & *Antiochus*, was: That there could be no perfect love between a King and a free city: that the Romans had quarrell alike to all Kings, though they dealt with no more than one at a time, and used the help of one against another; that *Philip* was oppressed by them, with the help of *Attalus*; *Antiochus*, with the help of *Philip* and *Eumenes*; and now *Persius* assailed,

assailed with help of *Eumenes* and *Phrynas*. Herewith he willed *Eumenes* to consider, that when *Macedon* was taken out of their way, they would be doing with him in *Asia*, which lay next at hand; yea, that already they began to think better of *Phrynas*, than of him. In like sort he admonished *Antiochus*, not to look for any good conclusion of his war with the *Egyptian*, so long as the *Romans* could make him give over, by denouncing their will and pleasure. Finally, he requested both of them, either to compel the *Romans* to surcease from their war upon *Macedon*; or else to hold them as common enemies unto all Kings. *Antiochus* lay far out of the *Romans* way: and therefore was little troubled with such remonstrances. *Eumenes* was more nearly toucht; and as he felt part of this to be true, so had he reason to stand in doubt of the rest. Yet when he should give answer, he began to offer a bargain of peace for money. He thought the *Romans* to be no lesse weary, than *Perseus* was affraid. Wherefore he promised for his own part, That if he might have fifteen hundred Talents for withdrawing his hand from this war, then would he remain a Neuter therein: and that for some greater quantity of money (how much I finde not) he would also bring the *Romans* to descend unto peace; and for assurance of his true meaning herein, he offered to give hostages. *Perseus* liked well to receive the hostages: but not to lay out the money; especially before hand, as was required. He would fain have peace with *Rome*, and not with *Eumenes* only. For procuring of this, he promised to be at any reasonable cost; but he would lay down the money in the Temple at *Samothrace*: whence it should be delivered unto *Eumenes*, after that the peace was fully concluded and ratified. The Isle of *Samothrace* was *Perseus* his own: and therefore *Eumenes* thought the money no nearer to him, being there, than if it remained in *Pella*. Besides, his labour deserved somewhat, howsoever the business might happen to succeed: so that needs he would have part of his wages in *prest*. Thus the two Kings did no more, than lose time; and *Eumenes* grew suspected of the *Romans*, as a Traitor.

After the same manner dealt *Perseus* with King *Gentius* the *Illyrian*. He had attempted this *Illyrian* before; who dealt plainly, and said, That without money he could not stir. Hereunto *Perseus* loved not to hearken; thinking, that his Treasures would serve at the last cast, to deliver him from all his fears. But when the *Romans* had gotten within *Tempe*, then did his fear urge him to prodigality; so as he agreed to pay three hundred Talents which *Gentius* demanded for a recompence. So the bargain was soon made, and pledges on both sides delivered for performance. This was openly done by *Perseus*, to the end that all his Army might have comfort, by such access of strength to their party. Presently upon the bargain made, Embassadors were sent to *Rhodes*, from both *Perseus* and *Gentius*: who desired the *Rhodian*s, to take upon them, as arbitrators, between *Perseus* and the *Romans*; and to bring the war to an end. The *Rhodian*s thinking that *Marius* the Consul was no lesse desirous of peace than the *Macedonian*, arrogantly promised, that they, by their authority, would make peace; wishing the Kings to shew themselves conformable. But the *Roman* Senate, hearing proud words to the same effect, from the *Rhodian* Embassadors; gave an answer as disdainfull, angry, and menacing, as they could devise: so as this vain glory of the *Rhodian*s was thoroughly chastised; and more thoroughly should have been, if their submission had not been as humble, as their folly was proud. Such use of *Gentius* his friendship, made *Perseus*, without laying out one ounce of silver. Now fain he would have hastened this young and rash *Illyrian* to enter with all speed into the War: but then must the money be hastened away. *Pantachus* the *Macedonian* Embassador, who remained with *Gentius* exhorted him daily to begin the War by land and sea, whilst the *Romans* were unprovided. But finding what it was that made all to stay, he sent word to *Perseus*. Hereupon ten Talents were sent to *Pantachus*: who delivered it to the young King, as earnest of that which followed. More followed indeed; and sealed up with the seal of the *Illyrians*; but carried by *Macedonians*, and not too fast. Before this money came into *Illyria*, *Gentius* had layed hands upon two *Roman* Embassadors, and cast them into prison. Which *Perseus* no sooner heard, than he recalled his Treasure-bearers, and sent them with their load to *Pella*; for that now the *Illyrian* was of necessity to make war with the *Romans*, whether he were hired thereto or not.

There came about the same time, through *Illyria*, to the aid of *Perseus*, under one *Clodius* a petty King, ten thousand horse and ten thousand foot of the *Gauls*, which were

were (as *Plutarch* hath it) the *Bastarnæ*. These had before-hand made their bargain, and were to receive present pay at the first. At their entry into the Kingdome, *Perseus* sent one to them; desiring their Captains to come visit him, whom he promised to gratifie with goodly rewards; hoping that the multitude would take good words for payment. But the first question that their Generall asked, was, Whether the King had sent money to give their souldiers their pay in hand, according to his bargain? Hereunto the messenger had not what to answer. Why then (said *Clodius*) tell thy Master, that the *Gauls* will not stir one foot further, untill they have gold; as was agreed, and hostages. *Perseus* hereupon took counsell: if to utter his own opinion before men, or if to wise that they would not contradict him, were to take counsell. He made an invective against the incivility and avarice of the *Bastarnæ*: who came with such numbers, as could not but be dangerous to him and to his Kingdome. Five thousand horse of them he said would be as many as he should need to use; and not so many, that he should need to fear them. It had been well done, if any of his Counsellors would have told him, That there wanted not employment for the whole Army of them, since without any danger to the Kingdome, they might be let out, by the way of *Perræbia*, into *Thessaly*: where wasting the Countrey, and filling themselves with spoil, they should make the *Romans* glad to forsake *Tempe*, even for hunger and all manner of wants therein doing the King notable service, whether they won any victory or not. This, and a great deal more, might have been alledged, if any man had dared to give advice freely. In conclusion, *Antigonus*, the same messenger that had been with them before, was sent again, to let them know the Kings minde. He did his errand; upon which followed a great murmur of those many thousands that had been drawn so far to no purpose. But *Clodius* asked him now again, Whether he had brought the money along with him to pay those five thousand, whom the King would entertain. Hereto when it was perceived that *Antigonus* could make no better answer, than (shifting excuses) the *Bastarnæ* returned presently towards *Danubius*, wasting the neighbour parts of *Thrace*; yet suffering this crafty messenger to escape unhurt: which was more than he could have well expected.

Thus dealt *Perseus*, like a careful Treasurer, and one that would preserve his money for the *Romans*, without diminishing the sum. But of this painfull Office he was very soon discharged by *L. Æmilius Paulus* the new Consul, who in fifteen dayes after his setting forth from *Italy*, brought the kingdome of *Macedon* to that end, for which God had appointed over it a king so foolish and so cowardly.

#### §. VIII.

Of *L. Æmilius Paulus* the Consul. His journey. He forceth *Perseus* to discomf. He will not hazard battell with any disadvantage. Of an Eclipse of the Moon. *Æmilius* his superstition. The battell of *Pydna*. *Perseus* his flight. He forsakes his Kingdome: which hastily yeelds to *Æmilius*. *Perseus* at *Samothrace*. He yeelds himself to the *Roman* Admirall, and is sent prisoner to *Æmilius*.

BY the War of *Macedon*, the *Romans* hitherto had gotten much dishonour. Which, though it were not accompanied with any danger, yet the indignity so moved them, that either they decreed that Province to *L. Æmilius Paulus*, Plutarch in vita Antioch. without putting it, as was otherwise their manner, to the chance of lot; between him and his fellow Consul; or at least were gladder that the lot had cast it upon him, than that so worthy a man was advanced to the dignity of a second Consulship. He refused to propound unto the Senate any thing that concerned his Province: untill by Embassadors, thither sent to view the estate of the War, it was perfectly understood, in what condition both the *Roman* forces, and the *Macedonian*, at the present remained. This being thoroughly known to be such, as hath been already told, the Senate appointed a strong supply, not only to the Consul, but unto the Navie, and likewise to the Army that lay between *Illyria* and *Epirus*; from which *Ap. Claudius* was removed; and *L. Anicius* sent thither in his place. *Æmilius*, before his departure from *Rome*, making an Oration to the People, as was the custome, spake with much gravity and authority. He requested those that thought themselves wise

Y y y y

enough





trariwise, the *Macedonians* howled and made a great noise, as long as the Eclipse lasted: rather perhaps because it was their fashion, than for that they were terrified therewith, as with a prodigie betokening their losse, since their desire to fight was no whit lessened by it. I will not here stand to dispute, Whether such Eclipses do signifie, or cause any alteration in civill affairs; and matte s that have small dependance on natural complexions: for the argument is too large. More worthy of observation it is, how superstition captivates the wisdom of the wisest, where the help of true religion is wanting. *Amphilus*, though he were sufficiently instructed concerning this defect of the Moon, that it was no supernatural thing, nor above the reach of humane understanding, so as he should need to trouble himself with any devout regard thereof: yet could he not refrain from doing his duty to this Moon, and congratulating with sacrifice her delivery, as soon as the thone out bright again: for which he is commended even by *Plutarch*, a sage Philosopher, as a godly and religious man. If *Scipius* perhaps did not assist him in this foolish devotion, yet is it like, that he being a Senator, and one of the Councell for war, was partaker the next morning in a sacrifice done to *Hercules*; which was no lesse foolish. For a great part of the day was vainly consumed, ere *Hercules* could be pleased with any sacrifice, and vouchsafe to shew tokens of good luck in the entrails of the beaks. At length, in the belly of the one and twentieth sacrifice, was found a promise of victory to *Amphilus*: but with condition, That he should not give the onset. *Hercules* was a *Greek*, and partiall, as nearer in alliance to the *Macedonian* than to the *Roman*. Wherefore it had been better to call upon the new goddess, lately canonized at *Alabanda*; or upon *Romulus*, founder of their City, on whom the *Romans* had bestowed his Deity; or (if a God of elder date were more authentick upon *Mars* the Father of *Romulus*, to whom belonged the guidance of military affairs; and who therefore would have limited his favour, with no injunctions contrary to the rules of war.

Now concerning the Battell, *Amphilus* was thoroughly perswaded, that the king meant to abide it: for that otherwise he would not have stayed at *Pydna*, when as, a little before, his leisure served to retire whither he listed, the *Romans* being further off. In regard of this, and perhaps of the tokens appearing in the Sacrifices, the Consul thought that he might wait upon advantage, without making any great haste. Neither was it to be neglected, that the morning Sun was full in the *Romans* faces: which would be much to their hinderance all the forenoon. Since therefore *Perseus* kept his ground, that was commodious for the *Phalanx*, & *Amphilus* sent forth part of his men to bring in Wood and Fodder, there was no likelihood of fighting that day. But about ten of the clock in the morning, a small occasion brought to passe that, which whereto neither of the Generals had over-earnest desire.

A Horse brake loose at watering, which two or three of the *Roman* souldiers followed into the river, wading after him up to the knees. The Kings men lay on the further bank; whence a couple of *Thracians* ran into the Water, to draw this horse over to their own side. These fell to blows, as in a private quarrel; and one of the *Thracians* was slain. His Countreimen seeing this, halted to revenge their fellowes death, and followed those that had slain him over the river. Hereupon company came in to help on each part, until the number grew such, as made it past a fray, and caused both the Armies to be careful of the event. In fine, each of the Generals placed his men in order of battell, accordingly as the manner of his country, & the arms wherewith they served, did require. The ground was a flat level, save that on the sides a few hillocks were raised here and there, whereof each part might take what advantage it could. The *Macedonians* were the greater number, the *Romans* the better souldiers, and better appointed. Both the King and the Consul encouraged their men with lively words: which the present condition could bountifully afford. But the King, having finished his Oration, and sent on his men, withdrew himself into *Pydna*: therto to do sacrifice, as he pretended, unto *Hercules*. It is the lesse marvell, that he durst adventure battell, since he had bethought himself of such a stratageme, whereby to save his own person. As for *Hercules*, he liked not the sacrifice of a Coward: whose unseasonable devotion could be no better than hypocricie. For he that will pray for a good Harvest, ought also to Plow, Sowe, and Weed his Ground. When therefore the King returned to the battell, he found it no better than lost: and he, in looking to his own safety, caused it to be lost altogether, by beginning the fight.

The

The acts of this day, such as we finde recorded, are, That the *Roman* Elephants could do no manner of good; That the *Macedonian* *Phalanx* did so stoutly presse onwards, and beat off all which came before it, as *Amphilus* was thereat much astonished; that the *Peligan* rushing desperately on the *Phalanx*, were over-borne, many of them slain, and the squadrons following them so discouraged herewith, as they retired apace towards an hill. These were the things that fell out averse to the *Romans*; and which the Consul beholding is said to have rent his coat-armour for grief. If the King with all his power of horse, had in like manner done his devoyre, the victory might have been his own. That which turned the fortune of the battell, was the same which doublese the Consul expected, even from the beginning: the difficulty or almost the impossibility of holding the *Phalanx* long in order. For whilst some of the *Romans* small battalions pressed hard upon one part of it, and others recoyled from it; it was necessary (if the *Macedonians* would follow upon those which were put to the worse) that some files having open way before them, should advance themselves beyond the rest that were held at a stand. This coming so to passe, admonished the Consul what was to be done. The long pikes of the *Macedonians* were of little use, when they were charged in flank by the *Roman* Targettiers; according to the direction given by *Amphilus*, when he saw the front of the enemies great battell become unequal, and the ranks in some places open; by reason of the unequal resistance which they found. Thus was the use of the *Phalanx* proved unavailable against many small squadrons, as it had been formerly in the battell of *Cynosephala*: yea this form of embattailing was found unseizable against the other, by reason, that being not every where alike distressed, it would break off itself; though here were little such inconvenience of ground; as had been at *Cynosephala*.

*Perseus*, when he saw his battell begin to rout, turned his bridle presently, and ran again towards *Pella*. All his horse escaped, in a manner untouched, and a great number followed him; the little harm which they had taken, witnessing the little good service which they had done. As for the poor foot, they were left to the mercy of the Enemy: who slew above twenty thousand of them, though having little cause to be furious, as having lost in that battell only some fourscore, or sixscore men at the most. Some of the foot, escaping from the execution, overtook the King and his company in a wood; where they fell to rayling at the horsemen, calling them cowards, traitors, and such other names; till at length they fell to blows. The King was in doubt lest they had ill meaning to himself: and therefore turned out of the common way, being followed by such as thought it good. The rest of the company dispersed themselves: every one as his own occasions guided him. Of those that kept along with their King, the number began within a while to lessen. For he fell to devising upon whom he might lay the blame of that daies misfortune, which was most due to himself: thereby causing those that knew his nature, to shrink away from him, how they could. At his coming to *Pella*, he found his Pages and household servants; ready to attend him, as they had been wont. But of his great men that had escaped from the battell, there was none appearing in the Court. In this melancholy time, there were two of his Treasurers that had the boldnesse to come to him, and tell him roundly of his faults. But in reward of their unseasonable admonitions, he stabbed them both to death. After this, none whom he sent for would come at him: This boded no good. Wherefore standing in fear, lest they that refused to come at his call, would shortly daie some greater mischief, he stole out of *Pella* by night. Of his friends he had with him only *Evander* (who had been employed to kill *Enmenes* at *Delphy*) and two other. There followed him likewise about 500. *Cretians*, more for love of his money than of him. To these he gave of his plate, as much as was worth about fifty talents, though shortly he confessed them of some part thereof; making shew as if he would have redeemed it; but never paying the money. The third day after the battell he came to *Amphipolis*, where he exhorted the Townes-men to fidelity, with tears: and his own speech being hindered by tears, appointed *Evander* to speak what himself would have uttered. But the *Amphipolitans* made it their chief care to look well to themselves. Upon the first fame of the overthrow, they had emptied their town of two thousand *Thracians* that lay there in garrison: sending them forth under colour of a gainfull employment, and shutting the gates after them. And now to be rid of the King, they plainly

Y y y y y 3

bade

bad *Evander* to be gone. The King hearing this, had no minde to tarry: but embarking himself and the treasure which he had there, in certain vessels that he found in the river *Styrmen*, passed over the Isle of *Samothrace*: where he hoped to live safe, by privilege of the religious Sanctuary therein.

These miserable shifts of the King make it the lesse doubtfull, how all the Kingdome fell into the power of *Amylus*, within so few daies after his victory. *Pydna*, which was nearest at hand, was the last that yielded. About six thousand of the souldiers, that were of sundry Nations, fled out of the battell into that Town; and prepared for defence: the confused rabble of so many strangers hindering all deliberation and consent. *Hippius*, who had kept the passage over *Ossa* against *Martius*, with *Pantauchus*, who had been sent Embassadour to *Gentius* the *Illyrian*, were the first that came in: yielding themselves, and the Town of *Beras*, whither they had retired out of the battell. With the like message came others from *Thessalonica*, from *Pella*, and from all the Towns of *Macedon*, within two dayes: the losse of the head bereaving the whole body of all sense and strength. Neither did they of *Pydna*, stand out any longer, when they knew that the King had forsaken his Country: but opened their gates upon such termes, that the sack of it was granted to the *Roman* Army. *Amylus* sent abroad into the Countrey, such as he thought meetest, to take charge of other Cities: he himself marching towards *Pella*. He found in *Pella* no more than three hundred Talents, the same whereof *Perseus* had lately defrauded the *Illyrian*. But within a very little while he shall have more.

It was soon understood, that *Perseus* had taken Sanctuary in the Temple at *Samothrace*: his own letters to the Consull confirming the report. He sent these letters by persons of such mean condition, that his case was pitied, for that he wanted the service of better men. The scope of this writing was, to desire favour: which though he begged in terms ill becoming a King, yet since the inscription of his Epistle was, *King Perseus to the Consull Paulus*; the Consull, who had taken from him his Kingdome, and would not allow him to retain the Title, refused to make any answer thereunto. So there came other letters, as humble as could be expected: whereby he craved and obtained, that some might be sent to confer with him about matters of his present estate. Nevertheless, in this conference, he was marvellous earnest, that he might be allowed still to retain the name of King. And to this end it was, perhaps, that he had so carefully preserved his Treasure, unto the very last: strutting himself with such vain hopes as these: That the *Romans* would neither violate a Sanctuary, nor yet neglect those great riches in his possession; but compound with him for money, letting him have his desire to live at ease, and to be called King. Yea, it seems that he had indeed, even from the beginning, a desire to live in this Isle of *Samothrace*: both for that in one of his consultations about the War, he was dejected by his friends, from seeking to exchange his Kingdome of *Macedon*, for

Liv. lib. 42.

\* such a paltry Island; and for that he offered to lay up the money which *Eumenes* demanded, in the holy Temple that was there. But he findes it otherwise. They urge him to give place unto necessity, and without more ado, to yield to the discretion and mercy of the people of *Rome*. This is so far against his minde, that the conference breaks off without effect. Presently there arrives at *Samothrace* *Cn. Octavius* the *Roman* Admirall, with his fleet: who assays, as well by terrible threats, as by fair language, to draw the King out of his lurking hole; wherein, for fear of imprisonment, he had now already imprisoned himself. When all would not serve, a question was moved to the *Samothracians*: How they durst pollute their Temple, by receiving into it one that had violated the like holy privilege of Sanctuary, by attempting the murder of King *Eumenes* at *Delphi*. This went to the quick. The *Samothracians*, being now in the power of the *Romans*, take this matter to heart; and send word to the King, that *Evander*, who lives with him in the Temple, is accused of an impious fact, committed at *Delphi*, whereof unless he can clear himself in judgement, he must not be suffered to prophane that holy place, by his abiding in it. The reverence borne to his Majesty, now past, makes them forbear to say, that *Perseus* himself is charged with the same crime. But what will this avail, when the minister of the fact being brought into judgement, shall (as is to be feared) appeach the author: *Perseus* therefore willerth *Evander* to have consideration of the little favour that can be expected at the *Romans*

mans hand; who are like to be presidents and overseers of this judgement: so as it were better to dye valiantly, since none other hope remains, than hope to make good an ill cause; where though he had a good plea, yet it could not help him. Of this motion *Evander* seems to like well: and either kills himself, or hoping to escape thence, by deferring the time as it were to get payson wherewith to end his life, is killed by the Kings commandement. The death of this man, who had stuck to *Perseus* in all times of need, makes all the Kings friends that remained hitherto, to forsake him: so as none are left with him, save his wife and children, with his Pages. It is much to be suspected, that they which leave him upon this occasion, will tell perillous tales, and say, that the King had lost the privilege of this holy Sanctuary, by murdering *Evander* therein. Or if the *Romans* will affirm so much, who shall dare to gainsay them? Since therefore there is nothing but a point of formality, and even that also lyable to dispute, which preserves him from captivity; he purposeth to make an escape, and flye, with his Treasures, unto *Coty* his good friend, into *Thrace*. *Oroandes*, a *Cretian*, lay at *Samothrace* with one ship; who easily was perswaded to wait the King thence. With all secrecy the Kings money, as much as could be so conveyed, was carried aboard by night; and the King himself, with his wife and \* children (if rather it were not true, that he had with him only \* *Philostrate*, in which his eldest son, who was only by adoption, his son, being his \* brother by nature) <sup>Demil.</sup> with much ado got out at a window by a rope, and over a mud wall. At his coming to the Sea-side, he found no *Oroandes* there: the *Cretian* had played a *Cretian* trick, and was gone with the money to his own home. So it began to wax clear day, whilst *Perseus* was searching all along the shoar: who had stayed so long about this, that he might fear to be intercepted ere he could recover the Temple. He ran therefore again towards his lodging: and thinking it not safe to enter it the common way, lest he should be taken, he hid himself in an obscure corner. His Pages missing him, ran up and down making inquiry; till *Ottavius* made Proclamation, That all the Kings Pages, and *Macedonians* whatsoever, abiding with their master in *Samothrace*, should have their lives and liberty, with all to them belonging, which they had either in that Isle, or at home in *Macedon*, conditionally, That they should presently yield themselves to the *Romans*. Hereupon they all came in. Likewise *Ion*, a *Thessalonian*, to whom the King had given the custody of his children, delivered them up to *Ottavius*. Lastly, *Perseus* himself, with his son *Philip*, accusing the gods of *Samothrace*, that had no better protected him, rendered himself and made the *Roman* victory compleat. If he had not trusted in those gods of *Samothrace*, but employed his whole care in the defence of *Macedon*, without other hope of living, than of reigning therein; he might well have brought this war to an happier end. Now, by dividing his cogitations, and pursuing, at once, those contrary hopes of saving his Kingdome by arms, and himself by flight, he is become a spectacle of misery, and one among the number of those Princes, that have bin wretched by their own default. He was presently sent away to *Amylus*; before whom

he fell to the ground so basely, that he seemed thereby to dishonour the victory over himself, as gotten upon one of abject quality, and therefore the lesse to be esteemed. *Amylus* used to him the language of a gentle Victor: blaming him, though mildly, for having, with so hostile a minde, made war upon the *Romans*. Hereto good answer might have been returned by one of better spirit. As for *Perseus*, he answered all with a fearful silence. He was comforted with hope of life, or (as the Consull termed it) almost assistance; for that such was the mercy of the people at *Rome*. After these good words, being invited to the Consuls Table, and respectively entreated, he was committed prisoner to *R. Antius*.

Such end had this *Macedonian* War, after four years continuance: and such end thereof withall had the Kingdome of *Macedon*; the glory whereof, that had sometime filled all parts of the World then known, was now translated unto *Rome*.

## §. IX.

*Gentius, King of the Illyrians, taken by the Romans.*

**A**Bout the same time, and with like celerity, *Anicius* the Roman Prætor, who succeeded unto *App. Claudius*, had the like success against King *Gentius* the *Illyrian*. *Gentius* had an Army of fifteen thousand; with which he was at *Lissus*, ready to assist King *Perseus* as soon as the money should come, whereof he had received only ten Talents. But *Anicius* arrested him on the way, fought with him, overcame him, and drove him into \* *Scodra*. This Town was very celestible by nature, 10 besides the help of fortification; and strongly manned with all the force of *Illyria*; which, assisted with the Kings presence, made it seem impossible to be won, in any not a very long time. Yet *Anicius* was confident in his late victory; and therefore presented his Army before the walls, making countenance to give an assault. The *Illyrians*, that might easily have defended themselves within the Town, would needs issue forth and fight. They were it seems, rather passionate than courageous: for they were beaten; and thereupon forthwith began amazedly to treat about yielding. The King sent Embassadors: by whom, at first, he desired truce for three daies, that he might deliberate concerning his estate. It ill became him, who had laid violent hands on the Roman Embassadors, to have recourse to such meditation. But he thought his own fault pardonable, in as much as hitherto there was no greater harm done by him, than the casting of those Embassadors into prison, where they were still alive. Having obtained three daies respite, he passed up a River, within half a mile of the Roman Camp, into the Lake of *Scodra*, as it were to consult the more privately; though indeed, to hearken whether the report were true, that his brother *Caracantius* was coming to his rescue. Finding that no such help was toward, it is wonder, that he was so foolish as to return into *Scodra*. He sent messengers craving access unto the Prætor before whom having lamented his folly past (which, excepting the dishonesty, was not so great as his folly present) he fell down humbly, and yielded himself to discretion. All the Towns of his kingdom, together with his wife, children, brother, friends, were presently given up. 30 So this war ended in thirty daies: the People of *Rome* not knowing that it was begun, until *Perseus*, one of the Embassadors that had been imprisoned, brought word from *Anicius* how all had passed.

## §. VII.

*How the Romans behaved themselves in Greece and Macedonia after their victory over Perseus.*

**N**OW began the Romans to swell with the pride of their fortune; and to look tyrannically upon those that had been unmannerly toward them before; whilst the war with *Perseus* seemed full of danger. The *Rhodian* Embassadors were still at *Rome*, when the tidings of these victories were brought thither. Wherefore it was thought good to call them into the Senate, and bid them do their errand against *Perseus*. This they performed with a bad grace; saying, that they were sent from *Rhodes* to make an overture of peace; forasmuch as it was thought, that this war was no less grievous to the Romans themselves, than to the *Macedonians* and many others: but that now they were very glad, and in behalf of the Romans did congratulate with the Senate and people of *Rome*, that it was ended much more happily than had been expected. Hereto the Senate made answer; That the *Rhodians* had sent this Embassy to *Rome*, not for love of *Rome*, but in favour of the *Macedonian*; whose partizans they were, and should to be taken. By these threats, and the desire of some (covetous of the charge) to have War proclaimed against *Rhodes*; the Embassadors were so affrighted, that in mourning apparell, as humble suppliants, they went about the City, beseeching all men, especially the great ones, to pardon their indiscretion; and not to prosecute them with vengeance, for some foolish words. This danger of Warre from *Rome* being known at *Rhodes*, all that had been any

any whit averse from the Romans in the late War of *Macedon*, were either taken and condemned, or sent prisoners to *Rome*; excepting some that slew themselves for fear, whose goods also were confiscated. Yet this procured little grace; and little would have done, it old *M. Cato*, a man by nature vehement, had not uttered a milde sentence, and advertised the Senate, That in decrein: war against *Rhodes* they should much dishonour themselves, and make it thought, that \* rather the wealth of that City, which they were greedy to sack; than any just cause, had moved them thereto. This consideration, together with their good deserts in the wars of *Philip* and *Antiochus*, helped well the *Rhodians*: among whom, none of any mark remained alive, save those that had been of the Roman faction. All which notwithstanding, many years passed, ere by importunate suit, they could be admitted into the society of the Romans: a favour which till now they had not esteemed; but thought themselves better without it, as equal friends.

With the like, or greater severity, did the Romans make themselves terrible in all parts of *Greece*. *Amphilus* himself made progresse through the Country; visiting all the famous places therein, as for his pleasure; yet not forgetting to make them understand what power he had over them. More than five hundred of the chief Citizens in *Demetrius* were slain at one time by those of the Roman faction, and with help of the Roman souldiers. Others fled, or were banished, and their goods confiscated. Of which things, 10 when complaint was made to the Consul, the redresse was such, as required not the pains of making supplication. His friends, that is to say, those which betrayed unto the Romans the liberty of their Country, he treated like a King, with excessive cheer; yet so, that he had all things very cheap in his Camp: an easie matter, since no man durst be backward in sending provisions, nor set on them the due price. Embassadors likewise were sent from *Rome*; some, to give order for settling the estate of *Macedon*, towards which they had more particular instruction from the Senate, than was usual in such cases; and some, to visit the affairs of *Greece*. The Kingdom of *Macedon* was set at liberty by *Amphilus* and the Embassadors, his assistants, who had order therefrom from the Senate. But this liberty was such as the Romans used to bestow. The best part of it was, That the 30 Tribute which had been payed unto the Kings, was lessened by half. As for the rest, the Country was divided into four parts, and they forbidden commerce one with the other. All the Nobility were sent captive into *Italy*, with their wives and children, as many as were above fifteen years old. The ancient Lawes of the Country were abrogated; and new given by *Amphilus*. Such mischief the Senate thought it better to do, at the first alteration of things in this Province, and in the time of Conquest, than otherwise to leave any inconvenience that should be worse in the future. But concerning the *Greeks*, that were not subjects to *Rome*, the things done to them could deserve no better name than meer tyranny, yea, and shamelesse perjury; were it not so, that the familiar custome, among Princes and great Estates, of violating Leagues, doth make the 40 Oathes of confederation seem of no validity. The Embassadors that were sent to visit the *Greeks*, called before them all such men of note, from every quarter, as had any way discovered an unserviceable disposition towards the Romans. These they sent to *Rome*; where they were made sure enough. Some of these had sent letters to *Perseus*, which fell at length into the Romans hands; and in that respect, though they were no subjects; yet wanted there not colour, for using them as traytors, or at least as enemies. But since only two men were beleaded, for having been openly on the *Macedonian* side; and since it is confessed, that the good *Patriots* were no less affected in this inquisition, than they that had sold themselves to the King: this manner of proceeding was inexcusable Tyranny. With the *Acheans* these Embassadors were to deal more formally; 50 not so much because that Common-wealth was strong; (though this were to be regarded by them, having no Commission to make or denounce War) and like to prove untractable, if manifest wrong were offered; as for that there appeared no manner of sign, by letters, or otherwise, whereby any one of the *Acheans* could be suspiciously charged to have held correspondence with the *Macedonian*. It was also so, that neither *Callistratus*, nor any of his adherents, had been employed by the Nation, in doing or offering their service to the Romans; but only such as were the best *Patriots*. Yet would not therefore the Embassadors neglect to use the benefit of the time: wherein, since all men trembled for fear of *Rome*, the season served fitly to rank the *Acheans* with the rest. And

And hereto *Callistratus* was very urgent: fearing, and procuring them to fear in behalf of him and his friends, that if some sharp order were not now taken, he and his fellows should be made to pay for their mischievous devices, ere long time passed. So the Embassadors came among the *Acheans*: where one of them, in open assembly of the Nation, spake as *Callistratus* had before instructed him. He said, that some of the chief among them, had with money and other means befriended *Perseus*. This being so, he desired that all such men might be condemned; whom, after sentence given, he would name unto them. After sentence given (cried out the whole assembly) what justice were this? Name them first, and let them answer; which if they cannot well do, we will soon condemn them. Then said the *Roman* boldly, that all their Priests, as many as 10 had led their Armies, were guilty of this crime. If this were true, said *Xenon*, a temperate man, and confident in his innocence, then should I likewise have been friend to *Perseus*: whereof if any man can accuse me, I shall thoroughly answer him, either here presently, or before the Senate at *Rome*. Upon these words of *Xenon* the Embassador said hold, and said that even so it were the best way for him and the rest to purge themselves before the Senate at *Rome*. Then began he to name others, and left not until he had cited above a thousand, willing them to appear and answer before the Senate. This might even be termed the captivity of *Greece*; wherein so many of the honestest and worthiest men were carried from home, for none other cause, than their love unto their Country; to be punished according to the will of those, who could not endure that virtue, and regard of the publick liberty, should dwell together in any of the *Greeks*. At their coming to *Rome*, they were all cast into prison; as men already condemned by the *Acheans*. Many Embassages were sent from *Achaia* (where it is to be wondered, that any such honest care of these innocent men could be remaining: since honesty had been thus punished as a vice, in so many of the worthiest among them) to inform the Senate, that these men were neither condemned by the *Acheans*, nor yet held to be offenders. But instead of better answer, it was pronounced; That the Senate thought it not expedient for the Country, that these men should return into *Achaia*. Neither could any solicitation of the *Acheans*, who never ceased to importune the Senate for their liberty, prevail at all; until after seventeen years, fewer than thirty of them were enlarged; of whom that wise 30 and virtuous man *Polybius* the great Historian, was one. All the rest were either dead in prison, or having made offer to escape, whether upon the way before they came to *Rome*, or whether out of Jaylor, after that they were committed thereto, suffered death as malefactors.

This was a gentle correction, in regard of what was done upon the *Epiriots*. For the Senate being desirous to preserve the *Macedonian* Treasure whole, yet withall, to gratifie the Souldiers, gave order, that the whole Country of *Epirus* should be put to sack. This was a barbarous and horrible cruelty; as also it was performed by *Amynius* with mischievous subtilty. Having taken leave of the *Greeks*, and of the *Macedonians*, with bidding them well to use the liberty bestowed upon them by the people of *Rome*; hee 40 sent unto the *Epiriots* for ten of the principal men out of every City. These he commanded to deliver up all the Gold and Silver which they had; and sent along with them, into every of their Towns, what companies of men he thought convenient, as it were to fetch the money. But he gave secret instructions to the Captains, that upon a certain day by him appointed, they should fall to sack, every one the Town wherein he was sent. Thus in one day were threecore and ten Cities, all confederate with the *Romans*, spoiled by the *Roman* Souldiers; and besides other acts of hostility in a time of peace, a hundred and fifty thousand of that Nation made slaves. It may be granted, that some of the *Epiriots* deserved punishment, as having favoured *Perseus*. But since they among this people, that were thought guilty of this offence; yea, or but coldly affected to the *Romans*, had been already sent into *Italy*, there to receive their due; and since this Nation, in general, was not only at the present in good obedience, but had even in this war done good service to the *Romans*: I hold this act so wicked, that should not believe it, had any one Writer delivered the contrary. But the truth being manifest by consent of all, it is the less marvellous that God was pleased to make *Amynius* childlesse, even in the glory of his triumph, how great soever otherwise his virtues were.

In such manner dealt the *Romans*, after their victory, with the *Greeks* and *Macedonians*.

Ans. How terrible they were to other Kingdomes abroad, it will appear by the efficacy of an Embassage sent from them to *Antiochus*; whereof before we speak, we must say somewhat of *Antiochus* his foregoers, of himself, and of his affairs about which these Embassadors came.

## §. XI.

The war of *Antiochus* upon *Egypt* brought to end by the *Roman* Embassadors.

10 *Antiochus* the Great, after his peace with the *Romans*, did nothing that was memorable in the short time following of his reign and life. He died the six and thirtieth year after he had worn a Crown, and in the seventeenth or eighteenth of *Ptolemy Epiphanes*; while he attempted to rob the Temple of *Bel*, or (according to *Justine*) of *Jupiter*. He left behind him three sons, *Seleucus*, *Philopator*, *Antiochus*. *Epiphanes*, *Demetrius Soter*; and one daughter, *Cleopatra*, whom he had given in marriage to *Ptolemy Epiphanes* King of *Egypt*. *Seleucus*, the fourth of that name, and the eldest of *Antiochus* his sons; reigned in *Syria* twelve years, according to *Eusebius*, *Appian*, and *Eusebius* in *Chron.* *Appian* in *bell. Syr.* *Ant.* 12. c. 35. *Salpustius*; though *Josephus* give him but seven. A Prince, who as he was slothfull by nature, so the great loss which his father *Antiochus* had received, took from him the means of managing any great affair. Of him, about three hundred years before his birth, *Daniel* gave this judgement, *Et stabit in loco ejus vilissimus & indignus decore regio*. Dan. ix. 21. And in his place (speaking of *Antiochus*, the Father of this man) shall start up a vile person, unworthy the honour of a King. Under this *Seleucus*, those things were done which are spoken of *Onias* the high Priest, in these words, and other to the same effect: *What time* 20 *as the holy City was inhabited with all peace, because of the godliness of Onias the Priest, it came to passe, that even the King did honour the place, and garnished the Temple with great gifts. And all that is written in the third Chapter of the second of Maccabees, of Simon of Benjamin, who by Apollonius betrayed the Treasures of the Temple: and of Heliodorus* 30 *at the prayers of Onias; of the Kings death, and of his successeur Antiochus Epiphanes.* It is therefore from the reign of this King, that the books of the *Maccabees* take beginning. Which books seem not to be delivered by one and the same hand. For the first book, although it touch upon *Alexander* the Great, yet it hath nothing else of his story nor of the acts of his successors, till the time of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, the brother & successor of this *Seleucus*, from whom downward to the death of *Simon Maccabaeus* (who died in the hundred threecore & seventeenth year of the *Greeks* in *Syria*) that first book treateth. The Author of the second book, although he take the story somewhat further off by way of a Proem, yet he endeth with the hundred and one and fiftieth year of the *Grecian* reign, and with the death of *Nicanor*, slain by *Judas*: remembering in the fourth 40 Chapter the practice of *Jafon* the brother of *Onias*, who after the death of *Seleucus*, prevailed with *Antiochus Epiphanes*, his successor, for the Priesthood. It is also held by *Josephus*, and other grave Writers, that it was in the time of this *Onias*; that *Arimas* King of the *Spartans* sent Embassadors to the *Jews*, as to their brothers and kinsmen. Which intelligence between them and the *Greeks*, *Jonathan* the brother and successor of *Judas*, remembereth in the Preamble of that Epistle, which he himself directed to the people of *Sparta* by *Numenius* and *Antipater*, his Embassadors, whom he employed at the same time to the Senate of *Rome*, repeating also the former Letters word by word, which *Arimas* had sent to *Onias* the high Priest, whereto *Josephus* adds, that the name of the *Lacedaemonian* Embassador was *Demoteles*, and that the Letters had a square Volume, and 50 were sealed with an Eagle holding a *Tyrant* in her claws.

Now to this *Seleucus*, the fourth of that name, succeeded *Antiochus Epiphanes*, in the hundred and seven and thirtieth year of the *Greeks* in *Syria*. He was the second son of the Great *Antiochus*; and he obtained his kingdom by procuring the death of the King, his brother; which also he usurped from his brothers son.

*Ptolemy Philometor*, his Nephew by his sister *Cleopatra*, being then very young, had been about seven years King of *Egypt*.

*Ptolemy Epiphanes*, the Father of this King *Philometor*, had reigned in *Egypt* four and twenty year, in great quiet, but doing little or nothing that was memorable. *Philip* of



of Macedon, and the great *Antiochus*, had agreed to divide his Kingdome between them, whilst he was a child. But they found such other business to be long with the *Romans*, as made them give over their unjust purpose, especially *Antiochus*, who gave with his daughter in marriage unto this *Ptolemy*, the Provinces of *Celestria*, *Phenice*, and *Judea*, which he had won by his victory over *Scopas*, that was General of the *Egyptian* forces in those parts. Nevertheless, *Ptolemy* adhered to the *Romans*: whereby he lived in the greater security. He left behind him two sons; this *Ptolemy Philometor*, and *Ptolemy Physcon*, with a daughter *Cleopatra*. *Cleopatra* was wife to the elder of her brethren, and after his death to the younger, by whom she was cast off, and her daughter taken in her stead. Such were the marriages of these *Egyptian* Kings.

*Ptolemy Philometor*, so called (that is, the lover of his mother) by a bitter nick-name, because he slew her, fell into hatred with his subjects, and was like to be chased out of his Kingdome, his younger brother being set up against him. *Physcon* having a strong party, got possession of *Alexandria*; and *Philometor* held himself in *Memphis*, craving succour of King *Antiochus* his Uncle. Herof *Antiochus* was glad: who under colour to take upon him the protection of the young Prince, sought by all means possible to possess himself of that Kingdome. He sent *Apollonius* the son of *Mnesibius* Embassadour into *Egypt*, and under colour to assist the Kings Coronation, he gave him instructions to persuade the governors of the young King *Philometor*, to deliver the King his Nephew, which the principall places of that Kingdome, into his hands; pretending an extraordinary care and desire of his Nephews safety and well doing. And the better to answer all arguments to the contrary, he prepared a forcible Army to attend him. Thus came he alongst the coast of *Syria* to *Joppa*, and from thence on the sudden he turned himself towards *Jerusalem*, where, by *Jafon* the Priest, (a Chaplain fit for such a Patron) he was with all pomp and solemnity received into the City. For though lately, in the time of *Seleucus*, the brother and predecessor of *Epiphanes*, that impious Traytor *Simon* of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, Ruler of the Temple, when he would have delivered the treasures thereof to *Apollonius* Governour of *Celestria* and *Phenicia*, was disappointed of his wicked purpose by miracle from heaven; the said *Apollonius* being stricken by the Angell of God, and recovering again at the prayer of *Onias*: yet sufficed not this example to the others from the like ungodly practices. Presently upon the death of *Seleucus*, *Jafon* the brother of *Onias*, seeking to supplant his brother, and to obtain the Priesthood for himself, offered unto the King three hundred and threescore talents of silver, with other rents and sums of money. So he got his desire, though he not long enjoyed it.

This naughty dealing of *Jafon*, and his being over-reached by another in the same kind, calls to mind a by-word taken up among the *Acheans*, when as that mischievous *Euthyrates*, who had been too hard for all worthy and virtuous men, was beaten at his own weapon, by one of his own condition. It went thus:

One fire than other burns more forcibly,  
One Wolfe than other Wolves does bite more sore,  
One Hawk than other Hawks more swift does fly.  
So one more mischievous of men before,  
Callidates, false knave as knave might be,  
Much more Menalcidas more false than he.

And even thus fell it out with *Jafon*: who within three years after was betrayed, and overtaken by *Menelaus* the brother of *Simon*, that for three hundred talents more obtained the Priesthood for himself: *Jafon* thereupon being forced to fly from *Jerusalem*, and to hide himself among the *Ammonites*.

From *Jerusalem* *Antiochus* marched into *Phenicia*, to augment the numbers of his men of war, and to prepare a fleet for his expedition into *Egypt*; with which, and with a mighty army of land-forces, He went about to reign over *Egypt*, that he might have the dominion of two Realmes, and entered *Egypt* with a mighty company; with Chariots and Elephants, with Horsemen, and with a great Navie, and moved war against *Ptolemaeus* King of *Egypt*, but *Ptolemaeus* was afraid of him, and fled; many were wounded to death. He won many strong Cities; and took away the spoils of the Land of *Egypt*. Thus was filled

Prophecy of *Daniel*. He shall enter into the quiet and plentifull Provinces, and he shall do that which his fathers have not done, nor his fathers fathers. Never indeed had any of the Kings of *Syria* so great a victory over the *Egyptians*, nor took from them so great riches. For he gave a notable overthrow to the Captains of *Ptolemy*, between *Pelusiun* and the Hill *Cassius*, after which he entered and sacked the greatest and richest of all the Cities of *Egypt*, *Alexandria* excepted, which he could not force. In conclusion, after that *Antiochus* had smitten *Egypt*, he turned again, and went up towards *Israel* and *Jerusalem* with a mighty people, and entered proudly into the Sanctuary, and took away the golden Altar, and the Candlestick for the light, and all the instruments thereof, and the table of the shew-bread, and the pouring Vessels, and the Bells, and the golden Basins, and the Vail, and the Crowns, and the golden Apparell. He took also the silver, and the gold, and the precious Jewels, and the secret treasures: and when he had taken away all, he departed into his own Land, after he had murdered many men.

It was about the beginning of the Macedonian war that *Antiochus* took in hand this *Egyptian* business. At what time he first laid claime to *Celestria*, justifying his title by the same allegations which his father had made; and stiffly averring, that this Province had not been assigned over to the *Egyptians*, or given in dowrie with *Cleopatra*. Easie it was to approve his right unto that which he had already gotten, when he was pressed him, by severall Embassages, to some good conclusion. But his answer was, that if the *Alexandrians* could be contented to receive their King his Nephew *Philometor*, the elder brother of the *Ptolemies*, then should the war be presently at an end; otherwise not. Yet when he saw, that it was an hard piece of work to take *Alexandria* by force: he thought it better to let the two brothers consume themselves with intestine war than by the terror of his arms, threatening destruction unto both of them, to put into them any desire of coming to agreement. He therefore withdrew his forces for the present; leaving the *Ptolemies* in very weak estate, the younger almost ruined by his invasion; the elder hated and forsaken by his people.

But how weaksoever these *Egyptians* were, their hatred was thought to be so strong, that *Antiochus* might leave them to the prosecution thereof; and follow, at good leisure, his other business at *Jerusalem*, or elsewhere. So after the sack of *Jerusalem*, he rested him a while at *Antioch*, and then made a journey into *Cilicia*, to suppress the Rebellion of the *Thracians* and others in those parts, who had been given, as it were, by way of dowry to a Concubine of the Kings, called *Antiochia*. For Governour of *Syria* in his absence he left one *Andronicus*, a man of great authority about him. In the mean while, *Menelaus* the brother of *Simon*, the same who had thrust *Jafon* out of the Priesthood, and promised the King three hundred talents for an In-come, committing the charge of the Priesthood to his brother *Lyfsmachus*, stole certain Vessels of gold out of the Temple: whereof he presented a part to *Andronicus* the Kings Lieutenant, and sold the rest at *Tyre*, and other Cities adjoining. This he did, as it seemeth, to advance the payment of the three hundred talents promised; the same being now by *Softratus* eagerly demanded. Herof when *Onias* the Priest (formerly dispossessed by *Jafon*) had certain knowledge, being moved with zeal, and detesting the sacrilege of *Menelaus*, he reproved him for it; and fearing his revenge, he withdrew himself into a Sanctuary at *Daphne*.

*Daphne* was a place of delight adjoining as a suburb to *Antioch*. In compass it had about ten miles: wherein were the Temples of *Apollo* and *Diana*, with a Grove, sweet Springs, banqueting places, and the like; which were wholly, in a manner, abused to lust and other such voluptuousnesse. Whether it were well done of *Onias* to commit himself to the protection of *Apollo* and *Diana*, or to claim privilege from the holiness of a ground consecrated to any of the Heavens gods, I will not stand to discourse. Only I say for mine own opinion, that the inconvenience is far lesse, to hold this book as Apocryphall, than to judge this fearful shift which *Onias* (though a virtuous man) made for his life, either commendable or allowable, as the book seems to do. As for this refuge, it could not save the life of the poor old man: for *Menelaus* taking *Andronicus* apart, prayed him to slay *Onias*. So when he came to *Onias*, he commended him to slay him; giving him his right hand with an oath, and persuaded him to come out of the Sanctuary; so he slew him incontinently without any regard of righteousness. Herof

Zzzzz

when

when complaint was made to *Antiochus* after his return out of *Cilicia*. He took away *Andronicus* his garment of purple, and rent his clothes, and commanded him to be led throughout the City; and in the same place where he had committed the wickedness against *Onias*, he was slain as a murderer. In taking revenge of this innocent mans death, I should have thought that this wicked King had once in his life time done Justice. But presently after this, at the suit of one *Ptolemy*, a Traitor to *Ptolemy Philometor*, he condemned innocent men to death, who justly complained against *Menelaus*, and his brother *Lysimachus*, for a second robbing of the Temple, and carrying thence the Vessels of gold remaining. Hereby it is manifest, that he was guided by his own outrageous will, and not by any regard of justice: since he revenged the death of *Onias*, he slew those that were in the same cause with *Onias*; who, had they told their cause, yea, before the *Scythians*, they should have been heard as innocent. By reason of such his unsteadiness, this King was commonly termed *Epimanes*, that is, Mad, in stead of *Epiphanes*, which signifieth Noble, or Illustrious.

After this, *Antiochus* made preparation for a second voyage into *Egypt*, and then were there seen throughout all the City of *Jerusalem*, forty dayes long, horsemens running in the air with robes of gold, and as bands of Spear-men, and as troops of Horsemens set in array, encountering and coursing one against another. Of these prodigious signes, or rather fore-warnings of God, all Histories have delivered us, some more, some lesse. Before the destruction of *Jerusalem* by *Vespasian*, a Star in the form of a sword appeared in the Heavens directly over the city, after which there followed a slaughter like unto this of *Epimanes*, though far greater. In the *Cymbrian* wars, *Pliny* tells us, that Armies were seen fighting in the aire from the morning till the evening.

In the time of Pope *John* the eleventh, a fountain poured out blood in stead of water, in or neer the City of *Genoa*; soon after which the City was taken by the *Saracens*, with great slaughter. Of these and the like prodigious signes, *Vipera* hath collected many, and very remarkable. But this one seemeth to me most memorable, because the most notorious. All men know, that in the Emperour *Nero*, the off-spring of the *Cæsars*, as well naturall as adopted; took end; whereof this notable signe gave warning.

When *Livia* was first married to *Augustus*, an Eagle let fall into her arms a white Hen, holding a Laurell branch in her mouth. *Livia* caused this Hen to be carefully nourished, and the Laurell branch to be planted: of the Hen came a fair increase of white Poultry; and from the little branch there sprang up in time a Grove of Laurell: so that afterwards, in all triumphs, the Conquerours did use to carry in their hands a branch of Bayes taken out of this Grove; and after the triumphs ended, to set it again in the same ground: which branches were observed, when they hapned to wither, to fore-shew the death of those persons who carried them in triumph. And in the last yeer of *Nero*, all the broods of the white Hens died, and the whole Grove of Bayes withered at once. Moreover, the heads of all the *Cæsars* Statues, and the Scepter placed in *Augustus* his hand, were stricken down with lightning. That the Jews did not think such strange signes to be unworthy of regard; it appears by their calling upon God, and praying, that these tokens might turn to good.

Now, as the first voyage of *Antiochus* into *Egypt* was occasioned by discord of the two brethren therein reigning; so was this second Expedition caused by their good agreement. For the elder *Ptolemy* being left in *Memphis*, not strong enough to force his brother, who had defended *Alexandria* against all the power of their Uncle; thought it the best way to seek entrance into that royall City, rather by perswasion than by arms. *Physcon* had not yet forgotten the terror of the former siege: the *Alexandrines*, though they loved not *Philometor*, yet loved they worse to live in scarcity of vituals (which was already great among them, and like to grow extreme) since nothing was brought in from the Country; and the friends of the younger brother saw no likelihood of good issue to be hoped for without reconciliation. These good helps, and above all these, the loving disposition of *Cleopatra*, who then was in *Alexandria*, encouraged *Philometor*, in his purpose. But that which made him earnestly desirous to accomplish it, was the fear wherein he stood of his Uncle. For though *Antiochus* was gone out of *Egypt* with his Army; yet had he left behind him a strong Garrison in *Pelusium*: retaining that City, which was the Key of *Egypt*, to his

owne

own use. This consideration wrought also with *Physcon*, and with those that were about him; so as by the vehement mediation of *Cleopatra* their sister, the two brethren made an end of all quarrels.

When the news of this accord was brought to *Antiochus*, he was greatly enraged: for notwithstanding that he had pretended no other thing than the establishment of the King *Philometor* his Nephew, and a meaning to subject his younger brother unto him, which he gave in answer to all Embassadors; yet he now prepared to make a sharpe warre upon them both. And to this end he presently furnished and sent out his Navy towards *Cyprus*, and drew his land Army into *Calosyria*, ready to enter *Egypt* the 10 Spring following. When he was on his way as far as *Rhinocorri*, he met with *Antiochus* bassadours sent from *Ptolemy*. Their errand was partly to yeeld thanks to *Antiochus* for the establishing of *Philometor* in his Kingdome; partly to beseech him, That he would rather be pleased to signifie what he required to have done in *Egypt*, which should be performed, than to enter it as an enemy with so puissant an Army. But *Antiochus* returned this short answer, That he would neither call back his Fleet, nor withdraw his Army, upon any other condition; than that *Ptolemy* should surrender into his hands, together with the City of *Pelusium*, the whole Territory thereto belonging: and that he should also abandon and leave unto him the Ile of *Cyprus*, with all the right that he had unto either of them, for ever. For answer unto these demands, he set down a day certaine, and a short one. Which being come and past, 30 without any accord made, the Syrian Fleet entred *Nilus*, and recovered as well those places which appertained to *Ptolemy* in *Arabia*, as in *Egypt* it self; for *Memphis*, and all about it, received *Antiochus*, being unable to resist him. The King having now no stop in his way to *Alexandria*, passed on thitherwards by easie journeys.

Of all these troubles past, as well as of the present danger wherein *Egypt* stood, the Romans had notice long ago. But they found, or were contented to finde, little reason for them to intermeddle therein. For it was a civil warre: and wherein *Antiochus* seemed to take part with the juster cause. Yet they gave signification, that it would be much displeasing unto them, to have the Kingdome of *Egypt* taken from the rightful owners. More they could not, or would not do; being troubled with the Persian; and therefore loath to provoke *Antiochus* too far. Nevertheless, the Egyptian Kings being reconciled, and standing joyntly in need of help against their Uncle, who prepared and made open war against them both: it was to be expected, that not only the Romans, but many of the Greeks, as being thereto obliged by notable benefits, should arme in defence of their Kingdome. Rome had been sustained with food from *Egypt*, in the war of *Hannibal*; when *Italie* lying waste, had neither corn nor money wherewith to buy sufficient store. By helpe of the Egyptian had *Aratus* laid the foundation of that greatness, whereto the Achæans attained. And by the like 40 helpe had *Rhodes* been defended against *Demetrius Poliorcetes*. Neither were these friendly turns, which that bountifull house of the *Ptolemies* had done for sundry people abroad; ill followed, or seconded, by other as bad in requital: but with continuall aid abroad confidently for ayde; especially to the *Rhodians* and *Achæans*, who seemed most able to give it effectually. To the Romans *Physcon* and *Cleopatra* had sent, a yeer since: but their Embassadors lay still in Rome. Of the Achæans they desired in particular, that *Lycostratus* the brave warrior might be sent unto them, as General of all the Auxiliaries, and his son *Polybius*, General of the Horse. Hereunto the Achæans readily condescended: and would immediately have made performance, if *Callistratus* had 50 not interposed his mischievous art. He whether seeking occasion to vaunt his sequiousness to the Romans; or much rather envying those noble Captaines whose service the Kings desired, withstood the common voyce; which was, That their Nation should, not with such small numbers as were requested, but with all their power, be ayding unto the *Ptolemies*. For it was not now (he said) convenient time to entangle themselves in any such business, as might make them the less able to yeeld unto the Romans what help soever should be required in the Macedonian war. And in this sentence, he, with those of his faction, obstinately persisted; terrifying others with big words, as it were in behalf of the Romans. But *Polybius* affirmed, that *Martius*

Z z z z z 2

the

the late Consul had signified unto him, that the *Romans* were past all need of help: adding further, that a thousand foot and two hundred horse, might well be spared to the aid of their Benefactors, the *Egyptian* Kings, without disabling their Nation to perform any service to the *Romans*; for as much as the *Achaens* could without trouble, raise thirty or forty thousand Souldiers. All this notwithstanding, the resolution was deferred from one meeting to another; and finally broken by the violence of *Callicrates*. For when it was thought that the Decree should have passed; he brought into the Theater where the Assembly was held, a Messenger with letters from *Martius*: whereby the *Achaens* were desired to conform themselves to the *Roman* Senate; and to labour, as the Senate had done, by sending Embassadors to set *Egypt* in peace. This was an advice against all reason. For the Senate had indeed sent Embassadors to make peace; but as in a time of greater business elsewhere, with such milde words, that nothing was effected. Wherefore it was not likely that the *Achaens* should do any good in the same kinde. Yet *Polypius* and his friends durst not gain-say the *Roman* Council; which had force of an injunction. So the Kings were left in much distress; disappointed of their expectation. But within a while was *Persus* overcome: and then might the Embassadors, sent from the *Roman* Senate, perform as much as any Army could have done.

Audience had been lately given by the Senate, unto those Embassadors of *Physcon* and *Cleopatra*: which having stayed more than a whole year in the City, brought nothing of their business to effect until now. The Embassadors delivered their message in the name of those that had sent them: though it concerned (which perhaps they knew not) *Philometor*, no less than his brother and sister.

In this ambassage of *Ptoleme*, now requesting help from *Rome*, appeared a notable change of his fortune, from such as it had been before three or four years last past. For in the beginning of these his troubles, which began with the *Macedonian* War; either he, or *Eulaus*, or *Lenaus* (upon whom the blame was afterwards laid) which had the government of him, thought his affairs in such good estate, that not only he determined to set upon *Antiochus* for *Calassyria*, but would have interposed himself between the *Romans* and *Persus*, as a competent Arbitrator; though it fell out well, that his Embassador was by a friend perswaded to forget that point of his errand. From these high thoughts he fell on the sudden, by the rebellion of his brother and subjects, to live under protection of the same *Antiochus*. And now at such time as by atonement with his brother and subjects, he might have seemed to stand in no need of such protection, he hath remaining none other help whereby to save both his kingdom & life, than what can be obtained by their intercession which were employed against him. This miserable condition of him, his brother and sister shewed it self, even in the habit of those Embassadors. They were poorly clad; the haire of their heads and beards overgrown, as was their manner in time of affliction; and they carried in their hands branches of Olive. Thus they entered into the Senate, and there fell groveling and prostrate upon the floor. Their garments were not so mean and mournful, nor their looks and countenances so sad and dejected, but that their speech was than either of the other far more lamentable. For having told in what danger their King and Country stood; they made a pitiful and grievous complaint unto the Senate, beseeching them to have compassion of their Estate, and of their Princes, who had always remained friendly & faithful to the *Romans*. They said that the people of *Rome* had so much heretofore favored this *Antiochus* in particular, and were of such account and authority, with all other Kings and Nations; as if they pleased but to send their Embassadors, and let *Antiochus* know that the Senate was offended with his undertaking upon the King their Confederate, then would he presently raise his siege from before *Alexandria*, and with-draw his Army out of *Egypt* into *Syria*. But that if the Senate protracted any time, or used any delays, then should *Ptoleme* and *Cleopatra* be shortly driven out of their Realms, and make repaire to *Rome*, with shameful dishonour to the Senate and people thereof, in that, in the extreame dangers of all their fortunes, they had not vouchsafed to relieve them.

The Lords of the Senate moved with compassion, sent incontinently *C. Popilius Lenus*, *C. Decimius* and *A. Hostilius*, as Embassadors to determine and end the war between those Kings. In commission they had first to find King *Ptoleme*, and then *Antiochus*, and

to let them both understand, that unless they surceased, and gave over Arms, they would take that King no more for a friend to the Senate and people of *Rome*, whom they found obdurate, or using delay. So these *Romans*, together with the *Alexandrine* Embassadors, took their leave, and went onward their way within three dayes after.

Whilest *Popilius* and his fellowes were on their way toward *Egypt*, *Antiochus* had transported his Army over *Lusine*, some forty miles from *Alexandria*. So near was he to the end of his journey, when the *Roman* Embassadors met him. After greeting and salutations at their first encounter, *Antiochus* offered his right hand to *Popilius*; but *Popilius* filled it with a Roll of paper; willing him to read those Mandates of the Senate before he did any thing else. *Antiochus* did so; and having a little while considered of the business, he told *Popilius*, That he would advise with his friends, and then give the Embassadors their answer. But *Popilius*, according to his ordinary blunt manner of speech, which he had by nature, made a Circle about the King with a Rod, which he held in his hand, willing him to make him such an answer as he might report to the Senate, before he moved out of that Circle. The King astonished at this so rude and violent a Commandement, after he had stayed and pawed a while, I will be content (quoth he) to do whatsoever the Senate shall ordain. Then *Popilius* gave unto the King his hand, as to a Friend and Allie of the *Romans*.

Thus *Antiochus* departed out of *Egypt*, without any good issue of his costly Expedition; even in such manner as \* *Daniel* had prophesied long before: yea, fulfilling every particular circumstance, both of returning, and of doing mischief to *Jerusalem* after his return, like as if these things had rather been historified than foretold by the Prophet. As for the *Roman* Embassadors, they stayed a while, and sealed the kingdom of *Egypt*, leaving it unto the elder brother, and appointed the younger to reign over *Cyrene*. This done, they departed towards *Cyprus*; which they left, as it had been, in the power of the *Egyptian*, having first sent away *Antiochus* Fleet, which had already given an overthrow to the *Egyptian* ships.

## §. XII.

How the *Romans* were dreadfull to all Kings. Their demeanour towards *Eumenes*, *Prusias*, *Maianissa*, and *Cotys*. The end of *Persus* and his children. The instability of Kingly Estates. The Triumphs of *Paulus*, *Anicius*, and *Octavius*. With the Conclusion of the Work.

BY this peremptory demeanour of *Popilius*, in doing his Message, and by the ready obedience of King *Antiochus* to the will of the Senate; we may perceive how terrible the *Romans* were grown, through their conquest of *Macedon*. The same *Popilius* had bin well contented, a year before this, to lay aside the roughness of his natural condition, & to give good language to the *Achaens* and *Atolians*, when he went Embassador to those people of *Greece*, that were of far lesse power than the King *Antiochus*. Likewise, *Antiochus* had with good words, and no more than good words, dismissed other Embassadors which came from *Rome*, in such sort, as they complained not, much lesse used any menacing termes, though he performed nothing of their request. But now the case was altered. So found other Kings as well as *Antiochus*.

*Eumenes* sent to *Rome* his brother *Attalus*, to gratulate the victory over *Persus*, and to crave help or countenance of the Senate against the *Gallo-greeks*, which molested him. Very welcome was *Attalus*, and lovingly entertained by most of the Senators: who bad him be confident, and request of the Senate his brothers kingdom for himself; for it should surely be given him. These hopefull promises tickled *Attalus* with such ambition, that he either approved, or seemed to approve the motion. But his honest nature was soon reclaimed by the faithfull counsell of *Siratus* a *Phyrtian*, whom *Eumenes* had sent to *Rome* of purpose to keep his brother upright. So, when he came into the Senate, he delivered the errand about which he had bin sent, recounting his own services done to the *Romans* in the late war, \* where-withall he forgot not to make of his brother as good

mention as he could : and finally, requested, That the Towns of *Enus* and *Maronea* might be bestowed upon himself. \* By his omitting to sue for his brothers Kingdom, the Senate conceived opinion, that he meant to crave another day of audience for that business alone. Wherefore to make him understand how gracious he was, they not only granted all his desire, but in the presents which they gave unto him (as was their custom to Embassadors that came with an acceptable message) they used singular magnificence. Nevertheless *Attalus* took no notice of their meaning, but went his way, contented with what they had already granted. This did so highly displease the Senate, that whilest he was yet in *Italy*, they gave order for the liberty of *Enus* and *Maronea*: thereby making uneffectual their promise; which otherwise they could not, without shame, revoke. And as for the *Gallo-Greeks*, which were about to invade the Kingdom of *Perseus*; they sent Embassadors to them, with such instructions, as rather encouraged than hindered them in their purpose. The displeasure of the Senate being so manifest, *Eumenes* thought it worthy of his labour to make another voyage to *Rome*. He might well blame the folly of his second voyage thither, for this necessity of the third: since, by his malice to *Perseus*, he had laid open unto these ambitious Potentates the way to his own doors. No sooner was he come into *Italy*, than the Senate was ready to send him going. It was not thought expedient to use him as an enemy, that came to visit them in love: neither could they, in so doing, have avoided the note of singular inconstancy: and to entertain him as a friend, was more then their hatred to him, for his ingratitude, 20 as they deemed it, would permit. Wherefore they made a Decree, That no King should be suffered to come to *Rome*; and by virtue thereof sent him home, without expence of much farther complement.

*Prusias* King of *Bithynia* had been at *Rome* somewhat before; where he was welcomed after a better fashion. He had learned to behave himself as humbly as the proud *Romans* could expect or desire. For, entering into the Senate, he lay down, and kissed the threshold, calling the *Fathers* his gods and saviours; as also he used to wear a Cap, after the manner of slaves newly manumitted, professing himself an enfranchised bondman of the people of *Rome*. He was indeed naturally a slave, and one that by such abject flattery kept himself safe, though doing other wise greater mischief than any wherewith *Perseus* had been charged. His errand was, besides matter of complement, to commend unto the Senate the care of his son *Nicomedes*, whom he brought with him to *Rome*, there to receive education. Further petition he made to have some Towns added to his kingdom: whereto, because the grant would have bin unjust, he received a cold answer. But concerning the Wardship of his son, it was undertaken by the Senate: which, vaunting of the pleasure lately done to *Egypt*, in freeing it from *Antiochus*, willed him thereby to consider, what effectually protection the *Romans* gave unto the children of Kings, that were to their patronage commended.

But above all other Kings, *Masaniassa* held his credit with the *Romans* good. His quarrels were endless with the *Carthaginians*: which made the friendship of the *Romans* to 40 him the more assured. In all controversies they gave judgement on his side: and whereas he had invaded the Countrey of *Emporia*, holding the Lands, but unable to win the Towns, the *Romans* (though at first they could finde no pretext, whereby to countenance him in this oppression) compelled finally the *Carthaginians* both to let go all their hold, and to pay five hundred Talents to the *Numidian*, for having hindered him of his due so long. Now indeed had *Rome* good leisure to devise upon the ruine of *Carthage*: after which, the race of *Masaniassa* himself was shortly by them rooted up. But hereof the old King never dreamed. He sent to *Rome* one of his sons, to congratulate the victory over *Perseus*; and offered to come thither himself, there to sacrifice for joy unto *Jupiter* in the *Capitol*. His good will was lovingly accepted; his son rewarded; and he entertained to stay at home.

*Cato* the *Thracian* sent Embassadors to excuse himself touching the aide by him given to *Perseus*, for that the *Macedonian* had him bound by hostages; and to intreat, That his son, which was taken with the children of *Perseus*, might be set at liberty, for convenient ransom. His excuse was not taken; since he had voluntarily obliged himself to *Perseus*, by giving hostages without necessity: Yet was his sonne given back to him ransom-free; with admonition, to carry himself better toward the

Romans

*Romans* in time following. His Kingdom lay between *Macedon* and some barbarous Nations; in which respect, it was good to hold him in fair terms.

As for those unhappy Kings *Perseus* and *Gentius*, they were led through *Rome*, with their children and friends, in the Triumphs of *Emilius* and *Anicius*. *Perseus* had often made suit to *Emilius*, that he might not be put to such disgrace: but he still received one scornfull answer, That it lay in his own power to prevent it; whereby was meant, that he might kill himself. And surely, had he not hoped for greater mercy than he found, he would rather have sought his death in *Macedon*, than to have bin beholding to the courtesie of his insolent enemies for a wretched life. The issue of the *Roman* clemency, wherof *Emilius* had given him hope, was no better than this: After that he, and his fellow King, had been led in chains through the streets, before the Chariots of their triumphing Victors, they were committed to prison, wherein they remained without hope of release. It was the manner, that when the Triumpher turned his Chariot up towards the *Capitol*, there to do sacrifice, he should command the captives to be had away to prison, and there put to death: so as the honour of the Vanquisher, and misery of those that were overcome, might be both together at the utmost. This last sentence of death was remitted unto *Perseus*: yet so, that he had little joy of his life; but either famished himself, or (for it is diversly reported) was kept watching perforce by those that had him in custody; and so dyed for want of sleep. Of his sons, two died; it is uncertain 10 how. The youngest called *Alexander* (only in name like unto the Great, though destined sometimes perhaps by his father, unto the fortunes of the Great) became a Joyner, or Turner, or, at his best preferment, a Scribe under the *Roman* Officers. In such poverty ended the Royall house of *Macedon*: and it ended on the sudden; though some eight-score years after the death of that Monarch, unto whose ambition this whole Earth seemed too narrow.

If *Perseus* had known it before, that his own son should one day be compelled to earn his living by handi-work, in a painful Occupation; it is like, that he would not, as in a wantonnesse of Sovereignty have commanded those poor men to be slain, which had recovered his treasures out of the sea, by their skill in the feat of diving. He would 30 rather have been very gentle, and would have considered, that the greatest oppressors, and the most undertrodden wretches, are all subject unto the One high Power, governing all alike with absolute command. But such is our unhappinesse: in stead of that blessed counsel, *Do as ye would be done unto*, a sentence teaching all moderation, and pointing out the way to felicity; we entertain that arrogant thought, *I will be like to the most High*: that is, *I will do what shall please my self*. One hath said truly:

— *vv* — *Et qui nolunt occidere quemquam  
Posse volunt.*

Juven. Sat. 10.

Even they that have no murders will,  
Would have it in their power to kill.

All, or the most have a vain desire of ability to do evil without controll: which is a dangerous temptation unto the performance. God, who best can judge what is expedient, hath granted such power to very few: among whom also, very few there are, that use it not to their own hurt. For who sees not that a Prince, by racking his Sovereign authority to the utmost extent, enableth (besides the danger to his own person) some one of his own sons or nephews to root up all his progeny? Shall not many excellent Princes, notwithstanding their brotherhood, or other nearnesse in blood, be driven to slatter the Wife, the Minion, or perhaps the Harlot that governs one, the most unworthy of his whole house, yet reigning over all the untimely death of many Princes 30 which could not humble themselves to such flattery; and the common practice of the *Turkish* Emperours to murder all their brethren, without expecting till they offend, are too good proofs hereof. Hereunto may be added, that the heir of the same *Roger Mortimer*, who murdered most traitorously and barbarously King *Edward* the second; was, by reason of a marriage, proclaimed, in time not long after following, heir apparent to the Crown of *England*: which had he obtained, then had all the power of *Edward* fallen into the race of his mortall enemy, to exercise the same upon the Line of that unhappy King. Such examples of the instability whereto all mortall affairs are subject,

\* The true Law  
of free Monar-  
chie.

Chap. 3. §. 4.

subject; as they teach moderation, and admonish the transitory gods of Kingdoms, not to authorize by wicked precedents the evil that may fall on their own posterity: so do they necessarily make us understand, how happy that Country is, which hath obtained a King able to conceive and teach, That \* *God is the forest and sharpest Schoolemaster that can be devised, for such Kings, as think this world ordained for them, without contrivement to turn it upside-down at their pleasure.*

Now concerning the Triumph of *L. Aemilius Paulus*, it was in all points like unto that of *T. Quintius Flaminius*: though far more glorious, in regard of the Kings own person, that was led along therein, as part of his own spoils; and in regard likewise both of the Conquest and of the Booty. So great was the quantity of Gold and Silver carried by *Paulus* into the *Roman* Treasury, that from thenceforth, untill the civil wars which followed upon the death of *Julius Caesar*, the Estate had no need to burthen it self with any Tribute. Yet was this noble Triumph likely to have been hindered by the soldiers, who grudged at their General, for not having dealt more bountifully with them. But the Princes of the Senate over-ruled the People and Soldiers herein, and brought them to reason by severe exhortations. Thus *Paulus* enjoyed as much honour of his victory as men could give. Nevertheless, it pleased God to take away from him his two remaining sons, that were not given in adoption: of which, the one dyed five dayes before the Triumph; the other three dayes after it. This losse he bore wisely: and told the People, That he hoped to see the Common-wealth flourish in a continuance of prosperity; since the joy of his victory was requited with his own private calamity, in stead of the publique.

About the same time, *Octavius* the Admirall, who had brought *Perseus* out of *Samothrace*: and *Anicius* the Prætor, who had conquered *Illyria*, and taken King *Genius* prisoner, made their severall triumphs. The glory of which magnificent spectacles, together with the confluence of Embassages from all parts, and Kings, either visiting the Imperiall City, or offering to visit her, and do their duties in person, were enow to say unto *Rome*, *Sæmpe superbiam, Take upon thee the Majesty that thy deserts have purchased.*

BY this which we have already set down, is seen the beginning and end of the three first Monarchies of the world; whereof the Founders and Erectors thought, that they could never have ended. That of *Rome* which made the fourth, was also at this time almost at the highest. We have left it flourishing in the middle of the field; having rooted up, or cut down all that kept it from the eyes and admiration of the world. But after some continuance, it shall begin to lose the beauty it had; the storms of ambition shall beat her great boughes and branches one against another; her leaves shall fall off; her limbs wither, and a rabble of barbarous Nations enter the field, and cut her down.

Now these great Kings, and conquering Nations, have bin the subject of those many Histories, which have been preserved, and yet remain among us; and withall of so many tragical Poets, as in the persons of powerfull Princes, and other mighty men have complained against infidelity, Time, Destiny, and most of all against the Variable success of worldly things, and Instability of Fortune. To these undertakings, these great Lords of the world have been stirred up, rather by the desire of Fame, which ploweth up the Aire, and soweth in the Winde; than by the affection of bearing rule, which draweth after it so much vexation and so many cares. And that this is true, the good advice of *Cimon* to *Pyrrhus* proves. And certainly, as Fame hath often been dangerous to the living, so is it to the dead of no use at all; because separate from knowledge. Which were it otherwise, and the extreme ill bargain of buying this lasting discourse, understood by them which are dissolved; they themselves would then rather have wished, to have stoln out of the world without noyse, than to be put in minde, that they have purchased the report of their actions in the world, by rapine, oppression, and cruelty: by giving in spoyle the innocent and labouring soul to the idle and insolent, and by having emptied the Cities of the world of their ancient Inhabitants, and filled them again with so many and so variable sorts of sorrowes.

Since the fall of the *Roman* Empire (omitting that of the *Germanes*, which had neither greatness nor continuance) there hath been no State fearfull in the East, but that of

of the *Turk*: nor in the West any Prince that hath spread his wings far over his nest, but the *Spaniard*; who since the time that *Ferdinand* expelled the *Moors* out of *Granada*, have made many attempts to make themselves Masters of all *Europe*. And it is true, that by the treasures of both Indies, & by the many kingdoms which they possess in *Europe*; they are at this day the most powerful. But as the *Turke* is now counterpoised by the *Persian*, so in stead of so many Millions as have been spent by the *English*, *French*, and *Netherlands* in a defensive war, and in diversions against them, it is easie to demonstrate, that with the charge of two hundred thousand pound continued but for two yeeres, or three at the most, they may not only be persuaded to live in peace, but all their swelling and overflowing streams may be brought back into their natural channels and old banks. These two Nations, I say, are at this day the most eminent, and to be regarded; the one seeking to root out the Christian Religion altogether, the other the truth and sincere profession thereof; the one to joyn all *Europe* to *Asia*, the other the rest of all *Europe* to *Spain*.

For the rest, if we seek a reason of the succession and continuance of this boundless ambition in mortal men, we may add to that which hath been already said; That the Kings and Princes of the world have alwayes laid before them the actions, but not the ends of those great Ones which preceded them. They are always transported with the glory of the one, but they never minde the misery of the other, till they finde the experience in themselves. They neglect the advice of God, while they enjoy life, or hope it; but they follow the counsel of Death, upon his first approach. It is he that puts into man all the wisdom of the world, without speaking a word; which God with all the words of his Law, promises, or threats, doth infuse. Death, which hateth and destroyeth man, is believed; God, which hath made him, and loves him, is alwayes deferred. I have considered (saith *Salomon*) all the works that are under the Sun, and behold, all is vanity and vexation of spirit: but who believes it till Death tells it us? It was Death, which opening the conscience of *Charles* the first, made him enjoin his son *Philip* to restore *Navarre*; and King *Francis* the first of *France*, to command that justice should be done upon the Murderers of the *Protestants* in *Atrindol* and *Cabrieres*, which till then he neglected. It is therefore death alone that can suddenly make man to know himself. He tells the proud and insolent, that they are but *Subjects*, and humbles them at the instant; makes them cry, complaine, and repent; yea, even to hate their forepassed happiness. He takes the account of the rich, and proves him a begger; a naked begger, which hath interest in nothing, but in the gravel that fills his mouth. He holds a Glass before the eyes of the most beautiful, and makes them see therein their deformity and rottenness; and they acknowledge it.

O eloquent, just, and mighty Death! whom none could advise, thou hast persuaded what none have dared, thou hast done, and whom all the world hath flattered, thou only hast cast out of the world and despised: thou hast drawn together all the far stretched greatness, all the pride, cruelty, and ambition of man, and covered it all over with these two narrow words, *Hic jacet*.

Lastly, whereas this Book, by the title it hath, calls it self, *The first part of the General History of the World*, implying a second and third Volume; which I also intended, and have hewn out; besides many other discouragements, persuading my silence, it hath pleased God to take that glorious Prince out of the world, to whom they were directed; whose unspeakable and never enough lamented losse hath taught me to say with *Job*, *Verba est in Lucernam Cishara mea, & Organum meum in vocem flentium.*

FINIS.



## TO THE READER.

**T**he use of Chronological Tables is needfull to all Histories, that reach to any length of time; and most of all, to those that are most general: since they cannot, like Annals, yearly set down all occurrences not coherent. This here following, may serve as an Index to the present part of this work, pointing unto the severall matters, that having fallen out at one time, are far dis-joynd in the relation. Certainly it is not perfect, neither do I think that any can be. For howsoever the years of the first Patriarchs may seem to have been well-neer compleat, yet in the reigns of the Kings of Juda and Israel, we finde many frictions, and the last year, or years, of one King reckoned also as the foremost of another. The same is most likely to have fallen out in many other, though not so precisely recorded. Hereto may be added the divers and imperfect forms of the year, which were in use among sundry Nations, causing the \* Sommer <sup>\* See lib. 2. cap. 3. sect. 6.</sup> months, in proceſse of some ages, to fall into the winter; and so breeding extreme confusion in the reckoning of their times. Neither is it a small part of trouble, to chooſe out of so many, and so utterly disagreeing computations, as have already gotten authority, what may probably be held for truth. All this, and a great deale more, is to be alledged, in excuse of such error, as a more intencive and perfect Calculator shall happen to finde herein. It may serve to free the book, and likewise the Reader (if but of mean judgement) from any notorious Anachronicisme; which ought to suffice. The book indeed will need it, even in that regard; not only for some errors of the Presse, in the numbring of years, but for some haste mis-reckonings of mine own, which I desire to have hereby reformed, in hope that the printing of this Table shall not want carefull diligence. The Reader, if he be not offended with the rest, shall finde reason to be pleased with this, as tending wholly to his own ease.

The titles over the Columns, have reference to that which follows under them, as will readily be conceived. Where two titles, or more, are over the head, as [ <sup>some</sup> Nabonassar ] there do the numbers underneath proportionably answer, the higher to the bigger, the lower to the lower. For example, The walls of Jerusalem were finished in the 319. year from the building of Rome, and in the 314. from Nabonassar. In like manner it is to be understood, That Jehosaphat began his reign in the 3774. of the Julian Era, in the 2092. of the world, and in the 99. year of the Temple. This needs not more illustration, nor indeed so much, to those that are acquainted with works of this kinde. To avoid prolixity, I have forbore to insert those years, which I finde not signed with some regardable accident, as with the birth or death of some Patriarch; the beginning of some Kings reign; some change of Government; some battell fought, or the like. So of the 13. years wherein Sylvius Capetus reigned over the Latines, I note only the first, that is, omitting all between the 4. of Jehosaphat, wherein Capetus began, unto the 17. wherein Sylvius Aventinus succeeded, and wherein Jehoram first reigned with Jehosaphat his father. For I thought it vain to have filled up a page with 12. lines of idle ciphers, numbring forth 2. 3. 4. 5. and so still onwards, till I had come to the first of Aventinus, and the 17. of Jehosaphat. In setting down the Kings, there is noted over the head of every one, what place he held in order of succession: as whether he were the first, second, fifth, seventh, or so forth, in rank of those that reigned in his countrey, without notable interruption: before the name is the first year of his reign; at the end or foot of the name (as the space gives leave) is the whole number of years in which he reigned, in the spaces following underneath, are those years of his, which were concurrent with the beginning of some other King, or with the year of any remarkable accident. Where two numbers, or more, are found before one Kings name; there it is to be understood, that the same year belonged not only to the King then beginning, but unto some one, or more of his foregoers: as the first year of Jehoram King of Israel, was the same with the second of his brother Ahaziah, and the 22. of his father Ahab. So where two or three names are found in one space, as in the 2077. year of the World, Zimri, Tibni, and Omri, it is meant, that every one of them reigned in some part of the same year, which is reckoned the second of Ela, and the first of Omri. Particularly, under the reigns of the Egyptian Kings, are set down the years of those Dynasties, which it was thought meet to insert; as likewise otherwhiles, the day, the month, upon which Nabonassar's year began, which, how it varied from other years, may be found in the place last above cited.

Concer-

## To the Reader.

Concerning the *Æra*, or account of years, from Iphitus, who began the Olympiads, from Rome built, from Nabonassar, and the like; as much as was thought convenient hath been said, where due place was, in the book itself: so as it remaineth only to note, that under the title of Olympiads, is set down, first the number of the Olympiad, and beneath it, the year of that Olympiad: as that Cyrus began his reign in Persia, in the 55. Olympiad, and the first year thereof.

Now, for that the years of the world, of the Olympiads, of Rome, of Nabonassar, and other, had not beginning in one month, but some of them in March, some in April, some about Midsummer, and some at other times: the better to expresse their severall beginnings, some painfull Chronologers have divided them proportionably in their severall Columns, opposing to part of the one year to part of the other: not (as I have here done) cutting all overthwart with one straight line, as if all had begun and ended at one time. But this labour have I spared, as more troublesome than usefull, since the more part would not have apprehended the meaning, and since the learned might well be without it. It will only be needfull to observe, that howsoever the Æra of the Olympiads be 24 years elder than that of Rome, and 29. than that of Nabonassar, yet the reign of some King may have begun at such a time of the year as did not suit with this difference. But hereof I take little regard. The more curious will easily find my meaning: the vulgar will not find the difficulty. One familiar example will explain all. Queen Elizabeth began her reign the 17. of November, in the year of our Lord 1558. She was crowned, held a Parliament, brake it up, threw down Images, and reformed many things in religion, to all in her first year, yet not all in that year 1558. but the greater part in the year following: whether we begin with the first of January, or with the 25. of March. The like may be otherwise found in this Table, but so, as the difference is never of a whole year.

The Julian Period, which I have placed as the greater number, over the years of the World, was delivered by that honorable, and excellently learned Joseph Scaliger: being accommodated to the Julian years, now in use among us. It consists of 7980. years, which result from the multiplication of 19. 28. and 15. that is, of the Cycle of the Moon, the Cycle of the Sun, and the years of an Indiction. Being divided by any of these, it leaves the number of the present year, or if no fractions remain, it them the last year of that Cycle to be current. For example, in the 4498. of this Period, when we have fought the great battell of Cannæ, the Prime or golden number was 14. the Cycle of the Sun, 18. and consequently the Dominical letter F. as may be found by dividing the same number of the Julian Period 4498. by 19. for the Prime, by 28. for the Cycle of the Sun. This Julian Period, after the present account, always exceeds the years of the world by 682. Besides the former uses, and other thence redounding, it is a better Character of a year, than any other *Æra* (as, From the beginning of the World, From the Flood, From Troy taken, or the like) which are of more uncertain position. More I shall not need to write, as touching the use or explication of these Tables. Neither was thus much requisite, such as are common in works of this kinde: it is sufficient if hereby, all be made plain enough to the vulgar.

## CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

Years of the Julian Period, World,  
Patriarchs, &c.

[illegible]

	Julian The World	Enos.	Cainan	Mohalalel	Jared.	Me- thuse- lah.	La- mech.	Noah	Sem.	
Enos died.	1822 1140	905	815	745	680	453	266	84		
Cainan died.	1917 1235		910	842	775	548	361	179		
Mohalalel died this year.	1972 1290			895	830	603	416	234		
Jared died.	2104 1422					735	584	366		
Flood threatened, Gen. 6:3.	2219 1537					850	663	481		
	2241 1559					872	685	503	1. Sem. 600	
Lamech died.	2333 1651					964	777	595	93	
Methuselah died this year, a little before the Flood. Noah entered into the Ark C. 7, 5, 1 & 2. The Flood.	2338 1656					969		600	98	
The Flood ceaseth. Noah issued out of the Ark.	2339 1657							601	99	
	Julian. World. Flood.	Noah.	Sem.	1. Ar- phaxad. 438						
	2541 1659	603	101							
	2376 1694 37	638	136	36	1. Sa- lah. 433				11	54
	2406 1724 67	668	166	66	31	1. He- ber. 464				164
	2440 1758 101	704	200	100	65	35	1. Pe- leg. 464		King of Assyria.	
	2470 1788 131	732	230	130	95	65	31	1. Ram. 239	1. Nim- rod. 114	
	2502 1820 165	764	262	162	127	97	63	33	33	1. Sa- rug. 230
Vide list 2 c. 2, 3, 2.	2530 1848 191	692	290	190	155	125	91	63	61	29
	2532 1850 193	694	292	192	157	127	93	63	63	31
	2564 1879 222	823	321	221	186	156	122	92	92	69
	2584 1902 245	846	344	244	209	179	145	115	2 1. Be- lus, 65	83

	Julian. World. Flood.	Noah.	Sem.	Arphaxad.	Salah.	Heber.	Peleg.	Ram.	Arphaxad.	Salah.	Egypt.	Nabon.	Terah.	King of Sycy
	1018 1936 279	880	378	378	243	213	179	149	35	117	89	87	58	1 1. A- d- 3
	2649 1967 266	911	409	309	274	244	210	180	1. Ni- nus, 52	148	120	118	69	32
	2670 1988 331	932	430	330	295	265	231	201	22	169	11	139	110	2 1. E- ros, 43
the last year of his life.	2678 1996 339	940	438	338	303	273	239	209	30	177	149	147	118	9
The death of Na-	2679 1997 340	941	439	339	304	274		210	31	178	150	148	119	10
ah died this year.	2688 2006 349	950	448	348	313	283		219	40	187	159		128	19
The 16. Dynasty begins. Vul. L. 2. 3, 4, 5 &c.	2691 2009 352		451	351	316	286		222	43	190			131	22
	2701 2019 361		461	361	326	296		232	1. Sem- nus, 43	200	11		141	32
	2708 2026 369		463	368	333	303		239	8	207	18		148	39
the last year of Reu.	2715 2033 376		475	375	340	310			15	214	25		155	46
	2731 2049 392		491	391	356	326			31	230	41		171	41
The last of Sarug.	2731 2049 392		491	391	356	326			31	230	41		171	41
	2739 2053 396		495	395	360	330		35		45	175		1. A- d- 25	45
	2743 2061 404		503	403	368	338		5		53	183		9	53
	2760 2078 421		520	420	385	355		18		70	200		1. The- lon, 52	70
Sam returns the pre- dicted son in Haran, c. 1, 5, 1, 3.	2765 2083 426		525	425	390	360		23	75		205		6	75
Sam returns into Canaan.	2766 2084 427		526	426	391	361		76		24	76		7	
Abraham returns into Canaan.	2767 2085 428		527	427	392	362		77		25	77		8	
Abraham's victory over Chedorlaomer, and other kings. c. 1, 5, 8, 9, &c.	2775 2093 430		535	435	400	370		85		33	85		16	
Isaac borne.	2777 2095 432		537	437	402	372		87		35	87		18	
Arphaxad dyes.	2778 2096 433		538	438	403	373		88		36	88		19	

	Julian. World promie	Sem.	Salab.	Heber.	Abram.	Aff- ria.	Egypt.	Sicyon.	
	2781 2099 16	541	406	376	91	6 1. Ari- us 30	91	22	
Isaac born when Abraham was 100. years old com- pleat. 101. current.	2791 2109 25	551	416	386	101	11	101	32	1. Isaac 180
The last year of Salab.	2808 2126 43	568	433	403	118	28	118	49	18
	2811 2129 46	571		406	121	7 1. Ara- lus 40	121	52	21
	2812 2130 47	572		407	122	2	122	1. A. gir 34	22
Sarah the wife of Abraham died this year.	2827 2145 62	587		422	137	17	137	16	37
Isaac took Rebecca to wife, when he was 40. years old compleat.	2831 2149 66	591		426	141	21	141	20	41
The last year of Sem.	2840 2158 75	600		435	150	30	150	29	50
	Julian. World. promie	Heber.	Abram.	Isaac.	Jacob.	Aff- ria.	Egypt.	Sicyon.	Ar- gives.
	2846 2164 81	441	356	56		56	156	1. Thar- machus 45	
	2851 2169 86	446	161	61	1. Jacob. 147	8 1. Bal- us 30	161	6	1. In- clus 50
Abraham died this year.	2865 2183 100	460	175	75	15	15	175	20	15
Heber died this year.	2869 2187 104	464		79	19	19	179	24	19
The 17. Dynastie, called of the Shepherds, beginning this year, lasted 103 years.	2891 2199 116			91	31	1. Arma- mihres 38	191	36	31
	2760 1209 126			101	41	11	201	1. Leucip. pus. 53	41
	2901 2219 136			111	51	21	211	11	1. Phor- ments 60
The Flood of Ougeisa thersuan and twenty years be- fore the Olympiads. See lib. 1. c. 7. §. 2.	2919 2237 154			129	69	1. Bel- cus Trif- cus 35	229	29	19
	2942 2260 177			152	92	24	252	52	42
	2944 2262 179			154	94	26	254	54	44
See L. 2. c. 2. §. 6.	2952 2270 187			162	102	34	1. Typhon, & af- ter him Hercl. 7.	9	52
	2954 2272 189			164	104	11 1. Bele- us 52	3	11	54

	Julian. World. promise	Isaac.	Jacob.	Affyria	Egypt.	Sicyon.	Argives.		
Joseph sold into Egypt.	2959 2277 194		169	109	6	1. Ous. 79. 115	16	59	18
	2961 2277 196		171	111	8	3 81	18	1. Apis. 35	20
The last year of Isaac.	2970 2288 205		180	120	17	12 90	27	10	29
Isaac into Egypt.	2980 2298 215			130	27	22 100	37	20	39
The eighteenth Dynastie in Egypt, which lasted 40 years.	2984 2302 219			134	31	26 1	41	24	43
	2991 2309 226			141	38	33 8	1. Pera- tas. 46	31	50
	2996 2314 231			146	43	38 13	6	1. Argus. 4	55
Jacob dies in Egypt.	2997 2315 232			147	44	39 11	7	2	
	Julian. World. promise	Joseph.	Affyria.	Egypt.	Sicyon.	Argives.			
	3006 2324 241	65	12 1. Altades. 32	48 23	16	11			
	3037 2355 272	96	32	79 54	11 1. Plom- neus. 48	42			
	3038 2356 273	97	13 1. Mamius. 30	80 55	2	43			
The last year of Joseph.	3051 2369 286	110	14	93 68	15	56			
	3066 2384 301		29	108 83	30	1. Pirajus, & Ciajus. 54			
	3068 2386 303		14 1. Mauleus. 30	110 85	32	3			
	3074 2392 309		7	1. Sefstrin the Great. 33	38	9			
	3085 2403 320		18	12 102	12 1. Orbo- polis. 63	20			
	3098 2416 333		15 1. Spherus, or Sphereus. 20	25 115	14	33			
	3107 2425 342		10	1. Sefstrin the se- cond. 14	23	42			
	3116 2434 351	1. Me- 120	19	10 133	32	51			

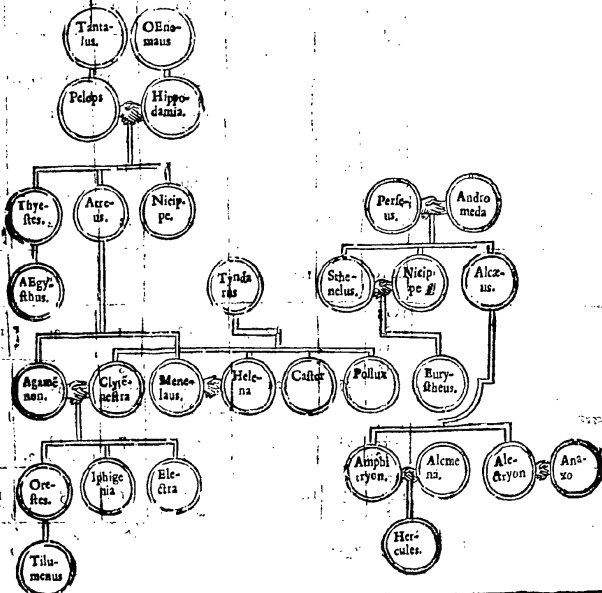
	Julian World. Exod.	Moses	Affyria	Egypt.	Sicyon	Argives	
	3118 2436 353	3	16 1. Mamilas, 30 Mamilus, 30	12 135	34	53	
	3120 2438 355	5	3	14 137	36	6 1. Phorbas, 35	
	3121 2439 356	6	4	8 1. Oricus, 2. or Baf- vis, 38, 138.	37	2 Athenians.	
	3148 2466 383	33	17 1. Sparatus, 40	28 165	13 1. Mara- thius 30	29	
	3151 2469 386	36	4	31 168	4	32 1. C. crocus 50	
Moses visits his brethren the Israelites kills an Egyptian, and flies into Midian.	3155 2473 390	40	8	35 172	8	7 1. Tripas, 46	5
	3159 2477 394	44	12	1. Thermuth, or Aeneberes, 20 12, 176.	12	5	9
	3171 2489 406	56	24	10 1. Rathora, or A- choris, 9, 188.	24	17	21
	3178 2469 413	63	31	8 195	14 1. Ma- thius, 20	24	28
	3180 2498 415	65	33	11 1. Cheneres, 16 197	3	26	30
	3188 2506 423	37	18 1. Ascatules. 40	9 205	11	34	38
Moses his wandering into Egypt.	3195 2513 430	80	8	16 212	18	41	45
	Julian World. Exod.	Moses	Affyria	Egypt.	Sicyon	Argos	Athen
The Passover. Israel delivered out of Egypt. Pharaoh drowned. The Law given. The first of the 480. years from Exodus to the building of the Temple.	3196 2514 431	81	9	12 1. Acharres, 8 213	19	42	46
The Flood of Deucalion, and conflagration of Phaenon about this time.	3198 2516 433	83	11	3 215	15 1. Echi- reus 5	44	48
	3201 2519 436	86	14	6 218	4	8 1. Crotopus, 21 nautico	
	3204 2522 439	89	17	13 1. Cherres, 15 221	7	4	4
	3211 2529 446	96	24	8 228	14	11	2 1. Amphip- pys, 12
	3219 2537 454	104	32	14 1. Arneus, or Donau, 5, 236	23	19	9
	3222 2540 457	107	35	4 239	25	9 1. Sibetelus, 11	12

	Julian World. Exod.	Moses	Affyria	Egypt.	Sicyon	Argos	Athen	
	3223 2541 458	108	36	5 240	26	2	4 1. Eriph- ninus, 50	
	3224 2542 459	109	37	15 1. Ramesses, 68 241	27	3	2	Troy.
	3228 2546 463	113	19 1. Amyntas, 4	5 245	31	7	6	
	3229 2547 464	114	2	6 246	32	8	7	1 1. Dar- danus, 6
	3233 2551 468	118	6	10 250	36	10 1. Danaus, 50	11	5
The last year of Moses.	3235 2553 470	120	8	12 252	38	3	13	7
	Julian World. Exod.	Israel	Affyria	Egypt.	Sicyon	Argos	Athen	Troy.
The Israelites enter the Land of Promise.	3236 2554 471	1	9	13 253	39	4	14	8
	3253 2571 488	18	26	30 270	16 1. Co- rax, 30	21	31	25
	3254 2572 489	2	27	31 271	2	22	32	26
	3273 2591 508	20	20 1. Belochim the second, 25	50 290	21	41	5 1. Fan- dion 40	45
	3283 2601 518	30	11	60 300	17 1. Epi- pous 31	11	11	55
	3292 2610 527	39	20	16 1. Menopbis 40 309	10	10	20	64
	3293 2611 528	40	21	2 310	11	11	21	1. Eriph- ninus, 40
	3294 2612 529	3 1. Ekwid 80	22	3 311	12	12	22	2
	3298 2616 533	5	21 1. Belopares 30	7	16	16	26	6
	3313 2631 548	20	16	22 330	31	31	6 1. Eriph- ninus, 50	21
	3318 2636 553	25	21	27 335	18 1. Lame- don, 40	36	6	26
	3324 2642 559	31	27	33 341	7	12 1. Abbas, 2.	12	32
	3328 2646 563	35	22 1. Lamprides. 32	37 345	11	5	16	36



3332 2650 137	39	5	1. Zethus, ar. Sethosis, 1	55	15	9	20	40
3339 2657 144	46	12	8 8		22	16	27	5 1.7 60
3347 2665 152	54	20	16 16		30	13 1. Fra- tus, 17	35	9
3358 2676 163	65	21	27 27	1. Sieyus, 45	19	12	46	20
3360 2678 165	67	23 1. Solares, 20	29 29		3	14	48	22
3363 2681 168	70	4	32 32		6	17	7 1. Cor- the, 40	25
3364 2682 169	71	5	33 33		7	14 1. Axi- fius, 31	2	26
3374 2692 179	79	15	43 43		17	11	12	36
3380 2698 185	7	24 1. Lamparcs. 30	49 49		23	17	18	44
3387 2705 192	14	15	18 1. Rampe, 66 56		30	24	25	49
3394 2712 199	21	19	8 63		37	31	32	56

After the death of Acrisius, the Kingdom of the Argives was divided into many small parts, and overgrown by that of Mycenae, whereof some Kings descended from Perseus, others from Pelops, as in the Pedegree following.



	Julian World. Ergd.	Israel.	Affyria.	Egypt.	Sydon.	Myce- ne.	Athen.	Troy.
	3399 2717 204	26	20	13 68	42		37	4 1. Iliad, 55
	3402 2720 207	29	23	16 71	45	1 Eury- sthenus. 45	40	4
	3403 2721 208	30	24	17 72	20 1. Poly- bus, 40	2	8 1. Pandic- the 225	5
	3410 2728 215	37	25 1. Pannias, 45	24 79	8	9	8	12
	3414 2732 219	5 1 Gede- on, 40	5	28 82	12	13	12	16
Phoen chafid one of his Kingdom, which is recovered by him in Agabus, in few years after. The acquisition of elix interreg- num, and reckoning the years in the forty eight of Agabus, &c. the ascending them apart by themselves, breeds unfavorable dif- ference in the times of the Athenians following, as of Menech- us, Carops, and the rest.	3427 2745 222	14	28	41 96	25	26	25	29
	3432 2750 227	19	23	46 101	30	31	9 1. Æge- us, 40	34
Outpus in Thebes.	3443 2761 228	30	34	57 112	21 1. Jaso- chus, 4	42	12	45 2. 52 (40)
	3447 2765 232	34	38	61 116	5	1. Divos and Thy- estes, 61	16	49
	3453 2771 238	40	44	19 122	11 40	71	22	55
	3454 2772 239	6 1. Abi- molech. 259	45	2 123	12	8	23	5 1. Lammedon. 36
	3455 2773 260	2	26 1. Solarmus, 12	3 124	13	9	24	2
	3457 2775 262	7 1. 7 bo- las 23	3	5 126	15	11	26	4
	3474 2762 379	18	27 1. Mitreus, 27	22 143	32	28	43	21
	3480 2792 285	8 1. Iair. 22	7	28 149	38	34	10 1. The- sim, 30.	27
	3485 2803 290	6	12	33 154	22 1. Phe- stus, 8	39	6	32
	3490 2808 295	11	17	38 159	6	44	11	5 1. Priamus. 40
	3493 2811 298	14	20	20 162	23 1. Andra- bus, 4	47	14	4
	3497 2815 302	18	24	5 166	24 1. Poly- phidus, 3	51	18	8
	3501 2819 306	22	28 1. Teutanes, 32	9 170	5	55	22	12

Year	Julian World. Fec'd.	Israel.	Affria.	Egypt.	Sicyon.	Myce- nae.	Alban.	Troy.
4 22 111	3522 2820 307	9 1. Aph. 1a. 6	2	10 171	6	56 23	13	13
5	3505 826 315	10 1. Jk. 1am. 7	8	16 177	13	62 29	19	19
6	3510 2828 315	3	10	18 179	14	64 11 1 Moe Hec 2.		
7	3512 2830 317	5	12	20 181	16	1. Jk. on. 18	3	23
8	3515 2833 320	11 1. Lon 10	15	23 184	19	4	6	26
The year of Troy began this year.	3519 2837 324	5	19	21 188	23	8	10	30
9	3525 2843 320	12 1. Ab- lon. 8	25	7 194	29	14	16	36
The 20. Dynasty, called the Draconitae, began this year in Egypt, and lasted 178. years. See lib. 2. cap. 16. §. 4.	3526 2844 331	2	26	20 178 1. Dynastis, 178	30	15	17	37
10	3528 2846 333	4	28	25 1. Pelf- gus, 20	17	19	39	
Troy taken 408. years, before the beginning of the Olympiads, See lib. 2. c. 14. §. 1.	3529 2847 334	5	29	4	2	18	20	40. Troya- ken.
11 1. Moabites	3530 2848 335	from Troy taken.	Israel.	Affria	Egypt.	Sicyon.	Myce- nae.	The Kingdom of the Latins.
12	3533 2851 338	4	13 1. Samp- sons, 20	29 1. Teh- dan 40	8	6	4	24 1. Zena, 5
13	3534 2852 339	5	2	9	7	5	12 1. Doro- phus, 33	2
14 1. Moabites	3536 2854 341	7	4	11	9	1. Ore- lks, 70	3	1. Affria,
15	3538 2856 343	19	16	23	13	15	13	
16 1. Moabites	3553 2871 358	2	14 1. Eli, 40	21	28	6	18	20
17	3567 2885 372	38	15	35	42	20	32	1. Oxir- tes, 12
18	3573 2891 378	44	21	30 1. Tby- neus 30	48	26	38	7
19	3574 2892 379	45	22	2	49	27	39	8 1. Syl. Paf- bunus, 29

	Julian World. Fec'd.	from Troy taken.	Israel.	Aff- ria.	Egypt.	Sicyon.	Myce- nae.	Athen.	The Kingdom of the Latins.
The Sicyonian Kings ended in Zeucippus.	3579 2897 384	50	27	7	54	32	44	14 1. Aph- lus, 1.	6
	3580 2898 385	51	28	8	55		45	1. Roma- ter, 8.	7
	3588 2906 393	59	36	16	63		53	16 1. Melan- ibus, 37	15
	3593 2911 398	64	15 1. Samu- el, 40	21	68		58	6	20
	3603 2921 408	74	31 1. Doro- ph. 40.	78		68	16	1. Syllus E- neas, 31.	4
	3606 2924 411	77	14	4	81		1. Tifame- nu.	19	4
Children of the Heraclida into Peloponnese, gave end to the Kingdom of Mycenae, and beginning to the Kingdom of Sparta, and the Mantinean Kingdom, whereof, I have but to infer the table.	3609 2927 414	80	17	7	84			22	7
	3625 2943 430	96	33	23	100			17 1. Co- lurn 21	23
	Julian. World. Exod.	from Troy taken.	Israel.	Aff- ria.	Egypt.	Athen.	Latins.		
	3633 2951 438	104	1. David, 40.	31	108	9	31		
	3634 2951 439	105	2	32	109	10	1. Syl- Lennus, 50		
	3643 2961 448	114	11	32 1. Eupa- ter, 38.	118	19	10		
The Heraclida succeed unto the Athenian Kings, after the death of Colchus.	3646 2964 451	117	14	4	121	1. Me- lon, 20.	13		
See Lib. 2. c. 17. §. 10.	3666 2984 471	137	34	24	141	1. Ag- fius, 26	33		
Pharaohs reigneth in Egypt, See L. 2. c. 26 §. 5.	3673 2991 478	144	1. Salomon, 40	31	148	8	40		
Edmund begins to build the Temple 480. years com- mence after the deliverance out of Egypt.	3676 2994 481	3	147	4	34	351	11	43	
	3681 2999	6	152	9	33 1. Leof- bones, 45	156	16	48	
	3684 3002	9	155	12	4	159	19	6 1. Syl. Alba.	
	3692 3010	17	163	20	12	1. Se- an, 26	27	9	
	3702 3020	27	173	30	22	11 1. Archi- pus, 19	177	3	19

	Julian World.	Temple Troy subtr.	Israel	Affria.	Egypt.	Athen.	Latini	
The 22. Dynastie in Egypt, which lasted 130 years.	3704 3022	29	175	32	24	13 1	3 21	
The Ionick migration after the taking of Troy 180 years. See L. 2. c. 17. § 6.	3709 3027	34	180	37	29	18 6	8 26	
	Julian World. Temple	Troy.	Juda.	Israel.	Affria.	Egypt.	Athen.	Latini
	3713 3031	148	1. Rehobam.	1. Jeroboam.	33	22 10	12 30	
	3718 3036	189	6	6	38	1. Cheu- mis, 50. 15	17 35	
	3721 3039	192	9	9	41	4 18	4 18	38
	3723 3041	194	11	11	43	6 20	3 12	40
	3726 3044	197	14	14	46	9 23	6 15	43
	3730 3048	201	2 1. Abijam.	18	5	13 27	10	8
	3733 3051	204	3 1. Aza.	21	8	16 30	13	11
	3734 3052	205	2 1. Nadab.	22	9	17 31	14	12
	3735 3053	206	3 1. Baasha.	23	10	18 32	15	13
	3749 3067	220	17	15	24	32 46	29	17
	3756 3074	227	24	22	35 1. Ophraeus.	39 53	56	8
	3758 3076	229	26 1. El.	24 11. Ela.	3	41 55	38	10
Of the Israelitish Kings. See Lib. 2. c. 19. § 5.	3759 3077	230	27	25 1. Zimri. 1. Tibni. 7. Omri	4	42 56	39	11
	3762 3080	233	30	4	7	45 59	3 Phor- on.	14
	3768 3086	239	36	10	13	1. Che- on, 56. 65	7	20
	3770 3088	241	38	12 1. Ahab.	15	3 67	9	22
	3774 3092	245	4 1. Jehu.	5	19	7 71	13	26

	Julian World. Temple	Troy.	Juda.	Israel.	Affria.	Egypt.	Athen.	Latine.
	3776 3094	247	3	7	1. Ophra- eus, 50.	9 73	15	28
	3777 3095	248	4	8	2	10 74	16	1. Syl. Caperus, 13
Jehoram his son's beginning to reign. See Lib. 2. c. 20. § 1. & 2.	3790 3108	261	17 1. Jehoram.	21 9 1. Abazia, 2	15	23 87	29	1. Syl. Ty- le, 10
	3791 3109	262	18 2	10 1. Jehoram	16	24 88	30	2
	3793 3111	264	20 0	3	18	26 90	3	4
	3793 3113	266	22 1. Jehoram a- gin, 8.	5	20	28 92	3	6
Jehoshaphat dies, and Jehoram reigns alone.	3798 3116	269	25 4	8	23	31 95	6	1. Syl. A- grappa, 11
	3802 3120	273	6 1. Abazia.	12	27	35 99	10	5
	3803 3121	274	7 1. Athalia.	11 7. 1. Jhu.	28	36 100	11	6
	3809 3125	280	8 1. Jhu.	7	34	42 106	17	12
Carthage built. L. 2. c. 22. § 6.	3819 3137	290	11	17	44	52 116	27	22
	3825 3143	294	15	21	48	65 120	31	26
	3824 3142	295	16	22	49	1. Diog- enies, 23	2	27
	3826 3144	297	18	24	51	1. Ophra- eus, 50. 121	3	29
	3831 3149	302	23	29	56	1. Jhu, 17	6	34
The end of the 21. Dynastie. The Dynasties following him.	3833 3151	304	25	3	8	10 130	11	36
	3839 3157	310	31	9	14	16	17	1. Syl. Al- ludus, 19
Joas reigned with his Father. L. 2. c. 22. § 7.	3845 3163	316	37	15 1. Joas.	20	22	23	7
Joas reigns alone.	3847 3165	318	39	1. Joas, 16	22	24	25	9
	3848 3166	319	40 1. Amaziah, 40	3	23	25	26	10

	Julian. World. Templ.	Troy.	Juda.	Israel.	Aff- ria.	Egypt.	Athen.	Latins
	3051 3169 176	322	4	5	26	28	8 Phae- lus. 15	13
	3858 3166 183	329	11	12	33	35	8 1. Syl. A- ugustinus 37	
	3662 3180 187	333	15	16 14 Jerusalem. 41	37	39	12	5
	3868 3186 193	339	21	7	1. Sander- papulus. 32	45	18	11
	3870 3188 195	341	23	9	3	47	9 1. Atri- pion. 30	12
	3874 3192 199	345	27	13	7	1. Mi- cerinus 6	5	16
	Julian. World. Templ.	Troy.	Juda.	Israel.	Aff- ria.	Egypt.	Athen.	Latins
L. 2. C. 22. 5. 11.	3877 3195 202	348	1. Interregnum 11 years.	16	10	4	.8	19
	3880 3198 205	351	4	19	13	2. Boc- choris. 44	11	22
L. 2. C. 23. 5. 12.	3887 3205 212	358	11	26	20. Sar- dispa- lus slain	8	18	29
L. 2. C. 33. 5. 1. & 4.	3883 3205 213	359	10 1. Vazias Azarias. 52	27		9	19	30
	3870 3208 215	361	3	29		11	10 1. Hesper- us. 47.	32
L. 2. C. 23. 5. 4.	3892 3210 217	363	5	31	1. Belus or Bul. 48	13	3	34
	3895 3213 220	366	8	34	4	16	6	37
L. 2. C. 23. 5. 1.	3903 3221 228	374	16	1. Interregnum 12 years.	12	24	14	9
	3916 3234 241	387	29	14	25	37	27	22
	3917 3235 242	388	30	15	26	38	11 1. Agam- nefus.	23
	3918 3236 243	389	31	16	27	39	2	24
	3924 3242 249	395	37	22	33	1. Ayscha or after her. 4. myr. 6	8	7
Zacharia began at the very end of the year. L. 2. C. 23. 5. 1.	3925 3243 250	396	38	23 15 Zacharias six Months.	34	2	9	8

	Julian. World. Temple	Troy.	Juda.	Israel.	Affyria	Egypt.	Athen.	Latins	Media	
	3926 3244 251	397		39	35	3	10	9	11	
This year nearly concurs with the first of Media.	3927 3245 252	398		40	1	36	4	11	12	
	3930 3248 255	401		43	4	39	14	13	15	
	3937 3255 262	408	Iphit.	Olym- pion.	50	1 Peka- bia. 2	46	4	12 1. Aeschyl- lus. 23	
The beginning of the Olympiads. L. 2. C. 23. 5. 5.	3938 3256 263	409	1	1	51	2	47	9	21	
	3939 3257 264	410	2	2	52	19 1. Pekt- com. 10	48	10	3	
L. 2. C. 23. 5. 6.	3940 3258 265	411	3	3	1 16	2	11	4	23	
Julian. World. Templ.	Iphit.	Olym.	Juda.	Israel.	Affyria	Egypt.	Athen.	Latins	Media.	
	3946 3264 271	9	3	7	8	7	17	10	29	
	3955 3273 280	18	5	16 11 1. Ayscha	17	16	26	19	38	
	3959 3277 284	22	6	5	20	30	23	42	14	
	3960 3278 285	23	6	2	21	31	13 1. Aes- chylus. 2	43	15	
Julian. World. Templ.	Rome. Nabon.	Iphit.	Olym.	Juda.	Israel.	Affyria	Egypt.	Athen.	Rome.	Media.
	3962 3280 287	1	7	8	4	23	33	1	1	17
Rome built. Lib. 2. chap. 24. 5. 1. Caesar the first governing in Athens for ten years: after was succeeded by others each after other for the like time.	3966 3284 291	5	8	12	20	27	37	5	5	21
The Era of Nabonassar. L. 2. C. 23. 5. 1.	3967 3285 292	6	9	13	2	38	6	8	22	
Ezekiah began in the very end of this year. L. 2. C. 23. 5. 1.	3968 3286 293	7	10	14	3	39	7	7	23	
This year concurs with the first of Ezekiah. Ibid.	3969 3287 294	8	11	15	4	40	8	8	24	
The beginning of the first Median War. W. herod. L. 2. C. 27. 5. 4. It lasted 20. years.	3971 3289 296	10	13	17	6	5	42	10	26	
Samar'a is besieged by Salmanassar.	3974 3290 297	11	14	18	7	6	43	11	27	

The Captivity of the ten Tribes.	3974 2292 299	13 8	37	10 1	6	9	8	45	13	29
	3976 3294 301	15 39 10	10 39	10 3	8	10 4 1. Sadr- cherib, 7	47	15	31	
L. 2. c. 26. 5. 7.	3980 3298 305	19 14 3	43	14 3	12	King of the Chal- deans,	5	1. Se- don, 33	19	35
Senacherib's Army destroyed, and he slain. L. 2. c. 25. 5. 2.	3982 3300 307	21 14 16	43	12 1	14		7	3	21	37
	3983 3301 208	22 17 17	46	12 2	15	1. Ad- nach, or Mardo- campadus,	1. Af- baddon, 10	4	22	38
	3986 3304 311	25 49 20	13 49	13 1	18	4	4	7	25	4 108, 13
Merochach gets the whole Empire. This year or in the end of the year foregoing. An eclipse of the Moon.	3993 3311 318	32 56 27	14 56	14 4	25	1. Mero- dach, 40	11	14	32	8
	3994 3312 319	33 57 28	15 57	15 1	26		2	15	33	9
Two eclipses of the Moon, in the second year of Mardocampadus.	3997 3319 322	36 60 31	15 60	15 4	29	5	18	36	12	1. Cy- ren, 28
	3998 3316 323	37 61 32	16 61	16 1	30	1. Ma- nach, 11	6	19	37	13
	3999 3317 324	38 62 33	16 62	16 2	31		7	20	38	14
	4000 3318 325	39 63 34	16 63	16 3	32		8	21	39	15
L. 2. c. 27. 5. 2.	4013 3331 338	52 76 47	19 76	19 4	33	1. Inter- reg- num, 2	14	15	17	
	4015 3333 340	54 78 49	20 78	20 2	34	1. 12. Prius- ces, 15	16	17	19	
The beginning of the second Median War which lasted about 18 years. L. 2. c. 27. 5. 4.	4020 3347 354	68 92 63	23 92	23 4	37	1. Pam- onius, 4	30	31	33	
L. 2. c. 28. 5. 3.	4033 3351 358	72 96 67	24 96	24 4	38	1. Ben- Mero- dach, 1	5	34	35	37
	4036 3353 360	74 98 69	25 98	25 2	39		6	35	37	38
	4043 3361 368	82 104 77	27 104	27 2	40	1. Tallas Hoffins, 32	15	45	9	
	4052 3370 377	91 113 86	29 113	29 3	41	1. 6. P. 1. 24	10	46	10	11
	4053 3371 378	92 114 87	29 114	29 4	42	1. A- mon, 2	21	25	11	12

	Julian. World. Templ.	Rome. Nabon.	Phit.	Olymp.	Juda.	Chal- dea.	Egypt.	Rome.	Media.	Lydia.
The expedition of the Scythians. L. 2. c. 28. 5. 3. & 4.	4054 3372 379	93 88	117	30 1	2	1. Napp- laster, 33	26	12	3	20
	4055 3373 380	94 89	118	30 2	16 1. Jaf- s, 21	2	27	13	4	21
L. 2. c. 28. 5. 1.	4073 3391 398	112 107	136	34 4	19	1. Ne- s, 17	31	22	39	
	4075 3393 400	114 109	138	35 2	21	1. Marc- us, 34	3	24	41	
	4076 3394 401	115 110	139	35 3	22		4	2	42	
	4084 3402 409	123 118	147	37 3	30		12	10	9	3. 1. Sadr- cherib, 12
L. 2. c. 28. 5. 1. & 2.	4085 3402 410	124 119	148	37 4	31	1. 17. Jehobaz, 1. 1. 1. 1.	13	11	10	2
Nabuchodonosor had reigned one year with his Father, which time was added to his reign, and called reformation among his time.	4086 3403 411	125 120	149	38 1	32	1. 18. Jehobaz, 1. 1. 1. 1.	14	12	11	3
L. 2. c. 28. 5. 1. & c. 28. 5. 6.	4089 3407 414	128 123	152	38 4	33	1. 1. Nab- uchodonosor the great, 1. 1. 1.	15	13	12	4
	4090 3408 415	129 124	153	39 1	34	1. 1. 1. 1.	16	14	13	5
	4096 3414 421	135 130	159	40 3	35	1. 1. 1. 1.	17	15	14	6
Zedekiah his journey to Babylon. L. 2. c. 28. 5. 6.	4099 3417 424	138 133	162	41 2	36	1. 1. 1. 1.	18	16	15	7
	4102 3420 427	141 136	165	42 1	37	1. 1. 1. 1.	19	17	16	8
Jerusalem taken by Nabuchodonosor, with whose 18. for the more part, and partly with whose 19. his year concurred.	4106 3424 431	145 140	169	43 1	38	1. 1. 1. 1.	20	18	17	9
	4107 3425 432	146 141	170	44 2	39	1. 1. 1. 1.	21	19	18	10
Jerusalem destroyed.	4111 3429 436	150 145	174	44 2	40	1. 1. 1. 1.	22	20	19	11
Egypt conquered by Nabuchodonosor. L. 3. c. 1. 5. 8. & 9.	4116 3434 441	155 150	179	45 3	41	1. 1. 1. 1.	23	21	20	12
	4127 3445 452	166 161	190	46 4	42	1. 1. 1. 1.	24	22	21	13
Nabuchodonosor loses wild: and his kingdom conquered by others for him, during seven years. L. 3. c. 1. 5. 1.	4134 3452 459	167 162	191	47 5	43	1. 1. 1. 1.	25	23	22	14
	4135 3453 460	168 163	192	48 6	44	1. 1. 1. 1.	26	24	23	15



	Julian and World.	Rome. Nabon.	Iphit.	Olymp.	Juda.	Chal- dea.	Egypt.	Rome.	Media.	Lydia.	
Nebuchadnezzar recovers his sense and kingdom.	4131	170	194	49	29	1. Labor- fardach, 9 mon.	21	33	16	36	
L. 3. c. 1. s. 6.	3449	165		2							
The 37. of Jeconiah's captivity complete, and he en- larged.	4133	172	196	49	27	Evilme- rodach.	23	35	18	38	
	3451	167		4							
	4137	176	200	50	37	5	27	1. Sevil- us Tullus.	22	42	
	3455			4							
Early years after the conquest of Egypt pass, Amasis be- gan his reign: this being inclusively the 41. and there- fore the next year seems concurrent with Amasis his 1.	4151	190	214	45	54	19	Amasis.	15	5	56	
	3469	185		2							
	4153	192	216	54	47	21	2	17	3	5	
	3471			4							
	Julian, Rome. World, Nabon.	Iphit.	Olymp.	Persia	Caldea.	Egypt.	Rome.	Media.	Lydia.	Jews.	
	4154	193	217	55	1. Cyrus in Persia.	22	3	18	4	2	48
	3472	188		1							
The seven Sages of Greece.	4159	198	222	56	6	1. Bal- thasar.	8	23	9	7	53
	3477	195		3							
Pisistratus makes himself Tyrant in Athens.	4164	203	227	57	11	6	13	28	14	12	58
	3482	198		3							
	4166	205	229	58	13	8	15	30	16	14	60
	3484	200		1							
The end of the Chaldean Empire.	4175	214	238	60	22	17. Bal- thasar slain.	24	39	25		69
	3493	209		2							
	4176	215	239	60	23	1. Da- rius th. Mede.	23	40	26		70
	3494	210		3							
The beginning of Cyprus his Empire.	4177	216	240	60	1. Cy- rus.	2	26	41		Years from 1. Cyrus	
His Edict of liberty to the Jews.	3495	211		4							Zoro- astrian.
	4181	220	244	61	5		30	7. Darius and Xerxes.	5		Only Zoroastrian and Nebuchadnezzar concerned as pre- decessors of the Jews, even the 13. of Artaxerxes Mnemon. Darius were many kings Nebuchadnezzar first wineth. Q. s. v. 15. is that horrible thing number and name are uncertain.
	3499	215		4							
	4184	223	247	62	2	1. Cam- byse.	33	4	8		
	3502	218		3							
The 3. first years of Darius, and part of the third may be added to the years of his father, if it be true that Cambyses slew Egypte first on the death of Amasis, L. 3. c. 4. s. 2.	4186	225	249	63	3		1. Darius and Xerxes.	6	10.		
	3504	220		1							
The conquest of Egypt by Cambyses.	4188	227	251	63	3			8	12		
	3506	222		3							
	Julian, Rome. World, Nabon.	Iphit.	Olymp.	Persia	Egypt.	Rome.	Greece	Jews.	From Cyprus.		
Cambyses reigned seven years and five months, so as his last year was filled up by the Magi, and (as they seem) a good part of the next, L. 3. c. 4. s. 4.	4191	230	254	64	1. Darius and Xerxes.		11			15	
	3509	225		2							
	4192	231	255	64	1. Darius and Xerxes.		12			16	
	3510	226		3							

	Julian World.	Rome. Nabon.	Iphit.	Olym.	Persia.	Egypt.	Rome.	Greece.	From Cy- rus.
	4197	236	260	65	6		17	Hippias the son of Pisistratus Tyrant in Athens.	21
	3519	231		4					
	4204	243	267	67	11		42		28
	3522	238		3					
The Tarquines expelled Rome. L. 4. c. 1. s. 1.	4205	244	268	67	14		25		29
	3523	239		4					
The Carthaginians first League with Rome. L. 5. c. 1. s. 2.	4206	245	269	68	15			Confuls. Publicola	30
	3524	240		1					
L. 3. c. 5. s. 4.	4211	250	274	69	2				35
	3529	245		2					
	4212	251	275	69	21			The Athenians and Ionians take Sardes.	36
	3530	246		3					
	4222	261	285	72	31			The battle of Marathon.	46
	3540	256		1					
	4226	265	289	73	35				50
	3544	260		1					
	4228	267	291	73	4				50
	3546	262		3					
The Law Agraria in Rome propounded, for division of Land: which bred great commotion.	4229	268	292	73	2				52
	3547	263		4					
An Eclipse of the Sun. L. 3. c. 6. s. 2.	4233	272	296	74	6.				57
	3551	267		4					
L. 3. c. 6. s. 3. & 6.	4234	273	297	75	7				58
	3552	268		1					
L. 3. c. 6. s. 9, 10, & 11.	4235	274	298	75	8				59
	3553	269		2					
L. 3. c. 7. s. 1. & 2.	4237	276	300	75	10				62
	3555	271		4					
	4244	283	307	77	17				68
	3562	278		3					
	4248	287	311	78	21.				72
	3566	282		3					
L. 3. c. 7. s. 3.	4249	288	312	78	22.				73
	3567	283		4					
	4251	290	314	94	3				75
	3569	285		2					
	4255	294	318	80	7.				
	3573	289		3					
L. 3. c. 7. s. 5. & 7.	4264	303	327	82	16				10
	3582	298		3					

The Account from the relation of the Captivity, & the same with that from Cyrus.	Julian World.	Rome. Nabon.	Spitus.	Olym.	Persia.	Egypt.	Rome.	Greece.	teme. trans-act and
	4265	304	328	82	17			Symon voyag- to Cyprus, which he died.	89
	3583	299		47				A league for 36 years, between Athens & Sparta.	11
Nabonius comes to Jerusalem.	4268	307	331	83	20				52
	3586			3					14
	4272	311		84					54
	3590	306		335	24				57
	4273	312		84				The conquest of Smosby the dis- tinguish'd under- taker.	18
	3591	307		336	4				19
	4278	317		86				The Athenians de- feat the Con- tinues.	102
	3596	312		341	1				14
The walls of Jerusalem finished.	4280	319		86					104
Nehemiah returns to King Artaxerxes.	3598	314		343	3				16
	4283	322		87				The first part of the Pe- rian War.	107
L. 3. c. 8. 5. 1.	3601	317		346	2				109
L. 3. c. 9. 5. 1.	4289	328		88				The victory of the Athenians at Pylus.	113
L. 3. c. 8. 5. 1.	3607	323		352	4				35
	4290	329		89					114
L. 3. c. 9. 5. 1.	3608	324		353	1				36
	4294	331		89					116
L. 3. c. 8. 5. 5. & 6.	3610	326		355	3				38
	4301	340		91				The Athenians force in Sicily.	125
L. 3. c. 9. 5. 1. & c. 8. 5. 8.	3619	335		364	4				48
	4302	341		92					128
Cap. 8. 9. 9.	3620	336		365	1				50
	4304	343		92				The Athenians begin to recover strength.	129
The Carthaginians invade Sicily with an Army of 500000. L. 3. c. 1. 5. 4. 1. 3.	3622	328		3					50
	4306	345		93					130
L. 3. c. 8. 5. 10.	3624	340		369	1				52
	4307	346		93				The battle at Arginusæ.	131
	3625	341		370	2				53
	4308	347		93					132
	3626	342		3					54
	4309	348		93					133
L. 3. c. 8. 5. 12.	3627	343		372	4				55
	4311	350		94					135
	3629	345		374	2				57
	4313	352		94					137
L. 3. c. 10. 5. 1.	3631	347		376	4				59

	Julian World.	Rome. Nabon.	Spitus.	Olym.	Persia.	Egypt.	Rome.	Greece.	teme. trans-act and
L. 3. c. 11. 5. 4.	4318	357		381		10		Agessilus war- reth in Asia.	142
	3636	352		3					64
L. 3. c. 11. 5. 7.	4320	359		383		12		The victory of Conon at Gnu- dus &c.	144
	3638	354		3					64
	4321	360		384		9		Was taken by Camillus.	145
	3639	355		4					67
	4325	364		388		17		The honorable vic- tory of Camillus over the Falisci.	149
L. 3. c. 11. 5. 11.	3643	359		388		17			71
	4326	365		389		18		The Peace of Astakidas.	150
L. 3. c. 11. 5. 9.	3644	360		3					72
	4327	376		390		19			151
	3645	361		3					73
	4332	371		395		24			156
	3650	366		3					160
L. 3. c. 11. 5. 11.	4336	375		399		28			82
	3654	376		3					164
	4340	379		403		32			86
	3658	374		3					167
L. 3. c. 12. 5. 1.	4343	382		406		35			89
	3661	377		2					169
	4345	384		408		37			91
L. 3. c. 12. 5. 4.	3663	379		4					97
	4351	396		414		7			175
	3669	385		2					97
L. 3. c. 12. 5. 8.	4352	391		415		10			176
	3676	386		3					98
	4354	393		417		3			178
	3672	388		1					100
	4359	398		422		8			183
L. 3. c. 1. 5. 4.	3677	393		2					105
	4364	403		427		107			188
	3682	398		3					110
	4368	407		431		17			192
L. 3. c. 1. 5. 6.	3686	402		3					114
	4369	408		432		18			193
L. 3. c. 1. 5. 4. 4.	3687	403		4					119
	4370	409		433		19			194
	3688	404		1					116
	4375	414		438		11			199
	3693	409		2					121

After this the years from Cy- rus and Daniel are too few to

	Julian and World.	Rome and Nabon.	Iphit.	Olymp.	Persia.	Egypt.	Rome.	Greece.	Jews From Cyrus Daniel.
	4376	415	110		2			23 The battle of Arbela 30 years after the death of Darius.	2
	3694	410	459	3				25 The battle of Issus 30 years after the death of Darius.	139
	4375	417	111		12	Nabon. Novemb. 15		25 The battle of Issus 30 years after the death of Darius.	140
	3696	412	441	1				25 The battle of Issus 30 years after the death of Darius.	141
	4379	418	111		2			25 The battle of Issus 30 years after the death of Darius.	142
	3697	413	442	2				25 The battle of Issus 30 years after the death of Darius.	143
	4380	419	111		3			25 The battle of Issus 30 years after the death of Darius.	144
	3698	414	443	3				25 The battle of Issus 30 years after the death of Darius.	145
	4381	420	111		4			25 The battle of Issus 30 years after the death of Darius.	146
L. 4. c. 7. 5.	3699	415	444	4	The battle of Issus.			25 The battle of Issus 30 years after the death of Darius.	147
L. 4. c. 2. 5. 6. & 7. & L. 5. c. 2. 5. 8.	4382	421	112		5		The Gauls enter into league with the Romans.	5 Alexander enters into league with the Romans.	8
	3700	416	445	1				5 Alexander enters into league with the Romans.	205
		Julian World.	Rome. Nabon.	Iphit.	Olymp.				
	4383	422	112		6				9
An Eclipse of the Moon.	3701	417	446	2	The battle of Arbela.				206
	4384	423	112		7				10
L. 4. c. 2. 5. 13.	3702	418	447	3	Darius slain by Beilus.				207
				</					

	Julian and World.	Rome. and Nabon.	Iphit.	Olymp.	Macedon.	Egypt.	Syria and the Kingdoms of the Greeks.	Greece.	Romans.	Jews. Daniel.
	4404	443	467	117	7	2	1. Seleucus, 30	Lib. 4. c. 5. 5. 7		14
The Era of the	3722	438	468	3			1			149
Antigonus Cap-	4406	445	469	118	9		3			16
tain of the name	3724	440	470	1			3			151
of Antigonus.	4413	452	471	119	16		3			23
L. 4. c. 6. 5. 4.	3731	447	472	4			10			158
	4414	453	473	120			10			159
	3732	448	474	1			11			160
	4417	456	475	121			12			161
	3735	451	476	4			13			162
L. 4. c. 6. 5. 7.	4421	460	477	122			14			163
	3739	455	478	1			15			164
	4427	466	479	123			16			165
	4745	461	480	2			17			166
	4428	467	481	124			18			167
	3746	462	482	3			19			168
	4429	468	483	125			20			169
	3747	463	484	4			21			170
The translation of	4432	471	485	126			22			171
the Bible by the Sep-	3750	466	486	1			23			172
tim.	4433	472	487	127			24			173
L. 4. c. 6. 5. 9. & 5. 2.	3751	467	488	2			25			174
	4434	473	489	128			26			175
	3752	468	490	3			27			176
L. 4. c. 7. 5. 3. & 7.	4436	475	491	129			28			177
	3754	470	492	4			29			178
	4438	477	493	130			30			179
L. 5. c. 2. 5. 6.	3756	472	494	1			31			180
	4439	478	495	131			32			181
	3757	473	496	2			33			182
	4441	480	497	132			34			183
L. 4. c. 7. 5. 5.	3759	475	498	1			35			184
	4445	484	499	133			36			185
The Translation by the	3763	497	500	2			37			186
Septuagint, this	4446	485	501	134			38			187
of Philadelphus.	3764	480	502	3			39			188
	4450	489	503	135			40			189
	3768	484	504	4			41			190

	Indian and World.	Hebrew Nabers.	Hebrew Spir.	Olymp.	Macedon.	Egypt.	Syria and the Kingdom of the Greeks.	Greece.	Roman.	Jewes.	Conful.
	4453	492		129	18	25	1. Antiochus Theus. 15			8	L. V. Antioch.
	4771	487	516	4						198	T. Othob.
L. 5. c. 1. § 6.	4454	393		130	19	26	2		Darius his vi- tory at Sea.	9	C. Darius.
	772	488	517	1			5:		Regular pe- jeth into Af- rick.	199	Cn. Cornelius.
	4457	496	520	130	22	29	5			12	M. Atilia Reg.
	3772	491		4			54			202	Cn. Cornelius.
L. 5. c. 1. § 8.	4458	497	521	131	23	30	6	Marcus Car- menis Prato of the Achae.	Regular taken prisoners.	13	L. Manlius.
	3776	492		1			55			203	C. Caelius.
	4403	502		132	28	35	11	Aratus reduces Sparta, & signifi- to the Achaeans.		18	L. Caelius.
	3781	497	526	2			60			208	C. Furius.
The Roman Consul's beaten at Lebitanum.	4464	504		132	29	36	12		Regular his death.	19	C. Atilius.
The recovery of the Pa- trian Kingdom.	3782	498		2			61			209	L. Manlius.
	4465	504	528	132	30	37	13		Ships rich & a happy fight of the Romans at Sea.	20	P. Claudius, Pulcher, and L. Titius.
	3783	499		4			62			210	L. Titius.
	4467	506		133			15			22	L. Cassius.
	3785	501	530	3	32	1. Ptole- my Euergetes 16	64			212	M. Fabius.
Amilcar the Cartha- ginian in Sicily.	4467	508		133	34	3	1. Scipio Calli- nicus. 66			24	C. Atilius.
Lib. 5. c. 1. § 11.	5787	503	532	4						214	C. Atilius.
	4472	511		134	2. Deme- trius 10	6	4		Lucius his great victory at Tegates.	27	C. Laet. Calp.
	3790	506	535	3			69			217	A. Postumius.
The war of the Mer- cenaries with the Car- thaginians. L. 5. c. 2.	4473	512		134	2	7	5	Aratus wins the Corinth.	Peace granted to Carthage.	218	A. Manlius.
	3791	507	536	4			70			218	A. Manlius.
	4473	513		135	8		6			219	C. Claudius.
	7392	508	537	1	3	8	71			219	M. Sempronius.
The war with the Macedonians ended.	4476	515		135	5	10	8		The Romans take Sardinia from the Carthaginians.	3	Gracchus.
	3794	510	539	3			73			221	Falco.
	4482	521		137	1. Antigonus De- metrius 10	16	14			9	Lepidus.
	3800	516	545	1			79			227	M. Aemilius.
	4483	522		137	2	17	15	A Roman Embas- sador slain by Queen Teuta.		12	M. Aemilius.
	3801	517	546	2			80			230	M. Junius.
	4485	524		137	4	19	17		Teuta, Queen of Illyria, subdued by the Romans.	10	L. Postumius.
L. 5. c. 2. § 7.	3803	519	548	4			82			234	C. Fulvius.
	4489	528		138	8	23	1. Sertorius Ci- sinnus. 86			16	L. Aemilius.
L. 5. c. 5. § 1.	3807	523	552	4						224	C. Atilius.
Flaminius was ap- pointed Consul this year. See L. 5. c. 2. § 8.	4492	531		139	11	26	1. Antiochus the Great. 36.		Macedonias his Army over the Achaean above said.	19	C. Cornelianus.
	3810	526	555	3						237	M. Marcius.
	4493	532		139			2			20	P. Cornelianus.
L. 5. c. 5. § 2.	3811	527	556	4	12	1. Ptole- my Philo- pater, 27	90			238	M. Aemilius.
	4494	533		140	1. Ptole- my 42	2	3			20	L. Aemilius.
	3812	528	557	1			91			239	C. Laetianus.

	Julian World.	Rome Nabon.	Epit. Olym- piads.	Macedon.	Egypt.	Syria & king- dome of the Greeks.	Greece.	Rome.	Jews and Daniel.	Congit.
L. 5. 4. 5. 9.	4527	566	590	148	34	18	36	124	26	Levitic.
	3845	561		2				6	272	Flamin.
	4528	567	591	148	35	19	124	6	27	S. Paphia.
	3846	562		3				125	273	M. Marius.
L. 5. 6. 5. 2.	4531	570	594	149	38	22	4	128	30	M. Marius.
	3849	565		2				128	276	M. Marius.
	4532	571	595	149	39	23	5		31	P. Marius.
L. 5. 6. 5. 3.	3850	566		3				129	277	C. Marius.
	4533	572	596	149	40	24	6		32	C. Marius.
Cap. 6. 5. 4.	3851	567		4				130	278	M. Marius.
	4534	573	597	150	41	25	7		33	A. Marius.
	3852	568		1				131	279	P. Marius.
	4535	574	598	150	42	26	8		34	P. Marius.
	3853	569		2				132	280	M. Marius.
An Eclipse of the Moon the 7. of Philomachus, 193 years, and 208 days from the be- ginning of Nabonassar, which agrees with this ac- count, was by Julian years, the 100. of Syria, about the middle of the month.	4540	579	603	151	6	7	7		35	S. Marius.
	3858	574		3				133	285	S. Marius.
	4541	580	604	151	7	8	8		36	A. Marius.
	3859	575		4				138	286	S. Marius.
	4543	582	606	152	9	10	9		37	G. Marius.
	3861	577		2				140	290	M. Marius.
	4545	584	608	152	11	11	10		38	S. Marius.
	3863	579		3				142	291	S. Marius.
A total Eclipse of the Moon, beginning the 20. of June, at the X. of Nabonassar.	4546	589	609	153	12	12	11		39	L. Marius.
	3864	580		1				143	292	G. Marius.
	4547	586	610	153	13	13	12		40	C. Marius.
	3865	581		2				144	293	M. Marius.
	4549	588	612	153	14	14	13		41	T. Marius.
	3867	581		3				146	294	O. Marius.

FINIS.

# An Alphabetical Table of the Principall Contents of the First and Second Books of the First Part of the History of the VVorld.

Wherein the first number signifieth the Leaf,  
the second the Line.

A	Brahams age before Noah died, 67. 48. He was the first instru- ment of the Chaldeans, Phani- cians, and Egyptians, in Astrology and divine knowledge, 172. 25. Was con- temporary with Ninus, 181. 48. His journey from Haran to Canaan, 183. 21. His first en- try into Canaan, 185. 20. is childelasse, till about ten years after his arrivall in Canaan, Ibid. 29. His age when he rescued Lot. 191.	ter times, Agag, a generall name of the Kings of the Amalekites, Agator his proceeding, Agamemnon and Menelaus at variance, Ade forraign ill-swived, All formes are in the first Mover, 12. 30 All Kings called Jupiters by the ancient, Aleppo, anciently called Magos, Alba longa, founded by Avcanus, Amphiarus his destiny, Amazie his dissimulation, His base Idolatry, 469. 10. His quarrell a- gainst Israel, 470. 4. his overthrow, 471. 3 his exprobrations, 475. 10. his Plasterers, 474. 5. he is generally hated, 475. 5 Ambition the first sin, Annius, quite contrary to Moses, in the situ- ation of Henoch, 63. 10. his vanity in plan- ting Gomer in Italy and Tubal in Spain, in the twelfth of Nimrods reign, 123. ult. Contradictory to himself, 123. 10. How he be credited, His Philo, An answer to some few objections against certain particulars in the fourth and fifth chapters of Genesis, Answer of a German Prince to those that perswaded him to become a Lutheran, 229. 30 An Indian, presented unto Solomon the Turks General, in Anno 1570. who had out-lived three hundred years, Andromeda her delivery by Perseus, 328. An enemies approbation, the best witness. Androclus, the Founder of Ephesus, 421. Anastatius the Emperour slain by Light- ning, Antichupon the River Orontes, whereof S. Peter was Bishop, Apollo	238. 30 265. 50 304. 30 388. 10 495. 4 12. 30 75. 10 31. 10 500. 30 369. 30 469. 20 471. 3 475. 10 475. 5 365. 30 63. 10 123. 10 123. 10 454. 40 63. 30 229. 30 66. 40 328. 391. 2 421. 10 503. 5 139. 50 Apollo
---	---	---	---



## The Table.

Apollo his Temple at Delphos, consumed with fire from heaven; under Julian Apostata: with the divers ruins it suffered, 82.  
 Armenia, and Mesopotamia; first of all known by the name of Eden, 45. 10  
 Araxæ, a Nation of Annis his making, 101. 50  
 Ararat's misprison cleared, 106. 40  
 Aradus, a City in the Ile of Arados, where S. Peter preached (according to Clement) & founded a Church in honour of our Lady, 839. 30  
 Aram Naharajim, now Mesopotamia, 151.  
 Argives, how they came to be called Danai, 132. 10  
 Aristides his Ephemerides of Dreams, 175. 50  
 Armeus, otherwise Danaus, King of Egypt, expelled thence by his brother Ægyptus, 205. Afterwards King of Argos in Greece, ibid.  
 Arad, King of the Canaanites, surpriseth divers Israelites, 250. 50  
 Arcas, the son of Orchomenus, of whom Arcadia took name, 267. 6  
 Arias Montanus his derivation of the name Heber, 269. 30  
 Arbaces destroyed Ninive, 482. 20. his 100 much lenity, ibid.  
 Aristodemus his blinde zeal, with the fruits thereof, 529. 50  
 Aristocrates his perfidie, 530. 6. Worthily rewarded, 531. 30  
 Aristomenes his valour during the siege of Era, his strange escape out of prison, 531. 30  
 30. his death and buriall, 530. 30  
 Ascania, a Lake bordering on Phrygia, 145. 10  
 Assur, the name thereof diversly taken, 162. ult.  
 Assyrians demand aid of Croesus, 192. 30  
 Asarte, 282. 50  
 Alcäus, one of the sons of Hymenæus, 319. 40  
 Ascalon, the birth-City of Herod, Christs persecutor, 320. 3. Repaired by Richard K. of England, ibid.  
 Alcäpius his practice to cure the French, 404. 50  
 Asychis his sharp Law, 520. 10  
 Athos, an exceeding high mountain between Macedon and Thracia, and how far it casteth, 105. 50  
 Athenians true originall, 121. 30. Their pride, 367. 30

Atlas, divers of that name, 266. 40  
 Athalia her practices, 446. 40. Her cruelty, 450. 10. Her sacrilege, 452. 40. Her indiscretion and death, 460. 10  
 Atossa her wantonnesse, 457. 30  
 Augustines answer to those that take the Tree of Life allegorically, 57. 20. His discourse on the Arke, 94. 10. His Milanais, 175. 50. His opinion concerning Baal and Asarte, 282. 50

### B

Abel was forty years in building, 100. 30. Not walled till Scmiramis time, 187  
 Babylonians Dove, 183. 40  
 Balonymus invested in the Kingdom of Zidon, 306. 40  
 Bafan, an exceeding fertill Region, 334. 40  
 Bdelium, growing plentifully in Havilah or Sufiana, 50. 20  
 Before the beginning, there was neither primary matter to be informed, nor forme to inform, nor any being but Eternal, 1. 30  
 Belus (properly) the first that peaceably and with generall allowance exercised sovereign power, 159. 10. His Sepulchre, 165. 50  
 Bel, the signification thereof, 165. 10  
 Bellonius his report of the Pyramids in Egypt, 184. 10  
 Bellephophon and Pegasus moralized, 356. 40  
 Bel-zebubs Temple, 318. 10  
 Benhadad, twice overthrown by Ahab, 341. 10  
 Beroaldus his solution of the doubts arising of the difficulty of the Text, that a River went out of Eden, 46  
 Berfabæ, why not named by S. Matthew, 415. 20. 50  
 Bethsaida, the native City of the apostles, Peter, Andrew, and Philip, 296. ult.  
 Bethleem, the native City of Ibsan, Elimelec and Christ, 317. 10  
 Bethsan, anciently Nyssa, built by Liber Pater, 300. 10  
 Bozias his indiscretion, 310. 20  
 Boreas his rape of Orithya, 354. 5  
 Britains Boats in the time of the Romans, 135. 1  
 Their manner of fight, 213. 5  
 Briareus moralized, 439. 1

### C

Abala, what it importeth, 67. 40  
 Cadmus, the first that brought letters into

## The Table.

into Batia, 268. 30  
 Cain, his departure from Gods presence, 61. 20  
 not to be understood literally, 62. 20  
 A Vagabond, how understood, 472. 30  
 Caponi his resolution, 177. 40  
 Cardans mortall Devils, 335  
 Carthaginians, anciently Tyrians, 494. 10  
 Carthaginians butchery, 298. 50  
 Castle of Pilgrims, 91. 10  
 Cataractæ Cœli, probably expounded, 60. 40  
 Cause of Adam and Eves disobedience, 60. 40

Cethim, afterward called Macedon, 126  
 Cedar, the native City of Barac, 295. 20  
 Chaldaea, Babylonia, Shinar: three names of one Country, 42. 20  
 Chaldeans, descended of Arphaxad, 145. 10  
 Chalvybes, and their condition of life, 117. 40

Cham, intituled Jupiter Hammon by the Egyptians, 79. 10  
 Charran, sometime called Charre, Havan, and Aran: are the same Charran in Mesopotamia, 41. 30. Famous by the overthrow of Crassus, 42. 10  
 Chebar, mentioned by Ezechiel, but a branch of Euphrates, 50. 50  
 Chemmis his Pyramis, 419. 10  
 Cheops his daughter, ibid. 30  
 Chifon, on whose banks the Idolatrous Priests of Achab were slaughtered, 299. 10  
 Cidarim, a garment belonging unto the Persian Kings, 194. 10  
 Cimbri, whence so named, 118. 30  
 Cimmerians invade Asia, 532. 10  
 Civill Law defined, 243. 40  
 Cleanthes his description of G O D by his attributes and properties, 81. 10  
 Codrus his resolution, 420. 40  
 Collis Achilleæ, a steep Mountain, 254. 10

Comestors tale of Moses and Tharbis, 210. 50  
 Conjectures on the time of Deucalions for murdering Isobeth, ibid. 407. 20. His dancing before the Arke, and deriding by Contingency, not a virtue, but a degree unto it, 240. 40  
 Congo, diverted from Christian religion, of Cath. ibid. 40. endangered by Ishibenob ibid. 56. His destruction of the Moabites, 409. 10. His ambassage to Hanan, 410. 7. &c. His victory at Belam, ibid. His crosses after his adultery with Bagheba, 411. 40. His extreme sorrow for the death of Absalom, 413. 5. His reason for delivering Sauls sons, or kinsmen, to the Gibeonites, 360. 30

Confidence in signes, in stead of the substance, 390. 5  
 Corall in the Red Sea, 219. 30  
 Correction of the Julian year by Pope Gregory the Thirteenth, 215. 40  
 Cornelius Tacitus contradictory unto himself, 349. 50  
 Countesse of Desmond her long life, 60. 40  
 Creon his cruelty, 371  
 Cruelty the chief cause of the Flood, 61. 20. 10  
 Cursing of parents, 339. 30  
 Cuth, the son of Ham, with his sons Sheba, Havilah &c. first seated in the valley of Shinar: which Region was afterwards denominated after the name of Havilah, 32. 20  
 Cuth, and the region of the Ismaelites, extended directly North from Ethiopia, 52. 40  
 Cuth, mistaken for Ethiopia, proved, ibid.  
 Cuth, being taken for Ethiopia, is the cause of much mistaking in Scriptures, 129. 50  
 Custome of Tanistry in Ireland, 244. 50  
 Cyril his comparison of Cain and the Jewes, 61. 59  
 Cyaxares foretold Ninive, 541. 50. Is compelled to abandon Assyria, 542. 10. His extremity and remedy, 547. 50

### D

Agon, the Idoll of the Philistines, described, 182. ult.  
 Dalaqua, an Island in the Red Sea, 219. 20  
 Dardania, built by Dardanus, 206. 30  
 David his election to the Kingdom, 399. 10. his combat with Goliath, 400. 1. his many dangers in Sauls time, 404. 40. his justice on the fellow that avowed himself to have slain Saul, 405. 40. his imprecation against Iob, 406. ult. his justice on Rechab and Baanah, for murdering Isobeth, ibid. 407. 20. His dancing before the Arke, and deriding by Contingency, not a virtue, but a degree unto it, 240. 40  
 Congo, diverted from Christian religion, of Cath. ibid. 40. endangered by Ishibenob ibid. 56. His destruction of the Moabites, 409. 10. His ambassage to Hanan, 410. 7. &c. His victory at Belam, ibid. His crosses after his adultery with Bagheba, 411. 40. His extreme sorrow for the death of Absalom, 413. 5. His reason for delivering Sauls sons, or kinsmen, to the Gibeonites, 360. 30

# The Table

414. 4. His love to Jonathan, expressed in sparing his son Mephibosheth, <i>ibidem</i> .	Country bordering it, 43. 10. An Island of that name in Tygris, described 45. 30. known by the name of Gersara,	46. 30
His speech in Parliament and the approbation thereof, 415. 40. His advice to Salomon concerning Shimei, 416. 40. 5. His death, personage, and interpell. <i>ibidem</i> .	Education in perfect influence,	14. 4
Debris of cruelty and mercy never left unsatisfied, 361. 12	Effects of fear,	262. 10
Deceit in all professions, 177. 2	Eglon subdueth Israel,	329. 6
Deiotes his strict form of government, 528. 30. He built Tanis, formerly called Esbeitan,	Elius or Sol his pedigree,	78. 20
Deiotes Temple, 319. 50	Emaus overthrow by Earthquake,	322. 50
Deucalion and Phacton, contemporaries with Moles,	Emims, Giants of huge stature,	258. 2
Devil's policy, 175. 30	Enoch and Elias at the time of the Flood could not be in the terrestriall Paradise,	38. 10
Diagoras had three sons, 492. 40	Enoch, the first City of the world, built by Cain,	62. 10
Difference of Translations about the signification of Gopher, whereof the Ark was made, 93. 30	Epaphus, Founder of Memphis in Egypt,	205. 20
Difference of Authors, concerning the Mountains of Ararat, 104. 30	Epaminondas, Author of the Messenian replantation in their old possessions, 532	
Difference between Necromancers and Witches, 178. 30	Ephori in Lacedamon, the time of their beginning,	363. 20
Difference between Emath and Hamath, reconciled, 139. 50	Ephraimites quarrell with Gideon, 360. 10	
Diffidence, the Bar to Moles and Aarons entry into the Land of promise, 4	Epiphanius his answer to such as draw the truth of the story of Paradise, to a meer Allegoricall understanding,	32. 10
Diodorus his report for the original of the Gods, 76. 30	Era, betrayed by a slave,	530. 50
Distance between the Flood and Abraham, 190. 30. and between the Flood of Ogyges, and that of Noah,	Error of such as understood the sons of God, Gen. 5. 24. to be Angels,	69. 30
Distance between Tyre and Zidon, 282. 10	Esay the Prophet, his cruel death,	523. 50
Divers repaired from Age to Tenth, 66. 50	Eshangaber, where Solomon built his Rest,	253. 1
Divers computations of years, 214. 30	Evangelion diversly taken,	236. 30
Divers appellations of the Red-Sea, 218. 54	Euphrates and Tygris, two guides to Eden, 40. 1. Being two of the four heads, whereinto the River of Paradise is divided,	45. 20
Diverse things in the scripture referred to the reading of other books, which by injury of time are lost or perished, 257. 30	Euphrates it self is divided into four branches,	47. 20
Divers Mercies, 138. 31	Eusebius his error,	518. 30
Dodanim, the fourth son of Javan, the first planter of Rhodes, 126. 10	Ezekia his godly beginning, 504. 20. Is besieged by Sennacherib, 506. 30. Miraculously delivered, 507. 30. &c. his oversight,	508. 20
Dogs first brought by the Spaniards into Hispaniola, changed into Wolves, 95. 10		
Domitian his shamelesse Spectacle, 361. 50	F	
Doubts concerning the time of the Earths division after the Flood, 187. 1	Ficus Indica described, 57. 50. Allegorized,	59. 10
	First or last naming in Scripture, no proof, who was first or last born,	167. 40
	Fortescue his report of a judgement given at Salisbury,	247. 20
	Frederick Barbarossa his end and buriall,	321. 20
	From the same place where man had his beginning, from thence again had Men their	

# The Table

their increase,	55. 20	Halyattes his reason for defending the Scythians against Cyaxares,	546. 30
	G	Ham, father of the Egyptians,	146. 50
Amata a strong City, forced by Vespasian,	335. 30	Haran, the eldest son of Terah,	188. 50
Ganges fallen into the Ocean divers degrees to the Eastward from Indus,	49. 50	Havilah, one of Joctans sons, found in the Continent of the East India,	150. 20
Gaza, a goodly City, surprized by Alexander Janneus King of the Jews,	335. 10	Hibron, where Adam, Abraham, Isaac, & Jacob were buried,	322. 30
Gehazites and Simonians,	315. 40	Helen the Emperesse her sumptuous Chapell,	297. 50
Gehor, Founder of Cairo,	515. 40	Hellen and Melantho, sons of Deucalion,	267. 50
Gehon disproved to be Nilus, 52. 2. So confessed by Pterius,	52. 40	Hecnoch was not dissolved at the rest, 69. 2	
Geometrical cubite not used in scripture,	95. 30	Henricus Mechliniensis his observations touching the general Flood,	86. 50
Gergesius, the first son of Canaan, first Founder of Berytus (afterward called Felix Julia) in Phoenicia,	338. 40	Hercules, native of Thyrinavia, to whom the twelve labours are ascribed,	72. 30
Geographers Maps,	489. 40	Herod his Harbours,	302. 30
Georgians, from what place they take their names,	105. 20	Herodium a magnificent Castle, built by Herod,	327. 30
Giants, men of great stature and strength, to have been before the Flood, proved by Scriptures; and that there are like now by experience,	70. 20	Herodotus his testimony of Eden, and the Country adjoining, 48. 10. His argument; that Helen was not at Troy during the siege,	384. 2
Gideon his oversight and overthrow, 361. 20. His Contemporaries,	ibid.	Hierusalem, how uncertain the time is of her first building,	347. 5
God foreknew and comprehended the beginning and end before they were,	28. 10	Hippones his cruel justice,	910. 20
He wrought the greatest things by the weakest means, 211. 10. His first punishment of the Egyptians, was in changing those Rivers into blood, whereinto formerly their Fathers had thrown the Hebrews innocent children, 212. 10. His secret hand in all manner of accidents, 260. 40. His punishment of places for the peoples sakes,	349. 10	Hiram his displeasure against Solomon, 288. 10. His policy in holding league with Israel,	309. 50
Godly use to be made of praying towards the East,	31. 30	Historians, borrowers of Poets, 457. 2. Historical caution,	511. 30
Gog and Magog; what is understood by them,	116. 4	Homer and Hesiod, placed in Hell (for their fictions) by Pythagoras, 79. 30. his partiality in Achilles praise,	386. 30
Good Spirits not to be constrained,	178. 20	Hookers definition of Law,	227. 1
Golden age,	155. 40	Horatius and Cutilias their combats,	335. 20
Great slaughter of the Israelites,	252. 3	How the text, speaking of four heads (into which the River of Paradise was divided) is to be understood,	47. 50
Greeks vanity in holding that no Flood preceded that of Ogyges, 84. 10. Their malice,	144. 10	How the Tree of Life is understood by the Hebrews,	56. 50
gyges obtaineth the Kingdome of Lydia,	510. 40	How ridiculous their resolution is, that reckon the Ages of the first Patriarchs by Babylon or Egyptian years,	85. 40
	H	How far the education and sanctifying of the names differ from former Ages,	
Abdon, Judge of Israel, in whose time happened the destruction of Troy,	367. 50	How the certain knowledge of the Creation came to Moles,	87. 10
Father of forty sons, and thirty grandchildren,	377. 20	How the appointed number of creatures to be saved, might have place in the Ark, 95	
Halon the Tartar forceth Damascus,	339. 40	How the west part of America, to the South of Panama, came to be called Peris,	149. 10

## The Table.

Hus, the country of Job, how bounded,	146.6	by S. Paul and S. James,	20. 10
Hillus and Echennus their combat,	402.50	Indus descent into the Ocean,	50. 3
		India, the first peopled Country after the Flood,	49.20
		In whose time it was that Moses led Israel out of Egypt,	208. 10
<b>I</b> Alpha, a strong place forced by Titus;	297.20	Invention of Alcinous Gardens drawn by Homer from Moses his description of Paradise,	32.50
Idanthura his answer to Darius his letters,	273. 10	Invention of Ethnick sacrifice ascribed to Cain,	73.30
Idle Chroniclers,	369.1	Joab his jealousy, of his place and dignity,	407.10
Idolaters vanity,	167. 10	Joas, King of Judah (in probability) not the natural son of Ahazia,	435.40
Jehojada his godly care,	453.10	his forwardness to repair the Temple,	461. 50
459.20. He proclaimeth Joas, ibid. His honourable interment,	461.7	forced to buy his peace,	462. 50
Jehojakim his impiety,	555.10	His death,	465.30
revel from Nabuchodonosor,	552.20	Joas, King of Israel, his triumphant entry into Jerusalem,	471.10
ibid.		His end,	433.20
Jehoram his cruelty towards his Brethren,	444.19	Job his sepulchre,	336.50
and was the first that erected irreligion by force,	ibidem	Who he was,	366
ibidem 40. Sec. is oppressed by the Philistines and Arabians,	445.40	Whence were his friends, Elihu and the rest,	1337.20
His wretched end,	446.40	John, the son of Levi, his commotions,	288.30
Jehothaphat his great numbers of Soldiers,	2 Chron. 17. how to be understood,	Jonas, the story of his prophesie,	481.40
439.50. Sec. is reprehended for aiding Ahab,	441.4	Jonathan, his happy resolution,	398.10
40. Loseth his fleet by shipwrack,	441.4	Tones and Medes, from whom descended,	119.30
In great extremity for want of water,	ibid.	Tones expelled Peloponnesus,	401.50
Monument,		Foppa in Judaea, founded before the Flood,	84.40
Jehu and his proceedings,	446.20	Burnt to the ground by the Romans,	312.1
his execution of Baals priests,	451.50	Joseph his reason in favouring the Egyptian Priests,	201. ult.
His ingratitude and punishment,	452.10	Esteemed the first Mercury,	269.20
Jephtha his just defence against the Ammonites,	325.7	Josephus, the first Author of mistaking Pison for Ganges,	50.50
Jeremie the Prophet his death and burial,	555.20	Mistaken in his own tale,	127.40
Jericho, one of the Toparchies of Judaea,	344.40	Condemned together with Apollinaris, for avowing Moses to have married both Tharbis and Sippora,	128.40
Jeroboam his wicked policy,	314.10	Joseph Scaliger his short answer,	486.20
His end,		His retraction,	487.20
Israel, where Naboth was stoned,	301.20	Josias his zeal to God,	536.40
Jethro or Jethor, Raguel or Revel, and Hobab, all one person,	267.27	His fidelity to the King of Babel,	538.3
His departure from Moses,	224.30	His death, ibid.	40
Jewish impiety,	359. ult.	Josua his remove from Sittim unto the banks of Jordan,	274.3
Improbability of their conjecture, That place Paradise beyond the Ocean,	36.50	His passage thither, ibid.	20
Improbability of the confusion of tongues at the birth of Peleg,	99.50	His skill in war,	275.10
Improbability of the short time of ten years, allowed by some for the finishing of Babel,	113.30	His keeping faith with the Gibeonites, ibid.	30
Improbability of the waters standing upright (like walls) in the Red Sea, as some Schoolmen have fancied,	220.20	His death,	277.30
Image and Similitude taken in one sense		His Sepulchre,	312.50
		Foropata, a strong City, fortified by Josephus,	297.5
		Jotham	

## The Table.

Jotham his Encomion, by Josephus,	439.20	Lucian his suppall concerning Helen,	384.5
Irreligions cavilling,	280.20	His errand to Hell to speak with Homer,	404.8
out policy,	431.30	Lucini, the eldest son of Mizraim, first progenitor of the Lybians in Africa,	142.40
Isaac his birth, rather a miracle wrought upon Sarah than upon Abraham,	185.50	Lycurgus his Law,	229.20
His prophesie,	444.30	Lyda, (afterward Diopolis) where S. Peter cured Aeneas of the palsy,	143.4
Isaac and Sarah, two names of one signification,	188.40		
Isles of Eliza, mentioned by Ezekiel,	124.50	<b>M</b>	
Ismaelites and Amalekites, possess of the Countries between Havilah and Sur, wasted afterwards by Saul,		Machabees Sepulchre,	319.5
Israel punished in Sauls time for slaughter of the Gibeonites, contrary to the faith before given by Joshua,	276.20	Machanaim where the Angels met Jacob for his defence,	331.50
Israelites overthrown by the Philistines,	389.40	Maeharus, a strong City and Castle, where John Baptista was beheaded,	325. ult.
Jupiter Belus, the son of Nimrod,	79.2	Madianites slain by Gideon,	264.40
Jupiter, renowned among the Greeks and Romans, born not long before the war of Troy,	ibid. 19	Magdalah, the habitation of Mary Magdalen,	297.4
Justice vendible,	392.50	Magick, according to Plato,	171.20
<b>K</b>		properly termed Necromancy,	174.30
Kenites and Madianites of two sorts,	224.10	helper in knowing the Divinity of Christ,	ibid.4
Kethura, wife to Abraham, the maternal Ancestor of the Kenites,	223.50	Mahometane Arabians descended of the Ismaelites,	52.30
Kingdom gained by an Asses losse,	394.40	Man, wherein he chiefly resembles God, or may be called the shadow of God,	23.10
Kingdome of Argos translated to Mycana,	358.20	Manner of fight at the Trojan war,	386.6
Kings made by God and lawes divine, by humane lawes only so declared,		Many thousand Jewes overwhelmed in rebuilding the Temple under Julian Apostata,	82.40
<b>L</b>		Many of the Species, which now seem differing were not at the time of the general Deluge in rerum natura,	94.50
Lactantius his judgement of the first Mercury,	269.20	Marse, the Native City of Michæas,	322.20
Law amongst the Romans,	175.20	Margiana, where Alexander feasted himself and his Army,	107.50
Law humane defined,	242.20	Marus his Labyrinth,	524.40
Law national defined,	243.30	Means which the Greeks were forced to use for maintenance of the siege before Troy,	384.50
Law abused grievously punished,	393.40	Medusa moralized,	356.30
Law of Moles diversly taken,	233.50	Menehem his inhumane cruelty,	480.20
Law-makers, no less beneficiall to their Countries, than the greatest Conquerours,	225.20	Menon (first husband of Semiramis) his death,	169.30
Lawes, not imposed as a burthen, but a blessing,	241.20	Mercator his conceits, That Nimrod and Ninus were one and the same person, answered,	159.50
Lehabim, the son of Mizraim, called Hercules Lybius,	201.10	Mercabants of Eden traded with the City of Tyre,	
Letters among the Chinois long before either Egyptians or Phœnicians,	98.40	Mercurius Trismegistus his writings, in some places (probably) corrupted,	269.10
Licentious disorder, proved (upon better tryall) no less perillous than an undurable bondage,	152.30	His two last speeches, ibid. 50. His many books,	271.30
Lords of Theron, whence denominated,	287.50	Merodach investeth himself in the kingdome of Babylon,	508.40
		Messene	

## The Table.

Miffene in Sicily, by what occasion so. na. med. 531. 50  
Minaus and Menis names or titles of dignity. 203. 10  
Miriam her Sepulchre. 353. 40  
Mock Divinity. 175. 1  
Moloch described with his sacrifices, 494. 4  
Money not used in Greece in Homers time, 368. 4  
Monuments of Jupiters Tombe in the Mount Jafius, remaining in Epiphanius his time, 76. 20  
Mofal, or Mozal, anciently called Seleucia Parthorum, 44. 30  
Mofcovians from whence descended, 120. 50  
Their waring, 548. 50  
Moses Bar-cepas his opinion concerning the Tree of Knowledge, 57. 50  
Moses did not number the generations before the Flood precisely, 64. 40. his preservation, 210. 20. His birth time, 221. 50. His compass by the Rivers of Zared and Arnon, 256. 5. His message to Sehon King of the Amorites, ibid. 40. His reason for not entering immediately into Canaan, after his victory against Sehon, 258. 5. His death, 260. 5  
Mountains and Rivers, formerly named of the Ancient after their own names, or their Antiquities names: and the cause why, 126. 20.  
Mountains of Paria, their length, 159. 30  
Mourning for Thammuz, 283. 3  
Magic-magick, 178. 40  
Multiplicity of gods, 168. 6  
Myris a great lake in Egypt, 515. 40  
**N**aboth, the eldest sonne of Ilimael, 262. 3  
Nabuchodonosor overthrown by Nebuchad. 550. 30. His peremptory message to Jehoiakim, ibid. 50. His conquest of Egypt, 581. 40. He besieged Tyre, ibid. 14. He put Jehoiakim to death, 552. 20. He besieged Jerusalem, 553. 30. And forced him, 554. 7. He destroyed the Temple, ibid. 40  
Nabaz, a cruel King of the Ammonites, 333. 50  
Nebo, the Idoll oracle of the Amorites, 326. 50  
Nectar and Ambrosia, attending in the Poets to the Tree of life, 57. 30  
Nestorians, parts of their general Epistle to the Pope, 46. 2  
Nimrod, seated in the confluent of those Rivers which was cled Paradise, 152. 40. The first founder of Ninive, 112. 6. his buildings 163. 40  
Ninias, so. to Semiramis, an effeminate Prince, 194. 30  
Ninive formerly called Campfor, 181. 50  
Ninus his time of Government, after the Flood, 134. The first notorious sacrificer to Idols, 163. 8  
Noah his sundry appellations, 91. 30. Analogically conferred with Janus, 118. 10. A City of that name upon the banks of the Red Sea, ibid. 40. He never came so far Westward as Babylon, 100. 30. Is no more remembered in Scripture after his sacrifice, and the cause, 101. 10. His children came not altogether to Shinar, 103. 30  
Nobility in parchment, 157. 10  
Noema, or Naamath, the sister of Tubalcain, expounded by Saint Augustine, 73. 40  
Numa his Law, 169. 10. his graves, 534. 30  
His books, ibid.  
**O**ake of Mambré, 255. 30  
Obedience to Princes commanded without distinction, 154. 50  
Occasion of obcurity in the Egyptian Stories, 197. 50. and of the supplicatory letters of the Nestorians to the Pope, in the year 1552. 45  
Oceanus and Hesperus, Contemporaries with Moses, 266. 40  
Of the Masse, indigested matter, or Chaos, created in the beginning, 4. 50  
Offences punished without form of judgement, cause the offenders to seem innocent, 437. 50  
Ogyges Contemporary with Jacob, 84. 10  
olympiads whence so called, 490. 40  
One of the pillars erected by Seth, the third from Adam, was by Josephus testimony, to be seen in his dayes, 35. 20  
Ophir, one of Joctans sons, seated in the Moluccas in the East India, 148. 10  
Opinions concerning the length of mans life 66. 30. And concerning Jupiters, the son of Saturne and Ops, 75. 30. And concerning Moses his birth time, 207. 10. And concerning Nimrod, 124. 40  
Oracles of Amphiparaus, 175. 10  
Ongen his Sepulchre, 320. 30  
Orofius his report of Pharaohs Chariot wheels, 221. 30  
Ophiubus his instruction to Mufæus concerning God, 10  
Orus the second (or Bultrix) Author of the Exact for drowning the Hebrew Children, 204. 20  
Osiris,

## The Table.

Osiris, the eldest son of Cham. 200. 30  
 offers growing on trees, 58. 20

**P**acuvius his wife carriage with the  
 Commons in Capua, 490. 30  
 Painters wives Island, ibid. 10  
 Palm-trees, whereof the people do make  
 Bread, Honie, Wine, Vinegar, and fine Flax,  
 48. 30  
 Paradise of Eden, truly taken for the pro-  
 per name of a place, 30. 30. By knowing the  
 place whereof, we may better judge of the be-  
 ginning, 44. 20. A City of that name in Ca-  
 naan, 49. 20  
 Paternal authority in transferring birth-  
 right, 422. 50  
 Paternity and Eldership, the first govern-  
 ment, 151. 50  
 Patience wounded, 389. 20  
 Pelafgus, king of Arcadia, 265. 50  
 Pelusium, a great City upon the branch of  
 Nilus; next Arabia, 130. 40  
 People in the Indies, near far greater water-  
 falls than the Cataracts of Nilus, are not deaf  
 at all, 38. 3  
 Periander a cruel Tyrant, 549. 30  
 Petra, the native City of Ruth, 327. 40  
 Pharaoh his Sorcerers Frogs, 179. 6  
 His Army where with he pursued the Israe-  
 lites, 213. 8  
 Pharaoh his devillish policy, 209. 40. The  
 ground of his cruelty, 210. 6  
 Pharaoh Vaphres, Father in law to Sa-  
 argon, 202. 50  
 Pheron, son to Sesostris, astonisheth his  
 Father's name, 203. 30. Is stricken blinde,  
 ibid. Recovered, ibid.  
 Philistin, destroyed with Thunder, 392.  
 16. Their policy in not prosecuting the vic-  
 tory after Sauls death, 416. 1  
 Philosophers ignorant in nature, and the  
 ways of her working, 11. 50  
 Philostratus in vita Apollonii Tiane, 98. 30  
 Phidias, though fabulously express, 363. 40  
 Phineus, and the Harpies, 359. 30  
 Phenicians navigation about Africk, 359.  
 10

Phraortes, overthrown in his attempt of  
 Ninive, 541. 40  
 Phunon, sometime a principall City of the  
 Edomites, 256. 10  
 Phon, the third son of Ham, first plan-  
 ted in Lybia, 137. 10  
 Pity punished, 519. 40  
 Pineda his miracle, 426. 40  
 Pison, falsely taken for Ganges, and Gehon,  
 falsely for Nilus, 38. 50  
 Pison and Tigris joining under Apamida,

retain one name of Pifo-Tigris, to this day,  
 50. 40  
 Plato his differing from Moses in that  
 place where God made answer by his Angells:  
 Existens misfit me ad vos, 79. 50. His judg-  
 ment concerning Gods, 81. 30  
 Pluto his Rape of Proserpina, 353. 40  
 Power severed from piety, pernicious, 393.  
 40  
 Pride, foolish and wretched, 469. 30  
 Princes ruling in divers parts of the world  
 at the time of the Law given in Mount Si-  
 nai, 232. 10  
 Probability that Nahor and Haran, did  
 not persist in Idolatry, 186. 40. and that Job  
 lived in the time of Moses, 211. 46. And  
 that the Greeks lay not before Troy the first  
 nine years, 384. ult.  
 Prædige, preceding the flood of Ogyges:  
 with a discourse thereon, 85. 20  
 Prometheus his Value moralized, 88.  
 50. His Fire, 266. 4  
 Proteus, what he was probably, 517. 5  
 Plammiticus, abandoned by his own fol-  
 lowers and Countrymen, 525. 50. His long  
 siege of Azotus, 526. 10. His provident  
 counsel to divert the Scythians from Egypt,  
 527. 50  
 Ptolemaeus Lathurus defeateth Alexan-  
 der King of the Greces, 390. 40  
 Pygmalion, King of Tyre, in whose time  
 Dido sailed into Africk, and built Carthage,  
 507. 50  
 Pythagoras his Eagle, 178. 30. His golden  
 precept, 130. 10

**R**  
 Abba, where Urias was slain, 333  
 20  
 Ramesses, a City in Gosen, from whence  
 the Israelites made their first marche towards  
 the Red Sea, 213. 30  
 Ramefites or Egyptus, under whom  
 Moses was born, 206. 7  
 Reasons why the Gentes omitted Circumci-  
 sion during their abode in the wilderness. And  
 proving the Tyrians to have been Originally  
 Idolaters, 274. 20. And reasons moving the  
 Ananimites to make War upon Jibes Gi-  
 lead, 394. 50  
 Rezem, now called Erac and Mæra, a  
 strong City, where the Soldanes of Egypt  
 kept their treasures, 357. 30  
 Red colour superstitiously observed by the  
 Egyptians, 212. 40  
 Reges Arabum & Saba, in Psal. 72. ex-  
 pounded according to the Hebrew, 43. 4  
 Regions lying between Armenia and Scy-  
 thia, 102. 40  
 Rei-

## The Table.

Reineccius his conceits of the names of  
Troes, Teucris, and Thraces, 178. 50  
Romulus his description, 503. 20  
Ruth and Janus Contemporaries, 119. 20

### S

Saba, the son of Joctan, seated in India, 148. 40  
Saffa, the birth-City of Zebedeus, 297. 50  
Alpheus, James, and John, 297. 50  
Sages of Greece, in whose time they flourished, 403. 10  
Saint George his Sepulchre, 312. 6  
Saladine dishonourably repulsed, 288. 10  
He acquires the Sovereignty of Egypt, 516. 30

Salomon anointed King, 416. 3. His education, 422. 10. His reasons for Adonijahs death, 422. Wherein the chief excellency of his wisdom consisted, 423. 30. His letter to Hiram, 424. 10. The answer to it, ibid. 30  
His Garsons, 427. 20. His Ring dispels several evil spirits, 429. 30. His frailty, 504. 50

Samaria founded by Amri, or Homri, 311. 20. Subverted by the sons of Hircanus, Ibid. 30. Where Helicetus, Abdias, and John the Baptist were buried, ibid.  
Samaritans a perfidious Nation, 139. 10  
Saban, the first bringer of the Turks into Egypt, 512. 2

Saul, elected (probably) by lot, 395. 20  
His disobedience, 398. 40. His cruelty, 400. 10. His end, and dishonour after his death, ibid. 30

Schoole-men, all grosse, in holding the Countries under the Acquaintance of Ninib, 39. 4

Scorners rewarded, 504. 40  
Scriptures more ancient than all other Antiquity, 110. 50

Scultet his calculation, 504. 10  
Scythia Saga, or Saca, under the Mountains of Parapanisus, 102. 6. Scythia intra Imaum, bounded by Marius Niger, ibid. 30

Schon discomfited, 258. 40  
Seleucia, anciently called Chalapsa, 41. 40  
Semiramis her policy in obtaining of the Empire, 182. 20. Her Army against Staurobates, 182. 20. Her overthrow, ibid. 40  
Sennacherib his expedition against the Jews, according to Herodotus, 522. 10  
Seneca, his judgement of Nature, Fate, or Fortune, 27. 3  
Sephora and Thua, famous Midwives, 209. 40

Sephoris the City of Joachim and Anna, the Parents of the Virgin Mary, 297. 30

Sesoftris, endangered by his brothers treason, 203. 20. His Coach, 430. 10  
Seth, worshipped by the Egyptians, 74. 49

Sethieth, a principall Province in Egypt, ibid.

Sheba and Rama border the Persian Gulf, 40. 50

Shishak his policy in entertaining Adad and Jeroboam, 314. 8

Simon Magus his end, 177. 50

Sinai and Horeb but one Mountain, 225. 40

Single Combats, 406. 20

Sixtus Quintus his answer to a Fryer, 457. 50

Slave, why so called, 420. 50

Socrates suffered death for acknowledging one only powerfull God, 37. 20

Spaniards pride in America, 146. 40. Their plantation in the East at Manila, 425. 40

Spartans obstinacy, 529. 7

Spring perpetual in the South of Armenia, 48. 50

Stars and other celestiall bodies, incline the will by mediation of the sensitive appetite, 28. 30

Statues erected by the woman, whom Christ cured of the bloody issue, 292. 10

Sterculius, mentioned by S. Augustine, 498. 10

Strange execution of the Citizens of Gadara committed on themselves, 333. 20

Strato, King of Zidon expelled by Alexander Macedon, 306. 20. Another of the same name, slain by his own wife, ibid. 40

Sagar made by the Sax, 289. ult.

Susa, in the Province of Elam, sometimes the seat-Royal of the Kings of Persia, 144. 40

Syria described, 278. 50

### T

Talus, destroyed by Medea, 365. 10

Tamberlain his Trophoe of victory, 339. 50

Tanais and Volga, whence they truly arise with the variety of the Rhipha, and Hyperborei Mountains, 103. 2

Tantalus moralized, 354. 50

Tarichia, a City, forced by Vaspasian, 298. 20

Taurus, whereon the Arke rested, 304. 6

Taurus his stealth of Europa, 43. 20

Telassar, inhabited by the Edenites, 43. 20

called Thilurbe by Am. Marcellinus, sometimes a garrison Town against the Assyrians, ibid. 40

Teman, the City whence Eliphaz came, to reason with Job, where situate, 369

Temper

## The Table.

Temper of the lower part of Eden, 55. 50

Teneriffe in the Canaries, the highest mountain known in the world, 105. 50

Tereus his rape of Philomel, 354. 57

Testimonies of the Ancient concerning Moles, 271. 30

Tharfus in Cilicia, the native City of Saint Paul, founded by Tharfus the second son of Javan, 135. 30

That which seemeth most casuall and subject to fortune, is yet disposed by the ordinance of God, 17. 40

That the Flood made no such alteration as is generally received, 36. 9

That the Stars and other celestiall bodies, incline the will by the mediation of the sensitive appetite, 30. 20

The means that David grew rich by, 417. 50

Theseus his worthy exploits, 367. 20

Thirst of covetousnesse, 392. 50

Thought unsearchable to the Devil, 206. 40

Three generall opinions of Paradise, 33. 10

Three things especially are the naturall causes of a long and an healthfull life, 66. ult.

Three causes why Moles forbore to conduct the Israelites thorow Arabia, 217. 10

Thua and Sephora, famous Midwives, 209. 40

Thulis an Egyptian King, of whom strange matters are reported, 517. 20

Thuoris, supposed to be Proteus, 516. 50

Thuras the first Mars, 166. 10

Tiber, whence it took the name, 501. 4

Tiberius restraineth humane sacrifices, 370. 40

Tigris, separated from Danubius by the sea of Hellespont and all Asia the less, 38. 40. it overflowed Nineve, 477. 20

Time, wherein men might attain to be such as they ought, oftentimes mispent in seeking to be such as they are not, 474. 40

Tiras, father of the Thracians, 123. 10

Tolou oppressed by Hadadezer, and succoured by David, 403. 30

Token of liberty with the wicked, to despise the service of God, 462. 20

Tornicellus his pains to prove the Book of Judith Canonical, 533. 30

Tostatus his opinion of Ophir, 150. 10

Traditional oblations, 531. 20

Treachery rightly rewarded, 531. 20

Treasure in fashion, 412. 3

Treasure anciently used to be buried with the dead, 419. 50

Trees of life and knowledge, 56. 40

Tree of life, how understood by the Hebrews, ibid. 50

Tree of knowledge, so called of the event, 60. 4

Tribute denied, causeth Sennacherib to make war on Ezechias, 506. 20

Troy, when destroyed, 337. 10

Two sorts of Kenites and Madianites, 224. 10

Two Edens, 40. 20

Tydeus his quarrell with Polynices, and the issue thereof, 369. 30

Tyranny of Saul towards Jonathan, 398. 30. and towards Abimelech, 400. 20

Trust in worldly prosperity, how vain, 448. 30

Tyrants are the last that bear of any mischief against them, 459. 40

Tyrannous dominion of the Scythians in Asia, 459. 40

Tyrannous dominion of the Scythians in Asia, 547. 40

Tyre besieged by the Chaldeans, 551. 40

Tyrrenus, the first bringer of Vines into France, 103. 40

### V

Vagabond, how to be understood, 62. 20

Valour of the Cimmerians, 543. ult.

Vanity of Homer, in description of the fight between Hector and Achilles, 386. 30

Vanity of superstition, 390. 10

Vanity of many great men of War in valuing themselves too highly, 551. 40

Vanity of Becanus in Gigantomachia, 69. 50

Vanity of Chronologers, in taking Amraphel for Nimrod, 189. 40

Vanity of the Greeks, used in the Olympian games, 492. 40

Vapores father-in-law to Salomon, 518. 20

Vanity of opinions concerning the rape of Helen, 582. 30

Valco de Gamia, the first finder of the Cape of good hope, 539. 10

Vatrabius his opinion concerning Eden, 44. 7

Vengeance cast upon Israel for the ingratitude of Jehu, 452. 20

Vertue truly heroically, 469. 40

Vertue of Josias in his child-hood, 536. 30

Venetians, probably descended from the Trojans, 387. 30

Venusus his report of Japan, 99. 2

(\*)

Victory



# The Table.

Victory of Iephtha, envied by the Ephraimites, and the issue thereof,	372.10	Whence the conceit of Orpheus and Hesiodus sprang, that Giants were the sons of Heaven and Earth,	70.7
Victory begetteth security,	411.10	Whence the fable arose, of dividing the world between the three sons of Saturn,	73.40
Victory of Nabuchodonozor against Necho,	550.30	Whereof the word (Slave) had its original,	420.50
Violence towards Parents punished with death,	239.30	Where it was that Christ remained, whilst Joseph and Mary feared Herod,	208.ult.
Virgils opinion touching the Originall of the Trojans,	377.50	Which Magog Ezechiel had reference to,	117.3
Uncertainty of Authors, about the time when Homer lived,	403.30	Which Havilah it is that P. son compasseth,	150.50
Unwarlike people hardened by custome of danger,	541.40	Which Belus was the more ancient,	163.50
Voluptuousnesse of Sardanapalus,	476.30	Who they were that first instituted the Ne-meian Games,	370.7
Uriah his death, considered with the slaughter done by Salomon upon his elder brother,	394.4	Who were supposed to be the first Inventors of Navigation,	114.30
Urim and Thummim of the Jewish priests,	395.20	Whome severity rather desired, than remission of liberty,	532.30
Use to be made of praying toward the East,	31.30	Why the Babylonians gave a Dove in their Ensigns,	183.40
Use of letters found out before the Flood,	67.50	Wickednesse quickly planted, but not easily rooted up again,	540.10
Uses of the Morall, Ceremoniall, and Indivisible Lawes,	237.50	Wicked Instigators,	446.50
Uzziah punished by God, for meddling with the Priests office,	481.10	William of Tyre his report, concerning the Egyptian Caliph,	512.4
W		Wine and strong drink, prohibited to mourning women,	388.50
Antonnesse of Atolla,	457.30	Wisdom better than all worldly riches,	423.10
Wariness of the Romans in establishing Rome for the Seat of the Empire,	483.40	Wisdom of man, blinde in looking into the counsaile of God,	456.40
War concluded upon uneven terms, justifies breaketh out with greater violence,	529.30	Wise at home, and foolish abroad,	470.30
Way attempted to be made for passage of ships from Nilus into the Red Sea,	538.50	Witches transpositions,	178.1
West part of America, how it came to be called Peru,	149.20	Woman given to man for a Comforter, not for a Counsaile,	60.40
Why S. Paul may probably be thought chiefly to intend, in the account of time from Israels coming out of Egypt to the division of the promised Land,	376.10	Women, with Idolatry pervert Salomon,	429.40
What kinde of Prophets they were, with whom Saids, encountered and propheticd,	395.10	Wonder of a Nation,	532.4
What year of the world David died in,	492.20	Wondering at any thing in this world, is folly, considering the folly of the world,	457.1
What Cities they were, against which Baalam prophesied, Ios. 19. 33,	230.40	Words of Image and Similitude, taken in one and the same sense by Saint Paul and Saint James,	19.30
What kinde of Kings those five were, mentioned, Gen. 14,	230.40	Worldly men, and their condition,	396.40
What part of the Red Sea Moses past through,	219.30	Worlds first written received Law,	232.10
What might be the cause of Iehosaphats taking his son to be partner in his Kingdom,	442.40	Worship done to Christ by the Magi,	148.10
		Wretched pride,	469.30
		Writers on the place of Paradise, diversly conceived,	28.30

FINIS.

# An Alphabetical Table of the Principall Contents of the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Books of the First Part of the History of the World.

Wherein the first number signifieth the Leaf, the second the Line.

A

Brocomas his Cowardize, 94. 10

Achæmenes his association with Arbaces, 23. 40. His progeny, 24. 40

Acrocorinthus, a strong Citadel of Greece, 210. 50

Adherbal his notable victory at Sea against the Romans, 210. 50

Advantage of absolute Lords, above such as are served by Voluntaries, 79. 40

Adversity is alwaies sure to hear of her errors, 319. 20. It rectifies the understanding, 456. 20

Advisednesse and rashnesse, 370. 30

Agas taken by surprise, and left again through greedinesse of spail, 504. 50

Amphilus Paulus his great circumspection, 379. 40. His encouragement to his Soldi-ers, 381. 30. His care to prevent the mischief imminent, through the head-strong conduct of his vain glorious Colleague, 383. 50. Is of his slain in battail, 388. 20

As he is ingratitude, 341. 40. Ere their pride abated, 589. 20. who being the first drawers of the Romans into Greece, are the first whose necks are galled with their yoke, 502. 46

Agathocles his degree, whereby he obtained the Kingdom of Syracuse, 289. 4. He overthrown by the Carthaginians, 291. 3. Is himself shortly after besieged by them, with the strange course he takes to raise the siege, 292. 50. Is perfidy toward Ophellias, 292. 50. Is error in not making timely peace with the Carthaginians, 293. 4. His amazed flight into Sicily, Ibid. 30. His bloody nature, Ibid. 40

His wretched end, 294. 20

Agessilaus his sacrifice thrown down from the Altar, 111. 10. He deluded Tisaphernes, Ibid. 30. He driveth Pharnabazus out of his camp, 120. 40. He wasterh Boetia, 115. 20

His disloyalty, 128. 40. His death Ibid. 50

Agis his great care for the good of Sparta, unworthily recompensed with the lamentable

death of himself, his Mother, and Grand-mother, 342. 10

Alceras his unhappy end, 193. 40

Alciades his cunning dealing with the Spartan Embassadors, 81. 10. Is forced to kill himself, 82. 40. and seeketh revenge upon his own Citizens, 83. 1. He is revoked from banishment, 84. 30. His great favour with Tisaphernes, Ibid. 40. Again unjustly exiled, 86. 4. His friendship & good counsel is rejected, 87. 30. His death, 88. 30

Alexander the son of Amyntas King of Macedon, his magnanimity and prudence, 41. 40

Alexander M. chosen Captain General of the Greeks, 140. 40. He winneth Tebes, 140. 20. His clemency to the race of Pindarus, Ibid. 50. His cruelty to his Mother-in-lawes Kinnesmen, 142. 20. His gracious dealing with the Cities of his first Conquest in Asia, 144. 30. His policy in sending the Persian targets to the Cities of Greece, 145. 40. His easie passage through the Straits of Cilicia, 150. 20. His many good fortunes at once, 150. 20. His answer to Darius his Letter after the battail of Illus, Ibid. 50. He releaseth Apollo, Ibid. 34. His wisdom in Dio, 151. 20. His affection of Deity, 152. 20. His passage over Tigris, 154. 30. His answer to Darius his Embassadors, 156. 20. The number of his Army, 157. 4. Hath Arbela with a great mass of treachery, yielded unto him, 157. 50. Waxeth contemptible amongst his followers, 160. 20. His happy meeting, 165. 3. His stratagem to win the passage of a rock, Ibid. 10. His gresse affliction of slattery, 168. 30. Ere his passage over the River Oxus, Ibid. 50. His cruelty to a colony of Greeks, 172. 30. His munificence to Omphis, Ibid. 173. 30. He loseth most part of his Army, 175. 3. His marriage with Stauria, Ibid. 40. His lamentation for Ephections death, 176. 20. His last draught, Ibid. 40

Alterations of time, 521. 30

Alliance between Hannibal and the Cam-pans, (\*\*) Al-

(\*\*2)

Al.

## The Table.

**Alcinius** his Treason worthily punished. 415.42.  
**Amasis** his entry to the Kingdom of Egypt. 19.2.7.  
**Ambition** making haste to her own ruin. 369.30.  
 Ambition of divers Consuls; to wrest the honour of the War in Africk, out of Scipio's hands. 597.30.  
 Ambition, malignant of others' virtue, is a vile quality in a great counsellor. 643.43.  
**Amilcar**, father of the great Hannibal, invades and wastes Italy. 312.40. he resigneth his charge to Gelco. 315.50. His passage over the river Badagras. 329.20. His first victory over the Mercenaries. ibid. 40. His humanity to his prisoners, affrighteth the Captains of the Mutiners. 330.10. His notable entrapping of the Rebels; and the terrible execution done upon them. 333.5. He besiegeth Tunes. ibid. 30. Is made Generall in the Spanish expedition. 336.20. His singular vertue acknowledged by his most deadly enemies. ibid. 40.  
**Amynas** (almost) expelled out of Macedonia. 118.2.  
**Amynas** obtaineth the Kingdom of Egypt. 89.10.  
**Andronodorus** his subtilty in resigning his Protectorship. 436.10. his close dealing to attain the Sovereignty. 437.50. His death. 438.20.  
**Angra**, a strong Fort. 310.10.  
**Antigonus the Great**; his politick escape from Perdicas. 187.50. Is made General of the Macedonian Army. 192.20. His barbarous usage to the dead corps of Alctas. 193.40. His reasons for not entering Macedon. 200.40. His politick surprize of Eumenes his carriages. 209.30. His subtle plot in betraying Eumenes. 210.30. His just payment of the Treasures. 211.4. His preparation against Ptolemy. 213.4. He enforceth Tyre, by famine, to render it self. 214.10. His journey into Phrygia. 216.50. He forceth Cassander to retire into Macedon. 217.40. His intent to marry with Cleopatra, Sister to Alexander. 227.40. His fleet in great extremity. 233.3. His departure out of Egypt. ibid. 50. His vain ostentation. 235.1. His unenvied sadnesse. 237.1. His end and conditions. ibid. 10.  
**Antigonus the younger**, the son of Demetrius, is made King of Macedon. 256.20. His fond ostentation to the Gauls Embassadors. ibid. 40. is forced to abandon his camp. ibid. 50. Is forsaken of his own Soldiers, and expelled his kingdom. 258.2. He ray-

seth a new Army against Pyrrhus. 259.10. and repaireth his kingdom. ibid. 40. His policy in getting Acrocorinthus. 338.20.  
**Antigonus**, surnamed Tutor, made Protector to Philip the son of Demetrius. 339.3. His expedition into Achaia. 346.40. Is made Captain General over the Achaans, and their Confederates. 347.20. He vanquisheth Cleomenes at Selasia. 349.50. His death. 350.10.  
**Antiochus the Great**, marcheth against Molo, his Rebell. 566.20. Wins the victory by his name and presence. ibid. 30. He winneth Seleucia from the Egyptian. 557.20. He sueth to Ptolemy for peace after his overthrow in Raphi. 558.50. He taketh Sardes. 559.30. his expedition against the Parthians. 561. ult. his passage to the Indians. 562.50. He re-edifieth Tyfmachia. 566.30. His embassy to the Romans. 568.40. His vain brags. 581.20. His embassy to the Achaans. 582.20. he is driven out of Greece. 585.30. and is utterly defeated by the Romans. 569.27.  
 Antipater sends to Craterus for succour. 181.30. Is besieged in Lamia. 182.10. He commeth to the aid of the Macedonian camp. 184.20. His subtle dealing with the Greeks in the treaty of peace. ibid. 20. He changeth the Government of Athens. 249.20. He returneth with the king into Macedon. 192.20. his qualities. 194.10.  
**Apelles**, his device to supplant Aratus. 508.50. Happily discovered. 509.10. His conspiracy against the king. ibid. 30. His arrogance, and treachery towards the King. 516.30. He is dashed out of countenance, and forsaken his company, by a simple check from the King. ibid. 50. and is imprisoned, where he dies. 517.10.  
 Apollo's Oracle concerning Cyrus. 7.50.  
**Apollonides** his treachery. 192.40.  
 App. Claudius arrives at Messina in favour of the Mamertines. 269.4. He giveth an overthrow unto the Carthaginians. 270.40.  
**Apries**, the King of Egypt put to death by his subjects. 12.50.  
**Apus**, or Aous, a great River in the straits of Epirus. 796.40.  
**Aratus** expelleth the Tyrant of Sicyon. 339.50. And surprizeth the Citadel of Corinth. 340.10. being led with private passion, he makes a bad bargain for his country. 344.20. his violent opposition against the League with Cleomenes. 345.40. his obstinacy against all the gentle offers of Cleomenes.

## The Table.

nes. 346.10. his many disgraces by Antigonus. 408.30. his revenge taken on Antiochus. ibid. 10. is overthrown by the Antiochians. 502.30. he procureth Philip to invade Aetolia. 510.40. &c. by his good counsails he diverteth Philip from his practice upon Messene. 521.20. and is afterwards poisoned by Philip. ibid. 50.  
 Arcadians Embasie to Athens and Sparta. 124.50.  
 Archimedes his strange engines in defence of Syracuse. 442.7. his death and sepulture. 445.40.  
 Argives at dissention among themselves. 82.10.  
 Argos, the name of an Altar in Greece. 551.40.  
**Aridæus** his weaknesse. 180.30.  
 Aristagoras surprizeth the Persian fleet. 44. ult. is assisted by the Athenians. 45.10. He surprizeth Sardes, and burneth it. ibid. is overthrown by the Edonians. 46.10.  
 Aristides his integrity. 59.30.  
 Aristodemus his fruitlesse flattery. 231.50.  
 Art of quarrell. 476.30.  
 Art of Tyrants. 532.1.  
**Artabazus** his bootlesse counsail. 49.20. he flyeth into Thrace. 61.20. is together with his whole family put to death by exquisite torments. 67.40.  
 Artabazus highly favoured by Alexander for his fidelity to Darius. 162.40. and is made Governour of Bactria. 186.30.  
**Artaxerxes** his vain ostentation. 95.50. his message to the Greeks. 96.20. His base minde. 97.40.  
 Artemisia, her sound advice to Xerxes. 56.10.  
**Aldrubal**, the son of Amilcar, his strange flight towards Italy. 411.30. His terrible entry into Italy. 456.20. His main overthrow. 457.20. his death and commendations. 459.50.  
 Aldrubal the son of Gelco, is chosen General of the Carthaginians. 477.20. &c. is fired out of his Camp by Scipio. 480.10. and flyeth to Carthage. ibid. 30. He raiseth new forces. 481.60. and is put to flight by the Romans. ibid. 40.  
 Assembly of the Grecian Estates, upon the treaty of peace with Philip. 584.10.  
 Athenians constancy. 58.30. they send a fleet into Egypt against the Persian. 68.20. they enforce Aegina to render upon most base conditions. 70.30. they invade Samos. 72.10. and subdue Mitylene. 74.58. their rough answer to the Spartan Embassadors.

80. their perverse obstinacy. 83.4. Their stratageme taken on Syracuse. 279.10. They besiege it. ibid. 40. their obstinacy in the war of Sicil. 280.4. Are beaten at Sea by the Syracusians. ibid. 30. their last Sea fight in Sicil. 281.8. the miserable end of their whole Army. 282.20.  
 Attilius M. his victory by Sea, against the Carthaginians. 509.50.  
 Aulis in Boetia, a goodly Haven. 111.10.  
 B  
**Babylon**, the greatnesse thereof. 30.40.  
 Bagoas his malicious cruelty. 175.20.  
 Balchazar, not the son but the Grand-child of Nabuchodonosor. 7.40. miserably slain by his own people. 53.30.  
**Bantius** his easie nature. 395.9.  
 Barbarous resolution. 102.8.  
 Battail of Metaurus. 458.50.  
 Battail of Nadagara. 494.3.  
 Battail of Magnesia. 540.10.  
 Benefit and Grace. 27.40.  
 Benefits arising from wrongs done, make not injustice the more excusable. 445.30.  
 Boetians re-enter their own Land, and recover their liberty. 71.50.  
 Bravery of all qualities, is the least requisite unto Sovereign command. 390.40.  
 Britomarus, slain in single fight by Marcellus. 357.30.  
 Britons policy against the French. 265.10.  
**Brutus** his over-great severity. 247.40.  
 Burrough his wastage of the English thorough the Straits of Eilfenow. 309.50.  
 C  
 Calamities of war, in some cases rather enable than weaken Kingdoms. 423.40.  
 Calpas, a goodly Haven. 106.10.  
 Callinicus his bloody entry to the Kingdom of Asia: and his unfortunate reign. 553.7.  
 Cambyles his chief reason, in hindering the building of the City & Temple of Jerusalem. 33.10. he marrieth his own sisters. ibid. 40. his cruelty to the dead. 36.40. His attempt against the Temple of Jupiter Ammon. ibid. 50. his dream, and the issue thereof. 74.4. His death. ibid. 40.  
 Camillus F. his integrity. 249.20. unjustly banished. ibid. 30. his notable service against the Gauls. 250.10.  
 Campanians submit to the Romans. 250.  
 Captains unhappy, but happy Clerks. 614.10.  
 Care taken to avoid good admonition. 319.20.  
 Car-

## The Table.

Carthage described, 266. 10. The special  
causes of her destruction, ibid. 30  
Carthaginians policy to separate the Syra-  
cians from the Selinuntines, 282. 30. their  
sacrifice to Saturne, with the event thereof,  
293. 10. Their wofull oversight, 316. 50  
Their consternation, 482. 3. They assaile the  
Romans in the haven of Utica, ibid. 50. their  
great joy upon a small occasion, 483. 6. Their  
dishonourable Embassage to Scipio, 486. 3  
Their impatience loseth them many helps,  
419. 50. Their bootlesse sorrow, ibid. Their  
envie to the Barchines, repayed with advan-  
tage, 540. 30  
Carthalo his fortunate successe against the  
Romans, 311. 20  
Cassander his secret conference with Anti-  
gonus, 195. 20. His entry into Pirans, 198.  
10. He reduceth Athens to obedience, 199. 10  
He buildeth Cassandria, and re-edifies Thebes,  
204. 50. his politick dealing with Alexan-  
der the son of Polysperchon, 215. 30. He  
vanquisheth Glaucius King of the Illyrians.  
216. 10. He pursueth Roxane and her son to  
death, 225. 50. His cruelty repayed on his own  
house, 241. 50  
C. Cassius his wise answer, 83. 50  
Cato his generall conclusion in Senate, 468  
His condition, 339. 30  
Ceraunus repaireth to Seleucus, 245. 10  
his treachery against him, ibid. 30. his good  
successe in Macedon and Thrace, 254. 10. per-  
fidious love to his sister, ibid. 30. his foolish  
pride and miserable end, 255. 10  
Ceraphim, or Hagiographa of the Jewes,  
2. 10.  
Charidemus his good counsell to Darius  
ill rewarded, 149. 4  
Charles the Fifth, his advice to his son  
Philip, 300. 10  
Choice ill made, 628  
Cimon, Generall of the Athenians, 66.  
40. He reduceth Phaelis to the subjection,  
ibid. he obtaineth two victories in one day,  
ibid. He overthroweth the Phœnicians fleet,  
ibid. and is sent with a strong Navie, to  
take in the Ile of Cyprus, 68. 40. His death,  
70. 40  
Cincinnatus his noble expedition against  
the Volsians, 249. 10  
Cleades his bootlesse perswasion, 141.  
Cleander and his Complices, worthily re-  
warded, 175. 20.  
Clearchus driveth the Persians out of their  
Camp, 97. 30. his confident message to the  
Persian, ibid. 50. his overmuch credulity and  
death, 99. 30  
Cleomenes his victory against Aratus,

343. 30. he restoreth the ancient discipline of  
Lycurgus, ibid. 40. his great spirit and good  
carriage in managing his affairs, ibid. his  
great victory at Dymes, 345. 20. his winning  
of Argos, 347. 7. is enforced to abandon Aco-  
corinthus, 347. 10. his bold affront given to  
Antigonus, 348. 30. is put to flight by Anti-  
gonus, and lovingly entertained by Ptolemy  
Euergetes, 400. 1. His unfortunate end,  
ibid. 50  
Clypea a Port Town on Africk side, 300  
30  
Cocles his admirable resolution, 248. 1  
Combates of divers kindes, 466. 1  
Commodity of a retreat, is a great advance-  
ment to stat running away, 367. 40  
Conditions of truce between the Athenians  
and Lacedæmonians, 75. 50  
Concolitanus and Anerocetus, with a  
mighty Army of Gaules invade the Romans  
354. 30. but are overthrowen, together with  
the greatest part of their forces, 356. 30  
Congrinity of natures in a rare couple, 532.  
30  
Conon his famous retreat, 108. 10  
Conquest of revenge, what it is truly, 468.  
30  
Consultation rightly Criticall, 550  
Contempt used against Princes, lesse pardo-  
nable than ill deeds, 286. 7  
Contradictions in the Romish history,  
about the wars of the two Scipio's in Spain,  
401. 40  
Convenience and inconvenience of an Army  
consisting of divers Nations and Languages,  
316. 50  
Coriolanus his dangerous war against  
the Romans, 248. 40  
Counsail prevaileth nothing, where oppor-  
tunities are neglected, 354. 40  
Courage not answerable to good will, 444.  
10  
Court wars, 335. 10  
Courardize and courage strangely inter-  
mixed, 340. 20  
Craft of the Romans in obscure covenants,  
402. 30  
Craterus his malice, 166. 20  
He is sent back into Macedon, and made  
Lieutenant thereof, 176. 4. He joyneth with  
Antipater, 184. 30. His marriage with the  
daughter of Antipater, 186. 10. He redu-  
ceth the Aitolians into hard terms, ibid.  
20. his over-much haite to encounter Eume-  
nes, 190. 10. Is deceived in his expectation,  
ibid. 40. His death, 191. 8  
Cratippus answer to Pompey, 26. 40  
Croesus his cause of enmity with the  
Medes,

## The Table.

Medes, 22. 50. His Pedegree, 25. 50. His  
many conquests, 26. 7. His security and delu-  
sions, ibid. 20. Contemnes Sandanes his  
good counsell, ibid. 30. flyeth to Sardes, ibid.  
ult. is there besieged, 27. 20  
Cruelly in Lords, begetteth hatred in sub-  
jects, 522. 10  
Curtius and Troguus mistaken, in Alex-  
anders arrivall on the banks of Tanais, 169.  
30  
Customs of conquered Nations, 402. 50  
Cyna, mother to Euridice, 191. 40  
Cynæas, a principall Counsellor to Pyr-  
rhus, 251. 50. is sent Embassador to the  
Romans, 253. 30  
Cyrus his first military service, 18. 40  
He overthroweth the Assyrians, 22. 50. His  
name made reverend by his goodness, 25. 20  
His policy in pursuing Croesus 27. 10. His  
great mercy, ibid. 40. his war in Scythia, 28.  
10. His siege of Babylon, ibid. 30. his forcible  
entry into it, 30. 10. His sepulchre and Epi-  
taph, 31. 50  
Cyrus Brother to Artaxerxes, his policy  
in levying Souldiers, 93. 20. his unfortunate  
valour, 95. 20  
D  
Damaratus, the paternall Ancestour  
of the Tarquinii, 426. 50  
Danger in constituting two Generals  
of contrary factions, 331. 10  
Danger at hand neglected, through vain  
hope of future victory, 479. 30  
Darius, the son of Hydaspes, his mes-  
sage to the Scythians, 40. 50. strangely an-  
swered, 41. 3. His difficult escape, ibidem 10  
his jealousy of Histæus, 46. 20  
Darius Nothus seizeth the kingdome of  
Persia, 89. 10. He recovereth all that his Fa-  
ther and Grandfather had lost in Asia, ibid.  
ibid. 40  
30. His death,  
Darius his vain insolvency, 142. 30. his  
Army, and their condition, ibid. 40. is dis-  
comfited at Issus, 150. 20. he offereth condi-  
tions of peace to Alexander, 155. 50. his re-  
trait into Media, 157. 40. his hard destiny  
still to follow the worst counsell, 161. 10. his  
wofull dejection, ibid. 30. his last speech to  
Polytates, 162. 20  
Deceit over-reaches by fraud, 454. 3  
Decius Magus his constancy toward the  
Romans, 392. 10  
Delay, the sharpest Enemy to an invading  
Army, 145. ult.  
Demetrius the son of Antigonus the el-  
der, his love to Eumenes, 210. 40. his vain  
journey into Cilicia, 218. 10. he taketh Cilic-  
ia with his Camp and Army, 221. 30. his wan-  
tonnesse well punished, 229. 10. he translateth  
Sicyon, and calleth it Demetria, 225. 50. his  
haplesse successe, 227. 10. He obtaineth Cili-  
cia, 238. ult. his gentle dealing with the un-  
gratefull Athenians, 240. 10. his weaknesse  
most apparent in his most Greatnesse, 242. 40  
his unwelcome sentence, ibidem 50. he repel-  
leth Pyrrhus, 243. 30. is hardly pursued by  
Agathocles, 244. 10. his passage over Lyons,  
ibid. 20  
Demetrius the son of Antigonus, Gona-  
tas, expelleth Alexander the son of Pyr-  
rhus, out of Macedon and Epirus, 338. 20  
Decayed in vertue, after he became king,  
ibid. 50  
Demetrius Phariur, expelled his King-  
dome by the Romans, & entertained by King  
Philip, 506. 3. he procurereth Philip to make  
a league with Hannibal, 518. 20. A cunning  
observer of Philips humours, 520. 20  
is slain in attempting of Naxos, ibid. 30  
Demosthenes his remanetie corrected, 280.  
10. his good counsaile rejected, 281. 30. is  
abandoned by Nicias, 282. 4. and basely mur-  
thered, ibid.  
Desire of rule belongeth to the nobler part  
of Reason, 335. 20  
Desperation derided by obduratenesse, 530.  
7  
Dienees his resolute answer, 53. 1  
Dion, banishd for his good meaning, 286.  
50. He returneth with an Army, and enter-  
reth Syracuse, 287. 40. is again expelled,  
ibid. his death, with the revenge thereof,  
288. 4  
Dionysius the elder, aspireth to the King-  
dome of Syracuse, 283. 20. his revenge taken  
on his revolted followers, ibid. 50. is exclu-  
ded, and recovereth Syracuse, 284. 10. his  
powerfull Navie, ibid. 40. his perfidious  
dealing with Himilco, patterned, 185. 20  
He sacketh Tauromentum, ibid. 30. his siege  
of Rhegium, ibid. his death, and his condi-  
tion, 286. 20  
Dionysius the younger his barbarous cru-  
elty, 286. 30. his hard dealing against Dion,  
387. 30. is expelled Syracuse, ibid. 40. He  
recovereth it again, 288. 7. He surrendreth  
the same to Timoleon, ibid. 40  
Disease common to Princes & private per-  
sons, 296. 40  
Disension between Commanders, 292  
Doctrine of policy, 122. 5.  
Dreams sometimes do true, ibid. 4  
Drullius his policy in fighting with the  
Carthaginian Gallies, 397. 20. he raiseth the  
siege of Segesta, 398. 20  
Duty out of season, 372. 50  
E

# The Table.

**E**loquence dearly bought, 138. 2  
 Emperor of Congo his Guard, 164. 10  
 Empirica, a Town of a great importance  
 in Spain, 400. 7  
 Exchange of victory between Hannibal and Marcellus, 450. 10  
 Envy of the Spartans, 216. 10  
 Epaminondas detrieth his enemies from their fortifications, 121. 40. he invadeth Peloponnesus, 122. 30. his politick dealing with the Spartans and Mantinians, 125. 20. his notable promise, 126. ult. his death, 40  
 Epicles his crafty dealing with the Lacedaemonians, 439. 2. his costly feasting of the Syracusians, 443. 50  
 Error of mans judgement, in valuing things according to common opinion, 326. 4  
 Errors that are especially to be avoided by a General, 370. 30  
 Euergetes, and the cause of such his denomination, 552. 20  
 Eumenes is made Governour of Cappadocia, 182. 10. his open dealing, 189. 50. his policy in preventing Craterus, ibid. he killeth Neoptolemus in single fight, ibid. 50 his misdeeds in redeeming the love of his people, 191. 20. the condition of his Army, 192. 30. his admirable resolution, ibid. is set at liberty by Antigonus, 199. 40. his Country and vendition, 201. 5. his profitable use of a fained dream, 205. 20. his passage into Persia, ibid. 40. He fortifieth the Castle of Susa, 205. ult. his singular dexterity in ordering his Army, 206. 40. his politick delusion of Antigonus, 207. 20. his provident circumstances, ibid. 40. his meer vertue the sole cause of his overthrow, 208. 20. his unfortunate end, 210. 50  
 Eumenes King of Pergamus his policy to animate his soldiers, 609. 24. he wanteth contemptible, 631. 24. his voyage to Rome to complain against Perseus, 731. 50  
 Euridice her incest and murder, 132. 40  
 Euridice her title is the Empire of Macedonia after Alexanders death, 178. 1. she calleth Callandor to her succour, 202. 10. is abandoned by her own followers, ibid. 20  
 Expectation is alwaies tedious, when the event is of most importance, 282. 6

**F**abius his advised temporizing, 274. 50  
 He divideth the Legions with Minutius 377. 40. his grave counsel to Aemilius, with his answer thereunto, 381. 20. &c. his unwelcome objection to Scipio, 402. 1. his trial of his sons judgement, 425. 20

his recovery of Tarentum, and by what means, 450. 40. his envie at the growing vertue of Scipio, 473. 20. his opinion touching Hannibals departure out of Italy, 490  
 He dieth much about the same time, 491. 9  
 Faith of the Petilians toward the Romans 413. 3  
 Fayal taken by the English, 307. 20  
 Fear pretended where War is intended, 663. 3  
 Flaminius his costly jealousy, 372. 5  
 Flatters the basest of slaves, 372. 5  
 Flattery beyond baseness, 341. 9  
 Flight is sometimes commendable, 368. 30  
 Fons Solis of a strange Nature, 153. 40  
 Fortitude is a diligent preserver of it self, 468. 20  
 Friends taken for enemies, 432. 5  
 Friendship sought after a strange manner, 656. 10  
 Fruits of popular jealousy, 373. 8  
 Fury of a multitude, 546. 9

**G**ades is yielded to the Romans, 472. 30  
 Gams report to Henry 5. at the battail of Agincourt, 1384. 30  
 Gauls, their furious invasion of Rome, 249. 40. overthrown by Antigonus, 237. 10  
 Gelon, Prince of Syracuse, 276. 1. His victory against the Carthaginians, ibid. 30 his dog, ibid. 40  
 Gelco his provident course in transporting the Carthaginian Army from Sicily to Carthage, 315. 50. is sent to pacify the Mutinies, 317. 50. is detained prisoner by them, 319. 20  
 God bereaveth a man of half his vertue that day, when he casteth him into bondage, 328. 10  
 Greeks terrible to the Barbarians, 93. 50  
 Gracchus his victory at Beneventum, 421. 50  
 Gylippus cometh to the relief of Syracuse, 279. 40. He wins the Athenians Fort, 280. 3. He taketh Nicias prisoner, 232. 10.

**H**annibal his great valour & wisdom 359. 20. his hereditary hatred against the Romans, 362. 50. his passage over Rhodanus, 363. 50. & over the Alps, 364. 20. he vanquisheth the Taurini, and forceth their Town, 366. 30. his exemplary Rhetorick,

# The Table.

Ibid. ult. his politick dissimulation of the Gauls, 368. 40. his taking of Clastidium, 369. his perill amongst the Gauls, 371. 8  
 his dealing with the Romans after a trick of their own, 372. 30. his stratagem in passing the Hills of Callicula and Cafilina, 375. 10. his encouragement to his soldiers, 384. 4. his order in the marshalling of his Army at the battail of Canna, ibid. 40. his intelligence in Nola, 395. 20. his siege of Cafilina, 395. 20. his Army at Capua, not so effeminate as is supposed, 399. 10. his boathis attempt upon Cumae, 420. 40. the fear of the Romans at his approach to their City, 431. 30. he dislodgeth from before it, 433. 1. his over-much credulity, 499. 10. his victory against Cn. Fulvius, ibid. 40. his stratagem against Fabius discovered, 451. 30. his politick surprize of Marcellus, 453. 40. his notable commendations, 461. 30. he raiseth an Altar, with an inscription of his victories, 474. 10. his speech at his departure from Italy, 490. 20. He landeth at Lepis, and winneth many to his party, 491. 30 his speech to Scipio upon their meeting in Africa, 493. 20. his resolved dealing with a vain Orator, 498. 10. his laughing in a general calamity, 499. 50. his escape from Carthage, 561. his conference with the Romans, 576. his free speech to Antiochus, 593. his death, 615  
 Hanno, Admirall of the Carthaginian fleet, 313. 40. is intercepted and overthrown by Canulus, 314. 10. he is a bitter enemy to Amilcar, 317. 20. his ill conduct of the Carthaginian Army, 328. 50. his malcontents at Hannibals victories, 398. 10 his unjust accusation of Hannibal, 399. 50  
 Hardiness is unworthy the name of valour, which hath no regard of honesty or friendship, 341. 30  
 Hermias his unreasonable counsell unto Antiochus, 544. 6. &c.  
 Hierocrates his policy to detain the Athenians, 281. 40. his unjust banishment and death, 282. 50  
 Hieroms woman-Cow, 17. 50  
 Hieron the elder chosen King of Syracuse, 268. 50. his league with the Carthaginians for exterminating the Mamertines out of Sicily, 269. 1. his great oversight in encountering with Claudius, 270. 30. he dislodgeth from Messana, ibid. 50  
 Hieron the younger relieveth Carthage, 332. 30. His wife forestall in relieving the Carthaginians and Romans, when they were oppressed, 380. 10

Hieronimus, the last King of Syracuse, his qualities, 436. 10. his death, 437. 10  
 Himilco recovereth many Towns in Sicily, 284. 30. He besiegeth Syracuse, 285. 10 his treacherous peace with Dionysius repaid with like perfidy, ibid. 30  
 Hippocrates his counterfeit Epistle, with the success thereof, 440. 10  
 His Majesties prudence and kingly power, 460. 20. his justice, ibid. 50. his great bounty and honour conferred upon martiall men, 618. 20  
 Histories his practices against the Persians, 44. 40. his escape from Darius his Lieutenant, and death, 46. 20  
 Historians general affection, 383. 30  
 Hollanders passage by the mouth of the Duke of Parma's Cannon, 309. 30  
 Honour without trust, 159. 1. Honour that is acquired by detracting from others worth, seldom thrive with the possessor, 339. 16

**I** Cetes his crafty dealing with the Carthians, 288. 20  
 He besiegeth them in the Castle of Syracuse, ibid. 40. is taken by Timoleon, and put to death, 289. 20  
 Impudence of Roman falsehood, 99. 10  
 Inarus, King of Lybia, hanged by the Persians, 705  
 Interferences in the relation of the Roman History, 386. 50  
 Inequality of rigour, 395. 50  
 Infidelity findes no sure harbour, 543  
 Injuries newly received, abolish the memory of old good turns, 541. 4  
 Insolency well rewarded, 303. 7  
 Insolency of a mutinous Army, 317. 30  
 Inter-regnum among the Romans, and the nature thereof, 379. 20  
 John Lord Talbot, and Aemilius Paulus paralleled, 388. 20  
 Joachim the High Priest inflameth the Feast of Purim, 71. 20  
 Isaurians desperate resolution, 187. 10

**K**ing James his prudence, and kingly power, 470. 10. his justice, ibid. 30. his bounty and honour conferred upon martiall men, 618. 10  
 Knowledge in a Commander, what his Enemy ought to do, is a special mean to prevent all hostile attempts, 314. 10  
 Lacc-

## The Table.

L.		M.	
<b>L</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>A</b>
Academians, their patient valour, 60.		Achiavel his observation upon mercenary Souldiers, 322. 30. his Lesson to Cesar Borgia, 611. 16	
7. Their condition of life, 76. 20. Are driven to hard termes, 76. 20. their vain over-weening, ibid. 40. they lose their old true friends for new false ones, 77. 50		Magnificence of the Platams, 60. 10	
their Embasie to Corinth, 78. 50		Mago cometh to succour Ictes, 288.	
Laodice her malicious revenge, 541. 30		50. abandons him through fear, and hangeth himself, 289. 4	
worthily punished, ibid. 50		Mago, the brother of Hannibal, his joyful message of the victory at Cannæ, 397.	
League between the Romans and Aetolians, 415. 10		20. his departure from Gades toward Italy, 473. 30. he winneth Genna, 473. 50. he fighteth a battail with a Roman Proconsul, where in he receiveth his death's wound, 489. 30	
League between the Lacedæmonians and Aetolians, 504. 20		Mamertines treachery to the Messenians, 268. 4. are besieged in Messina, 269. 1. &c. Their impudent request to the Romans, ibid. 40	
Lemnia, a Curtizan, her notable resolution, 43. 40		Mandavile his Monument, 173. 40	
Lentulus his speech to Amylius, at the battail of Cannæ, with the Comment, 387. 50		Mandonius rebelleth against the Romans, 463. 30. and being overthrowen is gently pardoned, 472. 20	
Leonatus departeth out of Babylon, 179. 40. and is slain in fight against the Athenians, 184. 20		Manlius his victory against the Syracinians, 435. 20	
Leonidas his admirable prowess, 52. 40		ans, 435. 20	
Leontius his quarrell with Aratus; and the issue thereof, 115. 30. he raiseth sedition in the Army, 516. 10. being detested, is put to death, 517. 20		Marcellus repelleth Hannibal from the siege of Nola, 395. 50. his dishonourable advantage taken upon Casiline, 414. 40. He taketh Leontium, 439. 30. he besiegeth Syracuse, 440. 50. his profitable circumspection, 442. 50. his under-hand dealing against the Syracinians, during treaty of peace, 444. 50. his winning of Syracuse, 453. 50. His death, 445. 30	
Leontines his great losse at Sea, 284. 40		Mardonius, Generall of Xerxes Army against the Greeks, 49. 40. his fearful flattery, 57. 40. his Embassage to Athens, 58. 10	
Letters from the Carthaginians in Capua directed to Hannibal, intercepted by the Romans, with the issue thereof, 433. 10		He murdereth Attica, ibid. 40. he burneth Athens 59. 40. is slain with many thousand Persians, 61. 50	
Leutychides his successfull stratagem, 61. 50		Marshall of England, his power to preserve every ones fame and reputation, 469	
Liberty in counsaile, 149. 20		Martius his miraculous victories, 408.	
Liberty chained, 609. 1		10. proved idle dreams, 410. 40	
Lie: from what ground it is become so terrible a word, 467. 10. Their conditions that are most tender in taking it, ibid. 40		Martyrs, 468. 30	
Lyers by Record, ibid. 50		Malanissa prospereth his service to Scipio against the Carthaginians, 475. 40. the cause of his revolts from them to the Romans, 475. 40. He defeateth Hanno and his company, 478. 2. he pursueth Syphax, 481. 40	
Ligurians, their Nature and Condition, 570		is restored to his kingdom, 483. 10. he leadeth Syphax bound unto Cirra, where he marryeth Sophonisba, 484. 10. His beavie Message and Present unto her, ibid. 40. is highly magnified by the Romans, and proclaimed King, 485. 50	
Lorey-Low, 566. 50		Massites and his wives unfortunate ends, 63. 40	
Love purchased by mild Government: without empaing a jot of Majesty, 324. 50		Matho	
Lycidas, the wofull end of himself, his wife and children, 59. 8			
Lycophron expelled Thessaly, 135. 30			
Lycurgus buyeth his election to the Kingdom of Sparta, 552. 10. he expelleth his fellow King and establisheth his own tyranny, 507. 20			
Lysimachus murdereth his son in Law, 241. 40. is taken prisoner by the Thracians, 242. 30. his City Lysimachia ruined by earthquake, and himself with his whole Family, shortly after extirpate, 244. 30			

## The Table.

Matho his mutinous Oration against the Carthaginians, 318. 20. Is chosen by the mutiners for one of their chief Captains, 319.		bid. 40. His victory at Sea against Clitus, 198. 50.
1. His furious Sally upon the Carthaginians, 333. 40. Is utterly defeated, and taken prisoner, 334. 20		Nicias abandoneth the Athenian Gallies, 281. 30. Is entangled in his passage to Comarina, 282. 1. yeeldeth himself, and is barbarously murdered, 282. 10
Mazeus his treacherous cowardize, 158. 1		Nitocris a Magnificent Princess, 19. 50
Megasthenes his report of Nabuchodonosor, 7. 30		
Melaeus proclaimeth Aridæus King, 179. 20. his plot against Perdiccas is discovered, ibid. 40. his death, 180. 40		
Men that lye in wait for others, are seldom heedful of what may befall themselves, 522. 10		
Menedemus and his Army overthrowen by Spitamenes, 170. 3		
Menelaus his great indiscretion, 230. 10		
Is besieged in Salamis, ibid. 40. Is forced to yeeld the Town and his Army, 231. 40		
Metapontines and Thurines yeeld to Hannibal, 428. 50		
Midias his detestable murder, 108. 40		
Miltiades good service ill rewarded, 48. 20		
Minos his pursuit of Dædalus, 273. 30		
Molo rebelleth against Antiochus, 644. 28. Is forced to retire towards Media, ibid. 50. upon advertisement returns, and by surprize overthroweth Xcenetas and his whole Army, 545. 11. Is abandoned by his followers, and layeth hands on himself, ibid. 44		
Murder by guile, 470. 30		
Muster of the Macedonians, with the ancient manner thereof, 620		
Mutines his good service, procures himen-vie, 445. 50		
His wrongfull disgrace by the Carthaginians, leseth them Sicily, 446. 50		
N		
Nabis defeated by Philopœmen, 575. 47. and is slain by treachery of the Aetolians, 578		
Naburzanes his insolent behaviour toward Darius, 159. 50		
Nature mischievous, 20. 10		
Necessity, and other reasons of employing Mercenaries in the wars of the Netherlands, 323. 40		
Necoptolemus his dissimulation with Euboeans, 189. 30. Is shamefully beaten, ibid. 40		
Nicanor timely put into Athens by Callander, 196. 20. He surprizeth Piræus I-		
		Persepolis

O

Observations of celestiaall bodies, the surest marks of Time, 220. 40

Observations in the change of Empires, 401. 2

Offenders are alwaies afraid of their fellows, if more innocent than themselves, 331. 4

Office of the Roman Censors, 423. 1

Olympias, enemy to Antipater, 181. 40

is revoked into Macedon, 194. 30. Her inhumane cruelty, 202. 30. is condemned unto death, 204. 20. her great Estate, and perverse conditions, ibid.

Orchards in the Aire, 16. 30

Ordesius murdered by his Tintour Aëropus, 132. 30

Offestation checked by unexpected necessity, 437. 7

P

Pacuvius Calavius an ambitious Nobleman of Capua, 390. 40. his politick course taken to oblige both the Senate and People of Capua unto him, 391. 10

Panic terrors, 432. 30

Panormus, now called Palermo, by whom founded, 373. 50

Papyrius his encouragement to the Romans against the Samnites, 147. 50

Parsonie without thrift, 400. 4

Passion in extremity, 17. 20

Patience of the Spaniards, 312. 5

Patience of awaiting a convenient season, is of great importance for obtaining victory, 381. 30

Pausanias advanceth to succour the Athenians, 59. 30. he recovereth Bizantium from the Persians, 66. 1. is condemned as a traitor, and dyeth in banishment, 114. 30

Perdiccas his Nature and Quality, 178. 40. his fond over-weening, ibidem, 50. He sayneth with Leonatus, 180. 20. his policy to entrap Melaeus, 189. 20. is made the Kings Protector, and Commander of his forces, ibid. 30. he conquereth Cappadocia, 182. 40. his unfortunate passage over Nilus, 188. 20



## The Table.

*Persepolis burnt at the request of an Har-*  
*lot, 24. 50. an opulent City, ibid.*  
*Perseus is sent by his Father against the*  
*Dardanians, 520. 38. his timorous Nature,*  
*624. 30. is blamed by the Romans for redu-*  
*cing his rebellious subjects to obedience, 626.*  
*30. &c. his journey to Delphi, 629. 40. A*  
*good Treasurer for the Romans, 642. 34. &c.*  
*resolveth to fight with the Romans, 755.*  
*is there overthrown, and the first that fled*  
*thence, 657. He takes Sanctuary, 958. his*  
*fond conceit in preserving his Treasures,*  
*ibid. is censured by Cretians, 650. his base*  
*dejection before Amylius, 664. is led*  
*Captive to Rome; where he dies miserably.*  
*773*  
*Persians overthrown by their own poli-*  
*cy, 63. 50. Their barbarous cruelty towards*  
*their prisoners, 159. 40. Their slavish subje-*  
*ction, 223. 40.*  
*Petelia, a strong City in Italy, 324. 50*  
*Peucestes affrighted at the approach of*  
*Antigonus, 207. 20. His base retreat from*  
*the Army, 209. 20. worthily rewarded for*  
*his treachery to Eumenes, 211. 50*  
*Phalanx of the Macedonians, 533.*  
*Phalaris his just Tyranny, 275. 30. His*  
*death, ibid.*  
*Pharnabazus assaileth the Thracians a-*  
*gainst the Greeks, 106. 30. He repelleth A-*  
*gefilas, 11. 40. His politic dealing a-*  
*mong the Greeks, 115. 2. He marrieth one*  
*of Artaxerxes his daughters, 117. 20.*  
*Pharnus and his seven sons, 218.*  
*Phidippides his familiar Devil, 47. 20*  
*Philadelphus the first of the Egyptian*  
*Kings that made league with the Romans,*  
*461. 30*  
*Phileterus his fortunate mishap, 509*  
*10*  
*Philip of Macedon is left for an Hostage*  
*with the Illyrians, 132. 50. his escape away*  
*133. 20. He vanquisheth Argeus, ibid. 40*  
*his politic Donative of Pyana to the Olyn-*  
*thians, 134. 20. he delivereth Pheres from*  
*the tyranny of Lycophron, ibid. 10. he o-*  
*verthroweth Onomarchus and his whole*  
*Army, 135. 30. he winneth Olynthus, 136*  
*10. his abirement for the Kingdom of*  
*Thrace, ibidem 20. his policy in aiding the*  
*Bacotians, ibid. he invadeth Asia, 138. 30*  
*His last feast, ibid. 30. his divers issues, 139.*  
*40*  
*Philip, King of Macedon, son of De-*  
*metrius expelleth Attalus out of Opus, 416.*  
*50. his gallant demeanour towards the A-*  
*chaans his Confederates, 417. 20. his Em-*  
*bassage to the Romans, ibid. 50. is forced to*  
*quit Aetolia, for the defence of his own*  
*Country, 418. 40. His successfull expediti-*  
*on against the Eleans and Aetolians, 419.*  
*2. is forced to rise from before Pulae, by*  
*the Treason of one of his own Captains,*  
*510. 30. he wasteth Aetolia, and carryeth*  
*away a great booty, 515. 20. &c. he gran-*  
*teeth peace to the Aetolians, 518. 10. and*  
*enters into League with Hannibal, ibidem,*  
*30. His double hand dealing with the No-*  
*bility and Commons of Messene, 520. 30*  
*By his unjust courses make his Friends his*  
*Enemies, 521. 30. his odious dissimulation,*  
*526. 30. his stratageme in the winning of*  
*Prinassus, 527. 20. his unskilfulness or un-*  
*aptness to retain old Friends, and his for-*  
*wardness in seeking new Enemies, 528. 10*  
*he subdueth the Country of Atabmania,*  
*587. 10. his magnanimity continued by the*  
*Romans, as want of reverence to their E-*  
*state, 509. 30. is enforced to abandon divers*  
*Towns by him conquered, with leave of the*  
*Romans, ibid. his cruelty towards the Mar-*  
*onites, 610*  
*He grows jealous of his son Demetri-*  
*us, 613. whom he puts to death, 621. his end,*  
*623*  
*Philistus, a notable Parasite, 286. 50. is*  
*taken and executed, 287. 40*  
*Philopemen his first military action,*  
*349. 5. his great dexterity and sufficiency*  
*in War, 552. 50. he killeth Machanidas*  
*the Tyrant of Lacedaemon, 424. 30. he was*  
*a bad Sea-man, 575. 5. his policy to over-*  
*throw Nabis, ibid. 50. his lamentable end,*  
*614. 10*  
*Phocion is made chief Ruler in Athens,*  
*186. 6. his just dealing, 199. 40. is depri-*  
*ved, and compelled to flye for his life, 197.*  
*10*  
*His Commendation, ibid. 5*  
*Phyllides his Stratageme, 118. 40*  
*&c.*  
*Pisistratus his divers changes of fortune,*  
*43. 2*  
*Polybius his impartial dealing, 371.*  
*50*  
*His worthy reprehension of Fabius the*  
*Roman Historian, 401. 7*  
*Polyperchon is made protector of the*  
*King and Empire of Macedon, 194. 6*  
*His unthankfull Nature, 195. 40*  
*His cruelty to his old friend, 197. 40*  
*His dishonourable departure from Megala-*  
*poli, 198. 30*  
*His Treachery unto his Sovereign, 202.*  
*10*  
*And to his young Pupill, 227. 10*  
*Polyx-*

## The Table.

*Polyxendidas surpriseth the Rhedians*  
*Fleet, 594. 10*  
*Porcius Cato his condition, 607. 2. &c.*  
*Porus his manly answer to Alexander,*  
*172. 40. is restored to his estate, with a great*  
*enlargement, 173. 30*  
*Power of the Medes, 22. 40*  
*Poyet, Chancellor to Francis the first,*  
*worthily punished for his falsehood, 463. 4*  
*Pranestines honest resolution, 396. 20*  
*Their admirable patience, 397. 7*  
*Preferment acquired by courting the mul-*  
*titude, 356. 50*  
*Eride beaten with her own weapons, 393.*  
*50. and punished with contempt, 446. 20*  
*Provisions of War, and absolute power of*  
*command, are of greater use in need, than the*  
*willing readinesse of Friends, 74*  
*30.*  
*Psammones his gentle reprehension of*  
*Alexander, 153. 50*  
*Ptolemy Lagus his subtle dealing, 10*  
*debar all claims to the Macedonian Empire,*  
*178. 20. Is greatly beloved of the Egypti-*  
*ans, 187. 20. He fideth with Antipater, ibid.*  
*His happy compassion, 191. 20. He covers*  
*the Sea with his Fleet, under the conduct of*  
*Seleucus, 214. 20. He subdueth Cyprus, 218.*  
*20. He surpriseth Gaza, and taketh Tyre and*  
*Sidon, 219. 30. He retireth into Egypt, 222.*  
*4. He obtaineth Sicyon and Corinth, 226. 50*  
*His politic course against Antigonus, 233.*  
*20. He besiegeth Salamis, 240. 20. His Per-*  
*mes, 245. 6*  
*Ptolemy Euergetes, King of Egypt, who*  
*taketh part with Cleomenes, 345. 10*  
*Publicola his sincerity, 247. 30*  
*Punick Faith, 290. 30*  
*Purpose intended by men, but disposed by*  
*God, 345. 40*  
*Pyrchus his hard beginning, 241. 10. His*  
*personall valour, 242. 20. Is made Patron of*  
*the Athenians, 243. 50. is forsaken by the*  
*Macedonians, 245. 20. is called into Italy by*  
*the Tarantines, 251. 50. His offer of peace to*  
*the Romans, with their answer, 252. 30. His*  
*Tyranny in Sicil, and departure thence, 255.*  
*50. He recalcs his forces out of Italy, 258. 10*  
*his excuse for his dissembling with Sparta,*  
*ibid. 30. His stall surprize of Argos, 259.*  
*30*  
*Python employed against the Rebels in A-*  
*sia, 182. 50. is declined, and slain by Antigo-*  
*nus, 212. 20*  

Q

*Quintius his quipping answer to Philp,*  
*543. 20. his profitable observation, 546*  
*30. His check given to the insolent Aetoli-*  
*ans, 584. 50. His triumph, 568. 24. His grief*  
*mixed with gladnesse, 540. 30. His peremp-*  
*tory command and power, 591. 2.*  

R

*Reasons moving the Romans to unde-*  
*take the war in Sicil, 269. 50*  
*Rebellion of divers Provinces against*  
*the Persian, 122. 50*  
*Rebels confidence in the multitude, how*  
*gain a thing it is, 517. 30*  
*Retchlesnesse of the Campanes, 428. 10*  
*Regulus his encounter with a monstrous*  
*Serpent, 300. 50*  
*He forceth Tunes, 401. 6. His death, 392.*  
*40.*  
*Retreat in the head of an Enemies Army,*  
*how dangerous, 335. 50*  
*Rhedians recover Petrae from the Macedo-*  
*nian, 547. 40*  
*Their stout message to Antiochus, 565. 50*  
*are slighted by the Romans, 732. 50*  
*Romans, their admirable courage and in-*  
*dusstry, 304. 7. Their great losse by Sea, ibid.*  
*20. Their whole losse by Sea during the first*  
*Punick War, 314. 50. their answer in*  
*Senate to one of Privernum, ibidem 30.*  
*Their policy to pick a quarrell, 337. 10. Their*  
*confederacy with the Saguntines, ibid. 30*  
*Their great forces at the time of Concolita-*  
*nus his invasion, 354. 40. Their Embassage to*  
*Carthage, 361. 40. Their precipitate affec-*  
*tion, 379. 40. Their magnanimity in the mid-*  
*dest of their greatest troubles, 380. 30. Their*  
*miserable condition immediately after the*  
*battail of Canne, 392. 50. The hard shifts*  
*they were driven to, 393. 40. Their policy in*  
*upholding, in their severall Provinces, the*  
*greatnesse and reputation of such (and their*  
*families) as had first subdued them to their*  
*Empire, 495. 10. Their generall affection to*  
*the good of the Common-weal, 484. 30. Are*  
*abandoned by twelve of their own Colonies,*  
*451. 50. Their imaginary Prerogative, 485.*  
*50. Their custome when they took a Town*  
*by assault, 492. 20. Their colourable shanks*  
*to the Athenians, 530. 40. Their first use of*  
*Elephants in fight, 535. 30*  
*Their answer to the Embassadors of Ae-*  
*talus, 138. 50*  
*Their imperious answer to Antiochus his*  
*Embassadors, 150. 50*  
*Their reasons notto be sorry for Hannibals*  
*escape, 571. 3*  
*Rome nothing so tyrannous as Carthage,*  
*321. 50*  
*Rowing*

## The Table.

Rowing after a strange fashion. 269. 50  
 Roxane payed with her own coin. 225. 50  
 Rule of the husband over the wife, and of  
 parents over their children. 326. 20  
 Ramours cast out of purpose, to give an ho-  
 nest colour to the war against Philip. 528. 10

**S**  
 Aguntines fear of Hannibal, 359. 50  
 Saguntum recovered by the Romans. 406. 50.  
 Saguntum found out in Athens. 539. 20  
 Samnites and Hebrinians become Tribu-  
 tary too Rome. 250. 50  
 Sark, near Carnufey, taken by the French;  
 and again recovered. 170. 30  
 Scaliger his opinion concerning Naboni-  
 dus. 7. 10.  
 Scipio P. is sent Proconsull into Spain,  
 409. 40. He winneth Carthage, 410. 20  
 His victory against Hanno and Mago. 362.  
 20. His wary use of his Spanish friends. 463.  
 2. He expelleth the Carthaginians out of the  
 Continent of Spain. 494. 30. His exempla-  
 ry justice upon his mutinous Soldiers. 472.  
 2. Is chosen Consul. ibid. 40. Is furthered  
 by the people in his African voyage, against  
 the shaking of the Senate. 474. 40. He recov-  
 ereth Loiri. 475. 7. The politick use he made  
 of Syphax his Embassage. 476. 50. He lan-  
 deth in Africk. 477. 10. The manner of his  
 winter-Camp. 478. 20. His stratageme to  
 fire the Camps of Syphax and Asdrubal.  
 479. 40. His fight with the Carthaginians  
 in the Haven of Utica. 482. 40. His dislike  
 taken at Masanilla his marriage with So-  
 phonisba. 484. 30. &c. His Embassage to  
 the Carthaginians. 487. 50. His courteous  
 usage of the Carthaginian Embassadors.  
 492. 30. His answer to Hannibal upon their  
 meeting in Africk. 493. 50. His triumphant  
 return through Italy to Rome. 500. 10. Is  
 enforced to abandon Rome, through the ma-  
 lice of the Tribunes. 706. 40. His death.  
 ibid.  
 Selencus flyeth to Ptolemy. 212. 20. He  
 surpriseth Nicanors Camp. 220. 20. &c.  
 He overthroweth Antigonus. 227. 30. his  
 marriage with Stratonica. 238. 10. his jea-  
 lousie of Demetrius. 244. 40. his pretence  
 of quarrell against Lylimachus. 245. 20.  
 his short joy. ibid. 40  
 Sempronius recalled with his Army  
 from his determined voyage into Africk for  
 the defence of Italy. 366. 40  
 Senones, a people of the Gauls, expelled  
 out of their Country by the Romans. 353  
 Sicil, Whence so named. 272. 50  
 Slaves in Nature though not in Law. 326.  
 50  
 Sophonisba her tragicall end. 484. 40  
 Spaniards smothered to death. 165. 20  
 Spendius, a principall Ring-leader of the  
 Carthaginian Mutiners. 318. 6. he takes  
 the field against Amilcar. 332. 50. is crucifi-  
 ed before Tunes. 333. 30.  
 Sphodrias his fond attempt upon the ha-  
 ven of Athens. 119. 20  
 Spitamenes murdered by his wife. 171.  
 10  
 Spoyle and riches of most force with the  
 common Souldier. 148. 30  
 Spoyle divided before victory gotten.  
 350. 40  
 State of great spirit, but small force. 110.  
 30  
 Stedfastnesse in taking revenge, is wrong-  
 fully held a point of honour. 339. 30  
 Stipendiaries of Tyrants, fight more cowar-  
 diously than those of free Cities or States.  
 323. 30  
 Stratageme of the Capuans against those of  
 Cuma. 420. 2  
 Syx. 528. 20  
 Sulpicius the Roman Consul, invadeth  
 Macedon. 530. 30. forceth Antipatria. 532.  
 30. Is enforced to retire to Apollonia. 538.  
 30  
 Superstition of the Persians. 46. 30  
 Syphax entrench into league with the Ro-  
 mans. 465. 10. but afterwards sided with  
 the Carthaginians against them. 476. 40. he  
 bringeth aide to Carthage. 478. 20. his reth-  
 less manner of encamping. 479. 4. Is fired  
 thence by Scipio. ibid. 50. Is driven home  
 into his own Kingdome. 481. 40. he fight-  
 eth a battell with Masanilla and Lullius.  
 wherein he is taken prisoner. 483. 50. his ex-  
 clamation against Sophonisba. 484. 20. and  
 is sent prisoner to Rome. 486. 40  
 Syracusians Petalisme. 227. 30. their un-  
 fortunate expedition against Ducetius. ibid.  
 30. their war with the Athenians. 278. 10  
 they lock up the Athenians Fleet in their  
 haven. 280. 40

**T**  
 Tanistry a Custom in Ireland. 465. 50  
 Teleucius surpriseth the Athenian  
 navie. 117. 10  
 Temerity of the Roman Consuls. 303. 40  
 Terentius Varro his base carriage of him-  
 self towards the Campan Embassadors.  
 392. 30  
 Teuta

## The Table.

Teuta, Queen of Illyria, her insolent  
 handling the Roman Embassadors. 351. 40.  
 is enforced to beg peace of the Romans. 353.  
 5.  
 Thanks ill bestowed but in way of policy.  
 393. 20.  
 Thebans sent Embassadors to Athens.  
 114. 10. Their Army before Sparta. 120.  
 30.  
 Thebes glad to be rid of her sander. 217.  
 40.  
 Themistocles his policy to assentate the  
 Ionians from the Persians. 54. 6. His sharp  
 answer to an unbecoming taunt. 55. 30. His  
 predominating vertue. 57. 30. His policy to  
 rid Xerxes out of Greece. ibid. 50. Is sent on  
 Embassage to Lacedamon. 65. 10. His plane-  
 tree. 455. 20.  
 Theocles his discovery of Sicil. 274.  
 40  
 Theramenes enforced to drink poison.  
 90. 50  
 Thimbro assisteth the Ionians; against  
 the Persian. 107. 30. Is slain by Scrupas.  
 116. 30  
 Thasybulus surpriseth Phila. 91. 7. and  
 taketh Piraeus. ibid. 20. he taketh part with  
 the Thebans. 114. 10. recovereth Bizantium  
 from the Lacedamonians. 115. 50. And is  
 slain at Aspendus. 116. 30  
 Thasybulus his just punishment. 227. 4  
 Tiberius his vain curiosity. 16. 20  
 Timoleon is sent to the aid of Syracuse.  
 288. 10. His stratageme to free himself from  
 the Carthaginian Gallies. ibid. 20. He sur-  
 priseth Ictes his Army. ibid. He demoli-  
 sheth the Castle of Syracuse. 289. 4. His  
 great victory over the Carthaginians. ibid.  
 10. He freeth Sicil of all her Tyrants. ibid.  
 20  
 Tissaphernes his perfidious dealing with  
 Cyrus. 92. 30. Becomes odious for his base  
 conditions. 93. 10. his treacherous Embassage  
 to the Grecian Army. 98. 40. He burneth the  
 Country about the Greeks. 100. 20. his covar-  
 dize. 109. 50. is finally overtaken by his own  
 cunning. 111. 50  
 Tithraustes his wife course against the  
 Greeks. 113. 20  
 Treason obruded upon guiltless persons,  
 through the false accusation of a principal  
 conspirator. 436. 30  
 Treaty between Philip of Macedon and  
 T. Quintius. 542. 4. and between the Romans  
 and Antiochus. 567. 40  
 Trust repose in known Traitors, well wor-  
 thy to be betrayed. 351. 10  
 Truth of good tidings many times not

**V**  
 Valour of small force without advised-  
 nesse. 332. 10  
 Valour scorres to hunt after opinion.  
 490. 18  
 Vanity for a Prince to ingage himself in a  
 businesse of a dangerous importance upon the  
 promised assurance of a State meerly popular.  
 581. 37  
 Varro T. his ineffective against Pabius.  
 377. 20. his vain boasting. 380. 1. his obli-  
 vious against his Colleagues good counsell.  
 382. 20. his manner of embaitailing the Ro-  
 man Army. 385. 40. his chiefest wisdom time-  
 ly flight. 387. 40  
 Vermina, the Son of Syphax, overthrown  
 by the Romans. 557. 10  
 Vertue unfortunate condemned. 78. 20  
 Vertue justly termed Heroicall. 327. 20  
 Victory never friendless. 286. 30  
 Victory to generous minde is only an in-  
 ducement to moderation. 584. 30  
 Victory beyond hope. 559. 7  
 Violence of great Armies is often broken  
 upon small Towns or Forts. 505. 20  
 Utica, a goodly City in Africk. 528. 30.

**W**  
 Want of money findes many blind  
 excuses. 394. 7.  
 Water of Syx. 518. 20  
 Wisdome with the latest. 27. 20. Wife men  
 are not moved with every rumour. 375. 3  
 Wisdome often taught by necessity. 455.  
 30  
 Wretchedness of Subjects living under the  
 government of a tyrannical City. 321. 10  
 Wrongs that are insolent, are most grievous.  
 320. 5.

**X**  
 Antippos made Generall of the Car-  
 thaginians. 301. 20. He vanquisheth  
 302. 17  
 Xenetas is sent with forces by Antiochus,  
 to suppress Molo. 555. 30  
 His politick passage over Tygris. ibid. 40  
 but is made fruitlesse through his own folly.  
 556. 4. &c.  
 Xenophon

2

16239

W

X